Preface

Thank you to the colleagues and students who have made this textbook so successful and helped to ensure its staying power in a very competitive textbook niche. Several people have asked me, with this book doing so well, why I don't retire from the classroom. The answer is that not only do I find classroom teaching the most fulfilling aspect of my profession, but also that it is my students who teach me how to write. I work continually at finding more and more effective ways of getting concepts across to them, at turning on the light of insight. The best ideas for communicating difficult physiological ideas often come to mind during my face-to-face interactions with students, and many are the times that I have dashed back from the lecture room to the drawing pad or keyboard to sketch concepts for new illustrations or write down new explanations. Grading exams and homework assignments also continually gives me new impressions of whether I have effectively taught an idea through my writing. Thus, my students are my unwitting writing teachers. This pertains also to the students in my "extended classroom"—students worldwide who use the book and write to ask my help in understanding difficult concepts.

What are the improvements in this edition? I continue to aim for ever-better clarity, brevity, currency, and accuracy. Physiology, especially, is a complex subject to explain to beginning students, and I am always working in both the lecture room and textbook to find clearer ways to explain it. Physiology also is a fast-growing field, and it's a challenge to keep a book up to date without it growing longer and longer. After all, our lecture periods and semesters aren't getting any longer! So, while updating information, I have looked for ways to make my discussions more concise in each edition. I also continue to correct errors as students and content experts have sent me queries, corrections, and suggestions. Accuracy is, of course, an advantage of a seasoned textbook over a newcomer, and this book has gained a lot of seasoning and a little spice from my extensive correspondence with students and colleagues.

This preface describes the book's intended audience, how we determined what students and instructors want in the ideal A&P textbook, what has changed in this edition to best meet your needs, how this book differs from others, and what supplements are available to round out the total teaching package.

Audience

This book is meant especially for students who plan to pursue such careers as nursing, therapy, health education, medicine, and other health professions. It is designed for a two-semester combined anatomy and physiology course and assumes that the reader has taken no prior college chemistry or biology courses. I also bear in mind that many A&P students return to college after interruptions to raise families or pursue other careers. For returning students and those without college prerequisites, the early chapters will serve as a refresher on the necessary points of chemistry and cell biology.

Many A&P students also are still developing the intellectual skills and study habits necessary for success in a health science curriculum. There are many, too, for whom English was not their original language. Therefore, I endeavor to write in a style that is clear, concise, and enjoyable to read, and to enliven the facts of science with analogies, clinical remarks, historical notes, biographical vignettes, and other seasoning that will make the book enjoyable to students and instructors alike. Each chapter is built around pedagogic strategies that will make the subject attainable for a wide range of students and instill the study and thinking habits conducive to success in more advanced courses.

How We Evaluated Your Needs

This book has evolved through extensive research on the needs and likes of A&P students and instructors. In developing its three editions so far, we have collected evaluative questionnaires from reviewers; commissioned detailed reviews from instructors using this book and those using competing books; held focus groups from coast to coast in the United States, in which instructors and students studied the book in advance, then met with us to discuss it in depth for several hours, including how it compared to other leading A&P textbooks; and created panels of A&P instructors to thoroughly analyze the entire book and its art program. These efforts have involved many hundreds of faculty and students and generated thousands of pages of reviews, all of which I have read carefully in developing my revision plans. In a less formal

VISIT…

LANZAROTE Caliente.COM

way, the book has improved because of the many e-mails I receive from instructors and students worldwide who not only tell me what they like about it, but also raise suggestions for correction or improvement. I've responded generously to these e-mails because I learn a great deal looking up answers to readers' questions, finding sources to substantiate the book's content, and sometimes finding that I need to update, clarify, or correct a point.

How We've Met Your Needs

Our research has consistently revealed that the three qualities instructors value most in a textbook are, in descending order of importance, writing style, illustration quality, and teaching supplements. I have focused my attention especially on the first two of these and on pedagogic features, while McGraw-Hill Higher Education has continually engaged other authors and software developers to produce a more diverse package of superb supplements for students and instructors.

Writing Style

Students benefit most from a book they enjoy reading, a book that goes beyond presenting information to also tell an interesting story and engage the reader with a somewhat conversational tone. That was my guiding principle in finding the right voice for the first edition, and it remains so in this one. I try to steer a middle course, avoiding rigid formality on one hand or a chatty condescending tone on the other. I feel I have succeeded when students describe the tone as friendly, engaging, colloquial, almost as if the author is talking to them, but not talking down to them.

In devising ways to make the writing more concise without losing the qualities that make it interesting and enjoyable, I have been guided by reviewers who identified areas in need of less detail and by students who cited certain areas as especially engrossing and pleasurable to read. In this edition, I somewhat reduced the number of boldfaced terms and the amount of vocabulary, and fine-tuned such mechanics as sentence length, paragraph breaks, and topic and transitional sentences for improved flow. In such difficult topics as action potentials, blood clotting, the countercurrent multiplier, or aerobic respiration, I think this book will compare favorably in a side-by-side reading of competing textbooks.

Illustrations

When I was a child, it was the art and photography in biology books that most strongly inspired me to want to learn about the subject. So it comes as no surprise that students and instructors rate the visual appeal of this book as second only to writing style in importance. I developed many illustrative concepts not found in other books. Professional medical illustrators and graphic artists have rendered these, as well as the classic themes of A&P, in a vivid and captivating style that has contributed a lot to a student's desire to learn.

As the book has evolved through these three editions, I have used larger figures and brighter colors; adopted simpler, uncluttered labeling; and continued to incorporate innovative illustrative concepts. A good illustration conveys much more information than several times as much space filled with verbiage, and I have cut down on the word count of the book to allow space for larger and more informative graphics.

The illustration program is more than line art. I continue to incorporate better histological photography and cadaver dissections, including many especially clear and skillful dissections commissioned specifically for this book.

Several of my students have modeled for photographs in this book. As much as possible with the volunteers who came forth, I have represented an ethnic variety of subjects.

Supplements

The third most highly rated quality is the package of learning supplements for the student and teaching aids for the instructor. Instructors have rated overhead transparencies the most important of all supplements, and we now include transparencies of every item of line art in the book, and some of the photographs and tables. Included are unlabeled duplicates of many anatomical figures, useful for testing or labeling to fit one's individual teaching approach. A full set of both labeled and unlabeled illustrations is also available in the Instructor's Presentation CD-ROM.

Students have expressed growing enthusiasm and appreciation for the Online Learning Center and the Essential Study Partner. We have continued to enrich these media with an abundance of learning aids and resources. These and other student and instructor supplements are listed and described on page xiii.

What Sets This Book Apart?

Those who have not used or reviewed previous editions will want to know how this book differs from others.

Organization

The sequence of chapters and placement of some topics in this book differ from others. While I felt it was risky to depart from tradition in my first edition, reviewer comments have overwhelmingly supported my intuition that these represent a more logical way of presenting the human A&P. Indeed, some have written that they are changing their teaching approach because of this book.

Heredity

I treat the most basic concepts of heredity in chapter 4 rather than waiting, as most books do, until the last chapter. Students would be ill-prepared to understand color blindness, blood types, hemophilia, sex determination, and other topics if they didn't already know about such concepts as dominant and recessive alleles, sex chromosomes, and sex linkage.

Muscle Anatomy and Physiology

I treat gross anatomy of the muscular system (chapter 10) immediately after the skeletal system and joints in order to tie it closely to the structures on which the muscles act and to relate muscle actions to the terminology of joint movements. This is followed by muscle physiology and then neurophysiology so that these two topics can be closely integrated in their discussions of synapses, neurotransmitters, and membrane potentials.

Nervous System Chapters

Many instructors cite the nervous system as the most difficult one for students to understand, and in many courses, it is presented in a hurry before the clock runs out on the first semester. Other A&P textbooks devote six chapters or more to this system. It is overwhelming to both the instructor and student to cover this much material at the end of the course. I present this system in five chapters, and notwithstanding my assignment of a separate chapter to the autonomic nervous system in this edition, this is still the most concise treatment of this system among the similar two-semester textbooks.

Urinary System

Most textbooks place the urinary system near the end because of its anatomical association with the reproductive system. I feel that its intimate physiological ties with the circulatory and respiratory systems are much more important than this anatomical issue. The respiratory and urinary systems collaborate to regulate the pH of the body fluids; the kidneys have more impact than any other organ on blood volume and pressure; and the principles of capillary fluid exchange should be fresh in the mind of a student studying glomerular filtration and tubular reabsorption. Except for an unavoidable detour to discuss the lymphatic and immune systems, I treat the respiratory and urinary systems as soon as possible after the circulatory system.

"Insight" Sidebars

Each chapter has from two to six special topic sidebars called Insights, listed by title and page number on the opening page of each chapter. These fall into three categories: 101 clinical applications, 13 on medical history, and 9 on evolutionary medicine. For a quick survey of their subject matter, see the lists under these three phrases in the index.

Clinical Applications

It is our primary task in A&P to teach the basic biology of the human body, not pathology. Yet students want to know the relevance of this biology—how it relates to their career aims. Furthermore, disease often gives us our most revealing window on the importance of normal structure and function. What could better serve than cystic fibrosis, for example, to drive home the importance of membrane ion pumps? What better than brittle bone disease to teach the importance of collagen in the osseous tissue? The great majority of Insight sidebars therefore deal with the clinical relevance of the basic biology. Clinical content has also been enhanced by the addition of a table for each organ system that describes common pathologies and page-references others.

Medical History

I found long ago that students especially enjoyed lectures in which I remarked on the personal dramas that enliven the history of medicine. Thus, I incorporated that approach into my writing as well, emulating something that is standard fare in introductory biology textbooks but has been largely absent from A&P textbooks. Reviews have shown that students elsewhere, like my own, especially like these stories. I have composed 13 historical and biographical vignettes to have an especially poignant or inspiring quality, give students a more humanistic perspective on the field they've chosen to study, and, I hope, to cultivate an appropriately thoughtful attitude toward the discipline. Historical remarks are also scattered through the general text.

Profiles of Marie Curie (p. 58), Rosalind Franklin (p. 132), and Charles Drew (p. 694) tell of the struggles and unkind ironies of their scientific careers. Some of my favorite historical sidebars are the accounts of William Beaumont's digestive experiments on "the man with a hole in his stomach" (p. 977); Crawford Long's pioneering surgical use of ether, until then known mainly as a party drug (p. 628); the radical alteration of Phineas Gage's personality by his brain injury (p. 538); and the testy relationship between the men who shared a Nobel Prize for the discovery of insulin, Frederick Banting and J. J. R. MacLeod (p. 671).

Evolutionary Medicine

The human body can never be fully appreciated without a sense of how and why it came to be as it is. Medical literature since the mid-1990s has shown increasing interest in "evolutionary medicine," but most A&P textbooks continue to disregard it. Chapter 1 briefly introduces the concept of natural selection and how certain human adaptations relate to our biological past. Later chapters have nine Evolutionary Medicine insights and shorter evolutionary remarks in the main body of text. Students will find novel and intriguing ways of looking at such topics as mitochondria (p. 124), hair (p. 204), skeletal anatomy (p. 286), body odors (p. 595), the taste for sweets (p. 990), the nephron loop (p. 897), lactose intolerance (p. 970), menopause (p. 1060), and senescence (p. 1114).

Pedagogy

Several features of this book are designed to facilitate the student's learning.

Learning Objectives

I divide each chapter into typically five or six segments of just a few pages each, with a list of learning objectives at the beginning and a list of "Before You Go On" content review questions at the end of each one. This enables students to set tangible goals for short study periods and to assess their progress before moving on.

Vocabulary Aids

A&P students must assimilate a large working vocabulary. This is far easier and more meaningful if they can pronounce words correctly and if they understand the roots that compose them. Chapter 1 now has a section, "The Language of Medicine," which I hope will help get students into the habit of breaking new words into familiar roots, and help them appreciate the importance of precision in spelling and word use. Pronunciation guides are given parenthetically when new words are introduced, using a "pro-NUN-see-AY-shun" format that is easy for students to interpret. New terms are accompanied by footnotes that identify their roots and origins, and a lexicon of about 400 most commonly used roots and affixes appears in appendix C (p. A-7).

Self-Testing Questions

Each chapter has about 75 to 90 self-testing questions in various formats and three levels of difficulty: recall, description, and analysis or application. The *ability to recall* terms and facts is tested by 20 multiple choice and sentence completion questions in the chapter review. The *ability to describe* concepts is tested by the "Before You Go On" questions at the ends of the chapter subdivisions, totaling about 20 to 30 such questions per chapter. The *ability to analyze and apply* ideas and to relate concepts in different chapters to each other is tested by an average of 5 "Think About It" questions at intervals throughout each chapter, 5 "Testing Your Comprehension" essay questions at the end of the chapter, 10 "True/False" questions in the chapter review that require the student to analyze why the false statements are untrue, and usually 5 questions per chapter in the figure legends, prompting the student to analyze or extrapolate from information in the illustrations. A great number and variety of additional questions are available to students at the Online Learning Center.

System Interrelationships

Most instructors would probably agree on the need to emphasize the interrelationships among organ systems and to discourage the idea that a system can be put out of one's mind after a test is over. This book reinforces the interdependence of the organ systems in three ways.

1. Beginning with chapter 3 (p. 93), each chapter has a "Brushing Up" box that lists concepts from earlier chapters that one should understand before moving on. This may also be useful to students who are returning to college and need to freshen up concepts studied years before, and to instructors who teach the systems in a different order than the book does. It also reinforces the continuity between A&P I and II.
2. For each organ system, there is a "Connective Issues" feature (p. 212, for example) that summarizes ways in which that system influences all of the others of the body, and how it is influenced by them in turn.
3. Chapter 29 includes a section, "Senescence of the Organ Systems," which can serve as a "capstone lesson" that compellingly shows how the age-related degeneration of each system influences, and is influenced by, the others. Senescence is an increasingly important topic for health-care providers as the population increases in average age. This section should sensitize readers not only to the issues of gerontology, but also to measures they can take at a young age to ensure a better quality of life later on. For instructors who prefer to treat senescence of each organ system separately throughout the course, earlier chapters cite the relevant pages of this senescence discussion.

What's New?

I've been cautious about reorganizing the book and tampering with a structure that has been responsible for its success. Nevertheless, the voices of many reviewers have convinced me that a few changes were in order.

Changes in Chapter Sequence

I made two changes in chapter sequencing and numbering:

Nervous System Chapters

The most frequent request has been to give the autonomic nervous system a chapter of its own, with slightly deeper coverage. I have done so at chapter 15. Another common request I've accommodated has been to discuss the spinal cord and spinal nerves together in one chapter (now chapter 13) and the brain and cranial nerves together in another (now chapter 14).

Chemistry

To compensate for the added nervous system chapter without making the book longer, and because many reviewers felt that the book could do without two full chapters of chemistry, I condensed the coverage of chemistry by about 25% and combined the two former chemistry chapters into one (now chapter 2). This results in a change of chapter numbers from 3 through 15, but from chapter 16 to the end, the numbers are the same as in the previous editions.

Changes in Chapter Organization

In three cases, I felt that a subject could be presented more effectively by rearrangements and content substitutions within a chapter. Other chapters continue to be organized as they were in the second edition.

Chapter 1, Major Themes of Anatomy and Physiology

Here I replaced the section on human taxonomic classification with sections on anatomical and physiological variability. This gives the chapter a less zoological and more clinical flavor. Also, I feel it is important at the outset of such a course to instill a sense of the familiar roots of biomedical terms, the importance of precision in spelling, and other aspects of vocabulary. Thus I moved the former appendix B, which introduced students to medical etymology, to chapter 1 ("The Language of Medicine," p. 19).

Chapter 17, The Endocrine System

As many reviewers desired, I have separated endocrine pathology from normal physiology and placed the pathology at the end of the chapter.

Chapter 21, The Lymphatic and Immune Systems

I have found it more effective to present cellular immunity before humoral immunity, since humoral immunity depends on some concepts such as helper T cells usually introduced in the context of cellular immunity.

Content Changes

I have strengthened the coverage of the following topics (indicating chapter numbers in parentheses): mitochondrial diseases (3), autoimmune diseases (5), the stages of hair growth (6), biomechanics of bone tissue (7), the enteric nervous system (15), receptive fields of sensory neurons (16), hormone-transport proteins (17), the blood-thymus barrier (21), clonal deletion and anergy (21), renal autoregulation (23), lipostats and leptin (26), and the trisomies (29).

I have updated information on the following, drawing on research and review literature as recent as April 2002, even as the book was in production: genetic translation in the nucleus (4), signal peptides (4), stem cell research (5), hair analysis (6), osteoporosis treatments (7), knee surgery (9), muscle–connective tissue relationships (11), mitosis in cardiac muscle (11), astrocyte functions (12), surgical treatment of parkinsonism (12), amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (13), memory consolidation (14), functional MRI (14), the sensory role of filiform papillae (16), a new class of retinal photoreceptors (16), the history of anesthesia (16), the relationship of growth hormone to somatomedins (17), cytotoxic T cell activation (21), asthma (21), neuroimmunology (21), atrial natriuretic peptide (23), hunger and body weight homeostasis (26), heritability of alcoholism (26), the functions of relaxin (28), contraceptive options (28), the fate of sperm mitochondria (29), Werner syndrome (29), telomeres (29), and theories of aging (29).

Issues of Terminology

In 1999, the *Terminologia Anatomica* (TA) replaced the *Nomina Anatomica* as the international standard for anatomical terminology. I have updated the terminology in this edition accordingly, except in cases where TA terminology is, as yet, so unfamiliar that it may be more a hindrance than a help for an introductory anatomy course. For example, I use the unofficial *femur* rather than the official *os femoris* or *femoral bone.*

The TA no longer recognizes eponyms, and I have avoided using them when possible and practical (using *tactile disc* instead of *Merkel disc,* for example). I do introduce common eponyms parenthetically when a term is first used. Some eponyms are, of course, unavoidable *(Alzheimer disease, Golgi complex)* and in some cases it still seems preferable to use the eponyms because of familiarity and correlation with other sources that students will read (for example, *Schwann cell* rather than *neurilemmocyte*).

I follow the recommendation of the American Medical Association *Manual of Style* (ninth edition, 1998) to delete the possessive forms of nearly all eponyms. There are people who take offense at the possessive form *Down's syndrome* and yet may be equally insistent that *Alzheimer's disease* be in the possessive. The AMA has grappled with such inconsistencies for years, and I accept its recommendation that the possessives be dropped whenever possible. I make exception for a few cases such as *Broca's area* (which would be awkward to pronounce without the *'s*) and I retain the possessive form for natural laws *(Boyle's law).*

Pedagogic Changes

I have made the following changes in pedagogy; see the referenced pages for examples of each:

- Added icons to the histological illustrations in chapter 5 to show a place where each tissue can be found (pp. 162–163).
- Added thought questions to some figure legends (usually five per chapter) and provided answers to these at the end of the chapter (p. 91).

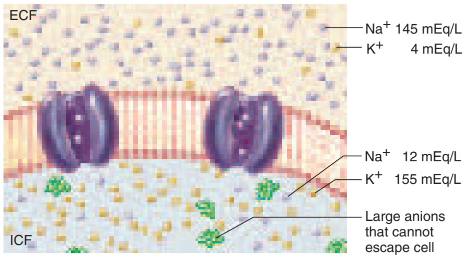
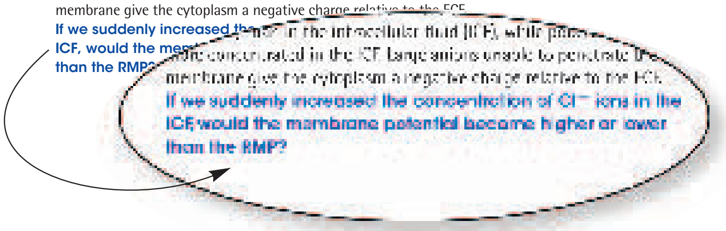


Figure 12.9 **Ionic Basis of the Resting Membrane Potential.** Note that sodium ions are much more concentrated in the extracellular fluid (ECF) than in the intracellular fluid (ICF), while potassium ions are more concentrated in the ICF. Large anions unable to penetrate the plasma membrane give the cytoplasm a negative charge relative to the ECF.
If we suddenly increased th
ICF, would the mem
than the RMP?


than in the intracellular fluid (ICF), while potas
more concentrated in the ICF. Large anions unable to penetrate the
membrane give the cytoplasm a negative charge relative to the ECF.
If we suddenly increased the concentration of Cl^- ions in the ICF, would the membrane potential become higher or lower than the RMP?

- For each organ system, added a table of pathologies which briefly describes several of the most common dysfunctions and cites pages where other dysfunctions of that system are mentioned elsewhere in the book (p. 208).
- Changed the chapter reviews from an outline to a narrative format that briefly restates the key points of the chapter (p. 125).
- Shortened the end-of-chapter vocabulary lists, which no longer list all boldfaced terms in a chapter, but only those terms that I deemed most important (p. 126).
- Added 10 true/false questions to each chapter review, with a prompt to explain why the false questions are untrue (p. 127). The answers to these are in appendix B (p. A-2).

Suggestions Still Welcome!

Many features of this book, and many refinements in the writing, illustrations, and factual content, came about because of suggestions and questions from instructors and their students. In addition, many things that were tried experimentally in the first edition have been retained in the later editions because of positive feedback from users. But perfection in textbook writing seems to be an asymptote, ever approached but never fully reached. I invite my colleagues and students everywhere to continue offering such valuable and stimulating feedback as I continue the approach.

Ken Saladin
Dept. of Biology
Georgia College & State University
Milledgeville, Georgia 31061 (USA)
478-445-0816
ksaladin@gcsu.edu

Teaching and Learning Supplements

McGraw-Hill offers various tools and technology products to support the third edition of *Anatomy & Physiology.* Students can order supplemental study materials by contacting their local bookstore. Instructors can obtain teaching aids by calling the Customer Service Department, at 800-338-3987, visiting our A&P website at www.mhhe.com/ap, or contacting their local McGraw-Hill sales representative.

For the Instructor:
Instructor's Presentation CD-ROM

This multimedia collection of visual resources allows instructors to utilize artwork from the text in multiple formats to create customized classroom presentations, visually based tests and quizzes, dynamic course website content, or attractive printed support materials. The digital assets on this cross-platform CD-ROM are grouped by chapter within the following easy-to-use folders.

Art Library Full-color digital files of all illustrations in the book, plus the same art saved in unlabeled and gray scale versions, can be readily incorporated into lecture presentations, exams, or custom-made classroom materials. These images are also pre-inserted into blank PowerPoint slides for ease of use.

Photo Library Digital files of instructionally significant photographs from the text—including cadaver, bone, histology, and surface anatomy images—can be reproduced for multiple classroom uses.

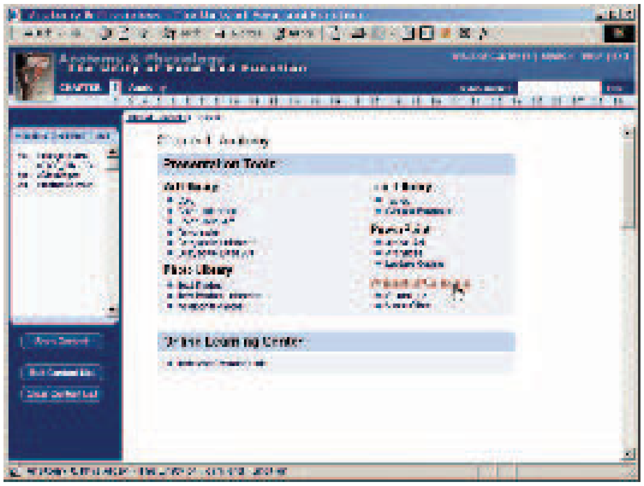
PowerPoint Lecture Outlines Ready-made presentations that combine art and lecture notes are provided for each of the 29 chapters of the text. Written by Sharon Simpson, Broward Community College, these lectures can be used as they are, or can be tailored to reflect your preferred lecture topics and sequences.

Table Library Every table that appears in the text is provided in electronic form.

In addition to the content found within each chapter, the Instructor's Presentation CD-ROM for *Anatomy & Physiology* contains the following multimedia instructional materials:

Active Art Library Active Art consists of art files from key figures from the book that have been converted to a format that allows the artwork to be edited inside of Microsoft PowerPoint. Each piece of art inside an Active Art presentation can be broken down to its core elements, grouped or ungrouped, and edited to create customized illustrations.

Animations Library Numerous full-color animations illustrating physiological processes are provided. Harness the visual impact of processes in motion by importing these files into classroom presentations or online course materials.



Instructor's Testing and Resource CD-ROM

This cross-platform CD-ROM provides a wealth of resources for the instructor. Supplements featured on this CD-ROM include a computerized test bank utilizing Brownstone Dipoma@ testing software to quickly create customized exams. This user-friendly program allows instructors to search for questions by topic, format, or difficulty level; edit existing questions or add new ones; and scramble questions and answer keys for multiple versions of the same test. Although few textbook authors write their own test banks, this test bank, written by the author himself better reflects the textbook than one contracted out to an independent writer.

Other assets on the Instructor's Testing and Resource CD-ROM are grouped within easy-to-use folders. The Instructor's Manual and the Instructor's Manual to accompany the Laboratory Manual are available in both Word and PDF formats. Word files of the test bank are included for those instructors who prefer to work outside of the test-generator software.

Laboratory Manual

The *Anatomy & Physiology Laboratory Manual* by Eric Wise of Santa Barbara City College is expressly written to coincide with the chapters of *Anatomy & Physiology.* This lab manual has been revised to include clearer explanations of physiology experiments and computer simulations that serve as alternatives to frog experimentation. Other improvements include a greatly expanded set of review questions at the end of each lab, plus numerous new photographs and artwork.

Transparencies

This exhaustive set of over 1,000 transparency overheads includes every piece of line art in the textbook, tables, and several key photographs. An additional set of 150 unlabeled line art duplicates is also available for testing purposes or custom labeling. Images are printed with better visibility and contrast than ever before, and labels are large and bold for clear projection.

English/Spanish Glossary for Anatomy and Physiology

This complete glossary includes every key term used in a typical 2-semester anatomy and physiology course. Definitions are provided in both English and Spanish. A phonetic guide to pronunciation follows each word in the glossary.

A Visual Atlas for Anatomy and Physiology

This visual atlas contains key gross anatomy illustrations that have been blown up in size to make it easier for students to learn anatomy.

Clinical Applications Manual

Expands on *Anatomy and Physiology's* clinical themes, introduces new clinical topics, and provides test questions and case studies to develop the student's ability to apply his or her knowledge to realistic situations.

Course Delivery Systems

With help from our partners, WebCT, Blackboard, TopClass, eCollege, and other course management systems, professors can take complete control over their course content. These course cartridges also provide online testing and powerful student tracking features. The Saladin Online Learning Center is available within all of these platforms!

For the Student: MediaPhys CD-ROM

This interactive tool offers detailed explanations, high-quality illustrations, and animations to provide students with a thorough introduction to the world of physiology—giving them a virtual tour of physiological processes. MediaPhys is filled with interactive activities and quizzes to help reinforce physiology concepts that are often difficult to understand.

Online Learning Center

The *Anatomy & Physiology* Online Learning Center (OLC) at www.mhhe.com/saladin3 offers access to a vast array of premium online content to fortify the learning and teaching experience.

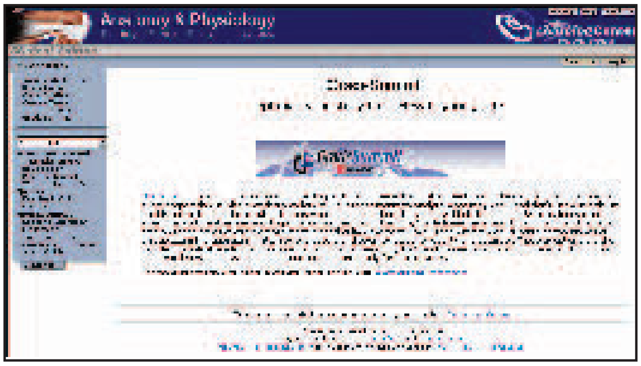
Essential Study Partner A collection of interactive study modules that contains hundreds of animations, learning activities, and quizzes designed to help students grasp complex concepts.

Live News Feeds The OLC offers course specific real-time news articles to help you stay current with the latest topics in anatomy and physiology.

For more information on the outstanding online tools, refer to the front endsheets of your textbook.

GradeSummit

GradeSummit, found at www.gradesummit.com, is an Internet-based self-assessment service that provides students and faculty with diagnostic information about subject strengths and weaknesses. This detailed feedback and direction enables learners and teachers to focus study time on areas where it will be most effective. GradeSummit also enables instructors to measure their students' progress and assess that progress relative to others in their classes and worldwide.



Student Study Guide

This comprehensive study guide written by Jacque Homan, South Plains College, in collaboration with Ken Saladin, contains vocabulary-building and content-testing exercises, labeling exercises, and practice exams.

Acknowledgments

A textbook and supplements package on this scale is the product of a well coordinated effort by many dedicated people. I am deeply indebted to the team at McGraw-Hill Higher Education who have shown continued faith in this book and invested so generously in it.

For their unfailing encouragement and material support, I thank Vice President and Editor-in-Chief Michael Lange and Publisher Marty Lange. My appreciation likewise goes out to Michelle Watnick for her years of energetic promotion of the book and lately her role as Sponsoring Editor, and to the legion of sales managers and sales representatives who work so hard to get the book into the hands of my fellow instructors and their students.

Kristine Tibbetts, Director of Development, has been a wonderful editor with whom I've been very fortunate to work for the past decade. The appearance of this book owes a great deal to Kris's attention to detail and her uncompromising commitment to quality, accuracy, and esthetics. Were it not for e-mail, our voluminous correspondence would have required the razing of entire forests and probably would have detectably enhanced employment statistics for lumberjacks and postal carriers. Working closely with Kris and me, Designer K. Wayne Harms also deserves a great deal of credit for the esthetic appeal and readability of these pages.

Mary E. Powers, Senior Project Manager, has been responsible for monitoring all aspects of the project, keeping me and its many other contributors coordinated and moving toward the book's timely release. She, too, has been a very alert reader of the entire manuscript and has spared no effort to incorporate last-minute corrections and to change page layouts for better figure placement and flow of text.

A good copyeditor makes one a better writer, and I have learned a great deal from my copyeditors on all editions of this book. On this edition, it was Cathy Conroy's assiduous attention to detail, ranging from consistency in anatomical synonyms down to the humblest punctuation mark, that spared me from committing numerous embarrassing errors and inconsistencies.

And always high on my list at McGraw-Hill, I am especially grateful to Colin Wheatley for his conviction, over a decade ago, that I had a book in me, and for persuading me to give it a go. Few people have changed my life so profoundly.

The line art in this edition was beautifully executed by the medical illustrators and graphic artists of Imagineering STA Media Services in Toronto, under the watchful and knowledgeable eye of Jack Haley, Content/Art Director. Imagineering illustrator Dustin Holmes produced the award-winning cover art for the previous edition and, not surprisingly, I was delighted with his execution of the new cover art for this edition. For the visual appeal of this book, credit is also due to McGraw-Hill Photo Coordinator John Leland and Photo Researcher Mary T. Reeg, who worked hard to acquire photographs that are clear, informative, and esthetically appealing. I must also repeat my earlier thanks to anatomists Don Kincaid and Rebecca Gray of the Ohio State University Department of Anatomy and Medical Education Morgue for producing at my behest such clean, instructive dissections and clear cadaver photographs.

For photographs of living subjects, whenever possible I employed volunteers from among my own students at Georgia College and State University. For kindly lending their bodies to the service of science, I thank my students, colleagues, friends, and family members: Laura Ammons, Sharesia Bell, Elizabeth Brown, Amy Burmeister, Mae Carpenter, Valeria Champion, Kelli Costa, Adam Fraley, Yashica Marshall, Diane Saladin, Emory Saladin, Nicole Saladin, Dilanka Seimon, Natalie Spires, Xiaodan Wang, Nathan Williams, and Danielle Wychoff. The improved photographs of joint movements in this edition (chapter 9), with their multiple-exposure effects, are by Milledgeville photographer Tim Vacula.

Thanks once again to my colleagues David Evans and Eric Wise for their fine work in producing the Instructor's Manual and Laboratory Manual, respectively. New thanks to Leslie Miller, M. S. N., for reviewing the manuscript from a clinical perspective and offering many helpful suggestions.

The factual content and accuracy of this edition owe a great deal to colleagues who are more knowledgeable than I in specific areas of human anatomy and physiology, and to both colleagues and inquisitive students whose e-mails and other queries sent me to the library to dig still deeper into the literature. I have gained especially from the lively and fruitful discussions on HAPP-L, the e-mail list of the Human Anatomy and Physiology Society (http://www.hapsweb.org); my heartfelt thanks go to the many colleagues who have made HAPP-L such a stimulating and informative site, and to Jim Pendley for maintaining the list.

Once again, and first in my appreciation, I thank my wife Diane, my son Emory, and my daughter Nicole, not only for sharing with me in the rewards of writing, but also for bearing up so graciously under the demands of having a full-time author cloistered in the inner sanctum of the house.

Reviewers

No words could adequately convey my indebtedness and gratitude to the hundreds of A&P instructors and experts who have reviewed this book in all its editions, and who have provided such a wealth of scientific information, corrections, suggestions for effective presentation, and encouragement. For making the book beautiful, I am indebted to the team described earlier. For making it *right,* I am thankful to the colleagues listed on the following pages.

Reviewers from the United States

Mohammed Abbas
Schoolcraft College

Michael J. Angilletta, Jr.
Indiana State University

Barbie W. Baker
Florida Community College–Jacksonville

Joan I. Barber
Delaware Technical and Community College

Mary Lou Bareither
University of Illinois at Chicago

Clifford L. Barnes
Regis University

Jeanne K. Barnett
University of Southern Indiana

Theresa S. Bidle
Hagerstown Community College

Wendy D. Bircher
San Juan College

Franklyn F. Bolander, Jr.
University of South Carolina

Joan M. Bowden
Alfred University

Julie Harrill Bowers
East Tennessee State University

Sheri L. Boyce
Messiah College

Sara Brenizer
Shelton State Community College

Melvin K. Brown
Erie Community College–City Campus

Michael Bumbulis
Baldwin–Wallace College

Ray D. Burkett
Southwest Tennessee Community College

Jeanne A. Calvert
University of St. Francis

John R. Capeheart
University of Houston–Downtown

Barbara J. Cohen
Delaware County Community College

Stephen J. Connor
University of South Florida

W. Wade Cooper
Shelton State Community College

Redding I. Corbett, III
Midlands Technical College

Marya Czech
Lourdes College

Rosemary Davenport
Gulf Coast Community College

Patti Davis
East Central Community College

Mary E. Dawson
Kingsborough Community College

Larry DeLay
Waubonsee Community College

Nicholas G. Despo
Thiel College

Danielle Desroches
William Paterson University of New Jersey

Waneene C. Dorsey
Grambling State University

E. Christis Farrell
Trevecca Nazarene University

Dinah T. Farrington
Russell Sage College

Lorraine Findlay
Nassau Community College

Pamela B. Fouché
Walters State Community College

Frederick R. Frank, Jr.
Volunteer State Community College

Christina A. Gan
Rogue Community College

Chaya Gopalan
St. Louis Community College

John S. Green
Texas A&M University

Michael T. Griffin
Angelo State University

Dorothy L. Haggerty
Delgado Community College

Jerry Heckler
John Carroll University

Margery K. Herrington
Adams State College

Michael T. Hoefer
Life University

James Horwitz
Palm Beach Community College

Allen N. Hunt
Elizabethtown Community College

Sarah Caruthers Jackson
Florida Community College–Jacksonville

Kenneth Kaloustian
Quinnipiac University

D. T. Kidwell
Southeast Community College

Kris A. Kilibarda
Iowa Western Community College

Shelley A. Kirkpatrick
Saint Francis University

Thomas E. Kober
Cincinnati State Technical and Community College

Marian G. Langer
Saint Francis University

Waiston C. Lee
Wayne Community College

Adam Leff
Kent State University–Trumbull Campus

Steven D. Leidich
Cuyahaga Community College

Claire Leonard
William Paterson University

Alex Lowrey
Gainesville College

D. J. Lowrie, Jr.
University of Cincinnati

Jennifer Lundmark
California State University–Sacramento

Christopher L. McNair
Hardin–Simmons University

Glenn Merrick
Lake Superior College

Lee A. Meserve
Bowling Green State University

Mindy Millard-Stafford
Georgia Tech

Melissa A. Mills
Anoka–Ramsey Community College

Robert Moldenhauer
Saint Clair County Community College

David P. Sogn Mork
St. Cloud State University

Devonna Sue Morra
Saint Francis University

Linda R. Nichols
Santa Fe Community College

Murad Odeh
South Texas Community College

Randall Oelerich
Lake Superior College

Nathan O. Okia
Auburn University Montgomery

Valerie Dean O'Loughlin
Indiana University–Bloomington

Donald M. O'Malley
Northeastern University

Margaret (Betsy) Ott
Tyler Junior College

David Pearson
Ball State University

Julie C. Pilcher
University of Southern Indiana

Don V. Plantz, Jr.
Mohave Community College

Nikki Privacky
Palm Beach Community College

Gregory K. Reeder
Broward Community College

Tricia A. Reichert
Colby Community College

Jackie Reynolds
Richland College

S. Michele Robichaux
Nicholls State University

Angel M. Rodriguez
Broward Community College

Mattie Roig
Broward Community College

Tim V. Roye
San Jacinto College South

Susan E. Safford
Lincoln University

Douglas P. Schelhaas
University of Mary

Waweise Schmidt
Palm Beach Community College

William A. Schutt, Jr.
Southampton College of Long Island University

Larry J. Scott
Central Virginia Community College

Josefina Z. Sevilla-Gardinier
Milwaukee Area Technical College

Kelly Sexton
North Lake College

Mark A. Shoop
Tennessee Wesleyan College

Carl J. Shuster
Amarillo College

Dale Smoak
Piedmont Technical College

Keith Snyder
Southern Adventist University

Tracy L. Soltesz
Pikeville College

Michael W. Squires
Columbus State Community College

Timothy A. Stabler
Indiana University Northwest

John E. Stencel
Olney Central College

Maura O. Stevenson
Community College of Allegheny County

William Stewart
Middle Tennessee State University

Robert Stinson
South Texas Community College

Kristin J. Stuempfle
Gettysburg College

Mark F. Taylor
Baylor University

Diane Teter
South Texas Community College

Shawn A. Thomas
Delta State University

Rafael Torres
San Antonio College

Anthony Udeogalanya
Medgar Evers College

John Uno
Kapiolani Community College

Jyoti R. Wagle
Houston Community College–Central

John M. Wakeman
Louisiana Tech University

William G. Walther
Lake Erie College

Robert Waltzer
Belhaven College

DeLoris Wenzel
University of Georgia

Vernon Lee Wiersema
Houston Community College–Southwest

Avery A. Williams
Louisiana State University–Eunice

Bruce Eric Wright
Thomas University

Burk Yarbrough
Central Alabama Community College–Childersburg Campus

Ferne Zabezensky
Chandler–Gilbert Community College

Reviewers from Canada

Margaret Chad
Saskatchewan Institute of Applied Science and Technology–Kelsey Campus

Mary T. Guise
Mohawk College of Applied Arts and Technology

Narinder Kapoor
University Concordia

Linda Melnick
Keewatin Community College

Delia Roberts
Selkirk College

T. M. Scott
Memorial University

Reviewers from Outside North America

M. Abbott
Nottingham University, School of Nursing

Irene Allan
University of Dundee School of Nursing and Midwifery

R. K. Atkinson
University of Southern Queensland

Darwish H. Badran
University of Jordan, Medical College

A. D. Barber
Plymouth School of Podiatry

Douglas L. Bovell
Glasgow Caledonian University

Richard Brightwell
Edith Cowan University

Mark A. Burton
Charles Sturt University, School of Biomedical Sciences

Christine Lorraine Carline
Staffordshire University, School of Health

David Colborn
Independent Consultant, Health and Social Care

Desmond Cornes
Glasgow Caledonian University

Michele Don
Griffith University, School of Nursing

Jan S. Gill
Queen Margaret University College

Helen Godfrey
University of the West of England

D. F. Peach
Cranfield University

David M. Quincey
Bournemouth University

David Robertson
The Robert Gordon University School of Health Sciences

George Simpson
Liverpool John Moores University

Paul Slater
University of Manchester

Roger Watson
University of Hull, School of Nursing

Anne Waugh
Napier University

Chris G. Wigham
Cardiff University

Focus Group Attendees

Shylaja R. Akkaraju
College of Dupage

Les Albin
Austin Community College

Pegge Alciatore
University of Louisiana-Lafayette

Barbie W. Baker
Florida Community College-Jacksonville

Robert Bauman, Jr.
Amarillo College

Mary Bracken
Trinity Valley Community College

Kenneth Carpenter
Southwest Tennessee Community College

Matthew J. Craig
Amarillo College

Manuel E. Daniels, Jr.
Tallahassee Community College

Kathryn Gronlund
Edison Community College

Rebecca L. Hennig
Odessa College

Jacqueline A. Homan
South Plains College

Jane Johnson-Murray
Houston Community College Central

Christopher A. Klotz
St. Petersburg College

Chad M. Masters
University of North Florida

Elizabeth J. Maxim
Austin Community College

Richard McCloskey
Boise State University

W. J. McCracken
Tallahassee Community College

Lynn McCutchen
Kilgore College

Anthony P. McGraw
Saint Petersburg College

Robert C. McReynolds
San Jacinto College Central

Stephen H. McReynolds
Tarleton State University

John E. Moore
Parkland College

Margaret (Betsy) Ott
Tyler Junior College

Julie C. Pilcher
University of Southern Indiana

Linda Powell
Community College of Philadelphia

Mattie Roig
Broward Community College

Wayne Seifert
Brookhaven College

Susan Shuman
St. Petersburg College

Carl J. Shuster
Amarillo College

William Stewart
Middle Tennesse State University

Sarah Strong
Austin Community College

Jyoti R. Wagle
Houston Community College Central

Donna White
Collin County Community College

Kathy B. White
St. Philips College

Vernon Lee Wiersema
Houston Community College–Southwest

Stephen Williams
Glendale Community College

Jim Young
South Plains College

Consultant Panel

Barbie W. Baker
Florida Community College–Jacksonville

Sharon Barnewall
Columbus State Community College

Franklyn F. Bolander, Jr.
University of South Carolina

Sara Brenizer
Shelton State Community College

Frederick R. Frank, Jr.
Volunteer State Community College

Carol Haspel
LaGuardia Community College, CUNY

Don Hayes
Southeastern Louisiana University

Jacqueline A. Homan
South Plains College

James Horwitz
Palm Beach Community College

William Magill
Humber College

John E. Moore
Parkland College

Margaret (Betsy) Ott
Tyler Junior College

Mattie Roig
Broward Community College

Eva Lurie Weinreb
Community College of Philadelphia

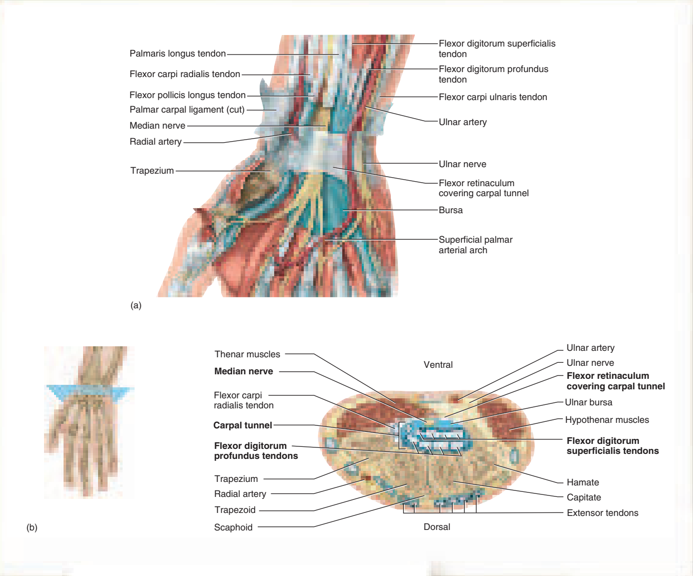
Vernon Lee Wiersema
Houston Community College–Southwest

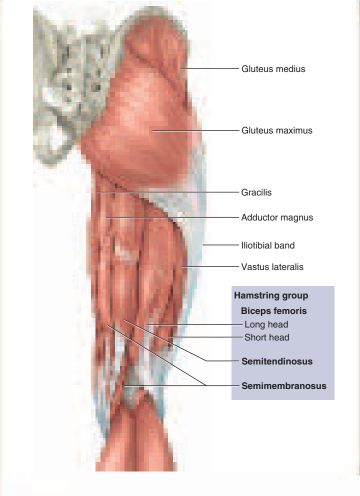
Vivid and Captivating Illustrations Contribute to Learning

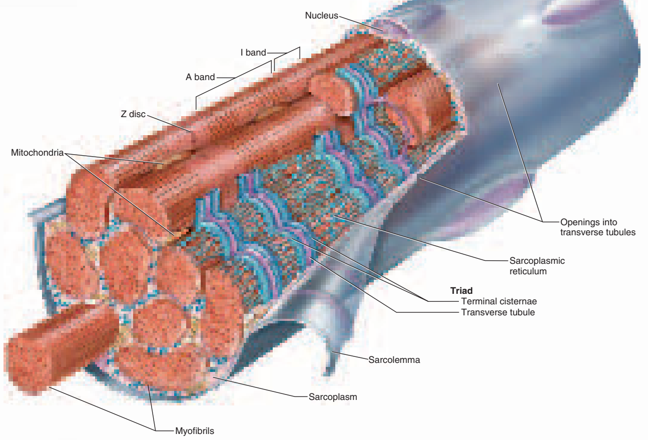
Saladin's *Anatomy and Physiology* brings key concepts to life with its unique style of biomedical illustration. The digitally rendered images have a vivid three-dimensional look that will not only stimulate your students' interest and enthusiasm, but also give them the clearest possible understanding of important concepts.

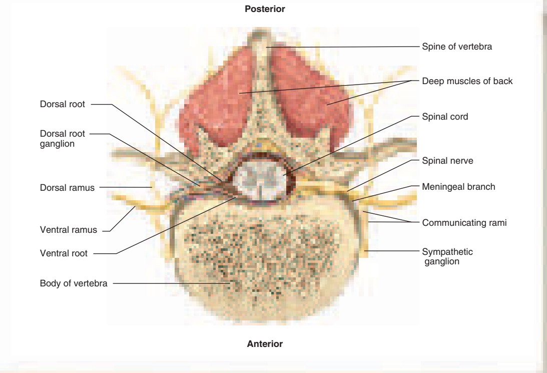
Unparalleled Art Program

Saladin's illustration program includes digital line art, numerous cadaver photographs, and light, TEM, and SEM photomicrographs. Larger images and brighter colors in the third edition will help draw your students into the subject.


Palmaris longus tendon
Flexor carpi radialis tendon
Flexor pollicis longus tendon
Palmar carpal ligament (cut)
Median nerve
Radial artery
Trapezium
Flexor digitorum superficialis tendon
Flexor digitorum profundus tendon
Flexor carpi ulnaris tendon
Ulnar artery
Ulnar nerve
Flexor retinaculum covering carpal tunnel
Bursa
Superficial palmar arterial arch
(a)
Thenar muscles
Median nerve
Flexor carpi radialis tendon
Carpal tunnel
Flexor digitorum profundus tendons
Trapezium
Radial artery
Trapezoid
Scaphoid
Ventral
Dorsal
Ulnar artery
Ulnar nerve
Flexor retinaculum covering carpal tunnel
Ulnar bursa
Hypothenar muscles
Flexor digitorum superficialis tendons
Hamate
Capitate
Extensor tendons
(b)

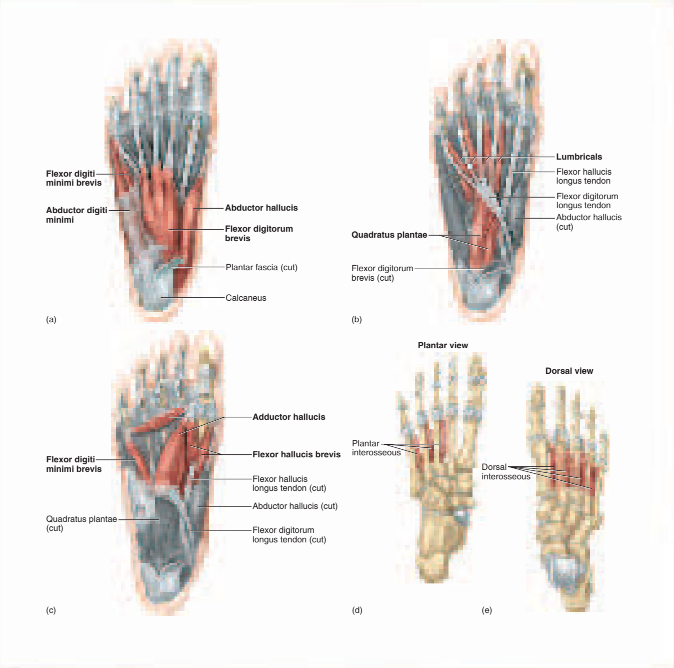

Gluteus medius
Gluteus maximus
Gracilis
Adductor magnus
Iliotibial band
Vastus lateralis
Hamstring group
Biceps femoris
Long head
Short head
Semitendinosus
Semimembranosus

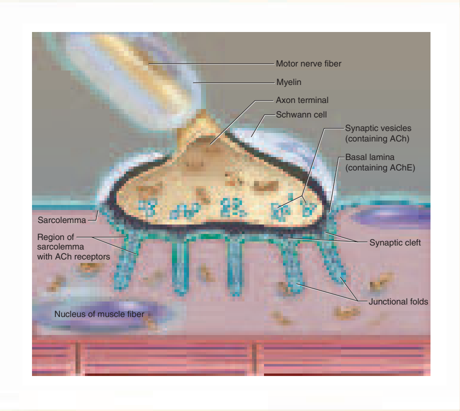

Nucleus
I band
A band
Z disc
Mitochondria
Openings into transverse tubules
Sarcoplasmic reticulum
Triad
Terminal cisternae
Transverse tubule
Sarcolemma
Sarcoplasm
Myofibrils


Posterior
Dorsal root
Dorsal root ganglion
Dorsal ramus
Ventral ramus
Ventral root
Body of vertebra
Spine of vertebra
Deep muscles of back
Spinal cord
Spinal nerve
Meningeal branch
Communicating rami
Sympathetic ganglion
Anterior

> *I must say I was completely blown away by this text. The graphics in [a leading text I've been using] don't come close to the graphics in Saladin (which have an extraordinary 3-D quality).*
>
> *–Bill Schutt, Long Island University*

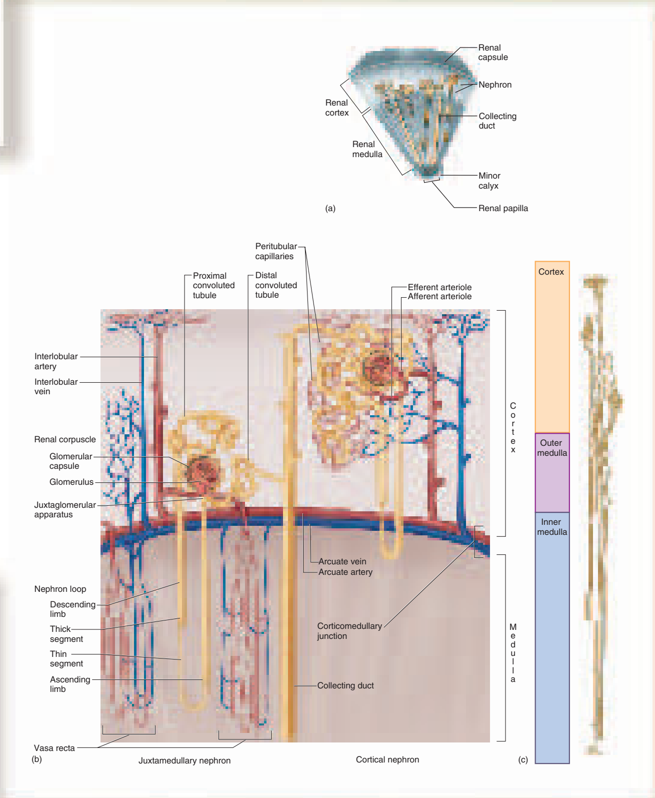
Art Program

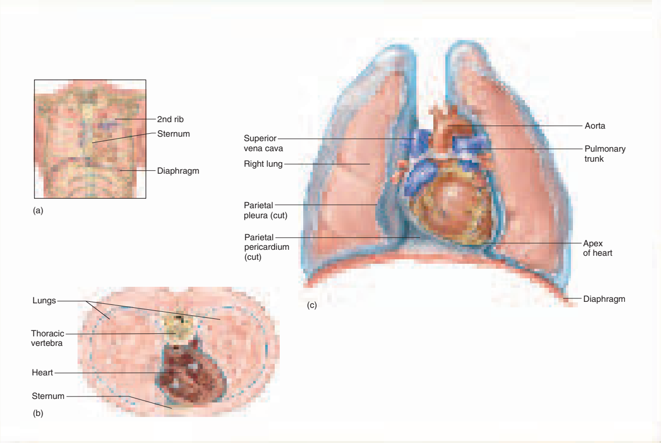

Flexor digiti minimi brevis
Abductor digiti minimi
Abductor hallucis
Flexor digitorum brevis
Plantar fascia (cut)
Calcaneus
(a)
Lumbricals
Flexor hallucis longus tendon
Flexor digitorum longus tendon
Abductor hallucis (cut)
Quadratus plantae
Flexor digitorum brevis (cut)
(b)
Adductor hallucis
Flexor hallucis brevis
Flexor digiti minimi brevis
Flexor hallucis longus tendon (cut)
Abductor hallucis (cut)
Quadratus plantae (cut)
Flexor digitorum longus tendon (cut)
(c)
Plantar view
Dorsal view
Plantar interosseous
Dorsal interosseous
(d)
(e)


Motor nerve fiber
Myelin
Axon terminal
Schwann cell
Synaptic vesicles (containing ACh)
Basal lamina (containing AChE)
Sarcolemma
Region of sarcolemma with ACh receptors
Synaptic cleft
Junctional folds
Nucleus of muscle fiber

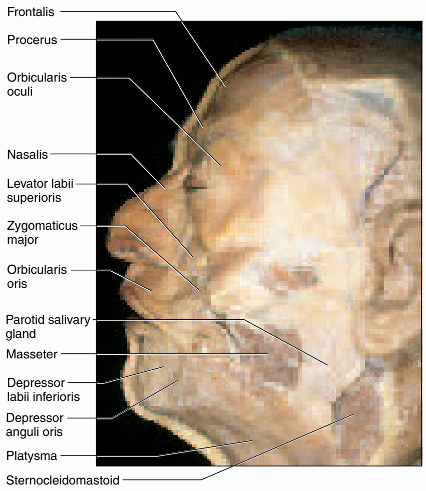
The art program in Saladin's text is superb. Students today are more "picture oriented" and gain much of their information from the figures rather than from the text material. The figures in Saladin are clearly and accurately presented.

W. Walther, Lake Erie College


Renal capsule
Nephron
Renal cortex
Collecting duct
Renal medulla
Minor calyx
Renal papilla
(a)
Peritubular capillaries
Proximal convoluted tubule
Distal convoluted tubule
Efferent arteriole
Afferent arteriole
Interlobular artery
Interlobular vein
Renal corpuscle
Glomerular capsule
Glomerulus
Juxtaglomerular apparatus
Arcuate vein
Arcuate artery
Nephron loop
Descending limb
Thick segment
Thin segment
Ascending limb
Corticomedullary junction
Collecting duct
Vasa recta
(b)
Juxtamedullary nephron
Cortical nephron
Cortex
Medulla
Cortex
Outer medulla
Inner medulla
(c)

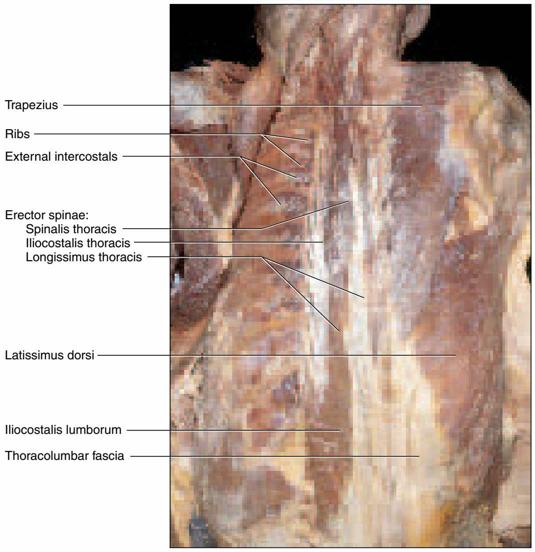

2nd rib
Sternum
Diaphragm
(a)
Superior vena cava
Right lung
Parietal pleura (cut)
Parietal pericardium (cut)
Aorta
Pulmonary trunk
Apex of heart
Diaphragm
(c)
Lungs
Thoracic vertebra
Heart
Sternum
(b)

Art Program


Frontalis
Procerus
Orbicularis oculi
Nasalis
Levator labii superioris
Zygomaticus major
Orbicularis oris
Parotid salivary gland
Masseter
Depressor labii inferioris
Depressor anguli oris
Platysma
Sternocleidomastoid

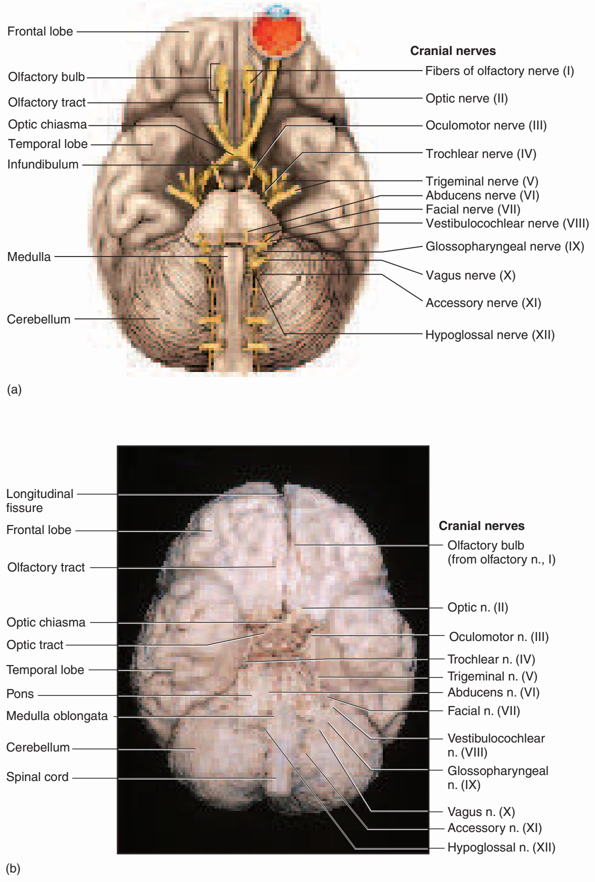
Atlas Quality Cadaver Images

Color photographs of cadavers dissected specifically for this book allow students to see the real texture of organs and their relationships to each other. This anatomical realism combines with the simplified clarity of line art to give your students a holistic view of bodily structure.


Trapezius
Ribs
External intercostals
Erector spinae:
Spinalis thoracis
Iliocostalis thoracis
Longissimus thoracis
Latissimus dorsi
Iliocostalis lumborum
Thoracolumbar fascia

The cadaver photos are excellent! My students (and friends who have taught or taken anatomy class) love them.

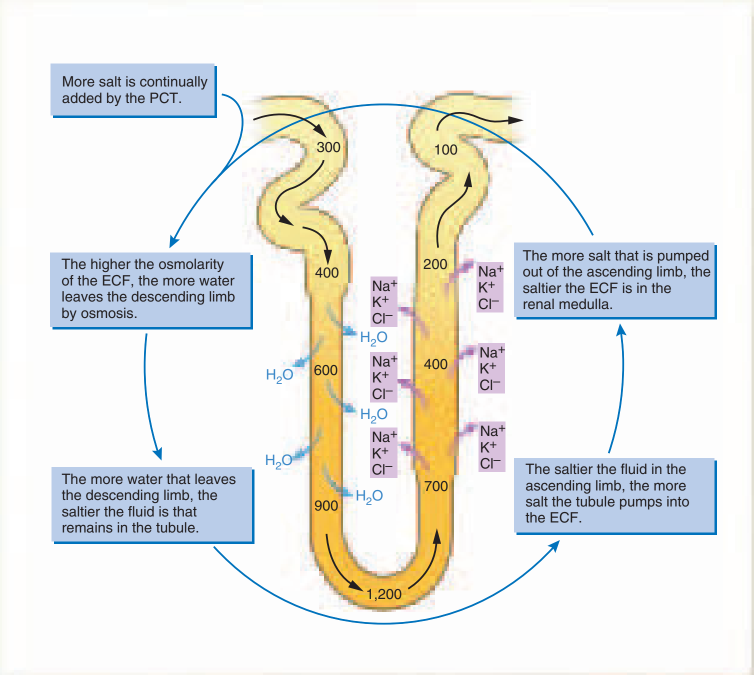
–Michael Angilletta, Jr., Indiana State University, Terre Haute


Frontal lobe
Olfactory bulb
Olfactory tract
Optic chiasma
Temporal lobe
Infundibulum
Medulla
Cerebellum
Cranial nerves
Fibers of olfactory nerve (I)
Optic nerve (II)
Oculomotor nerve (III)
Trochlear nerve (IV)
Trigeminal nerve (V)
Abducens nerve (VI)
Facial nerve (VII)
Vestibulocochlear nerve (VIII)
Glossopharyngeal nerve (IX)
Vagus nerve (X)
Accessory nerve (XI)
Hypoglossal nerve (XII)
(a)
Longitudinal fissure
Frontal lobe
Olfactory tract
Optic chiasma
Optic tract
Temporal lobe
Pons
Medulla oblongata
Cerebellum
Spinal cord
Cranial nerves
Olfactory bulb (from olfactory n., I)
Optic n. (II)
Oculomotor n. (III)
Trochlear n. (IV)
Trigeminal n. (V)
Abducens n. (VI)
Facial n. (VII)
Vestibulocochlear n. (VIII)
Glossopharyngeal n. (IX)
Vagus n. (X)
Accessory n. (XI)
Hypoglossal n. (XII)
(b)

Students have liked the excellent artwork, the charts and tables, and the clinical insights. The photographs of cadaver dissections and the electron microscopy are excellent.

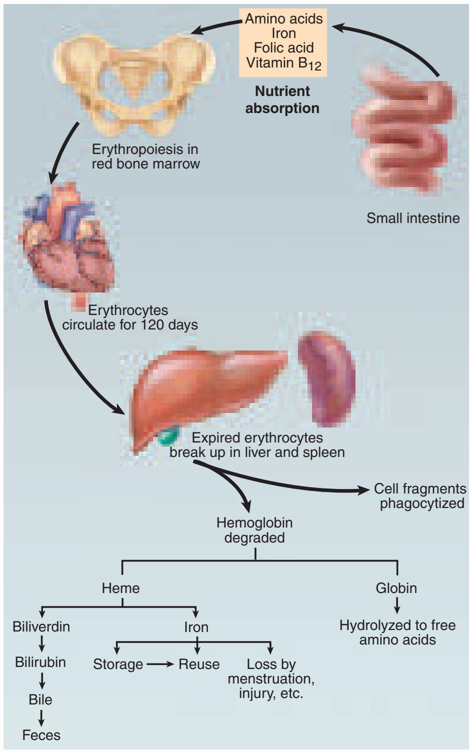
- Robert Moldenhauer, St. Clair County Community College

Art Program

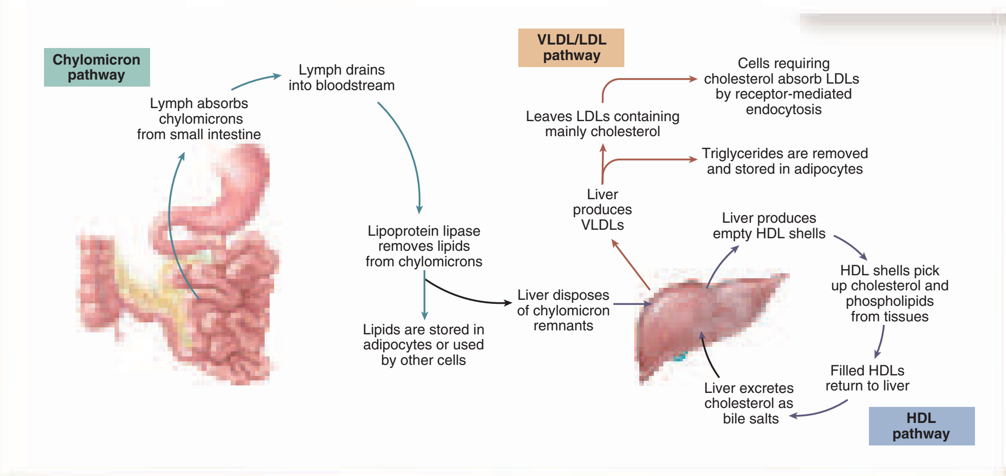

More salt is continually added by the PCT.
The higher the osmolarity of the ECF, the more water leaves the descending limb by osmosis.
The more water that leaves the descending limb, the saltier the fluid is that remains in the tubule.
The more salt that is pumped out of the ascending limb, the saltier the ECF is in the renal medulla.
The saltier the fluid in the ascending limb, the more salt the tubule pumps into the ECF.
300
100
400
200
600
400
900
700
1,200
Na^+ K^+ Cl^-
H_2O

Physiology Focused Art

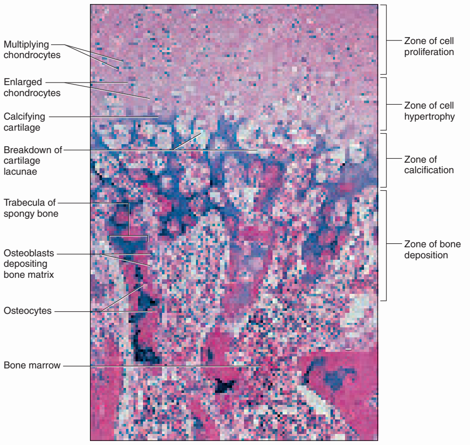
Saladin illustrates many difficult physiological concepts in steps that students find easy to follow. For students who are "visual learners," illustrations like these teach more than a thousand words.


Amino acids
Iron
Folic acid
Vitamin B_{12}
Nutrient absorption
Erythropoiesis in red bone marrow
Small intestine
Erythrocytes circulate for 120 days
Expired erythrocytes break up in liver and spleen
Cell fragments phagocytized
Hemoglobin degraded
Heme
Globin
Biliverdin
Iron
Hydrolyzed to free amino acids
Bilirubin
Storage
Reuse
Loss by menstruation, injury, etc.
Bile
Feces

> *One of the major strengths of the Saladin text, one that promoted me to adopt the text, was the quality and quantity of the illustrations. In my view, this text is a hands-down winner in this area.*
>
> *R. Symmons, California State University at Hayward*


Chylomicron pathway
Lymph absorbs chylomicrons from small intestine
Lymph drains into bloodstream
Lipoprotein lipase removes lipids from chylomicrons
Lipids are stored in adipocytes or used by other cells
Liver disposes of chylomicron remnants
VLDL/LDL pathway
Cells requiring cholesterol absorb LDLs by receptor-mediated endocytosis
Leaves LDLs containing mainly cholesterol
Triglycerides are removed and stored in adipocytes
Liver produces VLDLs
Liver produces empty HDL shells
HDL shells pick up cholesterol and phospholipids from tissues
Filled HDLs return to liver
Liver excretes cholesterol as bile salts
HDL pathway

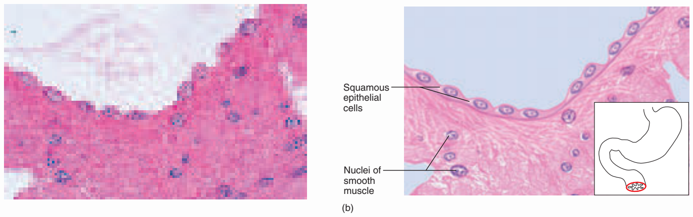
Art Program


Multiplying chondrocytes
Enlarged chondrocytes
Calcifying cartilage
Breakdown of cartilage lacunae
Trabecula of spongy bone
Osteoblasts depositing bone matrix
Osteocytes
Bone marrow
Zone of cell proliferation
Zone of cell hypertrophy
Zone of calcification
Zone of bone deposition

Micrographs

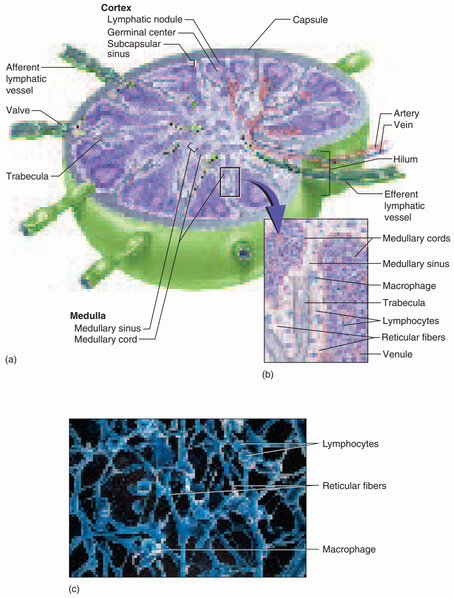
All life processes are ultimately cellular processes. Saladin drives this point home with a variety of histological micrographs in LM, SEM, and TEM formats, including many colorized electron micrographs.

Cilia
Goblet cell


Squamous epithelial cells
Nuclei of smooth muscle
(b)

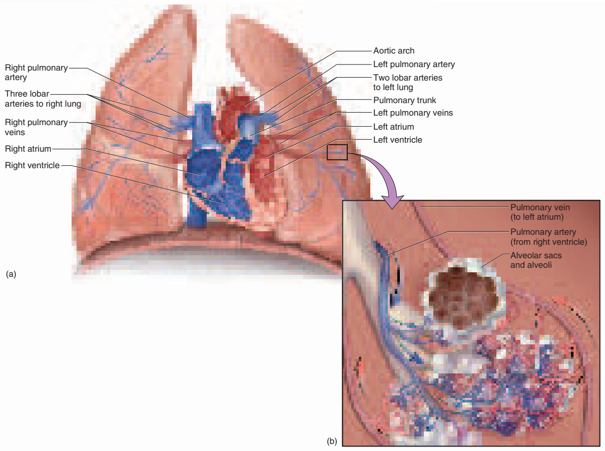
Photomicrographs Correlated with Line Art

Saladin juxtaposes histological photomicrographs with line art. Much like the combination of cadaver gross photographs and line art, this gives students the best of both perspectives: the realism of photos and the explanatory clarity of line drawings.


Cortex
Lymphatic nodule
Germinal center
Subcapsular sinus
Capsule
Afferent lymphatic vessel
Valve
Trabecula
Artery
Vein
Hilum
Efferent lymphatic vessel
Medulla
Medullary sinus
Medullary cord
(a)
Medullary cords
Medullary sinus
Macrophage
Trabecula
Lymphocytes
Reticular fibers
Venule
(b)
Lymphocytes
Reticular fibers
Macrophage
(c)

From Macroscopic to Microscopic

Saladin's line art guides students from the intuitive level of gross anatomy to the functional foundations revealed by microscopic anatomy.


Right pulmonary artery
Three lobar arteries to right lung
Right pulmonary veins
Right atrium
Right ventricle
Aortic arch
Left pulmonary artery
Two lobar arteries to left lung
Pulmonary trunk
Left pulmonary veins
Left atrium
Left ventricle
(a)
Pulmonary vein (to left atrium)
Pulmonary artery (from right ventricle)
Alveolar sacs and alveoli
(b)

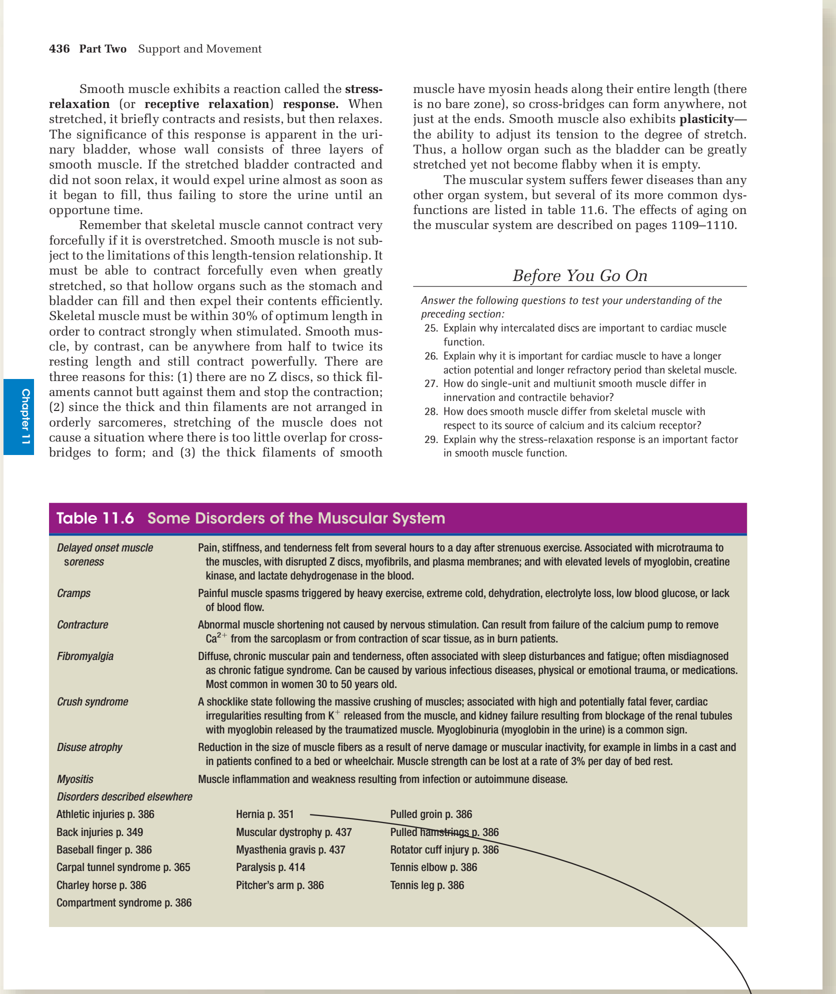
> *The artwork in Saladin is one of its major strengths. I applaud this; it really seems to help hold the interest of a wide variety of students.*
>
> *D. Farrington, Russell Sage College*

Clinical Emphasis

Clinical Examples Make It Relevant

Anatomy and Physiology is fundamentally a textbook of the basic science of the human body. However, students always want to know why all the science is relevant to their career aims. Clinical examples and thought questions make it so. Students can see how the science relates to well-known dysfunctions, and why it is important to know the basics. Dysfunctions also provide windows of insight into the basic concepts, such as the insight that cystic fibrosis gives on the importance of membrane ion channels, or that antidepressants give on the synaptic reuptake of neurotransmitters.

> *There are many tidbits of clinical information that are in this book, but not in others that I have seen. I think that's great! I have learned a thing or two. I also think that the author has tried to choose clinical examples that are commonly dealt with and therefore most useful to the student.*
>
> *L. Steele, Ivy Tech State College*



Smooth muscle exhibits a reaction called the **stress-relaxation** (or **receptive relaxation**) **response.** When stretched, it briefly contracts and resists, but then relaxes. The significance of this response is apparent in the urinary bladder, whose wall consists of three layers of smooth muscle. If the stretched bladder contracted and did not soon relax, it would expel urine almost as soon as it began to fill, thus failing to store the urine until an opportune time.

Remember that skeletal muscle cannot contract very forcefully if it is overstretched. Smooth muscle is not subject to the limitations of this length-tension relationship. It must be able to contract forcefully even when greatly stretched, so that hollow organs such as the stomach and bladder can fill and then expel their contents efficiently. Skeletal muscle must be within 30% of optimum length in order to contract strongly when stimulated. Smooth muscle, by contrast, can be anywhere from half to twice its resting length and still contract powerfully. There are three reasons for this: (1) there are no Z discs, so thick filaments cannot butt against them and stop the contraction; (2) since the thick and thin filaments are not arranged in orderly sarcomeres, stretching of the muscle does not cause a situation where there is too little overlap for cross-bridges to form; and (3) the thick filaments of smooth muscle have myosin heads along their entire length (there is no bare zone), so cross-bridges can form anywhere, not just at the ends. Smooth muscle also exhibits **plasticity**—the ability to adjust its tension to the degree of stretch. Thus, a hollow organ such as the bladder can be greatly stretched yet not become flabby when it is empty.

The muscular system suffers fewer diseases than any other organ system, but several of its more common dysfunctions are listed in table 11.6. The effects of aging on the muscular system are described on pages 1109–1110.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

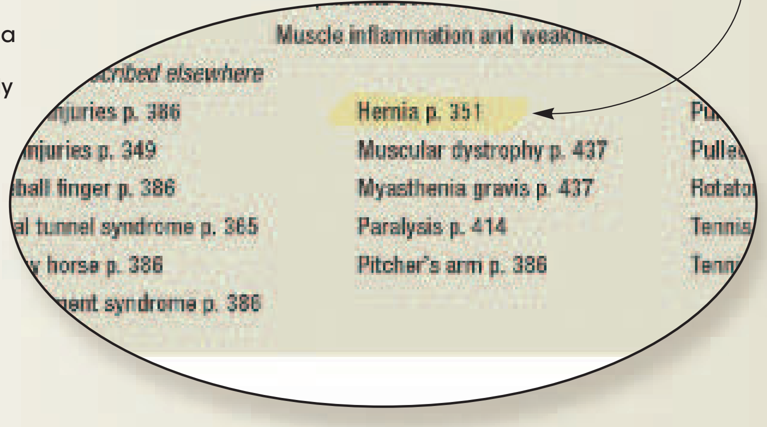
25. Explain why intercalated discs are important to cardiac muscle function.
26. Explain why it is important for cardiac muscle to have a longer action potential and longer refractory period than skeletal muscle.
27. How do single-unit and multiunit smooth muscle differ in innervation and contractile behavior?
28. How does smooth muscle differ from skeletal muscle with respect to its source of calcium and its calcium receptor?
29. Explain why the stress-relaxation response is an important factor in smooth muscle function.

Table 11.6 Some Disorders of the Muscular System

Delayed onset muscle soreness	Pain, stiffness, and tenderness felt from several hours to a day after strenuous exercise. Associated with microtrauma to the muscles, with disrupted Z discs, myofibrils, and plasma membranes; and with elevated levels of myoglobin, creatine kinase, and lactate dehydrogenase in the blood.
Cramps	Painful muscle spasms triggered by heavy exercise, extreme cold, dehydration, electrolyte loss, low blood glucose, or lack of blood flow.
Contracture	Abnormal muscle shortening not caused by nervous stimulation. Can result from failure of the calcium pump to remove Ca^{2+} from the sarcoplasm or from contraction of scar tissue, as in burn patients.
Fibromyalgia	Diffuse, chronic muscular pain and tenderness, often associated with sleep disturbances and fatigue; often misdiagnosed as chronic fatigue syndrome. Can be caused by various infectious diseases, physical or emotional trauma, or medications. Most common in women 30 to 50 years old.
Crush syndrome	A shocklike state following the massive crushing of muscles; associated with high and potentially fatal fever, cardiac irregularities resulting from K^+ released from the muscle, and kidney failure resulting from blockage of the renal tubules with myoglobin released by the traumatized muscle. Myoglobinuria (myoglobin in the urine) is a common sign.
Disuse atrophy	Reduction in the size of muscle fibers as a result of nerve damage or muscular inactivity, for example in limbs in a cast and in patients confined to a bed or wheelchair. Muscle strength can be lost at a rate of 3% per day of bed rest.
Myositis	Muscle inflammation and weakness resulting from infection or autoimmune disease.

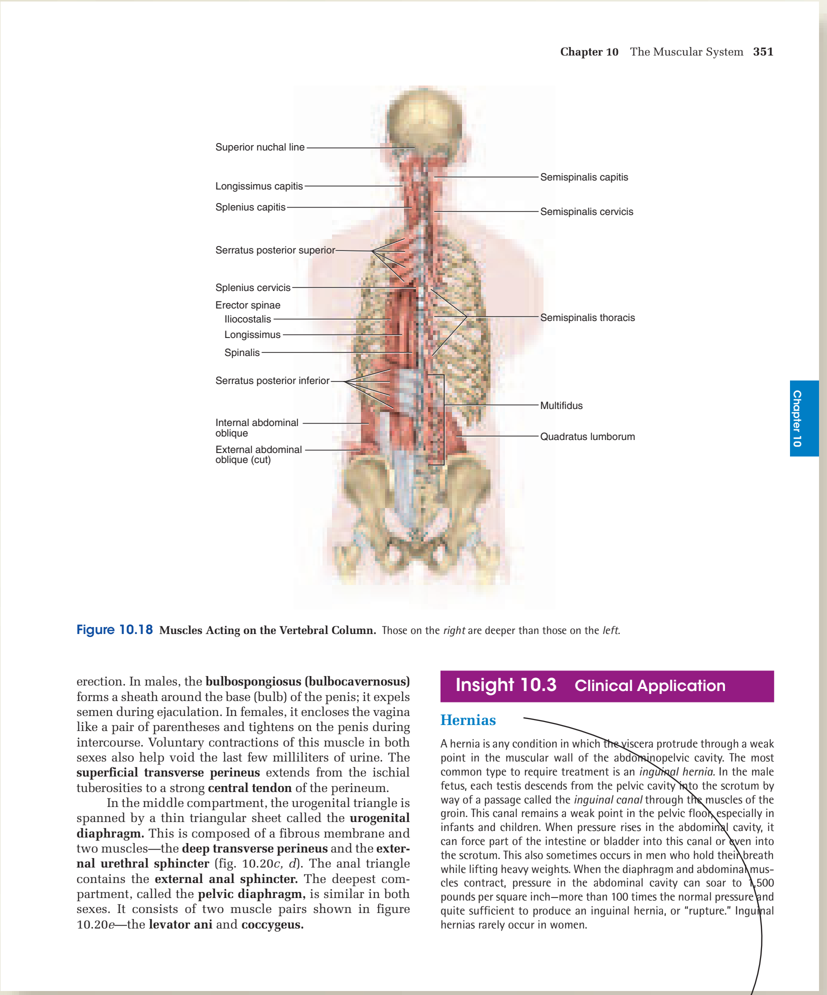
Disorders described elsewhere

Athletic injuries p. 386
Back injuries p. 349
Baseball finger p. 386
Carpal tunnel syndrome p. 365
Charley horse p. 386
Compartment syndrome p. 386
Hernia p. 351
Muscular dystrophy p. 437
Myasthenia gravis p. 437
Paralysis p. 414
Pitcher's arm p. 386
Pulled groin p. 386
Pulled hamstrings p. 386
Rotator cuff injury p. 386
Tennis elbow p. 386
Tennis leg p. 386


Muscle inflammation and weakne
scribed elsewhere
njuries p. 386
njuries p. 349
ball finger p. 386
al tunnel syndrome p. 365
y horse p. 386
ment syndrome p. 386
Hernia p. 351
Muscular dystrophy p. 437
Myasthenia gravis p. 437
Paralysis p. 414
Pitcher's arm p. 386
Pu
Pulle
Rotato
Tennis
Tenn

Pathology Tables
For each organ system, Saladin presents a table that briefly describes several well-known dysfunctions and comprehensively lists the pages where students can find comments on other disorders of that system.

Clinical Emphasis



Superior nuchal line
Longissimus capitis
Splenius capitis
Serratus posterior superior
Splenius cervicis
Erector spinae
Iliocostalis
Longissimus
Spinalis
Serratus posterior inferior
Internal abdominal oblique
External abdominal oblique (cut)
Semispinalis capitis
Semispinalis cervicis
Semispinalis thoracis
Multifidus
Quadratus lumborum
Chapter 10

Figure 10.18 **Muscles Acting on the Vertebral Column.** Those on the *right* are deeper than those on the *left*.

erection. In males, the **bulbospongiosus (bulbocavernosus)** forms a sheath around the base (bulb) of the penis; it expels semen during ejaculation. In females, it encloses the vagina like a pair of parentheses and tightens on the penis during intercourse. Voluntary contractions of this muscle in both sexes also help void the last few milliliters of urine. The **superficial transverse perineus** extends from the ischial tuberosities to a strong **central tendon** of the perineum.

In the middle compartment, the urogenital triangle is spanned by a thin triangular sheet called the **urogenital diaphragm.** This is composed of a fibrous membrane and two muscles—the **deep transverse perineus** and the **external urethral sphincter** (fig. 10.20*c, d*). The anal triangle contains the **external anal sphincter.** The deepest compartment, called the **pelvic diaphragm,** is similar in both sexes. It consists of two muscle pairs shown in figure 10.20*e*—the **levator ani** and **coccygeus.**

Insight 10.3 Clinical Application

Hernias

A hernia is any condition in which the viscera protrude through a weak point in the muscular wall of the abdominopelvic cavity. The most common type to require treatment is an *inguinal hernia.* In the male fetus, each testis descends from the pelvic cavity into the scrotum by way of a passage called the *inguinal canal* through the muscles of the groin. This canal remains a weak point in the pelvic floor, especially in infants and children. When pressure rises in the abdominal cavity, it can force part of the intestine or bladder into this canal or even into the scrotum. This also sometimes occurs in men who hold their breath while lifting heavy weights. When the diaphragm and abdominal muscles contract, pressure in the abdominal cavity can soar to 1,500 pounds per square inch—more than 100 times the normal pressure and quite sufficient to produce an inguinal hernia, or "rupture." Inguinal hernias rarely occur in women.

I like Saladin's presentation because I feel an understanding of how medicine and science have changed throughout history is part of becoming a "well educated," not just a "well trained" student.

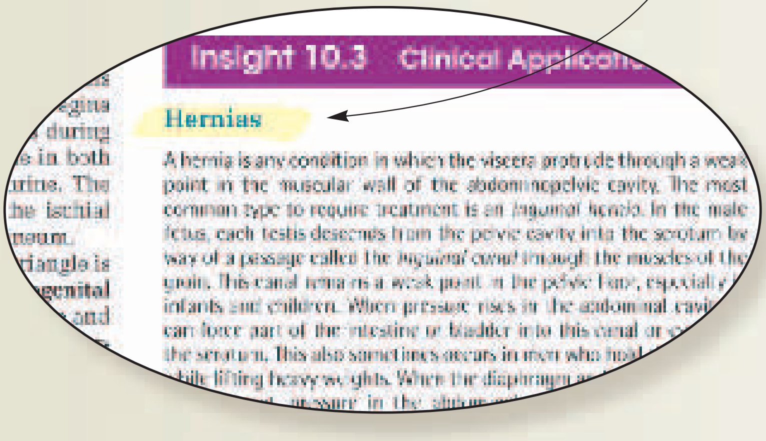
- R. Pope, Miami-Dade Community College

Clinical Applications

Each chapter has three to five Insight boxes, many of which are clinical in nature. These essays illuminate the clinical relevance of a concept and give insight on disease as it relates to normal structure and function.

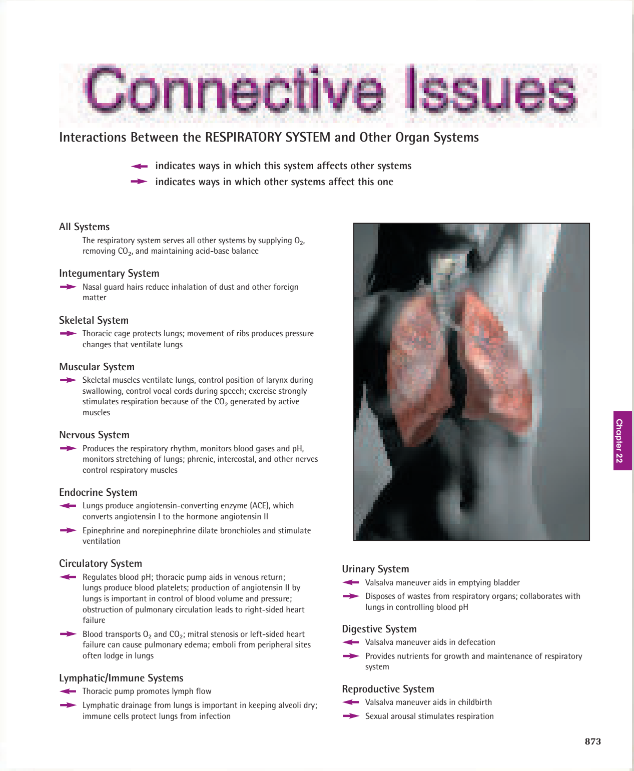
The accuracy of information in this text is as good as it gets. Saladin seems to be right on top of every new bit of information that is revealed. What I really like about the Saladin text is that it lets students know when we don't know why something is the way it is. Other texts will try to make the facts fit when they actually don't.

– W. Schmidt, Palm Beach Community College



Insight 10.3 Clinical Applicatio
Hernias

Clinical Emphasis



Connective Issues

Interactions Between the RESPIRATORY SYSTEM and Other Organ Systems

← indicates ways in which this system affects other systems
→ indicates ways in which other systems affect this one

All Systems
The respiratory system serves all other systems by supplying O_2, removing CO_2, and maintaining acid-base balance

Integumentary System
→ Nasal guard hairs reduce inhalation of dust and other foreign matter

Skeletal System
→ Thoracic cage protects lungs; movement of ribs produces pressure changes that ventilate lungs

Muscular System
→ Skeletal muscles ventilate lungs, control position of larynx during swallowing, control vocal cords during speech; exercise strongly stimulates respiration because of the CO_2 generated by active muscles

Nervous System
→ Produces the respiratory rhythm, monitors blood gases and pH, monitors stretching of lungs; phrenic, intercostal, and other nerves control respiratory muscles

Endocrine System
← Lungs produce angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE), which converts angiotensin I to the hormone angiotensin II
→ Epinephrine and norepinephrine dilate bronchioles and stimulate ventilation

Circulatory System
← Regulates blood pH; thoracic pump aids in venous return; lungs produce blood platelets; production of angiotensin II by lungs is important in control of blood volume and pressure; obstruction of pulmonary circulation leads to right-sided heart failure
→ Blood transports O_2 and CO_2; mitral stenosis or left-sided heart failure can cause pulmonary edema; emboli from peripheral sites often lodge in lungs

Lymphatic/Immune Systems
← Thoracic pump promotes lymph flow
→ Lymphatic drainage from lungs is important in keeping alveoli dry; immune cells protect lungs from infection

Urinary System
← Valsalva maneuver aids in emptying bladder
→ Disposes of wastes from respiratory organs; collaborates with lungs in controlling blood pH

Digestive System
← Valsalva maneuver aids in defecation
→ Provides nutrients for growth and maintenance of respiratory system

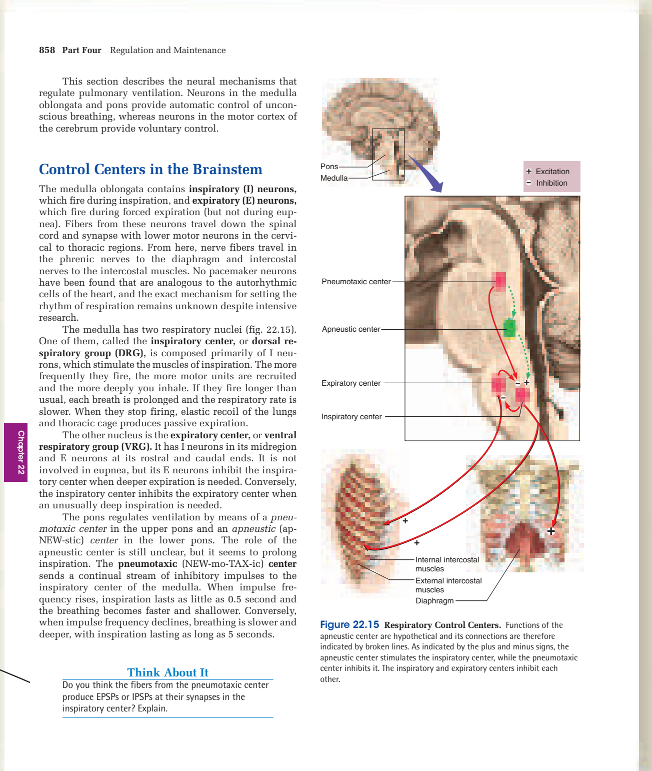
Reproductive System
← Valsalva maneuver aids in childbirth
→ Sexual arousal stimulates respiration

Chapter 22

873

Connective Issues

The human organ systems do not exist in isolation from each other. Diseases of the circulatory system can lead to failure of the urinary system and aging of the skin can lead to weakening of the skeleton. For each organ system, a page called Connective Issues shows how it affects other systems of the body and is affected by them.



858 **Part Four** Regulation and Maintenance

This section describes the neural mechanisms that regulate pulmonary ventilation. Neurons in the medulla oblongata and pons provide automatic control of unconscious breathing, whereas neurons in the motor cortex of the cerebrum provide voluntary control.

Control Centers in the Brainstem

The medulla oblongata contains **inspiratory (I) neurons,** which fire during inspiration, and **expiratory (E) neurons,** which fire during forced expiration (but not during eupnea). Fibers from these neurons travel down the spinal cord and synapse with lower motor neurons in the cervical to thoracic regions. From here, nerve fibers travel in the phrenic nerves to the diaphragm and intercostal nerves to the intercostal muscles. No pacemaker neurons have been found that are analogous to the autorhythmic cells of the heart, and the exact mechanism for setting the rhythm of respiration remains unknown despite intensive research.

The medulla has two respiratory nuclei (fig. 22.15). One of them, called the **inspiratory center,** or **dorsal respiratory group (DRG),** is composed primarily of I neurons, which stimulate the muscles of inspiration. The more frequently they fire, the more motor units are recruited and the more deeply you inhale. If they fire longer than usual, each breath is prolonged and the respiratory rate is slower. When they stop firing, elastic recoil of the lungs and thoracic cage produces passive expiration.

The other nucleus is the **expiratory center,** or **ventral respiratory group (VRG).** It has I neurons in its midregion and E neurons at its rostral and caudal ends. It is not involved in eupnea, but its E neurons inhibit the inspiratory center when deeper expiration is needed. Conversely, the inspiratory center inhibits the expiratory center when an unusually deep inspiration is needed.

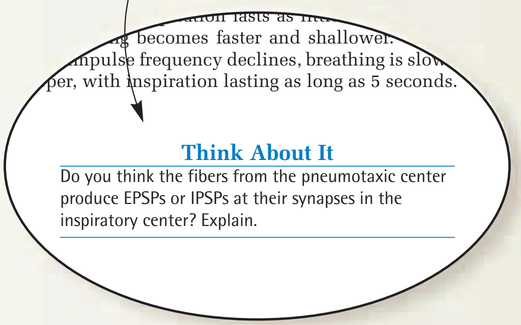
The pons regulates ventilation by means of a *pneumotaxic center* in the upper pons and an *apneustic* (ap-NEW-stic) *center* in the lower pons. The role of the apneustic center is still unclear, but it seems to prolong inspiration. The **pneumotaxic** (NEW-mo-TAX-ic) **center** sends a continual stream of inhibitory impulses to the inspiratory center of the medulla. When impulse frequency rises, inspiration lasts as little as 0.5 second and the breathing becomes faster and shallower. Conversely, when impulse frequency declines, breathing is slower and deeper, with inspiration lasting as long as 5 seconds.

Think About It
Do you think the fibers from the pneumotaxic center produce EPSPs or IPSPs at their synapses in the inspiratory center? Explain.

Figure 22.15 **Respiratory Control Centers.** Functions of the apneustic center are hypothetical and its connections are therefore indicated by broken lines. As indicated by the plus and minus signs, the apneustic center stimulates the inspiratory center, while the pneumotaxic center inhibits it. The inspiratory and expiratory centers inhibit each other.

Chapter 22

> *The clinical application approach seems much more consistently and richly in evidence in Saladin.*
>
> *- D. Plantz, Mohave Community College*



becomes faster and shallower.
impulse frequency declines, breathing is slow
per, with inspiration lasting as long as 5 seconds.

Think About It
Do you think the fibers from the pneumotaxic center produce EPSPs or IPSPs at their synapses in the inspiratory center? Explain.

Think About It

Success in health professions requires far more than memorization. More important is your insight and ability to apply what you remember in new cases and problems. Think About It questions, which can be found strategically distributed throughout each chapter, encourage stopping and thinking more deeply about the meaning or broader significance.

Pedagogical Aids Promote Systematic Learning

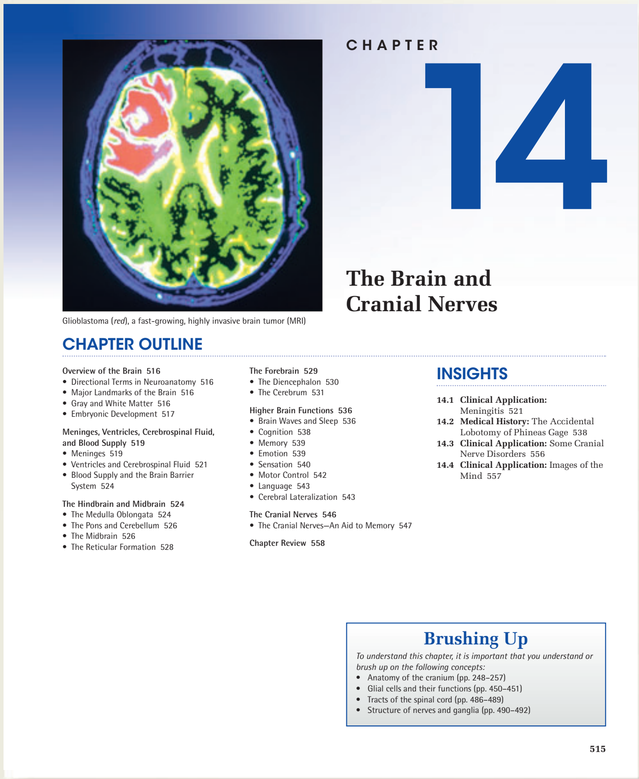
Saladin structures each chapter around a consistent and unique framework of pedagogic devices. No matter what the subject matter of a chapter, this enables students to develop a consistent learning strategy, making Anatomy and Physiology a superior learning tool.

Insights

Each chapter has from three to six special topic Insight essays on the history behind the science, the evolution behind human form and function, and especially the clinical implications of the basic science. Insight sidebars lend the subject deeper meaning, intriguing perspectives, and career relevance to the student.

Brushing Up

A Brushing Up list at the beginning of the chapter ties chapters together and reminds students that all organ systems are conceptually related to each other. They discourage the habit of forgetting about a chapter after the exam is over. Brushing Up lists are also useful to instructors who present the subject in a different order from the textbook.



CHAPTER 14

The Brain and Cranial Nerves

Glioblastoma (*red*), a fast-growing, highly invasive brain tumor (MRI)

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Overview of the Brain 516
- Directional Terms in Neuroanatomy 516
- Major Landmarks of the Brain 516
- Gray and White Matter 516
- Embryonic Development 517

Meninges, Ventricles, Cerebrospinal Fluid, and Blood Supply 519
- Meninges 519
- Ventricles and Cerebrospinal Fluid 521
- Blood Supply and the Brain Barrier System 524

The Hindbrain and Midbrain 524
- The Medulla Oblongata 524
- The Pons and Cerebellum 526
- The Midbrain 526
- The Reticular Formation 528

The Forebrain 529
- The Diencephalon 530
- The Cerebrum 531

Higher Brain Functions 536
- Brain Waves and Sleep 536
- Cognition 538
- Memory 539
- Emotion 539
- Sensation 540
- Motor Control 542
- Language 543
- Cerebral Lateralization 543

The Cranial Nerves 546
- The Cranial Nerves—An Aid to Memory 547

Chapter Review 558

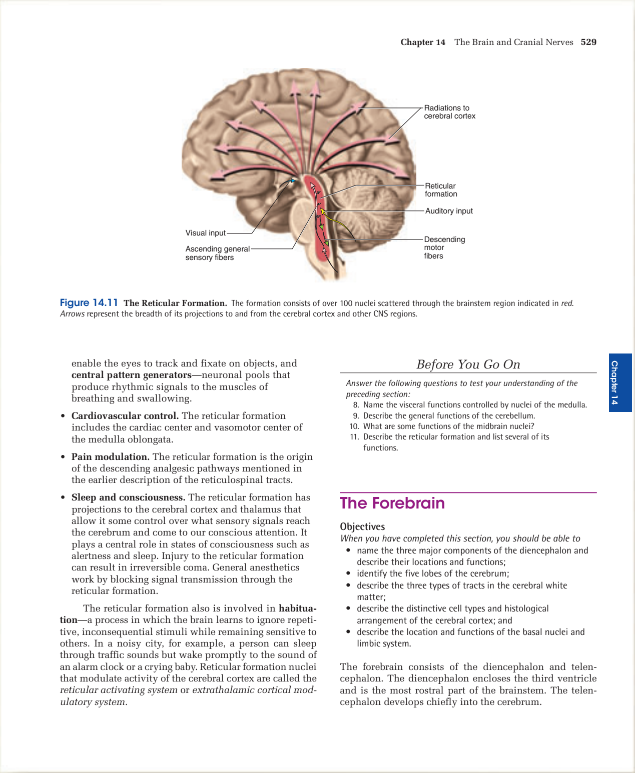
INSIGHTS

14.1 Clinical Application: Meningitis 521
14.2 Medical History: The Accidental Lobotomy of Phineas Gage 538
14.3 Clinical Application: Some Cranial Nerve Disorders 556
14.4 Clinical Application: Images of the Mind 557

Brushing Up

To understand this chapter, it is important that you understand or brush up on the following concepts:
- Anatomy of the cranium (pp. 248–257)
- Glial cells and their functions (pp. 450–451)
- Tracts of the spinal cord (pp. 486–489)
- Structure of nerves and ganglia (pp. 490–492)

515



Chapter 14 The Brain and Cranial Nerves 529

Figure 14.11 **The Reticular Formation.** The formation consists of over 100 nuclei scattered through the brainstem region indicated in *red*. *Arrows* represent the breadth of its projections to and from the cerebral cortex and other CNS regions.

enable the eyes to track and fixate on objects, and **central pattern generators**—neuronal pools that produce rhythmic signals to the muscles of breathing and swallowing.

- **Cardiovascular control.** The reticular formation includes the cardiac center and vasomotor center of the medulla oblongata.
- **Pain modulation.** The reticular formation is the origin of the descending analgesic pathways mentioned in the earlier description of the reticulospinal tracts.
- **Sleep and consciousness.** The reticular formation has projections to the cerebral cortex and thalamus that allow it some control over what sensory signals reach the cerebrum and come to our conscious attention. It plays a central role in states of consciousness such as alertness and sleep. Injury to the reticular formation can result in irreversible coma. General anesthetics work by blocking signal transmission through the reticular formation.

The reticular formation also is involved in **habituation**—a process in which the brain learns to ignore repetitive, inconsequential stimuli while remaining sensitive to others. In a noisy city, for example, a person can sleep through traffic sounds but wake promptly to the sound of an alarm clock or a crying baby. Reticular formation nuclei that modulate activity of the cerebral cortex are called the *reticular activating system* or *extrathalamic cortical modulatory system.*

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:
8. Name the visceral functions controlled by nuclei of the medulla.
9. Describe the general functions of the cerebellum.
10. What are some functions of the midbrain nuclei?
11. Describe the reticular formation and list several of its functions.

The Forebrain

Objectives
When you have completed this section, you should be able to
- name the three major components of the diencephalon and describe their locations and functions;
- identify the five lobes of the cerebrum;
- describe the three types of tracts in the cerebral white matter;
- describe the distinctive cell types and histological arrangement of the cerebral cortex; and
- describe the location and functions of the basal nuclei and limbic system.

The forebrain consists of the diencephalon and telencephalon. The diencephalon encloses the third ventricle and is the most rostral part of the brainstem. The telencephalon develops chiefly into the cerebrum.

> *I really like having the objectives listed prior to each section instead of in the beginning of each chapter. In this manner, they are more appropriate for the students and it helps them focus on the issues of importance of that section. The "Think About It" questions are especially nice as it makes the students stop and apply what they have read.*
>
> *- W. Bircher, San Juan College*

Before You Go On

Saladin divides each chapter into short "digestible" segments of about three to five pages each. Each segment ends with a few content review questions, so students can pause to evaluate their understanding of the previous few pages before going on.

Objectives

Each new section of a chapter begins with a list of learning objectives. Students and instructors find this more useful than a single list of objectives at the beginning of a chapter, where few students ever refer back to them as they progress with their reading.

Learning System

Chapter Review

Briefly restates the key points of the chapter.

Testing Your Recall

Multiple choice and short answer questions allow students to check their knowledge.

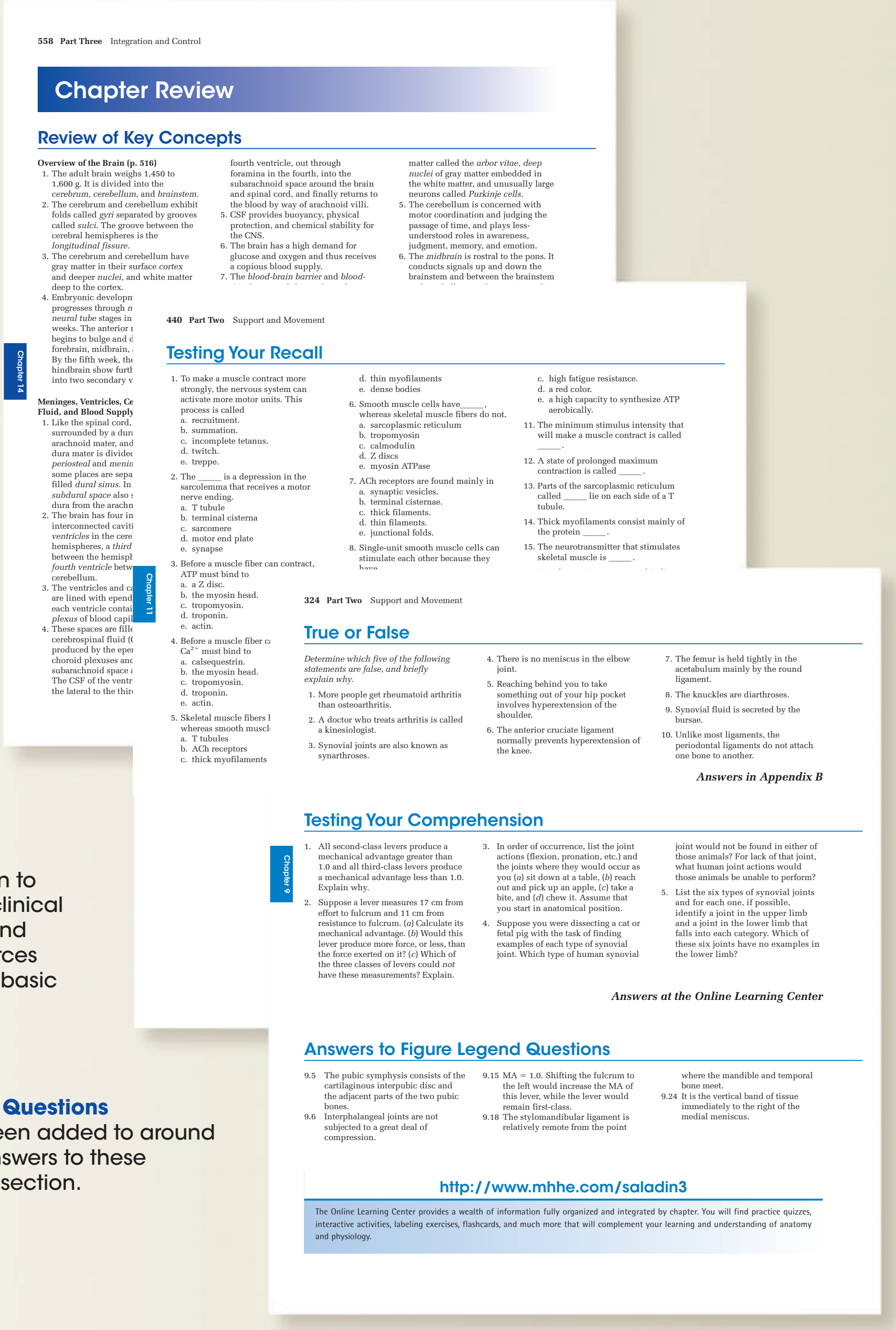
True or False

Saladin's True or False questions are more than they appear. They also require the student to explain why the false statements are untrue, thus challenging the student to think more deeply into the material and to appreciate and express subtle points. Answers can be found in the appendix.

> *The "Testing Your Recall" questions and the "Testing Your Comprehension" questions provide and excellent opportunity for students to review the material in the chapter as a whole, testing not only recall of information, but also the student's ability to apply the information they recall.*
>
> *- S. Kirkpatrick, Saint Francis University*

Testing Your Comprehension

Questions that go beyond memorization to require a deeper level of analysis and clinical application. Scenarios from Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Reports and other sources prompt students to apply the chapter's basic science to real-life case histories.



558 Part Three Integration and Control

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

Overview of the Brain (p. 516)

1. The adult brain weighs 1,450 to 1,600 g. It is divided into the *cerebrum, cerebellum,* and *brainstem.*
2. The cerebrum and cerebellum exhibit folds called *gyri* separated by grooves called *sulci.* The groove between the cerebral hemispheres is the *longitudinal fissure.*
3. The cerebrum and cerebellum have gray matter in their surface *cortex* and deeper *nuclei,* and white matter deep to the cortex.
4. Embryonic developm progresses through *n* *neural tube* stages in weeks. The anterior r begins to bulge and d forebrain, midbrain, By the fifth week, the hindbrain show furtl into two secondary v

Meninges, Ventricles, Ce Fluid, and Blood Supply

1. Like the spinal cord, surrounded by a dura arachnoid mater, and dura mater is dividec *periosteal* and *menin* some places are sepa filled *dural sinus.* In *subdural space* also s dura from the arachn
2. The brain has four in interconnected caviti *ventricles* in the cere hemispheres, a *third* between the hemisph *fourth ventricle* betw cerebellum.
3. The ventricles and ca are lined with epend each ventricle contai *plexus* of blood capil
4. These spaces are fille cerebrospinal fluid (C produced by the eper choroid plexuses anc subarachnoid space a The CSF of the ventr the lateral to the thir

fourth ventricle, out through foramina in the fourth, into the subarachnoid space around the brain and spinal cord, and finally returns to the blood by way of arachnoid villi.

5. CSF provides buoyancy, physical protection, and chemical stability for the CNS.
6. The brain has a high demand for glucose and oxygen and thus receives a copious blood supply.
7. The *blood-brain barrier* and *blood-*

matter called the *arbor vitae, deep nuclei* of gray matter embedded in the white matter, and unusually large neurons called *Purkinje cells.*

5. The cerebellum is concerned with motor coordination and judging the passage of time, and plays less-understood roles in awareness, judgment, memory, and emotion.
6. The *midbrain* is rostral to the pons. It conducts signals up and down the brainstem and between the brainstem

Chapter 14

440 Part Two Support and Movement

Testing Your Recall

1. To make a muscle contract more strongly, the nervous system can activate more motor units. This process is called
   a. recruitment.
   b. summation.
   c. incomplete tetanus.
   d. twitch.
   e. treppe.
2. The _____ is a depression in the sarcolemma that receives a motor nerve ending.
   a. T tubule
   b. terminal cisterna
   c. sarcomere
   d. motor end plate
   e. synapse
3. Before a muscle fiber can contract, ATP must bind to
   a. a Z disc.
   b. the myosin head.
   c. tropomyosin.
   d. troponin.
   e. actin.
4. Before a muscle fiber ca Ca^{2+} must bind to
   a. calsequestrin.
   b. the myosin head.
   c. tropomyosin.
   d. troponin.
   e. actin.
5. Skeletal muscle fibers l whereas smooth muscl
   a. T tubules
   b. ACh receptors
   c. thick myofilaments

   d. thin myofilaments
   e. dense bodies
6. Smooth muscle cells have_____, whereas skeletal muscle fibers do not.
   a. sarcoplasmic reticulum
   b. tropomyosin
   c. calmodulin
   d. Z discs
   e. myosin ATPase
7. ACh receptors are found mainly in
   a. synaptic vesicles.
   b. terminal cisternae.
   c. thick filaments.
   d. thin filaments.
   e. junctional folds.
8. Single-unit smooth muscle cells can stimulate each other because they have

   c. high fatigue resistance.
   d. a red color.
   e. a high capacity to synthesize ATP aerobically.

11. The minimum stimulus intensity that will make a muscle contract is called _____.
12. A state of prolonged maximum contraction is called _____.
13. Parts of the sarcoplasmic reticulum called _____ lie on each side of a T tubule.
14. Thick myofilaments consist mainly of the protein _____.
15. The neurotransmitter that stimulates skeletal muscle is _____.

Chapter 11

324 Part Two Support and Movement

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. More people get rheumatoid arthritis than osteoarthritis.
2. A doctor who treats arthritis is called a kinesiologist.
3. Synovial joints are also known as synarthroses.
4. There is no meniscus in the elbow joint.
5. Reaching behind you to take something out of your hip pocket involves hyperextension of the shoulder.
6. The anterior cruciate ligament normally prevents hyperextension of the knee.
7. The femur is held tightly in the acetabulum mainly by the round ligament.
8. The knuckles are diarthroses.
9. Synovial fluid is secreted by the bursae.
10. Unlike most ligaments, the periodontal ligaments do not attach one bone to another.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. All second-class levers produce a mechanical advantage greater than 1.0 and all third-class levers produce a mechanical advantage less than 1.0. Explain why.
2. Suppose a lever measures 17 cm from effort to fulcrum and 11 cm from resistance to fulcrum. (*a*) Calculate its mechanical advantage. (*b*) Would this lever produce more force, or less, than the force exerted on it? (*c*) Which of the three classes of levers could *not* have these measurements? Explain.
3. In order of occurrence, list the joint actions (flexion, pronation, etc.) and the joints where they would occur as you (*a*) sit down at a table, (*b*) reach out and pick up an apple, (*c*) take a bite, and (*d*) chew it. Assume that you start in anatomical position.
4. Suppose you were dissecting a cat or fetal pig with the task of finding examples of each type of synovial joint. Which type of human synovial joint would not be found in either of those animals? For lack of that joint, what human joint actions would those animals be unable to perform?
5. List the six types of synovial joints and for each one, if possible, identify a joint in the upper limb and a joint in the lower limb that falls into each category. Which of these six joints have no examples in the lower limb?

Answers at the Online Learning Center

Chapter 9

Answers to Figure Legend Questions

9.5 The pubic symphysis consists of the cartilaginous interpubic disc and the adjacent parts of the two pubic bones.
9.6 Interphalangeal joints are not subjected to a great deal of compression.
9.15 MA = 1.0. Shifting the fulcrum to the left would increase the MA of this lever, while the lever would remain first-class.
9.18 The stylomandibular ligament is relatively remote from the point where the mandible and temporal bone meet.
9.24 It is the vertical band of tissue immediately to the right of the medial meniscus.

http://www.mhhe.com/saladin3

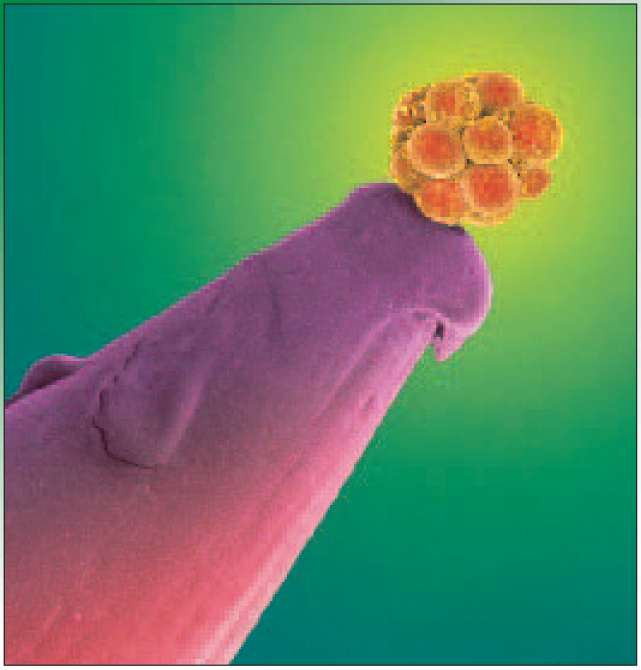
The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.

Answers to Figure Legend Questions

Thought questions have been added to around five figures per chapter. Answers to these questions are found in this section.

Website Reminder

Located at the end of the Chapter Review is a reminder that additional study questions and other learning activities for anatomy and physiology appear on the Online Learning Center.



A new life begins—a human embryo on the point of a pin

CHAPTER 1

Major Themes of Anatomy and Physiology

CHAPTER OUTLINE

The Scope of Anatomy and Physiology 2
- Anatomy—The Study of Form 2
- Physiology—The Study of Function 3

The Origins of Biomedical Science 3
- The Beginnings of Medicine 3
- The Birth of Modern Medicine 3
- Living in a Revolution 6

Scientific Method 7
- The Inductive Method 7
- The Hypothetico-Deductive Method 7
- Experimental Design 7
- Peer Review 8
- Facts, Laws, and Theories 8

Human Origins and Adaptations 9
- Evolution, Selection, and Adaptation 9
- Primate Adaptations 10
- Walking Upright 11

Human Structure 12
- The Hierarchy of Complexity 12
- Anatomical Variation 14

Human Function 14
- Characteristics of Life 14
- Physiological Variation 16
- Homeostasis and Negative Feedback 17
- Positive Feedback and Rapid Change 18

The Language of Medicine 19
- The History of Anatomical Terminology 19
- Analyzing Medical Terms 20
- Singular and Plural Forms 21
- The Importance of Precision 21

Review of Major Themes 21

Chapter Review 25

INSIGHTS

1.1 **Evolutionary Medicine:** Vestiges of Human Evolution 10
1.2 **Clinical Application:** Situs Inversus and Other Unusual Anatomy 14
1.3 **Medical History:** Men in the Oven 18
1.4 **Medical History:** Obscure Word Origins 20
1.5 **Clinical Application:** Medical Imaging 22

No branch of science hits as close to home as the science of our own bodies. We're grateful for the dependability of our hearts; we're awed by the capabilities of muscles and joints displayed by Olympic athletes; and we ponder with philosophers the ancient mysteries of mind and emotion. We want to know how our body works, and when it malfunctions, we want to know what is happening and what we can do about it. Even the most ancient writings of civilization include medical documents that attest to humanity's timeless drive to know itself. You are embarking on a subject that is as old as civilization, yet one that grows by thousands of scientific publications every week.

This book is an introduction to human structure and function, the biology of the human body. It is meant primarily to give you a foundation for advanced study in health care, exercise physiology, pathology, and other fields related to health and fitness. Beyond that purpose, however, it can also provide you with a deeply satisfying sense of self-understanding.

As rewarding and engrossing as this subject is, the human body is highly complex and a knowledge of it requires us to comprehend a great deal of detail. The details will be more manageable if we relate them to a few broad, unifying concepts. The aim of this chapter, therefore, is to introduce such concepts and put the rest of the book into perspective. We consider the historical development of anatomy and physiology, the thought processes that led to the knowledge in this book, the meaning of human life, and a central concept of physiology called *homeostasis.*

The Preface to Students describes some ways in which this book and its companion materials can be used to learn this subject most effectively. If you haven't already read it, I urge you to do so before continuing.

The Scope of Anatomy and Physiology

Anatomy is the study of structure, and **physiology** is the study of function. These approaches are complementary and never entirely separable. When we study a structure, we want to know, What does it do? Physiology lends meaning to anatomy and, conversely, anatomy is what makes physiology possible. This *unity of form and function* is an important point to bear in mind as you study the body. Many examples of it will be apparent throughout the book—some of them pointed out for you, and others you will notice for yourself.

Anatomy—The Study of Form

The simplest way to study human anatomy is the observation of surface structure, for example in performing a physical examination or making a clinical diagnosis from surface appearance. But a deeper understanding of the body depends on **dissection**—the careful cutting and separation of tissues to reveal their relationships. Both *anatomy*[1] and *dissection*[2] literally mean "cutting apart"; dissecting used to be called "anatomizing." The dissection of a dead human body, or **cadaver,**[3] is an essential part of the training of many health science students (fig. 1.1). Many insights into human structure are obtained from *comparative anatomy*—the study of more than one species in order to learn generalizations and evolutionary trends. Students of anatomy often begin by dissecting other animals with which we share a common ancestry and many structural similarities.

Figure 1.1 Early Medical Students in the Gross Anatomy Laboratory with Three Cadavers. Students of the health sciences have long begun their professional training by dissecting cadavers.

Dissection, of course, is not the method of choice when studying a living person! Physical examinations involve not only looking at the body for signs of normalcy or disease but also touching and listening to it. **Palpation**[4] is feeling structure with the fingertips, such as palpating a swollen lymph node or taking a pulse. **Auscultation**[5] (AWS-cul-TAY-shun) is listening to the natural sounds made by the body, such as heart and lung sounds. In **percussion,** the examiner taps on the body and listens to the sound for signs of abnormalities such as pockets of fluid or air.

Structure that can be seen with the naked eye, whether by surface observation or dissection, is called **gross anatomy.** Ultimately, though, the functions of the body result from its individual cells. To see those, we usually take tissue specimens, thinly slice and stain them, and observe them under the microscope. This approach is called **histology**[6] **(microscopic anatomy).** *Histopathology* is the microscopic examination of tissues for signs of disease. *Ultrastructure* refers to fine details, down to the molecular level, revealed by the electron microscope.

---

[1] *ana* = apart + *tom* = cut
[2] *dis* = apart + *sect* = cut
[3] *cadere* = to fall or die
[4] *palp* = touch, feel
[5] *auscult* = listen

Physiology—The Study of Function

Physiology[7] uses the methods of experimental science discussed later. It has many subdisciplines such as *neurophysiology* (physiology of the nervous system), *endocrinology* (physiology of hormones), and *pathophysiology* (mechanisms of disease). Partly because of limitations on experimentation with humans, much of what we know about bodily function has been gained through *comparative physiology,* the study of how different species have solved problems of life such as water balance, respiration, and reproduction. Comparative physiology is also the basis for the development of new drugs and medical procedures. For example, a cardiac surgeon cannot practice on humans without first succeeding in animal surgery, and a vaccine cannot be used on human subjects until it has been demonstrated through animal research that it confers significant benefits without unacceptable risks.

The Origins of Biomedical Science

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- give examples of how modern biomedical science emerged from an era of superstition and authoritarianism; and
- describe the contributions of some key people who helped to bring about this transformation.

Health science has progressed far more in the last 25 years than in the 2,500 years before that, but the field did not spring up overnight. It is built upon centuries of thought and controversy, triumph and defeat. We cannot fully appreciate its present state without understanding its past—people who had the curiosity to try new things, the vision to look at human form and function in new ways, and the courage to question authority.

The Beginnings of Medicine

As early as 3,000 years ago, physicians in Mesopotamia and Egypt treated patients with herbal drugs, salts, physical therapy, and faith healing. The "father of medicine," however, is usually considered to be the Greek physician *Hippocrates* (c. 460–c. 375 B.C.E.). He and his followers established a code of ethics for physicians, the Hippocratic Oath, that is still recited in modern form by many graduating medical students. Hippocrates urged physicians to stop attributing disease to the activities of gods and demons and to seek their natural causes, which could afford the only rational basis for therapy. *Aristotle* (384–322 B.C.E.) believed that diseases and other natural events could have either supernatural causes, which he called *theologi,* or natural ones, which he called *physici* or *physiologi.* We derive such terms as *physician* and *physiology* from the latter. Until the nineteenth century, physicians were called "doctors of physic." In his anatomy book, *Of the Parts of Animals,* Aristotle tried to identify unifying themes in nature. Among other points, he argued that complex structures are built from a smaller variety of simple components—a perspective that we will find useful later in this chapter.

Think About It

When you have completed this chapter, discuss the relevance of Aristotle's philosophy to our current thinking about human structure.

Claudius Galen (129–c. 199), physician to the Roman gladiators, wrote the most noteworthy medical textbook of the ancient era—a book that was worshiped to excess by medical professors for centuries to follow. Cadaver dissection was banned in Galen's time because of some horrid excesses that preceded him, including dissection of living slaves and prisoners merely to satisfy an anatomist's curiosity or to give a public demonstration. Galen was limited to learning anatomy from what he observed in treating gladiators' wounds and by dissecting pigs, monkeys, and other animals. Galen saw science as a process of discovery, not as a body of fact to be taken on faith. He warned that even his own books could be wrong, and advised his followers to trust their own observations more than they trusted any book. Unfortunately, his advice was not heeded. For nearly 1,500 years, medical professors dogmatically taught what they read in Aristotle and Galen, and few dared to question the authority of these "ancient masters."

The Birth of Modern Medicine

Medical science advanced very little during the Middle Ages. Even though some of the most famous medical schools of Europe were founded during this era, the professors taught medicine primarily as a dogmatic commentary on Galen and Aristotle, not as a field of original research. Medieval medical illustrations were crude representations of the body that served more to decorate a page than to depict the body realistically (fig. 1.2). Some were astrological charts that showed which sign of the

---

[6] *histo* = tissue + *logy* = study of
[7] *physio* = nature + *logy* = study of

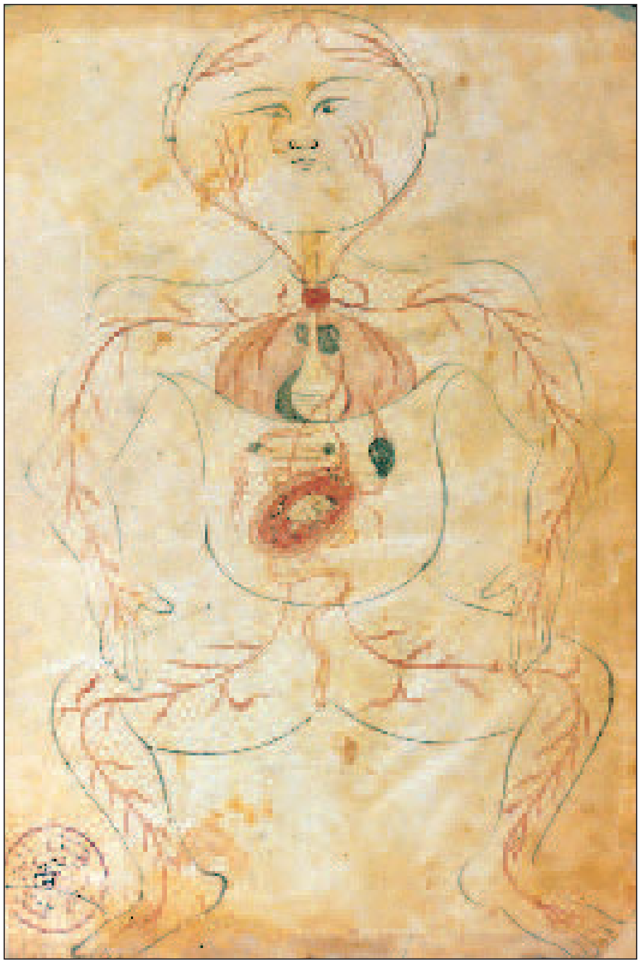


Figure 1.2 **Medieval Medical Illustration.** This figure depicts a pregnant woman with a fetus in the uterus and shows the heart, lungs, arteries, and digestive tract.

zodiac was thought to influence each organ of the body. From such pseudoscience came the word *influenza,* Italian for *influence.*

Free inquiry was less inhibited in the Muslim world than in Christendom. *Ibn Sina* (980–1037), known in the West as *Avicenna* or "the Galen of Islam," studied Galen and Aristotle, combined their findings with original discoveries, and questioned authority when the evidence demanded it. Muslim medicine soon became superior to Western medicine, and Avicenna's textbook, *The Canon of Medicine,* became the leading authority in European medical schools until the sixteenth century.

Modern medicine began around the sixteenth century in the innovative minds of such people as the anatomist Andreas Vesalius and the physiologist William Harvey. *Andreas Vesalius* (1514–64) taught anatomy in Italy. In his time, cadaver dissection had resumed for the purpose of autopsies and gradually found its way into the training of medical students throughout Europe. Dissection was an unpleasant business, however, and most professors considered it beneath their dignity. In these days before refrigeration or embalming, the odor from the decaying cadaver was unbearable. Dissections were conducted outdoors in a nonstop 4-day race against decay. Bleary medical students had to fight the urge to vomit, lest they incur the wrath of an overbearing professor. Professors typically sat in an elevated chair, the cathedra, reading dryly from Galen or Aristotle while a lower-ranking *barber-surgeon* removed putrefying organs from the cadaver and held them up for the students to see. Barbering and surgery were considered to be "kindred arts of the knife"; today's barber poles date from this era, their red and white stripes symbolizing blood and bandages.

Vesalius broke with tradition by coming down from the cathedra and doing the dissections himself. He was quick to point out that much of the anatomy in Galen's books was wrong, and he was the first to publish accurate illustrations for teaching anatomy (fig. 1.3). When others began to plagiarize his illustrations, Vesalius published the first atlas of anatomy, *De Humani Corporis Fabrica (On the Structure of the Human Body),* in 1543. This book began a rich tradition of medical illustration that has been handed down to us through such milestones as *Gray's Anatomy* (1856) and the vividly illustrated atlases and textbooks of today.

Anatomy preceded physiology and was a necessary foundation for it. What Vesalius was to anatomy, the Englishman *William Harvey* (1578–1657) was to physiology. Harvey is remembered especially for a little book he published in 1628, *On the Motion of the Heart and Blood in Animals.* Authorities before him believed that digested food traveled to the liver, turned into blood, and then traveled through the veins to organs that consumed it. Harvey measured cardiac output in snakes and other animals, however, and concluded that the amount of food eaten could not possibly account for so much blood. Thus, he inferred that blood must be recycled—pumped out of the heart by way of arteries and returned to the heart by way of veins. Capillaries, the connections between arteries and veins, had not been discovered yet, but Harvey predicted their existence.

Modern medicine also owes an enormous debt to two inventors from this era. *Antony van Leeuwenhoek* (an-TOE-nee vahn LAY-wen-hook) (1632–1723), a Dutch textile merchant, was the first to invent a microscope capable of visualizing single cells. In order to examine the weave of fabrics more closely, he ground a beadlike lens and mounted it in a metal plate equipped with a movable specimen clip (fig. 1.4). This *simple* (single-lens) *microscope* magnified objects 200 to 300 times. Out of curiosity, Leeuwenhoek examined a drop of lake water and was astonished to find a variety of microorganisms—"little animalcules," he called them, "very prettily a-swimming."

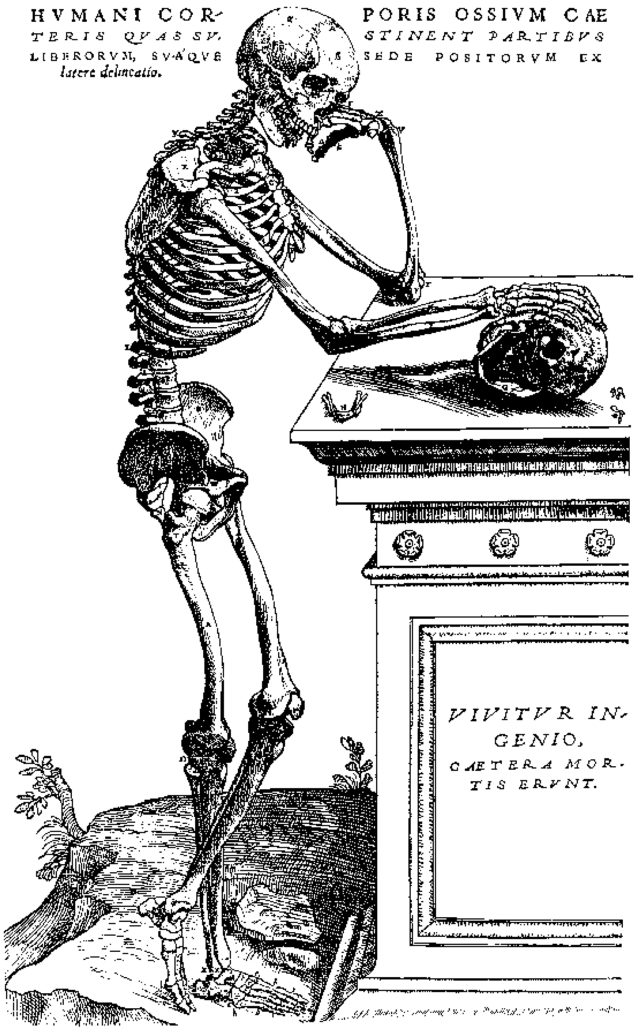

HVMANI CORPORIS OSSIVM CAETERIS QVAS SVSTINENT PARTIBVS LIBERORVM, SVAQVE SEDE POSITORVM EX latere delineatio.
VIVITVR INGENIO, CAETERA MORTIS ERVNT.

Figure 1.3 **The Art of Vesalius.** Andreas Vesalius revolutionized medical illustration with the comparatively realistic art prepared for his 1543 book, *De Humani Corporis Fabrica.*

He went on to observe practically everything he could get his hands on, including blood cells, blood capillaries, sperm, and muscular tissue. Probably no one in history had looked at nature in such a revolutionary way. Leeuwenhoek opened the door to an entirely new understanding of human structure and the causes of disease. He was praised at first, and reports of his observations were eagerly received by scientific societies, but this public enthusiasm did not last. By the end of the seventeenth century, the microscope was treated as a mere toy for the upper classes, as amusing and meaningless as a kaleidoscope. Leeuwenhoek had even become the brunt of satire.

Leeuwenhoek's most faithful admirer was the Englishman *Robert Hooke* (1635–1703), who developed the first

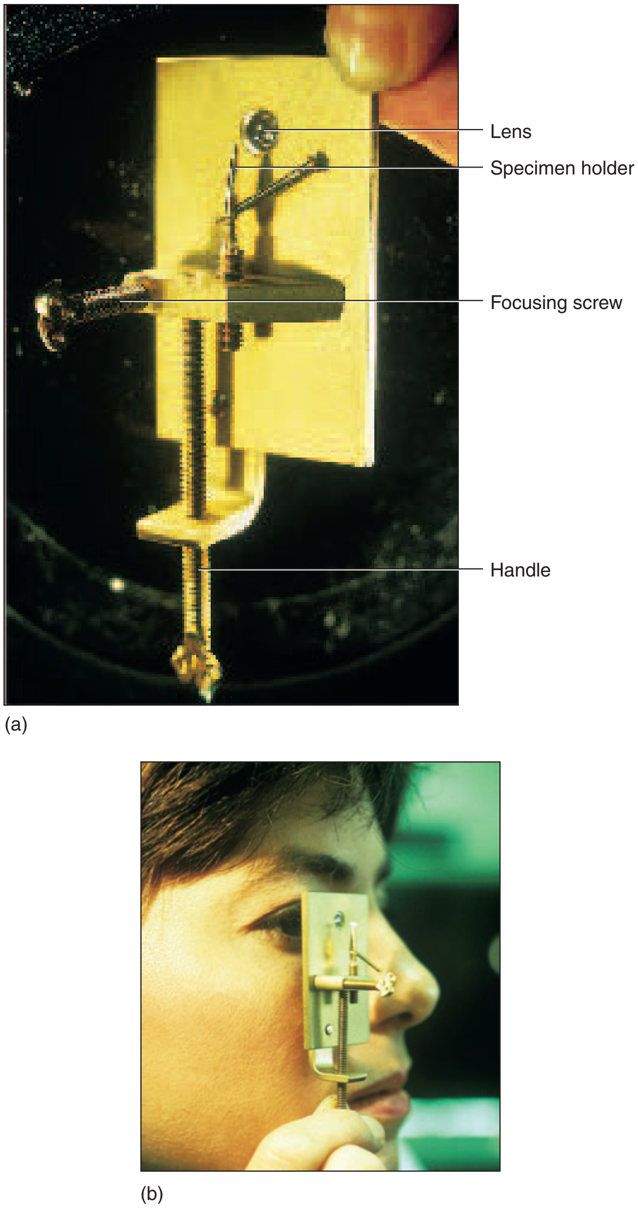

Lens
Specimen holder
Focusing screw
Handle
(a)
(b)

Figure 1.4 **Leeuwenhoek's Simple Microscope.** (*a*) Modern replica. (*b*) Viewing a specimen with a Leeuwenhoek microscope.

practical *compound microscope*—a tube with a lens at each end. The second lens further magnified the image produced by the first (fig. 1.5*a*). Hooke invented many of the features found in microscopes used today: a stage to hold the specimen, an illuminator, and coarse and fine focus controls. His microscopes produced poor images with blurry edges *(spherical aberration)* and rainbow-colored distortions *(chromatic aberration),* but poor images were better than none. Although Leeuwenhoek was the first to see cells,

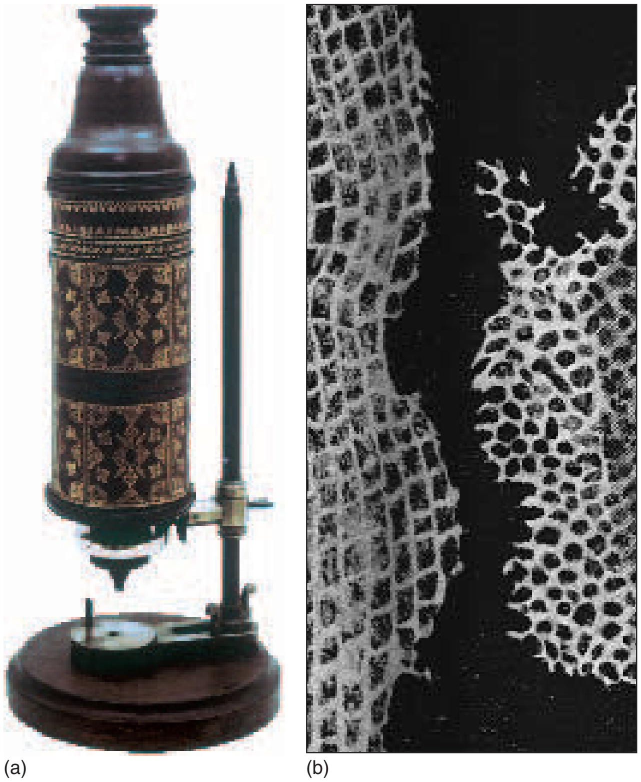

(a) (b)

Figure 1.5 Hooke's Compound Microscope. (*a*) The compound microscope had a lens at each end of a tubular body. (*b*) Hooke's drawing of cork cells, showing the thick cell walls characteristic of plants.

Hooke named them. In 1663, he observed thin shavings of cork with his microscope and observed that they "consisted of a great many little boxes," which he called *cells* after the cubicles of a monastery (fig. 1.5*b*). He published these observations in his book, *Micrographia,* in 1665.

In nineteenth-century Germany, *Carl Zeiss* (1816–88) and his business partner, physicist *Ernst Abbe* (1840–1905), greatly improved the compound microscope, adding the condenser and developing superior optics that reduced chromatic and spherical aberration. Chapter 3 describes some more recently invented types of microscopes. With improved microscopes, biologists began eagerly examining a wider variety of specimens. By 1839, botanist *Matthias Schleiden* (1804–81) and zoologist *Theodor Schwann* (1810–82) concluded that all organisms were composed of cells. This was the first tenet of the **cell theory,** added to by later biologists and summarized in chapter 3. The cell theory was perhaps the most important breakthrough in biomedical history, because all functions of the body are now interpreted as the effects of cellular activity.

Although the philosophical foundation for modern medicine was largely established by the time of Leeuwenhoek, Hooke, and Harvey, clinical practice was still in a dismal state. Few doctors attended medical school or received any formal education in basic science or human anatomy. Physicians tended to be ignorant, ineffective, and pompous. Their practice was heavily based on expelling imaginary toxins from the body by bleeding their patients or inducing vomiting, sweating, or diarrhea. They performed operations with dirty hands and instruments, spreading lethal infections from one patient to another. Fractured limbs often became gangrenous and had to be amputated, and there was no anesthesia to lessen the pain. Disease was still widely attributed to demons and witches, and many people felt they would be interfering with God's will if they tried to treat it.

Living in a Revolution

This short history brings us only to the threshold of modern biomedical science; it stops short of such momentous discoveries as the germ theory of disease, the mechanisms of heredity, and the structure of DNA. In the twentieth century, basic biology and biochemistry have given us a much deeper understanding of how the body works. Technological advances such as medical imaging (see insight 1.5, p. 22) have enhanced our diagnostic ability and life-support strategies. We have witnessed monumental developments in chemotherapy, immunization, anesthesia, surgery, organ transplants, and human genetics. By the close of the twentieth century, we had discovered the chemical "base sequence" of every human gene and begun using gene therapy to treat children born with diseases recently considered incurable. As future historians look back on the turn of this century, they may exult about the Genetic Revolution in which you are now living.

Several discoveries of the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, and the men and women behind them, are covered in short historical sketches in later chapters. Yet, the stories told in this chapter are different in a significant way. The people discussed here were pioneers in establishing the scientific way of thinking. They helped to replace superstition with an appreciation of natural law. They bridged the chasm between mystery and medication. Without this intellectual revolution, those who followed could not have conceived of the right questions to ask, much less a method for answering them.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

1. In what way did the followers of Galen disregard his advice? How does Galen's advice apply to you?
2. Describe two ways in which Vesalius improved medical education and set standards that remain relevant today.
3. How is our concept of human form and function today affected by inventors from Leeuwenhoek to Zeiss?

Scientific Method

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the inductive and hypothetico-deductive methods of obtaining scientific knowledge;
- describe some aspects of experimental design that help to ensure objective and reliable results; and
- explain what is meant by *hypothesis*, *fact*, *law*, and *theory* in science.

Prior to the seventeenth century, science was done in a haphazard way by a small number of isolated individuals. The philosophers *Francis Bacon* (1561–1626) in England and *René Descartes* (1596–1650) in France envisioned science as a far greater, systematic enterprise with enormous possibilities for human health and welfare. They detested those who endlessly debated ancient philosophy without creating anything new. Bacon argued against biased thinking and for more objectivity in science. He outlined a systematic way of seeking similarities, differences, and trends in nature and drawing useful generalizations from observable facts. You will see echoes of Bacon's philosophy in the discussion of scientific method that follows.

Though the followers of Bacon and Descartes argued bitterly with each other, both men wanted science to become a public, cooperative enterprise, supported by governments and conducted by an international community of scholars rather than a few isolated amateurs. Inspired by their vision, the French and English governments established academies of science that still flourish today. Bacon and Descartes are credited with putting science on the path to modernity, not by discovering anything new in nature or inventing any techniques—for neither man was a scientist—but by inventing new habits of scientific thought.

When we say "scientific," we mean that such thinking is based on assumptions and methods that yield reliable, objective, testable information about nature. The assumptions of science are ideas that have proven fruitful in the past—for example, the idea that natural phenomena have natural causes and nature is therefore predictable and understandable. The methods of science are highly variable. **Scientific method** refers less to observational procedures than to certain habits of disciplined creativity, careful observation, logical thinking, and honest analysis of one's observations and conclusions. It is especially important in health science to understand these habits. This field is littered with more fads and frauds than any other. We are called upon constantly to judge which claims are trustworthy and which are bogus. To make such judgments depends on an appreciation of how scientists think, how they set standards for truth, and why their claims are more reliable than others.

The Inductive Method

The **inductive method,** first prescribed by Bacon, is a process of making numerous observations until one feels confident in drawing generalizations and predictions from them. What we know of anatomy is a product of the inductive method. We describe the normal structure of the body based on observations of many bodies.

This raises the issue of what is considered proof in science. We can never prove a claim beyond all possible refutation. We can, however, consider a statement as proven *beyond reasonable doubt* if it was arrived at by reliable methods of observation, tested and confirmed repeatedly, and not falsified by any credible observation. In science, all truth is tentative; there is no room for dogma. We must always be prepared to abandon yesterday's truth if tomorrow's facts disprove it.

The Hypothetico-Deductive Method

Most physiological knowledge was obtained by the **hypothetico-deductive method.** An investigator begins by asking a question and formulating a **hypothesis**—an educated speculation or possible answer to the question. A good hypothesis must be (1) consistent with what is already known and (2) capable of being tested and possibly falsified by evidence. **Falsifiability** means that if we claim something is scientifically true, we must be able to specify what evidence it would take to prove it wrong. If nothing could possibly prove it wrong, then it is not scientific.

Think About It

The ancients thought that gods or invisible demons caused epilepsy. Today, epileptic seizures are attributed to bursts of abnormal electrical activity in nerve cells of the brain. Explain why one of these claims is falsifiable (and thus scientific), while the other claim is not.

The purpose of a hypothesis is to suggest a method for answering a question. From the hypothesis, a researcher makes a deduction, typically in the form of an "if-then" prediction: *If* my hypothesis on epilepsy is correct and I record the brain waves of patients during seizures, *then* I should observe abnormal bursts of activity. A properly conducted experiment yields observations that either support a hypothesis or require the scientist to modify or abandon it, formulate a better hypothesis, and test that one. Hypothesis testing operates in cycles of conjecture and disproof until one is found that is supported by the evidence.

Experimental Design

Doing an experiment properly involves several important considerations. What shall I measure and how can I measure it? What effects should I watch for and which ones should I ignore? How can I be sure that my results are due to the factors *(variables)* that I manipulate and not due to something else? When working on human subjects, how can I prevent the subject's expectations or state of mind from influencing the results? Most importantly, how can I eliminate my own biases and be sure that even the most skeptical critics will have as much confidence in my conclusions as I do? Several elements of experimental design address these issues:

- **Sample size.** The number of subjects (animals or people) used in a study is the sample size. An adequate sample size controls for chance events and individual variations in response and thus enables us to place more confidence in the outcome. For example, would you rather trust your health to a drug that was tested on 5 people or one tested on 5,000?
- **Controls.** Biomedical experiments require comparison between treated and untreated individuals so that we can judge whether the treatment has any effect. A **control group** consists of subjects that are as much like the **treatment group** as possible except with respect to the variable being tested. For example, there is evidence that garlic lowers blood cholesterol levels. In one study, a group of people with high cholesterol was given 800 mg of garlic powder daily for 4 months and exhibited an average 12% reduction in cholesterol. Was this a significant reduction, and was it due to the garlic? It is impossible to say without comparison to a control group of similar people who received no treatment. In this study, the control group averaged only a 3% reduction in cholesterol, so garlic *seems* to have made a difference.
- **Psychosomatic effects.** Psychosomatic effects (effects of the subject's state of mind on his or her physiology) can have an undesirable impact on experimental results if we do not control for them. In drug research, it is therefore customary to give the control group a **placebo** (pla-SEE-bo)—a substance with no significant physiological effect on the body. If we were testing a drug, for example, we could give the treatment group the drug and the control group identical-looking starch tablets. Neither group must know which tablets it is receiving. If the two groups showed significantly different effects, we could feel confident that it did not result from a knowledge of what they were taking.
- **Experimenter bias.** In the competitive, high-stakes world of medical research, experimenters may want certain results so much that their biases, even subconscious ones, can affect their interpretation of the data. One way to control for this is the **double-blind method.** In this procedure, neither the subject to whom a treatment is given nor the person giving it and recording the results knows whether that subject is receiving the experimental treatment or placebo. A researcher might prepare identical-looking tablets, some with the drug and some with placebo, label them with code numbers, and distribute them to participating physicians. The physicians themselves do not know whether they are administering drug or placebo, so they cannot give the subjects even accidental hints of which substance they are taking. When the data are collected, the researcher can correlate them with the composition of the tablets and determine whether the drug had more effect than the placebo.
- **Statistical testing.** If you tossed a coin 100 times, you would expect it to come up about 50 heads and 50 tails. If it actually came up 48:52, you would probably attribute this to random error rather than bias in the coin. But what if it came up 40:60? At what point would you begin to suspect bias? This type of problem is faced routinely in research—how great a difference must there be between control and experimental groups before we feel confident that the treatment really had an effect? What if a treatment group exhibited a 12% reduction in cholesterol level and the placebo group a 10% reduction? Would this be enough to conclude that the treatment was effective? Scientists are well grounded in **statistical tests** that can be applied to the data. Perhaps you have heard of the chi-square test, the *t* test, or analysis of variance, for example. A typical outcome of a statistical test might be expressed, "We can be 99.5% sure that the difference between group A and group B was due to the experimental treatment and not to random variation."

Peer Review

When a scientist applies for funds to support a research project or submits results for publication, the application or manuscript is submitted to **peer review**—a critical evaluation by other experts in that field. Even after a report is published, if the results are important or unconventional, other scientists may attempt to reproduce them to see if the author was correct. At every stage from planning to post-publication, scientists are therefore subject to intense scrutiny by their colleagues. Peer review is one mechanism for ensuring honesty, objectivity, and quality in science.

Facts, Laws, and Theories

The most important product of scientific research is understanding how nature works—whether it be the nature of a pond to an ecologist or the nature of a liver cell to a physiologist. We express our understanding as *facts, laws,* and *theories* of nature. It is important to appreciate the differences between these.

A scientific **fact** is information that can be independently verified by any trained person—for example, the fact that an iron deficiency leads to anemia. A **law of nature** is a generalization about the predictable ways in which matter and energy behave. It is the result of inductive reasoning based on repeated, confirmed observations. Some laws are expressed as concise verbal statements, such as the *first law of thermodynamics:* Energy can be converted from one form to another but cannot be created or destroyed. Others are expressed as mathematical formulae, such as the *law of Laplace:* $F = 2T/r$, where F is a force that tends to cause a microscopic air sac of the lung to collapse, T is the surface tension of the fluid lining the sac, and r is the sac's radius.

A **theory** is an explanatory statement, or set of statements, derived from facts, laws, and confirmed hypotheses. Some theories have names, such as the *cell theory,* the *fluid-mosaic theory* of cell membranes, and the *sliding filament theory* of muscle contraction. Most, however, remain unnamed. The purpose of a theory is not only to concisely summarize what we already know but, moreover, to suggest directions for further study and to help predict what the findings should be if the theory is correct.

Law and *theory* mean something different in science than they do to most people. In common usage, a law is a rule created and enforced by people; we must obey it or risk a penalty. A law of nature, however, is a description; laws do not *govern* the universe, they *describe* it. Laypeople tend to use the word *theory* for what a scientist would call a hypothesis—for example, "I have a theory why my car won't start." The difference in meaning causes significant confusion when it leads people to think that a scientific theory (such as the theory of evolution) is merely a guess or conjecture, instead of recognizing it as a summary of conclusions drawn from a large body of observed facts. The concepts of gravity and electrons are theories, too, but this does not mean they are merely speculations.

Think About It

Was the cell theory proposed by Schleiden and Schwann more a product of the hypothetico-deductive method or of the inductive method? Explain your answer.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

4. Describe the general process involved in the inductive method.
5. Describe some sources of potential bias in biomedical research. What are some ways of minimizing such bias?
6. Is there more information in an individual scientific fact or in a theory? Explain.

Human Origins and Adaptations

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- define *evolution* and *natural selection;*
- describe some human characteristics that can be attributed to the tree-dwelling habits of earlier primates;
- describe some human characteristics that evolved later in connection with upright walking; and
- explain why evolution is relevant to understanding human form and function.

If any two theories have the broadest implications for understanding the human body, they are probably the cell theory and the theory of natural selection. *Natural selection,* an explanation of how species originate and change through time, was the brainchild of *Charles Darwin* (1809–82)—probably the most influential biologist who ever lived. His book, *On the Origin of Species by Means of Natural Selection* (1859), has been called "the book that shook the world." In presenting the first well-supported theory of evolution, *On the Origin of Species* not only caused the restructuring of all of biology but also profoundly changed the prevailing view of our origin, nature, and place in the universe.

On the Origin of Species scarcely touched upon human biology, but its unmistakable implications for humans created an intense storm of controversy that continues even today. In *The Descent of Man* (1871), Darwin directly addressed the issue of human evolution and emphasized features of anatomy and behavior that reveal our relationship to other animals. No understanding of human form and function is complete without an understanding of our evolutionary history.

Evolution, Selection, and Adaptation

Evolution simply means change in the genetic composition of a population of organisms. Examples include the evolution of bacterial resistance to antibiotics, the appearance of new strains of the AIDS virus, and the emergence of new species of organisms. The theory of **natural selection** is essentially this: Some individuals within a species have hereditary advantages over their competitors—for example, better camouflage, disease resistance, or ability to attract mates—that enable them to produce more offspring. They pass these advantages on to their offspring, and such characteristics therefore become more and more common in successive generations. This brings about the genetic change in a population that constitutes evolution.

Natural forces that promote the reproductive success of some individuals more than others are called **selection pressures.** They include such things as climate, predators, disease, competition, and the availability of food. **Adaptations** are features of an organism's anatomy, physiology, and behavior that have evolved in response to these selection pressures and enable the organism to cope with the challenges of its environment. We will consider shortly some selection pressures and adaptations that were important to human evolution.

Darwin could scarcely have predicted the overwhelming mass of genetic, molecular, fossil, and other evidence of human evolution that would accumulate in the twentieth century and further substantiate his theory. A technique called DNA hybridization, for example, suggests a difference of only 1.6% in DNA structure between humans and chimpanzees. Chimpanzees and gorillas differ by 2.3%. DNA structure suggests that a chimpanzee's closest living relative is not the gorilla or any other ape—it is us.

Several aspects of our anatomy make little sense without an awareness that the human body has a history (see insight 1.1). Our evolutionary relationship to other species is also important in choosing animals for biomedical research. If there were no issues of cost, availability, or ethics, we might test drugs on our nearest living relatives, the chimpanzees, before approving them for human use. Their genetics, anatomy, and physiology are most similar to ours, and their reactions to drugs therefore afford the best prediction of how the human body would react. On the other hand, if we had no kinship with any other species, the selection of a test species would be arbitrary; we might as well use frogs or snails. In reality, we compromise. Rats and mice are used extensively for research because they are fellow mammals with a physiology similar to ours, but they present fewer of the aforementioned issues than chimpanzees or other mammals do. An animal species or strain selected for research on a particular problem is called a *model*—for example, a mouse model for leukemia.

Insight 1.1 Evolutionary Medicine

Vestiges of Human Evolution

One of the classic lines of evidence for evolution, debated even before Darwin was born, is *vestigial organs.* These structures are the remnants of organs that apparently were better developed and more functional in the ancestors of a species. They now serve little or no purpose or, in some cases, have been converted to new functions.

Our bodies, for example, are covered with millions of hairs, each equipped with a useless little *piloerector muscle.* In other mammals, these muscles fluff the hair and conserve heat. In humans, they merely produce goose bumps. Above each ear, we have three *auricularis muscles.* In other mammals, they move the ears to receive sounds better, but most people cannot contract them at all. As Darwin said, it makes no sense that humans would have such structures were it not for the fact that we came from ancestors in which they were functional.

Primate Adaptations

We belong to an order of mammals called the Primates, which also includes the monkeys and apes. Some of our anatomical and physiological features can be traced to the earliest primates, descended from certain squirrel-sized, insect-eating, African mammals (insectivores) that took up life in the trees 55 to 60 million years ago. This **arboreal**[8] (treetop) habitat probably afforded greater safety from predators, less competition, and a rich food supply of leaves, fruit, insects, and lizards. But the forest canopy is a challenging world, with dim and dappled sunlight, swaying branches, and prey darting about in the dense foliage. Any new feature that enabled arboreal animals to move about more easily in the treetops would have been strongly favored by natural selection. Thus, the shoulder became more mobile and enabled primates to reach out in any direction (even overhead, which few other mammals can do). The thumbs became **opposable**—they could cross the palm to touch the fingertips—and enabled primates to hold small objects and manipulate them more precisely than other mammals can. Opposable thumbs made the hands **prehensile**[9]—able to grasp branches by encircling them with the thumb and fingers (fig. 1.6). The thumb is so important that it receives highest priority in the repair of hand injuries. If the thumb can be saved, the hand can be reasonably functional; if it is lost, hand functions are severely diminished.

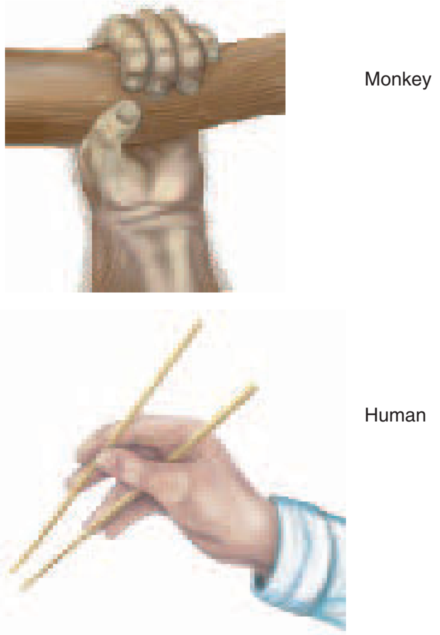


Figure 1.6 **Primate Hands.** The opposable thumb makes the primate hand prehensile, able to encircle and grasp objects.

---

[8] *arbor* = tree + *eal* = pertaining to

[9] *prehens* = to seize

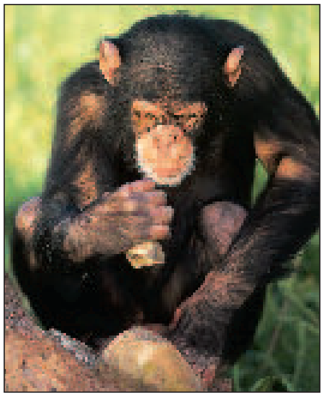


Figure 1.7 **Primitive Tool Use in a Primate.** Chimpanzees exhibit the prehensile hands and forward-facing eyes typical of primates. Such traits endow primates with stereoscopic vision (depth perception) and good hand-eye coordination, two supremely important factors in human evolution.

The eyes of primates moved to a more forward-facing position (fig. 1.7), which allowed for **stereoscopic**[10] **vision** (depth perception). This adaptation provided better hand-eye coordination in catching and manipulating prey, with the added advantage of making it easier to judge distances accurately in leaping from tree to tree. Color vision, rare among mammals, is also a primate hallmark. Primates eat mainly fruit and leaves. The ability to distinguish subtle shades of orange and red enables them to distinguish ripe, sugary fruits from unripe ones. Distinguishing subtle shades of green helps them to differentiate between tender young leaves and tough, more toxic older foliage.

Various fruits ripen at different times and in widely separated places in the tropical forest. This requires a good memory of what will be available, when, and how to get there. Larger brains may have evolved in response to the challenge of efficient food finding and, in turn, laid the foundation for more sophisticated social organization.

None of this is meant to imply that humans evolved from monkeys or apes—a common misconception about evolution that no biologist believes. Observations of monkeys and apes, however, provide insight into how primates adapt to the arboreal habitat and how certain human adaptations probably originated.

Walking Upright

About 4 to 5 million years ago, much of the African forest was replaced by savanna (grassland). Some primates adapted to living on the savanna, but this was a dangerous place with more predators and less protection. Just as squirrels and monkeys stand briefly on their hind legs to look around for danger, so would these early ground-dwellers. Being able to stand up not only helps an animal stay alert but also frees the forelimbs for purposes other than walking. Chimpanzees sometimes walk upright to carry food or weapons (sticks and rocks), and it is reasonable to suppose that our early ancestors did so too. They could also carry their infants.

Table 1.1 Brain Volumes of the Hominidae

Genus or Species	Time of Origin (millions of years ago)	Brain Volume (milliliters)
Australopithecus	3.9–4.2	400
Homo habilis	2.5	650
Homo erectus	1.1	1,100
Homo sapiens	0.3	1,350

These advantages are so great that they favored skeletal modifications that made **bipedalism**[11]—standing and walking on two legs—easier. The anatomy of the human pelvis, femur, knee, great toe, foot arches, spinal column, skull, arms, and many muscles became adapted for bipedal locomotion, as did many aspects of human family life and society. As the skeleton and muscles became adapted for bipedalism, brain volume increased dramatically (table 1.1). It must have become increasingly difficult for a fully developed, large-brained infant to pass through the mother's pelvic outlet at birth. This may explain why humans are born in a relatively immature, helpless state compared to other mammals, before their nervous systems have matured and the bones of the skull have fused.

The oldest bipedal primates (family Hominidae) are classified in the genus *Australopithecus* (aus-TRAL-oh-PITH-eh-cus). About 2.5 million years ago, *Australopithecus* gave rise to *Homo habilis,* the earliest member of our own genus. *Homo habilis* differed from *Australopithecus* in height, brain volume, some details of skull anatomy, and tool-making ability. It was probably the first primate able to speak. *Homo habilis* gave rise to *Homo erectus* about 1.1 million years ago, which in turn led to our own species, *Homo sapiens,* about 300,000 years ago (fig. 1.8). *Homo sapiens* includes the extinct Neanderthal and Cro-Magnon people as well as modern humans.

This brief account barely begins to explain how human anatomy, physiology, and behavior have been shaped by

---

[10] *stereo* = solid + *scop* = vision

[11] *bi* = two + *ped* = foot

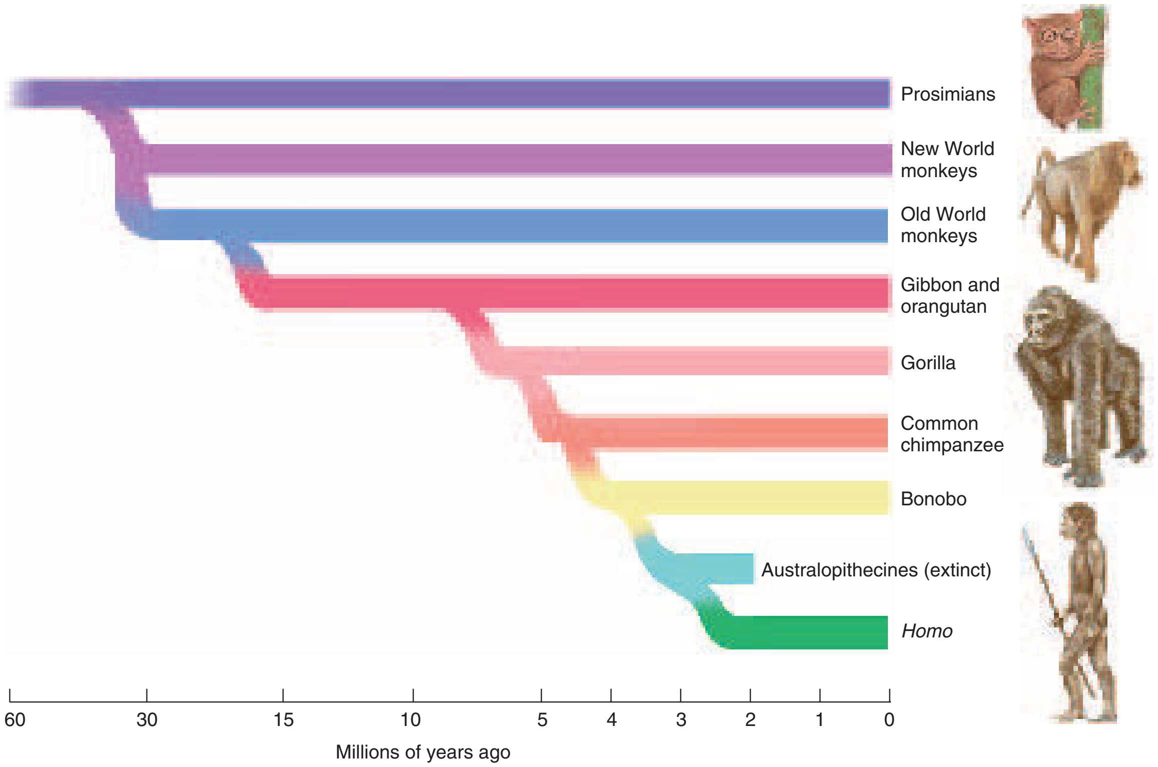


Figure 1.8 **The Place of Humans in Primate Evolution.** Figures at the *right* show some representative primates. The branch points in this "family tree" show the approximate times that different lines diverged from a common ancestor. Note that the time scale is not uniform; recent events are expanded for clarity.

Which is more closely related to humans, a gorilla or a monkey? How long ago did the last common ancestor of chimpanzees and humans exist?

ancient selection pressures. Later chapters further demonstrate that the evolutionary perspective provides a meaningful understanding of why humans are the way we are. Evolution is the basis for comparative anatomy and physiology, which have been so fruitful for the understanding of human biology. If we were not related to any other species, those sciences would be pointless. The emerging science of **evolutionary (darwinian) medicine** traces some of our diseases and imperfections to our evolutionary past.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

7. Define *adaptation* and *selection pressure.* Why are these concepts important in understanding human anatomy and physiology?
8. Select any two human characteristics and explain how they may have originated in primate adaptations to an arboreal habitat.
9. Select two other human characteristics and explain how they may have resulted from adaptation to a grassland habitat.

Human Structure

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- list the levels of human structure from the most complex to the simplest;
- discuss the value of both reductionistic and holistic viewpoints to understanding human form and function; and
- discuss the clinical significance of anatomical variation among humans.

Earlier in this chapter, we observed that human anatomy is studied by a variety of techniques—dissection, palpation, and so forth. In addition, anatomy is studied at several levels of detail, from the whole body down to the molecular level.

The Hierarchy of Complexity

Consider for the moment an analogy to human structure: The English language, like the human body, is very complex, yet an endless array of ideas can be conveyed with a limited number of words. All words in English are, in turn, composed of various combinations of just 26 letters. Between an essay and an alphabet are successively simpler levels of organization: paragraphs, sentences, words, and syllables. We can say that language exhibits a hierarchy of complexity, with letters, syllables, words, and so forth being successive levels of the hierarchy. Humans have an analogous hierarchy of complexity, as follows (fig. 1.9):

The organism is composed of organ systems,
organ systems are composed of organs,
organs are composed of tissues,
tissues are composed of cells,
cells are composed (in part) of organelles,
organelles are composed of molecules, and
molecules are composed of atoms.

The **organism** is a single, complete individual.

An **organ system** is a group of organs with a unique collective function, such as circulation, respiration, or digestion. The human body has 11 organ systems, illustrated in atlas A immediately following this chapter: the integumentary, skeletal, muscular, nervous, endocrine, circulatory, lymphatic, respiratory, urinary, digestive, and reproductive systems. Usually, the organs of one system are physically interconnected, such as the kidneys, ureters, urinary bladder, and urethra, which compose the urinary system. Beginning with chapter 6, this book is organized around the organ systems.

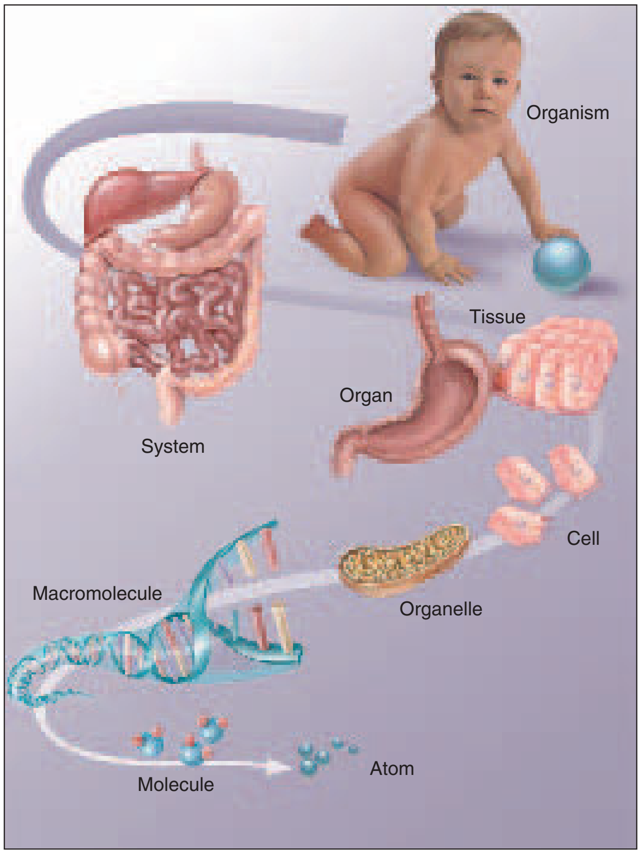


Figure 1.9 **The Body's Structural Hierarchy.**

An **organ** is a structure composed of two or more tissue types that work together to carry out a particular function. Organs have definite anatomical boundaries and are visibly distinguishable from adjacent structures. Most organs and higher levels of structure are within the domain of gross anatomy. However, there are organs within organs—the large organs visible to the naked eye often contain smaller organs visible only with the microscope. The skin, for example, is the body's largest organ. Included within it are thousands of smaller organs: each hair, nail, gland, nerve, and blood vessel of the skin is an organ in itself.

A **tissue** is a mass of similar cells and cell products that forms a discrete region of an organ and performs a specific function. The body is composed of only four primary classes of tissue—epithelial, connective, nervous, and muscular tissues. Histology, the study of tissues, is the subject of chapter 5.

Cells are the smallest units of an organism that carry out all the basic functions of life; nothing simpler than a cell is considered alive. A cell is enclosed in a *plasma membrane* composed of lipids and proteins. Most cells have one nucleus, an organelle that contains its DNA. *Cytology,* the study of cells and organelles, is the subject of chapters 3 and 4.

Organelles[12] are microscopic structures in a cell that carry out its individual functions. Examples include mitochondria, centrioles, and lysosomes.

Organelles and other cellular components are composed of **molecules.** The largest molecules, such as proteins, fats, and DNA, are called *macromolecules.* A molecule is a particle composed of at least two **atoms,** the smallest particles with unique chemical identities.

The theory that a large, complex system such as the human body can be understood by studying its simpler components is called **reductionism.** First espoused by Aristotle, this has proven to be a highly productive approach; indeed, it is essential to scientific thinking. Yet the reductionistic view is not the last word in understanding human life. Just as it would be very difficult to predict the workings of an automobile transmission merely by looking at a pile of its disassembled gears and levers, one could never predict the human personality from a complete knowledge of the circuitry of the brain or the genetic sequence of DNA. **Holism**[13] is the complementary theory that there are "emergent properties" of the whole organism that cannot be predicted from the properties of its separate parts—human beings are more than the sum of their parts. To be most effective, a health-care provider does not treat merely a disease or an organ system, but a whole person. A patient's perceptions, emotional responses to life, and confidence in the nurse, therapist, or physician profoundly affect the outcome of treatment. In fact, these psychological factors often play a greater role in a patient's recovery than the physical treatments administered.

---

[12] *elle* = little
[13] *holo* = whole, entire

Anatomical Variation

Anatomists, surgeons, and students must be constantly aware of how much one body can differ from another. A quick look around any classroom is enough to show that no two humans are exactly alike; on close inspection, even identical twins exhibit differences. Yet anatomy atlases and textbooks can easily give you the impression that everyone's internal anatomy is the same. This simply is not true. Books such as this one can only teach you the most common structure—the anatomy seen in about 70% or more of people. Someone who thinks that all human bodies are the same internally would make a very confused medical student or an incompetent surgeon.

Some people lack certain organs. For example, most of us have a *palmaris longus* muscle in the forearm and a *plantaris* muscle in the lower leg, but these are absent from some people. Most of us have five lumbar vertebrae (bones of the lower spine), but some people have six and some have four. Most of us have one spleen and two kidneys, but some have two spleens or only one kidney. Most kidneys are supplied by a single *renal artery,* but some have two renal arteries. Figure 1.10 shows some common variations in human anatomy, and insight 1.2 describes a particularly dramatic and clinically important variation.

Insight 1.2 Clinical Application

Situs Inversus and Other Unusual Anatomy

In most people, the spleen, pancreas, sigmoid colon, and most of the heart are on the left, while the appendix, gallbladder, and most of the liver are on the right. The normal arrangement of these and other internal organs is called *situs* (SITE-us) *solitus.* About 1 in 8,000 people, however, are born with an abnormality called *situs inversus*—the organs of the thoracic and abdominal cavities are reversed between right and left. A selective right-left reversal of the heart is called *dextrocardia.* In *situs perversus,* a single organ occupies an atypical position—for example, a kidney located low in the pelvic cavity instead of high in the abdominal cavity.

Conditions such as dextrocardia in the absence of complete situs inversus can cause serious medical problems. Complete situs inversus, however, usually causes no functional problems because all of the viscera, though reversed, maintain their normal relationships to each other. Situs inversus is often discovered in the fetus by sonography, but many people remain unaware of their condition for decades until it is discovered by medical imaging, on physical examination, or in surgery. You can easily imagine the importance of such conditions in diagnosing appendicitis, performing gallbladder surgery, interpreting an X ray, or auscultating the heart valves.

Think About It

People who are allergic to aspirin or penicillin often wear Medic Alert bracelets or necklaces that note this fact in case they need emergency medical treatment and are unable to communicate. Why would it be important for a person with situs inversus to have this noted on a Medic Alert bracelet?

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

10. In the hierarchy of human structure, what is the level between organ system and tissue? Between cell and molecule?
11. How are tissues relevant to the definition of an organ?
12. Why is reductionism a necessary but not sufficient point of view for fully understanding a patient's illness?
13. Why should medical students observe multiple cadavers and not be satisfied to dissect only one?

Human Function

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- state the characteristics that distinguish living organisms from nonliving objects;
- explain the importance of defining a reference man and woman;
- define *homeostasis* and explain why this concept is central to physiology;
- define *negative feedback,* give an example of it, and explain its importance to homeostasis; and
- define *positive feedback* and give examples of its beneficial and harmful effects.

Characteristics of Life

Why do we consider a growing child to be alive, but not a growing crystal? Is abortion the taking of a human life? If so, what about a contraceptive foam that kills only sperm? As a patient is dying, at what point does it become ethical to disconnect life-support equipment and remove organs for donation? If these organs are alive, as they must be to serve someone else, then why isn't the donor considered alive? Such questions have no easy answers, but they demand a concept of what life is—a concept that may differ with one's biological, medical, or legal perspective.

From a biological viewpoint, life is not a single property. It is a collection of properties that help to distinguish living from nonliving things:

- **Organization.** Living things exhibit a far higher level of organization than the nonliving world around them. They expend a great deal of energy to maintain order,

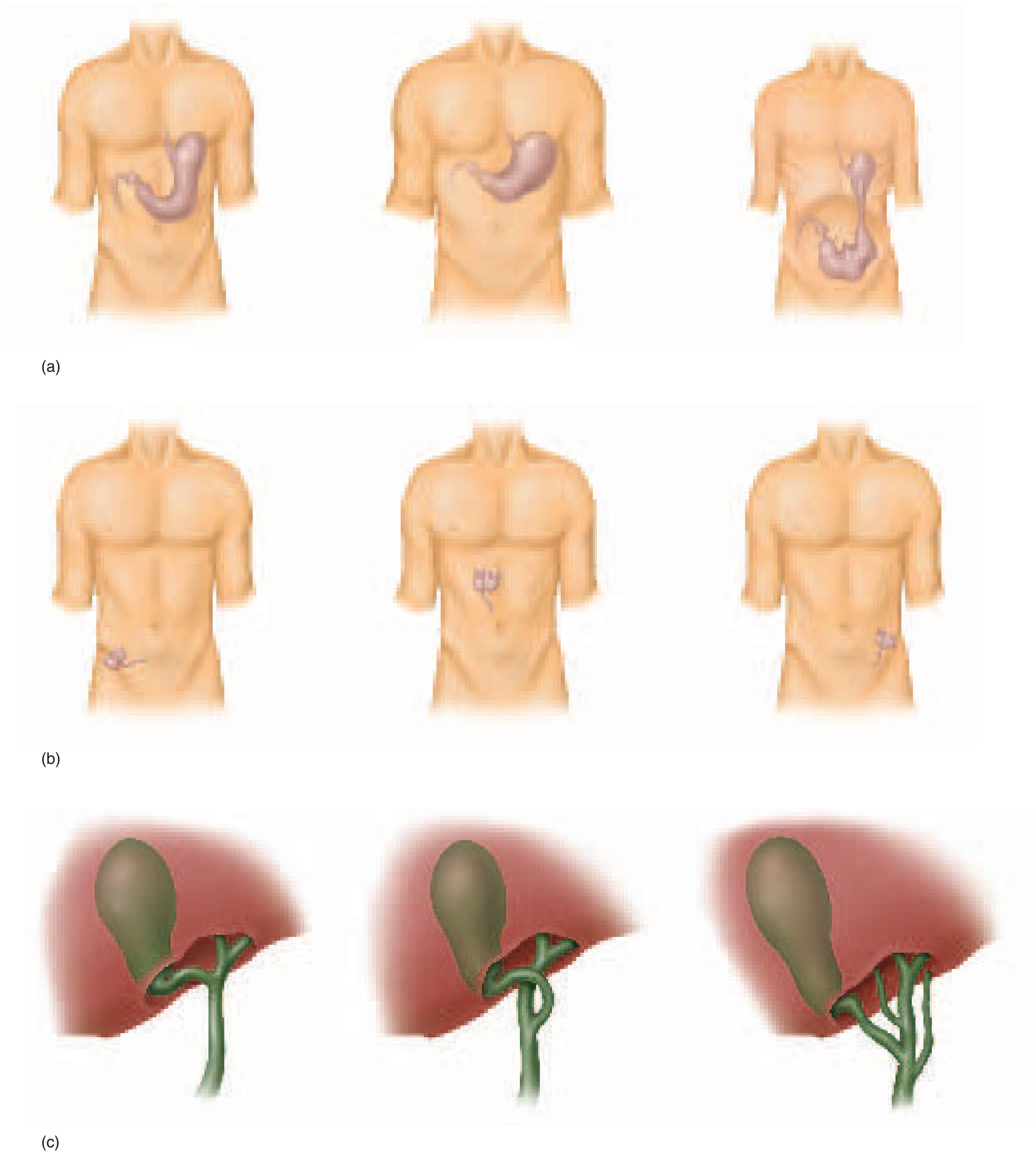


Figure 1.10 **Variation in Human Anatomy.** The left-hand figure in each case depicts the most common anatomy. (*a*) Variations in stomach shape correlated with body physique. (*b*) Variations in the position of the appendix. (*c*) Variations in the bile passages of the liver and gallbladder.

and a breakdown in this order is accompanied by disease and often death.

- **Cellular composition.** Living matter is always compartmentalized into one or more cells.
- **Metabolism** and **excretion.** Living things take in molecules from the environment and chemically change them into molecules that form their own structures, control their physiology, or provide them with energy. **Metabolism**[14] is the sum of all this internal chemical change. It consists of two classes of reactions: *anabolism,*[15] in which relatively complex molecules are synthesized from simpler ones (for example, protein synthesis), and *catabolism,*[16] in which relatively complex molecules are broken down into simpler ones (for example, protein digestion). Metabolism inevitably produces chemical wastes, some of which are toxic if they accumulate. Metabolism therefore requires **excretion,** the separation of wastes from the tissues and their elimination from the body. There is a constant turnover of molecules in the body; few of the molecules now in your body have been there for more than a year. It is food for thought that although you sense a continuity of personality and experience from your childhood to the present, nearly all of your body has been replaced within the past year.
- **Responsiveness** and **movement.** The ability of organisms to sense and react to **stimuli** (changes in their environment) is called *responsiveness, irritability,* or *excitability.* It occurs at all levels from the single cell to the entire body, and it characterizes all living things from bacteria to you. Responsiveness is especially obvious in animals because of nerve and muscle cells that exhibit high sensitivity to environmental stimuli, rapid transmission of information, and quick reactions. Most living organisms are capable of self-propelled movement from place to place, and all organisms and cells are at least capable of moving substances internally, such as moving food along the digestive tract or moving molecules and organelles from place to place within a cell.
- **Homeostasis.** While the environment around an organism changes, the organism maintains relatively stable internal conditions. This ability to maintain internal stability, called *homeostasis,* is explored in more depth shortly.
- **Development.** Development is any change in form or function over the lifetime of the organism. In most organisms, it involves two major processes: (1) **differentiation,** the transformation of cells with no specialized function into cells that are committed to a particular task, and (2) **growth,** an increase in size. Some nonliving things grow, but not in the way your body does. If you let a saturated sugar solution evaporate, crystals will grow from it, but not through a change in the composition of the sugar. They merely add more sugar molecules from the solution to the crystal surface. The growth of the body, by contrast, occurs through chemical change (metabolism); for the most part, your body is not composed of the molecules you ate but of molecules made by chemically altering your food.
- **Reproduction.** All living organisms can produce copies of themselves, thus passing their genes on to new, younger containers—their offspring.
- **Evolution.** All living species exhibit genetic change from generation to generation and therefore evolve. This occurs because *mutations* (changes in DNA structure) are inevitable and because environmental selection pressures endow some individuals with greater reproductive success than others. Unlike the other characteristics of life, evolution is a characteristic seen only in the population as a whole. No single individual evolves over the course of its life.

Clinical and legal criteria of life differ from these biological criteria. A person who has shown no brain waves for 24 hours, and has no reflexes, respiration, or heartbeat other than what is provided by artificial life support, can be declared legally dead. At such time, however, most of the body is still biologically alive and its organs may be useful for transplant.

Physiological Variation

Earlier we considered the clinical importance of variations in human anatomy, but physiology is even more variable. Physiological variables differ with sex, age, weight, diet, degree of physical activity, and environment, among other things. Failure to consider such variation leads to medical mistakes such as overmedication of the elderly or medicating women on the basis of research that was done on men. If an introductory textbook states a typical human heart rate, blood pressure, red blood cell count, or body temperature, it is generally assumed that such values are for a healthy young adult unless otherwise stated. A point of reference for such general values is the reference man and reference woman. The **reference man** is defined as a healthy male 22 years old, weighing 70 kg (154 lb), living at a mean ambient (surrounding) temperature of 20°C, engaging in light physical activity, and consuming 2,800 kilocalories (kcal) per day. The **reference woman** is the same except for a weight of 58 kg (128 lb) and an intake of 2,000 kcal/day.

---

[14] *metabol* = change + *ism* = process
[15] *ana* = up
[16] *cata* = down

Homeostasis and Negative Feedback

Homeostasis[17] (ho-me-oh-STAY-sis) is one of the theories that will arise most frequently in this book as we study mechanisms of health and disease. The human body has a remarkable capacity for self-restoration. Hippocrates commented that it usually returns to a state of equilibrium by itself, and people recover from most illnesses even without the help of a physician. This tendency results from homeostasis, the ability to detect change and activate mechanisms that oppose it.

French physiologist *Claude Bernard* (1813–78) observed that the internal conditions of the body remain fairly stable even when external conditions vary greatly. For example, whether it is freezing cold or swelteringly hot outdoors, the internal temperature of your body stays within a range of about 36° to 37°C (97°–99°F). American physiologist *Walter Cannon* (1871–1945) coined the term *homeostasis* for this tendency to maintain internal stability. Homeostasis has been one of the most enlightening concepts in physiology. Physiology is largely a group of mechanisms for maintaining homeostasis, and the loss of homeostatic control tends to cause illness or death. Pathophysiology is essentially the study of unstable conditions that result when our homeostatic controls go awry.

Do not, however, overestimate the degree of internal stability. Internal conditions are not absolutely constant but fluctuate within a limited range, such as the range of body temperatures noted earlier. The internal state of the body is best described as a **dynamic equilibrium** (balanced change), in which there is a certain **set point** or average value for a given variable (such as 37°C for body temperature) and conditions fluctuate slightly around this point.

The fundamental mechanism that keeps a variable close to its set point is **negative feedback**—a process in which the body senses a change and activates mechanisms that negate or reverse it. By maintaining stability, negative feedback is the key mechanism for maintaining health.

These principles can be understood by comparison to a home heating system (fig. 1.11). Suppose it is a cold winter day and you have set your thermostat for 20°C (68°F)—the set point. If the room becomes too cold, a temperature-sensitive switch in the thermostat turns on the furnace. The temperature rises until it is slightly above the set point, and then the switch breaks the circuit and turns off the furnace. This is a negative feedback process that reverses the falling temperature and restores it to something close to the set point. When the furnace turns off, the temperature slowly drops again until the switch is reactivated—thus, the furnace cycles on and off all day. The room temperature does not stay at exactly 20°C but *fluctuates* a few degrees either way—the system maintains a state of dynamic equilibrium in which the temperature averages 20°C and deviates from the set point by only a few degrees. Because feedback mechanisms alter the original changes that triggered them (temperature, for example), they are often called **feedback loops.**

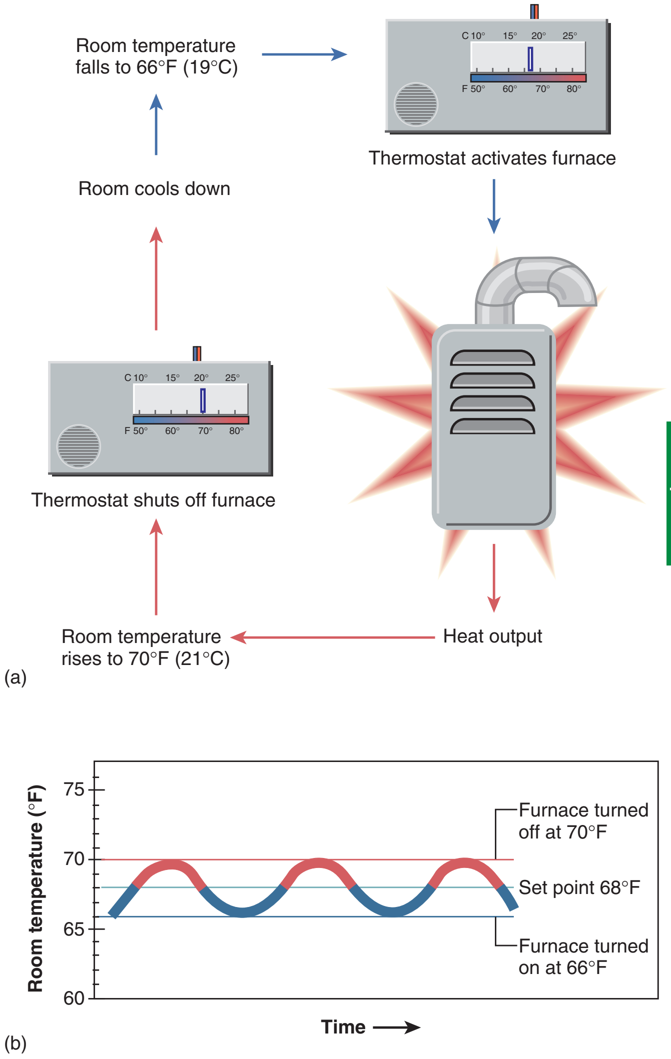

Room temperature falls to 66°F (19°C)
C 10° 15° 20° 25°
F 50° 60° 70° 80°
Thermostat activates furnace
Room cools down
Thermostat shuts off furnace
Heat output
Room temperature rises to 70°F (21°C)
(a)
Room temperature (°F)
75
70
65
60
Furnace turned off at 70°F
Set point 68°F
Furnace turned on at 66°F
Time
(b)

Figure 1.11 **Negative Feedback in a Home Heating System.**
(*a*) The negative feedback loop that maintains room temperature.
(*b*) Fluctuation of room temperature around the thermostatic set point.
What component of the heating system acts as the sensor? What component acts as the effector?

Body temperature is also regulated by a "thermostat"—a group of nerve cells in the base of the brain that monitors the temperature of the blood. If you become overheated, the thermostat triggers heat-losing mechanisms (fig. 1.12). One of these is **vasodilation** (VAY-zo-dy-LAY-shun), the widening of blood vessels. When blood vessels of the skin dilate, warm blood flows closer to the body surface and loses heat to the surrounding air. If this is not enough to return your temperature to normal, sweating occurs; the evaporation of

---

[17] *homeo* = the same + *stas* = to place, stand, stay

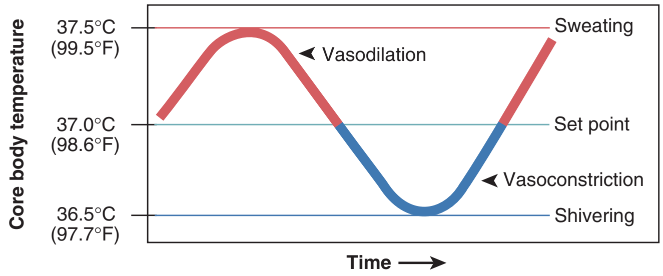


Figure 1.12 **Negative Feedback in Human Thermoregulation.** Negative feedback keeps the human body temperature homeostatically regulated within about 0.5°C of a 37°C set point. Sweating and cutaneous vasodilation lower the body temperature; shivering and cutaneous vasoconstriction raise it.
Why does vasodilation reduce the body temperature?

water from the skin has a powerful cooling effect (see insight 1.3). Conversely, if it is cold outside and your body temperature drops much below 37°C, these nerve cells activate heat-conserving mechanisms. The first to be activated is **vasoconstriction,** a narrowing of the blood vessels in the skin, which serves to retain warm blood deeper in your body and reduce heat loss. If this is not enough, the brain activates shivering—muscle tremors that generate heat.

Insight 1.3 Medical History

Men in the Oven

English physician Charles Blagden (1748–1820) staged a rather theatrical demonstration of homeostasis long before Cannon coined the word. In 1775, Blagden spent 45 minutes in a chamber heated to 127°C (260°F)—along with a dog, a beefsteak, and some research associates. Being alive and capable of evaporative cooling, the dog panted and the men sweated. The beefsteak, being dead and unable to maintain homeostasis, was cooked.

To take another example, a rise in blood pressure is sensed by stretch receptors in the wall of the heart and the major arteries above it. These receptors send nerve signals to a *cardiac center* in the brainstem. The cardiac center integrates this input with other information and sends nerve signals back to the heart to slow it and lower the blood pressure. Thus we can see that homeostasis is maintained by self-correcting negative feedback loops. Many more examples are found throughout this book.

It is common, although not universal, for feedback loops to include three components: a receptor, an integrator, and an effector. The **receptor** is a structure that senses a change in the body, such as the stretch receptors that monitor blood pressure. The **integrating (control) center,** such as the cardiac center of the brain, is a mechanism that processes this information, relates it to other available information (for example, comparing what the blood pressure is with what it should be), and "makes a decision" about what the appropriate response should be. The **effector,** in this case the heart, is the structure that carries out the response that restores homeostasis. The response, such as a lowering of the blood pressure, is then sensed by the receptor, and the feedback loop is complete.

Positive Feedback and Rapid Change

Positive feedback is a self-amplifying cycle in which a physiological change leads to even greater change in the same direction, rather than producing the corrective effects of negative feedback. Positive feedback is often a normal way of producing rapid change. When a woman is giving birth, for example, the head of the baby pushes against her cervix (the neck of the uterus) and stimulates its nerve endings (fig. 1.13). Nerve signals travel to the brain, which, in turn, stimulates the pituitary gland to secrete the hormone oxytocin. Oxytocin travels in the blood and stimulates the uterus to contract. This pushes the baby downward, stimulating the cervix still more and causing the positive feedback loop to be repeated. Labor contractions therefore become more and more intense until the baby is expelled. Other cases of beneficial positive feedback are seen later in the book; for example, in blood clotting, protein digestion, and the generation of nerve signals.

Frequently, however, positive feedback is a harmful or even life-threatening process. This is because its self-amplifying nature can quickly change the internal state of the body to something far from its homeostatic set point. Consider a high fever, for example. A fever triggered by infection is beneficial up to a point, but if the body temperature rises much above 42°C (108°F), it may create a dangerous positive feedback loop (fig. 1.14). This high temperature raises the metabolic rate, which makes the body produce heat faster than it can get rid of it. Thus, temperature rises still further, increasing the metabolic rate and heat production still more. This "vicious circle" becomes fatal at approximately 45°C (113°F). Thus, positive feedback loops often create dangerously out-of-control situations that require emergency medical treatment.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

14. List four biological criteria of life and one clinical criterion. Explain how a person could be clinically dead but biologically alive.
15. What is meant by *dynamic equilibrium?* Why would it be wrong to say homeostasis prevents internal change?
16. Explain why stabilizing mechanisms are called *negative* feedback.
17. Explain why positive feedback is more likely than negative feedback to disturb homeostasis.

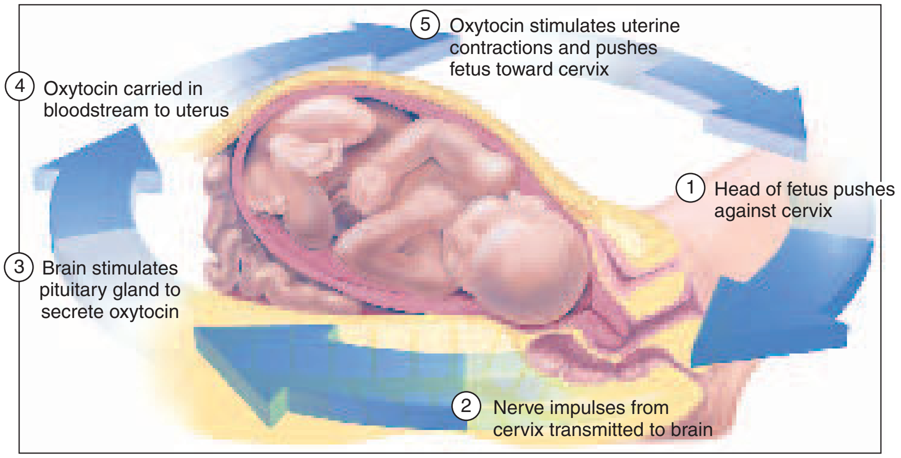

⑤ Oxytocin stimulates uterine contractions and pushes fetus toward cervix
④ Oxytocin carried in bloodstream to uterus
① Head of fetus pushes against cervix
③ Brain stimulates pituitary gland to secrete oxytocin
② Nerve impulses from cervix transmitted to brain

Figure 1.13 **Positive Feedback in Childbirth.** This is one of several cases in which positive feedback produces beneficial rapid change.

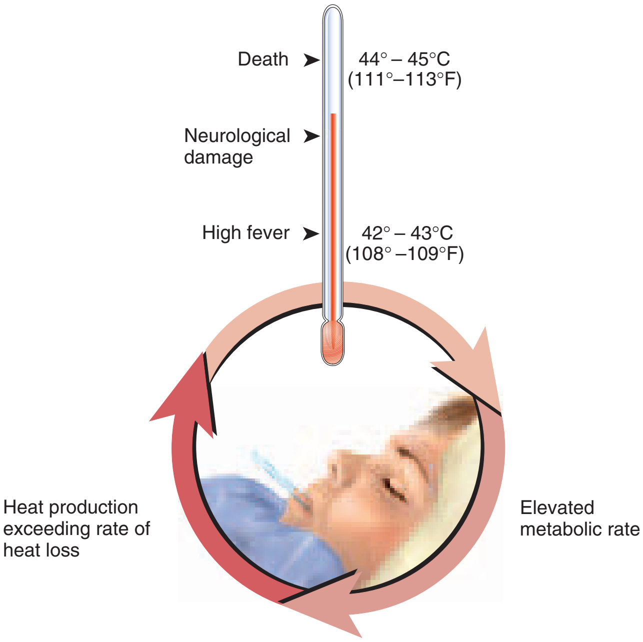

Death
44° – 45°C (111°–113°F)
Neurological damage
High fever
42° – 43°C (108° –109°F)
Heat production exceeding rate of heat loss
Elevated metabolic rate

Figure 1.14 **Positive Feedback in Fever.** In such cases as this, positive feedback can produce a life-threatening loss of homeostatic control.

The Language of Medicine

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- explain why modern anatomical terminology is so heavily based on Greek and Latin;
- recognize eponyms when you see them;
- describe the efforts to achieve an internationally uniform anatomical terminology;
- break medical terms down into their basic word elements;
- state some reasons why the literal meaning of a word may not lend insight into its definition;
- relate singular noun forms to their plural forms; and
- discuss why precise spelling is important in anatomy and physiology.

One of the greatest challenges faced by students of anatomy and physiology is the vocabulary. In this book, you will encounter such Latin terms as *corpus callosum* (a brain structure), *ligamentum arteriosum* (a small fibrous band near the heart), and *extensor carpi radialis longus* (a forearm muscle). You may wonder why structures aren't named in "just plain English," and how you will ever remember such formidable names. This section will give you some answers to these questions and some useful tips on mastering anatomical terminology.

The History of Anatomical Terminology

The major features of human gross anatomy have standard international names prescribed by a book titled the *Terminologia Anatomica* (TA). The TA was codified in 1998 by an international body of anatomists, the Federative Committee on Anatomical Terminology, and approved by professional associations of anatomists in more than 50 countries.

About 90% of today's medical terms are formed from just 1,200 Greek and Latin roots. Scientific investigation began in ancient Greece and soon spread to Rome. The Greeks and Romans coined many of the words still used in human anatomy today: *uterus, prostate, cerebellum, diaphragm, sacrum, amnion,* and others. In the Renaissance, the fast pace of anatomical discovery required a profusion of new terms to describe things. Anatomists in different countries began giving different names to the same structures. Adding to the confusion, they often named new structures and diseases in honor of their esteemed teachers and predecessors, giving us such nondescriptive terms as the *crypts of Lieberkühn* and *duct of Santorini.* Terms coined from the names of people, called **eponyms,**[18] afford little clue as to what a structure or condition is.

In hopes of resolving this growing confusion, anatomists began meeting as early as 1895 to try to devise a uniform international terminology. After several false starts, anatomists agreed on a list of terms titled the *Nomina Anatomica* (NA), which rejected all eponyms and gave each structure a unique Latin name to be used worldwide. Even if you were to look at an anatomy atlas in Japanese or Arabic, the illustrations may be labeled with the same Latin terms as in an English-language atlas. The NA served for many decades until recently replaced by the TA, which prescribes both Latin names and accepted English equivalents. The terminology in this book conforms to the TA except where undue confusion would result from abandoning widely used, yet unofficial terms.

Analyzing Medical Terms

The task of learning medical terminology seems overwhelming at first, but there is a simple trick to becoming more comfortable with the technical language of medicine. People who find scientific terms confusing and difficult to pronounce, spell, and remember usually feel more confident once they realize the logic of how terms are composed. A term such as *hyponatremia* is less forbidding once we recognize that it is composed of three common word elements: *hypo-* (below normal), *natri-* (sodium), and *-emia* (blood condition). Thus, hyponatremia is a deficiency of sodium in the blood. Those word elements appear over and over in many other medical terms: *hypothermia, natriuretic, anemia,* and so on. Once you learn the meanings of *hypo-, natri-,* and *-emia,* you already have the tools at least to partially understand hundreds of other biomedical terms. In appendix C, you will find a lexicon of the 400 word elements most commonly footnoted in this book.

Scientific terms are typically composed of one or more of the following elements:

- At least one *root (stem)* that bears the core meaning of the word. In *cardiology,* for example, the root is *cardi-* (heart). Many words have two or more roots. In *cytochrome,* the roots are *cyt-* (cell) and *chrom-* (color).
- *Combining vowels* that are often inserted to join roots and make the word easier to pronounce. In *cytochrome,* for example, the first *o* is a combining vowel. Although *o* is the most common combining vowel, all vowels of the alphabet are used in this way, such as *a* in *ligament, e* in *vitreous,* the first *i* in *spermicidal, u* in *ovulation,* and *y* in *tachycardia.* Some words have no combining vowels. A combination of a root and combining vowel is called a *combining form:* for example, *ost* (bone) + *e* (a combining vowel) make the combining form *oste-,* as in *osteology.*
- A *prefix* may be present to modify the core meaning of the word. For example, *gastric* (pertaining to the stomach or to the belly of a muscle) takes on a wide variety of new meanings when prefixes are added to it: *epigastric* (above the stomach), *hypogastric* (below the stomach), *endogastric* (within the stomach), and *digastric* (a muscle with two bellies).
- A *suffix* may be added to the end of a word to modify its core meaning. For example, *microscope, microscopy, microscopic,* and *microscopist* have different meanings because of their suffixes alone. Often two or more suffixes, or a root and suffix, occur together so often that they are treated jointly as a *compound suffix;* for example, *log* (study) + *y* (process) form the compound suffix *-logy* (the study of).

To summarize these basic principles, consider the word *gastroenterology,* a branch of medicine dealing with the stomach and small intestine. It breaks down into: gastro/entero/logy

gastro = a combining form meaning "stomach"

entero = a combining form meaning "small intestine"

logy = a compound suffix meaning "the study of"

"Dissecting" words in this way and paying attention to the word-origin footnotes throughout this book will help make you more comfortable with the language of anatomy. Knowing how a word breaks down and knowing the meaning of its elements make it far easier to pronounce a word, spell it, and remember its definition. There are a few unfortunate exceptions, however. The path from original meaning to current usage has often become obscured by history (see insight 1.4). The foregoing approach also is no help with eponyms or **acronyms**—words composed of the first letter, or first few letters, of a series of words. For example, *calmodulin,* a calcium-binding protein found in many cells, is cobbled together from a few letters of the three words, *cal*cium *modul*ating prote*in.*

Insight 1.4 Medical History

Obscure Word Origins

The literal translation of a word doesn't always provide great insight into its modern meaning. The history of language is full of twists and turns that are fascinating in their own right and say much about the history of human culture, but they can create confusion for students.

---

[18] *epo* = after, related to + *nym* = name

For example, the *amnion* is a transparent sac that forms around the developing fetus. The word is derived from *amnos,* from the Greek for "lamb." From this origin, *amnos* came to mean a bowl for catching the blood of sacrificial lambs, and from there the word found its way into biomedical usage for the membrane that emerges (quite bloody) as part of the afterbirth. The *acetabulum,* the socket of the hip joint, literally means "vinegar cup." Apparently the hip socket reminded an anatomist of the little cups used to serve vinegar as a condiment on dining tables in ancient Rome. The word *testicles* literally means "little witnesses." The history of medical language has several amusing conjectures as to why this word was chosen to name the male gonads.

Singular and Plural Forms

A point of confusion for many beginning students is how to recognize the plural forms of medical terms. Few people would fail to recognize that *ovaries* is the plural of *ovary,* but the connection is harder to make in other cases: for example, the plural of *cortex* is *cortices* (COR-ti-sees), the plural of *corpus* is *corpora,* and the plural of *epididymis* is *epididymides* (EP-ih-DID-ih-MID-eze). Table 1.2 will help you make the connection between common singular and plural noun terminals.

Table 1.2 Singular and Plural Forms of Some Noun Terminals

Singular Ending	Plural Ending	Examples
-a	-ae	axilla, axillae
-ax	-aces	thorax, thoraces
-en	-ina	lumen, lumina
-ex	-ices	cortex, cortices
-is	-es	diagnosis, diagnoses
-is	-ides	epididymis, epididymides
-ix	-ices	appendix, appendices
-ma	-mata	carcinoma, carcinomata
-on	-a	ganglion, ganglia
-um	-a	septum, septa
-us	-era	viscus, viscera
-us	-i	villus, villi
-us	-ora	corpus, corpora
-x	-ges	phalanx, phalanges
-y	-ies	ovary, ovaries
-yx	-ices	calyx, calices

The Importance of Precision

A final word of advice for your study of anatomy and physiology: Be precise in your use of terms. It may seem trivial if you misspell *trapezius* as *trapezium,* but in doing so, you would be changing the name of a back muscle to the name of a wrist bone. Similarly, changing *occipitalis* to *occipital* or *zygomaticus* to *zygomatic* changes other muscle names to bone names. A "little" error such as misspelling *ileum* as *ilium* changes the name of the final portion of the small intestine to the name of the hip bone. Changing *malleus* to *malleolus* changes the name of a middle-ear bone to the name of a bony protuberance of your ankle. *Elephantiasis* is a disease that produces an elephant-like thickening of the limbs and skin. Many people misspell this *elephantitis;* if such a word existed, it would mean inflammation of an elephant.

The health professions demand the utmost attention to detail and precision—people's lives may one day be in your hands. The habit of carefulness must extend to your use of language as well. Many patients have died because of miscommunication in the hospital.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

18. Explain why modern anatomical terminology is so heavily based on Greek and Latin.
19. Distinguish between an eponym and an acronym, and explain why both of these present difficulties for interpreting anatomical terms.
20. Break each of the following words down into its roots and affixes and state their meanings, following the example of *gastroenterology* analyzed earlier: *pericardium, appendectomy, subcutaneous, phonocardiogram, otorhinolaryngology.* Consult the list of word elements in appendix C for help.
21. Write the singular form of each of the following words: *pleurae, gyri, nomina, ganglia, fissures.* Write the plural form of each of the following: *villus, tibia, encephalitis, cervix, stoma.*

Review of Major Themes

To close this chapter, let's distill a few major points from it. These themes can provide you with a sense of perspective that will make the rest of the book more meaningful and not just a collection of disconnected facts. These are some key unifying principles behind all study of human anatomy and physiology:

- **Cell theory.** *All structure and function result from the activity of cells.* Every physiological concept in this book ultimately must be understood from the standpoint of how cells function. Even anatomy is a result of cellular function. If cells are damaged or destroyed, we see the results in disease symptoms of the whole person.

- **Homeostasis.** *The purpose of most normal physiology is to maintain stable conditions within the body.* Human physiology is essentially a group of mechanisms that produce stable internal conditions favorable to cellular function. Any serious departure from these conditions can be harmful or fatal to cells.
- **Evolution.** *The human body is a product of evolution.* Like every other living species, we have been molded by millions of years of natural selection to function in a changing environment. Many aspects of human anatomy and physiology reflect our ancestors' adaptations to their environment. Human form and function cannot be fully understood except in light of our evolutionary history.
- **Hierarchy of structure.** *Human structure can be viewed as a series of levels of complexity.* Each level is composed of a smaller number of simpler subunits than the level above it. These subunits are arranged in different ways to form diverse structures of higher complexity. For example, all the body's organs are made of just four primary classes of tissue, and the thousands of proteins are made of various combinations of just 20 amino acids. Understanding these simpler components is the key to understanding higher levels of structure.
- **Unity of form and function.** *Form and function complement each other; physiology cannot be divorced from anatomy.* This unity holds true even down to the molecular level. Our very molecules, such as DNA and proteins, are structured in ways that enable them to carry out their functions. Slight changes in molecular structure can destroy their activity and threaten life.

Think About It

Architect Louis Henri Sullivan coined the phrase, "Form ever follows function." What do you think he meant by this? Discuss how this idea could be applied to the human body and cite a specific example of human anatomy to support it.

Insight 1.5 Clinical Application

Medical Imaging

The development of techniques for looking into the body without having to do exploratory surgery has greatly accelerated progress in medicine. A few of these techniques are described here.

Radiography

X rays, a form of high-energy radiation, were discovered by William Roentgen in 1885. X rays can penetrate soft tissues of the body and darken photographic film on the other side. They are absorbed, however, by dense tissues such as bone, teeth, tumors, and tuberculosis nodules, which leave the film lighter in these areas (fig. 1.15*a*). The process of examining the body with X rays is called *radiography.* The term *X ray* also applies to a photograph *(radiograph)* made by this method. Radiography is commonly used in dentistry, mammography, diagnosis of fractures, and examination of the chest. Hollow organs can be visualized by filling them with a *radiopaque* substance that absorbs X rays. Barium sulfate is given orally for examination of the esophagus, stomach, and small intestine or by enema for examination of the large intestine. Other substances are given by injection for *angiography,* the examination of blood vessels (fig. 1.15*b*). Some disadvantages of radiography are that images of overlapping organs can be confusing and slight differences in tissue density are not easily detected. Nevertheless, radiography still accounts for over half of all clinical imaging. Until the 1960s, it was the only method widely available.

Sonography

Sonography[19] is the second oldest and second most widely used method of imaging. It is an outgrowth of sonar technology developed in World War II. A handheld device held firmly to the skin produces high-frequency ultrasound waves and receives the signals that echo back from internal organs. Although sonography was first used medically in the 1950s, images of significant clinical value had to wait until computer technology had developed enough to analyze differences in the way tissues reflect ultrasound. Sonography is not very useful for examining bones or lungs, but it is the method of choice in obstetrics, where the image *(sonogram)* can be used to locate the placenta and evaluate fetal age, position, and development. Sonography avoids the harmful effects of X rays, and the equipment is inexpensive and portable. Its primary disadvantage is that it does not produce a very sharp image (fig. 1.16).

Computed Tomography (CT)

The *CT scan,* formerly called a computerized axial tomographic[20] (CAT) scan, is a more sophisticated application of X rays developed in 1972. The patient is moved through a ring-shaped machine that emits low-intensity X rays on one side and receives them with a detector on the opposite side. A computer analyzes signals from the detector and produces an image of a "slice" of the body about as thin as a coin (fig. 1.17). The computer can "stack" a series of these images to construct a three-dimensional image of the body. CT scanning has the advantage of imaging thin sections of the body, so there is little overlap of organs and the image is much sharper than a conventional X ray. CT scanning is useful for identifying tumors, aneurysms, cerebral hemorrhages, kidney stones, and other abnormalities. It has virtually eliminated exploratory surgery.

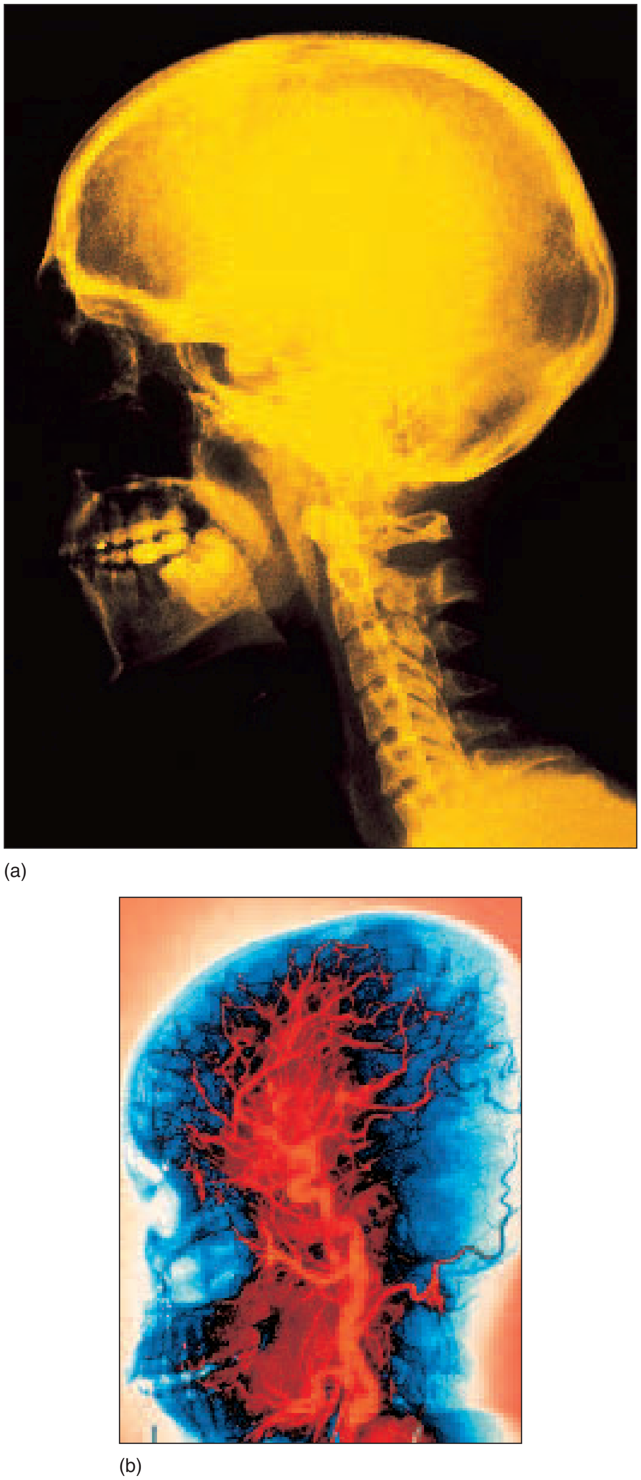
Positron Emission Tomography (PET)

The *PET scan,* developed in the 1970s, is used to assess the metabolic state of a tissue and to distinguish which tissues are most active at a given moment (fig. 1.18). The procedure begins with an injection of radioactively labeled glucose, which emits positrons (electron-like particles with a positive charge). When a positron and electron meet, they annihilate each other and give off a pair of gamma rays that can be detected by sensors and analyzed by computer. The computer displays a color image that shows which tissues were using the most glucose at the moment. In cardiology, PET scans can show the extent of damaged

---

[19] *sono* = sound + *graphy* = recording process

[20] *tomo* = section, cut, slice + *graphic* = pertaining to a recording


(a)

(b)

Figure 1.15 Radiography. (*a*) An X ray (radiograph) of the head and neck. (*b*) A cerebral angiogram, made by injecting a substance opaque to X rays into the circulation and then taking an X ray of the head to visualize the blood vessels. The arteries are enhanced with false color in this photograph.

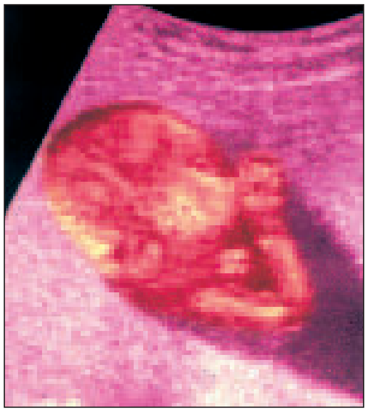


Figure 1.16 Fetal Sonogram. Shows the head and right arm of a 28-week-old fetus sucking its thumb.

heart tissue. Since it consumes little or no glucose, the damaged tissue appears dark. The PET scan is an example of *nuclear medicine*—the use of radioactive isotopes to treat disease or to form diagnostic images of the body.

Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI)

MRI, once known as *nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) imaging*, was developed in the 1970s as a technique superior to CT scanning for visualizing soft tissues. The patient lies within a cylindrical chamber surrounded by a large electromagnet that creates a magnetic field 3,000 to 60,000 times as strong as the earth's. Hydrogen atoms in the tissues align themselves with the magnetic field. The patient is then bombarded with radio waves, which cause the hydrogen atoms to absorb additional energy and align in a different direction. When the radio waves are turned off, the hydrogen atoms abruptly realign themselves to the magnetic field, giving off their excess energy at different rates that depend on the type of tissue. A computer analyzes the emitted energy to produce an image of the body. MRI can "see" clearly through the skull and spinal column to produce images of the nervous tissue. Moreover, it is better than CT for distinguishing between soft tissues such as the white and gray matter of the nervous system (fig. 1.19).

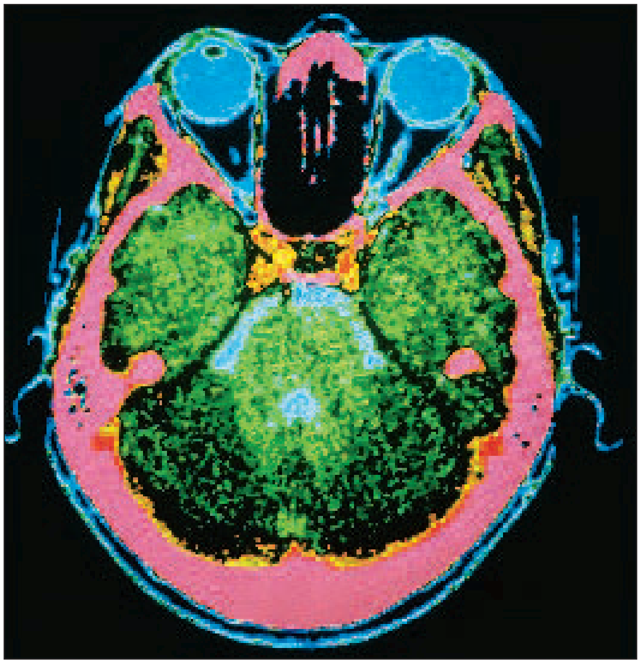


Figure 1.17 **Computed Tomographic (CT) Scan of the Head at the Level of the Eyes.** The eyes and skin are shown in blue, bone in red, and the brain in green.

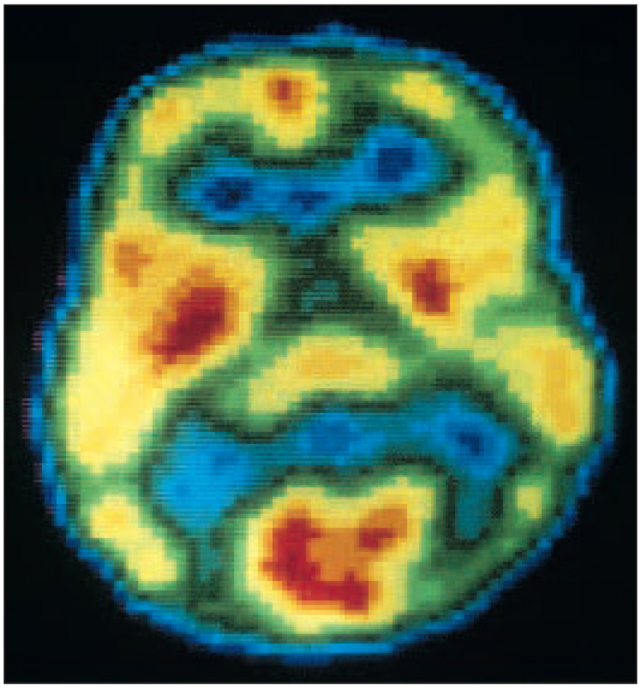


Figure 1.18 **Positron Emission Tomographic (PET) Scan of the Brain of an Unmedicated Schizophrenic Patient.** Red areas indicate high glucose consumption (high metabolism). In this patient, the visual center of the brain (rear of head, *bottom of photo*) was especially active when the scan was made.

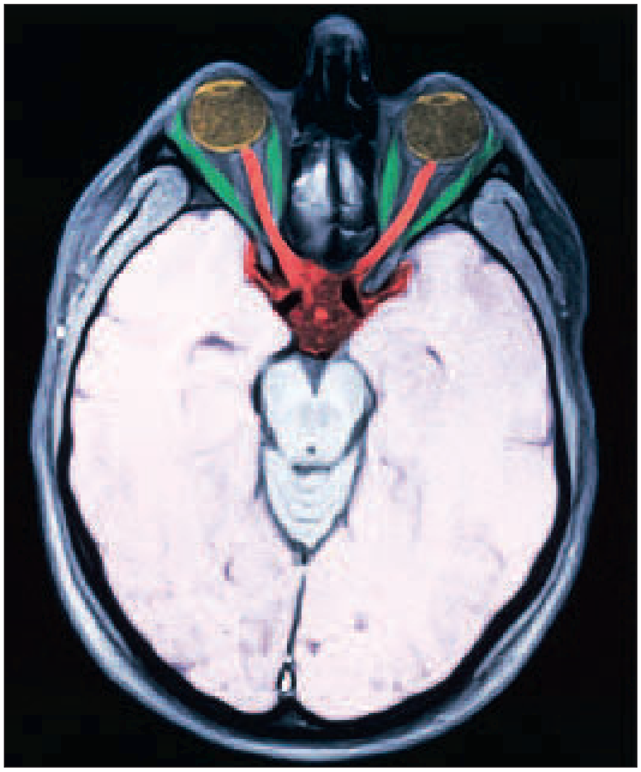


Figure 1.19 **Magnetic Resonance Image (MRI) of the Head at the Level of the Eyes.** The optic nerves appear in red and the muscles that move the eyes appear in green.

Functional MRI (fMRI) is a variation on this technique that visualizes moment-to-moment changes in tissue function. fMRI scans of the brain, for example, show shifting patterns of activity as the brain applies itself to a specific task. fMRI has lately replaced the PET scan as the most important method for visualizing brain function. The use of fMRI in brain imaging is further discussed in chapter 14.

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

The Scope of Anatomy and Physiology (p. 2)

1. Human *anatomy,* or structure, is studied at gross and microscopic (histological) levels.
2. The methods of anatomy include dissection, palpation, and imaging techniques such as X rays, sonography, and CT, PET, and MRI scans.
3. Human *physiology,* or function, is studied by experimental methods, and often by comparison to other species.

The Origins of Biomedical Science (p. 3)

1. Hippocrates and Aristotle first put medicine on a scientific basis by distinguishing natural causes from the supernatural.
2. Galen wrote the first notable medical textbook, which dominated western medicine for 1,500 years.
3. In the Middle Ages, Avicenna and other Muslims were largely responsible for the survival of medical science.
4. In the sixteenth century, revolutionary work in anatomy by Vesalius and in physiology by Harvey created a foundation for modern medicine.
5. Improvements in the microscope by Leeuwenhoek, Hooke, and later Zeiss and Abbe opened the door to understanding anatomy, physiology, and disease at a cellular level.

Scientific Method (p. 7)

1. Philosophers Bacon and Descartes first established a systematic scientific way of thought.
2. The *inductive method,* common in anatomy, consists of generalizing about nature from numerous observations.
3. The *hypothetico-deductive method,* common in physiology, consists of formulating hypotheses and testing them by carefully crafted observational strategies.
4. The objectivity of medical science depends on experimental designs that include an adequate sample size, experimental controls such as placebos and the double-blind method, statistical analysis of the significance of the data, and peer review by other experts.
5. Science generates facts, laws, and theories. Theories are summations of our present knowledge of natural phenomena and are the basis of much of our study in anatomy and physiology.

Human Origins and Adaptations (p. 9)

1. Human form and function have been shaped by millions of years of *natural selection.*
2. Many aspects of anatomy and physiology today, such as stereoscopic vision and opposable thumbs, are *adaptations* to the environments in which our prehistoric ancestors lived, including the arboreal and grassland habitats of Africa.
3. *Evolutionary medicine* is the analysis of human form, function, and disease in light of the evolutionary history of the human body.

Human Structure (p. 12)

1. Human structure is organized around a hierarchy of complexity. Levels of human complexity from most complex to simplest are *organism, organ systems, organs, tissues, cells, organelles, molecules,* and *atoms.*
2. Introductory textbooks teach only the most common human structure, but there are many variations in both internal and external anatomy.

Human Function (p. 14)

1. Life can be defined only as a collection of properties including *organization, cellular composition, metabolism, excretion, responsiveness, movement, homeostasis, development, reproduction,* and *evolution.*
2. For clinical purposes, life and legal death are differentiated on the basis of brain waves, reflexes, respiration, and heartbeat.
3. Humans vary greatly in their physiology. Data given in introductory and general textbooks are typically based on a young adult *reference male* and *reference female.*
4. An important unifying theory in physiology is *homeostasis,* mechanisms of maintaining internal constancy in spite of environmental change. Homeostasis keeps such variables as blood pressure and body temperature within a narrow range of an average called the *set point.*
5. Homeostasis is maintained by self-correcting chain reactions called *negative feedback.* This often involves detection of a change by a *receptor,* processing of this information by an *integrating center,* and reversal of the change by an *effector.*
6. *Positive feedback* is a self-amplifying chain of events that tends to produce rapid change in the body. It can be valuable in such cases as childbirth and blood clotting, but is often a cause of dysfunction and death.

The Language of Medicine (p. 19)

1. Anatomists the world over adhere to a lexicon of standard international terms called the *Terminologia Anatomica* (TA). Anatomy students must learn many Latin or English TA terms.
2. Biomedical terms can usually be simplified by breaking them down into familiar roots, prefixes, and suffixes. The habit of analyzing words in this way can greatly ease the difficulty of learning biomedical vocabulary, and is aided by footnotes throughout this book.
3. Precision in medical language is highly important. What may seem to be trivial spelling errors can radically change the meaning of a word, potentially causing dangerous medical errors.

Selected Vocabulary

anatomy 2
physiology 2
palpation 2
auscultation 2
gross anatomy 2
hypothesis 7
law of nature 9
theory 9
evolution 9
adaptation 10
organ system 13
organ 13
tissue 13
cell 13
metabolism 16
differentiation 16
reference man 16
reference woman 16
homeostasis 17
set point 17
negative feedback 17
vasodilation 17
vasoconstriction 18
positive feedback 18

Testing Your Recall

1. Structure that can be observed with the naked eye is called
   a. gross anatomy.
   b. ultrastructure.
   c. microscopic anatomy.
   d. macroscopic anatomy.
   e. cytology.
2. The word root *homeo-* means
   a. tissue.
   b. metabolism.
   c. change.
   d. human.
   e. same.
3. The simplest structures considered to be alive are
   a. organisms.
   b. organs.
   c. tissues.
   d. cells.
   e. organelles.
4. Which of the following people revolutionized the teaching of gross anatomy?
   a. Vesalius
   b. Aristotle
   c. Hippocrates
   d. Leeuwenhoek
   e. Cannon
5. Which of the following embodies the greatest amount of scientific information?
   a. a fact
   b. a law of nature
   c. a theory
   d. a deduction
   e. a hypothesis
6. An informed, uncertain, but testable conjecture is
   a. a natural law.
   b. a scientific theory.
   c. a hypothesis.
   d. a deduction.
   e. a scientific fact.
7. A self-amplifying chain of physiological events is called
   a. positive feedback.
   b. negative feedback.
   c. dynamic constancy.
   d. homeostasis.
   e. metabolism.
8. Which of the following is *not* a human organ system?
   a. integumentary
   b. muscular
   c. epithelial
   d. nervous
   e. endocrine
9. _____ means studying anatomy by touch.
   a. Gross anatomy
   b. Auscultation
   c. Osculation
   d. Palpation
   e. Percussion
10. The prefix *hetero-* means
    a. same.
    b. different.
    c. both.
    d. solid.
    e. below.
11. Cutting and separating tissues to reveal structural relationships is called _____.
12. _____ invented many components of the compound microscope and named the cell.
13. By the process of _____, a scientist predicts what the result of a certain experiment will be if his or her hypothesis is correct.
14. Physiological effects of a person's mental state are called _____ effects.
15. The tendency of the body to maintain stable internal conditions is called _____.
16. Blood pH averages 7.4 but fluctuates from 7.35 to 7.45. A pH of 7.4 can therefore be considered the _____ for this variable.
17. Self-corrective mechanisms in physiology are called _____ loops.
18. A/an _____ is the simplest body structure to be composed of two or more types of tissue.
19. Depth perception, or the ability to form three-dimensional images, is also called _____ vision.
20. Our hands are said to be _____ because they can encircle an object such as a branch or tool. The presence of an _____ thumb is important to this ability.

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. The technique for listening to the sounds of the heart valves is auscultation.
2. The inventions of Carl Zeiss and Ernst Abbe are necessary to the work of a modern histopathologist.
3. Abnormal skin color or dryness could be one piece of diagnostic information gained by auscultation.
4. There are more organelles than cells in the body.
5. The word *scuba,* derived from the words *self-contained underwater breathing apparatus,* is an acronym.
6. Leeuwenhoek was a biologist who invented the simple microscope in order to examine organisms in lake water.
7. A scientific theory is just a speculation until someone finds the evidence to prove it.
8. In a typical clinical research study, volunteer patients are in the treatment group and the physicians and scientists who run the study constitute the control group.
9. The great mobility of the primate shoulder joint is an adaptation to the arboreal habitat.
10. Negative feedback usually has a negative (harmful) effect on the body.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. What aspect of William Harvey's view of blood circulation could be considered a scientific hypothesis? What would you predict from that hypothesis? What observation could you carry out today to test this hypothesis?
2. Which of the characteristics of living things are possessed by an automobile? What bearing does this have on our definition of life?
3. About 1 out of every 120 live-born infants has a structural defect in the heart such as a hole between two heart chambers. Such infants often suffer pulmonary congestion and heart failure, and about one-third of them die as a result. Which of the major themes in this chapter does this illustrate? Explain your answer.
4. How might human anatomy be different today if the forerunners of humans had never inhabited the forest canopy?
5. Suppose you have been doing heavy yard work on a hot day and sweating profusely. You become very thirsty, so you drink a tall glass of lemonade. Explain how your thirst relates to the concept of homeostasis. Which type of feedback—positive or negative—does this illustrate?

Answers at the Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Legend Questions

1.8	A gorilla. About 4.5 million years.
1.11	The thermostat is the sensor. The furnace is the effector.
1.12	It allows blood to circulate closer to the skin surface and lose heat through the skin.

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.

ATLAS A

General Orientation to Human Anatomy

Anatomical Position 30

Anatomical Planes 31

Directional Terms 31

Surface Anatomy 32
- Axial Region 32
- Appendicular Region 36

Body Cavities and Membranes 36
- Dorsal Body Cavity 36
- Ventral Body Cavity 36

Organ Systems 38

A Visual Survey of the Body 39

Chapter Review 52

Anatomical Position

Anatomical position is a stance in which a person stands erect with the feet flat on the floor, arms at the sides, and the palms, face, and eyes facing forward (fig. A.1). This position provides a precise and standard frame of reference for anatomical description and dissection. Without such a frame of reference, to say that a structure such as the sternum, thymus, or aorta is "above the heart" would be vague, since it would depend on whether the subject was standing, lying face down, or lying face up. From the perspective of anatomical position, however, we can describe the thymus as *superior* to the heart, the sternum as *anterior* or *ventral* to the heart, and the aorta as *posterior* or *dorsal* to it. These descriptions remain valid regardless of the subject's position.

Unless stated otherwise, assume that all anatomical descriptions refer to anatomical position. Bear in mind that if a subject is facing you in anatomical position, the subject's left will be on your right and vice versa. In most anatomical illustrations, for example, the left atrium of the heart appears toward the right side of the page, and while the appendix is located in the right lower quadrant of the abdomen, it appears on the left side of most illustrations.

The forearm is said to be **supine** when the palms face up or forward and **prone** when they face down or rearward (fig. A.2). The difference is particularly important to descriptions of anatomy of this region. In the supine position, the two forearm bones (radius and ulna) are parallel and the radius is lateral to the ulna. In the prone position, the radius and ulna cross; the radius is lateral to the ulna at the elbow but medial to it at the wrist. Descriptions of nerves, muscles, blood vessels, and other structures of the forearm assume that the forearm is supine. (*Supine* also means lying face up and *prone* also means lying face down.)

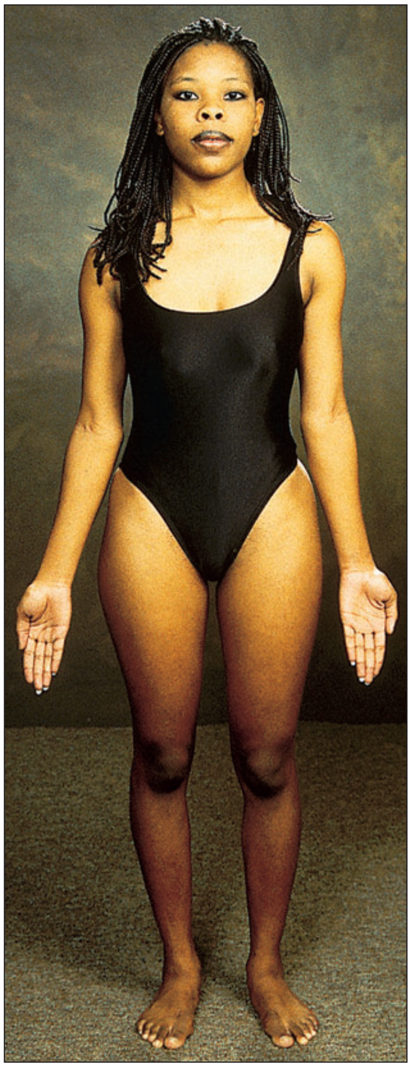


Figure A.1 **Anatomical Position.** The feet are flat on the floor and close together, the arms are held downward and supine, and the face is directed forward.

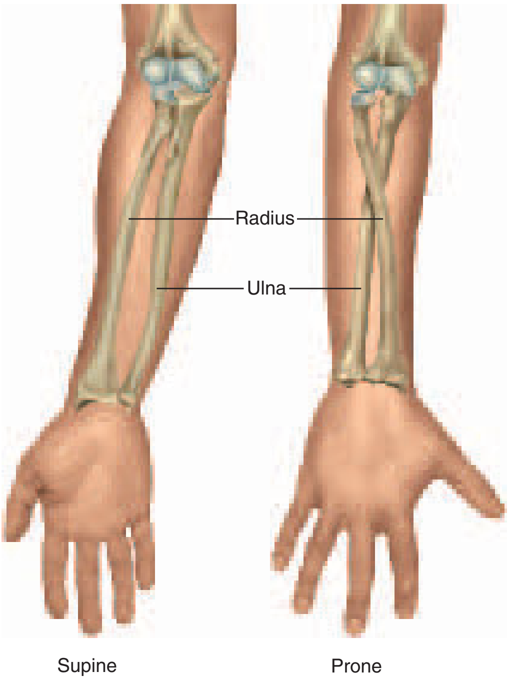


Figure A.2 **Positions of the Forearm.** When the forearm is supine, the palm faces forward; when prone, it faces rearward. Note the differences in the relationship of the radius to the ulna.

Anatomical Planes

Many views of the body are based on real or imaginary "slices" called *sections* or *planes.* "Section" implies an actual cut or slice to reveal internal anatomy, whereas "plane" implies an imaginary flat surface passing through the body. The three major anatomical planes are *sagittal, frontal,* and *transverse* (fig. A.3).

A **sagittal**[1] (SADJ-ih-tul) **plane** passes vertically through the body or an organ and divides it into right and left portions. The sagittal plane that divides the body or organ into equal haves is also called the **median (midsagittal) plane.** The head and pelvic organs are commonly illustrated on the median plane (fig. A.4*a*).

A **frontal (coronal) plane** also extends vertically, but it is perpendicular to the sagittal plane and divides the body into anterior (front) and posterior (back) portions. A frontal section of the head, for example, would divide it into one portion bearing the face and another bearing the back of the head. Contents of the thoracic and abdominal cavities are most commonly shown in frontal section (fig. A.4*b*).

A **transverse (horizontal) plane** passes across the body or an organ perpendicular to its long axis (fig. A.4*c*); therefore, it divides the body or organ into superior (upper) and inferior (lower) portions. CT scans are typically transverse sections (see fig. 1.17, p. 24).

Directional Terms

Table A.1 summarizes frequently used terms that describe the position of one structure relative to another. Intermediate directions are often indicated by combinations of

---

[1] *sagitta* = arrow

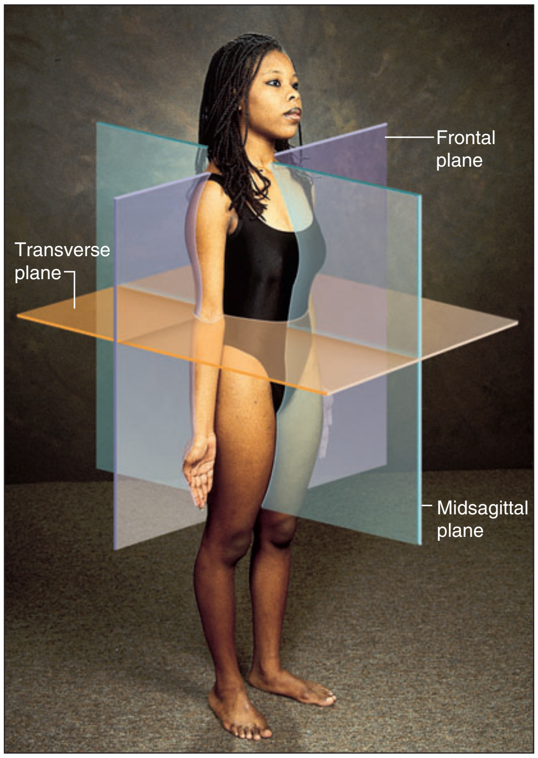


Figure A.3 **Anatomical Planes of Reference.**
What is the other name for the particular sagittal plane shown here?

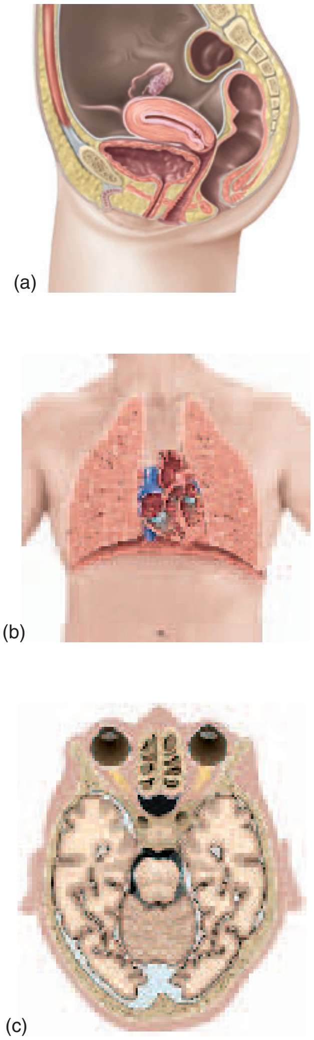


Figure A.4 **Views of the Body in the Three Primary Anatomical Planes.** (*a*) Sagittal section of the pelvic region. (*b*) Frontal section of the thoracic region. (*c*) Transverse section of the head at the level of the eyes.

Table A.1 Directional Terms in Human Anatomy

Term	Meaning	Examples of Usage
Ventral	Toward the front* or belly	The aorta is *ventral* to the vertebral column.
Dorsal	Toward the back or spine	The vertebral column is *dorsal* to the aorta.
Anterior	Toward the ventral side*	The sternum is *anterior* to the heart.
Posterior	Toward the dorsal side*	The esophagus is *posterior* to the trachea.
Superior	Above	The heart is *superior* to the diaphragm.
Inferior	Below	The liver is *inferior* to the diaphragm.
Medial	Toward the median plane	The heart is *medial* to the lungs.
Lateral	Away from the median plane	The eyes are *lateral* to the nose.
Proximal	Closer to the point of attachment or origin	The elbow is *proximal* to the wrist.
Distal	Farther from the point of attachment or origin	The fingernails are at the *distal* ends of the fingers.
Superficial	Closer to the body surface	The skin is *superficial* to the muscles.
Deep	Farther from the body surface	The bones are *deep* to the muscles.

*In humans only; definition differs for other animals.

these terms. For example, one structure may be described as *dorsolateral* to another (toward the back and side).

Because of the bipedal, upright stance of humans, some directional terms have different meanings for humans than they do for other animals. *Anterior,* for example, denotes the region of the body that leads the way in normal locomotion. For a four-legged animal such as a cat, this is the head end of the body; for a human, however, it is the area of the chest and abdomen. Thus, *anterior* has the same meaning as *ventral* for a human but not for a cat. *Posterior* denotes the region of the body that comes last in normal locomotion—the tail end of a cat but the dorsal side (back) of a human. These differences must be kept in mind when dissecting other animals for comparison to human anatomy.

Surface Anatomy

Knowledge of the external anatomy and landmarks of the body is important in performing a physical examination and many other clinical procedures. For purposes of study, the body is divided into two major regions called the *axial* and *appendicular regions.* Smaller areas within the major regions are described in the following paragraphs and illustrated in figure A.5.

Axial Region

The **axial region** consists of the **head, neck** *(cervical*[2] *region)*, and **trunk.** The trunk is further divided into the **thoracic region** above the diaphragm and the **abdominal region** below it.

One way of referring to the locations of abdominal structures is to divide the region into quadrants. Two perpendicular lines intersecting at the umbilicus (navel) divide the abdomen into a **right upper quadrant (RUQ), right lower quadrant (RLQ), left upper quadrant (LUQ),** and **left lower quadrant (LLQ)** (fig. A.6*a*, *b*). The quadrant scheme is often used to describe the site of an abdominal pain or abnormality.

The abdomen also can be divided into nine regions defined by four lines that intersect like a tic-tac-toe grid (fig. A.6*c*, *d*). Each vertical line is called a **midclavicular line** because it passes through the midpoint of the clavicle (collarbone). The superior horizontal line is called the **subcostal**[3] **line** because it connects the inferior borders of the lowest costal cartilages (cartilage connecting the tenth rib on each side to the inferior end of the sternum). The inferior horizontal line is called the **intertubercular**[4] **line** because it passes from left to right between the tubercles *(anterior superior spines)* of the pelvis—two points of bone located about where the front pockets open on most pants. The three lateral regions of this grid, from upper to lower, are the **hypochondriac,**[5] **lateral (lumbar),** and **inguinal**[6] **(iliac) regions.** The three medial regions from upper to lower are the **epigastric,**[7] **umbilical,** and **hypogastric (pubic)** regions.

---

[2] *cervic* = neck

[3] *sub* = below + *cost* = rib

[4] *inter* = between + *tubercul* = little swelling

[5] *hypo* = below + *chondr* = cartilage

[6] *inguin* = groin

[7] *epi* = above, over + *gastr* = stomach

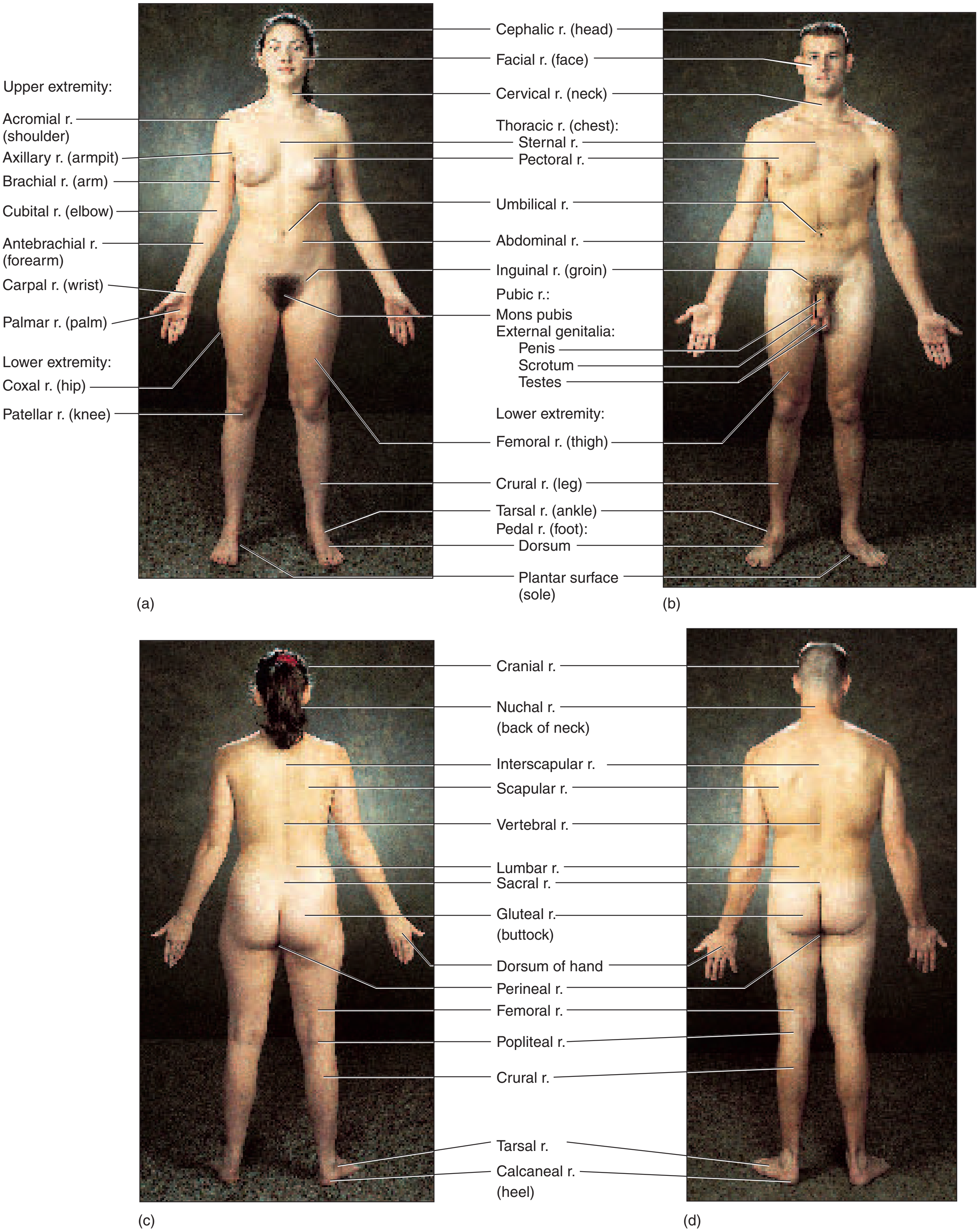
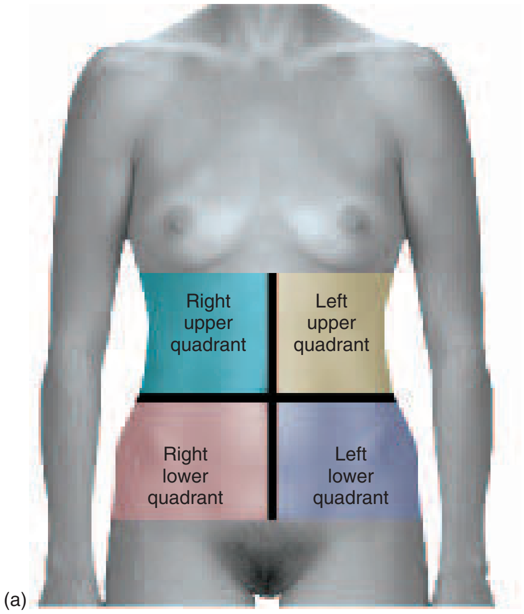

Upper extremity:
Acromial r. (shoulder)
Axillary r. (armpit)
Brachial r. (arm)
Cubital r. (elbow)
Antebrachial r. (forearm)
Carpal r. (wrist)
Palmar r. (palm)
Lower extremity:
Coxal r. (hip)
Patellar r. (knee)
Cephalic r. (head)
Facial r. (face)
Cervical r. (neck)
Thoracic r. (chest):
Sternal r.
Pectoral r.
Umbilical r.
Abdominal r.
Inguinal r. (groin)
Pubic r.:
Mons pubis
External genitalia:
Penis
Scrotum
Testes
Lower extremity:
Femoral r. (thigh)
Crural r. (leg)
Tarsal r. (ankle)
Pedal r. (foot):
Dorsum
Plantar surface (sole)
(a)
(b)
Cranial r.
Nuchal r. (back of neck)
Interscapular r.
Scapular r.
Vertebral r.
Lumbar r.
Sacral r.
Gluteal r. (buttock)
Dorsum of hand
Perineal r.
Femoral r.
Popliteal r.
Crural r.
Tarsal r.
Calcaneal r. (heel)
(c)
(d)

Figure A.5 **The Adult Female and Male Bodies.** (*a* and *b*) Ventral aspect (*c* and *d*) dorsal aspect (*r.* = region).


Right upper quadrant
Left upper quadrant
Right lower quadrant
Left lower quadrant
(a)

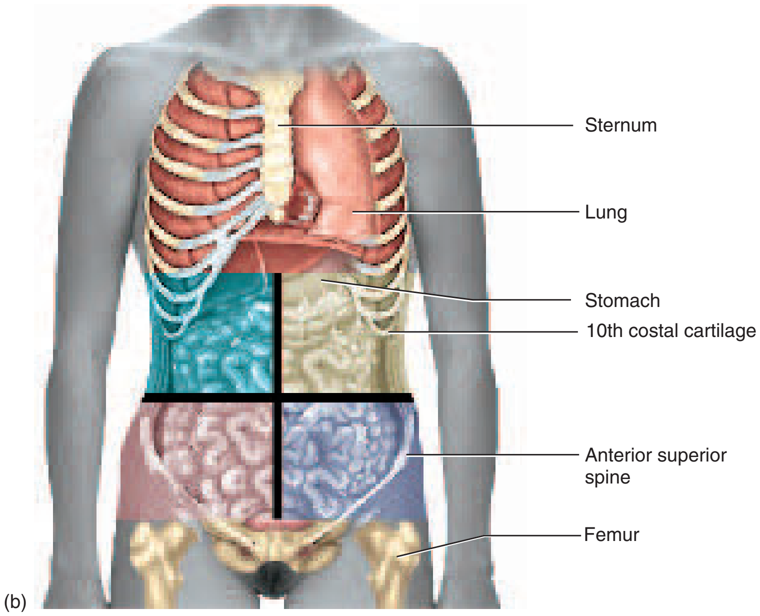

Sternum
Lung
Stomach
10th costal cartilage
Anterior superior spine
Femur
(b)

Figure A.6 **Four Quadrants and Nine Regions of the Abdomen.** (*a*) External division into four quadrants. (*b*) Internal anatomy correlated with the four quadrants.

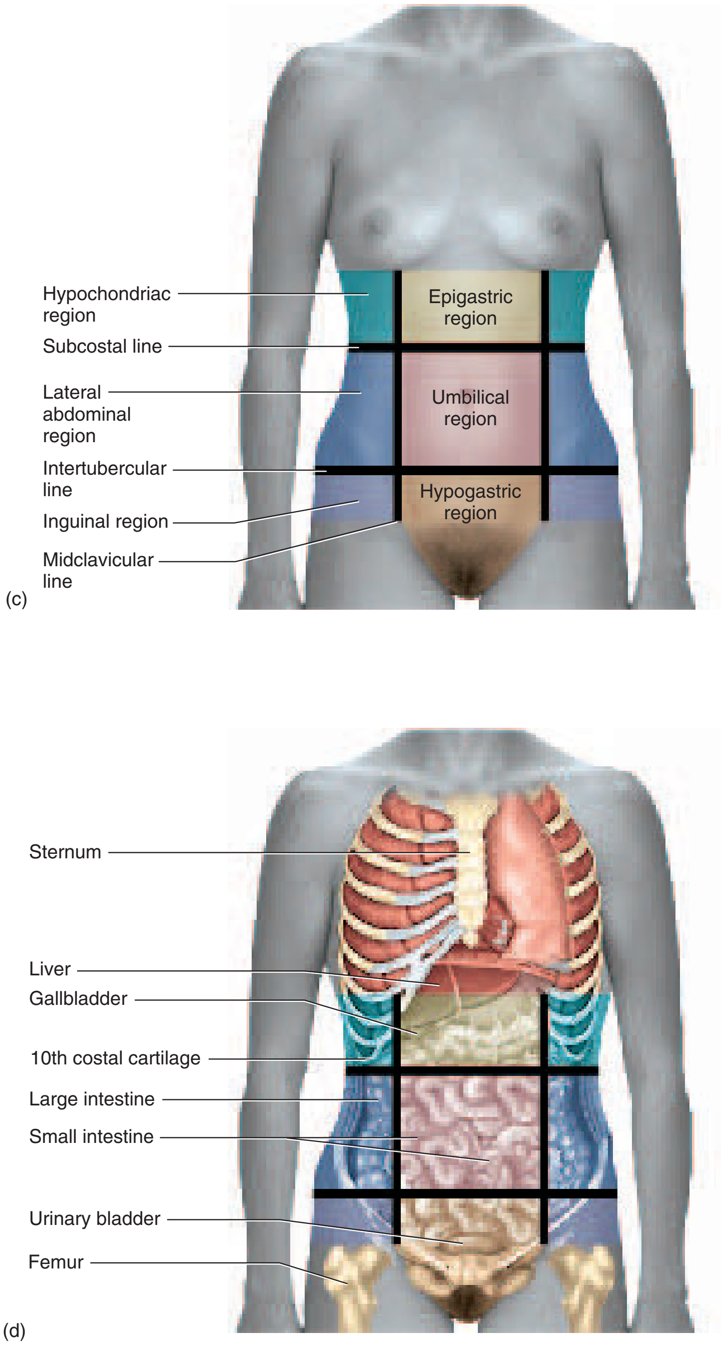

Hypochondriac region
Epigastric region
Subcostal line
Lateral abdominal region
Umbilical region
Intertubercular line
Hypogastric region
Inguinal region
Midclavicular line
(c)
Sternum
Liver
Gallbladder
10th costal cartilage
Large intestine
Small intestine
Urinary bladder
Femur
(d)

Figure A.6 **Four Quadrants and Nine Regions of the Abdomen (*continued*).** (*c*) External division into nine regions. (*d*) Internal anatomy correlated with the nine regions.

Appendicular Region

The **appendicular** (AP-en-DIC-you-lur) **region** of the body consists of the appendages (also called *limbs* or *extremities*): the **upper limbs** and the **lower limbs.** The upper limb includes the **brachium** (BRAY-kee-um) (arm), **antebrachium**[8] (AN-teh-BRAY-kee-um) (forearm), **carpus** (wrist), **manus** (hand), and **digits** (fingers). The lower limb includes the **thigh, crus** (leg), **tarsus** (ankle), **pes** (foot), and **digits** (toes).

In strict anatomical terms, "arm" refers only to that part of the upper limb between the shoulder and elbow. "Leg" refers only to that part of the lower limb between the knee and ankle.

Body Cavities and Membranes

The body is internally divided into two major **body cavities,** dorsal and ventral (fig. A.7). The organs within them are called the **viscera** (VISS-er-uh) (singular, *viscus*[9]). Various membranes line the cavities, cover the viscera, and hold the viscera in place (table A.2).

Dorsal Body Cavity

The **dorsal body cavity** has two subdivisions: (1) the **cranial** (CRAY-nee-ul) **cavity,** which is enclosed by the cranium (braincase) and contains the brain, and (2) the **vertebral canal,** which is enclosed by the vertebral column (backbone) and contains the spinal cord. The dorsal body cavity is lined by three membrane layers called the **meninges** (meh-NIN-jeez). Among other functions, the meninges protect the delicate nervous tissue from the hard protective bone that encloses it.

Ventral Body Cavity

During embryonic development, a space called the **coelom** (SEE-loam) forms within the trunk and eventually gives rise to the **ventral body cavity.** This cavity later becomes partitioned by a muscular sheet, the **diaphragm,** into a superior **thoracic cavity** and an inferior **abdominopelvic cavity.** The thoracic and abdominopelvic cavities are lined with thin **serous membranes.** These membranes secrete a lubricating film of moisture similar to blood serum (hence the name *serous*).

Thoracic Cavity

The thoracic cavity is divided into right, left, and medial portions by a partition called the **mediastinum**[10] (ME-dee-ass-TY-num) (fig. A.7). The right and left sides contain the lungs and are lined by a two-layered membrane called the **pleura**[11] (PLOOR-uh) (fig. A.8*a*). The outer layer, or **parietal**[12] (pa-RY-eh-tul) **pleura,** lies against the inside of the

---

[8] *ante* = fore, before + *brachi* = arm
[9] *viscus* = body organ
[10] *mediastinum* = in the middle
[11] *pleur* = rib, side
[12] *pariet* = wall

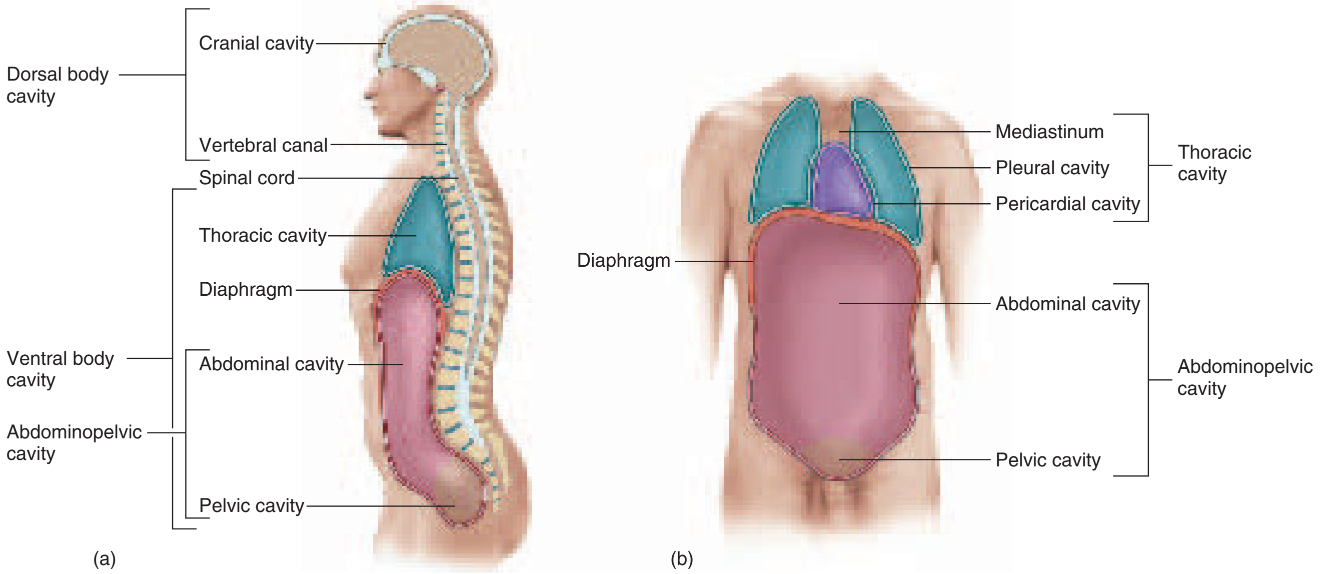

Dorsal body cavity
Cranial cavity
Vertebral canal
Spinal cord
Thoracic cavity
Diaphragm
Ventral body cavity
Abdominal cavity
Abdominopelvic cavity
Pelvic cavity
(a)
Diaphragm
Mediastinum
Pleural cavity
Pericardial cavity
Thoracic cavity
Abdominal cavity
Abdominopelvic cavity
Pelvic cavity
(b)

Figure A.7 **The Major Body Cavities.** (*a*) Left lateral view; (*b*) anterior view of the ventral body cavity.

Table A.2 Body Cavities and Membranes

Name of Cavity	Associated Viscera	Membranous Lining
Dorsal Body Cavity		
Cranial cavity	Brain	Meninges
Vertebral canal	Spinal cord	Meninges
Ventral Body Cavity		
Thoracic Cavity		
Pleural cavities (2)	Lungs	Pleurae
Pericardial cavity	Heart	Pericardium
Abdominopelvic Cavity		
Abdominal cavity	Digestive organs, spleen, kidneys	Peritoneum
Pelvic cavity	Bladder, rectum, reproductive organs	Peritoneum

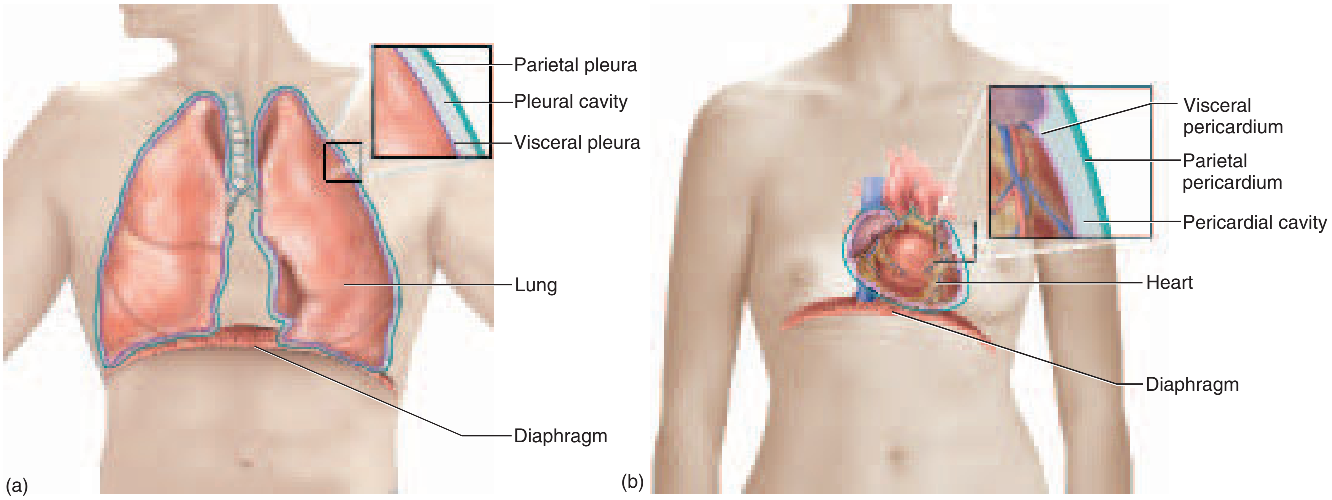


Figure A.8 **Parietal and Visceral Layers of Double-Walled Membranes.** (*a*) The pleura; (*b*) the pericardium.

rib cage; the inner layer, or **visceral** (VISS-er-ul) **pleura,** forms the external surface of the lung. The narrow, moist space between the visceral and parietal pleurae is called the **pleural cavity** (see fig. A.19). It is lubricated by a slippery **pleural fluid.**

The medial portion, or mediastinum, is occupied by the esophagus and trachea, a gland called the thymus, and the heart and major blood vessels connected to it. The heart is enclosed by a two-layered membrane called the **pericardium.**[13] The **visceral pericardium** forms the heart surface, while the **parietal pericardium** is separated from it by a space called the **pericardial cavity** (fig. A.8*b*). This space is lubricated by **pericardial fluid.**

Abdominopelvic Cavity

The abdominopelvic cavity consists of the **abdominal cavity** above the brim of the pelvis and the **pelvic cavity** below the brim (see fig. A.16). The abdominal cavity contains most of the digestive organs as well as the kidneys and ureters. The pelvic cavity is markedly narrower and its lower end tilts posteriorly (see fig. A.7*a*). It contains the distal part of the large intestine, the urinary bladder and urethra, and the reproductive organs.

---

[13] *peri* = around + *cardi* = heart

The abdominopelvic cavity contains a moist serous membrane called the **peritoneum**[14] (PERR-ih-toe-NEE-um). The **parietal peritoneum** lines the walls of the cavity, while the **visceral peritoneum** covers the external surfaces of most digestive organs. The **peritoneal cavity** is the space between the parietal and visceral layers. It is lubricated by **peritoneal fluid.**

Some organs of the abdominal cavity lie between the peritoneum and dorsal body wall (outside of the peritoneal cavity), so they are said to have a **retroperitoneal**[15] position (fig. A.9). These include the kidneys, ureters, adrenal glands, most of the pancreas, and abdominal portions of two major blood vessels—the aorta and inferior vena cava (see fig. A.15).

The intestines are suspended from the dorsal abdominal wall by a translucent membrane called the **mesentery**[16] (MESS-en-tare-ee), a continuation of the peritoneum. The membrane then wraps around the intestines and some other viscera, forming a moist membrane called the **serosa** (seer-OH-sa) on their outer surfaces (fig. A.10). The mesentery of the large intestine is called the **mesocolon.** The visceral peritoneum consists of the mesenteries and serosae.

A fatty membrane called the **greater omentum**[17] hangs like an apron from the inferolateral margin of the stomach and overlies the intestines (figs. A.10 and A.13). It is unattached at its inferior border and can be lifted to reveal the intestines. A smaller **lesser omentum** extends from the superomedial border of the stomach to the liver.

Organ Systems

The human body has 11 **organ systems** (fig. A.11) and an immune system, which is better described as a population of cells than as an organ system. These systems are classified in the following list by their principal functions, but this is an unavoidably flawed classification. Some organs belong to two or more systems—for example, the male urethra is part of both the urinary and reproductive systems; the pharynx is part of the respiratory and digestive systems; and the mammary glands can be considered part of the integumentary and female reproductive systems.

Protection, Support, and Movement

Integumentary system
Skeletal system
Muscular system

Internal Communication and Integration

Nervous system
Endocrine system

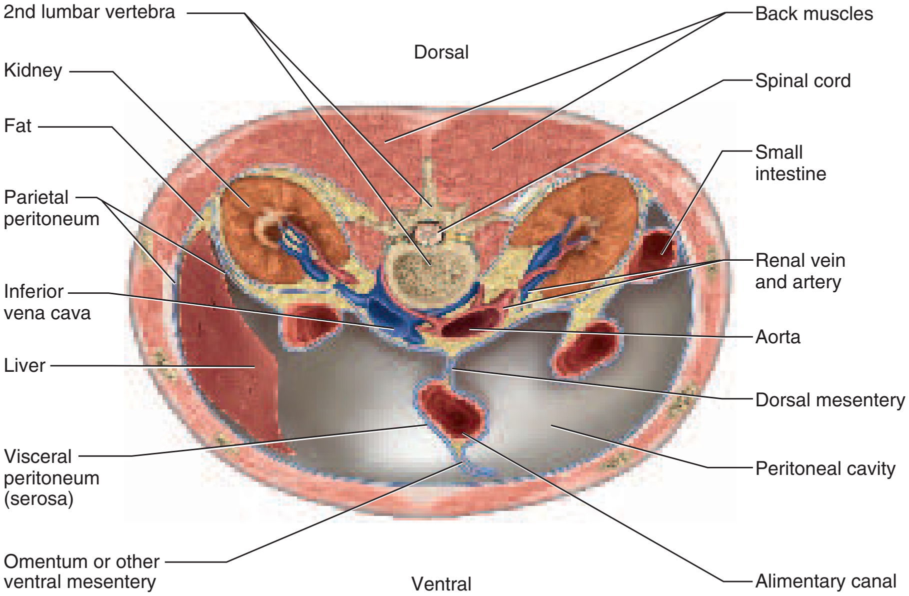


Figure A.9 **Transverse Section Through the Abdomen.** Shows the peritoneum, peritoneal cavity (with most viscera omitted), and some retroperitoneal organs.

---

[14] *peri* = around + *tone* = stretched
[15] *retro* = behind
[16] *mes* = in the middle + *enter* = intestine
[17] *omentum* = covering

Fluid Transport
Circulatory system
Lymphatic system

Defense
Immune system

Input and Output
Respiratory system
Urinary system
Digestive system

Reproduction
Reproductive system

A Visual Survey of the Body

Figures A.12 through A.16 provide an overview of the anatomy of the trunk and internal organs of the thoracic and abdominopelvic cavities. Figures A.17 through A.22 are photographs of the cadaver showing the major organs of the dorsal and ventral body cavities.

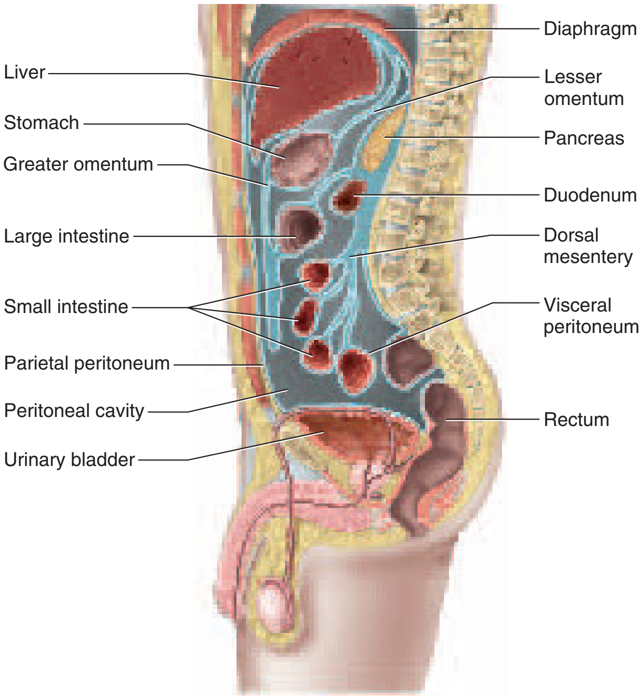
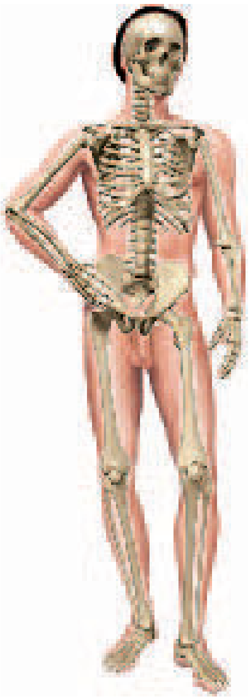
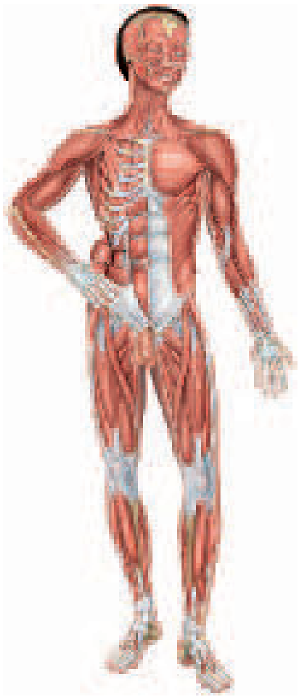

Diaphragm
Liver
Lesser omentum
Stomach
Pancreas
Greater omentum
Duodenum
Large intestine
Dorsal mesentery
Small intestine
Visceral peritoneum
Parietal peritoneum
Peritoneal cavity
Rectum
Urinary bladder

Figure A.10 **Serous Membranes of the Abdominal Cavity.** Sagittal section, left lateral view.
Is the urinary bladder in the peritoneal cavity?

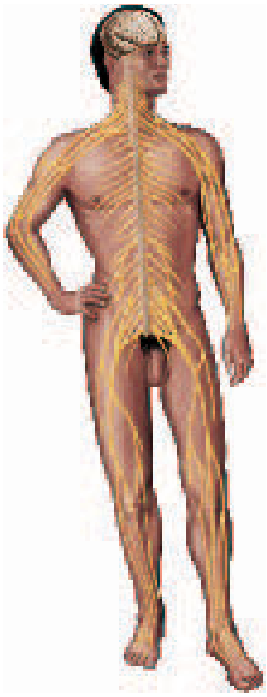
A.11*a* Integumentary system
Principal organs: Skin, hair, nails, cutaneous glands
Principal functions: Protection, water retention, thermoregulation, vitamin D synthesis, cutaneous sensation, nonverbal communication



A.11*b* Skeletal system
Principal organs: Bones, cartilages, ligaments
Principal functions: Support, movement, protective enclosure of viscera, blood formation, electrolyte and acid-base balance

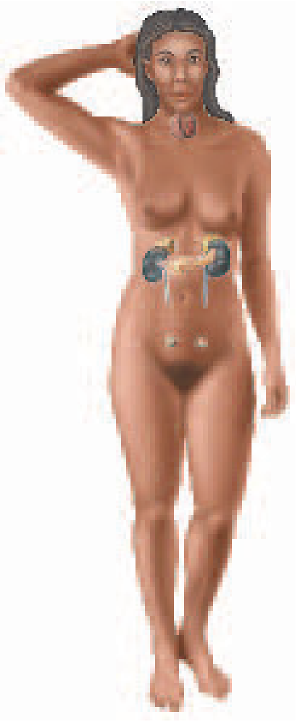


A.11*c* Muscular system
Principal organs: Skeletal muscles
Principal functions: Movement, stability, communication, control of body openings, heat production

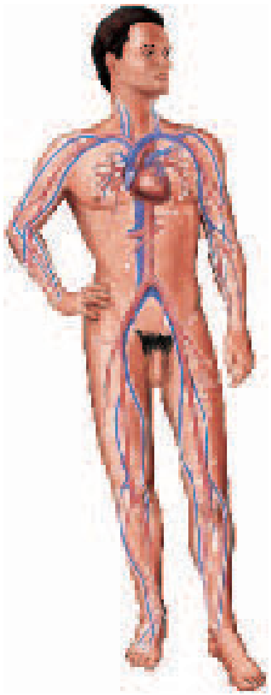


A.11*d* Nervous system
Principal organs: Brain, spinal cord, nerves, ganglia
Principal functions: Rapid internal communication and coordination, sensation

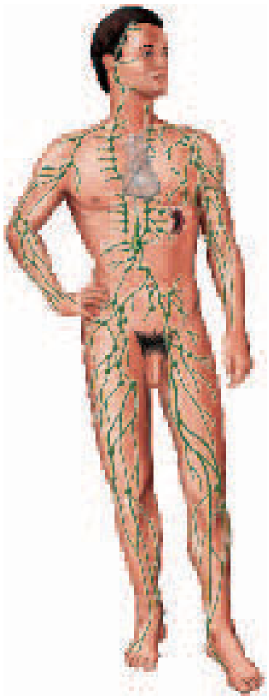
Figure A.11 **The Human Organ Systems.**



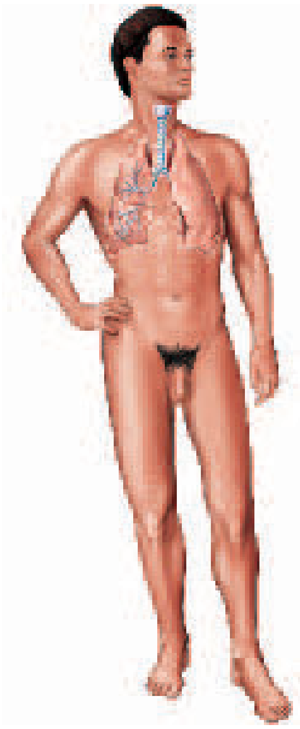
A.11*e* Endocrine system
Principal organs: Pituitary gland, pineal gland, thyroid gland, parathyroid glands, thymus, adrenal glands, pancreas, testes, ovaries
Principal functions: Internal chemical communication and coordination



A.11*f* Circulatory system
Principal organs: Heart, blood vessels
Principal functions: Distribution of nutrients, oxygen, wastes, hormones, electrolytes, heat, immune cells, and antibodies; fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base balance

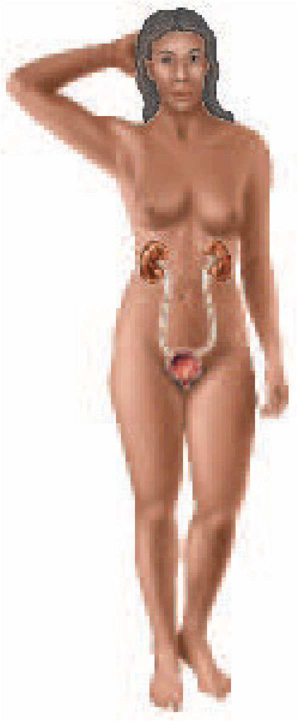


A.11*g* Lymphatic system
Principal organs: Lymph nodes, lymphatic vessels, thymus, spleen, tonsils
Principal functions: Recovery of excess tissue fluid, detection of pathogens, production of immune cells, defense

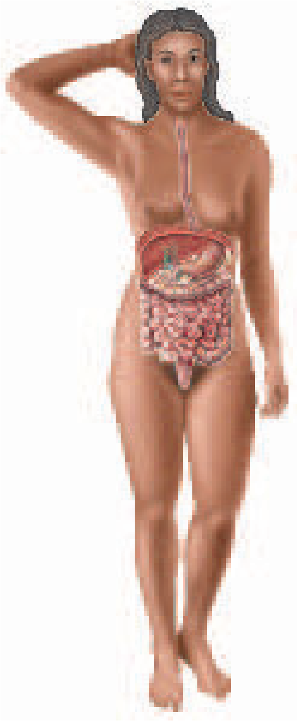


A.11*h* Respiratory system
Principal organs: Nose, pharynx, larynx, trachea, bronchi, lungs
Principal functions: Absorption of oxygen, discharge of carbon dioxide, acid-base balance, speech

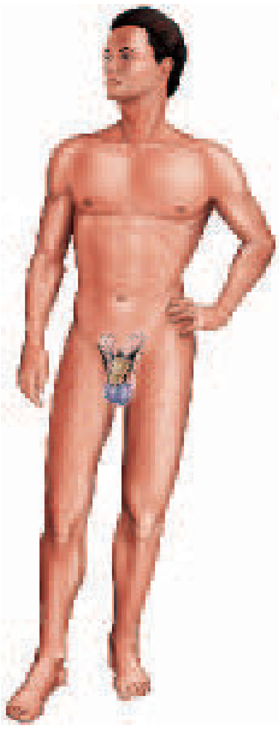
Figure A.11 The Human Organ Systems (*continued*).



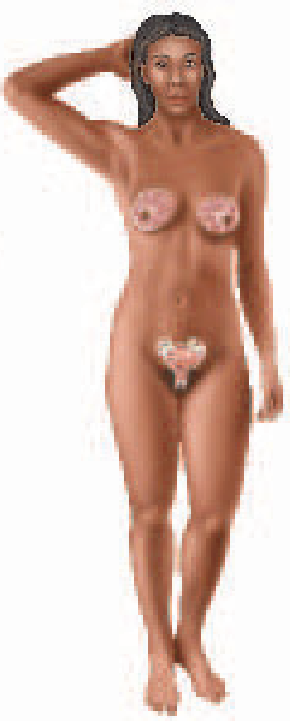
A.11*i* Urinary system
Principal organs: Kidneys, ureters, urinary bladder, urethra
Principal functions: Elimination of wastes; regulation of blood volume and pressure; stimulation of red blood cell formation; control of fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base balance; detoxification



A.11*j* Digestive system
Principal organs: Teeth, tongue, salivary glands, esophagus, stomach, small and large intestines, liver, gallbladder, pancreas
Principal functions: Nutrient breakdown and absorption; liver functions include metabolism of carbohydrates, lipids, proteins, vitamins, and minerals, synthesis of plasma proteins, disposal of drugs, toxins, and hormones, and cleansing of blood



A.11*k* Male reproductive system
Principal organs: Testes, epididymides, spermatic ducts, seminal vesicles, prostate gland, bulbourethral glands, penis
Principal functions: Production and delivery of sperm



A.11*l* Female reproductive system
Principal organs: Ovaries, uterine tubes, uterus, vagina, vulva, mammary glands
Principal functions: Production of eggs, site of fertilization and fetal development, fetal nourishment, birth, lactation

Figure A.11 The Human Organ Systems (*continued*).

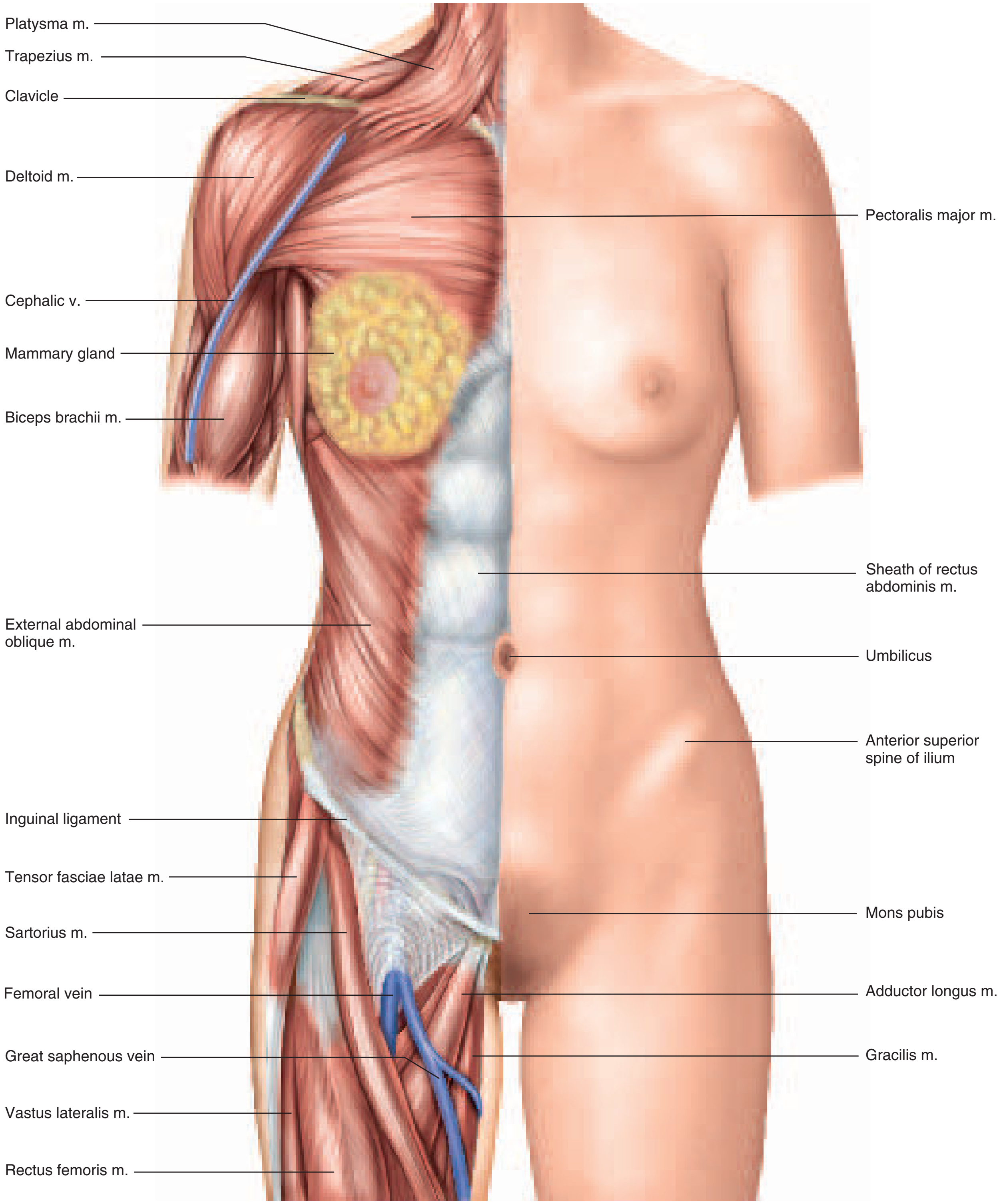

Platysma m.
Trapezius m.
Clavicle
Deltoid m.
Cephalic v.
Mammary gland
Biceps brachii m.
External abdominal oblique m.
Inguinal ligament
Tensor fasciae latae m.
Sartorius m.
Femoral vein
Great saphenous vein
Vastus lateralis m.
Rectus femoris m.
Pectoralis major m.
Sheath of rectus abdominis m.
Umbilicus
Anterior superior spine of ilium
Mons pubis
Adductor longus m.
Gracilis m.

Figure A.12 **Superficial Anatomy of the Trunk (female).** Surface anatomy is shown on the anatomical left, and structures immediately deep to the skin on the right (*m.* = muscle; *v.* = vein).

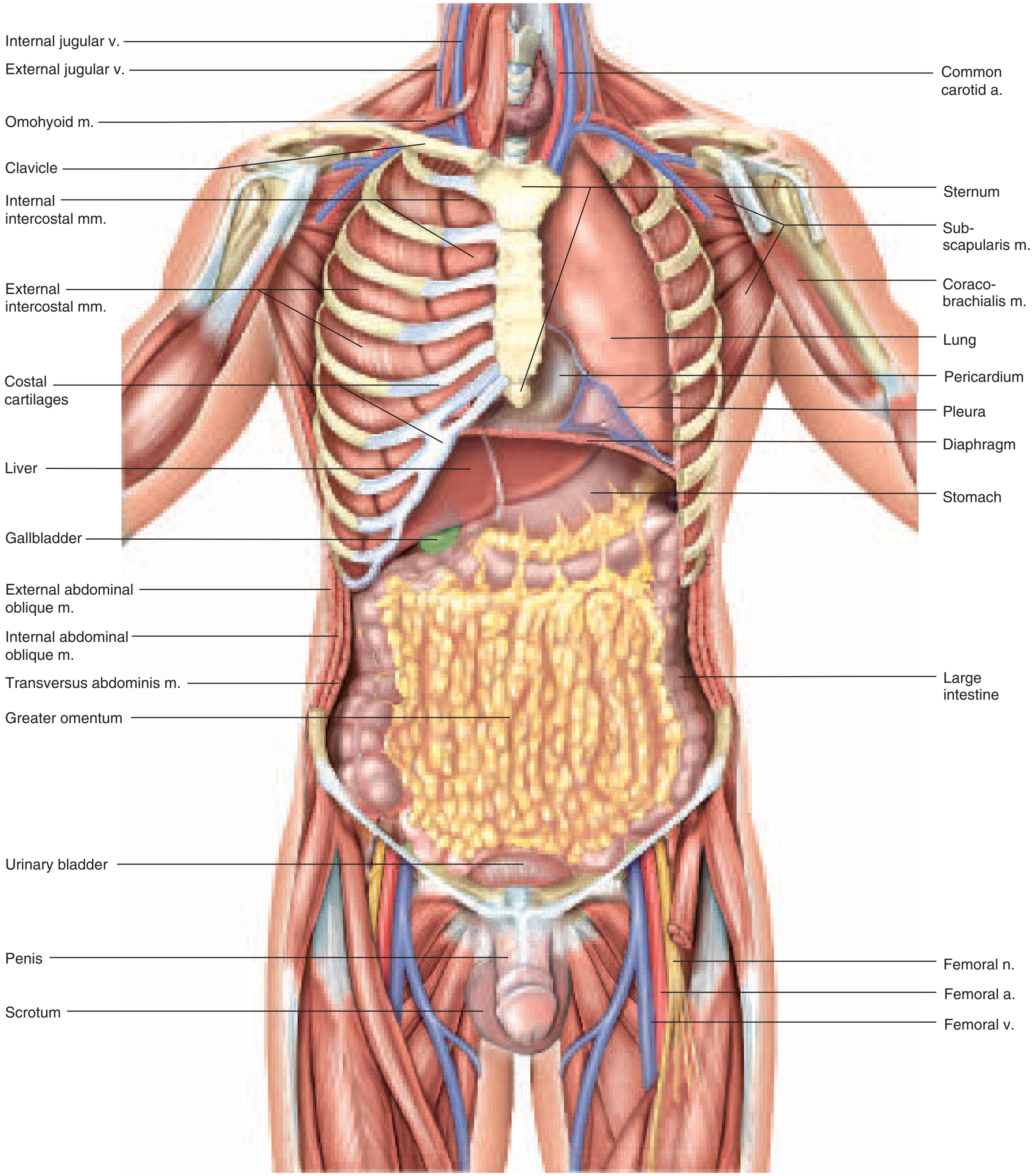

Internal jugular v.
External jugular v.
Omohyoid m.
Clavicle
Internal intercostal mm.
External intercostal mm.
Costal cartilages
Liver
Gallbladder
External abdominal oblique m.
Internal abdominal oblique m.
Transversus abdominis m.
Greater omentum
Urinary bladder
Penis
Scrotum
Common carotid a.
Sternum
Sub-scapularis m.
Coraco-brachialis m.
Lung
Pericardium
Pleura
Diaphragm
Stomach
Large intestine
Femoral n.
Femoral a.
Femoral v.

Figure A.13 **Anatomy at the Level of the Rib Cage and Greater Omentum (male).** The anterior body wall is removed, and the ribs, intercostal muscles, and pleura are removed from the anatomical left (*a.* = artery; *v.* = vein; *m.* = muscle; *n.* = nerve).

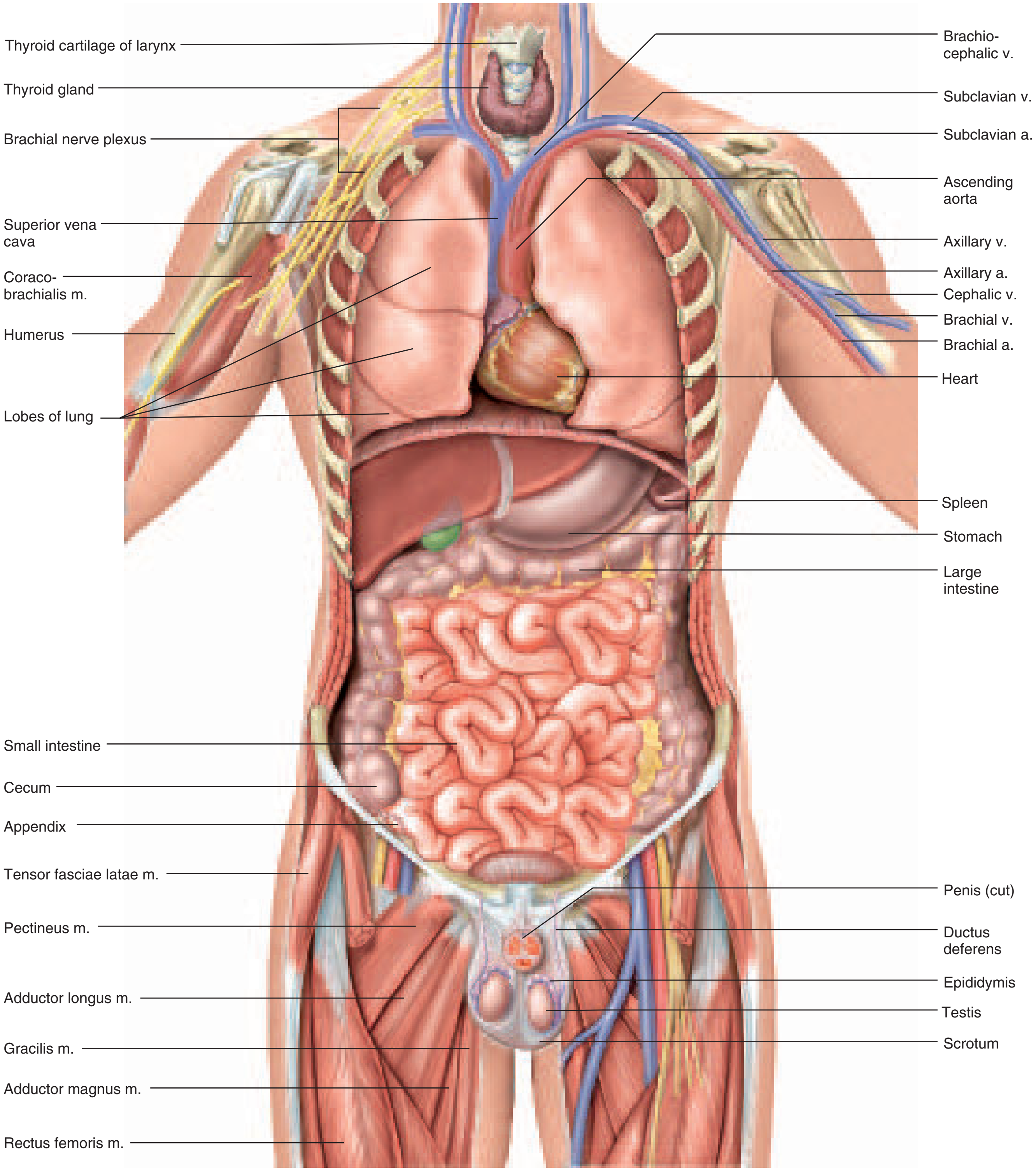

Thyroid cartilage of larynx
Thyroid gland
Brachial nerve plexus
Superior vena cava
Coraco-brachialis m.
Humerus
Lobes of lung
Small intestine
Cecum
Appendix
Tensor fasciae latae m.
Pectineus m.
Adductor longus m.
Gracilis m.
Adductor magnus m.
Rectus femoris m.
Brachio-cephalic v.
Subclavian v.
Subclavian a.
Ascending aorta
Axillary v.
Axillary a.
Cephalic v.
Brachial v.
Brachial a.
Heart
Spleen
Stomach
Large intestine
Penis (cut)
Ductus deferens
Epididymis
Testis
Scrotum

Figure A.14 **Anatomy at the Level of the Lungs and Intestines (male).** The sternum, ribs, and greater omentum are removed (*a.* = artery; *v.* = vein; *m.* = muscle)

Name several viscera that are protected by the rib cage.

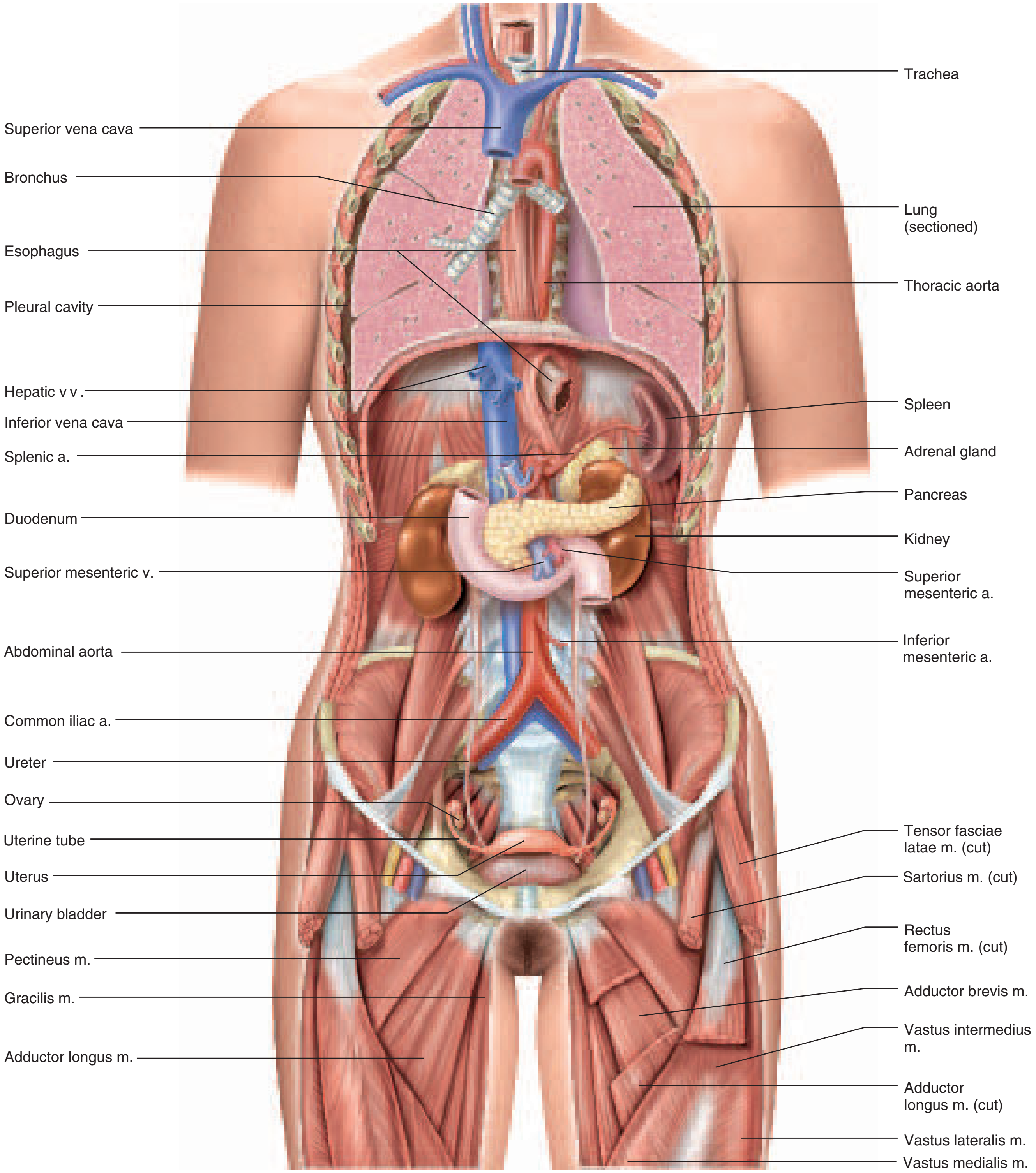

Trachea
Superior vena cava
Bronchus
Lung (sectioned)
Esophagus
Thoracic aorta
Pleural cavity
Hepatic v v .
Spleen
Inferior vena cava
Adrenal gland
Splenic a.
Pancreas
Duodenum
Kidney
Superior mesenteric v.
Superior mesenteric a.
Abdominal aorta
Inferior mesenteric a.
Common iliac a.
Ureter
Ovary
Tensor fasciae latae m. (cut)
Uterine tube
Uterus
Sartorius m. (cut)
Urinary bladder
Rectus femoris m. (cut)
Pectineus m.
Gracilis m.
Adductor brevis m.
Vastus intermedius m.
Adductor longus m.
Adductor longus m. (cut)
Vastus lateralis m.
Vastus medialis m.

Figure A.15 **Anatomy at the Level of the Retroperitoneal Viscera (female).** The heart is removed, the lungs are frontally sectioned, and the viscera of the peritoneal cavity and the peritoneum itself are removed (*a.* = artery; *v.* = vein; *vv.* = veins; *m.* = muscle).

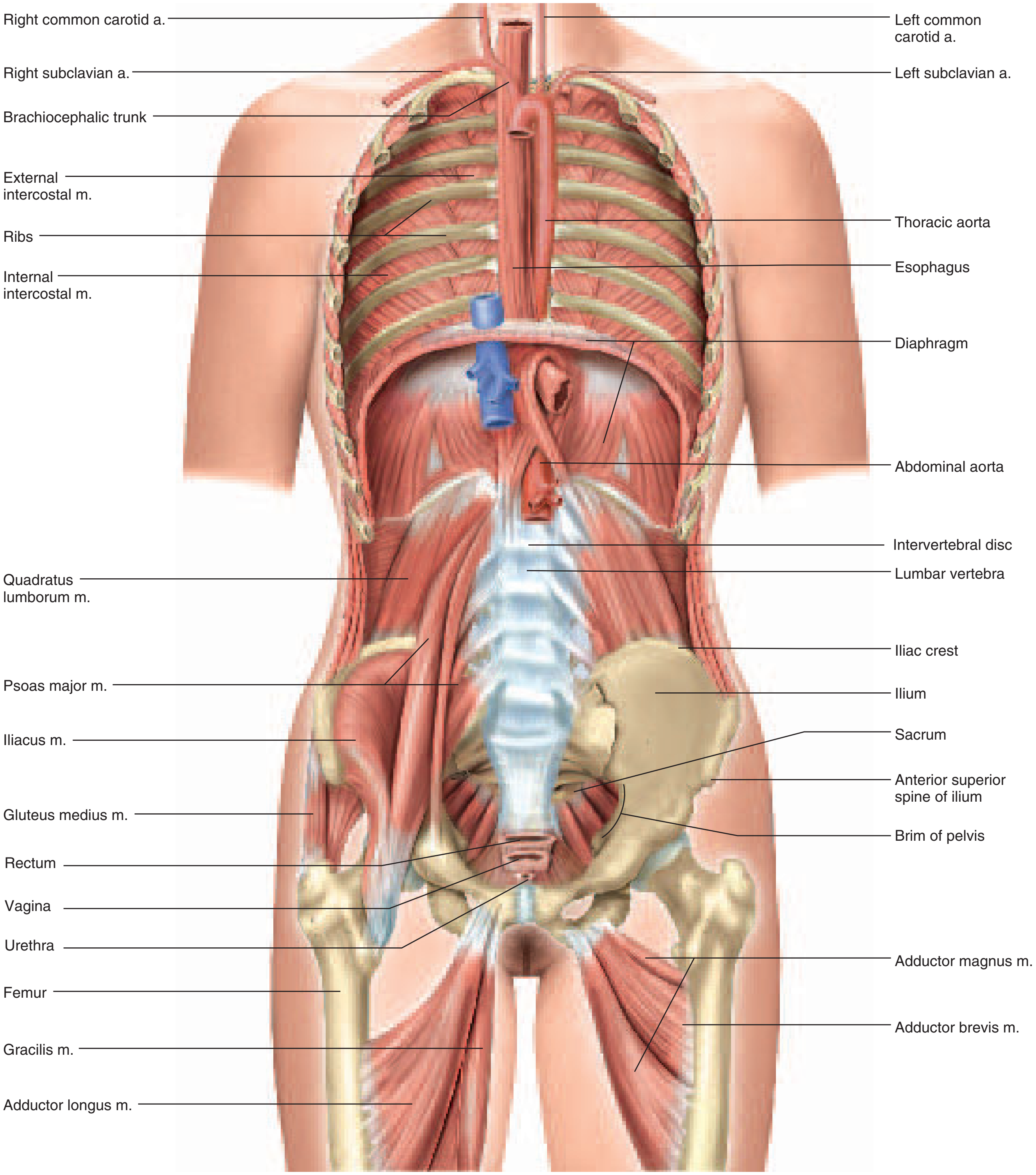

Right common carotid a.
Right subclavian a.
Brachiocephalic trunk
External intercostal m.
Ribs
Internal intercostal m.
Quadratus lumborum m.
Psoas major m.
Iliacus m.
Gluteus medius m.
Rectum
Vagina
Urethra
Femur
Gracilis m.
Adductor longus m.
Left common carotid a.
Left subclavian a.
Thoracic aorta
Esophagus
Diaphragm
Abdominal aorta
Intervertebral disc
Lumbar vertebra
Iliac crest
Ilium
Sacrum
Anterior superior spine of ilium
Brim of pelvis
Adductor magnus m.
Adductor brevis m.

Figure A.16 **Anatomy at the Level of the Dorsal Body Wall (female).** The lungs and retroperitoneal viscera are removed (*a.* = artery; *m.* = muscle).

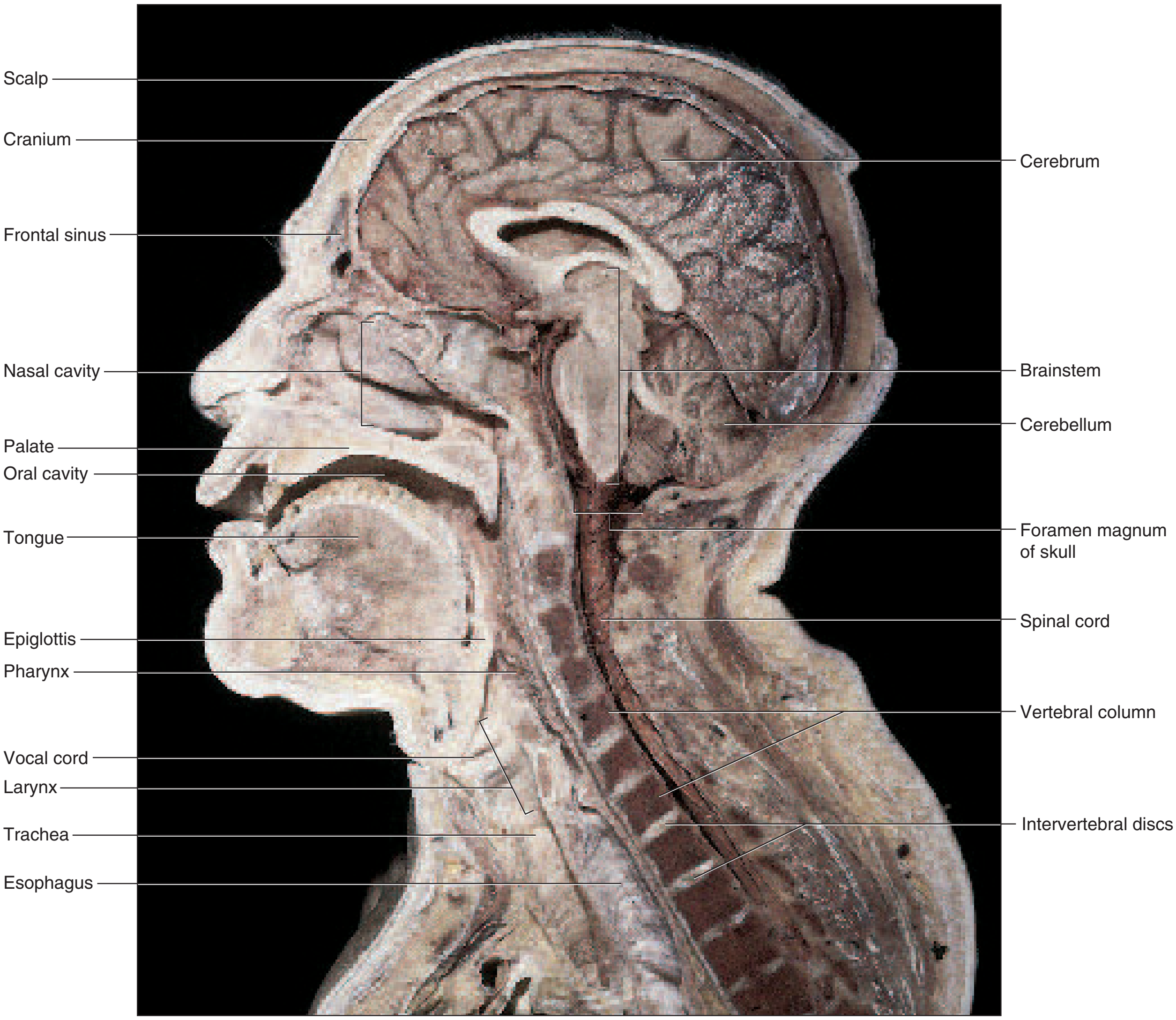

Scalp
Cranium
Frontal sinus
Nasal cavity
Palate
Oral cavity
Tongue
Epiglottis
Pharynx
Vocal cord
Larynx
Trachea
Esophagus
Cerebrum
Brainstem
Cerebellum
Foramen magnum of skull
Spinal cord
Vertebral column
Intervertebral discs

Figure A.17 **Median Section of the Head.** Shows contents of the cranial, nasal, and buccal cavities.

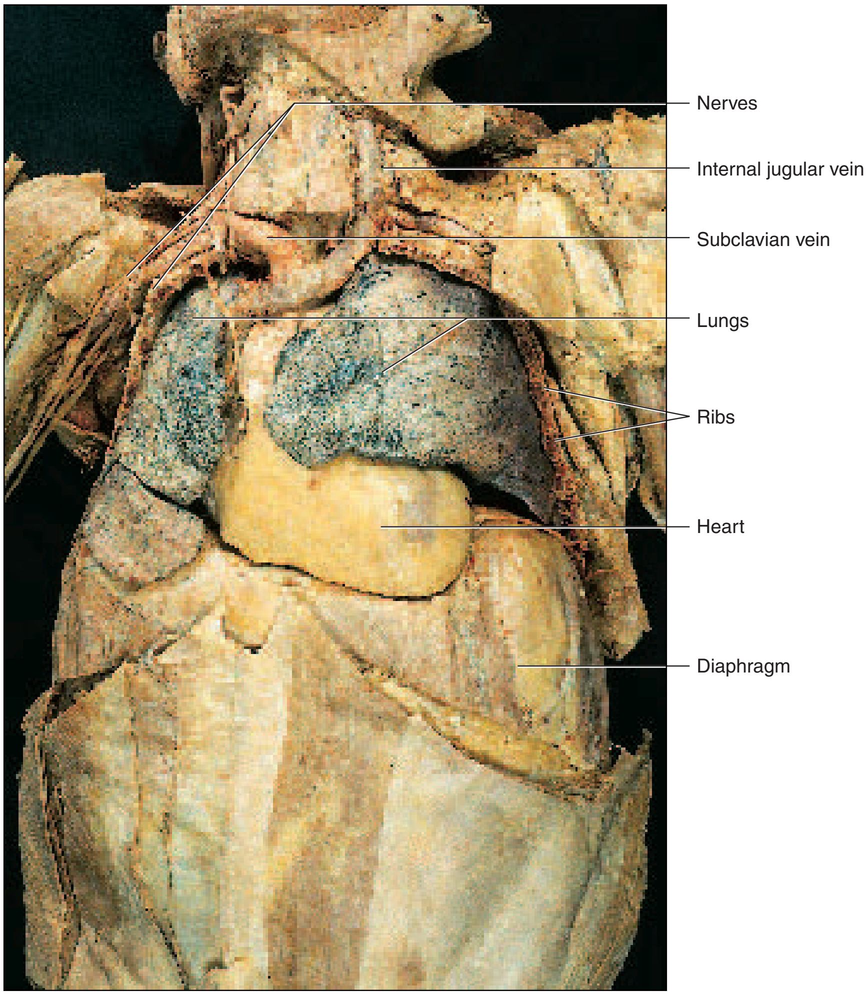

Nerves
Internal jugular vein
Subclavian vein
Lungs
Ribs
Heart
Diaphragm

Figure A.18 **Frontal View of the Thoracic Cavity.**

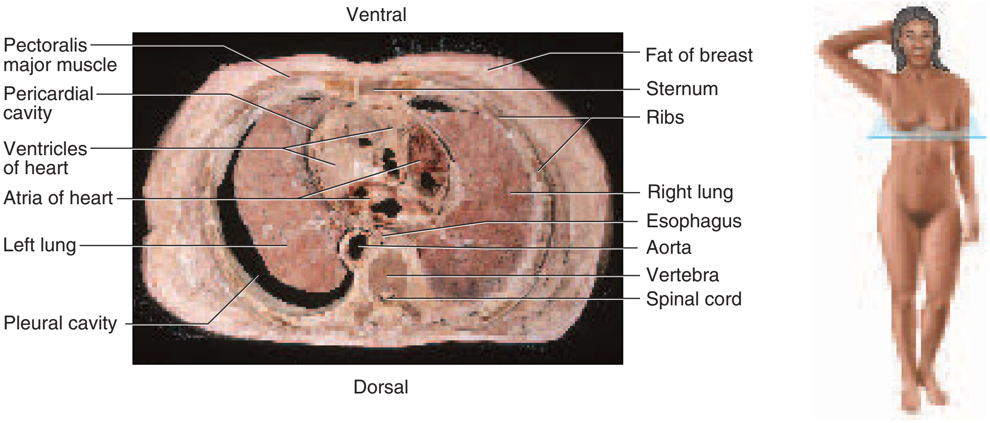

Ventral
Pectoralis major muscle
Pericardial cavity
Ventricles of heart
Atria of heart
Left lung
Pleural cavity
Fat of breast
Sternum
Ribs
Right lung
Esophagus
Aorta
Vertebra
Spinal cord
Dorsal

Figure A.19 **Transverse Section of the Thorax.** Section taken at the level shown by the inset and oriented the same as the reader's body. **In this section, which term best describes the position of the aorta relative to the heart: posterior, lateral, inferior, or proximal?**

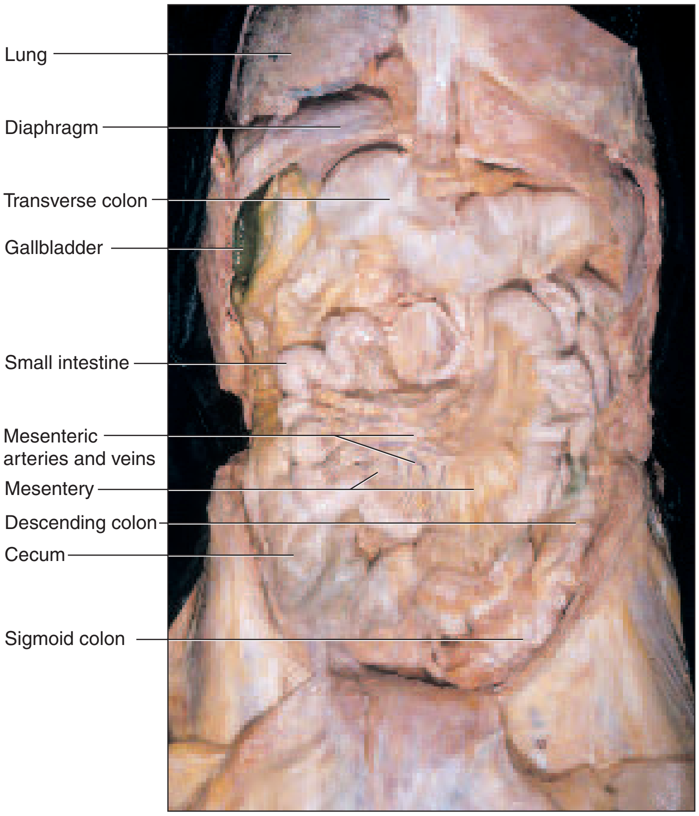

Lung
Diaphragm
Transverse colon
Gallbladder
Small intestine
Mesenteric arteries and veins
Mesentery
Descending colon
Cecum
Sigmoid colon

Figure A.20 **Frontal View of the Abdominal Cavity.**

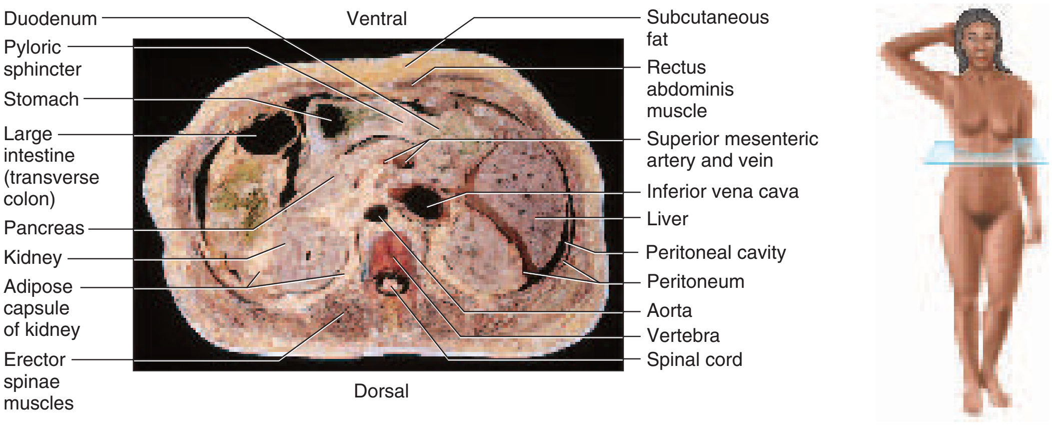
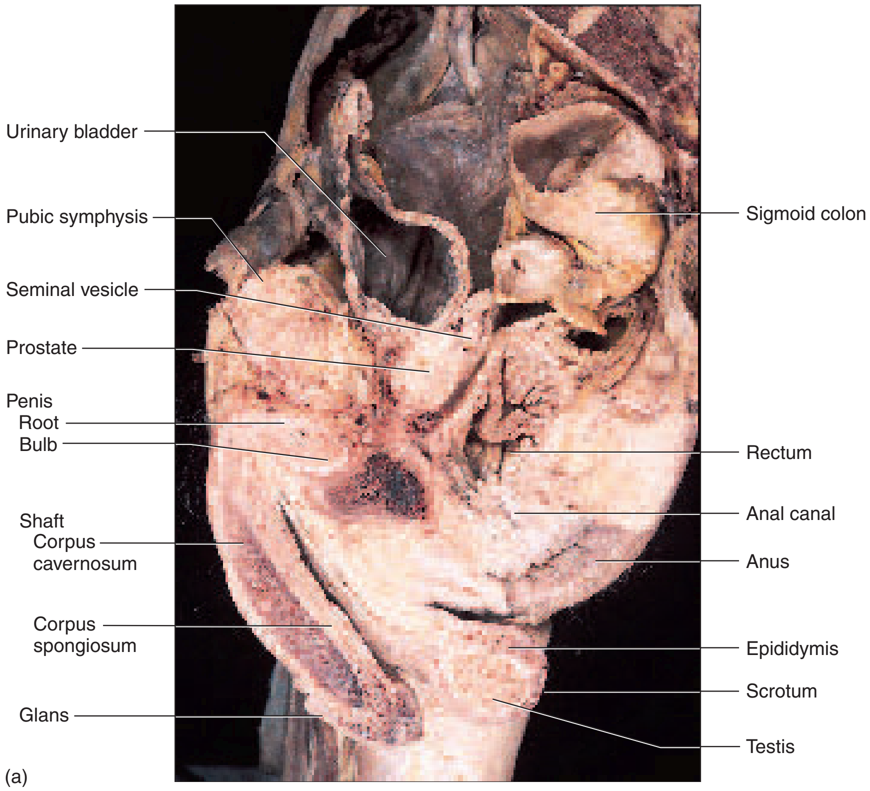

Duodenum
Pyloric sphincter
Stomach
Large intestine (transverse colon)
Pancreas
Kidney
Adipose capsule of kidney
Erector spinae muscles
Ventral
Dorsal
Subcutaneous fat
Rectus abdominis muscle
Superior mesenteric artery and vein
Inferior vena cava
Liver
Peritoneal cavity
Peritoneum
Aorta
Vertebra
Spinal cord

Figure A.21 **Transverse Section of the Abdomen.** Section taken at the level shown by the inset and oriented the same as the reader's body. **What tissue in this photograph is immediately superficial to the rectus abdominis muscle?**


Urinary bladder
Pubic symphysis
Seminal vesicle
Prostate
Penis
Root
Bulb
Shaft
Corpus cavernosum
Corpus spongiosum
Glans
(a)
Sigmoid colon
Rectum
Anal canal
Anus
Epididymis
Scrotum
Testis

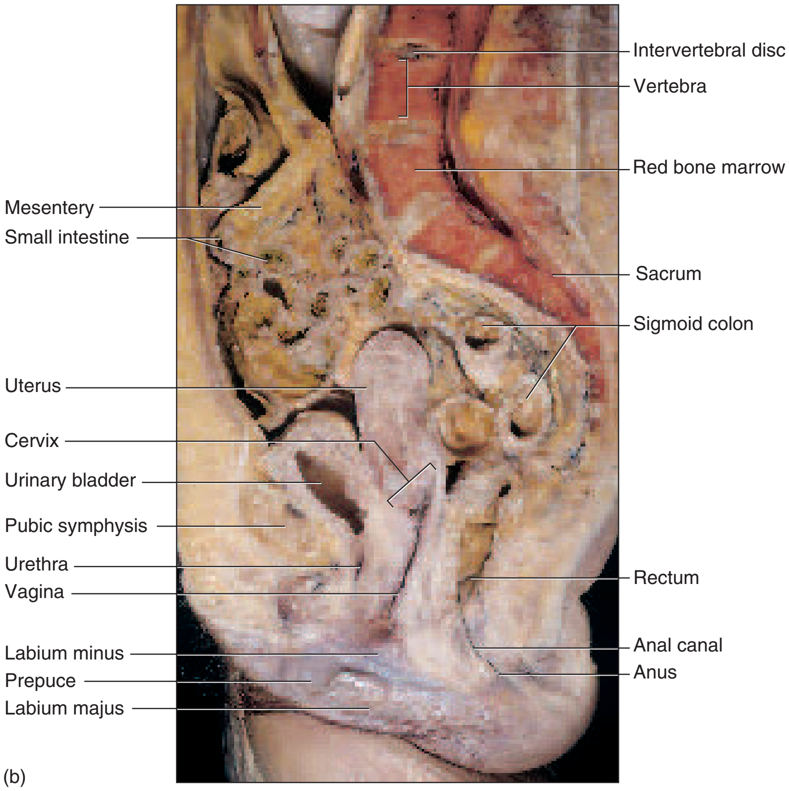

Intervertebral disc
Vertebra
Red bone marrow
Mesentery
Small intestine
Sacrum
Sigmoid colon
Uterus
Cervix
Urinary bladder
Pubic symphysis
Urethra
Vagina
Rectum
Labium minus
Prepuce
Labium majus
Anal canal
Anus
(b)

Figure A.22 **Median Sections of the Pelvic Cavity.** Viewed from the left. (*a*) Male, (*b*) Female.

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

Anatomical Position (p. 30)

1. Human anatomy is described with reference to a standard *anatomical position,* which avoids the ambiguity of terms that depend on the position of the body.

Anatomical Planes (p. 31)

1. Internal structure is often depicted along one of three mutually perpendicular planes through the body: the *sagittal, frontal,* and *transverse planes.*

Directional Terms (p. 31)

1. The position of one structure relative to another is often described by such pairs of terms as *superior-inferior, medial-lateral, proximal-distal,* and others (table A.1).

Surface Anatomy (p. 32)

1. The body is divided into a central *axial region* (head, neck, trunk) and *appendicular region* (limbs).
2. The abdomen can be divided into either four quadrants or nine regions for describing the locations of structures, symptoms, or abnormal conditions (fig. A.6).
3. Each limb is divided into five regions from proximal to distal.

Body Cavities and Membranes (p. 36)

1. The body is internally divided into a *dorsal* and *ventral* body cavity. The organs in these cavities are called the *viscera.*
2. The body cavities are lined with serous membranes: the *meninges* around the brain and spinal cord, *pleurae* around the lungs, *pericardium* around the heart, and *peritoneum* in the abdominal cavity.
3. The last three of these membranes have outer and inner *parietal* and *visceral* layers, respectively, with lubricating fluid between the layers (*pleural, pericardial,* and *peritoneal fluid*).
4. *Retroperitoneal* organs such as the kidneys and pancreas lie between the peritoneum and body wall rather than within the peritoneal cavity.
5. The peritoneum continues as a *mesentery* that suspends the intestines and other organs from the dorsal body wall, a *serosa* over the surface of some abdominal organs, and two *omenta* attached to the stomach.

Organ Systems (p. 38)

1. The body has 11 organ systems: the *integumentary, skeletal,* and *muscular* systems for protection, support, and movement; the *nervous* and *endocrine* systems for internal communication; the *circulatory* and *lymphatic* systems for fluid transport; the *respiratory, urinary,* and *digestive* systems for input and output; and the *reproductive* system for producing offspring.
2. The body also has an immune system for protection from disease, but this is not an organ system; it is a collection of cells that populate all the organ systems.

Selected Vocabulary

anatomical position	30
supine	30
prone	30
sagittal plane	31
frontal plane	31
transverse plane	31
ventral	32
dorsal	32
anterior	32
posterior	32
superior	32
inferior	32
medial	32
lateral	32
proximal	32
distal	32
superficial	32
deep	32
cervical region	32
thoracic region	32
abdominal region	32
viscera	36
serous membrane	36
mediastinum	36
pleural cavity	36
pericardial cavity	37
abdominal cavity	37
pelvic cavity	37
peritoneum	38
peritoneal cavity	38
retroperitoneal	38
mesentery	38
serosa	38

Testing Your Recall

1. Which of the following is *not* an essential part of anatomical position?
   a. eyes facing forward
   b. feet flat on the floor
   c. forearms supine
   d. mouth closed
   e. arms down to the sides
2. A ring-shaped section of the small intestine would be a ______ section.
   a. sagittal
   b. coronal
   c. transverse
   d. frontal
   e. median
3. The tarsal region is ______ to the popliteal region.
   a. medial
   b. superficial
   c. superior
   d. dorsal
   e. distal

4. The greater omentum is _____ to the small intestine.
   a. posterior
   b. parietal
   c. deep
   d. superficial
   e. proximal
5. A _____ line passes through the sternum, umbilicus, and mons pubis.
   a. central
   b. proximal
   c. midclavicular
   d. midsagittal
   e. intertubercular
6. The _____ region is immediately medial to the coxal region.
   a. inguinal
   b. hypochondriac
   c. umbilical
   d. popliteal
   e. cubital
7. Which of the following regions is *not* part of the upper limb?
   a. plantar
   b. carpal
   c. cubital
   d. brachial
   e. palmar
8. Which of these organs is within the peritoneal cavity?
   a. urinary bladder
   b. kidneys
   c. heart
   d. small intestine
   e. brain
9. In which area do you think pain from the gallbladder would be felt?
   a. umbilical region
   b. right upper quadrant
   c. hypogastric region
   d. left hypochondriac region
   e. left lower quadrant
10. Which organ system regulates blood volume, controls acid-base balance, and stimulates red blood cell production?
    a. digestive system
    b. lymphatic system
    c. nervous system
    d. urinary system
    e. circulatory system
11. The forearm is said to be _____ when the palms are facing forward.
12. The superficial layer of the pleura is called the _____ pleura.
13. The right and left pleural cavities are separated by a thick wall called the _____.
14. The back of the neck is the _____ region.
15. The manus is more commonly known as the _____ and the pes is more commonly known as the _____.
16. The dorsal body cavity is lined by membranes called the _____.
17. Organs that lie within the abdominal cavity but not within the peritoneal cavity are said to have a _____ position.
18. The sternal region is _____ to the pectoral region.
19. The pelvic cavity can be described as _____ to the abdominal cavity in position.
20. The anterior pit of the elbow is the _____ region, and the corresponding (but posterior) pit of the knee is the _____ fossa.

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. A single sagittal section of the body can pass through one lung but not through both.
2. It would be possible to see both eyes in one frontal section of the head.
3. The knee is both superior and proximal to the tarsal region.
4. The diaphragm is ventral to the lungs.
5. The esophagus is in the dorsal body cavity.
6. The liver is in the lateral abdominal region.
7. The heart is in the mediastinum.
8. Both kidneys could be shown in a single coronal section of the body.
9. The peritoneum lines the inside of the stomach and intestines.
10. The sigmoid colon is in the lower right quadrant of the abdomen.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. Identify which anatomical plane—sagittal, frontal, or transverse—is the only one that could *not* show (*a*) both the brain and tongue, (*b*) both eyes, (*c*) both the hypogastric and gluteal regions, (*d*) both kidneys, (*e*) both the sternum and vertebral column, and (*f*) both the heart and uterus.
2. Laypeople often misunderstand anatomical terminology. What do you think people really mean when they say they have “planter’s warts”?
3. Name one structure or anatomical feature that could be found in each of the following locations relative to the ribs: medial, lateral, superior, inferior, deep, superficial, posterior, and anterior. Try not to use the same example twice.
4. Based on the illustrations in this atlas, identify an internal organ that

is (*a*) in the upper left quadrant and retroperitoneal, (*b*) in the lower right quadrant of the peritoneal cavity, (*c*) in the hypogastric region, (*d*) in the right hypochondriac region, and (*e*) in the pectoral region.

5. Why do you think people with imaginary illnesses came to be called hypochondriacs?

Answers at the Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Legend Questions

A.3 Median (midsagittal)

A.10 No, it lies inferior to the peritoneum.

A.14 The lungs, heart, liver, stomach, and spleen, among others

A.19 Posterior

A.21 Fat

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.

CHAPTER 2

The Chemistry of Life

Cholesterol crystals photographed in polarized light

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Atoms, Ions, and Molecules 56

- The Chemical Elements 56
- Atomic Structure 56
- Isotopes and Radioactivity 58
- Ions, Electrolytes, and Free Radicals 59
- Molecules and Chemical Bonds 61

Water and Mixtures 63

- Water 63
- Solutions, Colloids, and Suspensions 65
- Measures of Concentration 66
- Acids, Bases, and pH 67

Energy and Chemical Reactions 68

- Energy and Work 68
- Classes of Chemical Reactions 69
- Reaction Rates 70
- Metabolism, Oxidation, and Reduction 70

Organic Compounds 71

- Carbon Compounds and Functional Groups 71
- Monomers and Polymers 72
- Carbohydrates 72
- Lipids 75
- Proteins 79
- Enzymes and Metabolism 82
- ATP, Other Nucleotides, and Nucleic Acids 85

Chapter Review 88

INSIGHTS

2.1 **Medical History:** Radiation and Madame Curie 58
2.2 **Clinical Application:** pH and Drug Action 68
2.3 **Clinical Application:** "Good" and "Bad" Cholesterol 78
2.4 **Clinical Application:** The Diagnostic Use of Isoenzymes 82
2.5 **Clinical Application:** Anabolic-Androgenic Steroids 87

Why is too much sodium or cholesterol harmful? Why does an iron deficiency cause anemia and an iodine deficiency cause a goiter? Why does a pH imbalance make some drugs less effective? Why do some pregnant women suffer convulsions after several days of vomiting? How can radiation cause cancer as well as cure it?

None of these questions can be answered, nor would the rest of this book be intelligible, without understanding the chemistry of life. A little knowledge of chemistry can help you choose a healthy diet, use medications more wisely, avoid worthless health fads and frauds, and explain treatments and procedures to your patients or clients. Thus, we begin our study of the human body with basic chemistry, the simplest level of the body's structural organization.

We will progress from general chemistry to **biochemistry,** study of the molecules that compose living organisms—especially those unique to living things, such as carbohydrates, fats, proteins, and nucleic acids. Most people have at least heard of these—it is common knowledge that we need proteins, fats, carbohydrates, vitamins, and minerals in our diet, and we should avoid consuming too much saturated fat and cholesterol. But most people, too, have only a vague concept of what these molecules are, much less how they function in the body. Such knowledge is very helpful in matters of personal fitness and patient education, and is essential to the comprehension of the rest of this book.

Atoms, Ions, and Molecules

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- recognize elements of the human body from their chemical symbols;
- distinguish between chemical elements and compounds;
- state the functions of minerals in the body;
- explain the basis for radioactivity and the types and hazards of ionizing radiation;
- distinguish between ions, electrolytes, and free radicals; and
- define the types of chemical bonds.

The Chemical Elements

A chemical **element** is the simplest form of matter to have unique chemical properties. Water, for example, has unique properties, but it can be broken down into two elements, hydrogen and oxygen, that have unique chemical properties of their own. If we carry this process any further, however, we find that hydrogen and oxygen are made of protons, neutrons, and electrons—and none of these are unique. A proton of gold is identical to a proton of oxygen. Hydrogen and oxygen are the simplest chemically unique components of water and are thus elements.

Each element is identified by an *atomic number,* the number of protons in its nucleus. The atomic number of carbon is 6 and that of oxygen is 8, for example. The periodic table of the elements (see appendix A) arranges the elements in order by their atomic numbers. The elements are represented by one- or two-letter symbols, usually based on their English names: C for carbon, Mg for magnesium, Cl for chlorine, and so forth. A few symbols are based on Latin names, such as K for potassium (*kalium*), Na for sodium (*natrium*), and Fe for iron (*ferrum*).

There are 91 naturally occurring elements on earth, 24 of which play normal physiological roles in humans. Table 2.1 groups these 24 according to their abundance in the body. Six of them account for 98.5% of the body's weight: oxygen, carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen, calcium, and phosphorus. The next 0.8% consists of another 6 elements: sulfur, potassium, sodium, chlorine, magnesium, and iron. The remaining 12 account for 0.7% of body weight, and no one of them accounts for more than 0.02%; thus they are known as **trace elements.** Despite their minute quantities, trace elements play vital roles in physiology. Other elements without natural physiological roles can contaminate the body and severely disrupt its functions, as in heavy metal poisoning with lead or mercury.

Several of these elements are classified as **minerals**—inorganic elements that are extracted from the soil by plants and passed up the food chain to humans and other organisms. Minerals constitute about 4% of the human body by weight. Nearly three-quarters of this is Ca and P; the rest is mainly Cl, Mg, K, Na, and S. Minerals contribute significantly to body structure. The bones and teeth consist partly of crystals of calcium, phosphate, magnesium, fluoride, and sulfate ions. Many proteins include sulfur, and phosphorus is a major component of nucleic acids, ATP, and cell membranes. Minerals also enable enzymes and other organic molecules to function. Iodine is a component of thyroid hormone; iron is a component of hemoglobin; and some enzymes function only when manganese, zinc, copper, or other minerals are bound to them. The electrolytes needed for nerve and muscle function are mineral salts. The biological roles of minerals are discussed in more detail in chapters 24 and 26.

Atomic Structure

In the fifth century B.C.E., the Greek philosopher Democritus reasoned that we can cut matter such as a gold nugget into smaller and smaller pieces, but there must ultimately be particles so small that nothing could cut them. He called these imaginary particles atoms[1] ("indivisible"). Atoms were only a philosophical concept until 1803, when English chemist John Dalton began to develop an atomic theory based on experimental evidence. In 1913, Danish physicist Niels Bohr proposed a model of atomic structure similar to planets orbiting the sun (figs. 2.1 and 2.2). Although this *planetary model* is too simple to account for many of the properties of atoms, it remains useful for elementary purposes.

---

[1] *a* = not + *tom* = cut

Table 2.1 Elements of the Human Body

Name	Symbol	Percentage of Body Weight
Major Elements (total 98.5%)		
Oxygen	O	65.0
Carbon	C	18.0
Hydrogen	H	10.0
Nitrogen	N	3.0
Calcium	Ca	1.5
Phosphorus	P	1.0
Lesser Elements (total 0.8%)		
Sulfur	S	0.25
Potassium	K	0.20
Sodium	Na	0.15
Chlorine	Cl	0.15
Magnesium	Mg	0.05
Iron	Fe	0.006

Trace Elements (total 0.7%)

Chromium	Cr	Molybdenum	Mo
Cobalt	Co	Selenium	Se
Copper	Cu	Silicon	Si
Fluorine	F	Tin	Sn
Iodine	I	Vanadium	V
Manganese	Mn	Zinc	Zn

At the center of an atom is the *nucleus,* composed of protons and neutrons. **Protons** (p^+) have a single positive charge and **neutrons** (n^0) have no charge. Each proton or neutron weighs approximately 1 *atomic mass unit (amu),* defined as one-twelfth the mass of an atom of carbon-12. The *atomic mass* of an element is approximately equal to its total number of protons and neutrons.

Around the nucleus are one or more concentric clouds of **electrons** (e^-), tiny particles with a single negative charge and very low mass. It takes 1,836 electrons to equal 1 amu, so for most purposes we can disregard their mass. A person who weighs 64 kg (140 lb) contains less than 24 g (1 oz) of electrons. This hardly means that we can ignore electrons, however. They determine the chemical properties of an atom, thereby governing what molecules can exist and what chemical reactions can occur. The number of electrons equals the number of protons, so their charges cancel each other and an atom is electrically neutral.

Electrons swarm about the nucleus in concentric regions called *electron shells (energy levels).* The more energy an electron has, the farther away from the nucleus its orbit lies. Each shell holds a limited number of electrons (see fig. 2.1). The one closest to the nucleus holds a maximum of 2 electrons, the second one holds a maximum of 8, and the third holds a maximum of 18. The outermost shell never holds more than 8 electrons, but a shell can acquire more electrons after another one, farther out, begins to fill. Thus, the third shell will hold 18 electrons only in atoms with four or more shells. The elements known to date have up to seven electron shells, but those ordinarily involved in human physiology do not exceed four.

The electrons of the outermost shell, called **valence electrons,** determine the chemical bonding properties of

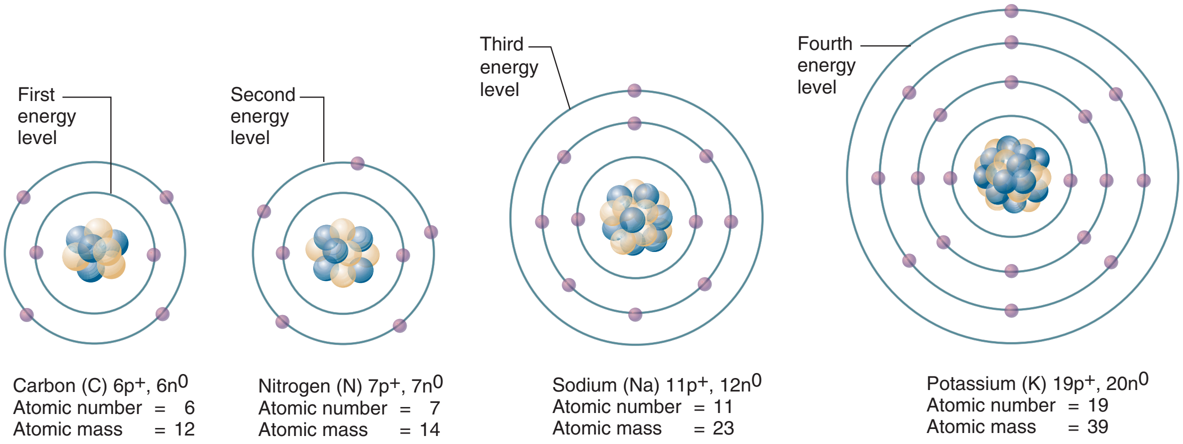


Figure 2.1 Bohr Planetary Models of Four Representative Elements. Note the filling of electron shells as atomic number increases. Protons are represented as p^+ and neutrons are represented as n^0.

Will potassium have more tendency to give up an electron or to take one away from another atom?

an atom. An atom tends to bond with other atoms that will fill its outer shell and produce a stable number of valence electrons. A hydrogen atom, with only one electron shell and one electron (fig. 2.2), tends to react with other atoms that provide another electron and fill this shell with a stable number of two electrons. All other atoms react in ways that produce eight electrons in the valence shell. This tendency is called the *octet rule (rule of eights).*

Isotopes and Radioactivity

Dalton believed that every atom of an element was identical, but we now know that all elements have varieties called **isotopes,**[2] which differ from each other only in number of neutrons and therefore in atomic mass. Most hydrogen atoms, for example, have only one proton; this isotope is symbolized ^{1}H. Hydrogen has two other isotopes: *deuterium* (^{2}H) with one proton and one neutron, and *tritium* (^{3}H) with one proton and two neutrons (fig. 2.2). Over 99% of carbon atoms have an atomic mass of 12 (6p$^+$, 6n^0) and are called carbon-12 (^{12}C), but a small percentage of carbon atoms are ^{13}C, with seven neutrons, and ^{14}C, with eight. All isotopes of a given element behave the same chemically. Deuterium (^{2}H), for example, reacts with oxygen the same way ^{1}H does to produce water.

The *atomic weight* of an element accounts for the fact that an element is a mixture of isotopes. If all carbon were ^{12}C, the atomic weight of carbon would be the same as its atomic mass, 12.000. But since a sample of carbon also contains small amounts of the heavier isotopes ^{13}C and ^{14}C, the atomic weight is slightly higher, 12.011.

Although different isotopes of an element exhibit identical chemical behavior, they differ in physical behavior. Many of them are unstable and *decay* (break down) to more stable isotopes by giving off radiation. Unstable isotopes are therefore called **radioisotopes,** and the process of decay is called **radioactivity** (see insight 2.1). Every element has at least one radioisotope. Oxygen, for example, has three stable isotopes and five radioisotopes. All of us contain radioisotopes such as ^{14}C and ^{40}K—that is, we are all mildly radioactive!

Insight 2.1 Medical History

Radiation and Madame Curie

In 1896, French scientist Henri Becquerel (1852–1908) discovered that uranium darkened photographic plates through several thick layers of paper. Marie Curie (1867–1934) and Pierre Curie (1859–1906), her hus-

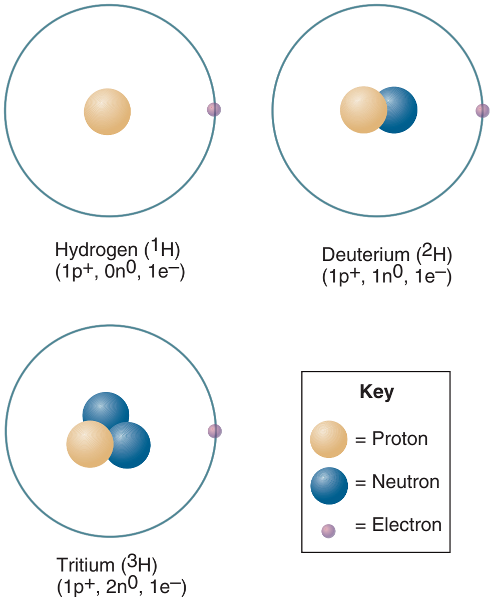


Figure 2.2 Isotopes of Hydrogen. The three isotopes differ only in the number of neutrons present.

Figure 2.3 Marie Curie (1867–1934). This portrait was made in 1911, when Curie received her second Nobel Prize.

---

[2] *iso* = same + *top* = place (same position in the periodic table)

band, discovered that polonium and radium did likewise. Marie Curie coined the term *radioactivity* for the emission of energy by these elements. Becquerel and the Curies shared a Nobel Prize in 1903 for this discovery.

Marie Curie (fig 2.3) was not only the first woman in the world to receive a Nobel Prize but also the first woman in France even to receive a Ph.D. She received a second Nobel Prize in 1911 for inventing radiation therapy for breast and uterine cancer. Curie crusaded to train women for careers in science, and in World War I, she and her daughter, Irène Joliot-Curie (1897–1956), trained physicians in the use of X-ray machines.

In the wake of such discoveries, radium was regarded as a wonder drug. Unaware of its danger, people drank radium tonics and flocked to health spas to bathe in radium-enriched waters. Marie herself suffered extensive damage to her hands from handling radioactive minerals and died of radiation poisoning at age 67. The following year, Irène and her husband, Frédéric Joliot (1900–1958), were awarded a Nobel Prize for work in artificial radioactivity and synthetic radioisotopes. Apparently also a martyr to her science, Irène died of leukemia, possibly induced by radiation exposure.

Many forms of radiation, such as light and radio waves, have low energy and are harmless. High-energy radiation, however, ejects electrons from atoms, converting atoms to ions; thus it is called **ionizing radiation.** It destroys molecules and produces dangerous free radicals and ions in human tissues. Examples of ionizing radiation include ultraviolet rays, X rays, and three kinds of radiation produced by nuclear decay: *alpha* (α) *particles, beta* (β) *particles,* and *gamma* (γ) *rays.*

An α particle is composed of two protons and two neutrons (equivalent to a helium nucleus), and a β particle is a free electron. Alpha particles are too large to penetrate the skin, and β particles can penetrate only a few millimeters. They are relatively harmless when emitted by sources outside the body, but they are very dangerous when emitted by radioisotopes that have gotten into the body. Strontium-90 (^{90}Sr), for example, has been released by nuclear accidents and the atmospheric testing of nuclear weapons. It settles onto pastures and contaminates cow's milk. In the body, it behaves chemically like calcium, becoming incorporated into the bones, where it emits β particles for years. Uranium and plutonium emit electromagnetic γ rays, which have high energy and penetrating power. Gamma rays are very dangerous even when emitted by sources outside the body.

Each radioisotope has a characteristic **physical half-life,** the time required for 50% of its atoms to decay to a more stable state. One gram of ^{90}Sr, for example, would be half gone in 28 years. In 56 years, there would still be 0.25 g left, in 84 years 0.125 g, and so forth. Many radioisotopes are much longer-lived. The half-life of ^{40}K, for example, is 1.3 billion years. Nuclear power plants produce hundreds of radioisotopes that will be intensely radioactive for at least 10,000 years—longer than the life of any disposal container yet conceived. The **biological half-life** of a radioisotope is the time required for half of it to disappear from the body. This is a function of both physical decay and physiological clearance from the body. Cesium-137, for example, has a physical half-life of 30 years but a biological half-life of only 17 days. Chemically, it behaves like potassium; it is quite mobile and rapidly excreted by the kidneys.

There are several ways to measure the intensity of ionizing radiation, the amount absorbed by the body, and its biological effects. To understand the units of measurement requires a grounding in physics beyond the scope of this book, but the standard international (SI) unit of radiation exposure is the *sievert*[3] (Sv), which takes into account the type and intensity of radiation and its biological effect. Doses of 5 Sv or more are usually fatal. The average American receives about 3.6 millisieverts (mSv) per year in *background radiation* from natural sources and another 0.6 mSv from artificial sources. The most significant natural source is *radon,* a gas that is produced by the decay of uranium in the earth and that may accumulate in buildings to unhealthy levels. Artificial sources include medical X rays, radiation therapy, and consumer products such as color televisions, smoke detectors, and luminous watch dials. Such voluntary exposure must be considered from the standpoint of its risk-to-benefit ratio. The benefits of a smoke detector or mammogram far outweigh the risk from the low levels of radiation involved. Radiation therapists and radiologists face a greater risk than their patients, however, and astronauts and airline flight crews receive more than average exposure. U.S. federal standards set a limit of 50 mSv/year as acceptable occupational exposure to ionizing radiation.

Ions, Electrolytes, and Free Radicals

Ions are charged particles with unequal numbers of protons and electrons. Elements with one to three valence electrons tend to give them up, and those with four to seven electrons tend to gain more. If an atom of the first kind is exposed to an atom of the second, electrons may transfer from one to the other and turn both of them into ions. This process is called *ionization.* The particle that gains electrons acquires a negative charge and is called an **anion** (AN-eye-on). The one that loses electrons acquires a positive charge (because it then has a surplus of protons) and is called a **cation** (CAT-eye-on).

Consider, for example, what happens when sodium and chlorine meet (fig. 2.4). Sodium has three electron shells with a total of 11 electrons: 2 in the first shell, 8 in the second, and 1 in the third. If it gives up the electron in the third shell, its second shell becomes the valence shell and has the stable configuration of 8 electrons. Chlorine has 17 electrons: 2 in the first shell, 8 in

---

[3] Rolf Maximillian Sievert (1896–1966), Swedish radiologist

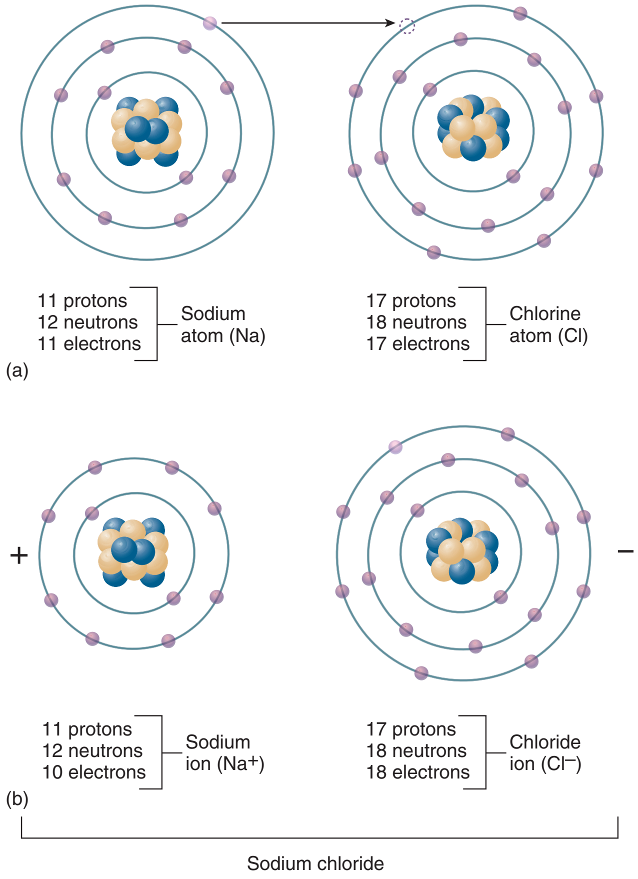


Figure 2.4 **Ionization.** (*a*) A sodium atom donates an electron to a chlorine atom. (*b*) This electron transfer converts the atoms to a positive sodium ion (Na^+) and a negative chloride ion (Cl^-).

the second, and 7 in the third. If it can gain one more electron, it can fill the third shell with 8 electrons and become stable. Sodium and chlorine seem "made for each other"—one needs to lose an electron and the other needs to gain one. This is just what they do. When they interact, an electron transfers from sodium to chlorine. Now, sodium has 11 protons in its nucleus but only 10 electrons. This imbalance gives it a positive charge, so we symbolize the sodium ion Na^+. Chlorine has been changed to the chloride ion with a surplus negative charge, symbolized Cl^-.

Some elements exist in two or more ionized forms. Iron, for example, has ferrous (Fe^{2+}) and ferric (Fe^{3+}) ions. Note that some ions have a single positive or negative charge, while others have charges of ±2 or ±3 because they gain or lose more than one electron. The charge on an ion is called its *valence.* Ions are not always single atoms that have become charged; some are groups of atoms—phosphate (PO_4^{3-}) and bicarbonate (HCO_3^-) ions, for example.

Ions with opposite charges are attracted to each other and tend to follow each other through the body. Thus, when Na^+ is excreted in the urine, Cl^- tends to follow it. The attraction of cations and anions to each other is important in maintaining the excitability of muscle and nerve cells, as we shall see in chapters 11 and 12.

Electrolytes are salts that ionize in water and form solutions capable of conducting electricity (table 2.2). We can detect electrical activity of the muscles, heart, and brain with electrodes on the skin because electrolytes in the body fluids conduct electrical currents from these organs to the skin surface. Electrolytes are important for their chemical reactivity (as when calcium phosphate becomes incorporated into bone), osmotic effects (influence on water content and distribution in the body), and electrical effects (which are essential to nerve and muscle function). Electrolyte balance is one of the most important considerations in patient care. Electrolyte imbalances have effects ranging from muscle cramps and brittle bones to coma and cardiac arrest.

Free radicals are chemical particles with an odd number of electrons. For example, oxygen normally exists as a stable molecule composed of two oxygen atoms, O_2; but if an additional electron is added, it becomes a free radical called the *superoxide anion,* $O_2^{-}\bullet$. Free radicals are represented with a dot to symbolize the odd electron.

Free radicals are produced by some normal metabolic reactions of the body (such as the ATP-producing oxidation reactions in mitochondria, and a reaction that some white blood cells use to kill bacteria), by radiation (such as ultraviolet radiation and X rays), and by chemicals (such as carbon tetrachloride, a cleaning solvent, and nitrites, present as preservatives in some wine, meat, and other foods). They are short-lived and combine quickly with molecules such as fats, proteins, and DNA, converting them into free radicals and triggering chain reactions that destroy still more molecules. Among the damages caused by free radicals are some forms of cancer and myocardial infarction, the death of heart tissue. One theory of aging is that it results in part from lifelong cellular damage by free radicals.

Because free radicals are so common and destructive, we have multiple mechanisms for neutralizing them. An **antioxidant** is a chemical that neutralizes free radicals. The body produces an enzyme called *superoxide dismutase (SOD),* for example, that converts superoxide into oxygen and hydrogen peroxide. Selenium, vitamin E (α-tocopherol), vitamin C (ascorbic acid), and carotenoids (such as β-carotene) are some antioxidants obtained from the diet. Dietary deficiencies of antioxidants have been associated with increased incidence of heart attacks, sterility, muscular dystrophy, and other disorders.

Table 2.2 Major Electrolytes and the Ions Released by Their Dissociation

Electrolyte		Cation	Anion
Calcium chloride (CaCl)	→	Ca^{2+}	2 Cl^-
Disodium phosphate (Na_2HPO_4)	→	2 Na^+	HPO_4^{2-}
Sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$)	→	Na^+	HCO_3^-
Sodium chloride (NaCl)	→	Na^+	Cl^-
Magnesium chloride ($MgCl_2$)	→	Mg^{2+}	2 Cl^-
Potassium chloride (KCl)	→	K^+	Cl^-

Molecules and Chemical Bonds

Molecules are chemical particles composed of two or more atoms united by a covalent chemical bond (the sharing of electrons). The atoms may be identical, as in nitrogen (N_2), or different, as in glucose ($C_6H_{12}O_6$). Molecules composed of two or more different elements are called **compounds.** Oxygen (O_2) and carbon dioxide (CO_2) are both molecules because both consist of at least two atoms, but only CO_2 is a compound, because it has atoms of two different elements.

Molecules can be represented by *molecular formulae,* as shown here, that identify their constituent elements and show how many atoms of each are present. Molecules with identical molecular formulae but different arrangements of their atoms are called **isomers**[4] of each other. For example, both ethanol (grain alcohol) and ethyl ether have the molecular formula C_2H_6O, but they are certainly not interchangeable! To show the difference between them, we use *structural formulae* that show the location of each atom (fig. 2.5).

The **molecular weight (MW)** of a compound is the sum of the atomic weights of its atoms. Rounding the atomic mass units (amu) to whole numbers, we can calculate the approximate MW of glucose ($C_6H_{12}O_6$), for example, as

$$\begin{array}{lcr}
\text{6 C atoms} \times \text{12 amu each} & = & \text{72 amu} \\
\text{12 H atoms} \times \text{1 amu each} & = & \text{12 amu} \\
\underline{\text{6 O atoms} \times \text{16 amu each}} & \underline{=} & \underline{\text{96 amu}} \\
\text{Molecular weight (MW)} & = & \text{180 amu}
\end{array}$$

Molecular weight is needed to compute some measures of concentration, as we shall see later.

A molecule is held together, and molecules are attracted to each other, by forces called **chemical bonds.** The three bonds of greatest physiological interest are *ionic bonds, covalent bonds,* and *hydrogen bonds* (table 2.3).

An **ionic bond** is the attraction of a cation to an anion. Sodium (Na^+) and chloride (Cl^-) ions, for example, are attracted to each other and form the compound sodium chloride (NaCl), common table salt. Ionic compounds can be composed of more than two ions. Calcium has two valence electrons. It can become stable by donating one electron to one chlorine atom and the other electron to another chlorine, thus producing a calcium ion

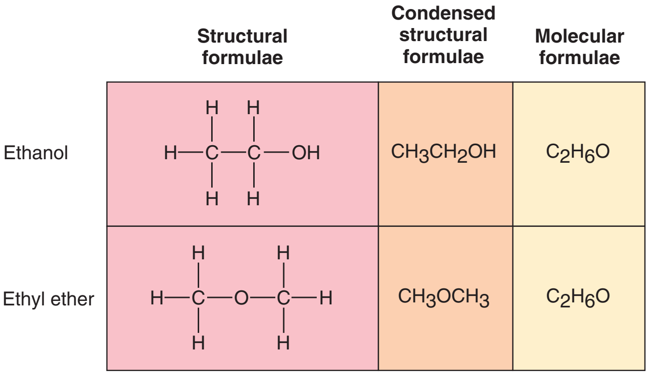


Figure 2.5 **Structural Isomers, Ethanol and Ethyl Ether.** The molecular formulae are identical, but the structures and chemical properties are different.

Table 2.3 Types of Chemical Bonds

Bond Type	Definition and Remarks
Ionic bond	Relatively weak attraction between an anion and a cation. Easily disrupted in water, as when salt dissolves.
Covalent bond	Sharing of one or more pairs of electrons between nuclei.
Single covalent	Sharing of one electron pair.
Double covalent	Sharing of two electron pairs. Often occurs between carbon atoms, between carbon and oxygen, and between carbon and nitrogen.
Nonpolar covalent	Covalent bond in which electrons are equally attracted to both nuclei. May be single or double. Strongest type of chemical bond.
Polar covalent	Covalent bond in which electrons are more attracted to one nucleus than to the other, resulting in slightly positive and negative regions in one molecule. May be single or double.
Hydrogen bond	Weak attraction between polarized molecules or between polarized regions of the same molecule. Important in the three-dimensional folding and coiling of large molecules. Weakest of all bonds; easily disrupted by temperature and pH changes.

---

[4] *iso* = same + *mers* = parts

(Ca^{2+}) and two chloride ions. The result is calcium chloride, $CaCl_2$. Ionic bonds are weak and easily dissociate (break up) in the presence of something more attractive, such as water. The ionic bonds of NaCl break down easily as salt dissolves in water, because both Na^+ and Cl^- are more attracted to water molecules than they are to each other.

Think About It

Do you think ionic bonds are common in the human body? Explain your answer.

Covalent bonds form by the sharing of electrons. For example, two hydrogen atoms share valence electrons to form a hydrogen molecule, H_2 (fig. 2.6*a*). The two electrons, one donated by each atom, swarm around both nuclei in a dumbbell-shaped cloud. A *single covalent bond* is the sharing of a single pair of electrons. It is symbolized by a single line between atomic symbols, for example H—H. A *double covalent bond* is the sharing of two pairs of electrons. In carbon dioxide, for example, a central carbon atom shares two electron pairs with each oxygen atom. Such bonds are symbolized by two lines, for example O═C═O (fig. 2.6*b*).

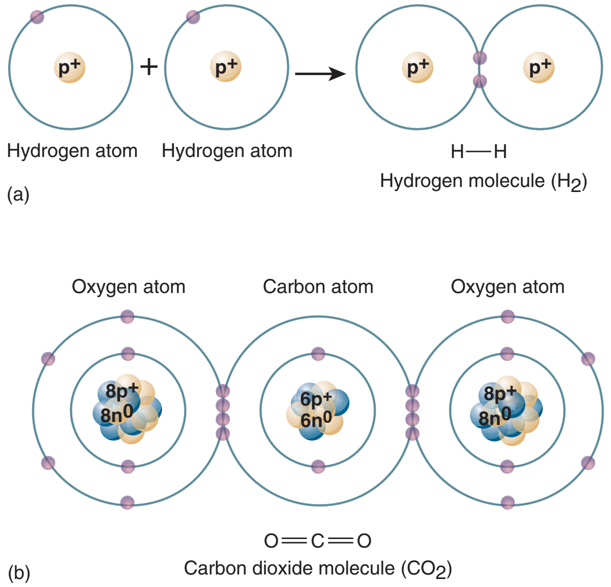


Figure 2.6 **Covalent Bonding.** (*a*) Two hydrogen atoms share a single pair of electrons to form a hydrogen molecule. (*b*) A carbon dioxide molecule, in which a carbon atom shares two pairs of electrons with each oxygen atom, forming double covalent bonds.
How is the octet rule illustrated by the CO_2 molecule?

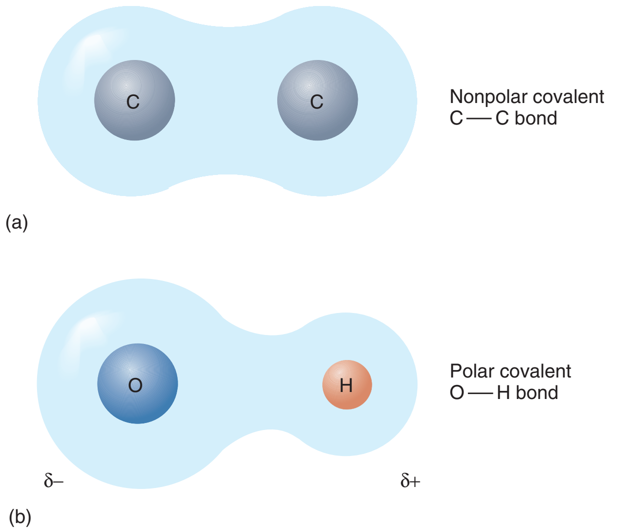


Figure 2.7 **Nonpolar and Polar Covalent Bonds.** (*a*) A nonpolar covalent bond between two carbon atoms, formed by electrons that spend an equal amount of time around each nucleus, as represented by the symmetric blue cloud. (*b*) A polar covalent bond, in which electrons orbit one nucleus significantly more than the other, as represented by the asymmetric cloud. This results in a slight negative charge ($\delta-$) in the region where the electrons spend most of their time, and a slight positive charge ($\delta+$) at the other pole.

When shared electrons spend approximately equal time around each nucleus, they form a *nonpolar covalent bond* (fig. 2.7*a*), the strongest of all chemical bonds. Carbon atoms bond to each other with nonpolar covalent bonds. If shared electrons spend significantly more time orbiting one nucleus than they do the other, they lend their negative charge to the region where they spend the most time, and they form a *polar covalent bond* (fig. 2.7*b*). When hydrogen bonds with oxygen, for example, the electrons are more attracted to the oxygen nucleus and orbit it more than they do the hydrogen. This makes the oxygen region of the molecule slightly negative and the hydrogen regions slightly positive. The Greek delta (δ) is used to symbolize a charge less than that of one electron or proton. A slightly negative region of a molecule is represented $\delta-$ and a slightly positive region is represented $\delta+$.

A **hydrogen bond** is a weak attraction between a slightly positive hydrogen atom in one molecule and a slightly negative oxygen or nitrogen atom in another. Water molecules, for example, are weakly attracted to each other by hydrogen bonds (fig. 2.8). Hydrogen bonds also form between different regions of the same molecule, especially in very large molecules such as proteins and DNA. They cause such molecules to fold or coil into pre-

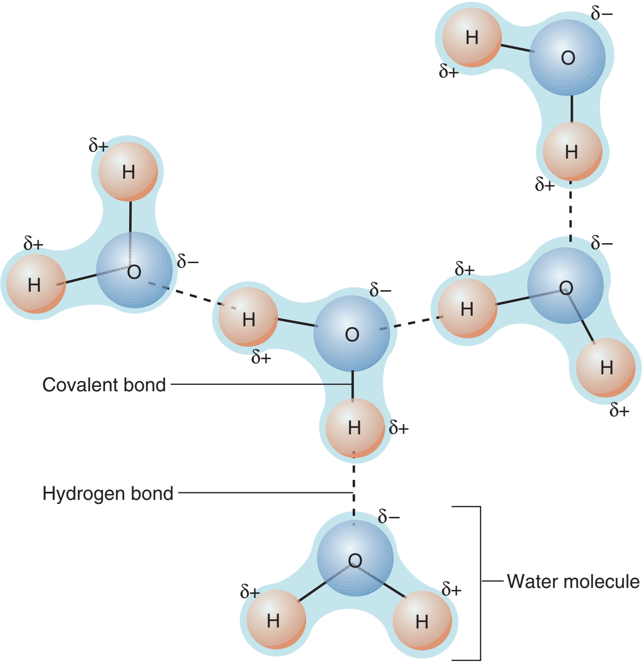


Figure 2.8 **Hydrogen Bonding in Water.** The polar covalent bonds of water molecules enable each oxygen to form a hydrogen bond with a hydrogen of a neighboring molecule. Thus, the water molecules are weakly attracted to each other.

Why would this behavior raise the boiling point of water above that of a nonpolar liquid?

cise three-dimensional shapes. Hydrogen bonds are represented by dotted or broken lines between atoms: —C═O· · ·H—N—. Hydrogen bonds are the weakest of all the bond types we have considered, but they are enormously important to physiology.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

1. Consider iron (Fe), hydrogen gas (H_2), and ammonia (NH_3). Which of these is or are atoms? Which of them is or are molecules? Which of them is or are compounds? Explain each answer.
2. Why is the biological half-life of a radioisotope shorter than its physical half-life?
3. Where do free radicals come from? What harm do they do? What protections from free radicals exist?
4. How does an ionic bond differ from a covalent bond?
5. What is a hydrogen bond? Why do hydrogen bonds depend on the existence of polar covalent bonds?

Water and Mixtures

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- define *mixture* and distinguish between mixtures and compounds;
- describe the biologically important properties of water;
- show how three kinds of mixtures differ from each other;
- discuss some ways in which the concentration of a solution can be expressed, and explain why different expressions of concentration are used for different purposes; and
- define *acid* and *base* and interpret the pH scale.

Our body fluids are complex mixtures of chemicals. A **mixture** consists of substances that are physically blended but not chemically combined. Each substance retains its own chemical properties. To contrast a mixture with a compound, consider sodium chloride again. Sodium is a lightweight metal that bursts into flame if exposed to water, and chlorine is a yellow-green poisonous gas that was used for chemical warfare in World War I. When these elements chemically react, they form common table salt. Clearly, the compound has properties much different from the properties of its elements. But if you were to put a little salt on your watermelon, the watermelon would taste salty and sweet because the sugar of the melon and the salt you added would merely form a mixture in which each compound retained its individual properties.

Water

Most mixtures in our bodies consist of chemicals dissolved or suspended in water. Water constitutes 50% to 75% of your body weight, depending on age, sex, fat content, and other factors. Its structure, simple as it is, has profound biological effects. Two aspects of its structure are particularly important: (1) its atoms are joined by polar covalent bonds, and (2) the molecule is V-shaped, with a 105° bond angle (fig. 2.9*a*). This makes the molecule as a whole polar, with a slight negative charge (δ−) on the oxygen and a slight positive charge (δ+) on each hydrogen. Like little magnets, water molecules are attracted to each other by hydrogen bonds (see fig. 2.8). This gives water a set of properties that account for its ability to support life: *solvency, cohesion, adhesion, chemical reactivity,* and *thermal stability.*

Solvency is the ability to dissolve other chemicals. Water is sometimes called the *universal solvent* because it dissolves a broader range of substances than any other liquid. Substances that dissolve in water, such as sugar, are said to be **hydrophilic**[5] (HY-dro-FILL-ic); the relatively few substances that do not, such as fats, are **hydrophobic**[6] (HY-dro-FOE-bic). Virtually all metabolic reactions depend on the solvency of water. Biological molecules must be dissolved in water to move freely, come together, and react. The solvency of water also makes it the body's primary means of transporting substances from place to place.

---

[5] *hydro* = water + *philic* = loving, attracted to

To be soluble in water, a molecule must be charged so that its charges can interact with those of water. When NaCl is dropped into water, for example, the ionic bonds between Na$^+$ and Cl$^-$ are overpowered by the attraction of each ion to water molecules. Water molecules form a cluster, or *hydration sphere,* around each sodium ion with the O$^{\delta-}$ pole of each water molecule facing the sodium ion. They also form a hydration sphere around each chloride ion, with the H$^{\delta+}$ poles facing it. This isolates the sodium ions from the chloride ions and keeps them dissolved (fig. 2.9*b*).

Adhesion is the tendency of one substance to cling to another, whereas *cohesion* is the tendency of molecules of the same substance to cling to each other. Water adheres to the body's tissues and forms a lubricating film on membranes such as the pleura and pericardium. This helps reduce friction as the lungs and heart contract and expand and rub against these membranes. Water also is a very cohesive liquid because of its hydrogen bonds. This is why, when you spill water on the floor, it forms a puddle and evaporates slowly. By contrast, if you spill a nonpolar substance such as liquid nitrogen, it dances about and evaporates in seconds, like a drop of water in a hot dry skillet. This is because nitrogen molecules have no attraction for each other, so the little bit of heat provided by the floor is enough to disperse them into the air. The cohesion of water is especially evident at its surface, where it forms an elastic layer called the *surface film* held together by a force called *surface tension.* This force causes water to hang in drops from a leaky faucet and travel in rivulets down a window.

The *chemical reactivity* of water is its ability to participate in chemical reactions. Not only does water ionize many other chemicals such as acids and salts, but water itself ionizes into H$^+$ and OH$^-$. These ions can be incorporated into other molecules, or released from them, in the course of chemical reactions such as *hydrolysis* and *dehydration synthesis,* described later in this chapter.

The *thermal stability* of water helps to stabilize the internal temperature of the body. It results from the high *heat capacity* of water—the amount of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 g of a substance by 1°C. The base unit of heat is the **calorie**[7] (cal)—1 cal is the amount of heat that raises the temperature of 1 g of water 1°C. The same amount of heat would raise the temperature of a nonpolar substance such as nitrogen about four times as much. The difference stems from the presence or absence of hydrogen bonding. To increase in temperature, the molecules of a substance must move around more actively. The hydrogen bonds of water molecules inhibit their movement, so water can absorb a given amount of

---

[6] *phobic* = fearing, avoiding

[7] *calor* = heat

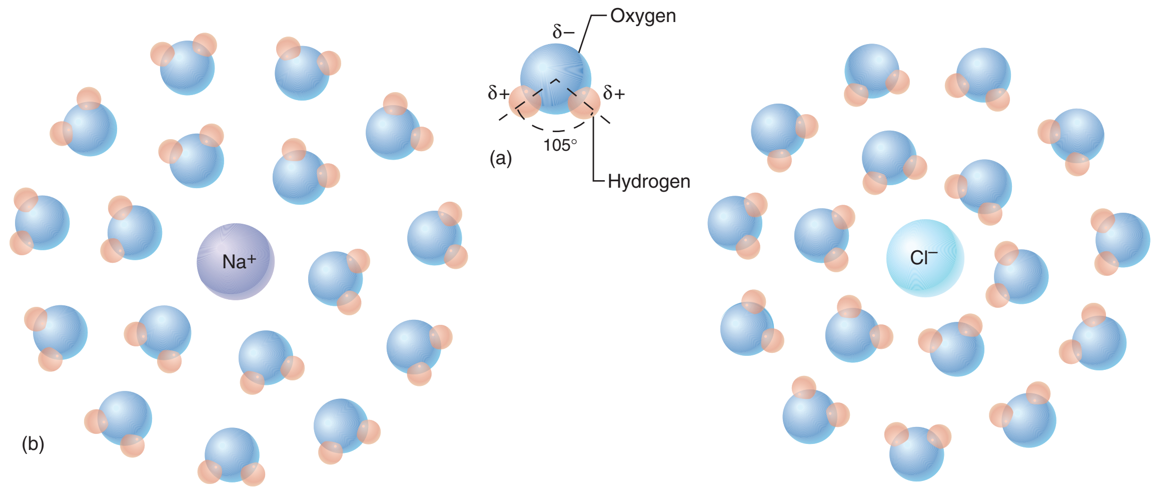


Figure 2.9 **Water and Hydration Spheres.** (*a*) A water molecule showing its bond angle and polarity. (*b*) Water molecules aggregate around a sodium ion with their negatively charged oxygen poles facing the Na$^+$ and aggregate around a chloride ion with their positively charged hydrogen poles facing the Cl$^-$.

heat without changing temperature (molecular motion) as much.

The high heat capacity of water also makes it a very effective coolant. When it changes from a liquid to a vapor, water carries a large amount of heat with it. One milliliter of perspiration evaporating from the skin removes about 500 calories of heat from the body. This effect is very apparent when you are sweaty and stand in front of a fan.

Think About It

Why are heat and temperature not the same thing?

Solutions, Colloids, and Suspensions

Mixtures of other substances in water can be classified as *solutions, colloids,* and *suspensions.*

A **solution** consists of particles of matter called the **solute** mixed with a more abundant substance (usually water) called the **solvent.** The solute can be a gas, solid, or liquid—as in a solution of oxygen, sodium chloride, or alcohol in water, respectively. Solutions are defined by the following properties:

- The solute particles are under 1 nanometer (nm) in size. The solute and solvent therefore cannot be visually distinguished from each other, even with a microscope.
- Such small particles do not scatter light noticeably, so solutions are usually transparent (fig. 2.10*a*).
- The solute particles will pass through most selectively permeable membranes, such as dialysis tubing and cell membranes.
- The solute does not separate from the solvent when the solution is allowed to stand.

The most common **colloid**[8] in the body is protein, such as the albumin in blood plasma. Many colloids can change from liquid to gel states—gelatin desserts, agar culture media, and the fluids within and between our cells, for example. Colloids are defined by the following physical properties:

- The colloidal particles range from 1 to 100 nm in size.
- Particles this large scatter light, so colloids are usually cloudy (fig. 2.10*b*).
- The particles are too large to pass through most selectively permeable membranes.
- The particles are still small enough, however, to remain permanently mixed with the solvent when the mixture stands.

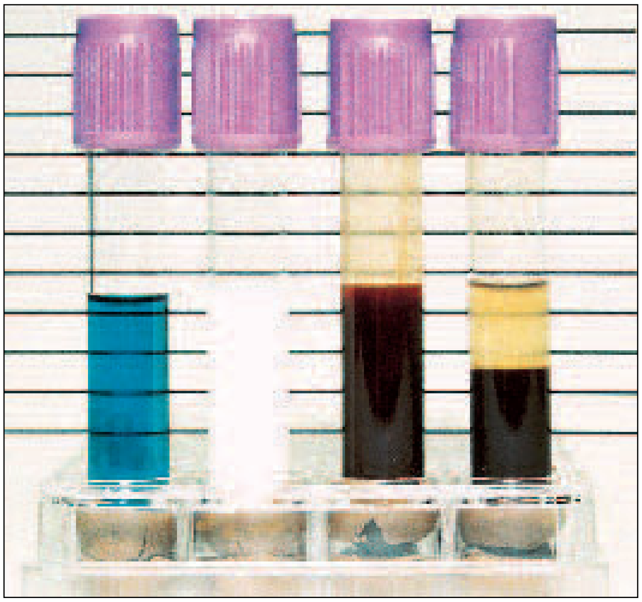


Figure 2.10 **A Solution, a Colloid, and a Suspension.** (*a*) In this copper sulfate solution, the solute particles are so small that they remain permanently mixed and the solution is transparent. (*b*) In colloids such as this milk, the particles are still small enough to remain permanently mixed, but they are large enough to scatter light, so we cannot see through the colloid. (*c*) In suspensions such as this freshly mixed blood, the particles (blood cells) also scatter light and make the mixture opaque. Furthermore, (*d*) they are too large to remain permanently mixed, so they settle out of the mixture, as in this blood sample that stood overnight.

The blood cells in our plasma exemplify a **suspension.** Suspensions are defined by the following properties:

- The suspended particles exceed 100 nm in size.
- Such large particles render suspensions cloudy or opaque.
- The particles are too large to penetrate selectively permeable membranes.
- The particles are too heavy to remain permanently suspended, so suspensions separate on standing. If allowed to stand, blood cells settle to the bottom of a tube, for example (fig. 2.10*c, d*).

An **emulsion** is a suspension of one liquid in another, such as oil and vinegar salad dressing. The fat in breast milk is an emulsion, as are medications such as Kaopectate and milk of magnesia.

A single mixture can fit into more than one of these categories. Blood is a perfect example—it is a solution of sodium chloride, a colloid of protein, and a suspension of

---

[8] *collo* = glue + *oid* = like, resembling

cells. Milk is a solution of calcium, a colloid of protein, and an emulsion of fat. Table 2.4 summarizes the types of mixtures and provides additional examples.

Measures of Concentration

Solutions are often described in terms of their concentration—how much solute is present in a given volume of solution. Concentration is expressed in different ways for different purposes, some of which are explained here. You may find the table of symbols and measures inside the back cover to be helpful as you study this section.

Weight per Volume

A simple way to express concentration is the weight of solute in a given volume of solution. For example, intravenous (I.V.) saline typically contains 8.5 grams of NaCl per liter of solution (8.5 g/L). For many biological purposes, however, we deal with smaller quantities such as milligrams per deciliter (mg/dL; 1 dL = 100 mL). For example, a typical serum cholesterol concentration may be 200 mg/dL, also expressed 200 mg/100 mL or 200 milligram-percent (mg-%).

Percentages

Percentage concentrations are also simple to compute, but it is necessary to specify whether the percentage refers to the weight or the volume of solute in a given volume of solution. For example, if we begin with 5 g of dextrose (an isomer of glucose) and add enough water to make 100 mL of solution, the resulting concentration will be 5% weight per volume (w/v). A common intravenous fluid is D5W, which stands for 5% w/v dextrose in distilled water. If the solute is a liquid, such as ethanol, percentages refer to volume of solute per volume of solution. Thus, 70 mL of ethanol diluted with water to 100 mL of solution produces 70% volume per volume (70% v/v) ethanol.

Molarity

Percent concentrations are easy to prepare, but that unit of measurement is inadequate for many purposes. The physiological effect of a chemical depends on how many molecules of it are present in a given volume, not the weight of the chemical. Five percent glucose, for example, contains almost twice as many glucose molecules as the same volume of 5% sucrose (fig. 2.11*a*). Each solution contains 50 g of sugar per liter, but glucose has a molecular weight (MW) of 180 and sucrose has a MW of 342. Since each molecule of glucose is lighter, 50 g of glucose contains more molecules than 50 g of sucrose.

To produce solutions with a known number of molecules per volume, we must factor in the molecular weight. If we know the MW and weigh out that many grams of the substance, we have a quantity known as its gram molecular weight, or 1 *mole.* One mole of glucose is 180 g and 1 mole of sucrose is 342 g. Each quantity contains the same number of molecules of the respective sugar—a number known as Avogadro's[9] number, 6.023×10^{23}. Such a large number is hard to imagine. If each molecule were the size of a pea, 6.023×10^{23} molecules would cover 60 earth-sized planets 3 m (10 ft) deep!

Molarity (M) is the number of moles of solute per liter of solution. A *one-molar* (1.0 M) solution of glucose contains 180 g/L, and 1.0 M solution of sucrose contains 342 g/L. Both have the same number of solute molecules in a given volume (fig. 2.11*b*). Body fluids and laboratory solutions usually are less concentrated than 1 M, so biologists and clinicians more often work with *millimolar* (mM) and *micromolar* (μM) concentrations—10^{-3} and 10^{-6} M, respectively.

Electrolyte Concentrations

Electrolytes are important for their chemical, physical (osmotic), and electrical effects on the body. Their electri-

---

[9] Amedeo Avogadro (1776–1856), Italian chemist

Table 2.4 Types of Mixtures

	Solution	Colloid	Suspension
Particle size	< 1 nm	1–100 nm	> 100 nm
Appearance	Clear	Often cloudy	Cloudy-opaque
Will particles settle out?	No	No	Yes
Will particles pass through a selectively permeable membrane?	Yes	No	No
Examples	Glucose in blood O_2 in water Saline solutions Sugar in coffee	Proteins in blood Intracellular fluid Milk protein Gelatin	Blood cells Cornstarch in water Fats in blood Kaopectate

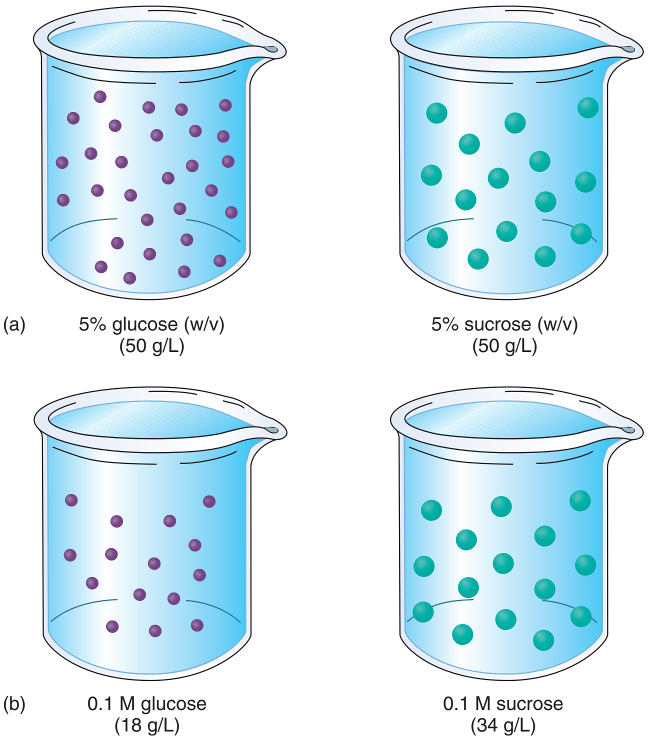


Figure 2.11 **Comparison of Percentage and Molar Concentrations.** (*a*) Solutions with the same percentage concentrations can differ greatly in the number of molecules per volume because of differences in molecular weights of the solutes. Fifty grams of sucrose has about half as many molecules as 50 g of glucose, for example. (*b*) Solutions with the same molarity have the same number of molecules per volume because molarity takes differences in molecular weight into account.

cal effects, which determine such things as nerve, heart, and muscle actions, depend not only on their concentration but also on their electrical charge. A calcium ion (Ca^{2+}) has twice the electrical effect of a sodium ion (Na^+), for example, because it carries twice the charge. When we measure electrolyte concentrations, we must therefore take the charges into account.

One *equivalent (Eq)* of an electrolyte is the amount that would electrically neutralize 1 mole of hydrogen ions (H^+) or hydroxide ions (OH^-). For example, 1 mole (58.4 g) of NaCl yields 1 mole, or 1 Eq, of Na^+ in solution. Thus, an NaCl solution of 58.4 g/L contains 1 equivalent of Na^+ per liter (1 Eq/L). One mole (98 g) of sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4) yields 2 moles of positive charges (H^+). Thus, 98 g of sulfuric acid per liter would be a solution of 2 Eq/L.

The electrolytes in our body fluids have concentrations less than 1 Eq/L, so we more often express their concentrations in **milliequivalents per liter (mEq/L).** If you know the millimolar concentration of an electrolyte, you can easily convert this to mEq/L by multiplying it by the valence of the ion:

$$
\begin{aligned}
1 \text{ mM } Na^+ &= 1 \text{ mEq/L} \\
1 \text{ mM } Ca^{2+} &= 2 \text{ mEq/L} \\
1 \text{ mM } Fe^{3+} &= 3 \text{ mEq/L}
\end{aligned}
$$

Acids, Bases, and pH

Most people have some sense of what acids and bases are. Advertisements are full of references to excess stomach acid and pH-balanced shampoo. We know that drain cleaner (a strong base) and battery acid can cause serious chemical burns. But what exactly do "acidic" and "basic" mean, and how can they be quantified?

An **acid** is any *proton donor,* a molecule that releases a proton (H^+) in water. A **base** is a proton acceptor. Since hydroxide ions (OH^-) accept H^+, many bases are substances that release hydroxide ions—sodium hydroxide (NaOH), for example. A base does not have to be a hydroxide donor, however. Ammonia (NH_3) is also a base. It does not release hydroxide ions, but it readily accepts hydrogen ions to become the ammonium ion ($NH_4{}^+$).

Acidity is expressed in terms of **pH,** a measure derived from the molarity of H^+. Molarity is represented by square brackets, so the molarity of H^+ is symbolized $[H^+]$. pH is the negative logarithm of hydrogen ion molarity—that is, $pH = -\log [H^+]$. In pure water, 1 in 10 million molecules ionizes into hydrogen and hydroxide ions: $H_2O \leftrightarrow H^+ + OH^-$. Pure water has a neutral pH because it contains equal amounts of H^+ and OH^-. Since 1 in 10 million molecules ionize, the molarity of H^+ and the pH of water are

$$
\begin{aligned}
&[H^+] = 0.0000001 \text{ molar} = 10^{-7} \text{ M} \\
&\log [H^+] = -7 \\
&pH = -\log [H^+] = 7
\end{aligned}
$$

The pH scale (fig. 2.12) was invented in 1909 by Danish biochemist and brewer Sören Sörensen to measure the acidity of beer. The scale extends from 0.0 to 14.0. A solution with a pH of 7.0 is **neutral;** solutions with pH below 7 are **acidic;** and solutions with pH above 7 are **basic (alkaline).** The lower the pH value, the more hydrogen ions a solution has and the more acidic it is. Since the pH scale is logarithmic, a change of one whole number on the scale represents a 10-fold change in H^+ concentration. In other words, a solution with a pH of 4 is 10 times as acidic as one with a pH of 5 and 100 times as acidic as one with a pH of 6.

Slight disturbances of pH can seriously disrupt physiological functions and alter drug actions (see insight 2.2), so it is important that the body carefully control its pH. Blood, for example, normally has a pH ranging from 7.35 to 7.45. Deviations from this range cause tremors, fainting, paralysis, or even death. Chemical solutions that resist changes in pH are called **buffers.** Buffers and pH regulation are considered in detail in chapter 24.

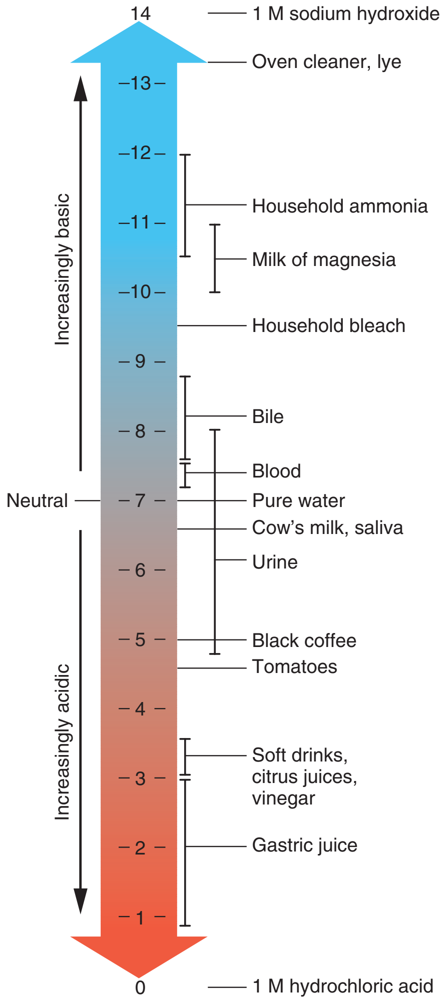


Figure 2.12 **The pH scale.** The pH is shown within the colored bar. H^+ molarity increases tenfold for every step down the scale.

Think About It

A pH of 7.20 is slightly alkaline, yet a blood pH of 7.20 is called *acidosis.* Why do you think it is called this?

Insight 2.2 Clinical Application

pH and Drug Action

The pH of our body fluids has a direct bearing on how we react to drugs. Depending on pH, drugs such as aspirin, phenobarbital, and penicillin can exist in charged (ionized) or uncharged forms. Whether a drug is charged or not can determine whether it will pass through cell membranes. When aspirin is in the acidic environment of the stomach, for example, it is uncharged and passes easily through the stomach lining into the bloodstream. Here it encounters a basic pH, whereupon it ionizes. In this state, it is unable to pass back through the membrane, so it accumulates in the blood. This effect, called *ion trapping* or *pH partitioning,* can be controlled to help clear poisons from the body. The pH of the urine, for example, can be manipulated so that poisons become trapped there and thus rapidly excreted from the body.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

6. What is the difference between a mixture and a compound?
7. What are hydrophilic and hydrophobic substances? Give an example of each.
8. Why would the cohesion and thermal stability of water be less if water did not have polar covalent bonds?
9. How do solutions, colloids, and suspensions differ from each other? Give an example of each in the human body.
10. What is one advantage of percentage over molarity as a measure of solute concentration? What is one advantage of molarity over percentage?
11. If solution A had a H^+ concentration of 10^{-8} M, what would be its pH? If solution B had 1,000 times this H^+ concentration, what would be its pH? Would solution A be acidic or basic? What about solution B?

Energy and Chemical Reactions

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to:

- define *energy* and *work,* and describe some types of energy;
- understand how chemical reactions are symbolized by chemical equations;
- list and define the fundamental types of chemical reactions;
- identify the factors that govern the speed and direction of a reaction;
- define metabolism and its two subdivisions; and
- define *oxidation* and *reduction* and relate these to changes in the energy content of a molecule.

Energy and Work

Energy is the capacity to do work. To do **work** means to move something, whether it is a muscle or a molecule. Some examples of physiological work are breaking chemical bonds, building molecules, pumping blood, and contracting skeletal muscles. All of the body's activities are forms of work.

Energy is broadly classified as *potential* or *kinetic energy. Potential energy* is energy contained in an object because of its position or internal state, but which is not doing work at the time. *Kinetic energy* is energy of motion, energy that is doing work. It is observed in skeletomuscular movements, the flow of ions into a cell, and vibration of the eardrum, for example. The water behind a dam has potential energy because of its position. Let the water flow through, and it exhibits kinetic energy that can be tapped for generating electricity. Like water behind a dam, ions concentrated on one side of a cell membrane have potential energy that can be released by opening gates in the membrane. As the ions flow through the gates, their kinetic energy can be tapped to create a nerve signal or make the heart beat.

Within the two broad categories of potential and kinetic energy, there are several forms of energy relevant to human physiology. *Chemical energy* is potential energy stored in the bonds of molecules. Chemical reactions release this energy and make it available for physiological work. *Heat* is the kinetic energy of molecular motion. The temperature of a substance is a measure of rate of this motion, and adding heat to a substance increases this rate. *Electromagnetic energy* is the kinetic energy of moving "packets" of radiation called *photons.* The most familiar form of electromagnetic energy is light. *Electrical energy* has both potential and kinetic forms. It is potential energy when charged particles have accumulated at a point such as a battery terminal or on one side of a cell membrane; it becomes kinetic energy when these particles begin to move and create an electrical current—for example, when electrons move through your household wiring or sodium ions move through a cell membrane.

Classes of Chemical Reactions

A *chemical reaction* is a process in which a covalent or ionic bond is formed or broken. The course of a chemical reaction is symbolized by a *chemical equation* that typically shows the *reactants* on the left, the *products* on the right, and an arrow pointing from the reactants to the products. For example, consider this common occurrence: If you open a bottle of wine and let it stand for several days, it turns sour. Wine "turns to vinegar" because oxygen gets into the bottle and reacts with ethanol to produce acetic acid and water. Acetic acid gives the tart flavor to vinegar and spoiled wine. The equation for this reaction is

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} CH_3CH_2OH & + & O_2 & \rightarrow & CH_3COOH & + & H_2O \\ \text{Ethanol} & & \text{Oxygen} & & \text{Acetic acid} & & \text{Water} \end{array}$$

Ethanol and oxygen are the reactants, and acetic acid and water are the products of this reaction. Not all reactions are shown with the arrow pointing from left to right. In complex biochemical equations, reaction chains are often written vertically or even in circles.

Chemical reactions can be classified as *decomposition, synthesis,* or *exchange reactions.* In **decomposition reactions,** a large molecule breaks down into two or more smaller ones (fig. 2.13*a*); symbolically, $AB \rightarrow A + B$. When

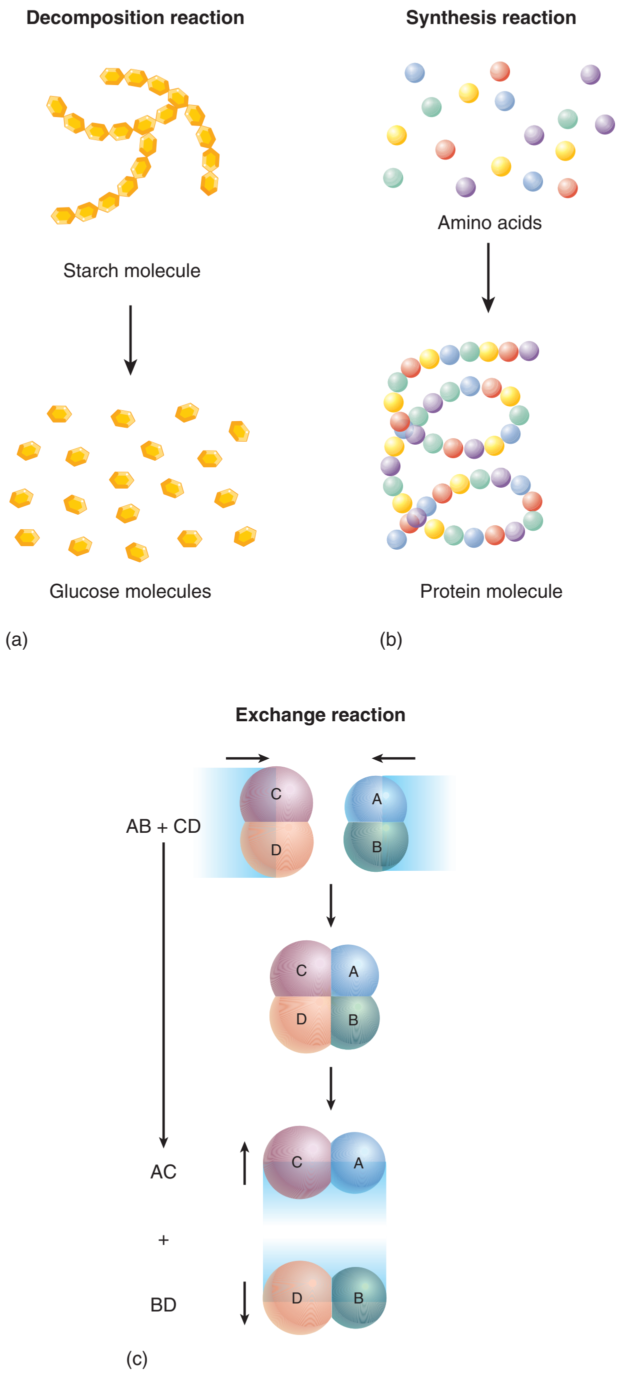


Figure 2.13 **Decomposition, Synthesis, and Exchange Reactions.** (*a*) In a decomposition reaction, large molecules are broken down into simpler ones. (*b*) In a synthesis reaction, smaller molecules are joined to form larger ones. (*c*) In an exchange reaction, two molecules exchange atoms.

To which of these categories does the digestion of food belong?

you eat a potato, for example, digestive enzymes decompose its starch into thousands of glucose molecules, and most cells further decompose glucose to water and carbon dioxide. Starch, a very large molecule, ultimately yields about 36,000 molecules of H_2O and CO_2.

Synthesis reactions are just the opposite—two or more small molecules combine to form a larger one; symbolically, $A + B \rightarrow AB$ (fig. 2.13*b*). When the body synthesizes proteins, for example, it combines several hundred amino acids into one protein molecule.

In **exchange reactions,** two molecules exchange atoms or groups of atoms; $AB + CD \rightarrow AC + BD$ (fig. 2.13*c*). For example, when stomach acid (HCl) enters the small intestine, the pancreas secretes sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$) to neutralize it. The reaction between the two is $NaHCO_3 + HCl \rightarrow NaCl + H_2CO_3$. We could say the sodium atom has exchanged its bicarbonate group ($—HCO_3$) for a chlorine atom.

Reversible reactions can go in either direction under different circumstances and are represented with double-headed arrows. For example, carbon dioxide combines with water to produce carbonic acid, which in turn decomposes into bicarbonate ions and hydrogen ions:

CO_2	$+$	H_2O	$\leftrightarrow$	H_2CO_3	$\leftrightarrow$	HCO_3^-	$+$	H^+
Carbon dioxide		Water		Carbonic acid		Bicarbonate ion		Hydrogen ion

This reaction appears in this book more often than any other, especially as we discuss respiratory, urinary, and digestive physiology.

The direction in which a reversible reaction goes is determined by the relative abundance of substances on each side of the equation. If there is a surplus of CO_2, this reaction proceeds to the right and produces bicarbonate and hydrogen ions. If bicarbonate and hydrogen ions are present in excess, the reaction proceeds to the left and generates CO_2 and H_2O. Reversible reactions follow the **law of mass action:** they proceed from the side with the greater quantity of reactants to the side with the lesser quantity. This law will help to explain processes discussed in later chapters, such as why hemoglobin binds oxygen in the lungs yet releases it to muscle tissue.

In the absence of upsetting influences, reversible reactions exist in a state of **equilibrium,** in which the ratio of products to reactants is stable. The carbonic acid reaction, for example, normally maintains a 20:1 ratio of bicarbonate ions to carbonic acid molecules. This equilibrium can be upset, however, by a surplus of hydrogen ions, which drive the reaction to the left, or adding carbon dioxide and driving it to the right.

Reaction Rates

The basis for chemical reactions is molecular motion and collisions. All molecules are in constant motion, and reactions occur when mutually reactive molecules collide with sufficient force and the right orientation. The rate of a reaction depends on the nature of the reactants and on the frequency and force of these collisions. Some factors that affect reaction rates are:

- **Concentration.** Reaction rates increase when the reactants are more concentrated. This is because the molecules are more crowded and collide more frequently.
- **Temperature.** Reaction rate increases as the temperature rises. This is because heat causes molecules to move more rapidly and collide with greater force and frequency.
- **Catalysts** (CAT-uh-lists). These are substances that temporarily bind to reactants, hold them in a favorable position to react with each other, and may change the shapes of reactants in ways that make them more likely to react. By reducing the element of chance in molecular collisions, a catalyst speeds up a reaction. It then releases the products and is available to repeat the process with more reactants. The catalyst itself is not permanently consumed or changed by the reaction. The most important biological catalysts are *enzymes,* discussed later in this chapter.

Metabolism, Oxidation, and Reduction

All the chemical reactions in the body are collectively called **metabolism.** Metabolism has two divisions—*catabolism* and *anabolism.* **Catabolism**[10] (ca-TAB-oh-lizm) consists of energy-releasing decomposition reactions. Such reactions break covalent bonds, produce smaller molecules from larger ones, and release energy that can be used for other physiological work. Energy-releasing reactions are called *exergonic*[11] reactions. If you hold a beaker of water in your hand and pour sulfuric acid into it, for example, the beaker will get so hot you may have to put it down. If you break down energy-storage molecules to run a race, you too will get hot. In both cases, the heat signifies that exergonic reactions are occurring.

Anabolism[12] (ah-NAB-oh-lizm) consists of energy-storing synthesis reactions, such as the production of protein or fat. Reactions that require an energy input, such as these, are called *endergonic*[13] reactions. Anabolism is driven by the energy that catabolism releases, so endergonic and exergonic processes, anabolism and catabolism, are inseparably linked.

Oxidation is any chemical reaction in which a molecule gives up electrons and releases energy. A molecule is

---

[10] *cata* = down, to break down
[11] *ex, exo* = out + *erg* = work
[12] *ana* = up, to build up
[13] *end* = in

oxidized by this process, and whatever molecule takes the electrons from it is an **oxidizing agent (electron acceptor).** The term *oxidation* stems from the fact that oxygen is often involved as the electron acceptor. Thus, we can sometimes recognize an oxidation reaction from the fact that oxygen has been added to a molecule. The rusting of iron, for example, is a slow oxidation process in which oxygen is added to iron to form iron oxide (Fe_2O_3). Many oxidation reactions, however, do not involve oxygen at all. For example, when yeast ferments glucose to alcohol, no oxygen is required; indeed, the alcohol *contains less oxygen* than the sugar originally did, but it is *more oxidized* than the sugar:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} C_6H_{12}O_6 & \rightarrow & 2\,CH_3CH_2OH & + & 2\,CO_2 \\ \text{Glucose} & & \text{Ethanol} & & \text{Carbon dioxide} \end{array}$$

Reduction is a chemical reaction in which a molecule gains electrons and energy. When a molecule accepts electrons, it is said to be *reduced;* a molecule that donates electrons to another is therefore called a **reducing agent (electron donor).** The oxidation of one molecule is always accompanied by the reduction of another, so these electron transfers are known as *oxidation-reduction (redox) reactions.*

It is not necessary that *only* electrons be transferred in a redox reaction. Often, the electrons are transferred in the form of hydrogen atoms. The fact that a proton (the hydrogen nucleus) is also transferred is immaterial to whether we consider a reaction oxidation or reduction.

Table 2.5 summarizes these energy transfer reactions. We can symbolize oxidation and reduction as follows, letting A and B symbolize arbitrary molecules and e^- represent one or more electrons:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} Ae^- & + & B & \rightarrow & A & + & Be^- \\ \text{High-energy} & & \text{Low-energy} & & \text{Low-energy} & & \text{High-energy} \\ \text{reduced} & & \text{oxidized} & & \text{oxidized} & & \text{reduced} \\ \text{state} & & \text{state} & & \text{state} & & \text{state} \end{array}$$

Ae^- is a reducing agent because it reduces B, and B is an oxidizing agent because it oxidizes Ae^-.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

12. Define *energy.* Distinguish potential energy from kinetic energy.
13. Define *metabolism, catabolism,* and *anabolism.*
14. What does *oxidation* mean? What does *reduction* mean? Which of them is endergonic and which is exergonic?
15. When sodium chloride forms, which element—sodium or chlorine—is oxidized? Which one is reduced?

Organic Compounds

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- explain why carbon is especially well suited to serve as the structural foundation of many biological molecules;
- identify some common functional groups of organic molecules from their formulae;
- discuss the relevance of polymers to biology and explain how they are formed and broken by dehydration synthesis and hydrolysis;
- discuss the types and functions of carbohydrates;
- discuss the types and functions of lipids;
- discuss protein structure and function;
- explain how enzymes function;
- describe the structure, production, and function of ATP;
- identify other nucleotide types and their functions;
- identify the principal types of nucleic acids.

Carbon Compounds and Functional Groups

Organic chemistry is the study of compounds of carbon. By 1900, biochemists had classified the organic molecules of life into four primary categories: *carbohydrates, lipids,*

Table 2.5 Energy-Transfer Reactions in the Human Body

Exergonic Reactions	Reactions in which there is a net release of energy. The products have less total free energy than the reactants did.
Oxidation	An exergonic reaction in which electrons are removed from a reactant. Electrons may be removed one or two at a time and may be removed in the form of hydrogen atoms (H or H_2). The product is then said to be oxidized.
Decomposition	A reaction such as digestion and cell respiration, in which larger molecules are broken down into smaller ones.
Catabolism	The sum of all decomposition reactions in the body.
Endergonic Reactions	Reactions in which there is a net input of energy. The products have more total free energy than the reactants did.
Reduction	An endergonic reaction in which electrons are donated to a reactant. The product is then said to be reduced.
Synthesis	A reaction such as protein and glycogen synthesis, in which two or more smaller molecules are combined into a larger one.
Anabolism	The sum of all synthesis reactions in the body.

proteins, and *nucleic acids.* We examine the first three in this chapter but describe the details of nucleic acids, which are concerned with genetics, in chapter 4.

Carbon is an especially versatile atom that serves as the basis of a wide variety of structures. It has four valence electrons, so it bonds with other atoms that can provide it with four more to complete its valence shell. Carbon atoms readily bond with each other and can form long chains, branched molecules, and rings—an enormous variety of **carbon backbones** for organic molecules. Carbon also forms covalent bonds with hydrogen, oxygen, nitrogen, sulfur, and other elements.

Carbon backbones carry a variety of **functional groups**—small clusters of atoms that determine many of the properties of an organic molecule. For example, organic acids bear a **carboxyl** (car-BOC-sil) **group,** and ATP is named for its three **phosphate groups.** Other common functional groups include **hydroxyl, methyl,** and **amino groups** (fig. 2.14).

Monomers and Polymers

Since carbon can form long chains, some organic molecules are gigantic *macromolecules* with molecular weights that range from the thousands (as in starch and proteins) to the millions (as in DNA). Most macromolecules are **polymers**[14]—molecules made of a repetitive series of identical or similar subunits called **monomers** (MON-oh-murs). Starch, for example, is a polymer of about 3,000 glucose monomers. In starch, the monomers are identical, while in other polymers they have a basic structural similarity but differ in detail. DNA, for example, is made of 4 different kinds of monomers (nucleotides), and proteins are made of 20 kinds (amino acids).

The joining of monomers to form a polymer is called *polymerization.* Living cells achieve this by means of a reaction called **dehydration synthesis (condensation)** (fig. 2.15*a*). A hydroxyl (—OH) group is removed from one monomer and a hydrogen (—H) from another, producing water as a by-product. The two monomers become joined by a covalent bond, forming a *dimer.* This is repeated for each monomer added to the chain, potentially leading to a chain long enough to be considered a polymer.

The opposite of dehydration synthesis is **hydrolysis**[15] (fig. 2.15*b*). In hydrolysis, a water molecule ionizes into OH^- and H^+. A covalent bond linking one monomer to another is broken, the OH^- is added to one monomer, and the H^+ is added to the other one. All digestion consists of hydrolysis reactions.

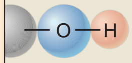
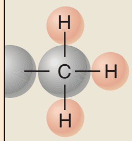
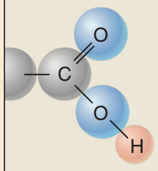
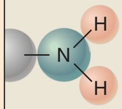
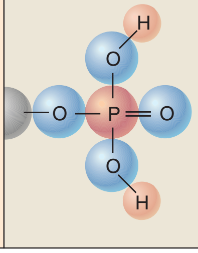
Name and Symbol	Structure	Occurs in
Hydroxyl (—OH)		Sugars, alcohols
Methyl (—CH_3)		Fats, oils, steroids, amino acids
Carboxyl (—COOH)		Amino acids, sugars, proteins
Amino (—NH_2)		Amino acids, proteins
Phosphate (–H_2PO_4)		Nucleic acids, ATP

Figure 2.14 **Functional Groups of Organic Molecules.**

Carbohydrates

A **carbohydrate**[16] is a hydrophilic organic molecule with the general formula $(CH_2O)_n$, where *n* represents the number of carbon atoms. In glucose, for example, n = 6 and the formula is $C_6H_{12}O_6$. As the generic formula shows, carbohydrates have a 2:1 ratio of hydrogen to oxygen. The names of individual carbohydrates are often built on the word root *sacchar-* or the suffix *-ose,* both of which mean "sugar" or "sweet." The most familiar carbohydrates are sugars and starches.

---

[14] *poly* = many + *mer* = part
[15] *hydro* = water + *lysis* = splitting apart
[16] *carbo* = carbon + *hydr* = water

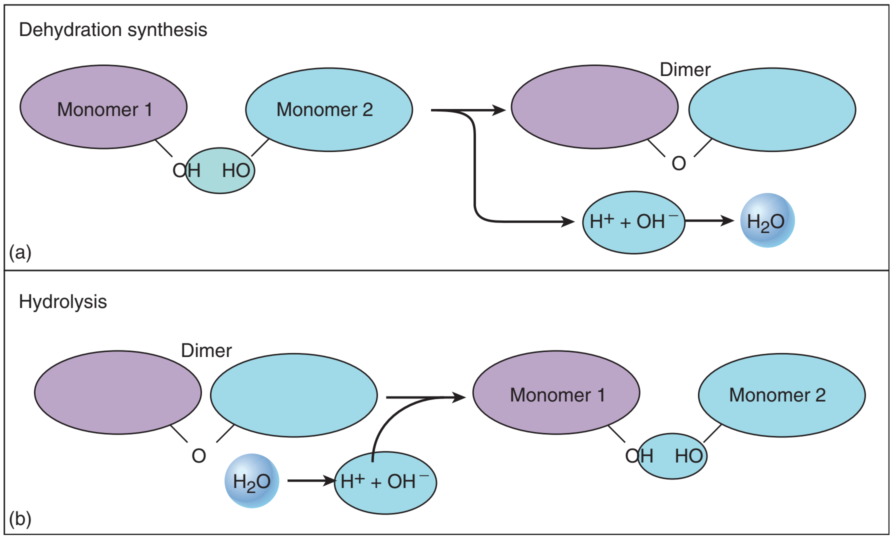


Figure 2.15 **Synthesis and Hydrolysis Reactions.** (*a*) In dehydration synthesis, a hydrogen atom is removed from one monomer and a hydroxyl group is removed from another. These combine to form water as a by-product. The monomers become joined by a covalent bond to form a dimer. (*b*) In hydrolysis, a covalent bond between two monomers is broken. Water donates a hydrogen atom to one monomer and a hydroxyl group to the other.

Think About It

Why is *carbohydrate* an appropriate name for this class of compounds? Relate this name to the general formula of carbohydrates.

The simplest carbohydrates are called **monosaccharides**[17] (MON-oh-SAC-uh-rides), or simple sugars. The three of primary importance are **glucose, fructose,** and **galactose,** all with the molecular formula $C_6H_{12}O_6$; they are isomers of each other (fig. 2.16). We obtain these sugars mainly by the digestion of more complex carbohydrates. Glucose is the "blood sugar" that provides energy to most of our cells. Two other monosaccharides, ribose and deoxyribose, are important components of DNA and RNA.

Disaccharides are sugars composed of two monosaccharides. The three of greatest importance are **sucrose** (made of glucose + fructose), **lactose** (glucose + galactose), and **maltose** (glucose + glucose) (fig. 2.17). Sucrose is produced by sugarcane and sugar beets and used as common table sugar. Lactose is milk sugar. Maltose is a product of starch digestion and is present in a few foods such as germinating wheat and malt beverages.

Polysaccharides (POL-ee-SAC-uh-rides) are long chains of glucose. Some polysaccharides have molecular weights of 500,000 or more (compared to 180 for a single glucose). Three polysaccharides of interest to human physiology are glycogen, starch, and cellulose. Animals, including ourselves, make glycogen, while starch and cellulose are plant products.

Glycogen[18] is an energy-storage polysaccharide made by cells of the liver, muscles, uterus, and vagina. It is a long branched glucose polymer (fig. 2.18). The liver produces glycogen after a meal, when the blood glucose level is high, and then breaks it down between meals to maintain blood glucose levels when there is no food intake. Muscle stores glycogen for its own energy needs, and the uterus uses it in pregnancy to nourish the embryo.

Starch is the corresponding energy-storage polysaccharide of plants. They store it when sunlight and nutrients are available and draw from it when photosynthesis is not possible (for example, at night and in winter, when a plant has shed its leaves). Starch is the only significant digestible dietary polysaccharide.

Cellulose is a structural polysaccharide that gives strength to the cell walls of plants. It is the principal component of wood, cotton, and paper. It consists of a few thousand glucose monomers joined together, with every other monomer "upside down" relative to the next. (The —CH_2OH groups all face in the same direction in glycogen and starch, but alternate between facing up and down in cellulose.) Cellulose is the most abundant organic compound on earth and it is a common component of the diets of humans and other animals—yet we have no enzymes to

---

[17] *mono* = one + *sacchar* = sugar

[18] *glyco* = sugar + *gen* = producing

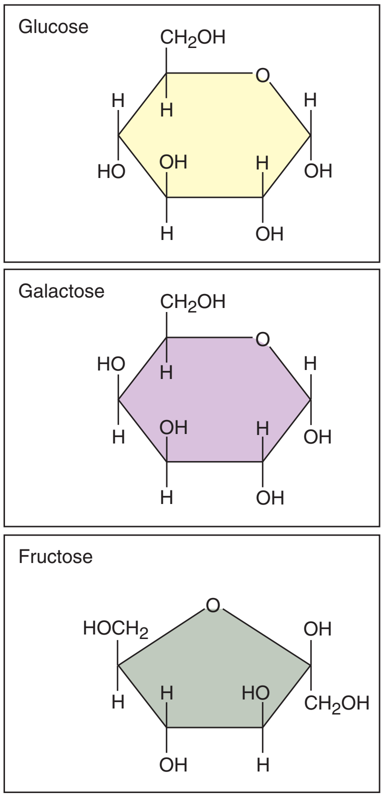

Glucose
CH2OH
O
H
H
H
HO
OH
H
OH
H
OH
Galactose
CH2OH
O
HO
H
H
H
OH
H
OH
H
OH
Fructose
O
HOCH2
OH
H
H
HO
CH2OH
OH
H

Figure 2.16 **The Three Major Monosaccharides.** All three have the molecular formula $C_6H_{12}O_6$. Each angle in the rings represents a carbon atom except the one where oxygen is shown. This is a conventional way of representing carbon in the structural formulae of organic compounds.

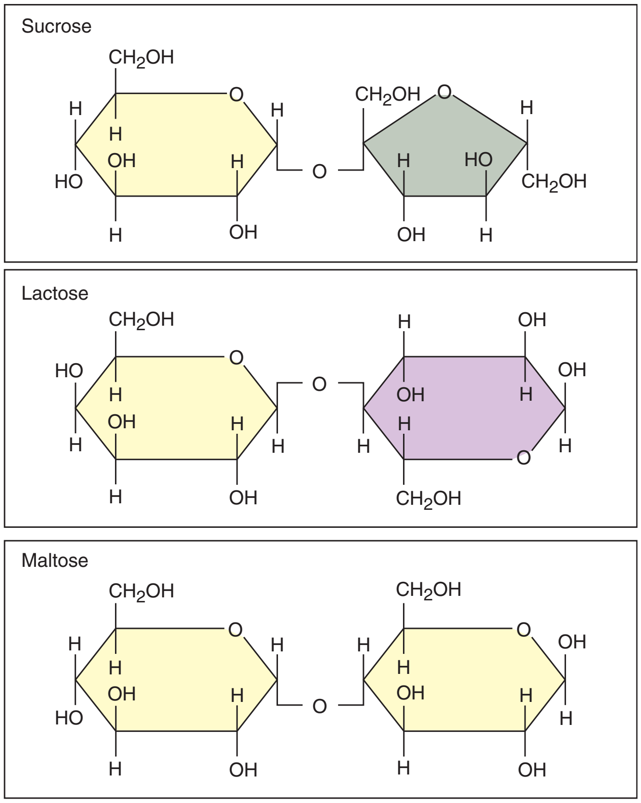

Sucrose
CH2OH
O
H
H
HO
OH
H
H
OH
O
CH2OH
O
H
H
HO
CH2OH
OH
H
Lactose
CH2OH
O
HO
H
OH
H
H
H
OH
O
H
OH
OH
OH
H
H
H
H
O
CH2OH
Maltose
CH2OH
O
H
H
OH
HO
H
H
OH
O
CH2OH
O
H
H
OH
OH
H
H
H
OH

Figure 2.17 **The Three Major Disaccharides.**

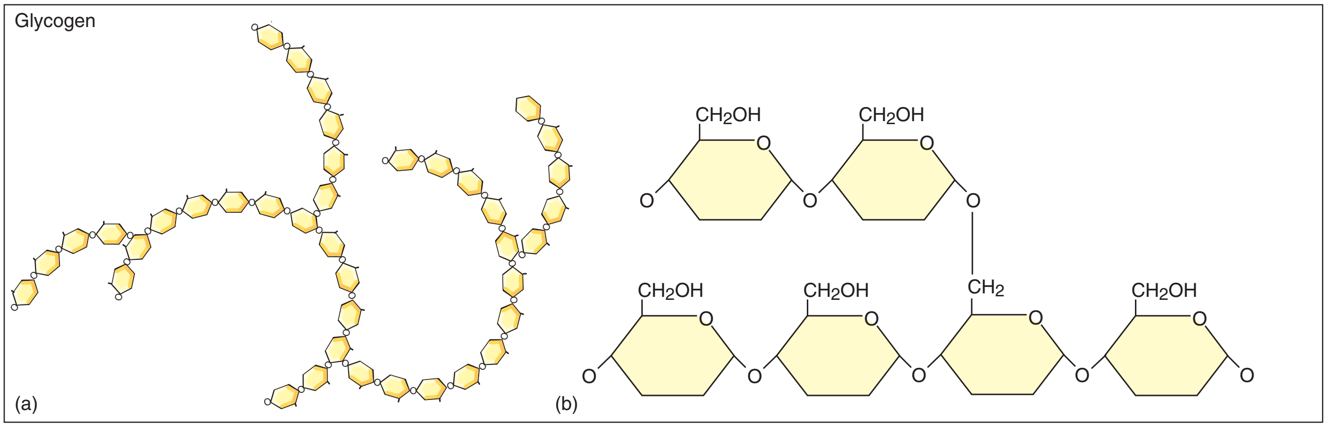

Glycogen
(a)
(b)
CH2OH
O
CH2OH
O
O
O
O
CH2
CH2OH
CH2OH
CH2OH
O
O
O
O
O
O
O
O
O

Figure 2.18 **Glycogen.** This is the only polysaccharide found in human tissues. (*a*) Part of a glycogen molecule showing the chain of glucose monomers and branching pattern. (*b*) Detail of a portion of the molecule at a branch point.

Table 2.6 Carbohydrate Functions

Type	Function
Monosaccharides	
Glucose	*Blood sugar—energy source for most cells*
Galactose	*Converted to glucose and metabolized*
Fructose	*Fruit sugar—converted to glucose and metabolized*
Disaccharides	
Sucrose	*Cane sugar—digested to glucose and fructose*
Lactose	*Milk sugar—digested to glucose and galactose; important in infant nutrition*
Maltose	*Malt sugar—product of starch digestion, further digested to glucose*
Polysaccharides	
Cellulose	*Structural polysaccharide of plants; dietary fiber*
Starch	*Energy storage in plant cells*
Glycogen	*Energy storage in animal cells (liver, muscle, uterus, vagina)*
Conjugated Carbohydrates	
Glycoprotein	*Component of the cell surface coat and mucus, among other roles*
Glycolipid	*Component of the cell surface coat*
Proteoglycan	*Cell adhesion; lubrication; supportive filler of some tissues and organs*

digest it and thus derive no energy or nutrition from it. Nevertheless, it is important as dietary "fiber," "bulk," or "roughage." It swells with water in the digestive tract and helps move other materials through the intestine.

Carbohydrates are, above all, a source of energy that can be quickly mobilized. All digested carbohydrate is ultimately converted to glucose, and glucose is oxidized to make ATP, a high-energy compound discussed later. But carbohydrates have other functions as well (table 2.6). They are often **conjugated**[19] with (covalently bound to) proteins and lipids. Many of the lipid and protein molecules at the external surface of the cell membrane have chains of up to 12 sugars attached to them, thus forming **glycolipids** and **glycoproteins,** respectively. Among other functions, glycoproteins are a major component of mucus, which traps particles in the respiratory system, resists infection, and protects the digestive tract from its own acid and enzymes.

Proteoglycans (once called mucopolysaccharides) are macromolecules in which the carbohydrate component is dominant and a peptide or protein forms a smaller component. Proteoglycans form gels that help hold cells and tissues together, form a gelatinous filler in the umbilical cord and eye, lubricate the joints of the skeletal system, and account for the tough rubbery texture of cartilage. Their structure and functions are further considered in chapter 5.

When discussing conjugated macromolecules it is convenient to refer to each chemically different component as a **moiety**[20] (MOY-eh-tee). Proteoglycans have a protein moiety and a carbohydrate moiety, for example.

Lipids

A **lipid** is a hydrophobic organic molecule, usually composed only of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen, with a high ratio of hydrogen to oxygen. A fat called *tristearin* (tri-STEE-uh-rin), for example, has the molecular formula $C_{57}H_{110}O_6$—more than 18 hydrogens for every oxygen. Lipids are less oxidized than carbohydrates, and thus have more calories per gram. Beyond these criteria, it is difficult to generalize about lipids; they are much more variable in structure than the other macromolecules we are considering. We consider the five primary types of lipids in humans—*fatty acids, triglycerides, phospholipids, eicosanoids,* and *steroids* (table 2.7).

A **fatty acid** is a chain of usually 4 to 24 carbon atoms with a carboxyl group at one end and a methyl group at the other. Fatty acids and the fats made from them are classified as *saturated* or *unsaturated.* A **saturated fatty acid** such as palmitic acid has as much hydrogen as it can carry. No more could be added without exceeding four covalent bonds per carbon atom; thus it is "saturated" with hydrogen. In **unsaturated fatty acids** such as linoleic acid, however, some carbon atoms are joined by double covalent bonds (fig. 2.19). Each of these could potentially share one pair of electrons with another hydrogen atom instead of the adjacent carbon, so hydrogen could be added to this molecule. **Polyunsaturated fatty acids** are those with many $C{=}C$ bonds. Most fatty acids can be synthesized by the human body, but a few, called **essential fatty acids,** must be obtained from the diet because we cannot synthesize them (see chapter 26).

A **triglyceride** (try-GLISS-ur-ide) is a molecule consisting of three fatty acids covalently bonded to a three-carbon alcohol called **glycerol;** triglycerides are more correctly, although less widely, also known as *triacylglycerols.* Each bond between a fatty acid and glycerol is formed by dehydration synthesis (see fig. 2.19). Once joined to glycerol, a fatty acid can no longer donate a proton to solution and is therefore no longer an acid. For

---

[19] *con* = together + *jug* = join

[20] *moiet* = half

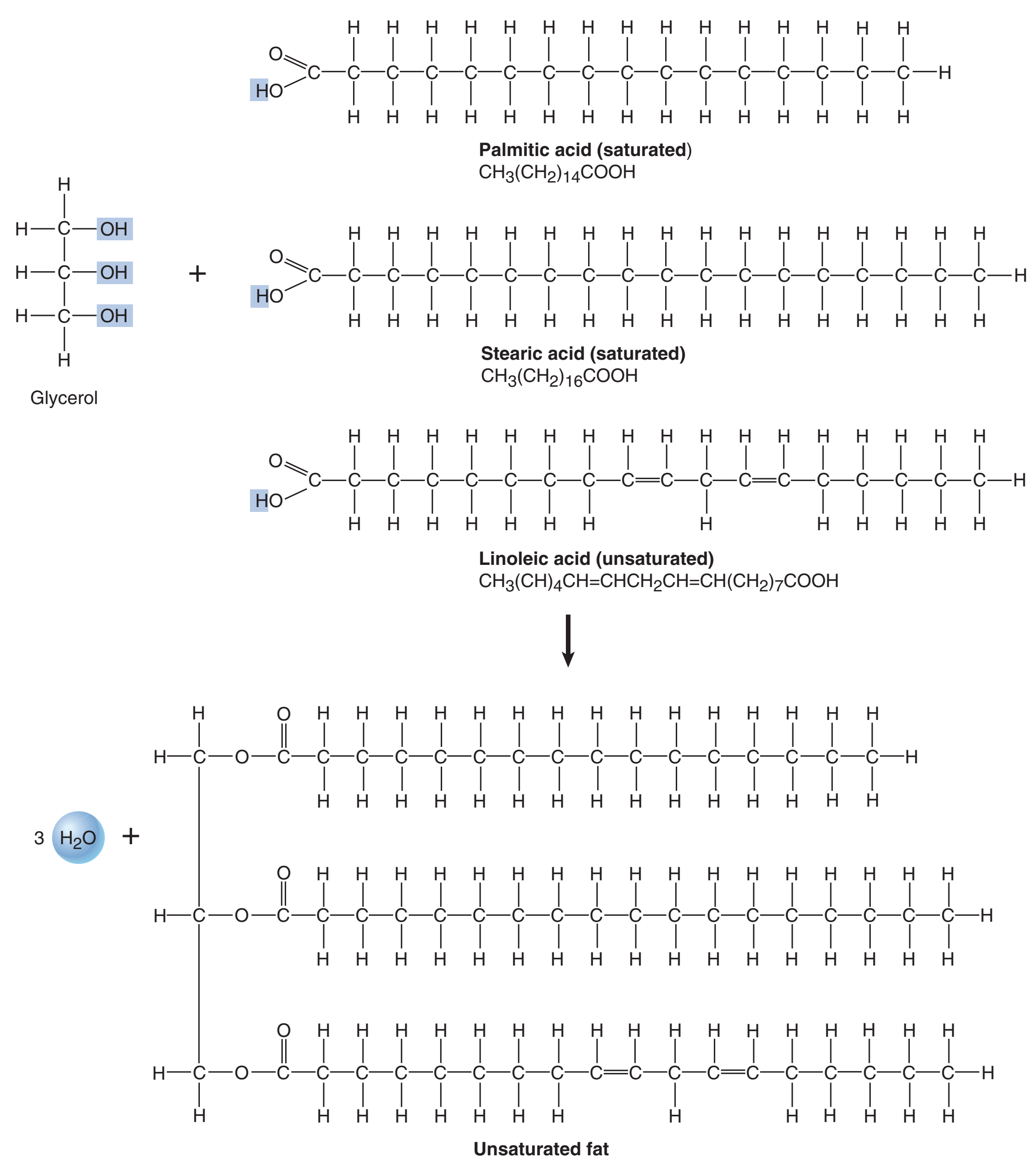

Glycerol
Palmitic acid (saturated)
$CH_3(CH_2)_{14}COOH$
Stearic acid (saturated)
$CH_3(CH_2)_{16}COOH$
Linoleic acid (unsaturated)
$CH_3(CH)_4CH{=}CHCH_2CH{=}CH(CH_2)_7COOH$
3 H_2O +
Unsaturated fat

Figure 2.19 **Triglyceride (fat) Synthesis.** Note the difference between saturated and unsaturated fatty acids and the production of 3 H_2O as a by-product of this dehydration synthesis reaction.

this reason, triglycerides are also called *neutral fats.* Triglycerides are broken down by hydrolysis reactions, which split each of these bonds apart by the addition of water.

Triglycerides that are liquid at room temperature are also called *oils,* but the difference between a fat and oil is fairly arbitrary. Coconut oil, for example, is solid at room temperature. Animal fats are usually made of saturated fatty acids, so they are called *saturated fats.* They are solid at room or body temperature. Most plant triglycerides are *polyunsaturated fats,* which generally remain liquid at room temperature. Examples include peanut, olive, corn, and linseed oils. Saturated fats contribute more to cardiovascular disease than unsaturated fats, and for this reason it is healthier to cook with vegetable oils than with lard or bacon fat.

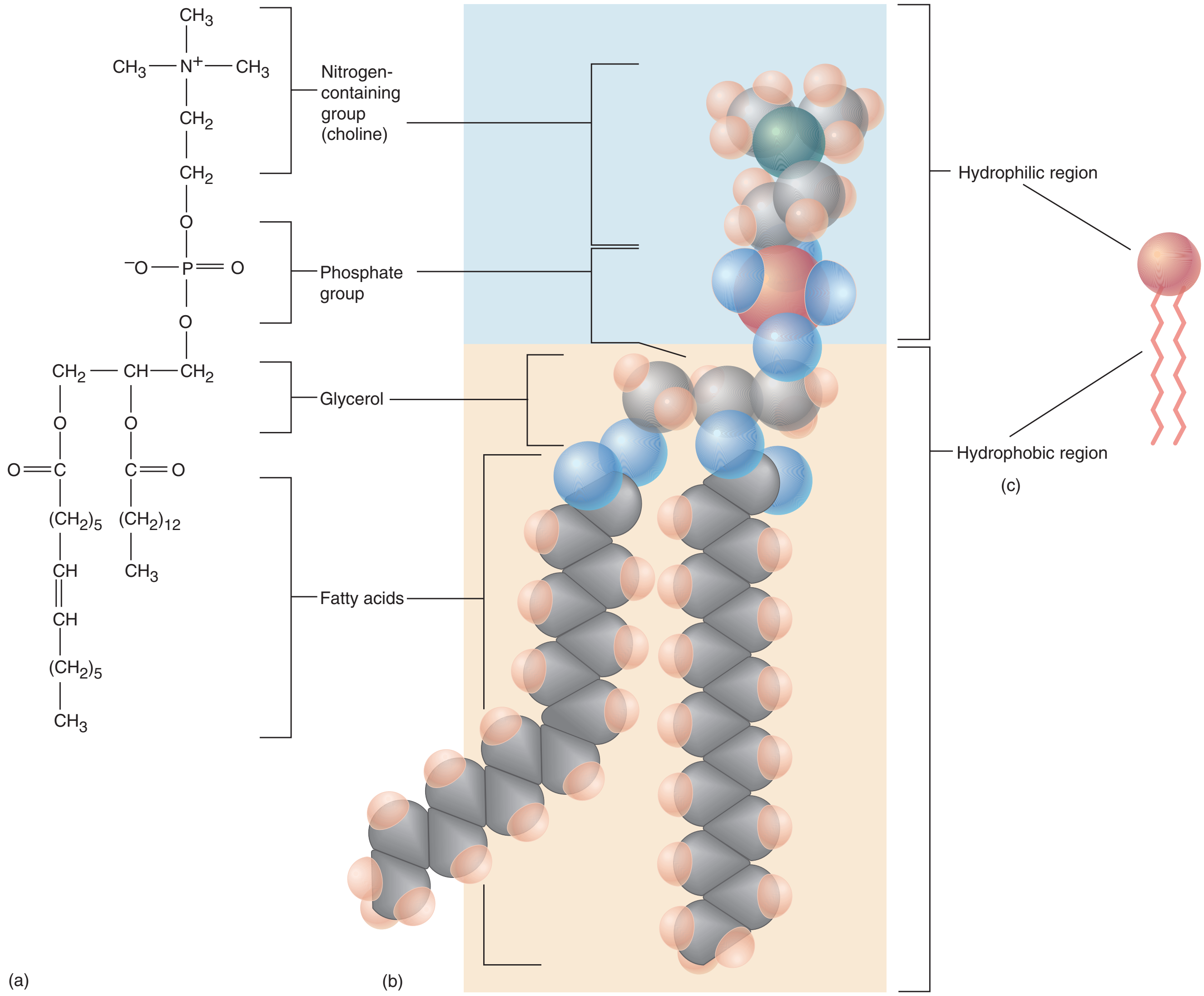

CH3
CH3—N+—CH3
CH2
CH2
O
−O—P=O
O
CH2—CH—CH2
O
O
O=C
C=O
(CH2)5
(CH2)12
CH
CH3
CH
(CH2)5
CH3
Nitrogen-containing group (choline)
Phosphate group
Glycerol
Fatty acids
Hydrophilic region
Hydrophobic region
(a)
(b)
(c)

Figure 2.20 **Lecithin, a Representative Phospholipid.** (*a*) Structural formula, (*b*) a space-filling model that gives some idea of the actual shape of the molecule, and (*c*) a simplified representation of the phospholipid molecule used in diagrams of cell membranes.

The primary function of fat is energy storage, but when concentrated in *adipose tissue,* it also provides thermal insulation and acts as a shock-absorbing cushion for vital organs (see chapter 5).

Phospholipids are similar to neutral fats except that, in place of one fatty acid, they have a phosphate group which, in turn, is linked to other functional groups. Lecithin is a common phospholipid in which the phosphate is bonded to a nitrogenous group called *choline* (CO-leen) (fig. 2.20). Phospholipids have a dual nature. The two fatty acid "tails" of the molecule are hydrophobic, but the phosphate "head" is hydrophilic. Thus, phospholipids are said to be **amphiphilic**[21] (AM-fih-FIL-ic). Together, the head and the two tails of a phospholipid give it a shape like a clothespin. The most important function of phospholipids is to serve as the structural foundation of cell membranes (see chapter 3).

Eicosanoids[22] (eye-CO-sah-noyds) are 20-carbon compounds derived from a fatty acid called *arachidonic* (ah-RACK-ih-DON-ic) *acid.* They function primarily as hormonelike chemical signals between cells. The most functionally diverse eicosanoids are the **prostaglandins,** in which five of the carbon atoms are arranged in a ring (fig. 2.21). They were originally found in the secretions of bovine prostate glands, hence their name, but they are now known to be produced in almost all tissues. They play a variety of signaling roles in inflammation, blood clotting, hormone action, labor contractions, control of blood vessel diameter, and other processes (see chapter 17).

---

[21] *amphi* = both + *philic* = loving

[22] *eicosa* = 20

A **steroid** is a lipid with 17 of its carbon atoms arranged in four rings (fig. 2.22). **Cholesterol** is the "parent" steroid from which the other steroids are synthesized. The others include cortisol, progesterone, estrogens, testosterone, and bile acids. These differ from each other in the location of C═C bonds within the rings and in the functional groups attached to the rings.

Cholesterol is synthesized only by animals (especially in liver cells) and is not present in vegetable oils or other plant products. The average adult contains over 200 g (half a pound) of cholesterol. Cholesterol has a bad reputation as a factor in cardiovascular disease (see insight 2.3), and it is true that hereditary and dietary factors can elevate blood cholesterol to dangerously high levels. Nevertheless, cholesterol is a natural product of the body. Only about 15% of our cholesterol comes from the diet; the other 85% is internally synthesized. In addition to being the precursor of the other steroids, cholesterol is an important component of cell membranes and is required for proper nervous system function.

The primary lipids and their functions are summarized in table 2.7.

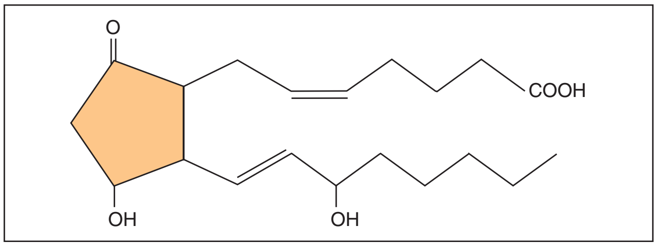


Figure 2.21 **A Prostaglandin.** This is a modified fatty acid with five of its carbon atoms arranged in a ring.

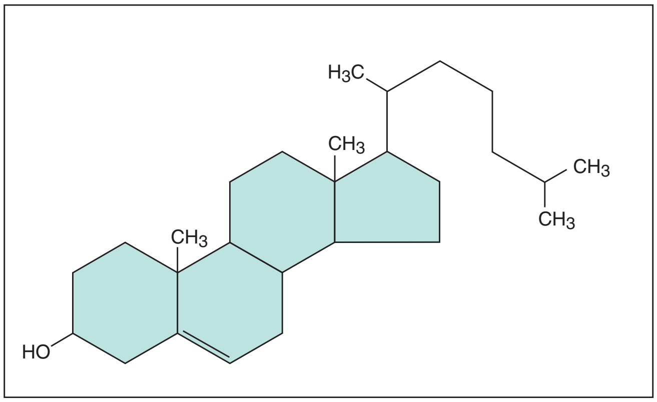


Figure 2.22 **Cholesterol.** All steroids have this basic four-ringed structure, with variations in the functional groups and locations of double bonds within the rings.

Insight 2.3 Clinical Application

"Good" and "Bad" Cholesterol

There is only one kind of cholesterol, and it does far more good than harm. When the popular press refers to "good" and "bad" cholesterol, it is actually referring to droplets in the blood called *lipoproteins,* which are a complex of cholesterol, fat, phospholipids, and protein. So-called bad cholesterol refers to low-density lipoprotein (LDL), which has a high ratio of lipid to protein and contributes to cardiovascular disease. So-called good cholesterol refers to high-density lipoprotein (HDL), which has a lower ratio of lipid to protein and may help to prevent cardiovascular disease. Even when food products are advertised as cholesterol-free, they may be high in saturated fat, which stimulates the body to produce more cholesterol. Palmitic acid seems to be the greatest culprit in stimulating elevated cholesterol levels, while linoleic acid has a cholesterol-lowering effect. Both are shown in figure 2.19. Cardiovascular disease is further discussed at the end of chapter 19, and LDLs and HDLs are more fully explained in chapter 26.

Table 2.7 Some Lipid Functions

Type	Function
Fatty acids	Precursor of triglycerides; source of energy
Triglycerides	Energy storage; thermal insulation; filling space; binding organs together; cushioning organs
Phospholipids	Major component of cell membranes; aid in fat digestion
Eicosanoids	Chemical messengers between cells
Fat-soluble vitamins	Involved in a variety of functions including blood clotting, wound healing, vision, and calcium absorption
Cholesterol	Component of cell membranes; precursor of other steroids
Steroid hormones	Chemical messengers between cells
Bile acids	Steroids that aid in fat digestion and nutrient absorption

Proteins

The word protein is derived from the Greek word *proteios,* meaning "of first importance." Proteins are the most versatile molecules in the body, and many discussions in this book will draw on your understanding of protein structure and behavior.

Amino Acids and Peptides

A **protein** is a polymer of **amino acids.** An amino acid has a central carbon atom with an amino (—NH_2) and a carboxyl (—COOH) group bound to it (fig. 2.23*a*). The 20 amino acids used to make proteins are identical except for a third functional group called the *radical (R group)* attached to the central carbon. In the simplest amino acid, glycine, R is merely a hydrogen atom, while in the largest amino acids it includes rings of carbon. Some R groups are hydrophilic and some are hydrophobic. Being composed of many amino acids, proteins as a whole are therefore often amphiphilic. The 20 amino acids involved in proteins are listed in table 2.8 along with their abbreviations.

A **peptide** is any molecule composed of two or more amino acids joined by **peptide bonds.** A peptide bond, formed by dehydration synthesis, joins the amino group of one amino acid to the carboxyl group of the next (fig. 2.23*b*). Peptides are named for the number of amino acids they have—for example, dipeptides have two and tripeptides have three. Chains of fewer than 10 or 15 amino acids are called **oligopeptides,**[23] and chains larger than that are called **polypeptides.** An example of an oligopeptide is the childbirth-inducing hormone oxytocin, composed of 9 amino acids. A representative polypeptide is adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), which is 39 amino acids long. A protein is a polypeptide of 50 amino acids or more. A typical amino acid has a molecular weight of about 80 amu,

Table 2.8 The 20 Amino Acids and Their Abbreviations

Alanine	Ala	Leucine	Leu
Arginine	Arg	Lysine	Lys
Asparagine	Asn	Methionine	Met
Aspartic acid	Asp	Phenylalanine	Phe
Cysteine	Cys	Proline	Pro
Glutamine	Gln	Serine	Ser
Glutamic acid	Glu	Threonine	Thr
Glycine	Gly	Tryptophan	Trp
Histidine	His	Tyrosine	Tyr
Isoleucine	Ile	Valine	Val

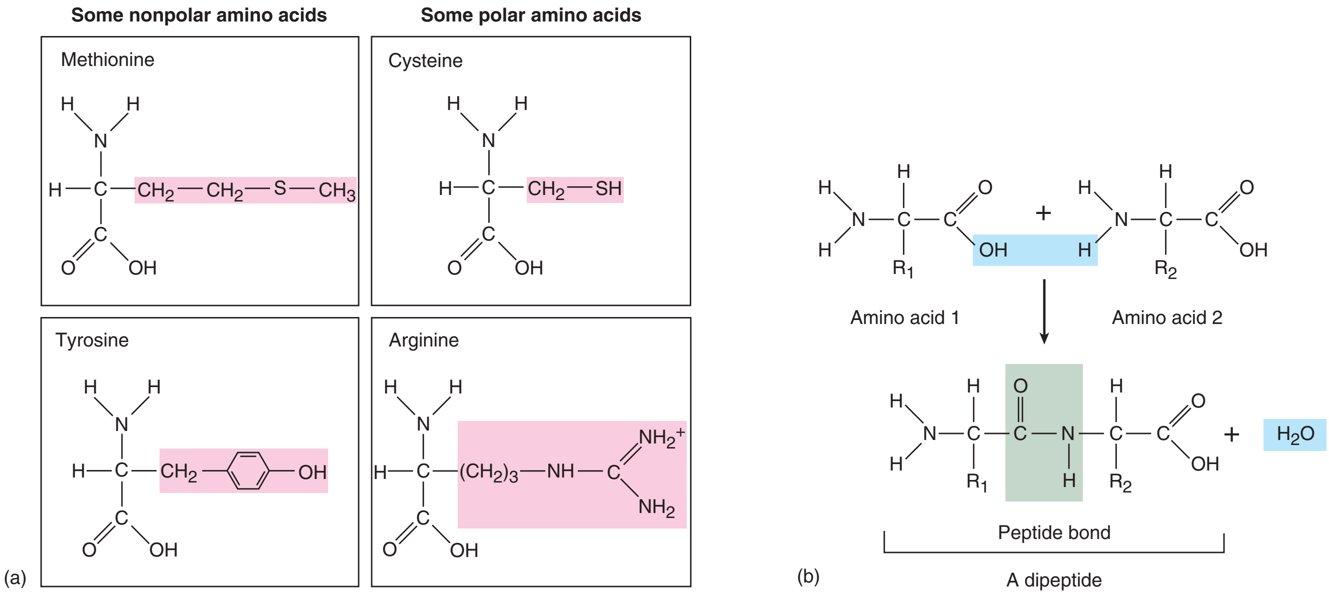


Figure 2.23 **Amino Acids and Peptides.** (*a*) Four representative amino acids. Note that they differ only in the R group, shaded in pink. (*b*) The joining of two amino acids by a peptide bond, forming a dipeptide. Side groups R_1 and R_2 could be the groups indicated in pink in figure *a*, among other possibilities.

---

[23] *oligo* = a few

and the molecular weights of the smallest proteins are around 4,000 to 8,000 amu. The average protein weighs in at about 30,000 amu, and some of them have molecular weights in the hundreds of thousands.

Protein Structure

Proteins have complex coiled and folded structures that are critically important to the roles they play. Even slight changes in their **conformation** (three-dimensional shape) can destroy protein function. Protein molecules have three to four levels of complexity, from primary through quaternary structure (fig. 2.24).

Primary structure is the protein's sequence of amino acids. Their order is encoded in the genes (see chapter 4).

Secondary structure is a coiled or folded shape held together by hydrogen bonds between the slightly negative C═O group of one peptide bond and the slightly positive N—H group of another peptide bond some distance away. The most common secondary structures are a springlike shape called the **α helix** and a pleated, ribbonlike shape, the **β sheet** (or **β-pleated sheet**). Many proteins have multiple α-helical and β-pleated regions joined by short segments with a less orderly geometry. A single protein molecule may fold back on itself and have two or more β-pleated regions linked to each other by hydrogen bonds. Separate, parallel protein molecules also may be hydrogen-bonded to each other through their β-pleated regions.

Tertiary[24] (TUR-she-air-ee) **structure** is formed by the further bending and folding of proteins into various globular and fibrous shapes. It results from hydrophobic R groups associating with each other and avoiding water, while the hydrophilic R groups are attracted to the surrounding water. *Globular proteins,* somewhat resembling a wadded ball of yarn, have a compact tertiary structure well suited for proteins embedded in cell membranes and proteins that must move around freely in the body fluids, such as enzymes and antibodies. *Fibrous proteins* such as myosin, keratin, and collagen are slender filaments better suited for such roles as muscle contraction and providing strength to skin, hair, and tendons.

The amino acid cysteine (Cys), whose R group is $—CH_2—SH$ (see fig. 2.23), often stabilizes a protein's tertiary structure by forming covalent **disulfide bridges.** When two cysteines align with each other, each can release a hydrogen atom, leaving the sulfur atoms to form a disulfide (—S—S—) bridge. Disulfide bridges hold separate polypeptide chains together in such molecules as antibodies and insulin (fig. 2.25).

Quaternary[25] (QUA-tur-nare-ee) **structure** is the association of two or more polypeptide chains by noncovalent forces such as ionic bonds and hydrophilic-hydrophobic interactions. It occurs in only some proteins. Hemoglobin, for example, consists of four polypeptides—two identical α chains and two identical, slightly longer β chains (see fig. 2.24).

One of the most important properties of proteins is their ability to change conformation, especially tertiary structure. This can be triggered by such influences as voltage changes on a cell membrane during the action of nerve cells, the binding of a hormone to a protein, or the dissociation of a molecule from a protein. Subtle, reversible changes in conformation are important to processes such as enzyme function, muscle contraction, and the opening and closing of pores in cell membranes. **Denaturation** is a more drastic conformational change in response to conditions such as extreme heat or pH. It is seen, for example, when you cook an egg and the egg white protein (albumen) turns from clear to opaque. Denaturation is sometimes reversible, but often it permanently destroys protein function.

Conjugated proteins have a non-amino-acid moiety called a **prosthetic**[26] **group** covalently bound to them. Hemoglobin, for example, not only has the four polypeptide chains described earlier, but each chain also has a complex iron-containing ring called a *heme* moiety attached to it (see fig. 2.24). Hemoglobin cannot transport oxygen unless this group is present. In glycoproteins, as described earlier, the carbohydrate moiety is a prosthetic group.

Protein Functions

Proteins have more diverse functions than other macromolecules. These include:

- **Structure.** *Keratin,* a tough structural protein, gives strength to the nails, hair, and skin surface. Deeper layers of the skin, as well as bones, cartilage, and teeth, contain an abundance of the durable protein *collagen.*
- **Communication.** Some hormones and other cell-to-cell signals are proteins, as are the receptors to which the signal molecules bind in the receiving cell. A hormone or other molecule that reversibly binds to a protein is called a **ligand**[27] (LIG-and).
- **Membrane transport.** Some proteins form channels in cell membranes that govern what passes through the membranes and when. Other proteins act as carriers that briefly bind to solute particles and transport them to the other side of the membrane. Among their other roles, such proteins turn nerve and muscle activity on and off.
- **Catalysis.** Most metabolic pathways of the body are controlled by enzymes, which are globular proteins that function as catalysts.
- **Recognition and protection.** The role of glycoproteins in immune recognition was mentioned earlier.

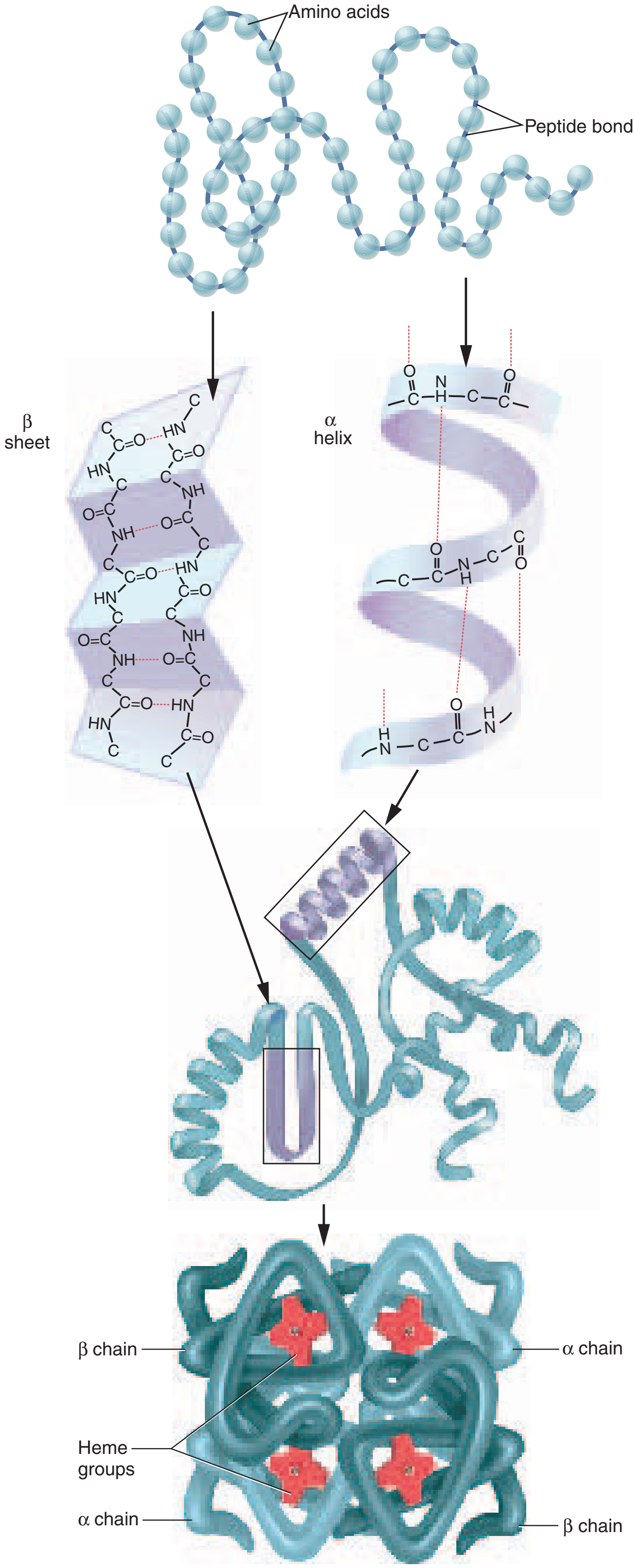
---

[24] *tert* = third

[25] *quater* = fourth

[26] *prosthe* = appendage, addition

[27] *lig* = to bind


Amino acids
Peptide bonds
β sheet
α helix
β chain
α chain
Heme groups
α chain
β chain

Primary structure

Sequence of amino acids joined by peptide bonds

Secondary structure

α helix or β sheet formed by hydrogen bonding

Tertiary structure

Folding and coiling due to interactions among R groups and between R groups and surrounding water

Quaternary structure

Association of two or more polypeptide chains with each other

Figure 2.24 **Four Levels of Protein Structure.** The molecule shown for quaternary structure is hemoglobin, which is composed of four polypeptide chains. The heme groups are iron-containing nonprotein moieties.

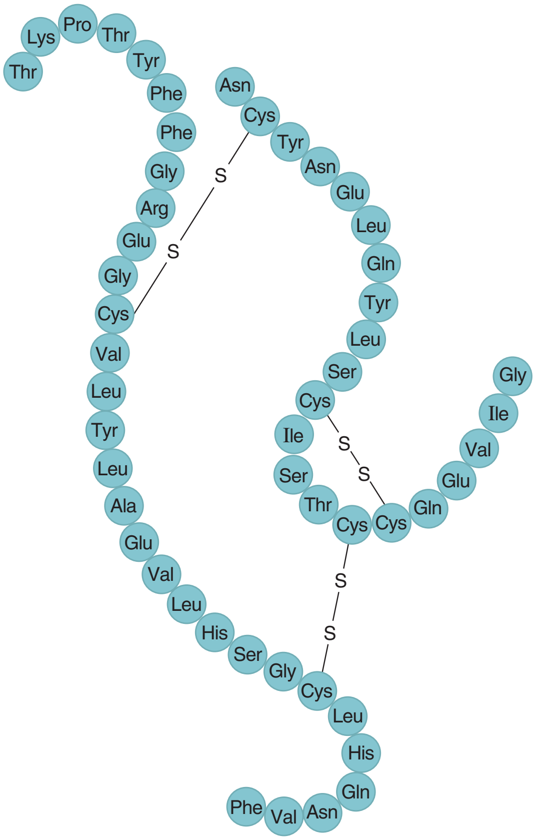


Figure 2.25 **Primary Structure of Insulin.** Insulin is composed of two polypeptide chains joined by disulfide bridges.

Antibodies and other proteins attack and neutralize organisms that invade the body. Clotting proteins protect the body against blood loss.

- **Movement.** Movement is fundamental to all life, from the intracellular transport of molecules to the galloping of a racehorse. Proteins, with their special ability to change shape repeatedly, are the basis for all such movement. Some proteins are called *molecular motors* for this reason.
- **Cell adhesion.** Proteins bind cells to each other, which enables sperm to fertilize eggs, enables immune cells to bind to enemy cancer cells, and keeps tissues from falling apart.

Enzymes and Metabolism

Enzymes are proteins that function as biological catalysts. They permit biochemical reactions to occur rapidly at normal body temperatures. Enzymes were initially given somewhat arbitrary names, still with us, such as *pepsin* and *trypsin.* The modern system of naming enzymes, however, is more uniform and informative. It identifies the substance the enzyme acts upon, called its **substrate;** sometimes refers to the enzyme's action; and adds the suffix *-ase.* Thus, *amylase* digests starch (*amyl-* = starch) and *carbonic anhydrase* removes water *(anhydr-)* from carbonic acid. Enzyme names may be further modified to distinguish different forms of the same enzyme found in different tissues (see insight 2.4).

Insight 2.4 Clinical Application

The Diagnostic Use of Isoenzymes

A given enzyme may exist in slightly different forms, called *isoenzymes,* in different cells. Isoenzymes catalyze the same chemical reactions but have enough structural differences that they can be distinguished by standard laboratory techniques. This is useful in the diagnosis of disease. When organs are diseased, some of their cells break down and release specific isoenzymes that can be detected in the blood. Normally, these isoenzymes would not be present in the blood or would have very low concentrations. If their blood levels are elevated, it can help pinpoint what cells in the body have been damaged.

For example, *creatine kinase* (CK) occurs in different forms in different cells. An elevated serum level of CK-1 indicates a breakdown of skeletal muscle and is one of the signs of muscular dystrophy. An elevated CK-2 level indicates heart disease, because this isoenzyme comes only from cardiac muscle. There are five isoenzymes of *lactate dehydrogenase* (LDH). High serum levels of LDH-1 may indicate a tumor of the ovaries or testes, while LDH-5 may indicate liver disease or muscular dystrophy. Different isoenzymes of *phosphatase* in the blood may indicate bone or prostate disease.

To appreciate the effect of an enzyme, think of what happens when paper burns. Paper is composed mainly of glucose (in the form of cellulose). The burning of glucose can be represented by the equation

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6\ O_2 \rightarrow 6\ CO_2 + 6\ H_2O$$

Paper does not spontaneously burst into flame, because few of its molecules have enough kinetic energy to react. Lighting the paper with a match, however, raises the kinetic energy enough to initiate combustion (rapid oxidation). The energy needed to get the reaction started, supplied by the match, is called **activation energy** (fig. 2.26*a*).

In the body, we carry out the same reaction and oxidize glucose to water and carbon dioxide to extract its energy. We could not tolerate the heat of combustion in our bodies, however, so we must oxidize glucose in a more controlled way at a biologically feasible and safe temperature. Enzymes make this happen by lowering the activation energy—that is, by reducing the barrier to glucose oxidation (fig. 2.26*b*)—and by releasing the energy in small steps rather than a single burst of heat.

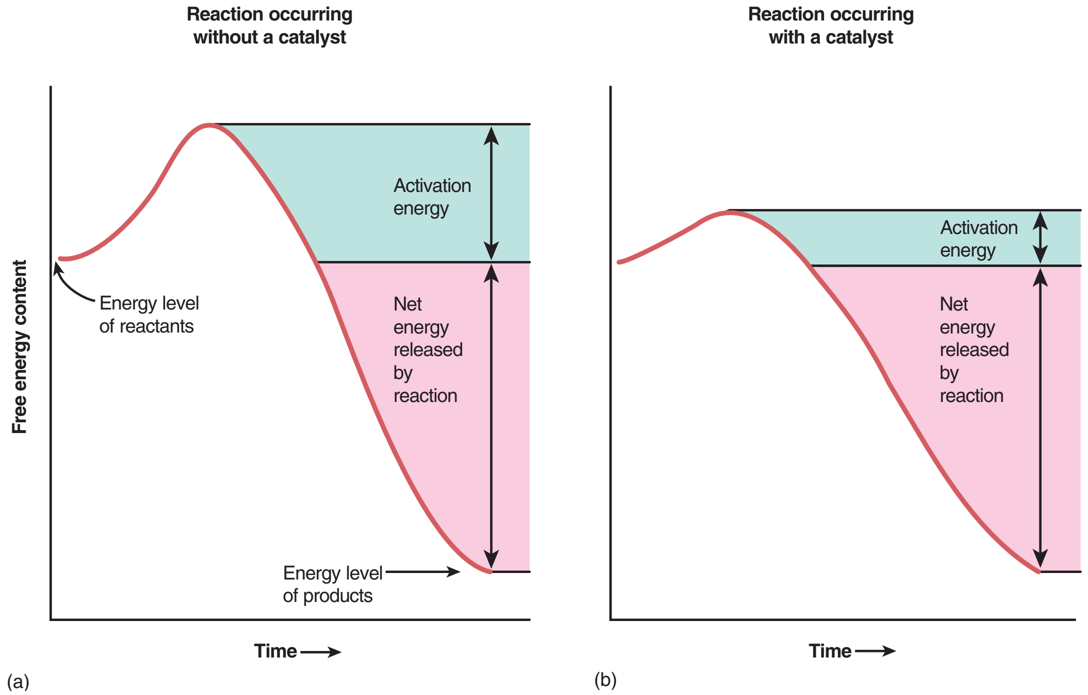


Figure 2.26 **Effect of an Enzyme on Activation Energy.** (*a*) Without catalysts, some chemical reactions proceed slowly because of the high activation energy needed to get molecules to react. (*b*) A catalyst facilitates molecular interaction, thus lowering the activation energy and making the reaction proceed more rapidly.

Does an enzyme release more energy from its substrate than an uncatalyzed reaction would release?

Enzyme Structure and Action

Substrates bind to pockets called **active sites** in the enzyme surface and create a temporary *enzyme-substrate complex.* The enzyme may break covalent bonds and convert the substrate to a reaction product, or it may hold two or more substrates close together, in adjacent active sites, thus enabling the substrates to react with each other (fig. 2.27). The enzyme then releases the reaction products and is free to begin the process again. Since enzymes are not consumed by the reactions they catalyze, one enzyme molecule can convert millions of substrate molecules, and at astonishing speeds. A single molecule of carbonic anhydrase, for example, breaks carbonic acid (H_2CO_3) down to H_2O and CO_2 at a rate of 36 million molecules per minute.

A substrate fits an enzyme somewhat like a key fits a lock. A given enzyme is very selective—that is, it exhibits **enzyme-substrate specificity.** An enzyme that oxidizes glucose, for example, will not act on the similar sugar galactose, which does not fit its active site.

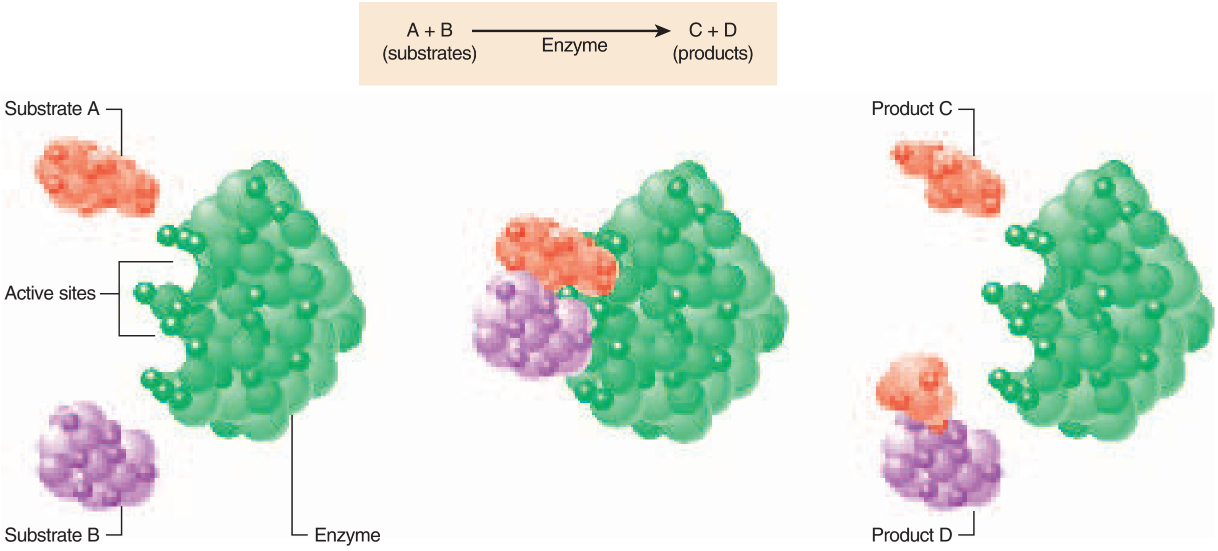
Factors that change the shape of an enzyme—notably temperature and pH—tend to alter or destroy the ability of the enzyme to bind its substrate. They disrupt the hydrogen bonds and other weak forces that hold the enzyme in its proper conformation, essentially changing the shape of the "lock" (active site) so that the "key" (substrate) no longer fits. Enzymes vary in optimum pH according to where in the body they normally function. Thus salivary amylase, which digests starch in the mouth, functions best at pH 7 and is inactivated when it is exposed to stomach acid; pepsin, which works in the acidic environment of the stomach, functions best around pH 2; and trypsin, a digestive enzyme that works in the alkaline environment of the small intestine, has an optimum pH of 9.5. Our internal body temperature is nearly the same everywhere, however, and all human enzymes have a temperature optimum (that is, they produce their fastest reaction rates) near 37°C.

Think About It

Why is homeostasis important for enzyme function?

Cofactors

Many enzymes cannot function without nonprotein partners called **cofactors**—for example, iron, copper, zinc, magnesium, or calcium ions. By binding to an enzyme, a cofactor may stimulate it to fold into a shape that activates its active site. **Coenzymes** are organic cofactors usually



(a) Enzyme and substrates (b) Enzyme-substrate complex (c) Enzyme (unchanged) and reaction products

Figure 2.27 **The Three Steps of an Enzymatic Reaction.** (*a*) One or more substrate molecules bind to the enzyme's active sites. (*b*) The substrates and enzyme form a temporary enzyme-substrate complex and the substrates react chemically with each other. (*c*) The enzyme releases the reaction products and is available to catalyze the same reaction again.

derived from niacin, riboflavin, and other water-soluble vitamins. They accept electrons from an enzyme in one metabolic pathway and transfer them to an enzyme in another pathway. For example, cells partially oxidize glucose through a pathway called *glycolysis.* A coenzyme called NAD^+,[28] derived from niacin, shuttles electrons from this pathway to another one called *aerobic respiration,* which uses energy from the electrons to make ATP (fig. 2.28). If NAD^+ is unavailable, the glycolysis pathway shuts down.

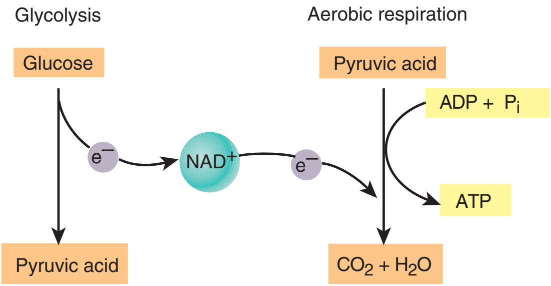


Figure 2.28 **The Action of a Coenzyme.** A coenzyme such as NAD^+ acts as a shuttle that picks up electrons from one metabolic pathway (in this case, glycolysis) and delivers them to another pathway (in this case, aerobic respiration).

Metabolic Pathways

A **metabolic pathway** is a chain of reactions with each step usually catalyzed by a different enzyme. A simple metabolic pathway can be symbolized

$$A \xrightarrow{\alpha} B \xrightarrow{\beta} C \xrightarrow{\gamma} D$$

where *A* is the initial *reactant, B* and *C* are *intermediates,* and *D* is the *end product.* The Greek letters above the reaction arrows represent enzymes that catalyze each step of the reaction. *A* is the substrate for enzyme α, *B* is the substrate for enzyme β, and *C* for enzyme γ. Such a pathway can be turned on or off by altering the conformation of any of these enzymes, thereby activating or deactivating them. This can be done by such means as the binding or dissociation of a cofactor, or by an end product of the pathway binding to an enzyme at an earlier step (product *D* binding to enzyme α and shutting off the reaction chain at that step, for example). In these and other ways, cells are able to turn on metabolic pathways when their end products are needed and shut them down when the end products are not needed.

---

[28] nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide

ATP, Other Nucleotides, and Nucleic Acids

Nucleotides are organic compounds with three principal components—a single or double carbon-nitrogen ring called a *nitrogenous base,* a monosaccharide, and one or more phosphate groups. One of the best-known nucleotides is ATP (fig. 2.29*a*), in which the nitrogenous base is a double ring called *adenine,* the sugar is *ribose,* and there are three phosphate groups.

Adenosine Triphosphate

Adenosine triphosphate (ATP) is the body's most important energy-transfer molecule. It briefly stores energy gained from exergonic reactions such as glucose oxidation and releases it within seconds for physiological work such as polymerization reactions, muscle contraction, and pumping ions through cell membranes. The second and third phosphate groups of ATP are attached to the rest of the molecule by high-energy covalent bonds traditionally indicated by a wavy line in the molecular formula. Since phosphate groups are negatively charged, they repel each other. It requires a high-energy bond to overcome that repulsive force and hold them together—especially to add the third phosphate group to a chain that already has two negatively charged phosphates. Most energy transfers to and from ATP involve adding or removing that third phosphate.

Enzymes called **adenosine triphosphatases (ATPases)** are specialized to hydrolyze the third high-energy phosphate bond, producing adenosine diphosphate (ADP) and an inorganic phosphate group (P_i). This reaction releases 7.3 kilocalories of energy for every mole (505 g) of ATP. Most of this energy escapes as heat, but we live on the portion of it that does useful work. We can summarize this as follows:

$$ATP + H_2O \rightarrow ADP + P_i + \text{Energy} \begin{array}{l} \nearrow \text{Heat} \\ \searrow \text{Work} \end{array}$$

The free phosphate groups released by ATP hydrolysis are often added to enzymes or other molecules to activate them. This addition of P_i, called **phosphorylation,** is carried out by enzymes called **kinases (phosphokinases).** The phosphorylation of an enzyme is sometimes the "switch" that turns a metabolic pathway on or off.

ATP is a short-lived molecule, usually consumed within 60 seconds of its formation. The entire amount in the body would support life for less than 1 minute if it were not continually replenished. At a moderate rate of physical activity, a full day's supply of ATP would weigh twice as much as you do. Even if you never got out of bed, you would need about 45 kg (99 lb) of ATP to stay alive for a day. The reason cyanide is so lethal is that it halts ATP synthesis.

ATP synthesis is explained in detail in chapter 26, but you will find it necessary to understand the general idea of it before you reach that chapter—especially in understanding muscle physiology (chapter 11). Much of the energy for ATP synthesis comes from glucose oxidation (fig. 2.30). The

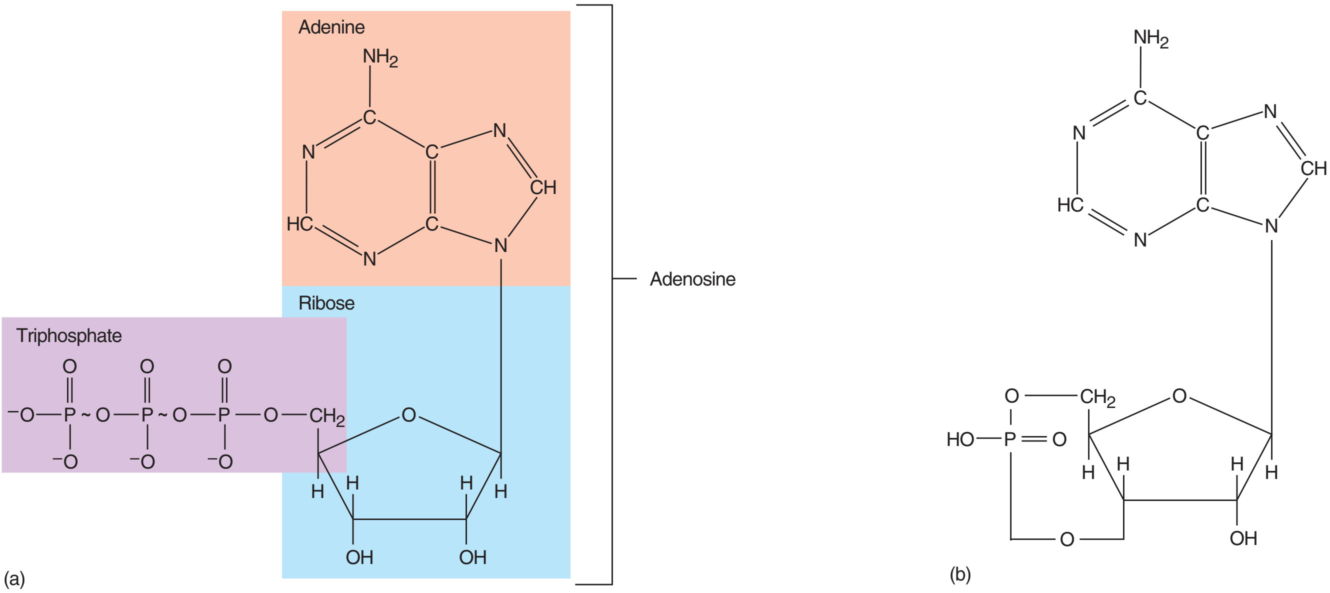


Figure 2.29 **Adenosine Triphosphate (ATP) and Cyclic Adenosine Monophosphate (cAMP).** (*a*) ATP. The last two P~O bonds in ATP, indicated by wavy lines, are high-energy bonds. (*b*) cAMP.

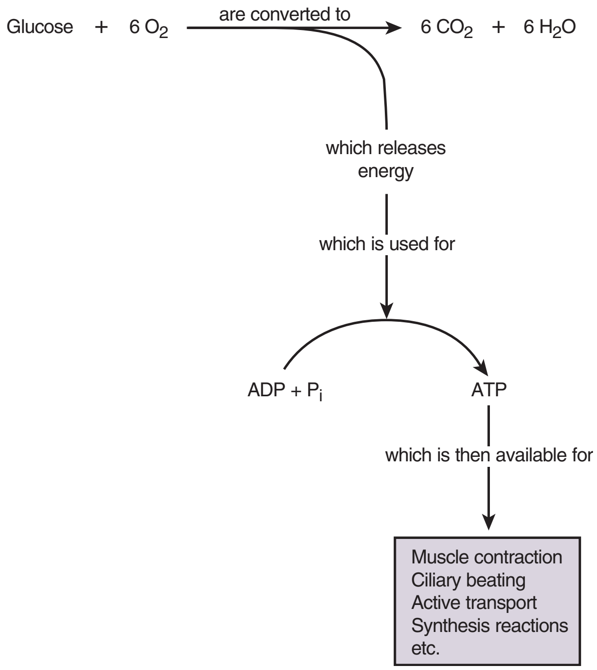

Glucose
+
6 O_2
are converted to
6 CO_2
+
6 H_2O
which releases energy
which is used for
ADP + P_i
ATP
which is then available for
Muscle contraction
Ciliary beating
Active transport
Synthesis reactions
etc.

Figure 2.30 **The Source and Uses of ATP.**

first stage in glucose oxidation (fig. 2.31) is the reaction pathway known as **glycolysis** (gly-COLL-ih-sis). This literally means "sugar splitting," and indeed its major effect is to split the six-carbon glucose molecule into two three-carbon molecules of *pyruvic acid.* A little ATP is produced in this stage (a net yield of two ATPs per glucose), but most of the chemical energy of the glucose is still in the pyruvic acid.

What happens to pyruvic acid depends on whether or not oxygen is available. If not, pyruvic acid is converted to lactic acid by a pathway called **anaerobic**[29] (AN-err-OH-bic) **fermentation.** This pathway has two noteworthy disadvantages: First, it does not extract any more energy from pyruvic acid; second, the lactic acid it produces is toxic, so most cells can use anaerobic fermentation only as a temporary measure. The only advantage to this pathway is that it enables glycolysis to continue (for reasons explained in chapter 26) and thus enables a cell to continue producing a small amount of ATP.

If oxygen is available, a more efficient pathway called **aerobic respiration** occurs. This breaks pyruvic acid down to carbon dioxide and water and generates up to 36 more molecules of ATP for each of the original glucose molecules. The reactions of aerobic respiration are carried out in the cell's *mitochondria* (described in chapter 3), so mitochondria are regarded as a cell's principal "ATP factories."

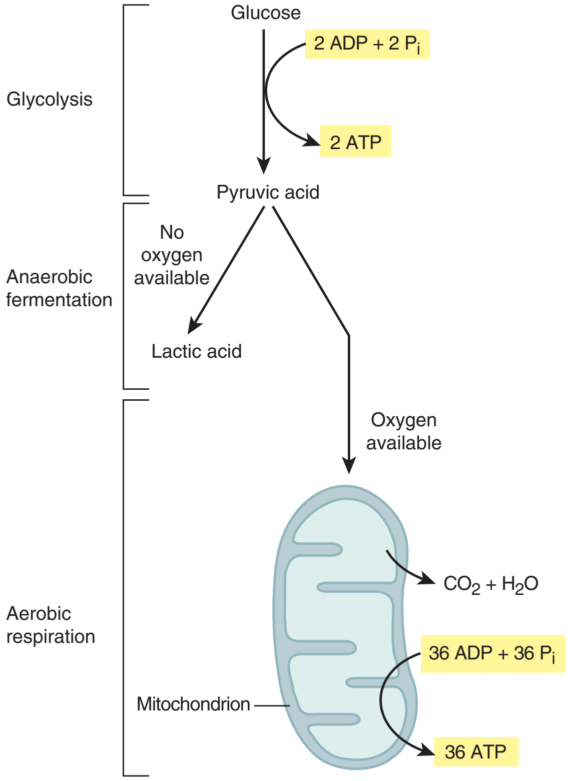

Glucose
2 ADP + 2 P_i
2 ATP
Glycolysis
Pyruvic acid
No oxygen available
Anaerobic fermentation
Lactic acid
Oxygen available
CO_2 + H_2O
36 ADP + 36 P_i
Aerobic respiration
Mitochondrion
36 ATP

Figure 2.31 **ATP Production.** Glycolysis produces pyruvic acid and a net gain of two ATPs. In the absence of oxygen, anaerobic fermentation is necessary to keep glycolysis running and producing a small amount of ATP. In the presence of oxygen, aerobic respiration occurs in the mitochondria and produces a much greater amount of ATP.

Other Nucleotides

Guanosine (GWAH-no-seen) **triphosphate (GTP)** is another nucleotide involved in energy transfers. In some reactions, it donates phosphate groups to other molecules. In some pathways, it donates its third phosphate group to ADP to regenerate ATP.

Cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP) (see fig. 2.29*b*) is a nucleotide formed by the removal of both the second and third phosphate groups from ATP. In some cases, when a hormone or other chemical signal ("first messenger") binds to a cell surface, it triggers an internal reaction that converts ATP to cAMP. The cAMP then acts as a "second messenger" to activate metabolic effects within the cell.

Nucleic Acids

Nucleic (new-CLAY-ic) **acids** are polymers of nucleotides. The largest of them, **deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA),** is typically 100 million to 1 billion nucleotides long. It constitutes our genes, gives instructions for synthesizing all of the body's proteins, and transfers hereditary information from cell to cell when cells divide and from generation to generation when organisms reproduce. Three forms of **ribonucleic acid (RNA),** which range from 70 to 10,000 nucleotides long, carry out those instructions and synthesize the proteins, assembling amino acids in the right order to produce each protein "described" by the DNA. The detailed structure of DNA and RNA and the mechanisms of protein synthesis and heredity are described in chapter 4.

---

[29] *an* = without + *aer* = air + *obic* = pertaining to life

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

16. Which reaction—dehydration synthesis or hydrolysis—converts a polymer to its monomers? Which one converts monomers to a polymer? Explain your answer.
17. What is the chemical name of blood sugar? What carbohydrate is polymerized to form starch and glycogen?
18. What is the main chemical similarity between carbohydrates and lipids? What are the main differences between them?
19. Explain the statement, All proteins are polypeptides but not all polypeptides are proteins.
20. Which is more likely to be changed by heating a protein, its primary structure or its tertiary structure? Explain.
21. Use the lock and key analogy to explain why excessively acidic body fluids (acidosis) could destroy enzyme function.
22. How does ATP change structure in the process of releasing energy?
23. What advantage and disadvantage does anaerobic fermentation have compared to aerobic respiration?
24. How is DNA related to nucleotides?

Insight 2.5 Clinical Application

Anabolic-Androgenic Steroids

The sex hormone testosterone stimulates muscular growth and aggressive behavior, especially in males. In Nazi Germany, testosterone was given to SS troops in an effort to make them more aggressive, but with no proven success. In the 1950s, pharmaceutical companies developed compounds related to testosterone, called *anabolic-androgenic*[30] *steroids,* to treat anemia, breast cancer, osteoporosis, and some muscle diseases, and to prevent the shrinkage of muscles in immobilized patients. By the early 1960s, athletes were using anabolic-androgenic steroids to stimulate muscle growth, accelerate the repair of tissues damaged in training or competition, and stimulate the aggressiveness needed to excel in some contact sports such as football and boxing.

The doses used by athletes, however, are 10 to 1,000 times higher than the doses prescribed for medical purposes, and they can have devastating effects on one's health. They raise cholesterol levels, which promotes fatty degeneration of the arteries *(atherosclerosis).* This can lead to coronary artery disease, heart and kidney failure, and stroke. Deteriorating blood circulation also sometimes results in gangrene, which may require amputation of the extremities. As the liver attempts to dispose of the high concentration of steroids, liver cancer and other liver diseases may ensue. In addition, steroids suppress the immune system, so the user is more subject to infection and cancer. They cause a premature end to bone elongation, so people who use anabolic steroids in adolescence may never attain normal adult height.

Anabolic-androgenic steroids have the same effect on the brain as natural testosterone. Thus, when steroid levels are high, the brain and pituitary gland stop producing the hormones that stimulate sperm production and testosterone secretion. In men, this leads to atrophy of the testes, impotence (inability to achieve or maintain an erection), low sperm count, and infertility. Ironically, anabolic-androgenic steroids have feminizing effects on men and masculinizing effects on women. Men may develop enlarged breasts *(gynecomastia),* while in some female users the breasts and uterus atrophy, the clitoris enlarges, and ovulation and menstruation become irregular. Female users may develop excessive facial and body hair and a deeper voice, and both sexes show an increased tendency toward baldness.

Especially in men, steroid abuse can be linked to severe emotional disorders. The steroids themselves stimulate heightened aggressiveness and unpredictable mood swings, so the abuser may vacillate between depression and violence. It surely doesn't help matters that impotence, shrinkage of the testes, infertility, and enlargement of the breasts are so incongruous with the self-image of a male athlete who abuses steroids.

Partly because of the well documented adverse health effects, the use of anabolic-androgenic steroids has been condemned by the American Medical Association and American College of Sports Medicine and banned by the International Olympic Committee, National Football League, and National Collegiate Athletic Association. But in spite of such warnings and bans, many athletes continue to use steroids and related performance-enhancing drugs, which remain available through unscrupulous coaches, physicians, Internet sources, and foreign mail-order suppliers. By some estimates, as many as 80% of weight lifters, 30% of college and professional athletes, and 20% of male high-school athletes now use anabolic-androgenic steroids. The National Institutes of Health finds increasing usage among high school students in recent years, and increasing denial that anabolic-androgenic steroids present a significant health hazard.

---

[30] *andro* = male + *genic* = producing

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

Atoms, Ions, and Molecules (p. 56)

1. The simplest form of matter with unique chemical properties is the *element.* Twenty-four elements play normal physiological roles in humans. Those called *trace elements* are needed in only tiny amounts.
2. An *atom* consists of a central positively charged nucleus of protons and usually neutrons, orbited by a usually multilayered cloud of negatively charged electrons.
3. The outermost electrons, called *valence electrons,* determine the chemical behavior of an element.
4. *Isotopes* are variations of an element that differ only in the number of neutrons. Some are unstable *radioisotopes,* which give off radioactivity as they change to a more stable isotope.
5. *Ions* are particles with one or more excess electrons or protons, and thus a negative charge (anions) or positive charge (cations). Oppositely charged ions are attracted to each other and tend to follow each other in the body.
6. *Electrolytes* are salts that ionize in water to form solutions that conduct electricity. These include salts of sodium, potassium, chlorine, phosphate, bicarbonate, and other elements (table 2.2).
7. *Free radicals* are highly reactive particles with an odd number of electrons. They have very destructive effects on cells and may contribute to aging and cancer, but the body has *antioxidant* chemicals that provide some protection from them.
8. A *molecule* consists of two or more atoms joined by chemical bonds. If the elements are nonidentical, the molecule is a *compound.*
9. *Isomers* are molecules with the same number and kinds of elements, but different arrangements of them and different chemical properties.
10. A molecule's *molecular weight* is the sum of the atomic weights of its elements.
11. Molecules are held together by ionic, covalent, or hydrogen bonds, or a combination of these.

Water and Mixtures (p. 63)

1. The polarity and bond angle of water result in the hydrogen bonding of water molecules to each other. Hydrogen bonding is responsible for the diverse biologically important properties of water.
2. A mixture is a combination of substances that are physically blended but not chemically combined. Most mixtures in the body are a combination of water and various solutes.
3. Mixtures can be classified as *solutions, colloids,* or *suspensions* based on the size of their particles.
4. The concentration of a mixture is expressed for differing purposes as weight per volume, percentage, molarity, or (for electrolytes) milliequivalents per liter.
5. The concentration of hydrogen ions in a solution is expressed as pH, with a range from 1 to 14. A pH of 7 is neutral (with equal quantities of H^+ and OH^-), a pH < 7.0 is acidic, and a pH > 7.0 is basic.
6. Buffers are chemical solutions that resist changes in pH when acid or base is added to them.

Energy and Chemical Reactions (p. 68)

1. *Energy,* the capacity to do work, exists in *potential* and *kinetic* forms.
2. Chemical reactions can be *decomposition, synthesis,* or *exchange* reactions.
3. Some chemical reactions are *reversible;* their direction depends on the relative amounts of reactants and products present. Such reactions tend to achieve an *equilibrium* state unless disrupted by the addition of new reactants or removal of products.
4. The rate of a chemical reaction is influenced by concentration, temperature, and catalysts.
5. *Metabolism* is the sum of all chemical reactions in the body. It consists of *catabolism* (breakdown of larger molecules into smaller ones) and *anabolism* (synthesis of larger molecules).
6. *Oxidation* is the removal of electrons from a molecule; *reduction* is the addition of electrons.

Organic Compounds (p. 71)

1. *Organic* molecules contain carbon. They often have carbon atoms arranged in a *backbone* with attached *functional groups* (carboxyl and amino groups, for example) that determine the chemical behavior of the molecule.
2. Many biologically important molecules are *polymers*—large molecules composed of a chain of identical or similar subunits called *monomers.*
3. The joining of monomers to form a polymer, called *polymerization,* is achieved by a *dehydration synthesis* reaction that removes water from the reactants. Polymers are broken up into monomers by *hydrolysis* reactions, which consume water to add —H and —OH to the molecules.
4. *Carbohydrates* are organic molecules of carbon and a 2:1 ratio of H:O. The major carbohydrates are the monosaccharides (glucose, fructose, galactose), disaccharides (sucrose, lactose, maltose), and polysaccharides (starch, cellulose, glycogen).
5. Carbohydrates are good sources of quickly mobilized energy but also play structural and other roles (table 2.6).
6. *Lipids* are hydrophobic compounds of carbon and a high ratio of H:O. Major classes of lipids are fatty acids, triglycerides, phospholipids, eicosanoids, and steroids.

7. Lipids serve for energy storage, as chemical signals, and as structural components of cells, among other roles (table 2.7).
8. *Proteins* are polymers of amino acids.
9. An *amino acid* is a small organic molecule with an amino (—NH_2) and carboxyl (—COOH) group. Amino acids can join together through *peptide bonds* to form *peptides* from two to thousands of amino acids long. Proteins are generally regarded as peptides of 100 or more amino acids.
10. Proteins have four levels of structure: *primary* (amino acid sequence), *secondary* (an α helix or β sheet), *tertiary* (further bending and folding), and sometimes *quaternary* (attraction of two or more polypeptide chains to each other).
11. Protein function depends strongly on three-dimensional shape, or *conformation. Denaturation* is a destructive change in conformation, usually caused by temperature or pH changes.
12. *Conjugated* proteins require a nonprotein component such as a carbohydrate or an inorganic ion attached to them in order to function. The nonprotein moiety is called the *prosthetic group.*
13. Proteins have a wide range of structural, communication, transport, catalytic, and other functions.
14. *Enzymes* are proteins that function as biological catalysts. The substances they act upon are called their *substrates,* and bind to an enzyme at specific locations called *active sites.*
15. Enzymes accelerate chemical reactions by lowering their *activation energy.*
16. An enzyme generally reacts only with specific substrates that fit its active site.
17. Enzymatic reactions are often linked together to form *metabolic pathways.*
18. *Adenosine triphosphate (ATP)* is a universal energy-transfer molecule composed of adenine, ribose, and three phosphate groups. It is essential to many physiological processes, and life ends in seconds in the absence of ATP.
19. Small amounts of ATP are generated by glycolysis linked, in the absence of oxygen, to anaerobic fermentation. Much larger amounts are generated when oxygen is available and glycolysis is linked to aerobic respiration.
20. The *nucleic acids,* DNA and RNA, are polymers of ATP-like nucleotides. They are responsible for heredity and the control of protein synthesis.

Selected Vocabulary

ionizing radiation 59
anion 59
cation 59
electrolyte 60
free radical 60
covalent bond 62
hydrogen bond 62
hydrophilic 63
hydrophobic 64
calorie 64
pH 67
catabolism 70
anabolism 70
polymer 72
monomer 72
dehydration synthesis 72
hydrolysis 72
carbohydrate 72
glucose 73
moiety 75
lipid 75
fatty acid 75
triglyceride 75
phospholipid 77
prostaglandin 78
steroid 78
protein 79
amino acid 79
ligand 80
enzyme 82
metabolic pathway 84
adenosine triphosphate (ATP) 85
anaerobic fermentation 86
aerobic respiration 86
cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP) 86
nucleic acid 86

Testing Your Recall

1. A substance that ______ is considered to be a chemical compound.
    a. contains at least two different elements
    b. contains at least two atoms
    c. has a chemical bond
    d. has a stable valence shell
    e. has covalent bonds

2. An ionic bond is formed when
    a. two anions meet.
    b. two cations meet.
    c. an anion meets a cation.
    d. electrons are unequally shared between nuclei.
    e. electrons transfer completely from one atom to another.

3. The ionization of a sodium atom to produce Na^+ is an example of
    a. oxidation.
    b. reduction.
    c. catabolism.
    d. anabolism.
    e. a decomposition reaction.

4. The weakest chemical bonds, easily disrupted by temperature and pH changes, are
    a. polar covalent bonds.
    b. nonpolar covalent bonds.
    c. hydrogen bonds.
    d. ionic bonds.
    e. disulfide bonds.

5. A substance capable of dissolving freely in water is
    a. hydrophilic.
    b. hydrophobic.
    c. hydrolyzed.
    d. hydrated.
    e. amphiphilic.

6. A carboxyl group is symbolized
    a. —OH.
    b. —NH_2.
    c. —CH_3.
    d. —CH_2OH.
    e. —COOH.

7. The only polysaccharide synthesized in the human body is
   a. cellulose.
   b. glycogen.
   c. cholesterol.
   d. starch.
   e. prostaglandin.
8. The arrangement of a polypeptide into a fibrous or globular shape is called its
   a. primary structure.
   b. secondary structure.
   c. tertiary structure.
   d. quaternary structure.
   e. conjugated structure.
9. Which of the following functions is more characteristic of carbohydrates than of proteins?
   a. contraction
   b. energy storage
   c. catalyzing reactions
   d. immune defense
   e. intercellular communication
10. The feature that most distinguishes a lipid from a carbohydrate is that a lipid has
    a. more phosphate.
    b. more sulfur.
    c. a lower ratio of carbon to oxygen.
    d. a lower ratio of oxygen to hydrogen.
    e. a greater molecular weight.
11. When an atom gives up an electron and acquires a positive charge, it is called a/an _____.
12. Dietary antioxidants are important because they neutralize _____.
13. Any substance that increases the rate of a reaction without being consumed by it is a/an _____. In the human body, _____ serve this function.
14. All the synthesis reactions in the body form a division of metabolism called _____.
15. A chemical reaction that produces water as a by-product is called _____.
16. The suffix _____ denotes a sugar, while the suffix _____ denotes an enzyme.
17. The amphiphilic lipids of cell membranes are called _____.
18. A chemical named _____ is derived from ATP and widely employed as a "second messenger" in cellular signaling.
19. When oxygen is unavailable, cells employ a metabolic pathway called _____ to produce ATP.
20. A substance acted upon and changed by an enzyme is called the enzyme's _____.

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. The monomers of a polysaccharide are called amino acids.
2. An emulsion is a mixture of two liquids that separate from each other on standing.
3. Two molecules with the same atoms arranged in a different order are called isotopes.
4. If a pair of shared electrons are more attracted to one nucleus than to the other, they form a polar covalent bond.
5. Amino acids are joined by a unique type of bond called a peptide bond.
6. A saturated fat is defined as a fat to which no more carbon can be added.
7. Organic compounds get their unique chemical characteristics more from their functional groups than from their carbon backbones.
8. The higher the temperature is, the faster an enzyme works.
9. Two percent sucrose and 2% sodium bicarbonate have the same number of molecules per liter of solution.
10. A solution of pH 8 has one-tenth the hydrogen ion concentration of a solution with pH 7.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. Suppose a pregnant woman with severe morning sickness has been vomiting steadily for several days. How will her loss of stomach acid affect the pH of her body fluids? Explain.
2. Suppose a person with a severe anxiety attack hyperventilates and exhales CO_2 faster than his body produces it. Consider the carbonic acid reaction on page 70 and explain what effect this hyperventilation will have on his blood pH. (Hint: Remember the law of mass action.)
3. In one form of nuclear decay, a neutron breaks down into a proton and electron and emits a γ ray. Is this an endergonic or exergonic reaction, or neither? Is it an anabolic or catabolic reaction, or neither? Explain both answers.
4. How would the body's metabolic rate be affected if there were no such thing as enzymes? Explain.
5. Some metabolic conditions such as diabetes mellitus cause disturbances in the acid-base balance of the body, which gives the body fluids an abnormally low pH. Explain how this could affect enzyme-substrate reactions and metabolic pathways in the body.

Answers at the Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Legend Questions

2.1 Potassium gives up an electron.

2.6 By sharing four pairs of electrons, the carbon and the two oxygens each have eight valence electrons, fulfilling the octet rule.

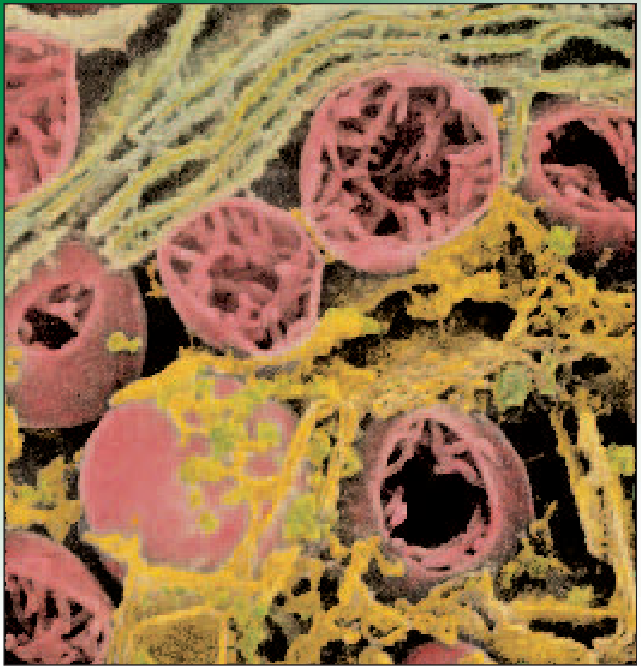
2.8 Since water molecules cling together, they vibrate less freely than do molecules of a nonpolar liquid, and it requires more heat to get water to boil.

2.13 Decomposition.

2.26 No, the amount of energy released (the difference in energy content between the reactants and products) is the same with or without an enzyme.

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.



Mitochondria (*pink*) and rough endoplasmic reticulum (*green*) in a liver cell (SEM)

CHAPTER

3

Cellular Form and Function

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Concepts of Cellular Structure 94
- Development of the Cell Theory 94
- Cell Shapes and Sizes 94
- General Cell Structure 96

The Cell Surface 98
- The Plasma Membrane 98
- The Glycocalyx 102
- Microvilli, Cilia, and Flagella 103

Membrane Transport 106
- Filtration 106
- Simple Diffusion 106
- Osmosis 107
- Osmolarity and Tonicity 108
- Carrier-Mediated Transport 109
- Vesicular Transport 112

The Cytoplasm 115
- Organelles 116
- The Cytoskeleton 120
- Inclusions 121

Chapter Review 125

INSIGHTS

3.1 **Clinical Application:** Calcium Channel Blockers 101
3.2 **Clinical Application:** Cystic Fibrosis 105
3.3 **Clinical Application:** Familial Hypercholesterolemia 113
3.4 **Evolutionary Medicine:** Mitochondria—Evolution and Clinical Significance 124

Brushing Up

To understand this chapter, it is important that you understand or brush up on the following concepts:

- Glycolipids and glycoproteins (p. 75)
- Phospholipids and their amphiphilic nature (p. 77)
- Protein functions (p. 80)
- The relationship of protein function to tertiary structure (p. 80)

All organisms, from the simplest to the most complex, are composed of cells—whether the single cell of a bacterium or the trillions of cells that constitute the human body. These cells are responsible for all structural and functional properties of a living organism. **Cytology,**[1] the study of cell structure and function, is therefore indispensable to any true understanding of the workings of the human body, the mechanisms of disease, and the rationale of therapy. Thus, this chapter and the next one introduce the basic cell biology of the human body, and subsequent chapters expand upon this information as we examine the specialized cellular functions of specific organs.

Concepts of Cellular Structure

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- discuss the development and modern tenets of the cell theory;
- be able to describe cell shapes from their descriptive terms;
- state how big human cells are and discuss factors that limit cell size;
- discuss the way that developments in microscopy have changed our view of cell structure; and
- outline the major components of a cell.

Development of the Cell Theory

As you may recall from chapter 1, Robert Hooke had observed only the empty cell walls of cork when he first named the cell in 1663. Later, he studied thin slices of fresh wood and saw cells "filled with juices"—a fluid later named *protoplasm.*[2] Two centuries later, Theodor Schwann studied a wide range of animal tissues and concluded that all animals are made of cells. Schwann and other biologists originally believed that cells came from nonliving body fluid that somehow congealed and acquired a membrane and nucleus. This idea of *spontaneous generation*—that living things arise from nonliving matter—was rooted in the scientific thought of the times. For centuries, it was considered simple common sense that decaying meat turns into maggots, stored grain into rodents, and mud into frogs. Schwann and his contemporaries merely extended this idea to cells. The idea of spontaneous generation wasn't discredited until some classic experiments by French microbiologist Louis Pasteur in 1859. By the end of the nineteenth century, it was established beyond all reasonable doubt that cells arise only from other cells. The development of biochemistry from the late nineteenth to the twentieth century made it further apparent that all physiological processes of the body are based on cellular activity and that the cells of all species exhibit remarkable biochemical unity. Thus emerged the generalizations that constitute the modern cell theory:

1. All organisms are composed of cells and cell products.
2. The cell is the simplest structural and functional unit of life. There are no smaller subdivisions of a cell or organism that, in themselves, are alive.
3. An organism's structure and all of its functions are ultimately due to the activities of its cells.
4. Cells come only from preexisting cells, not from nonliving matter. All life, therefore, traces its ancestry to the same original cells.
5. Because of this common ancestry, the cells of all species have many fundamental similarities in their chemical composition and metabolic mechanisms.

Cell Shapes and Sizes

There are about 200 types of cells in the human body, and they vary greatly in shape (fig. 3.1). **Squamous**[3] (SQUAY-

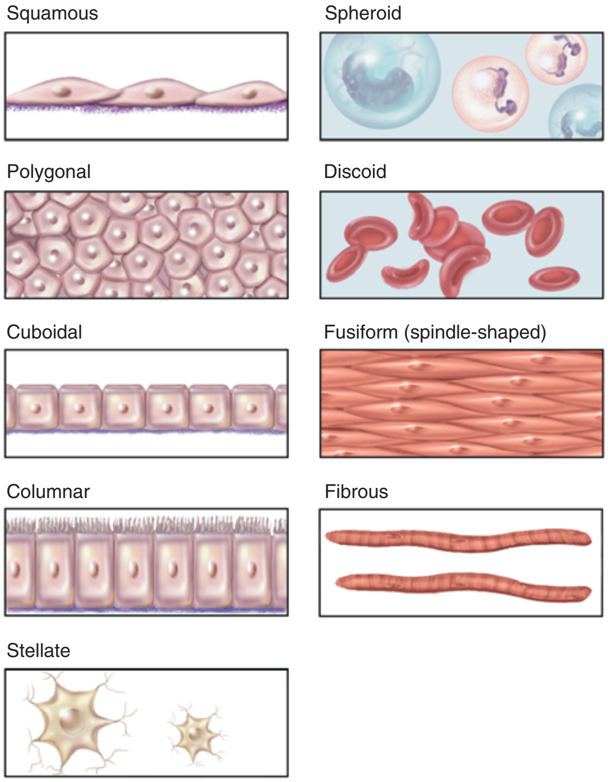


Figure 3.1 **Common Cell Shapes.**

---

[1] *cyto* = cell + *logy* = study of

[2] *proto* = first + *plasm* = formed

[3] *squam* = scale + *ous* = characterized by

mus) cells are thin, flat, and often have angular contours when viewed from above. Such cells line the esophagus and cover the skin. **Polygonal**[4] cells have irregularly angular shapes with four, five, or more sides. Some nerve cells have multiple extensions that give them a starlike, or **stellate,**[5] shape. **Cuboidal**[6] cells are squarish and approximately as tall as they are wide; liver cells are a good example. **Columnar** cells, such as those lining the intestines, are markedly taller than wide. Egg cells and fat cells are **spheroid** to **ovoid** (round to oval). Red blood cells are **discoid** (disc-shaped). Smooth muscle cells are **fusiform**[7] (FEW-zih-form)—thick in the middle and tapered toward the ends. Skeletal muscle cells are described as **fibrous** because of their threadlike shape.

Most human cells range from 10 to 15 micrometers (μm) in diameter. (See the inside back book cover for units of measurement.) The human egg cell, an exceptionally large 100 μm in diameter, is barely visible to the naked eye. The longest human cells are nerve cells (sometimes over a meter long) and muscle cells (up to 30 cm long), but both are too slender to be seen with the naked eye.

There is a limit to how large a cell can be, partly due to the relationship between its volume and surface area. The surface area of a cell is proportional to the square of its diameter, while volume is proportional to the cube of its diameter. Thus, for a given increase in diameter, cell volume increases much faster than surface area. Picture a cuboidal cell 10 μm on each side (fig. 3.2). It would have a surface area of 600 μm^2 (10 μm × 10 μm × 6 sides) and a volume of 1,000 μm^3 (10 × 10 × 10 μm). Now, suppose it grew by another 10 μm on each side. Its new surface area would be 20 μm × 20 μm × 6 = 2,400 μm^2, and its volume would be 20 × 20 × 20 μm = 8,000 μm^3. The 20 μm cell has eight times as much protoplasm needing nourishment and waste removal, but only four times as much membrane surface through which wastes and nutrients can be exchanged. A cell that is too big cannot support itself.

---

[4] *poly* = many + *gon* = angles
[5] *stell* = star + *ate* = characterized by
[6] *cub* = cube + *oidal* = like, resembling
[7] *fusi* = spindle + *form* = shape

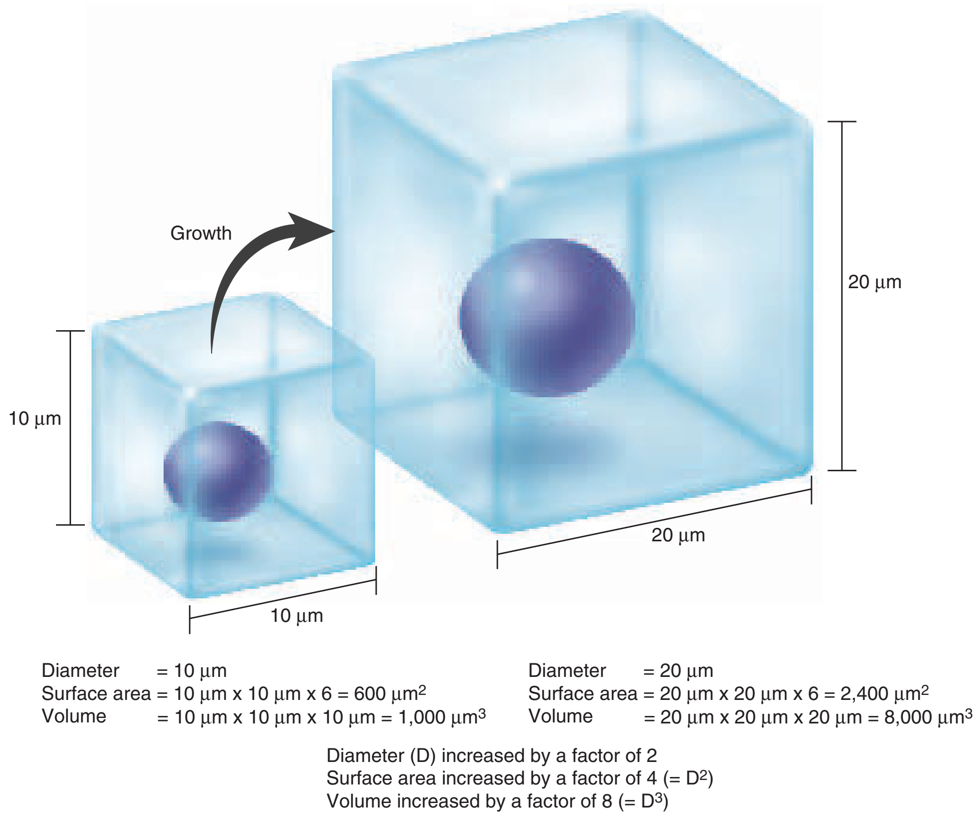

Growth
10 μm
10 μm
20 μm
20 μm
Diameter = 10 μm
Surface area = 10 μm x 10 μm x 6 = 600 μm^2
Volume = 10 μm x 10 μm x 10 μm = 1,000 μm^3
Diameter = 20 μm
Surface area = 20 μm x 20 μm x 6 = 2,400 μm^2
Volume = 20 μm x 20 μm x 20 μm = 8,000 μm^3
Diameter (D) increased by a factor of 2
Surface area increased by a factor of 4 (= D^2)
Volume increased by a factor of 8 (= D^3)

Figure 3.2 **The Relationship Between Cell Surface Area and Volume.** As a cell doubles in diameter, its volume increases eightfold, but its surface area increases only fourfold. A cell that is too large may have too little plasma membrane to serve the metabolic needs of its increased volume of cytoplasm.

Think About It

Can you conceive of some other reasons for an organ to consist of many small cells rather than fewer larger ones?

General Cell Structure

In Schwann's time, little was known about cells except that they were enclosed in a membrane and contained a nucleus. The fluid between the nucleus and surface membrane, called **cytoplasm,** was thought to be little more than a gelatinous mixture of chemicals. The **transmission electron microscope (TEM),** invented in the mid-twentieth century, radically changed this concept. Using a beam of electrons in place of light, the TEM enabled biologists to see a cell's *ultrastructure* (fig. 3.3), a fine degree of detail extending even to the molecular level. The most important thing about a good microscope is not magnification but **resolution**—the ability to reveal detail. Any image can be photographed and enlarged as much as we wish, but if enlargement fails to reveal any more useful detail, it is *empty magnification.* A big fuzzy image is not nearly as informative as one that is small and sharp. The TEM reveals far more detail than the light microscope (LM), even at the same magnification (fig. 3.4). A later

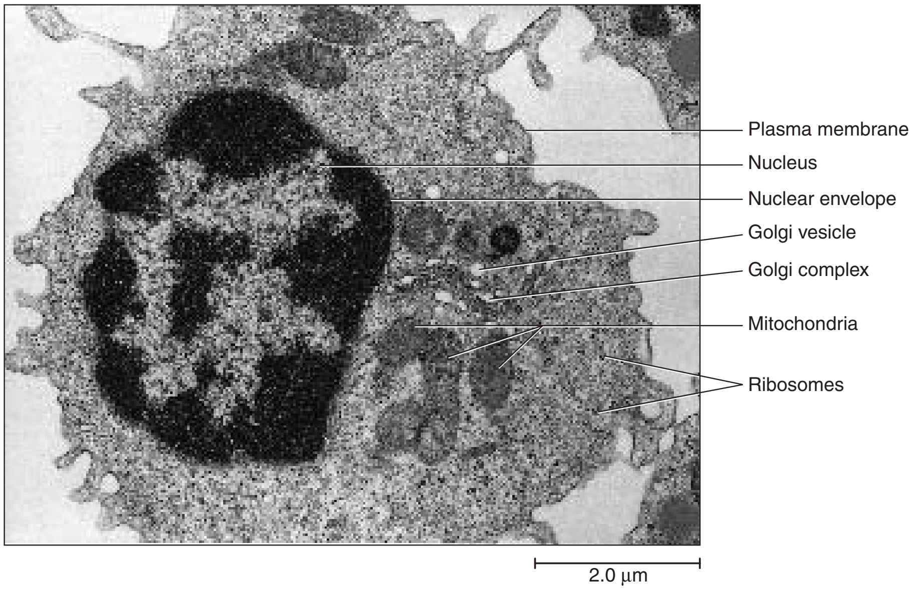


Figure 3.3 **Ultrastructure of a White Blood Cell as Seen by TEM.**

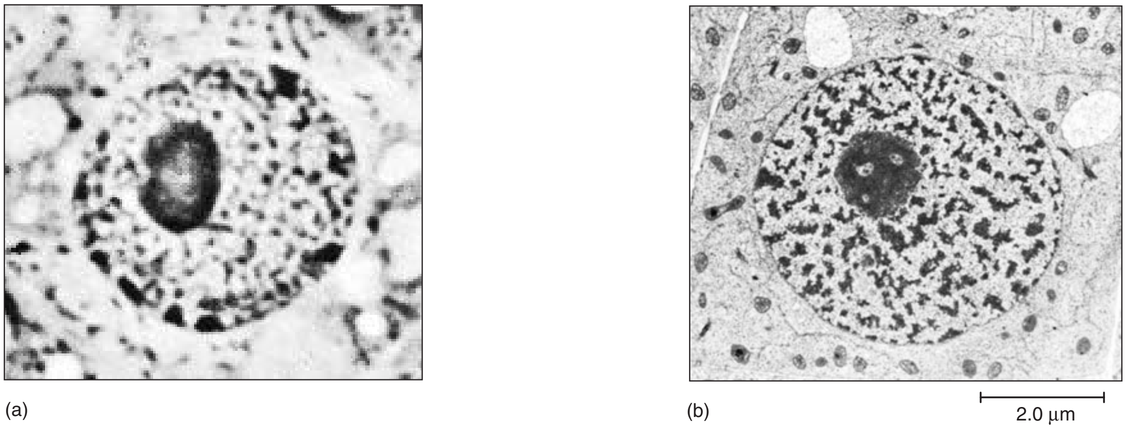


Figure 3.4 **Magnification Versus Resolution.** These cells were photographed at the same magnification (about ×750) through (*a*) a light microscope and (*b*) a transmission electron microscope.

invention, the **scanning electron microscope (SEM),** produces dramatic three-dimensional images at high magnification and resolution (see fig. 3.12), but can only view surface features.

Table 3.1 gives the sizes of some cells and subcellular objects relative to the resolution of the naked eye, light microscope, and electron microscope. You can see why the very existence of cells was unsuspected until the light microscope was invented and why little was known about their internal components until the TEM became available.

Figure 3.5 shows some major constituents of a typical cell. The cell is surrounded by a **plasma (cell) membrane** made of proteins and lipids. The composition and functions of this membrane can differ significantly from one region of a cell to another, especially between the basal, lateral, and apical (upper) surfaces of cells like the one pictured.

The cytoplasm is crowded with fibers, tubules, passageways, and compartments (see photographs on pp. 93 and 985). It includes several kinds of **organelles** and a supportive framework called the **cytoskeleton**—all of which we will study in this chapter. A cell may have 10 billion protein molecules, including potent enzymes with the potential to destroy the cell if they are not contained and isolated from other cellular components. You can imagine the enormous problem of keeping track of all this material, directing molecules to the correct destinations, and maintaining order against the incessant trend toward disorder. Cells maintain order partly by compartmentalizing their contents in the organelles. The organelles and cytoskeleton are embedded in a clear gel called the **cytosol** or **intracellular fluid (ICF).** The fluid outside the cell is **extracellular fluid (ECF).**

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

1. What are the basic principles of the cell theory?
2. What does it mean to say a cell is squamous, stellate, columnar, or fusiform?
3. Why can cells not grow to unlimited size?
4. What is the difference between cytoplasm and cytosol?
5. Define *intracellular fluid (ICF)* and *extracellular fluid (ECF).*

Table 3.1 Sizes of Some Biological Structures in Relation to the Resolving Power of the Human Eye, Light Microscope (LM), and Transmission Electron Microscope (TEM)

Object	Size	Eye	LM	TEM
Human egg, diameter	100 µm	■	■	■
Resolution of the unaided eye	70–100 µm	■	■	■
Most human cells, diameter	10–15 µm		■	■
Cilia, length	7–10 µm		■	■
Mitochondria, width × length	0.2 × 4 µm		■	■
Bacteria *(E. coli),* length	1–3 µm		■	■
Microvilli, length	1–2 µm		■	■
Lysosomes, diameter	0.5 µm = 500 nm		■	■
Resolution of the light microscope	200 nm		■	■
Nuclear pores, diameter	30–100 nm			■
Centriole, diameter × length	20 × 50 nm			■
Polio virus, diameter	30 nm			■
Ribosomes, diameter	15 nm			■
Globular proteins, diameter	5–10 nm			■
Plasma membrane, thickness	7.5 nm			■
DNA molecule, diameter	2.0 nm			■
Plasma membrane channels, diameter	0.8 nm			■
Resolution of the TEM	0.5 nm			■
Carbon atom, diameter	0.15 nm			
Hydrogen atom, diameter	0.07 nm			

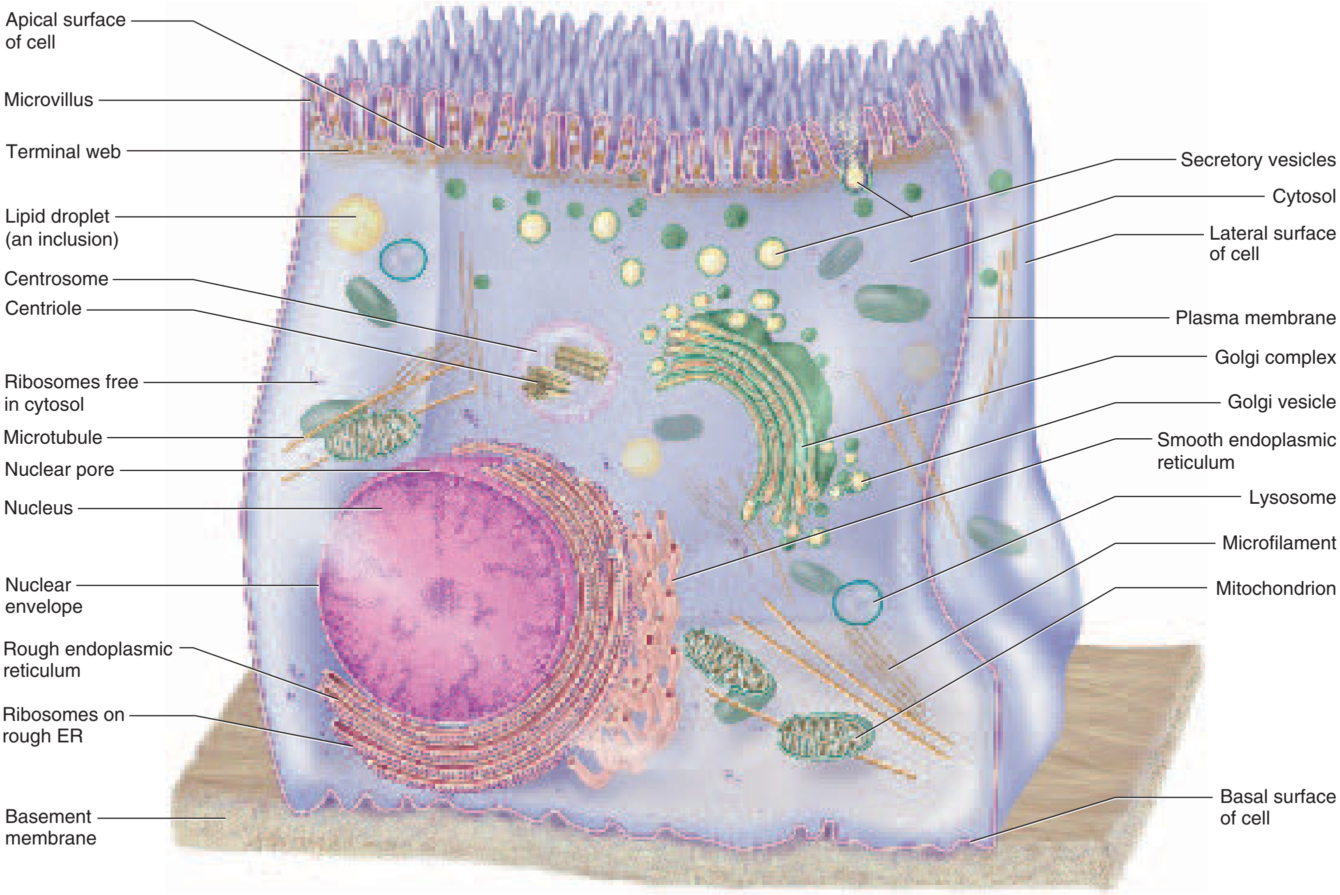

Apical surface of cell
Microvillus
Terminal web
Lipid droplet (an inclusion)
Centrosome
Centriole
Ribosomes free in cytosol
Microtubule
Nuclear pore
Nucleus
Nuclear envelope
Rough endoplasmic reticulum
Ribosomes on rough ER
Basement membrane
Secretory vesicles
Cytosol
Lateral surface of cell
Plasma membrane
Golgi complex
Golgi vesicle
Smooth endoplasmic reticulum
Lysosome
Microfilament
Mitochondrion
Basal surface of cell

Figure 3.5 **Structure of a Representative Cell.**

The Cell Surface

Objectives

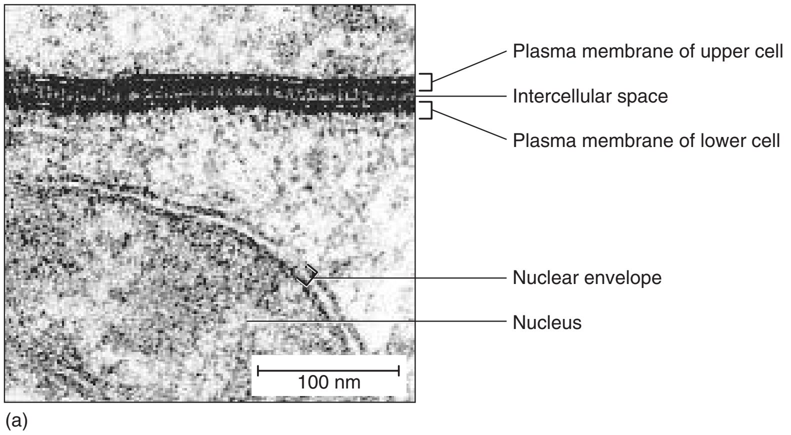
When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the structure of a plasma membrane;
- explain the functions of the lipid, protein, and carbohydrate components of the plasma membrane;
- describe a second-messenger system and discuss its importance in human physiology;
- describe the composition and functions of the glycocalyx that coats cell surfaces; and
- describe the structure and functions of microvilli, cilia, and flagella.

Throughout this book, you will find that many of the most physiologically important processes occur at the surface of a cell—such events as immune responses, the binding of egg and sperm, cell-to-cell signaling by hormones, and the detection of tastes and smells, for example. A substantial part of this chapter is therefore concerned with the cell surface. We will examine the structure of the plasma membrane, surface features such as cilia and microvilli, and methods of transport through the membrane before we venture into the interior of the cell.

The Plasma Membrane

The electron microscope reveals that the cell and many of the organelles within it are bordered by a *unit membrane,* which appears as a pair of dark parallel lines with a total thickness of about 7.5 nm (fig. 3.6*a*). The *plasma membrane* is the unit membrane at the cell surface. It defines the boundaries of the cell, governs its interactions with other cells, and controls the passage of materials into and out of the cell. The side that faces the cytoplasm is the *intracellular face* of the membrane, and the side that faces outward is the *extracellular face.*


Plasma membrane of upper cell
Intercellular space
Plasma membrane of lower cell
Nuclear envelope
Nucleus
100 nm
(a)

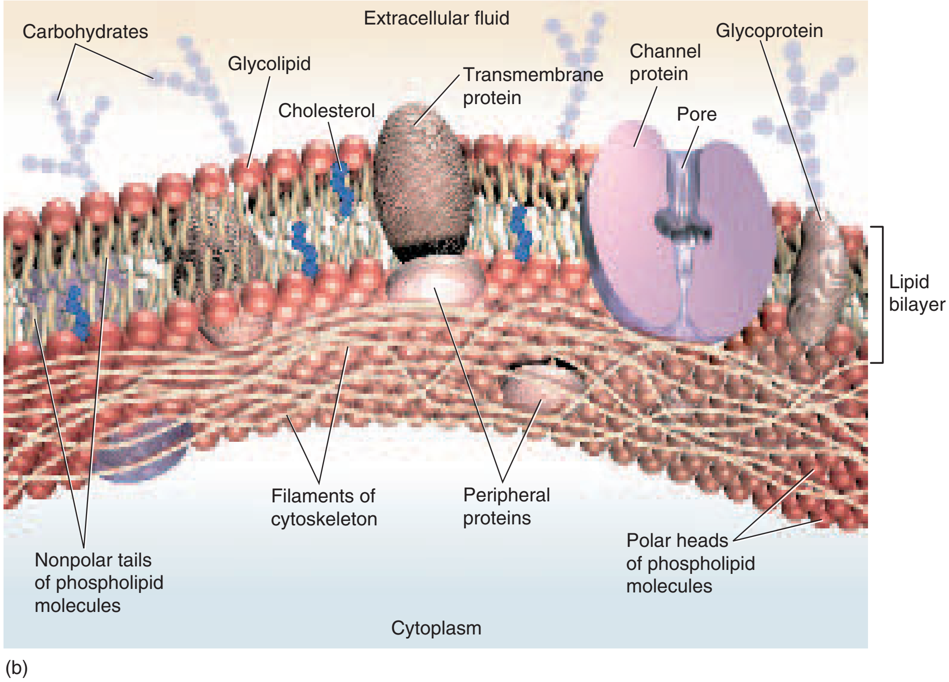

Extracellular fluid
Carbohydrates
Glycolipid
Cholesterol
Transmembrane protein
Channel protein
Glycoprotein
Pore
Lipid bilayer
Filaments of cytoskeleton
Peripheral proteins
Polar heads of phospholipid molecules
Nonpolar tails of phospholipid molecules
Cytoplasm
(b)

Figure 3.6 The Plasma Membrane. (*a*) Plasma membranes of two adjacent cells (electron micrograph). (*b*) Molecular structure of the plasma membrane.

Membrane Lipids

Figure 3.6*b* shows our current concept of the molecular structure of the plasma membrane—an oily film of lipids with diverse proteins embedded in it. Typically about 98% of the molecules in the membrane are lipids, and about 75% of the lipids are phospholipids. These amphiphilic molecules arrange themselves into a bilayer, with their hydrophilic phosphate-containing heads facing the water on each side of the membrane and their hydrophobic tails directed toward the center of the membrane, avoiding the water. The phospholipids drift laterally from place to place, spin on their axes, and flex their tails. These movements keep the membrane fluid.

Think About It

What would happen if the plasma membrane were made primarily of a hydrophilic substance such as carbohydrate? Which of the major themes at the end of chapter 1 does this point best exemplify?

Cholesterol molecules, found amid the fatty acid tails, constitute about 20% of the membrane lipids. By interacting with the phospholipids and "holding them still," cholesterol can stiffen the membrane (make it less fluid) in spots. Higher concentrations of cholesterol, however, can increase membrane fluidity by preventing the phospholipids from becoming packed closely together.

The remaining 5% of the membrane lipids are glycolipids—phospholipids with short carbohydrate chains on the extracellular face of the membrane. They help to form the *glycocalyx,* a carbohydrate coating on the cell surface with multiple functions, described shortly.

Membrane Proteins

Although proteins are only about 2% of the molecules of the plasma membrane, they are larger than lipids and constitute about 50% of the membrane weight. Some of them, called **integral (transmembrane) proteins,** pass through the membrane. They have hydrophilic regions in contact with the cytoplasm and extracellular fluid, and hydrophobic regions that pass back and forth through the lipid of the membrane (fig. 3.7). Most integral proteins are glycoproteins, which are conjugated with oligosaccharides on the extracellular side of the membrane. Many of the integral proteins drift about freely in the phospholipid film, like ice cubes floating in a bowl of water. Others are anchored to the *cytoskeleton*—an intracellular system of tubules and filaments discussed later. **Peripheral proteins** do not protrude into the phospholipid layer but adhere to the intracellular face of the membrane. A peripheral protein is typically associated with an integral protein and tethered to the cytoskeleton.

The functions of membrane proteins include the following:

- **Receptors** (fig. 3.8*a*). The chemical signals by which cells communicate with each other (epinephrine, for example) often cannot enter the target cell, but bind to surface proteins called receptors. Receptors are usually specific for one particular messenger, much like an enzyme that is specific for one substrate.
- **Second-messenger systems.** When a messenger binds to a surface receptor, it may trigger changes within the cell that produce a second messenger in the cytoplasm. This process involves both transmembrane proteins (the receptors) and peripheral proteins. Second-messenger systems are discussed shortly in more detail.
- **Enzymes** (fig. 3.8*b*). Enzymes in the plasma membranes of cells carry out the final stages of starch and protein digestion in the small intestine, help produce second messengers, and break down hormones and other signaling molecules whose job is done, thus stopping them from excessively stimulating a cell.
- **Channel proteins** (fig. 3.8*c*). Channel proteins are integral proteins with pores that allow passage of water and hydrophilic solutes through the membrane. Some channels are always open, while others are **gates** that open and close under different circumstances, thus determining when solutes can pass through (fig. 3.8*d*). These gates open or close in response to three types of stimuli: **ligand-regulated gates** respond to chemical messengers, **voltage-regulated gates** to changes in electrical potential (voltage) across the plasma membrane, and **mechanically regulated gates** to physical stress on a cell, such as stretch and

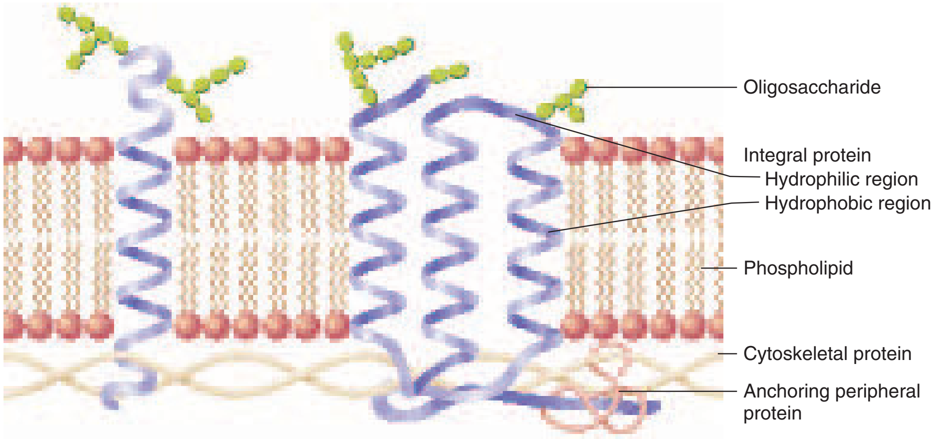


Figure 3.7 **Transmembrane Proteins.** A transmembrane protein has hydrophobic regions embedded in the phospholipid bilayer and hydrophilic regions projecting into the intracellular and extracellular fluids. The protein may cross the membrane once (*left*) or multiple times (*right*). The intracellular regions are often anchored to the cytoskeleton by peripheral proteins.

pressure. By controlling the movement of electrolytes through the plasma membrane, gated channels play an important role in the timing of nerve signals and muscle contraction (see insight 3.1).

- **Carriers** (see figs. 3.18 and 3.19). Carriers are integral proteins that bind to glucose, electrolytes, and other solutes and transfer them to the other side of the membrane. Some carriers, called **pumps,** consume ATP in the process.
- **Molecular motors** (fig. 3.8*e*). These proteins produce movement by changing shape and pulling on other molecules. They move materials within a cell, as in transporting molecules and organelles to their destinations; they enable some cells, such as white blood cells, to crawl around in the body's tissues; and they make cells change shape, as when a cell surrounds and engulfs foreign particles or when it divides in two. Such processes depend on the action of fibrous proteins, especially *actin* and *myosin,* that pull on the integral proteins of the plasma membrane.
- **Cell-identity markers** (fig. 3.8*f*). Glycoproteins contribute to the *glycocalyx,* a carbohydrate surface coating discussed shortly. Among other functions, this acts like an "identification tag" that enables our bodies to tell which cells belong to it and which are foreign invaders.
- **Cell-adhesion molecules** (fig. 3.8*g*). Cells adhere to one another and to extracellular material through certain membrane proteins called cell-adhesion molecules (CAMs). With few exceptions (such as blood cells and metastasizing cancer cells), cells do not grow or survive normally unless they are mechanically linked to the extracellular material. Special events such as sperm-egg binding and the binding of an immune cell to a cancer cell also require CAMs.

Insight 3.1 Clinical Application

Calcium Channel Blockers

The walls of the arteries contain smooth muscle that contracts or relaxes to change their diameter. These changes modify the blood flow and strongly influence blood pressure. Blood pressure rises when the arteries constrict and falls when they relax and dilate. Excessive, widespread vasoconstriction can cause hypertension (high blood pressure), and vasoconstriction in the coronary blood vessels of the heart can cause pain (angina) due to inadequate blood flow to the cardiac muscle. In order to contract, a smooth muscle cell must open calcium channels in its plasma membrane and allow calcium to enter from the extracellular fluid. Drugs called *calcium channel blockers* prevent calcium channels from opening. Thus they help to relax the arteries, relieve angina, and lower blood pressure.

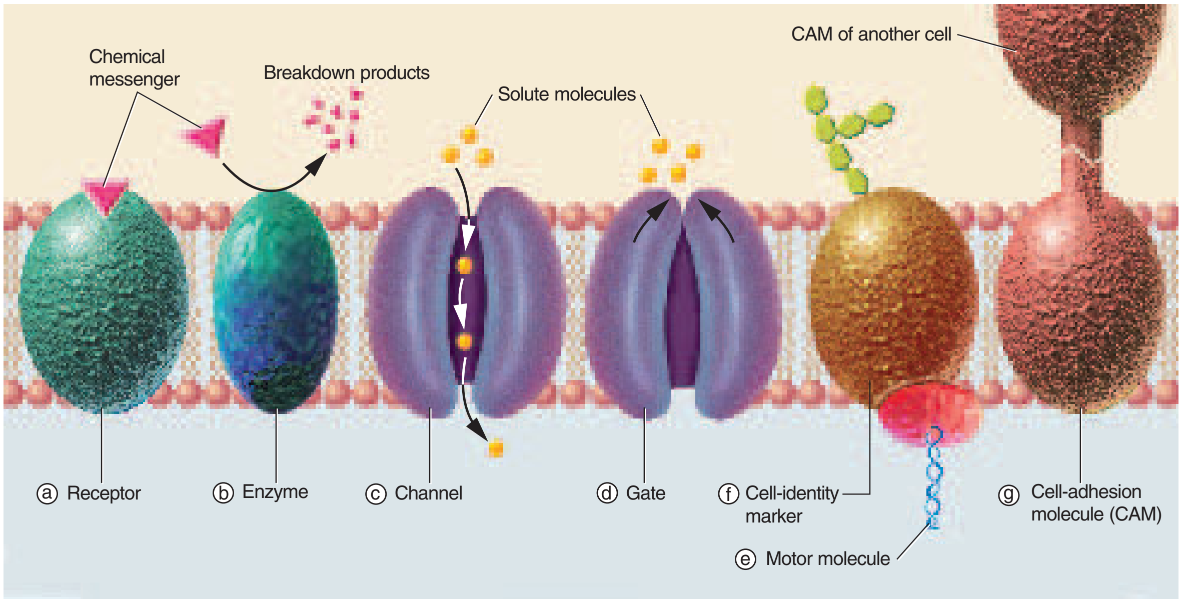


Figure 3.8 Some Functions of Membrane Proteins. (*a*) A receptor that binds to chemical messengers such as hormones sent by other cells. (*b*) An enzyme that breaks down a chemical messenger and terminates its effect on the target cell. (*c*) A channel protein that is constantly open and allows solutes to pass in and out of the cell. (*d*) A gated channel that opens and closes to allow solutes through only at certain times. (*e*) A motor molecule, a filamentous protein arising deeper in the cytoplasm that pulls on membrane proteins and causes cell movement. (*f*) A glycoprotein serving as a cell-identity marker. (*g*) A cell-adhesion molecule (CAM) that binds one cell to another.

Second Messengers

Second messengers are of such importance that they require a closer look. You will find this information essential for your later understanding of hormone and neurotransmitter action. Let's consider how the hormone epinephrine stimulates a cell. Epinephrine, the "first messenger," cannot pass through plasma membranes, so it binds to a surface receptor. The receptor is linked on the intracellular side to a peripheral protein called a **G protein** (fig. 3.9). G proteins are named for the ATP-like chemical, guanosine triphosphate (GTP), from which they get their energy. When activated by the receptor, a G protein relays the signal to another membrane protein, **adenylate cyclase** (ah-DEN-ih-late SY-clase). Adenylate cyclase removes two phosphate groups from ATP and converts it to cyclic AMP (cAMP), the second messenger. Cyclic AMP then activates enzymes called **kinases** (KY-nace-es) in the cytosol. Kinases add phosphate groups to other cellular enzymes. This activates some enzymes and deactivates others, but either way, it triggers a great variety of physiological changes within the cell.

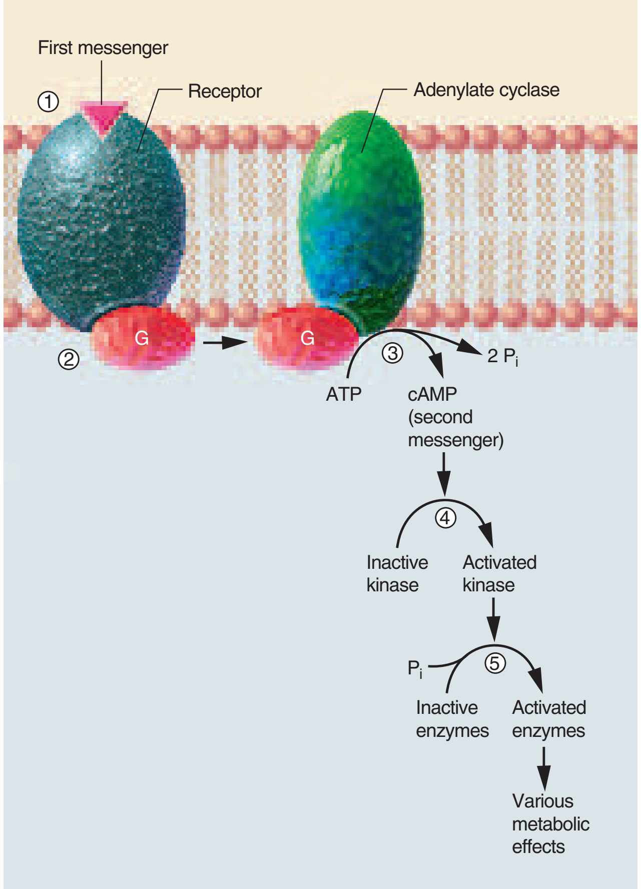


Figure 3.9 **A Second-Messenger System.** (*1*) A messenger such as epinephrine (red triangle) binds to a receptor in the plasma membrane. (*2*) The receptor releases a G protein, which then travels freely in the cytoplasm and can have various effects in the cell. (*3*) The G protein binds to an enzyme, adenylate cyclase, in the plasma membrane. Adenylate cyclase converts ATP to cyclic AMP (cAMP), the second messenger. (*4*) cAMP activates a cytoplasmic enzyme called a kinase. (*5*) Kinases add phosphate groups (P_i) to other cytoplasmic enzymes. This activates some enzymes and deactivates others, leading to varied metabolic effects within the cell.

Is adenylate cyclase an integral protein or a peripheral protein? What about the G protein?

G proteins play such an enormous range of roles in physiology and disease that Martin Rodbell and Alfred Gilman received a 1994 Nobel Prize for discovering them. Up to 60% of currently used drugs work by altering the activity of G proteins.

The Glycocalyx

External to the plasma membrane, all animal cells have a fuzzy coat called the **glycocalyx**[8] (GLY-co-CAY-licks) (fig. 3.10), which consists of the carbohydrate moieties

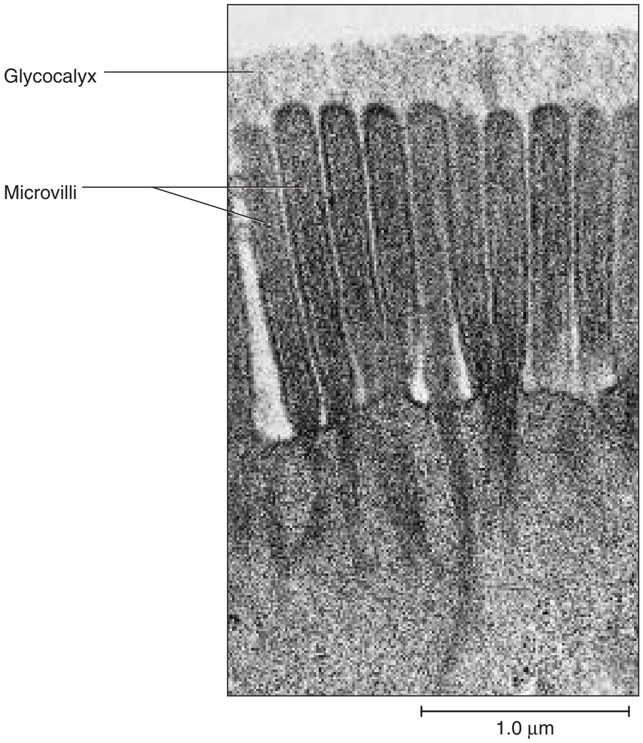


Figure 3.10 **Microvilli and the Glycocalyx.** This is the apical surface of an absorptive cell of the small intestine.

---

[8] *glyco* = sugar + *calyx* = cup, vessel

of the membrane glycolipids and glycoproteins. It is chemically unique in everyone but identical twins, and acts like an identification tag that enables the body to distinguish its own healthy cells from transplanted tissues, invading organisms, and diseased cells. Human blood types and transfusion compatibility are determined by glycoproteins. The glycocalyx includes the cell-adhesion molecules that enable cells to adhere to each other and guide the movement of cells in embryonic development. The functions of the glycocalyx are summarized in table 3.2.

Microvilli, Cilia, and Flagella

Many cells have surface extensions called *microvilli, cilia,* and *flagella.* These aid in absorption, movement, and sensory processes.

Microvilli

Microvilli[9] (MY-cro-VIL-eye; singular, *microvillus*) are extensions of the plasma membrane that serve primarily to increase a cell's surface area (figs. 3.10 and 3.11*a-b*). They are best developed in cells specialized for absorption, such as the epithelial cells of the intestines and kidney tubules. They give such cells 15 to 40 times as much absorptive surface area as they would have if their apical surfaces were flat. On many cells, microvilli are little more than tiny bumps on the plasma membrane. On cells of the taste buds and inner ear, they are well developed but serve sensory rather than absorptive functions.

Individual microvilli cannot be distinguished very well with the light microscope because they are only 1 to 2 μm long. On some cells, they are very dense and appear as a fringe called the **brush border** at the apical cell surface. With the scanning electron microscope, they resemble a deep-pile carpet. With the transmission electron microscope, microvilli typically look like finger-shaped projections of the cell surface. They show little internal structure, but some have a bundle of stiff filaments of a protein called *actin.* Actin filaments attach to the inside of the plasma membrane at the tip of the microvillus, and at its base they extend a little way into the cell and anchor the microvillus to a protein mesh called the **terminal web.** When tugged by another protein in the cytoplasm, actin can shorten a microvillus to "milk" its absorbed contents downward into the cell.

Cilia

Cilia (SIL-ee-uh; singular, *cilium*[10]) (figs. 3.11*c-e* and 3.12) are hairlike processes about 7 to 10 μm long. Nearly every human cell has a single, nonmotile *primary cilium* a few micrometers long. Its function in many cases is still a mystery, but some of them are sensory. In the inner ear, they play a role in the sense of balance; in the retina of the eye, they are highly elaborate and form the light-absorbing part of the receptor cells; and they are thought to monitor fluid flow through the kidney tubules. In some cases they open calcium gates in the plasma membrane. Sensory cells in the nose have multiple nonmotile cilia which bind odor molecules.

Motile cilia are less widespread, occurring mainly in the respiratory tract and the uterine (fallopian) tubes. There may be 50 to 200 of these cilia on the surface of one cell. Cilia beat in waves that sweep across the surface of an epithelium, always in the same direction (fig. 3.13). Each cilium bends stiffly forward and produces a *power stroke* that pushes along the mucus or other matter. Shortly after a cilium begins its power stroke, the one just ahead of it begins, and the next and the next—collectively producing a wavelike motion. After a cilium completes its power stroke, it is pulled limply back by a *recovery stroke* that restores it to the upright position, ready to flex again.

Think About It

How would the movement of mucus in the respiratory tract be affected if cilia were equally stiff on both their power and recovery strokes?

Table 3.2 Functions of the Glycocalyx

Protection	Cushions the plasma membrane and protects it from physical and chemical injury
Immunity to Infection	Enables the immune system to recognize and selectively attack foreign organisms
Defense Against Cancer	Changes in the glycocalyx of cancerous cells enable the immune system to recognize and destroy them
Transplant Compatibility	Forms the basis for compatibility of blood transfusions, tissue grafts, and organ transplants
Cell Adhesion	Binds cells together so that tissues do not fall apart
Fertilization	Enables sperm to recognize and bind to eggs
Embryonic Development	Guides embryonic cells to their destinations in the body

---

[9] *micro* = small + *villi* = hairs

[10] *cilium* = eyelash

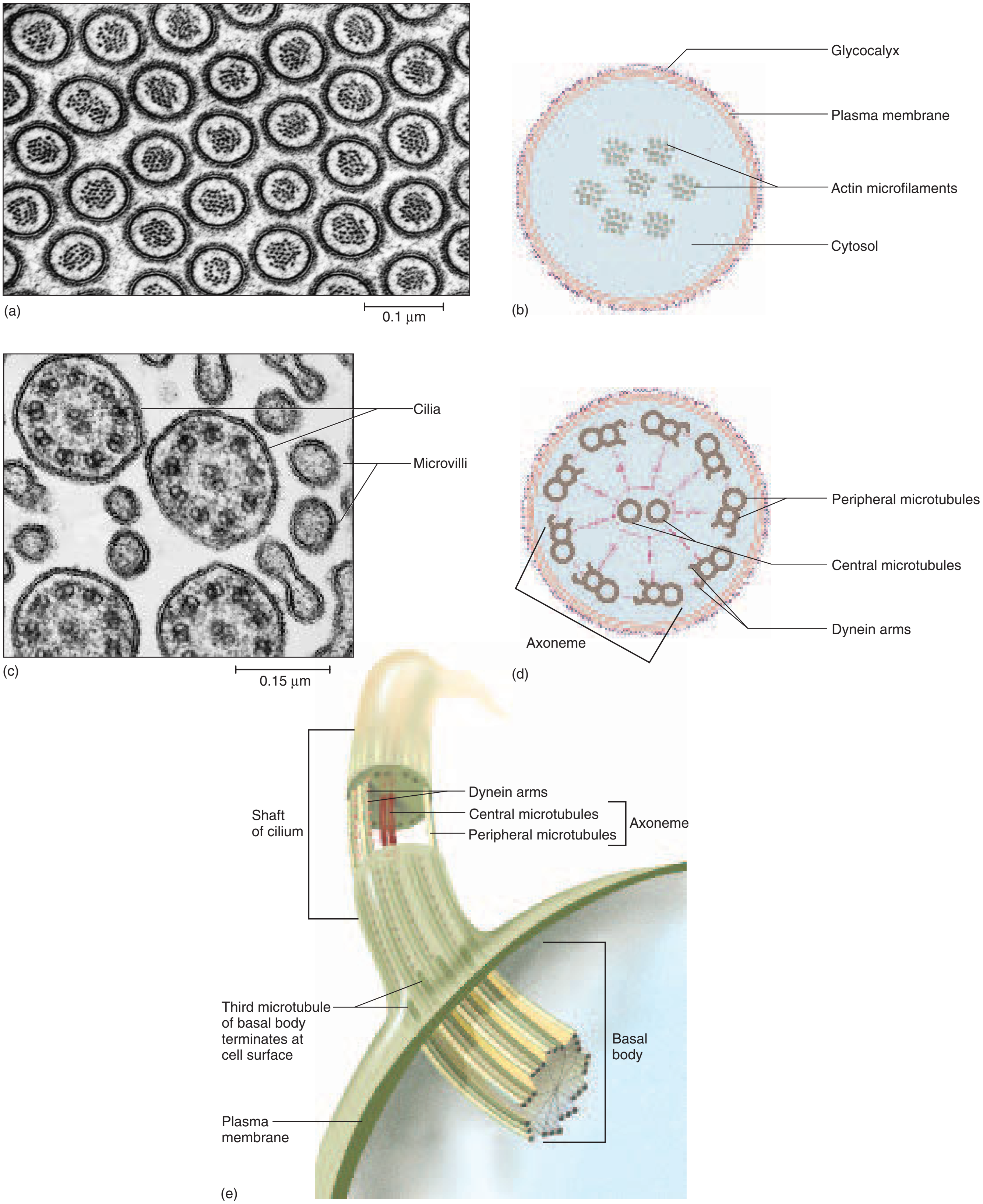

(a)
0.1 µm
Glycocalyx
Plasma membrane
Actin microfilaments
Cytosol
(b)
Cilia
Microvilli
(c)
0.15 µm
Peripheral microtubules
Central microtubules
Dynein arms
Axoneme
(d)
Shaft of cilium
Dynein arms
Central microtubules
Peripheral microtubules
Axoneme
Third microtubule of basal body terminates at cell surface
Basal body
Plasma membrane
(e)

Figure 3.11 **Microvilli and Cilia.** (*a* and *b*) Electron micrograph and diagram of microvilli in cross section. (*c* and *d*) Electron micrograph and diagram of cilia in cross section. (*e*) Three-dimensional structure of a cilium at the point where it meets the cell surface.

Cilia could not beat freely if they were embedded in sticky mucus (see insight 3.2). Instead, they beat within a saline (saltwater) layer at the cell surface. *Chloride pumps* in the apical plasma membrane produce this layer by pumping Cl^- into the extracellular fluid. Sodium ions follow by electrical attraction and water follows by osmosis. Mucus essentially floats on the surface of this layer and is pushed along by the tips of the cilia.

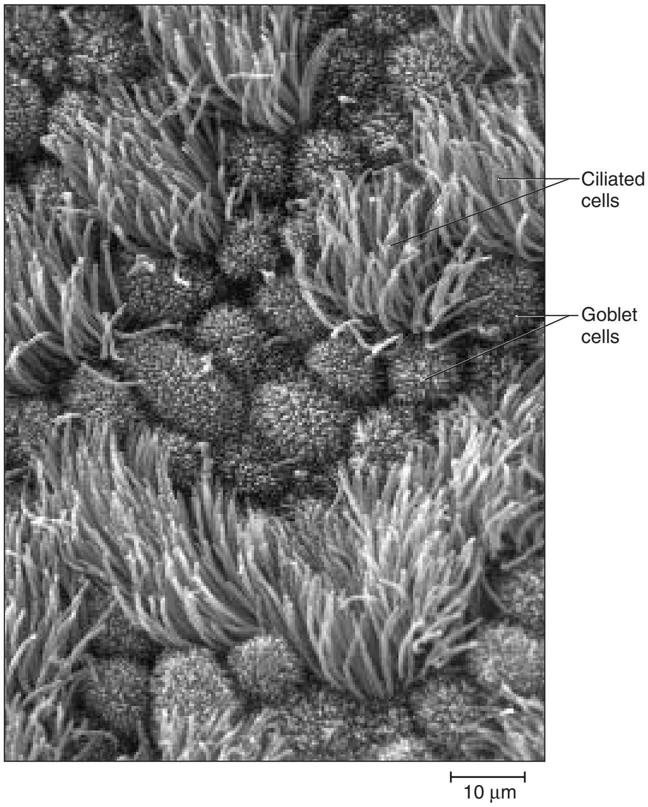


Figure 3.12 Cilia of the Trachea. Several nonciliated, mucus-secreting goblet cells are visible among the ciliated cells. The goblet cells have short microvilli on their surface.

Insight 3.2 Clinical Application

Cystic Fibrosis

The significance of chloride pumps becomes especially evident in *cystic fibrosis (CF),* a hereditary disease especially affecting white children of European descent. CF is usually caused by a defect in which cells make chloride pumps but fail to install them in the plasma membrane. Consequently, there is an inadequate saline layer on the cell surface and the mucus is dehydrated and overly sticky. This thick mucus plugs the ducts of the pancreas and prevents it from secreting digestive enzymes into the small intestine, so digestion and nutrition are compromised. In the respiratory tract, the mucus clogs the cilia and prevents them from beating freely. The respiratory tract becomes congested with thick mucus, often leading to chronic infection and pulmonary collapse. The mean life expectancy of people with CF is about 30 years.

The structural basis for ciliary movement is a core called the **axoneme**[11] (ACK-so-neem), which consists of an array of thin protein cylinders called *microtubules.* There are two central microtubules surrounded by a ring of nine microtubule pairs—an arrangement called the *9 + 2 structure* (see fig. 3.11*d*). The central microtubules stop at the cell surface, but the peripheral microtubules continue a short distance into the cell as part of a **basal body** that anchors the cilium. In each pair of peripheral microtubules, one tubule has two little dynein (DINE-een) arms. **Dynein,**[12] a motor protein, uses energy from ATP to "crawl" up the adjacent pair of microtubules. When microtubules on the front of the cilium crawl up the microtubules behind them, the cilium bends toward the front.

Flagella

A **flagellum**[13] (fla-JEL-um) is a whiplike structure much longer than a cilium, but with an identical axoneme. The only functional flagellum in humans is the tail of a sperm cell.

---

[11] *axo* = axis + *neme* = thread
[12] *dyn* = power, energy + *in* = protein
[13] *flagellum* = whip

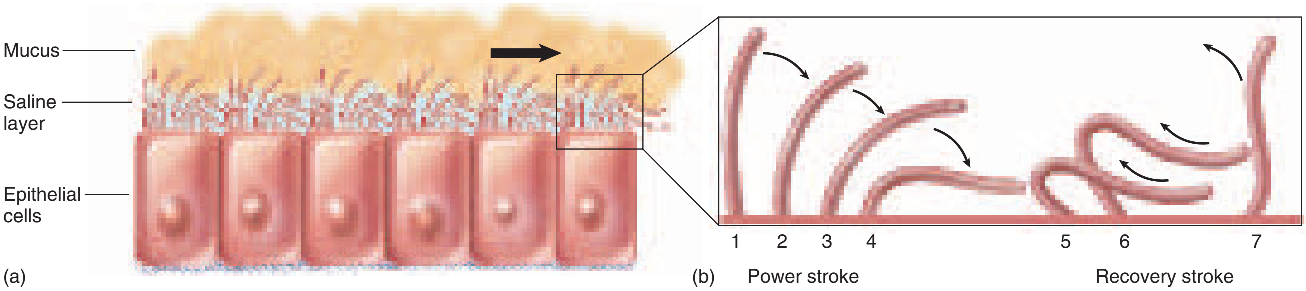


Figure 3.13 Ciliary Action. (*a*) Cilia of an epithelium moving mucus along a surface layer of saline. (*b*) Power and recovery strokes of a cilium.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

6. How does the structure of a plasma membrane depend on the amphiphilic nature of phospholipids?
7. Distinguish between integral and peripheral proteins.
8. Explain the differences between a receptor, pump, and cell-adhesion molecule.
9. How does a gate differ from other channel proteins? What three factors open and close membrane gates?
10. What roles do cAMP, adenylate cyclase, and kinases play in cellular function?
11. Identify several reasons why the glycocalyx is important to human survival.
12. How do microvilli and cilia differ in structure and function?

Membrane Transport

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- explain what is meant by a selectively permeable membrane;
- describe the various mechanisms for transporting material through the plasma membrane; and
- define *osmolarity* and *tonicity* and explain their importance.

The plasma membrane is both a barrier and gateway between the cytoplasm and extracellular fluid (ECF). It is **selectively permeable**—it allows some things through, such as nutrients and wastes, but usually prevents other things, such as proteins and phosphates, from entering or leaving the cell.

The methods of moving substances into or out of a cell can be classified in two overlapping ways: as *passive* or *active* mechanisms and as *carrier-mediated* or not. Passive mechanisms require no energy (ATP) expenditure by the cell. In most cases, the random molecular motion of the particles themselves provides the energy. Passive mechanisms include filtration and diffusion (including a special case of diffusion, osmosis). Active mechanisms, however, require the cell to consume ATP. These include active transport and vesicular transport. Carrier-mediated mechanisms use a membrane protein to transport substances from one side of the membrane to the other. We will first consider the mechanisms that are not carrier-mediated (filtration and simple diffusion) and then the carrier-mediated mechanisms (facilitated diffusion and active transport).

Filtration

Filtration is a process in which particles are driven through a selectively permeable membrane by **hydrostatic pressure,** the force exerted on a membrane by water. A coffee filter provides an everyday example. The weight of the water drives water and dissolved matter through the filter, while the filter holds back larger particles (the coffee grounds). In physiology, the most important case of filtration is seen in the blood capillaries, where blood pressure forces fluid through gaps in the capillary wall. This is how water, salts, nutrients, and other solutes are transferred from the bloodstream to the tissue fluid and how the kidneys filter wastes from the blood. Capillaries hold back larger particles such as blood cells and proteins.

Simple Diffusion

Simple diffusion is the net movement of particles from a place of high concentration to a place of lower concentration as a result of their constant, spontaneous motion. It can be observed by dropping a dye crystal in a dish of still water. As the crystal dissolves, it forms a colored zone in the water that gets larger and larger with time (fig. 3.14). The dye molecules exhibit net movement from the point of origin, where their concentration is high, toward the edges of the dish, where their concentration is low. When the concentration of a substance differs from one point to another, we say that it exhibits a **concentration gradient.** Particle movement from a region of high concentration toward a region of lower concentration is said to go *down,* or *with,* the gradient, and movement in the other direction is said to go *up,* or *against,* the gradient.

Diffusion occurs readily in air or water, and has no need of a membrane. However, if there is a membrane in the path of the diffusing molecules, and if it is permeable to that substance, the molecules will pass from one side of

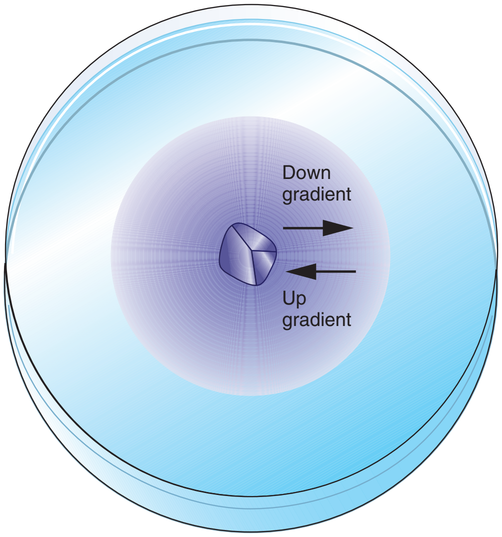


Figure 3.14 Diffusion and Concentration Gradients. Dye molecules diffusing away from a crystal dissolving in water. The direction from high concentration (near the crystal) to low concentration is described as "down the concentration gradient"; the opposite direction is described as "up the concentration gradient."

the membrane to the other. This is how oxygen passes from the air we inhale into the bloodstream. Dialysis treatment for kidney disease patients is based on diffusion of solutes through artificial *dialysis membranes.*

Diffusion rates are very important to cell survival because they determine how quickly a cell can acquire nutrients or rid itself of wastes. Some factors that affect the rate of diffusion through a membrane are as follows:

- **Temperature.** Diffusion is driven by the kinetic energy of the particles, and temperature is a measure of that kinetic energy. The warmer a substance is, the more rapidly its particles diffuse. This is why sugar diffuses more quickly through hot tea than through iced tea.
- **Molecular weight.** Heavy molecules such as proteins move more sluggishly and diffuse more slowly than light particles such as electrolytes and gases. Small molecules also pass through membrane pores more easily than large ones.
- **"Steepness" of the concentration gradient.** The steepness of a gradient refers to the concentration difference between two points. Particles diffuse more rapidly if there is a greater concentration difference between two points. For example, we can increase the rate of oxygen diffusion into a patient's blood by using an oxygen mask, thus increasing the difference in oxygen concentration between the air and blood.
- **Membrane surface area.** As noted earlier, the apical surface of cells specialized for absorption (for example, in the small intestine) is often extensively folded into microvilli. This makes more membrane available for particles to diffuse through.
- **Membrane permeability.** Diffusion through a membrane depends on how permeable it is to the particles. For example, potassium ions diffuse more rapidly than sodium ions through a plasma membrane. Nonpolar, hydrophobic, lipid-soluble substances such as oxygen, nitric oxide, alcohol, and steroids diffuse through the phospholipid regions of a plasma membrane. Water and small charged, hydrophilic solutes such as electrolytes do not mix with lipids, but diffuse primarily through channel proteins in the membrane. Cells can adjust their permeability to such a substance by adding channel proteins to the membrane or taking them away. Kidney tubules, for example, do this as a way of controlling the amount of water eliminated from the body.

Osmosis

Osmosis[14] (oz-MO-sis) is the diffusion of water through a selectively permeable membrane, from the "more watery" to the "less watery" side. Cells exchange a tremendous amount of water by osmosis. For example, red blood cells pass 100 times their own volume in water through the plasma membrane *every second.* Water moves through plasma membranes by way of channel proteins, especially those called **aquaporins.** Cells can regulate the rate of osmosis by adding aquaporins to the plasma membrane or removing them. Certain cells of the kidneys, for example, install or take away aquaporins to regulate the rate of water loss from the body in the urine.

It is important to note that a solution with a high solute concentration has a low water concentration, and vice versa, since solutes take up some of the space that would otherwise be occupied by water molecules. Therefore, the direction of osmosis will be from a more dilute solution (where there is more water) to a more concentrated one (where there is less water). In figure 3.15*a,* for example, we see a chamber divided by a selectively permeable membrane. Side A contains a solution of large particles that cannot pass through the membrane pores—a *nonpermeating* solute such as albumen (egg white protein). Side B contains distilled water. Since albumen takes up some of the space on side A, water is more concentrated in B than in A, and it diffuses down its concentration gradient from B to A (fig. 3.15*b*). This is because more water molecules encounter the membrane per second on side B than they do on side A, where water is less abundant, and many of those that encounter the membrane pass through it.

Under these conditions, the water level on side B would fall and the level on side A would rise. It might seem as if this would go on indefinitely until side B dried up. This would not happen, however, because as water accumulated on side A, it would become heavier and exert more hydrostatic pressure on that side of the membrane. This would cause some filtration of water from side A back to B. At some point, the rate of filtration would equal the rate of osmosis, water would pass through the membrane equally in both directions, and net osmosis would slow down and stop. At this point, an equilibrium (balance between opposing forces) would exist. The hydrostatic pressure on side A that would stop osmosis is called **osmotic pressure.** The more solute there is on side A, the greater its osmotic pressure will be.

Think About It

If the albumen concentration on side A were half what it was in the original experiment, would the fluid on that side reach a higher or lower level than before? Explain.

The equilibrium between osmosis and filtration will be an important consideration as we study fluid exchange through blood capillaries in chapter 20. Blood plasma also contains albumins. In the preceding discussion, side A is analogous to the bloodstream and side B is analogous to the tissue fluid surrounding the capillaries (although tissue fluid is not distilled water). Water

---

[14] *osm* = push, thrust + *osis* = condition, process

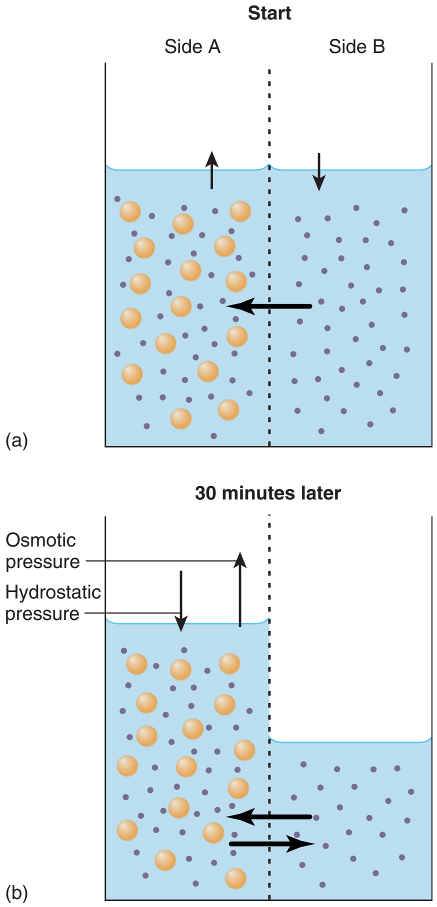


Figure 3.15 **Osmosis.** The *dashed line* represents a selectively permeable membrane dividing the chamber in half. The large particles on side A represent any solute, such as albumen, too large to pass through the membrane. The small particles are water molecules. (*a*) Water diffuses from side B, where it is relatively concentrated, to side A, where it is less concentrated. Fluid level rises in side A and falls in side B. (*b*) Net diffusion stops when the weight (hydrostatic pressure) of the fluid in side A balances the osmotic pressure. At this point, water passes at equal rates from A to B by filtration and from B to A by osmosis. The two processes are then in equilibrium.

leaves the capillaries by filtration, but this is approximately balanced by water moving back into the capillaries by osmosis.

Osmolarity and Tonicity

The osmotic concentration of body fluids has such a great effect on cellular function that it is important to understand the units in which it is measured. One **osmole** is 1 mole of dissolved particles. If a solute does not ionize in water, then 1 mole of the solute yields 1 osmole (osm) of dissolved particles. A solution of 1 molar (1 M) glucose, for example, is also 1 osm/L. If a solute does ionize, it yields two or more dissolved particles in solution. A 1 M solution of NaCl, for example, contains 1 mole of sodium ions and 1 mole of chloride ions per liter. Both ions affect osmosis and must be separately counted in a measure of osmotic concentration. Thus, 1 M NaCl = 2 osm/L. Calcium chloride ($CaCl_2$) would yield three ions if it dissociated completely (one Ca^{2+} and two Cl^-), so 1 M $CaCl_2$ = 3 osm/L.

Osmolality is the number of osmoles of solute *per kilogram of water,* and **osmolarity** is the number of osmoles *per liter of solution.* Most clinical calculations are based on osmolarity, since it is easier to measure the volume of a solution than the weight of water it contains. At the concentrations of human body fluids, there is less than 1% difference between osmolality and osmolarity, and the two terms are nearly interchangeable. All body fluids and many clinical solutions are mixtures of many chemicals. The osmolarity of such a solution is the total osmotic concentration of all of its dissolved particles.

A concentration of 1 osm/L is substantially higher than we find in most body fluids, so physiological concentrations are usually expressed in terms of **milliosmoles per liter** (mOsm/L) (1 mOsm/L = 10^{-3} osm/L). Blood plasma, tissue fluid, and intracellular fluid measure about 300 mOsm/L.

Tonicity is the ability of a solution to affect the fluid volume and pressure in a cell. If a solute cannot pass through a plasma membrane, but remains more concentrated on one side of the membrane than on the other, it causes osmosis. A **hypotonic**[15] solution has a lower concentration of nonpermeating solutes than the intracellular fluid (ICF). Cells in a hypotonic solution absorb water, swell, and may burst (*lyse*) (fig. 3.16*a*). Distilled water is the extreme example; given to a person intravenously, it would lyse the blood cells. A **hypertonic**[16] solution is one with a higher concentration of nonpermeating solutes than the ICF. It causes cells to lose water and shrivel (*crenate*) (fig. 3.16*c*). Such cells may die of torn membranes and cytoplasmic loss. In **isotonic**[17] solutions, the total concentration of nonpermeating solutes is the same as in the ICF—hence, isotonic solutions cause no change in cell volume or shape (fig. 3.16*b*).

It is essential for cells to be in a state of osmotic equilibrium with the fluid around them, and this requires that the extracellular fluid (ECF) have the same concentration of nonpermeating solutes as the ICF. Intravenous fluids given to patients are usually isotonic solutions, but hypertonic or hypotonic fluids are given for special purposes. A 0.9% solution of NaCl, called *normal saline,* is isotonic to human blood cells.

It is important to note that osmolarity and tonicity are not the same. Urea, for example, is a small organic molecule

---

[15] *hypo* = less + *ton* = tension
[16] *hyper* = more + *ton* = tension
[17] *iso* = equal + *ton* = tension

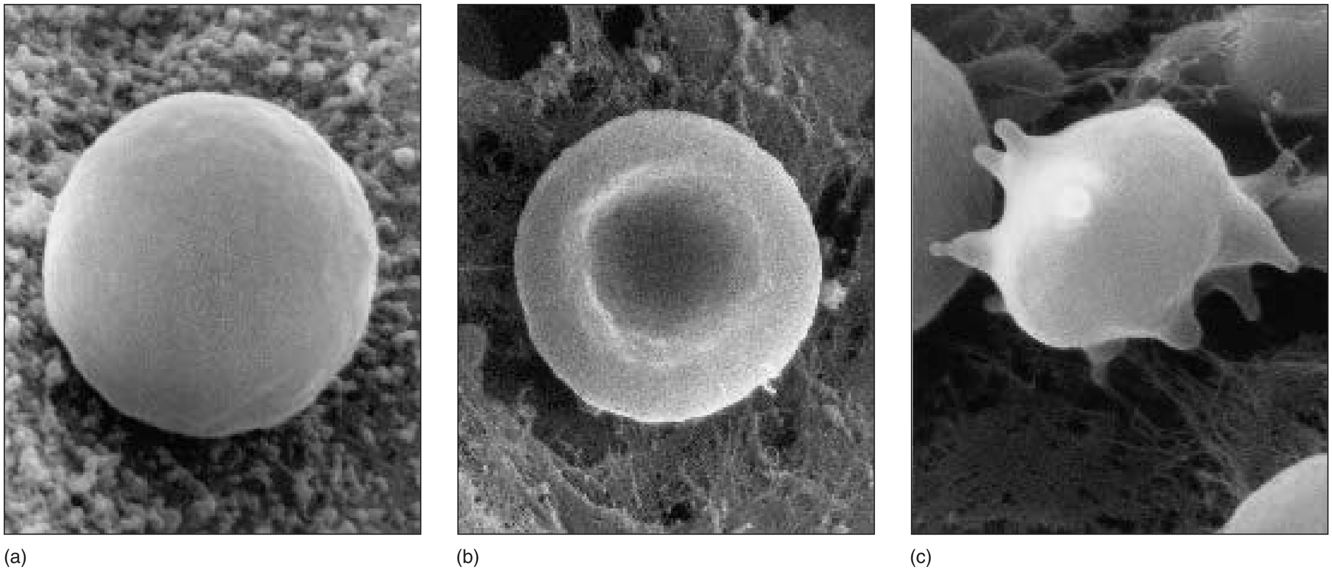


Figure 3.16 **Effects of Tonicity on Red Blood Cells (RBCs).** (*a*) In a hypotonic medium such as distilled water, RBCs absorb water, swell, and may burst. (*b*) In an isotonic medium such as 0.9% NaCl, RBCs gain and lose water at equal rates and maintain their normal, concave disc shape. (*c*) In a hypertonic medium such as 2% NaCl, RBCs lose more water than they gain and become shrunken and spiky (crenated).

that easily penetrates plasma membranes. If cells are placed in 300 mOsm/L urea, urea diffuses into them (down its concentration gradient), water follows by osmosis, and the cells swell and burst. Thus, 300 mOsm/L urea is not isotonic to the cells. Sodium chloride, by contrast, penetrates plasma membranes poorly. In 300 mOsm/L NaCl, there is little change in cell volume; this solution is isotonic to cells.

Carrier-Mediated Transport

The processes of membrane transport described up to this point do not necessarily require a cell membrane; they can occur just as well through artificial membranes. We now, however, come to processes for which a cell membrane is essential, because they employ transport proteins to get through the membrane. Thus, the next two processes are cases of **carrier-mediated transport.**

The carriers act like enzymes in some ways: The solute is a ligand that binds to a specific receptor site on the carrier, like a substrate binding to the active site of an enzyme. The carrier exhibits **specificity** for a certain ligand, just as an enzyme does for its substrate. A glucose carrier, for example, cannot transport fructose. Carriers also exhibit **saturation;** as the solute concentration rises, its rate of transport through a membrane increases, but only up to a point. When every carrier is occupied, adding more solute cannot make the process go any faster. The carriers are saturated—no more are available to handle the increased demand, and transport levels off at a rate called the **transport maximum (T_m)** (fig. 3.17). As we'll see later in the book, the transport maximum explains why glucose appears in the urine of people with diabetes mellitus. An important difference between a membrane carrier and an enzyme is that carriers do not chemically change their ligands; they simply pick them up on one side of the membrane and release them, unchanged, on the other.

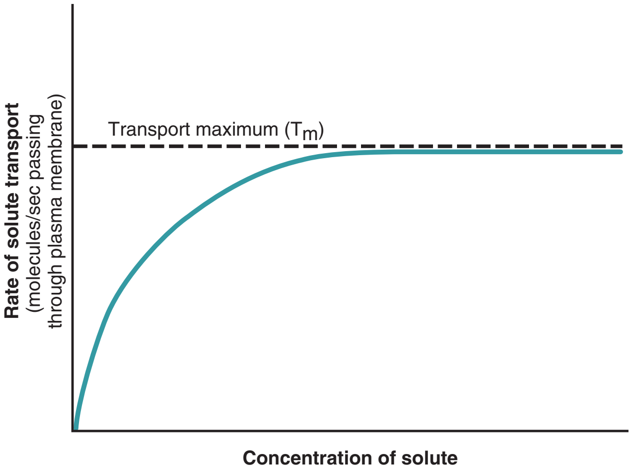


Figure 3.17 **Saturation of a Membrane Carrier.** Up to a point, increasing the solute concentration increases the rate of transport through a membrane. At the transport maximum (T_m), however, all carrier proteins are busy and cannot transport the solute any faster, even if more solute is added.

There are three kinds of carriers: uniports, symports, and antiports. A **uniport**[18] carries only one solute at a time. For example, most cells pump out calcium by means of a uniport, maintaining a low intracellular calcium concentration so that calcium salts don't crystallize in their cytoplasm. A **symport**[19] carries two or more solutes through a membrane simultaneously in the same direction; this process is called **cotransport.**[20] As an example, absorptive cells of the small intestine and kidneys take up sodium and glucose simultaneously by means of a symport. An **antiport**[21] carries two or more solutes in opposite directions; this process is called **countertransport.** Cells everywhere have an antiport called the *sodium-potassium pump* that continually removes Na^+ from the cell and brings in K^+.

These carriers employ two mechanisms of transport called facilitated diffusion and active transport. (Any carrier type—uniport, symport, or antiport—can use either of these transport mechanisms.) **Facilitated**[22] **diffusion** is the carrier-mediated transport of a solute through a membrane *down its concentration gradient.* It is a passive transport process; that is, it does not consume ATP. It transports solutes such as glucose that cannot pass through the membrane unaided. The solute attaches to a binding site on the carrier, then the carrier changes conformation and releases the solute on the other side of the membrane (fig. 3.18).

Active transport is the carrier-mediated transport of a solute through a membrane *up its concentration gradient,* using energy provided by ATP. The calcium pumps mentioned previously use active transport. Even though Ca^{2+} is already more concentrated in the ECF than within the cell, these carriers pump still more of it out of the cell. Active transport also enables cells to absorb amino acids that are already more concentrated in the cytoplasm than in the ECF.

A prominent example of active transport is the **sodium-potassium (Na^+-K^+) pump,** also known as *Na^+-K^+ ATPase* because the carrier is an enzyme that hydrolyzes ATP. The Na^+-K^+ pump binds three Na^+ simultaneously on the cytoplasmic side of the membrane, releases these to the ECF, binds two K^+ simultaneously from the ECF, and releases these into the cell (fig. 3.19). Each cycle of the pump consumes one ATP and exchanges three Na^+ for two K^+. This keeps the K^+ concentration higher and the Na^+ concentration lower within the cell than in the ECF. These ions continually leak through the membrane, and the Na^+-K^+ pump compensates like bailing out a leaky boat.

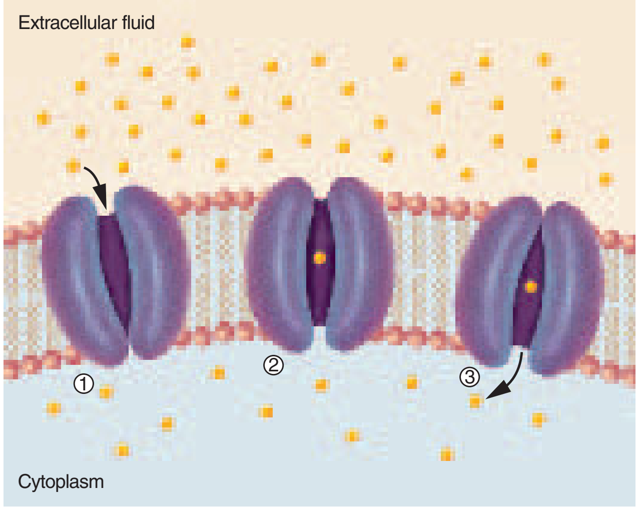


Figure 3.18 **Facilitated Diffusion.** (*1*) A solute particle enters the channel of a membrane protein (carrier). (*2*) The solute binds to a receptor site on the carrier and the carrier changes conformation. (*3*) The carrier releases the solute on the other side of the membrane. Note that the solute moves down its concentration gradient.

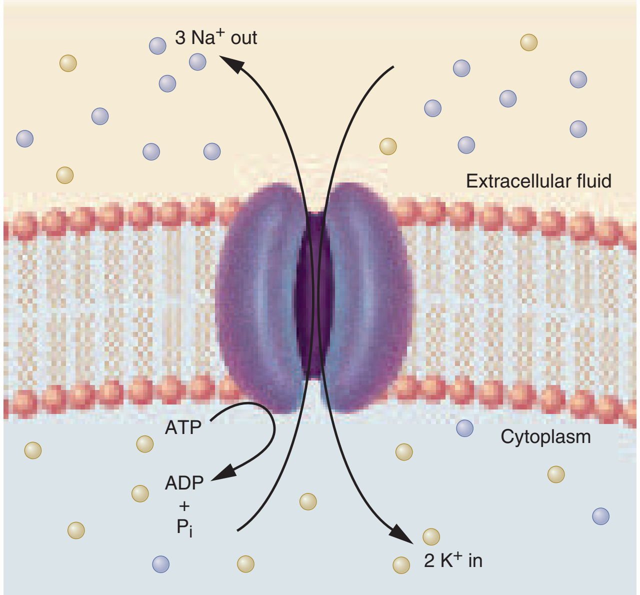


Figure 3.19 **The Sodium-Potassium Pump (Na^+-K^+ ATPase).** In each cycle of action, this membrane carrier removes three sodium ions from the cell, brings two potassium ions into the cell, and hydrolyzes one molecule of ATP.

Why would the Na^+-K^+ pump, but not osmosis, cease to function after a cell dies?

---

[18] *uni* = one + *port* = carry
[19] *sym* = together + *port* = carry
[20] *co* = together + *trans* = across + *port* = carry
[21] *anti* = opposite + *port* = carry
[22] *facil* = easy

Lest you question the importance of the Na$^+$-K$^+$ pump, about half of the calories you consume each day are used for this alone. Beyond compensating for a leaky plasma membrane, the Na$^+$-K$^+$pump has at least four functions:

1. **Regulation of cell volume.** Certain anions are confined to the cell and cannot penetrate the plasma membrane. These "fixed anions," such as proteins and phosphates, attract and retain cations. If there were nothing to correct for it, the retention of these ions would cause osmotic swelling and possibly lysis of the cell. Cellular swelling, however, stimulates the Na$^+$-K$^+$ pumps. Since each cycle of the pump removes one ion more than it brings in, the pumps are part of a negative feedback loop that reduces ion concentration, osmolarity, and cellular swelling.
2. **Secondary active transport.** The Na$^+$-K$^+$ pump maintains a steep concentration gradient of Na$^+$ and K$^+$ between one side of the membrane and the other. Like water behind a dam that can be tapped to generate electricity, this gradient has a high potential energy that can drive other processes. Since Na$^+$ has a high concentration outside the cell, it tends to diffuse back in. Some cells exploit this to move other solutes into the cell. In kidney tubules, for example, the cells have Na$^+$-K$^+$ pumps in the basal membrane that remove Na$^+$ from the cytoplasm and maintain a low intracellular Na$^+$ concentration. In the apical membrane, the cells have a facilitated diffusion carrier, the **sodium-glucose transport protein (SGLT),** which simultaneously binds Na$^+$ and glucose and carries both into the cell at once (fig. 3.20). By exploiting the tendency of Na$^+$ to diffuse down its concentration gradient into these cells, the SGLT absorbs glucose and prevents it from being wasted in the urine. The SGLT in itself does not consume ATP, but it does depend on the ATP-consuming Na$^+$-K$^+$ pumps at the base of the cell. We say that glucose is absorbed by *secondary active transport,* as opposed to the *primary active transport* carried out by the Na$^+$-K$^+$ pump.
3. **Heat production.** When the weather turns chilly, we not only turn up the furnace in our home but also the "furnace" in our body. Thyroid hormone stimulates cells to produce more Na$^+$-K$^+$ pumps. As these pumps consume ATP, they release heat, compensating for the body heat we lose to the cold air around us.
4. **Maintenance of a membrane potential.** All living cells have an electrical charge difference called the *resting membrane potential* across the plasma membrane. Like the two poles of a battery, the inside of the membrane is negatively charged and the outside is positively charged. This difference stems from the unequal distribution of ions on the two sides of the membrane, maintained by the Na$^+$-K$^+$ pump. The membrane potential is essential to the function of nerve and muscle cells, as we will study in later chapters.

Think About It

An important characteristic of proteins is their ability to change conformation in response to the binding or dissociation of a ligand (see chapter 2). Explain how this characteristic is essential to carrier-mediated transport.

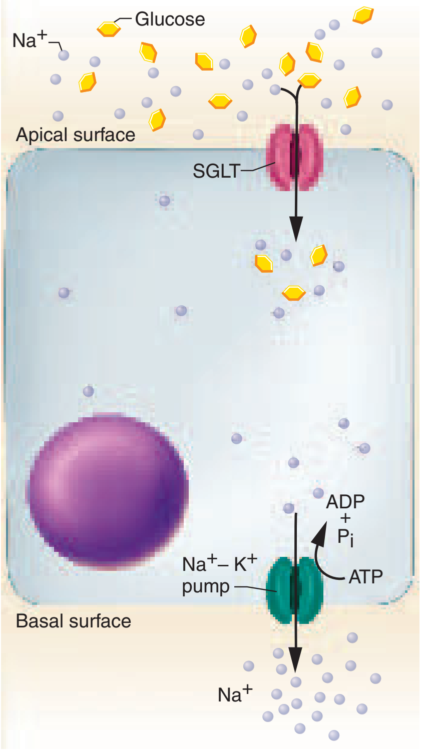


Figure 3.20 **Secondary Active Transport.** At the basal surface of the cell, an Na$^+$-K$^+$ pump removes sodium ions from the cytoplasm, maintaining a low sodium concentration within the cell. At the apical surface, sodium enters the cell by facilitated diffusion, following its concentration gradient. It can gain entry to the cell only by binding to a carrier, the sodium-glucose transport protein (SGLT), which simultaneously binds and transports glucose. The SGLT does not consume ATP, but does depend on the ATP-consuming pump at the base of the cell.

Vesicular Transport

So far, we have considered processes that move from one to a few ions or molecules through the plasma membrane at a time. **Vesicular transport** processes, by contrast, move large particles, droplets of fluid, or numerous molecules at once through the membrane, contained in bubblelike *vesicles* of membrane. Vesicular processes that bring matter into a cell are called **endocytosis**[23] (EN-doe-sy-TOE-sis) and those that release material from a cell are called **exocytosis**[24] (EC-so-sy-TOE-sis).

There are two basic forms of endocytosis: phagocytosis and pinocytosis. **Phagocytosis**[25] (FAG-oh-sy-TOE-sis), or "cell eating," is the process of engulfing particles such as bacteria, dust, and cellular debris—particles large enough to be seen with a microscope. Neutrophils (a class of white blood cells), for example, protect the body from infection by phagocytizing and killing bacteria. A neutrophil spends most of its life crawling about in the connective tissues by means of blunt footlike extensions called **pseudopods**[26] (SOO-doe-pods). When a neutrophil encounters a bacterium, it surrounds it with its pseudopods and traps it in a **phagosome**[27]—a vesicle in the cytoplasm surrounded by a unit membrane (fig. 3.21). A lysosome merges with the phagosome, converting it to a *phagolysosome,* and contributes enzymes that destroy the invader. Several other kinds of phagocytic cells are described in chapter 21. In general, phagocytosis is a way of keeping the tissues free of debris and infectious microorganisms. Some cells called *macrophages* (literally "big eaters") phagocytize the equivalent of 25% of their own volume per hour.

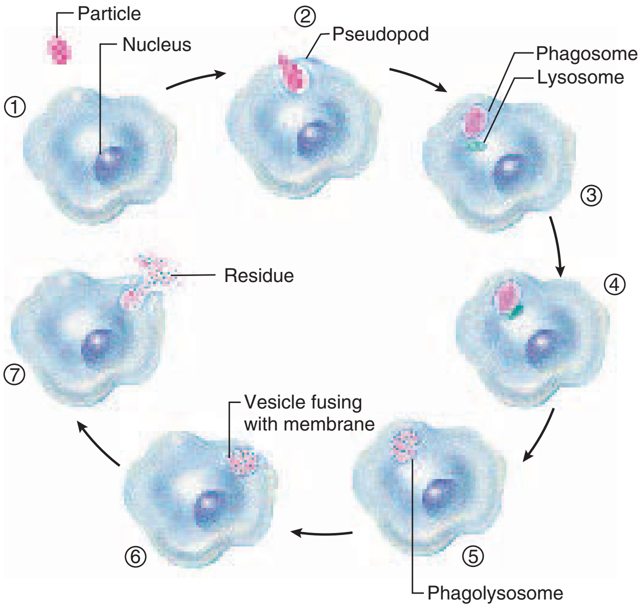


Figure 3.21 **Phagocytosis, Intracellular Digestion, and Exocytosis.** (*1*) A phagocytic cell encounters a particle of foreign matter. (*2*) The cell surrounds the particle with its pseudopods. (*3*) The particle is phagocytized and becomes incorporated into a phagosome. (*4*) A lysosome fuses with the phagosome and forms a phagolysosome. (*5*) Enzymes from the lysosome digest the foreign matter. (*6*) The phagolysosome fuses with the plasma membrane. (*7*) The indigestible residue is voided by exocytosis.

Pinocytosis[28] (PIN-oh-sy-TOE-sis), or "cell drinking," is the process of taking in droplets of ECF containing molecules of some use to the cell. While phagocytosis occurs in only a few specialized cells, pinocytosis occurs in all human cells. The process begins as the plasma membrane becomes dimpled, or caved in, at points. These pits soon separate from the surface membrane and form small membrane-bounded **pinocytotic vesicles** in the cytoplasm. The vesicles contain droplets of the ECF with whatever molecules happened to be there.

Receptor-mediated endocytosis[29] (fig. 3.22) is a more selective form of either phagocytosis or pinocytosis. It enables a cell to take in specific molecules from the ECF with a minimum of unnecessary fluid. Particles in the ECF bind to specific receptors on the plasma membrane. The receptors then cluster together and the membrane sinks in at this point, creating a pit coated with a peripheral membrane protein called *clathrin.*[30] The pit soon pinches off to form a *clathrin-coated vesicle* in the cytoplasm. Clathrin may serve as an "address label" on the coated vesicle that directs it to an appropriate destination in the cell, or it may inform other structures in the cell what to do with the vesicle.

One example of receptor-mediated endocytosis is the uptake of *low-density lipoproteins (LDLs)*—protein-coated droplets of cholesterol and other lipids in the blood (see chapter 26). The thin endothelial cells that line our blood vessels have LDL receptors on their surfaces and absorb LDLs in clathrin-coated vesicles. Inside the cell, the LDL is freed from the vesicle and metabolized, and the membrane with its receptors is recycled to the cell surface. Much of what we know about receptor-mediated endocytosis comes from studies of a hereditary disease called *familial hypercholesterolemia,* which dramatically illustrates the significance of this process to our cardiovascular health (see insight 3.3).

---

[23] *endo* = into + *cyt* = cell + *osis* = process
[24] *exo* = out of + *cyt* = cell + *osis* = process
[25] *phago* = eating + *cyt* = cell + *osis* = process
[26] *pseudo* = false + *pod* = foot
[27] *phago* = eating + *some* = body
[28] *pino* = drinking + *cyt* = cell + *osis* = process
[29] *endo* = into + *cyt* = cell + *osis* = process
[30] *clathr* = lattice + *in* = protein

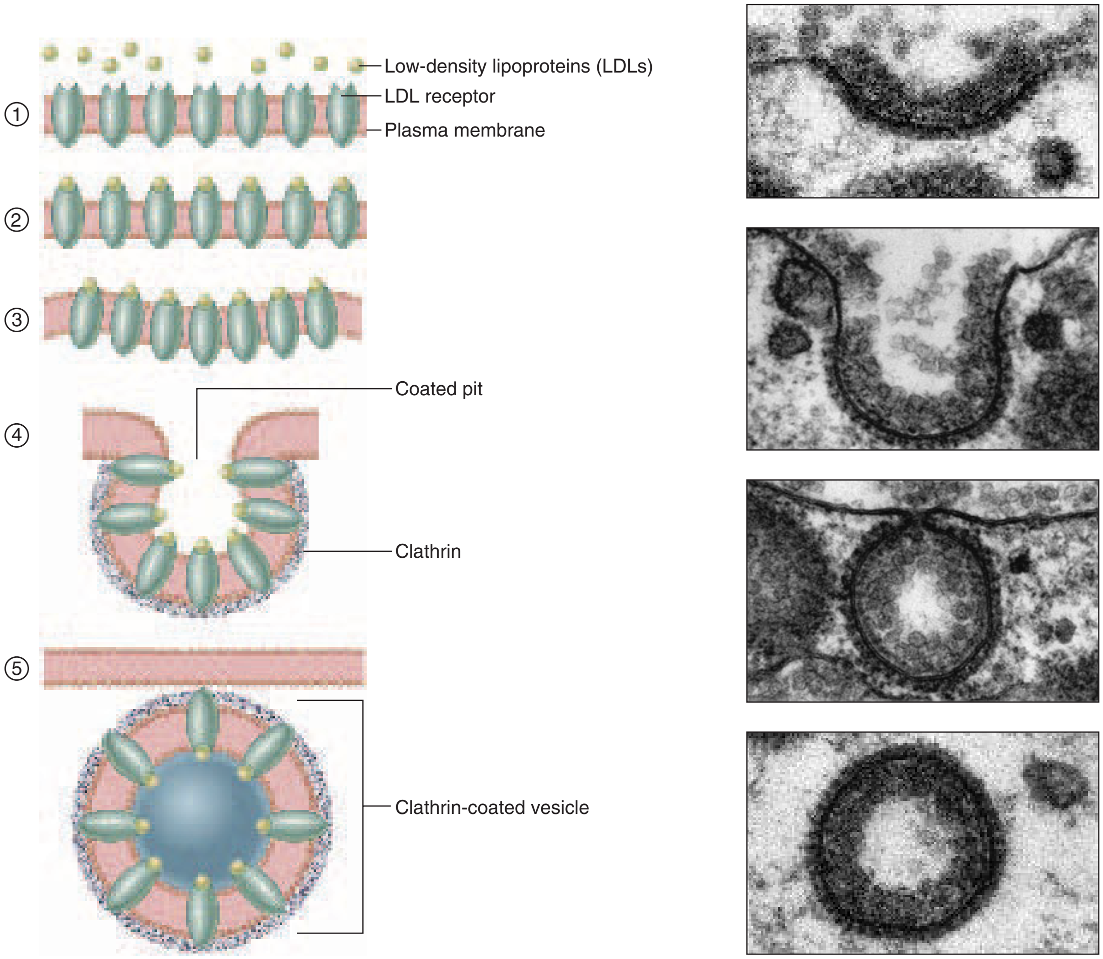


Figure 3.22 **Receptor-Mediated Endocytosis.** (*1*) Low-density lipoproteins (LDLs) are suspended in the blood. The endothelial cells of blood vessels have LDL receptor proteins in their plasma membranes. (*2*) LDLs bind to their receptors. (*3*) LDL-bearing receptors become clustered together. (*4*) The plasma membrane sinks inward at that point and forms a clathrin-coated pit. (*5*) The pit separates from the membrane and becomes a clathrin-coated vesicle containing concentrated LDLs. The electron micrographs show stages 3 to 5 of this process.

Insight 3.3 Clinical Application

Familial Hypercholesterolemia

The significance of LDL receptors and receptor-mediated endocytosis is illustrated by a hereditary disease called *familial hypercholesterolemia.*[31] People with this disease have an abnormally low number of LDL receptors. Their cells therefore absorb less cholesterol than normal, and the cholesterol remains in the blood. Their blood cholesterol levels may be as high as 1,200 mg/dL, compared to a normal level of about 200 mg/dL. People who inherit the gene from both parents typically have heart attacks before the age of 20 (sometimes even in infancy) and seldom survive beyond the age of 30.

Endothelial cells also imbibe insulin by receptor-mediated endocytosis. Insulin is too large a molecule to pass through channels in the plasma membrane, yet it must somehow get out of the blood and reach the surrounding cells if it is to have any effect. Endothelial cells take up insulin by receptor-mediated endocytosis, transport the vesicles across the cell, and release the insulin on the other side, where tissue cells await it. Such transport of a substance across a cell (capture on one side and release on the other side) is called **transcytosis**[32] (fig. 3.23). Receptor-mediated endocytosis is not always to our benefit; hepatitis, polio, and AIDS viruses "trick" our cells into engulfing them by receptor-mediated endocytosis.

---

[31] *familial* = running in the family; *hyper* = above normal + cholesterol + *emia* = blood condition

[32] *trans* = across + *cyt* = cell + *osis* = process

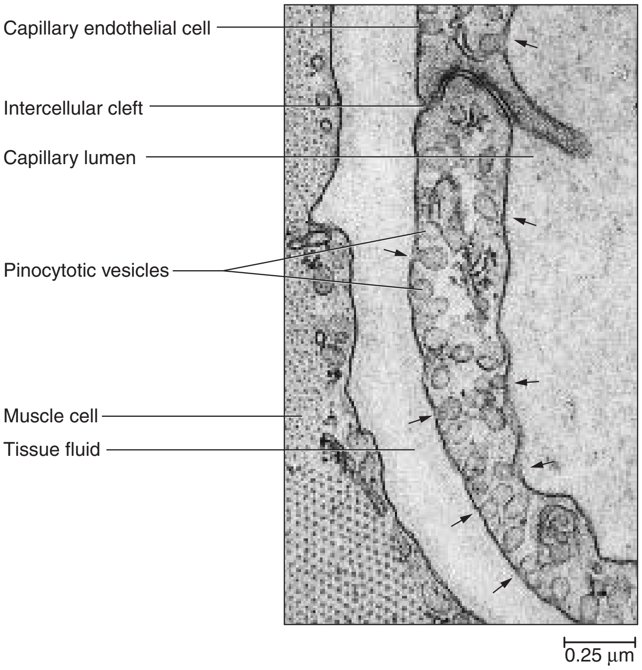


Figure 3.23 **Transcytosis.** An endothelial cell of a capillary imbibes droplets of blood plasma at sites indicated by *arrows* along the *right*. This forms pinocytotic vesicles, which the cell transports to the other side. Here, it releases the contents by exocytosis at sites indicated by *arrows* along the *left* side of the cell. This process is especially active in muscle capillaries and transfers a significant amount of blood albumin into the tissue fluid.

Why isn't transcytosis listed as a separate means of membrane transport, in addition to pinocytosis and the others?

Exocytosis (fig. 3.24) is the process of discharging material from a cell. It occurs, for example, when endothelial cells release insulin to the tissue fluid, breast cells secrete milk, gland cells release hormones, and sperm cells release enzymes for penetrating an egg. It bears a superficial resemblance to endocytosis in reverse. A secretory vesicle in the cell migrates to the surface and "docks" on peripheral proteins of the plasma membrane. These proteins pull the membrane inward and create a dimple that eventually fuses with the vesicle and allows it to release its contents.

The question might occur to you, If endocytosis continually takes away bits of plasma membrane to form intracellular vesicles, why doesn't the membrane grow smaller and smaller? Another purpose of exocytosis, however, is to replace plasma membrane that has been removed by endocytosis or become damaged or worn out. Plasma membrane is continually recycled from the cell surface into the cytoplasm and back to the surface.

Table 3.3 summarizes the mechanisms of transport we have discussed.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

13. What is the importance of filtration to human physiology?
14. What does it mean to say a solute moves down its concentration gradient?
15. How does osmosis help to maintain blood volume?
16. Define *osmolarity* and *tonicity,* and explain the difference between them.

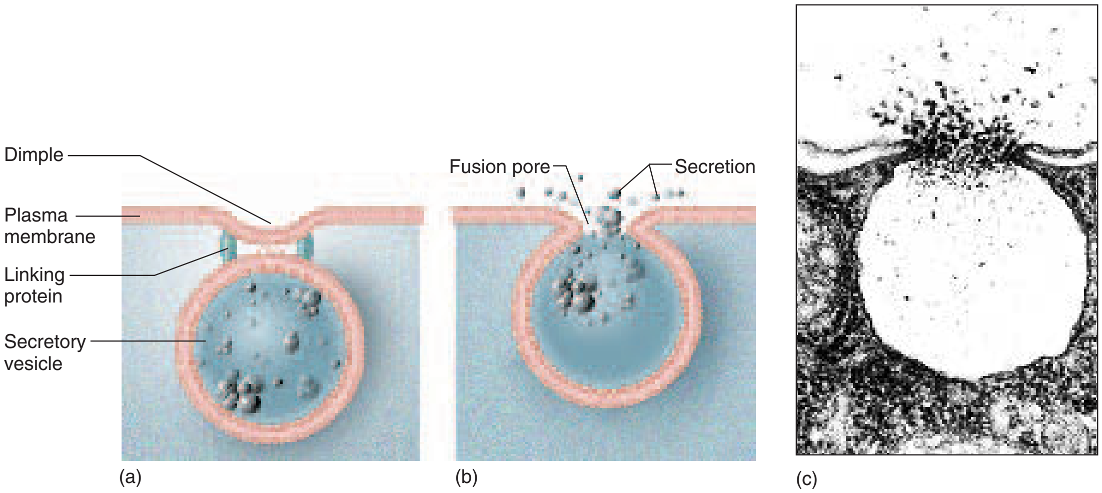


Figure 3.24 **Exocytosis.** (*a*) A secretory vesicle approaches the plasma membrane and docks on it by means of linking proteins. The plasma membrane caves in at that point to meet the vesicle. (*b*) The plasma membrane and vesicle unite to form a fusion pore through which the vesicle contents are released. (*c*) Electron micrograph of exocytosis.

Table 3.3 Methods of Membrane Transport

Transport Without Carriers	Movement of material without the aid of carrier proteins
Filtration	Movement of water and solutes through a selectively permeable membrane as a result of hydrostatic pressure
Simple Diffusion	Diffusion of particles through water or air or through a living or artificial membrane, down their concentration gradient, without the aid of membrane carriers
Osmosis	Simple diffusion of water through a selectively permeable membrane
Carrier-Mediated Transport	Movement of material through a cell membrane with the aid of carrier proteins
Facilitated Diffusion	Transport of particles through a selectively permeable membrane, down their concentration gradient, by a carrier that does not directly consume ATP
Active Transport	Transport of particles through a selectively permeable membrane, up their concentration gradient, with the aid of a carrier that consumes ATP
Primary Active Transport	Direct transport of solute particles by an ATP-using membrane pump
Secondary Active Transport	Transport of solute particles by a carrier that does not in itself use ATP but depends on concentration gradients produced by primary active transport
Cotransport	Transport of two solutes simultaneously in the same direction through a membrane by either facilitated diffusion or active transport
Countertransport	Transport of two different solutes in opposite directions through a membrane by either facilitated diffusion or active transport
Uniport	A carrier that transports only one solute, using either facilitated diffusion or active transport
Symport	A carrier that performs cotransport
Antiport	A carrier that performs countertransport
Vesicular (Bulk) Transport	Movement of fluid and particles through a plasma membrane by way of vesicles of plasma membrane; consumes ATP
Endocytosis	Vesicular transport of particles into a cell
Phagocytosis	Process of engulfing large particles by means of pseudopods; “cell eating”
Pinocytosis	Process of imbibing droplets of extracellular fluid in which the plasma membrane sinks in and pinches off small vesicles containing droplets of fluid
Receptor-Mediated Endocytosis	Phagocytosis or pinocytosis in which specific solute particles bind to receptors on the plasma membrane, and are then taken into the cell in clathrin-coated vesicles with a minimal amount of fluid
Exocytosis	Process of eliminating material from a cell by means of a vesicle approaching the cell surface, fusing with the plasma membrane, and expelling its contents; used to release cell secretions, replace worn-out plasma membrane, and replace membrane that has been internalized by endocytosis

17. Define *hypotonic*, *isotonic*, and *hypertonic*, and explain why these concepts are important in clinical practice.
18. What do facilitated diffusion and active transport have in common? How are they different?
19. How does the Na^+-K^+ pump exchange sodium ions for potassium ions across the plasma membrane? What are some purposes served by this pump?
20. How does phagocytosis differ from pinocytosis?
21. Describe the process of exocytosis. What are some of its purposes?

The Cytoplasm

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- list the main organelles of a cell, describe their structure, and explain their functions;
- describe the cytoskeleton and its functions; and
- give some examples of cell inclusions and explain how inclusions differ from organelles.

We now probe more deeply into the cell to study the structures in the cytoplasm. These are classified into three groups—*organelles, cytoskeleton,* and *inclusions*—all embedded in the clear, gelatinous cytosol.

Organelles

Organelles are internal structures of a cell that carry out specialized metabolic tasks. Some are surrounded by one or two layers of unit membrane and are therefore referred to as *membranous organelles.* These are the nucleus, mitochondria, lysosomes, peroxisomes, endoplasmic reticulum, and Golgi complex. Organelles that are not surrounded by membranes include the ribosomes, centrosome, centrioles, and basal bodies.

The Nucleus

The **nucleus** is the largest organelle and usually the only one visible with the light microscope. It is usually spheroid to elliptical in shape and typically about 5 μm in diameter. Most cells have a single nucleus, but there are exceptions. Mature red blood cells have none; they are **anuclear.** A few cell types are **multinucleate**—having 2 to 50 nuclei—including some liver cells, skeletal muscle cells, and certain bone-dissolving and platelet-producing cells.

With the TEM, the nucleus can be distinguished by the *two* unit membranes surrounding it, which together form the **nuclear envelope** (fig. 3.25). The envelope is perforated with **nuclear pores,** about 30 to 100 nm in diameter, formed by a ring of proteins. These proteins regulate molecular traffic through the envelope and act like a rivet to hold the two unit membranes together. Hundreds of molecules pass through the nuclear pores every minute. Coming into the nucleus are raw materials for DNA and RNA synthesis, enzymes that are made in the cytoplasm but function in the nucleus, and hormones that activate certain genes. Going the other way, RNA is made in the nucleus but leaves to perform its job in the cytoplasm.

The material in the nucleus is called **nucleoplasm.** This includes **chromatin**[33] (CRO-muh-tin)—fine threadlike matter composed of DNA and protein—and one or more dark-staining masses called **nucleoli** (singular, *nucleolus*), where ribosomes are produced. The genetic function of the nucleus is described in chapter 4.

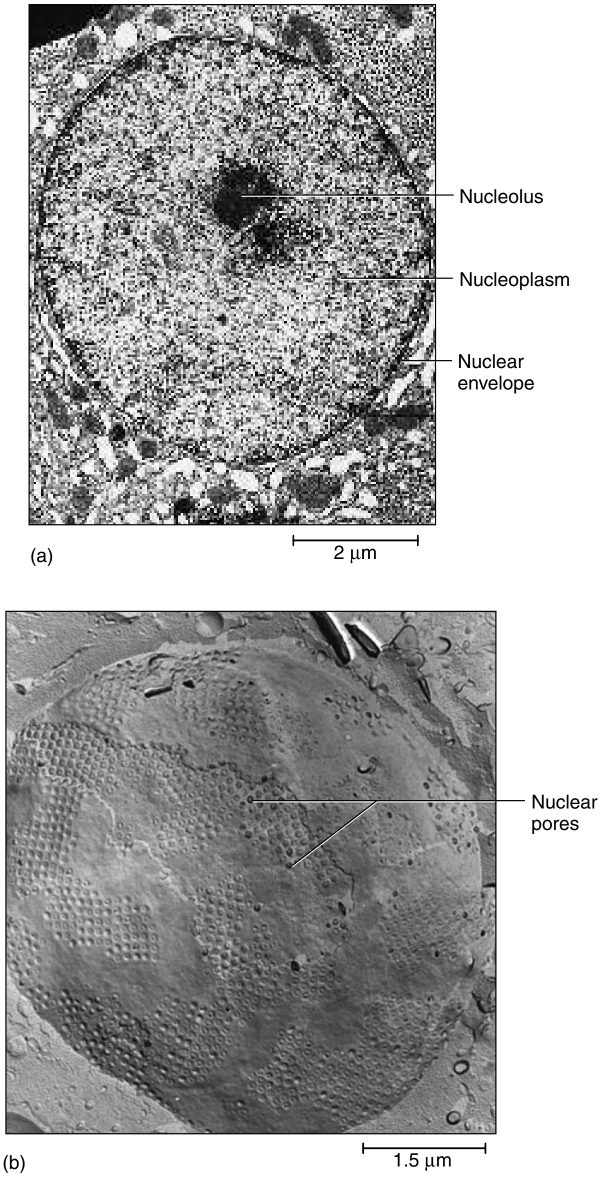


Figure 3.25 The nucleus. (*a*) TEM micrograph showing the nuclear envelope and internal structure. (*b*) TEM micrograph of the nuclear surface showing the high density of nuclear pores.
Why do these nuclear pores have to be larger in diameter than the channels in the cell's plasma membrane? (See table 3.1.)

Endoplasmic Reticulum

Endoplasmic reticulum (ER) literally means "little network within the cytoplasm." It is a system of interconnected channels called **cisternae**[34] (sis-TUR-nee) enclosed by a unit membrane (fig. 3.26). In areas called **rough endoplasmic reticulum,** the network is composed of parallel, flattened sacs covered with granules called *ribosomes.* The rough ER is continuous with the outer membrane of the nuclear envelope, and adjacent cisternae are often connected by perpendicular bridges. In areas called **smooth endoplasmic reticulum,** the membrane lacks ribosomes, the cisternae are more tubular in shape, and they branch

---

[33] *chromat* = color
[34] *cistern* = reservoir

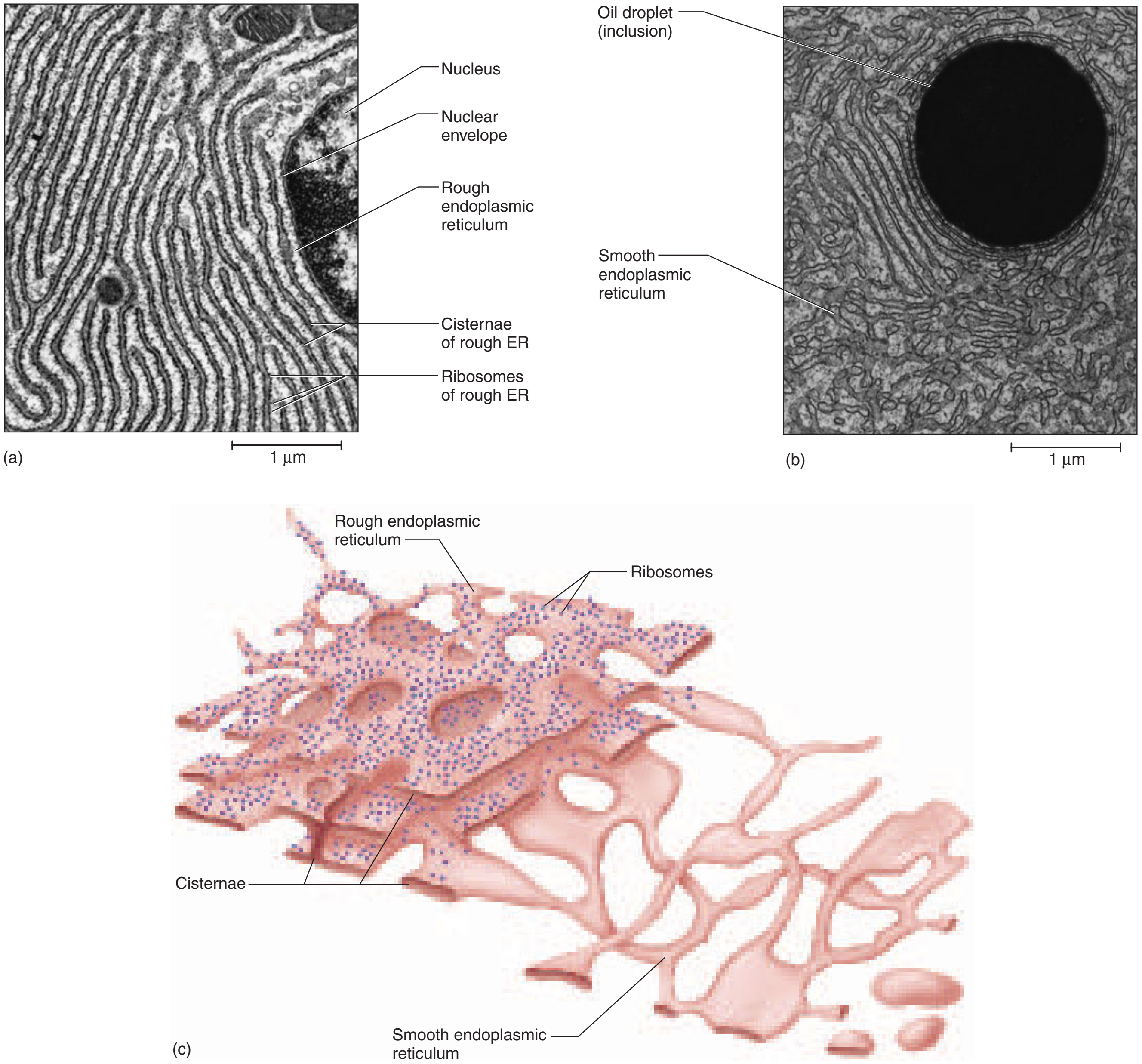

Nucleus
Nuclear envelope
Rough endoplasmic reticulum
Cisternae of rough ER
Ribosomes of rough ER
(a)
1 µm
Oil droplet (inclusion)
Smooth endoplasmic reticulum
(b)
1 µm
Rough endoplasmic reticulum
Ribosomes
Cisternae
Smooth endoplasmic reticulum
(c)

Figure 3.26 Endoplasmic Reticulum (ER). (*a*) Rough ER. (*b*) Smooth ER and an inclusion (oil droplet). (*c*) Structure of the endoplasmic reticulum, with rough and smooth regions.

Chapter 3

more extensively. The cisternae of the smooth ER are thought to be continuous with those of the rough ER, so the two are functionally different parts of the same network.

The ER synthesizes steroids and other lipids, detoxifies alcohol and other drugs, and manufactures all of the membranes of the cell. Rough ER produces the phospholipids and proteins of the plasma membrane, and synthesizes proteins that are either packaged in other organelles such as lysosomes or secreted from the cell. Rough ER is most abundant in cells that synthesize large amounts of protein, such as antibody-producing cells and cells of the digestive glands. This role is discussed further in chapter 4.

Most cells have only a scanty smooth ER, but it is relatively abundant in cells that engage extensively in detoxification, such as liver and kidney cells. Long-term abuse of alcohol, barbiturates, and other drugs leads to tolerance partly because the smooth ER proliferates and detoxifies the drugs more quickly. Smooth ER is also abundant in cells of the testes and ovaries that synthesize steroid hormones. Skeletal muscle and cardiac muscle contain extensive networks of smooth ER that store calcium and release it to trigger muscle contraction.

Ribosomes

Ribosomes are small granules of protein and RNA found in the nucleoli, in the cytosol, and on the outer surfaces of the rough ER and nuclear envelope. They "read" coded genetic messages (messenger RNA) and assemble amino acids into proteins specified by the code. This process is detailed in chapter 4.

Golgi Complex

The **Golgi**[35] (GOAL-jee) **complex** is a small system of cisternae that synthesize carbohydrates and put the finishing touches on protein and glycoprotein synthesis. The complex resembles a stack of pita bread. Typically, it consists of about six cisternae, slightly separated from each other; each cisterna is a flattened, slightly curved sac with swollen edges (fig. 3.27). The Golgi complex receives the newly synthesized proteins from the rough ER. It sorts them, cuts and splices some of them, adds carbohydrate moieties to some, and finally packages the proteins in membrane-bounded **Golgi vesicles.** These vesicles bud off

---

[35] Camillo Golgi (1843–1926), Italian histologist

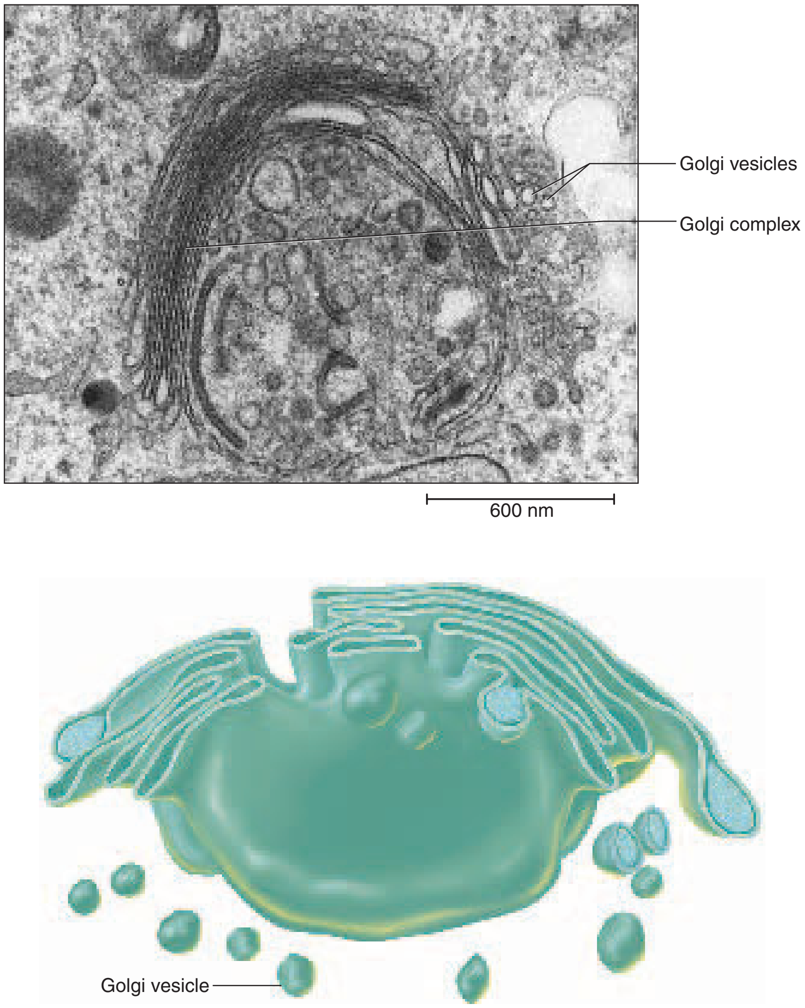


Figure 3.27 The Golgi Complex.

the swollen rim of a cisterna and are seen in abundance in the neighborhood of the Golgi complex. Some vesicles become *lysosomes,* the organelle discussed next; some migrate to the plasma membrane and fuse with it, contributing fresh protein and phospholipid to the membrane; and some become **secretory vesicles** that store a cell product, such as breast milk or digestive enzymes, for later release. The role of the Golgi complex in protein synthesis and secretion is detailed in chapter 4.

Lysosomes

A **lysosome**[36] (LY-so-some) (fig. 3.28*a*) is a package of enzymes bounded by a single unit membrane. Although often round or oval, lysosomes are extremely variable in shape. When viewed with the TEM, they often exhibit dark gray contents devoid of structure, but sometimes show crystals or parallel layers of protein. At least 50 lysosomal enzymes have been identified. They hydrolyze proteins, nucleic acids, complex carbohydrates, phospholipids, and other substrates. In the liver, lysosomes break down stored glycogen to release glucose into the bloodstream. White blood cells use their lysosomes to digest phagocytized bacteria. Lysosomes also digest and dispose of worn-out mitochondria and other organelles; this process is called **autophagy**[37] (aw-TOFF-uh-jee). Some cells are meant to do a certain job and then die. The uterus, for example, weighs about 900 g at full-term pregnancy and shrinks to 60 g within 5 or 6 weeks after birth. This shrinkage is due to **autolysis,**[38] the digestion of surplus cells by their own lysosomal enzymes. Such *programmed cell death* is further discussed in chapter 5.

Peroxisomes

Peroxisomes (fig. 3.28*b*) resemble lysosomes but contain different enzymes and are not produced by the Golgi complex. They occur in nearly all cells but are especially abundant in liver and kidney cells. Peroxisomes neutralize free radicals and detoxify alcohol and other drugs. They are named for the hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2) they produce in the course of detoxifying alcohol and killing bacteria. They break down excess H_2O_2 with an enzyme

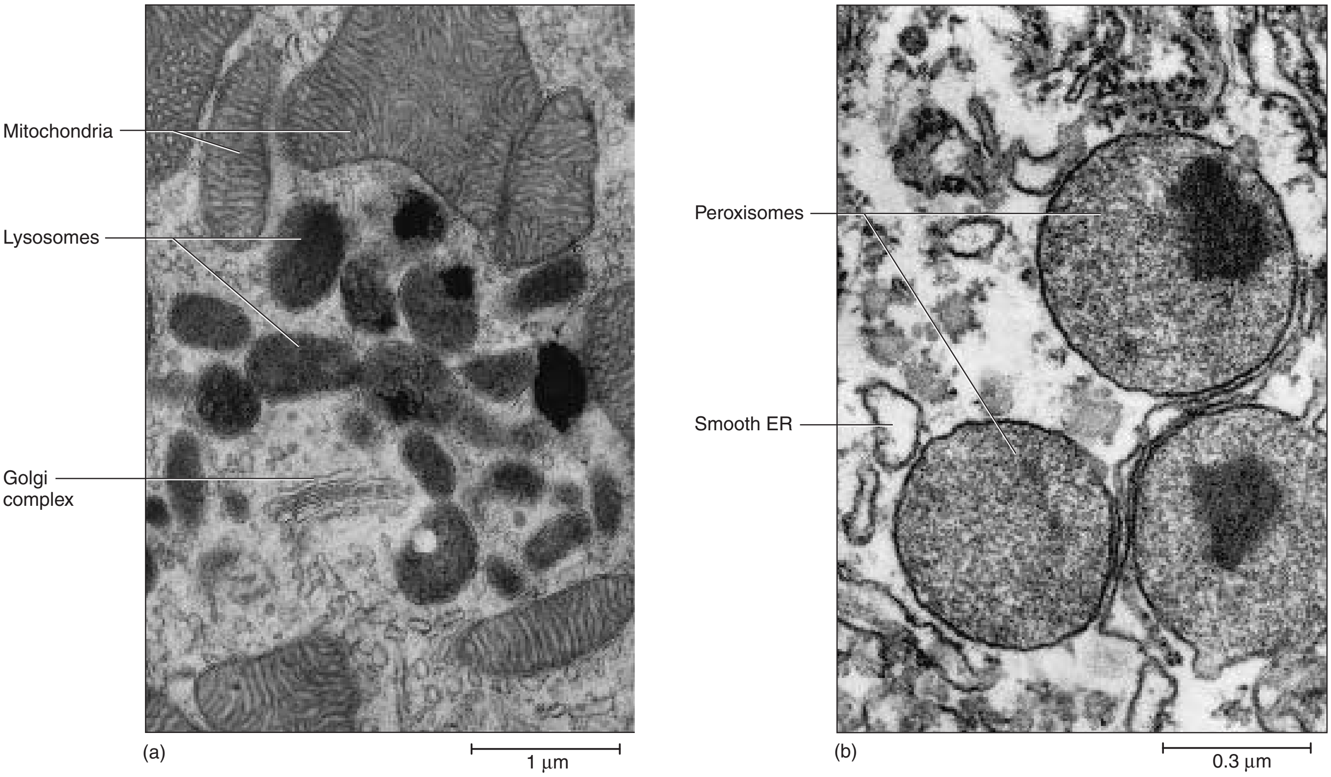


Figure 3.28 **Lysosomes and Peroxisomes.** (*a*) Lysosomes. (*b*) Peroxisomes.

---

[36] *lyso* = loosen, dissolve + *some* = body

[37] *auto* = self + *phagy* = eating

[38] *auto* = self + *lysis* = dissolving

called *catalase.* Peroxisomes also decompose fatty acids into two-carbon acetyl groups, which the mitochondria then use as an energy source for ATP synthesis.

Mitochondria

Mitochondria[39] (MY-toe-CON-dree-uh) (fig. 3.29) are organelles specialized for synthesizing ATP. They have a variety of shapes: spheroid, rod-shaped, bean-shaped, or threadlike. Like the nucleus, a mitochondrion is surrounded by a double unit membrane. The inner membrane usually has folds called **cristae**[40] (CRIS-tee), which project like shelves across the organelle. The space between the cristae, called the **matrix,** contains ribosomes, enzymes used in ATP synthesis, and a small, circular DNA molecule called *mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA).* Mitochondria are the "powerhouses" of the cell. Energy is not *made* here, but it is extracted from organic compounds and transferred to ATP, primarily by enzymes located on the cristae. The role of mitochondria in ATP synthesis is explained in detail in chapter 26, and some evolutionary and clinical aspects of mitochondria are discussed at the end of this chapter (see insight 3.4).

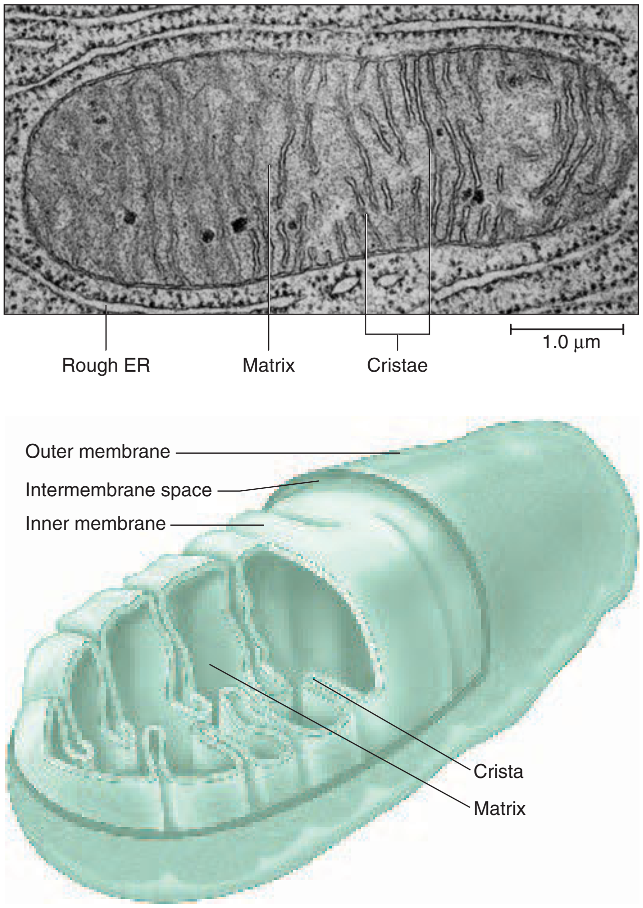


Figure 3.29 A Mitochondrion.

Centrioles

A **centriole** (SEN-tree-ole) is a short cylindrical assembly of microtubules, arranged in nine groups of three microtubules each (fig. 3.30). Two centrioles lie perpendicular to each other within a small clear area of cytoplasm called the **centrosome**[41] (see fig. 3.5). They play a role in cell division described in chapter 4. Each basal body of a flagellum or cilium is a single centriole oriented perpendicular to the plasma membrane. Basal bodies originate in a *centriolar organizing center* and migrate to the plasma membrane. Two microtubules of each triplet then elongate to form the nine pairs of peripheral microtubules of the axoneme. A cilium can grow to its full length in less than an hour.

The Cytoskeleton

The **cytoskeleton** is a collection of protein filaments and cylinders that determine the shape of a cell, lend it structural support, organize its contents, move substances through the cell, and contribute to movements of the cell as a whole. It can form a very dense supportive scaffold in the cytoplasm (fig. 3.31). It is connected to integral proteins of the plasma membrane, and they in turn are connected to protein fibers external to the cell, so there is a strong structural continuity from extracellular material to the cytoplasm. Cytoskeletal elements may even connect to chromosomes in the nucleus, enabling physical tension on a cell to move nuclear contents and mechanically stimulate genetic function.

The cytoskeleton is composed of *microfilaments, intermediate filaments,* and *microtubules.* **Microfilaments** are about 6 nm thick and are made of the protein *actin.* They form a network on the cytoplasmic side of the plasma membrane called the **membrane skeleton.** The phospholipids of the plasma membrane spread out over the membrane skeleton like butter on a slice of bread. It is thought that the phospholipids would break up into little droplets without this support. The roles of actin in supporting microvilli and producing cell movements were discussed earlier. In conjunction with another protein, *myosin,* microfilaments are also responsible for muscle contraction.

Intermediate filaments (8–10 nm in diameter) are thicker and stiffer than microfilaments. They resist stresses placed on a cell and participate in junctions that attach some cells to their neighbors. In epidermal cells, they are made of the tough protein *keratin* and occupy most of the cytoplasm.

---

[39] *mito* = thread + *chondr* = grain

[40] *crista* = crest

[41] *centro* = central + *some* = body

A **microtubule** (25 nm in diameter) is a cylinder made of 13 parallel strands called *protofilaments.* Each protofilament is a long chain of globular proteins called *tubulin* (fig. 3.32). Microtubules radiate from the centrosome and hold organelles in place, form bundles that maintain cell shape and rigidity, and act somewhat like railroad tracks to guide organelles and molecules to specific destinations in a cell. They form the axonemes of cilia and flagella and are responsible for their beating movements. They also form the mitotic spindle that guides chromosome movement during cell division. Microtubules are not permanent structures. They come and go moment by moment as tubulin molecules assemble into a tubule and then suddenly break apart again to be used somewhere else in the cell. The double and triple sets of microtubules in cilia, flagella, basal bodies, and centrioles, however, are more stable.

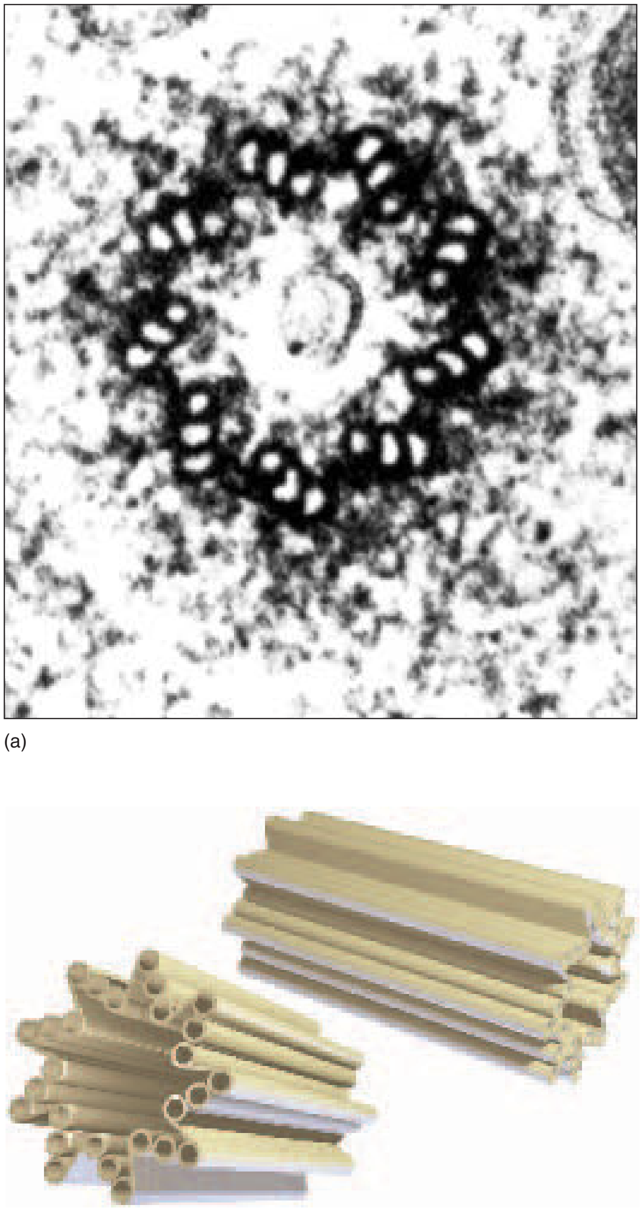


Figure 3.30 **Centrioles.** (*a*) Electron micrograph of a centriole as seen in cross section. (*b*) A pair of perpendicular centrioles.
How many microtubules does a centriole have?

Inclusions

Inclusions are of two kinds: stored cellular products such as glycogen granules, pigments, and fat droplets (see fig. 3.26*b*), and foreign bodies such as dust particles, viruses, and intracellular bacteria. Inclusions are never enclosed in a unit membrane, and unlike the organelles and cytoskeleton, they are not essential to cell survival.

The major features of a cell are summarized in table 3.4.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

22. Distinguish between organelles and inclusions. State two examples of each.
23. Briefly state how each of the following cell components can be recognized in electron micrographs: the nucleus, a mitochondrion, a lysosome, and a centriole. What is the primary function of each?
24. What three organelles are involved in protein synthesis?
25. In what ways do rough and smooth endoplasmic reticulum differ?
26. Define *centriole*, *microtubule*, *cytoskeleton*, and *axoneme.* How are these structures related to each other?

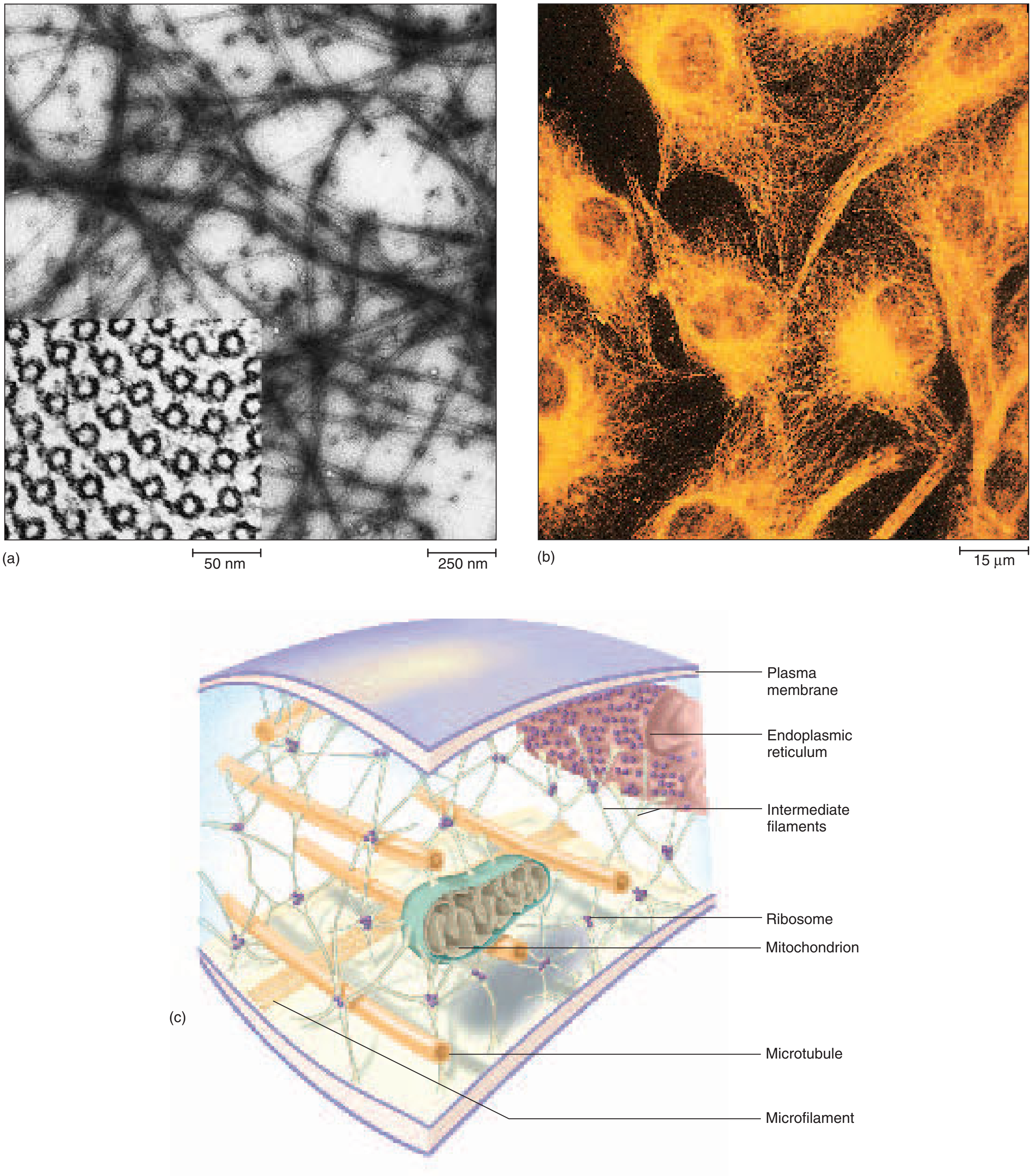

(a)
50 nm
250 nm
(b)
15 µm
(c)
Plasma membrane
Endoplasmic reticulum
Intermediate filaments
Ribosome
Mitochondrion
Microtubule
Microfilament

Figure 3.31 **The Cytoskeleton.** (*a*) Electron micrograph of a cell of the testis showing numerous microtubules in longitudinal section and cross section. (*b*) Fluorescent antibodies are used here to label the fibrous cytoskeleton of a cell and make it visible through a fluorescence microscope. (*c*) Diagram of the cytoskeleton.

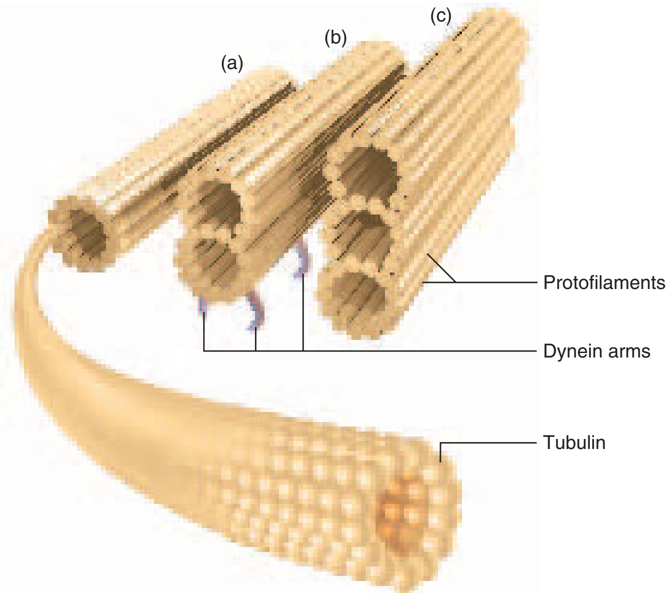


Figure 3.32 **Microtubules.** (*a*) A microtubule is composed of 13 protofilaments. Each protofilament is a spiral chain of globular proteins called tubulin. (*b*) One of the nine microtubule pairs that form the axonemes of cilia and flagella. (*c*) One of the nine microtubule triplets that form a centriole.

Table 3.4 Summary of Organelles and Other Cellular Structures

Structure	Appearance to TEM	Function
Plasma membrane (figs. 3.3 and 3.6)	Two dark lines at cell surface, separated by narrow light space	Prevents escape of cell contents; regulates exchange of materials between cytoplasm and extracellular fluid; involved in intercellular communication
Microvilli (figs. 3.10 and 3.11*a–b*)	Short, densely spaced, hairlike processes or scattered bumps on cell surface; interior featureless or with bundle of microfilaments	Increase absorptive surface area; some sensory roles (hearing, equilibrium, taste)
Cilia (figs. 3.11*c–e* and 3.12)	Long hairlike projections of apical cell surface; axoneme with 9 + 2 array of microtubules	Move substances along cell surface; some sensory roles (hearing, equilibrium, smell, vision)
Flagellum	Long, single, whiplike process with axoneme	Sperm motility
Nucleus (figs. 3.3 and 3.25)	Largest organelle in most cells, surrounded by double unit membrane with nuclear pores	Genetic control center of cell; directs protein synthesis
Rough ER (fig. 3.26*a*)	Extensive sheets of parallel unit membranes with ribosomes on outer surface	Protein synthesis and manufacture of cellular membranes
Smooth ER (fig. 3.26*b*)	Branching network of tubules with smooth surface (no ribosomes); usually broken into numerous small segments in TEM photos	Lipid synthesis, detoxification, calcium storage
Ribosomes (fig. 3.26*a*)	Small dark granules free in cytosol or on surface of rough ER	Interpret the genetic code and synthesize polypeptides
Golgi complex (fig. 3.27)	Several closely spaced, parallel cisternae with thick edges, usually near nucleus, often with many Golgi vesicles nearby	Receives and modifies newly synthesized polypeptides, synthesizes carbohydrates, adds carbohydrates to glycoproteins; packages cell products into Golgi vesicles
Golgi vesicles (fig. 3.27)	Round to irregular sacs near Golgi complex, usually with light, featureless contents	Become secretory vesicles and carry cell products to apical surface for exocytosis, or become lysosomes

(continued)

Table 3.4 Summary of Organelles and Other Cellular Structures, *(continued)*

Structure	Appearance to TEM	Function
Lysosomes (fig. 3.28*a*)	Round to oval sacs with single unit membrane, often a dark featureless interior but sometimes with protein layers or crystals	Contain enzymes for intracellular digestion, autophagy, programmed cell death, and glucose mobilization
Peroxisomes (fig. 3.28*b*)	Similar to lysosomes; often lighter in color	Contain enzymes for detoxification of free radicals, alcohol, and other drugs; oxidize fatty acids
Mitochondria (fig. 3.29)	Round, rod-shaped, bean-shaped, or threadlike structures with double unit membrane and shelflike infoldings called cristae	ATP synthesis
Centrioles (fig. 3.30)	Short cylindrical bodies, each composed of a circle of nine triplets of microtubules	Form mitotic spindle during cell division; unpaired centrioles form basal bodies of cilia and flagella
Centrosome (fig. 3.5)	Clear area near nucleus containing a pair of centrioles	Organizing center for formation of microtubules of cytoskeleton and mitotic spindle
Basal body (fig. 3.11*e*)	Unpaired centriole at the base of a cilium or flagellum	Point of origin, growth, and anchorage of a cilium or flagellum; produces axoneme
Microfilaments (figs. 3.10 and 3.31)	Thin protein filaments (6 nm diameter), often in parallel bundles or dense networks in cytoplasm	Support microvilli; involved in muscle contraction and other cell motility, endocytosis, and cell division
Intermediate filaments (fig. 3.31)	Thicker protein filaments (8–10 nm diameter) extending throughout cytoplasm or concentrated at cell-to-cell junctions	Give shape and physical support to cell; anchor cells to each other and to extracellular material; compartmentalize cell contents
Microtubules (figs. 3.31 and 3.32)	Hollow protein cylinders (25 nm diameter)	Form axonemes of cilia and flagella, centrioles, basal bodies, and mitotic spindles; enable motility of cell parts; direct organelles and macromolecules to their destinations within a cell
Inclusions (fig. 3.26*b*)	Highly variable—fat droplets, glycogen granules, protein crystals, dust, bacteria, viruses; never enclosed in unit membranes	Storage products or other products of cellular metabolism, or foreign matter retained in cytoplasm

Insight 3.4 Evolutionary Medicine

Mitochondria—Evolution and Clinical Significance

It is virtually certain that mitochondria evolved from bacteria that invaded another primitive cell, survived in its cytoplasm, and became permanent residents. Certain modern bacteria called *ricketsii* live in the cytoplasm of other cells, showing that this mode of life is feasible. The two unit membranes around the mitochondrion suggest that the original bacterium provided the inner membrane and the host cell's phagosome provided the outer membrane when the bacterium was phagocytized.

Several comparisons show the apparent relationship of mitochondria to bacteria. Their ribosomes are more like bacterial ribosomes than those of eukaryotic (nucleated) cells. Mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) is a small, circular molecule that resembles the circular DNA of other bacteria, not the linear DNA of the cell nucleus. It replicates independently of nuclear DNA. mtDNA codes for some of the enzymes employed in ATP synthesis. It consists of 16,569 *base pairs* (explained in chapter 4), comprising 37 genes, compared to over a billion base pairs and about 35,000 genes in nuclear DNA.

When a sperm fertilizes an egg, any mitochondria introduced by the sperm are quickly destroyed and only those provided by the egg are passed on to the developing embryo. Therefore, all mitochondrial DNA is inherited exclusively through the mother. While nuclear DNA is reshuffled in every generation by sexual reproduction, mtDNA remains unchanged except by random mutation. Biologists and anthropologists have used mtDNA as a "molecular clock" to trace evolutionary lineages in humans and other species. mtDNA has also been used as evidence in criminal law and to identify the remains of soldiers killed in action. mtDNA was used recently to identify the remains of the famed bandit Jesse James, who was killed in 1882. Anthropologists have gained evidence, although still controversial, that of all the women who lived in Africa 200,000 years ago, only one has any descendents still living today. This "mitochondrial Eve" is ancestor to us all.

mtDNA is very exposed to damage from free radicals normally generated in mitochondria by aerobic respiration. Yet unlike nuclear DNA, mtDNA has no effective mechanism for repairing damage. Therefore, it mutates about ten times as rapidly as nuclear DNA. Some of these mutations are responsible for rare hereditary diseases. Tissues and organs with the highest energy demands are the most vulnerable to mitochondrial dysfunctions—nervous tissue, the heart, the kidneys, and skeletal muscles, for example. *Mitochondrial myopathy* is a degenerative muscle disease in which the muscle displays "ragged red fibers," cells with abnormal mitochondria that stain red with a particular histological stain. *Mitochondrial encephalomyopathy, lactic acidosis, and strokelike episodes (MELAS)* is a mitochondrial disease involving seizures, paralysis, dementia, muscle deterioration, and a toxic accumulation of lactic acid in the blood. *Leber hereditary optic neuropathy (LHON)* is a form of blindness that usually appears in young adulthood as a result of damage to the optic nerve. *Kearns-Sayre syndrome (KSS)* involves paralysis of the eye muscles, degeneration of the retina, heart disease, hearing loss, diabetes, and kidney failure. Damage to mtDNA has also been implicated as a possible factor in Alzheimer disease, Huntington disease, and other degenerative diseases of old age.

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

Concepts of Cellular Structure (p. 94)

1. Cytology is the study of cellular structure and function.
2. All human structure and function is the result of cellular activity.
3. Cell shapes are described as squamous, polygonal, stellate, cuboidal, columnar, spheroid, ovoid, discoid, fusiform, and fibrous.
4. Most human cells are 10 to 15 µm in diameter. Cell size is limited in part by the ratio of surface area to volume.
5. A cell is enclosed in a *plasma membrane* and contains usually one nucleus.
6. The *cytoplasm* is everything between the plasma membrane and nucleus. It consists of a clear fluid, the *cytosol* or *intracellular fluid (ICF),* and embedded organelles and other structures. Fluid external to the cell is *extracellular fluid (ECF).*

The Cell Surface (p. 98)

1. The plasma membrane is made of lipid and protein.
2. The most abundant lipid molecules in the membrane are phospholipids, which form a bilayer with their hydrophobic heads facing the ICF and ECF. Other membrane lipids include cholesterol and glycolipids.
3. Membrane proteins are called *integral* proteins if they are embedded in the lipid bilayer and extend all the way through it, and *peripheral proteins* if they only cling to the intracellular face of the lipid bilayer.
4. Membrane proteins serve as receptors, second-messenger systems, enzymes, channels, carriers, molecular motors, cell-identity markers, and cell-adhesion molecules.
5. Channel proteins are called *gates* if they can open and close. Gates are called *ligand-regulated, voltage-regulated,* or *mechanically regulated* depending on whether they open and close in response to chemicals, voltage changes across the membrane, or mechanical stress.
6. Second-messenger systems are systems for generating an internal cellular signal in response to an external one. One of the best-known examples results in the formation of a second messenger, cyclic AMP (cAMP), within the cell when certain extracellular signaling molecules bind to a membrane receptor.
7. All cells are covered with a *glycocalyx,* a layer of carbohydrate molecules bound to membrane lipids and proteins. The glycocalyx functions in immunity and other forms of protection, cell adhesion, fertilization, and embryonic development, among other roles.
8. *Microvilli* are tiny surface extensions of the plasma membrane that increase a cell's surface area. They are especially well developed on absorptive cells, as in the kidney and small intestine.
9. *Cilia* are longer, hairlike surface extensions with a central axoneme, composed of a 9 + 2 arrangement of microtubules. Some cilia are stationary and sensory in function, and some are motile and propel substances across epithelial surfaces.
10. A *flagellum* is a long, solitary, whiplike extension of the cell surface. The only functional flagellum in humans is the sperm tail.

Membrane Transport (p. 106)

1. The plasma membrane is *selectively permeable*—it allows some substances to pass through it but prevents others from entering or leaving a cell. There are several methods of passage through a plasma membrane.
2. *Filtration* is the movement of fluid through a membrane under a physical force such as blood pressure, while the membrane holds back relatively large particles.
3. *Simple diffusion* is the spontaneous net movement of particles from a place of high concentration to a place of low concentration, such as respiratory gases moving between the pulmonary air sacs and the blood. The speed of diffusion depends on temperature, molecular weight, concentration differences, and the surface area and permeability of the membrane.
4. *Osmosis* is the diffusion of water through a selectively permeable membrane from the more watery to the less watery side. Channel proteins called *aquaporins* allow passage of water through plasma membranes.
5. The speed of osmosis depends on the relative concentrations, on the two sides of a membrane, of solute molecules that cannot penetrate the membrane. *Osmotic pressure,* the physical force that would be required

to stop osmosis, is proportional to the concentration of nonpermeating solutes on the side to which water is moving.

6. An *osmole* is one mole of dissolved particles in a solution. *Osmolarity* is the number of osmoles of solute per liter of solution. The osmolarity of body fluids is usually expressed in milliosmoles per liter (mOsm/L).
7. *Tonicity* is the ability of a solution to affect the fluid volume and pressure in a cell. A solution is *hypotonic, isotonic,* or *hypertonic* to a cell if it contains, respectively, a lower, equal, or greater concentration of nonpermeating solutes than the cell cytoplasm does. Cells swell and burst in hypotonic solutions and shrivel in hypertonic solutions.
8. *Carrier-mediated transport* employs membrane proteins to move solutes through a membrane. A given carrier is usually specific for a particular solute.
9. Membrane carriers can become *saturated* with solute molecules and then unable to work any faster. The maximum rate of transport is the *transport maximum* (T_m).
10. A *uniport* is a carrier that transports only one solute at a time; a *symport* carries two or more solutes through the membrane in the same direction (a process called *cotransport*); and an *antiport* carries two or more solutes in opposite directions (a process called *countertransport*).
11. *Facilitated diffusion* is a form of carrier-mediated transport that moves solutes through a membrane down a concentration gradient, without an expenditure of ATP.
12. *Active transport* is a form of carrier-mediated transport that moves solutes through a membrane up (against) a concentration gradient, with the expenditure of ATP.
13. The Na^+-K^+ pump is an antiport that moves Na^+ out of a cell and K^+ into it. It serves for control of cell volume, secondary active transport, heat production, and maintenance of an electrical membrane potential.
14. *Vesicular transport* is the movement of substances in bulk through a membrane in membrane-enclosed vesicles.
15. *Endocytosis* is any form of vesicular transport that brings material into a cell, including *phagocytosis, pinocytosis,* and *receptor-mediated endocytosis.*
16. *Exocytosis* is a form of vesicular transport that discharges material from a cell. It functions in the release of cell products and in replacement of plasma membrane removed by endocytosis.

The Cytoplasm (p. 115)

1. The cytoplasm is composed of a clear gelatinous cytosol in which are embedded organelles, the cytoskeleton, and inclusions (table 3.4).
2. *Organelles* are internal structures in the cytoplasm that carry out specialized tasks for a cell.
3. *Membranous* organelles are enclosed in one or two layers of unit membrane similar to the plasma membrane. These include the *nucleus, endoplasmic* reticulum (which has rough and smooth portions), *ribosomes,* the *Golgi complex, lysosomes, peroxisomes,* and *mitochondria.* The *centrioles* and *ribosomes* are nonmembranous organelles.
4. The *cytoskeleton* is a supportive framework of protein filaments and tubules in a cell. It gives a cell its shape, organizes the cytoplasmic contents, and functions in movements of cell contents and the cell as a whole. It is composed of *microfilaments* of the protein *actin; intermediate filaments* of keratin or other proteins; and cylindrical *microtubules* of the protein *tubulin.*
5. *Inclusions* are either stored cellular products such as glycogen, pigments, and fat, or foreign bodies such as bacteria, viruses, and dust. Inclusions are not vital to cell survival.

Selected Vocabulary

cytoplasm	96
plasma membrane	97
organelle	97
cytoskeleton	97
cytosol	97
intracellular fluid	97
extracellular fluid	97
receptor	100
channel protein	100
ligand-regulated gate	100
voltage-regulated gate	100
carrier	101
microvillus	103
cilium	103
filtration	106
simple diffusion	106
osmosis	107
osmolarity	108
hypotonic	108
hypertonic	108
isotonic	108
uniport	110
symport	110
antiport	110
facilitated diffusion	110
active transport	110
sodium-potassium pump	110
endocytosis	112
exocytosis	112
phagocytosis	112
endoplasmic reticulum	116
ribosome	118
Golgi complex	118
lysosome	119
peroxisome	119
mitochondrion	120
centriole	121
microfilament	120
intermediate filament	120
microtubule	121

Testing Your Recall

1. The clear, structureless gel in a cell is its
   a. nucleoplasm.
   b. protoplasm.
   c. cytoplasm.
   d. neoplasm.
   e. cytosol.
2. The Na$^+$-K$^+$ pump is
   a. a peripheral protein.
   b. an integral protein.
   c. a G protein.
   d. a glycolipid.
   e. a phospholipid.
3. Which of the following processes could occur *only* in the plasma membrane of a living cell?
   a. facilitated diffusion
   b. simple diffusion
   c. filtration
   d. active transport
   e. osmosis
4. Cells specialized for absorption of matter from the ECF are likely to show an abundance of
   a. lysosomes.
   b. microvilli.
   c. mitochondria.
   d. secretory vesicles.
   e. ribosomes.
5. Osmosis is a special case of
   a. pinocytosis.
   b. carrier-mediated transport.
   c. active transport.
   d. facilitated diffusion.
   e. simple diffusion.
6. Membrane carriers resemble enzymes except for the fact that carriers
   a. are not proteins.
   b. do not have binding sites.
   c. are not selective for particular ligands.
   d. change conformation when they bind a ligand.
   e. do not chemically change their ligands.
7. The cotransport of glucose derives energy from
   a. a Na$^+$ concentration gradient.
   b. the glucose being transported.
   c. a Ca^{2+}gradient.
   d. the membrane voltage.
   e. body heat.
8. The function of cAMP in a cell is
   a. to activate a G protein.
   b. to remove phosphate groups from ATP.
   c. to activate kinases.
   d. to bind to the first messenger.
   e. to add phosphate groups to enzymes.
9. Most cellular membranes are made by
   a. the nucleus.
   b. the cytoskeleton.
   c. enzymes in the peroxisomes.
   d. the endoplasmic reticulum.
   e. replication of existing membranes.
10. Matter can leave a cell by any of the following means *except*
    a. active transport.
    b. pinocytosis.
    c. an antiport.
    d. simple diffusion.
    e. exocytosis.
11. Most human cells are 10 to 15 ______ in diameter.
12. When a hormone cannot enter a cell, it activates the formation of a/an ______ inside the cell.
13. ______ gates in the plasma membrane open or close in response to changes in the electrical charge difference across the membrane.
14. The force exerted on a membrane by water is called ______.
15. A concentrated solution that causes a cell to shrink is ______ to the cell.
16. Fusion of a secretory vesicle with the plasma membrane, and release of the vesicle's contents, is called ______.
17. Two organelles that are surrounded by a double unit membrane are the ______ and the ______.
18. Liver cells can detoxify alcohol with two organelles, the ______ and ______.
19. An ion gate in the plasma membrane that opens or closes when a chemical binds to it is called a/an ______.
20. The space enclosed by the unit membrane of the Golgi complex and endoplasmic reticulum is called the ______ .

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. If a cell were poisoned so it could not make ATP, osmosis through its membrane would cease.
2. Material can move either into a cell or out by means of active transport.
3. A cell's second messengers serve mainly to transport solutes through the membrane.
4. The Golgi complex makes lysosomes but not peroxisomes.
5. Some membrane channels are peripheral proteins.
6. The plasma membrane consists primarily of protein molecules.
7. The brush border of a cell is composed of cilia.
8. Human cells swell or shrink in any solution other than an isotonic solution.
9. Osmosis is not limited by the transport maximum (T$_m$).
10. It is very unlikely for a cell to have more centrosomes than ribosomes.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. If someone bought a saltwater fish in a pet shop and put it in a freshwater aquarium at home, what would happen to the fish's cells? What would happen if someone put a freshwater fish in a saltwater aquarium? Explain.
2. A farmer's hand and forearm are badly crushed in a hay bailer. Upon hospital examination, his blood potassium level is found to be abnormal. Would you expect it to be higher or lower than normal? Explain.
3. Many children worldwide suffer from a severe deficiency of dietary protein. As a result, they have very low levels of blood albumin. How do you think this affects the water content and volume of their blood? Explain.
4. It is often said that mitochondria make energy for a cell. Why is this statement false?
5. Kartagener syndrome is a hereditary disease in which dynein arms are lacking from the axonemes of cilia and flagella. Predict the effect of Kartagener syndrome on a man's ability to father a child. Predict its effect on his respiratory health. Explain both answers.

Answers at the Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Legend Questions

3.9 Adenylate cyclase is integral. The G protein is peripheral.

3.19 The Na^+-K^+ pump requires ATP, whereas osmosis does not. A dead cell ceases to produce ATP.

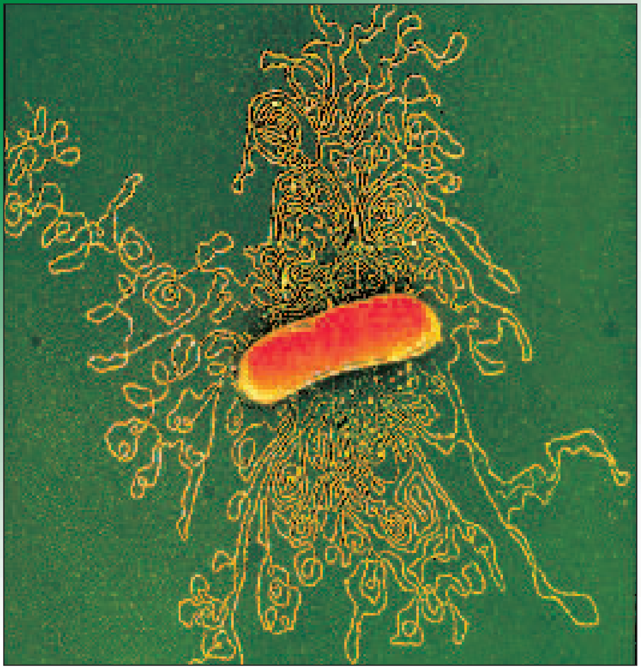
3.23 Transcytosis is simply a combination of endocytosis and exocytosis.

3.25 Proteins and mRNA must be able to move through the nuclear envelope. These large molecules require large pores for their passage.

3.30 A centriole has 27 microtubules—9 groups of 3 each.

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.



A single DNA molecule spilling from a ruptured bacterial cell (TEM)

CHAPTER 4

Genetics and Cellular Function

CHAPTER OUTLINE

The Nucleic Acids 130
- Organization of the Chromatin 130
- DNA Structure and Function 130
- RNA Structure and Function 133

Protein Synthesis and Secretion 134
- Preview 134
- The Genetic Code 134
- Transcription 136
- Translation 136
- Chaperones and Protein Structure 137
- Posttranslational Modification 138
- Packaging and Secretion 139

DNA Replication and the Cell Cycle 139
- DNA Replication 139
- Errors and Mutations 142
- The Cell Cycle 142
- Mitosis 143
- Timing of Cell Division 145

Chromosomes and Heredity 145
- The Karyotype 146
- Genes and Alleles 147
- Multiple Alleles, Codominance, and Incomplete Dominance 148
- Polygenic Inheritance and Pleiotropy 148
- Sex Linkage 149
- Penetrance and Environmental Effects 149
- Dominant and Recessive Alleles at the Population Level 149

Chapter Review 152

INSIGHTS

4.1 **Medical History:** Miescher and the Discovery of DNA 130

4.2 **Medical History:** Discovery of the Double Helix 132

4.3 **Clinical Application:** Can We Replace Brain Cells? 143

4.4 **Clinical Application:** Cancer 151

Brushing Up

To understand this chapter, it is important that you understand or brush up on the following concepts:

- Levels of protein structure (p. 80)
- Functions of proteins (p. 80)
- Exocytosis (p. 114)
- Ribosomes, rough endoplasmic reticulum, and Golgi complex (pp. 116–119)
- Centrioles and microtubules (pp. 120, 121)

Some of the basic ideas of heredity have been known since antiquity, but a scientific understanding of how traits are passed from parent to offspring began with the Austrian monk Gregor Mendel (1822–84) and his famous experiments on garden peas. In the early twentieth century, the importance of Mendel's work was realized and chromosomes were first seen with the microscope. **Cytogenetics** now uses techniques of cytology and microscopy to study chromosomes and their relationship to hereditary traits. **Molecular genetics** uses the techniques of biochemistry to study the structure and function of DNA. In this chapter, we bring together some of the findings of molecular genetics, cytogenetics, and mendelian heredity to explore what the genes are, how they regulate cellular function, and how they are passed on when cells divide and people reproduce. A few basic concepts of heredity are introduced as a foundation for understanding concepts ranging from color blindness to blood types in the chapters that follow.

The Nucleic Acids

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe how DNA is organized in the nucleus; and
- compare the structures and functions of DNA and RNA.

With improvements in the microscope, nineteenth-century cytologists saw that the nucleus divides in preparation for cell division, and they came to regard the nucleus as the most likely center of heredity. This led to a search for the biochemical keys to heredity in the nucleus, and thus to the discovery of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) (insight 4.1). DNA directly or indirectly regulates all cellular form and function.

Insight 4.1 Medical History

Miescher and the Discovery of DNA

Swiss biochemist Johann Friedrich Miescher (1844–95) was one of the first scientists intent on identifying the hereditary material in nuclei. In order to isolate nuclei with minimal contamination, Miescher chose to work with cells that have large nuclei and very little cytoplasm. At first he chose white blood cells extracted from the pus in used bandages from a hospital; later, he used the sperm of salmon—probably more agreeable to work with than used bandages! Miescher isolated an acidic substance rich in phosphorus, which he named *nuclein.* His student, Richard Altmann, later called it *nucleic acid*—a term we now use for both DNA and RNA. Miescher correctly guessed that "nuclein" (DNA) was the hereditary matter of the cell, but he was unable to provide strong evidence for this conjecture, and his work was harshly criticized. He died of tuberculosis at the age of 51.

Organization of the Chromatin

A human cell usually has 46 molecules of DNA with an average length of 44 mm (total slightly over 2 m). Each molecule is 2 nm in diameter. To put this in perspective, if a DNA molecule were the thickness of a telephone pole (20 cm, or 8 in.), it would reach about 4,400 km (2,700 mi) into space—far higher than the orbits of satellites and space shuttles. Imagine trying to make a pole 20 cm thick and 4,400 km long without breaking it! The problem for a cell is even greater. It has 46 DNA molecules packed together in a single nucleus, and it has to make an exact copy of every one of them and distribute these equally to its two daughter cells when the cell divides. Keeping the DNA organized and intact is a tremendous feat.

Molecular biology and high-resolution electron microscopy have provided some insight into how this task is accomplished. Chromatin looks like a granular thread (fig. 4.1*a*). The granules, called **nucleosomes,** consist of a cluster of eight proteins called **histones,** with the DNA molecule wound around the cluster. Histones serve as spools that protect and organize the DNA. Other nuclear proteins called **nonhistones** seem to provide structural support for the chromatin and regulate gene activity.

Winding DNA around the nucleosomes makes the chromatin shorter and more compact, but chromatin also has higher orders of structure. The "granular thread," about 10 nm wide, further twists into a coil about 30 nm wide. When a cell prepares to undergo division, the chromatin further supercoils into a fiber about 200 nm wide (fig. 4.1*b*). Thus, the 2 m of DNA in each cell becomes shortened and compacted in an orderly way that prevents tangling and breakage without interfering with genetic function.

DNA Structure and Function

Nucleic acids are polymers of **nucleotides** (NEW-clee-oh-tides). A nucleotide consists of a sugar, a phosphate group, and a single- or double-ringed **nitrogenous** (ny-TRODJ-eh-nus) **base.** Three bases—**cytosine (C), thymine (T),** and **uracil (U)**—have a single carbon-nitrogen ring and are classified as *pyrimidines* (py-RIM-ih-deens). The other two bases—**adenine (A)** and **guanine (G)**—have double rings and are classified as *purines* (fig. 4.2). The bases of DNA are C, T, A, and G, whereas the bases of RNA are C, U, A, and G.

The structure of DNA resembles a ladder (fig. 4.3*a*). Each sidepiece is a backbone composed of phosphate groups alternating with the sugar *deoxyribose.* The steplike connections between the backbones are pairs of nitrogenous bases. Imagine this as a soft rubber ladder that you can twist, so that the two backbones become entwined to resemble a spiral staircase. This is analogous to the shape of the DNA molecule, described as a *double helix.*

The nitrogenous bases face the inside of the helix and hold the two backbones together with hydrogen bonds. Across from a purine on one backbone, there is a pyrimidine

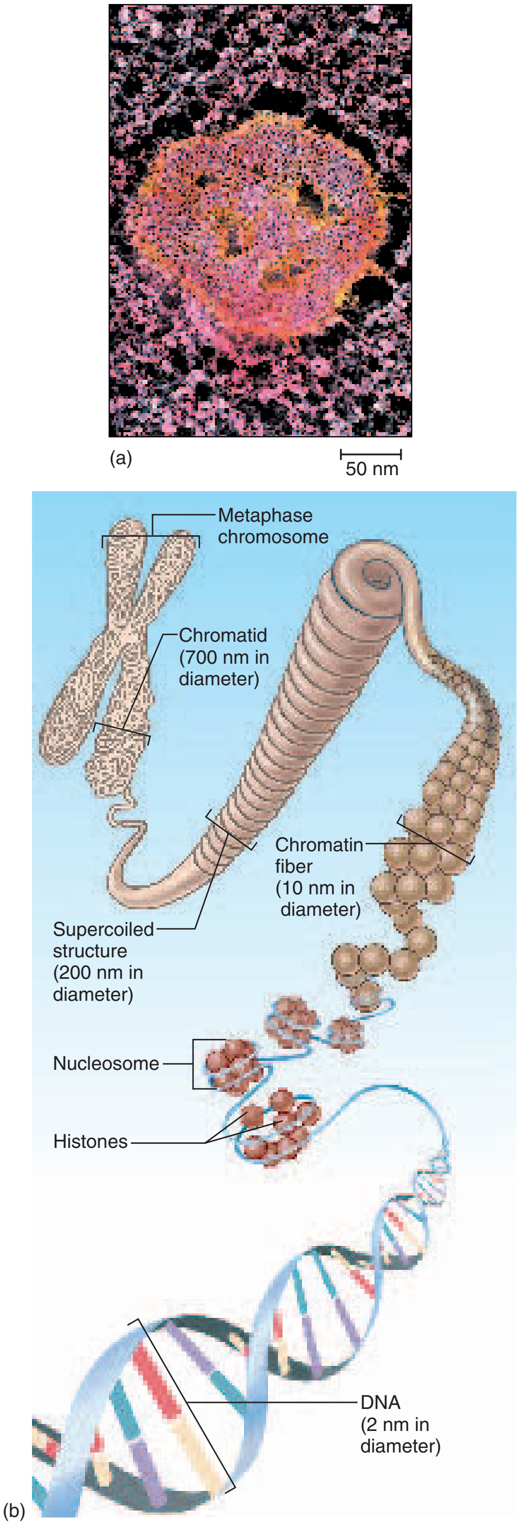

(a)
50 nm
Metaphase chromosome
Chromatid (700 nm in diameter)
Chromatin fiber (10 nm in diameter)
Supercoiled structure (200 nm in diameter)
Nucleosome
Histones
DNA (2 nm in diameter)
(b)

Figure 4.1 **Chromatin Structure.** (*a*) Nuclear contents of a germ cell from an 8-week-old human embryo (colorized SEM). The center mass is the nucleolus. It is surrounded by granular fibers of chromatin. Each granule is a nucleosome. (*b*) The coiling of chromatin and its relationship to the histones. Supercoiling beyond the 10-nm level occurs only during mitosis.

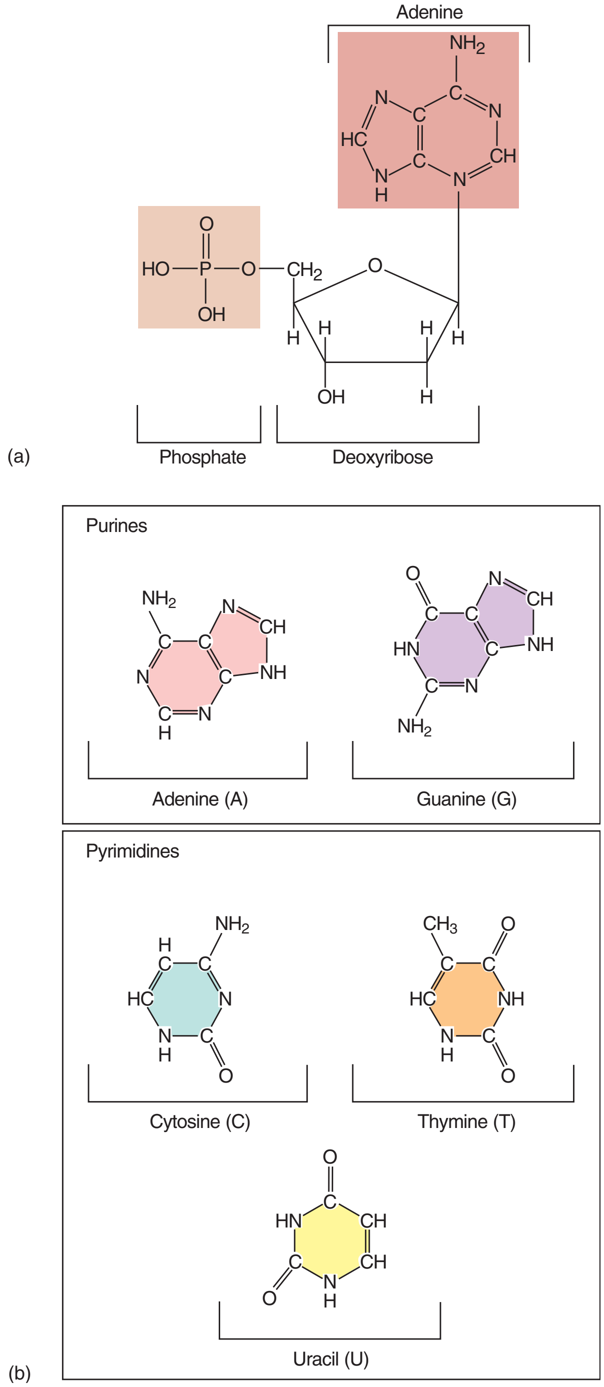

Adenine
NH_2
HO—P—O—CH_2
O
OH
H
H
H
H
OH
H
(a)
Phosphate
Deoxyribose
Purines
Adenine (A)
Guanine (G)
Pyrimidines
Cytosine (C)
Thymine (T)
Uracil (U)
(b)

Figure 4.2 **Nucleotides and Nitrogenous Bases.** (*a*) The structure of a nucleotide, one of the monomers of DNA and RNA. In RNA, the sugar is ribose. (*b*) The five nitrogenous bases found in DNA and RNA nucleotides.

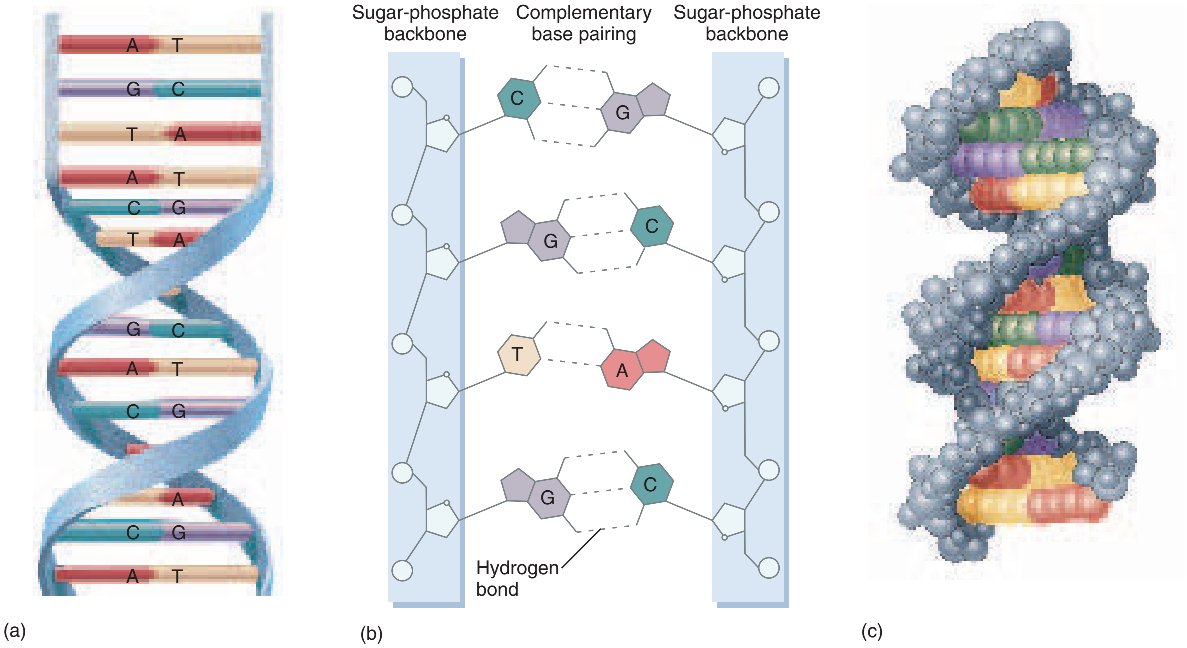


Figure 4.3 **DNA Structure.** (*a*) The "twisted ladder" structure. The two sugar-phosphate backbones twine around each other while complementary bases (*colored bars*) face each other on the inside of the double helix. (*b*) A small segment of DNA showing the composition of the backbone and complementary pairing of the nitrogenous bases. (*c*) A molecular space-filling model of DNA giving some impression of its actual geometry.
How would the uniform 2-nm diameter of DNA be affected if two purines or two pyrimidines could pair with each other?

on the other. A given purine cannot arbitrarily bind to just any pyrimidine. Adenine and thymine form two hydrogen bonds with each other, and guanine and cytosine form three, as shown in figure 4.3*b*. Therefore, wherever there is an A on one backbone, there is a T across from it, and every C is paired with a G. A–T and C–G are called the **base pairs.** The fact that one strand governs the base sequence of the other is called the **law of complementary base pairing.** It enables us to predict the base sequence of one strand if we know the sequence of the complementary strand. The pairing of each small, single-ringed pyrimidine with a large, double-ringed purine gives the DNA molecule its uniform 2-nm width.

Think About It

What would be the base sequence of the DNA strand across from ATTGACTCG? If a DNA molecule were known to be 20% adenine, predict its percentage of cytosine and explain your answer.

Insight 4.2 Medical History

Discovery of the Double Helix

The components of DNA were known by 1900—the sugar, phosphate, and bases—but the technology did not exist then to determine how they were put together. The credit for that discovery went mainly to James Watson and Francis Crick in 1953 (fig. 4.4). The events surrounding their discovery of the double helix represent one of the most dramatic stories of modern science—the subject of many books and a movie. When Watson and Crick came to share a laboratory at Cambridge University in 1951, both had barely begun their careers. Watson, age 23, had just completed his Ph.D. in the United States, and Crick, 11 years older, was a doctoral candidate. Yet the two were about to become the most famous molecular biologists of the twentieth century, and the discovery that won them such acclaim came without a single laboratory experiment of their own.

Others were fervently at work on DNA, including Rosalind Franklin and Maurice Wilkins at King's College in London. Using a technique called X-ray diffraction, Franklin had determined that DNA had a repetitious helical structure with sugar and phosphate on the outside of the helix. Without her permission, Wilkins showed one of Franklin's best X-ray photographs to Watson. Watson said, "The instant I saw the picture my mouth fell open and my pulse began to race." It provided a flash of insight that allowed the Watson and Crick team to beat Franklin to the goal. They were quickly able to piece together a scale model from cardboard and sheet metal that fully accounted for the known geometry of DNA. They rushed a paper into print in 1953 describing the double helix, barely mentioning the importance of Franklin's two years of painstaking X-ray diffraction work in unlocking the mystery of life's most important molecule.

For this discovery, Watson, Crick, and Wilkins shared the Nobel Prize in 1962. Nobel Prizes are awarded only to the living, and in the final irony of her career, Rosalind Franklin had died in 1958, at the age of 37, of a cancer possibly induced by the X rays that were her window on DNA architecture.

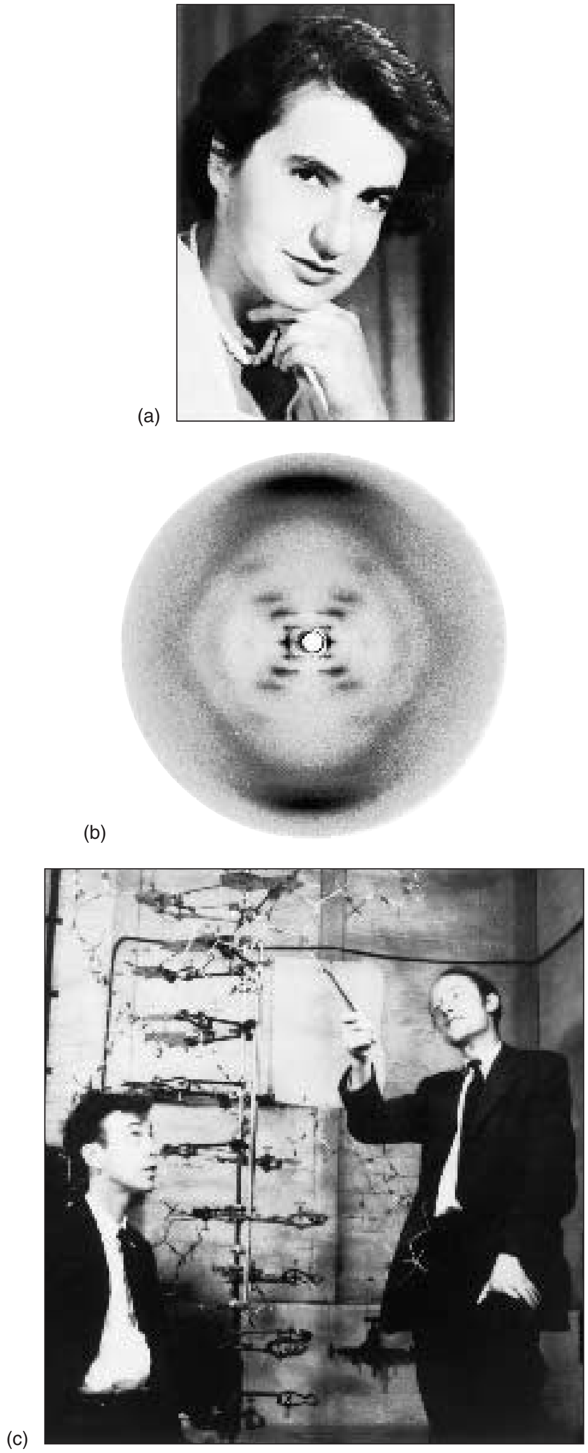


Figure 4.4 **Discoverers of the Double Helix.** (*a*) Rosalind Franklin (1920–58), whose painstaking X-ray diffraction photographs revealed important information about the basic geometry of DNA. (*b*) One of Franklin's X-ray photographs. (*c*) James Watson (1928–) (*left*) and Francis Crick (1916–) (*right*), with their model of the double helix.

The essential function of DNA is to serve as a code for the structure of polypeptides synthesized by a cell. A **gene** is a DNA nucleotide sequence that codes for one polypeptide. The next section of this chapter explains in detail how the genes direct polypeptide synthesis. All the genes of one person are called the **genome** (JEE-nome); geneticists estimate that a human has about 35,000 genes. These account for only 3% of our DNA; the other 97% does not code for anything. Some of the noncoding DNA serves important organizing roles in the chromatin, and some of it is useless "junk DNA" that has accumulated over the course of human evolution. The latest triumph of molecular genetics is the *human genome project,* an enormous multinational effort that led to the mapping of the base sequence of the entire human genome. Its completion (in all but some fine details) in June 2000 was hailed as a scientific achievement comparable to putting the first man on the moon.

RNA Structure and Function

DNA directs the synthesis of proteins by means of its smaller cousins, the ribonucleic acids (RNAs). There are three types of RNA: *messenger RNA (mRNA), ribosomal RNA (rRNA),* and *transfer RNA (tRNA).* Their individual roles are described shortly. For now we consider what they have in common and how they differ from DNA (table 4.1). The most significant difference is that RNA is much smaller, ranging from about 70 to 90 bases in tRNA to slightly over 10,000 bases in the largest mRNA. DNA, by contrast, may be over a billion base pairs long. Also, while DNA is a double helix, RNA consists of only one nucleotide chain, not held together by complementary base pairs except in certain regions of tRNA where the molecule folds back on itself. The sugar in RNA is ribose instead of deoxyribose, and one of the pyrimidines of DNA, thymine, is replaced by uracil (U) in RNA (see fig. 4.2).

The essential function of RNA is to interpret the code in DNA and direct the synthesis of proteins. RNA works mainly in the cytoplasm, while DNA remains safely behind in the nucleus, "giving orders" from there. This process is described in the next section of this chapter.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

1. What is the difference between DNA and chromatin?
2. What are the three components of a nucleotide? Which component varies from one nucleotide to another in DNA?
3. What two factors govern the pattern of base pairing in DNA?
4. Summarize the differences between DNA and RNA.

Table 4.1 Comparison of DNA and RNA

Feature	DNA	RNA
Sugar	Deoxyribose	Ribose
Nitrogenous bases	A, T, C, G	A, U, C, G
Number of nucleotide chains	Two (double helix)	One
Number of nitrogenous bases	10^8 to 10^9 base pairs	70 to 10,000 unpaired bases
Site of action	Functions in nucleus; cannot leave	Leaves nucleus; functions in cytoplasm
Function	Codes for synthesis of RNA and protein	Carries out the instructions in DNA; assembles proteins

Protein Synthesis and Secretion

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- define *genetic code* and describe how DNA codes for protein structure;
- describe the process of assembling amino acids to form a protein;
- explain what happens to a protein after its amino acid sequence has been synthesized; and
- explain how DNA indirectly regulates the synthesis of nonprotein molecules.

Everything a cell does ultimately results from the action of its proteins; DNA directs the synthesis of those proteins. Cells, of course, synthesize many other substances as well—glycogen, fat, phospholipids, steroids, pigments, and so on. There are no genes for these cell products, but their synthesis depends on enzymes that are coded for by the genes. For example, even though a cell of the testis has no genes for testosterone, testosterone synthesis is indirectly under genetic control (fig. 4.5). Since testosterone strongly influences such behaviors as aggression and sexual drive (in both sexes), we can see that genes also make a significant contribution to behavior. In this section, we examine how protein synthesis results from the instructions given in the genes.

Preview

Before studying the details of protein synthesis, it will be helpful to consider the big picture. In brief, DNA contains a genetic code that specifies which proteins a cell can make. All the body's cells except the sex cells contain identical genes, but different genes are activated in different cells; for example, the genes for digestive enzymes are active in stomach cells but not in muscle cells. When a gene is activated, a molecule of **messenger RNA (mRNA),** a sort of mirror-image copy of the gene, is made. Most mRNA migrates from the nucleus to the cytoplasm, where its code is "read" by a ribosome. Ribosomes are composed of **ribosomal RNA (rRNA)** and enzymes. **Transfer RNA (tRNA)** delivers amino acids to the ribosome, and the ribosome chooses from among these to assemble amino acids in the order directed by the mRNA.

In summary, you can think of the process of protein synthesis as DNA→mRNA→protein, with each arrow reading as "codes for the production of." The step from DNA to mRNA is called *transcription,* and the step from mRNA to protein is called *translation.* Transcription occurs in the nucleus, where the DNA is, and most translation occurs in the cytoplasm. Recent research has shown, however, that 10% to 15% of proteins are synthesized in the nucleus, with both steps occurring there.

The Genetic Code

The body makes more than 2 million different proteins, all from the same 20 amino acids and all encoded by genes made of just 4 nucleotides (A, T, C, G)—a striking illustration of how a great variety of complex structures can be made from a small variety of simpler components. The **genetic code** is a system that enables these 4 nucleotides to code for the amino acid sequences of all proteins.

It is not unusual for simple codes to represent complex information. Computers store and transmit complex information, including pictures and sounds, in a binary code with only the symbols 1 and 0. It is not surprising, then, that a mere 20 amino acids can be represented by a code of 4 nucleotides; all that is required is to combine these symbols in varied ways. It requires more than 2 nucleotides to code for each amino acid, because A, U, C, and G can combine in only 16 ways (AA, AU, AC, AG, UA, UU, etc.). The minimum code to symbolize 20 amino acids is 3 nucleotides per amino acid, and indeed this is the case in DNA. A sequence of 3 DNA nucleotides that stands for 1 amino acid is called a **base triplet.** The "mirror image"

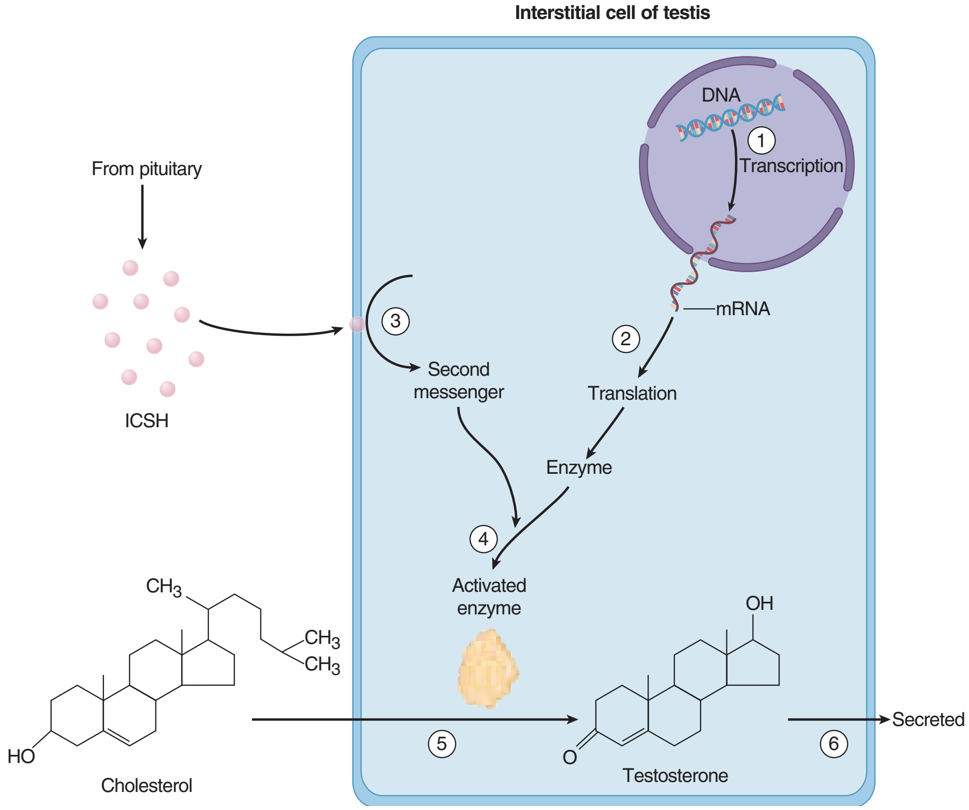


Figure 4.5 **Indirect Control of Testosterone Synthesis by DNA.** There is no gene for testosterone, but DNA regulates its synthesis through the enzymes for which it does code. (*1*) DNA codes for mRNA. (*2*) In the cytoplasm, mRNA directs the synthesis of an enzyme. (*3*) When testosterone is needed, luteinizing hormone (LH) stimulates production of a second messenger within cells of the testis. (*4*) The second-messenger system activates the enzyme encoded by the mRNA. (*5*) The enzyme converts cholesterol to testosterone. (*6*) Testosterone is secreted from the cell and exerts various anatomical, physiological, and behavioral effects.

sequence in mRNA is called a **codon.** The genetic code is expressed in terms of codons.

Table 4.2 shows a few representative triplets and codons along with the amino acids they represent. You can see from this listing that two or more codons can represent the same amino acid. The reason for this is easy to explain mathematically. Four symbols (N) taken three at a time (x) can be combined in N^x different ways; that is, there are $4^3 = 64$ possible codons available to represent the 20 amino acids. Only 61 of these code for amino acids. The other 3—UAG, UGA, and UAA—are called **stop codons;** they signal "end of message," like the period at the end of a sentence. A stop codon enables the cell's protein-synthesizing machinery to sense that it has reached the end of the gene for a particular protein. The codon AUG plays two roles—it serves as a code for methionine and as a **start codon.** This dual function is explained shortly.

Table 4.2 Examples of the Genetic Code

Base Triplet of DNA	Codon of mRNA	Name of Amino Acid	Abbreviation for Amino Acid
CCT	GGA	Glycine	Gly
CCA	GGU	Glycine	Gly
CCC	GGG	Glycine	Gly
CTC	GAG	Glutamic acid	Glu
CGC	GCG	Alanine	Ala
CGT	GCA	Alanine	Ala
TGG	ACC	Threonine	Thr
TGC	ACG	Threonine	Thr
GTA	CAU	Valine	Val
TAC	AUG	Methionine	Met

Transcription

Most protein synthesis occurs in the cytoplasm, but DNA is too large to leave the nucleus. It is necessary, therefore, to make a small RNA copy that can migrate through a nuclear pore into the cytoplasm. Just as we might transcribe (copy) a document, **transcription** in genetics means the process of copying genetic instructions from DNA to RNA. It is triggered by chemical messengers from the cytoplasm that enter the nucleus and bind to the chromatin at the site of the relevant gene. An enzyme called **RNA polymerase** (po-LIM-ur-ase) then binds to the DNA at this point and begins making RNA. Certain base sequences (often TATATA or TATAAA) inform the polymerase where to begin.

RNA polymerase opens up the DNA helix about 17 base pairs at a time. It transcribes the bases from one strand of the DNA and makes a corresponding RNA. Where it finds a C on the DNA, it adds a G to the RNA; where it finds an A, it adds a U; and so forth. The enzyme then rewinds the DNA helix behind it. Another RNA polymerase may follow closely behind the first one; thus, a gene may be transcribed by several polymerase molecules at once, and numerous copies of the same RNA are made. At the end of the gene is a base sequence that serves as a terminator, which signals the polymerase to release the RNA and separate from the DNA.

The RNA produced by transcription is an "immature" form called *pre-mRNA.* This molecule contains "sense" portions called *exons* that will be translated into a peptide and "nonsense" portions called *introns* that must be removed before translation. Enzymes remove the introns and splice the exons together into a functional mRNA molecule.

Translation

Just as we might translate a work from Spanish into English, genetic **translation** converts the language of nucleotides into the language of amino acids (fig. 4.6). This job is done by ribosomes, which are found mainly in the cytosol and on the rough ER and nuclear envelope. A ribosome consists of two granular subunits, large and small, each made of several rRNA and enzyme molecules.

The mRNA molecule begins with a *leader sequence* of bases that are not translated to protein but serve as a binding site for the ribosome. The small ribosomal subunit binds to it, the large subunit joins the complex, and the ribosome begins pulling the mRNA through it like a ribbon, reading bases as it goes. When it reaches the start codon, AUG, it begins making protein. Since AUG codes for methionine, all proteins begin with methionine when first synthesized, although this may be removed later.

Translation requires the participation of 61 types of transfer RNA (tRNA), one for each codon (except stop codons). Transfer RNA is a small RNA molecule that turns back and coils on itself to form a cloverleaf shape, which is then twisted into an angular L-shape (fig. 4.7). One end of the L includes three nucleotides called an **anticodon,** and the other end has a binding site specific for one amino acid. Each tRNA picks up an amino acid from a pool of free amino acids in the cytosol. One ATP molecule is used to bind the amino acid to this site and provide the energy that is used later to join that amino acid to the growing protein. Thus, protein synthesis consumes one ATP for each peptide bond formed.

When the small ribosomal subunit reads a codon such as CGC, it must find an activated tRNA with the corresponding anticodon; in this case, GCG. This particular tRNA would have the amino acid alanine at its other end. The ribosome binds and holds this tRNA and then reads the next codon—say GGU. Here, it would bind a tRNA with anticodon CCA, which carries glycine.

The large ribosomal subunit contains an enzyme that forms peptide bonds, and now that alanine and glycine are side by side, it links them together. The first tRNA is no longer needed, so it is released from the ribosome. The second tRNA is used, temporarily, to anchor the growing peptide to the ribosome. Now, the ribosome reads the third codon—say GUA. It finds the tRNA with the anticodon CAU, which carries the amino acid valine. The large subunit adds valine to the growing chain, now three amino acids long. By repetition of this process, the entire protein is assembled. Eventually, the ribosome reaches a stop codon and is finished translating this mRNA. The polypeptide is turned loose, and the ribosome dissociates into its two subunits.

One ribosome can assemble a protein of 400 amino acids in about 20 seconds, but it does not work at the task alone. After the mRNA leader sequence passes through one ribosome, a neighboring ribosome takes it up and begins translating the mRNA before the first ribosome has finished. One mRNA often holds 10 or 20 ribosomes together in a cluster called a **polyribosome** (fig. 4.8). Not only is each mRNA translated by all these ribosomes at once, but a cell may have 300,000 identical mRNA molecules undergoing simultaneous translation. Thus, a cell may produce over 150,000 protein molecules per second—a remarkably productive protein factory! As much as 25% of the dry weight of liver cells, which are highly active in protein synthesis, is composed of ribosomes.

Many proteins, when first synthesized, begin with a chain of amino acids called the **signal peptide.** Like a molecular address label, the signal peptide determines the protein's destination—for example, whether it will be sent to the rough endoplasmic reticulum, a peroxisome, or a mitochondrion. (Proteins used in the cytosol lack signal peptides.) Some diseases result from errors in the signal peptide, causing a protein to be sent to the wrong address,

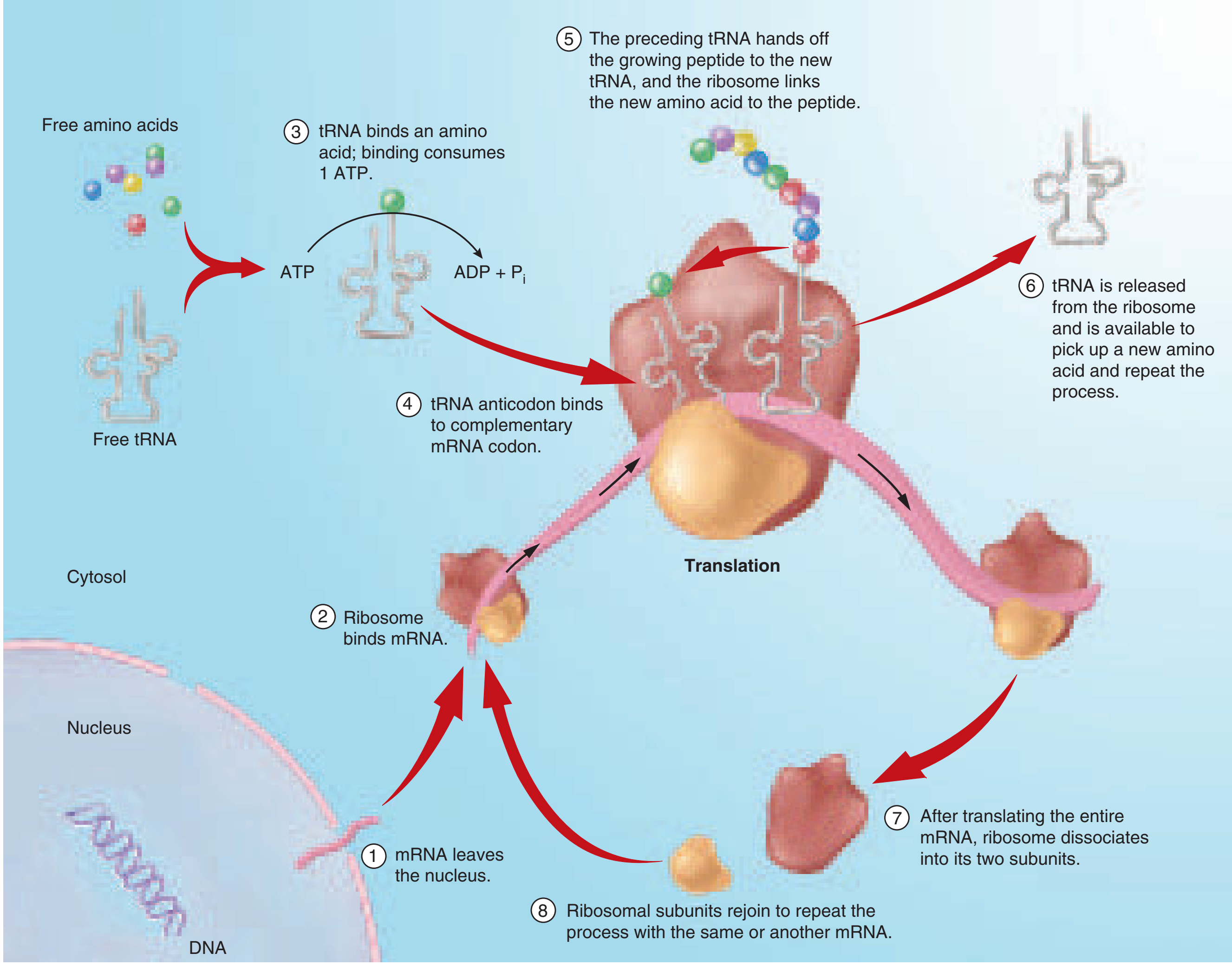

⑤ The preceding tRNA hands off the growing peptide to the new tRNA, and the ribosome links the new amino acid to the peptide.
Free amino acids
③ tRNA binds an amino acid; binding consumes 1 ATP.
ATP
ADP + P_i
⑥ tRNA is released from the ribosome and is available to pick up a new amino acid and repeat the process.
Free tRNA
④ tRNA anticodon binds to complementary mRNA codon.
Translation
Cytosol
② Ribosome binds mRNA.
Nucleus
⑦ After translating the entire mRNA, ribosome dissociates into its two subunits.
① mRNA leaves the nucleus.
⑧ Ribosomal subunits rejoin to repeat the process with the same or another mRNA.
DNA

Figure 4.6 **Translation of mRNA.**
Why would translation not work if ribosomes could bind only one tRNA at a time?

such as going to a mitochondrion when it should have gone to a peroxisome, or causing it to be secreted from a cell when it should have been stored in a lysosome. Gunter Blöbel of Rockefeller University received the 1999 Nobel Prize for Physiology or Medicine for discovering signal peptides in the 1970s.

Figure 4.9 summarizes transcription and translation and shows how a nucleotide sequence translates to a hypothetical peptide of 6 amino acids. A protein 500 amino acids long would have to be represented, at a minimum, by a sequence of 1,503 nucleotides (3 for each amino acid, plus a stop codon). The average gene is probably around 1,200 nucleotides long; a few may be 10 times this long.

Chaperones and Protein Structure

The amino acid sequence of a protein (primary structure) is only the beginning; the end of translation is not the end of protein synthesis. The protein now coils or folds into its secondary and tertiary structures and, in some cases, associates with other polypeptide chains (quaternary structure) or conjugates with a nonprotein moiety, such as a vitamin or carbohydrate. It is essential that these processes not begin prematurely as the amino acid sequence is being assembled, since the correct final shape may depend on amino acids that have not been added yet. Therefore, as new proteins are assembled by ribosomes, they are sometimes picked up by older proteins called

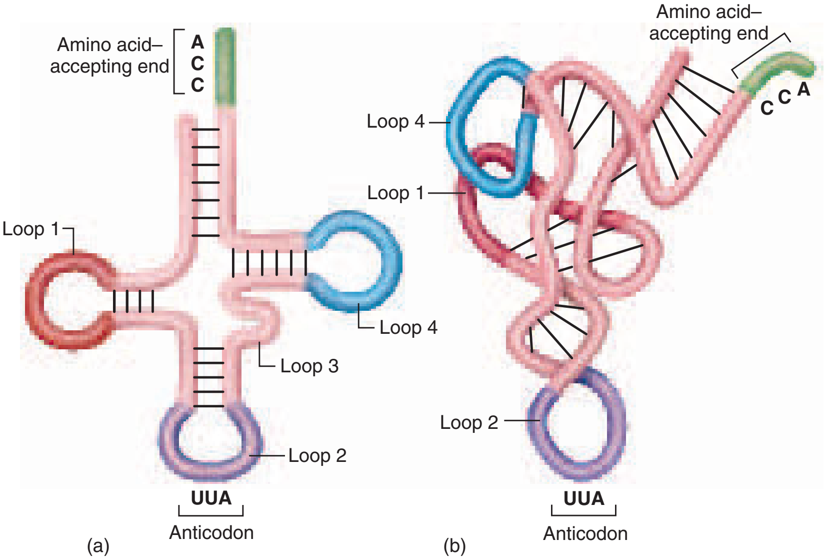


Figure 4.7 **Transfer RNA (tRNA).** (*a*) tRNA has an amino acid–accepting end that binds to one specific amino acid, and an anticodon that binds to a complementary codon of mRNA. (*b*) The three-dimensional shape of a tRNA molecule.

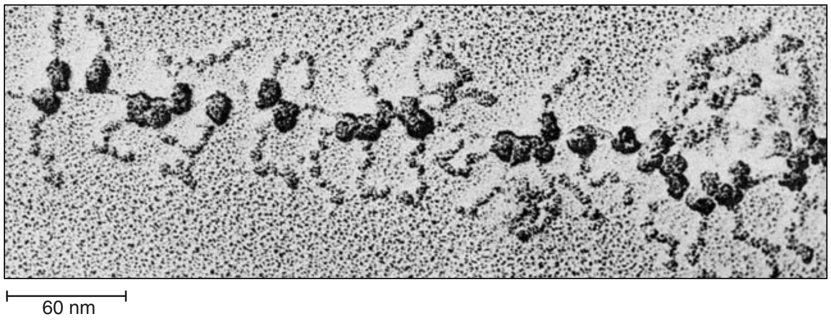


Figure 4.8 **Several Ribosomes Attached to a Single mRNA Molecule, Forming a Polyribosome.** The fine horizontal filament is mRNA; the large granules attached to it are ribosomes; and the beadlike chains projecting from each ribosome are newly formed proteins.

chaperones. A chaperone prevents a new protein from folding prematurely and assists in its proper folding once the amino acid sequence has been completed. It may also escort a newly synthesized protein to the correct destination in a cell, such as the plasma membrane, and help to prevent improper associations between different proteins. As in the colloquial sense of the word, a chaperone is an older protein that escorts and regulates the behavior of the "youngsters." Some chaperones are also called *stress proteins* or *heat-shock proteins* because they are produced in response to heat or other stress on a cell and help damaged proteins fold back into their correct functional shapes.

Posttranslational Modification

If a protein is going to be used in the cytosol (for example, the enzymes of glycolysis), it is likely to be made by free ribosomes in the cytosol. If it is going to be packaged into a lysosome or secreted from the cell, however, its signal peptide causes the entire polyribosome to migrate to the rough ER and dock on its surface. Assembly of the amino acid chain is then completed on the rough ER and the protein is sent to the Golgi complex for final modification. Thus, we turn to the functions of these organelles in the modification, packaging, and secretion of a protein (fig. 4.10).

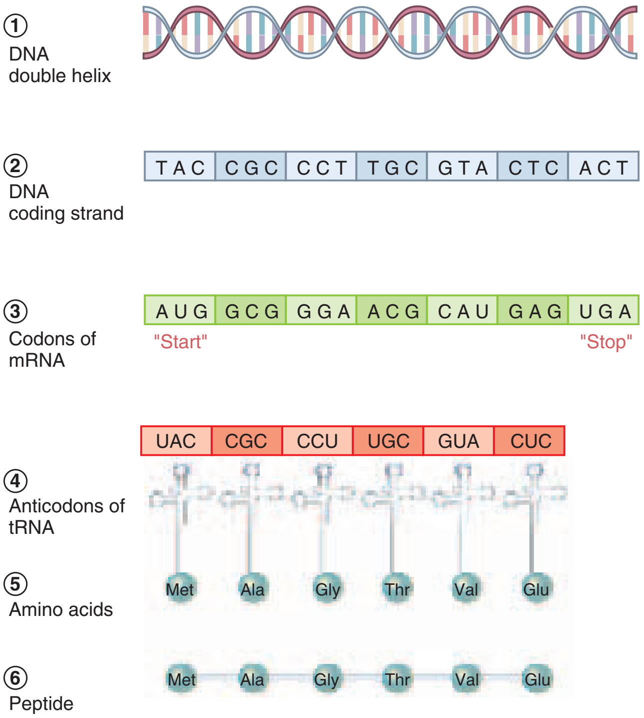


Figure 4.9 **Relationship of a DNA Base Sequence to Protein Structure.** (*1*) DNA. (*2*) A series of base triplets in the coding strand of DNA. (*3*) The corresponding codons that would be in an mRNA molecule transcribed from this DNA sequence. (*4*) Binding of mRNA to the complementary anticodons of six tRNA molecules. (*5*) The amino acids bound to these tRNAs. (*6*) Linkage of the amino acids into the peptide that was encoded in the DNA.

When a protein is produced on the rough ER, its signal peptide threads itself through a pore in the ER membrane and drags the rest of the protein into the cisterna. Enzymes in the cisterna then remove the signal peptide and modify the new protein in a variety of ways—removing some amino acids segments, folding the protein and stabilizing it with disulfide bridges, adding carbohydrate moieties, and so forth. Such changes are called *posttranslational modification.* Insulin, for example, is first synthesized as a polypeptide of 86 amino acids. In posttranslational modification, the chain folds back on itself, three disulfide bridges are formed, and 35 amino acids are removed. The final insulin molecule is therefore made of two chains of 21 and 30 amino acids held together by disulfide bridges (see fig. 17.15).

When the rough ER is finished with a protein, it pinches off clathrin-coated **transport vesicles.** Like the address on a letter, clathrin may direct the vesicle to its destination, the Golgi complex. The Golgi complex removes the clathrin, fuses with the vesicle, and takes the protein into its cisterna. Here, it may further modify the protein, for example by adding carbohydrate to it. Such modifications begin in the cisterna closest to the rough ER. Each cisterna forms transport vesicles that carry the protein to the next cisterna, where different enzymes may further modify the new protein.

Packaging and Secretion

When the protein is processed by the last Golgi cisterna, farthest from the rough ER, that cisterna pinches off membrane-bounded **Golgi vesicles** containing the finished product. Some Golgi vesicles become **secretory vesicles,** which migrate to the plasma membrane and release the product by exocytosis. This is how a cell of the salivary gland, for example, secretes mucus and digestive enzymes. The destinations of these and some other newly synthesized proteins are summarized in table 4.3.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

5. Define *genetic code, codon,* and *genome.*
6. Describe the genetic role of RNA polymerase.
7. Describe the genetic role of ribosomes and tRNA.
8. Why are chaperones important in ensuring correct tertiary protein structure?
9. What roles do the rough ER and Golgi complex play in protein production?

DNA Replication and the Cell Cycle

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe how DNA is replicated;
- discuss the consequences of replication errors;
- describe the life history of a cell, including the events of mitosis; and
- explain how the timing of cell division is regulated.

Before a cell divides, it must duplicate its DNA so it can give a complete copy of the genome to each daughter cell. Since DNA controls all cellular function, this replication process must be very exact. We now examine how it is accomplished and consider the consequences of mistakes.

DNA Replication

The law of complementary base pairing shows that we can predict the base sequence of one DNA strand if we know the sequence of the other. More importantly, it enables a

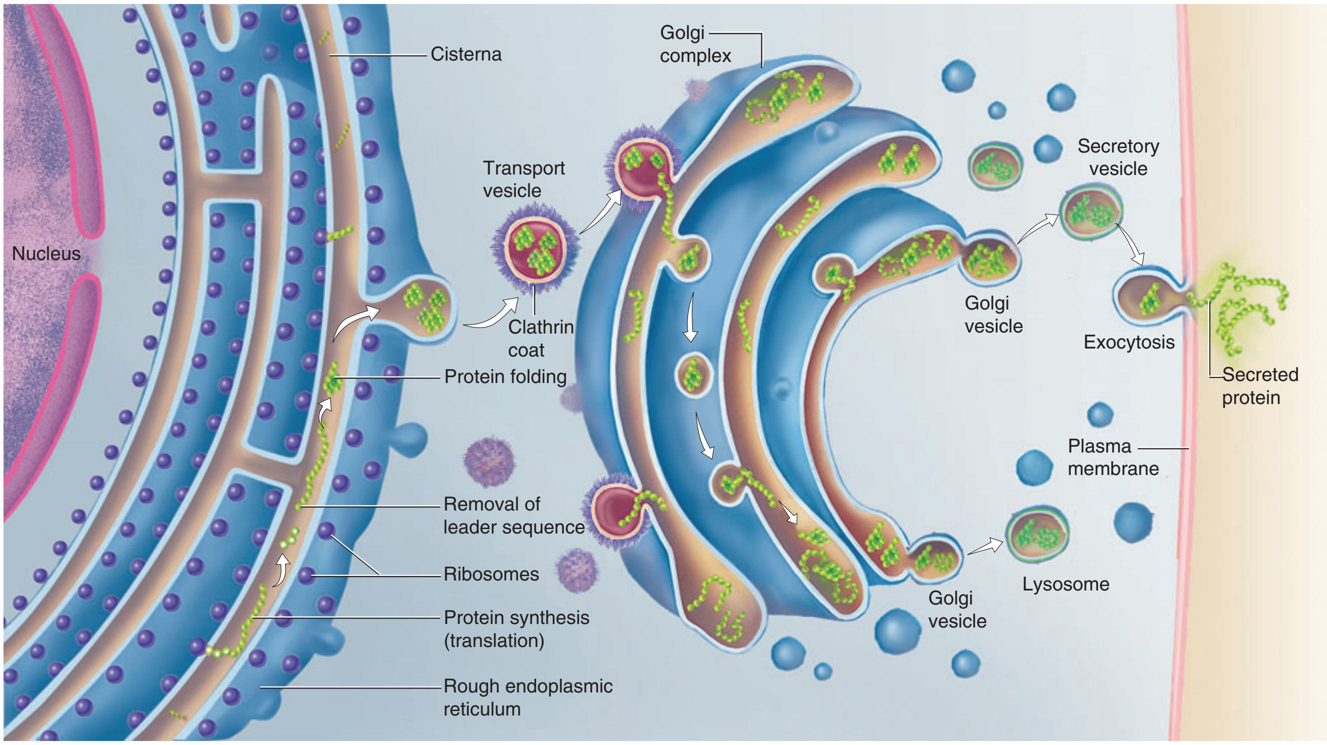


Figure 4.10 **Protein Packaging and Secretion.** Some proteins are synthesized by ribosomes on the rough ER and carried in transport vesicles to the nearest cisterna of the Golgi complex. The Golgi complex modifies the structure of the protein, transferring it from one cisterna to the next, and finally packages it in Golgi vesicles. Some Golgi vesicles may remain within the cell and become lysosomes, while others may migrate to the plasma membrane and release the cell product by exocytosis.

Table 4.3 Some Destinations and Functions of Newly Synthesized Proteins

Destination or Function	Proteins (examples)
Deposited as a structural protein within cells	Actin of cytoskeleton Keratin of epidermis
Used in the cytosol as a metabolic enzyme	ATPase Kinases
Returned to the nucleus for use in nuclear metabolism	Histones of chromatin RNA polymerase
Packaged in lysosomes for autophagy, intracellular digestion, and other functions	Numerous lysosomal enzymes
Delivered to other organelles for intracellular use	Catalase of peroxisomes Mitochondrial enzymes
Delivered to plasma membrane to serve transport and other functions	Hormone receptors Sodium-potassium pumps
Secreted by exocytosis for extracellular functions	Digestive enzymes Casein of breast milk

cell to reproduce one strand based on information in the other. This immediately occurred to Watson and Crick when they discovered the structure of DNA. Watson was hesitant to make such a grandiose claim in their first publication, but Crick implored, "Well, we've got to say *something!* Otherwise people will think these two unknown chaps are so dumb they don't even realize the implications of their own work!" Thus, the last sentence of their first paper modestly stated, "It has not escaped our notice that the specific pairing we have postulated . . . immediately suggests a possible copying mechanism for the genetic material." Five weeks later they published a second paper pressing this point more vigorously.

The basic idea of DNA replication is evident from its base pairing, but the way in which DNA is organized in the chromatin introduces some complications that were not apparent when Watson and Crick first wrote. The fundamental steps of the replication process are as follows:

1. The double helix unwinds from the histones.
2. Like a zipper, an enzyme called **DNA helicase** opens up a short segment of the helix, exposing its nitrogenous bases. The point where one strand of DNA is "unzipped" and separates from its

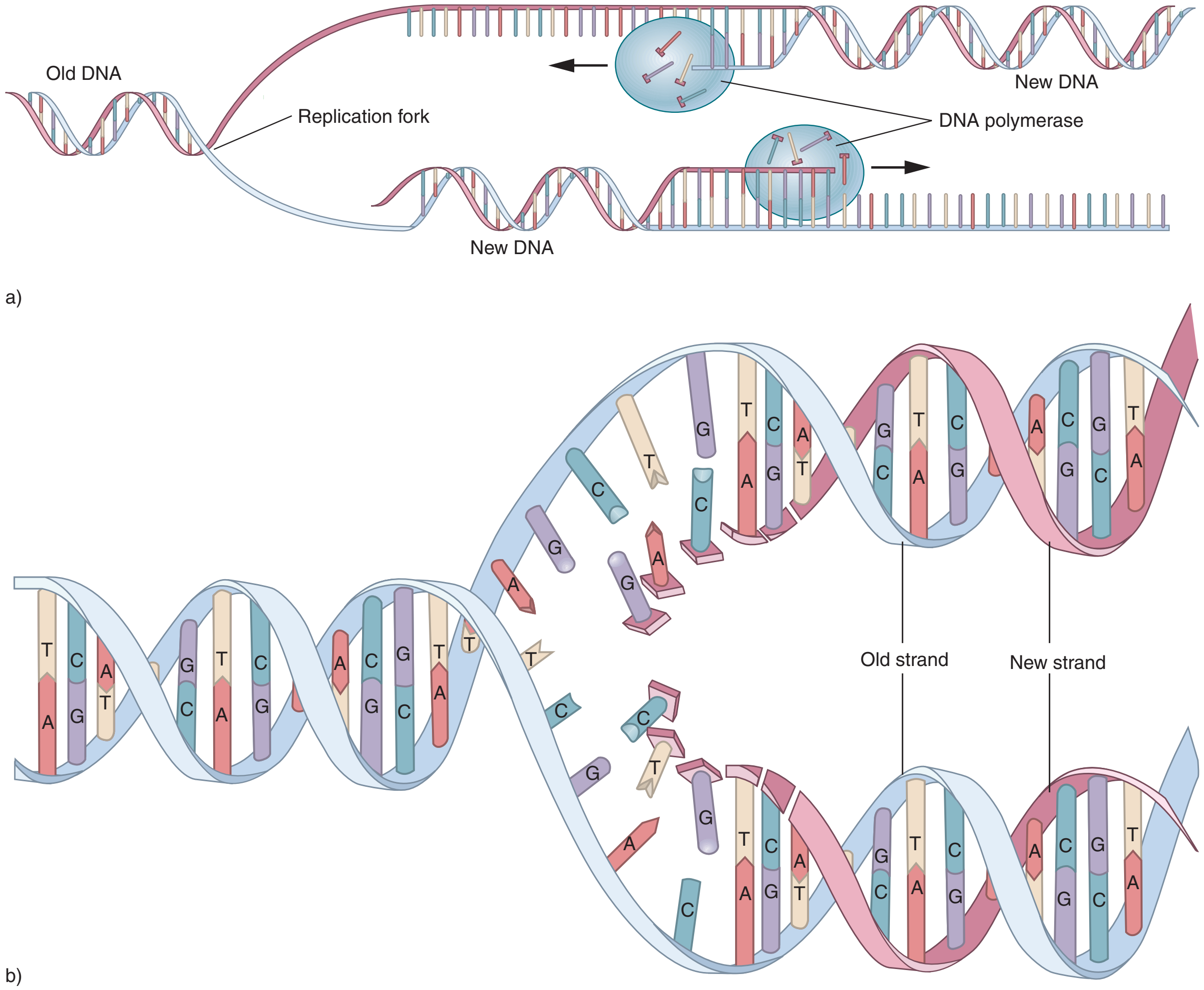


Figure 4.11 **Semiconservative DNA Replication.** (*a*) At the replication fork, DNA helicase (not shown) unwinds the double helix and exposes the bases. DNA polymerases begin assembling new bases across from the existing ones, moving away from the replication fork on one strand and toward it on the other strand. (*b*) The result is two DNA double helices, each composed of one strand of the original DNA and one newly synthesized strand.

complementary strand is called a *replication fork* (fig. 4.11*a*).

3. An enzyme called **DNA polymerase** moves along the opened strands, reads the exposed bases, and like a matchmaker, arranges "marriages" with complementary free nucleotides in the nucleoplasm. If the polymerase finds the sequence TCG, for example, it assembles AGC across from it. One polymerase molecule moves away from the replication fork replicating one strand of the opened DNA, and another polymerase molecule moves in the opposite direction, replicating the other strand. Thus, from the old DNA molecule, two new ones are made. Each new DNA consists of one new helix synthesized from free nucleotides and one helix conserved from the parent DNA (fig. 4.11*b*). The process is therefore called **semiconservative replication.**
4. While DNA is synthesized in the nucleus, new histones are synthesized in the cytoplasm. Millions of histones are transported into the nucleus within a few minutes after DNA replication, and each new DNA helix wraps around them to make new nucleosomes.

Despite the complexity of this process, each DNA polymerase works at an impressive rate of about 100 base pairs per second. Even at this rate, however, it would take weeks for one polymerase molecule to replicate even one chromosome. But in reality, thousands of polymerase molecules work simultaneously on each DNA molecule and all 46 chromosomes are replicated in a mere 6 to 8 hours.

Errors and Mutations

DNA polymerase is fast and accurate, but it makes mistakes. For example, it might read A and place a C across from it where it should have placed a T. In *Escherichia coli,* a bacterial species in which DNA replication has been most thoroughly studied, about three errors occur for every 100,000 bases copied. At this rate of error, every generation of cells would have about 1,000 faulty proteins, coded for by DNA that had been miscopied. To help prevent such catastrophic damage to the organism, the DNA is continuously scanned for errors. After DNA polymerase has replicated a strand, a smaller polymerase comes along, "proofreads" it, and makes corrections where needed—for example, removing C and replacing it with T. This improves the accuracy of replication to one error per billion bases—only one faulty protein for every 10 cell divisions (in *E. coli*).

Changes in DNA structure, called **mutations,**[1] can result from replication errors or environmental factors. Uncorrected mutations can be passed on to the descendants of that cell, but some of them have no adverse effect. One reason is that a new base sequence sometimes codes for the same thing as the old one. For example, ACC and ACG both code for threonine (see table 4.2), so a mutation from C to G in the third place would not change protein structure. Another reason is that a change in protein structure is not always critical to its function. For example, humans and horses differ in 25 of the 146 amino acids that make up their β hemoglobin, yet the hemoglobin is fully functional in both species. Some mutations, however, may kill a cell, turn it cancerous, or cause genetic defects in future generations. When a mutation changes the sixth amino acid of β hemoglobin from glutamic acid to valine, for example, the result is a crippling disorder called sickle-cell disease. Clearly some amino acid substitutions are more critical than others, and this affects the severity of a mutation.

The Cell Cycle

Most cells periodically divide into two daughter cells, so a cell has a life cycle extending from one division to the next. This **cell cycle** (fig. 4.12) is divided into four main phases: G_1, S, G_2, and M.

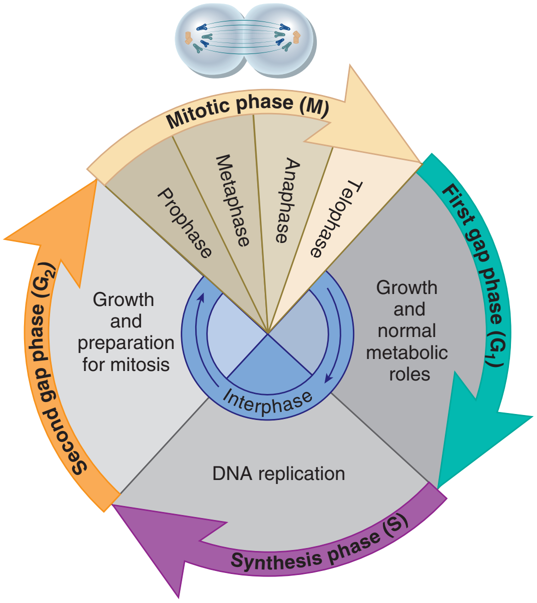


Figure 4.12 **The Cell Cycle.**

G_1 is the **first gap phase,** an interval between cell division and DNA replication. During this time, a cell synthesizes proteins, grows, and carries out its preordained tasks for the body. Almost all of the discussion in this book relates to what cells do in the G_1 phase. Cells in G_1 also begin to replicate their centrioles in preparation for the next cell division and accumulate the materials needed to replicate their DNA in the next phase. In cultured cells called fibroblasts, which divide every 18 to 24 hours, G_1 lasts 8 to 10 hours.

S is the **synthesis phase,** in which a cell carries out DNA replication. This produces two identical sets of DNA molecules, which are then available, like the centrioles, to be divided up between daughter cells at the next cell division. This phase takes 6 to 8 hours in cultured fibroblasts.

G_2, the **second gap phase,** is a relatively brief interval (4 to 6 hours) between DNA replication and cell division. In G_2, a cell finishes replicating its centrioles and synthesizes enzymes that control cell division.

M is the **mitotic phase,** in which a cell replicates its nucleus and then pinches in two to form two new daughter cells. In cultured fibroblasts, the M phase takes 1 to 2 hours. The details of this phase are considered in the next section. Phases G_1, S, and G_2 are collectively called **interphase**—the time between M phases.

The length of the cell cycle varies greatly from one cell type to another. Stomach and skin cells divide rapidly, bone and cartilage cells slowly, and skeletal muscle cells and nerve cells not at all (see insight 4.3). Some cells leave the cell cycle for a "rest" and cease to divide for days, years, or the rest of one's life. Such cells are said to be in the **G_0 (G-zero) phase.** The balance between cells that are actively cycling and those standing by in G_0 is an important factor in determining the number of cells in the body. An inability to stop cycling and enter G_0 is characteristic of cancer cells (see insight 4.4 at the end of the chapter).

---

[1] *muta* = change

Think About It

What is the maximum number of DNA molecules ever contained in a cell over the course of its life cycle? (Assume the cell has only one nucleus.)

Insight 4.3 Clinical Application

Can We Replace Brain Cells?

Until recently, neurons (nerve cells) of the brain were thought to be irreplaceable; when they died, we thought, they were gone forever. We believed, indeed, that there was good reason for this. Motor skills and memories are encoded in intricate neural circuits, and the growth of new neurons might disrupt those circuits. Now we are not so sure.

A chemical called BrDU (bromodeoxyuridine) can be used to trace the birth of new cells, because it becomes incorporated into their DNA. BrDU is too toxic to use ordinarily in human research. However, in cancer patients, BrDU is sometimes used to monitor the growth of tumors. Peter Eriksson, at Göteborg University in Sweden, obtained permission from the families of cancer victims to examine the brain tissue of BrDU-treated patients who had died. In the hippocampus, a region of the brain concerned with memory, he and collaborator Fred Gage found as many as 200 new neurons per cubic millimeter of tissue, and estimated that up to 1,000 new neurons may be born per day even in people in their 50s to 70s. These new neurons apparently arise not by mitosis of mature neurons (which are believed to be incapable of mitosis), but from a reserve pool of embryonic stem cells. It remains unknown whether new neurons are produced late in life in other regions of the brain.

Mitosis

Mitosis (my-TOE-sis), in the sense used here, is the process by which a cell divides into two daughter cells with identical copies of its DNA. (Some define it as division of the nucleus only and do not include the subsequent cell division.) Mitosis has four main functions:

1. formation of a multicellular embryo from a fertilized egg;
2. tissue growth;
3. replacement of old and dead cells; and
4. repair of injured tissues.

Egg and sperm cells are produced by a combination of mitosis and another form of cell division, *meiosis,* described in chapter 27. Otherwise, all cells of the body are produced entirely by mitosis. Four phases of mitosis are recognizable—*prophase, metaphase, anaphase,* and *telophase* (fig. 4.13).

In **prophase,**[2] at the outset of mitosis, the **chromosomes** supercoil into short, dense rods (fig. 4.14) which are easier to distribute to daughter cells than the long, delicate chromatin. A chromosome at this stage consists of two *genetically identical* bodies called **sister chromatids,** joined together at a pinched spot called the **centromere.** At prophase, there are 46 chromosomes, two chromatids per chromosome, and one molecule of DNA in each chromatid. The nuclear envelope disintegrates during prophase and releases the chromosomes into the cytosol. The centrioles begin to sprout elongated microtubules, which push the centrioles apart as they grow. Eventually, a pair of centrioles lies at each pole of the cell.

In **metaphase,**[3] the chromosomes line up at random along the midline of the cell. Microtubules grow toward them from each centriole and some attach to the centromeres. This forms a football-shaped array called the **mitotic spindle.** Shorter microtubules also radiate from each centriole pair to form a star-shaped array called an *aster.*[4] These microtubules anchor the centrioles to the nearby plasma membrane.

In **anaphase,**[5] each centromere divides in two and chromatids separate from each other. Each chromatid is now a chromosome in its own right. These two *daughter chromosomes* migrate to opposite poles of the cell, with their centromeres leading the way and their arms trailing behind. There is some evidence that the spindle fiber acts a little like a railroad track, and a protein complex in the centromere called the **kinetochore**[6] (kih-NEE-toe-core) acts as a molecular motor that propels the chromosome along the track. One of the kinetochore proteins is dynein, the same motor molecule that causes movement of cilia and flagella (see chapter 3). Since sister chromatids are genetically identical, and since each daughter cell receives one chromatid from each metaphase chromosome, you can see why the daughter cells of mitosis are genetically identical.

In **telophase,**[7] the chromosomes cluster on each side of the cell. The rough ER produces a new nuclear envelope around each cluster, and the chromosomes begin to uncoil and return to the thinly dispersed chromatin form. The mitotic spindle breaks up and vanishes. Each new nucleus forms nucleoli, indicating it has already begun making RNA and preparing for protein synthesis.

Telophase is the end of nuclear division but overlaps with **cytokinesis**[8] (SY-toe-kih-NEE-sis), division of the cytoplasm. Cytokinesis is achieved by the motor protein myosin pulling on microfilaments of actin in the membrane skeleton. This creates a crease called the *cleavage furrow* around the equator of the cell, and the cell eventually pinches in two. Interphase has now begun for these new cells.

---

[2] *pro* = first

[3] *meta* = next in a series

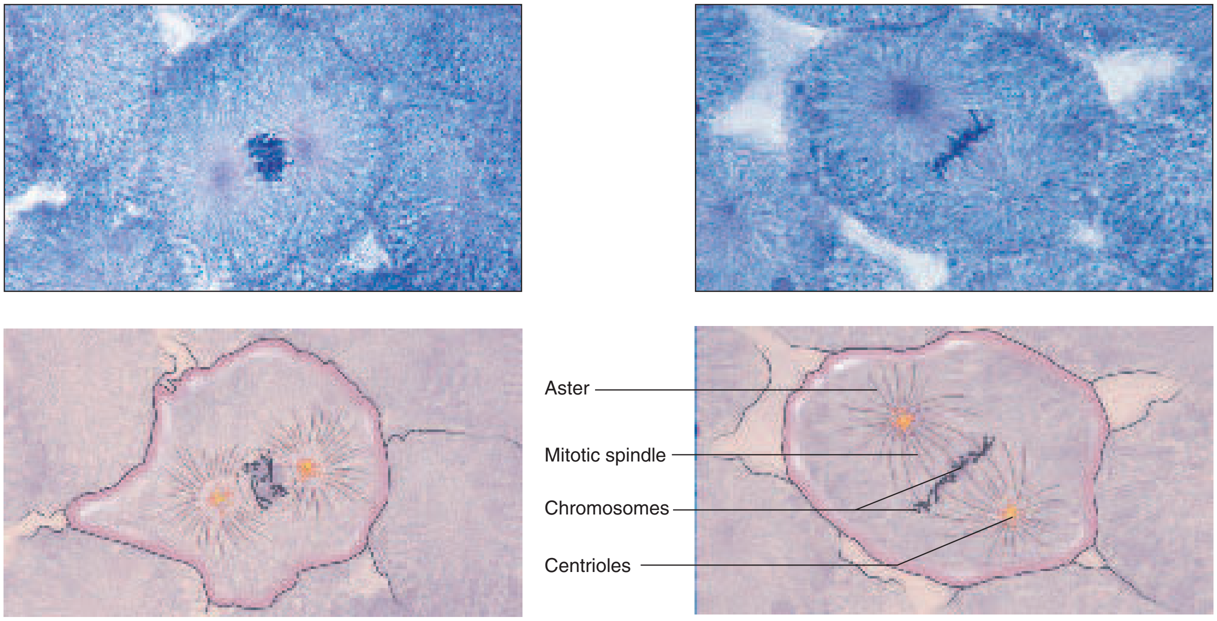
[4] *aster* = star

[5] *ana* = apart

[6] *kineto* = motion + *chore* = place

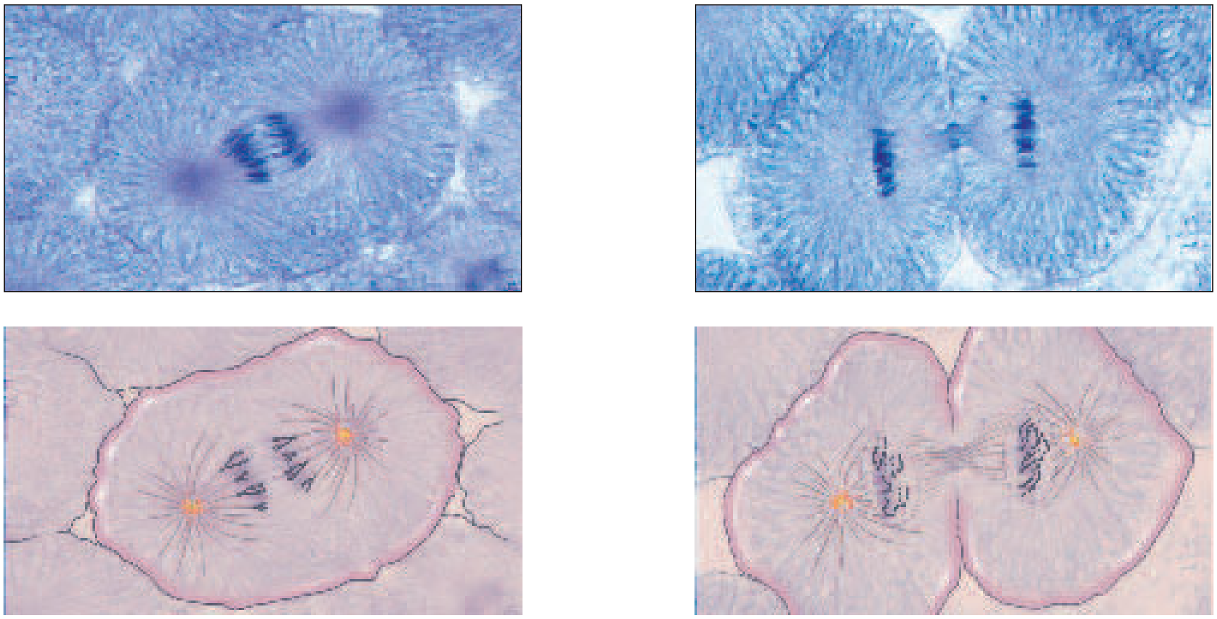
[7] *telo* = end, final

[8] *cyto* = cell + *kinesis* = action, motion



Prophase
Chromatin condenses into chromosomes.
Nucleoli and nuclear envelope break down.
Spindle fibers grow from centrioles.
Centrioles migrate to opposite poles of cell.

Metaphase
Chromosomes lie along midline of cell.
Some spindle fibers attach to kinetochores.
Fibers of aster attach to plasma membrane.



Anaphase
Centromeres divide in two.
Spindle fibers pull sister chromatids to opposite poles of cell.
Each pole (future daughter cell) now has an identical set of genes.

Telophase
Chromosomes gather at each pole of cell.
Chromatin decondenses.
New nuclear envelope appears at each pole.
New nucleoli appear in each nucleus.
Mitotic spindle vanishes.
(Above photo also shows cytokinesis.)

Figure 4.13 **Mitosis.** The photographs show mitosis in whitefish eggs, where chromosomes are relatively easy to observe. The drawings show a hypothetical cell with only two chromosome pairs; in humans, there are 23 pairs.

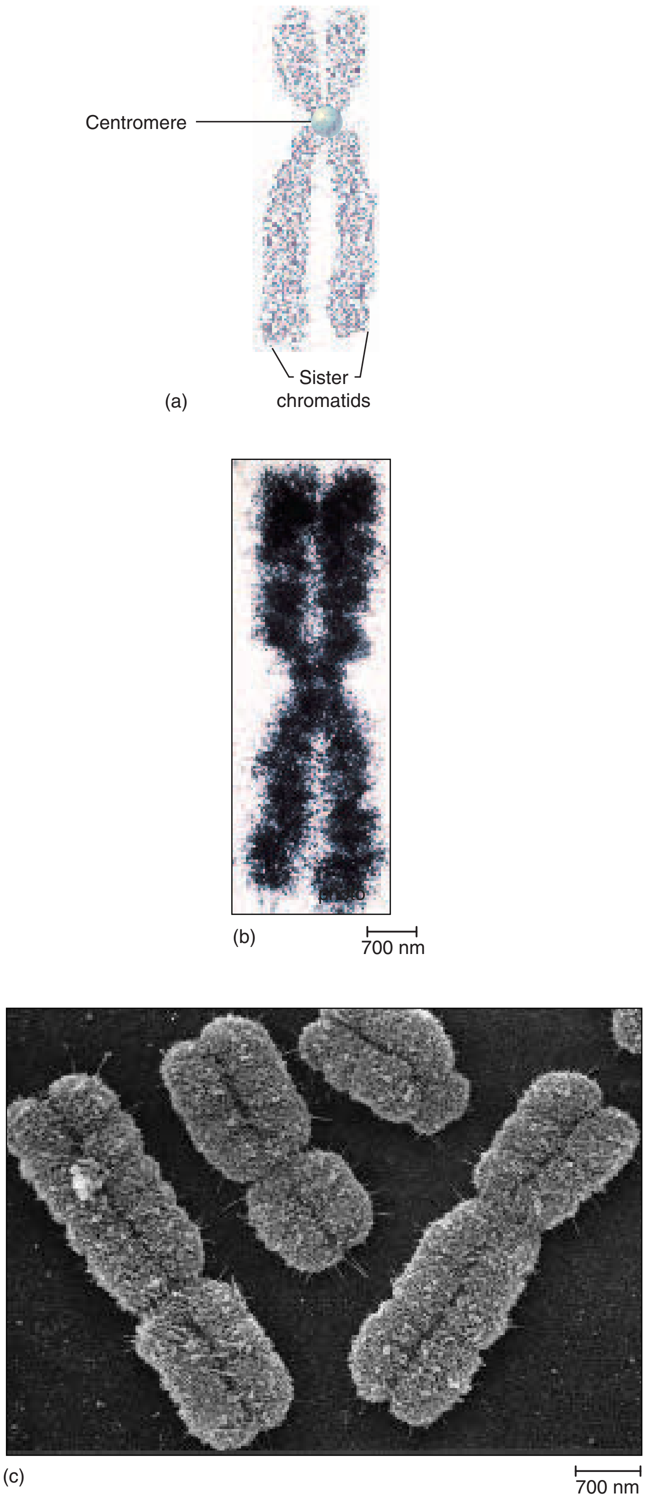


Figure 4.14 **Chromosome Structure.** (*a*) A metaphase chromosome. (*b*) Transmission electron micrograph. (*c*) Scanning electron micrograph.

Timing of Cell Division

One of the most important questions in biology is what signals cells when to divide and when to stop. The activation and inhibition of cell division are subjects of intense research for obvious reasons such as management of cancer and tissue repair. Cells divide when (1) they grow large enough to have enough cytoplasm to distribute to their two daughter cells; (2) they have replicated their DNA, so they can give each daughter cell a duplicate set of genes; (3) they receive an adequate supply of nutrients; (4) they are stimulated by **growth factors,** chemical signals secreted by blood platelets, kidney cells, and other sources; or (5) neighboring cells die, opening up space in a tissue to be occupied by new cells. Cells stop dividing when nutrients or growth factors are withdrawn or when they snugly contact neighboring cells. The cessation of cell division in response to contact with other cells is called **contact inhibition.**

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

10. Describe the genetic roles of DNA helicase and DNA polymerase. Contrast the function of DNA polymerase with that of RNA polymerase.
11. Explain why DNA replication is called *semiconservative.*
12. Define *mutation.* Explain why some mutations are harmless and others can be lethal.
13. List the stages of the cell cycle and summarize what occurs in each one.
14. Describe the structure of a chromosome at metaphase.

Chromosomes and Heredity

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the paired arrangement of chromosomes in the human karyotype;
- define *allele* and discuss how alleles affect the traits of an individual; and
- discuss the interaction of heredity and environment in producing individual traits.

Heredity is the transmission of genetic characteristics from parent to offspring. Several traits and diseases discussed in the forthcoming chapters are hereditary: baldness, blood types, color blindness, and hemophilia, for example. Thus it is appropriate at this point to lay the groundwork for these discussions by introducing a few basic principles of normal heredity. Hereditary defects are described in chapter 29 along with nonhereditary birth defects.

The Karyotype

A **karyotype** (fig. 4.15) is a chart of the chromosomes isolated from a cell at metaphase, arranged in order by size and structure. It reveals that most human cells, with the exception of germ cells (described shortly), contain 23 pairs of similar-looking chromosomes (except for X and Y chromosomes). The two chromosomes in each pair are called **homologous**[9] (ho-MOLL-uh-gus) **chromosomes.** One is inherited from the mother and one from the father. Two chromosomes, designated X and Y, are called **sex chromosomes** and the other 22 pairs are called **autosomes** (AW-toe-somes). A female normally has a homologous pair of X chromosomes, whereas a male has one X chromosome and a much smaller Y chromosome.

Think About It

Why would a cell in metaphase be more useful than a cell in interphase for producing a karyotype?

The paired state of the homologous chromosomes results from the fact that a sperm cell bearing 23 chromosomes fertilizes an egg, which also has 23. Sperm and egg cells, and the cells on their way to becoming sperm and eggs, are called **germ cells.** All other cells of the body are called **somatic cells.** Somatic cells are described as **diploid**[10] because their chromosomes are in homologous pairs, whereas germ cells beyond a certain stage of development are **haploid,**[11] meaning they contain half as many chromosomes as the somatic cells. In meiosis (see chapter 27), homologous chromosomes become *segregated* from each other into separate daughter cells leading to the hap-

---

[9] *homo* = same + *log* = relation

[10] *diplo* = double

[11] *haplo* = half

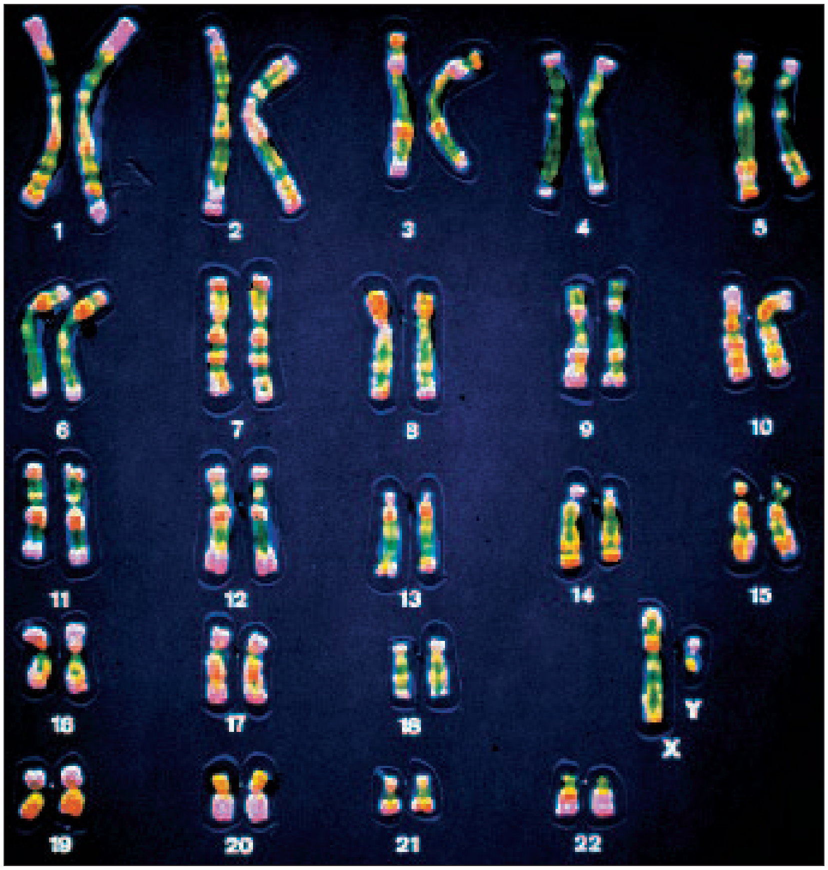


Figure 4.15 Karyotype of a Normal Human Male. This is a false-color micrograph of chromosomes stained to accentuate their banding patterns. The two chromosomes of each homologous pair exhibit similar size, shape, and banding.

How would this karyotype differ if it were from a female?

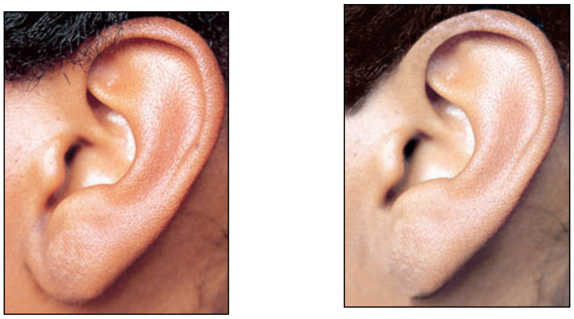
loid sex cells. At fertilization, one set of *paternal* (sperm) chromosomes unites with one set of *maternal* (egg) chromosomes, restoring the diploid number to the fertilized egg and the somatic cells that arise from it. Although the two chromosomes of a homologous pair appear to be identical, they come from different parents and therefore are not *genetically* identical.

Genes and Alleles

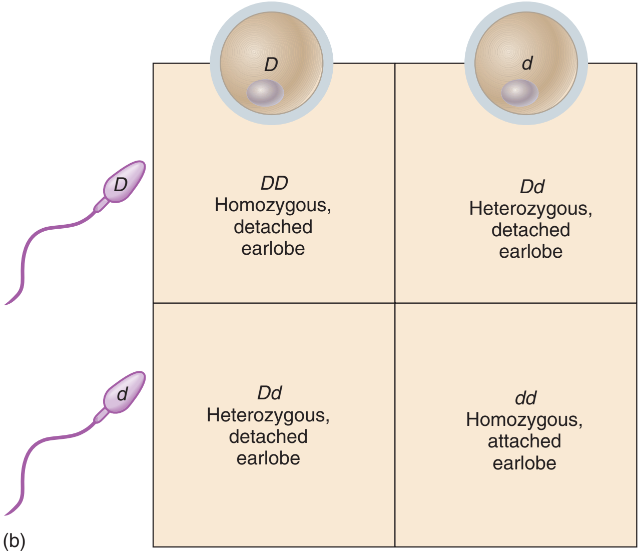
Each chromosome carries many genes. The location of a particular gene on a chromosome is called its **locus.** Homologous chromosomes have the same gene at the same locus, although they may carry different forms of that gene, called **alleles**[12] (ah-LEELS), which produce alternative forms of a particular trait. Frequently, one allele is **dominant** and the other one **recessive.** If at least one chromosome carries the dominant allele, the corresponding trait is usually detectable in the individual. A dominant allele masks the effect of any recessive allele that may be present. Recessive alleles are therefore expressed only when present on both of the homologous chromosomes—that is, when the individual has no dominant allele at that locus. Typically, but not always, dominant alleles code for a normal, functional protein and recessive alleles for a nonfunctional variant of the protein.

The shape of the outer ear presents an example of dominant and recessive genetic effects. When the ears are developing in a fetus, a "death signal" is often activated in cells that attach the earlobe to the side of the head. These cells die, causing the earlobe to separate from the head. A person will then have "detached earlobes." This occurs in people who have either one or two copies of a dominant allele which we will denote *D.* If both homologous chromosomes have the recessive version of this gene, *d,* the cell suicide program is not activated, and the earlobes remain attached (fig. 4.16*a*). (It is customary to represent a dominant allele with a capital letter and a recessive allele with its lowercase equivalent.)

Individuals with two identical alleles, such as *DD* or *dd,* are said to be **homozygous**[13] (HO-mo-ZY-gus) for that trait. If the homologous chromosomes have different alleles for that gene (*Dd*), the individual is **heterozygous**[14] (HET-er-oh-ZY-gus). The alleles that an individual possesses for a particular trait constitute the **genotype** (JEE-no-type). A detectable trait such as attached or detached earlobes, resulting either from the genotype or from environmental influences, is called the **phenotype**[15] (FEE-no-type).



(a) Detached earlobe *DD, Dd* Attached earlobe *dd*



(b)

Figure 4.16 Genetics of Attached and Detached Earlobes. (*a*) Detached earlobes occur if even one allele of the pair is dominant (*D*). Attached earlobes occur only when both alleles are recessive (*d*). (*b*) A Punnett square shows why such a trait can "skip a generation." Both parents in this case have heterozygous genotypes (*Dd*) and detached earlobes, but there is a one in four chance that their offspring could have attached earlobes. Each parent is a carrier for attached earlobes.

We say that an allele is *expressed* if it shows in the phenotype of an individual. Earlobe allele *d* is expressed only when it is present in a homozygous state *(dd);* allele *D* is expressed whether it is homozygous *(DD)* or heterozygous *(Dd).* The only way most recessive alleles can be expressed is for an individual to inherit them from both parents.

Recessive traits can "skip" one or more generations. A diagram called a *Punnett square* (fig. 4.16*b*) shows how two heterozygous parents with detached earlobes can produce a child with attached lobes. Across the top are the two genetically possible types of eggs the mother could produce, and on the left side are the possible types of sperm from the father. The four cells of the square show the genotypes and phenotypes that would result from each possible combination of sperm and egg. You can see that three of the possible combinations would produce a child with detached lobes (genotypes *DD* and *Dd*), but one combination *(dd)* would produce a child with attached lobes. Therefore, the attached-lobe trait skipped the parental generation in this case but could be expressed in their child.

---

[12] *allo* = different
[13] *homo* = same + *zyg* = union, joined
[14] *hetero* = different
[15] *pheno* = showing, evident

This phenomenon becomes more significant when parents are heterozygous **carriers** of hereditary diseases such as cystic fibrosis—individuals who carry a recessive allele and may pass it on, but do not phenotypically express it in themselves. For some hereditary diseases, tests are available to detect carriers and allow couples to weigh their risk of having children with genetic disorders. *Genetic counselors* perform genetic testing or refer clients for tests, advise couples on the probability of transmitting genetic diseases, and assist people in coping with genetic disease.

Think About It

Would it be possible for a woman with attached earlobes to have children with detached lobes? Use a Punnett square and one or more hypothetical genotypes for the father to demonstrate your point.

Multiple Alleles, Codominance, and Incomplete Dominance

Some genes exist in more than two allelic forms—that is, there are **multiple alleles** within the collective genetic makeup, or **gene pool,** of the population as a whole. For example, there are over 100 alleles responsible for cystic fibrosis, and there are 3 alleles for ABO blood types. Two of the ABO blood type alleles are dominant and symbolized with a capital *I* (for *immunoglobulin*) and a superscript: I^A and I^B. There is one recessive allele, symbolized with a lowercase *i.* Which two alleles one inherits determines the blood type, as follows:

Genotype	**Phenotype**
I^AI^A	Type A
I^Ai	Type A
I^BI^B	Type B
I^Bi	Type B
I^AI^B	Type AB
ii	Type O

Think About It

Why can't one person have all three of the ABO alleles?

Some alleles are equally dominant, or **codominant.** When both of them are present, both are phenotypically expressed. For example, a person who inherits allele I^A from one parent and I^B from the other has blood type AB. These alleles code for enzymes that produce the surface glycoproteins of red blood cells. Type AB means that both A and B glycoproteins are present, and type O means that neither of them is present.

Other alleles exhibit **incomplete dominance.** When two different alleles are present, the phenotype is intermediate between the traits that each allele would produce alone. *Familial hypercholesterolemia,* the disease discussed in insight 3.3 (p. 113), is a good example. Individuals with two abnormal alleles die of heart attacks in childhood, those with only one abnormal allele typically die as young adults, and those with two normal alleles have normal life expectancies. Thus, the heterozygous individuals suffer an effect between the two extremes.

Polygenic Inheritance and Pleiotropy

Polygenic (multiple-gene) inheritance (fig. 4.17*a*) is a phenomenon in which genes at two or more loci, or even on different chromosomes, contribute to a single phenotypic trait. Human eye and skin colors are normal polygenic traits, for example. They result from the combined expression of all the genes for each trait. Several diseases are also thought to stem from polygenic inheritance, including some forms of alcoholism, mental illness, cancer, and heart disease.

Pleiotropy (ply-OT-roe-pee) (fig. 4.17*b*) is a phenomenon in which one gene produces multiple phenotypic effects. Sickle-cell disease, for example, is caused by a recessive allele that changes one amino acid in

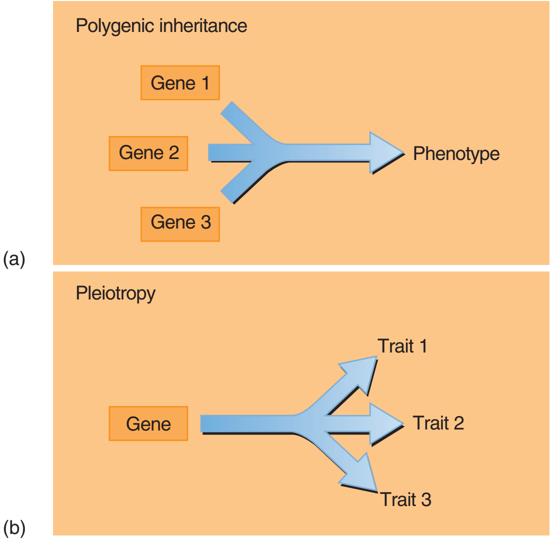


Figure 4.17 **Polygenic Inheritance and Pleiotropy.** (*a*) In polygenic inheritance, two or more genes combine their effects to produce a single phenotypic trait, such as skin color. (*b*) In pleiotropy, a single gene causes multiple phenotypic traits, as in sickle-cell disease.

hemoglobin. It causes red blood cells (RBCs) to assume an abnormally elongated, pointed shape when oxygen levels are low, and it makes them sticky and fragile. As RBCs rupture, a person becomes anemic and the spleen becomes enlarged. Because of the deficiency of RBCs, the blood carries insufficient oxygen to the tissues, resulting in multiple, far-reaching effects on different parts of the body (see chapter 18).

Sex Linkage

Sex-linked traits are carried on the X or Y chromosome and therefore tend to be inherited by one sex more than the other. Men are more likely than women to have red-green color blindness or hemophilia, for example, because the allele for each is recessive and located on the X chromosome *(X-linked).* Women have two X chromosomes. If a woman inherits the recessive hemophilia allele *(h)* on one of her X chromosomes, there is still a good chance that her other X chromosome will carry a dominant allele *(H). H* codes for normal blood-clotting proteins, so her blood clots normally. Men, on the other hand, have only one X chromosome and normally express any recessive allele found there (fig. 4.18). Ironically, even though this hemophilia is far more common among men than women, a man can inherit it only from his mother. Why? Because only his mother contributes an X chromosome to him. If he inherits *h* on his mother's X chromosome, he will have hemophilia. He has no "second chance" to inherit a normal allele on a second X chromosome. A woman, however, gets an X chromosome from both parents. Even if one parent transmits the recessive allele to her, the chances are high that she will inherit a normal allele from her other parent. She would have to have the extraordinarily bad luck to inherit it from both parents in order for her to have a trait such as hemophilia or red-green color blindness.

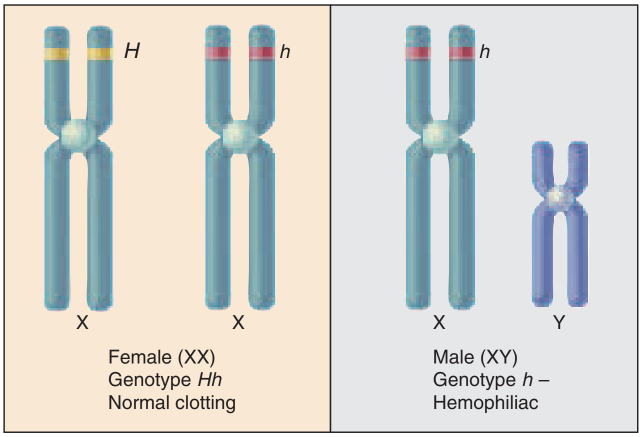


Figure 4.18 **Sex-linked Inheritance of Hemophilia.** *Left:* A female who inherits a recessive allele (*h*) for hemophilia from one parent may not exhibit the trait, because she is likely to inherit the dominant allele (*H*) for a normal blood-clotting protein from her other parent. *Right:* A male who inherits *h* from his mother will exhibit hemophilia, because the Y chromosome inherited from his father does not have a gene locus for the clotting protein, and therefore has no ability to mask the effect of *h.*

The X chromosome is thought to carry about 260 genes, most of which have nothing to do with determining an individual's sex. There are so few functional genes on the Y chromosome—concerned mainly with development of the testes—that virtually all sex-linked traits are associated with the X chromosome.

Penetrance and Environmental Effects

People do not inevitably exhibit the phenotypes that would be predicted from their genotypes. For example, there is a dominant allele that causes *polydactyly,*[16] the presence of extra fingers or toes. We might predict that since it is dominant, anyone who inherited the allele would exhibit this trait. Most do, but others known to have the allele have the normal number of digits. **Penetrance** is the percentage of a population with a given genotype that actually exhibits the predicted phenotype. If 80% of people with the polydactyly allele actually exhibit extra digits, the allele has 80% penetrance.

Another reason the connection between genotype and phenotype is not inevitable is that environmental factors play an important role in the expression of all genes. At the very least, all gene expression depends on nutrition (fig. 4.19). Children born with the hereditary disease *phenylketonuria* (FEN-il-KEE-toe-NEW-ree-uh) *(PKU),* for example, become retarded if they eat a normal diet. However, if PKU is detected early, a child can be placed on a diet low in phenylalanine (an amino acid) and achieve normal mental development.

No gene can produce a phenotypic effect without nutritional and other environmental input, and no nutrients can produce a body or specific phenotype without genetic instructions that tell cells what to do with them. Just as you need both a recipe and ingredients to make a cake, it takes both heredity and environment to make a phenotype.

Dominant and Recessive Alleles at the Population Level

It is a common misconception that dominant alleles must be more common in the gene pool than recessive alleles.

---

[16] *poly* = many + *dactyl* = fingers, toes

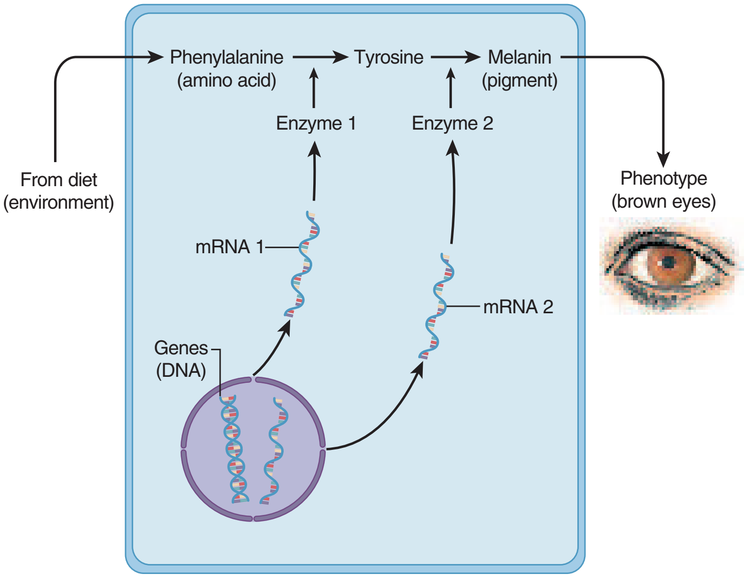


Figure 4.19 **The Roles of Environment and Heredity in Producing a Phenotype.** Brown eye color requires phenylalanine from the diet (environment) and two genetically coded (hereditary) enzymes to convert phenylalanine to melanin, the eye pigment.

Table 4.4 Basic Terminology of Genetics

Term	Definition
Gene	A segment of DNA that codes for a polypeptide
Genome	All genes possessed by one individual
Gene pool	All alleles present in a population
Homologous chromosomes	Two physically identical chromosomes with the same gene loci but not necessarily the same alleles; one is of maternal origin and the other paternal
Sex chromosomes	Two chromosomes (X and Y) that determine a person's sex
Autosomes	All chromosomes except the sex chromosomes; occur in 22 homologous pairs
Locus	The site on a chromosome where a particular gene is located
Allele	Any of the alternative forms that a particular gene can take
Genotype	The alleles that a person possesses for a particular trait
Phenotype	A detectable trait, such as eye color or blood type
Recessive allele	An allele that is not phenotypically expressed in the presence of a dominant allele; represented with a lowercase letter
Dominant allele	An allele that is phenotypically expressed even in the presence of any other allele; represented with a capital letter
Homozygous	Having identical alleles for a given gene
Heterozygous	Having two different alleles for a given gene
Carrier	A person who carries a recessive allele but does not phenotypically express it
Codominance	A condition in which two alleles are both fully expressed when present in the same individual
Incomplete dominance	A condition in which two alleles are both expressed when present in the same individual, and the phenotype is intermediate between those which each allele would produce alone
Polygenic inheritance	A condition in which a single phenotype results from the combined action of genes at two or more different loci, as in eye color
Pleiotropy	A condition in which a single gene produces multiple phenotypic effects, as in sickle-cell disease
Sex linkage	Inheritance of a gene on the X or Y chromosome, so that the associated phenotype is expressed more in one sex than in the other
Penetrance	The percentage of individuals with a given genotype who actually exhibit the phenotype predicted from it

The truth is that dominance and recessiveness have little to do with how common an allele is. For example, type O is the most common ABO blood type in North America, but it is caused by the recessive allele *i*. Blood type AB, caused by the two dominant ABO alleles, is the rarest. Polydactyly, caused by a dominant allele, also is rare in the population.

Definitions of some basic genetic terms are summarized in table 4.4.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

15. Why must the carrier of a genetic disease be heterozygous?
16. State at least three reasons why a person's phenotype can't always be determined from the genotype.
17. A man can inherit color blindness only from his mother, whereas a woman must inherit it from both her father and mother to show the trait. Explain this apparent paradox.
18. Cover the left side of table 4.4 with a blank strip of paper, look at the definitions, and fill in the term to which each definition refers. Check your spelling.

Insight 4.4 Clinical Application

Cancer

Proper tissue development depends on a balance between cell division and cell death. When cells multiply faster than they die, they sometimes produce abnormal growths called tumors, or *neoplasms.*[17] The study of tumors is called *oncology.*[18] *Benign*[19] (beh-NINE) tumors are surrounded by a connective tissue capsule, grow slowly, and do not spread to other organs. They are still potentially lethal—even slow-growing tumors can kill by compressing brain tissue, nerves, blood vessels, or airways. The term *cancer* refers to *malignant*[20] (muh-LIG-nent) tumors, which are unencapsulated, fast-growing, and spread easily to other organs by way of the blood or lymph. The word *cancer*[21] dates to Hippocrates, who compared the distended veins in some breast tumors to the outstretched legs of a crab. Malignant cells exhibit no contact inhibition or respect for tissue boundaries; they readily grow into other tissues and replace healthy cells. About 90% of cancer deaths result from this spreading, called *metastasis*[22] (meh-TASS-tuh-sis), rather than from the primary (original) tumor.

Cancer is classified according to the cells or tissues in which the tumor originates:

Name	Origin
Carcinoma	Epithelial cells
Melanoma	Pigment-producing skin cells (melanocytes)
Sarcoma	Bone, other connective tissue, or muscle
Leukemia	Blood-forming tissues
Lymphoma	Lymph nodes

Causes of Cancer

The World Health Organization estimates that 60% to 70% of cancer is caused by environmental agents called *carcinogens*[23] (car-SIN-oh-jens). These fall into three categories:

1. Chemicals such as cigarette tar, nitrites and other food preservatives, and numerous industrial chemicals.
2. Radiation such as γ rays, α particles, β particles, and ultraviolet radiation.
3. Viruses such as type 2 herpes simplex (implicated in some cases of uterine cancer) and hepatitis C (implicated in some liver cancer).

Carcinogens are *mutagens*[24] (MEW-tuh-jens)—they trigger gene mutations. We have several defenses against mutagens: (1) scavenger cells may remove them before they cause genetic damage; (2) peroxisomes neutralize nitrites, free radicals, and other carcinogenic oxidizing agents; and (3) nuclear enzymes detect and repair damaged DNA. If these mechanisms fail, or if they are overworked by heavy exposure to mutagens, a cell may die of genetic damage, it may be recognized and destroyed by the immune system before it can multiply, or it may multiply and produce a tumor. Even then, tumors may be destroyed by a substance called *tumor necrosis factor (TNF),* secreted by macrophages and certain white blood cells.

Growth Factors and Cancer Genes

Cancer researchers have linked many forms of cancer to abnormal growth factors or growth factor receptors. Most cells cannot divide unless a growth factor binds to a receptor on their surface. When a growth factor binds to its receptor, the receptor activates cell-division enzymes in the cell. This stimulates a cell to leave the G_0 phase, undergo mitosis, and develop *(differentiate)* into various kinds of mature, functional cells.

Two types of genes have been identified as responsible for malignant tumors—oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes. *Oncogenes* are mutated, "misbehaving" forms of normal genes called proto-oncogenes. Healthy proto-oncogenes code for growth-factors or growth-factor receptors, whereas mutated oncogenes cause malfunctions in the growth-factor mechanism. An oncogene called *sis,* for example, causes excessive secretion of growth factors that stimulate blood vessels to grow into a tumor and supply it with the rich blood supply that it requires. An oncogene known as *ras,* responsible for about one-quarter of human cancers, codes for abnormal growth-factor receptors. These receptors act like a switch stuck in the on position, sending constant cell division signals even when there is no growth factor bound to them. Many cases of breast and ovarian cancer are caused by an oncogene called *erbB2.*

Tumor suppressor (TS) genes inhibit the development of cancer. They may act by opposing the action of oncogenes, promoting DNA repair, or controlling the normal histological organization of tissues, which is notably lacking in malignancies. A TS gene called *p16* acts by inhibiting one of the enzymes that drives the cell cycle. Thus, if oncogenes are like the "accelerator" of the cell cycle, then TS genes are like the "brake." Like other genes, TS genes occur in *homologous pairs,* and even one normal TS gene in a pair is sometimes sufficient to suppress cancer. Damage to both members of a pair, however, removes normal controls over cell division and tends to trigger cancer. The first TS gene discovered was the *Rb* gene, which causes *retinoblastoma,* an eye cancer of infants. Retinoblastoma occurs only if both copies of the *Rb* gene are damaged. In the case of a TS gene called *p53,* however, damage to just one copy is enough to trigger cancer. Gene p53 is a large gene vulnerable to many cancer-causing mutations; it is involved in leukemia and in colon, lung, breast, liver, brain, and esophageal tumors.

Cancer often occurs only when several mutations have accumulated at different gene sites. Colon cancer, for example, requires damage to at least three TS genes on chromosomes 5, 17, and 18 and activation of an oncogene on chromosome 12. It takes time for so many mutations to accumulate, and this is one reason why colon cancer afflicts elderly people more than the young. In addition, the longer we live, the more carcinogens we are exposed to, the less efficient our DNA and tissue repair mechanisms become, and the less effective our immune system is at recognizing and destroying malignant cells.

The Lethal Effects of Cancer

Cancer is almost always fatal if it is not treated. Malignant tumors can kill in several ways:

- Cancer displaces normal tissue, so the function of the affected organ deteriorates. Lung cancer, for example, can destroy so much tissue that oxygenation of the blood becomes inadequate to support life. You might think that an increased number of cells in an organ such as the liver would enable it to function better. In malignant tumors, however, the cells are in an immature state and unable to carry out the functions of mature cells of the same organ. Also, a tumor often consists of cells that have metastasized from elsewhere and are not typical of the host organ anyway. A colon cancer whose malignant cells have metastasized to the liver, for example, replaces liver tissue but cannot perform any of the liver's essential functions.
- Tumors can invade blood vessels, causing fatal hemorrhages.
- Tumors can block vital passageways. The growth of a tumor can put pressure on a bronchus of the lung, obstructing air flow and causing pulmonary collapse, or it can compress a major blood vessel, reducing the delivery of blood to a vital organ or its return to the heart.
- Tumors have a high metabolic rate and compete with healthy tissues for nutrition. Other organs of the body may even break down their own proteins to nourish the tumor. This leads to general weakness, fatigue, emaciation, and susceptibility to infections. Some forms of cancer cause *cachexia* (ka-KEX-ee-ah), an extreme wasting away of muscular and adipose tissue that cannot be corrected with nutritional therapy.

---

[17] *neo* = new + *plasm* = growth, formation
[18] *onco* = tumor + *logy* = study of
[19] *benign* = mild, gentle
[20] *mal* = bad
[21] *cancer* = crab
[22] *meta* = beyond + *stasis* = being stationary
[23] *carcino* = cancer + *gen* = producing
[24] *muta* = change + *gen* = producing

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

The Nucleic Acids (p. 130)

1. The *chromatin* in a cell nucleus is composed of DNA and protein. The chromatin is elaborately coiled to prevent damage to the DNA.
2. Nucleic acids are polymers of nucleotides. A nucleotide is composed of a sugar, a phosphate group, and a nitrogenous base.
3. Cytosine (C), thymine (T), and uracil (U) are single-ringed nitrogenous bases called *pyrimidines.* Adenine (A) and guanine (G) are double-ringed bases called *purines.*
4. The DNA molecule is like a twisted ladder, with backbones of sugar (deoxyribose) and phosphate, and "rungs" of paired bases in the middle. A base pair is always A-T or C-G (DNA contains no uracil).
5. DNA codes for the amino acid sequences of polypeptides. A *gene* is a segment of DNA that codes for one polypeptide. All the genes in one person are the *genome.*
6. Three types of RNA—mRNA, rRNA, and tRNA—carry out protein synthesis.
7. RNA is much smaller than DNA and consists of just one nucleotide chain. Except in some regions of tRNA, its bases are unpaired. RNA contains ribose in place of deoxyribose, and uracil in place of thymine.

Protein Synthesis and Secretion (p. 134)

1. DNA directly controls polypeptide structure and indirectly controls the synthesis of other molecules by coding for the enzymes that make them.
2. Each sequence of three bases in DNA is represented by a complementary three-base *codon* in mRNA. The codons include 61 that code for amino acids and 3 *stop codons* that code for the end of a gene. The *genetic code* is the correspondence between the mRNA codons and the 20 amino acids that they represent.
3. Protein synthesis begins with *transcription,* in which DNA uncoils at the site of a gene and RNA polymerase makes an mRNA mirror-image copy of the gene. mRNA usually leaves the nucleus and binds to a ribosome in the cytoplasm.
4. Protein synthesis continues with *translation,* in which a ribosome binds mRNA, reads the coded message, and assembles the corresponding polypeptide.
5. In the ribosome, rRNA reads the code. tRNA molecules transport amino acids to the ribosome and

contribute them to the growing peptide chain.

6. Older proteins called *chaperones* often bind new proteins, guide their folding into correct secondary and tertiary structure or their conjugation with nonprotein moieties, and escort them to their destinations in a cell.
7. Proteins destined for use in the cytosol are usually made by free ribosomes in the cytoplasm. Proteins destined to be packaged in lysosomes or secretory vesicles enter the rough ER and are modified here and in the Golgi complex. Such alterations are called *posttranslational modification.*

DNA Replication and the Cell Cycle (p. 139)

1. Since every cell division divides a cell's DNA between two daughter cells, the DNA must be replicated before the next division.
2. The enzyme *DNA helicase* prepares DNA for replication by opening up the double helix at several points and exposing the nitrogenous bases.
3. *DNA polymerase* reads the base sequence on each chain of DNA and synthesizes the complementary chain. Thus, the two helices of DNA separate from each other and each acquires a new, complementary helix to become a new, double-helical DNA molecule.
4. Most replication errors are detected and corrected by a second "proofreading" molecule of DNA polymerase. Undetected errors persist as mutations in the genome. Some mutations are harmless but others can cause cell death or diseases such as cancer.
5. Cells have a life cycle, from division to division, of four phases: G_1 S, G_2, and M. G_1 through G_2 are collectively called *interphase* (the period between cell divisions) and M is *mitosis.*
6. Mitosis is responsible for embryonic development, tissue growth, and replacement of old, injured, or dead cells. It occurs in four stages—*prophase, metaphase, anaphase,* and *telophase*—followed by *cytokinesis,* the division of the cytoplasm into two cells.
7. Normal tissue structure depends on a balance between cell division and cell death. Cell division is stimulated by *growth factors* and suppressed by *contact inhibition.*

Chromosomes and Heredity (p. 145)

1. *Heredity* is the transmission of genetic characteristics from parent to offspring.
2. *Germ cells* are developing and mature eggs and sperm. They have 23 unpaired chromosomes and are thus called *haploid* cells.
3. All other cells of the body are called *somatic cells* and are *diploid,* having 46 paired chromosomes. These pairs are shown in the *karyotype,* a chart of metaphase chromosomes arranged in pairs and by size.
4. Many of the fundamental terms and concepts of heredity are defined and summarized in table 4.4.
5. Traits controlled by recessive alleles can "skip a generation" if masked by a dominant allele. Thus, a heterozygous person may lack a certain trait (including some genetic diseases) and yet be a *carrier* who passes it on to future generations.
6. All traits result from a combination of genetic and environmental influences, so the environment affects whether a given genotype is expressed.
7. Whether an allele is dominant or recessive has no relationship to whether it is more or less common in the population.

Selected Vocabulary

nitrogenous base 130
gene 133
messenger RNA (mRNA) 134
ribosomal RNA (rRNA) 134
transfer RNA (tRNA) 134
transcription 136
translation 136
mutation 142
mitosis 143
chromosome 143
growth factor 145
sex chromosome 146
autosome 146
allele 147
dominant 147
recessive 147
homozygous 147
heterozygous 147
carrier 148
sex-linked traits 149

Testing Your Recall

1. Production of more than one phenotypic trait by a single gene is called
   a. pleiotropy.
   b. genetic determinism.
   c. codominance.
   d. penetrance.
   e. genetic recombination.
2. When a ribosome reads a codon on mRNA, it must bind to the ____ of a corresponding tRNA.
   a. start codon
   b. stop codon
   c. intron
   d. exon
   e. anticodon
3. The normal functions of a liver cell—synthesizing proteins, detoxifying wastes, storing glycogen, and so forth—are done during its
   a. anaphase.
   b. telophase.
   c. G_1 phase.
   d. G_2 phase.
   e. synthesis phase.

4. Two genetically identical strands of a metaphase chromosome, joined at the centromere, are its
   a. kinetochores.
   b. centrioles.
   c. sister chromatids.
   d. homologous chromatids.
   e. nucleosomes.

5. Which of the following is *not* found in DNA?
   a. thymine
   b. phosphate
   c. cytosine
   d. deoxyribose
   e. uracil

6. Genetic transcription is performed by
   a. ribosomes.
   b. RNA polymerase.
   c. DNA polymerase.
   d. helicase.
   e. chaperones.

7. A chaperone comes into play in
   a. the folding of a new protein into its tertiary structure.
   b. keeping DNA organized within the nucleus.
   c. escorting sister chromatids to opposite daughter cells during mitosis.
   d. repairing DNA that has been damaged by mutagens.
   e. preventing malignant cells from metastasizing.

8. An allele that is not phenotypically expressed in the presence of an alternative allele of the same gene is said to be
   a. codominant.
   b. lacking penetrance.
   c. heterozygous.
   d. recessive.
   e. subordinate.

9. Semiconservative replication occurs during
   a. transcription.
   b. translation.
   c. posttranslational modification.
   d. the S phase of the cell cycle.
   e. mitosis.

10. Mutagens sometimes cause no harm to cells for all of the following reasons *except*
   a. some mutagens are natural, harmless products of the cell itself.
   b. peroxisomes detoxify some mutagens before they can do any harm.
   c. the body's DNA repair mechanisms detect and correct genetic damage.
   d. change in a codon does not always change the amino acid encoded by it.
   e. some mutations change protein structure in ways that are not critical to normal function.

11. The cytoplasmic division at the end of mitosis is called ______ .

12. The alternative forms in which a single gene can occur are called ______ .

13. The pattern of nitrogenous bases that represents the 20 amino acids of a protein is called the ______ .

14. Several ribosomes attached to one mRNA, which they are all transcribing, form a cluster called a/an ______ .

15. The enzyme that produces pre-mRNA from the instructions in DNA is ______ .

16. Newly synthesized proteins may be escorted to their destination in a cell by other proteins called ______ .

17. At prophase, a cell has ______ chromosomes, ______ chromatids, and ______ molecules of DNA.

18. The cytoplasmic granule of RNA and protein that reads the message in mRNA is a ______ .

19. Cells are stimulated to divide by chemical signals called ______ .

20. All chromosomes except the sex chromosomes are called ______.

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. Proteins destined to be exported from a cell are made by ribosomes on the surface of the Golgi complex.
2. Each of a cell's products—such as steroids, carbohydrates, and phospholipids—is encoded by a separate gene.
3. A molecule of RNA would weigh about half as much as a segment of DNA of the same length.
4. Each amino acid of a protein is represented by a three-base sequence in DNA.
5. From the end of the S phase until anaphase, a chromosome has two chromatids.
6. The law of complementary base pairing describes the way the bases in an mRNA codon pair up with the bases of a tRNA anticodon during translation.
7. Most of the DNA in a human cell does not code for any proteins.
8. Some mutations are harmless.
9. Males have only one sex chromosome whereas females have two.
10. A gene can be transcribed by only one RNA polymerase at a time.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. Why would the supercoiled, condensed form of chromosomes seen in metaphase not be suitable for the G_1 phase of the cell cycle? Why would the finely dispersed chromatin of the G_1 phase not be suitable for mitosis?
2. Suppose the DNA double helix had a backbone of alternating nitrogenous bases and phosphates, with the deoxyribose components facing each other across the middle of the helix. Why couldn't such a molecule function as a genetic code?
3. Given the information in this chapter, present an argument that evolution is not merely possible but inevitable. (Hint: Review the definition of evolution in chapter 1.)
4. What would be the minimum length (approximate number of bases) of an mRNA that coded for a protein 300 amino acids long?
5. Give three examples from this chapter of the complementarity of structure and function.

Answers at the Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Legend Questions

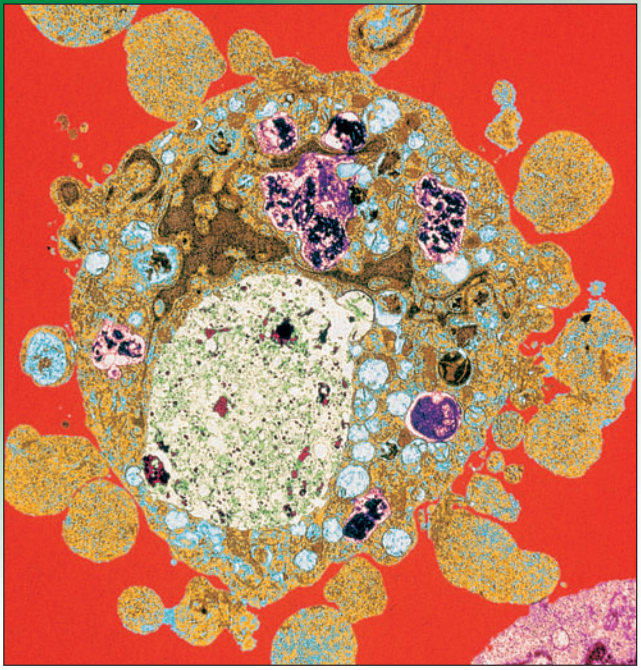
4.3 The helix would bulge outward wherever two purines were paired and cave inward wherever two pyrimidines were paired, so the diameter of the double helix would not be uniform.

4.6 The ribosome would have no way of holding the partially completed peptide in place while adding the next amino acid.

4.15 There would be two identical-looking X chromosomes instead of an X and a Y.

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.



A cell undergoing apoptosis (programmed cell death) (TEM)

CHAPTER 5

Histology

CHAPTER OUTLINE

The Study of Tissues 158
- The Primary Tissue Classes 158
- Embryonic Tissues 158
- Interpreting Tissue Sections 158

Epithelial Tissue 160
- Simple Epithelia 161
- Stratified Epithelia 161

Connective Tissue 166
- Overview 166
- Fibrous Connective Tissue 166
- Cartilage 172
- Bone 172
- Blood 175

Nervous and Muscular Tissue—Excitable Tissues 175
- Nervous Tissue 175
- Muscular Tissue 175

Intercellular Junctions, Glands, and Membranes 178
- Intercellular Junctions 178
- Glands 179
- Membranes 182

Tissue Growth, Development, Death, and Repair 183
- Changes in Tissue Type 183
- Tissue Growth 183
- Tissue Shrinkage and Death 183
- Tissue Repair 185

Chapter Review 187

INSIGHTS

5.1 **Clinical Application:** Marfan Syndrome—A Connective Tissue Disease 172
5.2 **Clinical Application:** Pemphigus Vulgaris—An Autoimmune Disease 179
5.3 **Clinical Application:** Keloids 185
5.4 **Clinical Application:** The Stem Cell Controversy 186

Brushing Up

To understand this chapter, it is important that you understand or brush up on the following concepts:

- Body cavities and membranes (p. 36)
- Glycoproteins and proteoglycans (p. 75)
- Terminology of cell shapes (p. 94)
- Secretory vesicles and exocytosis (p. 114)

With its 50 trillion cells and thousands of organs, the human body may seem to be a structure of forbidding complexity. Fortunately for our health, longevity, and self-understanding, the biologists of past generations were not discouraged by this complexity, but discovered patterns that made it more understandable. One of these patterns is the fact that these trillions of cells belong to only 200 different types or so, and these cells are organized into tissues that fall into just four broad categories—*epithelial, connective, nervous,* and *muscular tissue.*

An organ is a structure with discrete boundaries that is composed of two or more of these tissue types (usually all four). Organs derive their function not from their cells alone but from how the cells are organized into tissues. Cells are specialized for certain tasks—muscle contraction, defense, enzyme secretion, and so forth. No one cell type has the mechanisms to carry out all of the body's vital functions. Cells work together at certain tasks and form tissues that carry out a particular function, such as nerve signaling or nutrient digestion.

The study of tissues and how they are arranged into organs is called **histology,**[1] or **microscopic anatomy.** That is the subject of this chapter. Here we study the four tissue classes; the variations within each class; how to recognize tissue types microscopically and relate their microscopic anatomy to their function; how tissues are arranged to form an organ; and how tissues change over the life of the individual as they grow, shrink, or change from one tissue type to another. Histology bridges the gap between the *cytology* of the preceding chapters and the *organ system* approach of the chapters that follow.

The Study of Tissues

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- name the four primary classes into which all adult tissues are classified.
- name the three embryonic germ layers and some adult tissues derived from each; and
- visualize the three-dimensional shape of a structure from a two-dimensional tissue section.

The Primary Tissue Classes

A **tissue** is a group of similar cells and cell products that arise from the same region of the embryo and work together to perform a specific structural or physiological role in an organ. The four *primary tissues* are epithelial, connective, nervous, and muscular tissue (table 5.1). These tissues differ from each other in the types and functions of their cells, the characteristics of the **matrix (extracellular material)** that surrounds the cells, and the relative amount of space occupied by cells versus matrix. In muscle and epithelium, the cells are so close together that the matrix is scarcely visible, while in connective tissues, the matrix usually occupies much more space than the cells do.

The matrix is composed of fibrous proteins and, usually, a clear gel variously known as **ground substance, tissue fluid, extracellular fluid (ECF), interstitial**[2] **fluid,** or **tissue gel.** In cartilage and bone, it can be rubbery or stony in consistency. The ground substance contains water, gases, minerals, nutrients, wastes, and other chemicals. In summary, a tissue is composed of cells and matrix, and the matrix is composed of fibers and ground substance.

Embryonic Tissues

Human development begins with a single cell, the fertilized egg, which soon divides to produce scores of identical, smaller cells. The first tissues appear when these cells start to organize themselves into layers—first two, and soon three strata called the **primary germ layers,** which give rise to all of the body's mature tissues. The three layers are called *ectoderm, mesoderm,* and *endoderm.* The **ectoderm**[3] is an outer layer that gives rise to the epidermis and nervous system. The inner layer, the **endoderm,**[4] gives rise to the mucous membranes of the digestive and respiratory tracts and to the digestive glands, among other things. Between these two is the **mesoderm,**[5] a layer of more loosely organized cells. Mesoderm eventually turns to a gelatinous tissue called **mesenchyme,** composed of fine, wispy collagen (protein) fibers and branching cells called *fibroblasts* embedded in a gelatinous ground substance. Mesenchyme closely resembles the connective tissue layer in figure 5.11*a*. It gives rise to muscle, bone, and blood, among other tissues. Most organs are composed of tissues derived from two or more primary germ layers. The rest of this chapter concerns the "mature" tissues that exist from infancy through adulthood.

Interpreting Tissue Sections

Histologists use a variety of techniques for preserving, sectioning (slicing), and staining tissues to show their structural details as clearly as possible. Tissue specimens are preserved in a **fixative**—a chemical such as formalin that prevents decay. After fixation, most tissues are cut into very thin slices called **histological sections.** These sections are typically only one or two cells thick, to allow the light of a microscope to pass through and to reduce the confusion of the image that would result from many layers of overlapping cells. They are mounted on slides and arti-

---

[1] *histo* = tissue + *logy* = study of

[2] *inter* = between + *stit* = to stand

[3] *ecto* = outer + *derm* = skin

[4] *endo* = inner

[5] *meso* = middle

Table 5.1 The Four Primary Tissue Classes

Type	Definition	Representative Locations
Epithelial	Tissue composed of layers of closely spaced cells that cover organ surfaces, form glands, and serve for protection, secretion, and absorption	Epidermis Inner lining of digestive tract Liver and other glands
Connective	Tissue with more matrix than cell volume, often specialized to support, bind together, and protect organs	Tendons and ligaments Cartilage and bone Blood
Nervous	Tissue containing excitable cells specialized for rapid transmission of coded information to other cells	Brain Spinal cord Nerves
Muscular	Tissue composed of elongated, excitable cells specialized for contraction	Skeletal muscles Heart (cardiac muscle) Walls of viscera (smooth muscle)

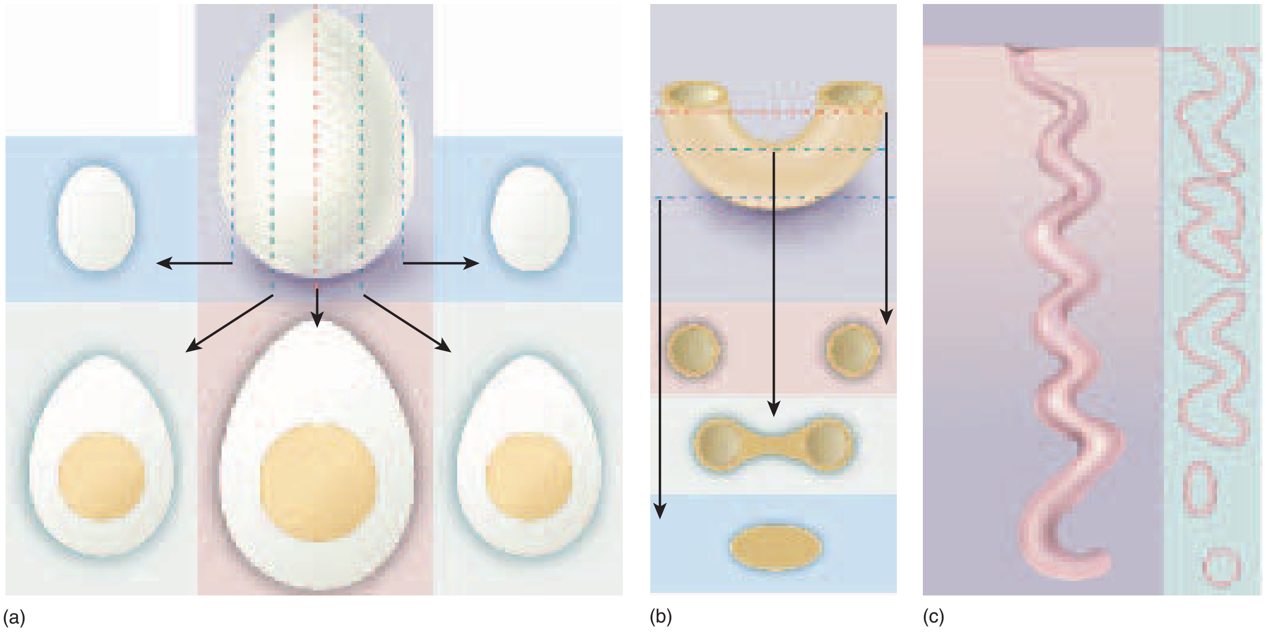


Figure 5.1 **Three-Dimensional Interpretation of Two-Dimensional Images.** (*a*) A boiled egg. Note that grazing sections (*far left* and *right*) would miss the yolk, just as a tissue section may miss a nucleus or other structure. (*b*) Elbow macaroni, which resembles many curved ducts and tubules. A section far from the bend would give the impression of two separate tubules; a section near the bend would show two interconnected lumina (cavities); and a section still farther down could miss the lumen completely. (*c*) A coiled gland in three dimensions and as it would look in a vertical tissue section.

ficially colored with histological **stains** to bring out detail. If they were not stained, most tissues would appear very pale gray. With stains that bind to different components of a tissue, however, you may see pink cytoplasm, violet nuclei, and blue, green, or golden brown protein fibers, depending on the stain used.

Sectioning a tissue reduces a three-dimensional structure to a two-dimensional slice. You must keep this in mind and try to translate the microscopic image into a mental image of the whole structure. Like the boiled egg and elbow macaroni in figure 5.1, an object may look quite different when it is cut at various levels, or *planes of section.* A coiled tube, such as a gland of the uterus (fig. 5.1*c*), is often broken up into multiple portions since it meanders in and out of the plane of section. An experienced viewer, however, would recognize that the separated pieces are parts of a single tube winding its way to the organ surface. Note that a grazing slice through a boiled

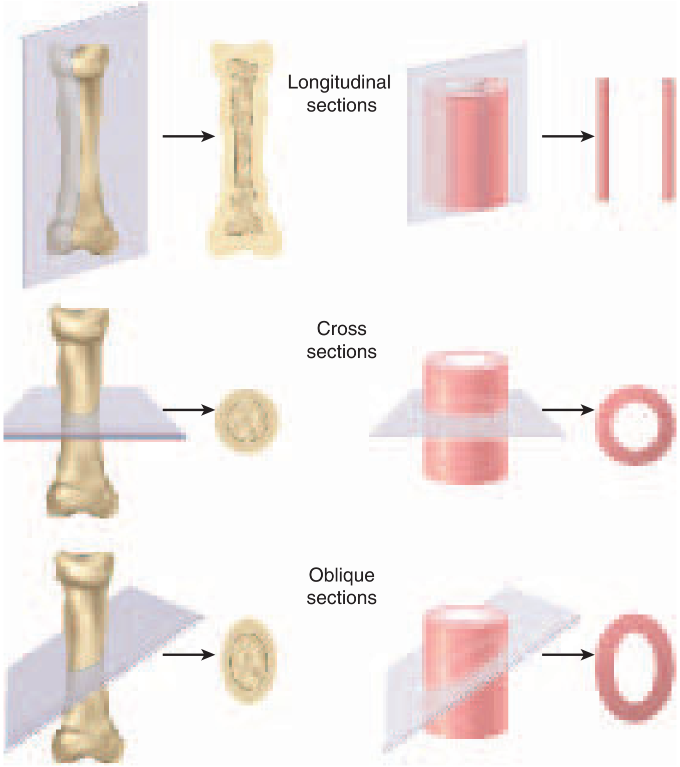


Figure 5.2 **Longitudinal, Cross, and Oblique Sections.** Note the effect of the plane of section on the two-dimensional appearance of elongated structures such as bones and blood vessels.

Would you classify the egg sections in the previous figure as longitudinal, cross, or oblique sections? How would the egg look if sectioned in the other two planes?

egg might miss the yolk, just as a tissue section might miss the nucleus of a cell or an egg in the ovary, even though these structures were present.

Many anatomical structures are significantly longer in one direction than another—the humerus and esophagus, for example. A tissue cut in the long direction is called a **longitudinal section (l.s.),** and one cut perpendicular to this is a **cross section** (**c.s.** or **x.s.**), or **transverse section (t.s.).** A section cut at an angle between a longitudinal and cross section is an **oblique section.** Figure 5.2 shows how certain organs look when sectioned on each of these planes.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

1. Classify each of the following into one of the four primary tissue classes: the skin surface, fat, the spinal cord, most heart tissue, bones, tendons, blood, and the inner lining of the stomach.
2. What are tissues composed of in addition to cells?
3. What embryonic germ layer gives rise to nervous tissue? To the liver? To muscle?
4. What is the term for a thin, stained slice of tissue mounted on a microscope slide?

Epithelial Tissue

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the properties that distinguish epithelium from other tissue classes;
- list and classify eight types of epithelium, distinguish them from each other, and state where each type can be found in the body;
- explain how the structural differences between epithelia relate to their functional differences; and
- visually recognize each epithelial type from specimens or photographs.

Epithelial[6] **tissue** consists of a flat sheet of closely adhering cells, one or more cells thick, with the upper surface usually exposed to the environment or to an internal space in the body. Epithelium covers the body surface, lines body cavities, forms the external and internal linings of many organs, and constitutes most gland tissue. The extracellular material is so thin it is not visible with the light microscope, and epithelia allow no room for blood vessels. They do, however, almost always lie on a layer of loose connective tissue and depend on its blood vessels for nourishment and waste removal.

Between an epithelium and the underlying connective tissue is a layer called the **basement membrane,** usually too thin to be visible with the light microscope. It contains collagen, adhesive glycoproteins called *laminin* and *fibronectin,* and a large protein-carbohydrate complex called *heparan sulfate.* It gradually blends with collagenous and reticular fibers on the connective tissue side. The basement membrane serves to anchor an epithelium to the connective tissue below it. The surface of an epithelial cell that faces the basement membrane is its *basal surface,* and the one that faces away from the basement membrane is the *apical surface.*

Epithelia are classified into two broad categories—*simple* and *stratified*—with four types in each category. In a simple epithelium, every cell touches the basement membrane, whereas in a stratified epithelium, some cells rest on top of other cells and do not contact the basement membrane (fig. 5.3).

---

[6] *epi* = upon + *theli* = nipple, female

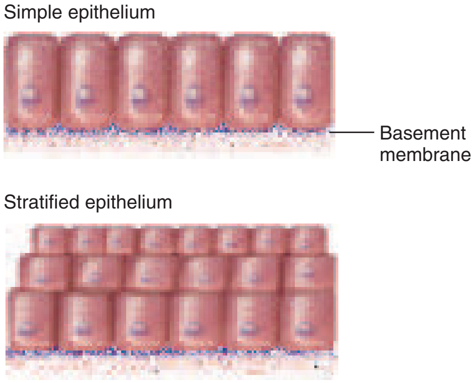


Figure 5.3 **Comparison of Simple and Stratified Epithelia.**

Simple Epithelia

Generally, a **simple epithelium** has only one layer of cells, although this is a somewhat debatable point in the *pseudostratified* type. Three types of simple epithelia are named for the shapes of their cells: **simple squamous**[7] (thin scaly cells), **simple cuboidal** (square or round cells), and **simple columnar** (tall narrow cells). In the fourth type, **pseudostratified columnar,** not all cells reach the free surface; the shorter cells are covered over by the taller ones. This epithelium looks stratified in most tissue sections, but careful examination, especially with the electron microscope, shows that every cell reaches the basement membrane. Simple columnar and pseudostratified columnar epithelia often produce protective mucous coatings over the mucous membranes. The mucus is secreted by wineglass-shaped **goblet cells.**

Table 5.2 illustrates and summarizes the structural and functional differences among these four types.

Stratified Epithelia

Stratified epithelia range from 2 to 20 or more layers of cells, with some cells resting directly on others and only the deepest layer resting on the basement membrane. Three of the stratified epithelia are named for the shapes of their surface cells: **stratified squamous, stratified cuboidal,** and **stratified columnar epithelia.** The deeper cells, however, may be of a different shape than the surface cells. The fourth type, **transitional epithelium,** was named when it was thought to represent a transitional stage between stratified squamous and stratified columnar epithelium. This is now known to be untrue, but the name has persisted.

Stratified columnar epithelium is rare—seen only in places where two other epithelial types meet, as in limited regions of the pharynx, larynx, anal canal, and male urethra. We will not consider this type any further. The other three types are illustrated and summarized in table 5.3.

The most widespread epithelium in the body is stratified squamous epithelium, which deserves further discussion. Its deepest layer of cells are cuboidal to columnar and undergo continual mitosis. Their daughter cells push toward the surface and become flatter (more *squamous,* or scalelike) as they migrate farther upward, until they finally die and flake off. Their separation from the surface is called **exfoliation,** or **desquamation** (fig. 5.12); the study of exfoliated cells is called *exfoliate cytology.* You can easily study exfoliated cells by scraping your gums with a toothpick, smearing this material on a slide, and staining it. A similar procedure is used in the *Pap smear*, an examination of exfoliated cells from the cervix for signs of uterine cancer (see chapter 28, fig. 28.5, for normal and cancerous Pap smears).

Stratified squamous epithelia are of two kinds—keratinized and nonkeratinized. A **keratinized** epithelium, found on the skin surface (epidermis), is covered with a layer of compact, dead squamous cells. These cells are packed with the durable protein keratin and coated with water repellent. The skin surface is therefore relatively dry, it retards water loss from the body, and it resists penetration by disease organisms. (Keratin is also the protein of which animal horns are made, hence its name.[8]) The tongue, oral mucosa, esophagus, vagina, and a few other internal membranes are covered with the **nonkeratinized** type, which lacks the surface layer of dead cells. This type provides a surface that is, again, abrasion-resistant, but also moist and slippery. These characteristics are well suited to resist stress produced by the chewing and swallowing of food and by sexual intercourse and childbirth.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

5. Distinguish between simple and stratified epithelia, and explain why pseudostratified columnar epithelium belongs in the former category.
6. Explain how to distinguish a stratified squamous epithelium from a transitional epithelium.
7. What function do keratinized and nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelia have in common? What is the structural difference between these two? How is this structural difference related to a functional difference between them?
8. How do the epithelia of the esophagus and stomach differ? How does this relate to their respective functions?

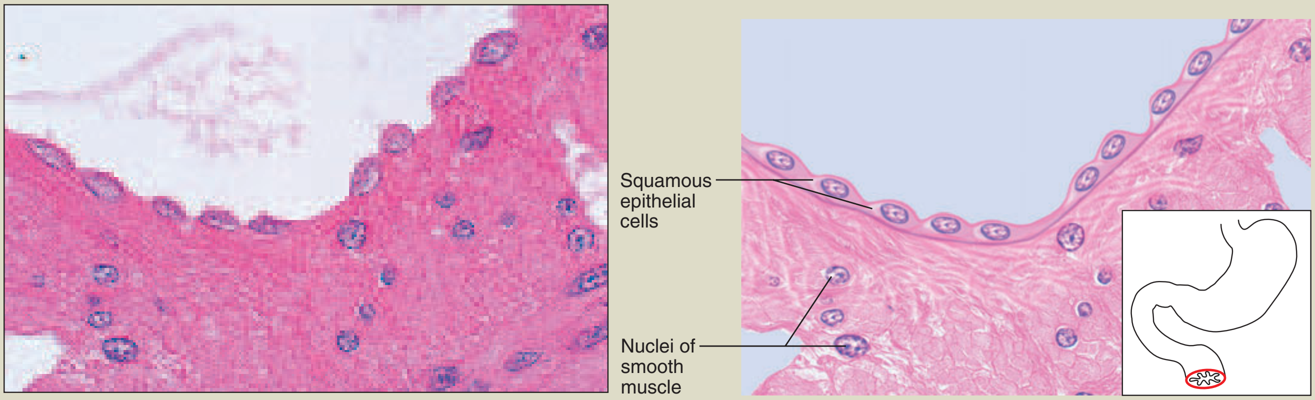
---

[7] *squam* = scale

[8] *kerat* = horn

Table 5.2 Simple Epithelia

Simple Squamous Epithelium



(a) (b)

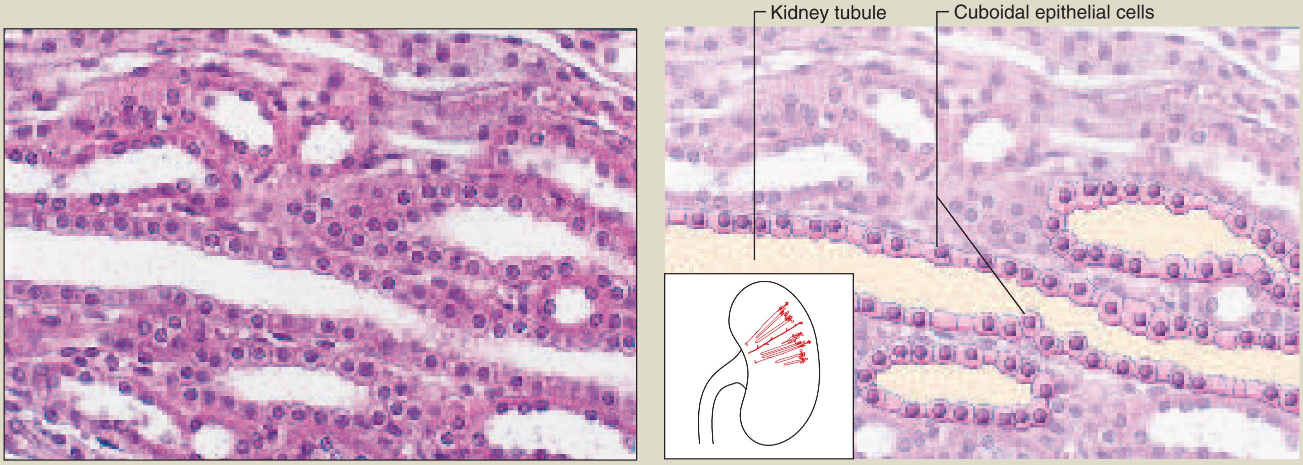
Figure 5.4 External Surface (Serosa) of the Small Intestine.

Microscopic appearance: Single layer of thin cells, shaped like fried eggs with bulge where nucleus is located; nucleus flattened in the plane of the cell, like an egg yolk; cytoplasm may be so thin it is hard to see in tissue sections; in surface view, cells have angular contours and nuclei appear round

Representative locations: Air sacs (alveoli) of lungs; glomerular capsules of kidneys; some kidney tubules; inner lining (endothelium) of heart and blood vessels; serous membranes of stomach, intestines, and some other viscera; surface mesothelium of pleurae, pericardium, peritoneum, and mesenteries

Functions: Allows rapid diffusion or transport of substances through membrane; secretes lubricating serous fluid

Simple Cuboidal Epithelium



(a) (b)

Figure 5.5 Kidney Tubules.

Microscopic appearance: Single layer of square or round cells; in glands, cells often pyramidal and arranged like segments of an orange around a central space; spherical, centrally placed nuclei; often with a brush border of microvilli in some kidney tubules; ciliated in bronchioles of lung

Representative locations: Liver, thyroid, mammary, salivary, and other glands; most kidney tubules; bronchioles

Functions: Absorption and secretion; production of protective mucous coat; movement of respiratory mucus

Simple Columnar Epithelium

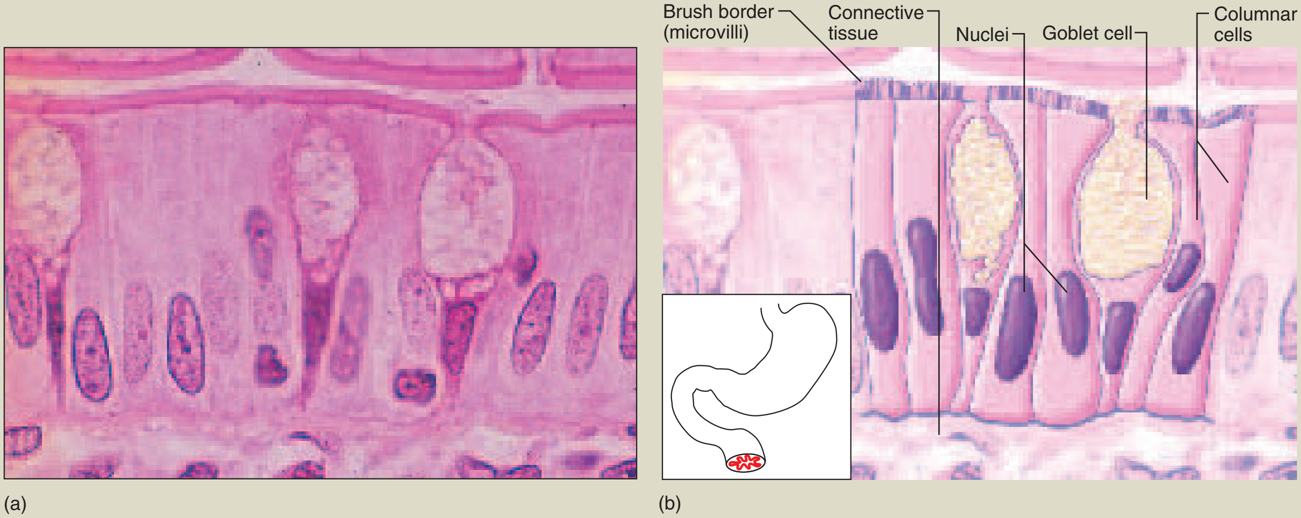


Figure 5.6 Internal Surface (Mucosa) of the Small Intestine.

Microscopic appearance: Single layer of tall, narrow cells; oval or sausage-shaped nuclei, vertically oriented, usually in basal half of cell; apical portion of cell often shows secretory vesicles visible with TEM; often shows a brush border of microvilli; ciliated in some organs; may possess goblet cells

Representative locations: Inner lining of stomach, intestines, gallbladder, uterus, and uterine tubes; some kidney tubules

Functions: Absorption and secretion; movement of egg and embryo in uterine tube; secretion of mucus

Pseudostratified Columnar Epithelium

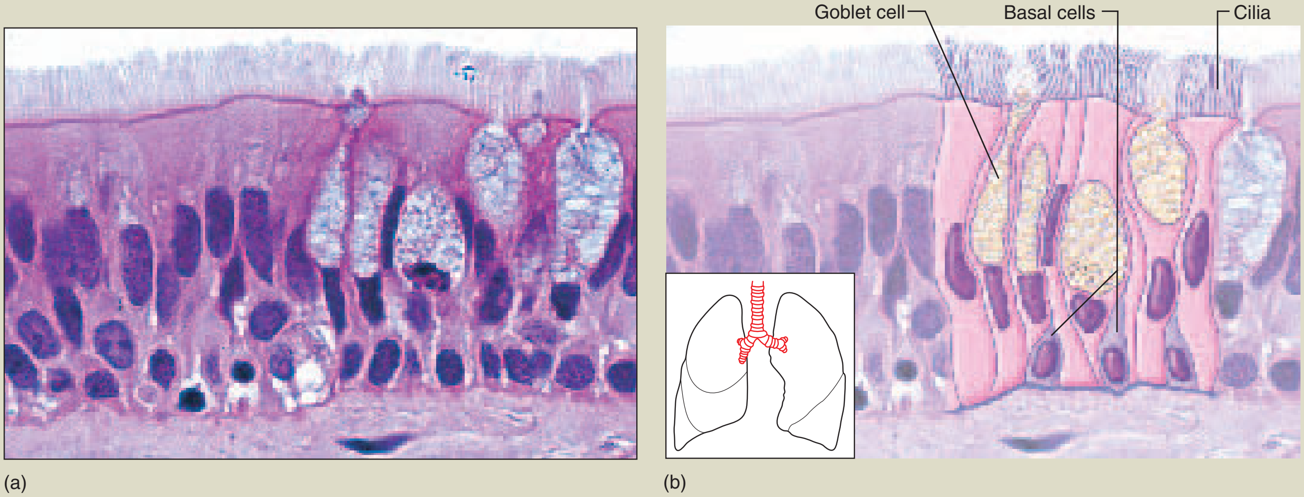


Figure 5.7 Mucosa of the Trachea.

Microscopic appearance: Looks multilayered; some cells do not reach free surface but all cells reach basement membrane; nuclei at several levels in deeper half of epithelium; often with goblet cells; often ciliated

Representative locations: Respiratory tract from nasal cavity to bronchi; portions of male reproductive tract

Functions: Secretes and propels mucus

Table 5.3 Stratified Epithelia

Stratified Squamous Epithelium—Keratinized

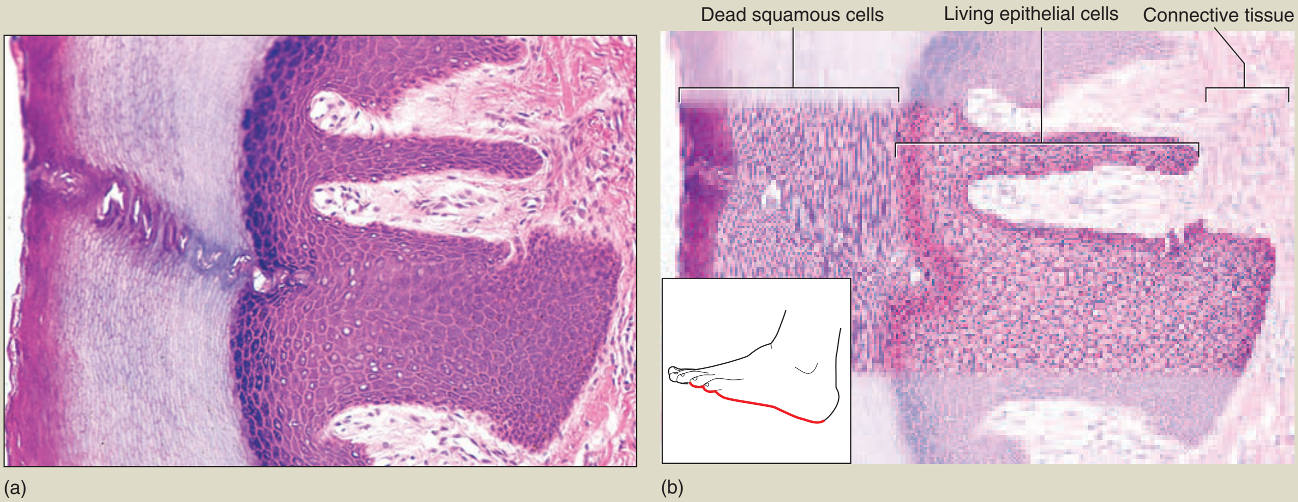


Figure 5.8 Skin from the Sole of the Foot.

Microscopic appearance: Multiple cell layers with cells becoming increasingly flat and scaly toward surface; surface covered with a layer of compact dead cells without nuclei; basal cells may be cuboidal to columnar

Representative locations: Epidermis; palms and soles are especially heavily keratinized

Functions: Resists abrasion; retards water loss through skin; resists penetration by pathogenic organisms

Stratified Squamous Epithelium—Nonkeratinized

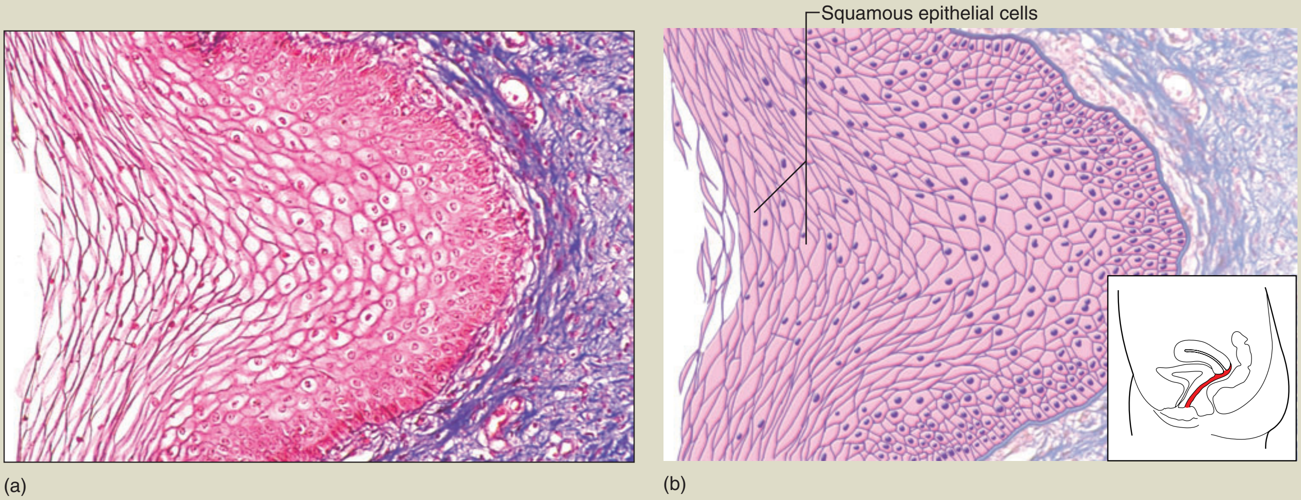


Figure 5.9 Mucosa of the Vagina.

Microscopic appearance: Same as keratinized epithelium but without the surface layer of dead cells

Representative locations: Tongue, oral mucosa, esophagus, anal canal, vagina

Functions: Resists abrasion and penetration by pathogenic organisms

Stratified Cuboidal Epithelium

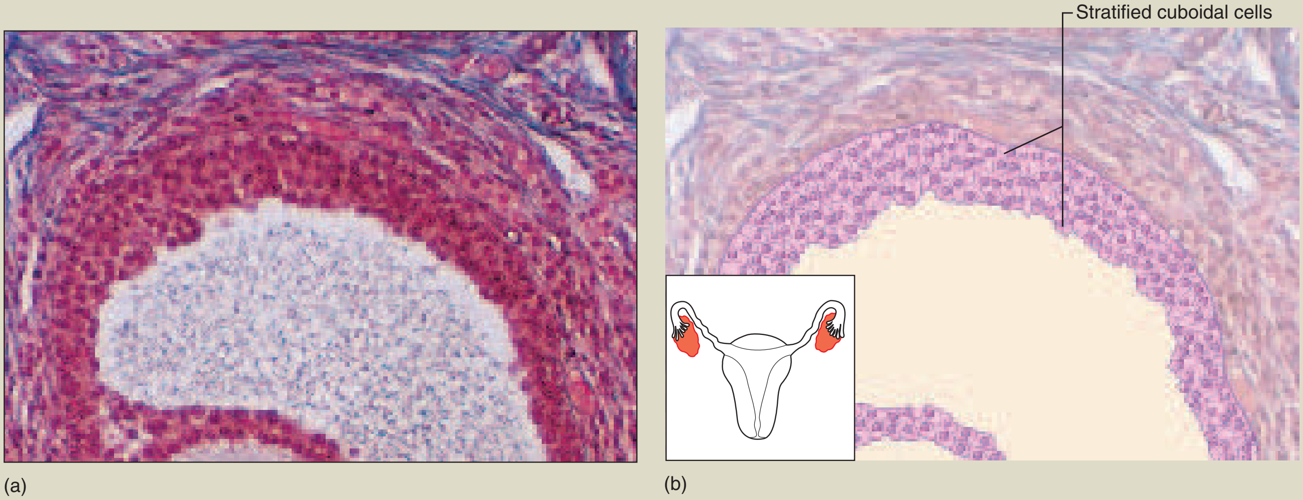


Figure 5.10 Wall of a Follicle in the Ovary.

Microscopic appearance: Two or more layers of cells; surface cells square or round

Representative locations: Sweat gland ducts; egg-producing vesicles (follicles) of ovaries; sperm-producing ducts (seminiferous tubules) of testis

Functions: Contributes to sweat secretion; secretes ovarian hormones; produces sperm

Transitional Epithelium

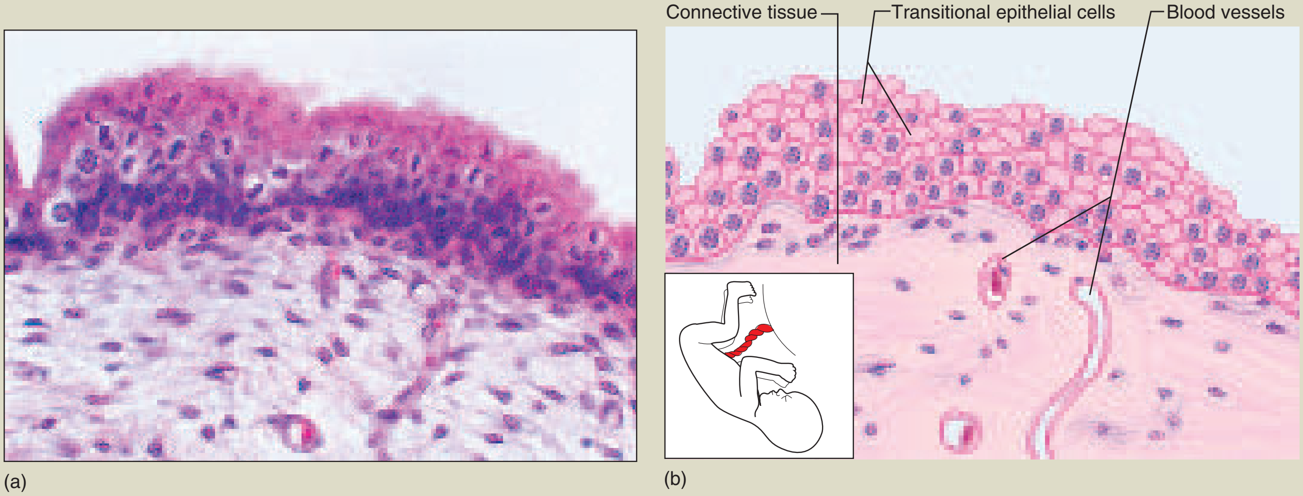


Figure 5.11 Allantoic Duct of Umbilical Cord.

Microscopic appearance: Somewhat resembles stratified squamous epithelium, but surface cells are rounded, not flattened, and often bulge above surface; typically five or six cells thick when relaxed and two or three cells thick when stretched; cells may be flatter and thinner when epithelium is stretched (as in a distended bladder); some cells have two nuclei

Representative locations: Urinary tract—part of kidney, ureter, bladder, part of urethra; allantoic duct in umbilical cord

Functions: Stretches to allow filling of urinary tract

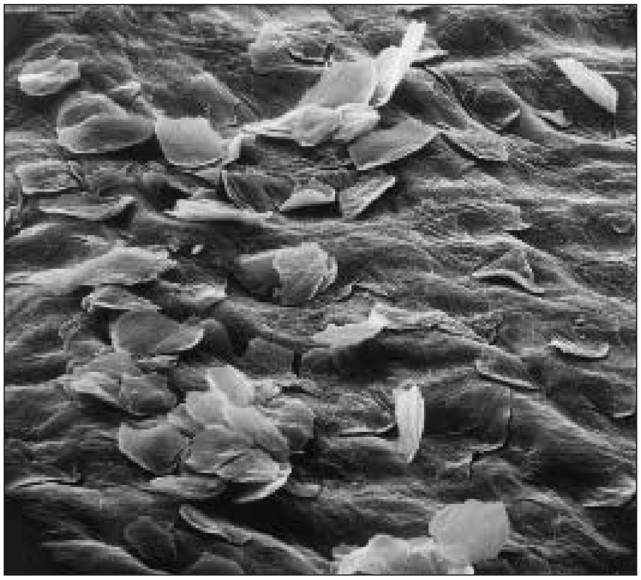


Figure 5.12 **Exfoliation of Squamous Cells from the Mucosal Surface of the Vagina.** From R. G. Kessel and R. H. Kardon, *Tissues and Organs: A Text-Atlas of Scanning Electron Microscopy* (W. H. Freeman, 1979).
Aside from the gums and vagina, name another epithelium in the body that would look like this to the scanning electron microscope.

Connective Tissue

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to
- describe the properties that most connective tissues have in common;
- discuss the types of cells found in connective tissue;
- explain what the matrix of a connective tissue is and describe its components;
- name 10 types of connective tissue, describe their cellular components and matrix, and explain what distinguishes them from each other; and
- visually recognize each connective tissue type from specimens or photographs.

Overview

Connective tissue typically consists mostly of fibers and ground substance, with widely separated cells. It is the most abundant, widely distributed, and histologically variable of the primary tissues. As the name implies, it often serves to connect organs to each other—for example, the way a tendon connects muscle to bone—or serves in other ways to support, bind, and protect organs. This category includes fibrous tissue, fat, cartilage, bone, and blood.

The functions of connective tissue include the following:

- **Binding of organs.** Tendons bind muscle to bone, ligaments bind one bone to another, fat holds the kidneys and eyes in place, and fibrous tissue binds the skin to underlying muscle.
- **Support.** Bones support the body, and cartilage supports the ears, nose, trachea, and bronchi.
- **Physical protection.** The cranium, ribs, and sternum protect delicate organs such as the brain, lungs, and heart; fatty cushions around the kidneys and eyes protect these organs.
- **Immune protection.** Connective tissue cells attack foreign invaders, and connective tissue fiber forms a "battlefield" under the skin and mucous membranes where immune cells can be quickly mobilized against disease agents.
- **Movement.** Bones provide the lever system for body movement, cartilages are involved in movement of the vocal cords, and cartilages on bone surfaces ease joint movements.
- **Storage.** Fat is the body's major energy reserve; bone is a reservoir of calcium and phosphorus that can be drawn upon when needed.
- **Heat production.** Brown fat generates heat in infants and children.
- **Transport.** Blood transports gases, nutrients, wastes, hormones, and blood cells.

The mesenchyme described earlier in this chapter is a form of embryonic connective tissue. The connective tissues present after birth fall into three broad categories: *fibrous connective tissues, supportive connective tissues* (cartilage and bone), and *fluid connective tissue* (blood).

Fibrous Connective Tissue

Fibrous connective tissues are the most diverse type of connective tissue. They are also called *fibroconnective tissue* or *connective tissue proper.* Nearly all connective tissues contain fibers, but the tissues considered here are classified together because the fibers are so conspicuous. Fibers are, of course, just one component of the tissue, which also includes cells and ground substance. Before examining specific types of fibroconnective tissue, let's examine these components.

Components of Fibrous Connective Tissue

Cells The cells of fibrous connective tissue include the following types:

- **Fibroblasts.**[9] These are large, flat cells that often appear tapered at the ends and show slender, wispy branches. They produce the fibers and ground substance that form the matrix of the tissue. Fibroblasts that have finished this task and become inactive are called *fibrocytes* by some histologists.
- **Macrophages.**[10] These are large phagocytic cells that wander through the connective tissues, where they engulf and destroy bacteria, other foreign particles, and dead or dying cells of our own body, and activate the immune system when they sense foreign matter called *antigens.* They arise from certain white blood cells called *monocytes* or from the same stem cells that produce monocytes.
- **Leukocytes,**[11] or **white blood cells (WBCs).** WBCs travel briefly in the bloodstream, then crawl out through the capillary walls and spend most of their time in the connective tissues. Most of them are *neutrophils,* which wander about in search of bacteria. Our mucous membranes often exhibit dense patches of tiny WBCs called *lymphocytes,* which react against bacteria, toxins, and other foreign agents.
- **Plasma cells.** Certain lymphocytes turn into plasma cells when they detect foreign agents. The plasma cells then synthesize disease-fighting proteins called *antibodies.* Plasma cells are rarely seen except in the walls of the intestines and in inflamed tissue.
- **Mast cells.** These cells, found especially alongside blood vessels, secrete a chemical called *heparin* that inhibits blood clotting, and one called *histamine* that increases blood flow by dilating blood vessels.
- **Adipocytes** (AD-ih-po-sites), or **fat cells.** These are large rounded cells filled mainly with a droplet of triglyceride, which forces the nucleus and cytoplasm to occupy only a thin layer just beneath the plasma membrane. They appear in small clusters in some fibrous connective tissues. When they dominate an area, the tissue is called *adipose tissue.*

Fibers Three types of protein fibers are found in fibrous connective tissues:

- **Collagenous** (col-LADJ-eh-nus) **fibers.** These fibers, made of collagen, are tough and flexible and resist stretching. Collagen is about 25% of the body's protein, the most abundant type. It is the base of such animal products as gelatin, leather, and glue.[12] In fresh tissue, collagenous fibers have a glistening white appearance, as seen in tendons and some cuts of meat (fig. 5.13); thus, they are often called *white fibers.* In tissue sections, collagen forms coarse, wavy bundles, often dyed pink, blue, or green by the most common histological stains. Tendons, ligaments, and the deep layer of the skin (the dermis) are made mainly of collagen. Less visibly, collagen pervades the matrix of cartilage and bone.

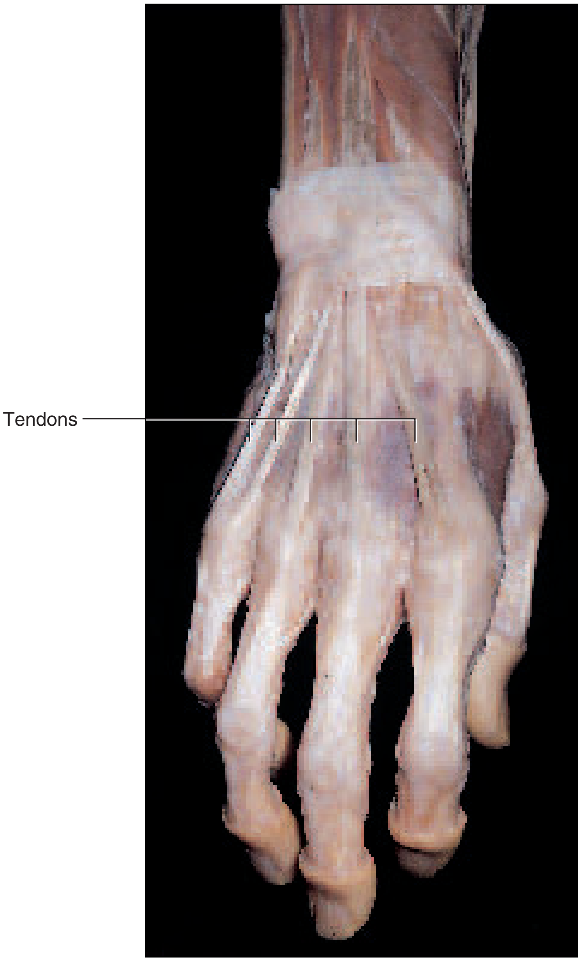


Figure 5.13 **Tendons of the Hand.** The white glistening appearance results from the collagen of which tendons are composed. The bracelet-like band across the wrist is also composed of collagen.

---

[9] *fibro* = fiber + *blast* = producing
[10] *macro* = big + *phage* = eater
[11] *leuko* = white + *cyte* = cell
[12] *colla* = glue + *gen* = producing

- **Reticular**[13] **fibers.** These are thin collagen fibers coated with glycoprotein. They form a spongelike framework for such organs as the spleen and lymph nodes.
- **Elastic fibers.** These are thinner than collagenous fibers, and they branch and rejoin each other along their course. They are made of a protein called **elastin,** whose coiled structure allows it to stretch and recoil like a rubber band. Elastic fibers account for the ability of the skin, lungs, and arteries to spring back after they are stretched. (Elasticity is not the ability to stretch, but the tendency to recoil when tension is released.) Fresh elastic fibers are yellowish and therefore often called *yellow fibers.*

Ground Substance Amid the cells and fibers in some tissue sections, there appears to be a lot of empty space. In life, this space is occupied by the featureless **ground substance.** Ground substance usually has a gelatinous to rubbery consistency resulting from three classes of large molecules: glycosaminoglycans, proteoglycans, and adhesive glycoproteins. It absorbs compressive forces and, like the styrofoam packing in a shipping carton, protects the more delicate cells from mechanical injury.

A **glycosaminoglycan (GAG)** (gly-COSE-ah-MEE-no-GLY-can) is a long polysaccharide composed of unusual disaccharides called *amino sugars* and *uronic acid.* GAGs are negatively charged and thus tend to attract sodium and potassium ions, which in turn causes the GAGs to absorb and hold water. Thus, GAGs play an important role in regulating the water and electrolyte balance of tissues. The most abundant GAG is **chondroitin** (con-DRO-ih-tin) **sulfate.** It is abundant in blood vessels and bones and is responsible for the relative stiffness of cartilage. Some other GAGs that you will read of elsewhere in this book are *heparin* (an anticoagulant) and *hyaluronic* (HY-uh-loo-RON-ic) *acid.* The latter is a gigantic molecule up to 20 µm long, as large as most cells. It is a viscous, slippery substance that forms a very effective lubricant in the joints and constitutes much of the jellylike *vitreous humor* of the eyeball.

A **proteoglycan** is another gigantic molecule. It is shaped somewhat like a test tube brush (fig. 5.14), with the central core composed of protein and the bristlelike outgrowths composed of GAGs. The entire proteoglycan may be attached to hyaluronic acid, thus forming an enormous molecular complex. Proteoglycans form thick colloids similar to those of gravy, pudding, gelatin, and glue. This gel slows the spread of pathogenic organisms through the tissues. Some proteoglycans are embedded in the plasma membranes of cells, attached to the cytoskeleton on the inside and to other extracellular molecules on the outside. Thus, they create a strong structural bond between cells and extracellular macromolecules and help to hold tissues together.

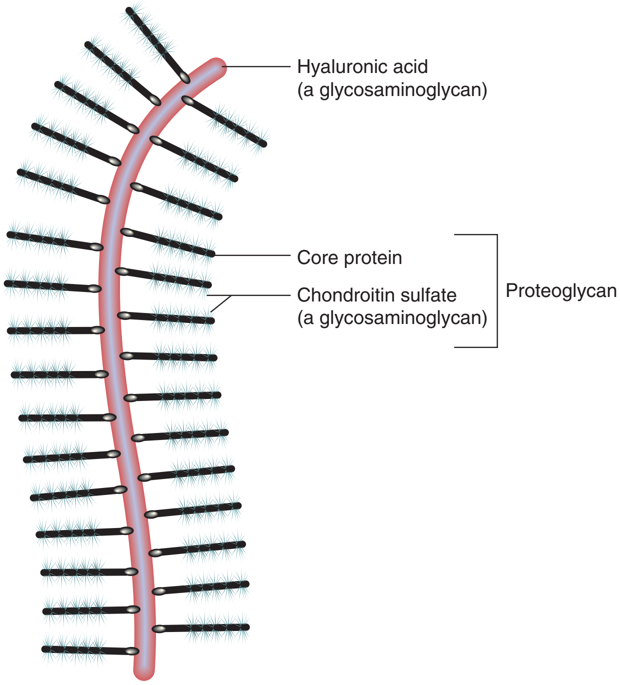


Figure 5.14 Proteoglycan Molecules Linked to a Hyaluronic Acid Core. The resulting hydrophilic complex is larger than many cells.

Adhesive glycoproteins are protein-carbohydrate complexes that bind plasma membrane proteins to collagen and proteoglycans outside the cell. They bind all the components of a tissue together and mark pathways that guide migrating embryonic cells to their destinations in a tissue.

Types of Fibrous Connective Tissue

Fibrous connective tissue is divided into two broad categories according to the relative abundance of fiber: *loose* and *dense connective tissue.* In **loose connective tissue,** much of the space is occupied by ground substance, which is dissolved out of the tissue during histological fixation and leaves empty space in prepared tissue sections. The loose connective tissues we will discuss are *areolar, reticular,* and *adipose tissue.* In **dense connective tissue,** fiber occupies more space than the cells and ground substance, and appears closely packed in tissue sections. The two dense connective tissues we will discuss are *dense regular* and *dense irregular connective tissue.*

Areolar[14] (AIR-ee-OH-lur) **tissue** exhibits loosely organized fibers, abundant blood vessels, and a lot of seemingly empty space. It possesses all six of the aforementioned cell types. Its fibers run in random directions and are mostly collagenous, but elastic and reticular fibers are also present. Areolar tissue is highly variable in appearance. In many serous membranes, it looks like figure 5.15, but in the skin and mucous membranes, it is more compact (see fig. 5.8) and sometimes difficult to distinguish from dense irregular connective tissue. Some advice on how to tell them apart is given after the discussion of dense irregular connective tissue.

---

[13] *ret* = network + *icul* = little

[14] *areola* = little space

Areolar tissue is found in tissue sections from almost every part of the body. It surrounds blood vessels and nerves and penetrates with them even into the small spaces of muscles, tendons, and other tissues. Nearly every epithelium rests on a layer of areolar tissue, whose blood vessels provide the epithelium with nutrition, waste removal, and a ready supply of infection-fighting WBCs in times of need. Because of the abundance of open, fluid-filled space, WBCs can move about freely in areolar tissue and can easily find and destroy pathogens.

Reticular tissue is a mesh of reticular fibers and fibroblasts. It forms the structural framework (stroma) of such organs and tissues as the lymph nodes, spleen, thymus, and bone marrow. The space amid the fibers is filled with blood cells. If you imagine a kitchen sponge soaked with blood, the sponge fibers would be analogous to the reticular tissue stroma.

Adipose tissue, or **fat,** is tissue in which adipocytes are the dominant cell type. Adipocytes may also occur singly or in small clusters in areolar tissue. Adipocytes usually range from 70 to 120 μm in diameter, but they may be five times as large in obese people. The space between adipocytes is occupied by areolar tissue, reticular tissue, and blood capillaries.

Fat is the body's primary energy reservoir. The quantity of stored triglyceride and the number of adipocytes are quite stable in a person, but this doesn't mean stored fat is stagnant. New triglycerides are constantly synthesized and stored as others are hydrolyzed and released into circulation. Thus, there is a constant turnover of stored triglyceride, with an equilibrium between synthesis and hydrolysis, energy storage and energy use. Adipose tissue also provides thermal insulation, and it contributes to body contours such as the female breasts and hips. Most adipose tissue is a type called *white fat,* but fetuses, infants, and children also have a heat-generating tissue called *brown fat,* which accounts for up to 6% of an infant's weight. Brown fat gets its color from an unusual abundance of blood vessels and certain enzymes in its mitochondria. It stores lipid in the form of multiple droplets rather than one large one. Brown fat has numerous mitochondria, but their oxidation pathway is not linked to ATP synthesis. Therefore, when these cells oxidize fats, they release all of the energy as heat. Hibernating animals accumulate brown fat in preparation for winter.

Table 5.4 summarizes the three types of loose fibrous connective tissues.

Think About It

Why would infants and children have more need for brown fat than adults do? (Hint: Smaller bodies have a higher ratio of surface area to volume than larger bodies do.)

Dense regular connective tissue is named for two properties: (1) the collagen fibers are closely packed and leave relatively little open space, and (2) the fibers are parallel to each other. It is found especially in tendons and ligaments. The parallel arrangement of fibers is an adaptation to the fact that tendons and ligaments are pulled in predictable directions. With some minor exceptions such as blood vessels and sensory nerve fibers, the only cells in this tissue are fibroblasts, visible by their slender, violet-staining nuclei squeezed between bundles of collagen. This type of tissue has few blood vessels, so injured tendons and ligaments are slow to heal.

The vocal cords, suspensory ligament of the penis, and some ligaments of the vertebral column are made of a type of dense regular connective tissue called **yellow elastic tissue.** In addition to the densely packed collagen fibers, it exhibits branching elastic fibers and more fibroblasts. The fibroblasts have larger, more conspicuous nuclei than seen in most dense regular connective tissue.

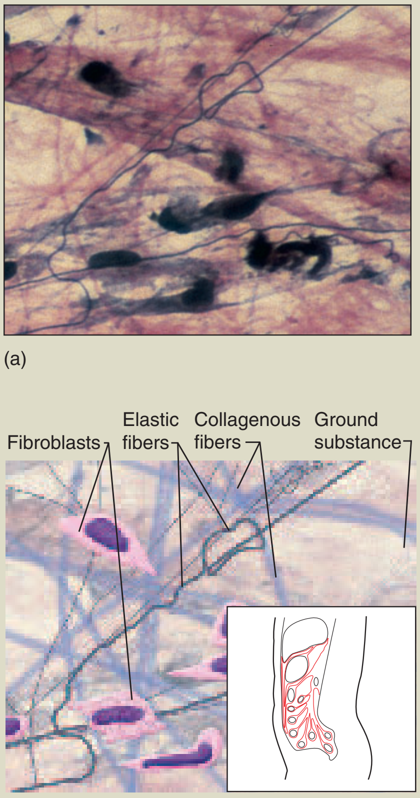
Elastic tissue also takes the form of wavy sheets in the walls of the large and medium arteries. When the heart pumps blood into the arteries, these sheets enable them to expand and relieve some of the pressure on smaller vessels downstream. When the heart relaxes, the arterial wall springs back and keeps the blood pressure from dropping too low between heartbeats. The importance of this elastic tissue becomes especially clear when there is not enough of it—for example, in Marfan syndrome (see insight 5.1, p. 172)—or when it is stiffened by arteriosclerosis (see chapter 19).

Dense irregular connective tissue also has thick bundles of collagen and relatively little room for cells and ground substance, but the collagen bundles run in random directions. This arrangement enables the tissue to resist unpredictable stresses. This tissue constitutes most of the dermis, where it binds the skin to the underlying muscle and connective tissue. It forms a protective capsule around organs such as the kidneys, testes, and spleen and a tough fibrous sheath around the bones, nerves, and most cartilages.

It is sometimes difficult to judge whether a tissue is areolar or dense irregular. In the dermis, for example, these tissues occur side by side, and the transition from one to the other is not at all obvious. A relatively large amount of clear space suggests areolar tissue, and thicker bundles of collagen with relatively little clear space suggests dense irregular tissue. The dense connective tissues are summarized in table 5.5.

Table 5.4 Loose Connective Tissues

Areolar Tissue



(a)

(b)

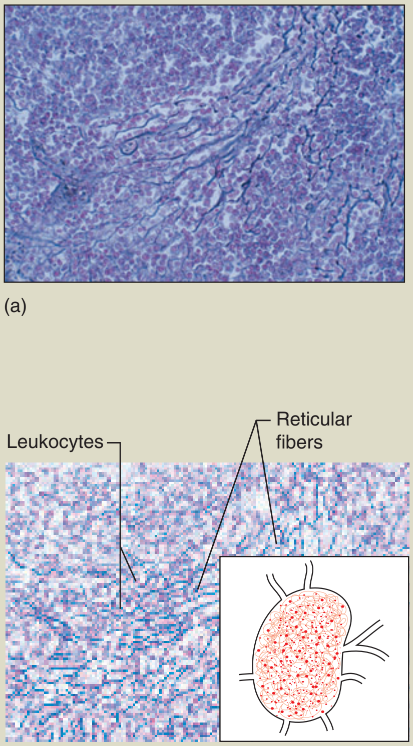
Figure 5.15 Spread of the Mesentery.

Microscopic appearance: Loose arrangement of collagenous and elastic fibers; scattered cells of various types; abundant ground substance; numerous blood vessels

Representative locations: Underlying nearly all epithelia; surrounding blood vessels, nerves, esophagus, and trachea; fascia between muscles; mesenteries; visceral layers of pericardium and pleura

Functions: Loosely binds epithelia to deeper tissues; allows passage of nerves and blood vessels through other tissues; provides an arena for immune defense; blood vessels provide nutrients and waste removal for overlying epithelia

Reticular Tissue



(a)

(b)

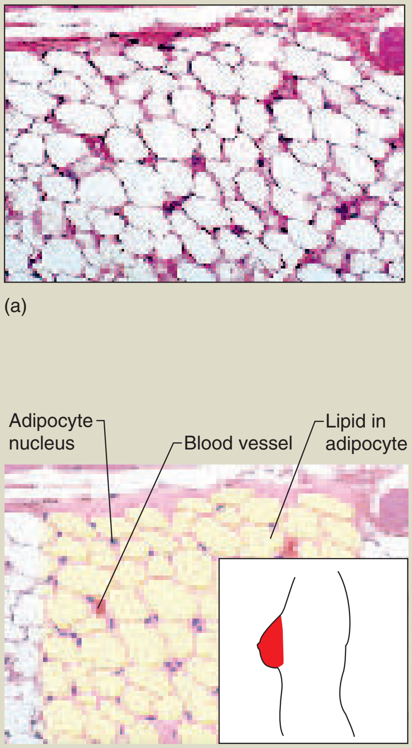
Figure 5.16 Lymph Node.

Microscopic appearance: Loose network of reticular fibers and cells, infiltrated with numerous lymphocytes and other blood cells

Representative locations: Lymph nodes, spleen, thymus, bone marrow

Functions: Supportive stroma (framework) for lymphatic organs

Adipose Tissue



(a)

(b)

Figure 5.17 Adipose Tissue.

Microscopic appearance: Dominated by adipocytes—large, empty-looking cells with thin margins; tissue sections often very pale because of scarcity of stained cytoplasm; adipocytes shrunken; nucleus pressed against plasma membrane; blood vessels often present

Representative locations: Subcutaneous fat beneath skin; breast; heart surface; surrounding organs such as kidneys and eyes

Functions: Energy storage; thermal insulation; heat production by brown fat; protective cushion for some organs; filling space, shaping body

Table 5.5 Dense Connective Tissues

Dense Regular Connective Tissue

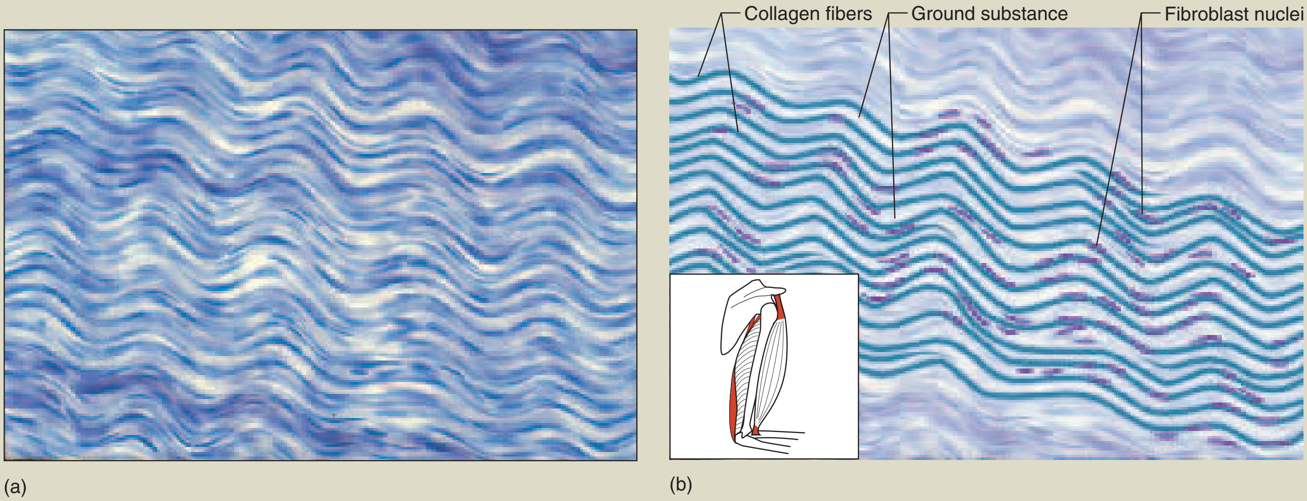

Collagen fibers
Ground substance
Fibroblast nuclei
(a)
(b)

Figure 5.18 Tendon.

Microscopic appearance: Densely packed, parallel, often wavy collagen fibers; slender fibroblast nuclei compressed between collagen bundles; scanty open space (ground substance); scarcity of blood vessels

Representative locations: Tendons and ligaments

Functions: Ligaments tightly bind bones together; resist stress; tendons attach muscle to bone and transfer muscular tension to bones

Dense Irregular Connective Tissue

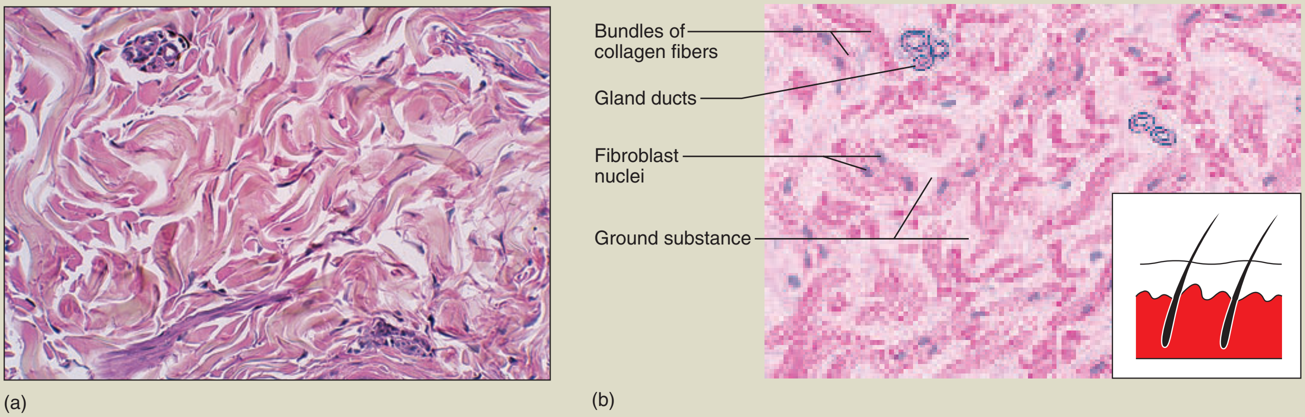

Bundles of collagen fibers
Gland ducts
Fibroblast nuclei
Ground substance
(a)
(b)

Figure 5.19 Dermis of the Skin.

Microscopic appearance: Densely packed collagen fibers running in random directions; scanty open space (ground substance); few visible cells; scarcity of blood vessels

Representative locations: Deeper portion of dermis of skin; capsules around viscera such as liver, kidney, spleen; fibrous sheaths around cartilages and bones

Functions: Durable, hard to tear; withstands stresses applied in unpredictable directions

Insight 5.1 Clinical Application

Marfan Syndrome—A Connective Tissue Disease

Serious anatomical and functional abnormalities can result from hereditary errors in the structure of connective tissue proteins. *Marfan*[15] *syndrome,* for example, results from the mutation of a gene on chromosome 15 that codes for a glycoprotein called *fibrillin,* the structural scaffold for elastic fibers. Clinical signs of Marfan syndrome include unusually tall stature, long limbs and spidery fingers, abnormal spinal curvature, and a protruding "pigeon breast." Some other signs include hyperextensible joints, hernias of the groin, and visual problems resulting from abnormally long eyeballs and deformed lenses. More seriously, victims exhibit a weakening of the heart valves and arterial walls. The aorta, where blood pressure is the highest, is sometimes enormously dilated close to the heart, and may suddenly rupture. Marfan syndrome is present in about 1 out of 20,000 live births and kills most of its victims by their mid-30s. Some authorities think that Abraham Lincoln's tall, gangly physique and spindly fingers were signs of Marfan syndrome, which might have ended his life prematurely had he not been assassinated.

---

[15] Antoine Bernard-Jean Marfan (1858–1942), French physician

Cartilage

Cartilage (table 5.6) is a supportive connective tissue with a flexible rubbery matrix. It gives shape to the external ear, the tip of the nose, and the larynx (voicebox)—the most easily palpated cartilages in the body. Cells called **chondroblasts**[16] (CON-dro-blasts) secrete the matrix and surround themselves with it until they become trapped in little cavities called **lacunae**[17] (la-CUE-nee). Once enclosed in lacunae, the cells are called **chondrocytes** (CON-dro-sites). Cartilage is free of blood vessels except when transforming into bone; thus nutrition and waste removal depend on solute diffusion through the stiff matrix. Because this is a slow process, chondrocytes have low rates of metabolism and cell division, and injured cartilage heals slowly. The matrix is rich in chondroitin sulfate and contains collagen fibers that range in thickness from invisibly fine to conspicuously coarse. Differences in the fibers provide a basis for classifying cartilage into three types: *hyaline cartilage, elastic cartilage,* and *fibrocartilage.*

Hyaline[18] (HY-uh-lin) **cartilage** is named for its clear, glassy microscopic appearance, which stems from the usually invisible fineness of its collagen fibers. **Elastic cartilage** is named for its conspicuous elastic fibers, and **fibrocartilage** for its coarse, readily visible bundles of collagen. Elastic cartilage and most hyaline cartilage are surrounded by a sheath of dense irregular connective tissue called the **perichondrium.**[19] A reserve population of chondroblasts between the perichondrium and cartilage contributes to cartilage growth throughout life. There is no perichondrium around fibrocartilage.

You can feel the texture of hyaline cartilage by palpating the tip of your nose, your "Adam's apple" at the front of the larynx (voicebox), and periodic rings of cartilage around the trachea (windpipe) just below the larynx. Hyaline cartilage is easily seen in many grocery items—it is the "gristle" at the ends of pork ribs, on chicken leg and breast bones, and at the joints of pigs' feet, for example. Elastic cartilage gives shape to the external ear. You can get some idea of its springy resilience by folding your ear down and releasing it.

Bone

The term *bone* refers both to organs of the body such as the femur and mandible, composed of multiple tissue types, and to the bone tissue, or **osseous tissue,** that makes up most of the mass of bones. There are two forms of osseous tissue: (1) **Spongy bone** fills the heads of the long bones. Although it is calcified and hard, its delicate slivers and plates give it a spongy appearance. (2) **Compact (dense) bone** is a more dense calcified tissue with no spaces visible to the naked eye. It forms the external surfaces of all bones, so spongy bone, when present, is always covered by compact bone.

The differences between compact and spongy bone are described in chapter 7. Here, we examine only compact bone (table 5.7). Most specimens you study will probably be chips of dead, dried bone ground to microscopic thinness. In such preparations, the cells are absent but spaces reveal their former locations. Most compact bone is arranged in cylinders of tissue that surround **central** (**haversian**[20] or **osteonic**) **canals,** which run longitudinally through the shafts of long bones such as the femur. Blood vessels and nerves travel through the central canals in life. The bone matrix is deposited in **concentric lamellae,** onionlike layers around each central canal. A central canal and its surrounding lamellae are called an **osteon.** Tiny lacunae between the lamellae are occupied in life by mature bone cells, or **osteocytes.**[21] Delicate canals called **canaliculi** radiate from each lacuna to its neighbors and allow the osteocytes to keep in touch with each other. The bone as a whole is covered with a tough fibrous **periosteum** (PERR-ee-OSS-tee-um) similar to the perichondrium of cartilage.

About a third of the dry weight of bone is composed of collagen fibers and chondroitin sulfate; two-thirds consists of minerals (mainly calcium salts) deposited around the collagen fibers.

---

[16] *chondro* = cartilage, gristle + *blast* = forming
[17] *lacuna* = lake, cavity
[18] *hyal* = glass
[19] *peri* = around + *chondri* = cartilage
[20] Clopton Havers (1650–1702), English anatomist
[21] *osteo* = bone + *cyte* = cell

Table 5.6 Types of Cartilage

Hyaline Cartilage

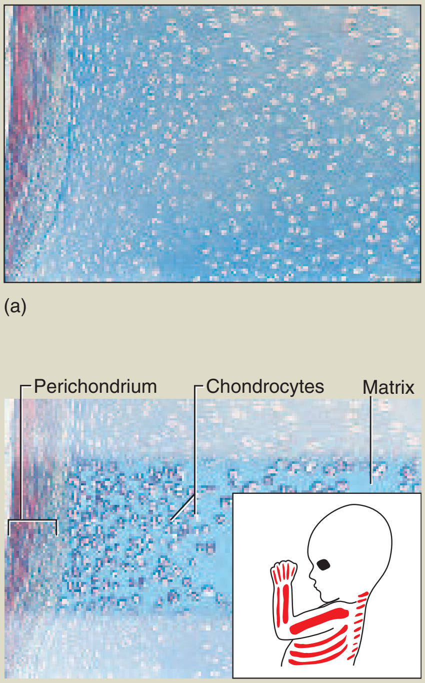


Figure 5.20 **Fetal Skeleton.**

Microscopic appearance: Clear, glassy matrix, often stained light blue or pink in tissue sections; fine, dispersed collagen fibers, not usually visible; chondrocytes often in small clusters of three or four cells (*cell nests*), enclosed in lacunae; usually covered by perichondrium

Representative locations: Forms a thin *articular cartilage,* lacking perichondrium, over the ends of bones at movable joints; a *costal cartilage* attaches the end of a rib to the breastbone; forms supportive rings and plates around trachea and bronchi; forms a boxlike enclosure around the larynx; forms much of the fetal skeleton

Functions: Eases joint movements; holds airway open during respiration; moves vocal cords during speech; a precursor of bone in the fetal skeleton and the growth zones of long bones of children

Elastic Cartilage

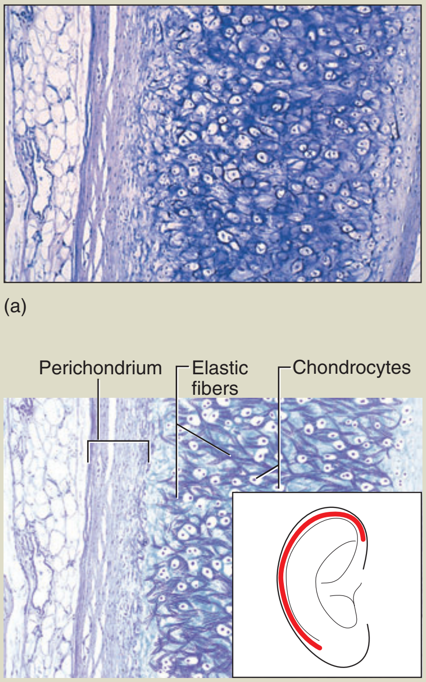


Figure 5.21 **External Ear.**

Microscopic appearance: Elastic fibers form weblike mesh amid lacunae; always covered by perichondrium

Representative locations: External ear; epiglottis

Functions: Provides flexible, elastic support

Fibrocartilage

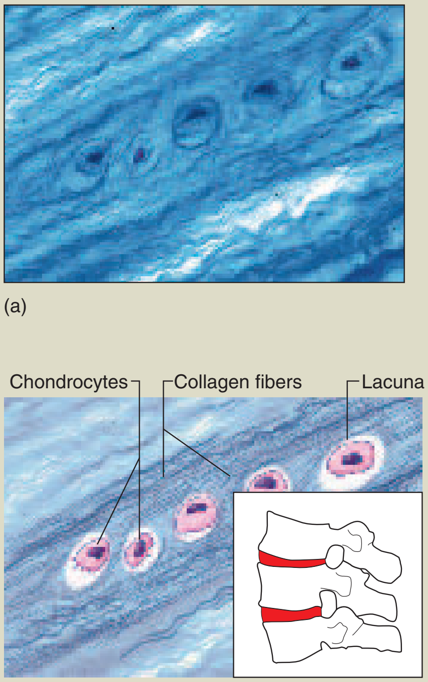


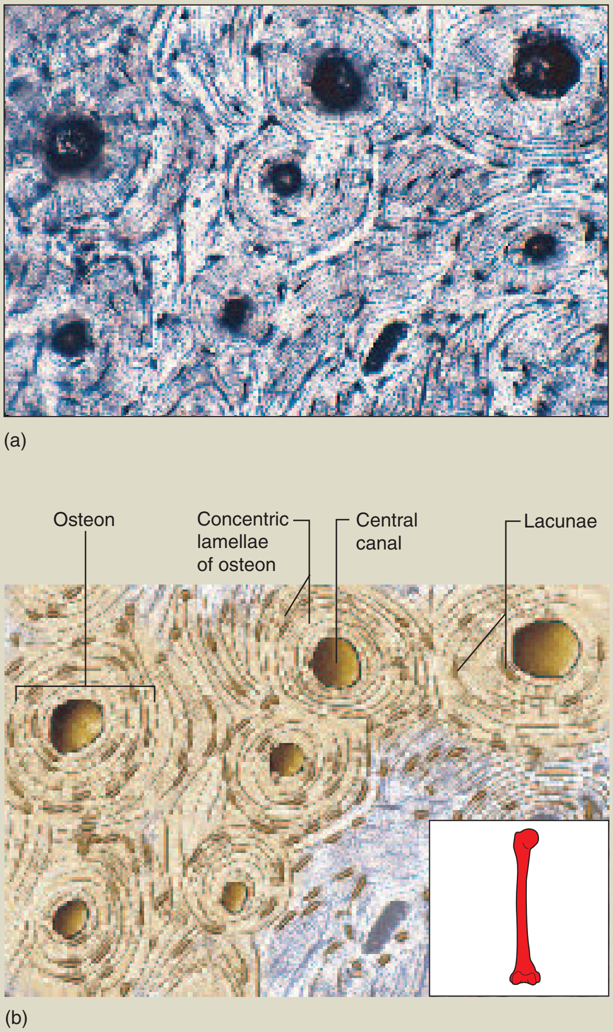
Figure 5.22 **Intervertebral Disc.**

Microscopic appearance: Parallel collagen fibers similar to those of tendon; rows of chondrocytes in lacunae between collagen fibers; never has a perichondrium

Representative locations: Pubic symphysis (anterior joint between two halves of pelvic girdle); intervertebral discs that separate bones of vertebral column; menisci, or pads of shock-absorbing cartilage, in knee joint; at points where tendons insert on bones near articular hyaline cartilage

Functions: Resists compression and absorbs shock in some joints; often a transitional tissue between dense connective tissue and hyaline cartilage (for example, at some tendon-bone junctions)

Table 5.7 Bone



(a)

(b)

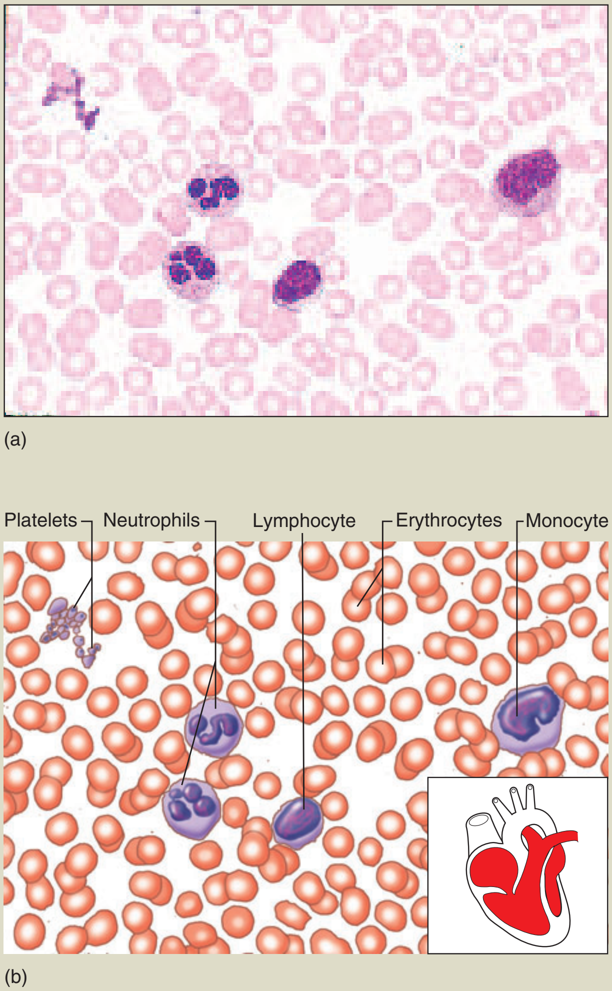
Figure 5.23 Compact Bone.

Microscopic appearance (compact bone): Calcified matrix arranged in concentric lamellae around central canals; osteocytes occupy lacunae between adjacent lamellae; lacunae interconnected by delicate canaliculi

Representative locations: Skeleton

Functions: Physical support of body; leverage for muscle action; protective enclosure of viscera; reservoir of calcium and phosphorus

Table 5.8 Blood



(a)

(b)

Figure 5.24 Blood Smear.

Microscopic appearance: Erythrocytes appear as pale pink discs with light centers and no nuclei; leukocytes are slightly larger, are much fewer, and have variously shaped nuclei, usually stained violet; platelets are cell fragments with no nuclei, about one-quarter the diameter of erythrocytes

Representative locations: Contained in heart and blood vessels

Functions: Transports gases, nutrients, wastes, chemical signals, and heat throughout body; provides defensive leukocytes; contains clotting agents to minimize bleeding; platelets secrete growth factors that promote tissue maintenance and repair

Blood

Blood (table 5.8) is a fluid connective tissue that travels through tubular vessels. Its primary function is to transport cells and dissolved matter from place to place. Blood consists of a ground substance called **plasma** and of cells and cell fragments collectively called **formed elements. Erythrocytes**[22] (eh-RITH-ro-sites), or red blood cells, are the most abundant formed elements. In stained blood films, they look like pink discs with a thin, pale center. They have no nuclei. Erythrocytes transport oxygen and carbon dioxide. **Leukocytes,** or white blood cells, serve various roles in defense against infection and other diseases. They travel from one organ to another in the bloodstream and lymph but spend most of their lives in the connective tissues. Leukocytes are somewhat larger than erythrocytes and have conspicuous nuclei that usually appear violet in stained preparations. There are five kinds, distinguished partly by variations in nuclear shape: *neutrophils, eosinophils, basophils, lymphocytes,* and *monocytes.* Their individual characteristics are considered in detail in chapter 18. **Platelets** are small cell fragments scattered amid the blood cells. They are involved in clotting and other mechanisms for minimizing blood loss, and in secreting growth factors that promote blood vessel growth and maintenance.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

9. What features do most or all connective tissues have in common to set this class apart from nervous, muscular, and epithelial tissue?
10. List the cell and fiber types found in fibrous connective tissues and state their functional differences.
11. What substances account for the gelatinous consistency of connective tissue ground substance?
12. What is areolar tissue? How can it be distinguished from any other kind of connective tissue?
13. Discuss the difference between dense regular and dense irregular connective tissue as an example of the relationship between form and function.
14. Describe some similarities, differences, and functional relationships between hyaline cartilage and bone.
15. What are the three basic kinds of formed elements in blood, and what are their respective functions?

Nervous and Muscular Tissue—Excitable Tissues

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- explain what distinguishes excitable tissues from other tissues;
- name the cell types that compose nervous tissue;
- identify the major parts of a nerve cell;
- visually recognize nervous tissue from specimens or photographs;
- name the three kinds of muscular tissue and describe the differences between them; and
- visually identify any type of muscular tissue from specimens or photographs.

Excitability is a characteristic of all living cells, but it is developed to its highest degree in nervous and muscular tissue, which are therefore described as **excitable tissues.** The basis for their excitation is an electrical charge difference (voltage) called the **membrane potential,** which occurs across the plasma membranes of all cells. Nervous and muscular tissues respond quickly to outside stimuli by means of changes in membrane potential. In nerve cells, these changes result in the rapid transmission of signals to other cells. In muscle cells, they result in contraction, or shortening of the cell.

Nervous Tissue

Nervous tissue (table 5.9) consists of **neurons** (NOOR-ons), or nerve cells, and a much greater number of **neuroglia** (noo-ROG-lee-uh), or **glial** (GLEE-ul) **cells,** which protect and assist the neurons. Neurons are specialized to detect stimuli, respond quickly, and transmit coded information rapidly to other cells. Each neuron has a prominent **soma,** or cell body, that houses the nucleus and most other organelles. This is the cell's center of genetic control and protein synthesis. Somas are usually round, ovoid, or stellate in shape. Extending from the soma, there are usually multiple short, branched processes called **dendrites**[23] that receive signals from other cells and transmit messages to the soma, and a single, much longer **axon,** or **nerve fiber,** that sends outgoing signals to other cells. Some axons are more than a meter long and extend from the brainstem to the foot. Nervous tissue is found in the brain, spinal cord, nerves, and ganglia, which are knotlike swellings in nerves. Local variations in the structure of nervous tissue are described in chapters 12 to 16.

Muscular Tissue

Muscular tissue consists of elongated cells that are specialized to respond to stimulation by contracting; thus, its primary job is to exert physical force on other tissues and organs—for example, when a skeletal muscle pulls on a bone, the heart contracts and expels blood, or the bladder contracts and expels urine. Not only do movements of the body and its limbs depend on muscle, but so do such

---

[22] *erythro* = red + *cyte* = cell

[23] *dendr* = tree + *ite* = little

Table 5.9 Nervous Tissue

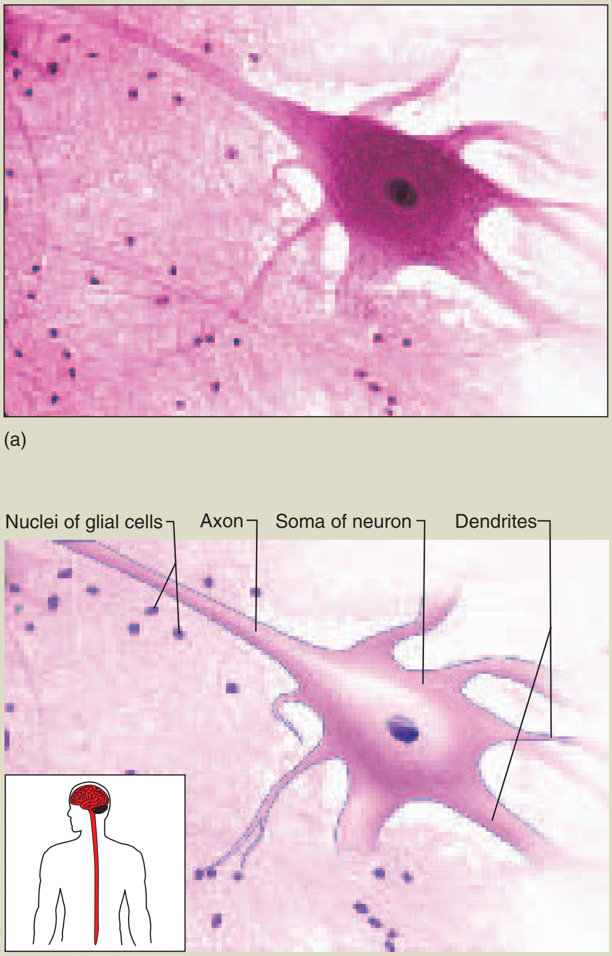


Figure 5.25 Spinal Cord Smear.

Microscopic appearance: Most sections show a few large neurons, usually with rounded or stellate cell bodies (somas) and fibrous processes (axon and dendrites) extending from the somas; neurons are surrounded by a greater number of much smaller glial cells, which lack dendrites and axons

Representative locations: Brain, spinal cord, nerves, ganglia

Function: Internal communication

processes as digestion, waste elimination, breathing, speech, and blood circulation. The muscles are also an important source of body heat. The word *muscle* means "little mouse," apparently referring to the appearance of rippling muscles under the skin.

There are three histological types of muscle—*skeletal, cardiac,* and *smooth*—which differ in appearance, physiology, and function (table 5.10). **Skeletal muscle** consists of long, cylindrical cells called **muscle fibers.** Most of it is attached to bones, but there are exceptions in the tongue, upper esophagus, some facial muscles, and some **sphincter**[24] (SFINK-tur) muscles (ringlike or cufflike muscles that open and close body passages). Each cell contains multiple nuclei adjacent to the plasma membrane. Skeletal muscle is described as *striated* and *voluntary.* The first term refers to alternating light and dark bands, or **striations** (stry-AY-shuns), created by the overlapping pattern of cytoplasmic protein filaments that cause muscle contraction. The second term, *voluntary,* refers to the fact that we usually have conscious control over skeletal muscle.

Cardiac muscle is essentially limited to the heart, though it extends slightly into the nearby blood vessels. It, too, is striated, but it differs from skeletal muscle in its other features. Its cells are much shorter, so they are commonly called **myocytes**[25] rather than fibers. The myocytes are branched and contain only one nucleus, which is located near the center. A light-staining region of glycogen often surrounds the nucleus. Cardiac myocytes are joined end to end by junctions called **intercalated**[26] (in-TUR-kuh-LAY-ted) **discs.** Electrical connections at these junctions enable a wave of excitation to travel rapidly from cell to cell, and mechanical connections keep the myocytes from pulling apart when the heart contracts. The electrical junctions allow all the myocytes of a heart chamber to be stimulated, and contract, almost simultaneously. Intercalated discs appear as dark transverse lines separating each myocyte from the next. They may be only faintly visible, however, unless the tissue has been specially stained for them. Cardiac muscle is considered *involuntary* because it is not usually under conscious control; it contracts even if all nerve connections to it are severed.

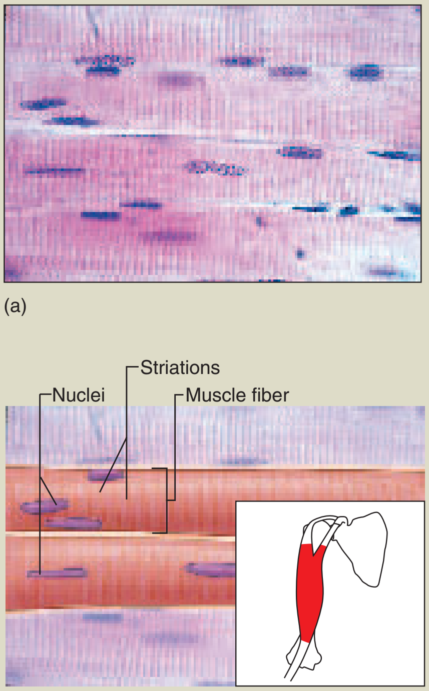
Smooth muscle lacks striations and is involuntary. Smooth muscle cells are fusiform (thick in the middle and tapered at the ends) and relatively short. They have only one, centrally placed nucleus. Small amounts of smooth muscle are found in the iris of the eye and in the skin, but most of it, called **visceral muscle,** forms layers in the walls of the digestive, respiratory, and urinary tracts, blood vessels, the uterus, and other viscera. In locations such as the esophagus and small intestine, smooth muscle forms adjacent layers, with the cells of one layer encircling the organ and the cells of the other layer running longitudinally. When the circular smooth muscle contracts, it may propel contents such as food through the organ. When the longitudinal layer contracts, it makes the organ shorter and

---

[24] *sphinc* = squeeze, bind tightly
[25] *myo* = muscle + *cyte* = cell
[26] *inter* = between + *calated* = inserted

Table 5.10 Muscular Tissue

Skeletal Muscle



(a)

(b)

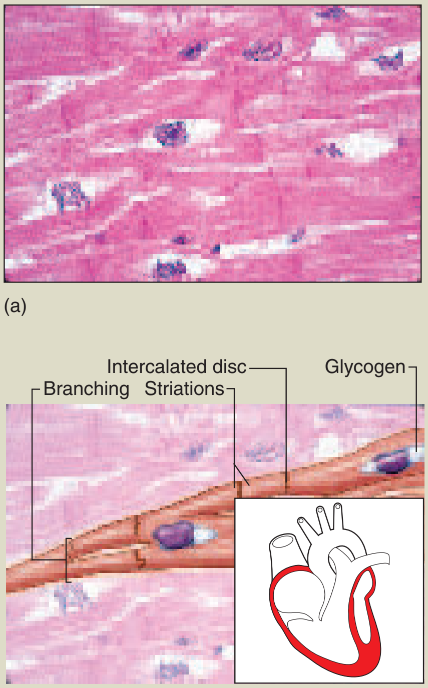
Figure 5.26 Skeletal Muscle.

Microscopic appearance: Long, cylindrical, unbranched cells (fibers), relatively parallel in longitudinal tissue sections; striations; multiple nuclei per cell, near plasma membrane

Representative locations: Skeletal muscles, mostly attached to bones but also in the tongue, esophagus, and voluntary sphincters of the lips, eyelids, urethra, and anus

Functions: Body movements, facial expression, posture, breathing, speech, swallowing, control of urination and defecation, and assistance in childbirth; under voluntary control

Cardiac Muscle



(a)

(b)

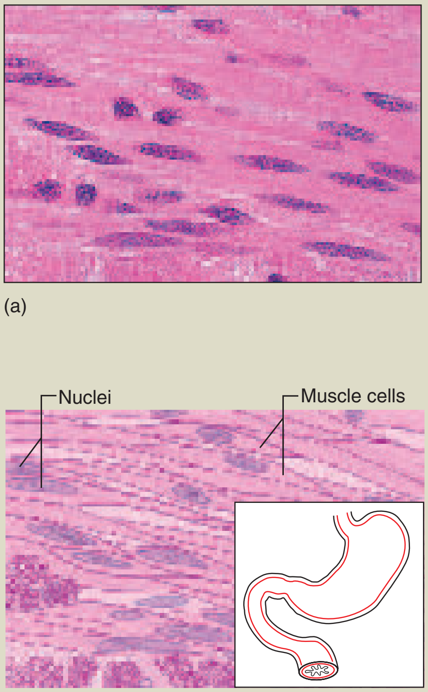
Figure 5.27 Cardiac Muscle.

Microscopic appearance: Short branched cells (myocytes); less parallel appearance in tissue sections; striations; intercalated discs; one nucleus per cell, centrally located and often surrounded by a light zone

Representative locations: Heart

Functions: Pumping of blood; under involuntary control

Smooth Muscle



(a)

(b)

Figure 5.28 Smooth Muscle, Wall of Small Intestine.

Microscopic appearance: Short fusiform cells overlapping each other; nonstriated; one nucleus per cell, centrally located

Representative locations: Usually found as sheets of tissue in walls of viscera; also in iris and associated with hair follicles; involuntary sphincters of urethra and anus

Functions: Swallowing; contractions of stomach and intestines; expulsion of feces and urine; labor contractions; control of blood pressure and flow; control of respiratory airflow; control of pupillary diameter; erection of hairs; under involuntary control

thicker. By regulating the diameter of blood vessels, smooth muscle is very important in controlling blood pressure and flow. Both smooth and skeletal muscle form sphincters that control the emptying of the bladder and rectum.

Think About It

How does the meaning of the word *fiber* differ in the following uses: muscle fiber, nerve fiber, and connective tissue fiber?

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

16. What do nervous and muscular tissue have in common? What is the primary function of each?
17. What kinds of cells compose nervous tissue, and how can they be distinguished from each other?
18. Name the three kinds of muscular tissue, describe how to distinguish them from each other in microscopic appearance, and state a location and function for each one.

Intercellular Junctions, Glands, and Membranes

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the junctions that hold cells and tissues together;
- describe or define different types of glands;
- describe the typical anatomy of a gland;
- name and compare different modes of glandular secretion;
- describe the way tissues are organized to form the body's membranes; and
- name and describe the major types of membranes in the body.

Intercellular Junctions

Most cells, with the exception of blood and metastatic cancer cells, must be anchored to each other and to the matrix if they are to grow and divide normally. The connections between one cell and another are called **intercellular junctions.** These attachments enable the cells to resist stress and communicate with each other. Without them, cardiac muscle cells would pull apart when they contracted, and every swallow of food would scrape away the lining of your esophagus. The principal types of intercellular junctions are shown in figure 5.29.

Tight Junctions

A **tight junction** completely encircles an epithelial cell near its apex and joins it tightly to the neighboring cells, like the plastic harness on a six-pack of soda cans. Proteins in the membranes of two adjacent cells form a zipperlike

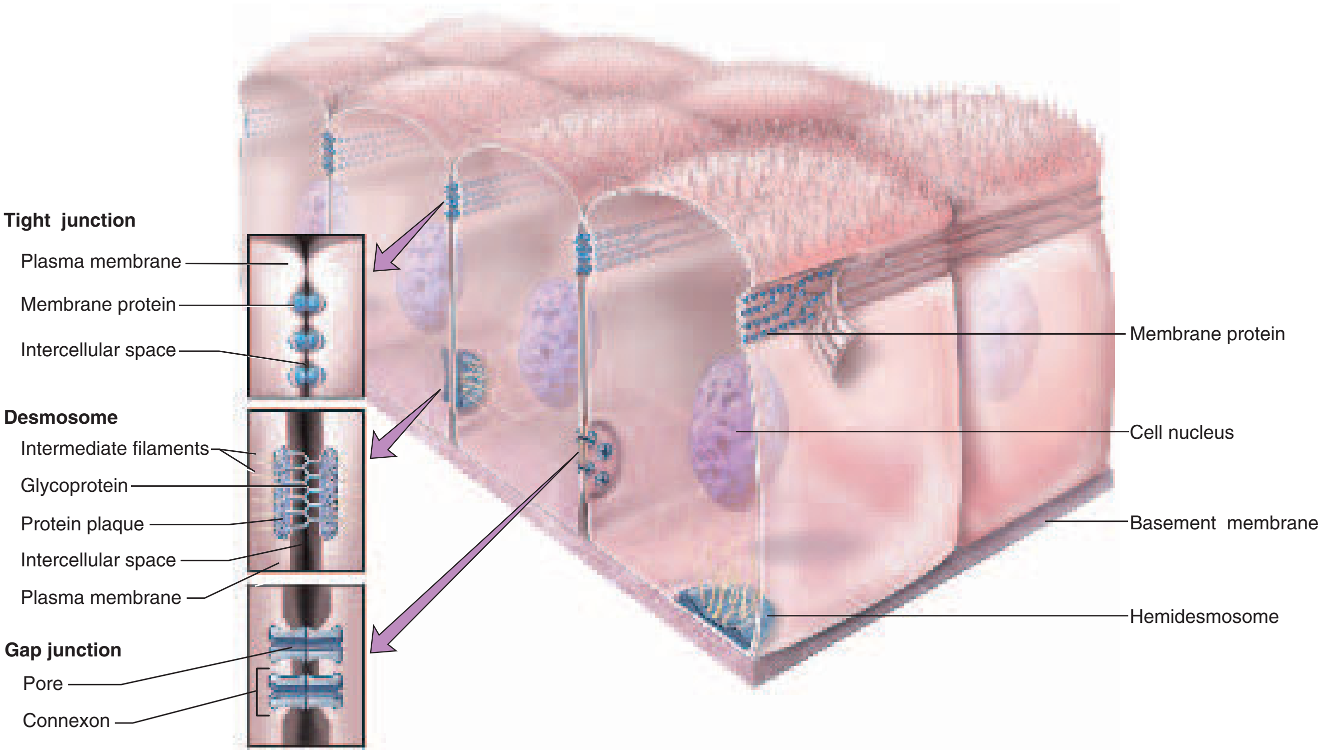

Tight junction
Plasma membrane
Membrane protein
Intercellular space
Desmosome
Intermediate filaments
Glycoprotein
Protein plaque
Intercellular space
Plasma membrane
Gap junction
Pore
Connexon
Membrane protein
Cell nucleus
Basement membrane
Hemidesmosome

Figure 5.29 **Types of Intercellular Junctions.**
Which of these junctions allows material to pass from one cell directly into the next?

pattern of complementary grooves and ridges. This seals off the intercellular space and makes it difficult for some substances to pass between the cells. In the stomach and intestines, tight junctions prevent digestive juices from seeping between epithelial cells and digesting the underlying connective tissue. They also help to prevent intestinal bacteria from invading the tissues, and they ensure that most digested nutrients pass *through* the epithelial cells and not *between* them.

Desmosomes

If a tight junction is like a zipper, a **desmosome**[27] (DEZ-mo-some) is more like the snap on a pair of jeans, a patch that holds cells together and enables a tissue to resist mechanical stress, but does not totally encircle a cell. Desmosomes are common in the epidermis, cardiac muscle, and cervix of the uterus. The neighboring cells are separated by a small gap, which is spanned by a fine mesh of glycoprotein filaments. These filaments terminate in a thickened protein plaque at the surface of each cell. On the cytoplasmic side of each plaque, intermediate filaments from the cytoskeleton approach and penetrate the plaque, turn like a J, and return a short distance back into the cytoplasm. Each cell contributes half of the complete desmosome. The basal cells of epithelial tissue have *hemidesmosomes*—half-desmosomes that anchor them to the underlying basement membrane.

Think About It

Why would desmosomes not be suitable as the only intercellular junctions in the epithelium of the stomach?

Gap (Communicating) Junctions

A **gap junction** is formed by a ringlike *connexon,* which consists of six transmembrane proteins surrounding a water-filled channel. Ions, glucose, amino acids, and other small solutes can pass directly from the cytoplasm of one cell into the next through these channels. In the embryo, nutrients pass from cell to cell through gap junctions until the circulatory system forms and takes over the role of nutrient distribution. Gap junctions are found in the intercalated discs of cardiac muscle and between the cells of some smooth muscle. The flow of ions through these junctions allows electrical excitation to pass directly from cell to cell so that the cells contract in near-unison. Gap junctions are absent from skeletal muscle.

Insight 5.2 Clinical Application

Pemphigus Vulgaris—An Autoimmune Disease

The immune system normally produces defensive *antibodies* that selectively attack foreign substances and leave the normal tissues of our bodies alone. But in a family of disorders called *autoimmune diseases,* antibodies fail to distinguish our own cells and tissues from foreign ones. Such misguided antibodies, called *autoantibodies,* thus launch destructive attacks on our own bodies. (Autoimmune diseases are discussed in more detail in chapter 21.) One such disease is *pemphigus vulgaris*[28] (PEM-fih-gus vul-GAIR-iss), a disorder in which autoantibodies attack the proteins of the desmosomes in the skin and mucous membranes. This breaks down the attachments between epithelial cells and causes widespread blistering of the skin and oral mucosa, loss of tissue fluid, and sometimes death. The condition can be controlled with drugs that suppress the immune system, but such drugs reduce the patient's immune defenses against other diseases.

---

[28] *pemphigus* = blistering + *vulgaris* = common

Glands

A **gland** is a cell or organ that secretes substances for use elsewhere in the body or releases them for elimination from the body. The gland product may be something synthesized by the gland cells (such as digestive enzymes) or something removed from the tissues and modified by the gland (such as urine). Glands are composed predominantly of epithelial tissue.

Endocrine and Exocrine Glands

Glands are broadly classified as endocrine or exocrine. They originate as invaginations of a surface epithelium. In **exocrine**[29] (EC-so-crin) **glands,** they usually maintain their contact with the surface by way of a **duct,** an epithelial tube that conveys their secretion to the surface. The secretion may be released to the body surface, as in the case of sweat, mammary, and tear glands, but more often it is released into the cavity (lumen) of another organ such as the mouth or intestine. **Endocrine**[30] (EN-doe-crin) **glands** lose their contact with the surface and have no ducts. They do, however, have a high density of blood capillaries and secrete their products directly into the blood. The secretions of endocrine glands, called *hormones,* function as chemical messengers to stimulate cells elsewhere in the body. Endocrine glands are the subject of chapter 17 and are not further considered here.

The exocrine-endocrine distinction is not always clear. The liver is an exocrine gland that secretes one of its

---

[27] *desmo* = band, bond, ligament + *som* = body

[29] *exo* = out + *crin* = to separate, secrete

[30] *endo* = in, into

products, bile, through a system of ducts but secretes hormones, albumin, and other products directly into the bloodstream. Several glands have both exocrine and endocrine components, such as the pancreas, testis, ovary, and kidney. And nearly all of the viscera have at least some cells that secrete hormones, even though most of these organs are not usually thought of as glands (for example, the brain and heart).

Unicellular glands are exocrine cells found in an epithelium that is predominantly nonsecretory. For example, the respiratory tract, which is lined mainly by ciliated cells, also has a liberal scattering of nonciliated, mucus-secreting goblet cells (see figs. 5.6 and 5.7).

Exocrine Gland Structure

Figure 5.30 shows a generalized multicellular exocrine gland—a structural arrangement found in such organs as the mammary gland, pancreas, and salivary glands. Most glands are enclosed in a fibrous **capsule.** The capsule often gives off extensions called **septa,** or **trabeculae** (trah-BEC-you-lee), that divide the interior of the gland into compartments called **lobes,** which are visible to the naked eye. Finer connective tissue septa may further subdivide each lobe into microscopic **lobules** (LOB-yools). Blood vessels, nerves, and the gland's own ducts generally travel through these septa. The connective tissue framework of the gland, called its **stroma,** supports and organizes the glandular tissue. The cells that perform the tasks of synthesis and secretion are collectively called the **parenchyma** (pa-REN-kih-muh). This is typically simple cuboidal or simple columnar epithelium.

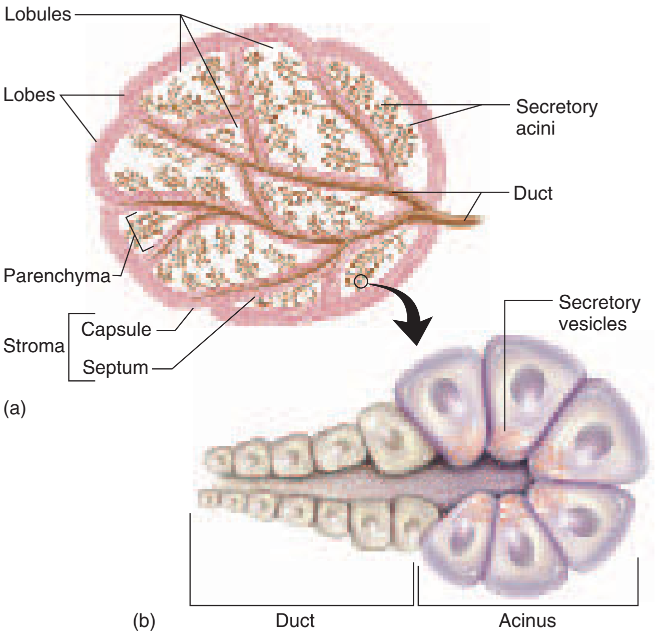


Figure 5.30 General Structure of an Exocrine Gland. (*a*) The gland duct branches repeatedly, following the connective tissue septa, until its finest divisions end on saccular acini of secretory cells. (*b*) Detail of an acinus and the beginning of a duct.

Exocrine glands are classified as **simple** if they have a single unbranched duct and **compound** if they have a branched duct. If the duct and secretory portion are of uniform diameter, the gland is called **tubular.** If the secretory cells form a dilated sac, the gland is called **acinar** and the sac is an **acinus**[31] (ASS-ih-nus), or **alveolus**[32] (AL-vee-OH-lus). A gland with secretory cells in both the tubular and acinar portions is called a **tubuloacinar gland** (fig. 5.31).

Types of Secretions

Glands are classified not only by their structure but also by the nature of their secretions. **Serous** (SEER-us) **glands** produce relatively thin, watery fluids such as perspiration, milk, tears, and digestive juices. **Mucous glands,** found in the tongue and roof of the mouth among other places, secrete a glycoprotein called *mucin* (MEW-sin). After it is secreted, mucin absorbs water and forms the sticky product *mucus.* (Note that *mucus,* the secretion, is spelled differently from *mucous,* the adjective form of the word.) **Mixed glands,** such as the two pairs of salivary glands in the chin, contain both serous and mucous cells and produce a mixture of the two types of secretions. **Cytogenic**[33] **glands** release whole cells. The only examples of these are the testes and ovaries, which produce sperm and egg cells.

Methods of Secretion

Glands are classified as merocrine or holocrine depending on how they produce their secretions. **Merocrine**[34] (MERR-oh-crin) **glands,** also called **eccrine**[35] (EC-rin) **glands,** have vesicles that release their secretion by exocytosis, as described in chapter 3 (fig. 5.32*a*). These include the tear glands, pancreas, gastric glands, and many others. In **holocrine**[36] **glands,** cells accumulate a product and then the entire cell disintegrates, so the secretion is a mixture of cell fragments and the substance the cell had synthesized prior to its disintegration (fig. 5.32*b*). The oil-producing glands of the scalp are an example. Holocrine secretions tend to be thicker than merocrine secretions.

---

[31] *acinus* = berry
[32] *alveol* = cavity, pit
[33] *cyto* = cell + *genic* = producing
[34] *mero* = part + *crin* = to separate, secrete
[35] *ec* = *ex* = out
[36] *holo* = whole, entire

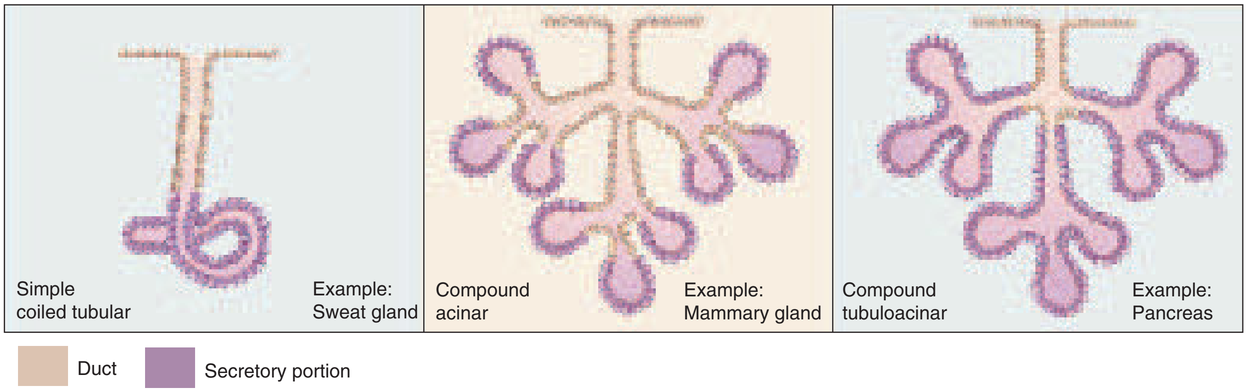

Simple
coiled tubular
Example:
Sweat gland
Compound
acinar
Example:
Mammary gland
Compound
tubuloacinar
Example:
Pancreas
Duct
Secretory portion

Figure 5.31 **Some Types of Exocrine Glands.** Glands are simple if their ducts do not branch and compound if they do; they are tubular if they have a uniform diameter, acinar if their secretory cells are limited to saccular acini, and tubuloacinar if they have secretory cells in both the acinar and tubular regions.
Predict and sketch the appearance of a simple acinar gland.

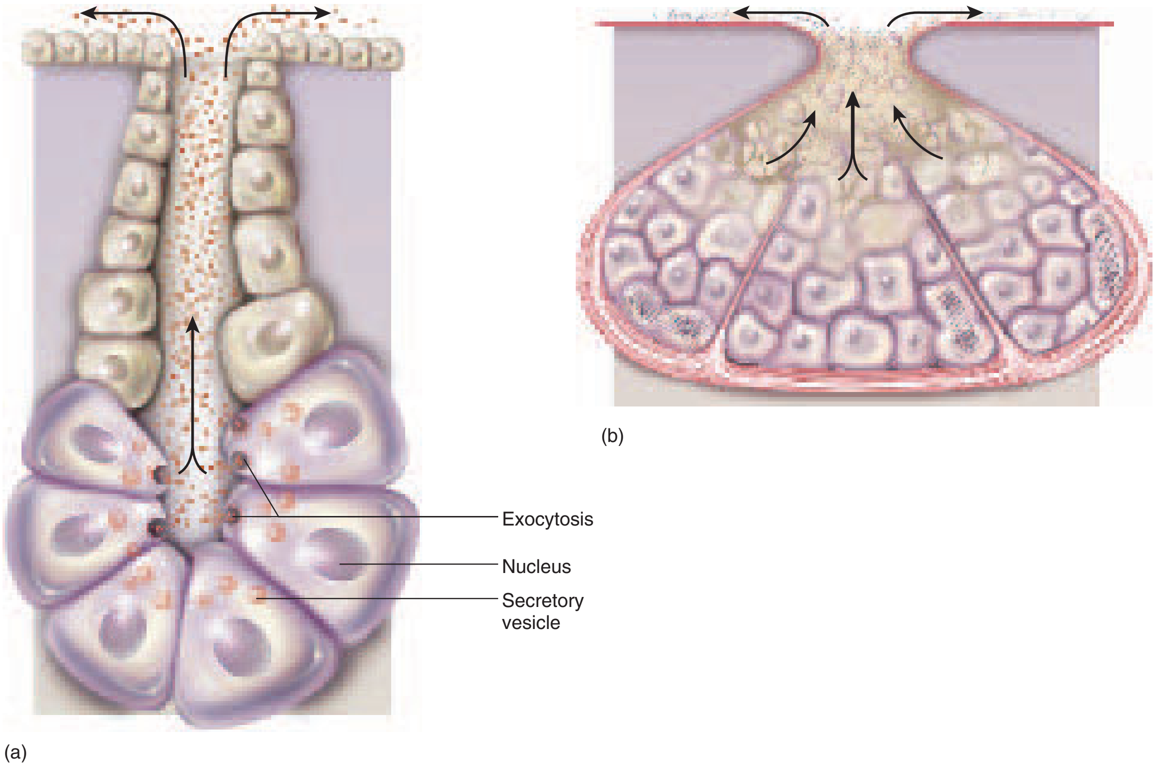

Exocytosis
Nucleus
Secretory
vesicle
(a)
(b)

Figure 5.32 **Modes of Exocrine Secretion.** (*a*) A merocrine gland, which secretes its product by means of exocytosis at the apical surfaces of the secretory cells. (*b*) A holocrine gland, whose secretion is composed of disintegrated secretory cells.
Which of these glands would require a higher rate of mitosis in its parenchymal cells?

Some glands, such as the axillary (armpit) sweat glands and mammary glands, are named **apocrine**[37] **glands** from a former belief that the secretion was composed of bits of apical cytoplasm that broke away from the cell surface. Closer study showed this to be untrue; these glands are primarily merocrine in their mode of secretion. These glands are nevertheless different from other merocrine glands in function and histological appearance, and they are still referred to as apocrine glands even though their mode of secretion is not unique.

Membranes

In atlas A, the major cavities of the body were described, as well as some of the membranes that line them and cover their viscera. We now consider some histological aspects of the major body membranes.

The largest membrane of the body is the **cutaneous** (cue-TAY-nee-us) **membrane**—or more simply, the skin (detailed in chapter 6). It consists of a stratified squamous epithelium (epidermis) resting on a layer of connective tissue (dermis). Unlike the other membranes to be considered, it is relatively dry. It retards dehydration of the body and provides an inhospitable environment for the growth of infectious organisms.

The two principal kinds of internal membranes are mucous and serous membranes. A **mucous membrane (mucosa)** (fig. 5.33), lines passageways that open to the exterior environment: the digestive, respiratory, urinary, and reproductive tracts. A mucosa consists of two to three layers: (1) an epithelium, (2) an areolar connective tissue layer called the **lamina propria**[38] (LAM-ih-nuh PRO-pree-uh), and sometimes, (3) a layer of smooth muscle called the **muscularis** (MUSK-you-LAIR-iss) **mucosae.** Mucous membranes have absorptive, secretory, and protective functions. They are often covered with mucus secreted by goblet cells, multicellular mucous glands, or both. The mucus traps bacteria and foreign particles, which keeps them from invading the tissues and aids in their removal from the body. The epithelium of a mucous membrane may also include absorptive, ciliated, and other types of cells.

A **serous membrane (serosa)** is composed of a simple squamous epithelium resting on a thin layer of areolar connective tissue. Serous membranes produce watery **serous** (SEER-us) **fluid,** which arises from the blood and derives its name from the fact that it is similar to blood serum in composition. Serous membranes line the insides of some body cavities and form a smooth outer surface on some of the viscera, such as the digestive tract. The pleurae, pericardium, and peritoneum described in atlas A are serous membranes.

The circulatory system is lined with a simple squamous epithelium called **endothelium,** derived from mesoderm. The endothelium rests on a thin layer of areolar tissue, which often rests in turn on an elastic sheet. Collectively, these tissues make up a membrane called the *tunica interna* of the blood vessels and *endocardium* of

---

[37] *apo* = from, off, away

[38] *lamina* = layer + *propria* = of one's own

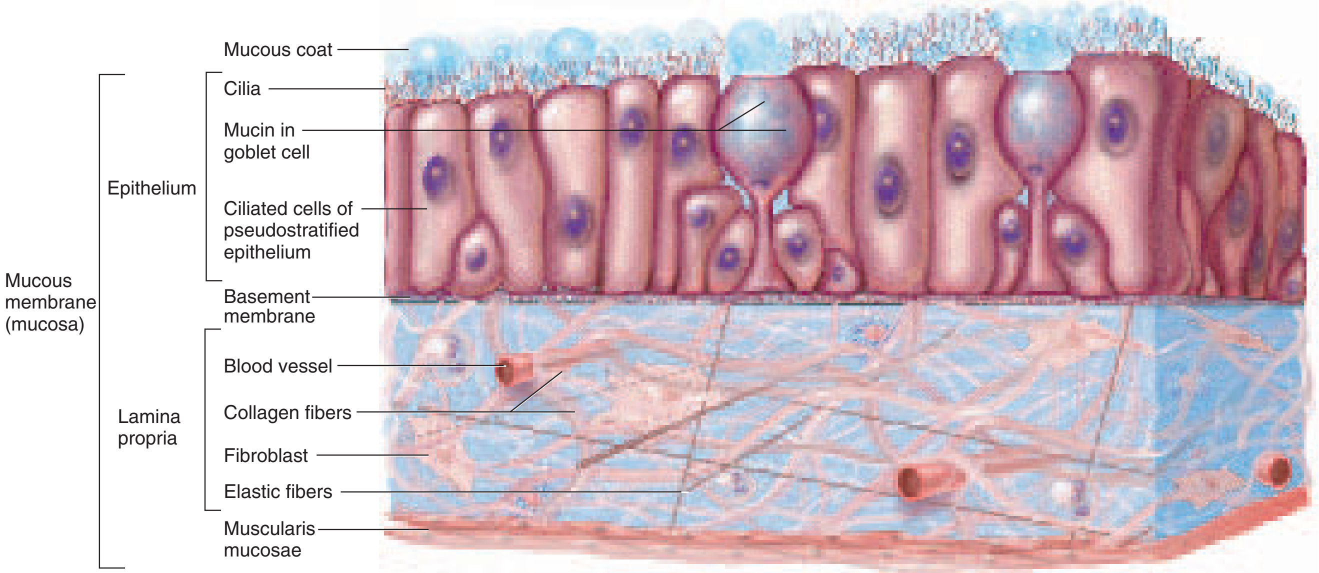


Figure 5.33 **Histology of a Mucous Membrane.**

the heart. The simple squamous epithelium that lines the pleural, pericardial, and peritoneal cavities is called **mesothelium.**

Some joints of the skeletal system are lined by fibrous **synovial** (sih-NO-vee-ul) **membranes,** made only of connective tissue. These membranes span the gap from one bone to the next and secrete slippery *synovial fluid* (rich in hyaluronic acid) into the joint.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

19. Compare the structure of tight junctions and gap junctions. Relate their structural differences to their functional differences.
20. Distinguish between a simple gland and a compound gland, and give an example of each. Distinguish between a tubular gland and an acinar gland, and give an example of each.
21. Contrast the merocrine and holocrine methods of secretion, and name a gland product produced by each method.
22. Describe the differences between a mucous and a serous membrane.
23. Name the layers of a mucous membrane, and state which of the four primary tissue classes composes each layer.

Tissue Growth, Development, Death, and Repair

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- name and describe the ways that a tissue can change from one type to another;
- name and describe the modes of tissue growth;
- name and describe the modes and causes of tissue shrinkage and death; and
- name and describe the ways the body repairs damaged tissues.

Changes in Tissue Type

You have studied the form and function of more than two dozen discrete types of human tissue in this chapter. You should not leave this subject, however, with the impression that once these tissue types are established in the adult, they never change. Tissues are, in fact, capable of changing from one type to another within certain limits. Most obviously, unspecialized tissues of the embryo develop into more diverse and specialized types of mature tissue—mesenchyme to muscle, for example. This development of a more specialized form and function is called **differentiation.**

Epithelia often exhibit **metaplasia,**[39] a change from one type of mature tissue to another. For example, the vagina of a young girl is lined with a simple cuboidal epithelium. At puberty, it changes to a stratified squamous epithelium, better adapted to the future demands of intercourse and childbirth. The nasal cavity is lined with ciliated pseudostratified columnar epithelium. However, if we block one nostril and breathe through the other one for several days, the epithelium in the unblocked passage changes to stratified squamous. In smokers, the pseudostratified columnar epithelium of the bronchi may transform into a stratified squamous epithelium.

Think About It

What functions of a pseudostratified columnar epithelium could not be served by a stratified squamous epithelium? In light of this, what might be some consequences of bronchial metaplasia in heavy smokers?

Tissue Growth

Tissues grow either because their cells increase in number or because the existing cells grow larger. Most embryonic and childhood growth occurs by **hyperplasia**[40] (HY-pur-PLAY-zhuh), tissue growth through cell multiplication. Exercised muscles grow, however, through **hypertrophy**[41] (hy-PUR-truh-fee), the enlargement of preexisting cells. **Neoplasia**[42] (NEE-oh-PLAY-zhuh) is the development of a tumor (neoplasm)—whether benign or malignant—composed of abnormal, nonfunctional tissue.

Tissue Shrinkage and Death

The shrinkage of a tissue through a loss in cell size or number is called **atrophy**[43] (AT-ruh-fee). Atrophy results from both normal aging *(senile atrophy)* and lack of use of an organ *(disuse atrophy)*. Muscles that are not exercised exhibit disuse atrophy as their cells become smaller. This was a serious problem for the first astronauts who participated in prolonged microgravity space flights. Upon return to normal gravity, they were sometimes too weak from muscular atrophy to walk. Space stations and shuttles now include exercise equipment to maintain the crews' muscular condition. Disuse atrophy also occurs when a limb is immobilized, as in a cast.

Necrosis[44] (neh-CRO-sis) is the premature, pathological death of tissue due to trauma, toxins, infection, and so forth. **Gangrene** is any tissue necrosis resulting from an insufficient blood supply. *Gas gangrene* is necrosis of a

---

[39] *meta* = change + *plas* = form, growth

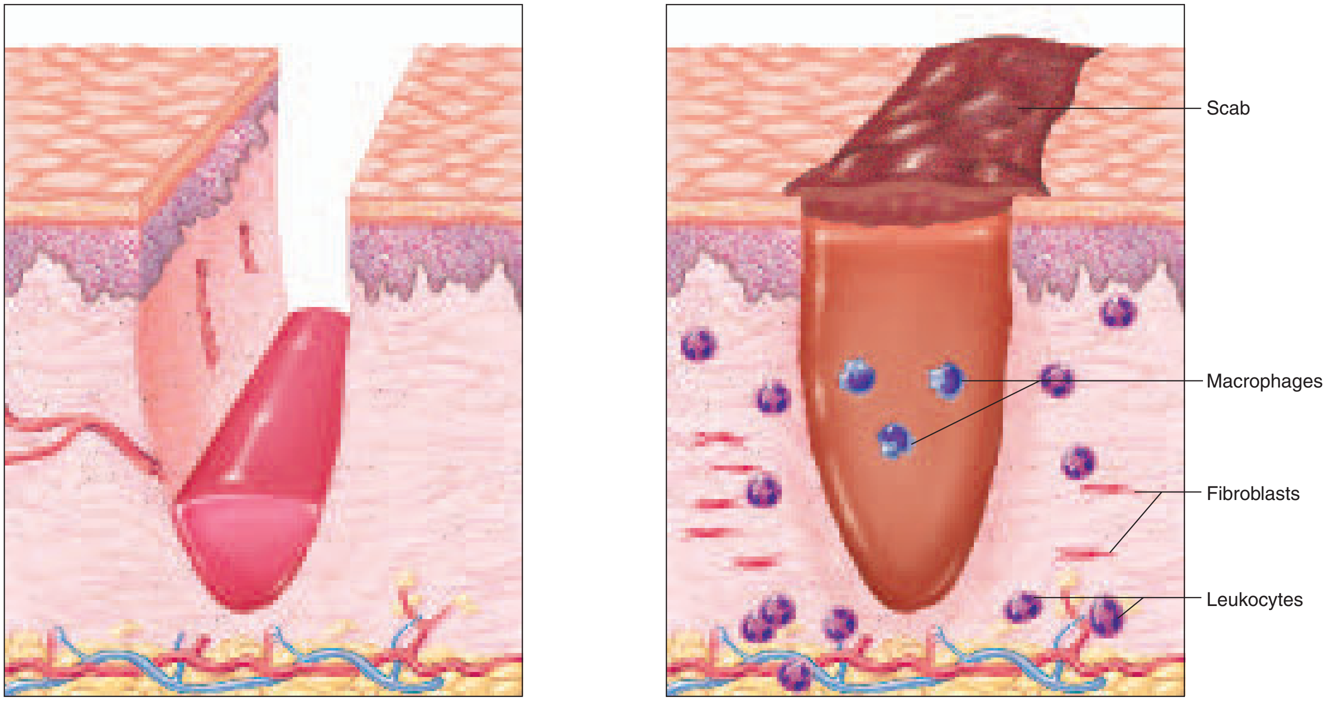
[40] *hyper* = excessive + *plas* = growth

[41] *trophy* = nourishment

[42] *neo* = new

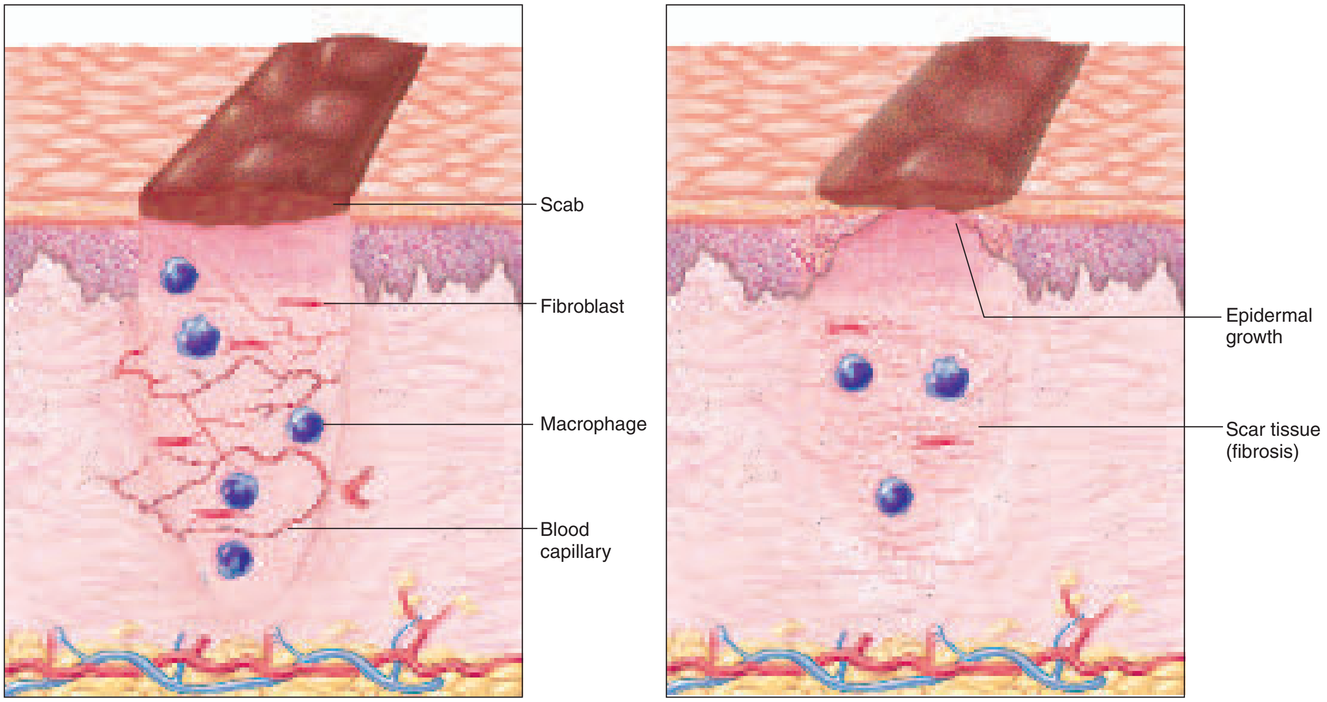
[43] *a* = without

[44] *necr* = death + *osis* = process


Scab
Macrophages
Fibroblasts
Leukocytes

1. Bleeding into the wound

2. Scab formation and macrophage activity


Scab
Fibroblast
Macrophage
Blood capillary
Epidermal growth
Scar tissue (fibrosis)

3. Formation of granulation tissue

4. Epithelial regeneration and connective tissue fibrosis

Figure 5.34 **Stages in the Healing of a Wound to the Skin.**

wound resulting from infection with certain bacteria. **Infarction** is the sudden death of tissue, such as heart muscle *(myocardial infarction)*, which occurs when its blood supply is cut off. A *decubitus ulcer* (bed sore) is tissue necrosis that occurs when immobilized persons, such as those confined to a hospital bed or wheelchair, are unable to move, and continual pressure on the skin cuts off blood flow to an area. Cells dying by necrosis usually swell, exhibit *blebbing* (bubbling) of their plasma membranes, and then rupture. The cell contents released into the tissues trigger an inflammatory response in which macrophages phagocytize the cellular debris.

Apoptosis[45] (AP-oh-TOE-sis), or **programmed cell death,** is the normal death of cells that have completed their function and best serve the body by dying and getting out of the way. Cells undergoing apoptosis shrink and are quickly phagocytized by macrophages and other cells. The cell contents never escape the cell, so there is no inflammatory response. Although billions of cells die every hour by apoptosis, they are engulfed so quickly that they are almost never seen except within macrophages. For this reason, apoptosis was not discovered until recently.

Apparently every cell has a built-in "suicide program" that enables the body to dispose of it when necessary. In some cases, a receptor protein in the plasma membrane called *Fas* binds to an extracellular suicide signal. *Fas* then activates intracellular enzymes that destroy the cell, including an *endonuclease* that chops up its DNA and a *protease* that destroys cellular proteins. In other cases, cells seem to undergo apoptosis automatically if they stop receiving growth factors from other cells. For example, in embryonic development we produce about twice as many neurons as we need. Those that make connections with target cells survive, while the excess 50% die for lack of *nerve growth factor.* Apoptosis also "dissolves" the webbing between the fingers and toes during embryonic development; it frees the earlobe from the side of the head in people with the genotype for detached earlobes (see chapter 4); and it causes shrinkage of the uterus after pregnancy and of the breasts after lactation ceases.

Tissue Repair

Damaged tissues can be repaired in two ways: *regeneration* or *fibrosis.* **Regeneration** is the replacement of dead or damaged cells by the same type of cells as before. Regeneration restores normal function to the organ. Most skin injuries (cuts, scrapes, and minor burns) heal by regeneration. The liver also regenerates remarkably well. **Fibrosis** is the replacement of damaged tissue with scar tissue, composed mainly of collagen produced by fibroblasts. Scar tissue helps to hold an organ together, but it does not restore normal function. Examples include the healing of severe cuts and burns, the healing of muscle injuries, and scarring of the lungs in tuberculosis.

Insight 5.3 Clinical Application

Keloids

In some people, especially dark-skinned adults, healing skin wounds exhibit excessive fibrosis, producing raised, shiny scars called *keloids* (fig. 5.35). Keloids extend beyond the boundaries of the original wound and tend to return even if they are surgically removed. Keloids may result from the excessive secretion of a fibroblast-stimulating growth factor by macrophages and platelets. They occur most often on the upper trunk and earlobes. Some tribespeople practice *scarification*—scratching or cutting the skin to induce keloid formation as a way of decorating the body.

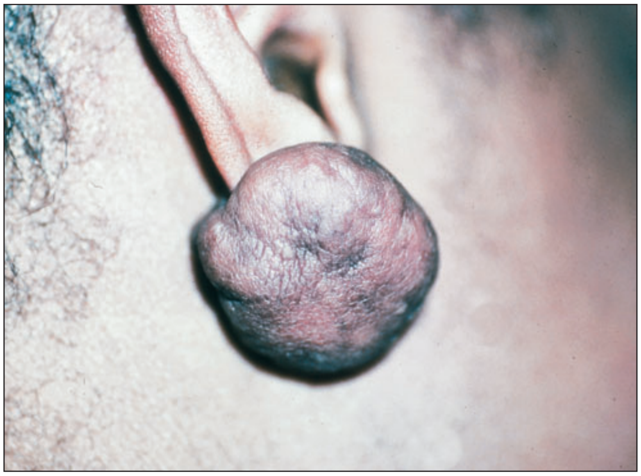


Figure 5.35 **A Keloid of the Earlobe.** This scar resulted from piercing the ear for earrings.

Figure 5.34 illustrates the following stages in the healing of a cut in the skin, where both regeneration and fibrosis are involved:

1. Severed blood vessels bleed into the cut. Mast cells and cells damaged by the cut release histamine, which dilates blood vessels, increases blood flow to the area, and makes blood capillaries more permeable. Blood plasma seeps into the wound, carrying antibodies, clotting proteins, and blood cells.
2. A blood clot forms in the tissue, loosely knitting the edges of the cut together and interfering with the spread of pathogens from the site of injury into healthy tissues. The surface of the blood clot dries and hardens in the air, forming a scab that temporarily seals the wound and blocks infection.

---

[45] *apo* = away + *ptosis* = falling

Beneath the scab, macrophages begin to clean up tissue debris by phagocytizing and digesting it.

3. New blood capillaries sprout from nearby vessels and grow into the wound. The deeper portions of the clot become infiltrated by capillaries and fibroblasts and transform into a soft mass called **granulation tissue.** Macrophages remove the blood clot while fibroblasts deposit new collagen to replace it. This *fibroblastic (reconstructive) phase* of repair begins 3 to 4 days after the injury and lasts up to 2 weeks.
4. Surface epithelial cells around the wound multiply and migrate into the wounded area, beneath the scab. The scab loosens and eventually falls off, and the epithelium grows thicker. Thus, the epithelium *regenerates* while the underlying connective tissue undergoes *fibrosis,* or scarring. Capillaries withdraw from the area as fibrosis progresses. The scar tissue may or may not show through the epithelium, depending on the severity of the wound. The wound may exhibit a depressed area at first, but this is often filled in by continued fibrosis and remodeling from below, until the scar becomes unnoticeable. This *remodeling (maturation) phase* of tissue repair begins several weeks after injury and may last as long as 2 years.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

24. Distinguish between *differentiation* and *metaplasia.*
25. Tissues can grow through an increase in cell size or cell number. What are the respective terms for these two kinds of growth?
26. Distinguish between *atrophy, necrosis,* and *apoptosis,* and describe a circumstance under which each of these forms of tissue loss may occur.
27. Distinguish between regeneration and fibrosis. Which process restores normal cellular function? What good is the other process if it does not restore function?

Insight 5.4 Clinical Application

The Stem Cell Controversy

One of the most controversial scientific issues at the dawn of the twenty-first century has been stem cell research. At least 18 countries have recently debated or enacted laws to regulate stem cell research, with politicians, scientists, bioethicists, and religious leaders joining in the debate, and legions of lay citizens contributing their opinions to newspaper editorial pages. What are stem cells and why is this subject so controversial?

Stem cells are immature cells with the ability to develop into one or more types of mature, functional cells. *Adult stem (AS) cells* sparsely populate most of the body's organs and retain the ability to differentiate into mature, functional cells. When an adult stem cell divides, one daughter cell remains a stem cell and the other differentiates into a mature tissue cell. The latter replaces a cell lost to damage or to normal cellular turnover. Some stem cells are *unipotent,* able to develop into only one mature cell type, such as sperm or epidermal squamous cells. Others are *multipotent,* able to produce multiple mature cell types, as when bone marrow stem cells differentiate into red and white blood cells.

Not surprisingly, biologists see stem cells as a possible treatment for diseases that result from the loss of functional cells. Skin and bone marrow stem cells have been used in therapy for many years. Scientists hope that with a little coaxing, stem cells might replace cardiac muscle damaged by heart attack; restore function to an injured spinal cord; cure parkinsonism by replacing lost brain cells; or cure diabetes mellitus by replacing lost insulin-secreting cells. But adult stem cells have limited developmental potential, and probably cannot make all the cell types needed to treat a broad range of degenerative diseases. In addition, they are present in very small numbers, and difficult to harvest and culture in the quantities needed for therapy.

Embryonic stem (ES) cells, however, may hold greater potential. ES cells harvested from week-old human embryos composed of 100 to 150 cells are *pluripotent*—able to develop into any type of embryonic or adult cell. New laboratory methods have made ES cells easier to culture than AS cells and have greatly accelerated stem cell research in recent years.

The road to therapy with ES cells remains full of technical, ethical, and legal speed bumps. Will ES cells be rejected by the recipient's immune system? Can the ES cells or the growth media in which they are cultured introduce viruses or other pathogens into the recipient? How can the ES cells be made to lodge and grow in the right place in the patient's body? Could they grow into tumors instead of healthy tissue? Can ES cell therapy ever be economical enough to be affordable to any but the very rich? Scientists can scarcely begin to tackle these problems, however, unless and until a bioethical question is resolved: Can we balance the benefits of stem cell therapy against the destruction of early human embryos from which the ES cells are harvested?

Where do these embryos come from? Most are donated by couples using *in vitro fertilization (IVF)* to conceive a child. IVF entails collecting numerous eggs from the prospective mother, fertilizing them in glassware with the father's sperm, letting them develop into embryos (technically, pre-embryos) of about 8 to 16 cells, and then transplanting *some* of these into the mother's uterus (see Insight 29.4). To overcome the low odds of success, excess embryos are always produced and some are always left over. The excess embryos are often destroyed, but many couples choose instead to donate them for research that may ultimately benefit other patients. It would seem sensible to use the embryos for beneficial purposes rather than to simply destroy and discard them. Opponents of stem cell research argue, however, that potential medical benefits cannot justify the destruction of a human embryo. Understandably, this has aroused an intense debate that is likely to restrain stem cell research for some time to come.

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

The Study of Tissues (p. 158)

1. *Histology (microscopic anatomy)* is the study of tissues.
2. The body is composed of four *primary tissues: epithelial, connective, nervous,* and *muscular tissue.*
3. Tissues are composed of *cells* and *matrix (extracellular material).* The matrix is composed of *fibers* and *ground substance.*
4. Mature tissues develop from three *primary germ layers* of the embryo: *ectoderm, mesoderm,* and *endoderm.*
5. Most tissues are studied as thin slices called *histological sections* colored with *stains* to show detail. Histological sections of elongated structures can be *longitudinal, cross,* or *oblique sections.*

Epithelial Tissue (p. 160)

1. *Epithelia* are sheets of cells that cover organ surfaces and form glands.
2. Epithelia are composed of one or more layers of closely adhering cells, and lack blood vessels.
3. Epithelia are connected to the underlying connective tissue by a thin *basement membrane.*
4. In a *simple epithelium,* all cells contact the basement membrane. The four kinds of simple epithelium are *simple squamous* (with flat cells), *simple cuboidal* (with cubical to round cells), *simple columnar* (with tall narrow cells), and *pseudostratified columnar* (in which there are basal cells that do not reach the free surface, creating an appearance of stratification) (table 5.2).
5. In a *stratified epithelium,* the cells are multilayered and some rest on top of others, without touching the basement membrane. The four types of stratified epithelium are *stratified squamous, stratified cuboidal, stratified columnar,* and *transitional* (table 5.3).
6. Stratified squamous epithelium has two forms: *keratinized,* in which the surface cells are dead and packed with keratin, and *nonkeratinized,* in which the surface cells are living. The former constitutes the epidermis and the latter is found in internal passages such as the esophagus.

Connective Tissue (p. 166)

1. *Connective tissue* consists mostly of fibers and ground substance, with widely separated cells.
2. Connective tissue binds, supports, and protects organs, and plays diverse roles in immunity, movement, transport, energy storage, and other processes.
3. *Fibrous connective tissue* has especially conspicuous fibers, which are of three kinds: *collagenous, reticular,* and *elastic.*
4. The cells of fibrous connective tissue include *fibroblasts, macrophages, leukocytes, plasma cells, mast cells,* and *adipocytes.*
5. The ground substance of fibrous connective tissue usually has a gelatinous consistency due to glycosaminoglycans, proteoglycans, and adhesive glycoproteins.
6. Fibrous connective tissue includes *areolar, reticular, adipose, dense irregular,* and *dense regular* types (tables 5.4 and 5.5).
7. *Cartilage* is a connective tissue with a rubbery matrix. Its principal cells are *chondrocytes*, housed in cavities called *lacunae.* The three types of cartilage are *hyaline cartilage, elastic cartilage,* and *fibrocartilage* (table 5.6).
8. *Bone (osseous tissue)* has a stony calcified matrix. The two types of bone are *spongy* and *compact* bone.
9. The principal cells of bone are *osteocytes,* housed in lacunae. Much of the matrix of compact bone is deposited in cylindrical layers around a *central canal* occupied by blood vessels and nerves (table 5.7).
10. *Blood* is a fluid connective tissue composed of *erythrocytes, leukocytes,* and *platelets* in a liquid matrix, the *plasma* (table 5.8).

Nervous and Muscular Tissue—Excitable Tissues (p. 175)

1. Nervous and muscular tissue are called *excitable* tissues because they show quick electrical responses to stimuli.
2. *Nervous tissue* is composed of *neurons (nerve cells)* and supporting *glial cells* (table 5.9).
3. Neurons have a *cell body (soma)* and usually one *axon* and *multiple dendrites.*
4. *Muscular tissue* is specialized to contract and move other tissues.
5. There are three kinds of muscle: *skeletal, cardiac,* and *smooth* (table 5.10).

Intercellular Junctions, Glands, and Membranes (p. 178)

1. Intercellular junctions attach cells to each other.
2. Zipperlike *tight junctions* seal off the space between cells; snap- or weldlike *desmosomes* connect cells at patches rather than continuous zones of attachment; and *gap junctions* have pores that allow substances to pass directly from cell to cell.
3. *Glands* are organs that release secretions for use in the body or for waste elimination.
4. *Exocrine glands* release their secretions through a duct onto the surface of an organ. *Endocrine glands* lack ducts and release their secretions *(hormones)* into the bloodstream.
5. The connective tissue framework of a gland is called its *stroma,* and includes a capsule and internal septa. The secretory part is the *parenchyma* and is composed of epithelial secretory cells and ducts.
6. *Simple* glands have a single unbranched duct; *compound* glands have branched ducts. *Tubular* glands have ductile and secretory portions of uniform diameter; *acinar* glands have dilated sacs (acini) of secretory cells at the end of a duct.
7. *Serous* glands secrete thin runny fluids; *mucous* glands secrete viscous

mucus; *mixed* glands secrete both; and *cytogenic* glands produce cells (eggs and sperm) as their products.

8. *Merocrine* gland cells release their secretion by exocytosis; *holocrine* gland cells break down to become the secretion; *apocrine* glands are specialized glands with a merocrine mode of secretion but different histological appearance.
9. Membranes of the body include the relatively dry *cutaneous membrane* (skin), moist *serous membranes* covered with serous fluid; and *mucous* membranes that secrete mucus. Blood vessels are lined with a membrane called the *endothelium;* the ventral body cavity is lined with a membrane called *mesothelium;* and some joints are lined with *synovial* membranes.

Tissue Growth, Development, Death, and Repair (p. 183)

1. *Differentiation* is the development of a mature specialized tissue from an unspecialized one. *Metaplasia* is the normal conversion of one mature tissue type into another.
2. Organs grow through tissue *hyperplasia* (cell multiplication), *hypertrophy* (cell enlargement), or *neoplasia* (abnormal growth of tumors).
3. Organs shrink through tissue *atrophy* (shrinkage due to aging or disuse).
4. Two kinds of tissue death are *necrosis* (pathological death of tissues from such causes as trauma, infection, toxins, and oxygen deprivation) and *apoptosis* (normal, programmed death of cells that have completed their function).
5. Two kinds of tissue repair are *regeneration* (which restores the preexisting tissue type and function) and *fibrosis* (which replaces the previous tissue with fibrous scar tissue).

Selected Vocabulary

histology 158
tissue 158
matrix 158
ground substance 158
tissue fluid 158
extracellular fluid 158
epithelial tissue 160
basement membrane 160
goblet cell 161
connective tissue 166
fibroblast 167
collagenous fibers 167
cartilage 172
chondrocyte 172
osseous tissue 172
osteocyte 172
nervous tissue 175
neuron 175
muscular tissue 175
tight junction 178
desmosome 179
gap junction 179
exocrine gland 179
endocrine gland 179
stroma 180
parenchyma 180
acinus 180
merocrine gland 180
holocrine gland 180
apocrine gland 182
mucous membrane 182
serous membrane 182
differentiation 183
hyperplasia 183
hypertrophy 183
atrophy 183
necrosis 183
apoptosis 185
regeneration 185
fibrosis 185

Testing Your Recall

1. Transitional epithelium is found in
   a. the urinary system.
   b. the respiratory system.
   c. the digestive system.
   d. the reproductive system.
   e. all of the above.

2. The external surface of the stomach is covered by
   a. a mucosa.
   b. a serosa.
   c. the parietal peritoneum.
   d. a lamina propria.
   e. a basement membrane.

3. Which of these is a primary germ layer?
   a. epidermis
   b. mucosa
   c. ectoderm
   d. endothelium
   e. epithelium

4. A seminiferous tubule of the testis is lined with ____ epithelium.
   a. simple cuboidal
   b. pseudostratified columnar ciliated
   c. stratified squamous
   d. transitional
   e. stratified cuboidal

5. ____ prevent fluids from seeping between epithelial cells.
   a. Glycosaminoglycans
   b. Hemidesmosomes
   c. Tight junctions
   d. Communicating junctions
   e. Basement membranes

6. A fixative serves to
   a. stop tissue decay.
   b. improve contrast.
   c. repair a damaged tissue.
   d. bind epithelial cells together.
   e. bind cardiac myocytes together.

7. The collagen of areolar tissue is produced by
   a. macrophages.
   b. fibroblasts.
   c. mast cells.
   d. leukocytes.
   e. chondrocytes.

8. Tendons are composed of ______ connective tissue.
   a. skeletal
   b. areolar
   c. dense irregular
   d. yellow elastic
   e. dense regular

9. The shape of the external ear is due to
   a. skeletal muscle.
   b. elastic cartilage.
   c. fibrocartilage.
   d. articular cartilage.
   e. hyaline cartilage.

10. The most abundant formed element(s) of blood is/are
    a. plasma.
    b. erythrocytes.
    c. platelets.
    d. leukocytes.
    e. proteins.

11. Any form of pathological tissue death is called ______.

12. The simple squamous epithelium that lines the peritoneal cavity is called _____.
13. Osteocytes and chondrocytes occupy little cavities called _____.
14. Muscle cells and axons are often called _____ because of their shape.
15. Tendons and ligaments are made mainly of the protein _____.
16. The only type of muscle that lacks gap junctions is _____.
17. An epithelium rests on a layer called the _____ between its deepest cells and the underlying connective tissue.
18. Fibers and ground substance make up the _____ of a connective tissue.
19. Polysaccharide chains bound to a core protein form giant molecules called _____, an important part of the connective tissue matrix.
20. Any epithelium in which every cell touches the basement membrane is called a/an _____ epithelium.

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. The esophagus is protected from abrasion by a keratinized stratified squamous epithelium.
2. All cells of a pseudostratified columnar epithelium contact the basement membrane.
3. Not all skeletal muscle is attached to bones.
4. The stroma of a gland does not secrete anything.
5. In all connective tissues, the matrix occupies more space than the cells do.
6. Adipocytes are limited to adipose tissue.
7. Tight junctions function primarily to prevent cells from pulling apart.
8. Metaplasia is a normal, healthy tissue transformation but neoplasia is not.
9. Nerve and muscle cells are not the body's only electrically excitable cells.
10. Cartilage is always covered by a fibrous perichondrium.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. A woman in labor is often told to push. In doing so, is she consciously contracting her uterus to expel the baby? Justify your answer based on the muscular composition of the uterus.
2. A major tenet of the cell theory is that all bodily structure and function is based on cells. The structural properties of bone, cartilage, and tendons, however, are due more to their extracellular material than to their cells. Is this an exception to the cell theory? Why or why not?
3. When cartilage is compressed, water is squeezed out of it, and when pressure is taken off, water flows back into the matrix. This being the case, why do you think cartilage at weight-bearing joints such as the knees can degenerate from lack of exercise?
4. The epithelium of the respiratory tract is mostly of the pseudostratified columnar ciliated type, but in the alveoli—the tiny air sacs where oxygen and carbon dioxide are exchanged between the blood and inhaled air—the epithelium is simple squamous. Explain the functional significance of this histological difference. That is, why don't the alveoli have the same kind of epithelium as the rest of the respiratory tract?
5. Which do you think would heal faster, cartilage or bone? Stratified squamous or simple columnar epithelium? Why?

Answers at the Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Legend Questions

5.2 These are longitudinal sections. In the transverse plane, both the egg white and yolk would be round. In the oblique plane, the egg white would be elliptical but the yolk would be round.

5.12 The epithelia of the tongue, oral cavity, esophagus, and anal canal would look similar to this.

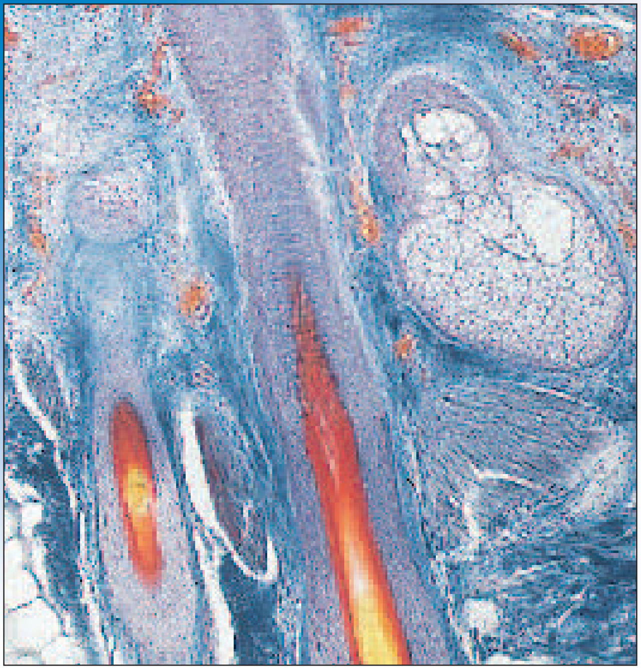
5.29 Gap junctions

5.31 A simple sac opening directly onto an epithelial surface, without a duct

5.32 The holocrine gland, to replace the cells that disintegrate

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.



Hair follicles and sebaceous (oil) glands

CHAPTER 6

The Integumentary System

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Structure of the Skin and Subcutaneous Tissue 192
- The Epidermis 192
- The Dermis 195
- The Hypodermis 196
- Skin Color 196
- Skin Markings 198

Functions of the Skin 198
- The Skin as a Barrier 199
- Vitamin D Synthesis 199
- Sensory Functions 199
- Thermoregulation 200
- Social Functions 200

Hair and Nails 200
- Types and Distribution of Hair 201
- Structure of the Hair and Follicle 202
- Hair Growth and Loss 203
- Functions of Hair 204
- Nails 204

Cutaneous Glands 205
- Sweat Glands 205
- Sebaceous Glands 207
- Ceruminous Glands 207
- Mammary Glands 207

Diseases of the Skin 208
- Skin Cancer 208
- Burns 209

Connective Issues 212

Chapter Review 213

INSIGHTS

6.1 **Clinical Application:** Dead Skin and Dust Mites 195

6.2 **Clinical Application:** Transdermal Absorption 199

6.3 **Clinical Application:** The Science and Pseudoscience of Hair Analysis 202

6.4 **Clinical Application:** UVA, UVB, and Sunscreens 210

6.5 **Clinical Application:** Skin Grafts and Artificial Skin 211

Brushing Up

To understand this chapter, it is important that you understand or brush up on the following concepts:

- Stratified squamous epithelium (p. 161)
- Collagenous fibers (p. 167)
- Areolar and dense irregular connective tissue (pp. 168–169)
- Desmosomes (p. 179)
- Merocrine and holocrine glands (p. 180)

The **integumentary system** consists of the skin and its derivatives—hair, nails, and cutaneous glands. We are perhaps more conscious of this system than of any other in the body. Few people venture out of the house each day without first looking in a mirror to see if their skin and hair are presentable. We are well aware of how important this system is to individual recognition, social acceptance, and self-image—and social considerations aside, self-image is important to a person's overall health.

Dermatology is the scientific study and medical treatment of the integumentary system. This is the most easily examined of the organ systems, and its appearance provides important clues not only to its own health but also to deeper disorders such as liver cancer, anemia, and heart failure. It is also the most vulnerable organ system, exposed to radiation, trauma, infection, and injurious chemicals. Consequently, it needs and receives more medical attention than any other organ system.

Structure of the Skin and Subcutaneous Tissue

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the histological structure of the epidermis, dermis, and subcutaneous tissue; and
- discuss the skin's color and markings.

The **skin,** or **integument,** is the body's largest organ (fig. 6.1). In adults, it covers an area of 1.5 to 2.0 m^2 and accounts for about 15% of the body weight. It consists of two layers: (1) a stratified squamous epithelium called the *epidermis* and (2) a deeper connective tissue layer called the *dermis.* Below the skin is another connective tissue layer, the *hypodermis,* which is also discussed in this chapter.

Most of the skin is 1 to 2 mm thick—about half as thick as the cover of this book. It ranges, however, from less than 0.5 mm on the eyelids to 6 mm between the shoulder blades. This difference is due mainly to variation in the thickness of the dermis. However, skin is classified as *thick* or *thin skin* based on the relative thickness of the epidermis alone, especially the surface layer of dead cells called the *stratum corneum.* **Thick skin** covers the palms, soles, and corresponding surfaces of the fingers and toes. It has an epidermis that is 400 to 600 μm thick, due to a very thick, tough stratum corneum (fig. 6.2*b*). Thick skin has sweat glands but no hair follicles or sebaceous (oil) glands. The rest of the body is covered with **thin skin,** which has an epidermis 75 to 150 μm thick, with a thin stratum corneum (see fig. 6.3). It possesses hair follicles, sebaceous glands, and sweat glands.

The Epidermis

The **epidermis**[1] is a keratinized stratified squamous epithelium, as discussed in chapter 5. That is, its surface consists of dead cells packed with the tough protein *keratin.* Like other epithelia, the epidermis lacks blood vessels and depends on the diffusion of nutrients from the underlying connective tissue. It has sparse nerve endings for touch and pain, but most sensations of the skin are due to nerve endings in the dermis. The epidermis usually consists of four zones (five in thick skin), described here in order from deep to superficial (fig. 6.2).

Stratum Basale

The **stratum basale** (bah-SAY-lee) consists of a single layer of cuboidal to low columnar cells resting on the basement membrane of the epithelium. There are three types of cells in this layer:

1. **Keratinocytes** (keh-RAT-ih-no-sites) are the majority of cells. They are named for their role in synthesizing the keratin of the skin. Keratinocytes of the stratum basale undergo mitosis and produce new epidermal cells to replace the dead ones that exfoliate (flake off) from the surface.
2. **Melanocytes** (MEL-an-o-sites) synthesize the pigment melanin. They have long branching processes that spread among the basal keratinocytes and continually shed melanin-containing fragments from their tips. The keratinocytes phagocytize these fragments and accumulate melanin granules on the "sunny side" of the nucleus. Like a little parasol, the pigment shields the DNA from ultraviolet radiation. People of all skin colors have about equal numbers of melanocytes. Differences in color result from differences in the rate of melanin synthesis and how clumped or spread out the melanin is in the keratinocytes. In light skin, the melanin is less abundant and is relatively clumped near the nucleus, imparting less color to the cells.
3. **Tactile (Merkel[2]) cells,** relatively few in number, are receptors for the sense of touch. The tactile cell and its dermal nerve fiber are collectively called a *tactile (Merkel) disc.*

Stratum Spinosum

The **stratum spinosum** (spy-NO-sum) consists of several layers of keratinocytes. The deepest cells undergo mitosis and contribute to the replacement of epidermal cells that exfoliate from the surface. As they are pushed farther

---

[1] *epi* = above, upon + *derm* = skin

[2] F. S. Merkel (1845–1919), German anatomist

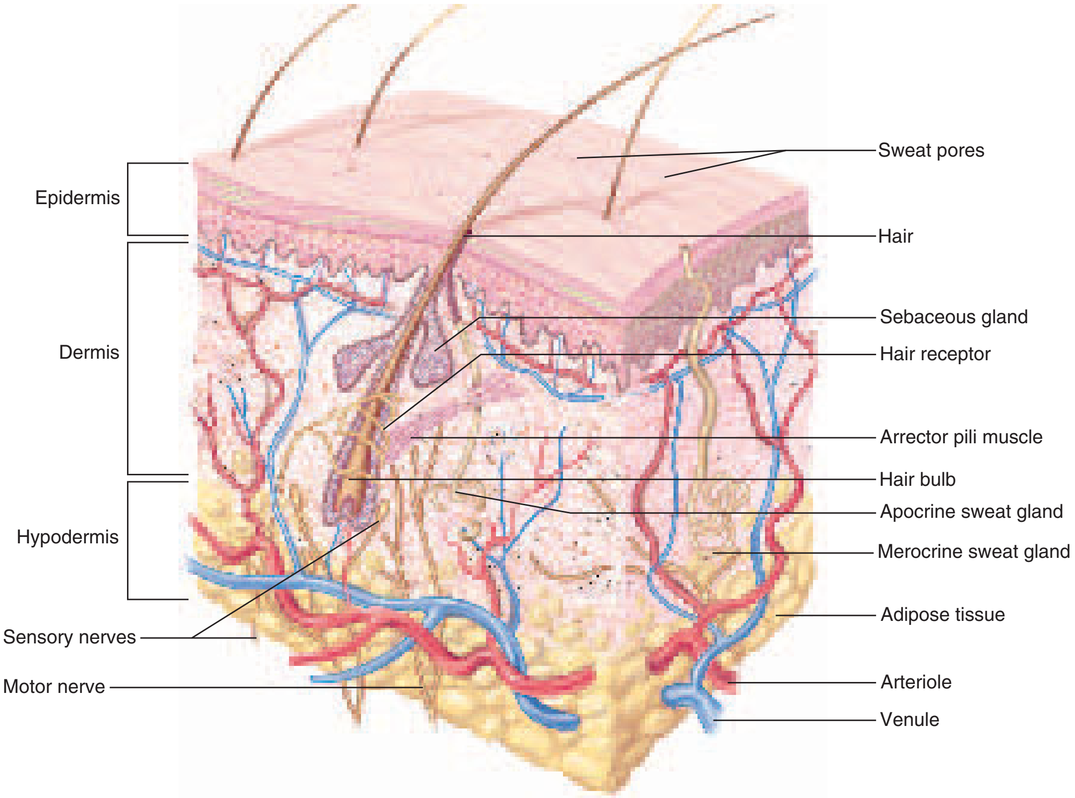

Epidermis
Dermis
Hypodermis
Sensory nerves
Motor nerve
Sweat pores
Hair
Sebaceous gland
Hair receptor
Arrector pili muscle
Hair bulb
Apocrine sweat gland
Merocrine sweat gland
Adipose tissue
Arteriole
Venule

Figure 6.1 **Structure of the Skin and Its Derivatives.**

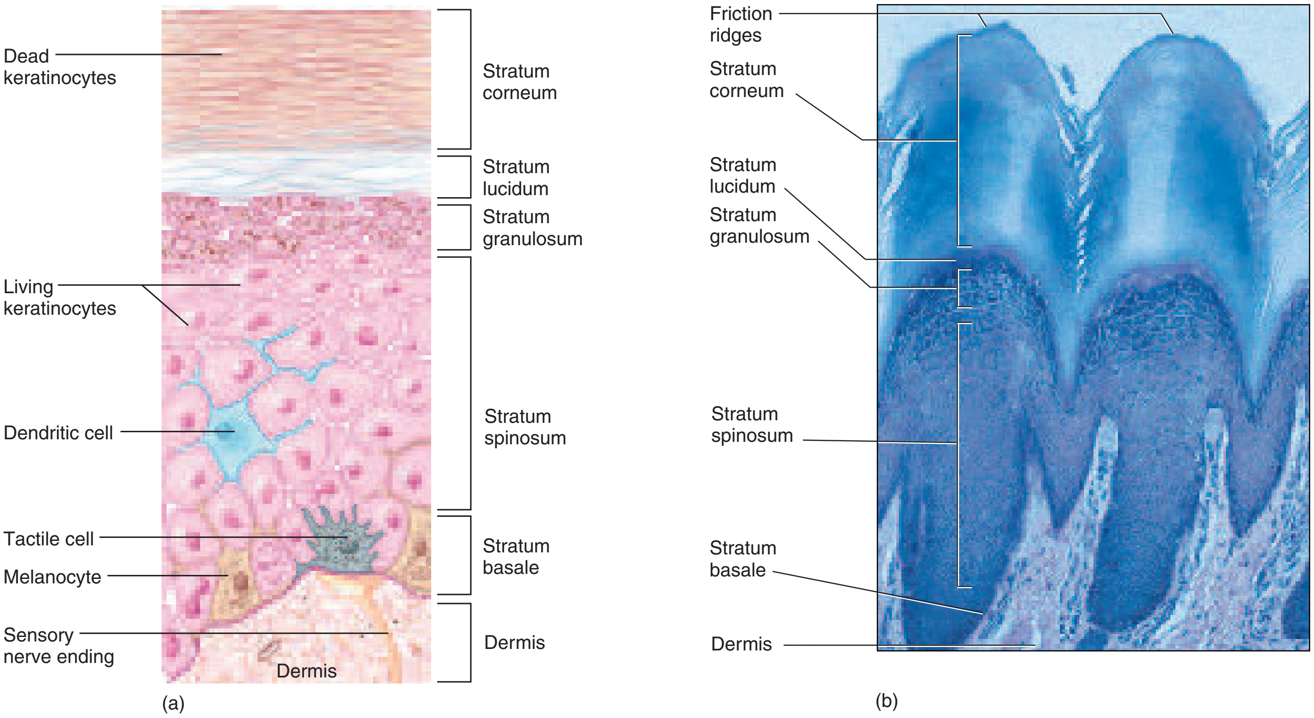

Dead keratinocytes
Living keratinocytes
Dendritic cell
Tactile cell
Melanocyte
Sensory nerve ending
Dermis
Stratum corneum
Stratum lucidum
Stratum granulosum
Stratum spinosum
Stratum basale
Dermis
(a)
Friction ridges
Stratum corneum
Stratum lucidum
Stratum granulosum
Stratum spinosum
Stratum basale
Dermis
(b)

Figure 6.2 **Layers and Cell Types of the Epidermis.** (*a*) Drawing of epidermal layers and cell types. (*b*) Photograph of thick skin from the fingertip. Shows two of the surface friction ridges responsible for the fingerprints.

Can you identify a stem cell in figure *a*?

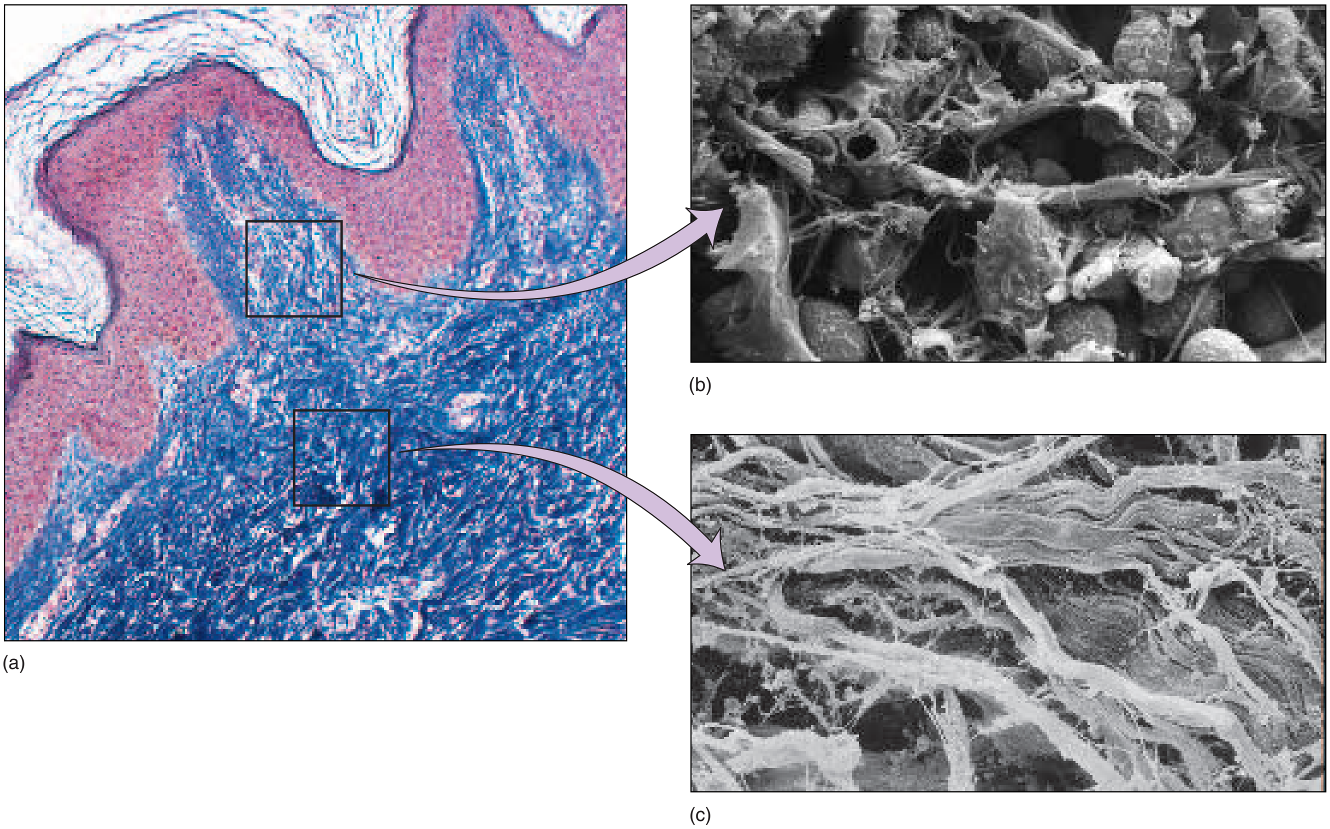


Figure 6.3 **Layers of the Dermis.** (*a*) Light micrograph of axillary skin, with the collagen stained blue. (*b*) The papillary layer, made of loose (areolar) tissue, forms the dermal papillae. (*c*) The reticular layer, made of dense irregular connective tissue, forms the deeper four-fifths of the dermis. Figures *b* and *c* from R. G. Kessel and R. H. Kardon, *Tissues and Organs: A Text-Atlas of Scanning Electron Microscopy* (W. H. Freeman, 1979).

upward, however, they cease dividing. Instead, they produce more and more keratin filaments, which cause the cells to flatten.

When skin is histologically fixed, keratinocytes shrink and pull away from each other but remain attached to their neighbors by several desmosomes. These create bridgelike extensions where one keratinocyte reaches out to another across the gap—a little like two people holding hands while standing farther apart. These bridges give the cells the spiny appearance for which the stratum spinosum is named.

The stratum spinosum and stratum granulosum also contain **dendritic[3] (Langerhans[4]) cells.** These are macrophages that arise in the bone marrow but migrate to the stratified squamous epithelia of the epidermis, oral cavity, esophagus, and vagina. The epidermis has as many as 800 dendritic cells per square millimeter. They help to protect the body against pathogens by capturing foreign matter and "presenting" it to the immune system for a response.

Stratum Granulosum

The **stratum granulosum** consists of two to five layers of flat keratinocytes—more in thick skin than in thin skin. These keratinocytes contain coarse, dark-staining *keratohyalin granules* that give this layer its name. These granules consist of a protein that combines with intermediate filaments of the cytoskeleton and converts them to keratin. Keratinocytes in the stratum spinosum and stratum granulosum also produce lipid-filled **membrane-coating vesicles.** Here in the stratum granulosum, these vesicles undergo exocytosis and release a glycolipid that spreads out over the keratinocyte membranes and waterproofs the skin. The glycolipid also constitutes a barrier between the surface cells of the skin and the deeper layers. Cut off from their nutrient supply, cells above the stratum granulosum quickly die.

---

[3] *dendr* = tree, branch
[4] Paul Langerhans (1847–88), German anatomist

Stratum Lucidum

The **stratum lucidum**[5] (LOO-sih-dum) is a thin translucent zone superficial to the stratum granulosum, seen only in thick skin. Here, the keratinocytes are densely packed with *eleidin* (ee-LEE-ih-din), an intermediate stage in the production of keratin. The cells have no nuclei or other organelles. Because organelles are absent and eleidin does not stain well, this zone has a pale, featureless appearance with indistinct cell boundaries.

---

[5] *lucid* = light, clear

Insight 6.1 Clinical Application

Dead Skin and Dust Mites

In the beams of late afternoon sun that shine aslant through a window, you may see tiny white specks floating through the air. Most of these are flakes of dander; the dust on top of your bookshelves is largely a film of dead human skin. Composed of protein, this dust in turn supports molds and other microscopic organisms that feed on the skin cells and each other. One of these organisms is the house dust mite, *Dermatophagoides*[6] (der-MAT-oh-fah-GOY-deez) (fig. 6.4). (What wonders may be found in humble places!)

Dermatophagoides thrives abundantly in pillows, mattresses, and upholstery—warm, humid places that are liberally sprinkled with edible flakes of keratin. No home is without these mites, and it is impossible to entirely exterminate them. What was once regarded as "house dust allergy" has been identified as an allergy to the inhaled feces of these mites.

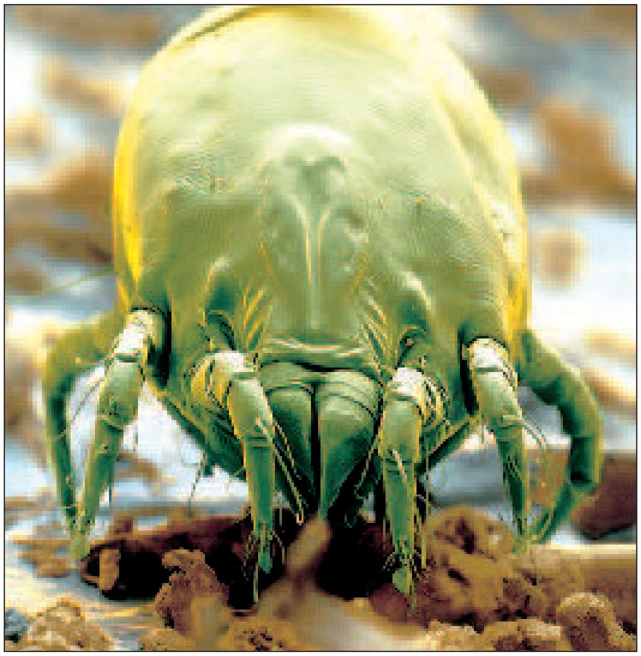


Figure 6.4 ***Dermatophagoides*, the House Dust Mite.**

---

[6] *dermato* = skin + *phag* = eat

Stratum Corneum

The **stratum corneum** consists of up to 30 layers of dead, scaly, keratinized cells. Those at the surface flake off (*exfoliate* or *desquamate*) as tiny scales called *dander* (see insight 6.1). Dandruff is composed of clumps of dander stuck together by oil from the scalp.

As we surveyed the five layers of epidermis, we followed keratinocytes from their birth to their death. They are produced by mitosis in the stratum basale and lower level of the stratum spinosum. Mitosis occurs here mainly at night, and most skin specimens are taken during the day, so mitotic cells are rarely seen in prepared slides of skin. Over the course of 30 to 40 days, a keratinocyte is pushed farther and farther toward the surface by the dividing cells below, until it finally exfoliates from the surface. This process is slower in old age, but faster in skin that has been injured or stressed. Injured epidermis regenerates more rapidly than any other tissue in the body. Mechanical stress from manual labor or tight shoes accelerates keratinocyte multiplication and results in calluses on the hands or feet.

The Dermis

The **dermis** ranges from 0.2 mm thick in the eyelids to about 4 mm thick in the palms and soles. It is composed mainly of collagen but also contains elastic and reticular fibers, the usual cells of fibrous connective tissue (described in chapter 5), and blood vessels, sweat glands, sebaceous glands, hair follicles, and nail roots (see fig. 6.1). It also contains sensory nerve endings, discussed later in this chapter (p. 199), and muscular tissue. Smooth muscle cells associated with hair follicles make the hairs stand on end in response to cold or fear, cause "goose bumps," and wrinkle the skin in areas such as the scrotum and areola in response to cold or touch. In the face, skeletal muscles attach to dermal collagen fibers and produce such expressions as a smile, a wrinkle of the forehead, and the wink of an eye.

The boundary between the epidermis and dermis is histologically distinct and usually wavy. The upward waves are fingerlike extensions of the dermis called **dermal papillae** and the downward waves are extensions of the epidermis. The dermal and epidermal boundaries thus interlock like corrugated cardboard, an arrangement that resists slippage of the epidermis across the dermis (fig. 6.4). In highly sensitive areas such as the lips and genitals, tall dermal papillae allow nerve fibers and blood capillaries to reach close to the skin surface. If you look closely at the skin on the back of your hand, you will see delicate furrows that divide it into tiny rectangular to rhomboidal areas. The dermal papillae produce the raised areas between the furrows.

Think About It

Dermal papillae are relatively high and numerous in palmar and plantar skin but low and few in number in skin of the face and abdomen. What do you think is the functional significance of this difference?

There are two zones of dermis called the papillary and reticular layers (fig. 6.4). The **papillary**[7] (PAP-ih-lerr-ee) **layer** is a zone of areolar tissue in and near the dermal papillae that forms about one-fifth of the thickness of the dermis. The loosely organized tissue of the papillary layer allows for mobility of white blood cells and other defenses against organisms introduced through breaks in the epidermis.

The **reticular layer** of the dermis, the deeper four-fifths, consists of dense irregular connective tissue. The boundary between the papillary and reticular layers is often vague. In the reticular layer, the collagen forms thicker bundles with less room for ground substance, and there are often small clusters of adipocytes. Stretching of the skin, as occurs in obesity and pregnancy, can tear the collagen fibers and produce *striae* (STRY-ee), or stretch marks. These occur especially in areas most stretched by weight gain: the thighs, buttocks, abdomen, and breasts.

The Hypodermis

Beneath the skin is a layer called the **hypodermis,**[8] **subcutaneous tissue,** or **superficial fascia**[9] (FASH-ee-uh). The boundary between the dermis and hypodermis is indistinct, but the hypodermis generally has more areolar and adipose tissue. When adipose tissue dominates, the hypodermis is called the **subcutaneous fat** *(panniculus*[10] *adiposus).* The hypodermis binds the skin to the underlying tissues, pads the body, serves as an energy reservoir, and provides thermal insulation. Infants and elderly people are more sensitive to cold than others because they have less fat in this layer. Obesity is due mainly to the accumulation of subcutaneous fat. The subcutaneous fat is about 8% thicker in women than in men and differs in distribution between the sexes (fig. 6.5). Drugs are introduced into the hypodermis by injection because the subcutaneous tissue is highly vascular and absorbs them quickly.

The layers of skin and hypodermis are summarized in table 6.1.

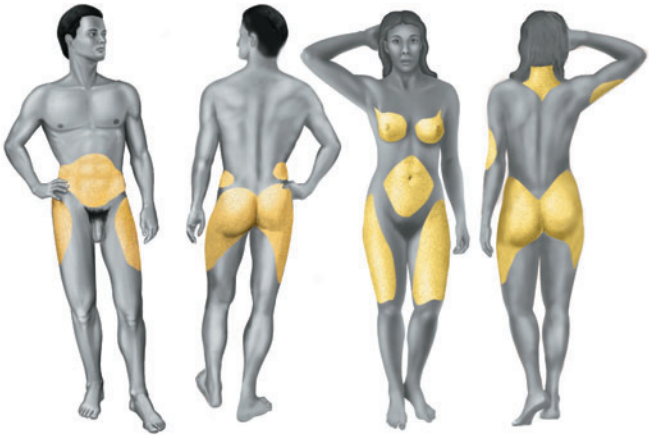


Figure 6.5 **Distribution of Subcutaneous Fat in Males and Females.**

Skin Color

Three pigments are most responsibile for normal skin colors:

1. **Hemoglobin,** the red pigment carried in the dermal blood vessels, along with the white color of the dermal collagen fibers, produces the flesh tones typical of Caucasian skin. The skin is redder in places such as the lips, where blood capillaries come closer to the surface and the hemoglobin shows through more vividly.
2. **Melanin**[11] in the stratum basale and stratum spinosum produces a variety of brown, black, tan, yellowish, and reddish hues (fig. 6.6). The amount of melanin in the skin is determined by a combination of heredity and light exposure. Ultraviolet (UV) radiation from the sun stimulates melanin synthesis and darkens the skin. A suntan fades as melanized keratinocytes migrate to the surface and exfoliate. The amount of melanin varies substantially from place to place on the body. It is relatively concentrated in freckles and moles, on the dorsal surfaces of the hands and feet as compared to the palms and soles, in the nipple and surrounding area (areola) of the breast, around the anus, in the scrotum and penis, and on the lateral surface of the labia majora (female genital folds). The contrast between heavily melanized and lightly melanized regions of the skin is more pronounced in some races than in others, but it exists to some extent in nearly everyone.
3. **Carotene**[12] is a yellow pigment acquired from egg yolks and yellow and orange vegetables. Depending on the diet, it can become concentrated to various degrees in the stratum corneum and subcutaneous fat. It is often most conspicuous in skin of the heel and in "corns" or calluses of the feet because this is where the stratum corneum is thickest.

---

[7] *papilla* = nipple
[8] *hypo* = below + *derm* = skin
[9] *fasc* = band
[10] *panni* = rag, cloth + *culus* = little
[11] *melan* = black
[12] *carot* = carrot

Table 6.1 Stratification of the Skin and Hypodermis

Layer	Description
Epidermis	Stratified squamous epithelium
Stratum corneum	Dead, keratinized cells of the skin surface
Stratum lucidum	Clear, featureless, narrow zone seen only in thick skin
Stratum granulosum	Two to five layers of cells with dark-staining keratohyalin granules; scanty in thin skin
Stratum spinosum	Many layers of keratinocytes, typically shrunken in fixed tissues but attached to each other by desmosomes, which give them a spiny look; progressively flattened the farther they are from the dermis. Dendritic cells occur here but are not visible in routinely stained preparations.
Stratum basale	Single layer of cuboidal to columnar cells resting on basement membrane; site of most mitosis; consists of keratinocytes, melanocytes, and tactile cells, but these are not distinguishable with routine stains. Melanin is conspicuous in keratinocytes of this layer in black to brown skin.
Dermis	Fibrous connective tissue, richly endowed with blood vessels and nerve endings. Sweat glands and hair follicles originate here and in hypodermis.
Papillary layer	Superficial one-fifth of dermis; composed of areolar tissue; often extends upward as dermal papillae
Reticular layer	Deeper four-fifths of dermis; dense irregular connective tissue
Hypodermis	Areolar or adipose tissue between skin and muscle

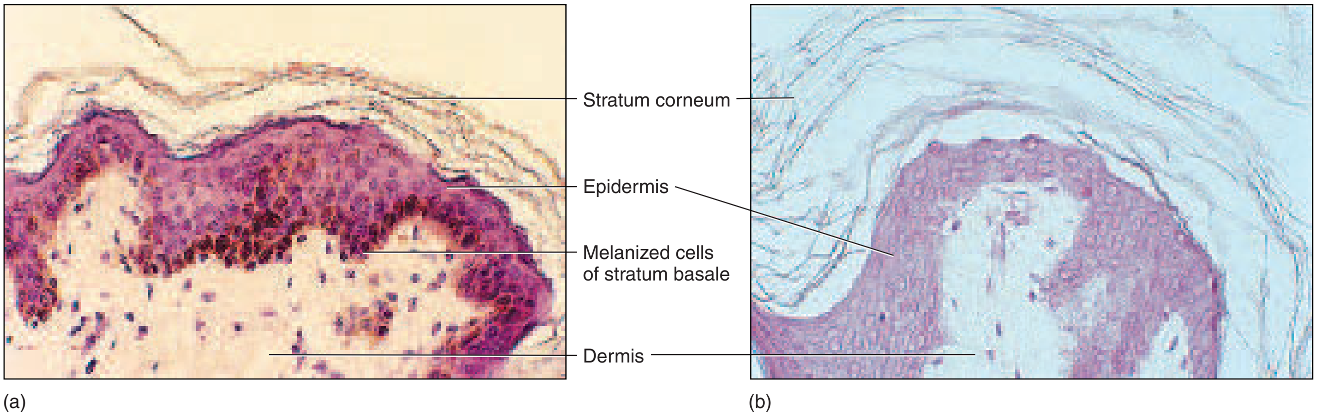


Figure 6.6 Variations in Skin Pigmentation. (*a*) Keratinocytes in and near the stratum basale have heavy deposits of melanin in dark skin. (*b*) Light skin shows little to no visible melanin in the basal keratinocytes.
Which of the four types of epidermal cells are the melanized cells in figure *a*?

The skin may also exhibit abnormal colors of diagnostic value:

- **Cyanosis**[13] is blueness of the skin resulting from a deficiency of oxygen in the circulating blood. Oxygen deficiency turns the hemoglobin a reddish violet color. It can result from conditions that prevent the blood from picking up a normal load of oxygen in the lungs, such as airway obstructions in drowning and choking, lung diseases such as emphysema, or respiratory arrest. Cyanosis also occurs in situations such as cold weather and cardiac arrest, when blood flows so slowly through the skin that most of its oxygen is extracted faster than freshly oxygenated blood arrives.

---

[13] *cyan* = blue + *osis* = condition

- **Erythema**[14] (ERR-ih-THEE-muh) is abnormal redness of the skin. It occurs in such situations as exercise, hot weather, sunburns, anger, and embarrassment. Erythema is caused by increased blood flow in dilated cutaneous blood vessels or by dermal pooling of red blood cells that have escaped from abnormally permeable capillaries.
- **Jaundice**[15] is a yellowing of the skin and whites of the eyes resulting from high levels of bilirubin in the blood. Bilirubin is produced by the breakdown of free hemoglobin and disposed of by the liver. Jaundice may therefore occur when there is a rapid rate of erythrocyte destruction; when diseases such as cancer, hepatitis, and cirrhosis interfere with liver function; and in premature infants, where the liver is not well enough developed to dispose of bilirubin efficiently.
- **Bronzing** is a golden-brown skin color that results from Addison disease, a deficiency of glucocorticoid hormones from the adrenal cortex. John F. Kennedy had Addison disease and bronzing of the skin, which many people mistook for a suntan.
- **Pallor** is a pale or ashen color that occurs when there is so little blood flow through the skin that the white color of the dermal collagen shows through. It can result from emotional stress, low blood pressure, circulatory shock, cold temperatures, or severe anemia.
- **Albinism**[16] is a genetic lack of melanin that results in white hair, pale skin, and pink eyes. Melanin is synthesized from the amino acid tyrosine by the enzyme tyrosinase. People with albinism have inherited a recessive, nonfunctional tyrosinase allele from both parents.
- A **hematoma,**[17] or bruise, is a mass of clotted blood showing through the skin. It is usually due to accidental trauma (blows to the skin), but it may indicate hemophilia, other metabolic or nutritional disorders, or physical abuse.

Think About It

An infant brought to a clinic shows abnormally yellow skin. What sign could you look for to help decide whether this was due to jaundice or to a large amount of carotene from strained vegetables in the diet?

Skin Markings

Hemangiomas[18] (he-MAN-jee-OH-mas), or birthmarks, are patches of discolored skin caused by benign tumors of the dermal blood capillaries. *Capillary hemangiomas* (strawberry birthmarks) are bright red to deep purple and are slightly swollen; they usually disappear in childhood. *Cavernous hemangiomas* (port wine stains) are flat, are duller in color, and last for life.

Freckles and moles are tan to black aggregations of melanocytes. **Freckles** are flat melanized patches that vary with heredity and exposure to the sun. A **mole (nevus)** is an elevated patch of melanized skin, often with hair. Moles are harmless and sometimes even regarded as "beauty marks," but they should be watched for changes that may suggest malignancy.

The skin is also marked by many lines, creases, and ridges. **Friction ridges** (fig. 6.2*b*) are the markings on the fingertips that leave oily fingerprints on surfaces we touch. Friction ridges are characteristic of most primates. They help prevent monkeys, for example, from slipping off a branch as they walk across it, and they enable us to manipulate small objects more easily. Friction ridges form during fetal development and remain essentially unchanged for life. Everyone has a unique pattern of friction ridges; not even identical twins have identical fingerprints.

Flexion (palmar) creases are the lines of the palms formed after birth by repeated closing of the hand. Similar **flexion lines** form in other places such as the wrist and elbow (see fig. B.8 in atlas B).

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

1. Name the four kinds of epidermal cells and state the function of each.
2. List the five layers of epidermis from deep to superficial. What are the distinctive features of each layer?
3. What are the two layers of the dermis? What type of tissue composes each layer?
4. Name the pigments responsible for normal skin colors, and explain how certain conditions can produce symptomatic discolorations of the skin.

Functions of the Skin

Objective

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the biological and social functions of the skin.

---

[14] *eryth* = red + *em* = blood
[15] *jaun* = yellow
[16] *alb* = white + *ism* = state, condition
[17] *hemat* = blood + *oma* = mass
[18] *hem* = blood + *angi* = vessels + *oma* = mass

The skin is much more than a container for the body. It has a wide variety of important functions that go well beyond appearance, as we shall see here. Although its structural and physiological complexity is commonly underestimated, the skin is indeed a marvel of biological design. It is hard to conceive of any other organ that could serve functions so varied, yet display such strength, flexibility, and remarkable capacity for growth and self-repair.

The Skin as a Barrier

The skin bears the brunt of most physical injuries to the body, but it resists and recovers from trauma better than other organs do. The toughness of keratin and strength of the epidermal desmosomes make the skin a barrier that is not easily breached. Few infectious organisms can penetrate the skin on their own. Those that do either rely on accidental breaks in the skin or have life cycles that involve *vectors*—animals such as mosquitoes, fleas, lice, and ticks, with mouthparts strong enough to puncture the skin.

The epidermal surface is populated by bacteria, fungi, and other pathogens poised for any opportunity to get inside. Even vigorous scrubbing in a hot shower does not rid the skin of bacteria. They are, however, discouraged from multiplying on the skin by its relatively dry, unfavorable habitat. The sebum (oil of the skin) contains bactericidal substances, and sweat forms a film called the **acid mantle** (pH 4–6) that is unfavorable to microbial growth. Even when a pathogen breaches the epidermis, it faces an army of dermal macrophages and leukocytes that can quickly migrate to the site of infection and mount a defense.

The skin is also important as a barrier to water. It prevents the body from absorbing excess water when you are swimming or bathing, but even more importantly, it prevents the body from losing excess water. This function becomes especially evident when skin is lost; in patients who have suffered extensive burns, fluid replacement is one of the most critical needs for survival.

The skin is also a barrier to solar radiation, including ultraviolet (UV) rays. Most UV rays are filtered out by atmospheric ozone, but even the small fraction that reaches us is enough to cause sunburns and skin cancer. Scientists fear that we could see a catastrophic increase in skin cancer because of the loss of atmospheric ozone. Ozone is destroyed by chemicals called chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs), used in air conditioners, refrigerators, spray cans, and other sources.

Although the skin is impermeable to most chemicals, there are exceptions. The blood receives 1% to 2% of its oxygen by diffusion through the skin, and it gives off some carbon dioxide and volatile organic chemicals. Amino acids and steroids diffusing through the skin are one factor that attracts mosquitoes to people. The fat-soluble vitamins A, D, E, and K can be readily absorbed through the skin, as can many drugs and poisons (see insight 6.2).

Insight 6.2 Clinical Application

Transdermal Absorption

The ability of the skin to absorb chemicals makes it possible to administer several medicines as ointments or lotions, or by means of adhesive patches that release the medicine steadily through a membrane. For example, inflammation can be treated with a hydrocortisone ointment, nitroglycerine patches are used to relieve heart pain, nicotine patches are used to help overcome tobacco addiction, and other medicated patches are used to control high blood pressure and motion sickness.

Unfortunately, the skin can also be a route for absorption of poisons. These include toxic alkaloids from poison ivy and other plants; metals such as mercury, arsenic, and lead; and solvents such as carbon tetrachloride (dry cleaning fluid), acetone (nail polish remover), paint thinner, and pesticides. Some of these can cause brain damage, liver failure, or kidney failure, which is good reason for using protective gloves when handling such substances.

Vitamin D Synthesis

Vitamin D is important in regulating blood calcium and phosphate levels and maintaining the health of the skeleton. Vitamin D synthesis begins in the epidermal keratinocytes, under the influence of UV rays in sunshine. The details of vitamin D synthesis and its effect on the bones are explained in chapter 7.

Sensory Functions

The skin is our most extensive sense organ. It is equipped with a variety of nerve endings that react to heat, cold, touch, texture, pressure, vibration, and tissue injury. These sensory receptors are especially abundant on the face, palms, fingers, soles, nipples, and genitals. There are relatively few on the back and in skin overlying joints such as the knees and elbows. Some receptors are naked dendrites that penetrate into the epidermis. Most, however, are limited to the dermis and hypodermis. The individual types of cutaneous receptors are described in chapter 16.

Thermoregulation

The nervous, endocrine, muscular, and integumentary systems are involved in regulating body temperature. The details of thermoregulation are discussed in chapter 26, but here we briefly consider the role of the skin. The dermis contains naked nerve endings called **thermoreceptors,** some of which respond when the skin temperature rises above normal and others when it falls below normal. They transmit signals to a region called the *hypothalamus* in the base of the brain. To warm the body, the hypothalamus sends signals that constrict the cutaneous arteries, reducing blood flow near the body surface and retaining heat deeper in the body. To cool the body, hypothalamic signaling is inhibited and the cutaneous arteries are allowed to dilate. This increases blood flow through the skin and allows more heat to radiate away from the body. If this is inadequate to restore normal temperature, the hypothalamus also stimulates sweating. When sweat evaporates, it carries heat away from the body.

Social Functions

The integumentary system plays an important role in the social relations of all vertebrate animals by enabling them to identify members of their own species and distinguish the sexes. Some mammals recognize each other by the color and distribution of hair. Animals may also accept or reject one another's company and choose mates based on the appearance of the integument, which may indicate an animal's state of health. Thus, it is not surprising that animals allocate a lot of time to grooming.

Humans are no exception. A little reflection will emphasize just how much impact an integumentary condition can have on someone's self-image and emotional state—whether the ravages of adolescent acne, the presence of a birthmark or scar, or just a "bad hair day." The skin is also our most significant means of nonverbal communication. The faces of primates are far more expressive than those of other mammals because complex skeletal muscles insert on dermal collagen fibers and create subtle and varied facial expressions (fig. 6.7). Thus the skin has very important psychological and social functions.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

5. How does the skin inhibit the growth of pathogens on its surface?
6. To what things besides pathogenic organisms does the skin present a barrier?
7. Describe two ways in which the skin helps to regulate body temperature.

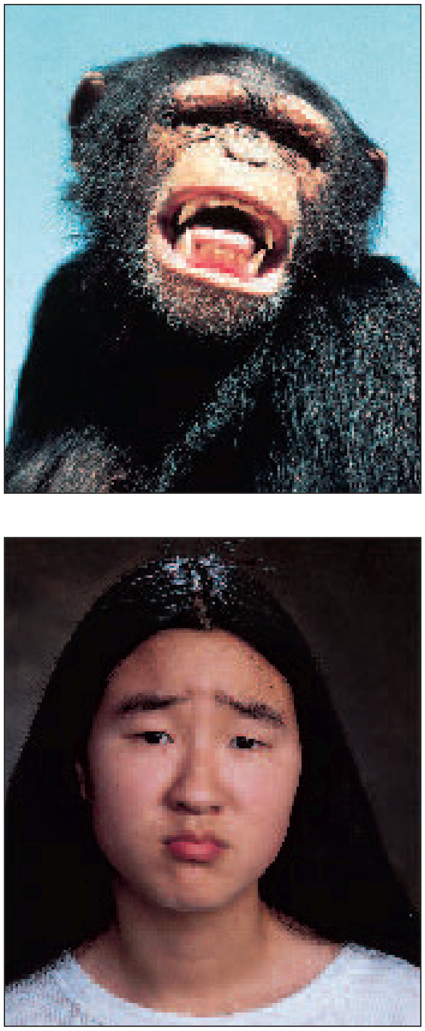


Figure 6.7 **Importance of the Skin in Nonverbal Expression.** Primates differ from other mammals in having very expressive faces due to facial muscles that insert on the collagen fibers of the dermis and move the skin.

Hair and Nails

Objectives

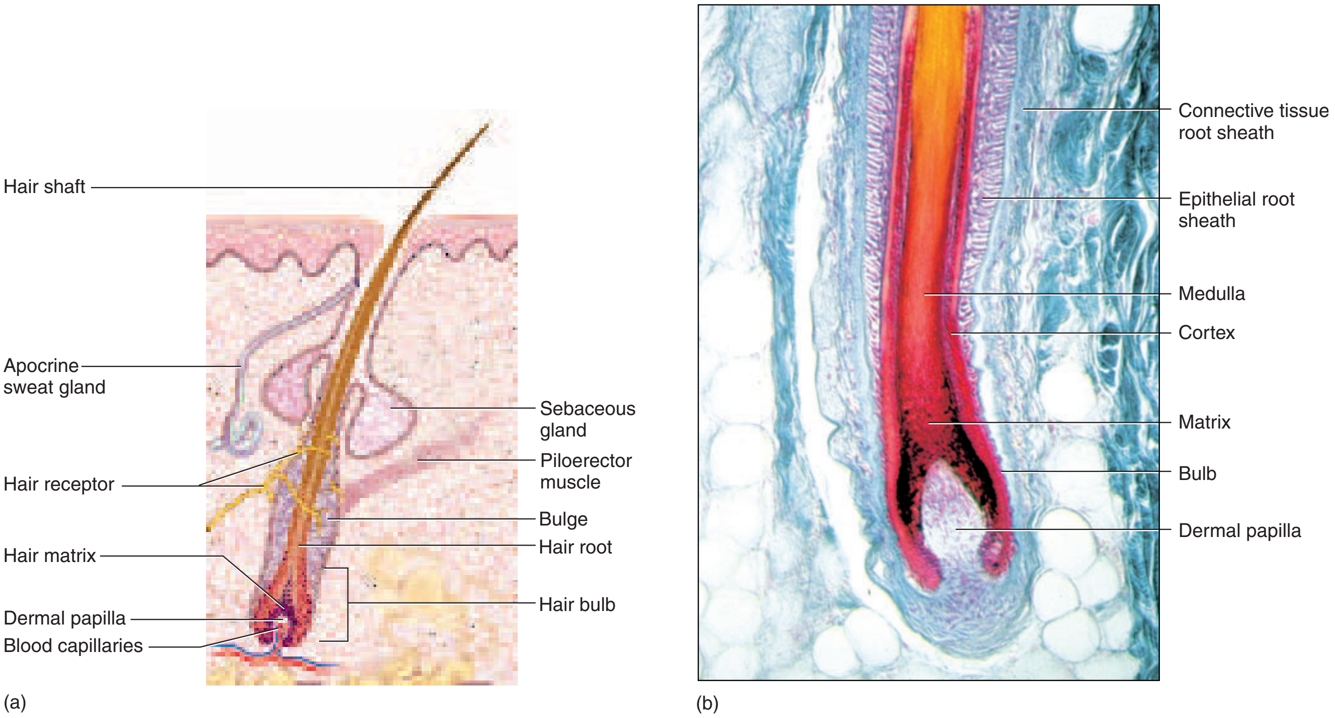
When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- distinguish between three types of hair;
- describe the histology of a hair and its follicle;
- describe the cycle of hair growth;
- discuss some theories of the purposes served by various kinds of hair; and
- describe the structure and function of nails.

Hair, nails, and cutaneous glands are the **accessory organs,** or **appendages,** of the skin. Hair and nails are composed mostly of dead, keratinized cells. While the stratum corneum of the skin is made of pliable **soft keratin,** the hair and nails are composed mostly of **hard keratin.** Hard keratin is more compact than soft keratin and is toughened by a greater number of disulfide bridges between the protein molecules.

Types and Distribution of Hair

A hair is also known as a **pilus** (PY-lus); in the plural, *pili* (PY-lye). It is a slender filament of keratinized cells that grows from an oblique tube in the skin called a **follicle** (fig. 6.8). Hair is found everywhere on the body except the lips, nipples, parts of the genitals, palmar and plantar skin, lateral surfaces of the fingers, toes, and feet, and


Hair shaft
Apocrine sweat gland
Hair receptor
Hair matrix
Dermal papilla
Blood capillaries
Sebaceous gland
Piloerector muscle
Bulge
Hair root
Hair bulb
(a)
Connective tissue root sheath
Epithelial root sheath
Medulla
Cortex
Matrix
Bulb
Dermal papilla
(b)

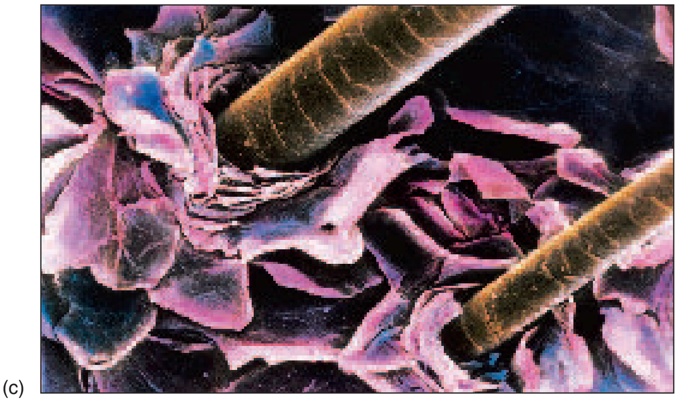


Figure 6.8 **Structure of a Hair and Its Follicle.** (*a*) Anatomy of the follicle and associated structures. (*b*) Light micrograph of the base of a hair follicle. (*c*) Electron micrograph of two hairs emerging from their follicles. Note the exfoliating epidermal cells encircling the follicles like rose petals.

distal segment of the fingers. The limbs and trunk have about 55 to 70 hairs per square centimeter, and the face has about 10 times as many. The scalp has about 100,000 hairs and a man's beard has about 30,000. The number of hairs in a given area does not differ much from one person to another or even between the sexes. Differences in apparent hairiness are due mainly to differences in the texture and pigmentation of the hair.

Not all hair is alike, even on one person. Over the course of our lives, we grow three kinds of hair: lanugo, vellus, and terminal hair. **Lanugo**[19] is fine, downy, unpigmented hair that appears on the fetus in the last 3 months of development. By the time of birth, most of it is replaced by similarly fine, unpigmented hair called **vellus.**[20] Except for the eyebrows, eyelashes, and hair of the scalp, all of the hair of children, two-thirds of the hair of women, and one-tenth of the hair of men is vellus. **Terminal hair** is longer, coarser, and pigmented. It occurs on the scalp, eyebrows, and eyelashes; at puberty it replaces the vellus in the axillary and pubic regions, on the face of males (to form the beard), and to varying degrees on the trunk and limbs.

Structure of the Hair and Follicle

A hair is divisible into three zones along its length: (1) the **bulb,** a swelling at the base where the hair originates in the dermis; (2) the **root,** which is the remainder of the hair within the follicle; and (3) the **shaft,** which is the portion above the skin surface. Except near the bulb, all the tissue is dead. A bit of vascular connective tissue called the **papilla** grows into the bulb and provides the hair with its sole source of nutrition. Although ingested substances can become incorporated into hair (see insight 6.3), nothing you apply externally to your hair can nourish it, notwithstanding advertising pitches to the gullible.

In cross section, a hair reveals three layers: (1) the **medulla,** a core of loosely arranged cells and air spaces; (2) the **cortex,** composed of densely packed keratinized cells; and (3) the **cuticle,** a single layer of scaly cells that overlap each other like roof shingles, with their free edges directed upward (fig. 6.8*c*). Cells lining the follicle are like shingles facing in the opposite direction. They interlock with the scales of the hair cuticle and resist pulling on the hair. When a hair is pulled out, this layer of follicle cells comes with it.

The texture of hair is related to differences in cross-sectional shape (fig. 6.9)—straight hair is round, wavy hair is oval, and kinky hair is relatively flat. Hair color is due to pigment granules in the cells of the cortex. Brown and black hair are colored by a form of melanin called *eumelanin.* Blond hair has a scanty amount of eumelanin but a moderate amount of sulfur-containing pigments called *pheomelanins.*[21] Red hair has a slight amount of eumelanin but an abundance of pheomelanins. (Many sources attribute red hair to an iron-containing substance called trichosiderin, but it now appears that trichosiderin may be an artifact caused by the method of chemically extracting hair pigments.) White hair results from a lack of pigments in the cortex and a presence of air in the medulla.

The follicle is a diagonal tube that dips deeply into the dermis and sometimes extends as far as the hypodermis. It has two principal layers: an **epithelial root sheath** and a **connective tissue root sheath.** The epithelial root sheath, which is an extension of the epidermis, lies immediately adjacent to the hair root. The connective tissue root sheath, derived from the dermis, surrounds the epithelial sheath.

Associated with the follicle are nerve and muscle fibers. Nerve fibers called **hair receptors** entwine each follicle and respond to hair movements. You can feel their effect by carefully moving a single hair with a pin or by lightly running your finger over the hairs of your arm without touching the skin. Also associated with each hair is a **piloerector muscle** (arrector pili)[22], a bundle of smooth muscle cells extending from dermal collagen fibers to a bulge in the root sheath slightly above the middle of the follicle (see figs. 6.1 and 6.8). This bulge is the source of stem cells for hair growth. In response to cold, fear, or other stimuli, the sympathetic nervous system stimulates the piloerector muscle and makes the hair stand on end. In other mammals, this traps an insulating layer of warm air next to the skin or makes the animal appear larger and less vulnerable to a potential enemy. In humans, it pulls the follicles into a vertical position and causes "goose bumps" but serves no useful purpose.

Insight 6.3 Clinical Application

The Science and Pseudoscience of Hair Analysis

Laboratory analysis of hair can provide important clues to metabolic diseases and poisoning. A deficiency of zinc in the hair may indicate malnutrition. A deficiency of both magnesium and calcium is a sign of phenylketonuria (PKU), a hereditary defect in metabolism. A deficiency of calcium along with an excess of sodium may indicate cystic fibrosis.

Several poisons accumulate in the hair. Arsenic, cadmium, lead, and mercury, for example, can be 10 times as concentrated in hair as in blood or urine, and hair analysis can therefore aid in establishing a cause of death. DNA extracted from a single hair can be enough to implicate a suspect in a crime through the technique of *DNA fingerprinting.*

While hair analysis has valuable medical and legal applications, it is also exploited by health-food charlatans who charge high fees for hair

---

[19] *lan* = down, wool

[20] *vellus* = fleece

[21] *pheo* = dusky + *melan* = black

[22] *arrect* = erect + *pil* = of hair

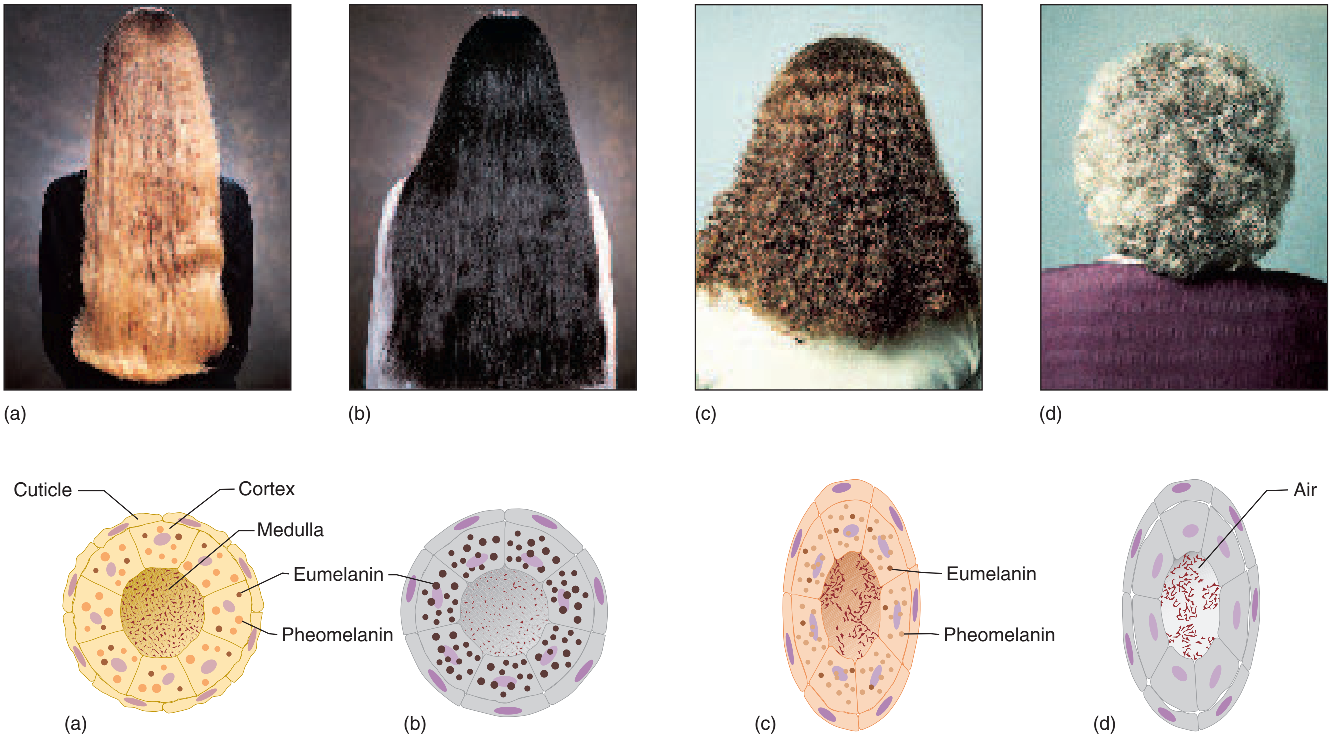


Figure 6.9 Basis of Hair Color and Texture. Straight hair (*a* and *b*) is round in cross section while curly hair (*c* and *d*) is flatter. Blonde hair (*a*) has scanty eumelanin and a moderate amount of pheomelanin. Eumelanin predominates in black and brown hair (*b*). Red hair (*c*) derives its color predominantly from pheomelanin. Gray and white hair (*d*) lack pigment and have air in the medulla.

analysis and special diets based on supposed deficiencies that the analysis "reveals." In reality, however, hair analysis has proven to be unreliable for assessing nutritional status or exposure to environmental toxins, and provides no meaningful basis for dietary recommendations.

Hair Growth and Loss

A given hair grows in a **hair cycle** consisting of three stages—anagen, catagen, and telogen. In the **anagen**[23] stage, stem cells from the bulge in the follicle multiply and travel downward, pushing the dermal papilla deeper into the skin and forming the epithelial root sheath. Root sheath cells directly above the dermal papilla form the **hair matrix.** Here, sheath cells transform into hair cells, which synthesize keratin and then die as they are pushed upward away from the papilla.

In the **catagen**[24] phase, epithelial root sheath cells below the bulge undergo apoptosis. The follicle shrinks, the dermal papilla is drawn up toward the bulge, and the hair loses its anchorage. When the papilla reaches the bulge, the hair goes into a resting stage called the **telogen**[25] **phase.** The hair may fall out during catagen or telogen. About 50 to 100 scalp hairs are lost daily. Eventually, anagen begins anew and the cycle repeats itself.

In a young adult, scalp follicles typically spend 6 to 8 years in anagen, 2 to 3 weeks in catagen, and 1 to 3 months in telogen. About 90% of the scalp follicles at any given time are in anagen. Scalp hairs grow at a rate of about 1 mm per 3 days (10–18 cm/yr) during this phase.

Hair grows fastest from adolescence until the 40s. After that, an increasing percentage of follicles are in the catagen and telogen phases rather than the growing anagen phase. Follicles also shrink and begin producing wispy vellus hairs instead of thicker terminal hairs. Thinning of the hair, or baldness, is called **alopecia**[26] (AL-oh-PEE-she-uh). It occurs to some degree in both sexes and may be worsened by disease, poor nutrition, fever, emotional trauma, radiation, or chemotherapy. In the great majority of cases, however, it is simply a matter of aging.

Pattern baldness is the condition in which hair is lost from only some regions of the scalp rather than thinning uniformly across the entire scalp. It results from a combination of genetic and hormonal influences. The relevant gene has two alleles, one for uniform hair growth and a baldness allele for patchy hair growth. The baldness allele is dominant in males and is expressed only in the presence of the high level of testosterone that is characteristic of men. In men who are either heterozygous or homozygous for the baldness allele, testosterone causes the terminal hair of the scalp to be replaced by thinner vellus, beginning on top of the head and later the sides. In women, the baldness allele is recessive. Homozygous dominant and heterozygous women show normal hair distribution; only homozygous recessive women are at risk of pattern baldness. Even then, they exhibit the trait only if their testosterone levels are abnormally high for a woman (for example, because of a tumor of the adrenal gland, a woman's only source of testosterone). Such characteristics in which an allele is dominant in one sex and recessive in the other are called *sex-influenced traits.*

---

[23] *ana* = up + *gen* = build, produce
[24] *cata* = down
[25] *telo* = end
[26] *alopecia* = fox mange

Excessive or undesirable hairiness in areas that are not usually hairy, especially in women and children, is called **hirsutism.**[27] It tends to run in families and usually results from either masculinizing ovarian tumors or hypersecretion of testosterone by the adrenal cortex. It is often associated with menopause.

Contrary to popular misconceptions, hair and nails do not continue to grow after a person dies, cutting hair does not make it grow faster or thicker, and emotional stress cannot make the hair turn white overnight.

Functions of Hair

In comparison to other mammals, the relative hairlessness of humans is so unusual that it raises the question, Why do we have any hair at all? What purpose does it serve? There are different answers for the different types of hair; furthermore, some of the answers would make little sense if we limited our frame of reference to industrialized societies, where barbers and hairdressers are engaged to alter the natural state of the hair. It is more useful to take a comparative approach to this question and consider the purposes hair serves in other species of mammals.

Most hair of the human trunk and limbs is probably best interpreted as vestigial, with little present function. Body hair undoubtedly served to keep our ancestors warm, but in modern humans it is too scanty for this purpose. Stimulation of the hair receptors, however, alerts us to parasites crawling on the skin, such as lice and fleas.

The scalp is normally the only place where the hair is thick enough to retain heat. Heat loss from a bald scalp can be substantial and quite uncomfortable. The brain receives a rich supply of warm blood, and most of the scalp lacks an insulating fat layer. Heat is easily conducted through the bone of the skull and lost to the surrounding air. In addition, without hair there is nothing to break the wind and stop it from carrying away heat. Hair also protects the scalp from sunburn, since the scalp is otherwise most directly exposed to the sun's rays. These may be the reasons humans have retained hair on their heads while losing most of it from the rest of the body.

Tufts and patches of hair, sometimes with contrasting colors, are important among mammals in advertising species, age, sex, and individual identity. For the less groomed members of the human species, scalp hair may play a similar role. The indefinitely growing hair of a man's scalp and beard, for example, could provide a striking contrast to a face that is otherwise almost hairless. It creates a badge of recognition instantly visible at a distance.

The beard and pubic and axillary hair signify sexual maturity and aid in the transmission of sexual scents. We will further reflect on this in a later discussion of apocrine sweat glands, whose distribution and function add significant evidence to support this theory.

Stout protective **guard hairs,** or **vibrissae** (vy-BRISS-ee), guard the nostrils and ear canals and prevent foreign particles from entering easily. The eyelashes can shield the eye from windblown debris with a quick blink. In windy or rainy conditions, we can squint so that the eyelashes protect the eyes without completely obstructing our vision.

The eyebrows are often presumed to keep sweat or debris out of the eyes, but this seems a minimal role. It is more plausible that they function mainly to enhance facial expression. Movements of the eyebrows are an important means of nonverbal communication in humans of all cultures. Eyebrow expressiveness is not unique to humans; many species of monkeys and apes use quick flashes of the eyebrows to greet each other, assert their dominance, and break up quarrels.

Nails

Fingernails and toenails are clear, hard derivatives of the stratum corneum. They are composed of very thin, dead, scalelike cells, densely packed together and filled with parallel fibers of hard keratin. Most mammals have claws, whereas flat nails are one of the distinguishing characteristics of primates. Flat nails allow for more fleshy and sensitive fingertips, while they also serve as strong keratinized "tools" that can be used for digging, grooming, picking apart food, and other manipulations. Fingernails grow at a rate of about 1 mm per week and toenails somewhat more slowly. New cells are added to the nail plate by mitosis in the *nail matrix* at its proximal end. Contrary to some advertising claims, adding gelatin to the diet has no effect on the growth or hardness of the nails.

---

[27] *hirsut* = shaggy

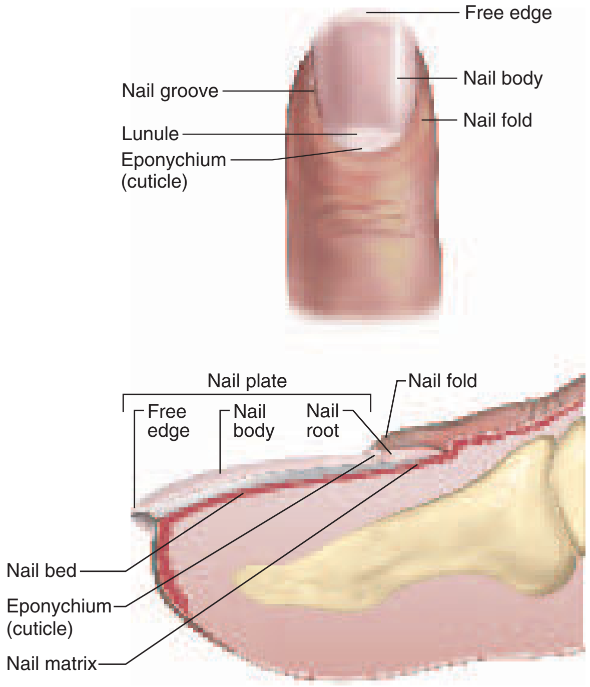


Figure 6.10 **Anatomy of a Fingernail.**

Nail Bed	The skin on which the nail plate rests
Nail Plate	The clear, keratinized portion of a nail
Root	The proximal end of a nail, underlying the nail fold
Body	The major portion of the nail plate, overlying the nail bed
Free Edge	The portion of the nail plate that extends beyond the end of the digit
Hyponychium[a]	The epithelium of the nail bed
Nail Fold	The fold of skin around the margins of the nail plate
Nail Groove	The groove where the nail fold meets the nail plate
Eponychium[b]	Dead epidermis that covers the proximal end of the nail; commonly called the cuticle
Nail Matrix	The growth zone (mitotic tissue) at the proximal end of the nail, corresponding to the stratum basale of the epidermis
Lunule[c]	The region at the base of the nail that appears as a small white crescent because it overlies a thick stratum basale that obscures dermal blood vessels from view

[a] *hypo* = under + *onych* = nail
[b] *ep* = above + *onych* = nail
[c] *lun* = moon + *ule* = little

The anatomical features of a nail are shown in figure 6.10. The most important of these are the aforementioned **nail matrix,** a growth zone concealed beneath the skin at the proximal edge of the nail, and the **nail plate,** which is the visible portion covering the fingertip. The nail groove and the space beneath the free edge accumulate dirt and bacteria and require special attention when scrubbing for duty in an operating room or nursery. The appearance of the nails can be valuable to medical diagnosis. An iron deficiency, for example, may cause the nails to become flat or concave (spoonlike) rather than convex. The nails and fingertips become clubbed in conditions of long-term hypoxemia—deficiency of oxygen in the blood—resulting from congenital heart defects and other causes.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

8. What is the difference between vellus and terminal hair?
9. State the function of the hair papilla, hair receptors, and piloerector.
10. Describe what happens in the anagen, catagen, and telogen phases of the hair cycle.
11. State a reasonable theory for the different functions of hair of the eyebrows, eyelashes, scalp, nostrils, and axilla.
12. Define or describe the nail plate, nail fold, eponychium, hyponychium, and nail matrix.

Cutaneous Glands

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- name two types of sweat glands, and describe the structure and function of each;
- describe the location, structure, and function of sebaceous and ceruminous glands; and
- discuss the distinction between breasts and mammary glands, and explain their respective functions.

The skin has five types of glands: *merocrine sweat glands, apocrine sweat glands, sebaceous glands, ceruminous glands,* and *mammary glands.*

Sweat Glands

Sweat glands, or **sudoriferous**[28] (soo-dor-IF-er-us) **glands,** are of two kinds, described in chapter 5: merocrine and apocrine. **Merocrine (eccrine) sweat glands,** the most numerous glands of the skin, produce watery perspiration that serves primarily to cool the body (fig. 6.11*a*). There are 3 to 4 million merocrine sweat glands in the adult skin, with a total weight about equal to that of a kidney. They are especially abundant on the palms, soles, and forehead, but they are widely distributed over the rest of the body as well. Each is a simple tubular gland with a twisted coil in the dermis or hypodermis and an undulating or coiled duct leading to a sweat pore on the skin surface. This duct is lined by a stratified cuboidal epithelium in the dermis and by keratinocytes in the epidermis. Amid the secretory cells at the deep end of the gland, there are specialized **myoepithelial**[29] **cells** with properties similar to smooth muscle. They contract in response to stimuli from the sympathetic nervous system and squeeze perspiration up the duct.

---

[28] *sudor* = sweat + *fer* = carry, bear

Sweat begins as a protein-free filtrate of the blood plasma produced by the deep secretory portion of the gland. Most sodium chloride is reabsorbed from this filtrate as the secretion passes through the duct. Potassium ions, urea, lactic acid, ammonia, and some sodium chloride remain in the sweat. Some drugs are also excreted in the perspiration. On average, sweat is 99% water and has a pH ranging from 4 to 6. Each day, the sweat glands secrete about 500 mL of **insensible perspiration,** which does not produce noticeable wetness of the skin. Under conditions of exercise or heat, however, a person may lose as much as a liter of perspiration each hour. In fact, so much fluid can be lost from the bloodstream by sweating as to cause circulatory shock. Sweating with visible wetness of the skin is called **diaphoresis**[30] (DY-uh-foe-REE-sis).

Apocrine sweat glands occur in the groin, anal region, axilla, and areola, and in mature males, the beard area. They are absent from the axillary region of Koreans, however, and are sparse in the Japanese. Their ducts lead into nearby hair follicles rather than opening directly onto the skin surface (fig. 6.11*b*). They produce their secretion in the same way that merocrine glands do—by exocytosis. The secretory part of an apocrine gland, however, has a much larger lumen than that of a merocrine gland, so these glands have continued to be referred to as apocrine glands to distinguish them functionally and histologically from the merocrine

---

[29] *myo* = muscle

[30] *dia* = through + *phoresis* = carrying

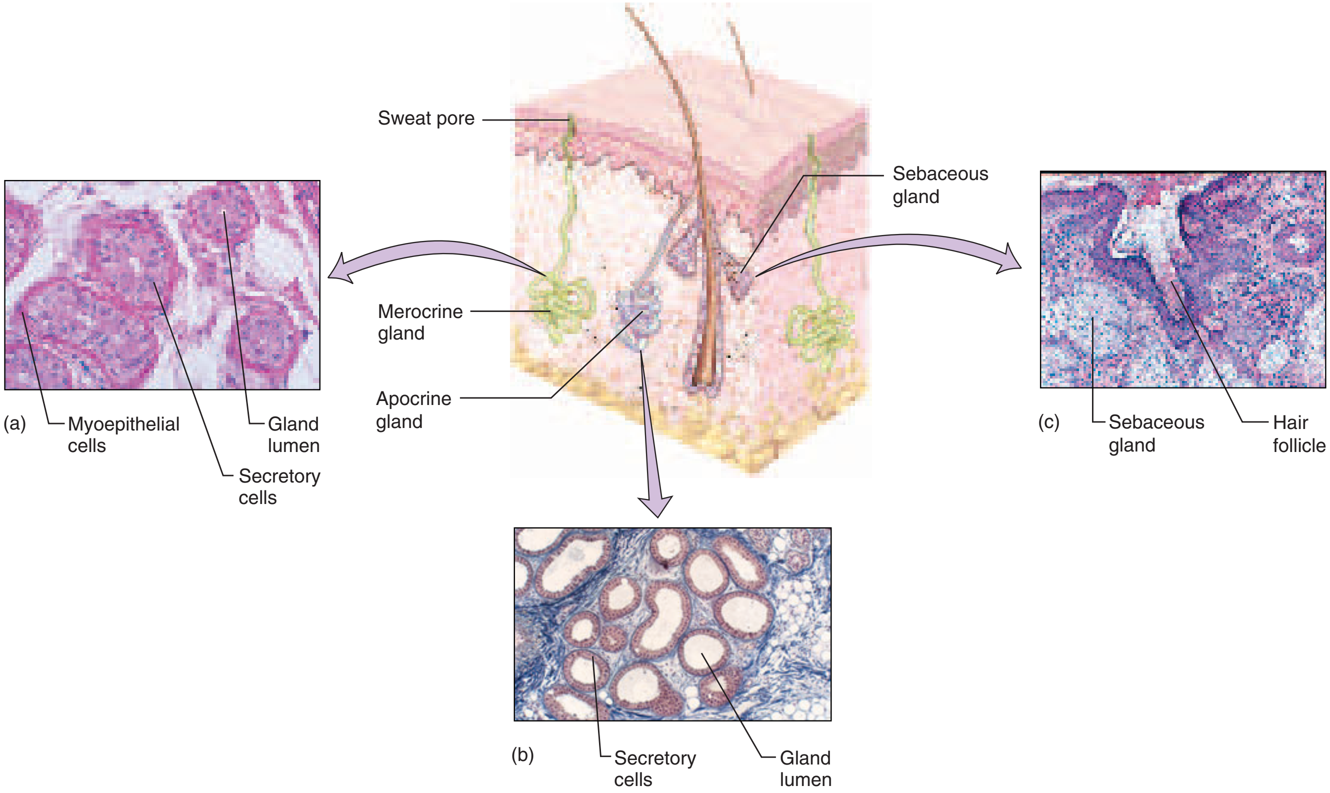


Figure 6.11 **Cutaneous Glands.** (*a*) Merocrine sweat glands have a narrower lumen and a duct that opens by way of a pore on the skin surface. (*b*) Apocrine sweat glands have a large lumen and a duct that conveys their aromatic secretion into a hair follicle. (*c*) Sebaceous glands have cells that break down in entirety to form an oily secretion that is released into the hair follicle.

Are apocrine glands associated with vellus or terminal hair? Explain.

type. Apocrine sweat is thicker and more milky than merocrine sweat because it has more fatty acids in it.

Apocrine sweat glands are scent glands that respond especially to stress and sexual stimulation. They do not develop until puberty, and they apparently correspond to the scent glands that develop in other mammals on attainment of sexual maturity. In women, they enlarge and shrink in phase with the menstrual cycle. Apocrine sweat does not have a disagreeable odor, and indeed it is considered attractive or arousing in some cultures, where it is as much a part of courtship as artificial perfume is to other people. Clothing, however, traps stale sweat long enough for bacteria to degrade the secretion and release free fatty acids with a rancid odor. Disagreeable body odor is called *bromhidrosis.*[31] It occasionally indicates a metabolic disorder, but more often it reflects poor hygiene.

Many mammals have apocrine scent glands associated with specialized tufts of hair. In humans, apocrine glands are found mainly in the regions covered by the pubic hair, axillary hair, and beard. This suggests that like other mammalian scent glands, they serve to produce *pheromones,* chemicals that influence the physiology or behavior of other members of the species (see insight 16.1, p. 595). The hair serves to retain the aromatic secretion and regulate its rate of evaporation from the skin. Thus, it seems no mere coincidence that women's faces lack both apocrine scent glands and a beard. It has also been demonstrated that men's beards grow faster when they live in the presence of women than when they live apart from them.

Sebaceous Glands

Sebaceous[32] (see-BAY-shus) **glands** produce an oily secretion called **sebum** (SEE-bum). They are flask-shaped, with short ducts that usually open into a hair follicle (fig. 6.11*c*), although some of them open directly onto the skin surface. These are holocrine glands with little visible lumen. Their secretion consists of broken-down cells that are replaced by mitosis at the base of the gland. Sebum keeps the skin and hair from becoming dry, brittle, and cracked. The sheen of well-brushed hair is due to sebum distributed by the hairbrush. Ironically, we go to great lengths to wash sebum from the skin, only to replace it with various skin creams and hand lotions made of little more than lanolin, which is sheep sebum.

Ceruminous Glands

Ceruminous (seh-ROO-mih-nus) **glands** are found only in the external ear canal, where their secretion combines with sebum and dead epidermal cells to form earwax, or **cerumen.**[33] They are simple, coiled, tubular glands with ducts leading to the skin surface. Cerumen keeps the eardrum pliable, waterproofs the auditory canal, and has a bactericidal effect.

Mammary Glands

The **mammary glands** and breasts (mammae) are often mistakenly regarded as one and the same. Breasts, however, are present in both sexes, and even in females they rarely contain more than small traces of mammary gland. Some authorities regard the female breast as one of the *secondary sex characteristics*—anatomical features whose function lies primarily in their appeal to the opposite sex. The mammary glands, by contrast, are the milk-producing glands that develop within the female breast only during pregnancy and lactation. Mammary glands are modified apocrine sweat glands that produce a richer secretion and channel it through ducts to a nipple for more efficient conveyance to the offspring. The anatomy and physiology of the mammary gland are discussed in more detail in chapter 28.

In most mammals, two rows of mammary glands form along lines called the *mammary ridges,* or *milk lines.* Primates have dispensed with all but two of these glands. A few women, however, develop additional nipples or mammae along the milk line inferior to the primary mammae. In the Middle Ages and colonial America, this condition, called *polythelia,*[34] was used to incriminate women as supposed "witches."

The glands of the skin are summarized in table 6.2.

Table 6.2 Cutaneous Glands

Gland Type	Definition
Sudoriferous glands	Sweat glands
Merocrine	Sweat glands that function in evaporative cooling; widely distributed over the body surface; open by ducts onto the skin surface
Apocrine	Sweat glands that function as scent glands; found in the regions covered by the pubic, axillary, and male facial hair; open by ducts into hair follicles
Sebaceous glands	Holocrine oil-producing glands associated with hair follicles
Ceruminous glands	Glands of the ear canal that produce cerumen (earwax)
Mammary glands	Milk-producing glands located in the breasts

---

[31] *brom* = stench + *hidros* = sweat
[32] *seb* = fat, tallow + *aceous* = possessing
[33] *cer* = wax
[34] *poly* = many + *theli* = nipples

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

13. How do merocrine and apocrine sweat glands differ in structure and function?
14. What other type of gland is associated with hair follicles? How does its mode of secretion differ from that of sweat glands?
15. What is the difference between the breast and mammary gland?

Diseases of the Skin

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the three most common forms of skin cancer; and
- describe the three classes of burns and the priorities in burn treatment.

Because it is the most exposed of all our organs, skin is not only the most vulnerable to injury and disease but is also the one place where we are most likely to notice anything out of the ordinary. Skin diseases become increasingly common in old age, and the great majority of people over age 70 have complaints about their integumentary system. Aging of the skin is discussed more fully on pages 1108–1109. The healing of cuts and other injuries to the skin occurs by the process described at the end of chapter 5. We focus here on two particularly common and serious disorders, skin cancer and burns. Other skin diseases are briefly summarized in table 6.3.

Skin Cancer

Skin cancer is induced by the ultraviolet rays of the sun. It occurs most often on the head and neck, where exposure to the sun is greatest. It is most common in fair-skinned people and the elderly, who have had the longest lifetime UV exposure (see insight 6.4). The ill-advised popularity of suntanning, however, has caused an alarming increase in skin cancer among younger people. Skin cancer is one of the most common cancers, but it is also one of the easiest to treat and has one of the highest survival rates when it is detected and treated early.

Think About It

Skin cancer is relatively rare in people with dark skin. Other than possible differences in behavior, such as lack of intentional suntanning, why do you think this is so?

Table 6.3 Some Disorders of the Integumentary System

Acne	Inflammation of the sebaceous glands, especially beginning at puberty; follicle becomes blocked with keratinocytes and sebum and develops into a blackhead *(comedo)* composed of these and bacteria; continued inflammation of follicle results in pus production and appearance of pimples.
Dermatitis	Any inflammation of the skin, typically marked by itching and redness; often *contact dermatitis,* caused by exposure to toxins such as poison ivy.
Eczema (ECK-zeh-mah)	Itchy, red, "weeping" skin lesions caused by an allergy, usually beginning before age 5; may progress to thickened, leathery, darkly pigmented patches of skin.
Psoriasis (so-RY-ah-sis)	Recurring, reddened plaques covered with silvery scale; sometimes disfiguring; possibly caused by an autoimmune response; runs in families.
Rosacea (ro-ZAY-she-ah)	A red rashlike area, often in the area of the nose and cheeks, marked by fine networks of dilated blood vessels; worsened by hot drinks, alcohol, and spicy food.
Seborrheic (seb-oh-REE-ik) dermatitis	Recurring patches of scaly white or yellowish inflammation often on the head, face, chest, and back; called *cradle cap* (yellow, crusty scalp lesion) in infants. Cause unknown, but correlated with genetic and climatic factors.
Tinea	Any fungal infection of the skin; common in moist areas such as the axilla, groin, and foot *(athlete's foot).* Misnamed *ringworm* because of the circular, wormlike growth pattern sometimes exhibited.

Disorders described elsewhere

Abnormal skin coloration p. 197
Baldness p. 204
Birthmarks p. 198
Burns p. 209
Hirsutism p. 204
Keloids p. 185
Pemphigus vulgaris p. 179
Polythelia p. 207
Skin cancer p. 208
Genital warts p. 1043

There are three types of skin cancer named for the epidermal cells in which they originate—*basal cell carcinoma, squamous cell carcinoma,* and *malignant melanoma.* The three types are also distinguished from each other by the appearance of their **lesions**[35] (zones of tissue injury).

Basal cell carcinoma[36] is the most common type, but it is also the least dangerous because it seldom metastasizes. It arises from cells of the stratum basale and eventually invades the dermis. On the surface, the lesion first appears as a small, shiny bump. As the bump enlarges, it often develops a central depression and a beaded "pearly" edge (fig. 6.12*a*).

Squamous cell carcinoma arises from keratinocytes of the stratum spinosum. Lesions usually appear on the scalp, ears, lower lip, or back of the hand. They have a raised, reddened, scaly appearance, later forming a concave ulcer with raised edges (fig. 6.12*b*). The chance of recovery is good with early detection and surgical removal, but if it goes unnoticed or is neglected, this cancer tends to metastasize to the lymph nodes and can be lethal.

Malignant melanoma is the most deadly skin cancer but accounts for only 5% of all cases. It often arises from the melanocytes of a preexisting mole. It metastasizes quickly and is often fatal if not treated immediately. The risk for malignant melanoma is greatest in people who experienced severe sunburns as children, especially redheads. It is important to distinguish a mole from malignant melanoma. A mole usually has a uniform color and even contour, and it is no larger in diameter than the end of a pencil eraser (about 6 mm). If it becomes malignant, however, it forms a large, flat, spreading lesion with a scalloped border (fig. 6.12*c*). The American Cancer Society suggests an "ABCD rule" for recognizing malignant melanoma: *A* for asymmetry (one side of the lesion looks different from the other); *B* for border irregularity (the contour is not uniform but wavy or scalloped); *C* for color (often a mixture of brown, black, tan, and sometimes red and blue); and *D* for diameter (greater than 6 mm).

Skin cancer is treated by surgical excision, radiation therapy, or destruction of the lesion by heat (electrodesiccation) or cold (cryosurgery).

Burns

Burns are the leading cause of accidental death. They are usually caused by fires, kitchen spills, or excessively hot bath water, but they also can be caused by sunlight, ionizing radiation, strong acids and bases, or electrical shock. Burn deaths result primarily from fluid loss, infection, and the toxic effects of **eschar** (ESS-car)—the burned, dead tissue.

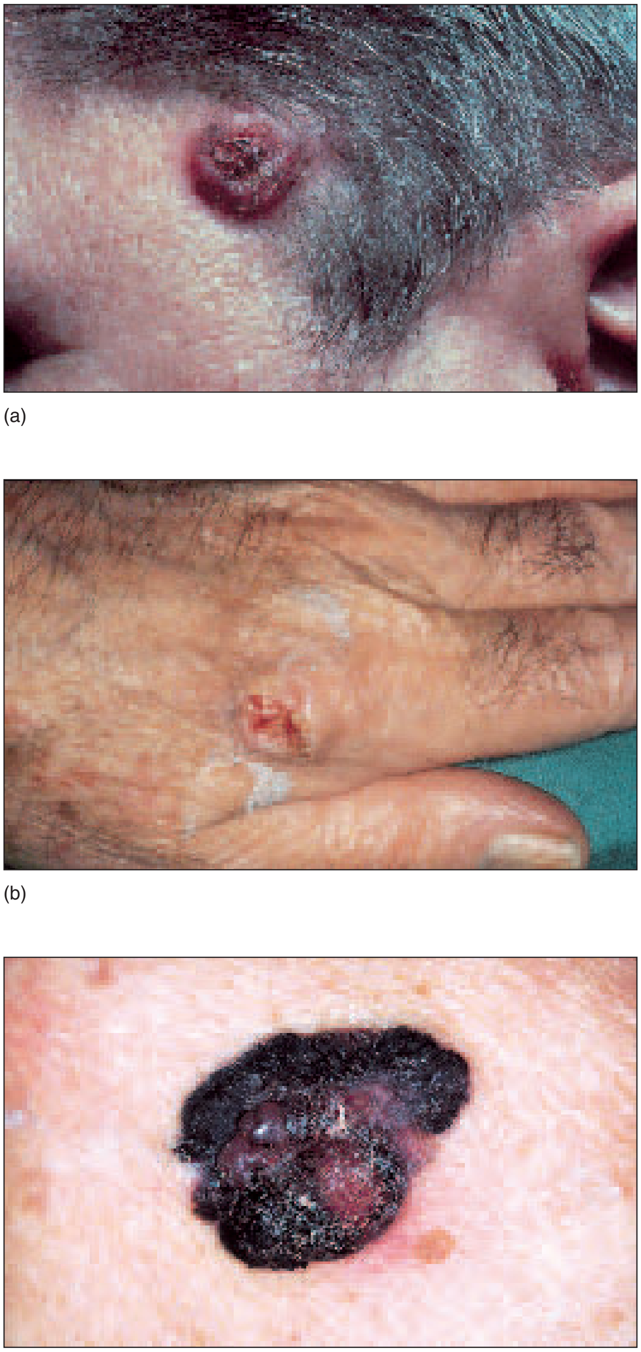


Figure 6.12 **Skin Cancer.** (*a*) Basal cell carcinoma. (*b*) Squamous cell carcinoma. (*c*) Malignant melanoma.
Which of the ABCD rules can you identify in figure *c*?

---

[35] *lesio* = injure
[36] *carcin* = cancer + *oma* = tumor

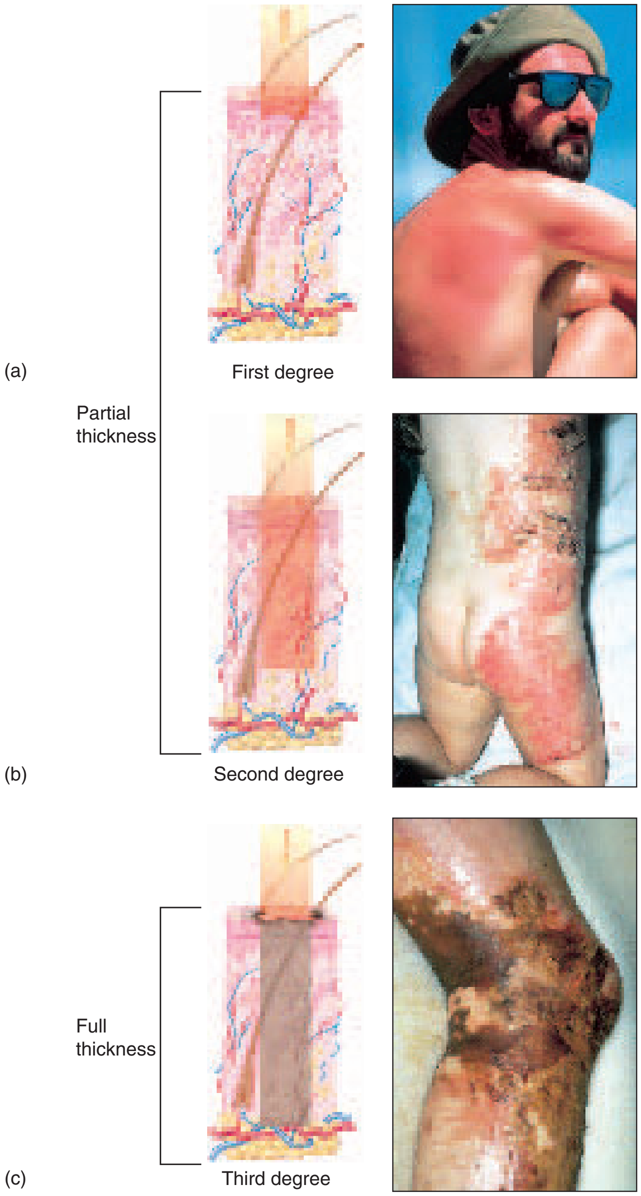


Figure 6.13 **Burns.** (*a*) First-degree burn, involving only the epidermis. (*b*) Second-degree burn, involving the epidermis and part of the dermis. (*c*) Third-degree burn, extending through the entire dermis and often involving even deeper tissue.

Burns are classified according to the depth of tissue involvement (fig. 6.13). **First-degree burns** involve only the epidermis and are marked by redness, slight edema, and pain. They heal in a few days and seldom leave scars. Most sunburns are first-degree burns.

Second-degree burns involve the epidermis and part of the dermis but leave at least some of the dermis intact. First- and second-degree burns are therefore also known as **partial-thickness burns.** A second-degree burn may be red, tan, or white and is blistered and very painful. It may take from 2 weeks to several months to heal and may leave scars. The epidermis regenerates by division of epithelial cells in the hair follicles and sweat glands and around the edges of the lesion. Some sunburns and many scalds are second-degree burns.

Insight 6.4 Clinical Application

UVA, UVB, and Sunscreens

Some people distinguish between two forms of ultraviolet radiation and argue, fallaciously, that one is less harmful than the other. UVA has wavelengths ranging from 320 to 400 nm and UVB has wavelengths from 290 to 320 nm. (Visible light starts at about 400 nm, the deepest violet we can see.) UVA and UVB are sometimes called “tanning rays” and “burning rays,” respectively. Tanning salons often advertise that the UVA rays they use are safe, but public health authorities know better. UVA can burn as well as tan, and it inhibits the immune system, while both UVA and UVB are now thought to initiate skin cancer. As dermatologists say, there is no such thing as a healthy suntan.

Whether or not sunscreens help to protect against skin cancer remains unproven. As the sale of sunscreen has risen in recent decades, so has the incidence of skin cancer. Indeed, recent studies have shown that people who use sunscreens have a higher incidence of basal cell carcinoma than people who do not, while data relating malignant melanoma to sunscreen use are still contradictory and inconclusive. Some of the chemicals used in sunscreens damage DNA and generate harmful free radicals when exposed to UV—chemicals such as para-aminobenzoic acid (PABA) (now discontinued), zinc oxide, and titanium dioxide. The jury is still out, however, on how sunscreens react on and with the skin; authorities cannot say with certainty, yet, whether sunscreens provide any protection or do any harm. Not enough data are available yet on older people who have used sunscreen their entire lives. Given the uncertainty about their effectiveness, it is best not to assume that sunscreens protect you from skin cancer and, above all, not to assume that using a sunscreen means that you can safely stay out longer in the sun.

Third-degree burns are also called **full-thickness burns** because the epidermis, dermis, and often some deeper tissue are completely destroyed. Since no dermis remains, the skin can regenerate only from the edges of the wound. Third-degree burns often require skin grafts (see insight 6.5). If a third-degree burn is left to itself to heal, contracture (abnormal connective tissue fibrosis) and severe disfigurement may result.

Think About It

A third-degree burn may be surrounded by painful areas of first- and second-degree burns, but the region of the third-degree burn is painless. Explain the reason for this lack of pain.

The two most urgent considerations in treating a burn patient are fluid replacement and infection control. A patient can lose several liters of water, electrolytes, and protein each day from the burned area. As fluid is lost from the tissues, more is transferred from the bloodstream to replace it, and the volume of circulating blood declines. A patient may lose up to 75% of the blood plasma within a few hours, potentially leading to circulatory shock and cardiac arrest—the principal cause of death in burn patients. Intravenous fluid must be given to make up for this loss. A burn patient also requires thousands of extra calories daily to compensate for protein loss and the demands of tissue repair. Supplementary nutrients are given intravenously or through a gastric tube.

Infection is controlled by keeping the patient in an aseptic (germ-free) environment and administering antibiotics. The eschar is sterile for the first 24 hours, but then it quickly becomes infected and may have toxic effects on the digestive, respiratory, and other systems. Its removal, called **debridement**[37] (deh-BREED-ment), is essential to infection control.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

16. What types of cells are involved in each type of skin cancer?
17. Which type of skin cancer is most dangerous? What are its early warning signs?
18. What is the difference between a first-, second-, and third-degree burn?
19. What are the two most urgent priorities in treating a burn victim? How are these needs dealt with?

Insight 6.5 Clinical Application

Skin Grafts and Artificial Skin

Third-degree burns leave no dermal tissue to regenerate what was lost, and therefore they generally require skin grafts. The ideal graft is an *autograft*—tissue taken from another location on the same person's body—because it is not rejected by the immune system. An autograft is performed by taking epidermis and part of the dermis from an undamaged area such as the thigh or buttock and grafting it to a burned area. This method is called a *split-skin graft* because part of the dermis is left behind to proliferate and replace the epidermis that was removed—the same way a second-degree burn heals.

An autograft may not be possible, however, if the burns are too extensive. The best treatment option in this case is an *isograft,* which uses skin from an identical twin. Because the donor and recipient are genetically identical, the recipient's immune system is unlikely to reject the graft. Since identical twins are rare, however, the best one can hope for in most cases is donor skin from another close relative.

A *homograft,* or *allograft,* is a graft from any other person. Skin banks provide skin from deceased persons for this purpose. The immune system attempts to reject homografts, but they suffice as temporary coverings for the burned area. They can be replaced by autografts when the patient is well enough for healthy skin to be removed from an undamaged area of the body.

Pig skin is sometimes used on burn patients but presents the same problem of immune rejection. A graft of tissue from a different species is called a *heterograft,* or *xenograft.* This is a special case of a *heterotransplant,* which also includes transplantation of organs such as baboon hearts or livers into humans. Heterografts and heterotransplants are short-term methods of maintaining a patient until a better, long-term solution is possible. The immune reaction can be suppressed by drugs called *immunosuppressants.* This procedure is risky, however, because it lowers a person's resistance to infection, which is already compromised in a burn patient.

Some alternatives to skin grafts are also being used. Burns are sometimes temporarily covered with amnion (the membrane that surrounds a developing fetus) obtained from afterbirths. In addition, tiny keratinocyte patches cultured with growth stimulants have produced sheets of epidermal tissue as large as the entire body surface. These can replace large areas of burned tissue. Dermal fibroblasts also have been successfully cultured and used for autografts. A drawback to these approaches is that the culture process requires 3 or 4 weeks, which is too long a wait for some patients with severe burns.

Various kinds of artificial skin have also been developed as a temporary burn covering. One concept is a sheet with an upper layer of silicone and a lower layer of collagen and chondroitin sulfate. It stimulates growth of connective tissue and blood vessels from the patient's underlying tissue. The artificial skin can be removed after about 3 weeks and replaced with a thin layer of cultured or grafted epidermis. At least two bioengineering companies have developed artificial skins approved in 1997–98 by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration for patient use. The manufacture of one such product begins by culturing fibroblasts on a collagen gel to produce a dermis, then culturing keratinocytes on this dermal substrate to produce an epidermis. Such products are now being used to treat burn patients as well as leg and foot ulcers that result from diabetes mellitus. This is one aspect of the larger field of *tissue engineering,* which biological technology companies hope will lead, within a few decades, even to engineering replacement livers and other organs.

---

[37] *de* = un + *bride* = bridle

Connective Issues

Interactions Between the INTEGUMENTARY SYSTEM and Other Organ Systems

← indicates ways in which this system affects other systems
→ indicates ways in which other systems affect this one

All Systems

The integumentary system serves all other systems by providing a physical barrier to environmental hazards

Skeletal System

← Role of skin in vitamin D synthesis promotes calcium absorption needed for bone growth and maintenance

→ Supports skin at scalp and other places where bone lies close to surface

Muscular System

← Vitamin D synthesis promotes absorption of calcium needed for muscle contraction; skin dissipates heat generated by muscles

→ Active muscles generate heat and warm the skin; contractions of skeletal muscles pull on skin and produce facial expressions

Nervous System

← Sensory impulses from skin transmitted to nervous system

→ Regulates diameter of cutaneous blood vessels; stimulates perspiration and contraction of piloerector muscles

Endocrine System

← Vitamin D_3 acts as a hormone

→ Sex hormones cause changes in integumentary features at puberty; some hormone imbalances have pathological effects on skin

Circulatory System

← Dermal vasoconstriction diverts blood to other organs; skin prevents loss of fluid from cardiovascular system; dermal mast cells cause vasodilation and increased blood flow

→ Delivers O_2, nutrients, and hormones to skin and carries away wastes; hemoglobin colors skin

Lymphatic/Immune Systems

← Dendritic cells detect foreign substances

→ Lymphatic system controls fluid balance and prevents edema; immune cells protect skin from infection and promote tissue repair

Respiratory System

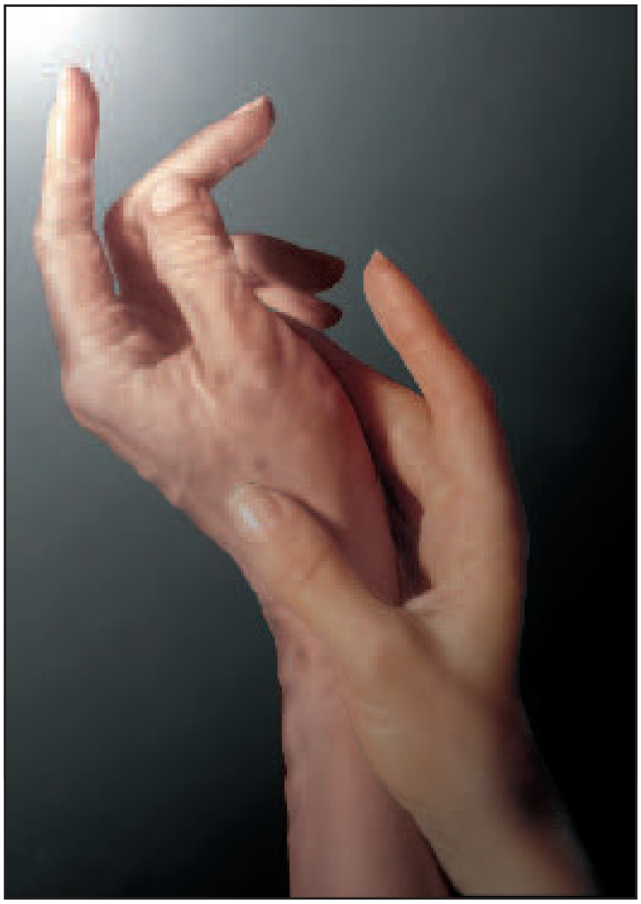
← Nasal hairs filter particles that might otherwise be inhaled

→ Provides O_2 and removes CO_2

Urinary System

← Skin complements urinary system by excreting salts and some nitrogenous wastes in sweat

→ Disposes of wastes and maintains electrolyte and pH balance



Digestive System

← Vitamin D synthesis promotes intestinal absorption of calcium

→ Provides nutrients needed for integumentary development and function; nutritional disorders often reflected in appearance of skin, hair, and nails

Reproductive System

← Cutaneous receptors respond to erotic stimuli; mammary glands produce milk to nourish infants; apocrine glands produce scents with subtle sexual functions

→ Gonadal sex hormones promote growth, maturation, and maintenance of skin

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

Structure of the Skin and Subcutaneous Tissue (p. 192)

1. *Dermatology* is the study of the integumentary system. This system consists of the skin, hair, nails, and cutaneous glands.
2. The skin is composed of the epidermis and dermis.
3. The epidermis is a stratified squamous epithelium with four histological layers in most areas of the body, but five in the *thick skin* of the palms and soles: the *stratum basale, stratum spinosum, stratum granulosum, stratum lucidum* (missing in thin skin), and *stratum corneum.*
4. There are four types of cells in the epidermis: *keratinocytes* (the most abundant), *melanocytes, tactile cells,* and *dendritic cells.*
5. The dermis consists of a thin superficial *papillary layer* of areolar tissue and a thicker deep *reticular layer* of dense irregular connective tissue.
6. The dermis is composed mainly of collagen but also has elastic fibers and a variety of cells. It contains blood vessels, nerves, glands, muscle, and the roots of the hair and nails.
7. Between the skin and muscle is a connective tissue *hypodermis.* In many areas, it is predominantly adipose tissue *(subcutaneous fat).*
8. Normal skin colors result from hemoglobin (in the blood), melanin, and carotene. Pathological skin colors include cyanosis, erythema, jaundice, bronzing, pallor, albinism, and hematomas.
9. The skin is marked with hemangiomas (birthmarks), freckles, moles (nevi), friction ridges, and flexion creases.

Functions of the Skin (p. 198)

1. The skin is a barrier to pathogenic organisms and ultraviolet radiation, and to the loss of water, although some water and small amounts of O_2 and CO_2 penetrate the skin, as do some vitamins, drugs, and poisons.
2. Epidermal keratinocytes begin the synthesis of vitamin D.
3. The skin is the body's most extensive sense organ, with receptors for touch, heat, cold, pressure, vibration, and tissue injury.
4. Blood vessels and sweat glands of the skin are important in thermoregulation.
5. The expressiveness of the facial skin and appearance of the integument in general are important in social communication.

Hair and Nails (p. 200)

1. A hair is a filament of keratinized cells growing from an epidermal tube called the *follicle.*
2. Fetuses have temporary hair called *lanugo.* After birth, the hair is a mixture of fine *vellus* and coarser *terminal hair.*
3. A hair consists of a basal *bulb,* a *root* below the skin surface, and a *shaft* above the skin. It has a central, loose core called the *medulla,* surrounded by keratinized and pigmented cells of the *cortex,* and a surface layer of thin cells forming a *cuticle.*
4. Variations in hair color result from various proportions of *eumelanin* to *pheomelanin.*
5. A hair is supplied by a *piloerector muscle* that raises the hair in response to cold or fear, and a nerve ending called a *hair receptor* that detects hair movements.
6. A hair has a life cycle consisting of *anagen* (growth), *catagen* (apoptosis), and *telogen* (resting) stages.
7. The functions of hair vary from one region of the body to another and include heat retention on the scalp, sensation, signifying individual identity and sexual maturity, regulating dispersal of sex pheromones, protecting the eyes and ears from debris, and nonverbal communication.
8. A nail is a clear plate of hard keratin that grows from a *nail matrix* under the skin fold.
9. Nails serve for manipulation of objects, grooming, and digging.

Cutaneous Glands (p. 205)

1. The most numerous glands of the skin are merocrine sweat glands, which release perspiration through pores in the skin surface. They function to cool the body.
2. Apocrine sweat glands open into hair follicles of the groin, anal region, axilla, areola, and male beard. They produce a thicker form of sweat with probably pheromonal functions.
3. Sebaceous glands open into hair follicles and produce an oily sebum that keeps the skin and hair from becoming dry, brittle, and cracked.
4. Ceruminous glands secrete cerumen (earwax), which has waterproofing and antibacterial functions.
5. Mammary glands develop in the breast during pregnancy and lactation, and produce milk.

Diseases of the Skin (p. 208)

1. The three forms of skin cancer are defined by the types of cells in which they originate: *basal cell carcinoma* (the most common but least dangerous form), *squamous cell carcinoma,* and *malignant melanoma* (the least common but most dangerous form).
2. Burns can be first-degree (epidermal damage only, as in a mild sunburn), second-degree (some dermal damage, as in a scald), or third-degree (complete penetration of the dermis, as in burns from fire).
3. People with serious burns must be treated first with respect to fluid balance and second for infection control.

Selected Vocabulary

epidermis 192	hypodermis 196	hematoma 198	merocrine sweat gland 205
keratinocyte 192	melanin 196	hair follicle 201	apocrine sweat gland 206
stratum corneum 195	cyanosis 197	piloerector muscle 202	sebaceous gland 207
dermis 195			

Testing Your Recall

1. Cells of the _____ are keratinized and dead.
   a. papillary layer
   b. stratum spinosum
   c. stratum basale
   d. stratum corneum
   e. stratum granulosum
2. Which of the following terms is *least* related to the rest?
   a. panniculus adiposus
   b. superficial fascia
   c. reticular layer
   d. hypodermis
   e. subcutaneous tissue
3. Which of the following skin conditions or appearances would most likely result from liver failure?
   a. pallor
   b. erythema
   c. pemphigus vulgaris
   d. jaundice
   e. melanization
4. All of the following interfere with microbial invasion of the skin *except*
   a. the acid mantle.
   b. melanization.
   c. inflammation.
   d. keratinization.
   e. sebum.
5. The hair on a six-year-old's arms is
   a. vellus.
   b. lanugo.
   c. alopecia.
   d. terminal hair.
   e. rosacea.
6. Which of the following terms is *least* related to the rest?
   a. lunule
   b. nail plate
   c. hyponychium
   d. free edge
   e. cortex
7. Which of the following is a scent gland?
   a. eccrine gland
   b. sebaceous gland
   c. apocrine gland
   d. ceruminous gland
   e. merocrine gland
8. _____ are skin cells with a sensory role.
   a. Merkel cells
   b. Dendritic cells
   c. Prickle cells
   d. Melanocytes
   e. Keratinocytes
9. Which of the following glands produce the acid mantle?
   a. merocrine sweat glands
   b. apocrine sweat glands
   c. mammary glands
   d. ceruminous glands
   e. sebaceous glands
10. Which of the following skin cells alert the immune system to pathogens?
    a. fibroblasts
    b. melanocytes
    c. keratinocytes
    d. dendritic cells
    e. Merkel cells
11. _____ is sweating without noticeable wetness of the skin.
12. A muscle that causes a hair to stand on end is called a/an _____.
13. The process of removing burned skin from a patient is called _____.
14. Blueness of the skin due to low oxygen concentration in the blood is called _____.
15. Projections of the dermis toward the epidermis are called _____.
16. Cerumen is more commonly known as _____.
17. The holocrine glands that secrete into a hair follicle are called _____.
18. Hairs grow only during the _____ phase of the hair cycle.
19. A hair is nourished by blood vessels in a connective tissue projection called the _____.
20. A _____ burn destroys the entire dermis.

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. Dander consists of dead keratinocytes.
2. The term *integument* means only the skin, but *integumentary system* includes the skin, hair, nails, and cutaneous glands.
3. The dermis is composed mainly of keratin.
4. Vitamin D synthesis begins in certain cutaneous glands.

5. Cells of the stratum granulosum cannot undergo mitosis.
6. Dermal papillae are better developed in skin subjected to a lot of mechanical stress than in skin subjected to less stress.
7. The three layers of the skin are the epidermis, dermis, and hypodermis.
8. People of African descent have a much higher density of epidermal melanocytes than do people of northern European descent.
9. Pallor indicates a genetic lack of melanin.
10. Apocrine sweat glands develop at the same time in life as the pubic and axillary hair.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. Many organs of the body contain numerous smaller organs, perhaps even thousands. Describe an example of this in the integumentary system.
2. Certain aspects of human form and function are easier to understand when viewed from the perspective of comparative anatomy and evolution. Discuss examples of this in the integumentary system.
3. Explain how the complementarity of form and function is reflected in the fact that the dermis has two histological layers and not just one.
4. Cold weather does not normally interfere with oxygen uptake by the blood, but it can cause cyanosis anyway. Why?
5. Why is it important for the epidermis to be effective, but not *too* effective, in screening out UV radiation?

Answers at the Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Legend Questions

6.2 The cell undergoing mitosis, seen between the melanocyte and the tactile cell

6.6 Keratinocytes

6.11 Apocrine glands are associated with pubic, axillary, and beard hair, which are terminal hairs.

6.12 Asymmetry (A), an irregular border (B), and varied color (C). The photo does not provide enough information to judge diameter (D) of the lesion.

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.

Spongy bone of the human femur

CHAPTER 7

Bone Tissue

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Tissues and Organs of the Skeletal System 218
- Functions of the Skeleton 218
- Bones and Osseous Tissue 218
- The Shapes of Bones 218
- General Features of Bones 219

Histology of Osseous Tissue 221
- Cells 221
- Matrix 221
- Compact Bone 223
- Spongy Bone 223
- Bone Marrow 223

Bone Development 225
- Intramembranous Ossification 225
- Endochondral Ossification 226
- Bone Growth and Remodeling 228

Physiology of Osseous Tissue 229
- Mineral Deposition 230
- Mineral Resorption 230
- Calcium and Phosphate Homeostasis 230
- Other Factors Affecting Bone 234

Bone Disorders 234
- Fractures and Their Repair 234
- Other Bone Disorders 238

Chapter Review 240

INSIGHTS

7.1 **Medical History:** Bone Contamination 222

7.2 **Clinical Application:** Achondroplastic Dwarfism 229

7.3 **Clinical Application:** Osseous Tissue and pH Balance 230

7.4 **Clinical Application:** Osteoporosis 239

Brushing Up

To understand this chapter, it is important that you understand or brush up on the following concepts:

- Histology of hyaline cartilage (p. 172)
- Introduction to bone histology (p. 172)

In art and history, nothing has symbolized death more than a skull or skeleton.[1] The dry bones presented for laboratory study suggest that the skeleton is an inert scaffold for the body, like the steel girders of a building. Seeing it in such a sanitized form makes it easy to forget that the living skeleton is made of dynamic tissues, full of cells—that it continually remodels itself and interacts physiologically with all of the other organ systems of the body. The skeleton is permeated with nerves and blood vessels, which attests to its sensitivity and metabolic activity. **Osteology,**[2] the study of bone, is the subject of these next three chapters. In this chapter, we study bone as a tissue—its composition, its functions, how it develops and grows, how its metabolism is regulated, and some of its disorders. This will provide a basis for understanding the skeleton, joints, and muscles in the chapters that follow.

Tissues and Organs of the Skeletal System

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- name the tissues and organs that compose the skeletal system;
- state several functions of the skeletal system;
- describe four types of bones classified by shape;
- describe the general features of a long bone; and
- distinguish between bone as a tissue and as an organ.

The **skeletal system** is composed of bones, cartilages, and ligaments joined tightly to form a strong, flexible framework for the body. Cartilage, the forerunner of most bones in embryonic and childhood development, covers many joint surfaces in the mature skeleton. Ligaments hold bones together at the joints and are discussed in chapter 9. Tendons are structurally similar to ligaments but attach muscle to bone; they are discussed with the muscular system in chapter 10.

Functions of the Skeleton

The skeleton obviously provides the body with physical support, but it plays many other roles that go unnoticed by most people. These are summarized in table 7.1.

Bones and Osseous Tissue

Bone, or **osseous**[3] **tissue,** is a connective tissue in which the matrix is hardened by the deposition of calcium phosphate and other minerals. The hardening process is called **mineralization** or **calcification.** (Bone is not the hardest substance in the body; that distinction goes to tooth enamel.) Osseous tissue is only one of the tissues that make up a bone. Also present are blood, bone marrow, cartilage, adipose tissue, nervous tissue, and fibrous connective tissue. The word *bone* can denote an organ composed of all these tissues, or it can denote just the osseous tissue.

The Shapes of Bones

Bones are classified into four groups according to their shapes and corresponding functions (fig. 7.1):

1. **Long bones** are conspicuously longer than wide. Like crowbars, they serve as rigid levers that are

---

[1] *skelet* = dried up

[2] *osteo* = bone + *logy* = study of

[3] *os, osse, oste* = bone

Table 7.1 Functions of the Skeletal System

Function	Examples or Explanation
Support	Bones of the legs, pelvis, and vertebral column hold up the body; the mandible supports the teeth; nearly all bones provide support for muscles; many other soft organs are directly or indirectly supported by nearby bones.
Protection	Bones enclose and protect the brain, spinal cord, lungs, heart, pelvic viscera, and bone marrow.
Movement	Skeletal muscles would serve little purpose if not for the rigid attachment and leverage provided by bones. Leg and arm movements are the most obvious examples of skeletomuscular movement; a less obvious one is that ventilation of the lungs depends on movement of the ribs by skeletal muscles.
Blood formation	Red bone marrow is the major producer of blood cells, including most cells of the immune system.
Electrolyte balance	The skeleton is the body's main mineral reservoir. It stores calcium and phosphate and releases them according to the body's physiological needs.
Acid-base balance	Bone buffers the blood against excessive pH changes by absorbing or releasing alkaline salts.
Detoxification	Bone tissue removes heavy metals and other foreign elements from the blood and thus reduces their effects on nervous and other tissues. It can later release these more slowly for excretion.

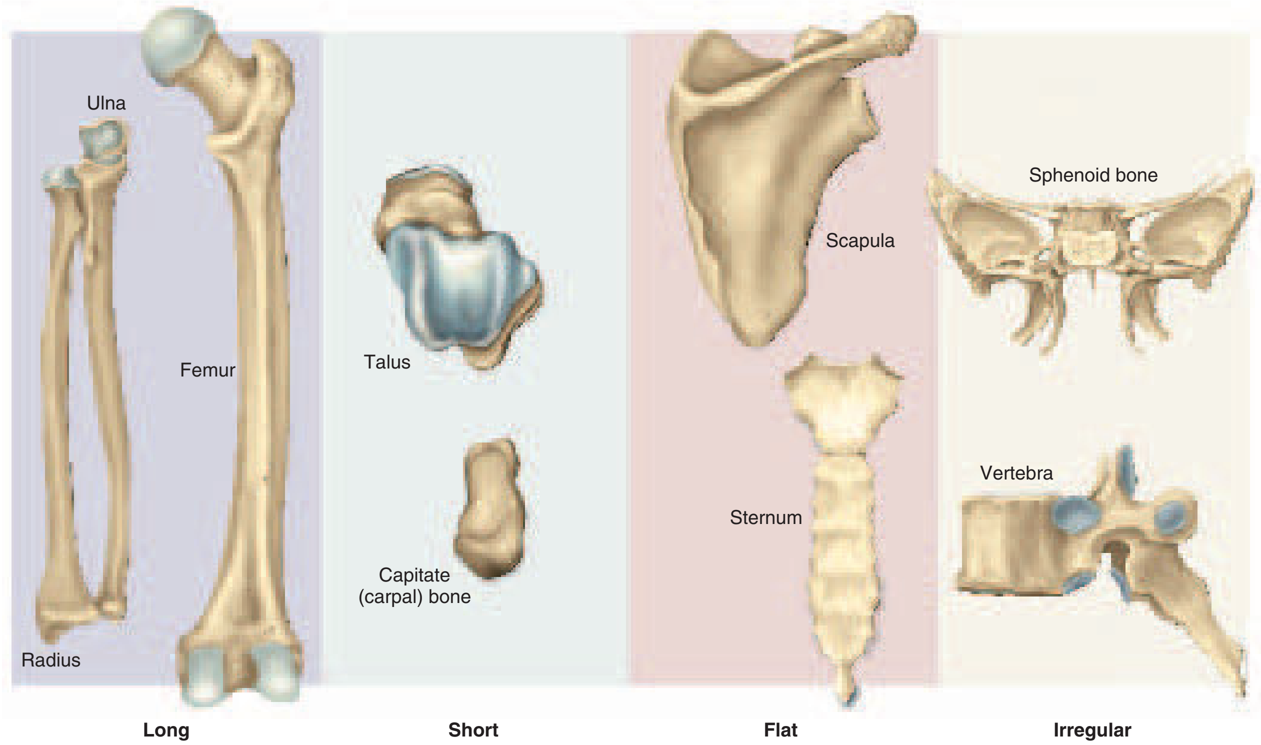


Figure 7.1 **Classification of Bones by Shape.**

acted upon by the skeletal muscles to produce body movements. Long bones include the humerus of the arm, the radius and ulna of the forearm, the metacarpals and phalanges of the hand, the femur of the thigh, the tibia and fibula of the leg, and the metatarsals and phalanges of the feet.

2. **Short bones** are more nearly equal in length and width. They include the carpal (wrist) and tarsal (ankle) bones. They have limited motion and merely glide across one another, enabling the ankles and wrists to bend in multiple directions.
3. **Flat bones** enclose and protect soft organs and provide broad surfaces for muscle attachment. They include most cranial bones and the ribs, sternum (breastbone), scapula (shoulder blade), and os coxae (hipbone).
4. **Irregular bones** have elaborate shapes that do not fit into any of the preceding categories. They include the vertebrae and some of the skull bones, such as the sphenoid and ethmoid.

General Features of Bones

Knowing the terms used to describe a long bone will help you to understand the anatomy of the other types. Figure 7.2*a* shows a longitudinal section through a long bone. You will note immediately that much of it is composed of a cylinder of dense white osseous tissue; this is called **compact (dense) bone.** The cylinder encloses a space called the **medullary** (MED-you-lerr-ee) **cavity,** which contains bone marrow. At the ends of the bone, the central space is occupied by a more loosely organized form of osseous tissue called **spongy (cancellous) bone.** The skeleton is about three-quarters compact bone and one-quarter spongy bone by weight. Spongy bone is found at the ends of the long bones and in the middle of nearly all others. It is always enclosed by more durable compact bone. In flat bones of the skull, two layers of compact bone enclose a middle layer of spongy bone like a sandwich (fig. 7.2*b*). The spongy layer is called the **diploe**[4] (DIP-lo-ee). A moderate blow to the skull can fracture the outer layer of compact bone, but the diploe may absorb the impact and leave the inner layer of compact bone unharmed.

The principal features of a long bone are its shaft, called the **diaphysis**[5] (dy-AF-ih-sis), and an expanded head at each end called the **epiphysis**[6] (eh-PIF-ih-sis).

---

[4] *diplo* = double

[5] *dia* = across + *physis* = growth; originally named for a ridge on the shaft of the tibia

[6] *epi* = upon, above + *physis* = growth

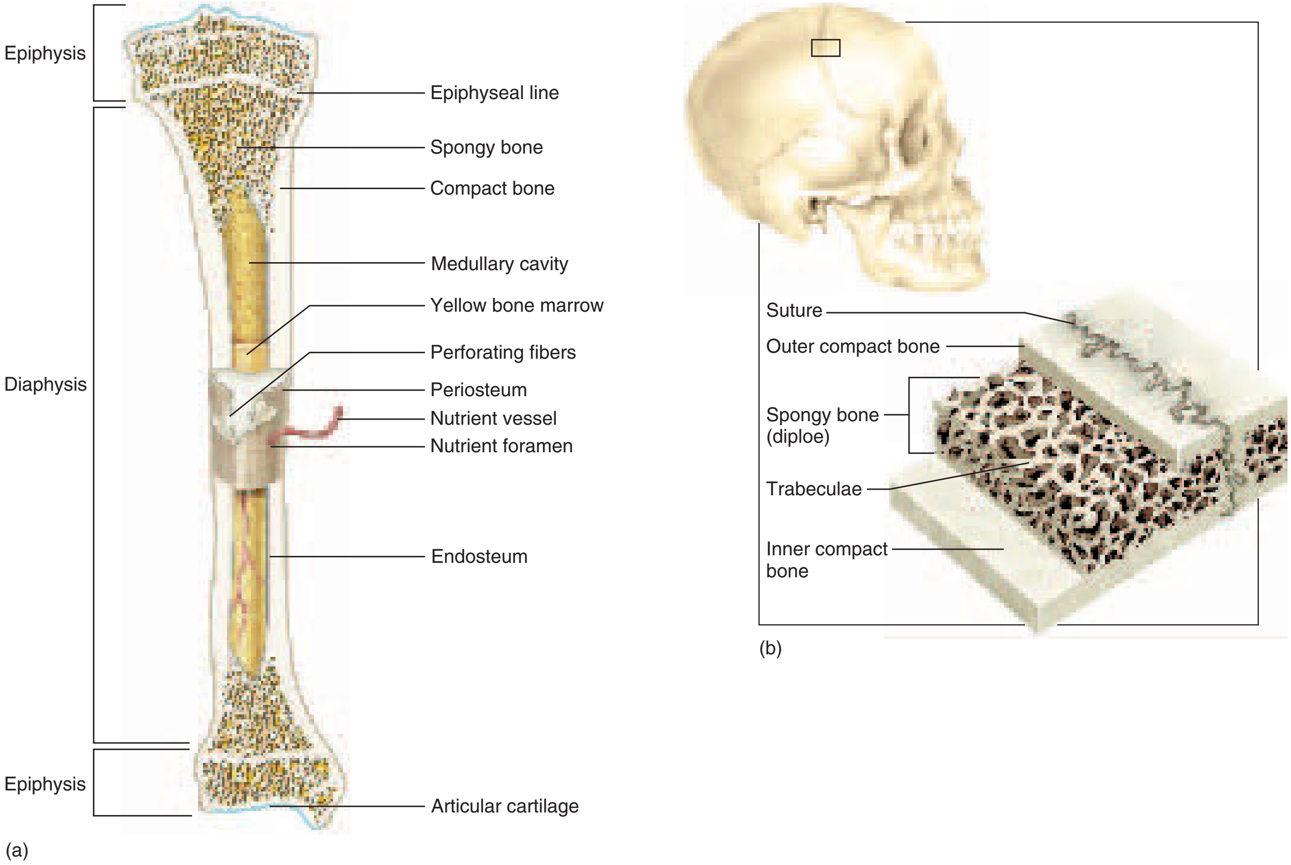

Epiphysis
Diaphysis
Epiphysis
Epiphyseal line
Spongy bone
Compact bone
Medullary cavity
Yellow bone marrow
Perforating fibers
Periosteum
Nutrient vessel
Nutrient foramen
Endosteum
Articular cartilage
(a)
Suture
Outer compact bone
Spongy bone (diploe)
Trabeculae
Inner compact bone
(b)

Figure 7.2 **Anatomy of Bones.** (*a*) A long bone, the tibia. (*b*) Flat bones of the cranium.
What is the functional significance of a long bone being wider at the epiphyses than at the diaphysis?

The diaphysis provides leverage, while the epiphysis is enlarged to strengthen the joint and provide added surface area for the attachment of tendons and ligaments. The joint surface where one bone meets another is covered with a layer of hyaline cartilage called the **articular cartilage.** Together with a lubricating fluid secreted between the bones, this cartilage enables a joint to move far more easily than it would if one bone rubbed directly against the other. Blood vessels penetrate into the bone through minute holes called **nutrient foramina** (for-AM-ih-nuh); we will trace where they go when we consider the histology of bone.

Externally, a bone is covered with a sheath called the **periosteum.**[7] This has a tough, outer *fibrous layer* of collagen and an inner *osteogenic layer* of bone-forming cells described later in the chapter. Some collagen fibers of the outer layer are continuous with the tendons that bind muscle to bone, and some penetrate into the bone matrix as **perforating (Sharpey[8]) fibers.** The periosteum thus provides strong attachment and continuity from muscle to tendon to bone. The osteogenic layer is important to the growth of bone and healing of fractures. There is no periosteum over the articular cartilage. The internal surface of a bone is lined with **endosteum,**[9] a thin layer of reticular connective tissue and *osteogenic cells* that give rise to other types of bone cells.

In children and adolescents, an **epiphyseal** (EP-ih-FIZZ-ee-ul) **plate** of hyaline cartilage separates the marrow spaces of the epiphysis and diaphysis (fig 7.2*a*). On X rays, it appears as a transparent line at the end of a long bone (see fig. 7.11). The epiphyseal plate is a zone where the bones elongate by a growth process detailed later in the chapter. In adults, the epiphyseal plate is depleted and the bones no longer grow in length, but an *epiphyseal line* marks where the plate used to be.

---

[7] *peri* = around + *oste* = bone

[8] William Sharpey (1802–80), Scottish histologist

[9] *endo* = within + *oste* = bone

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

1. Name five tissues found in a bone.
2. List three or more functions of the skeletal system other than supporting the body and protecting some of the internal organs.
3. Name the four bone shapes and give an example of each.
4. Explain the difference between compact and spongy bone, and describe their spatial relationship to each other.
5. State the anatomical terms for the shaft, head, growth zone, and fibrous covering of a long bone.

Histology of Osseous Tissue

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- list and describe the cells, fibers, and ground substance of bone tissue;
- state the importance of each constituent of bone tissue;
- compare the histology of the two types of bone tissue; and
- distinguish between the three types of bone marrow.

Cells

Like any other connective tissue, bone consists of cells, fibers, and ground substance. There are four principal types of bone cells (fig. 7.3):

1. **Osteogenic**[10] **cells** occur in the endosteum, the inner layer of the periosteum, and in the central canals. They are stem cells that arise from embryonic fibroblasts. Osteogenic cells multiply continually and some of them differentiate into the *osteoblasts* described next. Osteoblasts are nonmitotic, so the only source of new osteoblasts is mitosis and differentiation of the osteogenic cells.
2. **Osteoblasts**[11] are bone-forming cells that synthesize the organic matter of the bone matrix and help to mineralize the bone. They line up in rows in the endosteum and inner layer of periosteum and resemble a cuboidal epithelium on the bone surface. Stress and fractures stimulate accelerated mitosis and differentiation of osteogenic cells, and therefore a rapid rise in the number of osteoblasts.
3. **Osteocytes** are former osteoblasts that have become trapped in the matrix they deposited. They reside in tiny cavities called **lacunae,**[12] which are connected to each other by slender channels called **canaliculi**[13] (CAN-uh-LIC-you-lye). Each osteocyte has delicate cytoplasmic processes that reach into the canaliculi to meet the processes of neighboring osteocytes. The processes of neighboring osteocytes are joined by gap junctions, which allow osteocytes to pass nutrients and chemical signals to each other and to transfer wastes to the nearest blood vessels for disposal. Osteocytes also communicate by gap junctions with the osteoblasts on the bone surface. Osteocytes play no significant role in depositing or resorbing bone. They are strain sensors; when they detect strain in a bone (deformation in response to stress), they communicate this information to osteoblasts at the surface. Osteoblasts then deposit bone where needed—for example, building up bone in response to weight-bearing exercise—and they chemically signal osteoclasts (the cells discussed next) to remove bone elsewhere.
4. **Osteoclasts**[14] are bone-dissolving cells found on the bone surface. They develop from the same bone marrow cells that produce monocytes of the blood. Several of these marrow cells fuse with each other to form an osteoclast; thus osteoclasts are unusually large (up to 150 μm in diameter) and typically have 3 or 4 nuclei, but sometimes up to 50. The side of the osteoclast facing the bone has a *ruffled border* with many deep infoldings of the plasma membrane, increasing its surface area. Osteoclasts often reside in little pits called *resorption bays (Howship*[15] *lacunae)* that they have etched into the bone surface.

Think About It

What two organelles do you think are especially prominent in osteoblasts? (Hint: Consider the major substances that osteoblasts synthesize.)

Matrix

The matrix of osseous tissue is, by dry weight, about one-third organic and two-thirds inorganic matter. The organic matter includes collagen and various protein-carbohydrate complexes such as glycosaminoglycans, proteoglycans, and glycoproteins. The inorganic matter is about 85% **hydroxyapatite,** a crystallized calcium phosphate salt [$Ca_{10}(PO_4)_6(OH)_2$], 10% calcium carbonate ($CaCO_3$), and lesser amounts of magnesium, sodium, potassium, fluoride, sulfate, carbonate, and hydroxide ions. Several foreign elements behave chemically like bone minerals and become incorporated into osseous tissue as contaminants, sometimes with deadly results (see insight 7.1).

---

[10] *osteo* = bone + *genic* = producing
[11] *osteo* = bone + *blast* = form, produce
[12] *lac* = lake, hollow + *una* = little
[13] *canal* = canal, channel + *icul* = little
[14] *osteo* = bone + *clast* = destroy, break down
[15] J. Howship (1781–1841), English surgeon

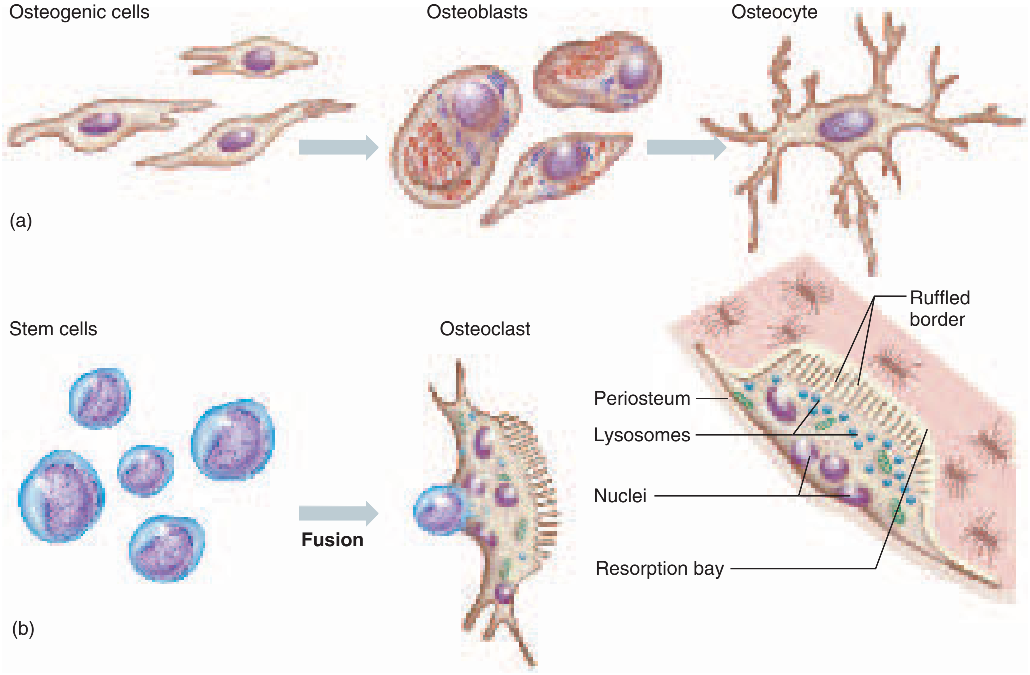


Figure 7.3 **Bone Cells and Their Development.** (*a*) Osteogenic cells give rise to osteoblasts, which deposit matrix around themselves and transform into osteocytes. (*b*) Bone marrow stem cells fuse to form osteoclasts.

Bone is somewhat like a fiberglass fishing rod. Fiberglass is a composite made of a ceramic (glass fibers) embedded in a polymer (resin). The polymer alone would be too flexible and limp to serve the purpose of a fishing rod, while the ceramic alone would be too brittle. The composite of the two, however, gives a fishing rod strength and flexibility.

Bone is also a composite of a ceramic (mineral) and a polymer (protein). The mineral component enables bone to support the weight of the body without sagging. If the minerals are dissolved out of a bone with acid, the remaining bone becomes rubbery. When the bones are deficient in calcium salts, they are soft and bend easily. This is the central problem in the childhood disease *rickets,* in which the soft bones of the lower limbs bend under the body's weight and become permanently deformed.

The protein component gives bone a degree of flexibility. Without protein, a bone is excessively brittle, as in *osteogenesis imperfecta,* or *brittle bone disease* (see table 7.4). Without collagen, a jogger's bones would shatter under the impact of running. But normally, when a bone bends slightly toward one side, the tensile strength of the collagen fibers on the opposite side holds the bone together and prevents it from snapping like a stick of chalk.

Unlike fiberglass, bone varies from place to place in its ratio of ceramic to polymer. Osseous tissue is thus adapted to different amounts of tension and compression exerted on different parts of the skeleton.

Insight 7.1 Medical History

Bone Contamination

When Marie and Pierre Curie and Henri Becquerel received their 1903 Nobel Prize for the discovery of radioactivity (see insight 2.1, p. 58), radiation captured the public's imagination. Not for several decades did anyone realize its dangers. For example, watch factories employed women to paint glow-in-the-dark numbers on watch and clock dials with radium paint. The women moistened their paint brushes with their tongues to keep them finely pointed and ingested radium in the process. The radium accumulated in their bones and caused many of the women to develop a form of bone cancer called osteosarcoma.

Even more horrific, in the wisdom of our hindsight, was a deadly health fad in which people drank "tonics" made of radium-enriched water. One famous enthusiast was the millionaire playboy and championship golfer Eben Byers (1880–1932), who drank several bottles of radium tonic each day and praised its virtues as a wonder drug and aphrodisiac. Like the factory women, Byers contracted osteosarcoma. By the time of his death, holes had formed in his skull and doctors had removed his entire upper jaw and most of his mandible in an effort to halt the spreading cancer. Byer's bones and teeth were so radioactive they could expose photographic film in the dark. Brain damage left him unable to speak, but he remained mentally alert to the bitter end. His tragic decline and death shocked the world and put an end to the radium tonic fad.

Compact Bone

The histological study of compact bone usually uses slices that have been dried, cut with a saw, and ground to translucent thinness. This procedure destroys the cells and most other organic content but reveals fine details of the inorganic matrix (fig. 7.4). Such sections show onion-like **concentric lamellae**—layers of matrix concentrically arranged around a **central (haversian) canal** and connected with each other by canaliculi. A central canal and its lamellae constitute an **osteon** (haversian system)—the basic structural unit of compact bone. In longitudinal views and three-dimensional reconstructions, we can see that an osteon is actually a cylinder of tissue surrounding a central canal. Along their length, central canals are joined by transverse or diagonal passages.

Collagen fibers "corkscrew" down the matrix of a given lamella in a helical arrangement like the threads of a screw. In the adjacent lamella, they angle in the opposite direction—alternating between right- and left-handed helices from lamella to lamella (fig. 7.4*b*). This enhances the strength of bone on the same principle as plywood, made of thin layers of wood with the grain running in different directions from one layer to the next. The helices tend to be more stretched out along the longitudinal axis of bones that must resist tension (bending), but are tighter and run more nearly across the bone in bones that must resist compression.

The skeleton receives about half a liter of blood per minute. Blood vessels, along with nerves, enter the bone tissue through nutrient foramina on the surface. These open into narrow **perforating** (**Volkmann**[16]) **canals** that cross the matrix and feed into the central canals. The innermost osteocytes around each central canal receive nutrients from these blood vessels and pass them along through their gap junctions to neighboring osteocytes. They also receive wastes from their neighbors and convey them to the central canal for removal by the bloodstream. Thus, the cytoplasmic processes of the osteocytes maintain a two-way flow of nutrients and wastes between the central canal and the outermost cells of the osteon.

Not all of the matrix is organized into osteons. The inner and outer boundaries of dense bone are arranged in *circumferential lamellae* that run parallel to the bone surface. Between osteons, we can find irregular regions called *interstitial lamellae,* the remains of old osteons that broke down as the bone grew and remodeled itself.

Spongy Bone

Spongy bone (fig. 7.4*a*) consists of a lattice of slender rods, plates, and spines called **trabeculae.**[17] Although calcified and hard, spongy bone is named for its sponge-like appearance (see p. 217). It is permeated by spaces filled with bone marrow. The matrix is arranged in lamellae like those of compact bone, but there are few osteons. Central canals are not needed here because no osteocyte is very far from the marrow. Spongy bone is well designed to impart strength to a bone while adding a minimum of weight. Its trabeculae are not randomly arranged as they might seem at a glance, but develop along the bone's lines of stress (fig. 7.5).

Bone Marrow

Bone marrow is a general term for soft tissue that occupies the medullary cavity of a long bone, the spaces amid the trabeculae of spongy bone, and the larger central canals. There are three kinds of marrow—red, yellow, and gelatinous. We can best appreciate their differences by considering how marrow changes over a person's lifetime.

In a child, the medullary cavity of nearly every bone is filled with **red bone marrow (myeloid tissue).** This is a *hemopoietic*[18] (HE-mo-poy-ET-ic) tissue—that is, it produces blood cells. Red bone marrow looks like blood but with a thicker consistency. It consists of a delicate mesh of reticular tissue saturated with immature blood cells and scattered adipocytes.

In young to middle-aged adults, most of this red marrow turns to fatty **yellow bone marrow,** like the fat at the center of a ham bone. Yellow bone marrow no longer produces blood, although in the event of severe or chronic anemia, it can transform back into red marrow. In adults, red marrow is limited to the vertebrae, ribs, sternum, part of the pelvic (hip) girdle, and the proximal heads of the humerus and femur (fig. 7.6). By old age, most of the yellow bone marrow has turned to a reddish jelly called **gelatinous bone marrow.**

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

6. Suppose you had unlabeled electron micrographs of the four kinds of bone cells and their neighboring tissues. Name each of the four cells and explain how you could visually distinguish it from the other three.
7. Name three organic components of the bone matrix.
8. What are the mineral crystals of bone called, and what are they made of?
9. Sketch a cross section of an osteon and label its major parts.
10. What are the three kinds of bone marrow? What does *hemopoietic tissue* mean? Which type of bone marrow fits this description?

---

[16] Alfred Volkmann (1800–1877), German physiologist

[17] *trabe* = plate + *cul* = little

[18] *hemo* = blood + *poietic* = forming

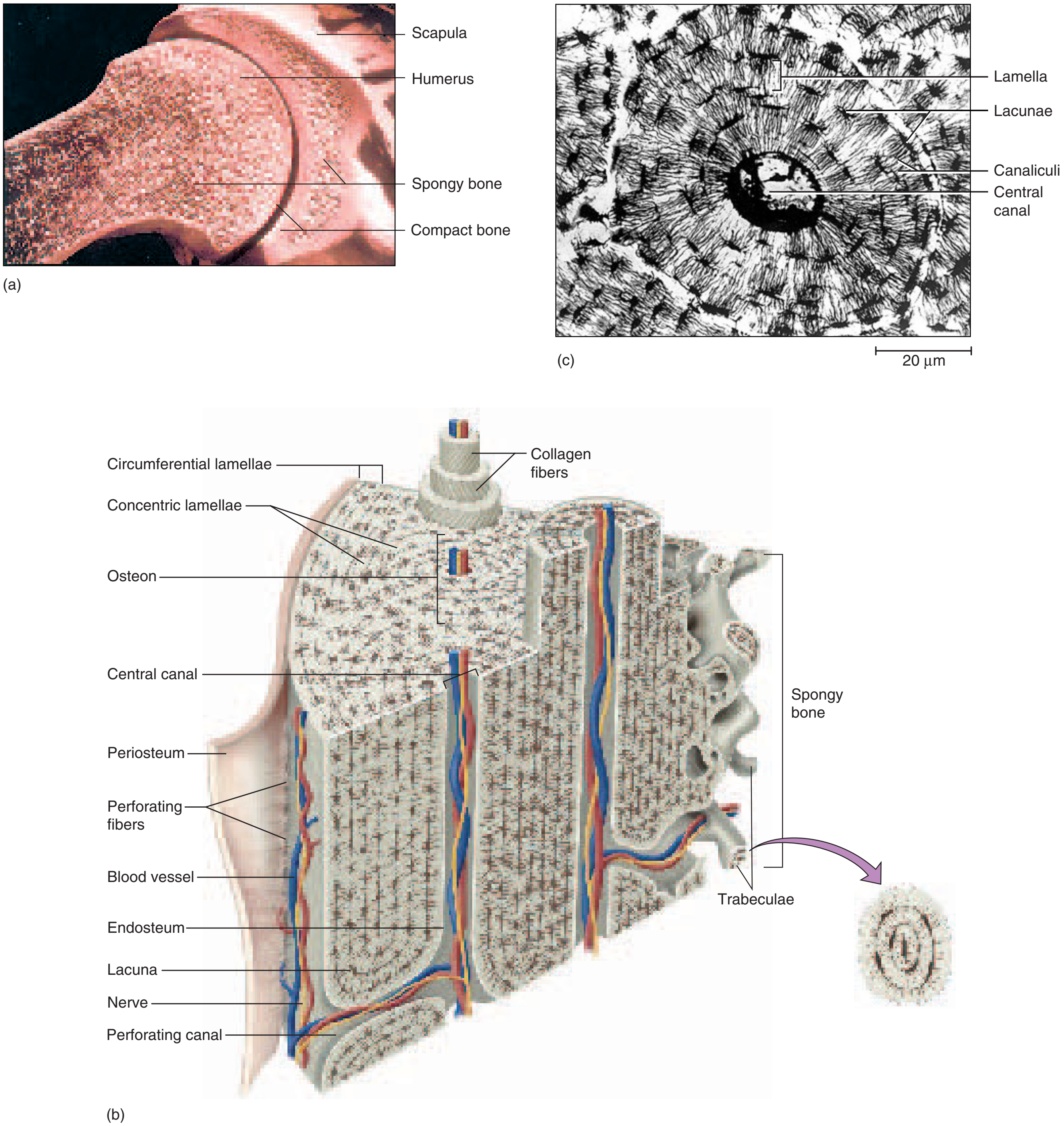

Scapula
Humerus
Spongy bone
Compact bone
(a)
Lamella
Lacunae
Canaliculi
Central canal
(c)
20 µm
Circumferential lamellae
Concentric lamellae
Osteon
Central canal
Periosteum
Perforating fibers
Blood vessel
Endosteum
Lacuna
Nerve
Perforating canal
Collagen fibers
Spongy bone
Trabeculae
(b)

Figure 7.4 **The Histology of Bone.** (*a*) Compact and spongy bone in a frontal section of the shoulder joint. (*b*) The three-dimensional structure of compact bone. (*c*) Microscopic appearance of a cross section of compact bone.

Which type of bone, spongy or compact, has more surface area exposed to osteoclast action?

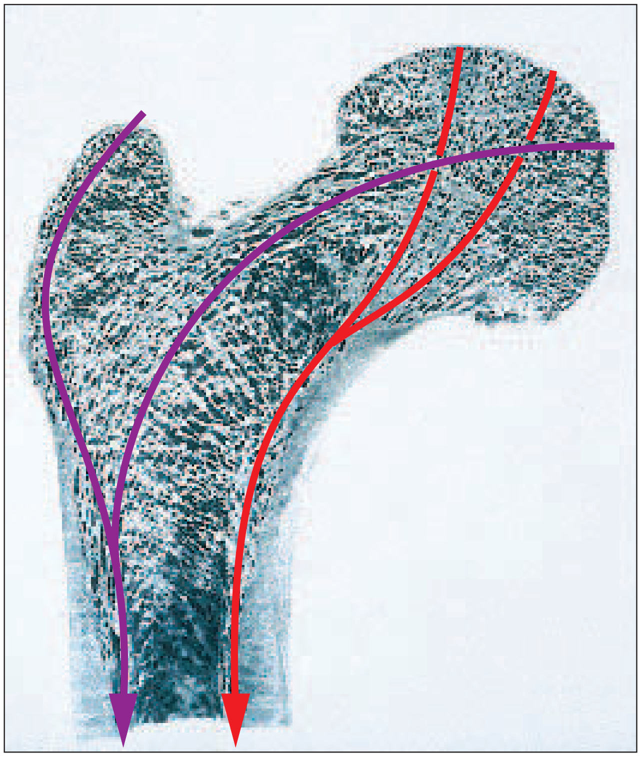


Figure 7.5 **Spongy Bone Structure in Relation to Mechanical Stress.** In this frontal section of the femur (thighbone), the trabeculae of spongy bone can be seen oriented along lines of mechanical stress applied by the weight of the body.

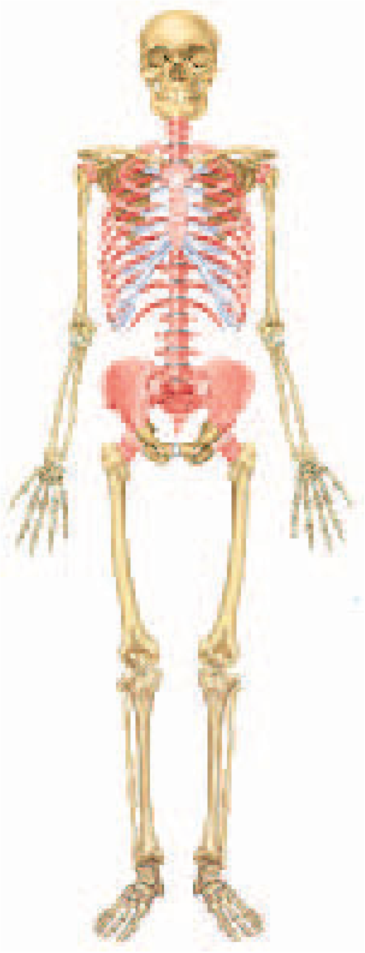


Figure 7.6 **Distribution of Red and Yellow Bone Marrow.** In an adult, red bone marrow occupies the medullary cavities of the axial skeleton and proximal heads of the humerus and femur. Yellow bone marrow occurs in the long bones of the limbs.
What would be the most accessible places to draw red bone marrow from an adult?

Bone Development

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to
- describe two mechanisms of bone formation; and
- explain how mature bone continues to grow and remodel itself.

The formation of bone is called **ossification** (OSS-ih-fih-CAY-shun), or **osteogenesis.** There are two methods of ossification—*intramembranous* and *endochondral*—which we examine in the following sections.

Intramembranous Ossification

Intramembranous[19] (IN-tra-MEM-bruh-nus) **ossification** produces the flat bones of the skull and most of the clavicle (collarbone). It begins when some of the embryonic connective tissue (mesenchyme) condenses into a sheet of soft tissue with a dense supply of blood capillaries. The cells of this sheet enlarge and differentiate into osteogenic cells, and some of the mesenchyme transforms into a network of soft trabeculae. Osteogenic cells gather on the trabeculae, become osteoblasts, and deposit an organic matrix called **osteoid**[20] **tissue**—soft collagenous tissue similar to bone except for a lack of minerals (fig. 7.7). As the trabeculae grow thicker, calcium phosphate is deposited in the matrix and some osteoblasts become trapped in lacunae. Once trapped, they differentiate into osteocytes. Some of the now-calcified trabeculae form permanent spongy bone. Osteoclasts appear early on these trabeculae, reabsorbing and remodeling bone and creating a marrow space in the middle of the bone. Trabeculae at the surface continue to calcify until the spaces between them are filled in, thereby converting the spongy bone to compact bone. This process gives rise to the typical structure of a flat cranial bone—a sandwichlike arrangement of spongy bone between two surface layers of compact bone. Mesenchyme at the surface of the developing bone remains uncalcified, but becomes increasingly fibrous and eventually gives rise to the periosteum of the bone.

---

[19] *intra* = within + *membran* = membrane

[20] *oste* = bone + *oid* = like, resembling

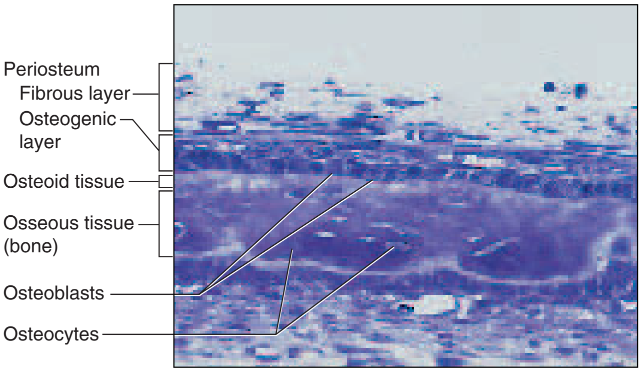

Periosteum
Fibrous layer
Osteogenic layer
Osteoid tissue
Osseous tissue (bone)
Osteoblasts
Osteocytes

Figure 7.7 **Intramembranous Ossification.** Developing cranial bones of the human fetus. Note the layers of osteoid tissue, osteoblasts, and fibrous periosteum on both sides of the bone.

Endochondral Ossification

Endochondral[21] (EN-doe-CON-drul) **ossification** produces most other bones, including the vertebrae, pelvic bones, and bones of the limbs. It is a method in which mesenchyme first transforms into a hyaline cartilage *model* that resembles the shape of the bone to come, and then the cartilage is broken down, reorganized, and calcified to form a bone (fig. 7.8).

The Primary Ossification Center

The first sign of endochondral ossification is the multiplication and swelling of chondrocytes near the center of the model, forming a **primary ossification center.** As the lacunae enlarge, the matrix between them is reduced to thin walls and the model becomes weak at this point. It soon gets reinforcement, however. Some cells of the perichondrium become osteoblasts, which produce a bony collar around the model. This collar acts like a splint to provide temporary support for the model, and it cuts off the diffusion of nutrients to the chondrocytes, hastening their death. Once the collar has formed, the fibrous sheath around it is considered periosteum rather than perichondrium.

---

[21] *endo* = within + *chondr* = cartilage

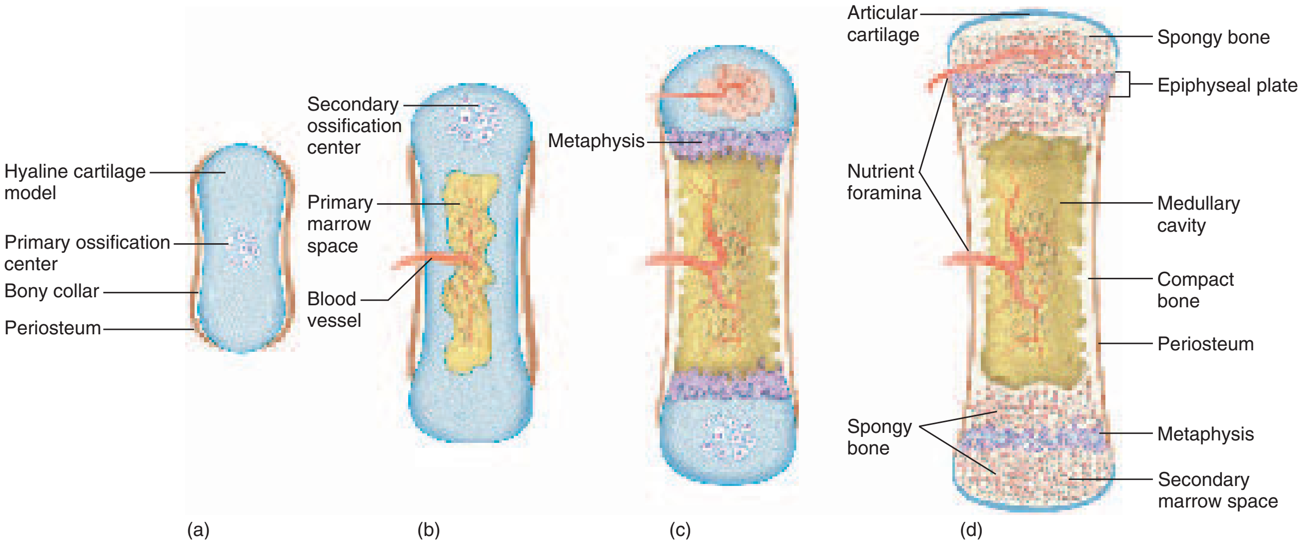

Hyaline cartilage model
Primary ossification center
Bony collar
Periosteum
(a)
Secondary ossification center
Primary marrow space
Blood vessel
(b)
Metaphysis
(c)
Articular cartilage
Nutrient foramina
Spongy bone
Spongy bone
Epiphyseal plate
Medullary cavity
Compact bone
Periosteum
Metaphysis
Secondary marrow space
(d)

Figure 7.8 **Stages of Endochondral Ossification.** (*a*) Chondrocyte hypertrophy at the center of the cartilage model and formation of a supportive bony collar. (*b*) Invasion of the model by blood vessels and creation of a primary marrow space. (*c*) Typical state of a long bone at the time of birth, with blood vessels growing into the secondary marrow space and well-defined metaphyses at each end of the primary marrow space. (*d*) Appearance of a long bone in childhood. By adulthood, the epiphyseal plates will be depleted and the primary and secondary marrow spaces will be united.

Buds of connective tissue grow from this periosteum into the cartilage and penetrate the thin walls between the enlarged lacunae. They break down the lacunae and transform the primary ossification center into a cavity called the **primary marrow space.** Osteogenic cells invade the model by way of the connective tissue buds, transform into osteoblasts, and line the marrow space. The osteoblasts deposit osteoid tissue and then calcify it to form a temporary framework of bony trabeculae. As ossification progresses, osteoclasts break down these temporary trabeculae and enlarge the primary marrow space. The ends of the bone are still composed of hyaline cartilage at this stage.

The Metaphysis

Between the cartilaginous head and the shaft of a developing long bone, there is a transitional zone called the **metaphysis** (meh-TAF-ih-sis). It exhibits five histological zones of transformation from cartilage to bone (fig. 7.9):

1. **Zone of reserve cartilage.** In this zone, farthest from the marrow space, the resting cartilage as yet shows no sign of transforming into bone.
2. **Zone of cell proliferation.** A little closer to the marrow space, chondrocytes multiply and become arranged into longitudinal columns of flattened lacunae.
3. **Zone of cell hypertrophy.** Next, the chondrocytes cease to divide and begin to hypertrophy, just as they did in the primary ossification center. The cartilage walls between lacunae become very thin. Cell multiplication in zone 2 and hypertrophy in zone 3 continually push the zone of reserve cartilage toward the ends of the bone and make the bone grow longer.
4. **Zone of calcification.** Minerals are deposited in the matrix between columns of lacunae and calcify the cartilage for temporary support.
5. **Zone of bone deposition.** Within each column, the walls between lacunae break down and the

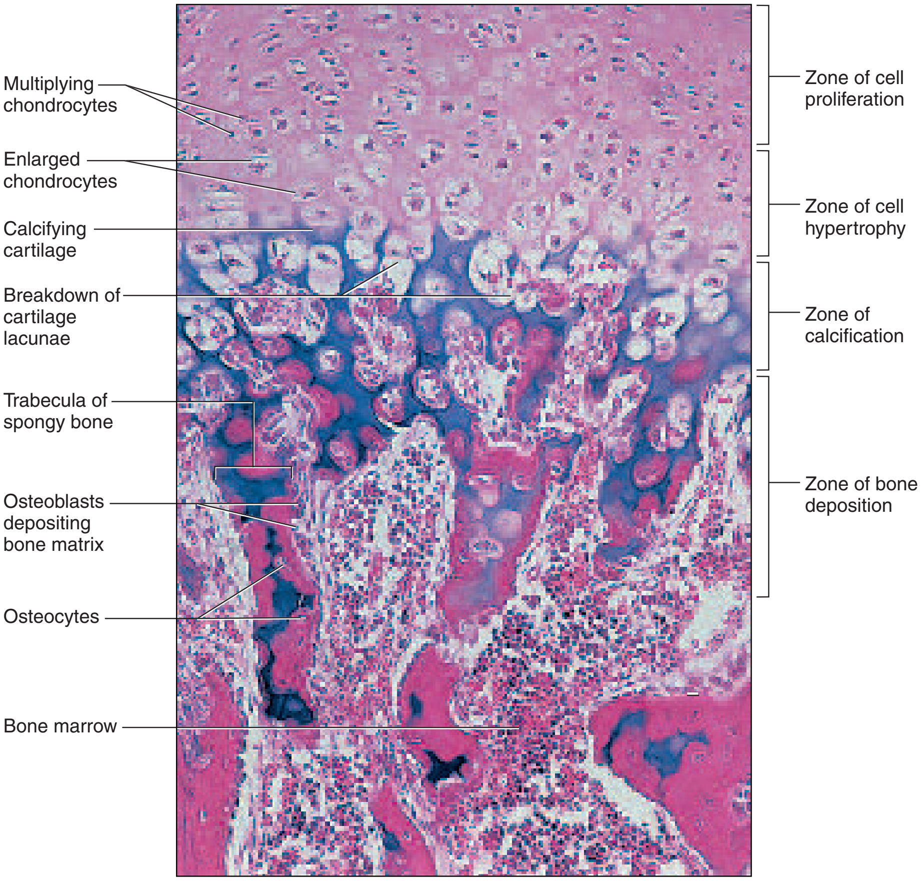

Multiplying chondrocytes
Enlarged chondrocytes
Calcifying cartilage
Breakdown of cartilage lacunae
Trabecula of spongy bone
Osteoblasts depositing bone matrix
Osteocytes
Bone marrow
Zone of cell proliferation
Zone of cell hypertrophy
Zone of calcification
Zone of bone deposition

Figure 7.9 **The Metaphysis.** This micrograph shows the transition from cartilage to bone in the growth zone of a long bone.

chondrocytes die. This converts each column into a longitudinal channel, which is quickly invaded by marrow and blood vessels from the primary marrow space. Osteoclasts dissolve the calcified cartilage while osteoblasts line up along the walls of these channels and begin depositing concentric lamellae of matrix. The channel therefore grows smaller and smaller as one layer after another is laid down, until only a narrow channel remains in the middle—now a central canal. Osteoblasts trapped in their own matrix become osteocytes and stop producing matrix.

Think About It

In a given osteon, which lamellae are the oldest—those immediately adjacent to the central canal or those around the perimeter of the osteon? Explain your answer.

The primary ossification centers of a 12-week-old fetus are shown in figure 7.10. The joints are translucent because they are still composed of cartilage that has not yet ossified. They are still cartilaginous even at the time of birth, which is one reason human newborns cannot walk.

The Secondary Ossification Center

Around the time of birth, **secondary ossification centers** begin to form in the epiphyses (see fig. 7.8*b*). Here, too, chondrocytes enlarge, the walls of matrix between them dissolve, and the chondrocytes die. Vascular buds arise from the perichondrium and grow into the cartilage, bringing osteogenic cells and osteoclasts with them. The cartilage is eroded from the center of the epiphysis outward in all directions. Thin trabeculae of cartilage matrix are calcified to form spongy bone. Hyaline cartilage persists in two places—on the epiphyseal surfaces as the articular cartilages and at the junction of the diaphysis and epiphysis, where it forms the epiphyseal plate (fig. 7.11). Each side of the epiphyseal plate has a metaphysis, where the transformation of cartilage to bone occurs.

Bone Growth and Remodeling

Bones continue to grow and remodel themselves throughout life, changing size and shape to accommodate the changing forces applied to the skeleton. For example, in children the femurs become longer, the curvature of the cranium increases to accommodate a growing brain, and many bones develop surface bumps, spines, and ridges (described in chapter 8) as a child begins to walk and the muscles exert tension on the bones. The prominence of these surface features and the density of bone depend on the amount of stress to which a bone has been subjected. On average, the bones have greater density and mass in athletes and people engaged in heavy manual labor than they do in sedentary people. Anthropologists who study

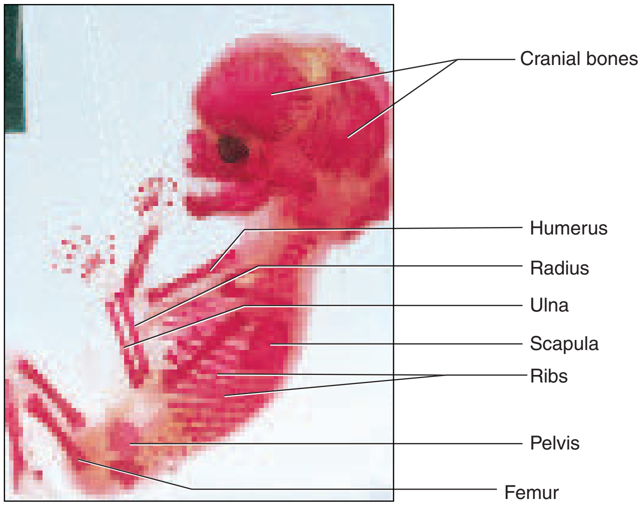


Figure 7.10 **The Fetal Skeleton at 12 Weeks.** The red-stained regions are calcified at this age, whereas the elbow, wrist, knee, and ankle joints appear translucent because they are still cartilaginous.
Why are the joints of an infant weaker than those of an older child?

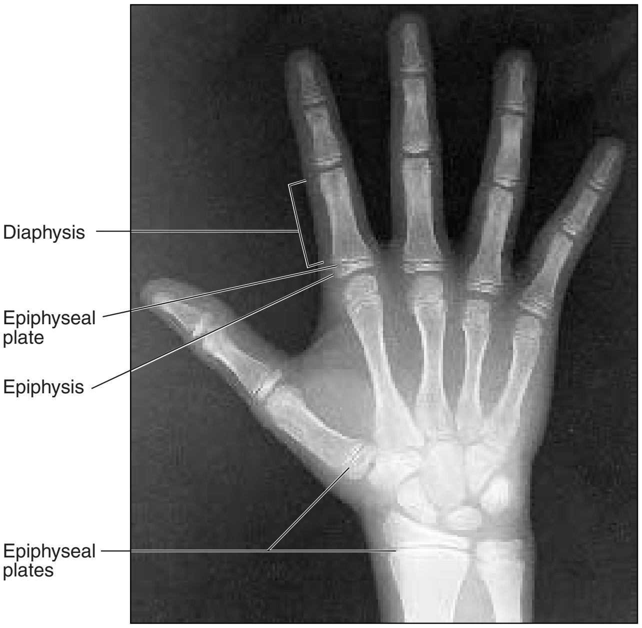


Figure 7.11 **X Ray of a Child's Hand.** The cartilaginous epiphyseal plates are evident at the ends of the long bones. These will disappear, and the epiphyses will fuse with the diaphyses, by adulthood.

skeletal remains can distinguish between members of different social classes by the degree of bone development—a reflection of the individual's nutritional status and history of manual labor. The skeleton also yields information about sex, race, height, weight, and medical history that can be useful to forensic pathology—study of the body to determine the identity of a person, cause and time of death, and so forth.

Cartilage grows by two mechanisms—**interstitial**[22] **growth** (adding more matrix internally) and **appositional**[23] **growth** (adding more to the surface). Interstitial growth in the epiphyseal plate adds to the length of a bone. A mature bone, however, grows only by the appositional mechanism. Osteocytes have little room as it is and none to spare for the deposition of more matrix. The only way an adult bone can grow, therefore, is by adding more osseous tissue to the surface.

Appositional growth is similar to intramembranous ossification. The osteogenic cells in the inner layer of periosteum differentiate into osteoblasts. These deposit osteoid tissue on the bone surface, calcify it, and become trapped in it as osteocytes. At the bone surface, matrix is laid down in layers parallel to the surface, not in cylindrical osteons like those deeper in the bone. While deposition occurs at the outer surface of a bone, osteoclasts dissolve bone on the inner surface and thus enlarge the marrow cavity as the bone grows. There is a critical balance between bone deposition and removal. If one process outpaces the other, or if both of them occur too rapidly, various bone deformities and other developmental abnormalities occur (see table 7.4, especially *osteitis deformans*).

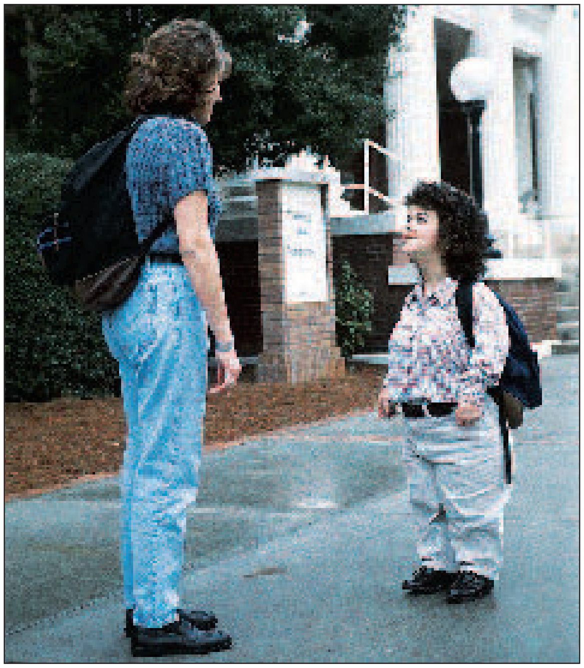


Figure 7.12 **Achondroplastic Dwarfism.** The student on the *right,* pictured with her roommate of normal height, is an achondroplastic dwarf with a height of about 122 cm (48 in.). Her parents were of normal height. Note the normal proportion of head to trunk but shortening of the limbs.

Insight 7.2 Clinical Application

Achondroplastic Dwarfism

Achondroplastic[24] (ah-con-dro-PLAS-tic) *dwarfism* is a condition in which the long bones of the limbs stop growing in childhood, while the growth of other bones is unaffected. As a result, a person has a short stature but a normal-sized head and trunk (fig. 7.12). As its name implies, achondroplastic dwarfism results from a failure of cartilage growth—specifically, failure of the chondrocytes in zones 2 and 3 of the metaphysis to multiply and enlarge. This is different from *pituitary dwarfism,* in which a deficiency of growth hormone stunts the growth of all of the bones and a person has short stature but normal proportions throughout the skeletal system.

Achondroplastic dwarfism results from a spontaneous mutation that can arise any time DNA is replicated. Two people of normal height with no family history of dwarfism can therefore have a child with achondroplastic dwarfism. The mutant allele is dominant, so the children of a heterozygous achondroplastic dwarf have at least a 50% chance of exhibiting dwarfism, depending on the genotype of the other parent.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

11. Describe the stages of intramembranous ossification. Name a bone that is formed in this way.
12. Describe the five zones of a metaphysis and the major distinctions between them.

Physiology of Osseous Tissue

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- explain how minerals are deposited in bone tissue and removed from it;
- discuss the role of the bones in regulating blood calcium and phosphate levels;

---

[22] *inter* = between + *stit* = to place, stand
[23] *ap* = *ad* = to, near + *posit* = to place
[24] *a* = without + *chondr* = cartilage + *plast* = growth

- describe how vitamin D is synthesized and how it affects the bones; and
- list other hormones that affect bone physiology and state their effects.

Even after a bone is fully formed, it remains a metabolically active organ with many roles to play. Not only is it involved in its own maintenance, growth, and remodeling, it also exerts a profound influence on the rest of the body by exchanging minerals with the tissue fluid. Disturbances of calcium homeostasis in the skeleton can disrupt the functioning of other organ systems, especially the nervous and muscular systems. For reasons explained later, such disturbances can even cause a person to die of suffocation. At this point, we turn our attention to the physiology of mature osseous tissue.

Mineral Deposition

Mineral deposition (mineralization) is a crystallization process in which calcium and phosphate ions, among others, are taken from the blood plasma and deposited in bone tissue. It begins in fetal ossification and continues throughout life. Osteoblasts first produce collagen fibers in a helical pattern along the length of the osteon. These fibers then become encrusted with minerals—especially calcium phosphate—that harden the matrix. Calcium phosphate crystals do not form unless the product of calcium and phosphate concentration in the tissue fluids, represented $[Ca^{2+}]\cdot[PO_4^{3-}]$, reaches a critical value called the **solubility product.** Most tissues have inhibitors to prevent this, so they do not become calcified. Osteoblasts, however, apparently neutralize these inhibitors and thus allow the salts to precipitate in the bone matrix. The first few hydroxyapatite crystals to form act as "seed crystals" that attract more calcium and phosphate from solution. The more hydroxyapatite that forms, the more it attracts additional minerals from the tissue fluid, until the matrix is thoroughly calcified. Crystallization is thus a positive feedback process.

Osseous tissue sometimes forms in the lungs, brain, eyes, muscles, tendons, arteries, and other organs. Such abnormal calcification of tissues is called **ectopic**[25] **ossification.** One example of this is arteriosclerosis, or "hardening of the arteries," which results from calcification of the arterial walls. A calcified mass in an otherwise soft organ such as the lungs is called a **calculus.**[26]

Mineral Resorption

Mineral resorption is the process of dissolving bone. It releases minerals into the blood and makes them available for other uses. Resorption is carried out by osteoclasts. Hydrogen pumps in the ruffled border of the osteoclast secrete hydrogen ions into the extracellular fluid, and chloride ions follow by electrical attraction. The space between the osteoclast and the bone thus becomes filled with concentrated hydrochloric acid with a pH of about 4. The acid dissolves the bone minerals. The osteoclast also secretes an enzyme called **acid phosphatase** that digests the collagen of the bone matrix. Acid phosphatase is named for its ability to function in this highly acidic environment.

When orthodontic appliances (braces) are used to reposition teeth, a tooth moves because osteoclasts dissolve bone ahead of the tooth (where the appliance creates greater pressure of the tooth against the bone) and osteoblasts deposit bone in the low-pressure zone behind it.

Calcium and Phosphate Homeostasis

Calcium and phosphate are used for much more than bone structure. Phosphate groups are a component of DNA, RNA, ATP, phospholipids, and many other compounds. Phosphate ions also help to correct acid-base imbalances in the body fluids (see insight 7.3). Calcium is needed for communication between neurons, muscle contraction, blood clotting, and exocytosis. It is also a second messenger in many cell signaling processes and a cofactor for some enzymes. The skeleton is a reservoir for these minerals. Minerals are deposited in the skeleton when the supply is ample and withdrawn when they are needed for other purposes.

Insight 7.3 Clinical Application

Osseous Tissue and pH Balance

The urinary, respiratory, and skeletal systems cooperate to maintain the body's acid-base balance. If the pH of the blood drops below 7.35, a state of acidosis exists and triggers corrective mechanisms in these three organ systems. The role of the skeleton is to release calcium phosphate. As a base, calcium phosphate helps to prevent the blood pH from dropping lower. Patients with chronic kidney disease may have impaired hydrogen ion excretion in the urine. Their pH stabilizes at a level below normal but is kept from dropping indefinitely by the buffering action of the skeleton. This can have adverse effects on the skeleton, however, and lead to rickets or osteomalacia. Treatment of the acidosis with intravenous bicarbonate restores the pH to normal and prevents damage to the bones.

The adult body contains about 1,100 g of calcium, with 99% of it in the bones. Bone has two calcium reserves—a stable pool of calcium, which is incorporated into hydroxyapatite and is not easily exchanged with the blood, and exchangeable calcium, which is 1% or less of the total but is easily released to the tissue fluid. The adult skeleton exchanges about 18% of its calcium with the blood each year.

---

[25] *ec* = out of + *top* = place
[26] *calc* = stone + *ulus* = little

The calcium concentration in the blood plasma is normally 9.2 to 10.4 mg/dL. This is a rather narrow margin of safety, as we shall soon see. About 45% of it is in the ionized form (Ca^{2+}), which can diffuse through capillary walls and affect neighboring cells. The rest of it is bound to plasma proteins and other solutes. It is not physiologically active, but it serves as a reserve from which free Ca^{2+} can be obtained as needed.

The average adult has 500 to 800 g of phosphorus, of which 85% to 90% is in the bones. The phosphorus concentration in the plasma ranges between 3.5 and 4.0 mg/dL. It occurs in two principal forms, HPO_4^{2-} and $H_2PO_4^-$ (monohydrogen and dihydrogen phosphate ions, respectively).

Changes in phosphate concentration have little immediate effect on the body, but changes in calcium can be serious. A deficiency of blood calcium is called **hypocalcemia**[27] (HY-po-cal-SEE-me-uh). It causes excessive excitability of the nervous system and leads to muscle tremors, spasms, or **tetany**—inability of the muscle to relax. Tetany begins to appear as the plasma Ca^{2+} concentration falls to 6 mg/dL. One of the signs of hypocalcemia is a tetany of the hands and feet called *carpopedal spasm* (fig. 7.13). At 4 mg/dL, muscles of the larynx contract tightly, a condition called *laryngospasm* that can shut off air flow and cause suffocation.

The reason for this hypocalcemic excitability is this: Calcium ions normally bind to negatively charged groups on the cell surface, contributing to the difference between the positively charged outer surface of the membrane and the negatively charged inner surface. In hypocalcemia, fewer of these calcium ions are present, so there is less charge difference between the two sides of the membrane. Sodium channels in the plasma membrane are sensitive to this charge difference, and when the difference is diminished, sodium channels open more easily and stay open longer. This allows sodium ions to enter the cell too freely. As you will see in chapters 11 and 12, an inflow of sodium is the normal process that excites nerve and muscle cells. In hypocalcemia, this excitation is excessive and results in the aforementioned tetany.

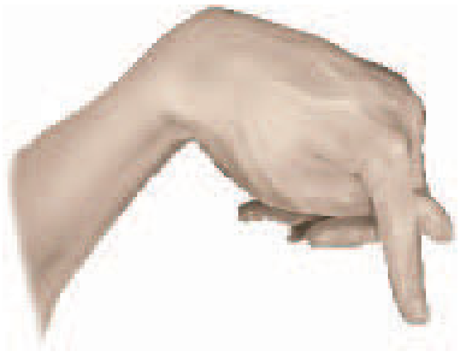


Figure 7.13 **Carpopedal Spasm.** Such muscle tetany occurring in the hands and feet can be a sign of hypocalcemia.

An excess of blood calcium is called **hypercalcemia.**[28] In hypercalcemia, excessive amounts of calcium bind to the cell surface, increasing the charge difference across the membrane and making sodium channels reluctant to open. Thus, nerve and muscle cells are not as excitable as they should be. At 12 mg/dL and higher, hypercalcemia causes depression of the nervous system, emotional disturbances, muscle weakness, sluggish reflexes, and sometimes cardiac arrest.

You can see how critical blood calcium level is, but what causes it to deviate from the norm, and how does the body correct such imbalances? Hypercalcemia is rare, but hypocalcemia can result from a wide variety of causes including vitamin D deficiency, diarrhea, thyroid tumors, or underactive parathyroid glands. Pregnancy and lactation put women at risk of hypocalcemia because of the calcium demanded by ossification of the fetal skeleton and synthesis of milk. The leading cause of hypocalcemic tetany is accidental removal of the parathyroid glands during thyroid surgery. Without hormone replacement therapy, the lack of parathyroid glands can lead to fatal tetany within 4 days.

Calcium phosphate homeostasis depends on a balance between dietary intake, urinary and fecal losses, and exchanges with the osseous tissue. It is regulated by three hormones: *calcitriol, calcitonin,* and *parathyroid hormone.* (fig. 7.14)

Calcitriol

Calcitriol (CAL-sih-TRY-ol) is a form of vitamin D produced by the sequential action of the skin, liver, and kidneys (fig. 7. 15):

1. Epidermal keratinocytes use ultraviolet radiation from sunlight to convert a steroid, 7-dehydrocholesterol, to previtamin D_3. Over another 3 days, the warmth of sunlight on the skin further converts this to vitamin D_3, and a transport protein carries this to the bloodstream.
2. The liver adds a hydroxyl group to the molecule, converting it to *calcidiol* [25(OH)D].
3. The kidney then adds another hydroxyl group, converting calcidiol to calcitriol [1, $25(OH)_2D$], the most active form of vitamin D.

Calcitriol behaves as a hormone—a blood-borne chemical messenger from one organ to another. It is called a vitamin

---

[27] *hypo* = below normal + *calc* = calcium + *emia* = blood condition

[28] *hyper* = above normal + *calc* = calcium + *emia* = blood condition

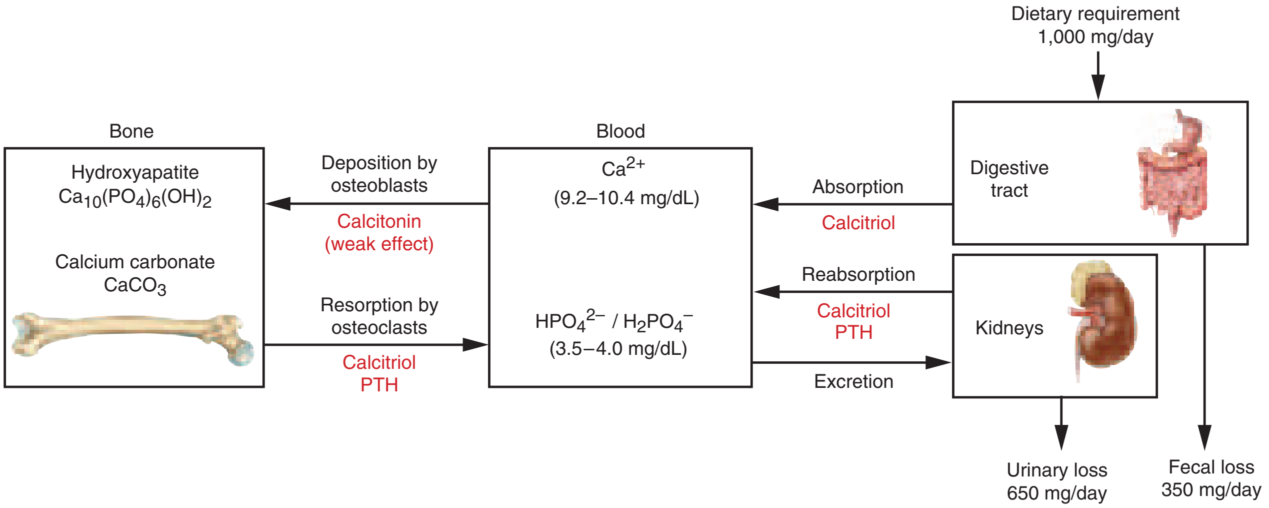


Figure 7.14 **Hormonal Control of Calcium Balance.** Calcitriol, parathyroid hormone (PTH), and to some extent calcitonin maintain the blood calcium concentration at 9.2 to 10.4 mg/dL. Calcitriol and PTH promote absorption of dietary calcium, reabsorption of calcium by the kidneys, and resorption of calcium from bone. Calcitonin weakly promotes deposition of calcium in bone. These hormones also have certain inhibitory effects on calcium metabolism and effects on phosphate balance (not illustrated).

only because it is added to the diet, mainly in fortified milk, as a safeguard for people who do not get enough sunlight to initiate its synthesis in the skin.

The principal function of calcitriol is to raise the blood calcium concentration. It does this by three mechanisms:

1. Increasing calcium absorption by the small intestine. (It increases the absorption of phosphate and magnesium ions as well.)
2. Increasing calcium (and phosphate) resorption from the skeleton. Calcitriol binds to osteoblasts, which release another chemical messenger, *osteoclast-stimulating factor.* This messenger stimulates precursor cells to fuse and form osteoclasts. These new osteoclasts then liberate calcium and phosphate ions from bone.
3. Weakly promoting the reabsorption of calcium ions by the kidneys, so less calcium is lost in the urine.

Although calcitriol promotes bone resorption, it is also necessary for bone deposition. Without it, calcium and phosphate levels in the blood are too low for normal bone deposition. The result is a softness of the bones called **rickets** in children and **osteomalacia**[29] in adults.

Calcitonin

Calcitonin is secreted by *C cells* (*C* for "calcitonin") of the thyroid gland, a large endocrine gland in the neck (see fig. 17.8). It is secreted when the blood calcium concentration rises too high, and it lowers the concentration by two principal mechanisms (fig. 7.16*a*):

1. **Osteoclast inhibition.** Within 15 minutes after it is secreted, calcitonin reduces osteoclast activity by as much as 70%, so osteoclasts liberate less calcium from the skeleton.
2. **Osteoblast stimulation.** Within an hour, calcitonin increases the number and activity of osteoblasts, which deposit calcium into the skeleton.

Calcitonin plays an important role in children but has little effect in most adults. The osteoclasts of children are highly active in skeletal remodeling and release 5 g or more of calcium into the blood each day. By inhibiting this activity, calcitonin can significantly lower the blood calcium level in children. In adults, however, the osteoclasts release only about 0.8 g of calcium per day. Calcitonin cannot change adult blood calcium very much by suppressing this minor contribution. Calcitonin deficiency is not known to cause any adult disease. Calcitonin may, however, prevent bone loss in pregnant and lactating women, and it is useful for reducing bone loss in osteoporosis (see insight 7.4 at the end of the chapter).

Parathyroid Hormone

Parathyroid hormone (PTH) is secreted by the parathyroid glands, which adhere to the posterior surface of the thyroid gland (see fig. 17.9). These glands release PTH when the blood calcium is too low. A mere 1% drop in the blood calcium level doubles the secretion of PTH.

---

[29] *osteo* = bone + *malacia* = softening

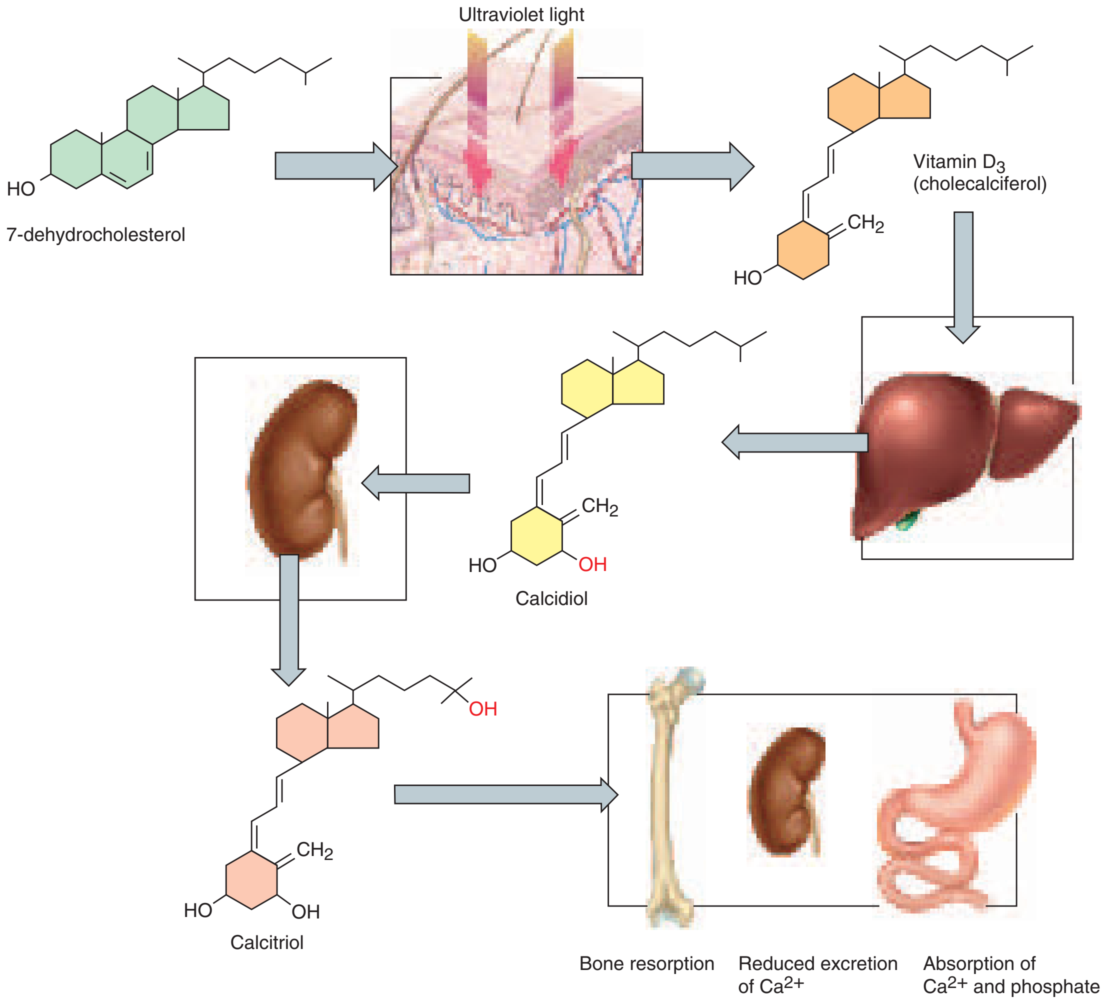

Ultraviolet light
HO
7-dehydrocholesterol
CH2
HO
Vitamin D3 (cholecalciferol)
CH2
HO
OH
Calcidiol
OH
CH2
HO
OH
Calcitriol
Bone resorption
Reduced excretion of Ca2+
Absorption of Ca2+ and phosphate

Figure 7.15 **Calcitriol Synthesis and Action.** Starting at the *upper left,* ultraviolet rays stimulate epidermal keratinocytes to convert 7-dehydrocholesterol into vitamin D_3. The liver adds an —OH group to vitamin D_3, which converts it to calcidiol; the kidney adds another, which converts this to calcitriol, the most potent form of vitamin D. Calcitriol acts on the bones, kidneys, and small intestine to raise blood calcium and phosphate levels and promote bone deposition.

PTH raises the blood calcium level by four mechanisms (fig. 7.16*b*):

1. PTH binds to receptors on the osteoblasts, stimulates them to secrete osteoclast-stimulating factor, and this in turn raises the osteoclast population and promotes bone resorption.
2. PTH promotes calcium reabsorption by the kidneys.
3. PTH promotes the final step of calcitriol synthesis in the kidneys, thus enhancing the calcium-raising effect of calcitriol.
4. PTH inhibits collagen synthesis by osteoblasts, thus inhibiting bone deposition.

Notwithstanding these normal effects of PTH, the intermittent secretion (or injection) of PTH at low levels can cause bone deposition. PTH can therefore increase or decrease bone mass, depending on other factors such as exercise, stress on the bones, calcium and phosphate availability, and the action of vitamin D and other hormones.

Think About It

While raising blood calcium levels, PTH lowers blood phosphate levels by promoting urinary excretion of phosphate. Explain why this is important for achieving the purpose of PTH.

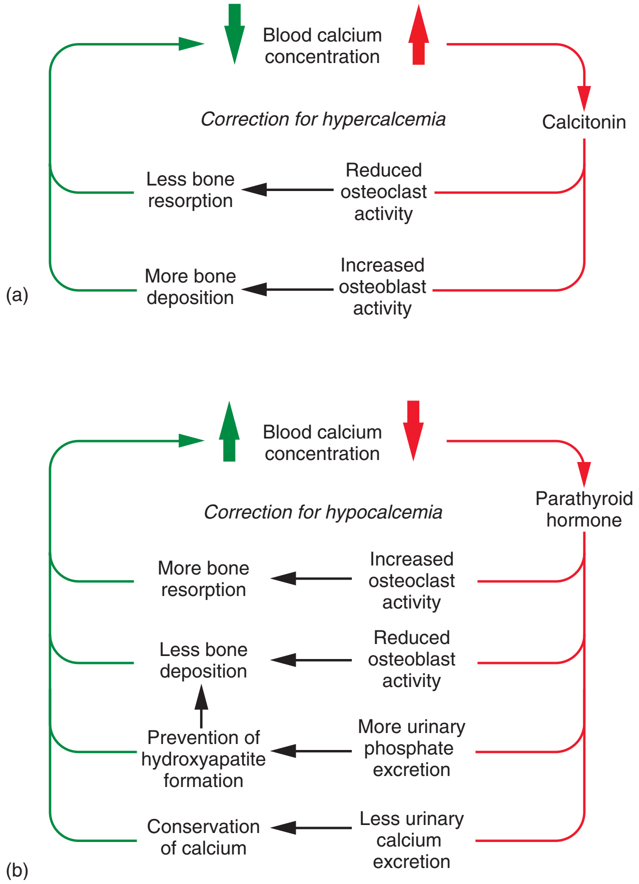

Blood calcium concentration
Correction for hypercalcemia
Calcitonin
Less bone resorption
Reduced osteoclast activity
More bone deposition
Increased osteoblast activity
(a)
Blood calcium concentration
Correction for hypocalcemia
Parathyroid hormone
More bone resorption
Increased osteoclast activity
Less bone deposition
Reduced osteoblast activity
Prevention of hydroxyapatite formation
More urinary phosphate excretion
Conservation of calcium
Less urinary calcium excretion
(b)

Figure 7.16 **Negative Feedback Loops in Calcium Homeostasis.** (*a*) The correction of hypercalcemia by calcitonin. (*b*) The correction of hypocalcemia by parathyroid hormone.

Other Factors Affecting Bone

At least 20 more hormones, growth factors, and vitamins affect osseous tissue in complex ways that are still not well understood (table 7.2). Bone growth is especially rapid in puberty and adolescence, when surges of growth hormone, estrogen, and testosterone promote ossification. These hormones stimulate rapid multiplication of osteogenic cells, matrix deposition by osteoblasts, and multiplication and hypertrophy of the chondrocytes in the metaphyses. Adolescent girls grow faster than boys and attain their full height earlier, not only because they begin puberty earlier but also because estrogen has a stronger effect than testosterone. Since males grow for a longer time, however, they usually grow taller. Growth ceases when the cartilage of the epiphyseal plates is depleted. At this time, the epiphyseal plates are said to "close," the epiphysis and diaphysis of the bone fuse, and the bones can no longer increase in length. Excessive or deficient secretion of these steroids can therefore cause abnormalities ranging from stunted growth to very tall stature (see chapter 17). The use of anabolic steroids by adolescent athletes can cause premature closure of the epiphyseal plates and result in abnormally short adult stature (see p. 87).

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

13. Describe the role of collagen and seed crystals in bone mineralization.
14. Why is it important to regulate blood calcium concentration within such a narrow range?
15. What effect does calcitonin have on blood calcium concentration, and how does it produce this effect? Answer the same questions for parathyroid hormone.
16. How is vitamin D synthesized, and what effect does it have on blood calcium concentration?

Bone Disorders

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- name and describe several bone diseases;
- name and describe the types of fractures;
- explain how a fracture is repaired; and
- discuss some clinical treatments for fractures and other skeletal disorders.

Most people probably give little thought to their skeletal system unless they break a bone. This section will describe bone fractures, their healing, and their treatment, followed by a summary of other bone diseases and a clinical insight on osteoporosis.

Fractures and Their Repair

There are multiple ways of classifying bone fractures. A **stress fracture** is a break caused by abnormal trauma to a bone, such as fractures incurred in falls, athletics, and military combat. A **pathologic fracture** is a break in a bone weakened by some other disease, such as bone cancer or osteoporosis, usually caused by a stress that would not normally fracture a bone. Fractures are also classified according to the direction of the fracture line, whether or not the skin is broken, and whether a bone is merely cracked or broken into separate pieces (table 7.3; fig. 7.17).

The Healing of Fractures

An uncomplicated fracture heals in about 8 to 12 weeks, but complex fractures take longer and all fractures heal

Table 7.2 Agents Affecting Calcium and Bone Metabolism

Name	Effect
Hormones	
Calcitonin	Little effect in adults; promotes mineralization and lowers blood Ca^{2+} concentration in children; may prevent bone loss in pregnant and lactating women
Calcitriol (vitamin D)	Promotes intestinal absorption of Ca^{2+} and phosphate; reduces urinary excretion of both; promotes both resorption and mineralization; stimulates osteoclast activity
Cortisol	Inhibits osteoclast activity, but if secreted in excess (Cushing disease) can cause osteoporosis by reducing bone deposition (inhibiting cell division and protein synthesis)
Estrogen	Stimulates osteoblasts and prevents osteoporosis
Growth hormone	Stimulates bone elongation and cartilage proliferation at epiphyseal plate; increases urinary excretion of Ca^{2+} but also increases intestinal Ca^{2+} absorption, which compensates for the loss
Insulin	Stimulates bone formation; significant bone loss occurs in untreated diabetes mellitus
Parathyroid hormone	Indirectly activates osteoclasts, which resorb bone and raise blood Ca^{2+} concentration; inhibits urinary Ca^{2+} excretion; promotes calcitriol synthesis
Testosterone	Stimulates osteoblasts and promotes protein synthesis, thus promoting epiphyseal growth and closure
Thyroid hormone	Essential to bone growth; enhances effects of growth hormone, but excesses can cause hypercalcemia, increased Ca^{2+} excretion in urine, and osteoporosis
Growth Factors	At least 12 hormonelike substances produced in bone itself that stimulate neighboring bone cells, promote collagen synthesis, stimulate epiphyseal growth, and produce many other effects
Vitamins	
Vitamin A	Promotes glycosaminoglycan (chondroitin sulfate) synthesis
Vitamin C (ascorbic acid)	Promotes collagen cross-linking, bone growth, and fracture repair
Vitamin D	Normally functions as a hormone (see calcitriol)

more slowly in older people. The healing process occurs in the following stages (fig. 7.18):

1. **Hematoma formation.** A bone fracture also breaks blood vessels of the bone and periosteum, causing bleeding and the formation of a clot *(fracture hematoma).*
2. **Formation of granulation tissue. Granulation tissue** is a soft, fibrous tissue produced as a hematoma is infiltrated by blood capillaries and fibroblasts. Macrophages, osteoclasts, and osteogenic cells also invade the tissue from the periosteal and medullary sides of the fracture. Osteogenic cells build up in numbers within 48 hours of the injury.
3. **Callus[30] formation.** Fibroblasts deposit collagen in the granulation tissue, while some osteogenic cells become chondroblasts and produce patches of fibrocartilage called **soft callus** tissue. Osteogenic cells also differentiate into osteoblasts that produce a bony collar, the **hard callus,** which they cement to the dead bone around the injury. This collar acts as a temporary splint to join the broken ends or fragments of the bone to each other. It takes about 4 to 6 weeks for a hard callus to form. During this period, it is important that a broken bone be immobilized by traction or a cast to prevent reinjury.
4. **Remodeling.** The hard callus persists for 3 to 4 months as osteoclasts dissolve small fragments of broken bone and osteoblasts bridge the gap between the broken ends with spongy bone. This spongy bone is subsequently remodeled into compact bone. Usually the fracture leaves a slight thickening of the bone visible by X ray, but in some cases healing is so complete that no trace of the fracture can be found.

The Treatment of Fractures

Most fractures are set by **closed reduction,** a procedure in which the bone fragments are manipulated into their normal positions without surgery. **Open reduction** involves the surgical exposure of the bone and the use of plates,

---

[30] *call* = hard, tough

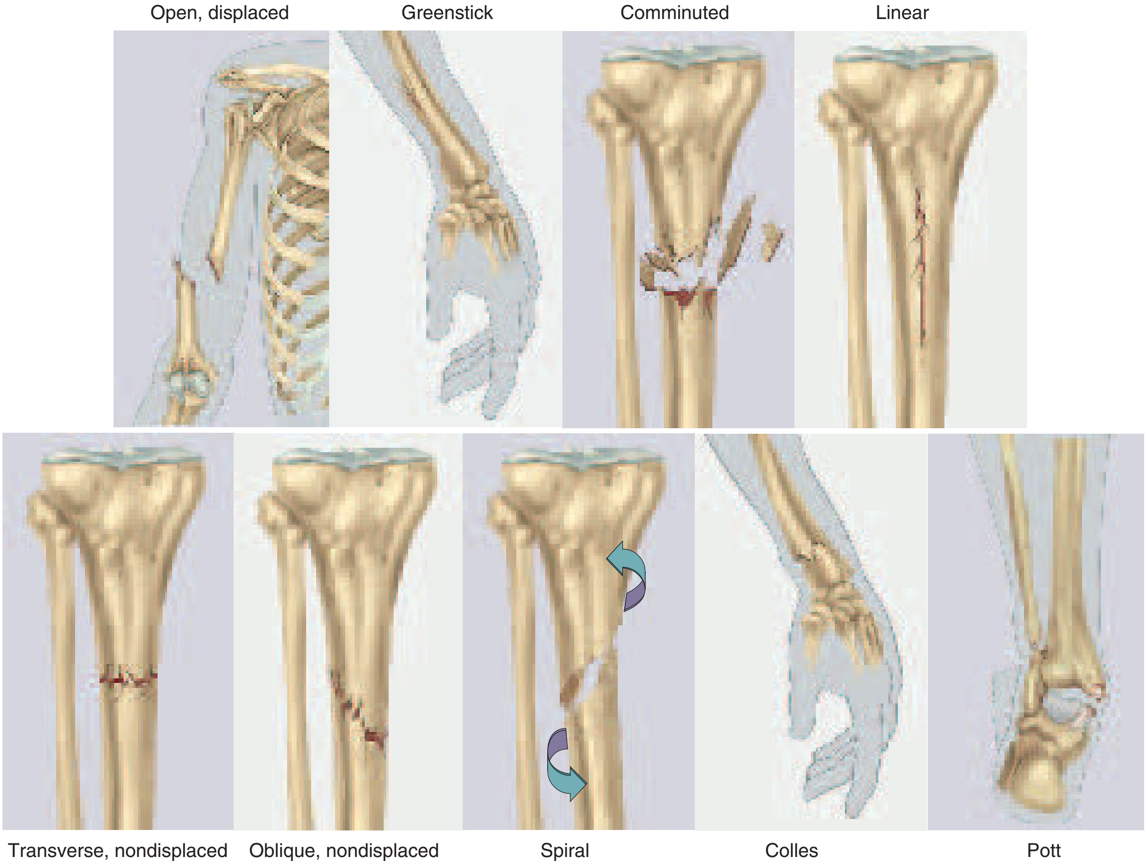

Open, displaced
Greenstick
Comminuted
Linear
Transverse, nondisplaced
Oblique, nondisplaced
Spiral
Colles
Pott

Figure 7.17 **Some Types of Bone Fractures.**

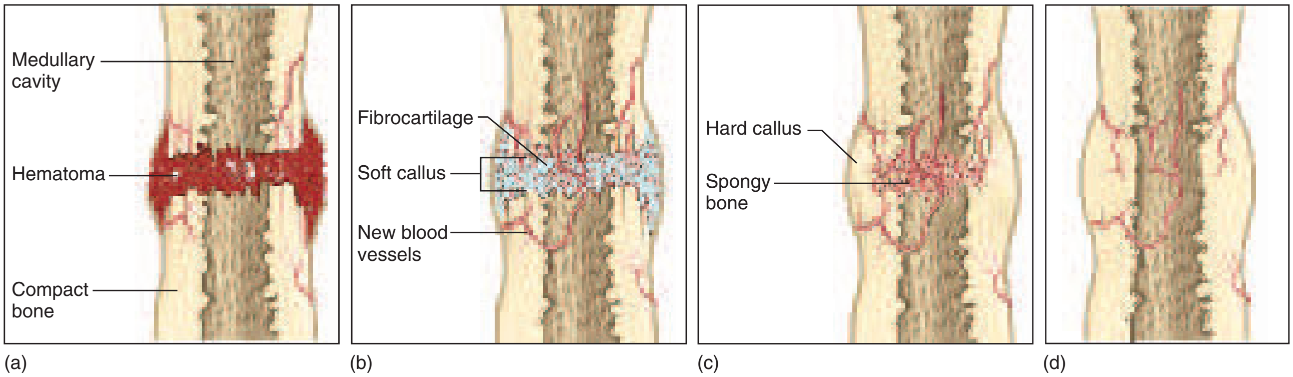

Medullary cavity
Hematoma
Compact bone
(a)
Fibrocartilage
Soft callus
New blood vessels
(b)
Hard callus
Spongy bone
(c)
(d)

Figure 7.18 **The Healing of a Bone Fracture.** (*a*) Blood vessels are broken at the fracture line; blood clots and forms a fracture hematoma. (*b*) Blood vessels grow into the clot and a soft callus of fibrocartilage forms. (*c*) Mineral deposition hardens the soft callus and converts it to a hard callus of spongy bone. (*d*) Osteoclasts remove excess tissue from the hard callus and the bone eventually resembles its original appearance.

Table 7.3 Classification of Fractures

Type	Description
Closed	Skin is not broken (formerly called a *simple* fracture)
Open	Skin is broken; bone protrudes through skin or wound extends to fractured bone (formerly called a *compound* fracture)
Complete	Bone is broken into two or more pieces
Incomplete	Partial fracture that extends only partway across bone; pieces remain joined
Greenstick	Bone is bent on one side and has incomplete fracture on opposite side
Hairline	Fine crack in which sections of bone remain aligned; common in skull
Comminuted	Bone is broken into three or more pieces
Displaced	The portions of a fractured bone are out of anatomical alignment
Nondisplaced	The portions of bone are still in correct anatomical alignment
Impacted	One bone fragment is driven into the medullary space or spongy bone of the other
Depressed	Broken portion of bone forms a concavity, as in skull fractures
Linear	Fracture parallel to long axis of bone
Transverse	Fracture perpendicular to long axis of bone
Oblique	Diagonal fracture, between linear and transverse
Spiral	Fracture spirals around axis of long bone, the result of a twisting stress, often produced when an abusive adult roughly picks up a child by the arm
Epiphyseal	Epiphysis is separated from the diaphysis along the epiphyseal plate; seen in juveniles
Avulsion	Body part (such as a finger) is completely severed
Colles[31]	Fracture of the distal end of the radius and ulna; common in osteoporosis
Pott[32]	Fracture at the distal end of the tibia, fibula, or both; a common sports injury

[31] Abraham Colles (1773–1843), Irish surgeon
[32] Sir Percivall Pott (1713–88), British surgeon

screws, or pins to realign the fragments (fig. 7.19*b*). To stabilize the bone during healing, fractures are set in casts. Traction is used to treat fractures of the femur in children. It aids in the alignment of the bone fragments by overriding the force of the strong thigh muscles. Traction is rarely used for elderly patients, however, because the risks from long-term confinement to bed outweigh the benefits. Hip fractures are usually pinned and early ambulation (walking) is encouraged because it promotes blood circulation and healing. Fractures that take longer than 2 months to heal may be treated with electrical stimulation, which accelerates repair by suppressing the effects of parathyroid hormone.

Orthopedics[33] is the branch of medicine that deals with the prevention and correction of injuries and disorders of the bones, joints, and muscles. As the word suggests, this field originated as the treatment of skeletal deformities in children, but it is now much more extensive. It includes the design of artificial joints and limbs and the treatment of athletic injuries.

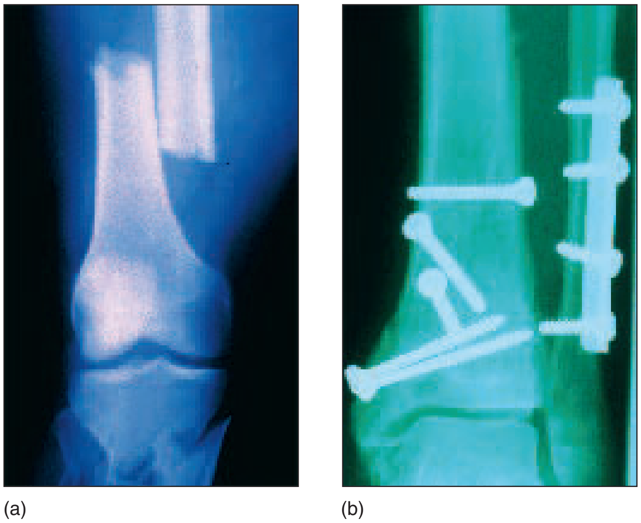


Figure 7.19 **X Rays of Bone Fractures.** (*a*) A displaced fracture of the femur. (*b*) An ankle fracture involving both the tibia and fibula. This fracture has been set by open reduction, a process of surgically exposing the bone and realigning the fragments with plates and screws.

---

[33] *ortho* = straight + *ped* = child, foot

Table 7.4 Bone Diseases

Rickets	Defective mineralization of bone in children, usually as a result of insufficient sunlight or vitamin D, sometimes due to a dietary deficiency of calcium or phosphate or to liver or kidney diseases that interfere with calcitriol synthesis. Causes bone softening and deformity, especially in the weight-bearing bones of the lower limbs.
Osteomalacia	Adult form of rickets, most common in poorly nourished women who have had multiple pregnancies. Bones become softened, deformed, and more susceptible to fractures.
Osteoporosis	Loss of bone mass, especially spongy bone, usually as a result of lack of exercise or a deficiency of estrogen after menopause. It results in increasing brittleness and susceptibility to fractures (see insight 7.4 for details).
Osteitis deformans (Paget[35] disease)	Excessive proliferation of osteoclasts and resorption of excess bone, with osteoblasts attempting to compensate by depositing extra bone. This results in rapid, disorderly bone remodeling and weak, deformed bones. Osteitis deformans usually passes unnoticed, but in some cases it causes pain, disfiguration, and fractures. It is most common in males over the age of 50.
Osteomyelitis[36]	Inflammation of osseous tissue and bone marrow as a result of bacterial infection. This disease was often fatal before the discovery of antibiotics and is still very difficult to treat.
Osteogenesis imperfecta	A defect in collagen deposition that renders bones exceptionally brittle, resulting in fractures present at birth or occurring with extraordinary frequency during childhood; also causing tooth deformity and hearing loss due to deformity of middle-ear bones.
Osteoma[37]	A benign bone tumor, especially in the flat bones of the skull; may grow into the orbits or sinuses.
Osteochondroma[38]	A benign tumor of bone and cartilage; often forms bone spurs at the ends of long bones.
Osteosarcoma[39] (osteogenic sarcoma)	The most common and deadly form of bone cancer. It occurs most often in the tibia, femur, and humerus of males between the ages of 10 and 25. In 10% of cases, it metastasizes to the lungs or other organs; if untreated, death occurs within 1 year.
Chondrosarcoma	A slow-growing cancer of hyaline cartilage, most common in middle age. It requires surgical removal; chemotherapy is ineffective.

Disorders described elsewhere

Achondroplastic dwarfism 229
Cleft palate 258
Ectopic ossification 230
Fallen arches 284
Fractured clavicle 273
Fractured skull 257
Fractures 234
Herniated disc 265
Joint diseases 320
Kyphosis 263
Lordosis 263
Mastoiditis 254
Osteoporosis 239
Scoliosis 263

[35] Sir James Paget (1814–99), English surgeon
[36] *osteo* = bone + *myel* = marrow + *itis* = inflammation
[37] *oste* = bone + *oma* = tumor
[38] *osteo* = bone + *chondr* = cartilage + *oma* = tumor
[39] *osteo* = bone + *sarc* = flesh + *oma* = tumor

Other Bone Disorders

Several additional bone disorders are summarized in table 7.4. The most common bone disease, **osteoporosis,**[34] receives special consideration in insight 7.4. The effects of aging on the skeletal system are described on page 1109.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

17. Name and describe any five types of bone fractures.
18. Why would osteomyelitis be more likely to occur in an open fracture than in a closed fracture?
19. What is a callus? How does it contribute to fracture repair?

---

[34] *osteo* = bone + *por* = porous + *osis* = condition

Insight 7.4 Clinical Application

Osteoporosis

The most common bone disease is osteoporosis (OSS-tee-oh-pore-OH-sis), literally, "porous bones." This is a disease in which the bones lose mass and become increasingly brittle and subject to fractures. It involves loss of both organic matrix and minerals, and it affects spongy bone in particular, since this is the most metabolically active type (fig. 7.20). The highest incidence of osteoporosis is among elderly white women, where it is closely linked to age and menopause. Osteoporosis also affects men (white males somewhat more than black), although less severely than it does women. It rarely affects black women.

Fractures are the most serious consequence of osteoporosis. They occur especially in the hip, wrist, and vertebral column and under stresses as slight as sitting down too quickly. Hip fractures usually occur at the neck of the femur, while wrist fractures occur at the distal end of the radius and ulna (Colles fracture). Among the elderly, hip fractures lead to fatal complications such as pneumonia in 12% to 20% of cases; they involve a long, costly recovery for half of those who survive. As the weight-bearing bodies of the vertebrae lose spongy bone, they become compressed like marshmallows. Consequently, many people lose height after middle age, and in some women, the spine becomes deformed into a "widow's hump," or *kyphosis* (fig. 7.21).

Postmenopausal white women are at greatest risk for osteoporosis because women have less bone mass than men to begin with, begin losing it earlier (starting around age 35), and lose it faster than men do. By age 70, the average white woman has lost 30% of her bone mass, and some have lost as much as 50%. Young black women develop more bone mass than whites. Although they, too, lose bone mass after menopause, the loss usually does not reach the threshold for osteoporosis and pathologic fractures. In men, bone loss begins around age 60 and seldom exceeds 25%.

Estrogen stimulates osteoblasts and bone deposition, but the ovaries stop producing estrogen after menopause. Ironically, osteoporosis also occurs among young female runners and dancers in spite of their vigorous exercise. Their percentage of body fat is so low that they stop ovulating and the ovaries secrete unusually low levels of estrogen.

Treatments for osteoporosis are aimed at slowing the net rate of bone resorption. These include estrogen replacement, drugs to enhance estrogen sensitivity, and drugs that inhibit osteoclasts. Therapies to stimulate bone deposition, such as calcitonin nasal spray and small intermittent doses of parathyroid hormone, are still under investigation. Milk and other calcium sources and moderate exercise can also slow the progress of osteoporosis, but only slightly.

As is so often true, an ounce of prevention is worth a pound of cure. The time to minimize the risk for osteoporosis is between the ages of 25 and 40, when the skeleton is building to its maximum mass. The more bone mass a person has going into middle age, the less he or she will be affected by osteoporosis later. Ample exercise and calcium intake (850–1,000 mg/day) are the best preventive measures.

Although osteoporosis has become a major public health problem because of the increasing age of the population, it is not limited to the elderly. *Disuse osteoporosis* can occur at any age as a result of immobilization or inadequate weight-bearing exercise. In the absence of preventive exercise, astronauts on prolonged microgravity missions have experienced disuse osteoporosis. Other risk factors include smoking, low calcium and protein intake, vitamin C deficiency, and diabetes mellitus.

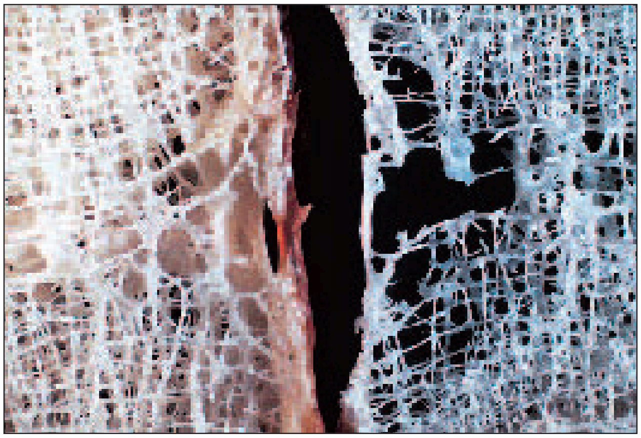


Figure 7.20 **Osteoporosis.** The *left* side of the photo is a section through a healthy lumbar vertebra. The *right* side shows a lumbar vertebra in which much of the spongy bone has been lost to osteoporosis.

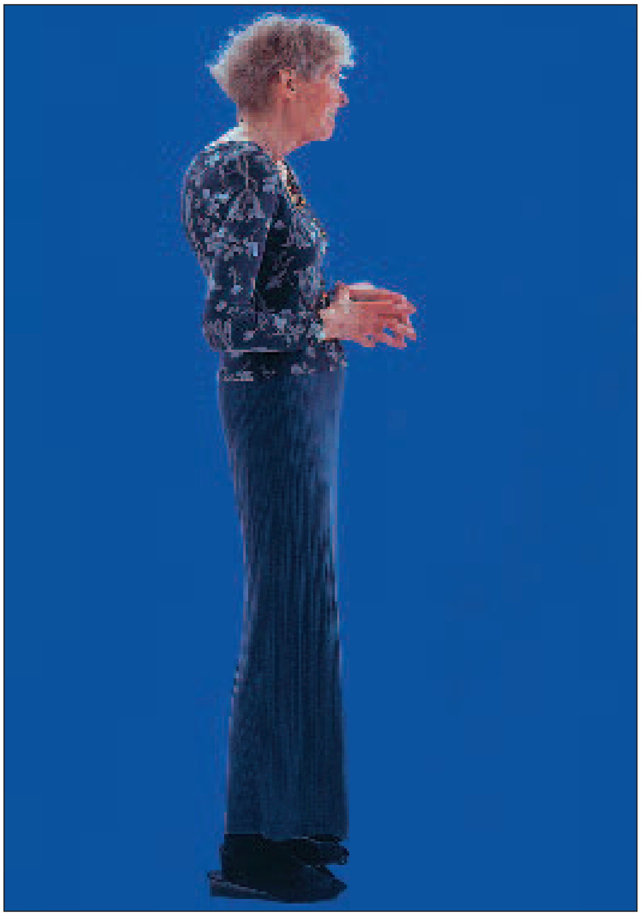


Figure 7.21 **Woman with Osteoporosis.** Note the abnormal curvature (kyphosis) of the upper thoracic spine. This results from compression fractures of the weakened vertebrae.

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

Tissues and Organs of the Skeletal System (p. 218)

1. *Osteology* is the study of bone. The *skeletal system* consists of bones, cartilages, and ligaments.
2. The functions of the skeletal system include bodily support, protection of internal organs, movement, blood formation, electrolyte and acid-base balance, and detoxification.
3. *Bone (osseous tissue)* is a connective tissue with a mineralized matrix.
4. Bones are classified by shape as long, short, flat, and irregular bones.
5. A long bone is a cylinder of *compact bone* enclosing more porous *spongy bone* and a central *medullary cavity.*
6. The shaft of a long bone is the *diaphysis* and each expanded end is an *epiphysis.* The epiphysis is covered with *articular cartilage* where it meets an adjacent bone. An *epiphyseal plate* separates the medullary cavities of the diaphysis and epiphysis in children and adolescents.
7. A bone is externally covered with a fibrous *periosteum* and internally lined with a thin *endosteum.*

Histology of Osseous Tissue (p. 221)

1. Osseous tissue has four types of cells: stem cells called *osteogenic cells,* matrix-depositing cells called *osteoblasts,* strain detectors called *osteocytes* enclosed in lacunae of the matrix, and matrix-dissolving cells called *osteoclasts.*
2. The bone matrix is a composite of collagen fibers and other protein-carbohydrate complexes embedded in a ground substance of *hydroxyapatite,* calcium carbonate, and other minerals. The minerals enable bones to resist compression and support weight, and the proteins enable bones to bend slightly without breaking.
3. *Compact bone* consists mostly of *osteons.* An osteon is a cylindrical group of concentric *lamellae* of matrix surrounding a *central canal* occupied by a nerve and blood vessels. *Interstitial lamellae,* the remains of old osteons, occupy some of the spaces between osteons, and *circumferential lamellae* parallel to the bone surface form the inner and outer boundaries of compact bone. Blood vessels reach the central canals by way of *perforating canals* that open on the bone surface.
4. *Spongy bone* is a porous lattice of bony *trabeculae* with lamellae but few osteons. The trabeculae are oriented along lines of stress, giving spongy bone strength without excessive weight.
5. The medullary cavity and the spaces between spongy bone trabeculae are occupied by bone marrow. *Red bone marrow* is *hemopoietic* (blood-forming) tissue; *yellow bone marrow* is adipose tissue; and *gelatinous bone marrow* is a reddish jelly found in older people.

Bone Development (p. 225)

1. *Intramembranous ossification* is a process in which flat bones develop from sheets of embryonic mesenchyme. Osteoblasts deposit an organic matrix that transforms the mesenchyme into a soft collagenous *osteoid tissue.*
2. Osteoblasts then deposit calcium salts that harden the osteoid tissue and transform it to spongy bone. The surface zones of this spongy bone are gradually filled in with calcified matrix to become compact bone.
3. *Endochondral ossification* is a process in which bones develop from hyaline cartilage. Most of the fetal skeleton forms in this manner.
4. Endochondral ossification begins with enlargement of the lacunae and death of chondrocytes in the *primary ossification center,* which is soon hollowed out to form a *primary marrow space.* Osteoblasts populate this space and create a temporary scaffold of spongy bone.
5. Between the epiphysis and the primary marrow space is a *metaphysis,* which exhibits five zones of histological transformation from cartilage to bone.
6. *Secondary ossification centers* appear later in the epiphyses of a long bone. The cartilaginous epiphyseal plate persists through adolescence as a growth zone for the long bone.
7. Mature bones continue to be remodeled throughout life, employing *appositional growth* to enlarge and reshape bone surfaces in response to stress.

Physiology of Osseous Tissue (p. 229)

1. The addition of inorganic salts to osseous tissue is called *mineral deposition.* Osteoblasts produce collagen fibers on which hydroxyapatite and other minerals crystallize. Mineralization requires a critical ratio of calcium to inorganic phosphate called the *solubility product.*
2. The removal of salts from osseous tissue is called *mineral resorption.* Osteoclasts resorb bone by secreting hydrochloric acid, which dissolves the inorganic salts of the matrix, and acid phosphatase, an enzyme that digests the organic matrix.
3. The skeleton is the body's major reservoir of calcium, which is also needed for many other physiological processes. The Ca^{2+} concentration of the blood plasma is maintained within narrow limits by resorbing Ca^{2+} from the skeleton or depositing excess Ca^{2+} into it.
4. *Hypocalcemia,* a Ca^{2+} deficiency, can cause potentially fatal muscle tetany, while *hypercalcemia,* a Ca^{2+} excess, can depress neuromuscular function. These imbalances are normally prevented by the actions of calcitriol, calcitonin, and parathyroid hormone.
5. *Calcitriol* is a form of vitamin D synthesized by the sequential action of the skin, liver, and kidneys. It raises blood Ca^{2+} concentration by promoting absorption of Ca^{2+} by the small intestine, conservation of Ca^{2+}

by the kidneys, and resorption of Ca^{2+} from bone by osteoclasts.

6. *Calcitonin* is secreted by the thyroid gland in response to hypercalcemia. It lowers blood Ca^{2+} by inhibiting osteoclasts and stimulating the depositional activity of osteoblasts.
7. *Parathyroid hormone* is secreted by the parathyroid glands in response to hypocalcemia. It raises blood Ca^{2+} by indirectly stimulating osteoclasts, inhibiting osteoblasts, promoting calcitriol synthesis, and promoting Ca^{2+} conservation by the kidneys.
8. Many other hormones, growth factors, and vitamins influence bone physiology, such as growth hormone, testosterone, thyroid hormone, estrogen, insulin, and vitamins A and C.

Bone Disorders (p. 234)

1. The repair of a fractured bone begins when fibroblasts, osteogenic cells, and other cells invade the blood clot (fracture hematoma) and transform it into *granulation tissue.* Collagen and cartilage deposition convert this to a *soft callus,* which is then mineralized to form a *hard callus.* The hard callus is remodeled by osteoclasts and osteoblasts over several months.
2. *Closed reduction* is the realignment of the parts of a broken bone without surgery. *Open reduction* involves surgery and fragment realignment with the aid of plates and screws.
3. The most common bone disease is *osteoporosis,* a loss of bone mass resulting in brittleness and abnormal vulnerability to fractures. It is most common in postmenopausal white women. The risk of osteoporosis can be minimized with diet (adequate calcium intake) and exercise.

Selected Vocabulary

osseous tissue	218
calcification	218
compact bone	219
spongy bone	219
diaphysis	219
epiphysis	219
articular cartilage	220
osteoblast	221
osteocyte	221
osteoclast	221
hydroxyapatite	221
ossification	225
deposition	230
resorption	230
calcitriol	231
calcitonin	232
parathyroid hormone	232
osteoporosis	238

Testing Your Recall

1. Which cells have a ruffled border and secrete hydrochloric acid?
   a. C cells
   b. osteocytes
   c. osteogenic cells
   d. osteoblasts
   e. osteoclasts

2. The medullary cavity of an adult bone may contain
   a. myeloid tissue.
   b. hyaline cartilage.
   c. periosteum.
   d. osteocytes.
   e. articular cartilages.

3. The spurt of growth in puberty results from cell proliferation and hypertrophy in
   a. the epiphysis.
   b. the epiphyseal line.
   c. the dense bone.
   d. the epiphyseal plate.
   e. the spongy bone.

4. Osteoclasts are most closely related, by common descent, to
   a. osteoprogenitor cells.
   b. osteogenic cells.
   c. monocytes.
   d. fibroblasts.
   e. osteoblasts.

5. The walls between cartilage lacunae break down in the zone of
   a. cell proliferation.
   b. calcification.
   c. reserve cartilage.
   d. bone deposition.
   e. cell hypertrophy.

6. Which of these is *not* an effect of PTH?
   a. rise in blood phosphate level
   b. reduction of calcium excretion
   c. increased intestinal calcium absorption
   d. increased number of osteoclasts
   e. increased calcitriol synthesis

7. A child jumps to the ground from the top of a playground "jungle gym." His leg bones do not shatter mainly because they contain
   a. an abundance of glycosaminoglycans.
   b. young, resilient osteocytes.
   c. an abundance of calcium phosphate.
   d. collagen fibers.
   e. hydroxyapatite crystals.

8. One long bone meets another at its
   a. diaphysis.
   b. epiphyseal plate.
   c. periosteum.
   d. metaphysis.
   e. epiphysis.

9. Calcitriol is made from
   a. calcitonin.
   b. 7-dehydrocholesterol.
   c. hydroxyapatite.
   d. estrogen.
   e. PTH.

10. One sign of osteoporosis is
    a. osteosarcoma.
    b. osteomalacia.
    c. osteomyelitis.
    d. a Colles fracture.
    e. hypocalcemia.

11. Calcium phosphate crystallizes in bone as a mineral called ______.

12. Osteocytes contact each other through channels called ______ in the bone matrix.

13. A bone increases in diameter only by ______ growth, the addition of new surface osteons.

14. Seed crystals of hydroxyapatite form only when the levels of calcium and phosphate in the tissue fluid exceed the ______.

15. A calcium deficiency called _____ can cause death by suffocation.
16. _____ are cells that secrete collagen and stimulate calcium phosphate deposition.
17. The most active form of vitamin D, produced mainly by the kidneys, is _____.
18. The most common bone disease is _____.
19. The transitional region between epiphyseal cartilage and the primary marrow cavity of a young bone is called the _____.
20. A pregnant, poorly nourished woman may suffer a softening of the bones called _____.

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. Spongy bone is always covered by compact bone.
2. Most bones develop from hyaline cartilage.
3. Fractures are the most common bone disorder.
4. The growth zone of the long bones of adolescents is the articular cartilage.
5. Osteoclasts develop from osteoblasts.
6. Osteocytes develop from osteoblasts.
7. The protein of the bone matrix is called hydroxyapatite.
8. Blood vessels travel through the central canals of compact bone.
9. Vitamin D promotes bone deposition, not resorption.
10. Parathyroid hormone promotes bone resorption and raises blood calcium concentration.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. Most osteocytes of an osteon are far removed from blood vessels, but still receive blood-borne nutrients. Explain how this is possible.
2. What positive feedback loop can you recognize in the process of bone deposition?
3. How does the regulation of blood calcium concentration exemplify negative feedback and homeostasis?
4. Describe how the arrangement of trabeculae in spongy bone demonstrates the unity of form and function.
5. Identify two bone diseases you would expect to see if the epidermis were a completely effective barrier to UV radiation and a person took no dietary supplements to compensate for this. Explain your answer.

Answers at the Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Questions

7.2 The wider epiphyses provide surface area for muscle attachment and bone articulation, while the narrowness of the diaphysis minimizes weight.

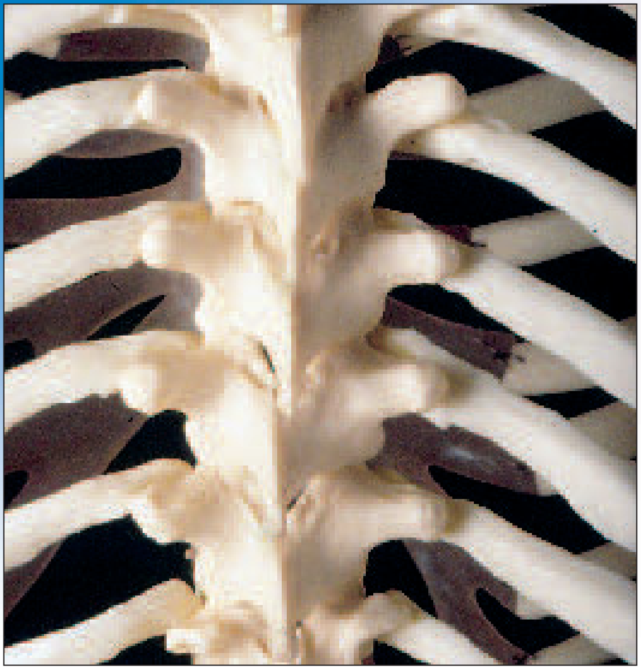
7.4 Spongy bone

7.6 Places where bone comes close to the skin, such as the sternum and hips

7.10 An infant's joints are still cartilaginous.

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.


Vertebral column and ribs

CHAPTER

8

The Skeletal System

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Overview of the Skeleton 244
- Bones of the Skeletal System 244
- Surface Features of Bones 244

The Skull 246
- Cranial Bones 248
- Facial Bones 257
- Bones Associated with the Skull 259
- The Skull in Infancy and Childhood 260

The Vertebral Column and Thoracic Cage 262
- General Features of the Vertebral Column 262
- General Structure of a Vertebra 264
- Intervertebral Discs 264
- Regional Characteristics of Vertebrae 265
- The Thoracic Cage 268

The Pectoral Girdle and Upper Limb 270
- Pectoral Girdle 271
- Upper Limb 273

The Pelvic Girdle and Lower Limb 277
- Pelvic Girdle 277
- Lower Limb 280

Connective Issues 288

Chapter Review 289

INSIGHTS

8.1 **Clinical Application:** Injury to the Ethmoid Bone 257
8.2 **Evolutionary Medicine:** Evolutionary Significance of the Palate 258
8.3 **Clinical Application:** Cranial Assessment of the Newborn 262
8.4 **Clinical Application:** Abnormal Spinal Curvatures 263
8.5 **Evolutionary Medicine:** Skeletal Adaptations for Bipedalism 286

Brushing Up

To understand this chapter, it is important that you understand or brush up on the following concepts:
- Directional terminology (p. 31)
- Body regions and cavities (pp. 32, 38)

Knowledge of skeletal anatomy will be useful as you study later chapters. It provides a foundation for studying the gross anatomy of other organ systems because many organs are named for their relationships to nearby bones. The subclavian artery and vein, for example, are located beneath the clavicles; the temporalis muscle is attached to the temporal bone; the ulnar nerve and radial artery travel beside the ulna and radius of the forearm; and the frontal, parietal, temporal, and occipital lobes of the brain are named for bones of the cranium. An understanding of how the muscles produce body movements also depends on knowledge of skeletal anatomy. Additionally, the positions, shapes, and processes of bones can serve as landmarks for a clinician in determining where to give an injection or record a pulse, what to look for in an X ray, or how to perform physical therapy and other medical procedures.

Overview of the Skeleton

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- state the approximate number of bones in the adult body;
- explain why this number varies with age and from one person to another; and
- define several terms that denote surface features of bones.

Students typically begin by examining an articulated[1] skeleton (dried bones held together by wires and rods to show their spatial relationships to each other) or a disarticulated skeleton (one that is taken apart so that the anatomy of individual bones can be studied in more detail). The skeleton is shown in figure 8.1. Note that it is divided into two regions: the **axial skeleton,** which forms the central supporting axis, and the **appendicular skeleton,** which includes the limbs (*appendages* or *extremities*) and the bones that attach them to the axial skeleton. The axial skeleton includes the skull, auditory ossicles, hyoid bone, vertebral column, and thoracic cage (ribs and sternum). The appendicular skeleton includes the bones of the upper limb and pectoral girdle and the bones of the lower limb and pelvic girdle.

Bones of the Skeletal System

It is often stated that there are 206 bones in the skeleton, but this is only a typical adult count. At birth there are about 270, and even more bones form during childhood. With age, however, the number decreases as separate bones fuse. For example, each half of the adult pelvis is a single bone called the *os coxae* (oss COC-see), which results from the fusion of three childhood bones—the ilium, ischium, and pubis. The fusion of several bones, completed by late adolescence or the early 20s, brings about the average adult number of 206. These bones are listed in table 8.1

This number varies even among adults. One reason is the development of **sesamoid**[2] **bones**—bones that form within some tendons in response to stress. The patella (kneecap) is the largest of these; most of the others are small, rounded bones in such locations as the knuckles. Another reason for adult variation is that some people have extra bones in the skull called **sutural** (SOO-chure-ul), or **wormian,**[3] **bones** (see fig. 8.6).

Surface Features of Bones

Bone surfaces exhibit a variety of ridges, spines, bumps, depressions, canals, pores, slits, and articular surfaces. It is important to know the names of these *surface markings* because later descriptions of joints, muscle attachments, and the routes traveled by nerves and blood vessels are based on this terminology. The terms for the most common of these features are listed in table 8.2, and several of them are illustrated in figure 8.2.

The rest of this chapter is divided into four sections: (1) the skull, (2) the vertebral column and thoracic cage, (3) the pectoral girdle and upper limb, and (4) the pelvic girdle and lower limb. At the end of each section, you will find a review and checklist of skeletal features you should know (see tables 8.4, 8.6, 8.7, and 8.9). As you study this chapter, use yourself as a model. You can easily palpate (feel) many of the bones and some of their details through the skin. Rotate your forearm, cross your legs, palpate your skull, and think about what is happening beneath the surface or what you can feel through the skin. You will gain the most from this chapter (and indeed, the entire book) if you are conscious of your own body in relation to what you are studying.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

1. Name the major components of the axial skeleton. Name those of the appendicular skeleton.
2. Explain why an adult does not have as many bones as a child does. Explain why one adult may have more bones than another adult of the same age has.
3. Briefly describe each of the following bone features: a condyle, epicondyle, process, tubercle, fossa, sulcus, and foramen.

---

[1] *artic* = joint

[2] *sesam* = sesame seed + *oid* = resembling

[3] Ole Worm (1588–1654), Danish physician

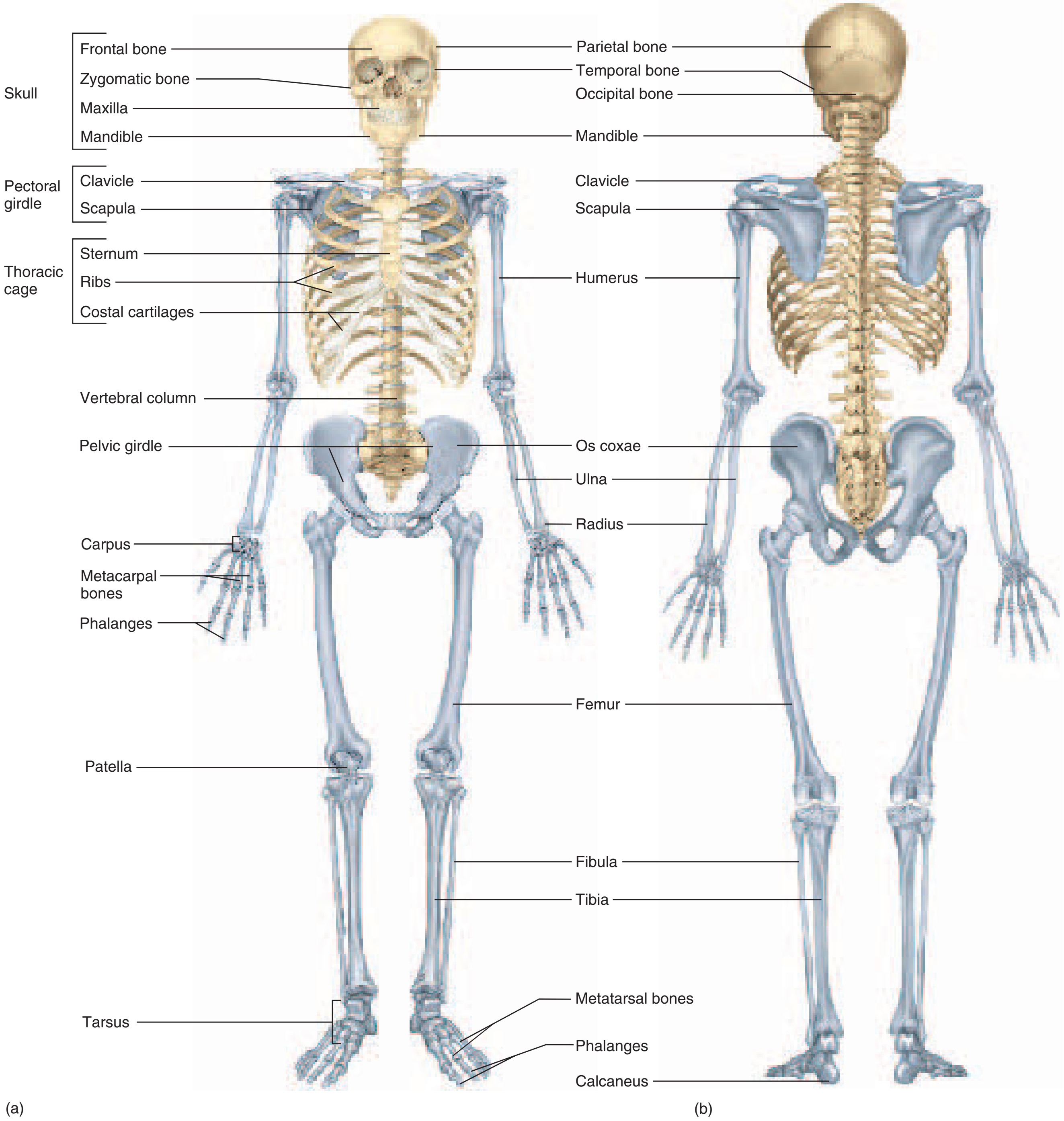

Skull
Frontal bone
Zygomatic bone
Maxilla
Mandible
Pectoral girdle
Clavicle
Scapula
Thoracic cage
Sternum
Ribs
Costal cartilages
Vertebral column
Pelvic girdle
Carpus
Metacarpal bones
Phalanges
Patella
Tarsus
Parietal bone
Temporal bone
Occipital bone
Mandible
Clavicle
Scapula
Humerus
Os coxae
Ulna
Radius
Femur
Fibula
Tibia
Metatarsal bones
Phalanges
Calcaneus
(a)
(b)

Figure 8.1 **The Adult Skeleton.** (*a*) Anterior view; (*b*) posterior view. The appendicular skeleton is colored *blue*, and the rest is axial skeleton.

Table 8.1 Bones of the Adult Skeletal System

Axial Skeleton			
Skull	*Total 22*	*Auditory Ossicles*	*Total 6*
Cranial bones		Malleus (2)	
Frontal bone (1)		Incus (2)	
Parietal bone (2)		Stapes (2)	
Occipital bone (1)		*Hyoid Bone (1)*	*Total 1*
Temporal bone (2)		*Vertebral Column*	*Total 26*
Sphenoid bone (1)		Cervical vertebrae (7)	
Ethmoid bone (1)		Thoracic vertebrae (12)	
Facial bones		Lumbar vertebrae (5)	
Maxilla (2)		Sacrum (1)	
Palatine bone (2)		Coccyx (1)	
Zygomatic bone (2)		*Thoracic Cage*	*Total 25*
Lacrimal bone (2)		Ribs (24)	
Nasal bone (2)		Sternum (1)	
Vomer (1)			
Inferior nasal concha (2)			
Mandible (1)			
Appendicular Skeleton			
Pectoral Girdle	*Total 4*	*Pelvic Girdle*	*Total 2*
Scapula (2)		Os coxae (2)	
Clavicle (2)		*Lower Limb*	*Total 60*
Upper Limb	*Total 60*	Femur (2)	
Humerus (2)		Patella (2)	
Radius (2)		Tibia (2)	
Ulna (2)		Fibula (2)	
Carpals (16)		Tarsals (14)	
Metacarpals (10)		Metatarsals (10)	
Phalanges (28)		Phalanges (28)	
			Grand Total: 206

The Skull

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- name the bones of the skull and their anatomical features; and
- describe the development of the skull from infancy through childhood.

The skull is the most complex part of the skeleton. Figures 8.3 to 8.6 present an overview of its general anatomy. Although it may seem to consist only of the mandible (lower jaw) and "the rest," in reality the skull is composed of 22 bones (and sometimes more). Most of these bones are connected by immovable joints called **sutures** (SOO-chures), visible as seams on the surface (fig. 8.4). These are important landmarks in the descriptions that follow.

The skull contains several prominent cavities (fig. 8.7). The largest, with an adult volume of 1,300 to 1,350 mL, is the **cranial cavity,** which encloses the brain. Other cavities include the **orbits** (eye sockets), **nasal cavity, buccal** (BUCK-ul) **cavity** (mouth), **middle-** and **inner-ear cavities,** and **paranasal sinuses.** The paranasal sinuses are named for the bones in which they occur (fig. 8.8)—the **frontal, sphenoid, ethmoid,** and **maxillary sinuses.** These cavities are

Table 8.2 Surface Features (markings) of Bones

Term	Description and Example
Articulations	
Condyle	A rounded knob that articulates with another bone (occipital condyles of the skull)
Facet	A smooth, flat, slightly concave or convex articular surface (articular facets of the vertebrae)
Head	The prominent expanded end of a bone, sometimes rounded (head of the femur)
Extensions and Projections	
Crest	A narrow ridge (iliac crest of the pelvis)
Epicondyle	A projection superior to a condyle (medial epicondyle of the femur)
Line	A slightly raised, elongated ridge (nuchal lines of the skull)
Process	Any bony prominence (mastoid process of the skull)
Protuberance	A bony outgrowth or protruding part (mental protuberance of the chin)
Spine	A sharp, slender, or narrow process (spine of the scapula)
Trochanter	A massive process unique to the femur
Tubercle	A small, rounded process (greater tubercle of the humerus)
Tuberosity	A rough surface (tibial tuberosity)
Depressions	
Alveolus	A pit or socket (tooth socket)
Fossa	A shallow, broad, or elongated basin (mandibular fossa)
Fovea	A small pit (fovea capitis of the femur)
Sulcus	A groove for a tendon, nerve, or blood vessel (intertubercular sulcus of the humerus)
Passages	
Canal	A tubular passage or tunnel in a bone (condylar canal of the skull)
Fissure	A slit through a bone (orbital fissures behind the eye)
Foramen	A hole through a bone, usually round (foramen magnum of the skull)
Meatus	An opening into a canal (acoustic meatus of the ear)

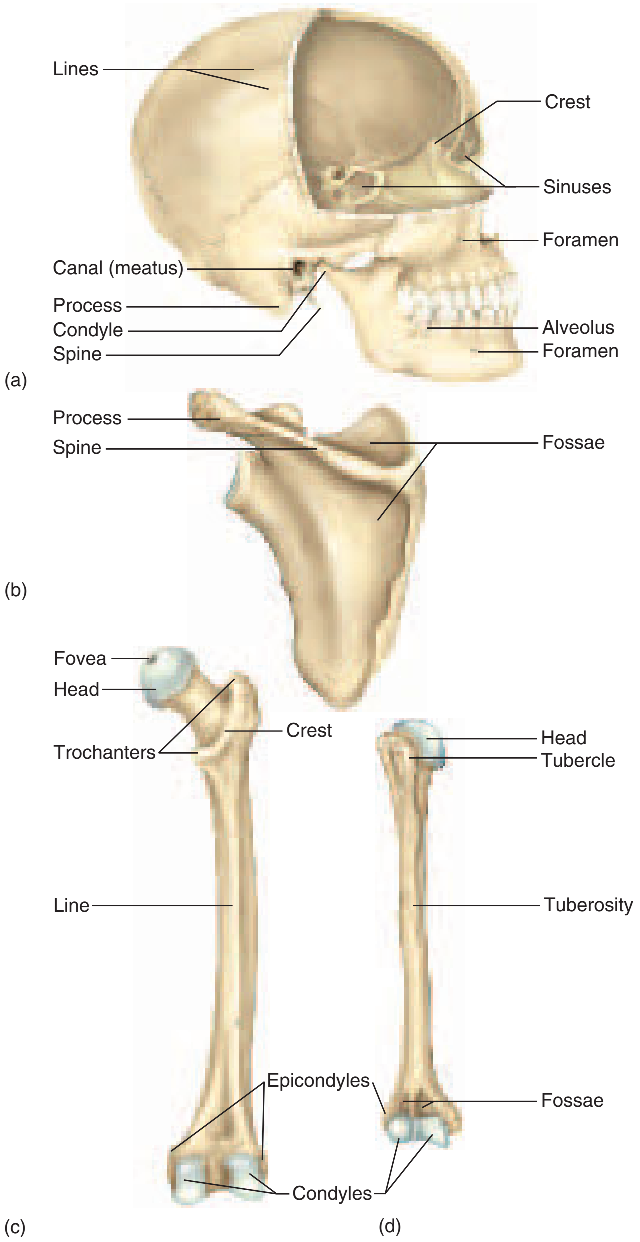

Lines
Crest
Sinuses
Foramen
Canal (meatus)
Process
Condyle
Spine
Alveolus
Foramen
(a)
Process
Spine
Fossae
(b)
Fovea
Head
Trochanters
Crest
Head
Tubercle
Line
Tuberosity
Epicondyles
Fossae
Condyles
(c)
(d)

Figure 8.2 **Surface Features of Bones.** (*a*) Skull; (*b*) scapula; (*c*) femur; (*d*) humerus.

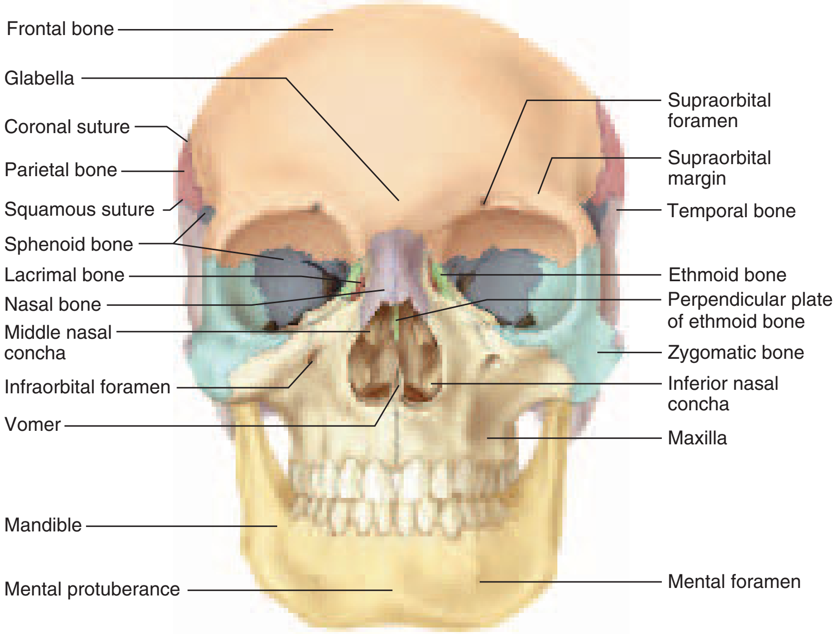

Frontal bone
Glabella
Coronal suture
Parietal bone
Squamous suture
Sphenoid bone
Lacrimal bone
Nasal bone
Middle nasal concha
Infraorbital foramen
Vomer
Mandible
Mental protuberance
Supraorbital foramen
Supraorbital margin
Temporal bone
Ethmoid bone
Perpendicular plate of ethmoid bone
Zygomatic bone
Inferior nasal concha
Maxilla
Mental foramen

Figure 8.3 **The Skull, Anterior View.**

connected with the nasal cavity, lined by a mucous membrane, and filled with air. They lighten the anterior portion of the skull and act as chambers that add resonance to the voice. The latter effect can be sensed in the way your voice changes when you have a cold and mucus obstructs the travel of sound into the sinuses and back.

Bones of the skull have especially conspicuous **foramina**—singular, *foramen* (fo-RAY-men)—holes that allow passage for nerves and blood vessels. The major foramina are summarized in table 8.3 (p. 252). The details of this table will mean more to you when you study cranial nerves and blood vessels in later chapters.

Cranial Bones

The cranial cavity is enclosed by the **cranium**[4] (braincase), which protects the brain and associated sensory organs. **Cranial bones** are those that directly contact the meninges around the brain. There are eight of these:

1 frontal bone
2 parietal bones
2 temporal bones
1 occipital bone
1 sphenoid bone
1 ethmoid bone

The cranium is a rigid structure with an opening, the **foramen magnum** (literally "large hole"), where the spinal cord enters. An important consideration in treatment of head injuries is swelling of the brain. Since the cranium cannot enlarge, swelling puts pressure on the brain and results in even more tissue damage. Severe swelling may force the brainstem out through the foramen magnum, usually with fatal consequences.

The delicate brain tissue does not come directly into contact with the cranial bones but is separated from them by three membranes called the *meninges* (meh-NIN-jeez) (see chapter fourteen). The thickest and toughest of these, the *dura mater*[5] (DUE-rah MAH-tur), lies loosely against the inside of the cranium in most places but is firmly attached to it at a few points.

The cranium consists of two major parts—the calvaria and the base. The **calvaria**[6] (skullcap) forms the roof and walls (see fig. 8.6). In study skulls it is often sawed so that part of it can be lifted off for examination of the interior. This reveals the **base** (floor) of the cranial cavity (see fig. 8.5*b*), which is divided into three basins corresponding to the contour of the inferior surface of the brain (fig. 8.9). The relatively shallow **anterior cranial fossa** is shaped like a crescent and accommodates the frontal lobes of the brain. The **middle cranial fossa,** which drops abruptly deeper, is shaped like a pair of outstretched bird's wings and accommodates the temporal lobes. The **posterior cranial fossa** is deepest and houses a large posterior division of the brain called the cerebellum.

---

[4] *crani* = helmet

[5] *dura* = tough, strong + *mater* = mother

[6] *calvar* = bald, skull

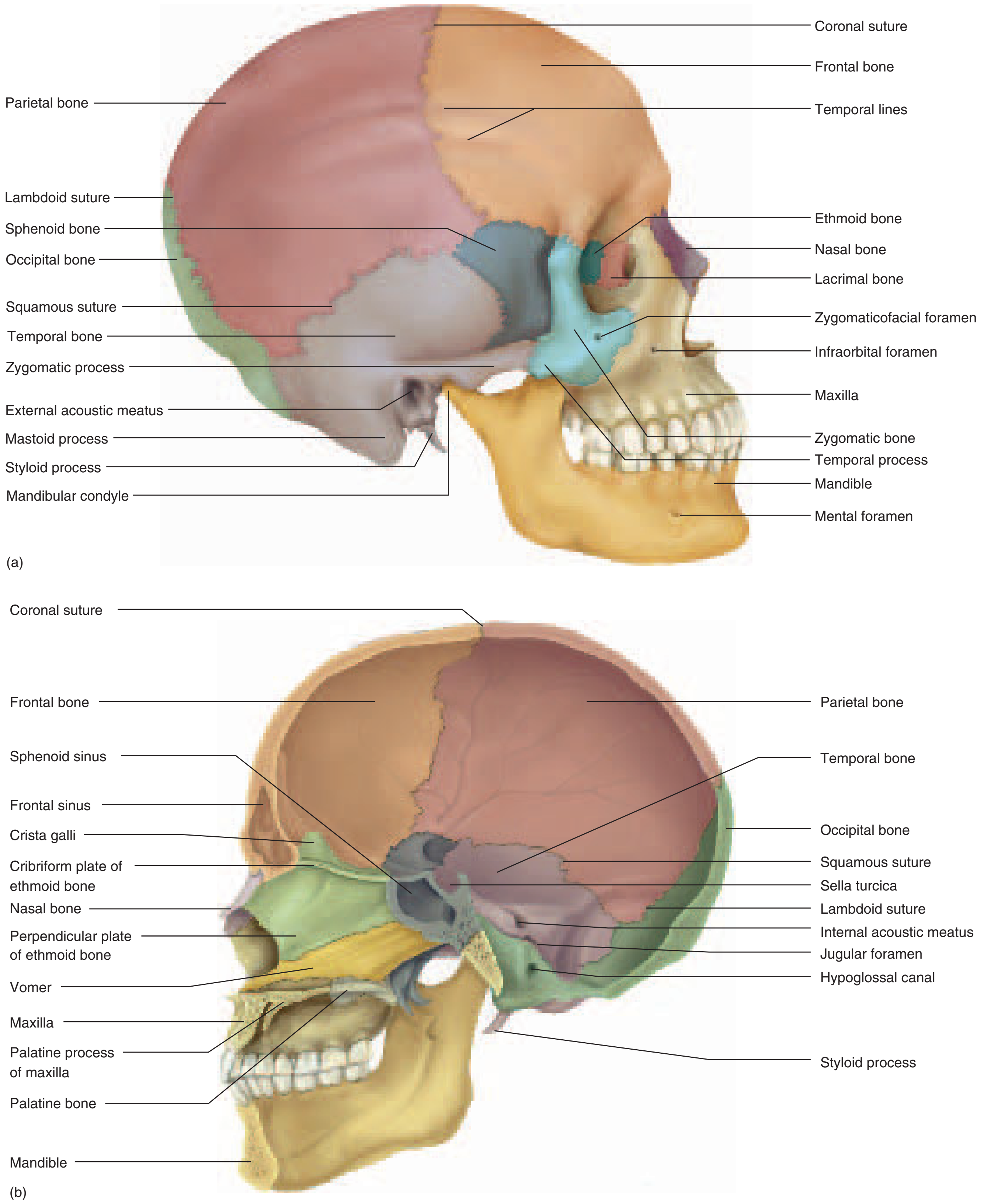
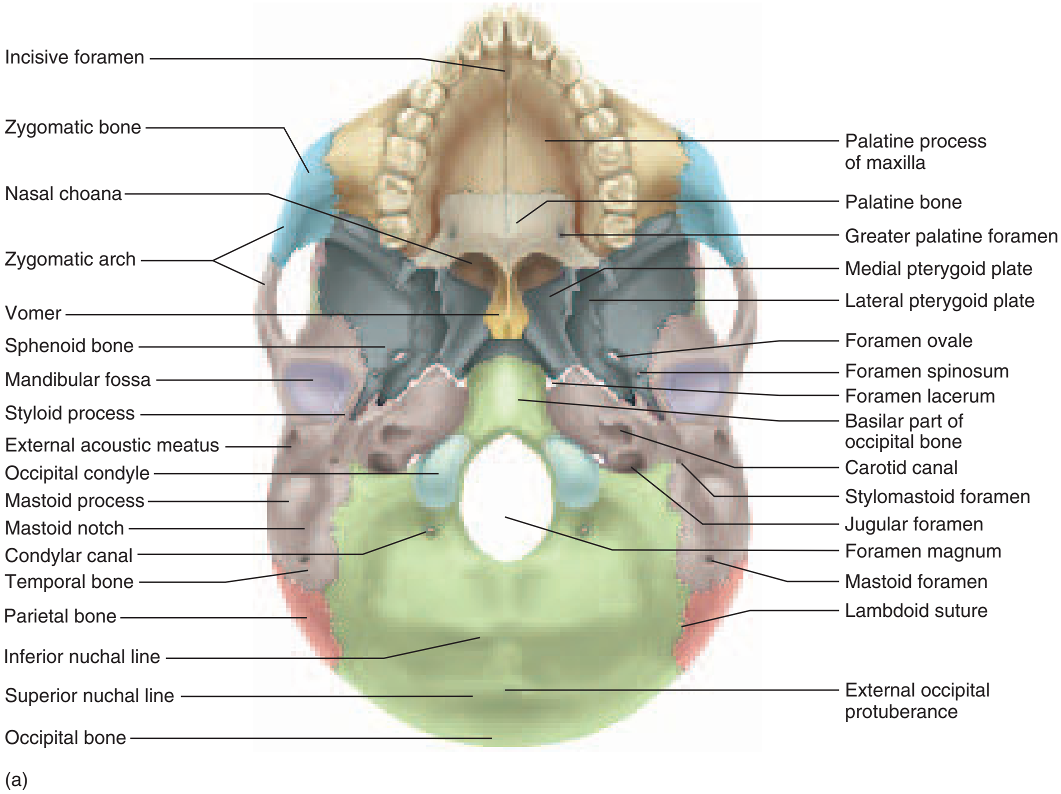

Coronal suture
Frontal bone
Parietal bone
Temporal lines
Lambdoid suture
Sphenoid bone
Occipital bone
Ethmoid bone
Nasal bone
Lacrimal bone
Squamous suture
Temporal bone
Zygomatic process
Zygomaticofacial foramen
Infraorbital foramen
Maxilla
External acoustic meatus
Mastoid process
Styloid process
Mandibular condyle
Zygomatic bone
Temporal process
Mandible
Mental foramen
(a)
Coronal suture
Frontal bone
Parietal bone
Sphenoid sinus
Temporal bone
Frontal sinus
Crista galli
Occipital bone
Cribriform plate of ethmoid bone
Squamous suture
Sella turcica
Nasal bone
Lambdoid suture
Internal acoustic meatus
Perpendicular plate of ethmoid bone
Jugular foramen
Hypoglossal canal
Vomer
Maxilla
Palatine process of maxilla
Styloid process
Palatine bone
Mandible
(b)

Figure 8.4 **The Skull.** (*a*) Right lateral view; (*b*) interior of the right half.


Incisive foramen
Zygomatic bone
Nasal choana
Zygomatic arch
Vomer
Sphenoid bone
Mandibular fossa
Styloid process
External acoustic meatus
Occipital condyle
Mastoid process
Mastoid notch
Condylar canal
Temporal bone
Parietal bone
Inferior nuchal line
Superior nuchal line
Occipital bone
(a)
Palatine process of maxilla
Palatine bone
Greater palatine foramen
Medial pterygoid plate
Lateral pterygoid plate
Foramen ovale
Foramen spinosum
Foramen lacerum
Basilar part of occipital bone
Carotid canal
Stylomastoid foramen
Jugular foramen
Foramen magnum
Mastoid foramen
Lambdoid suture
External occipital protuberance

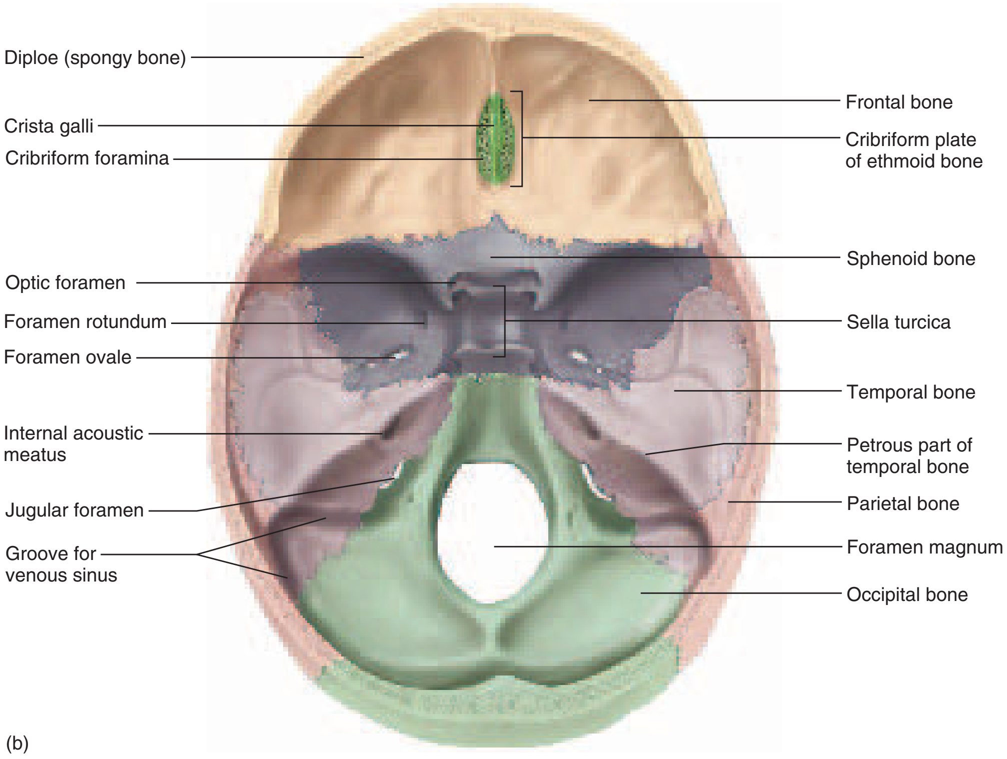

Diploe (spongy bone)
Crista galli
Cribriform foramina
Optic foramen
Foramen rotundum
Foramen ovale
Internal acoustic meatus
Jugular foramen
Groove for venous sinus
(b)
Frontal bone
Cribriform plate of ethmoid bone
Sphenoid bone
Sella turcica
Temporal bone
Petrous part of temporal bone
Parietal bone
Foramen magnum
Occipital bone

Figure 8.5 **Base of the Skull.** (*a*) Inferior view; (*b*) internal view of the cranial floor.

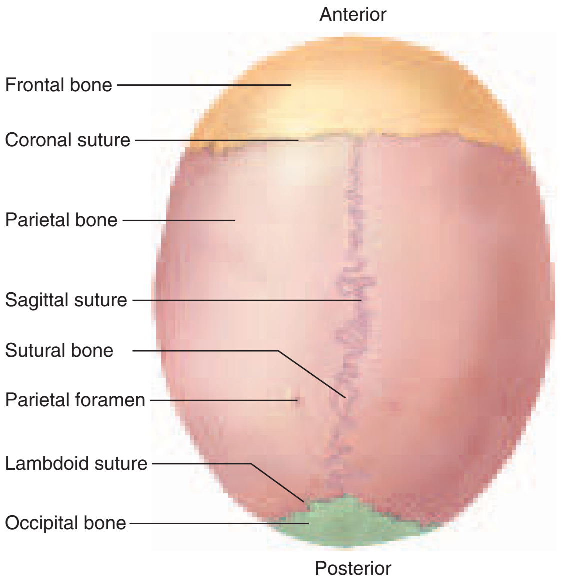
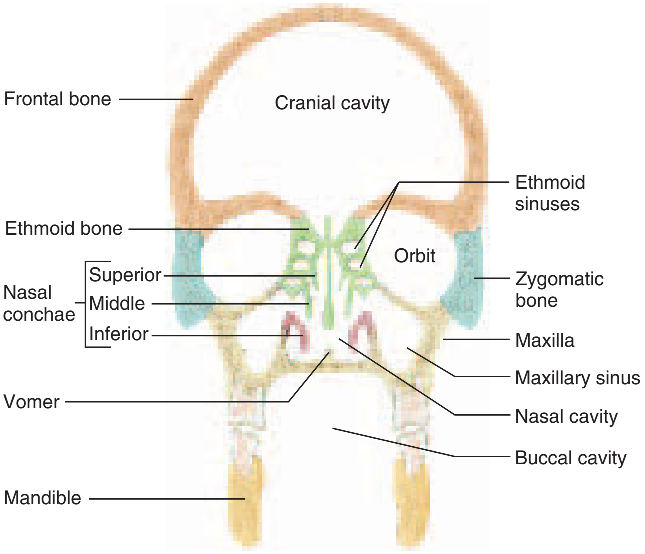


Figure 8.6 The Calvaria (skullcap), Superior View.



Frontal section

Figure 8.7 Major Cavities of the Skull, Frontal Section.

We now consider the eight cranial bones and their distinguishing features.

Frontal Bone

The **frontal bone** extends from the forehead back to a prominent *coronal suture,* which crosses the crown of the head from right to left and joins the frontal bone to the parietal bones (see figs. 8.3 and 8.4). It forms the anterior wall and about one-third of the roof of the cranial cavity, and it turns inward to form nearly all of the anterior cranial fossa and the roof of the orbit. Deep to the eyebrows it has a ridge called the **supraorbital margin.** The center of each margin is perforated by a single **supraorbital foramen** (see figs. 8.3 and 8.14), which provides passage for a nerve, artery, and veins. In some people, the edge of this foramen breaks through the margin of the orbit and forms a *supraorbital notch.* The smooth area of the frontal bone just above the root of the nose is called the **glabella.**[7] The frontal bone also contains the frontal sinus. You may not see this on some study skulls. It is absent from some people, and on some skulls the calvaria is cut too high to show the sinus. Along the cut edge of the calvaria, you can see the diploe—the layer of spongy bone in the middle of the cranial bones (see fig. 8.5*b*).

Parietal Bones

The right and left **parietal** (pa-RY-eh-tul) **bones** form most of the cranial roof and part of its lateral walls (see figs. 8.4 and 8.6). Each is bordered by four sutures that join it to the neighboring bones: (1) a median **sagittal suture** between the parietal bones; (2) the **coronal**[8] **suture** at the anterior margin; the **lambdoid**[9] (LAM-doyd) **suture** at the posterior margin; and (4) the **squamous suture** laterally. Small sutural (wormian) bones are often seen along the sagittal and lambdoid sutures, like little islands of bone with the suture lines passing around them. Internally, the parietal and frontal bones have markings that look a bit like aerial photographs of river tributaries (see fig. 8.4*b*). These represent places where the bone has been molded around blood vessels of the dura mater.

Externally, the parietal bones have few features. A **parietal foramen** sometimes occurs near the corner of the lambdoid and sagittal sutures (see fig. 8.6). A pair of slight thickenings, the superior and inferior **temporal lines,** form an arc across the parietal and frontal bones (see fig. 8.4*a*). They mark the attachment of the large, fan-shaped *temporalis* muscle, a chewing muscle that passes between the zygomatic arch and temporal bone and inserts on the mandible.

Temporal Bones

If you palpate your skull just above and anterior to the ear—that is, the temporal region—you can feel the **temporal bone,** which forms the lower lateral wall and part of the floor of the cranial cavity (fig. 8.10). The temporal bone derives its name from the fact that people often develop

---

[7] *glab* = smooth
[8] *corona* = crown
[9] Shaped like the Greek letter lambda (λ)

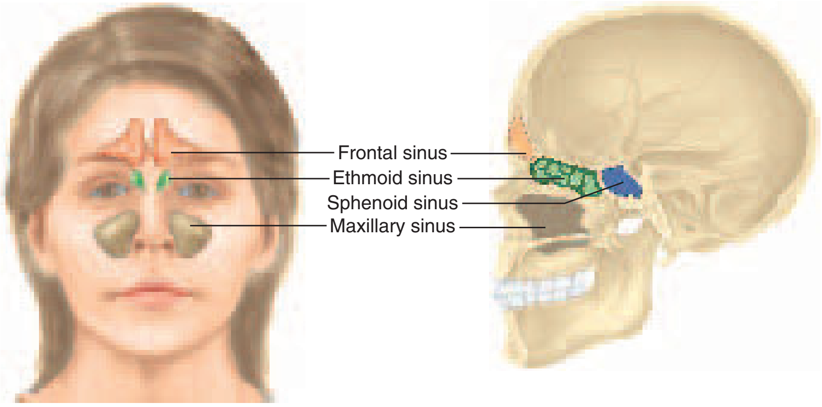


Figure 8.8 The Paranasal Sinuses.

Table 8.3 Foramina of the Skull and the Nerves and Blood Vessels Transmitted Through Them

Bones and Their Foramina[*]	Structures Transmitted
Frontal Bone	
Supraorbital foramen or notch	Supraorbital nerve, artery, and vein; ophthalmic nerve
Parietal Bone	
Parietal foramen	Emissary vein of superior longitudinal sinus
Temporal Bone	
Carotid canal	Internal carotid artery
External acoustic meatus	Sound waves to eardrum
Internal acoustic meatus	Vestibulocochlear nerve; internal auditory vessels
Stylomastoid foramen	Facial nerve
Mastoid foramen	Meningeal artery; vein from sigmoid sinus
Temporal–Occipital Region	
Jugular foramen	Internal jugular vein; glossopharyngeal, vagus, and accessory nerves
Temporal–Occipital–Sphenoid Region	
Foramen lacerum	No major nerves or vessels; closed by cartilage
Occipital Bone	
Foramen magnum	Spinal cord; accessory nerve; vertebral arteries
Hypoglossal canal	Hypoglossal nerve to muscles of tongue
Condylar canal	Vein from transverse sinus
Sphenoid Bone	
Foramen ovale	Mandibular division of trigeminal nerve; accessory meningeal artery
Foramen rotundum	Maxillary division of trigeminal nerve
Foramen spinosum	Middle meningeal artery; spinosal nerve; part of trigeminal nerve
Optic foramen	Optic nerve; ophthalmic artery
Superior orbital fissure	Oculomotor, trochlear, and abducens nerves; ophthalmic division of trigeminal nerve; ophthalmic veins

(continued)

Table 8.3 Foramina of the Skull and the Nerves and Blood Vessels Transmitted Through Them *(continued)*

Bones and Their Foramina*	**Structures Transmitted**
Ethmoid Bone	
Cribriform foramina	Olfactory nerves
Maxilla	
Infraorbital foramen	Infraorbital nerve and vessels; maxillary division of trigeminal nerve
Incisive foramen	Nasopalatine nerves
Maxilla–Sphenoid Region	
Inferior orbital fissure	Infraorbital nerve; zygomatic nerve; infraorbital vessels
Lacrimal Bone	
Lacrimal foramen	Tear duct leading to nasal cavity
Palatine Bone	
Greater palatine foramen	Palatine nerves
Zygomatic Bone	
Zygomaticofacial foramen	Zygomaticofacial nerve
Zygomaticotemporal foramen	Zygomaticotemporal nerve
Mandible	
Mental foramen	Mental nerve and vessels
Mandibular foramen	Inferior alveolar nerves and vessels to the lower teeth

*When two or more bones are listed together (for example, temporal–occipital), it indicates that the foramen passes between them.

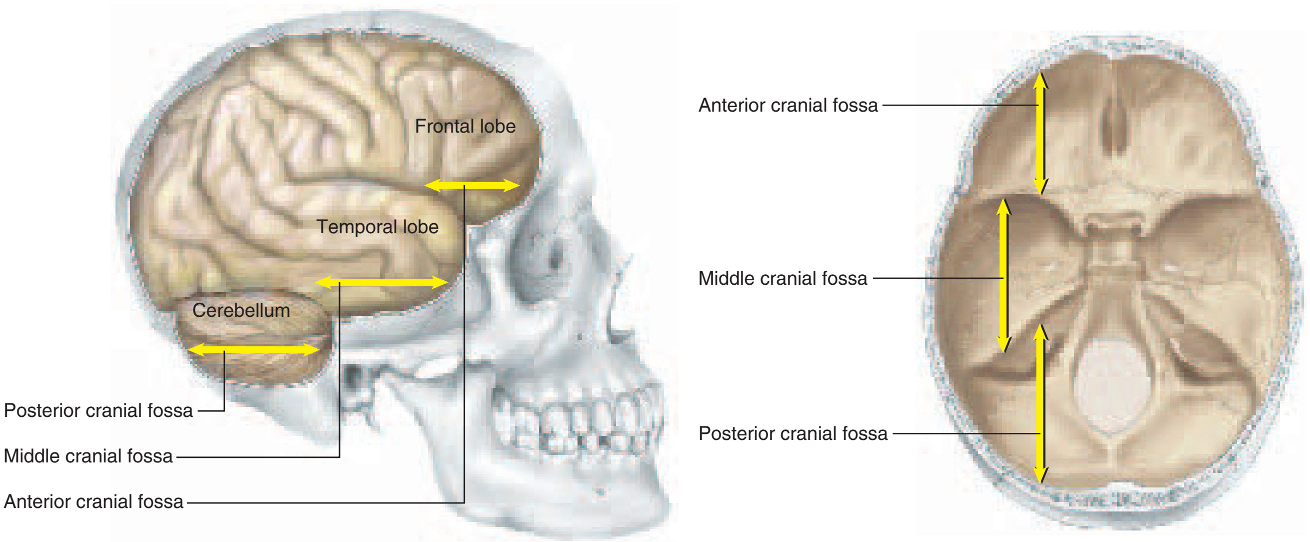

Frontal lobe
Temporal lobe
Cerebellum
Posterior cranial fossa
Middle cranial fossa
Anterior cranial fossa
Anterior cranial fossa
Middle cranial fossa
Posterior cranial fossa

Figure 8.9 **Cranial Fossae.** The three fossae conform to the contours of the base of the brain.

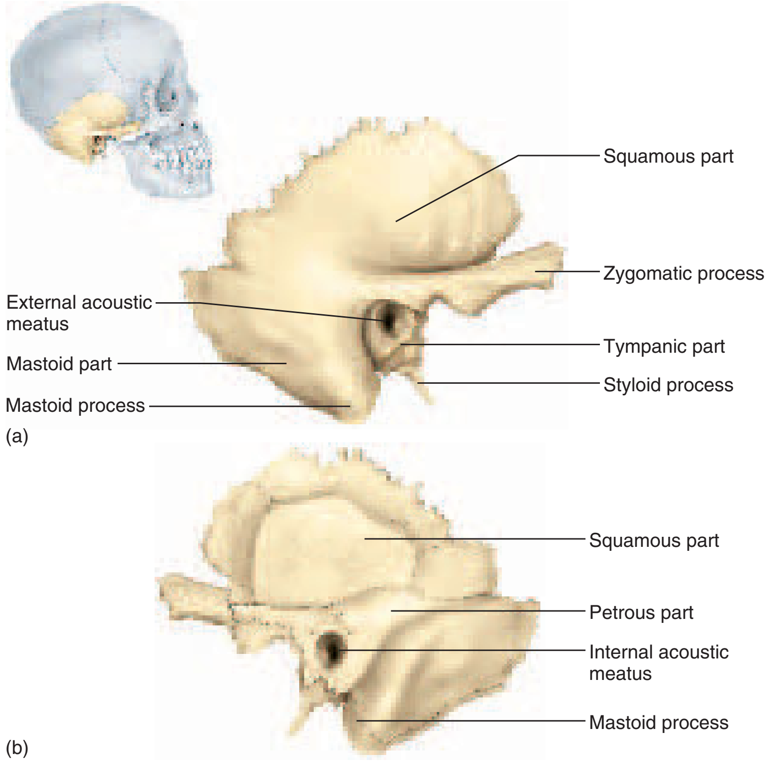


Figure 8.10 **The Right Temporal Bone.** (*a*) Lateral view; (*b*) medial view.
List all the bones that articulate with the temporal bone.

their first gray hairs on the temples with the passage of time.[10] The relatively complex shape of the temporal bone is best understood by dividing it into four parts:

1. The **squamous**[11] **part** (which you just palpated) is relatively flat and vertical. It is encircled by the squamous suture. It bears two prominent features: (1) the **zygomatic process,** which extends anteriorly to form part of the **zygomatic arch** (cheekbone), and (2) the **mandibular fossa,** a depression where the mandible articulates with the cranium.
2. The **tympanic**[12] **part** is a small ring of bone that borders the **external acoustic meatus** (me-AY-tus), the opening into the ear canal. It has a pointed spine on its inferior surface, the **styloid process,** named for its resemblance to the stylus used by ancient Greeks and Romans to write on wax tablets. The styloid process provides attachment for muscles of the tongue, pharynx, and hyoid bone.
3. The **mastoid**[13] **part** lies posterior to the tympanic part. It bears a heavy **mastoid process,** which you can palpate as a prominent lump behind the earlobe. It is filled with small air sinuses that communicate with the middle-ear cavity. These sinuses are subject to infection and inflammation (mastoiditis), which can erode the bone and spread to the brain. Ventrally, there is a groove called the **mastoid notch** medial to the mastoid process (see fig. 8.5*a*). It is the origin of the *digastric muscle,* which opens the mouth. The notch is perforated by the **stylomastoid foramen** at its anterior end and the **mastoid foramen** at its posterior end.
4. The **petrous**[14] **part** can be seen in the cranial floor, where it resembles a little mountain range separating the middle cranial fossa from the posterior fossa (fig. 8.10*b*). It houses the middle- and inner-ear cavities. The **internal acoustic meatus,** an opening on its posteromedial surface, allows passage of the vestibulocochlear (vess-TIB-you-lo-COC-lee-ur)

---

[10] *tempor* = time
[11] *squam* = flat + *ous* = characterized by
[12] *tympan* = drum (eardrum) + *ic* = pertaining to
[13] *mast* = breast + *oid* = resembling
[14] *petr* = stone, rock + *ous* = like

nerve, which carries sensations of hearing and balance from the inner ear to the brain. On the ventral surface of the petrous part are two prominent foramina named for the major blood vessels that pass through them (see fig. 8.5*a*): (1) The **carotid canal** is a passage for the internal carotid artery, a major blood supply to the brain. This artery is so close to the inner ear that you can sometimes hear the pulsing of its blood when your ear is resting on a pillow or your heart is beating hard. (2) The **jugular foramen** is a large, irregular opening just medial to the styloid process, between the temporal and occipital bones. Blood from the brain drains through this foramen into the internal jugular vein. Three cranial nerves also pass through this foramen.

Occipital Bone

The **occipital** (oc-SIP-ih-tul) **bone** forms the rear of the skull *(occiput)* and much of its base (see fig. 8.5). Its most conspicuous feature, the foramen magnum, admits the spinal cord to the cranial cavity and provides a point of attachment for the dura mater. The bone continues anterior to the foramen magnum as a thick medial plate, the **basilar part.** On either side of the foramen magnum is a smooth knob called the **occipital condyle** (CON-dile), where the skull rests on the vertebral column. At the anterolateral edge of each condyle is a **hypoglossal**[15] **canal,** named for the hypoglossal nerve that passes through it to supply the muscles of the tongue. A **condylar** (CON-dih-lur) **canal** sometimes occurs posterior to each occipital condyle.

Internally, the occipital bone displays impressions left by large venous sinuses that drain blood from the brain (see fig. 8.5*b*). One of these grooves travels along the midsagittal line. Just before reaching the foramen magnum, it branches into right and left grooves that wrap around the occipital bone like outstretched arms before terminating at the jugular foramina. Here, the venous sinuses drain their blood into the internal jugular veins, which exit the cranial cavity and pass down the neck.

Other features of the occipital bone can be palpated on the back of your head. One is a prominent medial bump called the **external occipital protuberance**—the attachment for the **nuchal**[16] (NEW-kul) **ligament,** which binds the skull to the vertebral column. A ridge, the **superior nuchal line,** can be traced horizontally from the external occipital protuberance toward the mastoid process (see fig. 8.5*a*). It defines the superior limit of the neck and provides attachment to the skull for several neck and back muscles. By pulling down on the occipital bone, some of these muscles help to keep the head erect. The **inferior nuchal line** provides attachment for some of the deep neck muscles. This inconspicuous ridge cannot be palpated on the living body but is visible on an isolated skull.

Sphenoid Bone

The **sphenoid**[17] (SFEE-noyd) **bone** has a complex shape with a thick medial **body** and outstretched **greater** and **lesser wings,** which give the bone as a whole a somewhat ragged, mothlike shape. Most of it is best seen from the superior perspective (fig. 8.11*a*). In this view, the lesser wings form the posterior margin of the anterior cranial fossa and end at a sharp bony crest, where the sphenoid drops abruptly to the greater wings. These form about half of the middle cranial fossa (the temporal bone forming the rest) and are perforated by several foramina to be discussed shortly.

The greater wing forms part of the lateral surface of the cranium just anterior to the temporal bone (see fig. 8.4*a*). The lesser wing forms the posterior wall of the orbit and contains the **optic foramen,** which permits passage of the optic nerve and ophthalmic artery (see fig. 8.14). Superiorly, a pair of bony spines of the lesser wing called the **anterior clinoid processes** appear to guard the optic foramina. A gash in the posterior wall of the orbit, the **superior orbital fissure,** angles upward lateral to the optic foramen. It serves as a passage for nerves that supply some of the muscles that move the eyes.

The body of the sphenoid has a saddlelike prominence named the **sella turcica**[18] (SEL-la TUR-sih-ca). It consists of a deep pit called the *hypophyseal fossa,* which houses the pituitary gland, a raised anterior margin called the *tuberculum sellae* (too-BUR-cu-lum SEL-lee), and a posterior margin called the *dorsum sellae.* In life, a fibrous membrane is stretched over the sella turcica. A stalk penetrates the membrane to connect the pituitary gland to the floor of the brain.

Lateral to the sella turcica, the sphenoid is perforated by several foramina (see fig. 8.5*a*). The **foramen rotundum** and **foramen ovale** (oh-VAY-lee) are passages for two branches of the trigeminal nerve. The **foramen spinosum,** about the diameter of a pencil lead, provides passage for an artery of the meninges. An irregular gash called the **foramen lacerum**[19] (LASS-eh-rum) occurs at the junction of the sphenoid, temporal, and occipital bones. It is filled with cartilage in life and transmits no major vessels or nerves.

In an inferior view, the sphenoid can be seen just anterior to the basilar part of the occipital bone. The internal openings of the nasal cavity seen here are called the **nasal choanae**[20] (co-AH-nee), or **internal nares.** Lateral to each choana, the sphenoid bone exhibits a pair of parallel

---

[15] *hypo* = below + *gloss* = tongue
[16] *nucha* = back of the neck
[17] *sphen* = wedge + *oid* = resembling
[18] *sella* = saddle + *turcica* = Turkish
[19] *lacerum* = torn, lacerated
[20] *choana* = funnel

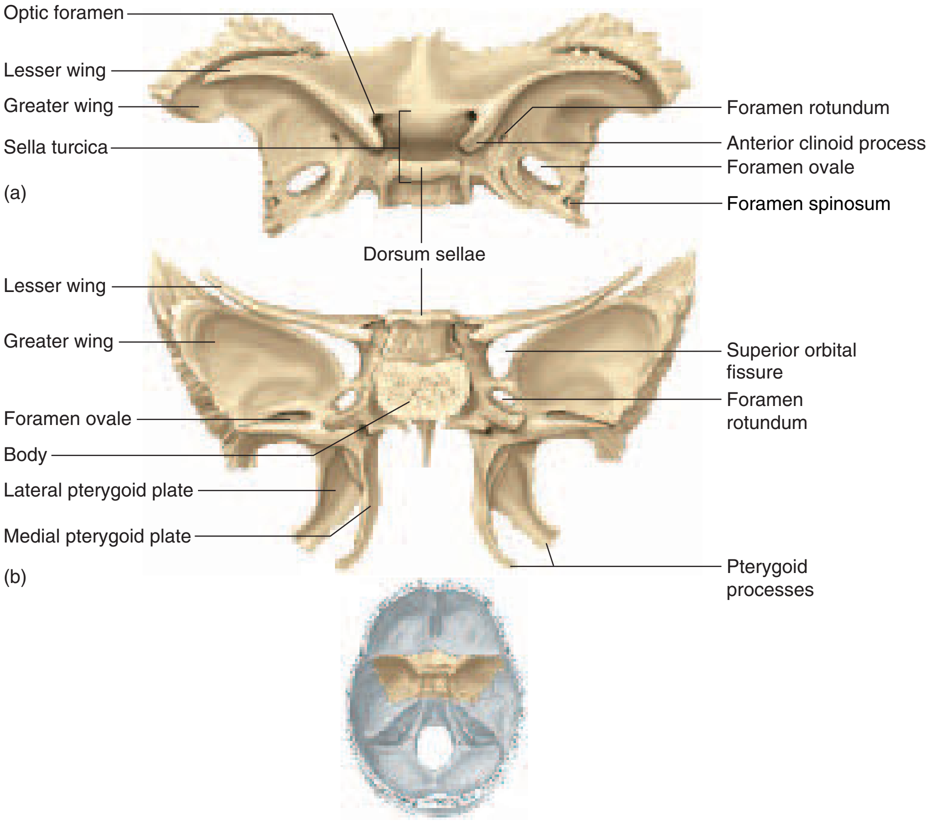

Optic foramen
Lesser wing
Greater wing
Sella turcica
(a)
Foramen rotundum
Anterior clinoid process
Foramen ovale
Foramen spinosum
Dorsum sellae
Lesser wing
Greater wing
Foramen ovale
Body
Lateral pterygoid plate
Medial pterygoid plate
(b)
Superior orbital fissure
Foramen rotundum
Pterygoid processes

Figure 8.11 **The Sphenoid Bone.** (*a*) Superior view; (*b*) posterior view.

plates—the **medial pterygoid**[21] (TERR-ih-goyd) **plate** and **lateral pterygoid plate** (see fig. 8.5*a*). These provide attachment for some of the jaw muscles. The sphenoid sinus occurs within the body of the sphenoid bone.

Ethmoid Bone

The **ethmoid**[22] (ETH-moyd) **bone** is located between the orbital cavities and forms the roof of the nasal cavity (fig. 8.12). An inferior projection of the ethmoid, called the **perpendicular plate,** forms the superior part of the **nasal septum,** which divides the nasal cavity into right and left **nasal fossae** (FOSS-ee). Three curled, scroll-like **nasal conchae**[23] (CON-kee), or **turbinate**[24] **bones,** project into each fossa from the lateral wall (see figs. 8.7 and 8.13). The superior and middle conchae are extensions of the ethmoid bone. The inferior concha—a separate bone—is included in the discussion of facial bones in the next section. The

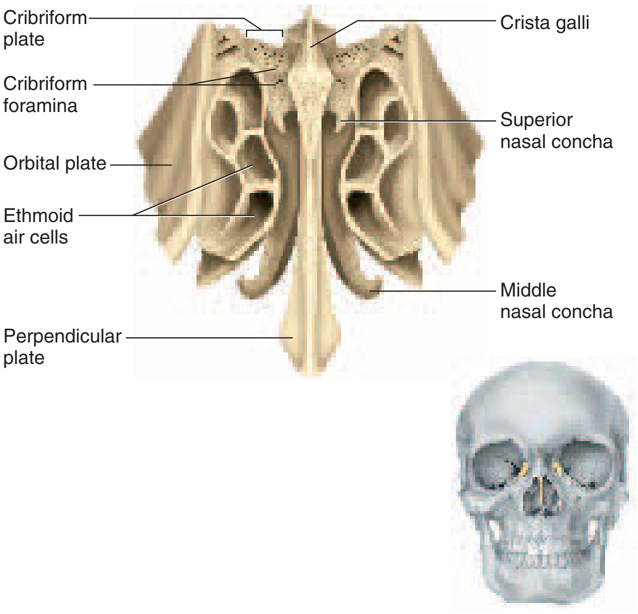

Cribriform plate
Cribriform foramina
Orbital plate
Ethmoid air cells
Perpendicular plate
Crista galli
Superior nasal concha
Middle nasal concha

Figure 8.12 **The Ethmoid Bone, Anterior View.**
List all the bones that articulate with the ethmoid bone.

---

[21] *pterygo* = wing
[22] *ethmo* = sieve, strainer + *oid* = resembling
[23] *conchae* = conchs (large marine snails)
[24] *turbin* = whirling, turning

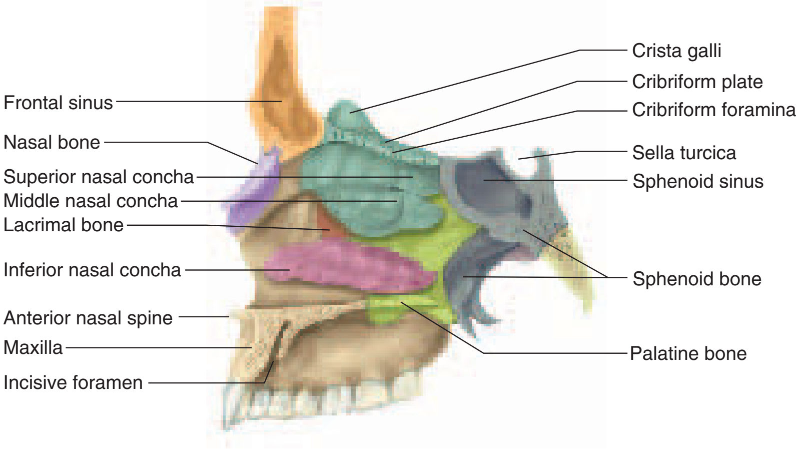


Figure 8.13 **The Right Nasal Cavity, Sagittal Section.**

conchae are covered with the mucous membrane of the nasal cavity. The superior concha and the adjacent region of the nasal septum also bear the receptor cells for the sense of smell (olfactory sense). The ethmoid bone also includes a large, delicate mass on each side of the perpendicular plate, honeycombed with chambers called **ethmoid air cells;** collectively, these constitute the ethmoid sinus.

The superior part of the ethmoid, viewed from the interior of the skull, exhibits a midsagittal crest called the **crista galli**[25] (GAL-eye), a point of attachment for the meninges (see figs. 8.4*b* and 8.5*b*). On either side of the crista is a horizontal **cribriform**[26] (CRIB-rih-form) **plate** marked by numerous perforations, the **cribriform foramina.** These foramina allow nerve fibers for the sense of smell to pass from the nasal cavity to the brain (see insight 8.1).

Insight 8.1 Clinical Application

Injury to the Ethmoid Bone

The ethmoid bone is very delicate and is easily injured by a sharp upward blow to the nose, such as a person might suffer by striking an automobile dashboard in a collision. The force of a blow can drive bone fragments through the cribriform plate into the meninges or brain tissue. Such injuries are often evidenced by leakage of cerebrospinal fluid into the nasal cavity, and may be followed by the spread of infection from the nasal cavity to the brain. Blows to the head can also shear off the olfactory nerves that pass through the ethmoid bone and cause *anosmia*, an irreversible loss of the sense of smell and a great reduction in the sense of taste (most of which depends on smell). This not only deprives life of some of its pleasures, but can also be dangerous, as when a person fails to smell smoke, gas, or spoiled food.

Facial Bones

The **facial bones** are those that have no direct contact with the brain or meninges. They support the teeth, give shape and individuality to the face, form part of the orbital and nasal cavities, and provide attachment for the muscles of facial expression and mastication. There are 14 facial bones:

2 maxillae	2 nasal bones
2 palatine bones	2 inferior nasal conchae
2 zygomatic bones	1 vomer
2 lacrimal bones	1 mandible

Maxillae

The **maxillae** (mac-SILL-ee) form the upper jaw and meet each other at a midsagittal suture (see figs. 8.3 and 8.4*a*). Small points of maxillary bone called **alveolar processes** grow into the spaces between the bases of the teeth. The root of each tooth is inserted into a deep socket, or **alveolus.** If a tooth is lost or extracted so that chewing no longer puts stress on the maxilla, the alveolar processes are resorbed and the alveolus fills in with new bone, leaving a smooth area on the maxilla. The teeth are discussed in detail in chapter 25.

Think About It

Suppose you were studying a skull with some teeth missing. How could you tell whether the teeth had been lost after the person's death or years before it?

Each maxilla extends from the teeth to the inferomedial wall of the orbit. Just below the orbit, it exhibits an

---

[25] *crista* = crest + *galli* = of a rooster
[26] *cribri* = sieve + *form* = in the shape of

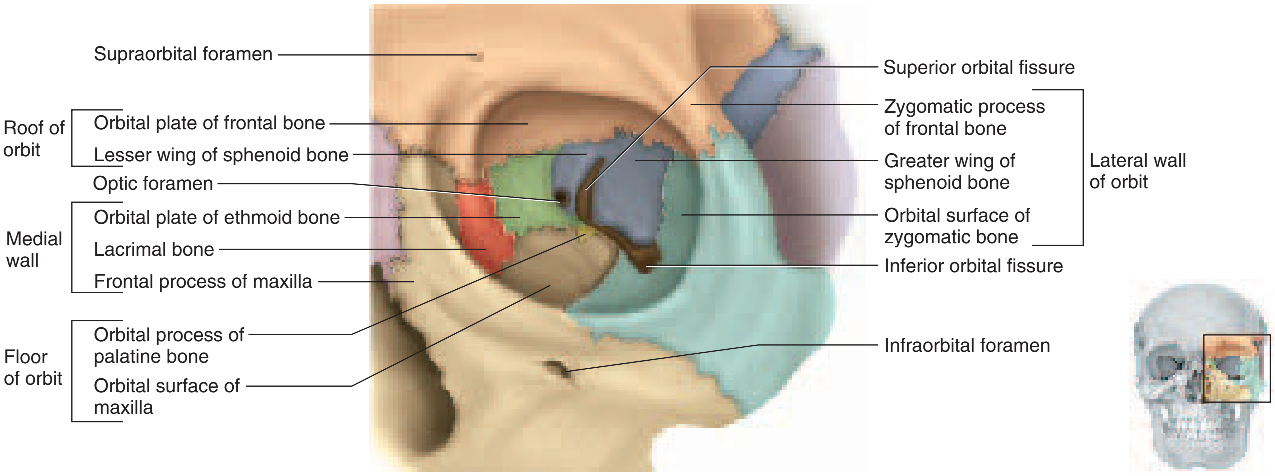

Supraorbital foramen
Roof of orbit
Orbital plate of frontal bone
Lesser wing of sphenoid bone
Optic foramen
Medial wall
Orbital plate of ethmoid bone
Lacrimal bone
Frontal process of maxilla
Floor of orbit
Orbital process of palatine bone
Orbital surface of maxilla
Superior orbital fissure
Zygomatic process of frontal bone
Greater wing of sphenoid bone
Orbital surface of zygomatic bone
Lateral wall of orbit
Inferior orbital fissure
Infraorbital foramen

Figure 8.14 **The Left Orbit, Anterior View.**

infraorbital foramen, which provides passage for a blood vessel to the face and a nerve that receives sensations from the nasal region and cheek. This nerve emerges through the foramen rotundum into the cranial cavity. The maxilla forms part of the floor of the orbit, where it exhibits a gash called the **inferior orbital fissure** that angles downward and medially (fig. 8.14). The inferior and superior orbital fissures form a sideways V whose apex lies near the optic foramen. The inferior orbital fissure is a passage for blood vessels and a nerve that supply more of the muscles that control eye movements.

The **palate** forms the roof of the mouth and floor of the nasal cavity. It consists of a bony **hard palate** in front and a fleshy **soft palate** in the rear. Most of the hard palate is formed by horizontal extensions of the maxilla called **palatine** (PAL-uh-tine) **processes** (see fig. 8.5*a*). Near the anterior margin of each palatine process, just behind the incisors, is an **incisive foramen.** The palatine processes normally fuse at about 12 weeks of gestation. Failure to fuse results in a *cleft palate,* often accompanied by a *cleft lip* lateral to the midline. Cleft palate and lip can be surgically corrected with good cosmetic results, but a cleft palate makes it difficult for an infant to generate the suction needed for nursing.

Palatine Bones

The **palatine bones** form the rest of the hard palate, part of the wall of the nasal cavity, and part of the floor of the orbit (see figs. 8.5*a* and 8.13). At the posterolateral corners of the hard palate are two large **greater palatine foramina.**

Insight 8.2 Evolutionary Medicine

Evolutionary Significance of the Palate

In most vertebrates, the nasal passages open into the oral cavity. Mammals, by contrast, have a palate that separates the nasal cavity from the oral cavity. In order to maintain our high metabolic rate, we must digest our food rapidly; in order to do this, we chew it thoroughly to break it up into small, easily digested particles before swallowing it. The palate allows us to continue breathing during this prolonged chewing.

Zygomatic Bones

The **zygomatic**[27] **bones** form the angles of the cheeks at the inferolateral margins of the orbits and part of the lateral wall of each orbit; they extend about halfway to the ear (see figs. 8.4*a* and 8.5*a*). Each zygomatic bone has an inverted T shape and usually a small **zygomaticofacial** (ZY-go-MAT-ih-co-FAY-shul) **foramen** near the intersection of the stem and crossbar of the T. The prominent zygomatic arch that flares from each side of the skull is formed by the union of the zygomatic process of the temporal bone and the *temporal process* of the zygomatic bone (see fig. 8.4*a*).

---

[27] *zygo* = to join, unite

Lacrimal Bones

The **lacrimal**[28] (LACK-rih-mul) **bones** form part of the medial wall of each orbit (fig. 8.14). A depression called the **lacrimal fossa** houses a membranous *lacrimal sac* in life. Tears from the eye collect in this sac and drain into the nasal cavity.

Nasal Bones

Two small rectangular **nasal bones** form the bridge of the nose (see fig. 8.3) and support cartilages that give shape to the lower portion of the nose. If you palpate the bridge, you can easily feel where the nasal bones end and the cartilages begin. The nasal bones are often fractured by blows to the nose.

Inferior Nasal Conchae

There are three conchae in the nasal cavity. The superior and middle conchae, as discussed earlier, are parts of the ethmoid bone. The **inferior nasal concha (inferior turbinate bone)**—the largest of the three—is a separate bone (see fig. 8.13).

Vomer

The **vomer** forms the inferior half of the nasal septum (see figs. 8.3 and 8.4*b*). Its name literally means "plowshare," which refers to its resemblance to the blade of a plow. The superior half of the nasal septum is formed by the perpendicular plate of the ethmoid bone, as mentioned earlier. The vomer and perpendicular plate support a wall of *septal cartilage* that forms most of the anterior part of the nasal septum.

Mandible

The **mandible** (fig. 8.15) is the strongest bone of the skull and the only one that can move. It supports the lower teeth and provides attachment for muscles of mastication and facial expression. The horizontal portion is called the **body;** the vertical-to-oblique posterior portion is the **ramus** (RAY-mus)—plural, *rami* (RAY-my); and these two portions meet at a corner called the **angle.** The mandible develops as separate right and left bones in the fetus, joined by a midsagittal cartilaginous joint called the **mental symphysis** (SIM-fih-sis). This joint ossifies in early childhood, uniting the two halves into a single bone. The point of the chin is the **mental protuberance.** On the anterolateral surface of the body, the **mental foramen** permits the passage of nerves and blood vessels of the chin.

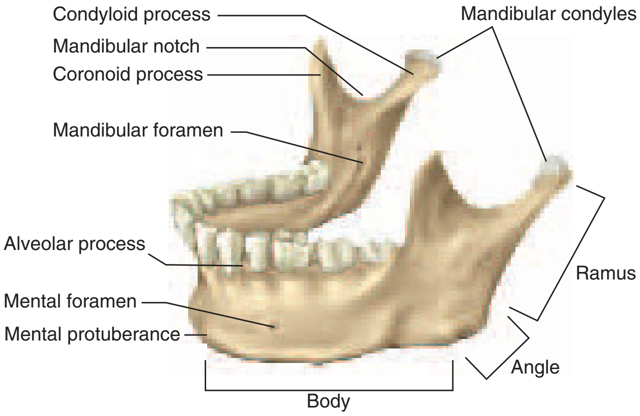


Figure 8.15 **The Mandible.**

The inner surface of the body has a number of shallow depressions and ridges to accommodate muscles and salivary glands. The angle of the mandible has a rough lateral surface for insertion of the *masseter,* a muscle of mastication. Like the maxilla, the mandible has pointed alveolar processes between the teeth.

The ramus is somewhat Y-shaped. Its posterior branch, called the **condyloid** (CON-dih-loyd) **process,** bears the **mandibular condyle**—an oval knob that articulates with the mandibular fossa of the temporal bone. The hinge of the mandible is the **temporomandibular joint (TMJ).** The anterior branch of the ramus, called the **coronoid process,** is the point of insertion for the temporalis muscle, which pulls the mandible upward when you bite. The U-shaped arch between the two processes is called the **mandibular notch.** Just below the notch, on the medial surface of the ramus, is the **mandibular foramen.** The nerve and blood vessels that supply the lower teeth enter this foramen. Dentists inject anesthetic near here to deaden sensation from the lower teeth.

Bones Associated with the Skull

Seven bones are closely associated with the skull but not considered part of it. These are the three auditory ossicles in each middle-ear cavity and the hyoid bone beneath the chin. The **auditory ossicles**[29]—named the **malleus** (hammer), **incus** (anvil), and **stapes** (STAY-peez) (stirrup)—are discussed in connection with hearing in chapter 16. The **hyoid**[30] **bone** is a slender bone between the chin and larynx (fig. 8.16). It is one of the few bones that does not articulate with any other. The hyoid is suspended from the styloid processes of the skull, somewhat like a hammock, by

---

[28] *lacrim* = tear, to cry

[29] *os* = bone + *icle* = little

[30] *hy* = the letter *U* + *oid* = resembling

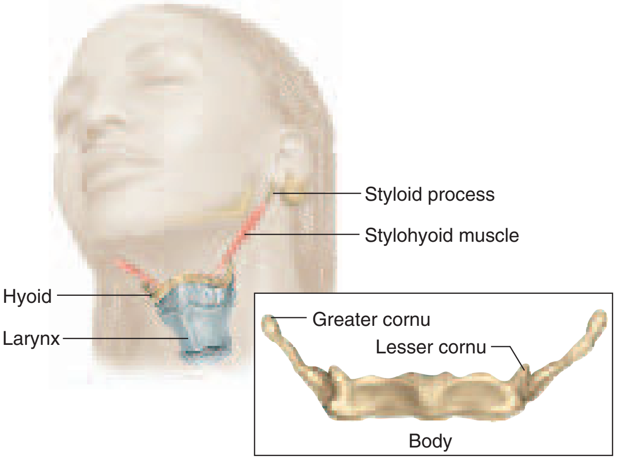

Styloid process
Stylohyoid muscle
Hyoid
Larynx
Greater cornu
Lesser cornu
Body

Figure 8.16 **The Hyoid Bone.**

the small *stylohyoid muscles* and *stylohyoid ligaments.* The medial **body** of the hyoid is flanked on either side by hornlike projections called the **greater** and **lesser cornua**[31] (CORN-you-uh)—singular, *cornu* (COR-new). The hyoid bone serves for attachment of several muscles that control the mandible, tongue, and larynx. Forensic pathologists look for a fractured hyoid as evidence of strangulation.

The Skull in Infancy and Childhood

The head of an infant could not fit through the mother's pelvic outlet at birth were it not for the fact that the bones of its skull are not yet fused. The shifting of the skull bones during birth may cause the infant to appear deformed, but the head soon assumes a more normal shape. Spaces between the unfused cranial bones are called **fontanels,**[32] after the fact that pulsation of the infant's blood can be felt there. The bones are joined at these points only by fibrous membranes, in which intramembranous ossification will be completed later. Four of these sites are especially prominent and regular in location: the **anterior, posterior, sphenoid (anterolateral),** and **mastoid (posterolateral) fontanels** (fig. 8.17). Most fontanels ossify by the time the infant is a year old, but the largest one—the anterior fontanel—can still be palpated 18 to 24 months after birth.

The frontal bone and mandible are separate right and left bones at birth, but fuse medially in early childhood. The frontal bones usually fuse by age five or six, but in some children a *metopic*[33] *suture* persists between them. Traces of this suture are evident in some adult skulls.

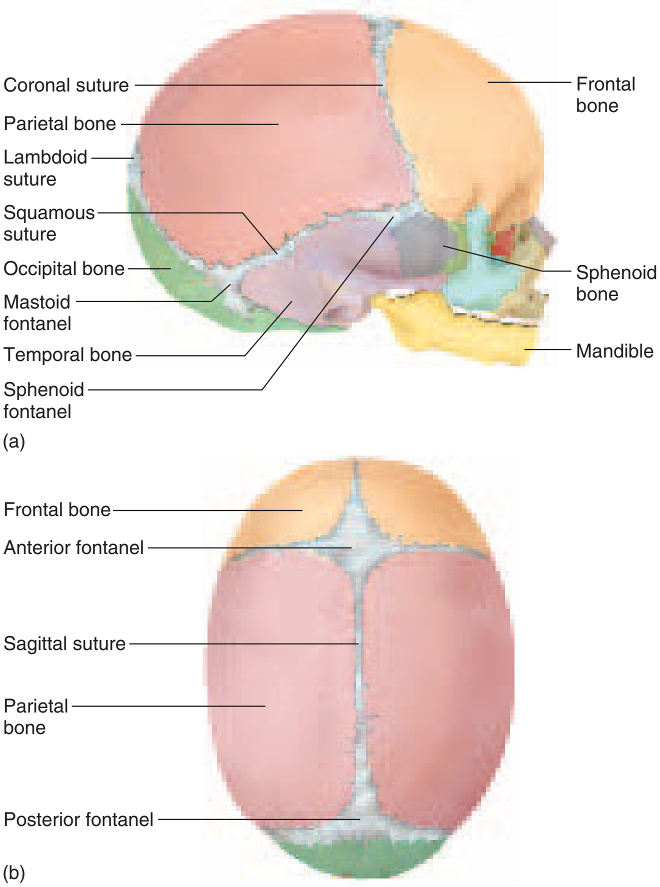

Coronal suture
Parietal bone
Lambdoid suture
Squamous suture
Occipital bone
Mastoid fontanel
Temporal bone
Sphenoid fontanel
Frontal bone
Sphenoid bone
Mandible
(a)
Frontal bone
Anterior fontanel
Sagittal suture
Parietal bone
Posterior fontanel
(b)

Figure 8.17 **The Fetal Skull Near the Time of Birth.** (*a*) Right lateral view; (*b*) superior view.

The face of a newborn is flat and the cranium relatively large. To accommodate the growing brain, the skull grows more rapidly than the rest of the skeleton during childhood. It reaches about half its adult size by 9 months of age, three-quarters by age 2, and nearly final size by 8 or 9 years. The heads of babies and children are therefore much larger in proportion to the trunk than the heads of adults—an attribute thoroughly exploited by cartoonists and advertisers who draw big-headed characters to give them a more endearing or immature appearance. In humans and other animals, the large rounded heads of the young are thought to promote survival by stimulating parental caregiving instincts.

Table 8.4 summarizes the bones of the skull.

---

[31] *cornu* = horn

[32] *fontan* = fountain + *el* = little

[33] *met* = beyond + *op* = the eyes

Table 8.4 Anatomical Checklist for the Skull and Associated Bones

Cranial Bones

Frontal Bone (figs. 8.4 to 8.7)
- Supraorbital margin
- Supraorbital foramen or notch
- Glabella
- Frontal sinus

Parietal Bones (figs. 8.4a and 8.6)
- Temporal lines
- Parietal foramen

Temporal Bones (figs. 8.4, 8.5b, and 8.10)
- Squamous part
  - Zygomatic process
  - Mandibular fossa
- Tympanic part
  - External auditory meatus
  - Styloid process
- Mastoid part
  - Mastoid process
  - Mastoid notch
  - Mastoid foramen
  - Stylomastoid foramen
- Petrous part
  - Internal auditory meatus
  - Carotid canal
  - Jugular foramen

Occipital Bone (figs. 8.4, 8.5, and 8.6)
- Foramen magnum
- Basilar part
- Occipital condyles
- Hypoglossal canal

Occipital Bone (figs. 8.4, 8.5, and 8.6)—(Cont.)
- Condylar canal
- External occipital protuberance
- Superior nuchal line
- Inferior nuchal line

Sphenoid Bone (figs. 8.4a, 8.5, and 8.11)
- Body
- Lesser wing
  - Optic foramen
  - Anterior clinoid process
  - Superior orbital fissure
- Greater wing
  - Foramen ovale
  - Foramen rotundum
  - Foramen spinosum
  - Foramen lacerum
  - Medial and lateral pterygoid plates
- Nasal choanae
- Sphenoid sinus
- Sella turcica
- Dorsum sellae

Ethmoid Bone (figs. 8.4, 8.7, and 8.12)
- Perpendicular plate
- Superior nasal concha (superior turbinate bone)
- Middle nasal concha (middle turbinate bone)
- Ethmoid sinus (air cells)
- Crista galli
- Cribriform plate

Facial Bones

Maxilla (figs. 8.3, 8.4, and 8.5a)
- Alveoli
- Alveolar processes
- Infraorbital foramen
- Inferior orbital fissure
- Palatine processes
- Incisive foramen
- Maxillary sinus

Palatine Bones (figs. 8.5a and 8.13)
- Greater palatine foramen

Zygomatic Bones (figs. 8.4a and 8.5a)
- Zygomaticofacial foramen
- Temporal process

Lacrimal Bones (figs. 8.3 and 8.14)
- Lacrimal fossa

Nasal Bones (figs. 8.3 and 8.13)

Inferior Nasal Concha (fig. 8.13)

Vomer (figs. 8.3 and 8.4b)

Mandible (figs. 8.3 and 8.15)
- Body
  - Mental symphysis
  - Mental protuberance
  - Mental foramen
- Angle
- Ramus
  - Condyloid process
  - Mandibular condyle
  - Coronoid process
  - Mandibular notch
  - Mandibular foramen

Bones Associated with the Skull

Auditory Ossicles
- Malleus (hammer)
- Incus (anvil)
- Stapes (stirrup)

Hyoid Bone (fig. 8.16)
- Body
- Greater cornu
- Lesser cornu

Insight 8.3 Clinical Application

Cranial Assessment of the Newborn

Obstetric nurses routinely assess the fontanels of newborns by palpation. In a difficult delivery, one cranial bone may override another along a suture line, which calls for close monitoring of the infant. Abnormally wide sutures may indicate hydrocephalus, the accumulation of excessive amounts of cerebrospinal fluid, which causes the cranium to swell. Bulging fontanels suggest abnormally high intracranial pressure, while depressed fontanels indicate dehydration.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

4. Name the paranasal sinuses and state their locations. Name any four other cavities in the skull.
5. Explain the difference between a cranial bone and a facial bone. Give four examples of each.
6. Draw an oval representing a superior view of the calvaria. Draw lines representing the coronal, lambdoid, and sagittal sutures. Label the four bones separated by these sutures.
7. State which bone has each of these features: a squamous part, hypoglossal foramen, greater cornu, greater wing, condyloid process, and cribriform plate.
8. For each of the following bones, name all the other bones with which it articulates: parietal, temporal, zygomatic, and ethmoid.
9. Determine which of the following structures cannot normally be palpated on a living person: the mastoid process, crista galli, superior orbital fissure, palatine processes, zygomatic bone, mental protuberance, and stapes. You may find it useful to palpate some of these on your own skull as you try to answer.

The Vertebral Column and Thoracic Cage

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the general features of the vertebral column and those of a typical vertebra;
- describe the special features of vertebrae in different regions of the vertebral column, and discuss the functional significance of the regional differences; and
- describe the anatomy of the sternum and ribs and how the ribs articulate with the thoracic vertebrae.

General Features of the Vertebral Column

The **vertebral** (VUR-teh-brul) **column** physically supports the skull and trunk, allows for their movement, protects the spinal cord, and absorbs stresses produced by walking, running, and lifting. It also provides attachment for the limbs, thoracic cage, and postural muscles. Although commonly called the backbone, it does not consist of a single bone but a chain of 33 **vertebrae** with **intervertebral discs** of fibrocartilage between most of them. The adult vertebral column averages about 71 cm (28 in.) long, with the 23 intervertebral discs accounting for about one-quarter of the length.

As shown in figure 8.18, the vertebrae are divided into five groups, usually numbering 7 *cervical* (SUR-vih-cul) *vertebrae* in the neck, 12 *thoracic vertebrae* in the chest, 5 *lumbar vertebrae* in the lower back, 5 *sacral vertebrae* at the base of the spine, and 4 tiny *coccygeal* (coc-SIDJ-ee-ul) *vertebrae.* To help remember the numbers of cervical, thoracic, and lumbar vertebrae—7, 12, and 5—you might think of a typical work day: go to work at 7, have lunch at 12, and go home at 5.

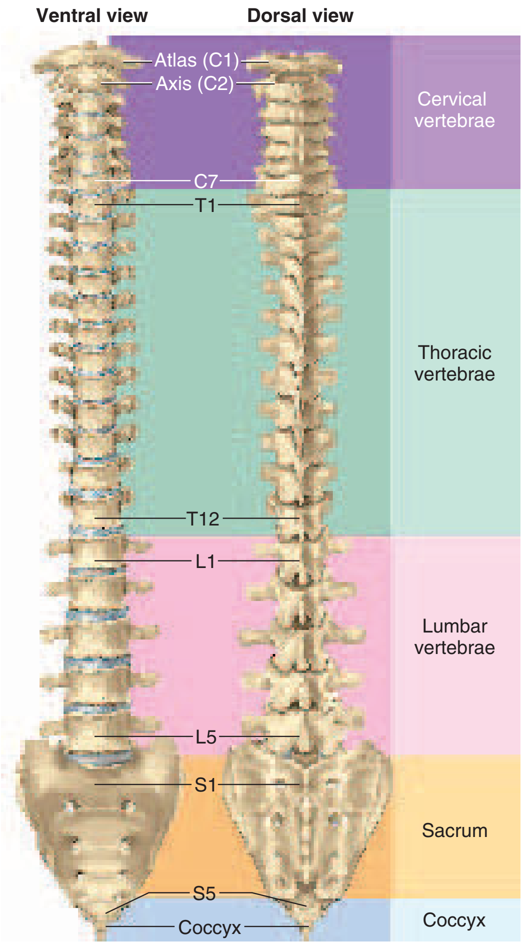


Figure 8.18 **The Vertebral Column, Ventral and Dorsal Views.**

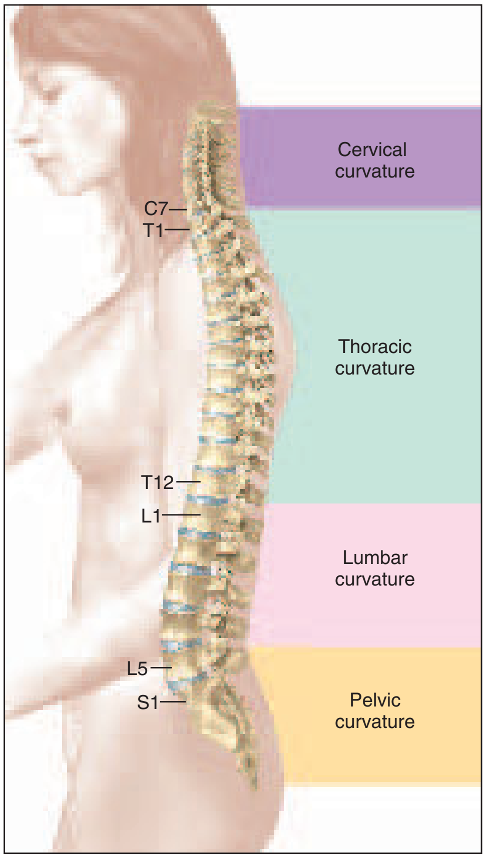


Figure 8.19 **Curvatures of the Adult Vertebral Column.**

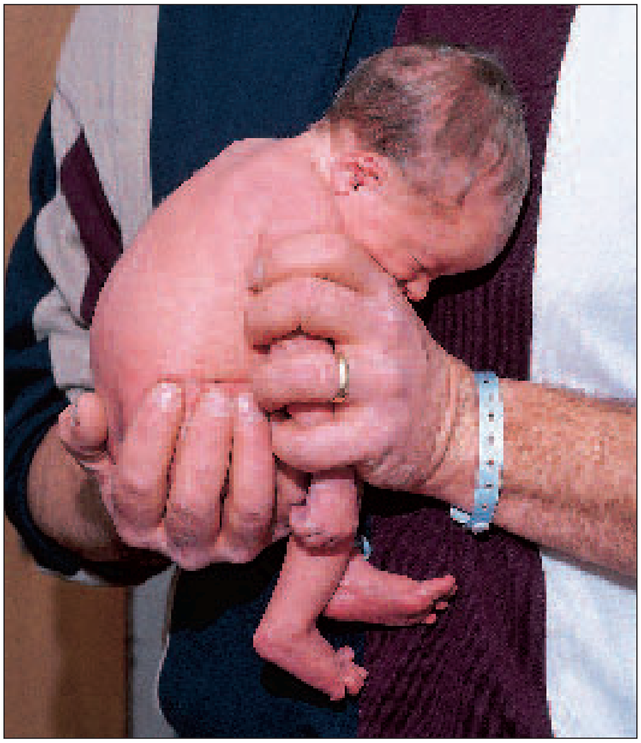


Figure 8.20 **Spinal Curvature of the Newborn Infant.** At this age, the spine forms a single C-shaped curve.

Variations in this arrangement occur in about 1 person in 20. For example, the last lumbar vertebra is sometimes incorporated into the sacrum, producing four lumbar and six sacral vertebrae. In other cases, the first sacral vertebra fails to fuse with the second, producing six lumbar and four sacral vertebrae. The coccyx usually has four but sometimes five vertebrae. The cervical and thoracic vertebrae are more constant in number.

Beyond the age of 3 years, the vertebral column is slightly S-shaped, with four bends called the **cervical, thoracic, lumbar,** and **pelvic curvatures** (fig. 8.19). These are not present in the newborn, whose spine exhibits one continuous C-shaped curve (fig. 8.20) as it does in monkeys, apes, and most other four-legged animals. As an infant begins to crawl and lift its head, the cervical region becomes curved toward the dorsal side, enabling an infant on its belly to look forward. As a toddler begins walking, another curve develops in the same direction in the lumbar region. The resulting S shape makes sustained bipedal walking possible (see insight 8.5, p. 286). The thoracic and pelvic curvatures are called *primary curvatures* because they are remnants of the original infantile curvature. The cervical and lumbar curvatures are called *secondary curvatures* because they develop later, in the child's first few years of crawling and walking.

Insight 8.4 Clinical Application

Abnormal Spinal Curvatures

Abnormal spinal curvatures (fig. 8.21) can result from disease, weakness, or paralysis of the trunk muscles, poor posture, or congenital defects in vertebral anatomy. The most common deformity is an abnormal lateral curvature called *scoliosis.* It occurs most often in the thoracic region, particularly among adolescent girls. It sometimes results from a developmental abnormality in which the body and arch fail to develop on one side of a vertebra. If the person's skeletal growth is not yet complete, scoliosis can be corrected with a back brace.

An exaggerated thoracic curvature is called *kyphosis* (hunchback, in lay language). It is usually a result of osteoporosis, but it also occurs in people with osteomalacia or spinal tuberculosis and in adolescent boys who engage heavily in such spine-loading sports as wrestling and weightlifting. An exaggerated lumbar curvature is called *lordosis* (swayback, in lay language). It may have the same causes as kyphosis, or it may result from added abdominal weight in pregnancy or obesity.

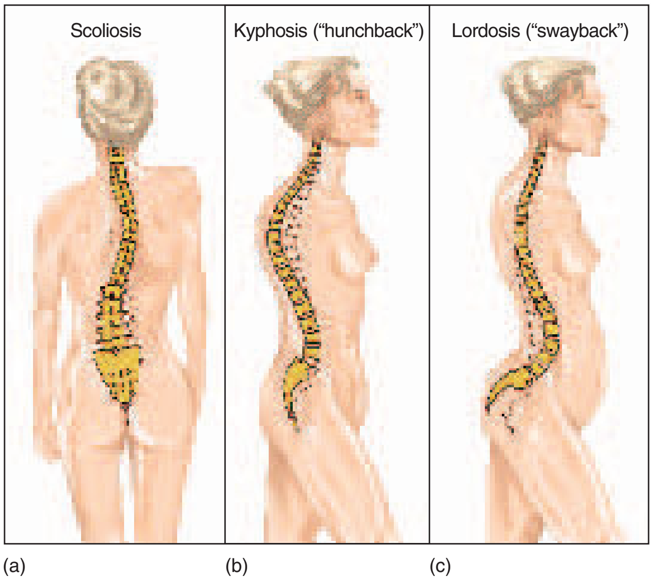


Figure 8.21 **Abnormal Spinal Curvatures.** (*a*) Scoliosis, an abnormal lateral deviation. (*b*) Kyphosis, an exaggerated thoracic curvature. (*c*) Lordosis, an exaggerated lumbar curvature.

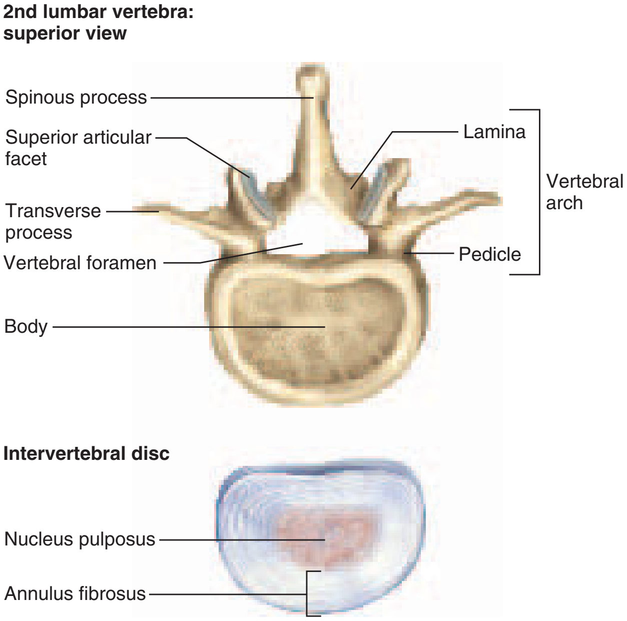


Figure 8.22 **A Representative Vertebra and Intervertebral Disc, Superior Views.**

General Structure of a Vertebra

A representative vertebra and intervertebral disc are shown in figure 8.22. The most obvious feature of a vertebra is the **body,** or **centrum**—a mass of spongy bone and red bone marrow covered with a thin layer of compact bone. This is the weight-bearing portion of the vertebra. Its rough superior and inferior surfaces provide firm attachment to the intervertebral discs.

Think About It

The vertebral bodies and intervertebral discs get progressively larger as we look lower and lower on the vertebral column. What is the functional significance of this trend?

Dorsal to the body of each vertebra is a triangular canal called the **vertebral foramen.** The vertebral foramina collectively form the **vertebral canal,** a passage for the spinal cord. The foramen is bordered by a bony **vertebral arch** composed of two parts on each side: a pillarlike **pedicle**[34] and platelike **lamina.**[35] Extending from the apex of the arch, a projection called the **spinous process** is directed toward the rear and downward. You can see and feel the spinous processes as a row of bumps along the spine. A **transverse process** extends laterally from the point where the pedicle and lamina meet. The spinous and transverse processes provide points of attachment for the spinal muscles.

A pair of **superior articular processes** project upward from one vertebra and meet a similar pair of **inferior articular processes** that project downward from the vertebra just above (fig. 8.23*a*). Each process has a flat articular surface (facet) facing that of the adjacent vertebra. These processes restrict twisting of the vertebral column, which could otherwise severely damage the spinal cord.

When two vertebrae are joined, they exhibit an opening between their pedicles called the **intervertebral foramen.** This allows passage for spinal nerves that connect with the spinal cord at regular intervals. Each foramen is formed by an **inferior vertebral notch** in the pedicle of the superior vertebra and a **superior vertebral notch** in the pedicle of the one just below it (fig. 8.23*b*).

Intervertebral Discs

An **intervertebral disc** is a pad consisting of an inner gelatinous **nucleus pulposus** surrounded by a ring of fibrocartilage, the **annulus fibrosus** (see fig. 8.22). The discs help to bind adjacent vertebrae together, support the weight of the body, and absorb shock. Under stress—for example, when you lift a heavy weight—the discs bulge laterally.

---

[34] *ped* = foot + *icle* = little
[35] *lamina* = layer, plate

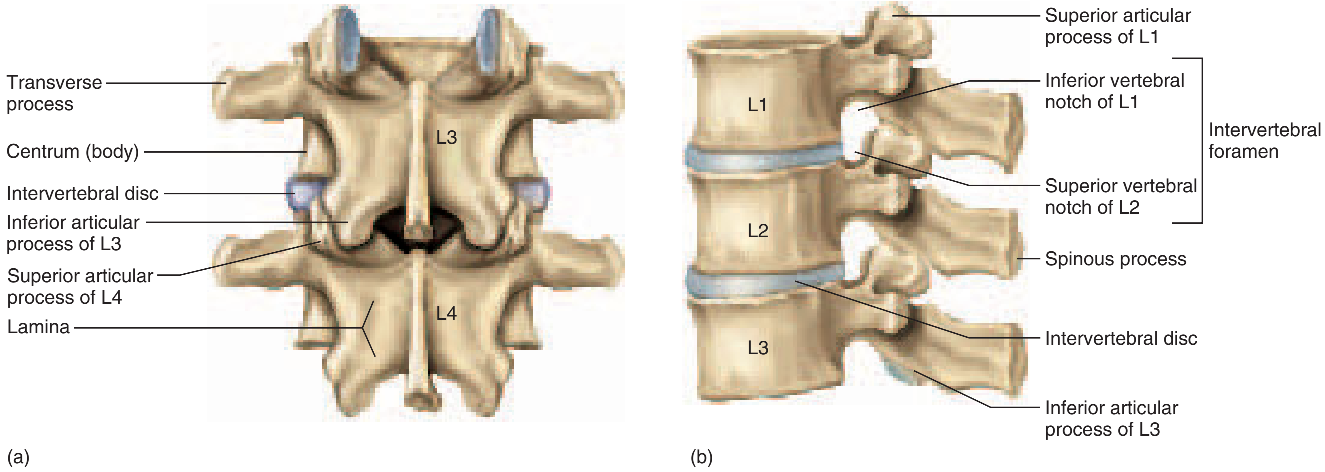

Transverse process
Centrum (body)
Intervertebral disc
Inferior articular process of L3
Superior articular process of L4
Lamina
L3
L4
(a)
L1
L2
L3
Superior articular process of L1
Inferior vertebral notch of L1
Intervertebral foramen
Superior vertebral notch of L2
Spinous process
Intervertebral disc
Inferior articular process of L3
(b)

Figure 8.23 **Articulated Vertebrae.** (*a*) Dorsal view of vertebrae L3 to L4. (*b*) Left lateral view of vertebrae L1 to L3.

Excessive stress can crack the annulus and cause the nucleus to ooze out. This is called a *herniated disc* ("ruptured" or "slipped" disc in lay terms) and may put painful pressure on the spinal cord or a spinal nerve. To relieve the pressure, a procedure called a *laminectomy* may be performed—each lamina is cut and the laminae and spinous processes are removed. This procedure is also used to expose the spinal cord for anatomical study or surgery.

Regional Characteristics of Vertebrae

We are now prepared to consider how vertebrae differ from one region of the vertebral column to another and from the generalized anatomy just described. Knowing these variations will enable you to identify the region of the spine from which an isolated vertebra was taken. More importantly, these modifications in form reflect functional differences among the vertebrae.

Cervical Vertebrae

The **cervical vertebrae** (C1–C7) are the smallest and lightest ones other than the coccygeals. The first two (C1 and C2) have unique structures that allow for head movements (fig. 8.24). Vertebra C1 is called the **atlas** because it supports the head in a manner reminiscent of the Titan of Greek mythology who was condemned by Zeus to carry the world on his shoulders. It scarcely resembles the typical vertebra; it is little more than a delicate ring surrounding a large vertebral foramen. On each side is a **lateral mass** with a deeply concave **superior articular facet** that articulates with the occipital condyle of the skull. A nodding motion of the skull, as in gesturing "yes," causes the occipital condyles to rock back and forth on these facets. The **inferior articular facets,** which are comparatively flat or only slightly concave, articulate with C2. The lateral masses are connected by an **anterior arch** and a **posterior arch,** which bear slight protuberances called the **anterior** and **posterior tubercle,** respectively.

Vertebra C2, the **axis,** allows rotation of the head as in gesturing "no." Its most distinctive feature is a prominent knob called the **dens** (denz), or **odontoid**[36] **process,** on its anterosuperior side. No other vertebra has a dens. It begins to form as an independent ossification center during the first year of life and fuses with the axis by the age of 3 to 6 years. It projects into the vertebral foramen of the atlas, where it is nestled in a facet and held in place by a **transverse ligament** (fig. 8.24*c*). A heavy blow to the top of the head can cause a fatal injury in which the dens is driven through the foramen magnum into the brainstem. The articulation between the atlas and the cranium is called the **atlanto-occipital joint;** the one between the atlas and axis is called the **atlantoaxial joint.**

The axis is the first vertebra that exhibits a spinous process. In vertebrae C2 to C6, the process is forked, or *bifid,*[37] at its tip (fig. 8.25*a*). This fork provides attachment for the nuchal ligament of the back of the neck. All seven cervical vertebrae have a prominent round **transverse foramen** in each transverse process. These foramina provide passage and protection for the *vertebral arteries,* which supply blood to the brain. Transverse foramina occur in no other vertebrae and thus provide an easy means of recognizing a cervical vertebra.

---

[36] *dens* = *odont* = tooth + *oid* = resembling
[37] *bifid* = cleft into two parts

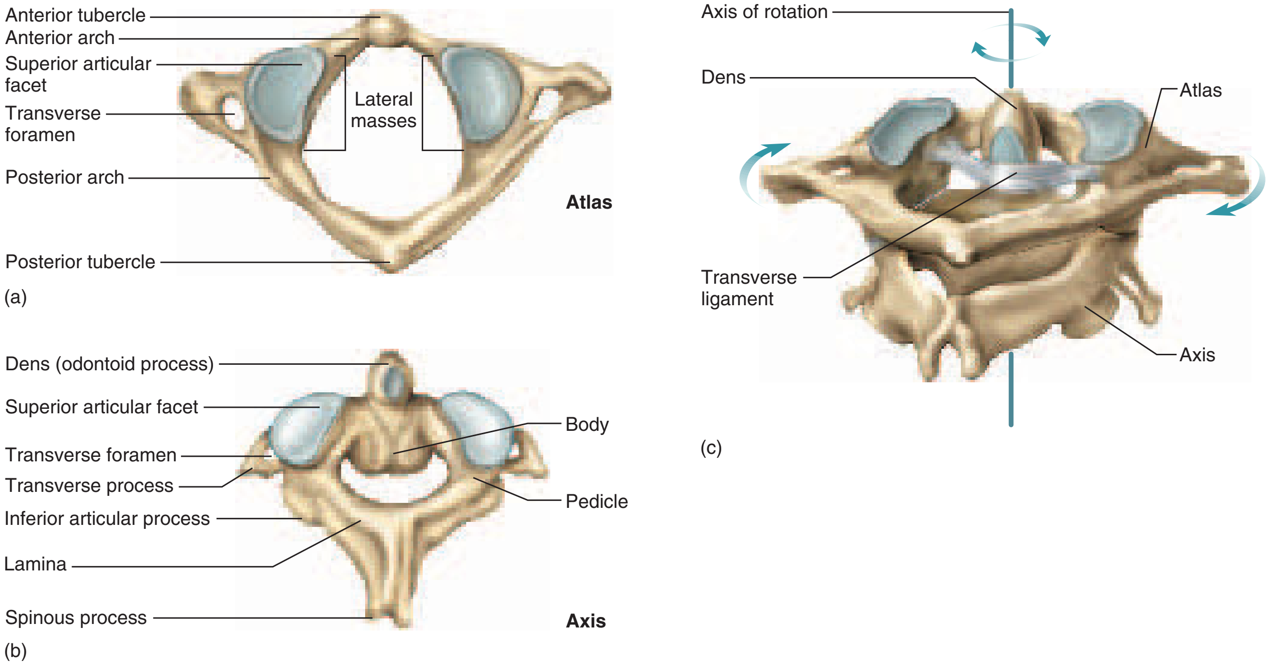

Anterior tubercle
Anterior arch
Superior articular facet
Transverse foramen
Lateral masses
Posterior arch
Atlas
Posterior tubercle
(a)
Dens (odontoid process)
Superior articular facet
Transverse foramen
Transverse process
Inferior articular process
Lamina
Spinous process
Body
Pedicle
Axis
(b)
Axis of rotation
Dens
Atlas
Transverse ligament
Axis
(c)

Figure 8.24 The Atlas and Axis, Cervical Vertebrae C1 and C2. (*a*) The atlas, superior view. (*b*) The axis, posterosuperior view. (*c*) Articulation of the atlas and axis and rotation of the atlas. This movement turns the head from side to side, as in gesturing "no." Note the transverse ligament holding the dens of the axis in place.

Think About It

How would head movements be affected if vertebrae C1 and C2 had the same structure as C3? What is the functional advantage of the lack of a spinous process in C1?

Cervical vertebrae C3 to C6 are similar to the typical vertebra described earlier, with the addition of the transverse foramina and bifid spinous processes. Vertebra C7 is a little different—its spinous process is not bifid, but it is especially long and forms a prominent bump on the lower back of the neck. This feature is a convenient landmark for counting vertebrae. Because it is so conspicuous, C7 is sometimes called the *vertebra prominens.*

Thoracic Vertebrae

There are 12 **thoracic vertebrae** (T1–T12), corresponding to the 12 pairs of ribs attached to them. They lack the transverse foramina and bifid processes that distinguish the cervicals, but possess the following distinctive features of their own (fig. 8.25*b*):

- The spinous processes are relatively pointed and angle sharply downward.
- The body is somewhat heart-shaped, more massive than in the cervical vertebrae but less than in the lumbar vertebrae.
- The body has small, smooth, slightly concave spots called *costal facets* (to be described shortly) for attachment of the ribs.
- Vertebrae T1 to T10 have a shallow, cuplike **transverse costal**[38] **facet** at the end of each transverse process. These provide a second point of articulation for ribs 1 to 10. There are no transverse costal facets on T11 and T12 because ribs 11 and 12 attach only to the bodies of the vertebrae.

No other vertebrae have ribs articulating with them. Thoracic vertebrae vary among themselves mainly because of variations in the way the ribs articulate. In most cases, a rib inserts between two vertebrae, so each vertebra contributes one-half of the articular surface. A rib articulates with the **inferior costal facet** (FASS-et) of the upper vertebra and the **superior costal facet** of the vertebra below that. This terminology may be a little confusing, but note that the superior and inferior facets are named for

---

[38] *costa* = rib + *al* = pertaining to

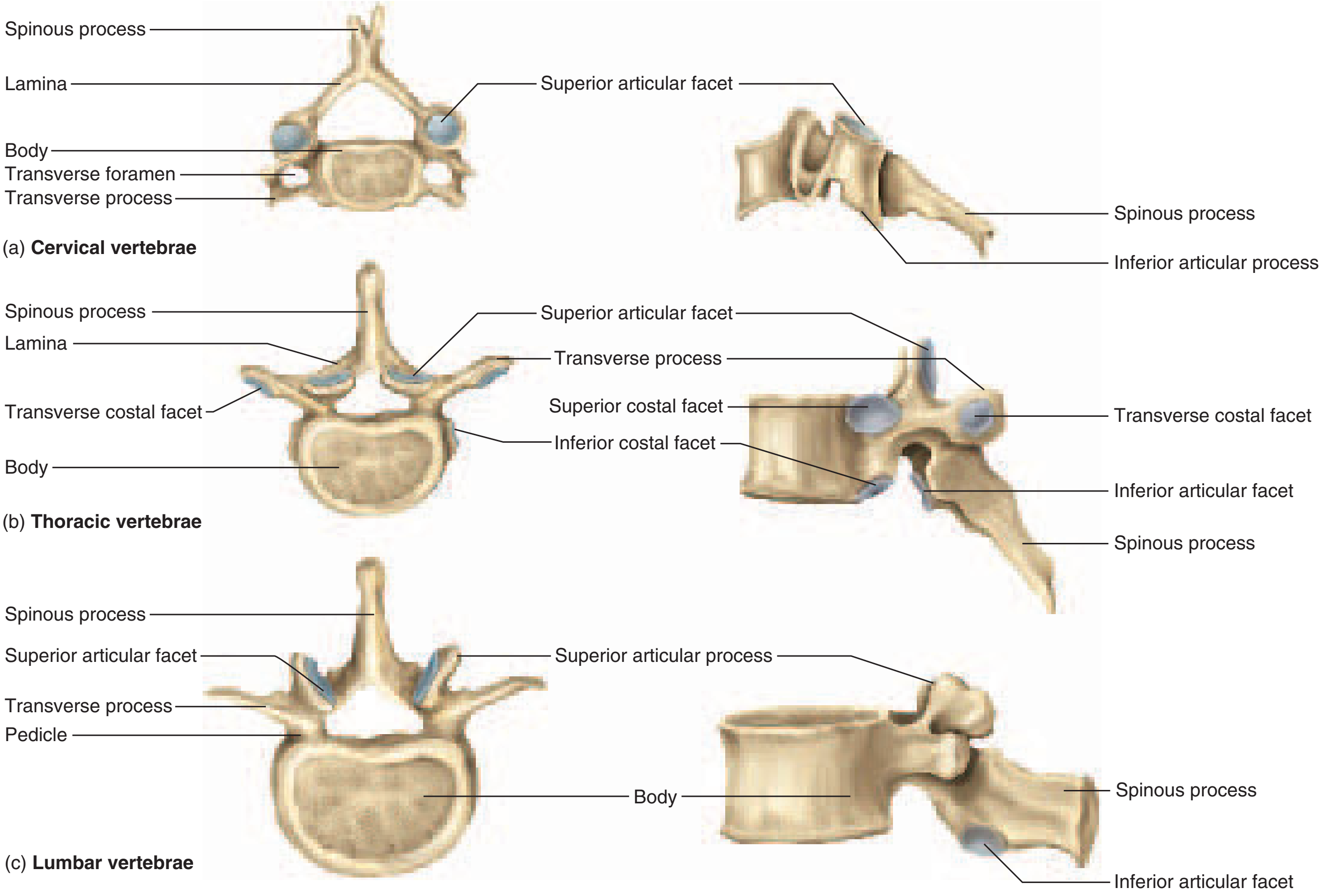

Spinous process
Lamina
Body
Transverse foramen
Transverse process
(a) Cervical vertebrae
Superior articular facet
Spinous process
Inferior articular process
Spinous process
Lamina
Transverse costal facet
Body
(b) Thoracic vertebrae
Superior articular facet
Transverse process
Superior costal facet
Inferior costal facet
Transverse costal facet
Inferior articular facet
Spinous process
Spinous process
Superior articular facet
Transverse process
Pedicle
(c) Lumbar vertebrae
Superior articular process
Body
Spinous process
Inferior articular facet

Figure 8.25 Typical Cervical, Thoracic, and Lumbar Vertebrae. The *left-hand* figures are superior views, and the *right-hand* figures are left lateral views.

List all the features that distinguish vertebra L1 from T12.

Chapter 8

their position on the vertebral body, not for which part of the rib's articulation they provide. Vertebrae T1 and T10 to T12, however, have complete costal facets on the bodies for ribs 1 and 10 to 12, which articulate on the vertebral body instead of between vertebrae. Vertebrae T11 and T12, as noted, have no transverse costal facets. These variations will be more functionally understandable after you have studied the anatomy of the ribs, so we will return then to the details of these articular surfaces.

Lumbar Vertebrae

There are five **lumbar vertebrae** (L1–L5). Their most distinctive features are a thick, stout body and a blunt, squarish spinous process (fig. 8.25*c*). In addition, their articular processes are oriented differently than on other vertebrae. In thoracic vertebrae, the superior processes face forward and the inferior processes face to the rear. In lumbar vertebrae, the superior processes face medially (like the palms of your hands about to clap), and the inferior processes face laterally, toward the superior processes of the next vertebra. This arrangement makes the lumbar region of the spine especially resistant to twisting. These differences are best observed on an articulated skeleton. Vertebra L1 is an exception to this pattern, as it represents a transition between the thoracic and lumbar pattern. Its superior articular surfaces face dorsally to meet the inferior processes of T12, while its inferior articular surfaces face laterally like those of the rest of the lumbar vertebrae.

Sacrum

The **sacrum** is a bony plate that forms the dorsal wall of the pelvic cavity (fig. 8.26). It is named for the fact that it

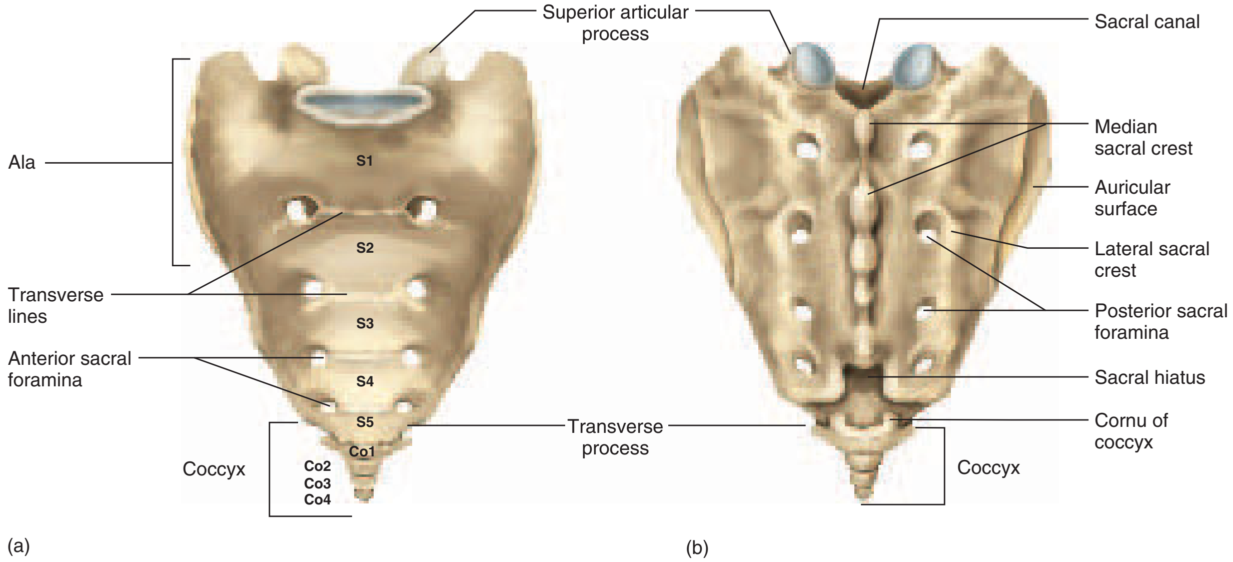


Figure 8.26 **The Sacrum and Coccyx.** (*a*) Anterior surface, which faces the viscera of the pelvic cavity. (*b*) Posterior surface. The processes of this surface can be palpated in the sacral region.

was once considered the seat of the soul.[39] In children, there are five separate **sacral vertebrae** (S1–S5). They begin to fuse around age 16 and are fully fused by age 26.

The anterior surface of the sacrum is relatively smooth and concave and has four transverse lines that indicate where the five vertebrae have fused. This surface exhibits four pairs of large **anterior sacral (pelvic) foramina,** which allow for passage of nerves and arteries to the pelvic organs. The dorsal surface of the sacrum is very rough. The spinous processes of the vertebrae fuse into a dorsal ridge called the **median sacral crest.** The transverse processes fuse into a less prominent **lateral sacral crest** on each side of the median crest. Again on the dorsal side of the sacrum, there are four pairs of openings for spinal nerves, the **posterior sacral foramina.** The nerves that emerge here supply the gluteal region and lower limb.

A **sacral canal** runs through the sacrum and ends in an inferior opening called the **sacral hiatus** (hy-AY-tus). This canal contains spinal nerve roots in life. On each side of the sacrum is an ear-shaped region called the **auricular**[40] (aw-RIC-you-lur) **surface.** This articulates with a similarly shaped surface on the os coxae and forms the strong, nearly immovable **sacroiliac** (SAY-cro-ILL-ee-ac) **joint.** At the superior end of the sacrum, lateral to the median crest, are a pair of **superior articular processes** that articulate with vertebra L5. Lateral to these are a pair of large, rough, winglike extensions called the **alae**[41] (AIL-ee).

Coccyx

The **coccyx**[42] (fig. 8.26) usually consists of four (sometimes five) small vertebrae, Co1 to Co4, which fuse by the age of 20 to 30 into a single triangular bone. Vertebra Co1 has a pair of hornlike projections, the **cornua,** which serve as attachment points for ligaments that bind the coccyx to the sacrum. The coccyx can be fractured by a difficult childbirth or a hard fall to the buttocks. Although it is the vestige of a tail, it is not entirely useless; it provides attachment for muscles of the pelvic floor.

The Thoracic Cage

The **thoracic cage** (fig. 8.27) consists of the thoracic vertebrae, sternum, and ribs. It forms a more or less conical enclosure for the lungs and heart and provides attachment for the pectoral girdle and upper limb. It has a broad base and a somewhat narrower superior apex; it is rhythmically expanded by the respiratory muscles to create a vacuum that draws air into the lungs. The inferior border of the thoracic cage is formed by a downward arc of the ribs called the **costal margin.** The ribs protect not only the thoracic organs but also the spleen, most of the liver, and to some extent the kidneys.

---

[39] *sacr* = sacred
[40] *auri* = ear + *cul* = little + *ar* = pertaining to
[41] *alae* = wings
[42] *coccyx* = cuckoo (named for resemblance to a cuckoo's beak)

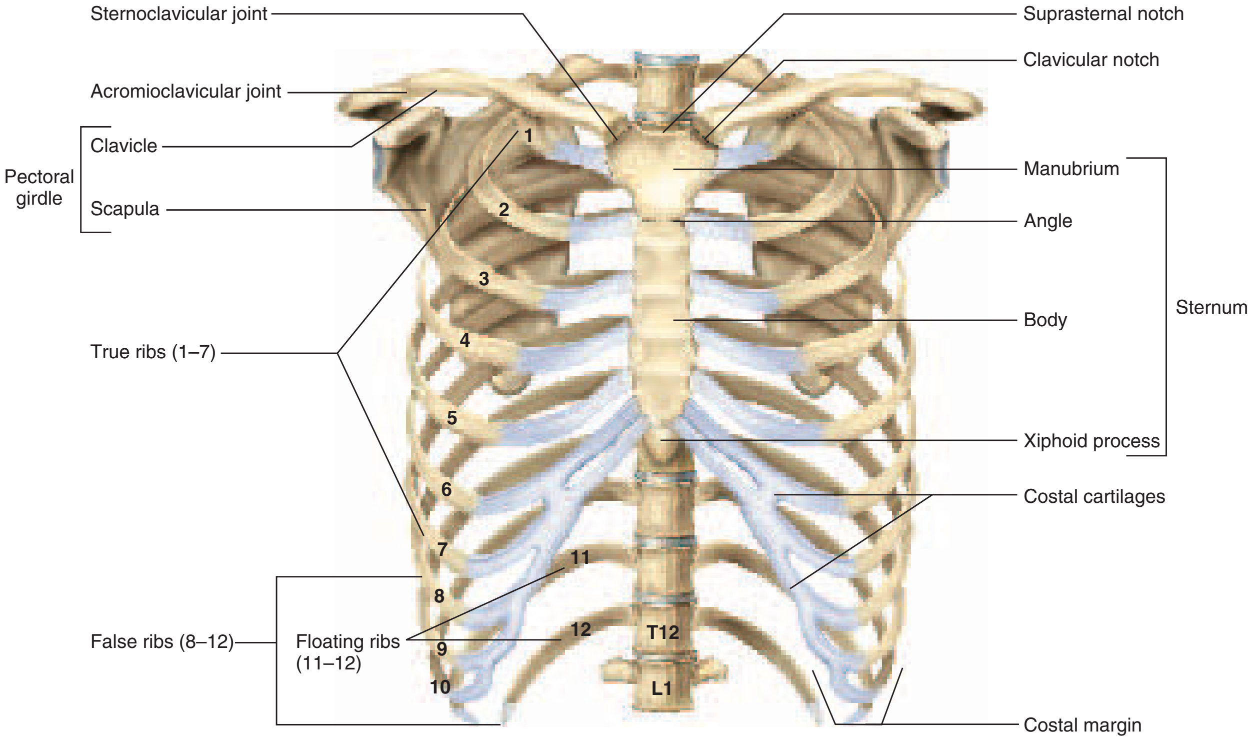


Figure 8.27 **The Thoracic Cage and Pectoral Girdle, Anterior View.**

Sternum

The **sternum** (breastbone) is a bony plate anterior to the heart. It is subdivided into three regions: the manubrium, body, and xiphoid process. The **manubrium**[43] (ma-NOO-bree-um) is the broad superior portion. It has a superomedial **suprasternal notch** (jugular notch), which you can easily palpate between your clavicles (collarbones), and right and left **clavicular notches,** where it articulates with the clavicles. The **body,** or **gladiolus,**[44] is the longest part of the sternum. It joins the manubrium at the **sternal angle,** which can be palpated as a transverse ridge at the point where the sternum projects farthest forward. In some people, however, it is rounded or concave. The second rib attaches here, making the sternal angle a useful landmark for counting ribs in a physical examination. The manubrium and body have scalloped lateral margins where cartilages of the ribs are attached. At the inferior end of the sternum is a small, pointed **xiphoid**[45] (ZIF-oyd) **process** that provides attachment for some of the abdominal muscles.

Ribs

There are 12 pairs of **ribs,** with no difference between the sexes. Each is attached at its posterior (proximal) end to the vertebral column. A strip of hyaline cartilage called the **costal cartilage** extends from the anterior (distal) ends of ribs 1 to 7 to the sternum. Ribs 1 to 7 are thus called **true ribs.** Ribs 8 to 10 attach to the costal cartilage of rib 7, and ribs 11 and 12 do not attach to anything at the distal end but are embedded in thoracic muscle. Ribs 8 to 12 are therefore called **false ribs,** and ribs 11 and 12 are also called **floating ribs** for lack of any connection to the sternum.

Ribs 1 to 10 each have a proximal **head** and **tubercle,** connected by a narrow **neck;** ribs 11 and 12 have a head only (fig. 8.28). Ribs 2 to 9 have beveled heads that come to a point between a **superior articular facet** above and an **inferior articular facet** below. Rib 1, unlike the others, is a flat horizontal plate. Ribs 2 to 10 have a sharp turn called the **angle,** distal to the tubercle, and the remainder consists of a flat blade called the **shaft.** Along the inferior margin of the shaft is a **costal groove** that marks the path of the intercostal blood vessels and nerve.

Variations in rib anatomy relate to the way different ribs articulate with the vertebrae. Once you observe these articulations on an intact skeleton, you will be better able to understand the anatomy of isolated ribs and vertebrae.

---

[43] *manubrium* = handle
[44] *gladiolus* = sword
[45] *xipho* = sword + *oid* = resembling

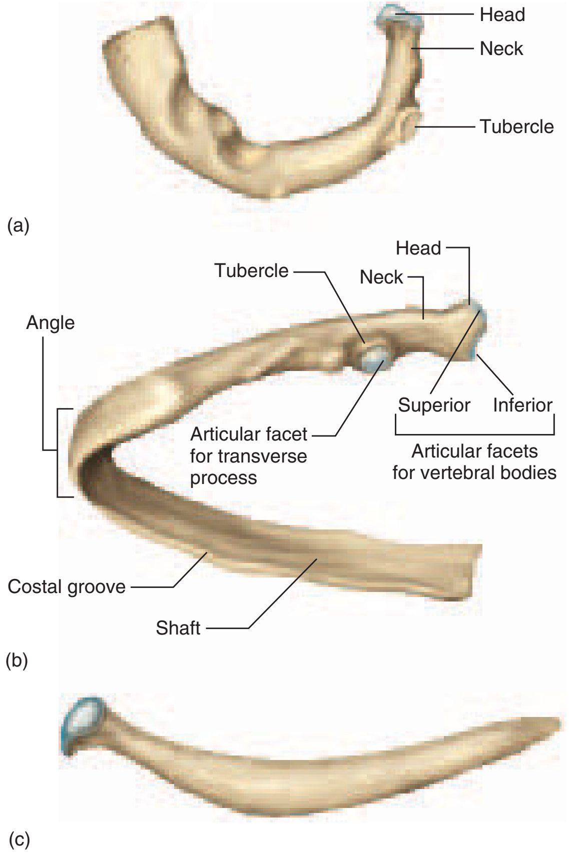

Head
Neck
Tubercle
(a)
Head
Tubercle
Neck
Angle
Superior
Inferior
Articular facet for transverse process
Articular facets for vertebral bodies
Costal groove
Shaft
(b)
(c)

Figure 8.28 **Anatomy of the Ribs.** (*a*) Rib 1 is an atypical flat plate. (*b*) Typical features of ribs 2 to 10. (*c*) Appearance of the floating ribs, 11 and 12.

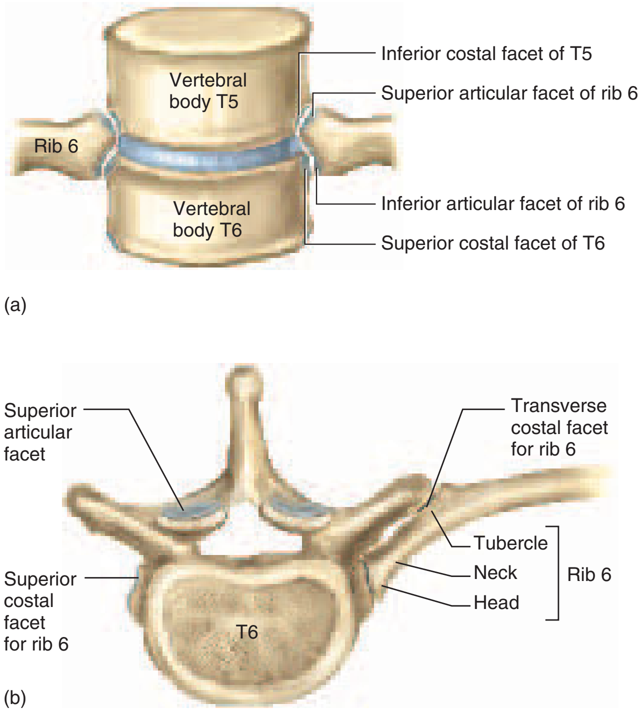

Vertebral body T5
Rib 6
Vertebral body T6
Inferior costal facet of T5
Superior articular facet of rib 6
Inferior articular facet of rib 6
Superior costal facet of T6
(a)
Superior articular facet
Transverse costal facet for rib 6
Tubercle
Neck
Head
Rib 6
Superior costal facet for rib 6
T6
(b)

Figure 8.29 **Articulation of Rib 6 with Vertebrae T5 and T6.** (*a*) Anterior view. Note the relationships of the articular facets of the rib with the costal facets of the two vertebrae. (*b*) Superior view. Note that the rib articulates with a vertebra at two points: the costal facet on the vertebral body and the transverse costal facet on the transverse process.

Vertebra T1 has a complete superior costal facet on the body that articulates with rib 1, as well as a small inferior costal facet that provides half of the articulation with rib 2. Ribs 2 through 9 all articulate between two vertebrae, so these vertebrae have both superior and inferior costal facets on the respective margins of the body. The inferior costal facet of each vertebra articulates with the superior articular facet of the rib, and the superior costal facet of the next vertebra articulates with the inferior articular facet of the same rib (fig. 8.29*a*). Ribs 10 through 12 each articulate with a single costal facet on the bodies of the respective vertebrae.

Ribs 1 to 10 each have a second point of attachment to the vertebrae: the tubercle of the rib articulates with the costal facet of the same-numbered vertebra (fig. 8.29*b*). Ribs 11 and 12 articulate only with the vertebral bodies; they do not have tubercles and vertebrae T11 and T12 do not have costal facets.

Table 8.5 summarizes these variations. Table 8.6 provides a checklist that you can use to review your knowledge of the vertebral column and thoracic cage.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

10. Make a table with three columns headed "cervical," "thoracic," and "lumbar." In each column, list the identifying characteristics of each type of vertebra.
11. Describe how rib 5 articulates with the spine. How do ribs 1 and 12 differ from this and from each other in their modes of articulation?
12. Distinguish between true, false, and floating ribs. State which ribs fall into each category.
13. Name the three divisions of the sternum and list the sternal features that can be palpated on a living person.

The Pectoral Girdle and Upper Limb

Objective

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- identify and describe the features of the clavicle, scapula, humerus, radius, ulna, and bones of the wrist and hand.

Table 8.5 Articulations of the Ribs

Rib	Type	Costal Cartilage	Articulating Vertebral Bodies	Articulating with a Transverse Costal Facet?	Rib Tubercle
1	True	Individual	T1	Yes	Present
2	True	Individual	T1 and T2	Yes	Present
3	True	Individual	T2 and T3	Yes	Present
4	True	Individual	T3 and T4	Yes	Present
5	True	Individual	T4 and T5	Yes	Present
6	True	Individual	T5 and T6	Yes	Present
7	True	Individual	T6 and T7	Yes	Present
8	False	Shared with rib 7	T7 and T8	Yes	Present
9	False	Shared with rib 7	T8 and T9	Yes	Present
10	False	Shared with rib 7	T10	Yes	Present
11	False, floating	None	T11	No	Absent
12	False, floating	None	T12	No	Absent

Pectoral Girdle

The **pectoral girdle** (shoulder girdle) supports the arm. It consists of two bones on each side of the body: the *clavicle* (collarbone) and the *scapula* (shoulder blade). The medial end of the clavicle articulates with the sternum at the **sternoclavicular joint,** and its lateral end articulates with the scapula at the **acromioclavicular joint** (see fig. 8.27). The scapula also articulates with the humerus at the **humeroscapular joint.** These are loose attachments that result in a shoulder far more flexible than that of most other mammals, but they also make the shoulder joint easy to dislocate.

Think About It

How is the unusual flexibility of the human shoulder joint related to the habitat of our primate ancestors?

Clavicle

The **clavicle**[46] (fig. 8.30) is a slightly S-shaped bone, somewhat flattened dorsoventrally and easily seen and palpated on the upper thorax (see fig. B.1*b* in atlas B). The superior surface is relatively smooth, whereas the inferior surface is marked by grooves and ridges for muscle attachment. The medial **sternal end** has a rounded, hammerlike head, and the lateral **acromial end** is markedly flattened. Near the acromial end is a rough tuberosity called the **conoid tubercle**—a ligament attachment that faces toward the rear and slightly downward. The clavicle braces the shoulder and is thickened in people who do heavy manual labor. Without it, the pectoralis major muscles would pull the shoulders forward and medially, as occurs when a clavicle is fractured. Indeed, the clavicle is the most commonly fractured bone in the body because it is so close to the surface and because people often reach out with their arms to break a fall.

Scapula

The **scapula** (fig. 8.31) is a triangular plate that dorsally overlies ribs 2 to 7. The three sides of the triangle are called the **superior, medial** (vertebral), and **lateral** (axillary) **borders,** and its three angles are the **superior, inferior,** and **lateral angles.** A conspicuous **suprascapular notch** in the superior border provides passage for a nerve. The broad anterior surface of the scapula, called the **subscapular fossa,** is slightly concave and relatively featureless. The posterior surface has a transverse ridge called the **spine,** a deep indentation superior to the spine called the **supraspinous fossa,** and a broad surface inferior to it called the **infraspinous fossa.**[47] The scapula is held in place by numerous muscles attached to these three fossae.

The most complex region of the scapula is its lateral angle, which has three main features:

1. The **acromion**[48] (ah-CRO-me-on) is a platelike extension of the scapular spine that forms the apex

---

[46] *clav* = hammer, club, key + *icle* = little

[47] *supra* = above; *infra* = below

[48] *acr* = extremity, point + *omi* = shoulder

Table 8.6 Anatomical Checklist for the Vertebral Column and Thoracic Cage

Vertebral Column

Spinal Curvatures (fig. 8.19)

- Cervical curvature
- Thoracic curvature
- Lumbar curvature
- Pelvic curvature

General Vertebral Structure (figs. 8.22 and 8.23)

- Body (centrum)
- Vertebral foramen
- Vertebral canal
- Vertebral arch
  - Pedicle
  - Lamina
- Spinous process
- Transverse process
- Superior articular process
- Inferior articular process
- Intervertebral foramen
  - Inferior vertebral notch
  - Superior vertebral notch

Intervertebral Discs (fig. 8.22)

- Annulus fibrosus
- Nucleus pulposus

Cervical Vertebrae (figs. 8.24 and 8.25a)

- Transverse foramina
- Bifid spinous process
- Atlas
  - Anterior arch
  - Anterior tubercle
  - Posterior arch

Cervical Vertebrae (figs. 8.24 and 8.25a)—(Cont.)

  - Posterior tubercle
  - Lateral mass
  - Superior articular facet
  - Inferior articular facet
  - Transverse ligament
- Axis
  - Dens (odontoid process)

Thoracic Vertebrae (fig. 8.25b)

- Superior costal facet
- Inferior costal facet
- Transverse costal facet

Lumbar Vertebrae (fig. 8.25c)

Sacral Vertebrae (fig. 8.26)

- Sacrum
- Anterior sacral foramina
- Posterior sacral foramina
- Median sacral crest
- Lateral sacral crest
- Sacral canal
- Sacral hiatus
- Auricular surface
- Superior articular process
- Alae

Coccygeal Vertebrae (fig. 8.26)

- Coccyx
- Cornu

Thoracic Cage

Sternum (fig. 8.27)

- Manubrium
  - Suprasternal notch
  - Clavicular notch
  - Sternal angle
- Body (gladiolus)
- Xiphoid process

Rib Types (fig. 8.27)

- True ribs (ribs 1–7)
- False ribs (ribs 8–12)
- Floating ribs (ribs 11 and 12)

Rib Features (fig. 8.28)

- Head
- Superior articular facet
- Inferior articular facet
- Neck
- Tubercle
- Angle
- Shaft
- Costal groove
- Costal cartilage

of the shoulder. It articulates with the clavicle—the sole point of attachment of the arm and scapula to the rest of the skeleton.

2. The **coracoid**[49] (COR-uh-coyd) **process** is shaped like a finger but named for a vague resemblance to a crow's beak; it provides attachment for the biceps brachii and other muscles of the arm.
3. The **glenoid**[50] (GLEN-oyd) **cavity** is a shallow socket that articulates with the head of the humerus.

Upper Limb

The upper limb is divided into four regions containing a total of 30 bones per limb:

1. The **brachium**[51] (BRAY-kee-um), or arm proper, extends from shoulder to elbow. It contains only one bone, the *humerus.*
2. The **antebrachium,**[52] or forearm, extends from elbow to wrist and contains two bones—the *radius* and *ulna.* In anatomical position, these bones are parallel and the radius is lateral to the ulna.
3. The **carpus,**[53] or wrist, contains eight small bones arranged in two rows.
4. The **manus,**[54] or hand, contains 19 bones in two groups—5 *metacarpals* in the palm and 14 *phalanges* in the fingers.

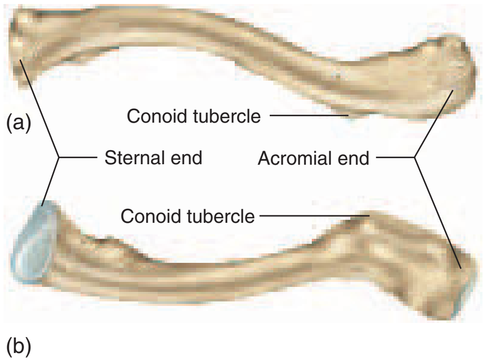

(a)
Conoid tubercle
Sternal end
Acromial end
Conoid tubercle
(b)

Figure 8.30 The Right Clavicle (collarbone). (*a*) Superior view; (*b*) inferior view.

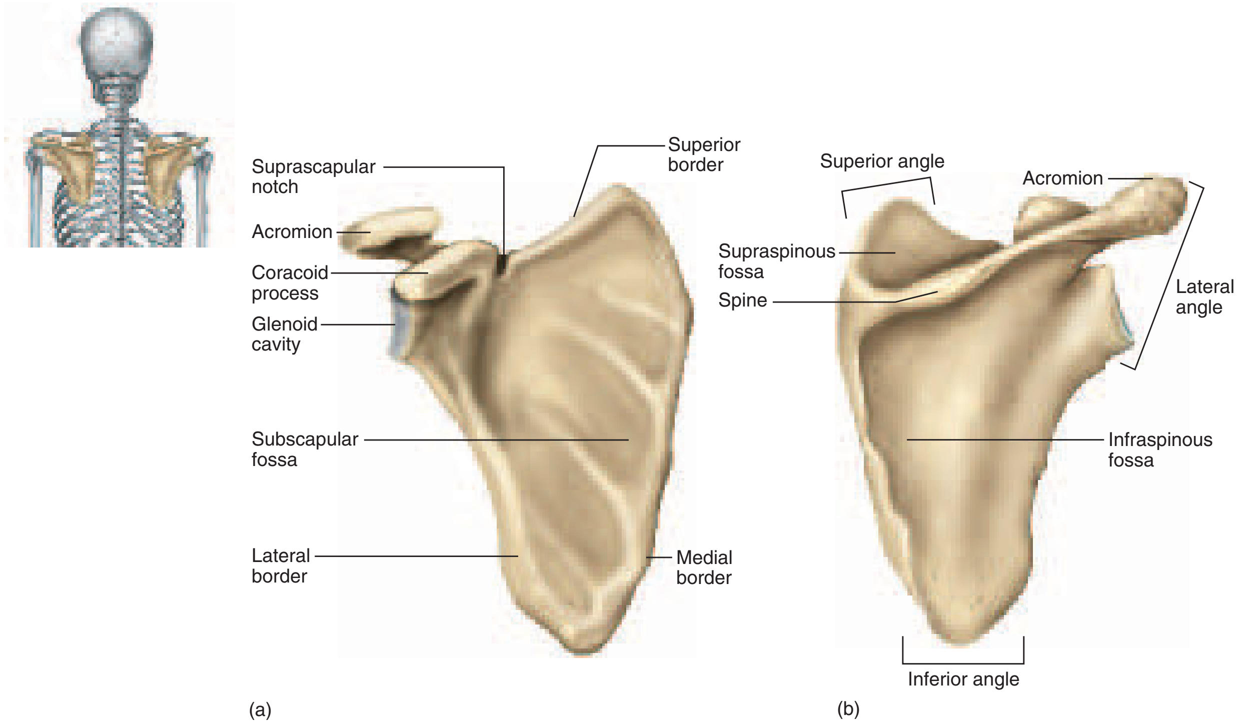

Suprascapular notch
Acromion
Coracoid process
Glenoid cavity
Subscapular fossa
Lateral border
Superior border
Medial border
(a)
Superior angle
Acromion
Supraspinous fossa
Spine
Lateral angle
Infraspinous fossa
Inferior angle
(b)

Figure 8.31 The Right Scapula. (*a*) Anterior view; (*b*) posterior view.

---

[49] *corac* = crow + *oid* = resembling

[50] *glen* = pit, socket

[51] *brachi* = arm

[52] *ante* = before

[53] *carp* = wrist

[54] *man* = hand

Humerus

The **humerus** has a hemispherical **head** that articulates with the glenoid cavity of the scapula (fig. 8.32). The smooth surface of the head (covered with articular cartilage in life) is bordered by a groove called the **anatomical neck.** Other prominent features of the proximal end are muscle attachments called the **greater** and **lesser tubercles** and an **intertubercular sulcus** between them that accommodates a tendon of the biceps muscle. The **surgical neck,** a common fracture site, is a narrowing of the bone just distal to the tubercles, at the transition from the head to the shaft.

The shaft has a rough area called the **deltoid tuberosity** on its lateral surface. This is an insertion for the deltoid muscle of the shoulder. The distal end of the humerus has two smooth condyles. The lateral one, called the **capitulum**[55] (ca-PIT-you-lum), is shaped somewhat like a fat tire and articulates with the radius. The medial one, called the **trochlea**[56] (TROCK-lee-uh), is pulleylike and articulates with the ulna. Immediately proximal to these condyles, the humerus flares out to form two bony processes, the **lateral** and **medial epicondyles.** The medial epicondyle protects the ulnar nerve, which passes close to the surface across the back of the elbow. This epicondyle is popularly known as the "funny bone" because striking the elbow on the edge of a table stimulates the ulnar nerve and produces a sharp tingling sensation.

The distal end of the humerus also shows three deep pits—two anterior and one posterior. The posterior pit, called the **olecranon** (oh-LEC-ruh-non) **fossa,** accommodates the olecranon of the ulna when the arm is extended. On the anterior surface, a medial pit called the **coronoid fossa** accommodates the coronoid process of the ulna when the arm is flexed. The lateral pit is the **radial fossa,** named for the nearby head of the radius.

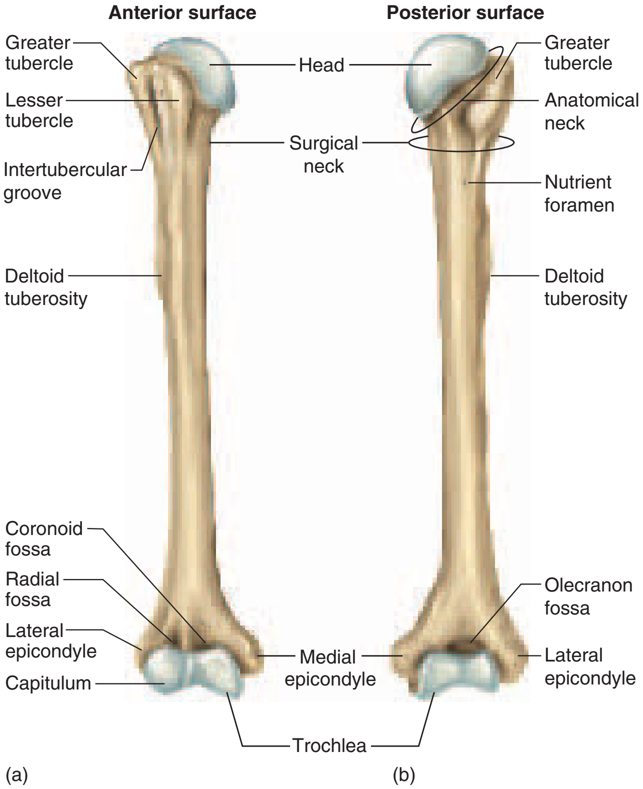


Figure 8.32 **The Right Humerus.** (*a*) Anterior view; (*b*) posterior view.

Radius

The proximal head of the **radius** (fig. 8.33) is a distinctive disc that rotates freely on the humerus when the palm is turned forward and back. It articulates with the capitulum of the humerus and radial notch of the ulna. On the shaft, immediately distal to the head, is a medial rough **tuberosity,** which is the insertion of the biceps muscle. The distal end of the radius has the following features, from lateral to medial:

1. a bony point, the **styloid process,** which can be palpated proximal to the thumb;
2. two shallow depressions (articular facets) that articulate with the scaphoid and lunate bones of the wrist; and
3. the **ulnar notch,** which articulates with the end of the ulna.

Ulna

At the proximal end of the **ulna** (fig. 8.33) is a deep, C-shaped **trochlear notch** that wraps around the trochlea of the humerus. The posterior side of this notch is formed by a prominent **olecranon**—the bony point where you rest your elbow on a table. The anterior side is formed by a less prominent **coronoid process.** Medially, the head of the ulna has a less conspicuous **radial notch,** which accommodates the head of the radius.

At the distal end of the ulna is a medial **styloid process.** The bony lumps you can palpate on each side of your wrist are the styloid processes of the radius and ulna. The radius and ulna are attached along their shafts by a ligament called the **interosseous** (IN-tur-OSS-ee-us) **membrane,** which is attached to an angular ridge called the **interosseous margin** on the medial side of each bone.

---

[55] *capit* = head + *ulum* = little
[56] *troch* = wheel, pulley

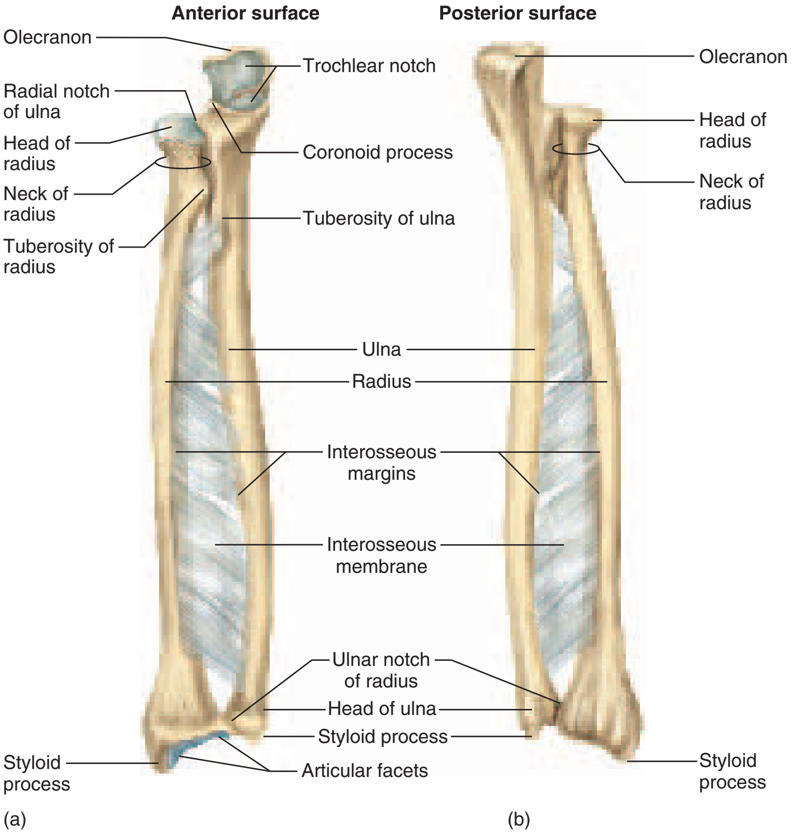

Anterior surface
Posterior surface
Olecranon
Radial notch of ulna
Head of radius
Neck of radius
Tuberosity of radius
Trochlear notch
Coronoid process
Tuberosity of ulna
Ulna
Radius
Interosseous margins
Interosseous membrane
Ulnar notch of radius
Head of ulna
Styloid process
Articular facets
Styloid process
(a)
Olecranon
Head of radius
Neck of radius
Styloid process
(b)

Figure 8.33 **The Right Radius and Ulna.** (*a*) Anterior view; (*b*) posterior view.

Carpal Bones

The **carpal bones,** which form the wrist, are arranged in two rows of four bones each (fig. 8.34). These short bones allow movements of the wrist from side to side and up and down. The carpal bones of the proximal row, starting at the lateral (thumb) side, are the **scaphoid (navicular), lunate, triquetrum** (tri-QUEE-trum), and **pisiform**—Latin for boat-, moon-, triangle-, and pea-shaped, respectively. Unlike the other carpal bones, the pisiform is a sesamoid bone; it develops within the tendon of the *flexor carpi ulnaris muscle.*

The bones of the distal row, again starting on the lateral side, are the **trapezium,**[57] **trapezoid, capitate,**[58] and **hamate.**[59] The hamate can be recognized by a prominent hook on the palmar side.

Metacarpal Bones

Bones of the palm are called **metacarpals.**[60] Metacarpal I is located at the base of the thumb and metacarpal V at the base of the little finger. On a skeleton, the metacarpals look like extensions of the fingers, so that the fingers seem much longer than they really are. The proximal end of a metacarpal bone is called the **base,** the shaft is called the **body,** and the distal end is called the **head.** The heads of the metacarpals form knuckles when you clench your fist.

Phalanges

The bones of the fingers are called **phalanges** (fah-LAN-jeez); in the singular, *phalanx* (FAY-lanks). There are two phalanges in the **pollex** (thumb) and three in each of the other digits. Phalanges are identified by Roman numerals preceded by *proximal, middle,* and *distal.* For example, proximal phalanx I is in the basal segment of the thumb

---

[57] *trapez* = table, grinding surface
[58] *capit* = head + *ate* = possessing
[59] *ham* = hook + *ate* = possessing
[60] *meta* = beyond + *carp* = wrist

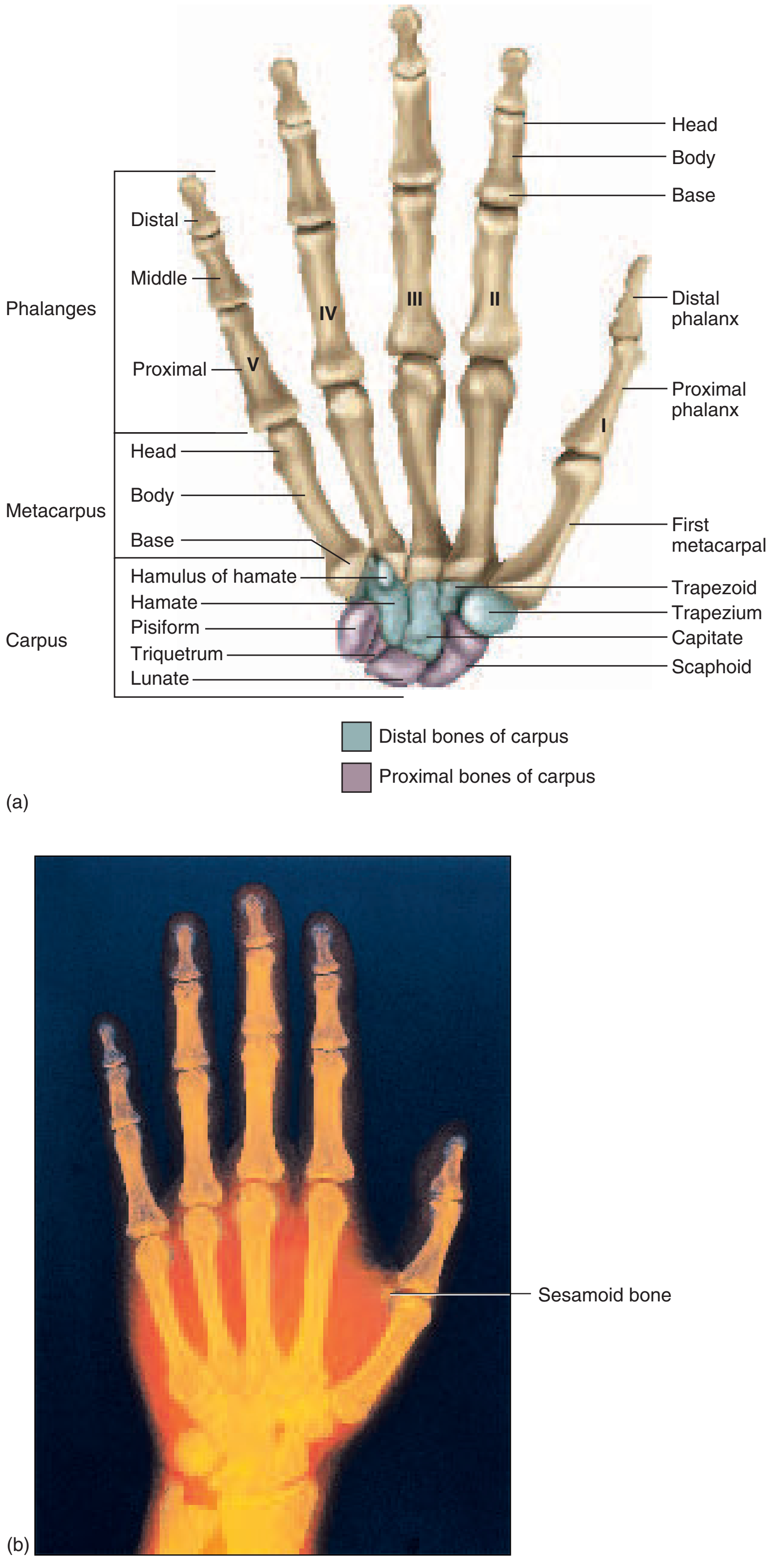

Head
Body
Base
Distal
Middle
Phalanges
Proximal
V
IV
III
II
Distal phalanx
Proximal phalanx
I
Head
Body
Metacarpus
Base
First metacarpal
Hamulus of hamate
Hamate
Pisiform
Carpus
Triquetrum
Lunate
Trapezoid
Trapezium
Capitate
Scaphoid
Distal bones of carpus
Proximal bones of carpus
(a)
Sesamoid bone
(b)

Figure 8.34 **The Right Wrist and Hand, Anterior (palmar) View.** (*a*) Carpal bones are color-coded to distinguish the proximal and distal rows. Some people remember the names of the carpal bones with the mnemonic, "Sally left the party to take Charlie home." The first letters of these words correspond to the first letters of the carpal bones, from lateral to medial, proximal row first. (*b*) X ray of an adult hand. Identify the unlabeled bones in the X ray by comparing it to the drawing.

How does figure *b* differ from the X ray of a child's hand, figure 7.11?

(the first segment beyond the web between the thumb and palm); the left proximal phalanx IV is where people usually wear wedding rings; and distal phalanx V forms the tip of the little finger. The three parts of a phalanx are the same as in a metacarpal: base, body, and head. The ventral surface of a phalanx is slightly concave from end to end and flattened from side to side; the dorsal surface is rounder and slightly convex.

Table 8.7 summarizes the bones of the pectoral girdle and upper limb.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

14. Describe how to distinguish the medial and lateral ends of the clavicle from each other, and how to distinguish its superior and inferior surfaces.
15. Name the three fossae of the scapula and describe the location of each.
16. What three bones meet at the elbow? Identify the fossae, articular surfaces, and processes of this joint and state to which bone each of these features belongs.
17. Name the four bones of the proximal row of the carpus from lateral to medial, and then the four bones of the distal row in the same order.
18. Name the four bones from the tip of the little finger to the base of the hand on that side.

The Pelvic Girdle and Lower Limb

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- identify and describe the features of the pelvic girdle, femur, patella, tibia, fibula, and bones of the foot; and
- compare the anatomy of the male and female pelvis and explain the functional significance of the differences.

Pelvic Girdle

The adult **pelvic**[61] **girdle** is composed of four bones: a right and left **os coxae** (plural, *ossa coxae*), the sacrum, and the coccyx (fig. 8.35). Another term for the os coxae—arguably the most self-contradictory term in anatomy—is the *innominate*[62] (ih-NOM-ih-nate) *bone,* "the bone with no name." The pelvic girdle supports the trunk on the legs and encloses and protects viscera of the pelvic cavity—mainly the lower colon, urinary bladder, and reproductive organs.

Each os coxae is joined to the vertebral column at one point, the sacroiliac joint, where its **auricular surface** matches the one on the sacrum. On the anterior side of the pelvis is the **pubic symphysis,**[63] the point where the right and left pubic bones are joined by a pad of fibrocartilage (the *interpubic disc*). The symphysis can be palpated immediately above the genitalia.

The pelvic girdle has a bowl-like shape with the broad **greater (false) pelvis** between the flare of the hips and the narrower **lesser (true) pelvis** below. The two are separated by a somewhat round margin called the **pelvic brim.** The opening circumscribed by the brim is called the **pelvic inlet**—an entry into the lesser pelvis through which an infant's head passes during birth. The lower margin of the lesser pelvis is called the **pelvic outlet.**

The os coxae has three distinctive features that will serve as landmarks for further description. These are the **iliac**[64] **crest** (superior crest of the hip); **acetabulum**[65] (ASS-eh-TAB-you-lum) (the hip socket—named for its resemblance to vinegar cups used in ancient Rome); and **obturator**[66] **foramen** (a large round-to-triangular hole below the acetabulum, closed by a ligament called the *obturator membrane* in life).

The adult os coxae forms by the fusion of three childhood bones called the *ilium* (ILL-ee-um), *ischium* (ISS-kee-um), and *pubis* (PEW-biss), identified by color in figure 8.36. The largest of these is the **ilium,** which extends from the iliac crest to the superior wall of the acetabulum. The iliac crest extends from a point or angle on the anterior side, called the **anterior superior spine,** to a sharp posterior angle, called the **posterior superior spine.** In a lean person, the anterior superior spines form visible anterior protrusions, and the posterior superior spines are sometimes marked by dimples above the buttocks where connective tissue attached to the spines pulls inward on the skin.

Below the superior spines are the **anterior** and **posterior inferior spines.** Below the posterior inferior spine is a deep **greater sciatic** (sy-AT-ic) **notch,** named for the sciatic nerve that passes through it and continues down the posterior side of the thigh.

The posterolateral surface of the ilium is relatively rough-textured because it serves for attachment of several muscles of the buttocks and thighs. The anteromedial surface, by contrast, is the smooth, slightly concave **iliac fossa,** covered in life by the broad *iliacus* muscle. Medially, the ilium exhibits an auricular surface that matches the one on the sacrum, so that the two bones form the sacroiliac joint.

The **ischium** forms the inferoposterior portion of the os coxae. Its heavy **body** is marked with a prominent **spine.** Inferior to the spine is a slight indentation, the

---

[61] *pelv* = basin, bowl
[62] *in* = without + *nomin* = name + *ate* = having
[63] *sym* = together + *physis* = growth
[64] *ili* = flank, loin + *ac* = pertaining to
[65] *acetabulum* = vinegar cup
[66] *obtur* = to close, stop up + *ator* = that which

Table 8.7 Anatomical Checklist for the Pectoral Girdle and Upper Limb

Pectoral Girdle

Clavicle (fig. 8.30)

- Sternal end
- Acromial end
- Conoid tubercle

Scapula (fig. 8.31)

- Borders
  - Superior border
  - Medial (vertebral) border
  - Lateral (axillary) border
- Angles
  - Superior angle
  - Inferior angle
  - Lateral angle

Scapula (fig. 8.31)—(Cont.)

- Suprascapular notch
- Spine
- Fossae
  - Subscapular fossa
  - Supraspinous fossa
  - Infraspinous fossa
- Acromion
- Coracoid process
- Glenoid cavity
- Olecranon

Upper Limb

Humerus (fig. 8.32)

- Proximal end
  - Head
  - Anatomical neck
  - Surgical neck
  - Greater tubercle
  - Lesser tubercle
  - Intertubercular sulcus
- Shaft
  - Deltoid tuberosity
- Distal end
  - Capitulum
  - Trochlea
  - Lateral epicondyle
  - Medial epicondyle
  - Olecranon fossa
  - Coronoid fossa
  - Radial fossa

Radius (fig. 8.33)

- Head
- Tuberosity
- Styloid process
- Articular facets
- Ulnar notch

Ulna (fig. 8.33)

- Trochlear notch
- Coronoid process

Ulna (fig. 8.33)—(Cont.)

- Radial notch
- Styloid process
- Interosseous border
- Interosseous membrane

Carpal Bones (fig. 8.34)

- Proximal group
  - Scaphoid
  - Lunate
  - Triquetrum
  - Pisiform
- Distal group
  - Trapezium
  - Trapezoid
  - Capitate
  - Hamate

Bones of the Hand (fig. 8.34)

- Metacarpal bones I–V
  - Base
  - Body
  - Head
- Phalanges I–V
  - Proximal phalanx
  - Middle phalanx
  - Distal phalanx

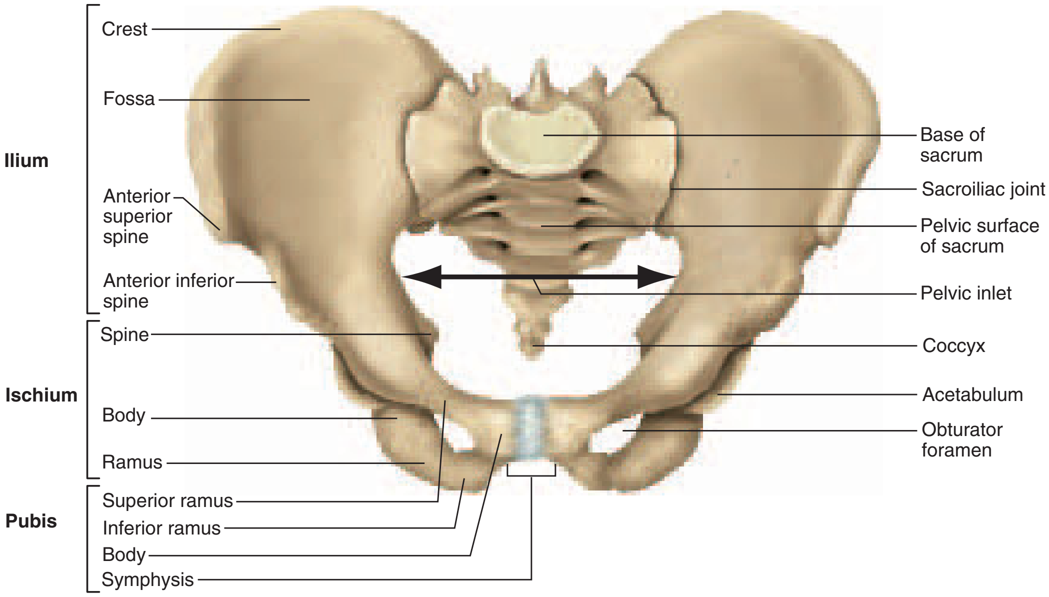

Ilium
Crest
Fossa
Anterior superior spine
Anterior inferior spine
Ischium
Spine
Body
Ramus
Pubis
Superior ramus
Inferior ramus
Body
Symphysis
Base of sacrum
Sacroiliac joint
Pelvic surface of sacrum
Pelvic inlet
Coccyx
Acetabulum
Obturator foramen

Figure 8.35 **The Pelvic Girdle, Anterosuperior View.** The pelvic girdle consists of the os coxae, sacrum, and coccyx.

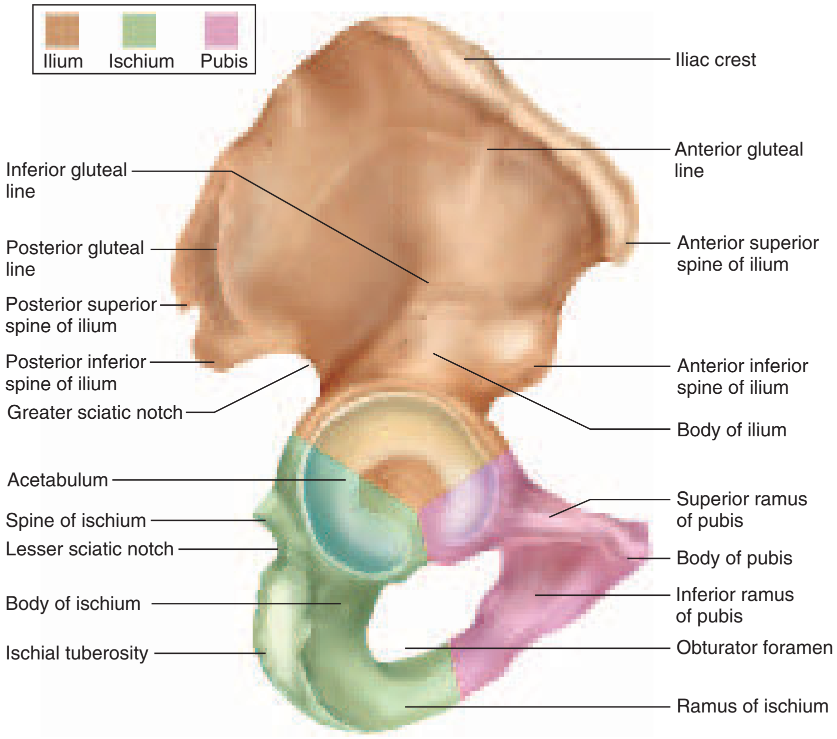

Ilium
Ischium
Pubis
Iliac crest
Anterior gluteal line
Inferior gluteal line
Posterior gluteal line
Anterior superior spine of ilium
Posterior superior spine of ilium
Posterior inferior spine of ilium
Anterior inferior spine of ilium
Greater sciatic notch
Body of ilium
Acetabulum
Spine of ischium
Lesser sciatic notch
Superior ramus of pubis
Body of pubis
Body of ischium
Inferior ramus of pubis
Ischial tuberosity
Obturator foramen
Ramus of ischium

Figure 8.36 **The Right Os Coxae, Lateral View.** The three childhood bones that fuse to form the adult os coxae are identified by color.

lesser sciatic notch, and then the thick, rough-surfaced **ischial tuberosity,** which supports your body when you are sitting. The tuberosity can be palpated by sitting on your fingers. The **ramus** of the ischium joins the inferior ramus of the pubis anteriorly.

The **pubis** (pubic bone) is the most anterior portion of the os coxae. It has a **superior** and **inferior ramus** and a triangular **body.** The body of one pubis meets the body of the other at the pubic symphysis. The pubis and ischium encircle the obturator foramen.

The female pelvis is adapted to the needs of pregnancy and childbirth. Some of the differences between the male and female pelves are described in table 8.8 and illustrated in figure 8.37.

Lower Limb

The number and arrangement of bones in the lower limb are similar to those of the upper limb. In the lower limb, however, they are adapted for weight-bearing and locomotion and are therefore shaped and articulated differently. The lower limb is divided into four regions containing a total of 30 bones per limb:

1. The **femoral region,** or thigh, extends from hip to knee and contains the *femur* (the longest bone in the body). The *patella* (kneecap) is a sesamoid bone at the junction of the femoral and crural regions.

Table 8.8 Comparison of the Male and Female Pelves

	Male	Female
General Appearance	More massive; rougher; heavier processes	Less massive; smoother; more delicate processes
Tilt	Upper end of pelvis relatively vertical	Upper end of pelvis tilted forward
Ilium, greater pelvis	Deeper; projects farther above sacroiliac joint	Shallower; does not project as far above sacroiliac joint
Lesser Pelvis	Narrower and deeper	Wider and shallower
Sacrum	Narrower and longer	Shorter and wider
Coccyx	Less movable; more vertical	More movable; tilted dorsally
Width of Greater Pelvis	Anterior superior spines closer together, hips less flared	Anterior superior spines farther apart; hips more flared
Pelvic Inlet	Heart-shaped	Round or oval
Pelvic Outlet	Smaller	Larger
Greater Sciatic Notch	Narrower	Wider
Obturator Foramen	Round	Triangular to oval
Acetabulum	Faces more laterally, larger	Faces slightly ventrally, smaller
Pubic arch	Usually 90° or less	Usually greater than 100°

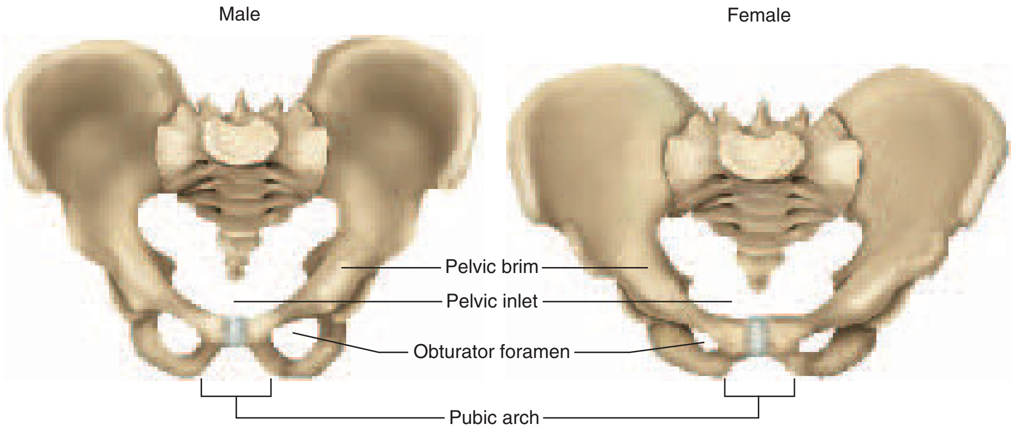


Figure 8.37 Comparison of the Male and Female Pelvic Girdles.

2. The **crural** (CROO-rul) **region,** or leg proper, extends from knee to ankle and contains two bones, the medial *tibia* and lateral *fibula.*
3. The **tarsal region (tarsus),** or ankle, is the union of the crural region with the foot. The tarsal bones are treated as part of the foot.
4. The **pedal region (pes),** or foot, is composed of 7 *tarsal bones,* 5 *metatarsals,* and 14 *phalanges* in the toes.

Femur

The **femur** (FEE-mur) (fig. 8.38) has a nearly spherical head that articulates with the acetabulum of the pelvis, forming a quintessential *ball-and-socket joint.* A ligament extends from the acetabulum to a pit, the **fovea capitis**[67] (FOE-vee-uh CAP-ih-tiss), in the head of the femur. Distal to the head is a constricted **neck** and then two massive, rough processes called the **greater** and **lesser trochanters** (tro-CAN-turs), which are insertions for the powerful muscles of the hip. They are connected on the posterior side by a thick oblique ridge of bone, the **intertrochanteric crest,** and on the anterior side by a more delicate **intertrochanteric line.**

The primary feature of the shaft is a posterior ridge called the **linea aspera**[68] (LIN-ee-uh ASS-peh-ruh) at its midpoint. It branches into less conspicuous lateral and medial ridges at its inferior and superior ends.

The distal end of the femur flares into **medial** and **lateral epicondyles,** which serve as sites of muscle and ligament attachment. Distal to these are two smooth round surfaces of the knee joint, the **medial** and **lateral condyles,** separated by a groove called the **intercondylar** (IN-tur-CON-dih-lur) **fossa.** On the anterior side of the femur, a smooth medial depression called the **patellar surface** articulates with the patella.

Patella

The **patella,**[69] or kneecap (fig. 8.38), is a roughly triangular sesamoid bone that forms within the tendon of the knee as a child begins to walk. It has a broad superior **base,** a pointed inferior **apex,** and a pair of shallow **articular facets** on its posterior surface where it articulates with the femur. The lateral facet is usually larger than the medial. The *quadriceps femoris tendon* extends from the anterior muscle of the thigh (the *quadriceps femoris*) to the patella, and it continues as the *patellar ligament* from the patella to the tibia.

Tibia

The leg has two bones—a thick, strong tibia (TIB-ee-uh) and a slender, lateral fibula (FIB-you-luh) (fig. 8.39). The **tibia,** on the medial side, is the only weight-bearing bone of the crural region. Its broad superior head has two fairly flat articular surfaces, the **medial** and **lateral condyles,** separated by a ridge called the **intercondylar eminence.** The condyles of the tibia articulate with those of the femur. The rough anterior surface of the tibia, the **tibial tuberosity,** can be palpated just below the patella. This is where the patellar ligament inserts and the thigh muscles exert their pull when they extend the leg. Distal to this, the shaft has a sharply angular **anterior crest,** which can be palpated in the shin. At the ankle, just above the rim of a standard dress shoe, you can palpate a prominent bony knob on each side. These are the **medial** and **lateral malleoli**[70] (MAL-ee-OH-lie). The medial malleolus is part of the tibia, and the lateral malleolus is the part of the fibula.

Fibula

The **fibula** (fig. 8.39) is a slender lateral strut that helps to stabilize the ankle. It does not bear any of the body's weight; indeed, orthopedic surgeons sometimes remove the fibula and use it to replace damaged or missing bone elsewhere in the body. The fibula is somewhat thicker and broader at its proximal end, the **head,** than at the distal end. The point of the head is called the **apex.** The distal expansion is the lateral malleolus.

Like the radius and ulna, the tibia and fibula are joined by an interosseous membrane along their shafts.

The Ankle and Foot

The **tarsal bones** of the ankle are arranged in proximal and distal groups somewhat like the carpal bones of the wrist (fig. 8.40). Because of the load-bearing role of the ankle, however, their shapes and arrangement are conspicuously different from those of the carpal bones, and they are thoroughly integrated into the structure of the foot. The largest tarsal bone is the **calcaneus**[71] (cal-CAY-nee-us), which forms the heel. Its posterior end is the point of attachment for the **calcaneal (Achilles) tendon** from the calf muscles. The second-largest tarsal bone, and the most superior, is the **talus.** It has three articular surfaces: an inferoposterior one that articulates with the calcaneus, a superior **trochlear surface** that articulates with the tibia, and an anterior surface that articulates with a short, wide tarsal bone called the **navicular.** The talus, calcaneus, and navicular are considered the proximal row of tarsal bones. (*Navicular* is also used as a synonym for the scaphoid bone of the wrist.)

The distal group forms a row of four bones. Proceeding from the medial side to the lateral, these are the **medial,**

Chapter 8

---

[67] *fovea* = pit + *capitis* = of the head
[68] *linea* = line + *asper* = rough
[69] *pat* = pan + *ella* = little
[70] *malle* = hammer + *olus* = little
[71] *calc* = stone, chalk

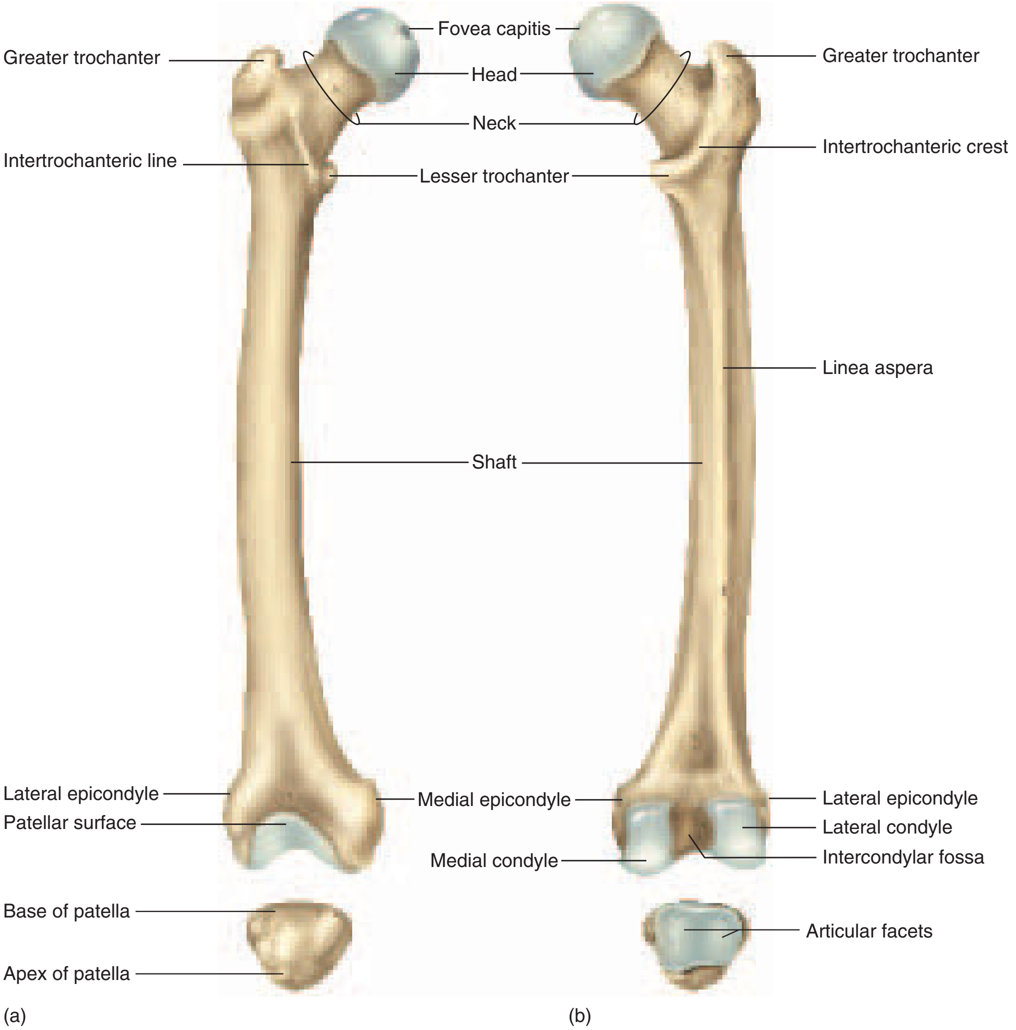

Greater trochanter
Fovea capitis
Head
Neck
Intertrochanteric line
Lesser trochanter
Shaft
Lateral epicondyle
Patellar surface
Medial epicondyle
Base of patella
Apex of patella
(a)
Greater trochanter
Intertrochanteric crest
Linea aspera
Lateral epicondyle
Lateral condyle
Intercondylar fossa
Medial condyle
Articular facets
(b)

Figure 8.38 **The Right Femur and Patella.** (*a*) Anterior view; (*b*) posterior view.

intermediate, and **lateral cuneiforms**[72] (cue-NEE-ih-forms) and the **cuboid.** The cuboid is the largest.

The remaining bones of the foot are similar in arrangement and name to those of the hand. The proximal **metatarsals**[73] are similar to the metacarpals. They are **metatarsals I** to **V** from medial to lateral, metatarsal I being proximal to the great toe. (Note that Roman numeral I represents the *medial* group of bones in the foot but the *lateral* group in the hand. In both cases, however, Roman numeral I refers to the largest digit of the limb.) Metatarsals I to III articulate with the first through third cuneiforms; metatarsals IV and V both articulate with the cuboid.

Bones of the toes, like those of the fingers, are called phalanges. The great toe is the **hallux** and contains only two bones, the proximal and distal phalanx I. The other toes each contain a proximal, middle, and distal phalanx. The metatarsal and phalangeal bones each have a base, body, and head, like the bones of the hand. All of them, especially the phalanges, are slightly concave on the ventral side.

The sole of the foot normally does not rest flat on the ground; rather, it has three springy arches that absorb the stress of walking (fig. 8.41). The **medial longitudinal arch,** which essentially extends from heel to hallux, is formed from the calcaneus, talus, navicular, cuneiforms, and metatarsals I to III. The **lateral longitudinal arch** extends from heel to little toe and includes the calcaneus, cuboid, and metatarsals IV and V. The **transverse arch** includes the cuboid, cuneiforms, and proximal heads of the

---

[72] *cunei* = wedge + *form* = in the shape of
[73] *meta* = beyond + *tars* = ankle

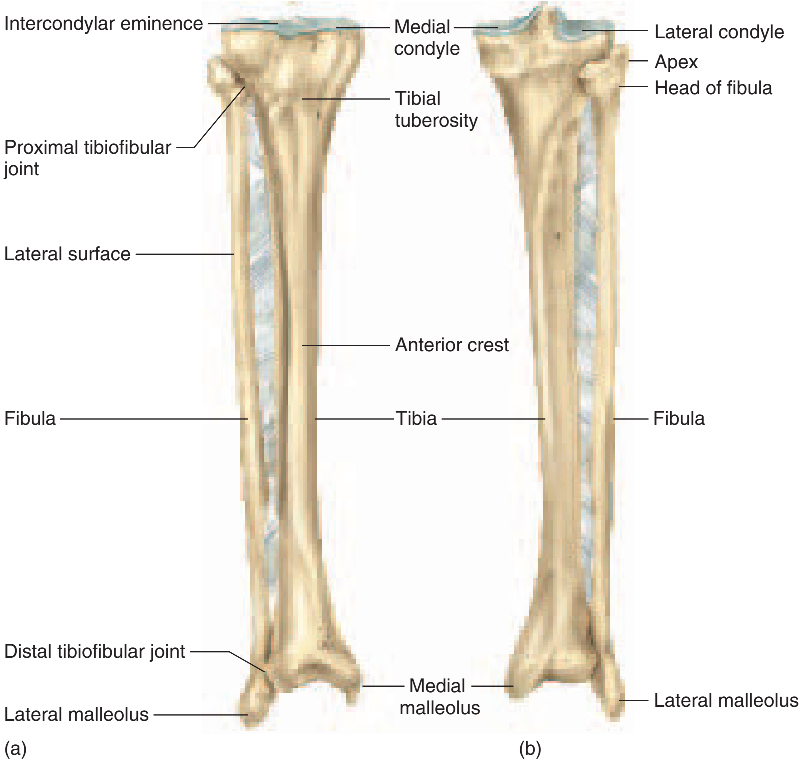

Intercondylar eminence
Medial condyle
Tibial tuberosity
Proximal tibiofibular joint
Lateral surface
Anterior crest
Fibula
Tibia
Distal tibiofibular joint
Lateral malleolus
Medial malleolus
(a)
Lateral condyle
Apex
Head of fibula
Fibula
Lateral malleolus
(b)

Figure 8.39 **The Right Tibia and Fibula.** (*a*) Anterior view; (*b*) posterior view.
Why is the distal end of the tibia broader than that of the fibula?

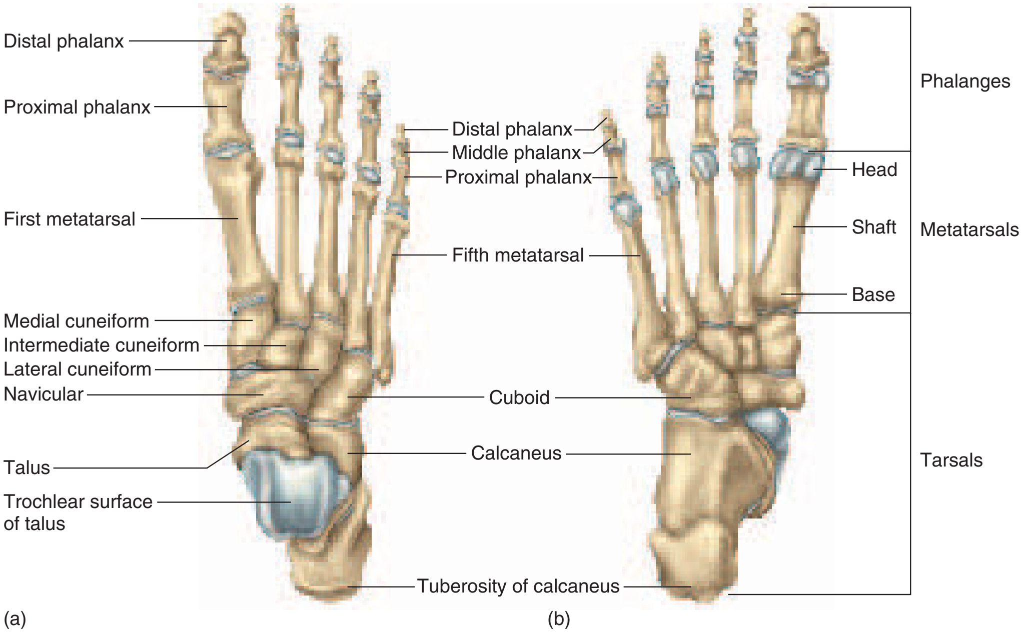

Distal phalanx
Proximal phalanx
First metatarsal
Medial cuneiform
Intermediate cuneiform
Lateral cuneiform
Navicular
Talus
Trochlear surface of talus
(a)
Distal phalanx
Middle phalanx
Proximal phalanx
Fifth metatarsal
Cuboid
Calcaneus
Tuberosity of calcaneus
(b)
Phalanges
Head
Shaft
Base
Metatarsals
Tarsals

Figure 8.40 **The Right Foot.** (*a*) Superior view; (*b*) inferior view.

metatarsals. These arches are held together by short, strong ligaments. Excessive weight, repetitious stress, or congenital weakness of these ligaments can stretch them, resulting in *pes planis* (commonly called flat feet or fallen arches). This condition makes a person less tolerant of prolonged standing and walking. A comparison of the flat-footed apes with humans underscores the significance of the human foot arches (see insight 8.5, p. 286).

Table 8.9 summarizes the pelvic girdle and lower limb.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

19. Name the bones of the adult pelvic girdle. What three bones of a child fuse to form the os coxae of an adult?
20. Name any four structures of the pelvis that you can palpate and describe where to palpate them.
21. What parts of the femur are involved in the hip joint? What parts are involved in the knee joint?
22. Name the prominent knobs on each side of your ankle. What bones contribute to these structures?
23. Name all the bones that articulate with the talus and describe the location of each.

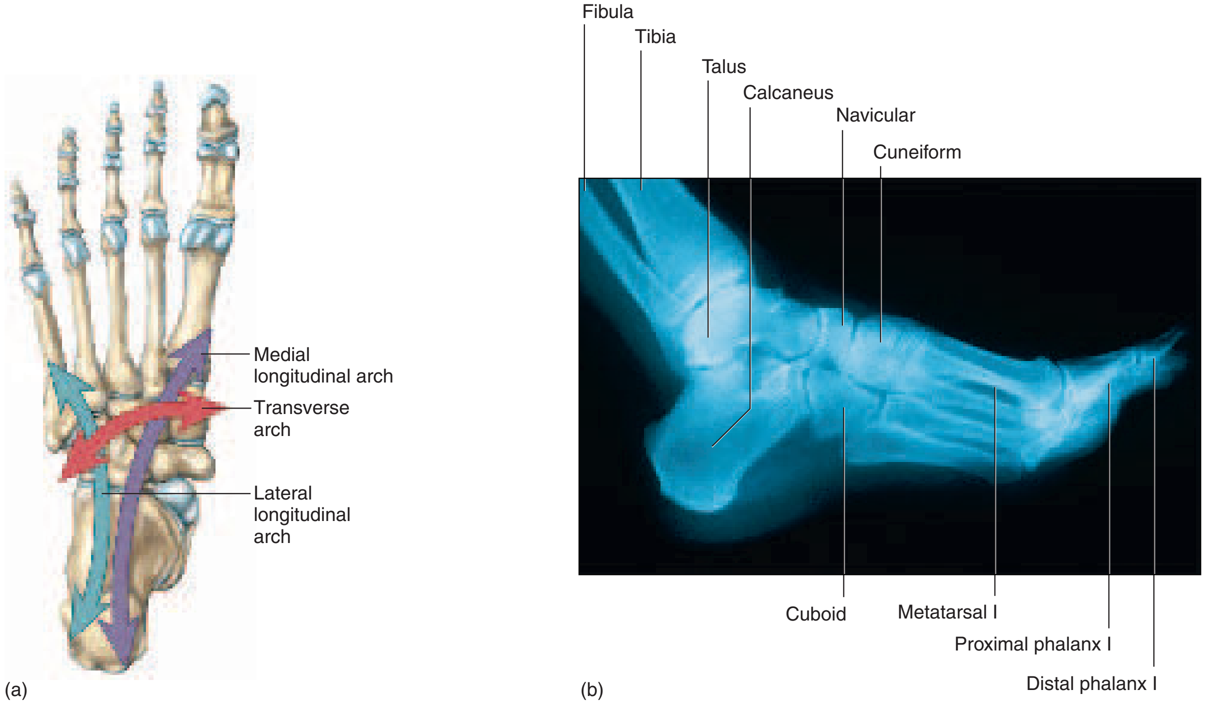

Medial longitudinal arch
Transverse arch
Lateral longitudinal arch
(a)
Fibula
Tibia
Talus
Calcaneus
Navicular
Cuneiform
Cuboid
Metatarsal I
Proximal phalanx I
Distal phalanx I
(b)

Figure 8.41 Arches of the Foot. (*a*) Inferior view of the right foot. (*b*) X ray of the right foot, lateral view, showing the lateral longitudinal arch.

Table 8.9 Anatomical Checklist for the Pelvic Girdle and Lower Limb

Pelvic Girdle

Os Coxae (figs. 8.35 and 8.36)

- Pubic symphysis
- Greater (false) pelvis
- Lesser (true) pelvis
- Pelvic brim
- Pelvic inlet
- Pelvic outlet
- Acetabulum
- Obturator foramen
- Ilium
  - Iliac crest
  - Anterior superior spine
  - Anterior inferior spine
  - Posterior superior spine
  - Posterior inferior spine

Ilium—(Cont.)

  - Greater sciatic notch
  - Iliac pillar
  - Iliac fossa
  - Auricular surface
- Ischium
  - Body
  - Ischial spine
  - Lesser sciatic notch
  - Ischial tuberosity
  - Ramus
- Pubis
  - Superior ramus
  - Inferior ramus
  - Body

Lower Limb

Femur (fig. 8.38)

- Proximal end
  - Head
  - Fovea capitis
  - Neck
  - Greater trochanter
  - Lesser trochanter
  - Intertrochanteric crest
  - Intertrochanteric line
- Shaft
  - Linea aspera
- Distal end
  - Medial condyle
  - Lateral condyle
  - Intercondylar fossa
  - Medial epicondyle
  - Lateral epicondyle
  - Patellar surface

Patella (fig. 8.38)

- Base
- Apex
- Articular facets

Tibia (fig. 8.39)

- Medial condyle
- Lateral condyle
- Intercondylar eminence
- Tibial tuberosity

Tibia (fig. 8.39)—(Cont.)

- Anterior crest
- Medial malleolus

Fibula (fig. 8.39)

- Head
- Apex (styloid process)
- Lateral malleolus

Tarsal Bones (fig. 8.40)

- Proximal group
  - Calcaneus
  - Talus
  - Navicular
- Distal group
  - Medial cuneiform
  - Intermediate cuneiform
  - Lateral cuneiform
  - Cuboid

Bones of the Foot (figs. 8.40 and 8.41)

- Metatarsal bones I–V
- Phalanges
  - Proximal phalanx
  - Middle phalanx
  - Distal phalanx
- Arches of the foot
  - Medial longitudinal arch
  - Lateral longitudinal arch
  - Transverse arch

Insight 8.5 Evolutionary Medicine

Skeletal Adaptations for Bipedalism

Some mammals can stand, hop, or walk briefly on their hind legs, but humans are the only mammals that are habitually bipedal. Footprints preserved in a layer of volcanic ash in Tanzania indicate that hominids walked upright as early as 3.6 million years ago. This bipedal locomotion is possible only because of several adaptations of the human feet, legs, spine, and skull (fig. 8.42). These features are so distinctive that paleoanthropologists (those who study human fossil remains) can tell with considerable certainty whether a fossil species was able to walk upright.

As important as the hand has been to human evolution, the foot may be an even more significant adaptation. Unlike other mammals, humans support their entire body weight on two feet. While apes are flat-footed, humans have strong, springy foot arches that absorb shock as the body jostles up and down during walking and running. The tarsal bones are tightly articulated with each other, and the calcaneus is strongly developed. The hallux (great toe) is not opposable as it is in most Old World monkeys and apes, but it is highly developed so that it provides the "toe-off" that pushes the body forward in the last phase of the stride. For this reason, loss of the hallux has a more crippling effect than the loss of any other toe.

While the femurs of apes are nearly vertical, in humans they angle medially from the hip to the knee. This places our knees closer together, beneath the body's center of gravity. We lock our knees when standing, allowing us to maintain an erect posture with little muscular effort. Apes cannot do this, and they cannot stand on two legs for very long without tiring—much as you would if you tried to maintain an erect posture with your knees slightly bent.

In apes and other quadrupedal (four-legged) mammals, the abdominal viscera are supported by the muscular wall of the abdomen. In humans, the viscera bear down on the floor of the pelvic cavity, and a bowl-shaped pelvis is necessary to support their weight. This has resulted in a narrower pelvic outlet—a condition quite incompatible with the fact that we, including our infants, are such a large-brained species. The pain of childbirth is unique to humans and, one might say, a price we must pay for having both a large brain and a bipedal stance.

The largest muscle of the buttock, the *gluteus maximus,* serves in apes primarily as an abductor of the thigh—that is, it moves the leg lat-

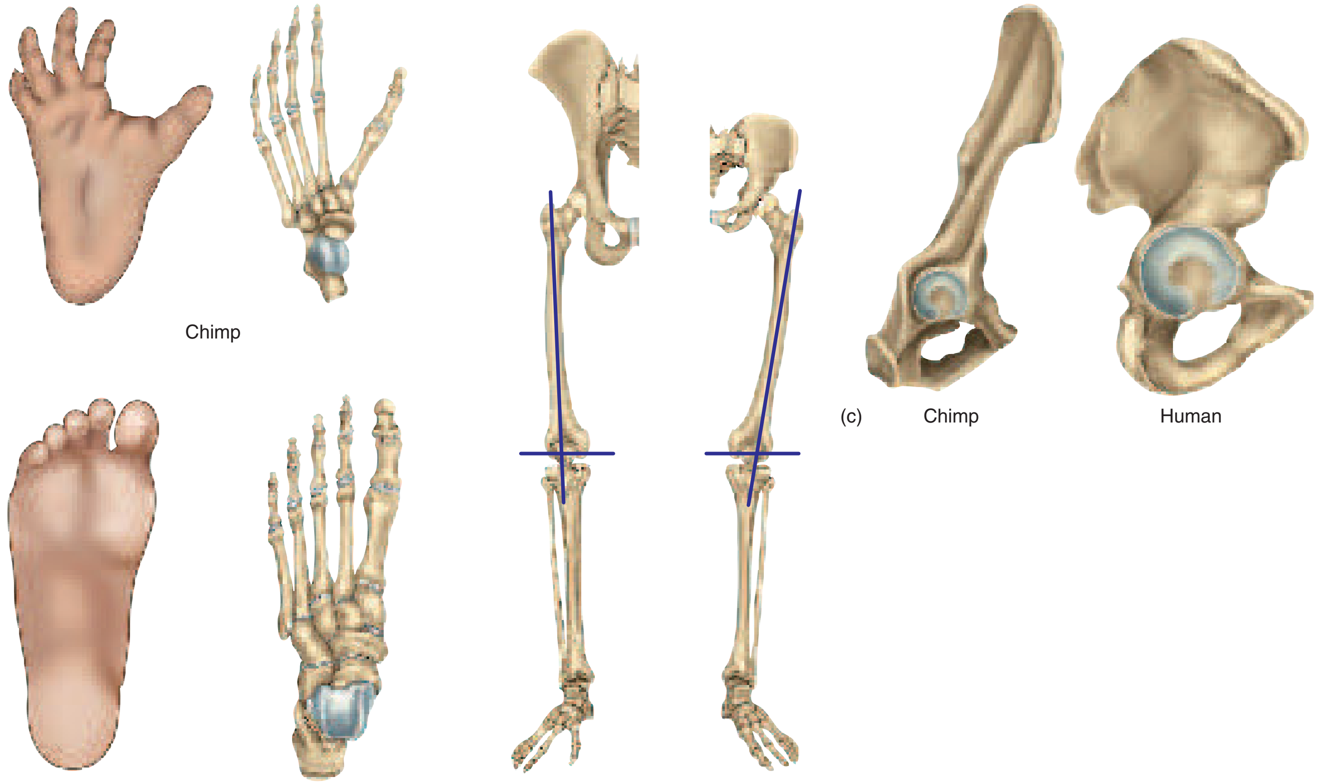


Figure 8.42 **Skeletal Adaptations for Bipedalism.** These adaptations are best understood by comparison to our close living relative, the chimpanzee, which is not adapted for a comfortable or sustained erect stance. (*a*) The great toe (hallux) is adapted for grasping in apes and for striding and "toe-off" in humans. (*b*) The femur is nearly vertical in apes but angles medially in humans, which places the knees under the center of gravity. (*c*) The os coxae is shortened and more bowl-like in humans than in apes. The iliac crest is expanded posteriorly and the sciatic notch is deeper in humans.

(continued)

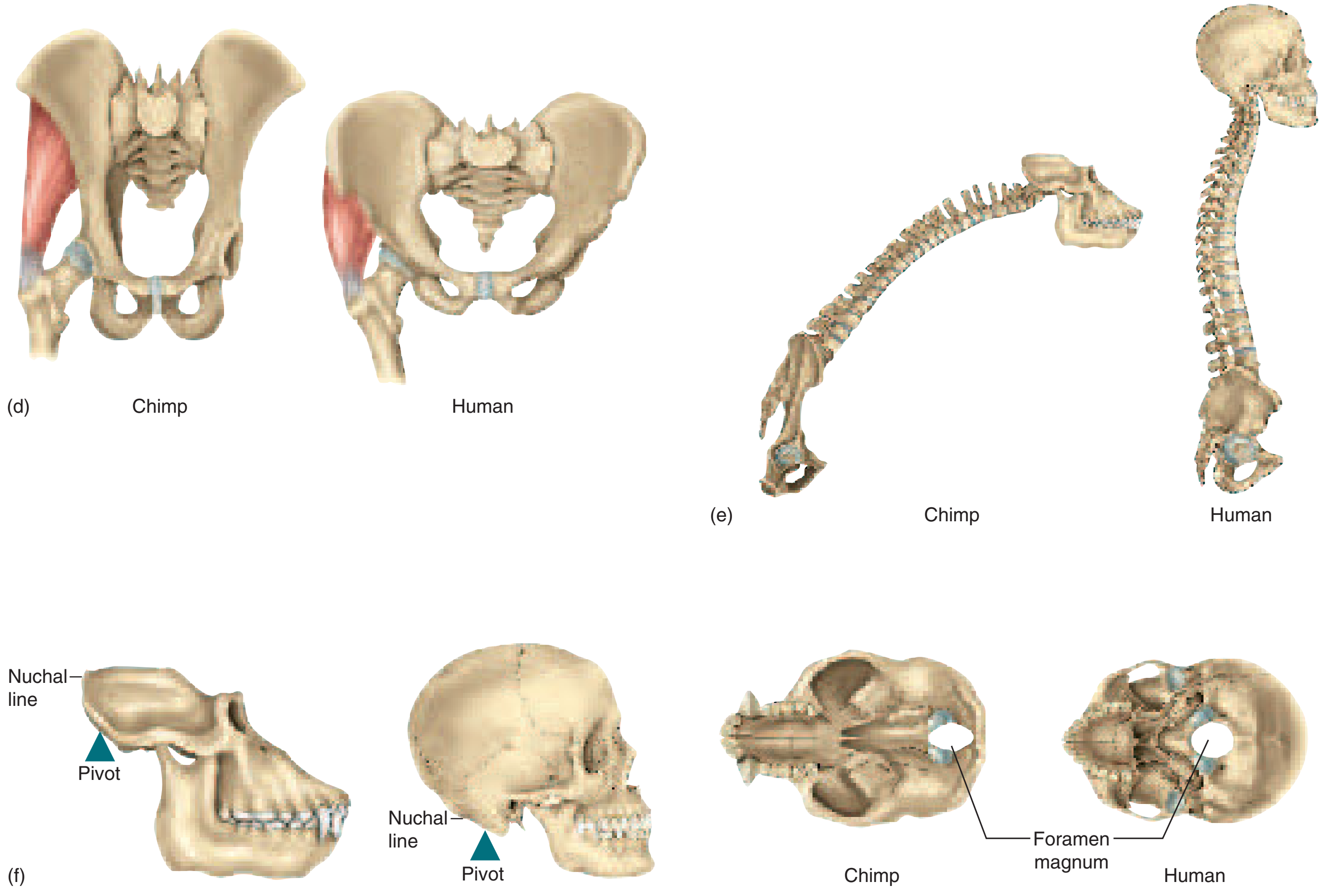


Figure 8.42 **Skeletal Adaptations for Bipedalism *(continued).*** (*d*) In humans, the gluteus medius and minimus help to balance the body weight over one leg when the other leg is lifted from the ground. (*e*) The curvature of the human spine centers the body's weight over the pelvis, so humans can stand more effortlessly than apes. (*f*) The foramen magnum is shifted ventrally and the face is flatter in humans; thus the skull is balanced on the vertebral column and the gaze is directed forward when a person is standing.

erally. In humans, however, the ilium has expanded posteriorly, so the gluteus maximus originates behind the hip joint. This changes the function of the muscle—instead of abducting the thigh, it pulls the thigh back in the second half of a stride (pulling back on your right thigh, for example, when your left foot is off the ground and swinging forward). This action accounts for the smooth, efficient stride of a human as compared to the awkward, shuffling gait of a chimpanzee or gorilla when it is walking upright. The posterior growth of the ilium is the reason the greater sciatic notch is so deeply concave.

The lumbar curvature of the human spine allows for efficient bipedalism by shifting the body's center of gravity to the rear, above and slightly behind the hip joint. Because of their C-shaped spines, chimpanzees cannot stand as easily. Their center of gravity is anterior to the hip joint when they stand; they must exert a continual muscular effort to keep from falling forward, and fatigue sets in relatively quickly. Humans, by contrast, require little muscular effort to keep their balance. Our australopithecine ancestors probably could travel all day with relatively little fatigue.

The human head is balanced on the vertebral column with the gaze directed forward. The cervical curvature of the spine and remodeling of the skull have made this possible. The foramen magnum has moved to a more inferior location, and the face is much flatter than in an ape, so there is less weight anterior to the occipital condyles. Being balanced on the spine, the head does not require strong muscular attachments to hold it erect. Apes have prominent supraorbital ridges for the attachment of muscles that pull back on the skull. In humans these ridges are much lighter and the muscles of the forehead serve only for facial expression, not to hold the head up.

The forelimbs of apes are longer than the hindlimbs; indeed, some species such as the orangutan and gibbons hold their long forelimbs over their heads when they walk on their hind legs. By contrast, our arms are shorter than our legs and far less muscular than the forelimbs of apes. No longer needed for locomotion, our forelimbs have become better adapted for carrying objects, holding things closer to the eyes, and manipulating them more precisely.

Connective Issues

Interactions Between the SKELETAL SYSTEM and Other Organ Systems

← indicates ways in which this system affects other systems
→ indicates ways in which other systems affect this one

Integumentary System

← Bones lying close to body surfaces shape the skin

→ Initiates synthesis of vitamin D needed for bone deposition

Muscular System

← Bones provide leverage and sites of attachment for muscles; provide calcium needed for muscle contraction

→ Muscles move bones; stress produced by muscles affects patterns of ossification and remodeling, as well as shape of mature bones

Nervous System

← Cranium and vertebral column protect brain and spinal cord; bones provide calcium needed for neural function

→ Sensory receptors provide sensations of body position and pain from bones and joints

Endocrine System

← Bones protect endocrine organs in head, chest, and pelvis

→ Hormones regulate mineral deposition and resorption, bone growth, and skeletal mass and density

Circulatory System

← Myeloid tissue forms blood cells; bone matrix stores calcium needed for cardiac muscle activity

→ Delivers O_2, nutrients, and hormones to bone tissue and carries away wastes; delivers blood cells to marrow

Lymphatic/Immune Systems

← Most types of blood cells produced in myeloid tissue function as part of immune system

→ Maintains balance of interstitial fluid in bones; lymphocytes assist in defense and repair of bones

Respiratory System

← Bones form respiratory passageway through nasal cavity; protect lungs and aid in ventilation

→ Provides O_2 and removes CO_2

Urinary System

← Skeleton physically supports and protects organs of urinary system

→ Kidneys activate vitamin D and regulate calcium and phosphate excretion

Digestive System

← Skeleton provides bony protection for digestive organs

→ Provides nutrients needed for bone growth and maintenance

Reproductive System

← Skeleton protects some reproductive organs

→ Gonads produce hormones that affect bone growth and closure of epiphyseal plates

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

Overview of the Skeleton (p. 244)

1. The skeletal system is divisible into the central *axial skeleton* (skull, vertebral column, and thoracic cage) and *appendicular skeleton* (bones of the upper and lower limbs and their supporting girdles).
2. There are typically 206 named bones in the adult (table 8.1), but the number varies from person to person, it is higher in newborns, and it increases in childhood before bone fusion leads to the adult number of bones.
3. Before studying individual bones, one must be familiar with the terminology of bone surface features (table 8.2).

The Skull (p. 246)

1. The skull consists of eight *cranial bones,* which contact the meninges around the brain, and 14 *facial bones,* which do not.
2. It encloses several spaces: the cranial, nasal, buccal, middle-ear, and inner-ear cavities, the orbits, and the paranasal sinuses (frontal, sphenoid, ethmoid, and maxillary).
3. Bones of the skull are perforated by numerous *foramina,* which allow passage for cranial nerves and blood vessels.
4. Some prominent features of the skull in general are the *foramen magnum* where the spinal cord joins the brainstem; the *calvaria,* which forms a roof over the cranial cavity; the *orbits,* which house the eyes; the three *cranial fossae* that form the floor of the cranial cavity; the *hard palate,* forming the roof of the mouth; and the zygomatic arches, or “cheekbones.”
5. The cranial bones are the frontal, parietal, temporal, occipital, sphenoid, and ethmoid bones. The parietal and temporal bones are paired, and the others single.
6. The facial bones are the maxillae; the palatine, zygomatic, lacrimal, and nasal bones; the inferior nasal conchae; and the vomer and mandible. All but the last two are paired. The mandible is the only movable bone of the skull.
7. Features of the individual bones are summarized in table 8.4.
8. Associated with the skull are the *hyoid bone* in the neck and the three *auditory ossicles (malleus, incus,* and *stapes)* in each middle ear.
9. The skull of the fetus and infant is marked by six gaps, or *fontanels,* where the cranial bones have not fully fused: one anterior, one posterior, two sphenoid, and two mastoid fontanels. A child’s skull attains nearly adult size by the age of 8 or 9 years.

The Vertebral Column and Thoracic Cage (p. 262)

1. The *vertebral column* normally consists of 33 vertebrae and 23 cartilaginous intervertebral discs. It is slightly S-shaped, with four curvatures: *cervical, thoracic, lumbar,* and *pelvic.*
2. A typical vertebra exhibits a *body,* a *vertebral foramen,* a *spinous process,* and two *transverse processes.* The shapes and proportions of these features, and some additional features, distinguish vertebrae from different regions of the vertebral column (table 8.6).
3. There are five classes of vertebrae, numbering 7 cervical, 12 thoracic, 5 lumbar, 5 sacral, and 4 coccygeal vertebrae in most people. In adults, the sacral vertebrae are fused into a single *sacrum* and the coccygeal vertebrae into a single *coccyx.*
4. An intervertebral disc is composed of a gelatinous *nucleus pulposus* enclosed in a fibrous ring, the *annulus fibrosus.*
5. The *thoracic cage* consists of the thoracic vertebrae, the sternum, and the ribs.
6. The sternum has three parts: *manubrium, body,* and *xiphoid process.*
7. There are 12 pairs of ribs. Ribs 1 through 7 are called *true ribs* because each has its own *costal cartilage* connecting it to the sternum; 8 through 12 are called *false ribs,* and 11 and 12, the only ones with no costal cartilages, are also called *floating ribs.*

The Pectoral Girdle and Upper Limb (p. 270)

1. The *pectoral girdle* attaches the upper limb to the axial skeleton. It consists of a *scapula* (shoulder blade) and *clavicle* (collar bone) on each side. The clavicle articulates with the sternum and the scapula articulates with the humerus.
2. The upper limb bones are the *humerus* in the brachium; the lateral *radius* and medial *ulna* in the antebrachium (forearm); eight *carpal bones* in the wrist; five *metacarpal bones* in the hand; two *phalanges* in the thumb; and three phalanges in each of the other four digits.

The Pelvic Girdle and Lower Limb (p. 277)

1. The *pelvic girdle* attaches the lower limb to the axial skeleton. It consists of the sacrum, coccyx, and two *ossa coxae.* Each adult os coxae results from the fusion of three bones of the child: the *ilium, ischium,* and *pubis.*
2. The pelvic girdle forms two basinlike structures: a superior, wide *false (greater) pelvis* and an inferior, narrower *true (lesser) pelvis.* The passage from the false to the true pelvis is called the *pelvic inlet* and its margin is the *pelvic brim;* the exit from the true pelvis is called the *pelvic outlet.*
3. Two other major features of the os coxa are the *iliac crest,* which forms the flare of the hip, and the *acetabulum,* the cuplike socket for the femur.
4. The lower limb bones are the *femur* in the thigh; the lateral *fibula* and larger, medial *tibia* in the leg proper; seven *tarsal* (ankle) *bones* forming the posterior half of the foot; five *metatarsal bones* in its anterior half; two phalanges in the great toe; and three phalanges in each of the other digits.

Selected Vocabulary

axial skeleton	244
appendicular skeleton	244
suture	246
cranial cavity	246
orbit	246
paranasal sinuses	246
foramen	248
cranium	248
foramen magnum	248
zygomatic arch	254
fontanel	260
vertebra	262
intervertebral disc	262
sacrum	267
sacroiliac joint	268
coccyx	268
costal cartilage	269
carpal bones	275
phalanges	275
tarsal bones	281

Testing Your Recall

1. Which of these is *not* a paranasal sinus?
   a. frontal
   b. temporal
   c. sphenoid
   d. ethmoid
   e. maxillary

2. Which of these is a facial bone?
   a. frontal
   b. ethmoid
   c. occipital
   d. temporal
   e. lacrimal

3. Which of these *cannot* be palpated on a living person?
   a. the crista galli
   b. the mastoid process
   c. the zygomatic arch
   d. the superior nuchal line
   e. the hyoid bone

4. All of the following are groups of vertebrae *except* for ____, which is a spinal curvature.
   a. thoracic
   b. cervical
   c. lumbar
   d. pelvic
   e. sacral

5. Thoracic vertebrae do *not* have
   a. transverse foramina.
   b. costal facets.
   c. spinous processes.
   d. transverse processes.
   e. pedicles.

6. The tubercle of a rib articulates with
   a. the sternal notch.
   b. the margin of the gladiolus.
   c. the costal facets of two vertebrae.
   d. the body of a vertebra.
   e. the transverse process of a vertebra.

7. The disc-shaped head of the radius articulates with the ____ of the humerus.
   a. radial tuberosity
   b. trochlea
   c. capitulum
   d. olecranon
   e. glenoid cavity

8. All of the following are carpal bones, *except* the _____, which is a tarsal bone.
   a. trapezium
   b. cuboid
   c. trapezoid
   d. triquetrum
   e. pisiform

9. The bone that supports your body weight when you are sitting down is
   a. the acetabulum.
   b. the pubis.
   c. the ilium.
   d. the coccyx.
   e. the ischium.

10. Which of these is the bone of the heel?
   a. cuboid
   b. calcaneus
   c. navicular
   d. trochlear
   e. talus

11. Gaps between the cranial bones of an infant are called _____ .

12. The external auditory canal is a passage in the _____ bone.

13. Bones of the skull are joined along lines called _____ .

14. The _____ bone has greater and lesser wings and protects the pituitary gland.

15. A herniated disc occurs when a ring called the _____ cracks.

16. The transverse ligament of the atlas holds the _____ of the axis in place.

17. The sacroiliac joint is formed where the _____ surface of the sacrum articulates with that of the ilium.

18. The _____ processes of the radius and ulna form bony protuberances on each side of the wrist.

19. The thumb is also known as the _____ and the great toe is also known as the _____.

20. The _____ arch of the foot extends from the heel to the great toe.

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. Not everyone has a frontal sinus.
2. The hands have more phalanges than the feet.
3. As an adaptation to pregnancy, the female pelvis is deeper than the male's.
4. There are more carpal bones than tarsal bones.
5. On a living person, it would be possible to palpate the muscles in the infraspinous fossa but not those of the subscapular fossa.
6. If you rest your chin on your hands with your elbows on a table, the olecranon of the ulna rests on the table.
7. The lumbar vertebrae do not articulate with any ribs and therefore do not have transverse processes.
8. The most frequently broken bone is the humerus.
9. In strict anatomical terminology, the words *arm* and *leg* both refer to regions with only one bone.
10. The pisiform bone and patella are both sesamoid bones.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. A child was involved in an automobile collision. She was not wearing a safety restraint, and her chin struck the dashboard hard. When the physician looked into her auditory canal, he could see into her throat. What do you infer from this about the nature of her injury?
2. By palpating the hind leg of a cat or dog or by examining a laboratory skeleton, you can see that cats and dogs stand on the heads of their metatarsal bones; the calcaneus does not touch the ground. How is this similar to the stance of a woman wearing high-heeled shoes? How is it different?
3. Contrast the tarsal bones with the carpal bones. Which ones are similar in name, location, or both? Which ones are different?
4. In adolescents, trauma sometimes separates the head of the femur from the neck. Why do you think this is more common in adolescents than in adults?
5. Andy, a 55-year-old, 75 kg (165 lb) roofer, is shingling the steeply pitched roof of a new house when he loses his footing and slides down the roof and over the edge, feet first. He braces himself for the fall, and when he hits ground he cries out and doubles up in excruciating pain. Emergency medical technicians called to the scene tell him he has broken his hips. Describe, more specifically, where his fractures most likely occurred. On the way to the hospital, Andy says, "You know it's funny, when I was a kid, I used to jump off roofs that high, and I never got hurt." Why do you think Andy was more at risk of a fracture as an adult than he was as a boy?

Answers at Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Legend Questions

8.10 The occipital, parietal, sphenoid, zygomatic, and palatine bones, and the mandible and maxilla

8.12 The frontal, lacrimal, and sphenoid bones, and the vomer, maxilla, and inferior concha

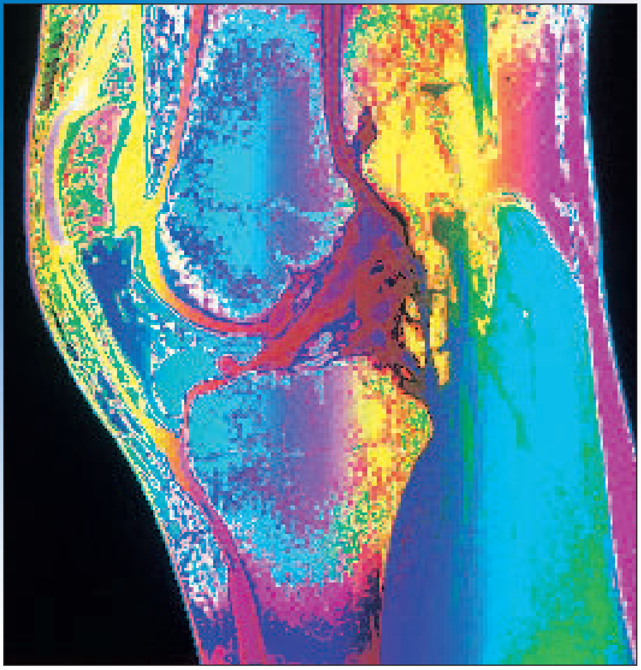
8.25 Vertebra L1 lacks costal facets and transverse facets, and its inferior articular facets face laterally.

8.34 The adult hand lacks epiphyseal plates, the growth zones of a child's long bones.

8.39 The tibia is a weight-bearing bone and articulates with the broad surface of the talus; the fibula bears no weight.

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.



Lateral view of the knee (MRI)

CHAPTER 9

Joints

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Joints and Their Classification 294

Fibrous, Cartilaginous, and Bony Joints 295
- Fibrous Joints 296
- Cartilaginous Joints 297
- Bony Joints (Synostoses) 297

Synovial Joints 298
- General Anatomy 299
- Types of Synovial Joints 299
- Movements of Diarthroses 302
- Range of Motion 307
- Levers and Biomechanics of the Joints 307

Anatomy of Selected Diarthroses 310
- The Temporomandibular Joint 310
- The Humeroscapular Joint 310
- The Elbow Joint 311
- The Coxal Joint 312
- The Knee Joint 314
- The Ankle Joint 317

Chapter Review 322

INSIGHTS

9.1 **Clinical Application:** Exercise and Articular Cartilage 299

9.2 **Clinical Application:** TMJ Syndrome 310

9.3 **Clinical Application:** Knee Injuries and Arthroscopic Surgery 316

9.4 **Clinical Application:** Arthritis and Artificial Joints 320

Brushing Up

To understand this chapter, it is important that you understand or brush up on the following concepts:

- Names of all bones (fig. 8.1, p. 245; table 8.1, p. 246)
- Surface features of bones, especially of their articular surfaces (table 8.2, p. 247)

In order for the skeleton to serve the purposes of protection and movement, the bones must be joined together. A **joint,** or **articulation,** is any point at which two bones meet, regardless of whether they are movable at that point. Your knee, for example, is a very movable joint, whereas the skull sutures described in chapter 8 are immovable joints. This chapter describes the joints of the skeleton and discusses some basic principles of biomechanics relevant to athletic performance and patient care. Chapter 10, in which the actions of skeletal muscles are described, builds on the discussion of joint anatomy and function presented here.

Joints and Their Classification

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- explain what joints are, how they are named, and what functions they serve;
- define *arthrology, kinesiology,* and *biomechanics;* and
- name and describe the three major structural classes and three major functional classes of joints.

Arthrology is the science concerned with the anatomy, function, dysfunction, and treatment of joints. The study of musculoskeletal movement is called **kinesiology** (kih-NEE-see-OL-oh-jee). This is a subdiscipline of **biomechanics,** which deals with a broad range of motions and mechanical processes, including the physics of blood circulation, respiration, and hearing.

Joints such as the shoulder, elbow, and knee are remarkable specimens of biological design—self-lubricating, almost frictionless, and able to bear heavy loads and withstand compression while executing smooth and precise movements (fig. 9.1). Yet, it is equally important that other joints be less movable or even immovable. Such joints are better able to support the body and provide protection for delicate organs. The vertebral column, for example, must provide a combination of support and flexibility; thus its joints are only moderately movable. The immovable joints between the cranial bones afford the best possible protection for the brain and sense organs.

The name of a joint is typically derived from the names of the bones involved. For example, the *atlanto-occipital joint* is where the occipital condyles meet the atlas, the *humeroscapular joint* is where the humerus meets the scapula, and the *coxal joint* is where the femur meets the os coxae.

Joints can be classified according to their relative freedom of movement:

- A **diarthrosis**[1] (DY-ar-THRO-sis) is a freely movable joint such as the elbow.

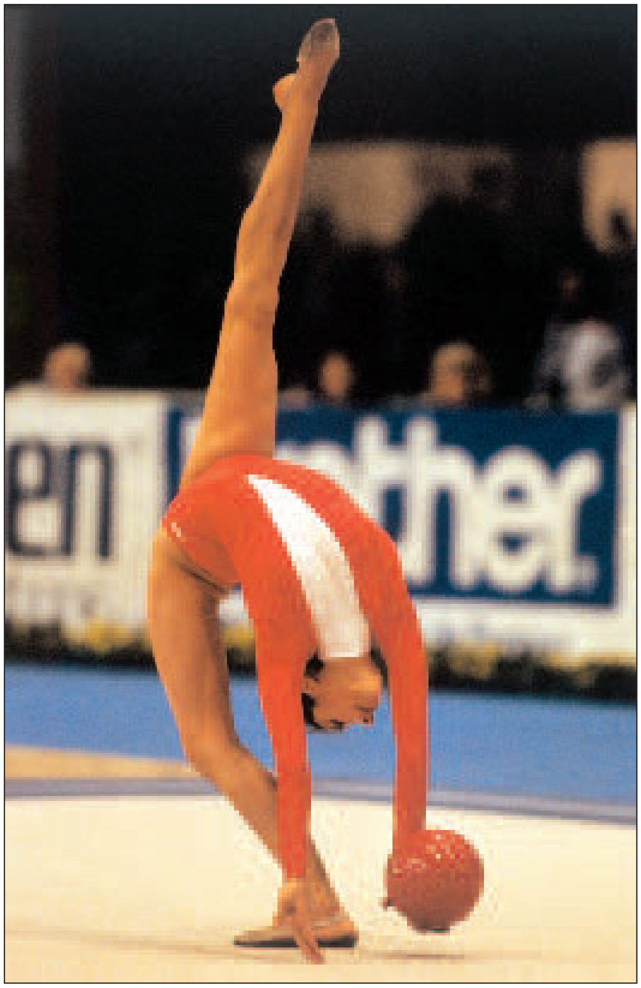


Figure 9.1 Joint Flexibility. This gymnast demonstrates the flexibility, precision, and weight-bearing capacity of the body's joints.

- An **amphiarthrosis**[2] (AM-fee-ar-THRO-sis) is a joint that is slightly movable, such as the intervertebral and intercarpal joints.
- A **synarthrosis**[3] (SIN-ar-THRO-sis) is a joint that is capable of little or no movement, such as a suture of the skull.

Joints are also classified according to the manner in which the adjacent bones are joined. In this system, there are *fibrous, cartilaginous, bony,* and *synovial joints,* defined and described in the sections that follow. These two sys-

---

[1] *dia* = separate, apart + *arthr* = joint + *osis* = condition

[2] *amphi* = on all sides

[3] *syn* = together

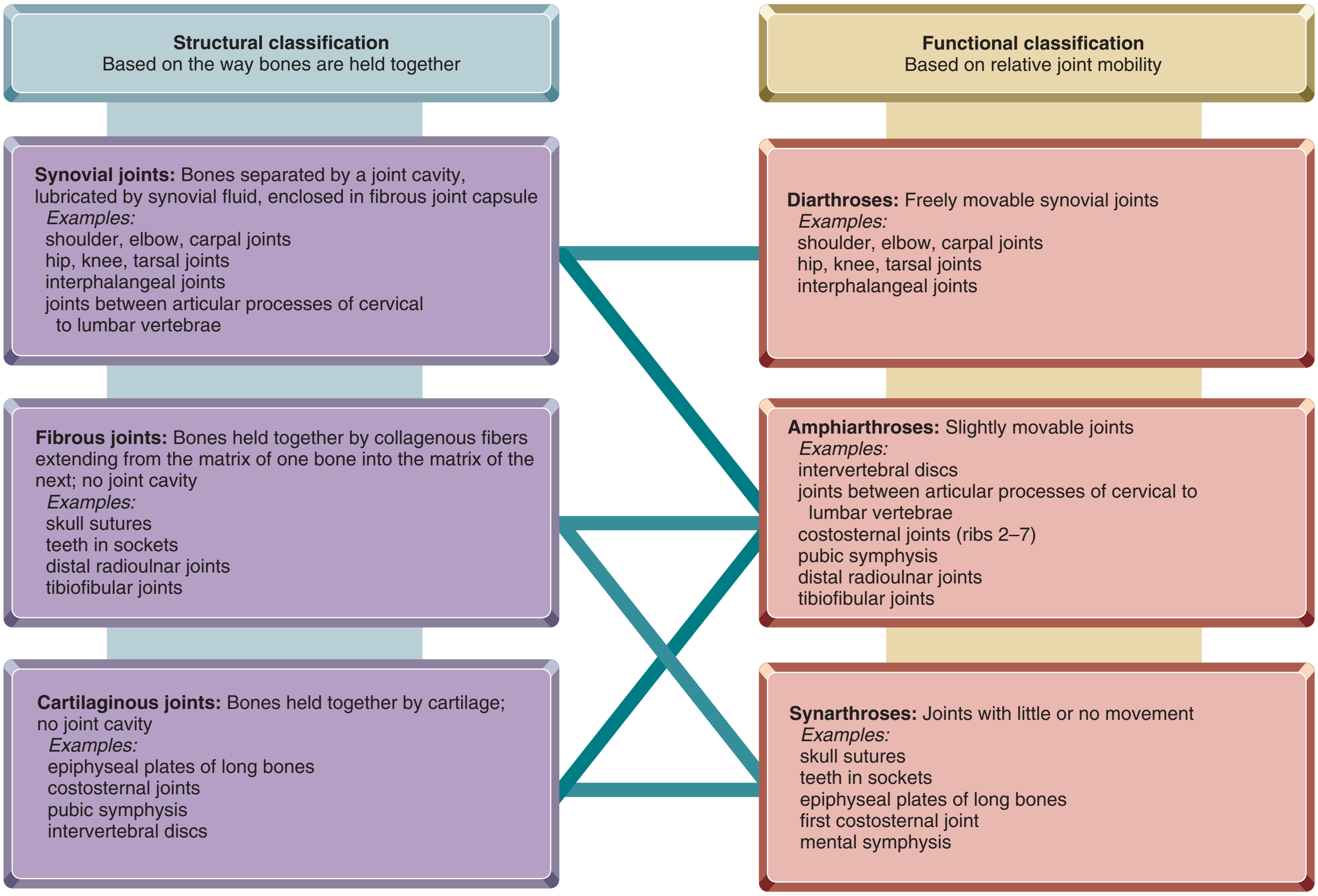

Structural classification
Based on the way bones are held together
Functional classification
Based on relative joint mobility
Synovial joints: Bones separated by a joint cavity, lubricated by synovial fluid, enclosed in fibrous joint capsule
Examples:
shoulder, elbow, carpal joints
hip, knee, tarsal joints
interphalangeal joints
joints between articular processes of cervical to lumbar vertebrae
Diarthroses: Freely movable synovial joints
Examples:
shoulder, elbow, carpal joints
hip, knee, tarsal joints
interphalangeal joints
Fibrous joints: Bones held together by collagenous fibers extending from the matrix of one bone into the matrix of the next; no joint cavity
Examples:
skull sutures
teeth in sockets
distal radioulnar joints
tibiofibular joints
Amphiarthroses: Slightly movable joints
Examples:
intervertebral discs
joints between articular processes of cervical to lumbar vertebrae
costosternal joints (ribs 2–7)
pubic symphysis
distal radioulnar joints
tibiofibular joints
Cartilaginous joints: Bones held together by cartilage; no joint cavity
Examples:
epiphyseal plates of long bones
costosternal joints
pubic symphysis
intervertebral discs
Synarthroses: Joints with little or no movement
Examples:
skull sutures
teeth in sockets
epiphyseal plates of long bones
first costosternal joint
mental symphysis

Figure 9.2 **Systems of Classifying the Joints.** *Left:* A structural classification based on how the bones are joined. *Right:* A functional classification based on relative joint mobility. Connecting lines indicate overlap between the classification systems. For example, synovial joints can be either diarthroses or amphiarthroses, all diarthroses are synovial joints, and amphiarthroses include joints of the synovial, fibrous, and cartilaginous types.

tems of classification overlap. For example, synovial joints may be either diarthroses or amphiarthroses, and amphiarthroses can be any of the three structural types—synovial, fibrous, or cartilaginous (fig. 9.2).

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

1. What is the difference between arthrology and kinesiology?
2. Describe the two basic ways of classifying joints. What distinctions are looked for in each system?
3. Explain the distinction between a diarthrosis, amphiarthrosis, and synarthrosis. Give an example of each.

Fibrous, Cartilaginous, and Bony Joints

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the three types of fibrous joints and give an example of each;
- distinguish between the three types of sutures;
- describe the two types of cartilaginous joints and give an example of each; and
- name some joints that become synostoses as they age.

Fibrous Joints

In a **fibrous joint,** collagen fibers emerge from the matrix of one bone and penetrate into the matrix of another, spanning the space between them (fig. 9.3). There are three types of fibrous joints: *sutures, gomphoses,* and *syndesmoses.* In sutures and gomphoses, the collagen fibers are very short and allow for little movement. In syndesmoses, the fibers are longer and the attached bones are more movable.

Sutures

Sutures are immovable fibrous joints that closely bind the bones of the skull to each other; they occur nowhere else. In chapter 8, we did not take much notice of the differences between one suture and another, but some differences may have caught your attention as you studied the diagrams in that chapter or examined laboratory specimens. Sutures can be classified as *serrate, lap,* and *plane sutures.* Readers with some background in woodworking may recognize that the structures and functional properties of these sutures have something in common with basic types of carpentry joints (fig. 9.4).

Serrate sutures appear as wavy lines along which the adjoining bones firmly interlock with each other by their serrated margins. Serrate sutures are analogous to a dovetail wood joint. Examples include the coronal, sagittal, and lambdoid sutures that border the parietal bones.

Lap (squamous) sutures occur where two bones have overlapping beveled edges, like a miter joint in carpentry. On the surface, a lap suture appears as a relatively smooth (nonserrated) line. An example is the squamous suture between the temporal and parietal bones.

Plane (butt) sutures occur where two bones have straight, nonoverlapping edges. The two bones merely border on each other, like two boards glued together in a butt joint. This type of suture is seen between the palatine processes of the maxillae in the roof of the mouth.

Gomphoses

Even though the teeth are not bones, the attachment of a tooth to its socket is classified as a joint called a **gomphosis** (gom-FOE-sis). The term refers to its similarity to a nail hammered into wood.[4] The tooth is held firmly in place by a fibrous **periodontal ligament,** which consists of collagen fibers that extend from the bone matrix of the jaw into the dental tissue (see fig. 9.3*b*). The periodontal ligament allows the tooth to move or "give" a little under the stress of chewing.

Syndesmoses

Syndesmoses[5] (SIN-dez-MO-seez) are joints at which two bones are bound by a ligament only. (Ligaments also bind bones together at synovial joints, but are not the exclusive means of holding those joints together.) Syndesmoses are the most movable of the fibrous joints. The radius and ulna are bound to each other side by side, as are the tibia and fibula, by a syndesmosis in which the ligament forms a broad sheet called an **interosseous membrane** along the shafts of the two bones (see fig. 9.3*c*).

---

[4] *gompho* = nail, bolt

[5] *syn* = together + *desm* = band + *osis* = condition

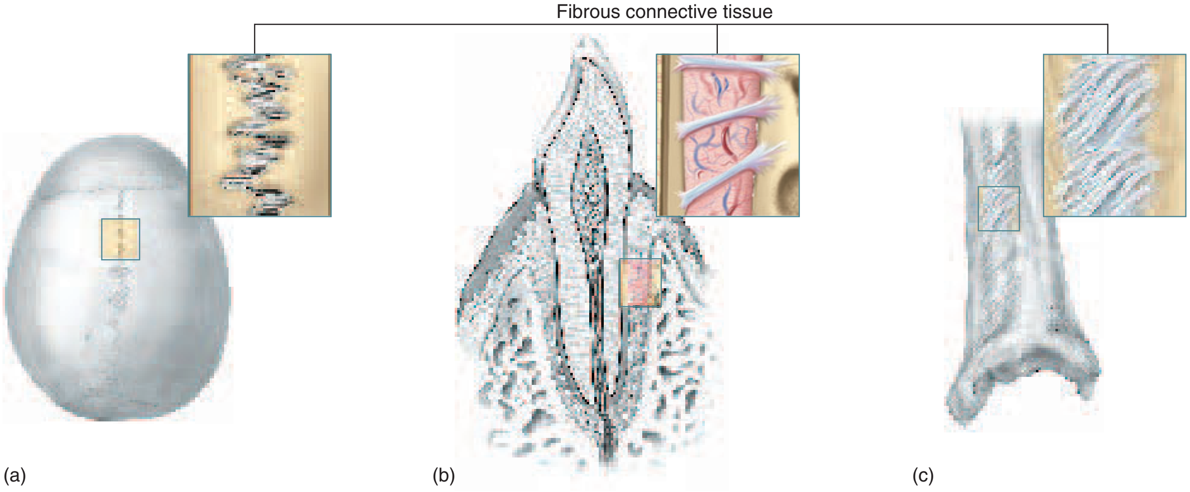


Figure 9.3 **Types of Fibrous Joints.** (*a*) A suture between the parietal bones; (*b*) a gomphosis between a tooth and the jaw; (*c*) a syndesmosis between the tibia and fibula.

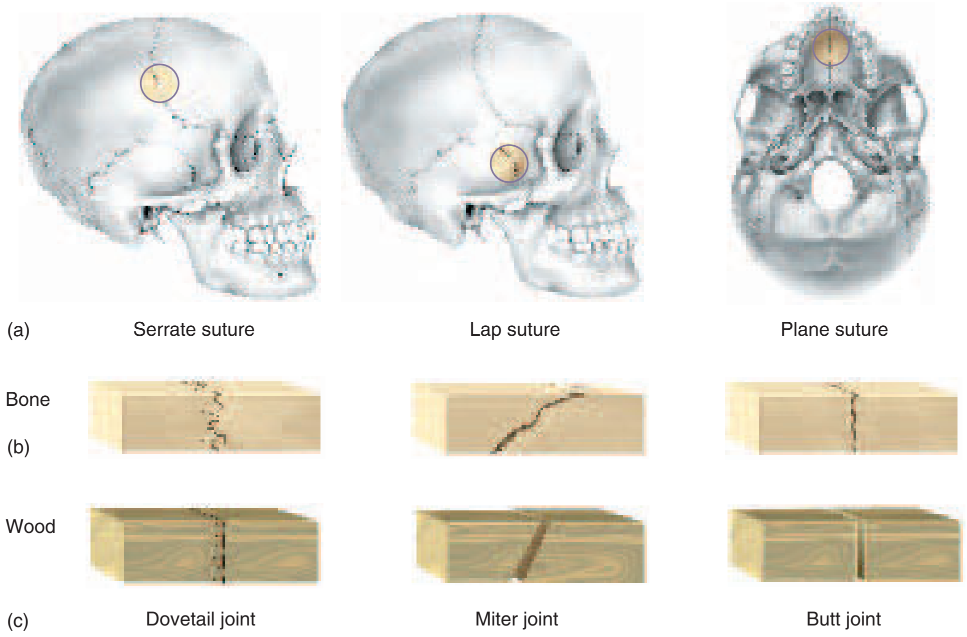


Figure 9.4 **Types of Sutures.** (*a*) Examples; (*b*) structure of the adjoining bones; (*c*) functional analogies to some common wood joints.

Cartilaginous Joints

In **cartilaginous joints,** the two bones are bound to each other by cartilage. The two types of cartilaginous joints are *synchondroses* and *symphyses,* which involve hyaline cartilage and fibrocartilage, respectively.

Synchondroses

In a **synchondrosis**[6] (SIN-con-DRO-sis), the bones are joined by hyaline cartilage. In children, the hyaline cartilage of the epiphyseal plate forms a synchondrosis that binds the epiphysis and diaphysis of a long bone together. The attachment of a rib to the sternum by a hyaline costal cartilage is also a synchondrosis (fig. 9.5*a*).

Symphyses

In a **symphysis,**[7] two bones are joined by *fibrocartilage* (fig. 9.5*b, c*). One example is the pubic symphysis, in which the right and left pubic bones are joined by the cartilaginous interpubic disc. Another is the joint between the bodies of two vertebrae, united by an intervertebral disc. The surface of each vertebral body is covered with hyaline cartilage. Between the vertebrae, this cartilage becomes infiltrated with collagen bundles to form fibrocartilage. Each intervertebral disc permits only slight movement between adjacent vertebrae, but the collective effect of all 23 discs gives the spine considerable flexibility.

Bony Joints (Synostoses)

A **bony joint,** or **synostosis**[8] (SIN-oss-TOE-sis), is a joint in which two bones, once separate, have become fused by osseous tissue and in most cases are then regarded as a single bone. Some fibrous and cartilaginous joints ossify with age—that is, the gap between adjacent bones becomes filled with osseous tissue until the two bones appear as one. In the skull, for example, both the frontal bone and mandible are represented at birth by separate right and left bones; in early childhood, these bones become fused. In old age, some sutures become obliterated by ossification and adjacent cranial bones fuse seamlessly together. The epiphyses and diaphyses of the long bones are joined by cartilaginous joints in childhood and adolescence, and these become synostoses in early adulthood. The attachment of the first rib to the sternum also becomes a synostosis with age.

Think About It

The intervertebral joints are symphyses only in the cervical through the lumbar region. How would you classify the intervertebral joints of the sacrum and coccyx in a middle-aged adult?

---

[6] *syn* = together + *chondr* = cartilage + *osis* = condition
[7] *sym* = together + *physis* = growth
[8] *ost* = bone

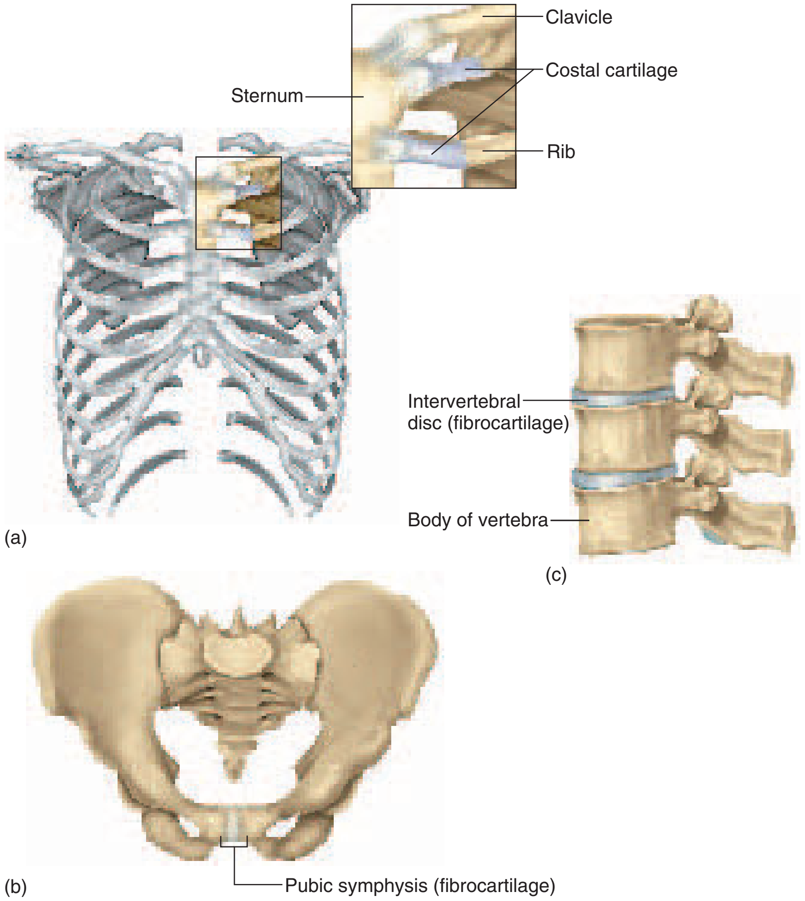

Clavicle
Costal cartilage
Sternum
Rib
(a)
Intervertebral disc (fibrocartilage)
Body of vertebra
(c)
(b)
Pubic symphysis (fibrocartilage)

Figure 9.5 Cartilaginous Joints. (*a*) Synchondroses, represented by costal cartilages joining the ribs to the sternum; (*b*) the pubic symphysis; (*c*) intervertebral discs, which join adjacent vertebrae to each other by symphyses.

What is the difference between the pubic symphysis and the interpubic disc?

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

4. Define *suture*, *gomphosis*, and *syndesmosis*, and explain what these three joints have in common.
5. Name the three types of sutures and describe how they differ.
6. Name two synchondroses and two symphyses.
7. Give some examples of joints that become synostoses with age.

Synovial Joints

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the anatomy of a synovial joint and its associated structures;
- describe the six types of synovial joints;
- list and demonstrate the types of movements that occur at diarthroses;
- discuss the factors that affect the range of motion of a joint;
- give an anatomical example of a first-, second-, and third-class lever and explain why each is classified as it is; and
- relate the concept of mechanical advantage to the power and speed of joint action.

The rest of this chapter is concerned with synovial joints. A **synovial** (sih-NO-vee-ul) **joint** is one in which two bones are separated by a space that contains a slippery lubricant called **synovial fluid.** Most synovial joints, including the jaw, elbow, hip, and knee joints, are freely movable. These are not only the most common and familiar joints in the body, but they are also the most structurally complex and the most likely to develop uncomfortable and crippling dysfunctions.

General Anatomy

The study of dry bones and models in the laboratory can easily give the impression that the knee, elbow, or hip is a point at which one bone rubs against another. In life, however, the bones do not touch each other; rather, fluid and soft tissues separate them and hold them in proper alignment (fig. 9.6).

The bones of a synovial joint are separated by a **joint (articular) cavity** containing the synovial fluid. Synovial fluid is rich in albumin and hyaluronic acid, which give it a viscous, slippery texture similar to that of raw egg white.[9] It nourishes the articular cartilages and removes their wastes, and it contains phagocytes that clean up tissue debris resulting from wear of the joint cartilages. The adjoining surfaces of the bones are covered with a layer of hyaline **articular cartilage** about 2 mm thick in young, healthy joints. The cartilages and synovial fluid make movements at synovial joints almost friction-free. A fibrous **joint (articular) capsule** encloses the cavity and retains the fluid. It has an outer **fibrous capsule** continuous with the periosteum of the adjoining bones and an inner **synovial membrane** of areolar tissue, which secretes the fluid.

In the jaw, sternoclavicular, and knee joints, cartilage grows inward from the joint capsule and forms a pad called a **meniscus**[10] between the articulating bones (see fig. 9.23). The meniscus absorbs shock and pressure, guides the bones across each other, reduces the chance of dislocation, and distributes force across the entire joint instead of at just a few points of contact.

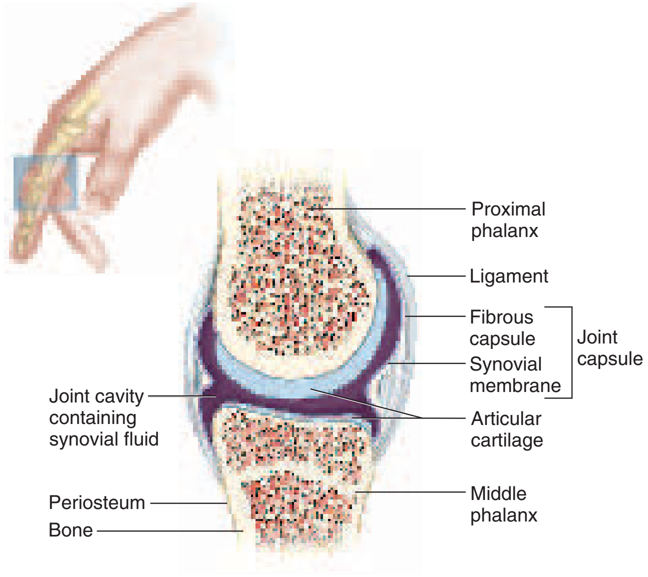


Figure 9.6 **Structure of a Simple Synovial Joint.**
Why is a meniscus unnecessary in an interphalangeal joint?

The most important accessory structures of a synovial joint are tendons, ligaments, and bursae. A **tendon** is a strip or sheet of tough, collagenous connective tissue that attaches a muscle to a bone. Tendons are often the most important structures in stabilizing a joint. A **ligament** is a similar tissue that attaches one bone to another. Several ligaments are named and illustrated in our later discussion of individual joints, and tendons are more fully considered in chapter 10 along with the gross anatomy of muscles.

A **bursa**[11] is a fibrous sac filled with synovial fluid, located between adjacent muscles or where a tendon passes over a bone (see fig. 9.19). Bursae cushion muscles, help tendons slide more easily over the joints, and sometimes enhance the mechanical effect of a muscle by modifying the direction in which its tendon pulls. Bursae called **tendon sheaths** are elongated cylinders wrapped around a tendon. These are especially numerous in the hand and foot (fig. 9.7).

Insight 9.1 Clinical Application

Exercise and Articular Cartilage

When synovial fluid is warmed by exercise, it becomes thinner (less viscous) and more easily absorbed by the articular cartilage. The cartilage then swells and provides a more effective cushion against compression. For this reason, a warm-up period before vigorous exercise helps protect the articular cartilage from undue wear and tear.

Because cartilage is nonvascular, its repetitive compression during exercise is important to its nutrition and waste removal. Each time a cartilage is compressed, fluid and metabolic wastes are squeezed out of it. When weight is taken off the joint, the cartilage absorbs synovial fluid like a sponge, and the fluid carries oxygen and nutrients to the chondrocytes. Lack of exercise causes the articular cartilages to deteriorate more rapidly from lack of nutrition, oxygenation, and waste removal.

Weight-bearing exercise builds bone mass and strengthens the muscles that stabilize many of the joints, thus reducing the risk of joint dislocations. Excessive joint stress, however, can hasten the progression of osteoarthritis by damaging the articular cartilage (see insight 9.4, p. 320). Swimming is a good way of exercising the joints with minimal damage.

Types of Synovial Joints

There are six types of synovial joints with distinctive patterns of motion determined by the shapes of the articular

---

[9] *ovi* = egg
[10] *men* = moon, crescent + *iscus* = little
[11] *burs* = purse

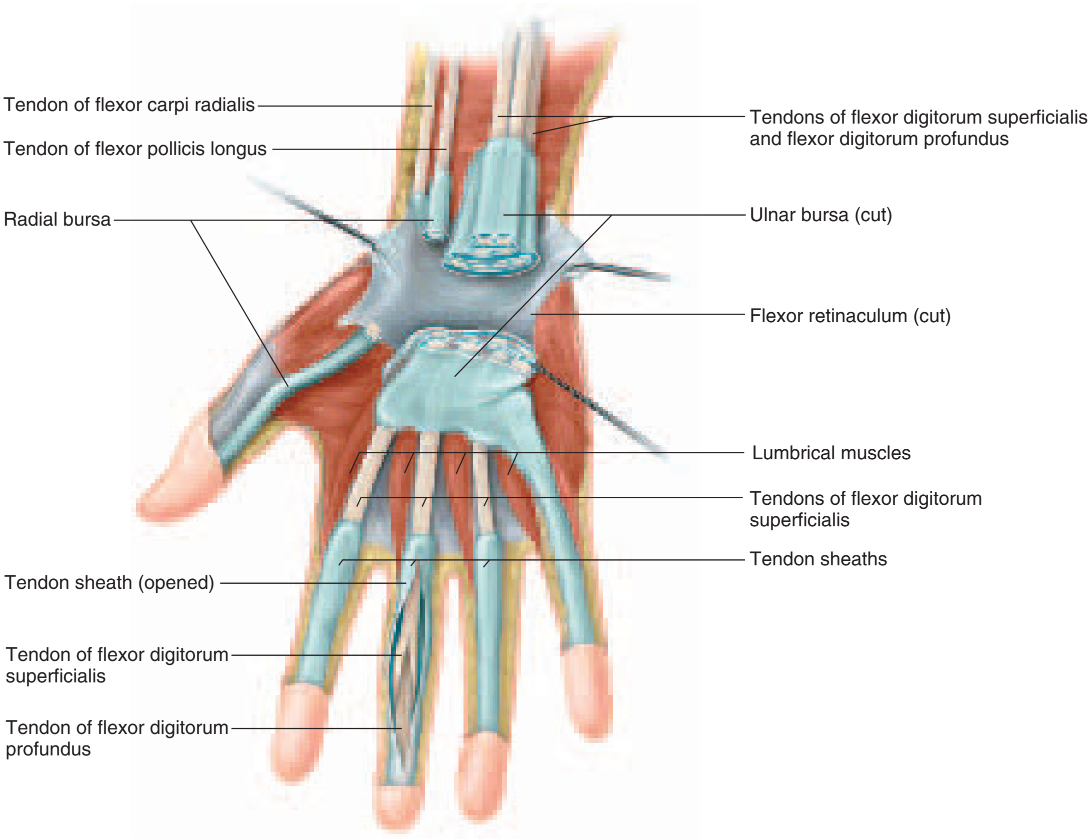

Tendon of flexor carpi radialis
Tendon of flexor pollicis longus
Radial bursa
Tendons of flexor digitorum superficialis and flexor digitorum profundus
Ulnar bursa (cut)
Flexor retinaculum (cut)
Lumbrical muscles
Tendons of flexor digitorum superficialis
Tendon sheaths
Tendon sheath (opened)
Tendon of flexor digitorum superficialis
Tendon of flexor digitorum profundus

Figure 9.7 **Tendon Sheaths and Other Bursae in the Hand and Wrist.**

surfaces of the bones (fig. 9.8; table 9.1). A bone's movement at a joint can be described with reference to three mutually perpendicular planes in space (*x, y,* and *z*). If the bone can move in only one plane, the joint is said to be **monaxial;** if it can move in two planes, the joint is **biaxial;** and if three, it is **multiaxial.**

1. **Ball-and-socket joints.** These occur at the shoulder and hip, where one bone has a smooth hemispherical head that fits within a cuplike depression on the other. The head of the humerus fits into the glenoid cavity of the scapula, and the head of the femur fits into the acetabulum of the os coxae. These are the only multiaxial joints of the skeleton.
2. **Hinge joints.** At a hinge joint, one bone has a convex surface that fits into a concave depression of the other one. Hinge joints are monaxial—like a door hinge, they can move in only one plane. Examples include the elbow, knee, and interphalangeal (finger and toe) joints.
3. **Saddle joint.** The only saddle joint is the trapeziometacarpal (tra-PEE-zee-oh-MET-uh-CAR-pul) joint at the base of the thumb. Each articular surface—on metacarpal I and the trapezium of the wrist—is shaped like a saddle, concave in one direction and convex in the other. This is a biaxial joint. If you compare the range of motion of your thumb with that of your fingers, you can see that a saddle joint is more movable than a condyloid or hinge joint. This is the joint responsible for that hallmark of primate anatomy, the opposable thumb.
4. **Pivot joints.** These are monaxial joints in which one bone has a projection that fits into a ringlike ligament of another, and the first bone rotates on its longitudinal axis relative to the other. One example is the atlantoaxial joint between the first two vertebrae—the dens of the axis projects into the vertebral foramen of the atlas, where it is held against the arch of the atlas by a ligament (see fig. 8.24*c*). This joint pivots when you rotate your head as in gesturing "no." Another example is the proximal radioulnar joint, where the *annular ligament* on the ulna encircles the head of the radius (see fig. 9.20*c, d*) and permits the radius to

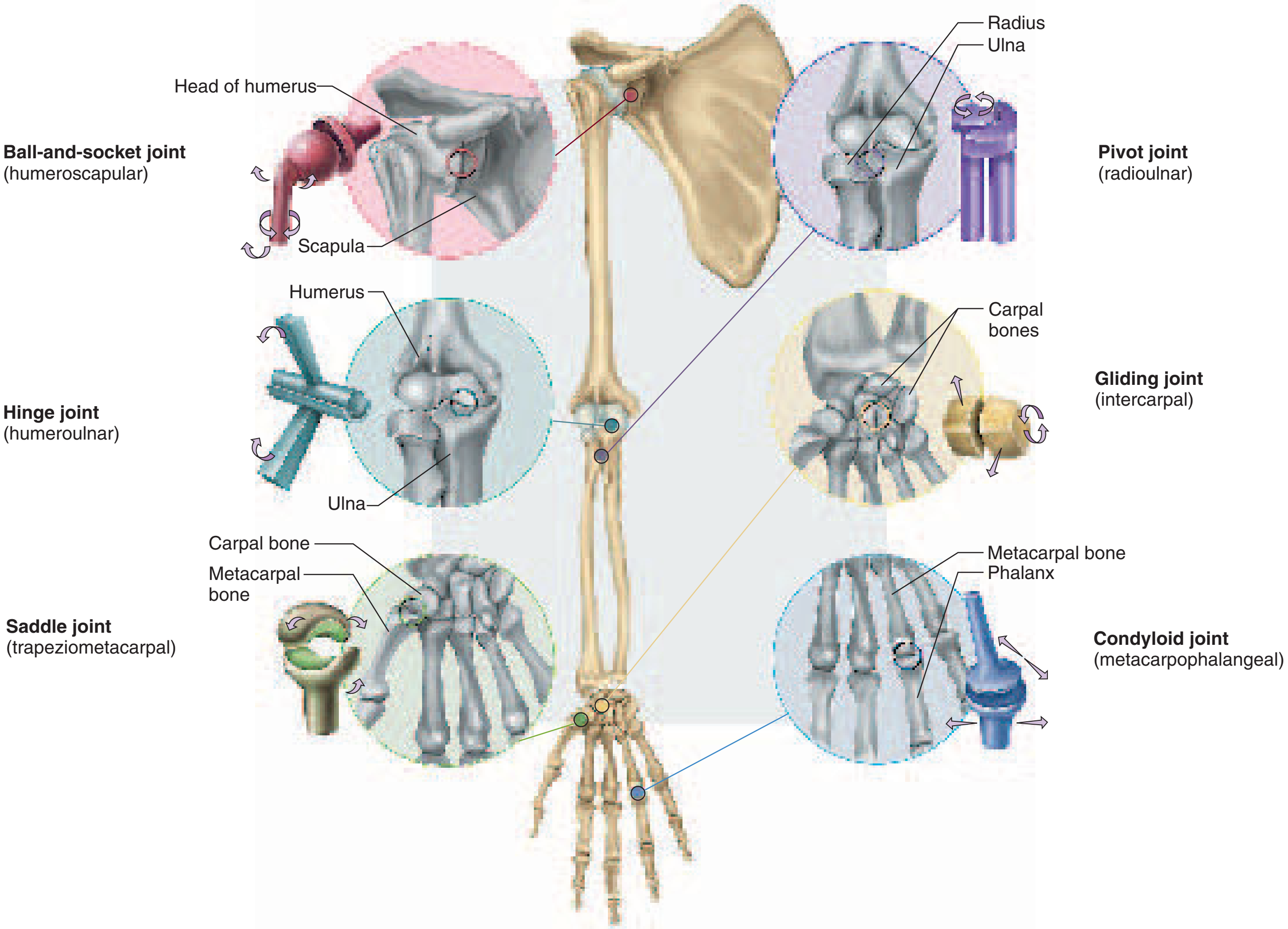

Head of humerus
Ball-and-socket joint
(humeroscapular)
Scapula
Humerus
Hinge joint
(humeroulnar)
Ulna
Carpal bone
Metacarpal bone
Saddle joint
(trapeziometacarpal)
Radius
Ulna
Pivot joint
(radioulnar)
Carpal bones
Gliding joint
(intercarpal)
Metacarpal bone
Phalanx
Condyloid joint
(metacarpophalangeal)

Figure 9.8 **The Six Types of Synovial Joints.** All six have representatives in the forelimb. Mechanical models show the types of motion possible at each joint.

rotate during pronation and supination of the forearm (motions to be described shortly).

5. **Gliding (plane) joints.** Here, the articular surfaces are flat or only slightly concave and convex. The adjacent bones slide over each other and have rather limited monaxial movement; they are amphiarthroses in contrast to the other five types listed, which are diarthroses. Gliding joints occur between the carpal and tarsal bones, between the articular processes of the vertebrae, and at the sternoclavicular joint. To feel a gliding joint in motion, palpate your sternoclavicular joint as you raise your arm above your head.
6. **Condyloid (ellipsoid) joints.** These joints exhibit an oval convex surface on one bone that fits into a similarly shaped depression on the next. The radiocarpal joint of the wrist and the metacarpophalangeal (MET-uh-CAR-po-fuh-LAN-jee-ul) joints at the bases of the fingers are examples. These are considered *biaxial* joints because they can move in two directions, for example up and down and side to side. To demonstrate, hold your hand with your palm facing you. Flex your index finger back and forth as if gesturing to someone, "come here," and then move the finger from side to side toward the thumb and away. This shows the biaxial motion of the condyloid joint.

In table 9.1 the joints are classified by structural criteria. Some joints are difficult to classify, however, because they have elements of more than one type. The jaw joint, for example, has some aspects of condyloid, hinge, and gliding joints for reasons that will be apparent later.

Table 9.1 Anatomical Classification of the Joints

Joint	Characteristics and Examples
Fibrous Joints	Adjacent bones bound by collagen fibers extending from the matrix of one into the matrix of the other
Sutures (fig. 9.4)	Immovable fibrous joints between cranial and facial bones
Serrate suture	Bones joined by a wavy line formed by interlocking teeth along the margins. Examples: coronal, sagittal, and lambdoid sutures
Lap suture	Bones beveled to overlap each other; superficial appearance is a smooth line. Example: squamous suture around temporal bone
Plane suture	Bones butted against each other without overlapping or interlocking. Example: palatine suture
Gomphosis (fig. 9.3*b*)	Insertion of a tooth into a socket, held in place by collagen fibers of periodontal ligament
Syndesmosis (fig. 9.3*c*)	Slightly movable joint held together by ligaments or interosseous membranes. Examples: tibiofibular joint and radioulnar joint
Cartilaginous Joints	Adjacent bones bound by cartilage
Synchondrosis (fig. 9.5*a*)	Bones held together by hyaline cartilage. Examples: articulation of ribs with sternum, and epiphyseal plate uniting the epiphysis and diaphysis of a long bone of a child
Symphysis (fig. 9.5*b, c*)	Slightly movable joint held together by fibrocartilage. Examples: intervertebral joints and pubic symphysis
Synostoses	Former fibrous or cartilaginous joints in which adjacent bones have become fused by ossification. Examples: midsagittal line of frontal bone, fusion of epiphysis and diaphysis of an adult long bone, and fusion of ilium, ischium, and pubis to form os coxae
Synovial Joints (figs. 9.6 and 9.8)	Adjacent bones covered with hyaline articular cartilage, separated by lubricating synovial fluid and enclosed in a fibrous joint capsule
Ball-and-socket	Multiaxial diarthrosis in which a smooth hemispherical head of one bone fits into a cuplike depression of another. Examples: shoulder and hip joints
Hinge	Monaxial diarthrosis, able to flex and extend in only one plane. Examples: elbow, knee, and interphalangeal joints
Saddle	Joint in which each bone surface is saddle-shaped (concave on one axis and convex on the perpendicular axis). Unique to the thumb (trapeziometacarpal joint), where it allows opposition (touching of the thumb to the fingertips)
Pivot	Joint in which a projection of one bone fits into a ringlike ligament of another, allowing one bone to rotate on its longitudinal axis. Examples: atlantoaxial joint and proximal radioulnar joint
Gliding	Synovial amphiarthrosis with slightly concave or convex bone surfaces that slide across each other. Examples: intercarpal, intertarsal, and sternoclavicular joints; joints between the articular processes of the vertebrae
Condyloid	Biaxial diarthrosis in which an oval convex surface of one bone articulates with an elliptical depression of another. Examples: radiocarpal and metacarpophalangeal joints

Movements of Diarthroses

In physical therapy, kinesiology, and other medical and scientific fields, specific terms are used to describe the movements of diarthroses. You will need a command of these terms to understand the muscle actions in chapter 10. In the following discussion, many of them are grouped to describe opposite or contrasting movements.

Flexion, Extension, and Hyperextension

Flexion (figs. 9.9 and 9.10*c*) is movement that decreases the angle of a joint, usually in a sagittal plane. Examples are bending the elbow or knee and bending the neck to look down at the floor. Bending at the waist, as if taking a bow, is flexion of the spine. Flexion of the shoulder consists of raising the arm from anatomical position in a sagittal plane, as if to point in front of you or toward the ceiling. Flexion of the hip entails raising the thigh, as in a high-stepping marching stance.

Extension is movement that straightens a joint and generally returns a body part to anatomical position—for example, straightening the elbow or knee, raising the head to look directly forward, straightening the waist, or moving the arm back to a position parallel to the trunk.

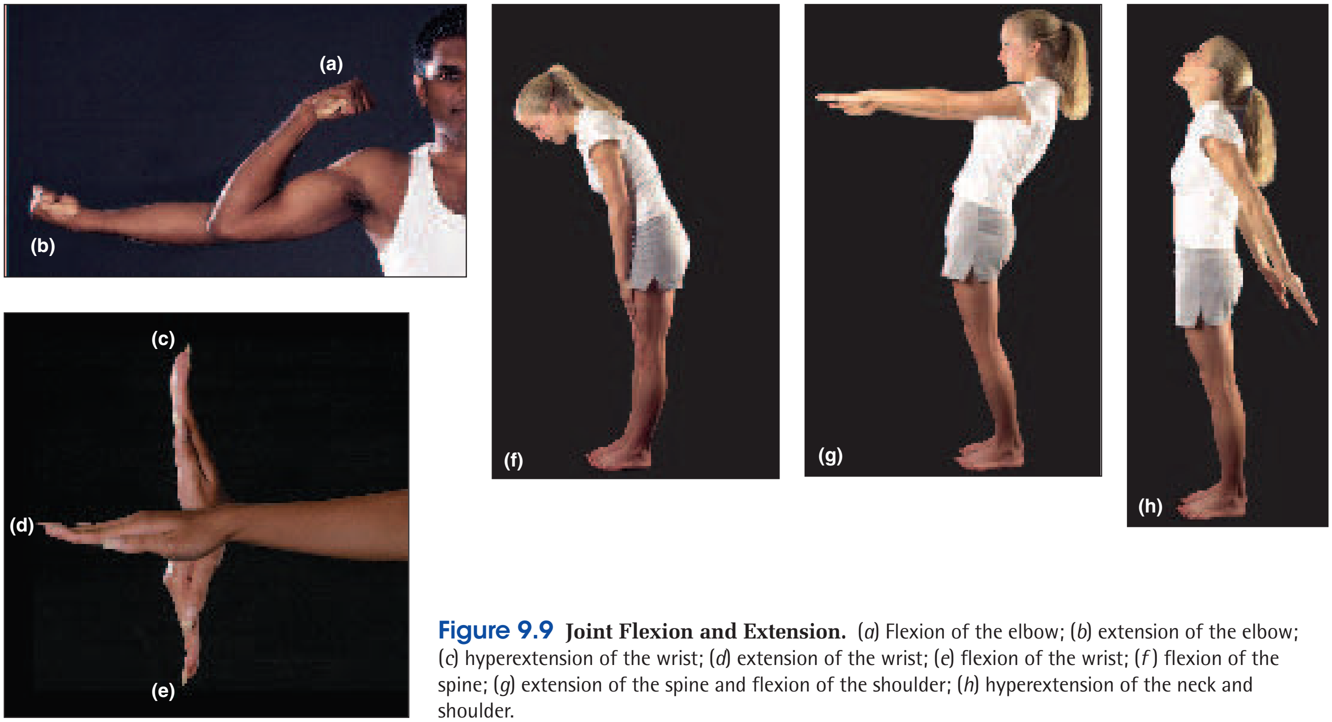


Figure 9.9 **Joint Flexion and Extension.** (*a*) Flexion of the elbow; (*b*) extension of the elbow; (*c*) hyperextension of the wrist; (*d*) extension of the wrist; (*e*) flexion of the wrist; (*f*) flexion of the spine; (*g*) extension of the spine and flexion of the shoulder; (*h*) hyperextension of the neck and shoulder.

Hyperextension is the extension of a joint beyond 180°. For example, if you extend your arm and hand with the palm down, and then raise the back of your hand as if admiring a new ring, you are hyperextending the wrist. If you look up toward the ceiling, you are hyperextending your neck. If you move your arm to a position posterior to the shoulder, you are hyperextending your shoulder. Each backswing of the lower limb when you are walking hyperextends your hip joint.

Think About It

Some synovial joints have articular surfaces or ligaments that prevent them from being hyperextended. Try hyperextending some of your synovial joints and list a few for which this is impossible.

Abduction and Adduction

Abduction[12] (ab-DUC-shun) (fig 9.10) is movement of a body part away from the midsagittal line—for example, raising the arm to one side of the body or standing spread-legged. To abduct the fingers is to spread them apart. **Adduction**[13] (ah-DUC-shun) is movement toward the midsagittal line or median axis of the middle digit—that is, returning the body part to anatomical position. Some movements are open to alternative interpretations. Bending the head to one side or bending sideways at the waist may be regarded as abduction or lateral flexion.

Elevation and Depression

Elevation (fig. 9.11*a*) is movement that raises a bone vertically. The mandible is elevated when biting off a piece of food, and the clavicles are elevated when shrugging the shoulders as if to gesture, "I don't know." The opposite of elevation is **depression**—lowering the mandible to open the mouth or lowering the shoulders, for example (fig. 9.11*b*).

Protraction and Retraction

Protraction[14] is movement of a bone anteriorly (forward) on a horizontal plane, and **retraction**[15] is movement posteriorly (fig. 9.11*c, d*). Jutting the jaw outward, hunching the shoulders forward, or thrusting the pelvis forward are examples of protraction. The clavicles are retracted when standing at military attention. Most people have some degree of overbite and must protract the mandible to make the incisors meet when taking a bite of fruit, for example.

---

[12] *ab* = away + *duc* = to carry, lead
[13] *ad* = toward + *duc* = to carry, lead
[14] *pro* = forward + *trac* = pull, draw
[15] *re* = back + *tract* = pull, draw

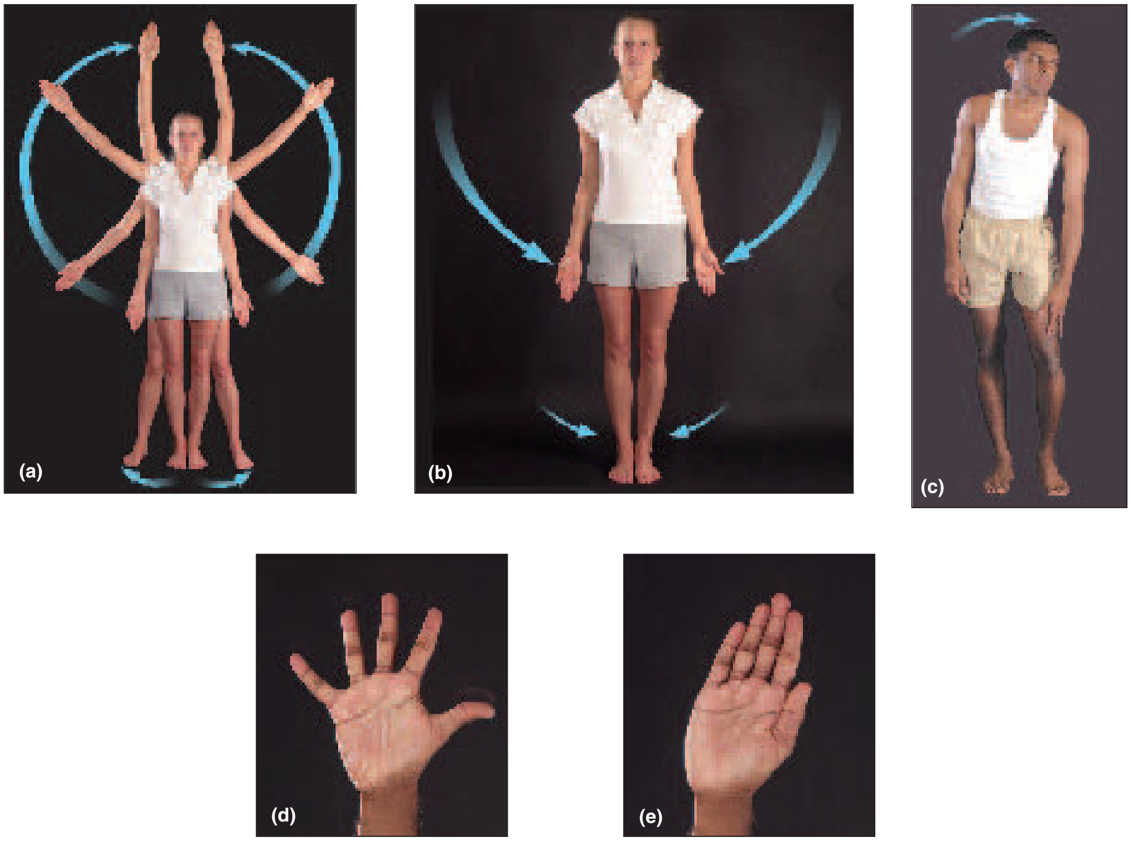


Figure 9.10 **Joint Abduction and Adduction.** (*a*) Abduction of the limbs; (*b*) adduction of the limbs; (*c*) abduction (lateral flexion) of the spine; (*d*) abduction of the fingers; (*e*) adduction of the fingers.

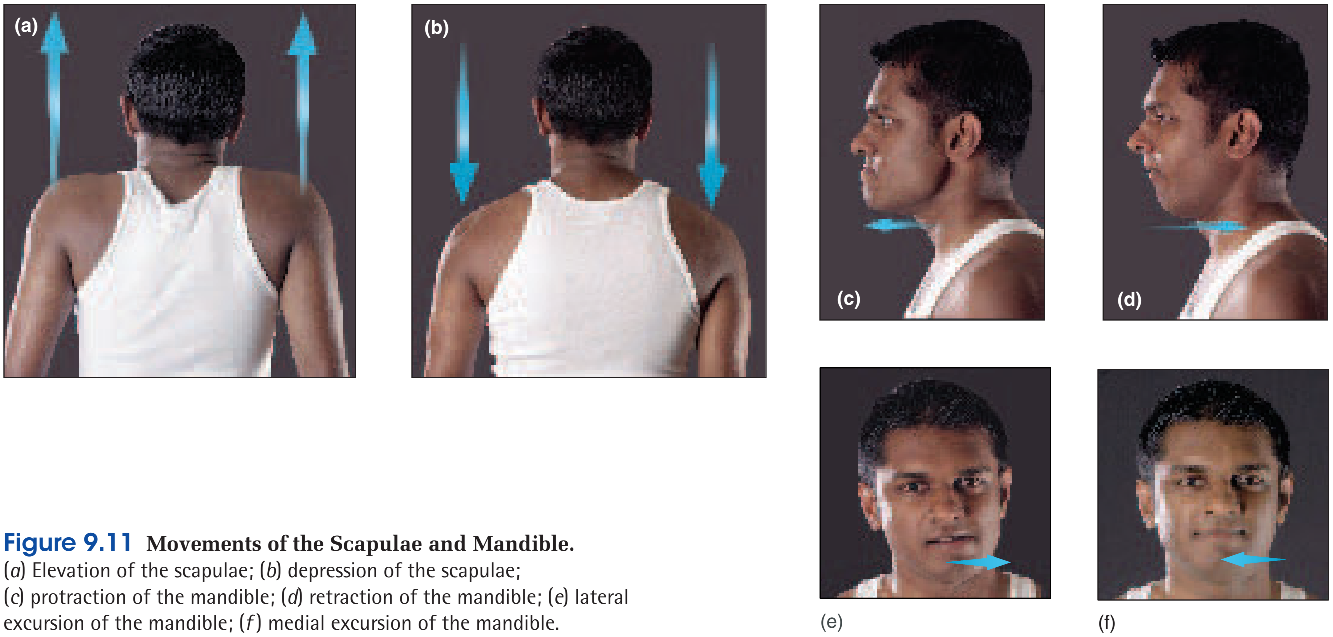


Figure 9.11 **Movements of the Scapulae and Mandible.** (*a*) Elevation of the scapulae; (*b*) depression of the scapulae; (*c*) protraction of the mandible; (*d*) retraction of the mandible; (*e*) lateral excursion of the mandible; (*f*) medial excursion of the mandible.

The mandible is then retracted to make the molars meet and grind food between them.

Lateral and Medial Excursion

Biting and chewing food require several movements of the jaw: up and down (elevation-depression), forward and back (protraction-retraction), and side-to-side grinding movements. The last of these are called **lateral excursion** (sideways movement to the right or left) and **medial excursion** (movement back to the midline) (fig. 9.11*e, f*).

Circumduction

Circumduction[16] (fig. 9.12*a*) is movement in which one end of an appendage remains relatively stationary while the other end makes a circular motion. The appendage as a whole thus describes a conical space. For example, if an artist standing at an easel reaches out and draws a circle on the canvas, the shoulder remains stationary while the

---

[16] *circum* = around + *duc* = to carry, lead

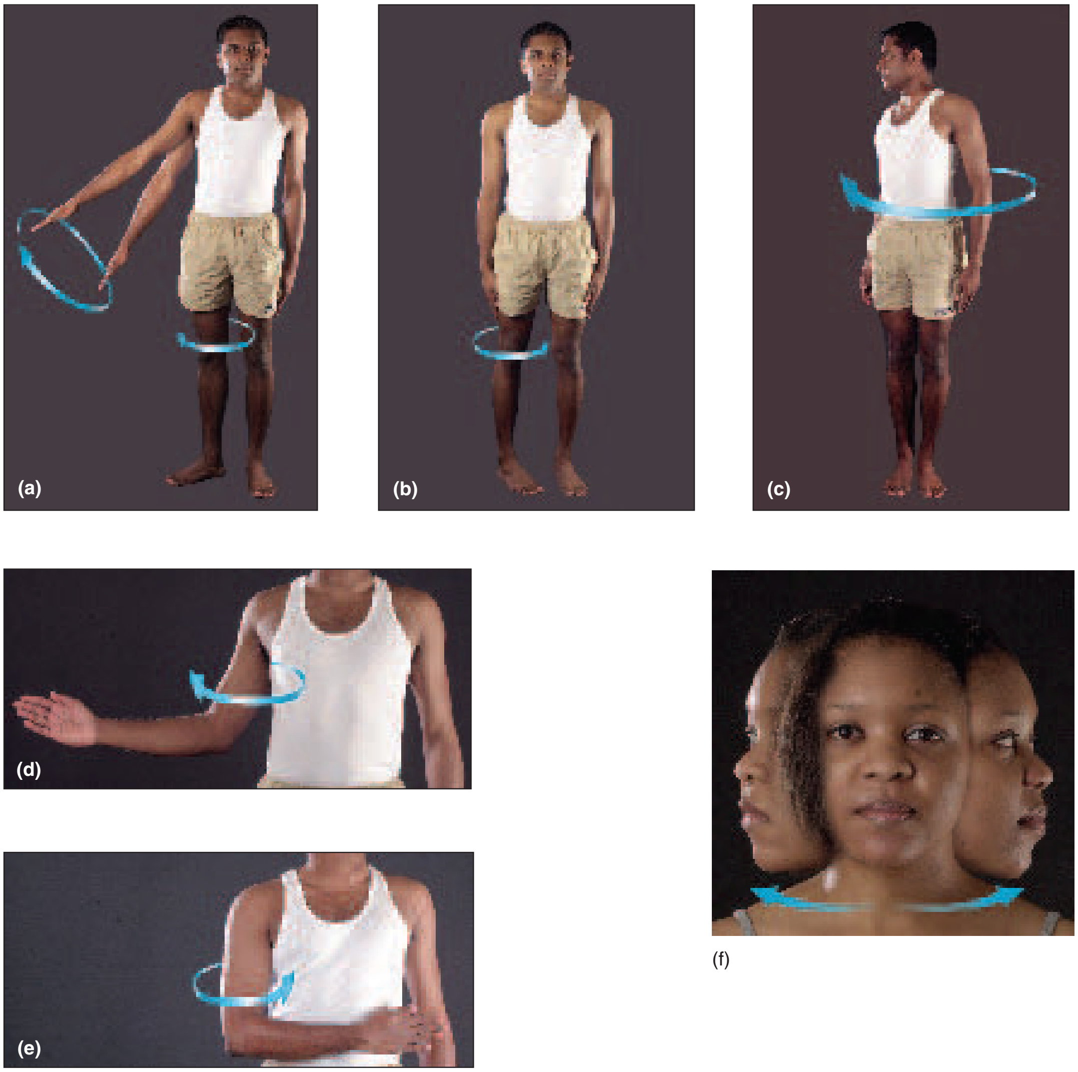


Figure 9.12 **Joint Circumduction and Rotation.** (*a*) Circumduction of the upper limb and lateral rotation of the right femur; (*b*) medial rotation of the right femur; (*c*) rotation of the spine; (*d*) lateral rotation of the humerus; (*e*) medial rotation of the humerus; (*f*) rotation of the neck (atlantoaxial joint).

hand makes a circle. The limb as a whole thus exhibits circumduction. A baseball player winding up for the pitch circumducts the arm in a more extreme "windmill" fashion. Circumduction is actually a sequence of flexion, abduction, extension, and adduction.

Rotation

Rotation is a movement in which a bone turns on its longitudinal axis. Figure 9.12 shows the limb movements that occur in **lateral** and **medial rotation** of the femur and humerus. Twisting at the waist is rotation of the trunk. When the head is turned from side to side, the atlas rotates on the axis.

Supination and Pronation

These movements occur in the forearm and foot. **Supination**[17] (SOO-pih-NAY-shun) (fig. 9.13*a*) of the forearm is rotation so that the palm faces forward or upward; in anatomical position, the forearm is supine. **Pronation**[18] (fig. 9.13*b*) is rotation of the forearm so that the palm faces toward the rear or downward. As an aid to memory, think of it this way: You are *prone* to stand in the most comfortable position, which is with the palm *pronated.* If you were holding a bowl of *soup* in your hand, your forearm would have to be *supinated.* These movements are achieved with muscles discussed in chapter 10. The *supinator* muscle is the most powerful, and supination is the sort of movement you would usually make with the right hand to turn a doorknob clockwise or drive a screw into a piece of wood.

To supinate the foot is to invert and abduct it, raising the medial edge. To pronate the foot is to evert and abduct it, raising the lateral edge.

Opposition and Reposition

Opposition[19] is movement of the thumb to approach or touch the fingertips, and **reposition**[20] is its movement back to anatomical position, parallel to the index finger (fig. 9.13*c, d*). Opposition is the movement that enables the hand to grasp objects and is the single most important hand function.

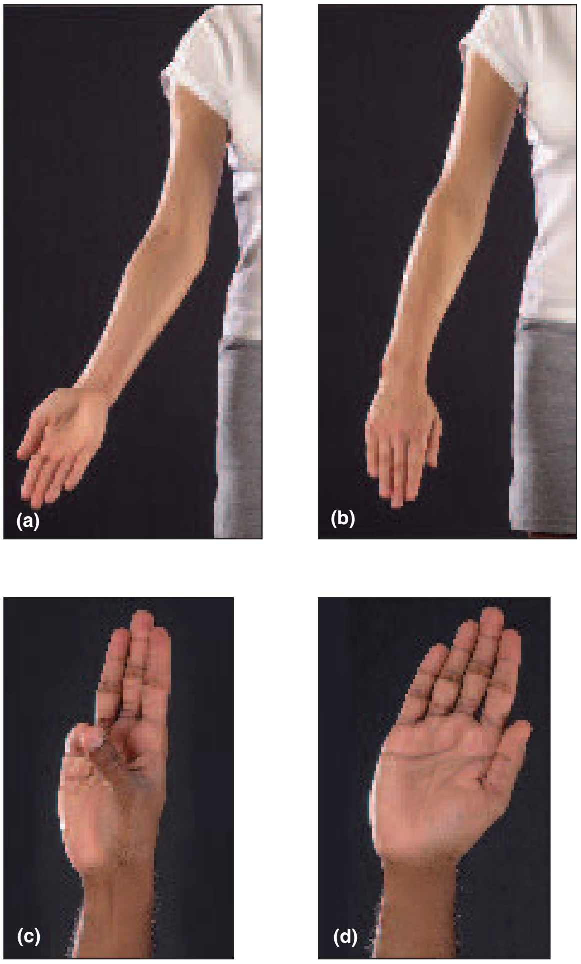


Figure 9.13 **Joint Movements of the Forearm and Hand.** (*a*) Supination of the forearm; (*b*) pronation of the forearm; (*c*) opposition of the thumb; (*d*) reposition of the thumb.

Dorsiflexion and Plantar Flexion

These movements are limited to the foot. **Dorsiflexion** (DOR-sih-FLEC-shun) is a movement in which the toes are raised (as one might do to apply toenail polish) (fig. 9.14*a*). The foot is dorsiflexed in each step you take as your foot comes forward. Dorsiflexion prevents your toes from scraping on the ground and results in a "heel strike" when that foot touches down in front of you. **Plantar** (PLAN-tur) **flexion** is extension of the foot so that the toes point downward, as in standing on tiptoe or pressing the gas pedal of a car (fig. 9.14*c*). This motion also produces the "toe-off" in each step you take, as the heel of the foot behind you lifts off the ground.

Inversion and Eversion

These movements are also unique to the feet (fig. 9.14*d, e*). **Inversion**[21] is a movement in which the soles are

---

[17] *supin* = to lay back
[18] *pron* = to bend forward
[19] *op* = against + *posit* = to place
[20] *re* = back + *posit* = to place
[21] *in* = inward + *version* = turning

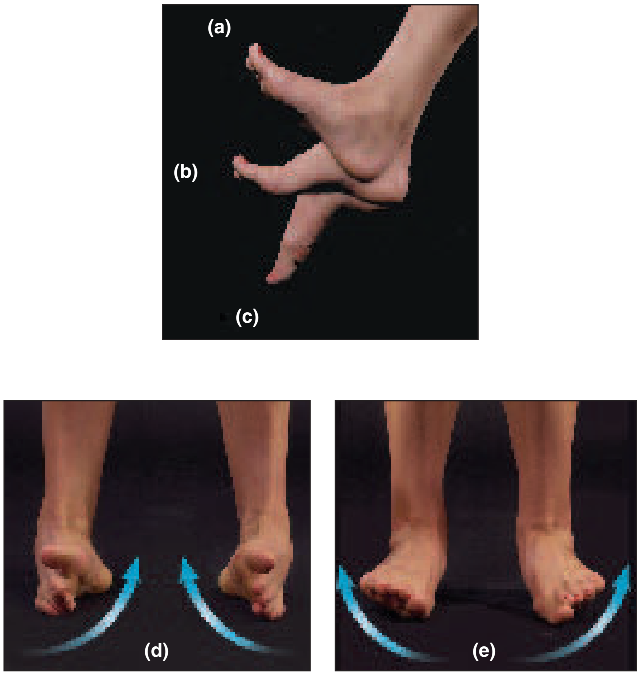


Figure 9.14 **Joint Movements of the Foot.** (*a*) Dorsiflexion; (*b*) extension; (*c*) plantar flexion; (*d*) inversion; (*e*) eversion.

turned medially; **eversion**[22] is a turning of the soles to face laterally. Inversion and eversion are common in fast sports such as tennis and football and often result in ankle sprains. These terms also refer to congenital deformities of the feet, which are often corrected by orthopedic shoes or braces.

Think About It

A chimpanzee sitting on the ground reaches out and grasps an object between its fingertips. Then it raises its hand to its face and turns the object to examine it. List the movements that would occur at its diarthroses and identify the joint at which each one would occur.

Range of Motion

We can see from the movements just described that the **range of motion (ROM)** of a joint varies greatly from one type to another. ROM obviously affects a person's functional independence and quality of life. It is also an important consideration in training for athletics or dance, in clinical diagnosis, and in monitoring the progress of rehabilitation.

Several factors affect the ROM and stability of a joint:

- **Structure and action of the muscles.** The two most important factors in stabilizing a joint are tendons and muscle tone (a state of partial contraction of a "resting" muscle). Tendons, ligaments, and muscles have sensory nerve endings called *proprioceptors* (PRO-pree-oh-SEP-turs) that continually monitor joint angle and muscle tension. Upon receiving this information, the spinal cord sends nerve signals back to the muscles to increase or decrease their state of contraction and adjust the position of the joint and tautness of the tendons.
- **Structure of the articular surfaces of the bones.** You cannot hyperextend your elbow, for example, because the olecranon of the ulna fits into the olecranon fossa of the humerus and prevents further movement in that direction.
- **Strength and tautness of ligaments, tendons, and the joint capsule.** You cannot hyperextend your knee, for example, because of a *cruciate ligament* that is pulled tight when the knee is extended and prevents further motion. Gymnasts and acrobats increase the ROM of their joints by gradually stretching their ligaments during training. "Double-jointed" people have unusually large ROMs at some joints, not because the joint is actually double or fundamentally different from normal in its anatomy, but because the ligaments are unusually long or slack.

Levers and Biomechanics of the Joints

A **lever** is any elongated, rigid object that rotates around a fixed point called the **fulcrum** (fig. 9.15). Familiar examples include a seesaw and a crowbar. Rotation occurs when an **effort** applied to one point on the lever overcomes a **resistance (load)** located at some other point. The part of a lever from the fulcrum to the point of effort is called the **effort arm,** and the part from the fulcrum to the point of resistance is the **resistance arm.** In the body, a long bone acts as a lever, a joint serves as the fulcrum, and the effort is generated by a muscle attached to the bone.

The function of a lever is to confer an advantage—either to exert more force against a resisting object than the force applied to the lever (for example, in moving a heavy boulder with a crowbar) or to move the resisting object farther or faster than the effort arm is moved (as in swinging a baseball bat). A single lever cannot confer both advantages. There is a trade-off between force on one hand and speed or distance on the other—as one increases, the other decreases.

---

[22] *e* = outward + *version* = turning

The **mechanical advantage (MA)** of a lever is the ratio of its output force to its input force. It can be predicted from the length of the effort arm, L_E, divided by the length of the resistance arm, L_R; that is, $MA = L_E/L_R$. If MA is greater than 1.0, the lever will produce more force, but less speed or distance, than the force exerted on it. If MA is less than 1.0, the lever will produce more speed or distance, but less force, than the input. Consider the elbow joint, for example (fig. 9.16*a*). Its resistance arm is longer than its effort arm, so we know from the preceding formula that the mechanical advantage is going to be less than 1.0. The figure shows some representative values for L_E and L_R that yield $MA = 0.15$. The biceps brachii muscle puts more power into the lever than we get out of it, but the hand moves farther and faster than the point where the biceps tendon inserts on the ulna.

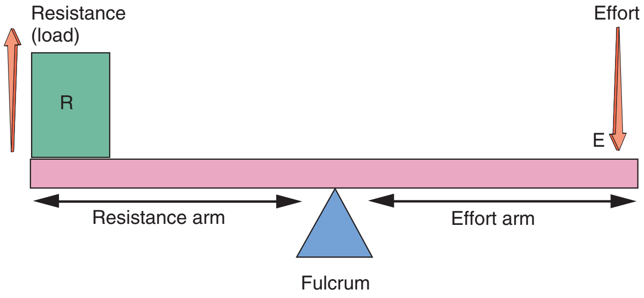

Resistance (load)
R
Effort
E
Resistance arm
Effort arm
Fulcrum

Figure 9.15 **The Basic Components of a Lever.** This example is a first-class lever.

What would be the mechanical advantage of the lever shown here? Where would you put the fulcrum to increase the mechanical advantage without changing the lever class?

In chapter 10, you will see that several joints have two or more muscles acting on them, seemingly producing the same effect. At first, you might consider this arrangement redundant, but it makes sense if the tendinous insertions of the muscles are at slightly different places and produce different mechanical advantages. A runner taking off from the starting line, for example, uses "low-gear" (high-MA) muscles that do not generate much speed but have the power to overcome the inertia of the body. A runner then "shifts into high gear" by using muscles with different insertions that have a lower mechanical advantage but produce more speed at the feet. This is analogous to the way an automobile transmission works to get a car to move and then cruise at high speed.

Physicists recognize three classes of levers that differ with respect to which component—the fulcrum (F), effort (E), or resistance (R)—is in the middle. A **first-class lever** (EFR) is one with the fulcrum in the middle. Each half of

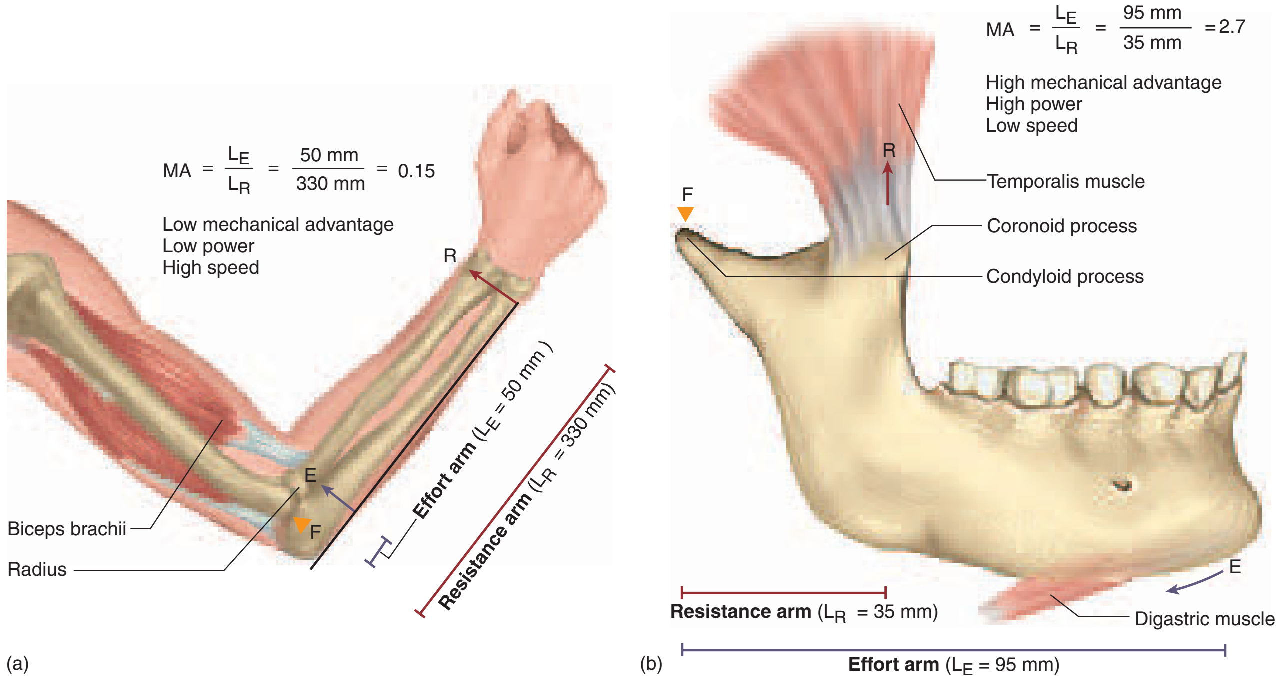
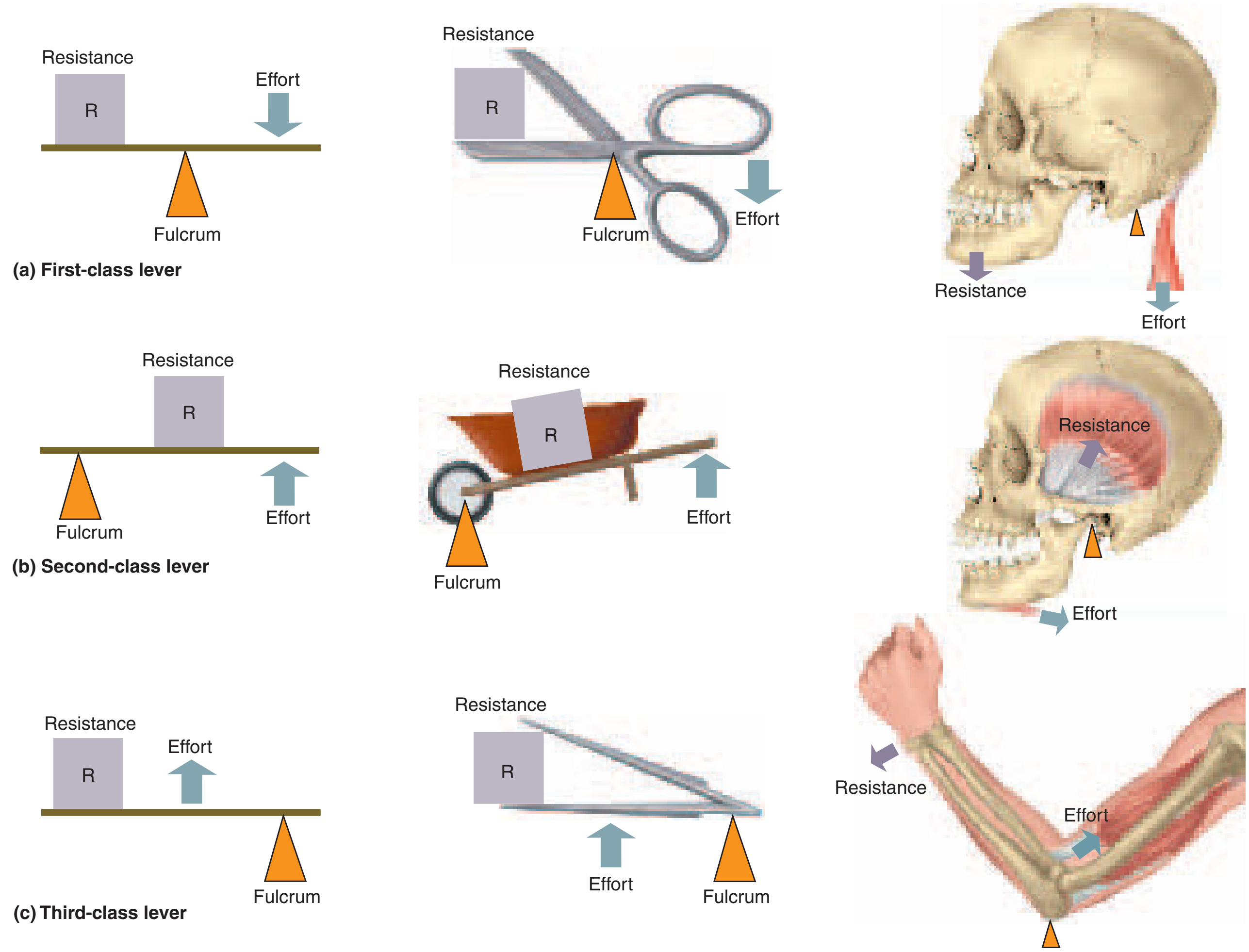

MA = LE / LR = 50 mm / 330 mm = 0.15
Low mechanical advantage
Low power
High speed
R
E
F
Biceps brachii
Radius
Effort arm (LE = 50 mm)
Resistance arm (LR = 330 mm)
(a)
MA = LE / LR = 95 mm / 35 mm = 2.7
High mechanical advantage
High power
Low speed
R
F
Temporalis muscle
Coronoid process
Condyloid process
E
Resistance arm (LR = 35 mm)
Digastric muscle
Effort arm (LE = 95 mm)
(b)

Figure 9.16 **Mechanical Advantage (MA).** MA is calculated from the length of the effort arm divided by the length of the resistance arm. (*a*) The forearm acts as a third-class lever during flexion of the elbow. (*b*) The mandible acts as a second-class lever when the jaw is forcibly opened. The digastric muscle and others provide the effort, while tension in the temporalis muscle and others provide resistance.

a pair of scissors, for example, acts as a first-class lever with the screw as its fulcrum (fig. 9.17*a*). An anatomical example is the atlantooccipital joint of the neck, where the muscles of the back of the neck pull down on the nuchal lines of the skull and oppose the tendency of the head to tip forward. Loss of muscle tone here can be embarrassing if you nod off in class.

A **second-class lever** (FRE) is one in which the resistance is in the middle (fig. 9.17*b*). Lifting the handles of a wheelbarrow, for example, causes it to pivot on its wheel at the opposite end, and lift a load in the middle. The mandible acts as a second-class lever when the *digastric muscle* pulls down on the chin to open the mouth. The fulcrum is the *temporomandibular (jaw) joint,* the effort is applied to the chin by the digastric muscle, and the resistance is the tension of muscles such as the *temporalis* that is used to bite and to hold the mouth closed. (This arrangement is upside down relative to a wheelbarrow, but the mechanics remain the same.)

In a **third-class lever** (FER), the effort is applied between the fulcrum and resistance (fig. 9.17*c*). A pair of forceps, for example, consists of two third-class levers joined together. Most levers in the human body are third-class levers. The mandible acts as a third-class lever when you close your mouth to bite off a piece of food. Again, the temporomandibular joint is the fulcrum, but



(a) First-class lever

(b) Second-class lever

(c) Third-class lever

Figure 9.17 The Three Classes of Levers. *Left:* The lever classes defined by the relative positions of the resistance (load), fulcrum, and effort. *Center:* Mechanical examples. *Right:* Anatomical examples. (*a*) Muscles of the back of the neck pull the skull downward to oppose the tendency of the head to drop forward. The fulcrum is the occipital condyles. (*b*) To open the mouth, the digastric muscle pulls down on the chin. It is resisted by the temporalis muscle on the side of the head. The fulcrum is the temporomandibular (jaw) joint. (*c*) In flexing the elbow, the biceps brachii muscle exerts an effort on the radius. Resistance is provided by the weight of the forearm or anything held in the hand. The fulcrum is the elbow joint.

now the temporalis muscle exerts the effort, while the resistance is supplied by the item of food being bitten. At the elbow, the fulcrum is the joint between the ulna and humerus; the effort is applied by the biceps brachii muscle, and the resistance can be provided by any weight in the hand or the weight of the forearm itself (see fig. 9.16*a*).

The classification of a body part changes as it makes different actions. For example, the forearm is a third-class lever when you flex your elbow but a first-class lever when you extend your elbow.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

8. What are the two components of a joint capsule? What is the function of each?
9. What types of joints are described as monaxial, biaxial, and multiaxial? Give an example of each and explain the reason for its classification.
10. Name the joints that would be involved if you reached directly overhead and screwed a light bulb into a ceiling fixture. Describe the joint actions that would occur.
11. Where are the effort, fulcrum, and resistance in the act of dorsiflexion? What class of lever is this? Would you expect it to have a mechanical advantage greater or less than 1.0? Why?

Anatomy of Selected Diarthroses

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- identify the major anatomical features of the jaw, shoulder, elbow, hip, knee, and ankle joints; and
- explain how the anatomical differences between these joints are related to differences in function.

We now examine the gross anatomy of certain diarthroses. It is beyond the scope of this book to discuss all of them, but the ones selected here most often require medical attention and many of them have a strong bearing on athletic performance.

The Temporomandibular Joint

The **temporomandibular joint (TMJ)** is the articulation of the condyle of the mandible with the mandibular fossa of the temporal bone (fig. 9.18). You can feel its action by pressing your fingertips against the jaw immediately anterior to the ear while opening and closing your mouth. This joint combines elements of condyloid, hinge, and gliding joints. It functions in a hingelike fashion when the mandible is elevated and depressed, it glides slightly forward when the jaw is protracted to take a bite, and it glides from side to side to grind food between the molars.

The synovial cavity of the TMJ is divided into superior and inferior chambers by a meniscus called the **articular disc,** which permits lateral and medial excursion of the mandible. Two ligaments support the joint. The **temporomandibular ligament** on the lateral side prevents posterior displacement of the mandible. If the jaw receives a hard blow, this ligament normally prevents the condyloid process from being driven upward and fracturing the base of the skull. The **sphenomandibular ligament** on the medial side of the joint extends from the sphenoid bone to the ramus of the mandible. A *stylomandibular ligament* extends from the styloid process to the angle of the mandible but is not part of the TMJ proper.

A deep yawn or other strenuous depression of the mandible can dislocate the TMJ by making the condyle pop out of the fossa and slip forward. The joint can be relocated by pressing down on the molars while pushing the jaw backward.

Insight 9.2 Clinical Application

TMJ Syndrome

TMJ syndrome has received medical recognition only recently, although it may affect as many as 75 million Americans. It can cause moderate intermittent facial pain, clicking sounds in the jaw, limitation of jaw movement, and in some people, more serious symptoms—severe headaches, vertigo (dizziness), tinnitus (ringing in the ears), and pain radiating from the jaw down the neck, shoulders, and back. It seems to be caused by a combination of psychological tension and malocclusion (misalignment of the teeth). Treatment may involve psychological management, physical therapy, analgesic and anti-inflammatory drugs, and sometimes corrective dental appliances to align the teeth properly.

The Humeroscapular Joint

The shoulder joint is called the **humeroscapular (glenohumeral) joint** (fig. 9.19). It is the most freely movable joint of the body but also one of the most commonly injured. The shallowness of the glenoid cavity and looseness of the joint capsule sacrifice joint stability for freedom of movement. The cavity, however, has a ring of fibrocartilage called the **glenoid labrum**[23] around its margin, which makes it somewhat deeper than it appears on a dried skeleton.

Five principal ligaments support this joint. Three of them, called **glenohumeral ligaments,** are relatively weak and sometimes absent. The other two are the **coracohumeral ligament,** which extends from the coracoid process of the scapula to the greater tubercle of the

---

[23] *labrum* = lip

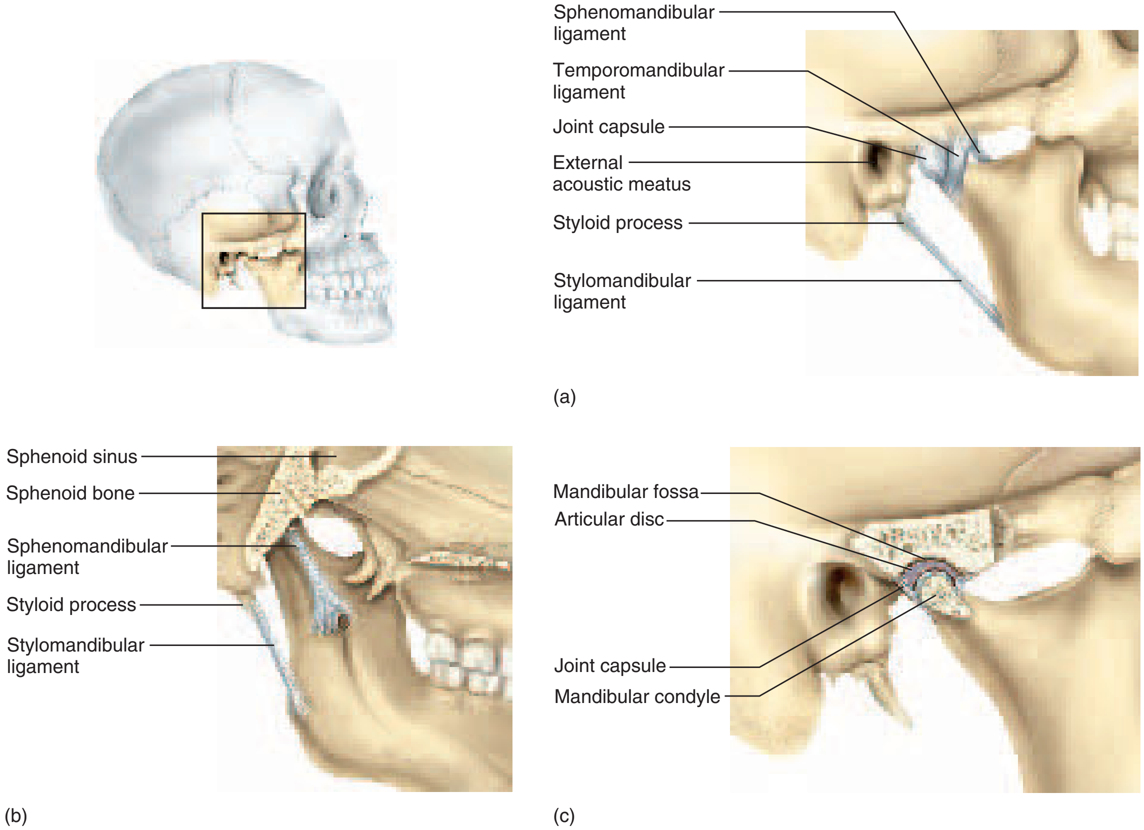

Sphenomandibular ligament
Temporomandibular ligament
Joint capsule
External acoustic meatus
Styloid process
Stylomandibular ligament
(a)
Sphenoid sinus
Sphenoid bone
Sphenomandibular ligament
Styloid process
Stylomandibular ligament
(b)
Mandibular fossa
Articular disc
Joint capsule
Mandibular condyle
(c)

Figure 9.18 **The Temporomandibular Joint (TMJ).** (*a*) Lateral view; (*b*) medial view; (*c*) sagittal section through the joint cavity.
Why is the stylomandibular ligament not part of the TMJ?

humerus, and the **transverse humeral ligament,** which extends from the greater to the lesser tubercle of the humerus, creating a tunnel through which a tendon of the biceps brachii passes.

The biceps tendon is the most important stabilizer of the shoulder. It originates on the margin of the glenoid cavity, passes through the joint capsule, and emerges into the intertubercular groove of the humerus, where it is held by the transverse humeral ligament. Inferior to this groove, it merges into the biceps brachii. Thus, the tendon functions as a taut, adjustable strap that holds the humerus against the glenoid cavity.

In addition to the biceps brachii, four muscles important in stabilizing the humeroscapular joint are the *supraspinatus, infraspinatus, teres minor,* and *subscapularis,* all of which are shown and described more fully in chapter 10. The tendons of these four muscles form the **rotator cuff,** which is fused to the joint capsule on all sides except ventrally.

Shoulder dislocations are very painful and can result in permanent damage. The most common dislocation is downward displacement of the humerus, because (1) the rotator cuff protects the joint in all directions except ventrally, and (2) the joint is protected from above by the coracoid process, acromion, and clavicle. Dislocations most often occur when the arm is abducted and then receives a blow from above—for example, when the outstretched arm is struck by heavy objects falling off a shelf. They also occur in children who are jerked off the ground by one arm or forced to follow by a hard tug on the arm. Children are especially prone to such injury not only because of the inherent stress caused by such abuse but also because a child's shoulder is not fully ossified and the rotator cuff is not strong enough to withstand such stress. Because this joint is so easily dislocated, you should never attempt to move an immobilized person by pulling on his or her arm.

Four bursae are associated with the shoulder joint. Their names describe their locations—the **subdeltoid, subacromial, subcoracoid,** and **subscapular bursae** (fig. 9.19).

The Elbow Joint

The elbow is a hinge joint composed of two articulations—the **humeroulnar joint,** where the trochlea of the

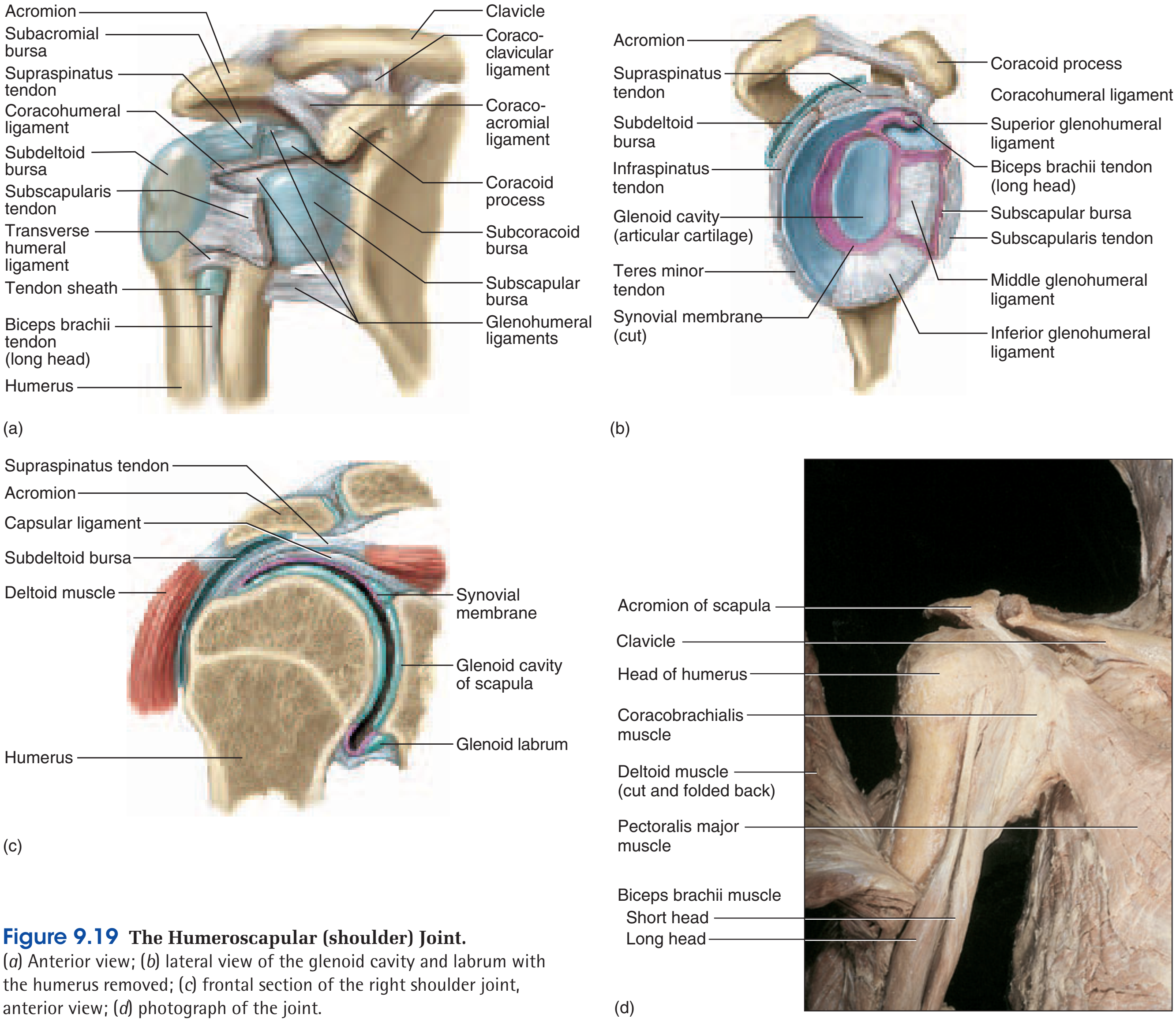

Acromion
Subacromial bursa
Supraspinatus tendon
Coracohumeral ligament
Subdeltoid bursa
Subscapularis tendon
Transverse humeral ligament
Tendon sheath
Biceps brachii tendon (long head)
Humerus
Clavicle
Coraco-clavicular ligament
Coraco-acromial ligament
Coracoid process
Subcoracoid bursa
Subscapular bursa
Glenohumeral ligaments
(a)
Acromion
Supraspinatus tendon
Subdeltoid bursa
Infraspinatus tendon
Glenoid cavity (articular cartilage)
Teres minor tendon
Synovial membrane (cut)
Coracoid process
Coracohumeral ligament
Superior glenohumeral ligament
Biceps brachii tendon (long head)
Subscapular bursa
Subscapularis tendon
Middle glenohumeral ligament
Inferior glenohumeral ligament
(b)
Supraspinatus tendon
Acromion
Capsular ligament
Subdeltoid bursa
Deltoid muscle
Humerus
Synovial membrane
Glenoid cavity of scapula
Glenoid labrum
(c)
Acromion of scapula
Clavicle
Head of humerus
Coracobrachialis muscle
Deltoid muscle (cut and folded back)
Pectoralis major muscle
Biceps brachii muscle
Short head
Long head
(d)

Figure 9.19 **The Humeroscapular (shoulder) Joint.** (*a*) Anterior view; (*b*) lateral view of the glenoid cavity and labrum with the humerus removed; (*c*) frontal section of the right shoulder joint, anterior view; (*d*) photograph of the joint.

humerus joins the trochlear notch of the ulna, and the **humeroradial joint,** where the capitulum of the humerus meets the head of the radius (fig. 9.20). Both are enclosed in a single joint capsule. On the posterior side of the elbow, there is a prominent **olecranon bursa** to ease the movement of tendons over the elbow. Side-to-side motions of the elbow joint are restricted by a pair of ligaments, the **radial (lateral) collateral ligament** and **ulnar (medial) collateral ligament.**

Another joint occurs in the elbow region, the **proximal radioulnar joint,** but it is not involved in the hinge. At this joint, the disclike head of the radius fits into the radial notch of the ulna and is held in place by the **annular ligament,** which encircles the head of the radius and attaches at each end to the ulna. The radial head rotates like a wheel against the ulna as the forearm is rotated.

The Coxal Joint

The **coxal** (hip) **joint** is the point where the head of the femur inserts into the acetabulum of the os coxae (fig. 9.21). Because the coxal joints bear much of the body's weight, they have deep sockets and are much more stable than the shoulder joint. The depth of the socket is somewhat greater than you see on dried bones because of a horseshoe-shaped

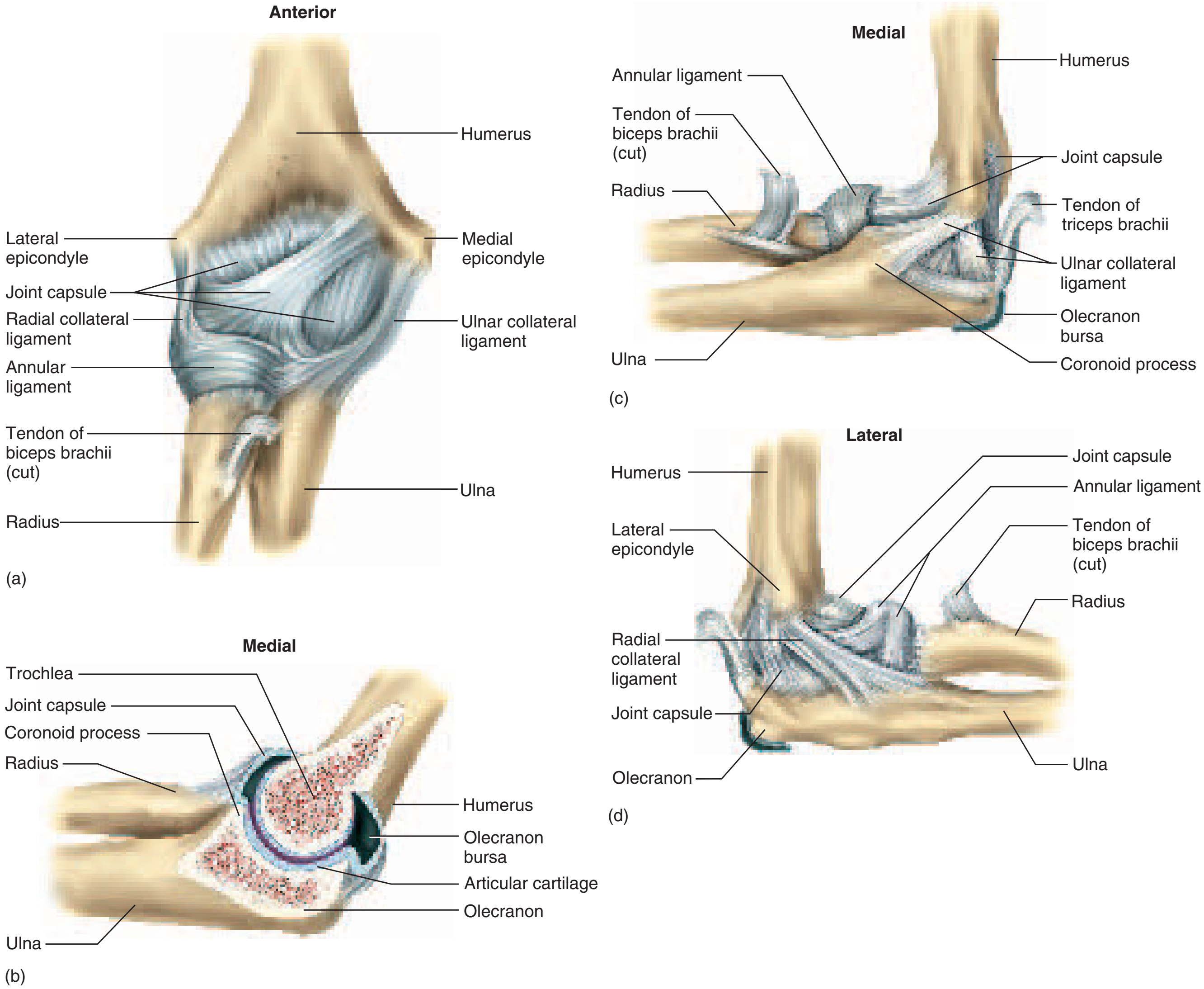

Anterior
Humerus
Lateral epicondyle
Medial epicondyle
Joint capsule
Radial collateral ligament
Ulnar collateral ligament
Annular ligament
Tendon of biceps brachii (cut)
Ulna
Radius
(a)
Medial
Trochlea
Joint capsule
Coronoid process
Radius
Humerus
Olecranon bursa
Articular cartilage
Olecranon
Ulna
(b)
Medial
Humerus
Annular ligament
Tendon of biceps brachii (cut)
Joint capsule
Radius
Tendon of triceps brachii
Ulnar collateral ligament
Olecranon bursa
Ulna
Coronoid process
(c)
Lateral
Joint capsule
Humerus
Annular ligament
Tendon of biceps brachii (cut)
Lateral epicondyle
Radius
Radial collateral ligament
Joint capsule
Ulna
Olecranon
(d)

Figure 9.20 **The Elbow Joint.** (*a*) Anterior view; (*b*) midsagittal section, medial view; (*c*) medial view; (*d*) lateral view.

ring of fibrocartilage, the **acetabular labrum,** attached to its rim. Dislocations of the hip are rare, but some infants suffer congenital dislocations because the acetabulum is not deep enough to hold the head of the femur in place. This condition can be treated by placing the infant in traction until the acetabulum develops enough strength to support the body's weight (fig. 9.22).

Ligaments that support the coxal joint include the **iliofemoral** (ILL-ee-oh-FEM-oh-rul) and **pubofemoral** (PYU-bo-FEM-or-ul) **ligaments** on the anterior side and the **ischiofemoral** (ISS-kee-oh-FEM-or-ul) **ligament** on the posterior side. The name of each ligament refers to the bones to which it attaches—the femur and the ilium, pubis, or ischium. When you stand up, these ligaments become twisted and pull the head of the femur tightly into the acetabulum. The head of the femur has a conspicuous pit called the *fovea capitis.* The **round ligament,** or **ligamentum teres**[24] (TERR-eez), arises here and attaches to the lower margin of the acetabulum. This is a relatively slack ligament, so it is questionable whether it plays a significant role in holding the femur in its socket. It does, however, contain an artery that supplies blood to the head of the femur. A **transverse acetabular ligament** bridges a gap in the inferior margin of the acetabular labrum.

---

[24] *teres* = round

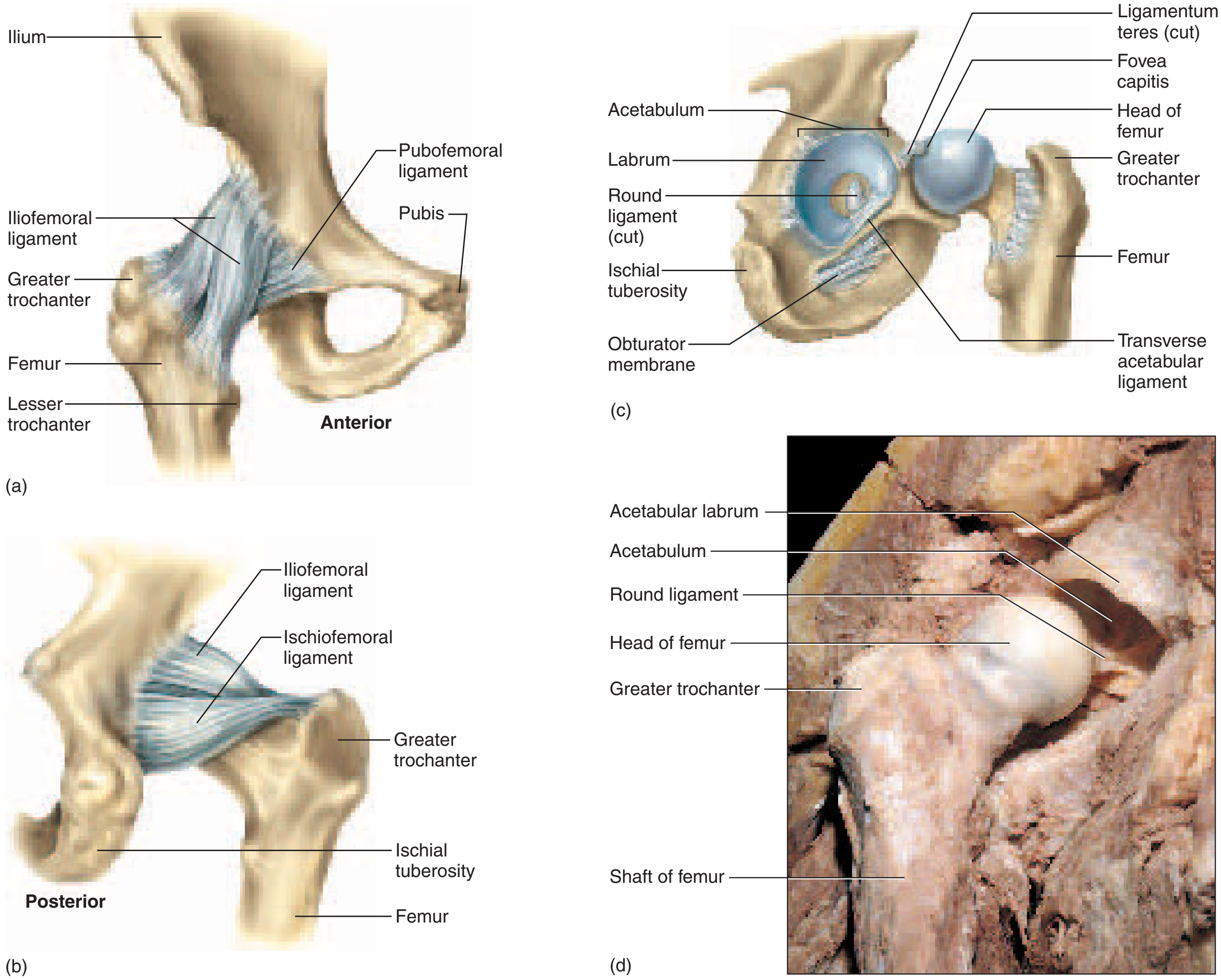

Ilium
Pubofemoral ligament
Pubis
Iliofemoral ligament
Greater trochanter
Femur
Lesser trochanter
Anterior
(a)
Iliofemoral ligament
Ischiofemoral ligament
Greater trochanter
Ischial tuberosity
Posterior
Femur
(b)
Ligamentum teres (cut)
Fovea capitis
Acetabulum
Head of femur
Labrum
Greater trochanter
Round ligament (cut)
Femur
Ischial tuberosity
Obturator membrane
Transverse acetabular ligament
(c)
Acetabular labrum
Acetabulum
Round ligament
Head of femur
Greater trochanter
Shaft of femur
(d)

Figure 9.21 **The Coxal (hip) Joint.** (*a*) Anterior view; (*b*) posterior view; (*c*) the acetabulum with the femoral head retracted; (*d*) photograph of the right hip with the femoral head retracted, anterior view.

Figure 9.22 **Treatment of Congenital Hip Dislocation.** Infants are sometimes placed in traction to treat this condition.

The Knee Joint

The knee joint, or **tibiofemoral joint,** is the largest and most complex diarthrosis of the body (figs. 9.23 and 9.24). It is primarily a hinge joint, but when the knee is flexed it is also capable of slight rotation and lateral gliding. The patella and patellar ligament also form a gliding **patellofemoral joint** with the femur.

The joint capsule encloses only the lateral and posterior aspects of the knee joint, not the anterior. The anterior aspect is covered by the patellar ligament and the **lateral** and **medial patellar retinacula** (not illustrated). These are extensions of the tendon of the *quadriceps femoris* muscle, the large anterior muscle of the thigh. The knee is stabilized mainly by the quadriceps tendon in front and the tendon of the *semimembranosus* muscle on

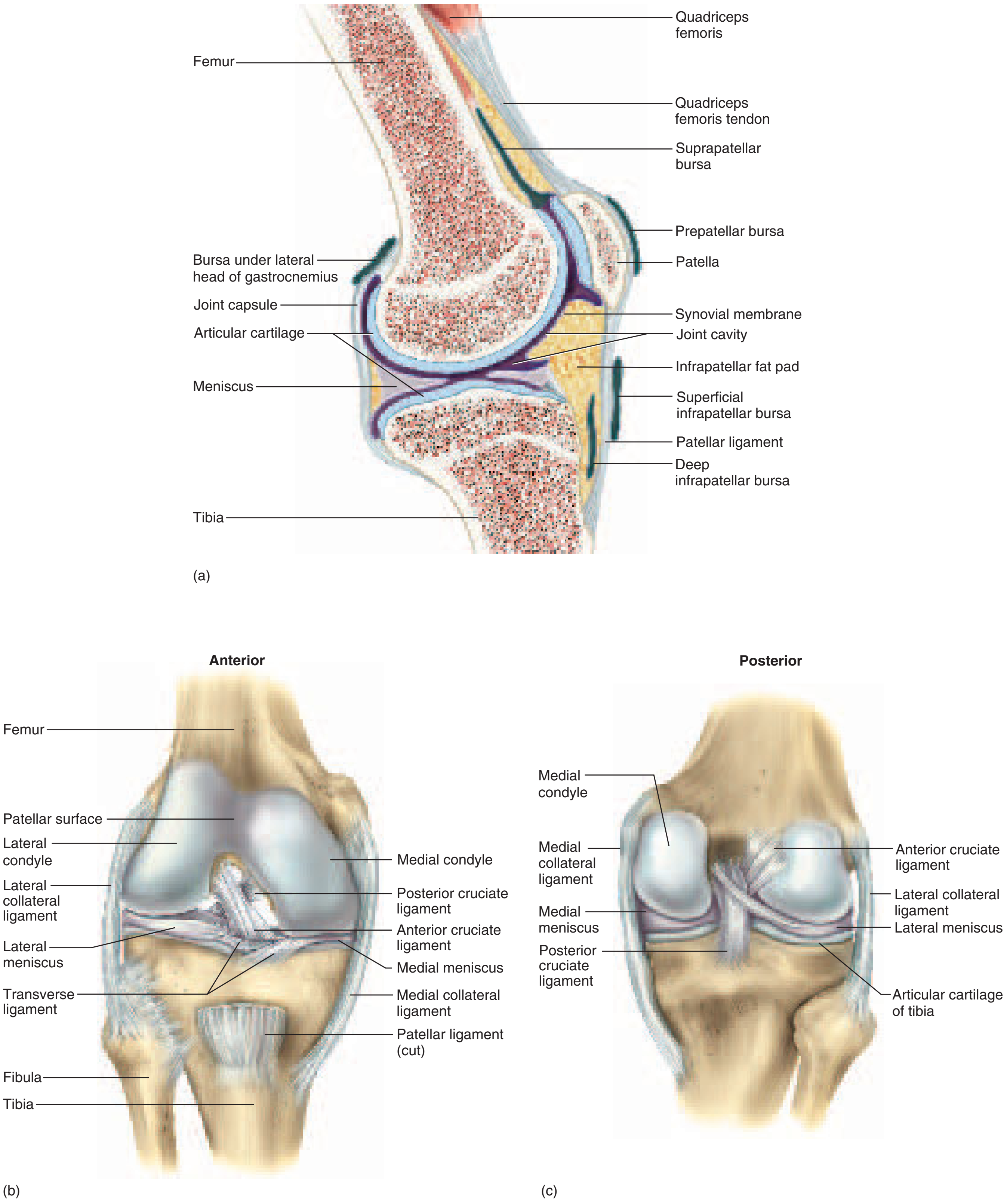

Quadriceps femoris
Femur
Quadriceps femoris tendon
Suprapatellar bursa
Prepatellar bursa
Patella
Bursa under lateral head of gastrocnemius
Joint capsule
Articular cartilage
Synovial membrane
Joint cavity
Infrapatellar fat pad
Meniscus
Superficial infrapatellar bursa
Patellar ligament
Deep infrapatellar bursa
Tibia
(a)
Anterior
Posterior
Femur
Patellar surface
Lateral condyle
Lateral collateral ligament
Lateral meniscus
Transverse ligament
Fibula
Tibia
Medial condyle
Posterior cruciate ligament
Anterior cruciate ligament
Medial meniscus
Medial collateral ligament
Patellar ligament (cut)
(b)
Medial condyle
Medial collateral ligament
Medial meniscus
Posterior cruciate ligament
Anterior cruciate ligament
Lateral collateral ligament
Lateral meniscus
Articular cartilage of tibia
(c)

Figure 9.23 **The Tibiofemoral (knee) Joint.** (*a*) Diagram of a midsagittal section; (*b*) anterior view of structures in the joint cavity of the right knee; (*c*) posterior view of the right knee.

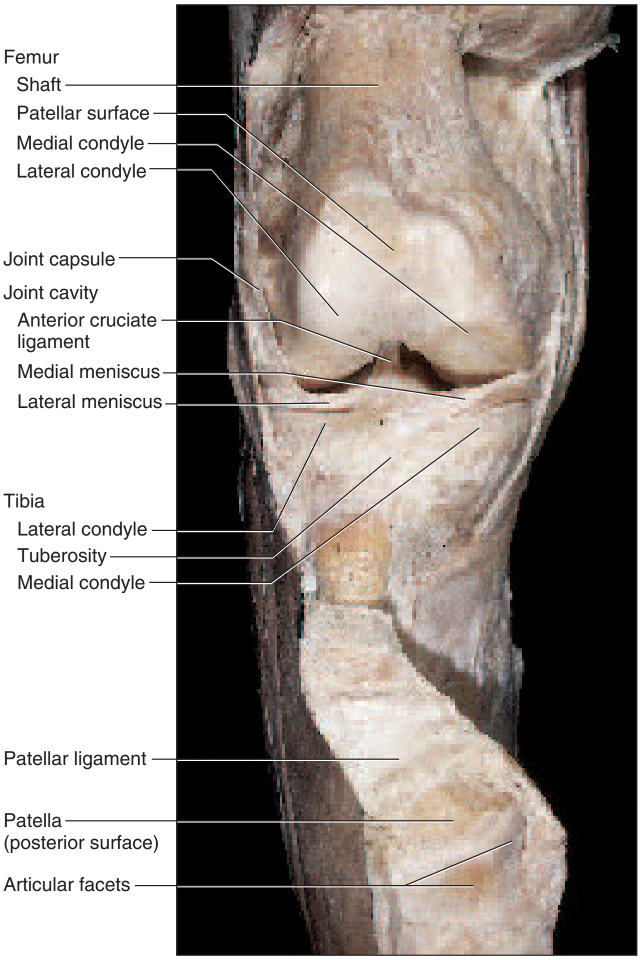


Figure 9.24 **Photograph of the Knee Joint, Anterior View.** The quadriceps tendon has been cut and folded (reflected) downward to expose the joint cavity and the posterior surface of the patella. **Identify the medial collateral ligament.**

the rear of the thigh. Developing strength in these muscles therefore reduces the risk of knee injury.

The joint cavity contains two cartilages called the **lateral meniscus** and **medial meniscus,** joined by a **transverse ligament.** These menisci absorb the shock of the body weight jostling up and down on the knee joint and prevent the femur from rocking from side to side on the tibia.

The posterior "pit" of the knee, the **popliteal** (pop-LIT-ee-ul) **region,** is supported by a complex array of **intracapsular ligaments** within the joint capsule and **extracapsular ligaments** external to it. The extracapsular ligaments are the **oblique popliteal ligament** (an extension of the semimembranosus tendon), **arcuate** (AR-cue-et) **popliteal ligament, fibular (lateral) collateral ligament,** and **tibial (medial) collateral ligament.** The two collateral ligaments prevent the knee from rotating when the joint is extended.

There are two intracapsular ligaments deep within the joint cavity. The synovial membrane folds around them, however, so that they are excluded from the fluid-filled synovial cavity. These ligaments cross each other in the form of an X; hence, they are called the **anterior cruciate**[25] (CROO-she-ate) **ligament (ACL)** and **posterior cruciate ligament (PCL).** These are named according to whether they attach to the anterior or posterior side of the tibia, not for their attachments to the femur. When the knee is extended, the ACL is pulled tight and prevents hyperextension. The PCL prevents the femur from sliding off the front of the tibia and prevents the tibia from being displaced backward.

An important aspect of human bipedalism is the ability to "lock" the knees and stand erect without tiring the extensor muscles of the leg. When the knee is extended to the fullest degree allowed by the ACL, the femur rotates medially on the tibia. This action locks the knee, and in this state all the major knee ligaments are twisted and taut. To unlock the knee, the *popliteus* muscle rotates the femur laterally and untwists the ligaments.

The knee joint has at least 13 bursae. Four of these are anterior—the **superficial infrapatellar, suprapatellar, prepatellar,** and **deep infrapatellar.** Located in the popliteal region are the **popliteal bursa** and **semimembranosus bursa** (not illustrated). At least seven more bursae are found on the lateral and medial sides of the knee joint. From figure 9.23*a,* your knowledge of the relevant word elements *(infra-, supra-, pre-),* and the terms *superficial* and *deep,* you should be able to work out the reasoning behind most of these names and develop a system for remembering the locations of these bursae.

Insight 9.3 Clinical Application

Knee Injuries and Arthroscopic Surgery

Although the knee can bear a lot of weight, it is highly vulnerable to rotational and horizontal stress, especially when the knee is flexed (as in skiing or running) and receives a blow from behind or from the lateral side. The most common injuries are to a meniscus or the anterior cruciate ligament (ACL). Knee injuries heal slowly because ligaments and tendons have a very scanty blood supply and cartilage has no blood vessels at all.

The diagnosis and surgical treatment of knee injuries has been greatly improved by *arthroscopy,* a procedure in which the interior of a joint is viewed with a pencil-thin instrument, the *arthroscope,* inserted through a small incision. The arthroscope has a light source, a lens, and fiber optics that allow a viewer to see into the cavity, take photographs or videotapes of the joint, and withdraw samples of synovial fluid. Saline is often introduced through one incision to expand the joint and provide a clearer view of its structures. If surgery is required, additional small incisions can be made for the surgical instruments and the procedures can be observed through the arthroscope or on a monitor. Arthroscopic surgery produces much less tissue damage than conventional surgery and enables patients to recover more quickly.

---

[25] *cruci* = cross + *ate* = characterized by

Orthopedic surgeons now often replace a damaged ACL with a graft from the patellar ligament or a hamstring tendon. The surgeon "harvests" a strip from the middle of the patient's ligament (or tendon), drills a hole into the femur and tibia within the joint cavity, threads the ligament through the holes, and fastens it with screws. The grafted ligament is more taut and "competent" than the damaged ACL. It becomes ingrown with blood vessels and serves as a substrate for the deposition of more collagen, which further strengthens it in time. Following arthroscopic ACL reconstruction, a patient typically must use crutches for 7 to 10 days and undergo supervised physical therapy for 6 to 10 weeks, followed by self-directed exercise therapy. Healing is completed in about 9 months.

The Ankle Joint

The **talocrural** (ankle) **joint** includes two articulations—a medial joint between the tibia and talus and a lateral joint between the fibula and talus, both enclosed in one joint capsule (fig. 9.25). The malleoli of the tibia and fibula overhang the talus on each side like a cap and prevent most side-to-side motion (fig. 9.26). The ankle therefore has a more restricted range of motion than the wrist.

The ligaments of the ankle include (1) **anterior** and **posterior tibiofibular ligaments,** which bind the tibia to the fibula; (2) a multipart **deltoid ligament,** which binds the tibia to the foot on the medial side; and (3) a multipart **lateral collateral ligament,** which binds the fibula to the foot on the lateral side. The **calcaneal (Achilles) tendon** extends from the calf muscles to the calcaneus. It enables plantar flexion and limits dorsiflexion of the joint. Plantar flexion is limited by extensor tendons on the anterior side of the ankle and by the anterior part of the joint capsule.

Sprains (torn ligaments and tendons) occur especially often at the ankle. Excessive eversion can tear the deltoid ligament, and excessive inversion often tears the anterior talofibular ligament and calcaneofibular ligament. These sprains are painful and usually accompanied by immediate swelling. They are best treated by immobilizing the joint and reducing swelling with an ice pack, but in extreme cases they may require a cast or surgery.

The synovial joints described in this section are summarized in table 9.2. A summary of some common joint disorders, including sprains, is presented in table 9.3.

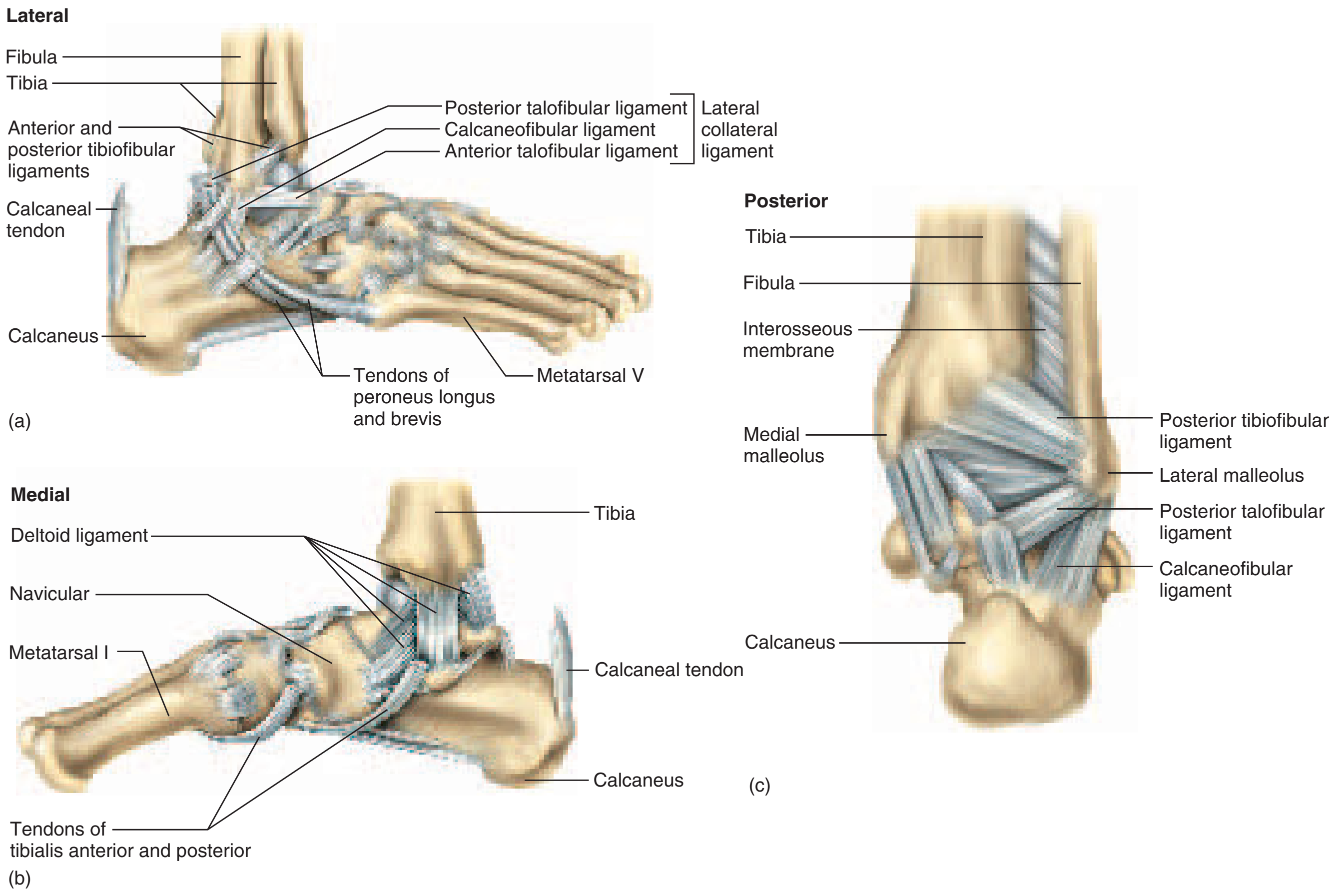

Lateral
Fibula
Tibia
Anterior and posterior tibiofibular ligaments
Calcaneal tendon
Calcaneus
Posterior talofibular ligament
Calcaneofibular ligament
Anterior talofibular ligament
Lateral collateral ligament
Tendons of peroneus longus and brevis
Metatarsal V
(a)
Medial
Deltoid ligament
Navicular
Metatarsal I
Tibia
Calcaneal tendon
Calcaneus
Tendons of tibialis anterior and posterior
(b)
Posterior
Tibia
Fibula
Interosseous membrane
Medial malleolus
Posterior tibiofibular ligament
Lateral malleolus
Posterior talofibular ligament
Calcaneofibular ligament
Calcaneus
(c)

Figure 9.25 **The Talocrural (ankle) Joint and Ligaments of the Right Foot.** (*a*) Lateral view; (*b*) medial view; (*c*) posterior view.

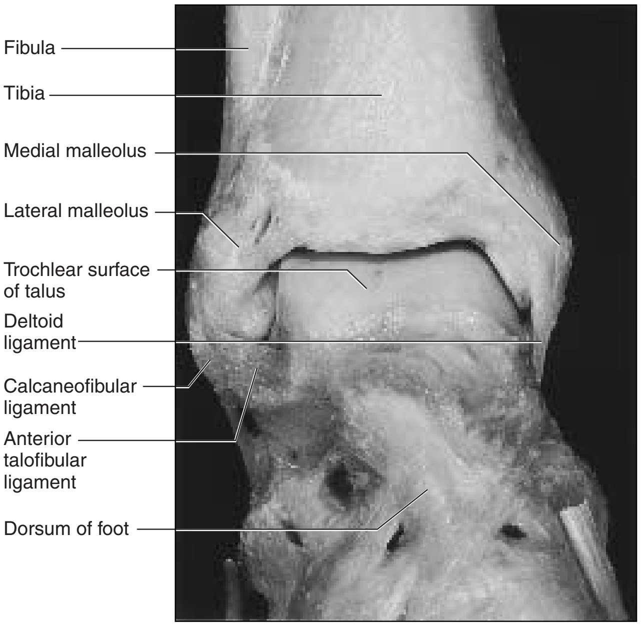


Figure 9.26 Photograph of the Talocrural Joint, Anterior View.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

12. What keeps the mandibular condyle from slipping out of its fossa in a posterior direction?
13. Explain how the biceps tendon braces the shoulder joint.
14. What structure elsewhere in the skeletal system has a structure and function similar to the acetabular labrum of the os coxae?
15. What keeps the femur from slipping backward off the tibia?
16. What keeps the tibia from slipping sideways off the talus?

Table 9.2 Review of the Principal Diarthroses

Joint	Major Anatomical Features and Actions
Temporomandibular (fig. 9.18)	*Type:* condyloid, hinge, and gliding
	Movements: elevation, depression, protraction, retraction, lateral and medial excursion
	Articulation: condyle of mandible, mandibular fossa of temporal bone
	Ligaments: temporomandibular, sphenomandibular
	Cartilage: articular disc
Humeroscapular (fig. 9.19)	*Type:* ball-and-socket
	Movements: adduction, abduction, flexion, extension, circumduction, medial and lateral rotation
	Articulation: head of humerus, glenoid fossa of scapula
	Ligaments: coracohumeral, transverse humeral, three glenohumerals
	Tendons: rotator cuff (tendons of subscapularis, supraspinatus, infraspinatus, teres minor), tendon of biceps brachii
	Bursae: subdeltoid, subacromial, subcoracoid, subscapular
	Cartilage: glenoid labrum
Elbow (fig. 9.20)	*Type:* hinge and pivot
	Movements: flexion, extension, pronation, supination, rotation
	Articulations: humeroulnar—trochlea of humerus, trochlear notch of ulna; humeroradial—capitulum of humerus, head of radius; radioulnar—head of radius, radial notch of ulna
	Ligaments: radial collateral, ulnar collateral, annular
	Bursa: olecranon
Coxal (fig. 9.21)	*Type:* ball-and-socket
	Movements: adduction, abduction, flexion, extension, circumduction, medial and lateral rotation
	Articulations: head of femur, acetabulum of os coxae

(continued)

Table 9.2 Review of the Principal Diarthroses *(continued)*

Joint	Major Anatomical Features and Actions
	Ligaments: iliofemoral, pubofemoral, ischiofemoral, ligamentum teres, transverse acetabular *Cartilage:* acetabular labrum
Knee (fig. 9.23)	*Type:* primarily hinge *Movements:* flexion, extension, slight rotation *Articulations:* tibiofemoral, patellofemoral *Ligaments:* anterior—lateral patellar retinaculum, medial patellar retinaculum; popliteal intracapsular—anterior cruciate, posterior cruciate; popliteal extracapsular—oblique popliteal, arcuate popliteal, lateral collateral, medial collateral *Bursae:* anterior—superficial infrapatellar, suprapatellar, prepatellar, deep infrapatellar; popliteal—popliteal, semimembranosus; medial and lateral—seven other bursae not named in this chapter *Cartilages:* lateral meniscus, medial meniscus (connected by transverse ligament)
Ankle (fig. 9.25)	*Type:* hinge *Movements:* dorsiflexion, plantar flexion, extension, inversion, eversion *Articulations:* tibia-talus, fibula-talus, tibia-fibula *Ligaments:* anterior and posterior tibiofibular, deltoid, lateral collateral *Tendon:* calcaneal (Achilles)

Table 9.3 Some Common Joint Disorders

Strain	Painful overstretching of a tendon or muscle without serious tissue damage. Often results from inadequate warm-up before exercise.
Sprain	Torn ligament or tendon, sometimes with damage to a meniscus or other cartilage.
Synovitis	Inflammation of a joint capsule, often as a complication of a sprain.
Dislocation	Displacement of a bone from its normal position at a joint, usually accompanied by a sprain of the adjoining connective tissues. Most common at the fingers, thumb, shoulder, and knee.
Rheumatism	Broad term for any pain in the supportive and locomotory organs of the body, including bones, ligaments, tendons, and muscles.
Arthritis	Broad term embracing more than 100 types of joint rheumatism.
Osteoarthritis (OA)	The most common form of arthritis, also known as "wear-and-tear arthritis" because it is apparently a normal consequence of aging. Associated with softening and degeneration of the articular cartilage, exposure of the epiphyseal bone, and development of bony spurs in the joint cavity, causing pain and restricting movement.
Rheumatoid arthritis (RA)	A more severe form of arthritis resulting from an autoimmune attack against the joint tissues (failure of the immune system to recognize the tissues as one's own).
Gout	A hereditary disease, most common in men, in which uric acid crystals accumulate in the joints and irritate the articular cartilage and synovial membrane. Causes gouty arthritis, with swelling, pain, tissue degeneration, and sometimes fusion of the joint. Most commonly affects the great toe.
Bursitis	Inflammation of a bursa, usually due to overexertion of a joint.
Tendinitis	A form of bursitis in which a tendon sheath is inflamed.

Disorders described elsewhere

Arthritis p. 320
Dislocation of hip p. 313
Dislocation of mandible p. 310
Dislocation of shoulder p. 311
Knee injuries p. 316
Rotator cuff injury p. 386
Sprains p. 317
TMJ syndrome p. 310

Insight 9.4 Clinical Application

Arthritis and Artificial Joints

Arthritis[26] is a broad term for pain and inflammation of a joint and embraces more than a hundred different diseases of largely obscure or unknown causes. In all of its forms, it is the most common crippling disease in the United States; nearly everyone past middle age develops arthritis to some degree. Physicians who treat joint disorders are called *rheumatologists.*

The most common form of arthritis is *osteoarthritis (OA),* also called "wear-and-tear arthritis" because it is apparently a normal consequence of years of wear on the joints. As joints age, the articular cartilage softens and degenerates. As the cartilage becomes roughened by wear, joint movement may be accompanied by crunching or crackling sounds called *crepitus.* OA affects especially the fingers, intervertebral joints, hips, and knees. As the articular cartilage wears away, exposed bone tissue often develops spurs that grow into the joint cavity, restrict movement, and cause pain. OA rarely occurs before age 40, but it affects about 85% of people older than 70. It usually does not cripple, but in severe cases it can immobilize the hip.

Rheumatoid arthritis (RA), which is far more severe than osteoarthritis, results from an autoimmune attack against the joint tissues. It begins when the body produces antibodies to fight an infection. Failing to recognize the body's own tissues, a misguided antibody known as *rheumatoid factor* also attacks the synovial membranes. Inflammatory cells accumulate in the synovial fluid and produce enzymes that degrade the articular cartilage. The synovial membrane thickens and adheres to the articular cartilage, fluid accumulates in the joint capsule, and the capsule is invaded by fibrous connective tissue. As articular cartilage degenerates, the joint begins to ossify, and sometimes the bones become solidly fused and immobilized, a condition called *ankylosis*[27] (fig. 9.27). The disease tends to develop symmetrically—if the right wrist or hip develops RA, so does the left.

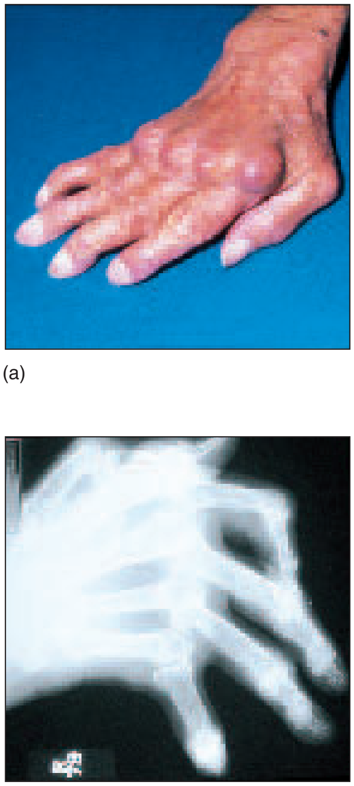
Rheumatoid arthritis is named for the fact that symptoms tend to flare up and subside (go into remission) periodically.[28] It affects women far more often than men, and because RA typically begins between the ages of 30 and 40, it can cause decades of pain and disability. There is no cure, but joint damage can be slowed with hydrocortisone or other steroids. Because long-term use of steroids weakens the bone, however, aspirin is the treatment of first choice to control the inflammation. Physical therapy is also used to preserve the joint's range of motion and the patient's functional ability.

Arthroplasty,[29] a treatment of last resort, is the replacement of a diseased joint with an artificial device called a *prosthesis.*[30] Joint prostheses were first developed to treat injuries in World War II and the Korean War. Total hip replacement (THR), first performed in 1963 by English orthopedic surgeon Sir John Charnley, is now the most common orthopedic procedure for the elderly. The first knee replacements were performed in the 1970s. Joint prostheses are now available for finger, shoulder, and elbow joints, as well as for hip and knee joints. Arthroplasty is performed on over 250,000 patients per year in the United States, primarily to relieve pain and restore function in elderly people with OA or RA.

Arthroplasty presents ongoing challenges for biomedical engineering. An effective prosthesis must be strong, nontoxic, and corrosion-resistant. In addition, it must bond firmly to the patient's bones and enable a normal range of motion with a minimum of friction. The heads of long bones are usually replaced with prostheses made of a metal alloy such as cobalt-chrome, titanium alloy, or stainless steel. Joint sockets are made of polyethylene (fig. 9.28). Prostheses are bonded to the patient's bone with screws or bone cement.

About 80% to 90% of hip replacements and at least 60% of ankle replacements are still functional 2 to 10 years later. The most common form of failure is detachment of the prosthesis from the bone. This problem has been reduced by using *porous-coated prostheses,* which become infiltrated by the patient's own bone and create a firmer bond. A prosthesis is not as strong as a natural joint, however, and is not an option for many young, active patients.

Arthroplasty has been greatly improved by *computer-assisted design and manufacture (CAD/CAM).* A computer scans X rays from the patient and presents several design possibilities for review. Once a design is selected, the computer generates a program to operate the machinery that produces the prosthesis. CAD/CAM has reduced the waiting period for a prosthesis from about 12 weeks to about 2 weeks and has lowered the cost dramatically.


(a)

(b)

Figure 9.27 **Rheumatoid Arthritis (RA).** (*a*) A severe case with ankylosis of the joints. (*b*) X ray of a hand with RA.

---

[26] *arthr* = joint + *itis* = inflammation
[27] *ankyl* = bent, crooked + *osis* = condition
[28] *rheumat* = tending to change
[29] *arthro* = joint + *plasty* = surgical repair
[30] *prosthe* = something added

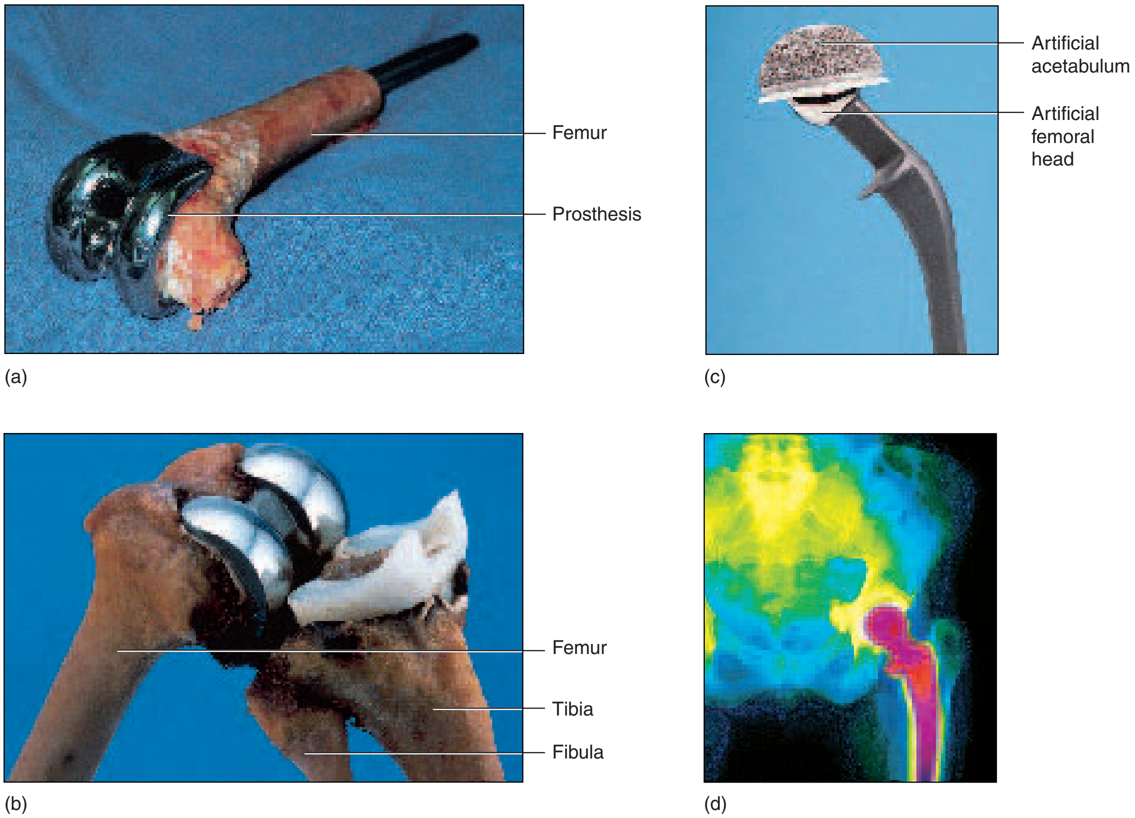

Femur
Prosthesis
(a)
Artificial acetabulum
Artificial femoral head
(c)
Femur
Tibia
Fibula
(b)
(d)

Figure 9.28 **Joint Prostheses.** (*a*) An artificial femoral head inserted into the femur. (*b*) An artificial knee joint bonded to a natural femur and tibia. (*c*) A porous-coated hip prosthesis. The caplike portion replaces the acetabulum of the os coxae, and the ball and shaft shown below are bonded to the proximal end of the femur. (*d*) X ray of a patient with a total hip replacement.

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

Joints and Their Classification (p. 294)

1. *Arthrology* is the study of joints; *kinesiology* is the study of musculoskeletal movement.
2. Joints can be classified as *diarthroses, amphiarthroses,* or *synarthroses* according to their freedom of movement, and as *fibrous, cartilaginous, bony,* or *synovial* according to the manner in which the adjacent bones are joined.

Fibrous, Cartilaginous, and Bony Joints (p. 295)

1. In *fibrous joints,* two bones are joined by collagen fibers. Fibrous joints include *sutures* (immovable joints of the skull), *gomphoses* (joints between teeth and their sockets), and *syndesmoses* (in which bones are joined by a ligament).
2. Sutures are classified as serrate, lap, or plane sutures according to the structure of the edges where the bones meet.
3. In *cartilaginous joints,* two bones are joined by cartilage. Cartilaginous joints include synchondroses (bones joined by hyaline cartilage) and symphyses (bones joined by fibrocartilage).
4. In bony joints, two bones are fused by osseous tissue so they appear as a single bone.

Synovial Joints (p. 298)

1. In a *synovial joint,* two bones are separated by a *joint cavity* containing lubricating *synovial fluid.* The articulating surfaces of the adjacent bones are covered by a hyaline *articular cartilage,* and are sometimes held apart by a cartilaginous pad called a *meniscus.*
2. Synovial joints commonly exhibit *tendons* (which join muscle to bone), *ligaments* (which join one bone to another), and *bursae* (sacs of synovial fluid outside the joint cavity).
3. Synovial joints are described as *monaxial, biaxial,* or *multiaxial* depending on the planes in which they can move.
4. The six types of synovial joints are *ball-and-socket, hinge, saddle, pivot, gliding,* and *condyloid joints.*
5. *Flexion* is a movement that decreases the angle between two bones, as in flexing the elbow; *extension* straightens a joint to about a 180° angle; and *hyperextension* moves one bone beyond 180° from the other.
6. *Abduction* moves a bone away from the midsagittal plane of the body, as in spreading the legs, and *adduction* moves it back.
7. *Elevation* raises a bone such as the mandible and *depression* lowers it.
8. *Protraction* thrusts a bone such as the clavicle or mandible forward and *retraction* draws it back.
9. *Lateral excursion* moves the mandible to the right or left and *medial excursion* returns it to the middle.
10. *Circumduction* moves the distal end of a bone in a circle while the proximal end remains relatively stationary.
11. *Rotation* turns a bone on its longitudinal axis.
12. *Supination* rotates the forearm so the palm faces forward or upward, and *pronation* turns it so the palm faces toward the rear or downward.
13. *Opposition* moves the thumb toward the fingers and *reposition* moves it back to anatomical position.
14. *Dorsiflexion* raises the toes relative to the heel and *plantar flexion* lowers the toes or raises the heel.
15. *Inversion* turns the sole of the foot medially and *eversion* turns it laterally.
16. The *range of motion* of a joint depends on the structure and action of the muscles, the structure of the bones, and the strength and tautness of tendons, ligaments, and joint capsules.
17. A long bone acts as a lever, with a stationary fulcrum, an effort arm, and a resistance arm.
18. The *mechanical advantage (MA)* of a lever is equal to the ratio of the length of the effort arm to the length of the resistance arm. A lever with an $MA > 1$ puts out more force than is put into it, and one with an $MA < 1$ puts out less force, but produces movements of greater speed or distance than the input.
19. Levers of the body are classified as first-, second-, or third-class depending on the relative positions of the fulcrum, effort, and resistance.

Anatomy of Selected Diarthroses (p. 310)

1. The *temporomandibular (jaw) joint* of the skull is the point at which the condyle of the mandible articulates with the mandibular fossa of the temporal bone. It is stabilized by two ligaments and contains a meniscus to absorb some of the pressure of a bite.
2. The *humeroscapular joint* is the point at which the head of the humerus articulates with the glenoid cavity of the scapula. It is supported by a cartilaginous *glenoid labrum,* five major ligaments, the biceps brachii tendon, and tendons of the four *rotator cuff* muscles, and it exhibits four bursae.
3. The elbow joint is a meeting of three bones—humerus, radius, and ulna—enclosed in a single joint capsule.
4. The *coxal (hip) joint* is the point at which the head of the femur inserts into the acetabulum of the os coxae. It is supported by a cartilage ring, the *acetabular labrum,* and several ligaments.
5. The *tibiofemoral (knee) joint* is the largest diarthrosis. The joint cavity contains two cartilage menisci and two cruciate ligaments, and there are numerous other ligaments and bursae external to the joint cavity.
6. The *talocrural (ankle) joint* is a meeting of three bones—tibia, fibula, and talus—supported by numerous tight ligaments and crossed by the calcaneal tendon of the calf muscles.

Selected Vocabulary

articulation 294
diarthrosis 294
amphiarthrosis 294
synarthrosis 294
suture 296
synovial joint 298
synovial fluid 298
meniscus 299
tendon 299
ligament 299
bursa 299
flexion 302
extension 302
abduction 303
adduction 303
elevation 303
depression 303
rotation 306
supination 306
pronation 306
dorsiflexion 306
plantar flexion 306
temporomandibular joint 310
humeroscapular joint 310
coxal joint 312
tibiofemoral joint 314
talocrural joint 317

Testing Your Recall

1. Which of the following is unique to the thumb?
   a. gliding joint
   b. hinge joint
   c. saddle joint
   d. condyloid joint
   e. pivot joint

2. Which of the following is the least movable?
   a. diarthrosis
   b. synarthrosis
   c. symphysis
   d. syndesmosis
   e. condyloid joint

3. Which of the following movements are unique to the foot?
   a. dorsiflexion and inversion
   b. elevation and depression
   c. circumduction and rotation
   d. abduction and adduction
   e. opposition and reposition

4. Which of the following joints cannot be circumducted?
   a. carpometacarpal
   b. metacarpophalangeal
   c. humeroscapular
   d. coxal
   e. interphalangeal

5. Which of the following terms denotes a general condition that includes the other four?
   a. gout
   b. arthritis
   c. rheumatism
   d. osteoarthritis
   e. rheumatoid arthritis

6. In the adult, the ischium and pubis are united by
   a. a synchondrosis.
   b. a diarthrosis.
   c. a synostosis.
   d. an amphiarthrosis.
   e. a symphysis.

7. In a second-class lever, the effort
   a. is applied to the end opposite the fulcrum.
   b. is applied to the fulcrum itself.
   c. is applied between the fulcrum and resistance.
   d. always produces an MA less than 1.0.
   e. is applied on one side of the fulcrum to move a resistance on the other side.

8. Which of the following joints has anterior and posterior cruciate ligaments?
   a. the shoulder
   b. the elbow
   c. the hip
   d. the knee
   e. the ankle

9. To bend backward at the waist involves _____ of the vertebral column.
   a. rotation
   b. hyperextension
   c. dorsiflexion
   d. abduction
   e. flexion

10. The rotator cuff includes the tendons of all of the following muscles *except*
    a. the subscapularis.
    b. the supraspinatus.
    c. the infraspinatus.
    d. the biceps brachii.
    e. the teres minor.

11. The lubricant of a diarthrosis is _____.

12. A fluid-filled sac that eases the movement of a tendon over a bone is called a/an _____.

13. A _____ joint allows one bone to swivel on another.

14. _____ is the science of movement.

15. The joint between a tooth and the mandible is called a/an _____.

16. In a _____ suture, the articulating bones have interlocking wavy margins, somewhat like a dovetail joint in carpentry.

17. In kicking a football, what type of action does the knee joint exhibit?

18. The angle through which a joint can move is called its _____.

19. Both the shoulder and hip joints are somewhat deepened and supported by a ring of fibrocartilage called a/an _____.

20. The femur is prevented from slipping sideways off the tibia in part by a pair of cartilages called the lateral and medial _____.

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. More people get rheumatoid arthritis than osteoarthritis.
2. A doctor who treats arthritis is called a kinesiologist.
3. Synovial joints are also known as synarthroses.
4. There is no meniscus in the elbow joint.
5. Reaching behind you to take something out of your hip pocket involves hyperextension of the shoulder.
6. The anterior cruciate ligament normally prevents hyperextension of the knee.
7. The femur is held tightly in the acetabulum mainly by the round ligament.
8. The knuckles are diarthroses.
9. Synovial fluid is secreted by the bursae.
10. Unlike most ligaments, the periodontal ligaments do not attach one bone to another.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. All second-class levers produce a mechanical advantage greater than 1.0 and all third-class levers produce a mechanical advantage less than 1.0. Explain why.
2. Suppose a lever measures 17 cm from effort to fulcrum and 11 cm from resistance to fulcrum. (*a*) Calculate its mechanical advantage. (*b*) Would this lever produce more force, or less, than the force exerted on it? (*c*) Which of the three classes of levers could *not* have these measurements? Explain.
3. In order of occurrence, list the joint actions (flexion, pronation, etc.) and the joints where they would occur as you (*a*) sit down at a table, (*b*) reach out and pick up an apple, (*c*) take a bite, and (*d*) chew it. Assume that you start in anatomical position.
4. Suppose you were dissecting a cat or fetal pig with the task of finding examples of each type of synovial joint. Which type of human synovial joint would not be found in either of those animals? For lack of that joint, what human joint actions would those animals be unable to perform?
5. List the six types of synovial joints and for each one, if possible, identify a joint in the upper limb and a joint in the lower limb that falls into each category. Which of these six joints have no examples in the lower limb?

Answers at the Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Legend Questions

9.5 The pubic symphysis consists of the cartilaginous interpubic disc and the adjacent parts of the two pubic bones.

9.6 Interphalangeal joints are not subjected to a great deal of compression.

9.15 MA = 1.0. Shifting the fulcrum to the left would increase the MA of this lever, while the lever would remain first-class.

9.18 The stylomandibular ligament is relatively remote from the point where the mandible and temporal bone meet.

9.24 It is the vertical band of tissue immediately to the right of the medial meniscus.

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.

Muscles of the thigh to upper calf (MRI)

CHAPTER

10

The Muscular System

CHAPTER OUTLINE

The Structural and Functional Organization of Muscles 326
- The Functions of Muscles 326
- Connective Tissues of a Muscle 326
- General Anatomy of Skeletal Muscles 328
- Coordinated Action of Muscle Groups 328
- Intrinsic and Extrinsic Muscles 329
- Muscle Innervation 329
- How Muscles Are Named 330
- A Learning Strategy 330

Muscles of the Head and Neck 330
- Muscles of Facial Expression 330
- Muscles of Chewing and Swallowing 335
- Muscles Acting on the Head 343

Muscles of the Trunk 345
- Muscles of Respiration 345
- Muscles of the Abdomen 346
- Muscles of the Back 347
- Muscles of the Pelvic Floor 350

Muscles Acting on the Shoulder and Upper Limb 352
- Muscles Acting on the Scapula 352
- Muscles Acting on the Humerus 356
- Muscles Acting on the Forearm 357
- Muscles Acting on the Wrist and Hand 361

Muscles Acting on the Hip and Lower Limb 369
- Muscles Acting on the Hip and Femur 369
- Muscles Acting on the Knee 373
- Muscles Acting on the Foot 374

Connective Issues 387

Chapter Review 388

INSIGHTS

10.1 **Medical History:** Discovery of a New Muscle 342
10.2 **Clinical Application:** Heavy Lifting and Back Injuries 349
10.3 **Clinical Application:** Hernias 351
10.4 **Clinical Application:** Carpal Tunnel Syndrome 365
10.5 **Clinical Application:** Intramuscular Injections 366
10.6 **Clinical Application:** Athletic Injuries 386

Brushing Up

To understand this chapter, it is important that you understand or brush up on the following concepts:

- Gross anatomy of the skeleton (chapter 8)
- Movements of synovial joints (pp. 302–307)

The **muscular system** consists of about 600 skeletal muscles—striated muscles that are usually attached to bone. (The term does not include smooth or cardiac muscle.) The form and function of the muscular system occupy a place of central importance in several fields of health care and fitness. Physical and occupational therapists must be well acquainted with the muscular system to design and carry out rehabilitation programs. Nurses and other health-care providers often move patients who are physically incapacitated, and to do this safely and effectively requires an understanding of joints and muscles. Even to give intramuscular injections safely requires a knowledge of the muscles and the nerves and blood vessels associated with them. Coaching, movement science, sports medicine, and dance benefit from a knowledge of skeletomuscular anatomy and mechanics.

Myology,[1] the study of muscles, is closely related to what we have covered in the preceding chapters. It relates muscle attachments to the bone structures described in chapter 8 and muscle function to the joint movements described in chapter 9. In this chapter, we consider the gross anatomy of the muscular system and how it relates to joint movements. In chapter 11, we examine the mechanisms of muscle contraction at the cellular and molecular levels.

The Structural and Functional Organization of Muscles

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- list several functions of muscles;
- describe the connective tissues associated with a skeletal muscle;
- explain what is meant by the origin, insertion, belly, action, and innervation of a muscle;
- describe the various shapes of skeletal muscles and relate this to their functions;
- describe the ways that muscles work in groups to aid, oppose, or moderate each other's actions;
- distinguish between intrinsic and extrinsic muscles; and
- translate several Latin words commonly used in the naming of muscles.

The Functions of Muscles

A muscle is an organ specialized to produce movement of a body part. Its cells convert the chemical energy of ATP into the mechanical energy of motion and exert a useful pull on another tissue. More specifically, muscle contraction serves the following overlapping functions:

- **Movement.** Most obviously, the muscles enable us to move from place to place and to move individual body parts. Muscular contractions also move body contents in the course of respiration, circulation, digestion, defecation, urination, and childbirth.
- **Stability.** Muscles maintain posture by resisting the pull of gravity and preventing unwanted movements. They hold some articulating bones in place by maintaining tension on the tendons.
- **Communication.** Muscles are used for facial expression, other body language, writing, and speech.
- **Control of body openings and passages.** Ringlike *sphincter muscles* around the eyelids, pupils, and mouth control the admission of light, food, and drink into the body; others that encircle the urethral and anal orifices control elimination of waste; and other sphincters control the movement of food, bile, and other materials through the body.
- **Heat production.** The skeletal muscles produce as much as 85% of our body heat, which is vital to the functioning of enzymes and therefore to all of our metabolism.

Some of these functions are shared by skeletal, cardiac, and smooth muscle. The remainder of this chapter, however, is concerned only with skeletal muscles.

Connective Tissues of a Muscle

A skeletal muscle is composed of both muscular tissue and connective tissue (fig. 10.1). A skeletal muscle cell (muscle fiber) is about 10 to 100 μm in diameter and up to 30 cm long. It is surrounded by a sparse layer of areolar connective tissue called the **endomysium**[2] (EN-doe-MIZ-ee-um), which allows room for blood capillaries and nerve fibers to reach each muscle fiber. Muscle fibers are grouped in bundles called **fascicles**[3] (FASS-ih-culs), which are visible to the naked eye as parallel strands. These are the "grain" in a cut of meat; tender meat is easily pulled apart along its fascicles. Each fascicle is separated from neighboring ones by a connective tissue sheath called the **perimysium,**[4] usually somewhat thicker than the endomysium. The muscle as a whole is surrounded by still another connective tissue layer, the **epimysium.**[5] The epimysium grades imperceptibly into connective tissue sheets called **fasciae** (FASH-ee-ee)—**deep fasciae** between adjacent muscles and a **superficial fascia** (hypodermis) between the muscles and skin. The superficial fascia is very adipose in areas such as the buttocks and abdomen, but the deep fasciae are devoid of fat.

There are two ways a muscle can attach to a bone. In a **direct (fleshy) attachment,** collagen fibers of the epimy-

---

[1] *myo* = muscle + *logy* = study of

[2] *endo* = within + *mys* = muscle

[3] *fasc* = bundle + *icle* = little

[4] *peri* = around

[5] *epi* = upon, above

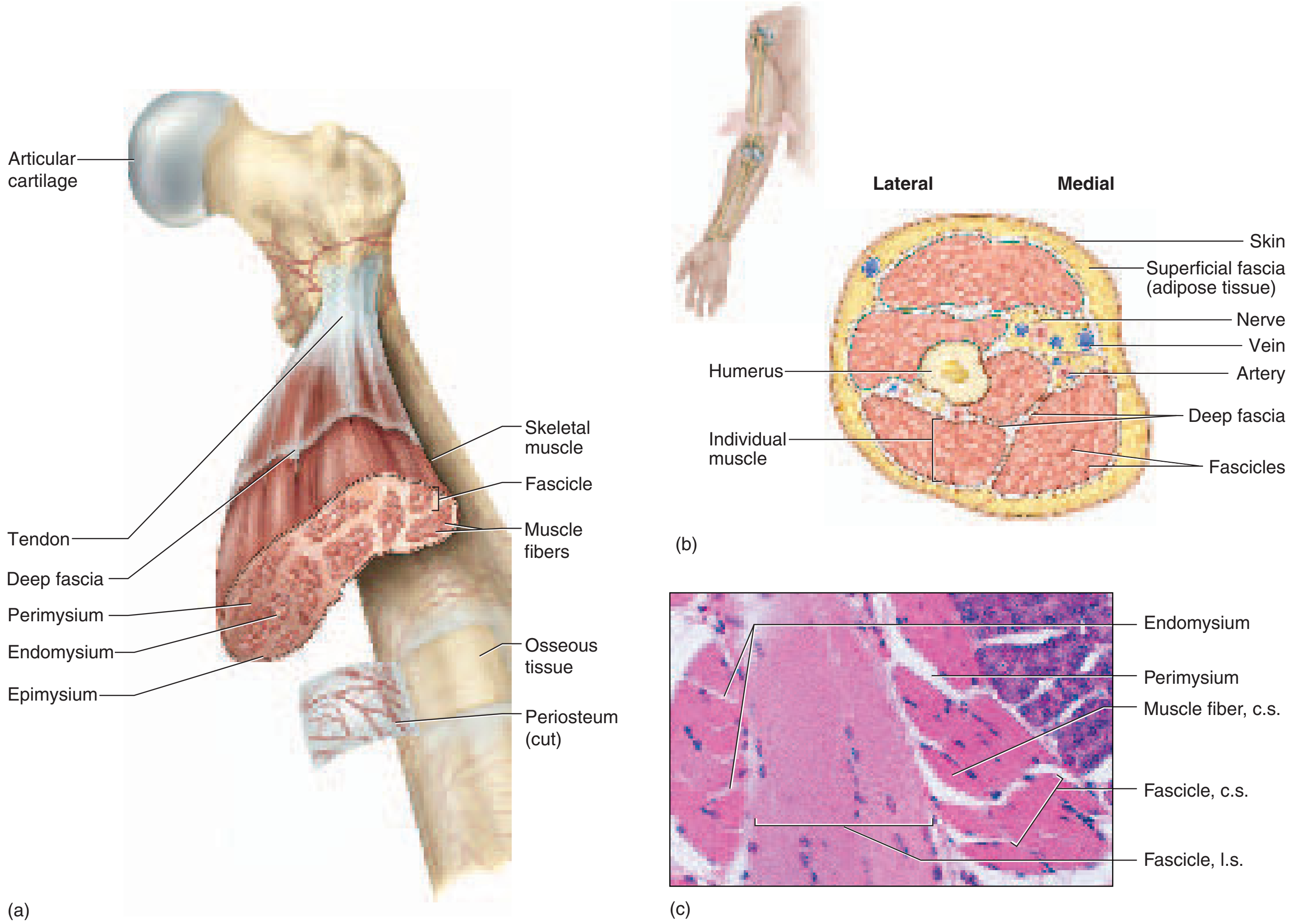

Articular cartilage
Tendon
Deep fascia
Perimysium
Endomysium
Epimysium
Skeletal muscle
Fascicle
Muscle fibers
Osseous tissue
Periosteum (cut)
(a)
Lateral
Medial
Skin
Superficial fascia (adipose tissue)
Nerve
Vein
Artery
Humerus
Deep fascia
Individual muscle
Fascicles
(b)
Endomysium
Perimysium
Muscle fiber, c.s.
Fascicle, c.s.
Fascicle, l.s.
(c)

Figure 10.1 **Connective Tissues of a Muscle.** (*a*) The muscle-bone attachment. Here there is a continuity of connective tissues from the endomysium around the muscle fibers, to the perimysium, epimysium, deep fascia, and tendon, grading into the periosteum and finally the matrix of the bone. (*b*) A cross section of the arm showing the relationship of neighboring muscles to fascia and bone. (*c*) Muscle fascicles in the tongue. Vertical fascicles passing between the dorsal and ventral surfaces of the tongue are seen alternating with cross-sectioned horizontal fascicles that pass from the tip to the rear of the tongue. A fibrous perimysium can be seen between the fascicles, and endomysium between the muscle fibers within each fascicle.

sium are continuous with the periosteum, the fibrous sheath around a bone. The red muscle tissue appears to emerge directly from the bone. The *intercostal muscles* between the ribs show this type of attachment. In an **indirect attachment,** the collagen fibers of the epimysium continue as a strong fibrous **tendon** that merges into the periosteum of a nearby bone (fig. 10.1*a*). The attachment of the *biceps brachii muscle* to the scapula is one of many examples. Some collagen fibers of the periosteum continue into the bone matrix as *perforating fibers* (see chapter 7), so there is a strong structural continuity from endomysium to perimysium to epimysium to tendon to periosteum to bone matrix. Excessive stress is more likely to tear a tendon than to pull it loose from the muscle or bone.

In some cases, the epimysium of one muscle attaches to the fascia or tendon of another or to collagen fibers of the dermis. The ability of a muscle to produce facial expressions depends on the latter type of attachment. Some muscles are connected to a broad sheetlike tendon called an **aponeurosis**[6] (AP-oh-new-RO-sis). This term originally referred to the tendon located beneath the scalp, but now it also refers to similar tendons associated with certain abdominal, lumbar, hand, and foot muscles (see figs. 10.15*a* and 10.16).

In some places, groups of tendons from separate muscles pass under a band of connective tissue called a

---

[6] *apo* = upon, above + *neuro* = nerve

retinaculum.[7] One of these covers each surface of the wrist like a bracelet, for example. The tendons of several forearm muscles pass under them on their way to the hand.

General Anatomy of Skeletal Muscles

Most skeletal muscles are attached to a different bone at each end, so either the muscle or its tendon spans at least one joint. When the muscle contracts, it moves one bone relative to the other. The muscle attachment at the relatively stationary end is called its **origin,** or **head.** Its attachment at the more mobile end is called its **insertion.** Many muscles are narrow at the origin and insertion and have a thicker middle region called the **belly** (fig. 10.2).

The strength of a muscle and the direction in which it pulls are determined partly by the orientation of its fascicles, illustrating the complementarity of form and function. Differences in fascicle orientation are the basis for classifying muscles into five types (fig. 10.3):

1. **Fusiform**[8] **muscles** are thick in the middle and tapered at each end. Their contractions are moderately strong. The *biceps brachii* of the arm and *gastrocnemius* of the calf are examples of this type.
2. **Parallel muscles** are long, straplike muscles of uniform width and parallel fascicles. They can span a great distance and shorten more than other muscle types, but they are weaker than fusiform muscles. Examples include the *rectus abdominis* of the abdomen, *sartorius* of the thigh, and *zygomaticus major* of the face.
3. **Convergent muscles** are fan-shaped—broad at the origin and converging toward a narrower insertion. These muscles are relatively strong because all of their fascicles exert their tension on a relatively small insertion. The *pectoralis major* in the chest is a muscle of this type.
4. **Pennate**[9] **muscles** are feather-shaped. Their fascicles insert obliquely on a tendon that runs the length of the muscle, like the shaft of a feather. There are three types of pennate muscles: *unipennate,* in which all fascicles approach the tendon from one side (for example, the *palmar interosseous muscles* of the hand and *semimembranosus* of the thigh); *bipennate,* in which fascicles approach the tendon from both sides (for example, the *rectus femoris* of the thigh); and *multipennate,* shaped like a bunch of feathers with their quills converging on a single point (for example, the *deltoid* of the shoulder).
5. **Circular muscles (sphincters)** form rings around body openings. These include the *orbicularis oris* of the lips and *orbicularis oculi* of the eyelids.

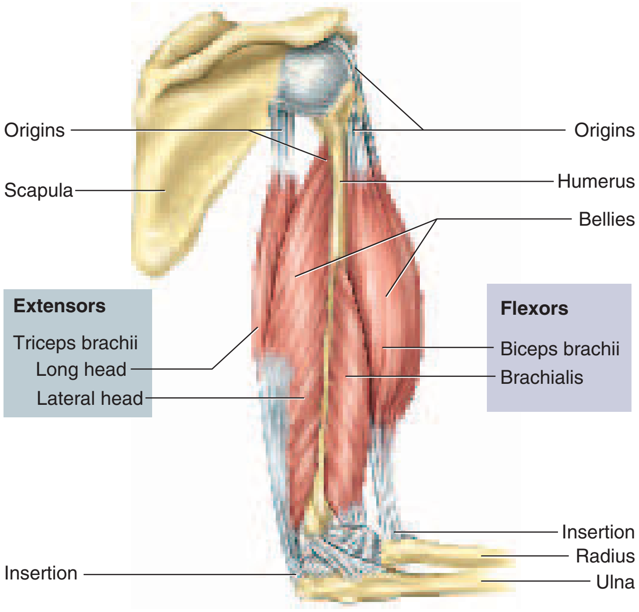


Figure 10.2 **Synergistic and Antagonistic Muscle Pairs.** The biceps brachii and brachialis muscles are synergists in elbow flexion. The triceps brachii is an antagonist of those two muscles and is the prime mover in elbow extension.

Coordinated Action of Muscle Groups

The movement produced by a muscle is called its **action.** Skeletal muscles seldom act independently; instead, they function in groups whose combined actions produce the coordinated motion of a joint. Muscles can be classified into at least four categories according to their actions, but it must be stressed that a particular muscle can act in a certain way during one joint action and in a different way during other actions of the same joint:

1. The **prime mover (agonist)** is the muscle that produces most of the force during a particular joint action. In flexing the elbow, for example, the prime mover is the biceps brachii.
2. A **synergist**[10] (SIN-ur-jist) is a muscle that aids the prime mover. Several synergists acting on a joint can produce more power than a single larger muscle. The *brachialis,* for example, lies deep to the biceps brachii and works with it as a synergist to flex the elbow. The actions of a prime mover and its

---

[7] *retinac* = retainer, bracelet + *cul* = little
[8] *fusi* = spindle + *form* = shape
[9] *penna* = feather
[10] *syn* = together + *erg* = work

Chapter 10

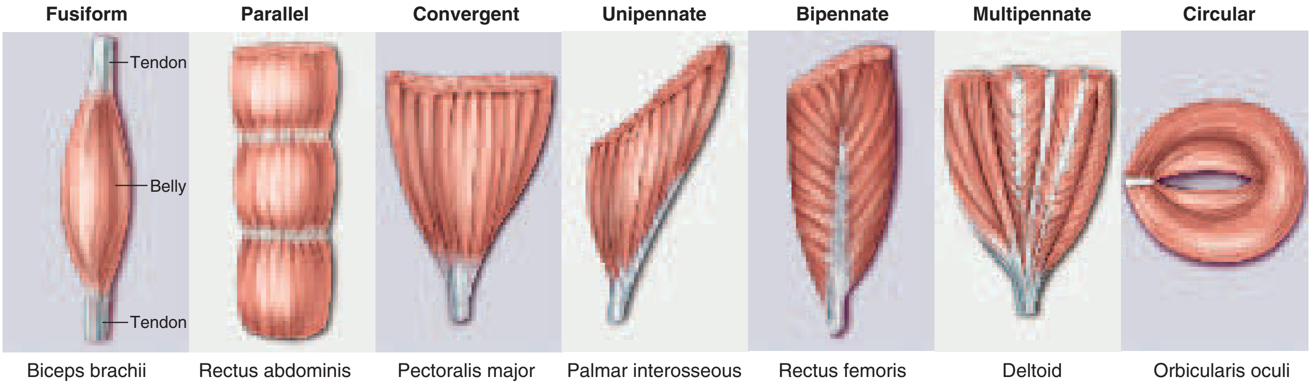


Figure 10.3 **Classification of Muscles According to Fascicle Orientation.** The fascicles are the "grain" visible in each illustration.

synergist are not necessarily identical and redundant. If the prime mover worked alone at a joint, it might cause rotation or other undesirable movements of a bone. A synergist may stabilize a joint and restrict these movements, or modify the direction of a movement, so that the action of the prime mover is more coordinated and specific.

3. An **antagonist**[11] is a muscle that opposes the prime mover. In some cases, it relaxes to give the prime mover almost complete control over an action. More often, however, the antagonist moderates the speed or range of the agonist, thus preventing excessive movement and joint injury. If you extend your arm to reach out and pick up a cup of tea, your *triceps brachii* is the prime mover of elbow extension and your biceps brachii acts as an antagonist to slow the extension and stop it at the appropriate point. If you extend your arm rapidly to throw a dart, the biceps must be quite relaxed. The biceps and triceps brachii represent an **antagonistic pair** of muscles that act on opposite sides of a joint (see fig. 10.2). We need antagonistic pairs at a joint because a muscle can only pull, not push—a single muscle cannot flex *and* extend the elbow, for example. Which member of the pair acts as the agonist depends on the motion under consideration. In flexion of the elbow, the biceps is the agonist and the triceps is the antagonist; when the elbow is extended, their roles are reversed.
4. A **fixator** is a muscle that prevents a bone from moving. To *fix* a bone means to hold it steady, allowing another muscle attached to it to pull on something else. For example, consider again the flexion of the elbow by the biceps brachii. The biceps originates on the scapula and inserts on the radius. The scapula is loosely attached to the axial skeleton, so when the biceps contracts, it seems that it would pull the scapula laterally. There are fixator muscles attached to the scapula, however, that contract at the same time. By holding the scapula firmly in place, they ensure that the force generated by the biceps moves the radius rather than the scapula.

Intrinsic and Extrinsic Muscles

In places such as the tongue, larynx, back, hand, and foot, anatomists distinguish between intrinsic and extrinsic muscles. An **intrinsic muscle** is entirely contained within a particular region, having both its origin and insertion there. An **extrinsic muscle** acts upon a designated region but has its origin elsewhere. For example, some movements of the fingers are produced by extrinsic muscles in the forearm, whose long tendons reach to the phalanges; other finger movements are produced by the intrinsic muscles located between the metacarpal bones of the hand.

Muscle Innervation

Innervation means the nerve supply to an organ. Knowing the innervation to each muscle enables clinicians to diagnose nerve and spinal cord injuries from their effects on muscle function and to set realistic goals for rehabilitation. The muscle tables of this chapter identify the innervation of each muscle. This information will be more meaningful after you have studied the peripheral nervous system (see chapters 13 and 14), but a brief orientation will be helpful here. Muscles of the head and neck are supplied by *cranial nerves* that arise from the base of the brain and emerge through the skull foramina. Cranial nerves are identified by numerals I to XII, although not all 12 of them innervate skeletal muscles. Muscles elsewhere are supplied by *spinal nerves,* which originate in the spinal cord, emerge through the intervertebral foramina, and branch into a *dorsal* and *ventral ramus.*[12] The spinal nerves are identified by letters and numbers that refer to the vertebrae—for example, T6 for the sixth thoracic nerve and S2 for the second sacral nerve. You will note references to nerve numbers and rami in many of the muscle tables. The term *plexus* in some of the tables refers to weblike networks of spinal nerves adjacent to the vertebral column. All of the nerves named here are illustrated, and most are also discussed, in chapters 13 and 14 (see tables 13.3–13.6 and 14.2).

---

[11] *ant* = against + *agonist* = competitor

How Muscles Are Named

Most of this chapter is a descriptive inventory of muscles, including their location, action, origin, insertion, and innervation. Learning the names of the muscles is much easier when you have some appreciation of the meanings behind the words. The Latin and English muscle names in this chapter are from the *Terminologia Anatomica* (T.A.) (see chapter 1). Although this book gives most terms in English rather than Latin, the customary English names for skeletal muscles are, at most, only slight modifications of the Latin names—for example, *anterior scalene muscle* is a derivative of the T.A. term, *musculus scalenus anterior.*

Some muscle names are several words long—for example, the *flexor digiti minimi brevis,* a "short muscle that flexes the little finger." Such names may seem intimidating at first, but they are really more of a help than an obstacle to understanding if you gain a little insight into the most commonly used Latin words. Several of these are interpreted in table 10.1, and others are explained in footnotes throughout the chapter. Familiarity with these terms will help you translate muscle names and remember the location, appearance, and action of the muscles.

A Learning Strategy

In the remainder of this chapter, we consider about 160 muscles. Many of the relatively superficial ones are shown in figure 10.4. The following suggestions may help you develop a rational strategy for learning the muscular system:

- Examine models, cadavers, dissected animals, or a photographic atlas as you read about these muscles. Visual images are often easier to remember than words, and direct observation of a muscle may stick in your memory better than descriptive text or two-dimensional drawings.
- When studying a particular muscle, palpate it on yourself if possible. Contract the muscle to feel it bulge and sense its action. This makes muscle locations and actions less abstract. Atlas B following this chapter shows where you can see and palpate several of these muscles on the living body.
- Locate the origins and insertions of muscles on an articulated skeleton. Some study skeletons are painted and labeled to show these. This helps you visualize the locations of muscles and understand how they produce particular joint actions.
- Study the derivation of each muscle name; the name usually describes the muscle's location, appearance, origin, insertion, or action.
- Say the names aloud to yourself or a study partner. It is harder to remember and spell terms you cannot pronounce, and silent pronunciation is not nearly as effective as speaking and hearing the names. Pronunciation guides are provided in the muscle tables for all but the most obvious cases.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

1. List some functions of the muscular system other than movement of the body.
2. Describe the relationship of endomysium, perimysium, and epimysium to each other. Which of these separates one fascicle from another? Which separates one muscle from another?
3. Distinguish between direct and indirect muscle attachments to bones.
4. Define *origin, insertion, belly, action,* and *innervation.*
5. Describe the five basic muscle shapes (fascicle arrangements).
6. Distinguish among a synergist, antagonist, and fixator. Explain how each of these may affect the action of an agonist.
7. In muscle names, what do the words *brevis, teres, digitorum, pectoralis, triceps,* and *profundus* mean?

Muscles of the Head and Neck

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- name and locate the muscles that produce facial expressions;
- name and locate the muscles used for chewing and swallowing;
- name and locate the neck muscles that move the head; and
- identify the origin, insertion, action, and innervation of any of these muscles.

Muscles of Facial Expression

One of the most striking contrasts between a human face and that of a rat, horse, or dog, for example, is the variety and subtlety of human facial expression. This is made possible by a complex array of small muscles that insert in the

---

[12] *ramus* = branch

Table 10.1 Words Commonly Used to Name Muscles

Criterion	Term and Meaning	Examples of Usage
Size	*Major (large)*	*Pectoralis major*
	Maximus (largest)	*Gluteus maximus*
	Minor (small)	*Pectoralis minor*
	Minimus (smallest)	*Gluteus minimus*
	Longus (long)	*Abductor pollicis longus*
	Brevis (short)	*Extensor pollicis brevis*
Shape	*Rhomboideus (rhomboidal)*	*Rhomboideus major*
	Trapezius (trapezoidal)	*Trapezius*
	Teres (round, cylindrical)	*Pronator teres*
	Deltoid (triangular)	*Deltoid*
Location	*Capitis (of the head)*	*Splenius capitis*
	Cervicis (of the neck)	*Semispinalis cervicis*
	Pectoralis (of the chest)	*Pectoralis major*
	Thoracis (of the thorax)	*Spinalis thoracis*
	Intercostal (between the ribs)	*External intercostals*
	Abdominis (of the abdomen)	*Rectus abdominis*
	Lumborum (of the lower back)	*Quadratus lumborum*
	Femoris (of the femur, or thigh)	*Quadriceps femoris*
	Peroneus (of the fibula)	*Peroneus longus*
	Brachii (of the arm)	*Biceps brachii*
	Carpi (of the wrist)	*Flexor carpi ulnaris*
	Digiti (of a finger or toe, singular)	*Extensor digiti minimi*
	Digitorum (of the fingers or toes, plural)	*Flexor digitorum profundus*
	Pollicis (of the thumb)	*Opponens pollicis*
	Indicis (of the index finger)	*Extensor indicis*
	Hallucis (of the great toe)	*Abductor hallucis*
	Superficialis (superficial)	*Flexor digitorum superficialis*
	Profundus (deep)	*Flexor digitorum profundus*
Number of Heads	*Biceps (two heads)*	*Biceps femoris*
	Triceps (three heads)	*Triceps brachii*
	Quadriceps (four heads)	*Quadriceps femoris*
Orientation	*Rectus (straight)*	*Rectus abdominis*
	Transversus (transverse)	*Transversus abdominis*
	Oblique (slanted)	*External abdominal oblique*
Action	*Adductor (adducts a body part)*	*Adductor pollicis*
	Abductor (abducts a body part)	*Abductor digiti minimi*
	Flexor (flexes a joint)	*Flexor carpi radialis*
	Extensor (extends a joint)	*Extensor carpi radialis*
	Pronator (pronates forearm)	*Pronator teres*
	Supinator (supinates forearm)	*Supinator*
	Levator (elevates a body part)	*Levator scapulae*
	Depressor (depresses a body part)	*Depressor anguli oris*

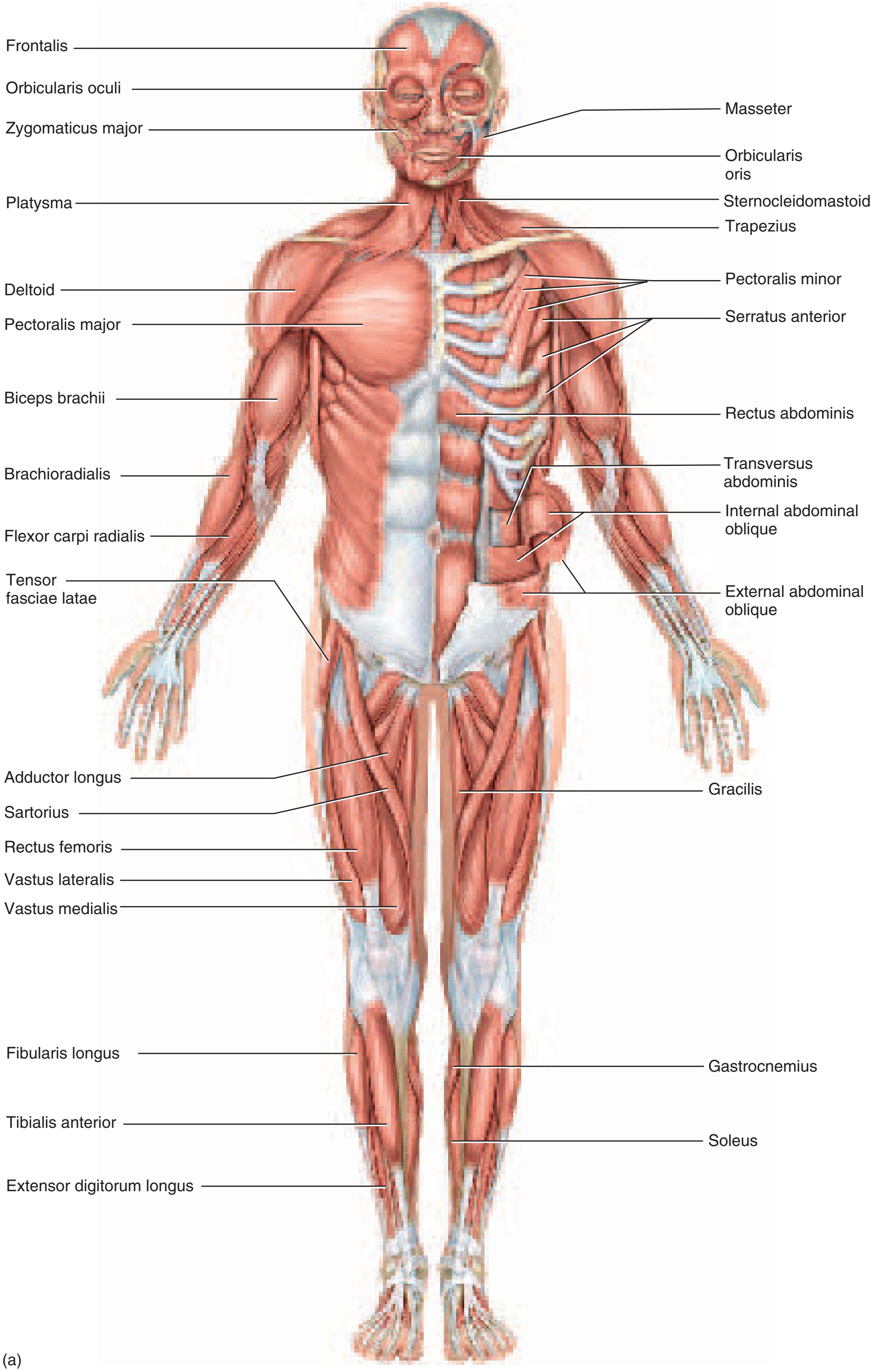

Frontalis
Orbicularis oculi
Zygomaticus major
Platysma
Deltoid
Pectoralis major
Biceps brachii
Brachioradialis
Flexor carpi radialis
Tensor fasciae latae
Adductor longus
Sartorius
Rectus femoris
Vastus lateralis
Vastus medialis
Fibularis longus
Tibialis anterior
Extensor digitorum longus
Masseter
Orbicularis oris
Sternocleidomastoid
Trapezius
Pectoralis minor
Serratus anterior
Rectus abdominis
Transversus abdominis
Internal abdominal oblique
External abdominal oblique
Gracilis
Gastrocnemius
Soleus
(a)

Figure 10.4 **The Muscular System.** (*a*) Anterior aspect. In each figure, major superficial muscles are shown on the anatomical *right*, and some of the deeper muscles of the trunk are shown on the *left*. Muscles not labeled here are shown in more detail in later figures.

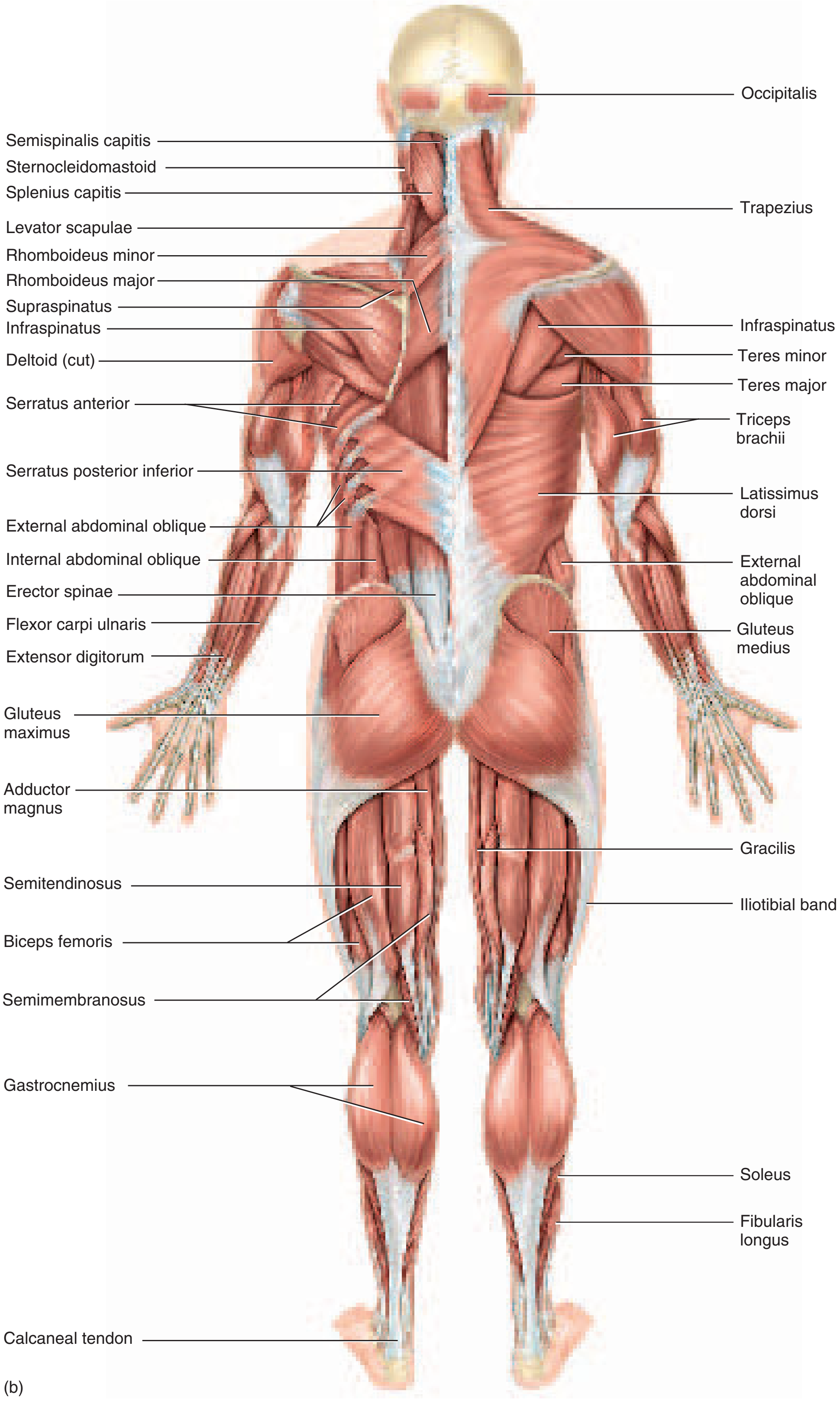

Occipitalis
Semispinalis capitis
Sternocleidomastoid
Splenius capitis
Trapezius
Levator scapulae
Rhomboideus minor
Rhomboideus major
Supraspinatus
Infraspinatus
Infraspinatus
Teres minor
Deltoid (cut)
Teres major
Serratus anterior
Triceps brachii
Serratus posterior inferior
Latissimus dorsi
External abdominal oblique
Internal abdominal oblique
External abdominal oblique
Erector spinae
Flexor carpi ulnaris
Gluteus medius
Extensor digitorum
Gluteus maximus
Adductor magnus
Gracilis
Semitendinosus
Iliotibial band
Biceps femoris
Semimembranosus
Gastrocnemius
Soleus
Fibularis longus
Calcaneal tendon
(b)

Figure 10.4 **The Muscular System *(continued).*** (*b*) Posterior aspect. In each figure, major superficial muscles are shown on the anatomical *right*, and some of the deeper muscles of the trunk are shown on the *left*. Muscles not labeled here are shown in more detail in later figures.

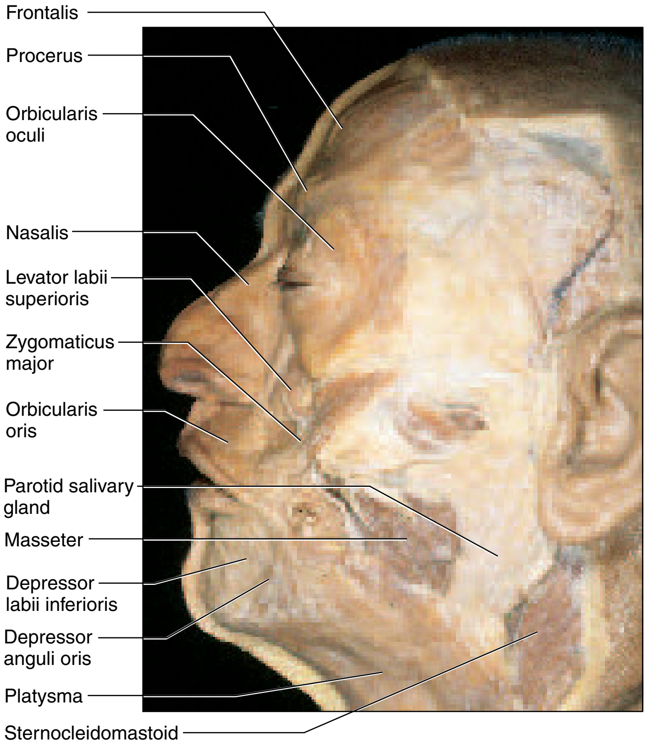


Figure 10.5 Some Muscles of Facial Expression in the Cadaver.

dermis and tense the skin when they contract (fig. 10.5). These muscles produce expressions as diverse as a pleasant smile, a threatening scowl, a puzzled frown, and a flirtatious wink (fig. 10.6). They add subtle shades of meaning to our spoken words and are enormously important in nonverbal communication.

We will briefly "tour" the scalp and face to get a general idea of the locations and actions of these muscles. Table 10.2 gives the details of their origins, insertions, and innervations. All of these muscles but one are innervated by branches of the facial nerve (cranial nerve VII). This nerve is especially vulnerable to damage from lacerations and skull fractures, which can paralyze the innervated muscles and cause parts of the face to sag.

The **occipitofrontalis** is the muscle of the scalp. It is divided into the **frontalis** of the forehead and **occipitalis** at the rear of the head, connected to each other by a broad aponeurosis, the **galea aponeurotica**[13] (GAY-lee-uh AP-oh-new-ROT-ih-cuh) (fig. 10.7). The occipitofrontalis moves the scalp, forehead skin, and eyebrows.

Each eye is encircled by the **orbicularis oculi,**[14] a sphincter that closes the eye. The **levator palpebrae superioris**[15] opens the eye; it lies deep to the orbicularis oculi in the eyelid and roof of the orbit. Other muscles of the orbital and nasal regions—the **corrugator supercilii,**[16] **procerus,**[17] and **nasalis**[18]—are described in table 10.2. Muscles within the orbit that produce movements of the eye itself are discussed in chapter 16.

The mouth is the most expressive part of the face, so it is not surprising that the muscles here are especially diverse. It is surrounded by the **orbicularis oris,**[19] a sphincter that closes the lips. Several other muscles approach the orbicularis oris from all directions. The first major muscle lateral to the nose is the **levator labii superioris,** a triangular muscle that originates at the middle of the orbicularis oculi. Next is the **zygomaticus**[20] **minor,** which originates near the lateral corner of the eye. Both of these converge on the orbicularis oris. The **zygomaticus major** originates in front of the ear and inserts on the superolateral corner of the mouth. The **levator anguli oris** originates on the maxilla and likewise inserts on the superolateral corner of the mouth. The **risorius**[21] approaches the mouth horizontally and inserts at the junction of the upper and lower lips. From their insertions, you can probably guess that the last five muscles draw the upper lip upward and laterally in such expressions as smiling and laughing.

Along the lower lip are muscles that draw it downward. The most lateral is the **depressor anguli oris,**[22] also known as the *triangularis* because of its shape. Lying deep to it and a little more medially is the **depressor labii inferioris.** Most medially, near the mental protuberance, is a pair of tiny **mentalis**[23] muscles. Unlike the other two, the mentalis muscles do not depress the lip. They originate on the mandible and insert in the dermis of the chin. When they contract, they pull the soft tissues of the chin upward, which wrinkles the chin, pushes the lower lip outward, and creates a pouting expression. People with especially thick mentalis muscles have a groove between them, the *mental cleft,* externally visible as a dimple of the chin.

The muscle of the cheek is the **buccinator,**[24] which has multiple functions in blowing, sucking, and chewing. The name literally means "trumpeter"—if the cheeks are inflated with air, compression of the buccinator muscles blows it out. Sucking is achieved by contracting the buccinators to draw the cheeks inward and then relaxing them. This action is especially important for nursing

---

[13] *galea* = helmet + *apo* = above + *neuro* = nerves, the brain
[14] *orb* = circle + *ocul* = eye
[15] *levator* = that which raises + *palpebr* = eyelid + *superior* = upper
[16] *corrug* = wrinkle + *supercilii* = of the eyebrow
[17] *procer* = long, slender
[18] *nasalis* = of the nose
[19] *oris* = of the mouth
[20] refers to the zygomatic arch
[21] *risor* = laughter
[22] *depressor* = that which lowers + *angul* = corner, angle
[23] *mentalis* = of the chin
[24] *bucc* = cheek

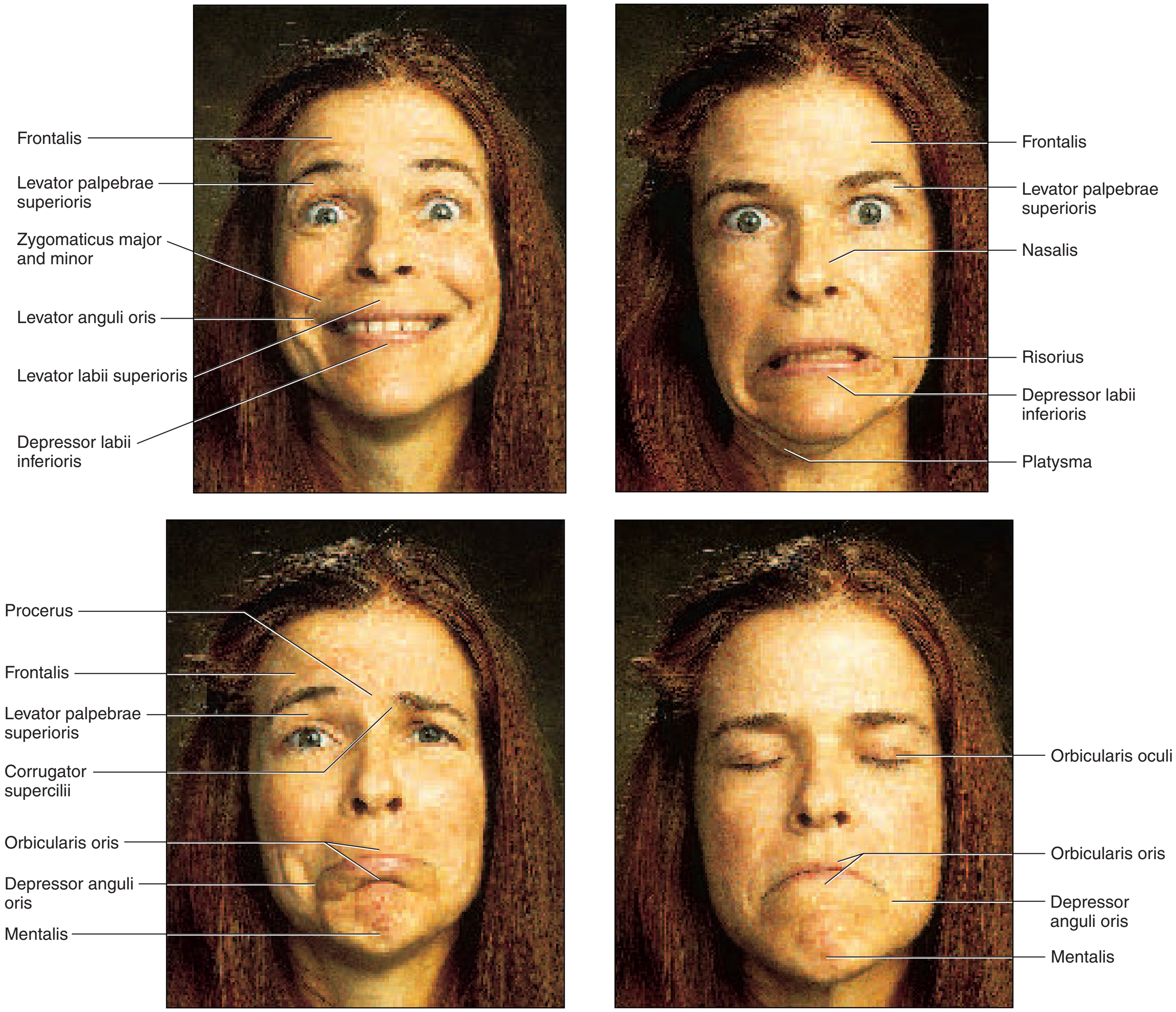

Frontalis
Levator palpebrae superioris
Zygomaticus major and minor
Levator anguli oris
Levator labii superioris
Depressor labii inferioris
Frontalis
Levator palpebrae superioris
Nasalis
Risorius
Depressor labii inferioris
Platysma
Procerus
Frontalis
Levator palpebrae superioris
Corrugator supercilii
Orbicularis oris
Depressor anguli oris
Mentalis
Orbicularis oculi
Orbicularis oris
Depressor anguli oris
Mentalis

Figure 10.6 **Expressions Produced by Several of the Facial Muscles.** The ordinary actions of these muscles are usually more subtle than these demonstrations.

infants. To appreciate this action, hold your fingertips lightly on your cheeks as you make a kissing noise. You will feel the relaxation of the buccinators at the moment air is sharply drawn in through the pursed lips. The buccinators also aid chewing by pushing and retaining food between the teeth.

The **platysma**[25] is a thin superficial muscle that arises from the shoulder and upper chest and inserts broadly along the mandible and overlying skin. It depresses the mandible, helps to open and widen the mouth, and tenses the skin of the neck (during shaving, for example).

Muscles of Chewing and Swallowing

The following muscles contribute to facial expression and speech but are primarily concerned with manipulation of food, including tongue movements, chewing, and swallowing (table 10.3).

---

[25] *platy* = flat

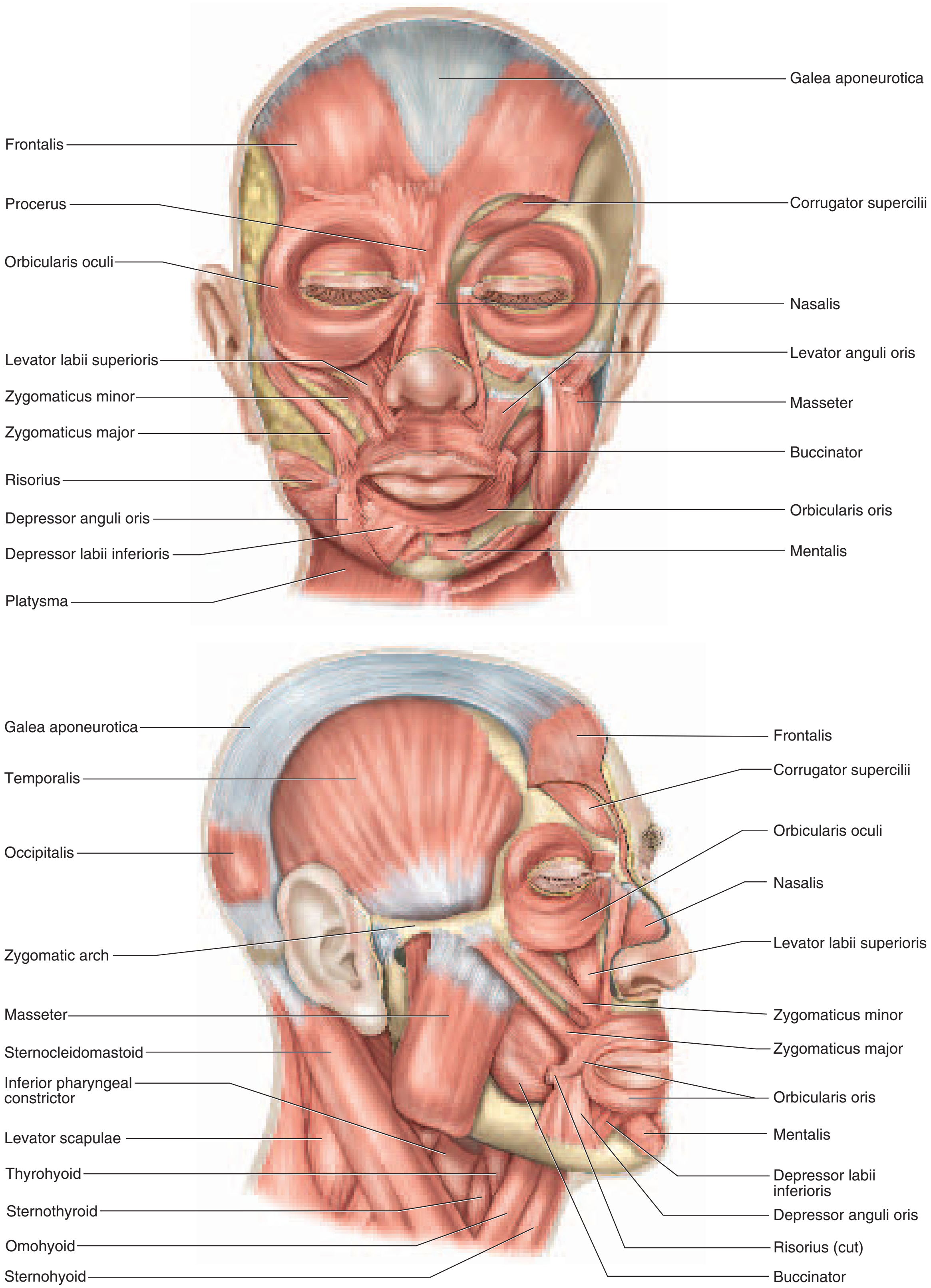

Frontalis
Procerus
Orbicularis oculi
Levator labii superioris
Zygomaticus minor
Zygomaticus major
Risorius
Depressor anguli oris
Depressor labii inferioris
Platysma
Galea aponeurotica
Corrugator supercilii
Nasalis
Levator anguli oris
Masseter
Buccinator
Orbicularis oris
Mentalis
Galea aponeurotica
Temporalis
Occipitalis
Zygomatic arch
Masseter
Sternocleidomastoid
Inferior pharyngeal constrictor
Levator scapulae
Thyrohyoid
Sternothyroid
Omohyoid
Sternohyoid
Frontalis
Corrugator supercilii
Orbicularis oculi
Nasalis
Levator labii superioris
Zygomaticus minor
Zygomaticus major
Orbicularis oris
Mentalis
Depressor labii inferioris
Depressor anguli oris
Risorius (cut)
Buccinator

Figure 10.7 Muscles of Facial Expression.
What muscle occupies the glabella?

Table 10.2 Muscles of Facial Expression (see fig. 10.7)

O = origin, I = insertion, N = innervation (n. = nerve)

Occipitofrontalis (oc-SIP-ih-toe-frun-TAY-lis)		
Occipitalis		
Retracts scalp; fixes galea aponeurotica		
O: superior nuchal line	I: galea aponeurotica	N: facial n. (VII)
Frontalis		
Raises eyebrows and creates wrinkles in forehead when occipitalis is contracted; draws scalp forward when occipitalis is relaxed		
O: galea aponeurotica	I: skin of forehead	N: facial n. (VII)
Orbicularis Oculi (or-BIC-you-LERR-iss OC-you-lye)		
Closes eye; compresses lacrimal gland to promote flow of tears		
O: medial wall of orbit	I: eyelid	N: facial n. (VII)
Levator Palpebrae (leh-VAY-tur pal-PEE-bree) Superioris		
Opens eye; raises upper eyelid		
O: roof of orbit	I: upper eyelid	N: oculomotor n. (III)
Corrugator Supercilii (COR-oo-GAY-tur SOO-per-SIL-ee-eye)		
Medially depresses eyebrows and draws them closer together; wrinkles skin between eyebrows		
O: superciliary ridge	I: skin of eyebrow	N: facial n. (VII)
Procerus (pro-SER-us)		
Wrinkles skin between eyebrows; draws skin of forehead down		
O: skin on bridge of nose	I: skin of forehead	N: facial n. (VII)
Nasalis (nay-SAY-liss)		
One part widens nostrils; another part depresses nasal cartilages and compresses nostrils		
O: maxilla and nasal cartilages	I: bridge and alae of nose	N: facial n. (VII)
Orbicularis Oris (or-BIC-you-LERR-iss OR-iss)		
Closes lips; protrudes lips as in kissing; aids in speech		
O: muscle fibers around mouth	I: mucous membrane of lips	N: facial n. (VII)
Levator Labii Superioris		
Elevates upper lip		
O: zygomatic bone, maxilla	I: upper lip	N: facial n. (VII)
Levator Anguli (ANG-you-lye) Oris		
Elevates corners of mouth, as in smiling and laughing		
O: maxilla	I: superior corner of mouth	N: facial n. (VII)
Zygomaticus (ZY-go-MAT-ih-cus) Major and Zygomaticus Minor		
Draw corners of mouth laterally and upward, as in smiling and laughing		
O: zygomatic bone	I: superolateral corner of mouth	N: facial n. (VII)

(continued)

Table 10.2 Muscles of Facial Expression (see fig. 10.7) *(continued)*

Risorius (rih-SOR-ee-us)		
Draws corner of mouth laterally, as in grimacing		
O: fascia near ear	I: corner of mouth	N: facial n. (VII)
Depressor Anguli Oris, or Triangularis		
Depresses corner of mouth, as in frowning		
O: mandible	I: inferolateral corner of mouth	N: facial n. (VII)
Depressor Labii Inferioris		
Depresses lower lip		
O: near mental protuberance	I: lower lip	N: facial n. (VII)
Mentalis (men-TAY-lis)		
Pulls skin of chin upward; elevates and protrudes lower lip, as in pouting		
O: near mental protuberance	I: skin of chin	N: facial n. (VII)
Buccinator (BUCK-sin-AY-tur)		
Compresses cheek; pushes food between teeth; expels air or liquid from mouth; creates suction		
O: lateral aspects of maxilla and mandible	I: orbicularis oris	N: facial n. (VII)
Platysma (plah-TIZ-muh)		
Depresses mandible, opens and widens mouth, tenses skin of neck		
O: fasciae of deltoid and pectoralis major muscles	I: mandible, skin of lower face, muscles at corners of mouth	N: facial n. (VII)

The tongue is a very agile organ. Both intrinsic and extrinsic muscle groups are responsible for its complex movements. The intrinsic muscles consist of variable numbers of vertical muscles that extend from the superior to inferior side of the tongue, transverse muscles that extend from left to right, and longitudinal muscles that extend from root to tip. The extrinsic muscles connect the tongue to other structures in the head and neck. These include the **genioglossus,**[26] **hyoglossus,**[27] **styloglossus,**[28] and **palatoglossus**[29] (fig. 10.8). The tongue and buccinator muscle shift food into position between the molars for chewing (mastication), and the tongue later forces the chewed food into the pharynx for swallowing.

There are four paired muscles of mastication: the temporalis, masseter, and medial and lateral pterygoids. The **temporalis**[30] is a broad, fan-shaped muscle that arises from the temporal lines of the skull, passes behind the zygomatic arch, and inserts on the coronoid process of the mandible (fig. 10.9*a*). The **masseter**[31] is shorter and superficial to the temporalis, arising from the zygomatic arch and inserting on the lateral surface of the angle of the mandible (see fig. 10.7). It is a thick muscle easily palpated on the side of your jaw. The temporalis and masseter elevate the mandible to bite and chew food; they are two of the most powerful muscles in the body. Similar action is provided by the **medial** and **lateral pterygoids.** They arise from the pterygoid processes of the sphenoid bone and insert on the medial surface of the mandible (fig. 10.9*b*). The pterygoids elevate and protract the mandible and produce the lateral excursions used to grind food between the molars.

Several of the actions of chewing and swallowing are aided by eight pairs of *hyoid muscles* associated with the hyoid bone. Four of them, superior to the hyoid, form the **suprahyoid group**—the *digastric, geniohyoid, mylohyoid,* and *stylohyoid.* Those inferior to the hyoid form the **infrahyoid group**—the *thyrohyoid, omohyoid, sternohyoid,* and *sternothyroid.* (See fig. 10.8 for the geniohyoid and fig. 10.10 for the others.) Most of the hyoid muscles

---

[26] *genio* = chin + *gloss* = tongue
[27] refers to the hyoid bone
[28] refers to the styloid process of the skull
[29] *palato* = palate
[30] refers to the temporal bone
[31] *masset* = chew

Table 10.3 Muscles of Chewing and Swallowing (see figs. 10.8–10.10)

O = origin, I = insertion, N = innervation (n. = nerve)		
Extrinsic Muscles of the Tongue		
Genioglossus (JEE-nee-oh-GLOSS-us)		
Depresses and protrudes tongue; creates dorsal groove in tongue that enables infants to grasp nipple and channel milk to pharynx		
O: mental spines of mandible	I: hyoid bone, lateral aspect of tongue	N: hypoglossal n. (XII)
Hyoglossus		
Depresses sides of tongue		
O: hyoid bone	I: lateral aspect of tongue	N: hypoglossal n. (XII)
Styloglossus		
Elevates and retracts tongue		
O: styloid process	I: lateral aspect of tongue	N: hypoglossal n. (XII)
Palatoglossus		
Elevates posterior part of tongue; constricts fauces (entry to pharynx)		
O: soft palate	I: lateral aspect of tongue	N: accessory n. (XI)
Muscles of Mastication		
Temporalis (TEM-po-RAY-liss)		
Elevates mandible for biting and chewing; retracts mandible		
O: temporal lines	I: coronoid process of mandible	N: trigeminal n. (V)
Masseter (ma-SEE-tur)		
Elevates mandible for biting and chewing; causes some lateral excursion of mandible		
O: zygomatic arch	I: lateral aspect of mandibular ramus and angle	N: trigeminal n. (V)
Medial Pterygoid (TERR-ih-goyd)		
Elevates mandible; produces lateral excursion		
O: pterygoid process of sphenoid bone	I: medial aspect of mandibular angle	N: trigeminal n. (V)
Lateral Pterygoid (TERR-ih-goyd)		
Protracts mandible; produces lateral excursion		
O: pterygoid process of sphenoid bone	I: slightly anterior to mandibular condyle	N: trigeminal n. (V)
Muscles of the Pharynx		
Pharyngeal Constrictors (three muscles)		
Constrict pharynx to force food into esophagus		
O: mandible, medial pterygoid plate, hyoid bone, larynx	I: posterior median raphe (fibrous seam) of pharynx	N: glossopharyngeal n. (IX), vagus n. (X)
Hyoid Muscles—Suprahyoid Group		
Digastric		
Retracts mandible; elevates and fixes hyoid; depresses mandible when hyoid is fixed		
O: mastoid notch and inner aspect of mandible near protuberance	I: hyoid, via fascial sling	N: trigeminal n. (V), facial n. (VII)

(continued)

Table 10.3 Muscles of Chewing and Swallowing (see figs. 10.8–10.10) *(continued)*

Geniohyoid (JEE-nee-oh-HY-oyd)		
Elevates and protracts hyoid; dilates pharynx to receive food; opens mouth when hyoid is fixed		
O: inner aspect of mental protuberance	I: hyoid	N: hypoglossal n. (XII)
Mylohyoid		
Forms floor of mouth; elevates hyoid; opens mouth when hyoid is fixed		
O: inferior margin of mandible	I: hyoid	N: trigeminal n. (V)
Stylohyoid		
Elevates hyoid		
O: styloid process	I: hyoid	N: facial n. (VII)
Hyoid Muscles—Infrahyoid Group		
Omohyoid		
Depresses hyoid; fixes hyoid during opening of mouth		
O: superior border of scapula	I: hyoid	N: ansa cervicalis
Sternohyoid		
Depresses hyoid; fixes hyoid during opening of mouth		
O: manubrium, costal cartilage 1	I: hyoid	N: ansa cervicalis
Thyrohyoid		
Depresses hyoid; elevates larynx; fixes hyoid during opening of mouth		
O: thyroid cartilage of larynx	I: hyoid	N: hypoglossal n. (XII)
Sternothyroid		
Depresses larynx; fixes hyoid during opening of mouth		
O: manubrium, costal cartilage 1 or 2	I: thyroid cartilage of larynx	N: ansa cervicalis

receive their innervation from the *ansa cervicalis,* a loop of nerve at the side of the neck formed by certain fibers of the first through third cervical nerves.

The **digastric**[32] arises from the mastoid process and thickens into a *posterior belly* beneath the margin of the mandible. It then narrows, passes through a connective tissue loop *(fascial sling)* attached to the hyoid bone, widens into an *anterior belly,* and attaches to the mandible near the protuberance. When it contracts, it pulls on the sling and elevates the hyoid bone. When the hyoid is fixed by the infrahyoid muscles, however, the digastric muscle opens the mouth. The mouth normally drops open by itself when the temporalis and masseter muscles are relaxed, but the digastric, platysma, and mylohyoid can open it more widely. The **geniohyoid** protracts the hyoid to widen the pharynx when food is swallowed. The **mylohyoid**[33] muscles fuse at the midline, form the floor of the mouth, and work synergistically with the digastric to forcibly open the mouth. The **stylohyoid,** named for its origin and insertion, elevates the hyoid bone.

When food enters the pharynx, the superior, middle, and inferior **pharyngeal constrictors** contract in that order and force the food downward, into the esophagus. The **thyrohyoid,** named for the hyoid bone and large *thyroid cartilage* of the larynx, helps to prevent choking. It elevates the thyroid cartilage so that the larynx becomes sealed by a flap of tissue, the epiglottis. You can feel this

---

[32] *di* = two + *gastr* = belly

[33] *mylo* = mill, molar teeth

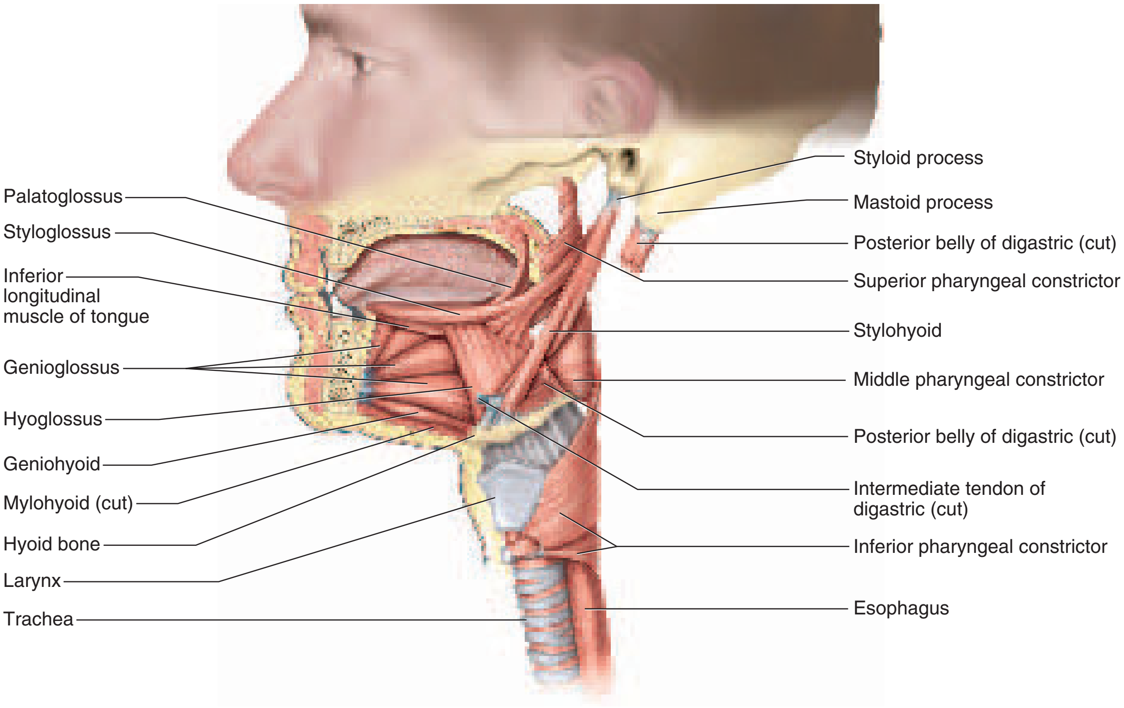

Palatoglossus
Styloglossus
Inferior longitudinal muscle of tongue
Genioglossus
Hyoglossus
Geniohyoid
Mylohyoid (cut)
Hyoid bone
Larynx
Trachea
Styloid process
Mastoid process
Posterior belly of digastric (cut)
Superior pharyngeal constrictor
Stylohyoid
Middle pharyngeal constrictor
Posterior belly of digastric (cut)
Intermediate tendon of digastric (cut)
Inferior pharyngeal constrictor
Esophagus

Figure 10.8 **Muscles of the Tongue and Pharynx.** Left lateral view.

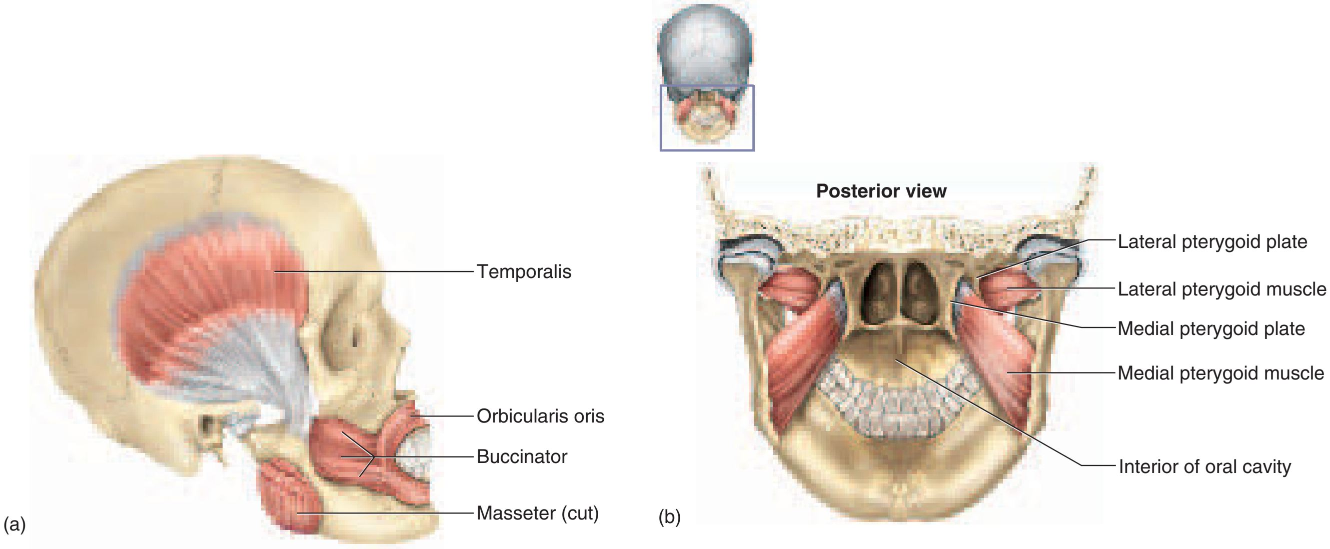

Temporalis
Orbicularis oris
Buccinator
Masseter (cut)
(a)
(b)
Posterior view
Lateral pterygoid plate
Lateral pterygoid muscle
Medial pterygoid plate
Medial pterygoid muscle
Interior of oral cavity

Figure 10.9 **Muscles of Chewing.** (*a*) Right lateral view. In order to expose the insertion of the temporalis muscle on the mandible, part of the zygomatic arch and masseter muscle are removed. (*b*) View of the pterygoid muscles looking into the oral cavity from behind the skull.

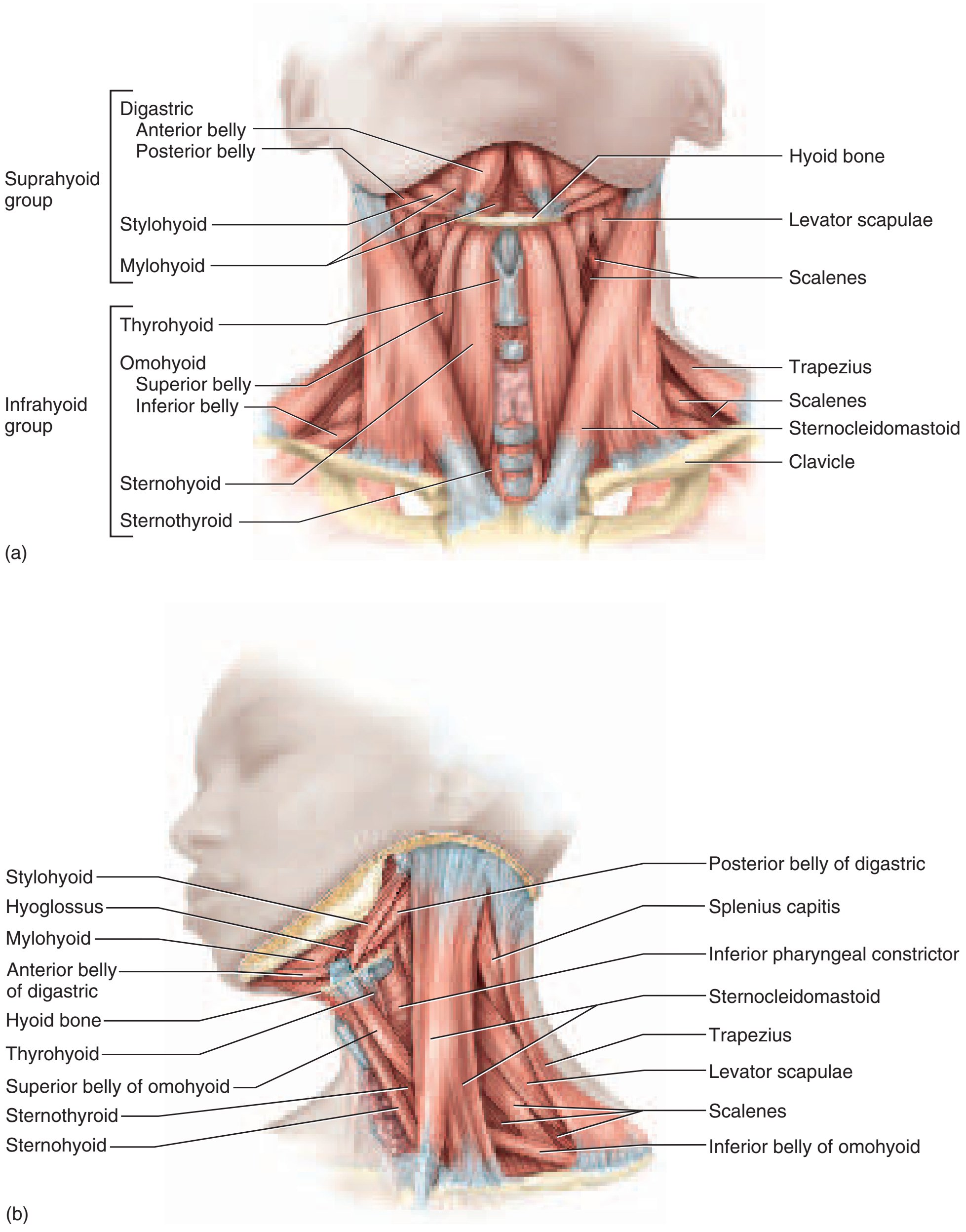

Suprahyoid group
Digastric
Anterior belly
Posterior belly
Stylohyoid
Mylohyoid
Infrahyoid group
Thyrohyoid
Omohyoid
Superior belly
Inferior belly
Sternohyoid
Sternothyroid
Hyoid bone
Levator scapulae
Scalenes
Trapezius
Scalenes
Sternocleidomastoid
Clavicle
(a)
Stylohyoid
Hyoglossus
Mylohyoid
Anterior belly of digastric
Hyoid bone
Thyrohyoid
Superior belly of omohyoid
Sternothyroid
Sternohyoid
Posterior belly of digastric
Splenius capitis
Inferior pharyngeal constrictor
Sternocleidomastoid
Trapezius
Levator scapulae
Scalenes
Inferior belly of omohyoid
(b)

Figure 10.10 **Muscles of the Neck.** (*a*) The hyoid muscles, anterior view. The geniohyoid is deep to the mylohyoid and can be seen in figure 10.8. (*b*) Left lateral view.

effect by placing your fingers on your "Adam's apple" (a prominence of the thyroid cartilage) and feeling it bob up as you swallow. The **sternothyroid** then pulls the larynx down again. These infrahyoid muscles that act on the larynx are called the extrinsic muscles of the larynx. The larynx also has intrinsic muscles, which are concerned with control of the vocal cords and laryngeal opening (see chapter 22).

Insight 10.1 Medical History

Discovery of a New Muscle

New discoveries in physiology are an everyday occurrence, but one would think all the muscles of the human body had been discovered long ago. Some have even said that human gross anatomy is a completed science, a "dead discipline." Thus, anatomists were surprised by the 1996 announcement of a new muscle of mastication discovered by U.S. dentists Gary Hack and Gwendolyn Dunn.

Hack and Dunn were studying the muscles of mastication using an unorthodox dissection method in which they entered the head from the front rather than from the side. "There it was," Hack said, "just staring at us"—a muscle, extending from the greater wing of the sphenoid to the medial side of the mandible, that everyone else had either overlooked or dismissed as part of the temporalis or medial pterygoid. Hack and Dunn named it the *sphenomandibularis.*

In chapter 1, we saw that some of history's greatest advances in scientific thinking came from people with the imagination to view things from a different angle than everyone else had done. In the discovery of the sphenomandibularis, we see that even little steps are made this way, and even the "finished" sciences hold surprises for people with imaginative approaches.

Muscles Acting on the Head

Muscles that move the head originate on the vertebral column, thoracic cage, and pectoral girdle and insert on the cranial bones (table 10.4). The principal flexors of the neck are the **sternocleidomastoid**[34] and three **scalenes** on each side (fig. 10.10). The prime mover is the sternocleidomastoid, a thick cordlike muscle that extends from the sternum and clavicle to the mastoid process behind the ear. It is most easily seen and palpated when the head is turned to one side and slightly extended. As it passes obliquely across the neck, the sternocleidomastoid divides it into **anterior** and **posterior triangles.** Other muscles and landmarks subdivide each of these into smaller triangles of surgical importance (fig. 10.11).

When both sternocleidomastoids contract, the neck flexes forward; for example, when you look down at something between your feet. When only the left one contracts, the head tilts down and to the right, and when the right one acts alone, it draws the head down and to the left. To visualize this action, hold the index finger of

---

[34] *sterno* = sternum + *cleido* = clavicle + *mastoid* = mastoid process of skull

Table 10.4 Muscles Acting on the Head (see figs. 10.10 and 10.17)

O = origin, I = insertion, N = innervation (n. = nerve, nn. = nerves)

Flexors of the Neck		
Sternocleidomastoid (STIR-no-CLY-doe-MASS-toyd)		
Contraction of either one draws head down and toward the side opposite the contracting muscle; contraction of both draws head forward and down, as in looking between the feet		
O: clavicle, manubrium	I: mastoid process	N: accessory n. (XI)
Scalenes (SCAY-leens) (three muscles)		
Flex neck laterally; elevate ribs 1 and 2 in inspiration		
O: vertebrae C2–C6	I: ribs 1–2	N: C5–C8
Extensors of the Neck		
Trapezius (tra-PEE-zee-us)		
Abducts and extends neck (see other functions in table 10.9)		
O: external occipital protuberance, nuchal ligament, spinous processes of vertebrae C7–T12	I: clavicle, acromion, scapular spine	N: accessory n. (XI), C3–C4
Splenius Capitis (SPLEE-nee-us CAP-ih-tis) and Splenius Cervicis (SIR-vih-sis)		
Rotate head, extend neck		
O: *capitis*—spinous processes of vertebrae C7–T3 or T4; *cervicis*—spinous processes of T3–T6	I: *capitis*—mastoid process, superior nuchal line; *cervicis*—transverse processes of C1–C2 or C3	N: dorsal rami of middle and lower cervical nn.
Semispinalis (SEM-ee-spy-NAY-liss) Capitis		
Rotates and extends head (see other parts of semispinalis in table 10.7)		
O: transverse processes of vertebrae T1–T6, articular processes of C4–C7	I: occipital bone	N: dorsal rami of cervical nn.

your left hand on your left mastoid process and the index finger of your right hand on your sternal notch. Now contract the left sternocleidomastoid in a way that brings the two fingertips as close together as possible. You will note that this action causes you to look downward and to the right.

The extensors are located in the back of the neck. Their actions include extension (holding the head erect), hyperextension (as in looking upward toward the sky), abduction (tilting the head to one side), and rotation (as in looking to the left and right). Extension and hyperextension involve equal action of the right and left members of a pair; the other actions require the muscle on one side to contract more strongly than the opposite muscle. Many head movements result from a combination of these actions—for example, looking up over the shoulder involves a combination of rotation and extension.

We will consider only three primary extensors: the trapezius, splenius capitis, and semispinalis capitis (figs. 10.12 and 10.17). The **trapezius** is a vast triangular muscle of the upper back and neck; together, the right and left trapezius muscles form a trapezoid. The origin of the trapezius extends from the occipital protuberance of the skull to thoracic vertebra 12. The trapezius con-

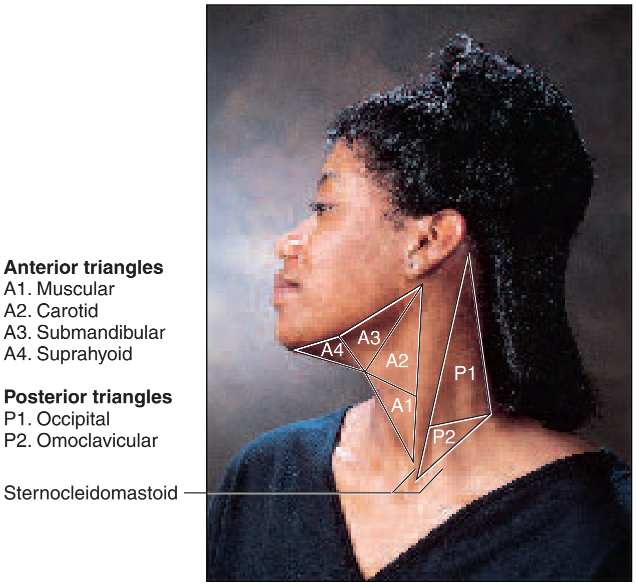

Anterior triangles
A1. Muscular
A2. Carotid
A3. Submandibular
A4. Suprahyoid
Posterior triangles
P1. Occipital
P2. Omoclavicular
Sternocleidomastoid
A1
A2
A3
A4
P1
P2

Figure 10.11 **Triangles of the Neck.** The sternocleidomastoid muscle separates the anterior triangles from the posterior triangles.

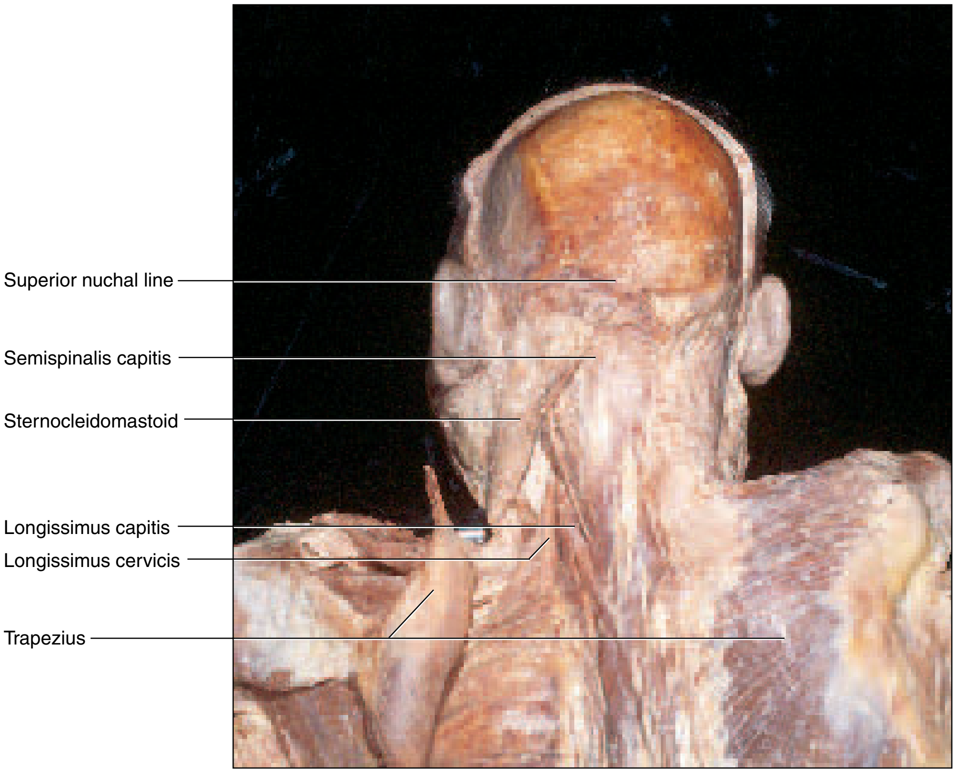

Superior nuchal line
Semispinalis capitis
Sternocleidomastoid
Longissimus capitis
Longissimus cervicis
Trapezius

Figure 10.12 **Muscles of the Shoulder and Nuchal Regions.**

verges to an insertion on the shoulder. The **splenius[35] capitis,** which lies just deep to the trapezius on the neck, has oblique fascicles that diverge from the vertebral column toward the ears. It is nicknamed the "bandage muscle" because of the way it tightly binds deeper neck muscles. The **semispinalis capitis** is slightly deeper, and its fascicles travel vertically up the back of the neck to insert on the occipital bone. A complex array of smaller, deeper extensors are synergists of these prime movers; they extend the head, rotate it, or both.

Think About It

Of the muscles you have studied so far, name three that you would consider intrinsic muscles of the head and three that you would classify as extrinsic. Explain your reason for each.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

8. Name two muscles that elevate the upper lip and two that depress the lower lip.
9. Name the four paired muscles of mastication and state where they insert on the mandible.
10. Distinguish between the functions of the suprahyoid and infrahyoid muscles.
11. List the prime movers of neck extension and flexion.

Muscles of the Trunk

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- name and locate the muscles of respiration and explain how they affect abdominal pressure;
- name and locate the muscles of the abdominal wall, back, and pelvic floor; and
- identify the origin, insertion, action, and innervation of any of these muscles.

Muscles of Respiration

We breathe primarily by means of muscles that enclose the thoracic cavity—the *diaphragm,* which forms its floor; 11 pairs of *external intercostal muscles,* which lie superficially between the ribs; and 11 pairs of *internal intercostal muscles* between the ribs deep to the external intercostals (fig. 10.13; table 10.5). The lungs themselves contain no skeletal muscle; they do not play an active part in their own ventilation.

The **diaphragm**[36] is a muscular dome between the abdominal and thoracic cavities. It has openings that allow passage of the esophagus and major blood vessels. Its fascicles converge from the margins toward a fibrous **central tendon.** When the diaphragm contracts, it flattens slightly, increasing the volume of the thoracic cage and

---

[35] *spleni* = bandage

[36] *dia* = across + *phragm* = partition

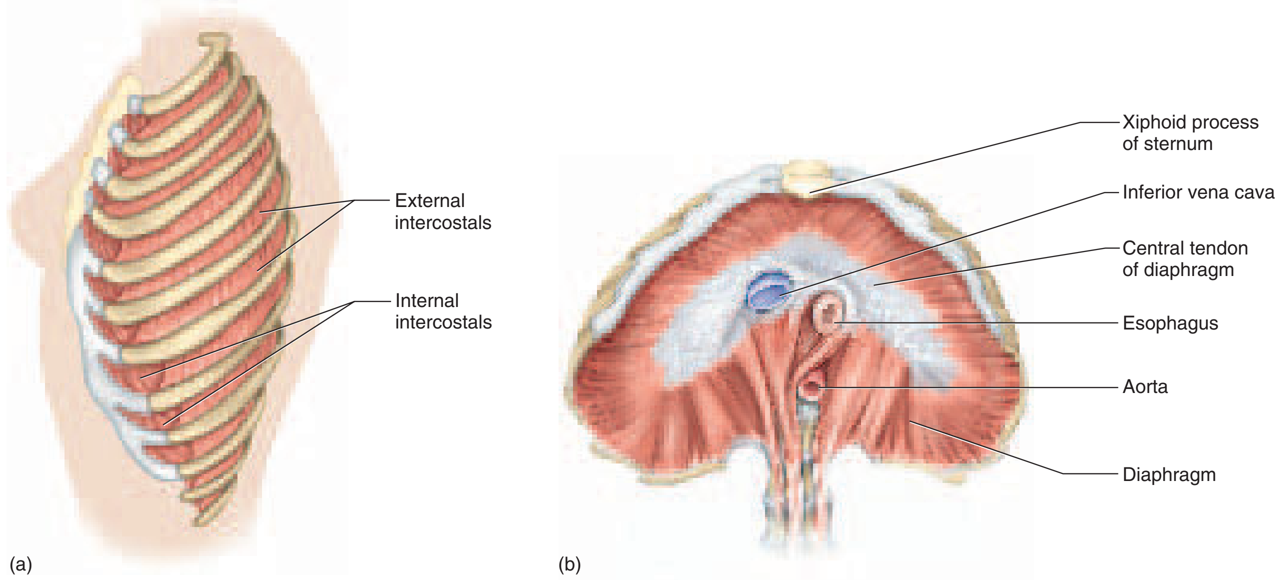


Figure 10.13 Muscles of Respiration. (*a*) The intercostal muscles, viewed from the left. (*b*) The diaphragm, viewed from below.

Table 10.5 Muscles of Respiration (see fig. 10.13)

O = origin, I = insertion, N = innervation (n. = nerve, nn. = nerves)

Diaphragm (DY-uh-fram)		
Prime mover of inspiration; compresses abdominal viscera to aid in such processes as defecation, urination, and childbirth		
O: xiphoid process, ribs 10–12, costal cartilages 5–9, lumbar vertebrae	I: central tendon	N: phrenic n.
External Intercostals (IN-tur-COSS-tulz)		
When scalenes fix rib 1, external intercostals draw ribs 2–12 upward and outward to expand thoracic cavity and inflate lungs		
O: inferior margins of ribs 1–11	I: superior margins of ribs 2–12	N: intercostal nn.
Internal Intercostals		
When quadratus lumborum and other muscles fix rib 12, internal intercostals draw ribs downward and inward to compress thoracic cavity and force air from lungs; not needed for relaxed expiration		
O: inferior margins of ribs 1–11	I: superior margins of ribs 2–12	N: intercostal nn.

creating a partial vacuum that draws air into the lungs. Its contraction also raises pressure in the abdominal cavity below, thus helping to expel the contents of the bladder and rectum and facilitating childbirth—which is why people tend to take a deep breath and hold it during these functions.

The **external intercostals**[37] extend obliquely downward and anteriorly from each rib to the rib below it. When the scalenes fix the first rib, the external intercostals lift the others, pulling them up somewhat like bucket handles. This action pulls the ribs closer together and draws the entire rib cage upward and outward, expanding the thoracic cage and promoting inhalation.

When the diaphragm and external intercostals relax, the thoracic cage springs back to its prior size and expels the air. The only muscular effort normally expended in exhaling is for the inspiratory muscles to maintain partial tension (tonus) and exert a braking action, so exhalation is smooth and not explosive. However, forced expiration—exhaling more than the usual amount of air or exhaling quickly as in blowing out a candle—is achieved mainly by the **internal intercostals.** These also extend from one rib to the next, but they lie deep to the external intercostals and have fascicles at right angles to them. The abdominal muscles also aid in forced expiration by pushing the viscera up against the diaphragm.

Think About It

What muscles are eaten as "spare ribs"? What is the tough fibrous membrane between the meat and the bone?

Muscles of the Abdomen

The anterior and lateral walls of the abdomen are reinforced by four pairs of sheetlike muscles that support the viscera, stabilize the vertebral column during heavy lifting, and aid in respiration, urination, defecation, vomiting, and childbirth. They are the *rectus abdominis, external abdominal oblique, internal abdominal oblique,* and *transversus abdominis* (table 10.6; figs. 10.14–10.16).

The **rectus**[38] **abdominis** is a medial straplike muscle extending vertically from the pubis to the sternum. It is separated into four segments by fibrous **tendinous intersections** that give the abdomen a segmented appearance in well-muscled individuals. The rectus abdominis is enclosed in a fibrous sleeve called the **rectus sheath,** and the right and left muscles are separated by a vertical fibrous strip called the **linea alba.**[39]

The **external abdominal oblique** is the most superficial muscle of the lateral abdominal wall. Its fascicles run anteriorly and downward. Deep to it is the **internal abdominal oblique,** whose fascicles run anteriorly and upward. Deepest of all is the **transversus abdominis,** whose fascicles run horizontally across the abdomen. Unlike the thoracic cavity, the abdominal cavity lacks a protective bony enclosure. However, the wall formed by these three muscle layers is strengthened by the way their fascicles run in different directions like layers of plywood.

The tendons of the abdominal muscles are aponeuroses. They continue medially to form the rectus sheath and terminate at the linea alba. At its inferior margin, the

---

[37] *inter* = between + *costa* = rib

[38] *rect* = straight

[39] *linea* = line + *alb* = white

Table 10.6 Muscles of the Abdomen (see figs. 10.14 and 10.15)

O = origin, I = insertion, N = innervation (n. = nerve, nn. = nerves)

Rectus Abdominis (ab-DOM-ih-niss)

Supports abdominal viscera; flexes waist as in sit-ups; depresses ribs; stabilizes pelvis during walking; increases intra-abdominal pressure to aid in urination, defecation, and childbirth

O: pubis	I: xiphoid process, costal cartilages 5–7	N: intercostal nn. 7–12

External Abdominal Oblique

Flexes waist as in sit-ups; flexes and rotates vertebral column

O: ribs 5–12	I: xiphoid process, linea alba	N: intercostal nn. 8–12, iliohypogastric n., ilioinguinal n.

Internal Abdominal Oblique

Similar to external oblique

O: inguinal ligament, iliac crest, thoracolumbar fascia	I: xiphoid process, linea alba, pubis, ribs 10–12	N: same as external oblique

Transversus Abdominis

Compresses abdomen, increases intra-abdominal pressure, flexes vertebral column

O: inguinal ligament, iliac crest, thoracolumbar fascia, costal cartilages 7–12	I: xiphoid process, linea alba, pubis, inguinal ligament	N: intercostal nn. 8–12, iliohypogastric n., ilioinguinal n.

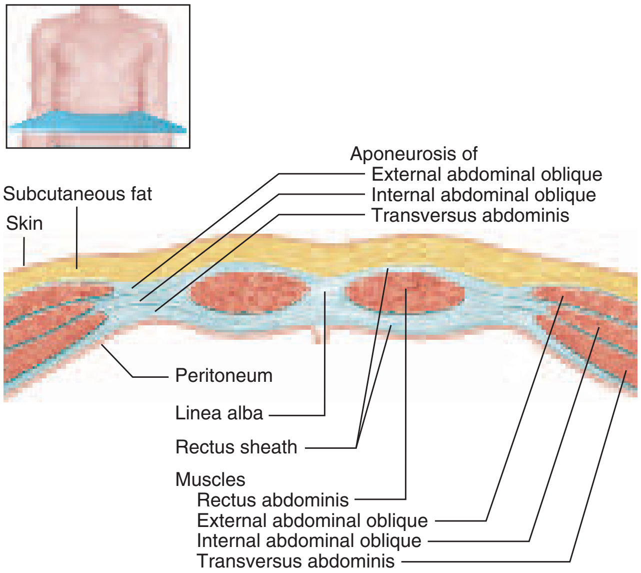


Figure 10.14 **Cross Section of the Anterior Abdominal Wall.**

aponeurosis of the external abdominal oblique forms a strong, cordlike **inguinal ligament** that extends from the pubis to the anterior superior spine of the ilium.

Muscles of the Back

We now consider muscles of the back that extend, rotate, and abduct the vertebral column (figs. 10.17–10.19). Back muscles that act on the pectoral girdle and arm are considered later. The muscles associated with the vertebral column moderate your motion when you bend forward and contract to return the trunk to the erect position. They are classified into two groups—a *superficial group,* which extends from the vertebrae to the ribs, and a *deep group,* which connects the vertebrae to each other.

In the superficial group, the prime mover of spinal extension is the **erector spinae.** You use this muscle to maintain your posture and to stand up straight after bending at the waist. It is divided into three “columns”—the **iliocostalis, longissimus,** and **spinalis.** These are complex, multipart muscles with cervical, thoracic, and lumbar portions. Some portions move the head and have already been discussed, while those that act on cervical and lower parts of the vertebral column are described in table 10.7. Most of the lower back (lumbar) muscles are in the longissimus group. Two **serratus posterior** muscles—one superior and one inferior—overlie the erector spinae and act to move the ribs.

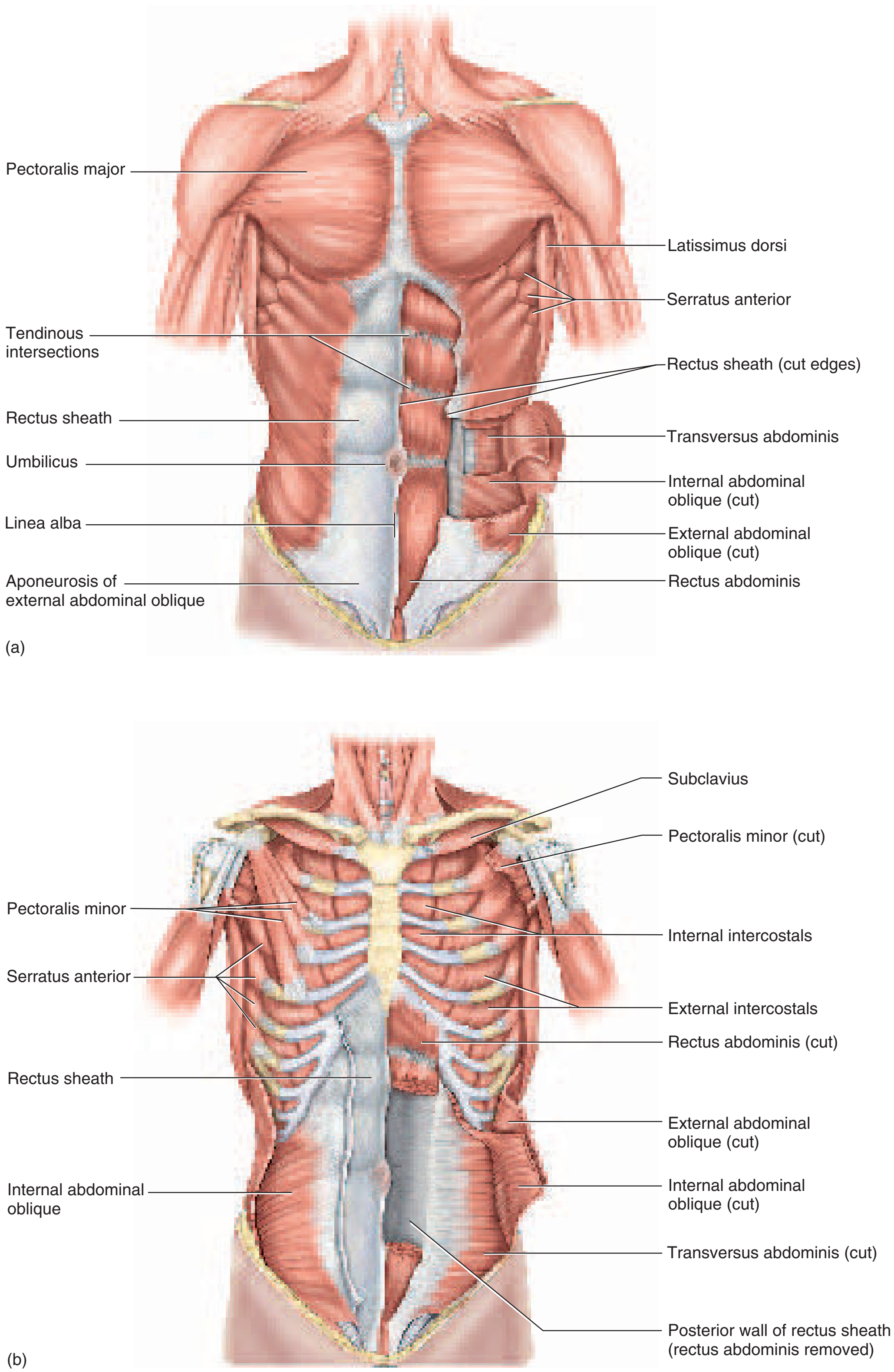

Pectoralis major
Latissimus dorsi
Serratus anterior
Tendinous intersections
Rectus sheath (cut edges)
Rectus sheath
Transversus abdominis
Umbilicus
Internal abdominal oblique (cut)
Linea alba
External abdominal oblique (cut)
Aponeurosis of external abdominal oblique
Rectus abdominis
(a)
Subclavius
Pectoralis minor (cut)
Pectoralis minor
Internal intercostals
Serratus anterior
External intercostals
Rectus abdominis (cut)
Rectus sheath
External abdominal oblique (cut)
Internal abdominal oblique
Internal abdominal oblique (cut)
Transversus abdominis (cut)
Posterior wall of rectus sheath (rectus abdominis removed)
(b)

Figure 10.15 **Thoracic and Abdominal Muscles.** (*a*) Superficial muscles. The *left* rectus sheath is cut away to expose the rectus abdominis muscle. (*b*) Deep muscles. On the anatomical *right*, the external abdominal oblique has been removed to expose the internal abdominal oblique and the pectoralis major has been removed to expose the pectoralis minor. On the anatomical *left*, the internal abdominal oblique has been cut to expose the transversus abdominis, and the rectus abdominis has been cut to expose the posterior rectus sheath.

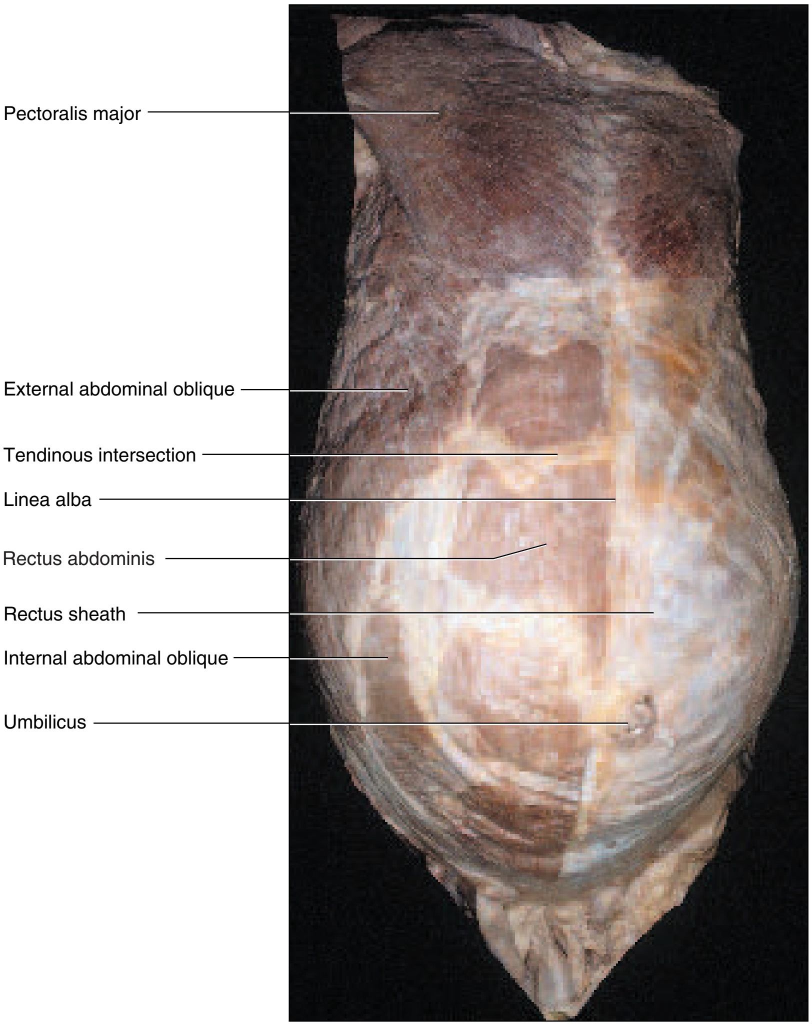


Figure 10.16 **Thoracic and Abdominal Muscles of the Cadaver.**

The major deep thoracic muscle is the **semispinalis.** This is divided into three parts, the **semispinalis capitis,** which we have already studied (see table 10.4), the **semispinalis cervicis,**[40] and **semispinalis thoracis,**[41] in that order from superior to inferior. In the lumbar region, the major deep muscle is the **quadratus**[42] **lumborum.** The erector spinae and quadratus lumborum are enclosed in a fibrous sheath called the **thoracolumbar fascia,** which is the origin of some of the abdominal and lumbar muscles. The **multifidus**[43] muscle deep to this connects the vertebrae to each other from the cervical to the lumbar region and acts to extend and rotate the vertebral column.

Insight 10.2 Clinical Application

Heavy Lifting and Back Injuries

When you are fully bent over forward, as in touching your toes, the erector spinae is fully stretched. Because of the *length-tension relationship* explained in chapter 11, muscles that are stretched to such extremes cannot contract very effectively. Standing up from such a position is therefore initiated by the hamstring muscles on the back of the thigh and the gluteus maximus of the buttocks. The erector spinae joins in the action when it is partially contracted.

---

[40] *cervicis* = of the neck
[41] *thoracis* = of the thorax
[42] *quadrat* = four-sided
[43] *multi* = many + *fid* = split, sectioned

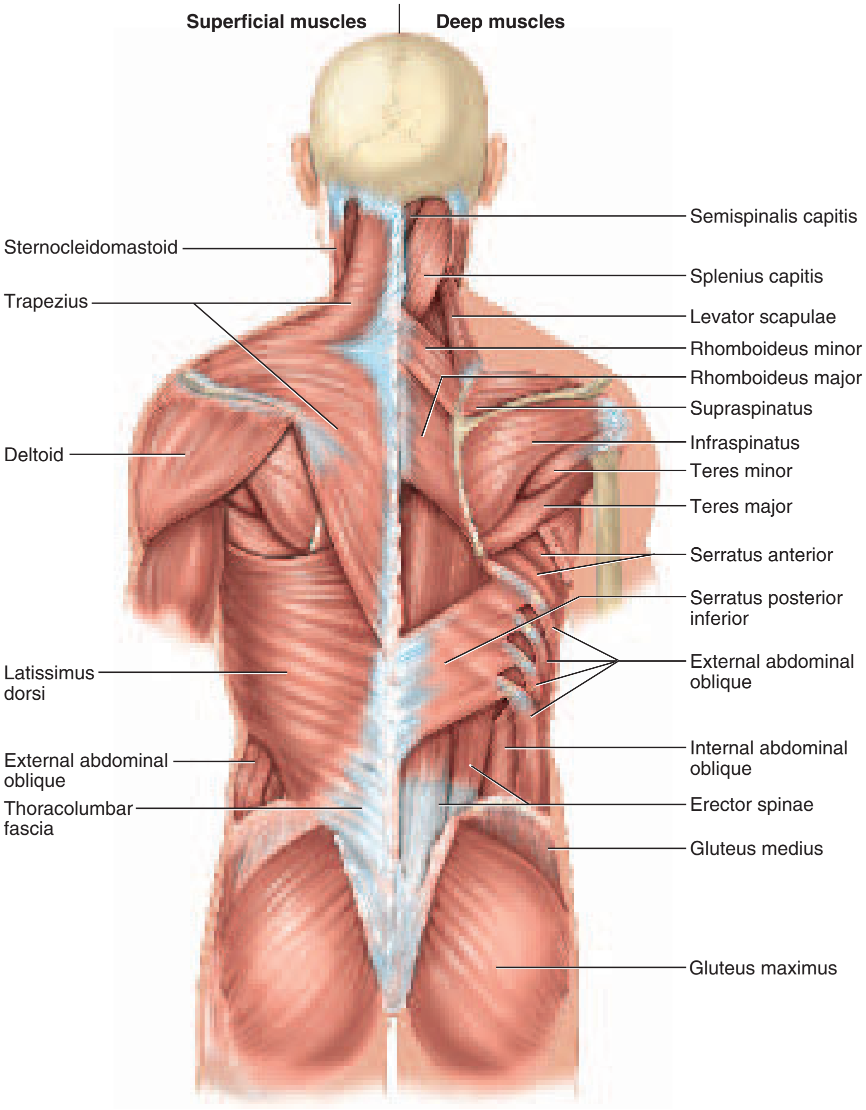

Superficial muscles
Deep muscles
Sternocleidomastoid
Trapezius
Deltoid
Latissimus dorsi
External abdominal oblique
Thoracolumbar fascia
Semispinalis capitis
Splenius capitis
Levator scapulae
Rhomboideus minor
Rhomboideus major
Supraspinatus
Infraspinatus
Teres minor
Teres major
Serratus anterior
Serratus posterior inferior
External abdominal oblique
Internal abdominal oblique
Erector spinae
Gluteus medius
Gluteus maximus

Figure 10.17 **Neck, Back, and Gluteal Muscles.** The most superficial muscles are shown on the *left,* and the next deeper layer on the *right.*

Standing too suddenly or improperly lifting a heavy weight, however, can strain the erector spinae, cause painful muscle spasms, tear tendons and ligaments of the lower back, and rupture intervertebral discs. The lumbar muscles are adapted for maintaining posture, not for lifting. This is why it is important, in heavy lifting, to kneel and use the powerful extensor muscles of the thighs and buttocks to lift the load.

Muscles of the Pelvic Floor

The floor of the pelvic cavity is formed by three layers of muscles and fasciae that span the pelvic outlet and support the viscera (table 10.8). It is penetrated by the anal canal, urethra, and vagina, which open into a diamond-shaped region between the thighs called the **perineum** (PERR-ih-NEE-um). The perineum is bordered by four bony landmarks—the pubic symphysis anteriorly, the coccyx posteriorly, and the ischial tuberosities laterally. The anterior half of the perineum is the **urogenital triangle** and the posterior half is the **anal triangle** (fig. 10.20*b*). These are especially important landmarks in obstetrics.

The pelvic floor is divided into three layers or "compartments." The one just deep to the skin, called the **superficial perineal space** (fig. 10.20*a, b*), contains three muscles. The **ischiocavernosus** muscles converge like a V from the ischial tuberosities toward the penis or clitoris and assist in

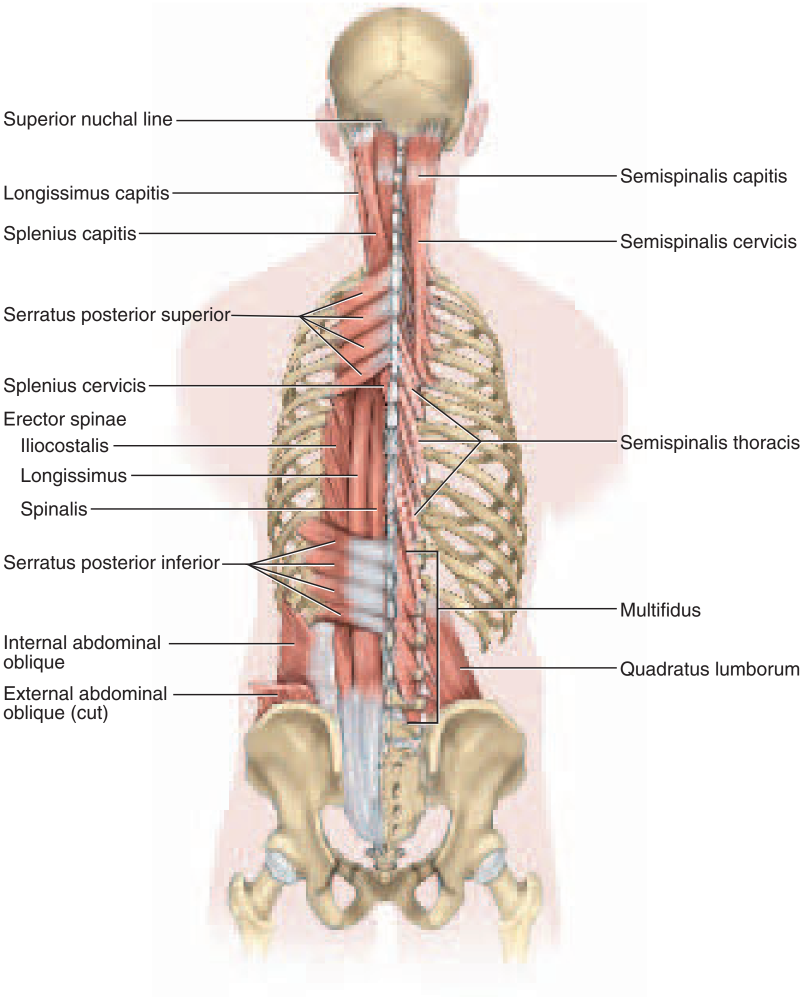

Superior nuchal line
Longissimus capitis
Splenius capitis
Serratus posterior superior
Splenius cervicis
Erector spinae
Iliocostalis
Longissimus
Spinalis
Serratus posterior inferior
Internal abdominal oblique
External abdominal oblique (cut)
Semispinalis capitis
Semispinalis cervicis
Semispinalis thoracis
Multifidus
Quadratus lumborum

Figure 10.18 **Muscles Acting on the Vertebral Column.** Those on the *right* are deeper than those on the *left.*

erection. In males, the **bulbospongiosus (bulbocavernosus)** forms a sheath around the base (bulb) of the penis; it expels semen during ejaculation. In females, it encloses the vagina like a pair of parentheses and tightens on the penis during intercourse. Voluntary contractions of this muscle in both sexes also help void the last few milliliters of urine. The **superficial transverse perineus** extends from the ischial tuberosities to a strong **central tendon** of the perineum.

In the middle compartment, the urogenital triangle is spanned by a thin triangular sheet called the **urogenital diaphragm.** This is composed of a fibrous membrane and two muscles—the **deep transverse perineus** and the **external urethral sphincter** (fig. 10.20*c, d*). The anal triangle contains the **external anal sphincter.** The deepest compartment, called the **pelvic diaphragm,** is similar in both sexes. It consists of two muscle pairs shown in figure 10.20*e*—the **levator ani** and **coccygeus.**

Insight 10.3 Clinical Application

Hernias

A hernia is any condition in which the viscera protrude through a weak point in the muscular wall of the abdominopelvic cavity. The most common type to require treatment is an *inguinal hernia.* In the male fetus, each testis descends from the pelvic cavity into the scrotum by way of a passage called the *inguinal canal* through the muscles of the groin. This canal remains a weak point in the pelvic floor, especially in infants and children. When pressure rises in the abdominal cavity, it can force part of the intestine or bladder into this canal or even into the scrotum. This also sometimes occurs in men who hold their breath while lifting heavy weights. When the diaphragm and abdominal muscles contract, pressure in the abdominal cavity can soar to 1,500 pounds per square inch—more than 100 times the normal pressure and quite sufficient to produce an inguinal hernia, or "rupture." Inguinal hernias rarely occur in women.

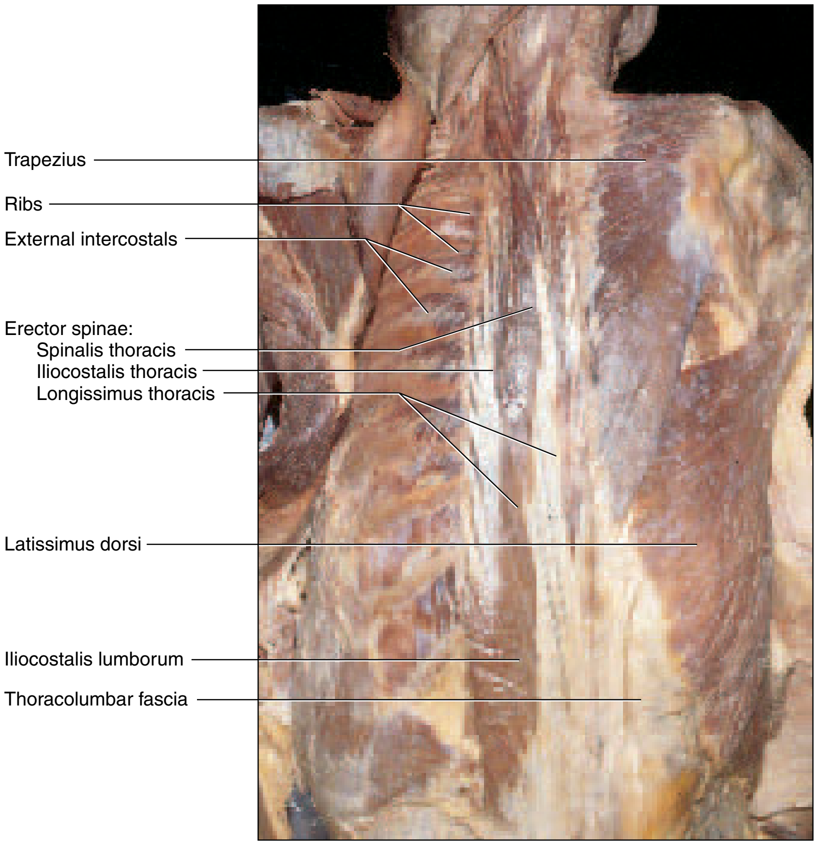


Figure 10.19 **Deep Back Muscles of the Cadaver.**

Two other sites of hernia are the diaphragm and navel. A *hiatal hernia* is a condition in which part of the stomach protrudes through the diaphragm into the thoracic cavity. This is most common in overweight people over 40. It may cause heartburn due to the regurgitation of stomach acid into the esophagus, but most cases go undetected. In an *umbilical hernia*, abdominal viscera protrude through the navel.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

12. Which muscles are used more often, the external intercostals or internal intercostals? Explain.
13. Explain how pulmonary ventilation affects abdominal pressure and vice versa.
14. Name a major superficial muscle and two major deep muscles of the back.
15. Define *perineum, urogenital triangle*, and *anal triangle*.
16. Name one muscle in the superficial perineal space, one in the urogenital diaphragm, and one in the pelvic diaphragm. State the function of each.

Muscles Acting on the Shoulder and Upper Limb

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- name and locate the muscles that act on the pectoral girdle, shoulder, elbow, wrist, and hand;
- relate the actions of these muscles to the joint movements described in chapter 9; and
- describe the origin, insertion, and innervation of each muscle.

Muscles Acting on the Scapula

The scapula is loosely attached to the thoracic cage and is capable of considerable movement—rotation (as in raising and lowering the apex of the shoulder), elevation and depression (as in shrugging and lowering the shoulders), and protraction and retraction (pulling the shoulders forward or back) (fig. 10.21). The clavicle braces the shoulder and moderates these movements.

Table 10.7 Muscles of the Back (see figs. 10.17 and 10.18)

O = origin, I = insertion, N = innervation (n. = nerve, nn. = nerves)		
Superficial Group—The Erector Spinae (ee-RECK-tur SPY-nee)		
Iliocostalis Cervicis (ILL-ee-oh-coss-TAH-liss SIR-vih-sis), Iliocostalis Thoracis (tho-RA-sis), and Iliocostalis Lumborum (lum-BORE-um)		
Extend and laterally flex vertebral column; thoracis and lumborum rotate ribs during forceful inspiration		
O: angles of ribs, sacrum, iliac crest	I: *cervicis*—vertebrae C4–C6; *thoracis*—vertebra C7, angles of ribs 1–6; *lumborum*—angles of ribs 7–12	N: dorsal rami of spinal nn.
Longissimus (lawn-JISS-ih-muss) Cervicis and Longissimus Thoracis		
Extend and laterally flex vertebral column		
O: *cervicis*—vertebrae T1 to T4 or T5; *thoracis*—sacrum, iliac crest, vertebrae T1–L5	I: *cervicis*—vertebrae C2–C6; *thoracis*— vertebrae T1–T12, ribs 3 or 4 to 12	N: dorsal rami of spinal nn.
Spinalis (spy-NAY-liss) Cervicis and Spinalis Thoracis		
Extend vertebral column		
O: *cervicis*—nuchal ligament, spinous process of vertebra C7; *thoracis*—spinous processes of T11–L2	I: *cervicis*—spinous process of axis; *thoracis*—spinous processes of upper thoracic vertebrae	N: dorsal rami of spinal nn.
Superficial Group—Serratus Posterior Muscles		
Serratus Posterior Superior (seh-RAY-tus)		
Elevates ribs 2–5 during inspiration		
O: spines of vertebrae C7–T3	I: ribs 2–5	N: intercostal nn. 2–5
Serratus Posterior Inferior		
Depresses ribs 9–12 during inspiration		
O: spines of vertebrae T10–L2	I: ribs 9–12	N: ventral rami of T9–T12
Deep Group		
Semispinalis Cervicis (SEM-ee-spy-NAY-liss SUR-vih-sis) and Semispinalis Thoracis (tho-RA-sis)		
Extend neck; extend and rotate vertebral column		
O: transverse processes of vertebrae T1–T10	I: spinous processes of vertebrae C2–T5	N: dorsal rami of spinal nn.
Quadratus Lumborum (quad-RAY-tus lum-BORE-um)		
Laterally flexes vertebral column, depresses rib 12		
O: iliac crest, lower lumbar vertebrae, thoracolumbar fascia	I: upper lumbar vertebrae, rib 12	N: ventral rami of L1–L3
Multifidus (mul-TIFF-ih-dus)		
Extends and rotates vertebral column		
O: sacrum, iliac crest, vertebrae C4–L5	I: laminae and spinous processes of vertebrae above origins	N: dorsal rami of spinal nn.

Table 10.8 Muscles of the Pelvic Floor (see fig. 10.20)

O = origin, I = insertion, N = innervation (n. = nerve)

Superficial Muscles of the Perineum		
Ischiocavernosus (ISS-kee-oh-CAV-er-NO-sus)		
Aids in erection of penis and clitoris		
O: ischial and pubic rami, ischial tuberosity	I: penis, clitoris	N: pudendal n.
Bulbospongiosus (BUL-bo-SPUN-jee-OH-sus)		
Male: compresses urethra to expel semen or urine. Female: constricts vaginal orifice.		
O: central tendon of perineum, bulb of penis	I: fasciae of perineum, penis or clitoris	N: pudendal n.
Superficial Transverse Perineus (PERR-ih-NEE-us)		
Fixes central tendon of perineum, supports pelvic floor		
O: ischial ramus	I: central tendon of perineum	N: pudendal n.
Muscles of the Urogenital Diaphragm		
Deep Transverse Perineus		
Fixes central tendon of perineum; supports pelvic floor; expels last drops of urine in both sexes and semen in male		
O: ischial ramus	I: central tendon of perineum	N: pudendal n.
External Urethral Sphincter		
Compresses urethra to voluntarily inhibit urination		
O: ischial and pubic rami	I: medial raphe of male, vaginal wall of female	N: pudendal n.
Muscle of the Anal Triangle		
External Anal Sphincter		
Compresses anal canal to voluntarily inhibit defecation		
O: anococcygeal raphe	I: central tendon of perineum	N: pudendal n., S4
Muscles of the Pelvic Diaphragm		
Levator Ani (leh-VAY-tur AY-nye)		
Supports viscera; resists pressure surges in abdominal cavity; elevates anus during defecation; forms vaginal and anorectal sphincters		
O: os coxae from pubis to ischial spine	I: coccyx, anal canal, anococcygeal raphe	N: pudendal n., S3–S4
Coccygeus (coc-SIDJ-ee-us)		
Draws coccyx anteriorly after defecation or childbirth; supports and elevates pelvic floor; resists abdominal pressure surges		
O: ischial spine	I: lower sacrum to upper coccyx	N: S3 or S4

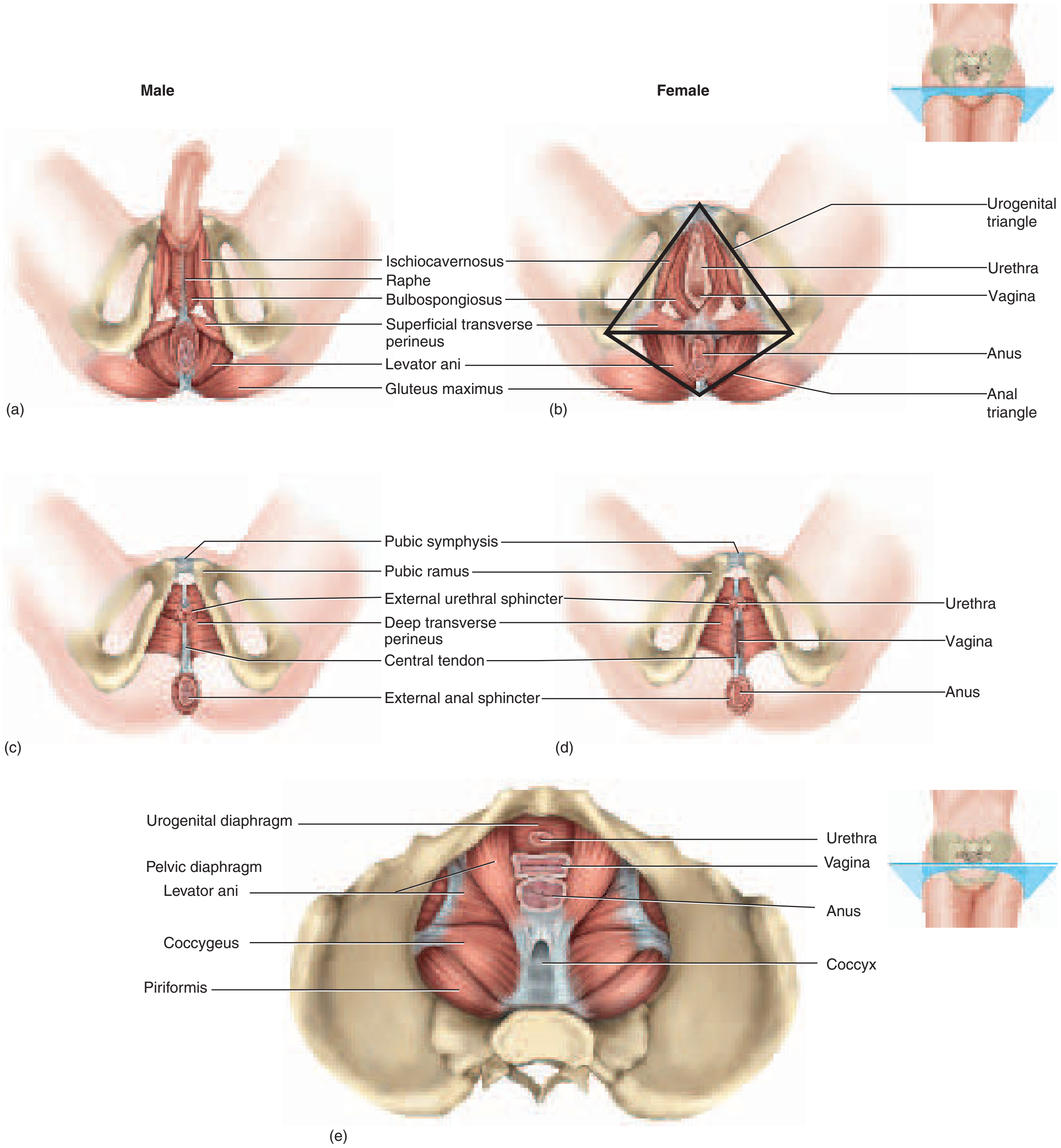

Male
Female
Ischiocavernosus
Raphe
Bulbospongiosus
Superficial transverse perineus
Levator ani
Gluteus maximus
Urogenital triangle
Urethra
Vagina
Anus
Anal triangle
(a)
(b)
Pubic symphysis
Pubic ramus
External urethral sphincter
Deep transverse perineus
Central tendon
External anal sphincter
Urethra
Vagina
Anus
(c)
(d)
Urogenital diaphragm
Pelvic diaphragm
Levator ani
Coccygeus
Piriformis
Urethra
Vagina
Anus
Coccyx
(e)

Figure 10.20 **Muscles of the Pelvic Floor.** (*a, b*) The superficial perineal space, inferior view. Triangles of the perineum are marked in *b*. (*c, d*) The urogenital diaphragm, inferior view; this is the next deeper layer after the muscles in *a* and *b*. (*e*) The pelvic diaphragm, the deepest layer, superior view (seen from within the pelvic cavity).

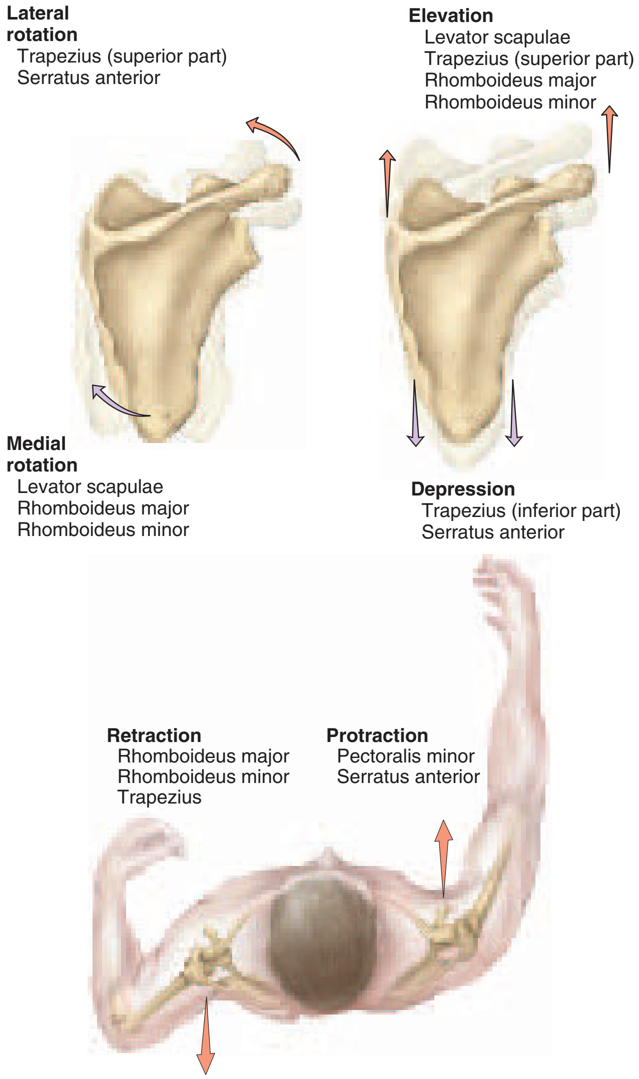


Figure 10.21 Actions of Some Thoracic Muscles on the Scapula. Note that an individual muscle can contribute to multiple actions, depending on which fibers contract and what synergists act with it. **In the two upper figures, mark the insertion of each of the named muscles.**

The muscles that act on the pectoral girdle originate on the axial skeleton and insert on the clavicle and scapula. They are divided into anterior and posterior groups (table 10.9). The important muscles of the anterior group are the **pectoralis minor** and **serratus anterior** (see fig. 10.15*b*). In the posterior group, we have the large, superficial trapezius, already studied, and three deep muscles, the **levator scapulae, rhomboideus major,** and **rhomboideus minor.** The action of the trapezius depends on whether its superior, middle, or inferior fibers contract and whether it acts alone or with other muscles. The levator scapulae and superior fibers of the trapezius rotate the scapula in opposite directions if either of them acts alone. If both act together, their opposite rotational effects balance each other and they elevate the scapula and shoulder, as when you carry a heavy weight on your shoulder. Depression of the scapula occurs mainly by gravitational pull, but the trapezius and serratus anterior can cause faster, more forcible depression, as in swimming, hammering, and rowing.

Muscles Acting on the Humerus

Nine muscles cross the humeroscapular (shoulder) joint and insert on the humerus (table 10.10). Two are called *axial muscles* because they originate primarily on the axial skeleton—the **pectoralis major** and **latissimus dorsi**[44] (see figs. 10.15, 10.22, and 10.23). The pectoralis major is the thick, fleshy muscle of the mammary region, and the latissimus dorsi is a broad muscle of the back that extends from the waist to the axilla. These muscles bear the primary responsibility for attachment of the arm to the trunk, and they are the prime movers of the shoulder joint. The pectoralis major flexes the shoulder as in pointing at something in front of you, and the latissimus dorsi extends it as in pointing at something behind you—thus, they are antagonists.

The other seven muscles of the shoulder are called *scapular muscles* because they originate on the scapula. Among these, the prime mover is the **deltoid**—the thick muscle that caps the shoulder. It acts like three different muscles. Its anterior fibers flex the shoulder, its posterior fibers extend it, and its lateral fibers abduct it. Abduction by the deltoid is antagonized by the combined action of the pectoralis major and latissimus dorsi. The **teres major** assists extension of the shoulder and the **coracobrachialis** assists flexion and adduction.

Tendons of the other four scapular muscles form the **rotator cuff**—the **supraspinatus, infraspinatus, teres minor,** and **subscapularis** (fig. 10.24), nicknamed the "SITS muscles" for their initial letters. The subscapularis fills most of the subscapular fossa on the anterior surface of the scapula. The other three originate on the posterior surface. The supraspinatus and infraspinatus occupy the corresponding fossae above and below the scapular spine, and the teres minor lies inferior to the infraspinatus. The tendons of these muscles merge with the joint capsule of the shoulder as they pass it en route to the humerus. They insert on the proximal end of the humerus, forming a partial sleeve around it. The rotator cuff reinforces the joint capsule and holds the head of the humerus in the glenoid cavity. These muscles act as synergists in shoulder movements. The rotator cuff, especially the tendon of the supraspinatus, is easily damaged by strenuous circumduction (see insight 10.6).

---

[44] *latissimus* = broadest + *dorsi* = of the back

Table 10.9 Muscles Acting on the Scapula (see figs. 10.15, 10.17, and 10.21)

O = origin, I = insertion, N = innervation (n. = nerve, nn. = nerves)		
Anterior Group		
Pectoralis (PECK-toe-RAY-liss) Minor		
Protracts and depresses scapula when ribs are fixed; elevates ribs when scapula is fixed		
O: ribs 3–5	I: coracoid process	N: medial and lateral pectoral nn.
Serratus (serr-AY-tus) Anterior		
Holds scapula against rib cage; elevates ribs; abducts and rotates scapula to tilt glenoid cavity upward; forcefully depresses scapula; abducts and elevates arm; prime mover in forward thrusting, throwing, and pushing (“boxer’s muscle”)		
O: ribs 1–9	I: medial border of scapula	N: long thoracic n.
Posterior Group		
Trapezius (tra-PEE-zee-us)		
Superior fibers elevate scapula or rotate it to tilt glenoid cavity upward; middle fibers retract scapula; inferior fibers depress scapula. When scapula is fixed, one trapezius acting alone flexes neck laterally and both trapezius muscles working together extend neck		
O: external occipital protuberance, nuchal ligament, spinous processes of C7–T12	I: clavicle, acromion, scapular spine	N: accessory n. (XI), C3–C4
Levator Scapulae (leh-VAY-tur SCAP-you-lee)		
Rotates scapula to tilt glenoid cavity downward; flexes neck when scapula is fixed; elevates scapula when acting with superior fibers of trapezius		
O: transverse processes of vertebrae C1–C4	I: superior angle to medial border of scapula	N: C3–C4, dorsal scapular n.
Rhomboideus (rom-BOY-dee-us) Major and Rhomboideus Minor		
Retract and elevate scapula; rhomboideus major also fixes scapula and rotates it to tilt glenoid cavity downward		
O: spinous processes of vertebrae C7–T1 (r. minor) and T2–T5 (r. major)	I: medial border of scapula	N: dorsal scapular n.

Since the humeroscapular joint is capable of such a wide range of movements and is acted upon by so many muscles, its actions are summarized in table 10.11.

Think About It

Since a muscle can only pull, and not push, antagonistic muscles are needed to produce opposite actions at a joint. Reconcile this fact with the observation that the deltoid muscle both flexes and extends the shoulder.

Muscles Acting on the Forearm

The elbow and forearm are capable of four motions: flexion, extension, pronation, and supination (table 10.12). The principal flexors are on the anterior side of the humerus and include the superficial **biceps brachii**[45] and deeper **brachialis** (see fig. 10.22; table 10.13). In flexion of the elbow, the biceps elevates the radius while the brachialis elevates the ulna. The biceps is named for its two heads, which arise from separate tendons at the scapula. The tendon of the long head is important in holding the humerus in the glenoid cavity and stabilizing the shoulder joint. The two heads converge close to the elbow on a single distal tendon that inserts on the radial tuberosity.

The **brachioradialis** is a synergist in elbow flexion. Its belly lies in the antebrachium (forearm) beside the radius, rather than in the brachium with the other two flexors (see fig. 10.22*a*). It forms the thick, fleshy mass on the lateral side of the forearm just distal to the elbow. Its origin is on the distal end of the humerus, and its insertion is on the distal end of the radius. Since its insertion is so far from the fulcrum, the brachioradialis does not generate as much power as the prime movers; it is effective mainly when the prime movers have partially flexed the elbow.

The prime mover of extension is the **triceps brachii** on the posterior side of the humerus (see figs. 10.2 and 10.22).

---

[45] *bi* = two + *ceps* = head + *brachi* = arm. Note that *biceps* is singular, there is no such word as *bicep*. The plural form is *bicipites* (by-SIP-ih-teez).

Table 10.10 Muscles Acting on the Humerus (see figs. 10.22–10.24)

O = origin, I = insertion, N = innervation (n. = nerve, nn. = nerves)

Pectoralis (PECK-toe-RAY-liss) Major		
Prime mover of shoulder flexion; adducts and medially rotates humerus; depresses pectoral girdle; elevates ribs; aids in climbing, pushing, and throwing		
O: clavicle, sternum, costal cartilages 1–6	I: intertubercular groove of humerus	N: medial and lateral pectoral nn.
Latissimus Dorsi (la-TISS-ih-muss DOR-sye)		
Adducts and medially rotates humerus; extends shoulder joint; produces strong downward strokes of arm, as in hammering or swimming (“swimmer’s muscle”); pulls body upward in climbing		
O: vertebrae T7–L5, lower three or four ribs, thoracolumbar fascia, iliac crest, inferior angle of scapula	I: intertubercular groove of humerus	N: thoracodorsal n.
Deltoid		
Lateral fibers abduct humerus; anterior fibers flex and medially rotate it; posterior fibers extend and laterally rotate it		
O: clavicle, scapular spine, acromion	I: deltoid tuberosity of humerus	N: axillary n.
Teres (TERR-eez) Major		
Adducts and medially rotates humerus; extends shoulder joint		
O: from inferior angle to lateral border of scapula	I: medial aspect of proximal shaft of humerus	N: subscapular n.
Coracobrachialis (COR-uh-co-BRAY-kee-AL-iss)		
Adducts arm; flexes shoulder joint		
O: coracoid process	I: medial aspect of shaft of humerus	N: musculocutaneous n.
Rotator Cuff		
All rotator cuff muscles hold head of humerus in glenoid cavity and stabilize shoulder joint in addition to performing the functions below.		
Infraspinatus (IN-fra-spy-NAY-tus)		
Extends and laterally rotates humerus		
O: infraspinous fossa of scapula	I: greater tubercle of humerus	N: suprascapular n.
Supraspinatus (SOO-pra-spy-NAY-tus)		
Abducts humerus; resists downward displacement when carrying heavy weight		
O: supraspinous fossa of scapula	I: lesser tubercle of humerus	N: suprascapular n.
Subscapularis (SUB-SCAP-you-LERR-iss)		
Medially rotates humerus		
O: subscapular fossa of scapula	I: lesser tubercle of humerus	N: subscapular n.
Teres Minor		
Adducts and laterally rotates humerus		
O: lateral border of scapula	I: greater tubercle of humerus	N: axillary n.

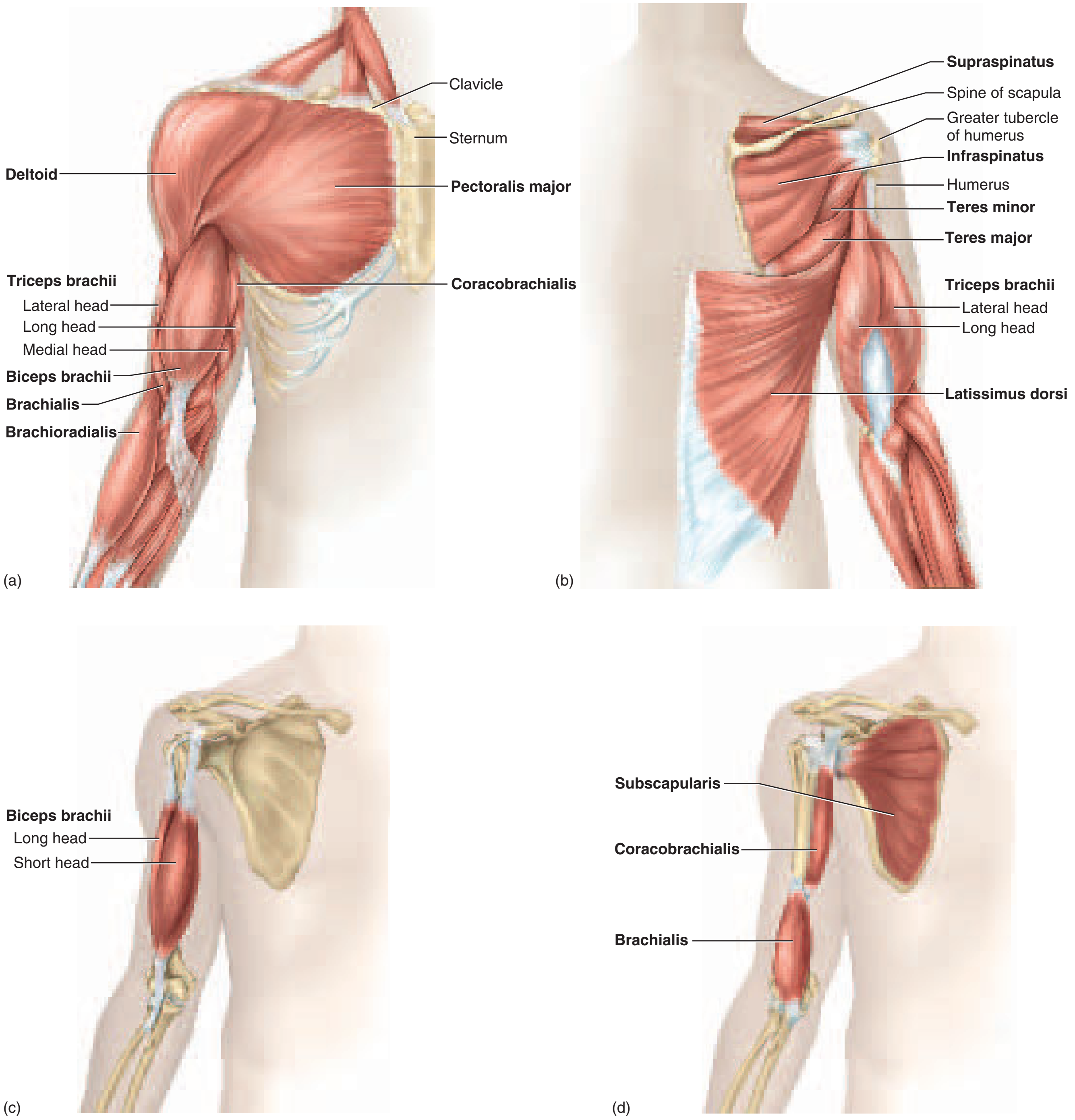
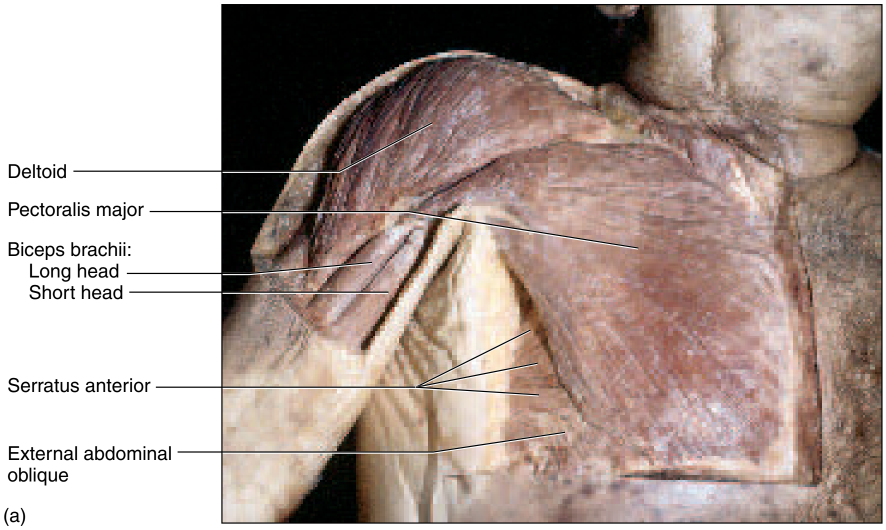

Clavicle
Sternum
Deltoid
Pectoralis major
Triceps brachii
Lateral head
Long head
Medial head
Coracobrachialis
Biceps brachii
Brachialis
Brachioradialis
(a)
Supraspinatus
Spine of scapula
Greater tubercle of humerus
Infraspinatus
Humerus
Teres minor
Teres major
Triceps brachii
Lateral head
Long head
Latissimus dorsi
(b)
Biceps brachii
Long head
Short head
(c)
Subscapularis
Coracobrachialis
Brachialis
(d)

Figure 10.22 Pectoral and Brachial Muscles. (*a*) Anterior view. (*b*) Posterior view. (*c*) The biceps brachii, the superficial flexor of the elbow. (*d*) The brachialis, the deep flexor of the elbow, and the coracobrachialis and subscapularis, which act on the humerus.


Deltoid
Pectoralis major
Biceps brachii:
Long head
Short head
Serratus anterior
External abdominal oblique
(a)

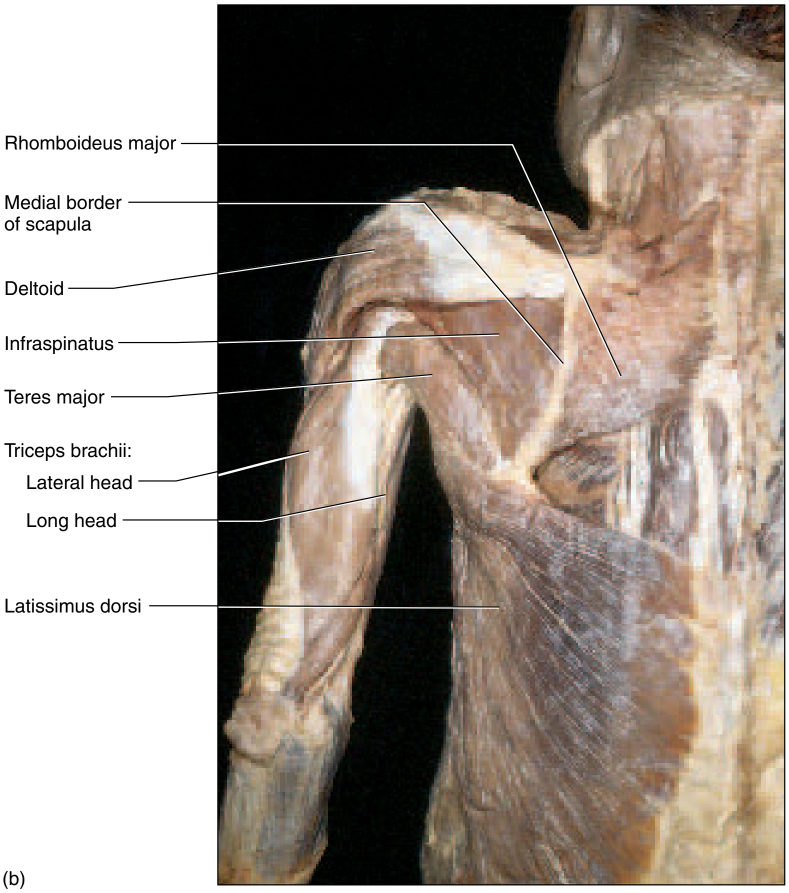

Rhomboideus major
Medial border of scapula
Deltoid
Infraspinatus
Teres major
Triceps brachii:
Lateral head
Long head
Latissimus dorsi
(b)

Figure 10.23 **Muscles of the Chest and Brachial Region of the Cadaver.** (*a*) Anterior view; (*b*) posterior view.
What muscles in these two figures would you remove to see more of the rotator cuff (SITS) muscles?

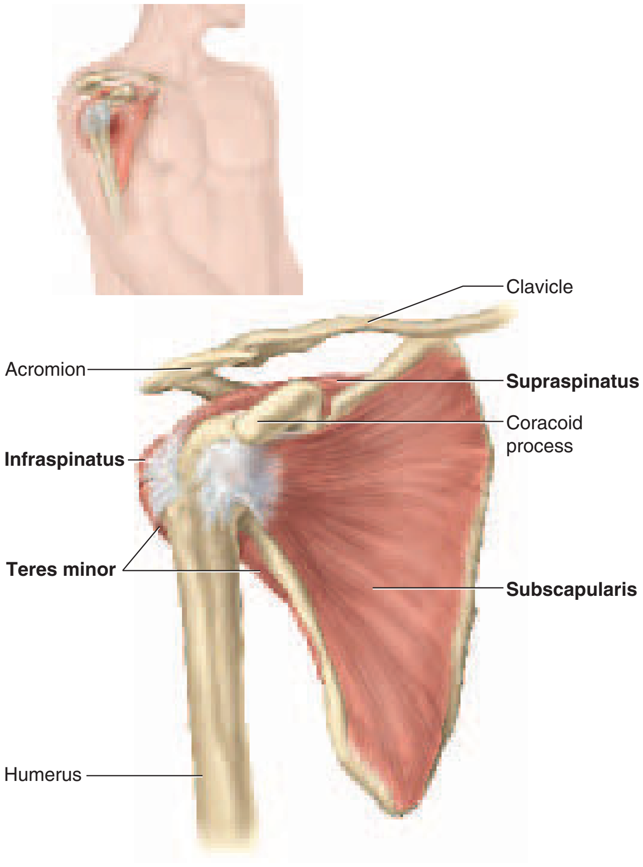


Figure 10.24 **The Rotator Cuff.** Anterolateral view of the right shoulder. The rotator cuff muscles are labeled in boldface.

Table 10.11 Actions of the Shoulder (Humeroscapular) Joint

Boldface indicates prime movers; others are synergists. Parentheses indicate only a slight effect.

Flexion	Extension
Anterior deltoid	**Posterior deltoid**
Pectoralis major	**Latissimus dorsi**
Coracobrachialis	Teres major
Biceps brachii	
Abduction	**Adduction**
Lateral deltoid	**Pectoralis major**
Supraspinatus	**Latissimus dorsi**
	Coracobrachialis
	Triceps brachii
	Teres major
	(Teres minor)
Medial Rotation	**Lateral Rotation**
Subscapularis	**Infraspinatus**
Teres major	**Teres minor**
Latissimus dorsi	Deltoid
Deltoid	
Pectoralis major	

The **anconeus**[46] is a weaker synergist of extension that crosses the posterior side of the elbow (see fig. 10.28*d, e*).

Pronation is achieved by two anterior muscles in the forearm—the **pronator teres** near the elbow and **pronator quadratus** near the wrist. Supination is achieved by the biceps brachii and the **supinator** of the posterior forearm (fig. 10.25).

Muscles Acting on the Wrist and Hand

The hand is acted upon by extrinsic muscles in the forearm and intrinsic muscles in the hand itself (table 10.14). The bellies of the extrinsic muscles form the fleshy roundness of the proximal forearm; their tendons extend into the wrist and hand. Their actions are mainly flexion and extension, but the wrist and fingers can be abducted and adducted, and the thumb and fingers can be opposed.

Table 10.12 Actions of the Forearm

Boldface indicates prime movers; others are synergists. Parentheses indicate only a slight effect.

Flexion	Extension
Biceps brachii	**Triceps brachii**
Brachialis	Anconeus
Brachioradialis	
Flexor carpi radialis	
(Pronator teres)	
Pronation	**Supination**
Pronator teres	**Supinator**
Pronator quadratus	Biceps brachii

---

[46] *ancon* = elbow

Table 10.13 Muscles Acting on the Forearm (see figs. 10.22 and 10.25)

O = origin, I = insertion, N = innervation (n. = nerve, nn. = nerves)

Muscles with Bellies in the Arm (Brachium)		
Biceps Brachii (BY-seps BRAY-kee-eye)		
Flexes elbow; abducts arm; supinates forearm; holds head of humerus in glenoid cavity		
O: *long head*—supraglenoid tubercle of scapula; *short head*—coracoid process of scapula	I: radial tuberosity	N: musculocutaneous n.
Brachialis (BRAY-kee-AL-iss)		
Flexes elbow		
O: anterior distal shaft of humerus	I: coronoid process of ulna, capsule of elbow joint	N: musculocutaneous n., radial n.
Triceps Brachii (TRI-seps BRAY-kee-eye)		
Extends elbow; long head adducts humerus		
O: *long head*—infraglenoid tubercle of scapula; *lateral head*—proximal posterior shaft of humerus; *medial head*—posterior shaft of humerus	I: olecranon of ulna	N: radial n.
Muscles with Bellies in the Forearm (Antebrachium)		
Brachioradialis (BRAY-kee-oh-RAY-dee-AL-iss)		
Flexes elbow		
O: lateral supracondylar ridge of humerus	I: styloid process of radius	N: radial n.
Anconeus (an-CO-nee-us)		
Extends elbow		
O: lateral epicondyle of humerus	I: olecranon and posterior aspect of ulna	N: radial n.
Pronator Teres (PRO-nay-tur TERR-eez)		
Pronates forearm		
O: medial epicondyle of humerus, coronoid process of ulna	I: lateral midshaft of radius	N: median n.
Pronator Quadratus (PRO-nay-tur quad-RAY-tus)		
Pronates forearm		
O: anterior distal shaft of ulna	I: anterior distal shaft of radius	N: median n.
Supinator (SOO-pih-NAY-tur)		
Supinates forearm		
O: lateral epicondyle of humerus, proximal shaft of ulna	I: proximal shaft of radius	N: radial n.

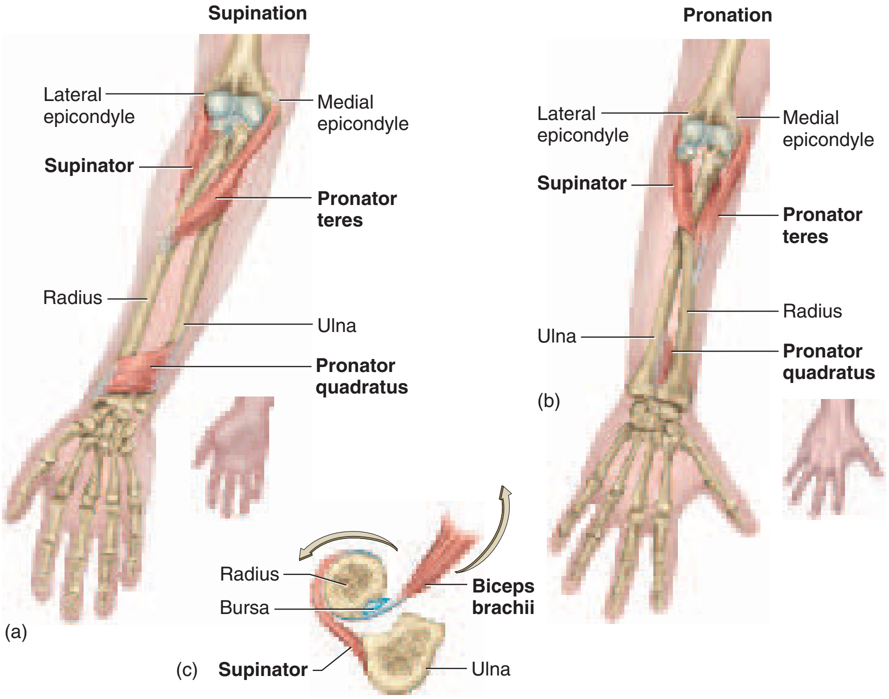

Supination
Lateral epicondyle
Medial epicondyle
Supinator
Pronator teres
Radius
Ulna
Pronator quadratus
(a)
Pronation
Lateral epicondyle
Medial epicondyle
Supinator
Pronator teres
Radius
Ulna
Pronator quadratus
(b)
Radius
Bursa
Biceps brachii
(c) Supinator
Ulna

Figure 10.25 **Actions of the Rotator Muscles on the Forearm.** (*a*) Supination; (*b*) pronation; (*c*) cross section just distal to the elbow, showing how the biceps brachii aids in supination.

What do the names of the pronator teres and pronator quadratus muscles indicate about their shapes?

Table 10.14 Muscles Acting on the Wrist and Hand (see figs. 10.27 and 10.28)

O = origin, I = insertion, N = innervation (n. = nerve, nn. = nerves)

Anterior Compartment—Superficial Layer		
Flexor Carpi Radialis (CAR-pie RAY-dee-AY-liss)		
Powerful wrist flexor; abducts hand; synergist in elbow flexion		
O: medial epicondyle of humerus	I: base of metacarpals II and III	N: median n.
Flexor Carpi Ulnaris (ul-NAY-riss)		
Flexes and adducts wrist; stabilizes wrist during extension of fingers		
O: medial epicondyle of humerus	I: pisiform, hamate, metacarpal V	N: ulnar n.
Flexor Digitorum Superficialis (DIDJ-ih-TOE-rum SOO-per-FISH-ee-AY-liss)		
Flexes fingers II–V at proximal interphalangeal joints; aids in flexion of wrist and metacarpophalangeal joints		
O: medial epicondyle of humerus, radius, coronoid process of ulna	I: four tendons leading to middle phalanges II–V	N: median n.
Palmaris (pall-MERR-iss) Longus		
Weakly flexes wrist; often absent		
O: medial epicondyle of humerus	I: palmar aponeurosis, flexor retinaculum	N: median n.

(continued)

Table 10.14 Muscles Acting on the Wrist and Hand (see figs. 10.27 and 10.28) *(continued)*

Anterior Compartment—Deep Layer		
Flexor Digitorum Profundus		
Flexes wrist and distal interphalangeal joints		
O: shaft of ulna, interosseous membrane	I: four tendons to distal phalanges II–V	N: median and ulnar nn.
Flexor Pollicis (PAHL-ih-sis) Longus		
Flexes interphalangeal joint of thumb; weakly flexes wrist		
O: radius, interosseous membrane	I: distal phalanx I	N: median n.
Posterior Compartment—Superficial Layer		
Extensor Carpi Radialis Longus		
Extends and abducts wrist		
O: lateral epicondyle of humerus	I: base of metacarpal II	N: radial n.
Extensor Carpi Radialis Brevis		
Extends and abducts wrist; fixes wrist during finger flexion		
O: lateral epicondyle of humerus	I: base of metacarpal III	N: radial n.
Extensor Carpi Ulnaris		
Extends and adducts wrist		
O: lateral epicondyle of humerus, posterior shaft of ulna	I: base of metacarpal V	N: radial n.
Extensor Digitorum (DIDJ-ih-TOE-rum)		
Extends fingers II–V at metacarpophalangeal joints		
O: lateral epicondyle of humerus	I: dorsal aspect of phalanges II–V	N: radial n.
Extensor Digiti Minimi (DIDJ-ih-ty MIN-in-my)		
Extends metacarpophalangeal joint of little finger; sometimes considered to be a detached portion of extensor digitorum		
O: lateral epicondyle of humerus	I: distal and middle phalanges V	N: radial n.
Posterior Compartment—Deep Layer		
Abductor Pollicis Longus		
Abducts and extends thumb; abducts wrist		
O: posterior aspect of radius and ulna, interosseous membrane	I: trapezium, base of metacarpal I	N: radial n.
Extensor Indicis (IN-dih-sis)		
Extends index finger at metacarpophalangeal joint		
O: shaft of ulna, interosseous membrane	I: middle and distal phalanges II	N: radial n.
Extensor Pollicis Longus		
Extends thumb at metacarpophalangeal joint		
O: shaft of ulna, interosseous membrane	I: distal phalanx I	N: radial n.
Extensor Pollicis Brevis		
Extends thumb at metacarpophalangeal joint		
O: shaft of radius, interosseous membrane	I: proximal phalanx I	N: radial n.

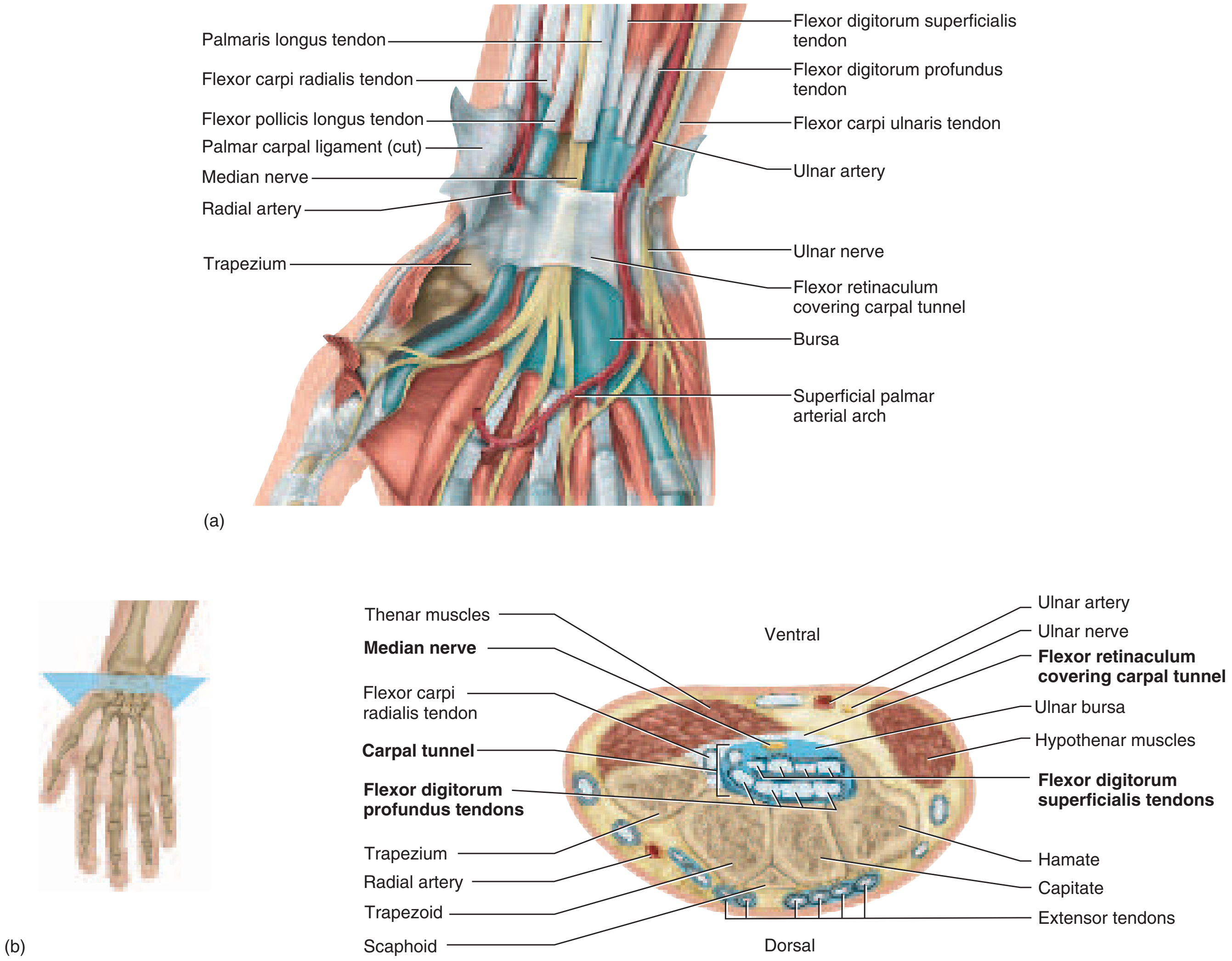

Palmaris longus tendon
Flexor carpi radialis tendon
Flexor pollicis longus tendon
Palmar carpal ligament (cut)
Median nerve
Radial artery
Trapezium
Flexor digitorum superficialis tendon
Flexor digitorum profundus tendon
Flexor carpi ulnaris tendon
Ulnar artery
Ulnar nerve
Flexor retinaculum covering carpal tunnel
Bursa
Superficial palmar arterial arch
(a)
Thenar muscles
Median nerve
Flexor carpi radialis tendon
Carpal tunnel
Flexor digitorum profundus tendons
Trapezium
Radial artery
Trapezoid
Scaphoid
Ventral
Dorsal
Ulnar artery
Ulnar nerve
Flexor retinaculum covering carpal tunnel
Ulnar bursa
Hypothenar muscles
Flexor digitorum superficialis tendons
Hamate
Capitate
Extensor tendons
(b)

Figure 10.26 **The Carpal Tunnel.** (*a*) Dissection of the wrist (anterior aspect) showing the tendons, nerve, and bursae that pass under the flexor retinaculum. (*b*) Cross section of the wrist, ventral (anterior side) up. Note how the flexor tendons and median nerve are confined in the tight space between the carpal bones and flexor retinaculum.

It may seem as if the tendons would stand up like taut bowstrings when these muscles contracted, but this is prevented by the fact that most of them pass under a **flexor retinaculum (transverse carpal ligament)** on the anterior side of the wrist and an **extensor retinaculum (dorsal carpal ligament)** on the posterior side (see fig. 10.29). The **carpal tunnel** is a tight space between the carpal bones and flexor retinaculum (fig. 10.26). The flexor tendons passing through the tunnel are enclosed in tendon sheaths that enable them to slide back and forth quite easily, although this region is very subject to injury from repetitive motion (see insight 10.4).

Insight 10.4 Clinical Application

Carpal Tunnel Syndrome

Prolonged, repetitive motions of the wrist and fingers can cause tissues in the carpal tunnel to become inflamed, swollen, or fibrotic. Since the carpal tunnel cannot expand, swelling puts pressure on the median nerve of the wrist, which passes through the carpal tunnel with the flexor tendons. This pressure causes tingling and muscular weakness in the palm and medial side of the hand and pain that may radiate to the arm and shoulder. This condition, called *carpal tunnel syndrome,* is common among keyboard operators, pianists, meat cutters, and others who spend long hours making repetitive wrist motions. Carpal tunnel syndrome is treated with aspirin and other anti-inflammatory drugs, immobilization of the wrist, and sometimes surgical removal of part or all of the flexor retinaculum to relieve pressure on the nerve.

Several of these muscles originate on the humerus; therefore, they cross the elbow joint and weakly contribute to flexion and extension of the elbow. This action is relatively negligible, however, and we focus on their action at the wrist and fingers. Although these muscles are numerous and complex, most of their names suggest their actions, and from their actions, their approximate locations in the forearm can generally be deduced.

The deep fasciae divide the muscles of the forearm into anterior and posterior compartments and each compartment into superficial and deep layers (fig. 10.27). The muscles are listed and classified this way in table 10.14. Most muscles of the anterior compartment are flexors of the wrist and fingers that arise from a common tendon on the humerus (fig. 10.28). At the distal end, the tendon of the **palmaris longus** passes over the flexor retinaculum while the other tendons pass beneath it. The two prominent tendons that you can palpate at the wrist belong to the palmaris longus on the medial side and the **flexor carpi radialis** on the lateral side. The latter is an important landmark for finding the radial artery, where the pulse is usually taken.

Muscles of the posterior compartment are mostly wrist and finger extensors that share a single proximal tendon arising from the humerus. One of the superficial muscles on this side, the **extensor digitorum,** has four distal tendons that can easily be seen and palpated on the back of the hand when the fingers are strongly hyperextended (fig. 10.28*d,* and see fig. B.8 in the atlas following this chapter). By strongly abducting and extending the thumb into a hitchhiker's position, you should also be able to see a deep dorsolateral pit at the base of the thumb, with a taut tendon on each side of it. This depression is called the *anatomical snuffbox* because it was once fashionable to place a pinch of snuff here and inhale it (see fig. B.8). It is bordered laterally by the tendons of the **abductor pollicis longus** and **extensor pollicis brevis** and medially by the tendon of the **extensor pollicis longus.**

Other muscles of the forearm were considered earlier because they act on the radius and ulna rather than on the hand. These are the pronator quadratus, pronator teres, supinator, anconeus, and brachioradialis.

Table 10.15 summarizes the muscles responsible for the major movements of the wrist and hand.

Think About It

Why are the prime movers of finger extension and flexion located in the forearm rather than in the hand, closer to the fingers?

The intrinsic muscles of the hand assist the flexors and extensors of the forearm and make finger movements more precise (fig. 10.29). You will note in table 10.16 that they are divided into three groups. The **thenar group** forms the thick fleshy mass *(thenar eminence)* at the base of the thumb, except for the *adductor pollicis,* which forms the web between the thumb and palm; the **hypothenar group** forms the fleshy mass *(hypothenar eminence)* at the base of the little finger; and the **midpalmar group** occupies the space between these. The midpalmar group consists of 11 muscles divided into three subgroups:

1. **Dorsal interosseous[47] muscles**—four bipennate muscles attached to both sides of the metacarpal bones, serving to abduct (spread) the fingers.
2. **Palmar interosseous muscles**—three unipennate muscles that arise from metacarpals II, IV, and V and adduct the fingers (draw them together).
3. **Lumbrical[48] muscles**—four wormlike muscles that flex the metacarpophalangeal joints (proximal knuckles) but extend the interphalangeal joints (distal knuckles).

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

17. Name a muscle that inserts on the scapula and plays a significant role in each of the following actions: (a) pushing a stalled car, (b) paddling a canoe, (c) squaring the shoulders in military attention, (d) lifting the shoulder to carry a heavy box on it, and (e) lowering the shoulder to lift a suitcase.
18. Describe three contrasting actions of the deltoid muscle.
19. Name the four rotator cuff muscles and identify the scapular surfaces against which they lie.
20. Name the prime movers of elbow flexion and extension.
21. Identify three functions of the biceps brachii.
22. Name three extrinsic muscles and two intrinsic muscles that flex the phalanges.

Insight 10.5 Clinical Application

Intramuscular Injections

Muscles with thick bellies are commonly used for intramuscular (I.M.) drug injections. Since drugs injected into these muscles are absorbed into the bloodstream gradually, it is safe to administer relatively large doses (up to 5 mL) that could be dangerous or even fatal if injected directly into the bloodstream. I.M. injections also cause less tissue irritation than subcutaneous injections.

Knowledge of subsurface anatomy is necessary to avoid damaging nerves or accidentally injecting a drug into a blood vessel. Anatomical

---

[47] *inter* = between + *osse* = bone
[48] *lumbric* = earthworm

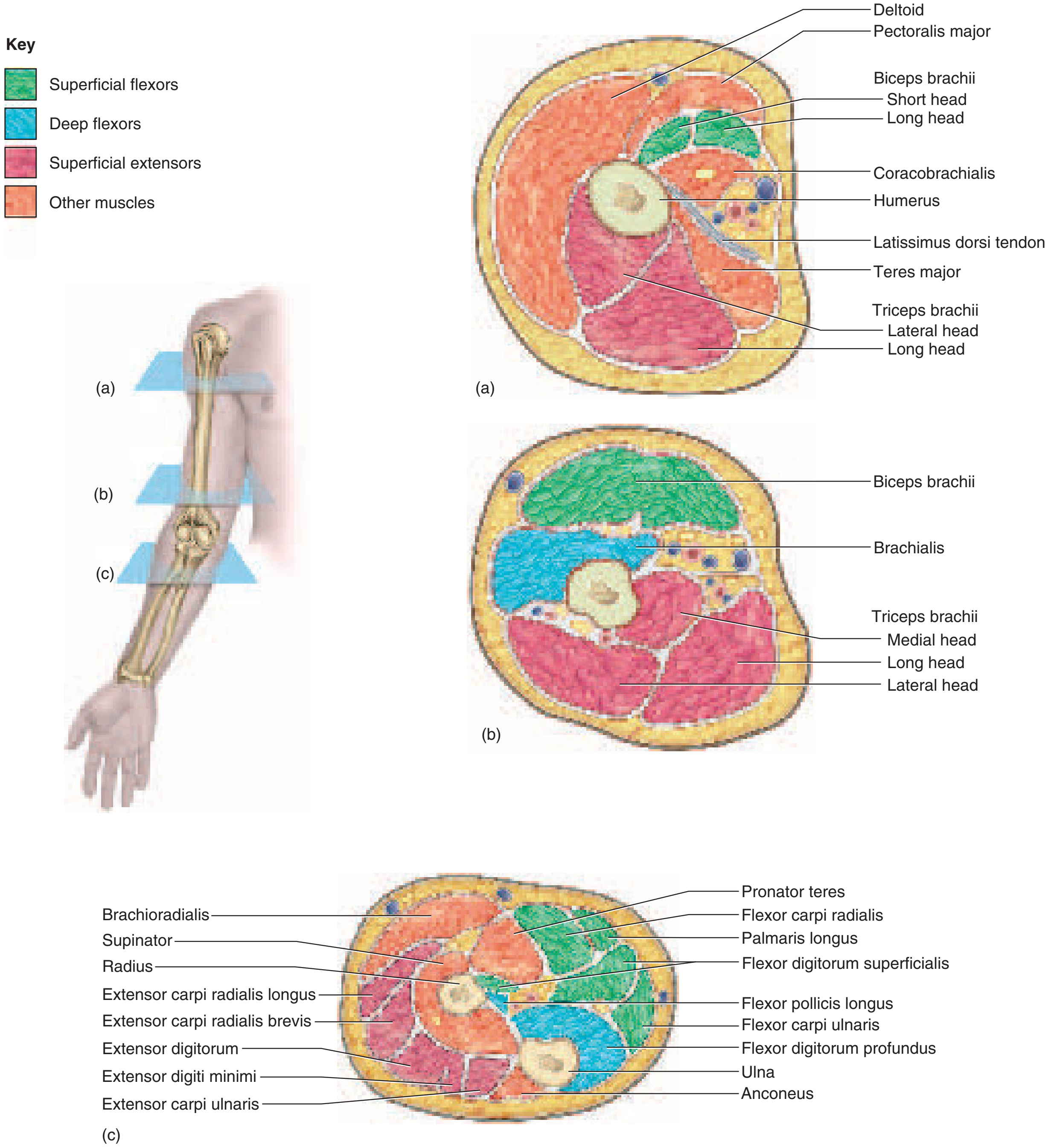

Key
🟩 Superficial flexors
🟦 Deep flexors
🟥 Superficial extensors
🟧 Other muscles
(a)
(b)
(c)
Deltoid
Pectoralis major
Biceps brachii
Short head
Long head
Coracobrachialis
Humerus
Latissimus dorsi tendon
Teres major
Triceps brachii
Lateral head
Long head
(a)
Biceps brachii
Brachialis
Triceps brachii
Medial head
Long head
Lateral head
(b)
Brachioradialis
Supinator
Radius
Extensor carpi radialis longus
Extensor carpi radialis brevis
Extensor digitorum
Extensor digiti minimi
Extensor carpi ulnaris
Pronator teres
Flexor carpi radialis
Palmaris longus
Flexor digitorum superficialis
Flexor pollicis longus
Flexor carpi ulnaris
Flexor digitorum profundus
Ulna
Anconeus
(c)

Figure 10.27 Serial Cross Sections Through the Upper Limb. Each section is taken at the correspondingly lettered level in the figure at the *left* and is pictured with the posterior muscle compartment facing the bottom of the page, as if you were viewing the right arm of a person facing you with the arm extended and the palm up.

Why are the extensor pollicis longus and extensor indicis not seen in figure *c*?

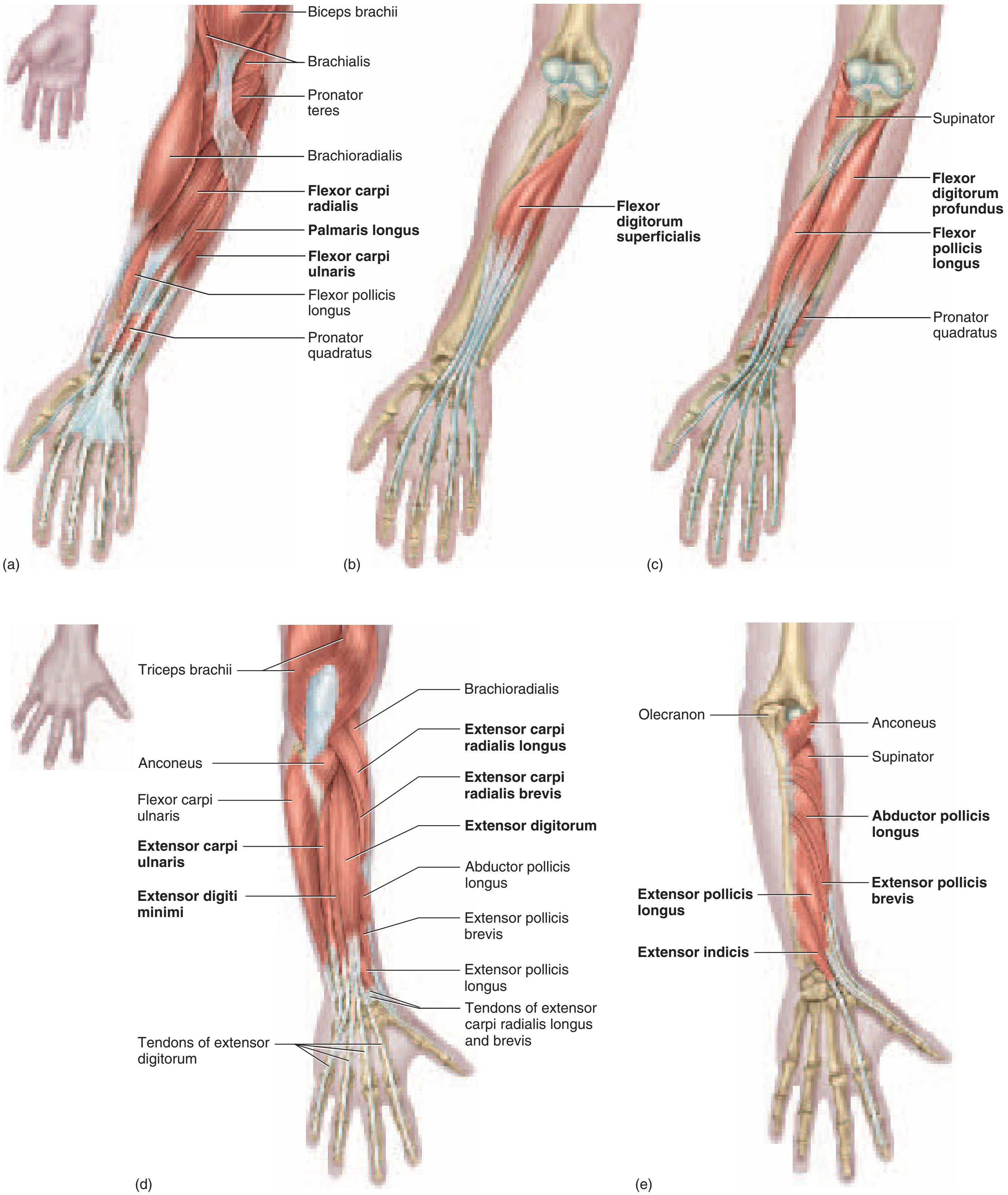

Biceps brachii
Brachialis
Pronator teres
Brachioradialis
Flexor carpi radialis
Palmaris longus
Flexor carpi ulnaris
Flexor pollicis longus
Pronator quadratus
(a)
Flexor digitorum superficialis
(b)
Supinator
Flexor digitorum profundus
Flexor pollicis longus
Pronator quadratus
(c)
Triceps brachii
Anconeus
Flexor carpi ulnaris
Extensor carpi ulnaris
Extensor digiti minimi
Tendons of extensor digitorum
Brachioradialis
Extensor carpi radialis longus
Extensor carpi radialis brevis
Extensor digitorum
Abductor pollicis longus
Extensor pollicis brevis
Extensor pollicis longus
Tendons of extensor carpi radialis longus and brevis
(d)
Olecranon
Extensor pollicis longus
Extensor indicis
Anconeus
Supinator
Abductor pollicis longus
Extensor pollicis brevis
(e)

Figure 10.28 **Muscles of the Forearm.** Figures *a*–*c* are anterior views and figures *d*–*e* are posterior. Boldface labels indicate: (*a*) superficial flexors; (*b*) the flexor digitorum superficialis, deep to the muscles in *a* but also classified as a superficial flexor; (*c*) deep flexors; (*d*) superficial extensors; and (*e*) deep extensors.

Table 10.15 Actions of the Wrist and Hand

Boldface indicates prime movers; others are synergists. Parentheses indicate only a slight effect.

Wrist Flexion	Wrist Extension
Flexor carpi radialis	**Extensor digitorum**
Flexor carpi ulnaris	Extensor carpi radialis longus
Flexor digitorum superficialis	Extensor carpi radialis brevis
(Palmaris longus)	Extensor carpi ulnaris
(Flexor pollicis longus)	

Wrist Abduction	Wrist Adduction
Flexor carpi radialis	Flexor carpi ulnaris
Extensor carpi radialis longus	Extensor carpi ulnaris
Extensor carpi radialis brevis	
Abductor pollicis longus	

Finger Flexion	Finger Extension	Thumb Opposition
Flexor digitorum superficialis	Extensor pollicis longus	Opponens pollicis Opponens digiti minimi
Flexor digitorum profundus	Extensor pollicis brevis	
Flexor pollicis longus	Extensor digitorum	
	Extensor indicis	

knowledge also enables a clinician to position a patient so that the muscle is relaxed, making the injection less painful.

Amounts up to 2 mL are commonly injected into the deltoid muscle about two finger widths below the acromion. Amounts over 2 mL are commonly injected into the gluteus medius, in the superolateral quadrant of the gluteal area, at a safe distance from the sciatic nerve and major gluteal blood vessels. Injections are often given to infants and young children in the vastus lateralis of the thigh, because their deltoid and gluteal muscles are not well developed.

Muscles Acting on the Hip and Lower Limb

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- name and locate the muscles that act on the hip, knee, ankle, and toe joints;
- relate the actions of these muscles to the joint movements described in chapter 9; and
- describe the origin, insertion, and innervation of each muscle.

The largest and strongest muscles in the body are found in the lower limb. Unlike those of the upper limb, they are adapted less for precision than for the strength needed to stand, maintain balance, walk, and run. Several of them cross and act upon two or more joints, such as the hip and knee.

To avoid confusion in this discussion, remember that in the anatomical sense the word *leg* refers only to that part of the limb between the knee and ankle. The term *foot* includes the tarsal region (ankle), metatarsal region, and toes.

Muscles Acting on the Hip and Femur

Most muscles that act on the femur (table 10.17) originate on the os coxae. The two principal anterior muscles are the **iliacus,** which fills most of the broad iliac fossa of the pelvis, and the **psoas major,** a thick, rounded muscle that originates mainly on the lumbar vertebrae. Collectively, they are called the **iliopsoas** (ILL-ee-oh-SO-us) (fig. 10.30). They converge on a single tendon that inserts on the femur and flexes the hip joint—for example, when you bend forward at the waist, swing the leg forward in walking, or raise the thigh in a marching stance.

On the lateral and posterior sides of the hip are the **tensor fasciae latae** and three gluteal muscles—the **gluteus maximus, gluteus medius,** and **gluteus minimus** (figs. 10.31 and 10.34). The gluteus maximus is the largest muscle of this group and forms most of the mass of the buttocks. It is an extensor of the hip joint that produces the backswing of the leg in walking and provides most of the lift when you climb stairs. It generates the most force when the thigh is flexed at a 45° angle to the trunk. This is the advantage in starting a foot race from a crouched position.

Think About It

What muscles produce the downstroke in pedaling a bicycle? In view of this, what is one reason that racing bicycles are designed to make the rider lean forward?

The deep **lateral rotators** of the pelvic region (table 10.17; fig. 10.31) rotate the femur laterally, as when you cross your legs to rest an ankle on your knee. Thus, they oppose medial rotation by the gluteus medius and minimus. Most of them also abduct or adduct the femur. The abductors are important in walking because, when we lift one foot from the ground, they shift the body weight to the other leg and prevent us from falling over.

The **fascia lata**[49] is a fibrous sheath that encircles the thigh and tightly binds its muscles. On the lateral surface,

---

[49] *fasc* = band + *lata* = broad

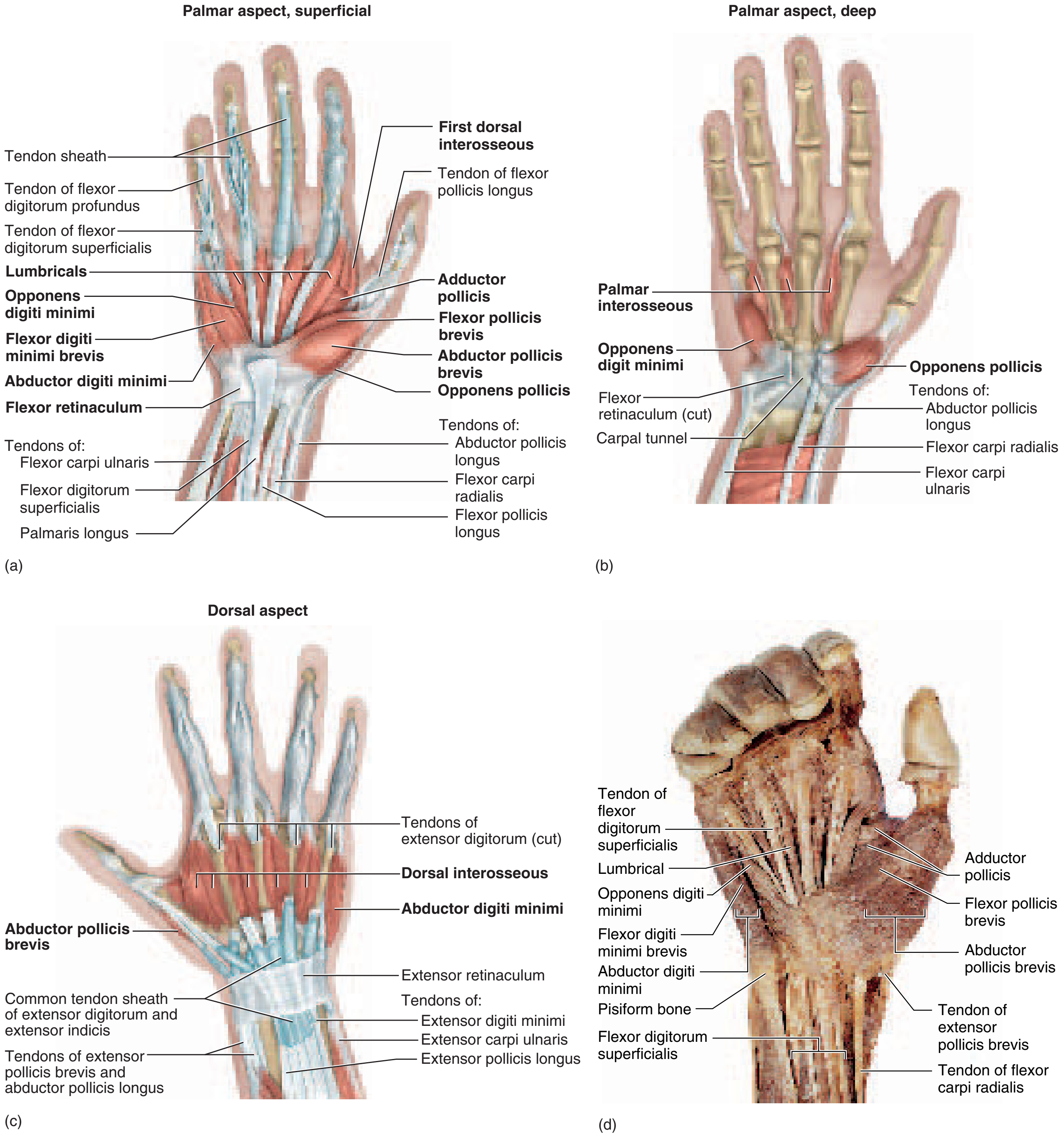

Palmar aspect, superficial
Tendon sheath
Tendon of flexor digitorum profundus
Tendon of flexor digitorum superficialis
Lumbricals
Opponens digiti minimi
Flexor digiti minimi brevis
Abductor digiti minimi
Flexor retinaculum
Tendons of:
Flexor carpi ulnaris
Flexor digitorum superficialis
Palmaris longus
First dorsal interosseous
Tendon of flexor pollicis longus
Adductor pollicis
Flexor pollicis brevis
Abductor pollicis brevis
Opponens pollicis
Tendons of:
Abductor pollicis longus
Flexor carpi radialis
Flexor pollicis longus
(a)
Palmar aspect, deep
Palmar interosseous
Opponens digit minimi
Flexor retinaculum (cut)
Carpal tunnel
Opponens pollicis
Tendons of:
Abductor pollicis longus
Flexor carpi radialis
Flexor carpi ulnaris
(b)
Dorsal aspect
Tendons of extensor digitorum (cut)
Dorsal interosseous
Abductor digiti minimi
Abductor pollicis brevis
Extensor retinaculum
Common tendon sheath of extensor digitorum and extensor indicis
Tendons of extensor pollicis brevis and abductor pollicis longus
Tendons of:
Extensor digiti minimi
Extensor carpi ulnaris
Extensor pollicis longus
(c)
Tendon of flexor digitorum superficialis
Lumbrical
Opponens digiti minimi
Flexor digiti minimi brevis
Abductor digiti minimi
Pisiform bone
Flexor digitorum superficialis
Adductor pollicis
Flexor pollicis brevis
Abductor pollicis brevis
Tendon of extensor pollicis brevis
Tendon of flexor carpi radialis
(d)

Figure 10.29 Intrinsic Muscles of the Hand. Boldface labels indicate: (*a*) superficial muscles, anterior (palmar) view; (*b*) deep muscles, anterior view; (*c*) superficial muscles, posterior (dorsal) view; (*d*) anterior (palmar) view of cadaver hand.

Table 10.16 Intrinsic Muscles of the Hand (see fig. 10.29)

O = origin, I = insertion, N = innervation (n. = nerve, nn. = nerves)

Thenar Group		
Abductor Pollicis (PAHL-ih-sis) Brevis		
Abducts thumb		
O: scaphoid, trapezium, flexor retinaculum	I: lateral aspect of proximal phalanx I	N: median n.
Adductor Pollicis		
Adducts thumb and opposes it to the fingers		
O: trapezium, trapezoid, capitate, metacarpals II–IV	I: medial aspect of proximal phalanx I	N: ulnar n.
Flexor Pollicis Brevis		
Flexes thumb at metacarpophalangeal joint		
O: trapezium, flexor retinaculum	I: proximal phalanx I	N: median and ulnar nn.
Opponens (op-OH-nens) Pollicis		
Opposes thumb to fingers		
O: trapezium, flexor retinaculum	I: metacarpal I	N: median n.
Hypothenar Group		
Abductor Digiti Minimi		
Abducts little finger		
O: pisiform, tendon of flexor carpi ulnaris	I: medial aspect of proximal phalanx V	N: ulnar n.
Flexor Digiti Minimi Brevis		
Flexes little finger at metacarpophalangeal joint		
O: hamulus of hamate, flexor retinaculum	I: medial aspect of proximal phalanx V	N: ulnar n.
Opponens Digiti Minimi		
Opposes little finger to thumb; deepens pit of palm		
O: hamulus of hamate, flexor retinaculum	I: medial aspect of metacarpal V	N: ulnar n.
Midpalmar Group		
Dorsal Interosseous (IN-tur-OSS-ee-us) Muscles (four muscles)		
Abduct digits II–IV		
O: two heads on facing sides of adjacent metacarpals	I: proximal phalanges II–IV	N: ulnar n.
Palmar Interosseous Muscles (three muscles)		
Adduct digits II, IV, and V		
O: metacarpals II, IV, and V	I: proximal phalanges II, IV, and V	N: ulnar n.
Lumbricals (four muscles)		
Flex metacarpophalangeal joints; extend interphalangeal joints		
O: tendons of flexor digitorum profundus	I: proximal phalanges II–V	N: median and ulnar nn.

Table 10.17 Muscles Acting on the Hip and Femur (see figs. 10.30–10.34)

O = origin, I = insertion, N = innervation (n. = nerve, nn. = nerves)

Anterior Muscles of the Hip (Iliopsoas)		
Iliacus (ih-LY-uh-cus)		
Flexes hip joint; medially rotates femur		
O: iliac fossa	I: lesser trochanter of femur, capsule of coxal joint	N: femoral n.
Psoas (SO-ass) Major		
Flexes hip joint; medially rotates femur		
O: vertebral bodies T12–L5	I: lesser trochanter of femur	N: lumbar plexus
Lateral and Posterior Muscles of the Hip		
Tensor Fasciae Latae (TEN-sor FASH-ee-ee LAY-tee)		
Flexes hip joint; abducts and medially rotates femur, tenses fascia lata and braces knee when opposite foot is lifted from ground		
O: iliac crest near anterior superior spine	I: lateral condyle of tibia	N: superior gluteal n.
Gluteus Maximus		
Extends hip joint; abducts and laterally rotates femur; important in the backswing of the stride		
O: ilium and sacrum	I: gluteal tuberosity of femur, fascia lata	N: inferior gluteal n.
Gluteus Medius and Gluteus Minimus		
Abduct and medially rotate femur; maintain balance by shifting body weight during walking		
O: ilium	I: greater trochanter of femur	N: superior gluteal n.
Lateral Rotators		
Gemellus (jeh-MEL-us) Superior and Gemellus Inferior		
Laterally rotate femur		
O: body of ischium	I: obturator internus tendon	N: sacral plexus
Obturator (OB-too-RAY-tur) Externus		
Laterally rotates femur		
O: anterior margin of obturator foramen	I: greater trochanter of femur	N: obturator n.
Obturator Internus		
Abducts and laterally rotates femur		
O: posterior margin of obturator foramen	I: greater trochanter of femur	N: sacral plexus
Piriformis (PIR-ih-FOR-miss)		
Abducts and laterally rotates femur		
O: anterolateral aspect of sacroiliac region	I: greater trochanter of femur	N: ventral rami of S1–S2
Quadratus Femoris (quad-RAY-tus FEM-oh-riss)		
Adducts and laterally rotates femur		
O: ischial tuberosity	I: intertrochanteric ridge of femur	N: sacral plexus
Medial (Adductor) Compartment of the Thigh		
Adductor Longus and Adductor Brevis		
Adduct and laterally rotate femur; flex hip joint		
O: pubis	I: posterior shaft of femur	N: obturator n.

(continued)

Table 10.17 Muscles Acting on the Hip and Femur (see figs. 10.30–10.34) *(continued)*

Adductor Magnus		
Anterior part adducts and laterally rotates femur and flexes hip joint; posterior part extends hip joint		
O: ischium	I: posterior shaft of femur	N: obturator and tibial nn.
Gracilis (GRASS-ih-lis)		
Adducts femur; flexes knee; medially rotates tibia		
O: pubis	I: medial aspect of proximal tibia	N: obturator n.
Pectineus (pec-TIN-ee-us)		
Adducts and laterally rotates femur; flexes hip		
O: pubis	I: posterior aspect of proximal femur	N: femoral n.

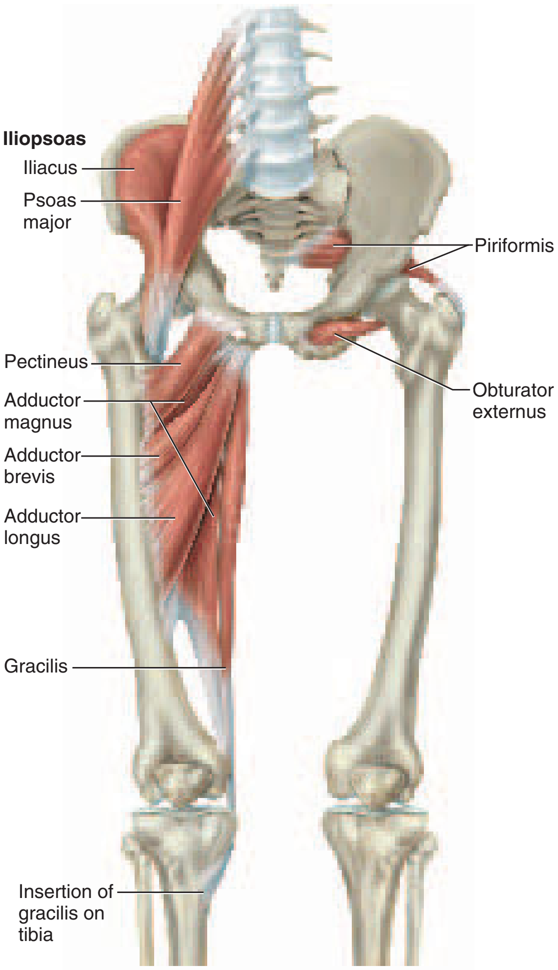


Figure 10.30 **Muscles Acting on the Hip and Femur.** Anterior view.

it combines with the tendons of the gluteus maximus and tensor fasciae latae to form the **iliotibial band,** which extends from the iliac crest to the lateral condyle of the tibia (fig. 10.32). The tensor fasciae latae tautens the iliotibial band and braces the knee, especially when we raise the opposite foot.

The fascia lata divides the thigh muscles into three compartments, each with its own nerve and blood supply: the *anterior (extensor) compartment, medial (adductor) compartment,* and *posterior (flexor) compartment.* Muscles of the anterior compartment function mainly as extensors of the knee, those of the medial compartment as adductors of the femur, and those of the posterior compartment as extensors of the hip and flexors of the knee.

In the medial compartment are five muscles that act on the hip joint—the **adductor longus, adductor brevis, adductor magnus, gracilis,**[50] and **pectineus**[51] (see fig. 10.30). All of them adduct the thigh, but some cross both the hip and knee joints and have additional actions noted in table 10.17.

Muscles Acting on the Knee

The following muscles form most of the mass of the thigh and produce their most obvious actions on the knee joint. Some of them, however, cross both the hip and knee joints and produce actions at both, moving the femur, tibia, and fibula (table 10.18).

The anterior compartment of the thigh contains the large **quadriceps femoris** muscle, the prime mover of knee extension and the most powerful muscle of the body (figs. 10.32 and 10.33). As the name implies, it has four heads—the **rectus femoris, vastus lateralis, vastus medialis,** and **vastus intermedius.** All four converge on a

---

[50] *gracil* = slender
[51] *pectin* = comb

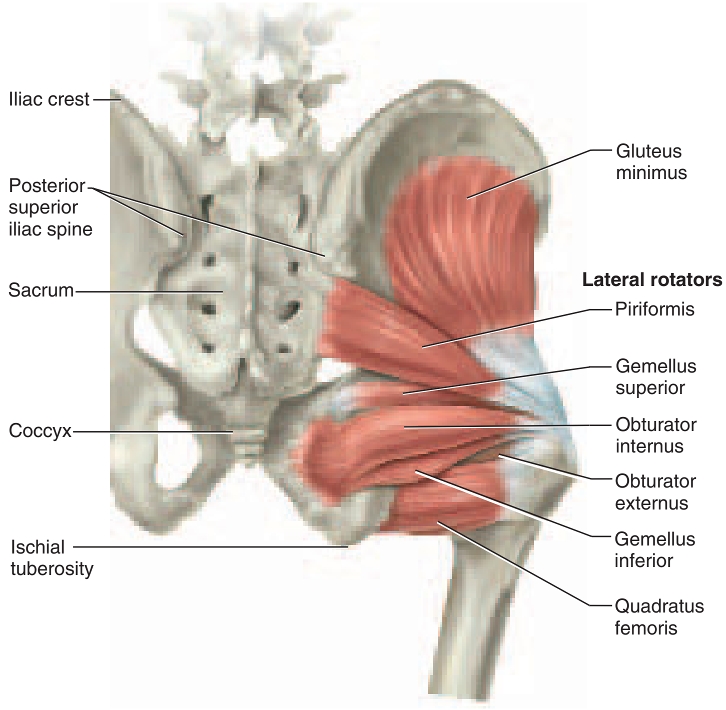


Figure 10.31 **Deep Gluteal Muscles.** For the superficial gluteal muscles, see figure 10.34.

single **quadriceps (patellar) tendon,** which extends to the patella, then continues as the **patellar ligament** and inserts on the tibial tuberosity. (Remember that a tendon usually extends from muscle to bone and a ligament from bone to bone.) The patellar ligament is struck with a rubber mallet to test the knee-jerk reflex. The quadriceps extends the knee when you stand up, take a step, or kick a ball. It is very important in running because, together with the iliopsoas, it flexes the hip in each airborne phase of the leg's cycle of motion. The rectus femoris also flexes the hip in such actions as high kicks or simply in drawing the leg forward during a stride.

Crossing the quadriceps from the lateral side of the hip to the medial side of the knee is the narrow, straplike **sartorius,**[52] the longest muscle of the body. It flexes the hip and knee joints and laterally rotates the thigh, as in crossing the legs. It is colloquially called the "tailor's muscle" after the cross-legged stance of a tailor supporting his work on the raised knee.

The posterior compartment contains the **biceps femoris, semimembranosus,** and **semitendinosus** (fig. 10.34). These muscles are colloquially known as the "hamstrings" because their tendons at the knee of a hog are commonly used to hang a ham for curing. They flex the knee and, aided by the gluteus maximus, they extend the hip during walking and running. The pit at the rear of the knee, called the *popliteal fossa,* is bordered by the biceps tendon on the lateral side and the tendons of the semimembranosus and semitendinosus on the medial side. When wolves attack large prey, they often attempt to sever the hamstring tendons, because this renders the prey helpless. Hamstring injuries are common among sprinters, soccer players, and other athletes who rely on quick acceleration.

Muscles Acting on the Foot

The fleshy mass of the leg proper (below the knee) is formed by a group of **crural muscles,** which act on the foot (fig. 10.35; table 10.19). These muscles are tightly bound together by deep fasciae, which compress them and aid in the return of blood from the legs. The fasciae separate the crural muscles into anterior, lateral, and posterior compartments, each with its own nerve and blood supply.

Muscles of the anterior compartment dorsiflex the ankle and prevent the toes from scuffing the ground during walking. These are the **extensor digitorum longus** (extensor of toes II–V), **extensor hallucis**[53] **longus** (exten-

---

[52] *sartor* = tailor

[53] *halluc* = great toe

Table 10.18 Muscles Acting on the Knee (see figs. 10.32 and 10.34)

O = origin, I = insertion, N = innervation (n. = nerve)		
Anterior (Extensor) Compartment of Thigh		
Quadriceps Femoris (QUAD-rih-seps FEM-oh-riss)		
Extends knee; rectus femoris also flexes hip		
O: *rectus femoris*—anterior inferior spine of ilium; *vastus lateralis*—posterolateral shaft of femur; *vastus medialis*—linea aspera of femur; *vastus intermedius*—anterior shaft of femur	I: tibial tuberosity	N: femoral n.
Sartorius		
Flexes hip and knee; rotates femur medially; rotates tibia laterally; used in crossing legs		
O: anterior superior spine of ilium	I: medial aspect of tibial tuberosity	N: femoral n.
Posterior (Flexor) Compartment of Thigh (Hamstring Group)		
Biceps Femoris		
Flexes knee; extends hip; laterally rotates leg		
O: *long head*—ischial tuberosity; *short head*—posterior midshaft of femur	I: head of fibula	N: *long head*—tibial n.; *short head*—common peroneal n.
Semimembranosus (SEM-ee-MEM-bran-OH-sis)		
Flexes knee; extends hip; medially rotates tibia; tenses joint capsule of knee		
O: ischial tuberosity	I: medial condyle of tibia, collateral ligament of knee	N: tibial n.
Semitendinosus		
Flexes knee; extends hip; medially rotates tibia		
O: ischial tuberosity	I: near tibial tuberosity	N: tibial n.
Posterior Compartment of Leg		
Popliteus (pop-LIT-ee-us)		
Unlocks knee to allow flexion; flexes knee; medially rotates tibia		
O: lateral condyle of femur	I: posterior proximal tibia	N: tibial n.

sor of the great toe), **fibularis (peroneus[54]) tertius,** and **tibialis anterior.** Their tendons are held tightly against the ankle and kept from bowing by two **extensor retinacula** similar to the one at the wrist (fig. 10.36).

The posterior compartment has superficial and deep muscle groups. The three muscles of the superficial group are plantar flexors—the **gastrocnemius,**[55] **soleus,**[56] and **plantaris**[57] (fig. 10.37). The first two of these, collectively known as the **triceps surae,**[58] insert on the calcaneus by way of the **calcaneal (Achilles) tendon.** This is the strongest tendon of the body but is nevertheless a common site of sports injuries resulting from sudden stress. The plantaris inserts medially on the calcaneus by a tendon of its own.

There are four muscles in the deep group (fig. 10.38). The **flexor digitorum longus, flexor hallucis longus,** and **tibialis posterior** are plantar flexors. The **popliteus** unlocks the knee joint so that it can be flexed and functions in flexion and medial rotation at the knee.

The lateral (peroneal) compartment includes the **fibularis (peroneus) brevis** and **fibularis (peroneus) longus** (figs. 10.37*b*, 10.38*a*, and 10.39*b*). They plantar flex and evert the foot. Plantar flexion is important not only in standing on tiptoes but in providing lift and forward thrust each time you take a step.

---

[54] *peroneo* = fibula
[55] *gastro* = belly + *cnem* = leg
[56] named for its resemblance to a flatfish, the sole
[57] *planta* = sole of foot
[58] *sura* = calf of leg

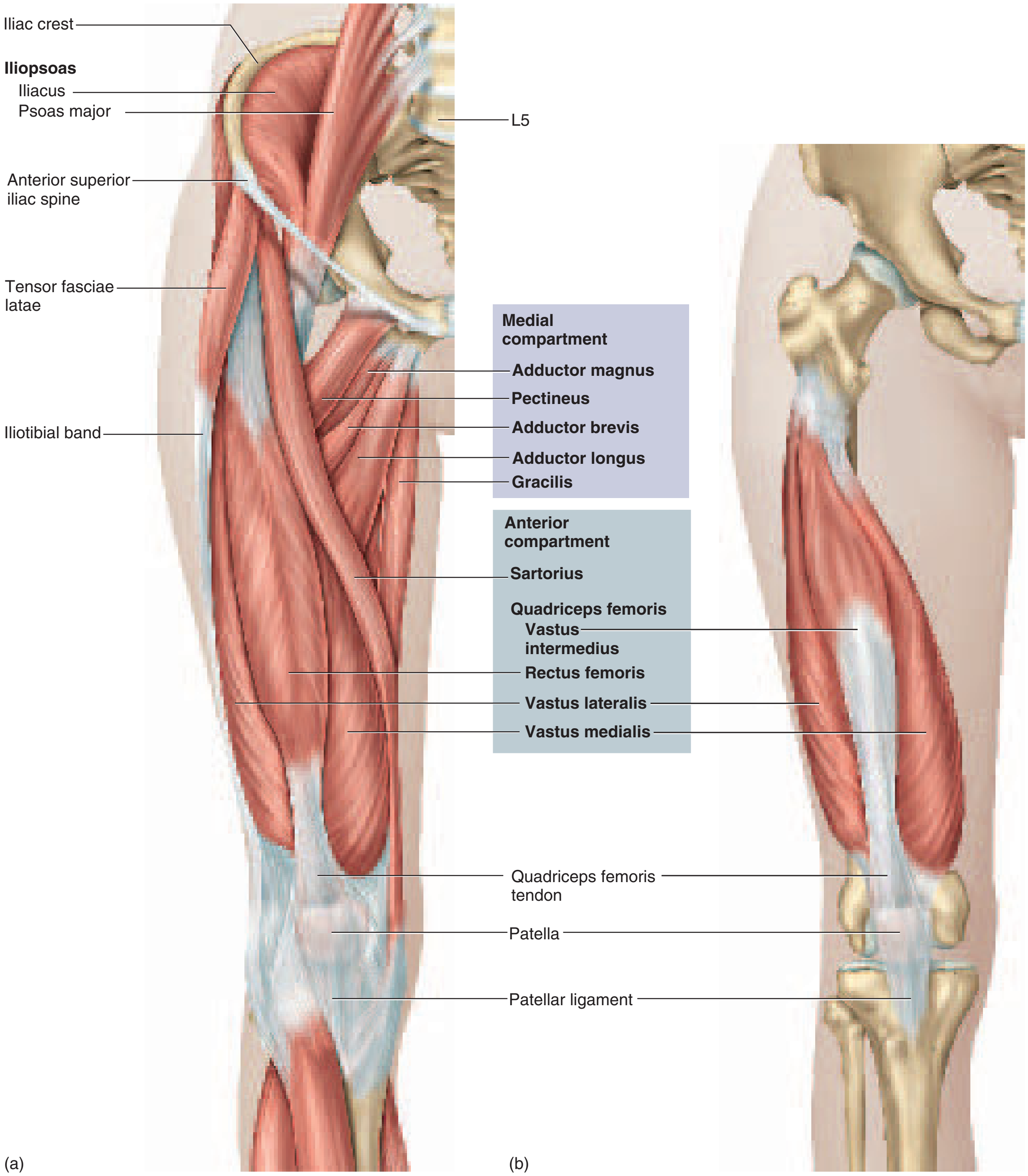

Iliac crest
Iliopsoas
Iliacus
Psoas major
L5
Anterior superior iliac spine
Tensor fasciae latae
Iliotibial band
Medial compartment
Adductor magnus
Pectineus
Adductor brevis
Adductor longus
Gracilis
Anterior compartment
Sartorius
Quadriceps femoris
Vastus intermedius
Rectus femoris
Vastus lateralis
Vastus medialis
Quadriceps femoris tendon
Patella
Patellar ligament
(a)
(b)

Figure 10.32 **Muscles of the Thigh.** Anterior view. (*a*) Superficial muscles; (*b*) rectus femoris and other muscles removed to expose the other three heads of the quadriceps femoris.

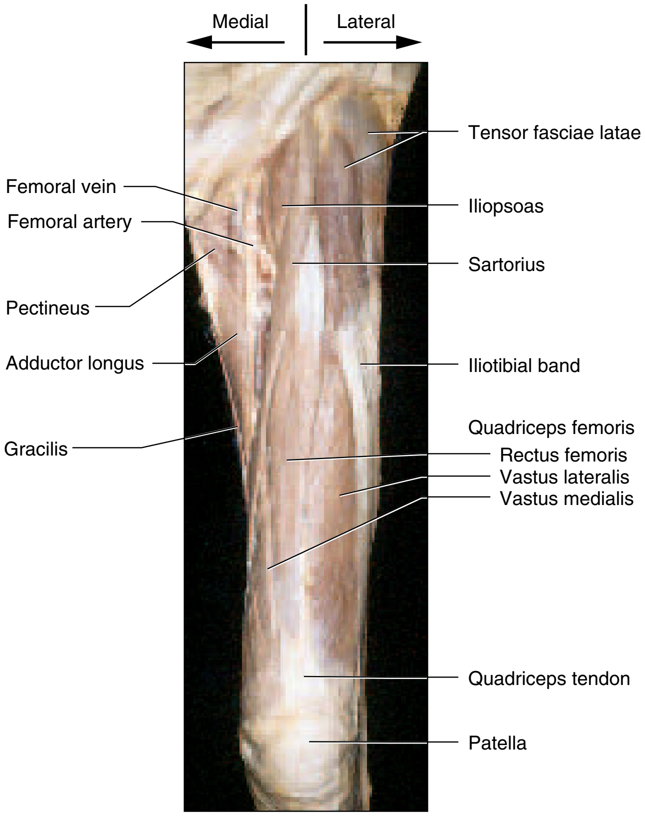

Medial
Lateral
Tensor fasciae latae
Femoral vein
Femoral artery
Iliopsoas
Sartorius
Pectineus
Adductor longus
Iliotibial band
Quadriceps femoris
Gracilis
Rectus femoris
Vastus lateralis
Vastus medialis
Quadriceps tendon
Patella

Figure 10.33 **Superficial Anterior Muscles of the Thigh of the Cadaver.**

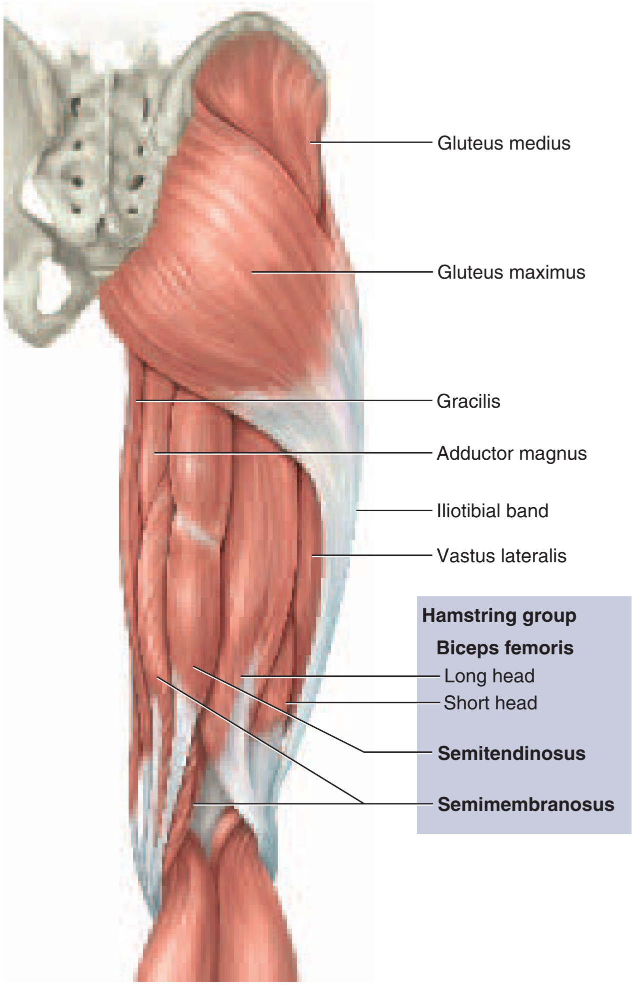

Gluteus medius
Gluteus maximus
Gracilis
Adductor magnus
Iliotibial band
Vastus lateralis
Hamstring group
Biceps femoris
Long head
Short head
Semitendinosus
Semimembranosus

Figure 10.34 **Gluteal and Thigh Muscles.** Posterior view.

The intrinsic muscles of the foot support the arches and act on the toes in ways that aid locomotion (table 10.20). Several of them are similar in name and location to the intrinsic muscles of the hand. One of these muscles, the **extensor digitorum brevis,**[59] is on the dorsal side of the foot. The others are ventral or lie between the metatarsals. They are grouped in four layers:

1. The most superficial layer includes the stout **flexor digitorum brevis** medially, with four tendons that supply all the digits except the hallux. It is flanked by the **abductor digiti minimi**[60] laterally and **abductor hallucis**[61] medially; the tendons of these two muscles serve the little toe and great toe, respectively (fig. 10.40*a*).
2. The second layer, deep to the first, consists of the thick medial **quadratus plantae,** which joins the tendons of the flexor digitorum longus, and the four **lumbrical muscles** located between the metatarsals (fig. 10.40*b*).
3. The third layer includes the **adductor hallucis, flexor digiti minimi brevis,** and **flexor hallucis brevis** (fig. 10.40*c*). The adductor hallucis has an oblique head that crosses the foot and inserts at the base of the great toe, and a transverse head that passes across the bases of digits II–V and meets the long head at the base of the hallux.
4. The deepest layer consists of four **dorsal interosseous muscles** and three **plantar interosseous muscles** located between the metatarsals. Each dorsal interosseous muscle is bipennate and originates on two adjacent metatarsals. The plantar interosseous muscles are unipennate and originate on only one metatarsal each (fig. 10.40*d, e*).

---

[59] "short extensor of the digits"
[60] "abductor of the little toe"
[61] "abductor of the hallux (great toe)"

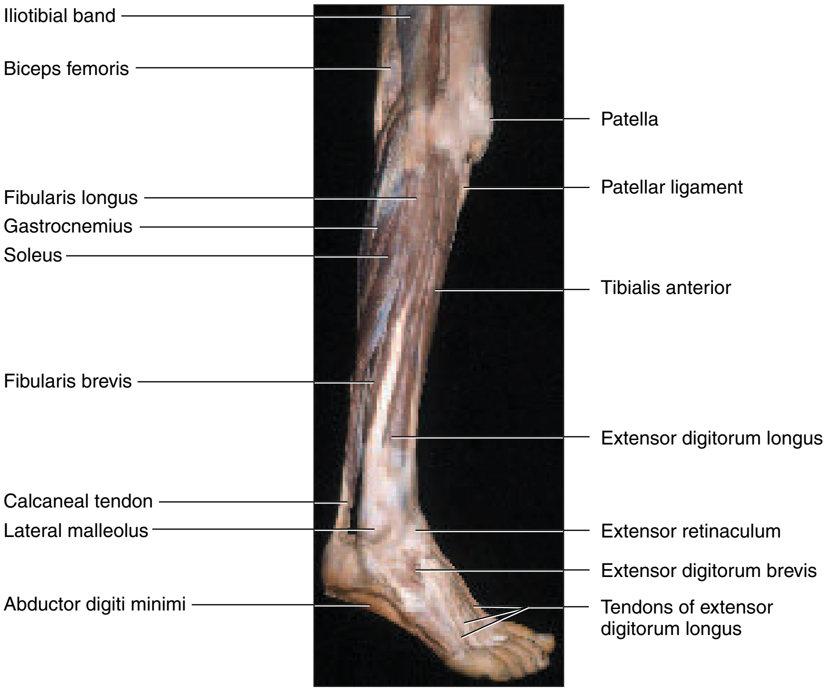

Iliotibial band
Biceps femoris
Patella
Patellar ligament
Fibularis longus
Gastrocnemius
Soleus
Tibialis anterior
Fibularis brevis
Extensor digitorum longus
Calcaneal tendon
Lateral malleolus
Extensor retinaculum
Extensor digitorum brevis
Abductor digiti minimi
Tendons of extensor digitorum longus

Figure 10.35 **Superficial Muscles of the Leg of the Cadaver.** Right lateral view.

Table 10.19 Muscles Acting on the Foot (see figs. 10.36 and 10.37)

O = origin, I = insertion, N = innervation (n. = nerve)		
Anterior Compartment of Leg		
Extensor Digitorum (DIDJ-ih-TOE-um) Longus		
Extends toes II–V; dorsiflexes and everts foot		
O: lateral condyle of tibia, shaft of fibula, interosseous membrane	I: middle and distal phalanges II–V	N: deep peroneal n.
Extensor Hallucis (hal-OO-sis) Longus		
Extends hallux (great toe); dorsiflexes and inverts foot		
O: medial aspect of fibula, interosseous membrane	I: distal phalanx I	N: deep peroneal n.
Fibularis Tertius (FIB-you-LAIR-iss TUR-she-us)		
Dorsiflexes and everts foot		
O: distal shaft of fibula	I: metatarsal V	N: deep peroneal n.
Tibialis (TIB-ee-AY-lis) Anterior		
Dorsiflexes and inverts foot		
O: lateral tibia, interosseous membrane	I: medial cuneiform, metatarsal I	N: deep peroneal n.

(continued)

Table 10.19 Muscles Acting on the Foot (see figs. 10.36 and 10.37) *(continued)*

Posterior Compartment of Leg—Superficial Group		
Gastrocnemius (GAS-trock-NEE-me-us)		
Flexes knee; plantar flexes foot		
O: medial and lateral epicondyles of femur	I: calcaneus	N: tibial n.
Soleus (SO-lee-us)		
Plantar flexes foot		
O: proximal one-third of tibia and fibula	I: calcaneus	N: tibial n.
Plantaris (plan-TERR-is)		
Flexes knee; plantar flexes foot. Sometimes absent.		
O: distal femur	I: calcaneus	N: tibial n.
Posterior Compartment of Leg—Deep Group		
Flexor Digitorum Longus		
Flexes toes II–V; plantar flexes and inverts foot		
O: midshaft of tibia	I: distal phalanges II–V	N: tibial n.
Flexor Hallucis Longus		
Flexes hallux (great toe); plantar flexes and inverts foot		
O: shaft of fibula	I: distal phalanx I	N: tibial n.
Tibialis Posterior		
Plantar flexes and inverts foot		
O: proximal half of tibia, fibula, interosseous membrane	I: navicular, cuneiforms, metatarsals II–IV	N: tibial n.
Lateral (fibular) Compartment of Leg		
Fibularis (peroneus) Brevis		
Plantar flexes and everts foot		
O: shaft of fibula	I: base of metatarsal V	N: superficial peroneal n.
Fibularis (peroneus) Longus		
Plantar flexes and everts foot		
O: proximal half of fibula, lateral condyle of tibia	I: medial cuneiform, metatarsal I	N: superficial peroneal n.

Chapter 10

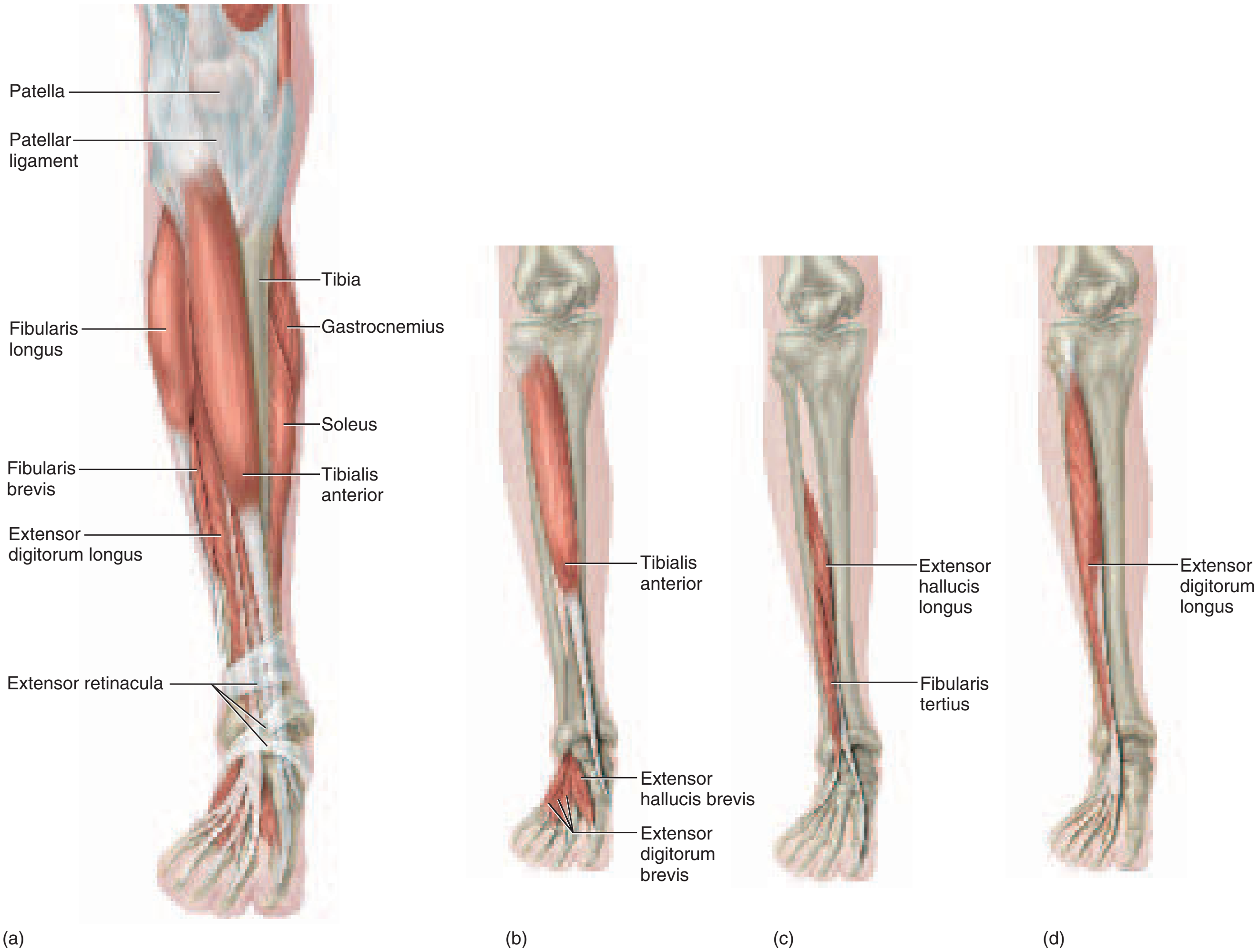

Patella
Patellar ligament
Fibularis longus
Fibularis brevis
Extensor digitorum longus
Extensor retinacula
Tibia
Gastrocnemius
Soleus
Tibialis anterior
Tibialis anterior
Extensor hallucis brevis
Extensor digitorum brevis
Extensor hallucis longus
Fibularis tertius
Extensor digitorum longus
(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)

Figure 10.36 **Muscles of the Leg.** Anterior view. (*a*) A view showing some muscles of the anterior, lateral, and posterior compartments. (*b–d*) Individual muscles of the anterior compartment of the leg and dorsal aspect of the foot.

Chapter 10

Several of the muscles in the first three layers originate on a broad **plantar aponeurosis,** which lies between the plantar skin and muscles. It diverges like a fan from the calcaneus to the bases of all five toes.

Think About It

Not everyone has the same muscles. From the information provided in this chapter, identify two muscles that are lacking in some people.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

23. In the middle of a stride, you have one foot on the ground and you are about to swing the other leg forward. What muscles produce the movements of that leg?
24. Name the muscles that cross both the hip and knee joints and produce actions at both.
25. List the major actions of the muscles of the anterior, medial, and posterior compartments of the thigh.
26. Describe the role of plantar flexion and dorsiflexion in walking. What muscles produce these actions?

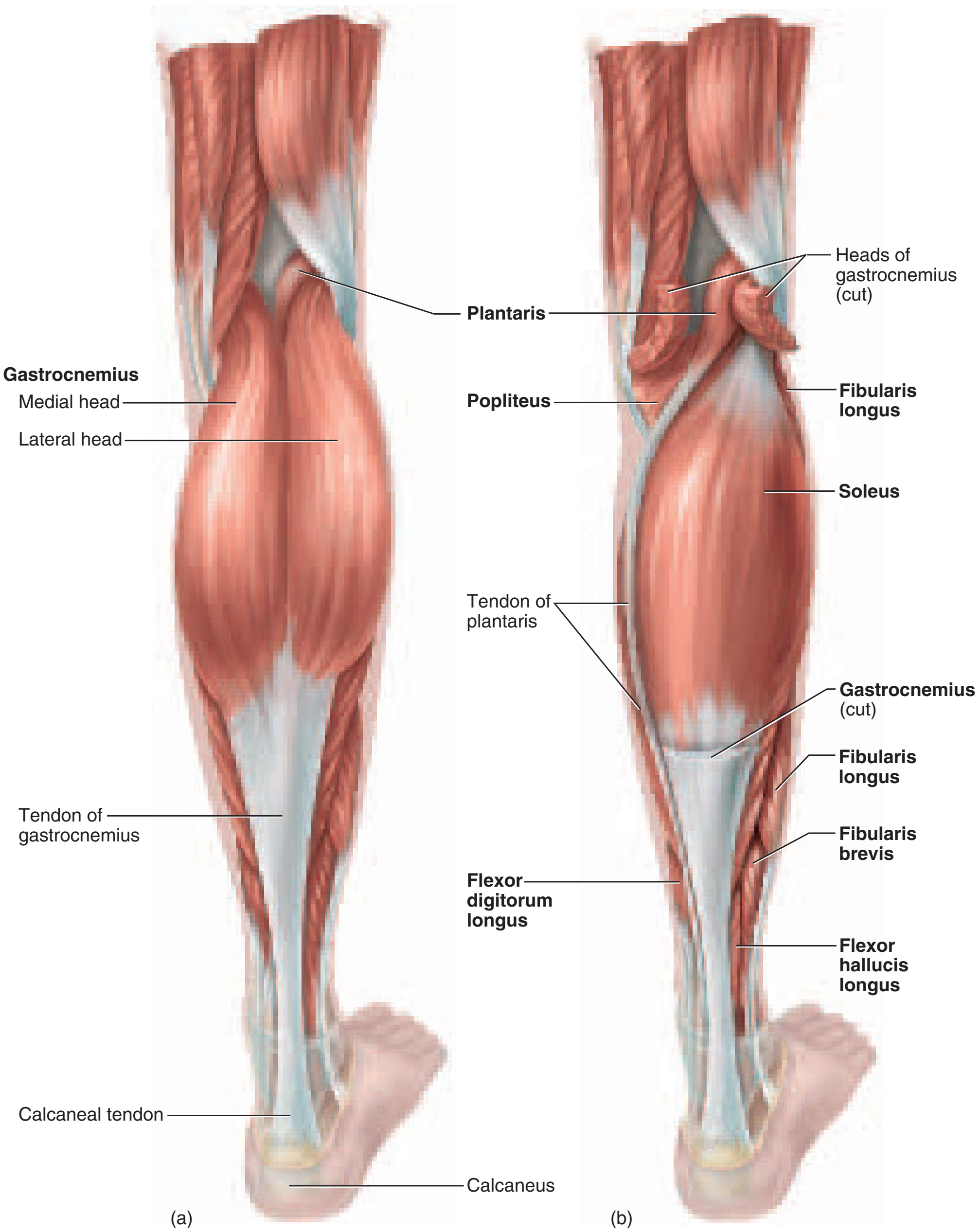

Plantaris
Gastrocnemius
Medial head
Lateral head
Tendon of gastrocnemius
Calcaneal tendon
Calcaneus
(a)
Heads of gastrocnemius (cut)
Plantaris
Popliteus
Fibularis longus
Soleus
Tendon of plantaris
Gastrocnemius (cut)
Fibularis longus
Fibularis brevis
Flexor digitorum longus
Flexor hallucis longus
(b)

Figure 10.37 **Superficial Muscles of the Leg, Posterior Compartment.** (*a*) The gastrocnemius. (*b*) The soleus, deep to the gastrocnemius and sharing the calcaneal tendon with it.

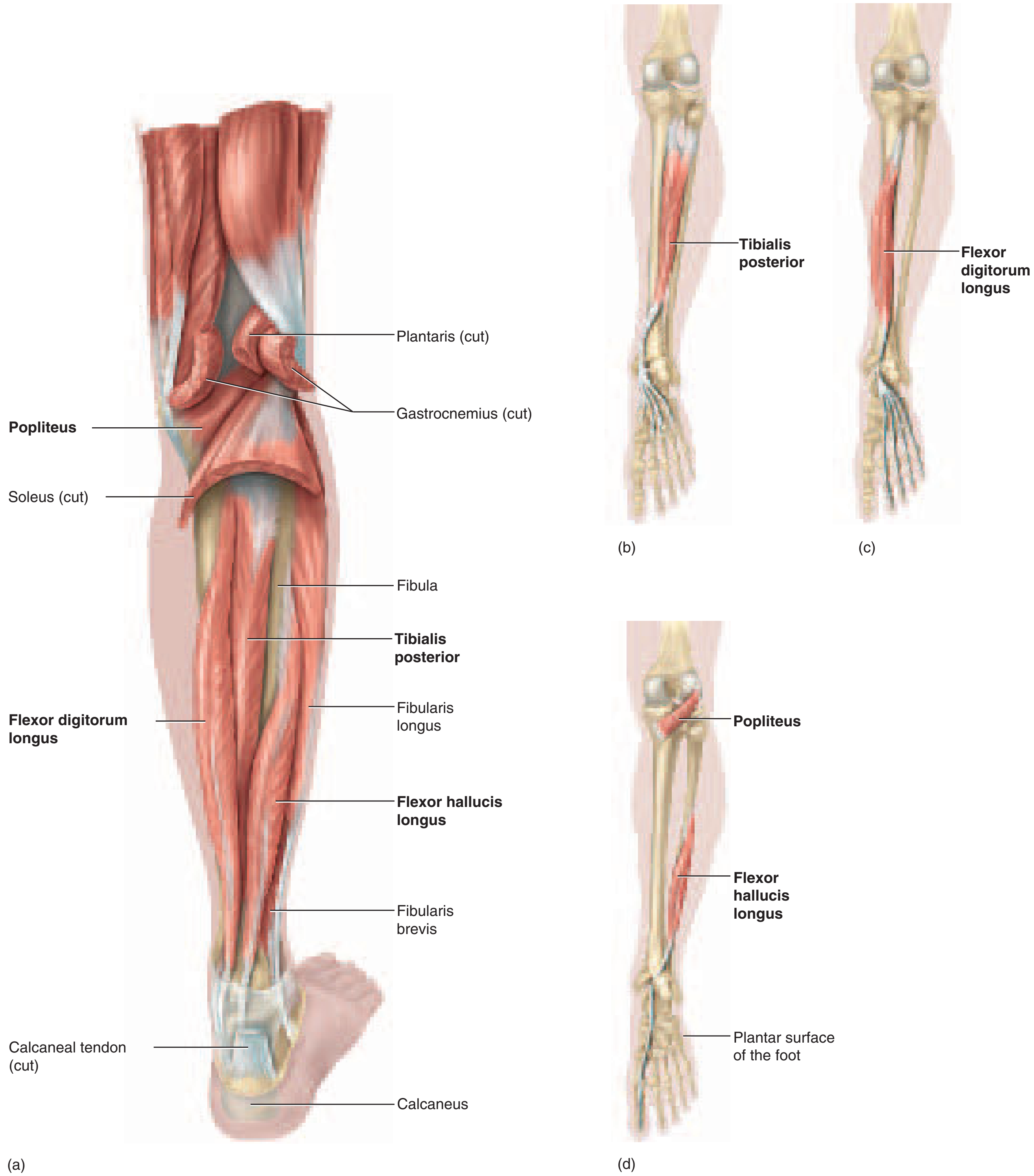

Plantaris (cut)
Gastrocnemius (cut)
Popliteus
Soleus (cut)
Fibula
Tibialis posterior
Fibularis longus
Flexor digitorum longus
Flexor hallucis longus
Fibularis brevis
Calcaneal tendon (cut)
Calcaneus
(a)
Tibialis posterior
(b)
Flexor digitorum longus
(c)
Popliteus
Flexor hallucis longus
Plantar surface of the foot
(d)

Figure 10.38 **Deep Muscles of the Leg, Posterior and Lateral Compartments.** (*a*) Muscles deep to the soleus. (*b–d*) Exposure of some individual deep muscles with foot plantar flexed.

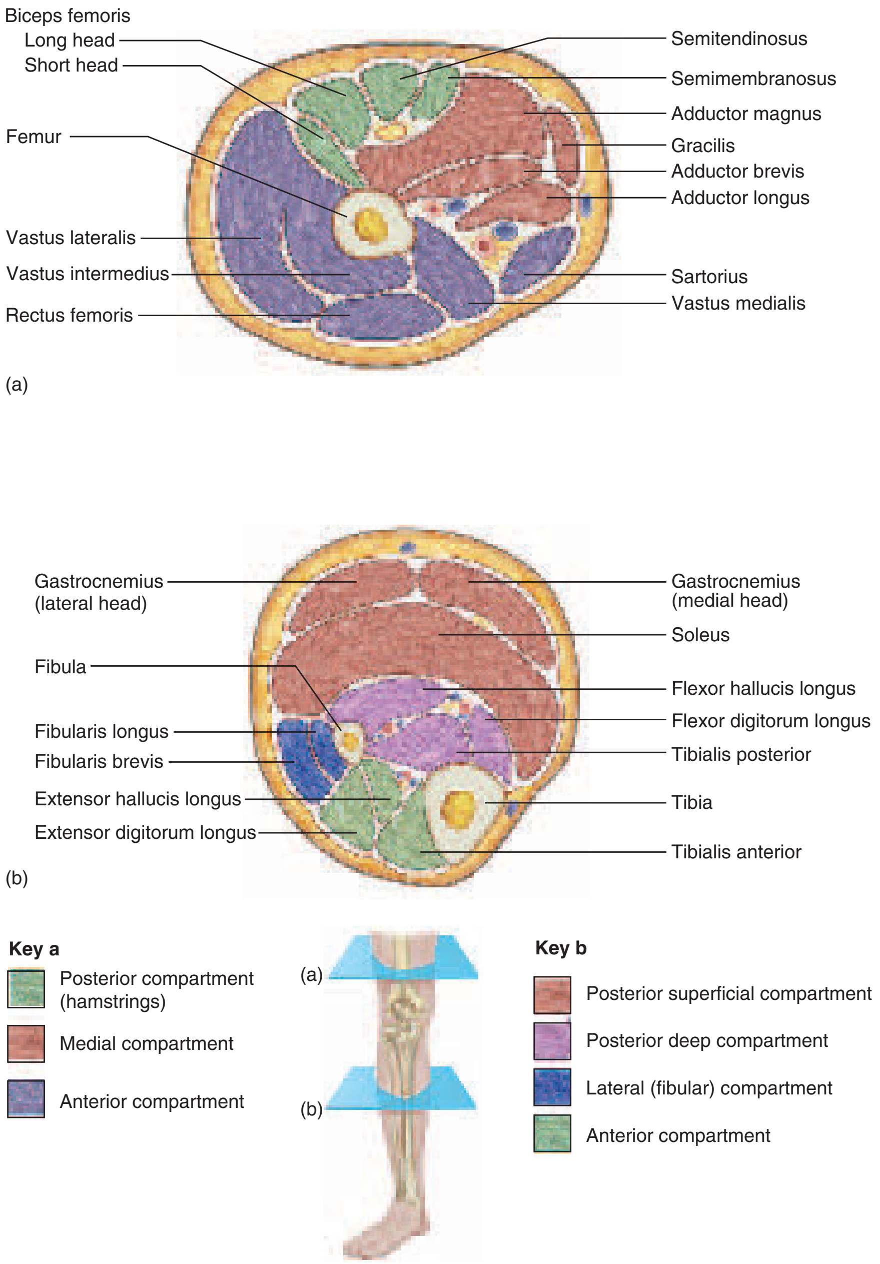

Biceps femoris
Long head
Short head
Femur
Vastus lateralis
Vastus intermedius
Rectus femoris
Semitendinosus
Semimembranosus
Adductor magnus
Gracilis
Adductor brevis
Adductor longus
Sartorius
Vastus medialis
(a)
Gastrocnemius (lateral head)
Fibula
Fibularis longus
Fibularis brevis
Extensor hallucis longus
Extensor digitorum longus
Gastrocnemius (medial head)
Soleus
Flexor hallucis longus
Flexor digitorum longus
Tibialis posterior
Tibia
Tibialis anterior
(b)
Key a
Posterior compartment (hamstrings)
Medial compartment
Anterior compartment
(a)
(b)
Key b
Posterior superficial compartment
Posterior deep compartment
Lateral (fibular) compartment
Anterior compartment

Figure 10.39 **Serial Cross Sections Through the Lower Limb.** Each section is taken at the correspondingly lettered level at the bottom of the figure and is pictured with the posterior muscle compartment facing the top of the page.

Which of these muscles are named for the adjacent bones?

Table 10.20 Intrinsic Muscles of the Foot (see fig. 10.40)

O = origin, I = insertion, N = innervation (n. = nerve, nn. = nerves)

Dorsal Aspect of Foot		
Extensor Digitorum (DIDJ-ih-TOE-rum) Brevis		
Extends toes		
O: dorsal aspect of calcaneus	I: tendons of extensor digitorum longus	N: deep peroneal n.
Ventral Layer 1 (Most Superficial)		
Flexor Digitorum Brevis		
Flexes toes II–V		
O: calcaneus, plantar aponeurosis	I: middle phalanges II–V	N: medial plantar n.
Abductor Digiti Minimi		
Abducts and flexes little toe; supports lateral longitudinal arch		
O: calcaneus, plantar aponeurosis	I: proximal phalanx V	N: lateral plantar n.
Abductor Hallucis (hal-OO-sis)		
Flexes hallux (great toe); supports medial longitudinal arch		
O: calcaneus, plantar aponeurosis	I: proximal phalanx I	N: medial plantar n.
Ventral Layer 2		
Quadratus Plantae (quad-RAY-tus PLAN-tee)		
Flexes toes		
O: calcaneus, plantar aponeurosis	I: tendons of flexor digitorum	N: lateral plantar n.
Lumbricals (four muscles)		
Flex metatarsophalangeal joints; extend interphalangeal joints		
O: tendon of flexor digitorum longus	I: extensor tendons to digits II–V	N: lateral and medial plantar nn.
Ventral Layer 3		
Adductor Hallucis		
Adducts hallux		
O: metatarsals II–IV	I: proximal phalanx I	N: medial plantar n.
Flexor Digiti Minimi Brevis		
Flexes little toe		
O: metatarsal V, plantar aponeurosis	I: proximal phalanx V	N: lateral plantar n.
Flexor Hallucis Brevis		
Flexes hallux		
O: cuboid, plantar aponeurosis	I: proximal phalanx I	N: medial plantar n.
Ventral Layer 4 (Deepest)		
Dorsal Interosseous Muscles (four muscles)		
Abduct toes II–V		
O: each with two heads arising from adjacent metatarsals	I: proximal phalanges II–IV	N: lateral plantar n.
Plantar Interosseous Muscles (three muscles)		
Adduct toes III–V		
O: medial aspect of metatarsals III–V	I: proximal phalanges III–V	N: lateral plantar n.

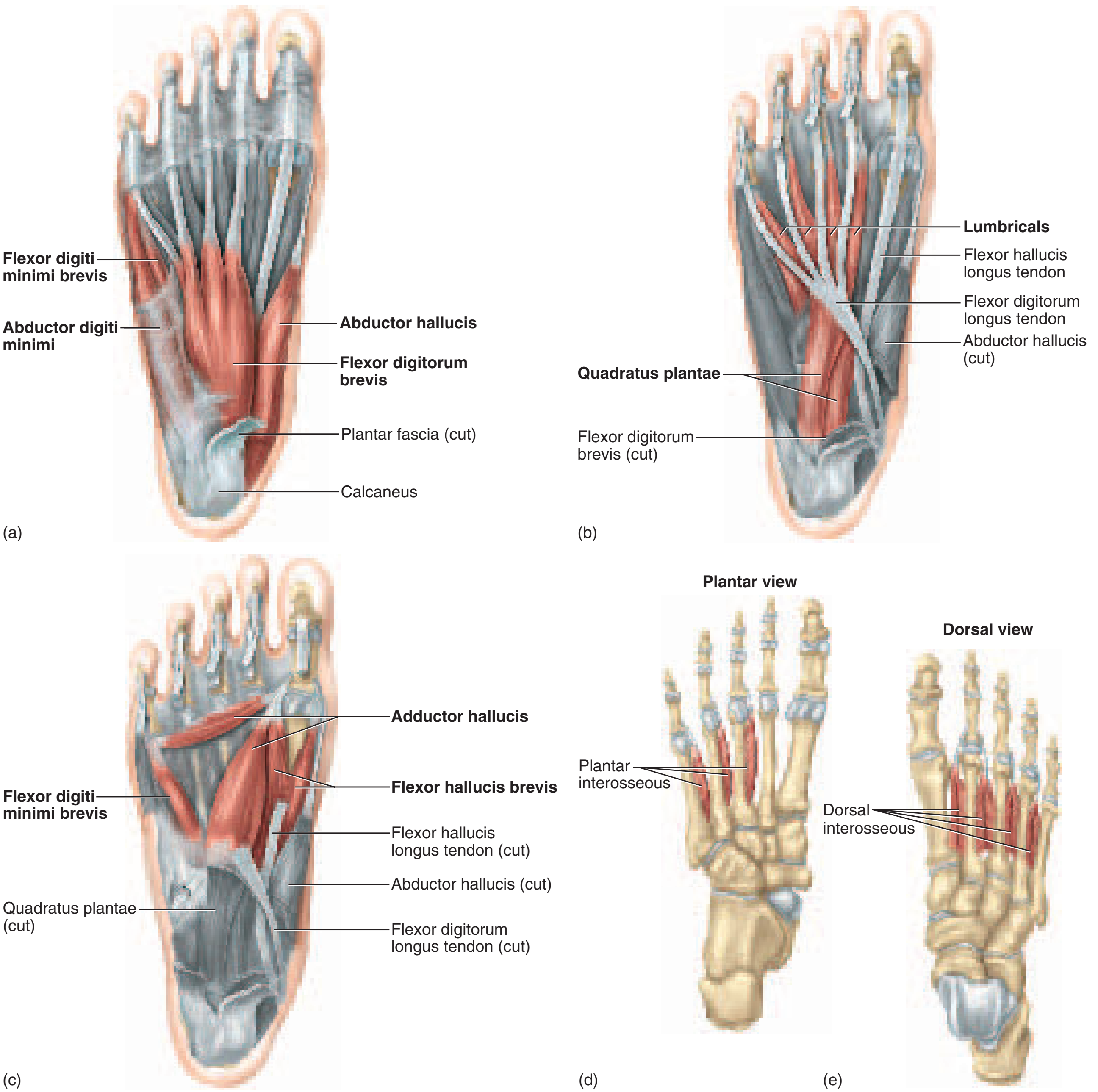

Flexor digiti minimi brevis
Abductor digiti minimi
Abductor hallucis
Flexor digitorum brevis
Plantar fascia (cut)
Calcaneus
(a)
Lumbricals
Flexor hallucis longus tendon
Flexor digitorum longus tendon
Abductor hallucis (cut)
Quadratus plantae
Flexor digitorum brevis (cut)
(b)
Adductor hallucis
Flexor hallucis brevis
Flexor digiti minimi brevis
Flexor hallucis longus tendon (cut)
Abductor hallucis (cut)
Quadratus plantae (cut)
Flexor digitorum longus tendon (cut)
(c)
Plantar view
Dorsal view
Plantar interosseous
Dorsal interosseous
(d)
(e)

Figure 10.40 **Intrinsic Muscles of the Foot.** (*a–d*) First through fourth layers, respectively, in ventral (plantar) views; (*e*) fourth layer, dorsal view.

Insight 10.6 Clinical Application

Athletic Injuries

Although the muscular system is subject to fewer diseases than most organ systems, it is particularly vulnerable to injuries resulting from sudden and intense stress placed on muscles and tendons. Each year, thousands of athletes from the high school to professional level sustain some type of injury to their muscles, as do the increasing numbers of people who have taken up running and other forms of physical conditioning. Overzealous exertion without proper conditioning and warm-up is frequently the cause. Some of the more common athletic injuries are:

Baseball finger—tears in the extensor tendons of the fingers resulting from the impact of a baseball with the extended fingertip.

Blocker's arm—ectopic ossification in the lateral margin of the forearm as a result of repeated impact with opposing players.

Charley horse—any painful tear, stiffness, and blood clotting in a muscle. A charley horse of the quadriceps femoris is often caused by football tackles.

Compartment syndrome—a condition in which overuse, contusion, or muscle strain damages blood vessels in a compartment of the arm or leg. Since the fasciae enclosing a compartment are tight and cannot stretch, blood or tissue fluid accumulating in the compartment can put pressure on the muscles, nerves, and blood vessels. The lack of blood flow in the compartment can cause destruction of nerves if untreated within 2 to 4 hours and death of muscle tissue if it goes untreated for 6 hours or more. Nerves can regenerate if blood flow is restored, but muscle damage is irreversible. Depending on its severity, compartment syndrome may be treated with immobilization and rest or an incision to drain fluid from the compartment or otherwise relieve the pressure.

Pitcher's arm—inflammation at the origin of the flexor carpi resulting from hard wrist flexion in releasing a baseball.

Pulled groin—strain in the adductor muscles of the thigh. It is common in gymnasts and dancers who perform splits and high kicks.

Pulled hamstrings—strained hamstring muscles or a partial tear in the tendinous origin, often with a hematoma (blood clot) in the fascia lata. This condition is frequently caused by repetitive kicking (as in football and soccer) or long, hard running.

Rider's bones—abnormal ossification in the tendons of the adductor muscles of the medial thigh. It results from prolonged abduction of the thighs when riding horses.

Rotator cuff injury—a tear in the tendon of any of the SITS (rotator cuff) muscles, most often the tendon of the supraspinatus. Such injuries are caused by strenuous circumduction of the arm, shoulder dislocation, or repetitive use of the arm in a position above horizontal. They are common among baseball pitchers and third basemen, bowlers, swimmers, weight lifters, and in racquet sports. Recurrent inflammation of a SITS tendon can cause a tendon to degenerate and then to rupture in response to moderate stress. Injury causes pain and makes the shoulder joint unstable and subject to dislocation.

Shinsplints—a general term embracing several kinds of injury with pain in the crural region: tendinitis of the tibialis posterior muscle, inflammation of the tibial periosteum, and anterior compartment syndrome. Shinsplints may result from unaccustomed jogging, walking on snowshoes, or any vigorous activity of the legs after a period of relative inactivity.

Tennis elbow—inflammation at the origin of the extensor carpi muscles on the lateral epicondyle of the humerus. It occurs when these muscles are repeatedly tensed during backhand strokes and then strained by sudden impact with the tennis ball. Any activity that requires rotary movements of the forearm and a firm grip of the hand (for example, using a screwdriver) can cause the symptoms of tennis elbow.

Tennis leg—a partial tear in the lateral origin of the gastrocnemius muscle. It results from repeated strains put on the muscle while supporting the body weight on the toes.

Most athletic injuries can be prevented by proper conditioning. A person who suddenly takes up vigorous exercise may not have sufficient muscle and bone mass to withstand the stresses such exercise entails. These must be developed gradually. Stretching exercises keep ligaments and joint capsules supple and therefore reduce injuries. Warm-up exercises promote more efficient and less injurious musculoskeletal function in several ways, discussed in chapter 11. Most of all, moderation is important, as most injuries simply result from overuse of the muscles. "No pain, no gain" is a dangerous misconception.

Muscular injuries can be treated initially with "RICE": rest, ice, compression, and elevation. Rest prevents further injury and allows repair processes to occur; ice reduces swelling; compression with an elastic bandage helps to prevent fluid accumulation and swelling; and elevation of an injured limb promotes drainage of blood from the affected area and limits further swelling. If these measures are not enough, anti-inflammatory drugs may be employed, including corticosteroids as well as aspirin and other nonsteroidal agents.

Connective Issues

Interactions Between the MUSCULAR SYSTEM and Other Organ Systems

← Indicates ways in which this system affects other systems

→ Indicates ways in which other systems affect this one

Integumentary System

← Facial muscles pull on skin to provide facial expressions

→ Covers and protects superficial muscles; initiates synthesis of calcitriol, which promotes absorption of calcium needed for muscle contraction; dissipates heat generated by muscles

Skeletal System

← Muscles move and stabilize joints and produce stress that affects ossification, bone remodeling, and shapes of mature bones

→ Provides levers that enable muscles to act; stores calcium needed for muscle contraction

Nervous System

← Muscles give expression to thoughts, emotions, and motor commands that arise in the central nervous system

→ Stimulates muscle contraction; monitors and adjusts muscle tension; adjusts cardiopulmonary functions to meet needs of muscles during exercise

Endocrine System

← Exercise stimulates secretion of stress hormones; skeletal muscles protect some endocrine organs

→ Hormones stimulate growth and development of muscles and regulate levels of glucose and electrolytes important for muscle contraction

Circulatory System

← Muscle contractions help to move blood through veins; exercise stimulates growth of new blood vessels

→ Delivers O_2 and nutrients; carries away wastes and heat generated by muscles; cardiovascular efficiency, RBC count, hemoglobin level, and density of blood capillaries in muscle greatly affect muscular endurance

Lymphatic and Immune Systems

← Muscle contractions promote lymph flow; exercise elevates level of immune cells and antibodies; excess exercise inhibits immune responses

→ Lymphatic system drains fluid from muscles; immune system protects muscles from pathogens and promotes tissue repair

Respiratory System

← Muscle contractions ventilate lungs; muscles of larynx and pharynx regulate air flow; CO_2 generated by exercise stimulates respiratory rate and depth

→ Provides O_2 and removes CO_2; respiratory efficiency greatly affects muscular endurance

Urinary System

← Muscles control voluntary urination; muscles of pelvic floor support bladder

→ Eliminates wastes generated by muscles; regulates levels of electrolytes important for muscle contraction

Digestive System

← Muscles enable chewing and swallowing; control voluntary defecation; abdominal and lumbar muscles protect lower digestive organs

→ Absorbs nutrients needed by muscles; liver regulates blood glucose levels and metabolizes lactic acid generated by anaerobic muscle metabolism

Reproductive System

← Muscles contribute to erection and ejaculation; abdominal and pelvic muscles aid childbirth

→ Gonadal steroids affect muscular growth and development

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

The Structural and Functional Organization of Muscles (p. 326)

1. The muscular system consists of the skeletal muscles. The study of this system is *myology.*
2. The muscular system serves for body movements, stability, communication, control of body openings and passages, and heat production.
3. Each skeletal muscle fiber (cell) is enclosed in a fibrous *endomysium.* A *fascicle* is a bundle of muscle fibers enclosed in a fibrous *perimysium.* The muscle as a whole is enclosed in a fibrous *epimysium.* Connective tissue *deep fasciae* separate neighboring muscles from each other, and the *superficial fascia* separates the muscles from the skin.
4. A muscle may have a *direct attachment* to a bone in which the muscle fibers reach all the way to the bone, or an *indirect attachment* in which a tendon intervenes between the muscle and bone.
5. A muscle typically has a stationary *origin (head)* on one bone, a mobile *insertion* on another bone, and a thicker *belly* between the origin and insertion.
6. Muscles are classified according to the orientation of their fascicles as *fusiform, parallel, convergent, pennate,* and *circular* (fig. 10.3). Circular muscles are also called *sphincters.*
7. The motion produced by a muscle is called its *action.* Muscles work in groups across a joint. In a given joint action, the *prime mover* produces most of the force, a *synergist* aids the prime mover or modifies its action, an *antagonist* opposes that action, and a *fixator* prevents a bone from moving. These muscles may change roles in a different action at the same joint.
8. *Intrinsic muscles* are entirely contained in a region of study such as the head or hand; *extrinsic muscles* have their origin in a region other than the site of their action, such as forearm muscles that move the fingers.
9. Muscles are *innervated* by cranial nerves and spinal nerves.
10. Muscle names, often in Latin, frequently refer to their size, shape, location, number of heads, orientation, or action (table 10.1).

Muscles of the Head and Neck (p. 330)

1. Table 10.2 describes numerous muscles of the face that move the eyelids, nose, lips, jaw, and other regions, producing varied facial actions and expressions.
2. Table 10.3 describes several muscles that move the tongue and aid in chewing and swallowing.
3. Table 10.4 describes muscles of the neck that move the head.

Muscles of the Trunk (p. 345)

1. Table 10.5 describes the intercostal muscles and diaphragm, which are the principal muscles of respiration.
2. Table 10.6 describes the principal anterior and lateral muscles of the abdomen.
3. Table 10.7 describes numerous muscles of the back that act principally on the vertebral column.
4. Table 10.8 describes the three layers of muscles of the pelvic floor, or perineum. This region is divided by bony landmarks into two triangular areas, the urogenital and anal triangles, which help to define the locations of these muscles.

Muscles Acting on the Shoulder and Upper Limb (p. 352)

1. Table 10.9 describes several muscles of the upper back and chest that act on the scapula.
2. Table 10.10 describes nine muscles that cross the shoulder joint and act on the humerus, including the four *rotator cuff* muscles, whose tendons are often injured in strenuous and repetitive athletic and work activities.
3. Table 10.13 describes muscles of the brachium and antebrachium that move the antebrachium (forearm).
4. Table 10.14 describes muscles of the antebrachium that act on the wrist and hand. These numerous and complex muscles are divided into flexors in the *anterior compartment* and extensors in the *posterior compartment.* Each compartment is divided by connective tissue fasciae into superficial and deep layers.
5. Table 10.16 describes the intrinsic muscles of the hand, which move the fingers. These are arranged in *thenar, midpalmar,* and *hypothenar* groups.

Muscles Acting on the Hip and Lower Limb (p. 369)

1. Table 10.17 describes muscles that act on the hip and femur; most of these originate on the os coxae.
2. Table 10.18 describes muscles that act on the knee; these muscles form much of the bulk of the thigh, especially the quadriceps femoris anteriorly and hamstring muscles posteriorly.
3. Table 10.19 describes extrinsic muscles acting on the foot; these muscles form much of the bulk of the leg proper, especially the gastrocnemius muscle of the calf. Most muscles of the anterior compartment dorsiflex the foot, and most in the posterior compartment plantar flex the foot and flex the toes.
4. Table 10.20 describes intrinsic muscles of the foot that support the foot arches and act on the toes.

Selected Vocabulary

fascicle 326
fascia 326
tendon 327
aponeurosis 327
retinaculum 328
origin 328
insertion 328
belly 328
sphincter 328
action 328
prime mover 328
synergist 328
antagonist 329
fixator 329
intrinsic muscle 329
extrinsic muscle 329
innervation 329
perineum 350
rotator cuff 356
carpal tunnel 365

Testing Your Recall

1. Which of the following muscles is the prime mover in spitting out a mouthful of liquid?
   a. platysma
   b. buccinator
   c. risorius
   d. masseter
   e. palatoglossus
2. Each muscle fiber has a sleeve of areolar connective tissue around it called
   a. the deep fascia.
   b. the superficial fascia.
   c. the perimysium.
   d. the epimysium.
   e. the endomysium.
3. Which of these is *not* a suprahyoid muscle?
   a. genioglossus
   b. geniohyoid
   c. stylohyoid
   d. mylohyoid
   e. digastric
4. Which of these muscles is an extensor of the neck?
   a. external oblique
   b. sternocleidomastoid
   c. splenius capitis
   d. iliocostalis
   e. latissimus dorsi
5. Which of these muscles of the pelvic floor is the deepest?
   a. superficial transverse perineus
   b. bulbospongiosus
   c. ischiocavernosus
   d. deep transverse perineus
   e. levator ani
6. Which of these actions is *not* performed by the trapezius?
   a. extension of the neck
   b. depression of the scapula
   c. elevation of the scapula
   d. rotation of the scapula
   e. adduction of the humerus
7. Both the hands and feet are acted upon by a muscle or muscles called
   a. the extensor digitorum.
   b. the abductor digiti minimi.
   c. the flexor digitorum profundus.
   d. the abductor hallucis.
   e. the flexor digitorum longus.
8. Which of the following muscles does *not* extend the hip joint?
   a. quadriceps femoris
   b. gluteus maximus
   c. biceps femoris
   d. semitendinosus
   e. semimembranosus
9. Both the gastrocnemius and ______ muscles insert on the heel by way of the calcaneal tendon.
   a. semimembranosus
   b. tibialis posterior
   c. tibialis anterior
   d. soleus
   e. plantaris
10. Which of the following muscles raises the upper lip?
    a. levator palpebrae superioris
    b. orbicularis oris
    c. zygomaticus minor
    d. masseter
    e. mentalis
11. The ______ of a muscle is the point where it attaches to a relatively stationary bone.
12. A bundle of muscle fibers surrounded by perimysium is called a/an ______.
13. The ______ is the muscle primarily responsible for a given movement at a joint.
14. The three large muscles on the posterior side of the thigh are commonly known as the ______ muscles.
15. Connective tissue bands called ______ prevent flexor tendons from rising like bowstrings.
16. The anterior half of the perineum is a region called the ______.
17. The abdominal aponeuroses converge on a median fibrous band on the abdomen called the ______.
18. A muscle that works with another to produce the same or similar movement is called a/an ______.
19. A muscle somewhat like a feather, with fibers obliquely approaching its tendon from both sides, is called a/an ______ muscle.
20. A circular muscle that closes a body opening is called a/an ______.

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. Cutting the phrenic nerves would paralyze the prime mover of respiration.
2. The orbicularis oculi and orbicularis oris are sphincters.
3. The origin of the sternocleidomastoid muscle is the mastoid process of the skull.
4. To push someone away from you, you would use the serratus anterior more than the trapezius.
5. Both the extensor digitorum and the extensor digiti minimi extend the little finger.
6. Curling the toes employs the quadratus plantae.
7. The scalenes are superficial to the trapezius.
8. Exhaling requires contraction of the internal intercostal muscles.
9. Hamstring injuries often result from rapid flexion of the knee.
10. The tibialis anterior and tibialis posterior are synergists.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. Radical mastectomy, once a common treatment for breast cancer, involved removal of the pectoralis major along with the breast. What functional impairments would result from this? What synergists could a physical therapist train a patient to use to recover some lost function?
2. Removal of cancerous lymph nodes from the neck sometimes requires removal of the sternocleidomastoid on that side. How would this affect a patient's range of head movement?
3. In a disease called tick paralysis, the saliva from a tick bite paralyzes skeletal muscles beginning with the lower limbs and progressing superiorly. What would be the most urgent threat to the life of a tick paralysis patient?
4. Women who habitually wear high heels may suffer painful "high heel syndrome" when they go barefoot or wear flat shoes. What muscle(s) and tendon(s) are involved? Explain.
5. A student moving out of a dormitory kneels down, in correct fashion, to lift a heavy box of books. What prime movers are involved as he straightens his legs to lift the box?

Answers at the Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Legend Questions

10.7 The procerus
10.21 (To be answered by marking the illustration.)
10.25 Pronator teres refers to the round or cordlike shape of this muscle, and pronator quadratus refers to the four-sided shape of this muscle.
10.27 Figure *c* represents a cross section cut too high on the forearm to include these muscles.
10.39 The biceps femoris, rectus femoris, fibularis longus and brevis, and tibialis posterior and anterior

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.

ATLAS

B

Surface Anatomy

The Importance of External Anatomy 392

Head and Neck (fig. B.1) 393

Trunk 394
- Thorax and Abdomen (fig. B.2) 394
- Back and Gluteal Region (fig. B.3) 395
- Pelvic Region (fig. B.4) 396
- Axillary Region (fig. B.5) 397

Upper Limb 398
- Lateral Aspect (fig. B.6) 398
- Antebrachium (forearm) (fig. B.7) 398
- Wrist and Hand (fig. B.8) 399

Lower Limb 400
- Thigh and Knee (fig. B.9) 400
- Leg (figs. B.10–B.12) 401
- Foot (figs. B.13–14) 404

Muscle Test (fig. B.15) 406

The Importance of External Anatomy

In the study of human anatomy, it is easy to become so preoccupied with internal structure that we forget the importance of what we can see and feel externally. Yet external anatomy and appearance are major concerns in giving a physical examination and in many aspects of patient care. A knowledge of the body's surface landmarks is essential to one's competence in physical therapy, cardiopulmonary resuscitation, surgery, making X rays and electrocardiograms, giving injections, drawing blood, listening to heart and respiratory sounds, measuring the pulse and blood pressure, and finding pressure points to stop arterial bleeding, among other procedures. A misguided attempt to perform some of these procedures while disregarding or misunderstanding external anatomy can be very harmful and even fatal to a patient.

Having just studied skeletal and muscular anatomy in the preceding chapters, this is an opportune time for you to study the body surface. Much of what we see there reflects the underlying structure of the superficial bones and muscles. A broad photographic overview of surface anatomy is given in atlas A (see fig. A.5). In the following pages, we examine the body literally from head (fig. B.1) to toe (fig. B.14), studying its regions in more detail. To make the most profitable use of this atlas, refer to the skeletal and muscular anatomy in chapters 8 to 10. Relate drawings of the clavicles in chapter 8 to the photograph in figure B.1, for example. Study the shape of the scapula in chapter 8 and see how much of it you can trace on the photographs in figure B.3. See if you can relate the tendons visible on the hand (fig. B.8) to the muscles of the forearm illustrated in chapter 10, and the external markings of the pelvis (fig. B.4) to bone structure in chapter 8.

For learning surface anatomy, there is a resource available to you that is far more valuable than any laboratory model or textbook illustration—your own body. For the best understanding of human structure, compare the art and photographs in this book with your body or with structures visible on a study partner. In addition to bones and muscles, you can palpate a number of superficial arteries, veins, tendons, ligaments, and cartilages, among other structures. By palpating regions such as the shoulder, elbow, or ankle, you can develop a mental image of the subsurface structures better than you can obtain by looking at two-dimensional textbook images. And the more you can study with other people, the more you will appreciate the variations in human structure and be able to apply your knowledge to your future patients or clients, who will not look quite like any textbook diagram or photograph you have ever seen. Through comparisons of art, photography, and the living body, you will get a much deeper understanding of the body than if you were to study this atlas in isolation from the earlier chapters.

At the end of this atlas, you can test your knowledge of externally visible muscle anatomy. The two photographs in figure B.15 have 30 numbered muscles and a list of 26 names, some of which are shown more than once in the photographs and some of which are not shown at all. Identify the muscles to your best ability without looking back at the previous illustrations, and then check your answers in appendix B at the back of the book.

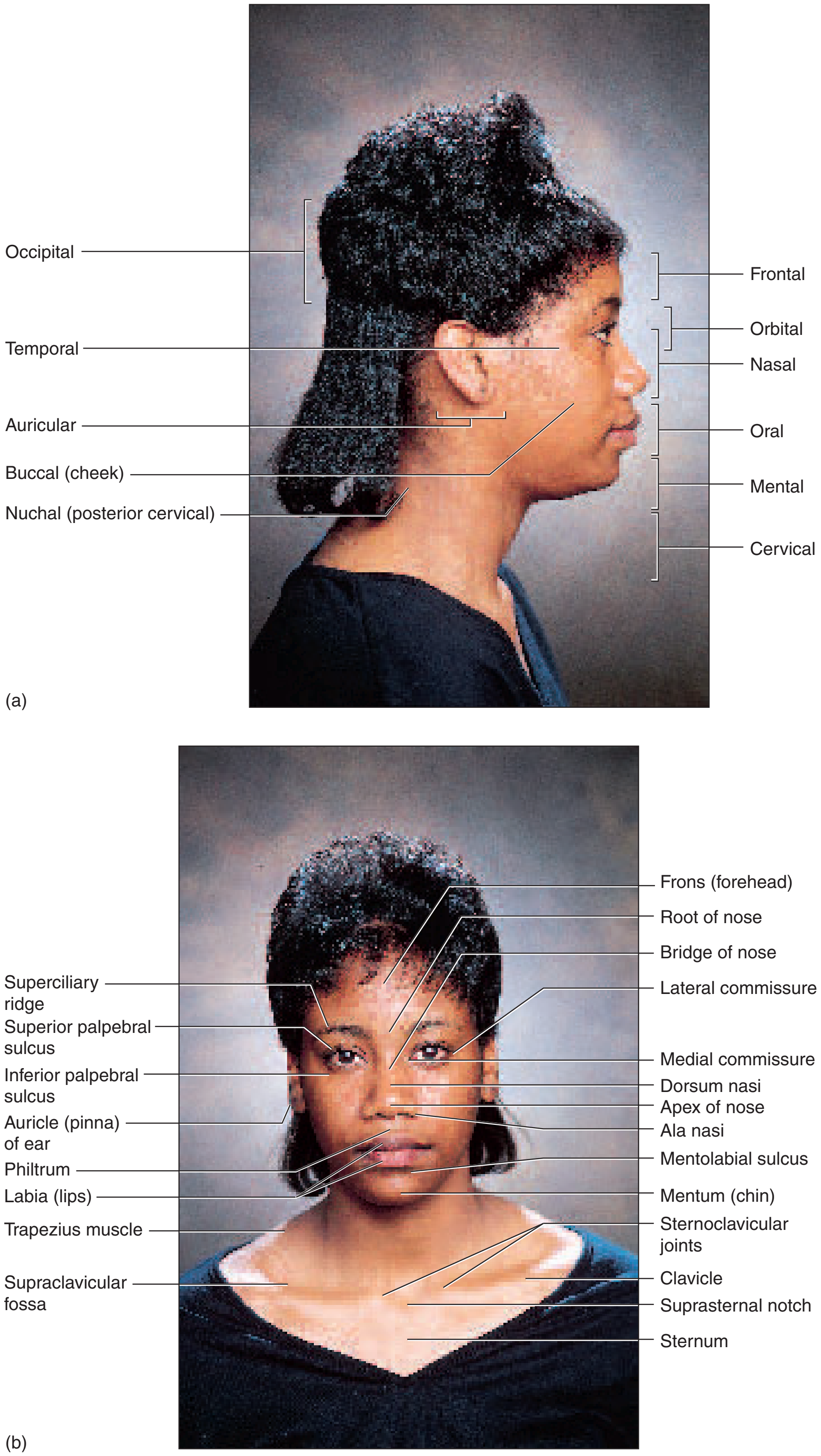

Occipital
Temporal
Auricular
Buccal (cheek)
Nuchal (posterior cervical)
Frontal
Orbital
Nasal
Oral
Mental
Cervical
(a)
Superciliary ridge
Superior palpebral sulcus
Inferior palpebral sulcus
Auricle (pinna) of ear
Philtrum
Labia (lips)
Trapezius muscle
Supraclavicular fossa
Frons (forehead)
Root of nose
Bridge of nose
Lateral commissure
Medial commissure
Dorsum nasi
Apex of nose
Ala nasi
Mentolabial sulcus
Mentum (chin)
Sternoclavicular joints
Clavicle
Suprasternal notch
Sternum
(b)

Figure B.1 **The Head and Neck.** (*a*) Anatomical regions of the head, lateral aspect. (*b*) Features of the facial region and upper thorax.

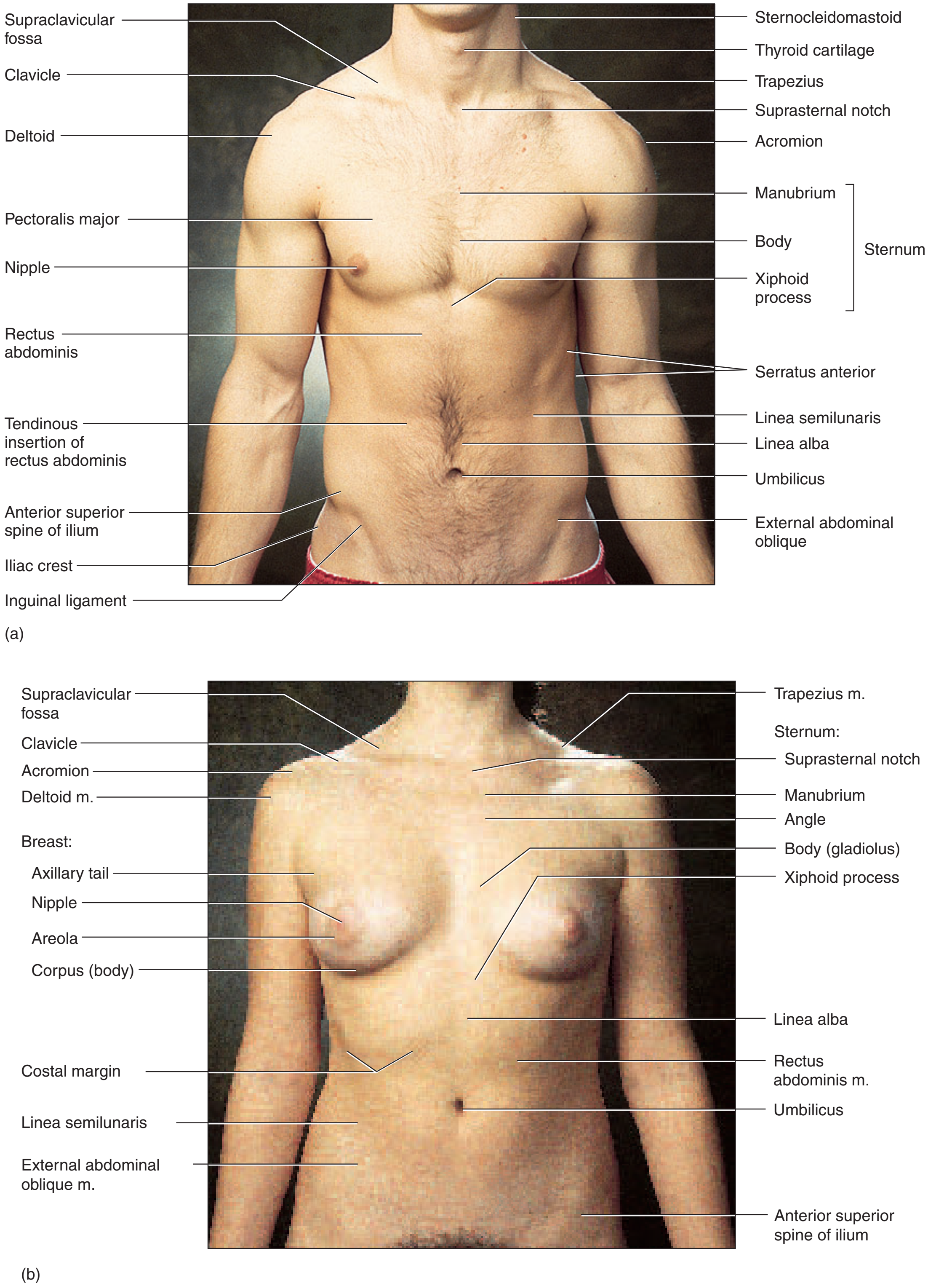
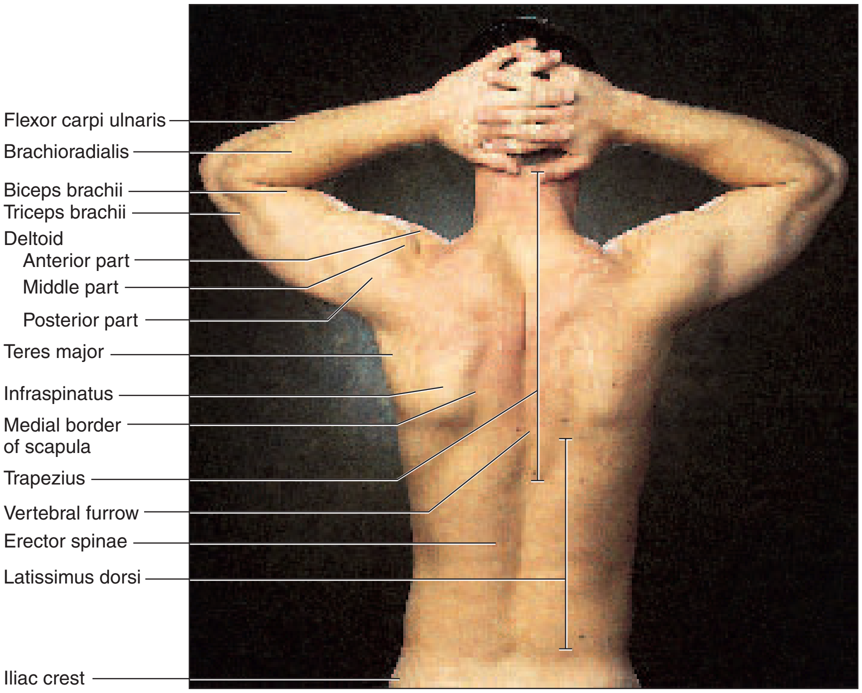
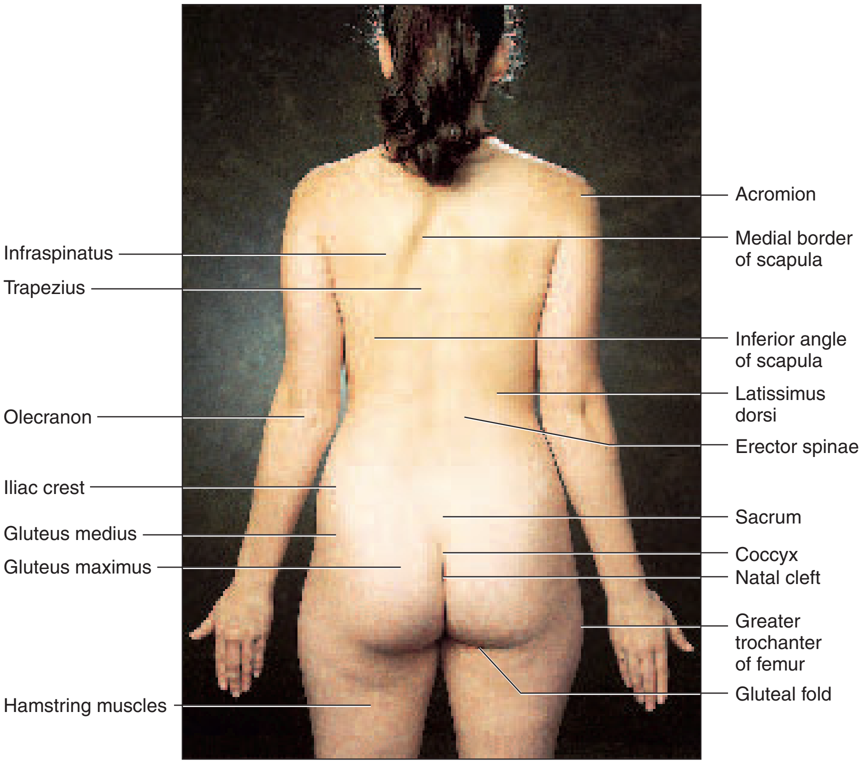

Supraclavicular fossa
Clavicle
Deltoid
Pectoralis major
Nipple
Rectus abdominis
Tendinous insertion of rectus abdominis
Anterior superior spine of ilium
Iliac crest
Inguinal ligament
(a)
Sternocleidomastoid
Thyroid cartilage
Trapezius
Suprasternal notch
Acromion
Manubrium
Body
Xiphoid process
Sternum
Serratus anterior
Linea semilunaris
Linea alba
Umbilicus
External abdominal oblique
Supraclavicular fossa
Clavicle
Acromion
Deltoid m.
Breast:
Axillary tail
Nipple
Areola
Corpus (body)
Costal margin
Linea semilunaris
External abdominal oblique m.
(b)
Trapezius m.
Sternum:
Suprasternal notch
Manubrium
Angle
Body (gladiolus)
Xiphoid process
Linea alba
Rectus abdominis m.
Umbilicus
Anterior superior spine of ilium

Figure B.2 **The Thorax and Abdomen, Ventral Aspect.** (*a*) Male; (*b*) female. All of the features labeled are common to both sexes, though some are labeled only on the photograph that shows them best.

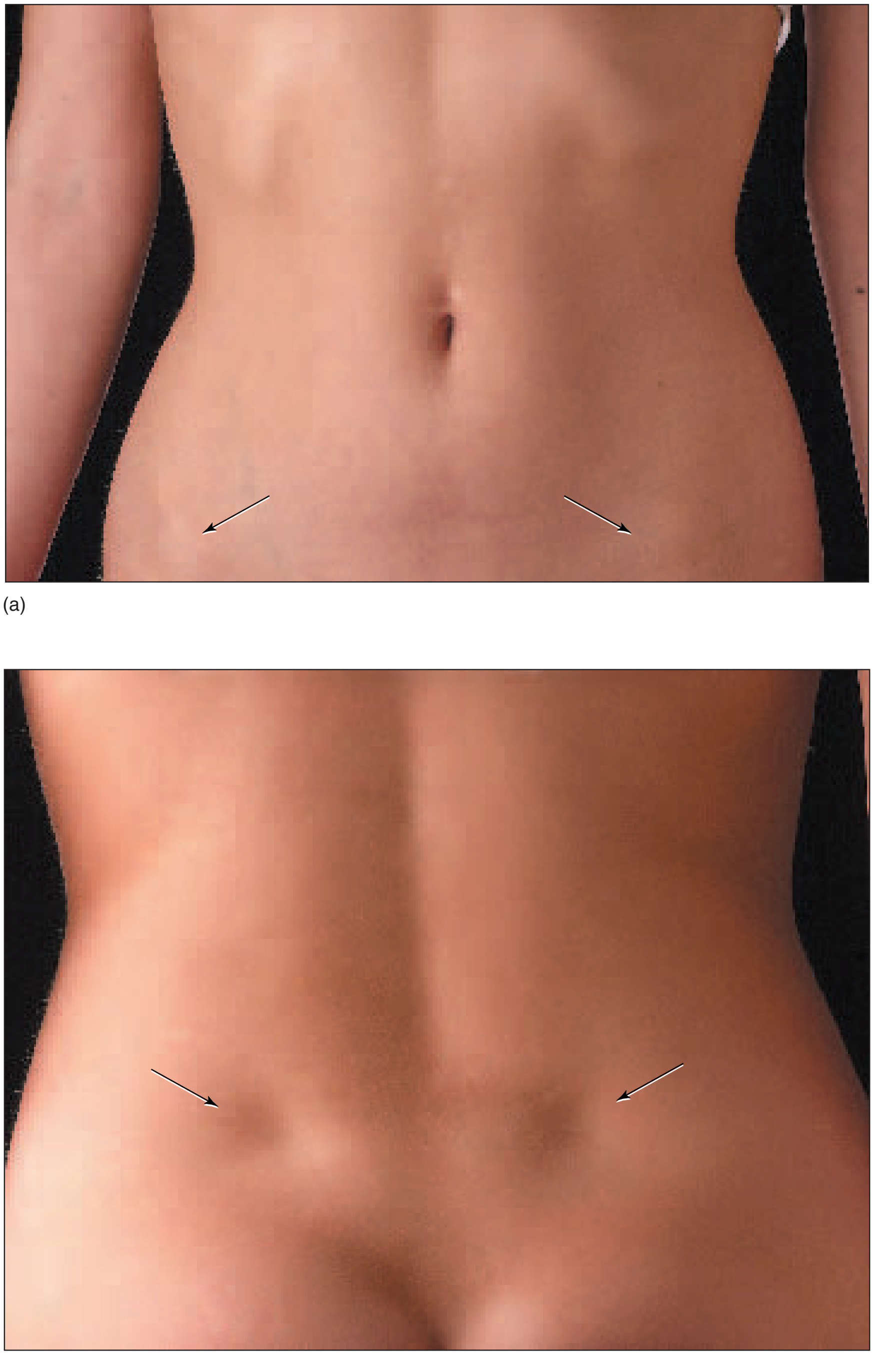

Flexor carpi ulnaris
Brachioradialis
Biceps brachii
Triceps brachii
Deltoid
Anterior part
Middle part
Posterior part
Teres major
Infraspinatus
Medial border of scapula
Trapezius
Vertebral furrow
Erector spinae
Latissimus dorsi
Iliac crest

(a)


Acromion
Medial border of scapula
Infraspinatus
Trapezius
Inferior angle of scapula
Latissimus dorsi
Olecranon
Erector spinae
Iliac crest
Sacrum
Gluteus medius
Gluteus maximus
Coccyx
Natal cleft
Greater trochanter of femur
Gluteal fold
Hamstring muscles

(b)

Figure B.3 **The Back and Gluteal Region.** (*a*) Male; (*b*) female. All of the features labeled are common to both sexes, though some are labeled only on the photograph that shows them best.



(a)

(b)

Figure B.4 **The Pelvic Region.** (*a*) The anterior superior spines of the ilium are marked by anterolateral protuberances (*arrows*). (*b*) The posterior superior spines are marked in some people by dimples in the sacral region (*arrows*).

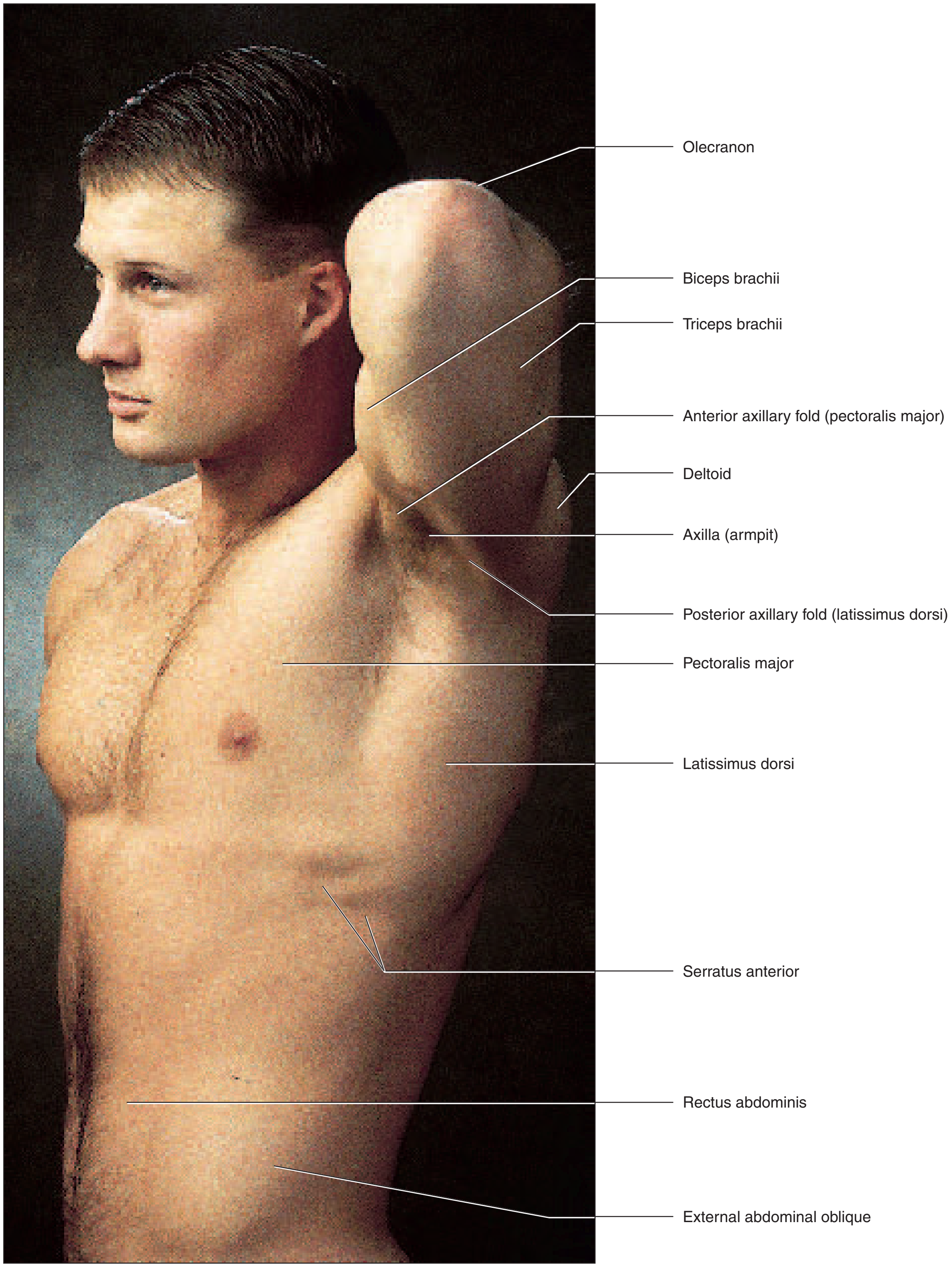

Olecranon
Biceps brachii
Triceps brachii
Anterior axillary fold (pectoralis major)
Deltoid
Axilla (armpit)
Posterior axillary fold (latissimus dorsi)
Pectoralis major
Latissimus dorsi
Serratus anterior
Rectus abdominis
External abdominal oblique

Figure B.5 The Axillary Region.

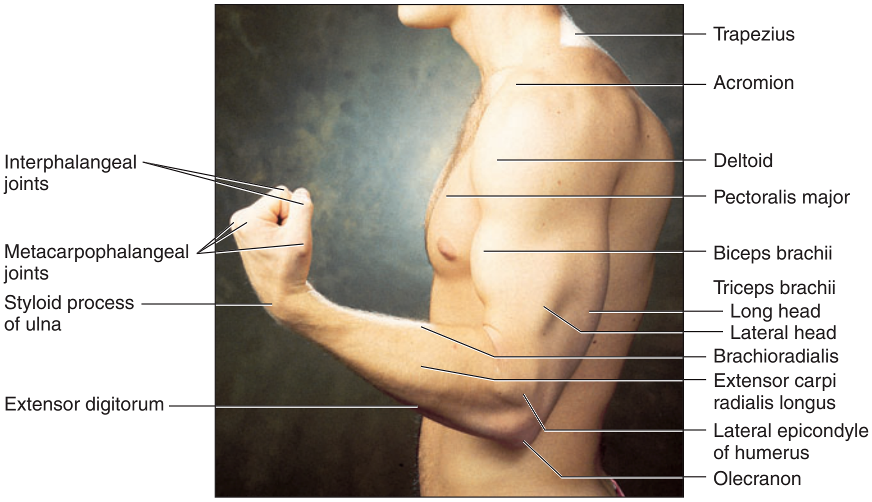

Interphalangeal joints
Metacarpophalangeal joints
Styloid process of ulna
Extensor digitorum
Trapezius
Acromion
Deltoid
Pectoralis major
Biceps brachii
Triceps brachii
Long head
Lateral head
Brachioradialis
Extensor carpi radialis longus
Lateral epicondyle of humerus
Olecranon

Figure B.6 **The Upper Limb, Lateral Aspect.**

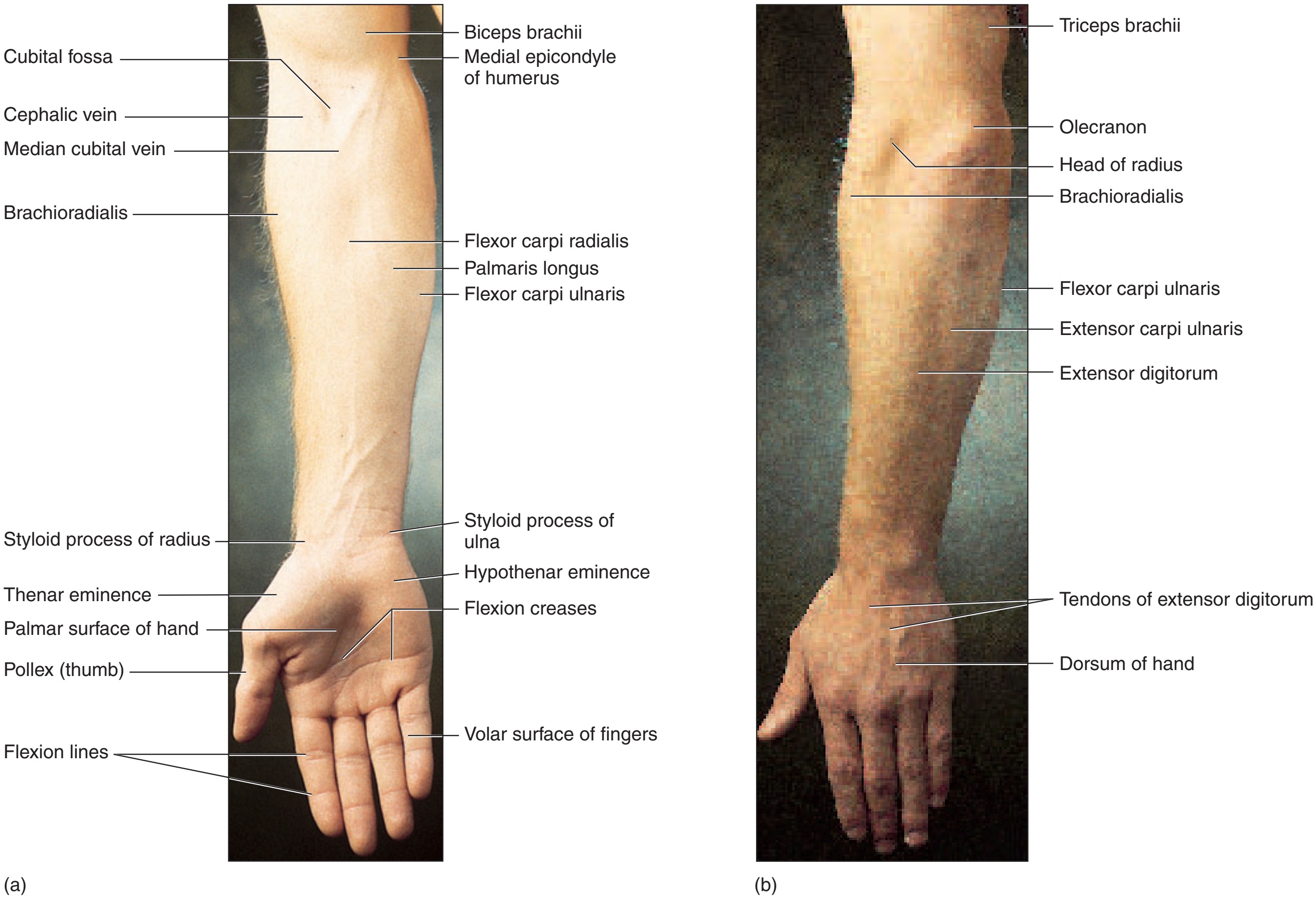
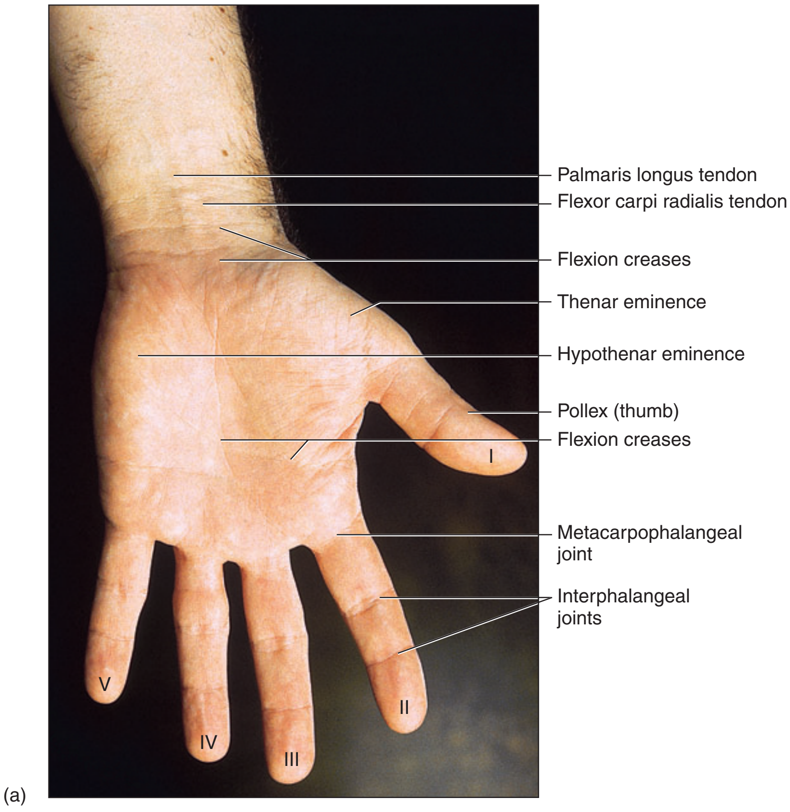

Cubital fossa
Cephalic vein
Median cubital vein
Brachioradialis
Biceps brachii
Medial epicondyle of humerus
Flexor carpi radialis
Palmaris longus
Flexor carpi ulnaris
Styloid process of radius
Thenar eminence
Palmar surface of hand
Pollex (thumb)
Flexion lines
Styloid process of ulna
Hypothenar eminence
Flexion creases
Volar surface of fingers
(a)
Triceps brachii
Olecranon
Head of radius
Brachioradialis
Flexor carpi ulnaris
Extensor carpi ulnaris
Extensor digitorum
Tendons of extensor digitorum
Dorsum of hand
(b)

Figure B.7 **The Antebrachium (forearm).** (*a*) Ventral aspect; (*b*) dorsal aspect.


Palmaris longus tendon
Flexor carpi radialis tendon
Flexion creases
Thenar eminence
Hypothenar eminence
Pollex (thumb)
Flexion creases
Metacarpophalangeal joint
Interphalangeal joints
I
II
III
IV
V
(a)

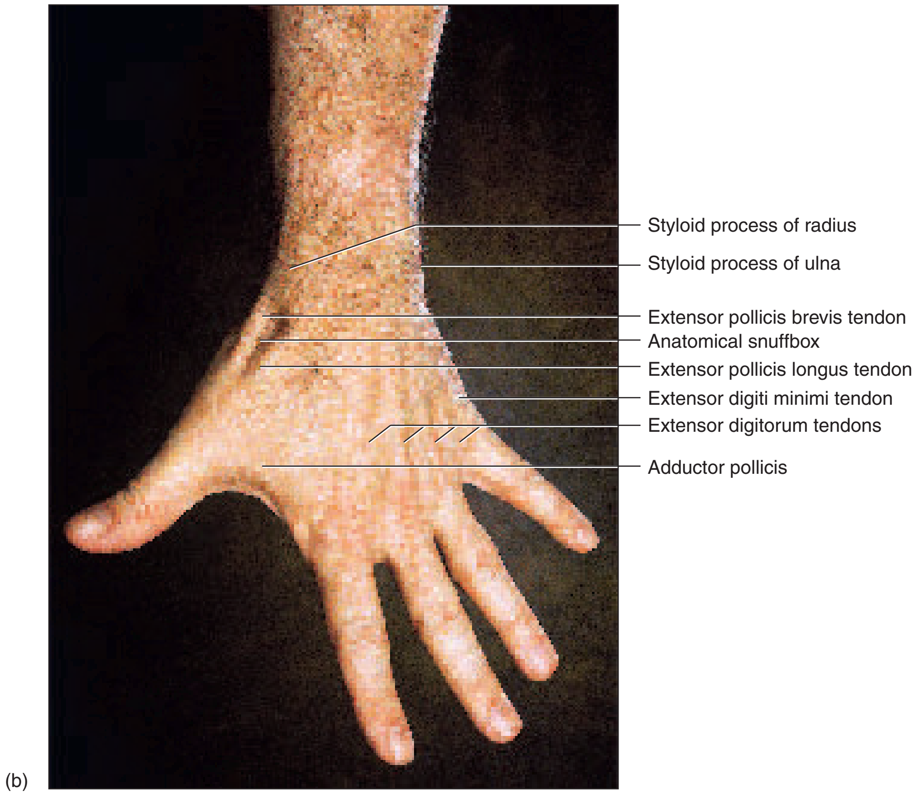

Styloid process of radius
Styloid process of ulna
Extensor pollicis brevis tendon
Anatomical snuffbox
Extensor pollicis longus tendon
Extensor digiti minimi tendon
Extensor digitorum tendons
Adductor pollicis
(b)

Figure B.8 **The Wrist and Hand.** (*a*) Ventral aspect; (*b*) dorsal aspect.

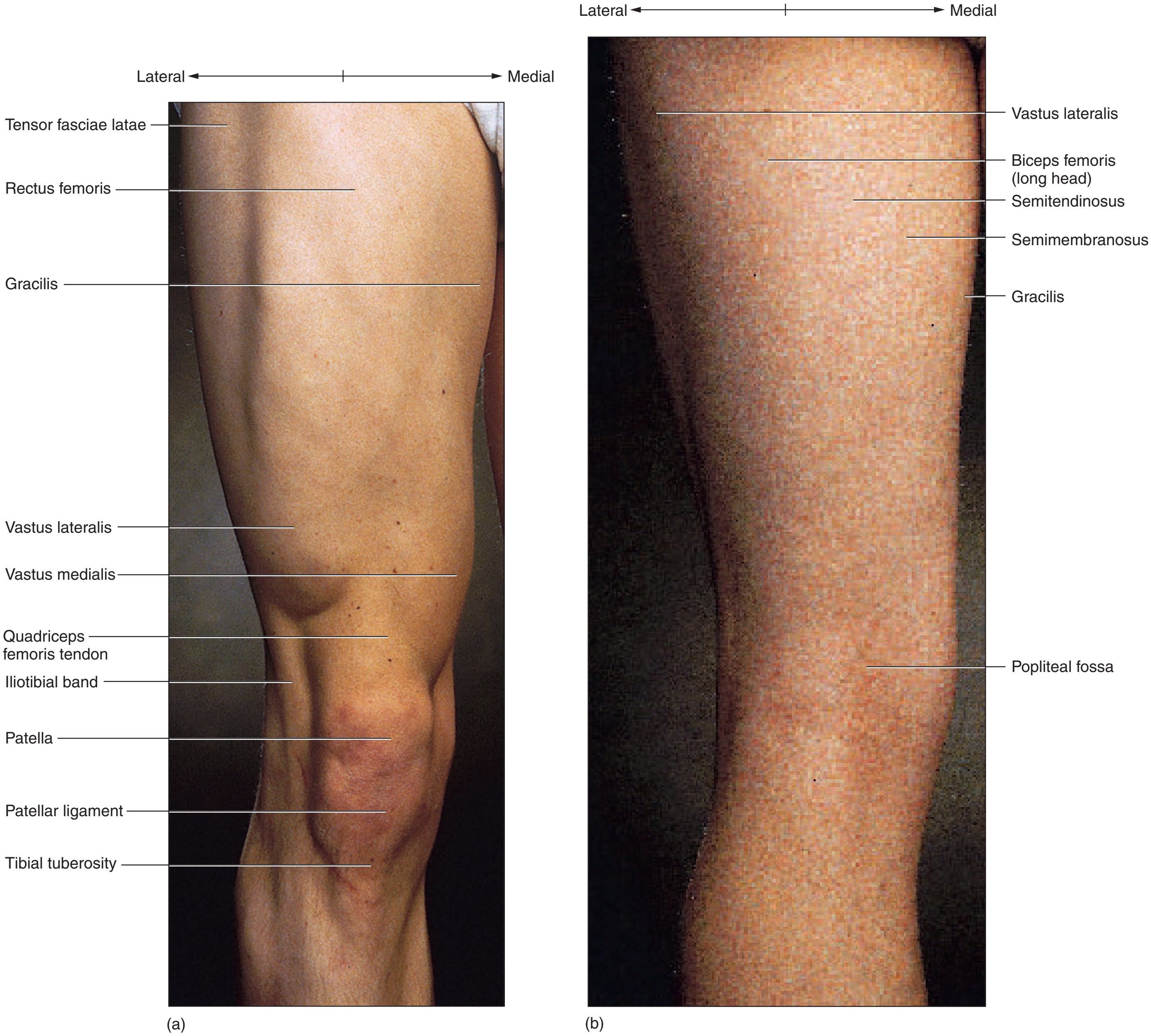

Lateral
Medial
Tensor fasciae latae
Rectus femoris
Gracilis
Vastus lateralis
Vastus medialis
Quadriceps femoris tendon
Iliotibial band
Patella
Patellar ligament
Tibial tuberosity
(a)
Lateral
Medial
Vastus lateralis
Biceps femoris (long head)
Semitendinosus
Semimembranosus
Gracilis
Popliteal fossa
(b)

Figure B.9 **The Thigh and Knee.** (*a*) Ventral aspect; (*b*) dorsal aspect.

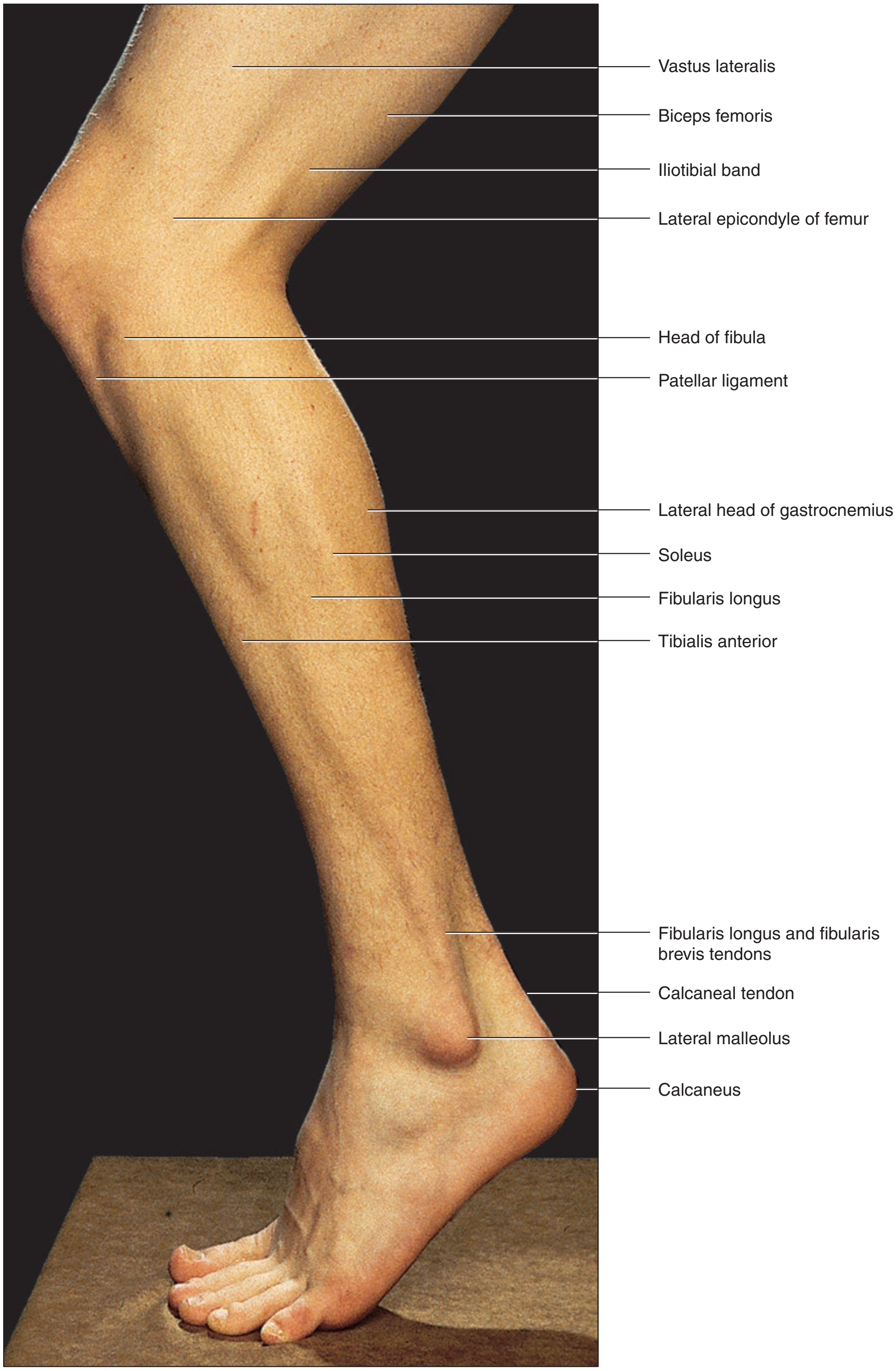

Vastus lateralis
Biceps femoris
Iliotibial band
Lateral epicondyle of femur
Head of fibula
Patellar ligament
Lateral head of gastrocnemius
Soleus
Fibularis longus
Tibialis anterior
Fibularis longus and fibularis brevis tendons
Calcaneal tendon
Lateral malleolus
Calcaneus

Figure B.10 The Leg and Foot, Lateral Aspect.

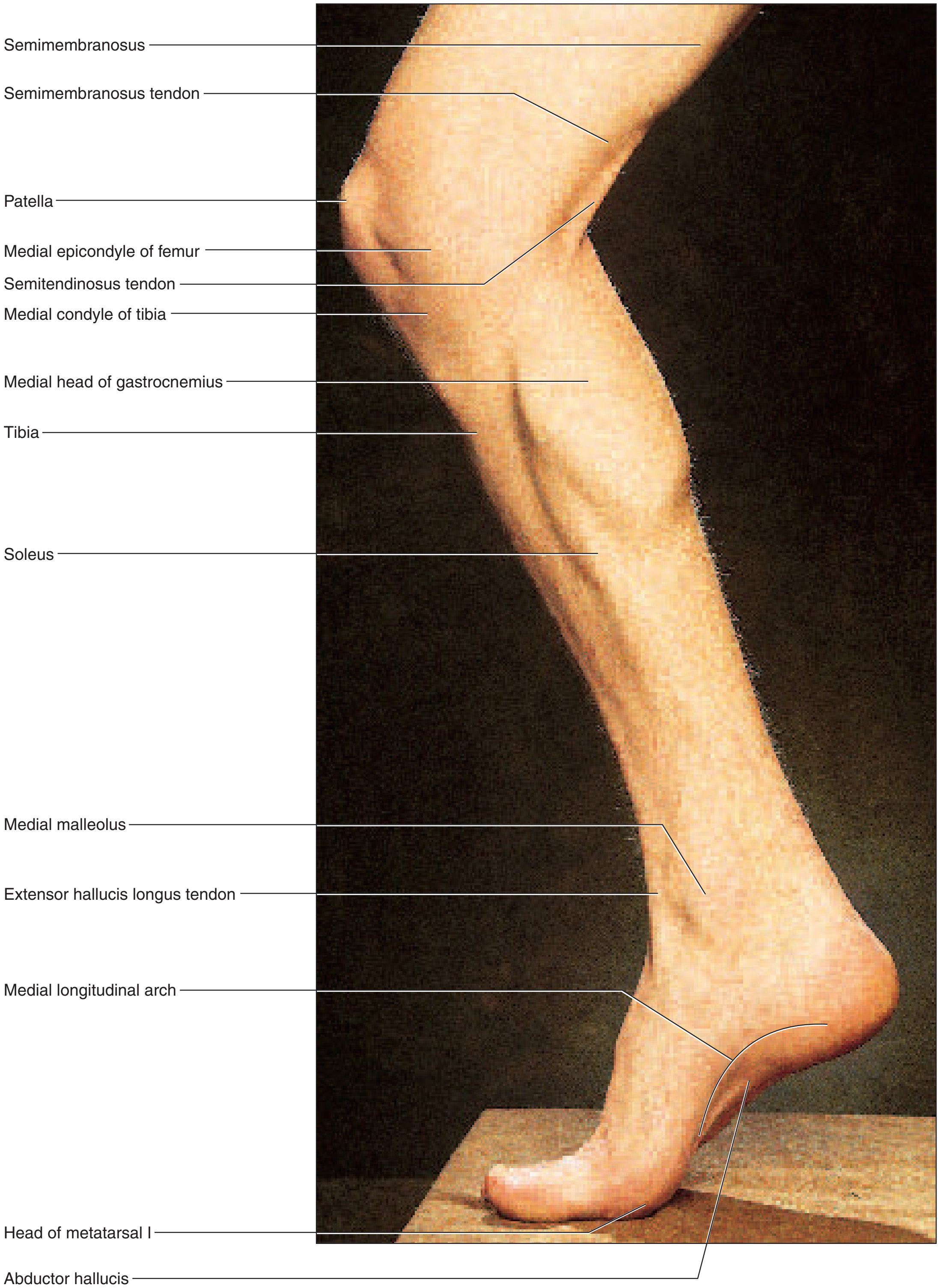

Semimembranosus
Semimembranosus tendon
Patella
Medial epicondyle of femur
Semitendinosus tendon
Medial condyle of tibia
Medial head of gastrocnemius
Tibia
Soleus
Medial malleolus
Extensor hallucis longus tendon
Medial longitudinal arch
Head of metatarsal I
Abductor hallucis

Figure B.11 The Leg and Foot, Medial Aspect.

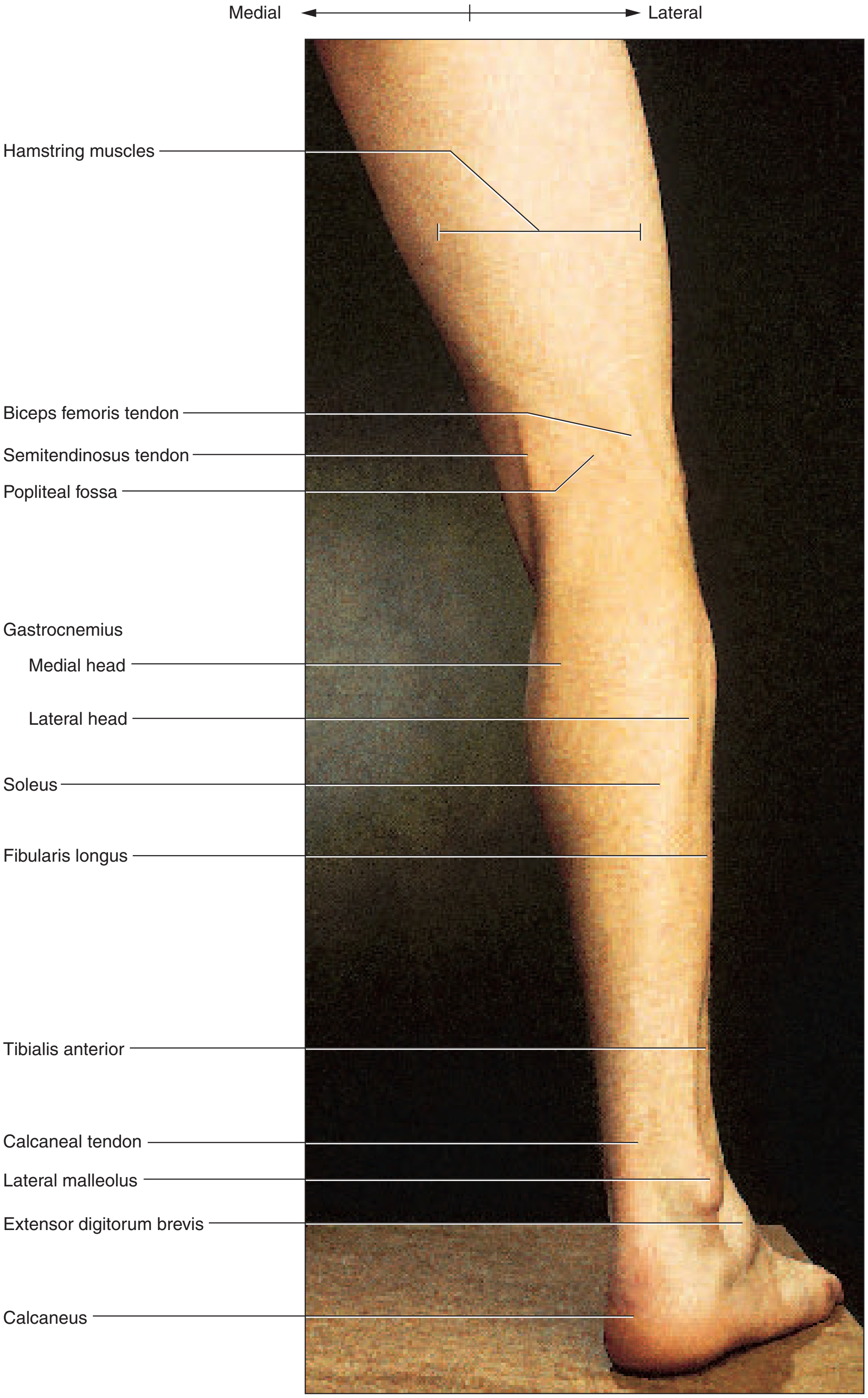
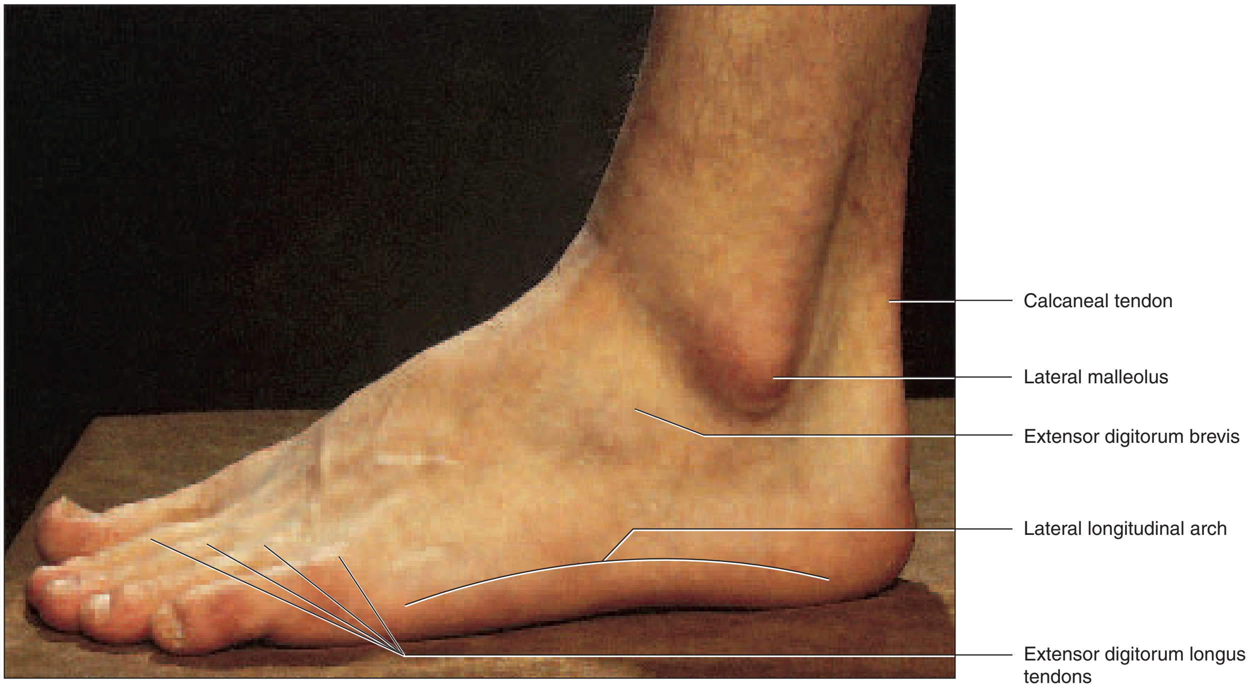
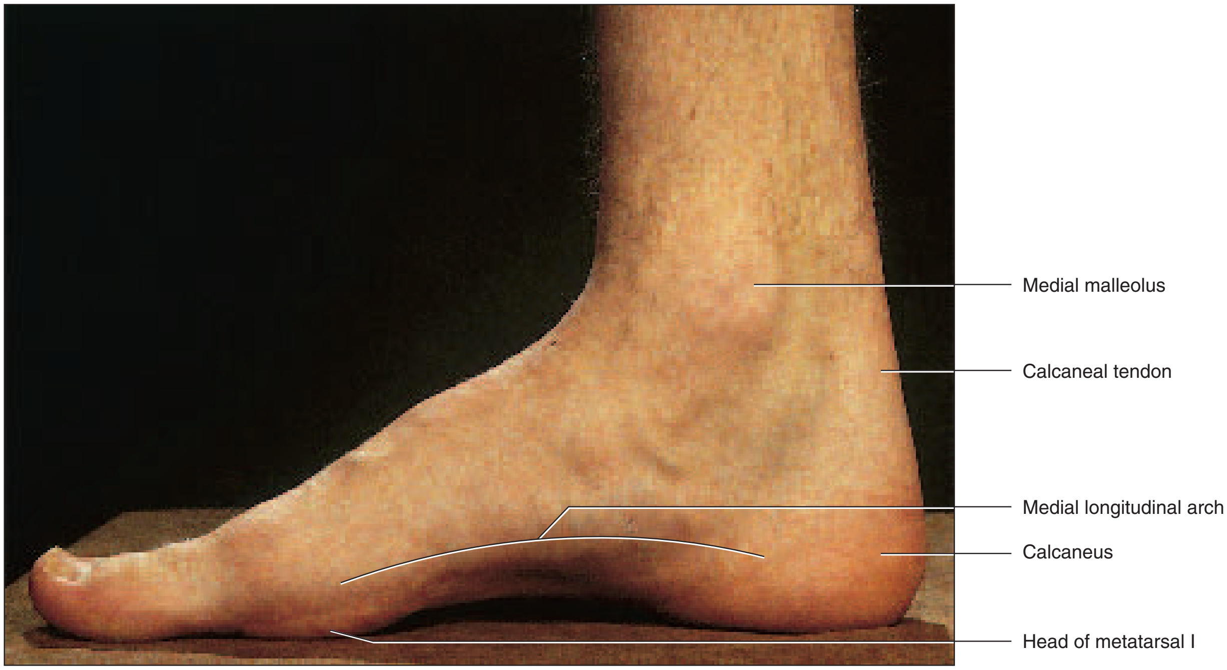

Medial
Lateral
Hamstring muscles
Biceps femoris tendon
Semitendinosus tendon
Popliteal fossa
Gastrocnemius
Medial head
Lateral head
Soleus
Fibularis longus
Tibialis anterior
Calcaneal tendon
Lateral malleolus
Extensor digitorum brevis
Calcaneus

Figure B.12 The Leg and Foot, Dorsal Aspect.


Calcaneal tendon
Lateral malleolus
Extensor digitorum brevis
Lateral longitudinal arch
Extensor digitorum longus tendons

(a)


Medial malleolus
Calcaneal tendon
Medial longitudinal arch
Calcaneus
Head of metatarsal I

(b)

Figure B.13 **The Foot.** (*a*) Lateral aspect; (*b*) medial aspect.

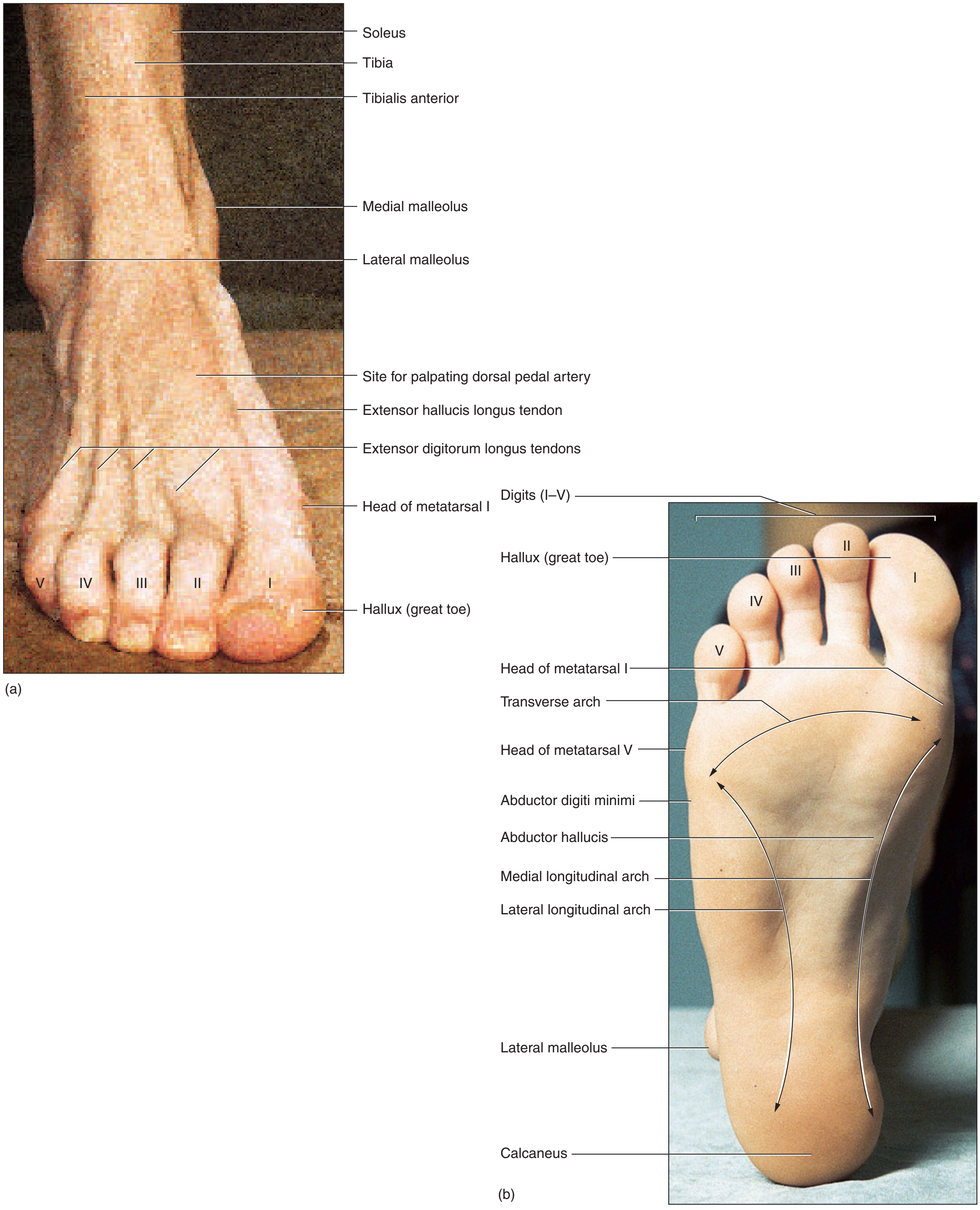

Soleus
Tibia
Tibialis anterior
Medial malleolus
Lateral malleolus
Site for palpating dorsal pedal artery
Extensor hallucis longus tendon
Extensor digitorum longus tendons
Head of metatarsal I
V
IV
III
II
I
Hallux (great toe)
(a)
Digits (I–V)
Hallux (great toe)
II
III
I
IV
V
Head of metatarsal I
Transverse arch
Head of metatarsal V
Abductor digiti minimi
Abductor hallucis
Medial longitudinal arch
Lateral longitudinal arch
Lateral malleolus
Calcaneus
(b)

Figure B.14 **The Right Foot.** (*a*) Dorsal aspect, (*b*) plantar aspect.

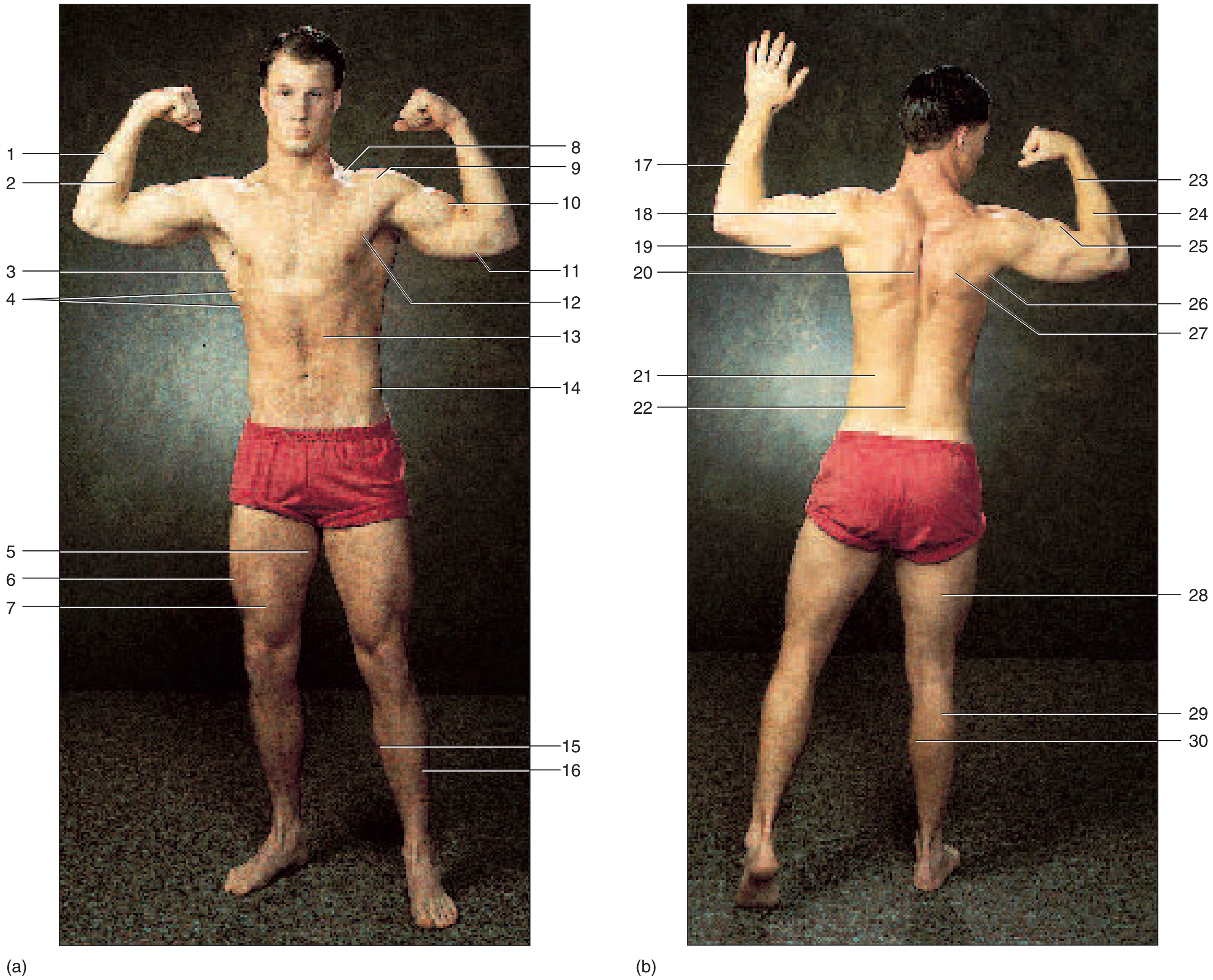


Figure B.15 **Muscle Test.** To test your knowledge of muscle anatomy, match the 30 labeled muscles on these photographs to the alphabetical list of muscles below. Answer as many as possible without referring to the previous illustrations. Some of these names will be used more than once, since the same muscle may be shown from different perspectives, and some of these names will not be used at all. The answers are in appendix B.

a. biceps brachii
b. brachioradialis
c. deltoid
d. erector spinae
e. external abdominal oblique
f. flexor carpi ulnaris
g. gastrocnemius
h. gracilis
i. hamstrings
j. infraspinatus
k. latissimus dorsi
l. pectineus
m. pectoralis major
n. rectus abdominis
o. rectus femoris
p. serratus anterior
q. soleus
r. splenius capitis
s. sternocleidomastoid
t. subscapularis
u. teres major
v. tibialis anterior
w. transversus abdominis
x. trapezius
y. triceps brachii
z. vastus lateralis

Neuromuscular junctions (SEM)

CHAPTER 11

Muscular Tissue

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Types and Characteristics of Muscular Tissue 408
- Universal Characteristics of Muscle 408
- Skeletal Muscle 408

Microscopic Anatomy of Skeletal Muscle 409
- The Muscle Fiber 409
- Myofilaments 409
- Striations 411

The Nerve-Muscle Relationship 412
- Motor Neurons 412
- The Motor Unit 412
- The Neuromuscular Junction 413
- Electrically Excitable Cells 415

Behavior of Skeletal Muscle Fibers 416
- Excitation 417
- Excitation-Contraction Coupling 417
- Contraction 417
- Relaxation 422
- The Length-Tension Relationship and Muscle Tone 422

Behavior of Whole Muscles 423
- Threshold, Latent Period, and Twitch 423
- Contraction Strength of Twitches 424
- Isometric and Isotonic Contraction 425

Muscle Metabolism 427
- ATP Sources 427
- Fatigue and Endurance 428
- Oxygen Debt 429
- Physiological Classes of Muscle Fibers 429
- Muscular Strength and Conditioning 431

Cardiac and Smooth Muscle 432
- Cardiac Muscle 432
- Smooth Muscle 433

Chapter Review 438

INSIGHTS

11.1 Clinical Application: Neuromuscular Toxins and Paralysis 414

11.2 Clinical Application: Rigor Mortis 422

11.3 Medical History: Galvani, Volta, and Animal Electricity 424

11.4 Clinical Application: Muscular Dystrophy and Myasthenia Gravis 437

Brushing Up

To understand this chapter, it is important that you understand or brush up on the following concepts:

- Aerobic and anaerobic metabolism (p. 86)
- The functions of membrane proteins, especially receptors and ion gates (p. 100)
- Structure of a neuron (p. 175)
- General histology of the three types of muscle (p. 176)
- Desmosomes and gap junctions (p. 179)
- Connective tissues of a muscle (p. 326)

Movement is a fundamental characteristic of all living things, but reaches its highest development in animals because of their muscular tissue. Muscular tissue is composed of elongated cells that contract when stimulated. A muscle cell is essentially a device for converting the chemical energy of ATP into the mechanical energy of contraction. This chapter discusses contraction at the cellular and molecular levels and explains the basis of such aspects of muscle performance as warm-up, strength, endurance, and fatigue. These phenomena have obvious relevance to athletic performance, and they become very important when old age or lack of physical conditioning interferes with a person's ability to carry out everyday motor tasks. The effects of old age on the muscular system are discussed in chapter 29.

The three types of muscle tissue—*skeletal, cardiac,* and *smooth*—were described and compared in chapter 5. The expression "muscular system" refers only to skeletal muscle. This chapter is concerned primarily with the microscopic anatomy and physiology of skeletal muscle. Cardiac and smooth muscle are discussed more briefly to compare their properties and functions with skeletal muscle. Cardiac muscle is discussed more extensively in chapter 19.

Types and Characteristics of Muscular Tissue

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the physiological properties that all muscle types have in common;
- list the defining characteristics of skeletal muscle; and
- describe the elastic functions of the connective tissue components of a muscle.

Universal Characteristics of Muscle

The functions of muscular tissue were detailed in the preceding chapter: movement, stability, communication, control of body openings and passages, and heat production. To carry out those functions, all muscular tissue has the following characteristics:

- **Responsiveness (excitability).** Responsiveness is a property of all living cells, but muscle and nerve cells have developed this property to the highest degree. When stimulated by chemical signals (neurotransmitters), stretch, and other stimuli, muscle cells respond with electrical changes across the plasma membrane.
- **Conductivity.** Stimulation of a muscle fiber produces more than a local effect. The local electrical change triggers a wave of excitation that travels rapidly along the muscle fiber and initiates processes leading to muscle contraction.
- **Contractility.** Muscle fibers are unique in their ability to shorten substantially when stimulated. This enables them to pull on bones and other tissues and create movement of the body and its parts.
- **Extensibility.** In order to contract, a muscle cell must also be extensible—able to stretch again between contractions. Most cells rupture if they are stretched even a little, but skeletal muscle fibers can stretch to as much as three times their contracted length.
- **Elasticity.** When a muscle cell is stretched and the tension is then released, it recoils to its original resting length. Elasticity, commonly misunderstood as the ability to stretch, refers to this tendency of a muscle cell (or other structures) to return to the original length when tension is released.

Skeletal Muscle

Skeletal muscle may be defined as voluntary striated muscle that is usually attached to one or more bones. A typical skeletal muscle cell is about 100 μm in diameter and 3 cm long; some are as thick as 500 μm and as long as 30 cm. Because of their extraordinary length, skeletal muscle cells are usually called *muscle fibers* or *myofibers.* A skeletal muscle fiber exhibits alternating light and dark transverse bands, or **striations,** that reflect the overlapping arrangement of the internal contractile proteins (fig. 11.1). Skeletal muscle is called **voluntary** because it is usually subject to conscious control. The other types of muscle are **involuntary** (not usually under conscious control), and they are never attached to bones.

Recall from chapter 10 that a skeletal muscle is composed not only of muscular tissue, but also of fibrous connective tissue: the *endomysium* that surrounds each muscle fiber, the *perimysium* that bundles muscle fibers together into fascicles, and the *epimysium* that encloses the entire muscle. These connective tissues are continuous with the collagen fibers of tendons and those, in turn,

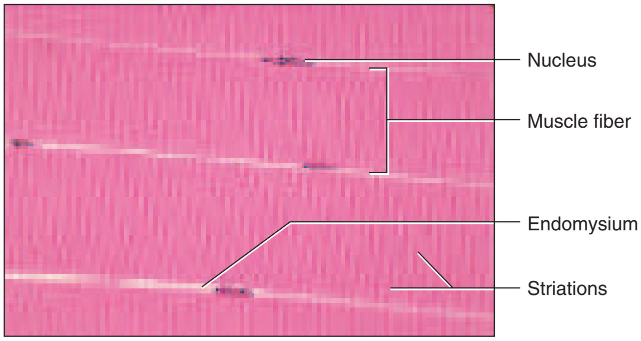


Figure 11.1 Skeletal Muscle Fibers. Note the striations.

with the collagen of the bone matrix. Thus, when a muscle fiber contracts, it pulls on these collagen fibers and moves a bone.

Collagen is not excitable or contractile, but it is somewhat extensible and elastic. It stretches slightly under tension and recoils when released. Because of this elasticity and because the connective tissue components are connected to each other in a linear series, the connective tissues are called the *series-elastic components* of a muscle. Their elasticity helps to return muscles to their resting lengths when contraction ceases. Elastic recoil of the tendons adds significantly to the power output and efficiency of the muscles.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

1. Define *responsiveness, conductivity, contractility, extensibility,* and *elasticity.* State why each of these properties is necessary for muscle function.
2. How is skeletal muscle different from the other types of muscle?
3. Why would the skeletal muscles perform poorly without their series-elastic components?

Microscopic Anatomy of Skeletal Muscle

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the structural components of a muscle fiber;
- relate the striations of a muscle fiber to the overlapping arrangement of its protein filaments; and
- name the major proteins of a muscle fiber and state the function of each.

The Muscle Fiber

In order to understand muscle function, you must know how the organelles and macromolecules of a muscle fiber are arranged. Perhaps more than any other cell, a muscle fiber exemplifies the adage, Form follows function. It has a complex, tightly organized internal structure in which even the spatial arrangement of protein molecules is closely tied to its contractile function.

Muscle fibers have multiple flattened or sausage-shaped nuclei pressed against the inside of the plasma membrane. This unusual condition results from their embryonic development—several stem cells called **myoblasts**[1] fuse to produce each muscle fiber, with each myoblast contributing a nucleus to the mature fiber. Some myoblasts remain as unspecialized **satellite cells** between the muscle fiber and endomysium. When a muscle is injured, satellite cells can multiply and produce new muscle fibers to some degree. Most muscle repair, however, is by fibrosis rather than regeneration of functional muscle.

The plasma membrane, called the **sarcolemma,**[2] has tunnel-like infoldings called **transverse (T) tubules** that penetrate through the fiber and emerge on the other side. The function of a T tubule is to carry an electrical current from the surface of the cell to the interior when the cell is stimulated. The cytoplasm, called **sarcoplasm,** is occupied mainly by long protein bundles called **myofibrils** about 1 μm in diameter (fig. 11.2). Most other organelles of the cell, such as mitochondria and smooth endoplasmic reticulum (ER), are located between adjacent myofibrils. The sarcoplasm also contains an abundance of **glycogen,** which provides stored energy for the muscle to use during exercise, and a red pigment called **myoglobin,** which binds oxygen until it is needed for muscular activity.

The smooth ER of a muscle fiber is called **sarcoplasmic reticulum (SR).** It forms a network around each myofibril, and alongside the T tubules it exhibits dilated sacs called **terminal cisternae.** The SR is a reservoir for calcium ions; it has gated channels in its membrane that can release a flood of calcium into the cytosol, where the calcium activates the muscle contraction process.

Myofilaments

Let's return to the myofibrils just mentioned—the long protein cords that fill most of the muscle cell—and look at their structure at a finer, molecular level. It is here that the key to muscle contraction lies. Each myofibril is a bundle of parallel protein microfilaments called **myofilaments.** There are three kinds of myofilaments:

1. **Thick filaments** (fig. 11.3*a, b*) are about 15 nm in diameter. Each is made of several hundred molecules of a protein called **myosin.** A myosin molecule is shaped like a golf club, with two polypeptides intertwined to form a shaftlike *tail* and a double globular *head,* or *cross-bridge,* projecting from it at an angle. A thick filament may be likened to a bundle of 200 to 500 such "golf clubs," with their heads directed outward in a spiral array around the bundle. The heads on one half of the thick filament angle to the left, and the heads on the other half angle to the right; in the middle is a *bare zone* with no heads.
2. **Thin filaments** (fig. 11.3*c, d*), 7 nm in diameter, are composed primarily of two intertwined strands of a protein called **fibrous (F) actin.** Each F actin is like

---

[1] *myo* = muscle + *blast* = precursor

[2] *sarco* = flesh, muscle + *lemma* = husk

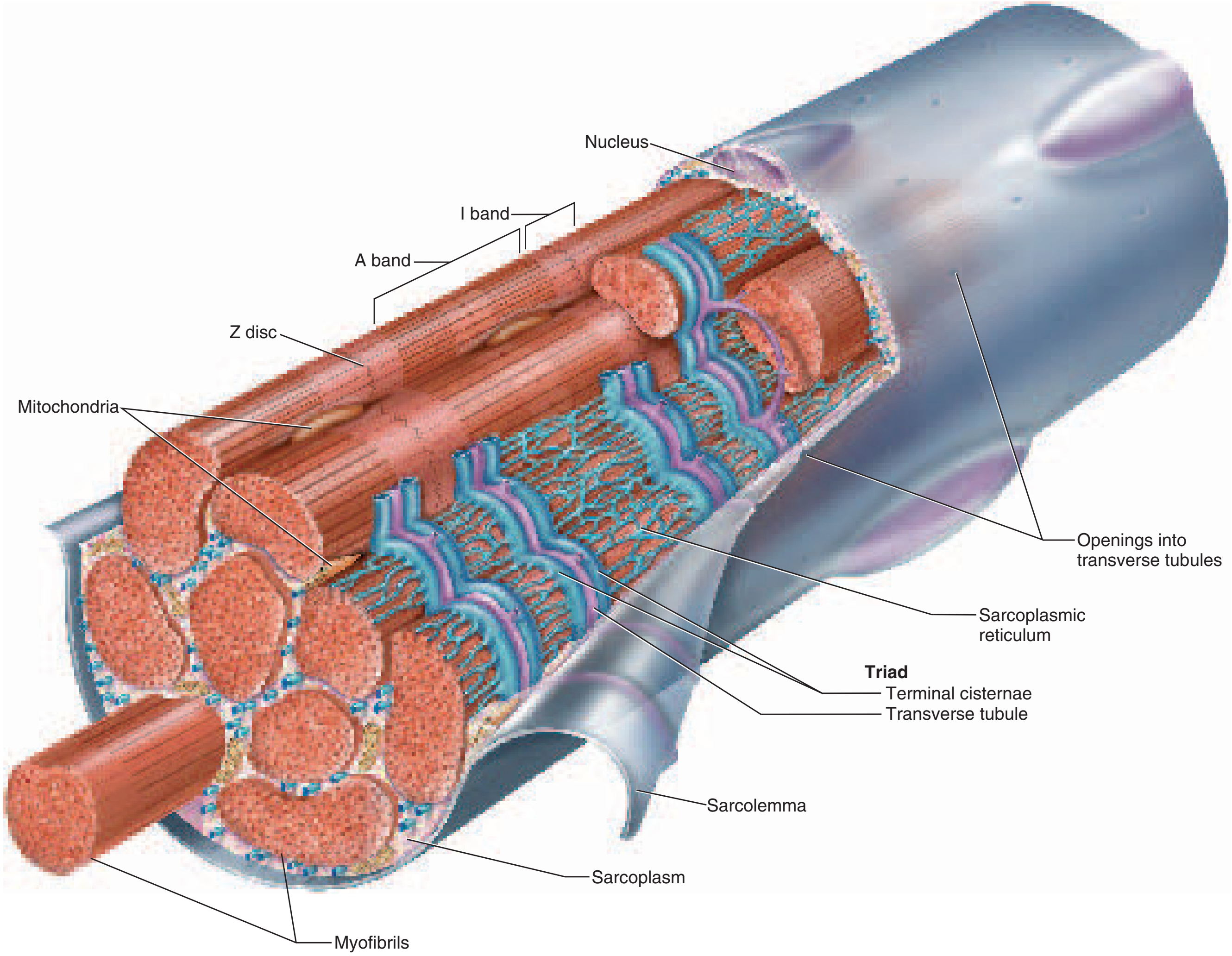


Figure 11.2 **Structure of a Skeletal Muscle Fiber.** This is a single cell containing 11 myofibrils (9 shown at the *left end* and 2 cut off at midfiber).

a bead necklace—a string of subunits called **globular (G) actin.** Each G actin has an **active site** that can bind to the head of a myosin molecule.

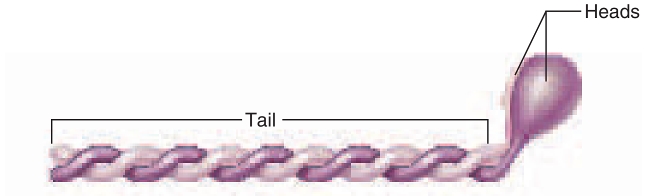
A thin filament also has 40 to 60 molecules of yet another protein called **tropomyosin.** When a muscle fiber is relaxed, tropomyosin blocks the active sites of six or seven G actins, and prevents myosin cross-bridges from binding to them. Each tropomyosin molecule, in turn, has a smaller calcium-binding protein called **troponin** bound to it.

3. **Elastic filaments** (fig. 11.4*b, c*), 1 nm in diameter, are made of a huge springy protein called **titin**[3] **(connectin).** They run through the core of a thick filament, emerge from the end of it, and connect it to a structure called the *Z disc,* explained shortly. They help to keep thick and thin filaments aligned with each other, resist overstretching of a muscle, and help the cell recoil to resting length after it is stretched.

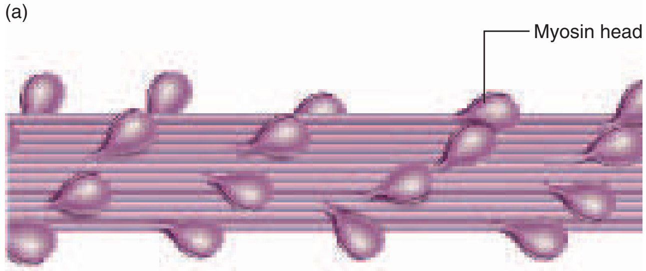
Myosin and actin are called the **contractile proteins** of muscle because they do the work of shortening the muscle fiber. Tropomyosin and troponin are called the **regulatory proteins** because they act like a switch to determine when it can contract and when it cannot. Several clues as to how they do this may be apparent from what has already been said—calcium ions are released into the sarcoplasm to activate contraction; calcium binds to troponin; troponin is

---

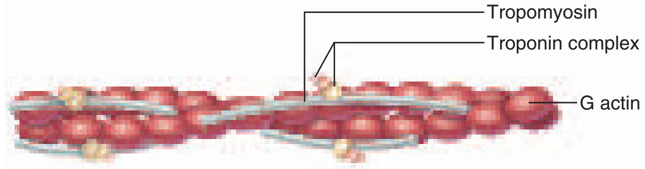
[3] *tit* = giant + *in* = protein



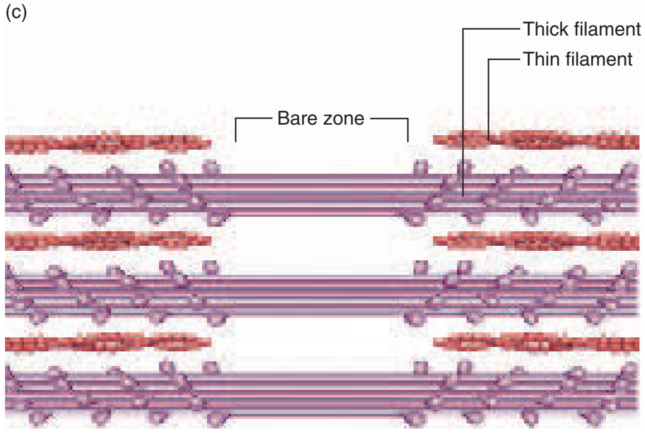
Myosin molecule
(a)



Thick filament
(b)



Thin filament
(c)



Portion of a sarcomere showing the overlap of thick and thin filaments
(d)

Figure 11.3 Molecular Structure of Thick and Thin Filaments. (*a*) A single myosin molecule consists of two intertwined polypeptides forming a filamentous tail and a double globular head. (*b*) A thick filament consists of 200 to 500 myosin molecules bundled together with the heads projecting outward in a spiral array. (*c*) A thin filament consists of two intertwined chains of G actin molecules, smaller filamentous tropomyosin molecules, and a three-part protein called troponin associated with the tropomyosin. (*d*) A region of overlap between the thick and thin filaments.

also bound to tropomyosin; and tropomyosin blocks the active sites of actin, so that myosin cannot bind to it when the muscle is not stimulated. Perhaps you are already forming some idea of the contraction mechanism to be explained shortly.

Striations

Myosin and actin are not unique to muscle; these proteins occur in all cells, where they function in cellular motility, mitosis, and transport of intracellular materials. In skeletal and cardiac muscle they are especially abundant, however, and are organized in a precise array that accounts for the striations of these two muscle types (fig. 11.4).

Striated muscle has dark **A bands** alternating with lighter **I bands.** (*A* stands for *anisotropic* and *I* for *isotropic,* which refers to the way these bands affect polarized light. To help remember which band is which, think "d*A*rk" and "l*I*ght.") Each A band consists of thick filaments lying side by side. Part of the A band, where thick and thin filaments overlap, is especially dark. In this region, each thick filament is surrounded by thin filaments. In the middle of the A band, there is a lighter region called the **H band,**[4] into which the thin filaments do not reach.

Each light I band is bisected by a dark narrow **Z disc**[5] (Z line) composed of the protein connectin. The Z disc provides anchorage for the thin filaments and elastic filaments. Each segment of a myofibril from one Z disc to the next is called a **sarcomere**[6] (SAR-co-meer), the functional contractile unit of the muscle fiber. A muscle shortens because its individual sarcomeres shorten and pull the Z discs closer to each other, and the Z discs are connected to the sarcolemma by way of the cytoskeleton. As the Z discs are pulled closer together during contraction, they pull on the sarcolemma to achieve overall shortening of the cell.

The terminology of muscle fiber structure is reviewed in table 11.1; this table may be a useful reference as you study the mechanism of contraction.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

4. What special terms are given to the plasma membrane, cytoplasm, and smooth ER of a muscle cell?
5. What is the difference between a myofilament and a myofibril?
6. List five proteins of the myofilaments and describe their physical arrangement.
7. Sketch the overlapping pattern of myofilaments to explain how they account for the A bands, I bands, H bands, and Z discs.

---

[4] H = *helle* = bright
[5] Z = *Zwichenscheibe* = "between disc"
[6] *sarco* = muscle + *mere* = part, segment

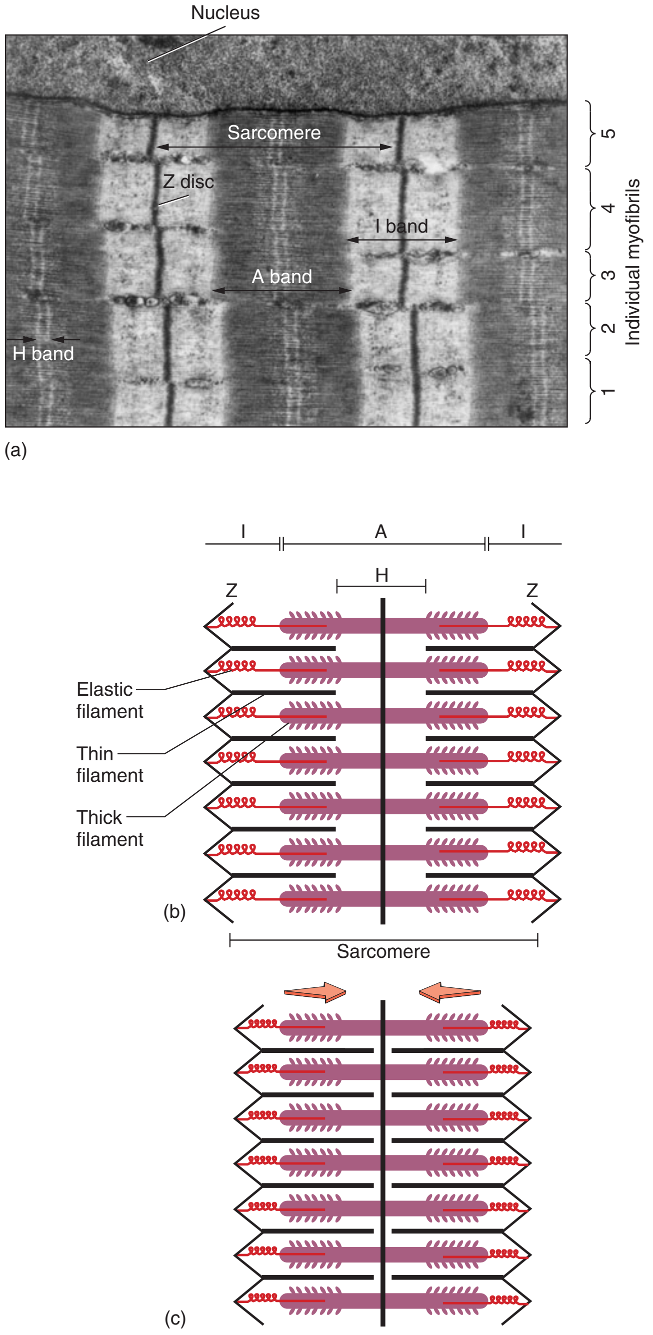


Figure 11.4 Muscle Striations and Their Molecular Basis. (*a*) Five myofibrils of a single muscle fiber, showing the striations in the relaxed state. (*b*) The overlapping pattern of thick and thin myofilaments that accounts for the striations seen in figure *a*. (*c*) The pattern of myofilaments in a contracting muscle fiber. Note that all myofilaments are the same length as before, but they overlap to a greater extent.

Which band narrows or disappears when muscle contracts?

The Nerve-Muscle Relationship

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- explain what a motor unit is and how it relates to muscle contraction;
- describe the structure of a junction where a nerve fiber meets a muscle fiber; and
- explain why a cell has an electrical charge difference across its plasma membrane and, in general terms, how this relates to muscle contraction.

Skeletal muscle never contracts unless it is stimulated by a nerve (or artificially with electrodes). If its nerve connections are severed or poisoned, a muscle is paralyzed. If innervation is not restored, the paralyzed muscle undergoes a shrinkage called *denervation atrophy.* Thus, muscle contraction cannot be understood without first understanding the relationship between nerve and muscle cells.

Motor Neurons

Skeletal muscles are innervated by *somatic motor neurons.* The cell bodies of these neurons are in the brainstem and spinal cord. Their axons, called **somatic motor fibers,** lead to the skeletal muscles. At its distal end, each somatic motor fiber branches about 200 times, with each branch leading to a different muscle fiber (fig. 11.5). Each muscle fiber is innervated by only one motor neuron.

The Motor Unit

When a nerve signal approaches the end of an axon, it spreads out over all of its terminal branches and stimulates all the muscle fibers supplied by them. Thus, these muscle fibers contract in unison. Since they behave as a single functional unit, one nerve fiber and all the muscle fibers innervated by it are called a **motor unit.** The muscle fibers of a single motor unit are not all clustered together but are dispersed throughout a muscle (fig. 11.6). Thus, when they are stimulated, they cause a weak contraction over a wide area—not just a localized twitch in one small region.

Earlier it was stated that a motor nerve fiber supplies about 200 muscle fibers, but this is just a representative number. Where fine control is needed, we have *small motor units.* In the muscles of eye movement, for example, there are only 3 to 6 muscle fibers per nerve fiber. Small motor units are not very strong, but they provide the fine degree of control needed for subtle movements. They also have small neurons that are easily stimulated. Where strength is more important than fine control, we have large motor units. The gastrocnemius muscle of the calf, for example, has about 1,000 muscle fibers per nerve fiber.

Table 11.1 Structural Components of a Muscle Fiber

Term	Definition
General Structure and Contents of the Muscle Fiber	
Sarcolemma	The plasma membrane of a muscle fiber
Sarcoplasm	The cytoplasm of a muscle fiber
Glycogen	An energy-storage polysaccharide abundant in muscle
Myoglobin	An oxygen-storing red pigment of muscle
T tubule	A tunnel-like extension of the sarcolemma extending from one side of the muscle fiber to the other; conveys electrical signals from the cell surface to its interior
Sarcoplasmic reticulum	The smooth ER of a muscle fiber; a Ca^{2+} reservoir
Terminal cisternae	The dilated ends of sarcoplasmic reticulum adjacent to a T tubule
Myofibrils	
Myofibril	A bundle of protein microfilaments (myofilaments)
Myofilament	A threadlike complex of several hundred contractile protein molecules
Thick filament	A myofilament about 11 nm in diameter composed of bundled myosin molecules
Elastic filament	A myofilament about 1 nm in diameter composed of a giant protein, titin, that emerges from the core of a thick filament and links it to a Z disc
Thin filament	A myofilament about 5 to 6 nm in diameter composed of actin, troponin, and tropomyosin
Myosin	A protein with a long shaftlike tail and a globular head; constitutes the thick myofilament
F actin	A fibrous protein made of a long chain of G actin molecules twisted into a helix; main protein of the thin myofilament
G actin	A globular subunit of F actin with an active site for binding a myosin head
Regulatory proteins	Troponin and tropomyosin, proteins that do not directly engage in the sliding filament process of muscle contraction but regulate myosin-actin binding
Tropomyosin	A regulatory protein that lies in the groove of F actin and, in relaxed muscle, blocks the myosin-binding active sites
Troponin	A regulatory protein associated with tropomyosin that acts as a calcium receptor
Titin	A springy protein that forms the elastic filaments and Z discs
Striations and Sarcomeres	
Striations	Alternating light and dark transverse bands across a myofibril
A band	Dark band formed by parallel thick filaments that partly overlap the thin filaments
H band	A lighter region in the middle of an A band that contains thick filaments only; thin filaments do not reach this far into the A band in relaxed muscle
I band	A light band composed of thin filaments only
Z disc	A protein disc to which thin filaments and elastic filaments are anchored at each end of a sarcomere; appears as a narrow dark line in the middle of the I band
Sarcomere	The distance from one Z disc to the next; the contractile unit of a muscle fiber

Large motor units are much stronger, but have larger neurons that are harder to stimulate, and they do not produce such fine control.

One advantage of having multiple motor units in a muscle is that they are able to "work in shifts." Muscle fibers fatigue when subjected to continual stimulation. If all of the fibers in one of your postural muscles fatigued at once, for example, you might collapse. To prevent this, other motor units take over while the fatigued ones rest, and the muscle as a whole can sustain long-term contraction. The role of motor units in muscular strength is discussed later in the chapter.

The Neuromuscular Junction

The functional connection between a nerve fiber and its target cell is called a **synapse** (SIN-aps). When the second cell is a muscle fiber, the synapse is called a **neuromuscular**

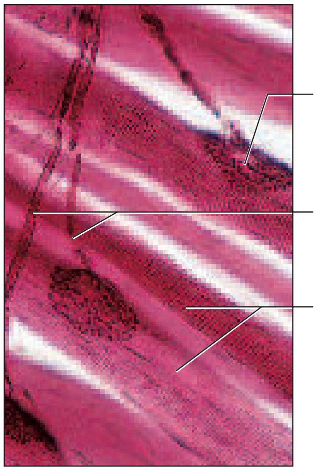


Figure 11.5 **Innervation of Skeletal Muscle.**

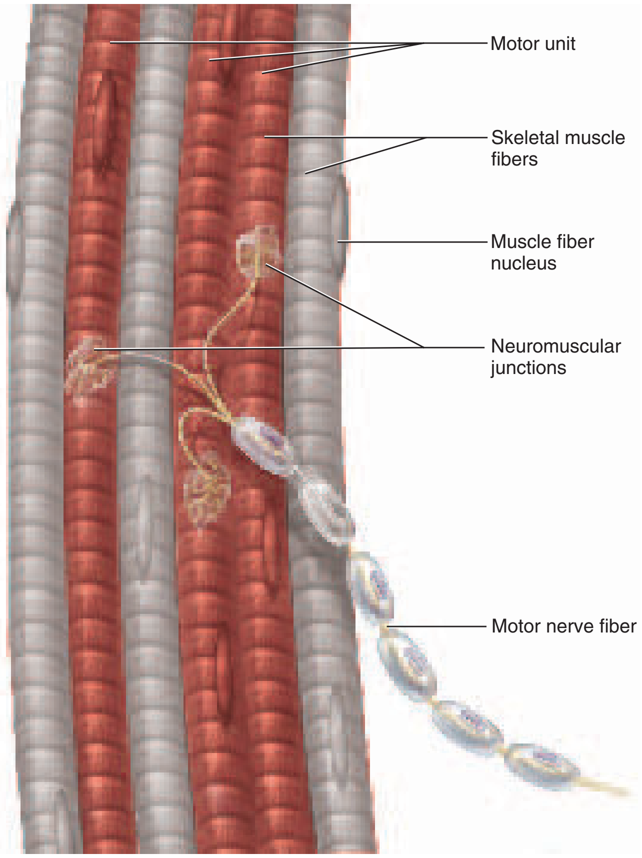


Figure 11.6 **A Motor Unit.** The motor nerve fiber shown here branches to supply those muscle fibers shown in color. The other muscle fibers *(gray)* belong to other motor units.

junction (fig. 11.7). Each branch of a motor nerve fiber ends in a bulbous swelling called a **synaptic** (sih-NAP-tic) **knob,** which is nestled in a depression on the sarcolemma called the **motor end plate.** The two cells do not actually touch each other but are separated by a tiny gap, the **synaptic cleft,** about 60 to 100 nm wide. A third cell, called a *Schwann cell,* envelops the entire neuromuscular junction and isolates it from the surrounding tissue fluid.

The electrical signal (nerve impulse) traveling down a nerve fiber cannot cross the synaptic cleft like a spark jumping between two electrodes—rather, it causes the nerve fiber to release a neurotransmitter that stimulates the next cell. Although many chemicals function as neurotransmitters, the one released at the neuromuscular junction is **acetylcholine** (ASS-eh-till-CO-leen) **(ACh).** ACh is stored in spherical organelles called **synaptic vesicles.**

Directly across from the synaptic vesicles, the sarcolemma of the muscle cell exhibits infoldings called *junctional folds,* about 1 μm deep. The muscle fiber has about 50 million membrane proteins called **ACh receptors,** which bind the acetylcholine release by the nerve fiber. Most ACh receptors are concentrated in and near these junctional folds. Very few ACh receptors are found anywhere else on a muscle fiber. Junctional folds increase the surface area for receptor sites and ensure a more effective response to ACh. The muscle nuclei beneath the junctional folds are specifically dedicated to the synthesis of ACh receptors and other proteins of the motor end plate. A deficiency of ACh receptors leads to muscle paralysis in the disease *myasthenia gravis* (see insight 11.4, p. 437).

The entire muscle fiber is surrounded by a *basal lamina* that passes through the synaptic cleft and virtually fills it. Both the sarcolemma and that part of the basal lamina in the cleft contain an enzyme called **acetylcholinesterase** (ASS-eh-till-CO-lin-ESS-ter-ase) **(AChE),** which breaks down ACh, shuts down the stimulation of muscle fibers, and allows a muscle to relax (see insight 11.1).

Insight 11.1 Clinical Application

Neuromuscular Toxins and Paralysis

Toxins that interfere with synaptic function can paralyze the muscles. Some pesticides, for example, contain *cholinesterase inhibitors* that bind to acetylcholinesterase and prevent it from degrading ACh. This causes *spastic paralysis,* a state of continual contraction of the muscle that poses the danger of suffocation if the laryngeal and respiratory muscles are affected. A person poisoned by a cholinesterase inhibitor must be kept lying down and calm, and sudden noises or other disturbances must be avoided. A minor startle response can escalate to dangerous muscle spasms in a poisoned individual.

Tetanus ("lockjaw") is a form of spastic paralysis caused by a toxin from the bacterium *Clostridium tetani.* In the spinal cord, an inhibitory neurotransmitter called glycine stops motor neurons from producing unwanted muscle contractions. The tetanus toxin blocks glycine release and thus allows overstimulation of the muscles. (At the cost of

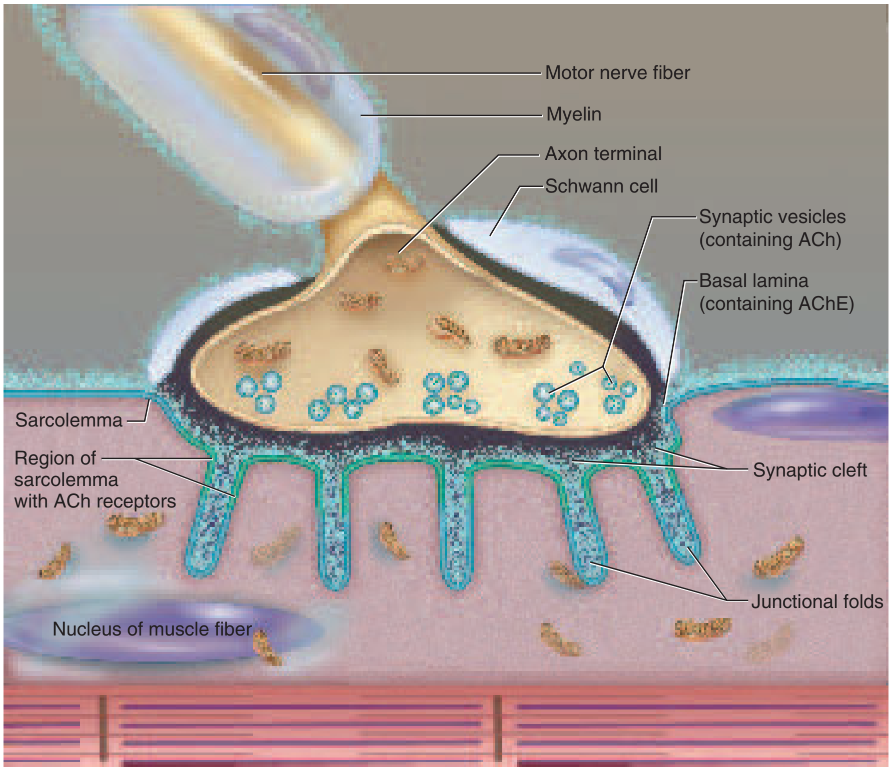


Figure 11.7 **A Neuromuscular Junction.**

some confusion, the word *tetanus* also refers to a completely different and normal muscle phenomenon discussed later in this chapter.)

Flaccid paralysis is a state in which the muscles are limp and cannot contract. It can cause respiratory arrest when it affects the thoracic muscles. Flaccid paralysis can be caused by poisons such as curare (cue-RAH-ree) that compete with ACh for receptor sites but do not stimulate the muscle. Curare is extracted from certain plants and used by some South American natives to poison blowgun darts. It has been used to treat muscle spasms in some neurological disorders and to relax abdominal muscles for surgery, but other muscle relaxants have now replaced curare for most purposes.

You must be very familiar with the foregoing terms to understand how a nerve stimulates a muscle fiber and how the fiber contracts. They are summarized in table 11.2 for your later reference.

Electrically Excitable Cells

Muscle fibers and neurons are regarded as *electrically excitable cells* because their plasma membranes exhibit voltage changes in response to stimulation. The study of the electrical activity of cells, called **electrophysiology,** is a key to understanding nervous activity, muscle contraction, the heartbeat, and other physiological phenomena. The details of electrophysiology are presented in chapter 12, but a few fundamental principles must be introduced here so you can understand muscle excitation.

In an unstimulated (resting) cell, there are more anions (negative ions) on the inside of the plasma membrane than on the outside. Thus, the plasma membrane is electrically **polarized,** or charged, like a little battery. In a resting muscle cell, there is an excess of sodium ions (Na^+) in the extracellular fluid (ECF) outside the cell and an excess of potassium ions (K^+) in the intracellular fluid (ICF) within the cell. Also in the ICF, and unable to penetrate the plasma membrane, are anions such as proteins, nucleic acids, and phosphates. These anions make the inside of the plasma membrane negatively charged by comparison to its outer surface.

A difference in electrical charge from one point to another is called an electrical potential, or voltage. The difference is typically 12 volts (V) for a car battery and 1.5 V

Table 11.2 Components of the Neuromuscular Junction

Term	Definition
Neuromuscular junction	A functional connection between the distal end of a nerve fiber and the middle of a muscle fiber; consists of a synaptic knob and motor end plate
Synaptic knob	The dilated tip of a nerve fiber that contains synaptic vesicles
Motor end plate	A depression in the sarcolemma, near the middle of the muscle fiber, that receives the synaptic knob; contains acetylcholine receptors
Synaptic cleft	A gap of about 60 to 100 nm between the synaptic knob and motor end plate
Synaptic vesicle	A secretory vesicle in the synaptic knob that contains acetylcholine
Junctional folds	Invaginations of the membrane of the motor end plate where ACh receptors are especially concentrated; located across from the active zones
Acetylcholine (ACh)	The neurotransmitter released by a somatic motor fiber that stimulates a skeletal muscle fiber (also used elsewhere in the nervous system)
ACh receptor	An integral protein in the sarcolemma of the motor end plate that binds to ACh
Acetylcholinesterase (AChE)	An enzyme in the sarcolemma and basal lamina of the muscle fiber in the synaptic region; responsible for degrading ACh and stopping the stimulation of the muscle fiber

for a flashlight battery, for example. On a sarcolemma of a muscle cell, the voltage is much smaller, about −90 millivolts (mV), but critically important to life. (The negative sign refers to the relative charge on the intracellular side of the membrane.) This voltage is called the **resting membrane potential (RMP).** It is maintained by the sodium-potassium pump, as explained in chapter 3.

When a nerve or muscle cell is stimulated, dramatic things happen electrically, as we shall soon see in our study of the excitation of muscle. Ion gates in the plasma membrane open and Na^+ instantly diffuses down its concentration gradient into the cell. These cations override the negative charges in the ICF, so the inside of the plasma membrane briefly becomes positive. Immediately, Na^+ gates close and K^+ gates open. K^+ rushes out of the cell, partly because it is repelled by the positive sodium charge and partly because it is more concentrated in the ICF than in the ECF, so it diffuses down its concentration gradient when it has the opportunity. The loss of positive potassium ions from the cell turns the inside of the membrane negative again. This quick up-and-down voltage shift, from the negative RMP to a positive value and then back to a negative value again, is called an **action potential.** The RMP is a stable voltage seen in a "waiting" cell, whereas the action potential is a quickly fluctuating voltage seen in an active, stimulated cell.

Action potentials have a way of perpetuating themselves—an action potential at one point on a plasma membrane causes another one to happen immediately in front of it, which triggers another one a little farther along, and so forth. A wave of action potentials spreading along a nerve fiber like this is called a *nerve impulse* or *nerve signal.* Such signals also travel along the sarcolemma of a muscle fiber. We will see shortly how this leads to muscle contraction. Chapter 12 explains the mechanism of action potentials more fully.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

8. What differences would you expect to see between one motor unit where muscular strength is more important than fine control and another motor unit where fine control is more important?
9. Distinguish between acetylcholine, an acetylcholine receptor, and acetylcholinesterase. State where each is found and describe the function it serves.
10. What accounts for the resting membrane potential seen in unstimulated nerve and muscle cells?
11. What is the difference between a resting membrane potential and an action potential?

Behavior of Skeletal Muscle Fibers

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- explain how a nerve fiber stimulates a skeletal muscle fiber;
- explain how stimulation of a muscle fiber activates its contractile mechanism;
- explain the mechanism of muscle contraction;
- explain how a muscle fiber relaxes; and
- explain why the force of a muscle contraction depends on its length prior to stimulation.

The process of muscle contraction and relaxation can be viewed as occurring in four major phases: (1) excitation, (2) excitation-contraction coupling, (3) contraction, and (4) relaxation. Each phase occurs in several smaller steps, which we now examine in detail. The steps are numbered in the following descriptions to correspond to those in figures 11.8 to 11.11.

Excitation

Excitation is the process in which action potentials in the nerve fiber lead to action potentials in the muscle fiber. The steps in excitation are shown in figure 11.8.

1. A nerve signal arrives at the synaptic knob and stimulates voltage-gated calcium channels to open. Calcium ions enter the synaptic knob.
2. Calcium ions stimulate exocytosis of the synaptic vesicles, which release acetylcholine (ACh) into the synaptic cleft. One action potential causes exocytosis of about 60 synaptic vesicles, and each vesicle releases about 10,000 molecules of ACh.
3. ACh diffuses across the synaptic cleft and binds to receptor proteins on the sarcolemma.
4. These receptors are *ligand-gated ion channels.* When ACh (the ligand) binds to them, they change shape and open an ion channel through the middle of the receptor protein. Each channel allows Na^+ to diffuse quickly into the cell and K^+ to diffuse outward. As a result of these ion movements, the sarcolemma reverses polarity—its voltage quickly jumps from the RMP of -90 mV to a peak of $+75$ mV as Na^+ enters, and then falls back to a level close to the RMP as K^+ diffuses out. This rapid fluctuation in membrane voltage at the motor end plate is called the **end-plate potential (EPP).**
5. Areas of sarcolemma next to the end plate have *voltage-gated ion channels* that open in response to the EPP. Some of the voltage-gated channels are specific for Na^+ and admit it to the cell, while others are specific for K^+ and allow it to leave. These ion movements create an *action potential.* The muscle fiber is now excited.

Think About It

An impulse begins at the middle of a 100-mm-long muscle fiber and travels 5 m/sec. How long would it take to reach the ends of the muscle fiber?

Excitation-Contraction Coupling

Excitation-contraction coupling refers to the events that link the action potentials on the sarcolemma to activation of the myofilaments, thereby preparing them to contract. The steps in the coupling process are shown in figure 11.9.

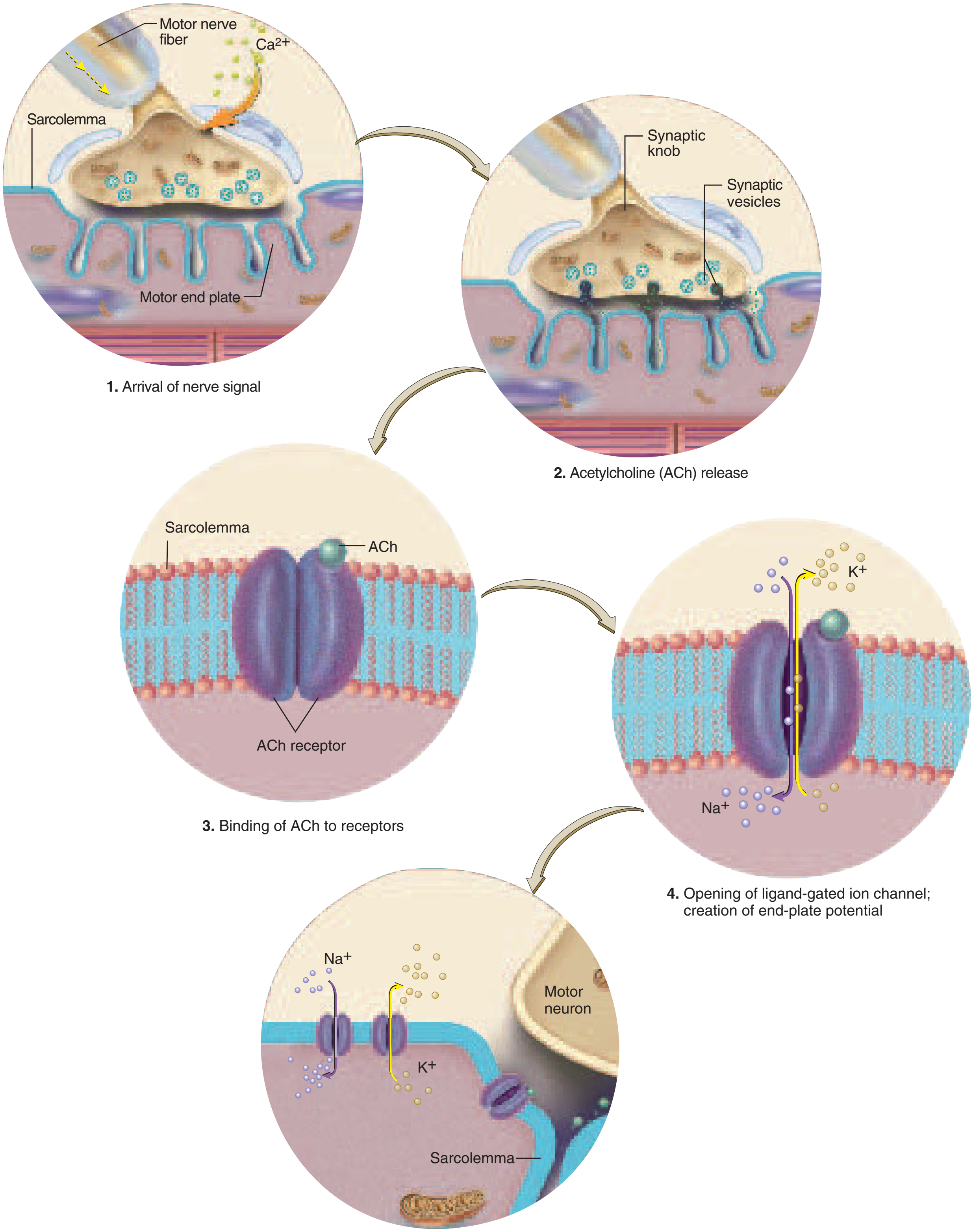
6. A wave of action potentials spreads from the end plate in all directions, like ripples on a pond. When this wave of excitation reaches the T tubules, it continues down them into the sarcoplasm.
7. Action potentials open voltage-regulated ion gates in the T tubules. These are physically linked to calcium channels in the terminal cisternae of the sarcoplasmic reticulum (SR), so gates in the SR open as well and calcium ions diffuse out of the SR, down their concentration gradient and into the cytosol.
8. The calcium ions bind to the troponin of the thin filaments.
9. The troponin-tropomyosin complex changes shape and shifts to a new position. This exposes the active sites on the actin filaments and makes them available for binding to myosin heads.

Contraction

Contraction is the step in which the muscle fiber develops tension and may shorten. (Muscles often "contract," or develop tension, without shortening, as we see later.) How a muscle fiber shortens remained a mystery until sophisticated techniques in electron microscopy enabled cytologists to see the molecular organization of muscle fibers. In 1954, two researchers at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology, Jean Hanson and Hugh Huxley, found evidence for a model now called the **sliding filament theory.** This theory holds that the thin filaments slide over the thick ones and pull the Z discs behind them, causing the cell as a whole to shorten. The individual steps in this mechanism are shown in figure 11.10.

10. The myosin head must have an ATP molecule bound to it to initiate the contraction process. **Myosin ATPase,** an enzyme in the head, hydrolyzes this ATP. The energy released by this process activates the head, which "cocks" into an extended, high-energy position. The head temporarily keeps the ADP and phosphate group bound to it.
11. The cocked myosin binds to an active site on the thin filament.
12. Myosin releases the ADP and phosphate and flexes into a bent, low-energy position, tugging the thin filament along with it. This is called the **power stroke.** The head remains bound to actin until it binds a new ATP.
13. Upon binding more ATP, myosin releases the actin. It is now prepared to repeat the whole process—it will hydrolyze the ATP, recock (the **recovery stroke**), attach to a new active site farther down the thin filament, and produce another power stroke.

It might seem as if releasing the thin filament at step 13 would simply allow it to slide back to its previous position, so that nothing would have been accomplished. Think of the sliding filament mechanism, however, as


Motor nerve fiber
Ca2+
Sarcolemma
Motor end plate
Synaptic knob
Synaptic vesicles
Sarcolemma
ACh
ACh receptor
K+
Na+
Na+
K+
Motor neuron
Sarcolemma

1. Arrival of nerve signal

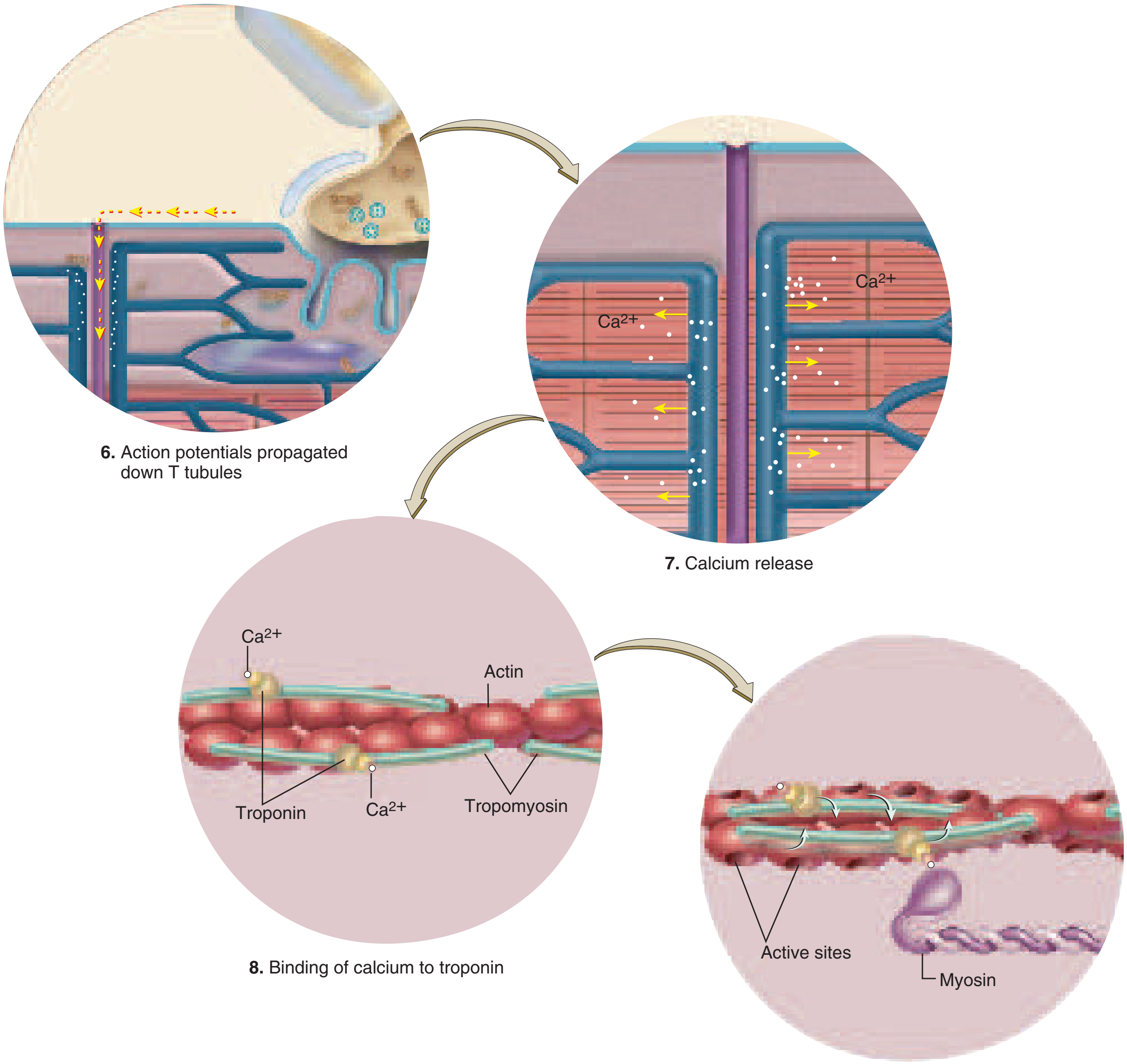
2. Acetylcholine (ACh) release

3. Binding of ACh to receptors

4. Opening of ligand-gated ion channel; creation of end-plate potential

5. Opening of voltage-gated ion channels; creation of action potentials

Figure 11.8 **Excitation of a Muscle Fiber.** These events link action potentials in a nerve fiber to the generation of action potentials in the muscle fiber.



6. Action potentials propagated down T tubules

7. Calcium release

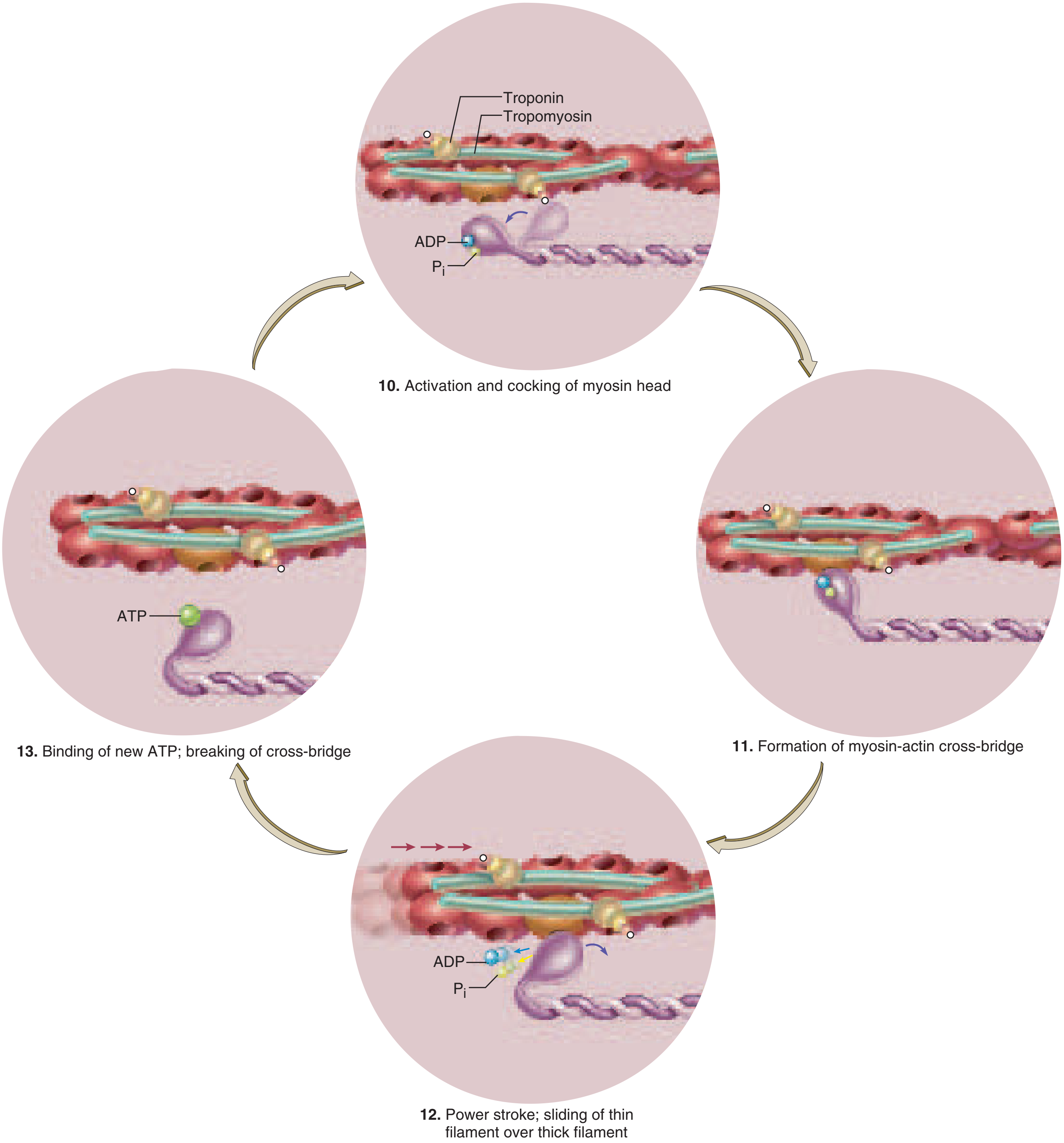
8. Binding of calcium to troponin

9. Shifting of tropomyosin; exposure of active sites on actin

Figure 11.9 **Excitation-Contraction Coupling.** These events link action potentials in the muscle fiber to the release and binding of calcium ions. The numbered steps in this figure begin where the previous figure left off.

being similar to the way you would pull in a boat anchor hand over hand. When the myosin head cocks, it is like your hand reaching out to grasp the anchor rope. When it flexes back into the low-energy position, it is like your elbow flexing to pull on the rope and draw the anchor up a little bit. When you let go of the rope with one hand, you hold onto it with the other, alternating hands until the anchor is pulled in. Similarly, when one myosin head releases the actin in preparation for the recovery stroke, there are many other heads on the same thick filament holding onto the thin filament so that it doesn't slide back. At any given moment during contraction, about half of the heads are bound to the thin filament and the other half are extending forward to grasp the filament farther down. That is, the myosin heads of a thick filament do not all stroke at once but contract sequentially.

As another analogy, consider a millipede—a little wormlike animal with a few hundred tiny legs. Each leg



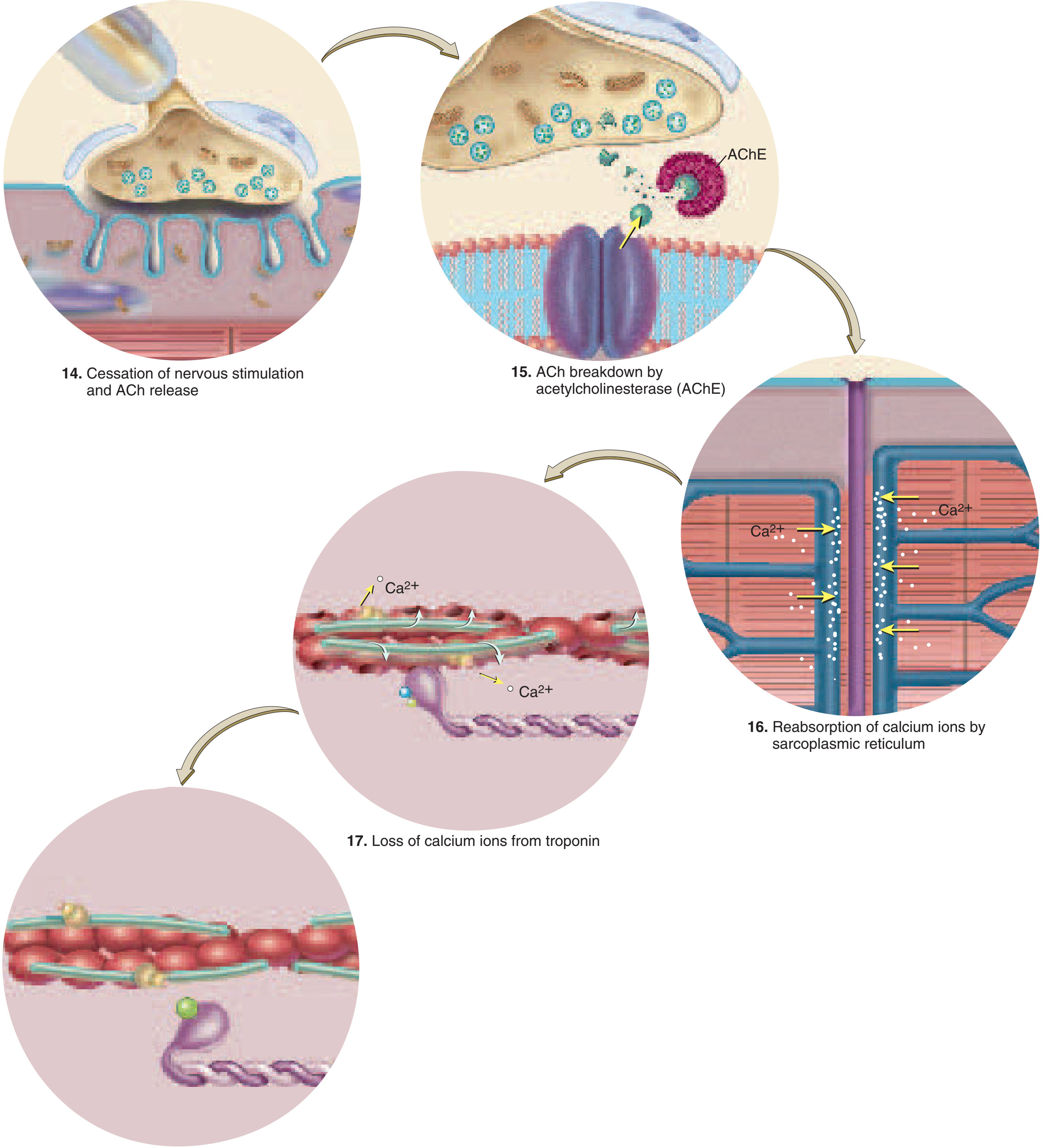
10. Activation and cocking of myosin head

11. Formation of myosin-actin cross-bridge

12. Power stroke; sliding of thin filament over thick filament

13. Binding of new ATP; breaking of cross-bridge

Figure 11.10 The Sliding Filament Mechanism of Contraction. This is a cycle of repetitive events that cause a thin filament to slide over a thick filament and generate tension in the muscle. The numbered steps in this figure begin where the previous figure left off.



14. Cessation of nervous stimulation and ACh release

15. ACh breakdown by acetylcholinesterase (AChE)

16. Reabsorption of calcium ions by sarcoplasmic reticulum

17. Loss of calcium ions from troponin

18. Return of tropomyosin to position blocking active sites of actin

Figure 11.11 **Relaxation of a Muscle Fiber.** These events lead from the cessation of a nerve signal to the release of thin filaments by myosin. The numbered steps in this figure begin where the previous figure left off.

takes individual jerky steps, but all the legs working together produce smooth, steady movement—just as all the heads of a thick filament collectively produce a smooth, steady pull on the thin filament. Note that even though the muscle fiber contracts, the *myofilaments do not become shorter* any more than a rope becomes shorter as you pull in an anchor. The thin filaments slide over the thick ones, as the name of the theory implies.

A single cycle of power and recovery strokes by all the myosin heads in a muscle fiber would shorten the fiber by about 1%. A fiber, however, may shorten by as much as 40% of its resting length, so obviously the cycle of power and recovery must be repeated many times by each myosin head. Each head carries out about five strokes per second, and each stroke consumes one molecule of ATP.

Relaxation

When its work is done, a muscle fiber relaxes and returns to its resting length. This is achieved by the steps shown in figure 11.11.

14. Nerve signals stop arriving at the neuromuscular junction, so the synaptic knob stops releasing ACh.
15. As ACh dissociates (separates) from its receptor, acetylcholinesterase breaks it down into fragments that cannot stimulate the muscle. The synaptic knob reabsorbs these fragments for recycling. All of this happens continually while the muscle is being stimulated, too; but when nerve signals stop, no new ACh is released to replace that which is broken down. Therefore, stimulation of the muscle fiber by ACh ceases.
16. Active transport pumps in the sarcoplasmic reticulum (SR) begin to pump Ca^{2+} from the cytosol back into the cisternae. Here, the calcium binds to a protein called **calsequestrin** (CAL-see-QUES-trin) and is stored until the fiber is stimulated again. Since active transport requires ATP, you can see that *ATP is needed for muscle relaxation as well as for muscle contraction* (see insight 11.2).
17. As calcium ions dissociate from troponin, they are pumped into the SR and are not replaced.
18. Tropomyosin moves back into the position where it blocks the active sites of the actin filament. Myosin can no longer bind to actin, and the muscle fiber ceases to produce or maintain tension.

A muscle returns to its resting length with the aid of two forces: (1) like a recoiling rubber band, the series-elastic components stretch it; and (2) since muscles often occur in antagonistic pairs, the contraction of an antagonist lengthens the relaxed muscle. Contraction of the triceps brachii, for example, extends the elbow and lengthens the biceps brachii.

Insight 11.2 Clinical Application

Rigor Mortis

Rigor mortis[7] is the hardening of the muscles and stiffening of the body that begins 3 to 4 hours after death. It occurs partly because the deteriorating sarcoplasmic reticulum releases calcium ions into the cytosol, and the deteriorating sarcolemma admits more calcium ions from the extracellular fluid. The calcium ions activate myosin-actin cross bridging and muscle contraction. Furthermore, the muscle cannot relax without ATP, and ATP is no longer produced after death. Thus, the fibers remain contracted until the myofilaments begin to decay. Rigor mortis peaks about 12 hours after death and then diminishes over the next 48 to 60 hours.

---

[7] *rigor* = rigidity + *mortis* = of death

The Length-Tension Relationship and Muscle Tone

The amount of tension generated by a muscle, and therefore the force of its contraction, depends on how stretched or contracted it was before it was stimulated, among other

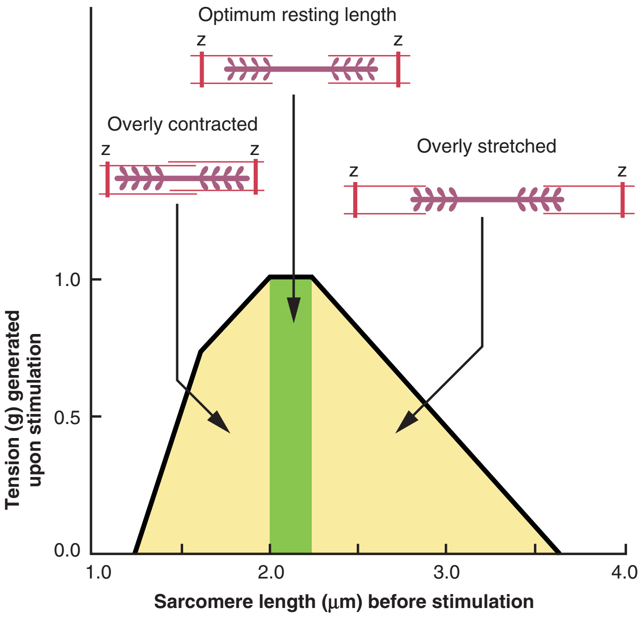


Figure 11.12 The Length-Tension Relationship. *Center:* In a resting muscle fiber, the sarcomeres are usually 2.0 to 2.25 µm long, the optimum length for producing maximum tension when the muscle is stimulated to contract. Note how this relates to the degree of overlap between the thick and thin filaments. *Left:* If the muscle is overly contracted, the thick filaments butt against the Z discs and the fiber cannot contract very much more when it is stimulated. *Right:* If the muscle is overly stretched, there is so little overlap between the thick and thin filaments that few cross-bridges can form between myosin and actin.

factors. This principle is called the **length-tension relationship.** The reasons for it can be seen in figure 11.12. If a fiber is overly contracted at rest, its thick filaments are rather close to the Z discs. The stimulated muscle may contract a little, but then the thick filaments butt up against the Z discs and can go no farther. The contraction is therefore a weak one. On the other hand, if a muscle fiber is too stretched before it is stimulated, there is relatively little overlap between its thick and thin filaments. When the muscle is stimulated, its myosin heads cannot "get a good grip" on the thin filaments, and again the contraction is weak. (As mentioned in chapter 10, this is one reason you should not bend at the waist to pick up a heavy object. Muscles of the back become overly stretched and cannot contract effectively to straighten your spine against a heavy resistance.)

Between these extremes, there is an optimum resting length at which a muscle produces the greatest force when it contracts. The central nervous system continually monitors and adjusts the length of a resting muscle, maintaining a state of partial contraction called **muscle tone.** This maintains optimum length and makes the muscles ideally ready for action. The elastic filaments of the sarcomere also help to maintain enough myofilament overlap to ensure an effective contraction when the muscle is called into action.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

12. What change does ACh cause in an ACh receptor? How does this electrically affect the muscle fiber?
13. How do troponin and tropomyosin regulate the interaction between myosin and actin?
14. Describe the roles played by ATP in the power and recovery strokes of myosin.
15. What steps are necessary for a contracted muscle to return to its resting length?

Behavior of Whole Muscles

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the stages of a muscle twitch;
- describe treppe and explain how it relates to muscle warm-up;
- explain how muscle twitches add up to produce stronger muscle contractions;
- distinguish between isometric and isotonic contraction; and
- distinguish between concentric and eccentric contractions.

Now you know how an individual muscle cell shortens. Our next objective is to move up to the organ grade of construction and consider how this relates to the action of the muscle as a whole.

Threshold, Latent Period, and Twitch

Muscle contraction has often been studied and demonstrated using the gastrocnemius (calf) muscle of a frog, which can easily be isolated from the leg along with its connected sciatic nerve (see insight 11.3). This nerve-muscle preparation can be attached to stimulating electrodes and to a recording device that produces a *myogram,* a chart of the timing and strength of the muscle's contraction.

A sufficiently weak electrical stimulus to a muscle causes no contraction. By gradually increasing the voltage and stimulating the muscle again, we can determine the **threshold,** or minimum voltage necessary to generate an action potential in the muscle fiber and produce a contraction. The action potential triggers the release of a pulse of Ca^{2+} into the cytoplasm and activates the sliding filament mechanism. At threshold or higher, a stimulus thus causes a quick cycle of contraction and relaxation called a **twitch** (fig. 11.13).

There is a delay, or **latent period,** of about 2 milliseconds (msec) between the onset of the stimulus and the onset of the twitch. This is the time required for excitation, excitation-contraction coupling, and tensing of the series-elastic components of the muscle. The force generated during this time is called *internal tension.* It is not visible on the myogram because it causes no shortening of the muscle.

Once the series-elastic components are taut, the muscle begins to produce *external tension* and move a resisting object, or load. This is called the **contraction phase** of the twitch. In the frog gastrocnemius preparation, the load is the sensor of the recording apparatus; in the body, it is usually a bone. By analogy, imagine lifting a weight from a table with a rubber band. At first, internal tension would

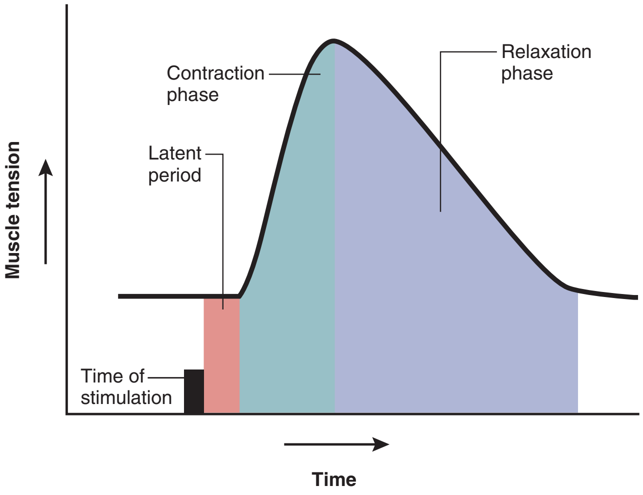


Figure 11.13 A Muscle Twitch.
What role does ATP play during the relaxation phase?

stretch the rubber band. Then as the rubber band became taut, external tension would lift the weight.

The contraction phase is short-lived, because the sacroplasmic reticulum quickly pumps Ca^{2+} back into itself before the muscle develops maximal force. As the Ca^{2+} level in the cytoplasm falls, myosin releases the thin filaments and muscle tension declines. This is seen in the myogram as the **relaxation phase.** The entire twitch lasts from about 7 to 100 msec.

Insight 11.3 Medical History

Galvani, Volta, and Animal Electricity

The invention of modern dry cells can be traced to studies of frog muscle by Italian anatomist Luigi Galvani (1737–98). He suspended isolated frog legs from a copper hook and noticed that they twitched when touched with an iron scalpel. He attributed this to "animal electricity" in the legs. The physicist Alessandro Volta (1745–1827) investigated Galvani's discovery further. He concluded that when two different metals (such as the copper hook and iron scalpel) are separated by an electrolyte solution (a frog's tissue fluids), a chemical reaction occurs that produces an electrical current. This current had stimulated the muscle in the legs of Galvani's frogs and caused the twitch. Based on this principle, Volta invented the first simple voltaic cell, the forerunner of today's dry cells.

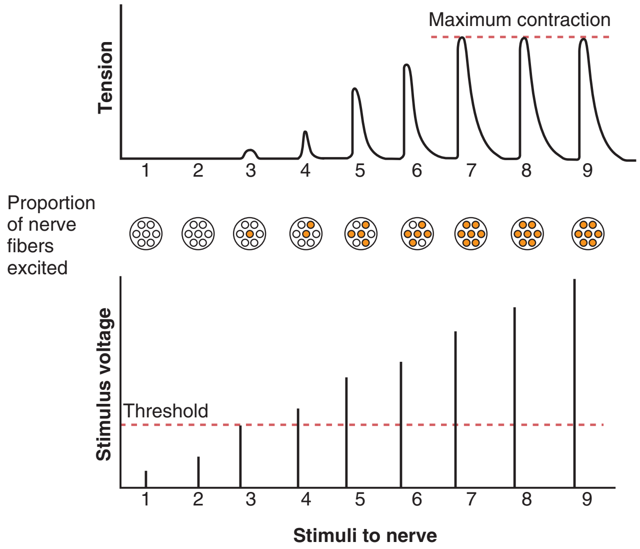


Figure 11.14 The Relationship Between Stimulus Intensity (voltage) and Muscle Tension. Weak stimuli (*1–2*) fail to stimulate any nerve fibers and therefore produce no muscle contraction. When stimuli reach or exceed threshold (*3–7*), they excite more and more nerve fibers and motor units and produce stronger and stronger contractions. This is multiple motor unit summation (recruitment). Once all of the nerve fibers are stimulated (*7–9*), further increases in stimulus strength produce no further increase in muscle tension.

Contraction Strength of Twitches

As long as the voltage of an artificial stimulus delivered directly to a muscle is at threshold or higher, a muscle gives a complete twitch. Increasing the voltage still more does not cause the twitches to become any stronger. There are other factors, however, that can produce stronger twitches. Indeed, an individual twitch is not strong enough to do any useful work. Muscles must be able to contract with variable strength—differently in lifting a glass of champagne than in lifting a heavy barbell, for example.

If we stimulate the nerve rather than the muscle, higher voltages produce stronger muscle contractions because they excite more nerve fibers and therefore more motor units. The more motor units that contract, the more strongly the muscle as a whole contracts (fig. 11.14). The process of bringing more motor units into play is called **recruitment,** or **multiple motor unit (MMU) summation.** It is seen not just in artificial stimulation but is part of the way the nervous system behaves normally to produce variable muscle contractions.

Another way to produce a stronger muscle contraction is to stimulate the muscle at a higher frequency. Even when voltage remains the same, high-frequency stimulation causes stronger contractions than low-frequency stimulation. In figure 11.15*a,* we see that when a muscle is stimulated at a low frequency (up to 10 stimuli/sec in this example), it produces an identical twitch for each stimulus and fully recovers between twitches.

Between 10 and 20 stimuli per second, the muscle still recovers fully between twitches, but each twitch develops more tension than the one before. This pattern of increasing tension with repetitive stimulation is called **treppe**[8] (TREP-eh), or the *staircase phenomenon,* after the appearance of the myogram (fig. 11.15*b*). One cause of treppe is that when stimuli arrive so rapidly, the sarcoplasmic reticulum does not have time between stimuli to completely reabsorb all the calcium that it released. Thus, the calcium concentration in the cytosol rises higher and higher with each stimulus and causes subsequent twitches to be stronger. Another factor is that the heat released by each twitch causes muscle enzymes such as myosin ATPase to work more efficiently and produce stronger twitches as the muscle warms up. One purpose of warm-up exercises before athletic competition is to induce treppe, so that the muscle contracts more effectively when the competition begins.

At a still higher stimulus frequency (20–40 stimuli/sec in fig. 11.15*c*), each new stimulus arrives before the previous twitch is over. Each new twitch "rides piggyback" on the previous one and generates higher tension.

---

[8] *treppe* = staircase

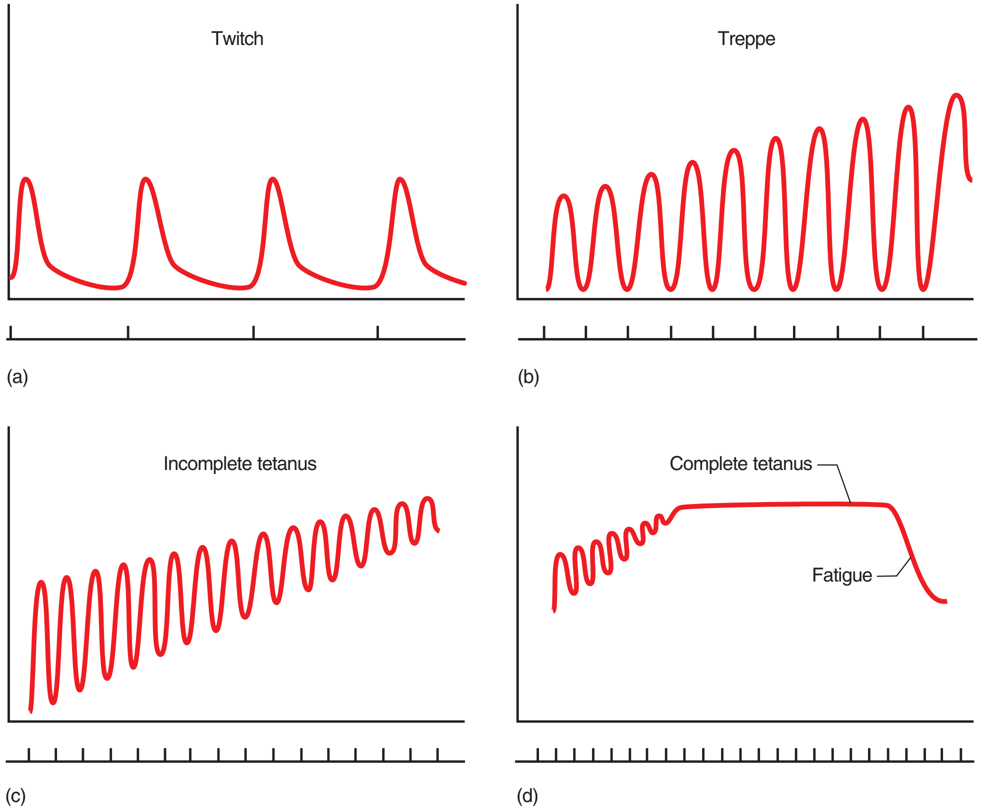


Figure 11.15 **The Relationship Between Stimulus Frequency and Muscle Tension.** (*a*) Twitch: At low frequency, the muscle relaxes completely between stimuli and shows twitches of uniform strength. (*b*) Treppe: At a moderate frequency of stimulation, the muscle relaxes fully between contractions, but successive twitches are stronger. (*c*) Wave summation and incomplete tetanus: At still higher stimulus frequency, the muscle does not have time to relax completely between twitches, and the force of each twitch builds on the previous one. (*d*) Complete tetanus: At high stimulus frequency, the muscle does not have time to relax at all between stimuli and exhibits a state of continual contraction with about four times as much tension as a single twitch. Tension declines as the muscle fatigues.

This phenomenon goes by two names: **temporal**[9] **summation,** because it results from two stimuli arriving close together, or **wave summation,** because it results from one wave of contraction added to another. Wave is added upon wave, so each twitch reaches a higher level of tension than the one before, and the muscle relaxes only partially between stimuli. This effect produces a state of sustained fluttering contraction called **incomplete tetanus.**

At a still higher frequency, such as 40 to 50 stimuli per second, the muscle has no time to relax at all between stimuli, and the twitches fuse into a smooth, prolonged contraction called **complete tetanus.** A muscle in complete tetanus produces about four times as much tension as a single twitch (fig. 11.15*d*). This type of tetanus should not be confused with the disease of the same name caused by the tetanus toxin, explained in insight 11.1.

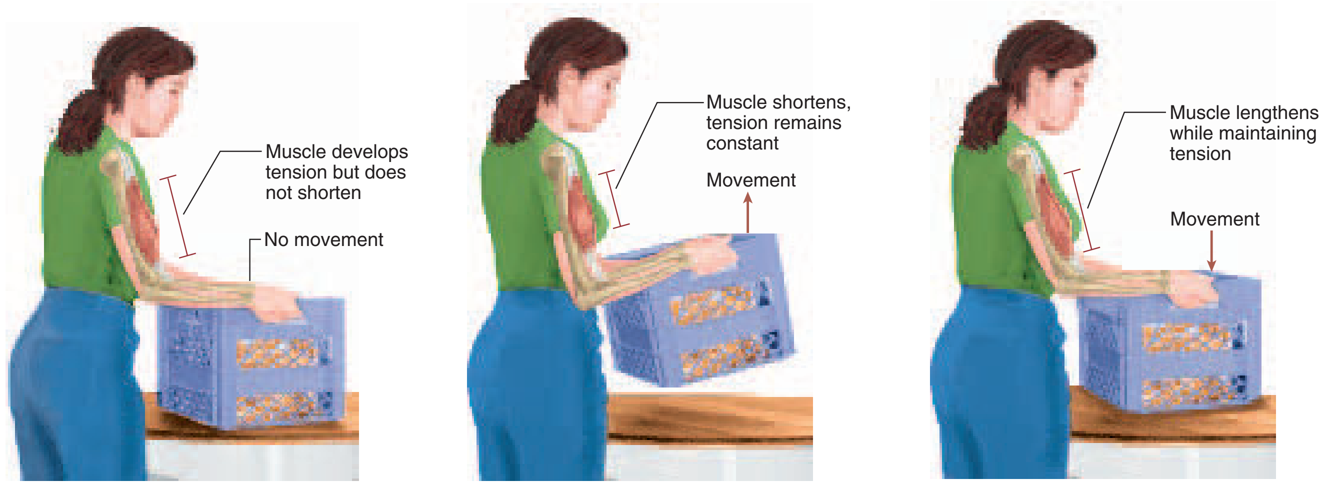
Complete tetanus is a phenomenon seen in artificial stimulation of a muscle, however, and rarely if ever occurs in the body. Even during the most intense muscle contractions, the frequency of stimulation by a motor neuron rarely exceeds 25/sec, which is far from sufficient to produce complete tetanus. The reason for the smoothness of muscle contractions is that motor units function asynchronously; when one motor unit relaxes, another contracts and "takes over" so that the muscle does not lose tension.

Isometric and Isotonic Contraction

In muscle physiology, "contraction" does not always mean the shortening of a muscle—it may mean only that the muscle is producing internal tension while an external resistance causes it to stay the same length or even to become longer. Thus, physiologists speak of different kinds of muscle contraction as *isometric* versus *isotonic* and *concentric* versus *eccentric.*

---

[9] *tempor* = time


Muscle develops tension but does not shorten
No movement
Muscle shortens, tension remains constant
Movement
Muscle lengthens while maintaining tension
Movement

(a) Isometric contraction (b) Isotonic, concentric contraction (c) Isotonic, eccentric contraction

Figure 11.16 **Isometric and Isotonic Contraction.** (*a*) Isometric contraction, in which a muscle develops tension but does not shorten. This occurs at the beginning of any muscle contraction but is prolonged in actions such as lifting heavy weights. (*b*) Isotonic concentric contraction, in which the muscle shortens while maintaining a constant degree of tension. In this phase, the muscle moves a load. (*c*) Isotonic eccentric contraction, in which the muscle maintains tension while it lengthens, allowing a muscle to relax without going suddenly limp.
Name a muscle that undergoes eccentric contraction as you sit down in a chair.

Suppose you lift a heavy box of books from a table. When you first contract the muscles of your arms, you can feel the tension building in them even though the box is not yet moving. At this point, your muscles are contracting at a cellular level, but their tension is being absorbed by the series-elastic components and is resisted by the weight of the load; the muscle as a whole is not producing any external movement. This phase is called **isometric**[10] **contraction**—contraction without a change in length (fig. 11.16*a*). **Isotonic**[11] **contraction**—contraction with a change in length but no change in tension—begins when internal tension builds to the point that it overcomes the resistance. The muscle now shortens, moves the load, and maintains essentially the same tension from then on (fig. 11.16*b*). Isometric and isotonic contraction are both phases of normal muscular action (fig. 11.17).

There are two forms of isotonic contraction—concentric and eccentric. In **concentric contraction,** a muscle shortens as it maintains tension—for example, when the biceps brachii contracts and flexes the elbow. In an **eccentric contraction,** a muscle lengthens as it maintains tension. If you set that box of books down again (fig. 11.16*c*), your biceps brachii lengthens as you extend your elbow, but it maintains tension to act as a brake and keep you from simply dropping the box. A weight lifter

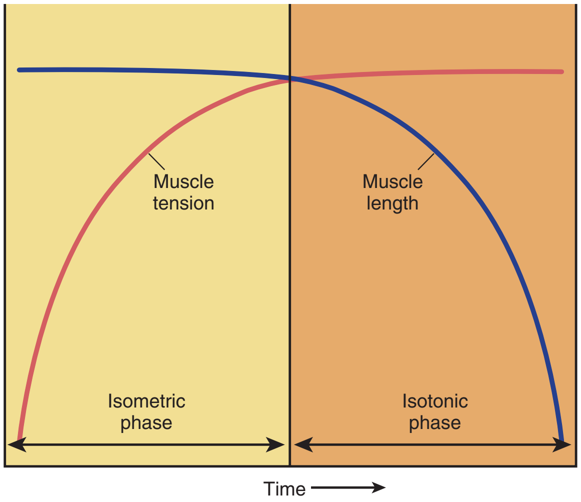


Figure 11.17 **Isometric and Isotonic Phases of Contraction.** At the beginning of a contraction (isometric phase), muscle tension rises but the length remains constant (the muscle does not shorten). When tension overcomes the resistance of the load, the tension levels off and the muscle begins to shorten and move the load (isotonic phase).
How would you extend this graph in order to show eccentric contraction?

---

[10] *iso* = same, uniform + *metr* = length
[11] *iso* = same, uniform + *ton* = tension

uses concentric contraction when lifting a barbell and eccentric contraction when lowering it to the floor.

In summary, during isometric contraction, a muscle develops tension without changing length, and in isotonic contraction, it changes length while maintaining constant tension. In concentric contraction, a muscle maintains tension as it shortens, and in eccentric contraction, it maintains tension while it is lengthening.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

16. Explain how warm-up is related to treppe and why it improves athletic performance.
17. Explain the role of tetanus in normal muscle action.
18. Describe an everyday activity *not* involving the arms in which your muscles would switch from isometric to isotonic contraction.
19. Describe an everyday activity *not* involving the arms that would involve concentric contraction and one that would involve eccentric contraction.

Muscle Metabolism

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- explain how skeletal muscle meets its energy demands during rest and exercise;
- explain the basis of muscle fatigue and soreness;
- define *oxygen debt* and explain why extra oxygen is needed even after an exercise has ended;
- distinguish between two physiological types of muscle fibers, and explain the functional roles of these two types;
- discuss the factors that affect muscular strength; and
- discuss the effects of resistance and endurance exercises on muscle.

ATP Sources

All muscle contraction depends on ATP; no other energy source can serve in its place. The supply of ATP depends, in turn, on the availability of oxygen and organic energy sources such as glucose and fatty acids. To understand how muscle manages its ATP budget, you must be familiar with the two main pathways of ATP synthesis—*anaerobic fermentation* and *aerobic respiration* (see fig. 2.31, p. 86). Each of these has advantages and disadvantages. Anaerobic fermentation enables a cell to produce ATP in the absence of oxygen, but the ATP yield is very limited and the process produces a toxic end product, lactic acid, which is a major factor in muscle fatigue. By contrast, aerobic respiration produces far more ATP and less toxic end products (carbon dioxide and water), but it requires a continual supply of oxygen. Although aerobic respiration is best known as a pathway for glucose oxidation, it is also used to extract energy from other organic compounds. In a resting muscle, most ATP is generated by the aerobic respiration of fatty acids.

During the course of exercise, different mechanisms of ATP synthesis are used depending on the exercise duration. We will view these mechanisms from the standpoint of immediate, short-term, and long-term energy, but it must be stressed that muscle does not make sudden shifts from one mechanism to another like an automobile transmission shifting gears. Rather, these mechanisms blend and overlap as the exercise continues (fig. 11.18).

Immediate Energy

In a short, intense exercise such as a 100 m dash, the respiratory and cardiovascular systems cannot deliver oxygen to the muscles quickly enough for aerobic respiration to meet the increased ATP demand. The myoglobin in a muscle fiber supplies oxygen for a limited amount of aerobic respiration, but in brief exercises a muscle meets most of its ATP demand by borrowing phosphate (P_i) groups from other molecules and transferring them to ADP. Two enzyme systems control these phosphate transfers (fig. 11.19):

1. **Myokinase** (MY-oh-KY-nase) transfers P_i groups from one ADP to another, converting the latter to ATP.
2. **Creatine kinase** (CREE-uh-tin KY-nase) obtains P_i groups from an energy-storage molecule, **creatine phosphate (CP),** and donates them to ADP to make ATP. This is a fast-acting system that helps to maintain the ATP level while other ATP-generating mechanisms are being activated.

ATP and CP, collectively called the **phosphagen system,** provide nearly all the energy used for short bursts of intense activity. Muscle contains about 5 millimoles of ATP and 15 millimoles of CP per kilogram of tissue, which is enough to power about 1 minute of brisk walking or 6 seconds of sprinting or fast swimming. The phosphagen system is especially important in activities requiring brief but maximal effort, such as football, baseball, and weight lifting.

Short-Term Energy

As the phosphagen system is exhausted, the muscles shift to anaerobic fermentation to "buy time" until cardiopulmonary function can catch up with the muscle's oxygen demand. During this period, the muscles obtain glucose from the blood and their own stored glycogen. The pathway from glycogen to lactic acid, called the **glycogen–lactic acid**

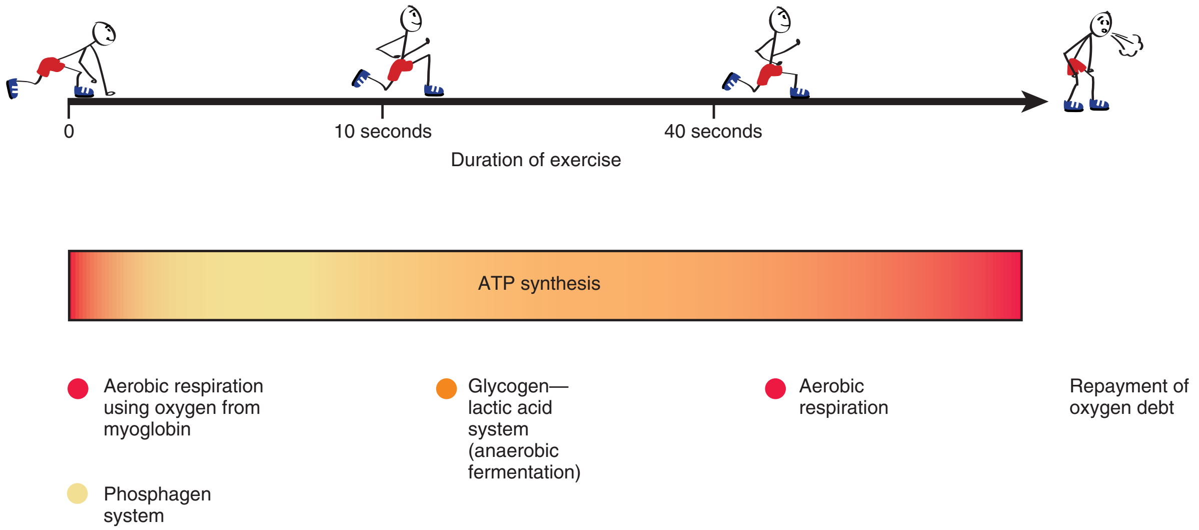

0
10 seconds
40 seconds
Duration of exercise
ATP synthesis
● Aerobic respiration using oxygen from myoglobin
● Phosphagen system
● Glycogen—lactic acid system (anaerobic fermentation)
● Aerobic respiration
Repayment of oxygen debt

Figure 11.18 **Phases of ATP Production During Exercise.**

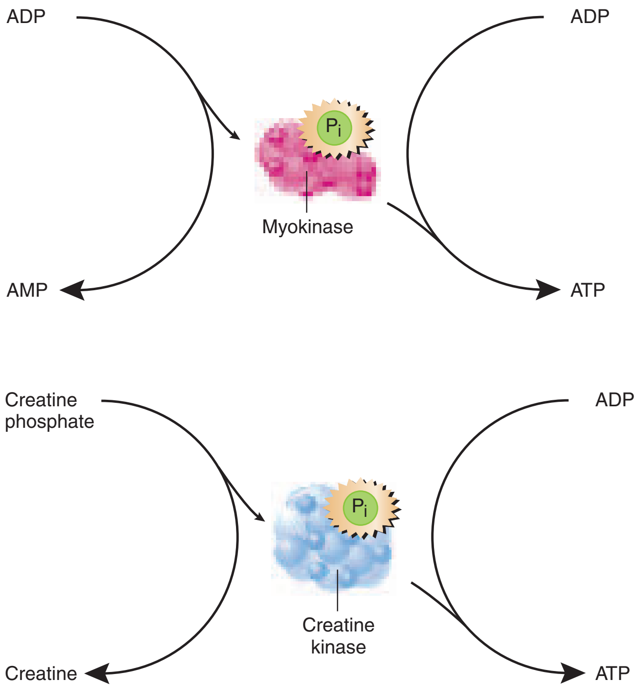

ADP
ADP
Pi
Myokinase
AMP
ATP
Creatine phosphate
ADP
Pi
Creatine kinase
Creatine
ATP

Figure 11.19 **The Phosphagen System.** Two enzymes, myokinase and creatine kinase, generate ATP in the absence of oxygen. Myokinase borrows phosphate groups from ADP, and creatine kinase borrows them from creatine phosphate, to convert an ADP to ATP.

system, produces enough ATP for 30 to 40 seconds of maximum activity. To play basketball or to run completely around a baseball diamond, for example, depends heavily on this energy-transfer system.

Long-Term Energy

After 40 seconds or so, the respiratory and cardiovascular systems "catch up" and deliver oxygen to the muscles fast enough for aerobic respiration to meet most of the ATP demand. One's rate of oxygen consumption rises for 3 to 4 minutes and then levels off at a *steady state* in which aerobic ATP production keeps pace with the demand. In exercises lasting more than 10 minutes, more than 90% of the ATP is produced aerobically.

Little lactic acid accumulates under steady state conditions, but this does not mean that aerobic exercise can continue indefinitely or that it is limited only by a person's willpower. The depletion of glycogen and blood glucose, together with the loss of fluid and electrolytes through sweating, set limits to endurance and performance even when lactic acid does not.

Fatigue and Endurance

Muscle **fatigue** is the progressive weakness and loss of contractility that results from prolonged use of the muscles. For example, if you hold this book at arm's length for a minute, you will feel your muscles growing weaker and eventually you will be unable to hold it up. Repeatedly squeezing a rubber ball, pushing a video game button, or trying to take lecture notes from a fast-talking professor produces fatigue in the hand and finger muscles. Fatigue has multiple causes:

- ATP synthesis declines as glycogen is consumed.
- The ATP shortage slows down the sodium-potassium pumps, which are needed to maintain the resting membrane potential and excitability of the muscle fibers.
- Lactic acid lowers the pH of the sarcoplasm, which inhibits the enzymes involved in contraction, ATP synthesis, and other aspects of muscle function.
- Each action potential releases potassium ions from the sarcoplasm to the extracellular fluid. The accumulation of extracellular K^+ lowers the membrane potential and excitability of the muscle fiber.
- Motor nerve fibers use up their acetylcholine, which leaves them less capable of stimulating muscle fibers. This is called *junctional fatigue.*
- The central nervous system, where all motor commands originate, fatigues by processes not yet understood.

Think About It

Suppose you repeatedly stimulated the sciatic nerve in a frog nerve-muscle preparation until the muscle stopped contracting. What simple test could you do to determine whether this was due to junctional fatigue or to one of the other fatigue mechanisms?

A person's ability to maintain high-intensity exercise for more than 4 to 5 minutes is determined in large part by his or her **maximum oxygen uptake ($\dot{V}O_2$max)**—the point at which the rate of oxygen consumption reaches a plateau and does not increase further with an added workload. $\dot{V}O_2$max is proportional to body size; it peaks at around age 20; it is usually greater in males than in females; and it can be twice as great in a trained endurance athlete as in an untrained person (see the later discussion on effects of conditioning).

Physical endurance also depends on the supply of organic nutrients—fatty acids, amino acids, and especially glucose. Many endurance athletes use a dietary strategy called *carbohydrate loading* to "pack" as much as 5 g of glycogen into every 100 g of muscle. This can significantly increase endurance, but an extra 2.7 g of water is also stored with each added gram of glycogen. Some athletes feel that the resulting "heaviness" and other side effects outweigh the benefits of carbohydrate loading.

Oxygen Debt

You have probably noticed that you breathe heavily not only during a strenuous exercise but also for several minutes afterwards. This is because your body accrues an oxygen debt that must be "repaid." **Oxygen debt** is the difference between the resting rate of oxygen consumption and the elevated rate following an exercise; it is also known as *excess postexercise oxygen consumption (EPOC).* The total amount of extra oxygen consumed after a strenuous exercise is typically about 11 L. It is used for the following purposes:

- *Replacing the body's oxygen reserves* that were depleted in the first minute of exercise. These include 0.3 L of oxygen bound to muscle myoglobin, 1.0 L bound to blood hemoglobin, 0.25 L dissolved in the blood plasma and other extracellular fluids, and 0.1 L in the air in the lungs.
- *Replenishing the phosphagen system.* This involves synthesizing ATP and using some of it to donate phosphate groups back to creatine until the resting levels of ATP and CP are restored.
- *Oxidizing lactic acid.* About 80% of the lactic acid produced by muscle enters the bloodstream and is reconverted to pyruvic acid in the kidneys, the cardiac muscle, and especially the liver. Some of this pyruvic acid enters the aerobic (mitochondrial) pathway to make ATP, but the liver converts most of it back to glucose. Glucose is then available to replenish the glycogen stores of the muscle.
- *Serving the elevated metabolic rate.* As long as the body temperature remains elevated by exercise, the total metabolic rate remains high, and this requires extra oxygen.

Physiological Classes of Muscle Fibers

Not all muscle fibers are metabolically alike or adapted to perform the same task. Some respond slowly but are relatively resistant to fatigue, while others respond more quickly but also fatigue quickly (table 11.3). Each primary type of fiber goes by several names:

- **Slow oxidative (SO), slow-twitch, red,** or **type I fibers.** These fibers have relatively abundant mitochondria, myoglobin, and blood capillaries, and therefore a relatively deep red color. They are well adapted to aerobic respiration, which does not generate lactic acid. Thus, these fibers do not fatigue easily. However, in response to a single stimulus, they exhibit a relatively long twitch, lasting about 100 milliseconds (msec). The soleus muscle of the calf and the postural

Table 11.3 Classification of Skeletal Muscle Fibers

	Fiber Type	
Properties	**Slow Oxidative**	**Fast Glycolytic**
Relative diameter	Smaller	Larger
ATP synthesis	Aerobic	Anaerobic
Fatigue resistance	Good	Poor
ATP hydrolysis	Slow	Fast
Glycolysis	Moderate	Fast
Myoglobin content	Abundant	Low
Glycogen content	Low	Abundant
Mitochondria	Abundant and large	Fewer and smaller
Capillaries	Abundant	Fewer
Color	Red	White, pale
Representative Muscles in Which Fiber Type Is Predominant		
	Soleus	Gastrocnemius
	Erector spinae	Biceps brachii
	Quadratus lumborum	Muscles of eye movement

muscles of the back are composed mainly of these slow oxidative, high-endurance fibers.

- **Fast glycolytic (FG), fast-twitch, white,** or **type II fibers.** These fibers are well adapted for quick responses but not for fatigue resistance. They are rich in enzymes of the phosphagen and glycogen–lactic acid systems. Their sarcoplasmic reticulum releases and reabsorbs Ca^{2+} quickly, which partially accounts for their quick, forceful contractions. They are poorer than SO fibers in mitochondria, myoglobin, and blood capillaries, so they are relatively pale (hence the expression *white* fibers). These fibers produce twitches as short as 7.5 msec, but because of the lactic acid they generate, they fatigue more easily than SO fibers. Thus, they are especially important in sports such as basketball that require stop-and-go activity and frequent changes of pace. The gastrocnemius muscle of the calf, biceps brachii of the arm, and the muscles of eye movement consist mainly of FG fibers.

Some authorities recognize two subtypes of FG fibers called types IIA and IIB. Type IIB is the common type just described, while IIA, or **intermediate fibers,** combine fast-twitch responses with aerobic fatigue-resistant metabolism. Type IIA fibers, however, are relatively rare except in some endurance-trained athletes. The three fiber types can be differentiated histologically by using stains for certain mitochondrial enzymes and other cellular components (fig. 11.20). All muscle fibers of one motor unit belong to the same physiological type.

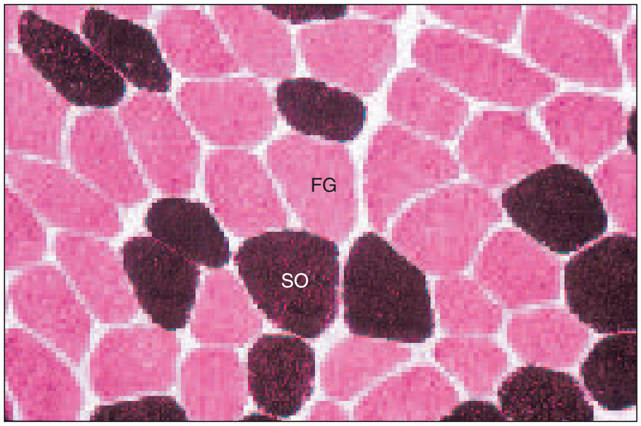


Figure 11.20 **Types of Muscle Fibers.** Muscle stained to distinguish fast glycolytic (FG) from slow oxidative (SO) fibers. Cross section.

Table 11.4 Proportion of Slow Oxidative (SO) and Fast Glycolytic (FG) Fibers in the Quadriceps Femoris Muscle of Male Athletes

Sample Population	SO	FG
Marathon runners	82%	18%
Swimmers	74	26
Average males	45	55
Sprinters and jumpers	37	63

Nearly all muscles are composed of both SO and FG fibers, but the proportions of these fiber types differ from one muscle to another. Muscles composed mainly of SO fibers are called *red muscles* and those composed mainly of FG fibers are called *white muscles.* People with different types and levels of physical activity differ in the proportion of one fiber type to another even in the same muscle, such as the *quadriceps femoris* of the anterior thigh (table 11.4). It is thought that people are born with a genetic predisposition for a certain ratio of fiber types. Those who go into competitive sports discover the sports at which they can excel and gravitate toward those for which heredity has best equipped them. One person might be a “born sprinter” and another a “born marathoner.”

We noted earlier that sometimes two or more muscles act across the same joint and superficially seem to have the same function. We have already seen some reasons why such muscles are not as redundant as they seem. Another reason is that they may differ in the proportion of SO to FG fibers. For example, the gastrocnemius and soleus muscles of the calf both insert on the calcaneus through the same tendon, the calcaneal tendon, so they exert the same pull on the heel. The gastrocnemius, however, is a white, predominantly FG muscle adapted for quick, powerful movements such as jumping, whereas the soleus is a red, predominantly SO muscle that does most of the work in endurance exercises such as jogging and skiing.

Muscular Strength and Conditioning

We have far more muscular strength than we normally use. The gluteus maximus can generate 1,200 kg of tension, and all the muscles of the body can produce a total tension of 22,000 kg (nearly 25 tons). Indeed, the muscles can generate more tension than the bones and tendons can withstand—a fact that accounts for many injuries to the patellar and calcaneal tendons. Muscular strength depends on a variety of anatomical and physiological factors:

- **Muscle size.** The strength of a muscle depends primarily on its size; this is why weight lifting increases the size and strength of a muscle simultaneously. A muscle can exert a tension of about 3 to 4 kg/cm^2 (50 lb/in.^{2}) of cross-sectional area.
- **Fascicle arrangement.** Pennate muscles such as the quadriceps femoris are stronger than parallel muscles such as the sartorius, which in turn are stronger than circular muscles such as the orbicularis oculi.
- **Size of active motor units.** Large motor units produce stronger contractions than small ones.
- **Multiple motor unit summation.** When a stronger muscle contraction is desired, the nervous system activates more motor units. This process is the *recruitment,* or *multiple motor unit (MMU) summation,* described earlier. It can produce extraordinary feats of strength under desperate conditions—rescuing a loved one pinned under an automobile, for example. Getting "psyched up" for athletic competition is also partly a matter of MMU summation.
- **Temporal summation.** Nerve impulses usually arrive at a muscle in a series of closely spaced action potentials. Because of the *temporal summation* described earlier, the greater the frequency of stimulation, the more strongly a muscle contracts.
- **The length-tension relationship.** As noted earlier, a muscle resting at optimum length is prepared to contract more forcefully than a muscle that is excessively contracted or stretched.
- **Fatigue.** Muscles contract more weakly when they are fatigued.

Resistance exercise, such as weight lifting, is the contraction of muscles against a load that resists movement. A few minutes of resistance exercise at a time, a few times each week, is enough to stimulate muscle growth. Growth results primarily from cellular enlargement, not cellular division. The muscle fibers synthesize more myofilaments and the myofibrils grow thicker. Myofibrils split longitudinally when they reach a certain size, so a well-conditioned muscle has more myofibrils than a poorly conditioned one. Muscle fibers themselves are incapable of mitosis, but there is some evidence that as they enlarge, they too may split longitudinally. A small part of muscle growth may therefore result from an increase in the number of fibers, but most results from the enlargement of fibers that have existed since childhood.

Think About It

Is muscle growth mainly the result of hypertrophy or hyperplasia?

Endurance (aerobic) exercise, such as jogging and swimming, improves the fatigue resistance of the muscles. Slow-twitch fibers, especially, produce more mitochondria and glycogen and acquire a greater density of blood capillaries as a result of conditioning. Endurance exercise also improves skeletal strength, increases the red blood cell count and the oxygen transport capacity of the blood, and enhances the function of the cardiovascular, respiratory, and nervous systems. Endurance training does not significantly increase muscular strength, and resistance training does not improve endurance. Optimal performance and skeletomuscular health requires **cross-training,** which incorporates elements of both types. If muscles are not kept sufficiently active, they become *deconditioned*—weaker and more easily fatigued.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

20. From which two molecules can ADP borrow a phosphate group to become ATP? What is the enzyme that catalyzes each transfer?
21. In a long period of intense exercise, why does muscle generate ATP anaerobically at first and then switch to aerobic respiration?
22. List four causes of muscle fatigue.
23. List three causes of oxygen debt.
24. What properties of fast glycolytic and slow oxidative fibers adapt them for different physiological purposes?

Cardiac and Smooth Muscle

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the structural and physiological differences between cardiac muscle and skeletal muscle;
- explain why these differences are important to cardiac function;
- describe the structural and physiological differences between smooth muscle and skeletal muscle; and
- relate the unique properties of smooth muscle to its locations and functions.

In this section, we compare cardiac muscle and smooth muscle to skeletal muscle. As you will find, cardiac and smooth muscle have special structural and physiological properties related to their distinctive functions. They also have certain properties in common with each other. The muscle cells of both cardiac and smooth muscle are called **myocytes.** By comparison to the long multinucleate fibers of skeletal muscle, these are relatively short cells with only one nucleus. Cardiac and smooth muscle are *involuntary* muscle tissues, not usually subject to our conscious control.

Cardiac Muscle

Cardiac muscle constitutes most of the heart. Its form and function are discussed extensively in chapter 19 so that you will be able to relate these to the actions of the heart. Here, we only briefly compare it to skeletal and smooth muscle (table 11.5).

Cardiac muscle is striated like skeletal muscle, but its myocytes *(cardiocytes)* are shorter and thicker, they branch like a Y, and each myocyte is linked to several others at its ends (see fig. 19.11). The linkages, called **intercalated** (in-TUR-kuh-LAY-ted) **discs,** appear as thick dark lines in stained tissue sections. An intercalated disc has electrical *gap junctions* that allow each myocyte to directly stimulate its neighbors, and mechanical junctions

Table 11.5 Comparison of Skeletal, Cardiac, and Smooth Muscle

Feature	Skeletal Muscle	Cardiac Muscle	Smooth Muscle
Location	Associated with skeletal system	Heart	Walls of viscera and blood vessels, iris of eye, piloerector of hair follicles
Cell shape	Long cylindrical fibers	Short branched cells	Fusiform cells
Cell length	100 µm–30 cm	50–100 µm	50–200 µm
Cell width	10–100 µm	10–20 µm	2–10 µm
Striations	Present	Present	Absent
Nuclei	Multiple nuclei, adjacent to sarcolemma	Usually one nucleus, near middle of cell	One nucleus, near middle of cell
Connective tissues	Endomysium, perimysium, epimysium	Endomysium only	Endomysium only
Sarcoplasmic reticulum	Abundant	Present	Scanty
T tubules	Present, narrow	Present, wide	Absent
Gap junctions	Absent	Present in intercalated discs	Present in single-unit smooth muscle
Autorhythmicity	Absent	Present	Present in single-unit smooth muscle
Thin filament attachment	Z discs	Z discs	Dense bodies
Regulatory proteins	Tropomyosin, troponin	Tropomyosin, troponin	Calmodulin, light-chain myokinase
Ca^{2+} source	Sarcoplasmic reticulum	Sarcoplasmic reticulum and extracellular fluid	Mainly extracellular fluid
Ca^{2+} receptor	Troponin of thin filament	Troponin of thin filament	Calmodulin of thick filament
Innervation and control	Somatic motor fibers (voluntary)	Autonomic fibers (involuntary)	Autonomic fibers (involuntary)
Nervous stimulation required?	Yes	No	No
Effect of nervous stimulation	Excitatory only	Excitatory or inhibitory	Excitatory or inhibitory
Mode of tissue repair	Limited regeneration, mostly fibrosis	Limited regeneration, mostly fibrosis	Relatively good capacity for regeneration

that keep the myocytes from pulling apart when the heart contracts. The sarcoplasmic reticulum is less developed than in skeletal muscle, but the T tubules are larger and admit supplemental Ca^{2+} from the extracellular fluid. Damaged cardiac muscle is repaired by fibrosis. Cardiac muscle has no satellite cells, and even though mitosis has recently been detected in cardiac myocytes following heart attacks, it is not yet certain that it produces a significant amount of regenerated functional muscle.

Unlike skeletal muscle, cardiac muscle can contract without the need of nervous stimulation. It contains a built-in **pacemaker** that rhythmically sets off a wave of electrical excitation. This wave travels through the cardiac muscle and triggers the contraction of the heart chambers. Cardiac muscle is said to be **autorhythmic**[12] because of this ability to contract rhythmically and independently. The heart does, however, receive fibers from the *autonomic nervous system* that can either increase or decrease the heart rate and contraction strength. Cardiac muscle does not exhibit quick twitches like skeletal muscle. Rather, it maintains tension for about 200 to 250 msec, enabling the heart to expel blood.

Cardiac muscle uses aerobic respiration almost exclusively. It is very rich in myoglobin and glycogen, and it has especially large mitochondria that fill about 25% of the cell, compared to smaller mitochondria occupying about 2% of a skeletal muscle fiber. Cardiac muscle is very adaptable with respect to the fuel used, but very vulnerable to interruptions in oxygen supply. Because it makes little use of anaerobic fermentation, cardiac muscle is very resistant to fatigue.

Smooth Muscle

Smooth muscle is composed of myocytes with a fusiform shape, about 30 to 200 μm long, 5 to 10 μm wide at the middle, and tapering to a point at each end. There is only one nucleus, located near the middle of the cell. Although thick and thin filaments are both present, they are not aligned with each other and produce no visible striations or sarcomeres; this is the reason for the name *smooth* muscle. Z discs are absent; instead, the thin filaments are attached by way of the cytoskeleton to **dense bodies,** little masses of protein scattered throughout the sarcoplasm and on the inner face of the sarcolemma.

The sarcoplasmic reticulum is scanty, and there are no T tubules. The calcium needed to activate smooth muscle contraction comes mainly from the extracellular fluid (ECF) by way of calcium channels in the sarcolemma. During relaxation, calcium is pumped back out of the cell. Some smooth muscle has no nerve supply, but when nerve fibers are present, they are autonomic (like those of cardiac muscle) and not somatic motor fibers.

Unlike skeletal and cardiac muscle, smooth muscle is capable of mitosis and hyperplasia. Thus, an organ such as the pregnant uterus can grow by adding more myocytes, and injured smooth muscle regenerates well.

Types of Smooth Muscle

There are two functional categories of smooth muscle called *multiunit* and *single-unit* types (fig. 11.21). **Multiunit smooth muscle** occurs in some of the largest arteries and pulmonary air passages, in the piloerector muscles of the hair follicles, and in the iris of the eye. Its innervation, although autonomic, is otherwise similar to that of skeletal muscle—the terminal branches of a nerve fiber synapse with individual myocytes and form a motor unit. Each motor unit contracts independently of the others, hence the name of this muscle type.

Single-unit smooth muscle is more widespread. It occurs in most blood vessels and in the digestive, respiratory, urinary, and reproductive tracts—thus, it is also called **visceral muscle.** In many of the hollow viscera, it forms two or more layers—typically an inner *circular layer,* in which the myocytes encircle the organ, and an outer *longitudinal layer,* in which the myocytes run lengthwise along the

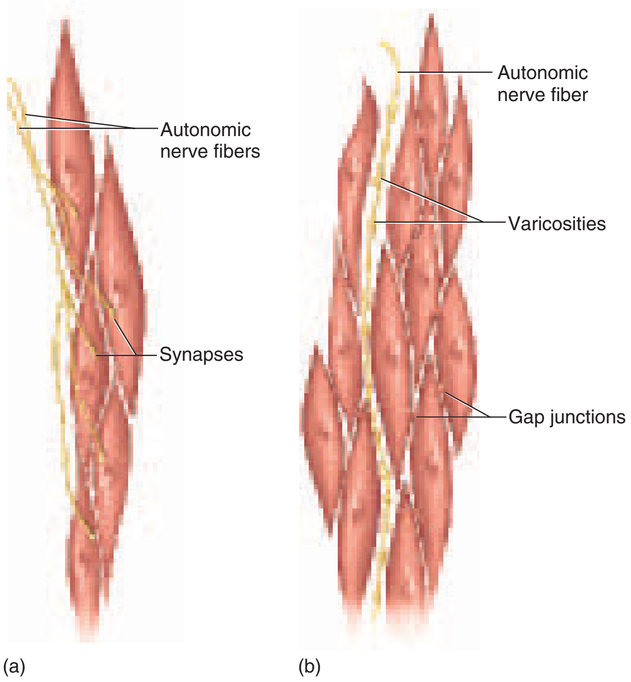


Figure 11.21 Smooth Muscle Innervation. (*a*) Multiunit smooth muscle, in which each muscle cell receives its own nerve supply. (*b*) Single-unit smooth muscle, in which a nerve fiber passes through the tissue without synapsing with any specific muscle cell.

---

[12] *auto* = self

organ (fig. 11.22). The name *single-unit* refers to the fact that the myocytes of this type of muscle are electrically coupled to each other by gap junctions. Thus, they directly stimulate each other and a large number of cells contract as a unit, almost as if they were a single cell.

Stimulation of Smooth Muscle

Like cardiac muscle, smooth muscle is involuntary and capable of contracting without nervous stimulation. Some smooth muscle contracts in response to chemical stimuli such as hormones, carbon dioxide, low pH, and oxygen deficiency and in response to stretch (as in a full stomach or bladder). Some single-unit smooth muscle, especially in the stomach and intestines, has pacemaker cells that spontaneously depolarize and set off waves of contraction throughout an entire layer of muscle. Such smooth muscle is autorhythmic, like cardiac muscle, although with a much slower rhythm.

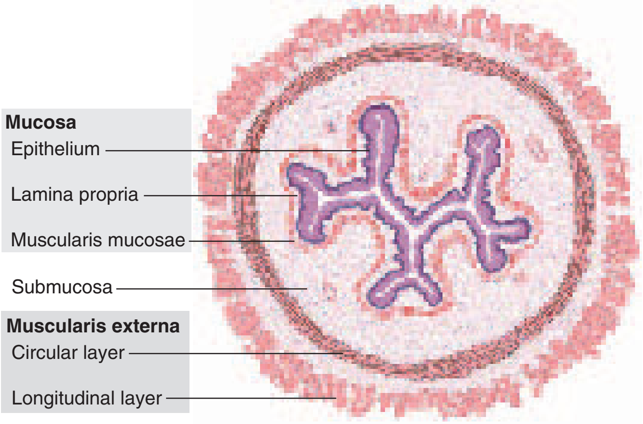


Figure 11.22 **Layers of Visceral (single-unit) Smooth Muscle in a Cross Section of the Esophagus.** Many hollow organs have alternating circular and longitudinal layers of smooth muscle.

But like cardiac muscle, smooth muscle is innervated by autonomic nerve fibers that can trigger or modify its contractions. Autonomic nerve fibers stimulate smooth muscle with either acetylcholine or norepinephrine. The nerve fibers have contrasting effects on smooth muscle in different locations. They relax the smooth muscle of arteries while contracting the smooth muscle in the bronchioles of the lungs, for example.

In single-unit smooth muscle, each autonomic nerve fiber has up to 20,000 beadlike swellings called **varicosities** along its length (figs. 11.21 and 11.23). Each varicosity contains synaptic vesicles and a few mitochondria. Instead of closely approaching any one myocyte, the nerve fiber passes amid several myocytes and stimulates all of them at once when it releases its neurotransmitter. The muscle cells do not have motor end plates or any other specialized area of sarcolemma to bind the neurotransmitter; rather, they have receptor sites scattered throughout the surface. Such nerve-muscle relationships are called **diffuse junctions** because there is no one-to-one relationship between a nerve fiber and a myocyte.

Contraction and Relaxation

Smooth muscle resembles the other muscle types in that contraction is triggered by calcium ions (Ca^{2+}), energized by ATP, and achieved by the sliding of thin filaments over the

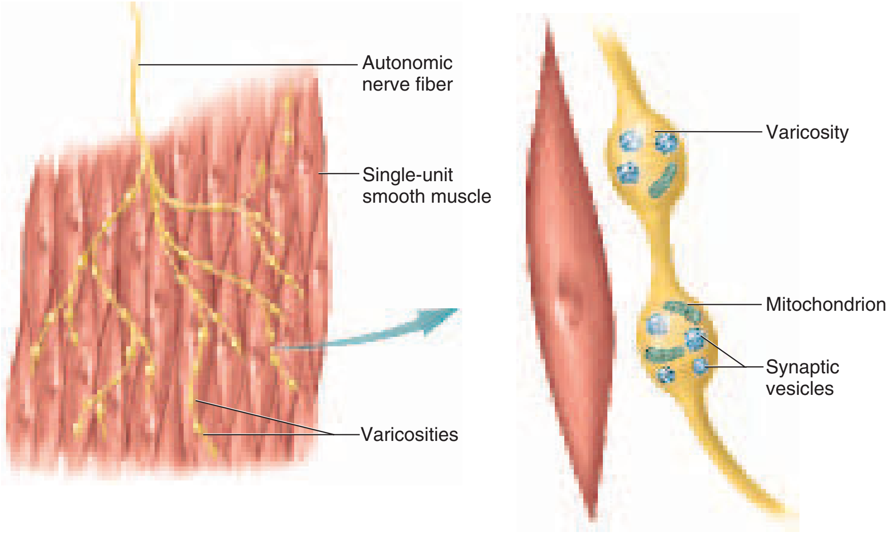


Figure 11.23 **Varicosities of an Autonomic Nerve Fiber in Single-Unit Smooth Muscle.**

thick filaments. The mechanism of excitation-contraction coupling, however, is very different. Little of the Ca^{2+} comes from the sarcoplasmic reticulum; most comes from the extracellular fluid and enters the cell through calcium channels in the sarcolemma. Some of these channels are voltage-gated and open in response to changes in membrane voltage; some are ligand-gated and open in response to hormones and neurotransmitters; and some are mechanically gated and open in response to stretching of the cell.

Think About It

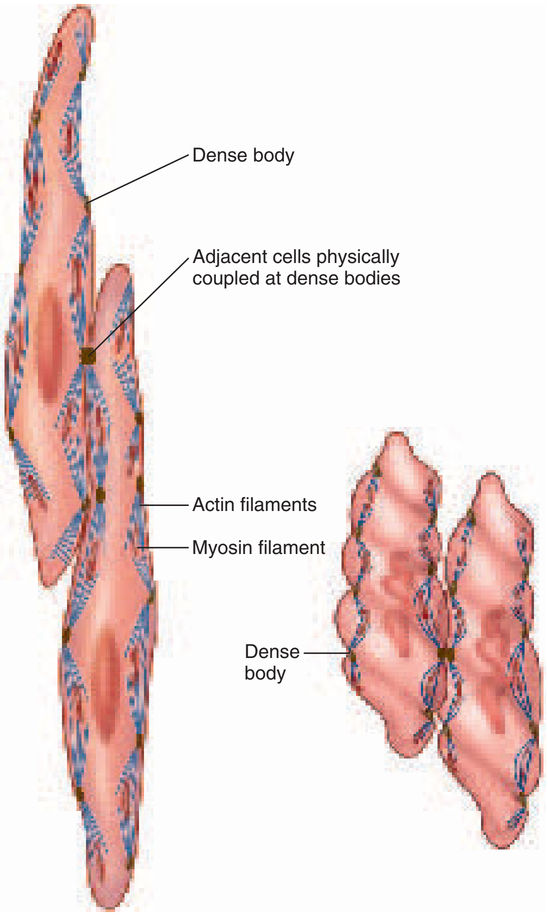
How is smooth muscle contraction affected by the drugs called calcium channel blockers? (see p. 101)

Smooth muscle has no troponin. Calcium binds instead to a similar protein called **calmodulin**[13] (cal-MOD-you-lin), associated with the thick filaments. Calmodulin then activates an enzyme called **myosin light-chain kinase,** which transfers a phosphate group from ATP to the head of the myosin. This activates the myosin ATPase and enables it to bind to actin, but in order to execute a power stroke, the myosin must bind and hydrolyze yet another ATP. It then produces power and recovery strokes like those of skeletal muscle.

As thick filaments pull on the thin ones, the thin filaments pull on intermediate filaments, which in turn pull on the dense bodies of the plasma membrane. This shortens the entire cell. When a smooth muscle cell contracts, it twists in a spiral fashion, somewhat like wringing out a wet towel except that the "towel" wrings itself (fig. 11.24).

In skeletal muscle, there is typically a 2 msec latent period between stimulation and the onset of contraction. In smooth muscle, by contrast, the latent period is 50 to 100 msec long. Tension peaks about 500 msec (0.5 sec) after the stimulus and then declines over a period of 1 to 2 seconds. The effect of all this is that compared to skeletal muscle, smooth muscle is very slow to contract and relax. It is slow to contract because its myosin ATPase is a slow enzyme. It is slow to relax because the pumps that remove Ca^{2+} from the cell are also slow. As the Ca^{2+} level falls, myosin is dephosphorylated and is no longer able to hydrolyze ATP and execute power strokes. However, it does not necessarily detach from actin immediately. Its myosin has a *latch-bridge mechanism* that enables it to remain attached to actin for a prolonged time without consuming more ATP.

Smooth muscle often exhibits tetanus and is very resistant to fatigue. It makes most of its ATP aerobically, but its ATP requirement is small and it has relatively few mitochondria. Skeletal muscle requires 10 to 300 times as much ATP as smooth muscle to maintain the same amount of tension. The fatigue-resistance and latch-bridge mechanism of smooth muscle are important in enabling it to maintain a state of continual **smooth muscle tone (tonic contraction).** This tonic contraction keeps the arteries in a state of partial constriction called *vasomotor tone.* A loss of muscle tone in the arteries can cause a dangerous drop in blood pressure. Smooth muscle tone also keeps the intestines partially contracted. The intestines are much longer in a cadaver than they are in a living person because of the loss of muscle tone at death.



(a) Relaxed smooth muscle cell (b) Contracted smooth muscle cell

Figure 11.24 Smooth Muscle Contraction. (*a*) Relaxed cells. Actin myofilaments are anchored to dense bodies in the sarcoplasm and on the plasma membrane, rather than to Z discs. (*b*) Contracted cells. Note the twisting effect.

Response to Stretch

Stretch alone sometimes causes smooth muscle to contract by opening mechanically gated calcium channels in the sarcolemma. Distension of the esophagus with food or the colon with feces, for example, evokes a wave of contraction called **peristalsis** (PERR-ih-STAL-sis) that propels the contents along the organ.

---

[13] acronym for *cal*cium *modul*ating prote*in*

Smooth muscle exhibits a reaction called the **stress-relaxation** (or **receptive relaxation**) **response.** When stretched, it briefly contracts and resists, but then relaxes. The significance of this response is apparent in the urinary bladder, whose wall consists of three layers of smooth muscle. If the stretched bladder contracted and did not soon relax, it would expel urine almost as soon as it began to fill, thus failing to store the urine until an opportune time.

Remember that skeletal muscle cannot contract very forcefully if it is overstretched. Smooth muscle is not subject to the limitations of this length-tension relationship. It must be able to contract forcefully even when greatly stretched, so that hollow organs such as the stomach and bladder can fill and then expel their contents efficiently. Skeletal muscle must be within 30% of optimum length in order to contract strongly when stimulated. Smooth muscle, by contrast, can be anywhere from half to twice its resting length and still contract powerfully. There are three reasons for this: (1) there are no Z discs, so thick filaments cannot butt against them and stop the contraction; (2) since the thick and thin filaments are not arranged in orderly sarcomeres, stretching of the muscle does not cause a situation where there is too little overlap for cross-bridges to form; and (3) the thick filaments of smooth muscle have myosin heads along their entire length (there is no bare zone), so cross-bridges can form anywhere, not just at the ends. Smooth muscle also exhibits **plasticity**—the ability to adjust its tension to the degree of stretch. Thus, a hollow organ such as the bladder can be greatly stretched yet not become flabby when it is empty.

The muscular system suffers fewer diseases than any other organ system, but several of its more common dysfunctions are listed in table 11.6. The effects of aging on the muscular system are described on pages 1109–1110.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

25. Explain why intercalated discs are important to cardiac muscle function.
26. Explain why it is important for cardiac muscle to have a longer action potential and longer refractory period than skeletal muscle.
27. How do single-unit and multiunit smooth muscle differ in innervation and contractile behavior?
28. How does smooth muscle differ from skeletal muscle with respect to its source of calcium and its calcium receptor?
29. Explain why the stress-relaxation response is an important factor in smooth muscle function.

Table 11.6 Some Disorders of the Muscular System

Delayed onset muscle soreness	Pain, stiffness, and tenderness felt from several hours to a day after strenuous exercise. Associated with microtrauma to the muscles, with disrupted Z discs, myofibrils, and plasma membranes; and with elevated levels of myoglobin, creatine kinase, and lactate dehydrogenase in the blood.
Cramps	Painful muscle spasms triggered by heavy exercise, extreme cold, dehydration, electrolyte loss, low blood glucose, or lack of blood flow.
Contracture	Abnormal muscle shortening not caused by nervous stimulation. Can result from failure of the calcium pump to remove Ca^{2+} from the sarcoplasm or from contraction of scar tissue, as in burn patients.
Fibromyalgia	Diffuse, chronic muscular pain and tenderness, often associated with sleep disturbances and fatigue; often misdiagnosed as chronic fatigue syndrome. Can be caused by various infectious diseases, physical or emotional trauma, or medications. Most common in women 30 to 50 years old.
Crush syndrome	A shocklike state following the massive crushing of muscles; associated with high and potentially fatal fever, cardiac irregularities resulting from K^+ released from the muscle, and kidney failure resulting from blockage of the renal tubules with myoglobin released by the traumatized muscle. Myoglobinuria (myoglobin in the urine) is a common sign.
Disuse atrophy	Reduction in the size of muscle fibers as a result of nerve damage or muscular inactivity, for example in limbs in a cast and in patients confined to a bed or wheelchair. Muscle strength can be lost at a rate of 3% per day of bed rest.
Myositis	Muscle inflammation and weakness resulting from infection or autoimmune disease.

Disorders described elsewhere

Athletic injuries p. 386
Back injuries p. 349
Baseball finger p. 386
Carpal tunnel syndrome p. 365
Charley horse p. 386
Compartment syndrome p. 386
Hernia p. 351
Muscular dystrophy p. 437
Myasthenia gravis p. 437
Paralysis p. 414
Pitcher's arm p. 386
Pulled groin p. 386
Pulled hamstrings p. 386
Rotator cuff injury p. 386
Tennis elbow p. 386
Tennis leg p. 386

Insight 11.4 Clinical Application

Muscular Dystrophy and Myasthenia Gravis

Muscular dystrophy[14] is a collective term for several hereditary diseases in which the skeletal muscles degenerate, lose strength, and are gradually replaced by adipose and fibrous tissue. This new connective tissue impedes blood circulation, which in turn accelerates muscle degeneration in a fatal spiral of positive feedback. The most common form of the disease is *Duchenne*[15] *muscular dystrophy (DMD),* caused by a sex-linked recessive allele. Like other sex-linked traits (see chapter 4), DMD is mainly a disease of males. It occurs in about 1 in 3,500 male live births, but is not usually diagnosed until the age of 2 to 10 years. Difficulties begin to appear early on, as a child begins to walk. The child falls frequently and has difficulty standing up again. The disease affects the hips first, then the legs, and progresses to the abdominal and spinal muscles. The muscles shorten as they atrophy, causing postural abnormalities such as scoliosis. DMD is incurable but is treated with exercise to slow the atrophy and with braces to reinforce the weakened hips and correct the posture. Patients are usually confined to a wheelchair by early adolescence and rarely live beyond the age of 20.

The DMD gene was identified in 1987, and genetic screening is now available to inform prospective parents of whether or not they are carriers. The normal allele of this gene makes *dystrophin,* a large protein that links to actin filaments at one end and to membrane glycoproteins on the other. In DMD, dystrophin is absent, the plasma membranes of the muscle fibers become torn, and the muscle fibers die.

A less severe form of muscular dystrophy is *facioscapulohumeral (Landouzy–Dejerine*[16]*) muscular dystrophy,* an autosomal dominant trait that begins in adolescence and affects both sexes. It involves the facial and shoulder muscles more than the pelvic muscles and disables some individuals while it barely affects others. A third form, *limb-girdle dystrophy,* is a combination of several diseases of intermediate severity that affect the shoulder, arm, and pelvic muscles.

Myasthenia gravis[17] (MY-ass-THEE-nee-uh GRAV-is) *(MG)* usually occurs in women between the ages of 20 and 40. It is an autoimmune disease in which antibodies attack the neuromuscular junctions and bind ACh receptors together in clusters. The muscle fiber then removes the clusters from the sarcolemma by endocytosis. As a result, the muscle fibers become less and less sensitive to ACh. The effects often appear first in the facial muscle (fig. 11.25) and commonly include drooping eyelids and double vision (due to weakness of the eye muscles). The initial symptoms are often followed by difficulty in swallowing, weakness of the limbs, and poor physical endurance. Some people with MG die quickly as a result of respiratory failure, but others have normal life spans. One method of assessing the progress of the disease is to use *bungarotoxin,* a protein from cobra venom that binds to ACh receptors. The amount that binds is proportional to the number of receptors that are still functional. The muscle of an MG patient sometimes binds less than one-third as much bungarotoxin as normal muscle does.

Myasthenia gravis is often treated with cholinesterase inhibitors. These drugs retard the breakdown of ACh in the neuromuscular junction and enable it to stimulate the muscle longer. Immunosuppressive agents such as Prednisone and Imuram may be used to suppress the production of the antibodies that destroy ACh receptors. Since certain immune cells are stimulated by hormones from the thymus, removal of the thymus *(thymectomy)* helps to dampen the overactive immune response that causes myasthenia gravis. Also, a technique called *plasmapheresis* may be used to remove harmful antibodies from the blood plasma.

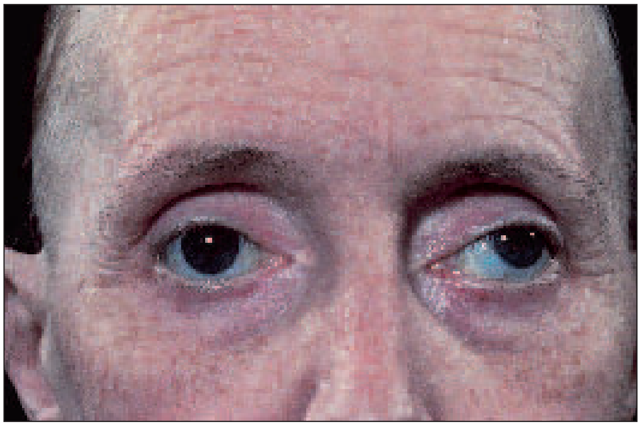


Figure 11.25 Myasthenia Gravis. This disorder especially affects the muscles of the head. It is characterized by drooping of the eyelids, weakness of the muscles of eye movement, and double vision resulting from the divergence *(strabismus)* of the eyes.

---

[14] *dys* = bad, abnormal + *trophy* = growth

[15] Guillaume B. A. Duchenne (1806–75), French physician

[16] Louis T. J. Landouzy (1845–1917) and Joseph J. Dejerine (1849–1917), French neurologists

[17] *my* = muscle + *asthen* = weakness + *grav* = severe

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

Types and Characteristics of Muscular Tissue (p. 408)

1. Muscular tissue has the properties of responsiveness, conductivity, contractility, extensibility, and elasticity.
2. Skeletal muscle is voluntary striated muscle that is usually attached to one or more bones.
3. A skeletal muscle cell, or muscle fiber, is a threadlike cell typically 100 μm in diameter and 3 cm long.

Microscopic Anatomy of Skeletal Muscle (p. 409)

1. A muscle fiber forms by the fusion of many stem cells called *myoblasts*, and is thus multinucleate.
2. The *sarcolemma* (plasma membrane) exhibits tunnel-like infoldings called *transverse (T) tubules* that cross from one side of the cell to the other.
3. The *sarcoplasm* (cytoplasm) is occupied mainly by protein bundles called *myofibrils.* Mitochondria, glycogen, and myoglobin are packed between the myofibrils.
4. The fiber has an extensive *sarcoplasmic reticulum* (SR) that serves as a Ca^{2+} reservoir. On each side of a T tubule, the SR expands into a *terminal cisterna.*
5. A myofibril is a bundle of two kinds of protein *myofilaments* called thick and thin filaments.
6. *Thick filaments* are composed of bundles of *myosin* molecules, each of which has a filamentous tail and a globular head.
7. Thin filaments are composed mainly of a double strand of *actin,* with a myosin-binding *active site* on each of its globular subunits. In the groove between the two actin strands are two regulatory proteins, *tropomyosin* and *troponin.*
8. Elastic filaments composed of *titin* run through the core of a thick filament and attach to Z discs.
9. Skeletal and cardiac muscle exhibit alternating light and dark bands, or *striations,* that result from the pattern of overlap between thick and thin filaments. The principal striations are a dark *A band* with a light *H zone* in the middle, and a light *I band* with a dark line, the *Z disc,* in the middle.
10. The functional unit of a muscle fiber is the *sarcomere,* which is a segment from one Z disc to the next.

The Nerve-Muscle Relationship (p. 412)

1. Skeletal muscle contracts only when it is stimulated by a *somatic motor nerve fiber.*
2. One somatic motor fiber branches at the end and innervates from 3 to 1,000 muscle fibers. The nerve fiber and its muscle fibers are called a *motor unit.* Small motor units (few muscle fibers per nerve fiber) are found in muscles where fine control of movement is important, and large motor units in muscles where strength is more important than precision.
3. The point where a nerve fiber meets a muscle fiber is a type of synapse called the *neuromuscular junction.* It consists of the *synaptic knob* (a dilated tip of the nerve fiber) and a *motor end plate* (a folded depression in the sarcolemma). The gap between the knob and end plate is the *synaptic cleft.*
4. *Synaptic vesicles* in the knob release a neurotransmitter called *acetylcholine (ACh),* which diffuses across the cleft and binds to *ACh receptors* on the end plate.
5. An unstimulated nerve, muscle, or other cell has a difference in positive and negative charges on the two sides of its plasma membrane; it is *polarized.* The charge difference, called the *resting membrane potential,* is typically about −90 mV on a muscle fiber.
6. When a nerve or muscle fiber is stimulated, a quick, self-propagating voltage shift called an *action potential* occurs. Action potentials form nerve signals and activate muscle contraction.

Behavior of Skeletal Muscle Fibers (p. 416)

1. The first stage of muscle action is *excitation.* An arriving nerve signal triggers ACh release, ACh binds to receptors on the motor end plate and triggers a voltage change called an *end-plate potential (EPP),* and the EPP triggers action potentials in adjacent regions of the sarcolemma.
2. The second stage is *excitation-contraction coupling.* Action potentials spread along the sarcolemma and down the T tubules, and trigger Ca^{2+} release from the terminal cisternae of the SR. Ca^{2+} binds to troponin of the thin filaments, and tropomyosin shifts position to expose the active sites on the actin.
3. The third stage is *contraction.* A myosin head binds to an active site on actin, flexes, tugs the thin filament closer to the A band, then releases the actin and repeats the process. Each cycle of binding and release consumes one ATP.
4. The fourth and final stage is *relaxation.* When nerve signals cease, ACh release ceases. The enzyme acetylcholinesterase degrades the ACh already present, halting stimulation of the muscle fiber. The SR pumps Ca^{2+} back into it for storage. In the absence of Ca^{2+}, tropomyosin blocks the active sites of actin so myosin can no longer bind to them, and the muscle relaxes.
5. Overly contracted and overly stretched muscle fibers respond poorly to stimulation. A muscle responds best when it is slightly contracted before it is stimulated, so that there is optimal overlap between the resting thick and thin filaments. This is the *length-tension relationship. Muscle tone* maintains an optimal resting length and readiness to respond.

Behavior of Whole Muscles (p. 423)

1. A stimulus must be of at least *threshold* strength to make a muscle

contract. After a short *latent period,* the muscle responds to a single stimulus with a brief contraction called a *twitch.*

2. A single twitch does no useful work for the body. In *recruitment,* however, multiple motor units are activated at once to produce a stronger muscle contraction. In high-frequency stimulation, successive twitches become progressively stronger; this is called *treppe* when the muscle completely relaxes between twitches and *incomplete tetanus* when it relaxes only partially and each twitch "piggybacks" on the previous ones to achieve greater tension.
3. In *isometric contraction,* a muscle develops tension without changing length; in *isotonic contraction,* it changes length while maintaining constant tension. In *concentric contraction,* a muscle maintains tension as it shortens; in *eccentric contraction,* it maintains tension as it lengthens.

Muscle Metabolism (p. 427)

1. A muscle must have ATP in order to contract. It generates ATP by different mechanisms over the duration of a period of exercise.
2. At the outset, muscle uses oxygen from its myoglobin to generate ATP by aerobic respiration.
3. As the stored oxygen is depleted, muscle regenerates ATP from ADP by adding a phosphate (P_i) to it. It gets this P_i either from another ADP, using the enzyme myokinase to transfer the phosphate, or from creatine phosphate, using the enzyme creatine kinase to do so. This is the *phosphagen system* for regenerating ATP.
4. Further into an exercise, as the phosphagen system is depleted, a muscle shifts to anaerobic fermentation (the *glycogen–lactic acid system*).
5. Still later, the respiratory and circulatory systems may catch up with the demands of a muscle and deliver enough oxygen for aerobic respiration to meet the muscle's ATP demand.
6. Muscle fatigue results from several factors: ATP and ACh depletion, loss of membrane excitability, lactic acid accumulation, and central nervous system mechanisms.
7. The ability to maintain high-intensity exercise depends partly on one's *maximum oxygen uptake,* which varies with body size, age, sex, and physical condition.
8. Prolonged exercise produces an *oxygen debt* that is "repaid" by continued heavy breathing after the exercise is over. The extra O_2 breathed during this time goes mainly to restore oxygen reserves in the myoglobin and blood, replenish the phosphagen system, oxidize lactic acid, and meet the needs of a metabolic rate elevated by the high post-exercise body temperature.
9. *Slow oxidative* muscle fibers are adapted for aerobic respiration and relatively resistant to fatigue, but produce relatively slow responses. *Fast glycolytic* muscle fibers respond more quickly but fatigue sooner. *Intermediate fibers* are relatively rare but combine fast responses with fatigue resistance.
10. The strength of a muscle depends on its size, fascicle arrangement, size of its motor units, multiple motor unit summation, temporal summation of twitches, prestimulation length, and fatigue.
11. Resistance exercise stimulates muscle growth and increases strength; endurance exercise increases fatigue resistance.

Cardiac and Smooth Muscle (p. 432)

1. Cardiac muscle consists of relatively short, branched, striated cells joined physically and electrically by *intercalated discs.*
2. Cardiac muscle is *autorhythmic* and thus contracts even without innervation.
3. Cardiac muscle is rich in myoglobin, glycogen, and large mitochondria, uses aerobic respiration almost exclusively, and is very fatigue-resistant.
4. Smooth muscle consists of short, fusiform, nonstriated cells.
5. Smooth muscle has no T tubules and little sarcoplasmic reticulum; it gets Ca^{2+} from the extracellular fluid.
6. In multiunit smooth muscle, each cell is separately innervated by an autonomic nerve fiber and contracts independently. In single-unit smooth muscle, the muscle cells are connected by gap junctions and respond as a unit. Nerve fibers do not synapse with any specific muscle cells in the latter type.
7. In smooth muscle, Ca^{2+} binds to calmodulin rather than troponin. This activates a kinase, which phosphorylates myosin and triggers contraction.
8. Smooth muscle lacks Z discs. Its myofilaments indirectly pull on *dense bodies* and cause the cell to contract in a twisting fashion.
9. Smooth muscle has a latch-bridge mechanism that enables it to maintain tonic contraction with little ATP expenditure.
10. Smooth muscle is not subject to the length-tension relationship. Its unusual ability to stretch and maintain responsiveness allows such organs as the stomach and urinary bladder to expand greatly without losing contractility.

Selected Vocabulary

skeletal muscle 408
striation 408
voluntary 408
involuntary 408
myoglobin 409
sarcoplasmic reticulum 409
thick filament 409
myosin 409
thin filament 409
actin 409
neuromuscular junction 413
acetylcholine 414
acetylcholinesterase 414
muscle tone 423
twitch 423
recruitment 424
treppe 424
tetanus 425
fatigue 428
oxygen debt 429
cardiac muscle 432
autorhythmic 433
smooth muscle 433

Testing Your Recall

1. To make a muscle contract more strongly, the nervous system can activate more motor units. This process is called
   a. recruitment.
   b. summation.
   c. incomplete tetanus.
   d. twitch.
   e. treppe.
2. The _____ is a depression in the sarcolemma that receives a motor nerve ending.
   a. T tubule
   b. terminal cisterna
   c. sarcomere
   d. motor end plate
   e. synapse
3. Before a muscle fiber can contract, ATP must bind to
   a. a Z disc.
   b. the myosin head.
   c. tropomyosin.
   d. troponin.
   e. actin.
4. Before a muscle fiber can contract, Ca^{2+} must bind to
   a. calsequestrin.
   b. the myosin head.
   c. tropomyosin.
   d. troponin.
   e. actin.
5. Skeletal muscle fibers have _____, whereas smooth muscle cells do not.
   a. T tubules
   b. ACh receptors
   c. thick myofilaments
   d. thin myofilaments
   e. dense bodies
6. Smooth muscle cells have_____, whereas skeletal muscle fibers do not.
   a. sarcoplasmic reticulum
   b. tropomyosin
   c. calmodulin
   d. Z discs
   e. myosin ATPase
7. ACh receptors are found mainly in
   a. synaptic vesicles.
   b. terminal cisternae.
   c. thick filaments.
   d. thin filaments.
   e. junctional folds.
8. Single-unit smooth muscle cells can stimulate each other because they have
   a. a latch-bridge.
   b. diffuse junctions.
   c. gap junctions.
   d. tight junctions.
   e. calcium pumps.
9. Warm-up exercises take advantage of _____ to enable muscles to perform at peak strength.
   a. the stress-relaxation response
   b. the length-tension relationship
   c. excitatory junction potentials
   d. oxygen debt
   e. treppe
10. Slow oxidative fibers have all of the following *except*
    a. an abundance of myoglobin.
    b. an abundance of glycogen.
    c. high fatigue resistance.
    d. a red color.
    e. a high capacity to synthesize ATP aerobically.
11. The minimum stimulus intensity that will make a muscle contract is called _____.
12. A state of prolonged maximum contraction is called _____.
13. Parts of the sarcoplasmic reticulum called _____ lie on each side of a T tubule.
14. Thick myofilaments consist mainly of the protein _____.
15. The neurotransmitter that stimulates skeletal muscle is _____.
16. Muscle contains an oxygen-binding pigment called _____.
17. The _____ of skeletal muscle play the same role as dense bodies in smooth muscle.
18. In autonomic nerve fibers that stimulate single-unit smooth muscle, the neurotransmitter is contained in swellings called _____.
19. A state of continual partial muscle contraction is called _____.
20. _____ is an end product of anaerobic fermentation that causes muscle fatigue.

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. Each motor neuron supplies just one muscle fiber.
2. To initiate muscle contraction, calcium ions must bind to the myosin heads.
3. Slow oxidative fibers are relatively resistant to fatigue.
4. Thin filaments are found in both the A bands and I bands of striated muscle.
5. Thin filaments do not change length when a muscle contracts.
6. Smooth muscle lacks striations because it does not have thick and thin myofilaments.
7. A muscle must contract to the point of complete tetanus if it is to move a load.
8. If no ATP were available to a muscle fiber, the excitation stage of muscle action could not occur.
9. For the first 30 seconds of an intense exercise, muscle gets most of its energy from lactic acid.
10. Cardiac and some smooth muscle are autorhythmic, but skeletal muscle is not.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. Without ATP, relaxed muscle cannot contract and a contracted muscle cannot relax. Explain why.
2. Slight pH variations can cause enzymes to change conformation and can reduce enzyme activity. Explain how this relates to muscle fatigue.
3. Why would skeletal muscle be unsuitable for the wall of the urinary bladder? Explain how this illustrates the complementarity of form and function at a cellular and molecular level.
4. As skeletal muscle contracts, one or more bands of the sarcomere become narrower and disappear, and one or more of them remain the same width. Which bands will change—A, H, or I—and why?
5. Botulism occurs when a bacterium, *Clostridium botulinum,* releases a neurotoxin that prevents motor neurons from releasing ACh. In view of this, what early signs of botulism would you predict? Explain why a person with botulism could die of suffocation.

Answers at the Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Legend Questions

11.4 The I band

11.13 ATP is needed to pump Ca^{2+} back into the sarcoplasmic reticulum by active transport, and to induce each myosin head to release actin so the sarcomere can relax.

11.16 The gluteus maximus and quadriceps femoris

11.17 The muscle tension line would drop gradually while the muscle length line would rise.

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.

Multiple neurons of the brain "firing" (artist's conception)

CHAPTER 12

Nervous Tissue

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Overview of the Nervous System 444

Nerve Cells (Neurons) 445
- Universal Properties 445
- Functional Classes 446
- Structure of a Neuron 446
- Axonal Transport 449

Supportive Cells (Neuroglia) 449
- Types of Neuroglia 450
- Myelin 451
- Unmyelinated Nerve Fibers 453
- Conduction Speed of Nerve Fibers 453
- Regeneration of Nerve Fibers 453

Electrophysiology of Neurons 455
- Electrical Potentials and Currents 455
- The Resting Membrane Potential 455
- Local Potentials 456
- Action Potentials 458
- The Refractory Period 460
- Signal Conduction in Nerve Fibers 460

Synapses 463
- The Discovery of Neurotransmitters 463
- Structure of a Chemical Synapse 463
- Neurotransmitters and Related Messengers 464
- Synaptic Transmission 465
- Cessation of the Signal 467
- Neuromodulators 468

Neural Integration 468
- Postsynaptic Potentials 468
- Summation, Facilitation, and Inhibition 469
- Neural Coding 470
- Neuronal Pools and Circuits 472
- Memory and Synaptic Plasticity 473

Chapter Review 476

INSIGHTS

12.1 **Clinical Application:** Glial Cells and Brain Tumors 451
12.2 **Clinical Application:** Diseases of the Myelin Sheath 453
12.3 **Clinical Application:** Nerve Growth Factor 455
12.4 **Clinical Application:** Alzheimer and Parkinson Diseases 475

Brushing Up

To understand this chapter, it is important that you understand or brush up on the following concepts:

- Cations and anions (p. 60)
- Ligand- and voltage-regulated gates (p. 100)
- Cyclic AMP as a second messenger (p. 102)
- Simple diffusion (p. 106)
- Active transport and the sodium-potassium pump (p. 110)
- Basic structure of nerve cells (p. 175)

If the body is to maintain homeostasis and function effectively, its trillions of cells must work together in a coordinated fashion. If each cell behaved without regard to what others were doing, the result would be physiological chaos and death. This is prevented by two communication systems—the **nervous system** (fig. 12.1), which is specialized for the rapid transmission of signals from cell to cell, and the **endocrine system,** which is specialized for sending chemical messengers, the hormones, through the blood. The most important aspect of both systems is that they detect changes in an organ, modify its physiology, and modify that of other organs. Thus, these systems functionally coordinate the organs of the body and play a central role in maintaining homeostasis.

The scientific study of the nervous system is called **neuroscience.** It includes **neuroanatomy,** the study of structure, and **neurophysiology,** the study of function. The branch of medicine that deals with the diagnosis and treatment of neurological disorders is **neurology.**

Chapters 12 through 16 deal with neuroscience and chapter 17 with the endocrine system. This chapter is primarily concerned with how individual nerve cells work. The next four chapters are concerned with the organization and function of the nervous system at the organ level. The basic parts of a nerve cell were introduced in chapter 5 (p. 175).

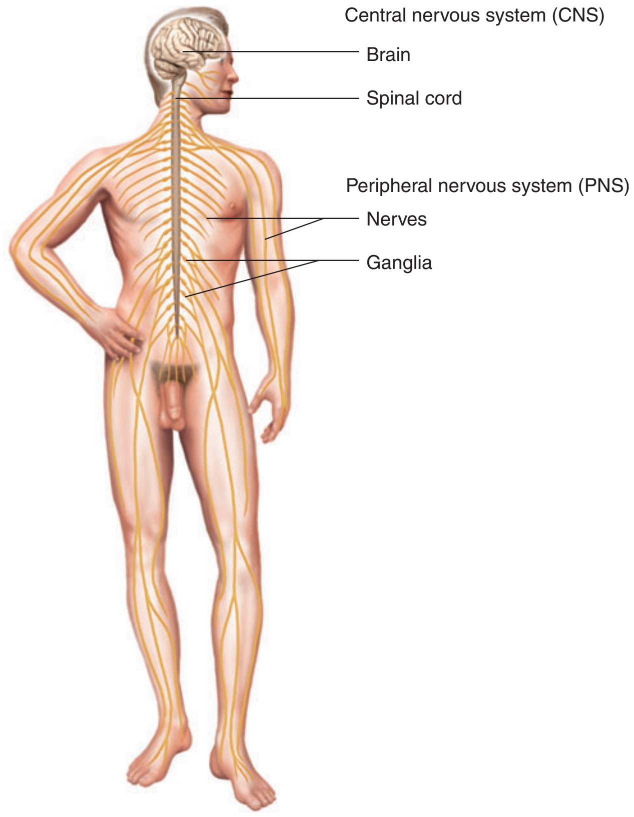

Central nervous system (CNS)
Brain
Spinal cord
Peripheral nervous system (PNS)
Nerves
Ganglia

Figure 12.1 **The Nervous System.**

Overview of the Nervous System

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the major anatomical subdivisions of the nervous system;
- state the general functions of the nervous system and how these relate to the general classes of nerve cells; and
- describe the basic physiological properties of nerve cells that enable them to carry out their functions.

The fundamental purpose of the nervous system is (1) to receive information from **receptors**—cells and organs specialized to detect changes in the body and its external environment; (2) to process this information and determine the appropriate response, if any—a step called **neural integration;** and (3) to issue commands to **effectors,** cells and organs (mainly muscle and gland cells) that carry out the body's responses.

The nervous system has two major anatomical subdivisions (fig. 12.2):

- The **central nervous system (CNS)** consists of the brain and spinal cord, which are enclosed and protected by the cranium and vertebral column.
- The **peripheral nervous system (PNS)** consists of all the nervous system except the brain and spinal cord. It is composed of nerves and ganglia. A **nerve** is a bundle of nerve fibers wrapped in fibrous connective tissue. Nerves emerge from the CNS through foramina of the skull and vertebral column and carry signals to

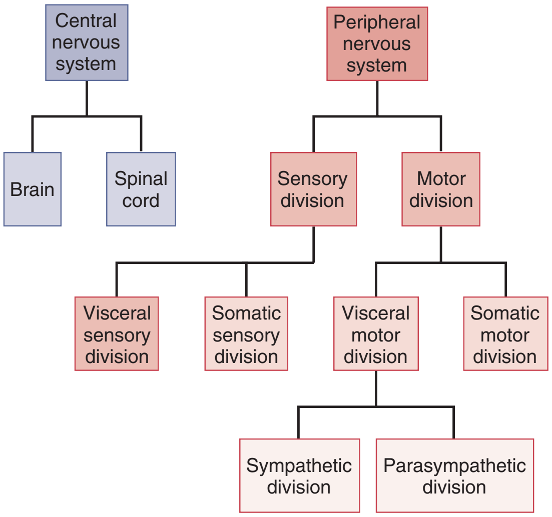

Central nervous system
Peripheral nervous system
Brain
Spinal cord
Sensory division
Motor division
Visceral sensory division
Somatic sensory division
Visceral motor division
Somatic motor division
Sympathetic division
Parasympathetic division

Figure 12.2 **Subdivisions of the Nervous System.**

and from other organs of the body. A **ganglion**[1] (plural, *ganglia*) is a knotlike swelling in a nerve where the cell bodies of neurons are concentrated.

The peripheral nervous system is functionally divided into *sensory* and *motor* divisions, and each of these is further divided into *somatic* and *visceral* subdivisions.

- The **sensory (afferent[2]) division** carries sensory signals by way of afferent nerve fibers from sensory **receptors** (cells and organs that detect stimuli) to the CNS.
    - The **visceral sensory division** carries signals mainly from the viscera of the thoracic and abdominal cavities, such as the heart, lungs, stomach, and urinary bladder.
    - The **somatic[3] sensory division** carries signals from receptors in the skin, muscles, bones, and joints.
- The **motor (efferent[4]) division** carries motor signals by way of efferent nerve fibers from the CNS to **effectors** (cells and organs that carry out the body's responses, mainly gland and muscle cells).
- The **visceral motor division (autonomic[5] nervous system)** carries signals to glands, cardiac muscle, and smooth muscle. We usually have no voluntary control over these effectors, and this system operates at an unconscious level. The responses of this system and its effectors are *visceral reflexes.* The autonomic nervous system has two further divisions:
    - The **sympathetic division** tends to arouse the body for action, for example by accelerating the heartbeat and increasing respiratory airflow, but it inhibits digestion.
    - The **parasympathetic division** tends to have a calming effect, slowing down the heartbeat, for example, but stimulating digestion.
- The **somatic motor division** carries signals to the skeletal muscles. This output produces muscular contractions that are under voluntary control as well as involuntary muscle contractions called *somatic reflexes.*

The foregoing terminology may give the impression that the body has several nervous systems—central, peripheral, sensory, motor, somatic, and visceral. These are just terms of convenience, however. There is only one nervous system, and these subsystems are interconnected parts of the whole.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

1. What is a receptor? Give two examples of effectors.
2. Distinguish between the central and peripheral nervous systems, and between visceral and somatic divisions of the sensory and motor systems.
3. What is another name for the visceral motor nervous system? What are the two subdivisions of this system?

Nerve Cells (Neurons)

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- identify the parts of a neuron;
- explain how neurons transport materials between the cell body and tips of the axon;
- name the cells that aid neuron function and state their functions;
- describe the myelin sheath that is formed around certain nerve fibers and explain its importance; and
- explain how damaged nerve fibers regenerate.

Universal Properties

The communicative role of the nervous system is carried out by nerve cells, or **neurons.** These cells have three fundamental physiological properties that are necessary to this function:

1. **Excitability (irritability).** All cells possess excitability, the ability to respond to environmental changes called **stimuli.** Neurons have developed this property to the highest degree.
2. **Conductivity.** Neurons respond to stimuli by producing traveling electrical signals that quickly reach other cells at distant locations.
3. **Secretion.** When the electrical signal reaches the end of a nerve fiber, the neuron secretes a chemical *neurotransmitter* that "jumps the gap" and stimulates the next cell.

Think About It

What basic physiological properties do a nerve cell and a skeletal muscle fiber have in common? Name a physiological property of each that the other one lacks.

---

[1] *gangli* = knot
[2] *af* = *ad* = toward + *fer* = to carry
[3] *somat* = body + *ic* = pertaining to
[4] *ef* = *ex* = out, away + *fer* = to carry
[5] *auto* = self + *nom* = law, governance

Functional Classes

There are three general classes of neurons (fig. 12.3) corresponding to the three major aspects of nervous system function listed earlier:

1. **Sensory (afferent) neurons** are specialized to detect stimuli such as light, heat, pressure, and chemicals, and transmit information about them to the CNS. These neurons can begin in almost any organ of the body and end in the CNS; the word *afferent* refers to signal conduction *toward* the CNS. Some sensory receptors, such as pain and smell receptors, are themselves neurons. In other cases, such as taste and hearing, the receptor is a separate cell that communicates directly with a sensory neuron.
2. **Interneurons**[6] **(association neurons)** lie entirely within the CNS. They receive signals from many other neurons and carry out the integrative function of the nervous system—that is, they process, store, and retrieve information and "make decisions" that determine how the body responds to stimuli. About 90% of our neurons are interneurons. The word *interneuron* refers to the fact that they lie *between,* and interconnect, the incoming sensory pathways and the outgoing motor pathways of the CNS.
3. **Motor (efferent) neurons** send signals predominantly to muscle and gland cells, the effectors that carry out the body's responses to stimuli. These neurons are called *motor* neurons because most of them lead to muscle cells, and *efferent* neurons to signify the signal conduction *away from* the CNS.

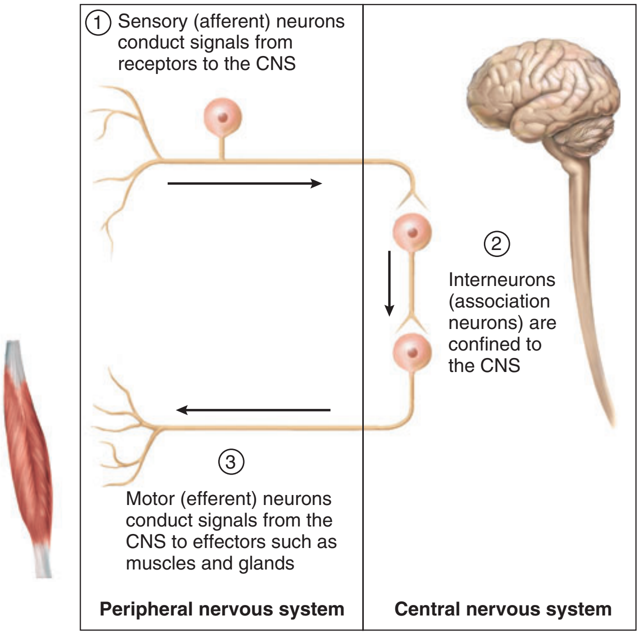

① Sensory (afferent) neurons conduct signals from receptors to the CNS
② Interneurons (association neurons) are confined to the CNS
③ Motor (efferent) neurons conduct signals from the CNS to effectors such as muscles and glands
Peripheral nervous system
Central nervous system

Figure 12.3 Functional Classes of Neurons. Sensory (afferent) neurons carry signals to the central nervous system (CNS); interneurons are contained entirely within the CNS and carry signals from one neuron to another; and motor (efferent) neurons carry signals from the CNS to muscles and glands.

Structure of a Neuron

There are several varieties of neurons, as we shall see, but a good starting point for discussing neuronal stucture is a motor neuron of the spinal cord (fig. 12.4). The control center of the neuron is its **soma,**[7] also called the **cell body** or **perikaryon**[8] (PERR-ih-CARE-ee-on). It has a single, centrally located nucleus with a large nucleolus. The cytoplasm contains mitochondria, lysosomes, a Golgi complex, numerous inclusions, and an extensive rough endoplasmic reticulum and cytoskeleton. The cytoskeleton consists of a dense mesh of microtubules and **neurofibrils** (bundles of actin filaments) that compartmentalize the rough ER into dark-staining regions called *Nissl*[9] *bodies* (fig. 12.4*c, d*). Nissl bodies are unique to neurons and a helpful clue to identifying them in tissue sections with mixed cell types. Mature neurons lack centrioles and apparently undergo no further mitosis after adolescence, but they are unusually long-lived cells, capable of functioning for over a hundred years. Even into old age, however, there are unspecialized *stem cells* in the CNS that can divide and develop into new neurons (see insight 4.3, p. 143).

The major cytoplasmic inclusions in a neuron are glycogen granules, lipid droplets, melanin, and a golden brown pigment called *lipofuscin*[10] (LIP-oh-FEW-sin)—an end product of lysosomal digestion of worn-out organelles and other products. Lipofuscin collects with age and pushes the nucleus to one side of the cell. Lipofuscin granules are also called "wear-and-tear granules" because they are most abundant in old neurons, but they are apparently harmless.

The soma of a neuron usually gives rise to a few thick processes that branch into a vast number of **dendrites**[11]—named for their striking resemblance to the bare branches of a tree in winter. The dendrites are the primary site for receiving signals from other neurons. Some neurons have only one dendrite and some have thousands. The more dendrites a neuron has, the more information it can receive from other cells and incorporate into its decision

---

[6] *inter* = between

[7] *soma* = body

[8] *peri* = around + *karyo* = nucleus

[9] Franz Nissl (1860–1919), German neuropathologist

[10] *lipo* = fat, lipid + *fusc* = dusky, brown

[11] *dendr* = tree, branch + *ite* = little

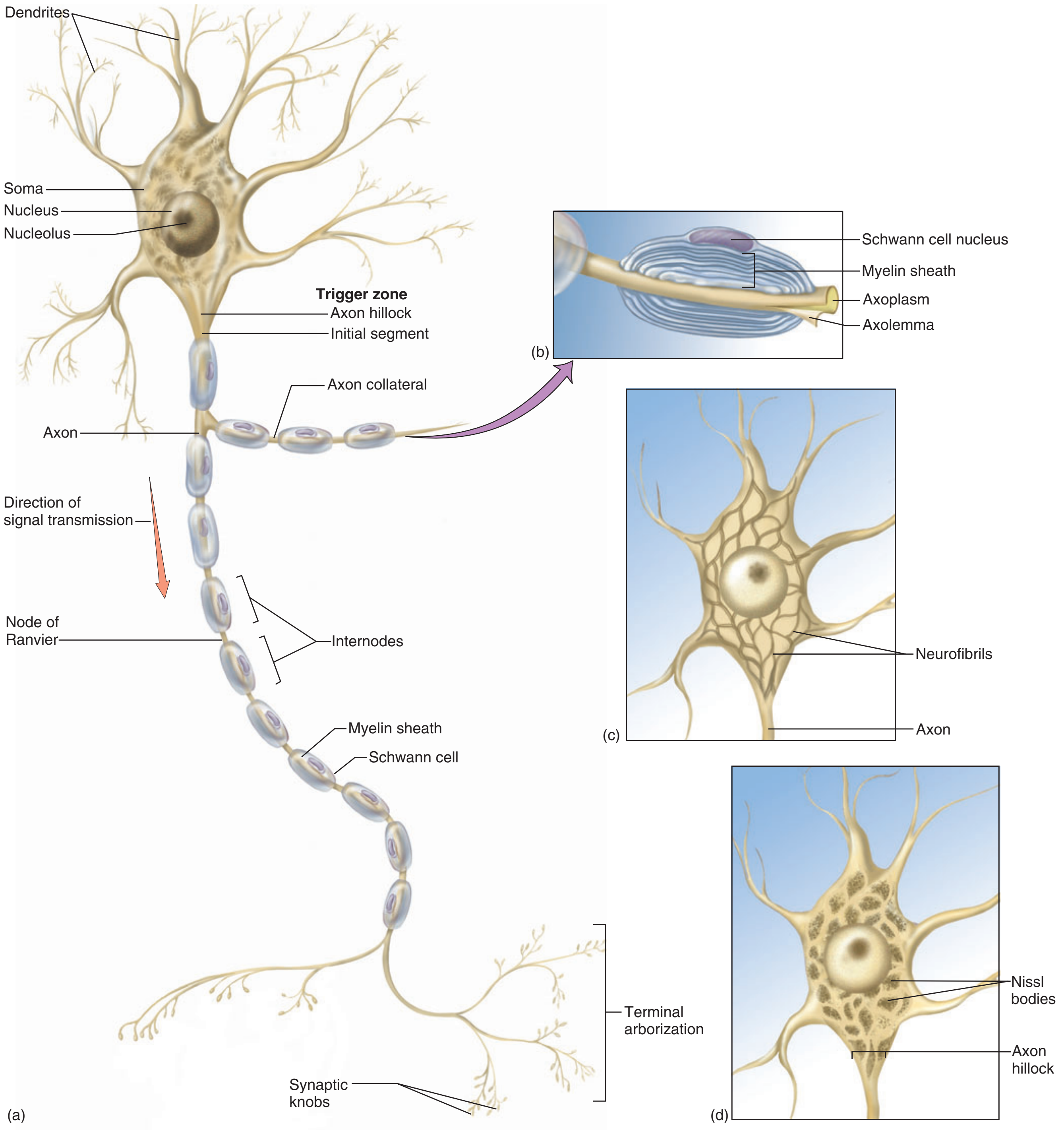

Dendrites
Soma
Nucleus
Nucleolus
Trigger zone
Axon hillock
Initial segment
Axon collateral
Axon
Direction of signal transmission
Node of Ranvier
Internodes
Myelin sheath
Schwann cell
Terminal arborization
Synaptic knobs
(a)
Schwann cell nucleus
Myelin sheath
Axoplasm
Axolemma
(b)
Neurofibrils
Axon
(c)
Nissl bodies
Axon hillock
(d)

Figure 12.4 **A Representative Neuron.** The Schwann cells and myelin sheath are explained later in this chapter. (*a*) A multipolar neuron such as a spinal motor neuron. (*b*) Detail of myelin sheath. (c) Neurofibrils of the soma. (*d*) Nissl bodies, stained masses of rough ER separated by bundles of neurofibrils.

making. As tangled as the dendrites may seem, they provide exquisitely precise pathways for the reception and processing of neural information.

On one side of the soma is a mound called the **axon hillock,** from which the **axon (nerve fiber)** originates. The axon is cylindrical and relatively unbranched for most of its length, although it may give rise to a few branches called *axon collaterals* along the way, and most axons branch extensively at their distal end. An axon is specialized for rapid conduction of nerve signals to points remote from the soma. Its cytoplasm is called the **axoplasm** and its membrane the **axolemma.**[12] A neuron never has more than one axon, and some neurons in the retina and brain have none.

Somas range from 5 to 135 µm in diameter, while axons range from 1 to 20 µm in diameter and from a few millimeters to more than a meter long. Such dimensions are more impressive when we scale them up to the size of familiar objects. If the soma of a spinal motor neuron were the size of a tennis ball, its dendrites would form a huge bushy mass that could fill a 30-seat classroom from floor to ceiling. Its axon would be up to a mile long but a little narrower than a garden hose. This is quite a point to ponder. The neuron must assemble molecules and organelles in its "tennis ball" soma and deliver them through its "mile-long garden hose" to the end of the axon. How it achieves this remarkable feat is explained shortly.

At the distal end, axons usually have a **terminal arborization**[13]—an extensive complex of fine branches. Each branch ends in a **synaptic knob (terminal button).** As studied in the previous chapter, the synaptic knob is a little swelling that forms a junction **(synapse**[14]**)** with a muscle cell, gland cell, or another neuron. It contains **synaptic vesicles** full of neurotransmitter.

Not all neurons fit the preceding description. Neurons are classified structurally according to the number of processes extending from the soma (fig. 12.5):

- **Multipolar neurons** are those, like the preceding, that have one axon and multiple dendrites. This is the most common type of neuron and includes most neurons of the brain and spinal cord.
- **Bipolar neurons** have one axon and one dendrite. Examples include olfactory cells of the nasal cavity, some neurons of the retina, and sensory neurons of the inner ear.
- **Unipolar neurons** have only a single process leading away from the soma. They are represented by the neurons that carry sensory signals to the spinal cord. These neurons are also called *pseudounipolar* because they start out as bipolar neurons in the embryo, but their two processes fuse into one as the neuron

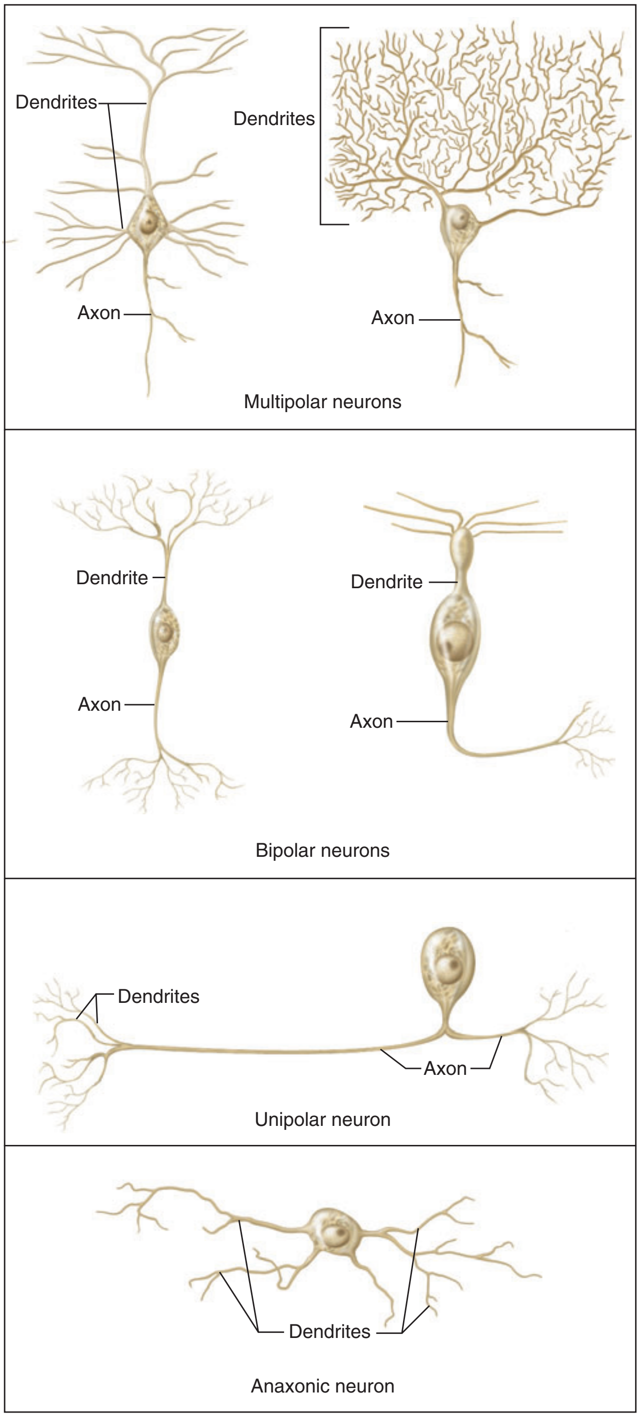


Figure 12.5 Variation in Neuronal Structure. *Top row, left to right:* Two multipolar neurons of the brain—a pyramidal cell and Purkinje cell. *Second row, left to right:* Two bipolar neurons—a bipolar cell of the retina and an olfactory neuron. *Third row:* A unipolar neuron of the type involved in the senses of touch and pain. *Bottom row:* An anaxonic neuron (amacrine cell) of the retina.

---

[12] *axo* = axis, axon + *lemma* = husk, peel, sheath
[13] *arbor* = tree
[14] *syn* = together + *aps* = to touch, join

matures. A short distance away from the soma, the process branches like a T, with a *peripheral fiber* carrying signals from the source of sensation and a *central fiber* continuing into the spinal cord. In most other neurons, a dendrite carries signals toward a soma and an axon carries them away. In unipolar neurons, however, there is one long fiber that bypasses the soma and carries nerve signals directly to the spinal cord. The dendrites are the branching receptive endings in the skin or other place of origin, while the rest of the fiber is considered to be the axon (defined in these neurons by the presence of myelin and the ability to generate action potentials—two concepts explained later in this chapter).

- **Anaxonic neurons** have multiple dendrites but no axon. They communicate through their dendrites and do not produce action potentials. Some anaxonic neurons are found in the brain and retina. In the retina, they help in visual processes such as the perception of contrast.

Axonal Transport

All of the proteins needed by a neuron must be made in the soma, where the protein-synthesizing organelles such as the nucleus, ribosomes, and rough endoplasmic reticulum are located. Yet many of these proteins are needed in the axon, for example to repair and maintain the axolemma, to furnish ion gates in the membrane, or to act in the synaptic knob as enzymes and signaling molecules. Other substances are transported from the axon terminals back to the soma for disposal or recycling. The two-way passage of proteins, organelles, and other materials along an axon is called **axonal transport.** Movement from the soma down the axon is called **anterograde**[15] **transport** and movement up the axon toward the soma is called **retrograde**[16] **transport.**

Materials travel along microtubules of the cytoskeleton, which act like railroad tracks to guide them to their destination. But what is the "motor" that drives them along the tracks? Anterograde transport employs a motor protein called *kinesin,* while retrograde transport uses one called *dynein* (the same protein we encountered earlier in cilia and flagella; see chapter 3). These proteins carry materials "on their backs" while they reach out, like the myosin heads of muscle (see chapter 11), to bind repeatedly to the microtubules and crawl along them.

There are two types of axonal transport, fast and slow.

1. **Fast axonal transport** occurs at a rate of 20 to 400 mm/day and may be either anterograde or retrograde:
    - *Fast anterograde transport* moves mitochondria, synaptic vesicles, other organelles, components of the axolemma, calcium ions, enzymes such as acetylcholinesterase, and small molecules such as glucose, amino acids, and nucleotides.
    - *Fast retrograde transport* returns used synaptic vesicles and other materials to the soma and informs the soma of conditions at the axon terminals. Some pathogens exploit retrograde transport to invade neurons, including tetanus toxin and the herpes simplex, rabies, and polio viruses. In such infections, the delay between infection and the onset of symptoms corresponds to the time needed for the pathogens to reach the somas.
2. **Slow axonal transport,** also called *axoplasmic flow,* occurs at a rate of 0.5 to 10 mm/day and is always anterograde. It moves enzymes and cytoskeletal components down the axon, renews worn-out axoplasmic components in mature neurons, and supplies new axoplasm for developing or regenerating neurons. Damaged nerve fibers regenerate at a speed governed by slow axonal transport.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

4. Sketch a multipolar neuron and label its soma, dendrites, axon, terminal arborization, synaptic knobs, myelin sheath, and nodes of Ranvier.
5. Explain the difference between a sensory neuron, motor neuron, and interneuron.
6. What is the functional difference between a dendrite and an axon?
7. How do proteins and other chemicals synthesized in the soma get to the synaptic knobs? By what process can a virus that invades a peripheral nerve fiber get to the soma of that neuron?

Supportive Cells (Neuroglia)

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- name the cells that aid neuron function and state their functions;
- describe the myelin sheath that is formed around certain nerve fibers and explain its importance;
- describe the relationship of unmyelinated nerve fibers to their supportive cells; and
- explain how damaged nerve fibers regenerate.

---

[15] *antero* = forward + *grad* = to walk, to step

[16] *retro* = back + *grad* = to walk, to step

Types of Neuroglia

There are about a trillion (10^{12}) neurons in the nervous system—10 times as many neurons in your body as there are stars in our galaxy! Yet the neurons are outnumbered as much as 50 to 1 by supportive cells called **neuroglia** (noo-ROG-lee-uh), or **glial** (GLEE-ul) **cells.** Glial cells protect the neurons and aid their function. The word *glia,* which means "glue," implies one of their roles— they bind neurons together and provide a supportive framework for the nervous tissue. In the fetus, glial cells form a scaffold that guides young migrating neurons to their destinations. Wherever a mature neuron is not in synaptic contact with another cell, it is covered with glial cells. This prevents neurons from contacting each other except at points specialized for signal transmission, and thus gives precision to their conduction pathways.

There are six kinds of neuroglia, each with a unique function (table 12.1). Four types occur in the central nervous system (fig. 12.6):

1. **Oligodendrocytes**[17] (OL-ih-go-DEN-dro-sites) somewhat resemble an octopus; they have a bulbous body with as many as 15 armlike processes. Each process reaches out to a nerve fiber and spirals around it like electrical tape wrapped repeatedly around a wire. This spiral wrapping, called the *myelin sheath,* insulates the nerve fiber from the surrounding extracellular fluid. For reasons explained later, it speeds up signal conduction in the nerve fiber.
2. **Astrocytes**[18] are the most abundant and functionally diverse glia in the CNS and constitute over 90% of the tissue in some areas of the brain. They are many-branched and have a somewhat starlike shape. Astrocytes cover the entire brain surface and most nonsynaptic regions of the neurons in the gray matter of the CNS. They form a supportive framework for the nervous tissue. They issue numerous extensions, called *perivascular feet,* that contact the endothelial cells of the blood capillaries and stimulate them to form tight junctions. These junctions contribute to a *blood-brain barrier* that strictly controls which substances are able to get from the bloodstream into the brain tissue (see chapter 14). Astrocytes convert blood glucose to lactate and supply this to the neurons for nourishment. They secrete growth factors that promote neuron growth and synapse formation. They communicate electrically with neurons and may influence future synaptic signalling between neurons. Astrocytes also regulate the chemical composition of the tissue fluid—when neurons transmit signals, they release neurotransmitters and potassium ions; astrocytes absorb these substances and prevent them from reaching excessive levels in the tissue fluid. When neurons are damaged, astrocytes form hardened masses of scar tissue and fill space formerly occupied by neurons. This process is called *astrocytosis* or *sclerosis.*
3. **Ependymal**[19] (ep-EN-dih-mul) **cells** resemble a cuboidal epithelium lining the internal cavities of the brain and spinal cord. Unlike epithelial cells, however, they have no basement membrane and they exhibit rootlike processes that penetrate into

---

[17] *oligo* = few + *dendro* = branches + *cyte* = cell
[18] *astro* = star + *cyte* = cell
[19] *ependyma* = upper garment

Table 12.1 Types of Glial Cells

Types	Functions
Neuroglia of CNS	
Oligodendrocytes	Form myelin in brain and spinal cord
Astrocytes	Cover brain surface and nonsynaptic regions of neurons; form supportive framework in CNS; induce formation of blood-brain barrier; nourish neurons; produce growth factors that stimulate neurons; communicate electrically with neurons and may influence synaptic signalling; remove neurotransmitters and K^+ from ECF of brain and spinal cord; help to regulate composition of ECF; form scar tissue to replace damaged nervous tissue
Ependymal cells	Line cavities of brain and spinal cord; secrete and circulate cerebrospinal fluid
Microglia	Phagocytize and destroy microorganisms, foreign matter, and dead nervous tissue
Neuroglia of PNS	
Schwann cells	Form neurilemma around all PNS nerve fibers and myelin around most of them; aid in regeneration of damaged nerve fibers
Satellite cells	Surround somas of neurons in the ganglia; function uncertain

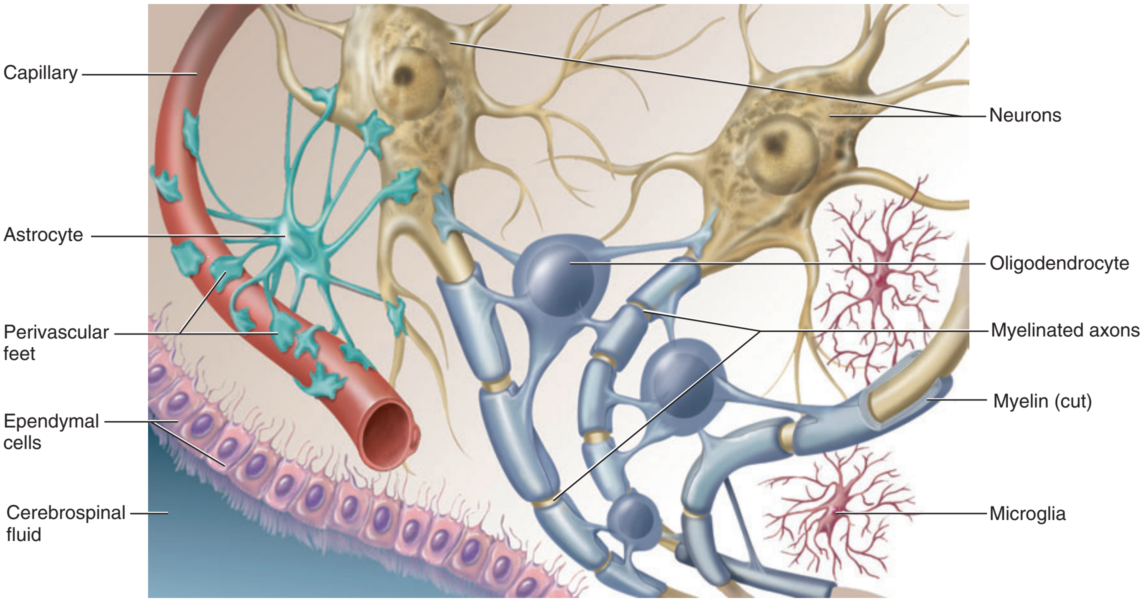


Figure 12.6 **Neuroglia of the Central Nervous System.**

the underlying nervous tissue. Ependymal cells produce cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), a clear liquid that bathes the CNS and fills its internal cavities. They have patches of cilia on their apical surfaces that help to circulate the CSF. Ependymal cells and CSF are considered in more detail in chapter 15.

4. **Microglia** are small macrophages that develop from white blood cells called monocytes. They wander through the CNS and phagocytize dead nervous tissue, microorganisms, and other foreign matter. They become concentrated in areas damaged by infection, trauma, or stroke. Pathologists look for clusters of microglia in brain tissue as a clue to sites of injury.

The other two types of glial cells occur in the peripheral nervous system:

5. **Schwann**[20] (shwon) **cells** envelop nerve fibers of the PNS. In most cases, a Schwann cell winds repeatedly around a nerve fiber and produces a myelin sheath similar to the one produced by oligodendrocytes in the CNS. There are some important differences between the CNS and PNS in the way myelin is produced, which we consider shortly. In addition to myelinating peripheral nerve fibers, Schwann cells assist in the regeneration of damaged fibers, which also is discussed later.
6. **Satellite cells** surround the neuron cell bodies in ganglia of the PNS. Little is known of their function.

---

[20] Theodor Schwann (1810–82), German histologist

Insight 12.1 Clinical Application

Glial Cells and Brain Tumors

A tumor consists of a mass of rapidly dividing cells. Mature neurons, however, have little capacity for mitosis and seldom form tumors. Some brain tumors arise from the meninges (protective membranes of the CNS) or arise by metastasis from tumors elsewhere, such as malignant melanoma and colon cancer. Most adult brain tumors, however, are composed of glial cells, which are mitotically active throughout life. Such tumors are called *gliomas.*[21] Gliomas usually grow rapidly and are highly malignant. Because of the blood-brain barrier (see chapter 14), brain tumors usually do not yield to chemotherapy and must be treated with radiation or surgery.

---

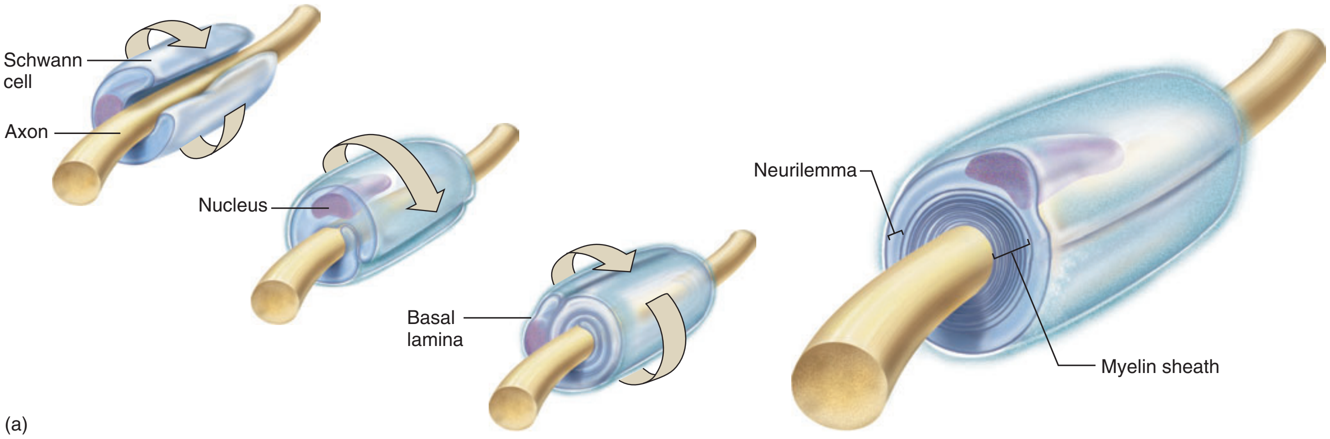
[21] *glia* = glial cells + *oma* = tumor

Myelin

The **myelin** (MY-eh-lin) **sheath** is an insulating layer around a nerve fiber, somewhat like the rubber insulation on a wire. It is formed by oligodendrocytes in the central nervous system and Schwann cells in the peripheral nervous system. Since it consists of the plasma membranes of these glial cells, its composition is like that of plasma membranes in general. It is about 20% protein and 80% lipid, the latter including phospholipids, glycolipids, and cholesterol. Myelination of the nervous system begins in the fourteenth week of fetal development, yet hardly any myelin exists in the brain at the time of birth. Myelination proceeds rapidly in infancy and isn't completed until late adolescence. Since myelin has such a high lipid content, dietary fat is important to early nervous system development. Well-meaning parents can do their children significant harm by giving them the sort of low-fat diets (skimmed milk, etc.) that may be beneficial to an adult.

In the CNS, each oligodendrocyte reaches out to several nerve fibers in its immediate vicinity. The armlike process of the oligodendrocyte spirals repeatedly around the nerve fiber, laying down many compact layers of its own membrane with almost no cytoplasm between the membranes. These layers constitute the myelin sheath. A nerve fiber is much longer than the reach of a single oligodendrocyte, so it requires many oligodendrocytes to cover one nerve fiber.

In the PNS, a Schwann cell spirals around a single nerve fiber, putting down as many as a hundred layers of membrane (fig. 12.7). External to the myelin sheath is the **neurilemma**[22] (noor-ih-LEM-ah), the outermost coil of the Schwann cell. Here, the bulging body of the Schwann cell contains its nucleus and most of its cytoplasm. To


Schwann cell
Axon
Nucleus
Basal lamina
Neurilemma
Myelin sheath
(a)

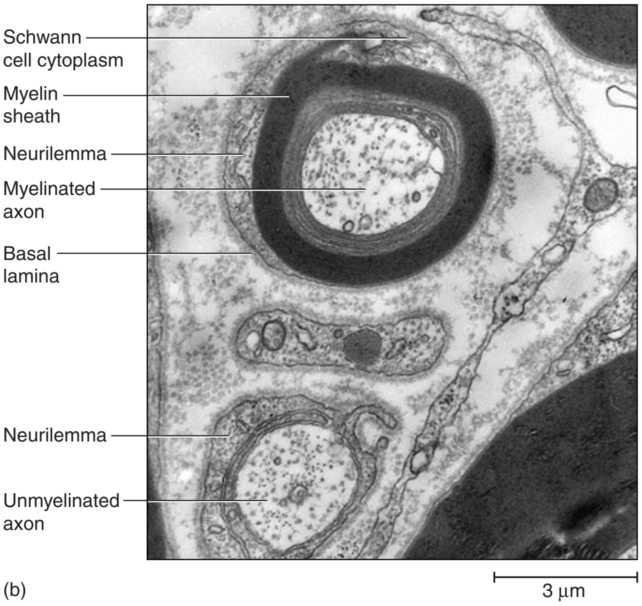

Schwann cell cytoplasm
Myelin sheath
Neurilemma
Myelinated axon
Basal lamina
Neurilemma
Unmyelinated axon
(b)
3 µm

Figure 12.7 Schwann Cells and Myelin. (*a*) The repetitive wrapping of a Schwann cell around an axon, forming the multilayered myelin sheath. (*b*) A myelinated axon (*top*) and unmyelinated axon (*bottom*) (TEM).

---

[22] *neuri* = nerve + *lemma* = husk, peel, sheath

visualize this, imagine that you wrapped an almost-empty tube of toothpaste tightly around a pencil. The pencil represents the axon, and the spiral layers of toothpaste tube (with the toothpaste squeezed out) represent the myelin. The toothpaste would be forced to one end of the tube, which would form a bulge on the external surface of the wrapping, like the body of the Schwann cell.

External to the neurilemma is a basal lamina and then a thin sleeve of fibrous connective tissue called the *endoneurium.* Nerve fibers of the CNS have no neurilemma or endoneurium.

Since each glial cell (Schwann cell or oligodendrocyte) myelinates only part of an axon, the myelin sheath is segmented. The gaps between the segments of myelin are **nodes of Ranvier**[23] (RON-vee-AY), and the myelin-covered segments from one gap to the next are called **internodes** (see fig. 12.4). The internodes are about 0.2 to 1.0 mm long in the PNS. The short section of nerve fiber between the axon hillock and the first glial cell is called the **initial segment.** Since the axon hillock and initial segment play an important role in initiating a nerve signal, they are collectively called the **trigger zone.**

---

[23] L. A. Ranvier (1835–1922), French histologist and pathologist

Insight 12.2 Clinical Application

Diseases of the Myelin Sheath

Multiple sclerosis and Tay-Sachs disease are degenerative disorders of the myelin sheath. In *multiple sclerosis (MS),* the oligodendrocytes and myelin sheaths of the CNS deteriorate and are replaced by hardened scar tissue, especially between the ages of 20 and 40. Nerve conduction is disrupted with effects that depend on what part of the CNS is involved—double vision, blindness, speech defects, neurosis, tremors, and numbness. Patients experience variable cycles of milder and worse symptoms until they eventually become bedridden. Most die from 7 to 32 years after the onset of the disease. The cause of MS remains uncertain; most theories suggest that it results from an immune disorder triggered by a virus in genetically susceptible individuals. There is no cure.

Tay-Sachs[24] *disease* is a hereditary disorder seen mainly in infants of Eastern European Jewish ancestry. It results from the abnormal accumulation of a glycolipid called GM_2 (ganglioside) in the myelin sheath. GM_2 is normally decomposed by a lysosomal enzyme, but this enzyme is lacking from people who are homozygous recessive for the Tay-Sachs allele. As GM_2 accumulates, it disrupts the conduction of nerve signals and the victim typically suffers blindness, loss of coordination, and dementia. Signs begin to appear before the child is a year old and most victims die by the age of three or four. Asymptomatic adult carriers can be identified by a blood test and advised by genetic counselors on the risk of their children having the disease.

---

[24] Warren Tay (1843–1927), English physician; Bernard Sachs (1858–1944), American neurologist

Unmyelinated Nerve Fibers

Many nerve fibers in the CNS and PNS are unmyelinated. In the PNS, however, even the unmyelinated fibers are enveloped in Schwann cells. In this case, one Schwann cell harbors from 1 to 12 small nerve fibers in grooves in its surface. The Schwann cell's plasma membrane does not spiral repeatedly around the fiber as it does in a myelin sheath, but folds once around each fiber and somewhat overlaps itself along the edges (fig. 12.7*b*). This wrapping is the neurilemma. A basal lamina surrounds the entire Schwann cell along with its nerve fibers.

Conduction Speed of Nerve Fibers

The speed at which a nerve signal travels along a nerve fiber depends on two factors: the diameter of the nerve fiber and the presence or absence of myelin. Signal conduction occurs along the surface of a fiber, not deep within its axoplasm. Larger fibers have more surface area and conduct signals more rapidly than smaller fibers. Myelin further speeds signal conduction for reasons discussed later. Nerve signals travel about 0.5 to 2.0 m/sec in small unmyelinated fibers (2–4 μm in diameter) and 3 to 15 m/sec in myelinated fibers of the same size. In large myelinated fibers (up to 20 μm in diameter) they travel as fast as 120 m/sec. One might wonder why all of our nerve fibers are not large, myelinated, and fast, but if this were so, our nervous system would be either impossibly bulky or limited to far fewer fibers. Slow unmyelinated fibers are quite sufficient for processes in which quick responses are not particularly important, such as secreting stomach acid or dilating the pupil. Fast myelinated fibers are employed where speed is more important, as in motor commands to the skeletal muscles and sensory signals for vision and balance.

Regeneration of Nerve Fibers

Nerve fibers of the PNS are vulnerable to cuts, crushing injuries, and other trauma. A damaged peripheral nerve fiber can regenerate, however, if its soma is intact and at least some neurilemma remains. Within the first few weeks after injury, the severed distal end of an axon and its myelin sheath degenerate and macrophages remove the debris (fig. 12.8). A **regeneration tube,** formed by the neurilemma and endoneurium, is necessary for regeneration. The axon stump puts out several sprouts until one of them finds its way into the tube. This sprout begins to grow rapidly (about 3–5 mm/day), possibly under the influence of chemicals secreted by the tube (see insight 12.3), while the other sprouts are reabsorbed. The regeneration tube guides the growing axon back to its original destination until the neuron reestablishes a connection with the cells that it originally innervated. Skeletal muscle fibers atrophy

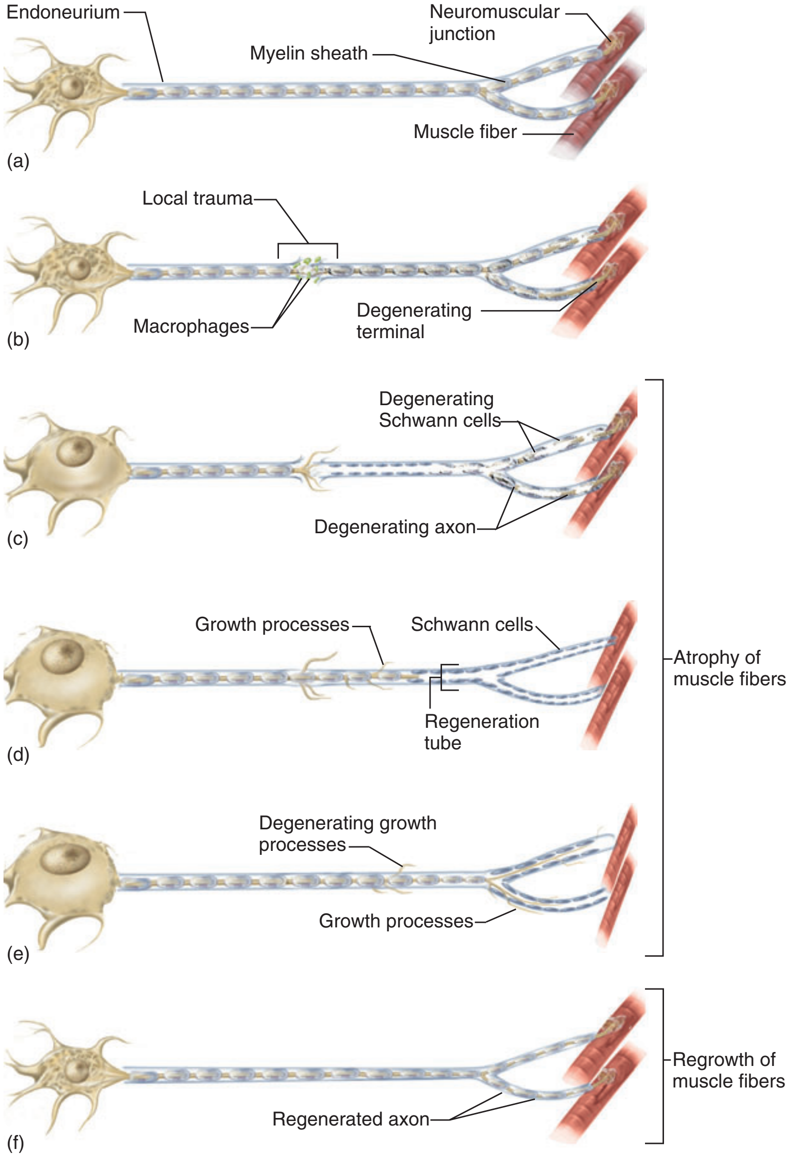

Endoneurium
Neuromuscular junction
Myelin sheath
Muscle fiber
(a)
Local trauma
Macrophages
Degenerating terminal
(b)
Degenerating Schwann cells
Degenerating axon
(c)
Growth processes
Schwann cells
Regeneration tube
(d)
Atrophy of muscle fibers
Degenerating growth processes
Growth processes
(e)
Regrowth of muscle fibers
Regenerated axon
(f)

Figure 12.8 **Regeneration of a Damaged Nerve Fiber.** (*a*) Normal nerve fiber. (*b*) Injured fiber with macrophages cleaning up tissue debris at the point of injury, and with early degeneration of the nerve fiber, myelin sheath, and axon terminals distal to that. (*c*) Early regeneration; the soma is swollen, the Nissl bodies have dispersed, and the axon stump has begun producing multiple growth processes, while the severed distal part of the nerve fiber shows further degeneration. In the case of somatic motor neurons, muscle fibers atrophy for lack of innervation. (*d*) Continued regeneration; the Schwann cells, basal lamina, and neurilemma form a regeneration tube, one growth process grows into the tube, and the other growth processes are reabsorbed. (*e*) Continued regeneration; the growth processes have almost reestablished contact with the muscle fibers. (*f*) Regeneration complete; the muscle fibers are reinnervated and have regrown, and the soma of the neuron has returned to its original appearance.

when their nerve fiber is severed *(denervation atrophy),* but regrow after the connection is reestablished. Damaged neurons in the CNS cannot regenerate, but since the CNS is enclosed in bone, it suffers less trauma than the PNS.

Insight 12.3 Clinical Application

Nerve Growth Factor

Nerve growth factor (NGF) is a protein involved in the development of sympathetic nerve fibers and some sensory fibers. It is secreted by effector (gland and muscle) cells, picked up by axon terminals, and carried back to the soma by retrograde axonal transport. NGF guides developing nerve fibers to the appropriate target cells and thus plays a key role in the proper "wiring" of the nervous system to its effectors. The study of NGF and other growth factors is one of the most rapidly developing areas of biomedical research today, especially since recombinant DNA technology has made it possible to produce large quantities of these chemicals for study and clinical use. The use of NGF to treat Alzheimer disease is discussed in insight 12.4 on page 475.

Think About It

What features essential to regeneration, present in the PNS, are lacking from the CNS?

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

8. How is a glial cell different from a neuron? List the six types of glial cells and discuss their functions.
9. How is myelin produced? How does myelin production in the CNS differ from that in the PNS?
10. How can a severed peripheral nerve fiber find its way back to the cells it originally innervated?

Electrophysiology of Neurons

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- explain why a cell has an electrical charge difference (voltage) across its membrane;
- explain how stimulation of a neuron causes a local electrical change in its membrane;
- explain how local electrical changes generate a nerve signal; and
- explain how the nerve signal is transmitted down an axon.

The nervous system has intrigued scientists and philosophers since ancient times. The Roman physician Galen thought that the brain pumped a vapor called *psychic pneuma* through hollow nerves and squirted it into the muscles to make them contract. The French philosopher René Descartes still argued for this theory in the seventeenth century. It finally fell out of favor in the eighteenth century, when Luigi Galvani discovered the role of electricity in muscle contraction. When microscopes and histological staining methods were better developed, the Spanish histologist Santiago Ramón y Cajal (1852–1934) was able, with great effort, to trace the course of nerve fibers through tissue sections. He demonstrated that the nervous pathway was not a continuous "wire" or tube, but a series of separate cells separated by synapses. His theory, now called the *neuron doctrine,* suggested another direction for research—how do neurons communicate? The two key issues in neurophysiology are (1) How does a neuron generate an electrical signal and (2) How does it transmit a meaningful message to the next cell? These are the questions to which this section and the next are addressed.

Electrical Potentials and Currents

Neuronal communication, like muscle excitation, is based on electrophysiology—cellular mechanisms for producing electrical potentials and currents. An **electrical potential** is a difference in the concentration of charged particles between one point and another. It is a form of potential energy that, under the right circumstances, can produce a current. An electrical **current** is a flow of charged particles from the one point to the other. A new flashlight battery, for example, typically has a potential, or charge, of 1.5 volts (V). If the two poles of the battery are connected by a wire, electrons flow through the wire from one pole of the battery to the other, creating a current that can be used to light a bulb. As long as the battery has a potential, we say it is **polarized.**

Living cells are also polarized. As we saw in chapter 11, the charge difference across the plasma membrane is called the **resting membrane potential (RMP).** It is much less than the potential of a flashlight battery—typically about −70 millivolts (mV) in an unstimulated, "resting" neuron. The negative value means there are more negatively charged particles on the inside of the membrane than on the outside.

We do not have free electrons in the body as we do in an electrical circuit. Electrical currents in the body are created, instead, by the flow of ions such as Na^+ and K^+ through channels in the plasma membrane. As we saw in chapters 3 and 11, gated channels can be opened and closed by various stimuli. This enables cells to turn electrical currents on and off.

The Resting Membrane Potential

The reason that a cell has a resting membrane potential is that electrolytes are unequally distributed between the extracellular fluid (ECF) on the outside of the plasma membrane and the intracellular fluid (ICF) on the inside. The RMP results from the combined effect of three factors: (1) the diffusion of ions down their concentration gradients through the plasma membrane; (2) selective permeability of the plasma membrane, allowing some ions to pass more easily than others; and (3) the electrical attraction of cations and anions to each other.

Potassium ions (K^+) have the greatest influence on the RMP because the plasma membrane is more permeable to K^+ than to any other ion. Imagine a hypothetical cell in which all the K^+ starts out in the ICF, with none in the ECF. Also in the ICF are a number of cytoplasmic anions that cannot escape from the cell because of their size or charge—phosphates, sulfates, small organic acids, proteins, ATP, and RNA. Assuming K^+ can diffuse freely through channels in the plasma membrane, it diffuses down its concentration gradient and out of the cell, leaving these cytoplasmic anions behind. As a result, the ICF grows more and more negatively charged. But as the ICF becomes more negative, it exerts a stronger and stronger attraction for the positive potassium ions and attracts some of them back into the cell. Eventually an *equilibrium* (balance) is reached in which K^+ is moving out of the cell (diffusion down its concentration gradient) and into the cell (by electrical attraction) at equal rates. The *net* diffusion of K^+ then stops. At the point of equilibrium, K^+ is about 40 times as concentrated in the ICF as in the ECF (fig. 12.9).

If K^+ were the only ion affecting the RMP, it would give the membrane a potential of about -90 mV. However, sodium ions (Na^+) also enter the picture. Sodium is about 12 times as concentrated in the ECF as in the ICF. The resting plasma membrane is much less permeable to Na^+ than to K^+, but Na^+ does diffuse down its concentration gradient into the cell, attracted by the negative charge in the ICF. This sodium leak is only a trickle, but it is enough to neutralize some of the negative charge and reduce the voltage across the membrane.

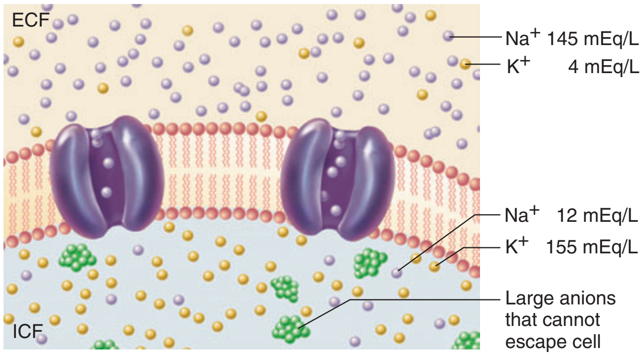


Figure 12.9 **Ionic Basis of the Resting Membrane Potential.** Note that sodium ions are much more concentrated in the extracellular fluid (ECF) than in the intracellular fluid (ICF), while potassium ions are more concentrated in the ICF. Large anions unable to penetrate the plasma membrane give the cytoplasm a negative charge relative to the ECF.
If we suddenly increased the concentration of Cl^- ions in the ICF, would the membrane potential become higher or lower than the RMP?

Sodium leaks into the cell and potassium leaks out, but the sodium-potassium (Na^+-K^+) pump described in chapter 3 continually compensates for this leakage. It pumps 3 Na^+ out of the cell for every 2 K^+ it brings in, consuming 1 ATP for each exchange cycle. By removing more cations from the cell than it brings in, it contributes about -3 mV to the resting membrane potential. The net effect of all this—K^+ diffusion out of the cell, Na^+ diffusion inward, and the Na^+-K^+ pump—is the resting membrane potential of -70 mV.

The Na^+-K^+ pump accounts for about 70% of the energy (ATP) requirement of the nervous system. Every signal generated by a neuron slightly upsets the distribution of Na^+ and K^+, so the pump must work continually to restore equilibrium. This is why nervous tissue has one of the highest rates of ATP consumption of any tissue in the body, and why it demands so much glucose and oxygen. Although a neuron is said to be resting when it is not producing signals, it is highly active maintaining its RMP and "waiting," as it were, for something to happen.

Local Potentials

We now consider the disturbances in membrane potential that occur when a neuron is stimulated. Typically (but with exceptions), the response of a neuron begins at a dendrite, spreads through the soma, travels down the axon, and ends at the synaptic knobs. We consider the process in that order.

Neurons can be stimulated by chemicals, light, heat, or mechanical distortion of the plasma membrane. We'll take as our example a neuron being chemically stimulated on its dendrite (fig. 12.10). The chemical—perhaps a pain signal from a damaged tissue or odor molecule in a breath of air—binds to receptors on the neuron. These receptors are ligand-regulated sodium gates that open and allow Na^+ to rush into the cell. The inflow of Na^+ neutralizes some of the internal negative charge, so the voltage across the membrane drifts toward zero. Any such case in which membrane voltage shifts to a less negative value is called **depolarization.** The incoming sodium ions diffuse for short distances along the inside of the plasma membrane and produce a current that travels from the point of stimulation toward the cell's trigger zone. Such a short-range change in voltage is called a **local potential.**

There are four characteristics that distinguish local potentials from the action potentials we will study shortly (table 12.2). You will appreciate these distinctions more fully after you have studied action potentials.

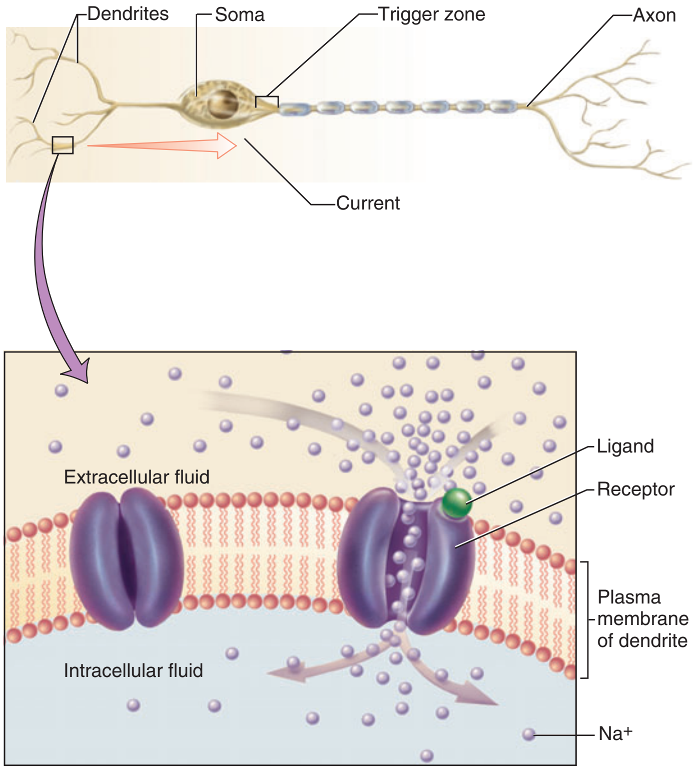


Figure 12.10 **Excitation of a Neuron by a Chemical Stimulus.** When the chemical (ligand) binds to a receptor on the neuron, the receptor acts as a ligand-regulated ion gate through which Na^+ diffuses into the cell. This depolarizes the plasma membrane.

Table 12.2 Comparison of Local Potentials and Action Potentials

Local Potential	Action Potential
Produced by ligand-regulated gates on the dendrites and soma	Produced by voltage-regulated gates on the trigger zone and axon
May be a positive (depolarizing) or negative (hyperpolarizing) voltage change	Always begins with depolarization
Graded; proportional to stimulus strength	All-or-none; either does not occur at all or exhibits same peak voltage regardless of stimulus strength
Reversible; returns to RMP if stimulation ceases before threshold is reached	Irreversible; goes to completion once it begins
Local; has effects for only a short distance from point of origin	Self-propagating; has effects a great distance from point of origin
Decremental; signal grows weaker with distance	Nondecremental; signal maintains same strength regardless of distance

1. Local potentials are **graded,** meaning that they vary in magnitude (voltage) according to the strength of the stimulus. A more intense or prolonged stimulus opens more ion gates than a weaker stimulus. Thus, more Na^+ enters the cell and the voltage changes more than it does with a weaker stimulus.
2. Local potentials are **decremental,** meaning they get weaker as they spread from the point of stimulation. The decline in strength occurs because as Na^+ spreads out under the plasma membrane and depolarizes it, K^+ flows out and reverses the effect of the Na^+ inflow. Therefore, the voltage shift caused by Na^+ diminishes rapidly with distance. This prevents local potentials from having any long-distance effects.
3. Local potentials are **reversible,** meaning that if stimulation ceases, K^+ diffusion out of the cell quickly returns the membrane voltage to its resting potential.

4. Local potentials can be either **excitatory** or **inhibitory.** So far, we have considered only excitatory local potentials, which depolarize a cell and make a neuron more likely to produce an action potential. Acetylcholine usually has this effect. Other neurotransmitters, such as glycine, cause an opposite effect—they **hyperpolarize** a cell, or make the membrane more negative. The neuron is then less sensitive and less likely to produce an action potential. A balance between excitatory and inhibitory potentials is very important to information processing in the nervous system, and we explore this more fully later in the chapter.

Action Potentials

An **action potential** is a more dramatic change produced by voltage-regulated ion gates in the plasma membrane. Action potentials occur only where there is a high enough density of voltage-regulated gates. Most of the soma has only 50 to 75 gates per square micrometer (μm^2) and cannot generate action potentials. The trigger zone, however, has 350 to 500 gates per μm^2. If an excitatory local potential spreads all the way to the trigger zone and is still strong enough when it arrives, it can open these gates and generate an action potential.

The action potential is a rapid up-and-down shift in membrane voltage. Figure 12.11*a* shows an action potential numbered to correspond to the following description. Figure 12.12 correlates these voltage changes with events in the plasma membrane.

1. When sodium ions arrive at the axon hillock, they depolarize the membrane at that point. This appears as a steadily rising local potential.
2. For anything more to happen, this local potential must rise to a critical voltage called the **threshold** (typically about −55 mV). This is the minimum needed to open voltage-regulated gates.
3. The neuron now "fires," or produces an action potential. At threshold, voltage-regulated Na$^+$ gates open quickly, while K$^+$ gates open more slowly. The initial effect on membrane potential is therefore due to Na$^+$. Initially, only a few Na$^+$ gates open but as Na$^+$ enters the cell, it further depolarizes the membrane. This stimulates still more voltage-regulated Na$^+$ gates to open and admit even more Na$^+$. Thus, a positive feedback cycle is created that makes the membrane voltage rise rapidly.
4. As the rising membrane potential passes 0 mV, Na$^+$ gates are *inactivated* and begin closing. By the time they all close and Na$^+$ inflow ceases, the voltage peaks at approximately +35 mV. (The peak is as low as 0 mV in some neurons and as high as 50 mV in others.) The membrane is now positive on the inside and negative on the outside—its polarity is reversed compared to the RMP.
5. By the time the voltage peaks, the slow K$^+$ gates are fully open. Potassium ions, repelled by the positive intracellular fluid, exit the cell. Their outflow **repolarizes** the membrane—that is, it shifts the voltage back into the negative numbers. The action potential consists of the up-and-down voltage shifts

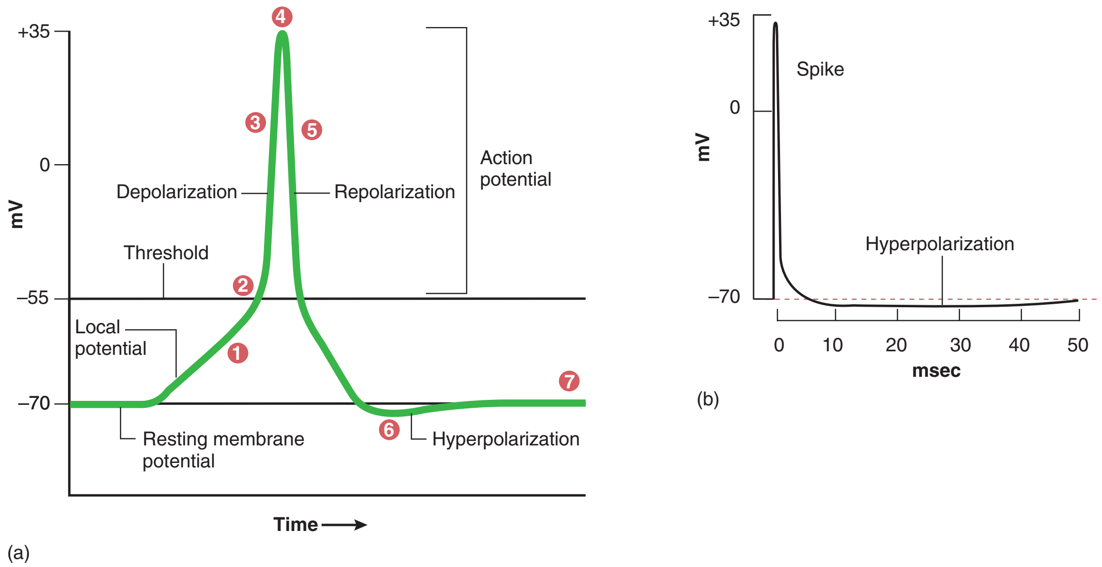


Figure 12.11 An Action Potential. (*a*) Diagrammed with a distorted timescale to make details of the action potential visible. Numbers correspond to stages discussed in the text. (*b*) On an accurate timescale, the local potential is so brief it is imperceptible, the action potential appears as a spike, and the hyperpolarization is very prolonged.

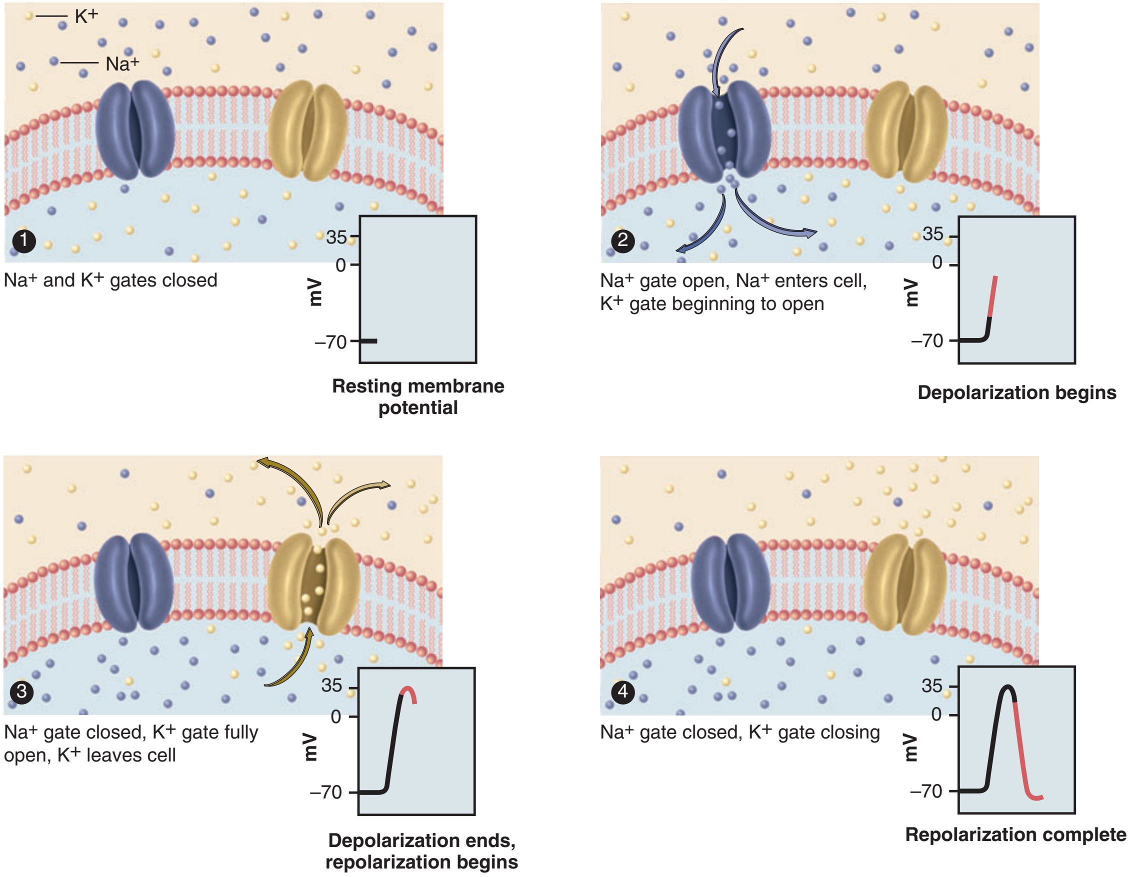
that occur from the time the threshold is reached to the time the voltage returns to the RMP.

6. Potassium gates stay open longer than Na^+ gates, so the amount of potassium that leaves the cell is greater than the amount of sodium that entered. Therefore, the membrane voltage drops to 1 or 2 mV more negative than the original RMP, producing a negative overshoot called *hyperpolarization.*
7. As you can see, Na^+ and K^+ switch places across the membrane during an action potential. During hyperpolarization, ion diffusion through the membrane and (in the CNS) the removal of extracellular K^+ by the astrocytes gradually restores the original resting membrane potential.

At the risk of being misleading, figure 12.12 is drawn as if most of the Na^+ and K^+ had traded places. In reality, only about one ion in a million crosses the membrane to produce an action potential, and an action potential affects ion distribution only in a thin layer close to the membrane. If the illustration tried to represent these points accurately, the difference would be so slight you could not see it, indeed the changes in ion concentrations inside and outside the cell are so slight they cannot be measured in the laboratory unless a neuron has been stimulated for a long time. Even after thousands of action potentials, the cytosol still has a higher concentration of K^+ and a lower concentration of Na^+ than the ECF does.

Figure 12.11*a* also is deliberately distorted. In order to demonstrate the different phases of the local potential and action potential, the magnitudes of the local potential and hyperpolarization are exaggerated, the local potential is stretched out to make it seem longer, and the duration of hyperpolarization is shrunken so the graph does not run off the page. When these events are plotted on a more realistic timescale, they look like figure 12.11*b*. The local potential is so brief it is unnoticeable, and hyperpolarization is very long but only slightly more negative than the RMP. An action potential is often called a *spike;* it is easy to see why from this figure.

Earlier we saw that local potentials are graded, decremental, and reversible. We can now examine how action potentials compare on these points.



K+
Na+
1
Na+ and K+ gates closed
35
0
mV
–70
Resting membrane potential
2
Na+ gate open, Na+ enters cell, K+ gate beginning to open
35
0
mV
–70
Depolarization begins
3
Na+ gate closed, K+ gate fully open, K+ leaves cell
35
0
mV
–70
Depolarization ends, repolarization begins
4
Na+ gate closed, K+ gate closing
35
0
mV
–70
Repolarization complete

Figure 12.12 **Actions of the Sodium and Potassium Gates During an Action Potential.**

- Action potentials follow an **all-or-none law.** If a stimulus depolarizes the neuron to threshold, the neuron fires at its maximum voltage (such as +35 mV); if threshold is not reached, the neuron does not fire at all. Above threshold, stronger stimuli do not produce stronger action potentials. Thus, action potentials are not graded (proportional to stimulus strength).
- Action potentials are **nondecremental.** For reasons to be examined shortly, they do not get weaker with distance. An action potential at the end of a nerve fiber will be just as strong as an action potential in the trigger zone up to a meter away.
- Action potentials are **irreversible.** If a neuron reaches threshold, the action potential goes to completion; it cannot be stopped once it begins.

In some respects, we can compare the firing of a neuron to the firing of a gun. As the trigger is squeezed, a gun either fires with maximum force or does not fire at all (analogous to the all-or-none law). You cannot fire a fast bullet by squeezing the trigger hard or a slow bullet by squeezing it gently—once the trigger is pulled to its "threshold," the bullet always leaves the muzzle at the same velocity. And, like an action potential, the firing of a gun is irreversible once the threshold is reached. Table 12.2 further contrasts a local potential with an action potential, including some characteristics of action potentials explained in the next section.

The Refractory Period

During an action potential and for a few milliseconds after, it is difficult or impossible to stimulate that region of a neuron to fire again. This period of resistance to restimulation is called the **refractory period.** It is divided into two phases—an *absolute refractory period* in which no stimulus of any strength will trigger a new action potential, and then a *relative refractory period* in which it is possible to trigger a new action potential, but only with an unusually strong stimulus (fig. 12.13).

The absolute refractory period lasts from the start of the action potential until the membrane returns to the resting potential—that is, for as long as the Na^+ gates are open and subsequently inactivated. The relative refractory period lasts until hyperpolarization ends. During this period, K^+ gates are still open. A new stimulus tends to admit Na^+ and depolarize the membrane, but K^+ diffuses out through the open gates as Na^+ comes in, and thus opposes the effect of the stimulus. It requires an especially strong stimulus to override the K^+ outflow and depolarize the cell enough to set off a new action potential. By the end of hyperpolarization, K^+ gates are closed and the cell is as responsive as ever.

The refractory period refers only to a small patch of membrane where an action potential has already begun, not to the entire neuron. Other parts of the neuron can still be stimulated while a small area of it is refractory, and even this area quickly recovers once the nerve signal has passed on.

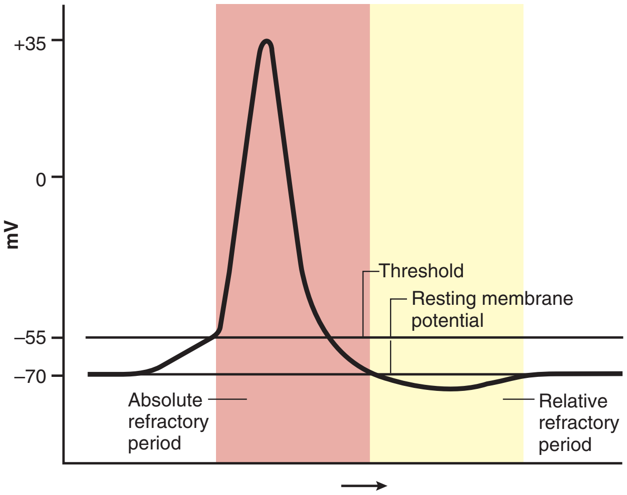


Figure 12.13 **The Absolute and Relative Refractory Periods in Relation to the Action Potential.**

Signal Conduction in Nerve Fibers

If a neuron is to communicate with another cell, a signal has to travel to the end of the axon. We now see how this is achieved.

Unmyelinated Fibers

Unmyelinated fibers present a relatively simple case of signal conduction, easy to understand based on what we have already covered (fig. 12.14). An unmyelinated fiber has voltage-regulated Na^+ gates along its entire length. When an action potential occurs at the trigger zone, Na^+ enters the axon and diffuses to adjacent regions just beneath the plasma membrane. The resulting depolarization excites voltage-regulated gates immediately distal to the action potential. Sodium and potassium gates open and close just as they did at the trigger zone, and a new action potential is produced. By repetition, this excites the membrane immediately distal to that. This chain reaction continues until the traveling signal reaches the end of the axon.

Note that an action potential itself does not travel along an axon; rather, it stimulates the production of a new action potential in the membrane just ahead of it. Thus, we can distinguish an *action potential* from a *nerve signal.* The nerve signal is a traveling wave of excitation produced by self-propagating action potentials. It is a little like a line of falling dominoes. No one domino travels to the end of the line, but each domino pushes over the next one and there is a transmission of energy from the first

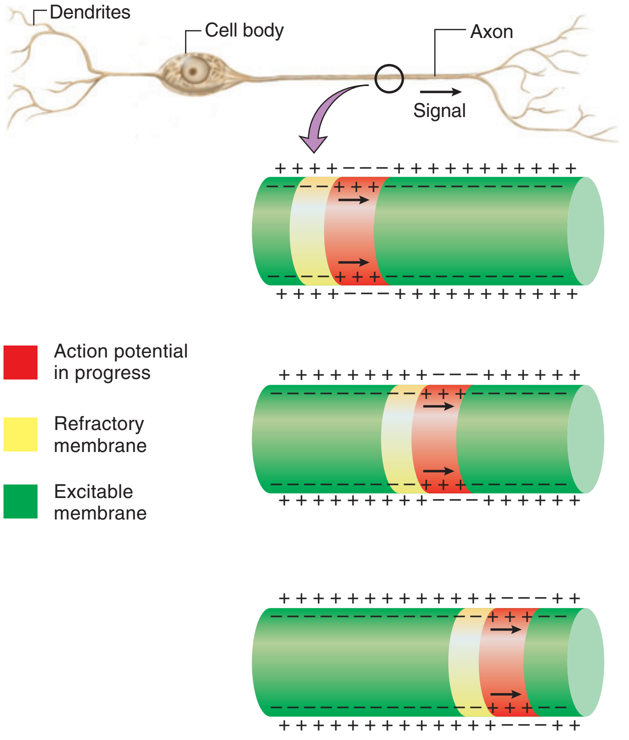


Figure 12.14 Conduction of a Nerve Signal in an Unmyelinated Fiber. Note that the membrane polarity is reversed in the region of the action potential (*red*). A region of membrane in its refractory period (*yellow*) trails the action potential and prevents the nerve signal from going backward toward the soma. The other membrane areas (*green*) are fully polarized and ready to respond.

domino to the last. Similarly, no one action potential travels to the end of an axon; a nerve signal is a chain reaction of action potentials.

If one action potential can stimulate the production of a new one next to it, you might think that the signal could also start traveling backward and return to the soma. This does not occur, however, because the membrane behind the nerve signal is still in its refractory period and cannot be restimulated. Only the membrane ahead is sensitive to stimulation. The refractory period thus ensures that nerve signals are conducted in the proper direction, from the soma to the synaptic knobs.

A traveling nerve signal is an electrical current, but it is not the same as a current traveling through a wire. A current in a wire travels millions of meters per second and is decremental—it gets weaker with distance. A nerve signal is much slower (not more than 2 m/sec in unmyelinated fibers), but it is *nondecremental.* Even in the longest axons, the last action potential generated in a synaptic knob has the same voltage as the first one generated in the trigger zone. To clarify this concept we can compare the nerve signal to a burning fuse. When a fuse is lit, the heat ignites powder immediately in front of this point, and this event repeats itself in a self-propagating fashion until the end of the fuse is reached. At the end, the fuse burns just as hotly as it did at the beginning. In a fuse, the combustible powder is the source of potential energy that keeps the process going in a nondecremental fashion. In an axon, the potential energy comes from the ion gradient across the plasma membrane. Thus, the signal does not grow weaker with distance; it is self-propagating, like the burning of a fuse.

Myelinated Fibers

Matters are somewhat different in myelinated fibers, because voltage-regulated ion gates are scarce in the myelin-covered internodes—fewer than 25 per μm^2 in these regions compared with 2,000 to 12,000 per μm^2 at the nodes of Ranvier. There would be little point in having ion gates in the internodes—myelin insulates the fiber from the ECF at these points, and sodium ions from the ECF could not flow into the cell even if more gates were present.

The only way a nerve signal can travel along an internode is for Na^+ that enters at the previous node to diffuse down the fiber under the axolemma (fig. 12.15*a*). This is a very fast process, but the nerve fiber resists their flow (just as a wire resists a current) and the signal becomes weaker the farther it goes. Therefore, this aspect of conduction is decremental. The signal cannot travel much farther than 1 mm before it becomes too weak to open any voltage-regulated gates. But fortunately, there is another node of Ranvier every millimeter or less along the axon, where the axolemma is exposed to ECF and there is an abundance of voltage-regulated gates. When the diffusing ions reach this point, the signal is just strong enough to open these gates and create a new action potential. This action potential has the same strength as the one at the previous node, so each node of Ranvier boosts the signal back to its original strength (+35 mV). This mode of signal conduction is called **saltatory**[25] **conduction**—the propagation of a nerve signal that seems to jump from node to node (fig. 12.15*b*).

In the internodes, saltatory conduction is therefore based on a process that is very fast (diffusion of ions along the fiber) but decremental. In the nodes, conduction is slower but nondecremental. Since most of the axon is covered with myelin, conduction occurs mainly by the fast longitudinal diffusion process. This is why myelinated fibers transmit signals much faster (up to 120 m/sec) than unmyelinated ones (up to 2 m/sec) and why the signal is just as strong at the end of the fiber as it was at the beginning.

---

[25] from *saltare* = to leap, to dance

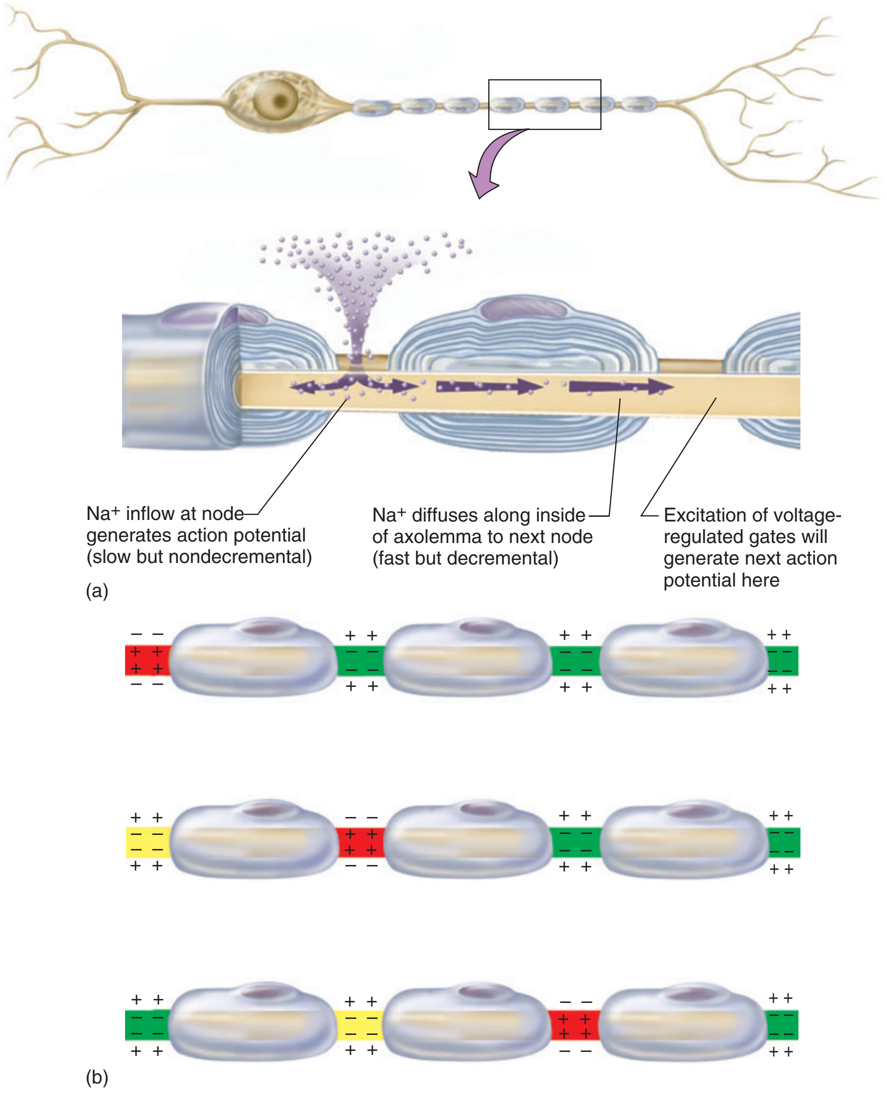

Na+ inflow at node generates action potential (slow but nondecremental)
Na+ diffuses along inside of axolemma to next node (fast but decremental)
Excitation of voltage-regulated gates will generate next action potential here
(a)
(b)

Figure 12.15 **Saltatory Conduction of a Nerve Signal in a Myelinated Fiber.** (*a*) Ions can be exchanged with the ECF only at the nodes of Ranvier. In the internodes, the nerve signal travels by the rapid diffusion of ions along the inside of the plasma membrane. (*b*) Action potentials (*red*) occur only at the nodes, and the nerve signal therefore appears to jump from node to node. *Yellow* areas indicate refractory (recovering) membrane.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

11. What causes K^+ to diffuse out of a resting cell? What attracts it into the cell?
12. What happens to Na^+ when a neuron is stimulated on its dendrite? Why does the movement of Na^+ raise the voltage on the plasma membrane?
13. What does it mean to say a local potential is graded, decremental, and reversible?
14. How does the plasma membrane at the trigger zone differ from that on the soma? How does it resemble the membrane at a node of Ranvier?
15. What makes an action potential rise to +35 mV? What makes it drop again after this peak?
16. List four ways in which an action potential is different from a local potential.
17. Explain why myelinated fibers transmit signals much faster than unmyelinated fibers.

Synapses

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- explain how messages are transmitted from one neuron to another;
- explain how stimulation of a postsynaptic cell is stopped; and
- give examples of neurotransmitters and describe their actions.

A nerve signal soon reaches the end of an axon and can go no farther. In most cases, it triggers the release of a neurotransmitter that stimulates a new wave of electrical activity in the next cell across the synapse. The most thoroughly studied type of synapse is the neuromuscular junction described in chapter 11, but here we consider synapses between two neurons. The first neuron in the signal path is the **presynaptic neuron,** which releases the neurotransmitter. The second is the **postsynaptic neuron,** which responds to it.

The presynaptic neuron may synapse with a dendrite, the soma, or the axon of a postsynaptic neuron and form an *axodendritic, axosomatic,* or *axoaxonic synapse,* respectively. A neuron can have an enormous number of synapses (fig. 12.16). For example, a spinal motor neuron is covered with about 10,000 synaptic knobs from other neurons—8,000 ending on its dendrites and another 2,000 on the soma. In part of the brain called the cerebellum, one neuron can have as many as 100,000 synapses.

The Discovery of Neurotransmitters

As the neuron doctrine became generally accepted, it raised the question of how neurons communicate with each other. In the early twentieth century, biologists assumed that synaptic communication was electrical—a logical hypothesis given that neurons seemed to touch each other and signals were transmitted so quickly from one to the next. Closer histological examination, however, revealed a 20- to 40-nm gap between neurons—the **synaptic cleft**—casting doubt on the possibility of electrical conduction.

In 1921, the German pharmacologist Otto Loewi (1873–1961) conclusively demonstrated that neurons communicate by releasing chemicals. The *vagus nerves* supply the heart, among other organs, and slow it down. Loewi opened two frogs and flooded the hearts with saline to keep them moist. He stimulated the vagus nerve of one frog, and its heart rate dropped as expected. He then removed some of the saline from that heart and squirted it onto the heart of the second frog. The solution alone reduced that frog's heart rate. Evidently it contained something released by the vagus nerve of the first frog. Loewi called it *Vagusstoffe* ("vagus substance") and it was later renamed acetylcholine—the first known neurotransmitter.

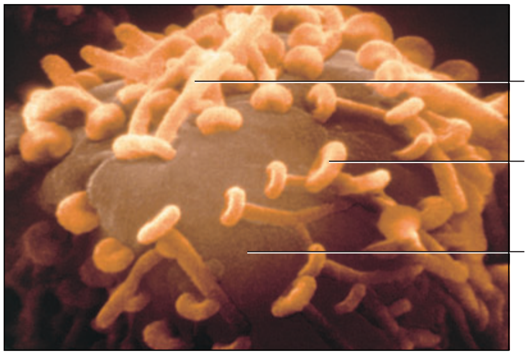


Figure 12.16 Synaptic Knobs on the Soma of a Neuron in a Marine Slug, *Aplysia* (SEM).
Are these synapses axodendritic, axosomatic, or axoaxonic?

Think About It

As described, does the previous experiment conclusively prove that the second frog's heart slowed as a result of something released by the vagus nerves? If you were Loewi, what control experiment would you do to rule out alternative explanations?

Following Loewi's work, the idea of electrical communication between cells fell into disrepute. Now, however, we realize that some neurons, neuroglia, and cardiac and single-unit smooth muscle (see chapter 11) do indeed have **electrical synapses,** where adjacent cells are joined by gap junctions and ions can diffuse directly from one cell into the next. These junctions have the advantage of quick transmission because there is no delay for the release and binding of neurotransmitter. Their disadvantage, however, is that they cannot integrate information and make decisions. The ability to do that is a property of **chemical synapses,** in which neurons communicate by neurotransmitters.

Structure of a Chemical Synapse

The synaptic knob (fig. 12.17) was described in chapter 11. It contains synaptic vesicles, many of which are "docked" at release sites on the plasma membrane, ready to release their neurotransmitter on demand. A reserve pool of synaptic vesicles is located a little farther away from the membrane, clustered near the release sites and tethered to the cytoskeleton by protein microfilaments.

The postsynaptic neuron does not show such conspicuous specializations. At this end, the neuron has no synaptic vesicles and cannot release neurotransmitters. Its membrane does, however, contain proteins that function as receptors and ligand-regulated ion gates.

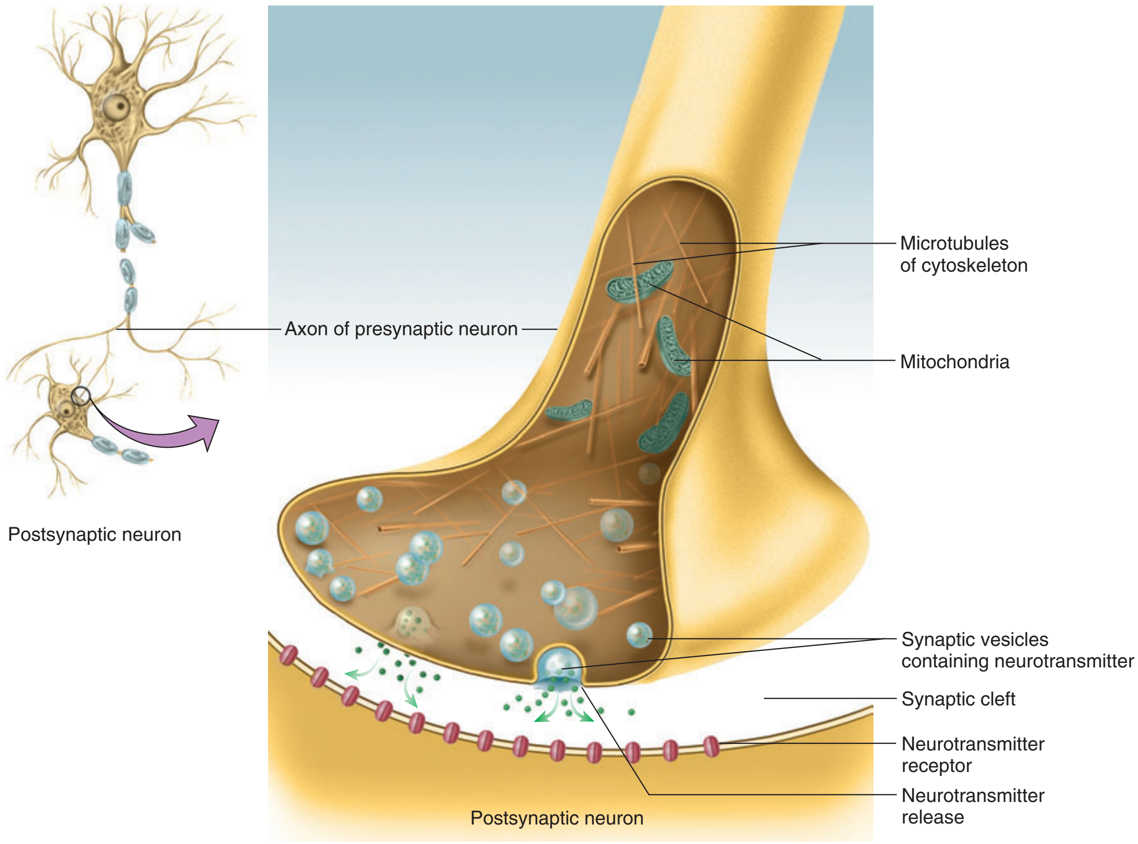

Axon of presynaptic neuron
Postsynaptic neuron
Microtubules of cytoskeleton
Mitochondria
Synaptic vesicles containing neurotransmitter
Synaptic cleft
Neurotransmitter receptor
Neurotransmitter release
Postsynaptic neuron

Figure 12.17 **Structure of a Chemical Synapse.**

Neurotransmitters and Related Messengers

More than 100 confirmed or suspected neurotransmitters have been identified since Loewi discovered acetylcholine. Neurotransmitters fall into three major categories according to chemical composition (fig. 12.18). Some of the best-known ones are listed in table 12.3. Parts of the brain referred to in this table will become familiar to you as you study chapter 14, and you may wish to refer back to this table then to enhance your understanding of brain function.

1. **Acetylcholine** is in a class by itself. It is formed from acetic acid (acetate) and choline.
2. **Monoamines (biogenic amines)** are synthesized from amino acids by removal of the $-COOH$ group. They retain the $-NH_2$ (amino group), hence their name. The major monoamines are epinephrine, norepinephrine, dopamine, histamine, and serotonin (5-hydroxytryptamine, or 5-HT). The first three of these are in a subclass of monoamines called **catecholamines** (CAT-eh-COAL-uh-meens).
3. **Amino acid** neurotransmitters include glycine, glutamate, aspartate, and γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA).
4. **Neuropeptides** are chains of 2 to 40 amino acids. Some examples are β-endorphin and substance P. Neuropeptides typically act at lower concentrations and have longer lasting effects than other neurotransmitters, and they are stored in *secretory granules (dense-core vesicles)* that are about 100 nm in diameter, twice as large as typical synaptic vesicles. Some neuropeptides also function as hormones or as **neuromodulators,** whose action is discussed later in this chapter. Some neuropeptides are produced not only by neurons but also by the digestive tract; thus they are known as *gut-brain peptides.* Some of these cause cravings for specific nutrients such as fat or sugar and may be associated with certain eating disorders.

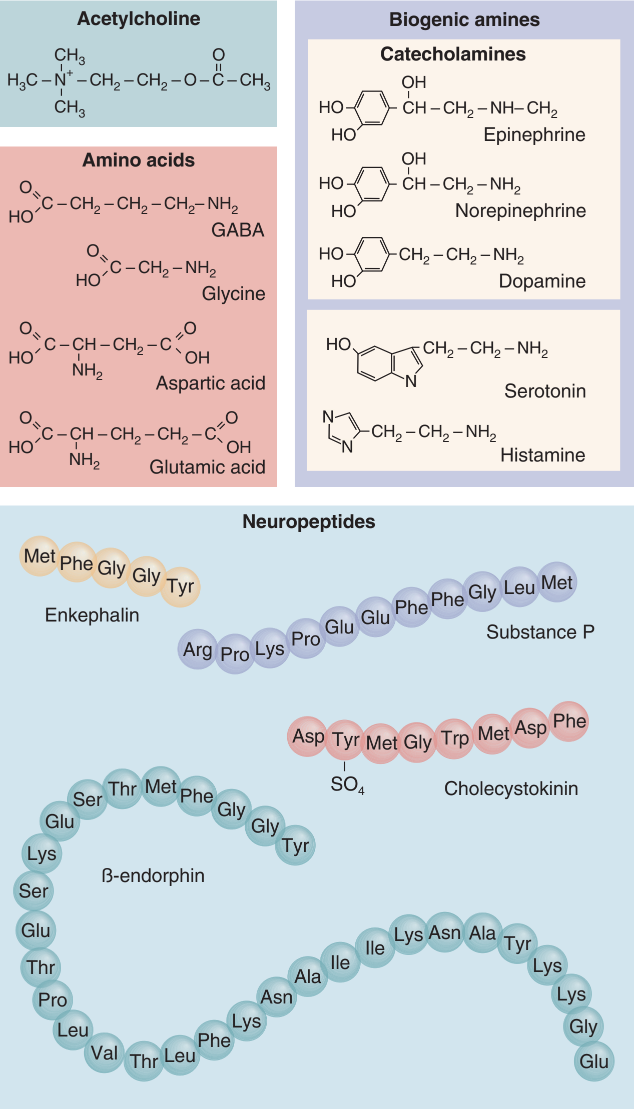

Acetylcholine
Amino acids
GABA
Glycine
Aspartic acid
Glutamic acid
Biogenic amines
Catecholamines
Epinephrine
Norepinephrine
Dopamine
Serotonin
Histamine
Neuropeptides
Met Phe Gly Gly Tyr
Enkephalin
Arg Pro Lys Pro Glu Glu Phe Phe Gly Leu Met
Substance P
Asp Tyr Met Gly Trp Met Asp Phe
SO4
Cholecystokinin
Tyr Gly Gly Phe Met Thr Ser Glu Lys Ser Glu Thr Pro Leu Val Thr Leu Phe Lys Asn Ala Ile Ile Lys Asn Ala Tyr Lys Lys Gly Glu
ß-endorphin

Figure 12.18 Classification of Some Neurotransmitters.

Think About It

Neuropeptides can be synthesized only in the soma and must be transported to the synaptic knobs. Why is their synthesis limited to the soma?

The more we learn about neurotransmitters, hormones, and other chemical messengers, the harder it is to distinguish them from each other or even to rigorously define "neurotransmitter." Traditionally, neurotransmitters have been conceived as small organic compounds that function at the synapse as follows: (1) they are synthesized by the presynaptic neuron, (2) they are released in response to stimulation, (3) they bind to specific receptors on the postsynaptic cell, and (4) they alter the physiology of that cell. Neuropeptides are an exception to the small size of neurotransmitters, and neurons have additional means of communication, such as the gas nitric oxide, that fall outside the scope of this traditional concept.

We will see, especially in chapter 15, that a given neurotransmitter does not have the same effect everywhere in the body. There are multiple receptor types in the body for a particular neurotransmitter—over 14 receptor types for serotonin, for example—and it is the receptor that governs what effect a neurotransmitter has on its target cell.

Synaptic Transmission

Neurotransmitters are quite diverse in their action. Some are excitatory, some are inhibitory, and for some the effect depends on what kind of receptor the postsynaptic cell has. Some neurotransmitters open ligand-regulated ion gates while others act through second-messenger systems. Bearing this diversity in mind, we will here examine three kinds of synapses with different modes of action: an *excitatory cholinergic synapse,* an *inhibitory GABA-ergic synapse,* and an *excitatory adrenergic synapse.*

An Excitatory Cholinergic Synapse

A **cholinergic**[26] (CO-lin-UR-jic) synapse employs acetylcholine (ACh) as its neurotransmitter. ACh excites some postsynaptic cells (such as skeletal muscle; chapter 11) and inhibits others, but here we will consider an excitatory action. The steps in transmission at such a synapse are as follows (fig. 12.19):

1. The arrival of a nerve signal at the synaptic knob opens voltage-regulated calcium gates.
2. Ca^{2+} enters the synaptic knob and triggers exocytosis of the synaptic vesicles, releasing ACh.
3. Empty vesicles drop back into the cytoplasm to be refilled with ACh, while synaptic vesicles in the reserve pool move forward to the active sites and release their ACh—a bit like a line of Revolutionary War soldiers firing their muskets and falling back to reload as another line moves to the fore.
4. Meanwhile, ACh diffuses across the synaptic cleft and binds to ligand-regulated gates on the postsynaptic neuron. These gates open, allowing Na^+ to enter the cell and K^+ to leave. Although illustrated separately, Na^+ and K^+ pass in opposite directions through the same gates.

---

[26] *cholin* = acetylcholine + *erg* = work, action

Table 12.3 Neurotransmitters and Neuropeptides

Name	Locations and Actions
Acetylcholine (Ach)	Neuromuscular junctions, most synapses of autonomic nervous system, retina, and many parts of the brain; excites skeletal muscles, inhibits cardiac muscle, and has excitatory or inhibitory effects on smooth muscle and glands depending on location
Excitatory Amino Acids	
Glutamate (glutamic acid)	Cerebral cortex and brainstem; retina; accounts for about 75% of all excitatory synaptic transmission in the brain; involved in learning and memory
Aspartate (aspartic acid)	Spinal cord; effects similar to those of glutamate
Inhibitory Amino Acids	
Glycine	Inhibitory neurons of the brain, spinal cord, and retina; most common inhibitory neurotransmitter in the spinal cord
GABA (γ-aminobutyric acid)	Thalamus, hypothalamus, cerebellum, occipital lobes of cerebrum, and retina; most common inhibitory neurotransmitter in the brain
Monoamines (biogenic amines)	
Catecholamines	
Norepinephrine	Sympathetic nervous system, cerebral cortex, hypothalamus, brainstem, cerebellum, and spinal cord; involved in dreaming, waking, and mood; excites cardiac muscle; can excite or inhibit smooth muscle and glands depending on location
Epinephrine	Hypothalamus, thalamus, spinal cord, and adrenal medulla; effects similar to those of norepinephrine
Dopamine	Hypothalamus, limbic system, cerebral cortex, and retina; highly concentrated in substantia nigra of midbrain; involved in elevation of mood and control of skeletal muscles
Other Monoamines	
Serotonin	Hypothalamus, limbic system, cerebellum, retina, and spinal cord; also secreted by blood platelets and intestinal cells; involved in sleepiness, alertness, thermoregulation, and mood
Histamine	Hypothalamus; also a potent vasodilator released by mast cells of connective tissue
Neuropeptides	
Substance P	Basal nuclei, midbrain, hypothalamus, cerebral cortex, small intestine, and pain-receptor neurons; mediates pain transmission
Enkephalins	Hypothalamus, limbic system, pituitary, pain pathways of spinal cord, and nerve endings of digestive tract; act as analgesics (pain-relievers) by inhibiting substance P; inhibit intestinal motility; secretion increases sharply in women in labor
β-endorphin	Digestive tract, spinal cord, and many parts of the brain; also secreted as a hormone by the pituitary; suppresses pain; reduces perception of fatigue and produces "runner's high" in athletes
Cholecystokinin (CCK)	Cerebral cortex and small intestine; suppresses appetite

5. As Na$^+$ enters the cell, it spreads out along the inside of the plasma membrane and depolarizes it, producing a local potential called the **postsynaptic potential.** Like other local potentials, if this is strong and persistent enough (that is, if enough Na$^+$ makes it to the axon hillock), it opens voltage-regulated ion gates in the trigger zone and causes the postsynaptic neuron to fire.

An Inhibitory GABA-ergic Synapse

A **GABA-ergic** synapse employs γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA) as its neurotransmitter. Amino acid neurotransmitters work by the same mechanism as ACh—binding to ion gates and causing immediate changes in membrane potential. The release of GABA and binding to its receptor are similar to the preceding case. The GABA receptor, however, is a chloride channel. It responds by opening

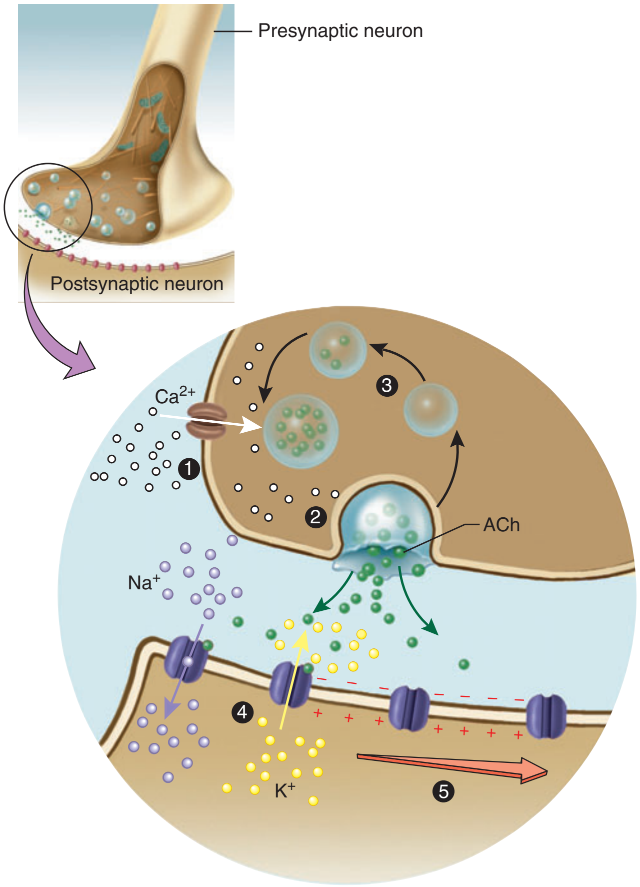

Presynaptic neuron
Postsynaptic neuron
Ca^{2+}
1
2
3
ACh
Na$^+$
4
K$^+$
5

Figure 12.19 Transmission at a Cholinergic Synapse. Acetylcholine directly opens ion gates in the plasma membrane of the postsynaptic neuron. Numbered steps correspond to the description in the text.

and admitting Cl^- to the cell, making the inside of the cell even more negative than the resting membrane potential, and thus making the neuron less likely to fire.

An Excitatory Adrenergic Synapse

An **adrenergic synapse** employs the neurotransmitter norepinephrine (NE), also called noradrenaline. NE, other monoamines, and neuropeptides act through second-messenger systems such as cyclic AMP (cAMP). The receptor is not an ion gate but an integral protein associated with a G protein. The binding of NE activates the G protein, which activates adenylate cyclase, which converts ATP to cAMP (fig. 12.20). The cAMP can have multiple effects such as stimulating the synthesis of new enzymes, activating preexisting enzymes, or opening ligand-regulated gates and producing a postsynaptic potential.

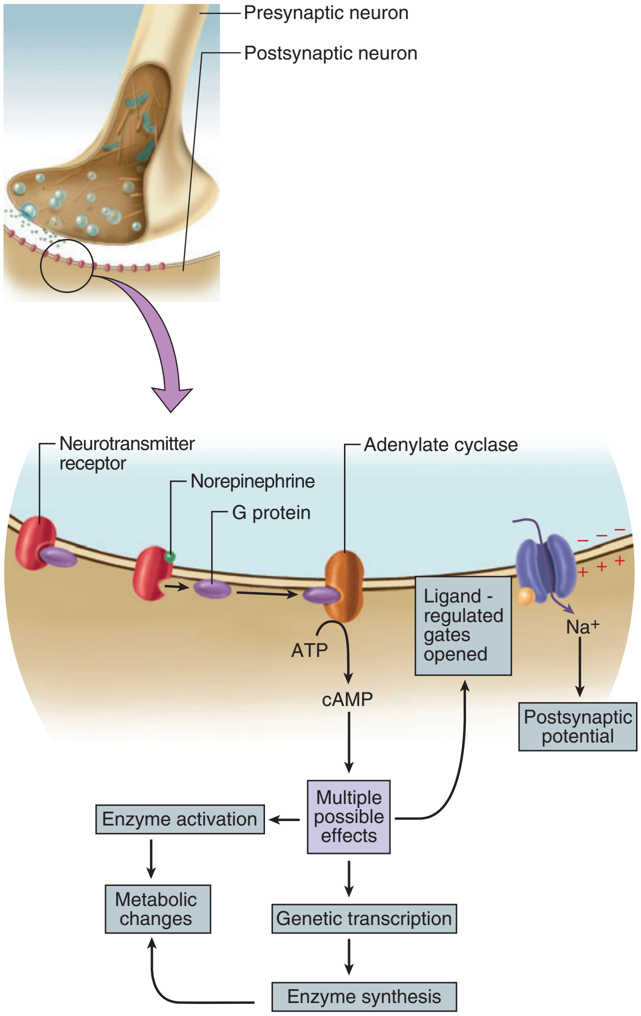

Presynaptic neuron
Postsynaptic neuron
Neurotransmitter receptor
Norepinephrine
G protein
Adenylate cyclase
Ligand - regulated gates opened
Na$^+$
ATP
cAMP
Postsynaptic potential
Enzyme activation
Multiple possible effects
Metabolic changes
Genetic transcription
Enzyme synthesis

Figure 12.20 Transmission at an Adrenergic Synapse. The norepinephrine receptor is not an ion channel. It activates a second-messenger system with a variety of possible effects in the postsynaptic cell.

As complex as synaptic events may seem, they typically require only 0.5 msec or so—an interval called **synaptic delay.** This is the time from the arrival of a signal at the axon terminal of a presynaptic cell to the beginning of an action potential in the postsynaptic cell.

Cessation of the Signal

It is important not only to stimulate a postsynaptic cell but also to turn off the stimulus in due time. Here we examine some ways this is done.

A neurotransmitter molecule binds to its receptor for only 1 msec or so, then dissociates from it. If the presynaptic cell continues to release neurotransmitter, one molecule is quickly replaced by another and the postsynaptic cell is restimulated. This immediately suggests a way of stopping synaptic transmission—stop adding new neurotransmitter and get rid of that which is already there. The first step is achieved simply by the cessation of signals in the presynaptic nerve fiber. The second can be achieved in the following ways:

- **Diffusion.** Neurotransmitter diffuses away from the synapse into the nearby ECF, where astrocytes may absorb it and return it to the neurons.
- **Reuptake.** The synaptic knob reabsorbs amino acids and monoamines by endocytosis and then breaks them down with an enzyme called **monoamine oxidase (MAO).** Some antidepressant drugs work by inhibiting MAO (see insight 15.2 at the end of chapter 15).
- **Degradation in the synaptic cleft.** The enzyme acetylcholinesterase (AChE), located within the synaptic cleft and on the postsynaptic membrane, breaks acetylcholine down into acetate and choline. These breakdown products have no stimulatory effect on the postsynaptic cell. The synaptic knob reabsorbs the choline and uses it to synthesize more ACh.

Neuromodulators

Neuromodulators are hormones, neuropeptides, and other messengers that modify synaptic transmission. They may stimulate a neuron to raise or lower the number of receptors in the postsynaptic membrane, thus adjusting its sensitivity to a neurotransmitter, or they may alter the rate of neurotransmitter synthesis, release, reuptake, or breakdown. One example—a rather recent and surprising discovery—is nitric oxide (NO), a lightweight gas that is released by postsynaptic neurons in some areas of the brain concerned with learning and memory. NO diffuses into the presynaptic neuron and stimulates it to release more neurotransmitter—like one neuron's way of telling the other, "Give me more." Thus, there is at least some chemical communication that goes backward across a synapse.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

18. Concisely describe five steps that occur between the arrival of an action potential at the synaptic knob and the beginning of a new action potential in the postsynaptic neuron.
19. Contrast the actions of acetylcholine, GABA, and norepinephrine at their respective synapses.
20. Describe three mechanisms that stop synaptic transmission.
21. What is the function of neuromodulators?

Neural Integration

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- explain how a neuron "decides" whether or not to produce action potentials;
- explain how the nervous system translates complex information into a simple code;
- explain how neurons work together in groups to process information and produce effective output; and
- describe how memory works at a cellular and molecular level.

Synaptic delay slows the transmission of nerve signals; the more synapses there are in a neural pathway, the longer it takes information to get from its origin to its destination. You might wonder, therefore, why we have synapses—why a nervous pathway is not, indeed, a continuous "wire" as biologists believed before the neuron doctrine was accepted. The presence of synapses is not due to limitations on the length of a neuron—after all, one nerve fiber can reach from your toes to your brainstem; imagine how long some nerve fibers may be in a giraffe or a whale! We also have seen that cells can communicate through gap junctions much more quickly than they can through chemical synapses. So why have chemical synapses at all?

What we value most about our nervous system is its ability to process information, store it, and make decisions—and chemical synapses are the decision-making devices of the system. The more synapses a neuron has, the greater its information-processing capability. At this moment, you are using certain *pyramidal cells* of the cerebral cortex (see fig. 12.5) to read and comprehend this passage. Each pyramidal cell has about 40,000 synaptic contacts with other neurons. The cerebral cortex alone (the main information-processing tissue of your brain) is estimated to have 100 trillion (10^{14}) synapses. To get some impression of this number, imagine trying to count them. Even if you could count two synapses per second, day and night without stopping, and you were immortal, it would take you 1.6 million years. The ability of your neurons to process information, store and recall it, and make decisions is called **neural integration.**

Postsynaptic Potentials

Neural integration is based on the postsynaptic potentials produced by neurotransmitters. Remember that a typical neuron has a resting membrane potential (RMP) of about -70 mV and a threshold of about -55 mV. A neuron has to be depolarized to this threshold in order to produce action potentials. Any voltage change in that direction makes a neuron more likely to fire and is therefore called an **excitatory postsynaptic potential (EPSP)** (fig. 12.21*a*). EPSPs usually result from Na^+ flowing into the cell and canceling some of the negative charge on the inside of the membrane.

In other cases, a neurotransmitter hyperpolarizes the postsynaptic cell and makes it more negative than the RMP. Since this makes the postsynaptic cell less likely to fire, it is called an **inhibitory postsynaptic potential (IPSP)** (fig. 12.21*b*). Some IPSPs are produced by a neurotransmitter opening ligand-regulated chloride gates, causing Cl^- to flow into the cell and make the cytosol more negative. A less common way is to open selective K^+ gates, increasing the diffusion of K^+ out of the cell.

It should be stressed that because of ion leakage through their membranes, all neurons fire at a certain background rate even when they are not being stimulated. EPSPs and IPSPs do not determine whether or not a neuron fires, but only change the rate of firing by stimulating or inhibiting the production of more action potentials.

Glutamate and aspartate are excitatory neurotransmitters that produce EPSPs. Glycine and GABA produce IPSPs and are therefore inhibitory. Acetylcholine (ACh) and norepinephrine are excitatory to some cells and inhibitory to others, depending on the type of receptors present on the target cells. For example, ACh excites skeletal muscle but inhibits cardiac muscle because the two types of muscle have different types of ACh receptors. This is discussed more fully in chapter 15.

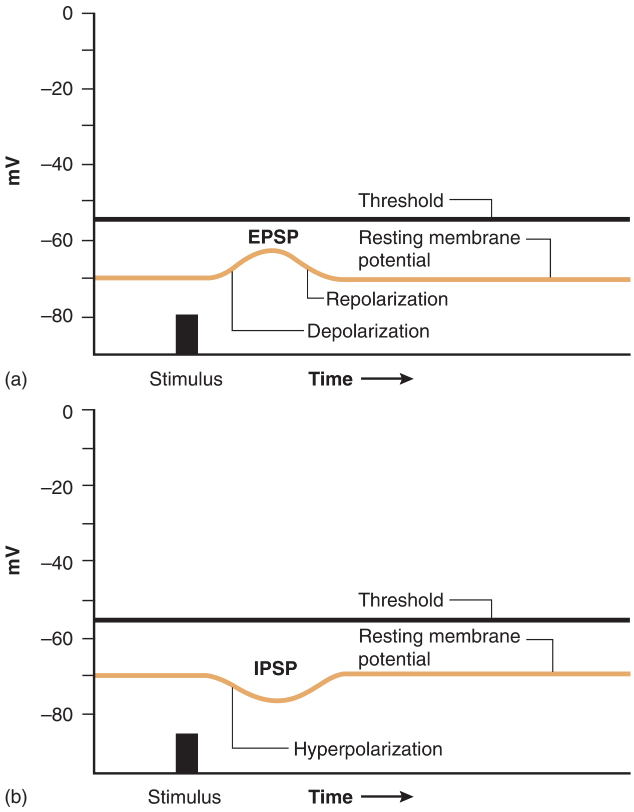


Figure 12.21 Postsynaptic Potentials. (*a*) An excitatory postsynaptic potential (EPSP). (*b*) An inhibitory postsynaptic potential (IPSP). The sizes of these postsynaptic potentials are greatly exaggerated here for clarity; compare figure 12.23.

Why is a single EPSP insufficient to make a neuron fire?

Summation, Facilitation, and Inhibition

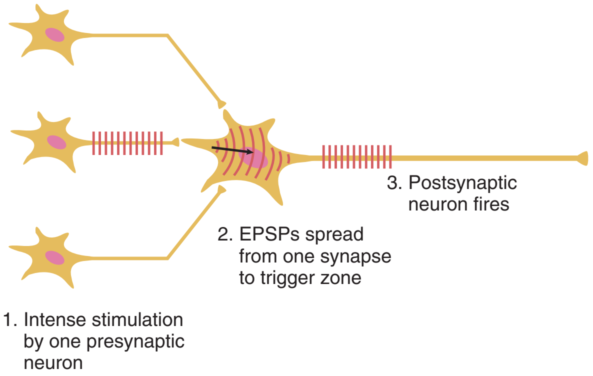
A neuron may receive input from thousands of presynaptic neurons simultaneously. Some incoming nerve fibers may produce EPSPs while others produce IPSPs. Whether or not the neuron fires depends on whether the *net* input is excitatory or inhibitory. If the EPSPs override the IPSPs, threshold may be reached and the neuron will fire; if the IPSPs prevail, the neuron will not fire. **Summation** is the process of adding up postsynaptic potentials and responding to their net effect. It occurs in the trigger zone.

Suppose, for example, you are working in the kitchen and accidentally touch a hot cooking pot. EPSPs in your motor neurons might cause you to jerk your hand back quickly and avoid being burned. Yet a moment later, you might nonchalantly pick up a cup of tea that is even hotter than the pot. Since you are expecting the teacup to be hot, you do not jerk your hand away. You have learned that it will not injure you, so at some level of the nervous system, IPSPs prevail and inhibit the motor response.

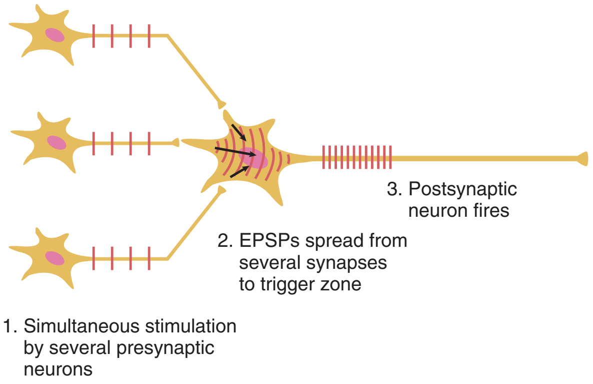
It is fundamentally a balance between EPSPs and IPSPs that enables the nervous system to make decisions. A postsynaptic neuron is like a little cellular democracy acting on the "majority vote" of hundreds of presynaptic cells. In the teacup example, some presynaptic neurons are sending messages that signify "hot! danger!" in the form of EPSPs that may activate a hand-withdrawal reflex, while at the same time, others are producing IPSPs that signify "safe" and suppress the withdrawal reflex. Whether the postsynaptic neurons cause you to jerk your hand back depends on whether the EPSPs override the IPSPs or vice versa.

One action potential in a synaptic knob does not produce enough activity to make a postsynaptic cell fire. An EPSP may be produced, but it decays before reaching threshold. A typical EPSP has a voltage of 0.5 mV and lasts only 15 to 20 msec. If a neuron has an RMP of −70 mV and a threshold of −55 mV, it needs about 30 EPSPs to reach threshold and fire. There are two ways in which EPSPs can add up to do this, and both may occur simultaneously.

1. **Temporal summation** (fig. 12.22*a*). This occurs when a single synapse generates EPSPs at such short time intervals that each is generated before the previous one decays. This allows the EPSPs to add up over time to a threshold voltage that triggers an action potential (fig. 12.23). Temporal summation


3. Postsynaptic neuron fires
2. EPSPs spread from one synapse to trigger zone
1. Intense stimulation by one presynaptic neuron

(a) Temporal summation


3. Postsynaptic neuron fires
2. EPSPs spread from several synapses to trigger zone
1. Simultaneous stimulation by several presynaptic neurons

(b) Spatial summation

Figure 12.22 Temporal and Spatial Summation. (*a*) In temporal summation, a single presynaptic neuron stimulates the postsynaptic neuron so intensely that its EPSPs add up to threshold and make it fire. (*b*) In spatial summation, multiple inputs to the postsynaptic cell each produce a moderate amount of stimulation, but collectively they produce enough EPSPs to add up to threshold at the trigger zone and make the cell fire.

can occur if even one presynaptic neuron intensely stimulates the postsynaptic neuron.

2. **Spatial summation** (fig. 12.22*b*). This occurs when EPSPs from several different synapses add up to threshold at the axon hillock. Any one synapse may admit only a moderate amount of Na^+ into the cell, but several synapses acting together admit enough Na^+ to reach a threshold. The presynaptic neurons cooperate to induce the postsynaptic neuron to fire.

Facilitation is a process in which one neuron enhances the effect of another one. In spatial summation, for example, one neuron acting alone may be unable to induce a postsynaptic neuron to fire. But when they cooperate, their combined "effort" does induce firing in the postsynaptic cell. They each enhance one another's effect, or *facilitate* each other.

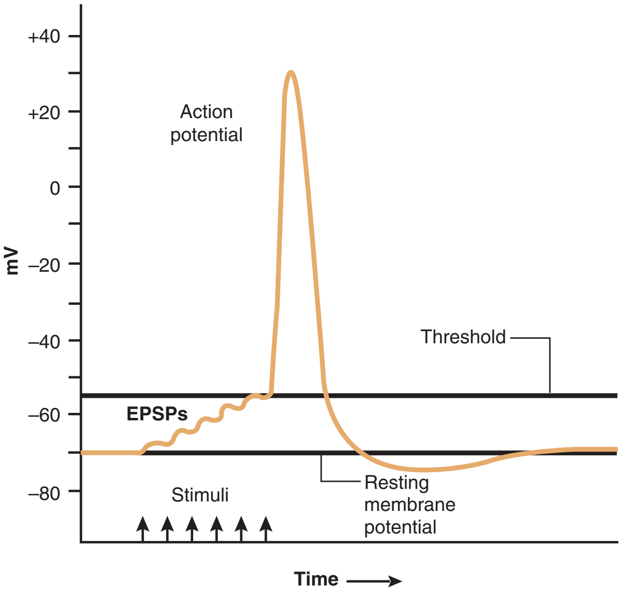


Figure 12.23 Summation of EPSPs. If enough EPSPs arrive at the trigger zone faster than they decay, they can build on each other to bring the neuron to threshold and trigger an action potential.

Presynaptic inhibition is the opposite of facilitation, a mechanism in which one presynaptic neuron suppresses another one. This mechanism is used to reduce or halt unwanted synaptic transmission. In figure 12.24, we see three neurons which we will call neuron *S* for the stimulator, neuron *I* for the inhibitor, and neuron *R* for the responder. Neuron I forms an axoaxonic synapse with S (that is, I synapses with the axon of S). When presynaptic inhibition is not occurring, neuron S releases its neurotransmitter and triggers a response in R. But when there is a need to block transmission across this pathway, neuron I releases the inhibitory neurotransmitter GABA. GABA prevents the voltage-regulated calcium gates of neuron S from opening. Consequently, neuron S releases less neurotransmitter or none, and fails to stimulate neuron R.

Neural Coding

The nervous system must interpret and pass along both quantitative and qualitative information about its environment—whether a light is dim or bright, red or green; whether a taste is mild or intense, salty or sour; whether a sound is loud or soft, high-pitched or low. Considering the complexity of information to be communicated about conditions in and around the body, it is a marvel that it can be done in the form of something as simple as action potentials—particularly since all the action potentials of a given neuron are identical. Yet when we considered the genetic code in chapter 4, we saw that complex messages can indeed be expressed in simple

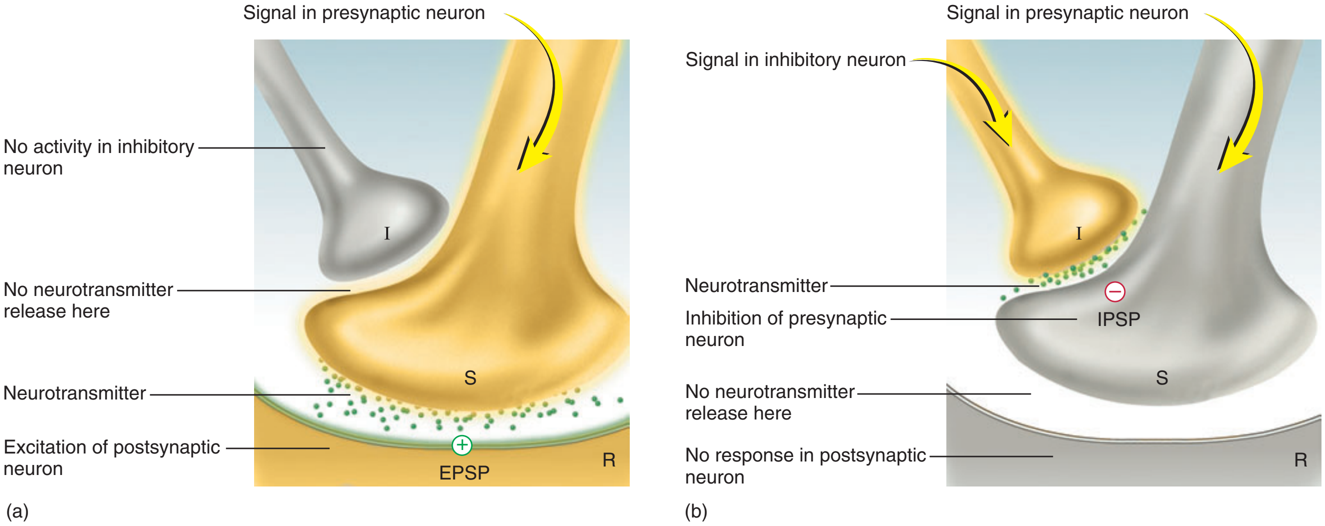

Signal in presynaptic neuron
No activity in inhibitory neuron
I
No neurotransmitter release here
S
Neurotransmitter
Excitation of postsynaptic neuron
EPSP
R
(a)
Signal in presynaptic neuron
Signal in inhibitory neuron
I
Neurotransmitter
Inhibition of presynaptic neuron
IPSP
S
No neurotransmitter release here
No response in postsynaptic neuron
R
(b)

Figure 12.24 **Presynaptic Inhibition.** (*a*) In the absence of inhibition, neuron *S* releases neurotransmitter and stimulates neuron *R.* (*b*) In presynaptic inhibition, neuron *I* suppresses the release of neurotransmitter by *S,* and *S* cannot stimulate *R.*

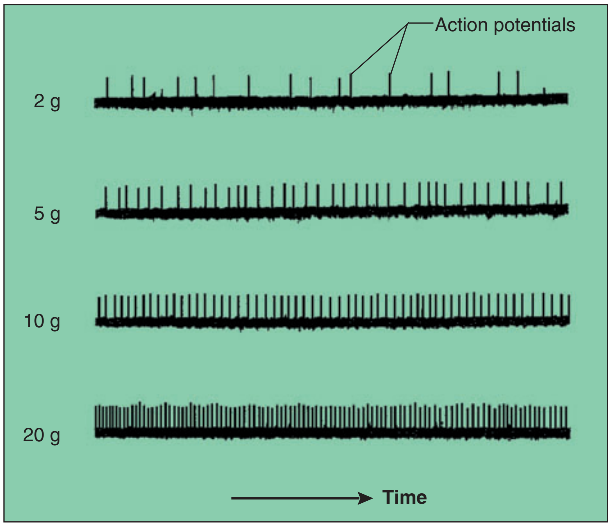


Figure 12.25 **An Example of Neural Coding.** This figure is based on recordings made from a sensory fiber of the frog sciatic nerve as the gastrocnemius muscle was stretched by suspending weights from it. As the stimulus strength (weight) and stretch increase, the firing frequency of the neuron increases. Firing frequency is a coded message that informs the CNS of stimulus intensity.

In what other way is the CNS informed of stimulus intensity?

codes. The way in which the nervous system converts information to a meaningful pattern of action potentials is called **neural coding** (or *sensory coding* when it occurs in the sense organs).

Qualitative information is encoded in terms of which neurons are firing. Red light and green light, for example, excite different fibers in the optic nerve; a high-pitched sound and a low-pitched sound excite different fibers in the auditory nerve; a sweet substance and a sour one excite different taste cells. The brain interprets input from different fibers in terms of these stimulus qualities.

Quantitative information—information about the intensity of a stimulus—is encoded in two ways. One depends on the fact that different neurons have different thresholds of excitation. A weak stimulus excites neurons with the lowest thresholds, while a strong stimulus excites less sensitive high-threshold neurons. Bringing additional neurons into play as the stimulus becomes stronger is called **recruitment.** It enables the nervous system to judge stimulus strength by which neurons, and how many of them, are firing.

Another way of encoding stimulus strength depends on the fact that the more strongly a neuron is stimulated, the more frequently it fires. A weak stimulus may cause a neuron to generate 6 action potentials per second, and a strong stimulus, 600 per second. Thus, the central nervous system can judge stimulus strength from the firing frequency of afferent neurons (fig. 12.25).

There is a limit to how often a neuron can fire, set by its absolute refractory period. Think of an electronic camera flash by analogy. If you take a photograph and your flash unit takes 15 seconds to recharge, then you cannot take more than four photographs per minute. Similarly, if a nerve fiber takes 1 msec to repolarize after it has fired, then it cannot fire more than 1,000 times per second. Refractory periods may be as short as 0.5 msec, which sets a theoretical limit to firing frequency of 2,000 action potentials per second. The highest frequencies actually observed, however, are between 500 and 1,000 per second.

Think About it

How is neuronal recruitment related to the process of multiple motor unit summation described in chapter 11?

Neuronal Pools and Circuits

So far, we have dealt with interactions involving only two or three neurons at a time. Actually, neurons function in larger ensembles called **neuronal pools,** each of which consists of thousands to millions of interneurons concerned with a particular body function—one to control the rhythm of your breathing, one to move your limbs rhythmically as you walk, one to regulate your sense of hunger, and another to interpret smells, for example. At this point, we explore a few ways in which neuronal pools collectively process information.

Information arrives at a neuronal pool through one or more input neurons, which branch repeatedly and synapse with numerous interneurons in the pool. Some input neurons form multiple synapses with a single postsynaptic cell. They can produce EPSPs at all points of contact with that cell and, through spatial summation, make it fire more easily than if they synapsed with it at only one point. Within the **discharge zone** of an input neuron, an input neuron acting alone can make the postsynaptic cells fire (fig. 12.26). But in a broader **facilitated zone,** it synapses with still other neurons in the pool, with fewer synapses on each of them. It can stimulate those neurons to fire only with the assistance of other input neurons; that is, it facilitates the other input neurons. Along with other inputs, it "has a vote" on what the postsynaptic cells in the facilitated zone will do, but it cannot alone determine what they do. Such arrangements, repeated thousands of times throughout the central nervous system, give neuronal pools great flexibility in integrating input from several sources and "deciding" on an appropriate output.

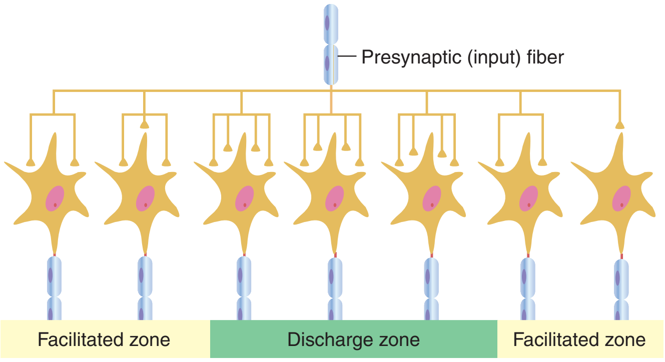


Figure 12.26 Facilitated and Discharge Zones in a Neuronal Pool. In a facilitated zone, the input neuron has few synaptic contacts with each output neuron. The input neuron makes it easier for those neurons to respond to stimulation from other sources, but it cannot, by itself, make them fire. In the discharge zone, the input neuron has extensive connections with each output neuron and is capable, by itself, of making the output neurons fire.

The functioning of a radio can be understood from a circuit diagram showing its components and their connections. Similarly, the functions of a neuronal pool are partly determined by its **neuronal circuit**—the pathways among its neurons. Just as a wide variety of electronic devices are constructed from a relatively limited number of circuit types, a wide variety of neuronal functions result from the operation of four principal kinds of neuronal circuits (fig. 12.27):

1. In a **diverging circuit,** one nerve fiber branches and synapses with several postsynaptic cells. Each of those may synapse with several more, so input from just one neuron may produce output through dozens of neurons. Such a circuit allows one motor neuron of the brain, for example, to ultimately stimulate thousands of muscle fibers.
2. A **converging circuit** is the opposite of a diverging circuit—input from many different nerve fibers is funneled to one neuron or neuronal pool. Such an arrangement allows input from your eyes, inner ears, and stretch receptors in your neck to be channeled to an area of the brain concerned with the sense of balance. Also through neuronal convergence, a respiratory center in your brainstem receives input from other parts of your brain, from receptors for blood chemistry in your arteries, and from stretch receptors in your lungs. The respiratory center can then produce an output that takes all of these factors into account and sets an appropriate pattern of breathing.
3. In a **reverberating circuit,** neurons stimulate each other in a linear sequence such as A → B → C → D, but neuron *C* sends an axon collateral back to *A.* As a result, every time *C* fires it not only stimulates output neuron *D,* but also restimulates *A* and starts the process over. Such a circuit produces a prolonged or repetitive effect that lasts until one or more neurons in the circuit fail to fire, or until an inhibitory signal from another source stops one of them from firing. A reverberating circuit sends repetitious signals to your diaphragm and intercostal muscles, for example, to make you inhale. When the circuit stops firing, you exhale, the next time it fires, you inhale again. Reverberating circuits may also be involved in short-term memory, as discussed in the next section, and they may play a role in the uncontrolled "storms" of neuronal activity that occur in epilepsy.
4. In a **parallel after-discharge circuit,** an input neuron diverges to stimulate several chains of

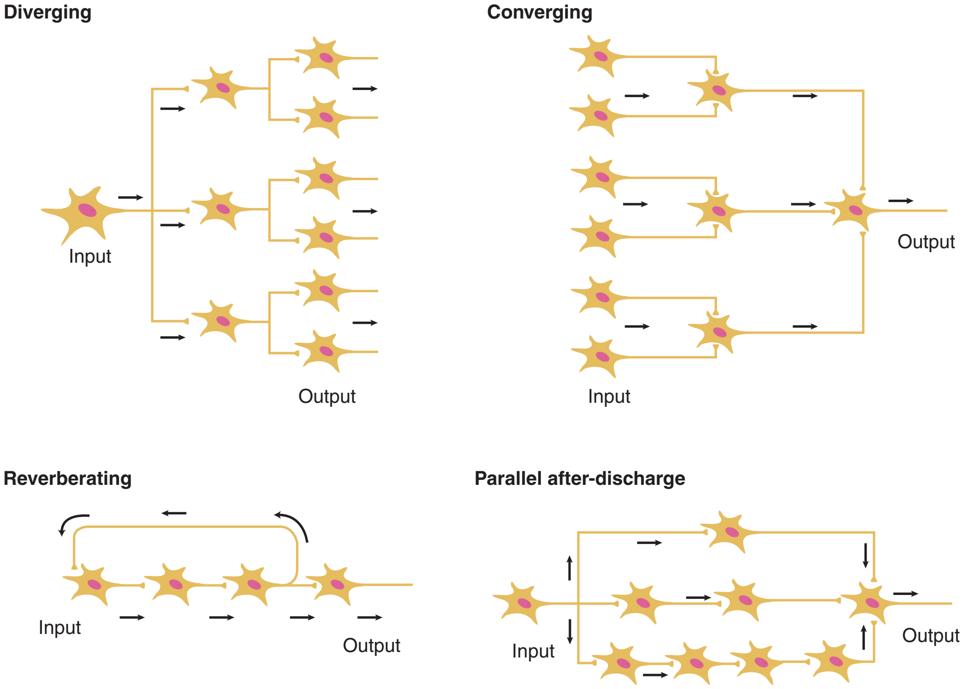


Figure 12.27 **Four Types of Neuronal Circuits.** *Arrows* indicate the direction of the nerve signal.
Which of these four circuits is likely to fire the longest after a stimulus ceases? Why?

neurons. Each chain has a different number of synapses, but eventually they all reconverge on a single output neuron. Since each pathway differs in total synaptic delay, their signals arrive at the output neuron at different times, and the output neuron may go on firing for some time after input has ceased. Unlike a reverberating circuit, this type has no feedback loop. Once all the neurons in the circuit have fired, the output ceases. Continued firing after the stimulus stops is called *after-discharge.* It explains why you can stare at a lamp, then close your eyes and continue to see an image of it for a while. Such a circuit is also important to withdrawal reflexes, in which a brief pain produces a longer-lasting output to the limb muscles and causes you to draw back your hand or foot from danger.

Memory and Synaptic Plasticity

You may have wondered as you studied this chapter, How am I going to remember all of this? It seems fitting that we end this chapter with the subject of how memory works, for you now have the information necessary to understand its cellular and chemical basis.

The things we learn and remember are not stored in individual "memory cells" in the brain. We do not have a neuron assigned to remember our phone number and another assigned to remember our mother's birthday, for example. Instead, the physical basis of a memory is a *pathway* through the brain called a **memory trace (engram[27]),** in which new synapses have formed or existing synapses have been modified to make transmission easier. In other words, synapses are not fixed for life; in response to experience, they can be added, taken away, or modified to make transmission easier or harder. This ability of synapses to change is called **synaptic plasticity.**

Think about when you learned as a child to tie your shoes. The procedure was very slow, confusing, and laborious at first, but eventually it became so easy you could do it with little thought—like a motor program playing out in your brain without requiring your conscious attention. It became easier to do because the synapses in a certain pathway were modified to allow signals to travel more easily across them than across "untrained" synapses. The process of making transmission easier is called **synaptic potentiation** (one form of synaptic plasticity).

Neuroscientists still argue about how to classify the various forms of memory, but three kinds often recognized are *immediate memory, short-term memory,* and *long-term memory.* We also know of different modes of synaptic potentiation that last from just a few seconds to a lifetime, and we can correlate these at least tentatively with different forms of memory.

---

[27] *en* = inner + *gram* = mark, trace, record

Immediate Memory

Immediate memory is the ability to hold something in mind for just a few seconds. By remembering what just happened, we get a feeling for the flow of events and a sense of the present. Immediate memory might be based on reverberating circuits. Our impression of what just happened can thus "re-echo" in our minds for a few seconds as we experience the present moment and plan the next one.

Short-Term Memory

Short-term memory (STM) lasts from a few seconds to a few hours and is limited to a few bits of information such as the digits of a telephone number. Information stored in STM may be quickly forgotten if we stop mentally reciting it, we are distracted, or we have to remember something new. **Working memory** is a form of STM that allows us to hold an idea in mind long enough to carry out an action such as calling a telephone number we just looked up, working out the steps of a mathematics problem, or searching for a lost set of keys while remembering where we have already looked. These short-term memory tasks may be carried out by reverberating circuits of neurons.

Somewhat longer-lasting memories, however, probably involve a synaptic effect called **facilitation** (different from the facilitation of one neuron by another that we studied earlier in the chapter). This form of facilitation is induced by *tetanic stimulation,* the rapid arrival of repetitive signals at a synapse. Each signal causes a certain amount of Ca^{2+} to enter the synaptic knob. If signals arrive so close together that the neuron cannot pump out all the Ca^{2+} admitted by one action potential before the next action potential occurs, then more and more Ca^{2+} will accumulate in the knob. Since Ca^{2+} is what triggers the release of neurotransmitter, each signal will trigger the release of more neurotransmitter than the one before. With more neurotransmitter, the EPSPs in the postsynaptic cell will become stronger and stronger, and that cell will be more likely to fire. Thus, tetanic stimulation facilitates the synapse and makes it easier for the postsynaptic cell to fire.

Memories lasting for a few hours, such as remembering what someone said to you earlier in the day or remembering an upcoming appointment, may involve **posttetanic potentiation.** In this process, the Ca^{2+} level in the synaptic knob stays elevated for so long that another signal, coming along well after the tetanic stimulation has ceased, releases an exceptionally large burst of neurotransmitter. That is, if a synapse has been heavily used in the recent past, a new stimulus can excite the postsynaptic cell more easily. Thus your memory may need only a slight jog to recall something from several hours earlier.

Long-Term Memory

Long-term memory (LTM) lasts up to a lifetime and is less limited than STM in the amount of information it can store. LTM allows you to memorize the lines of a play, the words of a favorite song, or textbook information for an exam. On a still longer timescale, it enables you to remember your name, the route to your home, and your childhood experiences.

There are two forms of long-term memory—declarative and procedural. **Declarative memory** is the retention of events and facts that you can put into words—numbers, names, dates, and so forth. **Procedural memory** is the retention of motor skills—how to tie your shoes, play a musical instrument, or type on a keyboard. These forms of memory involve different regions of the brain but are probably similar at the cellular level.

Some LTM involves the physical remodeling of synapses or the formation of new ones through the growth and branching of axons and dendrites. In the pyramidal cells of the brain, the dendrites are studded with knoblike *dendritic spines* that increase the area of synaptic contact. Studies on fish and other experimental animals have shown that social and sensory deprivation causes these spines to decline in number, while a richly stimulatory environment causes them to proliferate—an intriguing clue to the importance of a stimulating environment to infant and child development. In some cases of LTM, a new synapse grows beside the original one, giving the presynaptic cell twice as much input into the postsynaptic cell.

LTM can also be grounded in molecular changes called **long-term potentiation.** This involves *NMDA*[28] *receptors,* which occur on the synaptic knobs of the pyramidal cells and bind the neurotransmitter glutamate. NMDA receptors are usually blocked by magnesium ions (Mg^{2+}), but when they bind glutamate *and* are simultaneously subjected to tetanic stimulation, they expel the Mg^{2+} and open to admit Ca^{2+} into the dendrite. When Ca^{2+} enters the dendrite, it acts as a second messenger that leads to a variety of effects:

- The neuron produces an increased number of NMDA receptors, which makes it more sensitive to glutamate in the future.
- It synthesizes proteins concerned with physically remodeling a synapse.
- It releases nitric oxide, which diffuses back to the presynaptic neuron and triggers a chain reaction of events there that ultimately increases glutamate release.

You can see that in all of these ways, long-term potentiation can increase transmission across "experienced" synapses. Remodeling a synapse or increasing the number of neurotransmitter receptors has longer-lasting effects than facilitation or posttetanic potentiation.

---

[28] N-methyl-D-aspartate, a chemical similar to glutamate

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

22. Contrast the two types of summation at a synapse.
23. Describe how the nervous system communicates quantitative and qualitative information about stimuli.
24. List the four types of neuronal circuits and describe their similarities and differences. Discuss the unity of form and function in these four types—that is, explain why each type would not perform as it does if its neurons were connected differently.
25. How does long-term potentiation enhance the transmission of nerve signals along certain pathways?

Insight 12.4 Clinical Application

Alzheimer and Parkinson Diseases

Alzheimer and Parkinson diseases are degenerative disorders of the brain associated with neurotransmitter deficiencies.

Alzheimer[29] *disease (AD)* may begin before the age of 50 with symptoms so slight and ambiguous that early diagnosis is difficult. One of its first symptoms is memory loss, especially for recent events. A person with AD may ask the same questions repeatedly, show a reduced attention span, and become disoriented and lost in previously familiar places. Family members often feel helpless and confused as they watch their loved one's personality gradually deteriorate beyond recognition. The AD patient may become moody, confused, paranoid, combative, or hallucinatory—he or she may ask irrational questions such as, Why is the room full of snakes? The patient may eventually lose even the ability to read, write, talk, walk, and eat. Death ensues from pneumonia or other complications of confinement and immobility.

AD affects about 11% of the U.S. population over the age of 65; the incidence rises to 47% by age 85. It accounts for nearly half of all nursing home admissions and is a leading cause of death among the elderly. AD claims about 100,000 lives per year in the United States.

Diagnosis of AD is confirmed on autopsy. There is atrophy of some of the gyri (folds) of the cerebral cortex and the hippocampus, an important center of memory. Nerve cells exhibit *neurofibrillary tangles*—dense masses of broken and twisted cytoskeleton (fig. 12.28). These were first observed by Alois Alzheimer in 1907 in the brain of a patient who had died of senile dementia. The more severe the disease symptoms, the more neurofibrillary tangles are seen at autopsy. In the intercellular spaces, there are *senile plaques* consisting of aggregations of cells, altered nerve fibers, and a core of *β-amyloid protein*—the breakdown product of a glycoprotein of plasma membranes. β-amyloid protein is rarely seen in elderly people without AD.

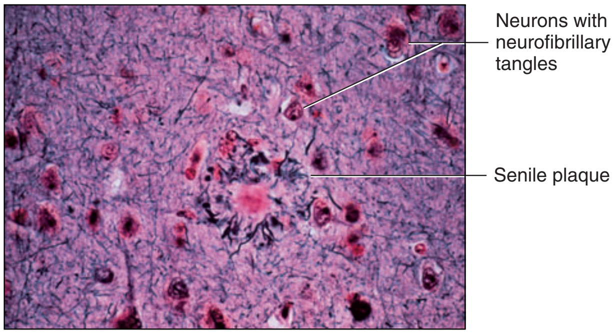


Figure 12.28 Cerebral Tissue from a Person with Alzheimer Disease. Neurofibrillary tangles appear within the neurons, and a senile plaque is evident in the extracellular matrix.

AD is marked by the degeneration of cholinergic neurons and a deficiency of ACh. Treatment with ACh precursors is ineffective, but therapy with cholinesterase inhibitors to slow down the degradation of existing ACh has been of some value. AD patients show a deficiency of nerve growth factor (NGF; see insight 12.3) in some regions of the brain. NGF stimulates ACh synthesis; it helps to retard brain degeneration in humans and other animals and improves memory in some AD patients. Intense biomedical research efforts are currently geared toward identifying the cause of AD and developing treatment strategies. Researchers have identified three genes on chromosomes 1, 14, and 21 for various forms of early- and late-onset AD.

Parkinson[30] *disease (PD),* also called *paralysis agitans* or *parkinsonism,* is a progressive loss of motor function beginning in a person's 50s or 60s. It is due to degeneration of dopamine-releasing neurons in a portion of the brain called the *substantia nigra.* A gene has recently been identified for a hereditary form of PD, but most cases are nonhereditary and of little-known cause; some authorities suspect environmental neurotoxins.

Dopamine (DA) is an inhibitory neurotransmitter that normally prevents excessive activity in motor centers of the brain called the *basal nuclei.* Degeneration of the dopamine-releasing neurons leads to an excessive ratio of ACh to DA, leading to hyperactivity of the basal nuclei. As a result, a person with PD suffers involuntary muscle contractions. These take such forms as shaking of the hands (tremor) and compulsive "pill-rolling" motions of the thumb and fingers. In addition, the facial muscles may become rigid and produce a staring, expressionless face with a slightly open mouth. The patient's range of motion diminishes. He or she takes smaller steps and develops a slow, shuffling gait with a forward-bent posture and a tendency to fall forward. Speech becomes slurred and handwriting becomes cramped and eventually illegible. Tasks such as buttoning clothes and preparing food become increasingly laborious.

Patients cannot be expected to recover from PD, but its effects can be alleviated with drugs and physical therapy. Treatment with dopamine is ineffective because it cannot cross the blood-brain barrier, but its precursor, levodopa (l-DOPA), does cross the barrier and has been used to treat PD since the 1960s. l-DOPA affords some relief from symptoms, but it does not slow progression of the disease and it has undesirable side effects on the liver and heart. It is effective for only 5 to 10 years of treatment. A newer drug, Deprenyl, is a monoamine oxidase (MAO) inhibitor that retards neuronal degeneration and delays the development of symptoms. Modest improvement has been obtained by implanting other dopamine-producing tissues into the brains of PD patients—namely, adrenal medulla and fetal brain tissue. Even though the latter tissue has not come from elective abortions, this approach has triggered ethical controversy.

A surgical technique called *pallidotomy* has been used since the 1940s to alleviate severe tremors. It involves the destruction of a small portion of cerebral tissue in an area called the *globus pallidus.* Pallidotomy fell out of favor in the late 1960s when l-DOPA came into common use. By the early 1990s, however, the limitations of l-DOPA had become apparent, while MRI- and CT-guided methods had improved surgical precision and reduced the risks. Pallidotomy has thus made a comeback. Other surgical treatments for parkinsonism target brain areas called the *subthalamic nucleus* and the *ventral intermediate nucleus* of the thalamus, and involve either the destruction of tiny areas of tissue or the implantation of a stimulating electrode.

---

[29] Alois Alzheimer (1864–1915), German neurologist

[30] James Parkinson (1755–1824), British physician

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

Overview of the Nervous System (p. 444)

1. The nervous and endocrine systems are the body's two main systems of internal communication and physiological coordination. Study of the nervous system, or *neuroscience,* includes *neurophysiology, neuroanatomy,* and clinical *neurology.*
2. The nervous system receives information from *receptors, integrates* information, and issues commands to *effectors.*
3. The nervous system is divided into the *central nervous system (CNS)* and *peripheral nervous system (PNS).* The PNS has *sensory* and *motor* divisions, and each of these has *somatic* and *visceral* subdivisions.
4. The visceral motor division is also called the *autonomic nervous system,* which has *sympathetic* and *parasympathetic* divisions.

Nerve Cells (Neurons) (p. 445)

1. Neurons have the properties of excitability, conductivity, and secretion.
2. A neuron has a *soma* where its nucleus and most other organelles are located; usually multiple *dendrites* that receive signals and conduct them to the soma; and one *axon (nerve fiber)* that carries nerve signals away from the soma.
3. The axon branches at the distal end into a *terminal arborization,* and each branch ends in a *synaptic knob.* The synaptic knob contains *synaptic vesicles,* which contain neurotransmitters.
4. Neurons are described as multipolar, bipolar, or unipolar depending on the number of dendrites present, or anaxonic if they have no axon.
5. Neurons move material along the axon by *axonal transport,* which can be *fast* or *slow, anterograde* (away from the soma) or *retrograde* (toward the soma).

Supportive Cells (Neuroglia) (p. 449)

1. Supportive cells called *neuroglia* greatly outnumber neurons. There are six kinds of neuroglia: oligodendrocytes, astrocytes, ependymal cells, and microglia in the CNS, and Schwann cells and satellite cells in the PNS.
2. *Oligodendrocytes* produce the myelin sheath around CNS nerve fibers.
3. *Astrocytes* play a wide variety of protective, nutritional, homeostatic, and communicative roles for the neurons, and form scar tissue when CNS tissue is damaged.
4. *Ependymal cells* line the inner cavities of the CNS and secrete and circulate cerebrospinal fluid.
5. *Microglia* are macrophages that destroy microorganisms, foreign matter, and dead tissue in the CNS.
6. *Schwann cells* cover nerve fibers in the PNS and produce myelin around many of them.
7. *Satellite cells* surround somas of the PNS neurons and have an uncertain function.
8. *Myelin* is a multilayered coating of oligodendrocyte or Schwann cell membrane around a nerve fiber, with periodic gaps called *nodes of Ranvier* between the glial cells.
9. Signal transmission is relatively slow in small nerve fibers, unmyelinated fibers, and at nodes of Ranvier. It is much faster in large nerve fibers and myelinated segments *(internodes)* of a fiber.
10. Damaged nerve fibers in the PNS can regenerate if the soma is unharmed. Repair requires a *regeneration tube* composed of *neurilemma* and *endoneurium,* which are present only in the PNS.

Electrophysiology of Neurons (p. 455)

1. An *electrical potential* is a difference in electrical charge between two points. When a cell has a charge difference between the two sides of the plasma membrane, it is *polarized.* The charge difference is called the *resting membrane potential (RMP).* For a resting neuron, it is typically −70 mV (negative on the intracellular side).
2. A *current* is a flow of charge particles—especially, in living cells, Na^+ and K^+. Resting cells have more K^+ inside than outside the cell, and more Na^+ outside than inside. A current occurs when gates in the plasma membrane open and allow these ions to diffuse across the membrane, down their concentration gradients.
3. When a neuron is stimulated on the dendrites or soma, Na^+ gates open and allow Na^+ to enter the cell. This slightly depolarizes the membrane, creating a *local potential.* Short-distance diffusion of Na^+ inside the cell allows local potentials to spread to nearby areas of membrane.
4. Local potentials are *graded, decremental, reversible,* and can be *excitatory* or *inhibitory.*
5. The trigger zone and unmyelinated regions of a nerve fiber have voltage-regulated Na^+ and K^+ gates that open in response to changes in membrane potential and allow these ions through.
6. If a local potential reaches *threshold,* voltage-regulated gates open. The inward movement of Na^+ followed by the outward movement of K^+ creates a quick voltage change called an *action potential.* The cell *depolarizes* as the membrane potential becomes less negative, and *repolarizes* as it returns toward the RMP.
7. Unlike local potentials, action potentials follow an *all-or-none law* and are *nondecremental* and *irreversible.* Following an action potential, a patch of cell membrane has a *refractory period* in which it cannot respond to another stimulus.
8. One action potential triggers another in the plasma membrane just distal to it. By repetition of this process, a chain of action potentials, or *nerve signal,* travels the entire length of an unmyelinated axon. The refractory period of the recently active membrane prevents this signal from traveling backward toward the soma.
9. In myelinated fibers, only the nodes of Ranvier have voltage-regulated

gates. In the internodes, the signal travels rapidly by Na^+ diffusing along the intracellular side of the membrane. At each node, new action potentials occur, slowing the signal somewhat, but restoring signal strength. Myelinated nerve fibers are said to show *saltatory conduction* because the signal seems to jump from node to node.

Synapses (p. 463)

1. At the distal end of a nerve fiber is a *synapse* where it meets the next cell (usually another neuron or a muscle or gland cell).
2. The *presynaptic* neuron must release chemical signals called *neurotransmitters* to cross the synaptic cleft and stimulate the next *(postsynaptic)* cell.
3. Neurotransmitters include acetylcholine (ACh), monoamines such as norepinephrine (NE) and serotonin, amino acids such as glutamate and GABA, and neuropeptides such as β-endorphin and substance P. A single neurotransmitter can affect different cells differently, because of the variety of receptors for it that various cells possess.
4. Some synapses are excitatory, as when ACh triggers the opening of Na^+-K^+ gates and depolarizes the postsynaptic cell, or when NE triggers the synthesis of the second messenger cAMP.
5. Some synapses are inhibitory, as when GABA opens a Cl^- gate and the inflow of Cl^- hyperpolarizes the postsynaptic cell.
6. Synaptic transmission ceases when the neurotransmitter diffuses away from the synaptic cleft, is reabsorbed by the presynaptic cell, or is degraded by an enzyme in the cleft such as acetylcholinesterase (AChE).
7. Hormones, neuropeptides, nitric oxide (NO), and other chemicals can act as *neuromodulators,* which alter synaptic function by altering neurotransmitter synthesis, release, reuptake, or breakdown.

Neural Integration (p. 468)

1. Synapses slow down communication in the nervous system, but their role in *neural integration* (information processing and decision making) overrides this drawback.
2. Neural integration is based on the relative effects of small depolarizations called *excitatory postsynaptic potentials (EPSPs)* and small hyperpolarizations called *inhibitory postsynaptic potentials (IPSPs)* in the postsynaptic membrane. EPSPs make it easier for the postsynaptic neuron to fire, and IPSPs make it harder.
3. Some combinations of neurotransmitter and receptor produce EPSPs and some produce IPSPs. The postsynaptic neuron can fire only if EPSPs override IPSPs enough for the membrane voltage to reach threshold.
4. One neuron receives input from thousands of others, some producing EPSPs and some producing IPSPs. *Summation,* the adding up of these potentials, occurs in the trigger zone. Two types of summation are temporal (based on how frequently a presynaptic neuron is stimulating the postsynaptic one) or spatial (based on how many presynaptic neurons are simultaneously stimulating the postsynaptic one).
5. One presynaptic neuron can *facilitate* another, making it easier for the second to stimulate a postsynaptic cell, or it can produce *presynaptic inhibition,* making it harder for the second one to stimulate the postsynaptic cell.
6. Neurons encode qualitative and quantitative information by means of *neural coding.* Stimulus type (qualitative information) is represented by which nerve cells are firing. Stimulus intensity (quantitative information) is represented both by which nerve cells are firing and by their firing frequency.
7. The refractory period sets an upper limit on how frequently a neuron can fire.
8. Neurons work in groups called neuronal pools.
9. A presynaptic neuron can, by itself, cause postsynaptic neurons in its *discharge zone* to fire. In its *facilitated zone,* it can only get a postsynaptic cell to fire by collaborating with other presynaptic neurons (facilitating each other).
10. Signals can travel *diverging, converging, reverberating,* or *parallel after-discharge circuits* of neurons.
11. Memories are formed by neural pathways of modified synapses. The ability of synapses to change with experience is called *synaptic plasticity,* and changes that make synaptic transmission easier are called *synaptic potentiation.*
12. Immediate memory may be based on reverberating circuits. Short-term memory (STM) may employ these circuits as well as *synaptic facilitation,* which is thought to involve an accumulation of Ca^{2+} in the synaptic knob.
13. *Long-term memory* (LTM) involves the remodeling of synapses, or modification of existing synapses so that they release more neurotransmitter or have more receptors for a neurotransmitter. The two forms of LTM are *declarative* and *procedural memory.*

Selected Vocabulary

central nervous system 444
peripheral nervous system 444
afferent neuron 446
interneuron 446
efferent neuron 446
soma 446
dendrite 446
axon 448
synapse 448
synaptic vesicle 448
oligodendrocyte 450
astrocyte 450
ependymal cell 450
microglia 451
Schwann cell 451
myelin sheath 451
node of Ranvier 453
resting membrane potential 455
depolarization 456
local potential 456
hyperpolarize 458
action potential 458
repolarize 458
excitatory postsynaptic potential 468
inhibitory postsynaptic potential 469
synaptic potentiation 473

Testing Your Recall

1. The integrative functions of the nervous system are performed mainly by
   a. afferent neurons.
   b. efferent neurons.
   c. neuroglia.
   d. sensory neurons.
   e. interneurons.
2. The highest density of voltage-regulated ion gates is found on the _____ of a neuron.
   a. dendrites
   b. soma
   c. nodes of Ranvier
   d. internodes
   e. synaptic knobs
3. The soma of a mature neuron lacks
   a. a nucleus.
   b. endoplasmic reticulum.
   c. lipofuscin.
   d. centrioles.
   e. ribosomes.
4. The glial cells that destroy microorganisms in the CNS are
   a. microglia.
   b. satellite cells.
   c. ependymal cells.
   d. oligodendrocytes.
   e. astrocytes.
5. Posttetanic potentiation of a synapse increases the amount of _____ in the synaptic knob.
   a. neurotransmitter
   b. neurotransmitter receptors
   c. calcium
   d. sodium
   e. NMDA
6. An IPSP is _____ of the postsynaptic neuron.
   a. a refractory period
   b. an action potential
   c. a depolarization
   d. a repolarization
   e. a hyperpolarization
7. Saltatory conduction occurs only
   a. at chemical synapses.
   b. in the initial segment of an axon.
   c. in both the initial segment and axon hillock.
   d. in myelinated nerve fibers.
   e. in unmyelinated nerve fibers.
8. Some neurotransmitters can have either excitatory or inhibitory effects depending on the type of
   a. receptors on the postsynaptic neuron.
   b. synaptic vesicles in the axon.
   c. synaptic potentiation that occurs.
   d. postsynaptic potentials on the synaptic knob.
   e. neuromodulator involved.
9. Differences in the volume of a sound are likely to be encoded by differences in _____ in nerve fibers from the inner ear.
   a. neurotransmitters
   b. signal conduction velocity
   c. types of postsynaptic potentials
   d. firing frequency
   e. voltage of the action potentials
10. Motor effects that depend on repetitive output from a neuronal pool are most likely to use
    a. parallel after-discharge circuits.
    b. reverberating circuits.
    c. facilitated circuits.
    d. diverging circuits.
    e. converging circuits.
11. Neurons that convey information to the CNS are called sensory, or _____, neurons.
12. To perform their role, neurons must have the properties of excitability, secretion, and _____.
13. The _____ is a period of time in which a neuron is producing an action potential and cannot respond to another stimulus of any strength.
14. Neurons receive incoming signals by way of specialized processes called _____.
15. In the central nervous system, cells called _____ perform one of the same functions that Schwann cells do in the peripheral nervous system.
16. A myelinated nerve fiber can produce action potentials only in specialized regions called _____.
17. The trigger zone of a neuron consists of its _____ and _____.
18. The neurotransmitter secreted at an adrenergic synapse is _____.
19. A presynaptic nerve fiber cannot cause other neurons in its _____ to fire, but it can make them more sensitive to stimulation from other presynaptic fibers.
20. _____ are substances released along with a neurotransmitter that modify the neurotransmitter's effect.

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. A neuron never has more than one axon.
2. Oligodendrocytes perform the same function in the brain as Schwann cells do in the peripheral nerves.
3. A resting neuron has a higher concentration of K^+ in its cytoplasm than in the extracellular fluid surrounding it.
4. During an action potential, a neuron is repolarized by the outflow of sodium ions.
5. Excitatory postsynaptic potentials lower the threshold of a neuron and thus make it easier to stimulate.
6. The absolute refractory period sets an upper limit on how often a neuron can fire.
7. A given neurotransmitter has the same effect no matter where in the body it is secreted.
8. Nerve signals travel more rapidly through the nodes of Ranvier than through the internodes.

9. The synaptic contacts in the nervous system are fixed by the time of birth and cannot be changed thereafter.
10. Mature neurons are incapable of mitosis.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. Schizophrenia is sometimes treated with drugs such as chlorpromazine that inhibit dopamine receptors. A side effect is that patients begin to develop muscle tremors, speech impairment, and other disorders similar to Parkinson disease. Explain.
2. Hyperkalemia is an excess of potassium in the extracellular fluid. What effect would this have on the resting membrane potentials of the nervous system and on neuronal excitability?
3. Suppose the Na^+-K^+ pumps of nerve cells were to slow down because of some metabolic disorder. How would this affect the resting membrane potentials of neurons? Would it make neurons more excitable than normal, or make them more difficult to stimulate? Explain.
4. The unity of form and function is an important concept in understanding synapses. Give two structural reasons why nerve signals cannot travel backward across a chemical synapse. What might be the consequences if signals did travel freely in both directions?
5. The local anesthetics tetracaine and procaine (Novocain) prevent voltage-regulated Na^+ gates from opening. Explain why this would block the conduction of pain signals in a sensory nerve.

Answers at the Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Legend Questions

12.9 It would become lower (more negative).
12.16 They are axosomatic.
12.21 One EPSP is a voltage change of only 0.5 mV or so. It requires a change of about 15 mV to bring a neuron to threshold.
12.25 The CNS interprets a stimulus as more intense if it receives signals from high-threshold sensory neurons than if it receives signals only from low-threshold neurons.
12.27 A reverberating circuit, because a neuron early in the circuit is continually restimulated

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.

Cross section through two fascicles (bundles) of nerve fibers in a nerve

CHAPTER 13

The Spinal Cord, Spinal Nerves, and Somatic Reflexes

CHAPTER OUTLINE

The Spinal Cord 482
- Functions 482
- Gross Anatomy 482
- Meninges of the Spinal Cord 482
- Cross-Sectional Anatomy 485
- Spinal Tracts 486

The Spinal Nerves 490
- General Anatomy of Nerves and Ganglia 490
- Spinal Nerves 492
- Nerve Plexuses 494
- Cutaneous Innervation and Dermatomes 503

Somatic Reflexes 503
- The Nature of Reflexes 503
- The Muscle Spindle 504
- The Stretch Reflex 504
- The Flexor (Withdrawal) Reflex 506
- The Crossed Extensor Reflex 507
- The Golgi Tendon Reflex 508

Chapter Review 510

INSIGHTS

13.1 **Clinical Application:** Spina Bifida 484
13.2 **Clinical Application:** Poliomyelitis and Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis 490
13.3 **Clinical Application:** Shingles 493
13.4 **Clinical Application:** Spinal Nerve Injuries 494
13.5 **Clinical Application:** Spinal Cord Trauma 508

Brushing Up

To understand this chapter, it is important that you understand or brush up on the following concepts:

- Function of antagonistic muscles (p. 329)
- Parallel after-discharge circuits (p. 472)

We studied the nervous system at a cellular level in chapter 12. In these next two chapters, we move up the structural hierarchy to study the nervous system at the organ and system levels of organization. The *spinal cord* is an "information highway" between your brain and your trunk and limbs. It is about as thick as a finger, and extends through the vertebral canal as far as your first lumbar vertebra. At regular intervals, it gives off a pair of *spinal nerves* that receive sensory input from the skin, muscles, bones, joints, and viscera, and that issue motor commands back to muscle and gland cells. The spinal cord is a component of the central nervous system and the spinal nerves a component of the peripheral nervous system, but these central and peripheral components are so closely linked structurally and functionally that it is appropriate that we consider them together in this chapter. The brain and cranial nerves will be discussed in chapter 14.

The Spinal Cord

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- name the two types of tissue in the central nervous system and state their locations;
- describe the gross and microscopic anatomy of the spinal cord; and
- name the major conduction pathways of the spinal cord and state their functions.

Functions

The spinal cord serves three principal functions:

1. **Conduction.** The spinal cord contains bundles of nerve fibers that conduct information up and down the cord, connecting different levels of the trunk with each other and with the brain. This enables sensory information to reach the brain, motor commands to reach the effectors, and input received at one level of the cord to affect output from another level.
2. **Locomotion.** Walking involves repetitive, coordinated contractions of several muscle groups in the limbs. Motor neurons in the brain initiate walking and determine its speed, distance, and direction, but the simple repetitive muscle contractions that put one foot in front of another, over and over, are coordinated by groups of neurons called **central pattern generators** in the cord. These neuronal circuits produce the sequence of outputs to the extensor and flexor muscles that cause alternating movements of the legs.
3. **Reflexes.** Reflexes are involuntary stereotyped responses to stimuli. They involve the brain, spinal cord, and peripheral nerves.

Gross Anatomy

The **spinal cord** (fig. 13.1) is a cylinder of nervous tissue that begins at the foramen magnum and passes through the vertebral canal as far as the inferior margin of the first lumbar vertebra (L1). In adults, it averages about 1.8 cm thick and 45 cm long. Early in fetal development, the spinal cord extends for the full length of the vertebral column. However, the vertebral column grows faster than the spinal cord, so the cord extends only to L3 by the time of birth and to L1 in an adult. Thus, it occupies only the upper two-thirds of the vertebral canal; the lower one-third is described shortly. The cord gives rise to 31 pairs of spinal nerves that pass through the intervertebral foramina. Although the spinal cord is not visibly segmented, the part supplied by each pair of spinal nerves is called a *segment.* The cord exhibits longitudinal grooves on its ventral and dorsal sides—the *ventral median fissure* and *dorsal median sulcus,* respectively.

The spinal cord is divided into **cervical, thoracic, lumbar,** and **sacral regions.** It may seem odd that it has a sacral region when the cord itself ends well above the sacrum. These regions, however, are named for the level of the vertebral column from which the spinal nerves emerge, not for the vertebrae that contain the cord itself.

In the inferior cervical region, a **cervical enlargement** of the cord gives rise to nerves of the upper limbs. In the lumbosacral region, there is a similar **lumbar enlargement** where nerves to the pelvic region and lower limbs arise. Inferior to the lumbar enlargement, the cord tapers to a point called the **medullary cone.** The lumbar enlargement and medullary cone give rise to a bundle of nerve roots that occupy the canal of vertebrae L2 to S5. This bundle, named the **cauda equina**[1] (CAW-duh ee-KWY-nah) for its resemblance to a horse's tail, innervates the pelvic organs and lower limbs.

Think About It

Spinal cord injuries commonly result from fractures of vertebrae C5 to C6, but never from fractures of L3 to L5. Explain both observations.

Meninges of the Spinal Cord

The spinal cord and brain are enclosed in three fibrous membranes called **meninges** (meh-NIN-jeez)—singular, *meninx*[2] (MEN-inks). These membranes separate the soft tissue of the central nervous system from the bones of the vertebrae and skull. From superficial to deep, they are the dura mater, arachnoid mater, and pia mater.

---

[1] *cauda* = tail + *equin* = horse

[2] *menin* = membrane

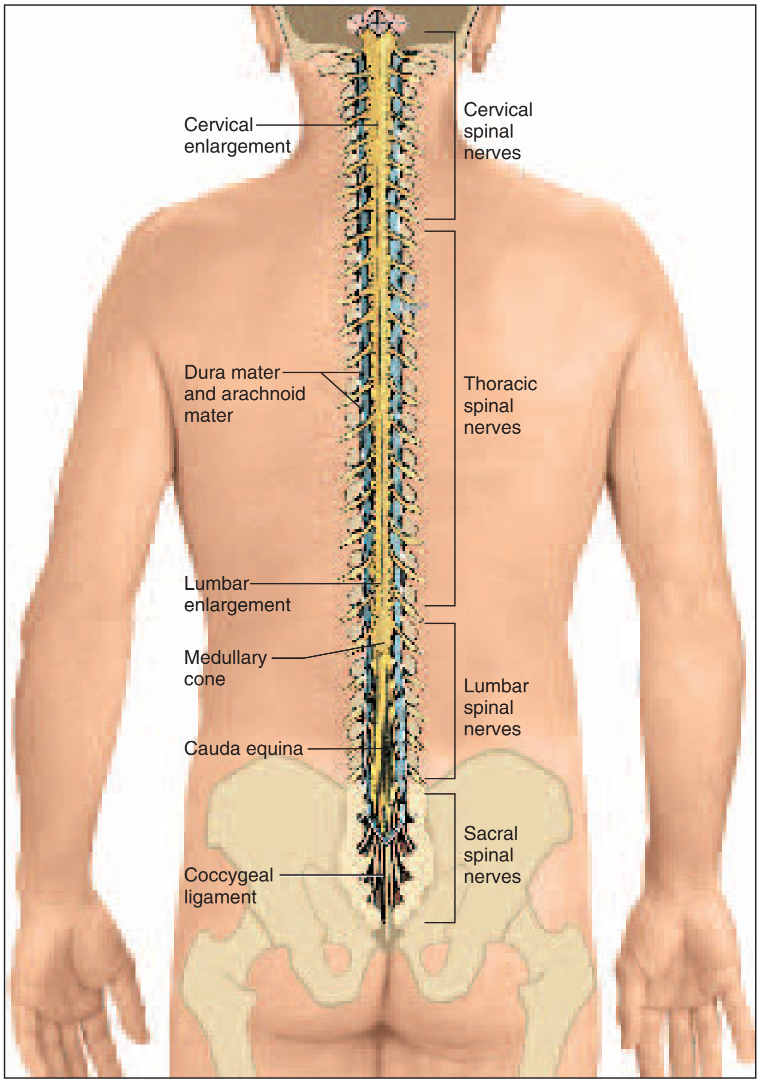

Cervical enlargement
Cervical spinal nerves
Dura mater and arachnoid mater
Thoracic spinal nerves
Lumbar enlargement
Medullary cone
Lumbar spinal nerves
Cauda equina
Sacral spinal nerves
Coccygeal ligament

Figure 13.1 **The Spinal Cord, Dorsal Aspect.**

The **dura mater**[3] (DOO-ruh MAH-tur) forms a loose-fitting sleeve called the **dural sheath** around the spinal cord. It is a tough collagenous membrane with a thickness and texture similar to a rubber kitchen glove. The space between the sheath and vertebral bone, called the **epidural space,** is occupied by blood vessels, adipose tissue, and loose connective tissue (fig. 13.2*a*). Anesthetics are sometimes introduced to this space to block pain signals during childbirth or surgery; this procedure is called *epidural anesthesia.*

The **arachnoid**[4] (ah-RACK-noyd) **mater** adheres to the dural sheath. It consists of a simple squamous epithelium, the *arachnoid membrane,* adhering to the inside of the dura, and a loose mesh of collagenous and elastic fibers spanning the gap between the arachnoid membrane and the pia mater. This gap, called the **subarachnoid space,** is filled with cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), a clear liquid discussed in chapter 14.

The **pia**[5] (PEE-uh) **mater** is a delicate, translucent membrane that closely follows the contours of the spinal cord. It continues beyond the medullary cone as a fibrous

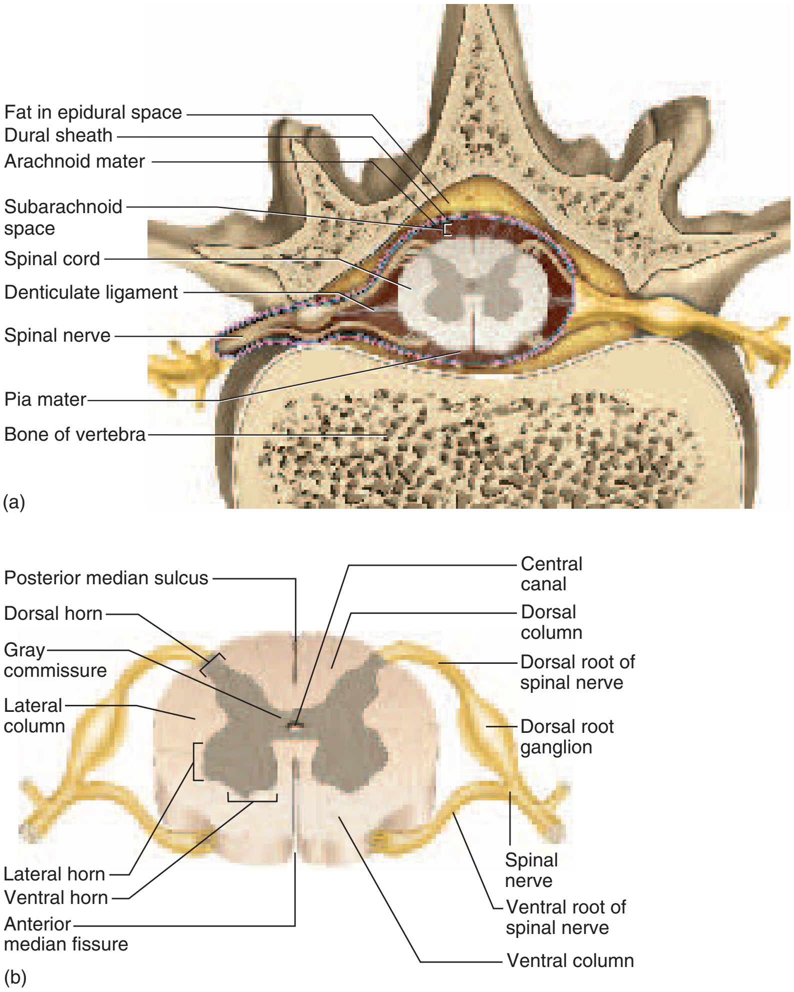
Chapter 13

---

[3] *dura* = tough + *mater* = mother, womb

[4] *arachn* = spider, spider web + *oid* = resembling

[5] *pia* = tender, soft



Fat in epidural space
Dural sheath
Arachnoid mater
Subarachnoid space
Spinal cord
Denticulate ligament
Spinal nerve
Pia mater
Bone of vertebra
(a)
Posterior median sulcus
Dorsal horn
Gray commissure
Lateral column
Lateral horn
Ventral horn
Anterior median fissure
(b)
Central canal
Dorsal column
Dorsal root of spinal nerve
Dorsal root ganglion
Spinal nerve
Ventral root of spinal nerve
Ventral column

Figure 13.2 **Cross Section of the Thoracic Spinal Cord.** (*a*) Relationship to the vertebra, meninges, and spinal nerve. (*b*) Anatomy of the spinal cord itself.

strand, the *terminal filum,* forming part of the **coccygeal ligament** that anchors the cord to vertebra L2. At regular intervals along the cord, extensions of the pia called **denticulate ligaments** extend through the arachnoid to the dura, anchoring the cord and preventing side-to-side movements.

Insight 13.1 Clinical Application

Spina Bifida

About one baby in 1,000 is born with *spina bifida* (SPY-nuh BIF-ih-duh), a congenital defect resulting from the failure of one or more vertebrae to form a complete vertebral arch for enclosure of the spinal cord. This is especially common in the lumbosacral region. One form, *spina bifida occulta,*[6] involves only one to a few vertebrae and causes no functional problems. Its only external sign is a dimple or hairy pigmented spot. *Spina bifida cystica*[7] is more serious. A sac protrudes from the spine and may contain meninges, cerebrospinal fluid, and parts of the spinal cord and nerve roots (fig. 13.3). In extreme cases, inferior spinal cord function is absent, causing lack of bowel control and paralysis of the lower limbs and urinary bladder. The last of these conditions can lead to chronic urinary infections and renal failure. Pregnant women can significantly reduce the risk of spina bifida by taking supplemental folic acid (a B vitamin) during early pregnancy. Good sources of folic acid include green leafy vegetables, black beans, lentils, and enriched bread and pasta.

---

[6] *bifid* = divided, forked + *occult* = hidden
[7] *cyst* = sac, bladder

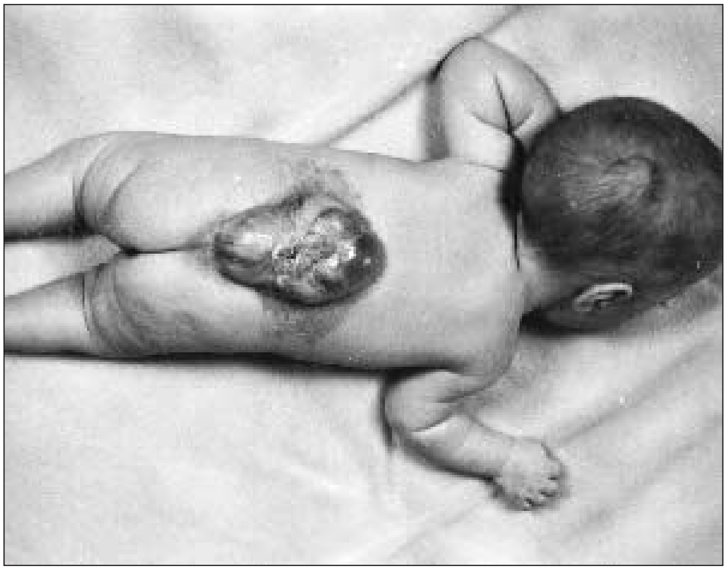


Figure 13.3 **Spina Bifida Cystica.**

Cross-Sectional Anatomy

Figure 13.2*a* shows the relationship of the spinal cord to a vertebra and spinal nerve, and figure 13.2*b* shows the cord itself in more detail. The spinal cord, like the brain, consists of two kinds of nervous tissue called gray and white matter. **Gray matter** has a relatively dull color because it contains little myelin. It contains the somas, dendrites, and proximal parts of the axons of neurons. It is the site of synaptic contact between neurons, and therefore the site of all synaptic integration (information processing) in the central nervous system. **White matter** contains an abundance of myelinated axons, which give it a bright, pearly white appearance. It is composed of bundles of axons, called **tracts,** that carry signals from one part of the CNS to another. In fixed and silver-stained nervous tissue, gray matter tends to have a darker brown or golden color and white matter a lighter tan to yellow color.

Gray Matter

The spinal cord has a central core of gray matter that looks somewhat butterfly- or H-shaped in cross sections. The core consists mainly of two **dorsal (posterior) horns,** which extend toward the dorsolateral surfaces of the cord, and two thicker **ventral (anterior) horns,** which extend toward the ventrolateral surfaces. The right and left sides are connected by a **gray commissure.** In the middle of the commissure is the **central canal,** which is collapsed in most areas of the adult spinal cord, but in some places (and in young children) remains open, lined with ependymal cells, and filled with CSF.

As a spinal nerve approaches the cord, it branches into a *dorsal root* and *ventral root.* The dorsal root carries sensory nerve fibers, which enter the dorsal horn of the cord and sometimes synapse with an interneuron there. Such interneurons are especially numerous in the cervical and lumbar enlargements and are quite evident in histological sections at these levels. The ventral horns contain the large somas of the somatic motor neurons. Axons from these neurons exit by way of the ventral root of the spinal nerve and lead to the skeletal muscles. The spinal nerve roots are described more fully later in this chapter.

In the thoracic and lumbar regions, an additional **lateral horn** is visible on each side of the gray matter. It contains neurons of the sympathetic nervous system, which send their axons out of the cord by way of the ventral root along with the somatic efferent fibers.

White Matter

The white matter of the spinal cord surrounds the gray matter and consists of bundles of axons that course up and down the cord and provides avenues of communication between different levels of the CNS. These bundles are arranged in three pairs called **columns** or **funiculi**[8] (few-NIC-you-lie)—a **dorsal (posterior), lateral,** and **ventral (anterior) column** on each side. Each column consists of subdivisions called **tracts** or **fasciculi**[9] (fah-SIC-you-lye).

---

[8] *funicul* = little rope, cord

[9] *fascicul* = little bundle

Spinal Tracts

Knowledge of the locations and functions of the spinal tracts is essential in diagnosing and managing spinal cord injuries. **Ascending tracts** carry sensory information up the cord and **descending tracts** conduct motor impulses down. All nerve fibers in a given tract have a similar origin, destination, and function.

Several of these tracts undergo **decussation**[10] (DEE-cuh-SAY-shun) as they pass up or down the brainstem and spinal cord—meaning that they cross over from the left side of the body to the right, or vice versa. As a result, the left side of the brain receives sensory information from the right side of the body and sends its motor commands to that side, while the right side of the brain senses and controls the left side of the body. A stroke that damages motor centers of the right side of the brain can thus cause paralysis of the left limbs and vice versa. When the origin and destination of a tract are on opposite sides of the body, we say they are **contralateral**[11] to each other. When a tract does not decussate, so the origin and destination of its fibers are on the same side of the body, we say they are **ipsilateral.**[12]

The major spinal cord tracts are summarized in table 13.1 and figure 13.4. Bear in mind that each tract is repeated on the right and left sides of the spinal cord.

Ascending Tracts

Ascending tracts carry sensory signals up the spinal cord. Sensory signals typically travel across three neurons from their origin in the receptors to their destination in the sensory areas of the brain: a **first-order neuron** that detects a stimulus and transmits a signal to the spinal cord or brainstem; a **second-order neuron** that continues as far as a "gateway" called the *thalamus* at the upper end of the brainstem; and a **third-order neuron** that carries the signal the rest of the way to the sensory region of the cerebral cortex. The axons of these neurons are called the first- through third-order nerve fibers. Deviations from the pathway described here will be noted for some of the sensory systems to follow.

The major ascending tracts are as follows. The names of most ascending tracts consist of the prefix *spino-* followed by a root denoting the destination of its fibers in the brain.

- The **gracile**[13] **fasciculus** (GRAS-el fah-SIC-you-lus) carries signals from the midthoracic and lower parts of the body. Below vertebra T6, it composes the entire dorsal column. At T6, it is joined by the cuneate fasciculus, discussed next. It consists of first-order nerve fibers that travel up the ipsilateral side of the spinal cord and terminate at the *gracile nucleus* in the medulla oblongata of the brainstem. These fibers carry

---

[10] *decuss* = to cross, form an X
[11] *contra* = opposite
[12] *ipsi* = the same + *later* = side

[13] *gracil* = thin, slender

Table 13.1 Major Spinal Tracts

Tract	Column	Decussation	Functions
Ascending (sensory) Tracts			
Gracile fasciculus	Dorsal	In medulla	Limb and trunk position and movement, deep touch, visceral pain, vibration, below level T6
Cuneate fasciculus	Dorsal	In medulla	Same as gracile fasciculus, from level T6 up
Spinothalamic	Lateral and ventral	In spinal cord	Light touch, tickle, itch, temperature, pain, and pressure
Dorsal spinocerebellar	Lateral	None	Feedback from muscles (proprioception)
Ventral spinocerebellar	Lateral	In spinal cord	Same as dorsal spinocerebellar
Descending (motor) Tracts			
Lateral corticospinal	Lateral	In medulla	Fine control of limbs
Ventral corticospinal	Ventral	None	Fine control of limbs
Tectospinal	Lateral and ventral	In midbrain	Reflexive head-turning in response to visual and auditory stimuli
Lateral reticulospinal	Lateral	None	Balance and posture; regulation of awareness of pain
Medial reticulospinal	Ventral	None	Same as lateral reticulospinal
Vestibulospinal	Ventral	None	Balance and posture

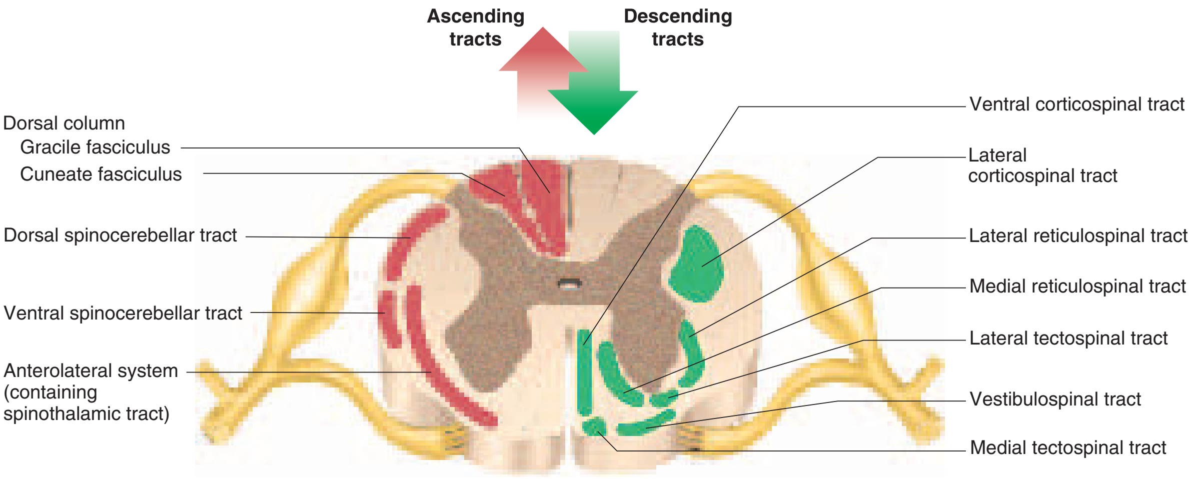

Ascending tracts
Descending tracts
Dorsal column
Gracile fasciculus
Cuneate fasciculus
Dorsal spinocerebellar tract
Ventral spinocerebellar tract
Anterolateral system (containing spinothalamic tract)
Ventral corticospinal tract
Lateral corticospinal tract
Lateral reticulospinal tract
Medial reticulospinal tract
Lateral tectospinal tract
Vestibulospinal tract
Medial tectospinal tract

Figure 13.4 **Tracts of the Spinal Cord.** All of the illustrated tracts occur on both sides of the cord, but only the ascending sensory tracts are shown on the *left* (*red*), and only the descending motor tracts on the *right* (*green*).
If you were told that this cross section is either at level T4 or T10, how could you determine which is correct?

signals for vibration, visceral pain, deep and discriminative touch (touch whose location one can precisely identify), and especially *proprioception*[14] from the lower limbs and lower trunk. (Proprioception is a nonvisual sense of the position and movements of the body.)

- The **cuneate**[15] (CUE-nee-ate) **fasciculus** (fig. 13.5*a*) joins the gracile fasciculus at the T6 level. It occupies the lateral portion of the dorsal column and forces the gracile fasciculus medially. It carries the same type of sensory signals, originating from level T6 and up (from the upper limb and chest). Its fibers end in the *cuneate nucleus* on the ipsilateral side of the medulla oblongata. In the medulla, second-order fibers of the gracile and cuneate systems decussate and form the **medial lemniscus**[16] (lem-NIS-cus), a tract of nerve fibers that leads the rest of the way up the brainstem to the thalamus. Third-order fibers go from the thalamus to the cerebral cortex. Because of decussation, the signals carried by the gracile and cuneate fasciculi ultimately go to the contralateral cerebral hemisphere.
- The **spinothalamic** (SPY-no-tha-LAM-ic) **tract** (fig. 13.5*b*) and some smaller tracts form the *anterolateral system,* which passes up the anterior and lateral columns of the spinal cord. The spinothalamic tract carries signals for pain, temperature, pressure, tickle, itch, and light or crude touch. Light touch is the sensation produced by stroking hairless skin with a feather or cotton wisp, without indenting the skin; crude touch is touch whose location one can only vaguely identify. In this pathway, first-order neurons end in the dorsal horn of the spinal cord near the point of entry. Second-order neurons decussate to the opposite side of the spinal cord and there form the ascending spinothalamic tract. These fibers lead all the way to the thalamus. Third-order neurons continue from there to the cerebral cortex.
- The **dorsal** and **ventral spinocerebellar** (SPY-no-SERR-eh-BEL-ur) **tracts** travel through the lateral column and carry proprioceptive signals from the limbs and trunk to the cerebellum, a large motor control area at the rear of the brain. The first-order neurons of this system originate in the muscles and tendons and end in the dorsal horn of the spinal cord. Second-order neurons send their fibers up the spinocerebellar tracts and end in the cerebellum. Fibers of the dorsal tract travel up the ipsilateral side of the spinal cord. Those of the ventral tract cross over and travel up the contralateral side but then cross back in the brainstem to enter the ipsilateral cerebellum. Both tracts provide the cerebellum with feedback needed to coordinate muscle action, as discussed in chapter 14.

---

[14] *proprio* = one's own + *cept* = receive, sense
[15] *cune* = wedge
[16] *lemniscus* = ribbon

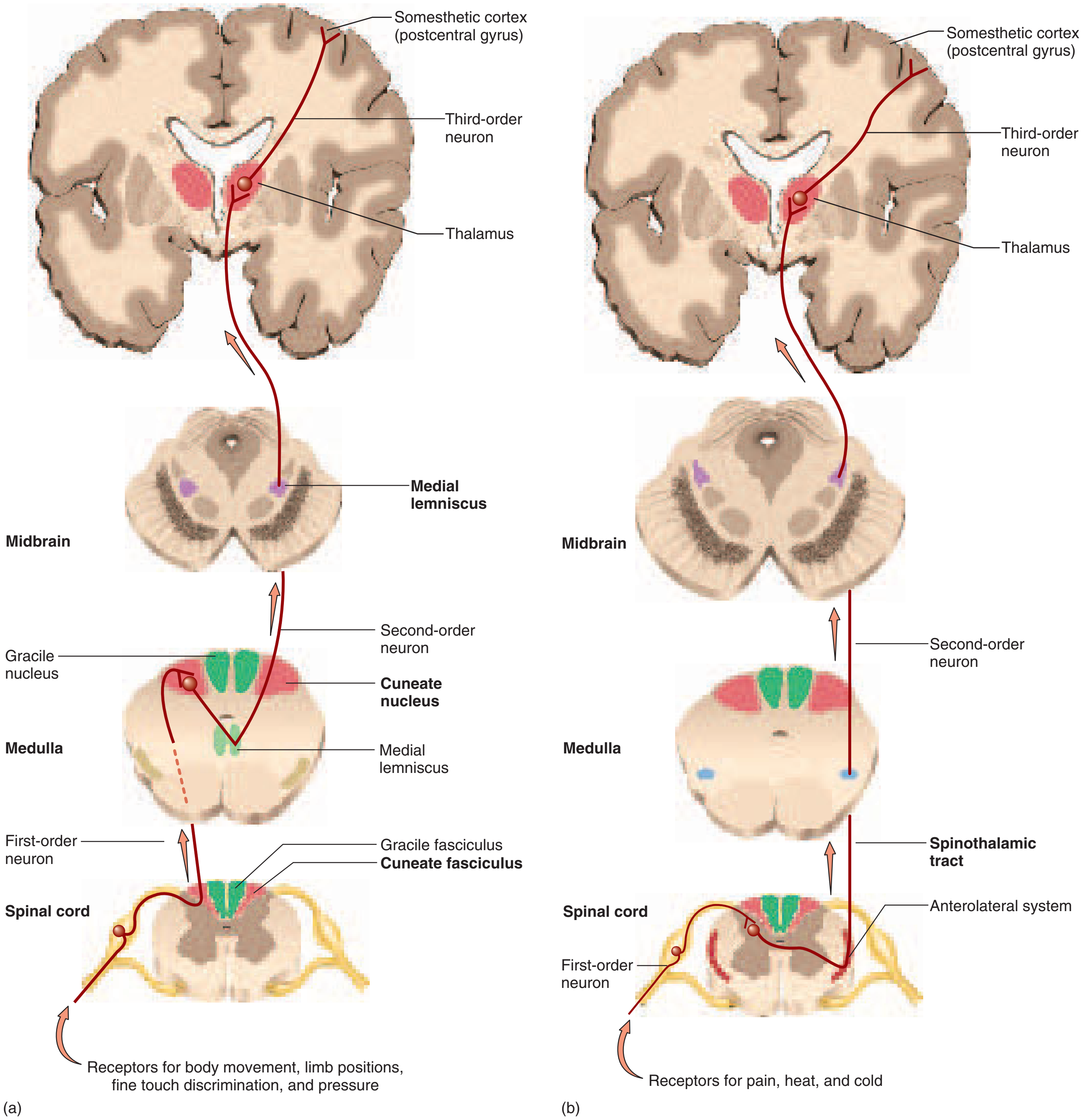

Somesthetic cortex (postcentral gyrus)
Third-order neuron
Thalamus
Medial lemniscus
Midbrain
Second-order neuron
Gracile nucleus
Cuneate nucleus
Medulla
Medial lemniscus
First-order neuron
Gracile fasciculus
Cuneate fasciculus
Spinal cord
Receptors for body movement, limb positions, fine touch discrimination, and pressure
(a)
Somesthetic cortex (postcentral gyrus)
Third-order neuron
Thalamus
Midbrain
Second-order neuron
Medulla
Spinothalamic tract
Spinal cord
Anterolateral system
First-order neuron
Receptors for pain, heat, and cold
(b)

Figure 13.5 **Some Ascending Pathways of the CNS.** The spinal cord, medulla, and midbrain are shown in cross section and the cerebrum and thalamus (*top*) in frontal section. Nerve signals enter the spinal cord at the *bottom* of the figure and carry somatosensory information up to the cerebral cortex. (*a*) The cuneate fasciculus and medial lemniscus; (*b*) the spinothalamic tract.

Descending Tracts

Descending tracts carry motor signals down the brainstem and spinal cord. A descending motor pathway typically involves two neurons called the upper and lower motor neuron. The **upper motor neuron** begins with a soma in the cerebral cortex or brainstem and has an axon that terminates on a **lower motor neuron** in the brainstem or spinal cord. The axon of the lower motor neuron then leads the rest of the way to the muscle or other target organ. The names of most descending tracts consist of a word root denoting the point of origin in the brain, followed by the suffix *-spinal.* The major descending tracts are described here.

- The **corticospinal** (COR-tih-co-SPY-nul) **tracts** carry motor signals from the cerebral cortex for precise, finely coordinated limb movements. The fibers of this system form ridges called *pyramids* on the ventral surface of the medulla oblongata, so these tracts were once called *pyramidal tracts.* Most corticospinal fibers decussate in the lower medulla and form the **lateral corticospinal tract** on the contralateral side of the spinal cord. A few fibers remain uncrossed and form the **ventral corticospinal tract** on the ipsilateral side (fig. 13.6). Fibers of the ventral tract decussate lower in the spinal cord, however, so even they control contralateral muscles.
- The **tectospinal** (TEC-toe-SPY-nul) **tract** begins in a midbrain region called the *tectum* and crosses to the contralateral side of the brainstem. In the lower medulla, it branches into *lateral* and *medial tectospinal tracts* of the upper spinal cord. These are involved in reflex movements of the head, especially in response to visual and auditory stimuli.
- The **lateral** and **medial reticulospinal** (reh-TIC-you-lo-SPY-nul) **tracts** originate in the *reticular formation* of the brainstem. They control muscles of the upper and lower limbs, especially to maintain posture and balance. They also contain *descending analgesic pathways* that reduce the transmission of pain signals to the brain (see chapter 16).
- The **vestibulospinal** (vess-TIB-you-lo-SPY-nul) **tract** begins in a brainstem *vestibular nucleus* that receives impulses for balance from the inner ear. The tract passes down the ventral column of the spinal cord and controls limb muscles that maintain balance and posture.

Rubrospinal tracts are prominent in other mammals, where they aid in muscle coordination. Although often pictured in illustrations of human anatomy, they are almost nonexistent in humans and have little functional importance.

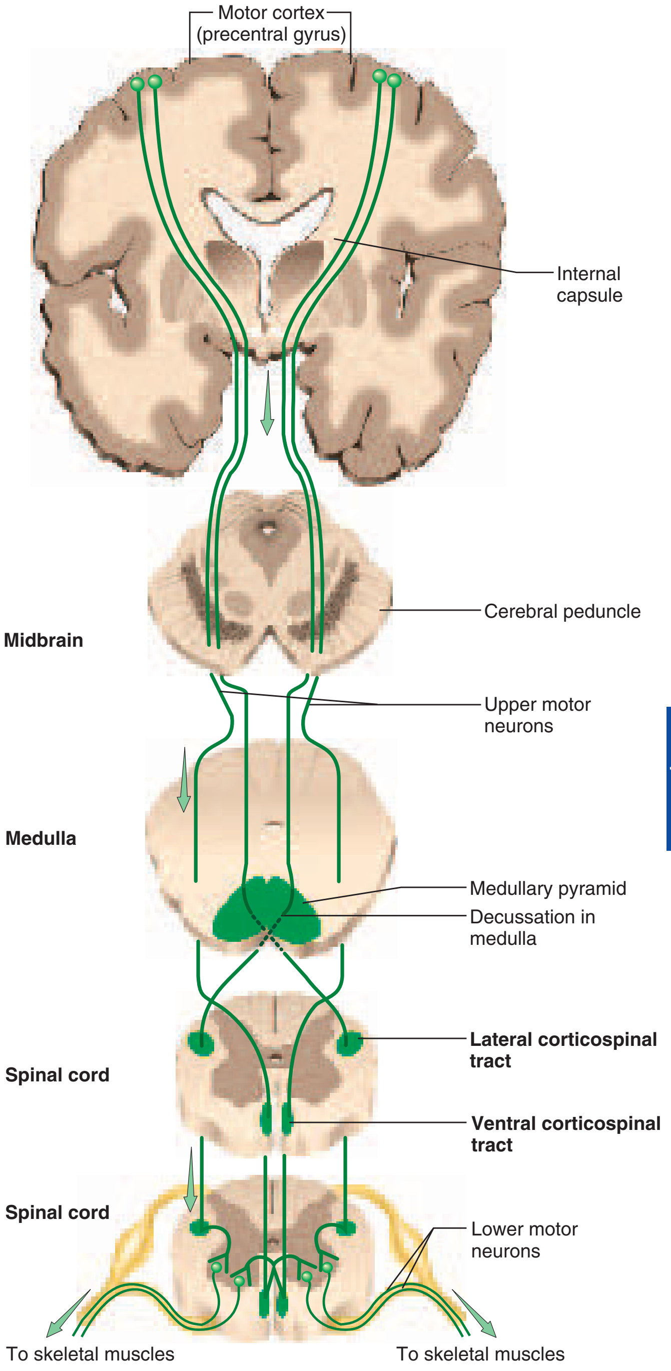


Figure 13.6 **Two Descending Pathways of the CNS.** The lateral and ventral corticospinal tracts, which carry signals for voluntary muscle contraction. Nerve signals originate in the cerebral cortex at the *top* of the figure and carry motor commands down the spinal cord.

Think About It

You are blindfolded and either a tennis ball or an iron ball is placed in your right hand. What spinal tract(s) would carry the signals that enable you to discriminate between these two objects?

Insight 13.2 Clinical Application

Poliomyelitis and Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis

Poliomyelitis[17] and *amyotrophic lateral sclerosis*[18] (ALS) are two diseases that involve destruction of motor neurons. In both diseases, the skeletal muscles atrophy from lack of innervation.

Poliomyelitis is caused by the poliovirus, which destroys motor neurons in the brainstem and ventral horn of the spinal cord. Signs of polio include muscle pain, weakness, and loss of some reflexes, followed by paralysis, muscular atrophy, and sometimes respiratory arrest. The virus spreads by fecal contamination of water. Historically, polio afflicted mainly children, who sometimes contracted the virus in the summer by swimming in contaminated pools. The polio vaccine has nearly eliminated new cases.

ALS is also known as Lou Gehrig disease after the baseball player who contracted it. It is marked not only by the degeneration of motor neurons and atrophy of the muscles, but also sclerosis of the lateral regions of the spinal cord—hence its name. In most cases of ALS, neurons are destroyed by an inability of astrocytes to reabsorb glutamate from the tissue fluid, allowing this neurotransmitter to accumulate to a toxic level. The early signs of ALS include muscular weakness and difficulty in speaking, swallowing, and using the hands. Sensory and intellectual functions remain unaffected, as evidenced by the accomplishments of astrophysicist and best-selling author Stephen Hawking, who was stricken with ALS while he was in college. Despite near-total paralysis, he remains highly productive and communicates with the aid of a speech synthesizer and computer. Tragically, many people are quick to assume that those who have lost most of their ability to communicate their ideas and feelings have no ideas and feelings to communicate. To a victim, this may be more unbearable than the loss of motor function itself.

---

[17] *polio* = gray matter + *myel* = spinal cord + *itis* = inflammation
[18] *a* = without + *myo* = muscle + *troph* = nourishment

Figure 13.7 **Stephen Hawking (1942–), Lucasian Professor of Mathematics at Cambridge University.**

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

1. Name the four major regions and two enlargements of the spinal cord.
2. Describe the distal (inferior) end of the spinal cord and the contents of the vertebral canal from level L2 to S5.
3. Sketch a cross section of the spinal cord showing the dorsal and ventral horns. Where are the gray and white matter? Where are the columns and tracts?
4. Give an anatomical explanation as to why a stroke in the right cerebral hemisphere can paralyze the limbs on the left side of the body.

The Spinal Nerves

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the attachment of a spinal nerve to the spinal cord;
- trace the branches of a spinal nerve distal to its attachment;
- name the five plexuses of spinal nerves and describe their general anatomy;
- name some major nerves that arise from each plexus; and
- explain the relationship of dermatomes to the spinal nerves.

General Anatomy of Nerves and Ganglia

The spinal cord communicates with the rest of the body by way of the spinal nerves. Before we discuss those specific nerves, however, it is necessary to be familiar with the structure of nerves and ganglia in general.

A **nerve** is a cordlike organ composed of numerous nerve fibers (axons) bound together by connective tissue (fig. 13.8). If we compare a nerve fiber to a wire carrying an electrical current in one direction, a nerve would be comparable to an electrical cable composed of thousands of wires carrying currents in opposite directions. A nerve contains anywhere from a few nerve fibers to more than a million. Nerves usually have a pearly white color and resemble frayed string as they divide into smaller and smaller branches.

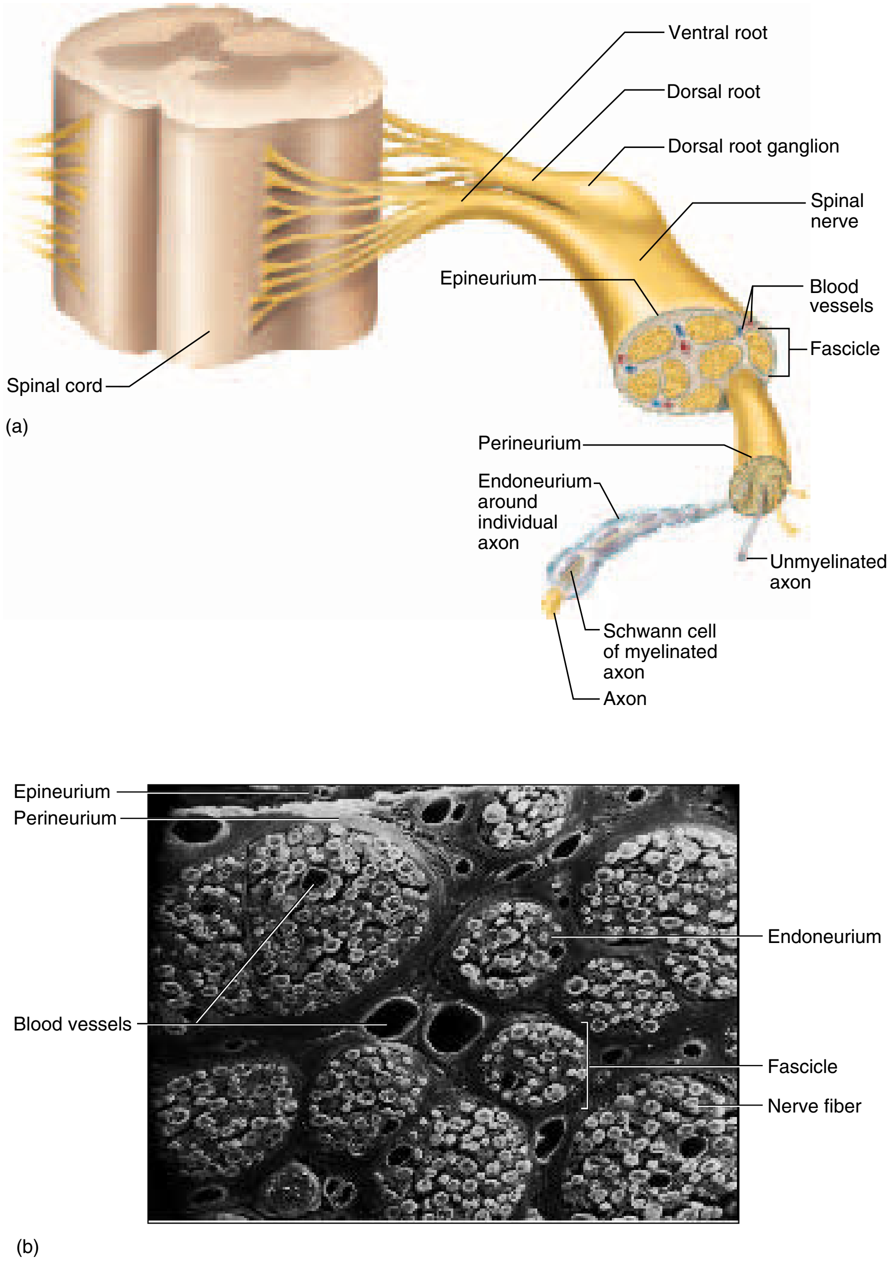

Ventral root
Dorsal root
Dorsal root ganglion
Spinal nerve
Epineurium
Blood vessels
Fascicle
Spinal cord
(a)
Perineurium
Endoneurium around individual axon
Unmyelinated axon
Schwann cell of myelinated axon
Axon
Epineurium
Perineurium
Endoneurium
Blood vessels
Fascicle
Nerve fiber
(b)

Figure 13.8 **Anatomy of a Nerve.** (*a*) A spinal nerve and its association with the spinal cord. (*b*) Cross section of a nerve (SEM). Myelinated nerve fibers appear as white rings and unmyelinated fibers as solid gray. Credit for *b:* Richard E. Kessel and Randy H. Kardon, *Tissues and Organs: A Text-Atlas of Scanning Electron Microscopy,* 1979, W. H. Freeman and Company.

Nerve fibers of the peripheral nervous system are ensheathed in Schwann cells, which form a neurilemma and often a myelin sheath around the axon (see chapter 12). External to the neurilemma, each fiber is surrounded by a basal lamina and then a thin sleeve of loose connective tissue called the **endoneurium.** In most nerves, the nerve fibers are gathered in bundles called **fascicles,** each wrapped in a sheath called the **perineurium.** The perineurium is composed of one to six layers of overlapping, squamous, epithelium-like cells. Several fascicles are then bundled together and wrapped in an outer **epineurium** to compose the nerve as a whole. The epineurium is composed of dense irregular fibrous connective tissue and protects the nerve from stretching and injury. Nerves have a high metabolic rate and need a plentiful blood supply. Blood vessels penetrate as far as the perineurium, and oxygen and nutrients diffuse through the extracellular fluid from there to the nerve fibers.

Think About It

How does the structure of a nerve compare to that of a skeletal muscle? Which of the descriptive terms for nerves have similar counterparts in muscle histology?

Peripheral nerve fibers are of two kinds: *sensory (afferent) fibers* carry signals from sensory receptors to the CNS, and *motor (efferent) fibers* carry signals from the CNS to muscles and glands. Both sensory and motor fibers can also be described as *somatic* or *visceral* and as *general* or *special* depending on the organs they innervate (table 13.2).

A **mixed nerve** consists of both sensory and motor fibers and thus transmits signals in two directions, although any one nerve fiber within the nerve transmits signals one way only. Most nerves are mixed. Purely **sensory nerves,** composed entirely of sensory axons, are less common; they include the olfactory and optic nerves discussed in chapter 14. Nerves that carry only motor fibers are called **motor nerves.** Many nerves often described as motor are actually mixed because they carry sensory signals of proprioception from the muscle back to the CNS.

If a nerve resembles a thread, a **ganglion**[19] resembles a knot in the thread. A ganglion is a cluster of cell bodies (somas) outside the CNS. It is enveloped in an epineurium continuous with that of the nerve. Among the somas are bundles of nerve fibers leading into and out of the ganglion. Figure 13.9 shows a type of ganglion called the *dorsal root ganglion* associated with the spinal nerves.

Spinal Nerves

There are 31 pairs of **spinal nerves:** 8 cervical (C1–C8), 12 thoracic (T1–T12), 5 lumbar (L1–L5), 5 sacral (S1–S5), and 1 coccygeal (Co) (fig. 13.10). The first cervical nerve emerges between the skull and atlas, and the others emerge through intervertebral foramina, including the anterior and posterior foramina of the sacrum.

Proximal Branches

Each spinal nerve has two points of attachment to the spinal cord (fig. 13.11). Dorsally, a branch of the spinal nerve called the **dorsal root** divides into six to eight *nerve rootlets* that enter the spinal cord (fig. 13.12). A little distal to the rootlets is a swelling called the **dorsal root ganglion,** which contains the somas of afferent neurons. Ventrally, another row of six to eight rootlets leave the spinal cord and converge to form the **ventral root.**

The dorsal and ventral roots merge, penetrate the dural sac, enter the intervertebral foramen, and there form the spinal nerve proper.

Spinal nerves are mixed nerves, with a two-way traffic of afferent (sensory) and efferent (motor) signals. Afferent signals approach the cord by way of the dorsal root and enter the dorsal horn of the gray matter. Efferent signals begin at the somas of motor neurons in the ventral horn and leave the spinal cord via the ventral root. Some viruses invade the central nervous system by way of these roots (see insight 13.3).

The dorsal and ventral roots are shortest in the cervical region and become longer inferiorly. The roots that arise from segments L2 to Co of the cord form the cauda equina.

Distal Branches

Distal to the vertebrae, the branches of a spinal nerve are more complex (fig. 13.13). Immediately after emerging from the intervertebral foramen, the nerve divides into a **dorsal ramus,**[20] a **ventral ramus,** and a small **meningeal branch.** The meningeal branch (see fig. 13.11) reenters the vertebral canal and innervates the meninges, vertebrae, and spinal ligaments. The dorsal ramus innervates the muscles and joints in that region of the spine and the skin

Table 13.2 The Classification of Nerve Fibers

Class	Description
Afferent fibers	Carry sensory signals from receptors to the CNS
Efferent fibers	Carry motor signals from the CNS to effectors
Somatic fibers	Innervate skin, skeletal muscles, bones, and joints
Visceral fibers	Innervate blood vessels, glands, and viscera
General fibers	Innervate widespread organs such as muscles, skin, glands, viscera, and blood vessels
Special fibers	Innervate more localized organs in the head, including the eyes, ears, olfactory and taste receptors, and muscles of chewing, swallowing, and facial expression

---

[19] *gangli* = knot

[20] *ramus* = branch

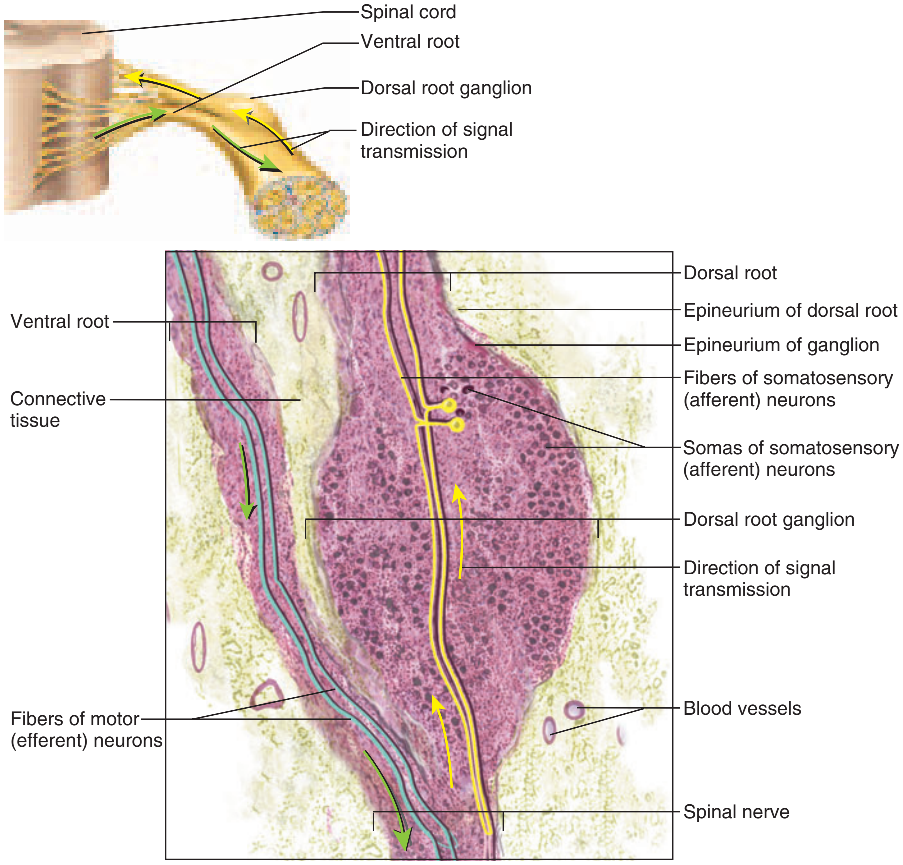

Spinal cord
Ventral root
Dorsal root ganglion
Direction of signal transmission
Dorsal root
Ventral root
Epineurium of dorsal root
Epineurium of ganglion
Connective tissue
Fibers of somatosensory (afferent) neurons
Somas of somatosensory (afferent) neurons
Dorsal root ganglion
Direction of signal transmission
Blood vessels
Fibers of motor (efferent) neurons
Spinal nerve

Figure 13.9 **Anatomy of a Ganglion.** The dorsal root ganglion contains the somas of unipolar sensory neurons conducting signals to the spinal cord. To the *left* of it is the ventral root of the spinal nerve, which conducts motor signals away from the spinal cord. (The ventral root is not part of the ganglion.)

Where are the somas of the motor neurons located?

of the back. The ventral ramus innervates the ventral and lateral skin and muscles of the trunk and gives rise to nerves of the limbs.

Think About It

Do you think the meningeal branch is sensory, motor, or mixed? Explain your reasoning.

The ventral ramus differs from one region of the trunk to another. In the thoracic region, it forms an **intercostal nerve** that travels along the inferior margin of a rib and innervates the skin and intercostal muscles (thus contributing to breathing), as well as the internal oblique, external oblique, and transversus abdominis muscles. All other ventral rami form the *nerve plexuses* described next.

Insight 13.3 Clinical Application

Shingles

Chickenpox (*varicella*), a common disease of early childhood, is caused by the *varicella-zoster* virus. It produces an itchy rash that usually clears up without complications. The virus, however, remains for life in the dorsal root ganglia. The immune system normally keeps it in check. If the immune system is compromised, however, the virus can travel down the sensory nerves by fast axonal transport and cause *shingles* (*herpes zoster*). This is characterized by a painful trail of skin discoloration and fluid-filled vesicles along the path of the nerve. These signs usually appear in the chest and waist, often on just one side of the body. Shingles usually occurs after the age of 50. While it can be very painful and may last 6 months or longer, it eventually heals spontaneously and requires no special treatment other than aspirin and steroidal ointment to relieve pain and inflammation.

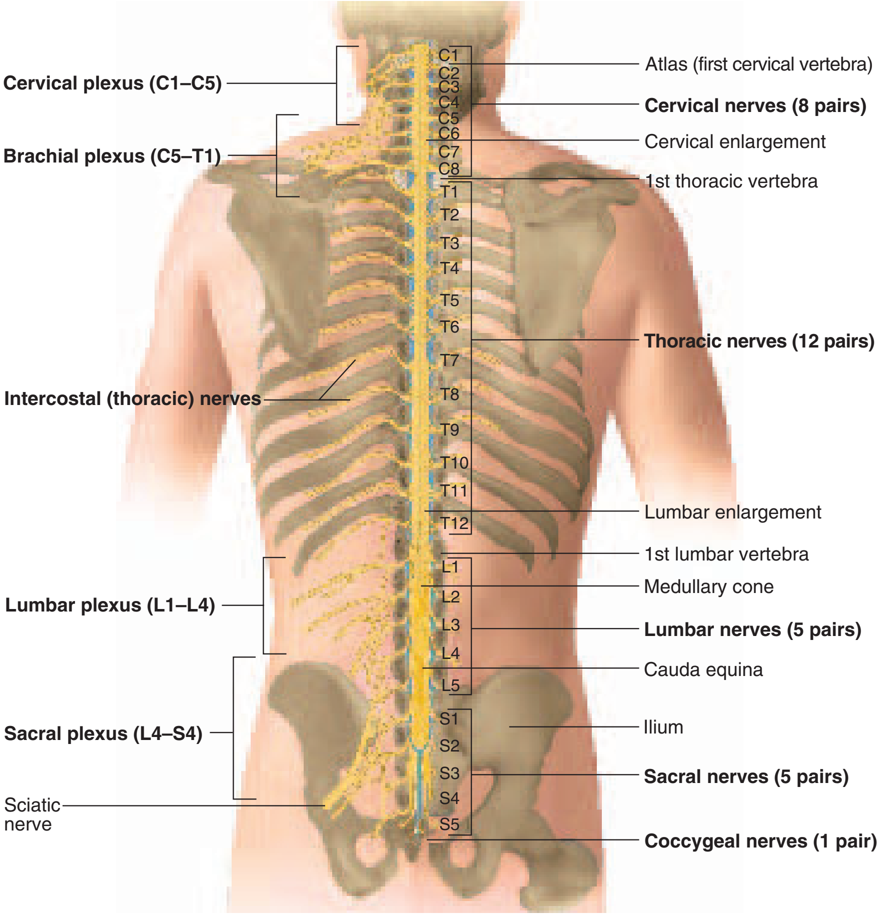

Cervical plexus (C1–C5)
Brachial plexus (C5–T1)
Intercostal (thoracic) nerves
Lumbar plexus (L1–L4)
Sacral plexus (L4–S4)
Sciatic nerve
C1
C2
C3
C4
C5
C6
C7
C8
T1
T2
T3
T4
T5
T6
T7
T8
T9
T10
T11
T12
L1
L2
L3
L4
L5
S1
S2
S3
S4
S5
Atlas (first cervical vertebra)
Cervical nerves (8 pairs)
Cervical enlargement
1st thoracic vertebra
Thoracic nerves (12 pairs)
Lumbar enlargement
1st lumbar vertebra
Medullary cone
Lumbar nerves (5 pairs)
Cauda equina
Ilium
Sacral nerves (5 pairs)
Coccygeal nerves (1 pair)

Figure 13.10 **The Spinal Nerve Roots and Plexuses, Dorsal View.**

Nerve Plexuses

Except in the thoracic region, the ventral rami branch and anastomose (merge) repeatedly to form five weblike nerve plexuses: the small **cervical plexus** deep in the neck, the **brachial plexus** near the shoulder, the **lumbar plexus** of the lower back, the **sacral plexus** immediately inferior to this, and finally the tiny **coccygeal plexus** adjacent to the lower sacrum and coccyx. A general view of these plexuses is shown in figure 13.10; they are illustrated and described in tables 13.3 through 13.6. The muscle actions controlled by these nerves are described in the muscle tables in chapter 10.

Insight 13.4 Clinical Application

Spinal Nerve Injuries

The radial and sciatic nerves are especially vulnerable to injury. The radial nerve, which passes through the axilla, may be compressed against the humerus by improperly adjusted crutches, causing *crutch paralysis.* A similar injury often resulted from the now-discredited practice of trying to correct a dislocated shoulder by putting a foot in a person's armpit and pulling on the arm. One consequence of radial nerve injury is *wrist drop*—the fingers, hand, and wrist are chronically flexed because the extensor muscles supplied by the radial nerve are paralyzed.

Because of its position and length, the sciatic nerve of the hip and thigh is the most vulnerable nerve in the body. Trauma to this nerve produces *sciatica,* a sharp pain that travels from the gluteal region along the posterior side of the thigh and leg as far as the ankle. Ninety percent of cases result from a herniated intervertebral disc or osteoarthritis of the lower spine, but sciatica can also be caused by pressure from a pregnant uterus, dislocation of the hip, injections in the wrong area of the buttock, or sitting for a long time on the edge of a hard chair. Men sometimes suffer sciatica from the habit of sitting on a wallet carried in the hip pocket.

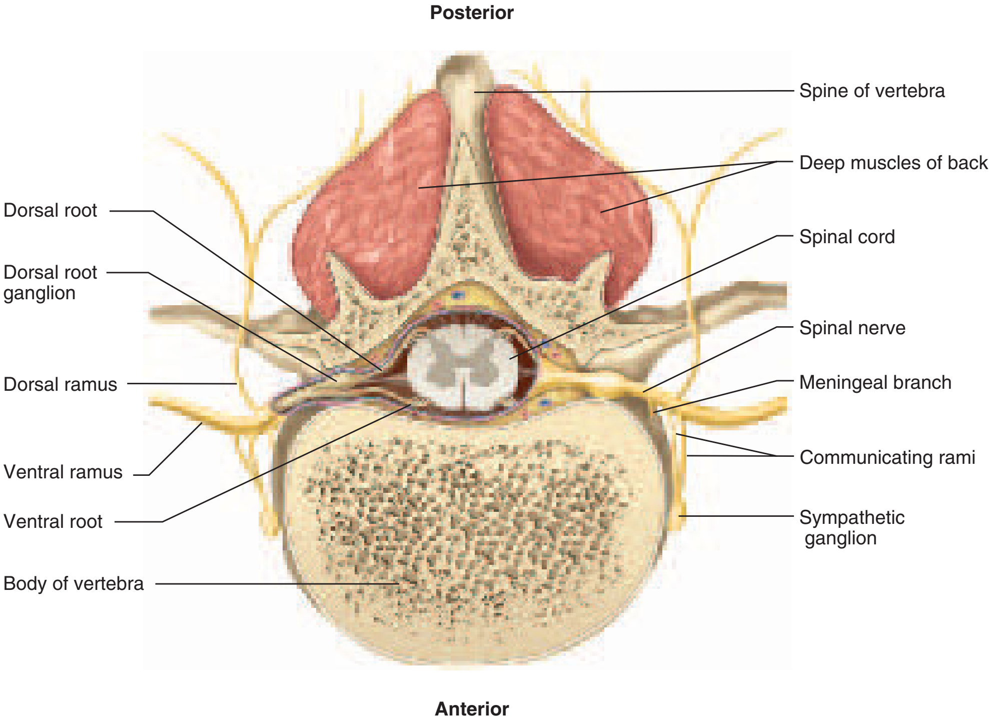

Posterior
Spine of vertebra
Deep muscles of back
Dorsal root
Spinal cord
Dorsal root ganglion
Spinal nerve
Dorsal ramus
Meningeal branch
Communicating rami
Ventral ramus
Sympathetic ganglion
Ventral root
Body of vertebra
Anterior

Figure 13.11 **Branches of a Spinal Nerve in Relation to the Spinal Cord and Vertebra (cross section).**

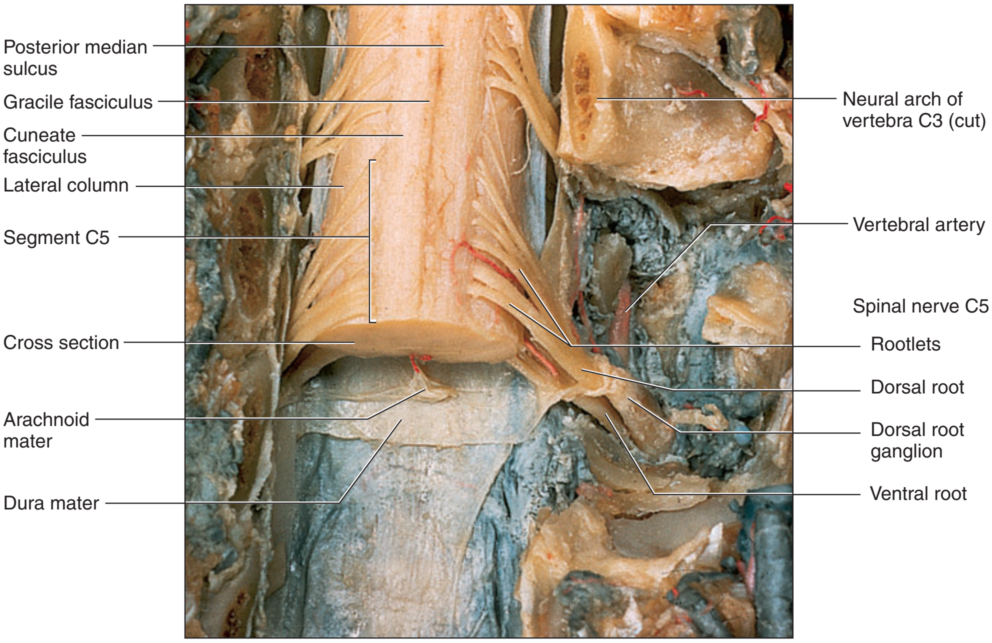

Posterior median sulcus
Gracile fasciculus
Cuneate fasciculus
Lateral column
Segment C5
Cross section
Arachnoid mater
Dura mater
Neural arch of vertebra C3 (cut)
Vertebral artery
Spinal nerve C5
Rootlets
Dorsal root
Dorsal root ganglion
Ventral root

Figure 13.12 **The Point of Entry of Two Spinal Nerves into the Spinal Cord.** Dorsal view with vertebrae cut away. Note that each dorsal root divides into several rootlets that enter the spinal cord. A segment of the spinal cord is the portion receiving all the rootlets of one spinal nerve.
In the labeled rootlets of spinal nerve C5, are the nerve fibers afferent or efferent? How do you know?

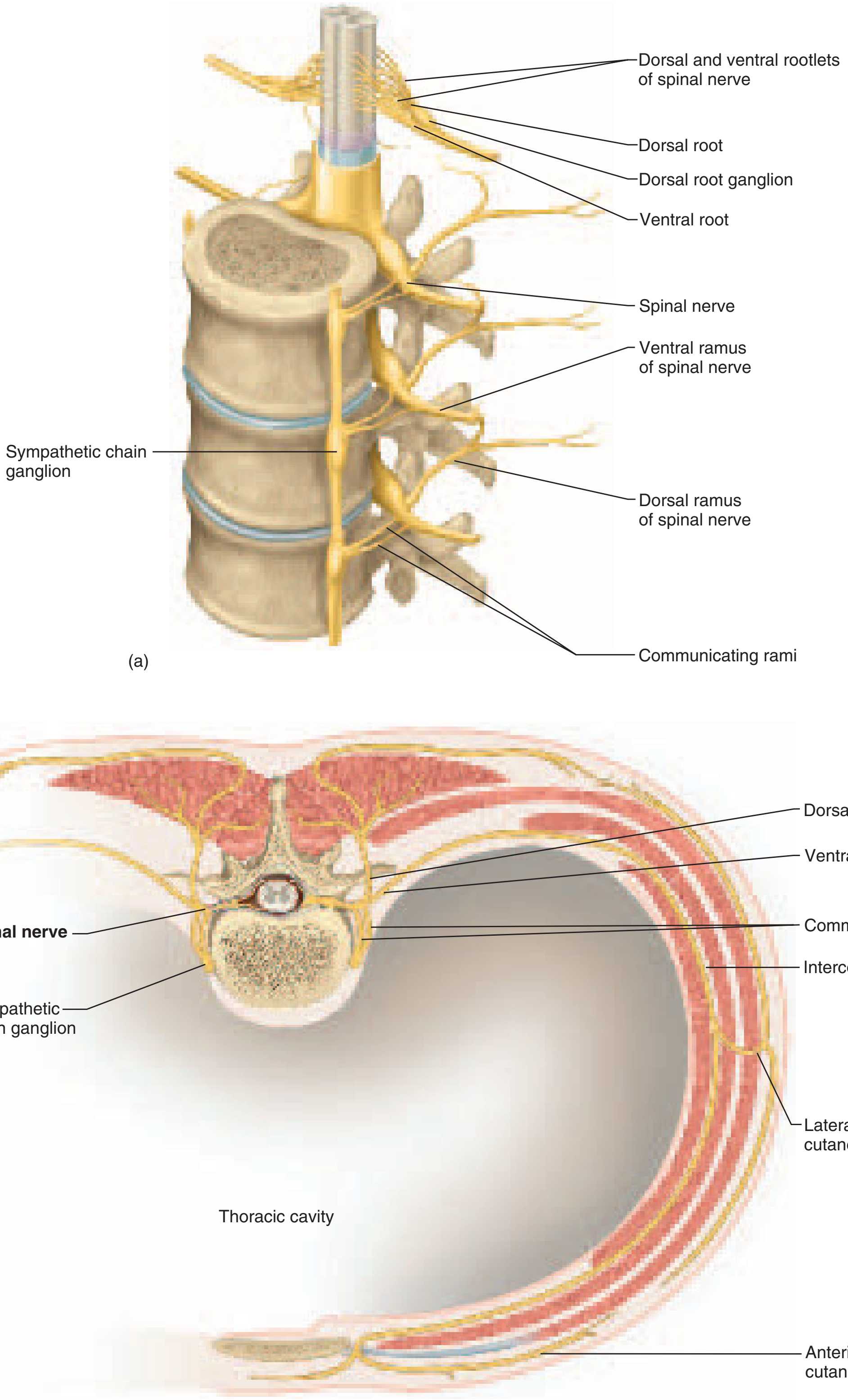

Dorsal and ventral rootlets of spinal nerve
Dorsal root
Dorsal root ganglion
Ventral root
Spinal nerve
Ventral ramus of spinal nerve
Sympathetic chain ganglion
Dorsal ramus of spinal nerve
Communicating rami
(a)
Dorsal ramus
Ventral ramus
Spinal nerve
Communicating rami
Intercostal nerve
Sympathetic chain ganglion
Lateral cutaneous nerve
Thoracic cavity
Anterior cutaneous nerve
(b)

Figure 13.13 **Rami of the Spinal Nerves.** (*a*) Anterolateral view of the spinal nerves and their subdivisions in relation to the spinal cord and vertebrae. (*b*) Cross section of the thorax showing innervation of muscles of the chest and back.

Table 13.3 The Cervical Plexus

The cervical plexus (fig. 13.14) receives fibers from the ventral rami of nerves C1 to C5 and gives rise to the nerves listed, in order from superior to inferior. The most important of these are the *phrenic*[21] *nerves,* which travel down each side of the mediastinum, innervate the diaphragm, and play an essential role in breathing. In addition to the major nerves listed here, there are several motor branches that innervate the geniohyoid, thyrohyoid, scalene, levator scapulae, trapezius, and sternocleidomastoid muscles.

Lesser Occipital Nerve

Composition: Somatosensory

Innervation: Skin of lateral scalp and dorsal part of external ear

Great Auricular Nerve

Composition: Somatosensory

Innervation: Skin of and around external ear

Transverse Cervical Nerve

Composition: Somatosensory

Innervation: Skin of ventral and lateral aspect of neck

Ansa Cervicalis

Composition: Motor

Innervation: Omohyoid, sternohyoid, and sternothyroid muscles

Supraclavicular Nerve

Composition: Somatosensory

Innervation: Skin of lower ventral and lateral neck, shoulder, and ventral chest

Phrenic (FREN-ic) Nerve

Composition: Motor

Innervation: Diaphragm

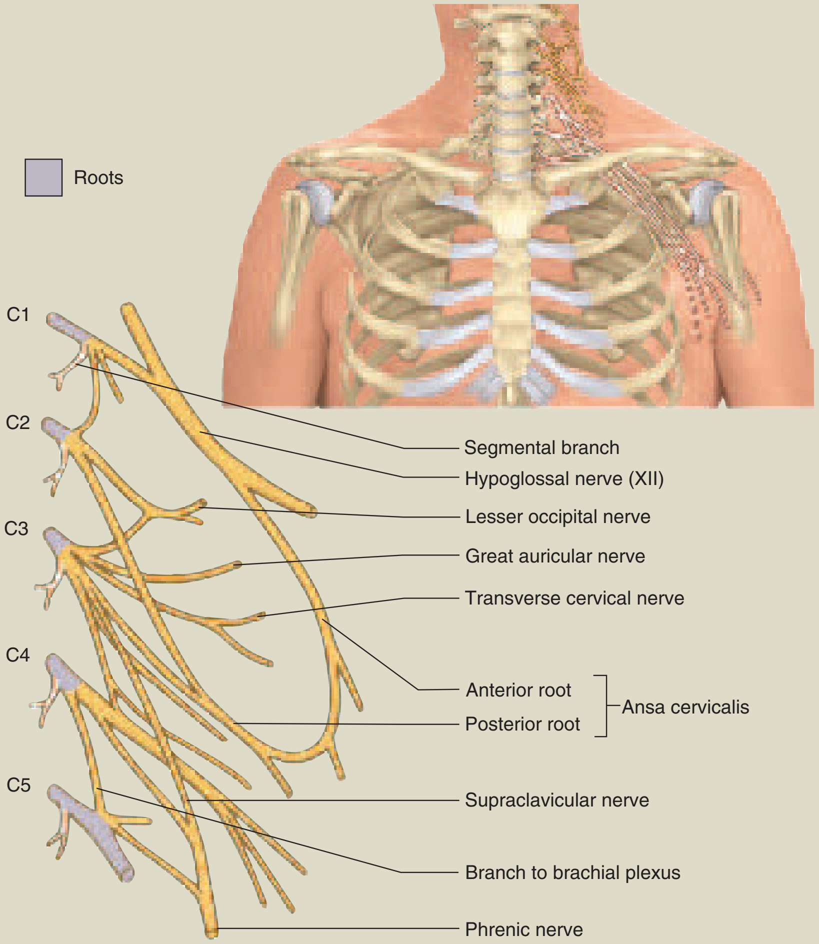

Roots
C1
C2
C3
C4
C5
Segmental branch
Hypoglossal nerve (XII)
Lesser occipital nerve
Great auricular nerve
Transverse cervical nerve
Anterior root
Posterior root
Ansa cervicalis
Supraclavicular nerve
Branch to brachial plexus
Phrenic nerve

Figure 13.14 The Cervical Plexus.

---

[21] *phren* = diaphragm

Table 13.4 The Brachial Plexus

The brachial plexus (figs. 13.15 and 13.16) is formed by the ventral rami of nerves C4 to T2. It passes over the first rib into the axilla and innervates the upper limb and some muscles of the neck and shoulder. It gives rise to nerves for cutaneous sensation, muscle contraction, and proprioception from the joints and muscles.

The subdivisions of this plexus are called *roots, trunks, divisions,* and *cords* (color-coded in figure 13.15). The five **roots** are the ventral rami of nerves C5 to T1, which provide most of the fibers to this plexus (C4 and T2 contribute partially). The five roots unite to form the **upper, middle,** and **lower trunks.** Each trunk divides into an **anterior** and **posterior division,** and finally the six divisions merge to form three large fiber bundles—the **posterior, medial,** and **lateral cords.**

Axillary Nerve

Composition: Motor and somatosensory

Origin: Posterior cord of brachial plexus

Sensory innervation: Skin of lateral shoulder and arm; shoulder joint

Motor innervation: Deltoid and teres minor

Radial Nerve

Composition: Motor and somatosensory

Origin: Posterior cord of brachial plexus

Sensory innervation: Skin of posterior aspect of arm, forearm, and wrist; joints of elbow, wrist, and hand

Motor innervation: Muscles of posterior arm and forearm: triceps brachii, supinator, anconeus, brachioradialis, extensor carpi radialis brevis, extensor carpi radialis longus, and extensor carpi ulnaris

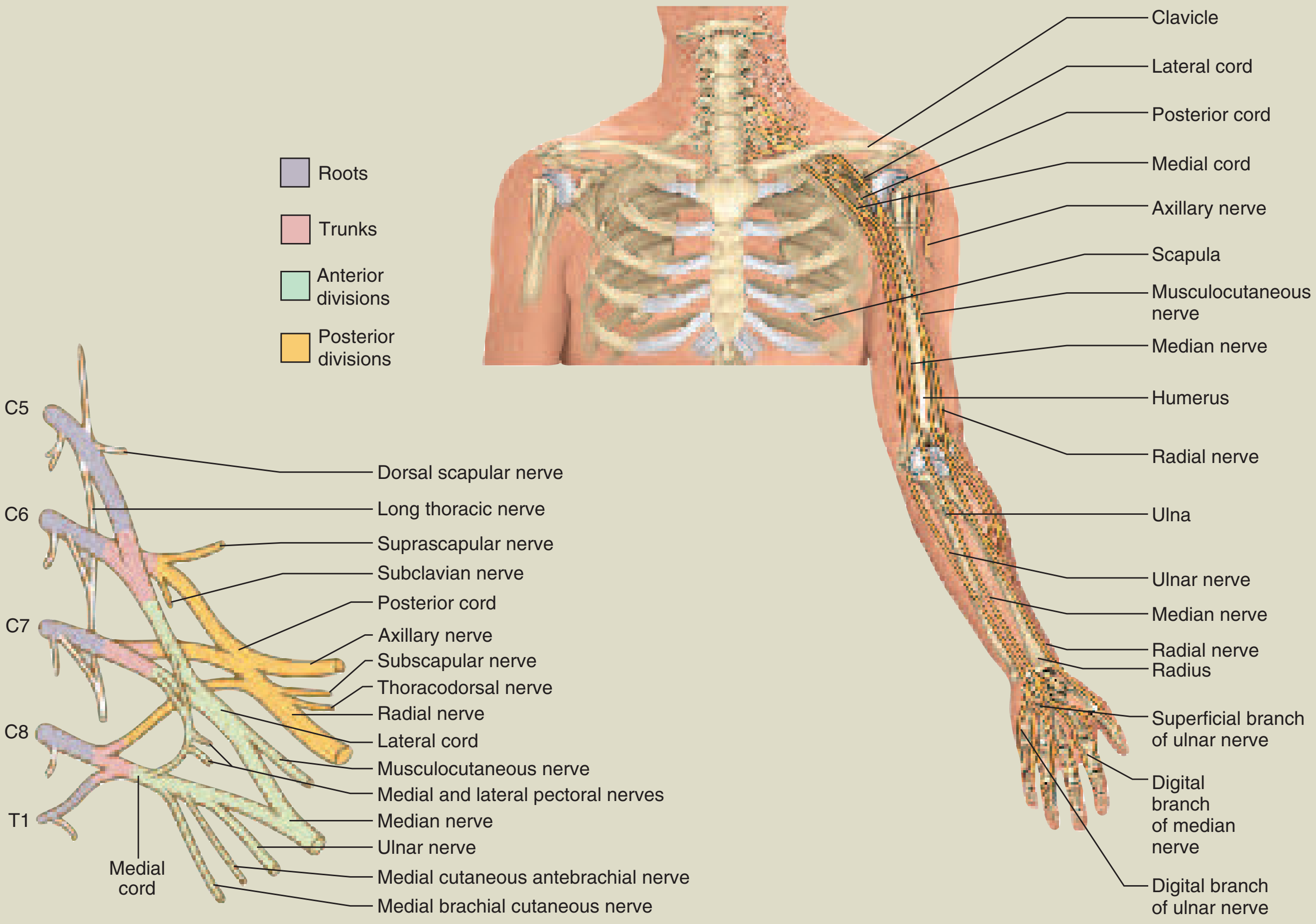

Roots
Trunks
Anterior divisions
Posterior divisions
C5
C6
C7
C8
T1
Medial cord
Dorsal scapular nerve
Long thoracic nerve
Suprascapular nerve
Subclavian nerve
Posterior cord
Axillary nerve
Subscapular nerve
Thoracodorsal nerve
Radial nerve
Lateral cord
Musculocutaneous nerve
Medial and lateral pectoral nerves
Median nerve
Ulnar nerve
Medial cutaneous antebrachial nerve
Medial brachial cutaneous nerve
Clavicle
Lateral cord
Posterior cord
Medial cord
Axillary nerve
Scapula
Musculocutaneous nerve
Median nerve
Humerus
Radial nerve
Ulna
Ulnar nerve
Median nerve
Radial nerve
Radius
Superficial branch of ulnar nerve
Digital branch of median nerve
Digital branch of ulnar nerve

Figure 13.15 The Brachial Plexus.

(continued)

Table 13.4 The Brachial Plexus (continued)

Musculocutaneous Nerve

Composition: Motor and somatosensory

Origin: Lateral cord of brachial plexus

Sensory innervation: Skin of lateral aspect of forearm

Motor innervation: Muscles of anterior arm: coracobrachialis, biceps brachii, and brachialis

Median Nerve

Composition: Motor and somatosensory

Origin: Medial cord of brachial plexus

Sensory innervation: Skin of lateral two-thirds of hand, joints of hand

Motor innervation: Flexors of anterior forearm; thenar muscles; first and second lumbricals

Ulnar Nerve

Composition: Motor and somatosensory

Origin: Medial cord of brachial plexus

Sensory innervation: Skin of medial part of hand; joints of hand

Motor innervation: Flexor carpi ulnaris, flexor digitorum profundus, adductor pollicis, hypothenar muscles, interosseous muscles, and third and fourth lumbricals

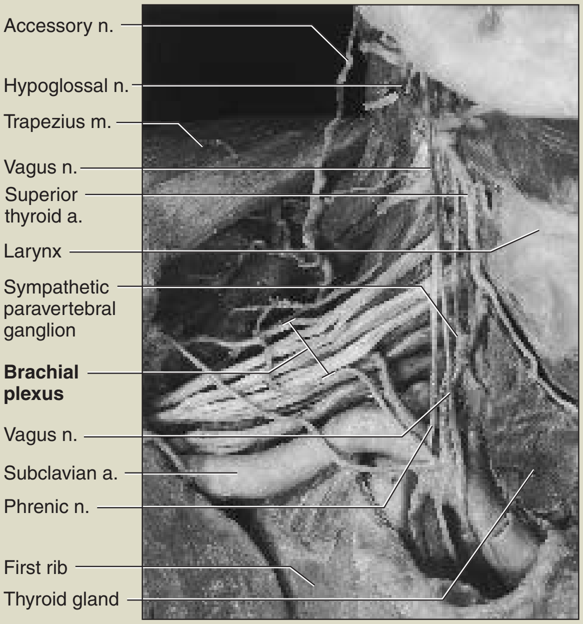

Accessory n.
Hypoglossal n.
Trapezius m.
Vagus n.
Superior thyroid a.
Larynx
Sympathetic paravertebral ganglion
Brachial plexus
Vagus n.
Subclavian a.
Phrenic n.
First rib
Thyroid gland

Figure 13.16 **Photograph of the Brachial Plexus.** Anterior view of the right shoulder, also showing three of the cranial nerves, the sympathetic trunk, and the phrenic nerve (a branch of the cervical plexus). Most of the other structures resembling nerves in this photograph are blood vessels. (*a.* = artery; *m.* = muscle; *n.* = nerve.)

Table 13.5 The Lumbar Plexus

The lumbar plexus (fig. 13.17) is formed from the ventral rami of nerves L1 to L4 and some fibers from T12. With only five roots and two divisions, it is less complex than the brachial plexus.

Iliohypogastric Nerve

Composition: Motor and somatosensory

Sensory innervation: Skin of anterior abdominal wall

Motor innervation: Internal and external obliques and transversus abdominis

Ilioinguinal Nerve

Composition: Motor and somatosensory

Sensory innervation: Skin of upper medial thigh; male scrotum and root of penis; female labia majora

Motor innervation: Joins iliohypogastric nerve and innervates the same muscles

Genitofemoral Nerve

Composition: Somatosensory

Sensory innervation: Skin of middle anterior thigh; male scrotum and cremaster muscle; female labia majora

Lateral Femoral Cutaneous Nerve

Composition: Somatosensory

Sensory innervation: Skin of lateral aspect of thigh

Femoral Nerve

Composition: Motor and somatosensory

Sensory innervation: Skin of anterior and lateral thigh; medial leg and foot

Motor innervation: Anterior muscles of thigh and extensors of leg; iliacus, psoas major, pectineus, quadriceps femoris, and sartorius

Saphenous (sah-FEE-nus) Nerve

Composition: Somatosensory

Sensory innervation: Skin of medial aspect of leg and foot; knee joint

Obturator Nerve

Composition: Motor and somatosensory

Sensory innervation: Skin of superior medial thigh; hip and knee joints

Motor innervation: Adductor muscles of leg: external obturator, pectineus, adductor longus, adductor brevis, adductor magnus, and gracilis

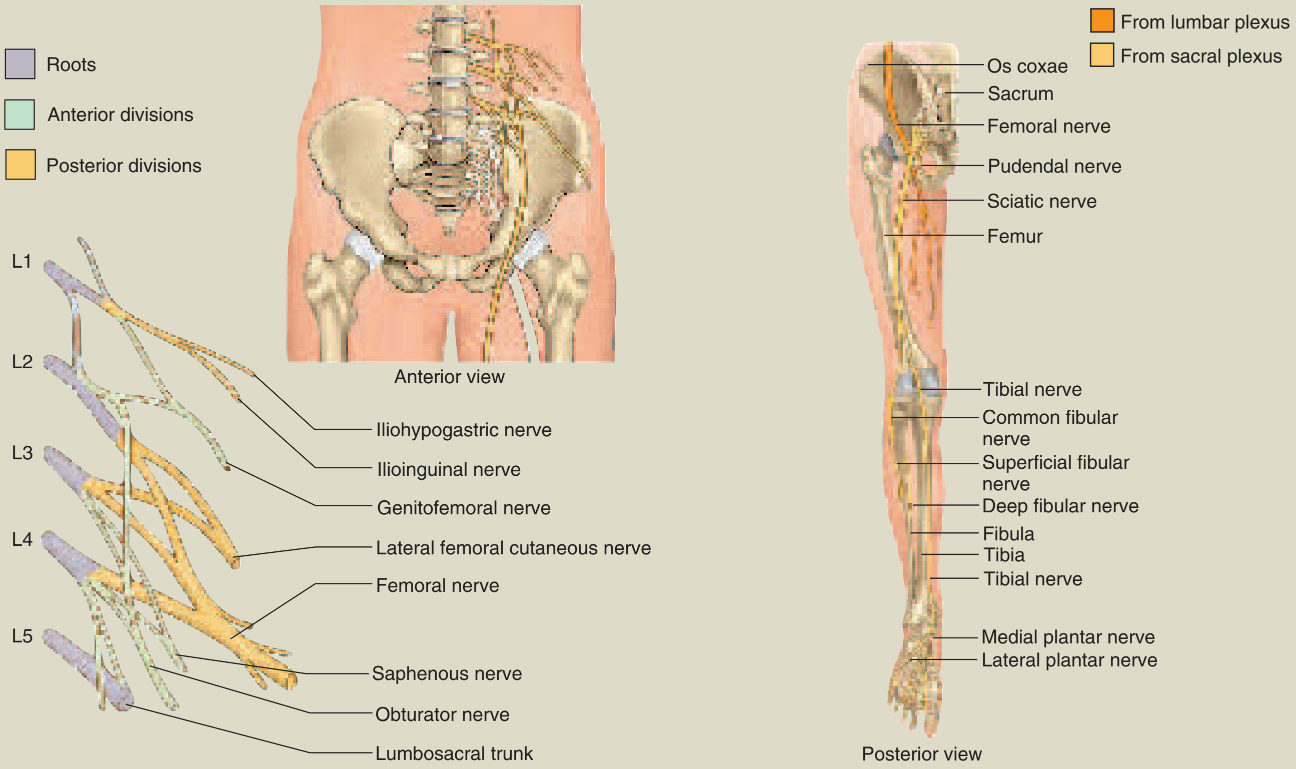

Roots
Anterior divisions
Posterior divisions
L1
L2
L3
L4
L5
Anterior view
Iliohypogastric nerve
Ilioinguinal nerve
Genitofemoral nerve
Lateral femoral cutaneous nerve
Femoral nerve
Saphenous nerve
Obturator nerve
Lumbosacral trunk
From lumbar plexus
From sacral plexus
Os coxae
Sacrum
Femoral nerve
Pudendal nerve
Sciatic nerve
Femur
Tibial nerve
Common fibular nerve
Superficial fibular nerve
Deep fibular nerve
Fibula
Tibia
Tibial nerve
Medial plantar nerve
Lateral plantar nerve
Posterior view

Figure 13.17 The Lumbar Plexus.

Table 13.6 The Sacral and Coccygeal Plexuses

The sacral plexus is formed from the ventral rami of nerves L4, L5, and S1 to S4. It has six roots and anterior and posterior divisions. Since it is connected to the lumbar plexus by fibers that run through the *lumbosacral trunk,* the two plexuses are sometimes referred to collectively as the *lumbosacral plexus.* The coccygeal plexus is a tiny plexus formed from the ventral rami of S4, S5, and Co (fig. 13.18).

The *tibial* and *common fibular nerves* listed in this table travel together through a connective tissue sheath; they are referred to collectively as the **sciatic** (sy-AT-ic) **nerve.** The sciatic nerve passes through the greater sciatic notch of the pelvis, extends for the length of the thigh, and ends at the popliteal fossa. Here, the tibial and common fibular nerves diverge and follow their separate paths into the leg. The sciatic nerve is a common focus of injury and pain.

Superior Gluteal Nerve

Composition: Motor

Motor innervation: Gluteus minimus, gluteus medius, and tensor fasciae latae

Inferior Gluteal Nerve

Composition: Motor

Motor innervation: Gluteus maximus

Nerve to Piriformis

Composition: Motor

Motor innervation: Piriformis

Nerve to Quadratus Femoris

Composition: Motor and somatosensory

Sensory innervation: Hip joint

Motor innervation: Quadratus femoris and gemellus inferior

Nerve to Internal Obturator

Composition: Motor

Motor innervation: Internal obturator and gemellus superior

Perforating Cutaneous Nerve

Composition: Somatosensory

Sensory innervation: Skin of posterior aspect of buttock

Posterior Cutaneous Nerve

Composition: Somatosensory

Sensory innervation: Skin of lower lateral buttock, anal region, upper posterior thigh, upper calf, scrotum, and labia majora

Tibial Nerve

Composition: Motor and somatosensory

Sensory innervation: Skin of posterior leg and sole of foot; knee and foot joints

Motor innervation: Semitendinosus, semimembranosus, long head of biceps femoris, gastrocnemius, soleus, flexor digitorum longus, flexor hallucis longus, tibialis posterior, popliteus, and intrinsic muscles of foot

(continued)

Table 13.6 The Sacral and Coccygeal Plexuses (continued)

Common Fibular (peroneal) Nerve

Composition: Motor and somatosensory

Sensory innervation: Skin of anterior distal one-third of leg, dorsum of foot, and toes I and II; knee joint

Motor innervation: Short head of biceps femoris, fibularis tertius, fibularis brevis, fibularis longus, tibialis anterior, extensor hallucis longus, extensor digitorum longus, and extensor digitorum brevis

Pudendal Nerve

Composition: Motor and somatosensory

Sensory innervation: Skin of penis and scrotum of male; clitoris, labia majora and minora, and lower vagina of female

Motor innervation: Muscles of perineum

Coccygeal Nerve

Composition: Motor and somatosensory

Sensory innervation: Skin over coccyx

Motor innervation: Muscles of pelvic floor

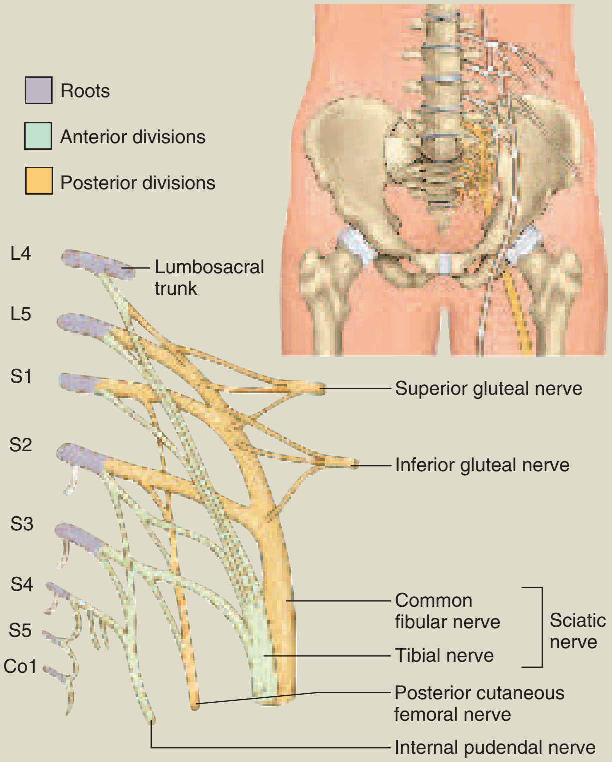

Roots
Anterior divisions
Posterior divisions
L4
L5
S1
S2
S3
S4
S5
Co1
Lumbosacral trunk
Superior gluteal nerve
Inferior gluteal nerve
Common fibular nerve
Tibial nerve
Sciatic nerve
Posterior cutaneous femoral nerve
Internal pudendal nerve

Figure 13.18 The Sacral and Coccygeal Plexuses.

Cutaneous Innervation and Dermatomes

Each spinal nerve except C1 receives sensory input from a specific area of skin called a **dermatome.**[22] A *dermatome map* (fig. 13.19) is a diagram of the cutaneous regions innervated by each spinal nerve. Such a map is oversimplified, however, because the dermatomes overlap at their edges by as much as 50%. Therefore, severance of one sensory nerve root does not entirely deaden sensation from a dermatome. It is necessary to sever or anesthetize three successive spinal nerves to produce a total loss of sensation from one dermatome. Spinal nerve damage is assessed by testing the dermatomes with pinpricks and noting areas in which the patient has no sensation.

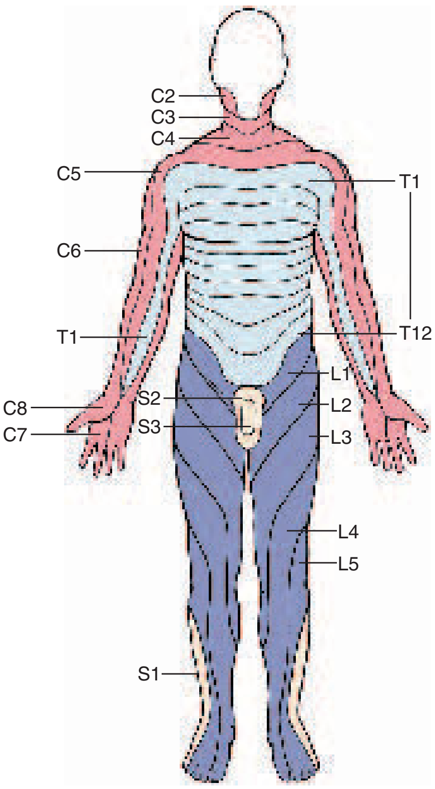


Figure 13.19 A Dermatome Map of the Anterior Aspect of the Body. Each zone of the skin is innervated by sensory branches of the spinal nerves indicated by the labels. Nerve C1 does not innervate the skin.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

5. What is meant by the dorsal and ventral roots of a spinal nerve? Which of these is sensory and which is motor?
6. Where are the somas of the dorsal root located? Where are the somas of the ventral root?
7. List the five plexuses of spinal nerves and state where each one is located.
8. State which plexus gives rise to each of the following nerves: axillary, ilioinguinal, obturator, phrenic, pudendal, radial, and sciatic.

Somatic Reflexes

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- define *reflex* and explain how reflexes differ from other motor actions;
- describe the general components of a typical reflex arc; and
- explain how the basic types of somatic reflexes function.

Most of us have had our reflexes tested with a little rubber hammer; a tap near the knee produces an uncontrollable jerk of the leg, for example. In this section, we discuss what reflexes are and how they are produced by an assembly of receptors, neurons, and effectors. We also survey the different types of neuromuscular reflexes and how they are important to motor coordination.

The Nature of Reflexes

Reflexes are quick, involuntary, stereotyped reactions of glands or muscles to stimulation. This definition sums up four important properties of a reflex:

1. Reflexes *require stimulation*—they are not spontaneous actions but responses to sensory input.
2. Reflexes are *quick*—they generally involve few if any interneurons and minimum synaptic delay.
3. Reflexes are *involuntary*—they occur without intent, often without our awareness, and they are difficult to suppress. Given an adequate stimulus, the response is essentially automatic. You may become conscious of the stimulus that evoked a reflex, and this awareness may enable you to correct or avoid a potentially dangerous situation, but awareness is not a part of the reflex itself. It may come after the reflex action has been completed, and somatic reflexes can occur even if the spinal cord has been severed so that no stimuli reach the brain.
4. Reflexes are *stereotyped*—they occur in essentially the same way every time; the response is very predictable.

---

[22] *derma* = skin + *tome* = segment, part

Reflexes include glandular secretion and contractions of all three types of muscle. They also include some learned responses, such as the salivation of dogs in response to a sound they have come to associate with feeding time, first studied by Ivan Pavlov and named *conditioned reflexes.* In this section, however, we are concerned with unlearned skeletal muscle reflexes that are mediated by the brainstem and spinal cord. They result in the involuntary contraction of a muscle—for example, the quick withdrawal of your hand from a hot stove or the lifting of your foot when you step on something sharp. These are **somatic reflexes,** since they involve the somatic nervous system. Chapter 15 concerns *visceral reflexes.* The somatic reflexes have traditionally been called *spinal reflexes,* although some visceral reflexes also involve the spinal cord, and some somatic reflexes are mediated more by the brain than by the spinal cord.

A somatic reflex employs a **reflex arc,** in which signals travel along the following pathway:

1. *somatic receptors* in the skin, a muscle, or a tendon;
2. *afferent nerve fibers,* which carry information from these receptors into the dorsal horn of the spinal cord;
3. *interneurons,* which integrate information; these are lacking from some reflex arcs;
4. *efferent nerve fibers,* which carry motor impulses to the skeletal muscles; and
5. *skeletal muscles,* the somatic effectors that carry out the response.

The Muscle Spindle

Many somatic reflexes involve stretch receptors in the muscles called **muscle spindles.** These are among the body's **proprioceptors**—sense organs that monitor the position and movements of body parts. Muscle spindles are especially abundant in muscles that require fine control. The hand and foot have 100 or more spindles per gram of muscle, whereas there are relatively few in large muscles with coarse movements and none at all in the middle-ear muscles. Muscle spindles provide the cerebellum with the feedback it needs to regulate the tension in the skeletal muscles.

Muscle spindles are about 4 to 10 mm long, tapered at the ends, and scattered throughout the fleshy part of a muscle (fig. 13.20). A spindle contains 3 to 12 modified muscle fibers and a few nerve fibers, all wrapped in a fibrous capsule. The muscle fibers within a spindle are called **intrafusal**[23] **fibers,** while those of the rest of the muscle are called **extrafusal fibers.** Only the two ends of an intrafusal fiber have sarcomeres and are able to contract. The middle portion acts as the stretch receptor. There are two classes of intrafusal fibers: *nuclear chain fibers,* which have a single file of nuclei in the noncontractile region, and *nuclear bag fibers,* which are about twice as long and have nuclei clustered in a thick midregion.

Muscle spindles have three types of nerve fibers:

1. **Primary afferent fibers,** which end in *annulospiral endings* that coil around the middle of nuclear chain and nuclear bag fibers. These respond mainly to the onset of muscle stretch.
2. **Secondary afferent fibers,** which have *flower-spray endings,* somewhat resembling the dried head of a wildflower, wrapped primarily around the ends of the nuclear chain fibers. These respond mainly to prolonged stretch.
3. **Gamma (γ) motor neurons,** which originate in the ventral horn of the spinal cord and lead to the contractile ends of the intrafusal fibers. The name distinguishes them from the **alpha (α) motor neurons,** which innervate the extrafusal fibers. Gamma motor neurons adjust the tension in a muscle spindle to variations in the length of the muscle. When a muscle shortens, the γ motor neurons stimulate the ends of the intrafusal fibers to contract slightly. This keeps the intrafusal fibers taut and responsive at all times. Without this feedback, the spindles would become flabby when a skeletal muscle shortened. This feedback is clearly very important, because γ motor neurons constitute about one-third of all the motor fibers in a spinal nerve.

The Stretch Reflex

When a muscle is stretched, it "fights back"—it contracts, maintains increased tonus, and feels stiffer than an unstretched muscle. This response, called the **stretch (myotatic**[24]**) reflex,** helps to maintain equilibrium and posture. For example, if your head starts to tip forward, it stretches muscles such as the semispinalis and splenius capitis of the nuchal region (back of your neck). This stimulates their muscle spindles, which send afferent signals to the cerebellum by way of the brainstem. The cerebellum integrates this information and relays it to the cerebral cortex, and the cortex sends signals back to the nuchal muscles. The muscles contract and raise your head.

Stretch reflexes often feed back not to a single muscle but to a set of synergists and antagonists. Since the contraction of a muscle on one side of a joint stretches the antagonistic muscle on the other side, the flexion of a joint triggers a stretch reflex in the extensors, and extension

---

[23] *intra* = within + *fus* = spindle

[24] *myo* = muscle + *tat* (from *tasis*) = stretch

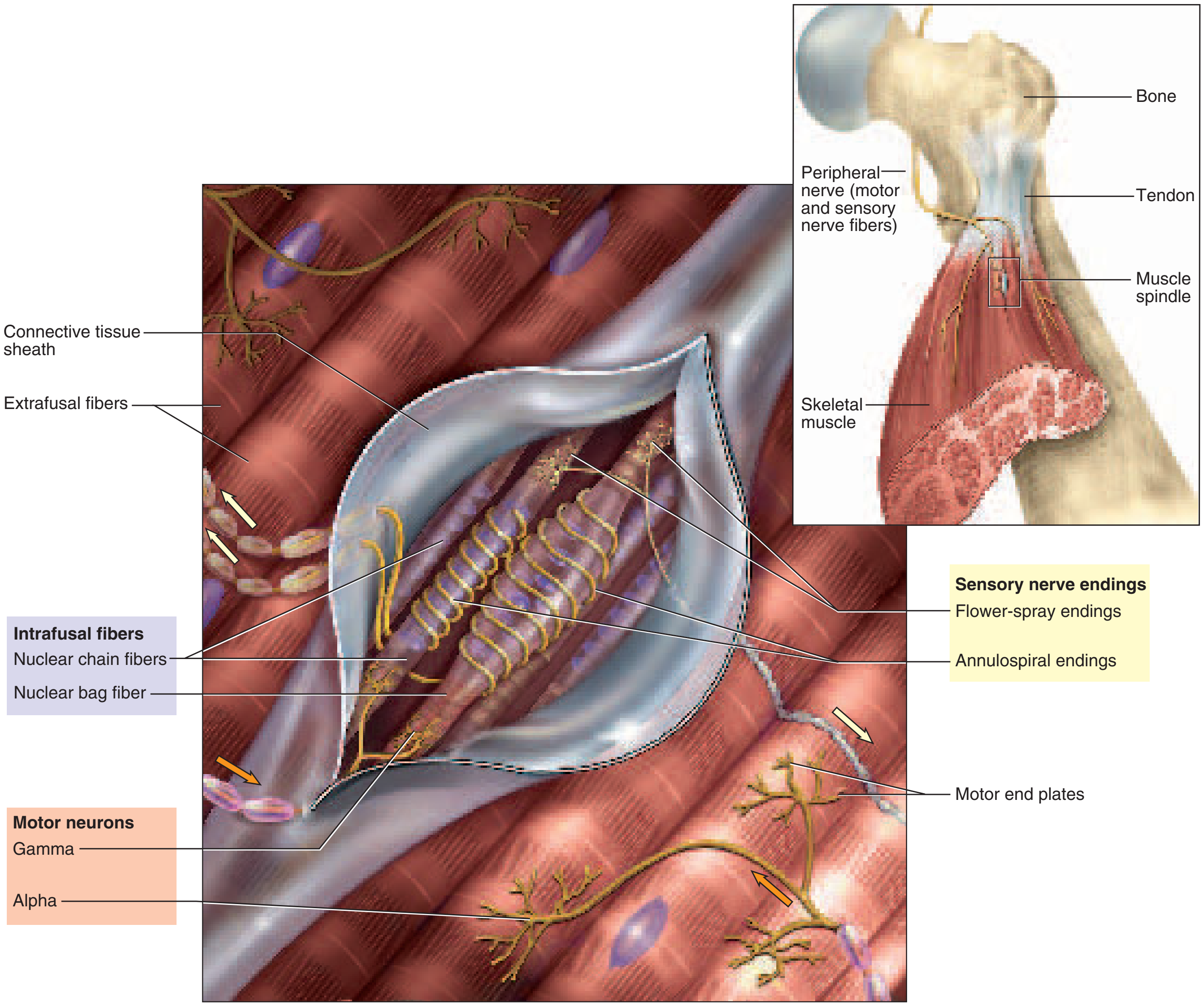

Bone
Tendon
Peripheral nerve (motor and sensory nerve fibers)
Muscle spindle
Skeletal muscle
Connective tissue sheath
Extrafusal fibers
Sensory nerve endings
Flower-spray endings
Annulospiral endings
Intrafusal fibers
Nuclear chain fibers
Nuclear bag fiber
Motor end plates
Motor neurons
Gamma
Alpha

Figure 13.20 **A Muscle Spindle and Its Innervation.**

stimulates a stretch reflex in the flexors. Consequently, stretch reflexes are valuable in stabilizing joints by balancing the tension of the extensors and flexors. They also dampen (smooth) muscle action. Without stretch reflexes, a person's movements tend to be jerky. Stretch reflexes are especially important in coordinating vigorous and precise movements such as dance.

A stretch reflex is mediated primarily by the brain and is not, therefore, strictly a spinal reflex, but a weak component of it is spinal and occurs even if the spinal cord is severed from the brain. The spinal component can be more pronounced if a muscle is stretched very suddenly. This occurs in a **tendon reflex**—the reflexive contraction of a muscle when its tendon is tapped, as in the familiar knee-jerk (patellar) reflex. Tapping the patellar ligament with a reflex hammer suddenly stretches the quadriceps femoris muscle of the thigh (fig. 13.21). This stimulates numerous muscle spindles in the quadriceps and sends an intense volley of signals to the spinal cord, mainly by way of primary afferent fibers.

In the spinal cord, the primary afferent fibers synapse directly with the α motor neurons that return to the muscle, thus forming **monosynaptic reflex arcs.** That is, there is only one synapse between the afferent and efferent neuron, therefore little synaptic delay and a very

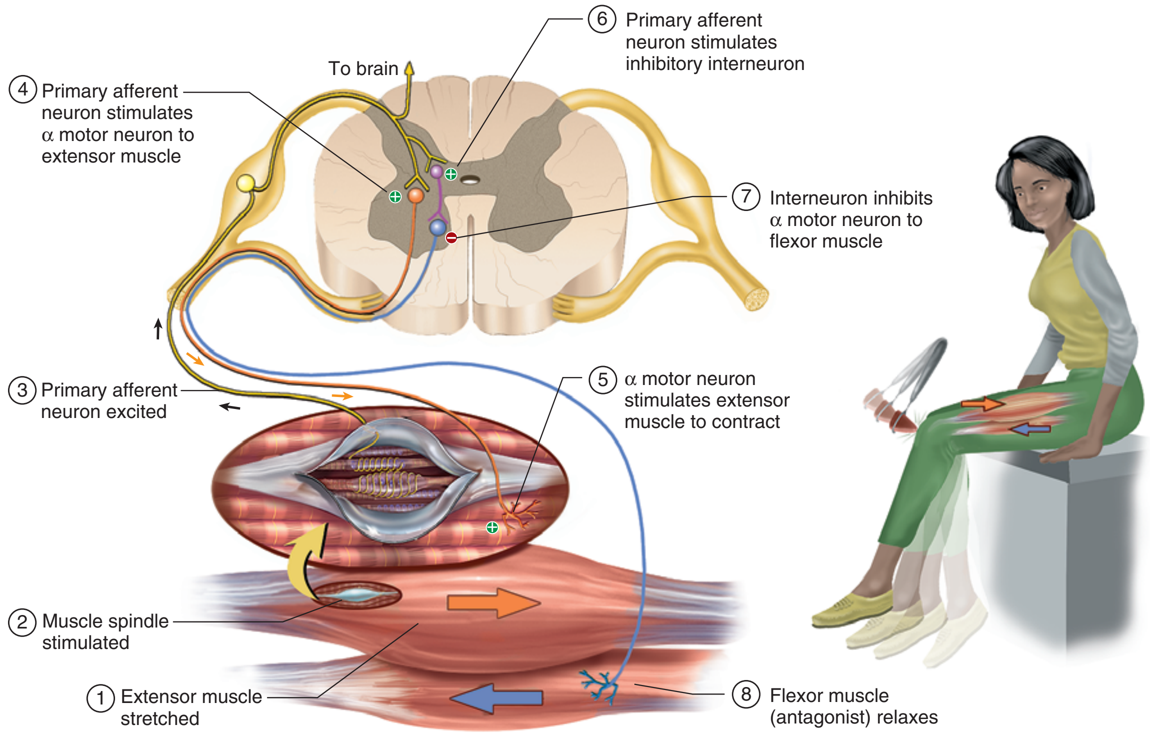

To brain
④ Primary afferent neuron stimulates α motor neuron to extensor muscle
⑥ Primary afferent neuron stimulates inhibitory interneuron
⑦ Interneuron inhibits α motor neuron to flexor muscle
③ Primary afferent neuron excited
⑤ α motor neuron stimulates extensor muscle to contract
② Muscle spindle stimulated
① Extensor muscle stretched
⑧ Flexor muscle (antagonist) relaxes

Figure 13.21 The Patellar Tendon Reflex Arc and Reciprocal Inhibition of the Antagonistic Muscle. *Plus* signs indicate excitation of a postsynaptic cell (EPSPs) and *minus* signs indicate inhibition (IPSPs). The tendon reflex is occurring in the quadriceps femoris muscle (*red arrow*), while the hamstring muscles are exhibiting reciprocal inhibition (*blue arrow*) so they do not contract and oppose the quadriceps.

Why is no IPSP shown at point 8 if the contraction of this muscle is being inhibited?

prompt response. The α motor neurons excite the quadriceps muscle, making it contract and creating the knee jerk.

There are many other tendon reflexes. A tap on the calcaneal tendon causes plantar flexion of the foot, a tap on the triceps brachii tendon causes extension of the elbow, and a tap on the cheek causes clenching of the jaw. Testing somatic reflexes is valuable in diagnosing many diseases that cause exaggeration, inhibition, or absence of reflexes, such as neurosyphilis, diabetes mellitus, multiple sclerosis, alcoholism, electrolyte imbalances, and lesions of the nervous system.

Stretch reflexes and other muscle contractions often depend on **reciprocal inhibition,** a reflex phenomenon that prevents muscles from working against each other by inhibiting antagonists. In the knee jerk, for example, the quadriceps femoris would not produce much joint movement if its antagonists, the hamstring muscles, contracted at the same time. But reciprocal inhibition prevents that from happening. Some branches of the sensory fibers from the muscle spindles in the quadriceps stimulate spinal cord interneurons which, in turn, inhibit the α motor neurons of the hamstring muscles (fig. 13.21). The hamstring muscles therefore remain relaxed and allow the quadriceps to extend the knee.

The Flexor (Withdrawal) Reflex

A **flexor reflex** is the quick contraction of flexor muscles resulting in the withdrawal of a limb from an injurious stimulus. For example, suppose you are wading in a lake and step on a broken bottle with your right foot (fig. 13.22). Even before you are consciously aware of the pain, you quickly pull your foot away before the glass penetrates any deeper. This action involves contraction of the flexors and relaxation of the extensors in that limb; the latter is another case of reciprocal inhibition.

The protective function of this reflex requires more than a quick jerk like a tendon reflex, so it involves more complex neural pathways. Sustained contraction of the flexors is produced by a parallel after-discharge circuit in the spinal cord (see fig. 12.27, p. 473). This circuit is part of a **polysynaptic reflex arc**—a pathway in which signals travel over many synapses on their way back to the muscle. Some signals follow routes with only a few synapses and return to the flexor muscles quickly. Others follow routes with more synapses, and therefore more delay, so they reach the flexor muscles a little later. Consequently, the flexor muscles receive prolonged output from the spinal cord and not just one sudden stimulus as in a stretch reflex. By the time these efferent signals begin to die out, you will probably be consciously aware of the pain and begin taking voluntary action to prevent further harm.

The Crossed Extensor Reflex

In the preceding situation, if *all* you did was to quickly lift the injured leg from the lake bottom, you would fall over. To prevent this and maintain your balance, other reflexes shift your center of gravity over the leg that is still on the ground. The **crossed extensor reflex** is the contraction of extensor muscles in the limb opposite from the one that is withdrawn (fig. 13.22). It extends that limb and enables you to keep your balance. To produce this reflex, branches of the afferent nerve fibers cross from the stimulated side of the body to the contralateral side of the spinal cord. There, they synapse with interneurons, which, in turn, excite or inhibit α motor neurons to the muscles of the contralateral limb.

In the ipsilateral leg (the side that was hurt), you would contract your flexors and relax your extensors to lift the leg from the ground. On the contralateral side, you would relax your flexors and contract the extensors to stiffen that leg, since it must suddenly support your entire body. At the same time, signals travel up the spinal cord and cause contraction of contralateral muscles of the hip and abdomen to shift your center of gravity over the

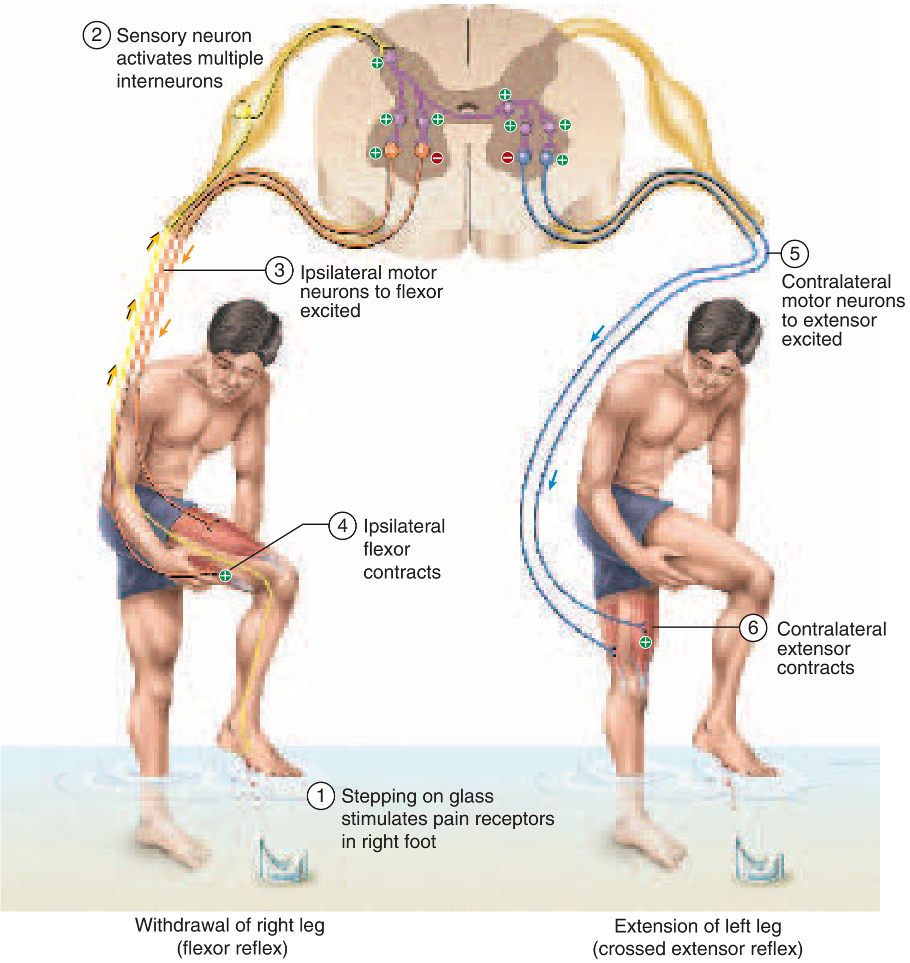

② Sensory neuron activates multiple interneurons
③ Ipsilateral motor neurons to flexor excited
④ Ipsilateral flexor contracts
⑤ Contralateral motor neurons to extensor excited
⑥ Contralateral extensor contracts
① Stepping on glass stimulates pain receptors in right foot
Withdrawal of right leg (flexor reflex)
Extension of left leg (crossed extensor reflex)

Figure 13.22 The Flexor and Crossed Extensor Reflexes. The pain stimulus triggers a withdrawal reflex, which results in contraction of flexor muscles of the injured limb. At the same time, a crossed extensor reflex results in contraction of extensor muscles of the opposite limb. The latter reflex aids in balance when the injured limb is raised. Note that for each limb, while the agonist contracts, the α motor neuron to its antagonist is inhibited, as indicated by the red *minus* signs in the spinal cord.

Would you expect this reflex arc to show more synaptic delay, or less, than the ones in figure 13.15? Why?

extended leg. To a large extent, the coordination of all these muscles and maintenance of equilibrium is mediated by the cerebellum and cerebral cortex.

The flexor reflex employs an **ipsilateral reflex arc**—one in which the sensory input and motor output are on the same sides of the spinal cord. The crossed extensor reflex employs a **contralateral reflex arc,** in which the input and output are on opposite sides. An **intersegmental reflex arc** is one in which the input and output occur at different levels (segments) of the spinal cord—for example, when pain to the foot causes contractions of abdominal and hip muscles higher up the body. Note that all of these reflex arcs can function simultaneously to produce a coordinated protective response to pain.

The Golgi Tendon Reflex

Golgi tendon organs are proprioceptors located in a tendon near its junction with a muscle (fig. 13.23). A tendon organ is about 1 mm long and consists of an encapsulated tangle of knobby nerve endings entwined in the collagen fibers of the tendon. As long as the tendon is slack, its collagen fibers are slightly spread and they put little pressure on the nerve endings woven among them. When muscle contraction pulls on the tendon, the collagen fibers come together like the two sides of a stretched rubber band and squeeze the nerve endings between them. The nerve fiber sends signals to the spinal cord that provide the CNS with feedback on the degree of muscle tension at the joint.

The **Golgi tendon reflex** is a response to excessive tension on the tendon. It inhibits α motor neurons to the muscle so the muscle does not contract as strongly. This serves to moderate muscle contraction before it tears a tendon or pulls it loose from the muscle or bone. Nevertheless, strong muscles and quick movements sometimes damage a tendon before the reflex can occur, causing such athletic injuries as a ruptured calcaneal tendon.

The Golgi tendon reflex also functions when some parts of a muscle contract more than others. It inhibits the fibers connected with overstimulated tendon organs so that their contraction is more comparable to the contraction of the rest of the muscle. This reflex spreads the workload more evenly over the entire muscle, which is beneficial in such actions as maintaining a steady grip on a tool.

Table 13.7 and insight 13.5 describe some injuries and other disorders of the spinal cord and spinal nerves.

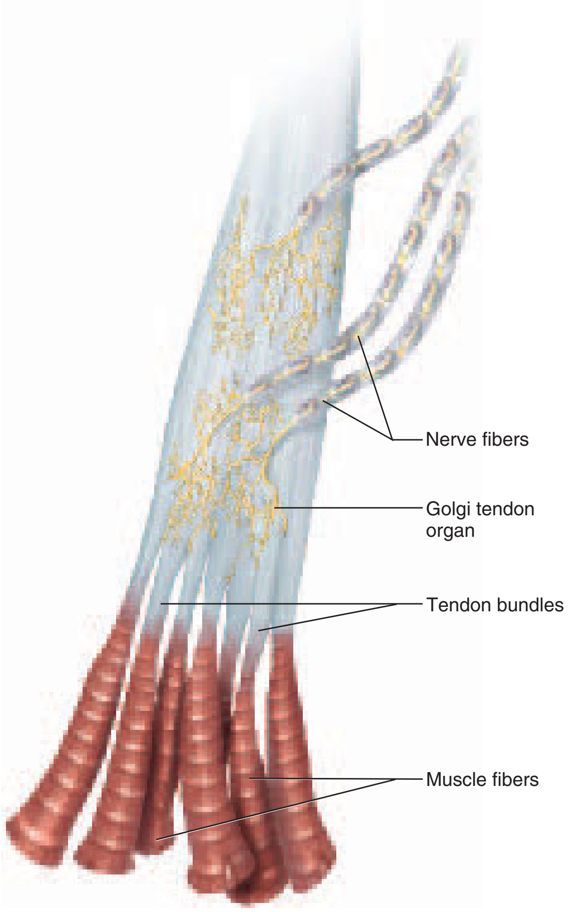


Figure 13.23 **A Golgi Tendon Organ.**

Insight 13.5 Clinical Application

Spinal Cord Trauma

Each year in the United States, 10,000 to 12,000 people become paralyzed by spinal cord trauma, usually as a result of vertebral fractures. The group at greatest risk is males from 16 to 30 years old, because of their high-risk behaviors. Fifty-five percent of their injuries are from automobile and motorcycle accidents, 18% from sports, and 15% from gunshot and stab wounds. Elderly people are also at above-average risk because of falls, and in times of war, battlefield injuries account for many cases.

Effects of Injury

Complete *transection* (severance) of the spinal cord causes immediate loss of motor control at and below the level of the injury. Transection superior to segment C4 presents a threat of respiratory failure. Victims also lose all sensation from the level of injury and below, although some patients temporarily feel burning pain within one or two dermatomes of the level of the lesion.

In the early stage, victims exhibit a syndrome (a suite of signs and symptoms) called *spinal shock.* The muscles below the level of injury exhibit flaccid paralysis and an absence of reflexes because of the lack of stimulation from higher levels of the CNS. For 8 days to 8 weeks after the accident, the patient typically lacks bladder and bowel reflexes and thus retains urine and feces. Lacking sympathetic stimulation to the blood vessels, a patient may exhibit *neurogenic shock* in which the vessels dilate and blood pressure drops dangerously low. Fever may occur because the hypothalamus cannot induce sweating to

Table 13.7 Some Disorders of the Spinal Cord and Spinal Nerves

Guillain-Barré syndrome	An acute demyelinating nerve disorder often triggered by viral infection, resulting in muscle weakness, elevated heart rate, unstable blood pressure, shortness of breath, and sometimes death from respiratory paralysis
Neuralgia	General term for nerve pain, often caused by pressure on spinal nerves from herniated intervertebral discs or other causes
Paresthesia	Abnormal sensations of prickling, burning, numbness, or tingling; a symptom of nerve trauma or other peripheral nerve disorders
Peripheral neuropathy	Any loss of sensory or motor function due to nerve injury; also called *nerve palsy*
Rabies (hydrophobia)	A disease usually contracted from animal bites, involving viral infection that spreads via somatic motor nerve fibers to the CNS and then autonomic nerve fibers, leading to seizures, coma, and death; invariably fatal if not treated before CNS symptoms appear
Spinal meningitis	Inflammation of the spinal meninges due to viral, bacterial, or other infection

Disorders described elsewhere

Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis p. 490
Carpal tunnel syndrome p. 365
Crutch paralysis p. 494
Diabetic neuropathy p. 670
Hemiplegia p. 509
Leprosy p. 589
Multiple sclerosis p. 453
Poliomyelitis p. 490
Paraplegia p. 509
Quadriplegia p. 509
Sciatica p. 494
Shingles p. 493
Spina bifida p. 484
Spinal cord trauma p. 508

cool the body. Spinal shock can last from a few days to 3 months, but typically lasts 7 to 20 days.

As spinal shock subsides, somatic reflexes begin to reappear, at first in the toes and progressing to the feet and legs. Autonomic reflexes also reappear. Contrary to the earlier urinary and fecal retention, a patient now has the opposite problem, incontinence, as the rectum and bladder empty reflexively in response to stretch. Both the somatic and autonomic nervous systems typically exhibit exaggerated reflexes, a state called *hyperreflexia* or the *mass reflex reaction.* Stimuli such as a full bladder or cutaneous touch can trigger an extreme cardiovascular reaction. The systolic blood pressure, normally about 120 mmHg, jumps to as high as 300 mmHg. This causes intense headaches and sometimes a stroke. Pressure receptors in the major arteries sense this rise in blood pressure and activate a reflex that slows the heart, sometimes to a rate as low as 30 or 40 beats/minute (*bradycardia*), compared to a normal rate of 70 to 80. The patient may also experience profuse sweating and blurred vision. Men at first lose the capacity for erection and ejaculation. They may recover these functions later and become capable of climaxing and fathering children, but without sexual sensation. In females, menstruation may become irregular or cease.

The most serious permanent effect of spinal cord trauma is paralysis. The flaccid paralysis of spinal shock later changes to spastic paralysis as spinal reflexes are regained, but lack inhibitory control from the brain. Spastic paralysis typically starts with chronic flexion of the hips and knees (flexor spasms) and progresses to a state in which the limbs become straight and rigid (extensor spasms). Three forms of muscle paralysis are *paraplegia,* a paralysis of both lower limbs resulting from spinal cord lesions at levels T1 to L1; *quadriplegia,* the paralysis of all four limbs resulting from lesions above level C5; and *hemiplegia,* paralysis of one side of the body, resulting not from spinal cord injuries but usually from a stroke or other brain lesion. Spinal cord lesions from C5 to C7 can produce a state of partial quadriplegia—total paralysis of the lower limbs and partial paralysis (*paresis,* or weakness) of the upper limbs.

Pathogenesis

Spinal cord trauma produces two stages of tissue destruction. The first is instantaneous—the destruction of cells by the traumatic event itself. The second wave of destruction, involving tissue death by necrosis and apoptosis, begins in minutes and lasts for days. It is far more destructive than the initial injury, typically converting a lesion in one spinal cord segment to a lesion that spans four or five segments, two above and two below the original site.

Microscopic hemorrhages appear in the gray matter and pia mater within minutes and grow larger over the next 2 hours. The white matter becomes edematous (swollen). This hemorrhaging and edema spread to adjacent segments of the cord, and can fatally affect respiration or brainstem function when it occurs in the cervical region. *Ischemia* (iss-KEE-me-uh), the lack of blood, quickly leads to tissue necrosis. The white matter regains circulation in about 24 hours, but the gray matter remains ischemic. Inflammatory cells (leukocytes and macrophages) infiltrate the lesion as the circulation recovers, and while they clean up necrotic tissue, they also contribute to the damage by releasing destructive free radicals and other toxic chemicals. The necrosis worsens, and is accompanied by another form of cell death, apoptosis (see chapter 5). Apoptosis of the spinal oligodendrocytes, the myelinating glial cells of the CNS, results in demyelination of spinal nerve fibers, followed by death of the neurons.

In as little as 4 hours, this second wave of destruction, called *posttraumatic infarction,* consumes about 40% of the cross-sectional area of the spinal cord; within 24 hours, it destroys 70%. As many as five segments of the cord become transformed into a fluid-filled cavity, which is replaced with collagenous scar tissue over the next 3 to 4 weeks. This scar is one of the obstacles to the regeneration of lost nerve fibers.

Treatment

The first priority in treating a spinal injury patient is to immobilize the spine to prevent further injury to the cord. Respiratory or other life support may also be required. Methylprednisolone, a steroid, dramatically improves recovery. Given within 3 hours of the trauma, it reduces injury to cell membranes and inhibits inflammation and apoptosis.

After these immediate requirements are met, reduction (repair) of the fracture is important. If a CT or MRI scan indicates spinal cord compression by the vertebral canal, a *decompression laminectomy* may be performed, in which the vertebral arch is removed from the affected region. CT and MRI have helped a great deal in recent decades for assessing vertebral and spinal cord damage, guiding surgical treatment, and improving recovery. Physical therapy is important for maintaining muscle and joint function as well as promoting the patient's psychological recovery.

Treatment of spinal cord injuries is a lively area of medical research today. Some current interests are the use of antioxidants to reduce free radical damage, and the implantation of embryonic stem cells, which has produced significant (but not perfect) recovery from spinal cord lesions in rats.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

9. Name five structural components of a typical somatic reflex arc. Which of these is absent from a monosynaptic arc?
10. State the function of each of the following in a muscle spindle: intrafusal fiber, annulospiral ending, and γ motor neuron.
11. Explain how nerve fibers in a tendon sense the degree of tension in a muscle.
12. Why must the withdrawal reflex, but not the stretch reflex, involve a polysynaptic reflex arc?
13. Explain why the crossed extensor reflex must accompany a withdrawal reflex of the leg.

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

The Spinal Cord (p. 482)

1. The spinal cord conducts signals up and down the body, contains *central pattern generators* that control locomotion, and mediates many reflexes.
2. The spinal cord occupies the vertebral canal from vertebrae C1 to L1. A bundle of nerve roots called the *cauda equina* occupies the vertebral canal from C2 to S5.
3. The cord is divided into cervical, thoracic, lumbar, and sacral regions, named for the levels of the vertebral column through which the spinal nerves emerge. The portion served by each spinal nerve is called a *segment* of the cord.
4. *Cervical* and *lumbar enlargements* are wide points in the cord marking the emergence of nerves that control the limbs.
5. The spinal cord is enclosed in three fibrous *meninges.* From superficial to deep, these are the dura mater, arachnoid mater, and pia mater. An *epidural space* exists between the dura mater and vertebral bone, and a *subarachnoid space* between the arachnoid and pia mater.
6. The pia mater issues periodic *denticulate ligaments* that anchor it to the dura, and continues inferiorly as a *coccygeal ligament* that anchors the cord to vertebra L2.
7. In cross section, the spinal cord exhibits a central H-shaped core of *gray matter* surrounded by *white matter.* The gray matter contains the somas, dendrites, and synapses while the white matter consists of nerve fibers (axons).
8. The *dorsal horn* of the gray matter receives afferent (sensory) nerve fibers from the dorsal root of the spinal nerve. The *ventral horn* contains the somas that give rise to the efferent (motor) nerve fibers of the ventral root of the nerve. A *lateral horn* in the thoracic and lumbar regions contains somas of the sympathetic neurons.
9. The white matter is divided into *dorsal, lateral,* and *ventral columns* on each side of the cord. Each column consists of one of more *tracts,* or bundles of nerve fibers. The nerve fibers in a given tract are similar in origin, destination, and function.
10. *Ascending tracts* carry sensory information up the cord to the brain. Their names and functions are listed in table 13.1.
11. From receptor to cerebral cortex, sensory signals typically travel through three neurons (first- through third-order) and cross over (*decussate*) from one side of the body to the other in the spinal cord or brainstem. Thus, the right cerebral cortex receives sensory input from the left side of the body (from the neck down) and vice versa.
12. *Descending tracts* carry motor commands from the brain downward. Their names and functions are also listed in table 13.1.
13. Motor signals typically begin in an *upper motor neuron* in the cerebral cortex and travel to a *lower motor neuron* in the brainstem or spinal cord. The latter neuron's axon leaves the CNS in a cranial or spinal nerve leading to a muscle.

The Spinal Nerves (p. 490)

1. A nerve is a cordlike organ composed of nerve fibers (axons) and connective tissue.
2. Each nerve fiber is enclosed in its own fibrous sleeve called an *endoneurium.* Nerve fibers are bundled in groups called *fascicles* separated from each other by a *perineurium.* A fibrous *epineurium* covers the entire nerve.
3. Nerve fibers are classified as *afferent* or *efferent* depending on the direction

of signal conduction, *somatic* or *visceral* depending on the types of organs they innervate, and *special* or *general* depending on the locations of the organs they innervate (table 13.2).

4. A *sensory nerve* is composed of afferent fibers only, a *motor nerve* of efferent fibers only, and a *mixed nerve* is composed of both. Most nerves are mixed.
5. A *ganglion* is a swelling along the course of a nerve containing the cell bodies of the peripheral neurons.
6. There are 31 pairs of *spinal nerves,* which enter and leave the spinal cord and emerge mainly through the intervertebral foramina. Within the vertebral canal, each branches into a *dorsal root* which carries sensory signals to the dorsal horn of the spinal cord, and a *ventral root* which receives motor signals from the ventral horn. The dorsal root has a swelling, the *dorsal root ganglion,* containing unipolar neurons of somatic sensory neurons.
7. Distal to the intervertebral foramen, each spinal nerve branches into a *dorsal ramus, ventral ramus,* and *meningeal branch.*
8. The ventral ramus gives rise to *intercostal nerves* in the thoracic region and *nerve plexuses* in all other regions. The nerve plexuses are weblike networks adjacent to the vertebral column: the *cervical, brachial, lumbar, sacral,* and *coccygeal plexus.* The nerves arising from each are described in tables 13.3 through 13.6.

Somatic Reflexes (p. 503)

1. A reflex is a quick, involuntary, stereotyped reaction of a gland or muscle to a stimulus.
2. *Somatic (spinal) reflexes* are responses of skeletal muscles. The nerve signals in a somatic reflex travel by way of a *reflex arc* from a receptor, via an afferent neuron to the spinal cord or brainstem, sometimes through interneurons in the CNS, then via an efferent neuron to a skeletal muscle.
3. Many somatic reflexes are initiated by *proprioceptors,* organs that monitor the position and movements of body parts.
4. *Muscle spindles* are proprioceptors embedded in the skeletal muscles that respond to stretching of the muscle. They are composed of modified *intrafusal muscle fibers, primary* and *secondary afferent nerve fibers,* and γ *motor neurons,* all enclosed in a fibrous sheath.
5. The *stretch reflex* is the tendency of a muscle to contract when it is stretched, as in the patellar tendon (knee-jerk) reflex. Stretch reflexes smooth joint actions and maintain equilibrium and posture. Many stretch reflexes travel via *monosynaptic* pathways so there is minimal synaptic delay and a very quick response.
6. A stretch reflex is often accompanied by *reciprocal inhibition,* a reflex that prevents an antagonistic muscle from contracting and interfering with the reflex action.
7. The *flexor reflex* is the withdrawal of a limb from an injurious stimulus, as in pulling back from a hot stove. It employs a polysynaptic reflex arc that produces a sustained response in the muscle.
8. The *crossed extensor reflex* is contraction of the extensors on one side of the body when the flexors are contracted on the other side. It shifts the body weight so that one does not fall over.
9. The *Golgi tendon reflex* is the inhibition of a muscle contraction that occurs when its tendon is excessively stretched. Stretching stimulates a receptor in the tendon called a *Golgi tendon organ.* The reflex prevents tendon injuries and helps to distribute workload across a muscle.

Selected Vocabulary

spinal cord 482
meninges 482
dura mater 483
arachnoid mater 483
pia mater 483
gray matter 485
white matter 485
tract 485
dorsal horn 485
ventral horn 485
lateral horn 485
column 485
fasciculus 485
decussation 486
contralateral 486
ipsilateral 486
first- through third-order neurons 486
upper motor neuron 489
lower motor neuron 489
nerve 490
dorsal root ganglion 492
somatic reflex 504
muscle spindle 504
proprioceptor 504

Testing Your Recall

1. Below L2, the vertebral canal is occupied by a bundle of spinal nerve roots called
   a. the terminal filum.
   b. the descending tracts.
   c. the gracile fasciculus.
   d. the medullary cone.
   e. the cauda equina.
2. The brachial plexus gives rise to all of the following nerves *except*
   a. the axillary nerve.
   b. the radial nerve.
   c. the saphenous nerve.
   d. the median nerve.
   e. the ulnar nerve.
3. Nerve fibers that adjust the tension in a muscle spindle are called
   a. intrafusal fibers.
   b. extrafusal fibers.
   c. α motor neurons.
   d. γ motor neurons.
   e. annulospiral fibers.

4. A stretch reflex requires the action of _____ to prevent an antagonistic muscle from interfering with the agonist.
   a. γ motor neurons
   b. a withdrawal reflex
   c. a crossed extensor reflex
   d. reciprocal inhibition
   e. a contralateral reflex
5. A patient has a gunshot wound that caused a bone fragment to nick the spinal cord. The patient now feels no pain or temperature sensations from that level of the body down. Most likely, the _____ was damaged.
   a. gracile fasciculus
   b. medial lemniscus
   c. tectospinal tract
   d. lateral corticospinal tract
   e. spinothalamic tract
6. Which of these is *not* a region of the spinal cord?
   a. cervical
   b. thoracic
   c. pelvic
   d. lumbar
   e. sacral
7. In the spinal cord, the somas of the lower motor neurons are found in
   a. the cauda equina.
   b. the dorsal horns.
   c. the ventral horns.
   d. the dorsal root ganglia.
   e. the fasciculi.
8. The outermost connective tissue wrapping of a nerve is called the
   a. epineurium.
   b. perineurium.
   c. endoneurium.
   d. arachnoid membrane.
   e. dura mater.
9. The intercostal nerves between the ribs arise from which spinal nerve plexus?
   a. cervical
   b. brachial
   c. lumbar
   d. sacral
   e. none of them
10. All somatic reflexes share all of the following properties except
    a. they are quick.
    b. they are monosynaptic.
    c. they require stimulation.
    d. they are involuntary.
    e. they are stereotyped.
11. Outside the CNS, the somas of neurons are clustered in swellings called _____.
12. Distal to the intervertebral foramen, a spinal nerve branches into a dorsal and ventral _____.
13. The cerebellum receives feedback from the muscles and joints by way of the _____ tracts of the spinal cord.
14. In the _____ reflex, contraction of flexor muscles in one limb is accompanied by the contraction of extensor muscles in the contralateral limb.
15. Modified muscle fibers serving primarily to detect stretch are called _____.
16. The _____ nerves arise from the cervical plexus and innervate the diaphragm.
17. The crossing of a nerve fiber or tract from the right side of the CNS to the left, or vice versa, is called _____.
18. The nonvisual awareness of the body's position and movements is called _____.
19. The _____ ganglion contains the somas of neurons that carry sensory signals to the spinal cord.
20. The sciatic nerve is a composite of two nerves, the _____ and _____.

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. The gracile fasciculus is a descending spinal tract.
2. At the inferior end, the adult spinal cord ends before the vertebral column does.
3. Each spinal cord segment has only one pair of spinal nerves.
4. Some spinal nerves are sensory and others are motor.
5. The dura mater adheres tightly to the bone of the vertebral canal.
6. The dorsal and ventral horns of the spinal cord are composed of gray matter.
7. The corticospinal tracts carry motor signals down the spinal cord.
8. The dermatomes are nonoverlapping regions of skin innervated by different spinal nerves.
9. Somatic reflexes are those that do not involve the brain.
10. The Golgi tendon reflex acts to inhibit muscle contraction.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. Jillian is thrown from a horse. She strikes the ground with her chin, causing severe hyperextension of the neck. Emergency medical technicians properly immobilize her neck and transport her to a hospital, but she dies 5 minutes after arrival. An autopsy shows multiple fractures of vertebrae C1, C6, and C7 and extensive damage to the spinal cord. Explain why she died rather than being left quadriplegic.
2. Wallace is the victim of a hunting accident. A bullet grazed his vertebral column and bone fragments severed the left half of his spinal cord at segments T8 through T10. Since the accident, Wallace has had a condition called *dissociated sensory loss,* in which he feels no sensations of deep touch or limb position on the *left* side of his body below the injury and no sensations of pain or heat from the *right* side. Explain what spinal tract(s) the injury has affected and why these sensory losses are on opposite sides of the body.
3. Anthony gets into a fight between rival gangs. As an attacker comes at him with a knife, he turns to flee, but stumbles. The attacker stabs him on the medial side of the right gluteal fold and Anthony collapses. He loses all use of his right limb, being unable to extend his hip, flex his knee, or move his foot. He never fully recovers these lost functions. Explain what nerve injury Anthony has most likely suffered.
4. Stand with your right shoulder, hip, and foot firmly against a wall. Raise your left foot from the floor without losing contact with the wall at any point. What happens? Why? What principle of this chapter does this demonstrate?
5. When a patient needs a tendon graft, surgeons sometimes use the tendon of the palmaris longus, a relatively dispensable muscle of the forearm. The median nerve lies nearby and looks very similar to this tendon. There have been cases where a surgeon mistakenly removed a section of this nerve instead of the tendon. What effects do you think such a mistake would have on the patient?

Answers at the Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Legend Questions

13.4 If it were T10, there would be no cuneate fasciculus; that exists only from T6 up.

13.9 They are in the ventral horn of the spinal cord.

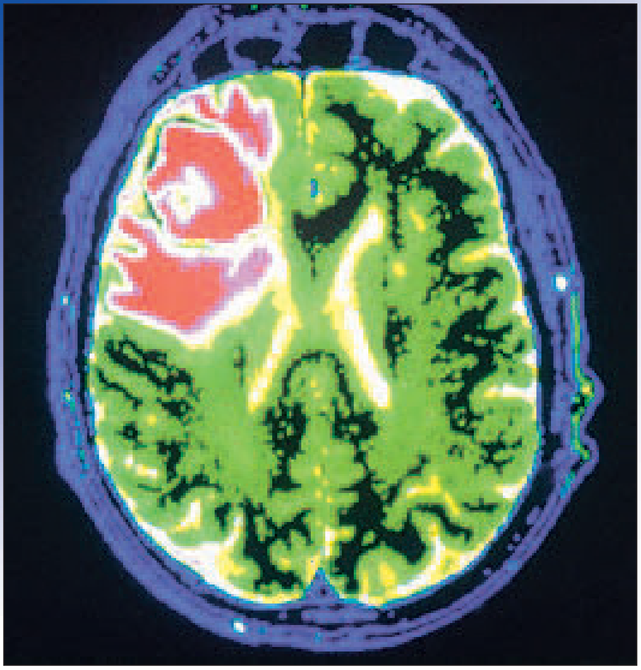
13.12 They are afferent, because they arise from the dorsal root of the spinal nerve.

13.21 Motor neurons are capable only of exciting skeletal muscle (end-plate potentials are always excitatory). To inhibit muscle contraction, it is necessary to inhibit the motor neuron at the CNS level (point 7).

13.22 They would show more synaptic delay, because there are more synapses in the pathway.

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.



Glioblastoma (*red*), a fast-growing, highly invasive brain tumor (MRI)

CHAPTER 14

The Brain and Cranial Nerves

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Overview of the Brain 516
- Directional Terms in Neuroanatomy 516
- Major Landmarks of the Brain 516
- Gray and White Matter 516
- Embryonic Development 517

Meninges, Ventricles, Cerebrospinal Fluid, and Blood Supply 519
- Meninges 519
- Ventricles and Cerebrospinal Fluid 521
- Blood Supply and the Brain Barrier System 524

The Hindbrain and Midbrain 524
- The Medulla Oblongata 524
- The Pons and Cerebellum 526
- The Midbrain 526
- The Reticular Formation 528

The Forebrain 529
- The Diencephalon 530
- The Cerebrum 531

Higher Brain Functions 536
- Brain Waves and Sleep 536
- Cognition 538
- Memory 539
- Emotion 539
- Sensation 540
- Motor Control 542
- Language 543
- Cerebral Lateralization 543

The Cranial Nerves 546
- The Cranial Nerves—An Aid to Memory 547

Chapter Review 558

INSIGHTS

14.1 Clinical Application: Meningitis 521

14.2 Medical History: The Accidental Lobotomy of Phineas Gage 538

14.3 Clinical Application: Some Cranial Nerve Disorders 556

14.4 Clinical Application: Images of the Mind 557

Brushing Up

To understand this chapter, it is important that you understand or brush up on the following concepts:

- Anatomy of the cranium (pp. 248–257)
- Glial cells and their functions (pp. 450–451)
- Tracts of the spinal cord (pp. 486–489)
- Structure of nerves and ganglia (pp. 490–492)

The mystique of the brain continues to intrigue modern biologists and psychologists even as it did the philosophers of antiquity. Aristotle interpreted the brain as a radiator for cooling the blood, but generations earlier, Hippocrates had expressed a more accurate view of its functions. "Men ought to know," he said, "that from the brain, and from the brain only, arise our pleasures, joy, laughter and jests, as well as our sorrows, pains, griefs and tears. Through it, in particular, we think, see, hear, and distinguish the ugly from the beautiful, the bad from the good, the pleasant from the unpleasant." Brain function is so strongly associated with what it means to be alive and human that the cessation of brain activity is taken as a clinical criterion of death even when other organs of the body are still functioning.

With its hundreds of neuronal pools and trillions of synapses, the brain performs sophisticated tasks beyond our present understanding. Still, all of our mental functions, no matter how complex, are ultimately based on the cellular activities described in chapter 12. The relationship of the mind or personality to the cellular function of the brain is a question that will provide fertile ground for scientific study and philosophical debate long into the future.

This chapter is a study of the brain and the cranial nerves directly connected to it. Here we will plumb some of the mysteries of motor control, sensation, emotion, thought, language, personality, memory, dreams, and plans. Your study of this chapter is one brain's attempt to understand itself.

Overview of the Brain

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the major subdivisions and anatomical landmarks of the brain; and
- describe the embryonic development of the CNS and relate this to adult brain anatomy.

Directional Terms in Neuroanatomy

Two directional terms often used to describe brain anatomy are *rostral* and *caudal.* **Rostral**[1] means "toward the nose" and **caudal**[2] means "toward the tail," descriptions especially appropriate to rats and other mammals on which so much neuroanatomy has been done. In human brain anatomy, one structure is rostral to another if it is closer to the forehead and caudal to another if it is closer to the spinal cord.

Major Landmarks of the Brain

Before we consider the form and function of specific regions of the brain, it will help to get a general overview of its major landmarks (figs. 14.1 and 14.2). These will provide important points of reference as we progress through a more detailed study.

The average adult brain weighs about 1,600 g (3.5 lb) in men and 1,450 g in women. Its size is proportional to body size, not intelligence—the Neanderthal people had larger brains than modern humans.

The brain is divided into three major portions—the *cerebrum, cerebellum,* and *brainstem.* The **cerebrum** (SER-eh-brum or seh-REE-brum) constitutes about 83% of its volume and consists of a pair of **cerebral hemispheres.** Each hemisphere is marked by thick folds called **gyri**[3] (JY-rye; singular, *gyrus*) separated by shallow grooves called **sulci**[4] (SUL-sye; singular, *sulcus*). A very deep groove, the **longitudinal fissure,** separates the right and left hemispheres from each other. At the bottom of this fissure, the hemispheres are connected by a thick bundle of nerve fibers called the **corpus callosum**[5]—a prominent landmark for anatomical description (fig. 14.1*d*).

The **cerebellum**[6] (SER-eh-BEL-um) lies inferior to the cerebrum and occupies the posterior cranial fossa. It is also marked by gyri, sulci, and fissures. The cerebellum is the second-largest region of the brain; it constitutes about 10% of its volume but contains over 50% of its neurons.

The **brainstem** is what remains if the cerebrum and cerebellum are removed. In a living person, it is oriented like a vertical stalk with the cerebrum perched on top of it like a mushroom cap. Postmortem changes give it a more oblique angle in the cadaver and consequently in many medical illustrations. The major components of the brainstem, from rostral to caudal, are the *diencephalon, midbrain, pons,* and *medulla oblongata.* Some authorities, however, regard only the last three of these as the brainstem. The brainstem ends at the foramen magnum of the skull and the central nervous system (CNS) continues below this as the spinal cord.

Gray and White Matter

The brain, like the spinal cord, is composed of gray and white matter. Gray matter—the seat of the neuron cell bodies, dendrites, and synapses—forms a surface layer called the **cortex** over the cerebrum and cerebellum, and deeper masses called **nuclei** surrounded by white matter. The white matter thus lies deep to the cortical gray matter of the brain, opposite from the relationship of gray and white matter in the spinal cord. As in the spinal cord, the white matter is composed of **tracts,** or bundles of axons, which here connect one part of the brain to another.

---

[1] *rostr* = nose
[2] *caud* = tail
[3] *gy* = turn, twist
[4] *sulc* = furrow, groove
[5] *corpus* = body + *call* = thick
[6] *cereb* = brain + *ellum* = little

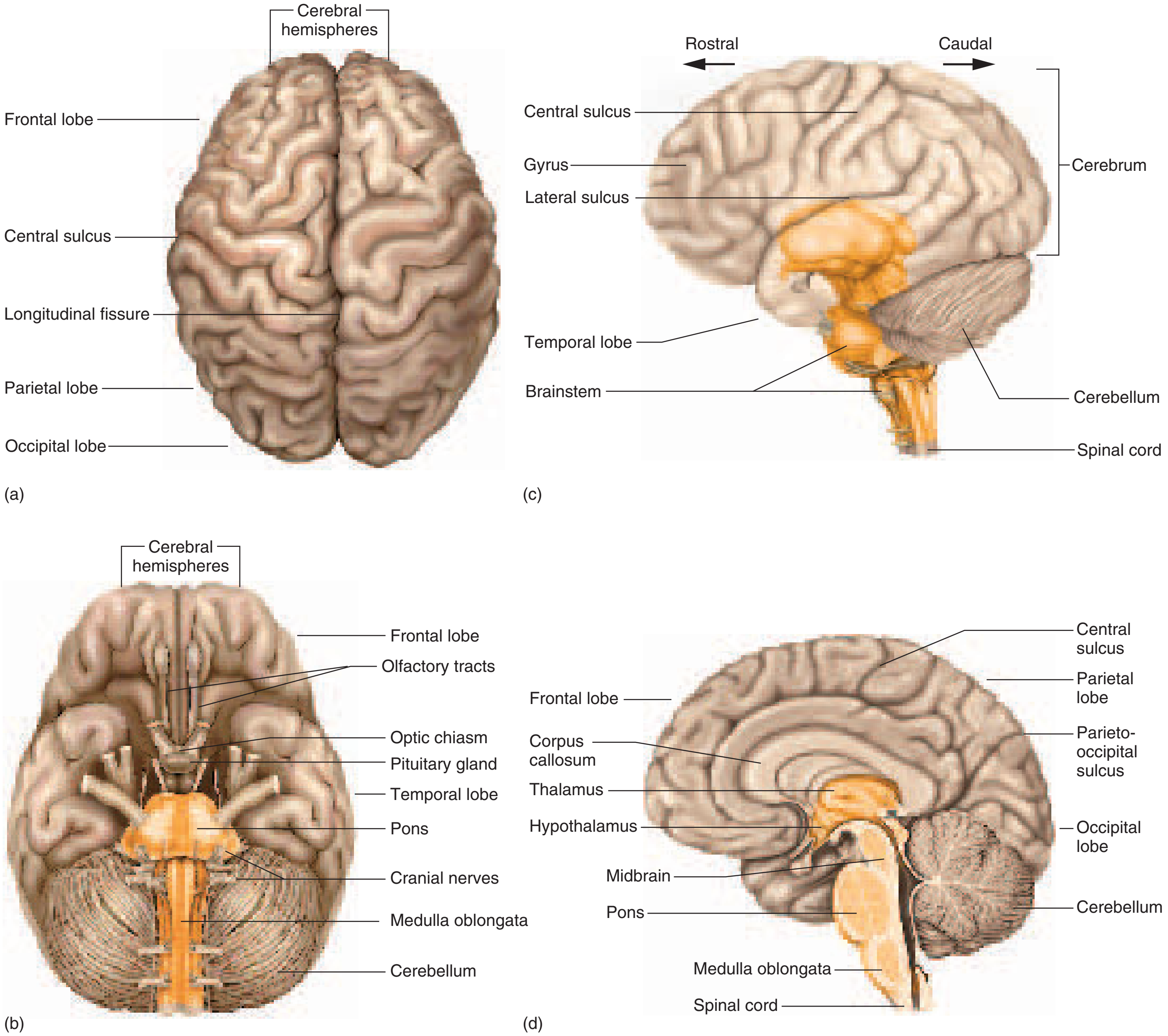
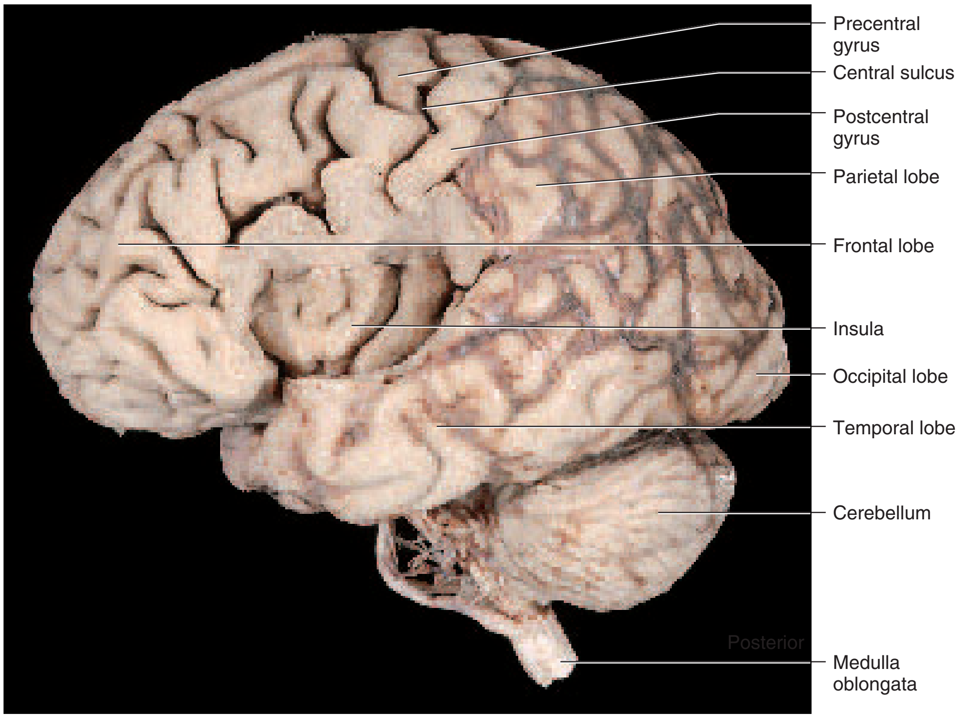

Cerebral hemispheres
Frontal lobe
Central sulcus
Longitudinal fissure
Parietal lobe
Occipital lobe
(a)
Rostral
Caudal
Central sulcus
Gyrus
Lateral sulcus
Cerebrum
Temporal lobe
Brainstem
Cerebellum
Spinal cord
(c)
Cerebral hemispheres
Frontal lobe
Olfactory tracts
Optic chiasm
Pituitary gland
Temporal lobe
Pons
Cranial nerves
Medulla oblongata
Cerebellum
(b)
Central sulcus
Parietal lobe
Frontal lobe
Corpus callosum
Parieto-occipital sulcus
Thalamus
Hypothalamus
Occipital lobe
Midbrain
Pons
Cerebellum
Medulla oblongata
Spinal cord
(d)

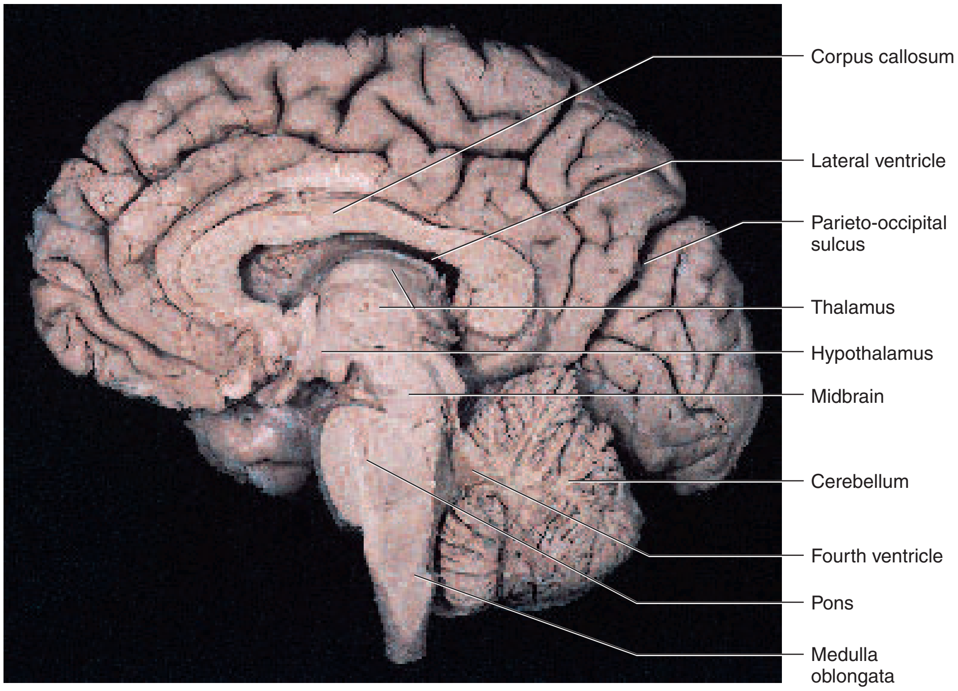
Figure 14.1 **Four Views of the Brain.** (*a*) Superior; (*b*) inferior (base of the brain); (*c*) left lateral; (*d*) median section (color indicates brainstem).

Embryonic Development

To understand the terminology of mature brain anatomy, it is necessary to be aware of the embryonic development of the CNS. The nervous system develops from ectoderm, the outermost germ layer of an embryo. By the third week of development, a dorsal streak called the *neuroectoderm* appears along the length of the embryo and thickens to form a **neural plate** (fig. 14.3). This is destined to give rise to all neurons and glial cells except microglia, which come from mesoderm. As development progresses, the neural plate sinks and forms a **neural groove** with a raised **neural fold** along each side. The neural folds then fuse along the midline, somewhat like a closing zipper. By 4 weeks, this process creates a hollow channel called the **neural tube.** The neural tube now separates from the overlying ectoderm, sinks a little deeper, and grows lateral processes that later form motor nerve fibers. The lumen of the neural tube develops into fluid-filled spaces called the *central canal* of the spinal cord and *ventricles* of the brain.


Precentral gyrus
Central sulcus
Postcentral gyrus
Parietal lobe
Frontal lobe
Insula
Occipital lobe
Temporal lobe
Cerebellum
Posterior
Medulla oblongata

(a)


Corpus callosum
Lateral ventricle
Parieto-occipital sulcus
Thalamus
Hypothalamus
Midbrain
Cerebellum
Fourth ventricle
Pons
Medulla oblongata

(b)

Figure 14.2 **Dissections of the Brain.** (*a*) Left lateral view with part of the left hemisphere cut away to expose the insula. The arachnoid mater is visible as a delicate translucent membrane over many of the sulci of the occipital lobe. (*b*) Median section, left lateral view.

After reading about the ventricles of the brain, locate the cerebral aqueduct in figure *b*.

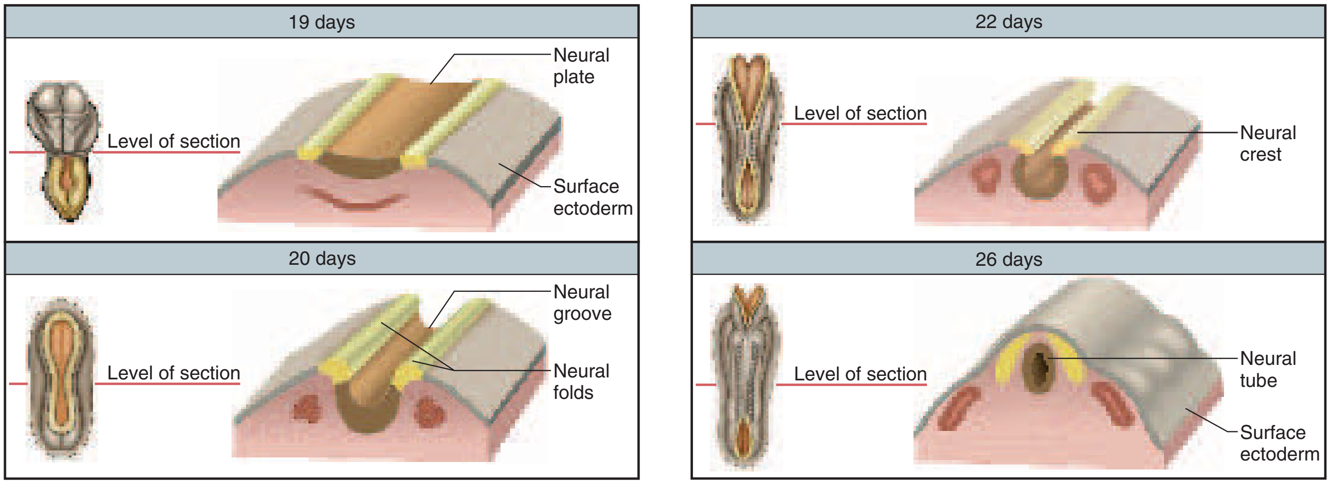


Figure 14.3 **Embryonic Development of the CNS to the Neural Tube Stage.** The *left-hand* figure in each box represents a dorsal view of the embryo and the *right-hand* figure shows a three-dimensional reconstruction at the indicated level.

As the neural tube develops, some ectodermal cells that originally lay along the margin of the groove separate from the rest and form a longitudinal column on each side called the **neural crest.** Some neural crest cells become sensory neurons, while others migrate to other locations and become sympathetic neurons, Schwann cells, and other cell types.

By the fourth week, the neural tube exhibits three anterior dilations, or *primary vesicles,* called the **forebrain** (*prosencephalon*[7]) (PROSS-en-SEF-uh-lon), **midbrain** (*mesencephalon*[8]) (MEZ-en-SEF-uh-lon), and **hindbrain** (*rhombencephalon*[9]) (ROM-ben-SEF-uh-lon) (fig. 14.4). By the fifth week, the neural tube undergoes further flexion and subdivides into five *secondary vesicles.* The forebrain divides into two of them, the **telencephalon**[10] (TEL-en-SEF-uh-lon) and **diencephalon**[11] (DY-en-SEF-uh-lon); the midbrain remains undivided and retains the name **mesencephalon;** and the hindbrain divides into two vesicles, the **metencephalon**[12] (MET-en-SEF-uh-lon) and **myelencephalon**[13] (MY-el-en-SEF-uh-lon). The telencephalon has a pair of lateral outgrowths that later become the cerebral hemispheres, and the diencephalon exhibits a pair of small cuplike *optic vesicles* that become the retinas of the eyes. Figure 14.4*c* shows structures of the fully developed brain that arise from each of the secondary vesicles.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

1. List the three major parts of the brain and describe their locations.
2. Define *gyrus* and *sulcus.*
3. Explain how the five secondary brain vesicles arise from the neural tube.

Meninges, Ventricles, Cerebrospinal Fluid, and Blood Supply

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the meninges of the brain;
- describe the system of fluid-filled chambers within the brain;
- discuss the production, circulation, and function of the cerebrospinal fluid that fills these chambers; and
- explain the significance of the brain barrier system.

Meninges

The meninges of the brain are basically the same as those of the spinal cord: dura mater, arachnoid mater, and pia mater (fig. 14.5). The dura mater, however, shows some significant differences. In the cranial cavity, it consists of two layers—an outer *periosteal layer,* equivalent to the periosteum of the cranial bone, and an inner *meningeal layer.* Only the meningeal layer continues into the vertebral

---

[7] *pros* = before, in front + *encephal* = brain
[8] *mes* = middle
[9] *rhomb* = rhombus
[10] *tele* = end, remote
[11] *di* = through, between
[12] *met* = behind, beyond, distal to
[13] *myel* = spinal cord

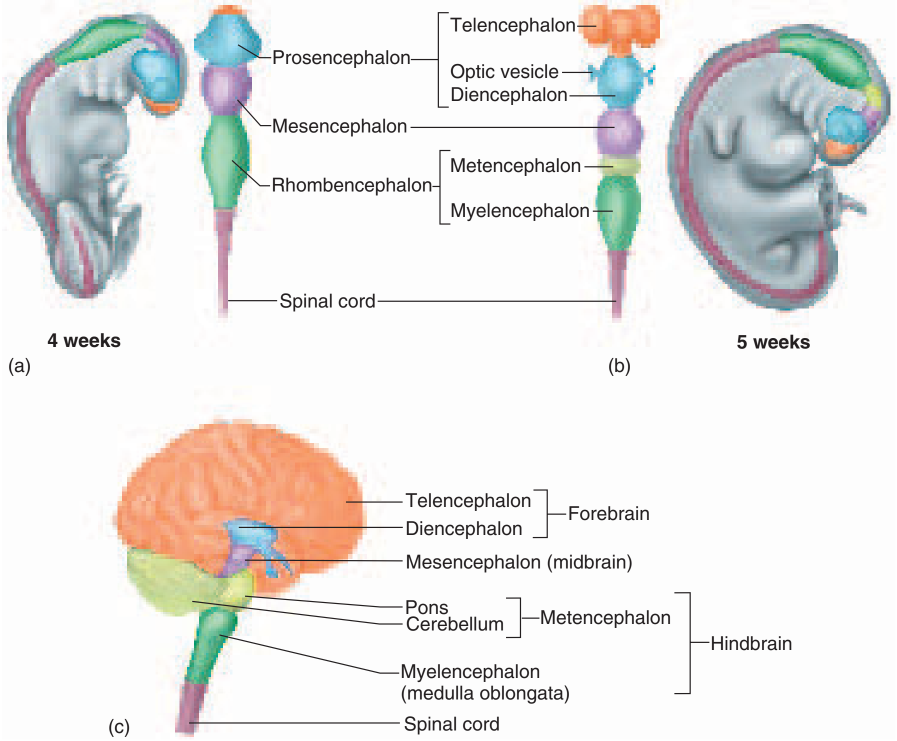

Telencephalon
Prosencephalon
Optic vesicle
Diencephalon
Mesencephalon
Metencephalon
Rhombencephalon
Myelencephalon
Spinal cord
4 weeks
(a)
(b)
5 weeks
Telencephalon
Diencephalon
Forebrain
Mesencephalon (midbrain)
Pons
Cerebellum
Metencephalon
Hindbrain
Myelencephalon
(medulla oblongata)
(c)
Spinal cord

Figure 14.4 **Primary and Secondary Vesicles of the Embryonic Brain.** (*a*) The primary vesicles at 4 weeks; (*b*) the secondary vesicles at 5 weeks; (*c*) the fully developed brain, color-coded to relate its structures to the secondary embryonic vesicles.

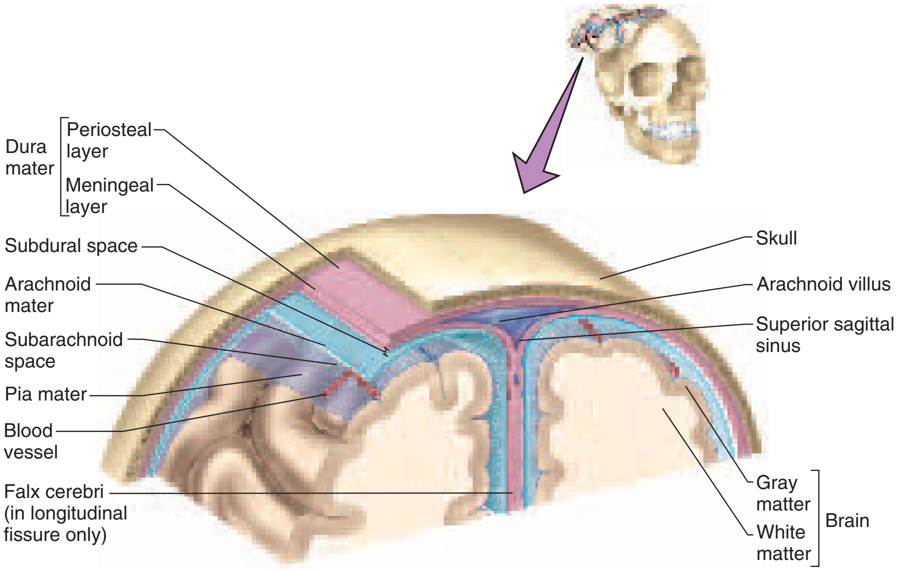

Dura mater
Periosteal layer
Meningeal layer
Subdural space
Arachnoid mater
Subarachnoid space
Pia mater
Blood vessel
Falx cerebri (in longitudinal fissure only)
Skull
Arachnoid villus
Superior sagittal sinus
Gray matter
White matter
Brain

Figure 14.5 **The Meninges of the Brain.** Frontal section of the head.

canal. The cranial dura mater lies closely against the cranial bone, with no intervening epidural space like that of the spinal cord. In some places, the two layers are separated by **dural sinuses,** spaces that collect blood that has circulated through the brain. Two major dural sinuses are the **superior sagittal sinus,** found just under the cranium along the midsagittal line, and the **transverse sinus,** which runs horizontally from the rear of the head toward each ear. These sinuses meet like an inverted T at the back of the brain and ultimately empty into the internal jugular veins of the neck.

In certain places, the meningeal layer of the dura mater folds inward to separate major parts of the brain: the *falx*[14] *cerebri* (falks SER-eh-bry) extends into the longitudinal fissure between the right and left cerebral hemispheres; the *tentorium*[15] (ten-TOE-ree-um) *cerebelli* stretches like a roof over the posterior cranial fossa and separates the cerebellum from the overlying cerebrum; and the *falx cerebelli* partially separates the right and left halves of the cerebellum on the inferior side.

The arachnoid mater and pia mater are similar to those of the spinal cord. A *subarachnoid space* separates the arachnoid from the pia, and in some places, a *subdural space* separates the dura from the arachnoid.

Insight 14.1 Clinical Application

Meningitis

Meningitis—inflammation of the meninges—is one of the most serious diseases of infancy and childhood. It occurs especially between 3 months and 2 years of age. Meningitis is caused by a variety of bacteria and viruses that invade the CNS by way of the nose and throat, often following respiratory, throat, or ear infections. The pia mater and arachnoid are most likely to be affected, and from here the infection can spread to the adjacent nervous tissue. In bacterial meningitis, the brain swells, the ventricles enlarge, and the brainstem may have hemorrhages. Signs include a high fever, stiff neck, drowsiness, and intense headache and may progress to vomiting, loss of sensory and motor functions, and coma. Death can occur within hours of the onset. Infants and toddlers with a high fever should therefore receive immediate medical attention.

Meningitis is diagnosed partly by examining the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) for bacteria and white blood cells. The CSF is obtained by making a *lumbar puncture (spinal tap)* between two lumbar vertebrae and drawing fluid from the subarachnoid space. This site is chosen because it has an abundance of CSF and there is no risk of injury to the spinal cord, which does not extend into the lower lumbar vertebrae.

Ventricles and Cerebrospinal Fluid

The brain has four internal chambers called **ventricles** (fig. 14.6). The most rostral ones are the **lateral ventricles,** which form a large arc in each cerebral hemisphere. Through a tiny passage called the **interventricular foramen,** each lateral ventricle is connected to the **third ventricle,** a narrow medial space inferior to the corpus callosum. From here, a canal called the **cerebral aqueduct** passes down the core of the midbrain and leads to the **fourth ventricle,** a small chamber between the pons and cerebellum. Caudally, this space narrows and forms a **central canal** that extends through the medulla oblongata into the spinal cord.

These ventricles and canals are lined with ependymal cells, a type of neuroglia that resembles a simple cuboidal epithelium. Each ventricle contains a **choroid** (CO-royd) **plexus,** named for its histological resemblance to a fetal membrane called the chorion. The choroid plexus is a network of blood capillaries anchored to the floor or wall of the ventricle and covered by ependymal cells.

A clear, colorless liquid called **cerebrospinal fluid (CSF)** fills the ventricles and canals of the CNS and bathes its external surface. The brain produces about 500 mL of CSF per day, but the fluid is constantly reabsorbed at the same rate and only 100 to 160 mL are present at one time. About 40% of it is formed in the subarachnoid space external to the brain, 30% by the general ependymal lining of the brain ventricles, and 30% by the choroid plexuses. CSF forms partly by the filtration of blood plasma through the choroid plexuses and other capillaries of the brain. The ependymal cells modify this filtrate, however, so the CSF has more sodium and chloride than the blood plasma, but less potassium, calcium, and glucose and very little protein.

Cerebrospinal fluid serves three purposes:

1. **Buoyancy.** Because the brain and CSF are very similar in density, the brain neither sinks nor floats in the CSF but remains suspended in it—that is, the brain has *neutral buoyancy.* A human brain removed from the body weighs about 1,500 g, but when suspended in CSF its effective weight is only about 50 g. By analogy, consider how much easier it is to lift another person when you are standing in a lake than it is on land. Neutral buoyancy allows the brain to attain considerable size without being impaired by its own weight. If the brain rested heavily on the floor of the cranium, the pressure would kill the nervous tissue.
2. **Protection.** CSF also protects the brain from striking the cranium when the head is jolted. If the jolt is severe, however, the brain still may strike the inside of the cranium or suffer shearing injury from contact with the angular surfaces of the cranial floor. This is one of the common findings in child abuse (shaken child syndrome) and in head injuries (concussions) from auto accidents, boxing, and the like.
3. **Chemical stability.** CSF is secreted into each ventricle of the brain and is ultimately absorbed into the bloodstream. It provides a means of rinsing metabolic

---

[14] *falx* = sickle
[15] *tentorium* = tent

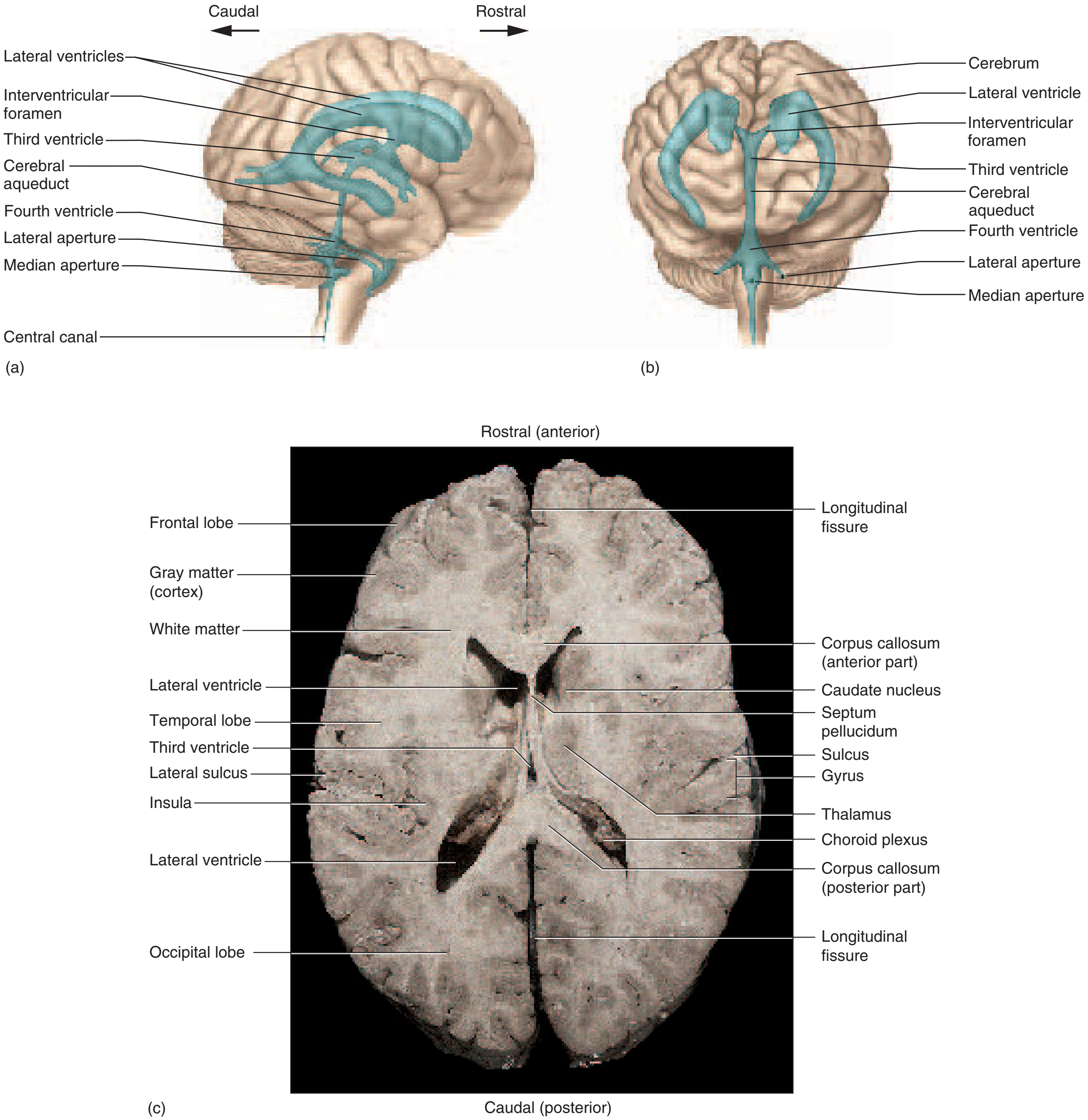

Caudal
Rostral
Lateral ventricles
Interventricular foramen
Third ventricle
Cerebral aqueduct
Fourth ventricle
Lateral aperture
Median aperture
Central canal
(a)
Cerebrum
Lateral ventricle
Interventricular foramen
Third ventricle
Cerebral aqueduct
Fourth ventricle
Lateral aperture
Median aperture
(b)
Rostral (anterior)
Frontal lobe
Gray matter (cortex)
White matter
Lateral ventricle
Temporal lobe
Third ventricle
Lateral sulcus
Insula
Lateral ventricle
Occipital lobe
Longitudinal fissure
Corpus callosum (anterior part)
Caudate nucleus
Septum pellucidum
Sulcus
Gyrus
Thalamus
Choroid plexus
Corpus callosum (posterior part)
Longitudinal fissure
(c)
Caudal (posterior)

Figure 14.6 **Ventricles of the Brain.** (*a*) Right lateral aspect; (*b*) anterior aspect; (*c*) superior aspect of a horizontal section of the brain, showing the lateral ventricles and other features of the cerebrum.

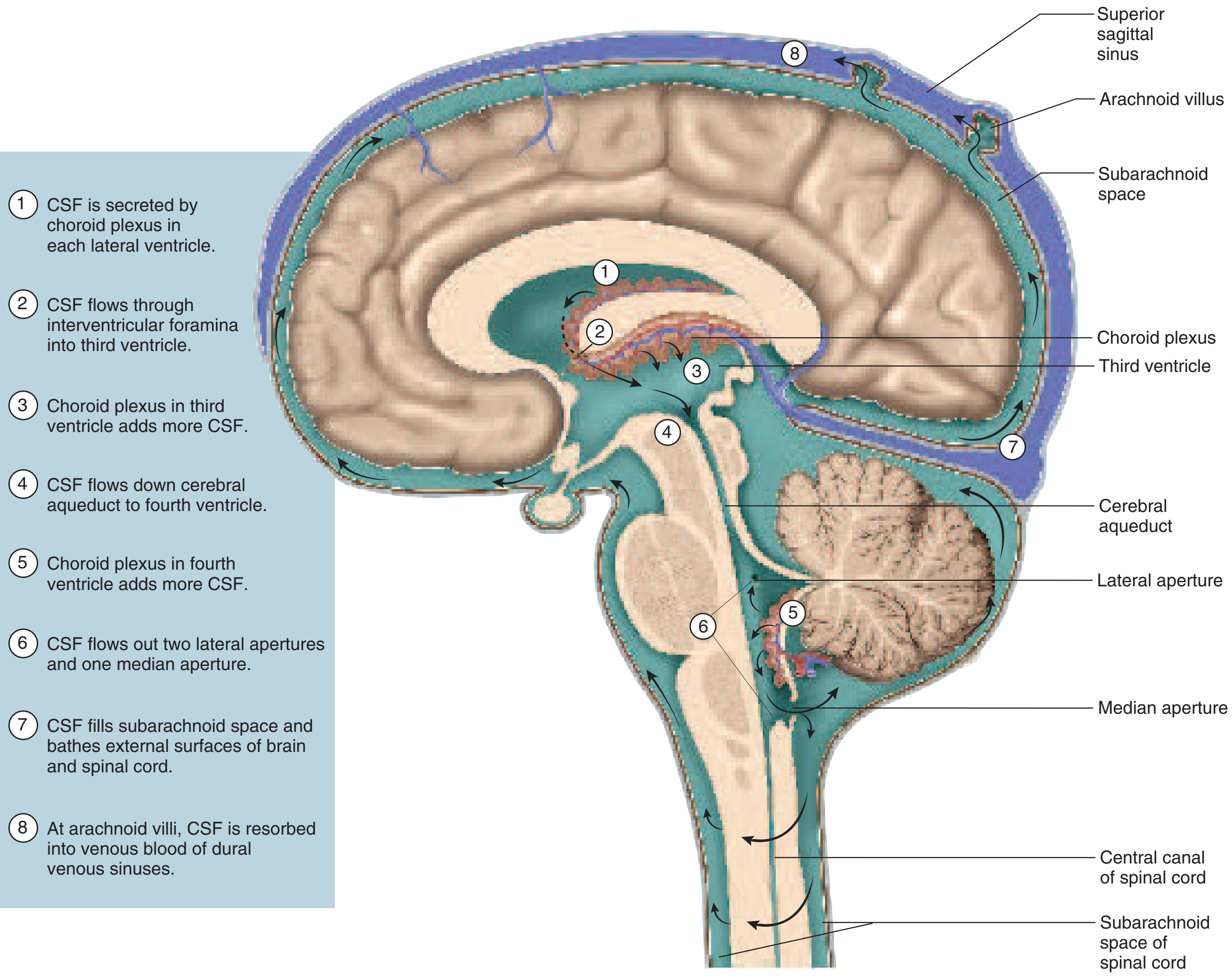
wastes from the CNS and homeostatically regulating its chemical environment. Slight changes in its composition can cause malfunctions of the nervous system. For example, a high glycine concentration disrupts temperature and blood pressure control, and a high pH causes dizziness and fainting.

The CSF is not a stationary fluid but continually flows through and around the CNS, driven partly by its own pressure and partly by rhythmic pulsations of the brain produced by each heartbeat. The CSF secreted in the lateral ventricles flows through the interventricular foramina into the third ventricle (fig. 14.7) and then down the cerebral aqueduct to the fourth ventricle. The third and fourth ventricles and their choroid plexuses add more CSF along the way. A small amount of CSF fills the central canal of the spinal cord, but ultimately, all of it escapes through three pores in the walls of the fourth ventricle—a *median aperture* and two *lateral apertures.* These lead into the subarachnoid space on the brain surface. From this space, the CSF is absorbed by **arachnoid villi,** cauliflower-like extensions of the arachnoid meninx that protrude through the dura mater into the superior sagittal sinus. CSF penetrates the walls of the arachnoid villi and mixes with the blood in the sinus.

Hydrocephalus[16] is the abnormal accumulation of CSF in the brain, usually resulting from a blockage in its

---

[16] *hydro* = water + *cephal* = head


① CSF is secreted by choroid plexus in each lateral ventricle.

② CSF flows through interventricular foramina into third ventricle.

③ Choroid plexus in third ventricle adds more CSF.

④ CSF flows down cerebral aqueduct to fourth ventricle.

⑤ Choroid plexus in fourth ventricle adds more CSF.

⑥ CSF flows out two lateral apertures and one median aperture.

⑦ CSF fills subarachnoid space and bathes external surfaces of brain and spinal cord.

⑧ At arachnoid villi, CSF is resorbed into venous blood of dural venous sinuses.

Figure 14.7 The Flow of Cerebrospinal Fluid.
Locate the sites of the obstructions that cause hydrocephalus.

route of flow and reabsorption. Such obstructions occur most often in the interventricular foramen, cerebral aqueduct, and the apertures of the fourth ventricle. The accumulated CSF makes the ventricles expand and compress the nervous tissue, with potentially fatal consequences. In a fetus or infant, it can cause the entire head to enlarge because the cranial bones are not yet fused. Good recovery can be achieved if a tube (shunt) is inserted to drain fluid from the ventricles into a vein of the neck.

Blood Supply and the Brain Barrier System

Although the brain constitutes only 2% of the adult body weight, it receives 15% of the blood (about 750 mL/min) and consumes 20% of the body's oxygen and glucose. Because neurons have such a high demand for ATP, and therefore glucose and oxygen, the constancy of blood supply is especially critical to the nervous system. A mere 10-second interruption in blood flow can cause loss of consciousness; an interruption of 1 to 2 minutes can significantly impair neural function; and 4 minutes without blood causes irreversible brain damage.

Despite its critical importance to the brain, the blood is also a source of antibodies, macrophages, and other potentially harmful agents. Consequently, there is a **brain barrier system** that strictly regulates what substances can get from the bloodstream into the tissue fluid of the brain. There are two potential points of entry that must be guarded: the blood capillaries throughout the brain tissue and the capillaries of the choroid plexuses.

At the former site, the brain is well protected by the **blood-brain barrier (BBB),** which consists mainly of the tightly joined endothelial cells that form the blood capillaries and partly of the basement membrane surrounding them. In the developing brain, astrocytes reach out and contact the capillaries with their perivascular feet. They stimulate the endothelial cells to form tight junctions, which seal off the capillaries and ensure that anything leaving the blood must pass through the cells and not between them. At the choroid plexuses, the brain is protected by a similar **blood-CSF barrier,** composed of ependymal cells joined by tight junctions. Tight junctions are absent from ependymal cells elsewhere, because it is important to allow exchanges between the brain tissue and CSF. That is, there is no brain-CSF barrier.

The brain barrier system (BBS) is highly permeable to water, glucose, and lipid-soluble substances such as oxygen, carbon dioxide, alcohol, caffeine, nicotine, and anesthetics. It is slightly permeable to sodium, potassium, chloride, and the waste products urea and creatinine. While the BBS is an important protective device, it is an obstacle to the delivery of drugs to treat brain diseases. Trauma and inflammation sometimes damage the BBS and allow pathogens to enter the brain tissue. Furthermore, there are places called **circumventricular organs (CVOs)** in the third and fourth ventricles where the barrier system is absent and the blood does have direct access to the brain. These enable the brain to monitor and respond to fluctuations in blood glucose, pH, osmolarity, and other variables. Unfortunately, the CVOs also afford a route for the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV, the AIDS virus) to invade the brain.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

4. Name the three meninges from superficial to deep.
5. Describe three functions of the cerebrospinal fluid.
6. Where does the CSF originate and what route does it take through and around the CNS?
7. Name the two components of the brain barrier system and explain the importance of this system.

The Hindbrain and Midbrain

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- list the components of the hindbrain and midbrain and their functions;
- discuss the role of the cerebellum in movement and equilibrium;
- define the term *brainstem* and describe its anatomical relationship to the cerebellum and forebrain; and
- describe the location and functions of the reticular formation.

Our study of the brain is organized around the five secondary vesicles of the embryonic brain and their mature derivatives. We proceed in a caudal to rostral direction, beginning with the hindbrain and its relatively simple functions and progressing to the forebrain, the seat of such complex functions as thought, memory, and emotion.

The Medulla Oblongata

As noted earlier, the embryonic hindbrain differentiates into two subdivisions, the myelencephalon and metencephalon (see fig. 14.4). The myelencephalon develops into just one structure, the **medulla oblongata** (meh-DULL-uh OB-long-GAH-ta). The medulla is about 3 cm long and superficially looks like an extension of the spinal cord, but slightly wider. Significant differences are seen, however, on closer inspection of its gross and microscopic anatomy.

The anterior surface bears a pair of clublike ridges, the **pyramids.** Resembling two side-by-side baseball bats, the pyramids are wider at the rostral end, taper caudally, and are separated by an *anterior median fissure* continuous with that of the spinal cord (fig. 14.8). The pyramids

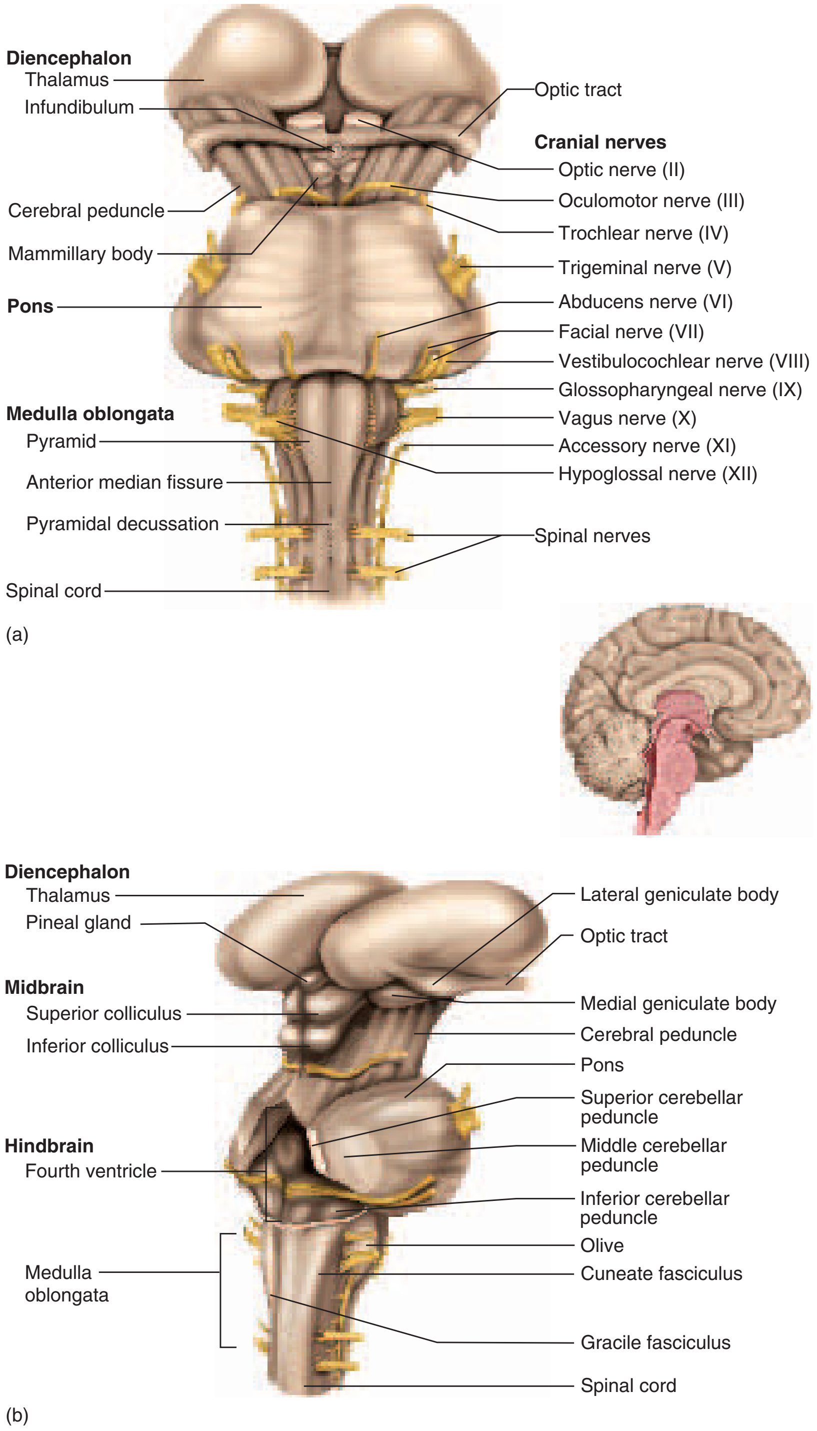

Diencephalon
Thalamus
Infundibulum
Cerebral peduncle
Mammillary body
Pons
Medulla oblongata
Pyramid
Anterior median fissure
Pyramidal decussation
Spinal cord
(a)
Optic tract
Cranial nerves
Optic nerve (II)
Oculomotor nerve (III)
Trochlear nerve (IV)
Trigeminal nerve (V)
Abducens nerve (VI)
Facial nerve (VII)
Vestibulocochlear nerve (VIII)
Glossopharyngeal nerve (IX)
Vagus nerve (X)
Accessory nerve (XI)
Hypoglossal nerve (XII)
Spinal nerves
Diencephalon
Thalamus
Pineal gland
Midbrain
Superior colliculus
Inferior colliculus
Hindbrain
Fourth ventricle
Medulla oblongata
(b)
Lateral geniculate body
Optic tract
Medial geniculate body
Cerebral peduncle
Pons
Superior cerebellar peduncle
Middle cerebellar peduncle
Inferior cerebellar peduncle
Olive
Cuneate fasciculus
Gracile fasciculus
Spinal cord

Figure 14.8 **The Brainstem.** (*a*) Ventral aspect; (*b*) right dorsolateral aspect. Some authorities do not include the diencephalon in the brainstem.

contain *corticospinal tracts* of nerve fibers that carry motor signals from the cerebrum to the spinal cord, ultimately to stimulate the skeletal muscles. Most of these motor nerve fibers decussate at a visible point near the caudal end of the pyramids. As a result, each side of the brain controls muscles on the contralateral side of the body. (This pertains only to muscles below the head.)

Lateral to each pyramid is an elevated area called the **olive.** It contains a wavy layer of gray matter, the **inferior olivary nucleus,** which is a center that receives information from many levels of the brain and spinal cord and relays it mainly to the cerebellum. Dorsally, the medulla exhibits ridges called the *gracile fasciculus* and *cuneate fasciculus.* These are continuations of the spinal cord tracts of the same names that carry sensory signals to the brain.

In addition to ascending and descending nerve tracts, the medulla contains sensory nuclei that receive input from the taste buds, pharynx, and viscera of the thoracic and abdominal cavities, and motor nuclei that control several primitive visceral and somatic functions. Some motor nuclei of the medulla discussed later in the book are:

- the **cardiac center,** which adjusts the rate and force of the heartbeat;
- the **vasomotor center,** which adjusts blood vessel diameter to regulate blood pressure and reroute blood from one part of the body to another; and
- two **respiratory centers,** which control the rate and depth of breathing.

Other nuclei of the medulla are concerned with speech, coughing, sneezing, salivation, swallowing, gagging, vomiting, gastrointestinal secretion, sweating, and movements of the tongue and head. Many of the medulla's sensory and motor functions are mediated through the last four cranial nerves, which begin or end here: cranial nerves IX (glossopharyngeal), X (vagus), XI (accessory), and XII (hypoglossal).

The Pons and Cerebellum

The embryonic metencephalon develops into two structures, the pons and cerebellum.

The Pons

The **pons**[17] appears as an anterior bulge in the brainstem rostral to the medulla (fig. 14.8). Its white matter includes tracts that conduct signals from the cerebrum down to the cerebellum and medulla, and tracts that carry sensory signals up to the thalamus. Cranial nerve V (trigeminal) arises from the pons, and cranial nerves VI (abducens), VII (facial), and VIII (vestibulocochlear) arise from the junction of the pons and medulla. The pons contains nuclei that relay signals from the cerebrum to the cerebellum, and nuclei concerned with sleep, hearing, equilibrium, taste, eye movements, facial expressions, facial sensation, respiration, swallowing, bladder control, and posture.

The Cerebellum

The **cerebellum** is the largest part of the hindbrain (fig. 14.9). It consists of right and left **cerebellar hemispheres** connected by a narrow bridgelike **vermis.**[18] Three pairs of stalklike **cerebellar peduncles**[19] (peh-DUN-culs) connect the cerebellum to the brainstem: the *inferior peduncles* to the medulla oblongata, the *middle peduncles* to the pons, and the *superior peduncles* to the midbrain. These are composed of the nerve fibers that carry all signals between the cerebellum and the rest of the brain. The cerebellum receives most of its input from the pons, via the middle peduncles, but the spinocerebellar tracts enter through the inferior peduncles. Motor output leaves the cerebellum by way of the superior peduncles.

Each hemisphere exhibits slender, parallel folds called **folia**[20] (gyri) separated by shallow sulci. The cerebellum has a surface cortex of gray matter and a deeper layer of white matter. In a sagittal section, the white matter, called the **arbor vitae,**[21] exhibits a branching, fernlike pattern. Each hemisphere has four pairs of **deep nuclei,** masses of gray matter embedded in the white matter. All input to the cerebellum goes to the cortex and all of its output comes from the deep nuclei.

The cerebellum contains about 100 billion neurons. The most distinctive of these are the **Purkinje**[22] (pur-KIN-jee) **cells**—unusually large, globose neurons with a tremendous profusion of dendrites (see fig. 12.5, p. 448), arranged in a single row in the cortex. Their axons travel to the deep nuclei, where they synapse on output neurons that issue fibers to the brainstem.

The cerebellum is mostly concerned with muscular coordination and will be discussed in a later section on motor control. Evidence is also emerging that the cerebellum plays a role in judging the passage of time, in some other cognitive processes (awareness, judgment, and memory), and in emotion.

The Midbrain

The embryonic mesencephalon develops into just one mature brain structure, the **midbrain**—a short segment of the brainstem that connects the hindbrain and fore-

---

[17] *pons* = bridge

[18] *verm* = worm

[19] *ped* = foot + *uncle* = little

[20] *foli* = leaf

[21] "tree of life"

[22] Johannes E. von Purkinje (1787–1869), Bohemian anatomist

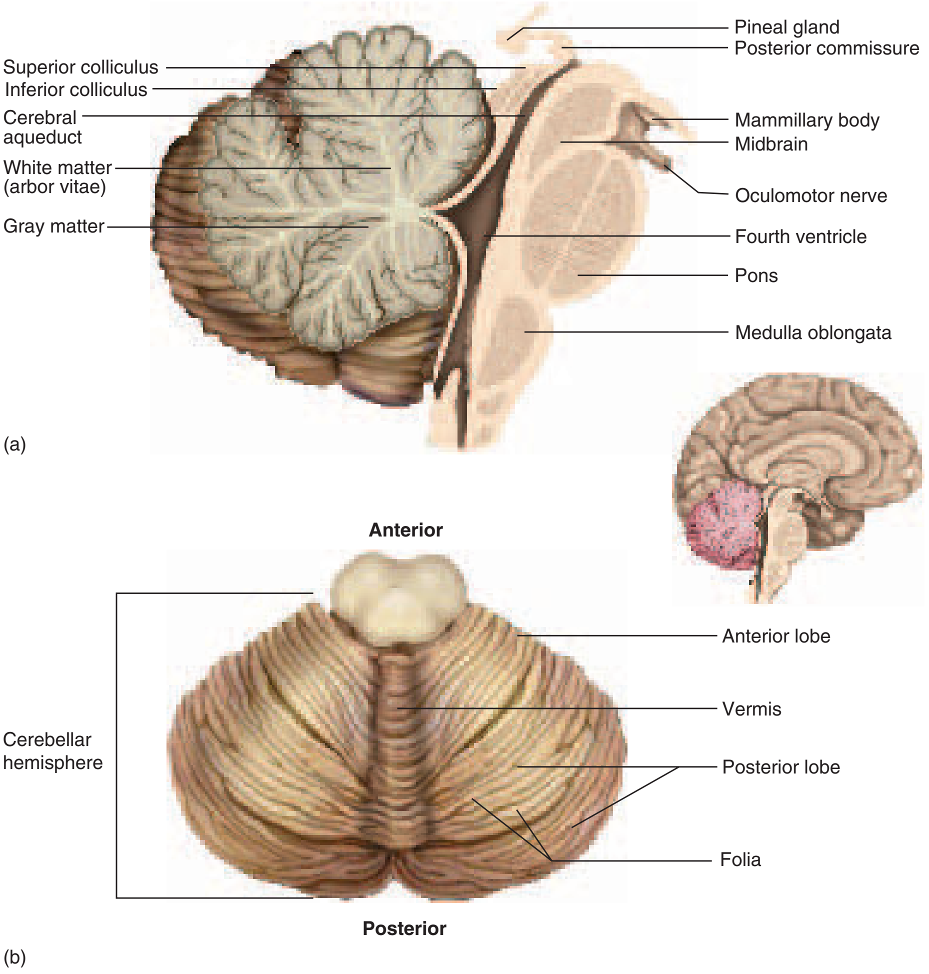

Pineal gland
Posterior commissure
Superior colliculus
Inferior colliculus
Cerebral aqueduct
Mammillary body
Midbrain
White matter (arbor vitae)
Oculomotor nerve
Gray matter
Fourth ventricle
Pons
Medulla oblongata
(a)
Anterior
Anterior lobe
Vermis
Cerebellar hemisphere
Posterior lobe
Folia
Posterior
(b)

Figure 14.9 **The Cerebellum.** (*a*) Midsagittal section, showing relationship to the brainstem; (*b*) superior aspect.

brain (see figs. 14.1*d*, 14.2*b*, and 14.8). It contains the cerebral aqueduct and gives rise to two cranial nerves that control eye movements: cranial nerve III (oculomotor) and IV (trochlear). Some major regions of the midbrain are (fig. 14.10):

- The **cerebral peduncles,** which help to anchor the cerebrum to the brainstem. The corticospinal tracts pass through the peduncles on their way to the medulla.
- The **tegmentum,**[23] the main mass of the midbrain, located between the cerebral peduncles and cerebral aqueduct. It contains the **red nucleus,** which has a pink color in life because of its high density of blood vessels. Fibers from the red nucleus form the *rubrospinal tract* in most mammals, but in humans its connections go mainly to and from the cerebellum, with which it collaborates in fine motor control.
- The **substantia nigra**[24] (sub-STAN-she-uh NY-gruh), a dark gray to black nucleus pigmented with melanin, located between the peduncles and the tegmentum. This is a motor center that relays inhibitory signals to the thalamus and basal nuclei (both of which are discussed later). Degeneration of the neurons in the substantia nigra leads to the muscle tremors of Parkinson disease (see insight 12.4, p. 475).
- The **central (periaqueductal) gray matter,** a large arrowhead-shaped region of gray matter surrounding the cerebral aqueduct. It is involved with the

---

[23] *tegmen* = cover

[24] *substantia* = substance + *nigra* = black

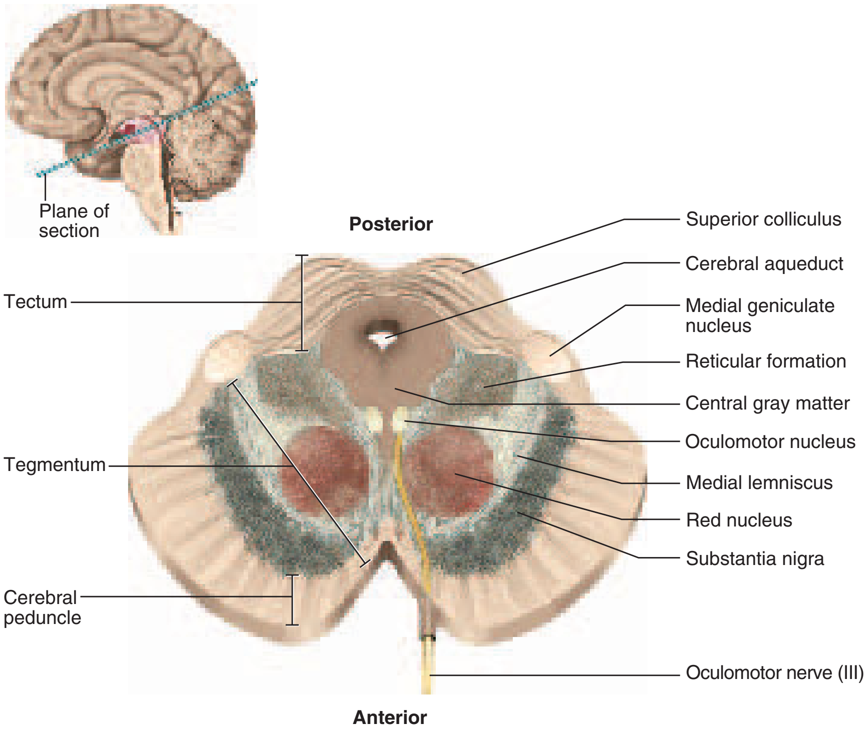

Plane of section
Posterior
Tectum
Tegmentum
Cerebral peduncle
Superior colliculus
Cerebral aqueduct
Medial geniculate nucleus
Reticular formation
Central gray matter
Oculomotor nucleus
Medial lemniscus
Red nucleus
Substantia nigra
Oculomotor nerve (III)
Anterior

Figure 14.10 **Cross Section of the Midbrain.**

reticulospinal tracts in controlling our awareness of pain (see chapter 16).

- The **tectum,**[25] a rooflike region dorsal to the aqueduct. It consists of four nuclei, the **corpora quadrigemina,**[26] which bulge from the midbrain roof. The two superior nuclei, called the **superior colliculi**[27] (col-LIC-you-lye), function in visual attention, visually tracking moving objects, and such reflexes as turning the eyes and head in response to a visual stimulus, for example to look at something that you catch sight of in your peripheral vision. The two **inferior colliculi** receive afferent signals from the inner ear and relay them to other parts of the brain, especially the thalamus. Among other functions, they mediate the reflexive turning of the head in response to a sound.
- The **medial lemniscus,** a continuation of the gracile and cuneate tracts of the spinal cord and brainstem.

The *reticular formation,* discussed next, is a prominent feature of the midbrain but is not limited to this region.

Think About It

Why are the inferior colliculi shown in figure 14.9 but not in figure 14.10? How are these two figures related?

The Reticular Formation

Running vertically through the core of the midbrain, pons, and medulla is a loosely organized core of gray matter called the **reticular formation,** composed of more than 100 small nuclei, including several of those already discussed, mingled with bundles of nerve fibers (fig. 14.11). The functions of the reticular formation include the following:

- **Somatic motor control.** Some motor neurons of the cerebral cortex send their axons to reticular formation nuclei, which then give rise to the *reticulospinal tracts* of the spinal cord. These tracts modulate (adjust) muscle contraction to maintain tone, balance, and posture. The reticular formation also relays signals from the eyes and ears to the cerebellum so the cerebellum can integrate visual, auditory, and vestibular (balance and motion) stimuli into its role in motor coordination. Other reticular formation motor nuclei include *gaze centers,* which

---

[25] *tectum* = roof, cover
[26] *corpora* = bodies + *quadrigemina* = quadruplets
[27] *colli* = hill + *cul* = little

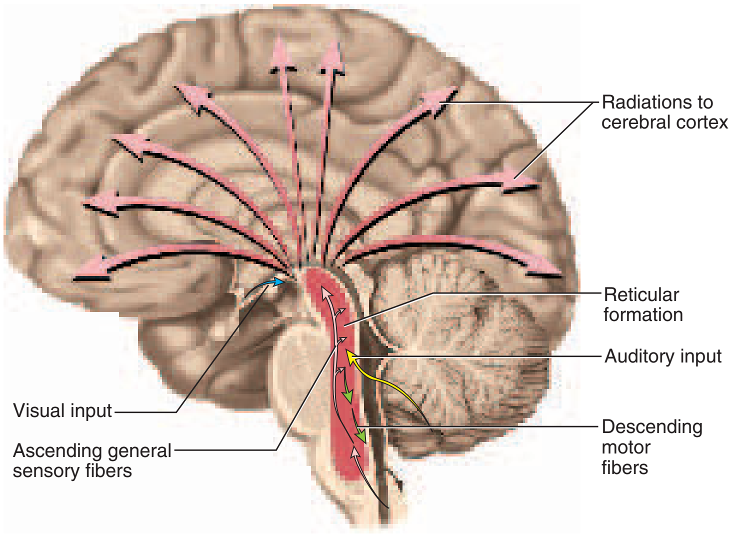


Figure 14.11 **The Reticular Formation.** The formation consists of over 100 nuclei scattered through the brainstem region indicated in *red*. *Arrows* represent the breadth of its projections to and from the cerebral cortex and other CNS regions.

enable the eyes to track and fixate on objects, and **central pattern generators**—neuronal pools that produce rhythmic signals to the muscles of breathing and swallowing.

- **Cardiovascular control.** The reticular formation includes the cardiac center and vasomotor center of the medulla oblongata.
- **Pain modulation.** The reticular formation is the origin of the descending analgesic pathways mentioned in the earlier description of the reticulospinal tracts.
- **Sleep and consciousness.** The reticular formation has projections to the cerebral cortex and thalamus that allow it some control over what sensory signals reach the cerebrum and come to our conscious attention. It plays a central role in states of consciousness such as alertness and sleep. Injury to the reticular formation can result in irreversible coma. General anesthetics work by blocking signal transmission through the reticular formation.

The reticular formation also is involved in **habituation**—a process in which the brain learns to ignore repetitive, inconsequential stimuli while remaining sensitive to others. In a noisy city, for example, a person can sleep through traffic sounds but wake promptly to the sound of an alarm clock or a crying baby. Reticular formation nuclei that modulate activity of the cerebral cortex are called the *reticular activating system* or *extrathalamic cortical modulatory system.*

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

8. Name the visceral functions controlled by nuclei of the medulla.
9. Describe the general functions of the cerebellum.
10. What are some functions of the midbrain nuclei?
11. Describe the reticular formation and list several of its functions.

The Forebrain

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- name the three major components of the diencephalon and describe their locations and functions;
- identify the five lobes of the cerebrum;
- describe the three types of tracts in the cerebral white matter;
- describe the distinctive cell types and histological arrangement of the cerebral cortex; and
- describe the location and functions of the basal nuclei and limbic system.

The forebrain consists of the diencephalon and telencephalon. The diencephalon encloses the third ventricle and is the most rostral part of the brainstem. The telencephalon develops chiefly into the cerebrum.

The Diencephalon

The embryonic diencephalon has three major derivatives: the *thalamus, hypothalamus,* and *epithalamus.*

The Thalamus

The **thalamus**[28] (fig. 14.12) is about four-fifths of the diencephalon. It consists of an oval mass of gray matter that underlies each cerebral hemisphere, protrudes into the lateral ventricle, and medially protrudes into the third ventricle. In about 70% of people, a narrow *intermediate mass* connects the right and left halves to each other.

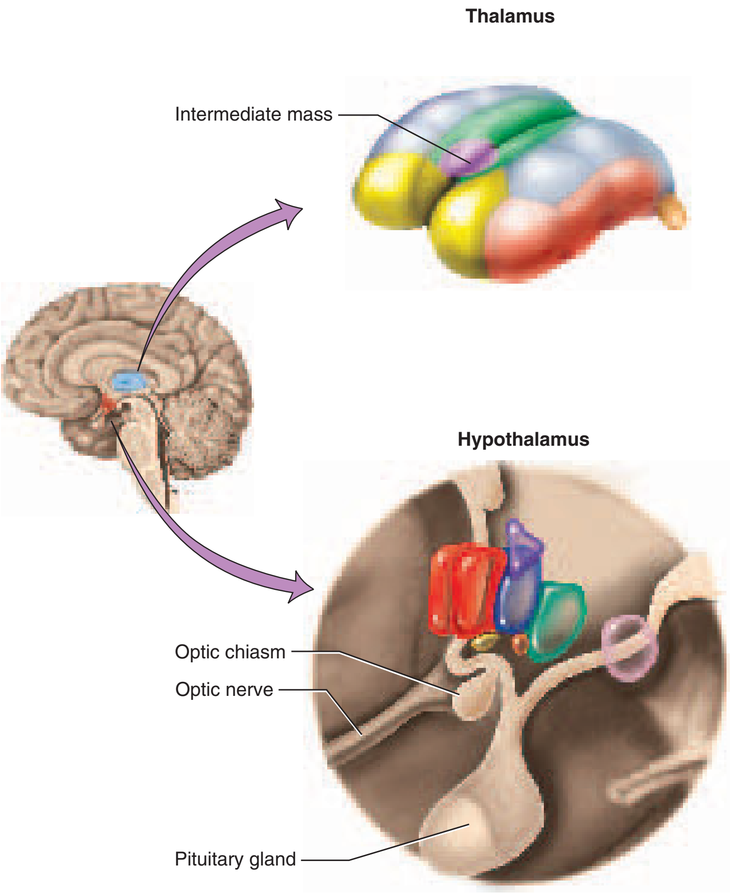
The thalamus is the "gateway to the cerebral cortex." Nearly all sensory input and other information going to the cerebrum passes by way of synapses in the thalamus, and the thalamus receives input from several areas of the cerebrum involved in motor control. The thalamus has several nuclei that integrate sensory information originating throughout the body and direct it to the appropriate processing centers in the cerebrum. It is heavily interconnected with the limbic system (discussed later) and thus involved in its emotional and memory functions. It is also involved in arousal, eye movements, taste, smell, hearing, equilibrium, and the somesthetic senses. Its involvement in motor and sensory circuits is further discussed later in this chapter and in chapter 16.

The Hypothalamus

The **hypothalamus** (fig. 14.12) forms part of the walls and floor of the third ventricle. It extends anteriorly to the *optic chiasm* (ky-AZ-um), where the optic nerves meet, and posteriorly to a pair of humps called the *mammil-*

---

[28] *thalamus* = chamber, inner room



🟦	Lateral group	Somesthetic input to association areas; contributes to limbic system
🟩	Medial group	Emotional input to prefrontal cortex; awareness of emotions
🟥	Ventral group	Somesthetic input to postcentral gyrus; signals from cerebellum and basal nuclei to primary motor and motor association areas
🟨	Anterior group	Part of limbic system
🟧	Lateral geniculate nucleus	Visual signals to occipital lobe

■	Mammillary body	Relays signals from limbic system to thalamus
🟪	Paraventricular nucleus	Produces oxytocin (involved in childbirth, lactation, orgasm); autonomic motor effects; control of posterior pituitary
🟦	Anterior nucleus	Thirst center
🟩	Ventromedial nucleus	Satiety center (supresses hunger); emotion
🟥	Preoptic nucleus	Thermoregulation; control of female reproductive cycle; sexual behavior
🟧	Supraoptic nucleus	Produces antidiuretic hormone (involved in water conservation); control of posterior pituitary
🟨	Suprachiasmatic nucleus	Biological clock; regulates circadian rhythms and female reproductive cycle

Figure 14.12 The Diencephalon. Only some of the nuclei of the thalamus and hypothalamus are shown, and only some of their functions listed. These lists are by no means complete.

lary[29] *bodies.* The mammillary bodies relay signals from the limbic system to the thalamus. The pituitary gland is attached to the hypothalamus by a stalk *(infundibulum)* between the optic chiasm and mammillary bodies.

The hypothalamus is the major control center of the autonomic nervous system and endocrine system and plays an essential role in the homeostatic regulation of nearly all organs of the body. Its nuclei include centers concerned with a wide variety of visceral functions.

- **Hormone secretion.** The hypothalamus secretes hormones that control the anterior pituitary gland. Acting through the pituitary, the hypothalamus regulates growth, metabolism, reproduction, and stress responses. The hypothalamus also produces two hormones that are stored in the posterior pituitary gland, concerned with labor contractions, lactation, and water conservation. These relationships are explored especially in chapter 17.
- **Autonomic effects.** The hypothalamus is a major integrating center for the autonomic nervous system. It sends descending fibers to nuclei lower in the brainstem that influence heart rate, blood pressure, gastrointestinal secretion and motility, and pupillary diameter, among other functions.
- **Thermoregulation.** The *hypothalamic thermostat* is a nucleus that monitors blood temperature. When the temperature becomes too high or too low, the thermostat signals other hypothalamic nuclei—the *heat-losing center* or *heat-producing center,* respectively, which control cutaneous vasodilation and vasoconstriction, sweating, shivering, and piloerection.
- **Food and water intake.** Neurons of the *hunger* and *satiety centers* monitor blood glucose and amino acid levels and produce sensations of hunger and satiety. Hypothalamic neurons called *osmoreceptors* monitor the osmolarity of the blood and stimulate the hypothalamic *thirst center* when we are dehydrated. Dehydration also stimulates the hypothalamus to produce *antidiuretic hormone,* which conserves water by reducing urine output.
- **Sleep and circadian rhythms.** The caudal part of the hypothalamus is part of the reticular formation. It contains nuclei that regulate falling asleep and waking. Superior to the optic chiasm, the hypothalamus contains a *suprachiasmatic nucleus* that controls our 24-hour (circadian) rhythm of activity.
- **Memory.** The mammillary bodies of the hypothalamus lie in the pathway of signals traveling from the hippocampus, an important memory center of the brain, to the thalamus. Thus they are important in memory, and lesions to the mammillary bodies result in memory deficits. (Memory is discussed more fully later in this chapter.)
- **Emotional behavior.** Hypothalamic centers are involved in a variety of emotional responses including anger, aggression, fear, pleasure, and contentment; and in sexual drive, copulation, and orgasm.

The Epithalamus

The **epithalamus** consists mainly of the **pineal gland** (an endocrine gland discussed in chapter 17), the **habenula** (a relay from the limbic system to the midbrain), and a thin roof over the third ventricle.

The Cerebrum

The embryonic telencephalon becomes the cerebrum, the largest and most conspicuous part of the human brain. Your cerebrum enables you to turn these pages, read and comprehend the words, remember ideas, talk about them with your peers, and take an examination. It is the seat of your sensory perception, memory, thought, judgment, and voluntary motor actions. It is the most challenging frontier of neurobiology.

Gross Anatomy

The surface of the cerebrum, including its gray matter (cerebral cortex) and part of the white matter, is folded into gyri that allow a greater amount of cortex to fit in the cranial cavity. These folds give the cerebrum a surface area of about 2,500 cm^2, comparable to 4½ pages of this book. If the cerebrum were smooth-surfaced, it would have only one-third as much area and proportionately less information-processing capability. This extensive folding is one of the greatest differences between the human brain and the relatively smooth-surfaced brains of most other mammals.

Some gyri have consistent and predictable anatomy, while others vary from brain to brain and from the right hemisphere to the left. Certain unusually prominent sulci divide each hemisphere into five anatomically and functionally distinct lobes, listed next. The first four lobes are visible superficially and are named for the cranial bones overlying them (fig. 14.13); the fifth lobe is not visible from the surface.

1. The **frontal lobe** lies immediately behind the frontal bone, superior to the orbits. Its posterior boundary is the **central sulcus.** The frontal lobe is chiefly concerned with voluntary motor functions, motivation, foresight, planning, memory, mood, emotion, social judgment, and aggression.
2. The **parietal lobe** forms the uppermost part of the brain and underlies the parietal bone. Its rostral

---

[29] *mammill* = nipple

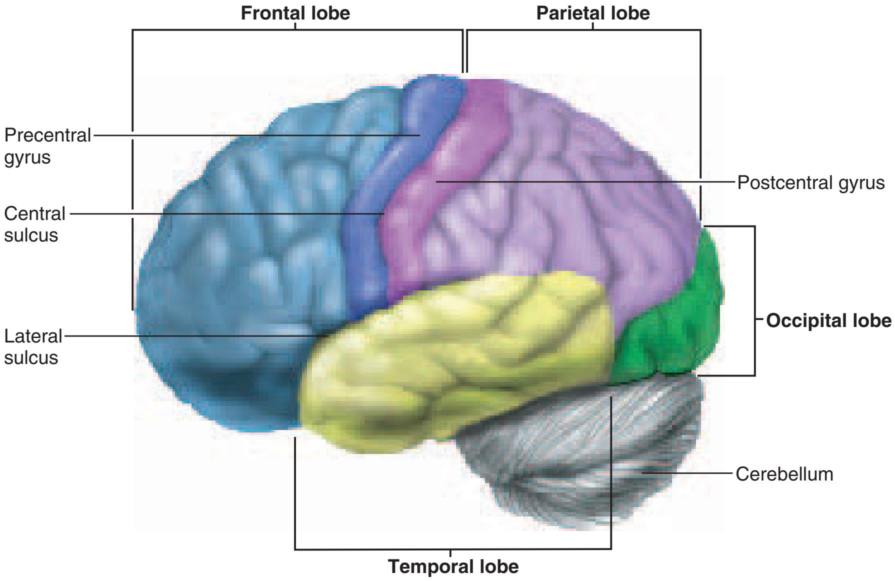


Figure 14.13 **Lobes of the Cerebrum.** The insula is not visible from the surface (see fig. 14.2*a*).

boundary is the central sulcus and its caudal boundary is the **parieto-occipital sulcus,** visible on the medial surface of each hemisphere (see fig. 14.1*d*). This lobe is concerned with the sensory reception and integration of somesthetic, taste, and some visual information.

3. The **occipital lobe** is at the rear of the head underlying the occipital bone. It is the principal visual center of the brain.
4. The **temporal lobe** is a lateral, horizontal lobe deep to the temporal bone, separated from the parietal lobe above it by a deep **lateral sulcus.** It is concerned with hearing, smell, learning, memory, visual recognition, and emotional behavior.
5. The **insula**[30] is a small mass of cortex deep to the lateral sulcus, made visible only by retracting or cutting away some of the overlying cerebrum (see figs. 14.2*a,* 14.6*c,* and 14.16). It is not as accessible to study in living people as other parts of the cortex and is still little-known territory. It apparently plays roles in understanding spoken language, in the sense of taste, and in integrating sensory information from visceral receptors.

The Cerebral White Matter

Most of the volume of the cerebrum is white matter. This is composed of glia and myelinated nerve fibers that transmit signals from one region of the cerebrum to another and between the cerebrum and lower brain centers. These fibers are arranged in three types of tracts (fig. 14.14):

1. **Projection tracts** extend vertically from higher to lower brain or spinal cord centers and carry information between the cerebrum and the rest of the body. The corticospinal tracts, for example, carry motor signals from the cerebrum to the brainstem and spinal cord. Other projection tracts carry signals upward to the cerebral cortex. Superior to the brainstem, such tracts form a dense band called the *internal capsule* between the thalamus and basal nuclei (described shortly), then radiate in a diverging, fanlike array (the *corona radiata*[31]) to specific areas of the cortex.
2. **Commissural tracts** cross from one cerebral hemisphere to the other through bridges called **commissures** (COM-ih-shurs). The great majority of commissural fibers pass through the large C-shaped corpus callosum (see fig. 14.1*d*), which forms the floor of the longitudinal fissure. A few tracts pass through the much smaller **anterior** and **posterior commissures.** Commissural tracts enable the two sides of the cerebrum to communicate with each other.
3. **Association tracts** connect different regions of the same hemisphere. *Long association fibers* connect different lobes of a cerebral hemisphere to each other, whereas *short association fibers* connect

---

[30] *insula* = island

[31] *corona* = crown + *radiata* = radiating

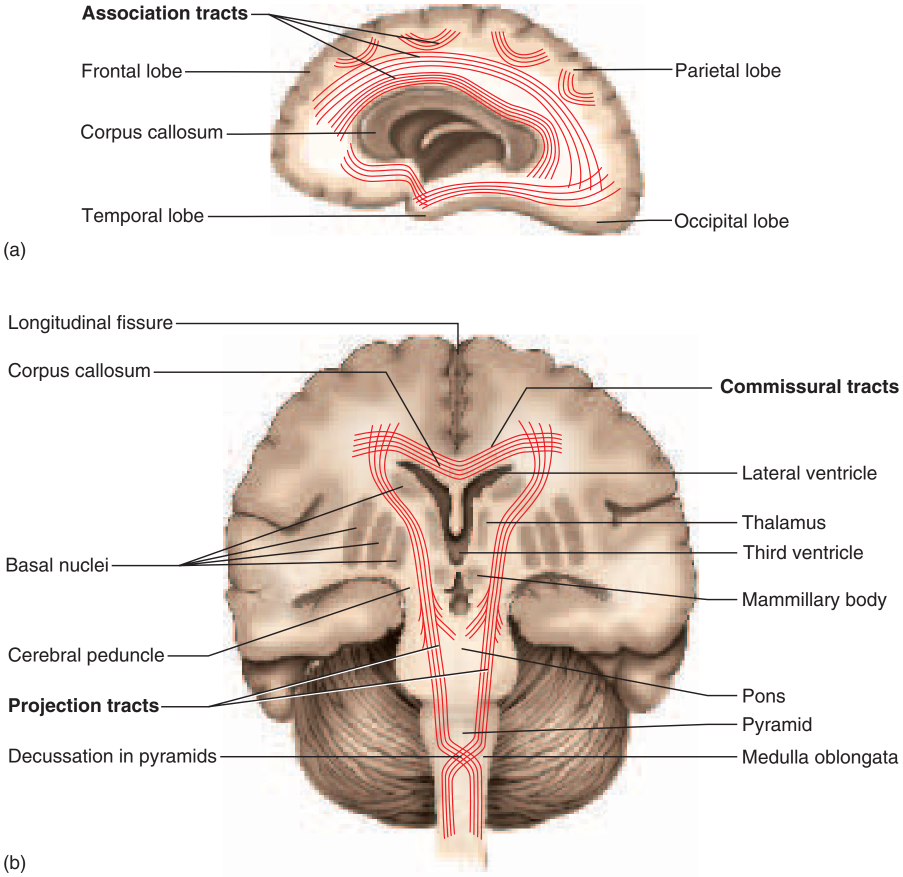

Association tracts
Frontal lobe
Corpus callosum
Temporal lobe
Parietal lobe
Occipital lobe
(a)
Longitudinal fissure
Corpus callosum
Basal nuclei
Cerebral peduncle
Projection tracts
Decussation in pyramids
Commissural tracts
Lateral ventricle
Thalamus
Third ventricle
Mammillary body
Pons
Pyramid
Medulla oblongata
(b)

Figure 14.14 **Tracts of Cerebral White Matter.** (*a*) Left lateral aspect, showing association tracts; (*b*) frontal section, showing commissural and projection tracts.
What route can commissural tracts take other than the one shown here?

Chapter 14

different gyri within a single lobe. Among their roles, association tracts link perceptual and memory centers of the brain; for example, they enable you to smell a rose, name it, and picture what it looks like.

The Cerebral Cortex

Neural integration is carried out in the gray matter of the cerebrum, which is found in three places—the cerebral cortex, basal nuclei, and limbic system. We begin with the **cerebral cortex,**[32] a layer covering the surface of the hemispheres. Even though it is only 2 to 3 mm thick, the cortex constitutes about 40% of the mass of the brain and contains 14 to 16 billion neurons. It is composed of two principal types of neurons (fig. 14.15): (1) **Stellate cells** have spheroidal somas with dendrites projecting for short distances in all directions. They are concerned largely with receiving sensory input and processing information on a local level. (2) **Pyramidal cells** are tall and conical (triangular in tissue sections). Their apex points toward the brain surface and has a thick dendrite with many branches and small, knobby *dendritic spines.* The base gives rise to horizontally oriented dendrites and an axon that passes into the white matter. Pyramidal cells are the output neurons of the cerebrum—they transmit signals to other parts of the CNS. Their axons have collaterals that synapse with other neurons in the cortex or in deeper regions of the brain.

About 90% of the human cerebral cortex is a six-layered tissue called **neocortex**[33] because of its relatively recent evolutionary origin. Although vertebrates have existed for about 600 million years, the neocortex did not develop significantly until about 60 million years ago, when there was a sharp increase in the diversity of mammals. It attained its highest development by

---

[32] *cortex* = bark, rind

[33] *neo* = new

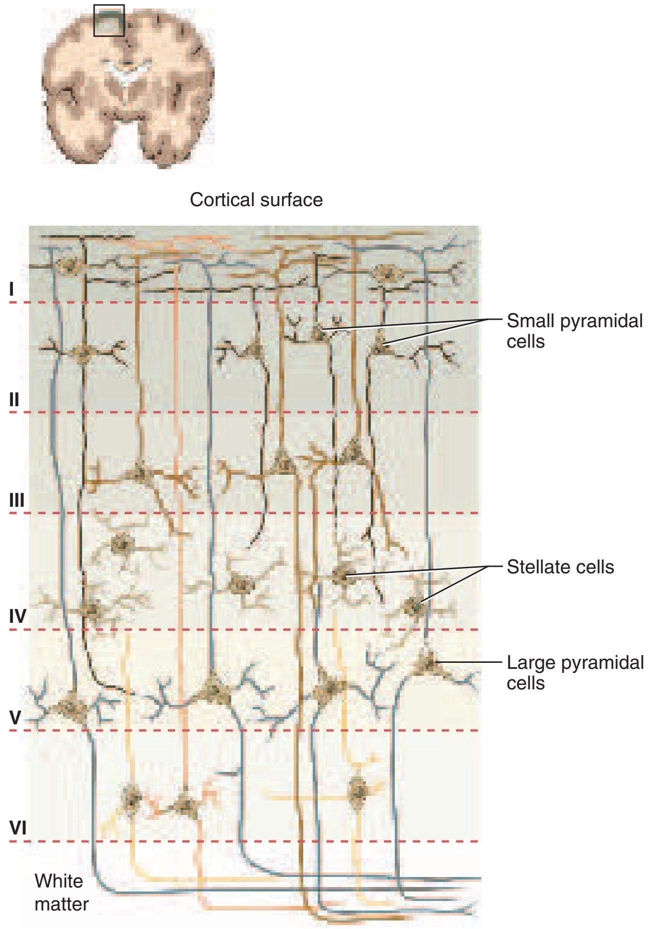


Figure 14.15 **Histology of the Neocortex.** Neurons are arranged in six layers.
Are the long processes leading upward from each pyramidal cell body dendrites or axons?

far in the primates. The six layers of neocortex, numbered in figure 14.15, vary from one part of the cerebrum to another in relative thickness, cellular composition, synaptic connections, size of the neurons, and destination of their axons. Layer IV is thickest in sensory regions and layer V in motor regions, for example. All axons that leave the cortex and enter the white matter arise from layers III, V, and VI.

Some regions of cerebral cortex have fewer than six layers. The earliest type of cerebral cortex to appear in vertebrate evolution was a one- to five-layered tissue called *paleocortex* (PALE-ee-oh-cor-tex), limited in humans to part of the insula and certain areas of the temporal lobe concerned with smell. The next to evolve was a three-layered *archicortex* (AR-kee-cor-tex), found in the human hippocampus. The neocortex was the last to evolve.

The Basal Nuclei

The **basal nuclei** are masses of cerebral gray matter buried deep in the white matter, lateral to the thalamus (fig. 14.16). They are often called *basal ganglia,* but the word *ganglion* is best restricted to clusters of neurons outside the CNS. Neuroanatomists disagree on how many brain centers to classify as basal nuclei, but agree on at least three: the **caudate**[34] **nucleus, putamen,**[35] and **globus pallidus.**[36] The putamen and globus pallidus are also collectively called the *lentiform*[37] *nucleus,* while the putamen and caudate nucleus are collectively called the *corpus striatum* after their striped appearance. The basal nuclei receive input from the substantia nigra of the midbrain and motor areas of the cerebral cortex and send signals back to both of these locations. They are involved in motor control and are further discussed in a later section on that topic.

The Limbic System

The **limbic**[38] **system,** named for the medial border of the temporal lobe, is a loop of cortical structures surrounding the corpus callosum and thalamus (fig. 14.17). It includes nuclei called the *amygdala* and *hippocampus* on the medial side of the temporal lobe, a tract called the *fornix* leading to the mammillary bodies of the hypothalamus, and a fold of cortex called the *cingulate gyrus* that arches over the corpus callosum. From the earliest investigations of this system in the 1930s, it was thought to be involved in emotion and smell; later, memory was added to the list of functions. Recently, some neuroanatomists have argued that the components of this system have so little in common that there is no point to calling it the limbic system. But whether or not this term is abandoned, it is still agreed that the amygdala is important in emotion and the hippocampus in memory. These functions are explored in later sections of this chapter.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

12. What are the three major components of the diencephalon? Which ventricle does it enclose?
13. What is the role of the thalamus in sensory function?
14. List at least six functions of the hypothalamus.
15. Name the five lobes of the cerebrum and describe their locations and boundaries.

---

[34] *caudate* = tailed, tail-like
[35] *putam* = pod, husk
[36] *glob* = globe, ball + *pall* = pale
[37] *lenti* = lens + *form* = shape
[38] *limbus* = border

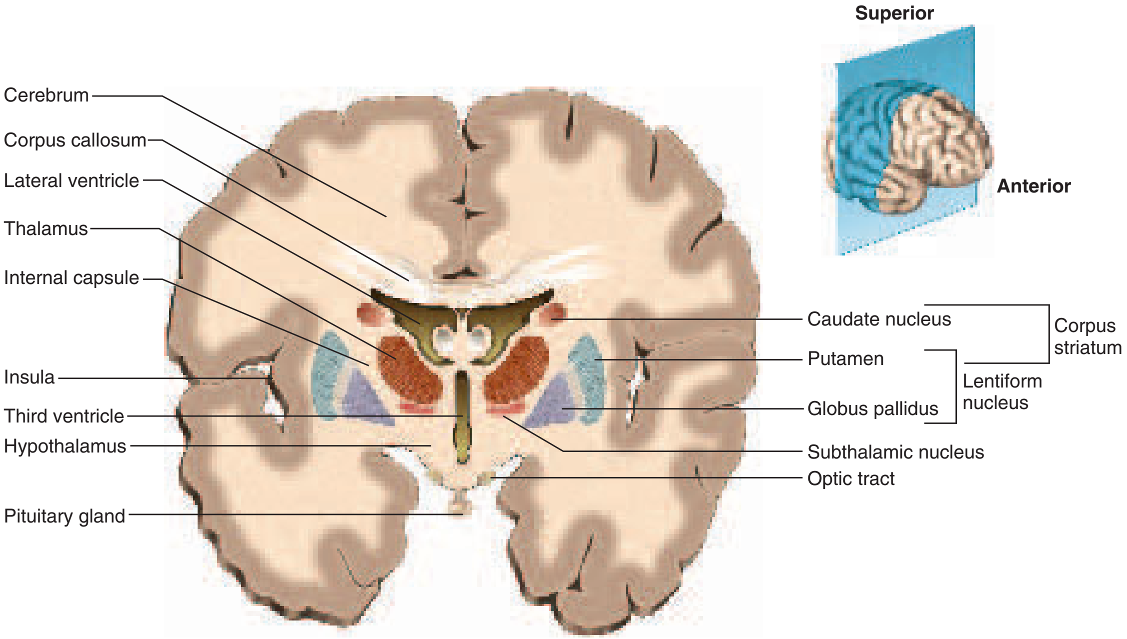

Superior
Anterior
Cerebrum
Corpus callosum
Lateral ventricle
Thalamus
Internal capsule
Insula
Third ventricle
Hypothalamus
Pituitary gland
Caudate nucleus
Putamen
Globus pallidus
Subthalamic nucleus
Optic tract
Corpus striatum
Lentiform nucleus

Figure 14.16 The Basal Nuclei (frontal section of the brain).

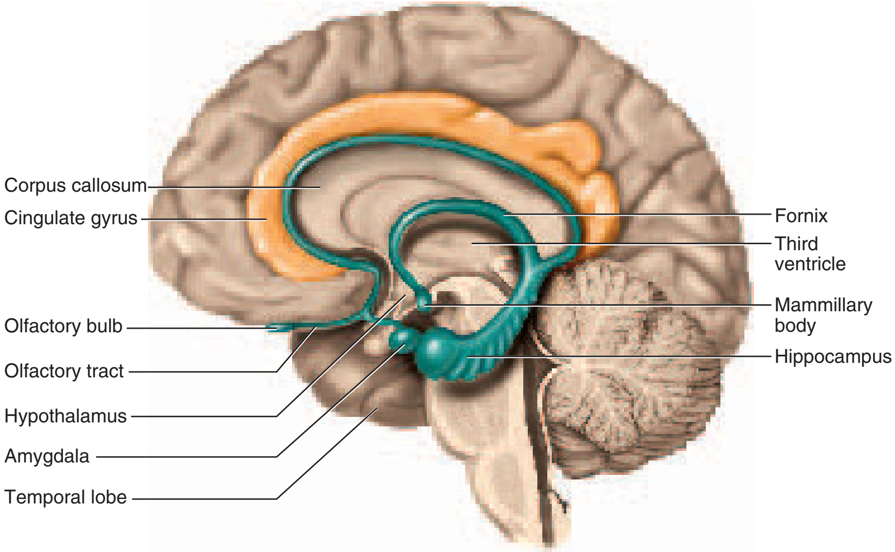

Corpus callosum
Cingulate gyrus
Olfactory bulb
Olfactory tract
Hypothalamus
Amygdala
Temporal lobe
Fornix
Third ventricle
Mammillary body
Hippocampus

Figure 14.17 The Limbic System.

16. Distinguish between commissural, association, and projection tracts of the cerebrum.
17. Where are the basal nuclei located? What is their general function?
18. Where is the limbic system located? What component of it is involved in emotion? What component is involved in memory?

Higher Brain Functions

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- list the types of brain waves and discuss their relationship to sleep and other mental states;
- explain how the brain controls the skeletal muscles;
- identify the parts of the cerebrum that receive and interpret somatic sensory signals;
- identify the parts of the cerebrum that receive and interpret signals from the special senses;
- describe the locations and functions of the language centers;
- discuss the brain regions involved in memory; and
- discuss the functional relationship between the right and left cerebral hemispheres.

This section concerns such brain functions as sleep, memory, cognition, emotion, sensation, motor control, and language. These are associated especially with the cerebral cortex, but not exclusively; they involve interactions between the cerebral cortex and such areas as the cerebellum, basal nuclei, limbic system, hypothalamus, and reticular formation. Some of these functions present the most difficult challenges for neurobiology, but they are the most intriguing functions of the brain and involve its largest areas.

Brain Waves and Sleep

Brain waves are rhythmic voltage changes resulting predominantly from synchronized postsynaptic potentials in the superficial layers of the cerebral cortex. They are recorded from electrodes on the scalp. The recording, called an **electroencephalogram**[39] **(EEG),** is useful in studying normal brain functions such as sleep and consciousness and in diagnosing degenerative brain diseases, metabolic abnormalities, brain tumors, sites of trauma, and so forth. States of consciousness ranging from high alert to deep sleep are correlated with changes in the EEG. The complete and persistent absence of brain waves is often used as a clinical and legal criterion of brain death.

There are four types of brain waves, distinguished by differences in amplitude (mV) and frequency. Frequency is expressed in hertz (Hz), or cycles per second (fig. 14.18):

1. **Alpha (α) waves** have a frequency of 8 to 13 Hz and are recorded especially in the parieto-occipital area. They occur when a person is awake and resting, with the eyes closed and the mind wandering. They disappear when a person opens the eyes, receives specific sensory stimulation, or engages in a mental task such as performing mathematical calculations. They are also absent during deep sleep.
2. **Beta (β) waves** have a frequency of 14 to 30 Hz and occur in the frontal to parietal region. They are seen during mental activity and sensory stimulation.
3. **Theta (θ) waves** have a frequency of 4 to 7 Hz. They are normal in children and sleeping adults, but in

---

[39] *electro* = electricity + *encephalo* = brain + *gram* = record

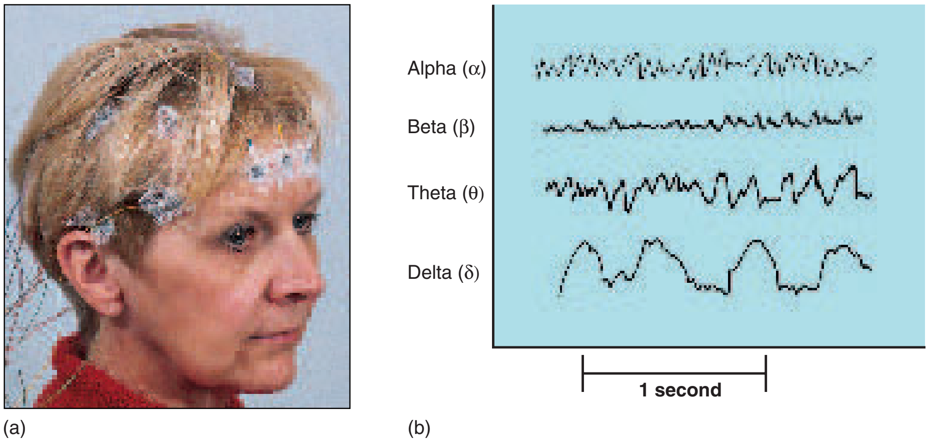


Figure 14.18 **The Electroencephalogram (EEG).** (*a*) An EEG is recorded from electrodes on the forehead and scalp. (*b*) Four classes of brain waves are seen in EEGs.

awake adults they suggest emotional stress or brain disorders.

4. **Delta (δ) waves** are high-amplitude "slow waves" with a frequency of less than 3.5 Hz. Infants exhibit delta waves when awake and adults exhibit them in deep sleep. When present in awake adults, they indicate serious brain damage.

Sleep is a temporary state of unconsciousness from which a person can awaken when stimulated. **Coma,** by contrast, is a state of unconsciousness from which no amount of stimulation arouses a person. The cycle of sleep and waking is controlled by nuclei in the hypothalamus and brainstem. In the anterior hypothalamus, just above the optic chiasm, is the **suprachiasmatic** (SOO-pra-KY-az-MAT-ic) **nucleus (SCN),** which acts as a biological clock to regulate our daily **circadian**[40] **rhythm** of sleep and waking. Some nerve fibers lead from the eyes to the SCN and serve to synchronize our body rhythms with the external rhythm of night and day. If an animal's SCN is destroyed, it sleeps at random times with no daily rhythm. The reticular formation and hypothalamus have some nuclei that produce wakefulness and alertness and others that bring on sleep. Reticular formation nuclei issue fibers to the thalamus and cerebral cortex and seem to regulate consciousness by modulating communication between those two centers.

In the first 30 to 45 minutes of sleep, our brain waves decline in frequency but increase in amplitude as we pass through four sleep stages (fig. 14.19):

- In **stage 1** we close our eyes and begin to relax; thoughts come and go, and we often have a drifting sensation. We awaken easily if stimulated. The EEG is dominated by alpha waves.
- In **stage 2** we are less easily aroused. The EEG is more irregular, with short bursts of 12- to 14-Hz brain waves called *sleep spindles.*
- In **stage 3,** about 20 minutes after stage 1, sleep deepens, the muscles relax, and the vital signs (body temperature, blood pressure, pulse, and respiratory rate) decline. Theta and delta waves appear in the EEG.
- In **stage 4** the vital signs are at their lowest levels, the muscles are very relaxed, and it is difficult to arouse the sleeper. Stage 4 is also called slow-wave sleep (SWS) because the EEG is dominated by delta waves.

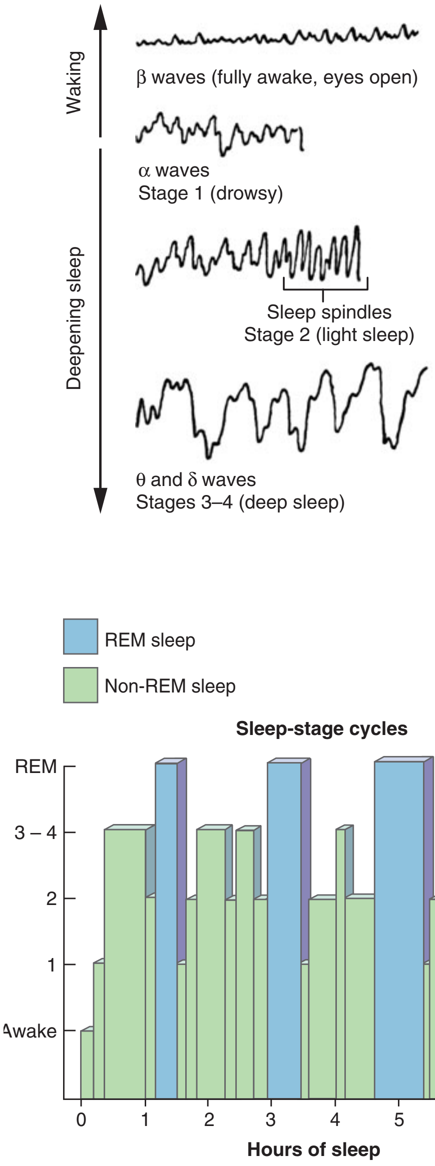


Figure 14.19 **Sleep Stages and Brain Activity.** (*a*) Correlation of the brain waves with the stages of non-REM sleep. (*b*) Stages of sleep over an 8-hour night in an average young adult. Stages 3 to 4 dominate the first half of the night and REM sleep dominates the second half. Most dreaming occurs during REM sleep.

About five times a night, a sleeper backtracks from stage 4 to stage 1 and enters episodes of **rapid eye movement (REM) sleep.** The eyes flicker under the eyelids as if watching a movie. Vital signs increase and the brain consumes more oxygen than when a person is awake. In males, REM sleep is usually accompanied by penile erection. REM sleep is also called *paradoxical sleep* because the EEG resembles that of the waking state, yet the sleeper is harder to arouse than in any other stage. Most dreams occur during REM sleep, although nightmares are usually associated with stages 3 and 4. Another characteristic of REM sleep is **sleep paralysis**—inhibition of the skeletal muscles (except for those of eye movement). Sleep paralysis prevents us from acting out our dreams, and it may have prevented our tree-dwelling ancestors from falling in their sleep. The first period of REM sleep occurs about 90 minutes after we fall asleep. In the second half of the night, REM sleep becomes longer and more frequent.

---

[40] *circa* = approximately + *dia* = a day, 24 hours

We still know very little about the function of sleep. Non-REM sleep seems to have a restorative effect on the body, and prolonged sleep deprivation is fatal to experimental animals. Yet it is unclear why quiet bed rest is not sufficient—that is, why we must lose consciousness. Unlike total sleep deprivation, selective deprivation of REM sleep (waking a person up whenever he or she begins REM sleep) has no adverse effects. Some have suggested that REM sleep is a period in which the brain either "consolidates" and strengthens memories or purges unwanted information from memory, but there is little evidence for either view.

Cognition

Cognition[41] refers to mental processes such as awareness, perception, thinking, knowledge, and memory. It is an integration of information between the points of sensory input and motor output. Seventy-five percent of our brain tissue consists of cognitive **association areas** of the cerebrum. We know the functions of these areas largely through studies of people with brain lesions—local injuries resulting from such causes as infection, trauma, cancer, and stroke. A few examples of the effects of cerebral lesions reveal some functions of the association areas:

- Parietal lobe lesions can cause people to become unaware of objects on the other side of the body or even of their own limbs on that side—a condition called *contralateral neglect syndrome.* In typical cases, men shave only one half of the face, women apply makeup to only one side, patients dress only half of the body, and some people deny that one arm or leg belongs to them.
- Temporal lobe lesions often result in **agnosia**[42] (ag-NO-zee-ah), the inability to recognize, identify, and name familiar objects. In *prosopagnosia,*[43] a person cannot remember familiar faces, even his or her own reflection in a mirror.
- Frontal lobe lesions are especially devastating to the qualities we think of as the personality (see insight 14.2). The *frontal association area (prefrontal cortex)* is well developed only in primates, especially humans. It integrates information from sensory and motor regions of the cortex and from other association areas. It gives us a sense of our relationship to the rest of the world, enabling us to think about it and to plan and execute appropriate behavior. It is responsible for giving appropriate expression to our emotions.

As a broad generalization, we can conclude that the parietal association cortex is responsible for perceiving and attending to stimuli, the temporal association cortex for identifying them, and the frontal association cortex for planning our responses.

Insight 14.2 Medical History

The Accidental Lobotomy of Phineas Gage

Accidental but nonfatal destruction of parts of the brain has afforded many clues to the function of various regions. One of the most famous incidents occurred in 1848 to Phineas Gage, a laborer on a railroad construction project in Vermont. Gage was packing blasting powder into a hole with a 3½ ft tamping iron when the powder prematurely exploded. The tamping rod was blown out of the hole and passed through Gage's maxilla, orbit, and the frontal lobe of his brain before emerging from his skull near the hairline and landing 50 ft away (fig. 14.20). Gage went into convulsions, but later sat up and conversed with his crewmates as they drove him to a physician in an oxcart. On arrival, he stepped out on his own and told the physician, "Doctor, here is business enough for you." His doctor, John Harlow, reported that he could insert his index finger all the way into Gage's wound. Yet 2 months later, Gage was walking around town carrying on his normal business.

He was not, however, the Phineas Gage people had known. Before the accident, he had been a competent, responsible, financially pru-

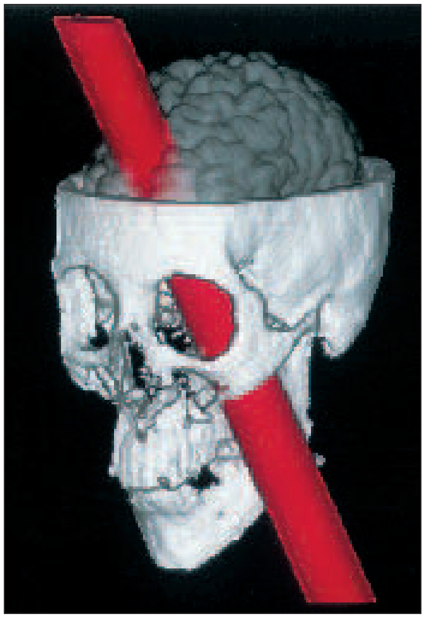


Figure 14.20 Phineas Gage's 1848 Accident. This is a computer-generated image made in 1994 to show the path taken by the tamping bar through Gage's skull and brain.

---

[41] *cognit* = to know

[42] *a* = without + *gnos* = knowledge

[43] *prosopo* = face, person

dent man, well liked by his associates. In an 1868 publication on the incident, Harlow said that following the accident, Gage was "fitful, irreverent, indulging at times in the grossest profanity." He became irresponsible, lost his job, worked for a while as a circus sideshow attraction, and died a vagrant 12 years later.

A 1994 computer analysis of Gage's skull indicated that the brain injury was primarily to the ventromedial region of both frontal lobes. In Gage's time, scientists were reluctant to attribute social behavior and moral judgment to any region of the brain. These functions were strongly tied to issues of religion and ethics and were considered inaccessible to scientific analysis. Based partly on Phineas Gage and other brain injury patients like him, neuroscientists today recognize that planning, moral judgment, and emotional control are among the functions of the prefrontal cortex.

Memory

We studied the neuronal and molecular mechanisms of memory in chapter 12. Now that you have been introduced to the gross anatomy of the brain, we can consider the anatomical sites of those processes.

Our subject is really a little broader than memory *per se.* Information management by the brain entails learning (acquiring new information), memory proper (information storage and retrieval), and forgetting (eliminating trivial information). Forgetting is as important as remembering. People with a pathological inability to forget trivial information have great difficulty in reading comprehension and other functions that require us to separate what is important from what is not. More often, though, brain-injured people are either unable to store new information **(anterograde amnesia)** or to recall things they knew before the injury **(retrograde amnesia).** *Amnesia* refers to defects in *declarative* memory (such as the ability to describe past events), not *procedural* memory (such as the ability to tie your shoes) (see definitions in chapter 12).

The **hippocampus**[44] of the limbic system (see fig. 14.17) does not store memories but organizes sensory and cognitive experiences into a unified long-term memory. The hippocampus learns from sensory input while an experience is happening, but it has a short memory. Later, perhaps when one is sleeping, it plays this memory repeatedly to the cerebral cortex, which is a "slow learner" but forms longer-lasting memories through the processes of long-term memory described in chapter 12. This process of "teaching the cerebral cortex" until a long-term memory is established is called **memory consolidation.** Long-term memories are stored in various areas of cerebral cortex. Our vocabulary and memory of faces and familiar objects, for example, are stored in the superior temporal lobe, and memories of our plans and social roles are stored in the prefrontal cortex.

Lesions of the hippocampus can cause profound anterograde amnesia. For example, in 1953, a famous patient known as H. M. underwent surgical removal of a large portion of both temporal lobes, including both hippocampi, in an effort to treat his severe epilepsy. The operation had no adverse effect on his intelligence, procedural memory, or declarative memory for things that had happened early in his life, but it left him with an inability to establish new memories. He could hold a conversation with his psychologist, but a few minutes later deny that it had taken place. He worked with the same psychologist for more than 40 years after his operation, yet had no idea of who she was from day to day.

Other parts of the brain involved in memory include the cerebellum, with a role in learning motor skills, and the amygdala, with a role in emotional memory—both examined shortly.

Emotion

The prefrontal cortex is the seat of judgment, intent, and control over the expression of our emotions. However we may feel, it is here that we decide the appropriate way to show our feelings. But the feelings themselves, and our emotional memories, form in deeper regions of the brain—the hypothalamus and **amygdala**[45] (ah-MIG-da-la). Here are the nuclei that stimulate us to recoil in fear from a rattlesnake or yearn for a lost love. (The amygdala also seems to be involved in a broad range of functions including food intake, sexual activity, and drawing our attention to novel stimuli.)

Emotional control centers of the brain have been identified not only by studying people with brain lesions, but also by such techniques as surgical removal, ablation (destruction) of small regions with electrodes, and stimulation with electrodes and chemical implants, especially in experimental animals. Changes in behavior following removal, ablation, or stimulation give clues to the functions that a region performs. However, interpretation of the results is difficult and controversial because of the complex connections between the emotional brain and other regions.

Many important aspects of personality depend on an intact, functional amygdala and hypothalamus. When specific regions of the amygdala or hypothalamus are destroyed or artificially stimulated, humans and other animals exhibit blunted or exaggerated expressions of anger, fear, aggression, self-defense, pleasure, pain, love, sexuality, and parental affection, as well as abnormalities in learning, memory, and motivation.

Much of our behavior is shaped by learned associations between stimuli, our responses to them, and the rewards or punishments that result. Nuclei involved in the senses of reward and punishment have been identified in the hypothalamus of cats, rats, monkeys, and other animals. In a representative experiment, an electrode is implanted in an area of an animal's hypothalamus called the *median forebrain bundle (MFB).* The animal is placed in a chamber with a foot pedal wired to that electrode. When the animal steps on the pedal, it receives a mild electrical stimulus to the MFB. The sensation is apparently strongly rewarding, because the animal soon learns to press the pedal over and over and may spend most of its time doing so—even to the point of neglecting food and water. Rats have been known to bar-press 5,000 to 12,000 times an hour, and monkeys up to 17,000 times an hour, to stimulate their MFBs.

---

[44] *hippocampus* = sea horse, named for its shape

[45] *amygdal* = almond

These animals cannot tell us what they are feeling, but electrode implants have also been used to treat people who suffer otherwise incurable schizophrenia, pain, or epilepsy. These patients also repeatedly press a button to stimulate the MFB, but they do not report feelings of joy or ecstasy. Some are unable to explain why they enjoy the stimulus, and others report "relief from tension" or "a quiet, relaxed feeling." With electrodes misplaced in other areas of the hypothalamus, subjects report feelings of fear or terror when stimulated.

Sensation

Sensory functions fall into two categories:

1. **somesthetic[46] (somatosensory, somatic) sensation,** which comes from receptors widely distributed over the body for such stimuli as touch, pressure, stretch, movement, heat, cold, and pain; and
2. **special senses,** which originate in sense organs of the head and include vision, hearing, equilibrium, taste, and smell.

Somesthetic Sensation

Somesthetic nerve signals travel up the spinal cord and brainstem to the thalamus, which routes them to the **postcentral gyrus.** This is the most anterior gyrus of the parietal lobe, immediately posterior to the central sulcus. The cortex of this gyrus is the **primary somesthetic cortex (somatosensory area)** (fig. 14.21). Somesthetic fibers decussate on their way to the thalamus, so the right postcentral gyrus receives signals from the left side of the body and the left gyrus receives signals from the right.

Each gyrus is like an upside-down sensory map of the contralateral side of the body, traditionally diagrammed as a *sensory homunculus*[47] (fig. 14.21*b*). As the diagram shows, receptors in the lower limb project to the superior and medial parts of the gyrus and receptors in the face project to the inferior and lateral parts of the gyrus. The reason for the bizarre, distorted appearance of the homunculus is that the amount of cerebral tissue devoted to a given body region is proportional to how richly innervated and sensitive that part of the body is. Thus, the hands and face are represented by a much larger area of cortex than the trunk. Such a point-for-point correspondence between an area of the body and an area of the CNS is called **somatotopy.**[48]

The Special Senses

The receptors of taste also project to the postcentral gyrus, but the organs of smell, vision, hearing, and equilibrium project to other specialized regions of the brain. Their pathways are described in chapter 16. For now, we will simply identify the **primary sensory areas** where the signals are ultimately received (fig. 14.22)—that is, what parts of the brain initially process the input:

- **taste** (gustation)—near the inferior lateral end of the postcentral gyrus and part of the insula;
- **smell** (olfaction)—medial surface of the temporal lobe and inferior surface of the frontal lobe;
- **vision**—posterior occipital lobe;
- **hearing**—superior temporal lobe and nearby insula; and
- **equilibrium**—mainly the cerebellum, but also via the thalamus to unknown destinations in the cerebral cortex.

Sensory Association Areas

Each primary sensory area of the cerebral cortex lies adjacent to an **association area (secondary sensory cortex)** that interprets sensory information and makes it identifiable and useful (fig. 14.22). The largest and best-known association areas are:

- The **somesthetic association area** located in the parietal lobe immediately posterior to the postcentral gyrus. It makes us aware of the positions of our limbs, the location of a touch or pain, and the shape, weight, and texture of an object in our hand, for example.
- The **visual association area** is located mainly in the occipital lobe between the somesthetic association area and primary visual cortex. It enables us to identify the things we see. Recognition of faces, however, resides in the inferior temporal lobe.
- The **auditory association area** is located in the superior temporal lobe deep within the lateral sulcus. It enables us to remember the name of a piece of music and to identify a person by his or her voice.

---

[46] *som* = body + *esthet* = feeling
[47] *homunculus* = little man
[48] *somato* = body + *topy* = place

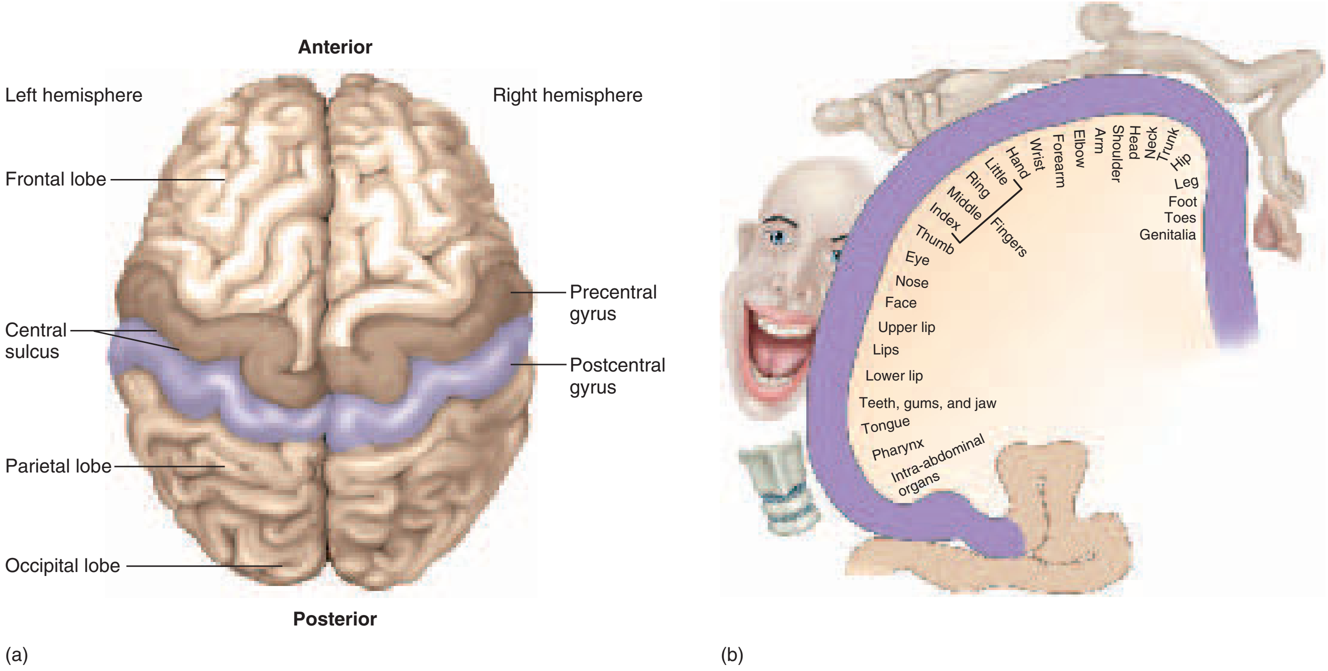

Anterior
Left hemisphere
Right hemisphere
Frontal lobe
Precentral gyrus
Central sulcus
Postcentral gyrus
Parietal lobe
Occipital lobe
Posterior
(a)
Trunk
Hip
Neck
Head
Shoulder
Arm
Elbow
Forearm
Wrist
Hand
Little
Ring
Middle
Index
Thumb
Fingers
Leg
Foot
Toes
Genitalia
Eye
Nose
Face
Upper lip
Lips
Lower lip
Teeth, gums, and jaw
Tongue
Pharynx
Intra-abdominal organs
(b)

Figure 14.21 **The Primary Somesthetic Cortex (postcentral gyrus).** (*a*) Location, superior view. (*b*) Sensory homunculus, drawn so that body parts are in proportion to the amount of cortex dedicated to their sensation.

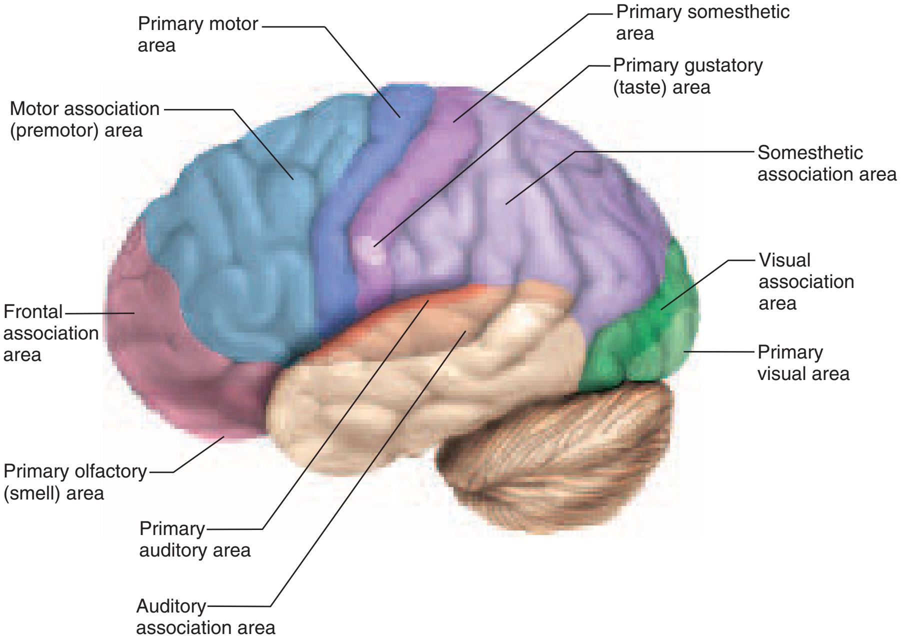

Primary motor area
Primary somesthetic area
Primary gustatory (taste) area
Motor association (premotor) area
Somesthetic association area
Visual association area
Frontal association area
Primary visual area
Primary olfactory (smell) area
Primary auditory area
Auditory association area

Figure 14.22 **Some Functional Regions of the Cerebral Cortex.** Left hemisphere.

Motor Control

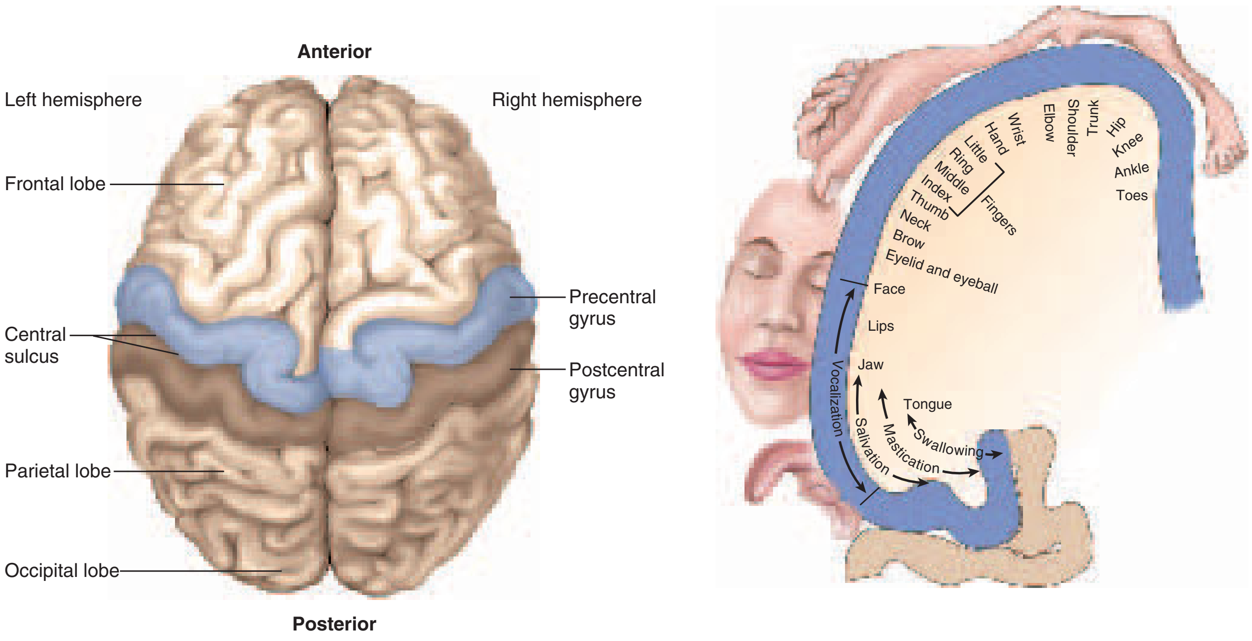
The intention to contract a skeletal muscle begins in the **motor association (premotor) area** of the frontal lobes (fig. 14.22). This is where we plan our behavior—where neurons compile a program for the degree and sequence of muscle contractions required for an action such as dancing, typing, or speaking. The program is then transmitted to neurons of the **precentral gyrus (primary motor area),** which is the most posterior gyrus of the frontal lobe, immediately anterior to the central sulcus (fig. 14.23*a*). Neurons here send signals to the brainstem and spinal cord that ultimately result in muscle contractions.

The precentral gyrus, like the postcentral one, exhibits somatotopy. The neurons for toe movements, for example, are deep in the longitudinal fissure on the medial side of the gyrus. The summit of the gyrus controls the trunk, shoulder, and arm, and the inferolateral region controls the facial muscles. This map is diagrammed as a *motor homunculus* (fig. 14.23*b*). Like the sensory homunculus, it has a distorted look because the amount of cortex devoted to a given body region is proportional to the number of muscles and motor units in that region, not to the size of the region. Areas of fine control, such as the hands, have more muscles than such areas as the trunk and thigh, more motor units per muscle, and larger areas of motor cortex to control them.

The pyramidal cells of the precentral gyrus are called **upper motor neurons.** Their fibers project caudally, with about 19 million fibers ending in nuclei of the brainstem and 1 million forming the corticospinal tracts, which decussate in the pyramids of the medulla oblongata on their way to the spinal cord. Below the neck, each precentral gyrus thus controls muscles on the contralateral side of the body. In the brainstem or spinal cord, the fibers from the upper motor neurons synapse with **lower motor neurons** whose axons innervate the skeletal muscles.

Other areas of the brain important to muscle control are the basal nuclei and cerebellum. The basal nuclei receive input from many sensory and motor regions of cerebral cortex—most importantly the prefrontal cortex. Their output goes by way of the thalamus back to the prefrontal cortex, motor association area, and precentral gyrus. The basal nuclei are part of a feedback circuit involved in the planning and execution of movement. They assume responsibility for controlling highly practiced behaviors such as tying your shoes or driving a car—skilled movements that you carry out with little thought. People with lesions of the basal nuclei tend to move slowly and have difficulty initiating movement, such as getting up from a chair. They show changes in muscle tone and posture, the tremors of Parkinson disease, or involuntary movements such as flailing of the limbs *(ballismus).*

The cerebellum smooths muscle contractions, maintains muscle tone and posture, coordinates the motions of different joints with each other (such as the shoulder and



(a) (b)

Figure 14.23 The Primary Motor Cortex (precentral gyrus). (*a*) Location, superior view. (*b*) Motor homunculus, drawn so that body parts are in proportion to the amount of primary motor cortex dedicated to their control.

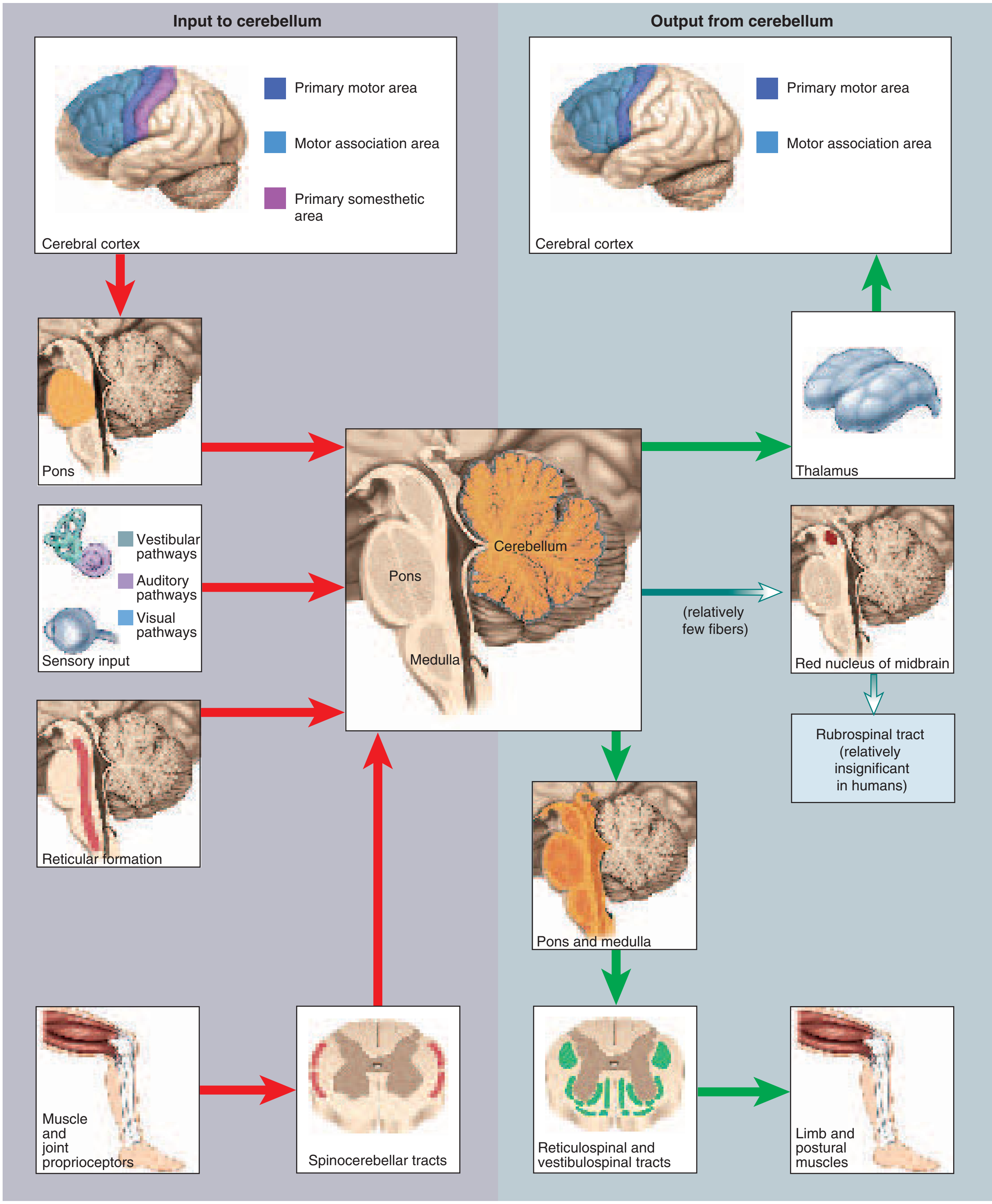

Input to cerebellum
Output from cerebellum
Primary motor area
Motor association area
Primary somesthetic area
Cerebral cortex
Primary motor area
Motor association area
Cerebral cortex
Pons
Thalamus
Cerebellum
Pons
Medulla
Vestibular pathways
Auditory pathways
Visual pathways
Sensory input
(relatively few fibers)
Red nucleus of midbrain
Rubrospinal tract (relatively insignificant in humans)
Reticular formation
Pons and medulla
Muscle and joint proprioceptors
Spinocerebellar tracts
Reticulospinal and vestibulospinal tracts
Limb and postural muscles

Figure 14.24 **Motor Pathways Involving the Cerebellum.** The cerebellum receives its input from the afferent pathways (*red*) on the *left* and sends its output through the efferent pathways (*green*) on the *right*.

elbow joints in pitching a baseball), coordinates eye and body movements, and aids in learning motor skills. It receives signals from the upper motor neurons about intended movements and gets feedback about the actual performance from proprioceptors in the muscles and joints, via the spinocerebellar tracts of the spinal cord (fig. 14.24). The Purkinje cells of the cerebellum compare the performance of the muscles with stored information on learned skills and with the motor command issued from the cerebral cortex. When there is a discrepancy between the intent and performance, they send signals to the deep cerebellar nuclei, which in turn relay them to the brainstem and cerebral cortex. Motor centers here use information from the cerebellum to correct muscle performance to match the intent. Lesions in the cerebellum can result in a clumsy, awkward gait *(ataxia)* and make some tasks such as climbing a flight of stairs virtually impossible.

Language

Language includes several abilities—reading, writing, speaking, and understanding words—assigned to different regions of cerebral cortex (fig. 14.25). **Wernicke's**[49] (WUR-ni-keez) **area** is responsible for the recognition of spoken and written language. It lies just posterior to the lateral sulcus, usually in the left hemisphere. It is a sensory association area that receives visual and auditory input from the respective regions of primary sensory cortex. The *angular gyrus* just posterior to Wernicke's area processes the words we read into a form that we can speak.

Wernicke's area formulates phrases according to learned rules of grammar and transmits a plan of speech to **Broca's**[50] **area,** located in the inferior prefrontal cortex in the same hemisphere. Broca's area generates a motor program for the muscles of the larynx, tongue, cheeks, and lips to produce speech. This program is then transmitted to the primary motor cortex, which executes it—that is, it issues commands to the lower motor neurons that supply the relevant muscles. PET scans show a rise in the metabolic activity of Broca's area as we prepare to speak.

The emotional aspect of language is controlled by regions in the opposite hemisphere that mirror Wernicke's and Broca's areas. Opposite Broca's area is the *affective language area.* Lesions to this area result in *aprosodia*—flat, emotionless speech. The cortex opposite Wernicke's area is concerned with recognizing the emotional content of another person's speech. Lesions here can result in such problems as the inability to understand a joke.

Aphasia[51] (ah-FAY-zee-uh) is any language deficit resulting from lesions in the hemisphere (usually the left) containing Wernicke's and Broca's areas. The many forms of aphasia are difficult to classify. *Nonfluent (Broca's) aphasia,* due to a lesion to Broca's area, results in slow speech, difficulty in choosing words, or use of words that only approximate the correct word. For example, a person may say "tssair" when asked to identify a picture of a chair. In extreme cases, the person's entire vocabulary consists of two or three words, sometimes those that were being spoken when a stroke occurred. Patients feel very frustrated with themselves and often maintain a tight-lipped reluctance to talk. A lesion to Wernicke's area may cause *fluent (Wernicke's) aphasia,* in which a person speaks normally and sometimes excessively, but uses jargon and invented words that make little sense (for example, "choss" for chair). Such people also cannot comprehend written and spoken words. In *anomic aphasia,* a person can speak normally and understand speech but cannot identify written words or pictures. Shown a picture of a chair, the person may say, "I know what it is. . . . I have a lot of them," but be unable to name the object.

This represents only a small sample of the complex and puzzling linguistic effects of brain lesions. Other lesions to small areas of cortex can cause impaired mathematical ability, a tendency to write only consonants, or difficulty understanding the second half of each word a person reads.

Cerebral Lateralization

The two cerebral hemispheres look identical at a glance, but close examination reveals a number of differences. For example, in women the left temporal lobe is longer than the right. In left-handed people, the left frontal, parietal, and occipital lobes are usually wider than those on the right. The two hemispheres also differ in some of their functions (fig. 14.26). Neither hemisphere is "dominant," but each is specialized for certain tasks. This difference in function is called **cerebral lateralization.**

One hemisphere, usually the left, is called the *categorical hemisphere.* It is specialized for spoken and written language and for the sequential and analytical reasoning employed in such fields as science and mathematics. This hemisphere seems to break information into fragments and analyze it in a linear way. The other hemisphere, usually the right, is called the *representational hemisphere.* It perceives information in a more integrated, holistic way. It is the seat of imagination and insight, musical and artistic skill, perception of patterns and spatial relationships, and comparison of sights, sounds, smells, and tastes.

Cerebral lateralization is highly correlated with handedness. The left hemisphere is the categorical one in 96% of right-handed people, and the right hemisphere in 4%. Among left-handed people, the right hemisphere is categorical in 15%, the left in 70%, and in the remaining 15% neither hemisphere is distinctly specialized.

Lateralization develops with age. In young children, if one cerebral hemisphere is damaged or removed (for

---

[49] Karl Wernicke (1848–1904), German neurologist

[50] Pierre Paul Broca (1824–80), French surgeon and anthropologist

[51] *a* = without + *phas* = speech

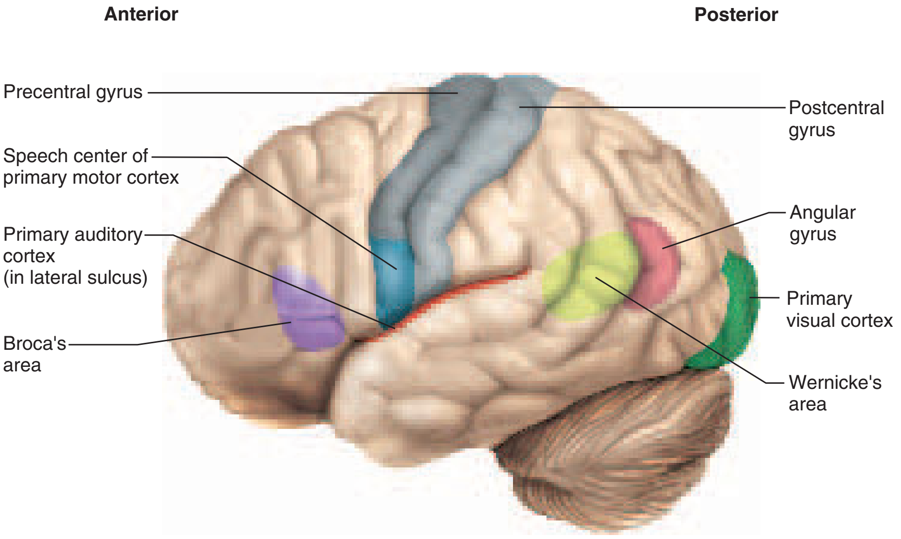

Anterior
Posterior
Precentral gyrus
Speech center of primary motor cortex
Primary auditory cortex (in lateral sulcus)
Broca's area
Postcentral gyrus
Angular gyrus
Primary visual cortex
Wernicke's area

Figure 14.25 Language Centers of the Left Hemisphere.

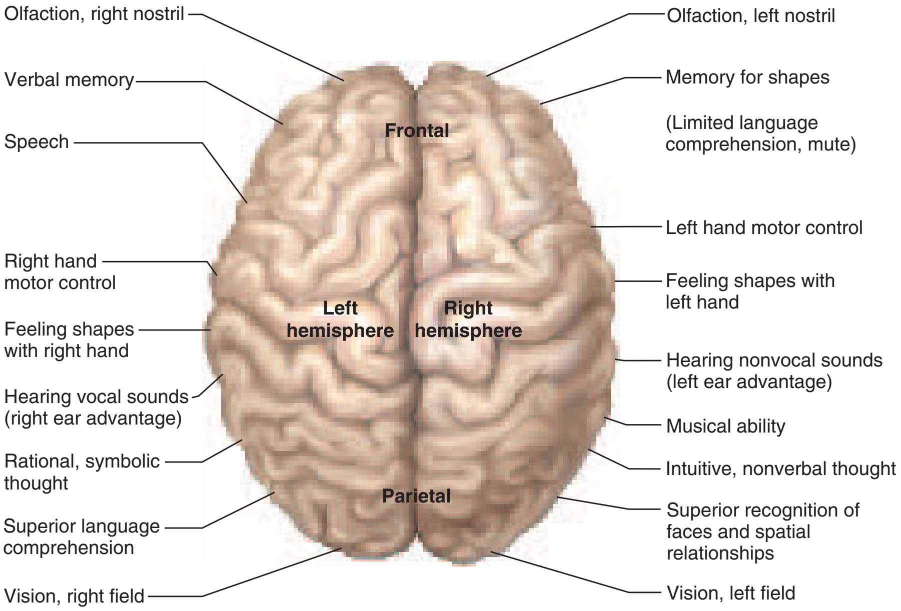

Olfaction, right nostril
Verbal memory
Speech
Right hand motor control
Feeling shapes with right hand
Hearing vocal sounds (right ear advantage)
Rational, symbolic thought
Superior language comprehension
Vision, right field
Frontal
Left hemisphere
Right hemisphere
Parietal
Olfaction, left nostril
Memory for shapes
(Limited language comprehension, mute)
Left hand motor control
Feeling shapes with left hand
Hearing nonvocal sounds (left ear advantage)
Musical ability
Intuitive, nonverbal thought
Superior recognition of faces and spatial relationships
Vision, left field

Figure 14.26 Lateralization of Cerebral Functions.

example, because of brain cancer), the other hemisphere can often take over its functions. Adult males exhibit more lateralization than females and suffer more functional loss when one hemisphere is damaged. When the left hemisphere is damaged, men are three times as likely as women to become aphasic. The reason for this difference is not yet clear, but it may be related to the corpus callosum. In men, the corpus callosum has a fairly uniform thickness, but in women its caudal portion is thickened by additional commissural fibers, suggesting that women have a more extensive communication between their hemispheres.

Not surprisingly, the brain is the most structurally complex organ of the body. We have barely scratched the surface in this chapter. Table 14.1 summarizes the gross anatomy of the brain and will help you put its structures into context.

Table 14.1 Anatomical Checklist for the Brain

Meninges

- Dura mater
  - Falx cerebri
  - Falx cerebelli
  - Tentorium cerebelli
- Arachnoid mater
  - Arachnoid villi
- Pia mater

Ventricle System

- Lateral ventricles
- Interventricular foramen
- Third ventricle
- Cerebral aqueduct
- Fourth ventricle
- Median and lateral apertures
- Central canal
- Choroid plexuses

Rhombencephalon (hindbrain)

- *Myelencephalon*
  - Medulla oblongata
    - Pyramids
    - Olive
      - Inferior olivary nucleus
- *Metencephalon*
  - Pons
  - Cerebellum
    - Cerebellar hemispheres
    - Vermis
    - Cerebellar peduncles
    - Folia
    - Arbor vitae
    - Deep nuclei

Mesencephalon (midbrain)

- Cerebral peduncles
- Tegmentum
  - Red nucleus
- Substantia nigra
- Central gray matter
- Tectum
  - Corpora quadrigemina
    - Superior colliculi
    - Inferior colliculi

Reticular Formation

Prosencephalon (forebrain)

- *Diencephalon*
  - Thalamus
  - Hypothalamus
  - Epithalamus
    - Pineal gland
    - Habenula
- Telencephalon (cerebrum)
  - Cerebral hemispheres
  - Major sulci and fissure
    - Longitudinal fissure
    - Central sulcus
    - Parieto-occipital sulcus
    - Lateral sulcus
  - Lobes
    - Frontal lobe
    - Parietal lobe
    - Occipital lobe
    - Temporal lobe
    - Insula
  - Gray matter (cerebral cortex)
  - White matter
    - Projection tracts
    - Commissural tracts
      - Corpus callosum
      - Anterior commissure
      - Posterior commissure
    - Association tracts
  - Major gyri
    - Precentral gyrus
    - Postcentral gyrus
    - Cingulate gyrus
  - Basal nuclei
    - Caudate nucleus
    - Putamen
    - Globus pallidus
  - Limbic system
    - Hippocampus
    - Amygdala
    - Fornix

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

19. Suppose you are reading a novel and gradually fall asleep and begin to dream. How would your brain waves change during this sequence of events?
20. Describe the locations and functions of the somesthetic, visual, auditory, and frontal association areas.
21. Describe the somatotopy of the primary motor area and primary sensory area.
22. What are the roles of Wernicke's area, Broca's area, and the precentral gyrus in language?

The Cranial Nerves

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- list the 12 cranial nerves by name and number;
- identify where each cranial nerve originates and terminates; and
- state the functions of each cranial nerve.

To be functional, the brain must communicate with the rest of the body. Most of its input and output travels by way of the spinal cord, but it also communicates by way of the **cranial nerves,** which arise from the base of the brain, exit the cranium through its foramina, and lead to muscles and sense organs primarily in the head and neck. There are 12 pairs of cranial nerves, numbered I to XII starting with the most rostral (fig. 14.27). Each nerve also has a descriptive name such as *optic nerve* and *vagus nerve.* The cranial nerves are illustrated and described in table 14.2.

Cranial nerves are traditionally classified as sensory (I, II, and VIII), motor (III, IV, VI, XI, and XII), and mixed (V, VII, IX, and X). In reality, only cranial nerves I and II (for smell and vision) are purely sensory, whereas all the rest contain both afferent and efferent fibers and are therefore mixed nerves. Those traditionally classified as motor not only stimulate muscle contractions but also contain afferent fibers of proprioception, which provide your brain with unconscious feedback for controlling muscle contraction and make you consciously aware of such things as the position of your tongue and orientation of your head. Cranial nerve VIII, concerned with hearing and equilibrium, is traditionally classified as sensory, but it has motor fibers that return signals to the inner ear and "tune" it to sharpen our sense of hearing. The nerves traditionally classified as mixed have sensory functions quite unrelated to their motor functions—for example, the facial nerve (VII) has a sensory role in taste and a motor role in controlling facial expressions.

In order to teach the traditional classification (which is relevant for such purposes as board examinations and comparison to other books), yet remind you that all but two of these nerves are mixed, table 14.2 describes many of the nerves as *predominantly* sensory or motor.

The motor fibers of the cranial nerves begin in nuclei of the brainstem and lead to glands and muscles. The sensory fibers begin in receptors located mainly in the head and neck and lead mainly to the brainstem. Pathways for the special senses are described in chapter 16. Sensory fibers for proprioception begin in the muscles innervated by the motor fibers of the cranial nerves, but they often travel to the brain in a different nerve than the one which supplies the motor innervation.

Most cranial nerves carry fibers between the brainstem and ipsilateral receptors and effectors. Thus, a lesion to one side of the brainstem causes a sensory or motor deficit on the same side of the head. This contrasts with lesions to the motor and somesthetic cortex of the cerebrum, which, as we saw earlier, cause sensory and motor deficits on the *contralateral* side of the body. The exceptions are the optic nerve (cranial nerve II), where half the fibers decussate to the opposite side of the brain (see chapter 16), and trochlear nerve (cranial nerve IV), in which all efferent fibers go to a muscle of the contralateral eye.

The Cranial Nerves—An Aid to Memory

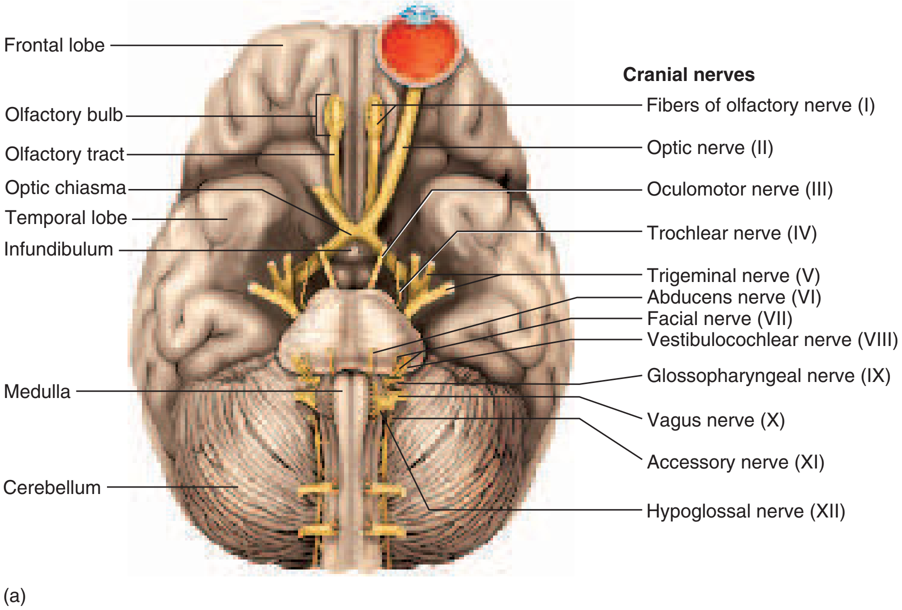
Generations of biology and medical students have relied on mnemonic (memory-aiding) phrases and ditties, ranging from the sublimely silly to the unprintably ribald, to help them remember the cranial nerves and other anatomy. An old classic began, "On old Olympus' towering tops . . . ," with the first letter of each word matching the first letter of each cranial nerve (olfactory, optic, oculomotor, etc.). Some cranial nerves have changed names, however, since that passage was devised. One of the author's former students* devised a better mnemonic that can remind you of the first two to four letters of most cranial nerves:

Old	**olfactory (I)**	**feels**	**facial (VII)**
Opie	**optic (II)**	**very**	**vestibulocochlear (VIII)**
occasionally	**oculomotor (III)**	**gloomy,**	**glossopharyngeal (IX)**
tries	**trochlear (IV)**	**vague,**	**vagus (X)**
trigonometry	**trigeminal (V)**	**and**	**accessory (XI)**
and	**abducens (VI)**	**hypoactive**	**hypoglossal (XII)**

Another mnemonic, but using only the first letter of each nerve's name, is "Oh, once one takes the anatomy final, very good vacation ahead" (author unknown). The first two letters of *ahead* represent nerves XI and XII.

---

*Courtesy of Marti Haykin, M.D.


Frontal lobe
Olfactory bulb
Olfactory tract
Optic chiasma
Temporal lobe
Infundibulum
Medulla
Cerebellum
Cranial nerves
Fibers of olfactory nerve (I)
Optic nerve (II)
Oculomotor nerve (III)
Trochlear nerve (IV)
Trigeminal nerve (V)
Abducens nerve (VI)
Facial nerve (VII)
Vestibulocochlear nerve (VIII)
Glossopharyngeal nerve (IX)
Vagus nerve (X)
Accessory nerve (XI)
Hypoglossal nerve (XII)
(a)

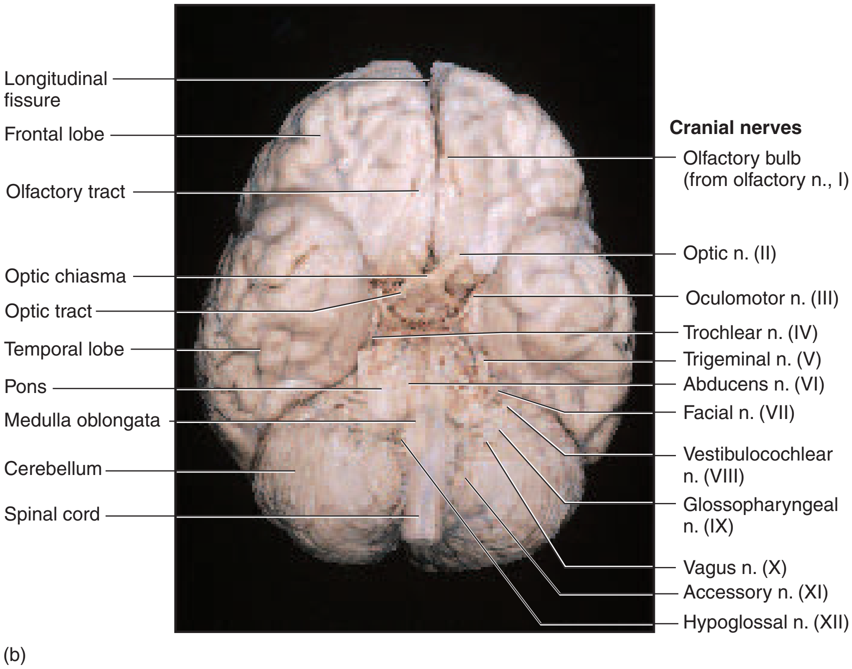

Longitudinal fissure
Frontal lobe
Olfactory tract
Optic chiasma
Optic tract
Temporal lobe
Pons
Medulla oblongata
Cerebellum
Spinal cord
Cranial nerves
Olfactory bulb (from olfactory n., I)
Optic n. (II)
Oculomotor n. (III)
Trochlear n. (IV)
Trigeminal n. (V)
Abducens n. (VI)
Facial n. (VII)
Vestibulocochlear n. (VIII)
Glossopharyngeal n. (IX)
Vagus n. (X)
Accessory n. (XI)
Hypoglossal n. (XII)
(b)

Figure 14.27 **The Cranial Nerves.** (*a*) Base of the brain, showing the 12 cranial nerves. (*b*) Photograph of the cranial nerves.

Table 14.2 The Cranial Nerves

Origins of proprioceptive fibers are not tabulated; they are the muscles innervated by the motor fibers. Nerves listed as mixed or sensory are agreed by all authorities to be either mixed or purely sensory nerves. Nerves classified as *predominantly* motor or sensory are traditionally classified that way but contain some fibers of the other type.

I. Olfactory Nerve

Composition: Sensory

Function: Smell

Origin: Olfactory mucosa in nasal cavity

Termination: Olfactory bulbs beneath frontal lobe of brain

Cranial passage: Cribriform plate of ethmoid bone

Effects of damage: Impaired sense of smell

Clinical test: Determine whether subject can smell (not necessarily identify) aromatic substances such as coffee, vanilla, clove oil, or soap

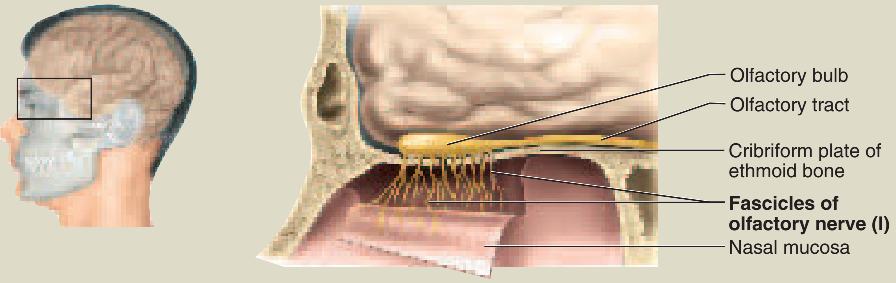

Olfactory bulb
Olfactory tract
Cribriform plate of ethmoid bone
Fascicles of olfactory nerve (I)
Nasal mucosa

Figure 14.28 The Olfactory Nerve.

II. Optic Nerve

Composition: Sensory

Function: Vision

Origin: Retina

Termination: Thalamus

Cranial passage: Optic foramen

Effects of damage: Blindness in part or all of the visual field

Clinical test: Inspect retina with ophthalmoscope; test peripheral vision and visual acuity

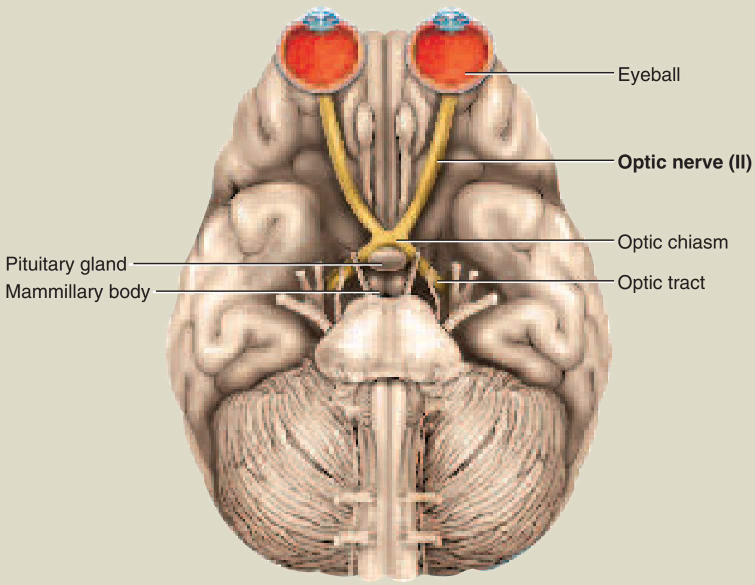

Eyeball
Optic nerve (II)
Optic chiasm
Optic tract
Pituitary gland
Mammillary body

Figure 14.29 The Optic Nerve.

(continued)

Table 14.2 The Cranial Nerves (continued)

III. Oculomotor (OC-you-lo-MO-tur) Nerve

Composition: Predominantly motor

Function: Eye movements, opening of eyelid, constriction of pupil, focusing, proprioception

Origin: Midbrain

Termination: Somatic fibers lead to levator palpebrae superioris, superior, medial, and inferior rectus, and inferior oblique muscles; parasympathetic fibers enter eyeball and lead to constrictor of iris and ciliary muscle of lens

Cranial passage: Superior orbital fissure

Effects of damage: Drooping eyelid, dilated pupil, inability to move eye in certain directions, tendency of eye to rotate laterally at rest, double vision, and difficulty focusing

Clinical test: Look for differences in size and shape of right and left pupil; test pupillary response to light; test ability to track moving objects

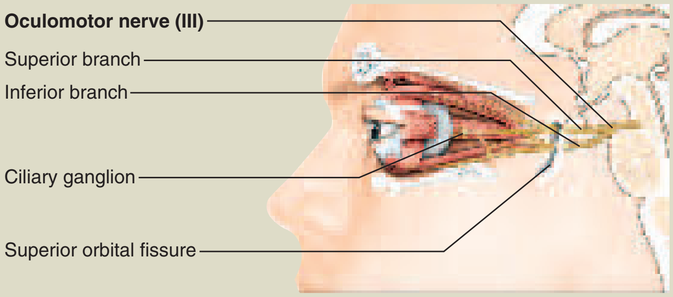

Oculomotor nerve (III)
Superior branch
Inferior branch
Ciliary ganglion
Superior orbital fissure

Figure 14.30 The Oculomotor Nerve.

IV. Trochlear (TROCK-lee-ur) Nerve

Composition: Predominantly motor

Function: Eye movements and proprioception

Origin: Midbrain

Termination: Superior oblique muscle of eye

Cranial passage: Superior orbital fissure

Effects of damage: Double vision and inability to rotate eye inferolaterally. Eye points superolaterally, and patient often tilts head toward affected side.

Clinical test: Test ability to rotate eye inferolaterally.

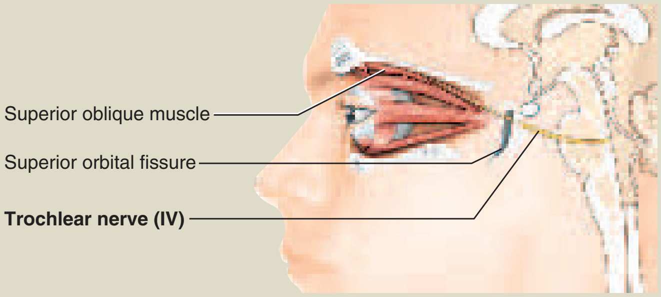

Superior oblique muscle
Superior orbital fissure
Trochlear nerve (IV)

Figure 14.31 The Trochlear Nerve.

(continued)

Table 14.2 The Cranial Nerves (continued)

V. Trigeminal[52] (tri-JEM-ih-nul) Nerve

Largest of the cranial nerves; consists of three divisions designated V_1 to V_3

V_1, Ophthalmic Division

Composition: Sensory

Function: Main sensory nerve of upper face (touch, temperature, pain)

Origin: Superior region of face as illustrated, surface of eyeball, tear gland, superior nasal mucosa, frontal and ethmoid sinuses

Termination: Pons

Cranial passage: Superior orbital fissure

Effects of damage: Loss of sensation

Clinical test: Test corneal reflex—blinking in response to light touch to eyeball

V_2, Maxillary Division

Composition: Sensory

Function: Same sensations as V_1 lower on face

Origin: Middle region of face as illustrated, nasal mucosa, maxillary sinus, palate, upper teeth and gums

Termination: Pons

Cranial passage: Foramen rotundum and infraorbital foramen

Effects of damage: Loss of sensation

Clinical test: Test sense of touch, pain, and temperature with light touch, pinpricks, and hot and cold objects

V_3, Mandibular Division

Composition: Mixed

Function: Same sensations as V_1–V_2 lower on face; mastication

Sensory origin: Inferior region of face as illustrated, anterior two-thirds of tongue (but not taste buds), lower teeth and gums, floor of mouth, dura mater

Sensory termination: Pons

Motor origin: Pons

Motor termination: Anterior belly of digastric, masseter, temporalis, mylohyoid, pterygoids, and tensor tympani of middle ear

Cranial passage: Foramen ovale

Effects of damage: Loss of sensation; impaired chewing

Clinical test: Assess motor functions by palpating masseter and temporalis muscles while subject clenches teeth; test ability of subject to move mandible from side to side and to open mouth against resistance

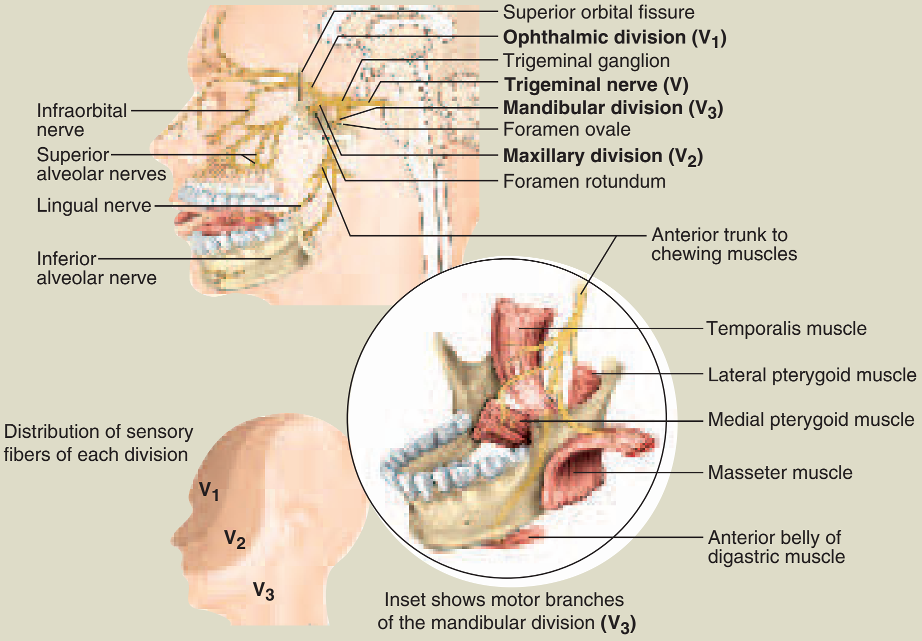

Superior orbital fissure
Ophthalmic division (V_1)
Trigeminal ganglion
Trigeminal nerve (V)
Mandibular division (V_3)
Foramen ovale
Maxillary division (V_2)
Foramen rotundum
Infraorbital nerve
Superior alveolar nerves
Lingual nerve
Inferior alveolar nerve
Anterior trunk to chewing muscles
Temporalis muscle
Lateral pterygoid muscle
Medial pterygoid muscle
Masseter muscle
Anterior belly of digastric muscle
Distribution of sensory fibers of each division
V_1
V_2
V_3
Inset shows motor branches of the mandibular division (V_3)

Figure 14.32 The Trigeminal Nerve.

(continued)

---

[52] *tri* = three + *gemin* = twin

Table 14.2 The Cranial Nerves (continued)

VI. Abducens (ab-DOO-senz) Nerve

Composition: Predominantly motor

Function: Eye movements

Origin: Inferior pons

Termination: Lateral rectus muscle of eye

Cranial passage: Superior orbital fissure

Effects of damage: Inability to rotate eye laterally; at rest, eye rotates medially because of action of antagonistic muscles

Clinical test: Test lateral eye movements

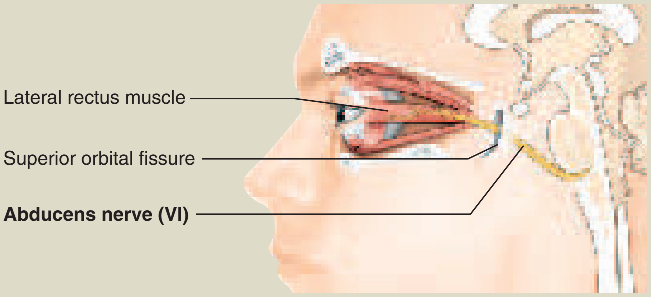

Lateral rectus muscle
Superior orbital fissure
Abducens nerve (VI)

Figure 14.33 The Abducens Nerve.

VII. Facial Nerve

Composition: Mixed

Function: Major motor nerve of facial expression; autonomic control of tear glands, nasal and palatine glands, submandibular and sublingual salivary glands; sense of taste

Sensory origin: Taste buds on anterior two-thirds of tongue

Sensory termination: Thalamus

Motor origin: Pons

Motor termination: Divides into *temporal, zygomatic, buccal, mandibular,* and *cervical branches.* Somatic motor fibers end on digastric muscle, stapedius muscle of middle ear, and muscles of facial expression; autonomic fibers end on submandibular and sublingual salivary glands

Cranial passage: Stylomastoid foramen

Effects of damage: Inability to control facial muscles; sagging resulting from loss of muscle tone; distorted sense of taste, especially for sweets

Clinical test: Test anterior two-thirds of tongue with substances such as sugar, salt, vinegar (sour), and quinine (bitter); test response of tear glands to ammonia fumes; test motor functions by asking subject to close eyes, smile, whistle, frown, raise eyebrows, etc.

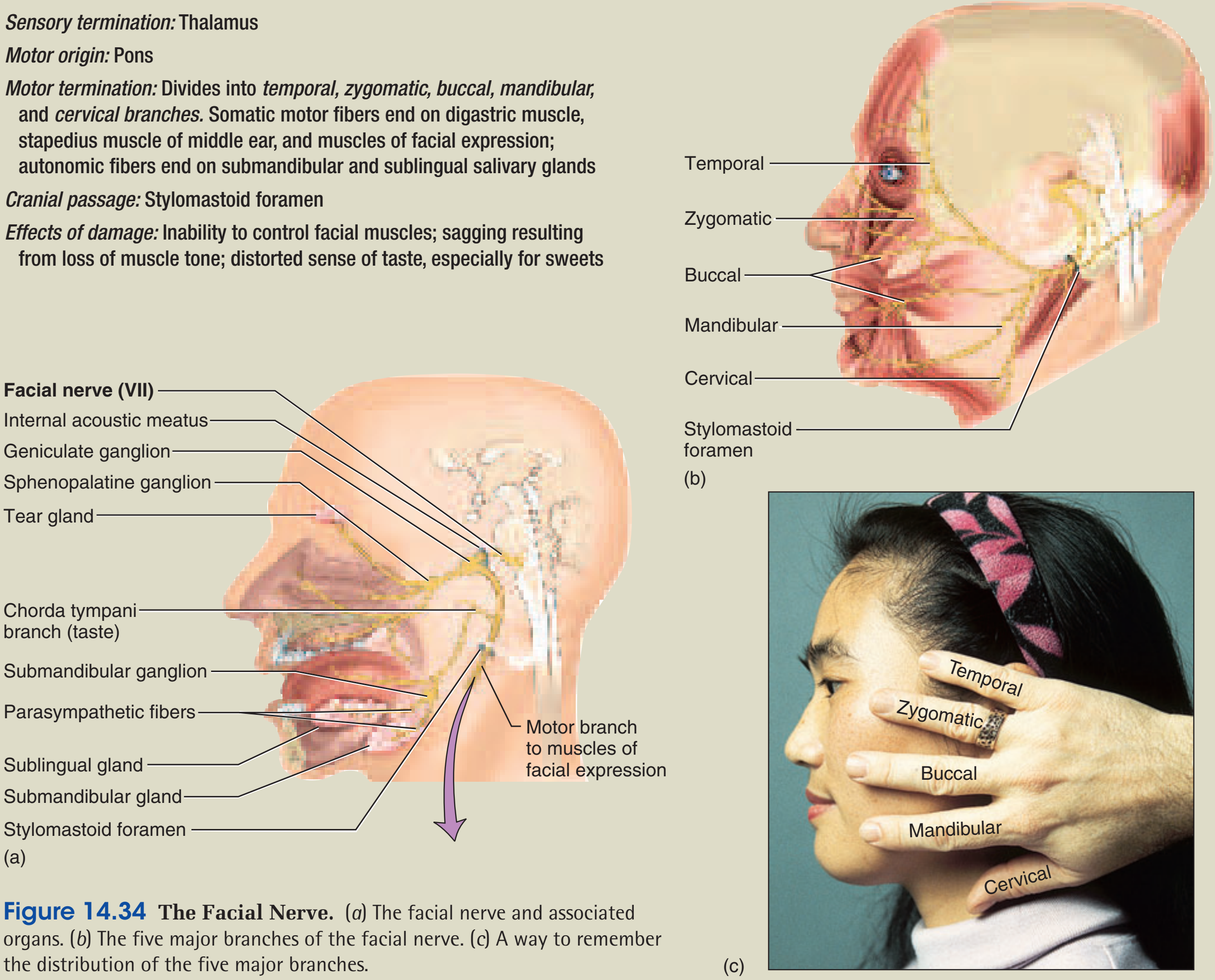

Temporal
Zygomatic
Buccal
Mandibular
Cervical
Stylomastoid foramen
(b)
Facial nerve (VII)
Internal acoustic meatus
Geniculate ganglion
Sphenopalatine ganglion
Tear gland
Chorda tympani branch (taste)
Submandibular ganglion
Parasympathetic fibers
Sublingual gland
Submandibular gland
Stylomastoid foramen
(a)
Motor branch to muscles of facial expression
Temporal
Zygomatic
Buccal
Mandibular
Cervical
(c)

Figure 14.34 The Facial Nerve. (*a*) The facial nerve and associated organs. (*b*) The five major branches of the facial nerve. (*c*) A way to remember the distribution of the five major branches.

(continued)

Table 14.2 The Cranial Nerves (continued)

VIII. Vestibulocochlear (vess-TIB-you-lo-COC-lee-ur) Nerve

Composition: Predominantly sensory

Function: Hearing and equilibrium

Sensory origin: Inner ear

Sensory termination: Fibers for equilibrium end at junction of pons and medulla; fibers for hearing end in medulla

Motor origin: Pons

Motor termination: Outer hair cells of cochlea of inner ear (see chapter 16)

Cranial passage: Internal acoustic meatus

Effects of damage: Nerve deafness, dizziness, nausea, loss of balance, and nystagmus (involuntary oscillation of the eyes from side to side)

Clinical test: Test hearing, balance, and ability to walk a straight line

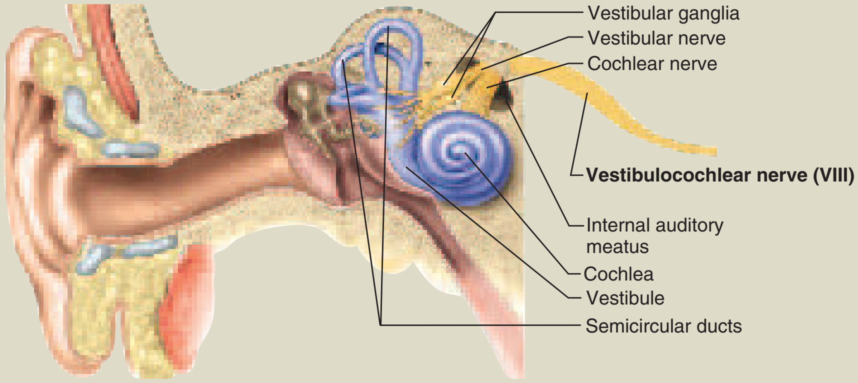

Vestibular ganglia
Vestibular nerve
Cochlear nerve
Vestibulocochlear nerve (VIII)
Internal auditory meatus
Cochlea
Vestibule
Semicircular ducts

Figure 14.35 The Vestibulocochlear Nerve.

IX. Glossopharyngeal (GLOSS-oh-fah-RIN-jee-ul) Nerve

Composition: Mixed

Function: Swallowing, salivation, gagging; regulation of blood pressure and respiration; touch, pressure, taste, and pain sensations from tongue and pharynx; touch, pain, and temperature sensations from outer ear

Sensory origin: Pharynx, middle and outer ear, posterior one-third of tongue (including taste buds), internal carotid arteries

Sensory termination: Medulla oblongata

Motor origin: Medulla oblongata

Motor termination: Parotid salivary gland, glands of posterior tongue, stylopharyngeal muscle (which dilates the pharynx during swallowing)

Cranial passage: Jugular foramen

Effects of damage: Loss of bitter and sour taste; impaired swallowing

Clinical test: Test gag reflex, swallowing, and coughing; note speech impediments; test posterior one-third of tongue using bitter and sour substances

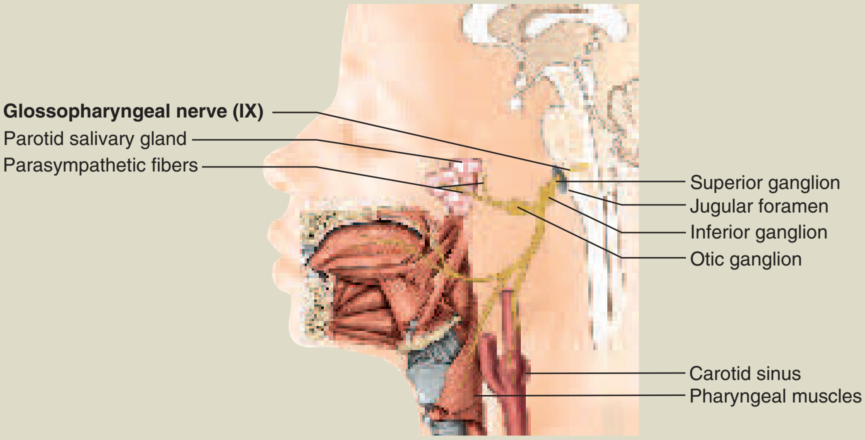

Glossopharyngeal nerve (IX)
Parotid salivary gland
Parasympathetic fibers
Superior ganglion
Jugular foramen
Inferior ganglion
Otic ganglion
Carotid sinus
Pharyngeal muscles

Figure 14.36 The Glossopharyngeal Nerve.

(continued)

Table 14.2 The Cranial Nerves (continued)

X. Vagus[53] (VAY-gus) Nerve

Composition: Mixed

Function: Swallowing; taste; speech; pulmonary, cardiovascular, and gastrointestinal regulation; sensations of hunger, fullness, and intestinal discomfort

Sensory origin: Thoracic and abdominal viscera, root of tongue, epiglottis, pharynx, larynx, outer ear, dura mater

Sensory termination: Medulla oblongata

Motor origin: Medulla oblongata

Motor termination: Tongue, palate, pharynx, larynx, thoracic and abdominal viscera

Cranial passage: Jugular foramen

Effects of damage: Hoarseness or loss of voice; impaired swallowing and gastrointestinal motility; fatal if both vagus nerves are damaged

Clinical test: Test with cranial nerve IX

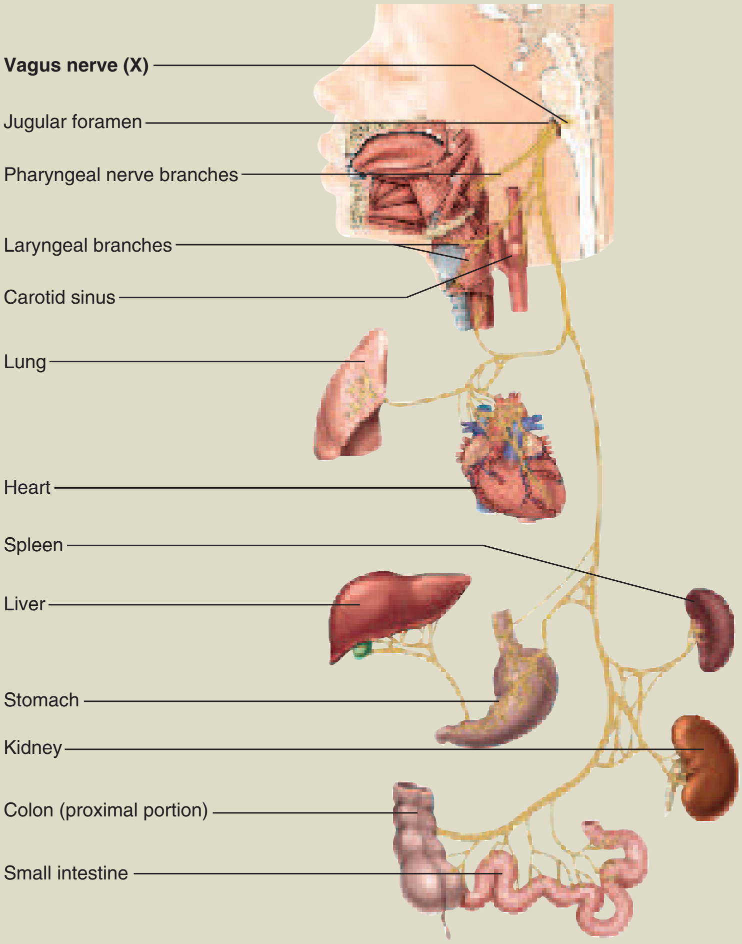

Vagus nerve (X)
Jugular foramen
Pharyngeal nerve branches
Laryngeal branches
Carotid sinus
Lung
Heart
Spleen
Liver
Stomach
Kidney
Colon (proximal portion)
Small intestine

Figure 14.37 **The Vagus Nerve.**

(continued)

---

[53] *vag* = wandering

Table 14.2 The Cranial Nerves (continued)

XI. Accessory Nerve

Composition: Predominantly motor

Function: Swallowing; head, neck, and shoulder movements

Origin: Medulla oblongata and segments C1 through C5 or C6 of spinal cord

Termination: Palate, pharynx, sternocleidomastoid and trapezius muscles

Cranial passage: Jugular foramen

Effects of damage: Impaired movement of head, neck, and shoulders; difficulty in shrugging shoulders on damaged side; paralysis of sternocleidomastoid, causing head to turn toward injured side

Clinical test: Test ability to rotate head and shrug shoulders against resistance

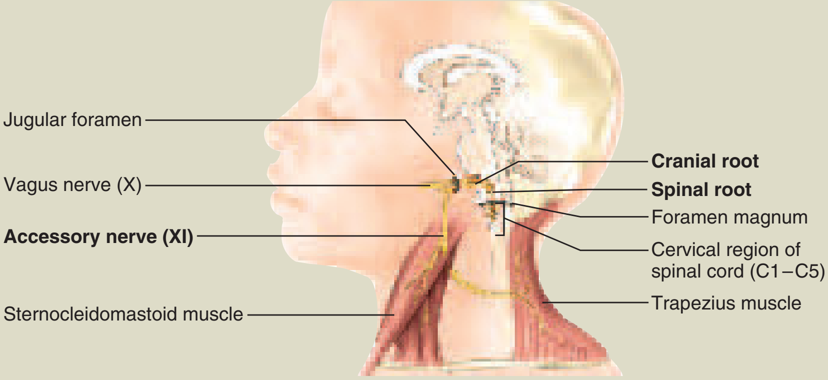

Jugular foramen
Vagus nerve (X)
Accessory nerve (XI)
Sternocleidomastoid muscle
Cranial root
Spinal root
Foramen magnum
Cervical region of spinal cord (C1–C5)
Trapezius muscle

Figure 14.38 The Accessory Nerve.

XII. Hypoglossal (HY-po-GLOSS-ul) Nerve

Composition: Predominantly motor

Function: Tongue movements of speech, food manipulation, and swallowing

Origin: Medulla oblongata

Cranial passage: Hypoglossal canal

Termination: Intrinsic and extrinsic muscles of tongue, thyrohyoid and geniohyoid muscles

Effects of damage: Difficulty in speech and swallowing; inability to protrude tongue if both right and left nerves are injured; deviation toward injured side, and atrophy of tongue on that side, if only one nerve is damaged

Clinical test: Note deviations of tongue as subject protrudes and retracts it; test ability to protrude tongue against resistance

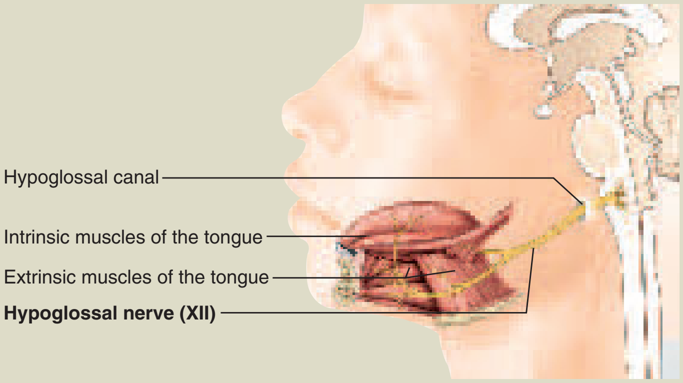

Hypoglossal canal
Intrinsic muscles of the tongue
Extrinsic muscles of the tongue
Hypoglossal nerve (XII)

Figure 14.39 The Hypoglossal Nerve.

Insight 14.3 Clinical Application

Some Cranial Nerve Disorders

Trigeminal neuralgia[54] (*tic douloureux*[55]) is a syndrome characterized by recurring episodes of intense stabbing pain in the trigeminal nerve. The cause is unknown; there is no visible change in the nerve. It usually occurs after the age of 50 and mostly in women. The pain lasts only a few seconds to a minute or two, but it strikes at unpredictable intervals and sometimes up to a hundred times a day. The pain usually occurs in a specific zone of the face, such as around the mouth and nose. It may be triggered by touch, drinking, tooth brushing, or washing the face. Analgesics (pain relievers) give only limited relief. Severe cases are treated by cutting the nerve, but this also deadens most other sensation in that side of the face.

Bell[56] *palsy* is a degenerative disorder of the facial nerve, probably due to a virus. It is characterized by paralysis of the facial muscles on one side with resulting distortion of the facial features, such as sagging of the mouth or lower eyelid. The paralysis may interfere with speech, prevent closure of the eye, and cause excessive tear secretion. There may also be a partial loss of the sense of taste. Bell palsy may appear abruptly, sometimes overnight, and often disappears spontaneously within 3 to 5 weeks.

Like a machine with a great number of moving parts, the nervous system is highly subject to malfunctions. Table 14.3 lists a few well-known brain and cranial nerve dysfunctions. The effects of aging on the CNS are described on page 1110.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

23. List the purely sensory cranial nerves and state the function of each.
24. What is the only cranial nerve to extend beyond the head-neck region?
25. If the oculomotor, trochlear, or abducens nerve were damaged, the effect would be similar in all three cases. What would that effect be?
26. Which cranial nerve carries sensory signals from the greatest area of the face?
27. Name two cranial nerves involved in the sense of taste and describe where their sensory fibers originate.

Table 14.3 Some Disorders Associated with the Brain and Cranial Nerves

Cerebral palsy	Muscular incoordination resulting from damage to the motor areas of the brain during fetal development, birth, or infancy; causes include prenatal rubella infection, drugs, or radiation exposure; oxygen deficiency during birth; and hydrocephalus
Concussion	Damage to the brain typically resulting from a blow, often with loss of consciousness, disturbances of vision or equilibrium, and short-term amnesia
Encephalitis	Inflammation of the brain, accompanied by fever, usually caused by mosquito-borne viruses or herpes simplex virus; causes neuronal degeneration and necrosis; can lead to delirium, seizures, and death
Epilepsy	Disorder causing sudden, massive discharge of neurons (seizures) resulting in motor convulsions, sensory and psychic disturbances, and often impaired consciousness; may result from birth trauma, tumors, infections, drug or alcohol abuse, or congenital brain malformation
Migraine headache	Recurring headaches often accompanied by nausea, vomiting, dizziness, and aversion to light, often triggered by such factors as weather changes, stress, hunger, red wine, or noise; more common in women and sometimes running in families
Schizophrenia	A thought disorder involving delusions, hallucinations, inappropriate emotional responses to situations, incoherent speech, and withdrawal from society, resulting from hereditary or developmental abnormalities in neuronal networks

Disorders described elsewhere

Alzheimer disease p. 475
Amnesia p. 539
Aphasia p. 543
Aprosodia p. 543
Bell palsy p. 556
Brain tumors p. 451
Cerebellar ataxia p. 543
Cranial nerve injuries p. 556
Hydrocephalus pp. 262, 523
Meningitis p. 521
Multiple sclerosis p. 453
Parkinson disease p. 475
Poliomyelitis p. 490
Tay-Sachs disease p. 453
Trigeminal neuralgia p. 556

---

[54] *neur* = nerve + *algia* = pain
[55] *douloureux* = painful
[56] Sir Charles Bell (1774–1842), Scottish physician

Insight 14.4 Clinical Application

Images of the Mind

Enclosed as it is in the cranium, there is no easy way to observe a living brain directly. This has long frustrated neurobiologists, who once had to content themselves with glimpses of brain function afforded by electroencephalograms, patients with brain lesions, and patients who remained awake and conversant during brain surgery and who consented to experimentation while the brain was exposed. New imaging methods, however, are yielding dramatic perspectives on brain function. Two of these—positron emission tomography (PET) and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)—were explained in insight 1.5 at the end of chapter 1. Both techniques rely on transient increases in blood flow to parts of the brain called into action to perform specific tasks. By monitoring these changes, neuroscientists can identify which parts of the brain are involved in specific tasks.

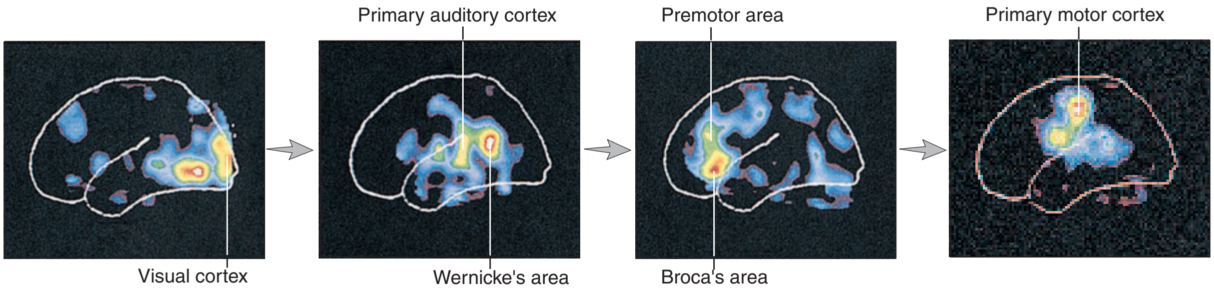
To produce a PET scan of the brain, the subject is given an injection of radioactively labeled glucose and a scan is made in a *control state* before any specific mental task is begun. Then the subject is given a specific task to perform. For example, the subject may be instructed to read the word *car* and speak a verb related to it, such as *drive.* New PET scans are made in the *task state* while the subject performs this task. Neither control- nor task-state images are very revealing by themselves, but the computer subtracts the control-state data from the task-state data and presents a color-coded image of the difference. To compensate for chance events and individual variation, the computer also produces an image that is either averaged from several trials with one person or from trials with several different people.

In such averaged images, the busiest areas of the brain seem to "light up" from moment to moment as the task is performed (fig. 14.40). This identifies the regions used for various stages of the task, such as reading the word, thinking of a verb to go with it, planning to say *drive,* and actually saying it. Among other things, such experiments demonstrate that Broca's and Wernicke's areas are not involved in simply repeating words; they are active, however, when a subject must evaluate a word and choose an appropriate response—that is, they function in formulating the new word the subject is going to say. PET scans also show that different neuronal pools take over a task as we practice and become more proficient at it.

Functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI) depends on the role of astrocytes in brain metabolism. The main excitatory neurotransmitter secreted by cerebral neurons is glutamate. After a neuron releases glutamate and glutamate stimulates the next neuron, astrocytes quickly remove it from the synapse and convert it to glutamine. Astrocytes acquire the energy for this from the anaerobic fermentation of glucose. High activity in an area of cortex thus requires an increased blood flow to supply this glucose, but it does not consume the oxygen in that blood. Thus, the oxygen supply exceeds the demand for it in that part of the brain, and blood leaving that region contains more oxygen than the blood leaving less active regions. Since the magnetic properties of hemoglobin depend on how much oxygen is bound to it, fMRI can detect changes in brain circulation.

fMRI is more precise than PET and pinpoints regions of brain activity with a precision of 1 to 2 mm. It also has the advantages of requiring no injected substances and no exposure to radioisotopes. While it takes about 1 minute to produce a PET scan, fMRI produces images much more quickly, which makes it more useful for determining how the brain responds immediately to sensory input or mental tasks.

PET and fMRI scanning have enhanced our knowledge of neurobiology by identifying shifting patterns of brain activity associated with attention and consciousness, sensory perception, memory, emotion, motor control, reading, speaking, musical judgment, planning a chess strategy, and so forth. In addition to their contribution to basic neuroscience, these techniques show promise as an aid to neurosurgery and psychopharmacology. They also are enhancing our understanding of brain dysfunctions such as depression, schizophrenia, and attention deficit–hyperactivity disorder (ADHD). We have entered an exciting era in the safe visualization of normal brain function, virtually producing pictures of the mind at work.



1. The word *car* is seen in the visual cortex.

2. Wernicke's area conceives of the verb *drive* to go with it.

3. Broca's area compiles a motor program to speak the word *drive.*

4. The primary motor cortex executes the program and the word is spoken.

Figure 14.40 **PET Scans of the Brain Made During the Performance of a Language Task.** These images show the cortical regions that are active when a person reads words and then speaks them. The most active areas are shown in *red* and the least active areas are shown in *blue.*

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

Overview of the Brain (p. 516)

1. The adult brain weighs 1,450 to 1,600 g. It is divided into the *cerebrum, cerebellum,* and *brainstem.*
2. The cerebrum and cerebellum exhibit folds called *gyri* separated by grooves called *sulci.* The groove between the cerebral hemispheres is the *longitudinal fissure.*
3. The cerebrum and cerebellum have gray matter in their surface *cortex* and deeper *nuclei,* and white matter deep to the cortex.
4. Embryonic development of the brain progresses through *neural plate* and *neural tube* stages in the first 4 weeks. The anterior neural tube then begins to bulge and differentiate into forebrain, midbrain, and hindbrain. By the fifth week, the forebrain and hindbrain show further subdivision into two secondary vesicles each.

Meninges, Ventricles, Cerebrospinal Fluid, and Blood Supply (p. 519)

1. Like the spinal cord, the brain is surrounded by a dura mater, arachnoid mater, and pia mater. The dura mater is divided into two layers, *periosteal* and *meningeal,* which in some places are separated by a blood-filled *dural sinus.* In some places, a *subdural space* also separates the dura from the arachnoid.
2. The brain has four internal, interconnected cavities: two *lateral ventricles* in the cerebral hemispheres, a *third ventricle* between the hemispheres, and a *fourth ventricle* between the pons and cerebellum.
3. The ventricles and canals of the CNS are lined with ependymal cells, and each ventricle contains a *choroid plexus* of blood capillaries.
4. These spaces are filled with cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), which is produced by the ependyma and choroid plexuses and in the subarachnoid space around the brain. The CSF of the ventricles flows from the lateral to the third and then fourth ventricle, out through foramina in the fourth, into the subarachnoid space around the brain and spinal cord, and finally returns to the blood by way of arachnoid villi.
5. CSF provides buoyancy, physical protection, and chemical stability for the CNS.
6. The brain has a high demand for glucose and oxygen and thus receives a copious blood supply.
7. The *blood-brain barrier* and *blood-CSF barrier* tightly regulate what substances can escape the blood and reach the nervous tissue.

The Hindbrain and Midbrain (p. 524)

1. The *medulla oblongata* is the most caudal part of the brain, just inside the foramen magnum. It conducts signals up and down the brainstem and between the brainstem and cerebellum, and contains nuclei involved in vasomotion, respiration, coughing, sneezing, salivation, swallowing, gagging, vomiting, gastrointestinal secretion, sweating, and muscles of tongue and head movement. Cranial nerves IX through XII arise from the medulla.
2. The *pons* is immediately rostral to the medulla. It conducts signals up and down the brainstem and between the brainstem and cerebellum, and contains nuclei involved in sleep, hearing, equilibrium, taste, eye movements, facial expression and sensation, respiration, swallowing, bladder control, and posture. Cranial nerve V arises from the pons, and nerves VI through VIII arise between the pons and medulla.
3. The *cerebellum* is the largest part of the hindbrain. It is composed of two hemispheres joined by a vermis, and has three pairs of *cerebellar peduncles* that attach it to the medulla, pons, and midbrain and carry signals between the brainstem and cerebellum.
4. Histologically, the cerebellum exhibits a fernlike pattern of white matter called the *arbor vitae, deep nuclei* of gray matter embedded in the white matter, and unusually large neurons called *Purkinje cells.*
5. The cerebellum is concerned with motor coordination and judging the passage of time, and plays less-understood roles in awareness, judgment, memory, and emotion.
6. The *midbrain* is rostral to the pons. It conducts signals up and down the brainstem and between the brainstem and cerebellum, and contains nuclei involved in motor control, pain, visual attention, and auditory reflexes. It gives rise to cranial nerves III and IV.
7. The *reticular formation* is an elongated cluster of nuclei extending throughout the brainstem, including some of the nuclei already mentioned. It is involved in the control of skeletal muscles, the visual gaze, breathing, swallowing, cardiac and vasomotor control, pain, sleep, consciousness, and sensory awareness.

The Forebrain (p. 529)

1. The forebrain consists of the diencephalon and cerebrum.
2. The *diencephalon* is composed of the thalamus, hypothalamus, and epithalamus.
3. The *thalamus* receives sensory input from the brainstem and first two cranial nerves, integrates sensory data, and relays sensory information to appropriate areas of the cerebrum. It is also involved in emotion, memory, arousal, and eye movements.
4. The *hypothalamus* is inferior to the thalamus and forms the walls and floor of the third ventricle. It is a major homeostatic control center. It synthesizes some pituitary hormones and controls the timing of pituitary secretion, and it has nuclei concerned with heart rate, blood pressure, gastrointestinal secretion and motility, pupillary diameter,

thermoregulation, hunger and thirst, sleep and circadian rhythms, memory, and emotion.

5. The *epithalamus* lies above the thalamus and includes the pineal gland (an endocrine gland) and habenula (a relay from limbic system to midbrain).
6. The cerebrum is the largest part of the brain. It is divided into two hemispheres, and each hemisphere into five lobes: *frontal, parietal, occipital,* and *temporal lobes* and the *insula.*
7. Nerve fibers of the cerebral white matter are bundled in tracts of three kinds: *projection tracts* that extend between higher and lower brain centers, *commissural tracts* that cross between the right and left cerebral hemispheres through the *corpus callosum* and the *anterior* and *posterior commissures;* and *association tracts* that connect different lobes and gyri within a single hemisphere.
8. The cerebral cortex is gray matter with two types of neurons: stellate cells and pyramidal cells. All output from the cortex travels by way of axons of the pyramidal cells. Most of the cortex is *neocortex,* in which there are six layers of nervous tissue. Evolutionarily older parts of the cerebrum have one- to five-layered *paleocortex* and *archicortex.*
9. The *basal nuclei* are masses of cerebral gray matter lateral to the thalamus, concerned with motor control. They include the *caudate nucleus, putamen,* and *globus pallidus.*
10. The *limbic system* is a loop of specialized cerebral cortex on the medial border of the temporal lobe. Some of its parts are the *hippocampus, amygdala, fornix,* and *cingulate gyrus.* It is important in smell, emotion, and memory.

Higher Brain Functions (p. 536)

1. The cerebral cortex generates *brain waves* that can be recorded as an *electroencephalogram (EEG).* Different types of brain waves (alpha, beta, theta, delta) predominate in various states of consciousness and certain brain disorders.
2. The cycle of sleep and waking is controlled by the *suprachiasmatic nucleus* of the hypothalamus and the reticular formation of the lower brainstem. Sleep progresses from stage 1 to stage 4 with characteristic changes in the EEG and other physiological values. Most dreaming occurs during a fifth type of sleep called *rapid eye movement (REM) sleep.*
3. *Cognition* (consciousness, thought, etc.) involves several *association areas* of the cerebral cortex, especially in the parietal, temporal, and frontal lobes.
4. The hippocampus of the limbic system processes information and organizes it into long-term memories *(memory consolidation).* These memories are then stored in other regions of the cerebral cortex, including the prefrontal cortex and the temporal lobe. The cerebellum is also involved in procedural memory (learning motor skills) and the amygdala in emotional memory.
5. The amygdala, hippocampus, and hypothalamus are important emotional centers of the brain, involved in such feelings as love, fear, anger, pleasure, and pain, and in learning to associate behaviors with reward and punishment.
6. *Somesthetic sensation* is controlled by the postcentral gyrus, where there is a point-for-point correspondence *(somatotopy)* with specific regions on the contralateral side of the body.
7. Special senses other than taste and equilibrium are controlled by other areas of *primary sensory cortex:* smell in the temporal and frontal lobes, vision in the occipital lobe, and hearing in the temporal lobe and insula. Taste signals go with somesthetic senses to the postcentral gyrus and equilibrium signals to the cerebellum.
8. The primary sensory areas are surrounded with *sensory association areas* that process sensory input, relate it to memory, and identify the stimuli.
9. Motor control resides in the *motor association area* and *precentral gyrus* of the frontal lobe. The precentral gyrus shows a somatotopic correspondence with muscles on the contralateral side of the body.
10. The basal nuclei and cerebellum play important roles in motor coordination and the conduct of learned motor skills.
11. Language is coordinated largely by Wernicke's and Broca's areas. Recognizing language and formulating what one will say or write occur in Wernicke's area; compiling the motor program of speech resides in Broca's area; and commands to the muscles of speech originate in the precentral gyrus.
12. The brain exhibits *cerebral lateralization:* Some functions are coordinated mainly by the left hemisphere and others by the right. The *categorical hemisphere* (in most people, the left) is responsible for verbal and mathematical skills and logical, linear thinking. The *representational hemisphere* (usually the right) is a seat of imagination, insight, spatial perception, musical skill, and other "holistic" functions.

The Cranial Nerves (p. 546)

1. Twelve pairs of *cranial nerves* arise from the floor of the brain, pass through foramina of the skull, and lead primarily to structures in the head and neck.
2. Cranial nerves (CN) I and II are purely sensory. All the rest are mixed, although the sensory components of some are only proprioceptive and aid in motor control, so they are often regarded as motor nerves (CN III, IV, VI, XI, and XII).
3. The functions and other characteristics of the cranial nerves are described in table 14.2.

Selected Vocabulary

rostral	516
caudal	516
cerebrum	516
cerebral hemispheres	516
gyrus	516
sulcus	516
cerebellum	516
brainstem	516
cortex	516
nucleus	516
tract	516
ventricle	521
cerebrospinal fluid	521
blood-brain barrier	524
medulla oblongata	524
pons	526
midbrain	526
reticular formation	528
thalamus	530
hypothalamus	530
basal nuclei	534
limbic system	534
cognition	538
somesthetic sensation	540
somatotopy	540
primary sensory area	540
association area	540
primary motor area	542
cranial nerves	546

Testing Your Recall

1. Which of these is caudal to the hypothalamus?
   a. the thalamus
   b. the optic chiasm
   c. the cerebral aqueduct
   d. the pituitary gland
   e. the corpus callosum

2. If the telencephalon were removed from a 5-week-old embryo, which of the following structures would fail to develop in the fetus?
   a. cerebral hemispheres
   b. the thalamus
   c. the midbrain
   d. the medulla oblongata
   e. the spinal cord

3. The blood-CSF barrier is formed by
   a. blood capillaries.
   b. endothelial cells.
   c. protoplasmic astrocytes.
   d. oligodendrocytes.
   e. ependymal cells.

4. The pyramids of the medulla oblongata contain
   a. descending corticospinal fibers.
   b. commissural fibers.
   c. ascending spinocerebellar fibers.
   d. fibers going to and from the cerebellum.
   e. ascending spinothalamic fibers.

5. Which of the following does *not* receive any visual input?
   a. the hypothalamus
   b. the frontal lobe
   c. the thalamus
   d. the occipital lobe
   e. the midbrain

6. While studying in a noisy cafeteria, you get sleepy and doze off for a few minutes. You awaken with a start and realize that all the cafeteria sounds have just “come back.” While you were dozing, this auditory input was blocked from reaching your auditory cortex by
   a. the temporal lobe.
   b. the thalamus.
   c. the reticular activating system.
   d. the medulla oblongata.
   e. the vestibulocochlear nerve.

7. Because of a brain lesion, a certain patient never feels full, but eats so excessively that she now weighs nearly 600 pounds. The lesion is most likely in her
   a. hypothalamus.
   b. amygdala.
   c. hippocampus.
   d. basal nuclei.
   e. pons.

8. The _____ is most closely associated with the cerebellum in embryonic development and remains its primary source of input fibers throughout life.
   a. telencephalon
   b. thalamus
   c. midbrain
   d. pons
   e. medulla

9. Damage to the _____ nerve could result in defects of eye movement.
   a. optic
   b. vagus
   c. trigeminal
   d. facial
   e. abducens

10. All of the following *except* the _____ nerve begin or end in the orbit.
   a. optic
   b. oculomotor
   c. trochlear
   d. abducens
   e. accessory

11. The right and left cerebral hemispheres are connected to each other by a thick C-shaped bundle of fibers called the _____.

12. The brain has four chambers called _____ filled with _____ fluid.

13. On a sagittal plane, the cerebellar white matter exhibits a branching pattern called the _____.

14. Abnormal accumulation of cerebrospinal fluid in the ventricles can cause a condition called _____.

15. Cerebrospinal fluid is secreted partly by a mass of blood capillaries called the _____ in each ventricle.

16. The primary motor area of the cerebrum is the _____ gyrus of the frontal lobe.

17. Your personality is determined mainly by which lobe of the cerebrum?

18. Areas of cerebral cortex that identify or interpret sensory information are called _____.

19. Linear, analytical, and verbal thinking occurs in the _____ hemisphere of the cerebrum, which is on the left in most people.

20. The motor pattern for speech is generated in an area of cortex called _____ and then transmitted to the primary motor cortex to be carried out.

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. The two hemispheres of the cerebellum are separated by the longitudinal fissure.
2. The cerebral hemispheres would fail to develop if the neural crests of the embryo were destroyed.
3. The midbrain is caudal to the thalamus.
4. Broca's area is ipsilateral to Wernicke's area.
5. Most of the cerebrospinal fluid is produced by the choroid plexuses.
6. Hearing is a function of the occipital lobe.
7. Respiration is controlled by nuclei in both the pons and medulla oblongata.
8. The trigeminal nerve carries sensory signals from a larger area of the face than the facial nerve does.
9. Unlike other cranial nerves, the vagus nerve extends far beyond the head-neck region.
10. The optic nerve controls movements of the eye.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. Which cranial nerve conveys pain signals to the brain in each of the following situations: (*a*) sand blows into your eye; (*b*) you bite the rear of your tongue; and (*c*) your stomach hurts from eating too much?
2. How would a lesion in the cerebellum affect skeletal muscle function differently than a lesion in the basal nuclei?
3. Suppose that a neuroanatomist performed two experiments on an animal with the same basic spinal brainstem structure as a human's: In experiment 1, he selectively transected (cut across) the pyramids on the ventral side of the medulla oblongata, and in experiment 2, he selectively transected the gracile and cuneate fasciculi on the dorsal side. How would the outcomes of the two experiments differ?
4. A person can survive destruction of an entire cerebral hemisphere but cannot survive destruction of the hypothalamus, which is a much smaller mass of brain tissue. Explain this difference and describe some ways that destruction of a cerebral hemisphere would affect one's quality of life.
5. What would be the most obvious effects of lesions that destroyed each of the following: (*a*) the hippocampus, (*b*) the amygdala, (*c*) Broca's area, (*d*) the occipital lobe, and (*e*) the hypoglossal nerve?

Answers at the Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Legend Questions

14.2 It is the narrow channel between the lead lines from the *hypothalamus* and *midbrain* labels.

14.7 The most common points of obstruction are the interventricular foramen at label 2, the cerebral aqueduct near label 4, and the lateral and median apertures near label 5.

14.14 The anterior and posterior commissures. (The posterior commissure is labeled in figure 14.9.)

14.15 Dendrites. The axons project downward into the white matter.

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.

Autonomic neurons in the myenteric plexus of the digestive tract

CHAPTER 15

The Autonomic Nervous System and Visceral Reflexes

CHAPTER OUTLINE

General Properties of the Autonomic Nervous System 564
- Visceral Reflexes 564
- Divisions of the Autonomic Nervous System 565
- Neural Pathways 565

Anatomy of the Autonomic Nervous System 567
- The Sympathetic Division 567
- The Adrenal Glands 571
- The Parasympathetic Division 571
- The Enteric Nervous System 573

Autonomic Effects on Target Organs 574
- Neurotransmitters 574
- Receptors 574
- Dual Innervation 575
- Control Without Dual Innervation 577

Central Control of Autonomic Function 578
- The Cerebral Cortex 578
- The Hypothalamus 578
- The Midbrain, Pons, and Medulla Oblongata 579
- The Spinal Cord 579

Connective Issues 581

Chapter Review 582

INSIGHTS

15.1 Clinical Application: Biofeedback 564

15.2 Clinical Application: Drugs and the Nervous System 579

Brushing Up

To understand this chapter, it is important that you understand or brush up on the following concepts:

- Innervation of smooth muscle (p. 434)
- Neurotransmitters and synaptic transmission (pp. 464–467)
- Spinal nerves (p. 490)
- The hypothalamus and limbic system (pp. 530, 534)
- Cranial nerves (p. 547)

We have studied the somatic nervous system and somatic reflexes, and we now turn to the *autonomic nervous system* (ANS) and *visceral reflexes*—reflexes that regulate such primitive functions as blood pressure, heart rate, body temperature, digestion, energy metabolism, respiratory airflow, pupillary diameter, defecation, and urination. In short, the ANS quietly manages a myriad of unconscious processes responsible for the body's homeostasis. Not surprisingly, many drug therapies are based on alteration of autonomic function; some examples are discussed at the end of this chapter.

Harvard Medical School physiologist Walter Cannon, who coined such expressions as *homeostasis* and the *fight or flight* reaction, dedicated his career to the physiology of the autonomic nervous system. Cannon found that an animal can live without a functional sympathetic nervous system, but it must be kept warm and free of stress; it cannot survive on its own or tolerate any strenuous exertion. The autonomic nervous system is more necessary to survival than many functions of the somatic nervous system; an absence of autonomic function is fatal because the body cannot maintain homeostasis. We are seldom aware of what our autonomic nervous system is doing, much less able to control it; indeed, it is difficult to consciously alter or suppress autonomic responses, and for this reason they are the basis for polygraph ("lie detector") tests. Nevertheless, for an understanding of bodily function and health care, we must be well aware of how this system works.

General Properties of the Autonomic Nervous System

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- explain how the autonomic and somatic nervous systems differ in form and function; and
- explain how the two divisions of the autonomic nervous system differ in general function.

The **autonomic nervous system (ANS)** can be defined as a motor nervous system that controls glands, cardiac muscle, and smooth muscle. It is also called the **visceral motor system** to distinguish it from the somatic motor system that controls the skeletal muscles. The primary target organs of the ANS are the viscera of the thoracic and abdominal cavities and some structures of the body wall, including cutaneous blood vessels, sweat glands, and piloerector muscles.

Autonomic literally means "self-governed."[1] The ANS usually carries out its actions involuntarily, without our conscious intent or awareness, in contrast to the voluntary nature of the somatic motor system. This voluntary-involuntary distinction is not, however, as clear-cut as it once seemed. Some skeletal muscle responses are quite involuntary, such as the somatic reflexes, and some skeletal muscles are difficult or impossible to control, such as the middle-ear muscles. On the other hand, therapeutic uses of biofeedback (see insight 15.1) show that some people can learn to voluntarily control such visceral functions as blood pressure.

Visceral effectors do not depend on the autonomic nervous system to function, but only to adjust their activity to the body's changing needs. The heart, for example, goes on beating even if all autonomic nerves to it are severed, but the ANS *modulates* (adjusts) the heart rate in conditions of rest or exercise. If the somatic nerves to a skeletal muscle are severed, the muscle exhibits flaccid paralysis—it no longer functions. But if the autonomic nerves to cardiac or smooth muscle are severed, the muscle exhibits exaggerated responses *(denervation hypersensitivity).*

Insight 15.1 Clinical Application

Biofeedback

Biofeedback is a technique in which an instrument produces auditory or visual signals in response to changes in a subject's blood pressure, heart rate, muscle tone, skin temperature, brain waves, or other physiological variables. It gives the subject awareness of changes that he or she would not ordinarily notice. Some people can be trained to control these variables in order to produce a certain tone or color of light from the apparatus. Eventually they can control them without the aid of the monitor. Biofeedback is not a quick, easy, infallible, or inexpensive cure for all ills, but it has been used successfully to treat hypertension, stress, and migraine headaches.

Visceral Reflexes

The ANS is responsible for the body's **visceral reflexes**—unconscious, automatic, stereotyped responses to stimulation, much like the somatic reflexes discussed in chapter 14 but involving visceral receptors and effectors and somewhat slower responses. Some authorities regard the visceral afferent (sensory) pathways as part of the ANS, while most prefer to limit the term *ANS* to the efferent (motor) pathways. Regardless of this preference, however, autonomic activity involves a visceral reflex arc that includes receptors (nerve endings that detect stretch, tissue damage, blood chemicals, body temperature, and other internal stimuli), afferent neurons leading to the CNS, interneurons in the CNS, efferent neurons carrying motor signals away from the CNS, and finally effectors.

For example, high blood pressure activates a visceral *baroreflex.*[2] It stimulates stretch receptors called *baroreceptors* in the carotid arteries and aorta, and they transmit signals via the glossopharyngeal nerves to the medulla oblongata (fig. 15.1). The medulla integrates this input with other information and transmits efferent signals back to the heart by way of the vagus nerves. The vagus nerves slow down the heart and reduce blood pressure, thus completing a homeostatic negative feedback loop. A separate autonomic reflex arc accelerates the heart when blood pressure drops below normal.

---

[1] *auto* = self + *nom* = rule

[2] *baro* = pressure

Divisions of the Autonomic Nervous System

The ANS has two divisions, the sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems. These divisions differ in anatomy and function, but they often innervate the same target organs and may have cooperative or contrasting effects on them. The **sympathetic division** prepares the body in many ways for physical activity—it increases alertness, heart rate, blood pressure, pulmonary airflow, blood glucose concentration, and blood flow to cardiac and skeletal muscle, but at the same time, it reduces blood flow to the skin and digestive tract. Cannon referred to extreme sympathetic responses as the “fight or flight” reaction because they come into play when an animal must attack, defend itself, or flee from danger. In our own lives, this reaction occurs in many situations involving arousal, competition, stress, danger, anger, or fear. Ordinarily, however, the sympathetic division has more subtle effects that we notice barely, if at all. The **parasympathetic division,** by comparison, has a calming effect on many body functions. It is associated with reduced energy expenditure and normal bodily maintenance, including such functions as digestion and waste elimination. This can be thought of as the “resting and digesting” state.

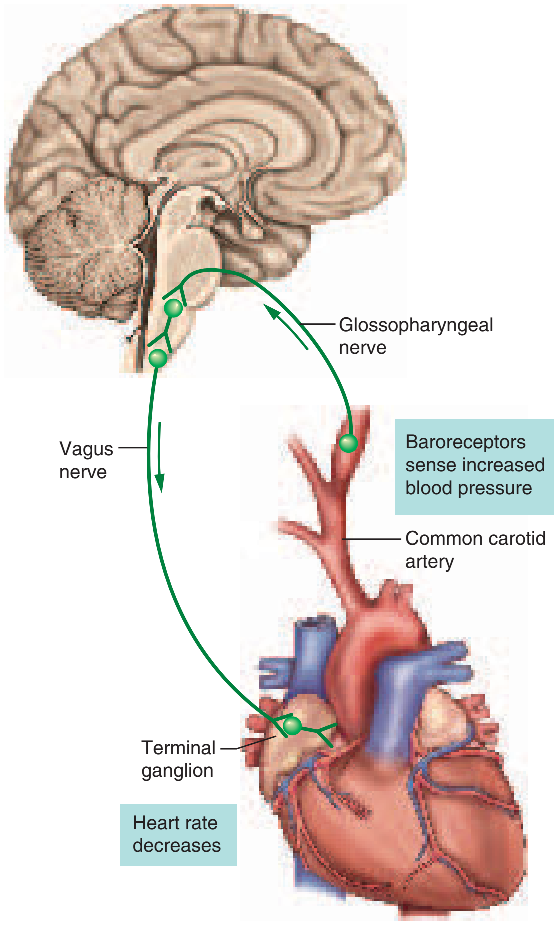


Figure 15.1 Autonomic Reflex Arcs in the Regulation of Blood Pressure. In this example, a rise in blood pressure is detected by baroreceptors in the carotid artery. The glossopharyngeal nerve transmits signals to the medulla oblongata, resulting in parasympathetic output from the vagus nerve that reduces the heart rate and lowers blood pressure.

This does not mean that the body alternates between states where one system or the other is active. Normally both systems are active simultaneously. They exhibit a background rate of activity called **autonomic tone,** and the balance between *sympathetic tone* and *parasympathetic tone* shifts in accordance with the body’s changing needs. Parasympathetic tone, for example, maintains smooth muscle tone in the intestines and holds the resting heart rate down to about 70 to 80 beats/minute. If the parasympathetic vagus nerves to the heart are cut, the heart beats at its own intrinsic rate of about 100 beats/min. Sympathetic tone keeps most blood vessels partially constricted and thus maintains blood pressure. A loss of sympathetic tone can cause such a rapid drop in blood pressure that a person goes into shock.

Neither division has universally excitatory or calming effects. The sympathetic division, for example, excites the heart but inhibits digestive and urinary functions, while the parasympathetic division has the opposite effects. We will later examine how differences in neurotransmitters and their receptors account for these differences of effect.

Neural Pathways

The ANS has components in both the central and peripheral nervous systems. It includes control nuclei in the hypothalamus and other regions of the brainstem, motor neurons in the spinal cord and peripheral ganglia, and nerve fibers that travel through the cranial and spinal nerves you have already studied.

The autonomic motor pathway to a target organ differs significantly from somatic motor pathways. In somatic pathways, a motor neuron in the brainstem or spinal cord issues a myelinated axon that reaches all the way to a skeletal muscle. In autonomic pathways, the signal must travel across two neurons to get to the target organ, and it must cross a synapse where these two neurons meet in an autonomic ganglion (fig. 15.2). The first neuron, called the **preganglionic neuron,** has a soma in the brainstem or spinal cord whose axon terminates in the ganglion. It synapses there with a **postganglionic neuron** whose axon extends the rest of the way to the target cells. (Some call this cell the *ganglionic neuron* since its soma is in the ganglion and only its axon is truly postganglionic.) The axons of these neurons are called the *pre-* and *postganglionic fibers.*

In summary, the autonomic nervous system is a division of the nervous system responsible for homeostasis, acting through the mostly unconscious and involuntary control of glands, smooth muscle, and cardiac muscle. Its target organs are mostly the thoracic and abdominal viscera, but also include some cutaneous and other effectors. It acts through motor pathways that involve two neurons, preganglionic and postganglionic, reaching from CNS to effector. The ANS has two divisions, sympathetic and parasympathetic, that often have cooperative or contrasting effects on the same target organ. Both divisions have excitatory effects on some target cells and inhibitory effects on others. These and other differences between the somatic and autonomic nervous systems are summarized in table 15.1.

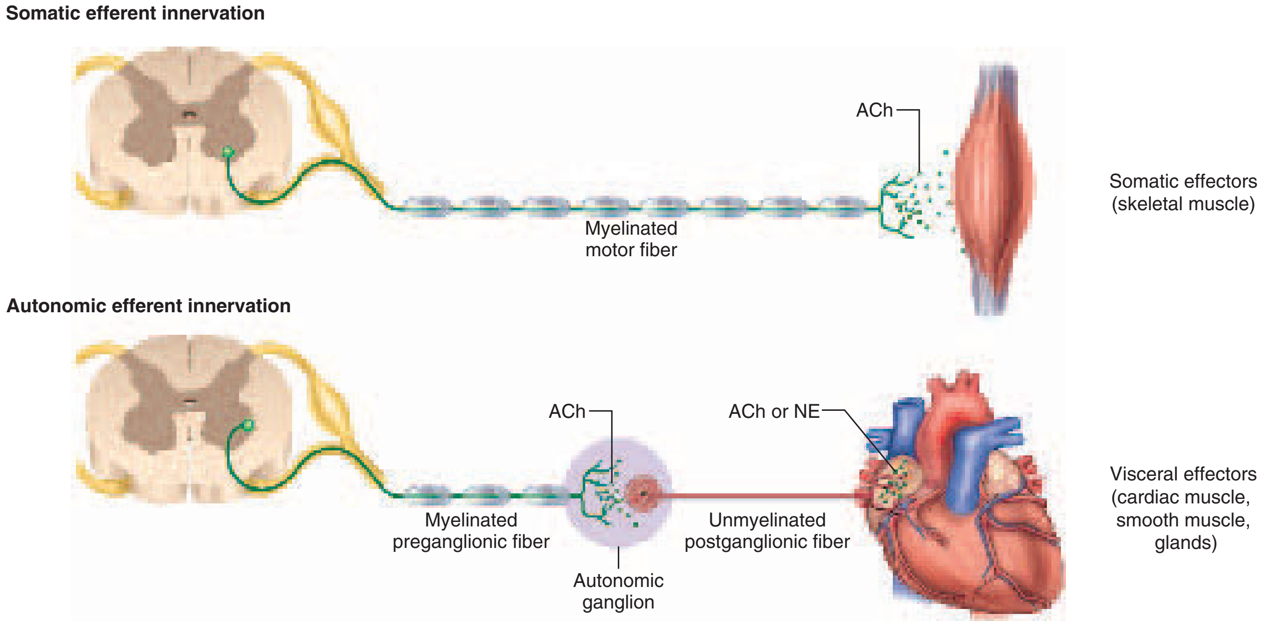

Somatic efferent innervation
ACh
Somatic effectors (skeletal muscle)
Myelinated motor fiber
Autonomic efferent innervation
ACh
ACh or NE
Visceral effectors (cardiac muscle, smooth muscle, glands)
Myelinated preganglionic fiber
Unmyelinated postganglionic fiber
Autonomic ganglion

Figure 15.2 Comparison of Somatic and Autonomic Efferent Pathways. The entire distance from CNS to effector is spanned by one neuron in the somatic system and two neurons in the autonomic system. Only acetylcholine (ACh) is employed as a neurotransmitter by the somatic neuron and the autonomic preganglionic neuron, but autonomic postganglionic neurons can employ either ACh or norepinephrine (NE).

Table 15.1 Comparison of the Somatic and Autonomic Nervous Systems

Feature	Somatic	Autonomic
Effectors	Skeletal muscle	Glands, smooth muscle, cardiac muscle
Efferent pathways	One nerve fiber from CNS to effector; no ganglia	Two nerve fibers from CNS to effector; synapse at a ganglion
Neurotransmitters	Acetylcholine (ACh)	ACh and norepinephrine (NE)
Effect on target cells	Always excitatory	Excitatory or inhibitory
Effect of denervation	Flaccid paralysis	Denervation hypersensitivity
Control	Usually voluntary	Usually involuntary

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

1. How does the autonomic nervous system differ from the somatic motor system?
2. How do the general effects of the sympathetic division differ from those of the parasympathetic division?

Anatomy of the Autonomic Nervous System

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- identify the anatomical components and nerve pathways of the sympathetic and parasympathetic divisions; and
- discuss the relationship of the adrenal glands to the sympathetic nervous system.

The Sympathetic Division

The sympathetic division is also called the *thoracolumbar division* because it arises from the thoracic and lumbar regions of the spinal cord. It has relatively short preganglionic and long postganglionic fibers. The preganglionic somas are in the lateral horns and nearby regions of the gray matter of the spinal cord. Their fibers exit by way of spinal nerves T1 to L2 and lead to the nearby **sympathetic chain** of ganglia **(paravertebral[3] ganglia)** along each side of the vertebral column (figs. 15.3 and 15.4). Although these chains receive input from only the thoracolumbar region of the cord, they extend into the cervical and sacral to coccygeal regions as well. Some nerve fibers entering the chain at levels T1 to L2 travel up or down the chain to reach these cervical and sacral ganglia. The number of ganglia varies from person to person, but usually there are 3 cervical (*superior, middle,* and *inferior*), 11 thoracic, 4 lumbar, 4 sacral, and 1 coccygeal ganglion in each chain.

In the thoracolumbar region, each paravertebral ganglion is connected to a spinal nerve by two branches called *communicating rami* (fig. 15.5). The preganglionic fibers are small myelinated fibers that travel from the spinal nerve to the ganglion by way of the **white communicating ramus,**[4] which gets its color and name from the myelin. Unmyelinated postganglionic fibers leave the ganglion by way of the **gray communicating ramus,** named for its lack of myelin and duller color, and by other routes. These long fibers extend the rest of the way to the target organ.

Think About It

Would autonomic postganglionic fibers have faster or slower conduction speeds than somatic motor fibers? Why? (See hints in chapter 12.)

---

[3] *para* = next to + *vertebr* = vertebral column

[4] *ramus* = branch

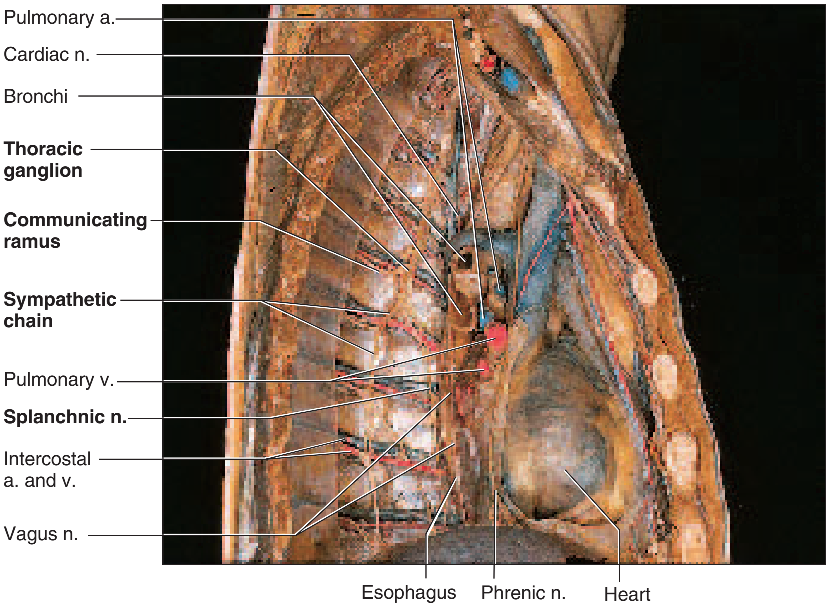


Figure 15.3 **The Sympathetic Chain Ganglia.** Right lateral view of the thoracic cavity. (*a.* = artery; *n.* = nerve; *v.* = vein.)

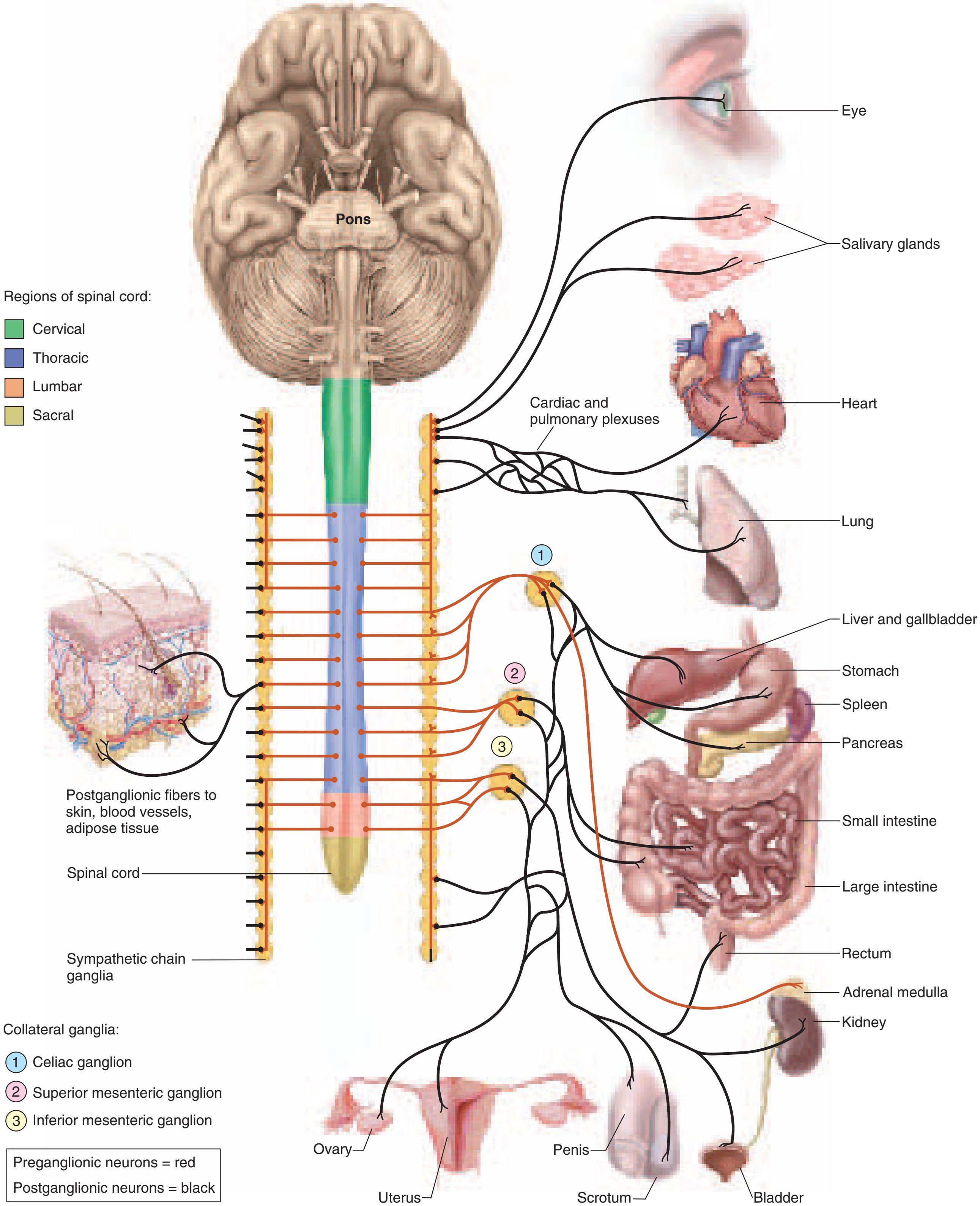

Pons
Eye
Salivary glands
Regions of spinal cord:
🟩 Cervical
🟦 Thoracic
🟧 Lumbar
🟨 Sacral
Cardiac and pulmonary plexuses
Heart
Lung
①
Liver and gallbladder
Stomach
Spleen
②
Pancreas
③
Postganglionic fibers to skin, blood vessels, adipose tissue
Small intestine
Spinal cord
Large intestine
Sympathetic chain ganglia
Rectum
Adrenal medulla
Kidney
Collateral ganglia:
① Celiac ganglion
② Superior mesenteric ganglion
③ Inferior mesenteric ganglion
Preganglionic neurons = red
Postganglionic neurons = black
Ovary
Penis
Uterus
Scrotum
Bladder

Figure 15.4 **Sympathetic Pathways.**
Does the sympathetic innervation of the lung cause inhaling and exhaling?

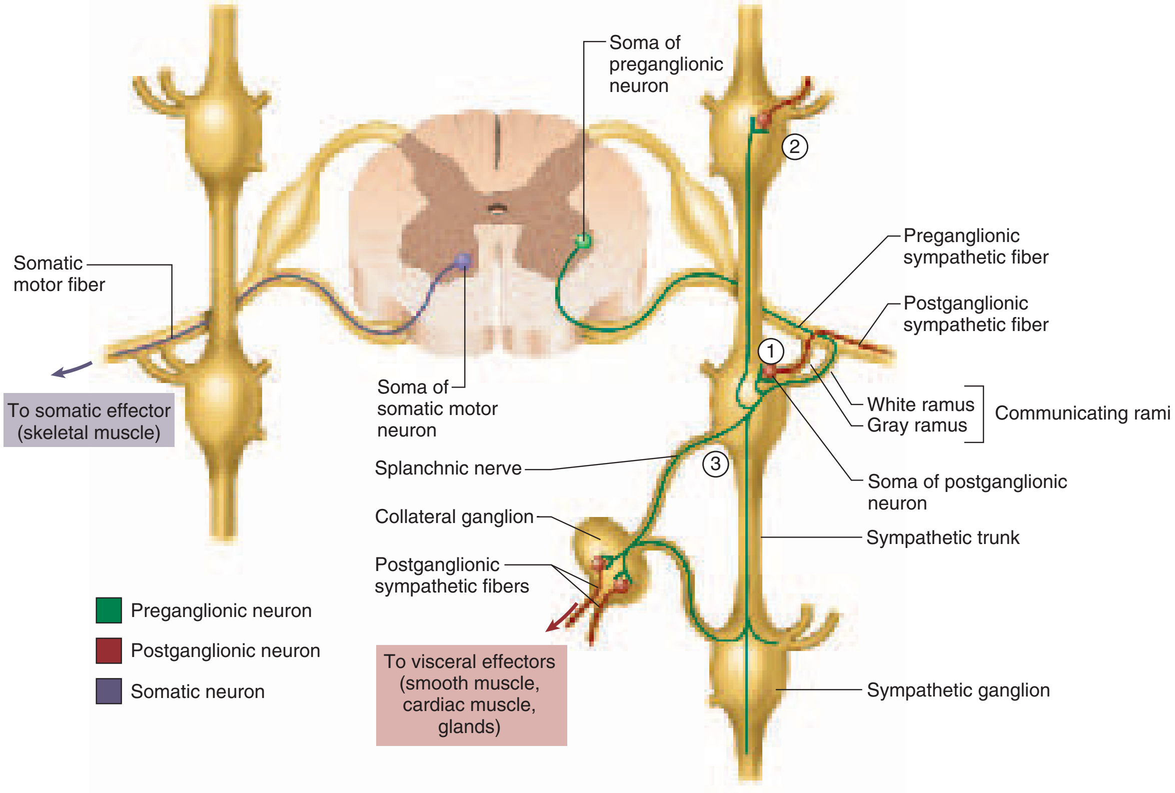

Soma of preganglionic neuron
②
Somatic motor fiber
Preganglionic sympathetic fiber
Postganglionic sympathetic fiber
①
To somatic effector (skeletal muscle)
Soma of somatic motor neuron
White ramus
Gray ramus
Communicating rami
Splanchnic nerve
③
Soma of postganglionic neuron
Collateral ganglion
Sympathetic trunk
Postganglionic sympathetic fibers
🟩 Preganglionic neuron
🟥 Postganglionic neuron
▨ Somatic neuron
To visceral effectors (smooth muscle, cardiac muscle, glands)
Sympathetic ganglion

Figure 15.5 **Sympathetic Pathways (*right*) Compared to Somatic Efferent Pathways (*left*).** Sympathetic fibers can follow any of the three numbered routes: (*1*) the spinal nerve route, (*2*) the sympathetic nerve route, or (*3*) the splanchnic nerve route.
Name the parts of the spinal cord where the somas of the sympathetic and somatic efferent neurons are located.

After entering the sympathetic chain, preganglionic fibers may follow any of three courses:

- Some end in the ganglion that they enter and synapse immediately with a postganglionic neuron.
- Some travel up or down the chain and synapse in ganglia at other levels. It is these fibers that link the paravertebral ganglia into a chain. They are the only route by which ganglia at the cervical, sacral, and coccygeal levels receive input.
- Some pass through the chain without synapsing and continue as *splanchnic* (SPLANK-nic) *nerves,* to be considered shortly.

There is no simple one-to-one relationship between preganglionic and postganglionic neurons in the sympathetic division. For one thing, each postganglionic cell may receive synapses from multiple preganglionic cells, thus exhibiting the principle of *neuronal convergence* discussed in chapter 12. Furthermore, each preganglionic fiber branches and synapses with multiple postganglionic fibers, thus showing *neuronal divergence.* There are about 17 postganglionic neurons for every preganglionic neuron in the sympathetic division. This means that when one preganglionic neuron fires, it can excite multiple postganglionic fibers leading to different target organs. The sympathetic division thus tends to have relatively widespread effects—as suggested by the name *sympathetic.*[5]

Nerve fibers leave the paravertebral ganglia by three routes: spinal, sympathetic, and splanchnic nerves. These are numbered in figure 15.5 to correspond to the following descriptions:

1. **The spinal nerve route.** Some postganglionic fibers exit by way of the gray ramus, return to the spinal nerve or its subdivisions, and travel the rest of the way to the target organ. This is the route to most sweat glands, piloerector muscles, and blood vessels of the skin and skeletal muscles.
2. **The sympathetic nerve route.** Other postganglionic fibers leave by way of **sympathetic nerves** that

---

[5] *sym* = together + *path* = feeling

extend to the heart, lungs, esophagus, and thoracic blood vessels. These nerves form a plexus around each carotid artery and issue fibers from there to effectors in the head—including sweat, salivary, and nasal glands; piloerector muscles; blood vessels; and dilators of the iris. Some fibers from the superior cervical ganglion form the *cardiac nerves* to the heart.

3. **The splanchnic[6] nerve route.** This route is formed by fibers that originate predominantly from spinal nerves T5 to T12 and pass through the ganglia without synapsing. Beyond the ganglia, they form greater, lesser, and lumbar **splanchnic nerves.** These lead to the **collateral (prevertebral) ganglia,** which contribute to a network called the **abdominal aortic plexus** wrapped around the aorta (fig. 15.6). There are three major collateral ganglia in this plexus—the **celiac** (SEE-lee-ac) **ganglion, superior mesenteric ganglion,** and **inferior mesenteric ganglion—** located at points where arteries of the same names branch off the aorta. The postganglionic fibers accompany these arteries and their branches to the target organs. (The term *solar plexus* is regarded by some authorities as a collective designation for the celiac and superior mesenteric ganglia, and by others as a synonym for the celiac ganglion only. The term comes from the nerves radiating from the ganglion like rays of the sun.) Innervation to and from the three major collateral ganglia is summarized in table 15.2.

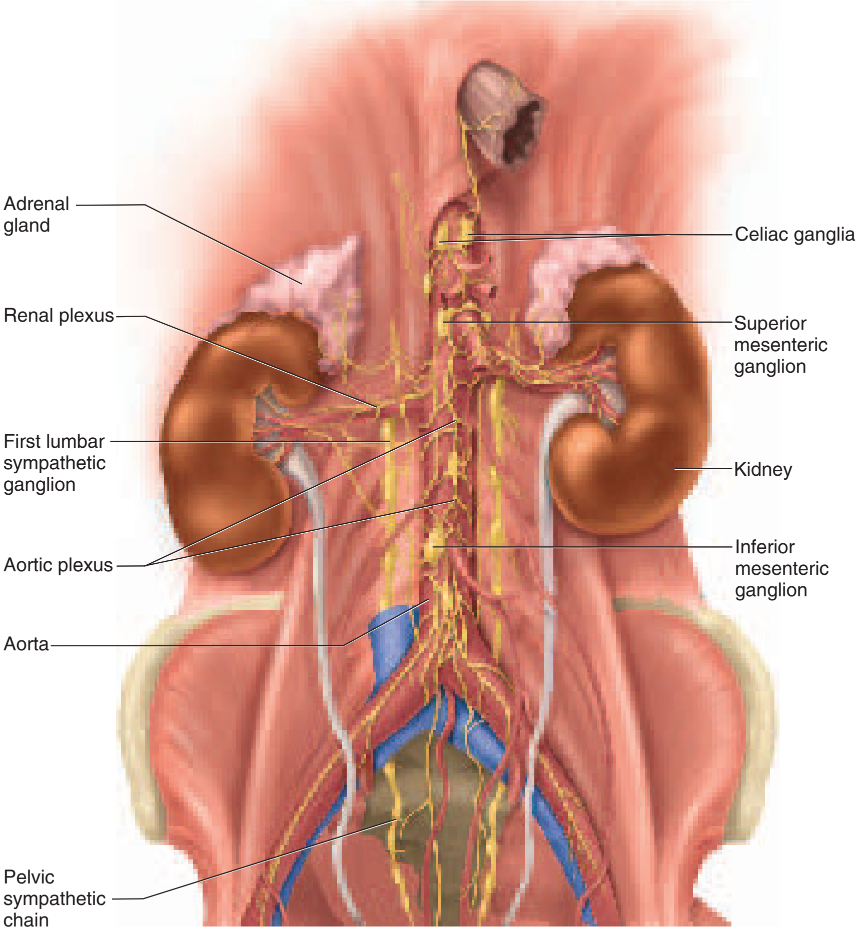

Adrenal gland
Renal plexus
First lumbar sympathetic ganglion
Aortic plexus
Aorta
Pelvic sympathetic chain
Celiac ganglia
Superior mesenteric ganglion
Kidney
Inferior mesenteric ganglion

Figure 15.6 **Sympathetic Collateral Ganglia and the Abdominal Aortic Plexus.**

---

[6] *splanchn* = viscera

Table 15.2 Innervation To and From the Collateral Ganglia

Sympathetic Ganglia and Splanchnic Nerve →	Collateral Ganglion →	Postganglionic Target Organs
From thoracic ganglia 5 to 9 or 10 via greater splanchnic nerve	Celiac ganglion	Stomach, spleen, liver, small intestine, and kidneys
From thoracic ganglia 9 and 10 via lesser splanchnic nerve	Celiac and superior mesenteric ganglia	Small intestine and colon
From lumbar ganglia via lumbar splanchnic nerve	Celiac and inferior mesenteric ganglia	Distal colon, rectum, urinary bladder, and reproductive organs

In summary, effectors in the body wall are innervated mainly by sympathetic fibers in the spinal nerves; effectors in the head and thoracic cavity by sympathetic nerves; and effectors in the abdominal cavity by splanchnic nerves.

The Adrenal Glands

The paired **adrenal**[7] **glands** rest like hats on the superior pole of each kidney (fig. 15.6). Each adrenal is actually two glands with different functions and embryonic origins. The outer rind, the **adrenal cortex,** secretes steroid hormones discussed in chapter 17. The inner core, the **adrenal medulla,** is a modified sympathetic ganglion. It consists of modified postganglionic neurons without dendrites or axons. Sympathetic preganglionic fibers penetrate through the cortex and terminate on these cells.

When stimulated, the adrenal medulla secretes a mixture of hormones into the bloodstream—about 85% epinephrine (adrenaline), 15% norepinephrine (noradrenaline), and a trace of dopamine. These hormones, the *catecholamines,* were briefly considered in chapter 12 because they also function as neurotransmitters. The sympathetic nervous system and adrenal medulla are so closely related in development and function that they are referred to collectively as the *sympathoadrenal system.*

The Parasympathetic Division

The parasympathetic division is also called the *craniosacral division* because it arises from the brain and sacral region of the spinal cord; its fibers travel in certain cranial and sacral nerves. The preganglionic neurons are located in the pons, medulla oblongata, and segments S2 to S4 of the spinal cord (fig. 15.7). They issue long preganglionic fibers which end in **terminal ganglia** in or near the target organ (see fig. 15.1). (If a terminal ganglion is embedded within the wall of a target organ, it is also called an *intramural*[8] *ganglion.*) Thus, the parasympathetic division has long preganglionic fibers, reaching almost all the way to the target cells, and short postganglionic fibers that cover the rest of the distance.

There is some neuronal divergence in the parasympathetic division, but much less than in the sympathetic. The parasympathetic division has a ratio of about two postganglionic fibers to every preganglionic. Furthermore, the preganglionic fiber reaches the target organ before even this slight divergence occurs. The parasympathetic division is therefore relatively selective in its stimulation of target organs.

Parasympathetic fibers leave the brainstem by way of the following four cranial nerves. The first three supply all parasympathetic innervation to the head and the last one supplies viscera of the thoracic and abdominal cavities.

1. **Oculomotor nerve (III).** The oculomotor nerve carries parasympathetic fibers that control the lens and pupil of the eye. The preganglionic fibers enter the orbit and terminate in the *ciliary ganglion.* Postganglionic fibers enter the eyeball and innervate the *ciliary muscle,* which thickens the lens, and the *pupillary constrictor,* which narrows the pupil.
2. **Facial nerve (VII).** The facial nerve carries parasympathetic fibers that regulate the tear glands, salivary glands, and nasal glands. Soon after the facial nerve emerges from the pons, its parasympathetic fibers split away and form two smaller branches. The upper branch ends at the *sphenopalatine ganglion* near the junction of the maxilla and palatine bones. Postganglionic fibers then continue to the tear glands and glands of the nasal cavity, palate, and other areas of the oral cavity. The lower branch crosses the middle-ear cavity and ends at the *submandibular ganglion* near the angle of the mandible. Postganglionic fibers from here supply salivary glands in the floor of the mouth.
3. **Glossopharyngeal nerve (IX).** The glossopharyngeal nerve carries parasympathetic fibers concerned with salivation. The preganglionic fibers leave this nerve soon after its origin and form the *tympanic*

---

[7] *ad* = near + *ren* = kidney
[8] *intra* = within + *mur* = wall

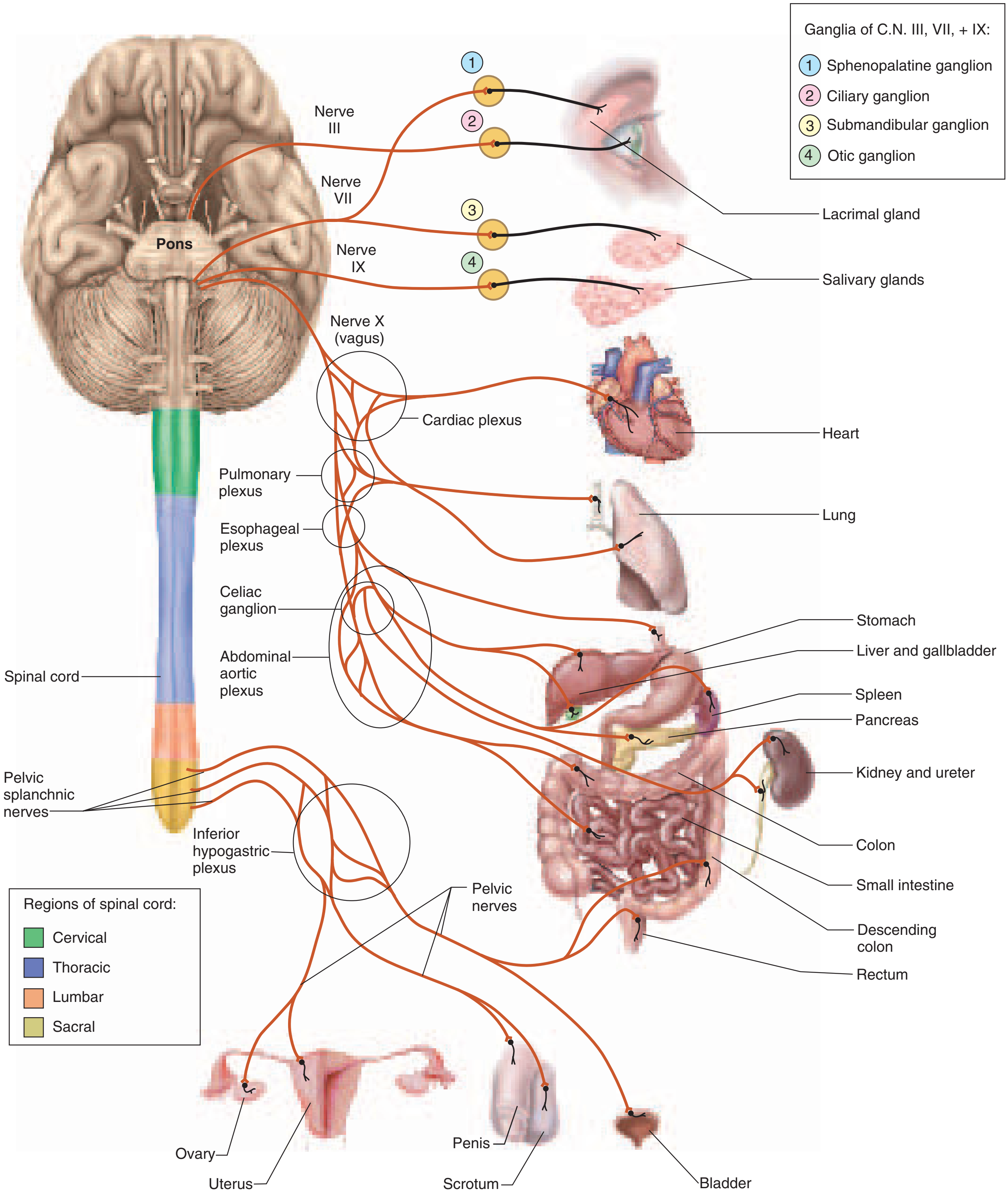

Ganglia of C.N. III, VII, + IX:
① Sphenopalatine ganglion
② Ciliary ganglion
③ Submandibular ganglion
④ Otic ganglion
①
②
③
④
Nerve III
Nerve VII
Nerve IX
Pons
Nerve X (vagus)
Lacrimal gland
Salivary glands
Cardiac plexus
Heart
Pulmonary plexus
Esophageal plexus
Lung
Celiac ganglion
Abdominal aortic plexus
Stomach
Liver and gallbladder
Spleen
Pancreas
Kidney and ureter
Spinal cord
Pelvic splanchnic nerves
Inferior hypogastric plexus
Colon
Small intestine
Pelvic nerves
Descending colon
Rectum
Regions of spinal cord:
🟩 Cervical
🟦 Thoracic
🟧 Lumbar
🟨 Sacral
Ovary
Uterus
Penis
Scrotum
Bladder

Figure 15.7 **Parasympathetic Pathways.**
Which nerve carries the most parasympathetic nerve fibers?

nerve, which crosses the eardrum and ends in the *otic*[9] *ganglion* near the foramen ovale. The postganglionic fibers then follow the trigeminal nerve to the *parotid salivary gland* just in front of the earlobe.

4 **Vagus nerve (X).** The vagus nerve carries about 90% of all parasympathetic preganglionic fibers. It travels down the neck and forms three networks in the mediastinum—the **cardiac plexus,** which supplies fibers to the heart; the **pulmonary plexus,** whose fibers accompany the bronchi and blood vessels into the lungs; and the **esophageal plexus,** whose fibers regulate swallowing.

At the lower end of the esophagus, these plexuses give off anterior and posterior **vagal trunks,** each of which contains fibers from both the right and left vagus. These penetrate the diaphragm, enter the abdominal cavity, and contribute to the extensive *abdominal aortic plexus* mentioned earlier. As we have seen, sympathetic fibers synapse here. The parasympathetic fibers, however, pass through the plexus without synapsing and lead to the liver, pancreas, stomach, small intestine, kidney, ureter, and proximal half of the colon.

The remaining parasympathetic fibers arise from levels S2 to S4 of the spinal cord. They travel a short distance in the ventral rami of the spinal nerves and then form **pelvic splanchnic nerves** that lead to the **inferior hypogastric (pelvic) plexus.** Some parasympathetic fibers synapse here, but most pass through this plexus and travel by way of **pelvic nerves** to the terminal ganglia in their target organs: the distal half of the large intestine, the rectum, urinary bladder, and reproductive organs. The parasympathetic system does not innervate body wall structures (sweat glands, piloerector muscles, or cutaneous blood vessels).

The sympathetic and parasympathetic divisions of the ANS are compared in table 15.3.

Think About It

Would autonomic functions be affected if the ventral roots of the cervical spinal nerves were damaged? Why or why not?

The Enteric Nervous System

The digestive tract has a nervous system of its own called the **enteric**[10] **nervous system.** Unlike the ANS proper, it does not arise from the brainstem or spinal cord, but like the ANS, it innervates smooth muscle and glands. Thus, opinions differ on whether it should be considered part of the ANS. It consists of about 100 million neurons embedded in the wall of the digestive tract—perhaps more neurons than there are in the spinal cord—and it has its own reflex arcs. The enteric nervous system regulates the motility of the esophagus, stomach, and intestines and the secretion of digestive enzymes and acid. To function normally, however, these digestive activities also require regulation by the sympathetic and parasympathetic systems. The enteric nervous system is discussed in more detail in chapter 25.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

3. Explain why the sympathetic division is also called the thoracolumbar division even though its paravertebral ganglia extend all the way from the cervical to the sacral region.
4. Describe or diagram the structural relationships among the following: preganglionic fiber, postganglionic fiber, ventral ramus, gray ramus, white ramus, and paravertebral ganglion.
5. Explain in anatomical terms why the parasympathetic division affects target organs more selectively than the sympathetic division does.
6. Trace the pathway of a parasympathetic fiber of the vagus nerve from the medulla oblongata to the small intestine.

---

[9] *ot* = ear + *ic* = pertaining to

[10] *enter* = intestines + *ic* = pertaining to

Table 15.3 Comparison of the Sympathetic and Parasympathetic Divisions

Feature	Sympathetic	Parasympathetic
Origin in CNS	Thoracolumbar	Craniosacral
Location of ganglia	Paravertebral ganglia adjacent to spinal column and prevertebral ganglia anterior to it	Terminal ganglia near or within target organs
Fiber lengths	Short preganglionic	Long preganglionic
	Long postganglionic	Short postganglionic
Neuronal divergence	Extensive (about 1:17)	Minimal (about 1:2)
Effects of system	Often widespread and general	More specific and local

Autonomic Effects on Target Organs

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- name the neurotransmitters employed at different synapses of the ANS;
- name the receptors for these neurotransmitters and explain how these receptor types relate to autonomic effects;
- explain how the ANS controls many target organs through dual innervation; and
- explain how control is exerted in the absence of dual innervation.

Neurotransmitters

The key to understanding the effects of the ANS lies in knowing which neurotransmitters it releases and what kind of receptors occur on the target cells. The ANS has both **cholinergic fibers,** which secrete acetylcholine (ACh), and **adrenergic fibers,** which secrete norepinephrine (NE). Cholinergic fibers include the preganglionic fibers of both divisions, the postganglionic fibers of the parasympathetic division, and a few sympathetic postganglionic fibers (those that innervate sweat glands and some blood vessels). Most sympathetic postganglionic fibers are adrenergic (table 15.4).

The sympathetic nervous system tends to have longer-lasting effects than the parasympathetic. After ACh is secreted by the parasympathetic fibers, it is quickly broken down by acetylcholinesterase (AChE) in the synapse and its effect lasts only a few seconds. The NE released by sympathetic nerve fibers, however, has various fates: (1) Some is reabsorbed by the nerve fiber and either reused or broken down by the enzyme *monoamine oxidase (MAO).* (2) Some diffuses into the surrounding tissues, where it is degraded by another enzyme, *catechol-O-methyltransferase (COMT).* (3) Much of it is picked up by the bloodstream, where MAO and COMT are absent. This NE, along with epinephrine from the adrenal gland, circulates throughout the body and exerts a prolonged effect.

ACh and NE are not the only neurotransmitters employed by the ANS. Although all autonomic fibers secrete one of these, many of them also secrete neuropeptides that modulate ACh or NE function. Sympathetic fibers may also secrete enkephalin, substance P, neuropeptide Y, somatostatin, neurotensin, or gonadotropin–releasing hormone. Some parasympathetic fibers relax blood vessels and increase blood flow by stimulating the endothelial cells that line the vessel to release the gas nitric oxide (NO). NO inhibits smooth muscle tone in the vessel wall.

Receptors

Both the sympathetic and parasympathetic divisions have excitatory effects on some target cells and inhibitory effects on others. For example, the parasympathetic division contracts the wall of the urinary bladder but relaxes the internal urinary sphincter—both of which are necessary for the expulsion of urine. It employs ACh for both purposes. Similarly, the sympathetic division constricts most blood vessels but dilates the coronary arteries, and it achieves both effects with NE. Clearly, the difference is not due to the neurotransmitter. Rather, it is due to the fact that different effector cells have *different kinds of receptors* for it. The receptors for ACh and NE are called **cholinergic** and **adrenergic receptors,** respectively. Knowledge of these receptor types is essential to the field of neuropharmacology (see insight 15.2 at the end of the chapter).

Cholinergic Receptors

Acetylcholine binds to two classes of cholinergic receptors—**nicotinic** (NIC-oh-TIN-ic) and **muscarinic** (MUSS-cuh-RIN-ic) **receptors**—named for plant toxins that were used to identify and distinguish them. Nicotine binds only to the former type, while muscarine, a mushroom poison, binds only to the latter. Other drugs also selectively bind to one type or the other—atropine binds only to muscarinic receptors and curare only to nicotinic receptors, for example.

Nicotinic receptors occur on the postsynaptic cells in all ganglia of the ANS, in the adrenal medulla, and in neuromuscular junctions. Muscarinic receptors occur on all gland, smooth muscle, and cardiac muscle cells that receive cholinergic innervation. All cells with nicotinic receptors are excited by ACh, but some cells with muscarinic receptors are excited while others are inhibited by it. For example, by acting on different subclasses of muscarinic receptors, ACh excites intestinal smooth muscle but inhibits cardiac muscle. All cholinergic receptors work by opening ligand-gated ion channels and changing the postsynaptic potential of the target cell.

Adrenergic Receptors

There are likewise different classes of adrenergic receptors that account for the effects of norepinephrine (NE) on different target cells. NE receptors fall into two broad classes called **alpha-(α-)adrenergic** and **beta-(β-)adrenergic**

Table 15.4 Locations of Cholinergic and Adrenergic Fibers in the ANS

Division	Preganglionic Fibers	Postganglionic Fibers
Sympathetic	Always cholinergic	Mostly adrenergic; a few cholinergic
Parasympathetic	Always cholinergic	Always cholinergic

receptors. The binding of NE to α-adrenergic receptors is usually excitatory, and its binding to β-adrenergic receptors is usually inhibitory, but there are exceptions to both. For example, NE binds to β receptors in cardiac muscle but has an excitatory effect.

The exceptions result from the existence of subclasses of each receptor type, called α_1, α_2, β_1 and β_2 receptors. All four types function by means of second messengers. Both β receptors activate the production of cyclic AMP (cAMP), α_2 receptors suppress cAMP production, and α_1 receptors employ calcium ions as the second messenger. Some target cells have both α and β receptors.

The binding of NE to α-adrenergic receptors in blood vessels causes vasoconstriction. The arteries that supply the heart and skeletal muscles, however, have β-adrenergic receptors, which dilate the arteries, thereby increasing blood flow to these organs. NE also relaxes the bronchioles when it binds to β-adrenergic receptors. These effects are obviously appropriate to the exercise state, in which the sympathetic nervous system is most active. The autonomic effects on glandular secretion are often achieved through the adjustment of blood flow to the gland rather than direct stimulation of the gland cells.

Figure 15.8 summarizes the locations of these receptor types. Table 15.5 compares the effects of sympathetic and parasympathetic stimulation on various target organs.

Think About It

Table 15.5 notes that the sympathetic nervous system has an α-adrenergic effect on blood platelets and promotes clotting. How can the sympathetic nervous system stimulate platelets, considering that platelets are drifting cell fragments in the bloodstream with no nerve fibers leading to them?

Dual Innervation

Most of the viscera receive nerve fibers from both the sympathetic and parasympathetic divisions and thus are said to have **dual innervation.** In such cases, the two divisions may have either *antagonistic* or *cooperative* effects on the same organ.

Antagonistic effects oppose each other. For example, the sympathetic division speeds up the heart and the parasympathetic division slows it down; the sympathetic division inhibits digestion and the parasympathetic division stimulates it; the sympathetic division dilates the pupil and the parasympathetic division constricts it. In some cases, these effects are exerted through dual innervation of the same effector cells, as in the heart, where nerve fibers of both divisions terminate on the same muscle cells. In other cases, antagonistic effects arise because each division innervates different effector cells with opposite effects on organ function. In the iris of the eye, for example, sympathetic

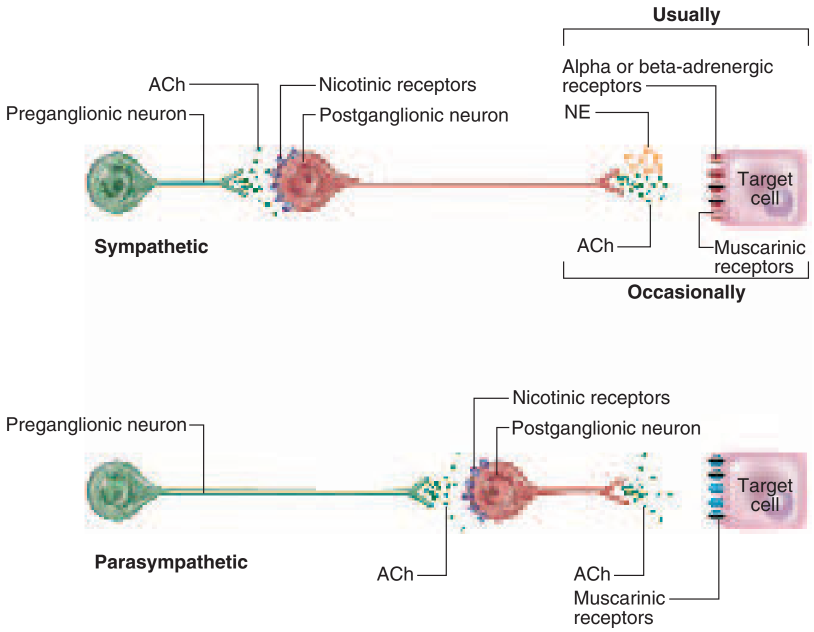


Figure 15.8 **Neurotransmitters and Receptors of the Autonomic Nervous System.** A given postganglionic fiber releases either ACh or NE, but not both. Both are shown in the *top* illustration only to emphasize that some sympathetic fibers are adrenergic and some are cholinergic.

Table 15.5 Effects of the Sympathetic and Parasympathetic Nervous Systems

Target	Sympathetic Effect and Receptor Type	Parasympathetic Effect (all muscarinic)
Eye		
Dilator of pupil	Pupillary dilation (α_1)	No effect
Constrictor of pupil	No effect	Pupillary constriction
Ciliary muscle and lens	Relaxation for far vision (β_2)	Contraction for near vision
Lacrimal (tear) gland	None	Secretion
Integumentary System		
Merocrine sweat glands (cooling)	Secretion (muscarinic)	No effect
Apocrine sweat glands (scent)	Secretion (α_1)	No effect
Piloerector muscles	Hair erection (α_1)	No effect
Adipose Tissue	Decreased fat breakdown (α_2) Increased fat breakdown (α_1, β_1)	No effect
Adrenal Medulla	Hormone secretion (nicotinic)	No effect
Circulatory System		
Heart rate and force	Increased (β_1, β_2)	Decreased
Deep coronary arteries	Vasodilation (β_2) Vasoconstriction (α_1, α_2)	Slight vasodilation
Blood vessels of most viscera	Vasoconstriction (α_1)	Vasodilation
Blood vessels of skeletal muscles	Vasodilation (β_2)	No effect
Blood vessels of skin	Vasoconstriction (α_1, α_2)	Vasodilation, blushing
Platelets (blood clotting)	Increased clotting (α_2)	No effect
Respiratory System		
Bronchi and bronchioles	Bronchodilation (β_2)	Bronchoconstriction
Mucous glands	Decreased secretion (α_1) Increased secretion (β_2)	No effect
Urinary System		
Kidneys	Reduced urine output (α_1, α_2)	No effect
Bladder wall	No effect	Contraction
Internal urethral sphincter	Contraction, urine retention (α_1)	Relaxation, urine release
Digestive System		
Salivary glands	Thick mucous secretion (α_1)	Thin serous secretion
Gastrointestinal motility	Decreased (α_1, α_2, β_1, β_2)	Increased
Gastrointestinal secretion	Decreased (α_2)	Increased
Liver	Glycogen breakdown (α_1, β_2)	Glycogen synthesis
Pancreatic enzyme secretion	Decreased (α_1)	Increased
Pancreatic insulin secretion	Decreased (α_2) Increased (β_2)	No effect

(continued)

Table 15.5 Effects of the Sympathetic and Parasympathetic Nervous Systems (continued)

Target	Sympathetic Effect and Receptor Type	Parasympathetic Effect (all muscarinic)
Reproductive System		
Penile or clitoral erection	No effect	Stimulation
Glandular secretion	No effect	Stimulation
Orgasm, smooth muscle roles	Stimulation (α_1)	No effect
Uterus	Relaxation (β_2) Labor contractions (α_1)	No effect

fibers innervate the pupillary dilator and parasympathetic fibers innervate the constrictor (fig. 15.9).

Cooperative effects are seen when the two divisions act on different effectors to produce a unified overall effect. Salivation is a good example. The parasympathetic division stimulates serous cells of the salivary glands to secrete a watery, enzyme-rich secretion, while the sympathetic division stimulates mucous cells of the same glands to secrete mucus. The enzymes and mucus are both necessary components of the saliva.

Even when both divisions innervate a single organ, they do not always innervate it equally or exert equal influence. For example, the parasympathetic division forms an extensive plexus in the wall of the digestive tract and exerts much more influence over it than the sympathetic division does. In the ventricles of the heart, by contrast, there is much less parasympathetic than sympathetic innervation.

Control Without Dual Innervation

Dual innervation is not always necessary for the ANS to produce opposite effects on an organ. The adrenal medulla, piloerector muscles, sweat glands, and many blood vessels receive only sympathetic fibers. The most significant example of control without dual innervation is regulation of blood pressure and routes of blood flow. The sympathetic fibers to a blood vessel have a baseline sympathetic tone which keeps the vessels in a state of partial constriction called **vasomotor tone** (fig. 15.10). An increase in firing rate causes vasoconstriction by increasing smooth muscle contraction. A drop in firing frequency causes vasodilation by allowing the smooth muscle to relax. The blood pressure in the vessel, pushing outward on its wall, then dilates the vessel. Thus, the sympathetic division alone exerts opposite effects on the vessels.

Sympathetic control of vasomotor tone can shift blood flow from one organ to another according to the

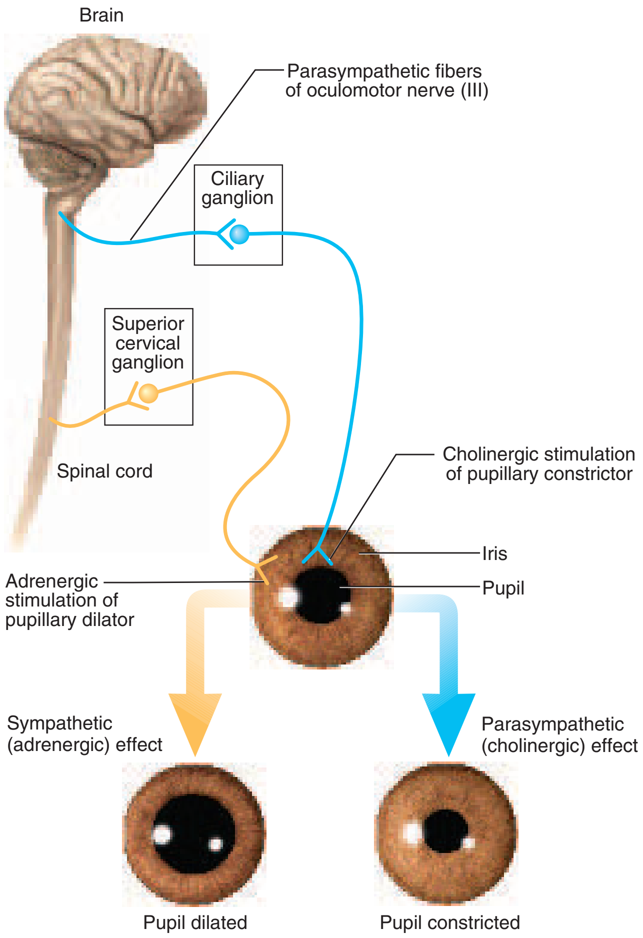

Brain
Parasympathetic fibers of oculomotor nerve (III)
Ciliary ganglion
Superior cervical ganglion
Spinal cord
Cholinergic stimulation of pupillary constrictor
Iris
Pupil
Adrenergic stimulation of pupillary dilator
Sympathetic (adrenergic) effect
Parasympathetic (cholinergic) effect
Pupil dilated
Pupil constricted

Figure 15.9 Dual Innervation of the Iris. Shows antagonistic effects of the sympathetic and parasympathetic divisions.

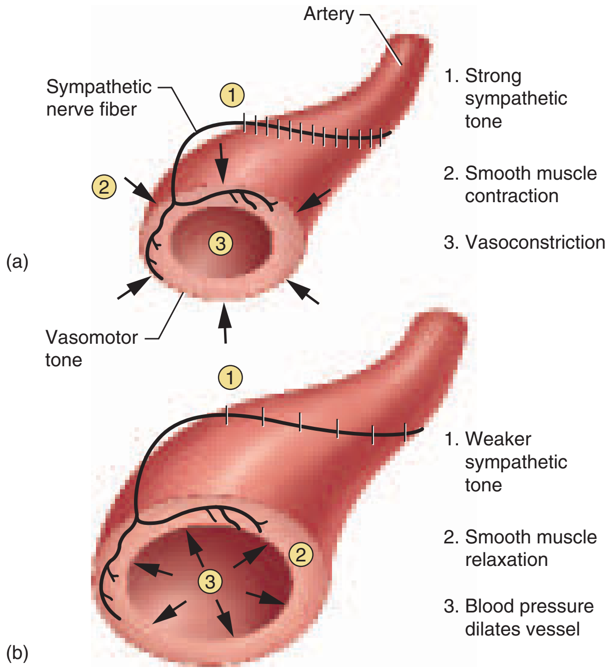

Artery
Sympathetic nerve fiber
1
2
3
(a)
Vasomotor tone
1. Strong sympathetic tone
2. Smooth muscle contraction
3. Vasoconstriction
1
2
3
(b)
1. Weaker sympathetic tone
2. Smooth muscle relaxation
3. Blood pressure dilates vessel

Figure 15.10 **Sympathetic Tone and Vasomotor Tone.** (*a*) Vasoconstriction in response to a high rate of sympathetic nerve firing. (*b*) Vasodilation in response to a low rate of sympathetic nerve firing.

changing needs of the body. In times of emergency, stress, or exercise, the skeletal muscles and heart receive a high priority and the sympathetic division dilates the arteries that supply them. Such processes as digestion, nutrient absorption, and urine formation can wait; thus the sympathetic division constricts arteries to the gastrointestinal tract and kidneys. It also reduces blood flow through the skin, which may help to minimize bleeding in the event that the stress-producing situation leads to injury. Furthermore, since there is not enough blood in the body to abundantly supply all the organ systems at once, it is necessary to temporarily divert blood away from some organs in order to supply an adequate amount to the muscular system.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

7. What neurotransmitters are secreted by adrenergic and cholinergic fibers?
8. Why do sympathetic effects last longer than parasympathetic effects?
9. How can the sympathetic division cause smooth muscle to relax in some organs but contract in others?
10. What are the two ways in which the sympathetic and parasympathetic systems can affect each other when they both innervate the same target organ? Give examples.
11. How can the sympathetic nervous system have contrasting effects in a target organ without dual innervation?

Central Control of Autonomic Function

Objective

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe how the autonomic nervous system is regulated by the brain and somatic nervous system.

In spite of its name, the ANS is not an independent nervous system. All of its output originates in the CNS, and it receives input from the cerebral cortex, hypothalamus, medulla oblongata, and somatic branch of the PNS. In this section we briefly consider how the ANS is influenced by these other levels of the nervous system.

The Cerebral Cortex

Even if we usually cannot consciously control the ANS, it is clear that the mind does influence it. Anger raises the blood pressure, fear makes the heart race, thoughts of good food make the stomach rumble, sexual thoughts or images increase blood flow to the genitals, and anxiety inhibits sexual function. The limbic system (p. 534), an ancient part of the cerebral cortex, is involved in many emotional responses and has extensive connections with the hypothalamus, a site of several nuclei of autonomic control. Thus, the limbic system provides a pathway connecting sensory and mental experiences with the autonomic nervous system.

The Hypothalamus

While the major site of CNS control over the somatic motor system is the primary motor cortex of the cerebrum, the major control center of the visceral motor system is the hypothalamus. This small but vital region in the floor of the brain contains many nuclei for primitive functions, including hunger, thirst, thermoregulation, emotions, and sexuality. Artificial stimulation of different regions of the hypothalamus can activate the fight or flight response typical of the sympathetic nervous system or have the calming effects typical of the parasympathetic. Output from the hypothalamus travels largely to nuclei in more caudal regions of the brainstem and from there to the cranial nerves and the sympathetic preganglionic neurons in the spinal cord.

The Midbrain, Pons, and Medulla Oblongata

These regions of the brainstem house the nuclei of cranial nerves that mediate several autonomic responses: the oculomotor nerve (pupillary constriction), facial nerve (lacrimal, nasal, palatine, and salivary gland secretion), glossopharyngeal nerve (salivation, blood pressure regulation), and vagus nerve (the chief parasympathetic supply to the thoracic and abdominal viscera). These nuclei are part of the reticular formation that extends from the medulla to the hypothalamus.

The Spinal Cord

Such autonomic responses as the defecation and micturition (urination) reflexes are integrated in the spinal cord (see details in chapters 23 and 25). Fortunately, the brain is able to inhibit these responses consciously, but when injuries sever the spinal cord from the brain, the autonomic spinal reflexes alone control the elimination of urine and feces.

Table 15.6 describes some dysfunctions of the autonomic nervous system.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

12. What system in the brain connects our conscious thoughts and feelings with the autonomic control centers of the hypothalamus?
13. List some autonomic responses that are controlled by nuclei in the hypothalamus.
14. What is the role of the midbrain, pons, and medulla in autonomic control?
15. Name some visceral reflexes controlled by the spinal cord.

Insight 15.2 Clinical Application

Drugs and the Nervous System

Neuropharmacology is a branch of medicine that deals with the effects of drugs on the nervous system, especially drugs that mimic, enhance, or inhibit the action of neurotransmitters. A few examples will illustrate the clinical relevance of understanding neurotransmitter and receptor functions.

A number of drugs work by stimulating adrenergic and cholinergic neurons or receptors. *Sympathomimetics*[11] are drugs that enhance sympathetic action by stimulating adrenergic receptors or promoting norepinephrine release. For example phenylephrine, found in such cold medicines as Chlor-Trimeton and Dimetapp, aids breathing by stimulating α_1 receptors and dilating the bronchioles and by constricting nasal blood vessels, thus reducing swelling in the nasal mucosa. *Sympatholytics*[12] are drugs that suppress sympathetic action by inhibiting norepinephrine release or by binding to adrenergic receptors without stimulating them. Propranolol, for example, is a *beta-blocker.* It reduces hypertension (high blood pressure) partly by blocking β-adrenergic receptors and interfering with the effects of epinephrine and norepinephrine on the heart and blood vessels. (It also reduces the production of *angiotensin II,* a hormone that stimulates vasoconstriction and raises blood pressure.)

Parasympathomimetics enhance parasympathetic effects. Pilocarpine, for example, relieves glaucoma (excessive pressure within the eyeball) by dilating a vessel that drains fluid from the eye. *Parasympatholytics* inhibit ACh release or block its receptors. Atropine, for example, blocks muscarinic receptors and is sometimes used to dilate the pupils for eye examinations and to dry the mucous membranes of the respiratory tract before inhalation anesthesia. It is an extract of the deadly nightshade plant, *Atropa belladonna.* Women of the Middle Ages used nightshade to dilate their pupils, which was regarded as a beauty enhancement.[13]

The drugs we have mentioned so far act on the peripheral nervous system and its effectors. Many others act on the central nervous system. Strychnine, for example, blocks the inhibitory action of glycine on spinal motor neurons. The motor neurons then overstimulate the muscles, causing spastic paralysis and sometimes death by suffocation.

Table 15.6 Some Disorders of the Autonomic Nervous System

Horner syndrome	Chronic unilateral pupillary constriction, sagging of the eyelid, withdrawal of the eye into the orbit, flushing of the skin, and lack of facial perspiration, resulting from lesions in the cervical ganglia, upper thoracic spinal cord, or brainstem that interrupt sympathetic innervation of the head.
Raynaud disease	Intermittent attacks of paleness, cyanosis, and pain in the fingers and toes, caused when cold or emotional stress triggers excessive vasoconstriction in the digits; most common in young women. In extreme cases, causes gangrene and may require amputation. Sometimes treated by severing sympathetic nerves to the affected regions.
Disorders described elsewhere	
Autonomic effects of cranial nerve injuries pp. 550, 554	
Mass reflex reaction p. 509	
Orthostatic hypotension p. 792	

Sigmund Freud predicted that psychiatry would eventually draw upon biology and chemistry to deal with emotional problems once treated only by counseling and psychoanalysis. A branch of neuropharmacology called *psychopharmacology* has fulfilled his prediction. This field dates to the 1950s when chlorpromazine, an antihistamine, was accidentally found to relieve schizophrenia.

The management of clinical depression is one example of how contemporary psychopharmacology has supplemented counseling approaches. Some cases of depression result from deficiencies of the monoamine neurotransmitters. Thus, they yield to drugs that prolong the effects of the monoamines already present at the synapses. One of the earliest discovered antidepressants was imipramine, which blocks the synaptic reuptake of serotonin and norepinephrine. However, it produces undesirable side effects such as dry mouth and irregular cardiac rhythms; it has been largely replaced by Prozac (fluoxetine), which blocks serotonin reuptake and prolongs its mood-elevating effect; thus it is called a *selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor (SSRI).* Prozac is also used to treat fear of rejection, excess sensitivity to criticism, lack of self-esteem, and inability to experience pleasure, all of which were long handled only through counseling, group therapy, and psychoanalysis. After monoamines are taken up from the synapse, they are degraded by monoamine oxidase (MAO). Drugs called *MAO inhibitors* interfere with the breakdown of monoamine neurotransmitters and provide another pharmacological approach to depression.

Our growing understanding of neurochemistry also gives us deeper insight into the action of addictive drugs of abuse such as amphetamines and cocaine. Amphetamines ("speed") chemically resemble norepinephrine and dopamine, two neurotransmitters associated with elevated mood. Dopamine is especially important in sensations of pleasure. Cocaine blocks dopamine reuptake and thus produces a brief rush of good feelings. But when dopamine is not reabsorbed by the neurons, it diffuses out of the synaptic cleft and is degraded elsewhere. Cocaine thus depletes the neurons of dopamine faster than they can synthesize it, so that finally there is no longer an adequate supply to maintain normal mood. The postsynaptic neurons make new dopamine receptors as if "searching" for the neurotransmitter—all of which leads ultimately to anxiety, depression, and the inability to experience pleasure without the drug.

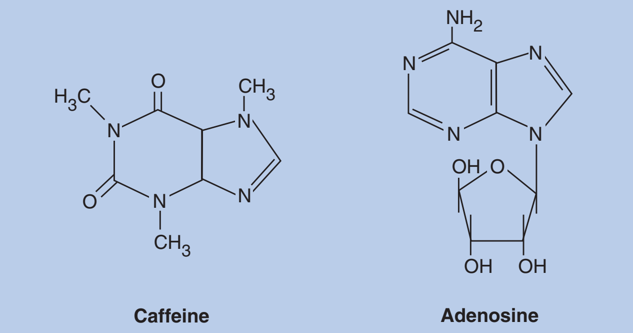


Figure 15.11 **Caffeine and Adenosine.** Adenosine is an inhibitory neurotransmitter that produces the sense of sleepiness. Caffeine is similar enough in structure to bind to adenosine receptors and block the action of adenosine.

Caffeine exerts its stimulatory effect by competing with adenosine. Adenosine, which you know as a component of DNA, RNA, and ATP, also functions as an inhibitory neurotransmitter in the brain. One theory of sleepiness is that it results when prolonged metabolic activity breaks down so much ATP that the accumulated adenosine has a noticeably inhibitory effect in the brain. Caffeine has enough structural similarity to adenosine (fig. 15.11) to bind to its receptors, but it does not produce the inhibitory effect. Thus, it prevents adenosine from exerting its effect and a person feels more alert.

---

[11] *mimet* = imitate, mimic
[12] *lyt* = break down, destroy
[13] *bella* = beautiful, fine + *donna* = woman

Connective Issues

Interactions Between the NERVOUS SYSTEM and Other Organ Systems

← indicates ways in which this system affects other systems
→ indicates ways in which other systems affect this one

Integumentary System

← Nervous system regulates piloerection and sweating; controls cutaneous blood flow to regulate heat loss

→ Provides sensations of heat, cold, pressure, pain, and vibration; protects peripheral nerves

Skeletal System

← Nervous stimulation generates muscle tension essential for bone development and remodeling

→ Serves as reservoir of Ca^{2+} needed for neural function; protects CNS and some peripheral nerves

Muscular System

← Somatic nervous system activates skeletal muscles and maintains muscle tone

→ Gives expression to thoughts, emotions, and motor commands that arise in the CNS

Endocrine System

← Hypothalamus controls pituitary gland; sympathetic nervous system stimulates adrenal medulla

→ Many hormones affect neuronal growth and metabolism; hormones control electrolyte balance essential for neural function

Circulatory System

← Nervous system regulates heartbeat, blood vessel diameters, blood pressure, and routing of blood; influences blood clotting

→ Delivers O_2 and carries away wastes; transports hormones to and from CNS; CSF produced from and returned to blood

Lymphatic and Immune Systems

← Nerves innervate lymphoid organs and influence development and activity of immune cells; nervous system plays a role in regulating immune response; emotional states influence susceptibility to infection

→ Immune cells provide protection and promote tissue repair

Respiratory System

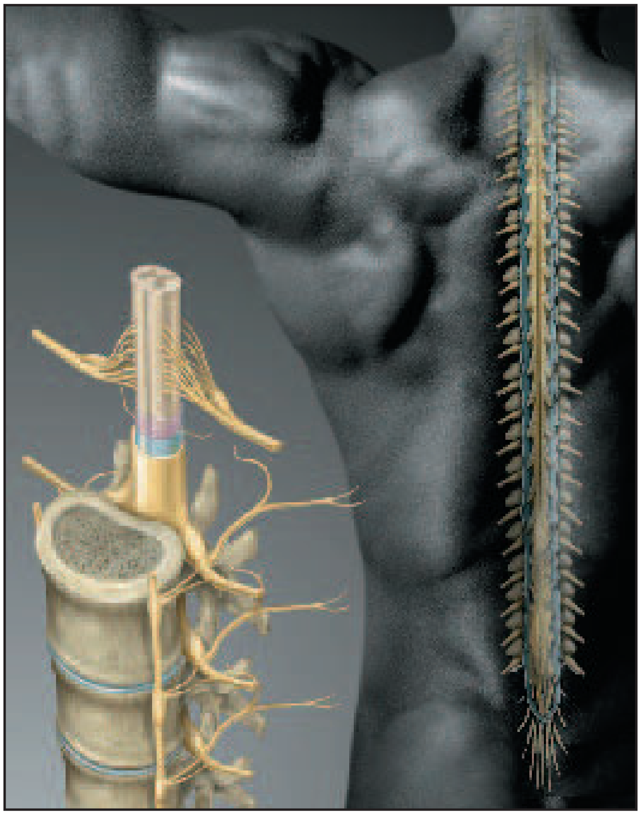
← Nervous system regulates rate and depth of respiration

→ Provides O_2, removes CO_2, and helps to maintain proper pH for neural function

Urinary System

← Nervous system regulates renal blood flow, thus affecting rate of urine formation; controls emptying of bladder

→ Disposes of wastes and maintains electrolyte and pH balance



Digestive System

← Nervous system regulates appetite, feeding behavior, digestive secretion and motility, and defecation

→ Provides nutrients; liver provides stable level of blood glucose for neural function during periods of fasting

Reproductive System

← Nervous system regulates sex drive, arousal, and orgasm; secretes or stimulates pituitary release of many hormones involved in menstrual cycle, sperm production, pregnancy, and lactation

→ Sex hormones influence CNS development and sexual behavior; hormones of the menstrual cycle stimulate or inhibit hypothalamus

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

General Properties of the Autonomic Nervous System (p. 564)

1. The autonomic nervous system (ANS) carries out many visceral reflexes that are crucial to homeostasis. It is a visceral motor system that acts on cardiac muscle, smooth muscle, and glands.
2. Functions of the ANS are largely, but not entirely, unconscious and involuntary.
3. The *sympathetic division* of the ANS prepares the body for physical activity and is especially active in stressful "fight or flight" situations.
4. The *parasympathetic division* has a calming effect on many body functions, but stimulates digestion; it is especially active in "resting and digesting" states.
5. Although the balance of activity may shift from one division to the other, both divisions are normally active simultaneously. Each maintains a background level of activity called *autonomic tone.*
6. The ANS is composed of nuclei in the brainstem, motor neurons in the spinal cord and ganglia, and nerve fibers in the cranial and spinal nerves.
7. Most autonomic efferent pathways, unlike somatic motor pathways, involve two neurons: a *preganglionic neuron* whose axon travels to a peripheral ganglion and synapses with a *postganglionic neuron,* whose axon leads the rest of the way to the target cells.

Anatomy of the Autonomic Nervous System (p. 567)

1. Sympathetic preganglionic neurons arise from thoracic and lumbar segments of the spinal cord, traveling through spinal nerves T1 through L2 to a *sympathetic chain* of ganglia adjacent to the vertebral column.
2. Most preganglionic fibers synapse with postganglionic neurons in one of the ganglia of this chain, sometimes at a higher or lower level than the ganglion at which they enter. Some fibers pass through the chain without synapsing.
3. Sympathetic pathways show substantial neuronal divergence, with the average preganglionic neuron synapsing with 17 postganglionic neurons. Sympathetic stimulation therefore tends to have widespread effects on multiple target organs.
4. Postganglionic fibers leave the sympathetic chain by way of either the spinal nerve route or the sympathetic nerve route. Preganglionic fibers that pass through the chain without synapsing travel by way of *splanchnic nerves* to various more distal *collateral ganglia,* and synapse there with postganglionic neurons.
5. The *adrenal medulla* is a modified sympathetic ganglion composed of anaxonic neurons. These cells secrete mainly epinephrine and norepinephrine into the blood when stimulated.
6. The parasympathetic division issues relatively long preganglionic fibers through cranial nerves III, VII, IX, and X, and spinal nerves S2 through S4, to their target organs. The vagus nerve carries about 90% of all parasympathetic preganglionic fibers.
7. Parasympathetic preganglionic fibers end in *terminal ganglia* in or near the target organ. Relatively short postganglionic fibers complete the route to specific target cells.
8. The wall of the digestive tract contains an *enteric nervous system,* sometimes considered part of the ANS because it innervates smooth muscle and glands of the tract.

Autonomic Effects on Target Organs (p. 574)

1. The autonomic effects on a target cell depends on the neurotransmitter released and the type of receptors that the target cell has.
2. *Cholinergic* fibers secrete acetylcholine (ACh) and include all preganglionic fibers, all parasympathetic postganglionic fibers, and some sympathetic postganglionic fibers. Most sympathetic postganglionic fibers are *adrenergic* and secrete norepinephrine (NE).
3. ACh breaks down quickly and parasympathetic effects are therefore usually short-lived. NE persists longer and sympathetic effects tend to be longer-lasting.
4. Autonomic neurons also employ a broad range of other neurotransmitters and neuromodulators ranging from the peptide enkephalin to the inorganic gas nitric oxide.
5. ACh binds to two classes of receptors called *nicotinic* and *muscarinic* receptors. The binding of ACh to a nicotinic receptor always excites a target cell, but binding to a muscarinic receptor can have excitatory effects on some cells and inhibitory effects on others, owing to different subclasses of muscarinic receptors.
6. NE binds to two major classes of receptors called α and β receptors. Binding to an α-adrenergic receptor is usually excitatory, and binding to a β-adrenergic receptor is usually inhibitory, but there are exceptions to both owing to subclasses of each receptor type.
7. Many organs receive *dual innervation* by both sympathetic and parasympathetic fibers. In such cases, the two divisions may have either antagonistic or cooperative effects on the organ.
8. The sympathetic division can have contrasting effects on an organ even without dual innervation, by increasing or decreasing the firing rate of the sympathetic neuron.

Central Control of Autonomic Function (p. 578)

1. All autonomic output originates in the CNS and is subject to control by multiple levels of the CNS.
2. The hypothalamus is an especially important center of autonomic control, but the cerebral cortex, midbrain, pons, and medulla oblongata are also involved in autonomic responses.
3. Some autonomic reflexes such as defecation and micturition are regulated by the spinal cord.

Selected Vocabulary

autonomic nervous system 564
sympathetic division 565
parasympathetic division 565
autonomic tone 565
preganglionic neuron 566
postganglionic neuron 566
sympathetic chain 567
enteric nervous system 573
cholinergic 574
adrenergic 574
dual innervation 575
vasomotor tone 577

Testing Your Recall

1. The autonomic nervous system innervates all of these *except*
   a. cardiac muscle.
   b. skeletal muscle.
   c. smooth muscle.
   d. salivary glands.
   e. blood vessels.

2. Muscarinic receptors bind
   a. epinephrine.
   b. norepinephrine.
   c. acetylcholine.
   d. cholinesterase.
   e. neuropeptides.

3. All of the following cranial nerves except the ______ carry parasympathetic fibers.
   a. vagus
   b. facial
   c. oculomotor
   d. glossopharyngeal
   e. hypoglossal

4. Which of the following cranial nerves carries sympathetic fibers?
   a. oculomotor
   b. facial
   c. trigeminal
   d. vagus
   e. none of them

5. Which of these ganglia is *not* involved in the sympathetic division?
   a. intramural
   b. superior cervical
   c. paravertebral
   d. inferior mesenteric
   e. celiac

6. Epinephrine is secreted by
   a. sympathetic preganglionic fibers.
   b. sympathetic postganglionic fibers.
   c. parasympathetic preganglionic fibers.
   d. parasympathetic postganglionic fibers.
   e. the adrenal medulla.

7. The major autonomic control center within the CNS is
   a. the cerebral cortex.
   b. the limbic system.
   c. the midbrain.
   d. the hypothalamus.
   e. the sympathetic chain ganglia.

8. The gray communicating ramus contains
   a. visceral sensory fibers.
   b. parasympathetic motor fibers.
   c. sympathetic preganglionic fibers.
   d. sympathetic postganglionic fibers.
   e. somatic motor fibers.

9. Throughout the autonomic nervous system, the neurotransmitter released by the preganglionic neuron binds to ______ receptors on the postganglionic neuron.
   a. nicotinic
   b. muscarinic
   c. adrenergic
   d. α_1
   e. β_2

10. Which of these does *not* result from sympathetic stimulation?
    a. dilation of the pupil
    b. acceleration of the heart
    c. digestive secretion
    d. enhanced blood clotting
    e. piloerection

11. Nerve fibers that secrete norepinephrine are called ______ fibers.

12. ______ is a state in which a target organ receives both sympathetic and parasympathetic fibers.

13. ______ is a state of continual background activity of the sympathetic and parasympathetic divisions.

14. Most parasympathetic preganglionic fibers are found in the ______ nerve.

15. The digestive tract has a semi-independent nervous system called the ______ nervous system.

16. MAO and COMT are enzymes that break down ______ at certain ANS synapses.

17. The adrenal medulla consists of modified postganglionic neurons of the ______ nervous system.

18. The sympathetic nervous system has short ______ and long ______ nerve fibers.

19. Adrenergic receptors classified as α_2, β_1, and β_2 act by changing the level of ______ in the target cell.

20. Sympathetic fibers to blood vessels maintain a state of partial vasoconstriction called ______.

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. The parasympathetic nervous system shuts down when the sympathetic nervous system is active, and vice versa.

2. Blood vessels of the skin receive no parasympathetic innervation.

3. Voluntary control of the ANS is not possible.

4. The sympathetic nervous system stimulates digestion.

5. Some sympathetic postganglionic fibers are cholinergic.
6. Urination and defecation cannot occur without signals from the brain to the bladder and rectum.
7. Some parasympathetic nerve fibers are adrenergic.
8. Parasympathetic effects are more localized and specific than sympathetic effects.
9. The parasympathetic division shows less neuronal divergence than the sympathetic division does.
10. The two divisions of the ANS have antagonistic effects on the iris.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. You are dicing raw onions while preparing dinner, and the vapor makes your eyes water. Describe the afferent and efferent pathways involved in this response.
2. Suppose you are walking alone at night when you hear a dog growling close behind you. Describe the ways your sympathetic nervous system would prepare you to deal with this situation.
3. Suppose that the cardiac nerves were destroyed. How would this affect the heart and the body's ability to react to a stressful situation?
4. What would be the advantage to a wolf in having its sympathetic nervous system stimulate the piloerector muscles? What happens in a human when the sympathetic system stimulates these muscles?
5. Pediatric literature has reported many cases of poisoning in children with Lomotil, an antidiarrheic medicine. Lomotil works primarily by means of the morphine-like effects of its chief ingredient, diphenoxylate, but it also contains atropine. Considering the mode of action described for atropine in insight 5.2, why might atropine contribute to the antidiarrheic effect of Lomotil? In atropine poisoning, would you expect the pupils to be dilated or constricted? The skin to be moist or dry? The heart rate to be elevated or depressed? The bladder to retain urine or void uncontrollably? Explain each answer. Atropine poisoning is treated with physostigmine, a cholinesterase inhibitor. Explain the rationale of this treatment.

Answers at the Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Legend Questions

15.4 No; inhaling and exhaling are controlled by the somatic motor system and skeletal muscles.

15.5 The soma of the somatic efferent neuron is in the ventral horn and the soma of the autonomic preganglionic neuron is in the lateral horn.

15.7 The vagus nerve.

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.

CHAPTER 16

Sense Organs

PET scan of the brain hearing sound, showing activity in the temporal lobe

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Properties and Types of Sensory Receptors 586
- General Properties of Receptors 586
- Classification of Receptors 587

The General Senses 588
- Unencapsulated Nerve Endings 588
- Encapsulated Nerve Endings 588
- Somesthetic Projection Pathways 589
- Pain 589

The Chemical Senses 592
- Taste 592
- Smell 594

Hearing and Equilibrium 597
- The Nature of Sound 597
- Anatomy of the Ear 598
- The Physiology of Hearing 602
- Equilibrium 606

Vision 610
- Light and Vision 610
- Accessory Structures of the Orbit 610
- Anatomy of the Eye 612
- Formation of an Image 615
- Sensory Transduction in the Retina 618
- Light and Dark Adaptation 624
- The Duplicity Theory 624
- Color Vision 625
- Stereoscopic Vision 626
- The Visual Projection Pathway 626

Chapter Review 629

INSIGHTS

16.1 **Evolutionary Medicine:** Human Pheromones 595
16.2 **Clinical Application:** Middle-Ear Infection 599
16.3 **Clinical Application:** Deafness 606
16.4 **Clinical Application:** Cataracts and Glaucoma 614
16.5 **Medical History:** Anesthesia—From Ether Frolics to Modern Surgery 627

Brushing Up

To understand this chapter, it is important that you understand or brush up on the following concepts:

- Excitatory and inhibitory postsynaptic potentials (EPSPs and IPSPs) (pp. 468–469)
- Spatial summation (p. 470)
- Neural coding (p. 470)
- Converging circuits of neurons (p. 472)
- Spinal cord tracts (p. 486)
- Decussation (p. 486)

Anyone who enjoys music, art, fine food, or a good conversation appreciates the human senses. Yet their importance extends beyond deriving pleasure from the environment. In the 1950s, behavioral scientists at Princeton University studied the methods used by Soviet Communists to extract confessions from political prisoners, including solitary confinement and sensory deprivation. Student volunteers were immobilized in dark soundproof rooms or suspended in dark chambers of water. In a short time, they experienced visual, auditory, and tactile hallucinations, incoherent thought patterns, deterioration of intellectual performance, and sometimes morbid fear or panic. Similar effects have been seen in burn patients who are immobilized and extensively bandaged (including the eyes) and thus suffer prolonged lack of sensory input. Patients connected to life-support equipment and confined under oxygen tents sometimes become delirious. Sensory input is vital to the integrity of personality and intellectual function.

Furthermore, much of the information communicated by the sense organs never comes to our conscious attention–blood pressure, body temperature, and muscle tension, for example. By monitoring such conditions, however, the sense organs initiate somatic and visceral reflexes that are indispensable to homeostasis and to our very survival in a ceaselessly changing and challenging environment.

Properties and Types of Sensory Receptors

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- define *receptor* and *sense organ;*
- list the four kinds of information obtained from sensory receptors, and describe how the nervous system encodes each type; and
- outline three ways of classifying receptors.

A **receptor** is any structure specialized to detect a stimulus. Some receptors are simple nerve endings, whereas others are **sense organs**—nerve endings combined with connective, epithelial, or muscular tissues that enhance or moderate the response to a stimulus. Our eyes and ears are obvious examples of sense organs, but there are also innumerable microscopic sense organs in our skin, muscles, joints, and viscera.

General Properties of Receptors

All sensory receptors are transducers. A *transducer* is any device that converts one form of energy to another—a microphone, light bulb, or gasoline engine, for example. Sensory transducers convert stimulus energy into electrochemical energy—a meaningful pattern of action potentials. This process of conversion is called **sensory transduction.**

The effect of a stimulus on a receptor is to produce a type of local potential called a **receptor potential**—a graded voltage change across the plasma membrane of the receptor cell. The receptor potential may cause a receptor cell (which is not always a neuron) to release a neurotransmitter that stimulates an adjacent neuron. If the receptor itself is a neuron and the voltage reaches threshold, the neuron fires impulses to the central nervous system (CNS). This may result in a **sensation**—a conscious awareness of the stimulus—but much of the sensory information reaching the CNS produces no sensation. We are seldom aware of information concerning muscle tension and blood pH, for example, but it is vitally important to our homeostasis for the CNS to monitor these conditions.

Sensory receptors transmit four kinds of information—*modality, location, intensity,* and *duration:*

1. **Modality** refers to the type of stimulus or the sensation it produces. Vision, hearing, and taste are examples of sensory modalities. The nervous system distinguishes modalities from each other partly by means of a *labeled line code.* We can think of the brain as having numerous "lines" (nerve fibers) feeding information into it, and each line as being "labeled" to represent a certain modality. All the nerve impulses that arrive at the brain are essentially identical, but impulses arriving on one line have a different meaning than impulses arriving on another. Any impulses from the optic nerve, for example, are interpreted as light. Thus, a blow to the eye may be perceived as a flash of light.
2. **Location** is also encoded by which nerve fibers are firing. A sensory neuron receives input from an area called its **receptive field.** The brain's ability to determine the location of a stimulus depends on the size of this field. In tactile (touch) neurons, for example, a receptive field on one's back may be as big as 7 cm in diameter. Any touch within that area stimulates one neuron, so it is difficult to tell precisely where the touch occurs. Being touched at two points 5 cm apart within the same field would feel like a single touch. On the fingertips, by contrast, receptive fields may be less than 1 mm in diameter. Two points of contact just 2 mm apart would thus be felt separately (fig. 16.1). Thus, we say the fingertips have finer *two-point discrimination* than the skin on the back. This is crucial to such functions as feeling textures and reading Braille. **Sensory projection** is the ability of the brain to identify the site of stimulation, including very small and specific areas within a receptor such as the retina. The pathways followed by sensory signals to their ultimate destinations in the CNS are called **projection pathways.**
3. **Intensity** can be encoded in three ways: (a) as stimulus intensity rises, the firing frequencies of sensory nerve fibers rise (see fig. 12.25, p. 471); (b) intense stimuli recruit greater numbers of nerve

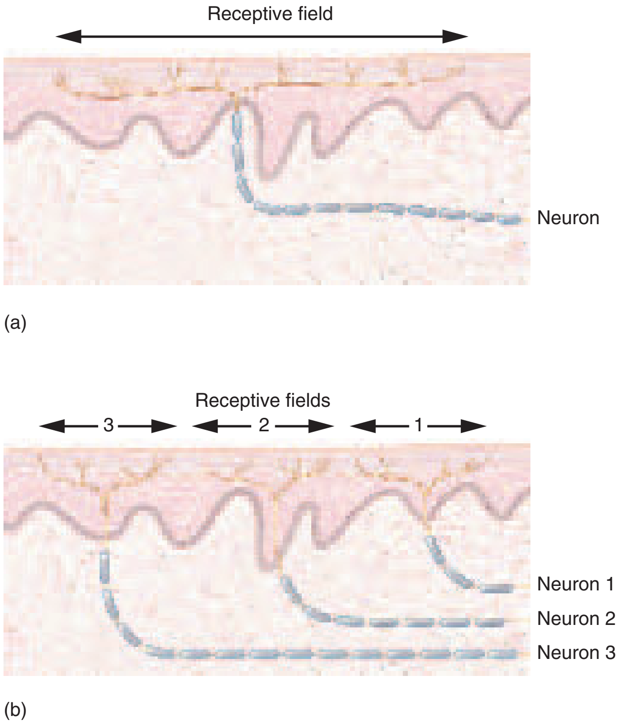


Figure 16.1 **Receptive Fields.** (*a*) A neuron with a large receptive field, as found in the skin of the back. If the skin is touched in two close-together places within this receptive field, the brain will sense it as only one point of contact. (*b*) Neurons with small receptive fields, as found in the fingertips. Two close-together points of contact here are likely to stimulate two different neurons and to be felt as separate touches.
If the receptive field in figure *a* is 7 cm in diameter, is it possible for two touches 1 cm apart to be felt separately?

fibers to fire; and (c) weak stimuli activate only the most sensitive nerve fibers, whereas strong stimuli can activate a less sensitive group of fibers with higher thresholds. Thus, the brain can distinguish intensities based on the number and kind of fibers that are firing and the time intervals between action potentials. These concepts were discussed under *neural coding* in chapter 12.

4. **Duration** is encoded in the way nerve fibers change their firing frequencies over time. **Phasic receptors** generate a burst of action potentials when first stimulated, then quickly adapt and sharply reduce or halt signal transmission even if the stimulus continues. Some of them fire again when the stimulus ceases. Lamellated corpuscles, tactile receptors, hair receptors, and smell receptors are rapidly adapting phasic receptors. **Tonic receptors** adapt slowly and generate nerve impulses more steadily. Proprioceptors are among the most slowly adapting tonic receptors because the brain must always be aware of body position, muscle tension, and joint motions. All receptors, however, exhibit sensory **adaptation**—if the stimulus is prolonged, firing frequency and conscious sensation decline. Adapting to hot bath water is an example.

Think About It

Although you may find it difficult to immerse yourself in a tub of hot water or a cold lake, you soon adapt and become more comfortable. In light of this, do you think cold and warm receptors are phasic or tonic? Explain.

Classification of Receptors

Receptors can be classified by several overlapping systems:

1. By stimulus modality:
   - **Chemoreceptors** respond to chemicals, including odors, tastes, and body fluid composition.
   - **Thermoreceptors** respond to heat and cold.
   - **Nociceptors**[1] (NO-sih-SEP-turs) are pain receptors; they respond to tissue damage resulting from trauma (blows, cuts), ischemia (poor blood flow), or excessive stimulation by agents such as heat and chemicals.
   - **Mechanoreceptors** respond to physical deformation caused by vibration, touch, pressure, stretch, or tension. They include the organs of hearing and balance and many receptors of the skin, viscera, and joints.
   - **Photoreceptors,** the eyes, respond to light.
2. By the origins of the stimuli:
   - **Interoceptors** detect stimuli in the internal organs and produce feelings of visceral pain, nausea, stretch, and pressure.
   - **Proprioceptors** sense the position and movements of the body or its parts. They occur in muscles, tendons, and joint capsules.
   - **Exteroceptors** sense stimuli external to the body; they include the receptors for vision, hearing, taste, smell, touch, and cutaneous pain.
3. By the distribution of receptors in the body. There are two broad classes of senses:
   - **General (somesthetic) senses,** with receptors that are widely distributed in the skin, muscles, tendons, joint capsules, and viscera. These include the sense of touch, pressure, stretch,

---

[1] *noci* = pain

heat, cold, and pain, as well as many stimuli that we do not perceive consciously, such as blood pressure and composition.

- **Special senses,** which are limited to the head and innervated by the cranial nerves. The special senses are vision, hearing, equilibrium, taste, and smell.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

1. What is the difference between a receptor and a nerve ending?
2. Three schemes of receptor classification were presented in this section. In each scheme, how would you classify the receptors for a full bladder? How would you classify taste receptors?
3. What does it mean to say sense organs are transducers? What form of energy do all receptors have as their output?
4. Nociceptors are tonic rather than phasic receptors. Speculate on why this is beneficial to homeostasis.

The General Senses

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- list several types of somesthetic receptors;
- describe the projection pathways for the general senses; and
- explain the mechanisms of pain and the spinal blocking of pain signals.

Receptors for the general senses are relatively simple in structure and physiology. They consist of one or a few sensory nerve fibers and, usually, a sparse amount of connective tissue. These receptors are shown in table 16.1.

Unencapsulated Nerve Endings

Unencapsulated nerve endings are sensory dendrites that are not wrapped in connective tissue. They include free nerve endings, tactile discs, and hair receptors:

- **Free nerve endings** include *warm receptors,* which respond to rising temperature; *cold receptors,* which respond to falling temperature; and *nociceptors* (pain receptors). They are bare dendrites that have no special association with specific accessory cells or tissues. They are most abundant in epithelia and connective tissue.
- **Tactile (Merkel[2]) discs** are tonic receptors for light touch, thought to sense textures, edges, and shapes. They are flattened nerve endings associated with specialized *tactile (Merkel) cells* at the base of the epidermis (see fig. 6.2, p. 193).
- **Hair receptors (peritrichial[3] endings)** monitor the movements of hairs. They consist of a few dendrites entwined around the base of a hair follicle. They respond to any light touch that bends a hair. Because they adapt quickly, we are not constantly annoyed by our clothing bending the body hairs. However, when an ant crawls across our skin, bending one hair after another, we are very aware of it.

Encapsulated Nerve Endings

Encapsulated nerve endings are nerve fibers wrapped in glial cells or connective tissue. Most of them are mechanoreceptors for touch, pressure, and stretch. The connective tissues around a sensory dendrite enhance the sensitivity or specificity of the receptor. We have already considered some encapsulated nerve endings in chapter 15—muscle spindles and Golgi tendon organs. Others are as follows:

- **Tactile (Meissner[4]) corpuscles** are phasic receptors for light touch and texture. They occur in the dermal papillae of the skin, especially in sensitive hairless areas such as the fingertips, palms, eyelids, lips, nipples, and genitals. They are tall, ovoid- to pear-shaped, and consist of two or three nerve fibers meandering upward through a mass of connective tissue. Tactile corpuscles enable you to tell the difference between silk and sandpaper, for example, by light strokes of your fingertips.
- **Krause[5] end bulbs** are similar to tactile corpuscles but occur in mucous membranes rather than in the skin.
- **Lamellated (pacinian[6]) corpuscles** are phasic receptors for deep pressure, stretch, tickle, and vibration. They consist of numerous concentric layers of Schwann cells surrounding a core of one to several sensory nerve fibers. These receptors occur in the pancreas, some other viscera, and deep in the dermis—especially on the hands, feet, breasts, and genitals.
- **Ruffini[7] corpuscles** are tonic receptors for heavy touch, pressure, stretching of the skin, and joint movements. They are flattened, elongated capsules containing a few nerve fibers and are located in the dermis, subcutaneous tissue, ligaments, tendons, and joint capsules.

---

[2] Friedrich S. Merkel (1845–1911), German anatomist and physiologist

[3] *peri* = around + *trich* = hair

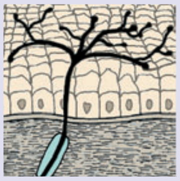
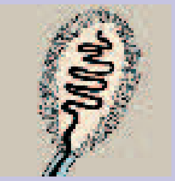
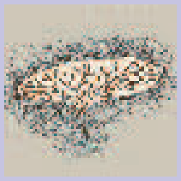
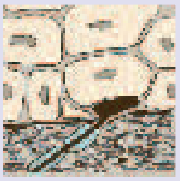
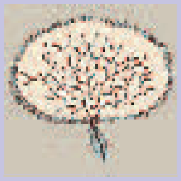
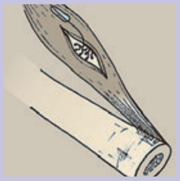
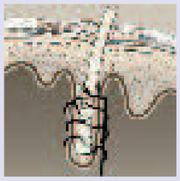
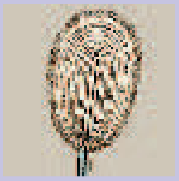
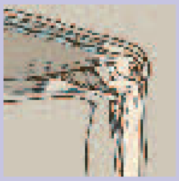
[4] George Meissner (1829–1905), German histologist

[5] William J. F. Krause (1833–1910), German anatomist

[6] Filippo Pacini (1812–83), Italian anatomist

[7] Angelo Ruffini (1864–1929), Italian anatomist

Table 16.1 Receptors of the General Senses

Unencapsulated Nerve Endings		Encapsulated Nerve Endings			
	**Free Nerve Endings** *Location:* Widespread, especially in epithelia and connective tissues *Modality:* Pain, heat, cold		**Tactile Corpuscles** *Location:* Dermal papillae of fingertips, palms, eyelids, lips, tongue, nipples, and genitals *Modality:* Light touch, texture		**Ruffini Corpuscles** *Location:* Dermis, subcutaneous tissue, and joint capsules *Modality:* Heavy touch, pressure, stretching of skin, joint movements
	**Tactile Discs** *Location:* Stratum basale of epidermis *Modality:* Light touch, texture, edges, shapes		**Krause End Bulbs** *Location:* Mucous membranes *Modality:* Similar to tactile corpuscles		**Muscle Spindles** *Location:* Skeletal muscles near tendon *Modality:* Muscle stretch (proprioception)
	**Hair Receptors** *Location:* Around hair follicle *Modality:* Movement of hairs		**Lamellated Corpuscles** *Location:* Dermis, joint capsules, breasts, genitals, and some viscera *Modality:* Deep pressure, stretch, tickle, vibration		**Golgi Tendon Organs** *Location:* Tendons *Modality:* Tension on tendons (proprioception)

Somesthetic Projection Pathways

From the receptor to the final destination in the brain, most somesthetic signals travel by way of three neurons called the **first-, second-,** and **third-order neurons.** Their axons are called first- through third-order nerve fibers. The first-order fibers for touch, pressure, and proprioception are large, myelinated, and fast; those for heat and cold are small, unmyelinated, and slower.

Somesthetic signals from the head, such as facial sensations, travel by way of several cranial nerves (especially V, the trigeminal nerve) to the pons and medulla oblongata. In the brainstem, the first-order fibers of these neurons synapse with second-order neurons that decussate and end in the contralateral thalamus. Third-order neurons then complete the route to the cerebrum. Proprioceptive signals are an exception, as the second-order fibers carry these signals to the cerebellum.

Below the head, the first-order fibers enter the dorsal horn of the spinal cord. Signals ascend the spinal cord in the spinothalamic and other pathways as detailed in chapter 13 (see table 13.1 and figure 13.11). These pathways decussate either at or near the point of entry into the spinal cord, or in the brainstem, so the primary somesthetic cortex in each cerebral hemisphere receives signals from the contralateral side of the body.

Signals for proprioception below the head travel up the spinocerebellar tracts to the cerebellum. Signals from the thoracic and abdominal viscera travel to the medulla oblongata by way of sensory fibers in the vagus nerve (X).

Pain

Pain is a discomfort caused by tissue injury or noxious stimulation, and typically leading to evasive action. As undesirable as pain may seem, we would be far worse off without it. We see evidence of its value in such diseases as leprosy and diabetes mellitus, where the sense of pain is lost because of nerve damage *(neuropathy).* The absence of pain makes people unaware of minor injuries. They do not take care of them, so the injuries can become infected and grow worse, to the point that the victim may lose fingers, toes, or entire limbs. In short, pain is an adaptive and necessary sensation. It is mediated by its own specialized nerve fibers, the nociceptors. These are especially dense in the skin and mucous membranes, and occur in virtually all organs, although not in the brain. In some brain surgery, the patient must remain conscious and able to talk with the surgeon; such patients need only a local scalp anesthetic.

There are two types of nociceptors corresponding to different pain sensations. Myelinated pain fibers conduct at speeds of 12 to 30 m/sec and produce the sensation of **fast (first) pain**—a feeling of sharp, localized, stabbing pain perceived at the time of injury. Unmyelinated pain fibers conduct at speeds of 0.5 to 2.0 m/sec and produce the **slow (second) pain** that follows—a longer-lasting, dull, diffuse feeling. Pain from the skin, muscles, and joints is called **somatic pain,** while pain from the viscera is called **visceral pain.** The latter often results from stretch, chemical irritants, or *ischemia* (poor blood flow), and it is often accompanied by nausea.

Injured tissues release several chemicals that stimulate the nociceptors and trigger pain. **Bradykinin** is the most potent pain stimulus known; it is intensely painful when injected under the skin. It not only makes us aware of injuries but also activates a cascade of reactions that promote healing. Serotonin, prostaglandins, and histamine also stimulate nociceptors, as do potassium ions and ATP released from ruptured cells.

Projection Pathways for Pain

Pain signals from the face travel mainly by way of the trigeminal nerve to the pons, while signals from the neck down travel by way of spinal nerves to the dorsal horn of the spinal cord. They synapse in the dorsal horn with second-order neurons that decussate and ascend the contralateral spinothalamic tract. The gracile fasciculus carries signals for visceral pain. By any of these pathways, pain signals arrive at the thalamus, where they are relayed to neurons that carry them to their final destination in the primary somesthetic cortex (postcentral gyrus) of the cerebrum (fig. 16.2). Pain signals also travel up the spinoreticular tract to the reticular formation and ultimately to the hypothalamus and limbic system. Pain signals arriving here activate visceral, emotional, and behavioral reactions to pain.

Pain in the viscera is often mistakenly thought to come from the skin or other superficial sites—for example when the pain of a heart attack is felt "radiating" along the left shoulder and medial side of the arm. This phenomenon is called **referred pain.** It results from the convergence of neuronal pathways in the CNS. In the case of cardiac pain, for example, spinal cord segments T1 to T5 receive input from the heart as well as the chest and arm. Pain fibers from the heart and skin in this region converge on the same spinal interneurons, then follow the same pathway from there to the thalamus and cerebral cortex. The brain cannot distinguish which source the arriving signals are coming from. It acts as if it assumes that signals arriving by this path are most likely coming from the skin, since skin has more pain receptors than the heart and suffers injury more often. Knowledge of the origins of referred pain is essential to the skillful diagnosis of organ dysfunctions (fig. 16.3).

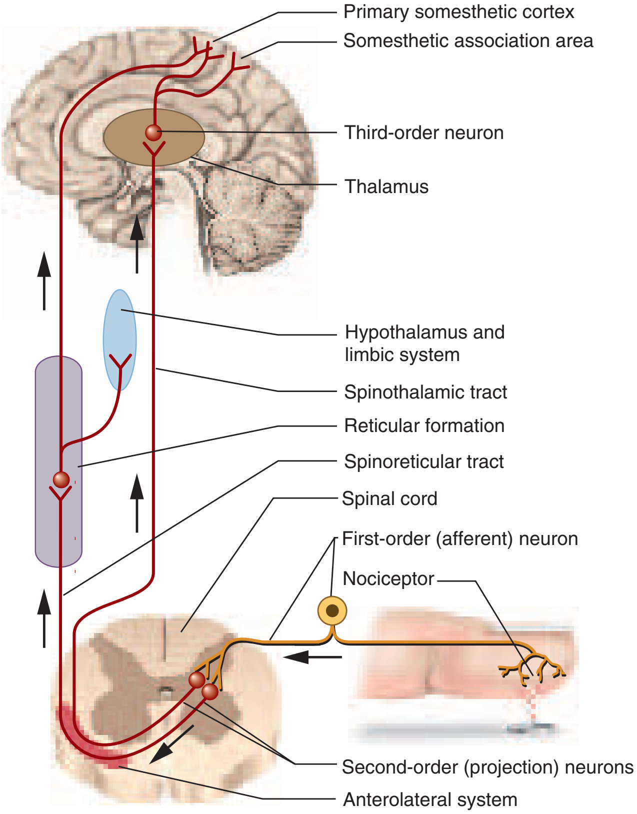

Primary somesthetic cortex
Somesthetic association area
Third-order neuron
Thalamus
Hypothalamus and limbic system
Spinothalamic tract
Reticular formation
Spinoreticular tract
Spinal cord
First-order (afferent) neuron
Nociceptor
Second-order (projection) neurons
Anterolateral system

Figure 16.2 Projection Pathways for Pain. A first-order neuron conducts a pain signal to the dorsal horn of the spinal cord, a second-order neuron conducts it to the thalamus, and a third-order neuron conducts it to the cerebral cortex. Signals from the spinothalamic tract pass through the thalamus. Signals from the spinoreticular tract bypass the thalamus on the way to the sensory cortex.

CNS Modulation of Pain

A person's physical and mental state can greatly affect his or her perception of pain. Many mortally wounded soldiers, for example, report little or no pain. The central nervous system (CNS) has **analgesic**[8] (pain-relieving) mechanisms that are just beginning to be understood. The discovery of these mechanisms is tied to the long-known analgesic effects of opium, morphine, and heroin. In 1974, neurophysiologists discovered receptor sites in the brain for these drugs. Since these opiates do not occur naturally in the body, physiologists wondered what normally binds to these receptors. They soon found two analgesic oligopeptides with 200 times the potency of morphine, and named them **enkephalins.**[9] Larger analgesic neuropeptides, the

---

[8] *an* = without + *alges* = pain
[9] *en* = within + *kephal* = head

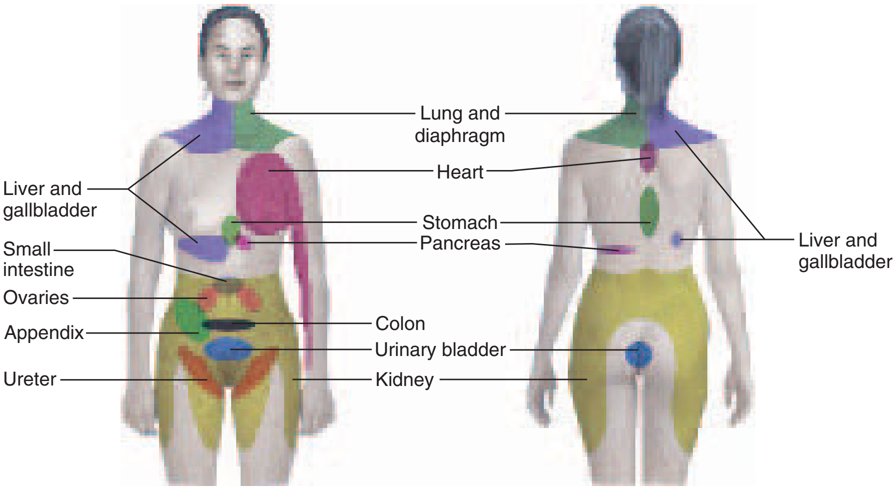


Figure 16.3 **Referred Pain.** Pain from the viscera is often felt in specific areas of the skin.

endorphins[10] and **dynorphins,**[11] were discovered later. All three of these are known as **endogenous opioids** (which means "internally produced opium-like substances").

These opioids are secreted by the CNS, pituitary gland, digestive tract, and other organs in states of stress or exercise. In the CNS, they are found especially in the central gray (periaqueductal) matter of the midbrain (see p. 527) and the dorsal horn of the spinal cord. They are *neuromodulators* (see p. 468) that can block the transmission of pain signals and produce feelings of pleasure and euphoria. They may be responsible for the "second wind" ("runner's high") experienced by athletes and for the aforementioned battlefield reports. Their secretion rises sharply in women giving birth. Efforts to employ them in pain therapy have been disappointing, but exercise is an effective part of therapy for chronic pain and may help because it stimulates opioid secretion.

How do these opioids block pain? For pain to be perceived, signals from the nociceptors must get beyond the dorsal horn of the spinal cord and travel to the brain. Through mechanisms called **spinal gating,** pain signals can be stopped at the dorsal horn. Two of these mechanisms are described here (fig. 16.4).

In one mechanism, neurons of the reticular formation issue **descending analgesic fibers** that travel down the reticulospinal tract and end on interneurons of the dorsal horn. The spinal interneurons form axoaxonic synapses with the first-order pain fibers entering the spinal cord. They secrete enkephalins and dynorphins, which inhibit the pain fibers from secreting their neurotransmitter, **substance P** (think *P* for "pain"[12]). Without substance P, the pain signal goes no farther than this; it never ascends the spinal cord to the brain, and we feel no pain.

Pain signals are also modulated by certain dorsal horn interneurons that not only inhibit the second-order neurons of the pain pathway but also receive input from mechanoreceptors. Mechanoreceptors stimulate the inhibitory interneurons, which then block the transmission of signals by the second-order pain fibers. This may explain why rubbing a sore area makes it feel less painful.

Pain control has had a particularly interesting history, some of which is retold in insight 16.5 at the end of this chapter.

Think About It

How is the phenomenon of presynaptic inhibition (see p. 470) relevant to the spinal gating of pain?

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

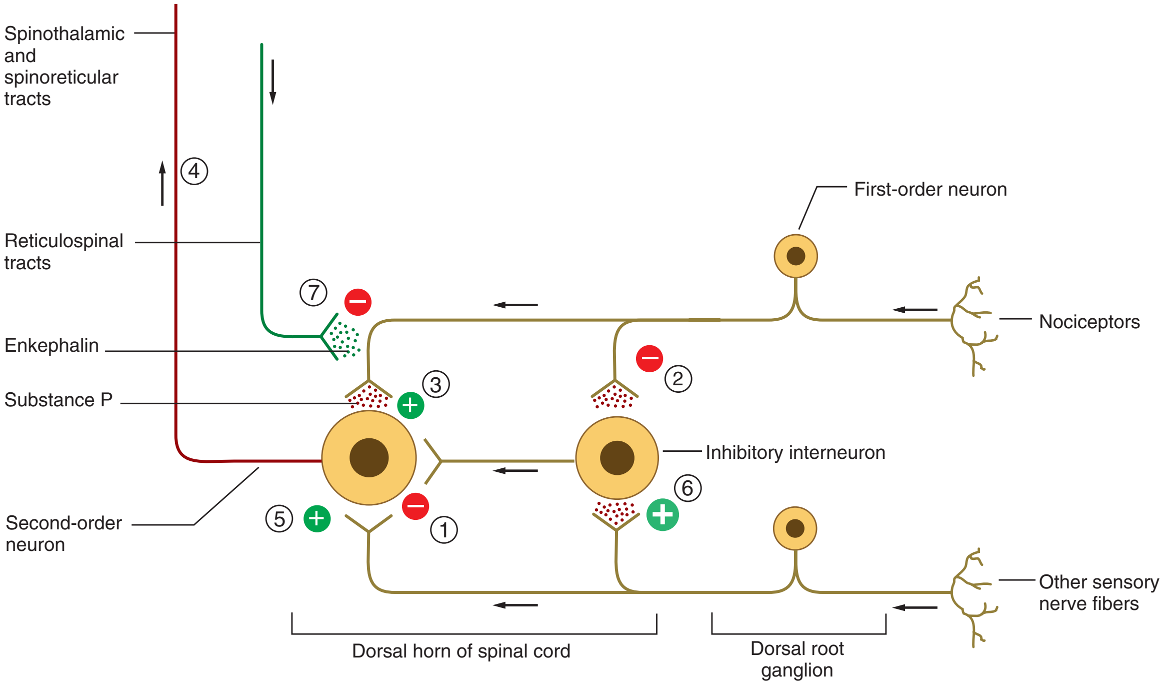
5. What stimulus modalities are detected by free nerve endings?
6. Name any four encapsulated nerve endings and identify their stimulus modalities.
7. Where do most second-order somesthetic neurons synapse with third-order neurons?
8. Explain the phenomenon of referred pain in terms of the neural pathways involved.
9. Explain the roles of bradykinin, substance P, and endorphins in the perception of pain.

---

[10] acronym, from *endo*genous *morphine*like substance

[11] *dyn* = pain

[12] Named *substance P* because it was first discovered in a *powdered* extract of brain and intestine


Spinothalamic and spinoreticular tracts
④
Reticulospinal tracts
Enkephalin
Substance P
Second-order neuron
⑦
③
②
First-order neuron
Nociceptors
Inhibitory interneuron
⑥
⑤
①
Other sensory nerve fibers
Dorsal horn of spinal cord
Dorsal root ganglion

1. In the absence of a pain stimulus, an inhibitory interneuron of the spinal cord prevents transmission of pain signals.
2. When tissue damage stimulates a nociceptor, the nociceptor inhibits the inhibitory interneuron.
3. The nociceptor also releases substance P, which stimulates the second-order neuron.
4. The second-order neuron sends a pain signal to the brain.
5. Some sensory neurons other than nociceptors also stimulate the second-order neuron.
6. These sensory neurons, however, have an even stronger effect on the inhibitory interneuron, thus blocking the transmission of pain signals.
7. Neurons of the reticular formation release enkephalin, which, by presynaptic inhibition, blocks the release of substance P. Thus the brain can reduce the transmission of the pain signal to itself.

Figure 16.4 **Spinal Gating of Pain Signals.**

The Chemical Senses

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to
- explain how taste and smell receptors are stimulated; and
- describe the receptors and projection pathways for these two senses.

Taste and smell are the chemical senses. In both cases, receptor potentials are created by the action of environmental chemicals on sensory cells.

Taste

Taste **(gustation)** is a sensation that results from the action of chemicals on the **taste buds.** There are about 4,000 of these, located on the tongue of course, but also inside the cheeks and on the soft palate, pharynx, and epiglottis.

Anatomy

The tongue, where the sense of taste is best developed, is marked by four types of bumps called **lingual papillae** (fig. 16.5*a*):

1. **Filiform**[13] **papillae** are tiny spikes without taste buds. They are responsible for the rough feel of a cat's tongue and are important to many mammals for grooming the fur. They are the most abundant papillae on the human tongue, but they are small and play no gustatory role. They are, however, important to appreciation of the texture of food.
2. **Foliate**[14] **papillae** are also weakly developed in humans. They form parallel ridges on the sides of the tongue about two-thirds of the way back from

---

[13] *fili* = thread + *form* = shaped

[14] *foli* = leaf + *ate* = like

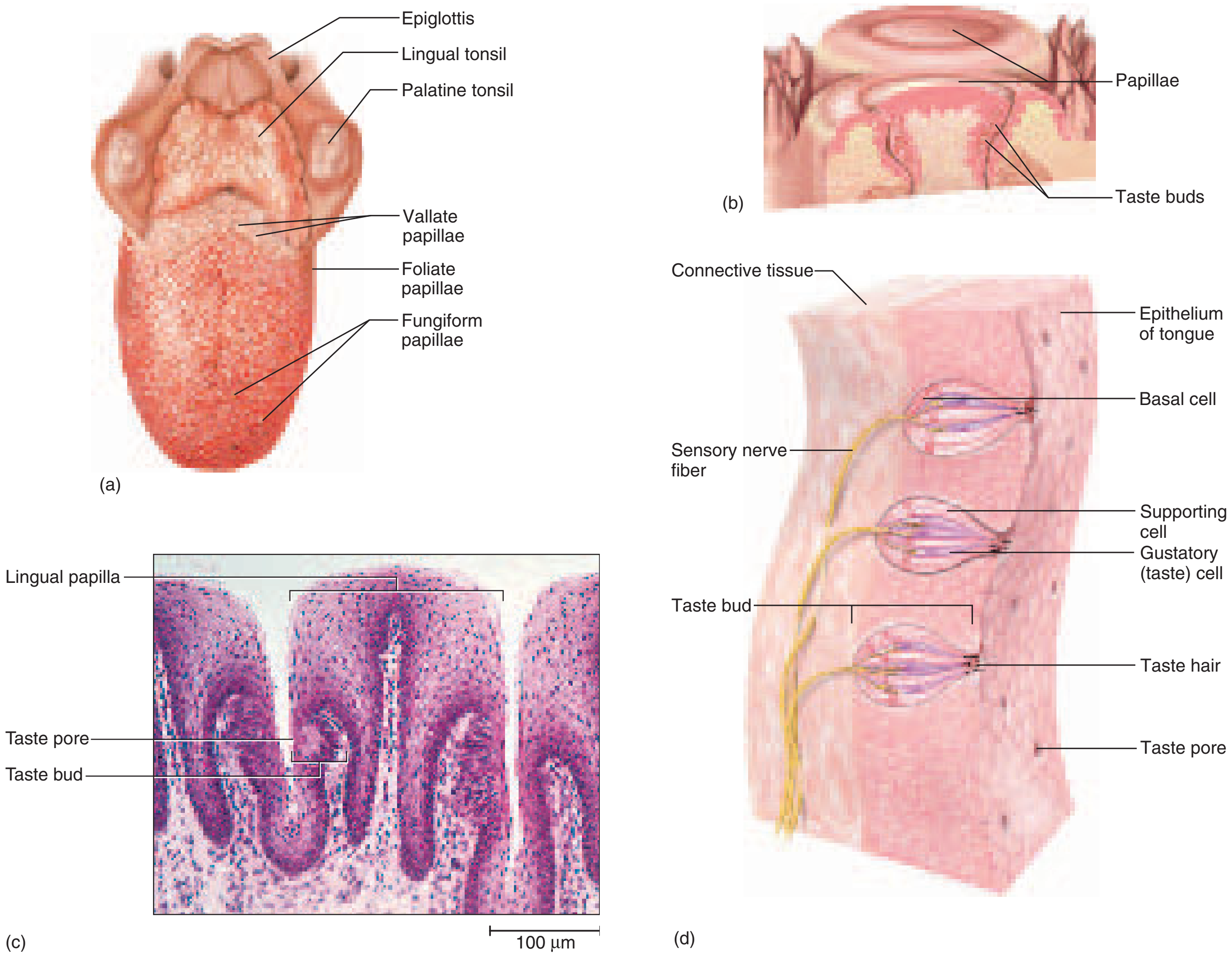

Epiglottis
Lingual tonsil
Palatine tonsil
Vallate papillae
Foliate papillae
Fungiform papillae
(a)
Papillae
Taste buds
(b)
Lingual papilla
Taste pore
Taste bud
(c)
100 µm
Connective tissue
Epithelium of tongue
Basal cell
Sensory nerve fiber
Supporting cell
Gustatory (taste) cell
Taste bud
Taste hair
Taste pore
(d)

Figure 16.5 **Taste (gustatory) Receptors.** (*a*) Dorsal view of the tongue and locations of its papillae. (*b*) Detail of the vallate papillae. (*c*) Taste buds on the walls of two adjacent foliate papillae. (*d*) Structure of the taste buds.

the tip. Most of their taste buds degenerate by the age of 2 or 3 years.

3. **Fungiform**[15] (FUN-jih-form) **papillae** are shaped somewhat like mushrooms. Each has about three taste buds, located mainly on the apex. These papillae are widely distributed but especially concentrated at the tip and sides of the tongue.
4. **Vallate**[16] **(circumvallate) papillae** are large papillae arranged in a V at the rear of the tongue. Each is surrounded by a deep circular trench. There are only 7 to 12 of them, but they contain about half of all our taste buds—around 250 each, located on the wall of the papilla facing the trench (fig. 16.5*b*).

Regardless of location and sensory specialization, all taste buds look alike (fig. 16.5*c, d*). They are lemon-shaped groups of 40 to 60 cells of three kinds—*taste cells, supporting cells,* and *basal cells.* **Taste (gustatory) cells** are more or less banana-shaped and have a tuft of apical microvilli called **taste hairs** that serve as receptor surfaces for taste molecules. The hairs project into a pit called a **taste pore** on the epithelial surface of the tongue. Taste cells are epithelial cells, not neurons, but they synapse with sensory nerve fibers at their base. A taste cell lives 7 to 10 days and is then replaced by mitosis and differentiation of basal cells. Supporting cells have a similar shape but no taste hairs. They lie between the taste cells.

---

[15] *fungi* = mushroom + *form* = shaped
[16] *vall* = wall + *ate* = like, possessing

Physiology

To be tasted, molecules must dissolve in the saliva and flood the taste pore. On a dry tongue, sugar or salt has as little taste as a sprinkle of sand. Physiologists currently recognize five primary taste sensations:

1. **Salty,** produced by metal ions such as sodium and potassium. Since these are vital electrolytes, there is obvious value in our ability to taste them and in having an appetite for salt. Electrolyte deficiencies can cause a craving for salt; many animals such as deer, elephants, and parrots thus seek salt deposits when necessary. Pregnancy can lower a woman's electrolyte concentrations and create a craving for salty food.
2. **Sweet,** produced by many organic compounds, especially sugars. Sweetness is associated with carbohydrates and foods of high caloric value. Many flowering plants have evolved sweet nectar and fruits that entice animals to eat them and disperse their pollen and seeds. Thus, our fondness for fruit has coevolved with plant reproductive strategies.
3. **Sour,** usually associated with acids in such foods as citrus fruits.
4. **Bitter,** associated with spoiled foods and with alkaloids such as nicotine, caffeine, quinine, and morphine. Bitter alkaloids are often poisonous, and this sensation usually induces a human or animal to reject a food. While flowering plants make their fruits temptingly sweet, they often load their leaves with bitter, toxic alkaloids to deter animals from eating them.
5. **Umami,** is a "meaty" taste produced by amino acids such as aspartic and glutamic acids. The taste is best known from the salt of glutamic acid, monosodium glutamate (MSG). Pronounced "ooh-mommy," the word is Japanese slang for "delicious" or "yummy."

The many flavors we perceive are not simply a mixture of these five primary tastes but are also influenced by food texture, aroma, temperature, appearance, and one's state of mind, among other things. Many flavors depend on smell; without its aroma, cinnamon merely has a faintly sweet taste, and coffee and peppermint are bitter. Some flavors such as pepper are due to stimulation of free endings of the trigeminal nerve. Food scientists refer to the texture of food as *mouthfeel.* Filiform and fungiform papillae of the tongue are innervated by the *lingual nerve* (a branch of the trigeminal) and are sensitive to texture.

All of the primary tastes can be detected throughout the tongue, but certain regions are more sensitive to one category than to others. The tip of the tongue is most sensitive to sweet tastes, which trigger such responses as licking, salivation, and swallowing. The lateral margins of the tongue are the most sensitive areas for salty and sour tastes. Taste buds in the vallate papillae at the rear of the tongue are especially sensitive to bitter compounds, which tend to trigger rejection responses such as gagging to protect against the ingestion of toxins. The threshold for the bitter taste is the lowest of all—that is, we can taste lower concentrations of alkaloids than of acids, salts, and sugars. The senses of sweet and salty are the least sensitive. It is not yet known whether umami stimulates any particular region of the tongue more than other regions.

Sugars, alkaloids, and glutamate stimulate taste cells by binding to receptors on the membrane surface, which then activate G proteins and second-messenger systems within the cell. Sodium and acids penetrate into the cell and depolarize it directly. By either mechanism, stimulated taste cells then release neurotransmitters that stimulate the sensory dendrites at their base.

Projection Pathways

Taste buds stimulate the facial nerve (VII) in the anterior two-thirds of the tongue, the glossopharyngeal nerve (IX) in the posterior one-third, and the vagus nerve (X) in the palate, pharynx, and epiglottis. All taste fibers project to the *solitary nucleus* in the medulla oblongata. Second-order neurons from this nucleus relay the signals to two destinations: (1) nuclei in the hypothalamus and amygdala that activate autonomic reflexes such as salivation, gagging, and vomiting, and (2) the thalamus, which relays signals to the insula and postcentral gyrus of the cerebrum, where we become conscious of the taste.

Smell

The receptor cells for smell **(olfaction)** form a patch of epithelium, the **olfactory mucosa,** in the roof of the nasal cavity (fig. 16.6). This location places the olfactory cells close to the brain, but it is poorly ventilated; forcible sniffing is often needed to identify an odor or locate its source. Nevertheless, the sense of smell is highly sensitive. We can detect odor concentrations as low as a few parts per trillion. Most people can distinguish 2,000 to 4,000 odors, and some can distinguish up to 10,000. On average, women are more sensitive to odors than men are, and they are measurably more sensitive to some odors near the time of ovulation than during other phases of the menstrual cycle. Olfaction is highly important in the social interactions of other animals and, in more subtle ways, to humans (see insight 16.1).

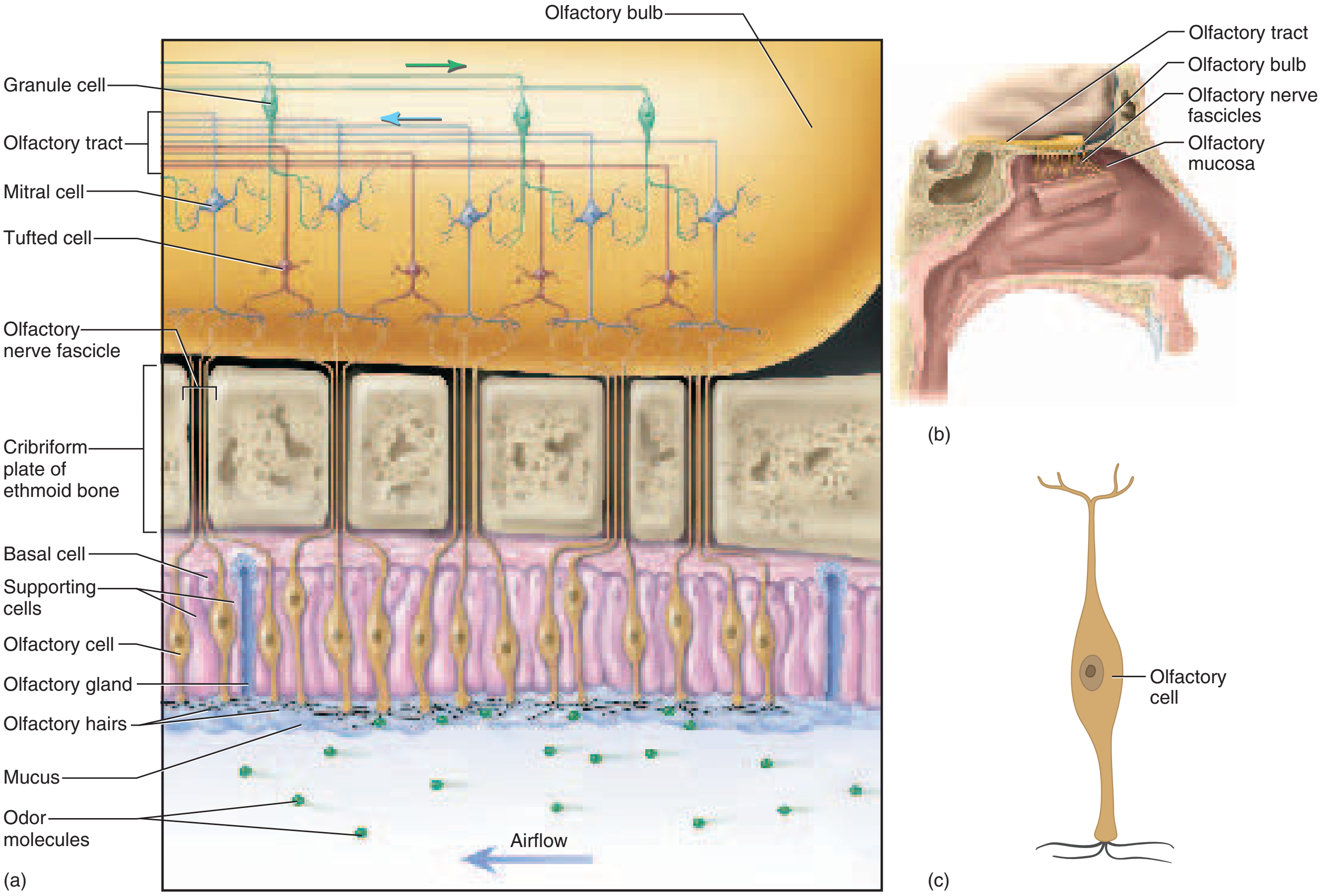

Olfactory bulb
Granule cell
Olfactory tract
Mitral cell
Tufted cell
Olfactory nerve fascicle
Cribriform plate of ethmoid bone
Basal cell
Supporting cells
Olfactory cell
Olfactory gland
Olfactory hairs
Mucus
Odor molecules
Airflow
(a)
Olfactory tract
Olfactory bulb
Olfactory nerve fascicles
Olfactory mucosa
(b)
Olfactory cell
(c)

Figure 16.6 **Smell (olfactory) Receptors.** (*a*) Neural pathways from the olfactory mucosa of the nasal cavity to the olfactory tract of the brain. (*b*) Location of the major structures in relation to the nasal and cranial cavities. (*c*) Detail of an olfactory cell.

Insight 16.1 Evolutionary Medicine

Human Pheromones

There is an abundance of anecdote, but no clear experimental evidence, that human body odors affect sexual behavior. There is more adequate evidence, however, that a person's sweat and vaginal secretions affect other people's sexual physiology, even when the odors cannot be consciously smelled. Experimental evidence shows that a woman's apocrine sweat can influence the timing of other women's menstrual cycles. This can produce a so-called *dormitory effect* in which women who live together tend to have synchronous menstrual cycles. The presence of women stimulates men's beards to grow faster, and the presence of men seems to influence female ovulation. When a woman is ovulating or close to that time, and therefore fertile, her vaginal secretions contain pheromones called *copulines.* These have been shown to raise men's testosterone levels.

Anatomy

The olfactory mucosa covers about 5 cm^2 of the superior concha and nasal septum. It consists of 10 to 20 million **olfactory cells** as well as epithelial supporting cells and basal cells. The rest of the nasal cavity is lined by a nonsensory *respiratory mucosa.*

Unlike taste cells, which are epithelial, olfactory cells are neurons. They are shaped a little like bowling pins. The widest part, the soma, contains the nucleus. The neck and head of the cell are a modified dendrite with a swollen tip bearing 10 to 20 cilia called **olfactory hairs.** Unlike most cilia, these are immobile, but they have binding sites for odor molecules. They lie in a tangled mass embedded in a thin layer of mucus. The basal end of each cell tapers to become an axon. These axons collect into small fascicles that leave the nasal cavity through pores *(cribriform foramina)* in the ethmoid bone.

Collectively, the fascicles are regarded as cranial nerve I (the olfactory nerve).

Olfactory cells are the only neurons in the body directly exposed to the external environment. Apparently this is hard on them, because they have a life span of only 60 days. Unlike most neurons, however, they are replaceable. The basal cells continually divide and differentiate into new olfactory cells.

Physiology

Efforts to identify a few primary odors comparable to the five primary tastes have been indecisive and controversial. It is difficult even to specify what properties are needed to give a molecule an odor. At a minimum, it must be volatile—able to evaporate and be carried by the inhaled airstream—but the intensity of an odor is not simply proportional to volatility. Water is highly volatile but has no odor, while musk has a pronounced odor but is poorly volatile.

Sensory transduction begins when a molecule binds to a receptor on an olfactory hair. The receptor triggers the production of a second messenger which, in turn, opens ion channels in the membrane. Na^+ enters the cell and creates a receptor potential. In many cases, the second messenger is cAMP, but some odors activate other second-messenger systems.

Some odors stimulate nociceptors of the trigeminal nerve rather than olfactory cells; these include ammonia, menthol, chlorine, and hot peppers. “Smelling salts” are used to revive unconscious persons by strongly stimulating the trigeminal nerve with ammonia fumes.

The olfactory sense adapts quickly—we may therefore be unaware of our own body odors or have difficulty locating a gas leak in a room. Adaptation does not occur in the receptor cells but is due to synaptic inhibition in the olfactory bulbs of the brain.

Projection Pathways

When olfactory fibers pass through the cribriform plate, they enter a pair of **olfactory bulbs** beneath the frontal lobes of the brain. In the bulbs, they synapse with neurons called *mitral cells* and *tufted cells* (fig. 16.6*a*), whose axons form bundles called the **olfactory tracts.** The tracts follow a complex pathway leading to the medial side of the temporal lobes (fig. 16.7). Olfactory input to the amygdala and hypothalamus can trigger emotional and visceral reactions. For example, the odor of certain foods, perfume, a hospital, or decaying flesh can evoke strong emotional responses, and some odors can cause us to sneeze, cough, salivate, secrete stomach acid, or vomit. Olfactory signals differ from other sensory inputs in that they reach the cerebral cortex without passing through the thalamus.

The cerebral cortex sends feedback to *granule cells* in the olfactory bulbs. The granule cells, in turn, inhibit the mitral cells. An effect of this is that odors can change in quality and significance under different conditions. Food may smell more appetizing when you are hungry, for example, than it does after you have just eaten.

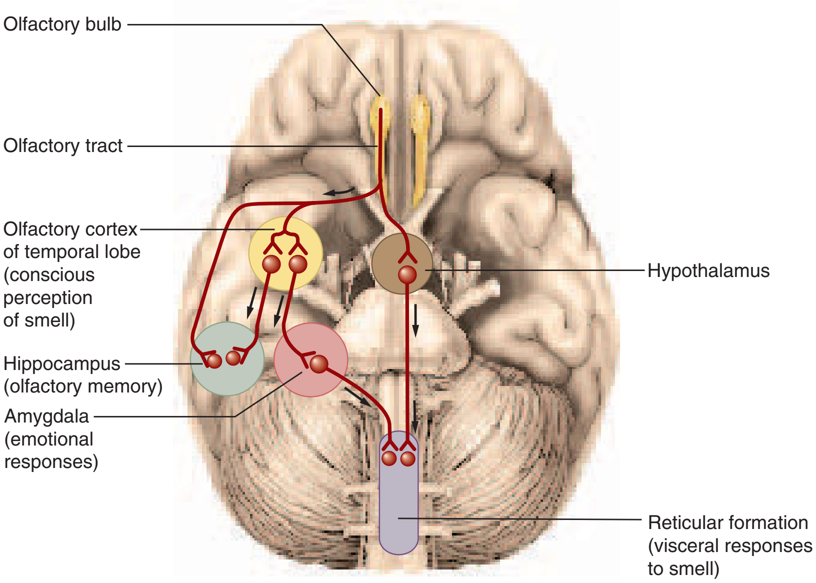

Olfactory bulb
Olfactory tract
Olfactory cortex of temporal lobe (conscious perception of smell)
Hippocampus (olfactory memory)
Amygdala (emotional responses)
Hypothalamus
Reticular formation (visceral responses to smell)

Figure 16.7 **Olfactory Projection Pathways in the Brain.**

Think About It

Which taste sensations could be lost after damage to (1) the facial nerve or (2) the glossopharyngeal nerve? A fracture of which cranial bone would most likely eliminate the sense of smell?

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

10. What is the difference between a lingual papilla and a taste bud? Which is visible to the naked eye?
11. List the primary taste sensations and discuss their adaptive significance (survival value).
12. Which cranial nerves carry gustatory impulses to the brain?
13. What part of an olfactory cell binds odor molecules?

Hearing and Equilibrium

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- identify the properties of sound waves that account for pitch and loudness;
- describe the gross and microscopic anatomy of the ear;
- explain how the ear converts vibrations to nerve signals and discriminates between sounds of different intensity and pitch;
- explain how the vestibular apparatus enables the brain to interpret the body's position and movements; and
- describe the pathways taken by auditory and vestibular signals to the brain.

Hearing is a response to vibrating air molecules and *equilibrium* is the sense of motion and balance. These senses reside in the inner ear, a maze of fluid-filled passages and sensory cells. This section explains how the fluid is set in motion and how the sensory cells convert this motion into an informative pattern of action potentials.

The Nature of Sound

To understand the physiology of hearing, it is necessary to appreciate some basic properties of sound. **Sound** is any audible vibration of molecules. It can be transmitted through water, solids, or air, but not through a vacuum. Our discussion is limited to airborne sound.

Sound is produced by a vibrating object such as a tuning fork, a loudspeaker, or the vocal cords. Consider a loudspeaker producing a pure tone. When the speaker cone moves forward, it pushes air molecules ahead of it. They collide with other molecules just ahead of them, and energy is thus transferred from molecule to molecule until it reaches the eardrum. No one molecule moves very far; they simply collide with each other like a series of billiard balls until finally, some molecules collide with the eardrum and make it vibrate. The sensations we perceive as the pitch and loudness of the sound are related to the physical properties of these vibrations.

Pitch

Pitch is our sense of whether a sound is "high" (treble) or "low" (bass). It is determined by the frequency at which the sound source, eardrum, and other parts of the ear vibrate. One movement of a vibrating object back and forth is called a *cycle,* and the number of cycles per second (cps or hertz, Hz) is called **frequency.** The lowest note on a piano, for example, is 27.5 Hz, middle C is 261 Hz, and the highest note is 4,176 Hz. The most sensitive human ears can hear frequencies from 20 to 20,000 Hz. The *infrasonic* frequencies below 20 Hz are not detected by the ear, but we sense them through vibrations of the skull and skin, and they play a significant role in our appreciation of music. The inaudible vibrations above 20,000 Hz are *ultrasonic.* Human ears are most sensitive to frequencies ranging from 1,500 to 4,000 Hz. In this range, we can hear sounds of relatively low energy (volume), whereas sounds above or below this range must be louder to be audible (fig. 16.8). Normal speech falls within this frequency range. Most of the hearing loss suffered with age is in the range of 250 to 2,050 Hz.

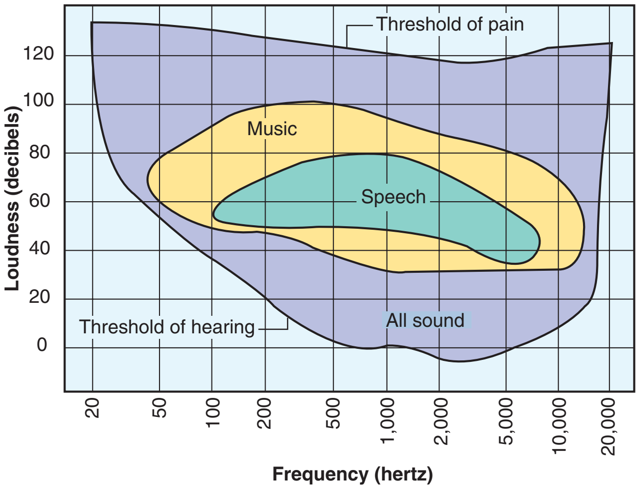


Figure 16.8 **The Range of Human Hearing.** People with very sensitive ears can hear sounds from 20 to 20,000 hertz, but sounds must be louder at these extremes than they are in the midrange to be heard. Our ears are most sensitive to frequencies of 1,500 to 5,000 hertz, where we can hear relatively soft sounds. Thus, the threshold of hearing varies with the frequency of the sound. Most sounds above 120 decibels are painful to the ear.

How would the shape of this graph change in a case of moderate hearing loss between 200 and 5,000 Hz?

Loudness

Loudness is the perception of sound energy, intensity, or **amplitude** of vibration. In the speaker example, amplitude is a measure of how far forward and back the cone vibrates on each cycle and how much it compresses the air molecules in front of it. Loudness is expressed in decibels (dB), with 0 dB being the threshold of human hearing. Every 10 dB step up the scale represents a sound with 10 times greater intensity. Thus, 10 dB is 10 times threshold, 20 dB is 100 times threshold, 30 dB is 1,000 times threshold, and so forth. Normal conversation has a loudness of about 60 dB. At most frequencies, the threshold of pain is 120 to 140 dB, approximately the intensity of a loud thunderclap. Prolonged exposure to sounds greater than 90 dB can cause permanent loss of hearing.

Anatomy of the Ear

The ear has three regions called the *outer, middle,* and *inner ear.* The first two are concerned only with transmitting sound to the inner ear, which houses the transducer that converts fluid motion to action potentials.

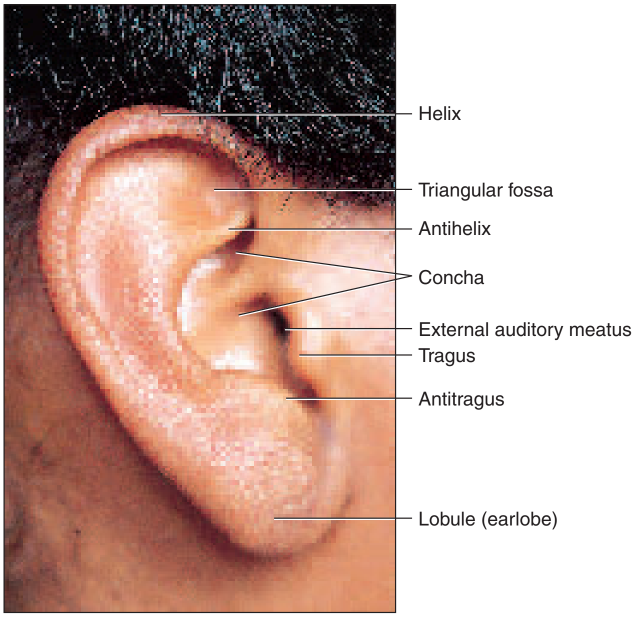


Figure 16.9 **Anatomy of the Auricle (pinna) of the Ear.**

Outer Ear

The **outer (external) ear** is essentially a funnel for conducting air vibrations to the eardrum. It begins with the fleshy **auricle,** or **pinna,** on the side of the head, shaped and supported by elastic cartilage except for the earlobe. It has a predictable arrangement of named whorls and recesses that direct sound into the auditory canal (fig. 16.9).

The **auditory canal** is slightly S-shaped and about 3 cm long in adults (fig. 16.10). It is lined with skin and supported by fibrocartilage at its opening and by the temporal bone for the rest of its length. Ceruminous and sebaceous glands in the canal produce secretions that mix with dead skin cells and form *cerumen* (earwax). Cerumen normally dries and falls from the canal, but sometimes it becomes impacted and interferes with hearing.

Middle Ear

The **middle ear** is located in the **tympanic cavity** of the temporal bone. It begins with the eardrum, or **tympanic**[17] **membrane,** which closes the inner end of the auditory canal and separates it from the middle ear. The membrane is about 1 cm in diameter and slightly concave on its outer surface. It is suspended in a ring-shaped groove in the temporal bone and vibrates freely in response to sound. It is innervated by sensory branches of the vagus and trigeminal nerves and is highly sensitive to pain.

Posteriorly, the tympanic cavity is continuous with the mastoidal air cells in the mastoid process. It is filled with air that enters by way of the **auditory (eustachian**[18]**) tube,** a passageway to the nasopharynx. (Be careful not to confuse *auditory tube* with *auditory canal.*) The auditory tube is normally flattened and closed, but swallowing or yawning opens it and allows air to enter or leave the tympanic cavity. This equalizes air pressure on both sides of the eardrum and allows it to vibrate freely. Excessive pressure on one side or the other dampens the sense of hearing. The auditory tube also allows throat infections to spread to the middle ear.

The tympanic cavity, a space only 2 to 3 mm wide between the outer and inner ear, contains the three smallest bones and two smallest skeletal muscles of the body. The bones, called the **auditory ossicles,**[19] connect the eardrum to the inner ear. Progressing inward, the first is the **malleus,**[20] which has an elongated *handle* attached to the inner surface of the eardrum; a *head,* which is suspended from the wall of the tympanic cavity; and a *short process,* which articulates with the next ossicle. The second bone, the **incus,**[21] articulates in turn with the **stapes**[22] (STAY-peez). The stapes has an arch and *footplate* that give it a

---

[17] *tympan* = drum

[18] Bartholomeo Eustachio (1520–74), Italian anatomist

[19] *oss* = bone + *icle* = little

[20] *malleus* = hammer

[21] *incus* = anvil

[22] *stapes* = stirrup

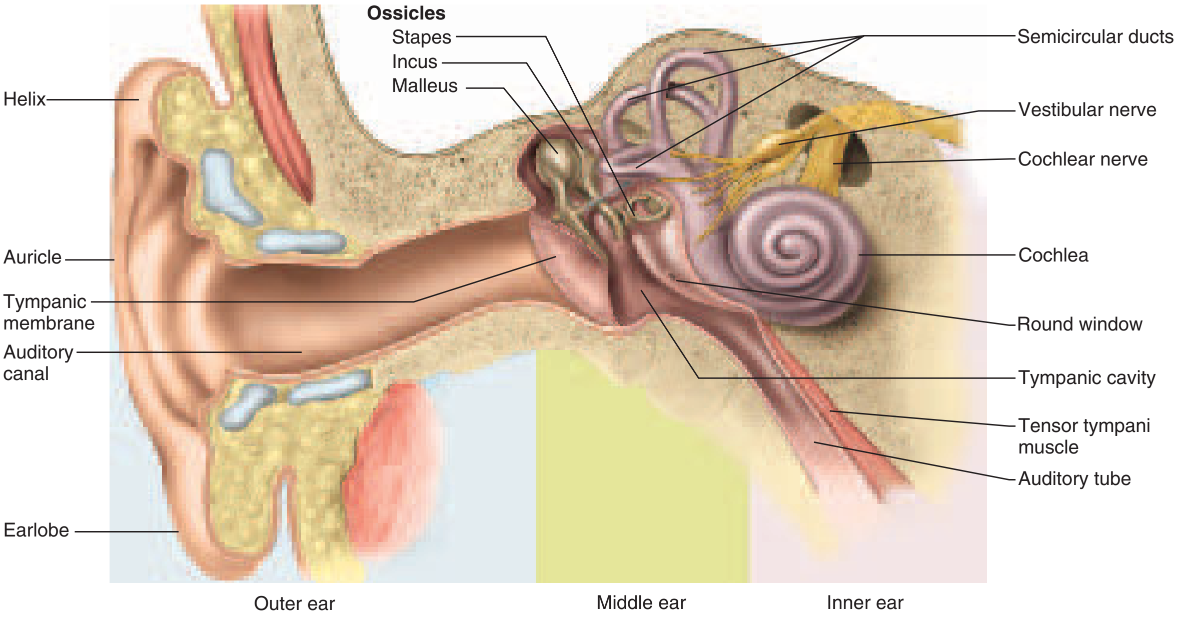


Figure 16.10 **Internal Anatomy of the Ear.**

shape like a stirrup. The footplate, shaped like the sole of a steam iron, is held by a ringlike ligament in an opening called the **oval window,** where the inner ear begins.

The muscles of the middle ear are the stapedius and tensor tympani. The **stapedius** (stay-PEE-dee-us) arises from the posterior wall of the cavity and inserts on the stapes. The **tensor tympani** (TEN-sor TIM-pan-eye) arises from the wall of the auditory tube, travels alongside it, and inserts on the malleus. The function of these muscles is discussed under the physiology of hearing.

Insight 16.2 Clinical Application

Middle-Ear Infection

Otitis[23] **media** (middle-ear infection) is common in children because their auditory tubes are relatively short and horizontal. Upper respiratory infections can easily spread from the throat to the tympanic cavity and mastoidal air cells. Fluid accumulates in the cavity and produces pressure, pain, and impaired hearing. If otitis media goes untreated, it may spread from the mastoidal air cells and cause meningitis, a potentially deadly infection (see insight 14.1). Otitis media can also cause fusion of the middle-ear bones and result in hearing loss. It is sometimes necessary to drain fluid from the tympanic cavity by lancing the eardrum and inserting a tiny drainage tube—a procedure called *myringotomy.*[24] The tube, which is eventually sloughed out of the ear, relieves the pressure and permits the infection to heal.

Inner Ear

The **inner ear** is housed in a maze of temporal bone passageways called the **bony labyrinth,** which is lined by a system of fleshy tubes called the **membranous labyrinth** (fig. 16.11). Between the bony and membranous labyrinths is a cushion of fluid called **perilymph** (PER-ih-limf), similar to cerebrospinal fluid. Within the membranous labyrinth is a fluid called **endolymph,** similar to intracellular fluid.

The labyrinths begin with a chamber called the **vestibule,** which contains organs of equilibrium to be discussed later. The organ of hearing is the **cochlea**[25] (COC-lee-uh), a coiled tube that arises from the anterior side of the vestibule. In other vertebrates, the cochlea is straight or slightly curved. In most mammals, however, it assumes the form of a snail-like spiral, which allows a longer cochlea to fit in a compact space. In humans, the spiral is about 9 mm wide at the base and 5 mm high. Its apex points anterolaterally. The cochlea winds for about 2.5 coils around an axis of spongy bone called the **modiolus**[26] (mo-DY-oh-lus). The modiolus is shaped like a screw; its threads form a spiral platform that supports the fleshy tube of the cochlea.

A vertical section cuts through the cochlea about five times (fig. 16.12*a*). A single cross section looks like

---

[23] *ot* = ear + *itis* = inflammation
[24] *myringo* = eardrum + *tomy* = cutting

[25] *cochlea* = snail
[26] *modiolus* = hub

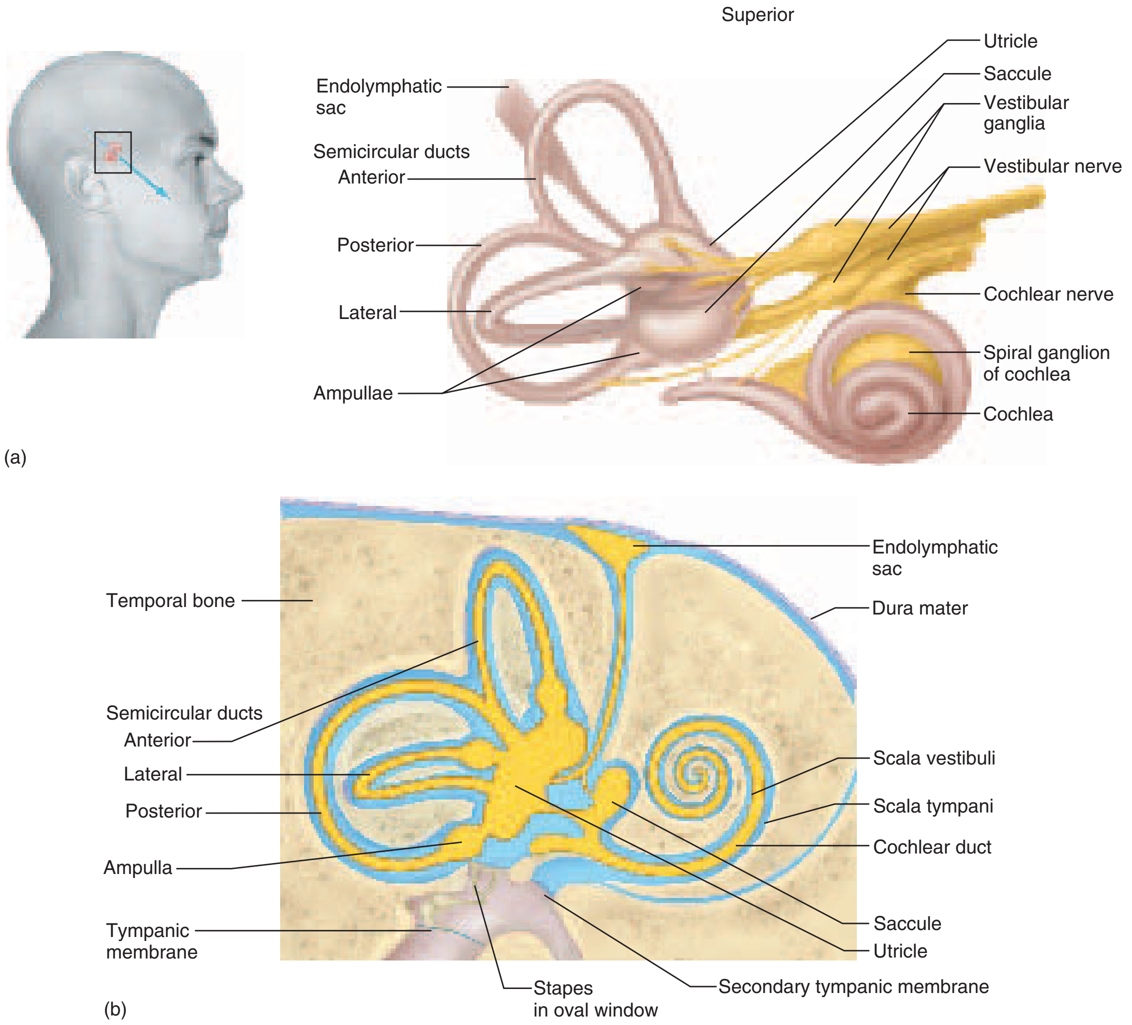

Superior
Endolymphatic sac
Semicircular ducts
Anterior
Posterior
Lateral
Ampullae
Utricle
Saccule
Vestibular ganglia
Vestibular nerve
Cochlear nerve
Spiral ganglion of cochlea
Cochlea
(a)
Temporal bone
Semicircular ducts
Anterior
Lateral
Posterior
Ampulla
Tympanic membrane
(b)
Stapes in oval window
Secondary tympanic membrane
Endolymphatic sac
Dura mater
Scala vestibuli
Scala tympani
Cochlear duct
Saccule
Utricle

Figure 16.11 **Anatomy of the Inner Ear.** (*a*) The membranous labyrinth and its nerves. (*b*) Relationship of the perilymph (*blue*) and endolymph (*yellow*) to the labyrinth.

figure 16.12*b*. It is important to realize that the structures seen in cross section actually have the form of spiral strips winding around the modiolus from base to apex.

The cochlea has three fluid-filled chambers separated by membranes. The superior one is called the **scala**[27] **vestibuli** (SCAY-la vess-TIB-you-lye) and the inferior one is the **scala tympani.** These are filled with perilymph and communicate with each other through a narrow channel at the apex of the cochlea. The scala vestibuli begins near the oval window and spirals to the apex; from there, the scala tympani spirals back down to the base and ends at the **round window** (see fig. 16.10). The round window is covered by a membrane called the *secondary tympanic membrane.*

The middle chamber is a triangular space, the **cochlear duct (scala media).** It is separated from the scala vestibuli above by a thin **vestibular membrane** and from the scala tympani below by a much thicker **basilar membrane.** Unlike those chambers, it is filled with endolymph rather than perilymph. Within the cochlear duct, supported on the basilar membrane, is the **organ of Corti**[28] (COR-tee), a thick epithelium with associated structures (fig. 16.12*c*). It is the transducer that converts vibrations into nerve impulses, so we must pay particular attention to its structural details.

The organ of Corti has an epithelium composed of **hair cells** and **supporting cells.** Hair cells are named for

---

[27] *scala* = staircase

[28] Alfonso Corti (1822–88), Italian anatomist

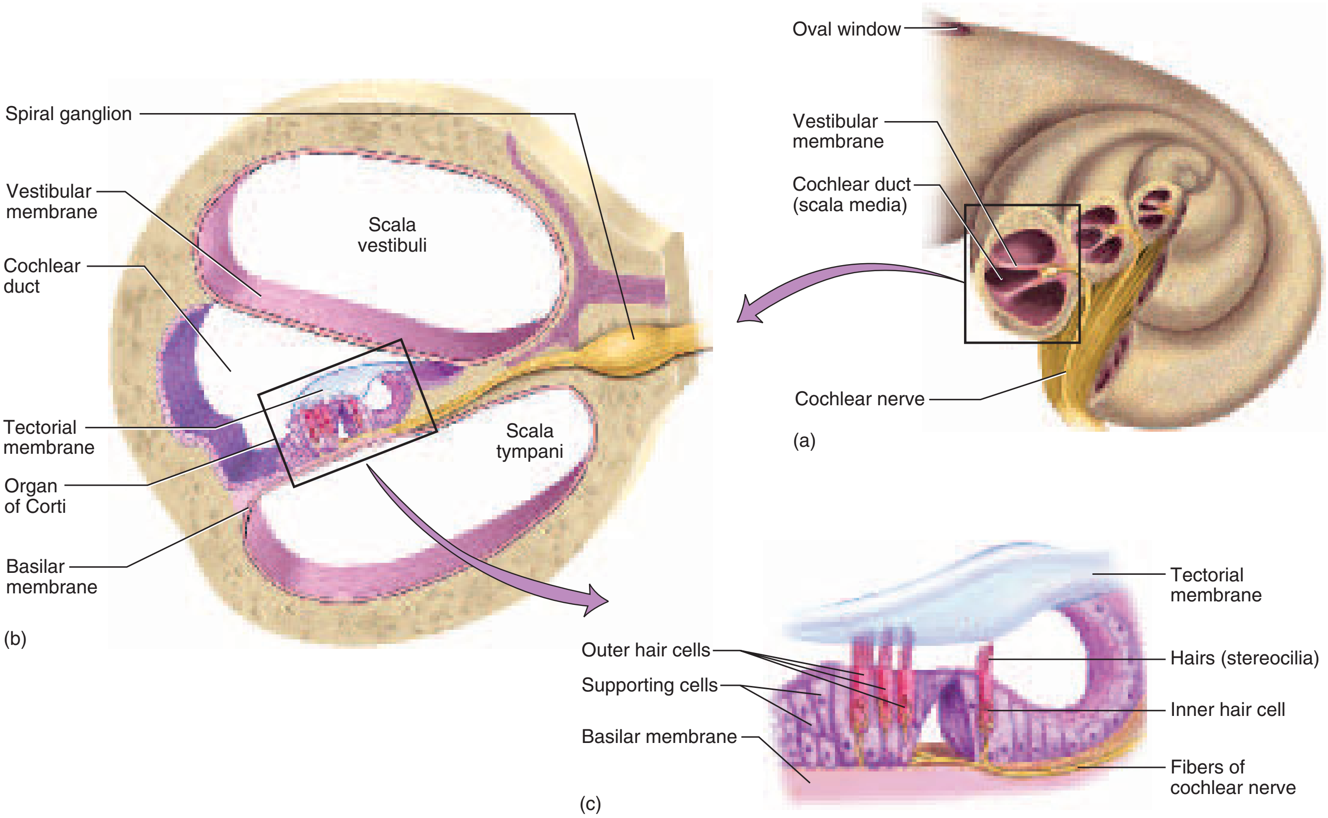

Oval window
Vestibular membrane
Cochlear duct (scala media)
Cochlear nerve
(a)
Spiral ganglion
Vestibular membrane
Cochlear duct
Scala vestibuli
Tectorial membrane
Organ of Corti
Scala tympani
Basilar membrane
(b)
Tectorial membrane
Outer hair cells
Hairs (stereocilia)
Supporting cells
Inner hair cell
Basilar membrane
Fibers of cochlear nerve
(c)

Figure 16.12 **Anatomy of the Cochlea.** (*a*) Vertical section. The apex of the cochlea faces downward and anterolaterally in anatomical position. (*b*) Detail of one section through the cochlea. (*c*) Detail of the organ of Corti.

the long, stiff microvilli called **stereocilia**[29] on their apical surfaces. (Stereocilia should not be confused with true cilia. They do not have an axoneme of microtubules as seen in cilia, and they do not move by themselves.) Resting on top of the stereocilia is a gelatinous **tectorial**[30] **membrane.**

The organ of Corti has four rows of hair cells spiraling along its length (fig. 16.13). About 3,500 of these, called **inner hair cells (IHCs),** are arranged in a row on the medial side of the basilar membrane (facing the modiolus). Each of these has a cluster of 50 to 60 stereocilia, graded from short to tall. Another 20,000 **outer hair cells (OHCs)** are neatly arranged in three rows across from the inner hair cells. Each outer hair cell has about 100 stereocilia arranged in the form of a V, with their tips embedded in the tectorial membrane. All that we hear comes from the IHCs, which supply 90% to 95% of the sensory fibers of the cochlear nerve. The function of the OHCs is to adjust

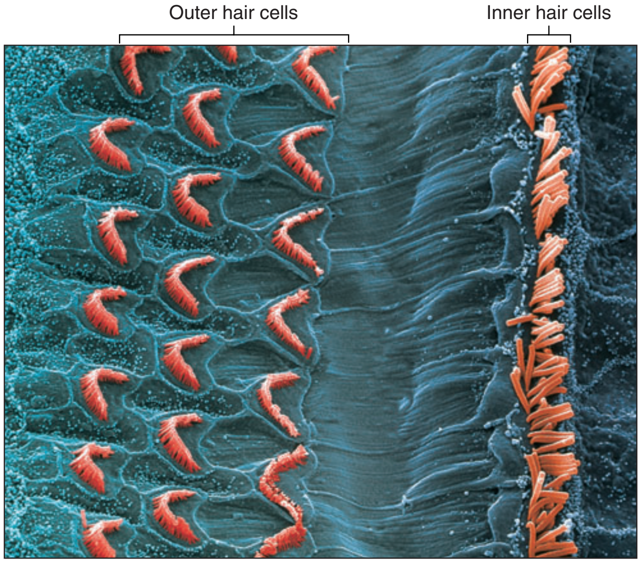

Outer hair cells
Inner hair cells

Figure 16.13 **Apical Surfaces of the Cochlear Hair Cells (SEM).**

---

[29] *stereo* = solid
[30] *tect* = roof

the response of the cochlea to different frequencies and enable the IHCs to work with greater precision. We will see shortly how this is done. Hair cells are not neurons, but synapse with nerve fibers at their base—the OHCs with both sensory and motor neurons and the IHCs with sensory neurons only.

The Physiology of Hearing

We can now examine the way in which sound affects the ear and produces action potentials.

The Middle Ear

The auditory ossicles provide no amplification; vibrations of the stapes against the inner ear normally have the same amplitude as vibrations of the eardrum against the malleus. Why have auditory ossicles, then? There are two answers to this. One is that the eardrum, which moves in air, vibrates easily, whereas the stapes footplate must vibrate against the fluid of the inner ear. This fluid puts up a much greater resistance to motion than air does. If airborne sound waves struck the footplate directly, they would not have enough energy to overcome this resistance and move the stapes. The eardrum, however, has 18 times the area of the oval window. By concentrating the energy of the vibrating eardrum on an area 1/18 that size, the ossicles create a greater force per unit area at the oval window and overcome the resistance of the endolymph.

The ossicles and their muscles also have a protective function. In response to a loud noise, the tensor tympani pulls the eardrum inward and tenses it, while the stapedius reduces mobility of the stapes. This **tympanic reflex** muffles the transfer of vibrations from the eardrum to the oval window. The reflex probably evolved in part for protection from loud but slowly building noises such as thunder. It has a latency of about 40 msec, which is not quick enough to protect the inner ear from sudden noises such as gunshots. The tympanic reflex also does not adequately protect the ears from sustained loud noises such as factory noise or loud music. Such noises can irreversibly damage the hair cells of the inner ear by fracturing their stereocilia. It is therefore imperative to wear ear protection when using firearms or working in noisy environments.

The middle-ear muscles also help to coordinate speech with hearing. Without them, the sound of your own speech would be so loud it could damage your inner ear, and it would drown out soft or high-pitched sounds from other sources. Just as you are about to speak, however, the brain signals these muscles to contract. This dampens the sense of hearing in phase with the inflections of your own voice and makes it possible to hear other people while you are speaking.

Think About It

What type of muscle fibers—slow oxidative or fast glycolytic (see p. 429)—do you think constitute the stapedius and tensor tympani? That is, which type would best suit the purpose of these muscles?

Stimulation of Cochlear Hair Cells

To produce a sensation of sound, vibration of the auditory ossicles leads to vibration of the basilar membrane on which the hair cells rest. A simple mechanical model of the ear (fig. 16.14) makes it easy to see how this happens. The stapes pushes on the perilymph of the scala vestibuli; the perilymph pushes the vestibular membrane down; the vestibular membrane pushes on the endolymph of the cochlear duct; and the endolymph pushes the basilar membrane down. (The vestibular membrane is omitted from the diagram for simplicity; it has no significant effect on the mechanics of the cochlea.) The basilar membrane puts pressure on the perilymph of the scala tympani below it, and the secondary tympanic membrane bulges outward to relieve this pressure. In short, as the stapes goes in-out-in, the secondary tympanic membrane goes out-in-out, and the basilar membrane goes down-up-down. It is not difficult to see how this happens—the only thing hard to imagine is that it can happen as often as 20,000 times per second!

The vestibular membrane separates the perilymph of the scala vestibuli from the endolymph of the cochlear duct. In order for the hair cells to function properly, the tips of their stereocilia must be bathed in endolymph. Endolymph has an exceptionally high K^+ concentration, which creates a strong electrochemical gradient from the

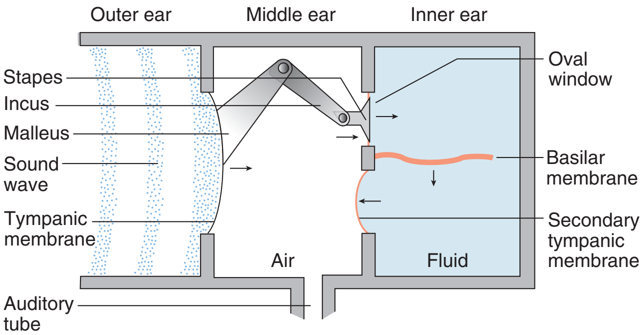


Figure 16.14 **Mechanical Model of the Ear.** Each inward movement of the tympanic membrane pushes inward on the auditory ossicles of the middle ear and fluid of the inner ear. This pushes down on the basilar membrane, and pressure is relieved by an outward bulge of the secondary tympanic membrane. Thus the basilar membrane vibrates up and down in synchrony with the vibrations of the tympanic membrane.

Why would high air pressure in the middle ear reduce the movements of the basilar membrane of the inner ear?

tip to the base of a hair cell. This gradient provides the potential energy that ultimately enables a hair cell to work.

The tectorial membrane is especially important in cochlear mechanics. Remember that the stereocilia of the outer hair cells have their tips embedded in it, and those of the inner hair cells come very close to it. The tectorial membrane is anchored to the modiolus, which holds it relatively still as the basilar membrane and hair cells vibrate up and down. Movement of the basilar membrane thus bends the hair cell stereocilia back and forth.

At the tip of each stereocilium of the inner hair cells is a single transmembrane protein that functions as a mechanically gated ion channel. A fine, stretchy protein filament called a **tip link** extends like a spring from the ion channel of one stereocilium to the side of the stereocilium next to it (fig. 16.15). The stereocilia increase in height progressively, so that all but the tallest ones have tip links leading to taller stereocilia beside them. When a taller stereocilium bends away from a shorter one, it pulls on the tip link and opens the ion channel of the shorter stereocilium. The channel is nonselective, but since the predominant ion of the endolymph is K^+, the primary effect of this gating is to allow a quick burst of K^+ to flow into each hair cell. This depolarizes the hair cell while the channel is open, and when the stereocilium bends the other way its channel closes and the cell becomes briefly hyperpolarized. During the moments of depolarization, a hair cell releases a neurotransmitter that stimulates the sensory dendrites synapsing with its base. Each depolarization thus generates action potentials in the cochlear nerve.

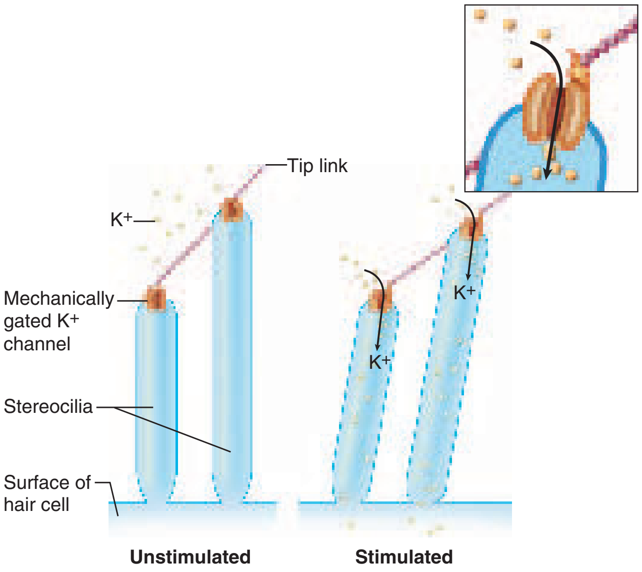


Figure 16.15 **Potassium Gates of the Cochlear Hair Cells.** Each stereocilium has a gated K^+ channel at its tip. Vibrations of the cochlea cause each stereocilium to bend and, with its tip link, pull open the K^+ channel of the adjacent stereocilium. The inflow of K^+ depolarizes the hair cell.

Sensory Coding

Our ability to distinguish loudness and pitch depends on the ability of the cochlea to respond differently to vibrations of different amplitude and frequency. Loud sounds produce more vigorous vibrations of the organ of Corti. This excites a greater number of hair cells over a broader area of basilar membrane and triggers a higher frequency of action potentials in the cochlear nerve fibers. If the brain detects intense activity in nerve fibers from a broad region of the organ of Corti, it interprets this as a loud sound.

Frequency discrimination requires a more sophisticated mechanism. The basilar membrane is spanned by short, stiff collagen fibers of various lengths. At its proximal (basal) end, the basilar membrane is attached, narrow, and stiff. At its distal (apical) end, it is unattached, five times wider than at the base, and more flexible. Think of the basilar membrane as analogous to a rope stretched tightly between two posts. If you pluck the rope at one end, a wave of vibration travels down its length and back. This produces a standing wave, with some regions of the rope vertically displaced more than others. Similarly, a sound causes a standing wave in the basilar membrane. The peak amplitude of this wave is near the distal end in the case of low-frequency sounds and nearer the proximal (attached) end with sounds of higher frequencies. When the brain receives signals mainly from inner hair cells at the distal end, it interprets the sound as low-pitched; when signals come mainly from the proximal end, it interprets the sound as high-pitched (fig. 16.16). Speech, music, and other everyday sounds, of course, are not pure tones—they create complex patterns of vibration in the basilar membrane that must be decoded by the brain.

Cochlear Tuning

Just as we tune a radio to receive a certain frequency, we also tune our cochlea to receive some frequencies better than others. The outer hair cells (OHCs) are supplied with a few sensory fibers (5%–10% of those in the cochlear nerve), but more importantly, they receive motor fibers from the brain.

In response to sound, the OHCs trigger nerve signals to the medulla by way of the sensory neurons, and the pons sends signals immediately to the OHCs by way of the motor neurons. In response, the hair cells contract by about 10% to 15%. Because an OHC is anchored to the basilar membrane below and its stereocilia are embedded in the tectorial membrane above, contraction of an OHC reduces the basilar membrane's freedom to vibrate. This results in some regions of the organ of Corti sending fewer signals to the brain than neighboring regions, so the brain can better distinguish between the more active and less

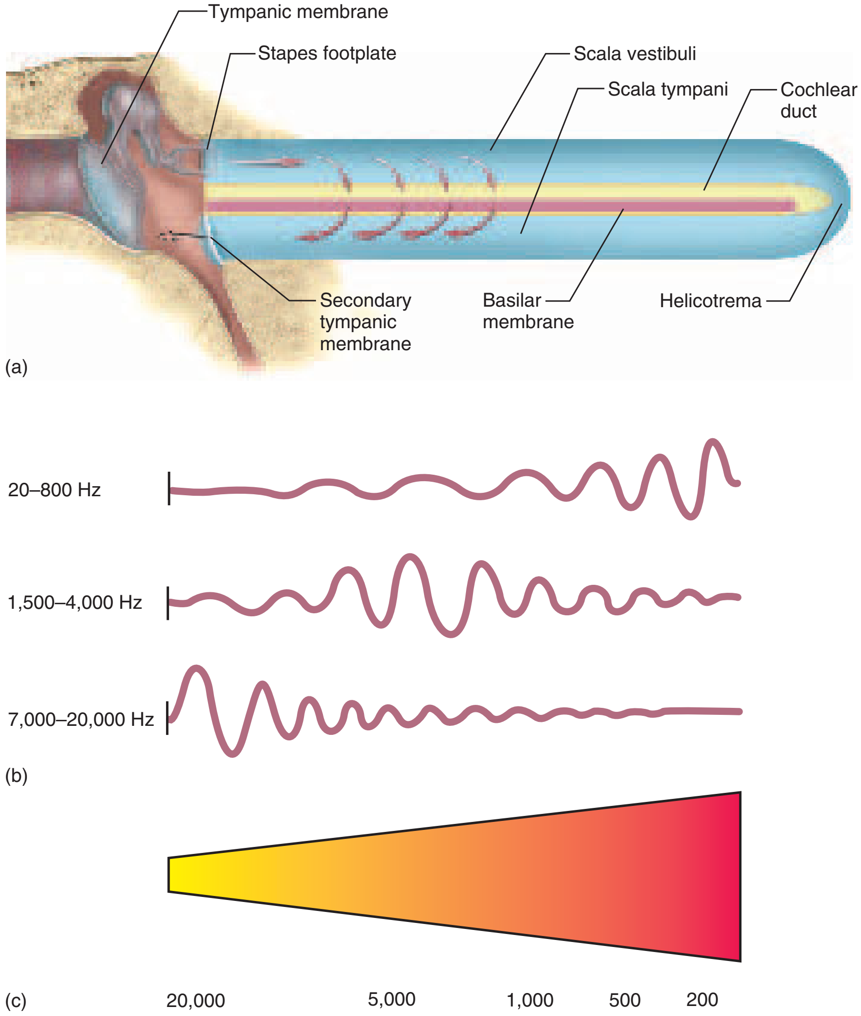


Figure 16.16 Frequency Response of the Basilar Membrane of the Cochlea. (*a*) The cochlea, uncoiled and laid out straight. (*b*) Sounds produce a standing wave of vibration along the basilar membrane. The peak amplitude of the wave varies with the frequency of the sound, as shown here. The amount of vibration is greatly exaggerated in this diagram to clarify the standing wave. (*c*) The taper of the basilar membrane and its correlation with sound frequencies. High frequencies (7,000–20,000 Hz) are best detected by hair cells near the narrow proximal end at the *left* and low frequencies (20–800 Hz) by hair cells near the wider distal end at the *right.*

active hair cells and sound frequencies. When OHCs are experimentally incapacitated, the inner hair cells (IHCs) respond much less precisely to differences in pitch.

There is another mechanism of cochlear tuning involving the inner hair cells. The pons sends efferent fibers to the cochlea that synapse with the sensory nerve fibers near the base of the IHCs. The efferent fibers can inhibit the sensory fibers from firing in some areas of the cochlea, and thus enhance the contrast between signals from the more responsive and less responsive regions. Combined with the previously described role of the OHCs, this sharpens the tuning of the cochlea and our ability to discriminate sounds of different pitch.

The Auditory Projection Pathway

A **spiral ganglion,** wound around the modiolus, is composed of bipolar sensory neurons. Their dendrites originate at the hair cells and their axons form the **cochlear nerve.** The cochlear nerve joins the *vestibular nerve,* discussed later, and the two together become the *vestibulocochlear nerve* (cranial nerve VIII).

The cochlear nerve fibers from each ear lead to *cochlear nuclei* on both sides of the pons. There, they synapse with second-order neurons that ascend to the nearby *superior olivary nucleus* of the pons (fig. 16.17). By way of cranial nerve VIII, the superior olivary nucleus

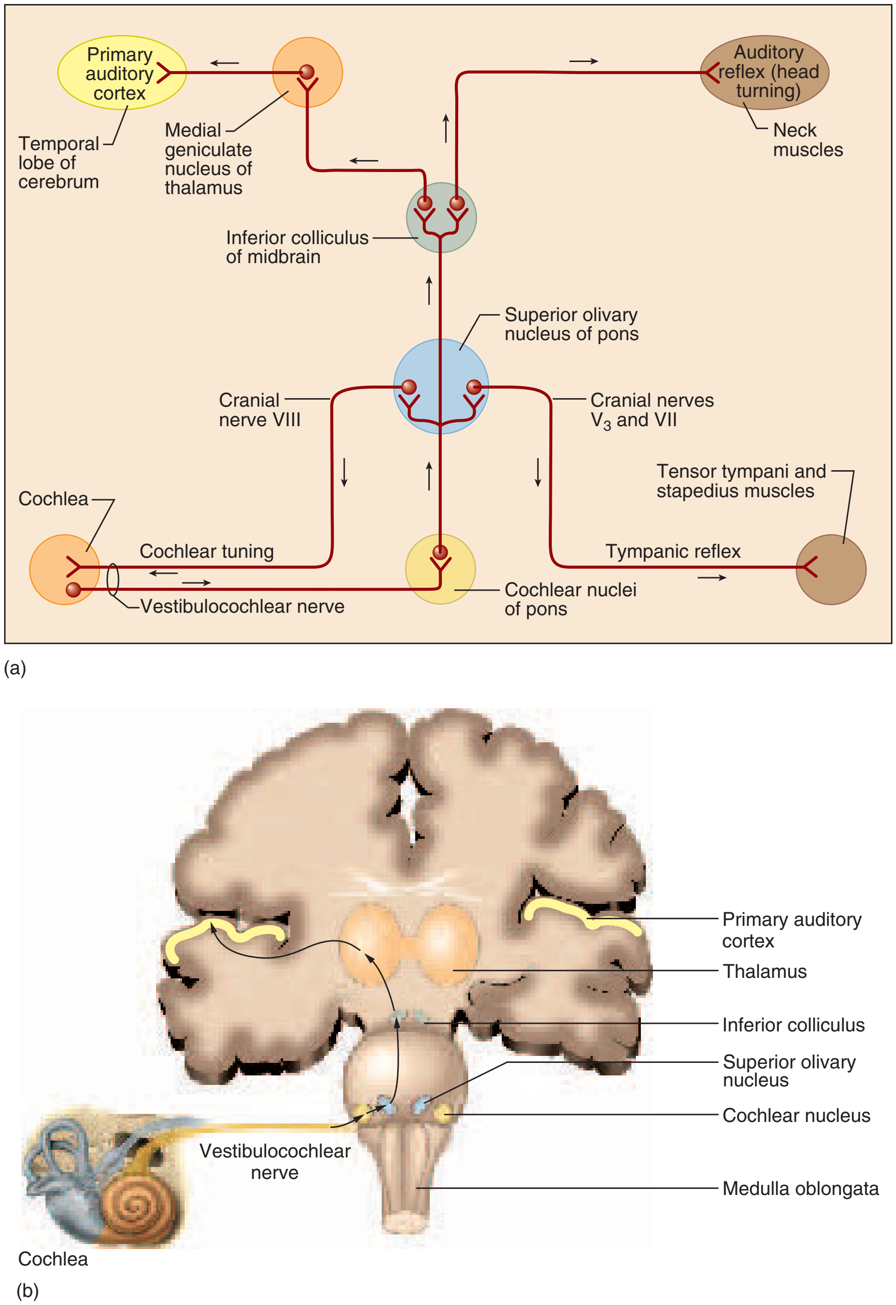

Primary auditory cortex
Temporal lobe of cerebrum
Medial geniculate nucleus of thalamus
Auditory reflex (head turning)
Neck muscles
Inferior colliculus of midbrain
Superior olivary nucleus of pons
Cranial nerve VIII
Cranial nerves V3 and VII
Tensor tympani and stapedius muscles
Cochlea
Cochlear tuning
Tympanic reflex
Vestibulocochlear nerve
Cochlear nuclei of pons
(a)
Primary auditory cortex
Thalamus
Inferior colliculus
Superior olivary nucleus
Cochlear nucleus
Vestibulocochlear nerve
Medulla oblongata
Cochlea
(b)

Figure 16.17 **Auditory Pathways in the Brain.** (*a*) Schematic. (*b*) Brainstem and frontal section of the cerebrum, showing the locations of auditory processing centers.

issues the efferent fibers back to the cochlea that are involved in cochlear tuning. By way of cranial nerves V_3 and VII, it issues motor fibers to the tensor tympani and stapedius muscles, respectively. The superior olivary nucleus also functions in **binaural**[31] **hearing**—comparing signals from the right and left ears to identify the direction from which a sound is coming.

Other fibers from the cochlear nuclei ascend to the inferior colliculi of the midbrain. The inferior colliculi help to locate the origin of a sound in space, process fluctuations in pitch that are important for such purposes as understanding another person's speech, and mediate the startle response and rapid head turning that occur in reaction to loud or sudden noises.

Third-order neurons begin in the inferior colliculi and lead to the thalamus. Fourth-order neurons begin here and complete the pathway to the primary auditory cortex, which is in the superior margin of the temporal lobe deep within the lateral sulcus (see photo on p. 585). The temporal lobe is the site of conscious perception of sound, and it completes the information processing essential to binaural hearing. Because of extensive decussation in the auditory pathway, damage to the right or left auditory cortex does not cause a unilateral loss of hearing.

Insight 16.3 Clinical Application

Deafness

Deafness means any hearing loss, from mild and temporary to complete and irreversible. *Conductive deafness* results from any condition that interferes with the transmission of vibrations to the inner ear. Such conditions include a damaged eardrum, otitis media, blockage of the auditory canal, and *otosclerosis.*[32] Otosclerosis is the fusion of auditory ossicles to each other or fusion of the stapes to the oval window, which prevents the bones from vibrating freely. *Sensorineural (nerve) deafness* results from the death of hair cells or any of the nervous elements concerned with hearing. It is a common occupational disease of factory and construction workers, musicians, and other people. Deafness leads some people to develop delusions of being talked about, disparaged or cheated. Beethoven said his deafness drove him nearly to suicide.

Equilibrium

The original function of the ear in vertebrate evolution was not hearing, it was **equilibrium**—coordination and balance. Only later did vertebrates evolve the cochlea, middle-ear structures, and auditory function of the ear. In humans, the receptors for equilibrium constitute the **vestibular apparatus,** which consists of three **semicircular ducts** and two chambers—an anterior **saccule** (SAC-yule) and a posterior **utricle**[33] (YOU-trih-cul) (see fig. 16.11).

The sense of equilibrium is divided into **static equilibrium,** the perception of the orientation of the head when the body is stationary, and **dynamic equilibrium,** the perception of motion or acceleration. Acceleration is divided into *linear acceleration,* a change in velocity in a straight line, as when riding in a car or elevator, and *angular acceleration,* a change in the rate of rotation. The saccule and utricle are responsible for static equilibrium and the sense of linear acceleration; the semicircular ducts detect only angular acceleration.

The Saccule and Utricle

Each of these chambers has a 2 by 3 mm patch of hair cells and supporting cells called a **macula.**[34] The **macula sacculi** lies nearly vertically on the wall of the saccule, and the **macula utriculi** lies nearly horizontally on the floor of the utricle (fig. 16.18*a*).

Each hair cell of a macula has 40 to 70 stereocilia and one true cilium called a **kinocilium.**[35] The tips of the stereocilia and kinocilium are embedded in a gelatinous **otolithic membrane.** This membrane is weighted with calcium carbonate–protein granules called **otoliths**[36] (fig. 16.18*b*), which add to the density and inertia of the membrane and enhance the sense of gravity and motion.

Figure 16.18*c* shows how the macula utriculi detects tilt of the head. With the head erect, the otolithic membrane bears directly down on the hair cells and stimulation is minimal. When the head is tilted, however, the weight of the membrane bends the stereocilia and stimulates the hair cells. Any orientation of the head causes a combination of stimulation to the utricules and saccules of the two ears. The brain interprets head orientation by comparing these inputs to each other and to other input from the eyes and stretch receptors in the neck.

The inertia of the otolithic membranes is especially important in detecting linear acceleration. Suppose you are sitting in a car at a stoplight and then begin to move. The heavy otolithic membrane of the macula utriculi briefly lags behind the rest of the tissues, bends the stereocilia backward, and stimulates the cells. When you stop at the next light, the macula stops but the otolithic membrane keeps on going for a moment, bending the stereocilia forward. The hair cells convert this pattern of stimulation to nerve signals, and the brain is thus advised of changes in your linear velocity.

If you are standing in an elevator and it begins to move up, the otolithic membrane of the vertical macula

---

[31] *bin* = two + *aur* = ears

[32] *oto* = ear + *scler* = hardening + *osis* = process, condition

[33] *saccule* = little sac; *utricle* = little bag

[34] *macula* = spot

[35] *kino* = moving

[36] *oto* = ear + *lith* = stone

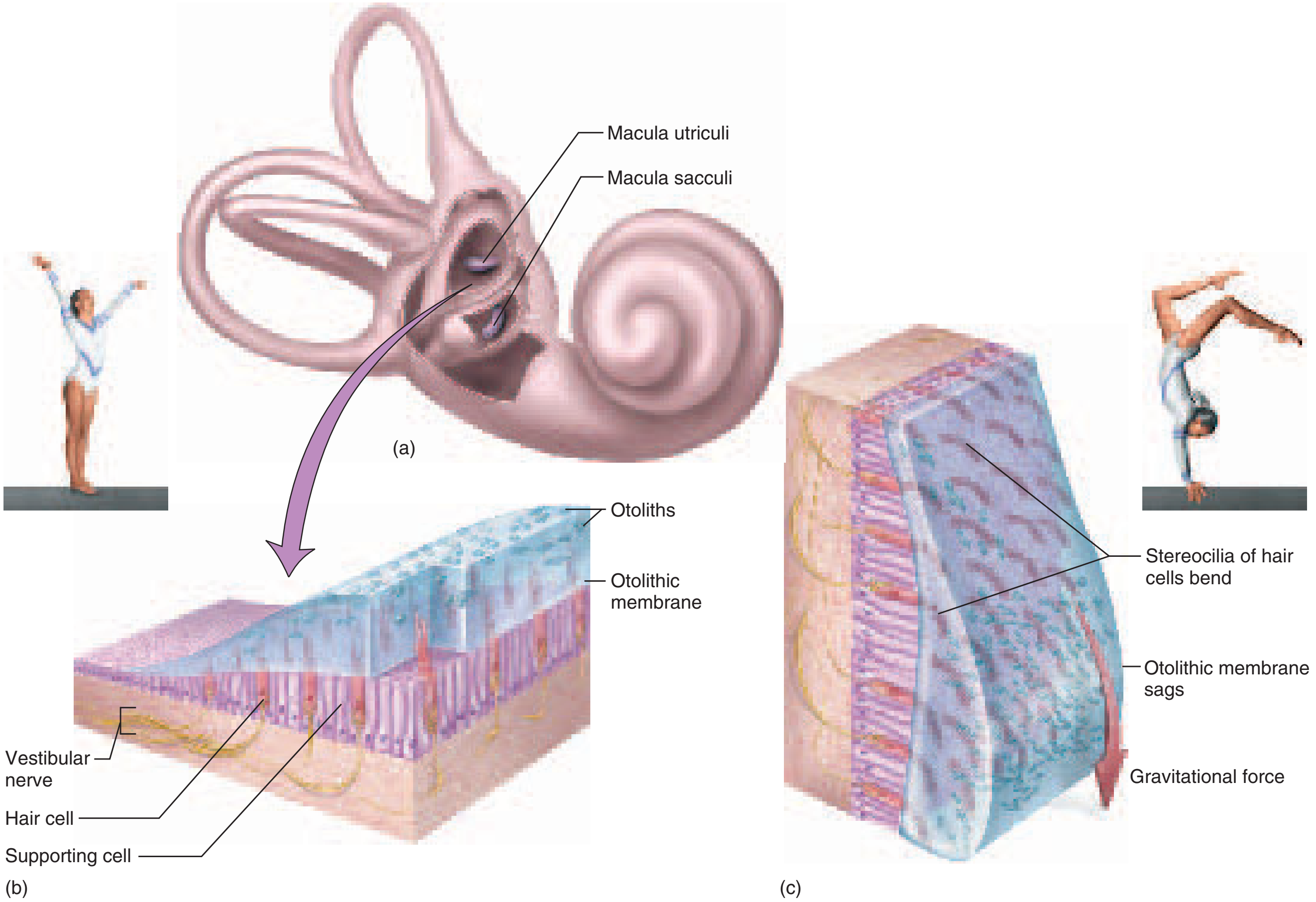


Figure 16.18 **The Saccule and Utricle.** (*a*) Locations of the macula sacculi and macula utriculi. (*b*) Structure of a macula. (*c*) Action of the otolithic membrane on the hair cells when the head is tilted.

sacculi lags behind briefly and pulls down on the hairs. When the elevator stops, the otolithic membrane keeps going for a moment and bends the hairs upward. The macula sacculi thus detects vertical acceleration.

The Semicircular Ducts

Rotational acceleration is detected by the three *semicircular ducts* (fig. 16.19), each housed in an osseous *semicircular canal* of the temporal bone. The **anterior** and **posterior semicircular ducts** are positioned vertically, at right angles to each other. The **lateral semicircular duct** is about 30° from the horizontal plane. The orientation of the ducts causes a different duct to be stimulated by rotation of the head in different planes—turning it from side to side as in gesturing "no," nodding up and down as in gesturing "yes," or tilting it from side to side as in touching your ears to your shoulders.

The semicircular ducts are filled with endolymph. Each duct opens into the utricle and has a dilated sac at one end called an **ampulla.**[37] Within the ampulla is a mound of hair cells and supporting cells called the **crista**[38] **ampullaris.** The hair cells have stereocilia and a kinocilium embedded in the **cupula,**[39] a gelatinous membrane that extends from the crista to the roof of the ampulla. When the head turns the duct rotates, but the endolymph lags behind. It pushes the cupula, bends the stereocilia, and stimulates the hair cells. After 25 to 30 seconds of continual rotation, however, the endolymph catches up with the movement of the duct and stimulation of the hair cells ceases.

Think About It

The semicircular ducts do not detect motion itself, but only acceleration—a *change in the rate* of motion. Explain.

---

[37] *ampulla* = little jar
[38] *crista* = crest, ridge
[39] *cupula* = little tub

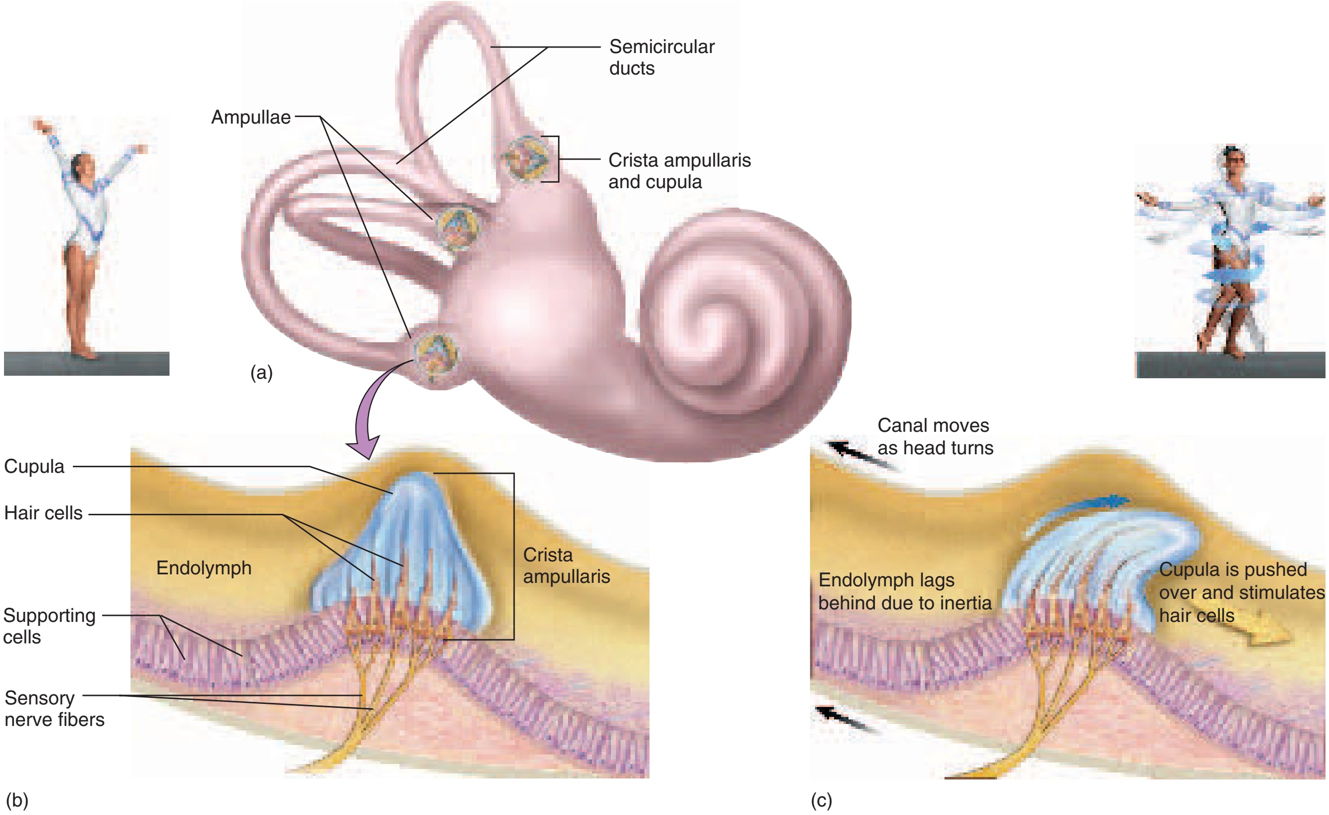

Semicircular ducts
Ampullae
Crista ampullaris and cupula
(a)
Cupula
Hair cells
Endolymph
Crista ampullaris
Supporting cells
Sensory nerve fibers
(b)
Canal moves as head turns
Endolymph lags behind due to inertia
Cupula is pushed over and stimulates hair cells
(c)

Figure 16.19 **The Semicircular Ducts.** (*a*) Structure of the semicircular ducts, with each ampulla opened to show the crista ampullaris and cupula. (*b*) Detail of the crista ampullaris. (*c*) Action of the endolymph on the cupula and hair cells when the head is rotated.

Equilibrium Projection Pathways

Hair cells of the macula sacculi, macula utriculi, and semicircular ducts synapse at their bases with sensory fibers of the **vestibular nerve.** This nerve joins the cochlear nerve to form the vestibulocochlear nerve (VIII). Most fibers from the vestibular apparatus terminate in the **vestibular nucleus** of the pons, while others project to the cerebellum. Fibers from the vestibular nucleus project caudally to the cervical spinal cord, and from there, fibers lead to the brainstem nuclei for the cranial nerves that control eye movements—the oculomotor (III), trochlear (IV), and abducens (VI) nerves. Other fibers from the cervical spinal cord lead by way of the accessory nerve (XI) to muscles that move the head and neck.

Reflex pathways to the extrinsic eye muscles enable us to fixate visually on a point in space while the head is moving. To observe this effect, hold this book in front of you at a comfortable reading distance and fix your gaze on the middle of the page. Move the book left and right about once per second, and you will be unable to read it. Now hold the book still and shake your head from side to side at the same rate. This time you will be able to read it because the reflex pathway compensates for your head movements and keeps your eyes fixed on the target.

Before we move on to the sense of vision, you may wish to review the anatomy of the ear (table 16.2) and think back on the function of each component.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

14. What physical properties of sound waves correspond to the sensations of loudness and pitch?
15. What is the benefit of having auditory ossicles and muscles in the middle ear?
16. Explain how vibration of the tympanic membrane ultimately produces fluctuations of membrane voltage in a cochlear hair cell.
17. How does the brain recognize the difference between high C and middle C musical notes? Between a loud sound and a soft one?
18. How does the function of the semicircular ducts differ from the function of the saccule and utricle?
19. How is sensory transduction in the semicircular ducts similar to that in the saccule and utricle?

Table 16.2 Anatomical Review of the Ear

Outer Ear (fig. 16.9)

- Auricle (pinna)
- Auditory canal (external auditory meatus)
- Ceruminous glands
- Helix
- Antihelix
- Triangular fossa
- Concha
- Tragus
- Antitragus
- Lobe

Middle Ear (fig. 16.10)

- *Tympanic membrane (eardrum)*
- *Tympanic cavity*
- *Auditory ossicles*
  - Malleus
  - Incus
  - Stapes
    - Footplate
- *Muscles*
  - Stapedius
  - Tensor tympani
- *Auditory (eustachian) tube*

Inner Ear (figs. 16.10 and 16.11)

- *Oval window*
- *Labyrinths and fluids*
  - Bony labyrinth
  - Membranous labyrinth
  - Perilymph
  - Endolymph
- *Cochlea*
- *Vestibular apparatus*
- *Round window*
- *Secondary tympanic membrane*

Cochlea (fig. 16.12)

- Modiolus
- Scala vestibuli
- Scala tympani
- Helicotrema
- Cochlear duct
- Vestibular membrane
- Organ of Corti
  - Supporting cells
  - Inner hair cells
  - Outer hair cells
  - Stereocilia
  - Tectorial membrane
  - Basilar membrane
- Neural components
  - Spiral ganglion
  - Cochlear nerve

Vestibular Apparatus (figs. 16.18 and 16.19)

- Vestibule
  - Saccule
    - Macula sacculi
  - Utricle
    - Macula utriculi
  - Otolithic membranes
- Semicircular ducts
  - Ampulla
  - Crista ampullaris
  - Cupula
- Vestibular nerve

Projection Pathways (fig. 16.17)

- Vestibulocochlear nerve
- Cochlear nucleus
- Vestibular nucleus
- Superior olivary nucleus
- Inferior and superior colliculi
- Thalamus
- Primary auditory cortex

Vision

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the anatomy of the eye and its accessory structures;
- describe the structure of the retina and its receptor cells;
- explain how the optical system of the eye creates an image on the retina;
- explain how the retina converts this image to nerve impulses;
- explain why different types of receptor cells and neuronal circuits are required for day and night vision; and
- trace the visual projection pathways in the brain.

Light and Vision

Vision (sight) is the perception of objects in the environment by means of the light that they emit or reflect. *Light* is visible electromagnetic radiation. Human vision is limited to wavelengths ranging from about 400 to 750 nm. The *ultraviolet (UV)* radiation just below 400 nm and the *infrared (IR)* radiation just above 700 nm are invisible to us, although some animals can see a little farther into those ranges than we can. Most solar radiation that reaches the surface of the earth falls within this range; radiation of shorter and longer wavelengths is generally filtered out by ozone, carbon dioxide, and water vapor in the atmosphere. Vision is thus adapted to take advantage of the radiation that is most available to us.

Yet there is further reason for vision to be limited to this range of wavelengths. To produce a physiological response, light must cause a *photochemical reaction*—a change in chemical structure caused by light energy. When an electron absorbs a photon of light, it is boosted to a higher energy level (orbit) around its nucleus and may transfer to another atom. The transfer of an electron from one atom to another is the essence of a chemical reaction. Ultraviolet radiation has so much energy that it ionizes organic molecules and kills cells. It is useful for sterilizing food and instruments, but it has too much energy for the biochemical processes of vision. Infrared radiation has too little energy to activate the visual process. It warms the tissues (heat lamps are based on this principle) but does not usually cause chemical reactions.

Accessory Structures of the Orbit

Before considering the eye itself, let's survey the accessory structures located in and around the orbit (figs. 16.20 and 16.21). These include the *eyebrows, eyelids, conjunctiva, lacrimal apparatus,* and *extrinsic eye muscles:*

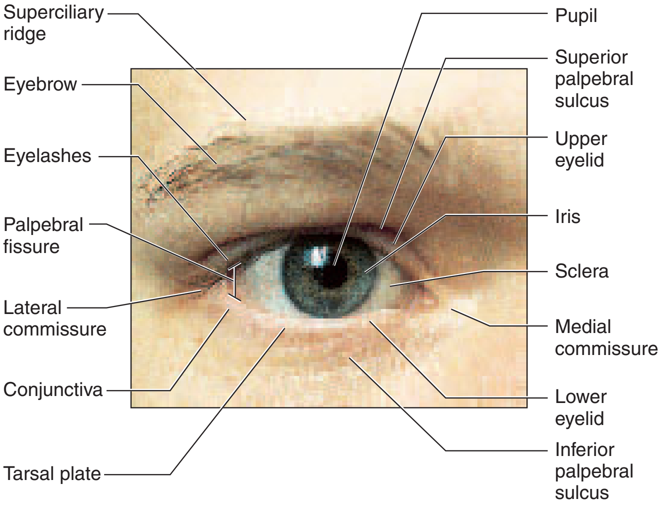


Figure 16.20 **External Anatomy of the Orbital Region.**

- The **eyebrows** probably serve mainly to enhance facial expressions and nonverbal communication (see p. 204), but they may also protect the eyes from glare and help to keep perspiration from running into the eye.
- The **eyelids,** or **palpebrae** (pal-PEE-bree), block foreign objects from the eye, prevent visual stimuli from disturbing our sleep, and blink periodically to moisten the eye with tears and sweep debris from the surface. The eyelids are separated from each other by the **palpebral fissure** and meet each other at the corners called the **medial** and **lateral commissures (canthi).** The eyelid consists largely of the orbicularis oculi muscle covered with skin (fig. 16.21*a*). It also contains a supportive fibrous **tarsal plate,** which is thickened along the margin of the eyelid. Within the plate are 20 to 25 **tarsal glands** that open along the margin. They secrete an oil that coats the eye and reduces tear evaporation. The **eyelashes** are guard hairs that help to keep debris from the eye. Touching the eyelashes stimulates hair receptors and triggers the blink reflex.
- The **conjunctiva** (CON-junk-TY-vuh) is a transparent mucous membrane that covers the inner surface of the eyelid and anterior surface of the eyeball, except for the cornea. Its primary purpose is to secrete a thin mucous film that prevents the eyeball from drying. It is richly innervated and highly sensitive to pain. It is also very vascular, which is especially evident when the vessels are dilated and the eyes are "bloodshot." Because it is vascular and the cornea is not, the conjunctiva heals more readily than the cornea when injured.
- The **lacrimal**[40] **apparatus** (fig. 16.21*b*) consists of the lacrimal (tear) gland and a series of ducts that drain the

---

[40] *lacrim* = tear

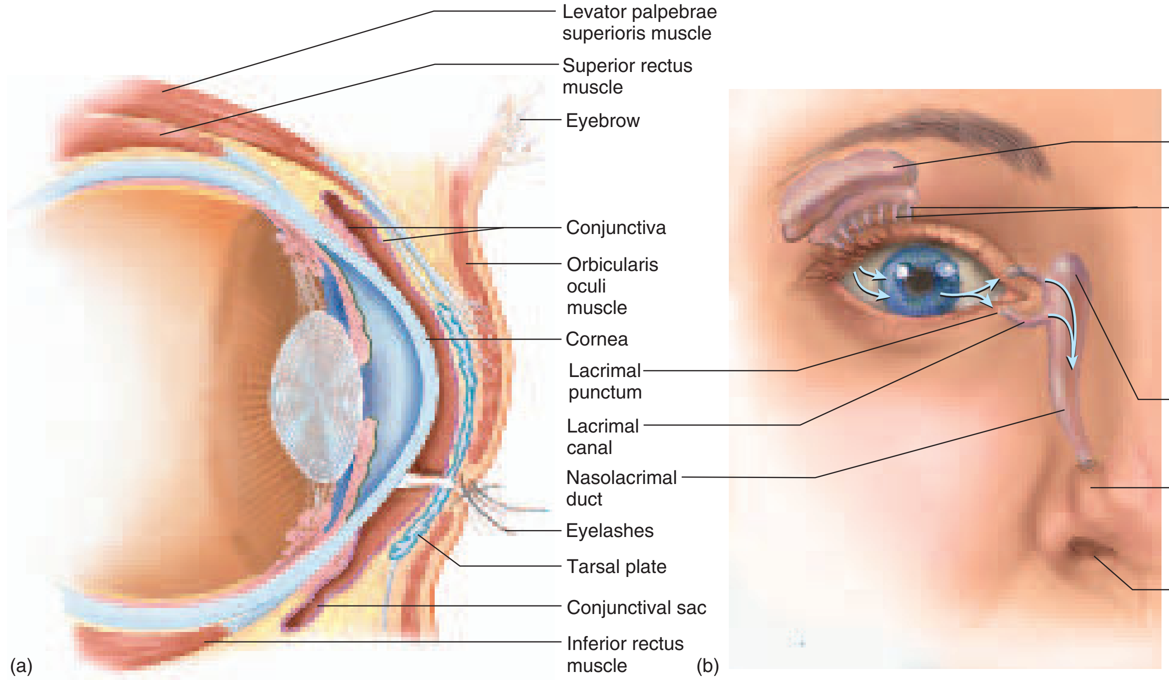

Levator palpebrae superioris muscle
Superior rectus muscle
Eyebrow
Conjunctiva
Orbicularis oculi muscle
Cornea
Lacrimal punctum
Lacrimal canal
Nasolacrimal duct
Eyelashes
Tarsal plate
Conjunctival sac
Inferior rectus muscle
(a)
(b)
Lacrimal gland
Ducts of lacrimal gland
Lacrimal sac
Inferior meatus of nasal cavity
Nostril

Figure 16.21 **Accessory Structures of the Orbit.** (*a*) Sagittal section of the eye and orbit. (*b*) The lacrimal apparatus.

tears into the nasal cavity. The **lacrimal gland,** about the size and shape of an almond, is nestled in a shallow fossa of the frontal bone in the superolateral corner of the orbit. About 12 short ducts lead from the lacrimal gland to the surface of the conjunctiva. Tears function to cleanse and lubricate the eye surface, deliver oxygen and nutrients to the conjunctiva, and prevent infection by means of a bactericidal enzyme, *lysozyme.* Periodic blinking spreads the tears across the eye surface. On the margin of each eyelid near the medial commissure is a tiny pore, the **lacrimal punctum.**[41] This is the opening to a short **lacrimal canal,** which leads to the **lacrimal sac** in the medial wall of the orbit. From this sac, a **nasolacrimal duct** carries the tears to the inferior meatus of the nasal cavity—thus an abundance of tears from crying or watery eyes can result in a runny nose. Once the tears enter the nasal cavity, they normally flow back to the throat and we swallow them. When we have a cold, the nasolacrimal ducts become swollen and obstructed, the tears cannot drain, and they may overflow from the brim of the eye.

- The **extrinsic eye muscles** are the six muscles attached to the walls of the orbit and to the external surface of the eyeball. *Extrinsic* means arising externally; it distinguishes these from the *intrinsic* muscles inside the eyeball, to be considered later. The extrinsic muscles move the eye (fig. 16.22). They include four *rectus* ("straight") muscles and two *oblique* muscles. The **superior, inferior, medial,** and **lateral rectus** originate on the posterior wall of the orbit and insert on the anterior region of the eyeball, just beyond the visible "white of the eye." They move the eye up, down, medially, and laterally. The **superior oblique** travels along the medial wall of the orbit. Its tendon passes through a fibrocartilage ring, the **trochlea**[42] (TROCK-lee-uh), and inserts on the superolateral aspect of the eyeball. The **inferior oblique** extends from the medial wall of the orbit to the inferolateral aspect of the eye. To visualize the function of the oblique muscles, suppose you turn your eyes to the right. The superior oblique muscle will slightly depress your right eye, while the inferior oblique slightly elevates the left eye. The opposite occurs when you look to the left. This is the primary function of the oblique muscles, but they also slightly rotate the eyes, turning the "twelve o'clock pole" of each eye slightly toward or away from the nose. Most of the extrinsic muscles are supplied by the oculomotor nerve (cranial nerve III), but the superior oblique is innervated by the trochlear nerve (IV) and the lateral rectus by the abducens (VI).

---

[41] *punct* = point

[42] *trochlea* = pulley

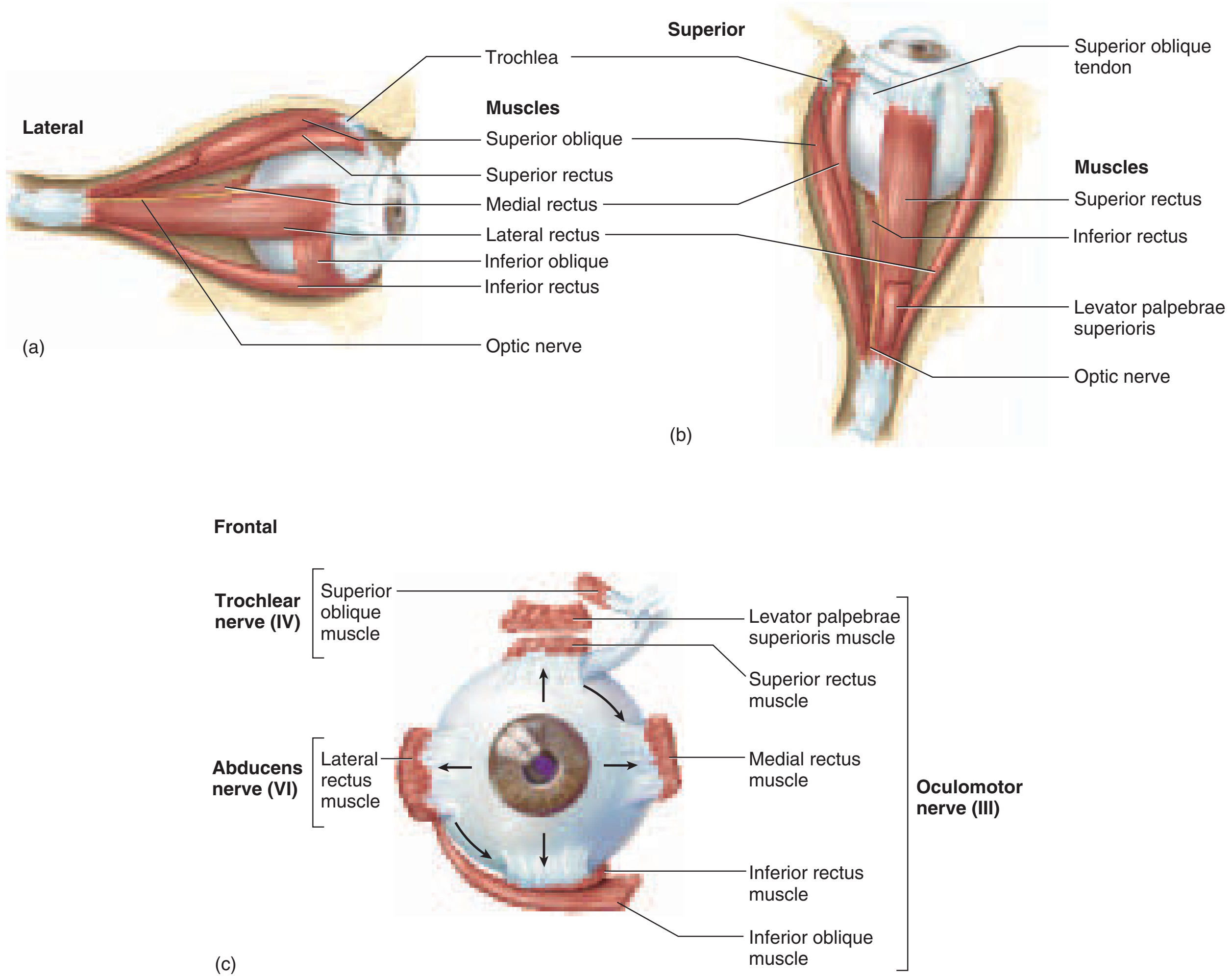

Lateral
Trochlea
Muscles
Superior oblique
Superior rectus
Medial rectus
Lateral rectus
Inferior oblique
Inferior rectus
Optic nerve
(a)
Superior
Superior oblique tendon
Muscles
Superior rectus
Inferior rectus
Levator palpebrae superioris
Optic nerve
(b)
Frontal
Trochlear nerve (IV)
Superior oblique muscle
Abducens nerve (VI)
Lateral rectus muscle
Levator palpebrae superioris muscle
Superior rectus muscle
Medial rectus muscle
Inferior rectus muscle
Inferior oblique muscle
Oculomotor nerve (III)
(c)

Figure 16.22 **Extrinsic Muscles of the Eye.** (*a*) Lateral view of the right eye. (*b*) Superior view of the right eye. (*c*) Innervation of the extrinsic muscles; arrows indicate the eye movement produced by each muscle.

The eye is surrounded on the sides and back by **orbital fat.** It cushions the eye, gives it freedom of motion, and protects blood vessels and nerves as they pass through the rear of the orbit.

Anatomy of the Eye

The eyeball itself is a sphere about 24 mm in diameter (fig. 16.23) with three principal components: (1) three layers (tunics) that form the wall of the eyeball; (2) optical components that admit and focus light; and (3) neural components, the retina and optic nerve. The retina is not only a neural component but also part of the inner tunic. The cornea is part of the outer tunic as well as one of the optical components.

The Tunics

The three tunics of the eyeball are as follows:

- The outer **fibrous layer** (tunica fibrosa). This is divided into two regions: the sclera and cornea. The **sclera**[43] (white of the eye) covers most of the eye surface and consists of dense collagenous connective tissue perforated by blood vessels and nerves. The **cornea** is the transparent region of modified sclera that admits light into the eye.
- The middle **vascular layer** (tunica vasculosa), also called the **uvea**[44] (YOU-vee-uh) because it resembles a

---

[43] *scler* = hard, tough

[44] *uvea* = grape

peeled grape in fresh dissection. It consists of three regions—the choroid, ciliary body, and iris. The **choroid** (CO-royd) is a highly vascular, deeply pigmented layer of tissue behind the retina. It gets its name from a histological resemblance to the chorion of the pregnant uterus. The **ciliary body,** a thickened extension of the choroid, forms a muscular ring around the lens. It supports the iris and lens and secretes a fluid called the aqueous humor. The **iris** is an adjustable diaphragm that controls the diameter of the **pupil,** its central opening. The iris has two pigmented layers. One is a posterior *pigment epithelium* that blocks stray light from reaching the retina. The other is the *anterior border layer,* which contains pigmented cells called **chromatophores.**[45] High concentrations of melanin in the chromatophores give the iris a black, brown, or hazel color. If the melanin is scanty, light reflects from the posterior pigment epithelium and gives the iris a blue, green, or gray color.

- The **inner layer** (tunica interna), which consists of the retina and optic nerve.

The Optical Components

The optical components of the eye are transparent elements that admit light rays, bend (refract) them, and focus images on the retina. They include the *cornea, aqueous humor, lens,* and *vitreous body.* The cornea has been described already.

- The **aqueous humor** is a serous fluid secreted by the ciliary body into the **posterior chamber,** a space between the iris and lens (fig. 16.24). It flows through the pupil into the **anterior chamber** between the cornea and iris. From here, it is reabsorbed by a ringlike blood vessel called the **scleral venous sinus** (*canal of Schlemm*[46]). Normally the rate of reabsorption balances the rate of secretion (see insight 16.4 for an important exception).
- The **lens** is suspended behind the pupil by a ring of fibers called the **suspensory ligament** (figs. 16.23 and 16.25), which attaches it to the ciliary body. Tension on the ligament somewhat flattens the lens so it is about 9.0 mm in diameter and 3.6 mm thick at the middle. When the lens is removed from the eye and

---

[45] *chromato* = color + *phore* = bearer

[46] Friedrich S. Schlemm (1795–1858), German anatomist

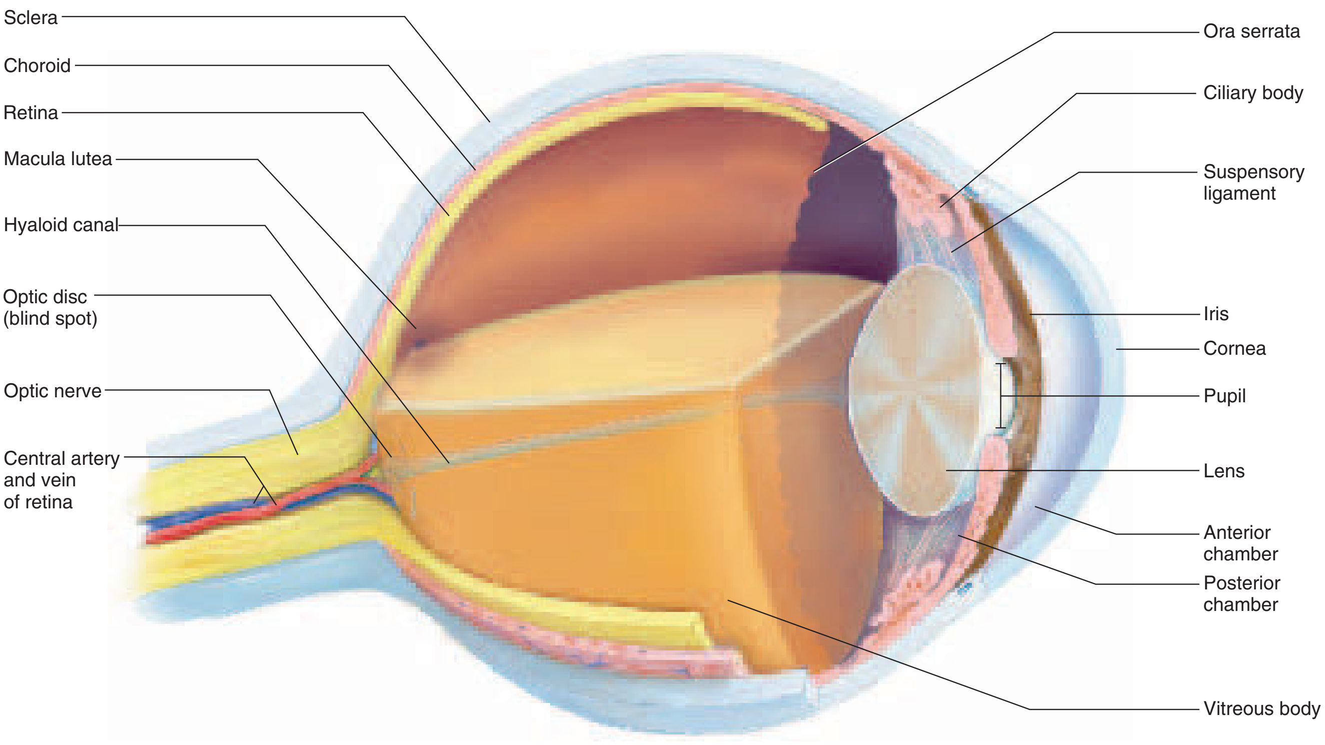


Figure 16.23 **The Eye, Sagittal Section.** The vitreous body has been omitted from the upper half to reveal structures behind it.

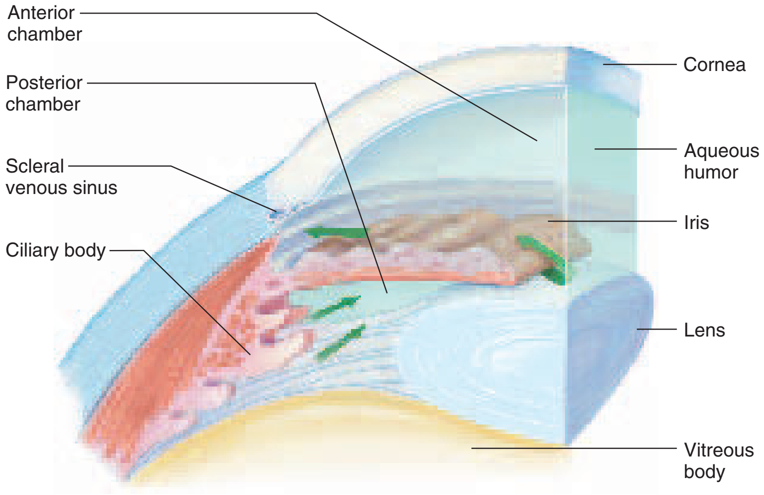


Figure 16.24 **Production and Reabsorption of Aqueous Humor.**

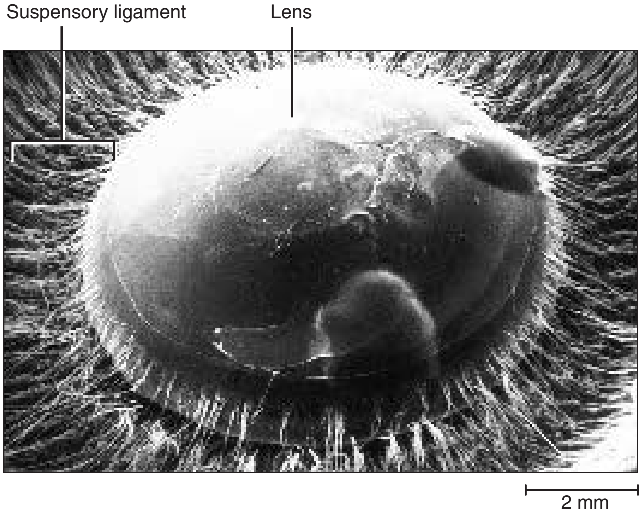


Figure 16.25 **The Lens of the Eye, Posterior View (SEM).**

not under tension, it relaxes into a more spheroid shape and resembles a plastic bead.

- The **vitreous**[47] **body** *(vitreous humor)* is a transparent jelly that fills the large space behind the lens. An oblique channel through this body, called the *hyaloid canal,* is the remnant of a *hyaloid artery* present in the embryo (see fig. 16.23).

---

[47] *vitre* = glassy

Insight 16.4 Clinical Application

Cataracts and Glaucoma

The two most common causes of blindness are cataracts and glaucoma. A *cataract* is a clouding of the lens. It occurs as the lens thickens with age, and it is a common complication of diabetes mellitus. It causes the vision to appear milky or as if one were looking from behind a waterfall.[48] Cataracts may also stem from heavy smoking and exposure to the UV radiation of the sun. They can be treated by replacing the natural lens with a plastic one. The implanted lens improves vision almost immediately, but glasses still may be needed for near vision.

Glaucoma is a state of elevated pressure within the eye that occurs when the scleral venous sinus is obstructed and aqueous humor is not reabsorbed as fast as it is secreted. Pressure in the anterior and posterior chambers drives the lens back and puts pressure on the vitreous body. The vitreous body presses the retina against the choroid and compresses the blood vessels that nourish the retina. Without a good blood supply, retinal cells die and the optic nerve may atrophy, producing blindness. Symptoms often go unnoticed until the damage is irreversible. In late stages, they include dimness of vision,[49] reduced visual field, and colored halos around artificial lights. Glaucoma can be halted with drugs or surgery, but lost vision cannot be restored. This disease can be detected at an early stage in the course of regular eye examinations. The field of vision is checked, the optic nerve is examined, and the intraocular pressure is measured with an instrument called a *tonometer.*

---

[48] *cataract* = waterfall
[49] *glauco* = grayness

The Neural Components

The neural components are the retina and optic nerve. The **retina** forms from a cup-shaped outgrowth of the diencephalon (see chapter 14); it is actually a part of the brain—the only part that can be viewed without dissection. It is a thin transparent membrane attached at only two points—the **optic disc,** where the optic nerve leaves the rear *(fundus)* of the eye, and its scalloped anterior margin, the **ora serrata.** The retina is pressed smoothly against the rear of the eyeball by the pressure of the vitreous body. It can become detached (buckle away from the wall of the eyeball) by blows to the head or because of insufficient pressure from the vitreous body. A *detached retina* may cause blurry areas in the field of vision. It leads to blindness if the retina remains separated for too long from the choroid, on which it depends for oxygen, nutrition, and waste removal.

The retina is examined with an illuminating and magnifying instrument called an *ophthalmoscope.* Directly posterior to the center of the lens, on the visual axis of the eye, is a patch of cells called the **macula lutea**[50] about 3 mm in diameter (fig. 16.26). In the center of the macula is a tiny pit, the **fovea**[51] **centralis,** which produces the most finely detailed images for reasons that will be apparent later. About 3 mm medial to the macula lutea is the optic disc. Nerve fibers from all regions of the retina converge on this point and exit the eye to form the optic nerve. Blood vessels enter and leave the eye by way of the optic disc. Eye examinations serve for more than evaluating the visual system; they allow for a direct, noninvasive examination of blood vessels for signs of hypertension, diabetes mellitus, atherosclerosis, and other vascular diseases.

The optic disc contains no receptor cells, so it produces a **blind spot** in the visual field of each eye. You can detect your blind spot and observe an interesting visual phenomenon with the help of figure 16.27. Close or cover your right eye and hold the page about 30 cm (1 ft) from your face. Fixate on the X with your left eye. Without taking your gaze off the X, move the page slightly forward and back, or right and left, until the red dot disappears. This occurs because the image of the dot is falling on the blind spot of your left eye.

You should notice something else happen at the same time as the dot disappears—a phenomenon called **visual filling.** The green bar seems to fill in the space where the dot used to be. This occurs because the brain uses the image surrounding the blind spot to fill in the area with similar, but imaginary, information. The brain acts as if it is better to assume that the unseen area probably looks like its surroundings than to allow a dark blotch to disturb your vision.

Before we begin to study visual physiology, it would be advisable to review and be sure you thoroughly understand the anatomy of the eye (table 16.3).

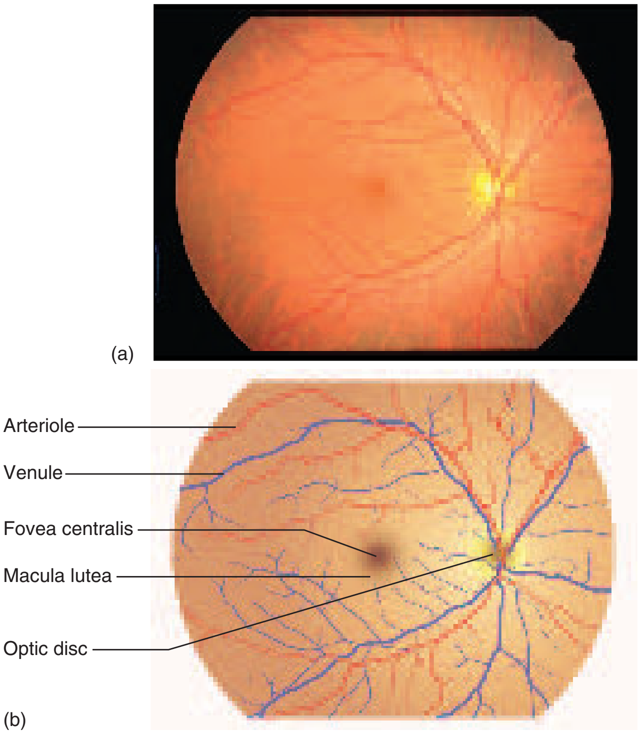


Figure 16.26 **The Fundus (rear) of the Eye.** (*a*) As seen with an ophthalmoscope; (*b*) anatomical features of the fundus. Note the blood vessels diverging from the optic disc, where they enter the eye with the optic nerve. An eye examination also serves as a partial check on cardiovascular health.

Formation of an Image

The visual process begins when light rays enter the eye, focus on the retina, and produce a tiny inverted image. When fully dilated, the pupil admits five times as much light as it does when fully constricted. Its diameter is controlled by two sets of contractile elements in the iris: (1) The **pupillary constrictor** consists of smooth muscle cells that encircle the pupil. When stimulated by the parasympathetic nervous system, it narrows the pupil and admits less light to the eye. (2) The **pupillary dilator** consists of a spokelike arrangement of modified contractile epithelial cells called *myoepithelial cells.* When stimulated by the sympathetic nervous system, these cells contract, widen the pupil, and admit more light to the eye (see fig. 15.9, p. 577). Pupillary constriction and dilation occur

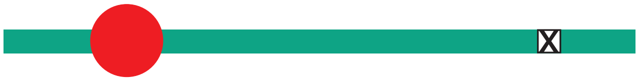


Figure 16.27 **Demonstration of the Blind Spot and Visual Filling.** See text for explanation of how to conduct this demonstration.

---

[50] *macula* = spot + *lutea* = yellow
[51] *fovea* = pit, depression

Table 16.3 Anatomical Review of the Eye and Accessory Structures

Accessory Organs (figs. 16.20 and 16.21)

- *Eyebrows*
- *Eyelids (palpebrae)*
  - Orbicularis oculi
  - Tarsal plate
  - Tarsal glands
  - Medial and lateral commissures
  - Eyelashes
  - Palpebral fissure

- *Conjunctiva*
- *Lacrimal apparatus (fig. 16.21b)*
  - Lacrimal gland
  - Lacrimal puncta
  - Lacrimal canal
  - Lacrimal sac
  - Nasolacrimal duct

- *Extrinsic muscles* (fig. 16.22)
  - Superior oblique
    - Trochlea
  - Inferior oblique
  - Superior rectus
  - Inferior rectus
  - Lateral rectus
  - Medial rectus
- *Orbital fat*

Tunics of the Eye (fig. 16.23)

- *Fibrous layer*
  - Sclera
  - Cornea

- *Vascular layer (uvea)*
  - Choroid
  - Ciliary body
  - Iris

- *Inner layer*
  - Retina
  - Optic nerve

Optical Components (figs. 16.23–16.25)

- Cornea
- Pupil
- Anterior chamber
- Posterior chamber

- Aqueous humor
- Scleral venous sinus
- Lens

- Suspensory ligament
- Vitreous body
- Hyaloid canal

Neural Components (fig. 16.26)

- Retina
- Optic nerve

- Optic disc
- Ora serrata

- Macula lutea
- Fovea centralis

in two situations: when light intensity changes and when we shift our gaze between distant and nearby objects. Pupillary constriction in response to light is called the **photopupillary reflex.** It is also described as a *consensual light reflex* because both pupils constrict even if only one eye is illuminated.

The photopupillary reflex is mediated by a parasympathetic reflex arc. When light intensity rises, signals are transmitted from the eye to the *pretectal region* just rostral to the tectum of the midbrain. Preganglionic parasympathetic fibers originate in the midbrain and travel by way of the oculomotor nerve to the ciliary ganglion in the orbit. From here, postganglionic parasympathetic fibers continue into the eye, where they stimulate the pupillary constrictor. Sympathetic innervation to the pupil originates, like all other sympathetic efferents, in the spinal cord. Preganglionic fibers lead from the thoracic cord to the superior cervical ganglion. From there, postganglionic fibers follow the carotid arteries into the head and lead ultimately to the pupillary dilator.

Refraction

Image formation depends on **refraction,** the bending of light rays. Light travels at a speed of 300,000 km/sec (186,000 mi/sec) in a vacuum, but it slows down slightly in air, water, glass, and other media. The *refractive index* of a medium *(n)* is a measure of how much it retards light rays relative to air. The refractive index of air is arbitrarily set at $n = 1.00$. If light traveling through air strikes a medium of higher refractive index at a 90° *angle of incidence,* it slows down but does not change course—the light rays are not bent. If it strikes at any other angle, however, the light is refracted (fig. 16.28*a*). The greater the difference in refractive index between the two media, and the greater the angle of incidence, the stronger the refraction is.

As light enters the eye, it passes from a medium with $n = 1.00$ (air) to one with $n = 1.38$ (the cornea). Light rays striking the very center of the cornea pass straight through, but because of the curvature of the cornea, rays striking off-center are bent toward the center (fig. 16.28*b*). The

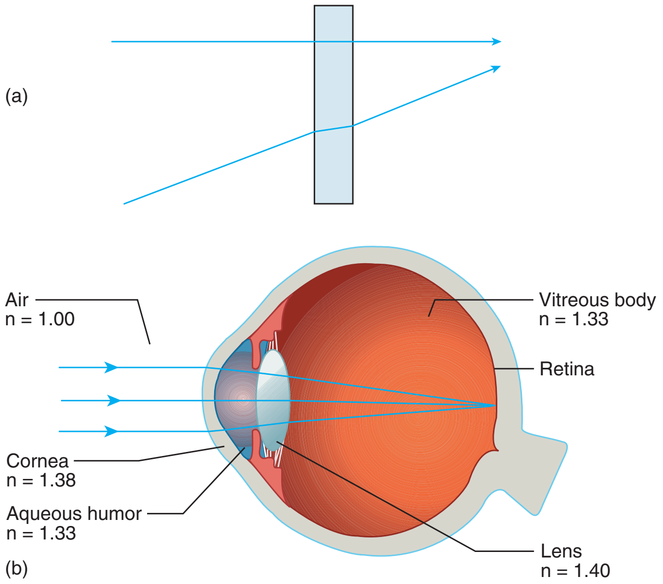

(a)
Air
n = 1.00
Vitreous body
n = 1.33
Retina
Cornea
n = 1.38
Aqueous humor
n = 1.33
(b)
Lens
n = 1.40

Figure 16.28 Principles of Refraction. (*a*) A refractive medium does not bend light rays that strike it at a 90° angle but does bend rays that enter or leave it at any other angle. (*b*) Refractive indices of the media from air to retina. The greater the difference between the refractive indices of two media, the more strongly light rays are refracted when passing from one to the other. In vision, most refraction (focusing) occurs as light passes from air to cornea.

aqueous humor has a refractive index of 1.33 and does not greatly alter the path of the light. The lens has a refractive index of 1.40. As light passes from air to cornea, the refractive index changes by 0.38; but as it passes from aqueous humor to lens, the refractive index changes by only 0.07. Thus, the cornea refracts light more than the lens does. The lens merely fine-tunes the image, especially as you shift your focus between near and distant objects.

The Near Response

Emmetropia[52] (EM-eh-TRO-pee-uh) is a state in which the eye is relaxed and focused on an object more than 6 m (20 ft) away, the light rays coming from that object are essentially parallel, and the rays are focused on the retina without effort. (An *emmetropic eye* does not need a corrective lens to focus the image.) If the gaze shifts to something closer, light rays from the source are too divergent to be focused without effort. In other words, the eye is automatically focused on things in the distance unless you make an effort to focus elsewhere. For a wild animal or our prehistoric ancestors, this arrangement would be adaptive because it allows for alertness to predators at a distance.

The **near response** (fig. 16.29), or adjustment to close-range vision, involves three processes to focus an image on the retina:

1. **Convergence of the eyes.** Move your finger gradually closer to a baby's nose and the baby will

---

[52] *em* = in + *metr* = measure + *opia* = vision

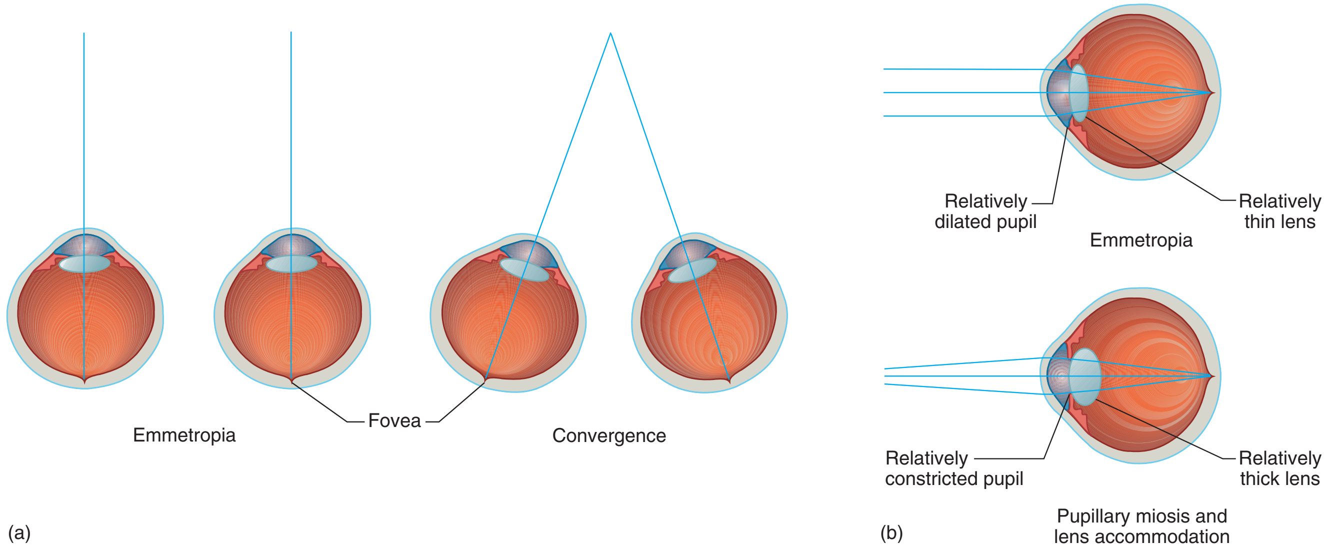

Emmetropia
Fovea
Convergence
(a)
Relatively dilated pupil
Relatively thin lens
Emmetropia
Relatively constricted pupil
Relatively thick lens
(b)
Pupillary miosis and lens accommodation

Figure 16.29 Emmetropia and the Near Response. (*a*) Superior view of both eyes fixated on an object more than 6 m away (*left*), and both eyes fixated on an object closer than 6 m (*right*). (*b*) Lateral view of the eye fixated on a distant object (*top*) and nearby object (*bottom*).

go cross-eyed. This **convergence** of the eyes orients the visual axis of each eye toward the object in order to focus its image on each fovea. If the eyes cannot converge accurately—for example, when the extrinsic muscles are weaker in one eye than in the other—double vision or *diplopia*[53] results. The images fall on different parts of the two retinas and the brain sees two images. You can simulate this effect by pressing gently on one eyelid as you look at this page; the image of the print will fall on noncorresponding regions of the two eyes and cause you to see double.

2. **Constriction of the pupil.** Lenses cannot refract light rays at their edges as well as they can closer to the center. The image produced by any lens is therefore somewhat blurry around the edges; this *spherical aberration* is quite evident in an inexpensive microscope. It can be minimized by screening out these peripheral light rays, and for this purpose, the pupil constricts as you focus on nearby objects. Like the diaphragm of a camera, the pupil thus has a dual purpose—to adjust the eye to variations in brightness and to reduce spherical aberration.
3. **Accommodation of the lens. Accommodation** is a change in the curvature of the lens that enables you to focus on a nearby object. When you look at something nearby, the ciliary muscle surrounding the lens contracts. This narrows the diameter of the ciliary body, relaxes the fibers of the suspensory ligament, and allows the lens to relax into a more convex shape (fig. 16.30). In emmetropia, the lens is about 3.6 mm thick at the center; in accommodation, it thickens to about 4.5 mm. A more convex lens refracts light more strongly and focuses the divergent light rays onto the retina. The closest an object can be and still come into focus is called the **near point of vision.** It depends on the flexibility of the lens. The lens stiffens with age, so the near point averages about 9 cm at the age of 10 and 83 cm by the age of 60.

Some common defects in image formation are listed in table 16.4.

Think About It

Which extrinsic muscles of the eyes are the prime movers in convergence?

Sensory Transduction in the Retina

The conversion of light energy into action potentials occurs in the retina. We begin our exploration of this process with the cellular layout of the retina (fig. 16.32). From there we go to the pigments that absorb light and then to what happens when light is absorbed.

The most posterior layer of the retina is the **pigment epithelium,** a layer of darkly pigmented cuboidal cells whose basal processes interdigitate with receptor cells of the retina. The pigment here is not involved in nerve signaling;

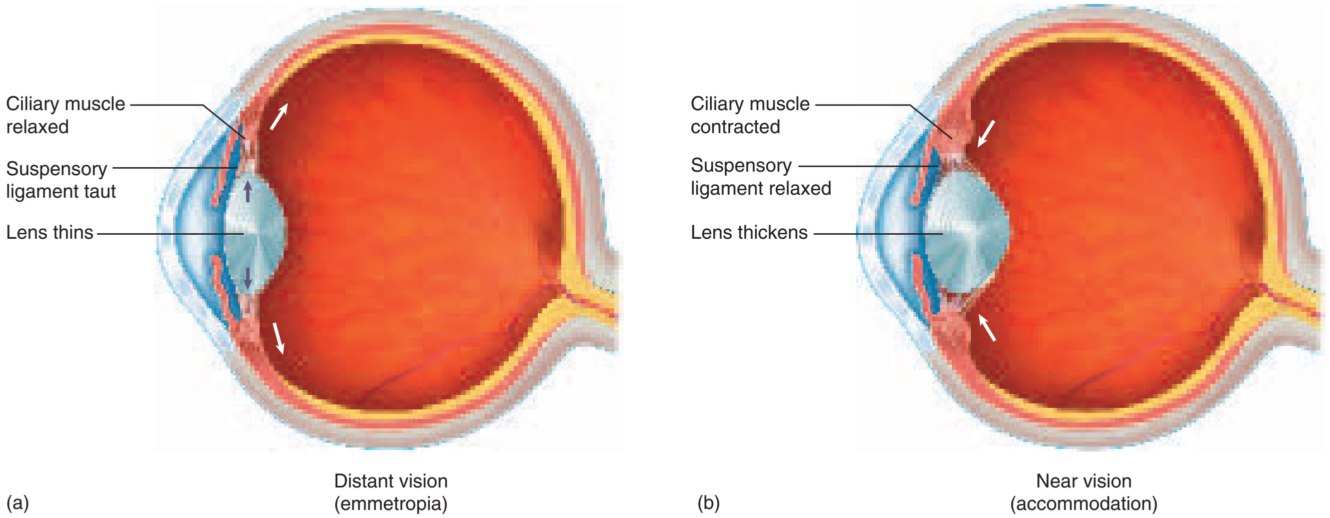

Ciliary muscle relaxed
Suspensory ligament taut
Lens thins
(a)
Distant vision (emmetropia)
Ciliary muscle contracted
Suspensory ligament relaxed
Lens thickens
(b)
Near vision (accommodation)

Figure 16.30 Accommodation of the Lens. (*a*) In the relaxed (emmetropic) eye, the ciliary muscle is relaxed and dilated. It puts tension on the suspensory ligament and flattens the lens. (*b*) In accommodation, the ciliary muscle contracts and narrows in diameter. This reduces tension on the suspensory ligament and allows the lens to relax into a more convex shape.

---

[53] *dipl* = double + *opia* = vision

Table 16.4 Common Defects of Image Formation

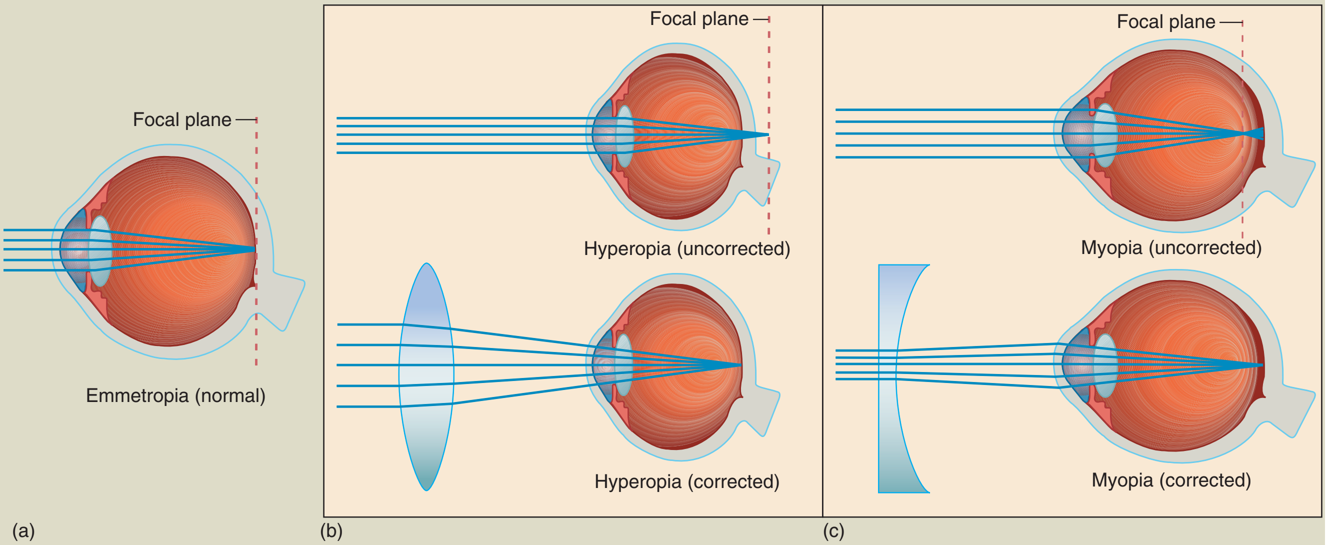


Figure 16.31 **Two Common Visual Defects and the Effects of Corrective Lenses.** (*a*) The normal emmetropic eye, with light rays converging on the retina. (*b*) Hyperopia (far-sightedness) and the corrective effect of a convex lens. (*c*) Myopia (near-sightedness) and the corrective effect of a concave lens.

Presbyopia	Reduced ability to accommodate for near vision with age because of declining flexibility of the lens. Results in difficulty in reading and doing close handwork. Corrected with bifocal lenses.
Hyperopia	Farsightedness—a condition in which the eyeball is too short. The retina lies in front of the focal point of the lens, and the light rays have not yet come into focus when they reach the retina (see top of fig. 16.31*b*). Causes the greatest difficulty when viewing nearby objects. Corrected with convex lenses, which cause light rays to converge slightly before entering the eye.
Myopia	Nearsightedness—a condition in which the eyeball is too long. Light rays come into focus before they reach the retina and begin to diverge again by the time they fall on it (see top of fig. 16.31*c*). Corrected with concave lenses, which cause light rays to diverge slightly before entering the eye.
Astigmatism	Inability to simultaneously focus light rays that enter the eye on different planes. Focusing on vertical lines, such as the edge of a door, may cause horizontal lines, such as a tabletop, to go out of focus. Caused by a deviation in the shape of the cornea so that it is shaped like the back of a spoon rather than like part of a sphere. Corrected with cylindrical lenses, which refract light more in one plane than another.

rather, its purpose is to absorb light that is not absorbed first by the receptor cells and to prevent it from degrading the visual image by reflecting back into the eye. It acts like the blackened inside of a camera to reduce stray light.

The neural components of the retina consist of three principal cell layers. Progressing from the rear of the eye forward, these are composed of *photoreceptor cells, bipolar cells,* and *ganglion cells:*

1. **Photoreceptor cells.** The photoreceptors are all cells that absorb light and generate a chemical or electrical signal. There are three kinds of photoreceptors in the retina: rods, cones, and some of the ganglion cells. Only the rods and cones produce visual images; the ganglion cells are discussed shortly. **Rods** and **cones** are derived from the same stem cells that produce ependymal cells of the brain. Each rod or cone has an **outer segment** that points toward the wall of the eye and an **inner segment** facing the interior (fig. 16.33). The two segments are separated by a narrow constriction containing nine pairs of microtubules; the outer segment is actually a highly modified cilium specialized to absorb light. The inner segment contains mitochondria and other organelles. At its base, it gives rise to a cell body, which contains the nucleus, and to processes that synapse with retinal neurons in the next layer.

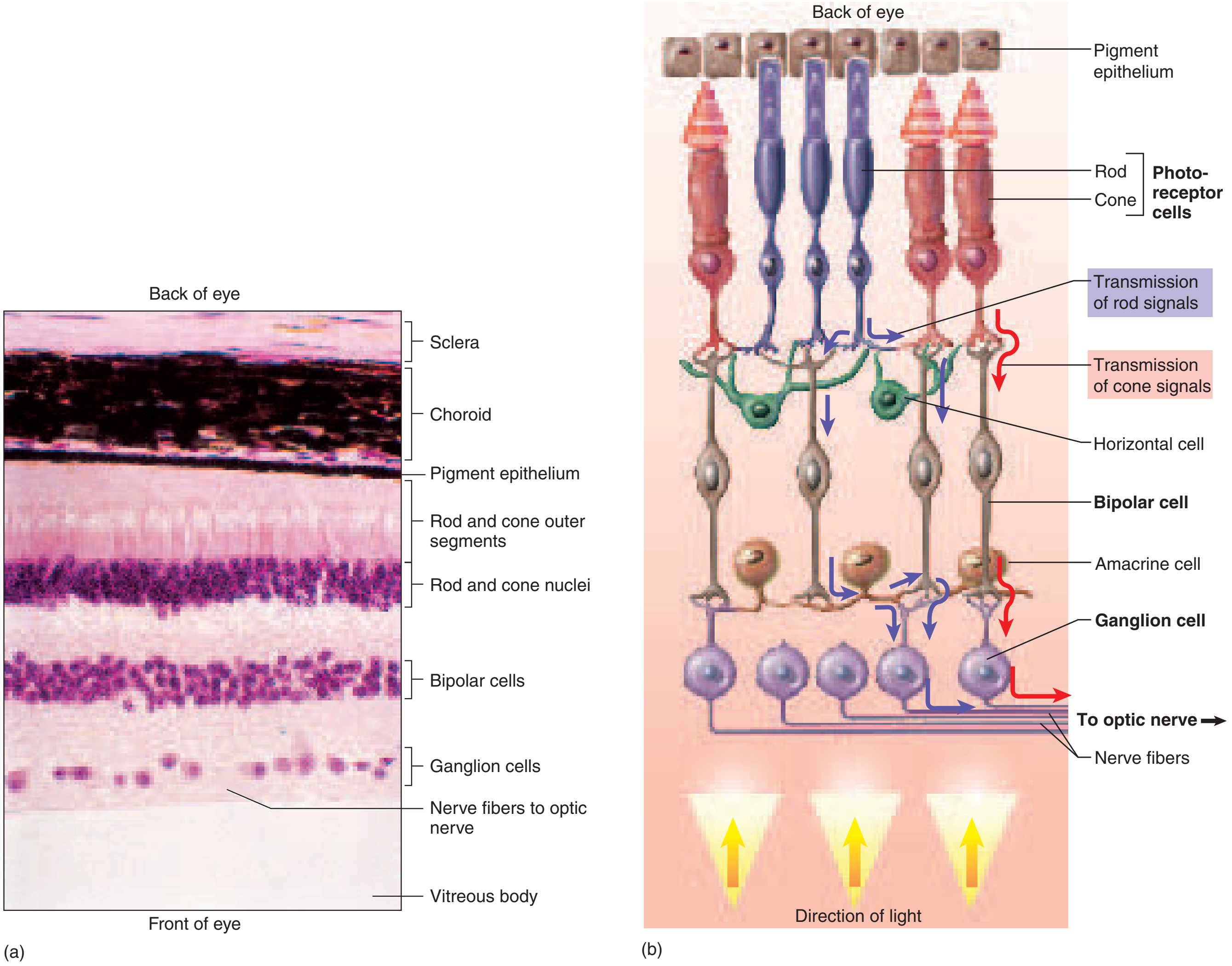

Back of eye
Sclera
Choroid
Pigment epithelium
Rod and cone outer segments
Rod and cone nuclei
Bipolar cells
Ganglion cells
Nerve fibers to optic nerve
Vitreous body
Front of eye
(a)
Back of eye
Pigment epithelium
Rod
Cone
Photo-receptor cells
Transmission of rod signals
Transmission of cone signals
Horizontal cell
Bipolar cell
Amacrine cell
Ganglion cell
To optic nerve
Nerve fibers
Direction of light
(b)

Figure 16.32 **Histology of the Retina.** (*a*) Photomicrograph. (*b*) Schematic of the layers and synaptic relationships of the retinal cells.

In a rod, the outer segment is cylindrical and resembles a stack of coins in a paper roll—there is a plasma membrane around the outside and a neatly arrayed stack of about 1,000 membranous discs inside. Each disc is densely studded with globular proteins—the visual pigment *rhodopsin,* to be discussed later. The membranes hold these pigment molecules in a position that results in the most efficient light absorption. Rod cells are responsible for **night (scotopic[54]) vision;** they cannot distinguish colors from each other.

A cone cell is similar except that the outer segment tapers to a point and the discs are not detached from the plasma membrane but are parallel infoldings of it. Cones function in bright light; they are responsible for **day (photopic[55]) vision** as well as color vision.

2. **Bipolar cells.** Rods and cones synapse with the dendrites of **bipolar cells,** the first-order neurons of the visual pathway. They in turn synapse with the ganglion cells described next (see fig. 16.32*b*). There are approximately 130 million rods and 6.5 million cones in one retina, but only 1.2 million nerve fibers in the optic nerve. With a ratio of 114 receptor cells to 1 optic nerve fiber, it is obvious that there must be substantial *neuronal convergence*

---

[54] *scot* = dark + *op* = vision

[55] *phot* = light + *op* = vision

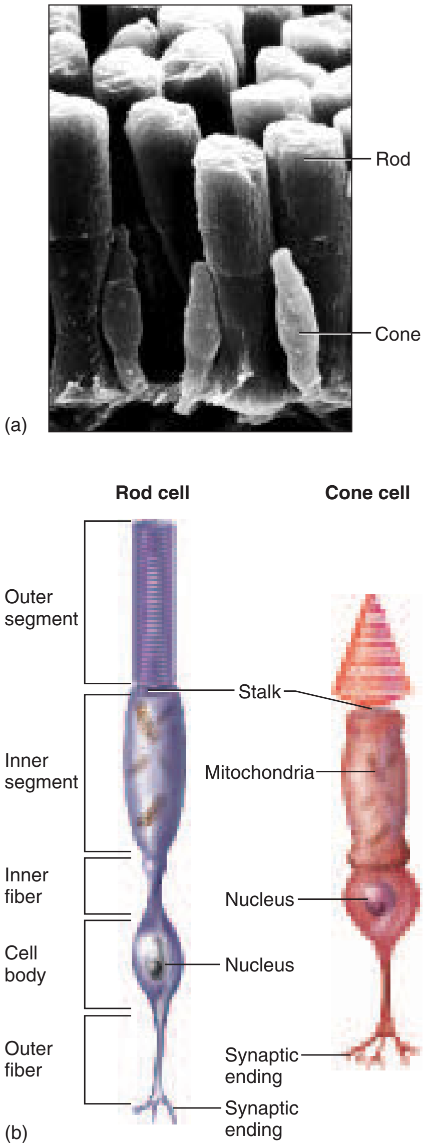


Figure 16.33 Rod and Cone Cells. (*a*) Rods and cones of a salamander retina (SEM). The tall cylindrical cells are rods and the short tapered cells (*foreground*) are cones. (*b*) Structure of rods and cones.

and information processing in the retina itself before signals are transmitted to the brain proper. Convergence begins with the bipolar cells.

3. **Ganglion cells. Ganglion cells** are the largest neurons of the retina, arranged in a single layer close to the vitreous body. They are the second-order neurons of the visual pathway. Most ganglion cells receive input from multiple bipolar cells. The ganglion cell axons form the optic nerve. Some of the ganglion cells absorb light directly and transmit signals to brainstem nuclei that control pupillary diameter and the body's circadian rhythms. They do not contribute to visual images but detect only light intensity.

There are other retinal cells, but they do not form layers of their own. **Horizontal cells** and **amacrine**[56] **cells** form horizontal connections among rod, cone, and bipolar cells. They play diverse roles in enhancing the perception of contrast, the edges of objects, and changes in light intensity. In addition, much of the mass of the retina is composed of astrocytes and other types of glial cells.

Visual Pigments

The visual pigment of the rods is called **rhodopsin** (ro-DOP-sin), or *visual purple.* Each molecule consists of two major parts (moieties)—a protein called **opsin** and a vitamin A derivative called **retinal** (rhymes with "pal"), also known as **retinene** (fig. 16.34). Opsin is embedded in the disc membranes of the rod's outer segment. All rod cells contain a single kind of rhodopsin with an absorption peak at a wavelength of 500 nm. The rods are less sensitive to light of other wavelengths.

In cones, the pigment is called **photopsin (iodopsin).** Its retinal moiety is the same as that of rhodopsin, but the opsin moieties have different amino acid sequences that determine which wavelengths of light the pigment absorbs. There are three kinds of cones, which are identical in appearance but optimally absorb different wavelengths of light. These differences, as you will see shortly, enable us to perceive different colors.

The pigment employed by the photosensitive ganglion cells is thought to be *melanopsin,* but this is still awaiting proof.

The Photochemical Reaction

The events of sensory transduction are probably the same in rods and cones, but rods and rhodopsin have been better studied than cones and photopsin. In the dark, retinal has a bent shape called ***cis*-retinal.** When it absorbs light, it changes to a straight form called ***trans*-retinal,** and the retinal dissociates from the opsin (fig. 16.35). Purified rhodopsin changes from violet to colorless when this happens, so the process is called the **bleaching** of rhodopsin.

For a rod to continue functioning, it must regenerate rhodopsin at a rate that keeps pace with bleaching. When *trans*-retinal dissociates from opsin, it is transported to the pigment epithelium, converted back to *cis*-retinal, returned to the rod outer segment, and reunited with opsin. It takes about 5 minutes to regenerate 50% of the bleached rhodopsin. Cone cells are less dependent on the pigment epithelium and regenerate half of their pigment in about 90 seconds.

---

[56] *a* = without + *macr* = long + *in* = fiber

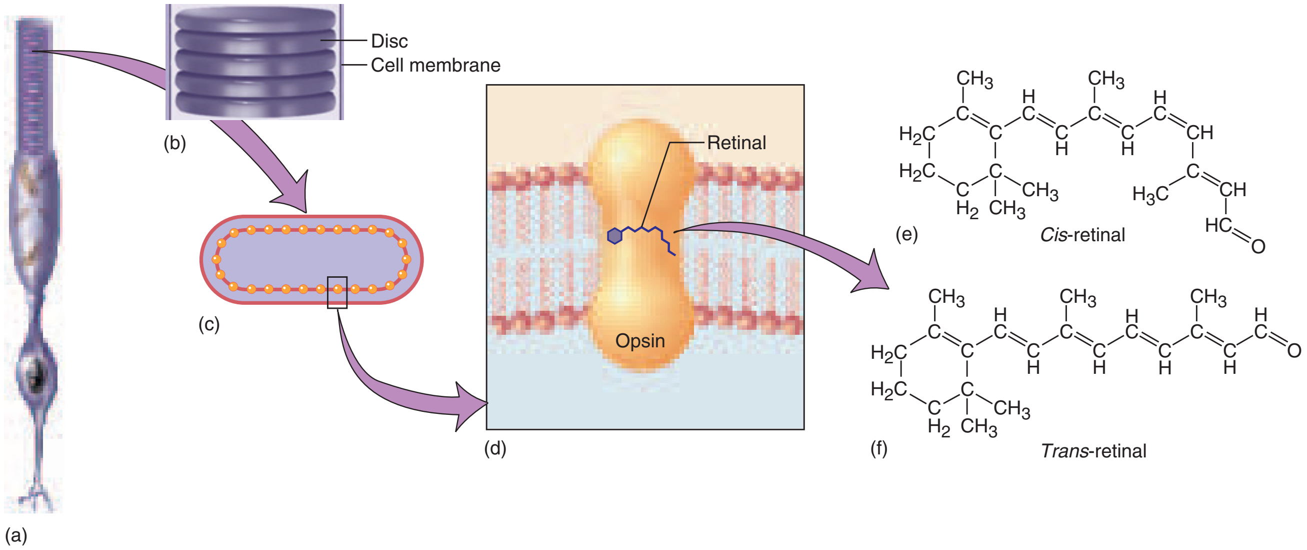

Disc
Cell membrane
(b)
(c)
Retinal
Opsin
(d)
(a)
(e)
Cis-retinal
(f)
Trans-retinal

Figure 16.34 **Structure and Location of the Visual Pigments.** (*a*) A rod cell. (*b*) Detail of the rod outer segment. (*c*) One disc of the outer segment showing the membrane studded with pigment molecules. (*d*) A pigment molecule, embedded in the unit membrane of the disc, showing the protein moiety, opsin, and the vitamin A derivative, retinal. (*e*) *Cis*-retinal, the isomer present in the absence of light. (*f*) *Trans*-retinal, the isomer produced when the pigment absorbs a photon of light.

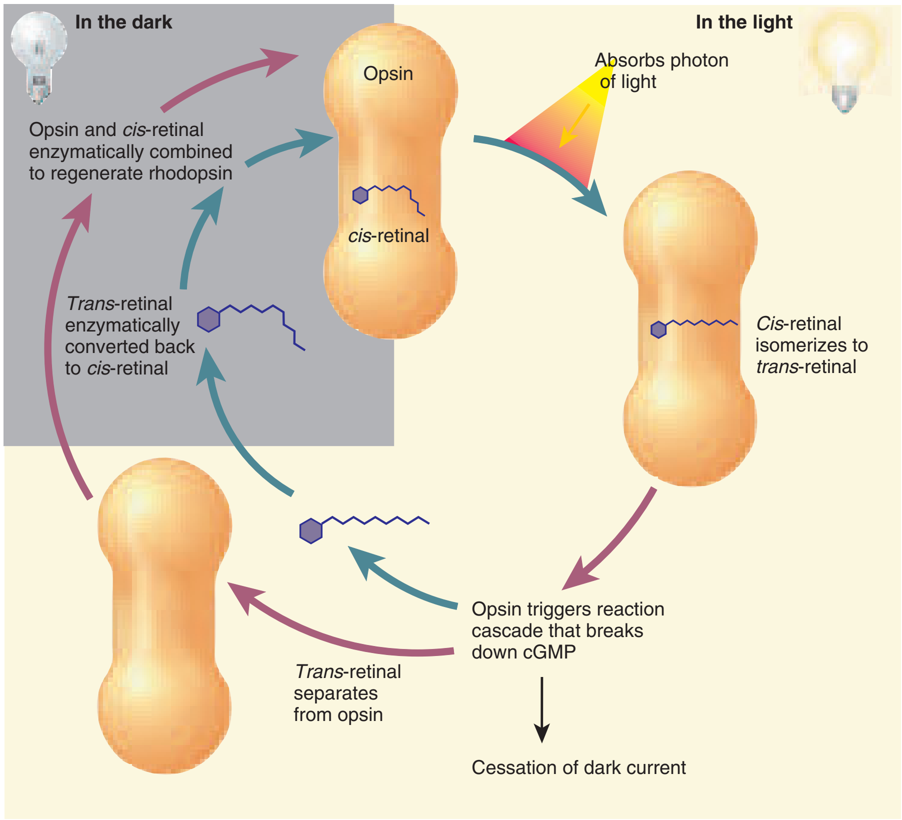

In the dark
In the light
Opsin
cis-retinal
Absorbs photon of light
Opsin and *cis*-retinal enzymatically combined to regenerate rhodopsin
Cis-retinal isomerizes to *trans*-retinal
Trans-retinal enzymatically converted back to *cis*-retinal
Opsin triggers reaction cascade that breaks down cGMP
Trans-retinal separates from opsin
Cessation of dark current

Figure 16.35 **The Bleaching and Regeneration of Rhodopsin.** The *yellow* background indicates the bleaching events that occur in the light; the *gray* background indicates the regenerative events that are independent of light. The latter events occur in light and dark but are able to outpace bleaching only in the dark.

Generating the Optic Nerve Signal

In the dark, rods do not sit quietly doing nothing. They exhibit a **dark current,** a steady flow of sodium ions into the outer segment, and as long as this is happening, they release a neurotransmitter, glutamate, from the basal end of the cell (fig. 16.36*a*). When a rod absorbs light, the dark current and glutamate secretion cease (fig. 16.36*b*). The on-and-off glutamate secretion influences the bipolar cells in ways we will examine shortly, but first we will explore why the dark current occurs and why it stops in the light.

The outer segment of the rod has ligand-regulated Na^+ gates that bind cyclic guanosine monophosphate (cGMP) on their intracellular side. cGMP opens the gate and permits the inflow of Na^+. This Na^+ current reduces the membrane potential of the rod from the −70 mV typical of neurons to about −40 mV. This depolarization stimulates glutamate secretion. Two mechanisms, however, prevent the membrane from depolarizing more than that: (1) The rod has nongated K^+ channels in the inner segment, which allow K^+ to leave as Na^+ enters. (2) The inner segment has a high density of Na^+-K^+ pumps, which constantly pump Na^+ back out of the cell and bring K^+ back in.

Why does the dark current cease when a rod absorbs light? The intact rhodopsin molecule is essentially a dormant enzyme. When it bleaches, it becomes enzymatically active and triggers a cascade of reactions that ultimately break down several hundred thousand molecules of

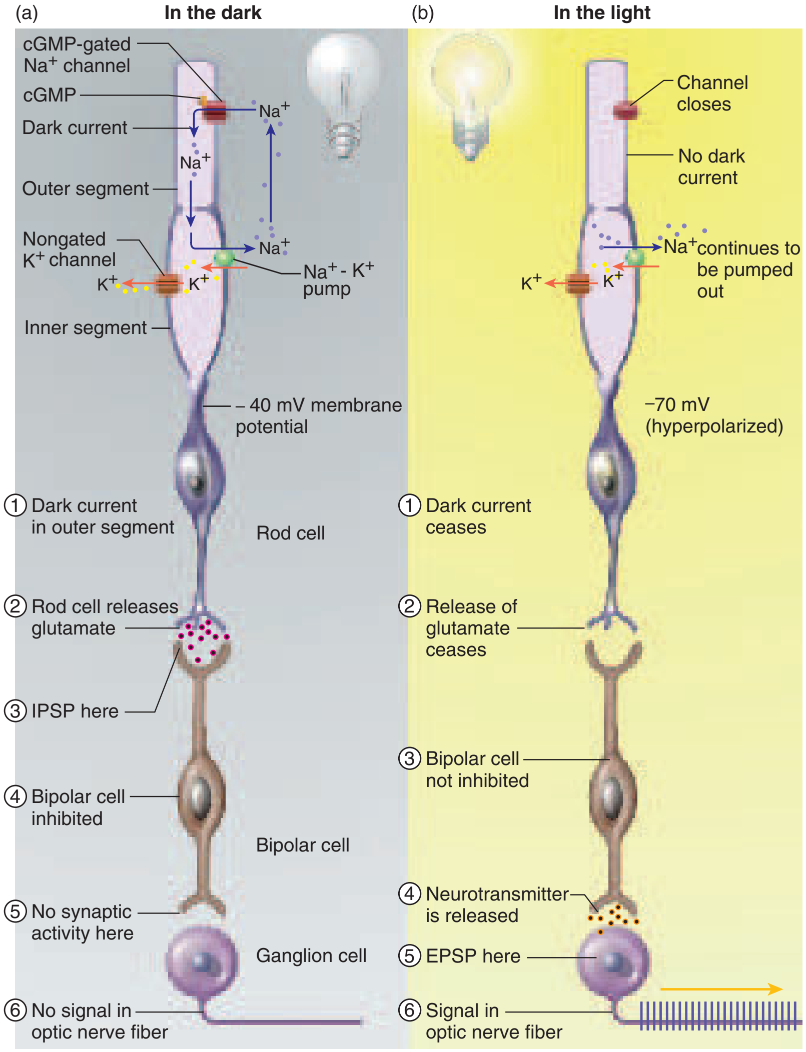

(a)
In the dark
cGMP-gated Na+ channel
cGMP
Dark current
Na+
Na+
Outer segment
Nongated K+ channel
Na+
K+
K+
Na+ - K+ pump
Inner segment
– 40 mV membrane potential
① Dark current in outer segment
Rod cell
② Rod cell releases glutamate
③ IPSP here
④ Bipolar cell inhibited
Bipolar cell
⑤ No synaptic activity here
Ganglion cell
⑥ No signal in optic nerve fiber
(b)
In the light
Channel closes
No dark current
Na+ continues to be pumped out
K+
K+
–70 mV (hyperpolarized)
① Dark current ceases
② Release of glutamate ceases
③ Bipolar cell not inhibited
④ Neurotransmitter is released
⑤ EPSP here
⑥ Signal in optic nerve fiber

Figure 16.36 **Mechanism of Generating Visual Signals.** (*a*) In the dark, cGMP opens a sodium gate and a dark current in the rod cell stimulates glutamate release. (*b*) In the light, cGMP breaks down and its absence shuts off the dark current and glutamate secretion. The bipolar cell in this case is inhibited by glutamate and stimulates the ganglion cell when glutamate secretion decreases.

Chapter 16

cGMP. As cGMP is degraded, the Na^+ gates in the outer segment close, the dark current ceases, and the Na^+-K^+ pump shifts the membrane voltage toward −70 mV. This shift causes the rod to stop secreting glutamate. The sudden drop in glutamate secretion informs the bipolar cell that the rod has absorbed light.

There are two kinds of bipolar cells. One type is inhibited (hyperpolarized) by glutamate and thus excited (depolarized) when its secretion drops. This type of cell is excited by *rising* light intensity. The other type is excited by glutamate and inhibited when its secretion drops, so it is excited by *falling* light intensity. As your eye scans a scene, it passes areas of greater and lesser brightness. Their images on the retina cause a rapidly changing pattern of bipolar cell responses as the light intensity on a patch of retina rises and falls.

When bipolar cells detect fluctuations in light intensity, they stimulate ganglion cells either directly (by synapsing with them) or indirectly (via pathways that go through amacrine cells). Each ganglion cell receives input from a circular patch of retina called its receptive field. The principal function of most ganglion cells is to code for contrast between the center and edge of its receptive field—that is, between an object and its surroundings. Ganglion cells are the only retinal cells that produce action potentials; all other retinal cells produce only graded local potentials. The ganglion cells respond with rising and falling firing frequencies which, via the optic nerve, provide the brain with a basis for interpreting the image on the retina.

Light and Dark Adaptation

Light adaptation occurs when you go from the dark into bright light. If you wake up in the night and turn on a lamp, at first you see a harsh glare; you may experience discomfort from the overstimulated retinas. Your pupils quickly constrict to reduce the intensity of stimulation, but color vision and visual acuity (the ability to see fine detail) remain below normal for 5 to 10 minutes—the time needed for pigment bleaching to adjust retinal sensitivity to this light intensity. The rods bleach quickly in bright light, and cones take over. Even in typical indoor light, rod vision is nonfunctional.

On the other hand, suppose you are sitting in a bright room at night and there is a power failure. Your eyes must undergo **dark adaptation** before you can see well enough to find your way in the dark. Your rod pigment was bleached by the lights in the room while the power was on, but now in the relative absence of light, rhodopsin regenerates faster than it bleaches. In 20 to 30 minutes, the amount of rhodopsin is sufficient for your eyes to have reached essentially maximum sensitivity. Dilation of the pupils also helps by admitting more light to the eye.

The Duplicity Theory

You may wonder why we have both rods and cones. Why can't we simply have one type of receptor cell that would produce detailed color vision, both day and night? The **duplicity theory** of vision holds that a single type of receptor cell cannot produce both high sensitivity and high resolution. It takes one type of cell and neuronal circuit to provide sensitive night vision and a different type of receptor and circuit to provide high-resolution daytime vision.

The high sensitivity of rods in dim light stems partly from the cascade of reactions leading to cGMP breakdown described earlier; a single photon leads to the breakdown of hundreds of thousands of cGMP molecules. But the sensitivity of scotopic (rod) vision is also due to the extensive neuronal convergence that occurs between the rods and ganglion cells. Up to 600 rods converge on each bipolar cell, and many bipolar cells converge on each ganglion cell. This allows for a high degree of *spatial summation* in the scotopic system (fig. 16.37*a*). Weak stimulation of many rod cells can produce an additive effect on one bipolar cell, and several bipolar cells can collaborate to excite one ganglion cell. Thus, a ganglion cell can respond in dim light that only weakly stimulates any individual rod. Scotopic vision is functional even at a light intensity less than starlight reflected from a sheet of white paper. A shortcoming of this system is that it cannot resolve finely detailed images. One ganglion cell receives input from all the rods in about 1 mm^2 of retina—its receptive field. What the brain perceives is therefore a coarse, grainy image similar to an overenlarged newspaper photograph.

Around the edges of the retina, receptor cells are especially large and widely spaced. If you fixate on the middle of this page, you will notice that you cannot read the words near the margins. Visual acuity decreases rapidly as the image falls away from the fovea centralis. Our peripheral vision is a low-resolution system that serves mainly to alert us to motion in the periphery and to stimulate us to look that way to identify what is there.

When you look directly at something, its image falls on the fovea, which is occupied by about 4,000 tiny cones and no rods. The other neurons of the fovea are displaced to one side so they won't interfere with light falling on the cones. The smallness of these cones is like the smallness of the dots in a high-quality photograph; it is partially responsible for the high-resolution images formed at the fovea. In addition, the cones here show no neuronal convergence. Each cone synapses with only one bipolar cell and each bipolar cell with only one ganglion cell. This gives each foveal cone a "private line to the brain," and each ganglion cell of the fovea reports to the brain on a receptive field of just 2 μm^2 of retinal area (fig. 16.37*b*). Cones distant from the fovea exhibit some neuronal convergence but not nearly as much as rods do. The price of this lack of convergence at the fovea, however, is that cone

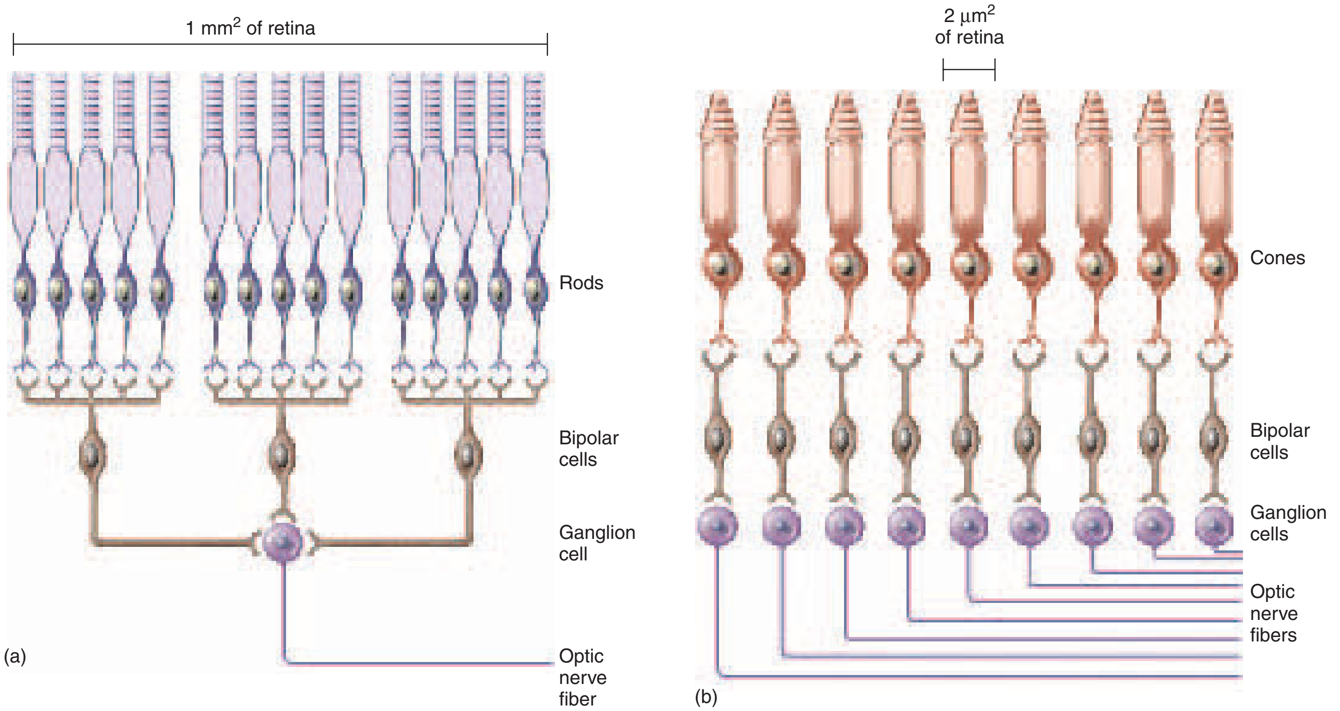


Figure 16.37 **The Duplicity Theory of Vision.** (*a*) In the scotopic (night vision) system, many rods converge on each bipolar cell and many bipolar cells converge on each ganglion cell (via amacrine cells, not shown). This allows extensive spatial summation—many rods add up their effects to stimulate a ganglion cell even in dim light. However, it means that each ganglion cell (and its optic nerve fiber) represents a relatively large area of retina and produces a grainy image. (*b*) In the photopic (day vision) system, there is little neuronal convergence. In the fovea, represented here, each cone has a "private line" to the brain, so each optic nerve fiber represents a tiny area of retina, and vision is relatively sharp. However, the lack of convergence prevents spatial summation. Photopic vision does not function well in dim light because weakly stimulated cones cannot collaborate to stimulate a ganglion cell.

cells have little spatial summation, and the cone system therefore has less sensitivity to light. The threshold of photopic (cone) vision lies between the intensity of starlight and moonlight reflected from white paper.

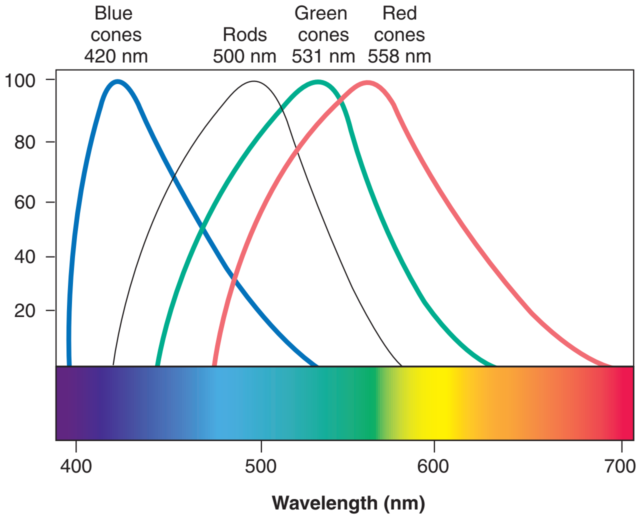
Think About It

If you look directly at a dim star in the night sky, it disappears, and if you look slightly away from it, it reappears. Why?

Color Vision

Most nocturnal vertebrates have only rod cells, but many diurnal animals are endowed with cones and color vision. Color vision is especially well developed in primates for evolutionary reasons discussed in chapter 1. It is based on three kinds of cones named for the absorption peaks of their photopsins: **blue cones,** with peak sensitivity at 420 nm; **green cones,** which peak at 531 nm; and **red cones,** which peak at 558 nm. Red cones do not peak in the red part of the spectrum (558 nm light is perceived as orange-yellow), but they are the only cones that respond at all to red light. Our perception of different colors is based on a mixture of nerve signals representing cones with different absorption peaks. In figure 16.38, note that light at 400 nm excites only the blue cones, but at 500 nm, all three types of cones are stimulated. The red cones respond at 60% of their maximum capacity, green cones at 82% of their maximum, and blue cones at 20%. The brain interprets this mixture of signals as blue-green. The table in figure 16.38 shows how some other color sensations are generated by other response ratios.

Some individuals have a hereditary lack of one photopsin or another and consequently exhibit **color blindness.** The most common form is *red-green color blindness,* which results from a lack of either red or green cones and renders a person incapable of distinguishing these and related shades from each other. For example, a person with normal *trichromatic* color vision sees figure 16.39 as the number 16, whereas a person with red-green color



Wavelength (nm)	Percent of maximum cone response (red:green:blue)	Perceived hue
400	0:0:50	Violet
450	0:30:72	Blue
500	60:82:20	Blue-green
550	97:85:0	Green
625	35:3:0	Orange
675	5:0:0	Red

Figure 16.38 **Absorption Spectra of the Retinal Cells.** In the *middle column* of the table, each number indicates how strongly the respective cone cells respond as a percentage of their maximum capability. At 550 nm, for example, red cones respond at 97% of their maximum, green cones at 85%, and blue cones not at all. The result is a perception of green light.

If you were to add another row to this table, for 600 nm, what would you enter in the middle and right-hand columns?

blindness sees no number. Red-green color blindness is a sex-linked recessive trait. It occurs in about 8% of males and 0.5% of females. (See p. 149 to review sex linkage and the reason such traits are more common in males.)

Stereoscopic Vision

Stereoscopic vision (stereopsis) is depth perception—the ability to judge how far away objects are. It depends on having two eyes with overlapping visual fields, which allows each eye to look at the same object from a different angle. Stereoscopic vision contrasts with the *panoramic vision* of mammals such as rodents and horses, where the eyes are on opposite sides of the head. Although stereoscopic vision covers a smaller visual field than panoramic vision and provides less alertness to sneaky predators, it has the advantage of depth perception. The evolutionary basis of depth perception in primates was considered in chapter 1 (p. 11).

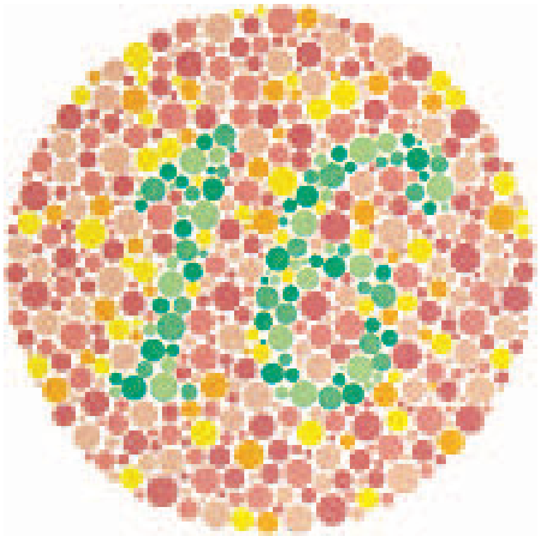


Figure 16.39 **A Test for Red-Green Color Blindness.** Persons with normal vision see the number 16. Persons with red-green color blindness see no discernible number. Reproduced from *Ishihara's Tests for Colour Blindness*, Kenahara Trading Co., Tokyo, copyright © Isshin-Kai Foundation. Accurate tests of color vision cannot be performed with such reprinted plates, but must use the original plates.

When you fixate on something within 30 m (100 ft) away, each eye views it from a slightly different angle and focuses its image on the fovea centralis. The point on which the eyes are focused is called the *fixation point.* Objects farther away than the fixation point cast an image somewhat medial to the foveas, and closer objects cast their images more laterally (fig. 16.40). The distance of an image from the two foveas provides the brain with information used to judge the position of other points relative to the fixation point.

The Visual Projection Pathway

The first-order neurons in the visual pathway are the bipolar cells of the retina. They synapse with the second-order neurons, the retinal ganglion cells, whose axons are the fibers of the optic nerve. The optic nerves leave each orbit through the optic foramen and then converge on each other to form an X, the **optic chiasm**[57] (ky-AZ-um), immediately inferior to the hypothalamus and anterior to the pituitary. Beyond this, the fibers continue as a pair of **optic tracts** (see p. 548). Within the chiasm, half the fibers of each optic nerve cross over to the opposite side of the brain (fig. 16.41). This is called **hemidecussation,**[58] since

---

[57] *chiasm* = cross, X

[58] *hemi* = half + *decuss* = to cross, form an X

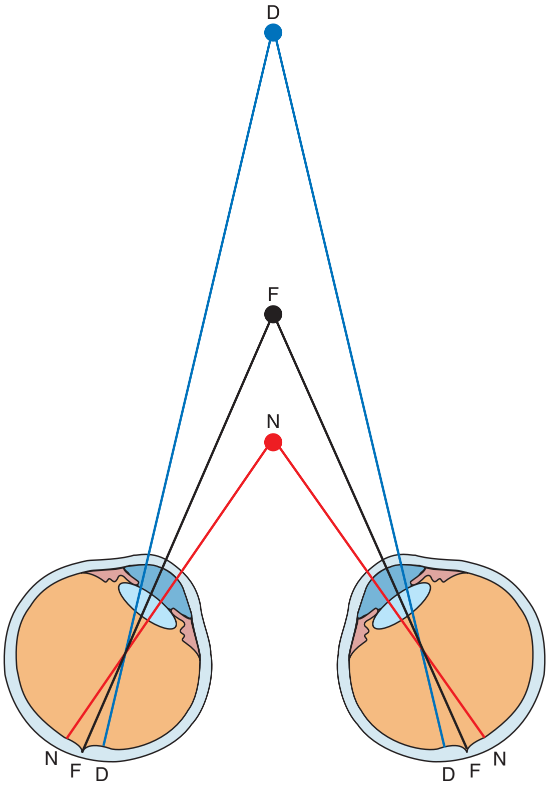


Figure 16.40 **The Retinal Basis of Stereoscopic Vision (depth perception).** When the eyes are fixated on the fixation point (*F*), more distant objects (*D*) are focused on the retinas medial to the fovea and the brain interprets them as being farther away than the fixation point. Nearby objects (*N*) are focused lateral to the fovea and interpreted as being closer.

only half of the fibers decussate. As a result, objects in the left visual field, whose images fall on the right half of each retina (the medial half of the left eye and lateral half of the right eye), are perceived by the right cerebral hemisphere. Objects in the right visual field are perceived by the left hemisphere. Since the right brain controls motor responses on the left side of the body and vice versa, each side of the brain needs to see what is on the side of the body where it exerts motor control. In animals with panoramic vision, nearly 100% of the optic nerve fibers of the right eye decussate to the left brain and vice versa.

The optic tracts pass laterally around the hypothalamus, and most of their axons end in the **lateral geniculate**[59] (jeh-NIC-you-late) **nucleus** of the thalamus. Third-order neurons arise here and form the **optic radiation** of fibers in the white matter of the cerebrum. These project to the primary visual cortex of the occipital lobe, where the conscious visual sensation occurs. A lesion in the occipital lobe can cause blindness even if the eyes are fully functional.

A few optic nerve fibers take a different route in which they project to the midbrain and terminate in the superior colliculi and pretectal nuclei. The superior colliculi control the visual reflexes of the extrinsic eye muscles, and the pretectal nuclei are involved in the photopupillary and accommodation reflexes.

Space does not allow us to consider much about the very complex processes of visual information processing in the brain. Some processing, such as contrast, brightness, motion, and stereopsis, begins in the retina. The primary visual cortex in the occipital lobe is connected by association tracts to nearby visual association areas in the posterior part of the parietal lobe and inferior part of the temporal lobe. These association areas process retinal data in ways beyond our present consideration to extract information about the location, motion, color, shape, boundaries, and other qualities of the objects we look at. They also store visual memories and enable the brain to identify what we are seeing—for example, to recognize printed words or name the objects we see. What is yet to be learned about visual processing promises to have important implications for biology, medicine, psychology, and even philosophy.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

20. Why can't we see wavelengths below 350 nm or above 750 nm?
21. Why are light rays bent (refracted) more by the cornea than by the lens?
22. List as many structural and functional differences between rods and cones as you can.
23. Explain how the absorption of a photon of light leads to depolarization of a bipolar retinal cell.
24. Discuss the duplicity theory of vision, summarizing the advantage of having separate types of retinal photoreceptor cells for photopic and scotopic vision.

Insight 16.5 Medical History

Anesthesia—From Ether Frolics to Modern Surgery

Surgery is as old as civilization. People from the Stone Age to the pre-Columbian civilizations of the Americas practiced *trephination*—cutting a hole in the skull to let out "evil spirits" that were thought to cause headaches. The ancient Hindus were expert surgeons for their time, and the Greeks and Romans pioneered military surgery. But until the nineteenth century, surgery was a miserable and dangerous business, done only as a last resort and with little hope of the patient's survival. Surgeons rarely attempted anything more complex than amputations or kidney stone removal. A surgeon had to be somewhat indifferent to the struggles and screams of his patient. Most operations

---

[59] *geniculate* = bent like a knee

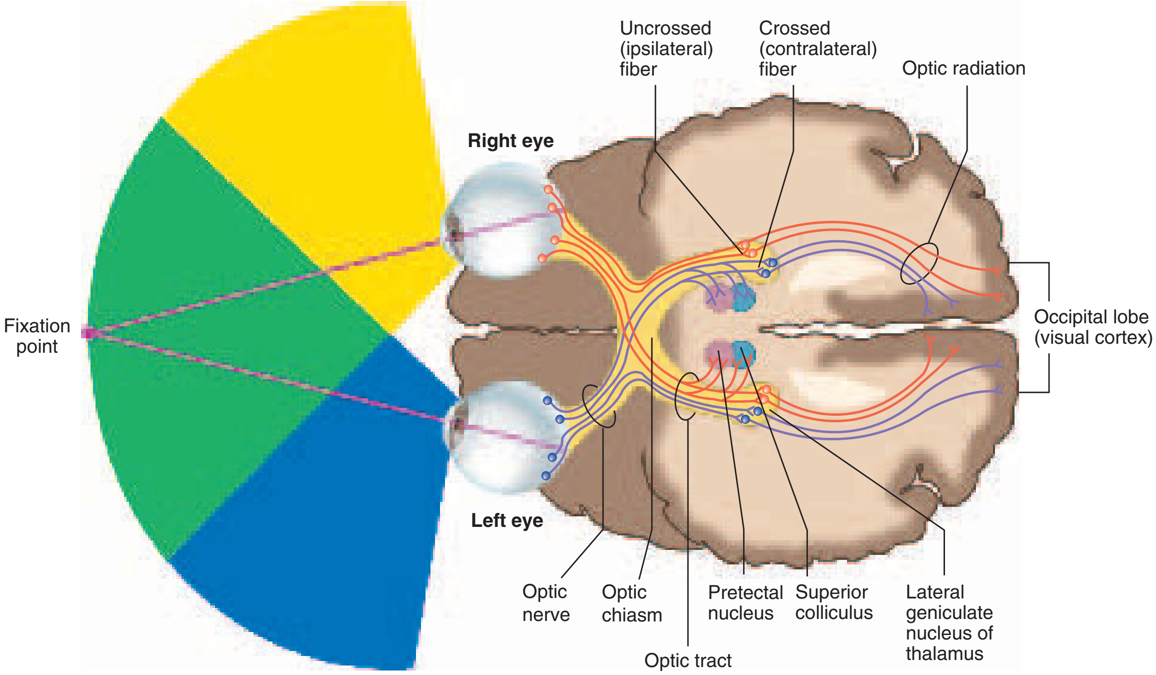

Uncrossed (ipsilateral) fiber
Crossed (contralateral) fiber
Optic radiation
Right eye
Fixation point
Occipital lobe (visual cortex)
Left eye
Optic nerve
Optic chiasm
Optic tract
Pretectal nucleus
Superior colliculus
Lateral geniculate nucleus of thalamus

Figure 16.41 **The Visual Projection Pathway.** Diagram of hemidecussation and projection to the primary visual cortex. *Blue* and *yellow* indicate the receptive fields of the left and right eyes; *green* indicates the area of overlap and stereoscopic vision. Nerve fibers from the medial side of the right eye (*red*) descussate to the left side of the brain, while fibers from the lateral side remain on the right side of the brain. The converse is true of the left eye. The right occipital lobe thus monitors the left side of the visual field and the left occipital lobe monitors the right side.

If a stroke destroyed the optic radiation of the right cerebral hemisphere, how would it affect a person's vision? Would it affect the person's visual reflexes?

had to be completed in 3 minutes or less, and a strong arm and stomach were more important qualifications for a surgeon than extensive anatomical knowledge.

At least three things were needed for surgery to be more effective: better knowledge of anatomy, *asepsis*[60] for the control of infection, and *anesthesia*[61] for the control of pain. Early efforts to control surgical pain were crude and usually ineffective, such as choking a patient into unconsciousness and trying to complete the surgery before he or she awoke. Alcohol and opium were often used as anesthetics, but the dosage was poorly controlled; some patients were underanesthetized and suffered great pain anyway, and others died of overdoses. Often there was no alternative but for a few strong men to hold the struggling patient down as the surgeon worked. Charles Darwin originally intended to become a physician, but left medical school because he was sickened by observing "two very bad operations, one on a child," in the days before anesthesia.

In 1799, Sir Humphrey Davy suggested using nitrous oxide to relieve pain. His student, Michael Faraday, suggested ether. Neither of these ideas caught on for several decades, however. Nitrous oxide ("laughing gas") was a popular amusement in the 1800s, when traveling showmen went from town to town demonstrating its effects on volunteers from the audience. In 1841, at a medicine show in Georgia, some students were impressed with the volunteers' euphoric giggles and antics and asked a young local physician, Crawford W. Long, if he could make some nitrous oxide for them. Long lacked the equipment to synthesize it, but he recommended they try ether. Ether was commonly used in small oral doses for toothaches and "nervous ailments," but its main claim to popularity was its use as a party drug for so-called ether frolics. Long himself was a bit of a *bon vivant* who put on demonstrations for some of the young ladies, with the disclaimer that he could not be held responsible for whatever he might do under the influence of ether (such as stealing a kiss).

At these parties, Long noted that people sometimes suffered considerable injuries without feeling pain. In 1842, he had a patient who was terrified of pain but needed a tumor removed from his neck. Long excised the tumor without difficulty as his patient sniffed ether from a towel. The operation created a sensation in town, but other physicians ridiculed Long and pronounced anesthesia dangerous. His medical practice declined as people grew afraid of him, but over the next 4 years he performed eight more minor surgeries on patients under ether. Struggling to overcome criticisms that the effects he saw were due merely to hypnotic suggestion or individual variation in sensitivity to pain, Long even compared surgeries done on the same person with and without ether.

Long failed to publish his results quickly enough, and in 1844 he was scooped by a Connecticut dentist, Horace Wells, who had tried nitrous oxide as a dental anesthetic. Another dentist, William Morton of Boston, had tried everything from champagne to opium to kill pain in his patients. He too became interested in ether and gave a public demonstration at Massachusetts General Hospital, where he etherized a patient and removed a tumor. Within a month of this successful and sensational demonstration, ether was being used in other cities of the

United States and England. Morton patented a "secret formula" he called Morton's Letheon,[62] which smelled suspiciously of ether, but eventually he went broke trying to monopolize ether anesthesia and he died a pauper. His grave near Boston bears the epitaph:

> WILLIAM T. G. MORTON
> *Inventor and Revealer of Anaesthetic Inhalation*
> *Before Whom, in All Time, Surgery was Agony.*
> *By Whom Pain in Surgery Was Averted and Annulled.*
> *Since Whom Science Has Control of Pain.*

Wells, who had engaged in a bitter feud to establish himself as the inventor of ether anesthesia, committed suicide at the age of 33. Crawford Long went on to a successful career as an Atlanta pharmacist, but to his death he remained disappointed that he had not received credit as the first to perform surgery on etherized patients.

Ether and chloroform became obsolete when safer anesthetics such as cyclopropane, ethylene, and nitrous oxide were developed. These are *general anesthetics* that render a patient unconscious by crossing the blood-brain barrier and blocking nervous transmission through the brainstem. Most general anesthetics apparently deaden pain by activating GABA receptors and causing an inflow of Cl^-, which hyperpolarizes neurons and makes them less likely to fire. Diazepam (Valium) also employs this mechanism. *Local anesthetics* such as procaine (Novocain) and tetracaine selectively deaden specific nerves. They decrease the permeability of membranes to Na^+, thereby reducing their ability to produce action potentials.

A sound knowledge of anatomy, control of infection and pain, and development of better tools converged to allow surgeons time to operate more carefully. As a result, surgery became more intellectually challenging and interesting. It attracted a more educated class of practitioner, which put it on the road to becoming the remarkable lifesaving approach that it is today.

---

[60] *a* = without + *sepsis* = infection
[61] *an* = without + *esthesia* = feeling, sensation
[62] *lethe* = oblivion, forgetfulness

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

Properties and Types of Sensory Receptors (p. 568)

1. Sensory *receptors* range from simple nerve endings to complex sense organs.
2. *Sensory transduction* is the conversion of stimulus energy into a pattern of action potentials.
3. Transduction begins with a *receptor potential* which, if it reaches threshold, triggers the production of action potentials.
4. Receptors transmit four kinds of information about stimuli: *modality, location, intensity,* and *duration.*
5. Receptors can be classified by modality as *chemoreceptors, thermoreceptors, nociceptors, mechanoreceptors,* and *photoreceptors.*
6. Receptors can also be classified by the origins of their stimuli as *interoceptors, proprioceptors,* and *exteroceptors.*
7. *General (somesthetic) senses* have receptors widely distributed over the body and include the senses of touch, pressure, stretch, temperature, and pain. *Special senses* have receptors in the head only and include vision, hearing, equilibrium, taste, and smell.

The General Senses (p. 588)

1. Unencapsulated nerve endings are simple sensory nerve fibers not enclosed in specialized connective tissue; they include *free nerve endings, tactile discs,* and *hair receptors.*
2. Encapsulated nerve endings are nerve fibers enclosed in glial cells or connective tissues that modify their sensitivity. They include *muscle spindles, Golgi tendon organs, tactile corpuscles, Krause end bulbs, lamellated corpuscles,* and *Ruffini corpuscles.*
3. Somesthetic signals from the head travel the trigeminal and other cranial nerves to the brainstem, and those below the head travel up the spinothalamic tract and other pathways. Most signals reach the contralateral primary somesthetic cortex, but proprioceptive signals travel to the cerebellum.
4. Pain is a sensation that occurs when nociceptors detect tissue damage or potentially injurious situations.
5. *Fast pain* is a relatively quick, localized response mediated by myelinated nerve fibers; it may be followed by a less localized *slow pain* mediated by unmyelinated fibers.
6. *Somatic pain* arises from the skin, muscles, and joints, and may be *superficial* or *deep pain. Visceral pain* arises from the viscera; it is less localized and is often associated with nausea.
7. Injured tissues release bradykinin, serotonin, prostaglandins, and other chemicals that stimulate nociceptors.
8. Pain signals travel from the receptor to the cerebral cortex by way of *first-* through *third-order neurons.* Pain from the face travels mainly by way of the trigeminal nerve to the pons, medulla, thalamus, and primary somesthetic cortex in that order. Pain from lower in the body travels by way of spinal nerves to the spinothalamic tract, thalamus, and somesthetic cortex.
9. Pain signals also travel the spinoreticular tract to the reticular formation and from there to the hypothalamus and limbic system,

producing visceral and emotional responses to pain.

10. *Referred pain* is the brain's misidentification of the location of pain resulting from convergence in sensory pathways.
11. *Enkephalins, endorphins,* and *dynorphins* are analgesic neuropeptides *(endogenous opioids)* that reduce the sensation of pain. Pain awareness can also be reduced by the *spinal gating* of pain signals.

The Chemical Senses (p. 592)

1. Taste *(gustation)* results from the action of chemicals on the *taste buds,* which are groups of sensory cells located on some of the *lingual papillae* and in the palate, pharynx, and epiglottis.
2. *Foliate, fungiform,* and *vallate papillae* have taste buds; *filiform papillae* lack taste buds but sense the texture of food.
3. The primary taste sensations are salty, sweet, sour, bitter, and umami. Flavor is a combined effect of these tastes and the texture, aroma, temperature, and appearance of food. Some flavors result from the stimulation of free nerve endings.
4. Some taste chemicals (sugars, alkaloids, and glutamate) bind to surface receptors on the taste cells and activate second messengers in the cell; sodium and acids penetrate into the taste cell and depolarize it.
5. Taste signals travel from the tongue through the facial and glossopharyngeal nerves, and from the palate, pharynx, and epiglottis through the vagus nerve. They travel to the medulla oblongata and then by one route to the hypothalamus and amygdala, and by another route to the thalamus and cerebral cortex.
6. Smell *(olfaction)* results from the action of chemicals on *olfactory cells* in the roof of the nasal cavity.
7. Odor molecules bind to surface receptors on the *olfactory hairs* of the olfactory cells and activate second messengers in the cell.
8. Nerve fibers from the olfactory cells assemble into fascicles that collectively constitute cranial nerve I, pass through foramina of the cribriform plate, and end in the olfactory bulbs beneath the frontal lobes of the cerebrum.
9. Olfactory signals travel the *olfactory tracts* from the bulbs to the temporal lobes, and continue to the hypothalamus and amygdala. The cerebral cortex also sends signals back to the bulbs that moderate one's perception of smell.

Hearing and Equilibrium (p. 597)

1. Sound is generated by vibrating objects. The *amplitude* of the vibration determines the *loudness* of a sound, measured in *decibels (db),* and the *frequency* of vibration determines the *pitch,* measured in *hertz (Hz).*
2. Humans hear best at frequencies of 1,500 to 4,000 Hz, but sensitive ears can hear sounds from 20 Hz to 20,000 Hz. The threshold of hearing is 0 db and the threshold of pain is about 140 db; most conversation is about 60 db.
3. The *outer ear* consists of the *auricle* and *auditory canal.* The *middle ear* consists of the tympanic membrane and an air-filled tympanic cavity containing three bones *(malleus, incus,* and *stapes)* and two muscles *(tensor tympani* and *stapedius).* The inner ear consists of fluid-filled chambers and tubes (the *membranous labyrinth*) including the *vestibule, semicircular ducts,* and *cochlea.*
4. The most important part of the cochlea, the organ of hearing, is the spiral *organ of Corti,* which includes sensory *hair cells.* A row of 3,500 *inner hair cells* generates the signals we hear, and three rows of *outer hair cells* tune the cochlea to enhance its pitch discrimination.
5. Vibrations in the ear move the *basilar membrane* of the cochlea up and down. As the hair cells move up and down, their stereocilia bend against the relatively stationary tectorial membrane above them. This opens K^+ channels at the tip of each stereocilium, and the inflow of K^+ depolarizes the cell. This triggers neurotransmitter release, which initiates a nerve signal.
6. *Loudness* determines the amplitude of basilar membrane vibration and the firing frequency of the associated auditory neurons. *Pitch* determines which regions of the basilar membrane vibrate more than others, and which auditory nerve fibers respond most strongly.
7. The cochlear nerve joins the vestibular nerve to become cranial nerve VIII. Cochlear nerve fibers project to the pons and from there to the inferior colliculi of the midbrain, then the thalamus, and finally the primary auditory cortex of the temporal lobes.
8. *Static equilibrium* is the sense of the orientation of the head; *dynamic equilibrium* is the sense of linear or angular acceleration of the head.
9. The *saccule* and *utricle* are chambers in the vestibule of the inner ear, each with a *macula* containing sensory hair cells. The *macula sacculi* is nearly vertical and the *macula utriculi* is nearly horizontal.
10. The hair cell stereocilia are capped by a weighted gelatinous *otolithic membrane.* When pulled by gravity or linear acceleration of the body, these membranes stimulate the hair cells.
11. Any orientation of the head causes a combination of stimulation to the four maculae, sending signals to the brain that enable it to sense the orientation. Vertical acceleration also stimulates each macula sacculi, and horizontal acceleration stimulates each macula utriculi.
12. Each inner ear also has three *semicircular ducts* with a sensory patch of hair cells, the *crista ampullaris,* in each duct. The stereocilia of these hair cells are embedded in a gelatinous *cupula.*
13. Tilting or rotation of the head moves the ducts relative to the fluid (endolymph) within, causing the fluid to push the cupula and stimulate the hair cells. The brain detects angular acceleration of the head from the combined input from the six ducts.
14. Signals from the utricle, saccule, and semicircular ducts travel the *vestibular nerve,* which joins the cochlear nerve in cranial nerve VIII. Vestibular nerve fibers lead to the pons and cerebellum.

Vision (p. 610)

1. Vision is a response to electromagnetic radiation with wavelengths from about 400 to 750 nm.
2. Accessory structures of the orbit include the eyebrows, eyelids, conjunctiva, lacrimal apparatus, and extrinsic eye muscles.

3. The wall of the eyeball is composed of an outer *fibrous layer* composed of *sclera* and *cornea;* middle *vascular layer* composed of *choroid, ciliary body,* and *iris;* and an *inner layer* composed of the *retina* and beginning of the *optic nerve.*
4. The optical components of the eye admit and bend (refract) light rays and bring images to a focus on the retina. They include the *cornea, aqueous humor, lens,* and *vitreous body.* Most refraction occurs at the air-cornea interface, but the lens adjusts the focus.
5. The neural components of the eye absorb light and encode the stimulus in action potentials transmitted to the brain. They include the *retina* and *optic nerve.* The sharpest vision occurs in a region of retina called the *fovea centralis,* while the *optic disc,* where the optic nerve originates, is a blind spot with no receptor cells.
6. The relaxed *(emmetropic)* eye focuses on objects 6 m or more away. A *near response* is needed to focus on closer objects. This includes convergence of the eyes, constriction of the pupil, and *accommodation* (thickening) of the lens.
7. Light falling on the retina is absorbed by visual pigments in the *outer segments* of the *rod* and *cone* cells. Rods function at low light intensities (producing night, or *scotopic,* vision) but produce monochromatic images with poor resolution. Cones require higher light intensities (producing day, or *photopic,* vision) and produce color images with finer resolution.
8. Light absorption bleaches the *rhodopsin* of rods or the *photopsins* of the cones. In rods (and probably cones), this stops the *dark current* of Na^+ flow into the cell and the release of glutamate from the inner end of the cell.
9. Rods and cones synapse with *bipolar cells,* which respond to changes in glutamate secretion. Bipolar cells, in turn, stimulate *ganglion cells.* Ganglion cells are the first cells in the pathway that generate action potentials; their axons form the optic nerve.
10. The eyes respond to changes in light intensity by *light adaptation* (pupillary constriction and pigment bleaching) and *dark adaptation* (pupillary dilation and pigment regeneration).
11. The *duplicity theory* explains that a single type of receptor cell cannot produce both high light sensitivity (like the rods) and high resolution (like the cones). The neuronal convergence responsible for the sensitivity of rod pathways reduces resolution, while the lack of convergence responsible for the high resolution of cones reduces light sensitivity.
12. Three types of cones—blue, green, and red—have slight differences in their photopsins that result in peak absorption in different regions of the spectrum. This results in the ability to distinguish colors.
13. *Stereoscopic vision (depth perception)* results from each eye viewing an object from a slightly different angle, so its image falls on different areas of the two retinas.
14. Fibers of the optic nerves *hemidecussate* at the *optic chiasm,* so images in the left visual field project from both eyes to the right cerebral hemisphere, and images on the right project to the left hemisphere.
15. Beyond the optic chiasm, most nerve fibers end in the *lateral geniculate nucleus* of the thalamus. Here they synapse with third-order neurons whose fibers form the *optic radiation* leading to the primary visual cortex of the occipital lobe.
16. Some fibers of the optic nerve lead to the superior colliculi and pretectal nuclei of the midbrain. These midbrain nuclei control visual reflexes of the extrinsic eye muscles, pupillary reflexes, and accommodation of the lens in near vision.

Selected Vocabulary

receptor 586
modality 586
projection pathway 586
nociceptor 587
proprioceptor 587
first- to third-order neuron 589
referred pain 590
analgesic 590
gustation 592
taste cell 593
olfaction 594
olfactory cell 595
vestibule 599
cochlea 599
organ of Corti 600
hair cell 601
equilibrium 606
semicircular duct 606
conjunctiva 610
cornea 612
retina 614
optic disc 615
fovea centralis 615
refraction 616
near response 617
rod 619
cone 619
rhodopsin 621
optic chiasm 626

Testing Your Recall

1. Hot and cold stimuli are detected by
   a. free nerve endings.
   b. proprioceptors.
   c. Krause end bulbs.
   d. lamellated corpuscles.
   e. tactile corpuscles.

2. _____ is a neurotransmitter that transmits pain sensations to second-order spinal neurons.
   a. Endorphin
   b. Enkephalin
   c. Substance P
   d. Acetylcholine
   e. Norepinephrine

3. _____ is a neuromodulator that blocks the transmission of pain sensations to second-order spinal neurons.
   a. Endorphin
   b. Enkephalin
   c. Substance P
   d. Acetylcholine
   e. Norepinephrine

4. Taste buds of the vallate papillae are most sensitive to
   a. bitter.
   b. sour.
   c. sweet.
   d. umami.
   e. salty.
5. The higher the frequency of a sound,
   a. the louder it sounds.
   b. the harder it is to hear.
   c. the more it stimulates the distal end of the organ of Corti.
   d. the faster it travels through air.
   e. the higher its pitch.
6. Cochlear hair cells rest on
   a. the tympanic membrane.
   b. the secondary tympanic membrane.
   c. the tectorial membrane.
   d. the vestibular membrane.
   e. the basilar membrane.
7. The acceleration you feel when an elevator begins to rise is sensed by
   a. the anterior semicircular duct.
   b. the organ of Corti.
   c. the crista ampullaris.
   d. the macula sacculi.
   e. the macula utriculi.
8. The color of light is determined by
   a. its velocity.
   b. its amplitude.
   c. its wavelength.
   d. refraction.
   e. how strongly it stimulates the rods.
9. The retina receives its oxygen supply from
   a. the hyaloid artery.
   b. the vitreous body.
   c. the choroid.
   d. the pigment epithelium.
   e. the scleral venous sinus.
10. Which of the following statements about photopic vision is false?
    a. It is mediated by the cones.
    b. It has a low threshold.
    c. It produces fine resolution.
    d. It does not function in starlight.
    e. It does not employ rhodopsin.
11. The most finely detailed vision occurs when an image falls on a pit in the retina called the _____ .
12. The only cells of the retina that generate action potentials are the _____ cells.
13. The retinal dark current results from the flow of _____ into the receptor cells.
14. The gelatinous membranes of the macula sacculi and macula utriculi are weighted by calcium carbonate and protein granules called _____.
15. Three rows of _____ in the cochlea have V-shaped arrays of stereocilia and tune the frequency sensitivity of the cochlea.
16. The _____ is a tiny bone that vibrates in the oval window and thereby transfers sound vibrations to the inner ear.
17. The _____ of the midbrain receive auditory input and trigger the head-turning auditory reflex.
18. The apical stereocilia of a gustatory cell are called _____ .
19. Olfactory neurons synapse with mitral cells and tufted cells in the _____ , which lies inferior to the frontal lobe.
20. In the phenomenon of _____ , pain from the viscera is perceived as coming from an area of the skin.

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. The sensory (afferent) nerve fibers for touch end in the thalamus.
2. Things we touch with the left hand are perceived only in the right cerebral hemisphere.
3. Things we see with the left eye are perceived only in the right cerebral hemisphere.
4. Some chemoreceptors are interoceptors and some are exteroceptors.
5. The vitreous body occupies the posterior chamber of the eye.
6. Descending analgesic fibers prevent pain signals from reaching the spinal cord.
7. Cranial nerve VIII carries signals for both hearing and balance.
8. The tympanic cavity is filled with air, but the membranous labyrinth is filled with liquid.
9. Rods and cones release their neurotransmitter in the dark, not in the light.
10. All of the extrinsic muscles of the eye are controlled by the oculomotor nerve.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. The principle of neuronal convergence is explained on page 472. Discuss its relevance to referred pain and scotopic vision.
2. What type of cutaneous receptor enables you to feel an insect crawling through your hair? What type enables you to palpate a patient's pulse? What type enables a blind person to read braille?
3. Contraction of a muscle usually puts more tension on a structure, but

contraction of the ciliary muscle puts less tension on the lens. Explain how.

4. Janet has terminal ovarian cancer and is in severe pelvic pain that has not yielded to any other treatment. A neurosurgeon performs an *anterolateral cordotomy,* cutting across the anterolateral region of her lumbar spinal cord. Explain the rationale of this treatment and its possible side effects.
5. What would be the benefit of a drug that blocks the receptors for substance P?

Answers at the Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Legend Questions

16.1 Two touches are felt separately if they straddle the boundary between two separate receptive fields.

16.8 The lower margin of the violet zone ("all sound") would be higher in that range.

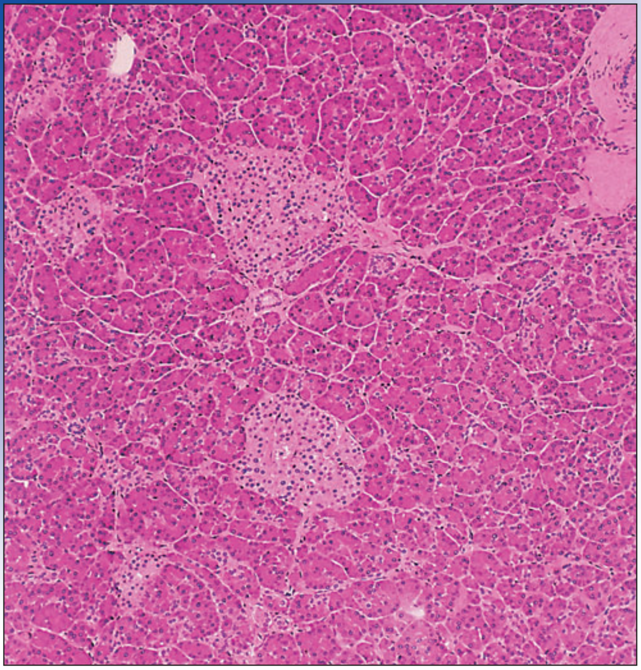
16.14 It would oppose the inward movement of the tympanic membrane, and thus reduce the amount of vibration transferred to the inner ear.

16.38 Approximately 68:20:0

16.41 It would cause blindness in the left half of the visual field. It would not affect the visual reflexes.

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.



Human pancreas. Light zones in the middle are the insulin-producing islets.

CHAPTER 17

The Endocrine System

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Overview of the Endocrine System 636
- Comparison of the Nervous and Endocrine Systems 637
- Hormone Nomenclature 637

The Hypothalamus and Pituitary Gland 637
- Anatomy 638
- Hypothalamic Hormones 639
- Pituitary Hormones 640
- Actions of the Pituitary Hormones 642
- Control of Pituitary Secretion 644

Other Endocrine Glands 646
- The Pineal Gland 646
- The Thymus 646
- The Thyroid Gland 647
- The Parathyroid Glands 648
- The Adrenal Glands 648
- The Pancreas 650
- The Gonads 651
- Endocrine Functions of Other Organs 652

Hormones and Their Actions 652
- Hormone Chemistry 654
- Hormone Synthesis 654
- Hormone Transport 657
- Hormone Receptors and Mode of Action 657
- Enzyme Amplification 660
- Hormone Clearance 661
- Modulation of Target Cell Sensitivity 661
- Hormone Interactions 662

Stress and Adaptation 662
- The Alarm Reaction 663
- The Stage of Resistance 663
- The Stage of Exhaustion 664

Eicosanoids and Paracrine Signaling 664

Endocrine Disorders 666
- Hyposecretion and Hypersecretion 666
- Pituitary Disorders 667
- Thyroid and Parathyroid Disorders 667
- Adrenal Disorders 668
- Diabetes Mellitus 668

Connective Issues 673

Chapter Review 674

INSIGHTS

17.1 **Clinical Application:** Melatonin, SAD, and PMS 646
17.2 **Clinical Application:** Hormone Receptors and Therapy 657
17.3 **Clinical Application:** Anti-Inflammatory Drugs 666
17.4 **Medical History:** The Discovery of Insulin 671

Brushing Up

To understand this chapter, it is important that you understand or brush up on the following concepts:

- Structure and function of the plasma membrane (p. 98)
- G proteins, cAMP, and other second messengers (p. 102)
- Active transport and the transport maximum (pp. 109–110)
- Monoamines, especially catecholamines (p. 464)
- The hypothalamus (p. 530)

For the body to maintain homeostasis, cells must be able to communicate and integrate their activities with each other. For the last five chapters, we have examined how this is achieved through the nervous system. We now turn to two modes of chemical communication called *endocrine* and *paracrine* signaling, with an emphasis on the former. This chapter is primarily about **endocrinology,** the study of the endocrine system and the diagnosis and treatment of its dysfunctions.

You probably have at least some prior acquaintance with this system. Perhaps you have heard of the pituitary gland and thyroid gland, secretions such as growth hormone, estrogen, and insulin, and endocrine disorders such as dwarfism, goiter, and diabetes mellitus. Fewer readers, perhaps, are familiar with what hormones are at a chemical level or exactly how they work. Therefore, this chapter starts with the relatively familiar—a survey of the endocrine glands, their hormones, and the principal effects of these hormones. We will then work our way down to the finer and less familiar details—the chemical identity of hormones, how they are made and transported, and how they produce their effects on their target cells. Shorter sections at the end of the chapter discuss the role of the endocrine system in adapting to stress, some hormonelike paracrine secretions, and the pathologies that result from endocrine dysfunction.

Overview of the Endocrine System

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- define *hormone* and *endocrine system;*
- list the major organs of the endocrine system;
- recognize the standard abbreviations for many hormones; and
- compare and contrast the nervous and endocrine systems.

Cells communicate with each other in four ways:

1. **Gap junctions** join single-unit smooth muscle, cardiac muscle, epithelial, and other cells to each other. They enable cells to pass nutrients, electrolytes, and signaling molecules directly from the cytoplasm of one cell to the cytoplasm of the next through adjacent pores in their plasma membranes (fig. 5.29, p. 178).
2. **Neurotransmitters** are released by neurons, diffuse across a narrow synaptic cleft, and bind to receptors on the surface of the next cell.
3. **Paracrines**[1] are secreted into the tissue fluid by a cell, diffuse to nearby cells in the same tissue, and stimulate their physiology. They are sometimes called *local hormones.*

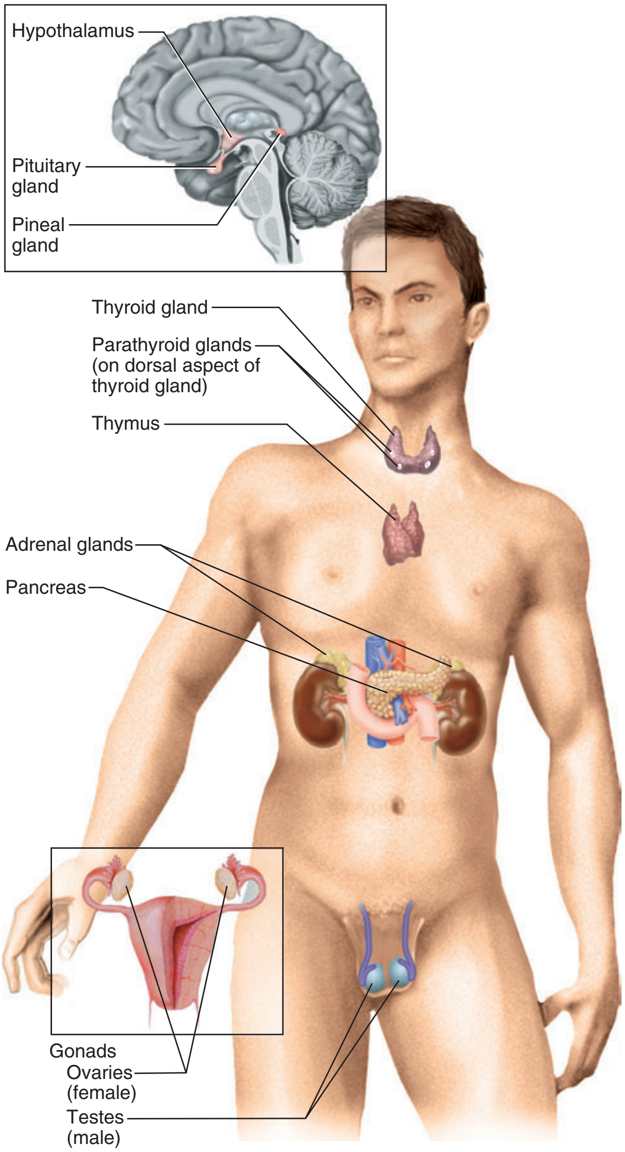


Figure 17.1 Major Organs of the Endocrine System. This system also includes gland cells in many other organs not shown here.

4. **Hormones**[2] are chemical messengers that are secreted into the bloodstream and stimulate the physiology of cells in another tissue or organ, often a considerable distance away. Hormones produced by the pituitary gland in the head, for example, can act on organs in the abdominal and pelvic cavities. (Some authorities define *hormone* so broadly as to include paracrines and neurotransmitters. This book

---

[1] *para* = next to + *crin* = secrete

[2] *hormone* = to excite, set in motion

adopts the stricter definition of hormones as bloodborne messengers secreted by endocrine cells.)

Our focus in this chapter will be primarily on hormones and the **endocrine**[3] **glands** that secrete them (fig. 17.1). The **endocrine system** is composed of these glands as well as hormone-secreting cells in many organs not usually thought of as glands, such as the brain, heart, and small intestine. Hormones travel anywhere the blood goes, but they affect only those cells that have receptors for them. These are called the **target cells** for a particular hormone.

In chapter 5, we saw that glands can be classified as exocrine or endocrine. One way in which these differ is that exocrine glands have ducts to carry their secretion to the body surface (as in sweat) or to the cavity of another organ (as in digestive enzymes). Endocrine glands have no ducts but do have dense blood capillary networks. Endocrine cells release their hormones into the surrounding tissue fluid, and then the bloodstream quickly picks up and distributes the hormones. Exocrine secretions have extracellular effects such as the digestion of food, whereas endocrine secretions have intracellular effects—they alter the metabolism of their target cells.

Comparison of the Nervous and Endocrine Systems

Although the nervous and endocrine systems both serve for internal communication, they are not redundant; they complement rather than duplicate each other's function (table 17.1). The systems differ in their means of communication—both electrical and chemical in the nervous system and solely chemical in the endocrine system (fig. 17.2)—yet as we shall see, they have many similarities on this point as well. They differ also in how quickly they start and stop responding to stimuli. The nervous system typically responds in just a few milliseconds, whereas hormone release may follow from several seconds to several days after the stimulus that caused it. Furthermore, when a stimulus ceases, the nervous system stops responding almost immediately, whereas some endocrine effects persist for several days or even weeks. On the other hand, under long-term stimulation, neurons soon adapt and their response declines. The endocrine system shows more persistent responses. For example, thyroid hormone secretion rises in cold weather and remains elevated as long as it remains cold. Another difference between the two systems is that an efferent nerve fiber innervates only one organ and a limited number of cells within that organ; its effects, therefore, are precisely targeted and relatively specific. Hormones, by contrast, circulate throughout the body and some of them, such as growth hormone, epinephrine, and thyroid hormone, have very widespread effects.

But these differences should not blind us to the similarities between the two systems. Several chemicals function as both neurotransmitters and hormones, including norepinephrine, cholecystokinin, thyrotropin-releasing hormone, dopamine, and antidiuretic hormone (= vasopressin). Some hormones, such as oxytocin and the catecholamines, are secreted by **neuroendocrine cells**—neurons that release their secretions into the extracellular fluid. Some hormones and neurotransmitters produce overlapping effects on the same target cells. For example, norepinephrine and glucagon cause glycogen hydrolysis in the liver. The nervous and endocrine systems continually regulate each other as they coordinate the activities of other organ systems. Neurons often trigger hormone secretion, and hormones often stimulate or inhibit neurons.

Hormone Nomenclature

Many hormones are denoted by standard abbreviations which are used repeatedly in this chapter. These abbreviations are listed alphabetically in table 17.2 so that you can use this as a convenient reference while you work through the chapter. This is by no means a complete list. It does not include hormones that have no abbreviation, such as estrogen and insulin, and it omits hormones that are not discussed much in this chapter. Synonyms used by many authors are indicated in parentheses, but the first name listed is the one that is used in this book.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

1. Define the word *hormone* and distinguish a hormone from a neurotransmitter. Why is this an imperfect distinction?
2. Describe some ways in which endocrine glands differ from exocrine glands.
3. Name some sources of hormones other than purely endocrine glands.
4. List some similarities and differences between the endocrine and nervous systems.

The Hypothalamus and Pituitary Gland

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- list the hormones produced by the hypothalamus and pituitary gland;
- explain how the hypothalamus and pituitary are controlled and coordinated with each other;
- describe the functions of growth hormone; and
- describe the effects of pituitary hypo- and hypersecretion.

---

[3] *endo* = into; *crin* = to separate or secrete

Table 17.1 Comparison of the Nervous and Endocrine Systems

Nervous System	Endocrine System
Communicates by means of electrical impulses and neurotransmitters	Communicates by means of hormones
Releases neurotransmitters at synapses at specific target cells	Releases hormones into bloodstream for general distribution throughout body
Usually has relatively local, specific effects	Sometimes has very general, widespread effects
Reacts quickly to stimuli, usually within 1 to 10 msec	Reacts more slowly to stimuli, often taking seconds to days
Stops quickly when stimulus stops	May continue responding long after stimulus stops
Adapts relatively quickly to continual stimulation	Adapts relatively slowly; may continue responding for days to weeks of stimulation

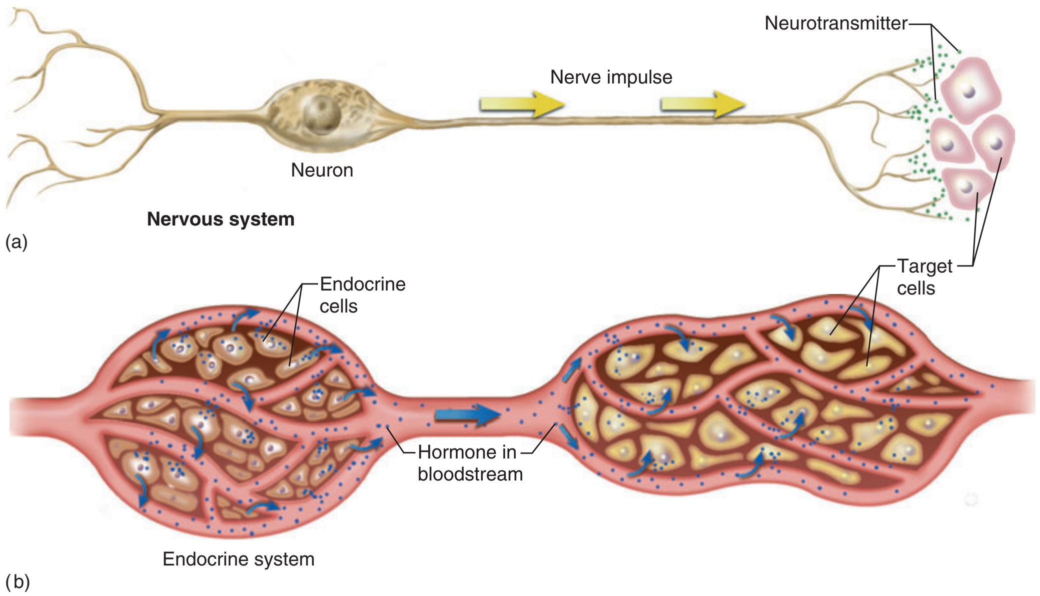


Figure 17.2 **Communication by the Nervous and Endocrine Systems.** (*a*) A neuron has a long fiber that delivers its neurotransmitter to the immediate vicinity of its target cells. (*b*) Endocrine cells secrete a hormone into the bloodstream. The hormone binds to target cells at places often remote from the gland cells.

There is no "master control center" that regulates the entire endocrine system, but the pituitary gland and a nearby region of the brain, the hypothalamus, have a more wide-ranging influence than any other part of the system. This is an appropriate place to begin a survey of the endocrine system.

Anatomy

The hypothalamus forms the floor and walls of the third ventricle of the brain (see fig. 14.12, p. 530). It regulates primitive functions of the body ranging from water balance to sex drive. Many of its functions are carried out by way of the pituitary gland, which is closely associated with it.

The **pituitary gland (hypophysis**[4]**)** is suspended from the hypothalamus by a stalk *(infundibulum*[5]*)* and housed in the sella turcica of the sphenoid bone. It is usually about 1.3 cm in diameter, but grows about 50% larger in pregnancy. It is actually composed of two structures—the adenohypophysis and neurohypophysis—that arise independently in the embryo and have entirely separate functions. The adenohypophysis arises from a *hypophyseal pouch* that grows upward from the pharynx, while the neurohypophysis arises as a downgrowth of the brain, the *neurohypophyseal bud* (fig. 17.3). They come to lie

---

[4] *hypo* = below + *physis* = growth
[5] *infundibulum* = funnel

Table 17.2 Names and Abbreviations for Hormones

Abbreviation	Name	Source
ACTH	Adrenocorticotropic hormone (corticotropin)	Anterior pituitary
ADH	Antidiuretic hormone (vasopressin)	Posterior pituitary
ANP	Atrial natriuretic peptide	Heart
CRH	Corticotropin-releasing hormone	Hypothalamus
DHEA	Dehydroepiandrosterone	Adrenal cortex
EPO	Erythropoietin	Kidney, liver
FSH	Follicle-stimulating hormone	Anterior pituitary
GH	Growth hormone (somatotropin)	Anterior pituitary
GHRH	Growth hormone–releasing hormone	Hypothalamus
GnRH	Gonadotropin-releasing hormone	Hypothalamus
IGFs	Insulin-like growth factors (somatomedins)	Liver, other tissues
LH	Luteinizing hormone	Anterior pituitary
NE	Norepinephrine	Adrenal medulla
OT	Oxytocin	Posterior pituitary
PIH	Prolactin-inhibiting hormone (dopamine)	Hypothalamus
PRH	Prolactin-releasing hormone	Hypothalamus
PRL	Prolactin	Anterior pituitary
PTH	Parathyroid hormone (parathormone)	Parathyroids
T_3	Triiodothyronine	Thyroid
T_4	Thyroxine (tetraiodothyronine)	Thyroid
TH	Thyroid hormone (T_3 and T_4)	Thyroid
TRH	Thyrotropin-releasing hormone	Hypothalamus
TSH	Thyroid-stimulating hormone	Anterior pituitary

side by side and are so closely joined that they look like a single gland.

The **adenohypophysis**[6] (AD-eh-no-hy-POFF-ih-sis) constitutes the anterior three-quarters of the pituitary (fig. 17.4*a*). It has two parts: a large **anterior lobe,** also called the *pars distalis* ("distal part") because it is most distal to the pituitary stalk, and the *pars tuberalis,* a small mass of cells adhering to the anterior side of the stalk. In the fetus there is also a *pars intermedia,* a strip of tissue between the anterior lobe and neurohypophysis. During subsequent development, its cells mingle with those of the anterior lobe; in adults, there is no longer a separate pars intermedia.

The anterior pituitary has no nervous connection to the hypothalamus but is connected to it by a complex of blood vessels called the **hypophyseal portal system** (fig. 17.4*b*). This begins with a network of *primary capillaries* in the hypothalamus, leading to *portal venules* (small veins) that travel down the pituitary stalk to a complex of *secondary capillaries* in the anterior pituitary. The primary capillaries pick up hormones from the hypothalamus, the venules deliver them to the anterior pituitary, and the hormones leave the circulation at the secondary capillaries.

The **neurohypophysis** constitutes the posterior one-quarter of the pituitary. It has three parts: an extension of the hypothalamus called the *median eminence;* the *stalk;* and the largest part, the **posterior lobe** *(pars nervosa).* The neurohypophysis is not a true gland but a mass of neuroglia and nerve fibers. The nerve fibers arise from cell bodies in the hypothalamus, travel down the stalk as a bundle called the **hypothalamo-hypophyseal tract,** and end in the posterior lobe. The hypothalamic neurons synthesize hormones, transport them down the stalk, and store them in the posterior pituitary until a nerve signal triggers their release.

Hypothalamic Hormones

The hypothalamus produces nine hormones important to our discussion. Seven of them, listed in figure 17.4 and table 17.3, travel through the portal system and regulate

---

[6] *adeno* = gland

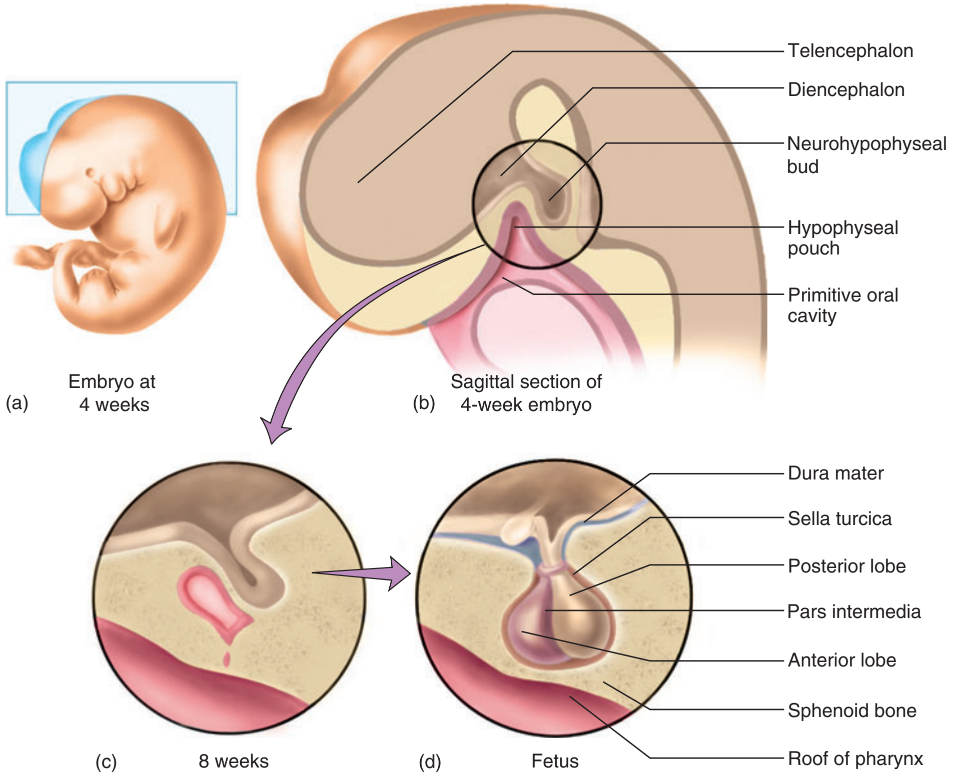


Figure 17.3 **Embryonic Development of the Pituitary Gland.** (*a*) Plane of section seen in *b*. (*b*) Sagittal section of the embryo showing the early beginnings of the adenohypophysis and neurohypophysis. (*c*) Separation of the hypophyseal pouch from the pharynx at about 8 weeks. (*d*) Development nearly completed. The pars intermedia largely disappears by birth.

the activities of the anterior pituitary. Five of these are *releasing hormones* that stimulate the anterior pituitary to secrete its hormones, and two are *inhibiting hormones* that suppress pituitary secretion. Most of these hypothalamic hormones control the release of just one anterior pituitary hormone. Gonadotropin-releasing hormone, however, controls the release of both follicle-stimulating hormone and luteinizing hormone.

The other two hypothalamic hormones are secreted by way of the posterior pituitary. These are **oxytocin (OT)** and **antidiuretic hormone (ADH).** OT is produced mainly by neurons in the **paraventricular**[7] **nuclei** of the hypothalamus, so-called because they lie in the walls of the third ventricle (the nuclei are paired right and left). ADH is produced mainly by the **supraoptic**[8] **nuclei,** so-called because they lie just above the optic chiasm on each side. Each nucleus also produces smaller quantities of the other hormone.

Pituitary Hormones

The secretions of the pituitary gland are as follows:

- The *anterior lobe* synthesizes and secretes six principal hormones: follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH), luteinizing hormone (LH), thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), growth hormone (GH), and prolactin (PRL) (table 17.4). The first five of these are **tropic,** or **trophic,**[9] **hormones**—pituitary hormones that stimulate endocrine cells elsewhere to release their own hormones. More specifically, the first two are called **gonadotropins** because their target organs are the gonads.

  The hormonal relationship between the hypothalamus, pituitary, and a more remote endocrine gland is called an *axis.* There are three such axes: the **hypothalamic-pituitary-gonadal axis** involving GnRH, FSH, and LH, the **hypothalamic-pituitary-thyroid axis**

---

[7] *para* = next to + *ventricular* = pertaining to the ventricle
[8] *supra* = above

[9] *trop* = to turn, change; *troph* = to feed, nourish

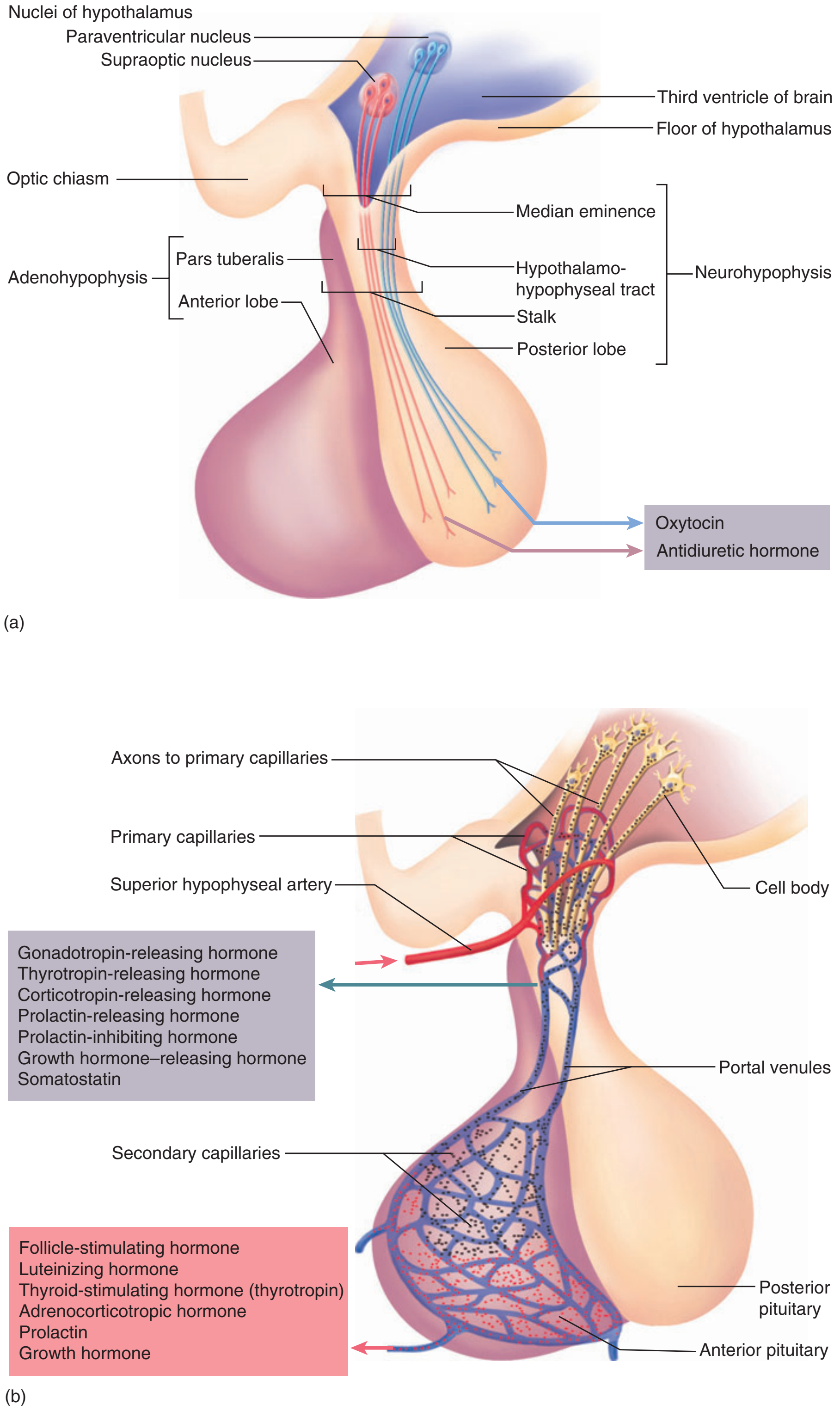

Nuclei of hypothalamus
Paraventricular nucleus
Supraoptic nucleus
Third ventricle of brain
Floor of hypothalamus
Optic chiasm
Median eminence
Adenohypophysis
Pars tuberalis
Anterior lobe
Hypothalamo-hypophyseal tract
Stalk
Posterior lobe
Neurohypophysis
Oxytocin
Antidiuretic hormone
(a)
Axons to primary capillaries
Primary capillaries
Superior hypophyseal artery
Cell body
Gonadotropin-releasing hormone
Thyrotropin-releasing hormone
Corticotropin-releasing hormone
Prolactin-releasing hormone
Prolactin-inhibiting hormone
Growth hormone–releasing hormone
Somatostatin
Portal venules
Secondary capillaries
Follicle-stimulating hormone
Luteinizing hormone
Thyroid-stimulating hormone (thyrotropin)
Adrenocorticotropic hormone
Prolactin
Growth hormone
Posterior pituitary
Anterior pituitary
(b)

Figure 17.4 **Anatomy of the Pituitary Gland.** (*a*) Major structures of the pituitary and hormones of the neurohypophysis. Note that these hormones are produced by two nuclei in the hypothalamus and later released from the posterior lobe of the pituitary. (*b*) The hypophyseal portal system. The hormones in the *violet box* are secreted by the hypothalamus and travel in the portal system to the anterior pituitary. The hormones in the *red box* are secreted by the anterior pituitary under the control of the hypothalamic releasers and inhibitors.

Which lobe of the pituitary is essentially composed of brain tissue?

Table 17.3 Hypothalamic Releasing and Inhibiting Hormones that Regulate the Anterior Pituitary

Hormone	Principal Effects
TRH: Thyrotropin-releasing hormone	Promotes TSH and PRL secretion
CRH: Corticotropin-releasing hormone	Promotes ACTH secretion
GnRH: Gonadotropin-releasing hormone	Promotes FSH and LH secretion
PRH: Prolactin-releasing hormone	Promotes PRL secretion
PIH: Prolactin-inhibiting hormone	Inhibits PRL secretion
GHRH: Growth hormone–releasing hormone	Promotes GH secretion
Somatostatin	Inhibits GH and TSH secretion

involving TRH and TSH, and the **hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis** involving CRH and ACTH (fig. 17.5).

- The *pars intermedia* is absent from the adult human pituitary, but is present in other animals and the human fetus. In other species, it secretes *melanocyte-stimulating hormone (MSH),* which influences pigmentation of the skin, hair, or feathers. Humans, however, apparently produce no circulating MSH. Some anterior pituitary cells derived from the pars intermedia produce a large polypeptide called *pro-opiomelanocortin (POMC).* POMC is not secreted but is processed within the pituitary to yield smaller fragments such as ACTH and endorphins.
- The *posterior lobe* produces no hormones of its own but only stores and releases OT and ADH. Since they are released into the blood by the posterior pituitary, however, these are treated as pituitary hormones for convenience.

Actions of the Pituitary Hormones

Now for a closer look at what all of these pituitary hormones do. Most of these hormones receive their fullest treatment in later chapters on such topics as the urinary and reproductive systems, but growth hormone gets its fullest treatment here.

Anterior Lobe Hormones

Follicle-Stimulating Hormone (FSH) FSH, one of the gonadotropins, is secreted by pituitary cells called *gonadotropes.* Its target organs are the ovaries and testes. In the ovaries, it stimulates the development of eggs and the follicles that contain them. In the testes, it stimulates sperm production.

Luteinizing Hormone (LH) LH, the other gonadotropin, is also secreted by the gonadotropes. In females, it stimulates *ovulation* (the release of an egg). LH is named for the fact that after ovulation, the remainder of a follicle is called the *corpus luteum* ("yellow body"). LH stimulates the corpus luteum to secrete estrogen and progesterone, hormones important to pregnancy. In males, LH stimulates *interstitial cells* of the testes to secrete testosterone.

Thyroid-Stimulating Hormone (TSH), or **Thyrotropin** TSH is secreted by pituitary cells called *thyrotropes.* It stimulates growth of the thyroid gland and the secretion of thyroid hormone, which has widespread effects on the body's metabolism considered later in this chapter.

Adrenocorticotropic Hormone (ACTH), or **Corticotropin** ACTH is secreted by pituitary cells called *corticotropes.* ACTH stimulates the adrenal cortex to secrete its hormones *(corticosteroids),* especially cortisol, which regulates glucose, fat, and protein metabolism. ACTH plays a central role in the body's response to stress, which we will examine more fully later in this chapter.

Prolactin[10] (PRL) PRL is secreted by *lactotropes (mammotropes),* which increase greatly in size and number during pregnancy. PRL level rises during pregnancy, but it has no effect until after a woman gives birth. Then, it stimulates the mammary glands to synthesize milk. In males, PRL has a gonadotropic effect that makes the testes more sensitive to LH. Thus, it indirectly enhances their secretion of testosterone.

Growth Hormone (GH), or **Somatotropin** GH is secreted by *somatotropes,* the most numerous cells in the anterior pituitary. The pituitary produces at least a thousand times as much GH as any other hormone. The general effect of GH is to promote mitosis and cellular differentiation and thus to promote widespread tissue growth. Unlike the foregoing hormones, GH is not targeted to any one or few organs, but has widespread effects on the body, especially

---

[10] *pro* = favoring + *lact* = milk

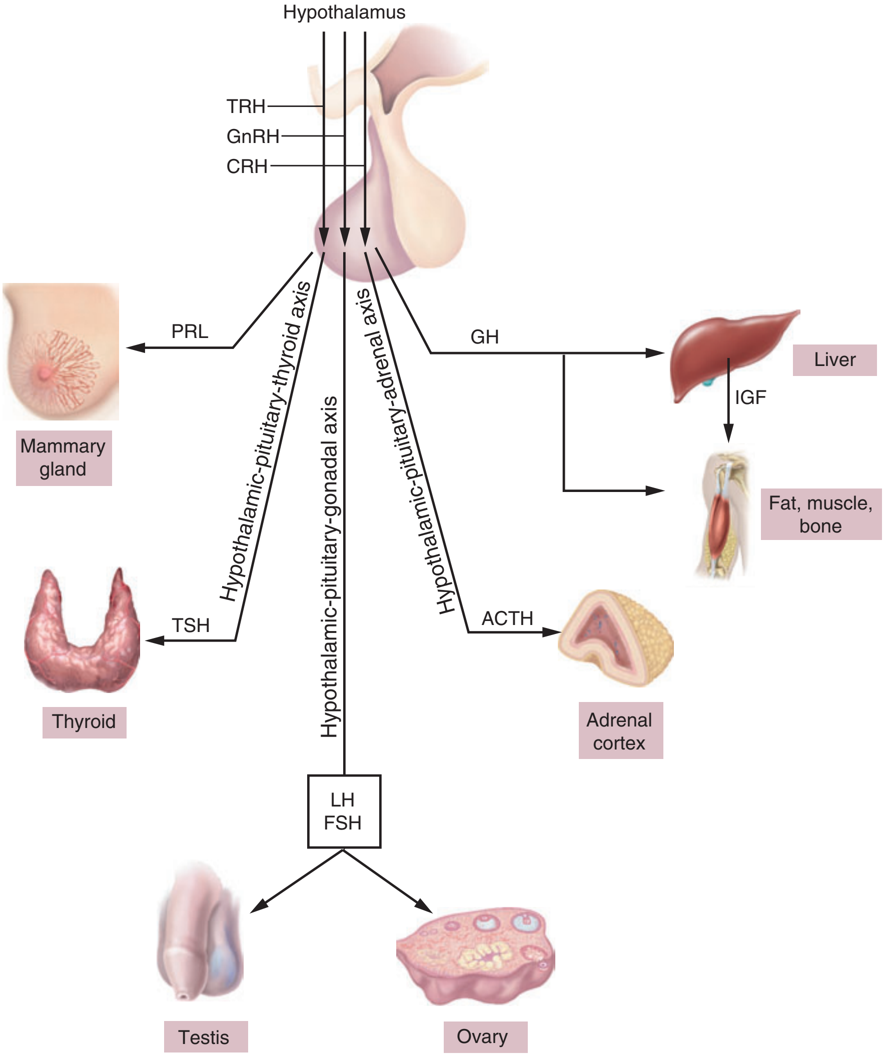

Hypothalamus
TRH
GnRH
CRH
PRL
Mammary gland
Hypothalamic-pituitary-thyroid axis
Hypothalamic-pituitary-gonadal axis
Hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis
GH
Liver
IGF
Fat, muscle, bone
TSH
Thyroid
ACTH
Adrenal cortex
LH
FSH
Testis
Ovary

Figure 17.5 **Principal Hormones of the Anterior Pituitary Gland and Their Target Organs.** The three axes physiologically link pituitary function to the function of other endocrine glands.

Chapter 17

on cartilage, bone, muscle, and fat. It exerts these effects both directly and indirectly. GH itself directly stimulates these tissues, but it also induces the liver and other tissues to produce growth stimulants called **insulin-like growth factors (IGF-I and II),** or **somatomedins,**[11] which then stimulate target cells in diverse tissues. Most of these effects are caused by IGF-I, but IGF-II is important in fetal growth.

Hormones have a **half-life,** the time required for half of the hormone to be cleared from the blood. GH is short-lived; it has a half-life of 6 to 20 minutes. IGFs, by contrast, have half-lives of about 20 hours, so they greatly prolong the effect of GH. The mechanisms of GH-IGF action include:

- **Protein synthesis.** Tissue growth requires protein synthesis, and protein synthesis needs two things: amino acids for building material, and messenger RNA (mRNA) for instructions. Within minutes of GH secretion, preexisting mRNA is translated and proteins synthesized; within a few hours, DNA is transcribed and more mRNA is produced. GH enhances amino acid transport into cells, and to ensure that protein synthesis outpaces breakdown, it suppresses protein catabolism.
- **Lipid metabolism.** To provide energy for growing tissues, GH stimulates adipocytes to catabolize fat and

---

[11] Acronym for *somato*tropin *med*iating prote*in*

release free fatty acids (FFAs) and glycerol into the blood. GH has a **protein-sparing effect**—by liberating FFAs and glycerol for energy, it makes it unnecessary for cells to consume their proteins.

- **Carbohydrate metabolism.** GH also has a **glucose-sparing effect.** Its role in mobilizing FFAs reduces the body's dependence on glucose, which is used instead for glycogen synthesis and storage.
- **Electrolyte balance.** GH promotes Na^+, K^+, and Cl^- retention by the kidneys, enhances Ca^{2+} absorption by the small intestine, and makes these electrolytes available to the growing tissues.

The most conspicuous effects of GH are on bone, cartilage, and muscle growth, especially during childhood and adolescence. IGF-I stimulates bone growth at the epiphyseal plates. It promotes the multiplication of chondrocytes and osteogenic cells and stimulates protein deposition in the cartilage and bone matrix. In adulthood, it stimulates osteoblast activity and the appositional growth of bone; thus, it continues to influence bone thickening and remodeling.

The blood GH concentration declines gradually with age—averaging about 6 ng/mL (ng = nanograms) in adolescence and one-quarter of that in very old age. The resulting decline in protein synthesis may contribute to aging of the tissues, including wrinkling of the skin and decreasing muscular mass and strength. At age 30, the average adult body is 10% bone, 30% muscle, and 20% fat; at age 75, it averages 8% bone, 15% muscle, and 40% fat.

GH concentration fluctuates greatly over the course of a day. It rises to 20 ng/mL or higher during the first 2 hours of deep sleep and may reach 30 ng/mL in response to vigorous exercise. Smaller peaks occur after high-protein meals, but high-carbohydrate meals tend to suppress GH secretion. Trauma, hypoglycemia (low blood sugar), and other conditions also stimulate GH secretion.

Posterior Lobe Hormones

Antidiuretic[12] Hormone (ADH). ADH acts on the kidneys to increase water retention, reduce urine volume, and help prevent dehydration. We will study this hormone more extensively when we deal with the urinary system. ADH is also called *vasopressin* because it causes vasoconstriction at high concentrations. These concentrations are so unnatural for the human body, however, that this effect is of doubtful significance except in pathological states. ADH also functions as a brain neurotransmitter and is usually called vasopressin, or arginine vasopressin (AVP), in the neurobiology literature.

Oxytocin[13] (OT). OT has various reproductive roles. In childbirth, it stimulates smooth muscle of the uterus to contract, thus contributing to the labor contractions that expel the infant. In lactating mothers, it stimulates muscle-like cells of the mammary glands to squeeze on the glandular acini and force milk to flow down the ducts to the nipple. In both sexes, OT secretion surges during sexual arousal and orgasm. It may play a role in the propulsion of semen through the male reproductive tract, in uterine contractions that help transport sperm up the female reproductive tract, and in feelings of sexual satisfaction and emotional bonding.

Hormones of the pituitary gland are summarized in table 17.4.

Control of Pituitary Secretion

Pituitary hormones are not secreted at a steady rate. GH is secreted mainly at night, LH peaks at the middle of the menstrual cycle, and OT surges during labor and nursing, for example. The timing and amount of pituitary secretion are regulated by the hypothalamus, other brain centers, and feedback from the target organs.

Hypothalamic and Cerebral Control

Both lobes of the pituitary gland are strongly subject to control by the brain. As we have seen, the anterior lobe is regulated by releasing and inhibiting hormones from the hypothalamus. Thus, the brain can monitor conditions within and outside of the body and stimulate or inhibit the release of anterior lobe hormones appropriately. For example, in cold weather, the hypothalamus stimulates the pituitary to secrete thyroid-stimulating hormone, which indirectly helps generate body heat; in times of stress, it triggers ACTH secretion, which indirectly mobilizes materials needed for tissue repair; during pregnancy, it induces prolactin secretion so a woman will be prepared to lactate; after a high-protein meal, it triggers the release of growth hormone so we can best use the amino acids for tissue growth.

The posterior lobe of the pituitary is controlled by **neuroendocrine reflexes**—the release of hormones in response to signals from the nervous system. For example, the suckling of an infant stimulates nerve endings in the nipple. Sensory signals are transmitted through the spinal cord and brainstem to the hypothalamus and from there to the posterior pituitary. This causes the release of oxytocin, which results in milk ejection.

Antidiuretic hormone (ADH) is also controlled by a neuroendocrine reflex. Dehydration raises the osmolarity of the blood, which is detected by hypothalamic neurons called *osmoreceptors.* The osmoreceptors trigger ADH release, and ADH promotes water conservation. Excessive blood pressure, by contrast, stimulates stretch receptors in the heart and certain arteries. By another neuroendocrine reflex, this inhibits ADH release, increases urine output, and brings blood volume and pressure back to normal.

Neuroendocrine reflexes can also involve higher brain centers. For example, the milk-ejection reflex can be

---

[12] *anti* = against + *diuret* = to pass through, urinate
[13] *oxy* = sharp, quick + *toc* = childbirth

Table 17.4 Pituitary Hormones

Hormone	Target Organ	Principal Effects
Anterior Pituitary		
FSH: Follicle-stimulating hormone	Ovaries, testes	Female: growth of ovarian follicles and secretion of estrogen Male: sperm production
LH: Luteinizing hormone	Ovaries, testes	Female: ovulation, maintenance of corpus luteum Male: testosterone secretion
TSH: Thyroid-stimulating hormone	Thyroid gland	Growth of thyroid, secretion of thyroid hormone
ACTH: Adrenocorticotropic hormone	Adrenal cortex	Growth of adrenal cortex, secretion of corticosteroids
PRL: Prolactin	Mammary glands, testes	Female: milk synthesis Male: increased LH sensitivity and testosterone secretion
GH: Growth hormone (somatotropin)	Liver	Somatomedin secretion, widespread tissue growth
Posterior Pituitary		
ADH: Antidiuretic hormone	Kidneys	Water retention
OT: Oxytocin	Uterus, mammary glands	Labor contractions, milk release; possibly involved in ejaculation, sperm transport, and sexual affection

triggered when a lactating mother simply hears a baby cry. Emotional stress can affect the secretion of gonadotropins, thus disrupting ovulation, the menstrual rhythm, and fertility.

Think About It

Which of the unifying themes at the end of chapter 1 (p. 21) is best exemplified by the neuroendocrine reflexes that govern ADH secretion?

Feedback from Target Organs

The regulation of other endocrine glands by the pituitary is not simply a system of "command from the top down." Those target organs also regulate the pituitary and hypothalamus through various feedback loops.

Most often, this takes the form of **negative feedback inhibition**—the pituitary stimulates another endocrine gland to secrete its hormone, and that hormone feeds back to the pituitary and inhibits further secretion of the tropic hormone. All of the pituitary axes are controlled this way. Figure 17.6 shows negative feedback inhibition in the pituitary-thyroid axis as an example. The figure is numbered to correspond to the following description:

1. The hypothalamus secretes thyrotropin-releasing hormone (TRH).
2. TRH stimulates the anterior pituitary to secrete thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH).
3. TSH stimulates the thyroid gland to secrete the two thyroid hormones, T_3 and T_4.
4. T_3 and T_4 stimulate the metabolism of most cells throughout the body.

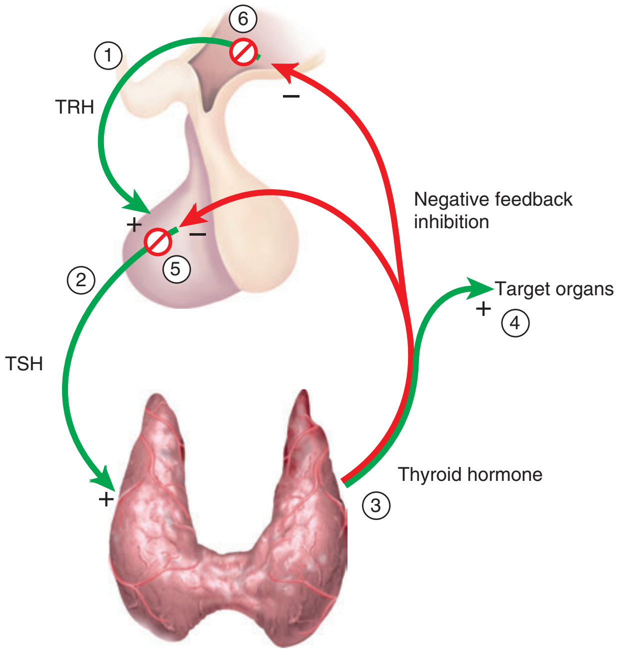


Figure 17.6 Negative Feedback Inhibition in the Pituitary-Thyroid Axis. See text for explanation of numbered steps. *Plus signs* and *green arrows* represent stimulatory effects; *minus signs* and *red arrows* indicate inhibitory effects.

5. T_3 and T_4 also *inhibit* the release of TSH by the pituitary.
6. To a lesser extent, T_3 and T_4 also *inhibit* the release of TRH by the hypothalamus.

Steps 5 and 6 are negative feedback inhibition of the pituitary and hypothalamus. These steps ensure that when thyroid hormone levels are high, TSH secretion remains low. If thyroid hormone secretion drops, TSH secretion rises and stimulates the thyroid to secrete more hormone. This negative feedback keeps thyroid hormone levels oscillating around a set point in typical homeostatic fashion.

Think About It

If the thyroid gland were removed from a cancer patient, would you expect the level of TSH to rise or fall? Why?

Feedback from a target organ is not always inhibitory. During labor, oxytocin triggers a positive feedback cycle. Uterine stretching sends a nerve signal to the brain that stimulates OT release. OT stimulates uterine contractions, which push the infant downward. This stretches the lower end of the uterus some more, which results in a nerve signal that stimulates still more OT release. This positive feedback cycle continues until the infant is born (see fig. 1.13, p. 19).

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

5. What are two good reasons for considering the pituitary to be two separate glands?
6. Name three anterior lobe hormones that have reproductive functions and three that have nonreproductive roles. What target organs are stimulated by each of these hormones?
7. Briefly contrast hypothalamic control of the anterior pituitary with its control of the posterior pituitary.
8. In what sense does the pituitary "take orders" from the target organs under its command?

Other Endocrine Glands

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the structure and location of the remaining organs of the endocrine system; and
- name the hormones these endocrine organs produce and state their functions.

The Pineal Gland

The **pineal**[14] (PIN-ee-ul) **gland** is a pine cone–shaped growth on the roof of the third ventricle of the brain, beneath the posterior end of the corpus callosum (see fig. 17.1). The philosopher René Descartes (1596–1650) thought it was the seat of the human soul. If so, children must have more soul than adults—a child's pineal gland is about 8 mm long and 5 mm wide, but after age seven it regresses rapidly and is no more than a tiny shrunken mass of fibrous tissue in the adult. Such shrinkage of an organ is called **involution.**[15] Pineal secretion peaks between the ages of 1 and 5 years and declines 75% by the end of puberty.

We no longer look for the human soul in the pineal gland, but this little organ remains an intriguing mystery. It produces **serotonin** by day and **melatonin** at night. In animals with seasonal breeding, it regulates the gonads and the annual breeding cycle. Melatonin may suppress gonadotropin secretion; removal of the pineal from animals causes premature sexual maturation. Some physiologists think that the pineal gland may regulate the timing of puberty in humans, but a clear demonstration of its role has remained elusive. Pineal tumors cause premature onset of puberty in boys, but such tumors also damage the hypothalamus, so we cannot be sure the effect is due specifically to pineal damage.

Insight 17.1 Clinical Application

Melatonin, SAD, and PMS

There seems to be a relationship between melatonin and mood disorders, including depression and sleep disturbances. Some people experience a mood dysfunction called *seasonal affective disorder (SAD),* especially in winter when the days are shorter and they get less exposure to sunlight, and in extreme northern and southern latitudes where sunlight may be dim to nonexistent for months at a time. SAD thus affects about 20% of the population in Alaska but only 2.5% in Florida. The symptoms—which include depression, sleepiness, irritability, and carbohydrate craving—can be relieved by 2 or 3 hours of exposure to bright light each day *(phototherapy).* Premenstrual syndrome (PMS) is similar to SAD and is also relieved by phototherapy. The melatonin level is elevated in both SAD and PMS and is reduced by phototherapy. However, there is also evidence that casts doubt on any causal link between melatonin and these mood disorders, so for now, "the jury is still out." Many people are taking melatonin for jet lag, and it is quite effective, but it is also risky to use when we know so little, as yet, about its potential effect on reproductive function.

The Thymus

The **thymus** is located in the mediastinum superior to the heart (fig. 17.7). Like the pineal, it is large in infants and children but involutes after puberty. In elderly people,

---

[14] *pineal* = pine cone

[15] *in* = inward + *volution* = rolling or turning

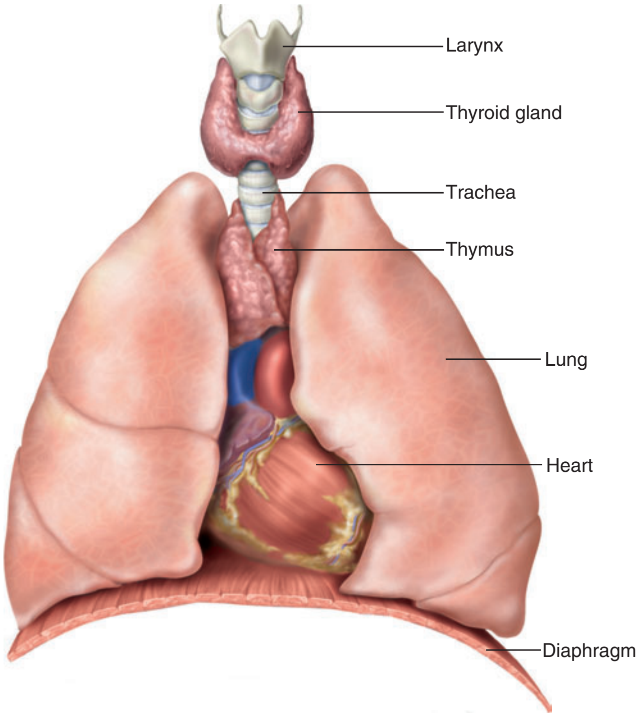

Larynx
Thyroid gland
Trachea
Thymus
Lung
Heart
Diaphragm

Figure 17.7 **Locations of the Thyroid Gland and Thymus.** Which of these glands will be markedly smaller than the other in a 50-year-old?

it is a shriveled vestige of its former self, with most of its parenchyma replaced by fibrous and adipose tissue. The thymus secretes *thymopoietin* and *thymosins,* hormones that regulate the development and later activation of disease-fighting blood cells called T lymphocytes (*T* for *thymus*). This is discussed in detail in chapter 21.

The Thyroid Gland

The **thyroid gland** is the largest endocrine gland; it weighs 20 to 25 g and receives one of the body's highest rates of blood flow per gram of tissue. It is wrapped around the anterior and lateral aspects of the trachea, immediately below the larynx. It consists of two large lobes, one on each side of the trachea, connected by a narrow anterior *isthmus* (fig. 17.8*a*).

Histologically, the thyroid is composed mostly of sacs called **thyroid follicles** (fig. 17.8*b*). Each is filled with a protein-rich colloid and lined by a simple cuboidal epithelium of **follicular cells.** These cells secrete two main thyroid hormones—$\mathbf{T_3}$, or **triiodothyronine** (try-EYE-oh-doe-THY-ro-neen), and **thyroxine,** also known as $\mathbf{T_4}$ or **tetraiodothyronine** (TET-ra-EYE-oh-doe-THY-ro-neen). These names refer to the fact that the two hormones contain three (T_3) and four (T_4) iodine atoms. The expression *thyroid hormone* refers to T_3 and T_4 collectively.

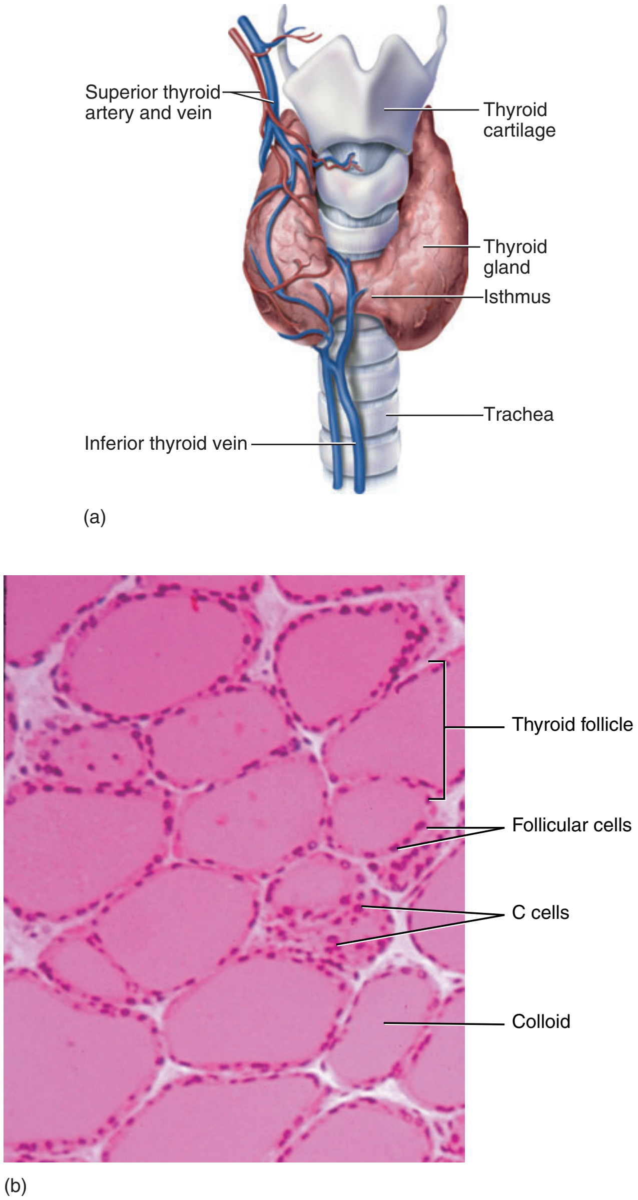

Superior thyroid artery and vein
Thyroid cartilage
Thyroid gland
Isthmus
Trachea
Inferior thyroid vein
(a)
Thyroid follicle
Follicular cells
C cells
Colloid
(b)

Figure 17.8 **The Thyroid Gland.** (*a*) Gross anatomy; (*b*) histology.

Thyroid hormone is secreted in response to TSH from the pituitary. The primary effect of TH is to increase the body's metabolic rate. As a result, it raises oxygen consumption and has a **calorigenic**[16] **effect**—it increases heat production. TH secretion rises in cold weather and thus helps to compensate for increased heat loss. To ensure an adequate blood and oxygen supply to meet this increased metabolic demand, thyroid hormone also raises the heart rate and contraction strength and raises the respiratory rate. It accelerates the breakdown of carbohydrates, fats, and protein for fuel and stimulates the appetite. Thyroid hormone promotes alertness, bone growth and remodeling, the development of the skin, hair, nails, and teeth, and fetal nervous system and skeletal development. It also stimulates the pituitary gland to secrete growth hormone.

---

[16] *calor* = heat + *genic* = producing

Calcitonin is another hormone produced by the thyroid gland. It comes from **C (calcitonin) cells,** also called *parafollicular cells,* found in clusters between the thyroid follicles. Calcitonin is secreted when blood calcium level rises. It antagonizes the action of parathyroid hormone (described shortly) and promotes calcium deposition and bone formation by stimulating osteoblast activity. Calcitonin is important mainly to children. It has relatively little effect in adults for reasons explained earlier (p. 232).

The Parathyroid Glands

The **parathyroid glands** are partially embedded in the posterior surface of the thyroid (fig. 17.9). There are usually four, each about 3 to 8 mm long and 2 to 5 mm wide. They secrete **parathyroid hormone (PTH)** in response to hypocalcemia. PTH raises blood calcium levels by promoting the synthesis of calcitriol, which in turn promotes intestinal calcium absorption; by inhibiting urinary calcium excretion; by promoting phosphate excretion (so the phosphate does not combine with calcium and deposit into the bones); and by indirectly stimulating osteoclasts to resorb bone. PTH and calcium metabolism are discussed in more detail in chapter 7.

The Adrenal Glands

An **adrenal (suprarenal) gland** sits like a cap on the superior pole of each kidney (fig. 17.10). In adults, the adrenal is about 5 cm (2 in.) long, 3 cm (1.2 in.) wide, and weighs about 4 g; it weighs about twice this much at birth. Like the pituitary gland, the adrenal gland is formed by the merger of two fetal glands with different origins and functions. Its inner core, the *adrenal medulla,* is a small portion of the total gland. Surrounding it is a much thicker *adrenal cortex.*

The Adrenal Medulla

The **adrenal medulla** was discussed as part of the sympathetic nervous system in chapter 15. It arises from the neural crest and is not fully formed until the age of three. It is actually a sympathetic ganglion consisting of modified neurons, called *chromaffin cells,* that lack dendrites and axons. These cells are richly innervated by sympathetic preganglionic fibers and respond to stimulation by secreting catecholamines, especially epinephrine and norepinephrine. About three-quarters of the output is epinephrine.

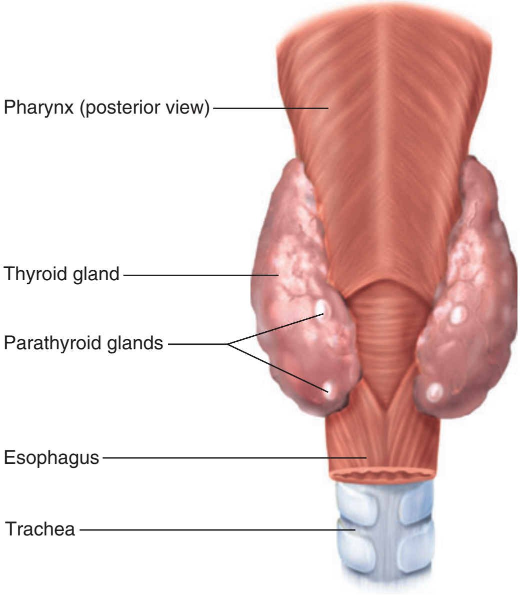


Figure 17.9 **The Parathyroid Glands.**

These hormones supplement the effects of the sympathetic nervous system, but their effects last much longer (about 30 min.) because the hormones circulate in the blood. They prepare the body for physical activity in several ways. They raise the blood pressure and heart rate, increase circulation to the skeletal muscles, increase pulmonary airflow, and inhibit such temporarily inessential functions as digestion and urine formation. They stimulate **glycogenolysis** (hydrolysis of glycogen to glucose) and **gluconeogenesis** (the synthesis of glucose from amino acids and other substrates), thus raising the blood glucose level. In order to further ensure an adequate supply of glucose to the brain, epinephrine inhibits insulin secretion and thus, the uptake and use of glucose by the muscles and other insulin-dependent organs. Thus, epinephrine has a glucose-sparing effect, sparing it from needless consumption by organs that can use alternative fuels to ensure that the nervous system has an adequate supply.

The medulla and cortex are not as functionally independent as once thought. The boundary between them is indistinct and some cells of the medulla extend into the cortex. When stress activates the sympathetic nervous system, these medullary cells secrete catecholamines that stimulate the cortex to secrete corticosterone.

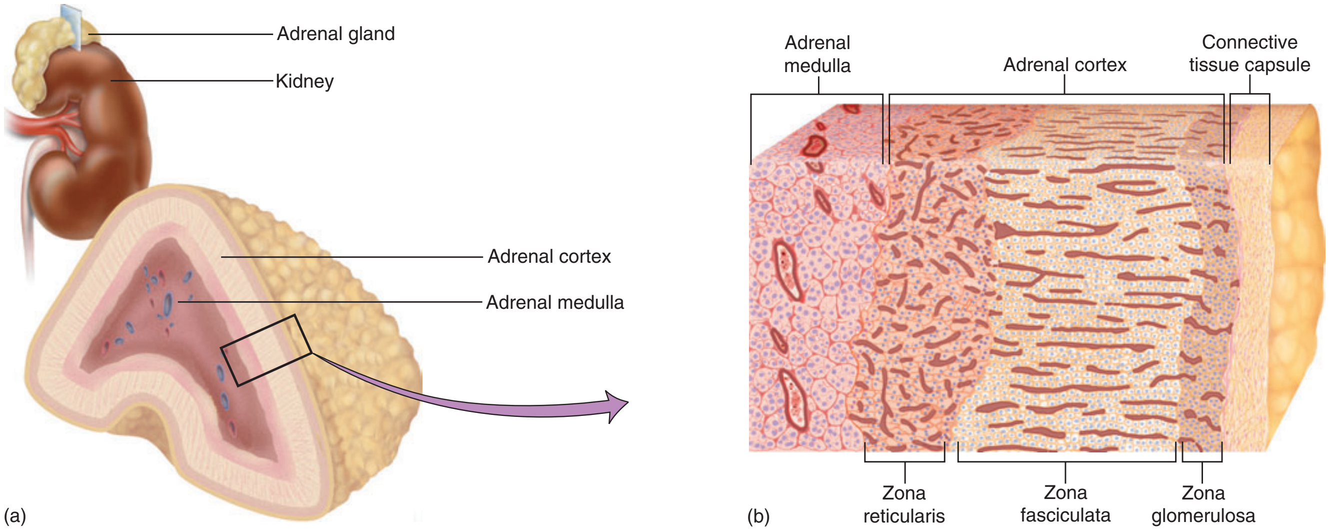


Figure 17.10 **The Adrenal Gland.** (*a*) Gross anatomy; (*b*) histology.

The Adrenal Cortex

The **adrenal cortex** has three layers of glandular tissue (fig. 17.10*b*)—an outer **zona glomerulosa**[17] (glo-MER-you-LO-suh) composed of globular cell clusters; a thick middle **zona fasciculata**[18] (fah-SIC-you-LAH-ta) composed of cell columns separated by blood sinuses; and an inner **zona reticularis**[19] (reh-TIC-you-LAR-iss), where the cells form a network. The cortex synthesizes more than 25 steroid hormones known collectively as the **corticosteroids,** or **corticoids.** The three tissue layers secrete, in the same order, the following corticosteroids:

1. **Mineralocorticoids** (zona glomerulosa only), which act on the kidneys to control electrolyte balance. The principal mineralocorticoid is **aldosterone,** which promotes Na^+ retention and K^+ excretion by the kidneys. Aldosterone is discussed more fully in chapter 24.
2. **Glucocorticoids** (mainly zona fasciculata), especially **cortisol (hydrocortisone); corticosterone** is a less potent relative. Glucocorticoids stimulate fat and protein catabolism, gluconeogenesis, and the release of fatty acids and glucose into the blood. This helps the body adapt to stress and repair damaged tissues. Glucocorticoids also have an anti-inflammatory effect and are widely used in ointments to relieve swelling and other signs of inflammation. Long-term secretion, however, suppresses the immune system for reasons we will see later in the discussion of stress.
3. **Sex steroids** (mainly zona reticularis), including weak **androgens** and smaller amounts of **estrogens.** Androgens control many aspects of male development and reproductive physiology. The principal adrenal androgen is **dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA)** (de-HY-dro-EP-ee-an-DROSS-tur-own). DHEA has weak hormonal effects in itself, but more importantly, other tissues convert it to the more potent androgen, **testosterone.** This source is relatively unimportant in men because the testes produce so much more testosterone than this. In women, however, the adrenal glands meet about 50% of the total androgen requirement. In both sexes, androgens stimulate the development of pubic and axillary hair and apocrine scent glands at puberty, and they sustain the libido (sex drive) throughout adult life.

Adrenal estrogen (estradiol) is of minor importance to women of reproductive age because its quantity is small compared to estrogen from the ovaries. After menopause, however, the ovaries no longer function and the adrenals are the only remaining estrogen source. Both androgens and estrogens promote adolescent skeletal growth and help to sustain adult bone mass.

---

[17] *zona* = zone + *glomerul* = little balls + *osa* = full of
[18] *fascicul* = little cords + *ata* = possessing
[19] *reticul* = little network + *aris* = like

Think About It

Which could a person more easily live without—the adrenal medulla or adrenal cortex? Why?

The Pancreas

The elongated spongy **pancreas** is located retroperitoneally, inferior and dorsal to the stomach (fig. 17.11). It is approximately 15 cm long and 2.5 cm thick. Most of it is an exocrine digestive gland, but scattered through the exocrine tissue are endocrine cell clusters called **pancreatic islets (islets of Langerhans[20]).** There are 1 to 2 million islets, but they constitute only about 2% of the pancreatic tissue. The islets secrete at least five hormones and paracrine products, the most important of which are insulin, glucagon, and somatostatin.

- **Insulin** is secreted by the **beta (β) cells** of the islets when we digest a meal and the level of glucose and amino acids in the blood rises. In such times of plenty, insulin stimulates cells to absorb glucose and amino acids from the blood and especially stimulates muscle and adipose tissue to store glycogen and fat. Essentially, insulin stimulates cells to store excess nutrients for later use, and it suppresses the use of already-stored fuels. The stored nutrients are then available for use between meals and overnight. By stimulating glycogen, fat, and protein synthesis, insulin promotes cell growth and differentiation. Insulin also antagonizes the effects of glucagon. Some cells and organs that do not depend on insulin for glucose uptake include the kidneys, brain, liver, and red blood cells. Insulin

---

[20] Paul Langerhans (1847–88), German anatomist

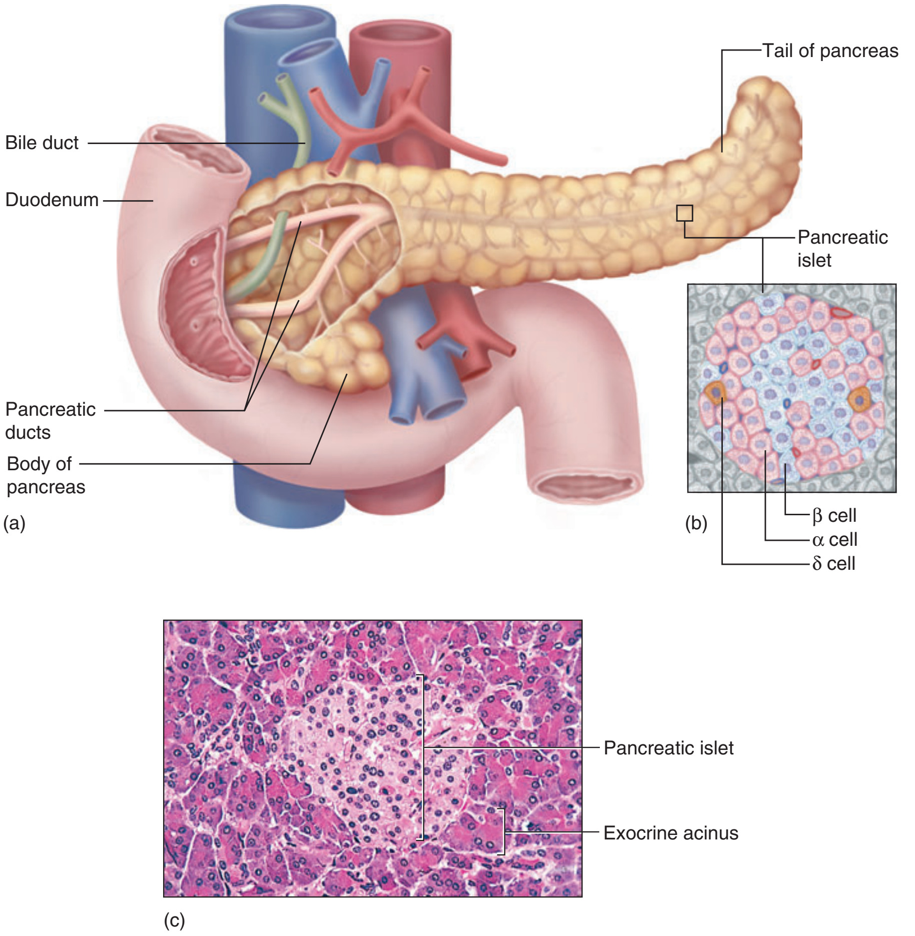


Figure 17.11 The Pancreas. (*a*) Gross anatomy and relationship to the duodenum and other nearby organs; (*b*) the α, β, and δ cells of a pancreatic islet; (c) light micrograph of a pancreatic islet amid the exocrine acini.

does, however, promote the liver's synthesis of glycogen from the absorbed glucose.

- **Glucagon** is secreted by **alpha (α) cells** when blood glucose concentration falls between meals. In the liver, it stimulates gluconeogenesis, glycogenolysis, and the release of glucose into circulation. In adipose tissue, it stimulates fat catabolism and the release of free fatty acids. Glucagon is also secreted in response to rising amino acid levels in the blood after a high-protein meal. By promoting amino acid absorption, it provides cells with raw material for gluconeogenesis.
- **Somatostatin** is secreted by the **delta (δ) cells** when blood glucose and amino acids rise after a meal. Somatostatin travels briefly in the blood and inhibits various digestive functions, but also acts locally in the pancreas as a *paracrine* secretion—a chemical messenger that diffuses through the tissue fluid to target cells a short distance away. Somatostatin inhibits the secretion of glucagon and insulin by the neighboring α and β cells.

Any hormone that raises blood glucose concentration is called a *hyperglycemic hormone.* You may have noticed that glucagon is not the only hormone that does so; so do growth hormone, epinephrine, norepinephrine, cortisol, and corticosterone. Insulin is called a *hypoglycemic hormone* because it lowers blood glucose levels.

The Gonads

Like the pancreas, the **gonads** are both endocrine and exocrine. Their exocrine products are eggs and sperm, and their endocrine products are the gonadal hormones, most of which are steroids.

Each follicle of the ovary contains an egg cell surrounded by a wall of **granulosa cells** (fig. 17.12*a*). The granulosa cells produce an estrogen called **estradiol** in the first half of the menstrual cycle. After ovulation, the corpus luteum secretes estradiol and **progesterone** for 12 days or so, or for 8 to 12 weeks in the event of pregnancy. The functions of estradiol and progesterone are discussed in chapter 28. In brief, they contribute to the development of the

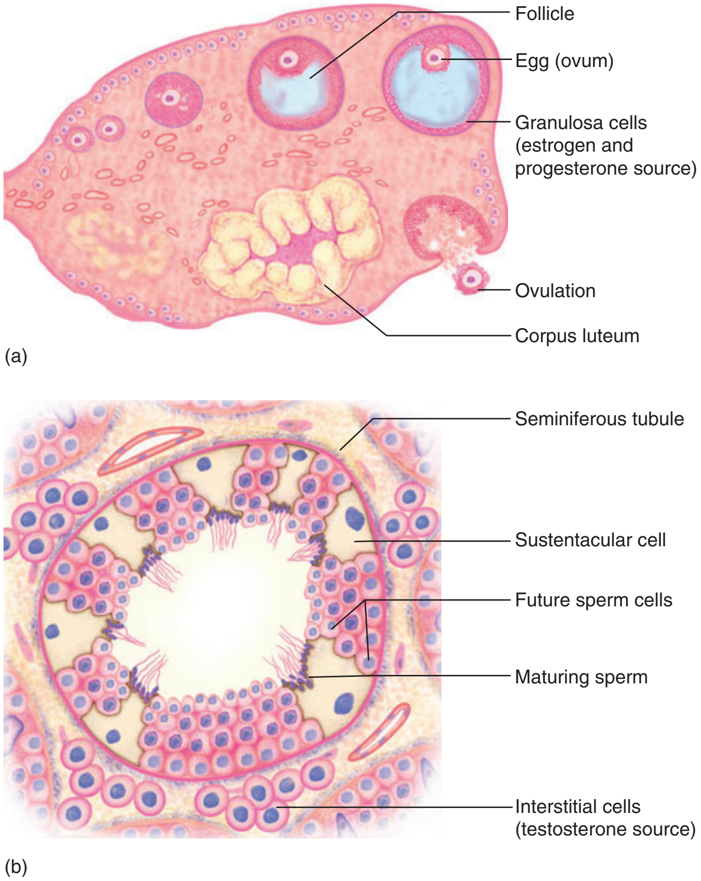


Figure 17.12 The Gonads. (*a*) Histology of the ovary; (*b*) histology of the testis. The granulosa cells of the ovary and interstitial cells of the testis are endocrine cells.

reproductive system and feminine physique, they promote adolescent bone growth, they regulate the menstrual cycle, they sustain pregnancy, and they prepare the mammary glands for lactation. The follicle and corpus luteum also secrete **inhibin,** which suppresses FSH secretion by means of negative feedback inhibition of the anterior pituitary.

The testis consists mainly of microscopic *seminiferous tubules* that produce sperm. Nestled between them are clusters of **interstitial cells** (fig. 17.12*b*), which produce testosterone and lesser amounts of weaker androgens and estrogen. Testosterone stimulates development of the male reproductive system in the fetus and adolescent, the development of the masculine physique in adolescence, and the sex drive. It sustains sperm production and the sexual instinct throughout adult life. **Sustentacular (Sertoli[21]) cells** of the testis secrete inhibin, which suppresses FSH secretion and thus homeostatically stabilizes the rate of sperm production.

Endocrine Functions of Other Organs

Several other organs have hormone-secreting cells:

- **The heart.** High blood pressure stretches the heart wall and stimulates muscle cells in the atria to secrete **atrial natriuretic[22] peptide (ANP).** ANP increases sodium excretion and urine output and opposes the action of angiotensin II, described shortly. Together, these effects lower the blood pressure.
- **The skin.** Keratinocytes of the epidermis produce vitamin D_3, the first step in the synthesis of **calcitriol.** Its synthesis is completed by the liver and kidneys, as detailed in chapter 7.
- **The liver.** The liver converts vitamin D_3 to calcidiol, the second step in calcitriol synthesis. It is one of the sources of IGF-I, which mediates the action of growth hormone. It secretes about 15% of the body's **erythropoietin (EPO)** (eh-RITH-ro-POY-eh-tin), a hormone that stimulates the bone marrow to produce red blood cells. The liver also secretes a hormone precursor called *angiotensinogen.* In the blood, angiotensinogen is converted to angiotensin I by a kidney enzyme *(renin)* and then to angiotensin II by a lung enzyme *(angiotensin-converting enzyme, ACE).* Angiotensin II is a hormone that stimulates vasoconstriction and aldosterone secretion. Together, these effects raise blood pressure.
- **The kidneys.** The kidneys convert calcidiol to calcitriol, the active form of vitamin D. Calcitriol promotes calcium absorption by the small intestine, somewhat inhibits calcium loss in the urine, and thus makes more calcium available for bone deposition and other metabolic needs. The kidneys also produce about 85% of our EPO, and convert angiotensinogen to angiotensin I.
- **The stomach and small intestine.** These have various *enteroendocrine cells,*[23] which secrete at least 10 **enteric hormones.** In general, they coordinate the different regions and glands of the digestive system with each other (see chapter 25).
- **The placenta.** This organ performs many functions in pregnancy, including fetal nutrition and waste removal. But it also secretes estrogen (estriol and estradiol), progesterone, and other hormones that regulate pregnancy and stimulate development of the fetus and the mother's mammary glands (see chapter 28).

You can see that the endocrine system is extensive. It includes numerous discrete glands as well as individual cells in the tissues of other organs. The endocrine organs and tissues other than the hypothalamus and pituitary are reviewed in table 17.5.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

9. Name three endocrine glands that are larger in children than in adults.
10. What is the value of the calorigenic effect of thyroid hormone?
11. Name a glucocorticoid, a mineralocorticoid, and a catecholamine secreted by the adrenal gland.
12. Does the action of glucocorticoids more closely resemble that of glucagon or insulin? Explain.
13. What is the difference between a gonadal hormone and a gonadotropin?

Hormones and Their Actions

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- identify the chemical classes to which various hormones belong;
- describe how hormones are synthesized and transported to their target organs;
- describe how hormones stimulate their target cells;
- explain how target cells regulate their sensitivity to circulating hormones;
- explain how hormones are removed from circulation after they have performed their roles; and
- explain how hormones affect each other when two or more of them stimulate the same target cells.

---

[21] Enrico Sertoli (1824–1910), Italian histologist

[22] *natri* = sodium + *uretic* = pertaining to urine

[23] *entero* = intestine

Table 17.5 Hormones from Sources Other than the Hypothalamus and Pituitary

Hormone	Target	Principal Effects
Pineal Gland		
Melatonin and serotonin	Brain	Influence mood; may regulate the timing of puberty
Thymus		
Thymopoietin and thymosins	T lymphocytes	Stimulate T lymphocytes
Thyroid		
Triiodothyronine (T_3) and thyroxine (T_4)	Most tissues	Elevate metabolic rate, O_2 consumption, and heat production; stimulate circulation and respiration; promote nervous system and skeletal development
Calcitonin	Bone	Promotes Ca^{2+} deposition and ossification; reduces blood Ca^{2+} level
Parathyroids		
Parathyroid hormone (PTH)	Bone, kidneys	Increases blood Ca^{2+} level by stimulating bone resorption and calcitriol synthesis and reducing urinary Ca^{2+} excretion
Adrenal Medulla		
Epinephrine, norepinephrine, dopamine	Most tissues	Complement effects of sympathetic nervous system
Adrenal Cortex		
Aldosterone	Kidney	Promotes Na^+ retention and K^+ excretion, maintains blood pressure and volume
Cortisol and corticosterone	Most tissues	Stimulate fat and protein catabolism, gluconeogenesis, stress resistance, and tissue repair; inhibit immune system
Androgen (DHEA) and estrogen	Bone, muscle, integument, many other tissues	Growth of pubic and axillary hair, bone growth, sex drive, male prenatal development
Pancreatic Islets		
Insulin	Most tissues	Stimulates glucose and amino acid uptake; lowers blood glucose level; promotes glycogen, fat, and protein synthesis
Glucagon	Primarily liver	Stimulates gluconeogenesis, glycogen and fat breakdown, release of glucose and fatty acids into circulation
Ovaries		
Estradiol	Many tissues	Stimulates female reproductive development, regulates menstrual cycle and pregnancy, prepares mammary glands for lactation
Progesterone	Uterus, mammary glands	Regulates menstrual cycle and pregnancy, prepares mammary glands for lactation
Inhibin	Anterior pituitary	Inhibits FSH secretion
Testes		
Testosterone	Many tissues	Stimulates reproductive development, skeletomuscular growth, sperm production, and libido
Inhibin	Anterior pituitary	Inhibits FSH secretion
Heart		
Atrial natriuretic peptide	Kidney	Lowers blood volume and pressure by promoting Na^+ and water loss

(continued)

Table 17.5 Hormones from Sources Other than the Hypothalamus and Pituitary (continued)

Hormone	Target	Principal Effects
Skin		
Vitamin D_3	—	First step in calcitriol synthesis (see kidneys)
Liver		
Calcidiol	—	Second step in calcitriol synthesis (see kidneys)
IGF-I	Many tissues	Mediates action of growth hormone
Erythropoietin	Red bone marrow	Promotes red blood cell production
Angiotensinogen (a prohormone)	Blood vessels	Precursor of angiotensin II, a vasoconstrictor
Kidneys		
Calcitriol	Small intestine, kidneys	Promotes bone deposition by increasing calcium and phosphate absorption in small intestine and reducing their urinary loss
Erythropoietin	Red bone marrow	Promotes red blood cell production
Stomach and Small Intestine		
Enteric hormones	Stomach and intestines	Coordinate digestive motility and secretion
Placenta		
Estrogen, progesterone, and others	Many tissues of mother and fetus	Enhance effects of ovarian hormones on fetal development, maternal reproductive system, and preparation for lactation

Having surveyed the body's major hormones and their effects, we are left with some deeper questions: Exactly what is a hormone? How are hormones synthesized and transported to their destinations? How does a hormone produce its effects on a target organ? Thus, we now address endocrinology at the molecular and cellular levels.

Hormone Chemistry

Most hormones fall into three chemical classes—*steroids, peptides,* and *monoamines* (table 17.6).

1. **Steroid hormones** are derived from cholesterol. They include sex steroids produced by the testes and ovaries (such as estrogens, progesterone, and testosterone) and corticosteroids produced by the adrenal gland (such as cortisol, corticosterone, aldosterone, and DHEA). Calcitriol, the calcium-regulating hormone, is not a steroid but is derived from one and has the same hydrophobic character and mode of action as the steroids.
2. **Peptide hormones** are chains of 3 to 200 or more amino acids. The two posterior pituitary hormones, oxytocin and antidiuretic hormone, are very similar oligopeptides; they differ in only two of their nine amino acids (fig. 17.13). Except for dopamine, the releasing and inhibiting hormones produced by the hypothalamus are polypeptides. Most hormones of the anterior pituitary are polypeptides or glycoproteins—polypeptides conjugated with short carbohydrate chains. All glycoprotein hormones have an identical α chain of 92 amino acids and a variable β chain that distinguishes them from each other.
3. **Monoamines (biogenic amines)** were introduced in chapter 12, since this class also includes several neurotransmitters (see fig. 12.18, p. 465). The monoamine hormones include epinephrine, norepinephrine, dopamine, melatonin, and thyroid hormone. The first three of these are also called *catecholamines.* Monoamines are made from amino acids and retain an amino group, from which this hormone class gets its name.

Hormone Synthesis

All hormones are made from either cholesterol or amino acids.

Steroids

Steroid hormones are synthesized from cholesterol and differ mainly in the functional groups attached to the four-

Table 17.6 Chemical Classification of Hormones

Steroids and Steroid Derivatives
Aldosterone
Calcitriol
Corticosterone
Cortisone
Estrogens
Progesterone
Testosterone
Oligopeptides (3–10 amino acids)
Angiotensin II
Antidiuretic hormone
Gonadotropin-releasing hormone
Oxytocin
Thyrotropin-releasing hormone
Polypeptides (14–199 amino acids)
Adrenocorticotropic hormone
Atrial natriuretic peptide
Calcitonin
Corticotropin-releasing hormone
Glucagon
Growth hormone
Growth hormone–releasing hormone
Insulin
Parathyroid hormone
Prolactin
Somatostatin
Glycoproteins (92 amino acids in the α chain, 112–18 amino acids in the β chain)
Follicle-stimulating hormone
Human chorionic gonadotropin
Inhibin
Luteinizing hormone
Thyroid-stimulating hormone
Monoamines
Dopamine
Epinephrine
Melatonin
Norepinephrine
Serotonin
Thyroxine (T_4)
Triiodothyronine (T_3)

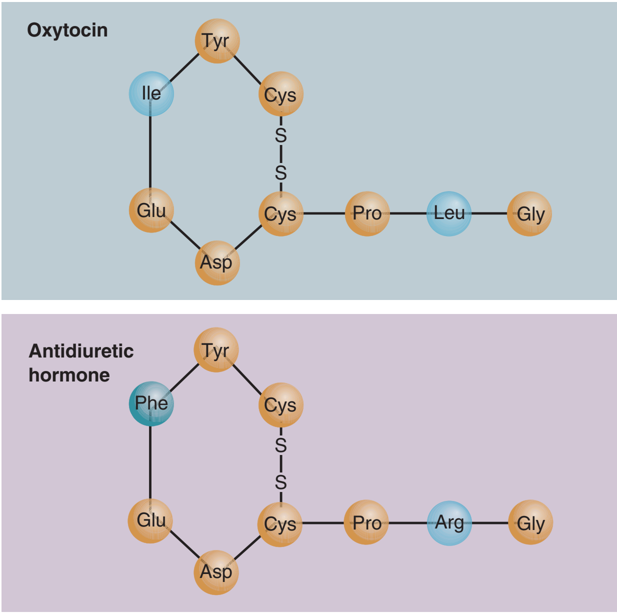


Figure 17.13 **Oxytocin and Antidiuretic Hormone.** Note the structural similarity of these two hormones of the posterior pituitary.

ringed steroid backbone. Figure 17.14 shows the synthetic pathway for several steroid hormones. Notice that while estrogen and progesterone are typically thought of as "female" hormones and testosterone as a "male" hormone, these sex steroids are interrelated in their synthesis and thus have roles in both sexes.

Peptides

Peptide hormones are synthesized the same way as any other protein. The gene for the hormone is transcribed to form a molecule of mRNA, and ribosomes translate the mRNA and assemble amino acids in the right order to make the hormone. The newly synthesized polypeptide is an inactive **preprohormone.** It has a signal peptide of hydrophobic amino acids that guide it into the cisterna of the rough endoplasmic reticulum (as explained on p. 139). Here, the signal peptide is split off and the remainder of the polypeptide is now a **prohormone.** The prohormone is transferred to the Golgi complex, which may further cut and splice it and then package the hormone for secretion.

Insulin, for example, begins as *preproinsulin.* When the signal peptide is removed, the chain folds back on itself and forms three disulfide bridges. It is now called *proinsulin.* Enzymes in the Golgi complex then remove a large middle segment called the *connecting (C) peptide.* The remainder is now insulin, composed of two polypeptide chains totaling 51 amino acids, connected to each other by two of the three disulfide bridges (fig. 17.15). The

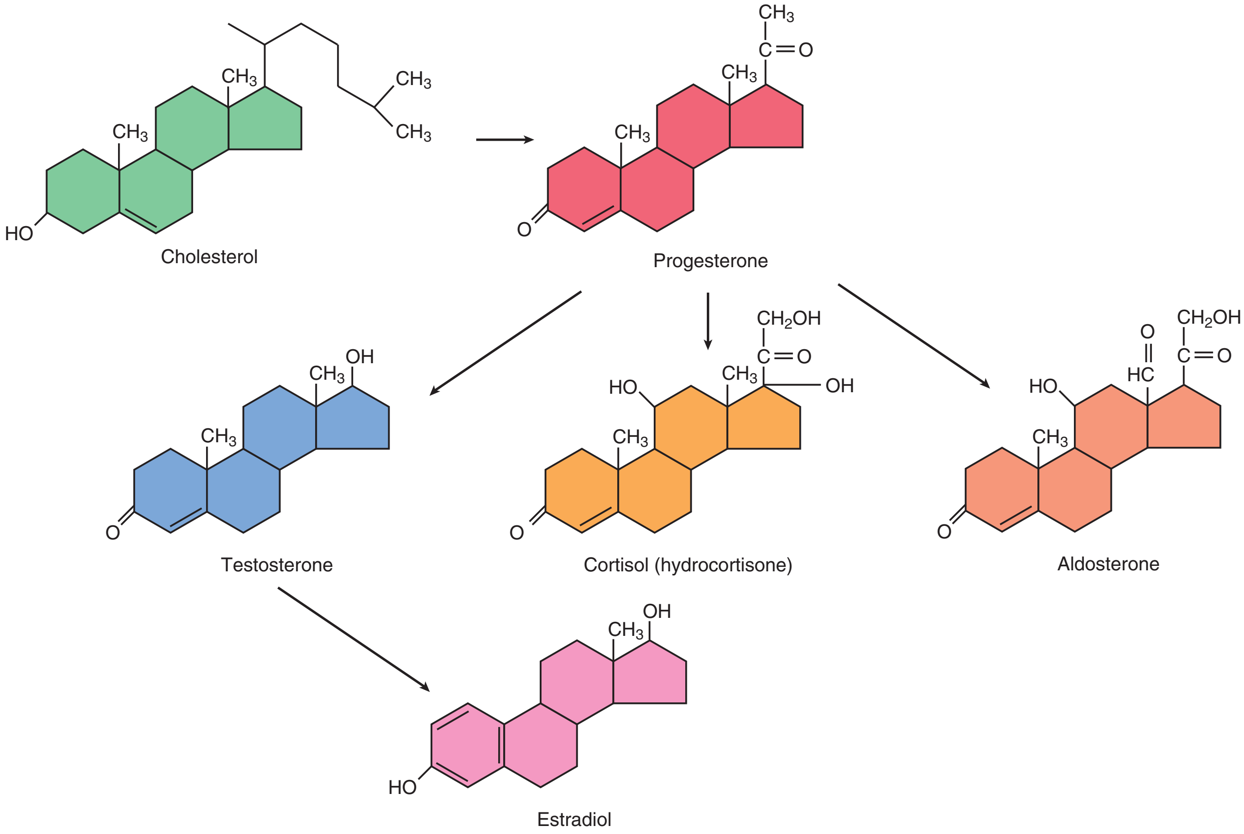


Figure 17.14 **The Synthesis of Steroid Hormones from Cholesterol.** The ovaries secrete progesterone and estradiol, the testes and adrenal cortex secrete testosterone, and the adrenal cortex secretes cortisol and aldosterone.

C peptide is not wasted; it has recently been found to have some hormonal effects of its own, binding to cellular receptors and reducing some of the pathological effects of diabetes mellitus.

Think About It

During the synthesis of glycoprotein hormones, where in the cell would the carbohydrate be added? (See chapter 4.)

Monoamines

Melatonin is synthesized from the amino acid tryptophan and the other monoamines from the amino acid tyrosine. Thyroid hormone (TH) is an unusual case in three respects: (1) its synthesis begins with the production of a large protein called **thyroglobulin,** although this protein is not part of the finished TH; (2) TH is composed of *two* tyrosine molecules linked together; and (3) the synthesis of TH requires a mineral, iodine. TH is synthesized in the follicles of the thyroid gland by the process shown in figure 17.16, numbered to correspond to the following description.

1. The thyroid follicle cells secrete thyroglobulin into the lumen of the follicle, forming a colloid that fills an active follicle. Thyroglobulin has 123 tyrosines, but only 4 to 8 of them are destined to become incorporated into thyroid hormone.
2. The follicle cells actively transport iodide ions (I^-) from the blood into the cell and release them into the lumen. Here, the iodine is immediately oxidized to neutral iodine (I).
3. An iodine is added to a tyrosine of the thyroglobulin molecule, converting it to *monoiodotyrosine* (MON-oh-eye-OH-doe-TIE-ro-seen), or *MIT.*
4. Another iodine *may* be added, converting MIT to *diiodotyrosine,* or *DIT.*
5. DIT can combine either with an MIT, as shown in the figure, or with another DIT. The small arrow in the figure shows where the oxygen of DIT bonds with

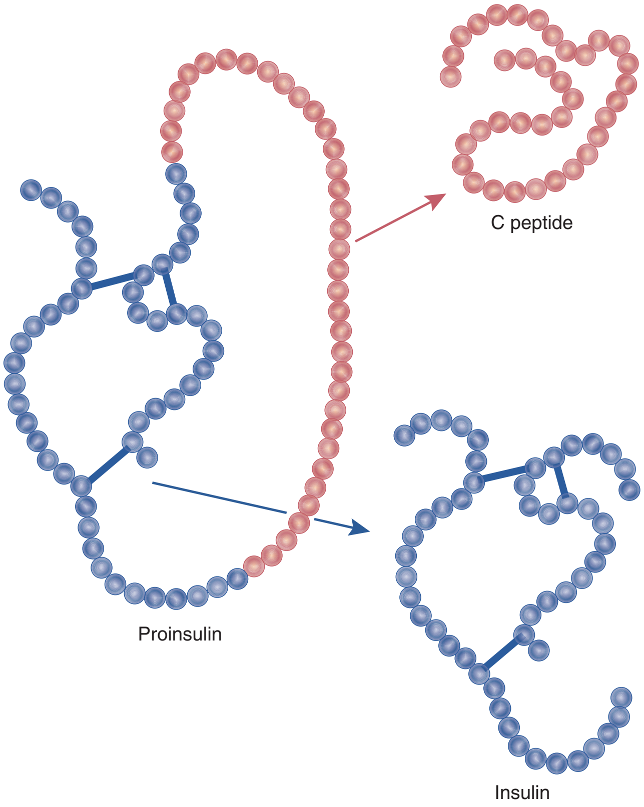


Figure 17.15 **The Synthesis of Insulin, a Representative Polypeptide Hormone.** Proinsulin has a connecting (C) peptide, 35 amino acids long, that is removed to leave insulin. Insulin has two polypeptide chains, 30 and 21 amino acids long, joined by two disulfide (–S–S–) bridges.

the carbon ring of the MIT. MIT splits away from its thyroglobulin backbone at this stage, but the DIT remains linked to the thyroglobulin. At this point, the hormone T_3 is essentially formed. (If two DITs combine, the hormone produced is T_4. It has another iodine at the point indicated by the red arrow.)

6. When stimulated by TSH, the follicle cells take up droplets of colloid by pinocytosis (return to the top of the figure). A lysosome fuses with the pinocytotic vesicle and contributes an enzyme that hydrolyzes the thyroglobulin and liberates the thyroid hormone (step 6 at the bottom).
7. TH is released into the blood as a mixture of about 10% T_3 and 90% T_4.

Hormone Transport

To get from an endocrine cell to a target cell, a hormone must travel in the blood, which is mostly water. Most of the monoamines and peptides are hydrophilic, so mixing with the blood plasma presents no problem for them. Steroids and thyroid hormone, however, are hydrophobic and must bind to hydrophilic **transport proteins** to get to their destination. The transport proteins are albumins and globulins synthesized by the liver. A hormone attached to a transport protein is called **bound hormone,** and one that is not attached is an **unbound (free) hormone.** Only the unbound hormone can leave a blood capillary and get to a target cell (fig. 17.17).

Transport proteins not only enable hydrophobic hormones to travel in the blood, they also prolong their half-lives. They protect circulating hormones from being broken down by enzymes in the blood plasma and liver and from being filtered out of the blood by the kidneys. Free hormone may be broken down or removed from the blood in a few minutes, whereas bound hormone may circulate for hours to weeks.

Thyroid hormone binds to three transport proteins in the blood plasma: *albumin,* an albumin-like protein called *thyretin,* and an α-globulin named *thyroxine-binding globulin (TBG).* TBG binds the greatest amount. About 99.8% of T_3 and 99.98% of T_4 are protein-bound. Bound TH serves as a long-lasting blood reservoir, so even if the thyroid is surgically removed (as for cancer surgery), no signs of TH deficiency appear for about 2 weeks. Steroid hormones bind to globulins such as *transcortin,* the transport protein for cortisol. Aldosterone is unusual. It has no specific transport protein, but binds weakly to albumin and others. However, 85% of it remains unbound, and correspondingly, it has a half-life of only 20 minutes.

Hormone Receptors and Mode of Action

Hormones stimulate only those cells that have receptors for them. The receptors are protein or glycoprotein molecules located on the plasma membrane, on mitochondria and other organelles in the cytoplasm, or in the nucleus. They act like switches to turn certain metabolic pathways on or off when the hormone binds to them. A target cell usually has a few thousand receptors for a given hormone. Receptor defects lie at the heart of several endocrine diseases (see insight 17.2).

Insight 17.2 Clinical Application

Hormone Receptors and Therapy

In treating endocrine disorders, it is essential to understand the role of hormone receptors. For example, type II diabetes mellitus is thought to result from an insulin receptor defect or deficiency (among other possible causes). No amount of insulin replacement can correct this. And while growth hormone is now abundantly available thanks to genetic engineering, it is useless to children with *Laron dwarfism,* who have a

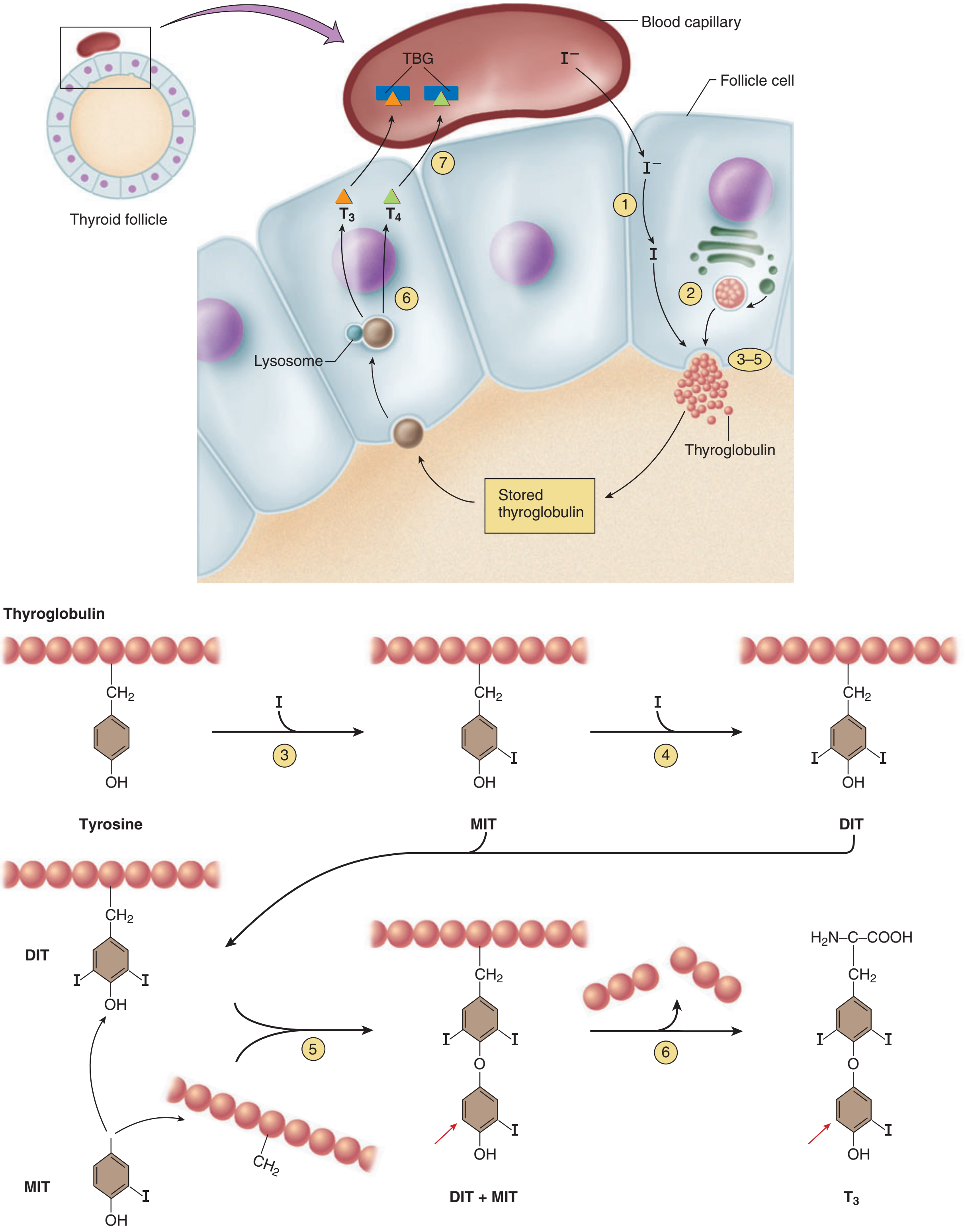

Thyroid follicle
Blood capillary
TBG
I^-
Follicle cell
7
T_3
T_4
1
I^-
I
2
6
Lysosome
3–5
Thyroglobulin
Stored thyroglobulin
Thyroglobulin
CH_2
OH
Tyrosine
I
3
MIT
4
DIT
DIT
MIT
CH_2
5
6
DIT + MIT
$H_2N–C–COOH$
O
T_3

Figure 17.16 **Synthesis of Thyroid Hormone (TH).** See text for explanation of numbered steps. The *upper part* of the figure shows where the processes of TH synthesis and secretion occur. The *lower part* shows the chemistry of steps 3 to 6. T_3 synthesis is used as an example to show the roles played by both MIT and DIT. In T_4 synthesis, two DITs would combine at step 5 and there would be another iodine atom at the point marked by the *red arrows.*

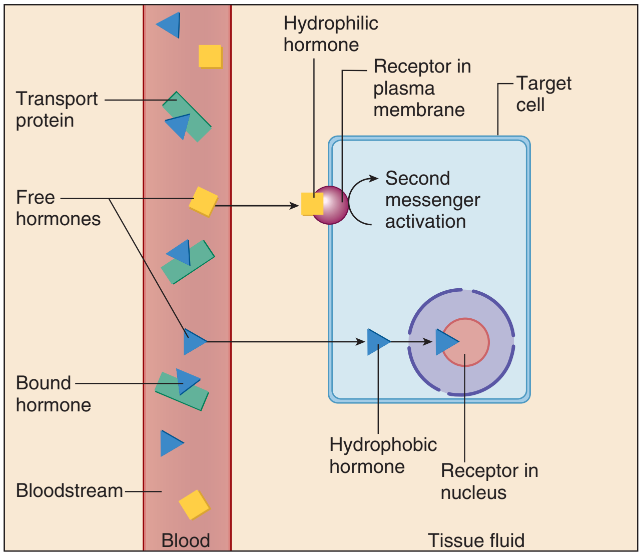


Figure 17.17 **Transport and Action of Hormones.** Hydrophobic hormones are carried in the blood by transport proteins. They enter the target cell and bind to receptors in the cytoplasm or nucleus. Hydrophilic hormones usually do not employ transport proteins. They bind to receptors at the target cell surface and activate the formation of second messengers in the target cell.

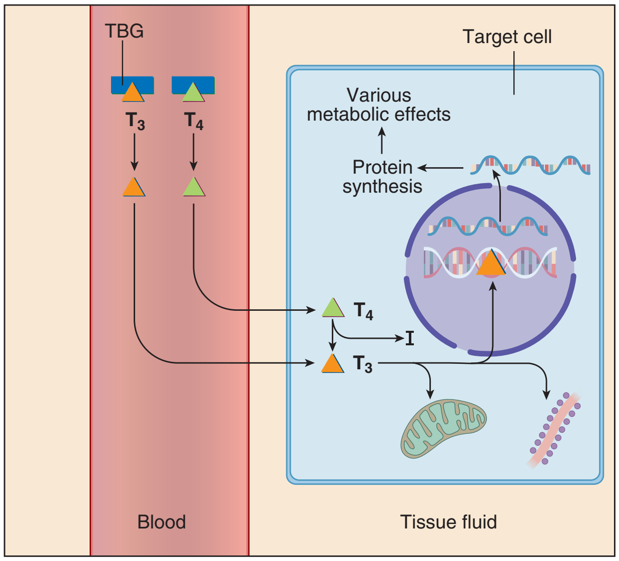


Figure 17.18 **The Action of Thyroid Hormone on a Target Cell.** T_3 and T_4 dissociate from thyroxine-binding globulin (TBG), leave the bloodstream, and enter the target cell cytoplasm. Here, T_4 is converted to T_3 by the removal of one iodine atom. T_3 may bind to receptors on the mitochondria or ribosomes, or enter the nucleus and activate genetic transcription.

hereditary defect in their GH receptors. *Androgen insensitivity syndrome* is due to an androgen receptor defect or deficiency; it causes genetic males to develop feminine genitalia and other features (see insight 27.1, p. 1021). Estrogen stimulates the growth of some malignant tumors with estrogen receptors. For this reason, estrogen replacement therapy should not be used for women with estrogen-dependent cancer.

Receptor-hormone interactions are similar to the enzyme-substrate interactions described in chapter 2. Unlike enzymes, receptors do not chemically change their ligands, but they do exhibit enzymelike specificity and saturation. *Specificity* means that the receptor for one hormone will not bind other hormones. *Saturation* is the condition in which all the receptor molecules are occupied by hormone molecules. Adding more hormone cannot produce any greater effect.

Steroids and Thyroid Hormone

The hydrophilic steroid and thyroid hormones easily penetrate the phospholipid plasma membrane of a target cell and enter the cytoplasm. Steroids enter the nucleus and bind to a receptor associated with the DNA. The receptor has three functional regions that explain its action on the DNA: one that binds the hormone, one that binds to an *acceptor site* on the chromatin, and one that activates DNA transcription at that site. Transcription produces new mRNA that leads to the synthesis of proteins, which then alter the metabolism of the target cell. Estrogen, for example, stimulates cells of the uterine lining to synthesize proteins that act as progesterone receptors. Progesterone, which comes later in the menstrual cycle, then binds to these receptors and stimulates the cells to produce enzymes that synthesize glycogen. Glycogen prepares the uterus to nourish an embryo in the event of pregnancy.

Even though T_4 constitutes 90% of the secreted thyroid hormone, it has little direct metabolic effect on the target cells. Unbound T_3 and T_4 enter the target cell cytoplasm, where an enzyme converts the T_4 to T_3 by removing one iodine. T_3 binds to receptors in three sites: on mitochondria, where it increases the rate of aerobic respiration; on ribosomes, where it stimulates the translation of mRNA and thus increases the rate of protein synthesis; and in the nucleus, where it binds to receptors in the chromatin and stimulates DNA transcription (mRNA synthesis) (fig. 17.18). One of the proteins produced under the influence of T_3 is Na^+-K^+ ATPase—the sodium-potassium pump. As we saw in chapter 3 (p. 111), one of the functions of Na^+-K^+ ATPase is to generate heat, thus accounting for the calorigenic effect of thyroid hormone.

Peptides and Catecholamines

Peptides and catecholamines (hydrophilic hormones) cannot penetrate into a target cell, so they must stimulate its physiology indirectly. They bind to cell-surface receptors, which are linked to second-messenger systems on the other side of the plasma membrane (see fig. 17.17). The best-known second messenger is cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP). When glucagon binds to liver cell receptors, for example, the receptor activates a G protein, which in turn activates adenylate cyclase, the membrane enzyme that produces cAMP. cAMP leads ultimately to the activation of enzymes that hydrolyze glycogen stored in the liver cell (fig. 17.19). Somatostatin, however, works by *inhibiting* cAMP synthesis. Atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP) works through a similar second messenger, cyclic guanosine monophosphate (cGMP). These second messengers do not linger in the cell for long. cAMP, for example, is broken down very quickly by an enzyme called **phosphodiesterase.**

Other second messengers include **diacylglycerol (diglyceride)** and **inositol triphosphate (IP_3)** (fig. 17.20). In oxytocin action, for example, the receptor activates a G protein and the G protein activates a membrane enzyme, *phospholipase.* Phospholipase breaks down certain phospholipids of the plasma membrane into diacylglycerol and IP_3. Diacylglycerol activates protein kinases much like cAMP does, with similarly diverse effects. IP_3 binds to the smooth endoplasmic reticulum or to ligand-gated calcium channels in the plasma membrane. In either case, it triggers a flood of Ca^{2+} into the cytoplasm. Calcium, the *third messenger,* can do several things: open or close channels that alter the permeability and membrane potential of the cell; directly activate certain enzymes; or bind to a cytoplasmic receptor called **calmodulin,** which in turn activates protein kinases.

A given hormone doesn't always employ the same second messenger. Antidiuretic hormone (ADH) employs the IP_3-calcium system in smooth muscle but the cAMP system in kidney tubules. Insulin is unusual in comparison to other peptide hormones. Rather than using a second-messenger system, it binds to a plasma membrane enzyme, tyrosine kinase, that directly phosphorylates cytoplasmic proteins.

Think About It

From the moment either hormone enters the bloodstream, insulin works much more quickly than estrogen. In view of how each hormone acts on its target cells, explain why.

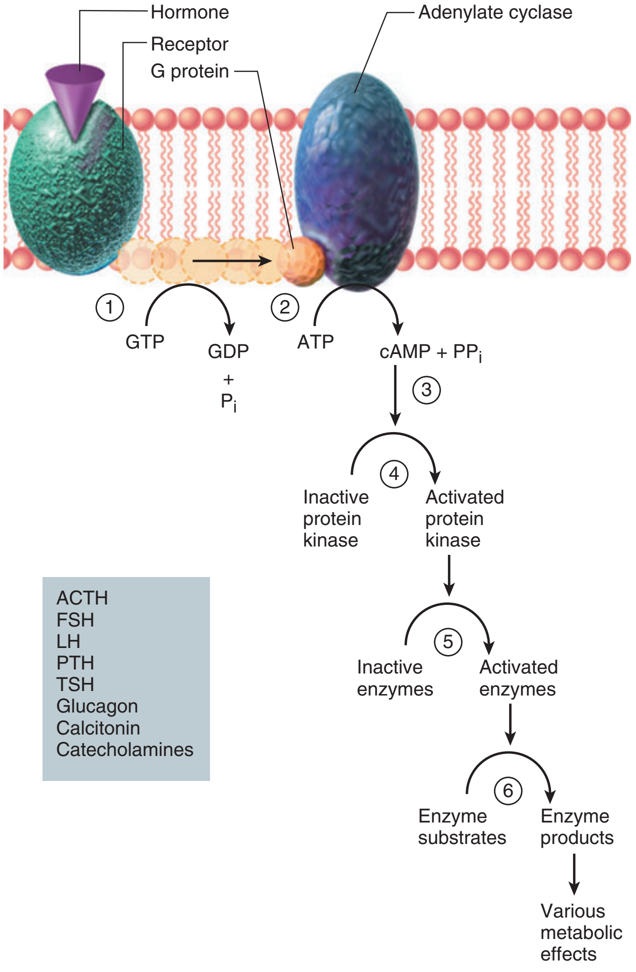


Figure 17.19 **Cyclic AMP as a Second Messenger.** (*1*) The binding of a hormone to a membrane receptor activates a G protein. (*2*) The G protein activates adenylate cyclase. (*3*) Adenylate cyclase produces cAMP. (*4*) cAMP activates protein kinases. (*5*) Protein kinases phosphorylate enzymes and other proteins in the cytoplasm. Some enzymes are activated and others are deactivated by this phosphorylation. (*6*) Activated enzymes catalyze metabolic reactions with a wide range of possible effects on the cell, such as synthesis, secretion, and changes in plasma membrane potential. Some hormones acting through cAMP are listed in the box.
Why are no steroid hormones listed?

Enzyme Amplification

One hormone molecule does not trigger the synthesis or activation of just one enzyme molecule. It activates thousands of enzyme molecules through a cascade effect called **enzyme amplification** (fig. 17.21). To put it in a simplistic but illustrative way, suppose one glucagon molecule triggered the formation of 1,000 molecules of cAMP; cAMP activated a protein kinase; each protein kinase activated 1,000 other enzyme molecules; and each of those enzymes produced 1,000 molecules of a reaction product. These are modest numbers as chemical reactions go, and yet even at this low estimate, that one glucagon molecule would have triggered the production of 1 billion molecules of reaction product. Whatever the actual numbers may be, you can see how enzyme amplification enables a very small stimulus

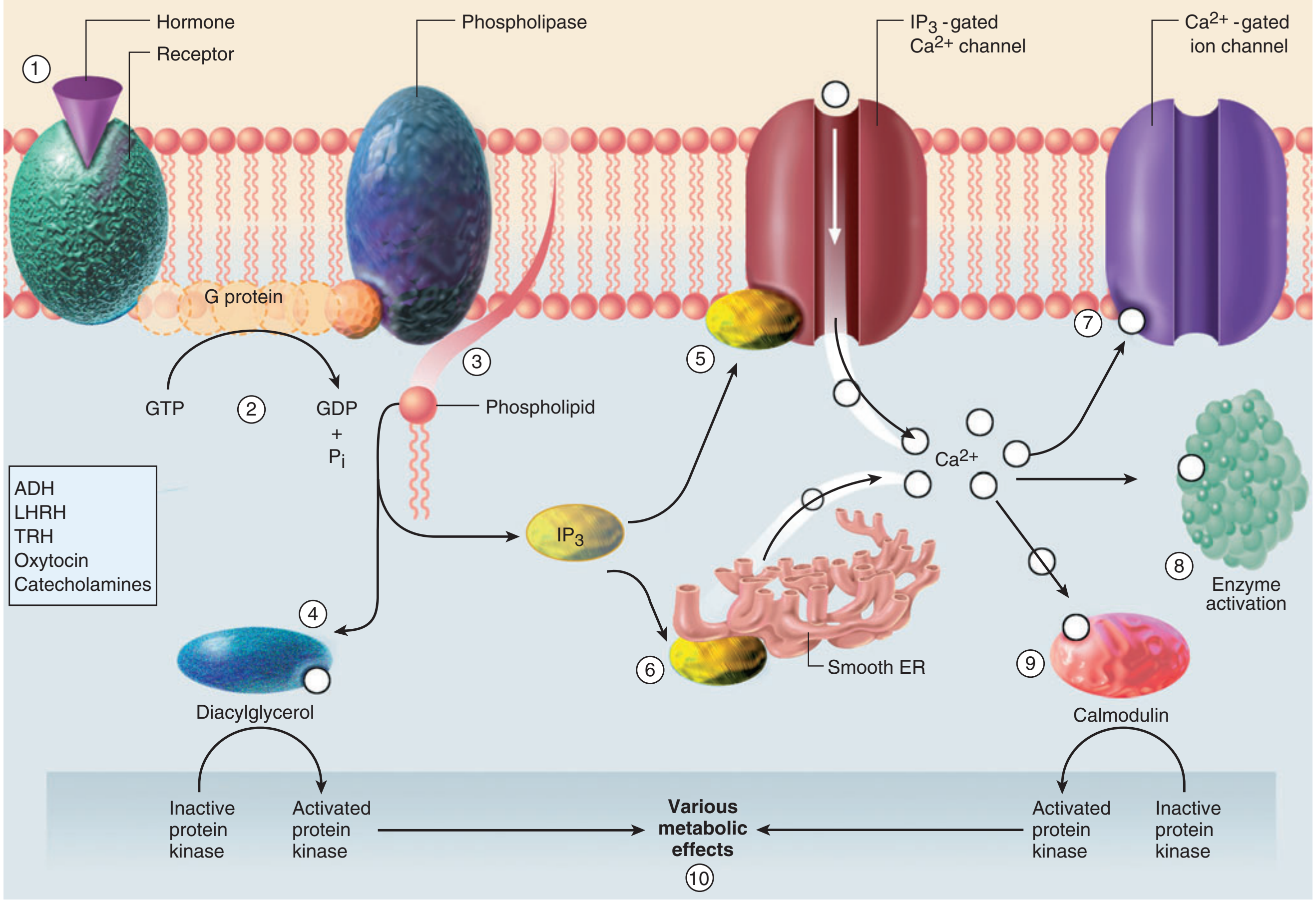

Hormone
Receptor
①
Phospholipase
IP_3-gated Ca^{2+} channel
Ca^{2+}-gated ion channel
G protein
GTP
②
GDP + P_i
③
Phospholipid
⑤
⑦
Ca^{2+}
ADH
LHRH
TRH
Oxytocin
Catecholamines
IP_3
④
Diacylglycerol
⑥
Smooth ER
⑧
Enzyme activation
⑨
Calmodulin
Inactive protein kinase
Activated protein kinase
Various metabolic effects
⑩
Activated protein kinase
Inactive protein kinase

Figure 17.20 **Diacylglycerol and Inositol Triphosphate (IP_3) as Second Messengers.** (*1*) The binding of a hormone to a membrane receptor activates a G protein. (*2*) The G protein activates a membrane enzyme, phospholipase. (*3*) Phospholipase breaks down membrane phospholipids into diacylglycerol and inositol triphosphate (IP_3). (*4*) Diacylglycerol activates protein kinases. (*5*) Inositol triphosphate binds to gated calcium channels in the plasma membrane, admitting calcium to the cell from the ECF, or (*6*) it triggers calcium release from the smooth ER. Calcium ions can have a variety of effects: (*7*) Ca^{2+} can open other ion channels in the plasma membrane, (*8*) Ca^{2+} can function as a cofactor that activates enzymes, or (*9*) Ca^{2+} can bind to calmodulin, a protein that activates protein kinases. (*10*) Protein kinases exert the same variety of metabolic effects here as they do in the cAMP system.

to produce a very large effect. Hormones are therefore needed in only very small quantities. Their circulating concentrations are very low compared to other blood substances: on the order of nanograms per deciliter. Blood glucose, for example, is about 100 million times this concentrated. Because of enzyme amplification, target cells do not need a great number of hormone receptors.

Hormone Clearance

Hormonal signals, like nervous signals, must be turned off when they have served their purpose. Most hormones are taken up and degraded by the liver and kidneys and then excreted in the bile or urine. Some are degraded by their target cells. As noted earlier, hormones that bind to transport proteins are removed from the blood much more slowly than hormones that do not employ transport proteins. The rate of hormone removal is called the *metabolic clearance rate (MCR),* and the length of time required to clear 50% of the hormone from the blood is the half-life. The faster the MCR, the shorter is the half-life.

Modulation of Target Cell Sensitivity

Target cells can modulate (adjust) their sensitivity to a hormone, and one hormone can alter a target cell's sensitivity to another. In **up-regulation,** a cell increases the number of hormone receptors and becomes more sensitive to the hormone

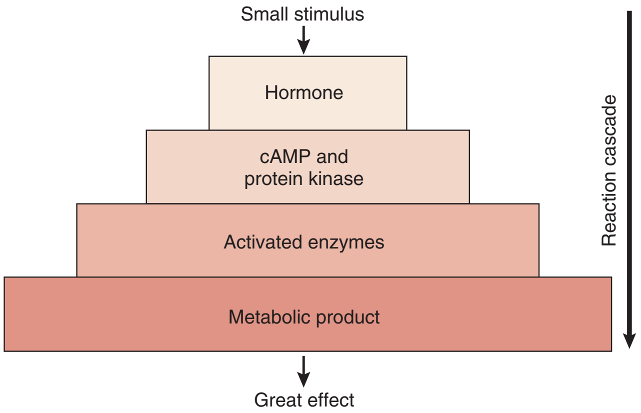


Figure 17.21 **Enzyme Amplification.** A single hormone molecule can trigger the production of many cAMP molecules and activation of many molecules of protein kinase. Every protein kinase molecule can phosphorylate and activate many other enzymes. Each of those enzyme molecules can produce many molecules of a metabolic product. Amplification of the process at each step allows for a very small hormonal stimulus to cause a very large metabolic effect.

(fig. 17.22*a*). In late pregnancy, for example, the uterus produces oxytocin receptors, preparing it for the surge of oxytocin that will occur during childbirth.

Down-regulation is the process in which a cell reduces its receptor population and thus becomes less sensitive to a hormone (fig. 17.22*b*). This sometimes happens in response to long-term exposure to a high hormone concentration. For example, adipocytes down-regulate when exposed to high concentrations of insulin, and cells of the testis down-regulate in response to high concentrations of luteinizing hormone.

Hormone therapy often involves long-term use of abnormally high *pharmacological doses* of hormone, which may have undesirable side effects. Long-term treatment of inflammation with hydrocortisone, for example, has undesirable effects on bone metabolism. Two ways in which these abnormal effects can be produced are: (1) excess hormone may bind to receptor sites for other related hormones and mimic their effects, and (2) a target cell may convert one hormone into another, such as testosterone to estrogen. Thus, long-term high doses of testosterone can, paradoxically, have feminizing effects.

Hormone Interactions

No hormone travels in the bloodstream alone, and no cell is exposed to only one hormone. Rather, there are many hormones in the blood and tissue fluid at once. Cells ignore the majority of them because they have no receptors for them, but most cells are sensitive to more than one. In these cases, the hormones may have three kinds of interactive effects:

1. **Synergistic effects,** in which two or more hormones act together to produce an effect that is greater than the sum of their separate effects. Neither FSH nor testosterone alone, for example, can stimulate significant sperm production. When they act together, however, the testes produce some 300,000 sperm per minute.
2. **Permissive effects,** in which one hormone enhances the target organ's response to a second hormone that is secreted later. Estrogen stimulates the up-regulation of progesterone receptors in the uterus. The uterus would respond poorly to progesterone, if at all, had it not been primed by the first hormone. Estrogen thus has a permissive effect on progesterone action.
3. **Antagonistic effects,** in which one hormone opposes the action of another. For example, insulin lowers blood glucose level and glucagon raises it. During pregnancy, estrogen from the placenta inhibits the mammary glands from responding to prolactin; thus milk is not secreted until the placenta is shed at birth.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

14. What are the three chemical classes of hormones? Name at least one hormone in each class.
15. Why do corticosteroids and thyroid hormones require transport proteins to travel in the bloodstream?
16. Explain how MIT, DIT, T_3, and T_4 relate to each other structurally.
17. Where are hormone receptors located in target cells? Name one hormone that employs each receptor location.
18. Explain how one hormone molecule can activate millions of enzyme molecules.

Stress and Adaptation

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- give a physiological definition of stress; and
- discuss how the body adapts to stress through its endocrine system.

Stress affects us all from time to time, and we react to it in ways that are mediated mainly by the endocrine and sympathetic nervous systems. **Stress** is defined as any situation that upsets homeostasis and threatens one's physical or emotional well-being. Physical causes of stress *(stressors)* include injury, surgery, hemorrhage, infection,

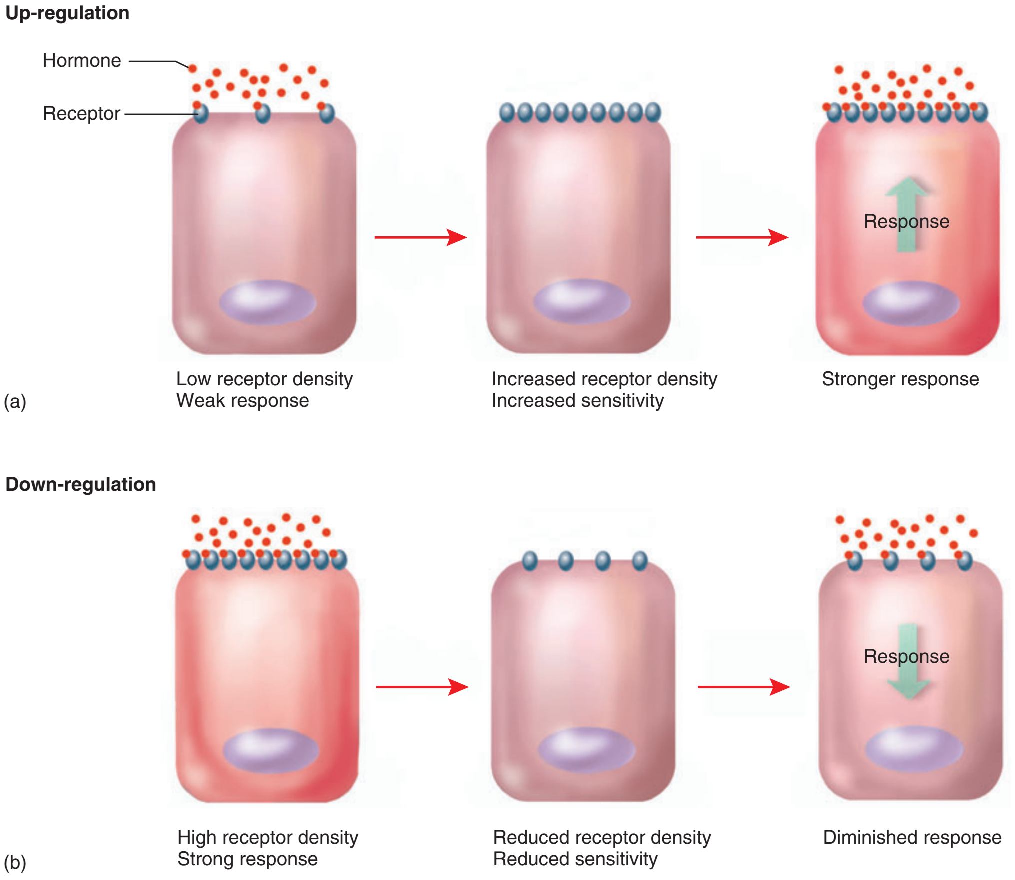

Up-regulation
Hormone
Receptor
Response
Low receptor density
Weak response
Increased receptor density
Increased sensitivity
Stronger response
(a)
Down-regulation
Response
High receptor density
Strong response
Reduced receptor density
Reduced sensitivity
Diminished response
(b)

Figure 17.22 **Modulation of Target Cell Sensitivity.** (*a*) Up-regulation, in which a cell produces more receptors and increases its own sensitivity to a hormone. (*b*) Down-regulation, in which a cell reduces the density of its receptors and lessens its sensitivity to a hormone.

intense exercise, temperature extremes, pain, and malnutrition. Emotional causes include anger, grief, depression, anxiety, and guilt.

Whatever the cause, the body reacts to stress in a fairly consistent way called the **stress response** or **general adaptation syndrome (GAS).** The response typically involves elevated levels of epinephrine and glucocorticoids, especially cortisol; some physiologists now define stress as any situation that raises the cortisol level. A pioneering researcher on stress physiology, Canadian biochemist Hans Selye, showed in 1936 that the GAS typically occurs in three stages, which he called the *alarm reaction,* the *stage of resistance,* and the *stage of exhaustion.*

The Alarm Reaction

The initial response to stress is an **alarm reaction** mediated mainly by norepinephrine from the sympathetic nervous system and epinephrine from the adrenal medulla. These catecholamines prepare the body to take action such as fighting or escaping danger. One of their effects, the consumption of stored glycogen, is particularly important to the transition to the next stage of the stress response. Aldosterone and angiotensin levels also rise during the alarm reaction. Angiotensin helps to raise the blood pressure, and aldosterone promotes sodium and water conservation, which helps to offset possible losses by sweating and bleeding.

The Stage of Resistance

After a few hours, the body's glycogen reserves are exhausted, and yet the nervous system continues to demand glucose. If a stressful situation is not resolved before the glycogen is gone, the body enters the **stage of resistance,** in which the first priority is to provide alternative fuels for metabolism. This stage is dominated by cortisol. The hypothalamus secretes corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH), the pituitary responds by secreting adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), and this, in turn, stimulates the adrenal cortex to secrete cortisol and other glucocorticoids. Cortisol promotes the breakdown of fat and protein into glycerol, fatty acids, and amino acids, providing the liver with raw material for gluconeogenesis (glucose synthesis). Like epinephrine, cortisol inhibits glucose uptake by most organs and thus has a glucose-sparing effect. It also inhibits protein synthesis, leaving the free amino acids available for gluconeogenesis. The immune system, which depends heavily on the synthesis of antibodies and other proteins, is depressed by long-term cortisol exposure. Lymphoid tissues atrophy, antibody levels drop, the number of circulating leukocytes declines, and inflammatory cells such as *mast cells* (see chapter 21) release less histamine and other inflammatory chemicals. Wounds heal poorly, and a person in chronic stress becomes more susceptible to infections and some forms of cancer. Cortisol stimulates gastric secretion, which may account for the ulcers that occur in chronic stress, but it suppresses the secretion of sex hormones such as estrogen, testosterone, and luteinizing hormone, causing disturbances of fertility and sexual function.

The Stage of Exhaustion

The body's fat reserves can carry it through months of stress, but when fat is depleted, stress overwhelms homeostasis. The **stage of exhaustion** sets in, often marked by rapid decline and death. With its fat stores gone, the body now relies primarily on protein breakdown to meet its energy needs. Thus, there is a progressive wasting away of the muscles and weakening of the body. After prolonged stimulation, the adrenal cortex may stop producing glucocorticoids, making it all the more difficult to maintain glucose homeostasis. Aldosterone sometimes promotes so much water retention that it creates a state of hypertension; and while it conserves sodium, it hastens the elimination of potassium and hydrogen ions. This creates a state of hypokalemia (potassium deficiency in the blood) and alkalosis (excessively high blood pH), resulting in nervous and muscular system dysfunctions. Death frequently results from heart failure, kidney failure, or overwhelming infection.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

19. Define *stress* from the standpoint of endocrinology.
20. Describe the stages of the general adaptation syndrome.
21. List six hormones that show increased secretion in the stress response. Describe how each one contributes to recovery from stress.

Eicosanoids and Paracrine Signaling

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- explain what eicosanoids are and how they are produced;
- identify some classes and functions of eicosanoids; and
- describe several physiological roles of prostaglandins.

Neurotransmitters and hormones are not the only chemical messengers in the body. Here we briefly consider the *paracrine* messengers. These are chemical signals released by cells into the tissue fluid; they do not travel to their target cells by way of the blood, but diffuse from their source to nearby cells in the same tissue. Histamine, for example, is released by mast cells that lie alongside the blood vessels in a connective tissue. It diffuses to the smooth muscle of the blood vessel, relaxing it and allowing vasodilation. Nitric oxide, another paracrine vasodilator, is released by the endothelial cells of the blood vessel itself. In the pancreas, somatostatin acts as a paracrine signal when it is released by δ cells and diffuses to the α and β cells in the same islet, inhibiting their secretion of glucagon and insulin. Catecholamines diffuse from the adrenal medulla to the cortex to stimulate corticosterone secretion. A single chemical can act as a hormone, a paracrine, or even a neurotransmitter in different locations and circumstances.

The **eicosanoids**[24] (eye-CO-sah-noyds) are an important family of paracrine secretions. They have 20-carbon backbones derived from a polyunsaturated fatty acid called **arachidonic** (ah-RACK-ih-DON-ic) **acid.** Some peptide hormones and other stimuli liberate arachidonic acid from one of the phospholipids of the plasma membrane, and the following two enzymes then convert it to various eicosanoids (fig. 17.23).

Lipoxygenase helps to convert arachidonic acid to **leukotrienes,** eicosanoids that mediate allergic and inflammatory reactions (see chapter 21). **Cyclooxygenase** converts arachidonic acid to three other types of eicosanoids:

1. **Prostacyclin** is produced by the walls of the blood vessels, where it inhibits blood clotting and vasoconstriction.
2. **Thromboxanes** are produced by blood platelets. In the event of injury, they override prostacyclin and stimulate vasoconstriction and clotting. Prostacyclin and thromboxanes are further discussed in chapter 18.

---

[24] *eicosa* (variation of *icosa*) = 20

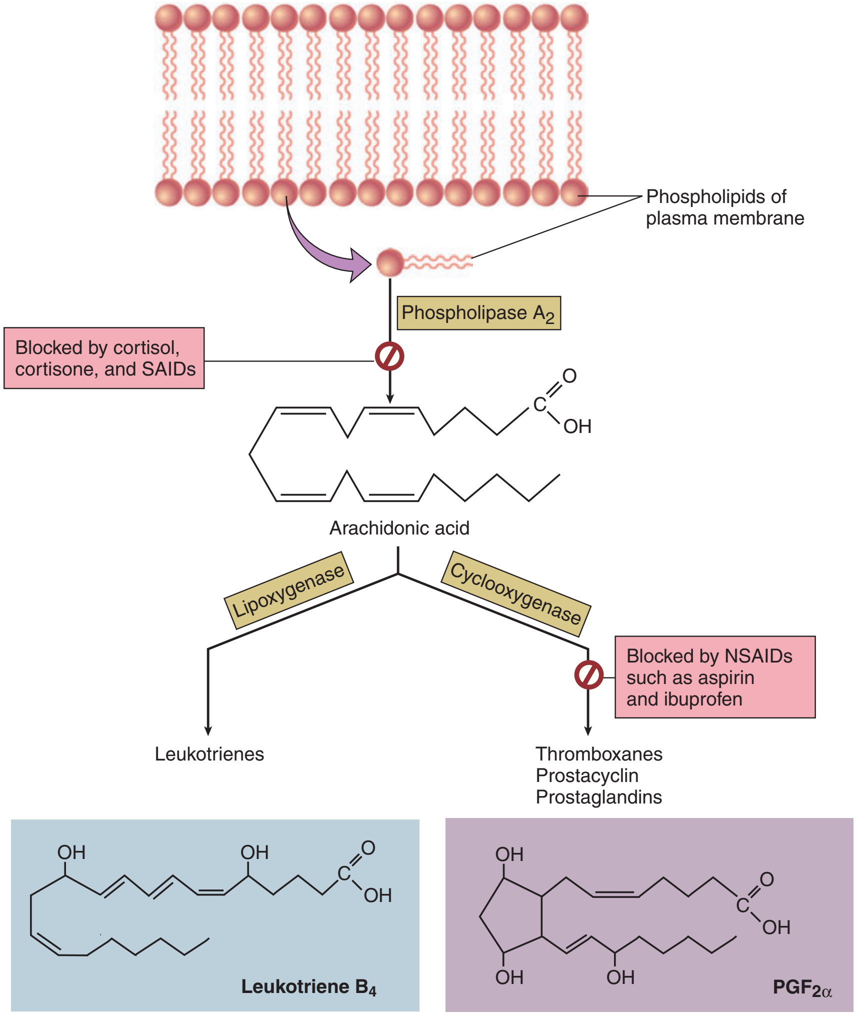

Phospholipids of plasma membrane
Phospholipase A_2
Blocked by cortisol, cortisone, and SAIDs
O
C
OH
Arachidonic acid
Lipoxygenase
Cyclooxygenase
Blocked by NSAIDs such as aspirin and ibuprofen
Leukotrienes
Thromboxanes
Prostacyclin
Prostaglandins
OH
OH
O
C
OH
Leukotriene B_4
OH
O
C
OH
OH
OH
$PGF_{2\alpha}$

Figure 17.23 **Eicosanoid Synthesis and Related Drug Actions.** SAIDs are steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs such as hydrocortisone; NSAIDs are nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs such as aspirin and ibuprofen.

How would the body be affected by a drug that inhibited lipoxygenase?

3. **Prostaglandins (PGs)** are the most diverse eicosanoids. They have a five-sided carbon ring in their backbone. They are named PG for *prostaglandin,* plus a third letter that indicates the type of ring structure (PGE, PGF, etc.) and a subscript that indicates the number of C═C double bonds in the side chain. They were first found in bull semen and the prostate gland, hence their name, but they are now thought to be produced in most organs of the body. The PGEs are usually antagonized by PGFs. For example, the PGE family relaxes smooth muscle in the bladder, intestines, bronchioles, and uterus and stimulates contraction of the smooth muscle of blood vessels. $PGF_{2\alpha}$ has precisely the opposite effects. Some other roles of prostaglandins are described in table 17.7.

Understanding the pathways of eicosanoid synthesis makes it possible to understand the action of several familiar drugs (see insight 17.3). The roles of prostaglandins and other eicosanoids are further explored in later chapters on blood, immunity, and reproduction.

Table 17.7 Some of the Roles of Prostaglandins

Inflammatory	Promote fever and pain, two cardinal signs of inflammation
Endocrine	Mimic effects of TSH, ACTH, and other hormones; alter sensitivity of anterior pituitary to hypothalamic hormones; work with glucagon, catecholamines, and other hormones in regulation of fat mobilization
Nervous	Function as neuromodulators, altering the release or effects of neurotransmitters in the brain
Reproductive	Promote ovulation and formation of corpus luteum; induce labor contractions
Gastrointestinal	Inhibit gastric secretion
Vascular	Act as vasodilators and vasoconstrictors
Respiratory	Constrict or dilate bronchioles
Renal	Promote blood circulation through the kidney, increase water and electrolyte excretion

Insight 17.3 Clinical Application

Anti-Inflammatory Drugs

Cortisol and corticosterone are used as *steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (SAIDs).* They inhibit inflammation by blocking the release of arachidonic acid from the plasma membrane, thus inhibiting the synthesis of all eicosanoids. Their main disadvantage is that prolonged use causes side effects that mimic Cushing syndrome (see p. 668). Aspirin and ibuprofen (Motrin) are *nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)* with more selective effects. They stop the action of cyclooxygenase, thus blocking prostaglandin synthesis without affecting lipoxygenase or the leukotrienes. For similar reasons, aspirin inhibits blood clotting (see chapter 18). One theory of fever is that it results from the action of prostaglandins on the hypothalamus. Most antipyretic (fever-reducing) drugs work by inhibiting cyclooxygenase.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

22. What are eicosanoids and how do they differ from neurotransmitters and hormones?
23. Distinguish between a paracrine and endocrine effect.
24. State four functions of prostaglandins.

Endocrine Disorders

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- explain some general causes and examples of hormone hyposecretion and hypersecretion;
- briefly describe some common disorders of pituitary, thyroid, parathyroid, and adrenal function; and
- in more detail, describe the causes and pathology of diabetes mellitus.

Hormones are very potent chemicals; as we saw in the discussion of enzyme amplification, a little hormone goes a long way. It is therefore necessary to tightly regulate their secretion and blood concentration. Variations in hormone concentration and target cell sensitivity often have very noticeable effects on the body. This section deals with some of the better-known dysfunctions of the endocrine system. The effects of aging on the endocrine system are described on page 1110.

Hyposecretion and Hypersecretion

Inadequate hormone release is called **hyposecretion.** It can result from tumors or lesions that destroy an endocrine gland or interfere with its ability to receive signals from another gland. For example, a fractured sphenoid bone can sever the hypothalamo-hypophyseal tract and thus prevent the transport of oxytocin and antidiuretic hormone to the posterior pituitary. The resulting ADH hyposecretion disables the water-conserving capability of the kidneys and leads to **diabetes insipidus,** a condition of chronic polyuria without glucose in the urine. (*Insipidus* means "without taste" and refers to the lack of sweetness of the glucose-free urine, in contrast to the sugary urine of diabetes mellitus.) Autoimmune diseases can also lead to hormone hyposecretion when misguided antibodies (autoantibodies) attack endocrine cells. This is thought to be one of the causes of diabetes mellitus, as explained shortly.

Excessive hormone release, called **hypersecretion,** has multiple causes. Some tumors result in the overgrowth of functional endocrine tissue. A **pheochromocytoma** (FEE-o-CRO-mo-sy-TOE-muh), for example, is a tumor of the adrenal medulla that secretes excessive amounts of epinephrine and norepinephrine (table 17.8). Some tumors in nonendocrine organs produce hormones. For example, some lung tumors secrete ACTH and thus overstimulate cortisol secretion by the adrenal gland. While certain autoimmune disorders can cause endocrine hyposecretion, others cause hypersecretion. An example of this is **toxic goiter (Graves[25] disease),** in which autoan-

---

[25] Robert James Graves (1796–1853), Irish physician

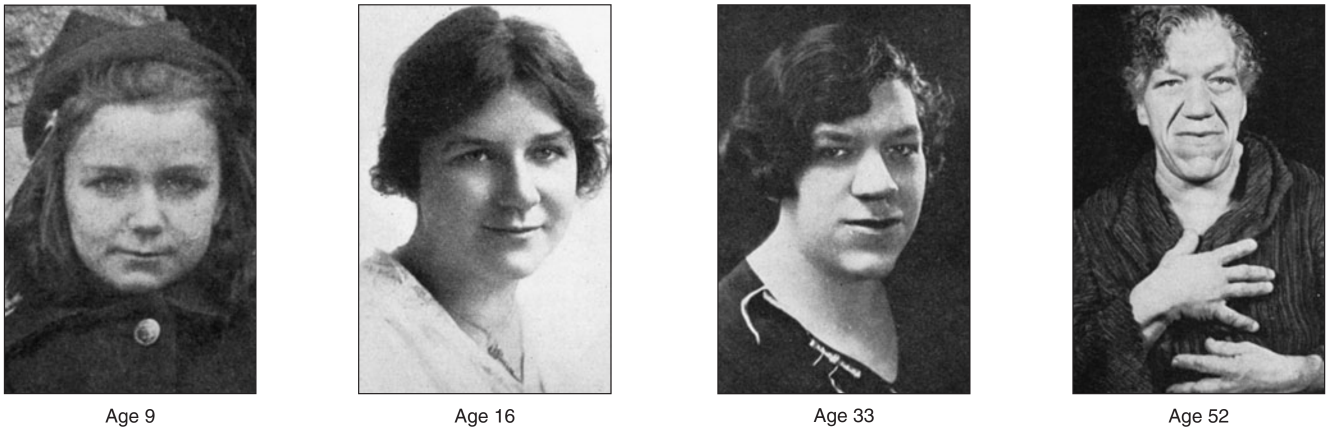


Figure 17.24 **Acromegaly, a Condition Caused by Growth Hormone Hypersecretion in Adulthood.** These are four photographs of the same person taken at different ages. Note the characteristic thickening of the face and hands.
How would she have been affected if GH hypersecretion began at age 9?

tibodies mimic the effect of TSH on the thyroid, causing thyroid hypersecretion (table 17.8). Endocrine hypersecretion disorders can also be mimicked by excess or long-term clinical administration of hormones such as cortisol.

Following are brief descriptions of some of the better-known disorders of the major endocrine glands. Table 17.8 provides further details on some of these and lists some additional endocrine disorders. Diabetes mellitus, by far the most prevalent endocrine disease, receives a more extended discussion.

Pituitary Disorders

The hypersecretion of growth hormone (GH) in adults causes **acromegaly**—thickening of the bones and soft tissues with especially noticeable effects on the hands, feet, and face (fig. 17.24). When it begins in childhood or adolescence, GH hypersecretion causes **gigantism** and hyposecretion causes **pituitary dwarfism** (table 17.8). Now that growth hormone is plentiful, made by genetically engineered bacteria containing the human GH gene, pituitary dwarfism has become rare.

Thyroid and Parathyroid Disorders

Congenital hypothyroidism is thyroid hyposecretion present from birth; it was formerly called *cretinism,* now regarded as an insensitive term. Severe or prolonged adult hypothyroidism can cause **myxedema** (MIX-eh-DEE-muh). Both syndromes are described in table 17.8, and both can be treated with oral thyroid hormone.

A *goiter* is any pathological enlargement of the thyroid gland. **Endemic goiter** (fig. 17.25) is due to dietary iodine deficiency. There is little iodine in soil or most foods, but seafood and iodized salt are good sources. Without iodine, the gland cannot synthesize TH. Without TH, the pituitary gland receives no feedback and acts as if the thyroid were understimulated. It produces extra TSH, which stimulates hypertrophy of the thyroid gland. In the earlier-described toxic goiter, by contrast, the overgrown thyroid produces functional TH.

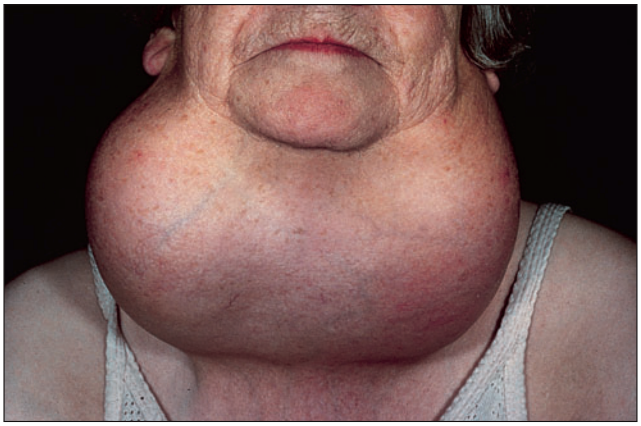


Figure 17.25 **Endemic Goiter.** The thyroid gland has hypertrophied as a result of iodine deficiency, leading to TSH hypersecretion.

Because of their location and small size, the parathyroids are sometimes accidentally removed in thyroid surgery. Without hormone replacement therapy, the resulting **hypoparathyroidism** causes a rapid decline in blood calcium levels and leads to fatal tetany within 3 or 4 days.

Hyperparathyroidism, excess PTH secretion, is usually caused by a parathyroid tumor. It causes the bones to become soft, deformed, and fragile; it raises the blood levels of calcium and phosphate ions; and it promotes the formation of *renal calculi* (kidney stones) composed of calcium phosphate. Chapter 7 further describes the relationship between parathyroid function, blood calcium, and bone tissue.

Adrenal Disorders

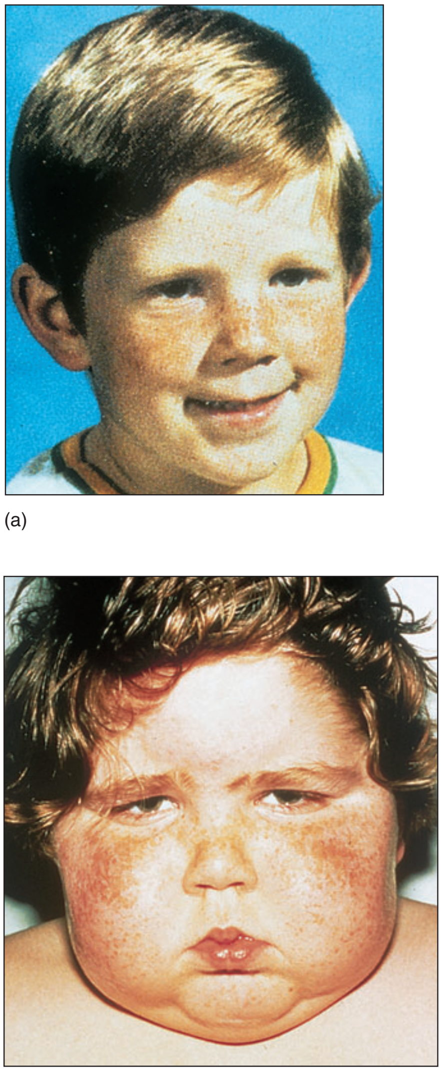
Cushing[26] syndrome is excess cortisol secretion owing to any of several causes: ACTH hypersecretion by the pituitary, ACTH-secreting tumors, or hyperactivity of the adrenal cortex independently of ACTH. Cushing syndrome disrupts carbohydrate and protein metabolism, leading to hyperglycemia, hypertension, muscular weakness, and edema. Muscle and bone mass are lost rapidly as protein is catabolized. Some patients exhibit abnormal fat deposition between the shoulders ("buffalo hump") or in the face ("moon face") (fig. 17.26). Long-term hydrocortisone therapy can have similar effects.

Adrenogenital syndrome (AGS), a state of adrenal androgen hypersecretion, commonly accompanies Cushing syndrome. In children, AGS often causes enlargement of the penis or clitoris and the premature onset of puberty. Prenatal AGS can result in newborn girls exhibiting masculinized genitalia and being misidentified as boys (fig. 17.27). In women, AGS produces such masculinizing effects as increased body hair, deepening of the voice, and beard growth.

Diabetes Mellitus

Diabetes mellitus[27] (DM) warrants special consideration. This is the world's most prevalent metabolic disease, and is the leading cause of adult blindness, renal failure, gangrene, and the necessity for limb amputations.

Diabetes mellitus can be defined as a disruption of carbohydrate, fat, and protein metabolism resulting from the hyposecretion or inaction of insulin. Its classic signs and symptoms are "the three polys": **polyuria[28]** (excessive urine output), **polydipsia[29]** (intense thirst), and **polyphagia[30]** (ravenous hunger). We can add to this list three clinical signs revealed by blood and urine tests: **hyperglycemia[31]** (elevated blood glucose), **glycosuria[32]** (glucose in the urine), and **ketonuria** (ketones in the urine).


(a)

(b)

Figure 17.26 **Cushing Syndrome.** (*a*) Patient before the onset of the syndrome. (*b*) The same boy, only 4 months later, showing the "moon face" characteristic of Cushing syndrome.

A little knowledge of kidney physiology is necessary to understand why glycosuria and polyuria occur. The kidneys filter blood plasma and convert the filtrate to urine. Normally, the kidney tubules remove all glucose from the filtrate and return it to the blood, so there is little or no glucose in the urine of a healthy person. Water follows the glucose and other solutes by osmosis, so the tubules also reclaim most of the water in the filtrate.

But like any other carrier-mediated transport system, there is a limit to how fast the glucose transporters of the kidney can reabsorb glucose. The maximum rate of reabsorption is called the transport maximum, T_m (see p. 109).

---

[26] Harvey Cushing (1869–1939), American physician
[27] *diabet* = to flow through + *melli* = honey
[28] *poly* = much, excessive + *uri* = urine
[29] *dipsia* = drinking
[30] *phagia* = eating
[31] *hyper* = excess + *glyc* = sugar, glucose + *emia* = blood condition
[32] *glyco* = glucose, sugar + *uria* = urine condition

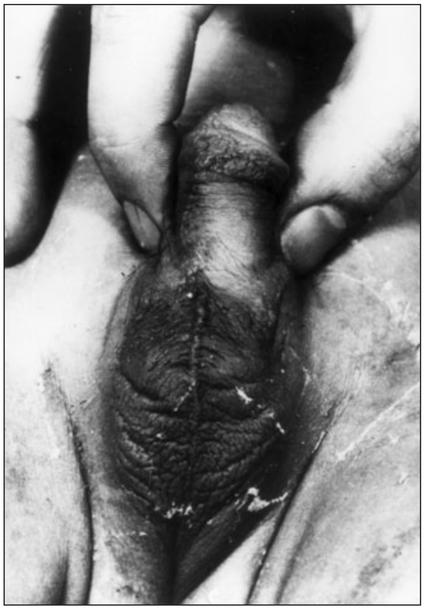


Figure 17.27 **Adrenogenital Syndrome (AGS).** These are the genitals of a baby girl with AGS, masculinized by prenatal hypersecretion of adrenal androgens. Note the fusion of the labia majora to resemble a scrotum and enlargement of the clitoris to resemble a penis. Such infants are easily mistaken for boys and raised as such.

In diabetes mellitus, glucose enters the tubules so rapidly that it exceeds the T_m and the tubules cannot reabsorb it fast enough. The excess passes through into the urine. Glucose and ketones in the tubules also raise the osmolarity of the tubular fluid and cause **osmotic diuresis**—water remains in the tubules with these solutes, so large amounts of water are passed in the urine. This accounts for the polyuria, dehydration, and thirst of diabetes. Diabetics often pass 10 to 15 L of urine per day, compared with 1 or 2 L in a healthy person.

Types and Treatment

There are two forms of diabetes mellitus—*type I* and *type II.* **Type I,** or **insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (IDDM),** accounts for about 10% of cases. The cause is still little understood, but at least some cases appear to result from the destruction of β cells by autoantibodies. There are several genes implicated in IDDM, but heredity alone is not the cause; IDDM results from the interaction of hereditary and environmental factors. Up to a point, the body can tolerate the loss of β cells. Signs of diabetes begin to appear when 80% to 90% of them are destroyed and insulin falls to critically low levels. However, the signs are not caused by a deficiency of insulin alone. The relative level of glucagon is elevated in IDDM, and it is the abnormally low *ratio* of insulin to glucagon that causes the signs. IDDM is most often diagnosed around age 12 and used to be called *juvenile diabetes,* but it can also appear later in life. IDDM must be treated through meal planning, exercise, the self-monitoring of blood glucose level by the patient, and periodic insulin injections or the continual subcutaneous delivery of insulin by a pump worn on the body.

Most diabetics (90%) have **type II,** or **non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (NIDDM).** Nearly 7% of U.S. residents are diagnosed with NIDDM. Type II diabetics may have normal or even elevated insulin levels; the problem is *insulin resistance*—a failure of target cells to respond to insulin. There may be multiple reasons for resistance. One theory is that target cells have a shortage of insulin receptors, although research has failed to find any consistent relationship between NIDDM and defective receptors, so this theory is being increasingly questioned. The three major risk factors for NIDDM are heredity, age, and obesity. It tends to run in families; if an identical twin contracts NIDDM it is virtually certain that the other twin will too. NIDDM has a gradual onset, with signs usually not appearing until age 40 or beyond; it used to be called *adult-onset DM.* Type II diabetics are usually overweight and the incidence of NIDDM is increasing as obesity becomes more prevalent in our overfed, under-exercised society. In obesity, the adipocytes produce a hormonelike secretion that indirectly interferes with glucose transport into most kinds of cells. NIDDM can often be managed through a weight-loss program of diet and exercise. Some patients are helped with oral medications that improve insulin secretion or target cell sensitivity or help in other ways to lower blood glucose.

Pathogenesis

When cells cannot absorb glucose, they rely on fat and protein for energy. Fat and protein breakdown results in emaciation, muscular atrophy, and weakness. Before insulin therapy was introduced in 1922, the victims of type I diabetes wasted away to an astonishing extent (see insight 17.4). Diabetes was described in the first century as "a melting down of the flesh and limbs into urine." Adult patients weighed as little as 27 to 34 kg (60–75 lb) and looked like victims of a concentration camp or severe famine. Their breath had a sickeningly sweet ketone smell, like rotten apples. One typical patient was described by medical historian Michael Bliss as "barely able to lift his head from his pillow, crying most of the time from pain, hunger, and despair." In the terminal stage of the disease, patients became increasingly drowsy, gasped for air, became comatose, and then died within a few hours. Most diabetic children lived less than 1 year after diagnosis—a year of utmost misery at that.

Rapid fat catabolism elevates blood concentrations of free fatty acids and their breakdown products, the ketone bodies (acetoacetic acid, acetone, and β-hydroxybutyric acid). Ketonuria promotes osmotic diuresis and flushes

Na^+ and K^+ from the body, thus creating electrolyte deficiencies that can lead to abdominal pain, vomiting, irregular heartbeat, and neurological dysfunction. As acids, ketones lower the pH of the blood and produce a condition called **ketoacidosis.** Ketoacidosis causes a deep, gasping breathing called *Kussmaul*[33] *respiration,* typical of terminal diabetes. It also depresses the nervous system and produces diabetic coma.

Diabetes mellitus also leads to long-term degenerative cardiovascular and neurological diseases—signs that were seldom seen before insulin therapy, when patients died too quickly to show the chronic effects. Despite years of research and debate, it remains unclear exactly how diabetes mellitus causes cardiovascular disease. It appears that chronic hyperglycemia activates a metabolic reaction cascade that leads to cellular damage in small to medium blood vessels and peripheral nerves. Nerve damage *(diabetic neuropathy),* the most common complication of diabetes mellitus, can lead to impotence, incontinence, and loss of sensation from affected areas. The last effect makes a patient dangerously unaware of minor injuries, which can thus fester from neglect and contribute (along with lowered resistance to infection) to gangrene and the necessity of amputation. Many diabetics lose their toes, feet, or legs to the disease. Diabetes also promotes *atherosclerosis,* the blockage of blood vessels with fatty deposits, causing poor circulation. The effects include degeneration of the small arteries of the retina and the kidneys, leading to blindness and kidney failure as common complications. Atherosclerosis also contributes to gangrene. People with type I diabetes are much more likely to die of kidney failure than those with type II. In type II diabetes, the most common cause of death is heart failure stemming from atherosclerosis of the coronary arteries.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

25. Explain some causes of hormone hyposecretion, and give examples. Do the same for hypersecretion.
26. In diabetes mellitus, explain the chain of events that lead to (*a*) osmotic diuresis, (*b*) ketoacidosis and coma, and (*c*) gangrene of the lower limbs.

Table 17.8 Some Disorders of the Endocrine System

Addison[34] *disease*	Hyposecretion of adrenal glucocorticoids and mineralocorticoids, causing hypoglycemia, hypotension, weight loss, weakness, loss of stress resistance, darkening or bronzing (metallic discoloration) of the skin, and potentially fatal dehydration and electrolyte imbalances
Congenital hypothyroidism	Thyroid hormone hyposecretion present from birth, resulting in stunted physical development, thickened facial features, low body temperature, lethargy, and irreversible brain damage in infancy
Diabetes insipidus	Chronic polyuria due to ADH hyposecretion. Can result from tumors, skull fractures, or infections that destroy hypothalamic tissue or the hypothalamo-hypophyseal tract
Hyperinsulinism	Insulin excess caused by islet hypersecretion or injection of excess insulin, causing hypoglycemia, weakness, hunger, and sometimes *insulin shock,* which is characterized by disorientation, convulsions, or unconsciousness
Myxedema	A syndrome occurring in severe or prolonged adult hypothyroidism, characterized by low metabolic rate, sluggishness and sleepiness, weight gain, constipation, dry skin and hair, abnormal sensitivity to cold, hypertension, and tissue swelling
Pheochromocytoma	A tumor of the adrenal medulla that secretes excess epinephrine and norepinephrine. Causes hypertension, elevated metabolic rate, nervousness, indigestion, hyperglycemia, and glycosuria
Toxic goiter (Graves disease)	Thyroid hypertrophy and hypersecretion, occurring when autoantibodies mimic the effect of TSH and overstimulate the thyroid. Results in elevated metabolic rate and heart rate, nervousness, sleeplessness, weight loss, abnormal heat sensitivity and sweating, and bulging of the eyes (exophthalmos) resulting from eyelid retraction and edema of the orbital tissues

Disorders described elsewhere

Acromegaly p. 667
Adrenogenital syndrome p. 668
Androgen-insensitivity syndrome p. 1021
Cushing syndrome p. 668
Endemic goiter p. 667
Gigantism p. 667
Hyperparathyroidism p. 668
Hypoparathyroidism p. 667
Pituitary dwarfism p. 667

---

[33] Adolph Kussmaul (1822–1902), German physician
[34] Thomas Addison (1793–1860), English physician

Insight 17.4 Medical History

The Discovery of Insulin

At the start of the twentieth century, physicians felt nearly helpless in the face of diabetes mellitus. They put patients on useless diets—the oatmeal cure, the potato cure, and others—or on starvation diets as low as 750 Calories per day so as not to "stress the system." They were resigned to the fact that their patients were doomed to die, and simple starvation seemed to produce the least suffering.

After the cause of diabetes was traced to the pancreatic islets in 1901, European researchers tried treating patients and experimental animals with extracts of pancreas, but became discouraged by the severe side effects of impurities in the extracts. They lacked the resources to pursue the problem to completion, and by 1913, the scientific community showed signs of giving up on diabetes.

But in 1920, Frederick Banting (1891–1941), a young Canadian physician with a failing medical practice, became intrigued with a possible method for isolating the islets from the pancreas and testing extracts of the islets alone. He returned to his alma mater, the University of Toronto, to present his idea to Professor J. J. R. Macleod (1876–1935), a leading authority on carbohydrate metabolism. Macleod was unimpressed with Banting, finding his knowledge of the diabetes literature and scientific method superficial. Nevertheless, he felt Banting's idea was worth pursuing and thought that with his military surgical training, Banting might be able to make some progress where others had failed. He offered Banting laboratory space for the summer, giving him a marginal chance to test his idea. Banting was uncertain whether to accept, but when his fiancé broke off their engagement and an alternative job offer fell through, he closed his medical office, moved to Toronto, and began work. Little did either man realize that in two years' time, they would share a Nobel Prize and would so thoroughly detest each other they would scarcely be on speaking terms.

A Modest Beginning

Macleod advised Banting on an experimental plan of attack and gave him an assistant, Charles Best (1899–1978). Best had just received his B.A. in physiology and looked forward to an interesting summer job with Banting before starting graduate school. He received no pay for his work, and Banting himself was desperately poor, living in a 7- by 9-foot room and supporting himself on two dollars a week earned by performing tonsillectomies. Over the summer of 1921, Banting and Best removed the pancreases from some dogs to render them diabetic and tied off the pancreatic ducts in other dogs to make most of the pancreas degenerate while leaving the islets intact. Their plan was to treat the diabetic dogs with extracts made from the degenerated pancreases of the others.

It was a difficult undertaking. Their laboratory was tiny, filthy, unbearably hot, and reeked of dog excrement. The pancreatic ducts were very small and difficult to tie, and it was hard to tell if all the pancreas had been removed from the dogs intended to become diabetic. Several dogs died of overanesthesia, infection, and bleeding from Banting's clumsy surgical technique. Banting was also careless in reading his data and interpreting the results, and he had little interest in reading the literature to see what other diabetes researchers were doing. In Banting and Best's first publication, in early 1922, the data in their discussion disagreed with the data in the tables, and both disagreed with the data in their laboratory notebooks. These were not the signs of promising researchers.

In spite of themselves, Banting and Best achieved modest positive results over the summer. Crude pancreatic extracts brought one dog back from a diabetic coma and reduced the hyperglycemia and glycosuria of others. Buoyed by these results, Banting demanded a salary, a better laboratory, and another assistant. Macleod grudgingly obtained salaries for the pair, but Banting began to loathe him for their disagreement over his demands, and he and Macleod grew in mutual contempt as the project progressed.

Success and Bitterness

Macleod brought biochemist J. B. Collip (1892–1965) into the project that fall in hopes that he could produce purer extracts. More competent in experimental science, Collip was the first to show that pancreatic extracts could eliminate ketosis and restore the liver's ability to store glycogen. He obtained better and better results in diabetic rabbits until, by January 1922, the group felt ready for human trials. Banting was happy to have Collip on the team initially, but grew intensely jealous of him as Collip not only achieved better results than he had, but also developed a closer relationship with Macleod. Banting, who had no qualifications to perform human experiments, feared he would be pushed aside as the project moved to its clinical phase. At one point, the tension between Banting and Collip erupted into a near-fistfight in the laboratory.

Banting insisted that the first human trial be done with an extract he and Best prepared, not with Collip's. The patient was a 14-year-old boy who weighed only 29 kg (65 lb) and was on the verge of death. He was injected on January 11 with the Banting and Best extract, described by one observer as "a thick brown muck." The trial was an embarrassing failure, with only a slight lowering of his blood glucose and a severe reaction to the impurities in the extract. On January 23, the same boy was treated again, but with Collip's extract. This time, his ketonuria and glycosuria were almost completely eliminated and his blood sugar dropped 77%. This was the first successful clinical trial of insulin. Six more patients were treated in February 1922 and quickly became stronger, more alert, and in better spirits. In April, the Toronto group began calling the product insulin, and at a medical conference in May, they gave the first significant public report of their success.

But Banting felt increasingly excluded from the project. He quit coming to the laboratory, stayed drunk much of the time, and daydreamed of leaving diabetes research to work on cancer. He remained only because Best pleaded with him to stay. Banting briefly operated a private diabetes clinic, but fearful of embarrassment over alienating the discoverer of insulin, the university soon lured him back with a salaried appointment and hospital privileges.

Banting had a number of high-profile, successful cases in 1922, such as 14-year-old Elizabeth Hughes, who weighed only 20 kg (45 lb) before treatment. She began treatment in August and showed immediate, dramatic improvement. She was a spirited, optimistic, and articulate girl who kept enthusiastic diaries of being allowed to eat bread, potatoes, and macaroni and cheese for the first time since the onset of her illness. "Oh it is simply too wonderful for words this stuff," she exuberantly wrote to her mother—even though the still-impure extracts caused her considerable pain and swelling. The world quickly beat a path to Toronto begging for insulin. The pharmaceutical firm of Eli Lilly and Company entered into an agreement with the University of Toronto for the mass production of insulin, and by the fall of 1923, over 25,000 patients were being treated at more than 60 Canadian and U.S. clinics.

Recognition and Enmity

Banting's self-confidence was restored. He had become a public hero, and the Canadian Parliament awarded him an endowment generous enough to ensure him a life of comfort. Several distinguished physiologists nominated Banting and Macleod for the 1923 Nobel Prize, and they won. When the award was announced, Banting was furious about having to share it with Macleod. At first, he threatened to refuse it, but when he cooled down, he announced that he would split his share of the prize money with Best. Macleod quickly announced that half of his share would go to Collip.

Banting subsequently made life at the university so unbearable that Macleod left in 1928 to accept a university post in Scotland. Banting stayed on at Toronto. Although now wealthy and surrounded by admiring students, he achieved nothing significant in science for the rest of his career. He was killed in a plane crash in 1941. Best replaced Macleod on the Toronto faculty, led a distinguished career, and developed the anticoagulant heparin. Collip went on to play a lead role in the isolation of PTH, ACTH, and other hormones.

Insulin made an industry giant of Eli Lilly and Company. It became the first protein whose amino acid sequence was determined, for which Frederick Sanger received a Nobel Prize in 1958. Diabetics today no longer depend on a limited supply of insulin extracted from beef and pork pancreas. Human insulin is now in plentiful supply, made by genetically engineered bacteria. Paradoxically, while insulin has dramatically reduced the suffering caused by diabetes mellitus, it has increased the number of people who have the disease—because thanks to insulin, diabetics are now able to live long enough to raise families and pass on the diabetes genes.

Connective Issues

Interactions Between the ENDOCRINE SYSTEM and Other Organ Systems

← indicates ways in which this system affects other systems
→ indicates ways in which other systems affect this one

All Systems

Growth hormone, insulin-like growth factors, insulin, thyroid hormone, and glucocorticoids affect the development and metabolism of most tissues

Integumentary System

← Sex hormones affect skin pigmentation, development of body hair and apocrine glands, and subcutaneous fat deposition
→ Skin carries out a step in calcitriol (vitamin D) synthesis

Skeletal System

← Parathyroid hormone, calcitonin, calcitriol, growth hormone, thyroid hormone, sex steroids, and other hormones affect bone development
→ Protects some endocrine glands; stores calcium needed for endocrine function

Muscular System

← Growth hormone and testosterone stimulate muscular growth; insulin regulates carbohydrate metabolism in muscle; other hormones affect electrolyte balance, which is critical to muscle function
→ Skeletal muscles protect some endocrine glands

Nervous System

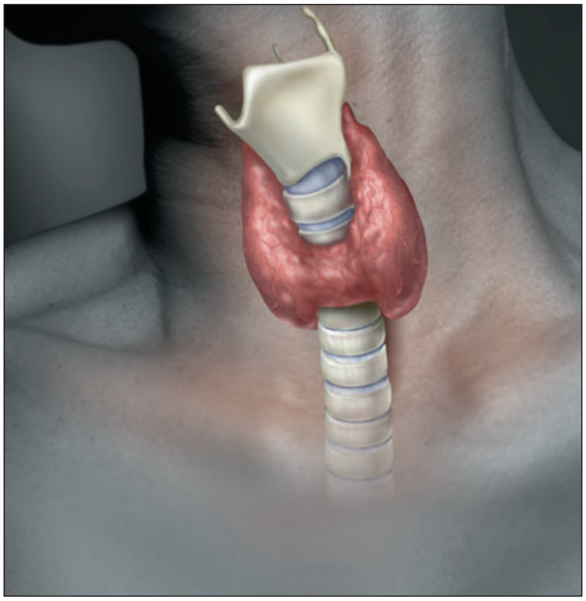
← Exerts negative feedback inhibition on hypothalamus; several hormones affect nervous system development, mood, and behavior; hormones regulate electrolyte balance, which is critical to neuron function
→ Hypothalamus regulates secretion of anterior pituitary hormones and synthesizes the posterior pituitary hormones; sympathetic nervous system triggers secretion by adrenal medulla

Circulatory System

← Angiotensin II, aldosterone, antidiuretic hormone, and atrial natriuretic peptide regulate blood volume and pressure; epinephrine, thyroid hormone, and other hormones affect heart rate and contraction force
→ Blood transports hormones to their target organs; blood pressure and osmolarity variations trigger secretion of some hormones

Lymphatic/Immune Systems

← Thymosin and other hormones activate immune cells; glucocorticoids suppress immunity and inflammation
→ Lymphatic system maintains fluid balance in endocrine glands; lymphocytes protect endocrine glands from infection



Respiratory System

← Epinephrine and norepinephrine increase pulmonary airflow
→ Provides O_2 and removes CO_2; lungs convert angiotensin I to angiotensin II

Urinary System

← Antidiuretic hormone regulates water excretion; parathyroid hormone, calcitriol, and aldosterone regulate electrolyte excretion
→ Disposes of wastes and maintains electrolyte and pH balance; degrades and excretes hormones

Digestive System

← Parathyroid hormone affects intestinal calcium absorption; insulin and glucagon modulate nutrient storage and metabolism; several enteric hormones regulate gastrointestinal secretion and motility
→ Provides nutrients; nutrient absorption triggers insulin secretion; gut-brain peptides act on hypothalamus and stimulate specific hungers; liver degrades and excretes hormones

Reproductive System

← Gonadotropins and sex steroids regulate sexual development, sperm and egg production, sex drive, menstrual cycle, pregnancy, fetal development, and lactation
→ Sex hormones inhibit secretion by hypothalamus and pituitary gland

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

Overview of the Endocrine System (p. 636)

1. Intercellular communication is necessary for homeostasis. Cells communicate through gap junctions, neurotransmitters, paracrines, and hormones.
2. *Endocrinology* is the study of the endocrine system, which is composed of hormone-secreting cells and *endocrine glands.*
3. Hormones circulate throughout the body but stimulate only *target cells,* which have receptors for them.
4. Endocrine glands have no ducts, but secrete their products into the bloodstream.
5. The nervous and endocrine systems collaborate and have several overlapping functions and properties, but are not redundant. Differences are listed in table 17.1.

The Hypothalamus and Pituitary Gland (p. 637)

1. The hypothalamus and pituitary gland have a more wide-ranging influence on the body than any other endocrine gland.
2. The pituitary gland is connected to the hypothalamus by a stalk. It is divided into an anterior *adenohypophysis,* whose main part is the *anterior lobe,* and a posterior *neurohypophysis,* whose main part is the *posterior lobe* of the pituitary.
3. The adenohypophysis is connected to the hypothalamus by a system of blood vessels called the hypophyseal portal system. The neurohypophysis is connected to the hypothalamus by a bundle of nerve fibers, the hypothalamo-hypophyseal tract.
4. The hypothalamus secretes seven hormones that travel through the portal system and regulate the anterior lobe. Five of these trigger hormone release and two of them inhibit hormone release by the anterior lobe (see table 17.3).
5. The hypothalamus synthesizes two hormones that are stored in the posterior pituitary and released in response to nerve signals: oxytocin (OT) and antidiuretic hormone (ADH).
6. The anterior lobe secretes follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH), luteinizing hormone (LH), thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), prolactin (PRL), and growth hormone (GH). Their functions are summarized in table 17.4.
7. Growth hormone (GH) has an especially broad effect on the body, notably to stimulate the growth of cartilage, bone, muscle, and fat through its influence on protein, lipid, and carbohydrate metabolism. Many of its effects are mediated through insulin-like growth factors secreted by the liver.
8. The posterior lobe stores oxytocin (OT) and antidiuretic hormone (ADH) until the brain stimulates their release. OT promotes labor contractions and milk release and possibly contributes to semen propulsion, uterine contractions, and sexual emotion. ADH promotes water conservation.
9. The hypothalamus and pituitary are regulated by positive and negative feedback from their target organs.

Other Endocrine Glands (p. 646)

1. The *pineal gland* secretes *serotonin* and *melatonin* and may contribute to the timing of puberty.
2. The *thymus* secretes *thymopoietin* and *thymosins,* which help to regulate immunity.
3. The *thyroid gland* secretes *triiodothyronine* (T_3) and *thyroxine* (T_4), which stimulate catabolism and heat production, tissue growth, nervous system development, and alertness. It also secretes calcitonin, which promotes bone deposition and lowers blood Ca^{2+} levels.
4. The four *parathyroid glands* secrete *parathyroid hormone,* which acts in several ways to increase blood Ca^{2+} levels.
5. The *adrenal medulla* secretes mainly *epinephrine* and *norepinephrine,* which raise blood glucose levels and help the body adapt to physical activity and stress.
6. The *adrenal cortex* secretes aldosterone, which promotes Na^+ retention and K^+ excretion; *cortisol* and *corticosterone,* which raise blood glucose and fatty acids levels and aid in stress adaptation and tissue repair; and *androgens* and *estrogens,* which contribute to reproductive development and physiology.
7. The *pancreatic islets* secrete *insulin,* which promotes glucose uptake by the tissues; *glucagon,* which stimulates the release of glucose from storage; and *somatostatin,* which regulates the insulin- and glucagon-secreting cells and inhibits some digestive functions.
8. The ovaries secrete estradiol and progesterone, which regulate reproductive development and physiology, and inhibin, which suppresses FSH secretion by the pituitary. The testes secrete testosterone and inhibin, with corresponding roles in the male.
9. Many other hormones are produced by cells that populate other organs but do not form discrete glands; *atrial natriuretic peptide* by the heart; *calcitriol* by sequential action of the skin, liver, and kidneys; *erythropoietin* by the liver and kidneys; *angiotensinogen* by the liver; several *enteric hormones* by the stomach and small intestine; and *estrogens* and *progesterone* by the placenta.

Hormones and Their Actions (p. 652)

1. There are three chemical classes of hormones: steroids, peptides, and monoamines (table 17.6).
2. The steroids are synthesized from cholesterol.
3. Peptide hormones are synthesized by ribosomes and pass through inactive stages called the preprohormone and

prohormone before being converted to active hormone.
4. Monoamines are synthesized from the amino acids tryptophan and tyrosine. Thyroid hormone is an unusual case in that its synthesis begins with a large protein, thyroglobulin. Iodine is added to its tyrosine residues, the modified tyrosines are linked in pairs, and then the tyrosines are cleaved from the protein to yield the two thyroid hormones, T_3 and T_4.
5. Peptides and most monoamines travel easily in the watery blood plasma, but the hydrophobic steroids and thyroid hormone are carried by *transport proteins,* which also prolong the half-life of the hormones.
6. Hormone receptors are found in the plasma membranes, on the mitochondria and other organelles, and in the nuclei of the target cells. Steroids bind to nuclear receptors; T_3 to receptors in the nucleus, mitochondria, and ribosomes; and peptides and catecholamines to plasma membrane receptors, which activate formation of second messengers in the cytosol.
7. Second messengers for hormone action include cAMP, cGMP, diacylglycerol, and inositol triphosphate.
8. Because of *enzyme amplification,* small amounts of hormone can have great physiological effects.
9. Hormones are cleared from the blood by metabolism in the liver and kidneys and excretion in the bile and urine.
10. Target cells can adjust their sensitivity to a hormone by *up-regulation* (increasing the number of hormone receptors) and *down-regulation* (decreasing the number of receptors).
11. Hormones do not act in isolation, but influence each other. One hormone can have *synergistic, permissive,* or *antagonistic effects* on the action of another.

Stress and Adaptation (p. 662)

1. *Stress* is any situation that upsets homeostasis and threatens well-being.
2. Regardless of the cause of stress, the body reacts in a fairly consistent way called the *stress response (general adaptation syndrome).*
3. The first stage of the stress response, the *alarm reaction,* is characterized by elevated levels of norepinephrine, epinephrine, aldosterone, and angiotensin, resulting in glycogen breakdown, fluid and electrolyte retention, and elevated blood pressure.
4. The second stage, the *stage of resistance,* sets in when stored glycogen is exhausted. It is characterized by elevated levels of ACTH and cortisol, and the breakdown of fat and protein for fuel.
5. The third stage, the *stage of exhaustion,* sets in if fat reserves are depleted. It is characterized by increasing protein breakdown, weakening of the body, and often death.

Eicosanoids and Paracrine Signaling (p. 664)

1. *Paracrines* are hormonelike messengers that travel only short distances and stimulate nearby cells.
2. Many paracrines are *eicosanoids,* which have 20-carbon backbones and are derived from arachidonic acid. Eicosanoids include leukotrienes, prostacyclin, thromboxanes, and prostaglandins.

Endocrine Disorders (p. 666)

1. Endocrine dysfunctions often stem from hormone hyposecretion or hypersecretion.
2. Some pituitary disorders include *acromegaly* and *gigantism* from GH hypersecretion, *pituitary dwarfism* from GH hyposecretion, and *diabetes insipidus* from ADH hyposecretion.
3. *Myxedema* and *endemic goiter* are thyroid hyposecretion disorders and *toxic goiter* is a thyroid hypersecretion disorder.
4. *Hypoparathyroidism* leads to low blood Ca^{2+} level and sometimes fatal tetany; *hyperparathyroidism* leads to excessive blood Ca^{2+} and bone fragility.
5. Hypersecretion by the adrenal cortex can result in *Cushing syndrome* (excess cortisol) or *adrenogenital syndrome* (excess androgen).
6. Diabetes mellitus (DM) is the most common endocrine dysfunction, resulting from the hyposecretion or inaction of insulin—type I or insulin-dependent DM (IDDM) and type II or non-insulin-dependent DM (NIDDM), respectively.
7. DM is characterized by *polyuria, polydipsia,* and *polyphagia* and clinically confirmed by findings of *hyperglycemia, glycosuria,* and *ketonuria.* Glycosuria and osmotic diuresis result in the extreme polyuria, dehydration, and thirst typical of DM.
8. IDDM results from destruction of insulin-secreting β cells of the pancreas and is treated with insulin. NIDDM results from insensitivity of target cells to insulin and is treated with exercise, weight-loss diets, and medications to enhance insulin sensitivity.
9. Untreated DM results in severe wasting away of the body, degenerative cardiovascular and neurological disease, gangrene, blindness, kidney failure, ketoacidosis, coma, and death.

Selected Vocabulary

Study tables 17.2 through 17.5 for hormone names.

endocrinology 636
paracrine 636
hormone 636
target cell 637
anterior lobe of pituitary 639
posterior lobe of pituitary 639
gonadotropin 640
neuroendocrine reflex 644
negative feedback inhibition 645
pineal gland 646
thymus 646
thyroid gland 647
parathyroid glands 648
adrenal gland 648
adrenal cortex 649
androgen 649
estrogen 649
pancreatic islet 650
β cell 650
α cell 651
up- and down-regulation 661
stress response 663
eicosanoid 664
arachidonic acid 664
leukotriene 664
prostacyclin 664
thromboxane 664
prostaglandin 665
hyposecretion 666
hypersecretion 666
IDDM 669
NIDDM 669
ketoacidosis 670

Testing Your Recall

1. CRH secretion would *not* raise the blood concentration of
   a. ACTH.
   b. thyroxine.
   c. cortisol.
   d. corticosterone.
   e. glucose.
2. Which of the following hormones has the least in common with the others?
   a. adrenocorticotropic hormone
   b. follicle-stimulating hormone
   c. thyrotropin
   d. thyroxine
   e. prolactin
3. Which hormone would no longer be secreted if the hypothalamo-hypophyseal tract were destroyed?
   a. oxytocin
   b. follicle-stimulating hormone
   c. growth hormone
   d. adrenocorticotropic hormone
   e. corticosterone
4. Which of the following is *not* a hormone?
   a. prolactin
   b. prolactin-inhibiting factor
   c. thyroxine-binding globulin
   d. atrial natriuretic factor
   e. cortisol
5. Where are the receptors for insulin located?
   a. in the pancreatic β cells
   b. in the blood plasma
   c. on the target cell membrane
   d. in the target cell cytoplasm
   e. in the target cell nucleus
6. What would be the consequence of defective ADH receptors?
   a. diabetes mellitus
   b. adrenogenital syndrome
   c. dehydration
   d. seasonal affective disorder
   e. none of these
7. Which of these has more exocrine than endocrine tissue?
   a. the pineal gland
   b. the adenohypophysis
   c. the thyroid gland
   d. the pancreas
   e. the adrenal gland
8. Which of these cells stimulate bone deposition?
   a. α cells
   b. β cells
   c. C cells
   d. G cells
   e. T cells
9. Which of these hormones relies on cAMP as a second messenger?
   a. ACTH
   b. progesterone
   c. thyroxine
   d. testosterone
   e. epinephrine
10. Prostaglandins are derived from
    a. pro-opiomelanocortin.
    b. cyclooxygenase.
    c. leukotriene.
    d. lipoxygenase.
    e. arachidonic acid.
11. The _____ develops from the hypophyseal pouch of the embryo.
12. Thyroxine (T_4) is synthesized by combining two molecules of the amino acid _____ .
13. Growth hormone hypersecretion in adulthood causes a disease called _____ .
14. The dominant hormone in the stage of resistance of the stress response is _____ .
15. Adrenal steroids that regulate glucose metabolism are collectively called _____ .
16. Sex steroids are secreted by the _____ cells of the ovary and _____ cells of the testis.
17. Target cells can reduce pituitary secretion by a process called _____ .
18. Hypothalamic releasing factors are delivered to the anterior pituitary by way of a network of blood vessels called the _____ .
19. A hormone is said to have a/an _____ effect when it stimulates the target cell to develop receptors for other hormones to follow.
20. _____ is a process in which a cell increases its number of receptors for a hormone.

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. Castration would raise a man's blood gonadotropin concentration.
2. Hormones in the glycoprotein class cannot have cytoplasmic or nuclear receptors in their target cells.
3. Epinephrine and thyroid hormone have the same effects on metabolic rate and blood pressure.
4. Tumors can lead to either hyposecretion or hypersecretion of various hormones.
5. All hormones are secreted by endocrine glands.
6. An atherosclerotic deposit that blocked blood flow in the hypophyseal portal system would cause the testes and ovaries to malfunction.
7. The pineal gland and thymus become larger as one gets older.
8. A deficiency of dietary iodine would lead to negative feedback inhibition of the hypothalamic-pituitary-thyroid axis.
9. The tissue at the center of the adrenal gland is called the zona reticularis.
10. Of the endocrine organs covered in this chapter, only the adrenal glands are paired; the rest are single.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. Propose a model of enzyme amplification for the effect of a steroid hormone and construct a diagram similar to figure 17.21 for your model. A review of protein synthesis in chapter 4 may help.
2. Suppose you were browsing in a health-food store and saw a product advertised: "Put an end to heart disease. This herbal medicine will totally rid your body of cholesterol!" Would you buy it? Why or why not? If the product were as effective as claimed, what are some other effects it would produce?
3. A person with toxic goiter tends to sweat profusely. Explain this in terms of homeostasis.
4. How is the action of a peptide hormone similar to the action of the neurotransmitter norepinephrine?
5. Review the effects of anabolic steroid abuse (see insight 2.5, p. 87), and explain how some of these effects may relate to the concept of down-regulation explained in this chapter.

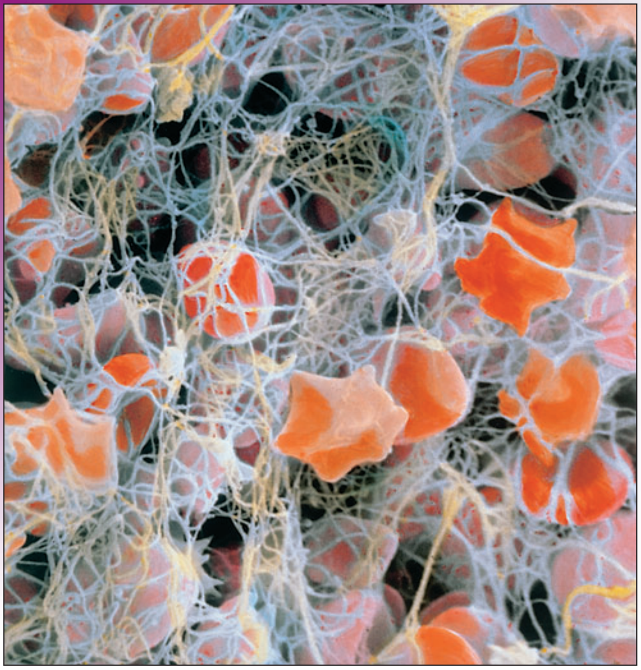
Answers at the Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Questions

17.4 The neurohypophysis
17.7 The thymus
17.19 Steroids enter the target cell; they do not bind to membrane receptors or activate second messengers.
17.23 Such a drug would block leukotriene synthesis and thus inhibit allergic and inflammatory responses.
17.24 She would have been a pituitary giant.

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.



A blood clot showing platelets in a fibrin mesh (SEM)

CHAPTER 18

The Circulatory System: Blood

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Functions and Properties of Blood 680

Plasma 683
- Proteins 683
- Nonprotein Nitrogenous Substances 684
- Nutrients 684
- Gases 684
- Electrolytes 684

Blood Cell Production 684
- Erythrocyte Production 685
- Leukocyte Production 688
- Platelet Production 688

Erythrocytes 689
- Form and Function 689
- Hemoglobin 689
- Quantities of Erythrocytes and Hemoglobin 691
- Erythrocyte Death and Disposal 691
- Erythrocyte Disorders 692

Blood Types 694
- The ABO Group 695
- The Rh Group 697
- Other Blood Groups 698

Leukocytes 699
- Types of Leukocytes 699
- Abnormalities of Leukocyte Count 699

Hemostasis—The Control of Bleeding 702
- Platelets 703
- Vascular Spasm 703
- Platelet Plug Formation 703
- Coagulation 704
- The Fate of Blood Clots 706
- Prevention of Inappropriate Coagulation 706
- Coagulation Disorders 707

Chapter Review 709

INSIGHTS

18.1 **Clinical Application:** Starvation and Plasma Protein Deficiency 682
18.2 **Evolutionary Medicine:** The Packaging of Hemoglobin 690
18.3 **Medical History:** Charles Drew—Blood Banking Pioneer 694
18.4 **Clinical Application:** Liver Disease and Blood Clotting 707
18.5 **Clinical Application:** Controlling Coagulation 708

Brushing Up

To understand this chapter, it is important that you understand or brush up on the following concepts:
- Polypeptides and conjugated proteins (pp. 79–80)
- Filtration (p. 106)
- Osmosis and osmolarity (pp. 107–108)
- Dominant and recessive alleles (p. 147)
- Sex linkage (p. 149)

Blood has always had a special mystique. From time immemorial, people have seen blood flow from the body and with it, the life of the individual. People thus presumed that blood carried a mysterious "vital force," and Roman gladiators drank it to fortify themselves for battle. Even today, we become especially alarmed when we find ourselves bleeding, and the emotional impact of blood is enough to make many people faint at the sight of it. From ancient Egypt to nineteenth-century America, physicians drained "bad blood" from their patients to treat everything from gout to headaches, from menstrual cramps to mental illness. It was long thought that hereditary traits were transmitted through the blood, and people still use such unfounded expressions as "I have one-quarter Cherokee blood."

Scarcely anything meaningful was known about blood until blood cells were seen with the first microscopes. Even though blood is a uniquely accessible tissue, most of what we know about it dates only to the last 50 years. Recent developments in **hematology**[1]—the study of blood—have empowered us to save and improve the lives of countless people who would otherwise suffer or die.

Table 18.1 Functions of the Blood

Transport
Carries O_2 and CO_2 between the lungs and other organs
Carries nutrients from the digestive system and storage depots to other organs
Carries wastes to the liver and kidneys for detoxification or removal
Carries hormones from endocrine glands to target cells
Carries heat to the skin for removal; helps regulate body temperature
Protection
Plays several roles in inflammation
Leukocytes destroy microorganisms and cancer cells
Antibodies and other proteins neutralize or destroy pathogens
Platelet factors initiate clotting and minimize blood loss
Regulation
Transfers water to and from the tissues; helps stabilize water balance
Buffers acids and bases; helps stabilize pH

Functions and Properties of Blood

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- state the various functions of blood;
- list the components of blood;
- explain why the viscosity and osmolarity of blood are important; and
- state what components account for its viscosity and osmolarity.

The blood plays more roles than one might expect (table 18.1); it is involved in respiration, nutrition, waste elimination, thermoregulation, immune defense, water and acid-base balance, and internal communication. Most adults have 4 to 6 L of blood. It is a connective tissue with two main components—the **plasma,** a clear extracellular fluid, and the **formed elements,** which consist of the blood cells and platelets (fig. 18.1).

The formed elements are classified as follows. They are called *formed elements* because they are enclosed in a plasma membrane and have a definite shape and visible structure. All of them are cells except for the platelets, which are fragments of certain bone marrow cells.

- Erythrocytes
- Platelets
- Leukocytes
  - Granulocytes
    - Neutrophils
    - Eosinophils
    - Basophils
  - Agranulocytes
    - Lymphocytes
    - Monocytes

Erythrocytes[2] (eh-RITH-ro-sites) are also known as *red blood cells (RBCs)* and leukocytes[3] (LOO-co-sites) are also known as *white blood cells (WBCs).*

The formed elements can be separated from the plasma by placing a sample of blood in a tube and spinning it for a few minutes in a centrifuge (fig. 18.2). RBCs, being more dense than the blood plasma, become packed into the bottom of the tube and typically constitute about 45% of the total volume. This value is called the *hematocrit.* WBCs and platelets make up a narrow cream-colored zone called the *buffy coat* just above the RBCs. At the top of the tube is the plasma, which has a pale yellow color and accounts for nearly 55% of the total volume.

Table 18.2 lists several properties of blood. Its viscosity and osmolarity warrant special attention. **Viscosity** is the resistance of a fluid to flow due to cohesion between its particles. At a given temperature, mineral oil is more viscous than water, for example, and honey is more viscous than mineral oil. Whole blood is 4.5 to 5.5 times as viscous as water. This is due mainly to the RBCs; plasma alone is 2.0 times as viscous as water, mainly because of its protein. Viscosity is important in

---

[1] *hem, hemato* = blood + *logy* = study of

[2] *erythro* = red + *cyte* = cell

[3] *leuko* = white + *cyte* = cell

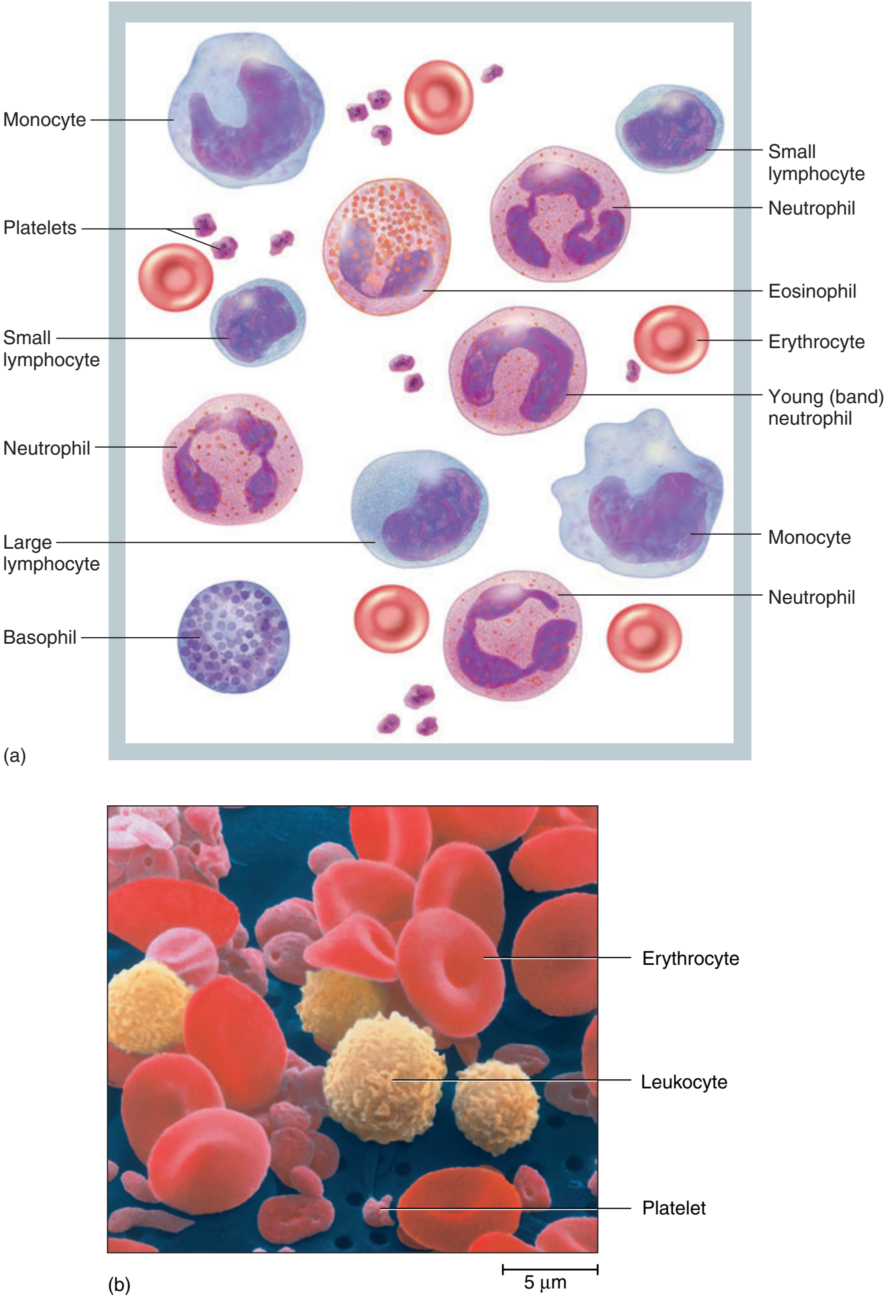

Monocyte
Platelets
Small lymphocyte
Neutrophil
Large lymphocyte
Basophil
(a)
Small lymphocyte
Neutrophil
Eosinophil
Erythrocyte
Young (band) neutrophil
Monocyte
Neutrophil
Erythrocyte
Leukocyte
Platelet
(b)
5 µm

Figure 18.1 **The Formed Elements of Blood.** (*a*) The structure of red blood cells, white blood cells, and platelets. (*b*) Blood cells and platelets (colorized SEM).

What do erythrocytes and platelets lack that the other formed elements have?

circulatory function because it partially governs the flow of blood through the vessels. An RBC or protein deficiency reduces viscosity and causes blood to flow too easily, whereas an excess causes blood to flow too sluggishly. Either of these conditions puts a strain on the heart that may lead to serious cardiovascular problems if not corrected.

The **osmolarity** of blood (total molarity of its dissolved particles) is another important factor in cardiovascular function. In order to nourish surrounding cells and

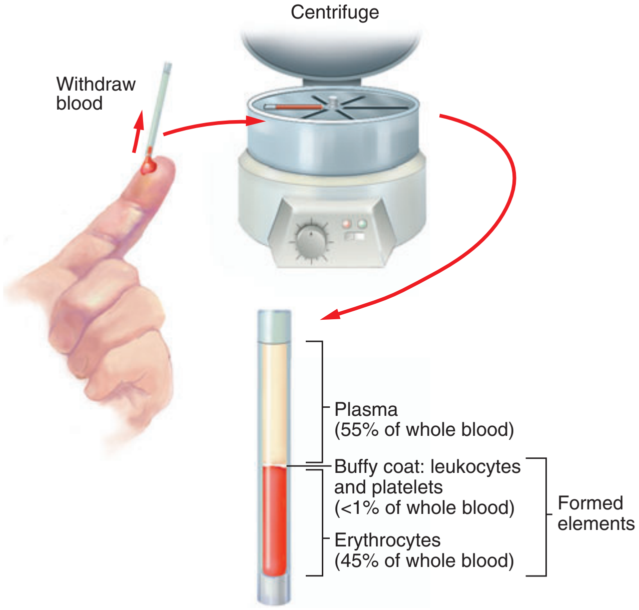


Figure 18.2 **The Hematocrit.** A small sample of blood is taken in a glass tube and spun in a centrifuge to separate the cells from the plasma. The percent volume of red cells (hematocrit) is then measured. In this example, the hematocrit is 45%.

remove their wastes, substances must pass between the bloodstream and tissue fluid through the capillary walls. This transfer of fluids depends on a balance between the filtration of fluid from the capillary and its reabsorption by osmosis (see fig. 3.15, p. 108). The rate of reabsorption is governed by the relative osmolarity of the blood versus the tissue fluid. If the osmolarity of the blood is too high, the bloodstream absorbs too much fluid, which results in high blood pressure and a potentially dangerous strain on the heart and arteries. If its osmolarity drops too low, too much fluid remains in the tissues. They become edematous (swollen) and the blood pressure may drop to dangerously low levels because of the amount of fluid lost from the bloodstream.

It is therefore important that the blood maintain an optimal osmolarity. The osmolarity of the blood is a product mainly of its sodium ions, protein, and erythrocytes. The contribution of protein to blood osmotic pressure—called the **colloid osmotic pressure (COP)**—is especially important, as we see from the effects of extremely low-protein diets (see insight 18.1).

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

1. From your body weight in kilograms, predict how many kilograms and how many liters of blood you have.
2. What are the two principal components of the blood?
3. What percentage of the blood is composed of erythrocytes? What is the term for this percentage?
4. Why is blood viscosity important? What are the main factors that contribute to blood viscosity?
5. Why is blood osmolarity important? What are the main factors that contribute to blood osmolarity?

Table 18.2 General Properties of Blood*

Mean Fraction of Body Weight	8%
Volume in Adult Body	Female: 4–5 L; male: 5–6 L
Volume/Body Weight	80–85 mL/kg
Mean Temperature	38°C (100.4°F)
pH	7.35–7.45
Viscosity (relative to water)	Whole blood: 4.5–5.5; plasma: 2.0
Osmolarity	280–296 mOsm/L
Mean Salinity (mainly NaCl)	0.9%
Hematocrit (packed cell volume)	Female: 37%–48% male: 45%–52%
Hemoglobin	Female: 12–16 g/dL male: 13–18 g/dL
Mean RBC Count	Female: 4.2–5.4 million/µL male: 4.6–6.2 million/µL
Platelet Count	130,000–360,000/µL
Total WBC Count	5,000–10,000/µL

*Values vary slightly depending on the testing methods used.

Insight 18.1 Clinical Application

Starvation and Plasma Protein Deficiency

Several conditions can lead to hypoproteinemia, a deficiency of plasma protein: extreme starvation or dietary protein deficiency, liver diseases that interfere with protein synthesis, kidney diseases that result in protein loss through the urine, and severe burns that result in protein loss through the body surface. As the protein content of the blood plasma drops, so does its osmolarity. The bloodstream loses more fluid to the tissues than it reabsorbs by osmosis. Thus, the tissues become edematous and a pool of fluid may accumulate in the abdominal cavity—a condition called *ascites* (ah-SY-teez).

Children who suffer severe dietary protein deficiencies often exhibit a condition called *kwashiorkor* (KWASH-ee-OR-cor) (fig. 18.3). The arms and legs are emaciated for lack of muscle, the skin is shiny and tight with edema, and the abdomen is swollen by ascites. *Kwashiorkor* is an African word for a "deposed" or "displaced" child who is no longer breast-fed. Symptoms appear when a child is weaned and placed on a diet consisting mainly of rice or other cereals. Children with kwashiorkor often die of diarrhea and dehydration.

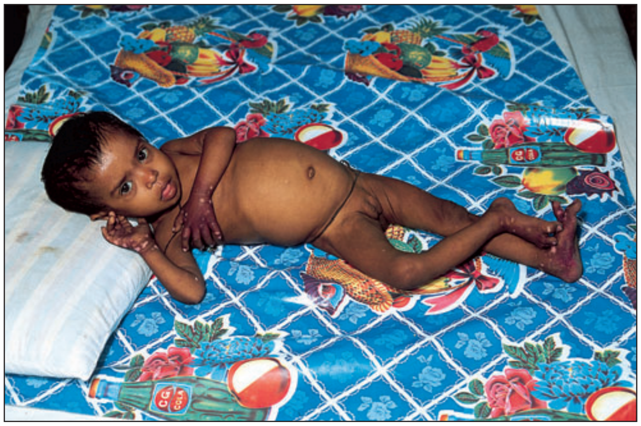


Figure 18.3 **A Child with Kwashiorkor.** Note the thin limbs and fluid-distended abdomen.

Table 18.3 Composition of Blood Plasma*

Water	92% by weight
Proteins	Total 6–9 g/dL
Albumins	60% of total protein, 3.2–5.5 g/dL
Globulins	36% of total protein, 2.3–3.5 g/dL
Fibrinogen	4% of total protein, 0.2–0.3 g/dL
Nutrients	
Glucose (dextrose)	70–110 mg/dL
Amino acids	33–51 mg/dL
Lactic acid	6–16 mg/dL
Total lipid	450–850 mg/dL
Cholesterol	120–220 mg/dL
Fatty acids	190–420 mg/dL
High-density lipoprotein (HDL)	30–80 mg/dL
Low-density lipoprotein (LDL)	62–185 mg/dL
Neutral fats (triglycerides)	40–150 mg/dL
Phospholipids	6–12 mg/dL
Iron	50–150 μg/dL
Trace elements	Traces
Vitamins	Traces
Electrolytes	
Sodium (Na^+)	135–145 mEq/L
Calcium (Ca^{2+})	9.2–10.4 mEq/L
Potassium (K^+)	3.5–5.0 mEq/L
Magnesium (Mg^{2+})	1.3–2.1 mEq/L
Chloride (Cl^-)	100–106 mEq/L
Bicarbonate (HCO_3^-)	23.1–26.7 mEq/L
Phosphate (HPO_4^{2-})	1.4–2.7 mEq/L
Sulfate (SO_4^{2-})	0.6–1.2 mEq/L
Nitrogenous Wastes	
Urea	8–25 mg/dL
Uric acid	1.5–8.0 mg/dL
Creatinine	0.6–1.5 mg/dL
Creatine	0.2–0.8 mg/dL
Ammonia	0.02–0.09 mg/dL
Bilirubin	0–1.0 mg/dL
Other Components	
Respiratory gases (O_2, CO_2, N_2)	—
Enzymes of diagnostic value	—
Hormones	—

*This table is limited to substances of greatest relevance to this and later chapters. Concentrations refer to plasma only, not to whole blood.

Plasma

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- distinguish between plasma and serum;
- list the proteins of blood plasma and state their functions;
- name the nonprotein nitrogenous compounds of blood plasma and explain their significance; and
- list the major nutrients, gases, and electrolytes found in plasma.

Blood plasma is a complex mixture of proteins, enzymes, nutrients, wastes, hormones, and gases (table 18.3). If we allow blood to clot and then remove the solids, we are left with a fluid called the blood **serum,** which is essentially identical to plasma except for the absence of clotting proteins.

Proteins

Protein is the most abundant plasma solute by weight, totaling 6 to 9 g/dL. Plasma proteins play a variety of roles including clotting, defense, and transport. There are three major categories of proteins, the albumins, globulins, and fibrinogen (table 18.4). Many other plasma proteins are indispensable to survival, but they account for less than 1% of the total.

Albumins are the smallest and most abundant plasma proteins. Because of their major contributions to viscosity and osmolarity, pathological changes in albumin concentration strongly influence blood pressure, flow, and fluid balance. **Globulins** are divided into three subclasses; from smallest to largest in molecular weight, they are the alpha (α), beta (β), and gamma (γ) globulins. **Fibrinogen** is a soluble precursor of *fibrin,* a sticky protein that forms the

Table 18.4 Major Proteins of the Blood Plasma

Proteins	Functions
Albumins (60%)*	Responsible for colloid osmotic pressure; major contributor to blood viscosity; transport lipids, hormones, calcium, and other solutes; buffer blood pH
Globulins (36%)*	
Alpha (α) Globulins	
Haptoglobulin	Transports hemoglobin released by dead erythrocytes
Ceruloplasmin	Transports copper
Prothrombin	Promotes blood clotting
Others	Transport lipids, fat-soluble vitamins, and hormones
Beta (β) Globulins	
Transferrin	Transports iron
Complement proteins	Aid in destruction of toxins and microorganisms
Others	Transport lipids
Gamma (γ) Globulins	Antibodies; combat pathogens
Fibrinogen (4%)*	Becomes fibrin, the major component of blood clots

*Mean percentage of the total plasma protein by weight.

framework of a blood clot. Some other plasma proteins are enzymes involved in the clotting process.

The liver produces as much as 4 g of plasma protein per hour, contributing all of the major proteins except γ globulins. The γ globulins, also called antibodies, come from *plasma cells*—connective tissue cells that are descended from white blood cells called *B lymphocytes.*

Think About It

What would be the benefit of giving intravenous albumin to a patient who has experienced fluid loss and low blood volume? Relate your answer to the principle of osmosis.

Nonprotein Nitrogenous Substances

Blood plasma contains several important nitrogenous compounds in addition to protein—notably amino acids and nitrogenous wastes. The amino acids come from the digestion of dietary protein or the catabolism of tissue proteins. **Nitrogenous wastes** are toxic end products of catabolism (see table 18.3). The most abundant is *urea,* a product of amino acid catabolism. Nitrogenous wastes are normally cleared from the blood and excreted by the kidneys at a rate that balances their rate of production.

Nutrients

Nutrients absorbed by the digestive tract are transported in the blood plasma. They include glucose, amino acids, fats, cholesterol, phospholipids, vitamins, and minerals.

Gases

Plasma transports some of the oxygen and carbon dioxide carried by the blood. It also contains a substantial amount of dissolved nitrogen, which normally has no physiological role in the body but becomes important under circumstances such as diving and aviation.

Electrolytes

Electrolytes of the blood plasma are listed in table 18.3. Sodium ions constitute about 90% of the plasma cations and account for more of the blood's osmolarity than any other solute. Sodium therefore has a major influence on blood volume and pressure; people with high blood pressure are thus advised to limit their sodium intake. Electrolyte concentrations are carefully regulated by the body and have rather stable concentrations in the plasma.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

6. List the three major classes of plasma proteins. Which one is missing from blood serum?
7. What are the functions of blood albumin?
8. List some organic and inorganic components of plasma other than protein.

Blood Cell Production

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- explain where blood is produced in fetuses, children, and adults;
- describe the stages of blood cell production and state the factors that influence its rate; and
- explain how uncommitted stem cells become committed to forming specific types of blood cells.

A knowledge of **hemopoiesis**[4] (HE-mo-poy-EE-sis), production of the formed elements of blood, provides a foundation for understanding leukemia, anemia, and other blood disorders. The tissues that produce blood are called *hemopoietic tissues.* The earliest of these to develop is the *yolk sac,* a membrane associated with all vertebrate embryos. In most vertebrates, it encloses the yolk of the egg and functions in both hemopoiesis and the transfer of yolk nutrients to the embryo. Even animals that don't lay eggs, however, have a yolk sac that retains its hemopoietic function. (It is also the source of cells that later produce eggs or sperm.) Cell clusters called *blood islands* form in the yolk sac by the third week of human development. They produce primitive *stem cells* that colonize the fetal bone marrow, liver, spleen, and thymus, where they subsequently produce blood cells.

The liver stops producing blood cells around the time of birth. The spleen stops producing RBCs soon after birth, but it continues to produce lymphocytes for life. From infancy onward, all formed elements are produced by **myeloid**[5] **hemopoiesis** in the red bone marrow and lymphocytes are additionally produced by **lymphoid hemopoiesis** in widely distributed lymphoid tissues and organs. These sites include the thymus, tonsils, lymph nodes, spleen, and patches of lymphoid tissue in the intestines and elsewhere.

The stages of myeloid hemopoiesis are shown in figure 18.4. The process begins with stem cells called **hemocytoblasts,**[6] which multiply continually to maintain their numbers and which are *multipotent*—capable of differentiating into multiple cell lines that give rise to all of the formed elements. Differentiation begins when they develop surface receptors for specific stimulatory chemicals—*erythropoietin, thrombopoietin,* and *colony-stimulating factors (CSFs).* At this point, they can no longer produce more hemocytoblasts; they are called *committed cells* because each is destined to continue down one specific developmental pathway. We'll now examine the three principal pathways—*erythropoiesis, leukopoiesis,* and *thrombopoiesis.*

Erythrocyte Production

Erythrocyte production is called **erythropoiesis** (eh-RITH-ro-poy-EE-sis). It normally generates about 2.5 million RBCs per second (20 mL/day). The sequence of cell transformations leading to an erythrocyte is hemocytoblast → proerythroblast → erythroblast → normoblast → reticulocyte → erythrocyte. The *proerythroblast* is the first committed cell, having receptors for the hormone **erythropoietin (EPO).** Once EPO receptors are in place, the cell is committed exclusively to producing RBCs. EPO is secreted by the kidneys and liver and stimulates proerythroblasts to differentiate into erythroblasts. Erythroblasts multiply and synthesize *hemoglobin* (the red oxygen-transport protein), then discard their nucleus, which shrinks and is lost from the cell. With the nucleus gone, the cell is called a *reticulocyte*—named for a fine network of endoplasmic reticulum (ER) that persists for another day or two. The overall transformation from hemocytoblast to reticulocytes takes 3 to 5 days and involves four major developments—a reduction in cell size, an increase in cell number, the synthesis of hemoglobin, and the loss of the nucleus.

Reticulocytes leave the bone marrow and enter the bloodstream. When the last of the ER disappears, the cell is a mature erythrocyte. About 0.5% to 1.5% of the circulating RBCs are reticulocytes, but this percentage increases under some circumstances. Blood loss, for example, stimulates accelerated erythropoiesis and leads to an increasing number of reticulocytes in circulation—as if the bone marrow were in such a hurry to replenish the lost RBCs that it lets many developing RBCs into circulation a little early.

Erythrocyte Homeostasis

The RBC count is maintained in a classic negative feedback manner (fig. 18.5). If the RBC count should drop (for example, because of hemorrhaging), then the blood will carry less oxygen—a state of **hypoxemia**[7] (oxygen deficiency in the blood) will exist. The kidneys detect this and increase their EPO output. Three or 4 days later, the RBC count begins to rise and reverses the hypoxemia that started the process.

Hypoxemia has many causes other than blood loss. Another cause is a low level of oxygen in the atmosphere. If you were to move from Miami to Denver, for example, the lower O_2 level at the high altitude of Denver would produce temporary hypoxemia and stimulate EPO secretion and erythropoiesis. The blood of an average adult has about 5 million RBCs/μL, but people who live at high altitudes may have counts of 7 to 8 million RBCs/μL. Another cause of hypoxemia is an abrupt increase in the body's oxygen consumption. If a lethargic person suddenly takes up tennis or aerobics, for example, the muscles consume oxygen more rapidly and create a state of hypoxemia that stimulates erythropoiesis. Endurance-trained athletes commonly have RBC counts as high as 6.5 million RBCs/μL.

---

[4] *hemo* = blood + *poiesis* = formation of

[5] *myel* = bone marrow

[6] *hemo* = blood + *cyto* = cell + *blast* = precursor

[7] *hyp* = below normal + *ox* = oxygen + *emia* = blood condition

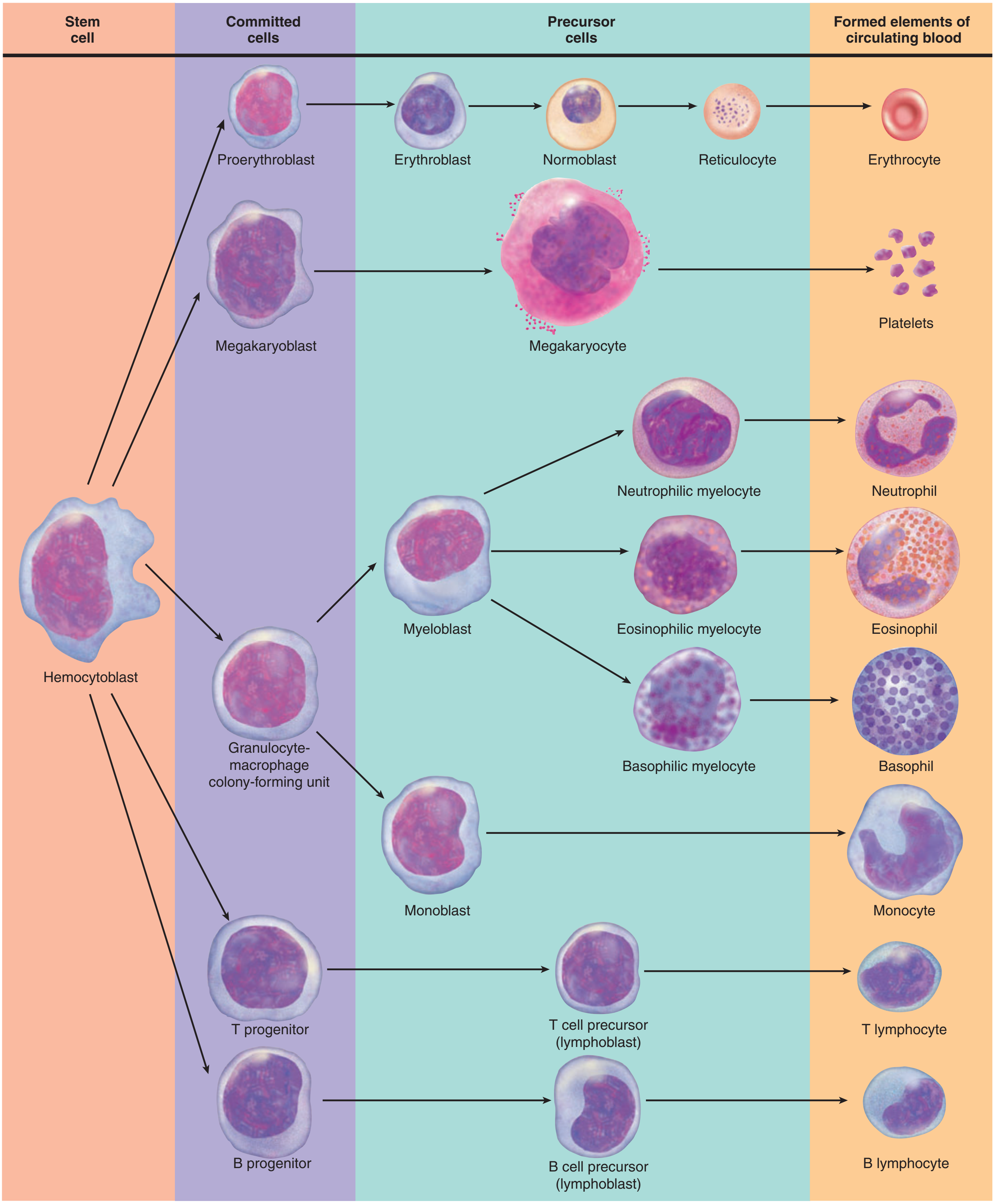

Stem cell
Committed cells
Precursor cells
Formed elements of circulating blood
Proerythroblast
Erythroblast
Normoblast
Reticulocyte
Erythrocyte
Megakaryoblast
Megakaryocyte
Platelets
Neutrophilic myelocyte
Neutrophil
Myeloblast
Eosinophilic myelocyte
Eosinophil
Hemocytoblast
Granulocyte-macrophage colony-forming unit
Basophilic myelocyte
Basophil
Monoblast
Monocyte
T progenitor
T cell precursor (lymphoblast)
T lymphocyte
B progenitor
B cell precursor (lymphoblast)
B lymphocyte

Figure 18.4 **Hemopoiesis.** Stages in the development of all the formed elements of blood.

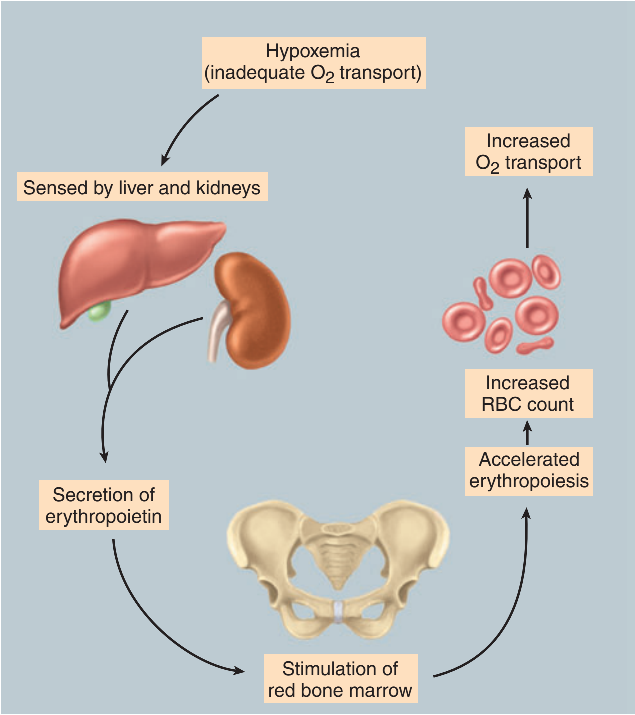

Hypoxemia
(inadequate O_2 transport)
Sensed by liver and kidneys
Secretion of erythropoietin
Stimulation of red bone marrow
Accelerated erythropoiesis
Increased RBC count
Increased O_2 transport

Figure 18.5 **The Correction of Hypoxemia Through a Negative Feedback Loop.**

Not all hypoxemia can be corrected by increasing erythropoiesis. In emphysema, for example, there is less lung tissue available to oxygenate the blood. Raising the RBC count cannot correct this, but the kidneys and bone marrow have no way of knowing this. The RBC count continues to rise in a futile attempt to restore homeostasis, resulting in a dangerous excess called *polycythemia,* discussed shortly.

Iron Metabolism

Iron is a critical part of the hemoglobin molecule and therefore one of the key nutritional requirements for erythropoiesis. Men lose about 0.9 mg of iron per day through the urine, feces, and bleeding, and women of reproductive age lose an average of 1.7 mg/day because of the added factor of menstruation. Since we absorb only a fraction of the iron in our food, we must consume 5 to 20 mg/day to replace our losses. Pregnant women need 20 to 48 mg/day, especially in the last 3 months, to meet not only their own need but also that of the fetus.

Dietary iron exists in two forms: ferric (Fe^{3+}) and ferrous (Fe^{2+}) ions. Stomach acid converts most Fe^{3+} to Fe^{2+}, the only form that can be absorbed by the small intestine (fig. 18.6). A protein called **gastroferritin,** produced by the stomach, then binds Fe^{2+} and transports it to the small intestine. Here, it is absorbed into the blood, binds to a plasma protein called **transferrin,** and travels to the bone marrow, liver, and other tissues. Bone marrow uses Fe^{2+} for

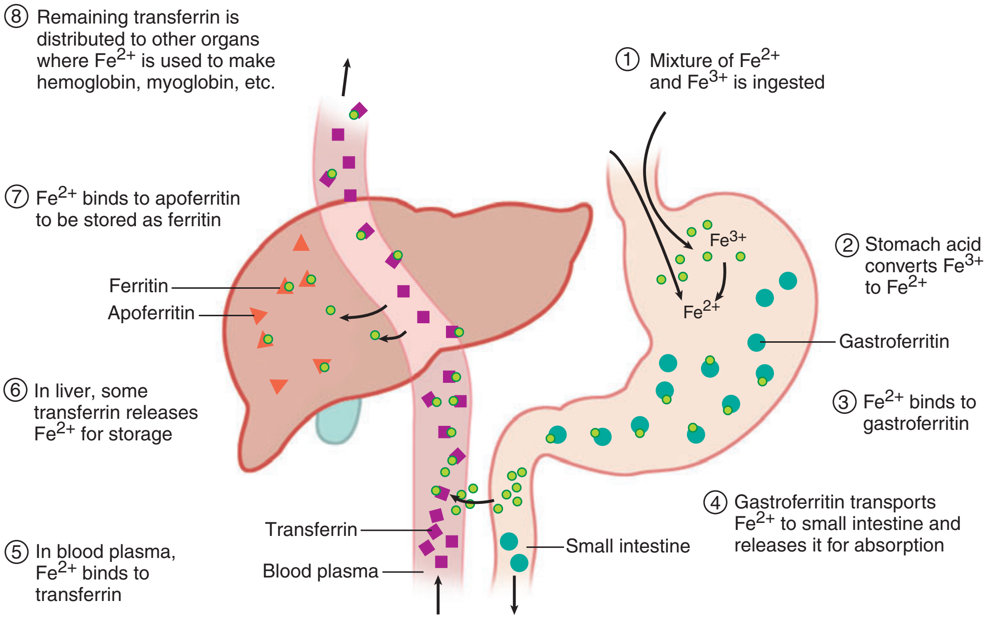

⑧ Remaining transferrin is distributed to other organs where Fe^{2+} is used to make hemoglobin, myoglobin, etc.
① Mixture of Fe^{2+} and Fe^{3+} is ingested
⑦ Fe^{2+} binds to apoferritin to be stored as ferritin
Fe^{3+}
Fe^{2+}
② Stomach acid converts Fe^{3+} to Fe^{2+}
Ferritin
Apoferritin
Gastroferritin
⑥ In liver, some transferrin releases Fe^{2+} for storage
③ Fe^{2+} binds to gastroferritin
④ Gastroferritin transports Fe^{2+} to small intestine and releases it for absorption
Transferrin
Small intestine
⑤ In blood plasma, Fe^{2+} binds to transferrin
Blood plasma

Figure 18.6 **The Pathway of Iron Absorption, Transport, and Storage.**

hemoglobin synthesis; muscle uses it to make the oxygen-storage protein myoglobin; and nearly all cells use iron to make electron-transport molecules called cytochromes in their mitochondria. The liver binds surplus iron to a protein called **apoferritin,** forming an iron-storage complex called **ferritin.** It releases Fe^{2+} into circulation when needed.

Some other nutritional requirements for erythropoiesis are vitamin B_{12} and folic acid, required for the rapid cell division and DNA synthesis that occurs in erythropoiesis, and vitamin C and copper, which are cofactors for some of the enzymes that synthesize hemoglobin. Copper is transported in the blood by an α globulin called *ceruloplasmin.*[8]

Leukocyte Production

Leukopoiesis (LOO-co-poy-EE-sis) is the production of white blood cells (see fig. 18.4). It begins when some hemocytoblasts differentiate into three types of committed cells:

1. *B progenitors,* destined to become B lymphocytes;
2. *T progenitors,* which become T lymphocytes; and
3. *granulocyte-macrophage colony-forming units,* which become granulocytes and monocytes.

These committed cells have receptors for colony-stimulating factors (CSFs). Mature lymphocytes and macrophages secrete several types of CSFs in response to infections and other immune challenges. Each CSF stimulates a different WBC type to develop in response to specific needs. Thus, a bacterial infection may trigger the production of neutrophils whereas an allergy triggers the production of eosinophils, each process working through its own CSF.

The red bone marrow stores granulocytes and monocytes until they are needed and contains 10 to 20 times more of these cells than the circulating blood does. Lymphocytes begin developing in the bone marrow but do not stay there. Some types mature there and others migrate to the thymus to complete their development. Mature lymphocytes from both locations then colonize the spleen, lymph nodes, and other lymphoid organs and tissues.

Circulating leukocytes do not stay in the blood for very long. Granulocytes circulate for 4 to 8 hours and then migrate into the tissues, where they live another 4 or 5 days. Monocytes travel in the blood for 10 to 20 hours, then migrate into the tissues and transform into a variety of **macrophages** (MAC-ro-fay-jes). Macrophages can live as long as a few years.

Lymphocytes, responsible for long-term immunity, survive from a few weeks to decades; they leave the bloodstream for the tissues and eventually enter the lymphatic system, which empties them back into the bloodstream. Thus, they are continually recycled from blood to tissue fluid to lymph and finally back to the blood. The biology of leukocytes and macrophages is discussed more extensively in chapter 21.

Platelet Production

The production of platelets is called **thrombopoiesis** because platelets used to be called *thrombocytes.*[9] The latter term is now reserved for nucleated true cells with a blood-clotting function in animals such as birds and reptiles. Thrombopoiesis begins when a hemocytoblast develops receptors for the hormone *thrombopoietin,* which, like erythropoietin, is produced by the liver and kidneys. With these receptors in place, the hemocytoblast has become a committed cell called a *megakaryoblast.* In response to thrombopoietin, the megakaryoblast replicates its DNA repeatedly without undergoing nuclear or cytoplasmic division. The result is a gigantic cell (up to 100 μm in diameter) called a **megakaryocyte**[10] (meg-ah-CAR-ee-oh-site), with a huge multilobed nucleus and multiple sets of chromosomes (fig. 18.7). Most megakaryocytes live in the bone marrow, but some of them colonize the lungs.

A megakaryocyte exhibits infoldings of the plasma membrane that divide its marginal cytoplasm into little compartments. The cytoplasm breaks up along these lines of weakness into tiny fragments that enter the bloodstream. Some of these are functional platelets, while others are larger particles that break up into platelets as they pass through the lungs. About 25% to 40% of the platelets are stored in the spleen and released as needed. The remainder circulate freely in the blood and live for about 10 days.

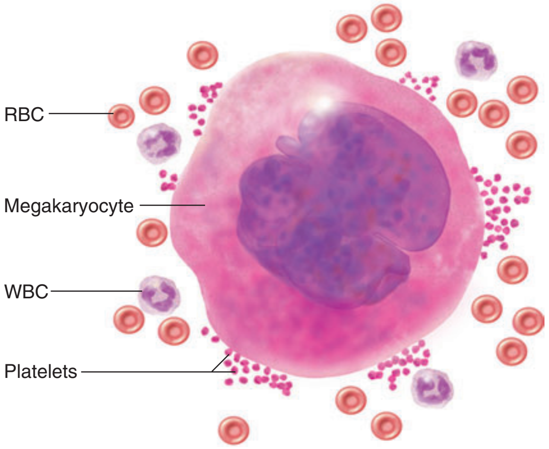


Figure 18.7 **A Megakaryocyte Producing Platelets.** Several red and white blood cells are shown for size comparison.

---

[8] *cerulo* = blue-green, the color of oxidized copper + *plasm* = blood plasma

[9] *thrombo* = clotting + *cyte* = cell

[10] *mega* = giant + *karyo* = nucleus + *cyte* = cell

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

9. List the fetal tissues and organs that produce blood.
10. How do the sites of hemopoiesis differ between children and adults?
11. Distinguish between lymphoid and myeloid hemopoiesis.
12. How is a hemocytoblast different from a committed hemopoietic cell?

Erythrocytes

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the structure of erythrocytes (red blood cells);
- describe the structure and function of hemoglobin;
- describe how the erythrocytes and hemoglobin content of the blood are quantified;
- explain why men and women differ in their erythrocyte count and hemoglobin level;
- describe the life cycle of erythrocytes; and
- describe the types, causes, and effects of anemia and polycythemia.

Form and Function

Erythrocytes have two principal functions: (1) to pick up oxygen from the lungs and deliver it to tissues elsewhere and (2) to pick up carbon dioxide from other tissues and unload it in the lungs. An erythrocyte is a disc-shaped cell with a thick rim and a thin sunken center where the nucleus used to be. It is about 7.5 µm in diameter and 2.0 µm thick at the rim (fig. 18.8).

The plasma membrane of a mature RBC has glycoproteins and glycolipids that determine a person's blood type. On its inner surface are two peripheral proteins, *spectrin* and *actin,* that give the membrane resilience and durability. This is especially important when RBCs pass through small blood capillaries and sinusoids. Many of these passages are narrower than the diameter of an RBC, forcing the RBCs to stretch, bend, and fold as they squeeze through. When they enter larger vessels, they spring back to their discoid shape.

Most cells, including white blood cells, have an abundance of organelles. RBCs, however, lose nearly all of their organelles during maturation and are almost devoid of internal structure (fig. 18.9). Because they lack mitochondria, RBCs are incapable of aerobic respiration. This prevents them from consuming the oxygen they are meant to transport to other tissues. Erythrocytes are the only cells in the body that carry on anaerobic fermentation indefinitely.

The cytoplasm of an RBC consists mainly of a 33% solution of **hemoglobin (Hb),** the red pigment that gives the RBC its color and name. Hemoglobin carries most of the oxygen and some of the carbon dioxide transported by the blood.

The cytoplasm also contains an enzyme, *carbonic anhydrase (CAH),* that catalyzes the reaction $CO_2 + H_2O \leftrightarrow H_2CO_3$. The role of CAH in gas transport and pH balance is discussed in chapters 22 and 24. The lack of a nucleus makes an RBC unable to repair itself, but it has an overriding advantage: The biconcave shape gives the cell a much greater ratio of surface area to volume, which enables O_2 and CO_2 to diffuse quickly to and from the hemoglobin and CAH.

Hemoglobin

Each erythrocyte contains about 280 million molecules of hemoglobin. Hemoglobin consists of four protein chains

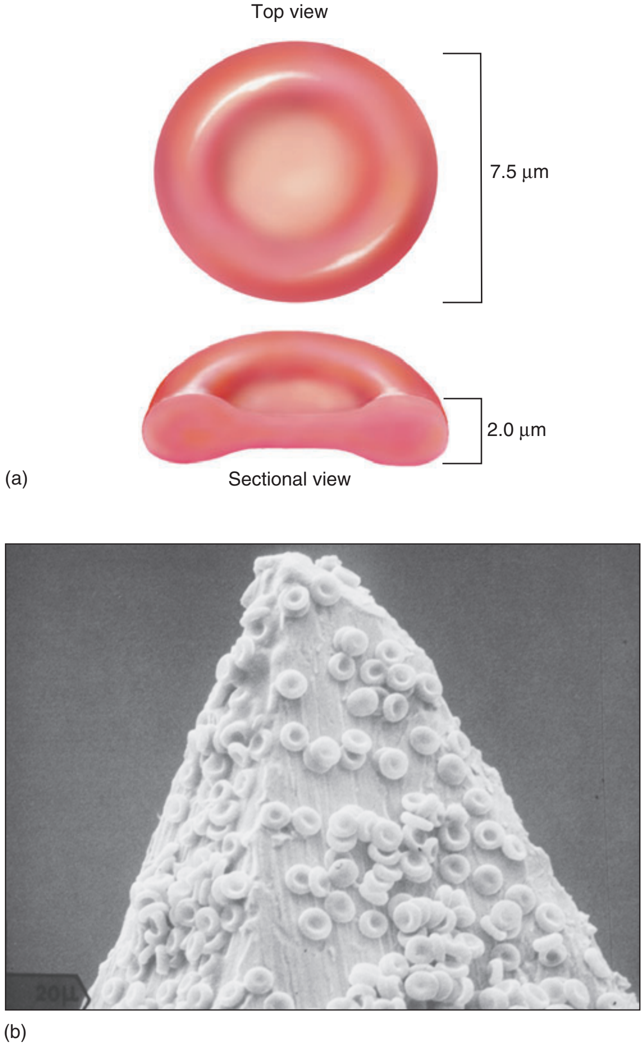


Figure 18.8 **The Structure of Erythrocytes.** (*a*) Dimensions and shape of an erythrocyte. (*b*) Erythrocytes on the tip of a hypodermic needle.

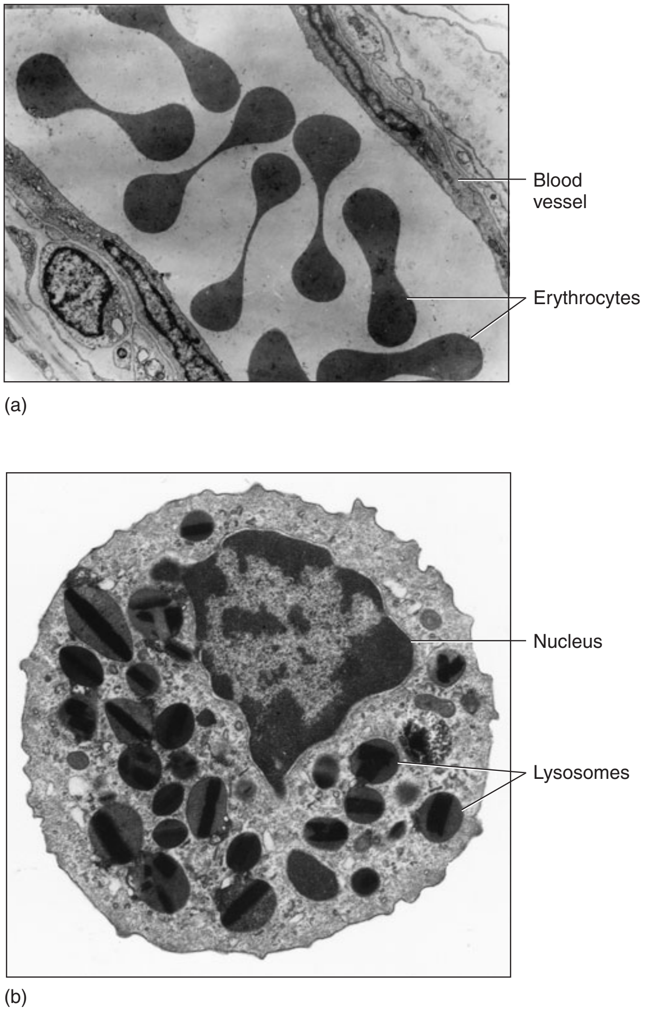


Figure 18.9 Comparison of RBCs and WBCs as Seen with the Transmission Electron Microscope. (*a*) RBCs in a small blood vessel, showing their strongly biconcave shape and lack of organelles. (*b*) An eosinophil, a representative leukocyte, showing a nucleus, many lysosomes, and other organelles.

What is the approximate width of this blood vessel?

called **globins** (fig. 18.10*a*). Two of these, the *alpha* (α) *chains,* are 141 amino acids long, and the other two, the *beta* (β) *chains,* are 146 amino acids long. Each chain is conjugated with a nonprotein moiety called the **heme** group (fig. 18.10*b*), which binds oxygen to a ferrous ion (Fe^{2+}) at its center. Each heme can carry one molecule of O_2; thus, the hemoglobin molecule as a whole can transport up to 4 O_2. About 5% of the CO_2 in the bloodstream is also transported by hemoglobin but is bound to the globin moiety rather than to the heme. Gas transport by hemoglobin is discussed in detail in chapter 22.

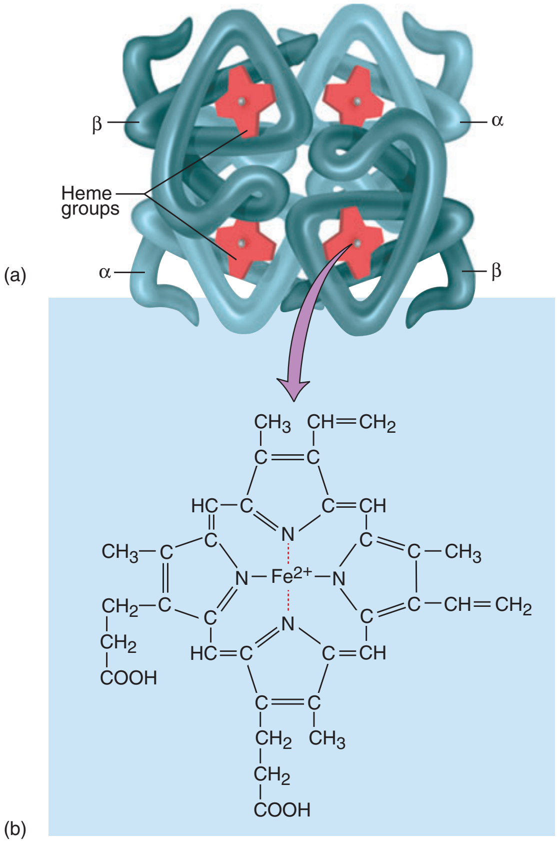


Figure 18.10 The Structure of Adult Hemoglobin (HbA). (*a*) The hemoglobin molecule consists of two α proteins and two β proteins, each conjugated to a nonprotein heme group. (*b*) Structure of the heme group. Oxygen binds to Fe^{2+} at the center of the heme.

Hemoglobin exists in several forms with slight differences in the globin chains. The form we have just described is called *adult hemoglobin (HbA).* About 2.5% of an adult's hemoglobin, however, is of a form called HbA_2, which has two *delta* (δ) *chains* in place of the β chains. The fetus produces a form called *fetal hemoglobin (HbF),* which has two *gamma* (γ) *chains* in place of the β chains. The δ and γ chains are the same length as the β chains but differ in amino acid sequence. HbF binds oxygen more tightly than HbA does; thus it enables the fetus to extract oxygen from the mother's bloodstream.

Insight 18.2 Evolutionary Medicine

The Packaging of Hemoglobin

The gas-transport pigments of earthworms, snails, and many other animals are dissolved in the plasma rather than contained in blood cells.

You might wonder why human hemoglobin must be contained in RBCs. The main reason is osmotic. Remember that the osmolarity of blood depends on the number of particles in solution. A "particle," for this purpose, can be a sodium ion, an albumin molecule, or a whole cell. If all the hemoglobin contained in the RBCs were free in the plasma, it would drastically increase blood osmolarity, since each RBC contains about 280 million molecules of hemoglobin. The circulatory system would become enormously congested with fluid, and circulation would be severely impaired. The blood simply could not contain that much free hemoglobin and support life. On the other hand, if it contained a safe level of free hemoglobin, it could not transport enough oxygen to support the high metabolic demand of the human body. By having our hemoglobin packaged in RBCs, we are able to have much more of it and hence to have more efficient gas transport and more active metabolism.

Quantities of Erythrocytes and Hemoglobin

The RBC count and hemoglobin concentration are important clinical data because they determine the amount of oxygen the blood can carry. Three of the most common measurements are hematocrit, hemoglobin concentration, and RBC count. The **hematocrit**[11] **(packed cell volume, PCV)** is the percentage of whole blood volume composed of RBCs (see fig. 18.2). In men, it normally ranges between 42% and 52%; in women, between 37% and 48%. The **hemoglobin concentration** of whole blood is normally 13 to 18 g/dL in men and 12 to 16 g/dL in women. The **RBC count** is normally 4.6 to 6.2 million RBCs/µL in men and 4.2 to 5.4 million/µL in women. This is often expressed as cells per cubic millimeter (mm^3); 1 µL = 1 mm^3.

Notice that these values tend to be lower in women than in men. There are three physiological reasons for this: (1) androgens stimulate RBC production, and men have higher androgen levels than women; (2) women of reproductive age have periodic menstrual losses; and (3) the hematocrit is inversely proportional to percent body fat, which is higher in women than in men. In men, the blood also clots faster and the skin has fewer blood vessels than in women. Such differences are not limited to humans. From the evolutionary standpoint, the adaptive value of these differences may lie in the fact that male animals fight more than females and suffer more injuries. The traits described here may serve to minimize or compensate for their blood loss.

Think About It

Explain why the hemoglobin concentration could appear deceptively high in a patient who is dehydrated.

Erythrocyte Death and Disposal

Circulating erythrocytes live for about 120 days. The life of an RBC is summarized in figure 18.11. As an RBC ages and its membrane proteins (especially spectrin) deteriorate, the membrane grows increasingly fragile. Without a nucleus or ribosomes, an RBC cannot synthesize new spectrin. Many RBCs die in the spleen, which has been called the "erythrocyte graveyard." The spleen has channels as narrow as 3 µm that severely test the ability of old, fragile RBCs to squeeze through the organ. Old cells become trapped, broken up, and destroyed. An enlarged and tender spleen may indicate diseases in which RBCs are rapidly breaking down.

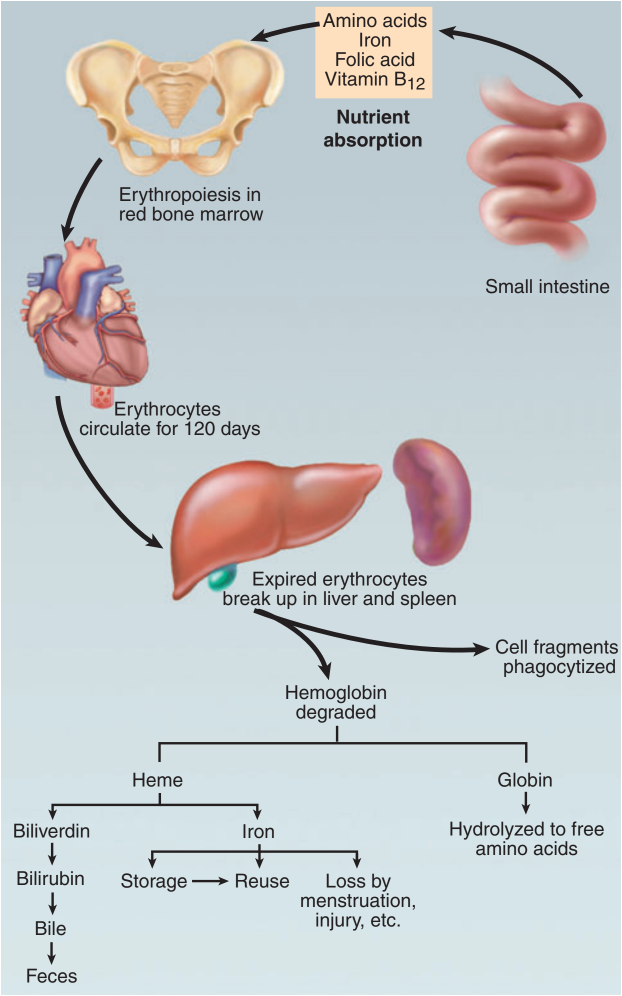

Amino acids
Iron
Folic acid
Vitamin B12
Nutrient absorption
Erythropoiesis in red bone marrow
Small intestine
Erythrocytes circulate for 120 days
Expired erythrocytes break up in liver and spleen
Cell fragments phagocytized
Hemoglobin degraded
Heme
Globin
Biliverdin
Iron
Hydrolyzed to free amino acids
Bilirubin
Storage
Reuse
Loss by menstruation, injury, etc.
Bile
Feces

Figure 18.11 **The Life and Death of Erythrocytes.** Note especially the stages of hemoglobin breakdown and disposal.

---

[11] *hemato* = blood + *crit* = to separate

Table 18.5 The Fate of Expired Erythrocytes and Hemoglobin

1. RBCs lose elasticity with age
2. RBCs break down while squeezing through blood capillaries and sinusoids
3. Cell fragments are phagocytized by macrophages in the spleen and liver
4. Hemoglobin decomposes into:
   Globin portion—hydrolyzed to amino acids, which can be reused
   Heme portion—further decomposed into:
      Iron
         1. Transported by albumin to bone marrow and liver
         2. Some used in bone marrow to make new hemoglobin
         3. Excess stored in liver as ferritin
      Biliverdin
         1. Converted to bilirubin and bound to albumin
         2. Removed by liver and secreted in bile
         3. Stored and concentrated in gallbladder
         4. Discharged into small intestine
         5. Converted by intestinal bacteria to urobilinogen
         6. Excreted in feces

Table 18.5 outlines the process of disposing of old erythrocytes and hemoglobin. **Hemolysis**[12] (he-MOLL-ih-sis), the rupture of RBCs, releases hemoglobin and leaves empty plasma membranes. The membrane fragments are easily digested by macrophages in the liver and spleen, but hemoglobin disposal is a bit more complicated. It must be disposed of efficiently, however, or it can block kidney tubules and cause renal failure. Macrophages begin the disposal process by separating the heme from the globin. They hydrolyze the globin into free amino acids, which become part of the body's general pool of amino acids available for protein synthesis or energy-releasing catabolism.

Disposing of the heme is another matter. First, the macrophage removes the iron and releases it into the blood, where it combines with transferrin and is used or stored in the same way as dietary iron. The macrophage converts the rest of the heme into a greenish pigment called **biliverdin**[13] (BIL-ih-VUR-din), then further converts most of this to a yellow-green pigment called **bilirubin.**[14] Bilirubin is released by the macrophages and binds to albumin in the blood plasma. The liver removes bilirubin from the albumin and secretes it into the bile, to which it imparts a dark green color as the bile becomes concentrated in the gallbladder. Biliverdin and bilirubin are collectively known as **bile pigments.** The gallbladder discharges the bile into the small intestine, where bacteria convert bilirubin to *urobilinogen,* responsible for the brown color of the feces. Another hemoglobin breakdown pigment, *urochrome,* produces the yellow color of urine. A high level of bilirubin in the blood causes *jaundice,* a yellowish cast in light-colored skin and the whites of eyes. Jaundice may be a sign of rapid hemolysis or a liver disease or bile duct obstruction that interferes with bilirubin disposal.

Erythrocyte Disorders

Any imbalance between the rates of erythropoiesis and RBC destruction may produce an excess or deficiency of red cells. An RBC excess is called *polycythemia*[15] (POL-ee-sy-THEE-me-uh), and a deficiency of either RBCs or hemoglobin is called *anemia.*[16]

Polycythemia

Primary polycythemia (*polycythemia vera*) is due to cancer of the erythropoietic line of the red bone marrow. It can result in an RBC count as high as 11 million RBCs/μL and a hematocrit as high as 80%. Polycythemia from all other causes, called **secondary polycythemia,** is characterized by RBC counts as high as 6 to 8 million RBCs/μL. It can result from dehydration because water is lost from the bloodstream while erythrocytes remain and become abnormally concentrated. More often, it is caused by smoking, air pollution, emphysema, high altitude, strenuous physical conditioning, or other factors that create a state of hypoxemia and stimulate erythropoietin secretion.

The principal dangers of polycythemia are increased blood volume, pressure, and viscosity. Blood volume can double in primary polycythemia and cause the circulatory system to become tremendously engorged. Blood viscosity may rise to three times normal. Circulation is poor, the capillaries are clogged with viscous blood, and the heart is dangerously strained. Chronic (long-term) polycythemia can lead to embolism, stroke, or heart failure. The deadly consequences of emphysema and some other lung diseases are due in part to polycythemia.

Anemia

The causes of **anemia** fall into three categories: (1) inadequate erythropoiesis or hemoglobin synthesis, (2) **hemorrhagic anemia** from bleeding, and (3) **hemolytic anemia** from RBC destruction. Table 18.6 gives specific examples and causes for each category. We give special attention to

---

[12] *hemo* = blood + *lysis* = splitting, breakdown
[13] *bili* = bile + *verd* = green + *in* = substance
[14] *bili* = bile + *rub* = red + *in* = substance
[15] *poly* = many + *cyt* = cell + *hem* = blood + *ia* = condition
[16] *an* = without + *em* = blood + *ia* = condition

Table 18.6 Types and Causes of Anemia

Anemia Due to Inadequate Erythropoiesis

- Inadequate nutrition
  - Iron-deficiency anemia
  - Folic acid, vitamin B_{12}, or vitamin C deficiency
  - Pernicious anemia (deficiency of intrinsic factor)
- Renal failure (reduced erythropoietin secretion)
- Old age
  - Renal atrophy (reduced erythropoietin secretion)
  - Nutritional deficiencies
  - Insufficient exercise
- Destruction of myeloid tissue (hypoplastic and aplastic anemia)
  - Radiation exposure
  - Viral infection
  - Autoimmune disease
  - Some drugs and poisons (arsenic, mustard gas, benzene, etc.)

Hemorrhagic Anemia, Due to Excessive Bleeding

- Trauma, hemophilia, menstruation, ulcer, ruptured aneurysm, etc.

Hemolytic Anemia, Due to Erythrocyte Destruction

- Mushroom toxins, snake and spider venoms
- Some drug reactions (such as penicillin allergy)
- Malaria (invasion and destruction of RBCs by certain parasites)
- Sickle-cell disease and thalassemia (hereditary hemoglobin defects)
- Hemolytic disease of the newborn (mother-fetus Rh mismatch)

the deficiencies of erythropoiesis and some forms of hemolytic anemia.

Anemia often results from kidney failure, because RBC production depends on the hormone erythropoietin (EPO), which is produced mainly by the kidneys. Erythropoiesis also declines with age, simply because the kidneys atrophy with age and produce less and less EPO as we get older. Compounding this problem, elderly people tend to get less exercise and to eat less well, and both of these factors reduce erythropoiesis.

Nutritional anemia results from a dietary deficiency of any of the requirements for erythropoiesis discussed earlier. Its most common form is **iron-deficiency anemia. Pernicious anemia** can result from a deficiency of vitamin B_{12}, but this vitamin is so abundant in meat that a B_{12} deficiency is rare except in strict vegetarians. More often, it occurs when glands of the stomach fail to produce a substance called **intrinsic factor** that the small intestine needs to absorb vitamin B_{12}. This becomes more common in old age because of atrophy of the stomach. Pernicious anemia can also be hereditary. It is treatable with vitamin B_{12} injections; oral B_{12} would be useless because the digestive tract cannot absorb it without intrinsic factor.

Hypoplastic[17] *anemia* is caused by a decline in erythropoiesis, whereas the complete failure or destruction of the myeloid tissue produces *aplastic anemia,* a complete cessation of erythropoiesis. Aplastic anemia leads to grotesque tissue necrosis and blackening of the skin. Most victims die within a year. About half of all cases are of unknown or hereditary cause, especially in adolescents and young adults. Other causes are given in table 18.6.

Anemia has three potential consequences:

1. The tissues suffer **hypoxia** (oxygen deprivation). The individual is lethargic and becomes short of breath upon physical exertion. The skin is pallid because of the deficiency of hemoglobin. Severe anemic hypoxia can cause life-threatening necrosis of brain, heart, and kidney tissues.
2. Blood osmolarity is reduced. More fluid is thus transferred from the bloodstream to the intercellular spaces, resulting in edema.
3. Blood viscosity is reduced. Because the blood puts up so little resistance to flow, the heart beats faster than normal and cardiac failure may ensue. Blood pressure also drops because of the reduced volume and viscosity.

Sickle-Cell Disease

Sickle-cell disease and thalassemia (see table 18.10) are hereditary hemoglobin defects that occur mostly among people of African and Mediterranean descent, respectively. About 1.3% of African Americans have **sickle-cell disease.** This disorder is caused by a recessive allele that modifies the structure of hemoglobin. Sickle-cell hemoglobin (HbS) differs from normal HbA only in the sixth amino acid of the β chain, where HbA has glutamic acid and HbS has valine. People who are homozygous for HbS exhibit sickle-cell disease. People who are heterozygous for it—about 8.3% of African Americans—have *sickle-cell trait* but rarely have severe symptoms. However, if two carriers reproduce, their children each have a 25% chance of being homozygous and having the disease.

Without treatment, a child with sickle-cell disease has little chance of living to age 2, but even with the best available treatment, few victims live to the age of 50. HbS does not bind oxygen very well. At low oxygen concentrations, it becomes deoxygenated, polymerizes, and forms a gel that causes the erythrocytes to become elongated and pointed at the ends (fig. 18.12), hence the name of the disease. Sickled erythrocytes are sticky; they **agglutinate**[18] (clump together) and block small blood vessels, causing intense pain in oxygen-starved tissues. Blockage of the

---

[17] *hypo* = below normal + *plas* = formation + *tic* = pertaining to

[18] *ag* = together + *glutin* = glue

circulation can also lead to kidney or heart failure, stroke, rheumatism, or paralysis. Hemolysis of the fragile cells causes anemia and hypoxemia, which triggers further sickling in a deadly positive feedback loop. Chronic hypoxemia also causes fatigue, weakness, mental deficiency, and deterioration of the heart and other organs. In a futile effort to counteract the hypoxemia, the hemopoietic tissues become so active that bones of the cranium and elsewhere become enlarged and misshapen. The spleen reverts to a hemopoietic role, while also disposing of dead RBCs, and becomes enlarged and fibrous. Sickle-cell disease is a prime example of *pleiotropy*—the occurrence of multiple phenotypic effects from a change in a single gene (see p. 148).

Why does sickle-cell disease exist? In Africa, where it originated, vast numbers of people die of malaria. Malaria is caused by a parasite that invades the RBCs and feeds on hemoglobin. Sickle-cell hemoglobin, HbS, is indigestible to malaria parasites, and people heterozygous for sickle-cell disease are resistant to malaria. The lives saved by this gene outnumber the deaths of homozygous individuals, so the gene persists in the population.

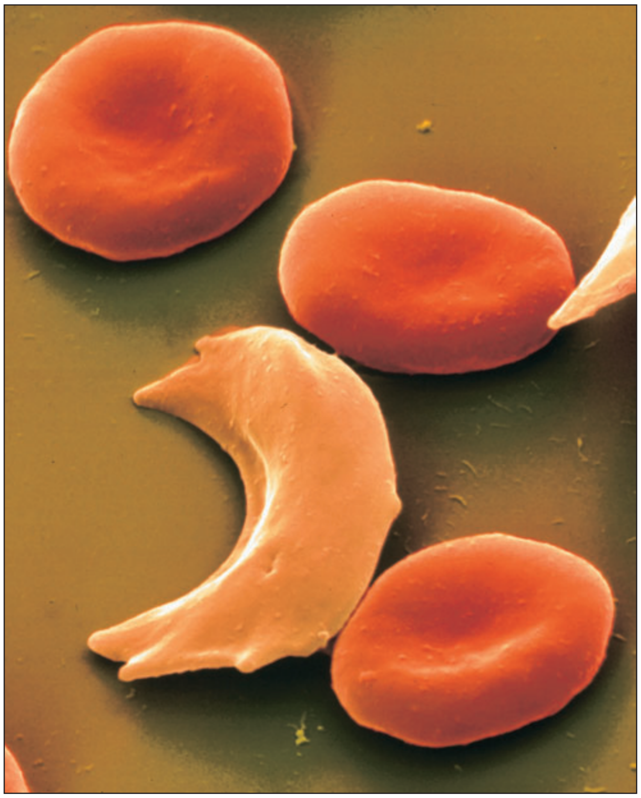


Figure 18.12 Blood of a Person with Sickle-Cell Disease. Note the deformed, pointed erythrocyte.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

13. Describe the shape, size, and contents of an erythrocyte, and explain how it acquires its unusual shape.
14. What is the function of hemoglobin? What are its protein and nonprotein moieties called?
15. What happens to each of these moieties when old erythrocytes break up?
16. What is the body's primary mechanism for correcting hypoxemia? How does this illustrate homeostasis?
17. What are the three primary causes or categories of anemia? What are its three primary consequences?

Blood Types

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- explain what determines a person's ABO and Rh blood types and how this relates to transfusion compatibility;
- describe the effect of an incompatibility between mother and fetus in Rh blood type; and
- list some blood groups other than ABO and Rh and explain how they may be useful.

Blood types and transfusion compatibility are a matter of interactions between plasma proteins and erythrocytes. Ancient Greek physicians attempted to transfuse blood from one person to another by squeezing it from a pig's bladder through a porcupine quill into the recipient's vein. While some patients benefited from the procedure, it was fatal to others. The reason some people have compatible blood and some do not remained obscure until 1900, when Karl Landsteiner discovered blood types A, B, and O—a discovery that won him a Nobel Prize in 1930; type AB was discovered later. World War II stimulated great improvements in transfusions, blood banking, and blood substitutes (see insight 18.3).

Insight 18.3 Medical History

Charles Drew—Blood Banking Pioneer

Charles Drew (fig. 18.13) was a scientist who lived and died in the arms of bitter irony. After receiving his M.D. from McGill University of Montreal in 1933, Drew became the first black person to pursue the advanced degree of Doctor of Science in Medicine, for which he studied transfusion and blood-banking procedures at Columbia University. He became the director of a new blood bank at Columbia Presbyterian Hospital in 1939 and organized numerous blood banks during World War II.

Drew saved countless lives by convincing physicians to use plasma rather than whole blood for battlefield and other emergency transfusions. Whole blood could be stored for only a week and given only to

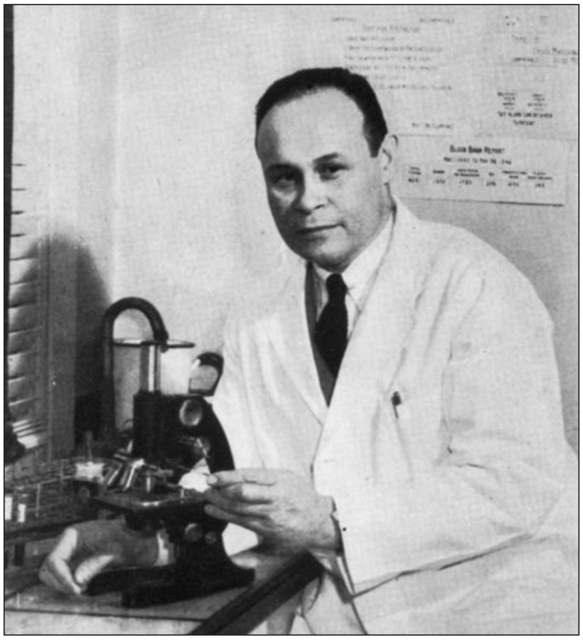


Figure 18.13 **Charles Drew (1904–50).**

recipients with compatible blood types. Plasma could be stored longer and was less likely to cause transfusion reactions.

When the U.S. War Department issued a directive forbidding the mixing of Caucasian and Negro blood in military blood banks, Drew denounced the order and resigned his position. He became a professor of surgery at Howard University in Washington, D.C., and later chief of staff at Freedmen's Hospital. He was a mentor for numerous young black physicians and campaigned to get them accepted into the medical community. The American Medical Association, however, firmly refused to admit black members, even Drew himself.

Late one night in 1950, Drew and three colleagues set out to volunteer their medical services to an annual free clinic in Tuskegee, Alabama. Drew fell asleep at the wheel and was critically injured in the resulting accident. Doctors at the nearest hospital administered blood and attempted unsuccessfully to revive him. For all the lives he saved through his pioneering work in blood transfusion, Drew himself bled to death at the age of 45.

All cells have an inherited combination of proteins, glycoproteins, and glycolipids on their surfaces. These function as *antigens* that enable our immune system to distinguish our own cells from foreign invaders. Part of the immune response is the production of γ globulins called *antibodies* to combat the invader. In blood typing, the antigens of RBC surfaces are also called *agglutinogens* (ah-glue-TIN-oh-jens) because they are partially responsible for RBC agglutination in mismatched transfusions. The plasma antibodies that react against them are also called *agglutinins* (ah-GLUE-tih-nins).

The ABO Group

Blood types A, B, AB, and O form the **ABO blood group** (table 18.7). Your ABO blood type is determined by the hereditary presence or absence of antigens A and B on your RBCs. The genetic determination of blood types is explained on page 148. The antigens are glycoproteins and glycolipids—membrane proteins and phospholipids with short carbohydrate chains bonded to them. Figure 18.14 shows how these carbohydrates determine the ABO blood types.

Think About It

Suppose you could develop an enzyme that selectively split N-acetylgalactosamine off the glycolipid of type A blood cells (fig. 18.14). What would be the potential benefit of this product to blood banking and transfusion?

The antibodies of the ABO group begin to appear in the plasma 2 to 8 months after birth. They reach their maximum concentrations between 8 and 10 years of age and then slowly decline for the rest of one's life. They are produced mainly in response to the bacteria that inhabit our intestines, but they cross-react with RBC antigens and are therefore best known for their significance in transfusions.

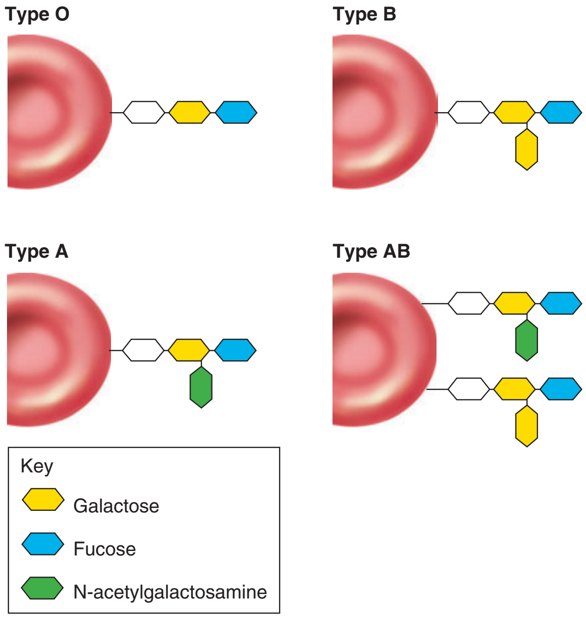


Figure 18.14 **Chemical Basis of the ABO Blood Types.** The terminal carbohydrates of the antigenic glycolipids are shown. All of them end with galactose and fucose (not to be confused with fructose). In type A, the galactose also has an N-acetylgalactosamine added to it; in type B, it has another galactose; and in type AB, both of these chain types are present.

Table 18.7 The ABO Blood Group

	ABO Blood Type			
	Type O	Type A	Type B	Type AB
Possible Genotypes	*ii*	$I^A I^A$, $I^A i$	$I^B I^B$, $I^B i$	$I^A I^B$
RBC Antigen	None	A	B	A,B
Plasma Antibody	Anti-A, anti-B	Anti-B	Anti-A	None
Compatible Donor RBCs	O	O, A	O, B	O, A, B, AB
Incompatible Donor RBCs	A, B, AB	B, AB	A, AB	None
Frequency in U.S. Population				
White	45%	40%	11%	4%
Black	49%	27%	20%	4%
Hispanic	63%	14%	20%	3%
Japanese	31%	38%	22%	9%
Native American	79%	16%	4%	<1%

AB antibodies react against any AB antigen except those on one's own RBCs. The antibody that reacts against antigen A is called α *agglutinin,* or *anti-A;* it is present in the plasma of people with type O or type B blood—that is, anyone who does *not* possess antigen A. The antibody that reacts against antigen B is β *agglutinin,* or *anti-B,* and is present in type O and type A individuals—those who do not possess antigen B. Each antibody molecule has 10 binding sites where it can attach to either an A or B antigen. An antibody can therefore attach to several RBCs at once and bind them together (fig. 18.15). **Agglutination** is the clumping of RBCs bound together by antibodies.

A person's ABO blood type can be determined by placing one drop of blood in a pool of anti-A serum and another drop in a pool of anti-B serum. Blood type AB exhibits conspicuous agglutination in both antisera; type A or B agglutinates only in the corresponding antiserum; and type O does not agglutinate in either one (fig. 18.16).

Type O blood is the most common and AB is the rarest in the United States. Percentages differ from one region of the world to another and among ethnic groups because people tend to marry within their locality and ethnic group and perpetuate statistical variations particular to that group.

In giving transfusions, it is imperative that the donor's RBCs not agglutinate as they enter the recipient's bloodstream. For example, if type B blood were transfused into a type A recipient, the recipient's anti-B antibodies would immediately agglutinate the donor's RBCs (fig. 18.17). A mismatched transfusion causes a **transfusion reaction**—the agglutinated RBCs block small blood vessels, hemolyze, and release their hemoglobin over the next few hours to days. Free hemoglobin can block the kidney tubules and cause death from acute renal failure within a week or so. For this reason, a person with type A (anti-B) blood must never be given a transfusion of type B or AB blood. A person with type B (anti-A) must never receive type A or AB blood. Type O (anti-A and anti-B) individuals cannot safely receive type A, B, or AB blood.

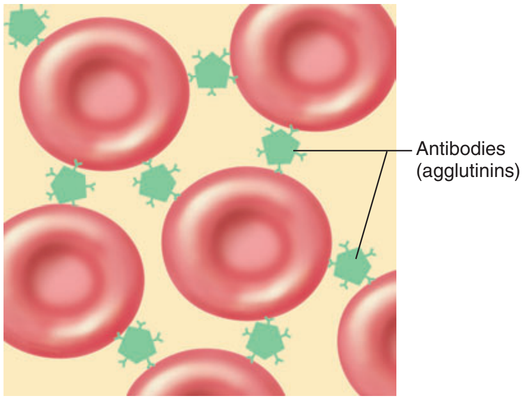


Figure 18.15 **Agglutination of RBCs by an Antibody.** Anti-A and anti-B have 10 binding sites, located at the 2 tips of each of the 5 Ys, and can therefore bind multiple RBCs to each other.

Type AB is sometimes called the *universal recipient* because this blood type lacks both anti-A and anti-B antibodies; thus, it will not agglutinate donor RBCs of any ABO type. However, this overlooks the fact that the *donor's* plasma can agglutinate the *recipient's* RBCs if it contains anti-A, anti-B, or both. For similar reasons, type O is sometimes called the *universal donor.* The plasma of a type O donor, however, can agglutinate the RBCs of a type A, B, or AB recipient. There are procedures for reduc-

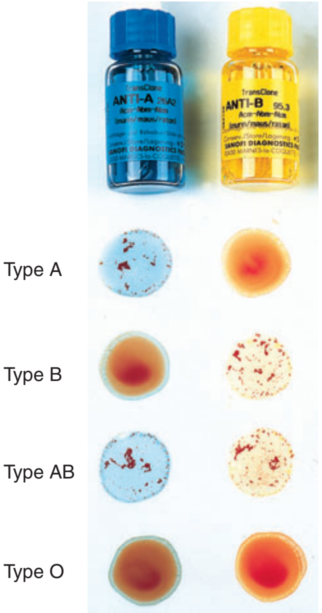


Figure 18.16 **ABO Blood Typing.** Each row shows the appearance of a drop of blood mixed with anti-A and anti-B antisera. Blood cells become clumped if they possess the antigens for the antiserum *(top row left, second row right, third row both)* but otherwise remain uniformly mixed. Thus type A agglutinates only in anti-A; type B agglutinates only in anti-B; type AB agglutinates in both; and type O agglutinates in neither of them.

ing the risk of a transfusion reaction in certain mismatches, however, such as giving packed RBCs with a minimum of plasma.

Contrary to some people's belief, blood type is not changed by transfusion. It is fixed at conception and remains the same for life.

The Rh Group

The **Rh blood group** is named for the rhesus monkey, in which the Rh antigens were discovered in 1940. This group is determined by three genes called C, D, and E, each of which has two alleles: *C, c, D, d, E, e.* Whatever other alleles a person may have, anyone with genotype *DD* or *Dd* has D antigens on his or her RBCs and is classified as *Rh-positive (Rh*$^{+}$*)*. In *Rh-negative (Rh*$^{-}$*)* people, the D antigen is lacking. The Rh blood type is tested by using an anti-D reagent. The Rh type is usually combined with the ABO type in a single expression such as O^{+} for type O, Rh-positive, or AB^{-} for type AB, Rh-negative. About 85% of white Americans are Rh^{+} and 15% are Rh^{-}. ABO blood type has no influence on Rh type, or vice versa. If the frequency of type O whites in the United States is 45%, and 85% of these are also Rh^{+}, then the frequency of O^{+} individuals is the product of these separate frequencies: $0.45 \times 0.85 = 0.38$, or 38%. Rh frequencies vary among ethnic groups just as ABO frequencies do. About 99% of Asians are Rh^{+}, for example.

Think About It

Predict what percentage of Japanese Americans have type B^{-} blood.

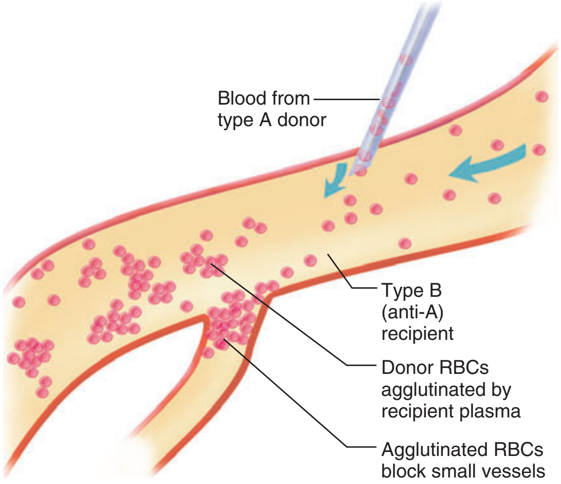

Blood from type A donor
Type B (anti-A) recipient
Donor RBCs agglutinated by recipient plasma
Agglutinated RBCs block small vessels

Figure 18.17 **Effects of a Mismatched Transfusion.** Donor RBCs become agglutinated in the recipient's blood plasma. The agglutinated RBCs lodge in smaller blood vessels downstream from this point and cut off the blood flow to vital tissues.

In contrast to the ABO group, anti-D antibodies are not normally present in the blood. They form only in Rh^{-} individuals who are exposed to Rh^{+} blood. If an Rh^{-} person receives an Rh^{+} transfusion, the recipient produces anti-D. Since anti-D does not appear instantaneously, this presents little danger in the first mismatched transfusion. But if that person should later receive another Rh^{+} transfusion, his or her anti-D could agglutinate the donor's RBCs.

A related condition sometimes occurs when an Rh^{-} woman carries an Rh^{+} fetus. The first pregnancy is likely to be uneventful because the placenta normally prevents maternal and fetal blood from mixing. However, at the time of birth, or if a miscarriage occurs, placental tearing exposes the mother to Rh^{+} fetal blood. She then begins to produce anti-D antibodies (fig. 18.18). If she becomes pregnant again with an Rh^{+} fetus, her anti-D antibodies may pass through the placenta and agglutinate the fetal erythrocytes. Agglutinated RBCs hemolyze, and the baby is born with a severe anemia called **hemolytic disease of the newborn (HDN),** or **erythroblastosis fetalis.** Not all HDN is due to Rh incompatibility, however. About 2% of cases

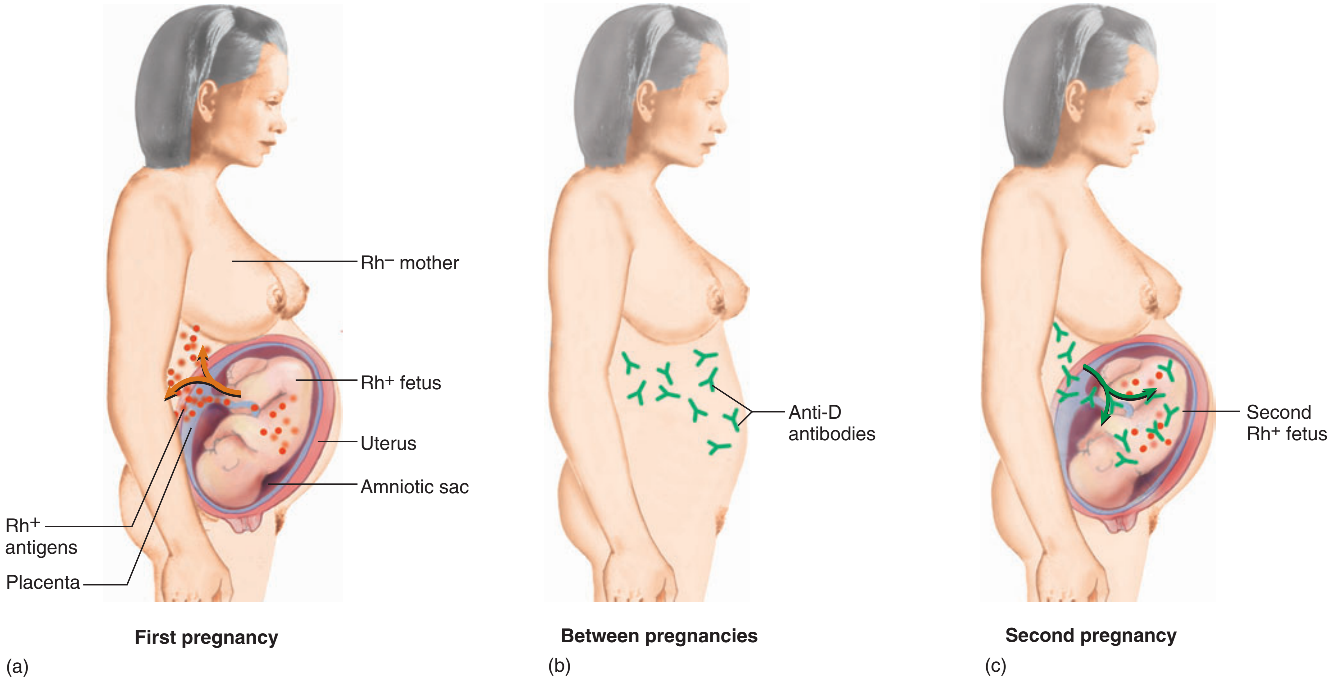


Figure 18.18 **Hemolytic Disease of the Newborn (HDN).** (*a*) When an Rh^- woman is pregnant with an Rh^+ fetus, she is exposed to D (Rh) antigens, especially during childbirth. (*b*) Following that pregnancy, her immune system produces anti-D antibodies. (*c*) If she later becomes pregnant with another Rh^+ fetus, her anti-D antibodies can cross the placenta and agglutinate the blood of that fetus, causing that child to be born with HDN.

result from incompatibility of ABO and other blood types. About 1 out of 10 cases of ABO incompatibility between mother and fetus results in HDN.

HDN, like so many other disorders, is easier to prevent than to treat. If an Rh^- woman gives birth to (or miscarries) an Rh^+ child, she can be given an *Rh immune globulin* (sold under trade names such as RhoGAM and Gamulin). The immune globulin binds fetal RBC antigens so they cannot stimulate her immune system to produce anti-D. It is now common to give immune globulin at 28 to 32 weeks' gestation and at birth in any pregnancy in which the mother is Rh^- and the father is Rh^+.

If an Rh^- woman has had one or more previous Rh^+ pregnancies, her subsequent Rh^+ children have about a 17% probability of being born with HDN. Infants with HDN are usually severely anemic. As the fetal hemopoietic tissues respond to the need for more RBCs, erythroblasts (immature RBCs) enter the circulation prematurely—hence the name *erythroblastosis fetalis.* Hemolyzed RBCs release hemoglobin, which is converted to bilirubin. High bilirubin levels can cause *kernicterus,* a syndrome of toxic brain damage that may kill the infant or leave it with motor, sensory, and mental deficiencies. HDN can be treated with *phototherapy*—exposing the infant to ultraviolet light, which degrades bilirubin as blood passes through the capillaries of the skin. In more severe cases, an *exchange transfusion* may be given to completely replace the infant's Rh^+ blood with Rh^-. In time, the infant's hemopoietic tissues will replace the donor's RBCs with Rh^+ cells, and by then the mother's antibody will have disappeared from the infant's blood.

Think About It

A baby with HDN typically has jaundice and an enlarged spleen. Explain these effects.

Other Blood Groups

In addition to the ABO and Rh groups, there are at least 100 other known blood groups with a total of more than 500 antigens, including the MN, Duffy, Kell, Kidd, and Lewis groups. These rarely cause transfusion reactions, but they are useful for such legal purposes as paternity and criminal cases and for research in anthropology and population genetics. The Kell, Kidd, and Duffy groups occasionally cause HDN.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

18. What are antibodies and antigens? How do they interact to cause a transfusion reaction?
19. What antibodies and antigens are present in people with each of the four ABO blood types?
20. Describe the cause, prevention, and treatment of HDN.
21. Why might someone be interested in determining a person's blood type other than ABO/Rh?

Leukocytes

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- state the general function that all leukocytes have in common;
- name and describe the five types of leukocytes; and
- describe the types, causes, and effects of abnormal leukocyte counts.

Leukocytes, or white blood cells (WBCs), play a number of roles in the body's defense against pathogens. Their individual functions are summarized in table 18.8, but they are discussed more extensively in chapter 21. There are five kinds of WBCs. They are easily distinguished from erythrocytes in stained blood films because they contain conspicuous nuclei that stain from light violet to dark purple with the most common blood stains. Three WBC types—the *neutrophils, eosinophils,* and *basophils*—are called **granulocytes** because their cytoplasm contains organelles that appear as colored granules through the microscope. These are missing or relatively scanty in the two types known as **agranulocytes**—the *lymphocytes* and *monocytes.*

Types of Leukocytes

The five leukocyte types are compared in table 18.8. From the photographs and data, take note of their sizes relative to each other and to the size of erythrocytes (which are about 7.5 μm in diameter). Also note how the leukocytes differ from each other in relative abundance—from neutrophils, which constitute about two-thirds of the WBC count, to basophils, which usually account for less than 1%. Nuclear shape is an important key to identifying leukocytes. The granulocytes are further distinguished from each other by the coarseness, abundance, and staining properties of their cytoplasmic granules.

Granulocytes

Neutrophils have very fine cytoplasmic granules that contain lysozyme, peroxidase, and other antibiotic agents. They are named for the way these granules take up blood stains at pH 7—some stain with acidic dyes and others with basic dyes, and the combined effect gives the cytoplasm a pale lilac color. The nucleus is usually divided into three to five lobes, which are connected by strands of nucleoplasm so delicate that the cell may appear to have multiple nuclei. Young neutrophils often exhibit an undivided nucleus shaped like a band or a knife puncture; they are thus called *band,* or *stab, cells.* Neutrophils are also called *polymorphonuclear* leukocytes (PMNs) because of their variety of nuclear shapes.

Eosinophils (EE-oh-SIN-oh-fills) are easily distinguished by their large rosy to orange-colored granules and prominent, usually bilobed nucleus.

In **basophils,** the nucleus is pale and usually hidden by the coarse, dark violet granules in the cytoplasm. It is sometimes difficult to distinguish a basophil from a lymphocyte, but basophils are conspicuously grainy while the lymphocyte nucleus is more homogeneous, and basophils lack the clear blue rim of cytoplasm usually seen in stained lymphocytes.

Agranulocytes

Lymphocytes are usually similar to erythrocytes in size, or only slightly larger. They are sometimes classified into three size classes (table 18.8), but there are gradations between these categories. Medium and large lymphocytes are usually seen in fibrous connective tissues and only occasionally in the circulating blood. In small lymphocytes, the nucleus often fills almost the entire cell and leaves only a narrow rim of clear, light blue cytoplasm. Large lymphocytes, however, have ample cytoplasm around the nucleus and are sometimes difficult to distinguish from monocytes. There are several subclasses of lymphocytes with different immune functions (see chapter 21), but they look alike through the light microscope.

Monocytes are the largest of the formed elements, typically about twice the diameter of an erythrocyte but sometimes approaching three times as large. The monocyte nucleus tends to stain a lighter blue than most leukocyte nuclei. The cytoplasm is abundant and relatively clear. In stained blood films monocytes sometimes appear as very large cells with bizarre stellate (star-shaped) or polygonal contours (see fig. 18.1*a*).

Abnormalities of Leukocyte Count

The total WBC count is normally 5,000 to 10,000 WBCs/μL. A count below this range, called **leukopenia**[19] (LOO-co-PEE-nee-uh), is seen in lead, arsenic, and mercury poisoning; radiation sickness; and such infectious

---

[19] *leuko* = white + *penia* = deficiency

Table 18.8 The White Blood Cells (Leukocytes)

Neutrophils

Percent of WBCs	60%–70%
Mean count	4,150 cells/μL
Diameter	9–12 μm

*Appearance**

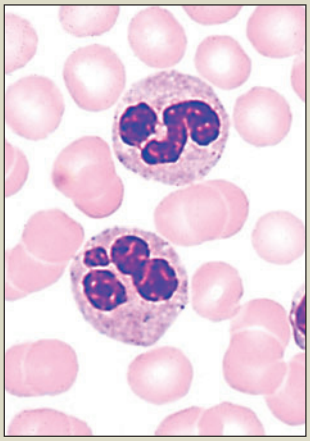
- Nucleus usually with 3–5 lobes in S- or C-shaped array
- Fine reddish to violet granules in cytoplasm

Differential Count

- Increases in bacterial infections

Functions

- Phagocytosis of bacteria
- Release of antimicrobial chemicals



Neutrophils

Eosinophils

Percent of WBCs	2%–4%
Mean count	165 cells/μL
Diameter	10–14 μm

*Appearance**

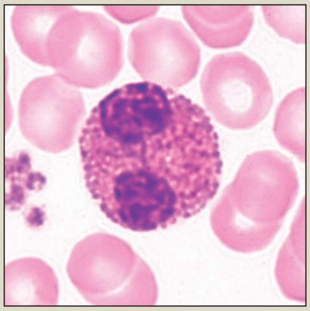
- Nucleus usually has two large lobes connected by thin strand
- Large orange-pink granules in cytoplasm

Differential Count

- Fluctuates greatly from day to night, seasonally, and with phase of menstrual cycle
- Increases in parasitic infections, allergies, collagen diseases, and diseases of spleen and central nervous system

Functions

- Phagocytosis of antigen-antibody complexes, allergens, and inflammatory chemicals
- Release enzymes that weaken or destroy parasites such as worms



Eosinophil

Basophils

Percent of WBCs	$<$ 0.5%–1%
Mean count	44 cells/μL
Diameter	8–10 μm

*Appearance**

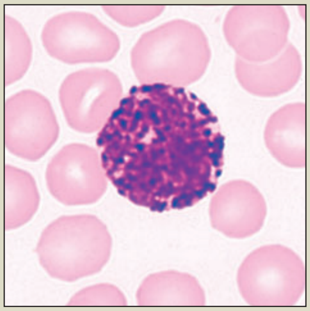
- Nucleus large and U- to S-shaped, but typically pale and obscured from view
- Coarse, abundant, dark violet granules in cytoplasm

Differential Count

- Relatively stable
- Increases in chicken pox, sinusitis, diabetes mellitus, myxedema, and polycythemia

Functions

- Secrete histamine (a vasodilator), which increases blood flow to a tissue
- Secrete heparin (an anticoagulant), which promotes mobility of other WBCs by preventing clotting



Basophil

(continued)

Table 18.8 The White Blood Cells (Leukocytes) (continued)

Lymphocytes

Percent of WBCs	25%–33%
Mean count	2,185 cells/μL
Diameter	
Small class	5–8 μm
Medium class	10–12 μm
Large class	14–17 μm

*Appearance**

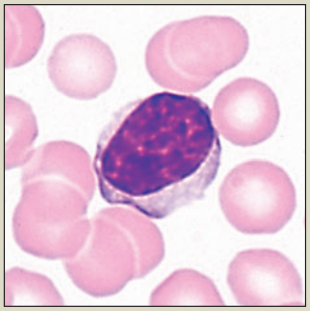
- Nucleus round, ovoid, or slightly dimpled on one side, of uniform dark violet color
- In small lymphocytes, nucleus fills nearly all of the cell and leaves only a scanty rim of clear, light blue cytoplasm
- In larger lymphocytes, cytoplasm is more abundant; large lymphocytes may be hard to differentiate from monocytes

Differential Count

- Increases in diverse infections and immune responses

Functions

- Several functional classes usually indistinguishable by light microscopy
- Destroy cancer cells, cells infected with viruses, and foreign cells
- "Present" antigens to activate other cells of immune system
- Coordinate actions of other immune cells
- Secrete antibodies
- Serve in immune memory



Lymphocyte

Monocytes

Percent of WBCs	3%–8%
Mean count	456 cells/μL
Diameter	12–15 μm

*Appearance**

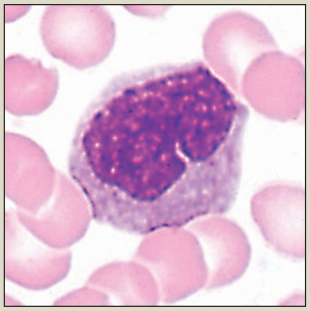
- Nucleus ovoid, kidney-shaped, or horseshoe-shaped; light violet
- Abundant cytoplasm with sparse, fine granules
- Sometimes very large with stellate or polygonal shapes

Differential Count

- Increases in viral infections and inflammation

Functions

- Differentiate into macrophages (large phagocytic cells of the tissues)
- Phagocytize pathogens, dead neutrophils, and debris of dead cells
- "Present" antigens to activate other cells of immune system



Monocyte

*Appearance pertains to blood films dyed with Wright's stain.

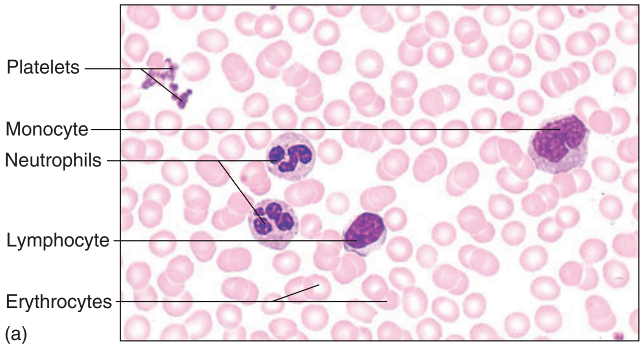
diseases as measles, mumps, chicken pox, poliomyelitis, influenza, typhoid fever, and AIDS. It can also be produced by glucocorticoids, anticancer drugs, and immunosuppressant drugs given to organ transplant patients. Since WBCs are protective cells, leukopenia presents an elevated risk of infection and cancer. A count above 10,000 WBCs/μL, called **leukocytosis,**[20] usually indicates infection, allergy, or other diseases but can also occur in response to dehydration or emotional disturbances. More useful than a total WBC count is a *differential WBC count,* which identifies what percentage of the total WBC count consists of each type of leukocyte. A high neutrophil count is a sign of bacterial infection; neutrophils become sharply elevated in appendicitis, for example. A high eosinophil count usually indicates an allergy or a parasitic infection such as hookworms or tapeworms.

---

[20] *leuko* = white + *cyt* = cell + *osis* = condition

Leukemia is a cancer of the hemopoietic tissues that usually produces an extraordinarily high number of circulating leukocytes and their precursors (fig. 18.19*b*). Leukemia is classified as myeloid or lymphoid, acute or chronic. **Myeloid leukemia** is marked by uncontrolled granulocyte production, whereas **lymphoid leukemia** involves uncontrolled lymphocyte or monocyte production. **Acute leukemia** appears suddenly, progresses rapidly, and causes death within a few months if it is not treated. **Chronic leukemia** develops more slowly and may go undetected for many months; if untreated, the typical survival time is about 3 years. Both myeloid and lymphoid leukemia occur in acute and chronic forms. The greatest success in treatment and cure has been with acute lymphoblastic leukemia, the most common type of childhood cancer. Treatment employs chemotherapy and marrow transplants along with the control of side effects such as anemia, hemorrhaging, and infection.

As leukemic cells proliferate, they replace normal bone marrow and a person suffers from a deficiency of normal granulocytes, erythrocytes, and platelets. Although enormous numbers of leukocytes are produced and spill over into the bloodstream, they are immature cells incapable of performing their normal defensive roles. The deficiency of competent WBCs leaves the patient vulnerable to *opportunistic infection*—the establishment of pathogenic organisms that usually cannot get a foothold in people with healthy immune systems. The RBC deficiency renders the patient anemic and fatigued, and the platelet deficiency results in hemorrhaging and impaired blood clotting. The immediate cause of death is usually hemorrhage or opportunistic infection. Cancerous hemopoietic tissue often metastasizes from the bone marrow or lymph nodes to other organs of the body, where the cells displace or compete with normal cells. Metastasis to the bone tissue itself is common and leads to bone and joint pain.



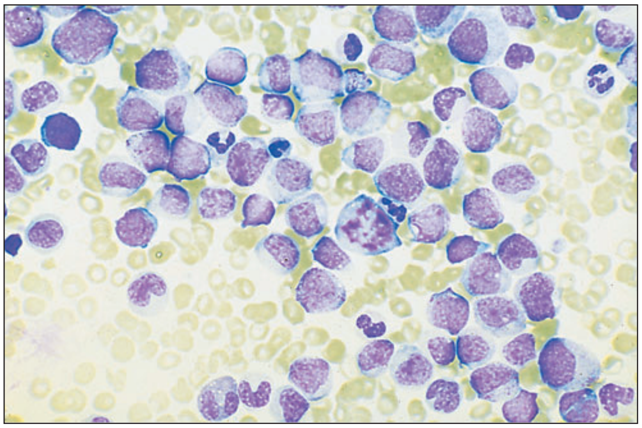


Figure 18.19 Normal and Leukemic Blood. (*a*) A normal blood smear; (*b*) blood from a patient with acute monocytic leukemia. Note the abnormally high number of white blood cells, especially monocytes, in *b*.
With all these extra white cells, why isn't the body's infection-fighting capability increased in leukemia?

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

22. What is the overall function of leukocytes?
23. What can cause abnormally high or low leukocyte counts?
24. Define *leukemia.* Distinguish between myeloid and lymphoid leukemia.

Hemostasis—The Control of Bleeding

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the body's mechanisms for controlling bleeding;
- list the functions of platelets;
- describe two reaction pathways that produce blood clots;
- explain what happens to blood clots when they are no longer needed;
- explain what keeps blood from clotting in the absence of injury; and
- describe some disorders of blood clotting.

Circulatory systems developed very early in animal evolution, and with them evolved mechanisms for stopping leaks, which are potentially fatal. **Hemostasis**[21] is the cessation of bleeding. Although hemostatic mechanisms may not stop a hemorrhage from a large blood vessel, they are quite effective at closing breaks in small ones. Platelets play multiple roles in hemostasis, so we begin with a consideration of their form and function.

---

[21] *hemo* = blood + *stasis* = stability

Platelets

Platelets (see fig. 18.1) are not cells but small fragments of megakaryocyte cytoplasm. They are 2 to 4 μm in diameter and possess lysosomes, endoplasmic reticulum, a Golgi complex, and Golgi vesicles, or "granules," that contain a variety of factors involved in platelet function. Platelets have pseudopods and are capable of ameboid movement and phagocytosis. In normal blood from a fingerstick, the platelet count ranges from 130,000 to 400,000 platelets/μL (averaging about 250,000/μL). The count can vary greatly, however, under different physiological conditions and in blood from different places in the body. When a blood specimen dries on a slide, platelets clump together; therefore in stained blood films, they often appear in clusters.

Platelets have a broad range of functions, many of which have come to light only in recent years:

- They secrete *procoagulants,* or clotting factors, which promote blood clotting.
- They secrete vasoconstrictors, which cause *vascular spasms* in broken vessels.
- They form temporary *platelet plugs* to stop bleeding.
- They dissolve blood clots that have outlasted their usefulness.
- They phagocytize and destroy bacteria.
- They secrete chemicals that attract neutrophils and monocytes to sites of inflammation.
- They secrete growth factors that stimulate mitosis in fibroblasts and smooth muscle and help to maintain the linings of blood vessels.

There are three hemostatic mechanisms—*vascular spasm, platelet plug formation,* and *blood clotting (coagulation)* (fig. 18.20). Platelets play an important role in all three.

Vascular Spasm

The most immediate protection against blood loss is **vascular spasm,** a prompt constriction of the broken vessel. Several things trigger this reaction. An injury stimulates pain receptors, some of which directly innervate nearby blood vessels and cause them to constrict. This effect lasts only a few minutes, but other mechanisms take over by the time it subsides. Injury to the smooth muscle of the blood vessel itself causes a longer-lasting vasoconstriction, and platelets release serotonin, a chemical vasoconstrictor. Thus, the vascular spasm is maintained long enough for the other two hemostatic mechanisms to come into play.

Platelet Plug Formation

Platelets will not adhere to the endothelium (inner lining) of undamaged blood vessels. The endothelium is normally very smooth and coated with **prostacyclin,** a platelet repellent. When a vessel is broken, however, collagen

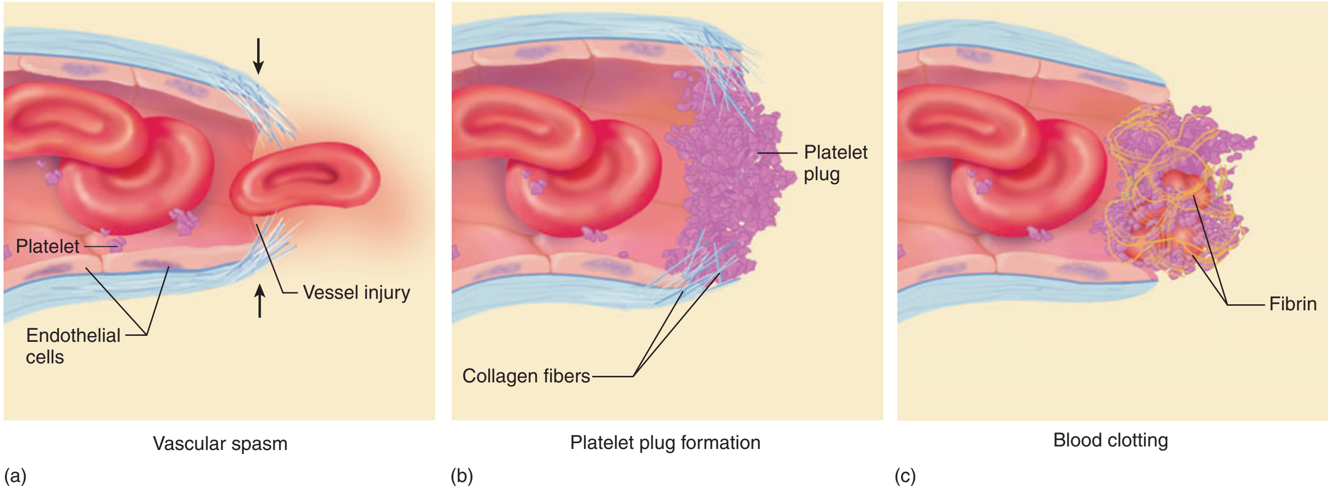


Figure 18.20 **Hemostasis.** (*a*) Vasoconstriction of a broken vessel reduces bleeding. (*b*) A platelet plug forms as platelets adhere to exposed collagen fibers of the vessel wall. The platelet plug temporarily seals the break. (*c*) A blood clot forms as platelets and erythrocytes become enmeshed in fibrin threads. This forms a longer-lasting seal and gives the vessel a chance to repair itself.
How does a clot differ from a platelet plug?

fibers of its wall are exposed to the blood. Upon contact with collagen or other rough surfaces, platelets put out long spiny pseudopods that adhere to the vessel and to other platelets; the pseudopods then contract and draw the walls of the vessel together. The mass of platelets thus formed, called a **platelet plug,** may reduce or stop minor bleeding.

As platelets aggregate, they undergo **degranulation**—the exocytosis of their cytoplasmic granules and release of factors that promote hemostasis. Among these are serotonin, a vasoconstrictor; adenosine diphosphate (ADP), which attracts more platelets to the area and stimulates their degranulation; and **thromboxane A_2**, an eicosanoid that promotes platelet aggregation, degranulation, and vasoconstriction. Thus, a positive feedback cycle is activated that can quickly seal a small break in a blood vessel.

Coagulation

Coagulation (clotting) of the blood is the last but most effective defense against bleeding. It is important for the blood to clot quickly when a vessel has been broken, but equally important for it not to clot in the absence of vessel damage. Because of this delicate balance, coagulation is one of the most complex processes in the body, involving over 30 chemical reactions. It is presented here in a very simplified form.

Perhaps clotting is best understood if we first consider its goal. The objective is to convert the plasma protein fibrinogen into **fibrin,** a sticky protein that adheres to the walls of a vessel. As blood cells and platelets arrive, they become stuck to the fibrin like insects sticking to a spider web (fig. 18.20). The resulting mass of fibrin, blood cells, and platelets ideally seals the break in the blood vessel. The complexity of clotting lies in how the fibrin is formed.

There are two reaction pathways to coagulation (fig. 18.21). One of them, the **extrinsic mechanism,** is initiated by clotting factors released by the damaged blood vessel and perivascular[22] tissues. The word *extrinsic* refers to the fact that these factors come from sources other than the blood itself. Blood may also clot, however, without these tissue factors—for example, when platelets adhere to a fatty plaque of atherosclerosis or to a test tube. The reaction pathway in this case is called the **intrinsic mechanism** because it uses only clotting factors found in the blood itself. In most cases of bleeding, both the extrinsic and intrinsic mechanisms work simultaneously to contribute to hemostasis.

Clotting factors (table 18.9) are called **procoagulants,** in contrast to the **anticoagulants** discussed later (see insight 18.5, p. 708). Most procoagulants are proteins produced by the liver. They are always present in the plasma in inactive form, but when one factor is activated, it functions as an enzyme that activates the next one in the pathway. That factor activates the next, and so on, in a sequence called a **reaction cascade**—a series of reactions, each of which depends on the product of the preceding one. Many of the clotting factors are identified by Roman numerals, which indicate the order in which they were discovered, not the order of the reactions. Factors IV and VI are not included in table 18.9. These terms were abandoned when it was found that factor IV was calcium and factor VI was activated factor V. The last four procoagulants in the table are called *platelet factors* (PF_1 through PF_4) because they are produced by the platelets.

Initiation of Coagulation

The extrinsic mechanism is diagrammed on the left side of figure 18.21. The damaged blood vessel and perivascular tissues release a lipoprotein mixture called **tissue thromboplastin**[23] **(factor III).** Factor III combines with factor VII to form a complex which, in the presence of Ca^{2+}, then activates factor X. The extrinsic and intrinsic pathways differ only in how they arrive at active factor X. Therefore, before examining their common pathway from factor X to the end, let's consider how the intrinsic pathway reaches this step.

The intrinsic mechanism is diagrammed on the right side of figure 18.21. Everything needed to initiate it is present in the plasma or platelets. When platelets degranulate, they release factor XII (Hageman factor, named for the patient in whom it was discovered). Through a cascade of reactions, this leads to activated factors XI, IX, and VIII, in that order—each serving as an enzyme that catalyzes the next step—and finally to factor X. This pathway also requires Ca^{2+} and PF_3.

Completion of Coagulation

Once factor X is activated, the remaining events are identical in the intrinsic and extrinsic mechanisms. Factor X combines with factors III and V in the presence of Ca^{2+} and PF_3 to produce *prothrombin activator.* This enzyme acts on a globulin called **prothrombin** (factor II) and converts it to the enzyme **thrombin.** Thrombin then chops up fibrinogen into shorter strands of fibrin. Factor XIII cross-links these fibrin strands to create a dense aggregation called *fibrin polymer,* which forms the structural framework of the blood clot.

Once a clot begins to form, it launches a self-accelerating positive feedback process that seals off the damaged vessel more quickly. Thrombin works with factor V to accelerate the production of prothrombin activator, which in turn produces more thrombin.

Chapter 18

---

[22] *peri* = around + *vas* = vessel + *cular* = pertaining to

[23] *thrombo* = clot + *plast* = forming + *in* = substance

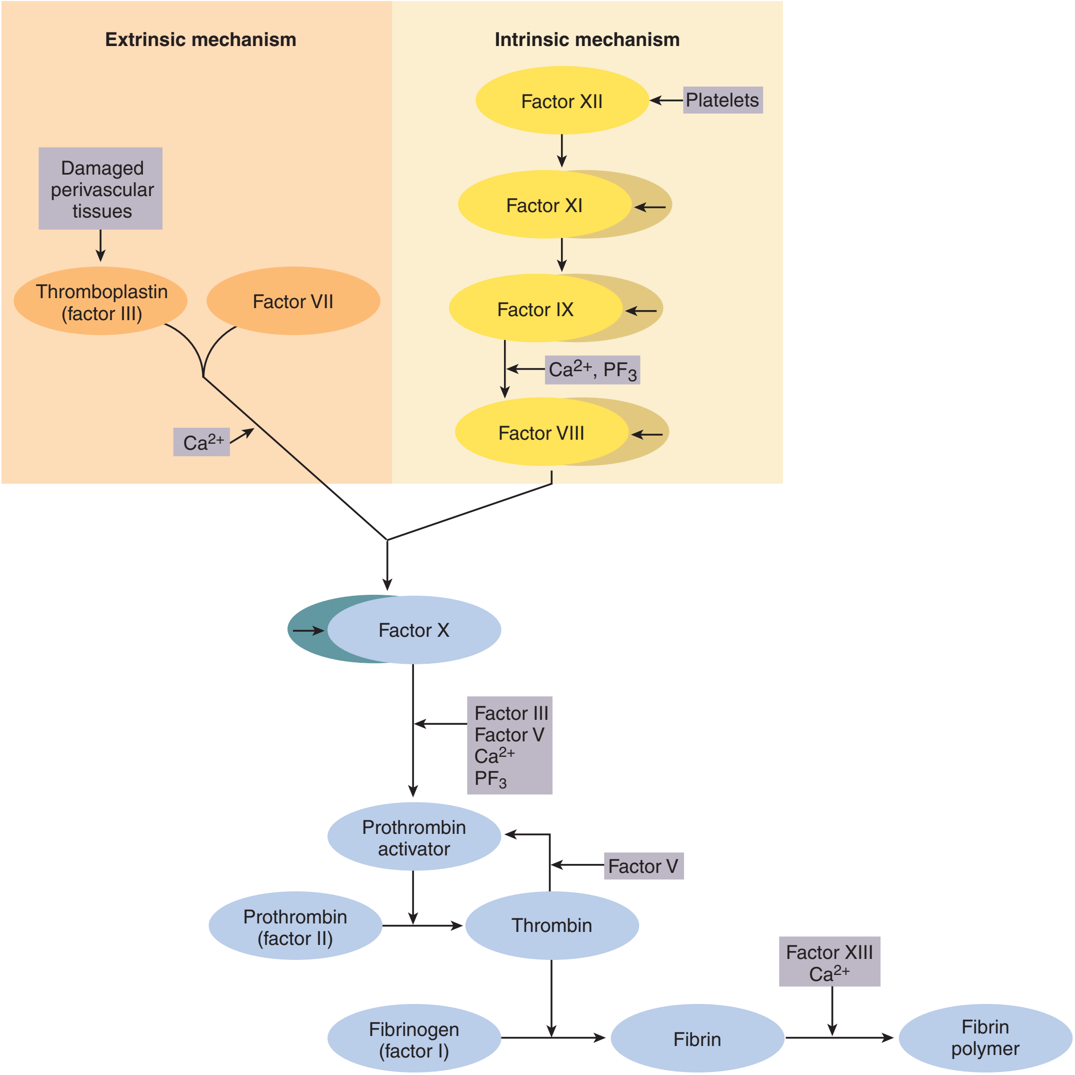

Extrinsic mechanism
Intrinsic mechanism
Factor XII
Platelets
Damaged perivascular tissues
Factor XI
Thromboplastin (factor III)
Factor VII
Factor IX
Ca2+, PF3
Ca2+
Factor VIII
Factor X
Factor III
Factor V
Ca2+
PF3
Prothrombin activator
Factor V
Prothrombin (factor II)
Thrombin
Factor XIII
Ca2+
Fibrinogen (factor I)
Fibrin
Fibrin polymer

Figure 18.21 **The Pathways of Coagulation.** Most clotting factors act as enzymes that convert the next factor from an inactive form (*shaded ellipse*) to an active form (*lighter ellipse*).
Would hemophilia C (see p. 707) affect the extrinsic mechanism, the intrinsic mechanism, or both?

The cascade of enzymatic reactions acts as an amplifying mechanism to ensure the rapid clotting of blood (fig. 18.22). Each activated enzyme in the pathway produces a larger number of enzyme molecules at the following step. One activated molecule of factor XII at the start of the intrinsic pathway, for example, causes thousands of fibrin molecules to be produced very quickly. Note the similarity of this process to the *enzyme amplification* that occurs in hormone action (see chapter 17, fig. 17.21).

Notice that the extrinsic mechanism requires fewer steps to activate factor X than the intrinsic mechanism does; it is a "shortcut" to coagulation. It takes 3 to 6 minutes for a clot to form by the intrinsic pathway but only 15 seconds or so by the extrinsic pathway. For this reason, when a small wound bleeds, you can stop the bleeding sooner by massaging the site. This releases thromboplastin from the perivascular tissues and activates or speeds up the extrinsic pathway.

A number of laboratory tests are used to evaluate the efficiency of coagulation. Normally, the bleeding of a fingerstick should stop within 2 to 3 minutes, and a sample of blood in a clean test tube should clot within 15 minutes. Other techniques are available that can separately assess the effectiveness of the intrinsic and extrinsic mechanisms.

Table 18.9 Clotting Factors (Procoagulants)

Number	Name	Origin	Function
I	Fibrinogen	Liver	Precursor of fibrin
II	Prothrombin	Liver	Precursor of thrombin
III	Tissue thromboplastin	Perivascular tissue	Activates factor VII
V	Proaccelerin	Liver	Activates factor VII; combines with factor X to form prothrombin activator
VII	Proconvertin	Liver	Activates factor X in extrinsic pathway
VIII	Antihemophiliac factor A	Liver	Activates factor X in intrinsic pathway
IX	Antihemophiliac factor B	Liver	Activates factor VIII
X	Thrombokinase	Liver	Combines with factor V to form prothrombin activator
XI	Antihemophiliac factor C	Liver	Activates factor IX
XII	Hageman factor	Liver, platelets	Activates factor XI and plasmin; converts prekallikrein to kallikrein
XIII	Fibrin-stabilizing factor	Platelets, plasma	Cross-links fibrin filaments to make fibrin polymer and stabilize clot
PF_1	Platelet factor 1	Platelets	Same role as factor V; also accelerates platelet activation
PF_2	Platelet factor 2	Platelets	Accelerates thrombin formation
PF_3	Platelet factor 3	Platelets	Aids in activation of factor VIII and prothrombin activator
PF_4	Platelet factor 4	Platelets	Binds heparin during clotting to inhibit its anticoagulant effect

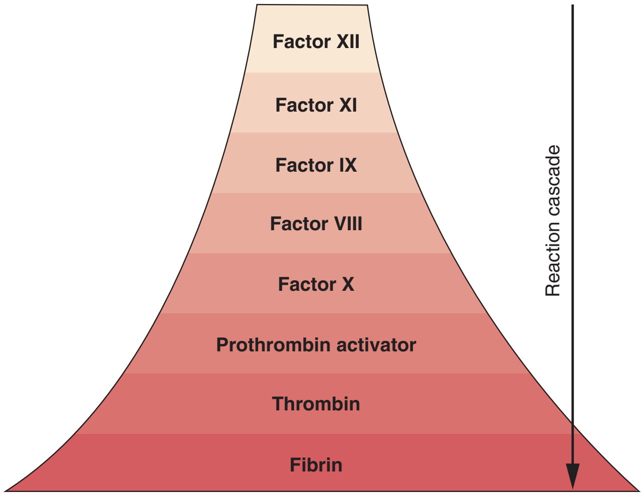


Figure 18.22 **Enzyme Amplification in Blood Clotting.** Each clotting factor produces many molecules of the next one, so the number of active clotting factors increases rapidly and a large amount of fibrin is quickly formed. The example shown here is for the intrinsic mechanism.

The Fate of Blood Clots

After a clot has formed, spinous pseudopods of the platelets adhere to strands of fibrin and contract. This pulls on the fibrin threads and draws the edges of the broken vessel together, like a drawstring closing a purse. Through this process of **clot retraction,** the clot becomes more compact within about 30 minutes.

Platelets and endothelial cells secrete a mitotic stimulant named *platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF).* PDGF stimulates fibroblasts and smooth muscle cells to multiply and repair the damaged blood vessel. Fibroblasts also invade the clot and produce fibrous connective tissue, which helps to strengthen and seal the vessel while the repairs take place.

Eventually, tissue repair is completed and the clot must be disposed of. **Fibrinolysis,** the dissolution of a clot, is achieved by a small cascade of reactions with a positive feedback component. In addition to promoting clotting, factor XII catalyzes the formation of a plasma enzyme called **kallikrein** (KAL-ih-KREE-in). Kallikrein, in turn, converts the inactive protein *plasminogen* into **plasmin,** a fibrin-dissolving enzyme that breaks up the clot. Thrombin also activates plasmin, and plasmin indirectly promotes the formation of more kallikrein, thus completing a positive feedback loop (fig. 18.23).

Prevention of Inappropriate Coagulation

Precise controls are required to prevent coagulation when it is not needed. These include the following:

- **Platelet repulsion.** As noted earlier, platelets do not adhere to the smooth prostacyclin-coated endothelium of undamaged blood vessels.

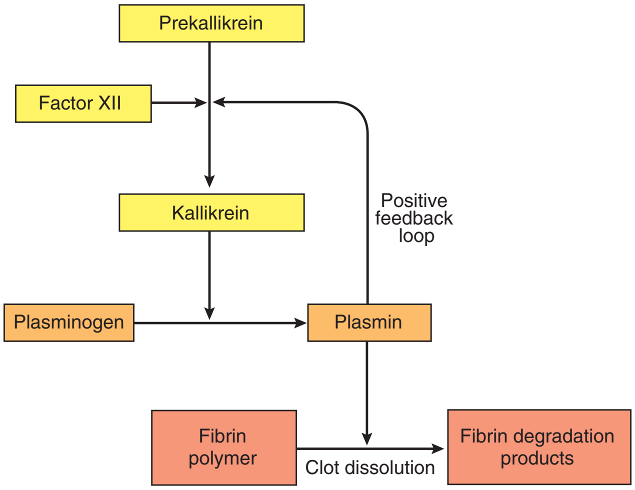


Figure 18.23 **The Mechanism for Dissolving Blood Clots.** Prekallikrein is converted to kallikrein. Kallikrein is an enzyme that catalyzes the formation of plasmin. Plasmin is an enzyme that dissolves the blood clot.

- **Dilution.** Small amounts of thrombin form spontaneously in the plasma, but at normal rates of blood flow the thrombin is diluted so quickly that a clot has little chance to form. If flow decreases, however, enough thrombin can accumulate to cause clotting. This can happen in circulatory shock, for example, when output from the heart is diminished and circulation slows down.
- **Anticoagulants.** Thrombin formation is suppressed by anticoagulants that are present in the plasma. **Antithrombin,** secreted by the liver, deactivates thrombin before it can act on fibrinogen. **Heparin,** secreted by basophils and mast cells, interferes with the formation of prothrombin activator, blocks the action of thrombin on fibrinogen, and promotes the action of antithrombin. Heparin is given by injection to patients with abnormal clotting tendencies.

Coagulation Disorders

In a process as complex as coagulation, it is not surprising that things can go wrong. Clotting deficiencies can result from causes as diverse as malnutrition, leukemia, and gallstones (see insight 18.4).

A deficiency of any clotting factor can shut down the coagulation cascade. This happens in **hemophilia,** a family of hereditary diseases characterized by deficiencies of one factor or another. Because of its sex-linked recessive mechanism of heredity, most hemophilia occurs predominantly in males. They can inherit it only from their mothers, however, as happened with the descendants of Queen Victoria. The lack of factor VIII causes *classical hemophilia (hemophilia A),* which accounts for about 83% of cases and afflicts 1 in 5,000 males worldwide. Lack of factor IX causes *hemophilia B,* which accounts for 15% of cases and occurs in about 1 out of 30,000 males. Factors VIII and IX are therefore known as *antihemophilic factors A* and *B.* A rarer form called *hemophilia C* (factor XI deficiency) is autosomal, not sex-linked, so it occurs equally in both sexes.

Before purified factor VIII became available in the 1960s, more than half of those with hemophilia died before age 5 and only 10% lived to age 21. Physical exertion causes bleeding into the muscles and joints. Excruciating pain and eventual joint immobility can result from intramuscular and joint **hematomas**[24] (masses of clotted blood in the tissues). Hemophilia varies in severity, however. Half of the normal level of clotting factor is enough to prevent the symptoms, and the symptoms are mild even in individuals with as little as 30% of the normal amount. Such cases may go undetected even into adulthood. Bleeding can be relieved for a few days by transfusion of plasma or purified clotting factors.

Think About It

Why is it important for people with hemophilia not to use aspirin? (Hint: See p. 666.)

Insight 18.4 Clinical Application

Liver Disease and Blood Clotting

Proper blood clotting depends on normal liver function for two reasons. First, the liver synthesizes most of the clotting factors. Therefore, diseases such as hepatitis, cirrhosis, and cancer that degrade liver function result in a deficiency of clotting factors. Second, the synthesis of clotting factors II, VII, IX, and X require vitamin K. The absorption of vitamin K from the diet requires bile, a liver secretion. Gallstones can lead to a clotting deficiency by obstructing the bile duct and thus interfering with bile secretion and vitamin K absorption. Efficient blood clotting is especially important in childbirth, since both the mother and infant bleed from the trauma of birth. Therefore, pregnant women should take vitamin K supplements to ensure fast clotting, and newborn infants may be given vitamin K injections.

Far more people die from unwanted blood clotting than from clotting failure. Most strokes and heart attacks are due to **thrombosis**—the abnormal clotting of blood in an unbroken vessel. A **thrombus** (clot) may grow large enough to obstruct a small vessel, or a piece of it may break loose and begin to travel in the bloodstream as an **embolus.**[25] An embolus may lodge in a small artery and block blood flow

---

[24] *hemat* = blood + *oma* = mass

[25] *em* = in, within + *bolus* = ball, mass

from that point on. If that vessel supplies a vital organ such as the heart, brain, lung, or kidney, *infarction* (tissue death) may result. About 650,000 Americans die annually of *thromboembolism* (traveling blood clots) in the cerebral, coronary, and pulmonary arteries.

Thrombosis is more likely to occur in veins than in arteries because blood flows more slowly in the veins and does not dilute thrombin and fibrin as rapidly. It is especially common in the leg veins of inactive people and patients immobilized in a wheelchair or bed. Most venous blood flows directly to the heart and then to the lungs. Therefore, blood clots arising in the legs or arms commonly lodge in the lungs and cause *pulmonary embolism.* When blood cannot circulate freely through the lungs, it cannot receive oxygen and a person may die of hypoxia.

Table 18.10 describes some additional disorders of the blood. The effects of aging on the blood are described on pages 1110 to 1111.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

25. What are the three basic mechanisms of hemostasis?
26. How do the extrinsic and intrinsic mechanisms of coagulation differ? What do they have in common?
27. In what respect does blood clotting represent a negative feedback loop? What part of it is a positive feedback loop?
28. Describe some of the mechanisms that prevent clotting in undamaged vessels.
29. Describe a common source and effect of pulmonary embolism.

Insight 18.5 Clinical Application

Controlling Coagulation

For many cardiovascular patients, the goal of treatment is to prevent clotting or to dissolve clots that have already formed. Several strategies employ inorganic salts and products of bacteria, plants, and animals with anticoagulant and clot-dissolving effects.

Preventing Clots from Forming

Since calcium is an essential requirement for blood clotting, blood samples can be kept from clotting by adding a few crystals of sodium oxalate, sodium citrate, or EDTA[26]—salts that bind calcium ions and prevent them from participating in the coagulation reactions. Blood-collection equipment such as hematocrit tubes may also be coated with heparin, a natural anticoagulant whose action was explained earlier.

Since vitamin K is required for the synthesis of clotting factors, anything that antagonizes vitamin K usage makes the blood clot less readily. One vitamin K antagonist is *coumarin*[27] (COO-muh-rin), a sweet-smelling extract of tonka beans, sweet clover, and other plants, used in perfume. Taken orally by patients at risk for thrombosis, coumarin takes up to 2 days to act, but it has longer-lasting effects than heparin. A similar vitamin K antagonist is the pharmaceutical preparation *Warfarin*[28] *(Coumadin),* which was originally developed as a pesticide—it makes rats bleed to death. Obviously, such anticoagulants must be used in humans with great care.

As explained in chapter 17, aspirin suppresses the formation of prostaglandins including thromboxane A_2, a factor in platelet aggregation. Low daily doses of aspirin can therefore suppress thrombosis and prevent heart attacks.

Many parasites feed on the blood of vertebrates and secrete anticoagulants to keep the blood flowing. Among these are segmented

Table 18.10 Some Disorders of the Blood

Infectious mononucleosis	Infection of B lymphocytes with Epstein-Barr virus, most commonly in adolescents and young adults. Usually transmitted by exchange of saliva, as in kissing. Causes fever, fatigue, sore throat, inflamed lymph nodes, and leukocytosis. Usually self-limiting and resolves within a few weeks.
Thalassemia	A group of hereditary anemias most common in Greeks, Italians, and others of Mediterranean descent; shows a deficiency or absence of α or β hemoglobin and RBC counts that may be less than 2 million/μL.
Thrombocytopenia	A platelet count below 100,000/μL. Causes include bone marrow destruction by radiation, drugs, poisons, or leukemia. Signs include small hemorrhagic spots in the skin or hematomas in response to minor trauma.
Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC)	Widespread clotting within unbroken vessels, limited to one organ or occurring throughout the body. Usually triggered by septicemia but also occurs when blood circulation slows markedly (as in cardiac arrest). Marked by widespread hemorrhaging, congestion of the vessels with clotted blood, and tissue necrosis in blood-deprived organs.
Septicemia	Bacteremia (bacteria in the bloodstream) accompanying infection elsewhere in the body. Often causes fever, chills, and nausea, and may cause DIC or septic shock. (see p. 765)

Disorders described elsewhere

Anemia 692
Embolism 708
Hematoma 198, 707
Hemolytic disease of the newborn 697
Hemophilia 707
Hypoproteinemia 682
Hypoxemia 685
Leukemia 702
Leukocytosis 701
Leukopenia 699
Polycythemia 692
Sickle-cell disease 693
Thrombosis 707
Transfusion reaction 696

worms known as leeches. Leeches secrete a local anesthetic that makes their bites painless; therefore, as early as 1567 B.C.E., physicians used them for bloodletting. This method was less painful and repugnant to their patients than *phlebotomy*[29]—cutting a vein—and indeed, leeching became very popular. In seventeenth-century France it was quite the rage; tremendous numbers of leeches were used to treat headaches, insomnia, whooping cough, obesity, tumors, menstrual cramps, mental illness, and almost anything else doctors or their patients imagined to be caused by "bad blood."

The first known anticoagulant was discovered in the saliva of the medicinal leech, *Hirudo medicinalis,* in 1884. Named *hirudin,* it is a polypeptide that prevents clotting by inhibiting thrombin. It causes the blood to flow freely while the leech feeds and for as long as an hour thereafter. While the doctrine of bad blood is now discredited, leeches have lately reentered medical usage (fig. 18.24). A major problem in reattaching a severed body part such as a finger or ear is that the tiny veins draining these organs are too small to reattach surgically. Since arterial blood flows into the reattached organ and cannot flow out, it pools and clots there. This inhibits the regrowth of veins and the flow of fresh blood through the organ and thus often leads to necrosis. Some vascular surgeons now place leeches on the reattached part. Their anticoagulant keeps the blood flowing freely and allows new veins to grow. After 5 to 7 days, venous drainage is restored and leeching can be stopped.

Anticoagulants also occur in the venom of some snakes. *Arvin,* for example, is obtained from the venom of the Malayan viper. It rapidly breaks down fibrinogen and may have potential as a clinical anticoagulant.

Dissolving Clots That Have Already Formed

When a clot has already formed, it can be treated with clot-dissolving drugs such as *streptokinase,* an enzyme made by certain bacteria (streptococci). Intravenous streptokinase is used to dissolve blood clots in coronary vessels, for example. It is nonspecific, however, and digests almost any protein. *Tissue plasminogen activator (TPA)* works faster, is more specific, and is now made by transgenic bacteria. TPA converts plasminogen into the clot-dissolving enzyme plasmin. Some anticoagulants of animal origin also work by dissolving fibrin. A giant Amazon leech, *Haementeria,* produces one such anticoagulant named *hementin.* This, too, has been successfully produced by genetically engineered bacteria and used to dissolve blood clots in cardiac patients.

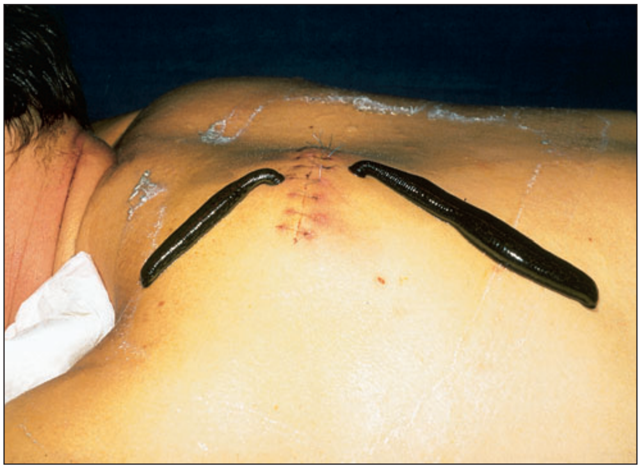


Figure 18.24 A Modern Use of Leeching. Two medicinal leeches are being used to remove clotted blood from a postsurgical hematoma. These leeches grow up to 20 cm long.

---

[26] ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid
[27] *coumarú,* tonka bean tree
[28] acronym from Wisconsin Alumni Research Foundation
[29] *phlebo* = vein + *tomy* = cutting

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

Functions and Properties of Blood (p. 680)

1. Blood serves to transport O_2, CO_2, nutrients, wastes, hormones, and heat; it protects the body by means of antibodies, leukocytes, platelets, and its roles in inflammation; and it helps to stabilize the body's water balance and fluid pH.
2. Blood is about 55% *plasma* and 45% *formed elements* by volume.
3. The formed elements include erythrocytes, platelets, and five kinds of leukocytes.
4. The viscosity of blood, stemming mainly from its RBCs and proteins, is an important factor in blood flow.
5. The osmolarity of blood, stemming mainly from its RBCs, proteins, and Na^+, governs its water content and is thus a major factor in blood volume and pressure. The protein contribution to osmolarity is the *colloid osmotic pressure.*

Plasma (p. 683)

1. Protein is the most abundant plasma solute by weight. The three major plasma proteins are albumins, globulins, and fibrinogen.
2. The liver produces all the plasma proteins except γ globulins (antibodies), which are produced by *plasma cells.*
3. Nonprotein nitrogenous substances in the plasma include amino acids and nitrogenous wastes. The most abundant nitrogenous waste is *urea.*
4. Nutrients carried in the plasma include glucose, amino acids, fats, cholesterol, phospholipids, vitamins, and minerals.

5. Plasma electrolytes include several inorganic salts (table 18.3); the most abundant cation is Na^+.

Blood Cell Production (p. 684)

1. *Hemopoiesis* is the production of the formed elements of blood. It begins in the embryonic yolk sac and continues in the fetal bone marrow, liver, spleen, and thymus. From infancy onward, it occurs in the bone marrow *(myeloid hemopoiesis)* and lymphoid tissues *(lymphoid hemopoiesis).*
2. Myeloid hemopoiesis begins with pluripotent stem cells called *hemocytoblasts.* Some of their daughter cells differentiate into *committed cells,* which have receptors for various stimulatory chemicals and are destined to develop into one specific type or group of formed elements.
3. *Erythropoiesis,* the production of RBCs, is stimulated by the hormone *erythropoietin.* It is regulated by a negative feedback loop that responds to *hypoxemia* with increased EPO secretion, and thus increased erythropoiesis.
4. Iron, in the form of ferrous ions (Fe^{2+}), is essential for hemoglobin synthesis and erythropoiesis, as well as synthesis of myoglobin and mitochondrial cytochromes. Dietary Fe^{3+} is converted to Fe^{2+} by stomach acid, then binds to *gastroferritin,* is absorbed into the blood, and binds with the plasma protein *transferrin.* Transferrin transports Fe^{2+} to the myeloid tissue and liver. The liver stores excess iron in *ferritin.*
5. *Leukopoiesis,* the production of WBCs, follows three lines starting with *B* and *T progenitor cells* (which become B and T lymphocytes) and *granulocyte-macrophage colony-forming units* (which become granulocytes and monocytes). These committed cells develop into mature WBCs under the influence of *colony-stimulating factors.*
6. Circulating WBCs remain in the bloodstream for only a matter of hours, and spend most of their lives in other tissues. Lymphocytes cycle repeatedly from blood to tissue fluids to lymph and back to the blood.
7. *Thrombopoiesis,* the production of platelets, is stimulated by *thrombopoietin.* This hormone induces the formation of large cells called *megakaryocytes,* which pinch off bits of peripheral cytoplasm that break up into platelets.

Erythrocytes (p. 689)

1. RBCs serve to transport O_2 and CO_2. They are discoid cells with a sunken center and no organelles, but they do have a cytoskeleton of *spectrin* and *actin* that reinforces the plasma membrane.
2. The most important components of the cytoplasm are *hemoglobin (Hb)* and *carbonic anhydrase (CAH).* Hb transports nearly all of the O_2 and some of the CO_2 in the blood, and CAH catalyzes the reversible reaction $CO_2 + H_2O \leftrightarrow H_2CO_3$.
3. Hb consists of four proteins—two α and two β chains—each with a *heme* moiety.
4. Oxygen binds to the Fe^{2+} at the center of each heme. About 5% of the CO_2 in the blood binds to the globin moiety for transport.
5. Hemoblogin occurs in forms HbA (adult hemoglobin), HbA_2, and HbF (fetal hemoglobin), which differ in amino acid composition and oxygen-binding properties.
6. The quantities of RBCs and Hb are clinically important. They are measured in terms of hematocrit (percent of the blood volume composed of RBCs), hemoglobin concentration (g/dL), and RBC count (RBCs/μL of blood). Normal averages are lower in women than in men.
7. An RBC lives for about 120 days, grows increasingly fragile, and then breaks apart, especially in the spleen. *Hemolysis,* the rupture of RBCs, releases cell fragmens and free Hb.
8. Hb is broken down into its globin and heme moieties. The globin is hydrolyzed into its free amino acids, which are reused. The heme is broken down into its Fe^{2+} and organic components. The Fe^{2+} is recycled or stored, and the organic component eventually becomes *biliverdin* and *bilirubin (bile pigments),* which are excreted as waste.
9. An excessive RBC count is *polycythemia. Primary polycythemia* results from cancer of the bone marrow, and *secondary polycythemia* from many other causes, such as dehydration, smoking, high altitude, and habitual strenuous exercise. Polycythemia increases blood volume, pressure, and viscosity to sometimes dangerous levels.
10. A deficiency of RBCs is *anemia.* Anemia can result from inadequate erythropoiesis, hemorrhage, or hemolysis.
11. Causes of anemia are classified and described in table 18.6.
12. The effects of anemia include tissue hypoxia and necrosis, reduced blood osmolarity, and reduced blood viscosity.
13. Sickle-cell disease and thalassemia are hereditary hemoglobin defects that result in severe anemia and multiple other effects.

Blood Types (p. 694)

1. Blood types are determined by antigenic glycoproteins and glycolipids on the RBC surface. Incompatibility of one person's blood with another results from the action of plasma antibodies against these RBC antigens.
2. Blood types A, B, AB, and O form the ABO blood group. The first two have antigen A or B on the RBC surface, the third has both A and B, and type O has neither.
3. A few months after birth, a person develops anti-A and anti-B antibodies against intestinal bacteria. These antibodies cross-react with foreign ABO antigens and thus limit transfusion compatibility.
4. When anti-A reacts with type A or AB red cells, or anti-B reacts with type B or AB red cells, the red cells agglutinate and hemolyze, causing a severe *transfusion reaction* that can lead to renal failure and death.
5. The Rh blood group is inherited through genes called C, D, and E. Anyone with genotype *DD* or *Dd* is Rh-positive (Rh^+).
6. An Rh-negative (Rh^-) person who is exposed to Rh^+ RBCs through transfusion or childbirth develops an anti-D antibody. Later exposures to Rh^+ red cells can cause a transfusion reaction.
7. Rh incompatibility between a sensitized Rh^- woman and an Rh^+ fetus can cause *hemolytic disease of the newborn,* a severe neonatal anemia that must be treated by phototherapy or transfusion.
8. Many other blood groups besides ABO and Rh exist. They rarely cause transfusion reactions but are useful in

paternity and criminal cases and for studies of population genetics.

Leukocytes (p. 699)

1. WBCs play various roles in defending the body from pathogens. Neutrophils, eosinophils, and basophils are classified as *granulocytes* while lymphocytes and monocytes are classified as *agranulocytes.* The appearance and function of each type are detailed in table 18.8.
2. A WBC deficiency, called *leukopenia,* may result from chemical or radiation poisoning, various infections, and certain drugs. It reduces a person's resistance to infection and cancer.
3. A WBC excess, called *leukocytosis,* may result from infection, allergy, dehydration, or emotional disorders, or from *leukemia* (cancer of the hemopoietic tissues).
4. Leukemia is classified by site of origin as *myeloid* or *lymphoid,* and by speed of progression as *acute* or *chronic.* Leukemia increases the risk of *opportunistic infection* and is typically accompanied by RBC and platelet deficiencies.

Hemostasis—The Control of Bleeding (p. 702)

1. Platelets are not cells but small, mobile, phagocytic fragments of megakaryocyte cytoplasm, second only to RBCs in abundance.
2. Platelets contribute to *hemostasis* (cessation of bleeding) by secreting *procoagulants* and vasoconstrictors and plugging small broken blood vessels. They also help to dissolve clots that are no longer needed, phagocytize bacteria, attract neutrophils and monocytes to inflamed tissues, and secrete growth factors that maintain blood vessels and promote tissue repair.
3. Breakage of a blood vessel leads first to *vascular spasm,* then formation of a *platelet plug,* and third but most effectively, *coagulation* (formation of a blood clot).
4. The objective of coagulation is to form a mesh of sticky protein called *fibrin.* There are two biochemical pathways to fibrin production, called the *extrinsic* and *intrinsic mechanisms.* Both pathways involve a self-amplifying chain reaction, or *reaction cascade,* of chemicals called *procoagulants.*
5. The extrinsic mechanism depends on chemicals released by damaged cells outside the bloodstream. It begins with release of a lipoprotein called *tissue thromboplastin* and leads to activation of a procoagulant called *factor X.*
6. The intrinsic mechanism employs only factors found in the blood plasma or platelets. It begins with *factor XII* and likewise ends with the activation of factor X.
7. Beyond the activation of factor X, events are identical regardless of intrinsic or extrinsic beginnings. The remaining steps include activation of the enzyme *thrombin,* which cuts plasma fibrinogen into fibrin. Fibrin then polymerizes to form the weblike matrix of the blood clot.
8. Positive feedback and enzyme amplification ensure rapid clotting and the production of a large amount of fibrin in spite of small amounts of the other procoagulants that drive the process.
9. After a clot forms, it exhibits a consolidation process called *clot retraction* that helps to seal the wound. *Platelet-derived growth factor* promotes repair of the damaged blood vessel and surrounding connective tissues. Tissue repair is followed by *fibrinolysis,* in which the blood clot, no longer needed, is dissolved by the enzyme *plasmin.*
10. Inappropriate coagulation is normally prevented by the repulsion of platelets by prostacyclin on the blood vessel endothelium, dilution of the small amounts of thrombin that form spontaneously, and anticoagulants such as *heparin.*
11. Clotting deficiency can result from *thrombocytopenia* (low platelet count) or *hemophilia* (hereditary deficiency in procoagulant structure and function, especially in factor VIII).
12. Unwanted clotting in unbroken blood vessels is called *thrombosis.* A *thrombus* (clot) can break loose and become a traveling *embolus,* which can cause sometimes fatal obstruction of small blood vessels.

Selected Vocabulary

hematology	680
plasma	680
erythrocyte	680
platelet	680
leukocyte	680
granulocyte	680
neutrophil	680
eosinophil	680
basophil	680
agranulocyte	680
lymphocyte	680
monocyte	680
colloid osmotic pressure	682
albumin	683
globulin	683
fibrinogen	683
hemopoiesis	685
hypoxemia	685
hemoglobin	689
hematocrit	691
polycythemia	692
anemia	692
ABO blood group	695
agglutination	696
Rh blood group	697
leukopenia	699
leukocytosis	701
leukemia	702
hemostasis	702
coagulation	704
fibrin	704
prothrombin	704
hematoma	707
thrombosis	707
embolus	707

Testing Your Recall

1. Antibodies belong to a class of plasma proteins called
   a. albumins.
   b. γ globulins.
   c. α globulins.
   d. procoagulants.
   e. agglutinins.
2. Serum is blood plasma minus its
   a. sodium ions.
   b. calcium ions.
   c. clotting proteins.
   d. globulins.
   e. albumins.
3. Which of the following conditions is most likely to cause hemolytic anemia?
   a. folic acid deficiency
   b. iron deficiency
   c. mushroom poisoning
   d. alcoholism
   e. hypoxemia
4. It is impossible for a type O$^+$ baby to have a type _____ mother.
   a. AB$^-$
   b. O$^-$
   c. O$^+$
   d. A$^+$
   e. B$^+$
5. Which of the following is *not* a component of hemostasis?
   a. platelet plug formation
   b. agglutination
   c. clot retraction
   d. a vascular spasm
   e. degranulation
6. Which of the following contributes most to the viscosity of blood?
   a. albumin
   b. sodium
   c. globulins
   d. erythrocytes
   e. fibrin
7. Which of these is a granulocyte?
   a. a monocyte
   b. a lymphocyte
   c. a macrophage
   d. an eosinophil
   e. an erythrocyte
8. Excess iron is stored in the liver as a complex called
   a. gastroferritin.
   b. transferrin.
   c. ferritin.
   d. hepatoferritin.
   e. erythropoietin.
9. Pernicious anemia is a result of
   a. hypoxemia.
   b. iron deficiency.
   c. malaria.
   d. lack of intrinsic factor.
   e. Rh incompatibility.
10. The first clotting factor that the intrinsic and extrinsic pathways have in common is
    a. thromboplastin.
    b. Hageman factor.
    c. factor X.
    d. prothrombin activator.
    e. factor VIII.
11. Production of all the formed elements of blood is called _____.
12. The percentage of blood volume composed of RBCs is called the _____.
13. The extrinsic pathway of coagulation is activated by _____ from damaged perivascular tissues.
14. The RBC antigens that determine transfusion compatibility are called _____.
15. The hereditary lack of factor VIII causes a disease called _____.
16. The overall cessation of bleeding, involving several mechanisms, is called _____.
17. _____ results from a mutation that changes one amino acid in the hemoglobin molecule.
18. An excessively high RBC count is called _____.
19. Intrinsic factor enables the small intestine to absorb _____.
20. The kidney hormone _____ stimulates RBC production.

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. By volume, the blood usually contains more plasma than blood cells.
2. An increase in the albumin concentration of the blood would tend to increase blood pressure.
3. Anemia is caused by a low oxygen concentration in the blood.
4. Hemostasis, coagulation, and clotting are three terms for the same process.
5. A man with blood type A$^+$ and a woman with blood type B$^+$ could have a baby with type O$^-$.
6. Lymphocytes are the most abundant WBCs in the blood.
7. Calcium ions are required for blood clotting.
8. All formed elements of the blood come ultimately from hemocytoblasts.
9. When RBCs die and break down, the globin moiety of hemoglobin is excreted and the heme is recycled to new RBCs.
10. Leukemia is a severe deficiency of white blood cells.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. Why would erythropoiesis not correct the hypoxemia resulting from lung cancer?
2. People with chronic kidney disease often have hematocrits of less than half the normal value. Explain why.
3. An elderly white woman is hit by a bus and severely injured. Accident investigators are informed that she lives in an abandoned warehouse, where her few personal effects include several empty wine bottles and an expired driver's license indicating she is 72 years old. At the hospital, she is found to be severely anemic. List all the factors you can think of that may contribute to her anemia.
4. How is coagulation different from agglutination?
5. Although fibrinogen and prothrombin are equally necessary for blood clotting, fibrinogen is about 4% of the plasma protein while prothrombin is present only in small traces. In light of the roles of these clotting factors and your knowledge of enzymes, explain this difference in their abundance.

Answers at the Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Legend Questions

18.1 A nucleus

18.9 About 1.3 times the diameter of an RBC, therefore about 10 μm

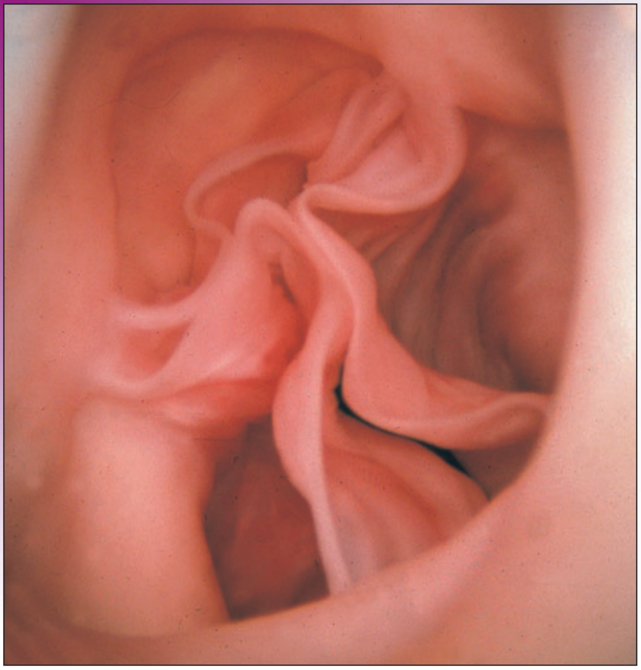
18.19 Although numerous, these WBCs are immature and incapable of performing their defensive roles.

18.20 A platelet plug lacks the fibrin mesh that a blood clot has.

18.21 It would affect only the intrinsic mechanism.

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.



A semilunar valve of the heart (endoscopic photo)

CHAPTER 19

The Circulatory System: The Heart

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Gross Anatomy of the Heart 716
- Overview of the Cardiovascular System 716
- Size, Shape, and Position of the Heart 717
- The Pericardium 718
- The Heart Wall 718
- The Chambers 720
- The Valves 721
- Blood Flow Through the Heart 724
- The Coronary Circulation 724

Cardiac Muscle and the Cardiac Conduction System 726
- Structure of Cardiac Muscle 726
- Metabolism of Cardiac Muscle 727
- The Cardiac Conduction System 727

Electrical and Contractile Activity of the Heart 728
- The Cardiac Rhythm 728
- Physiology of the SA Node 728
- Impulse Conduction to the Myocardium 728
- Electrical Behavior of the Myocardium 729
- The Electrocardiogram 730

Blood Flow, Heart Sounds, and the Cardiac Cycle 733
- Principles of Pressure and Flow 733
- Heart Sounds 734
- Phases of the Cardiac Cycle 734
- Overview of Volume Changes 736

Cardiac Output 737
- Heart Rate 738
- Stroke Volume 739
- Exercise and Cardiac Output 740

Chapter Review 743

INSIGHTS

19.1 Clinical Application: Valvular Insufficiency 723

19.2 Clinical Application: Myocardial Infarction and Angina Pectoris 725

19.3 Clinical Application: Cardiac Arrhythmias 732

19.4 Clinical Application: Congestive Heart Failure 737

19.5 Clinical Application: Coronary Atherosclerosis 741

Brushing Up

To understand this chapter, it is important that you understand or brush up on the following concepts:

- Properties of cardiac muscle (pp. 176, 432)
- Desmosomes and gap junctions (p. 179)
- Ultrastructure of striated muscle (pp. 409–411)
- Excitation-contraction coupling in muscle (p. 417)
- Length-tension relationship in muscle fibers (p. 422)
- Action potentials (p. 458)

We are more conscious of our heart than we are of most organs, and more wary of its failure. Speculation about the heart is at least as old as written history. Some ancient Chinese, Egyptian, Greek, and Roman scholars correctly surmised that the heart is a pump for filling the vessels with blood. Aristotle's views, however, were a step backward. Perhaps because the heart quickens its pace when we are emotionally aroused, and because grief causes "heartache," he regarded it primarily as the seat of emotion, as well as a source of heat to aid digestion. During the Middle Ages, Western medical schools clung dogmatically to the ideas of Aristotle. Perhaps the only significant advance came from Muslim medicine, when thirteenth-century physician Ibn an-Nafis described the role of the coronary blood vessels in nourishing the heart. The sixteenth-century dissections and anatomical charts of Vesalius, however, greatly improved knowledge of cardiovascular anatomy and set the stage for a more scientific study of the heart and treatment of its disorders—the science we now call **cardiology.**[1]

In the early decades of the twentieth century, little could be recommended for heart disease other than bed rest. Then nitroglycerin was found to improve coronary circulation and relieve the pain resulting from physical exertion, digitalis proved effective for treating abnormal heart rhythms, and diuretics were first used to reduce hypertension. Coronary bypass surgery, replacement of diseased valves, clot-dissolving enzymes, heart transplants, artificial pacemakers, and artificial hearts have made cardiology one of the most dramatic and attention-getting fields of medicine in the last quarter-century.

Gross Anatomy of the Heart

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the relationship of the heart to other thoracic structures;
- identify the chambers and valves of the heart and the features of its wall;
- trace the flow of blood through the heart chambers; and
- describe the blood supply to the heart tissue.

Overview of the Cardiovascular System

The term **circulatory system** refers to the heart, blood vessels, and blood. The term **cardiovascular system,** however, refers only to the passages through which the blood flows—the **heart,** a four-chambered muscular pump; **arteries,** the vessels that carry blood away from the heart; **veins,** the vessels that carry blood back to the heart; and **capillaries,** microscopic blood vessels that connect the smallest arteries to the smallest veins.

The cardiovascular system has two major divisions: a **pulmonary circuit,** which carries blood to the lungs for gas exchange and then returns it to the heart, and a **systemic circuit,** which supplies blood to every organ of the body (fig. 19.1). The right side of the heart serves the pulmonary circuit. It receives blood that has circulated through the body, unloaded oxygen and nutri-

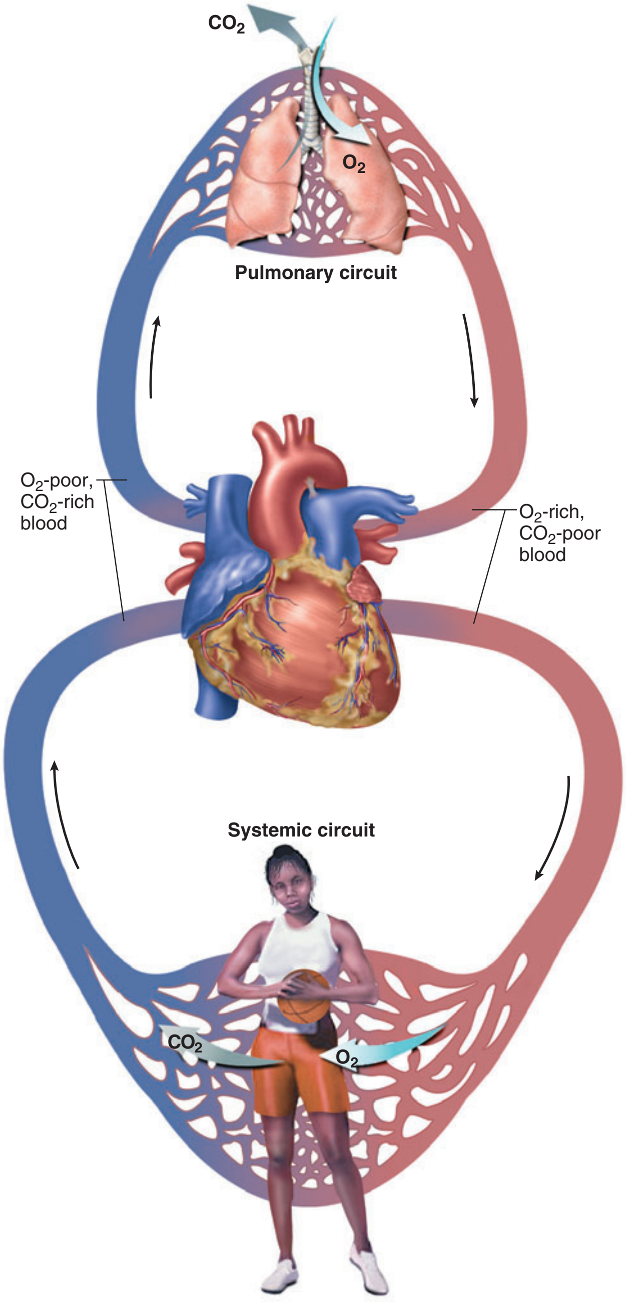


Figure 19.1 General Schematic of the Cardiovascular System.

---

[1] *cardio* = heart + *logy* = study

ents, and picked up a load of carbon dioxide and other wastes. It pumps this oxygen-poor blood into a large artery, the *pulmonary trunk,* which immediately divides into *right* and *left pulmonary arteries.* These transport blood to the lungs, where carbon dioxide is unloaded and oxygen is picked up. The oxygen-rich blood then flows by way of the *pulmonary veins* to the left side of the heart.

The left side of the heart serves the systemic circuit. Oxygenated blood leaves it by way of another large artery, the *aorta.* The aorta takes a sharp U-turn, the *aortic arch,* and passes downward, dorsal to the heart. The aortic arch gives off arteries that supply the head, neck, and upper limbs. The aorta then travels through the thoracic and abdominal cavities and issues smaller arteries to the other organs. After circulating through the body, the now-deoxygenated systemic blood returns to the right side of the heart mainly by way of two large veins, the *superior vena cava* (draining the head, neck, upper limbs, and thoracic organs) and *inferior vena cava* (draining the organs below the diaphragm). The major arteries and veins entering and leaving the heart are called the *great vessels* because of their relatively large diameters.

Size, Shape, and Position of the Heart

The heart is located in the thoracic cavity in the mediastinum, the area between the lungs. About two-thirds of it lies to the left of the median plane (fig. 19.2). The broad superior portion of the heart, called the **base,** is the point of attachment for the great vessels described previously. Its inferior end, the **apex,** tilts to the left and tapers to a blunt point (figs. 19.3 and 19.4). The adult heart is about 9 cm (3.5 in.) wide at the base, 13 cm (5 in.) from base to apex, and 6 cm (2.5 in.) from anterior to posterior at its thickest point—roughly the size of a fist. It weighs about 300 g (10 oz).

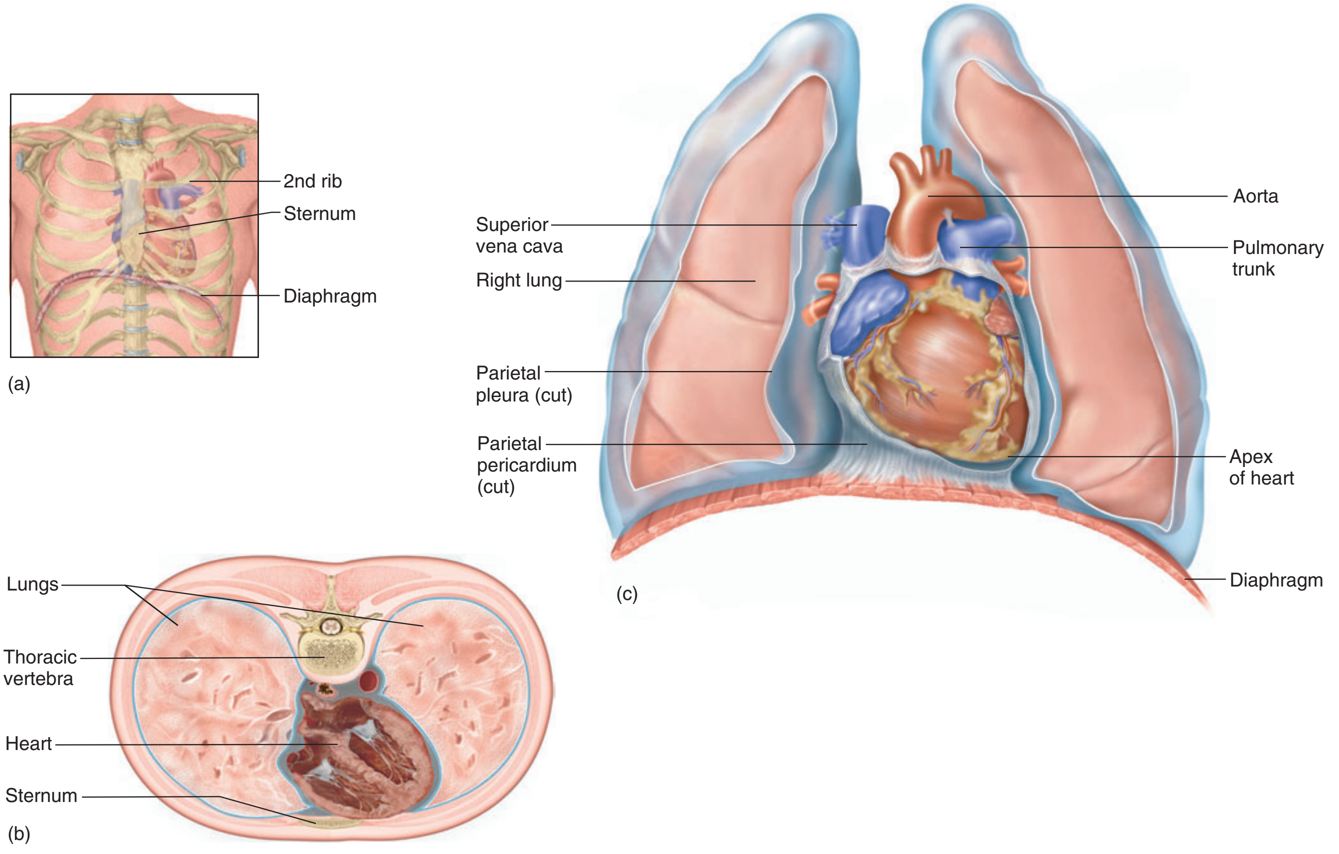
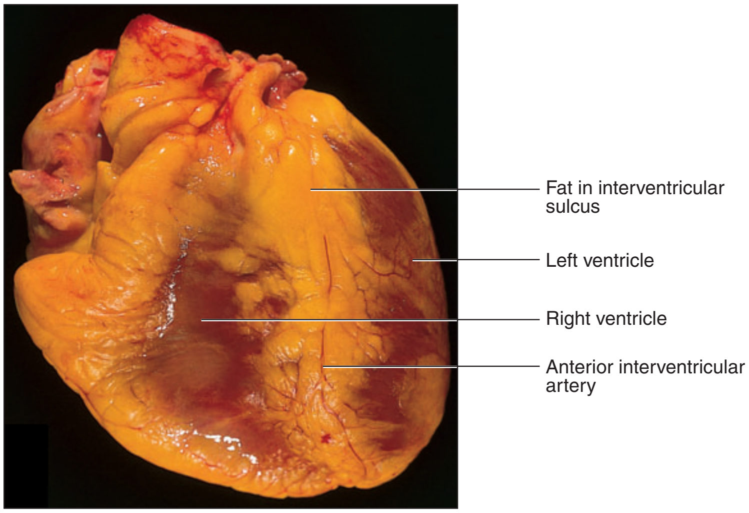
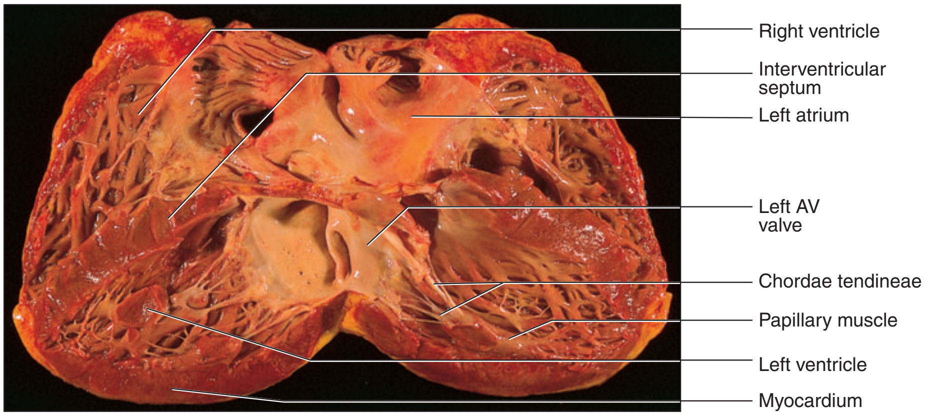


Figure 19.2 Position of the Heart in the Thoracic Cavity. (*a*) Relationship to the thoracic cage; (*b*) cross section of the thorax at the level of the heart; (*c*) frontal section of the thoracic cavity with the lungs slightly retracted and the pericardial sac opened.

Does most of the heart lie to the right or left of the median plane?


Fat in interventricular sulcus
Left ventricle
Right ventricle
Anterior interventricular artery

(a)


Right ventricle
Interventricular septum
Left atrium
Left AV valve
Chordae tendineae
Papillary muscle
Left ventricle
Myocardium

(b)

Figure 19.3 **The Human Heart.** (*a*) Anterior aspect; (*b*) internal anatomy, with the heart in *a* bisected on the frontal plane and folded open like a book.

The Pericardium

The heart is enclosed in a double-walled sac called the **pericardium,**[2] which is anchored to the diaphragm below and to the connective tissue of the great vessels above the heart (fig. 19.5). The **parietal pericardium (pericardial sac)** consists of a tough *fibrous layer* of dense irregular connective tissue and a thin, smooth *serous layer.* The serous layer turns inward at the base of the heart and forms the **visceral pericardium** covering the heart surface. Between the parietal and visceral membranes is a space called the **pericardial cavity.** It contains 5 to 30 mL of **pericardial fluid,** an exudate of the serous pericardium that lubricates the membranes and allows the heart to beat almost without friction. In *pericarditis*—inflammation of the pericardium—the membranes may become dry and produce a painful *friction rub* with each heartbeat. In addition to reducing friction, the pericardium isolates the heart from other thoracic organs, allows the heart room to expand, and resists excessive expansion. (See *cardiac tamponade* in table 19.3.)

The Heart Wall

The heart wall consists of three layers—the epicardium, myocardium, and endocardium (fig. 19.5). The **epicardium**[3] (= visceral pericardium) is a serous membrane

---

[2] *peri* = around

[3] *epi* = upon

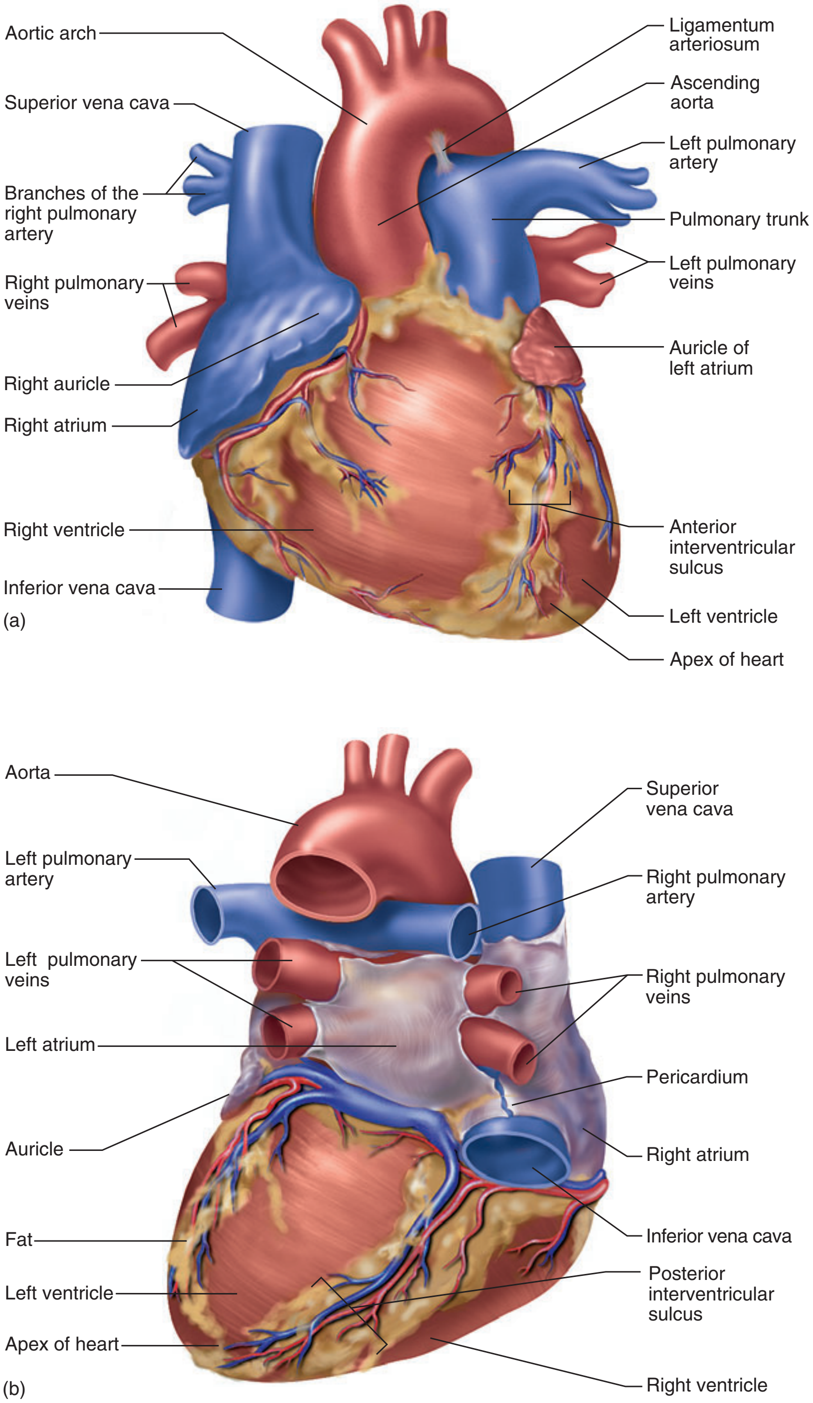

Aortic arch
Superior vena cava
Branches of the right pulmonary artery
Right pulmonary veins
Right auricle
Right atrium
Right ventricle
Inferior vena cava
(a)
Ligamentum arteriosum
Ascending aorta
Left pulmonary artery
Pulmonary trunk
Left pulmonary veins
Auricle of left atrium
Anterior interventricular sulcus
Left ventricle
Apex of heart
Aorta
Left pulmonary artery
Left pulmonary veins
Left atrium
Auricle
Fat
Left ventricle
Apex of heart
(b)
Superior vena cava
Right pulmonary artery
Right pulmonary veins
Pericardium
Right atrium
Inferior vena cava
Posterior interventricular sulcus
Right ventricle

Figure 19.4 **External Anatomy of the Heart.** (*a*) Anterior aspect; (*b*) posterior aspect. The coronary blood vessels on the heart surface are identified in figure 19.10.

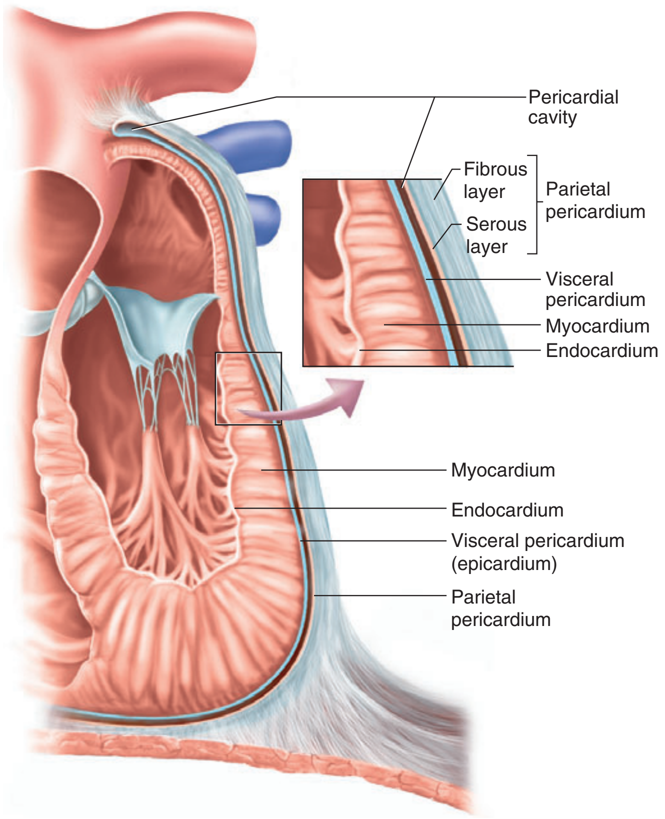


Figure 19.5 **The Pericardium and Heart Wall.** The inset shows the layers of the heart wall in relationship to the pericardium.

composed of a simple squamous epithelium overlying a thin layer of areolar tissue. Over much of the heart, it has thick deposits of fat that fill grooves in the heart surface and protect the coronary blood vessels. In nonfatty areas, the epicardium is thin and translucent, allowing the myocardium to show through.

The **myocardium,**[4] by far the thickest layer, is composed of cardiac muscle and performs the work of the heart. Its muscle cells spiral around the heart and are bound together by a meshwork of collagenous and elastic fibers that make up the **fibrous skeleton.** The fibrous skeleton has at least three functions: to provide structural support for the heart, especially around the valves and the openings of the great vessels; to give the muscle something to pull against; and, as a nonconductor of electricity, to limit the routes by which electrical excitation travels through the heart. This insulation prevents the atria from stimulating the ventricles directly and is important in the timing and coordination of electrical and contractile activity. Elastic recoil of the fibrous skeleton may also aid in refilling the heart with blood after each beat, but physiologists are not in complete agreement about this.

The **endocardium**[5] consists of a simple squamous endothelium overlying a thin areolar tissue layer. It forms the smooth inner lining of the chambers and valves and is continuous with the endothelium of the blood vessels.

The Chambers

The heart has four chambers (see fig. 19.4). Blood returning to the heart is received by two superior chambers, the **right** and **left atria** (AY-tree-uh; singular *atrium*[6]). These are mostly posterior in position, so only a small portion of each is visible from the anterior aspect. Each atrium has a small earlike extension called an *auricle*[7] that slightly increases its volume. The two inferior chambers, the **right** and **left ventricles,**[8] are the pumps that eject blood into the arteries. The right ventricle constitutes most of the anterior aspect of the heart, while the left ventricle forms the apex and inferoposterior aspect.

---

[4] *myo* = muscle

[5] *endo* = internal

[6] *atrium* = entryway

[7] *auricle* = little ear

[8] *ventr* = belly, lower part + *icle* = little

The heart is crisscrossed by sulci (grooves) that mark the boundaries of the four chambers. The sulci are occupied largely by fat and coronary blood vessels. The **atrioventricular (coronary[9]) sulcus** encircles the heart near its base and separates the atria from the ventricles. The **anterior** and **posterior interventricular sulci** extend vertically, from the coronary sulcus toward the apex, externally marking the boundary between the right and left ventricles.

The four chambers are best seen in a frontal section (fig. 19.6). The atria exhibit thin flaccid walls corresponding to their light workload—all they do is pump blood into the ventricles immediately below. They are separated from each other by a wall, the **interatrial septum.** The right atrium and both auricles exhibit internal ridges of myocardium called the **pectinate[10] muscles.** A thicker wall, the **interventricular septum,** separates the right and left ventricles. The right ventricle pumps blood only to the lungs and back, so its wall is only moderately thick and muscular. The left ventricle is two to four times as thick because it bears the greatest workload of all four chambers, pumping blood through the entire body. Both ventricles exhibit internal ridges called **trabeculae carneae**[11] (trah-BEC-you-lee CAR-nee-ee).

The Valves

To pump blood effectively, the heart needs valves that ensure a predominantly one-way flow. There is a valve between each atrium and its ventricle and at the exit from each ventricle into its great artery (figs. 19.6 and 19.7). Each valve consists of two or three fibrous flaps of tissue called **cusps,** covered with endothelium.

---

[9] *coron* = crown + *ary* = pertaining to

[10] *pectin* = comb + *ate* = like

[11] *trabecula* = little beam + *carne* = flesh, meat

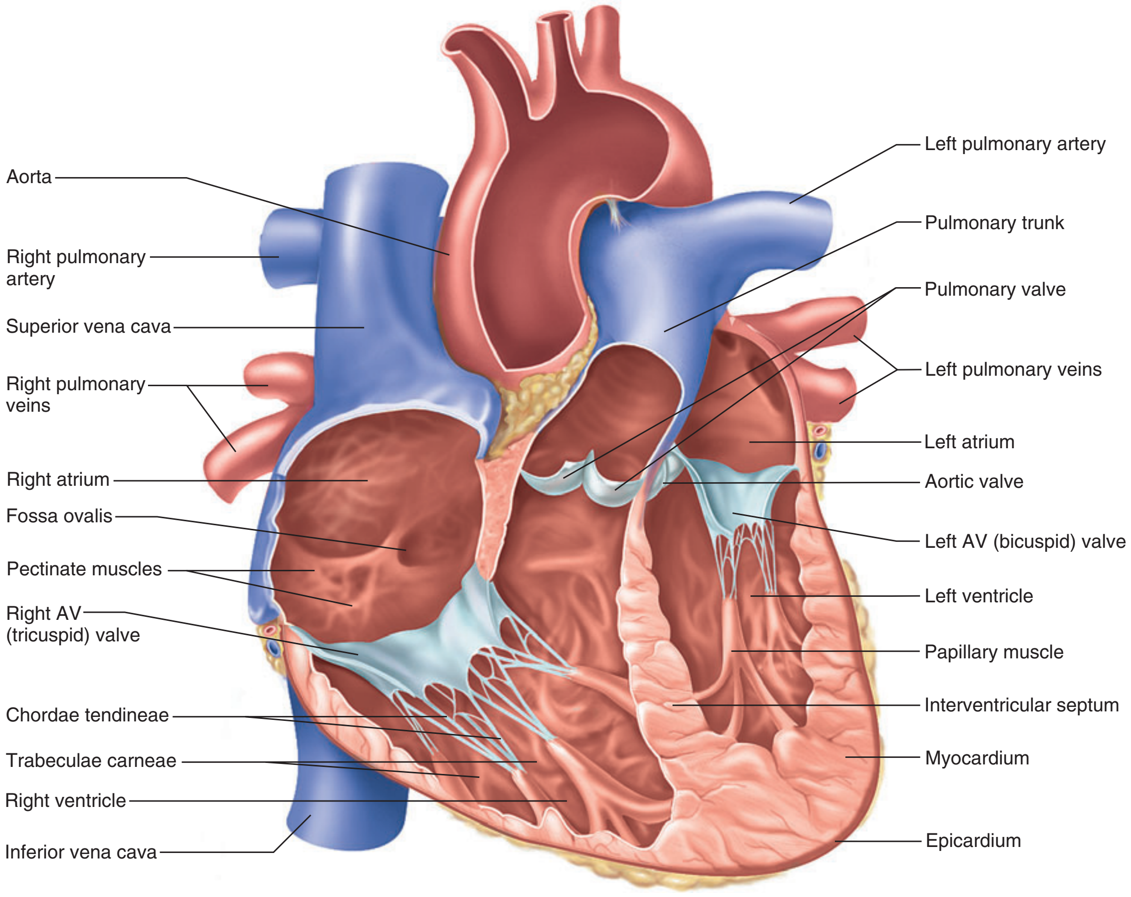

Aorta
Right pulmonary artery
Superior vena cava
Right pulmonary veins
Right atrium
Fossa ovalis
Pectinate muscles
Right AV (tricuspid) valve
Chordae tendineae
Trabeculae carneae
Right ventricle
Inferior vena cava
Left pulmonary artery
Pulmonary trunk
Pulmonary valve
Left pulmonary veins
Left atrium
Aortic valve
Left AV (bicuspid) valve
Left ventricle
Papillary muscle
Interventricular septum
Myocardium
Epicardium

Figure 19.6 **Internal Anatomy of the Heart (anterior aspect).**
Do the atrial pectinate muscles more nearly resemble the ventricular papillary muscles or the trabeculae carneae?

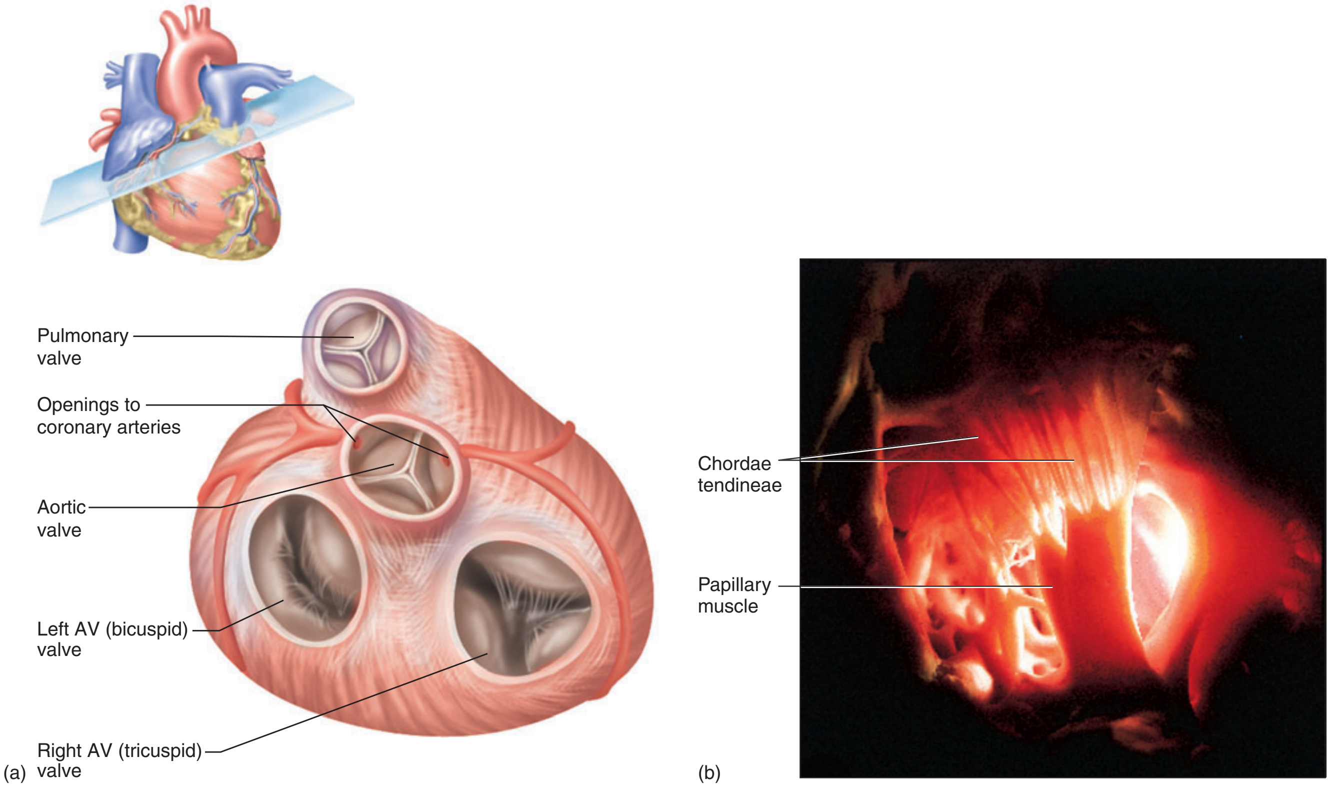


Figure 19.7 **The Heart Valves.** (*a*) Superior view of the heart with the atria removed; (*b*) papillary muscle and chordae tendineae seen from within the right ventricle. The upper ends of the chordae tendineae are attached to the cusps of the right AV valve.

The **atrioventricular (AV) valves** regulate the openings between the atria and ventricles. The **right AV (tricuspid) valve** has three cusps and the **left AV (bicuspid) valve** has two. The left AV valve is also known as the **mitral** (MY-trul) **valve** after its resemblance to a miter, the headdress of a catholic bishop. Stringlike **chordae tendineae** (COR-dee ten-DIN-ee-ee), reminiscent of the shroud lines of a parachute, connect the AV valve cusps to conical **papillary muscles** on the floor of the ventricle.

The **semilunar**[12] **valves** (pulmonary and aortic valves) regulate the openings between the ventricles and the great arteries. The **pulmonary valve** controls the opening from the right ventricle into the pulmonary trunk, and the **aortic valve** controls the opening from the left ventricle into the aorta. Each has three cusps shaped somewhat like shirt pockets (see photograph on p. 715).

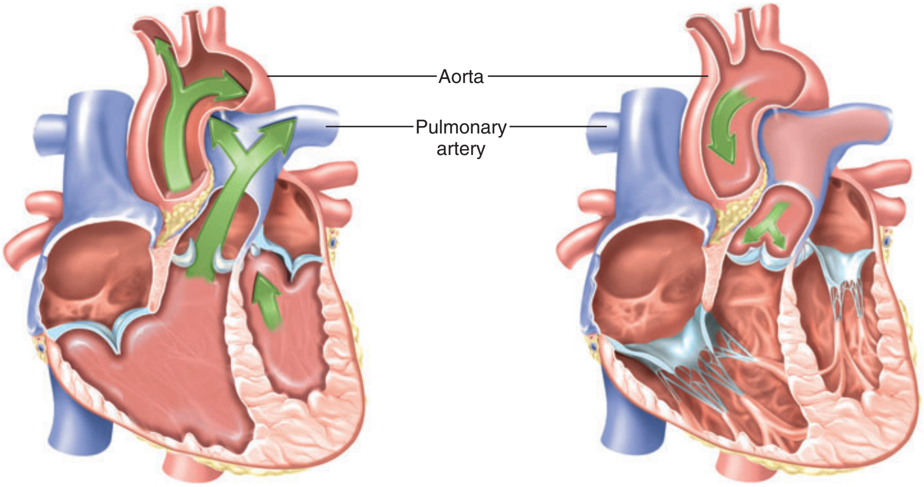
The opening and closing of heart valves is the result of pressure gradients between the "upstream" and "downstream" sides of the valve (fig. 19.8). When the ventricles are relaxed, the AV valve cusps hang down limply, both AV valves are open, and blood flows freely from the atria into the ventricles. When the ventricles have filled with blood and begin to contract, their internal pressure rises and blood surges against the AV valves. This pushes their cusps together, seals the openings, and prevents blood from flowing back into the atria. The papillary muscles contract with the rest of the ventricular myocardium and tug on the chordae tendineae, which prevents the valves from bulging excessively (prolapsing) into the atria or turning inside out like windblown umbrellas (see insight 19.1). When rising "upstream" pressure in the ventricles exceeds the "downstream" blood pressure in the great arteries, the ventricular blood forces the semilunar valves open and blood is ejected from the heart. Then as the ventricles relax again and their pressure falls below that in the arteries, arterial blood briefly flows backward and fills the pocketlike cusps of the semilunar valves. The three cusps meet in the middle of the orifice and seal it, thereby preventing blood from reentering the heart.

Think About It

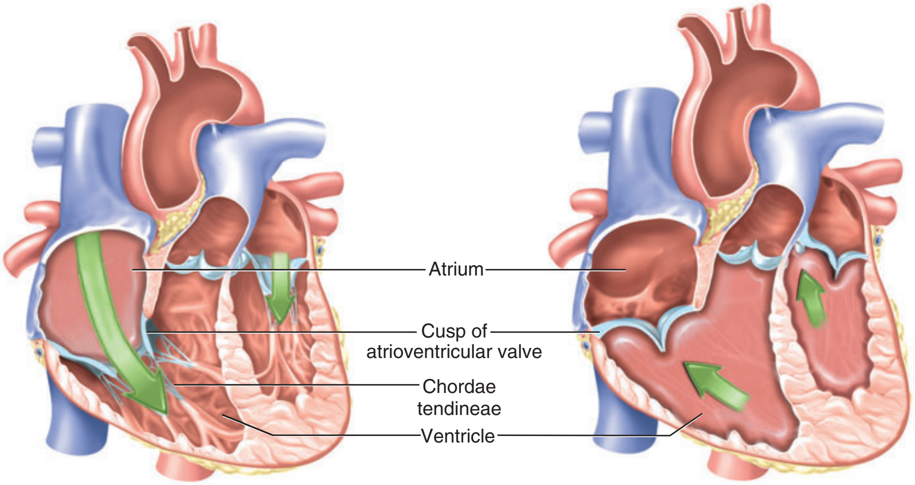
How would valvular stenosis (see insight 19.1) affect the amount of blood pumped into the aorta? How might this affect a person's physical stamina? Explain your reasoning.

---

[12] *semi* = half + *lunar* = like the moon



(a) Semilunar valves open   Semilunar valves closed



(b) Atrioventricular valves open   Atrioventricular valves closed

Figure 19.8 **Operation of the Heart Valves.** (*a*) The semilunar valves. When the pressure in the ventricle is greater than the pressure in the artery, the valve is forced open and blood is ejected. When ventricular pressure is lower than arterial pressure, arterial blood holds the valve closed. (*b*) The atrioventricular valves. When atrial pressure is greater than ventricular pressure, the valve opens and blood flows through. When ventricular pressure rises above atrial pressure, the blood in the ventricle pushes the valve cusps closed.

Insight 19.1 Clinical Application

Valvular Insufficiency

Valvular insufficiency (incompetence) refers to any failure of a valve to prevent *reflux (regurgitation)*—the backward flow of blood. *Valvular stenosis*[13] is a form of insufficiency in which the cusps are stiffened and the opening is constricted by scar tissue. It frequently results from rheumatic fever, an autoimmune disease in which antibodies produced to fight a bacterial infection also attack the mitral and aortic valves. As the valves become scarred and constricted, the heart is overworked by the effort to force blood through the openings and may become enlarged. Regurgitation of blood through the incompetent valves creates turbulence that can be heard as a *heart murmur.*

Mitral valve prolapse (MVP) is an insufficiency in which one or both mitral valve cusps bulge into the atrium during ventricular contraction. It is often hereditary and affects about 1 out of 40 people, especially young women. In many cases, it causes no serious dysfunction, but in some people it causes chest pain, fatigue, and shortness of breath. An incompetent valve can eventually lead to heart failure. A defective valve can be replaced with an artificial valve or a valve transplanted from a pig heart.

---

[13] *steno* = narrow

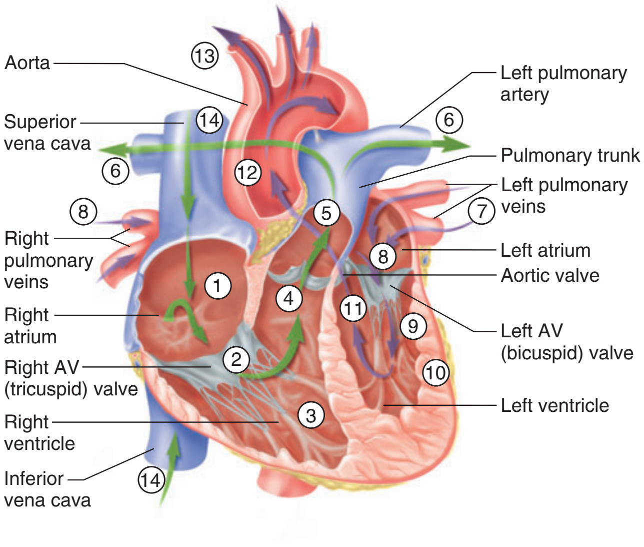


Figure 19.9 **The Pathway of Blood from the Right Atrium and Back.** (*1*) Right atrium → (*2*) right AV valve → (*3*) right ventricle → (*4*) pulmonary valve → (*5*) pulmonary trunk → (*6*) pulmonary arteries to lungs → (*7*) pulmonary veins returning from lungs → (*8*) left atrium → (*9*) left AV valve → (*10*) left ventricle → (*11*) aortic valve → (*12*) aorta → (*13*) other systemic vessels → (*14*) inferior and superior venae cavae → (*1*) back to the right atrium. The pathway from *5* to *7* is the pulmonary circuit, and the pathway from *12* to *14* is the systemic circuit.

Blood Flow Through the Heart

Until the sixteenth century, blood was thought to flow directly from the right ventricle into the left through invisible pores in the septum. This of course is not true. Blood on the right and left sides of the heart is kept entirely separate. Figure 19.9 shows the pathway of the blood as it travels from the right atrium through the body and back to the starting point.

The Coronary Circulation

If your heart beats an average of 75 times a minute for 80 years, it will beat more than 3 billion times and pump more than 200 million liters of blood. Understandably, it requires an abundant supply of oxygen and nutrients. Even though the heart is only 0.5% of the body's weight, it uses 5% of the circulating blood to meet its own metabolic needs. The cardiac muscle is not nourished to any great extent by the blood flowing through the heart chambers. Instead, it has its own supply of arteries and capillaries that deliver blood to every cell of the myocardium. The blood vessels of the heart wall constitute the **coronary circulation.** At rest, these vessels supply the myocardium with about 250 mL of blood per minute.

Arterial Supply

Immediately after the aorta leaves the left ventricle, it gives off right and left coronary arteries (fig. 19.10). Each coronary artery begins at an opening deep in the cup formed by a cusp of the aortic valve, like a hole in the bottom of a pocket. The **left coronary artery** passes under the left auricle and divides into two branches:

1. The **anterior interventricular artery** travels down the anterior interventricular sulcus toward the apex. It issues smaller branches to the interventricular septum and anterior walls of both ventricles. Clinically, this vessel is also called the *left anterior descending (LAD) artery.*
2. The **circumflex artery** continues around the left side of the heart in the coronary sulcus. It supplies blood to the left atrium and posterior wall of the left ventricle.

The **right coronary artery** supplies the right atrium, continues along the coronary sulcus under the right auricle, and then gives off two branches:

1. The **marginal artery** supplies the lateral aspect of the right atrium and ventricle.
2. The **posterior interventricular artery** travels down the corresponding sulcus and supplies the posterior walls of both ventricles.

Think About It

Which ventricle receives the greater coronary blood supply? Why should it receive a greater supply than the other? List the vessels that supply it.

The energy demand of the cardiac muscle is so critical that an interruption of the blood supply to any part of the myocardium can cause necrosis within minutes. A fatty deposit or blood clot in a coronary artery can cause a **myocardial infarction**[14] **(MI),** the sudden death of a patch of tissue deprived of its blood flow (see insight 19.2). The coronary circulation has a defense against such an occurrence—points called *anastomoses* (ah-NASS-tih-MO-seez) where two arteries come together and combine their blood flow to points farther downstream. Thus, if one artery becomes obstructed, some blood continues to reach myocardial tissue through the alternative route. The most important anastomosis is the point at which the circumflex artery and right coronary artery meet on the posterior side of the heart; they combine their blood flow into the posterior interventricular artery. Another is the meeting of the anterior and posterior interventricular arteries at the apex of the heart.

---

[14] *infarct* = to stuff

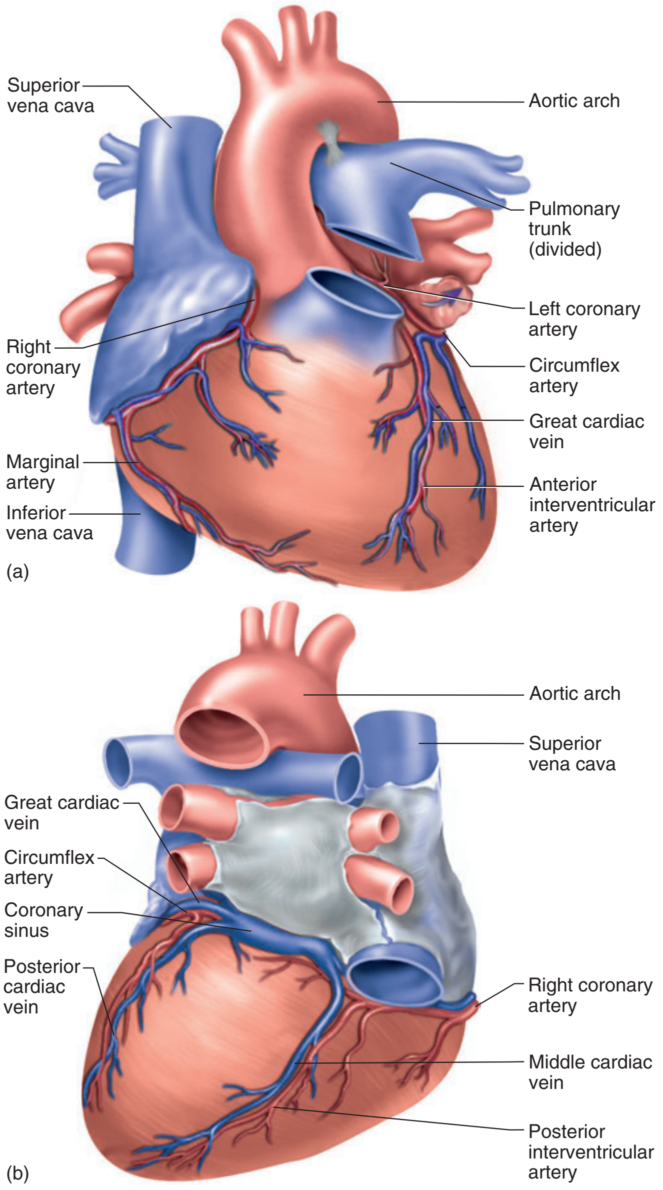

Superior vena cava
Aortic arch
Pulmonary trunk (divided)
Left coronary artery
Circumflex artery
Great cardiac vein
Right coronary artery
Marginal artery
Anterior interventricular artery
Inferior vena cava
(a)
Aortic arch
Superior vena cava
Great cardiac vein
Circumflex artery
Coronary sinus
Posterior cardiac vein
Right coronary artery
Middle cardiac vein
Posterior interventricular artery
(b)

Figure 19.10 **The Coronary Blood Vessels.** (*a*) Anterior aspect; (*b*) posterior aspect.

Venous Drainage

Venous drainage refers to the route by which blood leaves an organ. After flowing through capillaries of the myocardium, about 20% of the coronary blood empties directly from small veins into the right ventricle. The other 80% returns to the right atrium by the following route (fig. 19.10):

- The **great cardiac vein** collects blood from the anterior aspect of the heart and travels alongside the anterior interventricular artery. It carries blood from the apex of the heart toward the atrioventricular sulcus.
- The **middle cardiac vein,** found in the posterior sulcus, collects blood from the posterior aspect of the heart. It, too, carries blood from the apex upward.
- The **coronary sinus** collects blood from these and smaller cardiac veins. It passes across the posterior aspect of the heart in the coronary sulcus and empties blood into the right atrium.

Insight 19.2 Clinical Application

Myocardial Infarction and Angina Pectoris

A *myocardial infarction (MI)*—what most people call a heart attack—is the sudden death of a patch of myocardium resulting from *ischemia*[15] (iss-KEE-me-uh), the loss of blood flow. It occurs when a coronary artery becomes obstructed by a blood clot or a fatty deposit (atherosclerosis; see insight 19.5 at the end of this chapter). The myocardium downstream from the obstruction dies from *hypoxia* (oxygen deficiency). This tissue necrosis is felt as a sense of heavy pressure or squeezing pain in the chest, often radiating to the shoulder and arm. Infarctions weaken the heart wall and disrupt electrical conduction pathways, potentially leading to fibrillation and cardiac arrest (discussed later in this chapter). Myocardial infarction is responsible for about half of all deaths in the United States.

A temporary and reversible myocardial ischemia produces a sense of heaviness or pain called *angina pectoris*[16] (an-JY-na PEC-toe-riss). As the myocardium becomes hypoxic, it relies increasingly on anaerobic fermentation. This generates lactic acid, which stimulates pain receptors.

---

[15] *isch* = to hold back + *em* = blood
[16] *angina* = to choke, strangle + *pectoris* = of the chest

Coronary Flow in Relation to the Cardiac Cycle

Most organs receive more arterial blood flow when the ventricles contract than when they relax, but the opposite is true in the coronary arteries. There are two reasons for this. First, contraction of the myocardium compresses the arteries and obstructs blood flow. Second, when the ventricles relax, blood in the aorta surges back toward the heart and fills the semilunar valve cusps. Since the coronary arteries open at the bottom of the pockets created by the cusps, they are filled by this backflow.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

1. Make a two-color sketch of the pericardium; use one color for the fibrous pericardium and another for the serous pericardium and show their relationship to the heart wall.

2. Trace the flow of blood through the heart, naming each chamber and valve in order.
3. Define *pulmonary* and *systemic circuit.*
4. Trace the flow of blood from the left coronary artery to the apex and then to the coronary sinus.

Cardiac Muscle and the Cardiac Conduction System

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- contrast the structure of cardiac and skeletal muscle;
- describe the physiological properties of cardiac muscle and relate its structure to its function;
- explain why the heart does not fatigue; and
- describe the heart's electrical conduction system.

Structure of Cardiac Muscle

Cardiac muscle is striated like skeletal muscle but otherwise differs from it in many structural and physiological ways. Cardiac myocytes (muscle cells), or *cardiocytes,* are relatively short, thick, branched cells, typically 50 to 100 μm long and 10 to 20 μm wide (fig. 19.11). They usually have only one, centrally placed nucleus. The sarcoplasmic reticulum (SR) is less developed than in skeletal muscle. It lacks terminal cisternae, although it does have footlike sacs associated with the T tubules. The T tubules are much larger than in skeletal muscle and admit supplemental calcium ions from the extracellular fluid into the cell during excitation.

The myocytes are joined end to end by thick connections called **intercalated** (in-TUR-kuh-LAY-ted) **discs,** which appear as dark lines (thicker than the striations) in properly stained tissue sections. An intercalated disc is a complex steplike structure with three distinctive features:

1. **Interdigitating folds.** The plasma membrane at the end of the cell is folded somewhat like an egg carton. The folds of adjoining cells interlock with each other and increase the surface area of intercellular contact.
2. **Mechanical junctions.** The cells are tightly joined by two types of mechanical junctions—the fascia adherens and desmosomes. The *fascia adherens*[17] (FASH-ee-ah ad-HEER-enz) is the most extensive. It is a broad band in which the actin of the thin myofilaments is anchored to the plasma membrane and, via transmembrane proteins, one cell is linked to the next. The fascia adherens is interrupted here and there by desmosomes. (Desmosomes and gap junctions, described next, are illustrated in fig. 5.29, p. 178.) These mechanical junctions prevent the myocytes from pulling apart when the heart contracts.
3. **Electrical junctions.** The myocytes are electrically coupled by *gap junctions,* which form channels that allow ions to flow from one cell directly into the next. These junctions enable each myocyte to electrically stimulate its neighbors, so the entire myocardium of the atria, and that of the ventricles, each acts almost as if it were a single cell. This unified action is essential for the effective pumping of a heart chamber.

Cardiac myocytes have, at best, limited capability for mitosis. Furthermore, cardiac muscle lacks satellite cells, which, in skeletal muscle, can divide and replace dead muscle cells to some extent. Thus, the repair of damaged cardiac muscle is almost entirely by fibrosis (scarring).

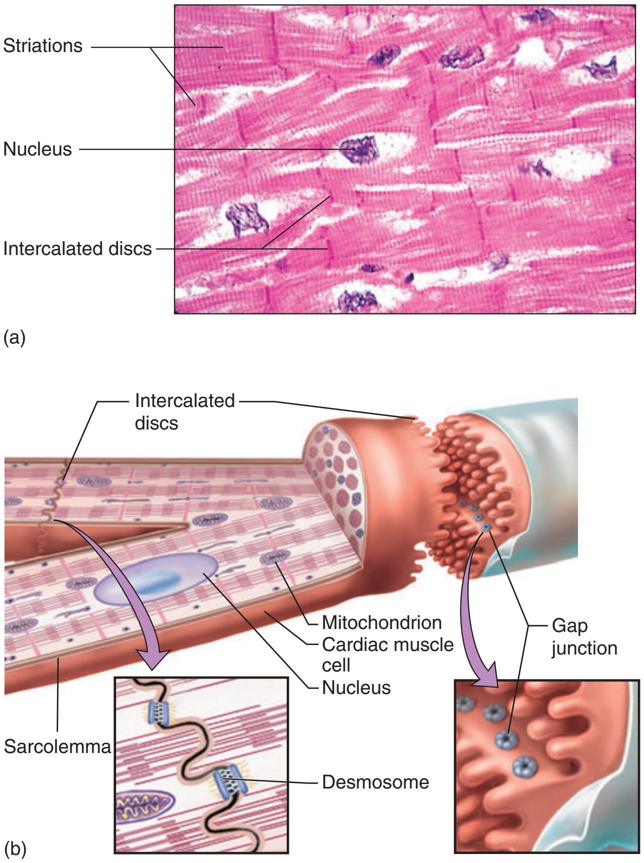


Figure 19.11 Cardiac Muscle. (*a*) Light micrograph, (*b*) cardiac myocytes and intercalated discs.

Chapter 19

---

[17] *fascia* = band + *adherens* = adhering

Metabolism of Cardiac Muscle

Cardiac muscle depends almost exclusively on aerobic respiration to make ATP. It is very rich in myoglobin (a short-term source of stored oxygen for aerobic respiration) and glycogen (stored energy). It also has especially large mitochondria, which fill about 25% of the myocyte; skeletal muscle fibers, by comparison, have much smaller mitochondria that occupy only 2% of the fiber. Cardiac muscle is relatively adaptable with respect to the organic fuels used. At rest, the heart gets about 60% of its energy from fatty acids, 35% from glucose, and 5% from other fuels such as ketones, lactic acid, and amino acids. Cardiac muscle is more vulnerable to an oxygen deficiency than it is to the lack of any specific fuel. Because it makes little use of anaerobic fermentation or the oxygen debt mechanism, it is not prone to fatigue. You can easily appreciate this fact by clenching and opening your fist once every second for a minute or two. You will soon feel weakness and fatigue in your skeletal muscles and perhaps feel all the more grateful that cardiac muscle can maintain its rhythm, without fatigue, for a lifetime.

The Cardiac Conduction System

Among invertebrates such as clams, crabs, and insects, each heartbeat is triggered by a pacemaker in the nervous system. The vertebrate heartbeat, however, is said to be *myogenic*[18] because the signal originates within the heart itself, in pacemaker cells derived from cardiac muscle. Autonomic nerve fibers to the heart modify its rhythm, but they do not create it—the heart goes on beating even if all nerve connections to it are severed. Indeed, we can remove a vertebrate heart from the body, keep it in aerated saline, and it will beat for hours. Cut the heart into little pieces, and each piece continues its own rhythmic pulsations.

Cardiac myocytes are said to be **autorhythmic**[19] because they depolarize spontaneously at regular time intervals. Some of them lose the ability to contract and become specialized, instead, for generating action potentials. These constitute the **cardiac conduction system,** which controls the route and timing of electrical conduction to ensure that the four chambers are coordinated with each other. The conduction system consists of the following components (fig. 19.12):

- The **sinoatrial (SA) node,** a patch of modified myocytes in the right atrium, just under the epicardium near the superior vena cava. This is the **pacemaker** that initiates each heartbeat and determines the heart rate. Signals from the SA node spread throughout the atria, as shown by the yellow arrows in figure 19.12.

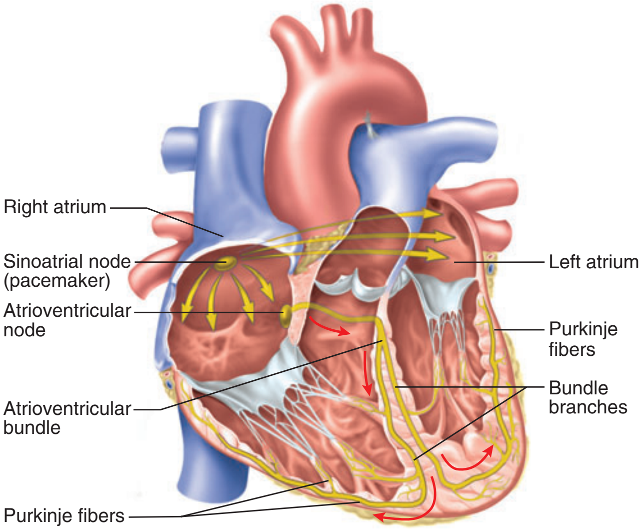


Figure 19.12 The Cardiac Conduction System. Electrical signals travel along the pathway indicated by the *arrows.*
Which atrium is first to receive the signal that induces it to contract?

- The **atrioventricular (AV) node,** located near the right AV valve at the lower end of the interatrial septum. This node acts as an electrical gateway to the ventricles; the fibrous skeleton acts as an insulator to prevent currents from getting to the ventricles by any other route.
- The **atrioventricular (AV) bundle** *(bundle of His[20]),* a pathway by which signals leave the AV node.
- The **right** and **left bundle branches,** divisions of the AV bundle that enter the interventricular septum and descend toward the apex.
- **Purkinje**[21] (pur-KIN-jee) **fibers,** nervelike processes that arise from the bundle branches near the apex of the heart and then turn upward and spread throughout the ventricular myocardium. Purkinje fibers distribute the electrical excitation to the myocytes of the ventricles. They form a more elaborate network in the left ventricle than in the right.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

5. What organelle(s) are less developed in cardiac muscle than in skeletal muscle? What organelle(s) are more developed? What is the functional significance of these differences?

---

[18] *myo* = muscle + *genic* = arising from
[19] *auto* = self
[20] Wilhelm His, Jr. (1863–1934), German physiologist
[21] Johannes E. Purkinje (1787–1869), Bohemian physiologist

6. Name two types of cell junctions in the intercalated discs and explain their functional importance.
7. Why is the human heart described as myogenic? Where is its pacemaker and what is it called?
8. List the components of the cardiac conduction system in the order traveled by signals from the pacemaker.

Electrical and Contractile Activity of the Heart

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- explain why the SA node fires spontaneously and rhythmically;
- explain how the SA node excites the myocardium;
- describe the unusual action potentials of cardiac muscle and relate them to the contractile behavior of the heart; and
- interpret a normal electrocardiogram.

In this section, we examine how the electrical events in the heart produce its cycle of contraction and relaxation. Contraction is called **systole** (SIS-toe-lee) and relaxation is **diastole** (dy-ASS-toe-lee). These terms can refer to a specific part of the heart (for example, atrial systole), but if no particular chamber is specified, they usually refer to the more conspicuous and important ventricular action, which ejects blood from the heart.

The Cardiac Rhythm

The normal heartbeat, triggered by the SA node, is called the **sinus rhythm.** At rest, the adult heart rate is usually around 70 to 80 beats per minute (bpm). Left to itself, the SA node would fire more often than this, but the vagus nerves inhibit it and hold it down to this rate at rest.

Stimuli such as hypoxia, electrolyte imbalances, caffeine, nicotine, and other drugs can cause other parts of the conduction system to fire before the SA node does, setting off an extra heartbeat *(extrasystole).* Any region of spontaneous firing other than the SA node is called an **ectopic**[22] **focus.** If the SA node is damaged, an ectopic focus may take over the governance of the heart rhythm. The most common ectopic focus is the AV node, which produces a slower heartbeat of 40 to 50 bpm called a **nodal rhythm.** If neither the SA nor AV node is functioning, other ectopic foci fire at rates of 20 to 40 bpm. The nodal rhythm is sufficient to sustain life, but a rate of 20 to 40 bpm provides too little flow to the brain to be survivable. This condition calls for an artificial pacemaker.

Any abnormal cardiac rhythm is called **arrhythmia**[23] (see insight 19.3). One cause of arrhythmia is a **heart block**—the failure of any part of the cardiac conduction system to transmit signals, usually as a result of disease and degeneration of conduction system fibers. A *bundle branch block,* for example, is due to damage to one or both bundle branches. Damage to the AV node causes *total heart block,* in which signals from the atria fail to reach the ventricles and the ventricles beat at their own intrinsic rhythm of 20 to 40 bpm.

Physiology of the SA Node

Why does the SA node spontaneously fire 70 or 80 times per minute? Unlike skeletal muscle or neurons, the cells of the SA node do not have a stable resting membrane potential. Their membrane potential starts at about −60 mV and drifts upward, showing a gradual depolarization called the **pacemaker potential** (fig. 19.13). This is thought to result from a slow inflow of Na^+ without a compensating outflow of K^+.

When the pacemaker potential reaches a threshold of −40 mV, voltage-regulated **fast calcium channels** open and Ca^{2+} flows in from the extracellular fluid (ECF). This produces the rising (depolarizing) phase of the action potential, which peaks slightly above 0 mV. At that point, K^+ channels open and potassium ions leave the cell. This makes the cytosol increasingly negative and creates the falling (repolarizing) phase of the action potential. When repolarization is complete, the K^+ channels close and the pacemaker potential starts over, on its way to producing the next heartbeat. Each depolarization of the SA node sets off one heartbeat. When the SA node fires, it excites the other components in the conduction system; thus, the SA node serves as the system's pacemaker. At rest, it fires every 0.8 second or so, creating a heart rate of about 75 bpm.

Impulse Conduction to the Myocardium

Firing of the SA node excites atrial myocytes and stimulates the two atria to contract almost simultaneously. The signal travels at a speed of about 1 m/sec through the atrial myocardium and reaches the AV node in about 50 msec. In the AV node, the signal slows down to about 0.05 m/sec, partly because the myocytes here are thinner but more importantly because they have fewer gap junctions over which the signal can be transmitted. This delays the signal at the AV node for about 100 msec—like highway traffic slowing down at a small town. This delay is essential because it gives the ventricles time to fill with blood before they begin to contract.

The ventricular myocardium has a conduction speed of only 0.3 to 0.5 m/sec. If this were the only route of travel for the excitatory signal, some myocytes would be stimulated much sooner than others. Ventricular contraction would not be synchronized and the pumping effectiveness

---

[22] *ec* = out of + *top* = place
[23] *a* = without + rhythm + *ia* = condition

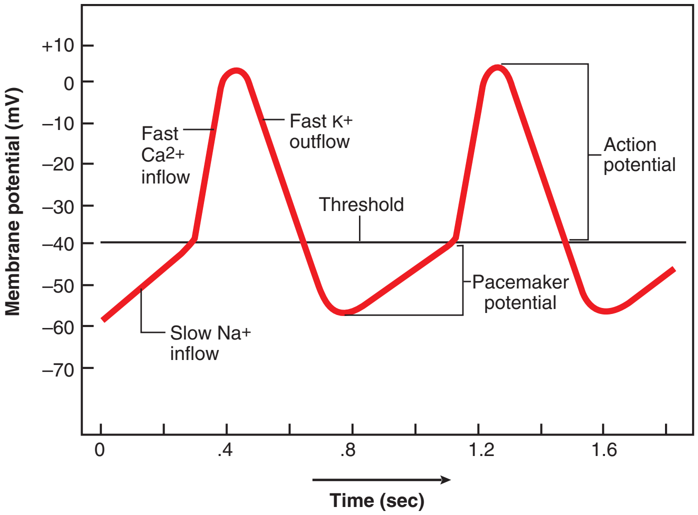


Figure 19.13 **Pacemaker Potentials and Action Potentials of the SA Node.**

of the ventricles would be severely compromised. But signals travel through the AV bundle and Purkinje fibers at a speed of 4 m/sec, the fastest in the conduction system. Consequently, the entire ventricular myocardium depolarizes within 200 msec after the SA node fires, causing the ventricles to contract in near unison.

Signals reach the papillary muscles before the rest of the myocardium. Thus, these muscles contract and begin taking up slack in the chordae tendineae an instant before ventricular contraction causes blood to surge against the AV valves. Ventricular systole begins at the apex of the heart, which is first to be stimulated, and progresses upward—pushing the blood upward toward the semilunar valves. Because of the spiral arrangement of ventricular myocytes, the ventricles twist slightly as they contract, like someone wringing out a towel.

Electrical Behavior of the Myocardium

The action potentials of cardiac muscle are significantly different from those of neurons and skeletal muscle (fig. 19.14). Cardiac muscle has a stable resting potential of -90 mV and depolarizes only when stimulated, unlike the autorhythmic cells of the SA node. A stimulus opens voltage-regulated sodium gates, causing an Na^+ inflow and depolarizing the cell to its threshold. The threshold voltage rapidly opens additional Na^+ gates and triggers a positive feedback cycle like the one seen in the firing of a neuron (see p. 458). The action potential peaks at nearly $+30$ mV. The Na^+ gates close quickly, and the rising phase of the action potential is very brief.

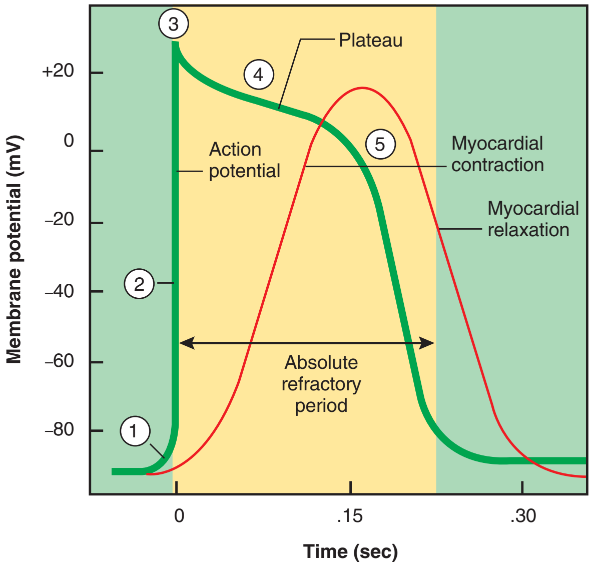
As action potentials spread over the plasma membrane, they open voltage-gated slow calcium channels, which admit a small amount of calcium from the extracellular fluid into the cell. This calcium binds to ligand-gated calcium channels on the sarcoplasmic reticulum (SR), opening them and releasing a greater quantity of Ca^{2+} from the SR into the cytosol. This second wave of Ca^{2+} binds to troponin and triggers contraction in the same way as it does in skeletal muscle (see chapter 11). The SR provides 90% to 98% of the Ca^{2+} needed for myocardial contraction.

In skeletal muscle and neurons, an action potential falls back to the resting potential within 2 msec. In cardiac muscle, however, the depolarization is prolonged for 200 to 250 msec (at a heart rate of 70–80 bpm) producing a long plateau in the action potential—perhaps because the Ca^{2+} channels of the SR are slow to close or because the SR is slow to remove Ca^{2+} from the cytosol.

As long as the action potential is in its plateau, the myocytes contract. Thus, in figure 19.14, you can see the development of muscle tension (myocardial contraction) following closely behind the depolarization and plateau. Rather than showing a brief twitch like skeletal muscle, cardiac muscle has a more sustained contraction necessary for expulsion of blood from the heart chambers. Both atrial and ventricular myocytes exhibit these plateaus, but they are more pronounced in the ventricles.

At the end of the plateau, Ca^{2+} channels close and K^+ channels open. Potassium diffuses rapidly out of the cell and Ca^{2+} is transported back into the extracellular fluid and SR. Membrane voltage drops rapidly, and muscle tension declines soon afterward.

Cardiac muscle has an *absolute refractory period* of 250 msec, compared with 1 to 2 msec in skeletal muscle. This long refractory period prevents wave summation and tetanus, which would stop the pumping action of the heart.



1. Voltage-gated sodium channels open.
2. Na^+ inflow depolarizes the membrane and triggers the opening of still more Na^+ channels, creating a positive feedback cycle and a rapidly rising membrane voltage.
3. Na^+ channels close when the cell depolarizes, and the voltage peaks at nearly +30 mV.
4. Ca^{2+} entering through slow calcium channels prolongs depolarization of membrane, creating a plateau. Plateau falls slightly because of some K^+ leakage, but most K^+ channels remain closed until end of plateau.
5. Ca^{2+} channels close and Ca^{2+} is transported out of cell. K^+ channels open, and rapid K^+ outflow returns membrane to its resting potential.

Figure 19.14 **Action Potential of a Ventricular Myocyte.** The *red curve* represents rising and falling muscle tension as the myocardium contracts and relaxes.

What is the advantage of having such a long absolute refractory period in cardiac muscle?

Think About It

With regard to the ions involved, how does the falling (repolarization) phase of a myocardial action potential differ from that of a neuron's action potential? (See p. 458.)

The Electrocardiogram

We can detect electrical currents in the heart by means of electrodes (leads) applied to the skin. An instrument called the *electrocardiograph* amplifies these signals and produces a record, usually on a moving paper chart, called an **electrocardiogram**[24] **(ECG** or **EKG**[25]**).** To record an ECG, electrodes are typically attached to the wrists, ankles, and six locations on the chest. Several simultaneous recordings can be made from electrodes at different distances from the heart; collectively, they provide a comprehensive image of the heart's electrical activity. An ECG is a composite recording of all the action potentials produced by the nodal and myocardial cells—it should not be misconstrued as a tracing of a single action potential.

Figure 19.15 shows a typical ECG. It shows three principal deflections above and below the baseline: the *P wave, QRS complex,* and *T wave.* Figure 19.16 shows how these correspond to regions of the heart undergoing depolarization and repolarization.

The **P wave** is produced when a signal from the SA node spreads through the atria and depolarizes them. Atrial systole begins about 100 msec after the P wave begins, during the *P–Q segment.* This segment is about 160 msec long and represents the time required for impulses to travel from the SA node to the AV node.

The **QRS complex** consists of a small downward deflection (Q), a tall sharp peak (R), and a final downward deflection (S). It marks the firing of the AV node and the onset of ventricular depolarization. Its complex shape is due to the different sizes of the two ventricles and the different times required for them to depolarize. Ventricular systole begins shortly after the QRS complex in the *S–T segment.* Atrial repolarization and diastole also occur during the QRS interval, but atrial repolarization sends a relatively weak signal that is obscured by the electrical activity of the more muscular ventricles. The S–T segment corresponds to the plateau in the myocardial action potential and thus represents the time during which the ventricles contract and eject blood.

The **T wave** is generated by ventricular repolarization immediately before diastole. The ventricles take longer to repolarize than to depolarize; the T wave is therefore smaller and more spread out than the QRS complex, and it has a rounder peak. Even in cases where the T wave is taller than the QRS complex, it can be recognized by its relatively rounded peak.

The ECG affords a wealth of information about the normal electrical activity of the heart. Deviations from normal are invaluable for diagnosing abnormalities in the conduction pathways, myocardial infarction, enlargement

---

[24] *graph* = recording instrument; *graphy* = recording procedure; *gram* = record of
[25] EKG is from the German spelling, Elektrokardiogramm

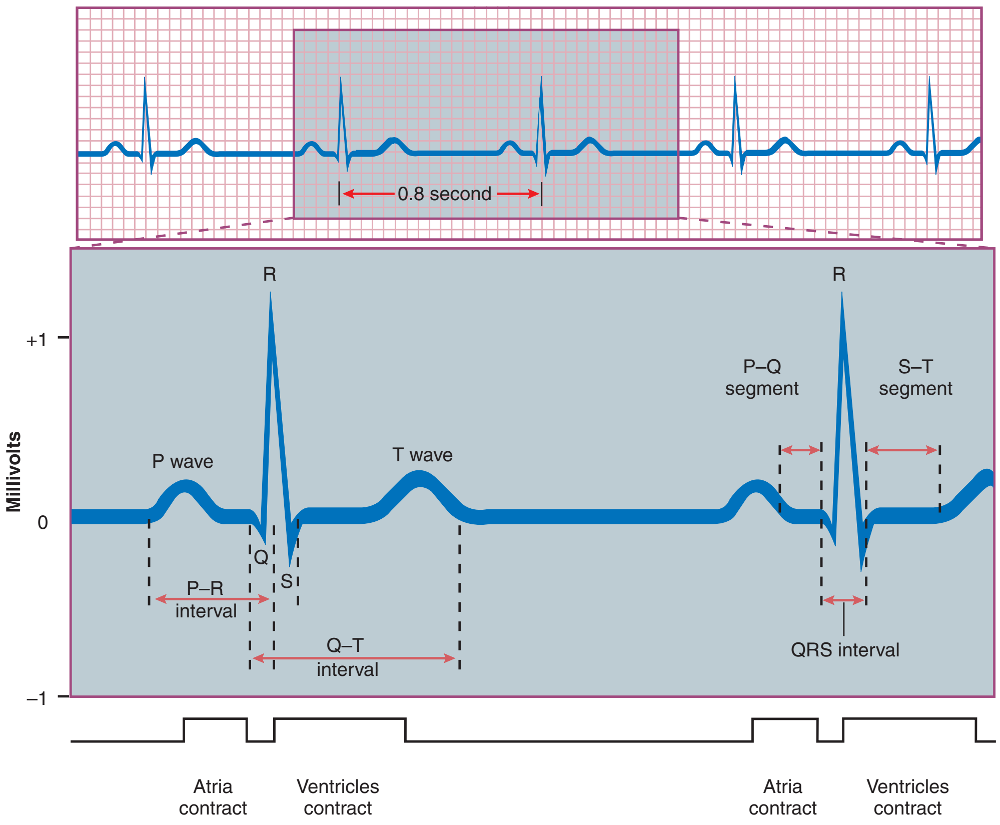
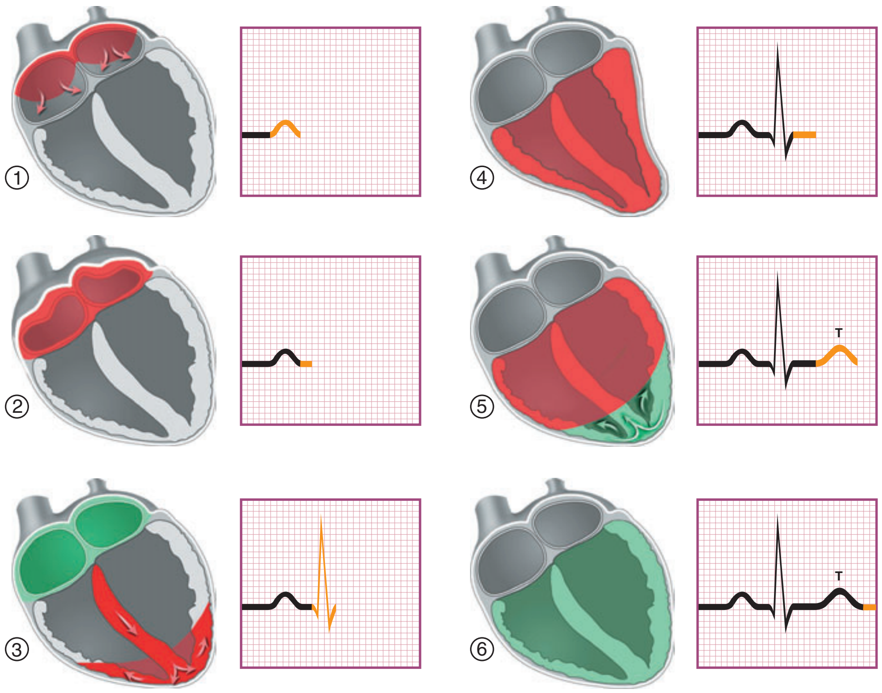


Figure 19.15 **The Normal Electrocardiogram.**



1. Atria begin depolarizing.
2. Atrial depolarization complete.
3. Ventricular depolarization begins at apex and progresses superiorly as atria repolarize.
4. Ventricular depolarization complete.
5. Ventricular repolarization begins at apex and progresses superiorly.
6. Ventricular repolarization complete; heart is ready for the next cycle.

Figure 19.16 **Relationship of the Electrocardiogram (ECG) to Electrical Activity and Contraction of the Myocardium.** Each heart diagram indicates the events occurring at the time of the colored segment of the ECG. *Red* indicates depolarizing or depolarized myocardium, and *green* indicates repolarizing or repolarized myocardium. *Arrows* indicate the direction in which a wave of depolarization or repolarization is traveling.

Table 19.1 Examples of the Diagnostic Interpretation of Abnormal Electrocardiograms

Appearance	Suggested Meaning
Enlarged P wave	Atrial hypertrophy, often a result of mitral valve stenosis
Missing or inverted P wave	SA node damage; AV node has taken over pacemaker role
Two or more P waves per cycle	Extrasystole; heart block
Extra, misshapen, sometimes inverted QRS not preceded by P wave	Premature ventricular contraction (PVC) (extrasystole)
Enlarged Q wave	Myocardial infarction
Enlarged R wave	Ventricular hypertrophy
Abnormal T waves	Flattened in hypoxia; elevated in hyperkalemia (K^+ excess)
Abnormally long P–Q segment	Scarring of atrial myocardium, forcing impulses to bypass normal conduction pathways and take slower alternative routes to AV node
Abnormal S–T segment	Elevated above baseline in myocardial infarction; depressed in myocardial hypoxia

of the heart, and electrolyte and hormone imbalances. A few examples of abnormal ECGs are given in table 19.1 and figure 19.17.

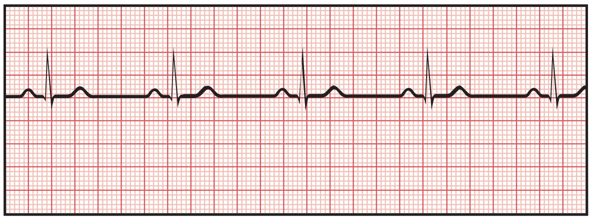
Insight 19.3 Clinical Application

Cardiac Arrhythmias

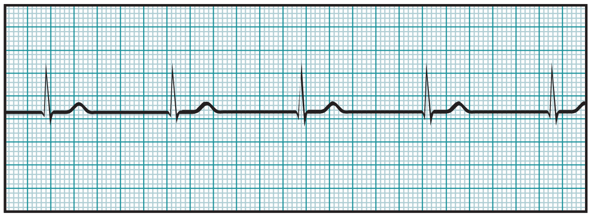
Atrial flutter, premature ventricular contractions, and ventricular fibrillation are common cardiac arrhythmias. *Atrial flutter* occurs when ectopic foci in the atria set off extra contractions and the atria beat 200 to 400 times per minute. *Premature ventricular contractions (PVCs)* occur singly or in bursts as a result of early firing of an ectopic focus (see fig. 19.17*d*). PVCs are often due to irritation of the heart by stimulants, emotional stress, or lack of sleep, but they sometimes indicate more serious pathology.

Ventricular fibrillation (see fig. 19.17*e*) is a serious arrhythmia caused by electrical signals arriving at different regions of the myocardium at widely different times. A fibrillating ventricle exhibits squirming, uncoordinated contractions; it has been described as looking like a "bag of worms." Since a fibrillating heart does not pump blood, there is no coronary perfusion (blood flow) and the myocardium rapidly dies of ischemia. *Cardiac arrest* is the cessation of cardiac output, with the ventricles either motionless or in fibrillation.

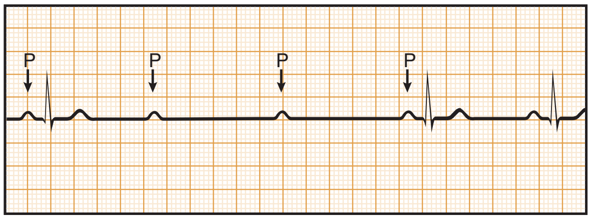
Fibrillation kills quickly if it is not stopped. *Defibrillation* is an emergency procedure in which the heart is given a strong electrical shock



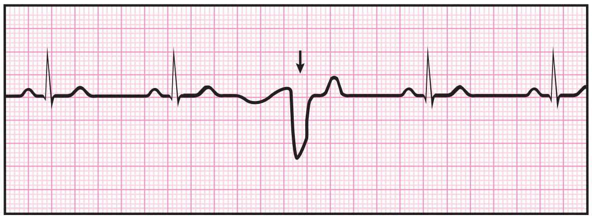
(a) Sinus rhythm (normal)



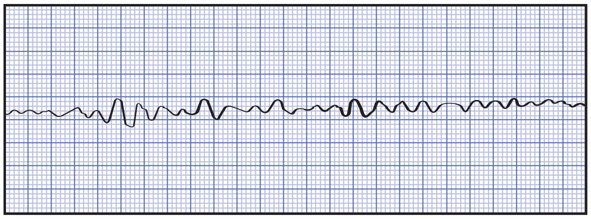
(b) Nodal rhythm – no SA node activity



(c) Heart block



(d) Premature ventricular contraction



(e) Ventricular fibrillation

Figure 19.17 **Normal and Pathological Electrocardiograms.** (*a*) Normal sinus rhythm. (*b*) Nodal rhythm generated by the AV node in the absence of SA node activity; note the lack of P waves. (*c*) Heart block, in which some P waves are not transmitted through the AV node and do not generate QRS complexes. (*d*) Premature ventricular contraction (PVC), or extrasystole; note the inverted QRS complex, misshapen QRS and T, and absence of a P wave preceding this contraction. (*e*) Ventricular fibrillation, with grossly irregular waves of depolarization.

with a pair of electrodes. The purpose is to depolarize the entire myocardium and stop the fibrillation, with the hope that the SA node will resume its sinus rhythm. This does not correct the underlying cause of the arrhythmia, but it may sustain a patient's life long enough to allow for other corrective action.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

9. Define *systole* and *diastole.*
10. How does the pacemaker potential of the SA node differ from the resting membrane potential of a neuron? Why is this important in creating the heart rhythm?
11. How does excitation-contraction coupling in cardiac muscle resemble that of skeletal muscle? How is it different?
12. What produces the plateau in the action potentials of cardiac myocytes? Why is this important to the pumping ability of the heart?
13. Name the waves of the ECG and explain what myocardial events produce each wave.

Blood Flow, Heart Sounds, and the Cardiac Cycle

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- explain how pressure and resistance determine the flow of a fluid;
- explain what causes the sounds of the heartbeat;
- describe in detail one complete cycle of heart contraction and relaxation; and
- relate the events of the cardiac cycle to the volume of blood entering and leaving the heart.

A **cardiac cycle** consists of one complete contraction and relaxation of all four heart chambers. We will examine these events in detail to see how they relate to the entry and expulsion of blood, but first we consider two related issues: (1) some general principles of pressure changes and how they affect the flow of blood, and (2) the heart sounds produced during the cardiac cycle, which we can then relate to the stages of the cycle.

Principles of Pressure and Flow

A fluid is any liquid or gas—a state of matter that can flow in bulk from one place to another. In this and some forthcoming chapters, we are concerned with factors that govern the flow of fluids such as blood, lymph, air, and urine. Some basic principles of fluid movement *(fluid dynamics)* are therefore important to understand at this time. Fluid dynamics are governed by pressure, which can cause a fluid to flow, and resistance, which opposes flow.

Measurement of Pressure

Pressure is often measured by observing how high it can push a column of mercury (Hg) up an evacuated tube called a *manometer.* Mercury is used because it is very dense and enables us to measure pressure with shorter columns than we would need with a less dense liquid such as water. Because pressures are compared to the force generated by a column of mercury, they are expressed in terms of millimeters of mercury (mmHg). Blood pressure is usually measured with a **sphygmomanometer**[26] (SFIG-mo-ma-NOM-eh-tur)—a calibrated tube filled with mercury and attached to an inflatable pressure cuff wrapped around the arm. Blood pressure and the method of measuring it are discussed in greater detail in chapter 20.

Pressure Gradients and Flow

Any change in the volume of a container creates a **pressure gradient,** or difference, between the inside and outside of the container. If there is an opening in the container, fluid flows in or out, "down the gradient," from point A, where pressure is higher, to point B, where pressure is lower. The pressure at point B rises and the pressure at point A falls until the two are equal. At that time, there is no more pressure gradient and flow stops. Flow also stops, of course, if it is obstructed by the closure of a passage between point A and B—a matter of obvious relevance where the heart valves are concerned.

Suppose you pull back the plunger of a syringe, for example. The volume in the syringe barrel increases and its pressure falls (fig. 19.18). Since pressure outside the syringe is greater than the pressure inside, air flows into it until the pressures inside and outside are equal. If you then push the plunger in, pressure inside rises above the pressure outside, and air flows out—again following a gradient from high pressure to low.

The syringe barrel is analogous to a heart chamber such as the left ventricle. When the ventricle is expanding, its internal pressure falls. If the AV valve is open, blood flows into the ventricle from the atrium above. When the ventricle contracts, its internal pressure rises. When the aortic valve opens, blood is ejected from the ventricle into the aorta.

A pressure difference does not guarantee that a fluid will flow. There is always a positive blood pressure in the aorta, and if it is greater than the pressure in the ventricle, it holds the aortic valve closed and prevents the expulsion of blood. When continuing contraction causes ventricular pressure to rise above aortic pressure, however, the valve is forced open and blood is ejected into the aorta.

---

[26] *sphygmo* = pulse + *mano* = rare, sparse, roomy

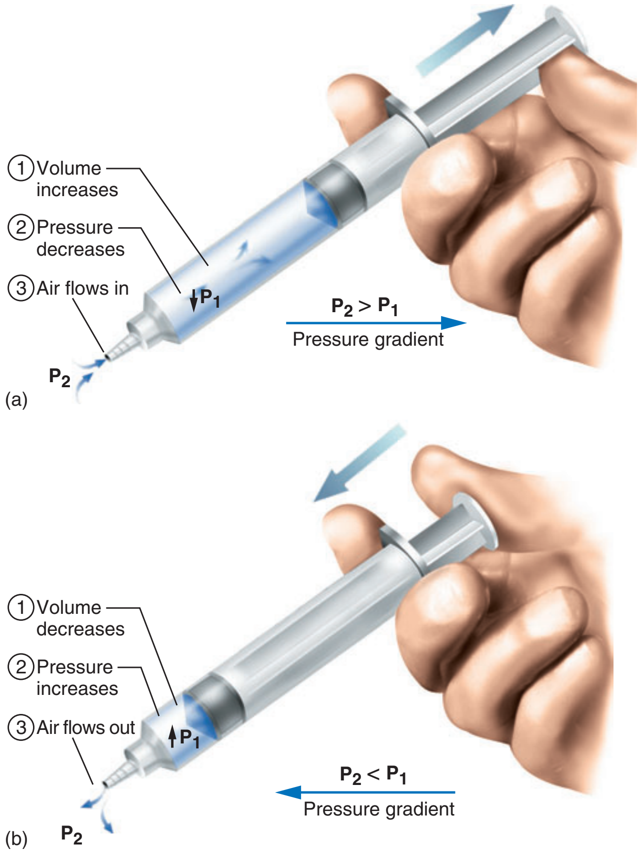


Figure 19.18 Principles of Volume, Pressure, and Flow Illustrated with a Syringe. (*a*) As the plunger is pulled back, the volume of the enclosed space increases, its pressure falls, and pressure inside the syringe (P_1) is lower than the pressure outside (P_2). The pressure gradient causes air to flow inward until the pressures are equal. This is analogous to the filling of an expanding heart chamber. (*b*) As the plunger is depressed, the volume of the enclosed space decreases, P_1 rises above P_2, and air flows out until the pressures are equal. This is analogous to the ejection of blood from a contracting heart chamber. In both cases, fluids flow down their pressure gradients.

Heart Sounds

As we follow events through the cardiac cycle, we will note the occurrence of *heart sounds.* Listening to sounds made by the body is called **auscultation** (AWS-cul-TAY-shun). Each cardiac cycle generates two or three sounds that are audible with a stethoscope. The **first** and **second heart sounds,** symbolized S1 and S2, are often described as a "lubb-dupp"—S1 is louder and longer and S2 a little softer and sharper. In children and adolescents, it is normal to hear a **third heart sound** (S3). This is rarely audible in people older than 30, but when it is, the heartbeat is said to show a *triple rhythm* or *gallop.* If the normal rhythm is roughly simulated by drumming two fingers on a table, a triple rhythm sounds a little like drumming with three fingers. The heart valves themselves operate silently, but S1 and S2 occur in conjunction with the closing of the valves as a result of turbulence in the bloodstream and movements of the heart wall. The cause of each sound is not known with certainty, but the probable factors are discussed in the respective phases of the cardiac cycle.

Phases of the Cardiac Cycle

We now examine the phases of the cardiac cycle, the pressure changes that occur, and how the pressure changes and valves govern the flow of blood. A substantial amount of information about these events is summarized in figure 19.19, which is divided into colored bars numbered to correspond to the phases described here. Closely follow the figure as you study the following text. Where to begin when describing a circular chain of events is somewhat arbitrary. However, in this presentation we begin with the filling of the ventricles. Remember that all these events are completed in less than 1 second.

1. **Ventricular filling.** During diastole, the ventricles expand and their pressure drops below that of the atria. As a result, the AV valves open and blood flows into the ventricles, causing ventricular pressure to rise and atrial pressure to fall. Ventricular filling occurs in three phases: (*a*) The first one-third is *rapid ventricular filling,* when blood enters especially quickly. (*b*) The second one-third, called *diastasis* (di-ASS-tuh-sis), is marked by slower filling. The P wave of the electrocardiogram occurs at the end of diastasis, marking the depolarization of the atria. (*c*) In the last one-third, *atrial systole* completes the filling process. The right atrium contracts slightly before the left because it is the first to receive the signal from the SA node. As the ventricles fill, the flaccid cusps of the AV valves float up toward the closed position. At the end of ventricular filling, each ventricle contains an **end-diastolic volume (EDV)** of about 130 mL of blood. Only 40 mL (31%) of this is contributed by atrial systole.
2. **Isovolumetric contraction.** The atria repolarize, relax, and remain in diastole for the rest of the cardiac cycle. The ventricles depolarize, generate the QRS complex, and begin to contract. Pressure in the ventricles rises sharply and reverses the pressure gradient between atria and ventricles. The AV valves close as ventricular blood surges back against the cusps. Heart sound S1 occurs at the beginning of this phase and is produced mainly by the left ventricle; the right ventricle is thought to make little contribution. Causes of the sound are thought to include the tensing of ventricular tissues, acceleration of the ventricular wall, turbulence in the blood as it surges against the closed AV valves, and impact of the heart against the chest wall.

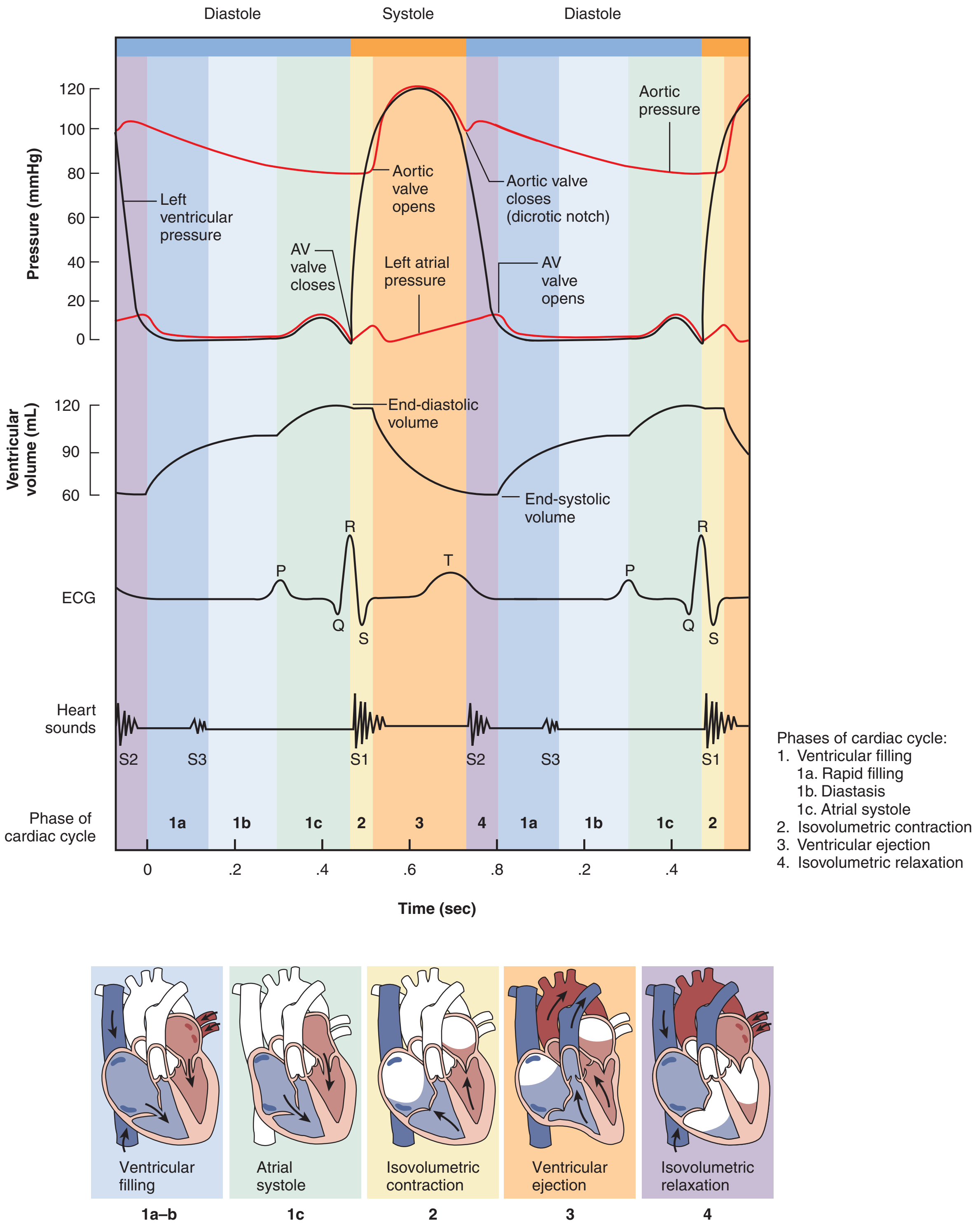


Figure 19.19 **Major Events of the Cardiac Cycle.** Two complete cycles are shown. The phases are numbered across the bottom to correspond to the text description.

Explain why the aortic pressure curve begins to rise abruptly at about 0.5 second.

This phase is called *isovolumetric*[27] because even though the ventricles contract, they do not eject blood yet, and there is no change in their volume. This is because pressures in the aorta (80 mmHg) and pulmonary trunk (10 mmHg) are still greater than the pressures in the respective ventricles and thus oppose the opening of the semilunar valves. The myocytes exert force, but with all four valves closed, the blood cannot go anywhere.

3. **Ventricular ejection.** The ejection of blood begins when ventricular pressure exceeds arterial pressure and forces the semilunar valves open. The pressure peaks at 120 mmHg in the left ventricle and 25 mmHg in the right. Blood spurts out of each ventricle rapidly at first *(rapid ejection)* and then flows out more slowly under less pressure *(reduced ejection).* By analogy, suppose you were to shake up a bottle of soda pop and remove the cap. The soda would spurt out rapidly at high pressure and then more would dribble out at lower pressure, much like the blood leaving the ventricles. Ventricular ejection lasts about 200 to 250 msec, which corresponds to the plateau of the myocardial action potentials but lags somewhat behind it (review the tension curve in fig. 19.14).

   The ventricles do not expel all their blood. In an average resting heart, each ventricle contains an EDV of 130 mL. The amount ejected, about 70 mL, is called the **stroke volume (SV).** The percentage of the EDV ejected, about 54%, is the **ejection fraction.** The blood remaining behind, about 60 mL in this case, is called the **end-systolic volume (ESV).** Note that EDV − SV = ESV. In vigorous exercise, the ejection fraction may be as high as 90%. Ejection fraction is an important measure of cardiac health. A diseased heart may eject much less than 50% of the blood it contains.

4. **Isovolumetric relaxation.** This is early ventricular diastole, when the T wave appears and the ventricles repolarize and begin to expand. There are competing theories as to how they expand. One is that the blood flowing into the ventricles "inflates" them. Another is that contraction of the ventricles deforms the fibrous skeleton, which subsequently springs back like a rubber ball that has been squeezed and released. This elastic recoil and expansion would cause pressure to drop rapidly and suck blood into the ventricles.

   At the beginning of ventricular diastole, blood from the aorta and pulmonary trunk briefly flows backward through the semilunar valves. The backflow, however, quickly fills the cusps and closes them, creating a slight pressure rebound that appears as the *dicrotic notch* of the aortic pressure curve (fig. 19.19). Heart sound S2 occurs as blood rebounds from the closed semilunar valves and the ventricles expand. This phase is called *isovolumetric* because the semilunar valves are closed, the AV valves have not yet opened, and the ventricles are therefore not taking in blood.

When the valves open, ventricular filling (phase 1) begins again. Heart sound S3, if it occurs, is thought to result from the transition from expansion of the empty ventricles to their sudden filling with blood.

In a resting person, atrial systole lasts about 0.1 second; ventricular systole, 0.3 second; and the *quiescent period* (when all four chambers are in diastole), 0.4 second. Total duration of the cardiac cycle is therefore 0.8 second (800 msec) in a heart beating at 75 bpm.

Overview of Volume Changes

An additional perspective on the cardiac cycle can be gained if we review the volume changes that occur. This "balance sheet" is from the standpoint of the left ventricle, but for reasons explained shortly, these numbers also must be true of the right. The volumes vary somewhat from one person to another and depend on a person's state of activity.

End-systolic volume (ESV, left from previous heartbeat)	60 mL
Passively added to the ventricle during atrial diastole	+ 30 mL
Added by atrial systole	+ 40 mL
Total: end-diastolic volume (EDV)	130 mL
Stroke volume (SV) ejected by ventricular systole	−70 mL
Leaves: end-systolic volume (ESV)	60 mL

Notice that the ventricle pumps as much blood as it received during diastole—70 mL in this example.

Both ventricles eject the same amount of blood even though pressure in the right ventricle is only about one-fifth the pressure in the left. Blood pressure in the pulmonary trunk is relatively low, so the right ventricle does not need to generate very much pressure to overcome it. It is essential that both ventricles have the same output. If the right ventricle pumped more blood into the lungs than the left side of the heart could handle on return, blood would accumulate in the lungs and cause pulmonary hypertension and edema (fig. 19.20). This would put a person at risk of suffocation as fluid filled the lungs and interfered with gas exchange. Conversely, if the left ventricle pumped out more blood than the right heart could handle on return, blood would accumulate in the systemic circuit and cause hypertension and edema there. Over the long term, this could lead to aneurysms (weakened, bulging arteries), stroke, kidney failure, or heart failure (see insight 19.4). To maintain homeostasis, the two ventricles must have equal output.

---

[27] *iso* = same

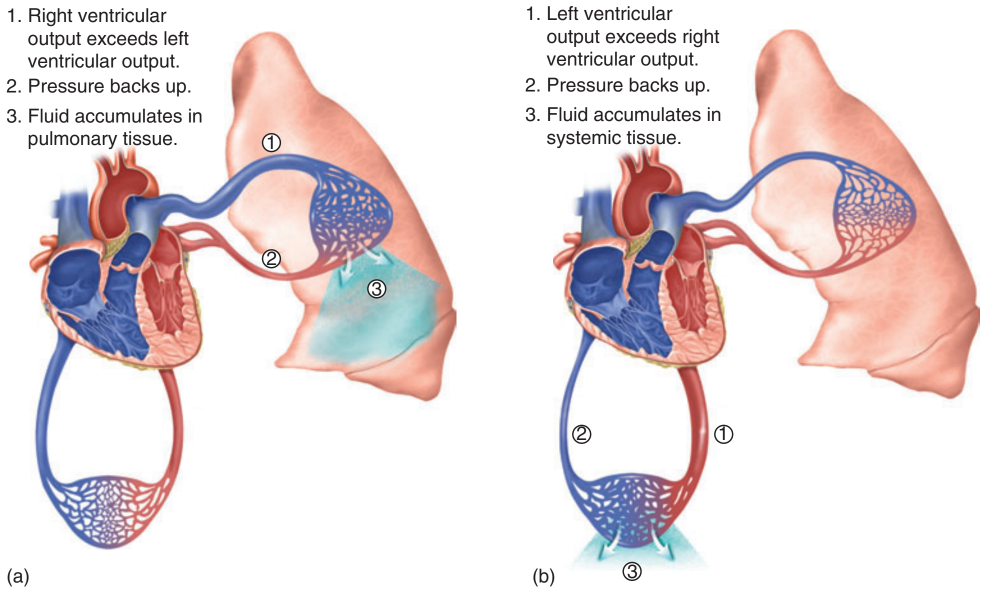

1. Right ventricular output exceeds left ventricular output.
2. Pressure backs up.
3. Fluid accumulates in pulmonary tissue.
①
②
③
(a)
1. Left ventricular output exceeds right ventricular output.
2. Pressure backs up.
3. Fluid accumulates in systemic tissue.
②
①
(b)
③

Figure 19.20 **The Necessity of Balanced Ventricular Output.** (*a*) If the left ventricle pumps less blood than the right, blood pressure backs up into the lungs and causes pulmonary edema. (*b*) If the right ventricle pumps less blood than the left, pressure backs up in the systemic circulation and causes systemic edema. To maintain homeostasis, both ventricles must pump the same average amount of blood.

Insight 19.4 Clinical Application

Congestive Heart Failure

Congestive heart failure (CHF) results from the failure of either ventricle to eject blood effectively. It is usually due to a heart weakened by myocardial infarction, chronic hypertension, valvular insufficiency, or congenital defects in cardiac structure. If the left ventricle fails, blood backs up into the lungs and causes pulmonary edema (fluid in the lungs), shortness of breath, and a sense of suffocation. If the right ventricle fails, blood backs up into the venae cavae and causes systemic, or generalized, edema (formerly called *dropsy*). Systemic edema is marked by enlargement of the liver, ascites (the pooling of fluid in the abdominal cavity), distension of the jugular veins, and swelling of the fingers, ankles, and feet. Failure of one ventricle eventually increases the workload on the other ventricle, which stresses it and leads to its eventual failure as well.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

14. Explain how a pressure gradient across a heart valve determines whether or not a ventricle ejects blood.
15. What factors are thought to cause the first and second heart sounds? When do these sounds occur?
16. What phases of the cardiac cycle are isovolumetric? Explain what this means.

Cardiac Output

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- define *cardiac output* and explain its importance;
- identify the factors that govern cardiac output;
- discuss some of the nervous and chemical factors that alter heart rate, stroke volume, and cardiac output;
- explain how the right and left ventricles achieve balanced output; and
- describe some effects of exercise on cardiac output.

The entire point of all the cardiac physiology we have considered thus far is to eject blood from the heart. The amount ejected by each ventricle in 1 minute is called the **cardiac output (CO).** If HR is heart rate (beats/min) and SV is stroke volume, $\text{CO} = \text{HR} \times \text{SV}$. At typical resting values, $\text{CO} = 75 \text{ beats/min} \times 70 \text{ mL/beat} = 5{,}250 \text{ mL/min}$. Thus, the body's total volume of blood (4–6 L) passes through the heart every minute; or to look at it another way, an RBC leaving the left ventricle will, on average, arrive back at the left ventricle in about 1 minute.

Cardiac output is not constant but varies with the body's state of activity. Vigorous exercise increases CO to as much as 21 L/min in a person in good condition and up to 35 L/min in world-class athletes. The difference between the maximum and resting cardiac output is called **cardiac reserve.** People with severe heart disease may have little or no cardiac reserve and little tolerance of physical exertion.

Given that cardiac output equals HR × SV, you can see that there are only two ways to change it—change the heart rate or change the stroke volume. We will consider factors that influence each of these variables, but bear in mind that heart rate and stroke volume are somewhat interdependent and usually change together.

Heart Rate

Since each beat of the heart produces a surge of pressure in the arteries, the easiest way to measure heart rate is to palpate the **pulse** in a superficial artery and count beats per minute. In newborn infants, the resting heart rate is commonly 120 bpm or greater. It declines steadily with age, averaging 72 to 80 bpm in young adult females and 64 to 72 bpm in young adult males. It rises again in the elderly.

Tachycardia[28] is a persistent, resting adult heart rate above 100 bpm. It can be caused by stress, anxiety, drugs, heart disease, or fever. Heart rate also rises to compensate to some extent for a drop in stroke volume. Thus, the heart races when the body has lost a significant quantity of blood or when there is damage to the myocardium.

Bradycardia[29] is a persistent, resting adult heart rate below 60 bpm. It is common during sleep and in endurance-trained athletes. Endurance training enlarges the heart and increases its stroke volume. Thus, it can maintain the same cardiac output with fewer beats. Hypothermia (low body temperature) also slows the heart rate and may be deliberately induced in preparation for cardiac surgery. Diving mammals such as whales and seals exhibit bradycardia during the dive, as do humans to some extent when the face is immersed in cool water.

Factors that raise the heart rate are called *positive chronotropic*[30] *agents,* and factors that lower it are *negative chronotropic agents.* We next consider some chronotropic effects of the autonomic nervous system, hormones, electrolytes, and blood gases.

Chronotropic Effects of the Autonomic Nervous System

Although the nervous system does not initiate the heartbeat, it does modulate its rhythm and force. The **cardiac center** of the medulla oblongata consists of two neuronal pools, a cardioacceleratory center and cardioinhibitory center. The **cardioacceleratory center** sends signals by way of sympathetic **cardiac accelerator nerves** to the SA node, AV node, and myocardium. These nerves secrete norepinephrine, which binds to β-adrenergic receptors in the heart and increases the heart rate. Cardiac output peaks when the heart rate is 160 to 180 bpm, although the sympathetic nervous system can get the heart rate up to as much as 230 bpm. This limit is set mainly by the refractory period of the SA node; it cannot fire any more frequently. At such a high rate, however, the ventricles beat so rapidly that they have little time to fill between beats; therefore, the stroke volume and cardiac output are less than they are at rest. At a heart rate of 65 bpm, ventricular diastole lasts about 0.62 seconds, but at 200 bpm, it lasts only 0.14 seconds. At that high rate, there is less time available for refilling between beats.

The **cardioinhibitory center** sends signals by way of parasympathetic fibers in the vagus nerves to the SA and AV nodes. The right vagus nerve innervates mainly the SA node, and the left vagus nerve innervates the AV node. The vagus nerves secrete acetylcholine, which binds to muscarinic receptors and opens K^+ channels in the nodal cells. As K^+ leaves the cells, the cells become hyperpolarized and fire less frequently, so the heart slows down.

The vagus nerves maintain a background firing rate called **vagal tone** that inhibits the nodes. If the vagus nerves to the heart are severed, the SA node fires at its own intrinsic frequency of about 100 times per minute. With the vagus nerve intact, however, vagal tone holds the heart rate down to the usual 70 to 80 bpm. Maximum vagal stimulation can reduce the heart rate to as low as 20 bpm.

The cardiac center receives and integrates input from multiple sources. Sensory and emotional stimuli can act on the cardiac center by way of the cerebral cortex, limbic system, and hypothalamus; therefore, heart rate can climb even as you anticipate taking the first plunge on a roller coaster, and it is influenced by emotions such as love and anger. The cardiac center also receives input from receptors in the muscles, joints, arteries, and brainstem:

- **Proprioceptors** in the muscles and joints quickly inform the cardiac center of changes in physical activity. Thus, the heart can increase its output even before the metabolic demands of the muscles rise.
- **Baroreceptors (pressoreceptors)** are pressure sensors in the aorta and internal carotid arteries (see fig. 15.1, p. 565). They send a continual stream of signals to the cardiac center. If blood pressure drops, the signaling rate drops and the cardiac center increases the heart rate and raises the blood pressure. If blood pressure rises too high, the signaling rate from the baroreceptors rises and the cardiac center reduces the heart rate.
- **Chemoreceptors** sensitive to blood pH, carbon dioxide, and oxygen are found in the aortic arch, carotid arteries, and medulla oblongata. They are more important in respiratory control than in cardiovascular

---

[28] *tachy* = speed, fast + *card* = heart + *ia* = condition
[29] *brady* = slow
[30] *chrono* = time + *trop* = turn, change, influence

> control but do influence the heart rate. If circulation to the tissues is too slow to remove CO_2 as fast as the tissues produce it, then CO_2 accumulates in the blood and cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) and produces a state of *hypercapnia* (CO_2 excess). Furthermore, CO_2 generates hydrogen ions by reacting with water: $CO_2 + H_2O \rightarrow HCO_3^- + H^+$. The hydrogen ions lower the pH of the blood and CSF and may create a state of acidosis ($pH < 7.35$). Hypercapnia and acidosis stimulate the cardiac center to increase the heart rate, thus improving perfusion of the tissues and restoring homeostasis. The chemoreceptors also respond to extreme *hypoxemia* (oxygen deficiency), such as in suffocation, but the effect is usually to slow down the heart, perhaps so the heart does not compete with the brain for the limited oxygen supply.

Such responses to fluctuations in blood chemistry and blood pressure, called **chemoreflexes** and **baroreflexes,** are good examples of negative feedback loops. They are discussed more fully in chapter 20.

Chronotropic Effects of Chemicals

Epinephrine and norepinephrine are potent cardiac stimulants. They are secreted by the cardiac accelerator nerves and the adrenal medulla in response to arousal, stress, and exercise. These catecholamines act through cAMP. Caffeine and the related stimulants in coffee, tea, and chocolate produce positive chronotropic effects by inhibiting cAMP breakdown. Nicotine also accelerates the heart by stimulating catecholamine secretion. Thyroid hormone increases the number of adrenergic receptors in the cardiac muscle, making the heart more responsive to sympathetic stimulation and thus increasing the heart rate. Hyperthyroidism causes tachycardia, which in the long run can weaken the heart and cause heart failure.

The ion with the greatest chronotropic effect is potassium (K^+). *Hyperkalemia,*[31] a K^+ excess, is especially dangerous. A rapid rise in K^+ concentration makes the myocardium unusually excitable and subject to systolic arrest (in which the ventricles contract and fail to relax and refill). A slow rise in K^+ makes it less excitable than normal; the heartbeat becomes slow and irregular, and may arrest in diastole. In *hypokalemia,* a K^+ deficiency, myocytes become hyperpolarized—their membrane voltage is lower than normal and it is more difficult to stimulate the cells to threshold. These potassium imbalances are very dangerous and require emergency medical treatment. Chapter 24 further explains the causes and effects of these electrolyte imbalances.

Hypercalcemia (a calcium excess) reduces the heart rate and hypocalcemia (a calcium deficiency) increases it. These calcium imbalances are relatively rare, however, and when they do occur, their primary effect is on contraction strength.

Stroke Volume

Stroke volume is governed by three factors called *preload, contractility,* and *afterload.* Increased preload or contractility increases stroke volume, while increased afterload opposes the emptying of the ventricles and reduces stroke volume.

Preload

The amount of tension in the ventricular myocardium immediately before it begins to contract is called the **preload.** To understand how it influences stroke volume, imagine yourself engaged in heavy exercise. As active muscles massage your veins, they drive more blood back to your heart, increasing *venous return.* As more blood enters your heart, it stretches the myocardium. Due to the length-tension relationship of striated muscle explained in chapter 11, moderate stretch enables the myocytes to generate more tension when they begin to contract—that is, it increases the preload. If the ventricles contract more forcefully, they expel more blood, thus adjusting your cardiac output to the increase in venous return.

This theory is summarized by the **Frank–Starling law of the heart.**[32] In a concise, symbolic way, it states that $SV \propto EDV$. In other words, the ventricles tend to eject as much blood as they receive. Within limits, the more they are stretched, the harder they contract when stimulated.

While relaxed skeletal muscle is normally at an optimum length for the most forceful contraction, relaxed cardiac muscle is at less than optimum length. Additional stretch therefore produces a significant increase in contraction force on the next beat. This helps balance the output of the two ventricles. For example, if the right ventricle begins to pump an increased amount of blood, this soon arrives at the left ventricle, stretches it more than before, and causes it to increase its stroke volume to match that of the right.

Contractility

The **contractility** of the myocardium refers to its contraction force *for a given preload.* It does not describe an increase in tension resulting from increased stretch but rather an increase caused by factors that make the myocytes more responsive to stimulation. Factors that increase contractility are called *positive inotropic*[33] *agents,* and those that reduce it are *negative inotropic agents.*

---

[31] *kal* = potassium (Latin, *kalium*)

[32] Otto Frank (1865–1944), German physiologist; Ernest Henry Starling (1866–1927), English physiologist

Remember that Ca^{2+} is essential to the excitation-contraction coupling of muscle and prolongs the plateau of the myocardial action potential. Calcium therefore has a positive inotropic effect, as do agents that increase its availability to the myofilaments. Epinephrine and norepinephrine act through cAMP to open Ca^{2+} channels. By increasing the supply of Ca^{2+} to the myofilaments, they have a positive inotropic effect. Glucagon acts by stimulating the formation of cAMP; a solution of glucagon and calcium chloride is sometimes used for the emergency treatment of heart attacks. Digitalis, a cardiac stimulant from the foxglove plant, is used to treat congestive heart failure. It acts indirectly by inhibiting the Na^+-K^+ pumps of the myocardium, raising intracellular Na^+ concentration, and increasing the amount of Ca^{2+} in the sarcoplasm. Hypercalcemia causes more than the usual amount of Ca^{2+} to diffuse into the sarcoplasm and thus produces strong, prolonged contractions. In extreme cases, it can cause cardiac arrest in systole. Hypocalcemia can cause a weak, irregular heartbeat and potentially cause diastolic arrest. However, as explained in chapter 8, severe hypocalcemia is likely to kill through skeletal muscle paralysis and suffocation before the cardiac effects are felt.

The vagus nerves have a negative inotropic effect on the atria, but they provide so little innervation to the ventricular myocytes that they have little effect on the ventricles. Hyperkalemia has a negative inotropic effect because it reduces the strength of myocardial action potentials and thus reduces the release of Ca^{2+} into the sarcoplasm. The heart becomes dilated and flaccid. Hypokalemia, however, has little effect on contractility. There are other chronotropic and inotropic agents too numerous to mention here. The ones we have discussed are summarized in table 19.2.

Table 19.2 Some Chronotropic and Inotropic Agents

Chronotropic Agents	
Positive	**Negative**
Sympathetic stimulation	Parasympathetic stimulation
Epinephrine and norepinephrine	Acetylcholine
Thyroid hormone	Hyperkalemia
Hypocalcemia	Hypokalemia
Hypercapnia and acidosis	Hypercalcemia
Digitalis	Hypoxia

Inotropic Agents	
Positive	**Negative**
Sympathetic stimulation	(Parasympathetic effect negligible)
Epinephrine and norepinephrine	Hyperkalemia
Hypercalcemia	Hypocalcemia
Digitalis	Myocardial hypoxia
Glucagon	Myocardial hypercapnia

Think About It

Suppose a person has a heart rate of 70 bpm and a stroke volume of 70 mL. A negative inotropic agent then reduces the stroke volume to 50 mL. What would the new heart rate have to be to maintain the same cardiac output?

Afterload

The blood pressure in the arteries just outside the semilunar valves, called the **afterload,** opposes the opening of these valves. An increased afterload therefore reduces stroke volume. Anything that impedes arterial circulation can increase the afterload. For example, in some lung diseases, scar tissue forms in the lungs and restricts pulmonary circulation. This increases the afterload in the pulmonary trunk and opposes emptying of the right ventricle. As the ventricle works harder to overcome this resistance, it gets larger like any other muscle. Stress and hypertrophy of a ventricle can eventually cause it to weaken and fail. Right ventricular failure due to obstructed pulmonary circulation is called *cor pulmonale*[34] (CORE PUL-mo-NAY-lee). It is a common complication of emphysema, chronic bronchitis, and black lung disease (see chapter 22).

Exercise and Cardiac Output

It is no secret that exercise makes the heart work harder, and it should come as no surprise that this increases cardiac output. The main reason the heart rate increases at the beginning of exercise is that proprioceptors in the muscles and joints transmit signals to the cardiac center signifying that the muscles are active and will quickly need an increased blood flow. As the exercise progresses, muscular activity increases venous return. This increases the preload on the right ventricle and is soon reflected in the left ventricle as more blood flows through the pulmonary circuit and reaches the left heart. As the heart rate

---

[33] *ino* = fiber

[34] *cor* = heart + *pulmo* = lung

Table 19.3 Some Disorders of the Heart

Acute pericarditis	Inflammation of the pericardium, sometimes due to infection, radiation therapy, or connective tissue disease, causing pain and friction rub
Cardiac tamponade	Compression of the heart by an abnormal accumulation of fluid in the pericardial cavity, interfering with ventricular filling; may result from pericarditis
Cardiomyopathy	Any disease of the myocardium not resulting from coronary artery disease, valvular dysfunction, or other cardiovascular disorders; can cause dilation and failure of the heart, thinning of the heart wall, or thickening of the interventricular septum
Infective endocarditis	Inflammation of the endocardium, usually due to infection, especially streptococcus and staphylococcus bacterial infections
Myocardial ischemia	Inadequate blood flow to the myocardium, usually because of coronary atherosclerosis; can lead to myocardial infarction
Pericardial effusion	Seepage of fluid from the pericardium into the pericardial cavity, often resulting from pericarditis and sometimes causing cardiac tamponade
Septal defects	Abnormal openings in the interatrial or interventricular septum, resulting in blood from the right atrium flowing directly into the left atrium, or blood from the left ventricle returning to the right ventricle; results in pulmonary hypertension, difficulty breathing, and fatigue. Often fatal in childhood if uncorrected

Disorders described elswhere

Angina pectoris 725
Atrial flutter 732
Bradycardia 738
Bundle branch block 728
Cardiac arrest 732
Congestive heart failure 737
Cor pulmonale 740
Coronary artery disease 741–743
Familial hypercholesterolemia 742
Friction rub 718
Heart murmur 723
Mitral valve prolapse 723
Myocardial infarction 725
Premature ventricular contraction 732
Tachycardia 738
Total heart block 728
Valvular stenosis 723
Ventricular fibrillation 732

and stroke volume rise, cardiac output rises, which compensates for the increased venous return.

A sustained program of exercise causes hypertrophy of the ventricles, which increases their stroke volume. As explained earlier, this allows the heart to beat more slowly and still maintain a normal resting cardiac output. Endurance athletes commonly have resting heart rates as low as 40 to 60 bpm, but because of the higher stroke volume, their resting cardiac output is about the same as that of an untrained person. They have greater cardiac reserve, so they can tolerate more exertion than a sedentary person can.

The effects of aging on the heart are discussed on p. 1111, and some common heart diseases are listed in table 19.3. Disorders of the blood and blood vessels are described in chapters 18 and 20.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

17. Define *cardiac output* in words and with a simple formula.
18. Describe the cardiac center and innervation of the heart.
19. Explain what is meant by positive and negative chronotropic and inotropic agents. Give two examples of each.
20. How do preload, contractility, and afterload influence stroke volume and cardiac output?
21. Explain the principle behind the Frank–Starling law of the heart. How does this mechanism normally prevent pulmonary or systemic congestion?

Insight 19.5 Clinical Application

Coronary Atherosclerosis

Atherosclerosis[35] is a disorder in which fatty deposits form in an artery, obstruct the lumen, and cause deterioration of the arterial wall. It is especially critical when it occurs in the coronary arteries and threatens to cut off the blood supply to the myocardium. Atherosclerosis is also a leading contributor to stroke and kidney failure.

Cause and Pathogenesis

According to one theory, the stage is set for atherosclerosis when the endothelium of a blood vessel is damaged by hypertension, viral infection, diabetes mellitus, or other causes. Monocytes adhere to the damaged endothelium, penetrate beneath it, and transform into macrophages. Macrophages and smooth muscle cells absorb cholesterol and neutral fats from the blood and acquire a frothy appearance; they are then called *foam cells* and are visible as a *fatty streak* on the vessel wall.

Platelets also adhere to areas of endothelial damage, degranulate, and release platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF); some PDGF also comes from macrophages and endothelial cells. PDGF stimulates mitosis of smooth muscle, leading eventually to a mass of lipid, smooth muscle, and macrophages called an *atheroma (atherosclerotic plaque).* The muscular and elastic tissue of the artery become increasingly replaced with scar tissue. When atheromas become calcified, they are called *complicated plaques.* Such plaques cause a state of arterial rigidity called *arteriosclerosis.*

Atherosclerosis is caused primarily by a combination of *low-density lipoproteins (LDLs)* in the blood plasma and defective LDL receptors in the arteries. LDLs are small protein-coated droplets of cholesterol, neutral fat, free fatty acids, and phospholipids (see chapter 26). Most cells have LDL receptors, take up these droplets from the blood by receptor-mediated endocytosis, and stop when they have enough cholesterol. In atherosclerosis, arterial cells have dysfunctional receptors that continue taking up plasma lipids and cause the cells to accumulate excess cholesterol.

As an atheroma grows, more and more of the arterial lumen becomes obstructed (fig. 19.21). Angina pectoris and other symptoms begin to occur when the lumen of a major coronary artery is reduced by at least 75%. When platelets adhere to lesions of the arterial wall, they release clotting factors, so an atheroma can become a focus for thrombosis. A clot can block what remains of the lumen, or it can break free and become an embolus that travels downstream until it lodges in a smaller artery. Part of an atheroma itself can also break loose and travel as a *fatty embolus.*

Atheromas also contribute to coronary artery spasms. Healthy endothelial cells secrete nitric oxide (NO), which causes the arteries to dilate. Vessels damaged by atherosclerosis release less NO, and the coronary arteries exhibit spasms. With much of the lumen already obstructed by the atheroma and perhaps a thrombus, an arterial spasm can temporarily shut off the remaining flow and precipitate an attack of angina.

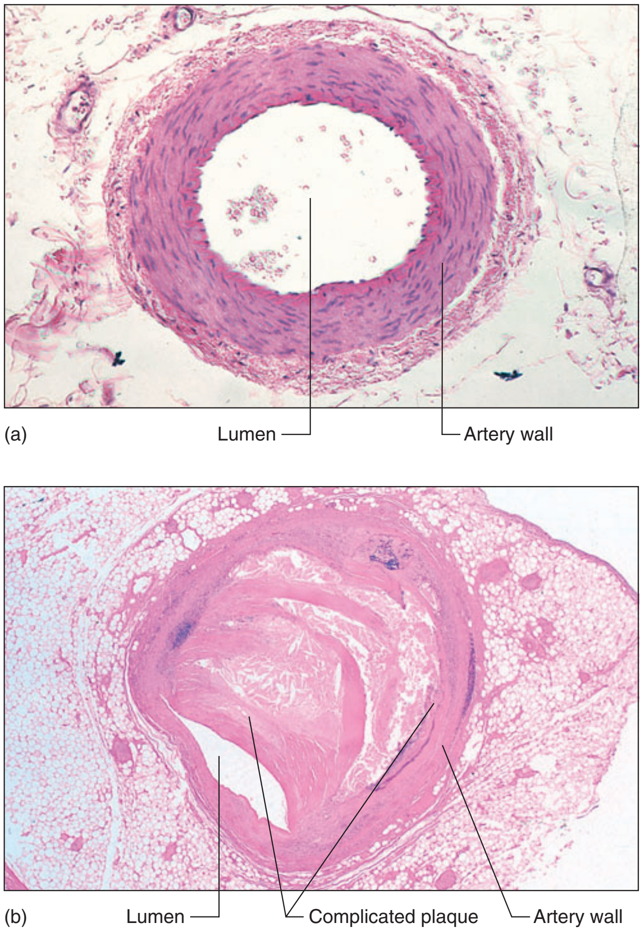


Figure 19.21 **Atherosclerosis.** (*a*) Cross section of a healthy artery; (*b*) cross section of an artery with advanced atherosclerosis. The lumen is reduced to a small space that can easily be blocked by thrombosis, embolism, or vasoconstriction. Most of the original lumen is obstructed by a complicated plaque composed of calcified scar tissue.

Risk and Prevention

Risk factors are personal characteristics or elements of the environment that predispose an individual to a particular disease. Some risk factors for atherosclerosis cannot be avoided—for example, aging, heredity, and being male. One form of hereditary atherosclerosis is *familial hypercholesterolemia* ("elevated blood cholesterol levels running in the family"). Most people have two recessive alleles *(hh)* of the gene for LDL receptors, which leads to the synthesis of normal receptors. One person in 500 is heterozygous *(Hh)* and makes only half the normal number of LDL receptors; one in a million is homozygous dominant *(HH)* and makes no LDL receptors. When the body's cells have few or no LDL receptors, they fail to absorb LDLs from the blood. LDL levels therefore remain high—six times normal in *HH* individuals. Foam cells, however, absorb LDLs even without these receptors, and with excess LDL in the blood plasma, atheromas grow rapidly. Heterozygous individuals usually suffer heart attacks by age 35, and homozygous dominant individuals usually have heart attacks in childhood, sometimes before age 2.

Most risk factors for atherosclerosis, however, are preventable. A sedentary lifestyle promotes LDL formation, whereas exercise promotes the formation of *high-density lipoproteins (HDLs),* which not only don't contribute to coronary disease but also help to lower blood cholesterol. Obesity is a risk factor that can be reduced by exercise. Aggressiveness, anxiety, and emotional stress promote hypertension and atherosclerosis. Smoking is another avoidable risk factor. The incidence of coronary heart disease is proportional to the number of cigarettes smoked per day and the number of years a person has been a smoker. This is reversible; people who quit smoking drop to normal risk levels within 5 years.

Diet, of course, is an overwhelmingly important factor. Eating animal fat reduces the number of LDL receptors and raises plasma LDL levels. Foods high in soluble fiber (such as beans, apples, and oat bran) lower blood cholesterol by an interesting mechanism. The liver normally converts cholesterol to bile acids, which it secretes into the small intestine to aid fat digestion. The bile acids are reabsorbed farther down the intestine and recycled to the liver for reuse. Soluble fiber, however, binds bile acids and carries them out in the feces. To replace them, the liver must synthesize more, thus using more cholesterol and lowering the blood cholesterol.

In the 1970s, scientists found that the Eskimos of Greenland had unusually low rates of coronary atherosclerosis despite the fact that their diet consisted entirely of meat—averaging a pound of whale meat and a pound of fish per day. Japanese and other groups with large amounts of fish in their diets also show low blood cholesterol levels. It is suspected that this is due to *omega-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs)* in fish oil. PUFAs increase the fluidity of plasma membranes and enable cells to remove more lipid from the blood. However, a daily capsule of fish oil does not hold much promise for controlling cholesterol. Doses of PUFAs high enough to reduce blood cholesterol would be prohibitively expensive and have undesirable side effects, including suppression of the immune system. Studies on the effectiveness of PUFAs remain inconclusive.

Treatment Options

The first pioneering approach to treating atherosclerosis, and still a common standby, is *coronary artery bypass surgery.* Sections of the great saphenous vein of the leg or small arteries from the thoracic cavity are used to construct a detour from the aorta to a point on a coronary artery beyond the obstruction.

Balloon angioplasty[36] is a technique in which a thin, flexible catheter is threaded into a coronary artery to the point of obstruction, and then a balloon at its tip is inflated to press the atheroma against the arterial wall, opening up the lumen. Its usefulness is limited to well-localized atheromas. In another method, *laser angioplasty,* an illuminated catheter enables the surgeon to see inside a diseased artery on a monitor and to use a laser to vaporize atheromas and reopen the artery. These methods are cheaper and less risky than bypass surgery. However, there is some concern that these procedures may cause new injuries to the arterial walls, which may be foci for the development of new atheromas. Also, angioplasty is often followed by *restenosis*—atheromas grow back and reobstruct the artery months later. Insertion of a tube called a *stent* into the artery can prevent restenosis, ensuring that the vessel remains open.

Clearly, prevention is the least expensive, least risky, and most effective approach to the threat of coronary artery disease.

---

[35] *athero* = fat, fatty + *sclerosis* = hardening
[36] *angio* = vessel + *plasty* = surgical repair

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

Gross Anatomy of the Heart (p. 716)

1. The *cardiovascular system* consists of the heart and blood vessels; the *circulatory system* consists of these and the blood.
2. The cardiovascular system has two divisions. The *pulmonary circuit* serves the lungs only and the *systemic circuit* serves the entire body (including the lungs).
3. The heart lies in the mediastinum with about two-thirds of it to the left of the median plane.
4. The heart is enclosed in a two-layered fibrous sac, the *pericardium.* The *visceral pericardium* forms the surface layer of the heart (= epicardium) and the *parietal pericardium* forms a loose-fitting *pericardial sac* around the heart. The space between these two layers is lubricated by *pericardial fluid.*
5. The heart wall is composed of epicardium, myocardium, and endocardium.
6. The heart has four chambers—two blood-receiving *atria* and two blood-ejecting *ventricles.* Externally, these are marked by the *atrioventricular sulcus* and the *anterior* and *posterior interventricular sulci,* which harbor the major coronary blood vessels. Internally, they are separated by walls called the *interatrial septum* and *interventricular septum.*
7. *Atrioventricular (AV) valves* regulate blood flow from the atria to the ventricles. The right AV valve is the *tricuspid* valve and the left AV valve is the *bicuspid* valve.
8. *Semilunar valves* regulate the flow of blood from the ventricles into the major arteries—the *pulmonary valve* at the origin of the pulmonary trunk and *aortic valve* at the origin of the aorta.
9. Valves open when pressure on the upstream side exceeds pressure on the downstream side. When closed, they prevent blood from flowing backward through an opening.
10. Systemic blood enters the heart at its right atrium, flows through the right AV valve into the right ventricle, and is pumped from there through the pulmonary valve into the pulmonary circuit. It returns from the lungs to the left atrium, passes through the left AV valve into the left ventricle, and this ventricle pumps it through the aortic valve into the systemic circuit.
11. The cardiac tissue is supplied by a system of *coronary* blood vessels. Blockage of any major coronary artery can cause *myocardial infarction,* death of cardiac muscle due to lack of oxygen.

Cardiac Muscle and the Cardiac Conduction System (p. 726)

1. Cardiac myocytes are short, thick, branched, striated cells. They have a less extensive sarcoplasmic reticulum (SR) than skeletal muscle, but larger T tubules, and obtain Ca^{2+} from the ECF as well as the SR.
2. The myocytes meet end-to-end at *intercalated discs,* which contain mechanical junctions to hold the contracting cells together and electrical gap junctions to enable myocytes to stimulate each other.
3. Cardiac muscle uses almost entirely aerobic respiration, and has large, abundant mitochondria and abundant glycogen and myoglobin to meet this demand. It employs fatty acids, glucose, and other organic fuels.
4. Cardiac myocytes are *autorhythmic,* contracting periodically even without nervous stimulation. Some heart cells have lost the ability to contract and constitute the *cardiac conduction system,* specialized to generate and conduct action potentials.
5. Electrical signals originate in the *SA node* (the usual pacemaker of the cardiac rhythm) and travel via the *AV node, AV bundle, bundle branches,* and *Purkinje fibers* to reach the ventricular myocytes.

Electrical and Contractile Activity of the Heart (p. 728)

1. *Systole* is the contraction of any heart chamber, and *diastole* is relaxation.
2. A cardiac rhythm activated by the SA node is the *sinus rhythm.* Irritation of the heart or damage to the SA node can cause other areas to take over control. When the AV node takes over, the heart beats with a *nodal rhythm* that is slower than the sinus

rhythm. Any abnormal cardiac rhythm is called *arrhythmia.*

3. Cells of the SA node exhibit a *pacemaker potential* in which the membrane voltage starts at −60 mV and drifts spontaneously toward a threshold of −40 mV. At this point, *fast calcium channels* open and the inflow of Ca^{2+} sets off an action potential. In a resting sinus rhythm of 70 to 80 beats/min, this process repeats itself about every 0.8 sec.
4. Firing of the SA node excites the atria and causes atrial systole. The spreading wave of excitation slows down at the AV node, then quickly spreads to the atrial myocytes and triggers ventricular systole.
5. Papillary muscles contract and pull on the chordae tendineae just before the rest of the ventricle contracts; the chordae prevent the AV valves from prolapsing when pressure rises in the ventricles.
6. Ordinary cardiac myocytes have a resting potential of −90 mV. Upon excitation, Na^+ enters the cells and sets off an action potential that peaks around +30 mV. Ca^{2+} channels then open, admitting Ca^{2+} into the cytosol from the ECF and SR and triggering muscle contraction.
7. The action potential of cardiac myocytes has a sustained plateau of 200 to 250 msec, causing prolonged contraction rather than a muscle twitch. The plateau ensures that contraction is sustained long enough to expel blood from the ventricles.
8. At the end of the plateau, Ca^{2+} channels close and K^+ channels open. The membrane potential drops rapidly as K^+ leaves the cell. Contraction is followed by a long refractory period that prevents wave summation and tetanus in the heart.
9. The electrical events of the myocardium as a whole generate the electrocardiogram (ECG). The P wave of the ECG indicates atrial depolarization; atrial systole occurs during the P-Q segment. The QRS complex indicates ventricular depolarization, but atrial repolarization occurs at the same time. Ventricular systole begins in the S-T segment. The T wave indicates ventricular repolarization and is followed by ventricular diastole.

Blood Flow, Heart Sounds, and the Cardiac Cycle (p. 733)

1. Blood and other fluids flow down a *pressure gradient* from a point of high pressure to a point of lower pressure.
2. When the volume of a ventricle increases, its internal pressure drops, and when the AV valve opens, blood flows into the ventricle. When the ventricle contracts, its internal pressure rises, and when the semilunar valve opens, blood is ejected into an artery.
3. Adults normally have two heart sounds, S1 and S2. Listening to these sounds is called *auscultation.*
4. A *cardiac cycle* is one complete cycle of contraction and relaxation. It can be divided into four phases (fig. 19.19).
5. In phase 1, ventricular filling, the ventricles expand, the AV valves open, and blood flows into the ventricles, rapidly at first and then more slowly. The P wave occurs, and the atria contract and contribute the last one-third of the blood to the ventricles. At the end of phase 1, each ventricle contains an *end-diastolic volume* (EDV) of about 130 mL.
6. In phase 2, isovolumetric contraction, the QRS wave occurs, the atria repolarize and relax, and the ventricles begin contracting. The AV valves close and heart sound S1 occurs. The semilunar valves remain closed and no blood is expelled yet.
7. In phase 3, ventricular ejection, the semilunar valves open and blood is ejected, rapidly at first and then more slowly. Each ventricle ejects a *stroke volume* of about 70 mL, which is an *ejection fraction* of about 54% of the EDV. The blood remaining behind, about 60 mL, is the *end-systolic volume* (ESV).
8. In phase 4, isovolumetric relaxation, the T wave occurs and the ventricles repolarize and relax. The semilunar valves close and heart sound S2 occurs. The AV valves remain closed and no blood enters the ventricles until the next phase 1.
9. Each ventricle ejects the same amount of blood. If they ejected unequal amounts, fluid would accumulate in the tissues of either the pulmonary or systemic circuit.

Cardiac Output (p. 737)

1. *Cardiac output (CO)* is the volume of blood pumped by each ventricle in 1 minute. It is a product of heart rate × stroke volume, and averages about 5.25 L/min.
2. Heart rate is typically about 70 to 80 beats/min (bpm) in young adults, but higher in children and the elderly. A persistent high resting heart rate is *tachycardia* and a persistent low resting rate is *bradycardia.*
3. Heart rate is raised or lowered, respectively, by *positive* and *negative chronotropic agents.*
4. The *cardioacceleratory center* raises the heart rate through sympathetic nerves. The *cardioinhibitory center* reduces heart rate through parasympathetic fibers in the vagus nerve. Both centers constitute the *cardiac center* of the medulla oblongata.
5. The cardiac center receives input from proprioceptors, baroreceptors, and chemoreceptors. It adjusts the heart rate to maintain blood pressure, pH, and blood O_2 and CO_2 levels within homeostatic limits.
6. Stroke volume is determined by the relationship of preload, contractility, and afterload. *Preload* is the amount of tension in the myocardium just before contraction; *contractility* is the amount of force that the contracting myocardium generates for a given preload; and *afterload* is resistance from blood pressure in the major arteries attached to the heart.
7. Factors that increase or decrease contractility are called *positive* and *negative inotropic agents,* respectively.
8. The autonomic nervous system, hormones, electrolytes, drugs, and O_2 and CO_2 levels have varied chronotropic and inotropic effects summarized in table 19.2.
9. Exercise influences cardiac output through its effects on the proprioceptors and on the venous return of blood to the heart. Habitual exercise increases ventricular size and stroke volume, and reduces resting heart rate.

Selected Vocabulary

cardiology	716
pulmonary circuit	716
systemic circuit	716
pericardium	718
myocardium	720
atrium	720
ventricle	720
atrioventricular valve	722
pulmonary valve	722
aortic valve	722
myocardial infarction	724
sinoatrial node	727
atrioventricular node	727
atrioventricular bundle	727
systole	728
diastole	728
sinus rhythm	728
electrocardiogram	730
sphygmomanometer	733
stroke volume	736
cardiac output	737
baroreceptor	738
chemoreceptor	738

Testing Your Recall

1. The cardiac conduction system includes all of the following *except*
   a. the SA node.
   b. the AV node.
   c. the bundle branches.
   d. the chordae tendineae.
   e. the Purkinje fibers.

2. To get from the right atrium to the right ventricle, blood flows through
   a. the pulmonary valve.
   b. the tricuspid valve.
   c. the bicuspid valve.
   d. the aortic valve.
   e. the mitral valve.

3. Assume that one ventricle of a child's heart has an EDV of 90 mL, an ESV of 60 mL, and a cardiac output of 2.55 L/min. What are the child's stroke volume (SV), ejection fraction (EF), and heart rate (HR)?
   a. SV = 60 mL; EF = 33%; HR = 85 bpm
   b. SV = 30 mL; EF = 60%; HR = 75 bpm
   c. SV = 150 mL; EF = 67%; HR = 42 bpm
   d. SV = 30 mL; EF = 33%; HR = 85 bpm
   e. There is not enough information to calculate these.

4. A heart rate of 45 bpm and an absence of P waves suggest
   a. damage to the SA node.
   b. ventricular fibrillation.
   c. cor pulmonale.
   d. extrasystole.
   e. heart block.

5. The fast-rising phase of the action potential of the SA node results from
   a. the opening of slow Ca^{2+} channels.
   b. the closing of K^+ channels.
   c. K^+ outflow.
   d. K^+ inflow.
   e. Ca^{2+} inflow.

6. Cardiac muscle does not exhibit tetanus because it has
   a. fast Ca^{2+} channels.
   b. scanty sarcoplasmic reticulum.
   c. a long absolute refractory period.
   d. electrical synapses.
   e. exclusively aerobic respiration.

7. The atria contract during
   a. the first heart sound.
   b. the second heart sound.
   c. the QRS complex.
   d. the P–Q segment.
   e. the S–T segment.

8. Ventricular pressure peaks during
   a. the first heart sound.
   b. the second heart sound.
   c. the QRS complex.
   d. the P–Q segment.
   e. the S–T segment.

9. The blood contained in a ventricle during isovolumetric relaxation is
   a. the end-systolic volume.
   b. the end-diastolic volume.
   c. the stroke volume.
   d. the ejection fraction.
   e. none of these; the ventricle is empty then.

10. Drugs that increase the heart rate have a _____ effect.
    a. myogenic
    b. negative inotropic
    c. positive inotropic
    d. negative chronotropic
    e. positive chronotropic

11. The contraction of any heart chamber is called _____ and its relaxation is called _____.

12. The circulatory route from aorta to the venae cavae is the _____ circuit.

13. The circumflex artery travels in a groove called the _____.

14. The pacemaker potential of the SA node cells results from the slow inflow of _____.

15. Electrical signals pass quickly from one cardiac myocyte to another through the _____ of the intercalated discs.

16. Repolarization of the ventricles produces the _____ of the electrocardiogram.

17. Closing of the _____ valves produces turbulence in the bloodstream, which contributes to heart sound S2.

18. The procedure for listening to the heart sounds is called cardiac _____.

19. The end-diastolic volume of blood stretches the ventricles and creates myocardial tension called the _____.

20. The Frank–Starling law of the heart explains why the _____ of the left ventricle is the same as that of the right ventricle.

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. The blood supply to the myocardium is the coronary circulation; everything else is called the systemic circuit.
2. There are no valves at the point where venous blood flows into the atria.
3. No blood can enter the ventricles until the atria contract.
4. The vagus nerves reduce the heart rate but have little effect on the strength of ventricular contraction.
5. A high blood CO_2 level and low blood pH stimulate an increase in heart rate.
6. The first heart sound occurs at the time of the P wave of the electrocardiogram.
7. If all nerves to the heart were severed, the heart would instantly stop beating.
8. If the two pulmonary arteries were clamped shut, systemic edema would follow.
9. Ventricular myocytes have a stable resting membrane potential but myocytes of the SA node do not.
10. An electrocardiogram is a tracing of the action potential of a cardiac myocyte.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. Verapimil is a calcium channel blocker used to treat hypertension. It selectively blocks slow calcium channels. Would you expect it to have a positive or negative inotropic effect? Explain. (See p. 101 to review calcium channel blockers.)
2. To temporarily treat tachycardia and restore the normal resting sinus rhythm, a physician may massage a patient's carotid artery near the angle of the mandible. Propose a mechanism by which this treatment would have the desired effect.
3. Suppose that a patient experienced bleeding into the pericardial cavity because of a ruptured aneurysm. The amount of blood lost was not life-threatening, but about 200 mL of blood accumulated and clotted in the pericardial cavity before the bleeding stopped. Predict how this could affect the heart's end-diastolic volume and stroke volume, and explain your reasoning.
4. In ventricular systole, the left ventricle is the first to begin contracting but the right ventricle is the first to expel blood. Aside from the obvious fact that the pulmonary valve opens before the aortic valve, how can you explain this difference?
5. The action potential of a cardiac myocyte looks very different from the action potential of a neuron. Sketch the two and explain the ionic basis for the differences.

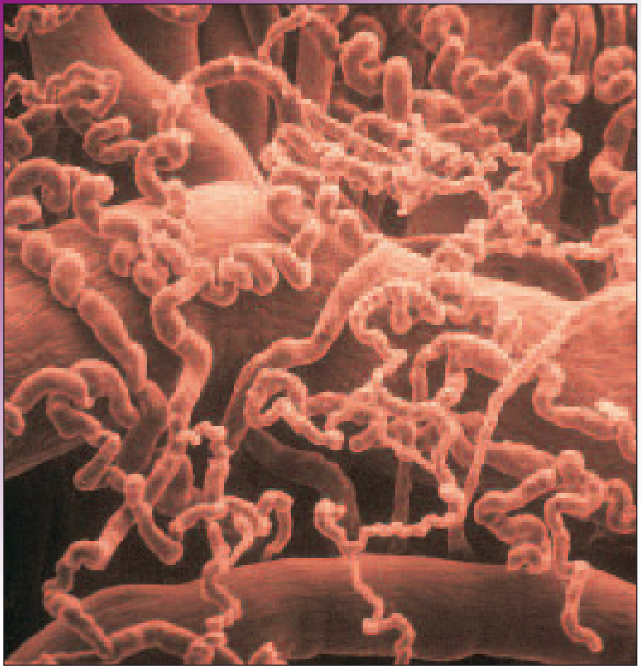
Answers at the Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Legend Questions

19.2 To the left
19.6 The trabeculae carneae
19.12 The right atrium
19.14 It ensures that wave summation and tetanus will not occur, and thus ensures relaxation and refilling of the heart chambers.
19.19 This is the point at which the aortic valve opens and blood is ejected into the aorta, raising its blood pressure.

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.



Polymer cast of blood vessels of the eye (SEM)

CHAPTER 20

The Circulatory System: Blood Vessels and Circulation

CHAPTER OUTLINE

General Anatomy of the Blood Vessels 748
- Circulatory Routes 748
- The Vessel Wall 749
- Arteries and Metarterioles 750
- Capillaries 750
- Veins 752

Blood Pressure, Resistance, and Flow 753
- Blood Pressure 754
- Resistance 755
- Regulation of Blood Pressure and Flow 757
- Hormonal Control 759
- Vasomotion and Routing of Blood Flow 760

Capillary Exchange 761
- Diffusion 761
- Transcytosis 761
- Filtration and Reabsorption 761
- Edema 762

Venous Return and Circulatory Shock 763
- Mechanisms of Venous Return 764
- Venous Return and Physical Activity 764
- Circulatory Shock 765

Special Circulatory Routes 766
- Brain 766
- Skeletal Muscles 766
- Lungs 766

Anatomy of the Pulmonary Circuit 767

Anatomy of the Systemic Arteries 767

Anatomy of the Systemic Veins 781

Connective Issues 794

Chapter Review 795

INSIGHTS

20.1 Clinical Application: Varicose Veins 753

20.2 Clinical Application: Aneurysm 754

20.3 Clinical Application: Air Embolism 764

20.4 Clinical Application: Hypertension—"The Silent Killer" 792

Brushing Up

To understand this chapter, it is important that you understand or brush up on the following concepts:

- Set point and dynamic equilibrium in homeostasis (p. 17)
- Diffusion (p. 106)
- Equilibrium between filtration and osmosis (p. 107)
- Transcytosis (p. 113)
- Viscosity and osmolarity of blood (pp. 680–681)
- Principles of pressure and flow (p. 733)
- Autonomic effects on the heart (p. 738)

The route taken by the blood after it leaves the heart was a point of much confusion until the seventeenth century. Chinese emperor Huang Ti (2697–2597 B.C.E.) correctly believed that it flowed in a complete circuit around the body and back to the heart. But in the second century, Roman physician Claudius Galen (129–c. 199) argued that it flowed back and forth in the veins, like air in the bronchial tubes. He believed that the liver received food from the small intestine and converted it to blood, the heart pumped the blood through the veins to all other organs, and those organs consumed the blood.

Huang Ti was right, but the first experimental demonstration of this did not come until the seventeenth century. English physician William Harvey (1578–1657) studied the filling and emptying of the heart in snakes, tied off the vessels above and below the heart to observe the effects on cardiac filling and output, and measured cardiac output in a variety of living animals. He concluded that (1) the heart pumps more blood in half an hour than there is in the entire body, (2) not enough food is consumed to account for the continual production of so much blood, and (3) since the planets orbit the sun and (as he believed) the human body is modeled after the solar system, it follows that the blood orbits the body. So for a peculiar combination of experimental and superstitious reasons, Harvey argued that the blood returns to the heart rather than being consumed by the peripheral organs. He could not explain how, since the microscope had yet to be developed and he did not know of capillaries—later discovered by Antony van Leeuwenhoek and Marcello Malpighi.

Harvey published his findings in 1628 in a short but elegant book entitled *Exercitio Anatomica de Motu Cordis et Sanguinis in Animalibus (Anatomical Studies on the Motion of the Heart and Blood in Animals).* This landmark in the history of biology and medicine was the first experimental study of animal physiology. But so entrenched were the ideas of Aristotle and Galen in the medical community, and so strange was the idea of doing experiments on living animals, that Harvey's contemporaries rejected his ideas. Indeed, some of them regarded him as a crackpot because his conclusion flew in the face of common sense—if the blood was continually recirculated and not consumed by the tissues, they reasoned, then what purpose could it possibly serve?

Harvey lived to a ripe old age, served as physician to the kings of England, and later did important work in embryology. His case is one of the most interesting in biomedical history, for it shows how empirical science overthrows old theories and spawns better ones, and how common sense and blind allegiance to authority can interfere with acceptance of the truth. But most importantly, Harvey's contributions represent the birth of experimental physiology—the method that generated most of the information in this book.

General Anatomy of the Blood Vessels

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- trace the route usually taken by the blood from the heart and back again;
- describe some variations on this route;
- describe the structure of a blood vessel; and
- describe the different types of arteries, capillaries, and veins.

Circulatory Routes

At its simplest, the usual route of blood flow is heart → arteries → arterioles → capillaries → venules → veins → heart. Blood usually passes through only one network of capillaries from the time it leaves the heart until the time it returns (fig. 20.1*a*). But there are exceptions, notably portal systems and anastomoses. In a **portal system** (fig. 20.1*b*), blood flows through two consecutive capillary networks before returning to the heart. One portal system connects the hypothalamus and anterior pituitary (see chapter 17). Others are found in the kidneys and between the intestines and liver; the latter system is detailed in table 20.13.

An **anastomosis** is a point where two blood vessels merge. In an **arteriovenous anastomosis (shunt),** blood flows from an artery directly into a vein and bypasses the capillaries (fig. 20.1*c*). Shunts occur in the fingers, palms, toes, and ears, where they reduce heat loss in cold weather by allowing warm blood to bypass these exposed surfaces. Unfortunately, this makes these poorly perfused areas more susceptible to frostbite. In an **arterial anastomosis,**

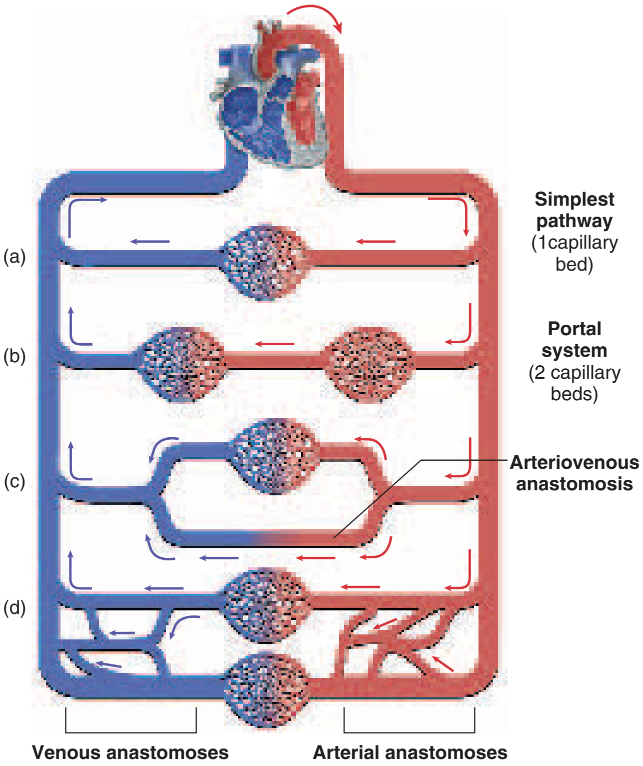

(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)
Simplest pathway (1capillary bed)
Portal system (2 capillary beds)
Arteriovenous anastomosis
Venous anastomoses
Arterial anastomoses

Figure 20.1 Variations in Circulatory Pathways.

two arteries merge and provide *collateral* (alternative) routes of blood supply to a tissue (fig. 20.1*d*). Those of the coronary circulation were mentioned in chapter 19. They are also common around joints where movement may temporarily obstruct one pathway. **Venous anastomoses** are more common. They provide several alternative routes of drainage from an organ, so blockage of a vein is rarely as life-threatening as blockage of an artery. Several arterial and venous anastomoses are described later in this chapter.

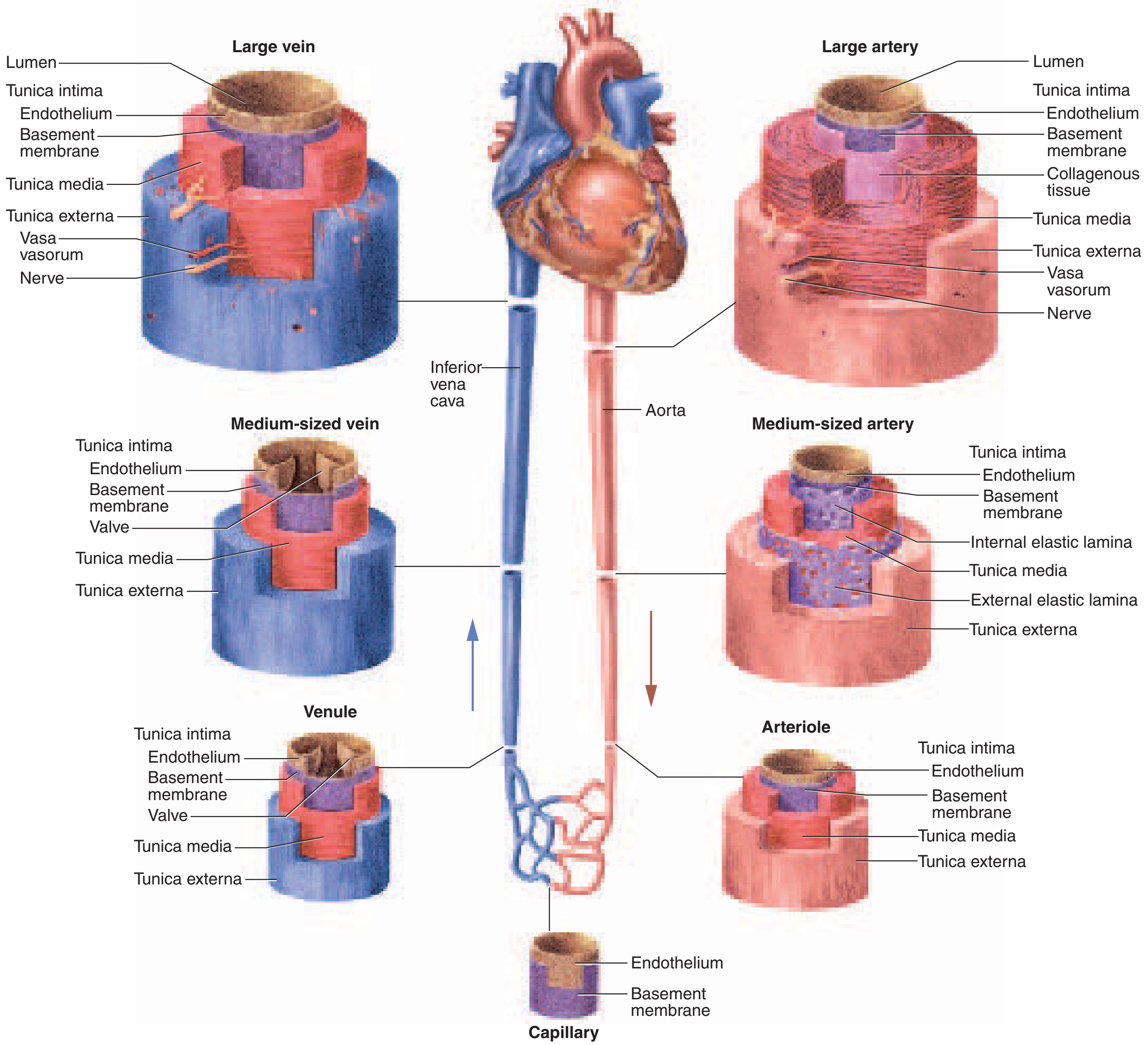
The Vessel Wall

The walls of the arteries and veins have three layers called *tunics* (figs. 20.2 and 20.3):

1. The **tunica externa (tunica adventitia**[1]**)** is the outermost layer. It consists of loose connective

---

[1] *advent* = added to



Large vein
Lumen
Tunica intima
Endothelium
Basement membrane
Tunica media
Tunica externa
Vasa vasorum
Nerve
Large artery
Lumen
Tunica intima
Endothelium
Basement membrane
Collagenous tissue
Tunica media
Tunica externa
Vasa vasorum
Nerve
Inferior vena cava
Aorta
Medium-sized vein
Tunica intima
Endothelium
Basement membrane
Valve
Tunica media
Tunica externa
Medium-sized artery
Tunica intima
Endothelium
Basement membrane
Internal elastic lamina
Tunica media
External elastic lamina
Tunica externa
Venule
Tunica intima
Endothelium
Basement membrane
Valve
Tunica media
Tunica externa
Arteriole
Tunica intima
Endothelium
Basement membrane
Tunica media
Tunica externa
Endothelium
Basement membrane
Capillary

Figure 20.2 The Structure of Arteries and Veins.
Why are elastic laminae found in arteries but not in veins?

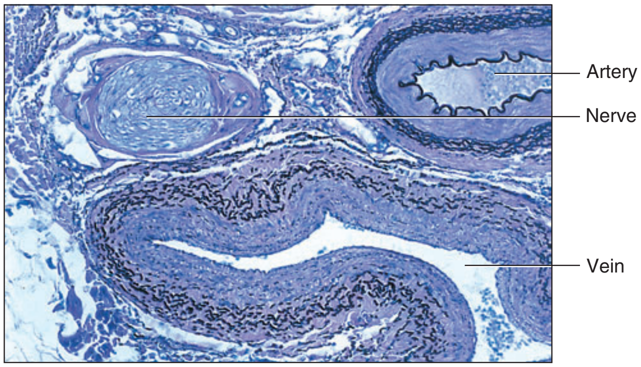


Figure 20.3 **A Neurovascular Bundle.** A small artery, small vein, and nerve traveling together in a common sheath of connective tissue.

tissue that often merges with that of neighboring blood vessels, nerves, or other organs. It anchors the vessel and provides passage for small nerves, lymphatic vessels, and smaller blood vessels. Small vessels called the **vasa vasorum**[2] (VAY-za vay-SO-rum) supply blood to at least the outer half of the wall of a larger vessel. Tissues of the inner half of the wall are thought to be nourished by diffusion from blood in the lumen.

2. The **tunica media,** the middle layer, is usually the thickest. It consists of smooth muscle, collagen, and sometimes elastic tissue. The smooth muscle is responsible for the vasoconstriction and vasodilation of blood vessels.
3. The **tunica intima (tunica interna),** the inner layer, is exposed to the blood. It consists of a simple squamous **endothelium** overlying a basement membrane and a sparse layer of fibrous tissue. The endothelium acts as a selectively permeable barrier to blood solutes, and it secretes vasoconstrictors and vasodilators to be considered later. It also provides a smooth inner lining that normally repels blood cells and platelets. However, platelets may adhere to a damaged endothelium. During inflammation, leukocytes also adhere loosely to it by means of *cell-adhesion molecules* produced by the endothelial cells (see chapter 21).

Arteries and Metarterioles

Arteries are constructed to withstand the surges of blood pressure generated by ventricular systole. They are more muscular than veins and appear relatively round in tissue sections. They are divided into three categories by size, but of course there is a smooth gradation from one category to the next:

1. **Conducting (elastic) arteries** are the largest. Some examples are the pulmonary arteries, aorta, and common carotid arteries. Their tunica media consists of numerous sheets of elastic tissue, perforated like slices of Swiss cheese, alternating with thin layers of smooth muscle, collagen, and elastic fibers. Conducting arteries expand when the ventricles pump blood into them during systole, and recoil during diastole. This lessens the fluctuations in blood pressure exerted on smaller arteries downstream.
2. **Distributing (muscular) arteries** are smaller branches farther away from the heart that distribute blood to specific organs. You could compare a conducting artery to an interstate highway and distributing arteries to the exit ramps and state highways that serve specific towns. Distributing arteries typically have 25 to 40 layers of smooth muscle cells constituting about three-quarters of the wall thickness. Most arteries to which we give names are in these first two size classes. The brachial, femoral, and splenic arteries are examples of distributing arteries.
3. **Resistance (small) arteries** are usually too variable in number and location to be given names. They exhibit up to 25 layers of smooth muscle cells and relatively little elastic tissue. Their tunica media is thicker in proportion to the lumen than that of larger arteries. The smallest of these arteries, about 40 to 200 μm in diameter and with only one to three layers of smooth muscle, are the **arterioles.** For reasons discussed later, they are the primary points at which the body controls the relative amounts of blood directed to various organs.

Metarterioles[3] are short vessels that link arterioles and capillaries. Instead of a continuous tunica media, they have individual muscle cells spaced a short distance apart, each forming a **precapillary sphincter** that encircles the entrance to a capillary.

Capillaries

Capillaries (fig. 20.4) are the "business end" of the circulatory system. All the rest of the system exists to serve them, because capillaries are almost the only point in the circulatory system where materials are exchanged between the blood and tissue fluid. Capillaries are ideally suited to their role. They consist only of endothelium and a basement membrane. Capillaries have walls as thin as 0.2 to 0.4 μm. They average about 5 μm in diameter at the prox-

---

[2] *vasa* = vessels + *vasorum* = of the vessels

[3] *meta* = beyond, next in a series

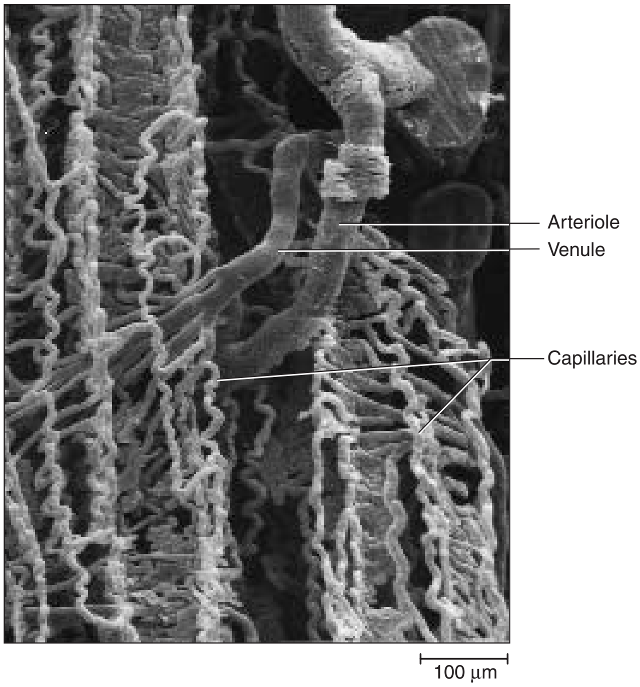


Figure 20.4 Vascular Cast of Blood Vessels in Human Skeletal Muscle. This was prepared by injecting the vessels with a polymer, digesting away all tissue to leave a replica of the vessels, and photographing the cast through the SEM. From R. G. Kessel and R. H. Kardon, *Tissues and Organs: A Text-Atlas of Scanning Electron Microscopy* (W. H. Freeman & Co., 1979).

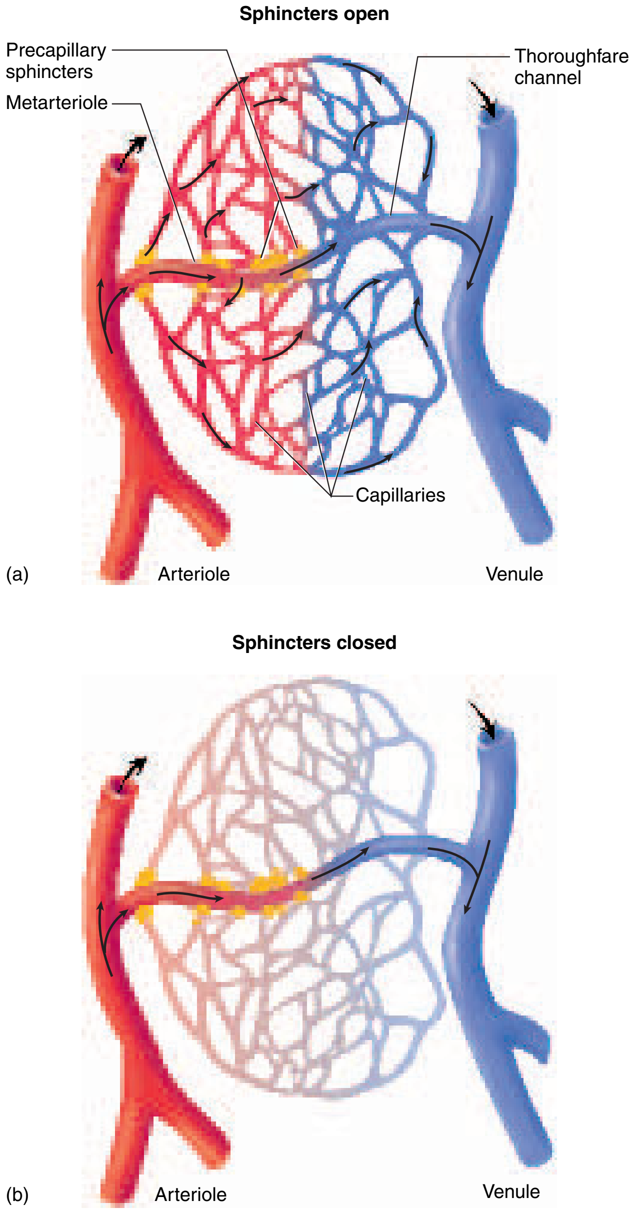


Figure 20.5 Control of Perfusion of a Capillary Bed. (*a*) Precapillary sphincters dilated and capillaries well perfused. (*b*) Precapillary sphincters closed, with blood bypassing the capillaries.

imal (arterial) end, widen to about 9 µm in diameter at the distal (venous) end, and often branch along the way. (Recall that an erythrocyte is about 7 µm in diameter.) The number of capillaries has been estimated at a billion and their total surface area at 6,300 m^2. But a more important point is that scarcely any cell in the body is more than 60 to 80 µm away from the nearest capillary. There are a few exceptions. Capillaries are scarce in tendons and ligaments and absent from cartilage, epithelia, and the cornea and lens of the eye.

Capillary Beds

Capillaries are organized in groups called **capillary beds**—usually 10 to 100 capillaries supplied by a single metarteriole (fig. 20.5). The metarteriole continues through the bed as a **thoroughfare channel** leading directly to a venule. Capillaries arise from the proximal end of the metarteriole and lead into its distal end or directly into the venule.

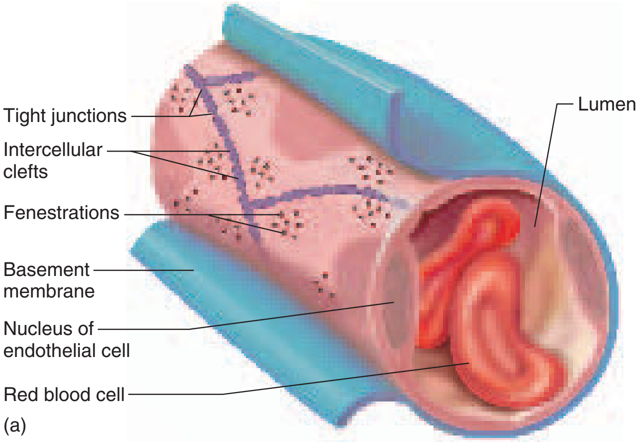
There is a precapillary sphincter at the entrance to each capillary. When the sphincters are open, the capillaries are well perfused with blood and they engage in exchanges with the tissue fluid. When the sphincters are closed, blood bypasses the capillaries, flows through the thoroughfare channel to a venule, and does not engage in significant fluid exchange. There is not enough blood in the body to fill the entire vascular system at once; consequently, about three-quarters of the body's capillaries are closed at any given time. The shifting of blood flow from one capillary bed to another is discussed later in the chapter.

Types of Capillaries

Two types of capillaries are distinguished by the ease with which they allow substances to pass through their walls and by structural differences that account for their greater or lesser permeability:

1. **Continuous capillaries** occur in most tissues, such as skeletal muscle. Their endothelial cells, held together by tight junctions, form an uninterrupted tube. The cells usually have narrow **intercellular clefts** about 4 nm wide between them. Small solutes, such as glucose, can pass through these clefts, but plasma proteins, other large molecules, and formed elements are held back. The continuous capillaries of the brain lack intercellular clefts and have more complete tight junctions that form the blood-brain barrier discussed in chapter 14.
2. **Fenestrated capillaries** have endothelial cells that are riddled with holes called **fenestrations**[4] **(filtration pores)** (fig. 20.6). Fenestrations are about 20 to 100 nm in diameter and are usually covered by a thin mucoprotein diaphragm. They allow for the rapid passage of small molecules but still retain proteins and larger particles in the bloodstream. Fenestrated capillaries are important in organs that engage in rapid absorption or filtration—the kidneys, endocrine glands, small intestine, and choroid plexuses of the brain, for example.

Sinusoids are irregular blood-filled spaces in the liver, bone marrow, spleen, and some other organs. They are twisted, tortuous passageways that conform to the shape of the surrounding tissue. Some of them are continuous capillaries with very thin walls; others are fenestrated capillaries with extraordinarily large pores that allow the blood plasma to come into direct contact with the perivascular cells. Even proteins and blood cells can pass through these pores; this is how albumin, clotting factors, and other proteins synthesized by the liver enter the blood and how newly formed blood cells enter the circulation from the bone marrow and lymphatic organs.



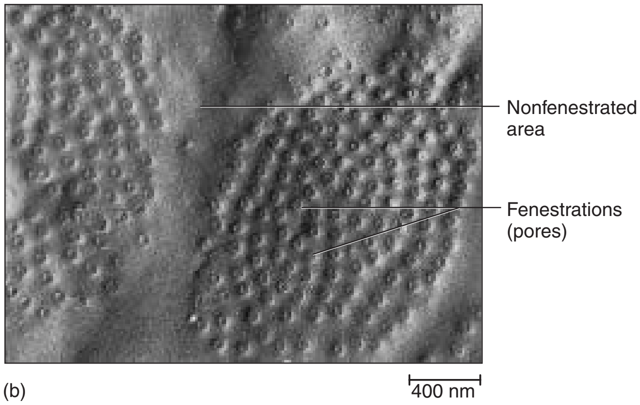


Figure 20.6 A Fenestrated Capillary. (*a*) Structure of the capillary wall. (*b*) Surface view of a fenestrated endothelial cell. The cell has patches of fenestrations separated by nonfenestrated areas.

Veins

After flowing through the capillaries, blood collects in the distal end of the thoroughfare channel and flows into a venule. In the venous circulation, blood flows from smaller vessels into progressively larger ones; hence, instead of giving off *branches* as arteries do, veins receive smaller *tributaries,* just as a river receives water from the many streams that form its tributaries.

Venules range from about 15 to 100 µm in diameter. The proximal part of a venule has only a few fibroblasts around it and is quite porous; therefore venules, like capillaries, exchange fluid with the surrounding tissues. Farther along, a venule acquires a tunica media of smooth muscle. Even the largest veins, however, have relatively sparse muscular and elastic tissue compared to arteries.

Venous sinuses are veins with especially thin walls, large lumens, and no smooth muscle. Examples include the coronary sinus of the heart and the dural sinuses of the brain.

Because they are farther away from the heart, veins have much lower blood pressure than arteries. In large arteries, it averages 90 to 100 mmHg and surges to 120 mmHg during systole, whereas in veins it averages about 10 mmHg and fluctuates very little with the heartbeat. This has significant implications for the form and function of veins:

- Since they need not withstand high pressure, veins have thinner walls than arteries, with less muscular and elastic tissue. They collapse when empty and look

---

[4] *fenestra* = window

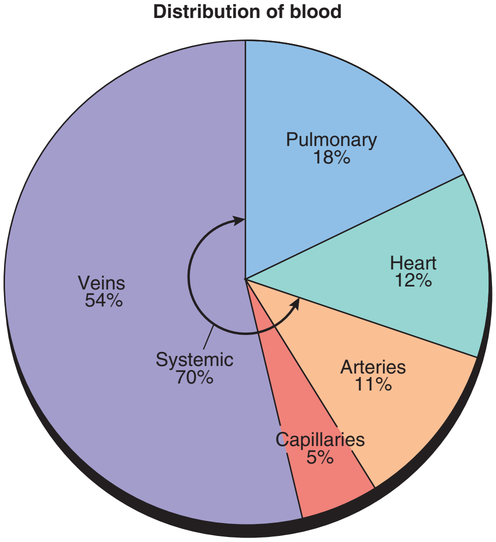


Figure 20.7 **Average Distribution of Blood in a Resting Adult.**

relatively flattened or irregular in histological sections (see fig. 20.3).

- Since their walls are so thin, veins expand more easily and accommodate more blood than arteries do. About 54% of the blood is found in the systemic veins at rest (fig. 20.7); veins are therefore called *capacitance vessels.*
- The pressure in the veins is not high enough to push blood upward against the pull of gravity to the heart. The upward flow of blood depends in part on the massaging action of skeletal muscles and the presence of one-way **venous valves** that keep the blood from dropping down again when the muscles relax (see fig. 20.2). These valves, similar to the semilunar valves of the heart, occur especially in medium veins of the arms and legs; they are absent from very small and very large veins, veins of the ventral body cavity, and veins of the brain. Varicose veins result in part from the failure of these valves (see insight 20.1).

Insight 20.1 Clinical Application

Varicose Veins

In people who stand for long periods, such as dentists and hairdressers, blood tends to pool in the lower limbs and stretch the veins. This is especially true of superficial veins, which are not surrounded by supportive tissue. Stretching pulls the cusps of the venous valves farther apart until the valves become incompetent to prevent the backflow of blood. As the veins become further distended, their walls grow weak and they develop into *varicose veins* with irregular dilations and twisted pathways. Obesity and pregnancy also promote development of varicose veins by putting pressure on large veins of the pelvic region and obstructing drainage from the legs. Varicose veins sometimes develop because of hereditary weakness of the valves. With less drainage of blood, tissues of the leg and foot may become edematous and painful. *Hemorrhoids* are varicose veins of the anal canal.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

1. Explain how an anastomosis and a portal system differ from the simple artery → capillary → vein scheme of circulation.
2. Name the three tunics of a typical blood vessel and explain how they differ from each other.
3. Describe the route of blood flow through a capillary bed.
4. Contrast the two types of capillaries.
5. Explain why many veins have valves but arteries do not.

Blood Pressure, Resistance, and Flow

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- explain the relationship between blood pressure, resistance, and flow;
- describe how blood pressure is expressed and how pulse pressure and mean arterial pressure are calculated;
- describe three factors that determine resistance to blood flow;
- explain how vasomotion influences blood flow; and
- describe some local, neural, and hormonal influences on vasomotion.

Blood flow is the amount of blood flowing through an organ, tissue, or blood vessel in a given time (such as mL/min). **Perfusion** is the flow per given volume or mass of tissue (such as mL/min/g). Perfusion governs the speed of oxygen and nutrient delivery to a tissue and the speed of waste removal. If flow does not keep pace with the metabolic rate of a tissue, the likely result is tissue necrosis and possibly death of the individual. In a resting individual, *total* flow is quite constant and is equal to cardiac output (typically 5.25 L/min). Flow through individual organs, however, varies from minute to minute as blood is redirected from one organ to another. Great variations in regional flow can occur with little or no change in total flow.

Hemodynamics, the physical principles of blood flow, are based mainly on pressure and resistance. The greater the pressure difference (ΔP) between two points, the greater the flow; the greater the resistance (R), the less the flow—in summary, $F \propto \Delta P/R$. Therefore, to understand the flow of blood, we must consider the factors that affect pressure and resistance.

Blood Pressure

Blood pressure (BP) is the force that the blood exerts against a vessel wall. It can be measured within a blood vessel or heart chamber by inserting a catheter or needle connected to an external manometer (pressure-measuring device). For routine clinical purposes, however, the measurement of greatest interest is the systemic arterial BP at a point close to the heart. As mentioned in chapter 19, we customarily measure it with a sphygmomanometer at the brachial artery of the arm. It is easy to encircle the arm with a pressure cuff, and this artery is sufficiently close to the heart to reflect the maximum arterial BP found anywhere in the systemic circuit.

Two pressures are recorded: **systolic pressure** is the peak arterial BP attained during ventricular systole, and **diastolic pressure** is the minimum arterial BP between heartbeats. For a healthy person aged 20 to 30, these pressures are typically about 120 and 75 mmHg, respectively. Arterial BP is written as a ratio of systolic over diastolic pressure: 120/75.

The difference between systolic and diastolic pressure is called **pulse pressure** (not to be confused with pulse *rate*). For the preceding BP, pulse pressure would be $120 - 75 = 45$ mmHg. This is an important measure of the stress exerted on small arteries by the pressure surges generated by the heart. Another measure of stress on the blood vessels is the **mean arterial pressure (MAP)**—the mean pressure you would obtain if you took measurements at several intervals (say every 0.1 sec) throughout the cardiac cycle. Since diastole lasts longer than systole, MAP is not simply the average of systolic and diastolic pressures. The best estimate of MAP is the sum of diastolic pressure and one-third of the pulse pressure. For a blood pressure of 120/75, $\text{MAP} \approx 75 + 45/3 = 90$ mmHg, a typical value for vessels at the level of the heart. MAP varies, however, with the influence of gravity. In a standing adult, it is about 62 mmHg in the major arteries of the head and 180 mmHg in major arteries of the ankle.

Hypertension (high BP) is commonly considered to be a chronic resting blood pressure higher than 140/90 (see insight 20.4, p. 792). (*Transient* high BP resulting from emotion or exercise is not hypertension.) Among other effects, it can weaken the small arteries and cause **aneurysms**[5] (AN-you-rizms) (see insight 20.2). **Hypotension** is chronic low resting BP. It may be a consequence of blood loss, dehydration, anemia, or other factors and is normal in people approaching death.

Insight 20.2 Clinical Application

Aneurysm

An aneurysm is a weak point in a blood vessel or in the heart wall. It forms a thin-walled, bulging sac that pulsates with each beat of the heart and may eventually rupture. In a *dissecting aneurysm,* blood pools between the tunics of a vessel and separates them, usually because of degeneration of the tunica media. The most common sites of aneurysms are the abdominal aorta, the renal arteries, and the arterial circle at the base of the brain. Even without hemorrhaging, aneurysms can cause pain or death by putting pressure on brain tissue, nerves, adjacent veins, pulmonary air passages, or the esophagus. Other consequences include neurological disorders, difficulty in breathing or swallowing, chronic cough, or congestion of the tissues with blood. Aneurysms sometimes result from congenital weakness of the blood vessels and sometimes from trauma or bacterial infections such as syphilis. The most common cause, however, is the combination of atherosclerosis and hypertension.

The ability of the arteries to distend and recoil during the cardiac cycle is important in modulating arterial BP. If the arteries were rigid tubes, pressure would rise much higher in systole and drop to nearly zero in diastole. Blood throughout the circulatory system would flow and stop, flow and stop, thus putting great stress on the small vessels. But when the conducting arteries are healthy, they expand with each systole and absorb some of the force of the ejected blood. Then, when the heart is in diastole, their elastic recoil exerts pressure on the blood and prevents the BP from dropping to zero. The combination of expansion and recoil in the arteries maintains a steady flow of blood downstream, in the capillaries, throughout the cardiac cycle. Thus, the elastic arteries "smooth out" the pressure fluctuations and reduce stress on the smaller arteries.

Nevertheless, blood flow in the arteries is *pulsatile.* Blood in the aorta rushes forward at 120 cm/sec during systole and an average speed of 40 cm/sec over the cardiac cycle. When measured at points farther away from the heart, systolic and diastolic pressures are lower and there is less difference between them (fig. 20.8). In capillaries and veins, the blood flows at a steady speed without pulsation because the pressure surges have been damped out by the distance traveled and the elasticity of the arteries. This is why an injured vein exhibits relatively slow, steady bleeding, whereas blood spurts intermittently from a severed artery. In the inferior vena cava near the heart, however, venous flow fluctuates with the respiratory cycle for reasons explained later, and there is some fluctuation in the jugular veins of the neck.

Think About It

Explain how the histological structure of large arteries relates to their ability to stretch during systole and recoil during diastole.

---

[5] *aneurysm* = widening

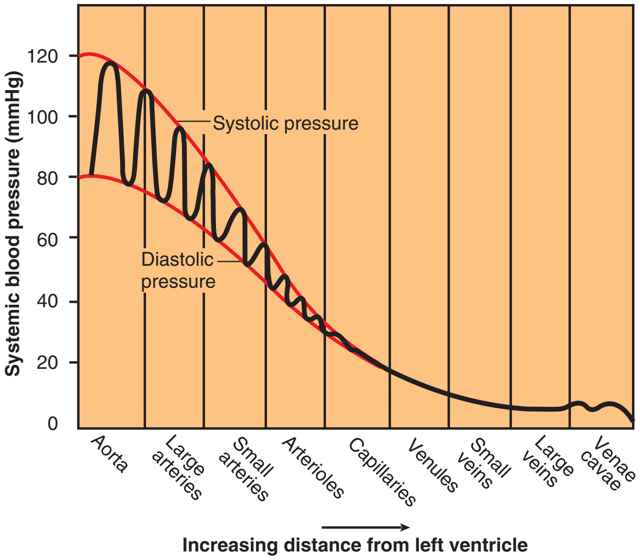


Figure 20.8 **Changes in Blood Pressure Related to Distance from the Heart.** Because of arterial elasticity and the effect of friction against the vessel wall, all measures of blood pressure decline with distance—systolic pressure, diastolic pressure, pulse pressure, and mean arterial pressure. There is no pulse pressure beyond the arterioles, but there are slight pressure oscillations in the venae cavae caused by the respiratory pump.

Table 20.1 Normal Arterial Blood Pressure at Various Ages*

Age (years)	Male	Female
1	96/66	95/65
5	92/62	92/62
10	103/69	103/70
15	112/75	112/76
20	123/76	116/72
25	125/78	117/74
30	126/79	120/75
40	129/81	127/80
50	135/83	137/84
60	142/85	144/85
70	145/82	159/85
80	145/82	157/83

*Average for healthy individuals

Blood pressure rises with age (table 20.1) as the arteries become less distensible and absorb less systolic force. Atherosclerosis also stiffens the arteries and leads to a rise in BP.

Blood pressure is determined mainly by cardiac output, blood volume, and peripheral resistance. The regulation of cardiac output and blood volume are discussed in chapters 19 and 24, respectively. Here, we turn our attention to peripheral resistance.

Resistance

A moving fluid has no pressure unless it encounters at least some resistance. Thus, pressure and resistance are not independent factors in blood flow—rather, pressure is affected by resistance, and flow is affected by both. **Peripheral resistance** is the resistance that the blood encounters in the vessels as it travels away from the heart. It results from the friction of blood against the walls of the vessels and is proportional to three variables: *blood viscosity, vessel length,* and *vessel radius.*

Blood Viscosity

Blood viscosity ("thickness" of the blood) is due mainly to erythrocytes and albumin. A deficiency of erythrocytes (anemia) or albumin (hypoproteinemia) decreases peripheral resistance and speeds up blood flow. If viscosity increases (as a result of polycythemia or dehydration, for example), resistance increases and flow declines.

Vessel Length

The farther a liquid travels through a tube, the more cumulative friction it encounters; thus, pressure and flow decline with distance. Partly for this reason, if you were to measure MAP in a reclining person, you would obtain a higher value in the arm, for example, than in the ankle. (This would not be true in a standing person because of the influence of gravity, explained earlier.) A strong pulse in the dorsal pedal artery of the foot is a good sign of adequate cardiac output. If perfusion is good at that distance from the heart, it is likely to be good elsewhere in the systemic circulation.

Vessel Radius

In a healthy individual, blood viscosity is quite stable, and of course vessel lengths do not change in the short term. Therefore, the only significant way of controlling peripheral resistance from moment to moment is by adjusting the radius of the blood vessels. A change in vessel radius is called **vasomotion.** This includes **vasoconstriction,** the narrowing of a vessel, and **vasodilation,** the widening of a vessel. Vasoconstriction occurs when the smooth muscle of the tunica media contracts. Vasodilation occurs when this muscle relaxes and allows the blood pressure within the vessel to push its walls outward.

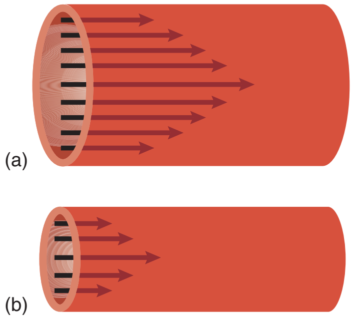


Figure 20.9 **Laminar Flow and the Effect of Vessel Radius.** Blood flows more slowly near the vessel wall, as indicated by shorter arrows, than it does near the center of the vessel. (*a*) When vessel radius is large, the average velocity of flow is high. (*b*) When the radius is less, the average velocity is lower because a larger portion of the blood is slowed down by friction against the vessel wall.

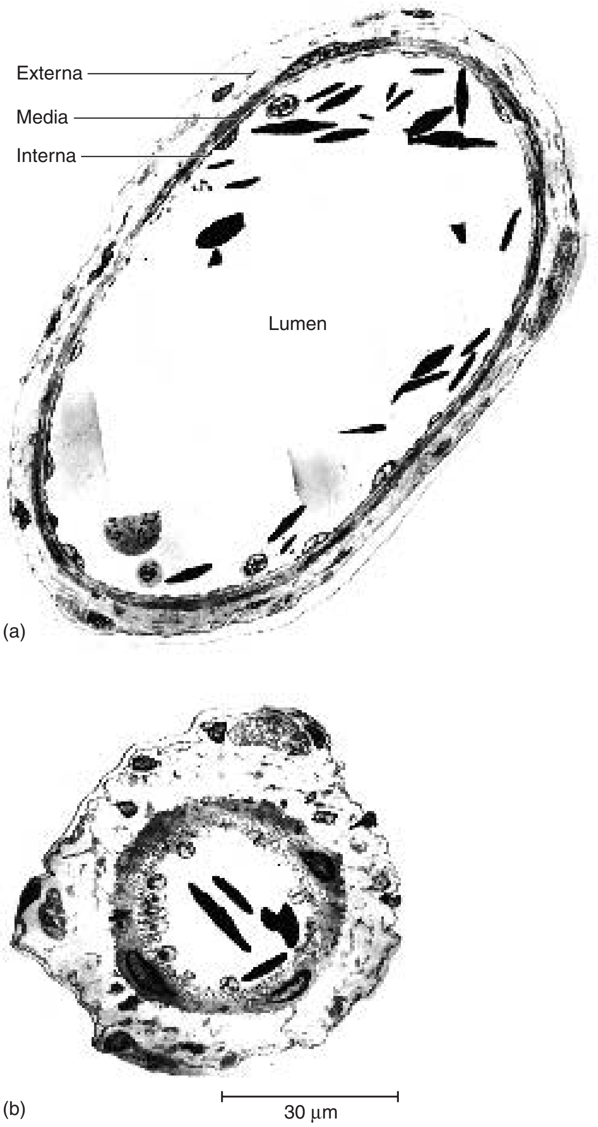


Figure 20.10 **The Capacity for Vasoconstriction in an Arteriole.** (*a*) A dilated arteriole. (*b*) The same arteriole, at a point just 1 mm from the area photographed in *a*, stimulated by a single drop of epinephrine. The diameter of the dilated region is about three times that of the constricted region.

The effect of vessel radius on blood flow is related to the friction of the moving blood against the walls of the vessel. Blood normally exhibits smooth, silent **laminar**[6] **flow.** That is, it flows in "layers"—faster near the center of a vessel, where it encounters less friction, and slower near the walls, where it drags against the vessel. You can observe a similar effect from the vantage point of a riverbank. The current may be very swift in the middle of a river but quite sluggish near shore, where the water encounters more friction against the riverbank and bottom. When a blood vessel dilates, a greater portion of the blood is in the middle of the stream and the average flow may be quite swift. When the vessel constricts, more of the blood is close to the wall and the average flow is slower (fig. 20.9).

Thus the radius of a vessel markedly affects blood velocity. Indeed, blood flow is proportional not merely to vessel radius but to the *fourth power* of radius—that is, $F \propto r^4$. This makes vessel radius a very potent factor in the control of flow. Arterioles can constrict to as little as one-third of their fully relaxed radius (fig. 20.10). For the sake of simplicity, consider a hypothetical blood vessel with a 1 mm radius when maximally constricted and a 3 mm radius when completely relaxed. At a 1 mm radius, suppose the blood travels 1 mm/sec. By the formula $F \propto r^4$, consider how the velocity would change as radius changed:

$r = 1$ mm $\quad r^4 = 1^4 = 1 \quad F = 1$ mm/sec (given)

$r = 2$ mm $\quad r^4 = 2^4 = 16 \quad F = 16$ mm/sec

$r = 3$ mm $\quad r^4 = 3^4 = 81 \quad F = 81$ mm/sec

These actual numbers do not matter; what matters is that a mere 3-fold increase in radius has produced an 81-fold increase in velocity—a demonstration that vessel radius exerts a very powerful influence over flow; moreover, it is the most adjustable of all variables that govern peripheral resistance.

Think About It

Suppose a vessel with a radius of 1 mm had a flow of 5 mm/sec, and then the vessel dilated to a radius of 5 mm. What would be the new flow rate?

---

[6] *lamina* = layer

Table 20.2 Blood Velocity in the Systemic Circuit

Vessel	Typical Lumen Diameter	Velocity*
Aorta	2.5 cm	1,200 mm/sec
Arterioles	20–50 μm	15 mm/sec
Capillaries	5–9 μm	0.4 mm/sec
Venules	20 μm	5 mm/sec
Inferior vena cava	3 cm	80 mm/sec

*Peak systolic velocity in the aorta; mean or steady velocity in other vessels

To integrate this information, consider how the velocity of blood flow differs from one part of the systemic circuit to another (table 20.2). Flow is fastest in the aorta because it is a large vessel close to the pressure source, the left ventricle. From aorta to capillaries, velocity diminishes for three reasons: (1) The blood has traveled a greater distance, so friction has slowed it down. (2) The arterioles and capillaries have smaller radii and therefore put up more resistance. (3) Even though the radii of individual vessels become smaller as we progress farther from the heart, the number of vessels and their *total* cross-sectional area becomes greater and greater. The aorta has a cross-sectional area of 3 to 5 cm^2, while the total cross-sectional area of all the capillaries is about 4,500 to 6,000 cm^2. Thus, a given volume of aortic blood is distributed over a greater total area in the capillaries, which *collectively* form a wider path in the bloodstream. Just as water slows down when a narrow mountain stream flows into a lake, blood slows down as it enters pathways with a greater total width.

From capillaries to vena cava, velocity rises again. One reason for this is that the veins have larger diameters than the capillaries, so they create less resistance. Furthermore, since many capillaries converge on one venule, and many venules on a larger vein, a large amount of blood is being forced into a progressively smaller channel—like water flowing from a lake into an outlet stream and thus flowing faster again. Note, however, that blood in the veins never regains the velocity it had in the large arteries. This is because the veins are farther from the heart and the pressure is much lower.

Regulation of Blood Pressure and Flow

Blood pressure is subject to local, neural, and hormonal controls over vasomotion. We now consider each of these three influences in turn.

Local Control

Autoregulation is the ability of tissues to regulate their own blood supply. According to the *metabolic theory of autoregulation,* if a tissue is inadequately perfused, it becomes hypoxic and its metabolites (waste products) accumulate—CO_2, H^+, K^+, lactic acid, and adenosine, for example. These factors stimulate vasodilation, which increases perfusion. As the bloodstream delivers oxygen and carries away the metabolites, the vessels constrict. Thus, a homeostatic dynamic equilibrium is established that adjusts perfusion to the tissue's metabolic needs.

Blood platelets, endothelial cells, and the perivascular tissues secrete a variety of **vasoactive chemicals**—substances that stimulate vasomotion. Histamine, bradykinin, and prostaglandins stimulate vasodilation under such conditions as trauma, inflammation, and exercise. Endothelial cells secrete prostacyclin and nitric oxide, which are vasodilators, and polypeptides called *endothelins,* which are vasoconstrictors.

If a tissue's blood supply is cut off for a time and then restored, it often exhibits **reactive hyperemia**—an increase above the normal level of flow. This may be due to the accumulation of metabolites during the period of ischemia. Reactive hyperemia can be seen when the skin flushes after a person comes in from the cold. It also occurs in the forearm if a blood pressure cuff is inflated for too long and then loosened.

In the long run, a hypoxic tissue can increase its own perfusion by **angiogenesis**[7]—the growth of new blood vessels. (This term also refers to embryonic development of blood vessels.) Three situations in which this is important are the regrowth of the uterine lining after each menstrual period, the development of a higher density of blood capillaries in the muscles of well-conditioned athletes, and the growth of arterial bypasses around obstructions in the coronary circulation. Several growth factors and inhibitors control angiogenesis, but physiologists are not yet sure how it is regulated. Malignant tumors secrete growth factors that stimulate a dense network of blood vessels to grow into them and provide nourishment to the cancer cells. Oncologists are interested in finding a way to block tumor angiogenesis, which would choke off a tumor's blood supply and perhaps shrink or kill it.

Neural Control

In addition to local control, the blood vessels are under remote control by hormones and the autonomic nervous system. The **vasomotor center** of the medulla oblongata exerts sympathetic control over blood vessels throughout the body. (Precapillary sphincters have no innervation, however, and respond only to local and hormonal stimuli.)

---

[7] *angio* = vessels + *genesis* = production of

Sympathetic nerve fibers stimulate most blood vessels to constrict, but they dilate the vessels of skeletal and cardiac muscle in order to meet the metabolic demands of exercise. The role of sympathetic tone and vasomotor tone in controlling vessel diameter is explained in chapter 15.

The vasomotor center is an integrating center for three autonomic reflexes—*baroreflexes, chemoreflexes,* and the *medullary ischemic reflex.* A **baroreflex** is an autonomic, negative feedback response to changes in blood pressure. The changes are detected by stretch receptors called **baroreceptors.**[8] These occur in all of the large arteries above the heart but are especially concentrated in the aortic arch, the *aortic sinuses* behind the aortic valve cusps, and the *carotid sinus* at the base of each internal carotid artery near the angle of the mandible (fig. 20.11). They are branched, knobby nerve fibers somewhat resembling Golgi tendon organs (see p. 508). The baroreceptors transmit signals continually to the brainstem. When the blood pressure rises, their signaling rate rises. This input inhibits the sympathetic cardiac and vasomotor neurons and reduces sympathetic tone, and it *excites* the vagal fibers to the heart. Thus, it reduces the heart rate and cardiac output, dilates the arteries and veins, and reduces the blood pressure (fig. 20.12). When BP drops below normal, on the other hand, the opposite reactions occur and BP rises back to normal.

Baroreflexes are important chiefly in short-term regulation of BP, for example in adapting to changes in posture. Perhaps you have jumped quickly out of bed and felt a little dizzy for a moment. This occurs because gravity draws the blood into the large veins of the abdomen and lower limbs when you stand, which reduces venous return to the heart and cardiac output to the brain. Normally, the baroreceptors respond quickly to this drop in pressure and restore cerebral perfusion. Baroreflexes are not effective in correcting chronic hypertension, however. Apparently they adjust their set point to the higher BP and maintain dynamic equilibrium at this new level.

A **chemoreflex** is an autonomic response to changes in blood chemistry, especially its pH and concentrations of O_2 and CO_2. It is initiated by chemoreceptors within small organs called **aortic bodies** and **carotid bodies,** located in the aortic arch, subclavian arteries, and external carotid arteries. The primary role of chemoreflexes is to adjust respiration to changes in blood chemistry, but they have a secondary role in stimulating vasomotion. Hypoxemia (O_2 deficiency), hypercapnia (CO_2 excess), and aci-

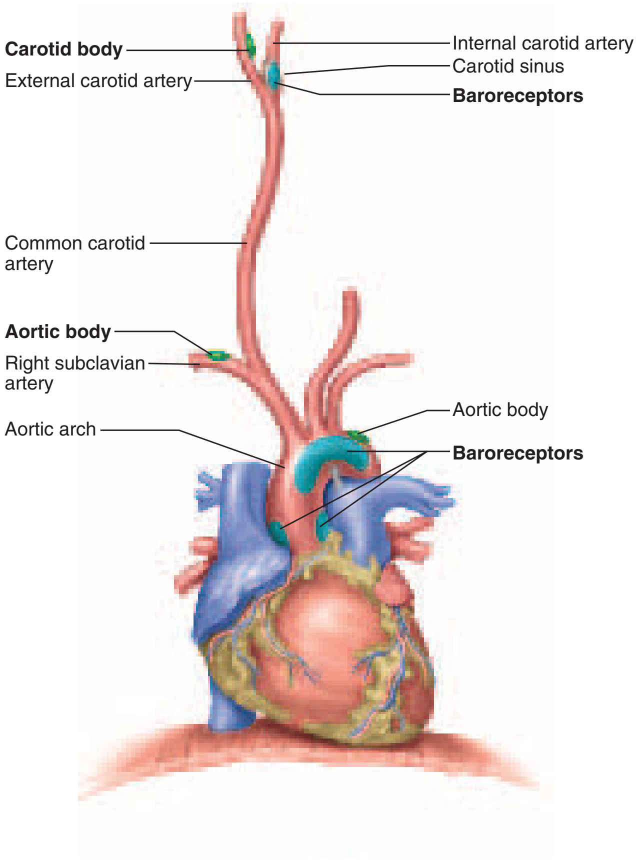

Carotid body
External carotid artery
Internal carotid artery
Carotid sinus
Baroreceptors
Common carotid artery
Aortic body
Right subclavian artery
Aortic arch
Aortic body
Baroreceptors

Figure 20.11 **Locations of Arterial Baroreceptors and Chemoreceptors.** Chemoreceptors are located in the carotid bodies and aortic bodies. Baroreceptors are located in the ascending aorta, aortic arch, and carotid sinus. The structures shown here in the *right* carotid arteries are repeated in the *left* carotids.

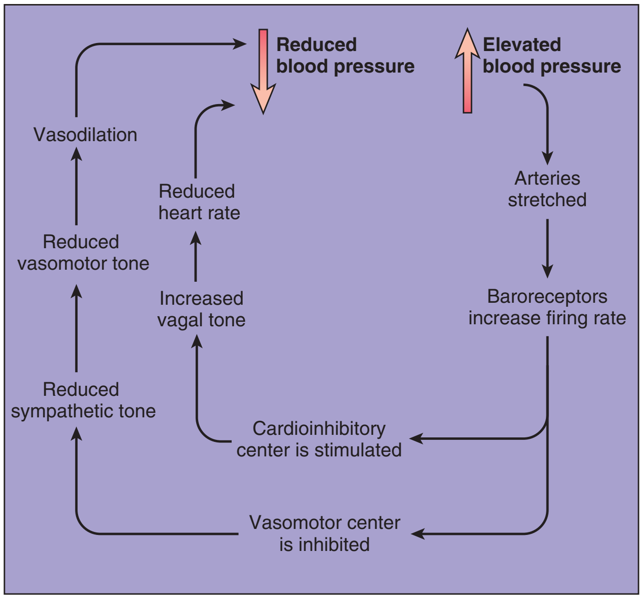

Reduced blood pressure
Elevated blood pressure
Arteries stretched
Baroreceptors increase firing rate
Cardioinhibitory center is stimulated
Vasomotor center is inhibited
Increased vagal tone
Reduced heart rate
Reduced sympathetic tone
Reduced vasomotor tone
Vasodilation

Figure 20.12 **Negative Feedback Control of Blood Pressure.** The reactions here occur in response to a rise in blood pressure.

---

[8] *baro* = pressure

dosis (low blood pH) stimulate the chemoreceptors and act through the vasomotor center to cause widespread vasoconstriction. This increases overall BP, thus increasing perfusion of the lungs and the rate of gas exchange. Chemoreceptors also stimulate one's breathing, so increased ventilation of the lungs matches their increased perfusion. Increasing one without the other would be of little use.

The **medullary ischemic** (iss-KEE-mic) **reflex** is an autonomic response to a drop in perfusion of the brain. Within seconds, the cardiac and vasomotor centers of the medulla oblongata send sympathetic signals to the heart and blood vessels that induce (1) an increase in heart rate and contraction force and (2) widespread vasoconstriction. These actions raise the blood pressure and, ideally, restore normal perfusion of the brain. The cardiac and vasomotor centers also receive input from other brain centers. Thus stress, anger, and arousal can also raise the blood pressure. The hypothalamus acts through the vasomotor center to redirect blood flow in response to exercise or changes in body temperature.

Hormonal Control

All of the following hormones influence blood pressure:

- **Angiotensin II.** This is a potent vasoconstrictor that raises the blood pressure. Its synthesis and action are detailed in chapter 23 (see fig. 23.13). One of the enzymes required for its synthesis is *angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE).* Hypertension is often treated with drugs called *ACE inhibitors,* which block the action of this enzyme, thus lowering angiotensin II levels and blood pressure.
- **Aldosterone.** This "salt-retaining hormone" primarily promotes Na^+ retention by the kidneys. Since water follows sodium osmotically, Na^+ retention promotes water retention, thus promoting a higher blood volume and pressure.
- **Atrial natriuretic peptide.** ANP, secreted by the heart, antagonizes aldosterone. It increases Na^+ excretion by the kidneys, thus reducing blood volume and pressure. It also has a generalized vasodilator effect that contributes to lowering the blood pressure.
- **Antidiuretic hormone.** ADH primarily promotes water retention, but at pathologically high concentrations it is also a vasoconstrictor—hence its alternate name, *vasopressin.* Both of these effects raise blood pressure.
- **Epinephrine and norepinephrine.** These adrenal and sympathetic catecholamines bind to α-adrenergic receptors on the smooth muscle of most blood vessels. This stimulates the muscle to contract, thus producing vasoconstriction and raising the blood pressure. In the coronary blood vessels and blood vessels of the skeletal muscles, however, these chemicals bind to β-adrenergic receptors and cause vasodilation, thus increasing blood flow to the myocardium and muscular system during exercise.

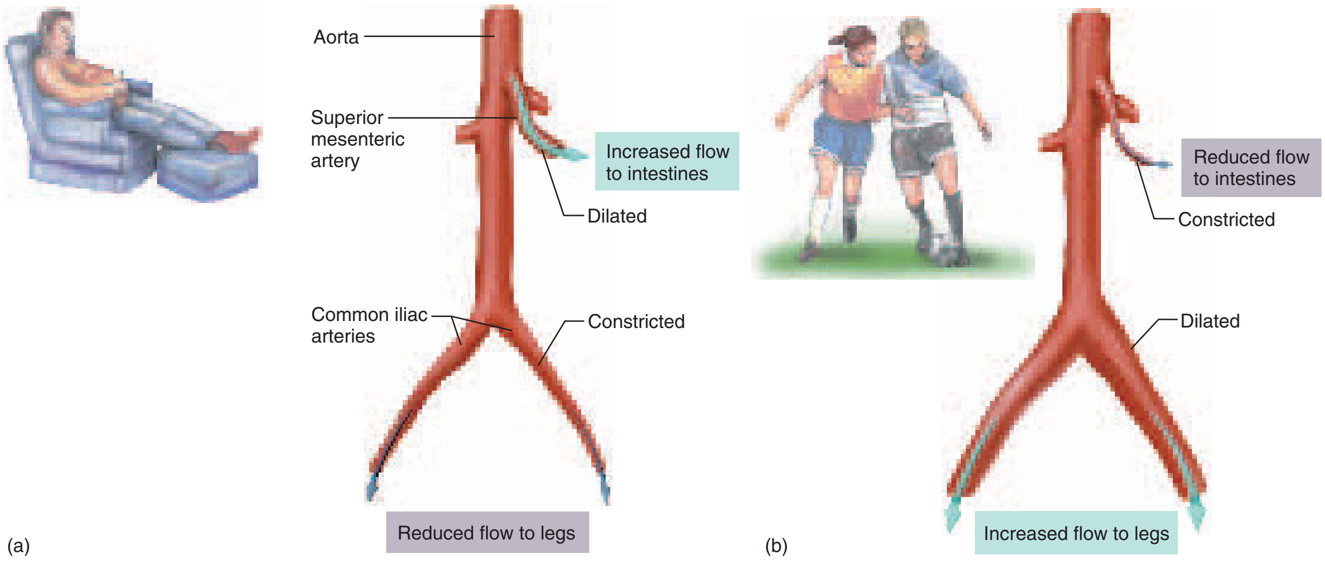


Figure 20.13 Redirection of Blood Flow in Response to Changing Metabolic Needs. (*a*) After a meal, the intestines receive priority and the skeletal muscles receive relatively little flow. (*b*) During exercise, the muscles receive higher priority. Although vasodilation and vasoconstriction are shown here in major arteries for illustration purposes, most control occurs at a microscopic level in the arterioles.

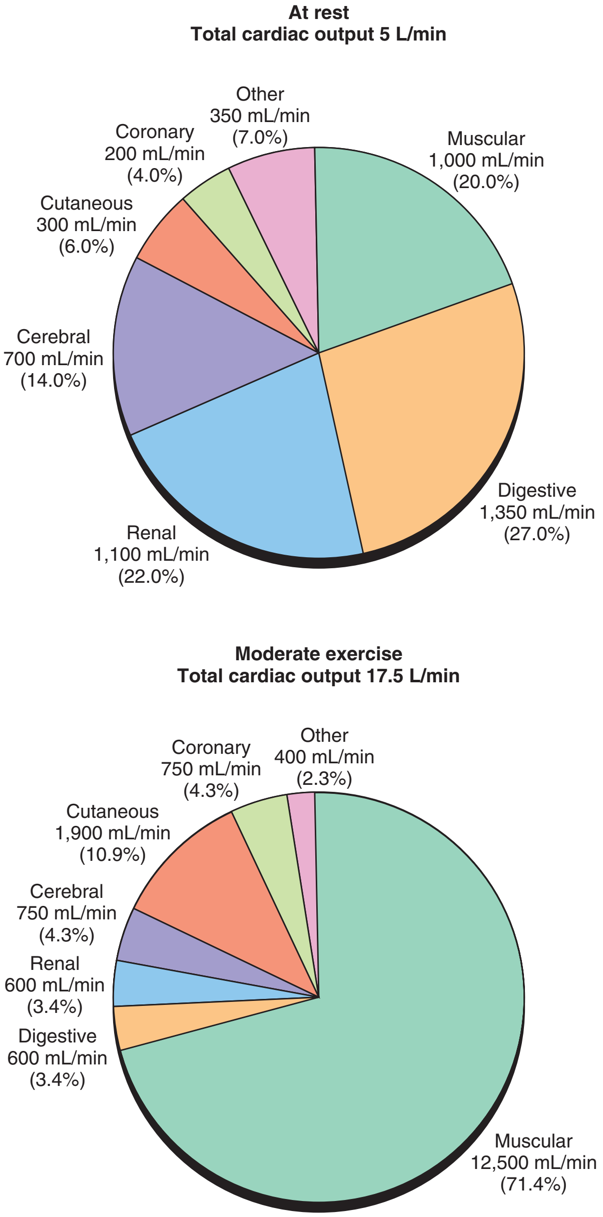


Figure 20.14 **Changes in Systemic Blood Flow During Rest and Exercise.**

Vasomotion and Routing of Blood Flow

If a chemical such as epinephrine causes widespread vasoconstriction, or if it causes vasoconstriction in a large system such as the integumentary or digestive system, it can produce an overall rise in blood pressure. Localized vasoconstriction, however, has a very different effect. If a particular artery constricts, pressure downstream from the constriction drops and pressure upstream from it rises. If blood can travel by either of two routes and one route puts up more resistance than the other, most blood follows the path of least resistance. This mechanism enables the body to redirect blood from one organ to another.

For example, if you are dozing in an armchair after a big meal, vasoconstriction shuts down blood flow to 90% or more of the capillaries in the muscles of your lower limbs. This raises the BP above the limbs, where the aorta gives off a branch, the superior mesenteric artery, supplying the small intestine. High resistance in the circulation of the legs and low resistance in the superior mesenteric artery routes blood to the small intestine, where it is needed to absorb digested nutrients (fig. 20.13*a*).

On the other hand, during vigorous exercise, the arteries in your muscles dilate. To make blood available to the muscles, flow must be reduced elsewhere—notably in the skin, kidneys, and digestive tract (fig. 20.13*b*). Thus, changes in peripheral resistance can shift blood flow from one organ system to another to meet the changing metabolic priorities of the body. Physical exertion increases perfusion of the lungs, myocardium, and skeletal muscles while reducing perfusion of the kidneys and digestive tract (fig. 20.14).

The arterioles are the most significant point of control over peripheral resistance and blood flow because (1) they are on the proximal sides of the capillary beds, so they are best positioned to regulate flow into the capillaries; (2) they greatly outnumber any other class of arteries and thus provide the most numerous control points; and (3) they are more muscular in proportion to their diameters than any other class of blood vessels and are highly capable of vasomotion. Arterioles alone account for about half of the total peripheral resistance of the circulatory system. However, larger arteries and veins are also capable of considerable vasomotion and control of peripheral resistance.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

6. For a healthy 15-year-old girl at rest, what would be typical readings for systolic pressure, diastolic pressure, pulse pressure, and mean arterial pressure?
7. Explain why arterial blood flow is pulsatile and venous flow is not.
8. What three variables affect peripheral resistance to blood flow? Which of these is most able to change from one minute to the next?
9. What are the three primary mechanisms for controlling vessel radius? Briefly explain each.
10. Explain how the baroreflex serves as an example of homeostasis and negative feedback.
11. Explain how the body can shift the flow of blood from one organ system to another.

Capillary Exchange

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe how materials get from the blood to the surrounding tissues;
- describe and calculate the forces that enable capillaries to give off and reabsorb fluid; and
- describe the causes and effects of edema.

Only 250 to 300 mL of blood is in the capillaries at any given time. This is the most important blood in the body, however, for it is mainly across capillary walls that exchanges occur between the blood and surrounding tissues. **Capillary exchange** refers to this two-way movement of fluid.

Substances pass between the blood and tissue fluid by three routes: (1) through the intercellular clefts between endothelial cells, (2) through the fenestrations (pores) of fenestrated capillaries, and (3) through the endothelial cell cytoplasm (fig. 20.15). The mechanisms involved are *diffusion, transcytosis, filtration,* and *reabsorption,* which we examine in that order.

Diffusion

The most important mechanism of exchange is diffusion. Glucose and oxygen, being more concentrated in the systemic blood than in the tissue fluid, diffuse out of the blood. Carbon dioxide and other wastes, being more concentrated in the tissue fluid, diffuse into the blood. (Oxygen and carbon dioxide diffuse in the opposite directions in the pulmonary circuit.) Such diffusion is only possible if the solute can either permeate the plasma membranes of the endothelial cells or find passages large enough to pass through—namely, the fenestrations and intercellular clefts. Such lipid-soluble substances as steroid hormones, O_2, and CO_2 diffuse easily through the plasma membranes. Substances insoluble in lipids, such as glucose and electrolytes, must pass through membrane channels, fenestrations, or intercellular clefts. Large molecules such as proteins are usually held back by the small size of these passages.

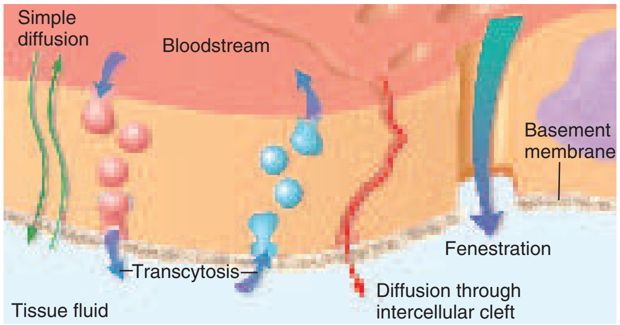


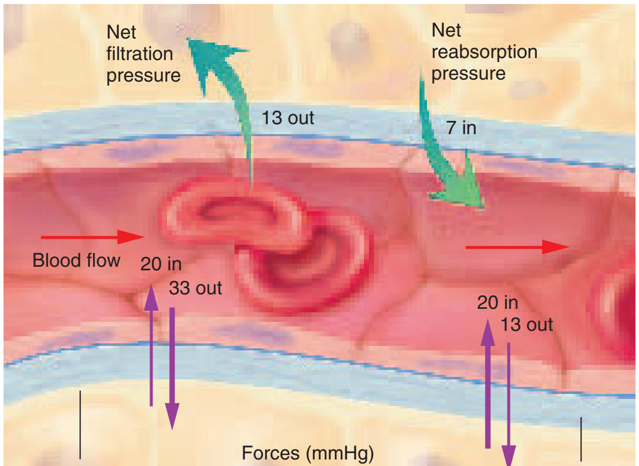
Figure 20.15 **Pathways of Capillary Fluid Exchange.**

Transcytosis

Transcytosis is a process in which endothelial cells pick up droplets of fluid on one side of the plasma membrane by pinocytosis, transport the vesicles across the cell, and discharge the fluid on the other side by exocytosis (see fig. 3.23, p. 114). This probably accounts for only a small fraction of solute exchange across the capillary wall, but fatty acids, albumin, and some hormones such as insulin move across the endothelium by this mechanism.

Filtration and Reabsorption

The equilibrium between filtration and osmosis discussed in chapter 3 becomes particularly relevant when we consider capillary fluid exchange. Typically, fluid filters out of the arterial end of a capillary and osmotically reenters it at the venous end (fig. 20.16). This fluid delivers materials to the cells and removes their metabolic wastes.



Arterial end	Forces (mmHg)	Venous end
	Hydrostatic pressures	
30 out	Blood hydrostatic pressure	10 out
+3 out	Interstitial hydrostatic pressure	+3 out
33 out	Net hydrostatic pressure	13 out
	Colloid osmotic pressures (COP)	
28 in	Blood	28 in
–8 out	Tissue fluid	–8 out
20 in	Oncotic pressure (net COP)	20 in
13 out	Net filtration or reabsorption pressure	7 in

Figure 20.16 **The Forces of Capillary Filtration and Reabsorption.** Note the shift from net filtration at the arterial (*left*) end to net reabsorption at the venous (*right*) end.

It may seem odd that a capillary could give off fluid at one point and reabsorb it at another. This comes about as the result of a shifting balance between hydrostatic and osmotic forces. A typical capillary has a blood (hydrostatic) pressure of about 30 mmHg at the arterial end. The hydrostatic pressure of the interstitial space has been difficult to measure and remains a point of controversy, but a typical value accepted by many authorities is −3 mmHg. The negative value indicates that this is a slight suction, which helps draw fluid out of the capillary. (This force will be represented hereafter as 3_{out}.) In this case, the positive hydrostatic pressure within the capillary and the negative interstitial pressure work in the same direction, creating a total outward force of about 33 mmHg.

These forces are opposed by **colloid osmotic pressure (COP),** the portion of the blood's osmotic pressure due to its plasma proteins. The blood has a COP of about 28 mmHg, due mainly to albumin. Tissue fluid has less than one-third the protein concentration of blood plasma and has a COP of about 8 mmHg. The difference between the COP of blood and COP of tissue fluid is called **oncotic pressure:** $28_{\text{in}} - 8_{\text{out}} = 20_{\text{in}}$. Oncotic pressure tends to draw water into the capillary by osmosis, opposing hydrostatic pressure. These opposing forces produce a **net filtration pressure (NFP)** of 13 mmHg out, as follows:

Hydrostatic pressure	
Blood pressure	30_{out}
Interstitial pressure	$+\ 3_{\text{out}}$
Net hydrostatic pressure	33_{out}

Colloid osmotic pressure	
Blood COP	28_{in}
Tissue fluid COP	$-\ 8_{\text{out}}$
Oncotic pressure	20_{in}

Net filtration pressure	
Net hydrostatic pressure	33_{out}
Oncotic pressure	$-\ 20_{\text{in}}$
Net filtration pressure	13_{out}

The NFP of 13 mmHg causes about 0.5% of the blood plasma to leave the capillaries at the arterial end.

At the venous end, however, capillary blood pressure is lower—about 10 mmHg. All the other pressures are unchanged. Thus, we get:

Hydrostatic pressure	
Blood pressure	10_{out}
Interstitial pressure	$+\ 3_{\text{out}}$
Net hydrostatic pressure	13_{out}

Net reabsorption pressure	
Oncotic pressure	20_{in}
Net hydrostatic pressure	$-\ 13_{\text{out}}$
Net reabsorption pressure	7_{in}

The prevailing force is inward at the venous end because osmotic pressure overrides filtration pressure. The **net reabsorption pressure** of 7 mmHg inward causes the capillary to reabsorb fluid at this end.

Now you can see why a capillary gives off fluid at one end and reabsorbs it at the other. The only pressure that changes from the arterial end to the venous end is the capillary blood pressure, and this change is responsible for the shift from filtration to reabsorption. With a reabsorption pressure of 7 mmHg and a net filtration pressure of 13 mmHg, it might appear that far more fluid would leave the capillaries than reenter them. However, since capillaries branch along their length, there are more of them at the venous end than at the arterial end, which partially compensates for the difference between filtration and reabsorption pressures. They also typically have nearly twice the diameter at the venous end that they have at the arterial end, so there is more capillary surface area available to reabsorb fluid than to give it off. Consequently, capillaries reabsorb about 85% of the fluid they filter. The other 15% is absorbed and returned to the blood by way of the lymphatic system, as described in chapter 21.

Of course, water is not the only substance that crosses the capillary wall by filtration and reabsorption. It carries along many of the solutes dissolved in it. This process is called **solvent drag.**

Variations in Capillary Filtration and Reabsorption

The figures used in the preceding discussion serve only as examples; circumstances differ from place to place in the body and from time to time in the same capillaries. Capillaries usually reabsorb most of the fluid they filter, but this is not always the case. The kidneys have capillary networks called *glomeruli* in which there is little or no reabsorption; they are entirely devoted to filtration. Alveolar capillaries of the lungs, by contrast, are almost entirely dedicated to absorption so that fluid does not fill the air spaces.

Capillary activity also varies from moment to moment. In a resting tissue, most precapillary sphincters are constricted and the capillaries are collapsed. Capillary BP is very low (if there is any flow at all), and reabsorption predominates. When a tissue becomes metabolically active, its capillary flow increases. In active muscles, capillary pressure rises to the point that it overrides reabsorption along the entire length of the capillary. Fluid accumulates in the muscle, and exercising muscles increase in size by as much as 25%. Capillary permeability is also subject to chemical influences. Traumatized tissue releases such chemicals as substance P, bradykinin, and histamine, which increase permeability and filtration.

Edema

Edema is the accumulation of excess fluid in a tissue. It often shows as swelling of the face, fingers, abdomen, or ankles but also affects internal organs, where its effects are hidden from view. Edema occurs when fluid filters into a tissue faster than it is reabsorbed. It has three fundamental causes:

1. **Increased capillary filtration.** This results from increases in capillary BP or permeability. Poor venous return, for example, causes pressure to back up into the capillaries. Congestive heart failure and incompetent heart valves can impede venous return from the lungs and cause pulmonary edema. Systemic edema is a common problem when a person is confined to a bed or wheelchair, with insufficient muscular activity to promote venous return. Kidney failure leads to edema by causing water retention and hypertension. Histamine causes edema by dilating the arterioles and making the capillaries more permeable. Capillary permeability also increases with age, which puts older people at risk of edema.
2. **Reduced capillary reabsorption.** Capillary reabsorption depends on oncotic pressure, which is proportional to the concentration of blood albumin. A deficiency of blood albumin (hypoproteinemia) produces edema because the capillaries osmotically reabsorb even less of the fluid that they give off. Since blood albumin is produced by the liver, liver diseases such as cirrhosis tend to lead to hypoproteinemia and edema. Edema is commonly seen in regions of famine due to dietary protein deficiency. Hypoproteinemia also commonly results from severe burns, radiation sickness, and kidney diseases that allow protein to escape in the urine.
3. **Obstructed lymphatic drainage.** The lymphatic system, described in detail in chapter 21, is a system of one-way vessels that collect fluid from the tissues and return it to the bloodstream. Obstruction of these vessels or the surgical removal of lymph nodes can interfere with fluid drainage and lead to the accumulation of tissue fluid distal to the obstruction.

In severe edema, so much fluid may transfer from the blood vessels to the tissue spaces that blood volume and pressure drop so low as to cause circulatory shock (described later in this chapter). Furthermore, as the tissues become swollen with fluid, oxygen delivery and waste removal are impaired and tissue necrosis may occur. Pulmonary edema presents a threat of suffocation, and cerebral edema can produce headaches, nausea, and sometimes seizures and coma.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

12. List the three mechanisms of capillary exchange and relate each one to the structure of capillary walls.
13. What forces favor capillary filtration? What forces favor reabsorption?
14. How can a capillary shift from a predominantly filtering role at one time to a predominantly reabsorbing role at another?
15. State the three fundamental causes of edema and explain why edema can be dangerous.

Venous Return and Circulatory Shock

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- explain how blood in the veins is returned to the heart;
- discuss the importance of physical activity in venous return;
- discuss several causes of circulatory shock; and
- name and describe the stages of shock.

Hieronymus Fabricius (1537–1619) discovered the valves of the veins and argued that they would allow blood to flow in only one direction, not back and forth as Galen had thought. One of his medical students was William Harvey, who performed simple experiments on the valves that you can easily reproduce. In figure 20.17, from Harvey's book, the experimenter has pressed on a vein at point *H* to block flow from the wrist toward the elbow. With another finger, he has milked the blood out of it up to point *O,* the first valve proximal to *H.* When he tries to force blood downward, it stops at that valve. It can go no farther, and it causes the vein to swell at that point. Blood can flow from right to left through that valve but not from left to right.

You can easily demonstrate the action of these valves in your own hand. Hold your hand still, below waist level, until veins stand up on the back of it. (Do not apply a tourniquet!) Press on a vein close to your knuckles, and while holding it down, use another finger to milk that vein toward the wrist. It collapses as you force the blood out of it, and if you remove the second finger, it will not refill.

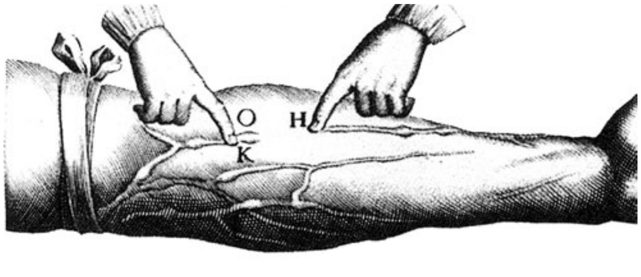


Figure 20.17 An Illustration from William Harvey's *De Motu Cordis* (1628). These experiments demonstrate the existence of one-way valves in veins of the arms. See text for explanation.

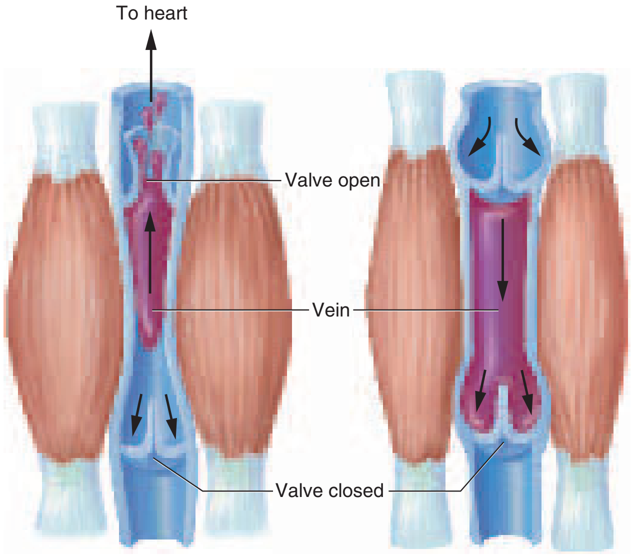
In the space between *O* and *H,* what (if anything) would happen if the experimenter lifted his finger from point *O?* What if he lifted his finger from point *H?* Why?

The valves prevent blood from flowing back into it from above. When you remove the first finger, however, the vein fills from below.

Mechanisms of Venous Return

The flow of blood back to the heart, called **venous return,** is achieved by five mechanisms:

1. **The pressure gradient.** Pressure generated by the heart is the most important force in venous flow, even though it is substantially weaker in the veins than in the arteries. Pressure in the venules ranges from 12 to 18 mmHg, and pressure at the point where the venae cavae enter the heart, called **central venous pressure,** averages 4.6 mmHg. Thus, there is a venous pressure gradient (ΔP) of about 7 to 13 mmHg favoring the flow of blood toward the heart. The pressure gradient and venous return increase when blood volume increases. Venous return decreases when the veins constrict *(venoconstriction)* and oppose flow, and it increases when they dilate and offer less resistance. However, it increases if *all* the body's blood vessels constrict, because this reduces the "storage capacity" of the circulatory system and raises blood pressure and flow.
2. **Gravity.** When you are sitting or standing, blood from your head and neck returns to the heart simply by "flowing downhill" by way of the large veins above the heart. Thus the large veins of the neck are normally collapsed or nearly so, and their venous pressure is close to zero. The dural sinuses, however, have more rigid walls and cannot collapse. Their pressure is as low as −10 mmHg, creating a risk of *air embolism* if they are punctured (see insight 20.3).
3. **The skeletal muscle pump.** In the limbs, the veins are surrounded and massaged by the muscles. They squeeze the blood out of the compressed part of a vein, and the valves ensure that this blood can go in only one direction—toward the heart (fig. 20.18).
4. **The thoracic (respiratory) pump.** This mechanism aids the flow of venous blood from the abdominal to the thoracic cavity. When you inhale, your thoracic cavity expands and its internal pressure drops, while downward movement of the diaphragm raises the pressure in your abdominal cavity. The *inferior vena cava (IVC),* your largest vein, is a flexible tube passing through both of these cavities. If abdominal pressure on the IVC rises while thoracic pressure on it drops, then blood is squeezed upward toward the heart. It is not forced back into the lower limbs because the venous valves there prevent this. Because of the thoracic pump, central venous pressure fluctuates from 2 mmHg when you inhale to 6 mmHg when you exhale, and blood flows faster when you inhale.



(a) Contracted skeletal muscles (b) Relaxed skeletal muscles

Figure 20.18 The Skeletal Muscle Pump. (*a*) When the muscles contract and compress a vein, blood is squeezed out of it and flows upward toward the heart; valves below the point of compression prevent backflow of the blood. (*b*) When the muscles relax, blood flows back downward under the pull of gravity but can only flow as far as the nearest valve.

5. **Cardiac suction.** During ventricular systole, the chordae tendineae pull the AV valve cusps downward, slightly expanding the atrial space. This creates a slight suction that draws blood into the atria from the venae cavae and pulmonary veins.

Insight 20.3 Clinical Application

Air Embolism

Injury to the dural sinuses or jugular veins presents less danger from loss of blood than from air sucked into the circulatory system. The presence of air in the bloodstream is called *air embolism.* This is an important concern to neurosurgeons, who sometimes operate with the patient in a sitting position. If a dural sinus is punctured, air can be sucked into the sinus and accumulate in the heart chambers, which blocks cardiac output and causes sudden death. Smaller air bubbles in the systemic circulation can cut off blood flow to the brain, lungs, myocardium, and other vital tissues.

Venous Return and Physical Activity

Exercise increases venous return for many reasons. The heart beats faster and harder, increasing cardiac output and blood pressure. Blood vessels of the skeletal muscles, lungs, and heart dilate, increasing flow. The increase in respiratory rate and depth enhances the action of the thoracic pump. Muscle contractions increase venous return by the skeletal muscle pump mechanism. Increased venous return increases cardiac output, which is important in perfusion of the muscles just when they need it most.

Conversely, when a person is still, blood accumulates in the limbs because venous pressure is not high enough to override the weight of the blood and drive it upward. Such accumulation of blood is called **venous pooling.** To demonstrate this effect, hold one hand above your head and the other below your waist for about a minute. Then, quickly bring your two hands together and compare the palms. The hand held above your head usually appears pale because its blood has drained out of it; the hand held below the waist appears redder than normal because of venous pooling in its veins and capillaries. Venous pooling is troublesome to people who must stand for prolonged periods. If enough blood accumulates in the limbs, cardiac output may become so low that the brain is inadequately perfused and a person may experience dizziness or **syncope** (SIN-co-pee) (fainting). This can usually be prevented by periodically tensing the calf and other muscles to keep the skeletal muscle pump active. Military jet pilots often perform maneuvers that could cause the blood to pool in the abdomen and lower limbs, causing partial loss of vision or loss of consciousness. To prevent this, they wear pressure suits that inflate and tighten on the lower limbs during these maneuvers; in addition, they sometimes must tense their abdominal muscles to prevent venous pooling and blackout.

Think About It

Why is venous pooling not a problem when you are sleeping and the skeletal muscle pump is inactive?

Circulatory Shock

Circulatory shock (not to be confused with electrical or spinal shock) is any state in which cardiac output is insufficient to meet the body's metabolic needs. All forms of circulatory shock fall into two categories: (1) **cardiogenic shock,** caused by inadequate pumping by the heart usually as a result of myocardial infarction, and (2) **low venous return (LVR) shock,** in which cardiac output is low because too little blood is returning to the heart.

There are three principal forms of LVR shock:

1. **Hypovolemic shock,** the most common form, is produced by a loss of blood volume as a result of hemorrhage, trauma, bleeding ulcers, burns, or dehydration. Dehydration is a major cause of death from heat exposure. In hot weather, the body produces as much as 1.5 L of sweat per hour. Water transfers from the bloodstream to replace lost tissue fluid, and blood volume may drop too low to maintain adequate circulation.
2. **Obstructed venous return shock** occurs when a growing tumor or aneurysm, for example, compresses a nearby vein and impedes its blood flow.
3. **Venous pooling (vascular) shock** occurs when the body has a normal total blood volume, but too much of it accumulates in the limbs. This can result from long periods of standing or sitting or from widespread vasodilation. **Neurogenic shock** is a form of venous pooling shock that occurs when there is a sudden loss of vasomotor tone, allowing the vessels to dilate. This can result from causes as severe as brainstem trauma or as slight as an emotional shock.

Elements of both venous pooling and hypovolemic shock are present in certain cases, such as septic shock and anaphylactic shock, which involve both vasodilation and a loss of fluid through abnormally permeable capillaries. **Septic shock** occurs when bacterial toxins trigger vasodilation and increased capillary permeability. **Anaphylactic shock,** discussed more fully in chapter 21, results from exposure to an antigen to which a person is allergic, such as bee venom. Antigen-antibody complexes trigger the release of histamine, which causes generalized vasodilation and increased capillary permeability.

Responses to Circulatory Shock

In **compensated shock,** several homeostatic mechanisms act to bring about spontaneous recovery. The hypotension resulting from low cardiac output triggers the baroreflex and the production of angiotensin II, both of which counteract shock by stimulating vasoconstriction. Furthermore, if a person faints and falls to a horizontal position, gravity restores blood flow to the brain. Even quicker recovery is achieved if the person's feet are elevated to promote drainage of blood from the legs.

If these mechanisms prove inadequate, **decompensated shock** ensues and several life-threatening positive feedback loops occur. Poor cardiac output results in myocardial ischemia and infarction, which further weakens the heart and reduces output. Slow circulation of the blood can lead to disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) (see chapter 18). As the vessels become congested with clotted blood, venous return grows even worse. Ischemia and acidosis of the brainstem depress the vasomotor and cardiac centers, causing loss of vasomotor tone, further vasodilation, and further drop in BP and cardiac output. Before long, damage to the cardiac and brain tissues may be too great to be undone.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

16. Explain how respiration aids venous return.
17. Explain how muscular activity and venous valves aid venous return.
18. Define *circulatory shock.* What are some of the causes of low venous return shock?

Special Circulatory Routes

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- explain how the brain maintains stable perfusion;
- discuss the causes and effects of strokes and transient ischemic attacks;
- explain the mechanisms that increase muscular perfusion during exercise; and
- contrast the blood pressure of the pulmonary circuit with that of the systemic circuit, and explain why the difference is important in pulmonary function.

Certain circulatory pathways have special physiological properties adapted to the functions of their organs. Two of these are described in other chapters: the coronary circulation in chapter 19 and fetal and placental circulation in chapter 29. Here we take a closer look at the circulation to the brain, skeletal muscles, and lungs.

Brain

Total blood flow to the brain fluctuates less than that of any other organ (about 700 mL/min at rest). Such constancy is important because even a few seconds of oxygen deprivation causes loss of consciousness, and 4 or 5 minutes of anoxia is time enough to cause irreversible brain damage. While total cerebral perfusion is fairly stable, blood flow can be shifted from one part of the brain to another in a matter of seconds as different parts engage in motor, sensory, or cognitive functions.

The brain regulates its own blood flow in response to changes in BP and chemistry. The cerebral arteries dilate when the systemic BP drops and constrict when BP rises, thus minimizing fluctuations in cerebral BP. Cerebral blood flow thus remains quite stable even when mean arterial pressure (MAP) fluctuates from 60 to 140 mmHg. A MAP below 60 mmHg produces syncope and a MAP above 160 mmHg causes cerebral edema.

The main chemical stimulus for cerebral autoregulation is pH. Poor cerebral perfusion allows CO_2 to accumulate in the brain tissue. This lowers the pH of the tissue fluid and triggers local vasodilation, which improves perfusion. Extreme hypercapnia, however, depresses neural activity. The opposite condition, hypocapnia, raises the pH and stimulates vasoconstriction, thus reducing perfusion and giving CO_2 a chance to rise to a normal level. Hyperventilation (exhaling CO_2 faster than the body produces it) induces hypocapnia, which leads to cerebral vasoconstriction, ischemia, dizziness, and sometimes syncope.

Brief episodes of cerebral ischemia produce **transient ischemic attacks (TIAs),** characterized by temporary dizziness, light-headedness, loss of vision or other senses, weakness, paralysis, headache, or aphasia. A TIA may result from spasms of diseased cerebral arteries. It lasts from just a moment to a few hours and is often an early warning of an impending stroke.

A stroke, or **cerebrovascular accident (CVA),** is the sudden death (infarction) of brain tissue caused by ischemia. Cerebral ischemia can be produced by atherosclerosis, thrombosis, or a ruptured aneurysm. The effects of a CVA range from unnoticeable to fatal, depending on the extent of tissue damage and the function of the affected tissue. Blindness, paralysis, loss of sensation, and loss of speech are common. Recovery depends on the ability of neighboring neurons to take over the lost functions and on the extent of collateral circulation to regions surrounding the cerebral infarction.

Skeletal Muscles

In contrast to the brain, the skeletal muscles receive a highly variable blood flow depending on their state of exertion. At rest, the arterioles are constricted, most of the capillary beds are shut down, and total flow through the muscular system is about 1 L/min. During exercise, the arterioles dilate in response to epinephrine and norepinephrine from the adrenal medulla and sympathetic nerves. Precapillary sphincters, which lack innervation, dilate in response to muscle metabolites such as lactic acid, CO_2, and adenosine. Blood flow can increase more than 20-fold during strenuous exercise, which requires that blood be diverted from other organs such as the digestive tract and kidneys to meet the needs of the working muscles.

Muscular contraction compresses the blood vessels and impedes flow. For this reason, isometric contraction causes fatigue more quickly than intermittent isotonic contraction. If you squeeze a rubber ball as hard as you can without relaxing your grip, you feel the muscles fatigue more quickly than if you intermittently squeeze and relax.

Lungs

After birth, the pulmonary circuit is the only route in which the arterial blood contains less oxygen than the venous blood. The pulmonary arteries have thin distensible walls with less elastic tissue than the systemic arteries. Thus, they have a BP of only 25/10. Capillary hydrostatic pressure is about 10 mmHg in the pulmonary circuit as compared with an average of 17 mmHg in systemic capillaries. This lower pressure has two implications for pulmonary circulation: (1) blood flows more slowly through the pulmonary capillaries, and therefore it has more time for gas exchange; and (2) oncotic pressure overrides hydrostatic pressure, so these capillaries are engaged almost entirely in absorption. This prevents fluid accumulation in the alveolar walls and lumens, which would interfere with gas exchange. In a condition such as mitral valve stenosis, however, BP may back up into the pulmonary circuit, raising the capillary hydrostatic pressure and causing pulmonary edema, congestion, and hypoxemia.

Think About It

What abnormal skin coloration would result from pulmonary edema?

Another unique characteristic of the pulmonary arteries is their response to hypoxia. Systemic arteries dilate in response to local hypoxia and improve tissue perfusion. By contrast, pulmonary arteries constrict. Pulmonary hypoxia indicates that part of the lung is not being ventilated well, perhaps because of mucous congestion of the airway or a degenerative lung disease. Vasoconstriction in poorly ventilated regions of the lung redirects blood flow to better ventilated regions.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

19. In what conspicuous way does perfusion of the brain differ from perfusion of the skeletal muscles?
20. How does a stroke differ from a transient ischemic attack? Which of these bears closer resemblance to a myocardial infarction?
21. How does the low hydrostatic blood pressure in the pulmonary circuit affect the fluid dynamics of the capillaries there?
22. Contrast the vasomotor responses of the lungs versus skeletal muscles to hypoxia.

Anatomy of the Pulmonary Circuit

Objective

When you have completed this section, you should be able to
- trace the route of blood through the pulmonary circuit.

The remainder of this chapter centers on the names and pathways of the principal arteries and veins. The pulmonary circuit is described here, and the systemic arteries and veins are described in the two sections that follow.

The pulmonary circuit (fig. 20.19) begins with the **pulmonary trunk,** a large vessel that ascends diagonally from the right ventricle and branches into the right and left **pulmonary arteries.** Each pulmonary artery enters a medial indentation of the lung called the *hilum* and branches into one **lobar artery** for each lobe of the lung: three on the right and two on the left. These arteries lead ultimately to small basketlike capillary beds that surround the pulmonary alveoli. This is where the blood unloads CO_2 and loads O_2. After leaving the alveolar capillaries, the pulmonary blood flows into venules and veins, ultimately leading to the **pulmonary veins,** which exit the lung at the hilum. The left atrium of the heart receives two pulmonary veins on each side.

The purpose of the pulmonary circuit is to exchange CO_2 for O_2. It does not serve the metabolic needs of the lung tissue itself; there is a separate systemic supply to the lungs for that purpose, the *bronchial arteries,* discussed later.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

23. Trace the flow of an RBC from right ventricle to left atrium and name the vessels along the way.
24. The lungs have two separate arterial supplies. Explain their functions.

Anatomy of the Systemic Arteries

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to
- identify the principal arteries of the systemic circuit; and
- trace the flow of blood from the heart to any major organ.

The systemic circuit supplies oxygen and nutrients to all the organs and removes their metabolic wastes. Part of it, the coronary circulation, was described in chapter 19. The other systemic arteries are described in tables 20.3 through 20.8 (figs. 20.20–20.30). The names of the blood vessels often describe their location by indicating the body region traversed (as in the *axillary* artery or *femoral* artery); an adjacent bone (as in *radial* artery or *temporal* artery); or the organ supplied or drained by the vessel (as in *hepatic* artery or *renal* vein). There is a great deal of anatomical variation in the circulatory system from one person to another. The remainder of this chapter describes the most common pathways.

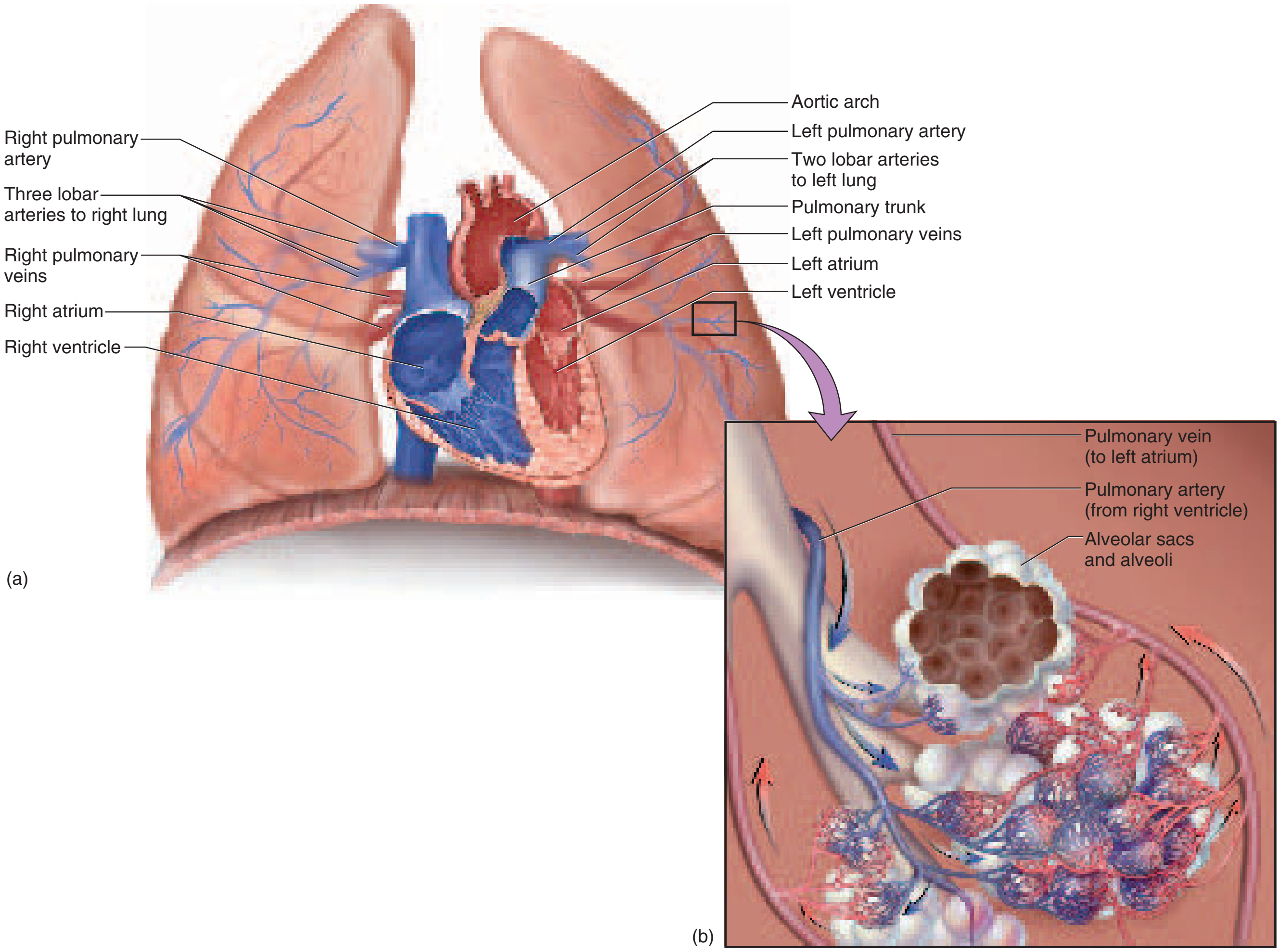

Right pulmonary artery
Three lobar arteries to right lung
Right pulmonary veins
Right atrium
Right ventricle
Aortic arch
Left pulmonary artery
Two lobar arteries to left lung
Pulmonary trunk
Left pulmonary veins
Left atrium
Left ventricle
(a)
Pulmonary vein (to left atrium)
Pulmonary artery (from right ventricle)
Alveolar sacs and alveoli
(b)

Figure 20.19 **The Pulmonary Circulation.** (*a*) Gross anatomy. (*b*) Microscopic anatomy of the blood vessels that supply the pulmonary alveoli.

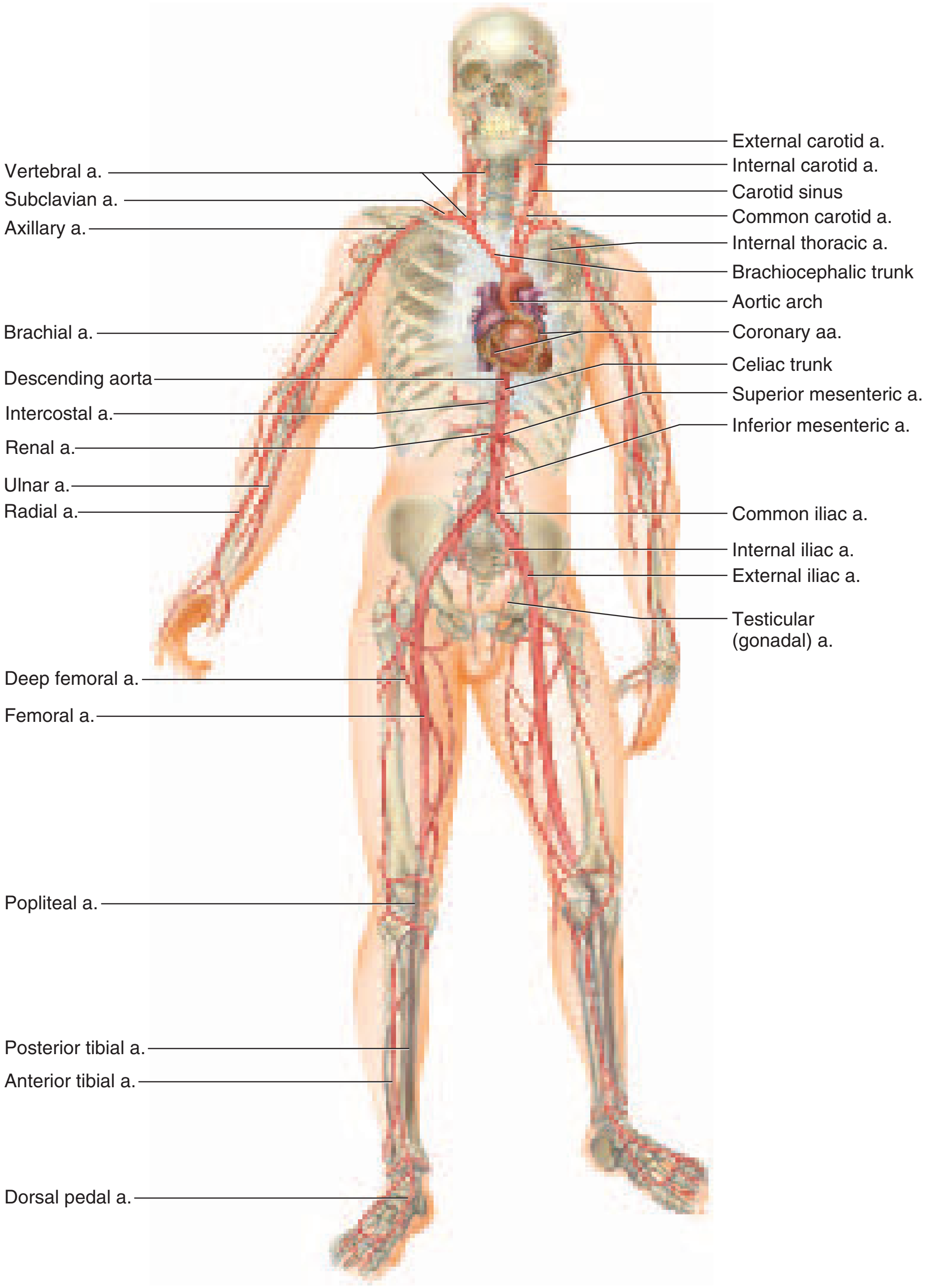

Vertebral a.
Subclavian a.
Axillary a.
Brachial a.
Descending aorta
Intercostal a.
Renal a.
Ulnar a.
Radial a.
Deep femoral a.
Femoral a.
Popliteal a.
Posterior tibial a.
Anterior tibial a.
Dorsal pedal a.
External carotid a.
Internal carotid a.
Carotid sinus
Common carotid a.
Internal thoracic a.
Brachiocephalic trunk
Aortic arch
Coronary aa.
Celiac trunk
Superior mesenteric a.
Inferior mesenteric a.
Common iliac a.
Internal iliac a.
External iliac a.
Testicular
(gonadal) a.

Figure 20.20 **The Major Systemic Arteries.** (*a.* = artery; *aa.* = arteries)

Table 20.3 The Aorta and Its Major Branches

All systemic arteries arise from the aorta, which has three principal regions (fig. 20.21):

1. The **ascending aorta** rises about 5 cm above the left ventricle. Its only branches are the coronary arteries, which arise behind two cusps of the aortic valve. Opposite each semilunar valve cusp is an **aortic sinus** containing baroreceptors.
2. The **aortic arch** curves to the left like an inverted U superior to the heart. It gives off three major arteries in this order: the **brachiocephalic**[9] (BRAY-kee-oh-seh-FAL-ic) **trunk, left common carotid** (cah-ROT-id) **artery,** and **left subclavian**[10] (sub-CLAY-vee-un) **artery,** which are further traced in tables 20.4 and 20.5.
3. The **descending aorta** passes downward dorsal to the heart, at first to the left of the vertebral column and then anterior to it, through the thoracic and abdominal cavities. It is called the **thoracic aorta** above the diaphragm and the **abdominal aorta** below. It ends in the lower abdominal cavity by forking into the *right* and *left common iliac arteries,* which are further traced in table 20.8.

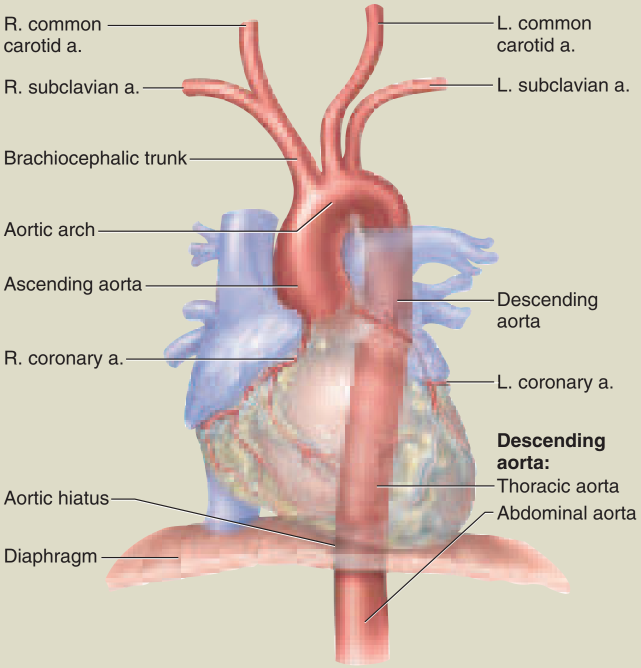

R. common carotid a.
L. common carotid a.
R. subclavian a.
L. subclavian a.
Brachiocephalic trunk
Aortic arch
Ascending aorta
Descending aorta
R. coronary a.
L. coronary a.
Descending aorta:
Thoracic aorta
Abdominal aorta
Aortic hiatus
Diaphragm

Figure 20.21 **Beginning of the Aorta.** (*R.* = right; *L.* = left; *a.* = artery)

---

[9] *brachio* = arm + *cephal* = head

[10] *sub* = below + *clavi* = clavicle, collarbone

Table 20.4 Arterial Supply to the Head and Neck

Origins of the Head-Neck Arteries

The head and neck receive blood from four pairs of arteries (fig. 20.22):

1. The **common carotid arteries.** The brachiocephalic trunk divides shortly after leaving the aortic arch and gives rise to the *right subclavian* and *right common carotid arteries.* The *left common carotid* artery arises directly from the aortic arch. The common carotids pass up the anterolateral aspect of the neck, alongside the trachea.
2. The **vertebral arteries** arise from the right and left subclavian arteries. Each travels up the neck through the transverse foramina of the cervical vertebrae and enters the cranial cavity through the foramen magnum.
3. The **thyrocervical**[11] **trunks** are tiny arteries that arise from the subclavian arteries lateral to the vertebral arteries; they supply the thyroid gland and some scapular muscles.
4. The **costocervical**[12] **trunks** (also illustrated in table 20.6) arise from the subclavian arteries a little farther laterally. They perfuse the deep neck muscles and some of the intercostal muscles of the superior rib cage.

Continuation of the Common Carotid Arteries

The common carotid arteries have the most extensive distribution of all the head-neck arteries. Near the laryngeal prominence (Adam's apple), each common carotid branches into an *external carotid artery* and an *internal carotid artery:*

1. The **external carotid artery** ascends the side of the head external to the cranium and supplies most external head structures except the orbits. The external carotid gives rise to the following arteries, in ascending order:
   a. the **superior thyroid artery** to the thyroid gland and larynx,
   b. the **lingual artery** to the tongue,

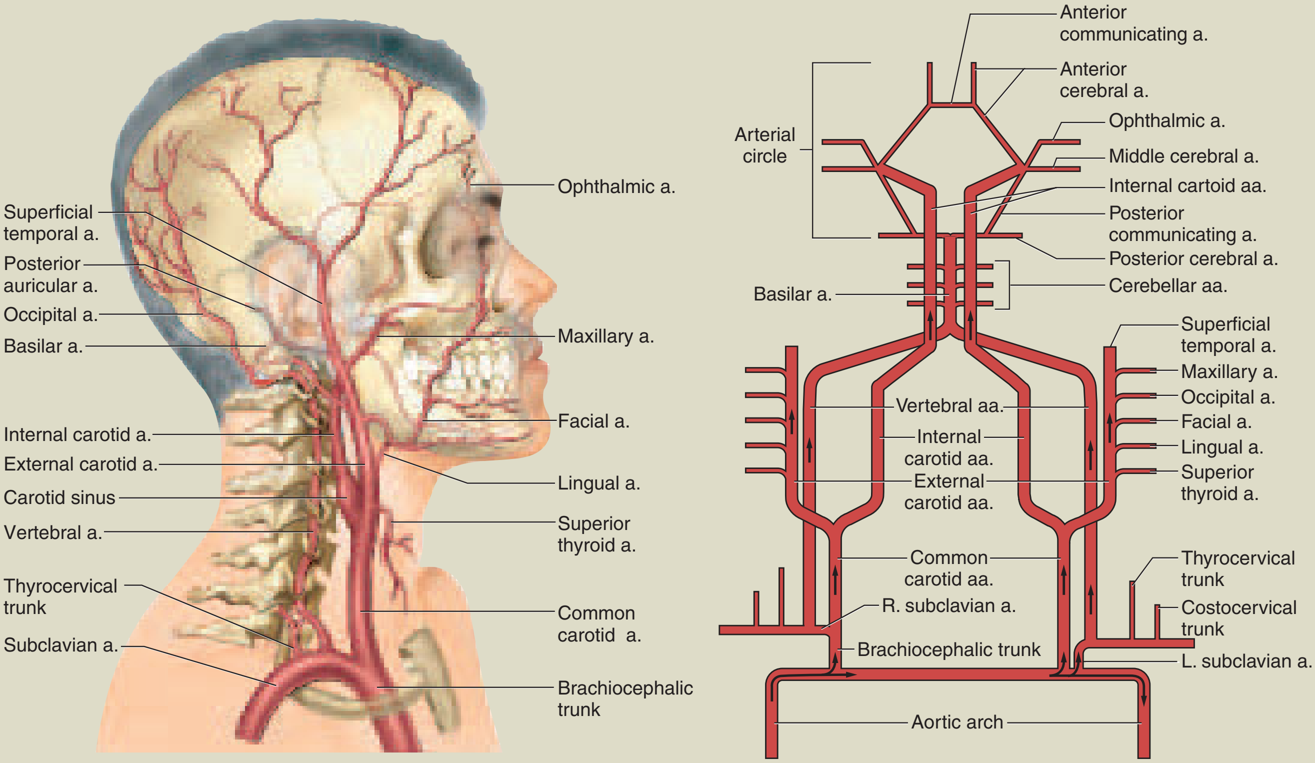

Superficial temporal a.
Posterior auricular a.
Occipital a.
Basilar a.
Internal carotid a.
External carotid a.
Carotid sinus
Vertebral a.
Thyrocervical trunk
Subclavian a.
Ophthalmic a.
Maxillary a.
Facial a.
Lingual a.
Superior thyroid a.
Common carotid a.
Brachiocephalic trunk
Anterior communicating a.
Anterior cerebral a.
Arterial circle
Ophthalmic a.
Middle cerebral a.
Internal cartoid aa.
Posterior communicating a.
Posterior cerebral a.
Basilar a.
Cerebellar aa.
Superficial temporal a.
Maxillary a.
Occipital a.
Facial a.
Lingual a.
Superior thyroid a.
Vertebral aa.
Internal carotid aa.
External carotid aa.
Common carotid aa.
R. subclavian a.
Thyrocervical trunk
Costocervical trunk
Brachiocephalic trunk
L. subclavian a.
Aortic arch

Figure 20.22 Arteries Supplying the Head and Neck.
List the arteries, in order, that an erythrocyte must travel to get from the left ventricle to the skin of the forehead.

---

[11] *thyro* = thyroid gland + *cerv* = neck
[12] *costo* = rib

(continued)

Table 20.4 Arterial Supply to the Head and Neck (continued)

c. the **facial artery** to the skin and muscles of the face,

d. the **occipital artery** to the posterior scalp,

e. the **maxillary artery** to the teeth, maxilla, buccal cavity, and external ear, and

f. the **superficial temporal artery** to the chewing muscles, nasal cavity, lateral aspect of the face, most of the scalp, and the dura mater surrounding the brain.

2. The **internal carotid artery** passes medial to the angle of the mandible and enters the cranial cavity through the carotid canal of the temporal bone. It supplies the orbits and about 80% of the cerebrum. Compressing the internal carotids near the mandible can therefore cause loss of consciousness.[13] The carotid sinus is located in the internal carotid just above the branch point; the carotid body is nearby. After entering the cranial cavity, each internal carotid artery gives rise to the following branches:

   a. the **ophthalmic artery** to the orbits, nose, and forehead;

   b. the **anterior cerebral artery** to the medial aspect of the cerebral hemisphere (see *arterial circle*); and

   c. the **middle cerebral artery,** which travels in the lateral sulcus of the cerebrum and supplies the lateral aspect of the temporal and parietal lobes.

Continuation of the Vertebral Arteries

The vertebral arteries give rise to small branches in the neck that supply the spinal cord and other neck structures, then enter the foramen magnum and merge to form a single **basilar artery** along the anterior aspect of the brainstem. Branches of the basilar artery supply the cerebellum, pons, and inner ear. At the pons-midbrain junction, the basilar artery divides and gives rise to the *arterial circle.*

The Arterial Circle

Blood supply to the brain is so critical that it is furnished by several arterial anastomoses, especially an array of arteries called the **arterial circle (circle of Willis**[14]**)**, which surrounds the pituitary gland and optic chiasm. The arterial circle receives blood from the internal carotid and basilar arteries (fig. 20.23). Only 20% of people have a complete arterial circle. It consists of

1. two **posterior cerebral arteries,**
2. two **posterior communicating arteries,**
3. two **anterior cerebral arteries,** and
4. a single **anterior communicating artery.**

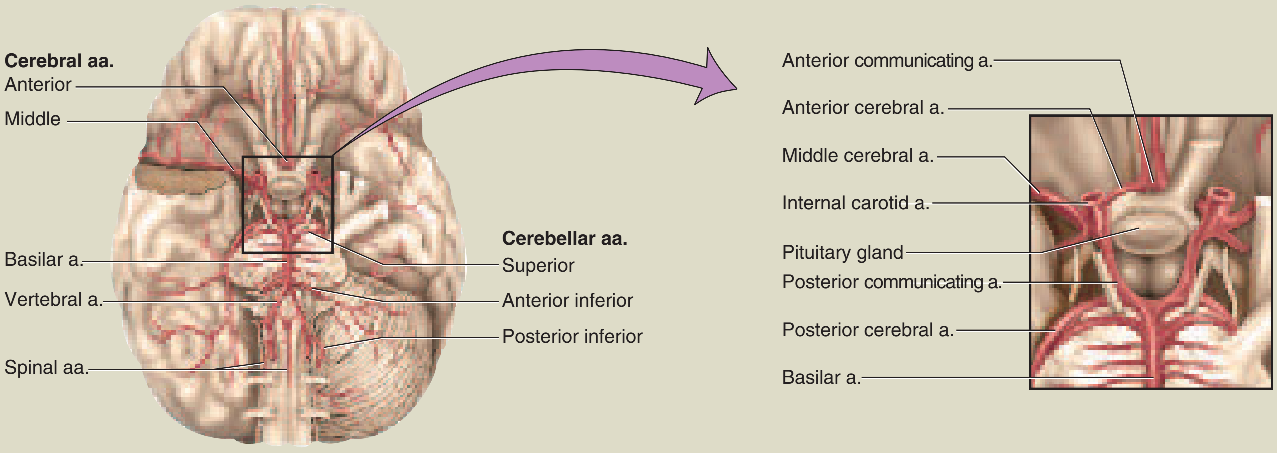

Cerebral aa.
Anterior
Middle
Basilar a.
Vertebral a.
Spinal aa.
Cerebellar aa.
Superior
Anterior inferior
Posterior inferior
Anterior communicating a.
Anterior cerebral a.
Middle cerebral a.
Internal carotid a.
Pituitary gland
Posterior communicating a.
Posterior cerebral a.
Basilar a.

Figure 20.23 The Arterial Circle that Supplies the Brain.

---

[13] *carot* = stupor

[14] Thomas Willis (1621–75), English anatomist

Table 20.5 Arterial Supply to the Upper Limb

The Shoulder and Arm (brachium)

The origins of the subclavian arteries were described and illustrated in table 20.3. We now trace these further to examine the blood supply to the upper limb (fig. 20.24). This begins with a large artery that changes name from *subclavian* to *axillary* to *brachial* along its course:

1. The **subclavian**[15] **artery** travels between the clavicle and first rib. It gives off several small branches to the thoracic wall and viscera, considered later.
2. The **axillary artery** is the continuation of the subclavian artery through the axillary region. It also gives off small thoracic branches, discussed later, and then ends at the neck of the humerus. Here, it gives off the **circumflex humeral artery,** which encircles the humerus. This loop supplies blood to the shoulder joint and deltoid muscle.
3. The **brachial** (BRAY-kee-ul) **artery** is the continuation of the axillary artery beyond the circumflex. It travels down the medial side of the humerus and ends just distal to the elbow, supplying the anterior flexor muscles of the brachium along the way. It exhibits several anastomoses near the elbow, two of which are noted next. This is the most commonly used artery for routine BP measurements.
4. The **deep brachial artery** arises from the proximal end of the brachial artery and supplies the triceps brachii muscle.
5. The **ulnar recurrent artery** arises about midway along the brachial artery and anastomoses distally with the ulnar artery. It supplies the elbow joint and the triceps brachii.
6. The **radial recurrent artery** leads from the deep brachial artery to the radial artery and supplies the elbow joint and forearm muscles.

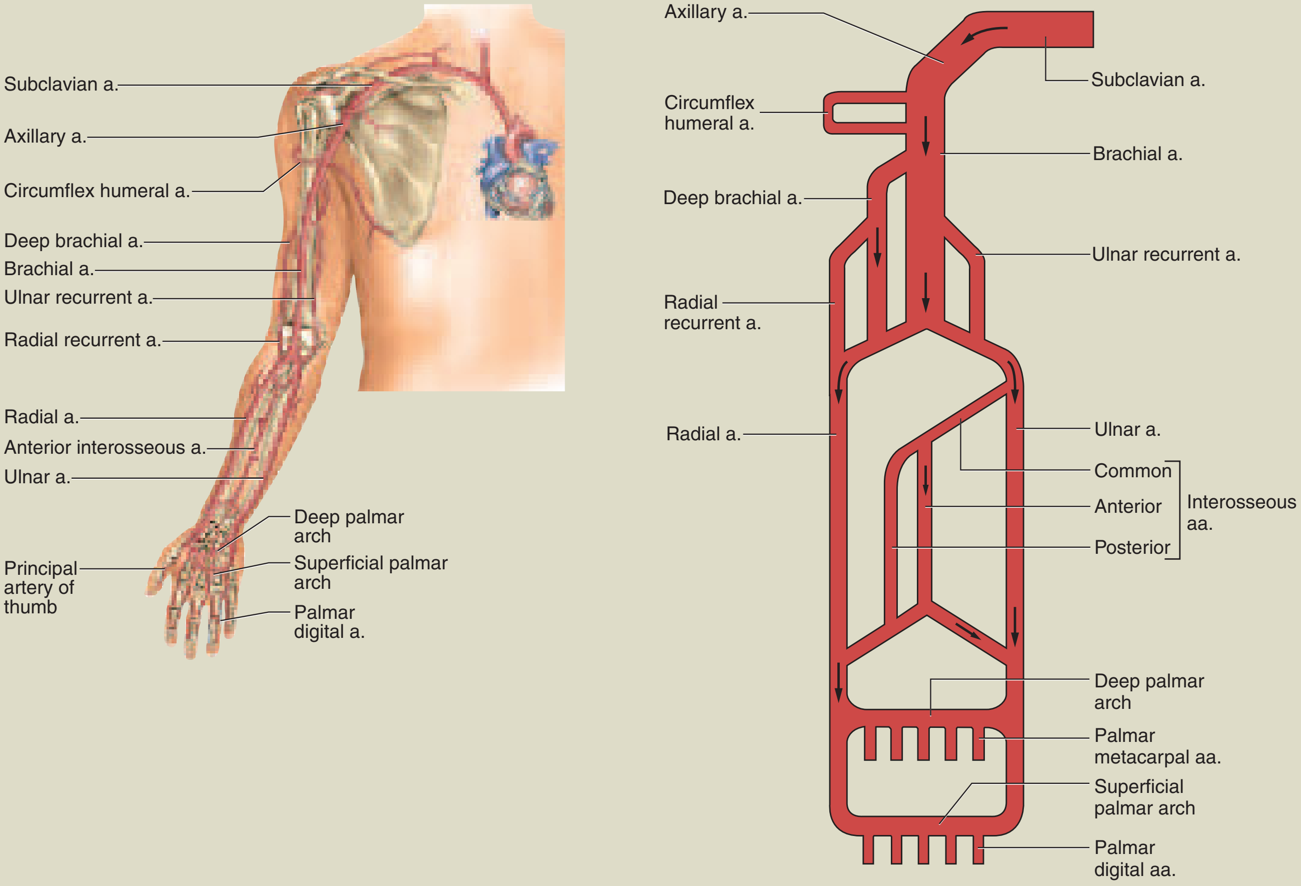

Subclavian a.
Axillary a.
Circumflex humeral a.
Deep brachial a.
Brachial a.
Ulnar recurrent a.
Radial recurrent a.
Radial a.
Anterior interosseous a.
Ulnar a.
Principal artery of thumb
Deep palmar arch
Superficial palmar arch
Palmar digital a.
Axillary a.
Subclavian a.
Circumflex humeral a.
Brachial a.
Deep brachial a.
Ulnar recurrent a.
Radial recurrent a.
Radial a.
Ulnar a.
Common
Anterior
Posterior
Interosseous aa.
Deep palmar arch
Palmar metacarpal aa.
Superficial palmar arch
Palmar digital aa.

Figure 20.24 Arteries Supplying the Upper Limb.

---

[15] *sub* = below + *clavi* = clavicle

(continued)

Table 20.5 Arterial Supply to the Upper Limb (continued)

The Forearm (antebrachium)

Just distal to the elbow, the brachial artery divides into the **radial artery** and **ulnar artery,** which travel alongside the radius and ulna, respectively. The most common place to take a pulse is at the radial artery, just proximal to the thumb. Near its origin, the radial artery receives the deep brachial artery. The ulnar artery gives rise, near its origin, to the **anterior** and **posterior interosseous**[16] **arteries,** which travel between the radius and ulna. Structures supplied by these arteries are as follows:

1. Radial artery: lateral forearm muscles, wrist, thumb, and index finger.
2. Ulnar artery: medial forearm muscles, digits 3 to 5, and medial aspect of index finger.
3. Interosseous arteries: deep flexors and extensors.

The Hand

At the wrist, the radial and ulnar arteries anastomose to form two *palmar arches:*

1. The **deep palmar arch** gives rise to the **palmar metacarpal arteries** of the hand.
2. The **superficial palmar arch** gives rise to the **palmar digital arteries** of the fingers.

---

[16] *inter* = between + osse = bones

Table 20.6 Arterial Supply to the Thorax

The thoracic aorta begins distal to the aortic arch and ends at the **aortic hiatus** (hy-AY-tus), a passage through the diaphragm. Along the way, it sends off numerous small branches to viscera and structures of the body wall (fig. 20.25).

Visceral Branches

These supply the viscera of the thoracic cavity:

1. **Bronchial arteries.** Two of these on the left and one on the right supply the visceral pleura, esophagus, and bronchi of the lungs. They are the systemic blood supply to the lungs mentioned earlier.
2. **Esophageal arteries.** Four or five of these supply the esophagus.
3. **Mediastinal arteries.** Many small mediastinal arteries (not illustrated) supply structures of the posterior mediastinum.

Parietal Branches

The following branches supply chiefly the muscles, bones, and skin of the chest wall; only the first is illustrated:

1. **Posterior intercostal arteries.** Nine pairs of these course around the posterior aspect of the rib cage between the ribs and then anastomose with the anterior intercostal arteries (see following). They supply the skin and subcutaneous tissue, breasts, spinal cord and meninges, and the pectoralis, intercostal, and some abdominal muscles.
2. **Subcostal arteries.** A pair of these arise from the aorta, inferior to the twelfth rib, and supply the posterior intercostal tissues, vertebrae, spinal cord, and deep muscles of the back.
3. **Superior phrenic**[17] (FREN-ic) **arteries.** These supply the posterior and superior aspects of the diaphragm.

---

[17] *phren* = diaphragm

(continued)

Table 20.6 Arterial Supply to the Thorax (continued)

The thoracic wall is also supplied by the following arteries. The first of these arises from the subclavian artery and the other three from the axillary artery:

1. The **internal thoracic (mammary) artery** supplies the breast and anterior thoracic wall and issues finer branches to the diaphragm and abdominal wall. Near its origin, it gives rise to the **pericardiophrenic artery,** which supplies the pericardium and diaphragm. As the internal thoracic artery descends alongside the sternum, it gives rise to **anterior intercostal arteries** that travel between the ribs and supply the ribs and intercostal muscles.
2. The **thoracoacromial**[18] (THOR-uh-co-uh-CRO-me-ul) **trunk** supplies the superior shoulder and pectoral regions.
3. The **lateral thoracic artery** supplies the lateral thoracic wall.
4. The **subscapular artery** supplies the scapula, latissimus dorsi, and posterior wall of the thorax.

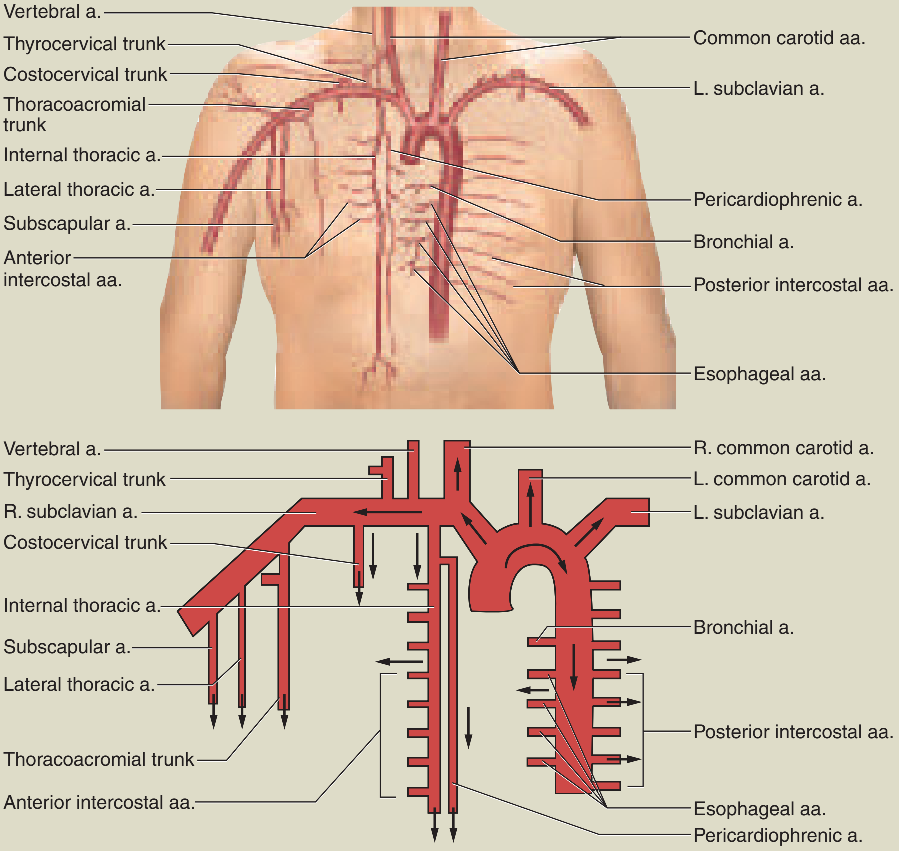

Vertebral a.
Thyrocervical trunk
Costocervical trunk
Thoracoacromial trunk
Internal thoracic a.
Lateral thoracic a.
Subscapular a.
Anterior intercostal aa.
Common carotid aa.
L. subclavian a.
Pericardiophrenic a.
Bronchial a.
Posterior intercostal aa.
Esophageal aa.
Vertebral a.
Thyrocervical trunk
R. subclavian a.
Costocervical trunk
Internal thoracic a.
Subscapular a.
Lateral thoracic a.
Thoracoacromial trunk
Anterior intercostal aa.
R. common carotid a.
L. common carotid a.
L. subclavian a.
Bronchial a.
Posterior intercostal aa.
Esophageal aa.
Pericardiophrenic a.

Figure 20.25 Arteries Supplying the Thorax.

---

[18] *thoraco* = chest + *acr* = tip + *om* = shoulder

Table 20.7 Arterial Supply to the Abdomen

Major Branches of Abdominal Aorta

After passing through the aortic hiatus, the aorta descends through the abdominal cavity. The abdominal aorta is retroperitoneal. It gives off arteries in the order listed here (fig. 20.26). Those indicated in the plural are paired right and left, and those indicated in the singular are single median arteries:

1. The **inferior phrenic arteries** supply the inferior surface of diaphragm and issue a small **superior suprarenal artery** to each adrenal (suprarenal) gland.
2. The **celiac**[19] (SEE-lee-ac) **trunk** issues several branches to the upper abdominal viscera, further traced later in this table.
3. The **superior mesenteric artery** supplies the intestines (see mesenteric circulation later in this table).
4. The **middle suprarenal arteries** arise on either side of the superior mesenteric artery and supply the adrenal glands.
5. The **renal arteries** supply the kidneys and issue a small **inferior suprarenal artery** to each adrenal gland.
6. The **gonadal arteries** are long, narrow, winding arteries that descend from the midabdominal region to the female pelvic cavity or male scrotum. They are called the **ovarian arteries** in females and **testicular arteries** in males. The gonads begin their embryonic development near the kidneys. These arteries acquire their peculiar length and course by growing to follow the gonads as they descend to the pelvic cavity during fetal development.
7. The **inferior mesenteric artery** supplies the distal end of the large intestine (see mesenteric circulation).
8. The **lumbar arteries** arise from the lower aorta in four pairs and supply the posterior abdominal wall.
9. The **median sacral artery,** a tiny medial artery at the inferior end of the aorta, supplies the sacrum and coccyx.
10. The **common iliac arteries** arise as the aorta forks at its inferior end. They supply the lower abdominal wall, pelvic viscera (chiefly the urinary and reproductive organs), and lower limbs. They are further traced in table 20.8.

Branches of the Celiac Trunk

The celiac circulation to the upper abdominal viscera is perhaps the most complex route off the abdominal aorta. Because it has numerous anastomoses, the bloodstream does not follow a simple linear path but divides and rejoins itself at several points (fig. 20.27). As you study the following description,

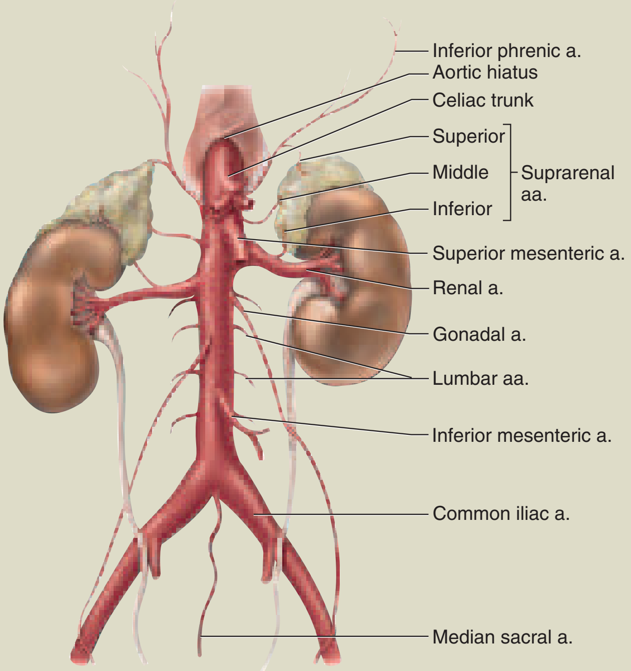


Figure 20.26 The Abdominal Aorta and Its Major Branches.

---

[19] *celi* = belly, abdomen

(continued)

Table 20.7 Arterial Supply to the Abdomen (continued)

locate these branches in the figure and identify the points of anastomosis. The short, stubby celiac trunk is a median branch of the aorta. It immediately gives rise to three principal subdivisions—the *common hepatic, left gastric,* and *splenic arteries:*

1. The **common hepatic artery** issues two main branches:
    a. the **gastroduodenal artery,** which supplies the stomach, anastomoses with the right gastroepiploic artery (see following), and then continues as the **inferior pancreaticoduodenal** (PAN-cree-AT-ih-co-dew-ODD-eh-nul) **artery,** which supplies the duodenum and pancreas before anastomosing with the superior mesenteric artery; and
    b. the **proper hepatic artery,** which is the continuation of the common hepatic artery after it gives off the gastroduodenal artery. It enters the inferior surface of the liver and supplies the liver and gallbladder.

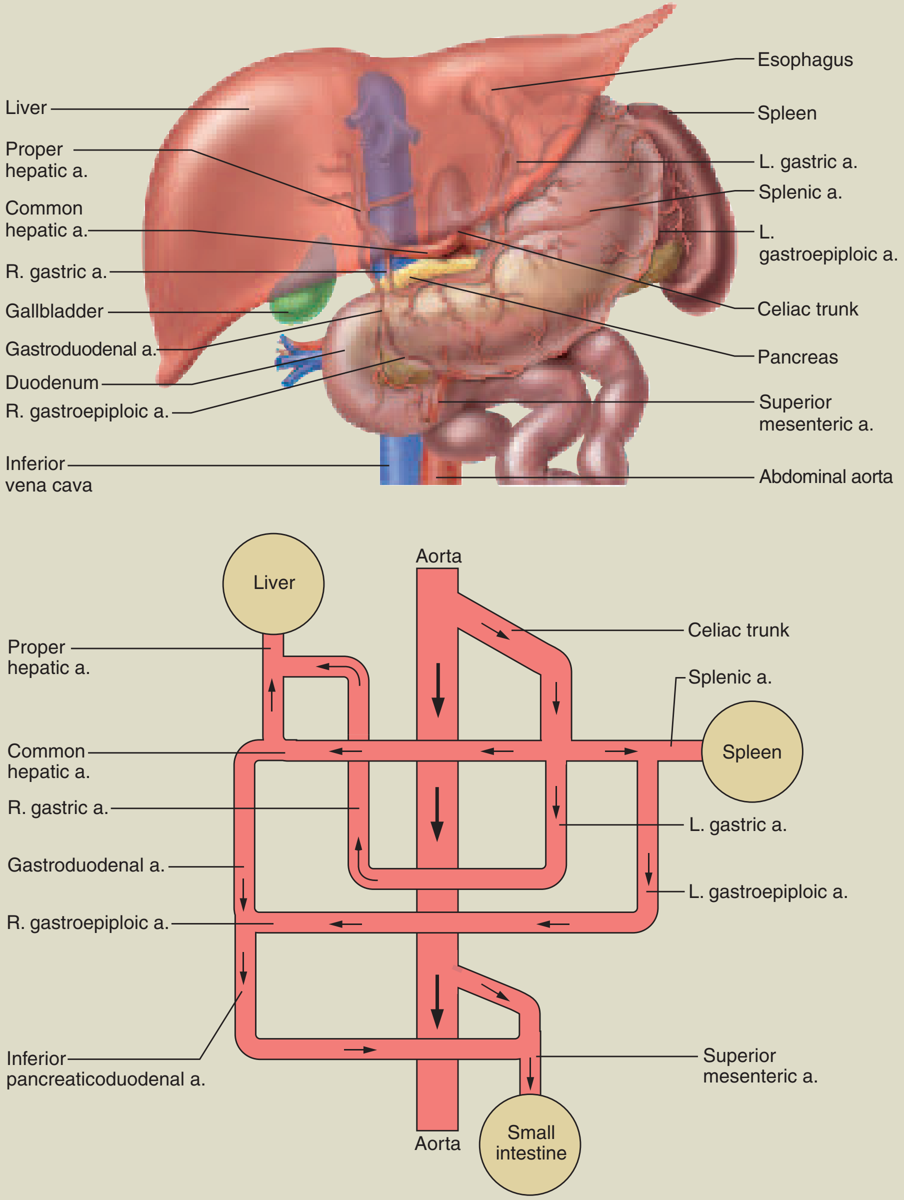

Liver
Proper hepatic a.
Common hepatic a.
R. gastric a.
Gallbladder
Gastroduodenal a.
Duodenum
R. gastroepiploic a.
Inferior vena cava
Esophagus
Spleen
L. gastric a.
Splenic a.
L. gastroepiploic a.
Celiac trunk
Pancreas
Superior mesenteric a.
Abdominal aorta
Liver
Aorta
Proper hepatic a.
Common hepatic a.
R. gastric a.
Gastroduodenal a.
R. gastroepiploic a.
Inferior pancreaticoduodenal a.
Celiac trunk
Splenic a.
Spleen
L. gastric a.
L. gastroepiploic a.
Superior mesenteric a.
Aorta
Small intestine

Figure 20.27 **Branches of the Celiac Trunk.**

(continued)

Table 20.7 Arterial Supply to the Abdomen (continued)

2. The **left gastric artery** supplies the stomach and lower esophagus, arcs around the *lesser curvature* of the stomach, becomes the **right gastric artery** (which supplies the stomach and duodenum), and then anastomoses with the proper hepatic artery.
3. The **splenic artery** supplies blood to the spleen, but gives off the following branches on its way there:
    a. the **pancreatic arteries** (not illustrated), which supply the pancreas; and
    b. the **left gastroepiploic**[20] (GAS-tro-EP-ih-PLO-ic) **artery,** which arcs around the *greater curvature* of the stomach, becomes the **right gastroepiploic artery,** and then anastomoses with the gastroduodenal artery. Along the way, it supplies blood to the stomach and *greater omentum* (a fatty membrane suspended from the greater curvature).

Mesenteric Circulation

The mesentery (see atlas A, p. 38) contains numerous mesenteric arteries, veins, and lymphatic vessels that perfuse and drain the intestines. The arterial supply issues from the *superior* and *inferior mesenteric arteries* (fig. 20.28); numerous anastomoses between these ensure collateral circulation and adequate perfusion of the intestinal tract even if one route becomes obstructed. The following branches of the **superior mesenteric artery** serve the small intestine and most of the large intestine, among other organs:

1. The **inferior pancreaticoduodenal artery,** already mentioned, is an anastomosis from the gastroduodenal to the superior mesenteric artery; it supplies the pancreas and duodenum.
2. The **intestinal arteries** supply nearly all of the small intestine (jejunum and ileum).
3. The **ileocolic** (ILL-ee-oh-CO-lic) **artery** supplies the ileum of the small intestine and the appendix, cecum, and ascending colon.
4. The **right colic artery** supplies the ascending colon.
5. The **middle colic artery** supplies the transverse colon.

Branches of the *inferior mesenteric artery* serve the distal part of the large intestine:

1. The **left colic artery** supplies the transverse and descending colon.
2. The **sigmoid arteries** supply the descending and sigmoid colon.
3. The **superior rectal artery** supplies the rectum.

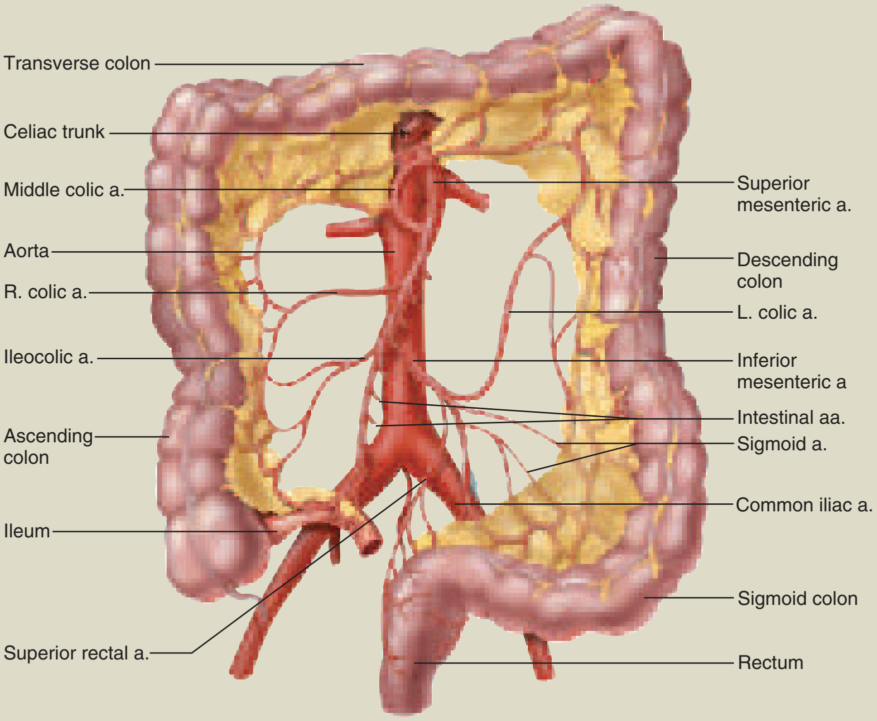


Figure 20.28 The Mesenteric Arteries.

---

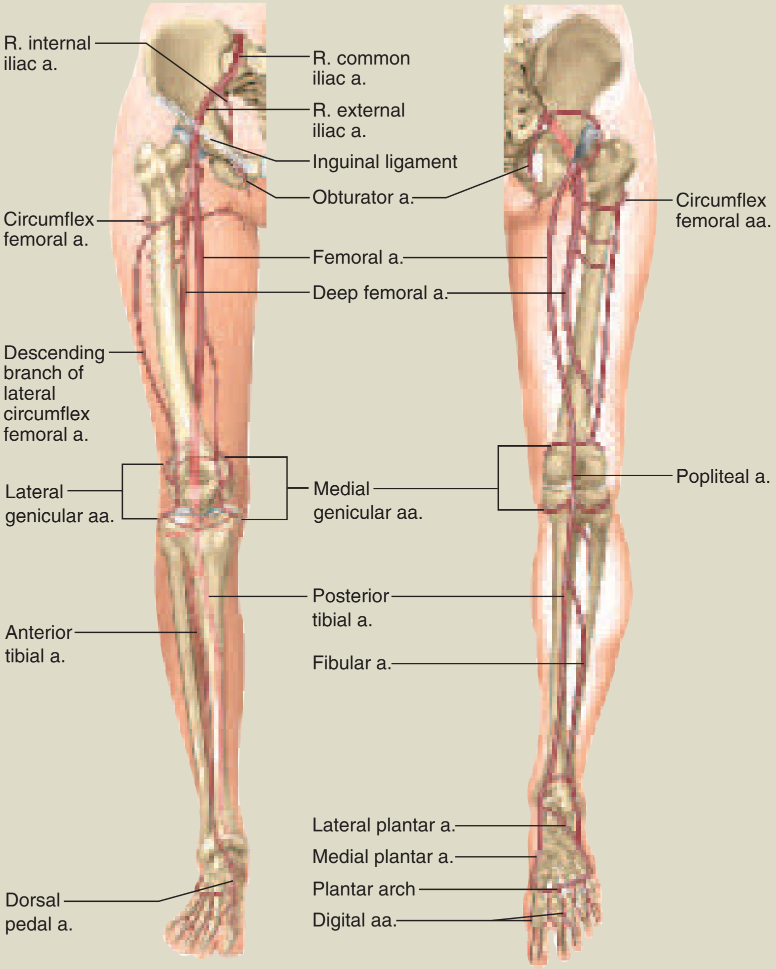
[20] gastro = stomach + *epi* = upon, above + *ploic* = pertaining to the greater omentum

Table 20.8 Arterial Supply to the Pelvic Region and Lower Limb

The common iliac arteries arise from the aorta at the level of vertebra L4 and continue for about 5 cm. At the level of the sacroiliac joint, each divides into an internal and external iliac artery. The **internal iliac artery** supplies mainly the pelvic wall and viscera, and the **external iliac artery** supplies mainly the lower limb (figs. 20.29 and 20.30).

Branches of the Internal Iliac Artery

1. The **iliolumbar** and **lateral sacral arteries** supply the wall of the pelvic region.
2. The **middle rectal artery** supplies the rectum.
3. The **superior** and **inferior vesical**[21] **arteries** supply the urinary bladder.
4. The **uterine** and **vaginal arteries** supply the uterus and vagina.
5. The **superior** and **inferior gluteal arteries** supply the gluteal muscles.
6. The **obturator artery** supplies the adductor muscles of the medial thigh.
7. The **internal pudendal**[22] (pyu-DEN-dul) **artery** serves the perineum and external genitals; it supplies the blood for vascular engorgement during sexual arousal.


R. internal iliac a.
R. common iliac a.
R. external iliac a.
Inguinal ligament
Obturator a.
Circumflex femoral a.
Circumflex femoral aa.
Femoral a.
Deep femoral a.
Descending branch of lateral circumflex femoral a.
Lateral genicular aa.
Medial genicular aa.
Popliteal a.
Posterior tibial a.
Anterior tibial a.
Fibular a.
Lateral plantar a.
Medial plantar a.
Plantar arch
Dorsal pedal a.
Digital aa.

Anterior and dorsal, right limb

Posterior and plantar, right limb

Figure 20.29 Arteries Supplying the Lower Limb.

---

[21] *vesic* = bladder

[22] *pudend* = literally "shameful parts"; the external genitals

(continued)

Table 20.8 Arterial Supply to the Pelvic Region and Lower Limb (continued)

Branches of the External Iliac Artery

The external iliac artery sends branches to the skin and muscles of the abdominal wall and pelvic girdle. It then passes deep to the inguinal ligament and gives rise to branches that serve mainly the lower limbs:

1. The **femoral artery** passes through the femoral triangle of the upper medial thigh, where its pulse can be palpated. It gives off the following branches to supply the thigh region:
   a. The **deep femoral artery,** which supplies the hamstring muscles; and
   b. The **circumflex femoral arteries,** which encircle the neck of the femur and supply the femur and hamstring muscles.
2. The **popliteal artery** is a continuation of the femoral artery in the popliteal fossa at the rear of the knee. It produces anastomoses **(genicular arteries)** that supply the knee and then divides into the anterior and posterior tibial arteries.
3. The **anterior tibial artery** travels lateral to the tibia in the anterior compartment of the leg, where it supplies the extensor muscles. It gives rise to
   a. the **dorsal pedal artery,** which traverses the ankle and dorsum of the foot; and
   b. the **arcuate artery,** a continuation of the dorsal pedal artery that gives off the **metatarsal arteries** of the foot.
4. The **posterior tibial artery** travels through the posteromedial part of the leg and supplies the flexor muscles. It gives rise to
   a. the **fibular (peroneal) artery,** which arises from the proximal end of the posterior tibial artery and supplies the lateral peroneal muscles;
   b. the **lateral** and **medial plantar arteries,** which arise by bifurcation of the posterior tibial artery at the ankle and supply the plantar surface of the foot; and
   c. the **plantar arch,** an anastomosis from the lateral plantar artery to the dorsal pedal artery that gives rise to the **digital arteries** of the toes.

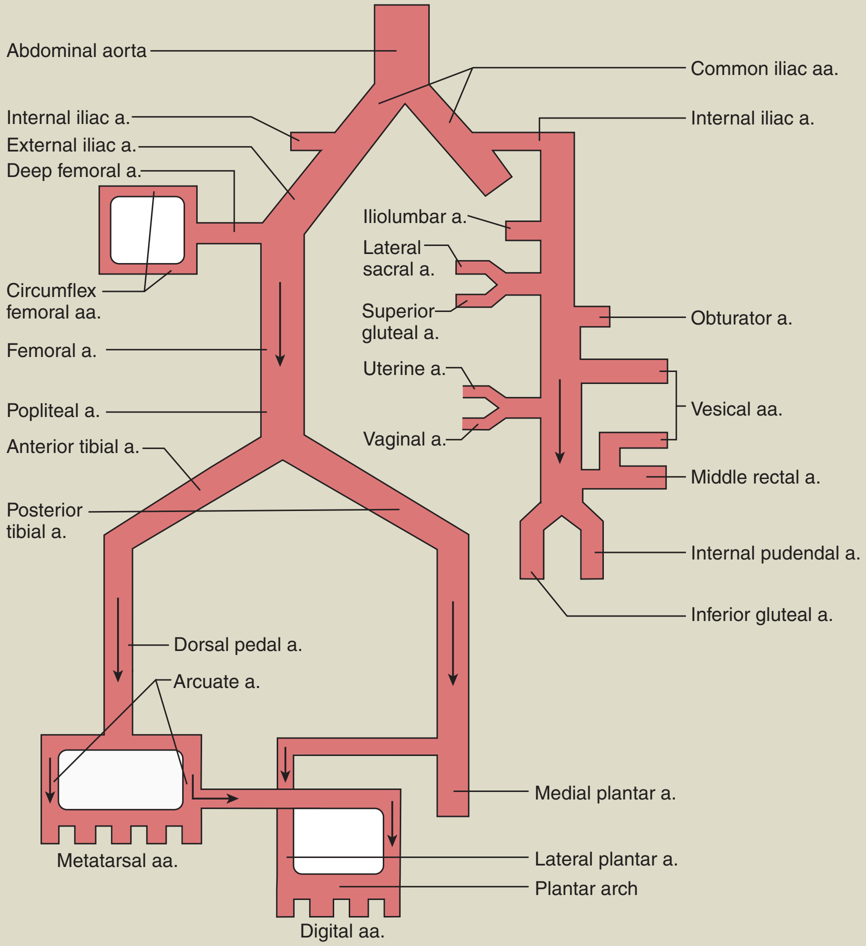

Abdominal aorta
Common iliac aa.
Internal iliac a.
External iliac a.
Deep femoral a.
Internal iliac a.
Iliolumbar a.
Lateral sacral a.
Circumflex femoral aa.
Superior gluteal a.
Obturator a.
Femoral a.
Uterine a.
Vesical aa.
Popliteal a.
Vaginal a.
Anterior tibial a.
Middle rectal a.
Posterior tibial a.
Internal pudendal a.
Inferior gluteal a.
Dorsal pedal a.
Arcuate a.
Medial plantar a.
Metatarsal aa.
Lateral plantar a.
Plantar arch
Digital aa.

Figure 20.30 Arterial Flowchart of the Lower Limb.
What arteries of the wrist and hand are most comparable to the arcuate artery and plantar arch of the foot?

In some places, major arteries come close enough to the body surface to be palpated. These places can be used to take a pulse, and they can serve as emergency **pressure points** where firm pressure can be applied to temporarily reduce arterial bleeding (fig. 20.31*a*). One of these points is the **femoral triangle** of the upper medial thigh (fig. 20.31*b, c*). This is an important landmark for arterial supply, venous drainage, and innervation of the lower limb. Its boundaries are the sartorius muscle laterally, the inguinal ligament superiorly, and the adductor longus muscle medially. The femoral artery, vein, and nerve run close to the surface at this point.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

25. Concisely contrast the destinations of the external and internal carotid arteries.
26. Briefly state the tissues that are supplied with blood by (a) the arterial circle, (b) the celiac trunk, (c) the superior mesenteric artery, and (d) the external iliac artery.
27. Trace the path of an RBC from the left ventricle to the metatarsal arteries. State two places along this path where you can palpate the arterial pulse.

Anatomy of the Systemic Veins

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to
- identify the principal veins of the systemic circuit; and
- trace the flow of blood from any major organ to the heart.

The principal veins of the systemic circuit (fig. 20.32) are detailed in tables 20.9 through 20.14. While arteries are usually deep and well protected, veins occur in both

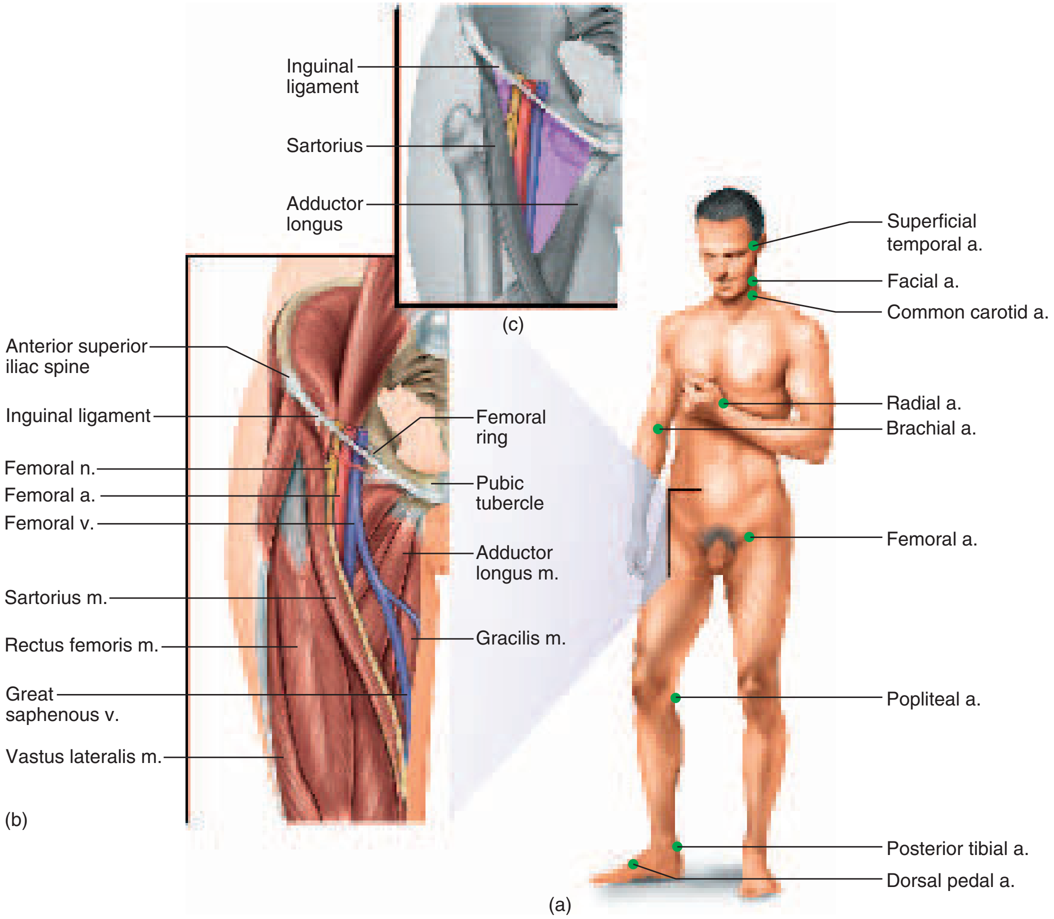

Inguinal ligament
Sartorius
Adductor longus
(c)
Anterior superior iliac spine
Inguinal ligament
Femoral n.
Femoral a.
Femoral v.
Sartorius m.
Rectus femoris m.
Great saphenous v.
Vastus lateralis m.
(b)
Femoral ring
Pubic tubercle
Adductor longus m.
Gracilis m.
Superficial temporal a.
Facial a.
Common carotid a.
Radial a.
Brachial a.
Femoral a.
Popliteal a.
Posterior tibial a.
Dorsal pedal a.
(a)

Figure 20.31 **Arterial Pressure Points.** (*a*) Areas where arteries lie close enough to the surface that a pulse can be palpated or pressure can be applied to reduce arterial bleeding. (*b*) Structures in the femoral triangle. (*c*) Boundaries of the femoral triangle.

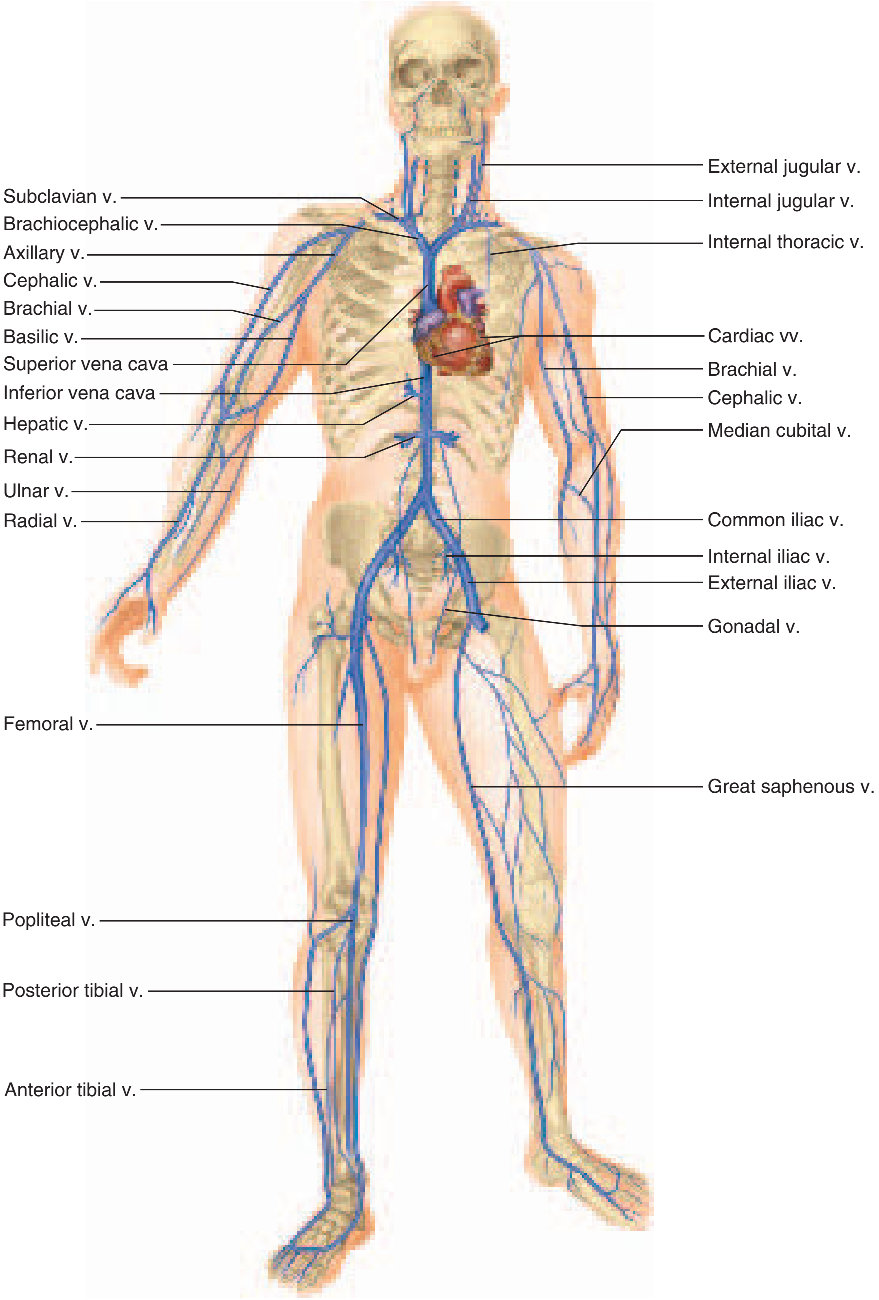

Subclavian v.
Brachiocephalic v.
Axillary v.
Cephalic v.
Brachial v.
Basilic v.
Superior vena cava
Inferior vena cava
Hepatic v.
Renal v.
Ulnar v.
Radial v.
Femoral v.
Popliteal v.
Posterior tibial v.
Anterior tibial v.
External jugular v.
Internal jugular v.
Internal thoracic v.
Cardiac vv.
Brachial v.
Cephalic v.
Median cubital v.
Common iliac v.
Internal iliac v.
External iliac v.
Gonadal v.
Great saphenous v.

Figure 20.32 **The Major Systemic Veins.** (*v.* = vein; *vv.* = veins)

Chapter 20

deep and superficial groups; you may be able to see quite a few of them in your arms and hands. Deep veins run parallel to the arteries and often have similar names (*femoral artery* and *femoral vein,* for example); this is not true of the superficial veins, however. The deep veins are not described in as much detail as the arteries were, since it can usually be assumed that they drain the same structures as the corresponding arteries supply.

In general, we began the study of arteries with those lying close to the heart and progressed away. In the venous system, by contrast, we begin with those that are remote from the heart and follow the flow of blood as they join each other and approach the heart. Venous pathways have more anastomoses than arterial pathways, so the route of blood flow is often not as clear. Many anastomoses are omitted from the following figures for clarity.

Table 20.9 Venous Drainage of the Head and Neck

Most blood of the head and neck is drained by three pairs of veins—the *internal jugular, external jugular,* and *vertebral veins.* This table traces their origins and drainage and follows them to the formation of the *brachiocephalic veins* and *superior vena cava* (fig. 20.33).

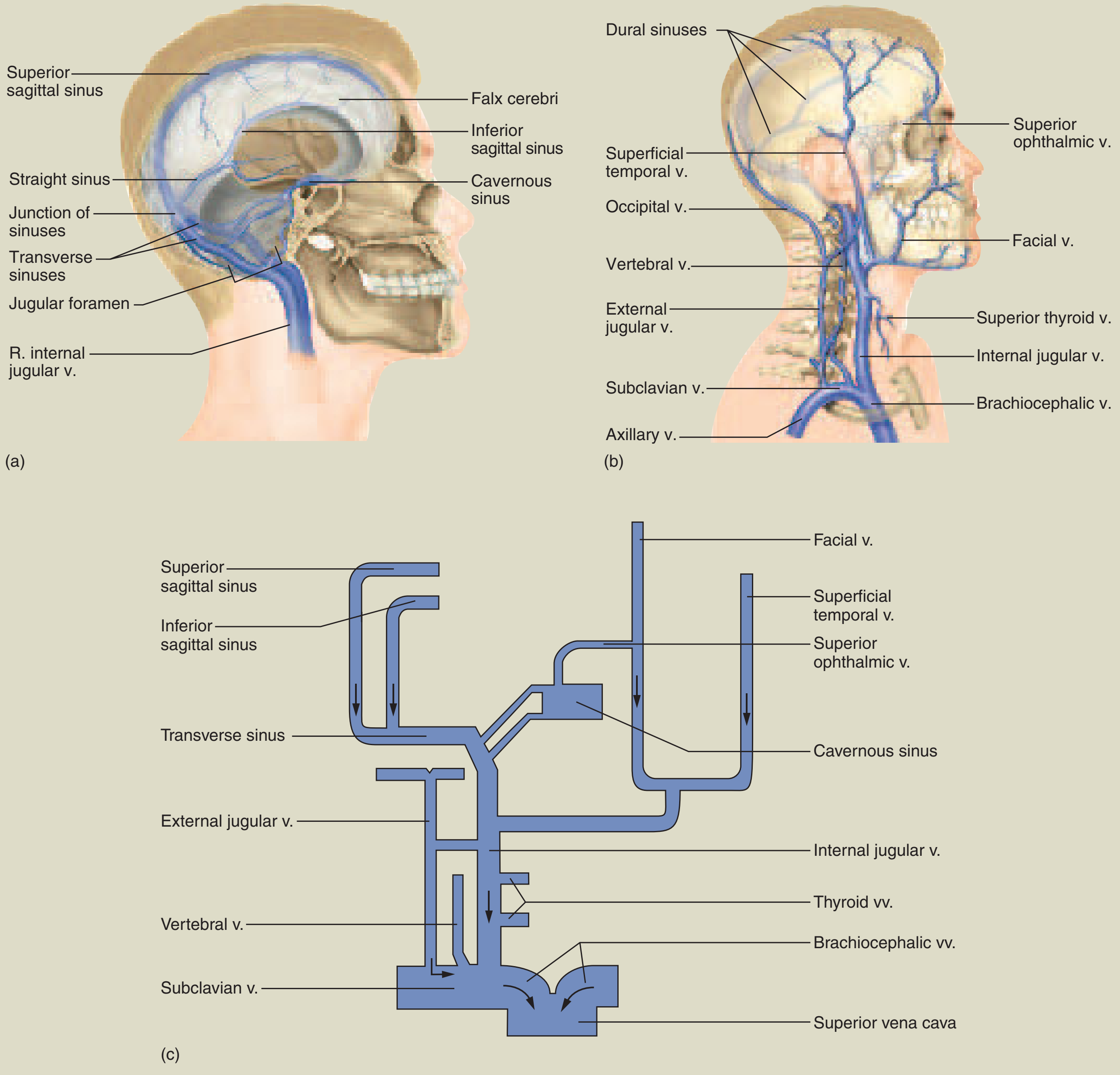

Superior sagittal sinus
Falx cerebri
Inferior sagittal sinus
Straight sinus
Cavernous sinus
Junction of sinuses
Transverse sinuses
Jugular foramen
R. internal jugular v.
(a)
Dural sinuses
Superior ophthalmic v.
Superficial temporal v.
Occipital v.
Facial v.
Vertebral v.
External jugular v.
Superior thyroid v.
Internal jugular v.
Subclavian v.
Brachiocephalic v.
Axillary v.
(b)
Facial v.
Superior sagittal sinus
Superficial temporal v.
Inferior sagittal sinus
Superior ophthalmic v.
Transverse sinus
Cavernous sinus
External jugular v.
Internal jugular v.
Thyroid vv.
Vertebral v.
Brachiocephalic vv.
Subclavian v.
Superior vena cava
(c)

Figure 20.33 **Veins Draining the Head and Neck.** (*a*) Deep venous drainage. (*b*) Superficial venous drainage. (*c*) Flowchart of venous drainage.

(continued)

Table 20.9 Venous Drainage of the Head and Neck (continued)

Dural Sinuses

Large thin-walled veins called **dural sinuses** occur within the cranial cavity between layers of dura mater. They receive blood from the brain and face and empty into the internal jugular veins:

1. The **superior** and **inferior sagittal sinuses** are found in the falx cerebri between the cerebral hemispheres; they receive blood that has circulated through the brain.
2. The **cavernous sinuses** occur on each side of the body of the sphenoid bone; they receive blood from the **superior ophthalmic vein** draining the orbit and the **facial vein** draining the nose and upper lip.
3. The **transverse (lateral) sinuses** encircle the inside of the occipital bone and lead to the jugular foramen on each side. They receive blood from the previously mentioned sinuses and empty into the internal jugular veins.

Major Veins of the Neck

Blood flows down the neck mainly through three veins on each side, all of which empty into the subclavian vein:

1. The **internal jugular**[23] (JUG-you-lur) **vein** courses down the neck, alongside the internal carotid artery, deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle. It receives most of the blood from the brain, picks up blood from the **facial vein** and **superficial temporal vein** along the way, passes deep to the clavicle, and joins the subclavian vein. (Note that the facial vein empties into both the cavernous sinus and the internal jugular vein.)
2. The **external jugular vein** drains tributaries from the parotid gland, facial muscles, scalp, and other superficial structures. Some of this blood also follows venous anastomoses to the internal jugular vein. The external jugular vein courses down the side of the neck superficial to the sternocleidomastoid muscle and empties into the subclavian vein.
3. The **vertebral vein** travels with the vertebral artery in the transverse foramina of the cervical vertebrae. Although the companion artery leads to the brain, the vertebral vein does not come from there. It drains the cervical vertebrae, spinal cord, and some of the small deep muscles of the neck.

Drainage from Shoulder to Heart

From the shoulder region, blood takes the following path to the heart:

1. The **subclavian vein** drains the arm and travels inferior to the clavicle; receives the external jugular, vertebral, and internal jugular veins in that order; and ends where it receives the internal jugular.
2. The **brachiocephalic vein** is formed by union of the subclavian and internal jugular veins. It continues medially and receives tributaries draining the upper thoracic wall and breast.
3. The **superior vena cava** is formed by the union of the right and left brachiocephalic veins. It travels inferiorly for about 7.5 cm and empties into the right atrium. It drains all structures superior to the diaphragm except the pulmonary circuit and coronary circulation. It also receives considerable drainage from the abdominal cavity by way of the azygos system (see table 20.11).

---

[23] *jugul* = neck, throat

Table 20.10 Venous Drainage of the Upper Limb

Table 20.9 briefly noted the subclavian veins that drain each arm. This table begins distally in the forearm and traces venous drainage to the subclavian vein (fig. 20.34).

Deep Veins

1. The **palmar digital veins** drain each finger into the **superficial venous palmar arch.**
2. The **metacarpal veins** parallel the metacarpal bones and drain blood from the hand into the **deep venous palmar arch.** Both the superficial and deep venous palmar arches are anastomoses between the next two veins, which are the major deep veins of the forearm.
3. The **radial vein** receives blood from the lateral side of both palmar arches and courses up the forearm alongside the radius.
4. The **ulnar vein** receives blood from the medial side of both palmar arches and courses up the forearm alongside the ulna.
5. The **brachial vein** is formed by the union of the radial and ulnar veins at the elbow; it courses up the brachium.
6. The **axillary vein** is formed at the axilla by the union of the brachial and basilic veins (the basilic vein is described in the next section).
7. The **subclavian vein** is a continuation of the axillary vein into the shoulder inferior to the clavicle. The further course of the subclavian is explained in the previous table.

(continued)

Table 20.10 Venous Drainage of the Upper Limb (continued)

Superficial Veins

These are easily seen through the skin of most people and are larger in diameter than the deep veins:

1. The **dorsal venous network** is a plexus of veins visible on the back of the hand; it empties into the major superficial veins of the forearm, the cephalic and basilic.
2. The **cephalic vein** arises from the lateral side of the dorsal venous arch, winds around the radius as it travels up the forearm, continues up the lateral aspect of the brachium to the shoulder, and joins the axillary vein there. Intravenous fluids are often administered through the distal end of this vein.
3. The **basilic**[24] (bah-SIL-ic) **vein** arises from the medial side of the dorsal venous arch, travels up the posterior aspect of the forearm, and continues into the brachium. About midway up the brachium it turns deeper and runs beside the brachial artery. At the axilla it joins the brachial vein, and the union of these two gives rise to the axillary vein.
4. The **median cubital vein** is a short anastomosis between the cephalic and basilic veins that obliquely crosses the cubital fossa (anterior bend of the elbow). It is clearly visible through the skin and is the most common site for drawing blood.
5. The **median antebrachial vein** originates near the base of the thumb, travels up the forearm between the radial and ulnar veins, and terminates at the elbow; it empties into the cephalic vein in some people and into the basilic vein in others.

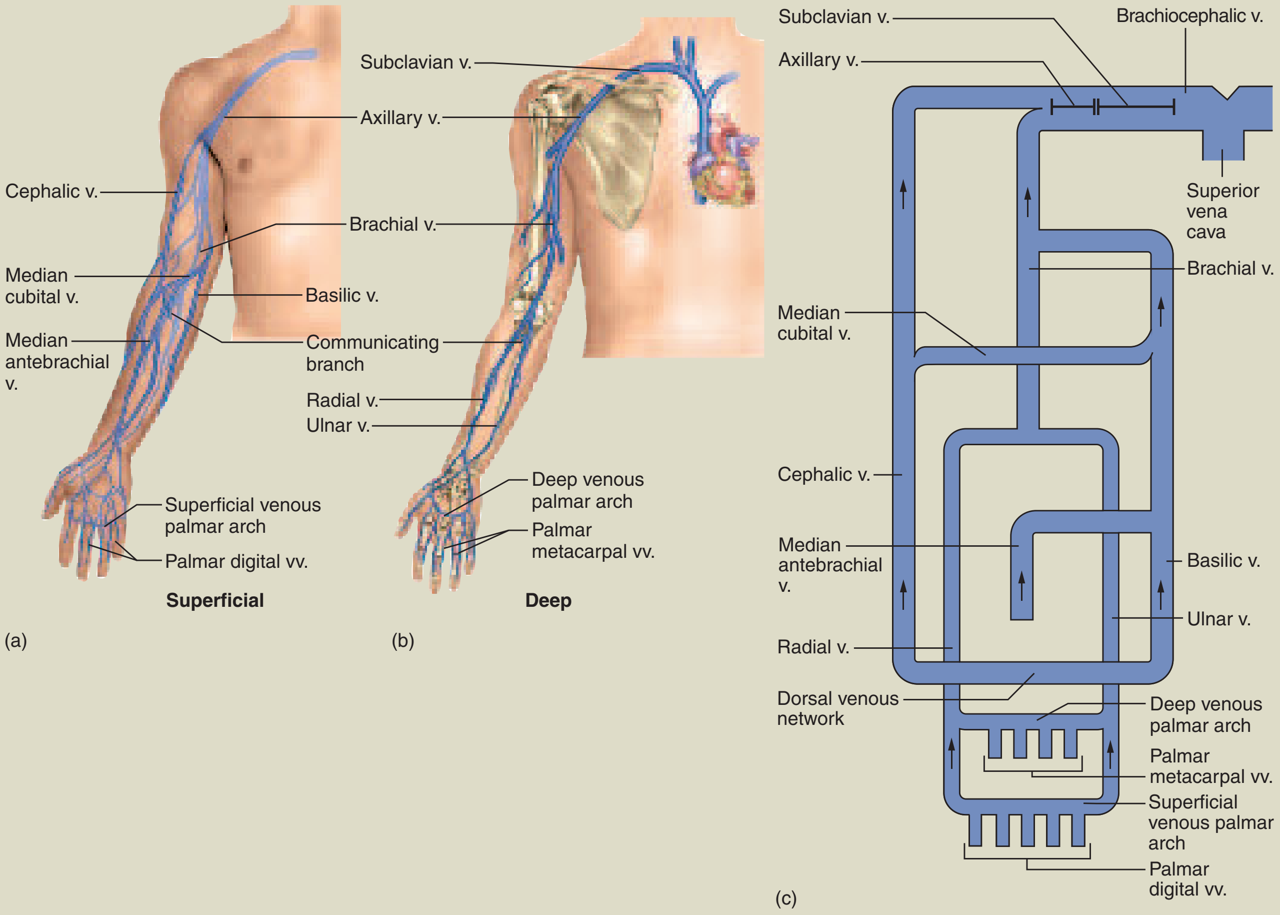

Subclavian v.
Axillary v.
Cephalic v.
Brachial v.
Median cubital v.
Basilic v.
Median antebrachial v.
Communicating branch
Radial v.
Ulnar v.
Deep venous palmar arch
Palmar metacarpal vv.
Superficial venous palmar arch
Palmar digital vv.
Superficial
Deep
(a)
(b)
Subclavian v.
Brachiocephalic v.
Axillary v.
Superior vena cava
Brachial v.
Median cubital v.
Cephalic v.
Median antebrachial v.
Basilic v.
Ulnar v.
Radial v.
Dorsal venous network
Deep venous palmar arch
Palmar metacarpal vv.
Superficial venous palmar arch
Palmar digital vv.
(c)

Figure 20.34 **Veins Draining the Upper Limb.** (*a*) Superficial venous drainage. (*b*) Deep venous drainage. (*c*) Flowchart of venous drainage.
Name three veins that are often visible through the skin of the upper limb.

---

[24] *basilic* = royal, prominent, important

Table 20.11 The Azygos System

The superior vena cava receives extensive drainage from the thoracic and abdominal walls by way of the **azygos** (AZ-ih-goss) **system** (fig. 20.35).

Drainage of the Abdominal Wall

A pair of **ascending lumbar veins** receive blood from the common iliac veins below and a series of short horizontal **lumbar veins** that drain the abdominal wall. The ascending lumbar veins anastomose with the inferior vena cava beside them and ascend through the diaphragm into the thoracic cavity.

Drainage of the Thorax

Right side. After penetrating the diaphragm, the right ascending lumbar vein becomes the **azygos**[25] **vein** of the thorax. The azygos receives blood from the right **posterior intercostal veins,** which drain the chest muscles, and from the **esophageal, mediastinal, pericardial,** and **right bronchial veins.** It then empties into the superior vena cava at the level of vertebra T4.

Left side. The left ascending lumbar vein continues into the thorax as the **hemiazygos**[26] **vein.** The hemiazygos drains the ninth through eleventh posterior intercostal veins and some esophageal and mediastinal veins on the left. At midthorax, it crosses over to the right side and empties into the azygos vein.

The **accessory hemiazygos vein** is a superior extension of the hemiazygos. It drains the fourth through eighth posterior intercostal veins and the left bronchial vein. It also crosses to the right side and empties into the azygos vein.

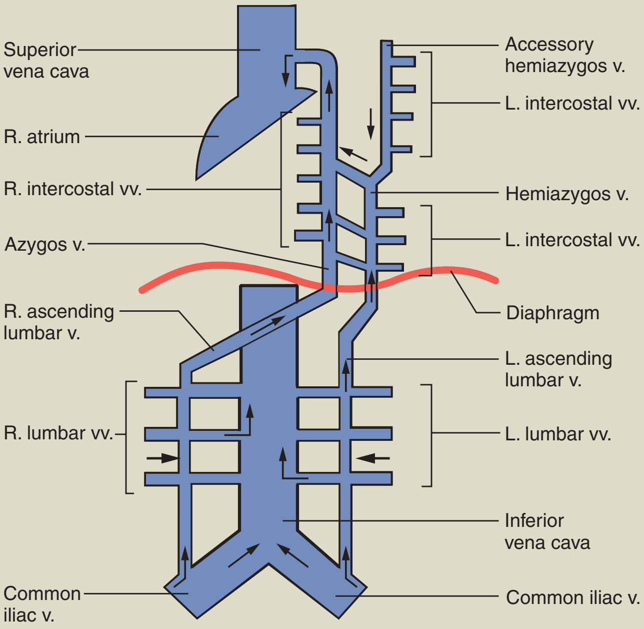

Superior vena cava
R. atrium
R. intercostal vv.
Azygos v.
R. ascending lumbar v.
R. lumbar vv.
Common iliac v.
Accessory hemiazygos v.
L. intercostal vv.
Hemiazygos v.
L. intercostal vv.
Diaphragm
L. ascending lumbar v.
L. lumbar vv.
Inferior vena cava
Common iliac v.

Figure 20.35 Veins of the Azygos System.

---

[25] unpaired; from *a* = without + *zygo* = union, mate

[26] *hemi* = half

Table 20.12 Major Tributaries of the Inferior Vena Cava

The **inferior vena cava (IVC)** is formed by the union of the right and left common iliac veins at the level of vertebra L5. It is retroperitoneal and lies immediately to the right of the aorta. Its diameter of 3.5 cm is the largest of any vessel in the body. As it ascends the abdominal cavity, the IVC picks up blood from numerous tributaries in the order listed here (fig. 20.36):

1. Some **lumbar veins** empty into the IVC as well as into the ascending lumbar veins described in table 20.11.
2. The **gonadal veins** (**ovarian veins** in the female and **testicular veins** in the male) drain the gonads. The right gonadal vein empties directly into the IVC, whereas the **left gonadal vein** empties into the left renal vein.
3. The **renal veins** drain the kidneys into the IVC. The left renal vein also receives blood from the left gonadal and left suprarenal veins.
4. The **suprarenal veins** drain the adrenal (suprarenal) glands. The right suprarenal empties directly into the IVC, and the left suprarenal empties into the renal vein.
5. The **hepatic veins** drain the liver; they extend a short distance from its superior surface to the IVC.
6. The **inferior phrenic veins** drain the inferior aspect of the diaphragm.

After receiving these inputs, the IVC penetrates the diaphragm and enters the right atrium from below. It does not receive any thoracic drainage.

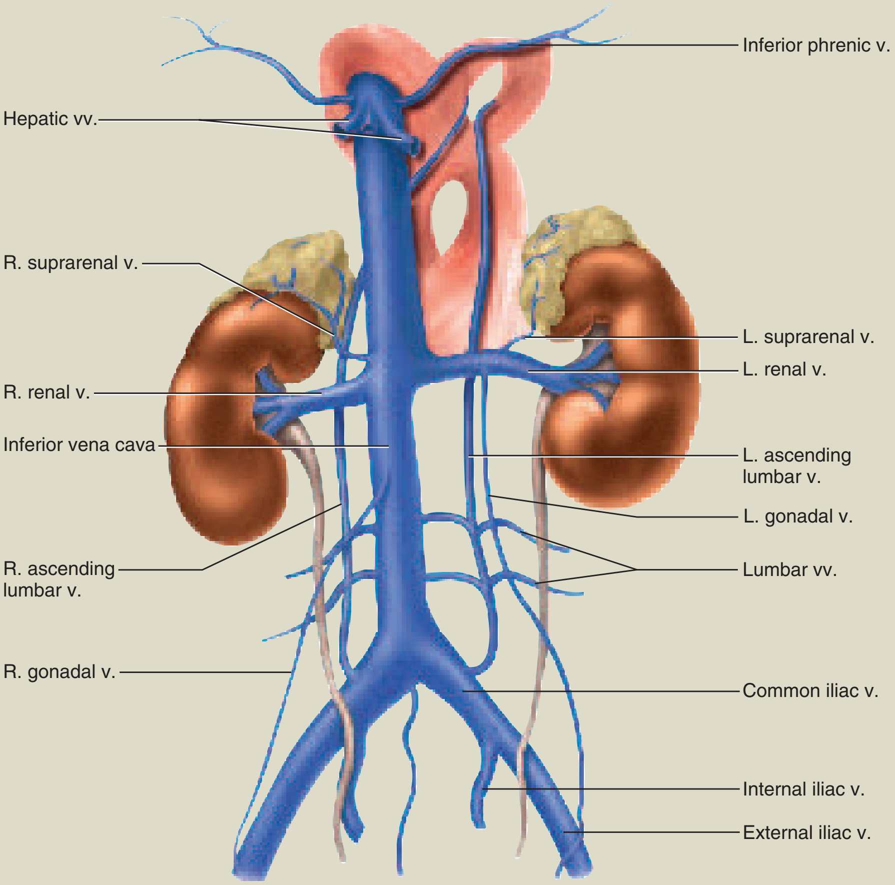

Inferior phrenic v.
Hepatic vv.
R. suprarenal v.
L. suprarenal v.
L. renal v.
R. renal v.
Inferior vena cava
L. ascending lumbar v.
L. gonadal v.
R. ascending lumbar v.
Lumbar vv.
R. gonadal v.
Common iliac v.
Internal iliac v.
External iliac v.

Figure 20.36 The Inferior Vena Cava and Its Tributaries.

Table 20.13 The Hepatic Portal System

The **hepatic portal system** connects capillaries of the intestines and other digestive organs to the **hepatic sinusoids** of the liver. The intestinal blood is richly laden with nutrients for a few hours following a meal. The hepatic portal system gives the liver "first claim" to these nutrients before the blood is distributed to the rest of the body. It also allows the blood to be cleansed of bacteria and toxins picked up from the intestines, an important function of the liver. The route from the intestines to the inferior vena cava follows (fig. 20.37):

1. The **inferior mesenteric vein** receives blood from the rectum and distal part of the large intestine. It converges in a fanlike array in the mesentery and empties into the splenic vein.
2. The **superior mesenteric vein** receives blood from the entire small intestine, ascending colon, transverse colon, and stomach. It, too, exhibits a fanlike arrangement in the mesentery and then joins the splenic vein to form the hepatic portal vein.
3. The **splenic vein** drains the spleen and travels across the abdominal cavity toward the liver. Along the way, it picks up the **pancreatic veins** from the pancreas and the inferior mesenteric vein. It changes name when it joins the superior mesenteric vein, as explained next.

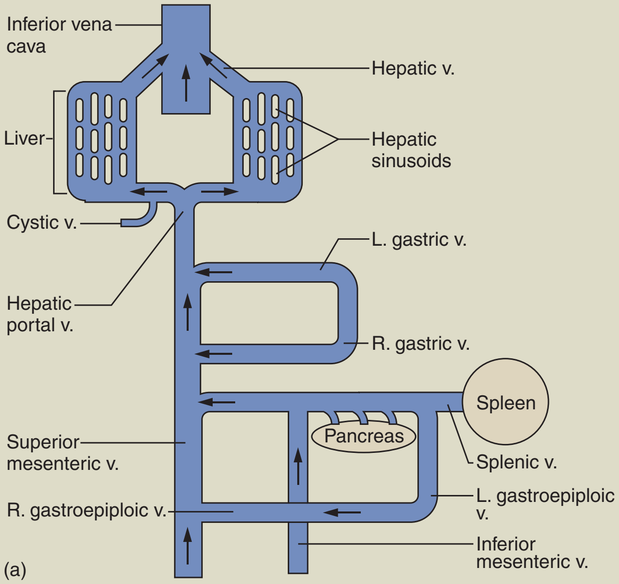

Inferior vena cava
Hepatic v.
Liver
Hepatic sinusoids
Cystic v.
L. gastric v.
Hepatic portal v.
R. gastric v.
Spleen
Pancreas
Superior mesenteric v.
Splenic v.
L. gastroepiploic v.
R. gastroepiploic v.
Inferior mesenteric v.
(a)

Figure 20.37 **Veins of the Hepatic Portal System and Its Tributaries.** (*a*) Flowchart. *(continued)*

Table 20.13 The Hepatic Portal System (continued)

4. The **hepatic portal vein** is formed by convergence of the splenic and superior mesenteric veins. It travels about 8 cm up and to the right and then enters the inferior surface of the liver. Near this point it receives the **cystic vein** from the gallbladder. In the liver, the hepatic portal vein ultimately leads to the innumerable microscopic hepatic sinusoids. Blood from the sinusoids empties into the hepatic veins described earlier. Circulation within the liver is described in more detail in chapter 25.
5. The left and right **gastric veins** form an arch along the lesser curvature of the stomach and empty into the hepatic portal vein.

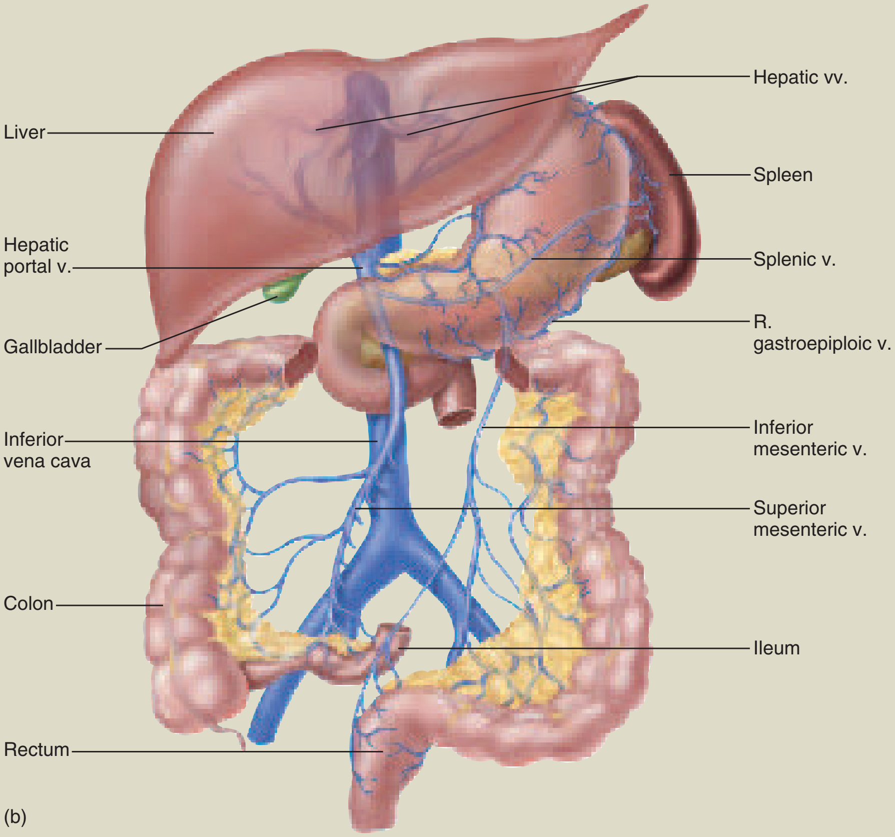

Liver
Hepatic portal v.
Gallbladder
Inferior vena cava
Colon
Rectum
(b)
Hepatic vv.
Spleen
Splenic v.
R. gastroepiploic v.
Inferior mesenteric v.
Superior mesenteric v.
Ileum

Figure 20.37 **Veins of the Hepatic Portal System and Its Tributaries (continued).** (*b*) Anatomy.

Table 20.14 Venous Drainage of the Lower Limb and Pelvic Organs

Drainage of the lower limb is described starting at the toes and following the flow of blood to the inferior vena cava (fig. 20.38). As in the upper limb, there are deep and superficial veins with anastomoses between them.

Deep Veins

1. The **plantar venous arch** drains the plantar aspect of the foot, receives blood from the **plantar digital veins** of the toes, and gives rise to the next vein.
2. The **posterior tibial vein** drains the plantar arch and passes up the leg embedded deep in the calf muscles; it receives drainage along the way from the **fibular (peroneal) vein.**
3. The **dorsal pedal vein** drains the dorsum of the foot.
4. The **anterior tibial vein** is a continuation of the dorsal pedal vein. It travels up the anterior compartment of the leg between the tibia and fibula.

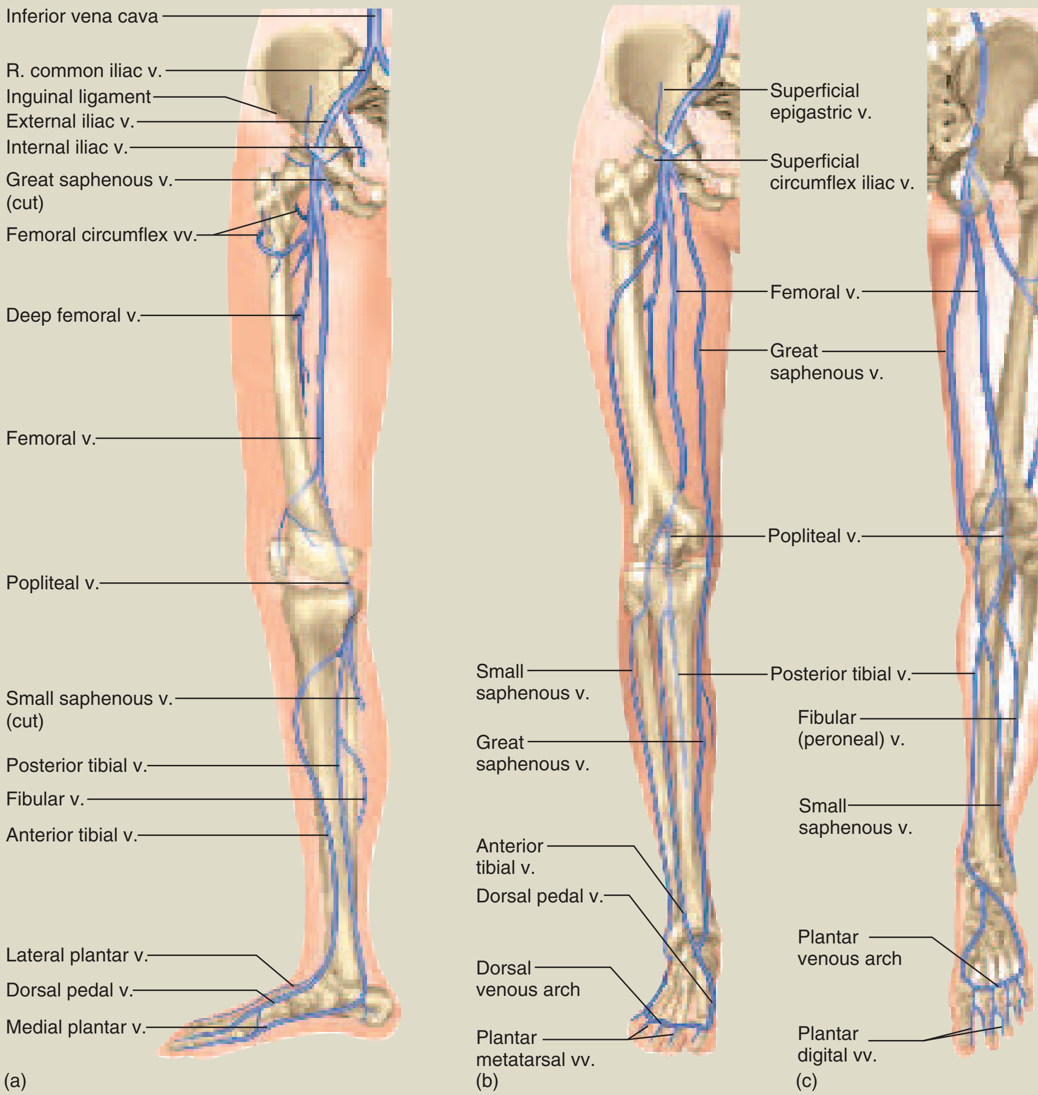

Inferior vena cava
R. common iliac v.
Inguinal ligament
External iliac v.
Internal iliac v.
Great saphenous v. (cut)
Femoral circumflex vv.
Deep femoral v.
Femoral v.
Popliteal v.
Small saphenous v. (cut)
Posterior tibial v.
Fibular v.
Anterior tibial v.
Lateral plantar v.
Dorsal pedal v.
Medial plantar v.
(a)
Superficial epigastric v.
Superficial circumflex iliac v.
Femoral v.
Great saphenous v.
Popliteal v.
Small saphenous v.
Great saphenous v.
Posterior tibial v.
Fibular (peroneal) v.
Small saphenous v.
Anterior tibial v.
Dorsal pedal v.
Dorsal venous arch
Plantar metatarsal vv.
(b)
Plantar venous arch
Plantar digital vv.
(c)

Figure 20.38 **Veins Draining the Lower Limb.** (*a*) Deep veins, anteromedial view of the right limb. (*b*) Anterior aspect of the right limb and dorsal aspect of the foot. (*c*) Posterior aspect of the right limb and plantar aspect of the foot. *(continued)*

(continued)

Table 20.14 Venous Drainage of the Lower Limb and Pelvic Organs (continued)

5. The **popliteal vein** is formed at the back of the knee by the union of the anterior and posterior tibial veins.
6. The **femoral vein** is a continuation of the popliteal vein into the thigh. It receives drainage from the deep thigh muscles and femur.
7. The **external iliac vein,** superior to the inguinal ligament, is formed by the union of the femoral vein and great saphenous vein (one of the superficial veins described next).
8. The **internal iliac vein** follows the course of the internal iliac artery and its distribution. Its tributaries drain the gluteal muscles; the medial aspect of the thigh; the urinary bladder, rectum, prostate, and ductus deferens in the male; and the uterus and vagina in the female.
9. The **common iliac vein** is formed by the union of the external and internal iliac veins; it also receives blood from the ascending lumbar vein. The right and left common iliacs then unite to form the inferior vena cava.

Superficial Veins

1. The **dorsal venous arch** is visible through the skin on the dorsum of the foot. It has numerous anastomoses similar to the dorsal venous network of the hand.
2. The **great saphenous**[27] (sah-FEE-nus) **vein,** the longest vein in the body, arises from the medial side of the dorsal venous arch. It traverses the medial aspect of the leg and thigh and terminates by emptying into the femoral vein, slightly inferior to the inguinal ligament. It is commonly used as a site for the long-term administration of intravenous fluids; it is a relatively accessible vein in infants and in patients in shock whose veins have collapsed. Portions of this vein are commonly excised and used as grafts in coronary bypass surgery.
3. The **small saphenous vein** arises from the lateral side of the dorsal venous arch, courses up the lateral aspect of the foot and through the calf muscles, and terminates at the knee by emptying into the popliteal vein. It has numerous anastomoses with the great saphenous vein. The great and small saphenous veins are among the most common sites of varicose veins.

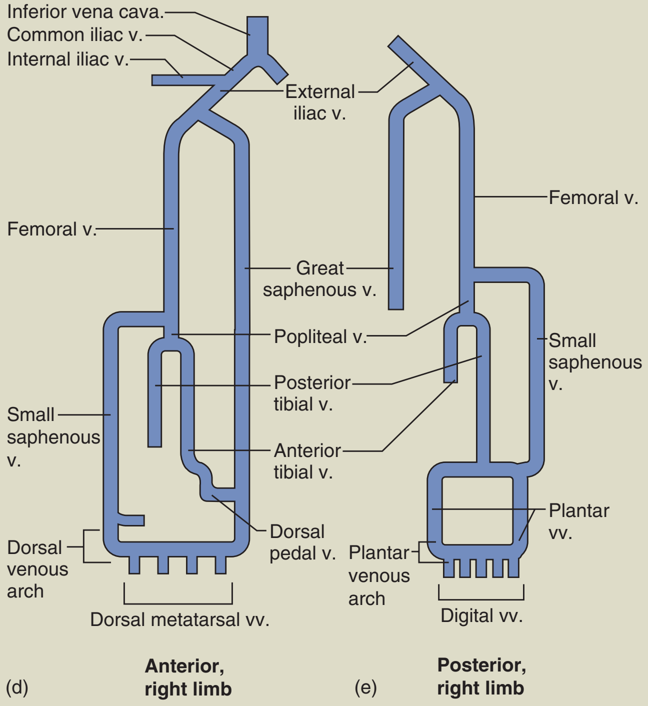

Inferior vena cava.
Common iliac v.
Internal iliac v.
External iliac v.
Femoral v.
Great saphenous v.
Popliteal v.
Posterior tibial v.
Anterior tibial v.
Small saphenous v.
Dorsal pedal v.
Dorsal venous arch
Dorsal metatarsal vv.
Femoral v.
Small saphenous v.
Plantar vv.
Plantar venous arch
Digital vv.
(d)
Anterior, right limb
(e)
Posterior, right limb

Figure 20.38 **Veins Draining the Lower Limb (continued).** (*d*) Flowchart of venous drainage of the right limb, anterior aspect. (*e*) Flowchart of the same limb, posterior aspect.

---

[27] *saphen* = standing

Table 20.15 Some Disorders of the Arteries and Veins

Dissecting aneurysm	Splitting of the layers of an arterial wall from each other because of the accumulation of blood between layers. Results from either a tear in the tunica intima or rupture of the vasa vasorum.
Fat embolism	The presence of fat globules traveling in the bloodstream. Globules originate from bone fractures, fatty degeneration of the liver, and other causes and may block cerebral or pulmonary blood vessels.
Orthostatic hypotension	A decrease in blood pressure that occurs when one stands, often resulting in blurring of vision, dizziness, and syncope (fainting). Results from sluggish or inactive baroreflexes.

Disorders described elsewhere

Aneurysm 754
Atherosclerosis 741
Circulatory shock 765
Edema 762
Embolism 707
Hypertension 792
Hypotension 754
Stroke 766
Transient ischemic attack 766
Varicose veins 753

Chapter 29 describes the effects of aging on the circulatory system, and table 20.15 lists some disorders of the blood vessels. Disorders of the blood and heart are tabulated in chapters 18 and 19.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

28. If you were dissecting a cadaver, where would you look for the internal and external jugular veins? What muscle would help you distinguish one from the other?
29. How do the vertebral veins differ from the vertebral arteries in their superior terminations?
30. By what route does blood from the abdominal wall reach the superior vena cava?
31. Trace one possible path of an RBC from the fingertips to the right atrium and name the veins along the way.
32. State two ways in which the great saphenous vein has special clinical significance. Where is this vein located?

Insight 20.4 Clinical Application

Hypertension—The "Silent Killer"

Hypertension, the most common cardiovascular disease, affects about 30% of Americans over age 50 and 50% by age 74. It is a "silent killer" that can wreak its destructive effects for 10 to 20 years before its effects are first noticed. Hypertension is the major cause of heart failure, stroke, and kidney failure. It damages the heart because it increases the afterload, which makes the ventricles work harder to expel blood. The myocardium enlarges up to a point (the *hypertrophic response*), but eventually it becomes excessively stretched and less efficient. Hypertension strains the blood vessels and tears the endothelium, thereby creating lesions that become focal points of atherosclerosis. Atherosclerosis then worsens the hypertension and establishes an insidious positive feedback cycle.

Another positive feedback cycle involves the kidneys. Their arterioles thicken in response to the stress, their lumens become narrower, and renal blood flow declines. When the kidneys detect the resulting drop in blood pressure, they release renin, which leads to the formation of the vasoconstrictor angiotensin II and the release of aldosterone, a hormone that promotes salt retention (described in detail in chapter 24). These effects worsen the hypertension that already existed. If diastolic pressure exceeds 120 mmHg, blood vessels of the eye hemorrhage, blindness ensues, the kidneys and heart deteriorate rapidly, and death usually follows within 2 years.

Primary hypertension, which accounts for 90% of cases, results from such a complex web of behavioral, hereditary, and other factors that it is difficult to sort out any specific underlying cause. It was once considered such a normal part of the "essence" of aging that it continues to be called by another name, *essential hypertension.* That term suggests a fatalistic resignation to hypertension as a fact of life, but this need not be. Many risk factors have been identified, and most of them are controllable.

One of the chief culprits is obesity. Each pound of extra fat requires miles of additional blood vessels to serve it, and all of this added vessel length increases peripheral resistance and blood pressure. Just carrying around extra weight, of course, also increases the workload on the heart. Even a small weight loss can significantly reduce blood pressure. Sedentary behavior is another risk factor. Aerobic exercise helps to reduce hypertension by controlling weight, reducing emotional tension, and stimulating vasodilation.

Dietary factors are also significant contributors to hypertension. Diets high in cholesterol and saturated fat contribute to atherosclerosis. Potassium and magnesium reduce blood pressure; thus, diets deficient in these minerals promote hypertension. The relationship of salt intake to hypertension has been a very controversial subject. The kidneys compensate so effectively for excess salt intake that dietary salt has little effect on the blood pressure of most people. Reduced salt intake may, however, help to control hypertension in older people and in people with reduced renal function.

Nicotine makes a particularly devastating contribution to hypertension because it stimulates the myocardium to beat faster and harder; it also stimulates vasoconstriction and thus increases the afterload against which the myocardium must work. Just when the heart needs extra oxygen, nicotine causes coronary vasoconstriction and promotes myocardial ischemia.

Some risk factors cannot be changed at will—race, heredity, and sex. Hypertension runs in some families. A person whose parents or siblings have hypertension is more likely than average to develop it. The incidence of hypertension is about 30% higher, and the incidence of strokes about twice as high, among blacks as among whites. From ages 18 to 54, hypertension is more common in men, but above age 65, it is more common in women. Even people at risk from these factors, however, can minimize their chances of hypertension by changing risky behaviors.

Treatments for primary hypertension include weight loss, diet, and certain drugs. Diuretics lower blood volume and pressure by promoting urination. ACE inhibitors block the formation of the vasoconstrictor angiotensin II. Beta-blockers such as propranolol block the vasoconstrictive action of the sympathetic nervous system. Calcium channel blockers such as verapamil and nifedipine inhibit the inflow of calcium into cardiac and smooth muscle, thus inhibiting their contraction and promoting vasodilation and reduced cardiac workload.

Secondary hypertension, which accounts for about 10% of cases, is high blood pressure that is secondary to (results from) other identifiable disorders. These include kidney disease (which may cause renin hypersecretion), atherosclerosis, hyperthyroidism, Cushing syndrome, and polycythemia. Secondary hypertension is corrected by treating the underlying disease.

Connective Issues

Interactions Between the CIRCULATORY SYSTEM and Other Organ Systems

← indicates ways in which this system affects other systems
→ indicates ways in which other systems affect this one

All Systems

Circulatory system delivers O_2 and nutrients to all other systems and carries away wastes; carries heat from deeper organs to skin for elimination

Integumentary System

← Dermal blood flow affects sweat production

→ Serves as blood reservoir; helps to regulate blood temperature

Skeletal System

← Provides minerals for bone deposition; delivers erythropoietin to bone marrow and delivers hormones that regulate skeletal growth

→ Skeleton provides protective enclosure for heart and thoracic vessels; serves as reservoir of calcium needed for heart contractions; bone marrow carries out hemopoiesis

Muscular System

← Removes heat generated by exercise

→ Helps to regulate blood temperature; respiratory and limb muscles aid venous return; aerobic exercise enhances circulatory efficiency

Nervous System

← Endothelial cells of blood vessels maintain blood-brain barrier and help to produce CSF

→ Modulates heart rate, strength of contraction, and vasomotion; governs routing of blood flow; monitors blood pressure and composition and activates homeostatic mechanisms to regulate these

Endocrine System

← Transports hormones to their target cells

→ Regulates blood volume and pressure; stimulates hemopoiesis

Lymphatic/Immune System

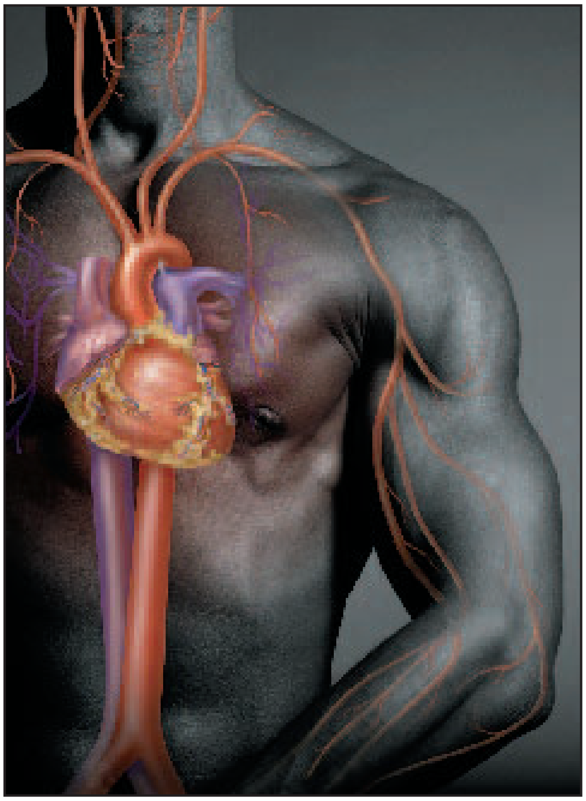
← Produces tissue fluid, which becomes lymph; provides the WBCs and plasma proteins employed in immunity

→ Lymphatic and circulatory systems jointly regulate fluid balance; lymphatic system returns fluid to bloodstream; spleen acts as RBC and platelet reservoir; lymphatic tissues produce lymphocytes; immune cells protect circulatory system from pathogens

Respiratory System

← Delivers and carries away respiratory gases; low capillary blood pressure keeps alveoli dry

→ Site of exchange for blood gases; helps to regulate blood pH; thoracic pump aids venous return



Urinary System

← Blood pressure maintains kidney function

→ Controls blood volume, pressure, and composition; initiates renin-angiotensin-aldosterone mechanism; regulates RBC count by producing erythropoietin

Digestive System

← Carries away absorbed nutrients; helps to reabsorb and recycle bile salts and minerals from intestines

→ Provides nutrients for hemopoiesis; affects blood composition

Reproductive System

← Distributes sex hormones; vasodilation causes erection

→ Estrogens may slow development of atherosclerosis in women; testosterone stimulates erythropoiesis

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

General Anatomy of the Blood Vessels (p. 748)

1. Blood flows away from the heart in arteries and back to the heart in veins.
2. Between the arteries and veins, it normally flows through one capillary bed. Portal systems and anastomoses are exceptions to this rule.
3. The wall of a blood vessel has three layers: *tunica externa, tunica media,* and *tunica intima.* The tunica intima is lined with a simple squamous *endothelium.*
4. Arteries are classified as *conducting, distributing,* and *resistance arteries* from largest to smallest. Conducting arteries are subject to the highest blood pressure and have the most elastic tissue; distributing and resistance arteries contain more smooth muscle relative to their size.
5. The smallest of the resistance arteries are *arterioles. Metarterioles* link arterioles with capillaries.
6. Capillaries are the primary point of fluid exchange with the tissues. Their wall is composed of endothelium and basement membrane only.
7. Capillaries are arranged in networks called capillary beds, supplied by a single metarteriole. Precapillary sphincters regulate blood flow through a capillary bed.
8. The two types of capillaries are *continuous* and *fenestrated. Sinusoids* are irregular blood spaces of either the continuous or fenestrated type.
9. The smallest veins, or *venules,* also exchange fluid with the tissues. They converge to form medium veins, and medium veins converge to form large veins.
10. Veins have relatively low blood pressures and therefore have thinner walls and less muscular and elastic tissue. Medium veins of the limbs have valves to prevent the backflow of blood.

Blood Pressure, Resistance, and Flow (p. 753)

1. *Blood flow* (mL/min) and *perfusion* (flow/g of tissue) vary with the metabolic needs of a tissue.
2. Flow (F) is directly proportional to the pressure difference between two points (ΔP) and inversely proportional to resistance (R): $F \propto \Delta P/R$.
3. Blood pressure (BP) is usually measured with a sphygmomanometer. Arterial pressures are expressed as systolic over diastolic pressure—for example, 120/80 mmHg.
4. *Pulse pressure* is systolic minus diastolic pressure. *Mean arterial pressure* is the average pressure in a vessel over the course of a cardiac cycle, estimated as diastolic pressure + 1/3 of pulse pressure.
5. Chronic, abnormally high BP is *hypertension* and low BP is *hypotension.*
6. The expansion and contraction of arteries during the cardiac cycle reduces the pulse pressure and eases the strain on smaller arteries, but arterial blood flow is nevertheless pulsatile. In capillaries and veins, flow is steady (without pulsation).
7. *Peripheral resistance* is resistance to blood flow in the blood vessels. Resistance is directly proportional to blood viscosity and vessel length, and inversely proportional to vessel radius to the fourth power (r^4). Changes in vessel radius *(vasomotion)* thus have the greatest influence on flow from moment to moment.
8. Blood flow is fastest in the aorta, slowest in the capillaries, and speeds up somewhat in the veins.
9. Blood pressure is controlled mainly by local, neural, and hormonal control of vasomotion.
10. *Autoregulation* is the ability of a tissue to regulate its own blood supply. Over the short term, local vasomotion is stimulated by *vasoactive chemicals* (histamine, nitric oxide, and others). Over the long term, autoregulation can be achieved by *angiogenesis,* the growth of new vessels.
11. Neural control of blood vessels is based in the *vasomotor center* of the medulla oblongata. This center integrates *baroreflexes, chemoreflexes,* and the *medullary ischemic reflex,* and issues signals to the blood vessels by way of sympathetic nerve fibers.
12. Blood pressure is regulated in various ways by the hormones angiotensin II, aldosterone, atrial natriuretic peptide, antidiuretic hormone, epinephrine, and norepinephrine.
13. Vasomotion often shifts blood flow from organs with less need of perfusion at a given time, to organs with greater need—for example, away from the intestines and to the skeletal muscles during exercise.

Capillary Exchange (p. 761)

1. *Capillary exchange* is a two-way movement of water and solutes between the blood and tissue fluids across the walls of the capillaries and venules.
2. Materials pass through the vessel wall by diffusion, transcytosis, filtration, and reabsorption, passing through intercellular clefts, fenestrations, and the endothelial cell cytoplasm.
3. Fluid is forced out of the vessels by blood pressure and the negative hydrostatic pressure of the interstitial space. The force drawing fluid back into the capillaries is colloid osmotic pressure. The difference between the outward and inward forces is an outward *net filtration pressure* or an inward *net reabsorption pressure.*
4. Capillaries typically give off fluid at the arterial end, where the relatively high blood pressure overrides reabsorption; they reabsorb about 85% as much fluid at the venous end, where colloid osmotic pressure overrides the lower blood pressure.

5. About 15% of the tissue fluid is reabsorbed by the lymphatic system.
6. Fluid exchange dynamics vary from place to place in the body (some capillaries engage solely in filtration and some solely in reabsorption) and from moment to moment (as vasomotion shifts the balance between filtration and reabsorption).
7. Accumulation of excess tissue fluid is *edema.* It results from increased capillary filtration, reduced reabsorption, or obstructed lymphatic drainage.

Venous Return and Circulatory Shock (p. 763)

1. *Venous return,* the flow of blood back to the heart, is driven by the venous blood pressure gradient, gravity, the skeletal muscle pump (aided by valves in the veins of the limbs), the thoracic pump, and cardiac suction.
2. Exercise increases venous return because the vessels dilate, the thoracic pump and skeletal muscle pump work more energetically, and cardiac output is elevated.
3. Inactivity allows blood to accumulate in low points in the body by gravity; this is called *venous pooling.* It can result in *syncope* (fainting) if too much blood drains away from the brain.
4. *Circulatory shock* is any state of inadequate cardiac output. Its two basic categories are *cardiogenic shock* and *low venous return (LVR) shock.*
5. The main forms of LVR shock are *hypovolemic, obstructed venous return,* and *venous pooling shock.*
6. *Septic shock* and *anaphylactic shock* combine elements of hypovolemia and venous pooling.
7. *Compensated shock* is corrected by the body's homeostatic mechanisms. *Decompensated shock* is life-threatening, incapable of self-correction, and requires clinical intervention.

Special Circulatory Routes (p. 766)

1. The brain receives a relatively stable total blood flow of about 700 mL/min, but flow shifts rapidly from one part of the brain to another during varying cerebral activities.
2. The brain regulates its own blood flow in response to changes in BP and pH.
3. *Transient ischemic attacks* result from brief periods of cerebral ischemia (poor blood flow). A *cerebral vascular accident* (stroke) results from a permanent loss of perfusion due to arterial blockage or rupture.
4. Skeletal muscles receive highly variable flow depending on their state of activity. Most muscle capillary beds are shut down at rest. During exercise, flow increases in response to muscle metabolites and sympathetic vasodilation.
5. The pulmonary circuit is the only route in which arteries carry less oxygen than veins do.
6. Pulmonary arteries have relatively low BP and slow flow, which allows ample time for gas exchange and promotes capillary reabsorption. The latter prevents fluid from accumulating in the lungs.
7. Pulmonary arteries, unlike systemic arteries, constrict in response to hypoxia, so less blood is sent to poorly ventilated areas of the lung.

Anatomy of the Pulmonary Circuit (p. 767)

1. The route of blood flow in the pulmonary circuit is right ventricle of the heart → pulmonary trunk → pulmonary arteries → lobar arteries → alveolar capillary beds → venules → pulmonary veins → left atrium of the heart.
2. The pulmonary circuit serves only to exchange CO_2 for O_2 in the blood. The metabolic needs of the lung tissue are met by a separate systemic blood supply to the lungs, via the bronchial arteries.

Anatomy of the Systemic Arteries (p. 767)

1. The systemic circulation begins with the ascending aorta. Table 20.3 describes the major branches of the aorta.
2. The head and neck receive blood from the common carotid and vertebral arteries. Table 20.4 describes the branches of these arteries.
3. The upper limbs receive blood from the subclavian arteries. Table 20.5 describes the branches of these arteries in the limb.
4. The thoracic organs receive blood from several small branches of the thoracic aorta and the subclavian and axillary arteries. Table 20.6 describes these branches.
5. After passing through the diaphragm, the descending aorta gives off a series of branches to the abdominal viscera. Table 20.7 describes these.
6. At its inferior end, the abdominal aorta forks into two common iliac arteries, whose distal branches supply the pelvic region and lower limb. Table 20.8 describes these.
7. Arteries tend to be deeper than veins, but there are several places where they come close enough to the surface to be palpated. These sites serve for taking a pulse and as emergency *pressure points* where compression can stop arterial bleeding.

Anatomy of the Systemic Veins (p. 781)

1. In venous circulation, blood flows through smaller veins that join to form progressively larger ones. Veins that merge to create a larger one are called *tributaries.*
2. The head and neck are drained by the jugular and vertebral veins, which ultimately converge to form the *superior vena cava* leading to the right atrium of the heart. Table 20.9 describes the tributaries that drain the head and neck.
3. Table 20.10 describes tributaries in the upper limb that converge to drain the limb via the axillary and subclavian veins.
4. The thoracic viscera are drained by the *azygos system,* described in table 20.11.
5. The abdominal viscera are drained by tributaries of the *inferior vena cava (IVC),* described in table 20.12.
6. The digestive system is drained by the *hepatic portal system* of veins, described in table 20.13.
7. Table 20.14 describes tributaries of the lower limbs, which ultimately converge on the *common iliac veins.* The two common iliac veins join to form the IVC.

Selected Vocabulary

portal system 748
anastomosis 748
endothelium 750
artery 750
arteriole 750
continuous capillary 752
fenestrated capillary 752
sinusoid 752
venule 752
perfusion 753
systolic pressure 754
diastolic pressure 754
vasoconstriction 755
vasodilation 755
angiogenesis 757
baroreceptor 758
capillary exchange 761
oncotic pressure 762
edema 762
circulatory shock 765
anaphylactic shock 765

Testing Your Recall

1. Blood normally flows into a capillary bed from
   a. the distributing arteries.
   b. the conducting arteries.
   c. a metarteriole.
   d. a thoroughfare channel.
   e. the venules.

2. Plasma solutes enter the tissue fluid most easily from
   a. continuous capillaries.
   b. fenestrated capillaries.
   c. arteriovenous anastomoses.
   d. collateral vessels.
   e. venous anastomoses.

3. A blood vessel adapted to withstand a high pulse pressure would be expected to have
   a. an elastic tunica media.
   b. a thick tunica intima.
   c. one-way valves.
   d. a flexible endothelium.
   e. a rigid tunica media.

4. The substance most likely to cause a rapid drop in blood pressure is
   a. epinephrine.
   b. norepinephrine.
   c. angiotensin II.
   d. serotonin.
   e. histamine.

5. A person with a systolic blood pressure of 130 mmHg and a diastolic pressure of 85 mmHg would have a mean arterial pressure of about
   a. 85 mmHg.
   b. 100 mmHg.
   c. 108 mmHg.
   d. 115 mmHg.
   e. 130 mmHg.

6. The velocity of blood flow decreases if
   a. vessel radius increases.
   b. blood pressure increases.
   c. viscosity increases.
   d. afterload increases.
   e. vasomotion decreases.

7. Blood flows faster in a venule than in a capillary because venules
   a. have one-way valves.
   b. exhibit vasomotion.
   c. are closer to the heart.
   d. have higher blood pressures.
   e. have larger diameters.

8. In a case where interstitial hydrostatic pressure is negative, the only force causing capillaries to reabsorb fluid is
   a. colloid osmotic pressure of the blood.
   b. colloid osmotic pressure of the tissue fluid.
   c. capillary hydrostatic pressure.
   d. interstitial hydrostatic pressure.
   e. net filtration pressure.

9. Intestinal blood flows to the liver by way of
   a. the superior mesenteric artery.
   b. the celiac trunk.
   c. the inferior vena cava.
   d. the azygos system.
   e. the hepatic portal system.

10. The brain receives blood from all of the following vessels *except* the _____ artery or vein.
    a. basilar
    b. vertebral
    c. internal carotid
    d. internal jugular
    e. anterior communicating

11. The highest arterial blood pressure attained during ventricular contraction is called ______ pressure. The lowest attained during ventricular relaxation is called ______ pressure.

12. The capillaries of skeletal muscles are of the structural type called ______.

13. ______ shock occurs as a result of exposure to an antigen to which one is hypersensitive.

14. The role of breathing in venous return is called the ______.

15. The difference between the colloid osmotic pressure of blood and that of the tissue fluid is called ______.

16. Movement across the capillary endothelium by the uptake and release of fluid droplets is called ______.

17. All efferent fibers of the vasomotor center belong to the ______ division of the autonomic nervous system.

18. The pressure sensors in the major arteries near the head are called ______.

19. Most of the blood supply to the brain comes from a ring of arterial anastomoses called ______.

20. The major superficial veins of the arm are the ______ on the medial side and ______ on the lateral side.

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. In some circulatory pathways, blood can get from an artery to a vein without going through capillaries.
2. In some cases, a blood cell may pass through two capillary beds in a single trip from left ventricle to right atrium.
3. The body's longest blood vessel is the great saphenous vein.
4. Arteries have a series of valves that ensure a one-way flow of blood.
5. If the radius of a blood vessel doubles and all other factors remain the same, blood flow through that vessel also doubles.
6. The femoral triangle is bordered by the inguinal ligament, sartorius muscle, and adductor longus muscle.
7. The lungs receive both pulmonary and systemic blood.
8. Blood capillaries must reabsorb all the fluid they emit, or else edema will occur.
9. An aneurysm is a ruptured blood vessel.
10. Anaphylactic shock is a form of hypovolemic shock.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. It is a common lay perception that systolic blood pressure should be 100 plus a person's age. Evaluate the validity of this statement.
2. Calculate the net filtration or reabsorption pressure at a point in a hypothetical capillary assuming a hydrostatic blood pressure of 28 mmHg, an interstitial hydrostatic pressure of −2 mmHg, a blood COP of 25 mmHg, and an interstitial COP of 4 mmHg. Give the magnitude (in mmHg) and direction (in or out) of the net pressure.
3. Aldosterone secreted by the adrenal gland must be delivered to the kidney immediately below. Trace the route that an aldosterone molecule must take from the adrenal gland to the kidney, naming all major blood vessels in the order traveled.
4. People in shock commonly exhibit paleness, cool skin, tachycardia, and a weak pulse. Explain the physiological basis for each of these signs.
5. Discuss why it is advantageous to have baroreceptors in the aortic arch and carotid sinus rather than in some other location such as the common iliac arteries.

Answers at the Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Legend Questions

20.2 Veins are subjected to less pressure than arteries and have less need of elasticity.

20.17 Nothing would happen if he lifted his finger from point *O* because the valve at that point would prevent blood from flowing downward and filling the vein. If he lifted his finger from point *H*, blood would flow upward, fill the vein, and the vein between *O* and *H* would stand out.

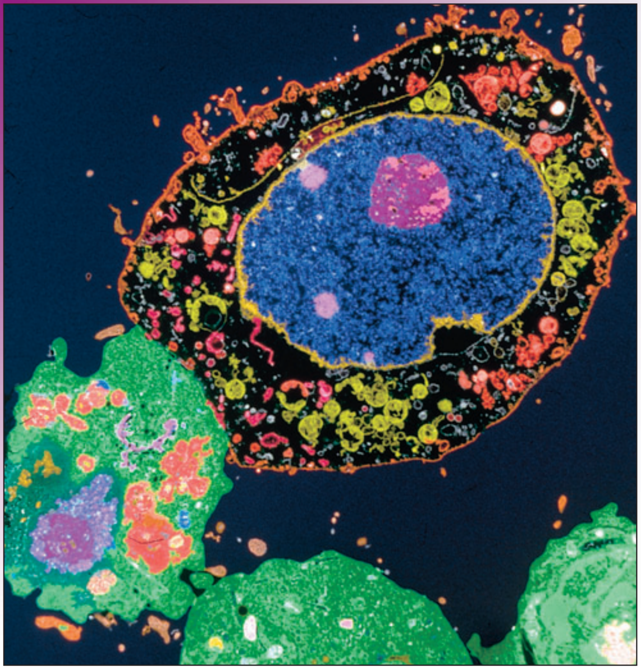
20.22 Aorta → left common carotid a. → external carotid a. → superficial temporal a.

20.30 The deep and superficial palmar arches.

20.34 The cephalic, basilic, and median cubital vv.

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.



T lymphocytes (green) attacking a cancer cell (with blue nucleus) (TEM)

CHAPTER 21

The Lymphatic and Immune Systems

CHAPTER OUTLINE

The Lymphatic System 800
- Lymph and the Lymphatic Vessels 800
- Lymphatic Cells and Tissues 804
- Lymphatic Organs 804

Nonspecific Resistance 808
- External Barriers 809
- Leukocytes and Macrophages 809
- Antimicrobial Proteins 810
- Inflammation 810
- Fever 814

General Aspects of Specific Immunity 815
- Forms of Immunity 816
- Antigens 816
- Lymphocytes 817
- Antigen-Presenting Cells 817
- Interleukins 817

Cellular Immunity 818
- Recognition 819
- Attack 819
- Memory 821

Humoral Immunity 822
- Recognition 822
- Attack 822
- Memory 826

Immune System Disorders 827
- Hypersensitivity 828
- Autoimmune Diseases 829
- Immunodeficiency Diseases 829

Connective Issues 834

Chapter Review 835

INSIGHTS

21.1 Clinical Application: Reye Syndrome 815
21.2 Clinical Application: Asthma 828
21.3 Clinical Application: Neuroimmunology—The Mind-Body Connection 833

Brushing Up

To understand this chapter, it is important that you understand or brush up on the following concepts:

- Endocytosis and exocytosis (p. 112)
- General gland structure: capsule, septa, stroma, and parenchyma (p. 180)
- Leukocyte types (pp. 700–701)
- Mechanisms of venous blood flow (p. 764)

Of all the body systems, the *lymphatic system* is perhaps the least familiar to most people. Yet without it, neither the circulatory system nor the immune system could function—circulation would shut down from fluid loss, and the body would be overrun by infection for lack of immunity. This chapter discusses the role of the lymphatic and immune systems in maintaining fluid balance and protecting the body from infection and disease.

The Lymphatic System

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- list the functions of the lymphatic system;
- explain how lymph is formed and returned to the bloodstream;
- name the major types of cells in the lymphatic system and state their functions; and
- describe the form and function of the lymph nodes, tonsils, thymus, and spleen.

The **lymphatic system** (fig. 21.1) is composed of a network of vessels that penetrate nearly every tissue of the body, and a collection of tissues and organs that produce immune cells. The lymphatic system has three functions:

1. **Fluid recovery.** Fluid continually filters from our blood capillaries into the tissue spaces. The blood capillaries reabsorb most of it, but by no means all. Each day, they lose an excess of 2 to 4 L of water and one-quarter to one-half of the plasma protein. The lymphatic system absorbs this excess fluid and returns it to the bloodstream by way of the lymphatic vessels. If not for this fluid recovery, the circulatory system would not have enough blood to function properly. Even partial interference with lymphatic drainage can lead to severe edema (fig. 21.2).
2. **Immunity.** As the lymphatic system recovers excess tissue fluid, it also picks up foreign cells and chemicals from the tissues. On its way back to the bloodstream, the fluid passes through lymph nodes, where immune cells stand guard against foreign matter. When they detect it, they activate a protective immune response.
3. **Lipid absorption.** In the small intestine, special lymphatic vessels called *lacteals* absorb dietary lipids that are not absorbed by the blood capillaries (see chapter 25).

The components of the lymphatic system are (1) *lymph,* the recovered fluid; (2) *lymphatic vessels,* which transport the lymph; (3) *lymphatic tissue,* composed of aggregates of lymphocytes and macrophages that populate many organs of the body; and (4) *lymphatic organs,* in which these cells are especially concentrated and which are set off from surrounding organs by connective tissue capsules.

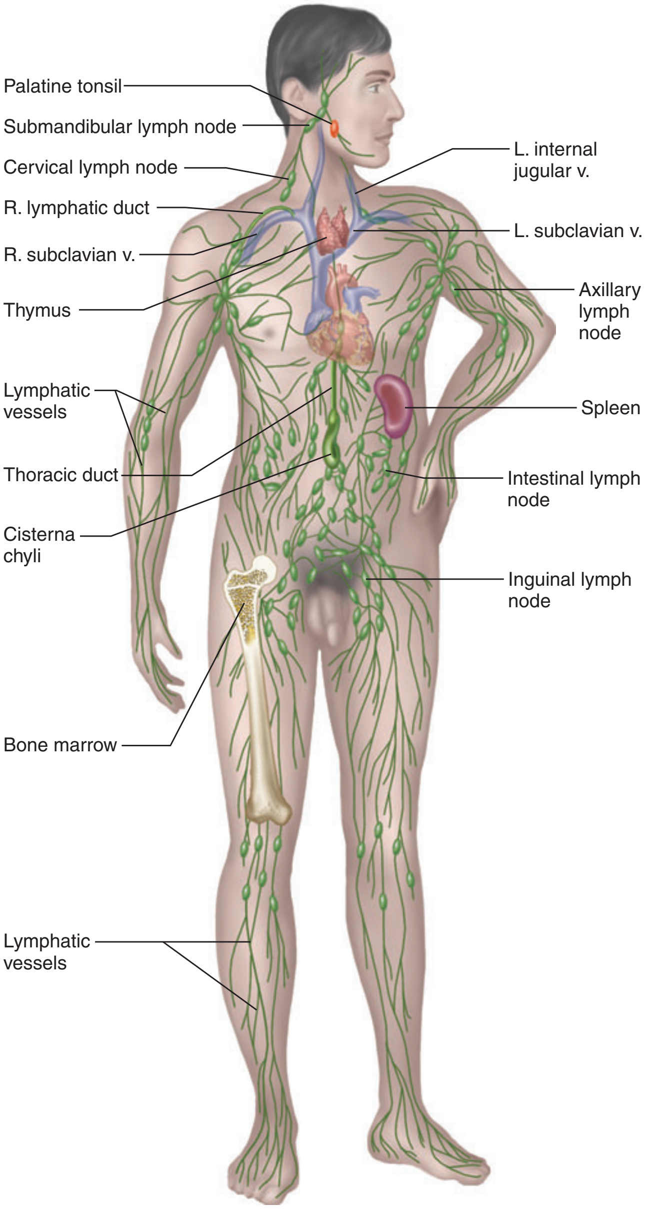


Figure 21.1 **The Lymphatic System.**

Lymph and the Lymphatic Vessels

Lymph is usually a clear, colorless fluid, similar to blood plasma but low in protein. Its composition varies substantially from place to place. After a meal, for example, lymph draining from the small intestine has a milky appearance because of its high lipid content. Lymph leaving the lymph nodes contains a large number of lymphocytes—indeed, this is the main supply of lymphocytes to the bloodstream.

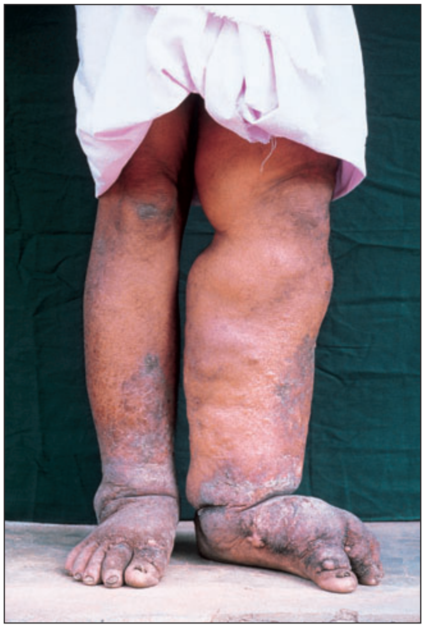


Figure 21.2 **Elephantiasis, a Tropical Disease Caused by Lymphatic Obstruction.** Mosquito-borne roundworms infect the lymph nodes and block the flow of lymph and recovery of tissue fluid. The resulting chronic edema leads to fibrosis and elephant-like thickening of the skin. The extremities are typically affected as shown here; the scrotum of men and breasts of women are often similarly affected.

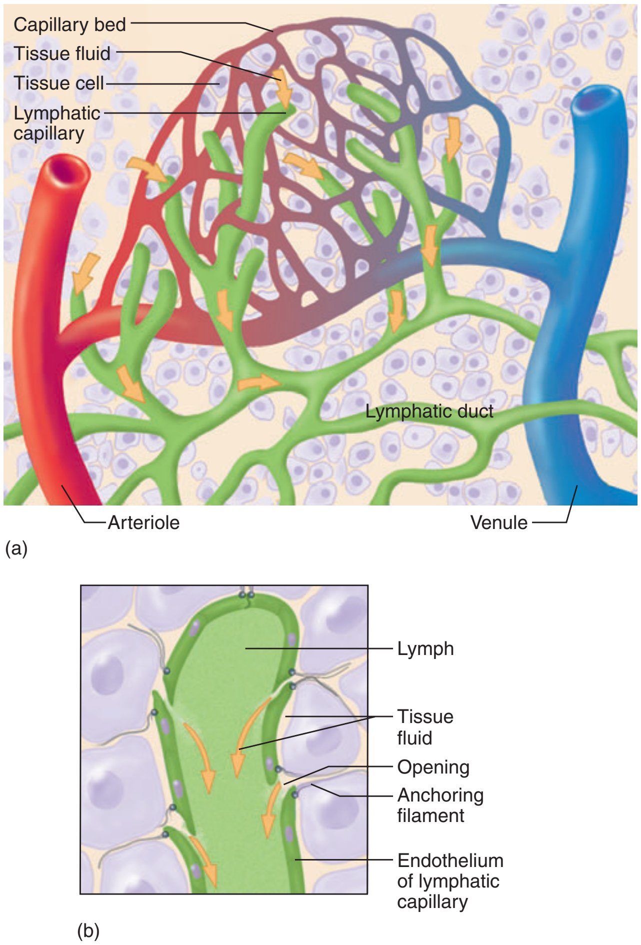


Figure 21.3 **Lymphatic Capillaries.** (*a*) Relationship of the lymphatic capillaries to a bed of blood capillaries. (*b*) Uptake of tissue fluid by a lymphatic capillary.

Lymph may also contain bacteria, viruses, cellular debris, or even traveling cancer cells.

Origin of Lymph

Lymph originates in microscopic vessels called **lymphatic capillaries.** These vessels penetrate nearly every tissue of the body but are absent from the central nervous system, cartilage, bone, and bone marrow. They are closely associated with blood capillaries, but unlike them, they are closed at one end (fig. 21.3). A lymphatic capillary consists of a sac of thin endothelial cells that loosely overlap each other like the shingles of a roof. The cells are tethered to surrounding tissue by protein filaments that prevent the sac from collapsing. Unlike the endothelial cells of blood capillaries, lymphatic endothelial cells are not joined by tight junctions. The gaps between them are so large that bacteria and other cells can enter along with the fluid. The overlapping edges of the endothelial cells act as valvelike flaps that can open and close. When tissue fluid pressure is high, it pushes the flaps inward (open) and fluid flows into the lymphatic capillary. When pressure is higher in the lymphatic capillary than in the tissue fluid, the flaps are pressed outward (closed).

Think About It

Contrast the structure of a lymphatic capillary with that of a continuous blood capillary. Explain why their structural difference is related to their functional difference.

Lymphatic Vessels

Lymphatic vessels form in the embryo by budding from the veins, so it is not surprising that the larger ones have a similar histology. They have a *tunica interna* with an endothelium and valves (fig. 21.4), a *tunica media* with elastic fibers and smooth muscle, and a thin outer *tunica externa.* Their walls are thinner and their valves are more numerous than those of the veins.

Lymph takes the following route from the tissues back to the bloodstream: lymphatic capillaries → collecting

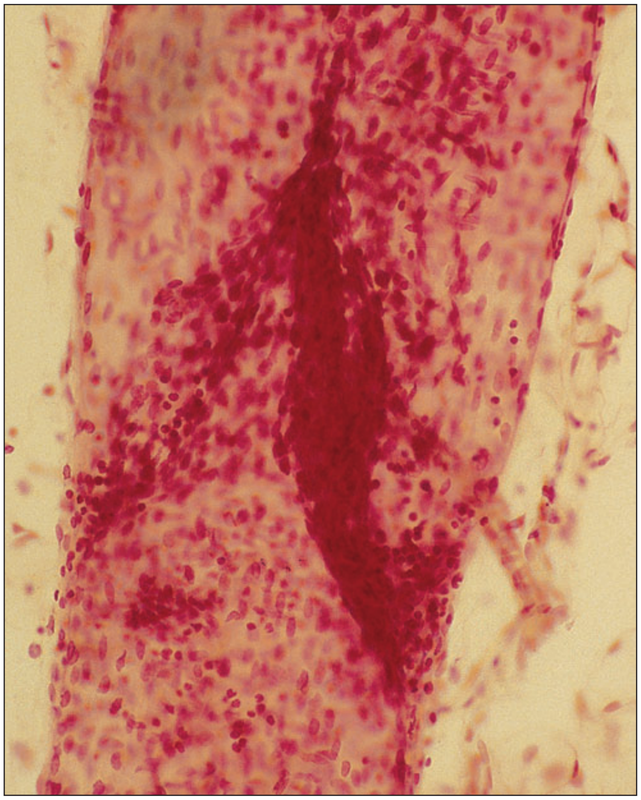


Figure 21.4 **Valve in a Lymphatic Vessel.**
What would be the consequence if these valves did not exist?

vessels → six lymphatic trunks → two collecting ducts → subclavian veins. Thus, there is a continual recycling of fluid from blood to tissue fluid to lymph and back to the blood (fig. 21.5).

The lymphatic capillaries converge to form **collecting vessels.** These often travel alongside veins and arteries and share a common connective tissue sheath with them. Numerous lymph nodes occur along the course of the collecting vessels, receiving and filtering the lymph. The collecting vessels converge to form larger **lymphatic trunks,** each of which drains a major portion of the body. The principal lymphatic trunks are the *lumbar, intestinal, intercostal, bronchomediastinal, subclavian,* and *jugular trunks.* Their names indicate their locations and parts of the body they drain; the lumbar trunk also drains the lower extremities.

The lymphatic trunks converge to form two **collecting ducts,** the largest of the lymphatic vessels: (1) The **right lymphatic duct** begins in the right thoracic cavity with the union of the right jugular, subclavian, and bronchomediastinal trunks. It receives lymphatic drainage from the right arm and right side of the thorax and head and empties into the right subclavian vein (fig. 21.6*a*). (2) The **thoracic duct,** on the left, is larger and longer. It begins as a prominent sac in the abdominal cavity called the **cisterna chyli** (sis-TUR-nuh KY-lye) and then passes through the diaphragm and up the mediastinum. It receives lymph from all parts of the body below the diaphragm and from the left arm and left side of the head, neck, and thorax (fig. 21.6*b*). It empties into the left subclavian vein.

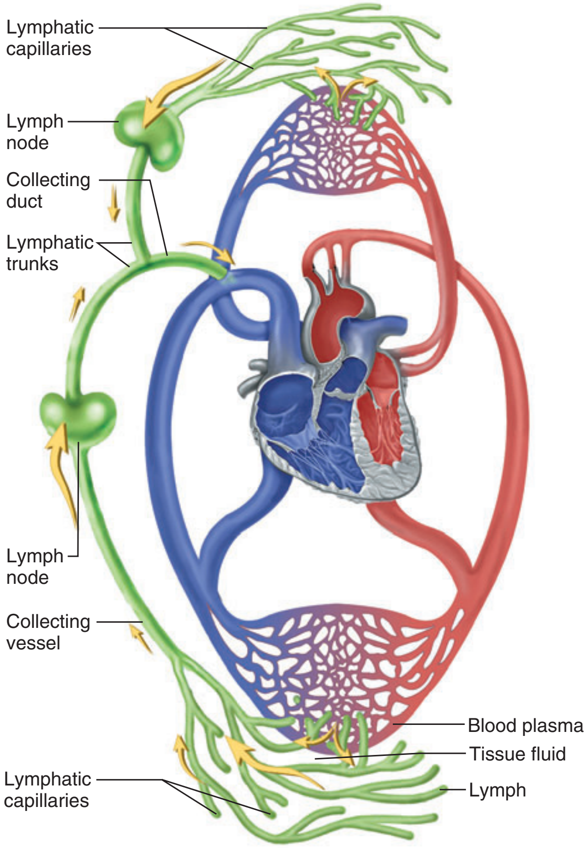


Figure 21.5 **Fluid Exchange Between the Circulatory and Lymphatic Systems.** Blood capillaries lose fluid to the tissue spaces. The lymphatic system picks up excess tissue fluid and returns it to the bloodstream.

Flow of Lymph

Lymph flows under forces similar to those that govern venous return, except that the lymphatic system has no pump like the heart. Lymph flows at even lower pressure and speed than venous blood; it is moved primarily by rhythmic contractions of the lymphatic vessels themselves, which contract when stretched by lymph. The lymphatic vessels, like the veins, are also aided by a skeletal

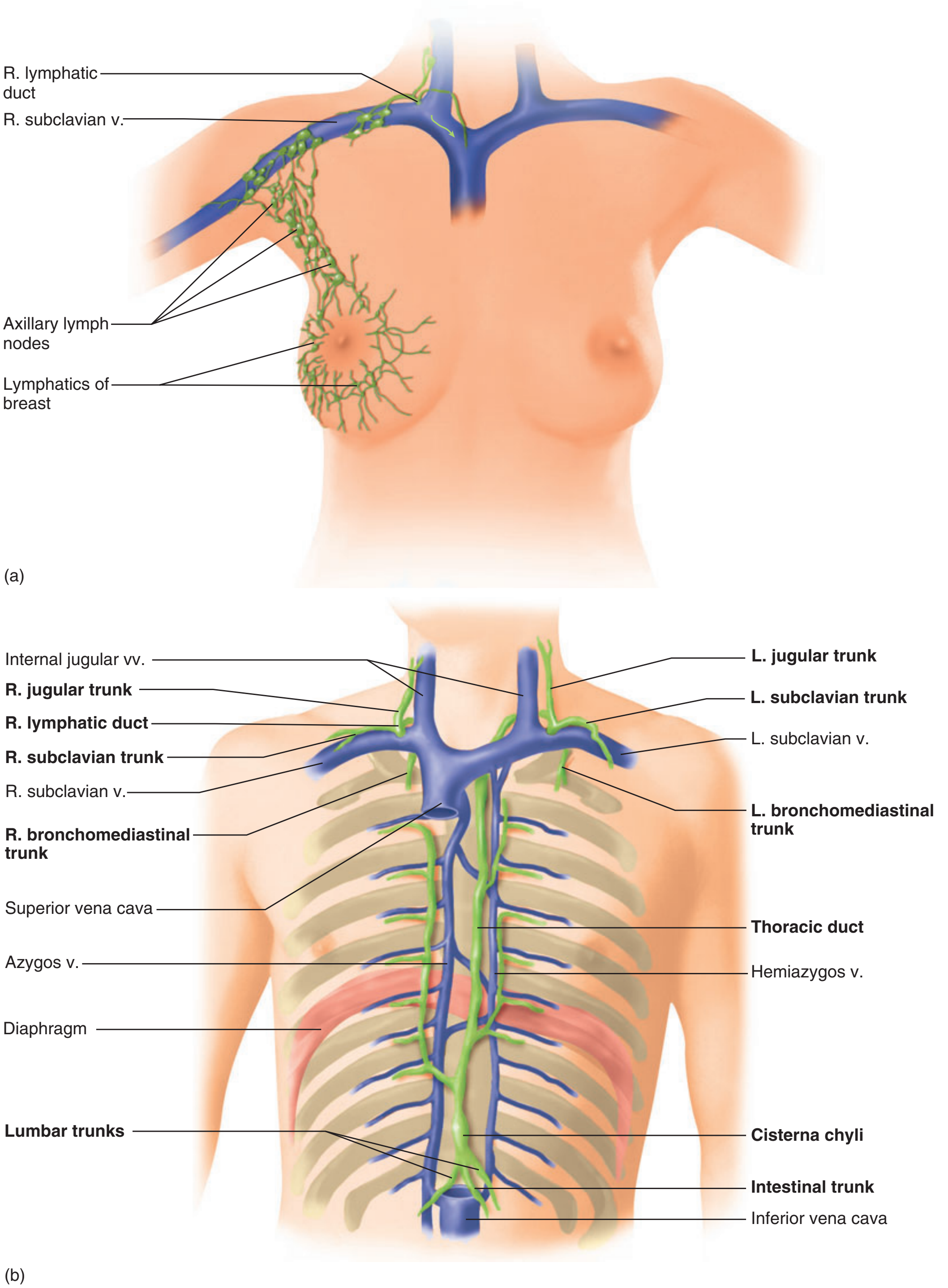

R. lymphatic duct
R. subclavian v.
Axillary lymph nodes
Lymphatics of breast
(a)
Internal jugular vv.
R. jugular trunk
R. lymphatic duct
R. subclavian trunk
R. subclavian v.
R. bronchomediastinal trunk
Superior vena cava
Azygos v.
Diaphragm
Lumbar trunks
L. jugular trunk
L. subclavian trunk
L. subclavian v.
L. bronchomediastinal trunk
Thoracic duct
Hemiazygos v.
Cisterna chyli
Intestinal trunk
Inferior vena cava
(b)

Figure 21.6 **Lymphatic Drainage of the Thoracic Region.** (*a*) Drainage of the right mammary and axillary regions. (*b*) Drainage of the right lymphatic duct and thoracic duct into the subclavian veins.

muscle pump that squeezes them and moves the lymph along. Also like the medium veins, lymphatic vessels have valves that prevent lymph from flowing backward. Since lymphatic vessels are often wrapped with an artery in a common sheath, arterial pulsation may also rhythmically squeeze the lymphatic vessels and contribute to lymph flow. A thoracic (respiratory) pump aids the flow of lymph from the abdominal to the thoracic cavity as one inhales, just as it does in venous return. Finally, at the point where the collecting ducts join the subclavian veins, the rapidly flowing bloodstream draws the lymph into it. Considering these mechanisms of lymph flow, it should be apparent that physical exercise significantly increases the rate of lymphatic return.

Lymphatic Cells and Tissues

Lymphatic tissues are composed of a variety of lymphocytes and other cells whose roles in the immune system will be examined in this chapter. These include:

1. **T lymphocytes (T cells).** These are so-named because they develop for a time in the thymus and later depend on thymic hormones. The *T* stands for *thymus-dependent.* There are several subclasses of T cells that will be introduced later.
2. **B lymphocytes (B cells).** These are named for an organ in chickens (the *bursa of Fabricius*[1]) in which they were first discovered. When activated, B cells differentiate into *plasma cells,* which produce circulating **antibodies,** the protective gamma globulins of the body fluids.
3. **Macrophages.** These cells, derived from monocytes of the blood, phagocytize foreign matter **(antigens)** and "display" fragments of it to certain T cells, thus alerting the immune system to the presence of an enemy. Macrophages and other cells that do this are collectively called **antigen-presenting cells (APCs).**
4. **Dendritic cells.** These are APCs found in the epidermis, mucous membranes, and lymphatic organs. (In the skin, they are often called *Langerhans cells.*)
5. **Reticular cells.** These are branched cells that contribute to the stroma (connective tissue framework) of the lymphatic organs and act as APCs in the thymus. (They should not be confused with reticular *fibers,* which are fine branched collagen fibers common in lymphatic organs.)

The simplest form of lymphatic tissue is **diffuse lymphatic tissue**—a sprinkling of lymphocytes in the mucous membranes and connective tissues of many organs. It is particularly prevalent in body passages that are open to the exterior—the respiratory, digestive, urinary, and reproductive tracts—where it is called **mucosa-associated lymphatic tissue (MALT).**

In some places, lymphocytes and other cells congregate in dense masses called **lymphatic nodules (follicles),** which come and go as pathogens invade the tissues and the immune system answers the challenge. Lymphatic nodules are, however, a relatively constant feature of the lymph nodes and tonsils. They also form clusters called **Peyer**[2] **patches** in the ileum, the last segment of the small intestine.

Lymphatic Organs

In contrast to the diffuse lymphatic tissue, lymphatic organs have well-defined anatomical sites and at least partial connective tissue capsules that separate the lymphatic tissue from neighboring tissues. These organs include the lymph nodes, tonsils, thymus, and spleen.

Lymph Nodes

Lymph nodes (fig. 21.7) serve two functions: to cleanse the lymph and alert the immune system to pathogens. There are hundreds of lymph nodes in the body. They are especially concentrated in the cervical, axillary, and inguinal

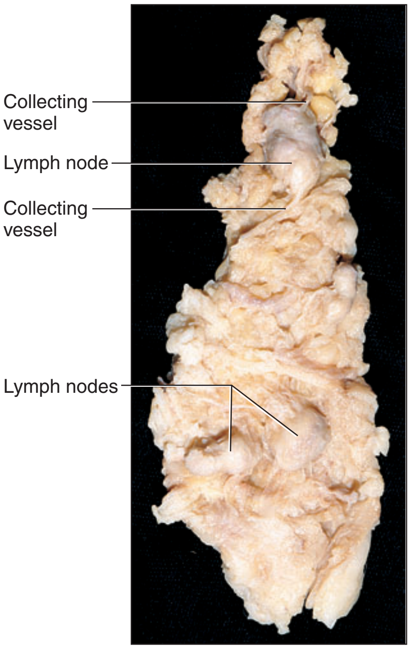


Figure 21.7 Lymph Nodes. Several collecting vessels are especially evident leading to and from the upper lymph node.

---

[1] Hieronymus Fabricius (Girolamo Fabrizzi) (1537–1619), Italian anatomist

[2] Johann Conrad Peyer (1653–1712), Swiss anatomist

regions close to the body surface, and in thoracic, abdominal, and pelvic groups deep in the body cavities. Most of them are embedded in fat.

A lymph node is an elongated or bean-shaped structure, usually less than 3 cm long, often with an indentation called the *hilum* on one side (fig. 21.8). It is enclosed in a fibrous capsule with extensions (trabeculae) that incompletely divide the interior of the node into compartments. The interior consists of a stroma of reticular connective tissue (reticular fibers and reticular cells) and a parenchyma of lymphocytes and antigen-presenting cells. Between the capsule and parenchyma is a narrow space called the *subcapsular sinus,* which contains reticular fibers, macrophages, and dendritic cells.

The parenchyma is divided into an outer *cortex* and, near the hilum, an inner *medulla.* The cortex consists mainly of ovoid lymphatic nodules. When the lymph node is fighting a pathogen, these nodules acquire light-staining **germinal centers** where B cells multiply and differentiate into plasma cells. The medulla consists largely of a branching

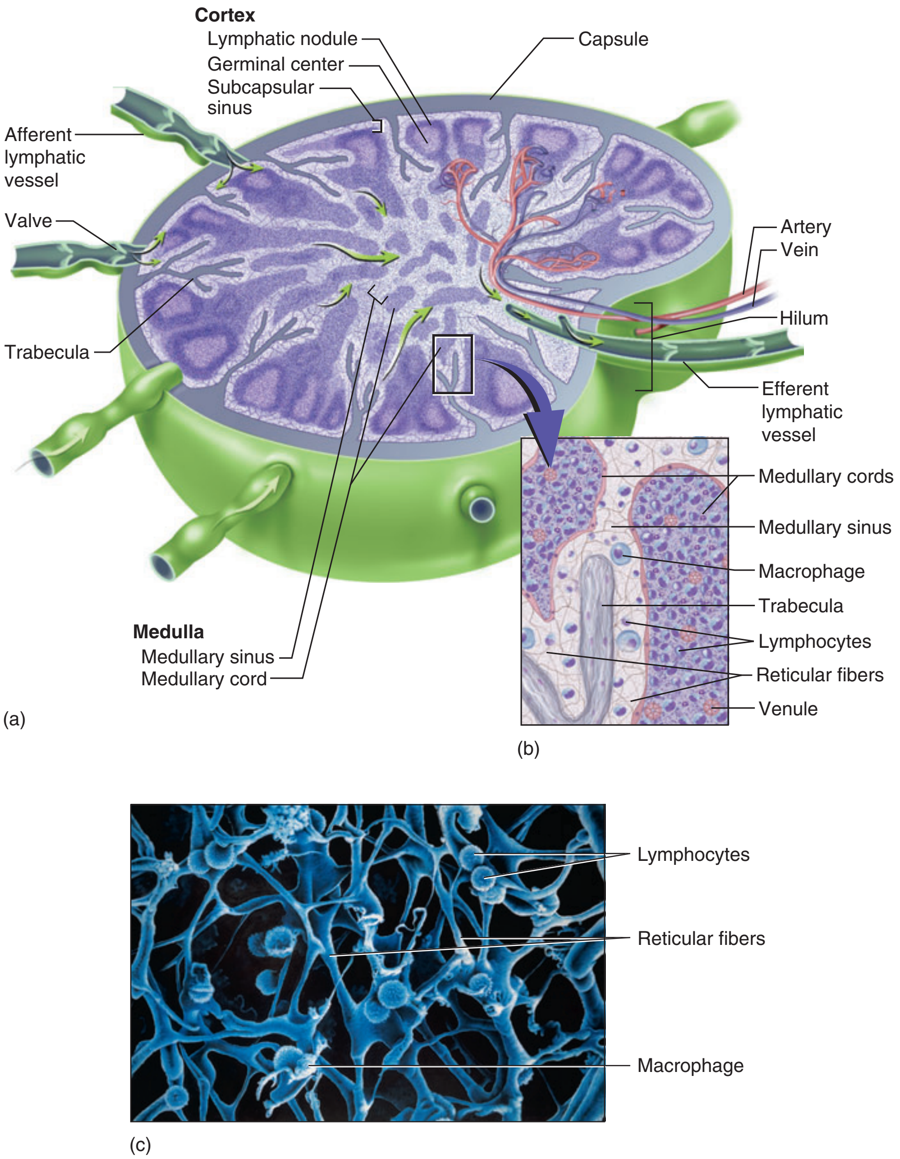

Cortex
Lymphatic nodule
Germinal center
Subcapsular sinus
Capsule
Afferent lymphatic vessel
Valve
Trabecula
Artery
Vein
Hilum
Efferent lymphatic vessel
Medulla
Medullary sinus
Medullary cord
(a)
Medullary cords
Medullary sinus
Macrophage
Trabecula
Lymphocytes
Reticular fibers
Venule
(b)
Lymphocytes
Reticular fibers
Macrophage
(c)

Figure 21.8 **Anatomy of a Lymph Node.** (*a*) Bisected lymph node showing pathway of lymph flow. (*b*) Detail of the boxed region in *a.* (*c*) Stroma and immune cells in a medullary sinus.

network of *medullary cords* composed of lymphocytes, plasma cells, macrophages, reticular cells, and reticular fibers. The cortex and medulla also contain lymph-filled sinuses continuous with the subcapsular sinus.

Several **afferent lymphatic vessels** lead into the node along its convex surface. Lymph flows from these vessels into the subcapsular sinus, percolates slowly through the sinuses of the cortex and medulla, and leaves the node through one to three **efferent lymphatic vessels** that emerge from the hilum. No other lymphatic organs have afferent lymphatic vessels; lymph nodes are the only organs that filter lymph as it flows along its course. The lymph node is a "bottleneck" that slows down lymph flow and allows time for cleansing it of foreign matter. The macrophages and reticular cells of the sinuses remove about 99% of the impurities before the lymph leaves the node. On its way to the bloodstream, lymph flows through one lymph node after another and thus becomes quite thoroughly cleansed of most impurities.

When a lymph node is under challenge from a foreign antigen, it may become swollen and painful to the touch—a condition called **lymphadenitis**[3] (lim-FAD-en-EYE-tis). Physicians routinely palpate the accessible lymph nodes of the cervical, axillary, and inguinal regions for swelling. Lymph nodes are common sites of metastatic cancer because cancer cells from almost any organ can break loose, enter the lymphatic capillaries, and lodge in the nodes. Cancerous lymph nodes are swollen but relatively firm and usually painless. **Lymphadenopathy**[4] (lim-FAD-eh-NOP-a-thee) is a collective term for all lymph node diseases.

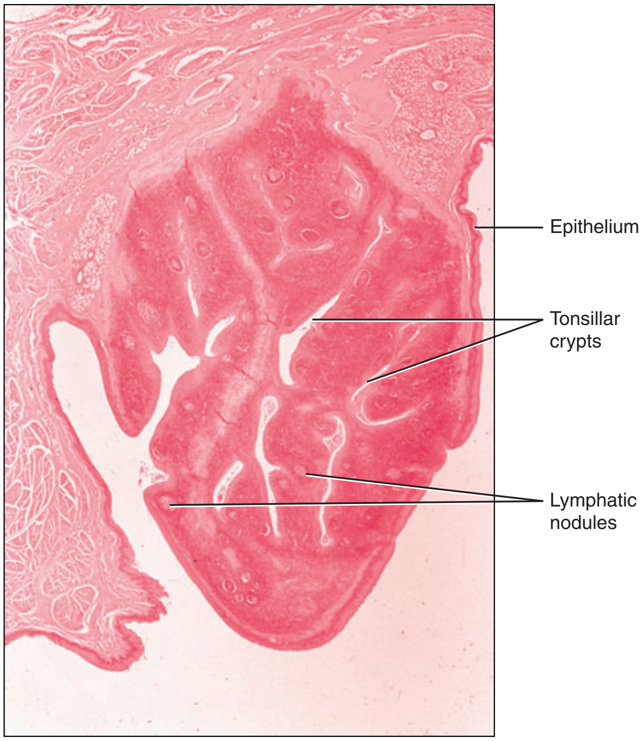


Figure 21.9 **A Palatine Tonsil.** A vertical tissue section showing a branched tonsillar crypt and lymphatic nodules.

Tonsils

The **tonsils** are patches of lymphatic tissue located at the entrance to the pharynx, where they guard against ingested and inhaled pathogens. Each is covered by an epithelium and has deep pits called **tonsillar crypts** lined by lymphatic nodules (fig. 21.9). The crypts often contain food debris, dead leukocytes, bacteria, and antigenic chemicals. Below the crypts, the tonsils are partially separated from underlying connective tissue by an incomplete fibrous capsule.

There are three main sets of tonsils: (1) a single medial **pharyngeal tonsil (adenoids)** on the wall of the pharynx just behind the nasal cavity, (2) a pair of **palatine tonsils** at the posterior margin of the oral cavity, and (3) numerous **lingual tonsils,** each with a single crypt, concentrated in a patch on each side of the root of the tongue (see fig. 22.3*b,* p. 844). The palatine tonsils are the largest and most often infected. Their surgical removal, called *tonsillectomy,* used to be one of the most common surgical procedures performed on children, but it is done less often today.

Thymus

The **thymus** is a member of both the lymphatic and endocrine systems. It houses developing lymphocytes and secretes hormones that regulate their later activity. It is located between the sternum and aortic arch in the superior mediastinum. The thymus is very large in the fetus and grows slightly during childhood, when it is most active. After age 14, however, it begins to undergo involution (shrinkage) so that it is quite small in adults (fig. 21.10). In the elderly, the thymus is replaced almost entirely by fibrous and fatty tissue and is barely distinguishable from the surrounding tissues.

The fibrous capsule of the thymus gives off trabeculae that divide the parenchyma into several angular lobules. Each lobule has a cortex and medulla populated by T lymphocytes (fig. 21.11). **Reticular epithelial cells** seal off the cortex from the medulla and surround blood vessels and lymphocyte clusters in the cortex. They thereby form a *blood-thymus barrier* that isolates developing lymphocytes from foreign antigens. After developing in the cortex, the T cells migrate to the medulla, where they spend another 3 weeks. There is no blood-thymus barrier in the medulla; mature T cells enter blood or lymphatic vessels here and leave the thymus. In

---

[3] *lymph* + *adeno* = gland + *itis* = inflammation
[4] *lymph* + *adeno* = gland + *pathy* = disease

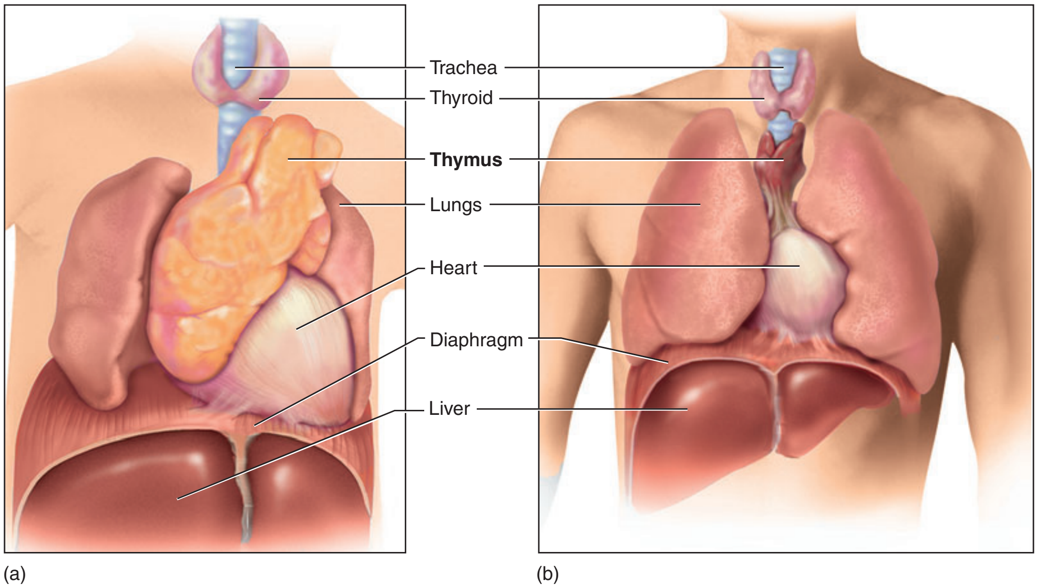


Figure 21.10 **The Thymus.** (*a*) The thymus is extremely large in a newborn infant. (*b*) The adult thymus is atrophied and often barely noticeable.

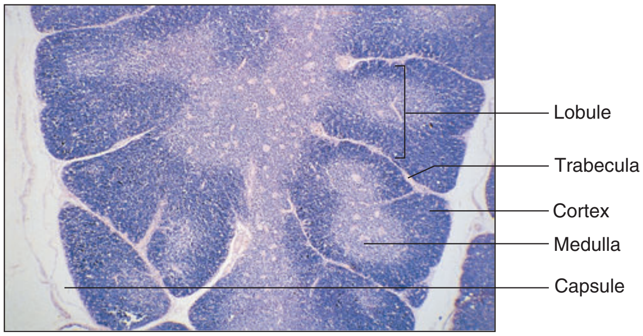


Figure 21.11 **Histology of the Thymus.**

the medulla, the reticular epithelial cells form whorls called *thymic (Hassall*[5]*) corpuscles,* useful for identifying the thymus histologically but of no known function. Besides forming the blood-thymus barrier, reticular epithelial cells secrete hormones called **thymosins, thymulin,** and **thymopoietin,** which promote the development and action of T cells. If the thymus is removed from newborn mammals, they waste away and never develop immunity. Other lymphatic organs also seem to depend on thymic hormones and develop poorly in thymectomized animals.

Spleen

The **spleen** is the body's largest lymphatic organ. It is located in the left hypochondriac region, just inferior to the diaphragm and dorsolateral to the stomach (fig. 21.12; see also fig. A.15, p. 46). It has a medial hilum penetrated by the splenic artery and vein and lymphatic vessels. Its parenchyma exhibits two types of tissue named for their appearance in fresh specimens (not in stained sections): **red pulp,** which consists of sinuses gorged with concentrated erythrocytes, and **white pulp,** which consists of lymphocytes and macrophages aggregated like sleeves along small branches of the splenic artery.

These two tissue types reflect the multiple functions of the spleen. It produces blood cells in the fetus and may resume this role in adults in the event of extreme anemia. It monitors the blood for foreign antigens, much like the lymph nodes do the lymph. Lymphocytes and macrophages of the white pulp are quick to detect foreign antigens in the blood and activate immune reactions. The splenic capillaries are very permeable; they allow RBCs to leave the bloodstream, accumulate in the sinuses of the red pulp, and reenter the bloodstream later. The spleen is an "erythrocyte graveyard"—old, fragile RBCs rupture as they squeeze through the capillary walls into the sinuses. Splenic macrophages phagocytize their remains, just as they dispose of blood-borne bacteria and other cellular debris. The spleen also compensates for excessive blood volume by transferring plasma from the bloodstream into the lymphatic system.

The spleen is highly vascular and vulnerable to trauma and infection. A ruptured spleen can hemorrhage

---

[5] Arthur H. Hassall (1817–94), British chemist and physician

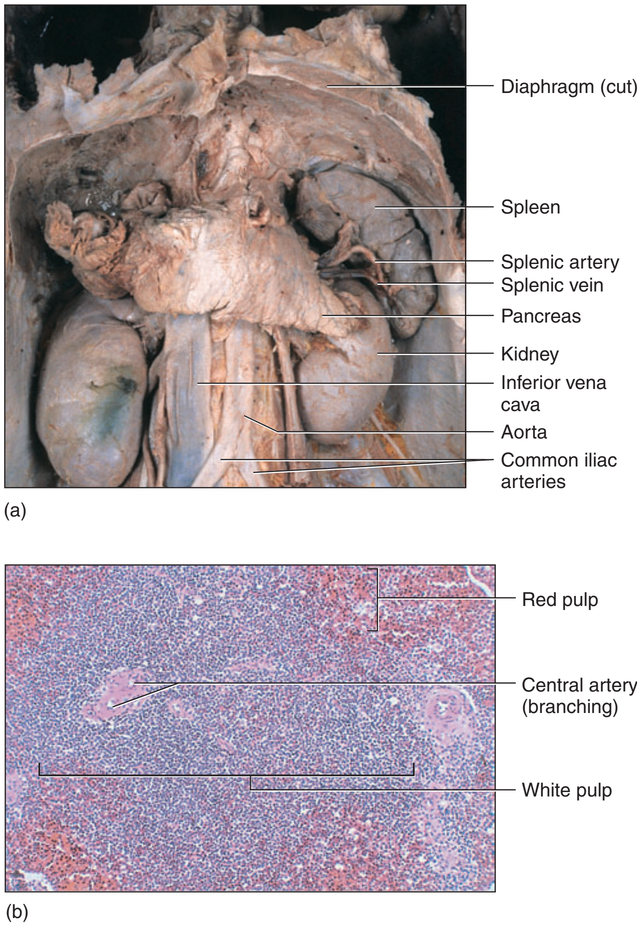


Figure 21.12 **The Spleen.** (*a*) Position of the spleen in the upper left quadrant of the abdominal cavity. (*b*) Histology.

fatally, but is difficult to repair surgically. Therefore a common procedure in such cases is its removal, *splenectomy.* A person can live without a spleen, but is somewhat more vulnerable to infections.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

1. List the primary functions of the lymphatic system. What do you think would be the most noticeable effect of clamping the right lymphatic duct closed?
2. How does fluid get into the lymphatic system? What prevents it from draining back out?
3. List five major cell types of lymphatic tissues and state the function of each.
4. Predict the relative seriousness of removing the following organs from a 2-year-old child: (a) a lymph node, (b) the spleen, (c) the thymus, (d) the palatine tonsils.

Nonspecific Resistance

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- identify the body's three lines of defense against pathogens;
- contrast nonspecific resistance with immunity;
- describe the defensive functions of each kind of leukocyte;
- describe the process of inflammation and explain what accounts for its cardinal signs; and
- describe the body's other nonspecific defenses.

The human body harbors a huge number of microorganisms. Indeed, we contain about 10,000 times as many bacterial cells as we do human cells. We are constantly exposed to countless organisms by the food and water we consume, the air we breathe, and the objects we touch. Without a means of defense, the human body would be an ideal place for microorganisms to live. Our homeostatic mechanisms would ensure a constant warm temperature, ample water, and a continual supply of nutrients. Upon death, the body is quickly overrun by microbial life, but as long as we are alive and maintaining homeostasis, we resist these hordes of would-be invaders. Our mechanisms for doing so are the subject of the rest of this chapter.

Toxins, living organisms, and other agents that cause disease are called **pathogens.**[6] The living body has three lines of defense against pathogens:

1. External barriers, notably the skin and mucous membranes, which are impenetrable to most of the pathogens that daily assault us.
2. Antimicrobial proteins, inflammation, fever, and other active attacks upon pathogens that break through the first line of defense. These mechanisms are present from birth, are broadly effective against a wide range of pathogens, and work even against pathogens to which the body has never before been exposed.
3. The immune system, which not only defeats a pathogen but leaves the body with a "memory" of it, enabling us to defeat it so quickly in future encounters that the pathogen causes no illness.

The first two mechanisms are called **nonspecific resistance** because they guard equally against a wide variety of pathogens and their effectiveness does not depend on prior exposure to a pathogen. Immunity is called a **specific defense** because it results from prior exposure to a pathogen and usually provides future protection only against that particular pathogen.

In this section we study mechanisms of nonspecific resistance—physical and chemical barriers, phagocytic cells, antimicrobial proteins, inflammation, and fever.

---

[6] *patho* = disease + *gen* = producing

External Barriers

The skin and mucous membranes make it mechanically difficult for microorganisms to enter the body and spread through its tissues. When the skin is broken by a scrape or animal bite or destroyed by a burn, one of the most urgent treatment concerns is the prevention of infection. This attests to the importance of intact skin as a barrier. The skin surface is composed mainly of keratin, a tough protein that few pathogens can penetrate. Furthermore, the surface is hostile to microbial reproduction. With exceptions such as the axillary and pubic areas, it is too dry and poor in nutrients to support much microbial growth. The skin is also coated with antimicrobial chemicals such as defensins and lactic acid. *Defensins* are peptides that kill microbes by creating holes in their membranes; they are produced by neutrophils and other cells and are found on the skin surface. The skin is also coated with a thin film of lactic acid (the *acid mantle*) from sweat, which also inhibits bacterial growth.

The digestive, respiratory, urinary, and reproductive tracts are open to the exterior, making them vulnerable to invasion, but they are protected by mucous membranes. Mucus physically ensnares microbes. Microbes trapped in the respiratory mucus are then moved by cilia to the pharynx, swallowed, and destroyed by stomach acid. Microbes also are flushed from the upper digestive tract by saliva and from the lower urinary tract by urine. Mucus, tears, and saliva also contain **lysozyme,** an enzyme that destroys bacteria by dissolving their cell walls.

Beneath the epithelia of the skin and mucous membranes, there is a layer of areolar tissue. The ground substance of this tissue contains *hyaluronic acid,* which gives it a viscous consistency. It is normally difficult for microbes to migrate through this sticky tissue gel. Some organisms overcome this, however, by producing an enzyme called *hyaluronidase,* which breaks it down to a thinner consistency that is more easily penetrated. Hyaluronidase occurs in some snake venoms and bacterial toxins and is produced by some parasitic protozoans to facilitate their invasion of the connective tissues.

Leukocytes and Macrophages

Organisms that penetrate the skin and mucous membranes are attacked by **phagocytes** (phagocytic cells) that have a voracious appetite for foreign matter. Leukocytes and macrophages play especially important roles in both nonspecific defense and specific immunity.

Leukocytes

The five types of leukocytes are described in table 18.8 (pp. 700–701). We will now examine in more detail their contributions to resistance and immunity.

1. *Neutrophils* are the nemesis of bacteria. These highly mobile cells spend most of their lives wandering in the connective tissues killing bacteria. They do this in two ways—by phagocytosis and digestion, and by a reaction called the **respiratory burst.** The latter process begins when lysosomes migrate to the neutrophil surface and *degranulate,* or discharge their contents into the tissue fluid. The lysosomal enzymes catalyze the respiratory burst, in which the cell takes up oxygen and reduces it to highly toxic superoxide anions ($O_2{\bullet}^-$). Superoxide reacts with hydrogen ions to form hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2). Neutrophils also release an enzyme that synthesizes hypochlorite (HClO), the active ingredient in chlorine bleach, from chloride ions in the tissue fluid. Superoxide, hydrogen peroxide, and hypochlorite are highly toxic to bacteria; they form a chemical **killing zone** around the neutrophil that destroys far more bacteria than the neutrophil can destroy by phagocytosis. The killing zone is also deadly to the neutrophils themselves, which die in the course of the attack. These oxidizing agents also damage connective tissues and contribute to rheumatoid arthritis.
2. *Eosinophils* are less avidly phagocytic than neutrophils, but they phagocytize antigen-antibody complexes, allergens (allergy-causing antigens), and inflammatory chemicals, as we will discuss shortly. They are especially abundant in the mucosae of the respiratory, digestive, and lower urinary tracts. In infections with hookworms, tapeworms, and other parasites too large to phagocytize, eosinophils aggregate near the parasites and release enzymes that weaken or destroy them.
3. *Basophils* aid the mobility and action of other leukocytes by secreting two chemicals: the vasodilator histamine, which increases blood flow and speeds the delivery of leukocytes to the area, and the anticoagulant heparin, which inhibits the formation of clots that would impede the mobility of other leukocytes.
4. *Lymphocytes* all look more or less alike in blood films, but there are several functional types, most of which are discussed later in this chapter under immunity. **Natural killer (NK) cells,** however, are large lymphocytes with a nonspecific role. They attack and lyse *host cells* (cells of one's own body) that have either turned cancerous or become infected with viruses, as well as bacteria and cells of transplanted tissues. The continual "patrolling" of the body by NK cells "on the lookout" for abnormal cells is called *immunological surveillance.* When an NK cell recognizes an abnormal cell, it secretes proteins called **perforins,** which bind to the enemy cell surface and make holes in its membrane. This has generally been thought to destroy host cells by

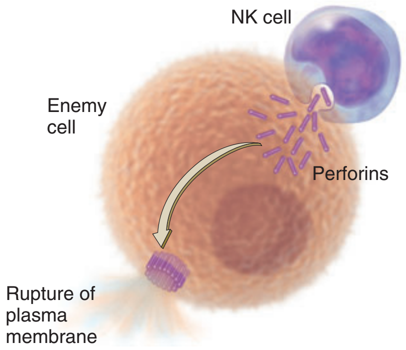


Figure 21.13 The Action of Perforin.

rupturing the membrane (fig. 21.13), although there is a newer theory that perforin induces target cell apoptosis.

5. *Monocytes* are the circulating precursors of macrophages, discussed next.

Macrophages

The **macrophage (lymphoid-macrophage) system** includes all of the body's avidly phagocytic cells except leukocytes. Dendritic cells, which internalize foreign matter by receptor-mediated endocytosis, otherwise function like macrophages and are included in this system. Some of these phagocytes are wandering cells that actively seek pathogens, while reticular cells and others are fixed in place and phagocytize only those pathogens that come to them—although they are strategically positioned for this to occur. The phagocytes include the following cell types:

- **macrophages (histiocytes)** of the loose connective tissues;
- **dendritic cells** of the epidermis, oral mucosa, esophagus, vagina, and lymphatic organs;
- **microglia** in the central nervous system (see chapter 14);
- **alveolar macrophages** in the lungs (see chapter 22); and
- **hepatic macrophages** in the liver (see chapter 25).

Antimicrobial Proteins

Two groups of proteins, the *interferons* and the *complement system,* provide short-term, nonspecific resistance to viral and bacterial infections.

Interferons

Interferons are polypeptides secreted by cells that have been invaded by viruses. They diffuse to neighboring cells and stimulate them to produce antiviral proteins, which prevent viruses from multiplying within them. Interferons also activate natural killer cells and macrophages, which destroy infected host cells before they release more viruses. Interferons are not specific for a particular virus but provide generalized protection. They also promote the destruction of cancer cells.

Complement System

The **complement system** is a group of 20 or more β globulins that aid in nonspecific resistance and specific immunity. These proteins are continually present in the blood plasma but must be activated by pathogens to exert their effects. There are two pathways of complement activation (fig. 21.14). In the **classical pathway,** antibodies bind to pathogenic organisms and then bind a complex of three complement proteins called C1, C2, and C4. This step is called **complement fixation.** The **alternate pathway** begins with three complement proteins—factors B, D, and P—binding directly to the surface polysaccharides of microbes, without the aid of an antibody. Both pathways converge on a step where complement C3 is split into two fragments, C3a and C3b. From this point on, the pathway to completion, whether initiated by the classical or alternate pathway, is the same, as shown in the figure. Complement helps destroy pathogens in three ways:

1. **Enhanced inflammation.** Complement C3a stimulates mast cells and basophils to secrete chemicals that promote inflammation (discussed shortly).
2. **Opsonization.**[7] Complement C3b coats bacteria and serves as a binding site for macrophages and neutrophils, enabling these cells to phagocytize them.
3. **Cytolysis.**[8] Complement C3b leads to the rupture of target cells. It triggers the insertion of a group of proteins called the *membrane attack complex (MAC)* into the target cell membrane. The MAC forms a doughnutlike ring in the membrane that allows the cell contents to escape (fig. 21.15).

Inflammation

Inflammation is a local defensive response to tissue injury of any kind, including trauma and infection. Its general purposes are (1) to limit the spread of pathogens and ultimately destroy them, (2) to remove the debris of damaged tissue, and (3) to initiate tissue repair. Inflammation is characterized by four **cardinal signs**—redness, swelling, heat, and pain. Some authorities list impaired use as a fifth

---

[7] *opson* = food
[8] *cyto* = cell + *lysis* = split apart, break down

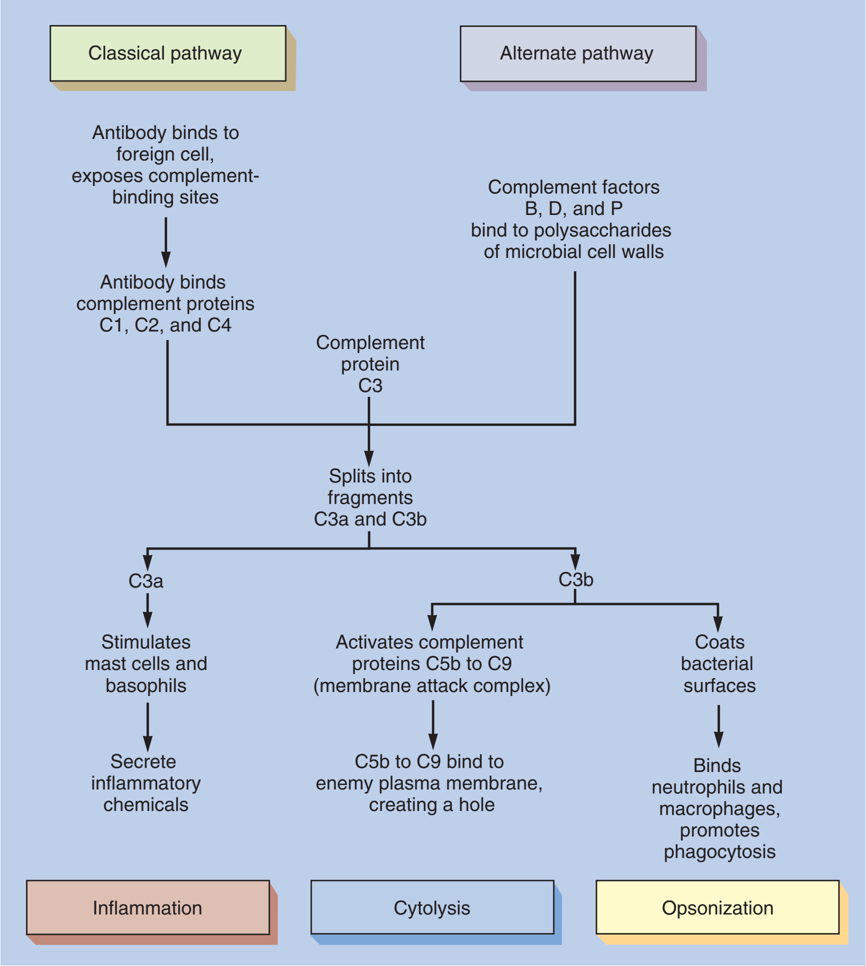

Classical pathway
Alternate pathway
Antibody binds to foreign cell, exposes complement-binding sites
Antibody binds complement proteins C1, C2, and C4
Complement factors B, D, and P bind to polysaccharides of microbial cell walls
Complement protein C3
Splits into fragments C3a and C3b
C3a
C3b
Stimulates mast cells and basophils
Secrete inflammatory chemicals
Activates complement proteins C5b to C9 (membrane attack complex)
C5b to C9 bind to enemy plasma membrane, creating a hole
Coats bacterial surfaces
Binds neutrophils and macrophages, promotes phagocytosis
Inflammation
Cytolysis
Opsonization

Figure 21.14 **Complement Activation.** Both the classical pathway and the alternate pathway produce complement fragments C3a and C3b. The process is the same from that point to the end. The C3a and C3b fragments promote inflammation, cytolysis, and opsonization.

sign, but this may or may not occur and when it does, it is mostly because of the pain.

Words ending in the suffix *-itis* denote inflammation of specific organs and tissues: *arthritis, encephalitis, peritonitis, gingivitis,* and *dermatitis,* for example. Inflammation can occur anywhere in the body, but it is most common and observable in the skin, which is subject to more trauma than any other organ. Examples of cutaneous inflammation include an itchy mosquito bite, sunburn, a poison ivy rash, and the redness and blistering produced by manual labor, tight shoes, or a kitchen burn.

The following discussion of the process of inflammation will account for the four cardinal signs and explain how the three purposes of inflammation are achieved. These processes are mediated by several types of cells and inflammatory chemicals that are summarized in tables 21.1 and 21.2 at the end of this section. Some of these inflammatory chemicals are also classified as **cytokines**[9]—small proteins secreted by leukocytes, macrophages, mast cells, and several other cell types, which mediate the body's immune and nonspecific defenses. Cytokines include interferons, chemotactic factors, growth factors, interleukins, tumor necrosis factor, and other chemicals you will soon encounter in this discussion.

Inflammation involves three major processes: mobilization of the body's defenses, containment and destruction of pathogens, and tissue cleanup and repair.

---

[9] *cyto* = cell + *kine* = action, response

Mobilization of Defenses

Some inflammatory chemicals are *vasoactive*—they stimulate vasodilation, causing **hyperemia,** or elevated blood flow to the damaged tissue. Among them are histamine, bradykinin, and leukotrienes, which are secreted by basophils of the blood, mast cells of the connective tissue, and damaged cells of the inflamed tissue. These chemicals also cause endothelial cells of the blood capillaries and venules to separate a little, increasing the permeability of the vessels and thus promoting exudation (filtration) of fluid from the blood into the interstitial spaces of the tissue. The collective effect of these changes is to speed the delivery of cells and chemicals needed to combat pathogens and repair damaged tissue, and to wash away toxins and metabolic wastes more rapidly.

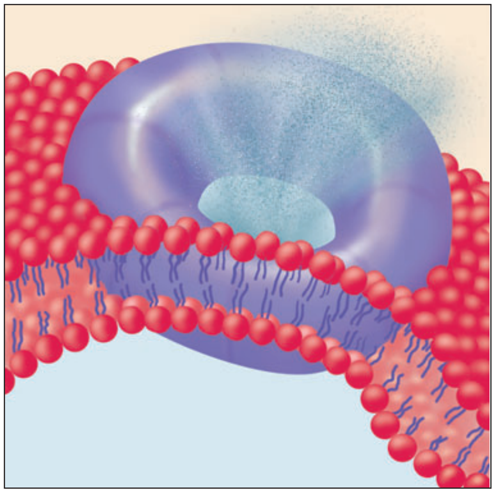


Figure 21.15 **The Membrane Attack Complex.** Complement proteins form a doughnutlike ring in the plasma membrane of an enemy cell, thus causing cytolysis.
In what way does the action of the membrane attack complex resemble the action of perforin?

Hyperemia accounts for the redness and heat of inflammation, and the increased filtration of fluid into the tissue accounts for its swelling (edema). *Extravasated* erythrocytes—RBCs that escape from the blood vessels into the tissue—contribute to the redness (as in sunburn). Pain results from direct injury to the nerves, pressure on the nerves caused by edema, and the stimulation of nociceptors (pain receptors) by bradykinin, prostaglandins, and some bacterial toxins.

In an area of injury, endothelial cells of the blood vessels produce *cell-adhesion molecules (CAMs)* that make their membranes sticky and snag leukocytes arriving in the bloodstream. Leukocytes adhere loosely to the CAMs and slowly tumble along the endothelium, sometimes coating it so thickly that they obstruct blood flow. This adhesion to the endothelium is called **margination.** The leukocytes then undergo **diapedesis**[10] **(emigration),** in which they crawl through the spaces between the endothelial cells into the interstitial fluid. Most diapedesis occurs across the walls of the postcapillary venules. Also filtering through the capillary and venule walls are antibodies, fibrinogen and other clotting proteins, and complement, all of which aid in combating the pathogens as described next.

Think About It

Review eicosanoid synthesis (p. 665) and explain why aspirin eases the pain of inflammation.

Table 21.1 Cellular Agents of Inflammation

Agents	Action
Basophils	Secrete histamine, heparin, bradykinin, serotonin, and leukotrienes
Endothelial cells	Produce cell-adhesion molecules to recruit leukocytes; synthesize platelet-derived growth factor to stimulate fibroblast activity and tissue repair
Eosinophils	Attack parasites too large to phagocytize; phagocytize antigen-antibody complexes
Fibroblasts	Promote tissue repair by secreting collagen, ground substance, and other tissue components; produce scar tissue
Helper T cells	Secrete interleukins that promote inflammation and activate specific immunity
Macrophages	Phagocytize bacteria, tissue debris, dead and dying leukocytes and pathogens; act as antigen-presenting cells, which activate specific immunity
Mast cells	Same actions as basophils
Neutrophils	Phagocytize bacteria; secrete bactericidal oxidizing agents into tissue fluid; secrete cytokines that activate other cells
Platelets	Secrete clotting factors, which initiate tissue fluid coagulation, and platelet-derived growth factor

---

[10] *dia* = through + *pedesis* = stepping

Table 21.2 Chemical Agents of Inflammation

Substance	Sources	Effects*
Bradykinin	Plasma and basophils	Pain; vasodilation; increased vascular permeability; neutrophil chemotaxis
Clotting factors	Plasma, platelets, and damaged cells	Coagulation of tissue fluid; isolation of pathogens; formation of temporary framework for tissue repair; include fibrinogen and clotting enzymes
Cytokines	Leukocytes, macrophages, mast cells	Mediation of immune and nonspecific defenses; include interferons, interleukins, growth factors, and other signals
Colony-stimulating factors	Macrophages and T cells	Leukopoiesis; increased WBC count
Complement	Plasma	Enhanced histamine release; neutrophil chemotaxis; promotion of phagocytosis
Heparin	Basophils and mast cells	Inhibits clotting in area of infection or injury; thus promotes WBC mobility
Histamine	Basophils and mast cells	Vasodilation; increased vascular permeability
Leukotrienes	Damaged cells, mast cells, and basophils	Vasodilation; increased vascular permeability; neutrophil chemotaxis
Platelet-derived growth factor	Platelets and endothelial cells	Stimulation of fibroblast activity; cell division; replacement of damaged cells
Prostaglandins	Damaged cells	Pain; enhanced action of histamine and bradykinin; neutrophil diapedesis

*Some inflammatory chemicals have additional roles in specific immunity, as described in table 21.6.

Containment and Destruction of Pathogens

One priority in inflammation is to prevent introduced pathogens from spreading through the body. The fibrinogen that filters into the tissue fluid clots in areas adjacent to the injury, forming a sticky mesh that sequesters (walls off) bacteria and other microbes. Heparin, the anticoagulant, prevents clotting in the area of the injury itself, so essentially bacteria or other pathogens are trapped in a fluid pocket surrounded by a gelatinous "capsule" of clotted fluid. They are attacked by antibodies, phagocytes, and other defenses, while the surrounding areas of clotted tissue fluid prevent them from escaping this onslaught.

The chief enemies of bacteria are the neutrophils, which begin to accumulate in the inflamed tissue within an hour of injury. After emigrating from the bloodstream, neutrophils exhibit **chemotaxis**—attraction to chemotactic chemicals such as bradykinin and leukotrienes that guide them to the site of injury or infection. As they encounter bacteria, neutrophils avidly phagocytize and digest them, and destroy many more by the respiratory burst described earlier. The four major stages of neutrophil action are summarized in figure 21.16.

Neutrophils also recruit macrophages and additional neutrophils by secreting cytokines, like shouting "Over here!" to bring in reinforcements. Activated macrophages and T cells in the inflamed tissue also secrete *colony-stimulating factors,* cytokines that promote the production of more leukocytes (leukopoiesis) by the red bone marrow. Within a few hours of the onset of inflammation, the neutrophil count in the blood can rise from the normal 4,000 or 5,000 cells/μL to as high as 25,000 cells/μL, a condition called **neutrophilia.** In the case of an allergy or parasitic infection, an elevated eosinophil count, or **eosinophilia,** may also occur. The task of eosinophils was described earlier.

Tissue Cleanup and Repair

Monocytes are major agents of tissue cleanup and repair. They arrive within 8 to 12 hours of an injury, emigrate from the bloodstream, and turn into macrophages. Macrophages engulf and destroy bacteria, damaged host cells, and dead and dying neutrophils. They also act as antigen-presenting cells, activating immune responses as described later in the chapter.

Edema also contributes to tissue cleanup. The swelling compresses veins and reduces venous drainage, while it forces open the valves of lymphatic capillaries and promotes lymphatic drainage. The lymphatics can collect and remove bacteria, dead cells, proteins, and tissue debris better than blood capillaries can.

As the battle progresses, all of the neutrophils and most of the macrophages die. These dead cells, other tissue debris, and tissue fluid form a pool of yellowish fluid

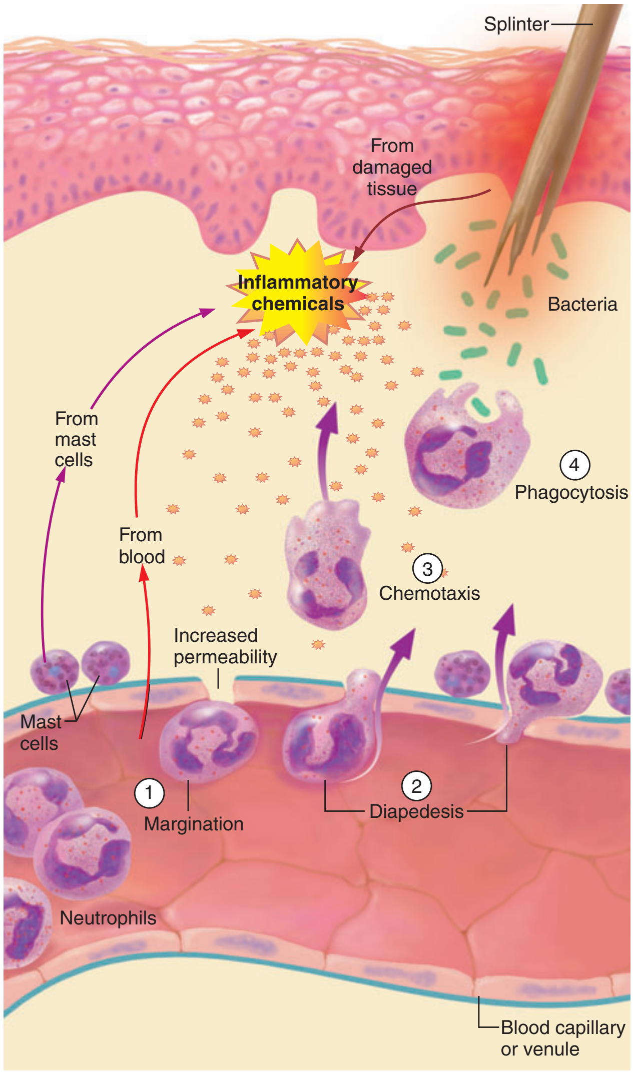


Figure 21.16 **Leukocyte Behavior in Inflammation.** Chemical messengers are released by basophils, mast cells, blood plasma, and damaged tissue. These inflammatory chemicals stimulate leukocyte margination (adhesion to the capillary wall), diapedesis (crawling through the capillary wall), chemotaxis (movement toward the source of the inflammatory chemicals), and phagocytosis (engulfing bacteria or other pathogens).

called **pus,** which accumulates in a tissue cavity called an **abscess.**[11] Pus is usually absorbed, but sometimes it forms a blister between the epidermis and dermis and may be released by its rupture.

Blood platelets and endothelial cells in an area of injury secrete a cytokine called **platelet-derived growth factor,** an agent that stimulates fibroblasts to multiply and synthesize collagen. Hyperemia, at the same time, delivers the oxygen, amino acids, and other necessities of protein synthesis, while the heat of inflamed tissue increases metabolic rate and the speed of mitosis and tissue repair. The fibrin clot in inflamed tissue may provide a scaffold for tissue reconstruction. Pain also contributes importantly to recovery. It is an important alarm signal that calls our attention to the injury and makes us limit the use of a body part so it has a chance to rest and heal.

Fever

Fever is an abnormal elevation of body temperature. It is also known as **pyrexia,** and the term **febrile** means pertaining to fever (as in a "febrile attack"). Fever can result from trauma, infections, drug reactions, brain tumors, and several other causes. Because of variations in human body temperature, there is no exact criterion for what constitutes a fever—a temperature that is febrile for one person may be normal for another.

Fever was long regarded as an undesirable side effect of illness, and efforts were (and still are) made to reduce it for the sake of comfort. It is now recognized, however, as an adaptive defense mechanism that, in moderation, does more good than harm. People with colds, for example, recover more quickly and are less infective to others when they allow a fever to run its course rather than using **antipyretic** (fever-reducing) medications such as aspirin. Fever is beneficial in that (1) it promotes interferon activity, (2) it elevates metabolic rate and accelerates tissue repair, and (3) it inhibits reproduction of bacteria and viruses.

When neutrophils and macrophages phagocytize bacteria, they secrete a **pyrogen**[12] (fever-producing agent) called *interleukin-1 (Il-1).* Il-1 stimulates the anterior hypothalamus to secrete prostaglandin E (PGE). PGE, in turn, raises the hypothalamic set point for body temperature—say to 39°C (102°F) instead of the usual 37°C. Aspirin and ibuprofen reduce fever by inhibiting PGE synthesis.

When the set point rises, a person shivers to generate heat and the cutaneous blood vessels constrict to reduce heat loss. In the stage of fever called *onset,* one has chills, feels cold and clammy to the touch, and has a rising temperature (fig. 21.17). In the next stage, *stadium,* the body temperature oscillates around the new set point for as long as the pathogen is present. The elevated temperature stimulates the liver and spleen to hoard zinc and iron, depriving bacteria of minerals they need to reproduce. When the infection is defeated, pyrogen secretion ceases and the hypothalamic thermostat is set back to normal. This activates heat-losing mechanisms, especially cutaneous vasodilation and sweating. The skin is warm and flushed during this phase. The phase of falling temperature is

---

[11] *ab* = away + *scess* (from *cedere*) = to go

[12] *pyro* = fire, heat + *gen* = producing

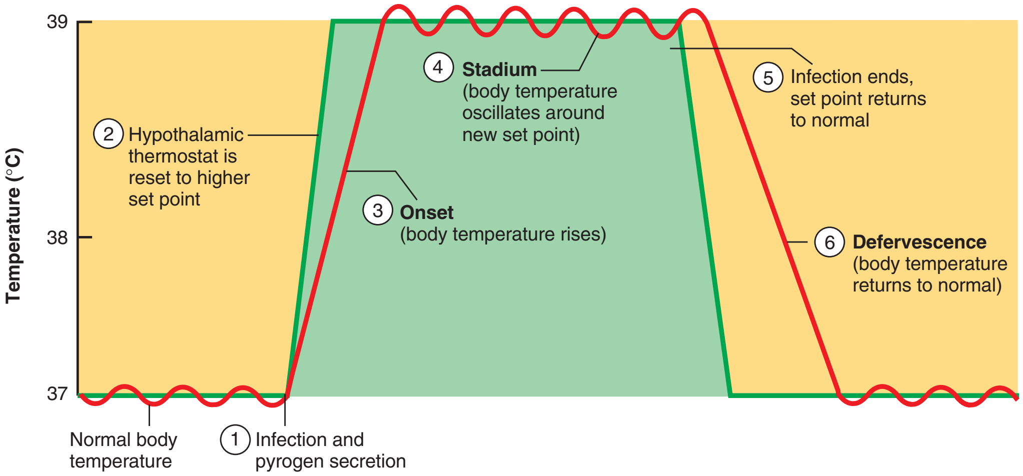


Figure 21.17 **The Course of a Fever.**

called *defervescence* in general, *crisis (flush)* if the temperature drops abruptly, or *lysis* if it falls slowly.

Even though most fevers are beneficial, excessively high temperature can be dangerous because it speeds up different enzymatic pathways to different degrees, thus causing metabolic discoordination and cellular dysfunction. Fevers above 40.5°C (105°F) can make a person delirious. Convulsions and coma ensue at higher temperatures, and death or irreversible brain damage commonly results from fevers that range from 44° to 46°C (111° to 115°F).

Insight 21.1 Clinical Application

Reye Syndrome

In children under 15, an acute viral infection such as chickenpox or influenza is sometimes followed by a serious disorder called *Reye*[13] *syndrome*. First recognized in 1963, this disease is characterized by swelling of brain neurons and by fatty infiltration of the liver and other viscera. Neurons die from hypoxia and the pressure of the swelling brain, which results in nausea, vomiting, disorientation, seizures, and coma. About 30% of victims die, and the survivors sometimes suffer mental retardation. Reye syndrome can be triggered by the use of aspirin to control fever; parents are now strictly advised never to give aspirin to children with chickenpox or flulike symptoms.

---

[13] R. Douglas Reye (1912–77), Australian pathologist

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

5. What are macrophages? Give four examples and state where they are found.
6. List the cardinal signs of inflammation and state the cause of each.
7. How do interferons and the complement system protect against disease?
8. Summarize the benefits of fever and the limits of these benefits.

General Aspects of Specific Immunity

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- define *specific immunity;*
- contrast cellular and humoral immunity, active and passive immunity, and natural and artificial immunity;
- describe the chemical properties of antigens; and
- describe the general roles played by lymphocytes, antigen-presenting cells, and interleukins in the immune response.

The remainder of this chapter is concerned with the immune system and specific immunity, the third line of defense. The **immune**[14] **system** is not an organ system but a group of widely distributed cells that recognize foreign substances and act to neutralize or destroy them. Two characteristics distinguish immunity from nonspecific resistance:

1. **Specificity.** Immunity is directed against a particular pathogen. Immunity to one pathogen usually does not confer immunity to others.
2. **Memory.** When reexposed to the same pathogen, the body reacts so quickly that there is no noticeable illness. The reaction time for inflammation and other nonspecific defenses, by

---

[14] *immuno* = free

contrast, is just as long for later exposures as it was for the initial one.

These properties of immunity were recognized even in the fifth century B.C.E., when Thucydides remarked that people who recover from a disease often become immune to that one but remain susceptible to others. A person might be immune to measles but still susceptible to polio, for example.

Forms of Immunity

In the late 1800s, it was discovered that immunity can be transferred from one animal to another by way of the blood serum. In the mid-1900s, however, it was found that serum does not always confer immunity; sometimes only donor lymphocytes do so. Thus, we now recognize two types of immunity, called cellular and humoral immunity, although these two mechanisms interact extensively and often respond to the same pathogen.

Cellular (cell-mediated) immunity is based on the action of lymphocytes that directly attack diseased or "suspicious" cells, including those of transplanted tissues, cells infected with viruses or parasites, and cancer cells. Lymphocytes lyse these cells or release chemicals that enhance other defenses such as inflammation.

Humoral (antibody-mediated) immunity, named for the fluids or "humors" of the body, is an indirect attack that employs antibodies. Antibodies occur in the body fluids and on the plasma membranes of some lymphocytes. Circulating antibodies bind to bacteria, toxins, and extracellular viruses, tagging them for destruction by mechanisms described later. You will find cellular and humoral immunity summarized and compared in table 21.7 following discussion of the details of the two processes.

Other ways of classifying immunity are active versus passive and natural versus artificial. In *active immunity* the body makes its own antibodies or T cells against a pathogen, whereas in *passive immunity* the body acquires antibodies or T cells produced by another person or an animal. Either type of immunity can occur naturally or, for treatment and prevention purposes, it can be induced artificially. Thus we can recognize four classes of immunity under this scheme:

1. **Natural active immunity.** This is the production of one's own antibodies or T cells as a result of infection or other natural exposure to an antigen.
2. **Artificial active immunity.** This is the production of one's own antibodies or T cells as a result of **vaccination** against diseases such as smallpox, tetanus, or influenza. A **vaccine** consists of either dead or *attenuated* (weakened) pathogens which can stimulate an immune response but normally cause little or no discomfort or disease. In some cases, periodic "booster shots" are given to restimulate immune memory and maintain a high level of protection. Vaccination has eliminated smallpox worldwide and greatly reduced the incidence of life-threatening childhood diseases, but many people continue to die from influenza and other diseases that could be prevented by vaccination.
3. **Natural passive immunity.** This is a temporary immunity that results from acquiring antibodies produced by another individual. The only natural way for this to happen is for a fetus to acquire antibodies from the mother through the placenta before birth or for a baby to acquire it through the colostrum or breast milk after birth.
4. **Artificial passive immunity.** This is a temporary immunity that results from the injection of an *immune serum* obtained from another individual or from animals (such as horses) that produced antibodies against a certain pathogen. Immune serum is used for emergency treatment of snakebites, botulism, tetanus, rabies, and other diseases.

Only the two forms of active immunity involve immune memory and thus provide future protection. Passive immunity typically lasts for only 2 or 3 weeks, until the acquired antibody is degraded. The remaining discussion is based on natural active immunity.

Antigens

An **antigen**[15] **(Ag)** is any molecule that triggers an immune response. Some antigens are free molecules such as venoms and toxins; others are components of plasma membranes and bacterial cell walls. Small universal molecules such as glucose and amino acids are not antigenic; if they were, our immune systems would attack the nutrients and other molecules essential to our very survival. Most antigens have molecular weights over 10,000 amu and are generally complex molecules that are unique to each individual: proteins, polysaccharides, glycoproteins, and glycolipids. Their uniqueness enables the body to distinguish its own ("self") molecules from those of any other individual or organism ("nonself"). The immune system "learns" to distinguish self- from nonself-antigens prior to birth; thereafter, it normally attacks only nonself-antigens.

Only certain regions of an antigen molecule, called **epitopes (antigenic determinants),** stimulate immune responses. One antigen molecule typically has several different epitopes, however, that can stimulate the production of different antibodies.

Some molecules called **haptens**[16] are too small to be antigenic in themselves, but they can stimulate an immune response by binding to a host macromolecule and creating a unique complex that the body recognizes as foreign. After the first exposure, a hapten may stimulate an immune response without needing to bind to another molecule.

---

[15] acronym from *anti*body *gen*erating

[16] from *haptein* = to fasten

Many people are allergic to haptens in cosmetics, detergents, industrial chemicals, poison ivy, and animal dander. Penicillin is a hapten that sometimes binds to erythrocytes and triggers an allergic reaction that destroys them.

Lymphocytes

The major cells of the immune system are lymphocytes and macrophages, which are especially concentrated at strategic places such as the lymphatic organs and mucous membranes. Lymphocytes fall into three classes: natural killer (NK) cells (which we have already discussed), T lymphocytes, and B lymphocytes. In circulating blood, about 80% of the lymphocytes are T cells, 15% B cells, and 5% NK and stem cells.

T Lymphocytes (T cells)

During fetal development, the bone marrow releases undifferentiated stem cells into the blood. Some of these colonize the thymus and become T cells. In the thymic cortex, reticular epithelial (RE) cells secrete thymic hormones that stimulate these T cells to develop surface antigen receptors. With receptors in place, the T cells are now **immunocompetent,** capable of recognizing antigens presented to them by APCs. The RE cells then test these T cells by presenting self-antigens to them. There are two ways to fail the test: inability to recognize the RE cells at all (specifically, their MHC proteins, described later), or reacting to the self-antigens. T cells that fail the test are eliminated—a process called **negative selection.** There are two forms of negative selection: **clonal deletion,** in which self-reactive T cells die and macrophages phagocytize them, and **anergy,**[17] in which they remain alive but unresponsive. Negative selection leaves the body in a state of **self-tolerance** in which the surviving, active T cells respond only to foreign antigens, not to one's own.

T cells that recognize the RE cells but do not react strongly to self-antigens undergo **positive selection**—they multiply and form **clones** of identical T cells programmed to respond to a particular foreign antigen. Only about 2% of the T cells survive negative selection and move on to the medulla. These T cells, which are immunocompetent but have not yet encountered the "enemy" (foreign antigens), constitute the **virgin lymphocyte pool.** These virgin *(naive)* T cells leave the thymus and colonize lymphatic tissues and organs everywhere.

Think About It

Is clonal deletion a case of apoptosis or necrosis? Explain your answer. (Review these concepts in chapter 5 if necessary.)

B Lymphocytes (B cells)

Another group of fetal stem cells remain in the bone marrow to differentiate into B cells. Those that respond to self-antigens undergo either anergy or clonal deletion, much like self-reactive T cells. Self-tolerant B cells, on the other hand, go on to produce surface receptors for antigens, divide, and produce immunocompetent B cell clones. These cells disperse throughout the body, colonizing the same organs as T cells. They are abundant in the lymph nodes, spleen, bone marrow, and mucous membranes.

Antigen-Presenting Cells

In addition to their other roles, B cells, macrophages, reticular cells, and dendritic cells function as **antigen-presenting cells (APCs).** T cells usually cannot recognize free antigen molecules but require the help of APCs. APC function hinges on a family of genes on chromosome 6 called the **major histocompatibility complex (MHC).** These genes code for **MHC proteins,** which are structurally unique to every person except for identical twins. MHC proteins act as "identification tags" that label every cell of your body as belonging to you. An MHC protein is shaped a little like a hotdog bun—an elongated protein with a central groove.

An antigen-presenting cell internalizes an antigen by endocytosis, digests it into molecular fragments *(antigen processing),* and "displays" the epitopes in the grooves of its MHC proteins (fig. 21.18). Wandering T cells regularly inspect APCs for displayed antigens (fig. 21.19). If an MHC protein carries a self-antigen, the T cells disregard it. If it carries a nonself-antigen, however, the T cells initiate an immune attack. APCs thus alert the immune system to the presence of a foreign antigen. The key to a successful defense is then to quickly mobilize immune cells against the antigen.

Interleukins

With so many cell types involved in immunity, it is not surprising that they require chemical messengers to coordinate their activities. **Interleukins**[18] are chemical signals (cytokines) sent from one leukocyte (or leukocyte derivative) to another. Those produced by lymphocytes are called *lymphokines,*[19] and those produced by macrophages are called *monokines* (after monocytes, the macrophage precursors).

Since the terminology of immune cells and chemicals is quite complex, you may find it helpful to refer often to tables 21.5 and 21.6 (pp. 826–827) as you read the following discussions of cellular and humoral immunity.

---

[17] *an* = without + *erg* = action, work

[18] *inter* = between + *leuk* = leukocytes

[19] *kine* = motion, action

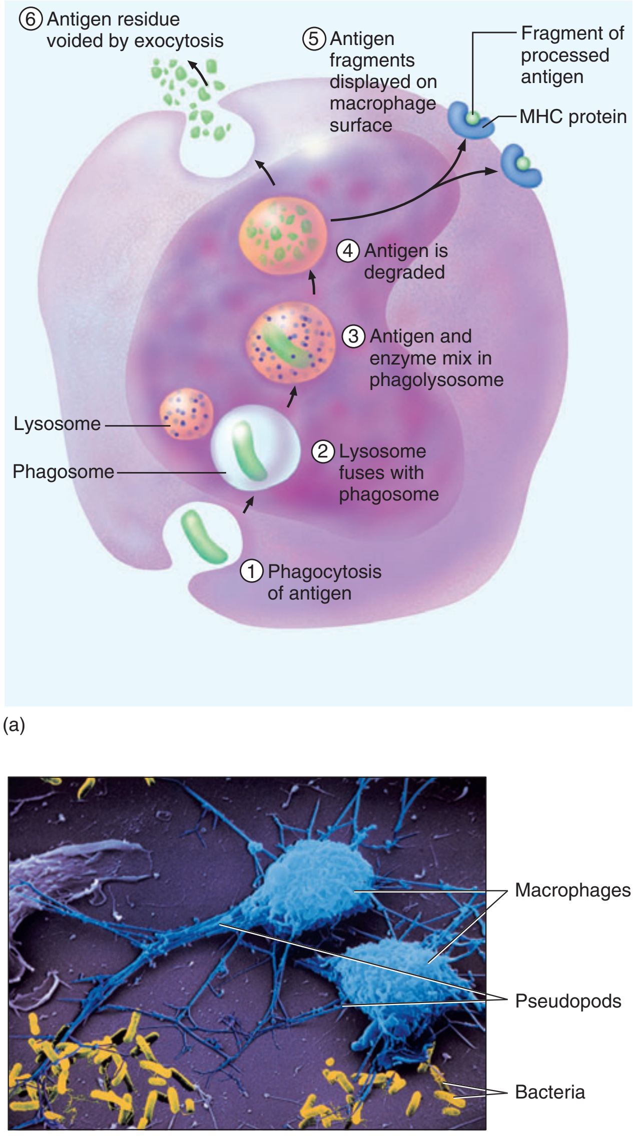

⑥ Antigen residue voided by exocytosis
⑤ Antigen fragments displayed on macrophage surface
Fragment of processed antigen
MHC protein
④ Antigen is degraded
③ Antigen and enzyme mix in phagolysosome
Lysosome
Phagosome
② Lysosome fuses with phagosome
① Phagocytosis of antigen
(a)
Macrophages
Pseudopods
Bacteria
(b)

Figure 21.18 **The Action of an Antigen-Presenting Cell (APC).** (*a*) Stages in the processing and presentation of an antigen by an APC such as a macrophage. (*b*) Macrophages phagocytizing bacteria. Filamentous extensions of the macrophage snare the rod-shaped bacteria and draw them to the cell surface, where they are engulfed.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

9. How does specific immunity differ from nonspecific defense?
10. How does humoral immunity differ from cellular immunity?
11. Contrast active and passive immunity. Give a natural and an artificial example of each.

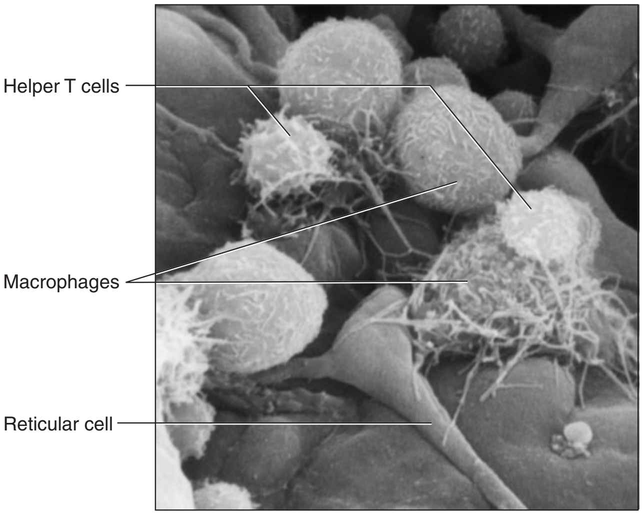

Helper T cells
Macrophages
Reticular cell

Figure 21.19 **T Cells "Inspecting" Macrophages in a Lymph Node for Antigen Presentation.** From R. G. Kessel and R. H. Kardon, *Tissues and Organs: A Text-Atlas of Scanning Electron Microscopy* (W. H. Freeman & Co., 1979).

12. What structural properties distinguish antigenic molecules from those that are not antigenic?
13. What is an immunocompetent lymphocyte? What does a lymphocyte have to produce in order to be immunocompetent?
14. Define *T cell* and *B cell.*
15. Define *interleukin*, *lymphokine*, and *monokine.*

Cellular Immunity

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- list the types of lymphocytes involved in cellular immunity and describe the roles they play;
- explain how antigen-presenting cells activate T lymphocytes;
- explain how interleukins coordinate the actions of immune system cells; and
- explain the role of memory cells in cellular immunity.

Cellular immunity involves four classes of T cells:

1. **Cytotoxic T (T_C) cells** are the "effectors" of cellular immunity which carry out the attack on foreign cells. They are also called *killer T cells,* but are not the same as *natural killer* cells.
2. **Helper T (T_H) cells** promote the action of T_C cells as well as playing key roles in humoral immunity and nonspecific defense. All other T cells are involved in cellular immunity only.
3. **Suppressor T (T_S) cells** limit the cell-mediated attack and keep the immune system from running out of

control. T_H and T_S cells are regulatory lymphocytes that act somewhat like an accelerator and brake on T_C action.

4. **Memory T cells** are descended from the cytotoxic T cells and are responsible for memory in cellular immunity.

T_H cells are also known as T4, CD4, or CD4+ cells, because they have a surface glycoprotein called CD4. Cytotoxic (T_C) and suppressor (T_S) cells are collectively known as T8, CD8, or CD8+ cells after their glycoprotein, CD8. (CD stands for *cluster of differentiation,* a classification system for many cell surface molecules.) These glycoproteins enable T cells to bind to other cells in the events to be described shortly.

With the foregoing introduction to the "actors" of the immune system, we can now discuss the "plot"—the mechanisms of immunity. Both cellular and humoral immunity occur in three stages that we can think of as recognition, attack, and memory (or "the three *R*s of immunity"—recognize, react, and remember). In cellular immunity, the events of each stage are as follows.

Recognition

The recognition phase has two aspects: antigen presentation and T cell activation.

Antigen Presentation

When an antigen-presenting cell (APC) encounters and processes an antigen, it typically migrates to the nearest lymph node and displays it to T cells. Cytotoxic and helper T cells patrol the lymph nodes and other tissues as if looking for trouble. When they encounter a cell displaying an antigen on an MHC protein (MHCP), they initiate an immune response. T cells respond to two classes of MHCPs:

MHC-I proteins occur on every nucleated cell of the body (not erythrocytes). These proteins are constantly produced by the cell and transported to the plasma membrane. Along the way, they pick up small peptides in the cytoplasm and display these once they are installed in the membrane. If the peptides are normal self-antigens, they do not elicit a T cell response. If they are viral proteins or abnormal antigens made by cancer cells, however, they do. In this case, the Ag–MHCP complex is like a tag on the host cell that says, "I'm diseased; kill me." Infected or malignant cells are then destroyed before they can do further harm to the body. *MHC-II proteins* (also called *human leukocyte antigens,* HLAs) occur only on APCs and display only foreign antigens. T_C cells respond only to MHC-I proteins and T_H cells respond only to MHC-II (table 21.3).

T Cell Activation

T cell activation is shown in figure 21.20. It begins when a T_C or T_H cell binds to an MHCP displaying an epitope that the T cell is programmed to recognize. Before the response can go any further, the T cell must bind to another site on the target cell, a membrane protein related to interleukins that sends an activating signal to the T cell. In a sense, the T cell has to "check twice" to see if it really has bound to an antigen-presenting cell displaying a foreign antigen. This signaling process, called **costimulation**, triggers a process called **clonal selection:** the activated T cell undergoes repeated mitosis, giving rise to a clone of identical T cells programmed against the same epitope. Some cells in the clone become effector cells that carry out an immune attack, and some become memory T cells.

Table 21.3 Comparison of the Responses of Cytotoxic and Helper T Cells

Characteristic	T_C Cells	T_H Cells
Cells capable of stimulating a response	Any nucleated cell	Antigen-presenting cells
MHC protein	MHC-I	MHC-II

Attack

Helper, cytotoxic, and suppressor T cells play different roles in the attack phase.

Helper T Cells

Most immune responses require the action of helper T cells, which play a central coordinating role in both humoral and cellular immunity (fig. 21.21). When a helper T cell recognizes an Ag–MHCP complex, it secretes interleukins that attract neutrophils and natural killer cells; attract macrophages, stimulate their phagocytic activity, and inhibit them from leaving the area; and stimulate T and B cell mitosis and maturation.

Cytotoxic T Cells

Cytotoxic T cells are the only T lymphocytes that directly attack and kill other cells. They are particularly responsive to cells of transplanted tissues and organs, cancer cells, and host cells that are infected with viruses, intracellular parasites, or bacteria (fig. 21.22).

When a T_C cell recognizes a complex of antigen and MHC-I protein on a diseased or foreign cell, it "docks" on that cell, delivers a **lethal hit** of cytotoxic chemicals that will destroy it, and goes off in search of other enemy cells while the chemicals do their work. Among these chemicals are (1) perforin, which creates holes in its plasma membrane and destroys the cell in the same manner as the

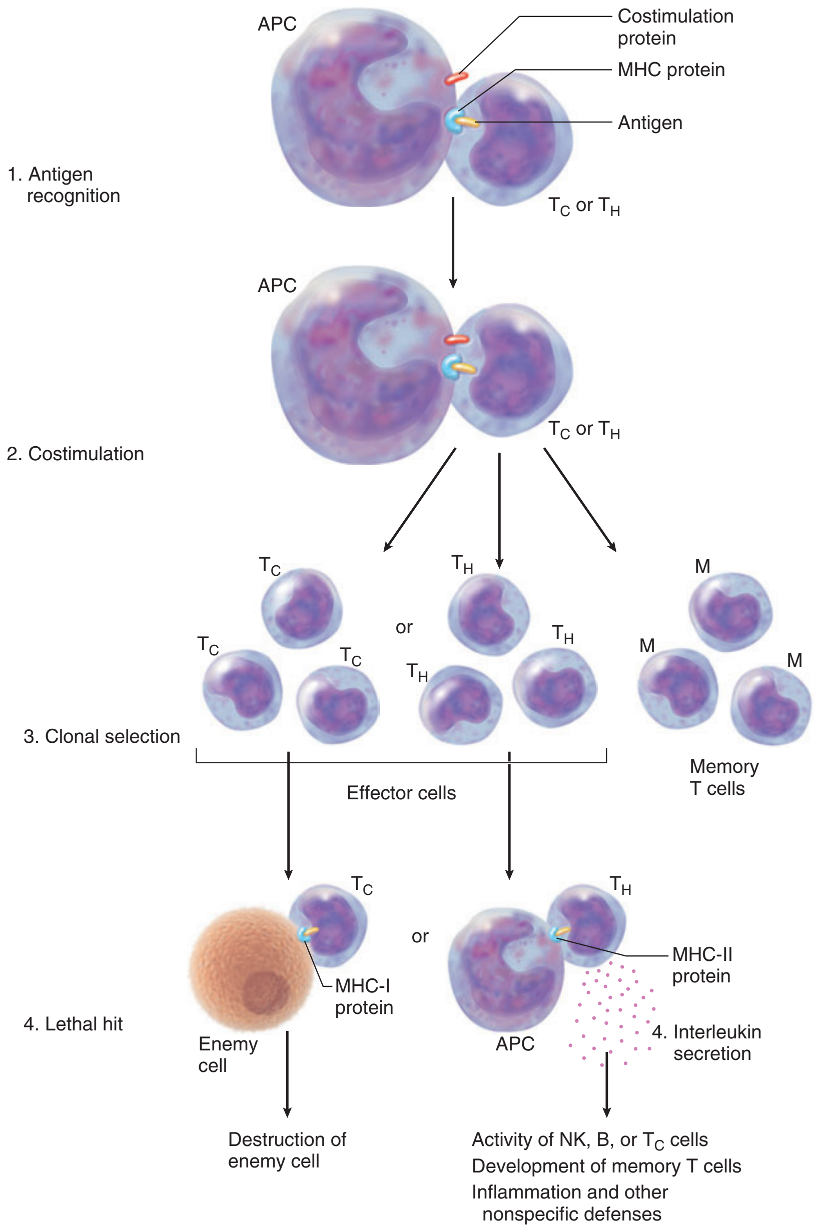

APC
Costimulation protein
MHC protein
Antigen
1. Antigen recognition
T_C or T_H
APC
2. Costimulation
T_C or T_H
T_C
T_C
T_C
or
T_H
T_H
T_H
M
M
M
3. Clonal selection
Effector cells
Memory T cells
T_C
MHC-I protein
Enemy cell
4. Lethal hit
or
T_H
MHC-II protein
APC
4. Interleukin secretion
Destruction of enemy cell
Activity of NK, B, or T_C cells
Development of memory T cells
Inflammation and other nonspecific defenses

Figure 21.20 **T Cell Activation.**

perforin released by natural killer cells (see pp. 809–810); (2) **lymphotoxin,** which destroys the target cell's DNA; and (3) **tumor necrosis factor (TNF),** which kills cancer cells by unknown mechanisms and stimulates fever, leukopoiesis, and eosinophil activity. T_C cells also secrete interferon, which inhibits the replication of viruses, and interleukins that regulate macrophage activity, as the interleukins of the T_H cells do.

Think About It

How is a cytotoxic T cell like a natural killer (NK) cell? How are they different?

Suppressor T Cells

As the pathogen is defeated and disappears from the tissues, suppressor T cells release interleukins that inhibit T

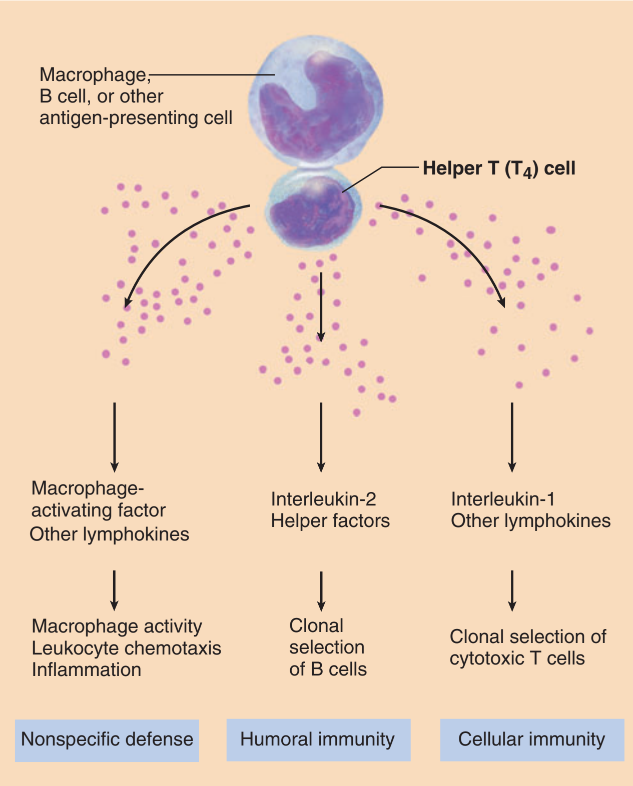

Macrophage, B cell, or other antigen-presenting cell
Helper T (T_4) cell
Macrophage-activating factor
Other lymphokines
Interleukin-2
Helper factors
Interleukin-1
Other lymphokines
Macrophage activity
Leukocyte chemotaxis
Inflammation
Clonal selection of B cells
Clonal selection of cytotoxic T cells
Nonspecific defense
Humoral immunity
Cellular immunity

Figure 21.21 **The Role of Helper T Cells in Defense and Immunity.**
Why does AIDS reduce the effectiveness of all three defenses listed across the bottom?

and B cell activity. This slows down the immune reaction and keeps it from running out of control. Suppressor T cells may help to prevent autoimmune diseases, discussed later.

Memory

As more and more cells are recruited by helper T cells, the immune response exerts an overwhelming force against the pathogen. The primary response, seen on first exposure to a particular pathogen, peaks in about a week and then gradually declines. It is followed by immune memory. Following clonal selection, some T_C and T_H cells become memory cells. Memory T cells are long-lived and much more numerous than the T cells of the virgin lymphocyte pool. Upon reexposure to the same pathogen later in life, memory cells mount a quick attack called the **T cell recall response.** This time-saving response destroys a pathogen so quickly that no noticeable illness occurs—that is, the person is immune to the disease.

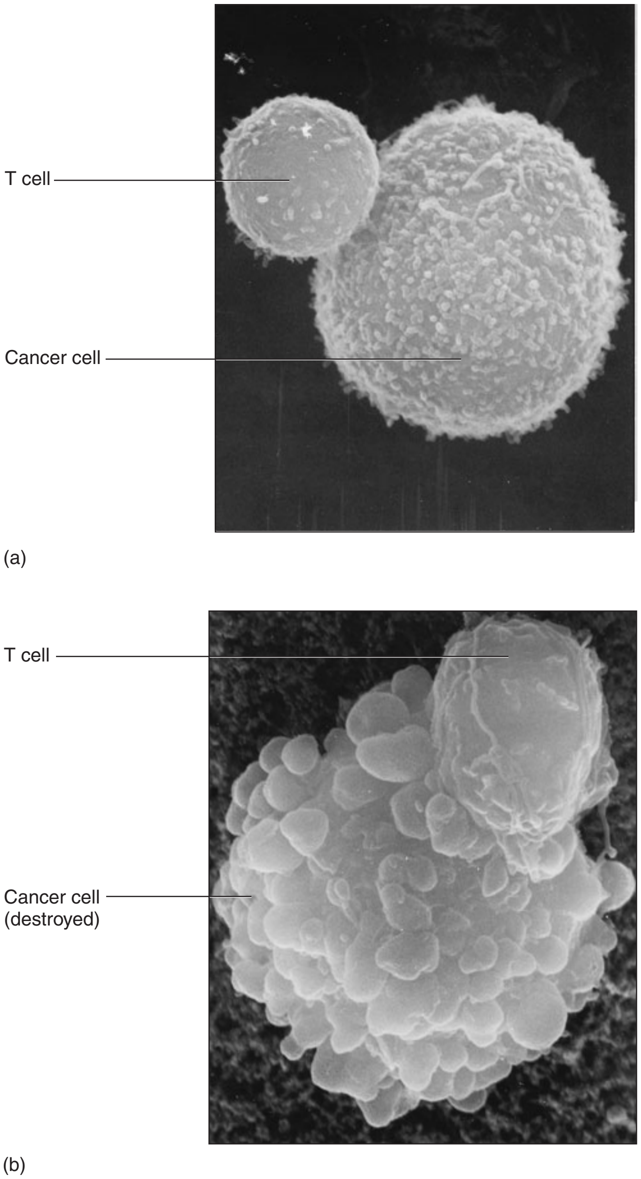

T cell
Cancer cell
(a)
T cell
Cancer cell (destroyed)
(b)

Figure 21.22 **Destruction of a Cancer Cell by a Cytotoxic T Cell.** (*a*) T cell binding to cancer cell. (*b*) Death of the cancer cell due to the lethal hit by the T cell.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

17. Name four types of lymphocytes that are involved in cellular immunity. Which of these is also essential to humoral immunity?
18. What are the three phases of an immune response?
19. Explain why cytotoxic T cells are activated by a broader range of host cells than are helper T cells.
20. Describe some ways in which cytotoxic T cells destroy target cells.

Humoral Immunity

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- explain how B cells recognize and respond to an antigen;
- describe structure, types, and actions of antibodies;
- explain the mechanism of memory in humoral immunity; and
- compare and contrast cellular and humoral immunity.

Humoral immunity is a more indirect method of defense than cellular immunity. Instead of directly contacting enemy cells, the B lymphocytes of humoral immunity produce antibodies that bind to antigens and tag them for destruction by other means. But like cellular immunity, humoral immunity works in three stages—recognition, attack, and memory.

Recognition

An immunocompetent B cell has thousands of surface receptors for one antigen. B cell activation begins when an antigen binds to several of these receptors, links them together, and is taken into the cell by receptor-mediated endocytosis. One reason small molecules are not antigenic is that they are too small to link multiple receptors together. After endocytosis, the B cell processes (digests) the antigen, links some the epitopes to its MHC-II proteins, and displays these on the cell surface.

Usually, the B-cell response goes no further unless a helper T cell binds to this Ag–MHCP complex. (Some B cells are directly activated by antigens without the help of a T_H cell.) When a T_H cell does bind to the complex, it secretes interleukins called *helper factors* that activate the B cell. This triggers clonal selection—B cell mitosis giving rise to a battalion of identical B cells programmed against the same antigen (fig. 21.23).

Most cells of the clone differentiate into **plasma cells.** These are larger than B cells and contain an abundance of rough endoplasmic reticulum (fig. 21.24). Plasma cells develop mainly in the germinal centers of the lymphatic follicles of the lymph nodes. About 10% of the plasma cells remain in the lymph node, but the rest leave the lymph nodes, take up residence in the bone marrow and elsewhere, and there produce antibodies until they die. A plasma cell secretes antibodies at the remarkable rate of 2,000 molecules per second over a life span of 4 to 5 days. These antibodies travel throughout the body in the blood and other body fluids. The first time you are exposed to a particular antigen, your plasma cells produce mainly an antibody class called IgM. In later exposures to the same antigen, they produce mainly IgG.

Attack

We have said much about antibodies already, and it is now time to take a closer look at what an antibody is and how it works. Also called an **immunoglobulin (Ig),** an antibody is a defensive gamma globulin found in the blood plasma, body secretions, and some leukocyte membranes. The basic structural unit of an antibody, an **antibody monomer,** is composed of four polypeptides linked by disulfide (–S–S–) bonds (fig. 21.25). The two larger **heavy chains** are about 400 amino acids long and the two **light chains** about half that long. Each heavy chain has a hinge region where the antibody is bent, giving the monomer a T or Y shape.

All four chains have a **variable (V) region,** which gives an antibody its uniqueness. The V regions of a heavy chain and light chain combine to form an **antigen-binding site** on each arm, which attaches to the epitope of an antigen molecule. The rest of each chain is a **constant (C) region,** which has the same amino acid sequence in all antibodies of a given class (within one person). The C region determines the mechanism of an antibody's action—for example, whether it can bind complement proteins.

There are five classes of antibodies named **IgA, IgD, IgE, IgG,** and **IgM** (table 21.4), named for the structures of their C regions (*alpha, delta, epsilon, gamma,* and *mu*). IgD, IgE, and IgG are monomers. IgA has a monomeric form as well as a dimer composed of two cojoined monomers. IgM is a pentamer composed of five monomers. The surface antigen receptors synthesized by a developing B cell are IgD and IgM molecules. IgG is particularly important in the immunity of the newborn because it is the only immunoglobulin that crosses the placenta. Thus, it transfers some of the mother's immunity to her fetus. In addition, an infant acquires some maternal IgA through breast milk and colostrum (the fluid secreted for the first 2 or 3 days of breast-feeding).

The immune system is thought to produce as many as 2 million different antibodies. This is an astonishing number considering that normally each protein in the body is encoded by a different gene and we have a total of only 35,000 genes, most of which have functions unrelated to immunity. Obviously there cannot be a different gene for each antibody. Instead, the genome contains several hundred DNA segments that can be shuffled and combined in various ways to produce antibody genes unique to each antibody-producing cell line. This process is called **somatic recombination** because it forms new combinations of DNA base sequences in somatic (nonreproductive) cells. This explains how we can produce such a tremendous variety of antibodies with a limited number of genes.

Once released by a plasma cell, antibodies use four mechanisms to render antigens harmless:

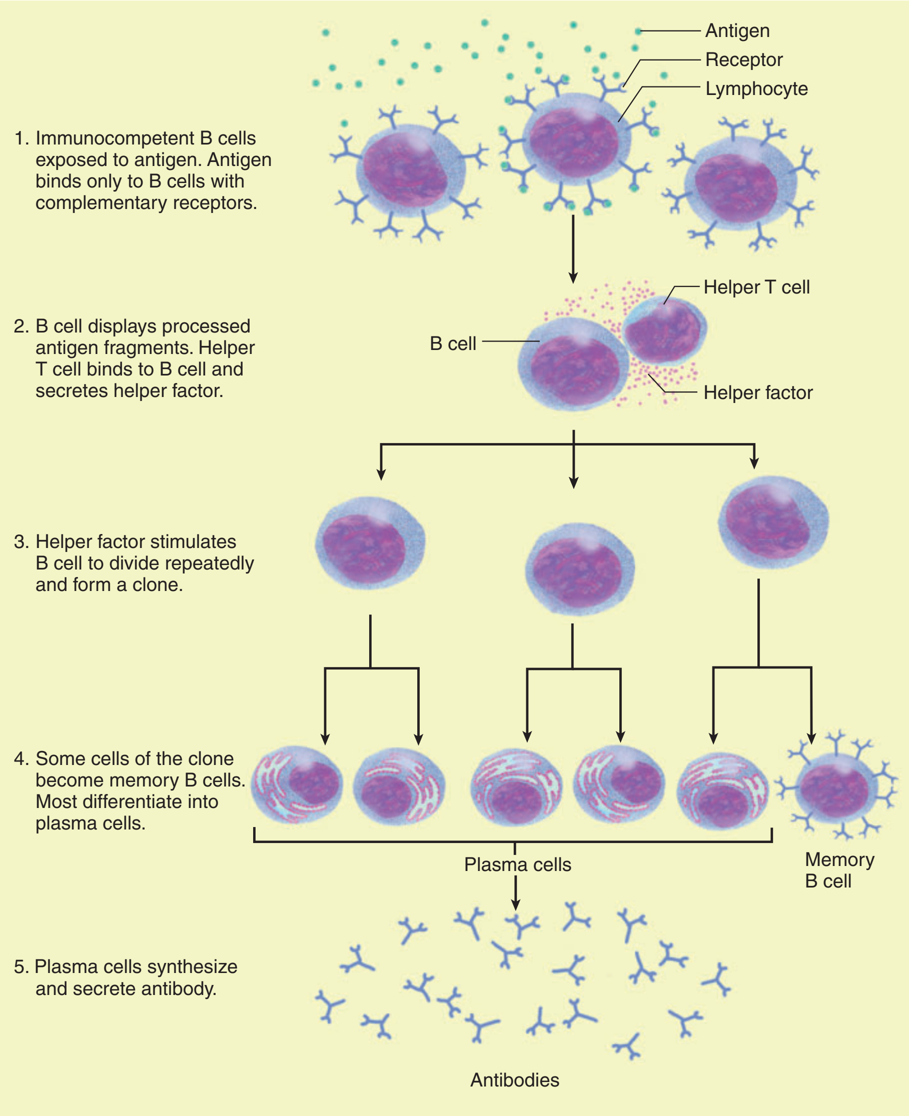

Antigen
Receptor
Lymphocyte
1. Immunocompetent B cells exposed to antigen. Antigen binds only to B cells with complementary receptors.
Helper T cell
B cell
Helper factor
2. B cell displays processed antigen fragments. Helper T cell binds to B cell and secretes helper factor.
3. Helper factor stimulates B cell to divide repeatedly and form a clone.
4. Some cells of the clone become memory B cells. Most differentiate into plasma cells.
Plasma cells
Memory B cell
5. Plasma cells synthesize and secrete antibody.
Antibodies

Figure 21.23 Clonal Selection and Ensuing Events of the Humoral Immune Response.

1. **Neutralization.** Only certain regions of an antigen are pathogenic—for example, the parts of a toxin molecule or virus that enable these agents to bind to human cells. Antibodies can neutralize an antigen by binding to these active regions and masking them.
2. **Complement fixation.** Antibodies IgM and IgG bind to enemy cells and change shape, exposing their complement-binding sites (see fig. 21.25*a*). This initiates the binding of complement to the enemy cell surface (see the *classical pathway,* fig. 21.14) and leads to cytolysis, opsonization of bacteria, and enhanced inflammation, as described earlier. Complement fixation is the primary mechanism of defense against such foreign cells as bacteria and mismatched erythrocytes.
3. **Agglutination** was described in chapter 18 in the discussion of ABO and Rh blood types. It is effective not only in mismatched blood transfusions but more importantly as a defense against bacteria. An antibody molecule has 2 to 10 binding sites; thus, it can bind to antigen molecules on two or

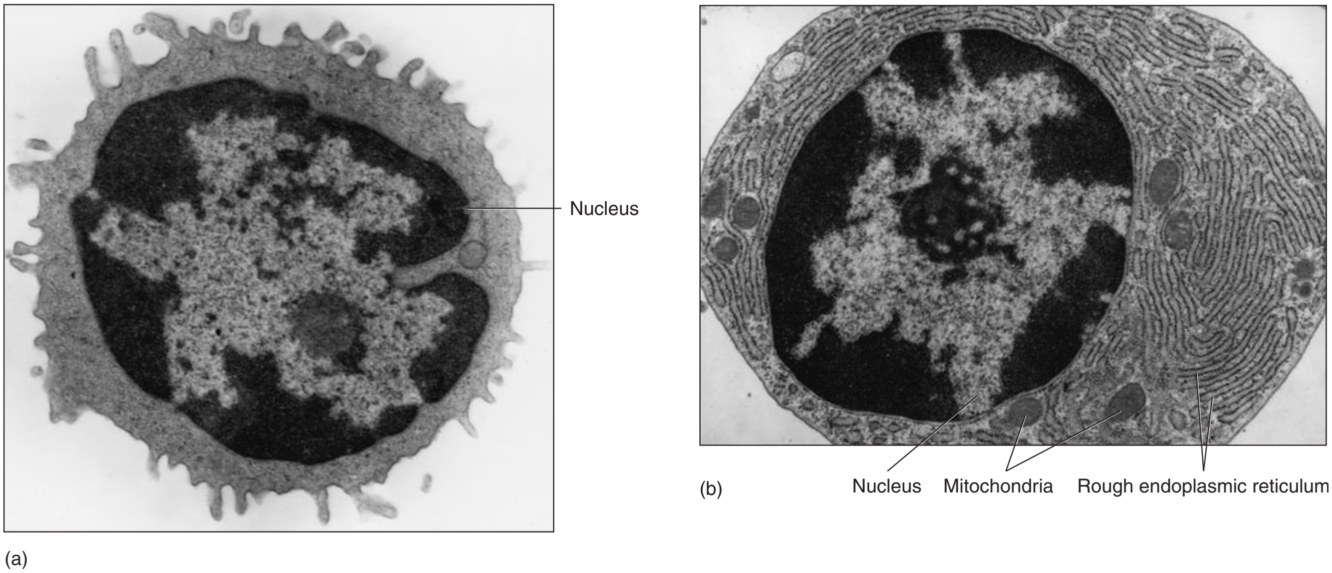

Nucleus
(a)
(b)
Nucleus
Mitochondria
Rough endoplasmic reticulum

Figure 21.24 **A B Cell and Plasma Cell.** (*a*) A B cell has little cytoplasm and scanty organelles. (*b*) A plasma cell, which differentiates from a B cell, has an abundance of rough endoplasmic reticulum.
What does this endoplasmic reticulum do?

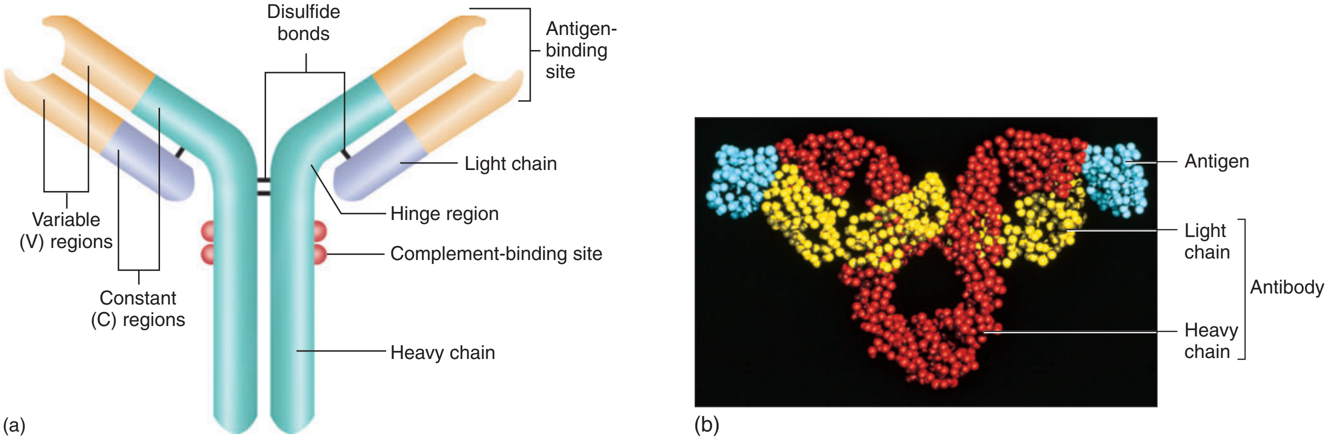

Disulfide bonds
Antigen-binding site
Light chain
Hinge region
Complement-binding site
Heavy chain
Variable (V) regions
Constant (C) regions
(a)
Antigen
Light chain
Antibody
Heavy chain
(b)

Figure 21.25 **Antibody Structure.** (*a*) A molecule of IgG, a monomer. (*b*) Computer-generated image of IgG bound to an antigen (lysozyme).

more enemy cells at once and stick them together (fig. 21.26*a*). This immobilizes microbes and antigen molecules and prevents them from spreading through the tissues.

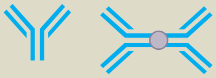
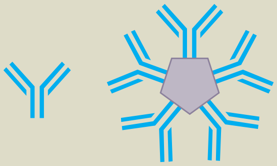
4. **Precipitation** begins with a similar process in which antibodies link antigen molecules (not whole cells) together. This creates an antigen-antibody complex that is too large to remain in solution (fig. 21.26*b*). The complex precipitates and an eosinophil may then phagocytize it.

You will note that antibodies do not directly destroy an antigen in any of these mechanisms. They render it harmless by covering its pathogenic sites or agglutinating it, and they mark it for destruction by other agents such as complement, macrophages, or eosinophils.

Think About It

Explain why IgM has a stronger power of agglutination than antibodies of any other class.

Table 21.4 The Five Classes of Antibodies

Class	Structure	Location and Function
IgA	Monomer and dimer forms 	Plasma IgA is a monomer found in blood plasma; secretory IgA is a dimer found in mucus, saliva, tears, milk, and intestinal secretions. IgA prevents pathogens from adhering to epithelia and penetrating the underlying tissues.
IgD	Monomer	An integral protein of the B cell membrane; acts as an antigen receptor.
IgE	Monomer	Found mainly in tonsils, skin, and mucous membranes. Stimulates mast cells and basophils to release histamine and other chemical mediators of inflammation and allergy; attracts eosinophils to sites of parasitic infection.
IgG	Monomer	Constitutes 75% to 85% of circulating antibodies in plasma. Crosses placenta and confers temporary immunity on the fetus. Includes the anti-D antibodies of the Rh blood group. The predominant antibody secreted in the secondary immune response. IgG and IgM are the only antibodies able to bind complement.
IgM	Monomer and pentamer forms 	Monomer is an antigen receptor of the B cell membrane; pentamer occurs in blood plasma. The predominant antibody secreted in the primary immune response; very strong agglutinating ability; includes the anti-A and anti-B agglutinins of the ABO blood group.

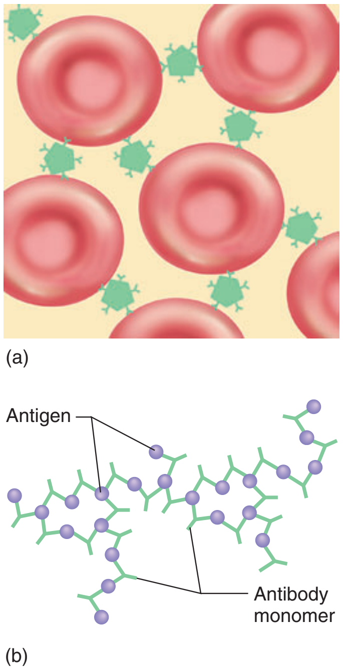


Figure 21.26 Agglutination by Antibodies. (*a*) Agglutination of foreign erythrocytes by IgM. (*b*) An antigen-antibody complex.

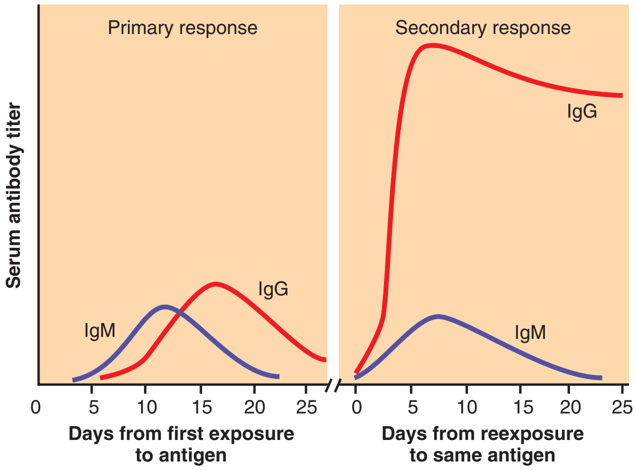


Figure 21.27 The Primary and Secondary (anamnestic) Responses in Humoral Immunity. The individual is exposed to antigen on day 0 in both cases. Note the differences in the speed of response, the height of the antibody titer, and the rate of decline in antibody titer.

Memory

When a person is exposed to a particular antigen for the first time, the immune reaction is called the **primary response.** The appearance of protective antibodies is delayed for 3 to 6 days while virgin B cells multiply and differentiate into plasma cells. As the plasma cells begin secreting antibody, the **antibody titer** (level in the blood plasma) begins to rise (fig. 21.27). IgM appears first, peaks in about 10 days, and soon declines. IgG levels rise as IgM declines, but even the IgG titer drops to a low level within a month.

The primary response, however, leaves one with an immune memory of the antigen. During clonal selection, some members of the clone become **memory B cells** rather than plasma cells (see fig. 21.23). Memory B cells, found mainly in the germinal centers of the lymph nodes, mount a very quick **secondary,** or **anamnestic**[20] (an-am-NESS-tic), **response** if reexposed to the same antigen. Plasma cells form within hours, so the IgG titer rises sharply and peaks within a few days. The response is so rapid that the antigen has little chance to exert a noticeable effect on the body, and no illness results. A low level of IgM is also secreted and quickly declines, but IgG remains elevated for weeks to years, conferring lasting protection. Memory does not last as long in humoral immunity, however, as it does in cellular immunity.

Tables 21.5 and 21.6 summarize many of the cellular and chemical agents involved in humoral and cellular immunity. Table 21.7 summarizes much of what you have studied in the last two sections by comparing the features of humoral and cellular immunity. Remember that these two processes often occur simultaneously, and in conjunction with inflammation, as a three-pronged attack on the same pathogen.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

21. What is the difference between a B cell and a plasma cell?
22. Describe four ways in which an antibody reacts against an antigen.
23. Why does the secondary immune response prevent a pathogen from causing disease, while the primary immune response does not?

---

[20] *ana* = back + *mnes* = remember

Table 21.5 Cellular Agents of Immunity

Cell Types	Action
Macrophages	Phagocytize bacteria, viruses, and expended or damaged host cells; act as antigen-presenting cells (APCs), which display antigen fragments to helper T cells; secrete interleukin-1 (see table 21.6)
Lymphocytes	
Natural killer (NK) cells	Attack bacteria, transplanted cells, and host cells that have become malignant or infected with viruses; do not depend on specific immune recognition
Virgin lymphocyte pool	A reserve of immunocompetent lymphocytes which are capable of responding to an antigen but have not yet encountered one
B Cells	Develop in bone marrow; as APCs, internalize and process antigens and display epitopes on cell surface; give rise to plasma cells
Plasma cells	Develop from B cells that have been activated by helper T cells; synthesize and secrete antibodies
Memory B cells	Activated B cells that do not immediately differentiate into plasma cells; act as a pool of lymphocytes that can execute a quick secondary, humoral immune response upon reexposure to the same antigen that initially induced their formation
Cytotoxic T cells (Killer T, T_C, or CD8 cells)	Effector cells of cellular immunity; the only lymphocytes that directly attack other cells; bind to host cells displaying antigen epitopes on MHC-I proteins; produce perforin, lymphotoxin, interferon, tumor necrosis factor, and other interleukins; produce the lethal hit that destroys target cells
Helper T cells (T_H or CD4 cells)	Play a central regulatory role in nonspecific defense and humoral and cellular immunity; cannot recognize free antigens but recognize antigen fragments displayed by antigen-presenting cells with MHC-II proteins; secrete interleukins that activate B, T_C, and NK cells, neutrophils, and macrophages (see actions of lymphokines in table 21.6)
Suppressor T (T_S) cells (CD8 cells)	Release lymphokines that inhibit B cell and T cell activity; help "wind down" the immune response as pathogen is defeated
Memory T cells	Activated T lymphocytes that do not immediately differentiate into effector T cells; act as a pool of lymphocytes that can execute a quick T cell recall response upon reexposure to the same antigen that activated them initially
CD4 (T4) cells	T lymphocytes with CD4 surface glycoproteins; primarily helper T cells
CD8 (T8) cells	T lymphocytes with CD8 surface glycoproteins, including cytotoxic and suppressor T cells

Table 21.6 Chemical Agents of Immunity*

Substance	Source and Action
Pathogenic Agents	
Antigen (Ag)	Molecule capable of triggering an immune response; usually a protein, polysaccharide, or glycolipid
Hapten	Small molecule unable to trigger an immune response by itself but able to bind to host molecules and produce a complex that is antigenic
Protective Agents	
Antibody (Ab)	An immunoglobulin (γ globulin) produced by plasma cells in response to an antigen; interferes with antigen's effects by means of complement fixation, neutralization of toxins, agglutination, and precipitation
Complement	Plasma proteins that help to destroy pathogens when activated by antibodies
Interleukins	Hormonelike messengers produced by leukocytes and macrophages to stimulate other leukocytes
Monokines	Interleukins produced by macrophages
Lymphokines	Interleukins produced by lymphocytes
Helper factors	Lymphokines produced by T_H cells that stimulate B cells to differentiate into plasma cells and synthesize antibodies
Perforin	A protein produced by NK and T_C cells that binds to target cells, produces a hole, and causes cytolysis
Tumor necrosis factor (TNF)	A factor secreted by T_C cells that kills some cancer cells by unknown means; also stimulates fever, leukopoiesis, and eosinophil activity
Lymphotoxin	A factor secreted by T_C cells that destroys the DNA of target cells

*Some of these chemicals have additional roles in inflammation, as described in table 21.2.

Table 21.7 Some Comparisons Between Humoral and Cellular Immunity

	Cellular Immunity	Humoral Immunity
Pathogens	Transplanted tissues and organs, cancer cells, infected cells	Bacteria, toxins, mismatched RBCs, extracellular viruses
Effector cells	Cytotoxic T cells	Plasma cells (develop from B cells)
Other cells involved in attack	Helper T cells, suppressor T cells	Helper T cells
Antigen-presenting cells	B cells, macrophages, nearly all cells	B cells
MHC proteins	MHC-I and MHC-II	MHC-II only
Chemical agents of attack	Perforins, lymphokines, lymphotoxin, tumor necrosis factor	Antibodies, complement
Mechanisms of pathogen destruction	Cytolysis (lethal hit), DNA destruction, macrophage activation, inflammation	Neutralization, complement fixation, cytolysis, opsonization, agglutination, precipitation, inflammation
Memory	T cell recall response	Secondary (anamnestic) response

Immune System Disorders

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- distinguish between the four classes of allergy and give an example of each;
- explain the cause of anaphylaxis and distinguish local anaphylaxis from anaphylactic shock;
- state some reasons immune self-tolerance may fail, and give examples of the resulting diseases; and
- describe the pathology of immunodeficiency diseases, especially AIDS.

Because the immune system involves complex cellular interactions controlled by numerous chemical messengers, there are many points at which things can go wrong.

The immune response may be too vigorous, too weak, or misdirected against the wrong targets. A few disorders are summarized here to illustrate the consequences.

Hypersensitivity

Hypersensitivity is an excessive, harmful immune reaction to antigens that most people tolerate. It includes reactions to tissues transplanted from another person *(alloimmunity),* abnormal reactions to one's own tissues *(autoimmunity),* and **allergies,**[21] which are reactions to environmental antigens. Such antigens, called **allergens,** occur in mold, dust, pollen, vaccines, bee and wasp venoms, toxins from poison ivy and other plants, and foods such as nuts, milk, eggs, and shellfish. Drugs such as penicillin, tetracycline, and insulin are allergenic to some people.

One classification system recognizes four kinds of hypersensitivity, distinguished by the types of immune agents (antibodies or T cells) involved and their methods of attack on the antigen. In this system, type I is also characterized as *acute (immediate) hypersensitivity* because the response is very rapid, while types II and III are characterized as *subacute* because they exhibit a slower onset (1–3 hours after exposure) and last longer (10–15 hours). Type IV is a delayed cell-mediated response whereas the other three are quicker antibody-mediated responses.

- **Type I (acute) hypersensitivity** includes the most common allergies. It is an IgE-mediated reaction that begins within seconds of exposure and usually subsides within 30 minutes, although it can be severe and even fatal. Allergens bind to IgE on the membranes of basophils and mast cells and stimulate them to secrete histamine and other inflammatory and vasoactive chemicals. These chemicals trigger glandular secretion, vasodilation, increased capillary permeability, smooth muscle spasms, and other effects. The effects include local edema, mucus hypersecretion and congestion, watery eyes, a runny nose, hives (red itchy skin), and sometimes cramps, diarrhea, and vomiting. Examples include food allergies and **asthma,**[22] a local inflammatory reaction to inhaled allergens (see insight 21.2). **Anaphylaxis**[23] (AN-uh-fih-LAC-sis) is an immediate and severe type I reaction. Local anaphylaxis can be relieved with antihistamines.

  Anaphylactic shock is a severe, widespread acute hypersensitivity that occurs when an allergen such as bee venom or penicillin is introduced to the bloodstream of an allergic individual. It is characterized by bronchoconstriction, dyspnea (labored breathing), widespread vasodilation, circulatory shock, and sometimes sudden death. Antihistamines are inadequate to counter anaphylactic shock, but epinephrine relieves the symptoms by dilating the bronchioles, increasing cardiac output, and restoring blood pressure.
- **Type II (antibody-dependent cytotoxic) hypersensitivity** occurs when IgG or IgM attacks antigens bound to cell surfaces. The reaction leads to complement activation and either lysis or opsonization of the target cell. Macrophages phagocytize and destroy opsonized platelets, erythrocytes, or other cells. Examples of cell destruction by type II reactions are blood transfusion reactions, pemphigus vulgaris (p. 179), penicillin allergy, and some other drug reactions. In some other type II responses, an antibody binds to cell surface receptors and either interferes with their function (as in myasthenia gravis, p. 437) or overstimulates the cell (as in toxic goiter, p. 666).
- **Type III (immune complex) hypersensitivity** occurs when IgG or IgM forms antigen-antibody complexes that precipitate beneath the endothelium of the blood vessels or in other tissues. At the sites of deposition, these complexes activate complement and trigger intense inflammation, causing tissue destruction. Two examples of type III hypersensitivity are the autoimmune diseases acute glomerulonephritis (p. 907) and systemic lupus erythematosus, a widespread inflammation of the connective tissues (see table 21.8).
- **Type IV (delayed) hypersensitivity** is a cell-mediated reaction in which the signs appear about 12 to 72 hours after exposure. It begins when APCs in the lymph nodes display antigens to helper T cells, and these T cells secrete interferon and other lymphokines that activate cytotoxic T cells and macrophages. The result is a mixture of nonspecific and immune responses. Type IV reactions include allergies to haptens in cosmetics and poison ivy, graft rejection, the tuberculosis skin test, and the β cell destruction that causes insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus.

Insight 21.2 Clinical Application

Asthma

Asthma is the most common chronic illness of children, especially boys. It is the leading cause of school absenteeism and childhood hospitalization in the United States. About half of all cases develop before age 10 and only 15% after age 40. In the United States, it affects about 5% of adults and up to 10% of children, and takes about 5,000 lives per year. Moreover, asthma is on the rise; there are about twice as many cases and deaths now as there were 20 years ago.

In *allergic (extrinsic) asthma,* the most common form, the respiratory crisis is triggered by allergies in pollen, mold, animal dander, food, dust mites, or cockroaches. The allergens stimulate plasma cells to

Chapter 21

---

[21] *allo* = altered + *erg* = action, reaction

[22] *asthma* = panting

[23] *ana* = against + *phylax* = protection

secrete IgE, which binds to mast cells of the respiratory mucosa. Reexposure to the allergen causes the mast cells to release a complex mixture of histamine, interleukins, and several other inflammatory chemicals, which trigger intense airway inflammation. *Nonallergic (intrinsic) asthma* is not caused by allergens but can be triggered by infections, drugs, air pollutants, cold dry air, exercise, or emotions. This form is more common in adults over age 35 than in children. The effects, however, are much the same.

Within minutes, the bronchioles constrict spasmodically *(bronchospasm),* and a person exhibits severe coughing, wheezing, and sometimes fatal suffocation. A second respiratory crisis often occurs 6 to 8 hours later. Interleukins attract eosinophils to the bronchial tissue, where they secrete proteins that paralyze the respiratory cilia, severely damage the epithelium, and lead to scarring and extensive long-term damage to the lungs. The bronchioles also become edematous and plugged with thick, sticky mucus. People who die of asthmatic suffocation typically show airways so plugged with gelatinous mucus that they could not exhale. The lungs remain hyperinflated even at autopsy.

Asthma is treated with epinephrine and other β-adrenergic stimulants used to dilate the airway and restore breathing, and inhaled corticosteroids or nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs to minimize airway inflammation and long-term damage. The treatment regimen can be very complicated, often requiring more than eight different medications daily, and compliance is therefore difficult for children and patients with low income or educational attainment.

Asthma runs in families and seems to result from a combination of hereditary factors and environmental irritants. In the United States, asthma is most common, paradoxically, in two groups: (1) inner-city children who are exposed to crowding, poor sanitation and ventilation, and who do not go outside very much or get enough exercise; and (2) children from extremely clean homes, perhaps because they have had too little opportunity to develop normal immunities. Asthma is also more common in countries where vaccines and antibiotics are widely used. It is less common in developing countries and in farm children of the United States.

Autoimmune Diseases

Autoimmune diseases are failures of self-tolerance—the immune system fails to distinguish self-antigens from foreign antigens and produces **autoantibodies** that attack the body's own tissues. There are at least three reasons why self-tolerance may fail:

1. **Cross-reactivity.** Some antibodies against foreign antigens react to similar self-antigens. In rheumatic fever, for example, a streptococcus infection stimulates production of antibodies that react not only against the bacteria but also against antigens of the heart tissue. It often results in scarring and stenosis (narrowing) of the mitral and aortic valves.
2. **Abnormal exposure of self-antigens to the blood.** Some of our native antigens are normally not exposed to the blood. For example, a blood-testis barrier (BTB) normally isolates sperm cells from the blood. Breakdown of the BTB can cause sterility when sperm first form in adolescence and activate the production of autoantibodies.
3. **Change in the structure of self-antigens.** Viruses and drugs may change the structure of self-antigens and cause the immune system to perceive them as foreign. One theory of the cause of type I diabetes mellitus is that a viral infection alters the antigens of β cells of the pancreatic islets, which leads to an autoimmune attack on the β cells.

Immunodeficiency Diseases

In the foregoing diseases, the immune system reacts too vigorously or directs its attack against the wrong targets. In immunodeficiency diseases, by contrast, the immune system fails to respond vigorously enough.

Severe Combined Immunodeficiency Disease (SCID)

Severe combined immunodeficiency disease is a group of disorders caused by recessive alleles that result in a scarcity or absence of both T and B cells. Children with SCID are highly vulnerable to opportunistic infections and must live in protective enclosures. Perhaps the most publicized case was David, who spent his life in sterile plastic chambers (fig. 21.28), finally succumbing at age 12 to cancer triggered by a viral infection. Children with SCID are sometimes helped by transplants of bone marrow or fetal thymus, but in some cases the transplanted cells fail to survive and multiply, or transplanted T cells attack the patient's tissues (the *graft-versus-host response*). David contracted a fatal virus from his sister through a bone marrow transplant.

Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome (AIDS)

Acquired immunodeficiency diseases are nonhereditary diseases contracted after birth. The best-known example is **acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS),** a group of conditions that involve a severely depressed immune response resulting from infection with the **human immunodeficiency virus (HIV).**

The structure of HIV is shown in figure 21.29*a.* Its inner core consists of a protein *capsid* enclosing two molecules of RNA, two molecules of an enzyme called *reverse transcriptase,* and a few other enzyme molecules. The capsid is enclosed in another layer of viral protein, the *matrix.* External to this is a *viral envelope* composed of phospholipids and glycoproteins derived from the host cell. Like other viruses, HIV can only be replicated by a living host cell. It invades helper T (CD4) cells, dendritic cells, and macrophages. HIV adheres to a target cell by means of one of its envelope glycoproteins and "tricks" the target cell into internalizing it by receptor-mediated endocytosis. Within the host cell, reverse transcriptase uses the viral RNA as a template to synthesize DNA—the opposite of the usual process of genetic transcription. Viruses that carry

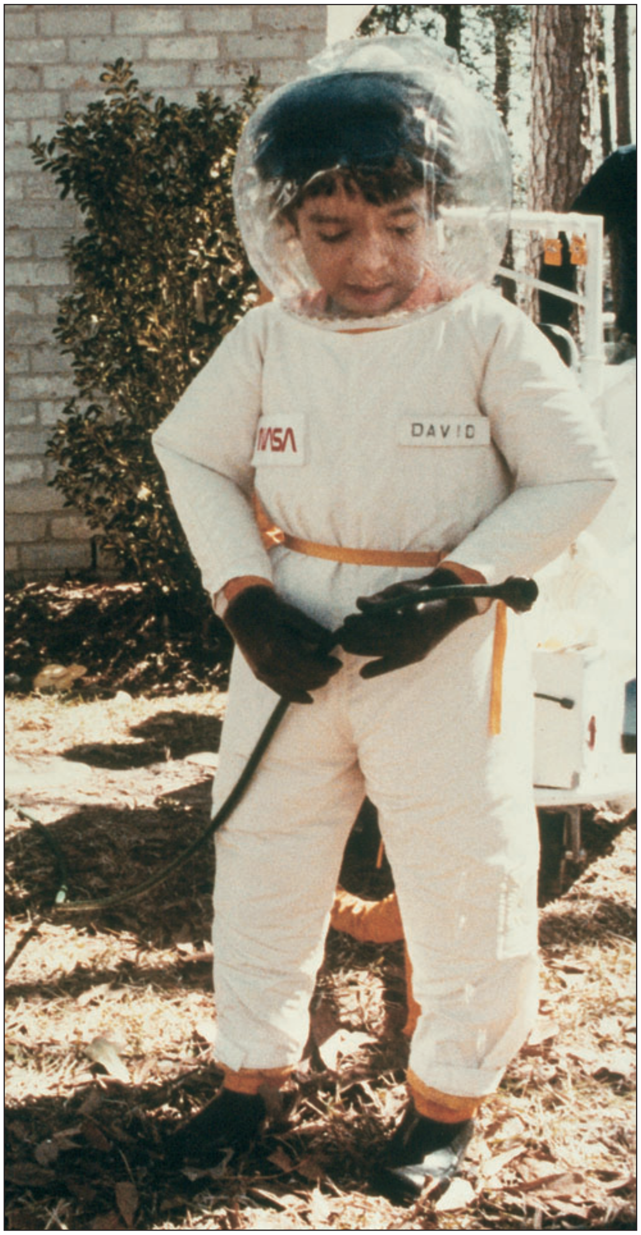


Figure 21.28 **Severe Combined Immunodeficiency Disease.** David Vetter lived with SCID from 1971 to 1984. At the age of six, he received a portable sterile enclosure designed by NASA that allowed him to leave the hospital for the first time.

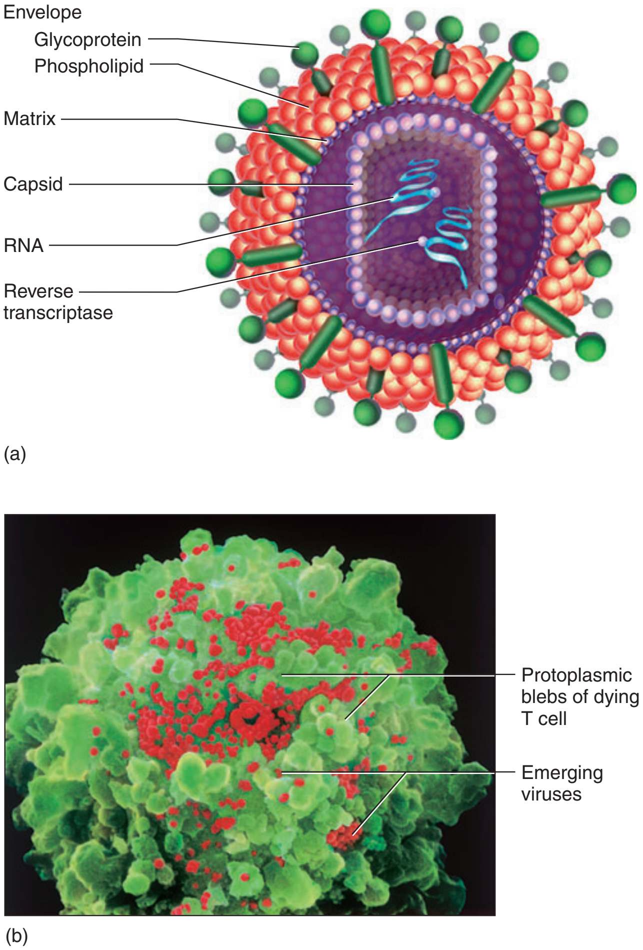


Figure 21.29 **The Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV).** (*a*) Structure of the virus. (*b*) Viruses emerging from a dying helper T cell. Each virus can now invade a new helper T cell and produce a similar number of descendents.

Which of the molecules in figure *a* is the target of the drug azidothymidine (AZT)? Why does AZT inhibit the spread of HIV?

out this RNA→DNA reverse transcription are called *retroviruses.*[24] The new DNA is inserted into the host cell's DNA, where it may lie dormant for months to years. When activated, however, it induces the host cell to produce new viral RNA, capsid proteins, and matrix proteins. As the new viruses emerge from the host cell (fig. 21.29*b*), they are coated with bits of the cell's plasma membrane, forming the new viral envelope. The new viruses then adhere to more host cells and repeat the process.

By destroying T_H cells, HIV strikes at a central coordinating agent of nonspecific defense, humoral immunity, and cellular immunity (see fig. 21.21). The incubation period—from the time of infection to the time of the first symptoms—can range from a few months to 12 years. Flu-like episodes of chills and fever occur as HIV attacks T_H cells. At first, antibodies against HIV are produced and the T_H count returns nearly to normal. As the virus destroys more and more cells, however, the signs and symptoms become more pronounced: night sweats, fatigue, headache, extreme weight loss, and lymphadenitis.

---

[24] *retr* = an acronym from *re*verse *tr*anscription

Normally, the T_H count is 600 to 1,200 cells/μL of blood, but a criterion of AIDS is a T_H count less than 200 cells/μL. With such severe depletion of T_H cells, a person succumbs to opportunistic infections with *Toxoplasma* (a protozoan previously known mainly for causing birth defects), *Pneumocystis* (a group of respiratory fungi), herpes simplex virus, cytomegalovirus (which can cause blindness), or tuberculosis bacteria. White patches may appear in the mouth, caused by *Candida* (thrush) or Epstein-Barr[25] virus (leukoplakia). A form of cancer called Kaposi[26] sarcoma, common in AIDS patients, originates in the endothelial cells of the blood vessels and causes bruiselike purple lesions visible in the skin (fig. 21.30).

Patients with full-blown AIDS show no response to standard skin tests for delayed hypersensitivity. Slurred speech, loss of motor and cognitive functions, and dementia may occur as HIV invades the brain by way of infected macrophages and induces them to release toxins that destroy neurons and astrocytes. Death from cancer or infection is inevitable, usually within a few months but sometimes as long as 8 years after diagnosis. Some people, however, have been diagnosed as HIV-positive and yet have survived for 10 years or longer without developing AIDS.

HIV is transmitted through blood, semen, vaginal secretions, and breast milk. It can be transmitted from mother to fetus through the placenta or from mother to infant during childbirth or nursing. HIV occurs in saliva and tears, but is not believed to be transmitted by those fluids. The most common means of transmission are sexual intercourse (vaginal, anal, or oral), contaminated blood products, and drug injections with contaminated needles. Worldwide, about 75% of HIV infections are acquired through heterosexual, predominantly vaginal intercourse. In the United States, most cases occur in men who have sex with other men, but adolescents are the fastest rising group of AIDS patients because of the increasing exchange of unprotected sexual intercourse for drugs. The sharing of needles for drug use remains the chief means of transmission in urban ghettos. Many hemophiliacs became infected with HIV through blood transfusions before preventive measures were implemented in 1984, but all donated blood is now tested for HIV and the risk of infection is less than 1%. HIV cannot be contracted by donating blood, but irrational fear has resulted in an alarming drop in blood donors.

AIDS is not known to be transmitted through casual contact—for example, to family members, friends, coworkers, classmates, or medical personnel in charge of AIDS patients. It is not transmitted by kissing. Despite some speculation and fear, it has not been found to be transmitted by mosquitoes or other blood-sucking arthropods.

HIV survives poorly outside the human body. It is destroyed by laundering, dishwashing, exposure to heat (50°C [135°F] for at least 10 minutes), chlorination of swimming pools and hot tubs, and disinfectants such as bleach, Lysol, hydrogen peroxide, rubbing alcohol, and germicidal skin cleansers (Betadine and Hibiclens, for example). A properly used, undamaged latex condom is an effective barrier to HIV, especially if augmented with the spermicide nonoxynol-9. Animal membrane condoms are not effective at blocking HIV transmission because the viruses are smaller than the gaps in the membrane.

The AIDS epidemic has triggered an effort of unprecedented intensity to find a vaccine or cure. The strategies against HIV include efforts to prevent its binding to the CD4 proteins of T_H cells, disrupting the action of reverse transcriptase, or inhibiting the assembly of new viruses or their release from host cells. HIV is a difficult pathogen to attack. Since it "hides" within host cells, it usually escapes recognition by the immune system. In the brain, it is protected by the blood-brain barrier.

About 1% of HIV's genes mutate every year. This rapid rate of mutation is a barrier to both natural immunity and development of a vaccine. Even when immune cells do become sensitized to HIV, the virus soon mutates and produces new surface antigens that escape recognition. The high mutation rate also would quickly make today's vaccine ineffective against tomorrow's strain of the virus. Another obstacle to treatment and prevention is the lack of animal models for vaccine and drug research and development. Most animals are not susceptible to HIV. The chimpanzee is an exception, but chimpanzees are difficult to maintain, and there are economic barriers and ethical controversies surrounding their use.

Until recently, the only anti-HIV drug approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) was azi-

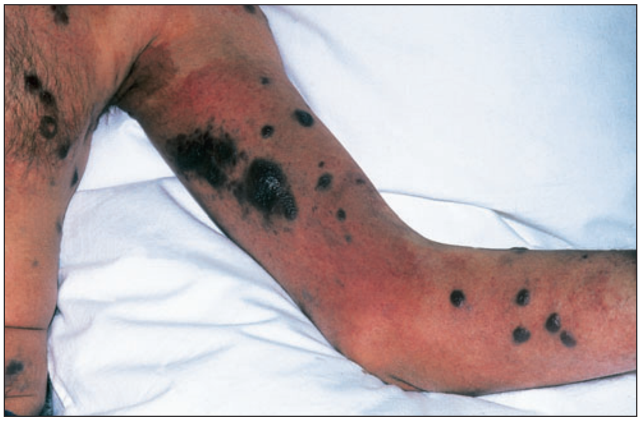


Figure 21.30 **Kaposi Sarcoma.** Typical lesions on the arm and chest of a patient with AIDS.

---

[25] M. A. Epstein (1921–), British physician; Y. M. Barr (1932–), British virologist

[26] Moritz Kaposi (1837–1902), Austrian physician

dothymidine (AZT, or Retrovir), which inhibits reverse transcriptase and prolongs the lives of some HIV-positive individuals. AZT is now recommended for any patient with a CD4 count below 500 cells/μL, but it has undesirable side effects including bone marrow toxicity and anemia. The FDA has approved other drugs, including dideoxyinosine (ddI) and dideoxycytidine (ddC) for patients who do not respond to AZT, but these drugs can also have severe side effects.

Another class of drugs—protease inhibitors—inhibit enzymes (proteases) that HIV needs in order to replicate. In 1995, a "triple cocktail" of two reverse transcriptase inhibitors and a protease inhibitor was proving to be highly effective at inhibiting viral replication, but by 1997, HIV had evolved a resistance to these drugs and this treatment was failing in more than half of all patients. Alpha interferon has shown some success in inhibiting HIV replication and slowing the progress of Kaposi sarcoma.

There remain not only these vexing clinical problems but also a number of unanswered questions about the basic biology of HIV. It remains unknown, for example, why there are such strikingly different patterns of heterosexual versus homosexual transmission in different countries and why some people succumb so rapidly to infection, while others can be HIV-positive for years without developing AIDS. AIDS remains a stubborn problem sure to challenge virologists and epidemiologists for many years to come.

We have surveyed the major classes of immune system disorders and a few particularly notorious immune diseases. A few additional lymphatic and immune system disorders are described in table 21.8. The effects of aging on the lymphatic and immune systems are described on page 1111.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

24. How does subacute hypersensitivity differ from acute hypersensitivity? Give an example of each.
25. Aside from the time required for a reaction to appear, how does delayed hypersensitivity differ from the acute and subacute types?
26. State some reasons why antibodies may begin attacking self-antigens that they did not previously respond to. What are these self-reactive antibodies called?
27. What is the distinction between a person who has an HIV infection and a person who has AIDS?
28. How does a reverse transcriptase inhibitor such as AZT slow the progress of AIDS?

Table 21.8 Some Disorders of the Lymphatic and Immune Systems

Contact dermatitis	A form of delayed hypersensitivity that produces skin lesions limited to the site of contact with an allergen or hapten; includes responses to poison ivy, cosmetics, latex, detergents, industrial chemicals, and some topical medicines.
Hives (urticaria[27])	An allergic skin reaction characterized by a "wheal and flare" reaction: white blisters (wheals) surrounded by reddened areas (flares), usually with itching. Caused by local histamine release in response to allergens. Can be triggered by food or drugs, but sometimes by nonimmunological factors such as cold, friction, or emotional stress.
Hodgkin[28] disease	A lymph node malignancy, with early symptoms including enlarged painful lymph nodes, especially in the neck, and fever of unknown origin; often progresses to neighboring lymph nodes. Radiation and chemotherapy cure about three out of four patients.
Splenomegaly[29]	Enlargement of the spleen, sometimes without underlying disease but often indicating infections, autoimmune diseases, heart failure, cirrhosis, Hodgkin disease, and other cancers. The enlarged spleen may "hoard" erythrocytes, causing anemia, and may become fragile and subject to rupture.
Systemic lupus erythematosus	Formation of autoantibodies against DNA and other nuclear antigens, resulting in accumulation of antigen-antibody complexes in blood vessels and other organs, where they trigger widespread connective tissue inflammation. Named for skin lesions once likened to a wolf bite.[30] Causes fever, fatigue, joint pain, weight loss, intolerance of bright light, and a "butterfly rash" across the nose and cheeks. Death may result from renal failure.

Disorders described elsewhere

Acute glomerulonephritis	907
AIDS	829
Allergy	828
Anaphylaxis	828
Asthma	828
Diabetes mellitus	668
Elephantiasis	801
Lymphadenitis	806
Myasthenia gravis	437
Pemphigus vulgaris	179
Rheumatic fever	723
Rheumatoid arthritis	320
SCID	829
Toxic goiter	666

---

[27] *urtica* = nettle

[28] Thomas Hodgkin (1798–1866), British physician

[29] *megaly* = enlargement

[30] *lupus* = wolf + *erythema* = redness

Insight 21.3 Clinical Application

Neuroimmunology—The Mind-Body Connection

Neuroimmunology is a relatively new branch of medicine concerned with the relationship between mind and body in health and disease. It is attempting especially to understand how a person's state of mind influences health and illness through a three-way communication between the nervous, endocrine, and immune systems.

The sympathetic nervous system issues nerve fibers to the spleen, thymus, lymph nodes, and Peyer patches, where nerve fibers contact thymocytes, B cells, and macrophages. These immune cells have adrenergic receptors for norepinephrine and many other neurotransmitters such as neuropeptide Y, substance P, and vasoactive intestinal peptide (VIP). These neurotransmitters have been shown to influence immune cell activity in various ways. Epinephrine, for example, reduces the lymphocyte count and inhibits NK cell activity, thus suppressing immunity. Cortisol, another stress hormone, inhibits T cell and macrophage activity, antibody production, and the secretion of inflammatory chemicals. It also promotes atrophy of the thymus, spleen, and lymph nodes and reduces the number of circulating lymphocytes, macrophages, and eosinophils. Thus, it is not surprising that prolonged stress increases susceptibility to illnesses such as infections and cancer.

The immune system also sends messages to the nervous and endocrine systems. Immune cells synthesize numerous hormones and neurotransmitters that we normally associate with endocrine and nerve cells. B lymphocytes produce adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) and enkephalins; T lymphocytes produce growth hormone, thyroid-stimulating hormone, luteinizing hormone, and follicle-stimulating hormone. Monocytes secrete prolactin, VIP, and somatostatin. The interleukins and tumor-necrosis factor (TNF) produced by immune cells produce feelings of fatigue and lethargy when we are sick, and stimulate the hypothalamus to secrete corticotropin-releasing hormone, thus leading to ACTH and cortisol secretion. It remains uncertain and controversial whether the quantities of some of these substances produced by immune cells are enough to have far-reaching effects on the body, but it seems increasingly possible that immune cells may have wide-ranging effects on nervous and endocrine functions that affect recovery from illness.

Although neuroimmunology has met with some skepticism among physicians, there is less and less room for doubt about the importance of a person's state of mind to immune function. People under stress, such as medical students during examination periods and people caring for relatives with Alzheimer disease, show more respiratory infections than other people and respond less effectively to hepatitis and flu vaccines. The attitudes, coping abilities, and social support systems of patients significantly influence survival time even in such serious diseases as AIDS and breast cancer. Women with breast cancer die at markedly higher rates if their husbands cope poorly with stress. Attitudes such as optimism, cheer, depression, resignation, or despair in the face of disease significantly affect immune function. Religious beliefs can also influence the prospect of recovery. Indeed, ardent believers in voodoo sometimes die just from the belief that someone has cast a spell on them. The stress of hospitalization can counteract the treatment one gives to a patient, and neuroimmunology has obvious implications for treating patients in ways that minimize their stress and thereby promote recovery.

Connective Issues

Interactions Between the LYMPHATIC and IMMUNE SYSTEMS and Other Organ Systems

← indicates ways in which these systems affect other organ systems
→ indicates ways in which other organ systems affect these systems

Nearly All Systems

Lymphatic system drains excess tissue fluid and removes cellular debris and pathogens. Immune system provides defense against pathogens and immune surveillance against cancer.

Integumentary System

→ Skin provides mechanical and chemical barriers to pathogens; has antigen-presenting cells in epidermis and dermis; and is a common site of inflammation

Skeletal System

→ Lymphocytes and macrophages arise from bone marrow cells; skeleton protects thymus and spleen

Muscular System

→ Skeletal muscle pump moves lymph through lymphatic vessels

Nervous System

→ Neuropeptides and emotional states affect immune function; blood-brain barrier prevents antibodies and immune cells from entering brain tissue

Endocrine System

← Lymph transports some hormones

→ Hormones from thymus stimulate development of lymphatic organs and T cells; stress hormones depress immunity and increase susceptibility to infection and cancer

Circulatory System

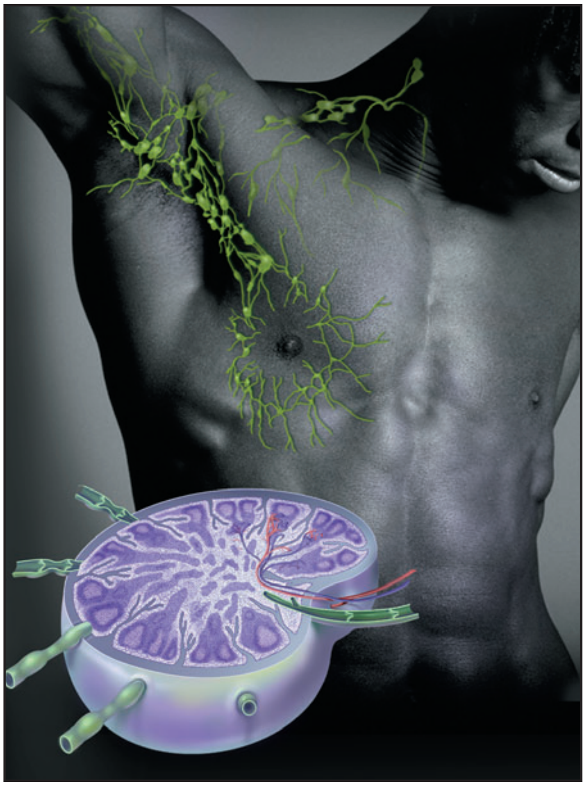
← Cardiovascular system would soon fail without return of fluid and protein by lymphatic system; spleen disposes of expired erythrocytes and recycles iron; lymphatic organs prevent accumulation of debris and pathogens in blood

→ Lymphatic vessels develop from embryonic veins; arterial pulsation aids flow of lymph in neighboring lymphatic vessels; leukocytes serve in nonspecific and specific defense; blood transports immune cells, antibodies, complement, interferon, and other immune chemicals; capillary endothelial cells signal areas of tissue injury and stimulate margination and diapedesis of leukocytes; blood clotting restricts spread of pathogens

Respiratory System

← Alveolar macrophages remove debris from lungs

→ Provides immune system with O_2; disposes of CO_2; thoracic pump aids lymph flow; pharynx houses tonsils



Urinary System

← Absorbs fluid and proteins in kidneys, which is essential to enabling kidneys to concentrate the urine and conserve water

→ Eliminates waste and maintains fluid and electrolyte balance important to lymphatic and immune function; urine flushes some pathogens from body; acidic pH of urine protects against urinary tract infection

Digestive System

← Lymph absorbs and transports digested lipids

→ Nourishes lymphatic system and affects lymph composition; stomach acid destroys ingested pathogens

Reproductive System

← Immune system requires that the testes have a blood-testis barrier to prevent autoimmune destruction of sperm

→ Vaginal acidity inhibits growth of pathogens

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

The Lymphatic System (p. 800)

1. The lymphatic system consists of the lymph nodes, spleen, thymus, and tonsils; lymphatic tissue in other organs; a system of *lymphatic vessels;* and the *lymph* transported in these vessels. It serves for fluid recovery, immunity, and dietary lipid absorption.
2. Lymph is usually a colorless liquid similar to blood plasma, but is milky when absorbing digested lipids.
3. Lymph originates in blind *lymphatic capillaries* that pick up tissue fluid throughout the body.
4. Lymphatic capillaries converge to form larger lymphatic vessels with a histology similar to blood vessels. The largest vessels—the right lymphatic duct and thoracic duct—empty lymph into the subclavian veins.
5. There is no heartlike pump to move the lymph; lymph flows under forces similar to those that drive venous return, and like some veins, lymphatic vessels have valves to ensure a one-way flow.
6. The cells of lymphatic tissue are T lymphocytes, B lymphocytes, macrophages, dendritic cells, and reticular cells.
7. *Diffuse lymphatic tissue* is an aggregation of these cells in the walls of other organs, especially in the respiratory, digestive, urinary, and reproductive tracts. In some places, these cells become especially densely aggregated into *lymphatic nodules,* such as the *Peyer patches* of the ileum.
8. Lymphatic organs have well defined anatomical locations and have a fibrous capsule that at least partially separates them from adjacent organs and tissues. They are the lymph nodes, tonsils, thymus, and spleen.
9. Lymph nodes number in the hundreds and are small, encapsulated, elongated or bean-shaped organs found along the course of the lymphatic vessels. They receive afferent lymphatic vessels and give rise to efferent ones.
10. The parenchyma of a lymph node exhibits an outer *cortex* composed mainly of lymphatic follicles, and a deeper *medulla* with a network of *medullary cords.*
11. Lymph nodes filter the lymph, remove impurities before it returns to the bloodstream, contribute lymphocytes to the lymph and blood, and initiate immune responses to foreign antigens in the body fluids.
12. The *tonsils* encircle the pharynx and include a medial *pharyngeal tonsil* in the nasopharynx, a pair of *palatine tonsils* at the rear of the oral cavity, and numerous *lingual tonsils* clustered in the root of the tongue. Their superficial surface is covered with epithelium and their deep surface with a fibrous partial capsule. The lymphatic follicles are aligned along pits called *tonsillar crypts.*
13. The *thymus* is located in the mediastinum above the heart. It is a site of T lymphocyte development and a source of hormones that regulate lymphocyte activity.
14. The *spleen* lies in the left hypochondriac region between the diaphragm and kidney. Its parenchyma is composed of *red pulp* containing concentrated RBCs and *white pulp* composed of lymphocytes and macrophages.
15. The spleen monitors the blood for foreign antigens, activates immune responses to them, disposes of old RBCs, and helps to regulate blood volume.

Nonspecific Resistance (p. 808)

1. Our defenses against pathogens include external barriers to infection; attacks on pathogens by antimicrobial proteins, inflammation, fever, and other means; and the immune system.
2. The first two mechanisms are called *nonspecific resistance* because they guard equally against a broad range of pathogens and do not require prior exposure to them. Immunity is a *specific defense* limited to one pathogen or a few closely related ones.
3. The skin acts as a barrier to pathogens because of its tough keratinized surface, its relative dryness, and antimicrobial chemicals such as lactic acid and *defensins.*
4. Mucous membranes prevent most pathogens from entering the body because of the stickiness of the mucus, the antimicrobial action of *lysozyme,* and the viscosity of *hyaluronic acid.*
5. *Neutrophils,* the most abundant leukocytes, destroy bacteria by phagocytizing and digesting them and by a *respiratory burst* that produces a chemical *killing zone* of oxidizing agents.
6. *Eosinophils* phagocytize antigen-antibody complexes, allergens, and inflammatory chemicals, and produce antiparasitic enzymes.
7. *Basophils* aid in defense by secreting *histamine* and *heparin.*
8. *Lymphocytes* are of several kinds. Only one type, the natural killer (NK) cells, are involved in nonspecific defense. NK cells secrete *perforins* that destroy bacteria, transplanted cells, and host cells that are virus-infected or cancerous.
9. *Monocytes* develop into macrophages, which have voracious phagocytic activity and act as antigen-presenting cells. Macrophages include *histiocytes, dendritic cells, microglia,* and *alveolar* and *hepatic macrophages.*
10. *Interferons* are polypeptides secreted by cells in response to viral infection. They alert neighboring cells to synthesize antiviral proteins before they become infected, and they activate NK cells and macrophages.
11. The *complement system* is a group of 20 or more β globulins that are activated by pathogens and combat them by enhancing inflammation, *opsonizing* bacteria, and causing *cytolysis* of foreign cells.

12. *Inflammation* is a defensive response to infection and trauma, characterized by redness, swelling, heat, and pain (the four *cardinal signs*).
13. Inflammation begins with a mobilization of defenses by vasoactive inflammatory chemicals such as histamine, bradykinin, and leukotrienes. These chemicals dilate blood vessels, increase blood flow, and make capillary walls more permeable, thus hastening the delivery of defensive cells and chemicals to the site of injury.
14. Leukocytes adhere to the vessel wall *(margination),* crawl between the endothelial cells into the connective tissues *(diapedesis),* and migrate toward sources of inflammatory chemicals *(chemotaxis).*
15. Inflammation continues with containment and destruction of the pathogens. This is achieved by clotting of the tissue fluid and attack by macrophages, leukocytes, and antibodies.
16. Inflammation concludes with tissue cleanup and repair, including phagocytosis of tissue debris and pathogens by macrophages, edema and lymphatic drainage of the inflamed tissue, and tissue repair stimulated by platelet-derived growth factor.
17. *Fever (pyrexia)* is induced by chemical *pyrogens* secreted by neutrophils and macrophages. The elevated body temperature inhibits the reproduction of pathogens and the spread of infection.

General Aspects of Specific Immunity (p. 815)

1. The *immune system* is a group of widely distributed cells that populate most body tissues and help to destroy pathogens.
2. Immunity is characterized by its *specificity* and *memory.*
3. The two basic forms of immunity are *cellular* (cell-mediated) and *humoral* (antibody-mediated).
4. Immunity can also be characterized as *active* (production of the body's own antibodies or immune cells) or *passive* (conferred by antibodies or lymphocytes donated by another individual), and as *natural* (caused by natural exposure to a pathogen) or *artificial* (induced by vaccination or injection of immune serum). Only active immunity results in immune memory and lasting protection.
5. *Antigens* are any molecules that induce immune responses. They are relatively large, complex, genetically unique molecules (proteins, polysaccharides, glycoproteins, and glycolipids).
6. The antigenicity of a molecule is due to a specific region of it called the *epitope.*
7. *Haptens* are small molecules that become antigenic by binding to larger host molecules.
8. *T cells* are lymphocytes that mature in the thymus, survive the process of *negative selection,* and go on to populate other lymphatic tissues and organs.
9. *B cells* are lymphocytes that mature in the bone marrow, survive negative selection, and then populate the same organs as T cells.
10. *Antigen-presenting cells (APCs)* are B cells, macrophages, reticular cells, and dendritic cells that process antigens, display the epitopes on their surface MHC proteins, and alert the immune system to the presence of a pathogen.
11. *Interleukins* are chemical signals by which immune cells communicate with each other.

Cellular Immunity (p. 818)

1. Cellular immunity employs four classes of T lymphocytes: *cytotoxic (T_C), helper (T_H), suppressor (T_S),* and *memory T cells.*
2. Cellular immunity takes place in three stages: recognition, attack, and memory.
3. *Recognition:* APCs that detect foreign antigens typically migrate to the lymph nodes and display the epitopes there. T_H and T_C cells respond only to epitopes attached to MHC proteins (MHCPs).
4. MHC-I proteins occur on every nucleated cell of the body and display viral and cancer-related proteins from the host cell. T_C cells respond only to antigens bound to MHC-I proteins.
5. MHC-II proteins occur only on APCs and display only foreign antigens. T_H cells respond only to antigens bound to MHC-II proteins.
6. When a T_C or T_H cell recognizes an antigen-MHCP complex, it binds to a second site on the target cell. *Costimulation* by this site triggers *clonal selection,* multiplication of the T cell. Some daughter T cells carry out the attack on the invader and some become memory T cells.
7. *Attack:* Activated T_H cells secrete interleukins that attract neutrophils, NK cells, and macrophages and stimulate T and B cell mitosis and maturation. Activated T_C cells directly attack and destroy target cells, especially infected host cells, transplanted cells, and cancer cells. They employ a "lethal hit" of cytotoxic chemicals including *perforin, lymphotoxins,* and *tumor necrosis factor.* They also secrete interferons and interleukins. T_S cells suppress T and B cell activity as the pathogen is defeated and removed from the tissues.
8. *Memory:* The primary response to first exposure to a pathogen is followed by immune memory. Upon later reexposure, memory T cells respond so quickly (the *T cell recall response*) that no noticeable illness occurs.

Humoral Immunity (p. 822)

1. Humoral immunity is based on the production of antibodies rather than on lymphocytes directly contacting and attacking enemy cells. It also occurs in recognition, attack, and memory stages.
2. *Recognition:* An immunocompetent B cell binds and internalizes an antigen, processes it, and displays its epitopes on its surface MHC-II proteins. A T_H cell binds to the antigen–MHCP complex and secretes *helper factors* that activate the B cell.
3. The B cell divides repeatedly. Some daughter cells become memory B cells while others become antibody-synthesizing *plasma cells.*
4. *Attack:* Attack is carried out by antibodies (immunoglobulins). The basic *antibody monomer* is a T- or Y-shaped complex of four polypeptide chains (two heavy and two light chains). Each has a *constant (C) region* that is identical in all antibodies of a given class, and a *variable (V) region* that gives each antibody its uniqueness. Each has an *antigen-binding site* at the tip of each V region and can therefore bind two antigen molecules.

5. There are five classes of antibodies—IgA, IgD, IgE, IgG, and IgM—that differ in the number of antibody monomers (from one to five), structure of the C region, and immune function (table 21.4).
6. Antibodies inactivate antigens by *neutralization, complement fixation, agglutination,* and *precipitation.*
7. *Memory:* Upon reexposure to the same antigen, memory B cells mount a *secondary (anamnestic) response* so quickly that no illness results.

Immune System Disorders (p. 827)

1. There are three principal dysfunctions of the immune system: too vigorous or too weak a response, or a response that is misdirected against the wrong target.
2. *Hypersensitivity* is an excessive reaction against antigens that most people tolerate. *Allergy* is the most common form of hypersensitivity.
3. *Type I (acute) hypersensitivity* is an IgE-mediated response that begins within seconds of exposure and subsides within about 30 minutes. Examples include asthma, anaphylaxis, and anaphylactic shock.
4. *Type II (antibody-dependent cytotoxic) hypersensitivity* occurs when IgG or IgM attacks antigens bound to a target cell membrane, as in a transfusion reaction.
5. *Type III (immune complex) hypersensitivity* results from widespread deposition of antigen-antibody complexes in various tissues, triggering intense inflammation, as in acute glomerulonephritis and systemic lupus erythematosus.
6. *Type IV (delayed) hypersensitivity* is a cell-mediated reaction (types I–III are antibody-mediated) that appears 12–72 hours after exposure, as in the reaction to poison ivy and the TB skin test.
7. *Autoimmune diseases* are disorders in which the immune system fails to distinguish self-antigens from foreign antigens and attacks the body's own tissues. They can occur because of cross-reactivity of antibodies, as in rheumatic fever; abnormal exposure of some self-antigens to the blood, as in one form of sterility resulting from sperm destruction; or changes in self-antigen structure, as in type I diabetes mellitus.
8. *Immunodeficiency diseases* are failures of the immune system to respond strongly enough to defend the body from pathogens. These include *severe combined immunodeficiency disease (SCID),* present at birth, and *acquired immunodeficiency disease (AIDS),* resulting from HIV infection.
9. HIV is a retrovirus that destroys T_H cells. Since T_H cells play a central coordinating role in cellular and humoral immunity and nonspecific defense, HIV knocks out the central control over multiple forms of defense and leaves a person vulnerable to *opportunistic infections* and certain forms of cancer.

Selected Vocabulary

lymphatic system	800
lymph	800
T lymphocyte	804
B lymphocyte	804
antibody	804
macrophage	804
antigen	804
antigen-presenting cell	804
lymph node	804
tonsil	806
thymus	806
spleen	806
pathogen	808
interferon	810
complement system	810
inflammation	810
cellular immunity	816
humoral immunity	816
vaccination	816
MHC protein	817
interleukin	817
hypersensitivity	828
anaphylaxis	828
autoimmune disease	829
acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)	830
human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)	830

Testing Your Recall

1. The only lymphatic organ with both afferent and efferent lymphatic vessels is
   a. the spleen.
   b. a lymph node.
   c. a tonsil.
   d. a Peyer patch.
   e. the thymus.
2. Which of the following cells are involved in nonspecific resistance but not in specific defense?
   a. helper T cells
   b. cytotoxic T cells
   c. natural killer cells
   d. B cells
   e. plasma cells
3. The respiratory burst is used by _______ to kill bacteria.
   a. neutrophils
   b. basophils
   c. mast cells
   d. NK cells
   e. cytotoxic T cells
4. Which of these is a macrophage?
   a. microglia
   b. a plasma cell
   c. a reticular cell
   d. a helper T cell
   e. a mast cell
5. The cytolytic action of the complement system is most similar to the action of
   a. interleukin-1.
   b. platelet-derived growth factor.
   c. lymphotoxin.
   d. perforin.
   e. IgE.
6. _______ become antigenic by binding to larger host molecules.
   a. Epitopes
   b. Haptens
   c. Lymphokines
   d. Pyrogens
   e. Cell-adhesion molecules

7. Which of the following correctly states the order of events in humoral immunity? Let *1* = antigen display, *2* = antibody secretion, *3* = secretion of helper factor, *4* = clonal selection, and *5* = endocytosis of an antigen.
   a. 3–4–1–5–2
   b. 5–3–1–2–4
   c. 3–5–1–4–2
   d. 5–3–1–4–2
   e. 5–1–3–4–2
8. The cardinal signs of inflammation include all of the following *except*
   a. redness.
   b. swelling.
   c. heat.
   d. fever.
   e. pain.
9. A helper T cell can bind only to another cell that has
   a. MHC-II proteins.
   b. an epitope.
   c. an antigen-binding site.
   d. a complement-binding site.
   e. a CD4 protein.
10. Which of the following results from a lack of self-tolerance?
    a. SCID
    b. AIDS
    c. systemic lupus erythematosus
    d. anaphylaxis
    e. asthma
11. Any organism or substance capable of causing disease is called a/an ______.
12. Mucous membranes contain an antibacterial enzyme called ______.
13. ______ is a condition in which one or more lymph nodes are swollen and painful to the touch.
14. The movement of leukocytes through the capillary wall is called ______.
15. In the process of ______, complement proteins coat bacteria and serve as binding sites for phagocytes.
16. Any substance that triggers a fever is called a/an ______.
17. The chemical signals produced by leukocytes to stimulate other leukocytes are called ______.
18. Part of an antibody called the ______ binds to part of an antigen called the ______.
19. Self-tolerance results from a process called ______, in which lymphocytes programmed to react against self-antigens die.
20. Any disease in which antibodies attack one's own tissues is called a/an ______ disease.

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. Some bacteria employ lysozyme to liquify the tissue gel and make it easier for them to get around.
2. T lymphocytes undergo clonal deletion and anergy in the thymus.
3. Interferons help to reduce inflammation.
4. T lymphocytes are involved only in cell-mediated immunity.
5. The white pulp of the spleen gets its color mainly from lymphocytes and macrophages.
6. Perforins are employed in both nonspecific resistance and cellular immunity.
7. Histamine and heparin are secreted by basophils and mast cells.
8. A person who is HIV-positive and has a T_H (CD4) count of 1,000 cells/µL does not have AIDS.
9. Anergy is often a cause of autoimmune diseases.
10. Interferons kill pathogenic bacteria by making holes in their cell walls.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. Anti-D antibodies of an Rh^- woman sometimes cross the placenta and hemolyze the RBCs of an Rh^+ fetus (see p. 697). Yet the anti-B antibodies of a type A mother seldom affect the RBCs of a type B fetus. Explain this difference based on your knowledge of the five immunoglobulin classes.
2. In treating a woman for malignancy in the right breast, the surgeon removes some of her axillary lymph nodes. Following surgery, the patient experiences edema of her right arm. Explain why.
3. A girl with a defective heart receives a new heart transplanted from another child who was killed in an accident. The patient is given an antilymphocyte serum containing antibodies against her lymphocytes. The transplanted heart is not rejected, but the patient dies of an overwhelming bacterial infection. Explain why the antilymphocyte serum was given and why the patient was so vulnerable to infection.
4. A burn research center uses mice for studies of skin grafting. To prevent graft rejection, the mice are thymectomized at birth. Even though B cells do not develop in the thymus, these mice show no humoral immune response and are very susceptible to infection. Explain why the removal of the thymus would improve the success of skin grafts but adversely affect humoral immunity.
5. Contrast the structure of a B cell with that of a plasma cell, and explain how their structural difference relates to their functional difference.

Answers At the Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Legend Questions

21.4 There would be no consistent one-way flow of lymph. Lymph and tissue fluid would accumulate, especially in the lower regions of the body.

21.15 Both of these produce a ring of proteins in the target cell plasma membrane, opening a hole in the membrane through which the cell contents escape.

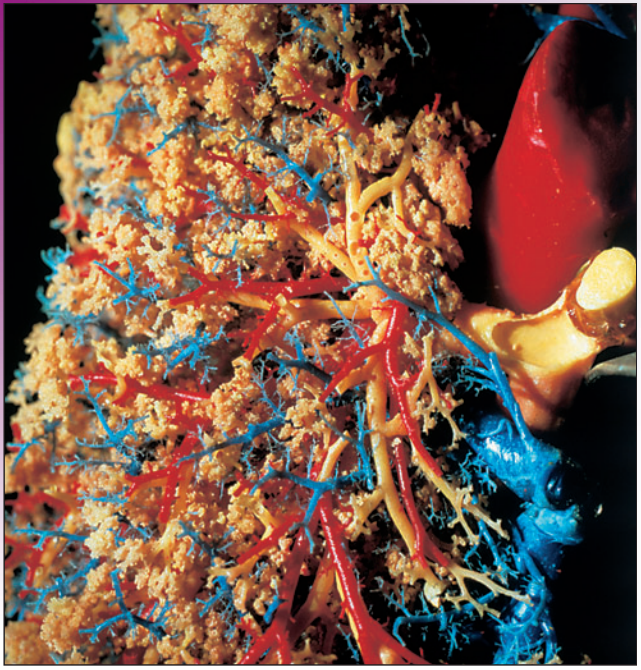
21.21 All three defenses depend on the action of helper T cells, which are destroyed by HIV.

21.24 The ER is the site of antibody synthesis.

21.29 AZT targets reverse transcriptase. If this enzyme is unable to function, HIV cannot produce viral DNA and insert it into the host cell DNA, and the virus therefore cannot be replicated.

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.



A resin cast of the lung, with arteries in blue, veins in red, and the bronchial tree and alveoli in yellow

CHAPTER 22

The Respiratory System

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Anatomy of the Respiratory System 842
- The Nose 842
- The Pharynx 845
- The Larynx 845
- The Trachea and Bronchi 846
- The Lungs 847
- The Pleurae 849

Mechanics of Ventilation 850
- Pressure and Flow 851
- Inspiration 852
- Expiration 853
- Resistance to Airflow 854
- Alveolar Surface Tension 855
- Alveolar Ventilation 855
- Nonrespiratory Air Movements 855
- Measurements of Ventilation 855
- Patterns of Breathing 856

Neural Control of Ventilation 857
- Control Centers in the Brainstem 858
- Afferent Connections to the Brainstem 859
- Voluntary Control 859

Gas Exchange and Transport 859
- Composition of Air 859
- The Air-Water Interface 860
- Alveolar Gas Exchange 860
- Gas Transport 863
- Systemic Gas Exchange 864
- Alveolar Gas Exchange Revisited 866
- Adjustment to the Metabolic Needs of Individual Tissues 866

Blood Chemistry and the Respiratory Rhythm 867
- Hydrogen Ions 867
- Carbon Dioxide 868
- Oxygen 868

Respiratory Disorders 868
- Oxygen Imbalances 869
- Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Diseases 869
- Smoking and Lung Cancer 869

Connective Issues 873

Chapter Review 874

INSIGHTS

22.1 Clinical Application: Tracheostomy 846

22.2 Clinical Application: Ondine's Curse 859

22.3 Clinical Application: Carbon Monoxide Poisoning 864

22.4 Clinical Application: Diving Physiology and Decompression Sickness 872

Brushing Up

To understand this chapter, it is important that you understand or brush up on the following concepts:

- Serous membranes (p. 182)
- Factors that affect simple diffusion (p. 107)
- The muscles of respiration (p. 345)
- The structure of hemoglobin (pp. 689–690)
- Principles of fluid pressure and flow (p. 733)
- Pulmonary blood circulation (p. 767)

Most metabolic processes of the body depend on ATP, and most ATP production requires oxygen and generates carbon dioxide as a waste product. The respiratory and cardiovascular systems collaborate to provide this oxygen and remove the carbon dioxide. Not only do these two systems have a close spatial relationship in the thoracic cavity, they also have such a close functional relationship that they are often considered jointly under the heading *cardiopulmonary.* A disorder that affects the lungs has direct and pronounced effects on the heart, and vice versa.

Furthermore, as discussed in the next two chapters, the respiratory system works closely with the urinary system to regulate the body's acid-base balance. Changes in the blood pH, in turn, trigger autonomic adjustments of the heart rate and blood pressure. Thus, the cardiovascular, respiratory, and urinary systems have an especially close physiological relationship. It is important that we now address the roles of the respiratory and urinary systems in the homeostatic control of blood gases, pH, blood pressure, and other variables related to the body fluids. This chapter deals with the respiratory system and chapter 23 with the urinary system.

Anatomy of the Respiratory System

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to
- trace the flow of air from the nose to the pulmonary alveoli; and
- relate the function of any portion of the respiratory tract to its gross and microscopic anatomy.

The term **respiration** has three meanings: (1) ventilation of the lungs (breathing), (2) the exchange of gases between air and blood and between blood and tissue fluid, and (3) the use of oxygen in cellular metabolism. In this chapter, we are concerned with the first two processes. Cellular respiration was introduced in chapter 2 and is considered more fully in chapter 26.

The principal organs of the **respiratory system** are the nose, pharynx, larynx, trachea, bronchi, and lungs (fig. 22.1). These organs serve to receive fresh air, exchange gases with the blood, and expel the modified air. Within the lungs, air flows along a dead-end pathway consisting essentially of bronchi → bronchioles → alveoli (with some refinements to be introduced later). Incoming air stops in the alveoli (millions of thin-walled, microscopic air sacs in the lungs), exchanges gases with the bloodstream across the alveolar wall, and then flows back out.

The **conducting division** of the respiratory system consists of those passages that serve only for airflow, essentially from the nostrils through the bronchioles. The **respiratory division** consists of the alveoli and other distal gas-exchange regions. The airway from the nose through the larynx is often called the **upper respiratory tract** (that is, the respiratory organs in the head and neck), and the regions from the trachea through the lungs compose the **lower respiratory tract** (the respiratory organs of the thorax).

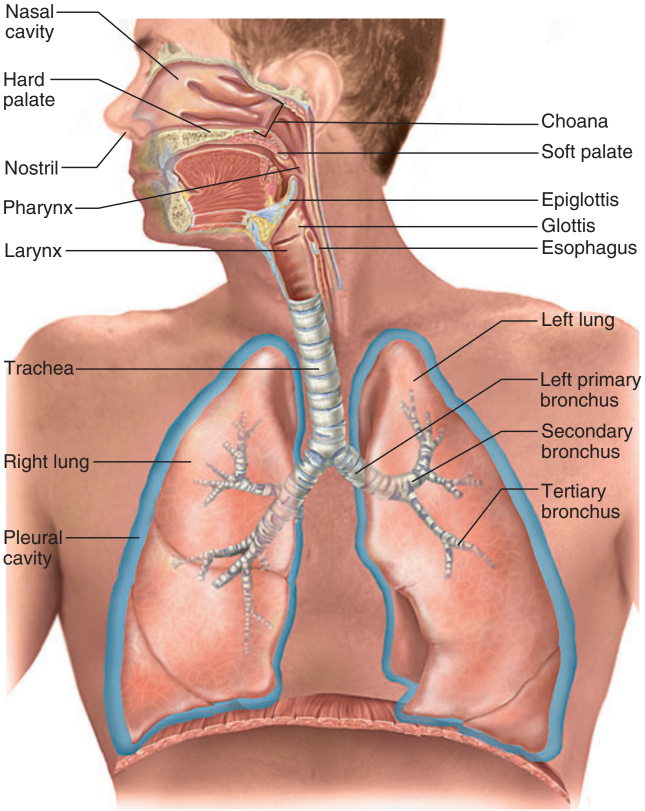


Figure 22.1 **The Respiratory System.**

The Nose

The **nose** has several functions: it warms, cleanses, and humidifies inhaled air; it detects odors in the airstream; and it serves as a resonating chamber that amplifies the voice. The external, protruding part of the nose is supported and shaped by a framework of bone and cartilage. Its superior half is supported by the nasal bones medially and the maxillae laterally. The inferior half is supported by the **lateral** and **alar cartilages** (fig. 22.2). Dense connective tissue shapes the flared portion called the **ala nasi,** which forms the lateral wall of each nostril.

The **nasal cavity** (fig. 22.3) extends from the **anterior (external) nares** (NERR-eez) (singular, *naris*), or **nostrils,** to the **posterior (internal) nares,** or **choanae**[1] (co-AH-nee). The dilated chamber inside the ala nasi is called the **vestibule.** It is lined with stratified squamous epithelium

---

[1] *choana* = funnel

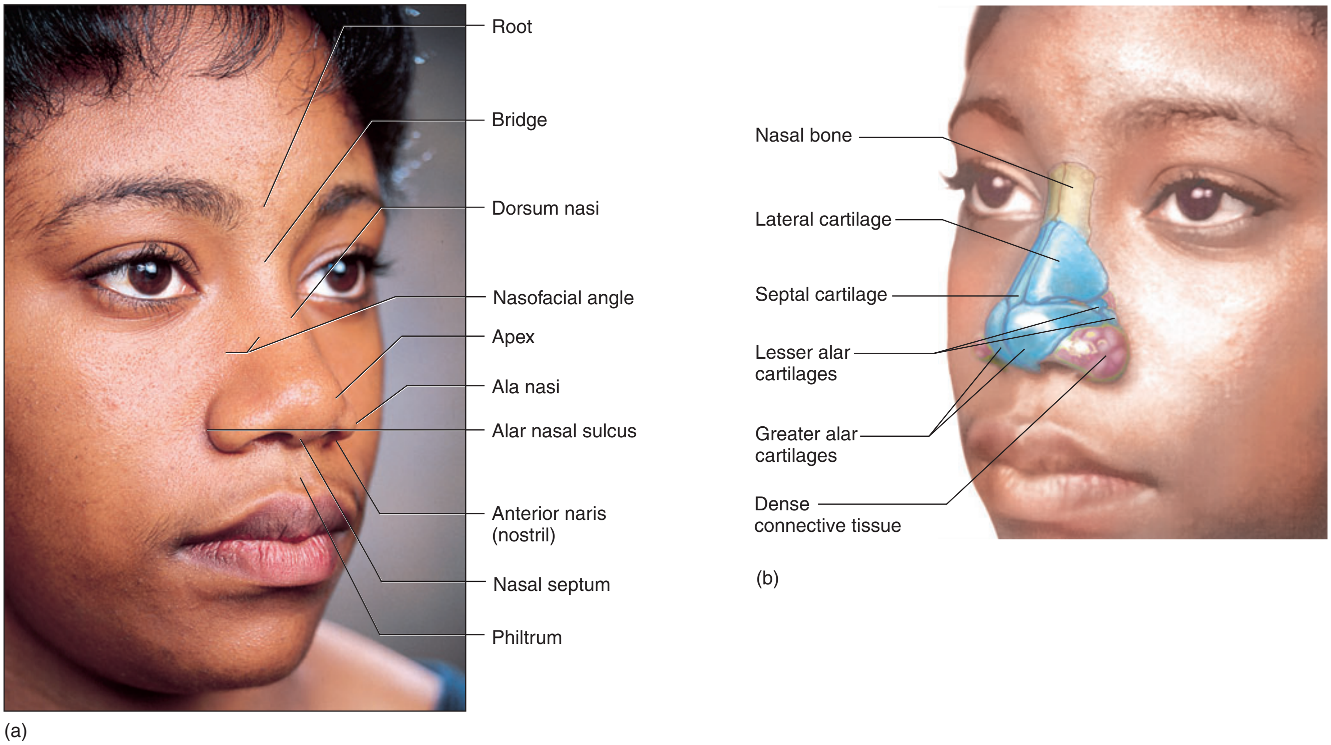


Figure 22.2 **Anatomy of the Nasal Region.** (*a*) External anatomy. (*b*) Connective tissues that shape the nose.

and has stiff **vibrissae** (vy-BRISS-ee), or **guard hairs,** that block the inhalation of large particles.

The **nasal septum** divides the nasal cavity into right and left chambers called **nasal fossae** (FOSS-ee). The vomer forms the inferior part of the septum, the perpendicular plate of the ethmoid bone forms its superior part, and the *septal cartilage* forms its anterior part. The ethmoid and sphenoid bones compose the roof of the nasal cavity and the palate forms its floor. The palate separates the nasal cavity from the oral cavity and allows you to breathe while there is food in your mouth. The paranasal sinuses (see chapter 8) and the nasolacrimal ducts of the orbits drain into the nasal cavity.

The lateral wall of the fossa gives rise to three folds of tissue—the **superior, middle,** and **inferior nasal conchae**[2] (CON-kee)—that project toward the septum and occupy most of the fossa. They consist of mucous membranes supported by thin scroll-like **turbinate bones.** Beneath each concha is a narrow air passage called a **meatus** (me-AY-tus). The narrowness of these passages and the turbulence caused by the conchae ensure that most air contacts the mucous membrane on its way through, enabling the nose to cleanse, warm, and humidify it.

The *olfactory mucosa,* concerned with the sense of smell, lines the roof of the nasal fossa and extends over part of the septum and superior concha. The rest of the cavity is lined by ciliated pseudostratified *respiratory mucosa.* The cilia continually beat toward the posterior nares and drive debris-laden mucus into the pharynx to be swallowed and digested. The nasal mucosa has an important defensive role. Goblet cells in the epithelium and glands in the lamina propria secrete a layer of mucus that traps inhaled particles. Bacteria are destroyed by lysozyme in the mucus. Additional protection against bacteria is contributed by lymphocytes, which populate the lamina propria in large numbers, and by antibodies (IgA) secreted by plasma cells.

The lamina propria contains large blood vessels that help to warm the air. The inferior concha has an especially extensive venous plexus called the **erectile tissue** *(swell body).* Every 30 to 60 minutes, the erectile tissue on one side becomes engorged with blood and restricts airflow through that fossa. Most air is then directed through the other naris and fossa, allowing the engorged side time to recover from drying. Thus the preponderant flow of air shifts between the right and left nares once or twice each hour. The inferior concha is the most common site of spontaneous *epistaxis* (nosebleed), which is sometimes a sign of hypertension.

---

[2] *concha* = seashell

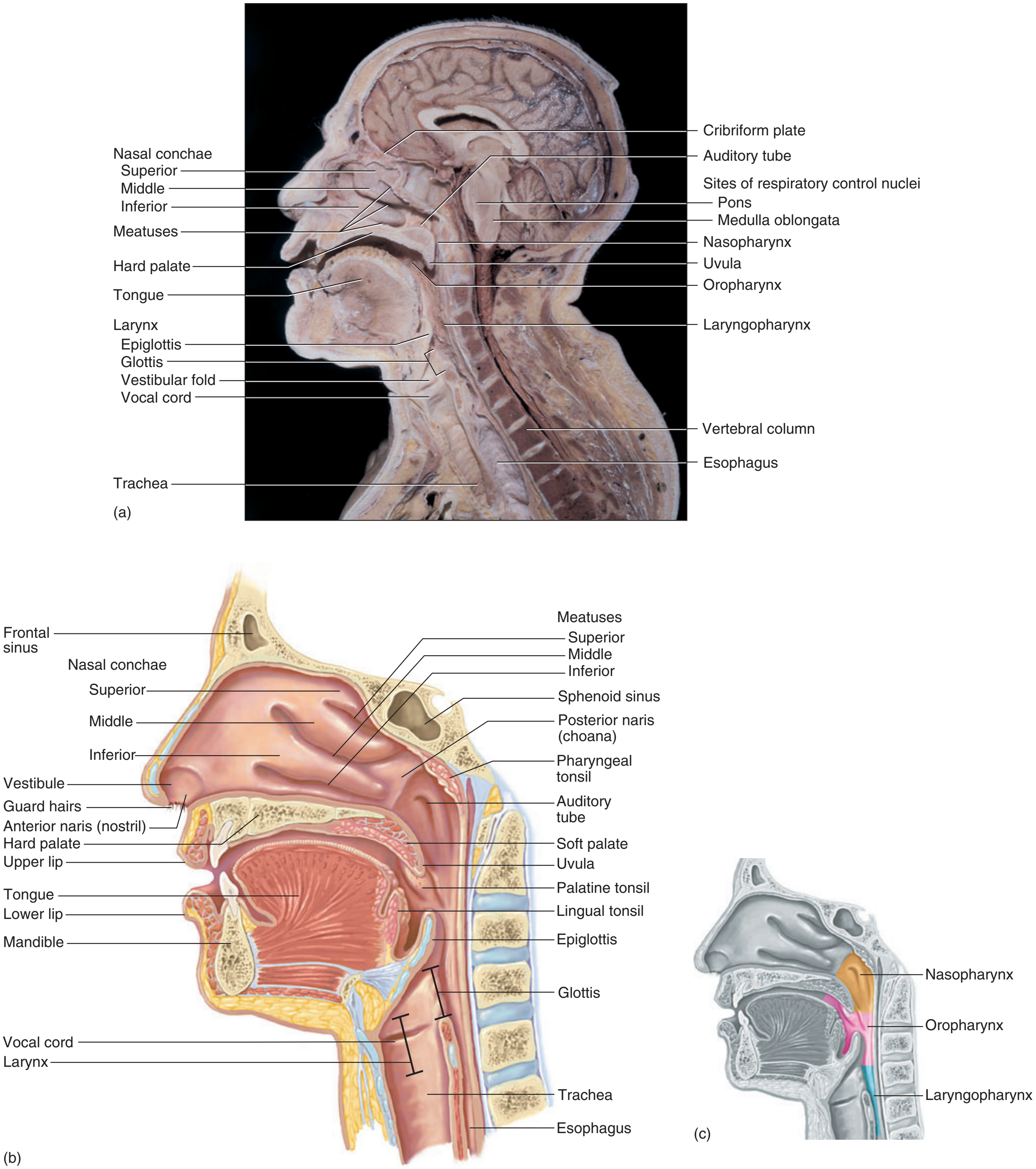

Nasal conchae
Superior
Middle
Inferior
Meatuses
Hard palate
Tongue
Larynx
Epiglottis
Glottis
Vestibular fold
Vocal cord
Trachea
(a)
Cribriform plate
Auditory tube
Sites of respiratory control nuclei
Pons
Medulla oblongata
Nasopharynx
Uvula
Oropharynx
Laryngopharynx
Vertebral column
Esophagus
Frontal sinus
Nasal conchae
Superior
Middle
Inferior
Vestibule
Guard hairs
Anterior naris (nostril)
Hard palate
Upper lip
Tongue
Lower lip
Mandible
Vocal cord
Larynx
(b)
Meatuses
Superior
Middle
Inferior
Sphenoid sinus
Posterior naris (choana)
Pharyngeal tonsil
Auditory tube
Soft palate
Uvula
Palatine tonsil
Lingual tonsil
Epiglottis
Glottis
Trachea
Esophagus
(c)
Nasopharynx
Oropharynx
Laryngopharynx

Figure 22.3 **Anatomy of the Upper Respiratory Tract.** (*a*) Median section of the head. (*b*) Internal anatomy. (*c*) Regions of the pharynx.

Why do throat infections so easily spread to the middle ear?

The Pharynx

The **pharynx** (FAIR-inks) is a muscular funnel extending about 13 cm (5 in.) from the choanae to the larynx. It has three regions: the *nasopharynx, oropharynx,* and *laryngopharynx* (fig. 22.3*c*).

The **nasopharynx,** which lies posterior to the choanae and dorsal to the soft palate, receives the auditory (eustachian) tubes from the middle ears and houses the pharyngeal tonsil. Inhaled air turns 90° downward as it passes through the nasopharynx. Dust particles larger than 10 μm generally cannot make the turn because of their inertia. They collide with the posterior wall of the nasopharynx and stick to the mucosa near the tonsil, which is well positioned to respond to airborne pathogens.

The **oropharynx** is a space between the soft palate and root of the tongue that extends inferiorly as far as the hyoid bone. It contains the palatine and lingual tonsils. Its anterior border is formed by the base of the tongue and the *fauces* (FAW-seez), the opening of the oral cavity into the pharynx.

The **laryngopharynx** (la-RING-go-FAIR-inks) begins with the union of the nasopharynx and oropharynx at the level of the hyoid bone. It passes inferiorly and dorsal to the larynx and ends at the level of the *cricoid cartilage* at the inferior end of the larynx (described next). The esophagus begins at that point. The nasopharynx passes only air and is lined by pseudostratified columnar epithelium, whereas the oropharynx and laryngopharynx pass air, food, and drink and are lined by stratified squamous epithelium.

The Larynx

The **larynx** (LAIR-inks), or "voicebox" (figs. 22.4 and 22.5), is a cartilaginous chamber about 4 cm (1.5 in.) long. Its primary function is to keep food and drink out of the airway, but it has evolved the additional role of producing sound.

The superior opening of the larynx, the **glottis,**[3] is guarded by a flap of tissue called the **epiglottis.**[4] During swallowing, *extrinsic muscles* of the larynx pull the larynx upward toward the epiglottis, the tongue pushes the epiglottis downward to meet it, and the epiglottis directs food and drink into the esophagus dorsal to the airway. The *vestibular folds* of the larynx, discussed shortly, play a greater role in keeping food and drink out of the airway, however. People who have had their epiglottis removed because of cancer do not choke any more than when it was present.

In infants, the larynx is relatively high in the throat and the epiglottis touches the soft palate. This creates a more or less continuous airway from the nasal cavity to the larynx and allows an infant to breathe continually while swallowing. The epiglottis deflects milk away from

---

[3] *glottis* = back of the tongue
[4] *epi* = above, upon

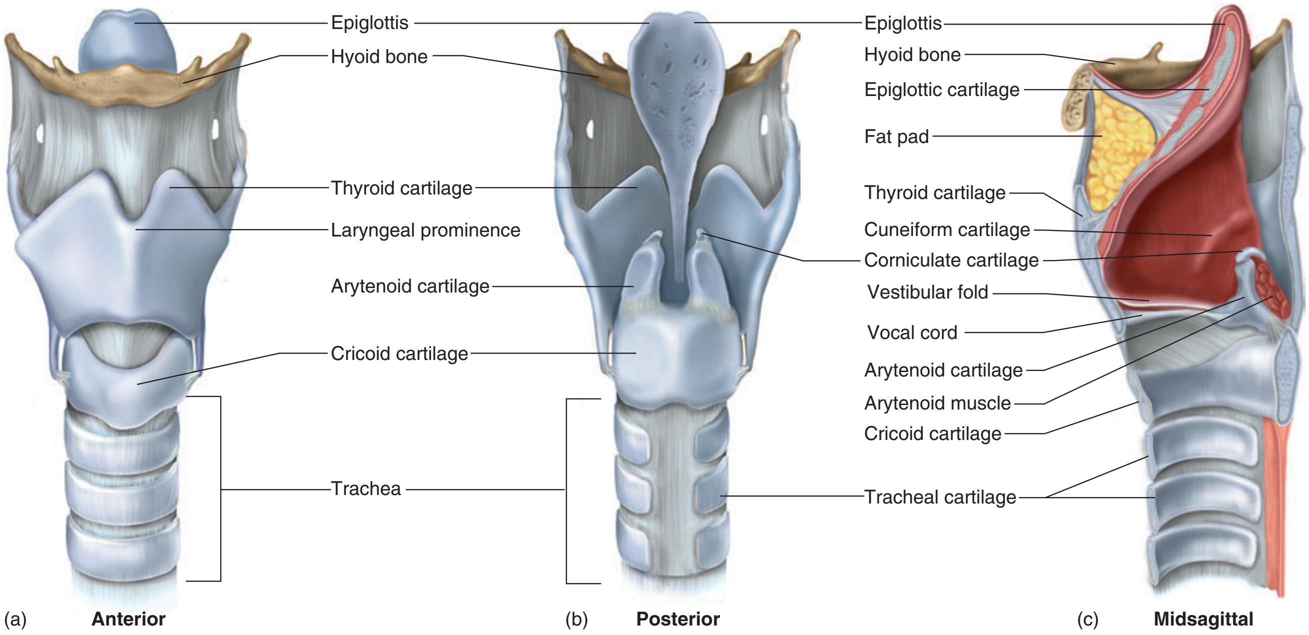

Epiglottis
Hyoid bone
Thyroid cartilage
Laryngeal prominence
Arytenoid cartilage
Cricoid cartilage
Trachea
Epiglottis
Hyoid bone
Epiglottic cartilage
Fat pad
Thyroid cartilage
Cuneiform cartilage
Corniculate cartilage
Vestibular fold
Vocal cord
Arytenoid cartilage
Arytenoid muscle
Cricoid cartilage
Tracheal cartilage
(a) Anterior
(b) Posterior
(c) Midsagittal

Figure 22.4 **Anatomy of the Larynx.** (*a*) Anterior aspect. (*b*) Posterior aspect. (*c*) Median section, anterior aspect facing left.

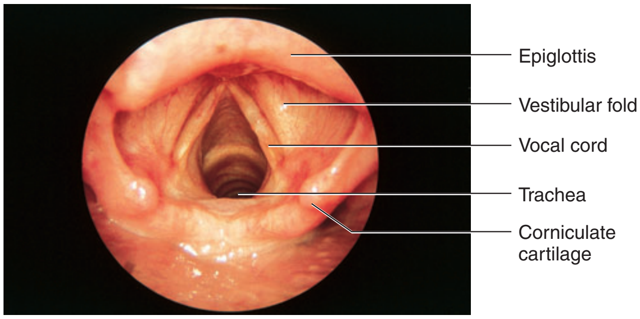


Figure 22.5 **Superior View into the Larynx of a Living Person, as Seen with a Laryngoscope.**

the airstream, like rain running off a tent while it remains dry inside. By age two, the root of the tongue becomes more muscular and forces the larynx to descend to a lower position.

The framework of the larynx consists of nine cartilages. The first three are relatively large and unpaired. The most superior one, the **epiglottic cartilage,** is a spoon-shaped supportive plate in the epiglottis. The largest, the **thyroid cartilage,** is named for its shieldlike shape. It has an anterior peak, the *laryngeal prominence,* commonly known as the Adam's apple. Testosterone stimulates the growth of this prominence, which is therefore significantly larger in males than in females. Inferior to the thyroid cartilage is a ringlike **cricoid**[5] (CRY-coyd) **cartilage,** which connects the larynx to the trachea.

The remaining cartilages are smaller and occur in three pairs. Posterior to the thyroid cartilage are the two **arytenoid**[6] (AR-ih-TEE-noyd) **cartilages,** and attached to their upper ends are a pair of little horns, the **corniculate**[7] (cor-NICK-you-late) **cartilages.** The arytenoid and corniculate cartilages function in speech, as explained shortly. A pair of **cuneiform**[8] (cue-NEE-ih-form) **cartilages** support the soft tissues between the arytenoids and the epiglottis. The epiglottic cartilage is elastic cartilage; all the others are hyaline.

The walls of the larynx are also quite muscular. The deep **intrinsic muscles** operate the vocal cords, and the superficial **extrinsic muscles** connect the larynx to the hyoid bone and elevate the larynx during swallowing. The extrinsic muscles, also called the *infrahyoid group,* are named and described in chapter 10.

The interior wall of the larynx has two folds on each side that stretch from the thyroid cartilage in front to the arytenoid cartilages in back. The superior pair, called the **vestibular folds** (fig. 22.5), play no role in speech but close the glottis during swallowing. The inferior pair, the **vocal cords** (vocal folds), produce sound when air passes between them. They are covered with stratified squamous epithelium, best suited to endure vibration and contact between the cords.

The intrinsic muscles control the vocal cords by pulling on the corniculate and arytenoid cartilages, causing the cartilages to pivot. Depending on their direction of rotation, the arytenoid cartilages abduct or adduct the vocal cords (fig. 22.6). Air forced between the adducted vocal cords vibrates them, producing a high-pitched sound when the cords are relatively taut and a lower-pitched sound when they are more relaxed. In adult males, the vocal cords are longer and thicker, vibrate more slowly, and produce lower-pitched sounds than in females. Loudness is determined by the force of the air passing between the vocal cords. The crude sounds of the vocal cords are formed into words by actions of the pharynx, oral cavity, tongue, and lips.

The Trachea and Bronchi

The **trachea** (TRAY-kee-uh), or "windpipe," is a rigid tube about 12 cm (4.5 in.) long and 2.5 cm (1 in.) in diameter, lying anterior to the esophagus (fig. 22.7*a*). It is supported by 16 to 20 C-shaped rings of hyaline cartilage, some of which you can palpate between your larynx and sternum. Like the wire spiral in a vacuum cleaner hose, the cartilage rings reinforce the trachea and keep it from collapsing when you inhale. The open part of the C faces posteriorly, where it is spanned by a smooth muscle, the **trachealis** (fig. 22.7*c*). The gap in the C allows room for the esophagus to expand as swallowed food passes by. The trachealis muscles can contract or relax to adjust tracheal airflow. At its inferior end, the trachea branches into the right and left *primary bronchi,* which supply the lungs. They are further traced in the following discussion of the *bronchial tree* in the lungs.

The larynx, trachea, and bronchial tree are lined mostly by ciliated pseudostratified columnar epithelium (figs. 22.7*b* and 22.8), which functions as a **mucociliary escalator.** That is, the mucus traps inhaled debris and then the ciliary beating drives the mucus up to the pharynx, where it is swallowed.

Insight 22.1 Clinical Application

Tracheostomy

If the airway is obstructed with secretions or foreign matter, it may be necessary to make a temporary opening in the trachea inferior to the larynx and insert a tube to allow airflow—a procedure called *tracheostomy.* This prevents asphyxiation, but the inhaled air bypasses the nasal cavity and thus is not humidified. If the opening is left for long,

---

[5] *crico* = ring + *oid* = resembling
[6] *aryten* = ladle
[7] *corni* = horn + *cul* = little + *ate* = possessing
[8] *cune* = wedge + *form* = shape

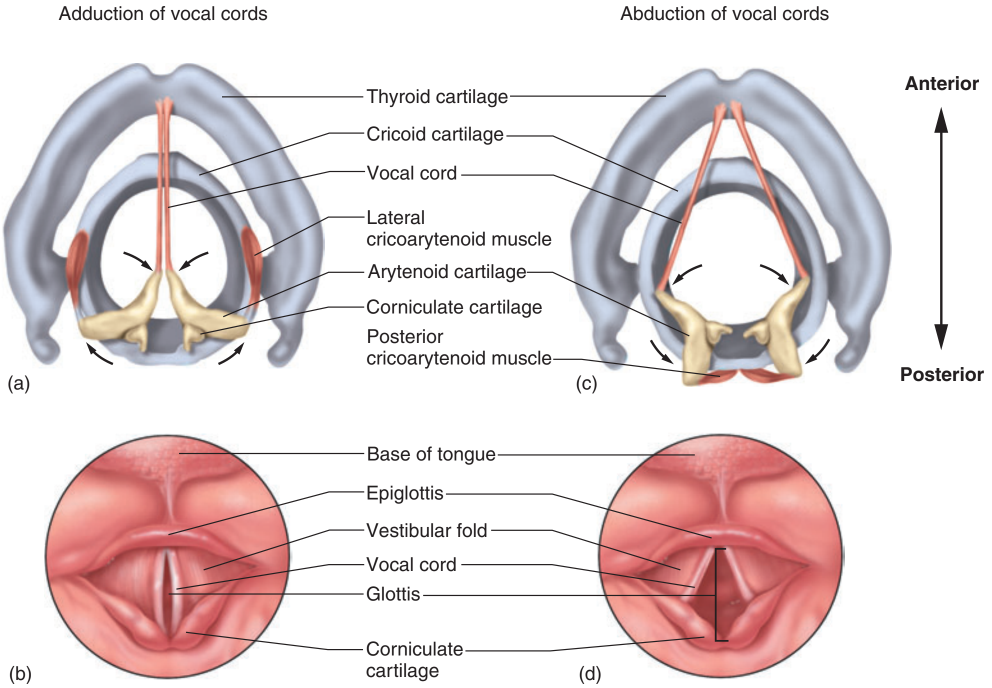

Adduction of vocal cords
Abduction of vocal cords
Anterior
Posterior
Thyroid cartilage
Cricoid cartilage
Vocal cord
Lateral cricoarytenoid muscle
Arytenoid cartilage
Corniculate cartilage
Posterior cricoarytenoid muscle
(a)
(c)
Base of tongue
Epiglottis
Vestibular fold
Vocal cord
Glottis
Corniculate cartilage
(b)
(d)

Figure 22.6 **Action of Some of the Intrinsic Laryngeal Muscles on the Vocal Cords.** (*a*) Adduction of the vocal cords by the lateral cricoarytenoid muscles. (*b*) Adducted vocal cords seen with the laryngoscope. (*c*) Abduction of the vocal cords by the posterior cricoarytenoid muscles. (*d*) Abducted vocal cords seen with the laryngoscope.

the mucous membranes of the respiratory tract can dry out and become encrusted, interfering with the clearance of mucus from the tract and leading to severe infection. We can understand the functional importance of the nasal cavity especially well when we see the consequences of bypassing it.

The Lungs

Each **lung** (fig. 22.9) is a somewhat conical organ with a broad, concave **base** resting on the diaphragm and a blunt peak called the **apex** projecting slightly superior to the clavicle. The broad **costal surface** is pressed against the rib cage, and the smaller concave **mediastinal surface** faces medially. The lungs do not fill the entire rib cage. Inferior to the lungs and diaphragm, much of the space within the rib cage is occupied by the liver, spleen, and stomach (see fig. A.14, p. 45).

The lung receives the bronchus, blood vessels, lymphatic vessels, and nerves through its **hilum,** a slit in the mediastinal surface (see fig. 22.26*a,* p. 870). These structures entering the hilum constitute the **root** of the lung. Because the heart tilts to the left, the left lung is a little smaller than the right and has an indentation called the **cardiac impression** to accommodate it. The left lung has a **superior lobe** and an **inferior lobe** with a deep fissure between them; the right lung, by contrast, has three lobes—**superior, middle,** and **inferior**—separated by two fissures.

The Bronchial Tree

The lung has a spongy parenchyma containing the **bronchial tree** (fig 22.10), a highly branched system of air tubes extending from the primary bronchus to about 65,000 *terminal bronchioles.* Two **primary bronchi** (BRONK-eye) arise from the trachea at the level of the angle of the sternum. Each continues for 2 to 3 cm and enters the hilum of its respective lung. The right bronchus is slightly wider and more vertical than the left; consequently, *aspirated* (inhaled) foreign objects lodge in the right bronchus more often than in the left. Like the trachea, the primary bronchi are supported by C-shaped hyaline cartilages. All divisions of the bronchial tree also have a substantial amount of elastic connective tissue, which is important in expelling air from the lungs.

After entering the hilum, the primary bronchus branches into one **secondary (lobar) bronchus** for each pulmonary lobe. Thus, there are two secondary bronchi in the left lung and three in the right.

Each secondary bronchus divides into **tertiary (segmental) bronchi**—10 in the right lung and 8 in the left.

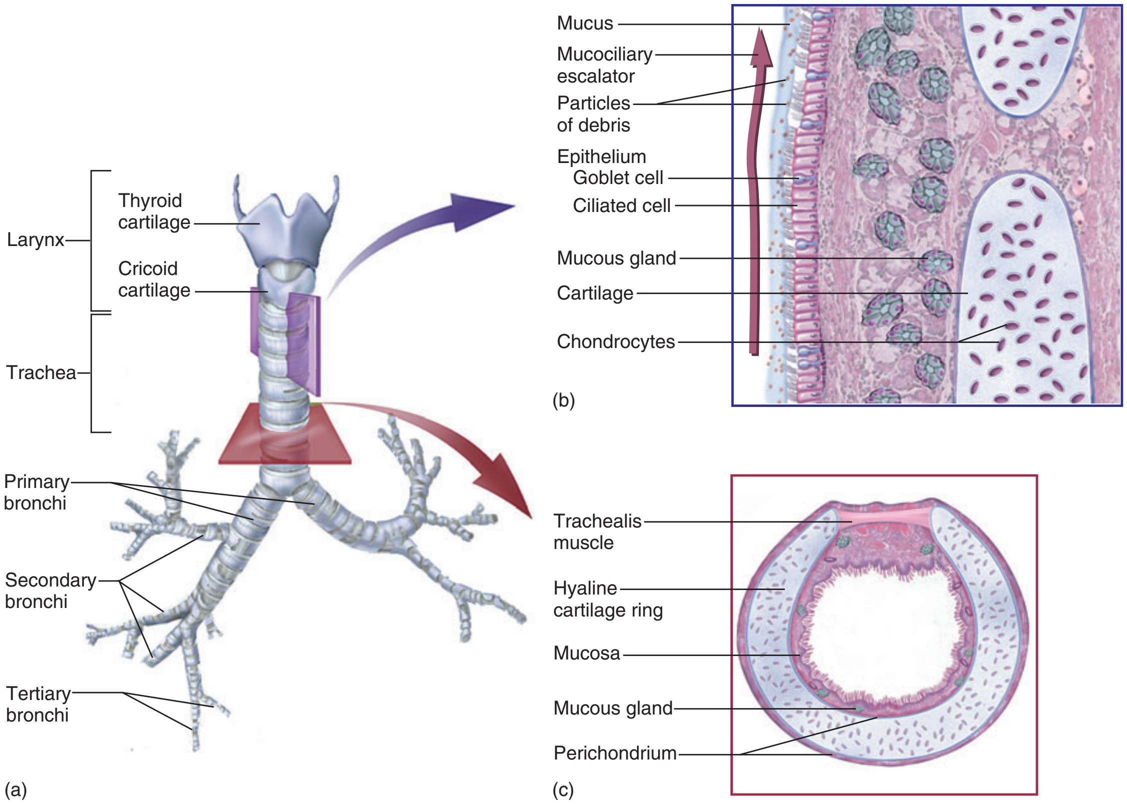

Larynx
Thyroid cartilage
Cricoid cartilage
Trachea
Primary bronchi
Secondary bronchi
Tertiary bronchi
(a)
Mucus
Mucociliary escalator
Particles of debris
Epithelium
Goblet cell
Ciliated cell
Mucous gland
Cartilage
Chondrocytes
(b)
Trachealis muscle
Hyaline cartilage ring
Mucosa
Mucous gland
Perichondrium
(c)

Figure 22.7 **Anatomy of the Lower Respiratory Tract.** (*a*) Anterior view. (*b*) Longitudinal section of the trachea showing the action of the mucociliary escalator. (*c*) Cross section of the trachea showing the C-shaped tracheal cartilage.
Why do inhaled objects more often go into the right primary bronchus than into the left?

The portion of the lung supplied by each tertiary bronchus is called a **bronchopulmonary segment.** Secondary and tertiary bronchi are supported by overlapping plates of cartilage, not rings. Branches of the *pulmonary artery* closely follow the bronchial tree on their way to the alveoli. The bronchial tree itself is nourished by the *bronchial artery,* which arises from the aorta and carries systemic blood.

Bronchioles are continuations of the airway that are 1 mm or less in diameter and lack cartilage. A well-developed layer of smooth muscle in their walls enables them to dilate or constrict, as discussed later. Spasmodic contractions of this muscle at death cause the bronchioles to exhibit a wavy lumen in most histological sections. The portion of the lung ventilated by one bronchiole is called a **pulmonary lobule.**

Each bronchiole divides into 50 to 80 **terminal bronchioles,** the final branches of the conducting division. They measure 0.5 mm or less in diameter and have no mucous glands or goblet cells. They do have cilia, however, so that mucus draining into them from the higher passages can be driven back by the mucociliary escalator, thus preventing congestion of the terminal bronchioles and alveoli.

Each terminal bronchiole gives off two or more smaller **respiratory bronchioles,** which mark the beginning of the respiratory division. All branches of the respiratory division are defined by the presence of alveoli. The respiratory bronchioles have scanty smooth muscle, and the smallest of them are nonciliated. Each divides into 2 to 10 elongated, thin-walled passages called **alveolar ducts** that end in **alveolar sacs,** which are grapelike clusters of alveoli (fig. 22.11). Alveoli also bud from the walls of the respiratory bronchioles and alveolar ducts.

The epithelium of the bronchial tree is pseudostratified columnar in the bronchi, simple cuboidal in the bronchioles, and simple squamous in the alveolar ducts, sacs, and alveoli. It is ciliated except in the distal reaches of the respiratory bronchioles and beyond.

Alveoli

The functional importance of human lung structure is best appreciated by comparison to the lungs of a few other animals. In frogs and other amphibians, the lung is a simple sac lined with blood vessels. This is sufficient to meet the oxygen needs of animals with relatively low metabolic

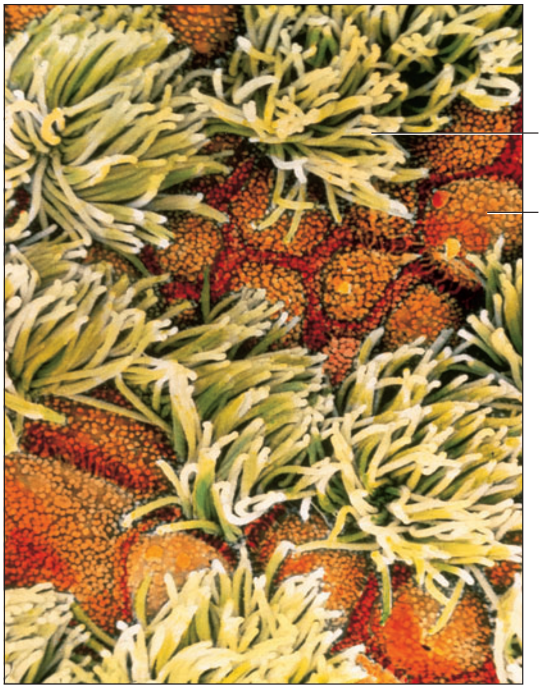


Figure 22.8 **The Tracheal Epithelium Showing Ciliated Cells and Nonciliated Goblet Cells.** The small bumps on the goblet cells are microvilli. (Colorized SEM micrograph)

rates. Mammals, with their high metabolic rates, could never have evolved with such a simple lung. Rather than consisting of one large sac, each human lung is a spongy mass composed of 150 million little sacs, the alveoli, which provide about 70 m^2 of surface for gas exchange.

An **alveolus** (AL-vee-OH-lus) (fig. 22.12) is a pouch about 0.2 to 0.5 mm in diameter. Its wall consists predominantly of **squamous (type I) alveolar cells**—thin cells that allow for rapid gas diffusion between the alveolus and bloodstream. About 5% of the alveolar cells are round to cuboidal **great (type II) alveolar cells.** They secrete a detergent-like lipoprotein called **pulmonary surfactant,** which forms a thin film on the insides of the alveoli and bronchioles. Its function is discussed later.

Alveolar macrophages (dust cells) wander the lumens of the alveoli and the connective tissue between them. They are the last line of defense against inhaled matter. Particles over 10 μm in diameter are usually strained out by the nasal vibrissae or trapped in the mucus of the upper respiratory tract. Most particles 2 to 10 μm in diameter are trapped in the mucus of the bronchi and bronchioles, where the airflow is relatively slow, and then removed by the mucociliary escalator. Many particles smaller than 2 μm, however, make their way into the alveoli, where they are phagocytized by the macrophages. In lungs that are infected or bleeding, the macrophages also phagocytize bacteria and loose blood cells. Alveolar macrophages greatly outnumber all other cell types in the lung; as many as 50 million perish each day as they ride up the mucociliary escalator to be swallowed.

Each alveolus is surrounded by a basket of blood capillaries supplied by the pulmonary artery. The barrier between the alveolar air and blood, called the **respiratory membrane,** consists only of the squamous type I alveolar cell, the squamous endothelial cell of the capillary, and their fused basement membranes. These have a total thickness of only 0.5 μm.

The pulmonary circulation has very low blood pressure. In alveolar capillaries, the mean blood pressure is 10 mmHg and the oncotic pressure is 25 mmHg. The osmotic uptake of water thus overrides filtration and keeps the alveoli free of fluid. The lungs also have a more extensive lymphatic drainage than any other organ in the body. The low capillary blood pressure also prevents the rupture of the delicate respiratory membrane.

The Pleurae

The surface of the lung is covered by a serous membrane, the **visceral pleura** (PLOOR-uh), which extends into the fissures. At the hilum, the visceral pleura turns back on itself and forms the **parietal pleura,** which adheres to the mediastinum, superior surface of the diaphragm, and inner surface of the rib cage (see fig. 22.9*b*). An extension of the parietal pleura, the *pulmonary ligament,* extends from the base of each lung to the diaphragm. The space between the parietal and visceral pleurae is called the **pleural cavity.** The two membranes are normally separated only by a film of slippery **pleural fluid;** thus, the pleural cavity is only a *potential space,* meaning there is normally no room between the membranes, but under pathological conditions this space can fill with air or liquid.

The pleurae and pleural fluid have three functions:

1. **Reduction of friction.** Pleural fluid acts as a lubricant that enables the lungs to expand and contract with minimal friction. In some forms of *pleurisy,* the pleurae are dry and inflamed and each breath gives painful testimony to the function that the fluid should be serving.
2. **Creation of pressure gradient.** Pressure in the pleural cavity is lower than atmospheric pressure; as explained later, this assists in inflation of the lungs.
3. **Compartmentalization.** The pleurae, mediastinum, and pericardium compartmentalize the thoracic organs and prevent infections of one organ from spreading easily to neighboring organs.

Think About It

In what ways do the structure and function of the pleurae resemble the structure and function of the pericardium?

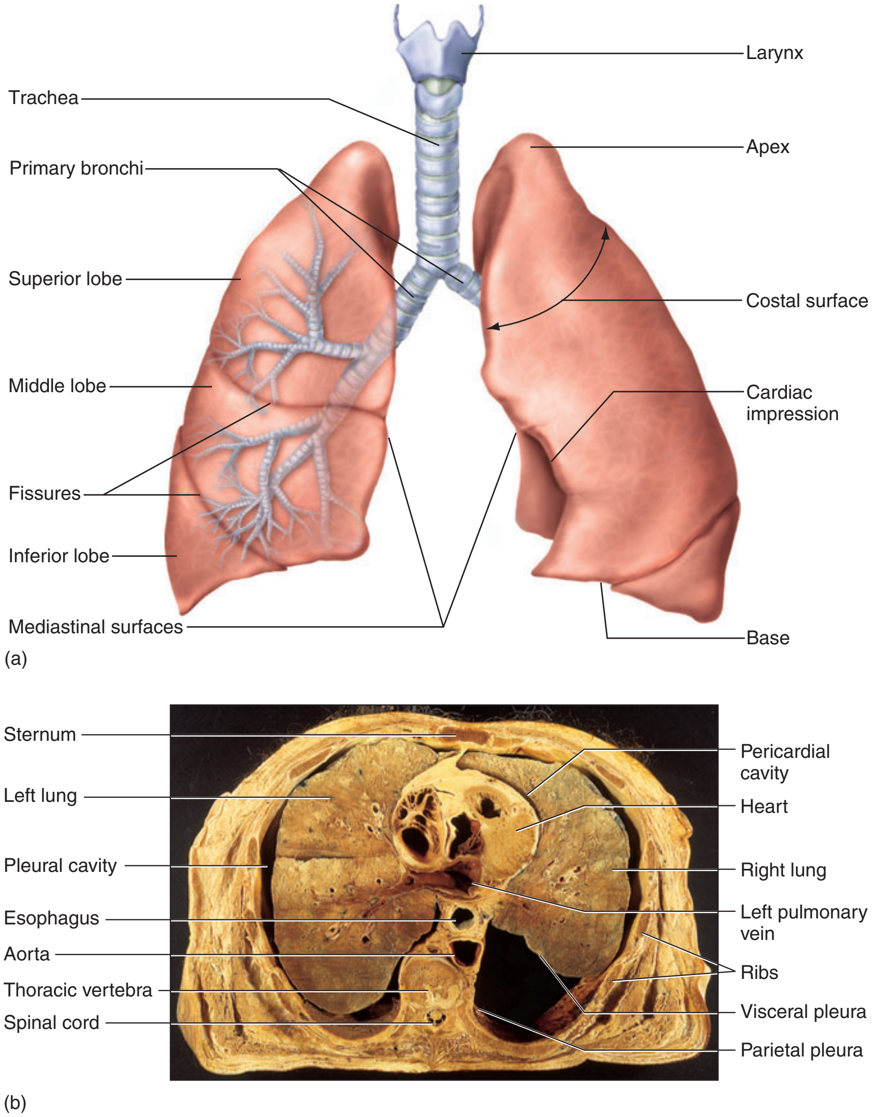

Larynx
Trachea
Apex
Primary bronchi
Superior lobe
Costal surface
Middle lobe
Cardiac impression
Fissures
Inferior lobe
Mediastinal surfaces
Base
(a)
Sternum
Pericardial cavity
Left lung
Heart
Pleural cavity
Right lung
Esophagus
Left pulmonary vein
Aorta
Ribs
Thoracic vertebra
Visceral pleura
Spinal cord
Parietal pleura
(b)

Figure 22.9 **Gross Anatomy of the Lungs.** (*a*) Anterior view. (*b*) Cross section through the thorax of a cadaver showing the heart, lungs, and pleurae.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

1. A dust particle is inhaled and gets into an alveolus without being trapped along the way. Describe the path it takes, naming all air passages from external naris to alveolus. What would happen to it after arrival in the alveolus?
2. Describe the histology of the epithelium and lamina propria of the nasal cavity and the functions of the cell types present.
3. Describe the roles of the intrinsic muscles, corniculate cartilages, and arytenoid cartilages in speech.
4. Contrast the epithelium of the bronchioles with that of the alveoli and explain how the structural difference is related to their functional differences.

Mechanics of Ventilation

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- explain how pressure gradients cause air to flow into and out of the lungs;
- explain how the respiratory muscles produce these pressure gradients;
- explain the relevance of pulmonary compliance and elasticity to ventilation;
- explain why the alveoli do not collapse when one exhales; and
- define various measurements of pulmonary function.

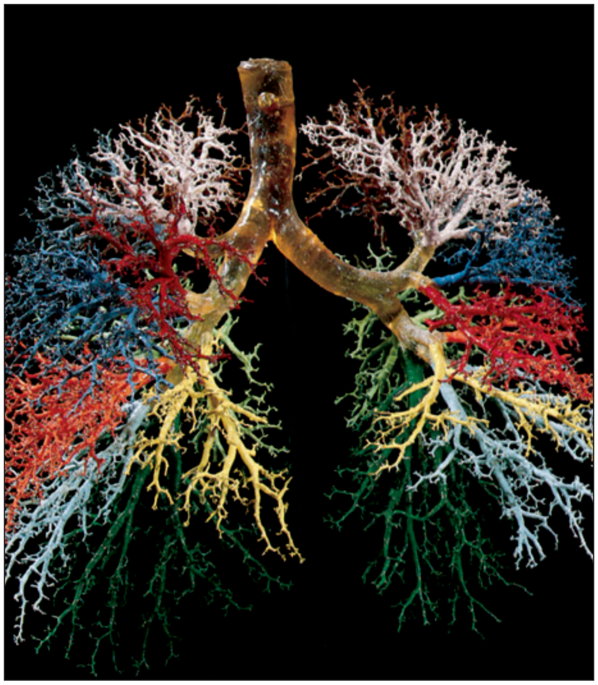


Figure 22.10 **The Bronchial Trees.** Each color identifies a bronchopulmonary segment supplied by a tertiary bronchus.

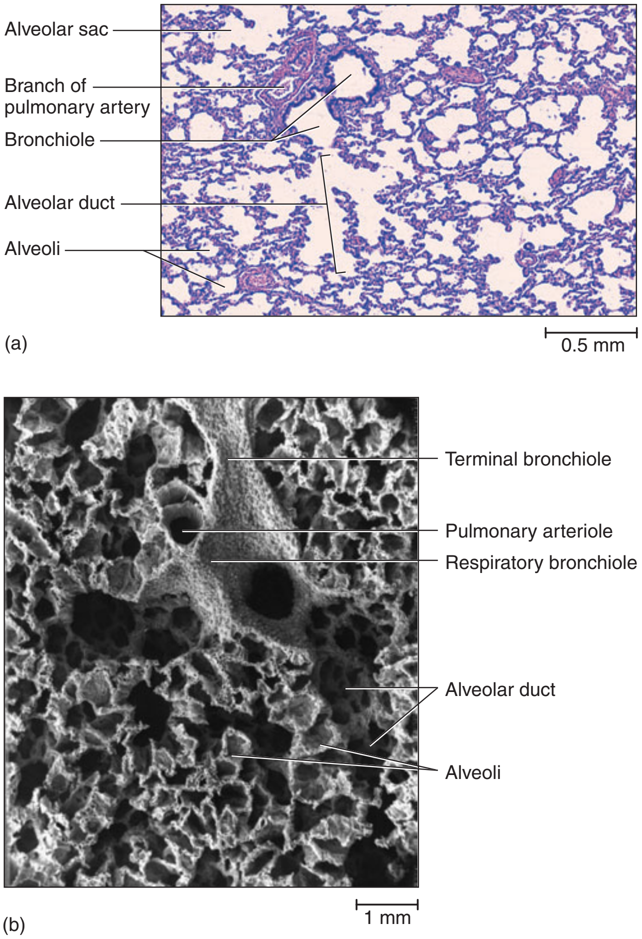


Figure 22.11 **Tissue of the Lung.** (*a*) Light micrograph; (*b*) SEM micrograph. Note the spongy texture of the lung.

Understanding the ventilation of the lungs, the transport of gases in the blood, and the exchange of gases with the tissues is largely a matter of understanding gas behavior. Several of the gas laws of physics are highly relevant to understanding respiratory function, but since they are named after their discoverers, they are not intuitively easy to remember by name. Table 22.1 lists the gas laws used in this chapter and may be a helpful reference as you progress through respiratory physiology.

A resting adult breathes 10 to 15 times per minute, inhaling about 500 mL of air during **inspiration** and exhaling it again during **expiration.** In this section, we examine the muscular actions and pressure gradients that produce this airflow.

Pressure and Flow

Airflow is governed by the same principles of flow, pressure, and resistance as blood flow (see chapter 20). The pressure that drives respiration is **atmospheric (barometric) pressure**—the weight of the air above us. At sea level, a column of air as thick as the atmosphere (60 mi) and 1 in. square weighs 14.7 lb; it is thus said to exert a force of 14.7 pounds per square inch (psi). In standard international (SI) units, this is a column of air 100 km high exerting a force of 1.013×10^6 dynes/cm^2. This pressure, called *1 atmosphere* (1 atm), is enough to force a column of mercury 760 mm up an evacuated tube; therefore, 1 atm = 760 mmHg. This is the average atmospheric pressure at sea level; it fluctuates from day to day and is lower at higher altitudes.

One way to change the pressure of a gas, and thus to make it flow, is to change the volume of its container. **Boyle's law** states that *the pressure of a given quantity of gas is inversely proportional to its volume* (assuming a constant temperature). If the lungs contain a quantity of gas and lung volume increases, their **intrapulmonary pressure**—the pressure within the alveoli—falls. If lung volume decreases, intrapulmonary pressure rises. (Compare this to the syringe analogy on p. 734.) To make air flow into the lungs, it is necessary only to lower the intrapulmonary pressure below the atmospheric pressure. Raising the intrapulmonary pressure above the atmospheric pressure makes air flow out again. These changes are created as skeletal muscles of the thoracic and abdominal walls change the volume of the thoracic cavity.

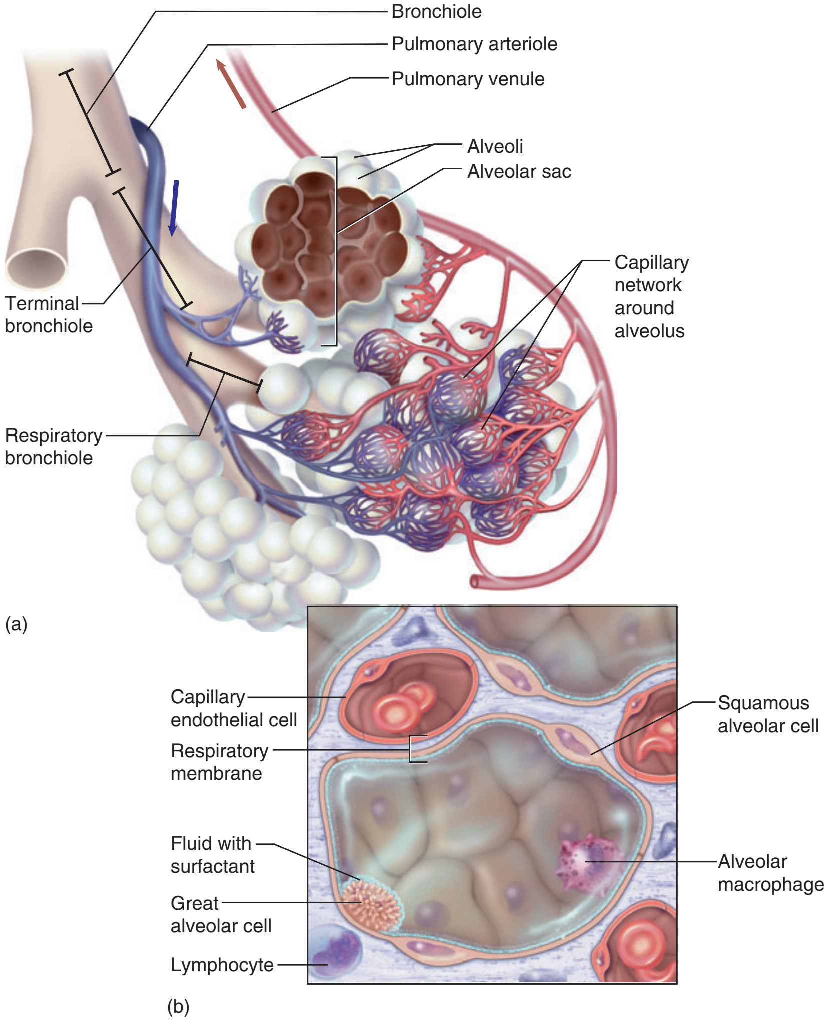

Bronchiole
Pulmonary arteriole
Pulmonary venule
Alveoli
Alveolar sac
Capillary network around alveolus
Terminal bronchiole
Respiratory bronchiole
(a)
Capillary endothelial cell
Respiratory membrane
Fluid with surfactant
Great alveolar cell
Lymphocyte
Squamous alveolar cell
Alveolar macrophage
(b)

Figure 22.12 **Pulmonary Alveoli.** (*a*) Clusters of alveoli and their blood supply. (*b*) Structure of an alveolus.

What matters to flow is the *difference* between atmospheric pressure and intrapulmonary pressure. Since atmospheric pressures vary from one place and time to another, it is more useful for our discussion to refer to relative pressures. A relative pressure of −3 mmHg, for example, means 3 mmHg below atmospheric pressure; a relative pressure of +3 mmHg is 3 mmHg above atmospheric pressure. At an atmospheric pressure of 760 mmHg, these would represent absolute pressures of 757 and 763 mmHg, respectively.

Inspiration

Pulmonary ventilation is achieved by rhythmically changing the pressure in the thoracic cavity. Air flows into the lungs when thoracic pressure falls below atmospheric pressure, then it's forced out when thoracic pressure rises above atmospheric pressure. The diaphragm does most of the work. It is dome-shaped at rest, but when stimulated by the phrenic nerves, it tenses and flattens somewhat, dropping about 1.5 cm in quiet respiration and as much as 7 cm in deep breathing. This enlarges the thoracic cavity and thus reduces its internal pressure. Other muscles help. The scalenes fix (immobilize) the first pair of ribs while the external intercostal muscles lift the remaining ribs like bucket handles, making them swing up and out. Deep inspiration is aided by the pectoralis minor, sternocleidomastoid, and erector spinae muscles.

As the rib cage expands, the parietal pleura clings to it. In the space between the parietal and visceral pleurae,

Table 22.1 The Gas Laws of Respiratory Physiology

Boyle's Law[9]	The pressure of a given quantity of gas is inversely proportional to its volume (assuming a constant temperature).
Charles' Law[10]	The volume of a given quantity of gas is directly proportional to its absolute temperature (assuming a constant pressure).
Dalton's Law[11]	The total pressure of a gas mixture is equal to the sum of the partial pressures of its individual gases.
Henry's Law[12]	At the air-water interface, the amount of gas that dissolves in water is determined by its solubility in water and its partial pressure in the air (assuming a constant temperature).

the **intrapleural pressure** drops from a value of about −4 mmHg at rest to −6 mmHg during inspiration (fig. 22.13). The visceral pleura clings to the parietal pleura like a sheet of wet paper, so it too is pulled outward. Since the visceral pleura forms the lung surface, the lung expands as well. Not all the pressure change in the pleural cavity is transferred to the interior of the lungs, but the intrapulmonary pressure drops to about −3 mmHg. At an atmospheric pressure of 760 mmHg (1 atm), the intrapleural pressure would be 754 mmHg and the intrapulmonary pressure 757 mmHg. The difference between these, 3 mmHg, is the **transpulmonary pressure.** The transpulmonary gradient of 757 → 754 mmHg helps the lungs expand in the thoracic cavity, and the gradient of 760 → 757 mmHg from atmospheric to intrapulmonary pressure makes air flow into the lungs. (All these values assume a barometric pressure of 1 atm.)

Another force that expands the lungs is warming of the inhaled air. **Charles' law** states that *the volume of a given quantity of gas is directly proportional to its absolute temperature.* On a day when the ambient temperature is 21°C (70°F), inhaled air is heated to 37°C (16°C warmer) by the time it reaches the alveoli. As the inhaled air expands, it helps to inflate the lungs.

When the respiratory muscles stop contracting, the inflowing air quickly achieves an intrapulmonary pressure equal to atmospheric pressure, and flow stops. The dimensions of the thoracic cage increase by only a few millimeters in each direction, but this is enough to increase its total volume by 500 mL. Thus, 500 mL of air flows into the respiratory tract during quiet breathing.

Think About It

When you inhale, does your chest expand because your lungs inflate, or do your lungs inflate because your chest expands? Explain.

Expiration

Inspiration requires a muscular effort and therefore an expenditure of ATP and calories. By contrast, normal expiration during quiet breathing is an energy-saving passive process that requires little muscular contraction other than a braking action explained shortly. Expiration is achieved by the elasticity of the lungs and thoracic cage—the tendency to return to their original dimensions when released from tension. The bronchial tree has a substantial amount of elastic connective tissue in its walls. The attachments of the ribs to the spine and sternum, and the tendons of the diaphragm and other respiratory muscles, also have a degree of elasticity that causes them to spring back when muscular contraction ceases. As these structures recoil, the thoracic cage diminishes in size. In accordance with Boyle's law, this raises the intrapulmonary pressure; it peaks at about +3 mmHg and expels air from the lungs (fig. 22.13). Diseases that reduce pulmonary elasticity interfere with expiration, as we will see in the discussion of emphysema.

When inspiration ceases, the phrenic nerves continue to stimulate the diaphragm for a little while longer. This produces a slight braking action that prevents the lungs from recoiling too abruptly, so it makes the transition from inspiration to expiration smoother. In relaxed breathing, inspiration usually lasts about 2 seconds and expiration about 3 seconds.

To exhale more completely than usual—say, in blowing out the candles on your birthday cake—you contract your internal intercostal muscles, which depress the ribs. You also contract the abdominal muscles (internal and external abdominal obliques, transversus abdominis, and rectus abdominis), which raise the intra-abdominal pressure and force the viscera and diaphragm upward, putting pressure on the thoracic cavity. Intrapulmonary pressure rises as high as 20 to 30 mmHg above atmospheric pressure, causing faster and deeper evacuation of the lungs. Abdominal control of expiration is important in singing and public speaking.

The effect of pulmonary elasticity is evident in a pathological state of pneumothorax and atelectasis. **Pneumothorax** is the presence of air in the pleural cavity. If the thoracic wall is punctured, for example, air is sucked through the wound into the pleural cavity during inspiration and separates the visceral and parietal pleurae. Without the negative intrapleural pressure to keep the lungs inflated, the lungs recoil and collapse. The collapse of a lung or part of a lung is called **atelectasis**[13] (AT-eh-LEC-ta-sis).

[9] Robert Boyle (1627–91), English physicist
[10] Jacques A. C. Charles (1746–1823), French physicist
[11] John Dalton (1766–1844), British chemist
[12] William Henry (1774–1836), British chemist

---

[13] *atel* = imperfect, incomplete + *ectasis* = extension

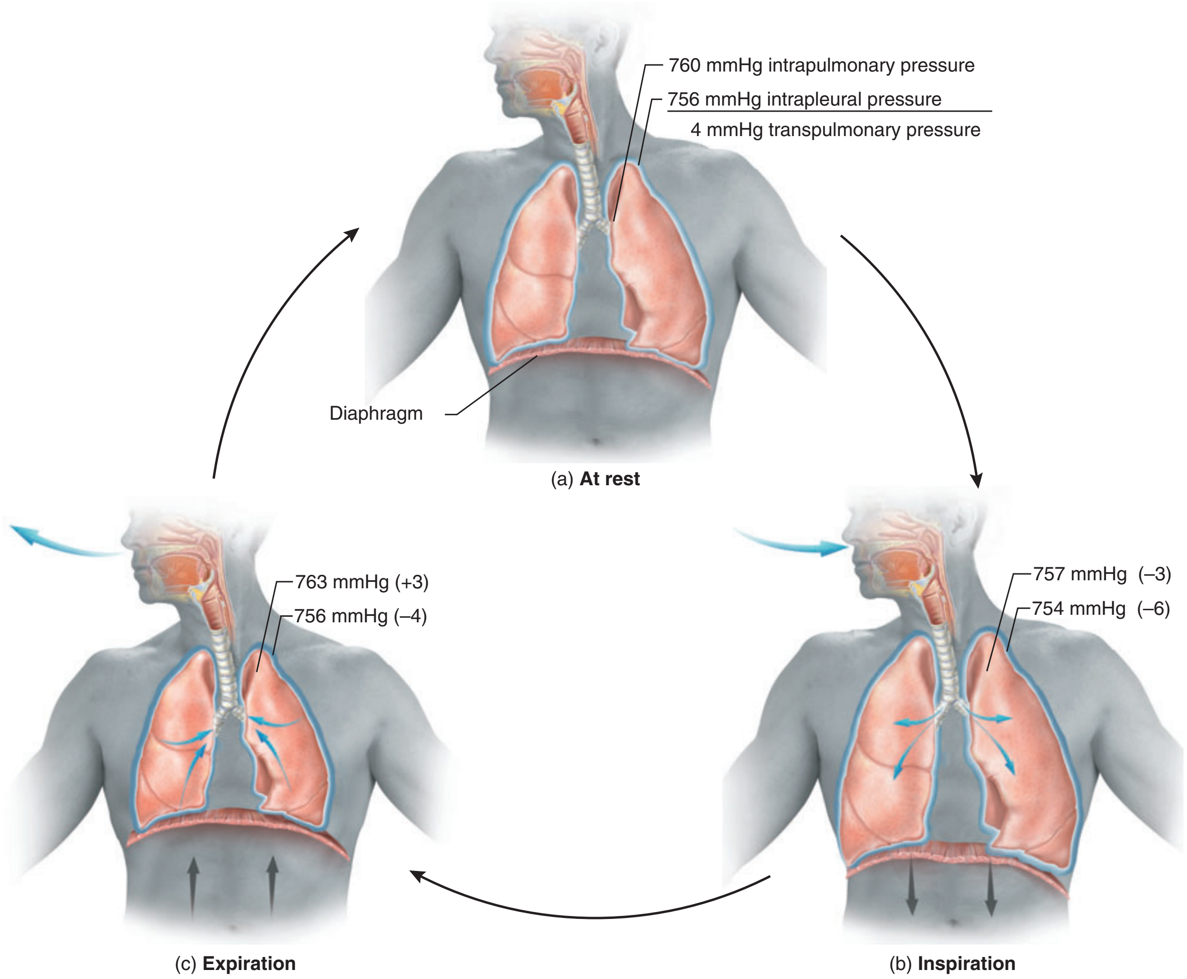


Figure 22.13 **The Cycle of Pressure Changes Causing Ventilation of the Lungs.** The pressures given here are based on an assumed atmospheric pressure of 760 mmHg (1 atm). Values in parentheses are relative to atmospheric pressure.

Atelectasis can also result from airway obstruction—for example, by a lung tumor, aneurysm, swollen lymph node, or aspirated object. Blood absorbs gases from the alveoli distal to the obstruction, and that part of the lung collapses because it cannot be reventilated.

Resistance to Airflow

In discussing blood circulation (p. 753), we noted that flow = change in pressure/resistance ($F = \Delta P/R$). Resistance affects airflow much the same as it does blood flow. One factor that affects resistance is **pulmonary compliance**—the distensibility of the lungs, or ease with which they expand. More exactly, compliance means the change in lung volume relative to a given change in transpulmonary pressure. The lungs normally inflate with ease, but compliance can be reduced by degenerative lung diseases that cause pulmonary fibrosis, such as tuberculosis and black lung disease. In such conditions, the thoracic cage expands normally and transpulmonary pressure falls, but the lungs expand relatively little.

Another factor that governs resistance to airflow is the diameter of the bronchioles. Like arterioles, the large number of bronchioles, their small diameter, and their ability to change diameter make bronchioles the primary means of controlling resistance. Their smooth muscle allows for considerable **bronchoconstriction** and **bronchodilation**—changes in diameter that reduce or increase airflow, respectively. Bronchoconstriction is triggered by airborne irritants, cold air, parasympathetic stimulation, or histamine. Many people have died of extreme bronchoconstriction due to asthma or anaphylaxis. Sympathetic nerves and epinephrine stimulate bronchodilation. Epinephrine inhalants were widely used in the past to halt asthma attacks, but they have been replaced by drugs that produce fewer side effects.

Alveolar Surface Tension

Another factor that resists inspiration and promotes expiration is the surface tension of the water in the alveoli and distal bronchioles. Although the alveoli are relatively dry, they have a thin film of water over the epithelium that is necessary for gas exchange, yet creates a potential problem for pulmonary ventilation. Water molecules are attracted to each other by hydrogen bonds, creating surface tension, as we saw in chapter 2. If you have ever tried to separate two wet microscope slides, you have felt how strong surface tension can be. Such a force draws the walls of the alveoli inward toward the lumen. If it went unchecked, the alveoli would collapse with each expiration and would strongly resist reinflation.

The solution to this problem takes us back to the great alveolar cells and their surfactant. A *surfactant* is an agent that disrupts the hydrogen bonds of water and reduces surface tension; soaps and detergents are everyday examples. Pulmonary surfactant spreads over the alveolar epithelium and up the alveolar ducts and smallest bronchioles. As these passages contract during expiration, the surfactant molecules are forced closer together; as the local concentration of surfactant increases, it exerts a stronger effect. Therefore, as alveoli shrink during expiration, surface tension decreases to nearly zero. Thus, there is little tendency for the alveoli to collapse. The importance of this surfactant is especially apparent when it is lacking. Premature infants often have a deficiency of pulmonary surfactant and experience great difficulty breathing (see chapter 29). The resulting *respiratory distress syndrome* is often treated by administering artificial surfactant.

Alveolar Ventilation

Air that actually enters the alveoli becomes available for gas exchange, but not all inhaled air gets that far. About 150 mL of it (typically 1 mL per pound of body weight) fills the conducting division of the airway. Since this air cannot exchange gases with the blood, it is called **dead air,** and the conducting division is called the **anatomic dead space.** In pulmonary diseases, some alveoli may be unable to exchange gases with the blood because they lack blood flow or their pulmonary membrane is thickened by edema. **Physiologic (total) dead space** is the sum of anatomic dead space and any pathological alveolar dead space that may exist. In healthy people, few alveoli are nonfunctional, and the anatomic and physiologic dead spaces are identical.

In a state of relaxation, the bronchioles are constricted by parasympathetic stimulation. This minimizes the dead space so that more of the inhaled air ventilates the alveoli. In a state of arousal, by contrast, the sympathetic nervous system dilates the airway, which increases airflow. The increased airflow outweighs the air that is “wasted” by filling the increased dead space.

If a person inhales 500 mL of air and 150 mL of it is dead air, then 350 mL of air ventilates the alveoli. Multiplying this by the respiratory rate gives the **alveolar ventilation rate (AVR)**—for example, 350 mL/breath × 12 breaths/min = 4,200 mL/min. Of all measures of pulmonary ventilation, this one is most directly relevant to the body’s ability to get oxygen to the tissues and dispose of carbon dioxide.

Nonrespiratory Air Movements

Breathing serves more purposes than ventilating the alveoli. It promotes the flow of blood and lymph from abdominal to thoracic vessels, as described in earlier chapters. Variations in pulmonary ventilation also serve the purposes of speaking, expressing emotion (laughing, crying), yawning, hiccuping, expelling noxious fumes, coughing, sneezing, and expelling abdominal contents. Coughing is induced by irritants in the lower respiratory tract. To cough, we close the glottis and contract the muscles of expiration, producing high pressure in the lower respiratory tract. We then suddenly open the glottis and release an explosive burst of air at speeds over 900 km/hr (600 mi/hr). This drives mucus and foreign matter toward the pharynx and mouth. Sneezing is triggered by irritants in the nasal cavity. Its mechanism is similar to coughing except that the glottis is continually open, the soft palate and tongue block the flow of air while thoracic pressure builds, and then the uvula (the conical projection of the posterior edge of the soft palate) is depressed to direct part of the airstream through the nose. These actions are coordinated by coughing and sneezing centers in the medulla oblongata.

To help expel abdominopelvic contents during urination, defecation, or childbirth, we often consciously or unconsciously use the **Valsalva**[14] **maneuver.** This consists of taking a deep breath, holding it, and then contracting the abdominal muscles, thus using the diaphragm to help increase the pressure in the abdominal cavity.

Measurements of Ventilation

Pulmonary function can be measured by having a subject breathe into a device called a **spirometer,**[15] which recaptures the expired breath and records such variables as the rate and depth of breathing, speed of expiration, and rate of oxygen consumption. Four measurements are called **respiratory volumes: tidal volume, inspiratory reserve**

---

[14] Antonio Maria Valsalva (1666–1723), Italian anatomist

[15] *spiro* = breath + *meter* = measuring device

Table 22.2 Respiratory Volumes and Capacities for an Average Young Adult Male

Measurement	Typical Value	Definition
Respiratory Volumes		
Tidal volume (TV)	500 mL	Amount of air inhaled or exhaled in one respiratory cycle
Inspiratory reserve volume (IRV)	3,000 mL	Amount of air in excess of tidal inspiration that can be inhaled with maximum effort
Expiratory reserve volume (ERV)	1,200 mL	Amount of air in excess of tidal expiration that can be exhaled with maximum effort
Residual volume (RV)	1,300 mL	Amount of air remaining in the lungs after maximum expiration; keeps alveoli inflated between breaths and mixes with fresh air on next inspiration
Respiratory Capacities		
Vital capacity (VC)	4,700 mL	Amount of air that can be exhaled with maximum effort after maximum inspiration (TV + IRV + ERV); used to assess strength of thoracic muscles as well as pulmonary function
Inspiratory capacity (IC)	3,500 mL	Maximum amount of air that can be inhaled after a normal tidal expiration (TV + IRV)
Functional residual capacity (FRC)	2,500 mL	Amount of air remaining in the lungs after a normal tidal expiration (RV + ERV)
Total lung capacity (TLC)	6,000 mL	Maximum amount of air the lungs can contain (RV + VC)

volume, expiratory reserve volume, and **residual volume.** Four others, called **respiratory capacities,** are obtained by adding two or more of the respiratory volumes: **vital capacity, inspiratory capacity, functional residual capacity,** and **total lung capacity.** Definitions and representative values for these are given in table 22.2 and figure 22.14. In general, respiratory volumes and capacities are proportional to body size; consequently, they are generally lower for women than for men.

The measurement of respiratory volumes and capacities is important in assessing the severity of a respiratory disease and monitoring improvement or deterioration in a patient's pulmonary function. **Restrictive disorders** of the respiratory system, such as pulmonary fibrosis, stiffen the lungs and thus reduce compliance and vital capacity. **Obstructive disorders** do not reduce respiratory volumes, but they narrow the airway and interfere with airflow; thus, expiration either requires more effort or is less complete than normal. Airflow is measured by having the subject exhale as rapidly as possible into a spirometer and measuring **forced expiratory volume (FEV)**—the percentage of the vital capacity that can be exhaled in a given time interval. A healthy adult should be able to expel 75% to 85% of the vital capacity in 1.0 second (a value called the $FEV_{1.0}$). Significantly lower values may indicate thoracic muscle weakness or obstruction of the airway by mucus, a tumor, or bronchoconstriction (as in asthma). At home, asthma patients and others can monitor their respiratory function by blowing into a handheld meter that measures **peak flow,** the maximum speed at which they can exhale.

The amount of air inhaled per minute is called the **minute respiratory volume (MRV).** Its primary significance is that the MRV largely determines the alveolar ventilation rate. MRV can be measured directly with a spirometer or obtained by multiplying tidal volume by respiratory rate. For example, if a person has a tidal volume of 500 mL per breath and a rate of 12 breaths per minute, his or her MRV would be 500 × 12 = 6,000 mL/min. During heavy exercise, MRV may be as high as 125 to 170 L/min.This is called **maximum voluntary ventilation (MVV),** formerly called *maximum breathing capacity.*

Patterns of Breathing

Some variations in the rhythm of breathing are defined in table 22.3. You should familiarize yourself with these terms before proceeding further in this chapter, as later discussions assume a working knowledge of these terms.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

5. Name the major muscles and nerves involved in inspiration.
6. Relate the action of the respiratory muscles to Boyle's law.
7. Explain the relevance of compliance and elasticity to pulmonary ventilation, and describe some conditions that reduce compliance and elasticity.
8. Explain how pulmonary surfactant relates to compliance.
9. Define *vital capacity.* Express it in terms of a formula and define each of the variables.

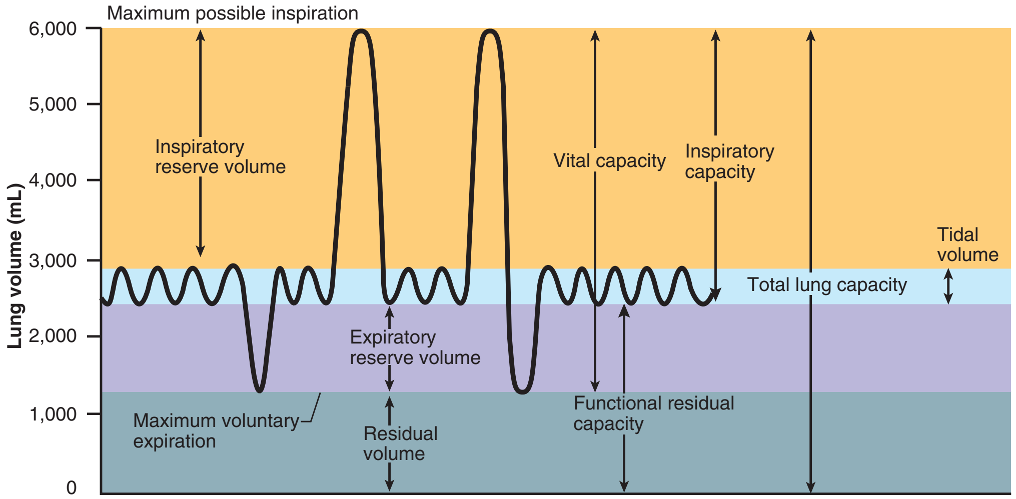


Figure 22.14 **Respiratory Volumes and Capacities.** The wavy line indicates inspiration when it rises and expiration when it falls. Compare table 22.2.

Table 22.3 Clinical Terminology of Ventilation

Apnea (AP-nee-uh)	Temporary cessation of breathing (one or more skipped breaths)
Dyspnea[16] *(DISP-nee-uh)*	Labored, gasping breathing; shortness of breath
Eupnea[17] *(yoop-NEE-uh)*	Normal, relaxed, quiet breathing; typically 500 mL/breath, 12 to 15 breaths/min
Hyperpnea (HY-purp-NEE-uh)	Increased rate and depth of breathing in response to exercise, pain, or other conditions
Hyperventilation	Increased pulmonary ventilation in excess of metabolic demand, frequently associated with anxiety; expels CO_2 faster than it is produced, thus lowering the blood CO_2 concentration and raising the pH
Hypoventilation	Reduced pulmonary ventilation; leads to an increase in blood CO_2 concentration if ventilation is insufficient to expel CO_2 as fast as it is produced
Kussmaul[18] *respiration*	Deep, rapid breathing often induced by acidosis, as in diabetes mellitus
Orthopnea (or-thop-NEE-uh)	Dyspnea that occurs when a person is lying down
Respiratory arrest	Permanent cessation of breathing (unless there is medical intervention)
Tachypnea (tack-ip-NEE-uh)	Accelerated respiration

---

[16] *dys* = difficult, abnormal, painful
[17] *eu* = easy, normal + *pnea* = breathing
[18] Adolph Kussmaul (1822–1902), German physician

Neural Control of Ventilation

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- explain how the brainstem regulates respiration;
- contrast the neural pathways for voluntary and automatic control of the respiratory muscles; and
- describe the stimuli that modify the respiratory rhythm and the pathways that these signals take to the brainstem.

The heartbeat and breathing are the two most conspicuously rhythmic processes in the body. The heart has an internal pacemaker and goes on beating even if all nerves to it are severed. Breathing, by contrast, depends on repetitive stimuli from the brain. There are two reasons for this: (1) Skeletal muscles do not contract without nervous stimulation. (2) Breathing involves the coordinated action of multiple muscles and thus requires a central coordinating mechanism to ensure that they all work together.

This section describes the neural mechanisms that regulate pulmonary ventilation. Neurons in the medulla oblongata and pons provide automatic control of unconscious breathing, whereas neurons in the motor cortex of the cerebrum provide voluntary control.

Control Centers in the Brainstem

The medulla oblongata contains **inspiratory (I) neurons,** which fire during inspiration, and **expiratory (E) neurons,** which fire during forced expiration (but not during eupnea). Fibers from these neurons travel down the spinal cord and synapse with lower motor neurons in the cervical to thoracic regions. From here, nerve fibers travel in the phrenic nerves to the diaphragm and intercostal nerves to the intercostal muscles. No pacemaker neurons have been found that are analogous to the autorhythmic cells of the heart, and the exact mechanism for setting the rhythm of respiration remains unknown despite intensive research.

The medulla has two respiratory nuclei (fig. 22.15). One of them, called the **inspiratory center,** or **dorsal respiratory group (DRG),** is composed primarily of I neurons, which stimulate the muscles of inspiration. The more frequently they fire, the more motor units are recruited and the more deeply you inhale. If they fire longer than usual, each breath is prolonged and the respiratory rate is slower. When they stop firing, elastic recoil of the lungs and thoracic cage produces passive expiration.

The other nucleus is the **expiratory center,** or **ventral respiratory group (VRG).** It has I neurons in its midregion and E neurons at its rostral and caudal ends. It is not involved in eupnea, but its E neurons inhibit the inspiratory center when deeper expiration is needed. Conversely, the inspiratory center inhibits the expiratory center when an unusually deep inspiration is needed.

The pons regulates ventilation by means of a *pneumotaxic center* in the upper pons and an *apneustic* (ap-NEW-stic) *center* in the lower pons. The role of the apneustic center is still unclear, but it seems to prolong inspiration. The **pneumotaxic** (NEW-mo-TAX-ic) **center** sends a continual stream of inhibitory impulses to the inspiratory center of the medulla. When impulse frequency rises, inspiration lasts as little as 0.5 second and the breathing becomes faster and shallower. Conversely, when impulse frequency declines, breathing is slower and deeper, with inspiration lasting as long as 5 seconds.

Think About It

Do you think the fibers from the pneumotaxic center produce EPSPs or IPSPs at their synapses in the inspiratory center? Explain.

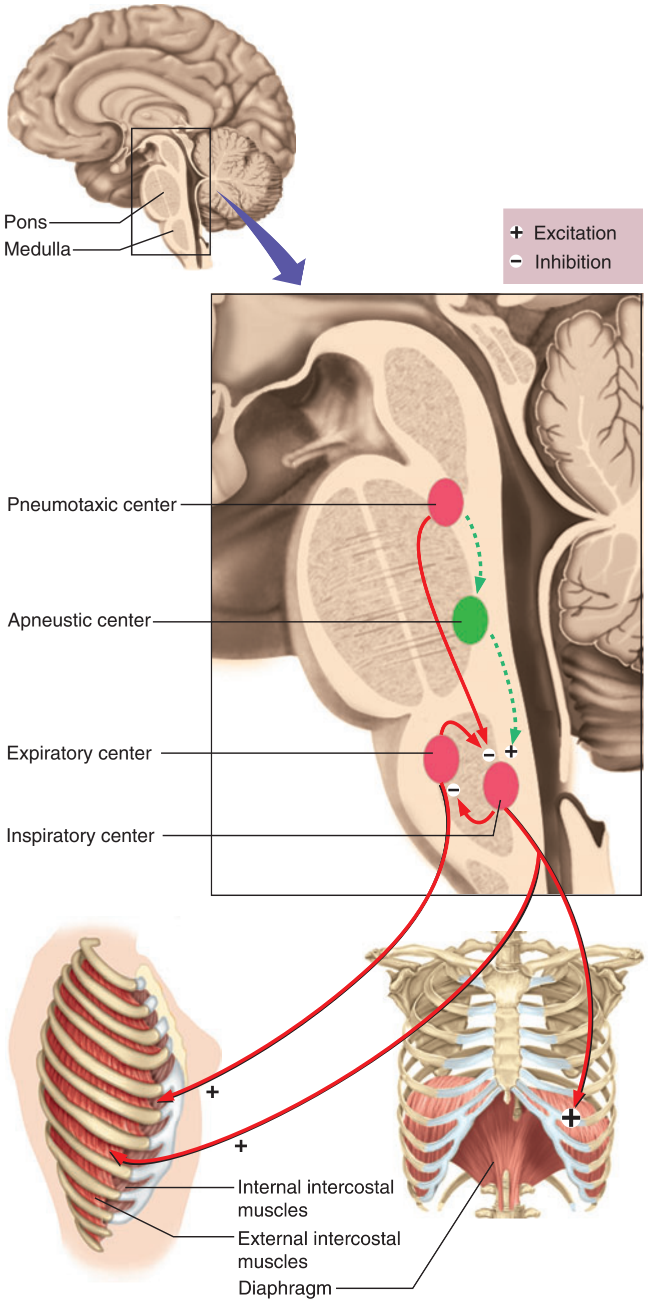


Figure 22.15 **Respiratory Control Centers.** Functions of the apneustic center are hypothetical and its connections are therefore indicated by broken lines. As indicated by the plus and minus signs, the apneustic center stimulates the inspiratory center, while the pneumotaxic center inhibits it. The inspiratory and expiratory centers inhibit each other.

Afferent Connections to the Brainstem

The brainstem respiratory centers receive input from the limbic system, hypothalamus, chemoreceptors, and lungs themselves. Input from the limbic system and hypothalamus allows pain and emotions to affect respiration—for example, in gasping, crying, and laughing. Anxiety often triggers an uncontrollable bout of hyperventilation. This expels CO_2 from the body faster than it is produced. As blood CO_2 levels drop, the pH rises and causes the cerebral arteries to constrict. The brain thus receives less perfusion, and dizziness and fainting may result. Hyperventilation can be brought under control by having a person rebreathe the expired CO_2 from a paper bag.

Chemoreceptors in the brainstem and arteries monitor blood pH, CO_2, and O_2 levels. They transmit signals to the respiratory centers that adjust pulmonary ventilation to keep these variables within homeostatic limits. Chemoreceptors are later discussed more extensively.

The vagus nerves transmit sensory signals from the respiratory system to the inspiratory center. Irritants in the airway, such as smoke, dust, noxious fumes, or mucus, stimulate vagal afferent fibers. The medulla then returns signals that result in bronchoconstriction or coughing. Stretch receptors in the bronchial tree and visceral pleura monitor inflation of the lungs. Excessive inflation triggers the **inflation (Hering–Breuer**[19]**) reflex,** a protective somatic reflex that strongly inhibits the I neurons and stops inspiration. In infants, this may be a normal mechanism of transition from inspiration to expiration, but after infancy it is activated only by extreme stretching of the lungs.

Voluntary Control

Although breathing usually occurs automatically, without our conscious attention, we obviously can hold our breath, take a deep breath, and control ventilation while speaking or singing. This control originates in the motor cortex of the frontal lobe of the cerebrum, which sends impulses down the corticospinal tracts to the respiratory neurons in the spinal cord, bypassing the brainstem respiratory centers.

There are limits to voluntary control. Temperamental children may threaten to hold their breath until they die, but it is impossible to do so. Holding one's breath lowers the O_2 level and raises the CO_2 level of the blood until a *breaking point* is reached where automatic controls override one's will. This forces a person to resume breathing even if he or she has lost consciousness.

Insight 22.2 Clinical Application

Ondine's Curse

In German legend, there was a water nymph named Ondine who took a mortal lover. When he was unfaithful to her, the king of the nymphs put a curse on him that took away his automatic physiological functions. Consequently, he had to remember to take each breath, and he could not go to sleep or he would die of suffocation—which, as exhaustion overtook him, was indeed his fate.

Some people suffer a disorder called *Ondine's curse*, in which the automatic respiratory functions are disabled—usually as a result of brainstem damage from poliomyelitis or as an accident of spinal cord surgery. Victims of Ondine's curse must remember to take each breath and cannot go to sleep without the aid of a mechanical ventilator.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

10. Which of the brainstem respiratory nuclei is (are) indispensable to respiration? What do the other nuclei do?
11. Where do voluntary respiratory commands originate? What pathways do they take to the respiratory muscles?

Gas Exchange and Transport

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- define *partial pressure* and discuss its relationship to a gas mixture such as air;
- contrast the composition of inspired and expired air;
- discuss how partial pressure affects gas transport by the blood;
- describe the mechanisms of transporting O_2 and CO_2;
- describe the factors that govern gas exchange in the lungs and systemic capillaries; and
- explain how gas exchange is adjusted to the metabolic needs of different tissues.

We now consider the stages in which oxygen is obtained from inspired air and delivered to the tissues, while carbon dioxide is removed from the tissues and released into the expired air. First, however, it is necessary to understand the composition of air and the behavior of gases in contact with water.

Composition of Air

Air is a mixture of gases, each of which contributes a share, called its **partial pressure,** to the total atmospheric pressure (table 22.4). Partial pressure is abbreviated P followed

Chapter 22

---

[19] Heinrich Ewald Hering (1866–1948), German physiologist; Josef Breuer (1842–1925), Austrian physician

by the formula of the gas. The partial pressure of nitrogen is P_{N_2}, for example. Nitrogen constitutes about 78.6% of the atmosphere; thus at 1 atm of pressure, $P_{N_2} = 78.6\% \times 760$ mmHg = 597 mmHg. **Dalton's law** states that *the total pressure of a gas mixture is the sum of the partial pressures of the individual gases.* That is, $P_{N_2} + P_{O_2} + P_{H_2O} + P_{CO_2} = 597.0 + 159.0 + 3.7 + 0.3 = 760.0$ mmHg. These partial pressures are important because they determine the rate of diffusion of a gas and therefore strongly affect the rate of gas exchange between the blood and alveolar air.

Alveolar air can be sampled with an apparatus that collects the last 10 mL of expired air. Its gaseous makeup differs from that of the atmosphere because of three influences: (1) the airway humidifies it, (2) the air exchanges O_2 and CO_2 with the blood, and (3) freshly inspired air mixes with residual air left from the previous respiratory cycle. These factors produce the composition shown in table 22.4.

Think About It

Expired air, considered as a whole (not just the last 10 mL), contains about 116 mmHg O_2 and 32 mmHg CO_2. Why do these values differ from the values for alveolar air?

The Air-Water Interface

When air and water are in contact with each other, as in the pulmonary alveolus, gases diffuse down their concentration gradients until the partial pressure of each gas in the air is equal to its partial pressure in the water. If a gas is more abundant in the water than in the air, it diffuses into the air; the smell of chlorine near a swimming pool is evidence of this. If a gas is more abundant in the air, it diffuses into the water.

Henry's law states that *at the air-water interface, for a given temperature, the amount of gas that dissolves in the water is determined by its solubility in water and its partial pressure in the air* (fig. 22.16). Thus, the greater the P_{O_2} in the alveolar air, the more O_2 the blood picks up. And, since the blood arriving at an alveolus has a higher P_{CO_2} than air, the blood releases CO_2 into the air. At the alveolus, the blood is said to *unload* CO_2 and *load* O_2. Each gas in a mixture behaves independently; the diffusion of one gas does not influence the diffusion of another.

Table 22.4 Composition of Inspired (atmospheric) and Alveolar Air

Gas	Inspired Air*		Alveolar Air	
N_2	78.62%	597.0 mmHg	74.9%	569.0 mmHg
O_2	20.84%	159.0 mmHg	13.6%	104.0 mmHg
H_2O	0.50%	3.7 mmHg	6.2%	47.0 mmHg
CO_2	0.04%	0.3 mmHg	5.3%	40.0 mmHg
Total	100.00%	760.0 mmHg	100.0%	760.0 mmHg

*Typical values for a cool clear day; values vary with temperature and humidity. Other gases present in small amounts are disregarded.

Alveolar Gas Exchange

Alveolar gas exchange is the process of O_2 loading and CO_2 unloading in the lungs. Since both processes depend on erythrocytes (RBCs), their efficiency depends on how long an RBC spends in an alveolar capillary compared to how long it takes for O_2 and CO_2 to reach equilibrium concentrations in the capillary blood. An RBC passes through an alveolar capillary in about 0.75 second at rest and 0.3 sec-

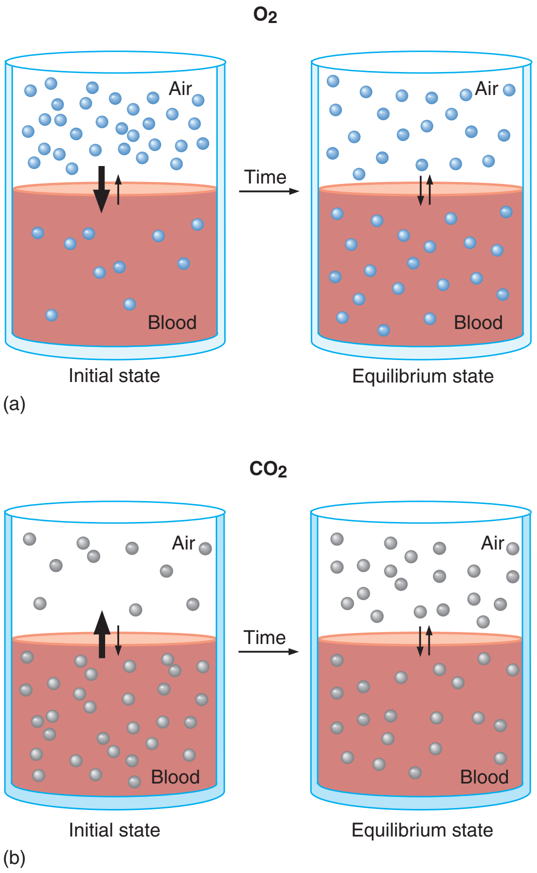


Figure 22.16 **Henry's Law and Its Relationship to Alveolar Gas Exchange.** (*a*) The P_{O_2} of alveolar air is initially higher than the P_{O_2} of the blood arriving at an alveolus. Oxygen diffuses into the blood until the two are in equilibrium. (*b*) The P_{CO_2} of the arriving blood is initially higher than the P_{CO_2} of alveolar air. Carbon dioxide diffuses into the alveolus until the two are in equilibrium. It takes about 0.25 second for both gases to reach equilibrium.

ond during vigorous exercise, when the blood is flowing faster. But it takes only 0.25 second for the gases to equilibrate, so even at the fastest blood flow, an RBC spends enough time in a capillary to load as much O_2 and unload as much CO_2 as it possibly can.

The following factors especially affect the efficiency of alveolar gas exchange:

- **Concentration gradients of the gases.** The P_{O_2} is about 104 mmHg in the alveolar air and 40 mmHg in the blood arriving at an alveolus. Oxygen therefore diffuses from the air into the blood, where it reaches a P_{O_2} of 104 mmHg. Before the blood leaves the lung, however, this drops to about 95 mmHg because blood in the pulmonary veins receives some oxygen-poor blood from the bronchial veins by way of anastomoses.

  The P_{CO_2} is about 46 mmHg in the blood arriving at the alveolus and 40 mmHg in the alveolar air. Carbon dioxide therefore diffuses from the blood to the alveoli. These changes are summarized here and at the top of figure 22.17:

Blood Entering Lungs		**Blood Leaving Lungs**	
P_{O_2}	40 mmHg	P_{O_2}	95 mmHg
P_{CO_2}	46 mmHg	P_{CO_2}	40 mmHg

  These gradients differ under special circumstances such as high altitude and *hyperbaric oxygen therapy* (treatment with oxygen at greater than 1 atm of pressure) (fig. 22.18). At high altitudes, the partial pressures of all atmospheric gases are lower. Atmospheric P_{O_2}, for example, is 159 mmHg at sea level and 110 mmHg at 3,000 m (10,000 ft). The O_2 gradient from air to blood is proportionately less, and as we can predict from Henry's law, less O_2 diffuses into the blood. In a hyperbaric oxygen chamber, by contrast, a patient is exposed to 3 to 4 atm of oxygen to treat such conditions as gangrene (to kill anaerobic bacteria) and carbon monoxide poisoning (to displace the carbon monoxide from hemoglobin). The P_{O_2} ranges between 2,300 and 3,000 mmHg. Thus, there is a very steep gradient of P_{O_2} from alveolus to blood and diffusion into the blood is accelerated.

- **Solubility of the gases.** Gases differ in their ability to dissolve in water. Carbon dioxide is about 20 times as soluble as oxygen, and oxygen is about twice as soluble as nitrogen. Even though the concentration gradient of O_2 is much greater than that of CO_2 across the respiratory membrane, equal amounts of the two gases are exchanged because CO_2 is so much more soluble and diffuses more rapidly.

- **Membrane thickness.** The respiratory membrane between the blood and alveolar air is only 0.5 μm thick in most places—much less than the 7 to 8 μm diameter of a single RBC. Thus, it presents little obstacle to diffusion (fig. 22.19*a*). In such heart conditions as left ventricular failure, however, blood pressure backs up into the lungs and promotes capillary filtration into the connective tissues, causing the respiratory membranes to become edematous and thickened (fig. 22.19*b*). The gases have farther to travel between blood and air and cannot equilibrate fast enough to keep pace with blood flow. Under these circumstances, blood leaving the lungs has an unusually high P_{CO_2} and low P_{O_2}.

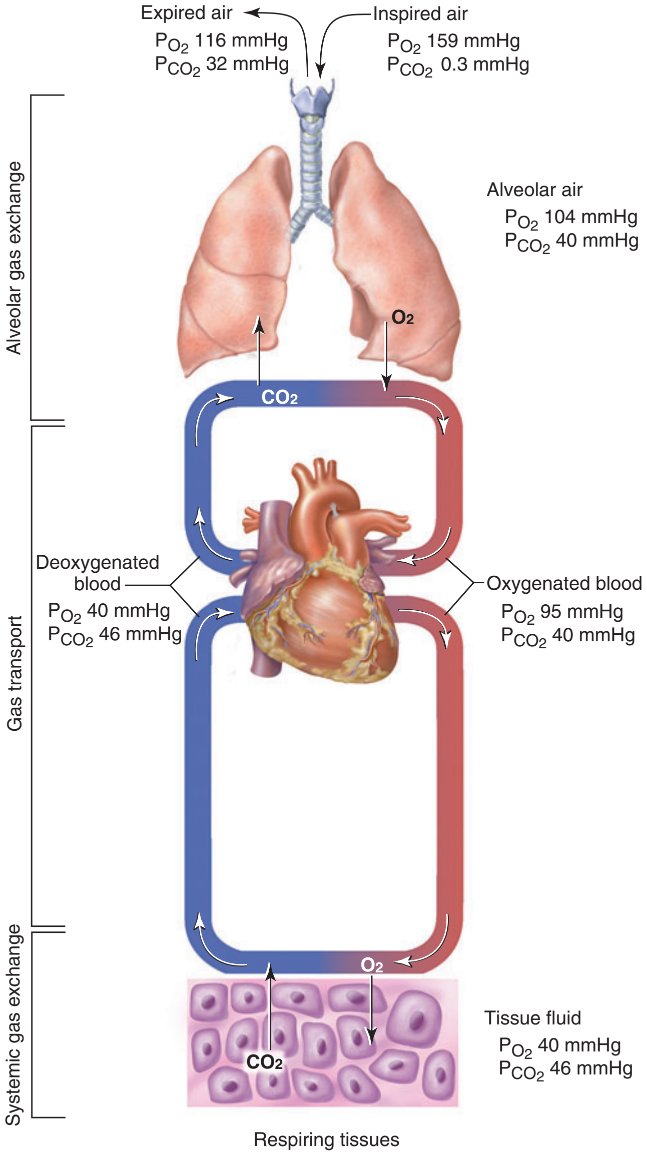


Figure 22.17 Changes in P_{O_2} and P_{CO_2} Along the Circulatory Route. Trace the partial pressure of oxygen from inspired air to expired air and explain each change in P_{O_2} along the way. Do the same for P_{CO_2}.

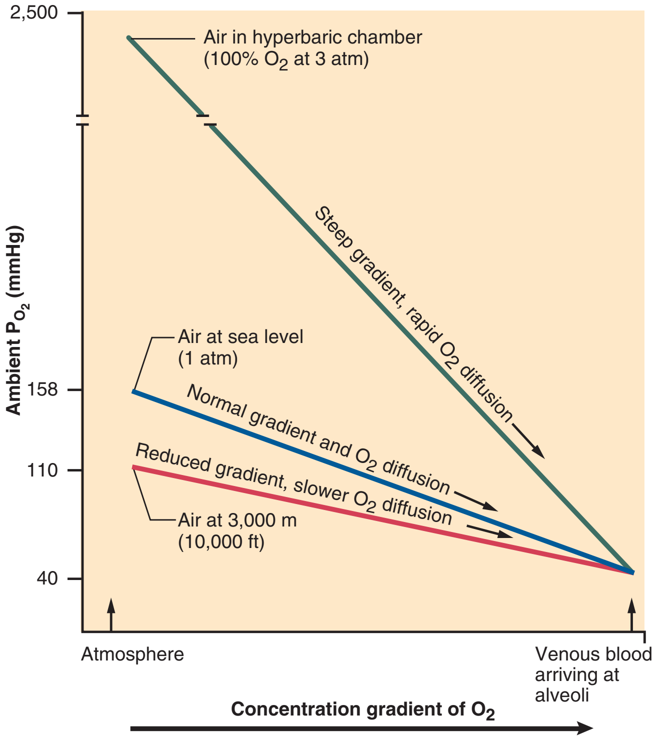


Figure 22.18 **Alveolar Oxygen Loading in Relationship to Concentration Gradient.** The rate of loading depends on the steepness of the gradient from alveolar air to the venous blood arriving at the alveolar capillaries. Compared to the oxygen gradient at sea level (*blue line*), the gradient is less steep at high altitude (*red line*) because the P_{O_2} of the atmosphere is lower. Thus oxygen loading of the pulmonary blood is slower. In a hyperbaric chamber with 100% oxygen, the gradient from air to blood is very steep (*green line*) and oxygen loading is correspondingly rapid. This is an illustration of Henry's law and has important effects in diving, aviation, mountain climbing, and oxygen therapy.

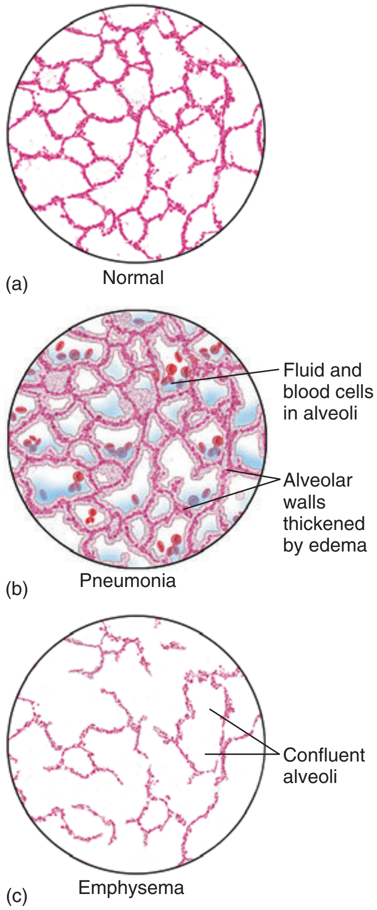

(a)
Normal
Fluid and blood cells in alveoli
Alveolar walls thickened by edema
(b)
Pneumonia
Confluent alveoli
(c)
Emphysema

Figure 22.19 **Pulmonary Alveoli in Health and Disease.** (*a*) In a healthy lung, the alveoli are small and have thin respiratory membranes. (*b*) In pneumonia, the respiratory membranes (alveolar walls) are thick with edema, and the alveoli contain fluid and blood cells. (*c*) In emphysema, alveolar membranes break down and neighboring alveoli join to form larger, fewer alveoli with less total surface area.

- **Membrane area.** In good health, each lung has about 70 m^2 of respiratory membrane available for gas exchange. Since the alveolar capillaries contain a total of only 100 mL of blood at any one time, this blood is spread very thinly. Several pulmonary diseases, however, decrease the alveolar surface area and thus lead to low blood P_{O_2}—for example, emphysema (fig. 22.19*c*), lung cancer, and tuberculosis.
- **Ventilation-perfusion coupling.** Gas exchange not only requires good ventilation of the alveolus but also good perfusion of its capillaries. As a whole, the lungs have a *ventilation-perfusion ratio* of about 0.8—a flow of 4.2 L of air and 5.5 L of blood per minute (at rest). The ratio is somewhat higher in the apex of the lung and lower in the base because more blood is drawn toward the base by gravity. **Ventilation-perfusion coupling** is the ability to match ventilation and perfusion to each other (fig. 22.20). If part of a lung is poorly ventilated because of tissue destruction or airway obstruction, there is little point in directing much blood there. This blood would leave the lung carrying less oxygen than it should. But poor ventilation causes local constriction of the pulmonary arteries, reducing blood flow to that area and redirecting this blood to better ventilated alveoli. Good ventilation, by contrast, dilates the arteries and increases perfusion so that most blood is directed to regions of the lung where it can pick up the most oxygen. This is opposite from the reactions of systemic arteries, where hypoxia causes vasodilation so that blood flow to a tissue will increase and reverse the hypoxia.

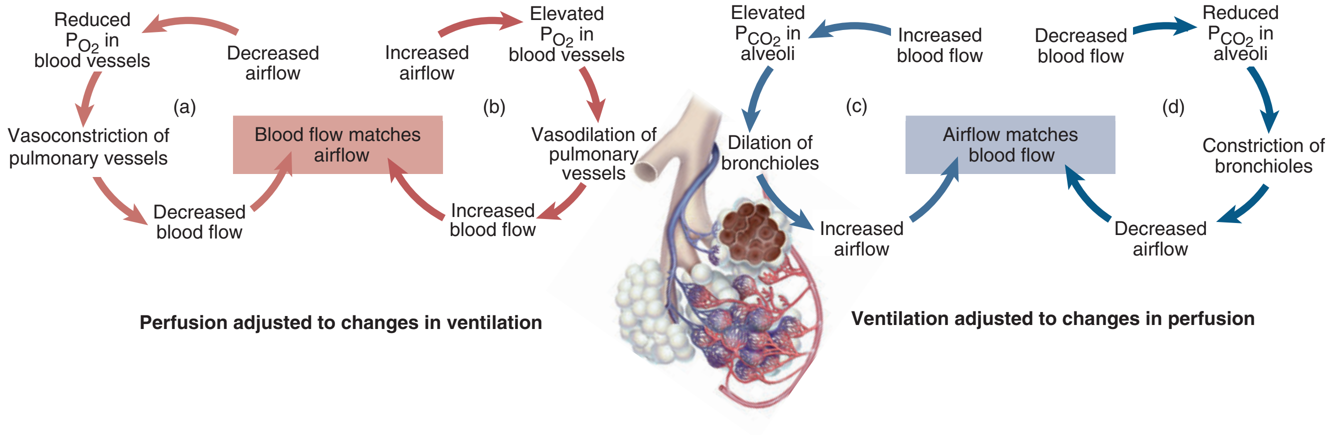

Reduced P_{O_2} in blood vessels
Decreased airflow
Vasoconstriction of pulmonary vessels
(a)
Blood flow matches airflow
Decreased blood flow
Increased airflow
Elevated P_{O_2} in blood vessels
(b)
Vasodilation of pulmonary vessels
Increased blood flow
Elevated P_{CO_2} in alveoli
Increased blood flow
Dilation of bronchioles
(c)
Airflow matches blood flow
Increased airflow
Decreased blood flow
Reduced P_{CO_2} in alveoli
(d)
Constriction of bronchioles
Decreased airflow
Perfusion adjusted to changes in ventilation
Ventilation adjusted to changes in perfusion

Figure 22.20 **Negative Feedback Loops in the Adjustment of Ventilation-Perfusion Ratio.** (*a*) Effect of reduced ventilation on perfusion. (*b*) Effect of increased ventilation on perfusion. (*c*) Effect of increased perfusion on ventilation. (*d*) Effect of reduced perfusion on ventilation.

Ventilation is also adjustable. Poor ventilation causes local CO_2 accumulation, which stimulates local bronchodilation and improves airflow. Low P_{CO_2} causes local bronchoconstriction.

Gas Transport

Gas transport is the process of carrying gases from the alveoli to the systemic tissues and vice versa. This section explains how the blood loads and transports oxygen and carbon dioxide.

Oxygen

The concentration of oxygen in arterial blood, by volume, is about 20 mL/dL. About 98.5% of this is bound to hemoglobin and 1.5% is dissolved in the blood plasma. Hemoglobin consists of four protein (globin) chains, each with one heme group (see fig. 18.10, p. 690). Each heme group can bind 1 O_2 to the ferrous ion at its center; thus, one hemoglobin molecule can carry up to 4 O_2. If even one molecule of O_2 is bound to hemoglobin, the compound is called **oxyhemoglobin (HbO_2)**, whereas hemoglobin with no oxygen bound to it is **deoxyhemoglobin (HHb).** When hemoglobin is 100% saturated, every molecule of it carries 4 O_2; if it is 75% saturated, there is an average of 3 O_2 per hemoglobin molecule; if it is 50% saturated, there is an average of 2 O_2 per hemoglobin; and so forth. The poisonous effect of carbon monoxide stems from its competition for the O_2 binding site (see insight 22.3).

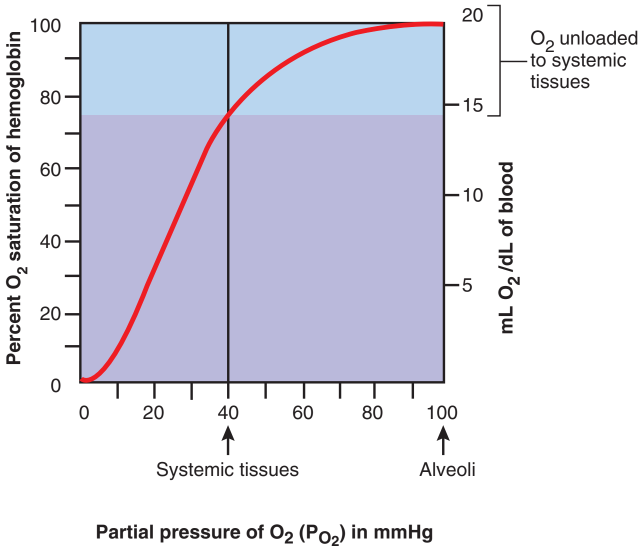


Figure 22.21 **The Oxyhemoglobin Dissociation Curve.** This curve shows the relative amount of hemoglobin that is saturated with oxygen (*y*-axis) as a function of ambient (surrounding) oxygen concentration (*x*-axis). As it passes through the alveolar capillaries where the P_{O_2} is high, hemoglobin becomes saturated with oxygen. As it passes through the systemic capillaries where the P_{O_2} is low, it typically gives up about 22% of its oxygen (*color bar at top of graph*).

What would be the approximate utilization coefficient if the systemic tissues had a P_{O_2} of 20 mmHg?

The relationship between hemoglobin saturation and P_{O_2} is shown by an *oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve* (fig. 22.21). As you can see, it is not a simple linear relationship. At low P_{O_2}, the curve rises slowly; then there is a rapid increase in oxygen loading as P_{O_2} rises further; finally, at high P_{O_2}, the curve levels off as the hemoglobin approaches 100% saturation. This reflects the way hemoglobin loads oxygen. When the first heme group binds a molecule of O_2, hemoglobin changes shape in a way that facilitates uptake of the second O_2 by another heme group. This, in turn, promotes the uptake of the third and then the fourth O_2—hence the rapidly rising midportion of the curve.

Think About It

Is oxygen loading a positive feedback process or a negative feedback process? Explain.

Insight 22.3 Clinical Application

Carbon Monoxide Poisoning

The lethal effect of carbon monoxide (CO) is well known. This colorless, odorless gas occurs in cigarette smoke, engine exhaust, and fumes from furnaces and space heaters. It binds to the ferrous ion of hemoglobin to form *carboxyhemoglobin (HbCO)*. Thus, it competes with oxygen for the same binding site. Not only that, but it binds 210 times as tightly as oxygen. Thus, CO tends to tie up hemoglobin for a long time. Less than 1.5% of the hemoglobin is occupied by carbon monoxide in most nonsmokers, but this figure rises to as much as 3% in residents of heavily polluted cities and 10% in heavy smokers. An atmospheric concentration of 0.1% CO, as in a closed garage, is enough to bind 50% of a person's hemoglobin, and an atmospheric concentration of 0.2% is quickly lethal.

Carbon Dioxide

Carbon dioxide is transported in three forms—as carbonic acid, carbamino compounds, and dissolved gas:

1. About 90% of the CO_2 is hydrated (reacts with water) to form **carbonic acid,** which then dissociates into bicarbonate and hydrogen ions:

   $$CO_2 + H_2O \rightarrow H_2CO_3 \rightarrow HCO_3^- + H^+$$

   More will be said about this reaction shortly.
2. About 5% binds to the amino groups of plasma proteins and hemoglobin to form **carbamino compounds**—chiefly, **carbaminohemoglobin ($HbCO_2$)**. The reaction with hemoglobin can be symbolized $Hb + CO_2 \rightarrow HbCO_2$. Carbon dioxide does not compete with oxygen because CO_2 and O_2 bind to different sites on the hemoglobin molecule—oxygen to the heme moiety and CO_2 to the polypeptide chains. Hemoglobin can therefore transport both O_2 and CO_2 simultaneously. As we will see, however, each gas somewhat inhibits transport of the other.
3. The remaining 5% of the CO_2 is carried in the blood as dissolved gas, like the CO_2 in soda pop.

The relative amounts of CO_2 exchanged between the blood and alveolar air differ from the percentages just given. About 70% of the *exchanged* CO_2 comes from carbonic acid, 23% from carbamino compounds, and 7% from the dissolved gas. That is, blood gives up the dissolved CO_2 gas and CO_2 from the carbamino compounds more easily than it gives up the CO_2 in bicarbonate.

Systemic Gas Exchange

Systemic gas exchange is the unloading of O_2 and loading of CO_2 at the systemic capillaries (see fig. 22.17, *bottom,* and fig. 22.22).

Carbon Dioxide Loading

Aerobic respiration produces a molecule of CO_2 for every molecule of O_2 it consumes. The tissue fluid therefore contains a relatively high P_{CO_2} and there is typically a CO_2 gradient of 46 → 40 mmHg from tissue fluid to blood. Consequently, CO_2 diffuses into the bloodstream, where it is carried in the three forms noted (fig. 22.23). Most of it reacts with water to produce bicarbonate (HCO_3^-) and hydrogen (H^+) ions. This reaction occurs slowly in the blood plasma but much faster in the RBCs, where it is catalyzed by the enzyme *carbonic anhydrase.* An antiport called the *chloride-bicarbonate exchanger* then pumps most of the HCO_3^- out of the RBC in exchange for Cl^- from the blood plasma. This exchange is called the **chloride shift.** Most of the H^+ binds to hemoglobin or oxyhemoglobin, which thus buffers the intracellular pH.

Oxygen Unloading

When H^+ binds to oxyhemoglobin (HbO_2), it reduces the affinity of hemoglobin for O_2 and tends to make hemoglobin release it. Oxygen consumption by respiring tissues keeps the P_{O_2} of tissue fluid relatively low, and so there is typically a concentration gradient of 95 → 40 mmHg of oxygen from the arterial blood to the tissue fluid. Thus, the liberated oxygen—along with some that was carried as dissolved gas in the plasma—diffuses from the blood into the tissue fluid.

As blood arrives at the systemic capillaries, its oxygen concentration is about 20 mL/dL and the hemoglobin is about 97% saturated. As it leaves the capillaries of a typical resting tissue, its oxygen concentration is about 15.6 mL/dL and the hemoglobin is about 75% saturated. Thus, it has given up 4.4 mL/dL—about 22% of its oxygen load. This fraction is called the **utilization coefficient.** The oxygen remaining in the blood after it passes through the capillary bed provides a **venous reserve** of oxygen, which can sustain life for 4 to 5 minutes even in the event of respiratory arrest. At rest, the circulatory system releases oxygen to the tissues at an overall rate of about 250 mL/min.

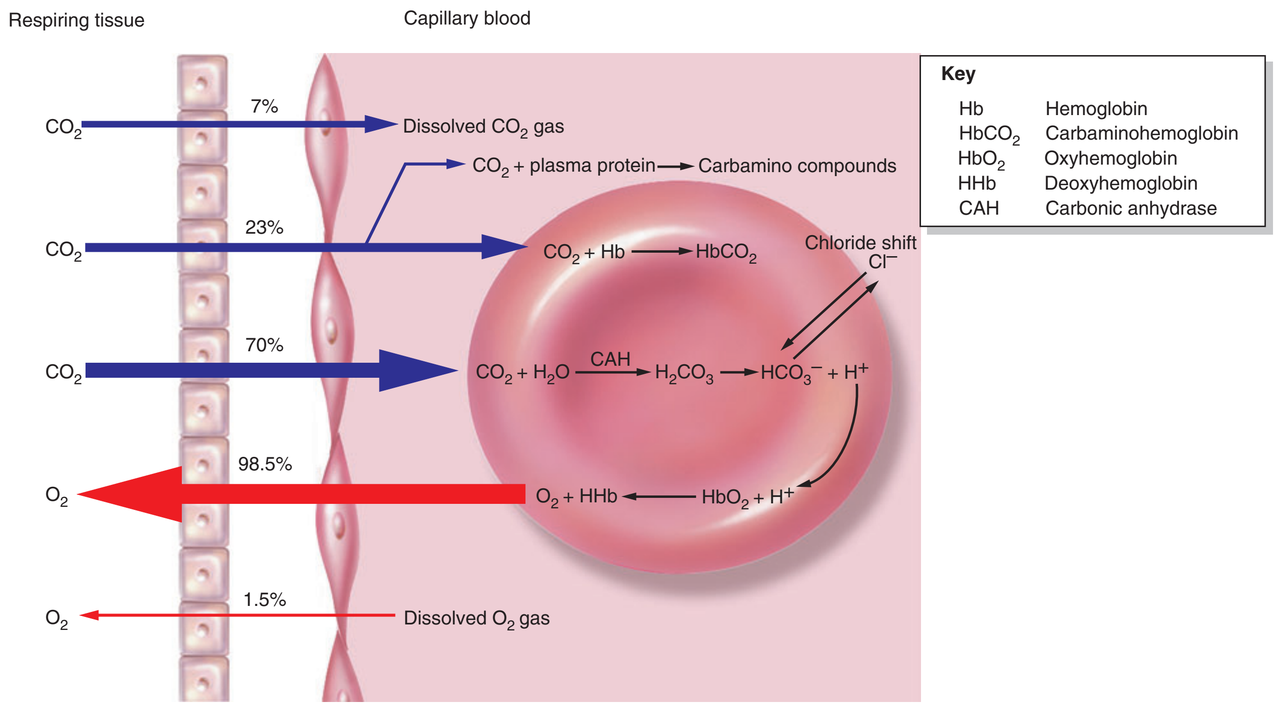

Respiring tissue
Capillary blood
CO_2
7%
Dissolved CO_2 gas
CO_2 + plasma protein → Carbamino compounds
CO_2
23%
CO_2 + Hb → $HbCO_2$
Chloride shift
Cl^-
CO_2
70%
$CO_2 + H_2O \xrightarrow{CAH} H_2CO_3 \rightarrow HCO_3^- + H^+$
O_2
98.5%
O_2 + HHb ← HbO_2 + H^+
O_2
1.5%
Dissolved O_2 gas
Key
Hb Hemoglobin
$HbCO_2$ Carbaminohemoglobin
HbO_2 Oxyhemoglobin
HHb Deoxyhemoglobin
CAH Carbonic anhydrase

Figure 22.22 **Systemic Gas Exchange.** *Blue arrows* show the three mechanisms of CO_2 loading and transport; their thickness represents the relative amounts of CO_2 transported in each of the three forms. *Red arrows* show the two mechanisms of O_2 unloading; their thickness indicates the relative amounts unloaded by each mechanism. Note that CO_2 loading releases hydrogen ions in the erythrocyte, and hydrogen ions promote O_2 unloading.

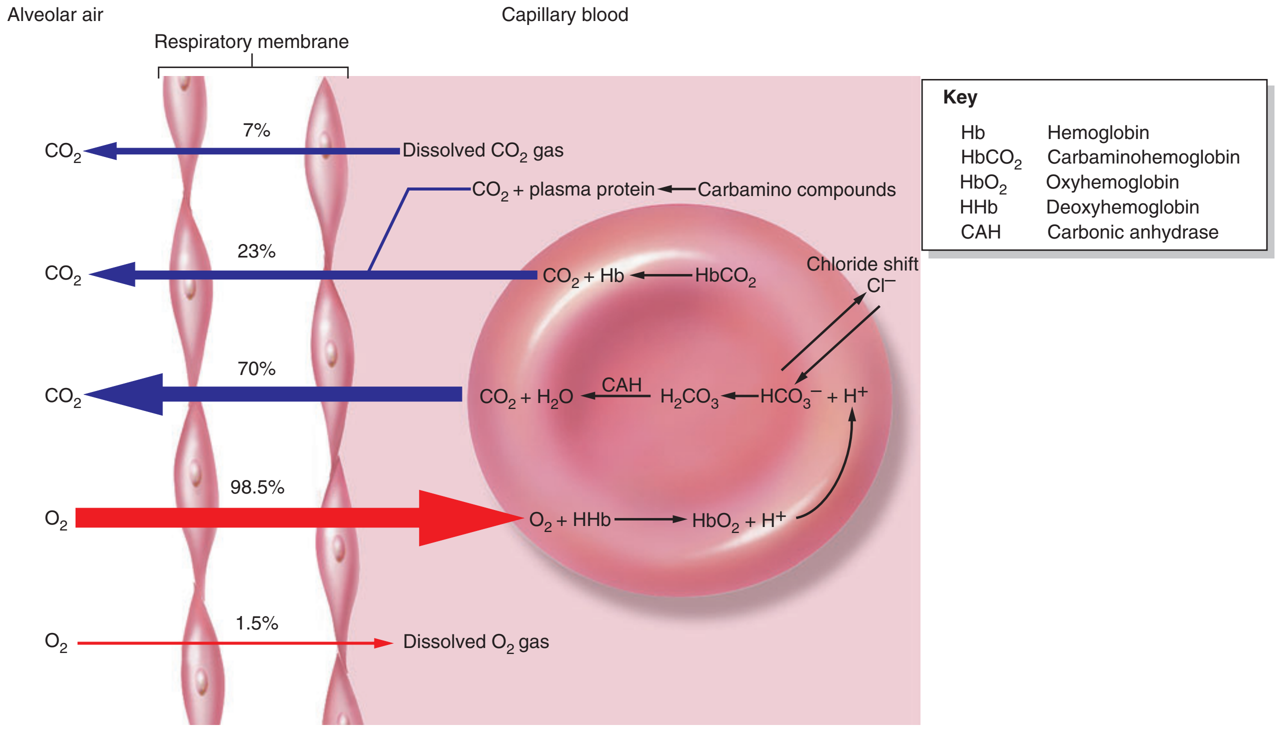

Alveolar air
Respiratory membrane
Capillary blood
CO_2
7%
Dissolved CO_2 gas
CO_2 + plasma protein ← Carbamino compounds
CO_2
23%
CO_2 + Hb ← $HbCO_2$
Chloride shift
Cl^-
CO_2
70%
$CO_2 + H_2O \xleftarrow{CAH} H_2CO_3 \leftarrow HCO_3^- + H^+$
O_2
98.5%
O_2 + HHb → HbO_2 + H^+
O_2
1.5%
Dissolved O_2 gas
Key
Hb Hemoglobin
$HbCO_2$ Carbaminohemoglobin
HbO_2 Oxyhemoglobin
HHb Deoxyhemoglobin
CAH Carbonic anhydrase

Figure 22.23 **Alveolar Gas Exchange.**
In what fundamental way does this differ from the preceding figure? Following alveolar gas exchange, will the blood contain a higher or lower concentration of bicarbonate ions than it did before?

Alveolar Gas Exchange Revisited

The processes illustrated in figure 22.22 make it easier to understand alveolar exchange more fully. As shown in figure 22.23, the reactions that occur in the lungs are essentially the reverse of systemic gas exchange. As hemoglobin loads oxygen, its affinity for H^+ declines. Hydrogen ions dissociate from the hemoglobin and bind with bicarbonate (HCO_3^-) ions transported from the plasma into the RBCs. Chloride ions are transported back out of the RBC (a reverse chloride shift). The reaction of H^+ and HCO_3^- reverses the hydration reaction and generates free CO_2. This diffuses into the alveolus to be exhaled—as does the CO_2 released from carbaminohemoglobin and CO_2 gas that was dissolved in the plasma.

Adjustment to the Metabolic Needs of Individual Tissues

Hemoglobin does not unload the same amount of oxygen to all tissues. Some tissues need more and some less, depending on their state of activity. Hemoglobin responds to such variations and unloads more oxygen to the tissues that need it most. In exercising skeletal muscles, for example, the utilization coefficient may be as high as 80%. Four factors adjust the rate of oxygen unloading to the metabolic rates of different tissues:

1. **Ambient P_{O_2}.** Since an active tissue consumes oxygen rapidly, the P_{O_2} of its tissue fluid remains low. From the oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve (see fig. 22.21), you can see that at a low P_{O_2}, HbO_2 releases more oxygen.
2. **Temperature.** When temperature rises, the oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve shifts to the right (fig. 22.24*a*); in other words, elevated temperature promotes oxygen unloading. Active tissues are warmer than less active ones and thus extract more oxygen from the blood passing through them.
3. **The Bohr effect.** Active tissues also generate extra CO_2, which raises the H^+ concentration and lowers the pH of the blood. Like elevated temperatures, a drop in pH shifts the oxygen-hemoglobin dissociation curve to the right (fig. 22.24*b*) and promotes oxygen unloading. The increase in HbO_2 dissociation in response to low pH is called the **Bohr**[20] **effect.** It is less pronounced at the high P_{O_2} present in the lungs, so pH has relatively little effect on pulmonary oxygen loading. In the systemic capillaries, however, P_{O_2} is lower and the Bohr effect is more pronounced.
4. **BPG.** Erythrocytes have no mitochondria and meet their energy needs solely by anaerobic fermentation. One of their metabolic intermediates is **bisphosphoglycerate (BPG)** (formerly called diphosphoglycerate, DPG), which binds to hemoglobin and promotes oxygen unloading. An elevated body temperature (as in fever) stimulates BPG synthesis, as do thyroxine, growth hormone, testosterone, and epinephrine. All of these hormones thus promote oxygen unloading to the tissues.

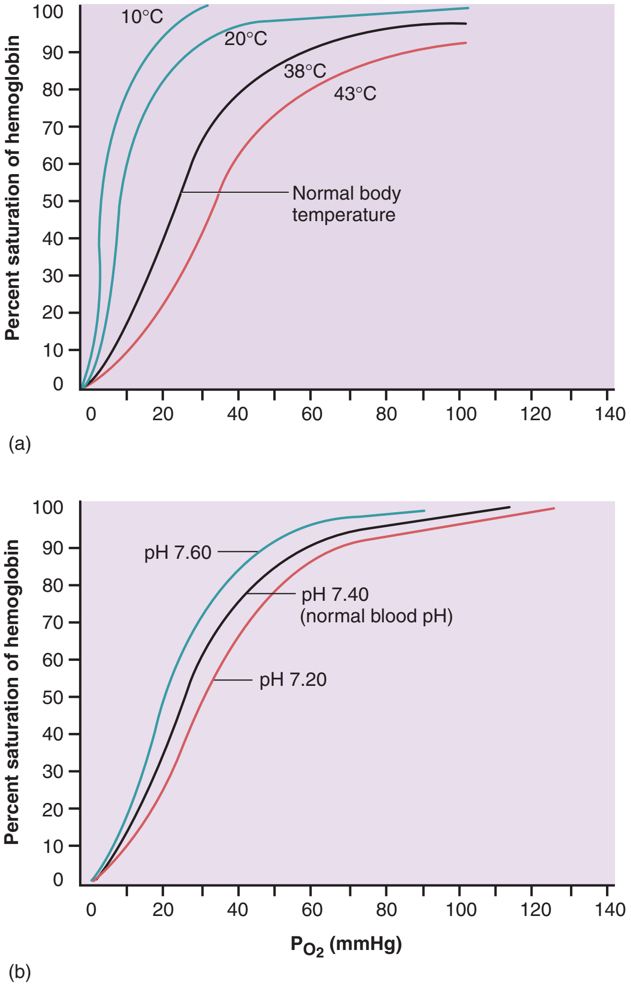


Figure 22.24 Effects of Temperature and pH on Oxyhemoglobin Dissociation. (*a*) For a given P_{O_2}, hemoglobin unloads more oxygen at higher temperatures. (*b*) For a given P_{O_2}, hemoglobin unloads more oxygen at lower pH (the Bohr effect). Both mechanisms cause hemoglobin to release more oxygen to tissues with higher metabolic rates. **Why is it physiologically beneficial to the body that the curves in figure *a* shift to the right as temperature increases?**

The rate of CO_2 loading is also adjusted to varying needs of the tissues. A low level of oxyhemoglobin (HbO_2) enables the blood to transport more CO_2, a phenomenon known as the **Haldane effect.**[21] This occurs for two reasons: (1) HbO_2 does not bind CO_2 as well as deoxyhemoglobin (HHb) does. (2) HHb binds more hydrogen ions than HbO_2 does, and by removing H^+ from solution, HHb shifts the $H_2O + CO_2 \rightarrow HCO_3^- + H^+$ reaction to the right. A high metabolic rate keeps oxyhemoglobin levels relatively low and thus allows more CO_2 to be transported by these two mechanisms.

---

[20] Christian Bohr (1855–1911), Danish physiologist

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

12. Why is the composition of alveolar air different from that of the atmosphere?
13. What four factors affect the efficiency of alveolar gas exchange?
14. Explain how perfusion of a pulmonary lobule changes if it is poorly ventilated. How is the ventilation of a lobule affected by high P_{CO_2}?
15. Describe how oxygen is transported in the blood, and explain why carbon monoxide interferes with this.
16. What are the three ways in which blood transports CO_2?
17. Describe the role of the chloride shift in CO_2 loading.
18. Give two reasons why highly active tissues can extract more oxygen from the blood than less active tissues.

Blood Chemistry and the Respiratory Rhythm

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- explain how blood gases affect the respiratory centers of the brain; and
- explain how the respiratory centers homeostatically control blood gases and pH.

The most potent stimulus for breathing is the pH of the body fluids, followed by P_{CO_2} and, least significant, P_{O_2}. These conditions are monitored by chemoreceptors in two general locations: **peripheral chemoreceptors** located outside the central nervous system (CNS) and **central chemoreceptors** located in the brainstem. The peripheral chemoreceptors are **aortic bodies** and **carotid bodies** located in the aortic arch and near the branch of the carotid arteries (fig. 22.25). (These are not to be confused with the aortic and carotid *sinuses,* which harbor the baroreceptors that monitor blood pressure.) Although very small, the aortic and carotid bodies are richly supplied with capillaries and receive almost 40 times as much blood per gram of tissue as the brain does. The aortic bodies send signals to the medulla by way of the vagus nerves and the carotid bodies transmit by way of the glossopharyngeal nerves. The central chemoreceptors are paired areas close to the surface of the medulla oblongata, ventral to the inspiratory center. They primarily monitor the pH of the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) and the tissue fluid of the brain.

We now consider how hydrogen ions, carbon dioxide, and oxygen individually affect respiration.

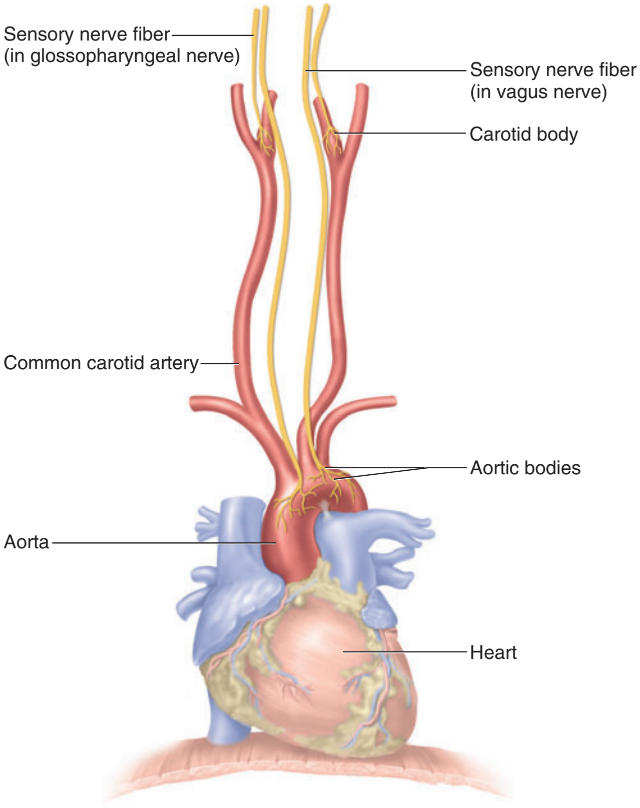

Sensory nerve fiber (in glossopharyngeal nerve)
Sensory nerve fiber (in vagus nerve)
Carotid body
Common carotid artery
Aortic bodies
Aorta
Heart

Figure 22.25 **Nervous Pathways from the Peripheral Chemoreceptors to the Respiratory Centers of the Medulla Oblongata.**

Hydrogen Ions

Ultimately, pulmonary ventilation is adjusted to maintain the pH of the brain. Hydrogen ions cannot freely cross the blood-CSF barrier, but CO_2 does. In the CSF, CO_2 reacts with water and releases H^+. H^+ then strongly stimulates the central chemoreceptors, which transmit signals to the inspiratory center.

Normally the blood has a pH of 7.40 ± 0.05. Deviation from this range is called **acidosis** when the pH falls below 7.35 and **alkalosis** when it rises above 7.45. The normal P_{CO_2} of the blood is 40 ± 3 mmHg. The most common cause of acidosis is **hypercapnia,**[22] a $P_{CO_2} > 43$ mmHg; the most common cause of alkalosis is **hypocapnia,** a $P_{CO_2} <$ 37 mmHg. Whenever there is a CO_2 imbalance in the blood, CO_2 diffusion across the blood-CSF barrier creates a parallel shift in the pH of the CSF. Therefore even though the brain responds primarily to pH changes, it is CO_2 that usually causes those changes. When these pH imbalances are due to a failure of pulmonary ventilation to match the body's rate of CO_2 production, they are called *respiratory acidosis* and *respiratory alkalosis* (see further discussion in chapter 24).

---

[21] John Scott Haldane (1860–1936), British physiologist

The corrective homeostatic response to acidosis is hyperventilation, "blowing off" CO_2 faster than the body produces it. This shifts the carbonic acid reaction to the left:

$$CO_2 + H_2O \leftarrow H_2CO_3 \leftarrow HCO_3^- + H^+$$

The CO_2 on the left is expired in the breath. The H^+ on the right is consumed as this reaction proceeds toward the left, and as H^+ concentration declines, the pH rises.

The corrective response to alkalosis is hypoventilation, which allows the body to produce CO_2 faster than it exhales it. Hypoventilation shifts the reaction to the right, raises the H^+ concentration, and lowers the pH to normal:

$$CO_2 + H_2O \rightarrow H_2CO_3 \rightarrow HCO_3^- + H^+$$

Although pH changes usually result from P_{CO_2} changes, they can have other causes. In diabetes mellitus, for example, fat oxidation releases acidic ketone bodies, causing an abnormally low pH called *ketoacidosis* (see chapter 17). Ketoacidosis tends to induce a form of dyspnea called *Kussmaul respiration* (see table 22.3). Hyperventilation cannot reduce the level of ketone bodies in the blood, but by blowing off CO_2, it reduces the concentration of CO_2-generated H^+ and compensates to some degree for the H^+ released by the ketone bodies.

Carbon Dioxide

Although the arterial P_{CO_2} has a strong influence on respiration, we have seen that it is mostly an indirect one, mediated through its effects on the pH of the CSF. Yet CO_2 has some effect even when pH remains stable. At the beginning of exercise, the rising blood CO_2 level may directly stimulate the peripheral chemoreceptors and trigger an increase in ventilation more quickly than the central chemoreceptors do.

Oxygen

Oxygen concentration usually has little effect on respiration. Even in eupnea, the hemoglobin is 97% saturated with O_2; therefore, increased ventilation cannot add very much. Only if the arterial P_{O_2} drops below 60 mmHg does it significantly affect ventilation, and such a low P_{O_2} seldom occurs even in prolonged holding of the breath. A moderate drop in P_{O_2} does stimulate the peripheral chemoreceptors, but another effect overrides this: as the level of HbO_2 falls, hemoglobin binds more hydrogen ions (see fig. 22.22). This raises the blood pH, which indirectly inhibits respiration. Only at a $P_{O_2} < 60$ mmHg does the stimulatory effect of hypoxemia override the inhibitory effect of the pH increase. Long-term hypoxemia can lead to a condition called **hypoxic drive,** in which respiration is driven more by the low P_{O_2} than by CO_2 or pH. This occurs in situations such as emphysema and pneumonia, which interfere with alveolar gas exchange, and in mountain climbing of at least 2 or 3 days' duration.

In summary, the main chemical stimulus to pulmonary ventilation is the H^+ in the CSF and tissue fluid of the brain. These hydrogen ions arise mainly from CO_2 diffusing into the CSF and brain and generating H^+ through the carbonic acid reaction. Therefore the P_{CO_2} of the arterial blood is an important driving force in respiration, even though its action on the chemoreceptors is indirect. Ventilation is adjusted to maintain arterial pH at about 7.40 and arterial P_{CO_2} at about 40 mmHg. This automatically ensures that the blood is at least 97% saturated with O_2 as well. Under ordinary circumstances, arterial P_{O_2} has relatively little effect on respiration. When it drops below 60 mmHg, however, it excites the peripheral chemoreceptors and stimulates an increase in ventilation. This can be significant at high altitudes and in certain lung diseases.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

19. Describe the locations of the chemoreceptors that monitor blood pH and gas concentrations.
20. Define *hypocapnia* and *hypercapnia.* Name the pH imbalances that result from these conditions and explain the relationship between P_{CO_2} and pH.
21. Explain how variations in pulmonary ventilation can correct pH imbalances.

Respiratory Disorders

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the forms and effects of oxygen deficiency and oxygen excess;
- describe the chronic obstructive pulmonary diseases and their consequences; and
- explain how lung cancer begins, progresses, and exerts its lethal effects.

---

[22] *capn* = smoke

The delicate lungs are exposed to a wide variety of inhaled pathogens and debris; thus, it is not surprising that they are prone to a host of diseases. Several already have been mentioned in this chapter.

Oxygen Imbalances

Hypoxia, discussed in previous chapters, is a deficiency of oxygen in a tissue or the inability to use oxygen. It is not a respiratory disease in itself but is often a consequence of respiratory diseases. Hypoxia is classified according to cause:

- **Hypoxemic hypoxia,** a state of low arterial P_{O_2}, is usually due to inadequate pulmonary gas exchange. Some of its root causes include atmospheric deficiency of oxygen at high altitudes; impaired ventilation, as in drowning; aspiration of foreign matter; respiratory arrest; and the degenerative lung diseases discussed shortly. It also occurs in carbon monoxide poisoning, which prevents hemoglobin from transporting oxygen.
- **Ischemic hypoxia** results from inadequate circulation of the blood, as in congestive heart failure.
- **Anemic hypoxia** is due to anemia and the resulting inability of the blood to carry adequate oxygen.
- **Histotoxic hypoxia** occurs when a metabolic poison such as cyanide prevents the tissues from using the oxygen delivered to them.

Hypoxia is often marked by **cyanosis,** blueness of the skin. Whatever its cause, the primary effect of hypoxia is the necrosis of oxygen-starved tissues. This is especially critical in organs with the highest metabolic demands, such as the brain, heart, and kidneys.

An oxygen excess is also dangerous. You can safely breathe 100% oxygen at 1 atm for a few hours, but **oxygen toxicity** rapidly develops when pure oxygen is breathed at 2.5 atm or greater. Excess oxygen generates hydrogen peroxide and free radicals that destroy enzymes and damage nervous tissue; thus it can lead to seizures, coma, and death. This is why scuba divers breathe a mixture of oxygen and nitrogen rather than pure compressed oxygen (see insight 22.4, p. 871). Hyperbaric oxygen was formerly used to treat premature infants for respiratory distress syndrome, but it caused retinal deterioration and blinded many infants before the practice was discontinued.

Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Diseases

Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) refers to any disorder in which there is a long-term obstruction of airflow and a substantial reduction in pulmonary ventilation. The major COPDs are *asthma, chronic bronchitis,* and *emphysema.* In asthma, an allergen triggers the release of histamine and other inflammatory chemicals that cause intense bronchoconstriction and sometimes suffocation (see p. 828). The other COPDs are almost always caused by cigarette smoking but occasionally result from air pollution or occupational exposure to airborne irritants.

Beginning smokers exhibit inflammation and hyperplasia of the bronchial mucosa. In **chronic bronchitis,** the cilia are immobilized and reduced in number, while goblet cells enlarge and produce excess mucus. With extra mucus and fewer cilia to dislodge it, smokers develop a chronic cough that brings up **sputum** (SPEW-tum), a mixture of mucus and cellular debris. Thick, stagnant mucus in the respiratory tract provides a growth medium for bacteria, while cigarette smoke incapacitates the alveolar macrophages and reduces defense mechanisms against respiratory infections. Smokers therefore develop chronic infection and bronchial inflammation, with symptoms that include dyspnea, hypoxia, cyanosis, and attacks of coughing.

In **emphysema**[23] (EM-fih-SEE-muh), alveolar walls break down and the lung exhibits larger but fewer alveoli (see fig. 22.19*c*). Thus, there is much less respiratory membrane available for gas exchange. The lungs become fibrotic and less elastic. The air passages open adequately during inspiration, but they tend to collapse and obstruct the outflow of air. Air therefore becomes trapped in the lungs, and over a period of time a person becomes barrel-chested. The overly stretched thoracic muscles contract weakly, which further contributes to the difficulty of expiration. People with emphysema become exhausted because they expend three to four times the normal amount of energy just to breathe. Even slight physical exertion, such as walking across a room, can cause severe shortness of breath.

Think About It

Explain how the length-tension relationship of skeletal muscle (see chapter 11) accounts for the weakness of the respiratory muscles in emphysema.

All of the COPDs tend to reduce pulmonary compliance and vital capacity and cause hypoxemia, hypercapnia, and respiratory acidosis. Hypoxemia stimulates the kidneys to secrete erythropoietin, which leads to accelerated erythrocyte production and polycythemia, as discussed in chapter 18. COPD also leads to **cor pulmonale**—hypertrophy and potential failure of the right heart due to obstruction of the pulmonary circulation (see chapter 19).

Smoking and Lung Cancer

Lung cancer (fig. 22.26) accounts for more deaths than any other form of cancer. The most important cause of lung cancer is cigarette smoking, distantly followed by air

---

[23] *emphys* = inflamed

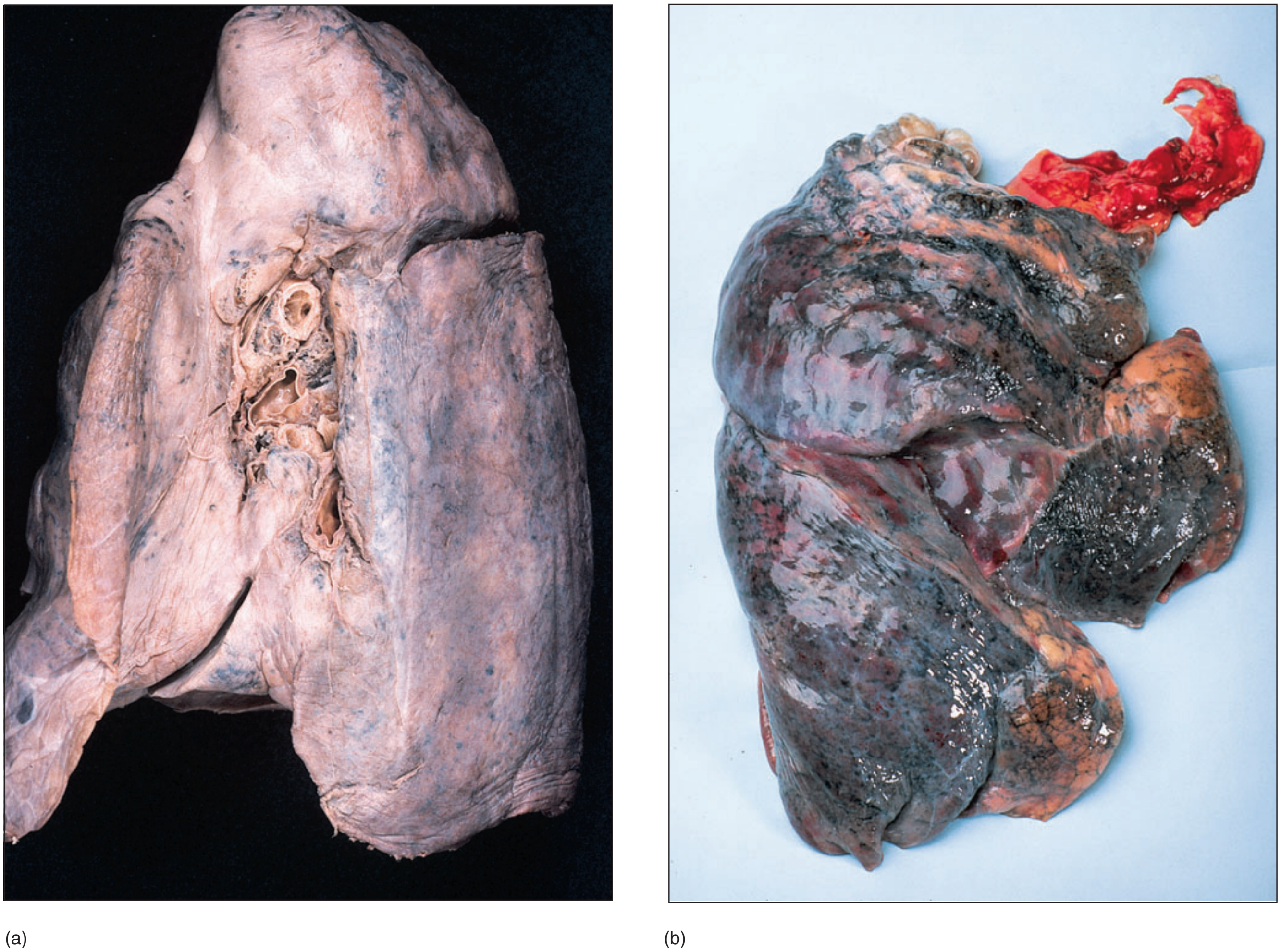


Figure 22.26 **Effect of Smoking.** (*a*) A healthy adult lung. (*b*) A smoker's lung with carcinoma.

pollution. Cigarette smoke contains at least 15 carcinogenic compounds. Lung cancer commonly follows or accompanies COPD.

There are three forms of lung cancer, the most common of which is **squamous-cell carcinoma.** This form begins with the multiplication of basal cells of the bronchial epithelium and transformation of the ciliated pseudostratified columnar epithelium into the stratified squamous type. As the dividing epithelial cells invade the underlying tissues of the bronchial wall, the bronchus develops bleeding lesions. Dense swirled masses of keratin appear in the lung parenchyma and replace functional respiratory tissue. A second form of lung cancer, nearly as common, is **adenocarcinoma,**[24] which originates in mucous glands of the lamina propria. The least common (10%–20% of malignancies) but most dangerous form is **small-cell (oat-cell) carcinoma,** named for clusters of cells that resemble oat grains. This originates in the primary bronchi but invades the mediastinum and metastasizes quickly to other organs.

Over 90% of lung tumors originate in the mucous membranes of the large bronchi. As a tumor invades the bronchial wall and grows around it, it compresses the airway and may cause atelectasis (collapse) of more distal parts of the lung. Growth of the tumor produces a cough, but coughing is such an everyday occurrence among smokers it seldom causes much alarm. Often, the first sign of serious trouble is the coughing up of blood. Lung cancer metastasizes so rapidly that it has usually spread to other organs by the time it is diagnosed. Common sites of

---

[24] *adeno* = gland + *carcino* = cancer + *oma* = tumor

Table 22.5 Some Disorders of the Respiratory System

Acute rhinitis	The common cold. Caused by many types of viruses that infect the upper respiratory tract. Symptoms include congestion, increased nasal secretion, sneezing, and dry cough. Transmitted especially by contact of contaminated hands with mucous membranes; not transmitted orally.
Adult respiratory distress syndrome	Acute lung inflammation and alveolar injury stemming from trauma, infection, burns, aspiration of vomit, inhalation of noxious gases, drug overdoses, and other causes. Alveolar injury is accompanied by severe pulmonary edema and hemorrhage, followed by fibrosis that progressively destroys lung tissue. Fatal in about 40% of cases under age 60 and in 60% of cases over age 65.
Pneumonia	A lower respiratory infection caused by any of several viruses, fungi, or protozoans (most often the bacterium *Streptococcus pneumoniae*). Causes filling of alveoli with fluid and dead leukocytes and thickening of the respiratory membrane, which interferes with gas exchange and causes hypoxemia. Especially dangerous to infants, the elderly, and people with compromised immune systems, such as AIDS and leukemia patients.
Sleep apnea	Cessation of breathing for 10 seconds or longer during sleep; sometimes occurs hundreds of times per night, often accompanied by restlessness and alternating with snoring. Can result from altered function of CNS respiratory centers, airway obstruction, or both. Over time, may lead to daytime drowsiness, hypoxemia, polycythemia, pulmonary hypertension, congestive heart failure, and cardiac arrhythmia. Most common in obese people and in men.
Tuberculosis (TB)	Pulmonary infection with the bacterium *Mycobacterium tuberculosis,* which invades the lungs by way of air, blood, or lymph. Stimulates the lung to form fibrous nodules called tubercles around the bacteria. Progressive fibrosis compromises the elastic recoil and ventilation of the lungs. Especially common among impoverished and homeless people and becoming increasingly common among people with AIDS.

Disorders described elsewhere

Apnea	857
Asthma	828
Atelectasis	853
Carbon monoxide poisoning	864
Chronic bronchitis	869
Cor pulmonale	740
Decompression sickness	872
Dyspnea	857
Emphysema	869
Hypoxia	869
Lung cancer	869
Ondine's curse	859
Pleurisy	849
Pneumothorax	853
Pulmonary edema	861
Respiratory acidosis	868
Respiratory alkalosis	868
Respiratory distress syndrome	855

metastasis are the pericardium, heart, bones, liver, lymph nodes, and brain. The chance of recovery is poor, with only 7% of patients surviving for 5 years after diagnosis.

Some infectious diseases and other disorders of the respiratory system are briefly described in table 22.5. The effects of aging on the respiratory system are described on p. 1111.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

22. Describe the four classes of hypoxia.
23. Name and compare two COPDs and describe some pathological effects that they have in common.
24. In what lung tissue does lung cancer originate? How does it kill?

Insight 22.4 Clinical Application

Diving Physiology and Decompression Sickness

Because of the rise in popularity of scuba diving in recent years, many people now know something about the scientific aspects of breathing under high pressure. But diving is by no means a new fascination. As early as the fifth century B.C.E., Aristotle described divers using snorkels and taking containers of air underwater in order to stay down longer. Some Renaissance artists depicted divers many meters deep breathing from tubes to the water surface. In reality, this would be physically impossible. For one thing, such tubes would have so much dead space that fresh air from the surface would not reach the diver. The short snorkels used today are about the maximum length that will work for surface breathing. Another reason snorkels cannot be used at greater depths is that water pressure doubles for every 11 m of depth, and even at 1 m the pressure is so great that a diver cannot expand the chest muscles without help. This is one reason why scuba divers use pressurized air tanks. The tanks create a positive intrapulmonary pressure and enable the diver to inhale with only slight assistance from the thoracic muscles. Scuba tanks also have regulators that adjust the outflow pressure to the diver's depth and the opposing pressure of the surrounding water.

But breathing pressurized (hyperbaric) gas presents its own problems. Divers cannot use pure oxygen because of the problem of oxygen toxicity. Instead, they use compressed air—a mixture of 21% oxygen and 79% nitrogen. On land, nitrogen presents no physiological problems; it dissolves poorly in blood and it is physiologically inert. But under hyperbaric conditions, larger amounts of nitrogen dissolve in the blood. (Which of the gas laws applies here?) Even more dissolves in adipose tissue and the myelin of the brain, since nitrogen is more soluble in lipids. In the brain, it causes *nitrogen narcosis,* or what Jacques Cousteau termed "rapture of the deep." A diver can become dizzy, euphoric, and dangerously disoriented; for every 15 to 20 m of depth, the effect is said to be equivalent to one martini on an empty stomach.

Strong currents, equipment failure, and other hazards sometimes make scuba divers panic, hold their breath, and quickly swim to the surface (a *breath-hold ascent*). Ambient (surrounding) pressure falls rapidly as a diver ascends, and the air in the lungs expands just as rapidly. (Which gas law is demonstrated here?) It is imperative that an ascending diver keep his or her airway open to exhale the expanding gas; otherwise it is likely to cause *pulmonary barotrauma*—ruptured alveoli. Then, when the diver takes a breath of air at the surface, alveolar air goes directly into the bloodstream and causes air embolism. After passing through the heart, the emboli tend to enter the cerebral circulation because the diver is head-up and air bubbles rise in liquid. The resulting cerebral embolism can cause motor and sensory dysfunction, seizures, unconsciousness, and drowning.

Barotrauma can be fatal even at the depths of a backyard swimming pool. In one case, children trapped air in a bucket 1 m underwater and then swam under the bucket to breathe from the air space. Because the bucket was under water, the air in it was compressed. One child filled his lungs under the bucket, did a "mere" 1-m breath-hold ascent, and his alveoli ruptured. He died in the hospital, partly because the case was mistaken for drowning and not treated for what it really was. This would not have happened to a person who inhaled at the surface, did a breath-hold dive, and then resurfaced—nor is barotrauma a problem for those who do breath-hold dives to several meters. (Why? What is the difference?)

Even when not holding the breath, but letting the expanding air escape from the mouth, a diver must ascend slowly and carefully to allow for decompression of the nitrogen that has dissolved in the tissues. *Decompression tables* prescribe safe rates of ascent based on the depth and the length of time a diver has been down. When pressure drops, nitrogen dissolved in the tissues can go either of two places—it can diffuse into the alveoli and be exhaled, or it can form bubbles like the CO_2 in a bottle of soda when the cap is removed. The diver's objective is to ascend slowly, allowing for the former and preventing the latter. If a diver ascends too rapidly, nitrogen "boils" from the tissues—especially in the 3 m just below the surface, where the relative pressure change is greatest. A diver may double over in pain from bubbles in the joints, bones, and muscles—a disease called the "bends," or *decompression sickness (DCS).* Nitrogen bubbles in the pulmonary capillaries cause "chokes"—substernal pain, coughing, and dyspnea. DCS is sometimes accompanied by mood changes, seizures, numbness, and itching. These symptoms usually occur within an hour of surfacing, but they are sometimes delayed for up to 36 hours. DCS is treated by putting the individual in a hyperbaric chamber to be recompressed and then *slowly* decompressed.

DCS is also called *caisson disease.* A caisson is a watertight underwater chamber filled with pressurized air. Caissons are used in underwater construction work on bridges, tunnels, ships' hulls, and so forth. Caisson disease was first reported in the late 1800s among workmen building the foundations of the Brooklyn Bridge.

Connective Issues

Interactions Between the RESPIRATORY SYSTEM and Other Organ Systems

← indicates ways in which this system affects other systems
→ indicates ways in which other systems affect this one

All Systems

The respiratory system serves all other systems by supplying O_2, removing CO_2, and maintaining acid-base balance

Integumentary System

→ Nasal guard hairs reduce inhalation of dust and other foreign matter

Skeletal System

→ Thoracic cage protects lungs; movement of ribs produces pressure changes that ventilate lungs

Muscular System

→ Skeletal muscles ventilate lungs, control position of larynx during swallowing, control vocal cords during speech; exercise strongly stimulates respiration because of the CO_2 generated by active muscles

Nervous System

→ Produces the respiratory rhythm, monitors blood gases and pH, monitors stretching of lungs; phrenic, intercostal, and other nerves control respiratory muscles

Endocrine System

← Lungs produce angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE), which converts angiotensin I to the hormone angiotensin II

→ Epinephrine and norepinephrine dilate bronchioles and stimulate ventilation

Circulatory System

← Regulates blood pH; thoracic pump aids in venous return; lungs produce blood platelets; production of angiotensin II by lungs is important in control of blood volume and pressure; obstruction of pulmonary circulation leads to right-sided heart failure

→ Blood transports O_2 and CO_2; mitral stenosis or left-sided heart failure can cause pulmonary edema; emboli from peripheral sites often lodge in lungs

Lymphatic/Immune Systems

← Thoracic pump promotes lymph flow

→ Lymphatic drainage from lungs is important in keeping alveoli dry; immune cells protect lungs from infection

Urinary System

← Valsalva maneuver aids in emptying bladder

→ Disposes of wastes from respiratory organs; collaborates with lungs in controlling blood pH

Digestive System

← Valsalva maneuver aids in defecation

→ Provides nutrients for growth and maintenance of respiratory system

Reproductive System

← Valsalva maneuver aids in childbirth

→ Sexual arousal stimulates respiration

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

Anatomy of the Respiratory System (p. 842)

1. Respiration includes ventilation of the lungs, gas exchange with the blood, and oxygen use by the tissues.
2. The *conducting division* of the respiratory system consists of the nose, pharynx, larynx, trachea, bronchi, and most bronchioles; it serves only for airflow.
3. The *respiratory division* consists of the alveoli and other distal gas-exchange regions of the lungs.
4. The nose extends from the anterior nares to the posterior nares and is divided by the nasal septum into right and left *nasal fossae.*
5. Each fossa has three scroll-like *nasal conchae* covered with a ciliated mucous membrane. The conchae warm, humidify, and cleanse the air flowing over them.
6. The *pharynx* is a muscular passage divided into nasopharynx, oropharynx, and laryngopharynx.
7. The *larynx* is a cartilaginous chamber beginning superiorly at the *glottis* and ending about 4 cm below this at the trachea. It contains the vocal cords and keeps food and drink out of the airway. Intrinsic muscles of the larynx function in speech and its extrinsic muscles help to close off the larynx during swallowing.
8. The *trachea* is a 12-cm tube, supported by cartilaginous rings, ending where it branches inferiorly into the two primary bronchi. The ciliated mucosa of the trachea acts as a *mucociliary escalator* to remove inhaled debris, stuck in the tracheal mucus, from the respiratory tract.
9. Each lung is a conical organ extending from the superior apex to the inferior, broad base. The left lung is divided into two lobes and the right lung into three.
10. One primary bronchus supplies each lung; it divides into one secondary bronchus for each lobe of the lung, and this divides into smaller tertiary bronchi.
11. *Bronchioles* are finer divisions of the airway lacking cartilage. The smallest members of the conducting division are the terminal bronchioles. Beyond this, thin-walled respiratory bronchioles begin the respiratory division. Respiratory bronchioles have alveoli along their walls and branch distally into alveolar ducts.
12. An alveolus is a thin-walled sac surrounded by a basket of blood capillaries. It is composed of squamous and great alveolar cells and contains alveolar macrophages, the last line of defense against inhaled debris. Alveoli are the primary site of gas exchange with the blood.
13. The surface of each lung is a serous membrane called the *visceral pleura.* It continues as the *parietal pleura,* which lines the inside of the rib cage. The space between the pleurae is the *pleural cavity,* and is lubricated with *pleural fluid.* The pleurae reduce friction during breathing, contribute to the pressure gradients that move air into and out of the lungs, and help compartmentalize the thoracic cavity.

Mechanics of Ventilation (p. 850)

1. Airflow is governed by the relationship of pressure and resistance.
2. The average atmospheric (barometric) pressure at sea level is 760 mmHg (1 atm).
3. *Inspiration* is achieved by a muscular effort that increases the volume of the lungs. This reduces the *intrapulmonary pressure* (according to Boyle's law) to a few mmHg below atmospheric pressure, and air flows down its pressure gradient from the atmosphere into the lungs.
4. *Expiration* occurs when elastic recoil of the thoracic cage reduces lung volume and increases intrapulmonary pressure to a few mmHg above atmospheric pressure. Air then flows down its pressure gradient from the lungs into the atmosphere.
5. Inspiration is achieved primarily by contractions of the diaphragm and external intercostal muscles. Other muscles aid in deep inspiration. Expiration is achieved primarily by elastic recoil of the thoracic cage, but the internal intercostals, abdominal muscles, and other muscles aid in deep or rapid expiration.
6. Airflow is inversely related to resistance in the airway. High pulmonary *compliance* means that the lungs expand easily and resistance is minimal. Compliance is reduced in such diseases as tuberculosis and black lung disease, which stiffen the lungs.
7. Resistance also varies with the diameter of the airway. *Bronchoconstriction* increases resistance and reduces airflow; *bronchodilation* increases airflow. Asthma and anaphylaxis can cause fatal bronchoconstriction.
8. Alveolar surface tension also affects resistance by tending to cause alveolar collapse during expiration and resisting inflation during inspiration; but surface tension is normally minimized by a lipoprotein *pulmonary surfactant* secreted by the great alveolar cells. Surfactant deficiency is the cause of *respiratory distress syndrome* in premature infants.
9. At rest, an average adult inhales about 500 mL of air in one inspiration. About 150 mL of this is *dead air,* filling the conducting division *(anatomic dead space)* where no gas exchange occurs; 350 mL ventilates the alveoli. This quantity times the respiratory rate is the *alveolar ventilation rate* (for example, 350 mL/breath × 12 breaths/min = 4,200 mL/min).
10. In addition to gas exchange, breathing serves the purposes of speaking, laughing, crying, yawning, hiccuping, expelling noxious fumes, coughing, sneezing, and expelling abdominal contents (by means of the Valsalva maneuver).

11. Pulmonary function is measured with a *spirometer,* which quantifies various respiratory volumes and capacities (see table 22.2) and can help the clinician assess the severity of *restrictive* and *obstructive disorders* of the respiratory system. Restrictive disorders reduce pulmonary compliance and obstructive disorders reduce the speed of airflow.

Neural Control of Ventilation (p. 857)

1. The respiratory rhythm is governed by pacemakers in the brainstem which control the respiratory muscles.
2. The medulla oblongata contains two respiratory nuclei. One of these, the *inspiratory center,* consists mostly of inspiratory (I) neurons. Firing of these neurons ultimately stimulates the diaphragm (via the phrenic nerves) and external intercostal muscles (via the intercostal nerves) and causes inspiration.
3. The expiratory center of the medulla has both I neurons and expiratory (E) neurons. It is not employed in normal relaxed breathing *(eupnea),* but inhibits the inspiratory center when deep expiration is needed.
4. The pons contains an *apneustic center* which seems to prolong inspiration, and a *pneumotaxic center* which acts on the inspiratory center of the medulla to vary the rate and depth of breathing.
5. The brainstem respiratory centers receive input from the limbic system, hypothalamus, and frontal lobe of the cerebrum, enabling mental states to affect breathing.
6. They also receive input from chemoreceptors in the arteries and from receptors in the airway and lungs that respond to airborne irritants, stretching of the lungs, and other stimuli.

Gas Exchange and Transport (p. 859)

1. Air is composed of nearly 79% N_2, 21% O_2, 0.5% H_2O, and 0.04% CO_2. The concentrations of these gases are also expressed as *partial pressures,* the fraction that each contributes to the total atmospheric pressure (see Dalton's law).
2. Expired air shows changes that result from what the body adds to and takes from the inhaled air: it is about 75% N_2, 14% O_2, 6% H_2O, and 5% CO_2.
3. At the air-water interface in the alveoli, gases diffuse down their concentration gradients at rates determined by their solubility in water and partial pressures in the alveolar air and blood (see Henry's law). The blood thus unloads CO_2 into the alveolus, to be expired, and loads O_2 to be carried to other tissues of the body.
4. The efficiency of alveolar gas exchange depends on the concentration gradients of the gases (air vs. blood), solubility of the gases in water, thickness of the respiratory membrane between the blood and alveolar air, and ventilation-perfusion coupling.
5. *Ventilation-perfusion coupling* is the tendency of the lungs to direct the most blood to the best-ventilated parts of the lungs, and direct the most air to the best-perfused parts of the lung. The lungs thus minimize wasteful ventilation of poorly perfused areas of the lung and wasteful blood circulation to poorly ventilated areas.
6. About 1.5% of the O_2 in the blood is dissolved in the plasma, and 98.5% is bound to hemoglobin in the RBCs. Each hemoglobin can carry up to 4 O_2. It is called *oxyhemoglobin* (HbO_2) if it carries one or more O_2 molecules.
7. The relationship between oxygen concentration (P_{O_2}) and percent HbO_2 is the *oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve* (fig. 22.21). It shows that binding of the first oxygens to hemoglobin accelerates the binding of more O_2, until the Hb becomes saturated.
8. About 90% of the CO_2 in the blood is carried as bicarbonate (HCO_3^-) ions, 5% is bound to proteins as carbamino compounds, and 5% is dissolved in the blood plasma.
9. The loading of CO_2 from the tissue fluids is promoted by *carbonic anhydrase,* an enzyme in the RBCs that promotes the reaction of CO_2 and water to form carbonic acid. The carbonic acid breaks down to HCO_3^- and H^+. Most of the H^+ binds to hemoglobin, while the HCO_3^- is exchanged for Cl^- from the blood plasma.
10. This binding of H^+ to hemoglobin promotes the unloading of O_2 to the systemic tissues. In one pass through the capillaries of a resting tissue, the blood gives up about 22% of its O_2 to the tissue (the *utilization coefficient*).
11. In the alveoli, Hb unloads O_2. This unloading causes H^+ to dissociate from the Hb and recombine with HCO_3^- to produce carbonic acid. The carbonic acid is then broken down by carbonic anhydrase into water and CO_2. The latter is exhaled.
12. Hemoglobin unloads varying amounts of O_2 to different tissues according to their needs. Hemoglobin adjusts O_2 unloading in response to variations in the tissue's P_{O_2}, temperature, and pH (the Bohr effect), and the RBC's own temperature- and hormone-sensitive concentration of bisphosphoglycerate (BPG).

Blood Chemistry and the Respiratory Rhythm (p. 867)

1. Breathing is stimulated especially by the pH of the body fluids, but also by the P_{CO_2} and to some extent P_{O_2}. These conditions are monitored by *central chemoreceptors* in the brainstem and *peripheral chemoreceptors* in the aortic arch and carotid arteries.
2. Ultimately, breathing is adjusted to maintain a stable pH in the brain. Blood pH is determined largely by P_{CO_2} because of the reaction of CO_2 and water: $CO_2 + H_2O \leftrightarrow H_2CO_3 \leftrightarrow HCO_3^- + H^+$. The more CO_2 is present, the more H^+ is generated and the lower the pH is; the less CO_2, the higher the pH.
3. Normally, the blood pH ranges from 7.35 to 7.45. A pH below this range is called *acidosis* and a pH above this range is *alkalosis.*
4. Acidosis is usually caused by a CO_2 excess *(hypercapnia)* and can therefore be corrected by increasing pulmonary ventilation to expel more CO_2.
5. Alkalosis is usually caused by a CO_2 deficiency *(hypocapnia)* and can therefore be corrected by reducing pulmonary ventilation to allow for metabolically generated CO_2 to build up in the blood.
6. P_{CO_2} can also have a direct effect on ventilation even when the pH is stable.
7. P_{O_2} normally has little effect on ventilation, but long-term hypoxemia ($P_{O_2} < 60$ mmHg) can trigger *hypoxic drive,* in which ventilation is driven more by O_2 than CO_2 levels. This can occur in such conditions as emphysema and mountain climbing.

Respiratory Disorders (p. 868)

1. Hypoxia, a deficiency of O_2 in the tissues, can be of *hypoxemic, ischemic, anemic,* or *histotoxic* origin. It can cause cyanosis and, if severe and prolonged, tissue necrosis.
2. Oxygen excess can generate hydrogen peroxide and free radicals that cause *oxygen toxicity.*
3. The *chronic obstructive pulmonary diseases (COPDs)* are asthma, chronic bronchitis, and emphysema. Asthma is an allergic disease while the others are usually caused by tobacco smoke. Chronic bronchitis entails congestion of the airway with thick mucus, and susceptibility to respiratory infection. Emphysema entails destruction of pulmonary alveoli and air retention in expiration.
4. Lung cancer also is usually caused by tobacco smoke. Its variations are squamous-cell carcinoma, adenocarcinoma, and small-cell carcinoma. It tends to metastasize rapidly.

Selected Vocabulary

nasal fossa 843
nasal concha 843
pharnx 845
larynx 845
trachea 846
mucociliary escalator 846
bronchus 847
bronchiole 848
alveolus 849
pulmonary surfactant 849
pleura 849
pleural cavity 849
inspiration 851
expiration 851
bronchoconstriction 854
bronchodilation 854
tidal volume 855
vital capacity 856
partial pressure 859
oxyhemoglobin 863
carbonic acid 864
chemoreceptor 867
acidosis 867
alkalosis 867
hypercapnia 868
hypocapnia 868
hypoxia 869
chronic obstructive pulmonary disease 869
chronic bronchitis 869
emphysema 869
lung carcinoma 870

Testing Your Recall

1. The nasal cavity is divided by the nasal septum into right and left
   a. nares.
   b. vestibules.
   c. fossae.
   d. choanae.
   e. conchae.
2. The intrinsic laryngeal muscles regulate speech by rotating
   a. the extrinsic laryngeal muscles.
   b. the corniculate cartilages.
   c. the arytenoid cartilages.
   d. the hyoid bone.
   e. the vocal cords.
3. The largest air passages that engage in gas exchange with the blood are
   a. the respiratory bronchioles.
   b. the terminal bronchioles.
   c. the primary bronchi.
   d. the alveolar ducts.
   e. the alveoli.
4. Respiratory arrest would most likely result from a tumor of the
   a. pons.
   b. midbrain.
   c. thalamus.
   d. cerebellum.
   e. medulla oblongata.
5. Which of these values would normally be the highest?
   a. tidal volume
   b. inspiratory reserve volume
   c. expiratory reserve volume
   d. residual volume
   e. vital capacity
6. The ______ protects the lungs from injury by excessive inspiration.
   a. pleura
   b. rib cage
   c. inflation reflex
   d. Haldane effect
   e. Bohr effect
7. According to ______, the warming of air as it is inhaled helps to inflate the lungs.
   a. Boyle's law
   b. Charles' law
   c. Dalton's law
   d. the Bohr effect
   e. the Haldane effect
8. Poor blood circulation causes ______ hypoxia.
   a. ischemic
   b. histotoxic
   c. hemolytic
   d. anemic
   e. hypoxemic
9. Most of the CO_2 that diffuses from the blood into an alveolus comes from
   a. dissolved gas.
   b. carbaminohemoglobin.
   c. carboxyhemoglobin.
   d. carbonic acid.
   e. expired air.
10. CO_2 affects the pH of the CSF more than it does the pH of the blood because
    a. CSF contains less protein than blood.
    b. CO_2 cannot cross the blood-brain barrier.
    c. all CO_2 crosses the blood-brain barrier, so none remains in the blood.
    d. only the blood contains carbonic anhydrase.
    e. the chloride shift occurs in the blood.
11. The superior opening into the larynx is called the ______.
12. Within each lung, the airway forms a branching complex called the ______ .
13. The great alveolar cells secrete a lipoprotein called ______ .
14. Intrapulmonary pressure must be greater than ______ pressure for inspiration to occur, but greater than ______ pressure for expiration to occur.
15. ______ disorders reduce the flow of air through the airway.
16. Some inhaled air does not participate in gas exchange because it fills the ______ of the respiratory tract.
17. Inspiration depends on the ease of pulmonary inflation, called ______ ,

whereas expiration depends on ______ , which causes pulmonary recoil.

18. Inspiration is caused by the firing of I neurons in the ______ of the medulla oblongata.
19. The matching of airflow to blood flow in any region of the lung is called ______ .
20. A blood pH > 7.45 is called ______ and can be caused by a CO_2 deficiency called ______ .

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. The glottis is the opening from the larynx to the trachea.
2. The lungs contain more respiratory bronchioles than terminal bronchioles.
3. In alveolar capillaries, oncotic pressure is greater than the mean blood pressure.
4. If you increase the volume of a given quantity of gas, its pressure increases.
5. Pneumothorax is the only cause of atelectasis.
6. Obstruction of the bronchial tree results in a reduced FEV.
7. At a given PO_2 and pH, hemoglobin carries less oxygen at warmer temperatures than it does at cooler temperatures.
8. Most of the air one inhales never makes it to the alveoli.
9. The greater the PCO_2 of the blood is, the lower its pH is.
10. Most of the CO_2 transported by the blood is in the form of dissolved gas.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. Discuss how the different functions of the conducting division and respiratory division relate to differences in their histology.
2. State whether hyperventilation would raise or lower each of the following—the blood PO_2, PCO_2, and pH—and explain why. Do the same for the effects of emphysema.
3. Some competitive swimmers hyperventilate before an underwater race, thinking they can "load up on extra oxygen" and hold their breaths longer underwater. While they can indeed hold their breaths longer, it is not for the reason they think. Furthermore, some have fainted and drowned because of this practice. What is wrong with this thinking, and what accounts for the loss of consciousness?
4. Consider a man in good health with a 650 mL tidal volume and a respiratory rate of 11 breaths per minute. Report his minute respiratory volume in liters per minute. Assuming his anatomic dead space is 185 mL, calculate his alveolar ventilation rate in liters per minute.
5. An 83-year-old woman is admitted to the hospital, where a critical care nurse attempts to insert a nasoenteric tube ("stomach tube") for feeding. The patient begins to exhibit dyspnea, and a chest X ray reveals air in the right pleural cavity and a collapsed right lung. The patient dies 5 days later from respiratory complications. Name the conditions revealed by the X ray and explain how they could have resulted from the nurse's procedure.

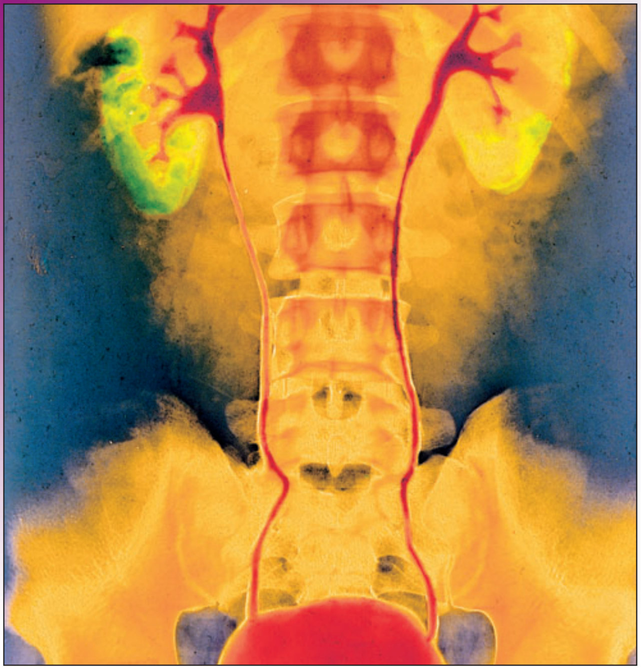
Answers at the Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Questions

22.3 Bacteria can easily travel from the throat up the auditory tube to the middle ear.
22.7 The right primary bronchus is more vertical than the left, making it easier for objects to fall into the right.
22.21 About 70%
22.23 In the alveoli, CO_2 leaves the blood, O_2 enters, and all the chemical reactions are the reverse of those in figure 22.22. The blood bicarbonate concentration will be reduced following alveolar gas exchange.
22.24 A higher temperature suggests a relatively high metabolic rate, and thus an elevated demand for oxygen. Comparison of these curves shows that for a given PO_2, hemoglobin gives up more oxygen at warmer temperatures.

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.



The kidneys (*green*), ureters, and urinary bladder (*red*) of a healthy person (colorized X ray)

CHAPTER
23

The Urinary System

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Functions of the Urinary System 880
- Functions of the Kidneys 880
- Nitrogenous Wastes 880
- Excretion 881

Anatomy of the Kidney 881
- Gross Anatomy 881
- The Nephron 882

Urine Formation I: Glomerular Filtration 886
- The Filtration Membrane 886
- Filtration Pressure 887
- Glomerular Filtration Rate 889
- Regulation of Glomerular Filtration 889

Urine Formation II: Tubular Reabsorption and Secretion 891
- The Proximal Convoluted Tubule 891
- The Nephron Loop 895
- The Distal Convoluted Tubule and Collecting Duct 896

Urine Formation III: Water Conservation 897
- The Collecting Duct 897
- Control of Water Loss 897
- The Countercurrent Multiplier 898
- The Countercurrent Exchange System 898

Urine and Renal Function Tests 899
- Composition and Properties of Urine 899
- Urine Volume 901
- Renal Function Tests 902

Urine Storage and Elimination 903
- The Ureters 903
- The Urinary Bladder 904
- The Urethra 904
- Voiding Urine 905

Connective Issues 909

Chapter Review 910

INSIGHTS

23.1 **Evolutionary Medicine:** The Kidney and Life on Dry Land 897

23.2 **Clinical Application:** Kidney Stones 904

23.3 **Clinical Application:** Urinary Tract Infections 905

23.4 **Clinical Application:** Renal Insufficiency and Hemodialysis 907

Brushing Up

To understand this chapter, it is important that you understand or brush up on the following concepts:

- Osmosis, tonicity, and osmolarity (pp. 107–109)
- Carrier-mediated transport mechanisms, especially symports and antiports (pp. 109–110)
- Osmotic diuresis (p. 669)
- Blood pressure, resistance, and flow (p. 733)
- Capillary filtration and reabsorption (p. 761)

The urinary system is well known for eliminating wastes from the body, but its role in homeostasis goes far beyond that. The kidneys also detoxify poisons, synthesize glucose, and play indispensable roles in controlling electrolyte and acid-base balance, blood pressure, erythrocyte count, and the P_{O_2} and P_{CO_2} of the blood. The urinary system thus has a very close physiological relationship with the endocrine, circulatory, and respiratory systems, covered in the preceding chapters.

Anatomically, the urinary system is closely associated with the reproductive system. In many animals the eggs and sperm are emitted through the urinary tract, and the two systems have a shared embryonic development and adult anatomical relationship. This is reflected in humans, where the systems develop together in the embryo and, in the male, the urethra continues to serve as a passage for both urine and sperm. Thus the urinary and reproductive systems are often collectively called the *urogenital (U-G) system,* and *urologists* treat both urinary and reproductive disorders. We examine the anatomical relationship between the urinary and reproductive systems in chapter 27, but the physiological link to the circulatory and respiratory systems is more important to consider at this time.

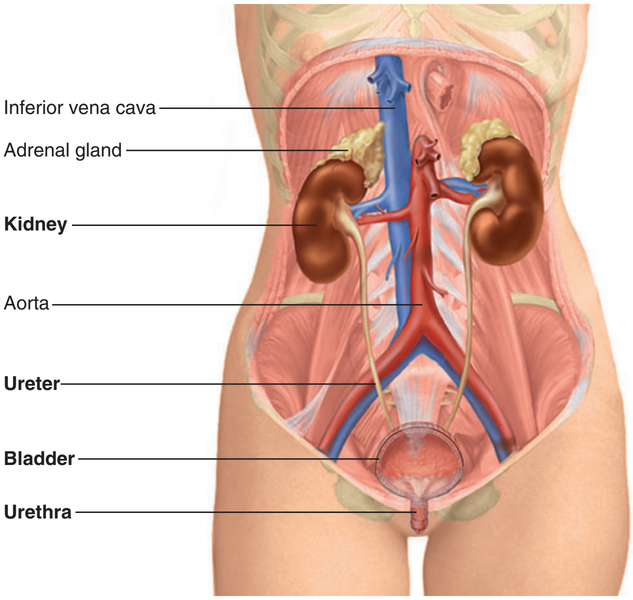


Figure 23.1 **The Urinary System.** Organs of the urinary system are indicated in boldface.

Functions of the Urinary System

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- name and locate the organs of the urinary system;
- list several functions of the kidneys in addition to urine formation;
- name the major nitrogenous wastes and identify their sources; and
- define *excretion* and identify the systems that excrete wastes.

The **urinary system** consists of six organs: two **kidneys,** two **ureters,** the **urinary bladder,** and the **urethra** (fig. 23.1). Most of our focus in this chapter is on the kidneys.

Functions of the Kidneys

Metabolism constantly produces a variety of waste products that can poison the body if not eliminated. The most fundamental role of the kidneys is to eliminate these wastes and homeostatically regulate the volume and composition of the body fluids. All of the following processes are aspects of kidney function:

- They filter blood plasma, separate wastes from the useful chemicals, and eliminate the wastes while returning the rest to the bloodstream.
- They regulate blood volume and pressure by eliminating or conserving water as necessary.
- They regulate the osmolarity of the body fluids by controlling the relative amounts of water and solutes eliminated.
- They secrete the enzyme *renin,* which activates hormonal mechanisms that control blood pressure and electrolyte balance.
- They secrete the hormone *erythropoietin,* which controls the red blood cell count and oxygen-carrying capacity of the blood.
- They function with the lungs to regulate the P_{CO_2} and acid-base balance of the body fluids.
- They contribute to calcium homeostasis through their role in synthesizing calcitriol (vitamin D) (see chapter 7).
- They detoxify free radicals and drugs with the use of peroxisomes.
- In times of starvation, they carry out *gluconeogenesis;* they *deaminate* amino acids (remove the $-NH_2$ group), excrete the amino group as ammonia (NH_3), and synthesize glucose from the rest of the molecule.

Nitrogenous Wastes

A **waste** is any substance that is useless to the body or present in excess of the body's needs. A **metabolic waste,** more specifically, is a waste substance produced by the body. Thus the food residue in feces, for example, is a waste but not a metabolic waste, since it was not produced by the body and, indeed, never entered the body's tissues.

Metabolism produces a great quantity of wastes that are lethal to cells if allowed to accumulate. Some of the

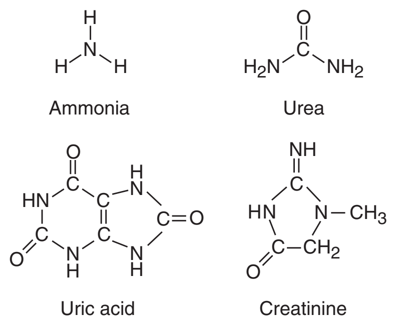
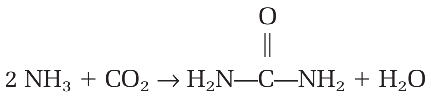


Figure 23.2 **The Major Nitrogenous Wastes.**
How is each of these wastes produced in the body?

most toxic examples are small nitrogen-containing compounds called **nitrogenous wastes** (fig. 23.2). About 50% of the nitrogenous waste is **urea,** a by-product of protein catabolism. Proteins are broken down to amino acids, and then the $-NH_2$ group is removed from each amino acid. The $-NH_2$ forms ammonia, which is exceedingly toxic but which the liver quickly converts to urea, a less harmful waste:



$$2\,NH_3 + CO_2 \rightarrow H_2N{-}\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}NH_2 + H_2O$$

Other nitrogenous wastes in the urine include **uric acid** and **creatinine** (cree-AT-ih-neen), produced by the catabolism of nucleic acids and creatine phosphate, respectively. Although less toxic than ammonia and less abundant than urea, these wastes are far from harmless.

The level of nitrogenous waste in the blood is typically expressed as **blood urea nitrogen (BUN).** The urea concentration is normally 7 to 18 mg/dL. An abnormally elevated BUN is called **azotemia**[1] (AZ-oh-TEE-me-uh) and may indicate renal insufficiency. Azotemia may progress to **uremia** (you-REE-me-uh), a syndrome of diarrhea, vomiting, dyspnea, and cardiac arrhythmia stemming from the toxic effects of nitrogenous wastes. Convulsions, coma, and death can follow within a few days. Unless a kidney transplant is available, renal failure requires *hemodialysis* to remove nitrogenous wastes from the blood (see insight 23.4, p. 907).

Excretion

Excretion is the process of separating wastes from the body fluids and eliminating them. It is carried out by four organ systems:

1. The respiratory system excretes carbon dioxide, small amounts of other gases, and water.
2. The integumentary system excretes water, inorganic salts, lactic acid, and urea in the sweat.
3. The digestive system not only *eliminates* food residue (which is not a process of excretion) but also actively *excretes* water, salts, carbon dioxide, lipids, bile pigments, cholesterol, and other metabolic wastes.
4. The urinary system excretes a broad variety of metabolic wastes, toxins, drugs, hormones, salts, hydrogen ions, and water.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

1. State four functions of the kidneys other than forming urine.
2. List four nitrogenous wastes and their metabolic sources.
3. Name some wastes eliminated by three systems other than the urinary system.

Anatomy of the Kidney

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- identify the major external and internal features of the kidney;
- trace the flow of fluid through the renal tubules;
- trace the flow of blood through the kidney; and
- describe the nerve supply to the kidney.

Gross Anatomy

The kidneys lie against the posterior abdominal wall at the level of vertebrae T12 to L3. The right kidney is slightly lower than the left because of the space occupied by the liver above it. Each kidney weighs about 160 g and measures about 12 cm long, 5 cm wide, and 2.5 cm thick—about the size of a bar of bath soap. The lateral surface is convex while the medial surface is concave and has a slit, the **hilum,** where it receives the renal nerves, blood vessels, lymphatic vessels, and ureter. The left adrenal gland rests on the superior pole of that kidney, while the right adrenal gland is more medial, between the hilum and pole. The kidneys, adrenal glands, ureters, and urinary bladder are retroperitoneal—they lie between the peritoneum and body wall (fig. 23.3).

The kidney is protected by three layers of connective tissue: (1) a fibrous **renal**[2] **fascia,** immediately deep to the parietal peritoneum, which binds the kidney and associated organs to the abdominal wall; (2) the **adipose capsule,** a layer of fat that cushions the kidney and holds it in place;

---

[1] *azot* = nitrogen + *emia* = blood condition

[2] *ren* = kidney + *al* = pertaining to

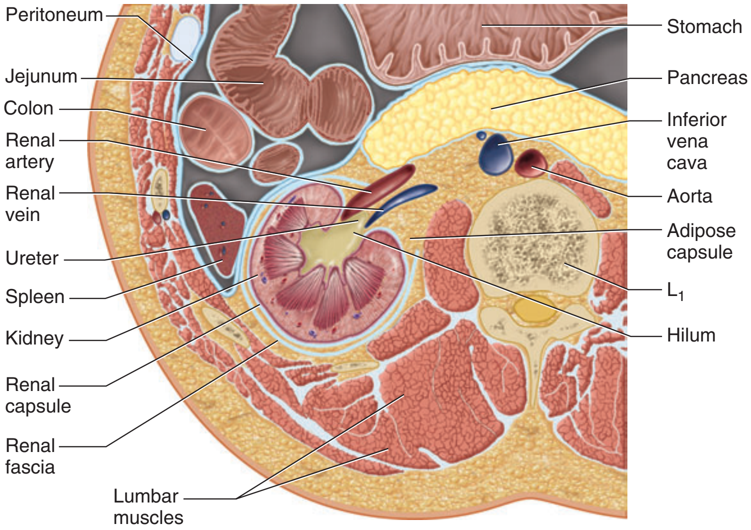


Figure 23.3 **Location of the Kidney.** Cross section of the abdomen at the level of vertebra L1.
Why is the kidney described as retroperitoneal? Name another retroperitoneal organ in this figure.

and (3) the **renal capsule,** a fibrous sac that is anchored at the hilum and encloses the rest of the kidney like a cellophane wrapper, and protects the kidney from trauma and infection. Collagen fibers extend from the renal capsule, through the fat, to the renal fascia. The renal fascia is fused with the peritoneum on one side and the deep fascia of the lumbar muscles on the other. Thus the kidneys are suspended in place. Nevertheless, they drop about 3 cm when you go from a supine to a standing position, and under some circumstances they become detached and drift even lower, with pathological results (see nephroptosis, or “floating kidney,” in table 23.3 at the end of this chapter).

The renal parenchyma—the glandular tissue that forms the urine—appears C-shaped in frontal section. It encircles a medial space, the **renal sinus,** occupied by blood and lymphatic vessels, nerves, and urine-collecting structures. Adipose tissue fills the remaining space and holds these structures in place (fig. 23.4).

The parenchyma is divided into two zones: an outer **renal cortex** about 1 cm thick and an inner **renal medulla** facing the sinus. Extensions of the cortex called **renal columns** project toward the sinus and divide the medulla into 6 to 10 **renal pyramids.** Each pyramid is conical, with a broad base facing the cortex and a blunt point called the **renal papilla** facing the sinus. One pyramid and the overlying cortex constitute one *lobe* of the kidney.

The papilla of each renal pyramid is nestled in a cup called a **minor calyx**[3] (CAY-lix), which collects its urine. Two or three minor calices (CAY-lih-seez) converge to form a **major calyx,** and two or three major calices converge in the sinus to form the funnel-like **renal pelvis.**[4] The ureter is a tubular continuation of the renal pelvis that drains the urine down to the urinary bladder.

The Nephron

Each kidney contains about 1.2 million functional units called **nephrons** (NEF-rons) (fig. 23.5). If you can understand the function of one nephron, you will understand nearly everything about the function of the kidney. A nephron consists of two principal parts: a *renal corpuscle* where the blood plasma is filtered and a long *renal tubule* that processes this filtrate into urine.

The Renal Corpuscle

The **renal corpuscle** (fig. 23.6) consists of a ball of capillaries called a **glomerulus**[5] (glo-MERR-you-lus), enclosed in a two-layered **glomerular (Bowman’s[6]) capsule.** The parietal (outer) layer of the capsule is a simple squamous epithelium, while the visceral layer consists of elaborate cells called **podocytes**[7] wrapped around the capillaries. The podocytes are described in detail later. The fluid that filters from the glomerular capillaries, called the **glomerular filtrate,** collects in the **capsular space** between the

---

[3] *calyx* = cup

[4] *pelvis* = basin

[5] *glomer* = ball + *ulus* = little

[6] Sir William Bowman (1816–92), British physician

[7] *podo* = foot + *cyte* = cell

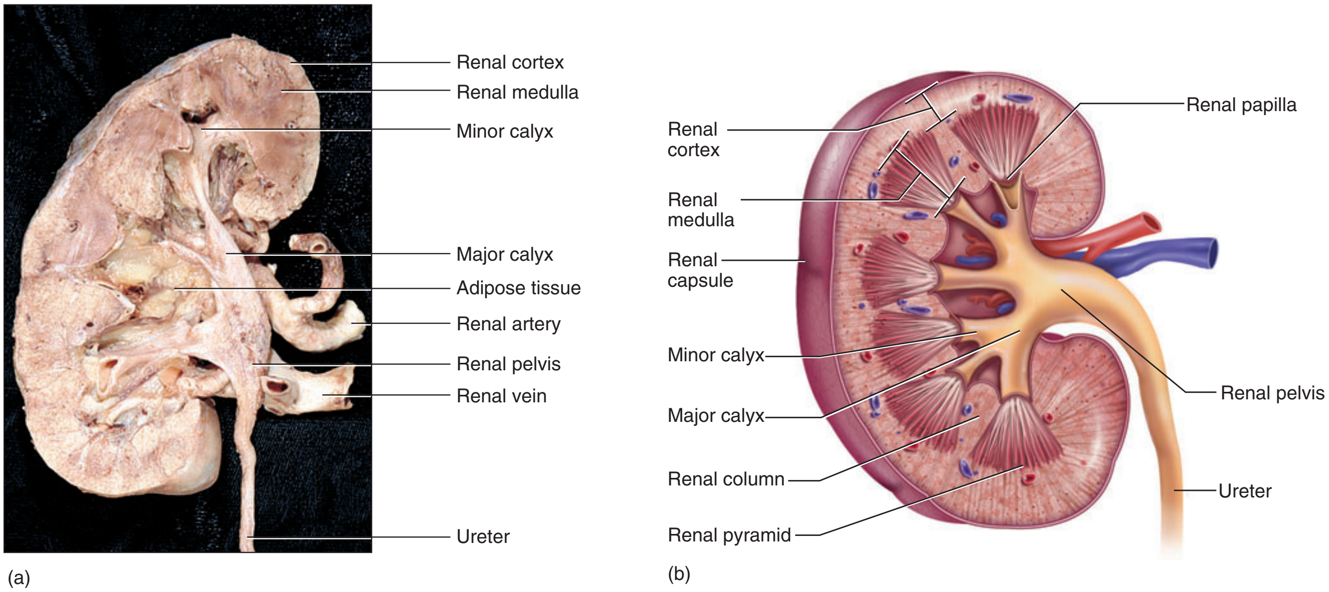


Figure 23.4 **Gross Anatomy of the Kidney.** (*a*) Photograph of a frontal section. (*b*) Major anatomical features.

parietal and visceral layers and then flows into the renal tubule on one side of the capsule.

The Renal Tubule

The **renal (uriniferous[8]) tubule** is a duct that leads away from the glomerular capsule and ends at the tip of a medullary pyramid. It is about 3 cm long and divided into four major regions: the *proximal convoluted tubule, nephron loop, distal convoluted tubule,* and *collecting duct* (see fig. 23.5). Only the first three of these are parts of an individual nephron; the collecting duct receives fluid from many nephrons. Each region of the renal tubule has unique physiological properties and roles in the production of urine.

The Proximal Convoluted Tubule The **proximal convoluted tubule (PCT)** arises from the glomerular capsule. It is the longest and most coiled of the four regions and thus dominates histological sections of renal cortex. The PCT has a simple cuboidal epithelium with prominent microvilli (a brush border), which attests to the great deal of absorption that occurs here. The microvilli give the epithelium a distinctively shaggy look in tissue sections.

The Nephron Loop After coiling extensively near the renal corpuscle, the PCT straightens out and forms a long U-shaped **nephron loop (loop of Henle[9]).** The first portion of the loop, the **descending limb,** passes from the cortex into the medulla. At its deep end it turns 180° and forms an **ascending limb** that returns to the cortex. The nephron loop is divided into thick and thin segments. The **thick segments** have a simple cuboidal epithelium. They form the initial part of the descending limb and part or all of the ascending limb. The cells here are heavily engaged in active transport of salts, so they have very high metabolic activity and are loaded with mitochondria. The **thin segment** has a simple squamous epithelium. It forms the lower part of the descending limb, and in some nephrons, it rounds the bend and continues partway up the ascending limb. The cells here have low metabolic activity but are very permeable to water.

The Distal Convoluted Tubule When the nephron loop returns to the cortex, it coils again and forms the **distal convoluted tubule (DCT).** This is shorter and less convoluted than the PCT, so fewer sections of it are seen in histological sections. It has a cuboidal epithelium with smooth-surfaced cells nearly devoid of microvilli. The DCT is the end of the nephron.

The Collecting Duct The DCTs of several nephrons drain into a straight tubule called the **collecting duct,** which passes down into the medulla. Near the papilla, several collecting ducts merge to form a larger **papillary duct;** about 30 of these drain from each papilla into its minor calyx. The collecting and papillary ducts are lined with simple cuboidal epithelium.

The flow of fluid from the point where the glomerular filtrate is formed to the point where urine leaves the

---

[8] *urin* = urine + *fer* = to carry
[9] Friedrich G. J. Henle (1809–85), German anatomist

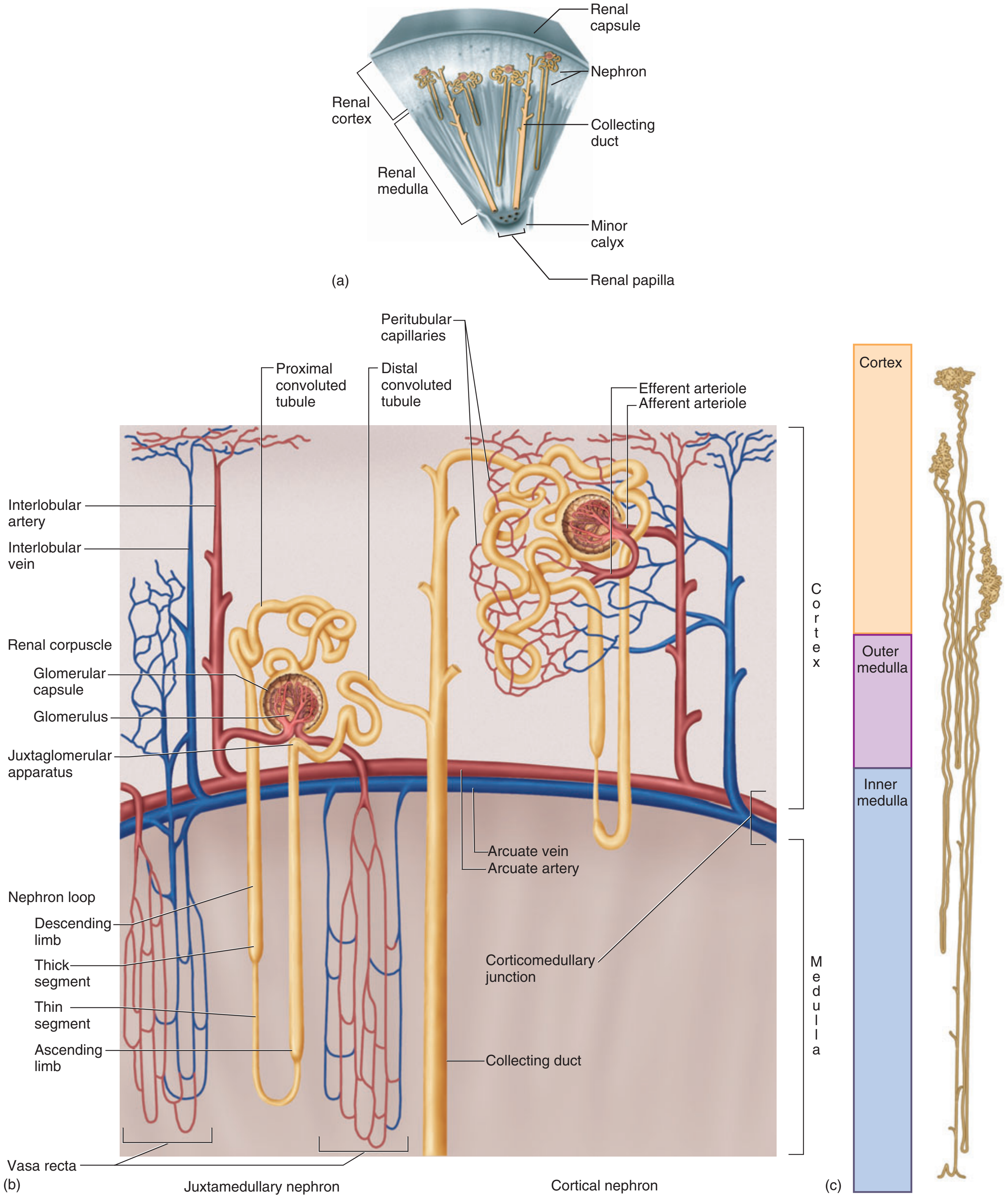

Renal capsule
Nephron
Renal cortex
Collecting duct
Renal medulla
Minor calyx
Renal papilla
(a)
Peritubular capillaries
Proximal convoluted tubule
Distal convoluted tubule
Efferent arteriole
Afferent arteriole
Interlobular artery
Interlobular vein
Renal corpuscle
Glomerular capsule
Glomerulus
Juxtaglomerular apparatus
Cortex
Arcuate vein
Arcuate artery
Nephron loop
Descending limb
Thick segment
Thin segment
Ascending limb
Corticomedullary junction
Medulla
Collecting duct
Vasa recta
(b)
Juxtamedullary nephron
Cortical nephron
(c)
Cortex
Outer medulla
Inner medulla

Figure 23.5 **Structure of the Nephron.** (*a*) Location of the nephrons in one wedge-shaped lobe of the kidney. (*b*) Structure of two nephrons. For clarity, vasa recta are shown only on the *left* and peritubular capillaries only on the *right*. Note that juxtamedullary nephrons are closer to the corticomedullary junction and have longer nephron loops than cortical nephrons. Vasa recta come only from the nephrons closest to the medulla. (*c*) The true proportions of the nephron loops relative to the convoluted tubules.

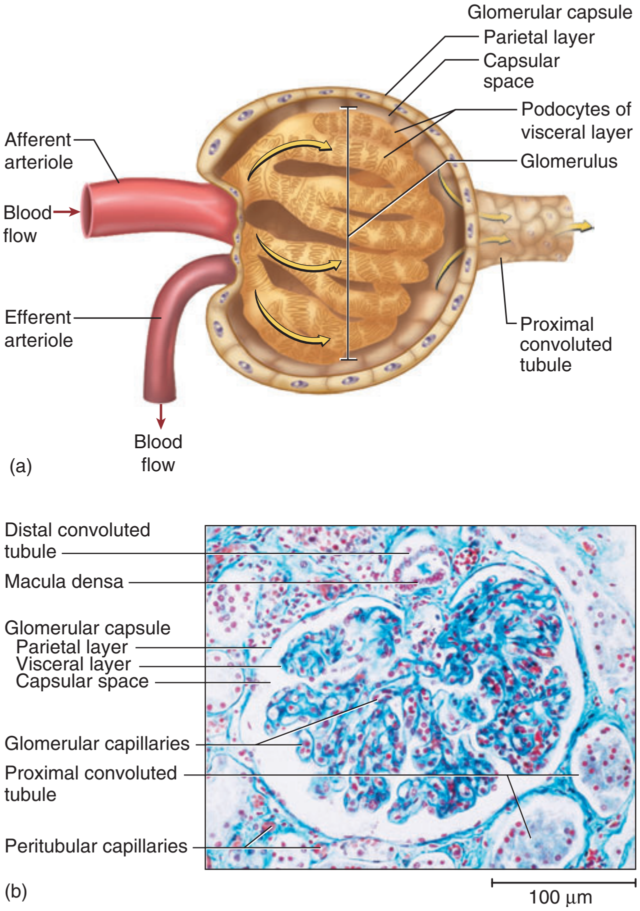


Figure 23.6 **The Renal Corpuscle.** (*a*) Anatomy of the corpuscle; (*b*) light micrograph.

body is: glomerular capsule → proximal convoluted tubule → nephron loop → distal convoluted tubule → collecting duct → papillary duct → minor calyx → major calyx → renal pelvis → ureter → urinary bladder → urethra.

Cortical and Juxtamedullary Nephrons

Nephrons just beneath the renal capsule, close to the kidney surface, are called **cortical nephrons.** They have relatively short nephron loops that dip only slightly into the outer medulla before turning back (see fig. 23.5*b, c*) or turn back even before leaving the cortex. Some cortical nephrons have no nephron loops at all. Nephrons close to the medulla are called **juxtamedullary**[10] **nephrons.** They have very long nephron loops that extend to the apex of the renal pyramid. As you will see later, nephron loops are responsible for maintaining a salinity gradient in the medulla that helps the body conserve water. Although only 15% of the nephrons are juxtamedullary, they are almost solely responsible for maintaining this gradient.

Blood Supply

Although the kidneys account for only 0.4% of the body weight, they receive about 21% of the cardiac output (the *renal fraction*). This attests to their importance in controlling blood volume and composition.

The larger divisions of the renal circulation are shown in figure 23.7*a.* Each kidney is supplied by a **renal artery** (occasionally two or more) arising from the aorta. Just before or after entering the hilum, the renal artery divides and eventually gives rise to a few **interlobar arteries.** One interlobar artery penetrates each renal column and travels between the pyramids to the *corticomedullary junction,* the boundary between the cortex and medulla. Here it branches again to form the **arcuate arteries,** which make a sharp 90° bend and travel along the base of the pyramid. Each arcuate artery gives rise to several **interlobular arteries,** which pass upward into the cortex.

The finer branches of the renal circulation are shown in figure 23.5*b.* As an interlobular artery ascends through the cortex, a series of **afferent arterioles** arise from it like the limbs of a pine tree. Each afferent arteriole supplies blood to one nephron and ends in the glomerulus described earlier. The glomerulus is drained by an **efferent arteriole.**

The afferent and efferent arterioles penetrate one side of the glomerular capsule together. Just outside the capsule, they contact the first part of the distal convoluted tubule and with it, form a **juxtaglomerular** (JUX-tuh-glo-MER-you-lur) **apparatus.** This is a device that enables a nephron to monitor and stabilize its own performance and compensate for fluctuations in blood pressure. It will be described in detail when we consider renal autoregulation.

The efferent arteriole leads next to a plexus of **peritubular capillaries,** named for the fact that they form a network around the renal tubules. Blood flows from the peritubular capillaries to, in order, the **interlobular veins, arcuate veins, interlobar veins,** and **renal vein,** which travel parallel to the arteries of the same names. The renal vein leaves the hilum and drains into the inferior vena cava.

The renal medulla receives only 1% to 2% of the total renal blood flow, supplied by a network of vessels called the **vasa recta.**[11] In the juxtamedullary nephrons, the efferent arterioles descend immediately into the medulla and give rise to the vasa recta instead of giving rise to peritubular capillaries. The capillaries of the vasa

---

[10] *juxta* = next to

[11] *vasa* = vessels + *recta* = straight

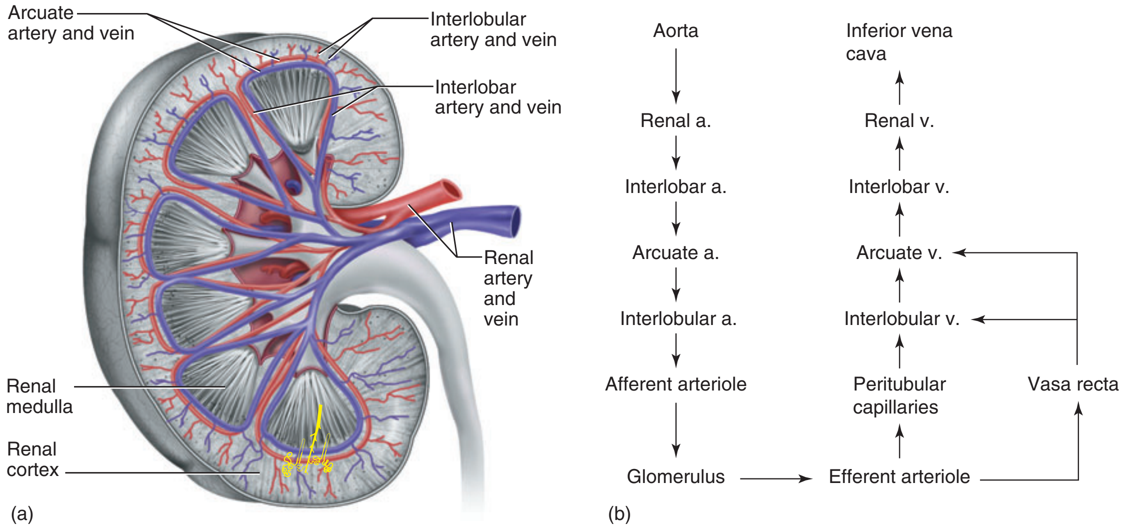

Arcuate artery and vein
Interlobular artery and vein
Interlobar artery and vein
Renal artery and vein
Renal medulla
Renal cortex
(a)
Aorta
Renal a.
Interlobar a.
Arcuate a.
Interlobular a.
Afferent arteriole
Glomerulus
Inferior vena cava
Renal v.
Interlobar v.
Arcuate v.
Interlobular v.
Peritubular capillaries
Efferent arteriole
Vasa recta
(b)

Figure 23.7 **Renal Circulation.** (*a*) The larger blood vessels of the kidney. (*b*) Flow chart of renal circulation. The pathway through the vasa recta (instead of peritubular capillaries) applies only to the juxtamedullary nephrons.

recta lead into venules that ascend and empty into the arcuate and interlobular veins. The route of renal blood flow is summarized in figure 23.7*b*.

Think About It

Can you identify a portal system in the renal circulation?

Nerve Supply

The **renal nerves** arise from the superior mesenteric ganglion (see p. 568) and enter the hilum of each kidney. They follow branches of the renal artery to reach individual nephrons. These nerves consist mostly of sympathetic fibers that regulate the blood flow into and out of each nephron, and thus control the rate of filtration and urine formation. If the blood pressure falls, they also stimulate the nephron to secrete renin, which ultimately restores blood pressure by mechanisms described later.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

4. Arrange the following in order from the most numerous to the least numerous structures in a kidney: glomeruli, major calices, minor calices, interlobular arteries, interlobar arteries.
5. Trace the path taken by one red blood cell from the renal artery to the renal vein.
6. Consider one molecule of urea in the urine. Trace the route that it took from the point where it left the bloodstream to the point where it left the body.

Urine Formation I: Glomerular Filtration

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the glomerular filtration membrane and how it excludes blood cells and proteins from the filtrate;
- explain the forces that promote and oppose glomerular filtration, and calculate net filtration pressure if given the magnitude of these forces; and
- describe how the nervous system, hormones, and the kidney itself regulate glomerular filtration.

The kidney converts blood plasma to urine in three stages: glomerular filtration, tubular reabsorption and secretion, and water conservation (fig. 23.8). As we trace fluid through the nephron, we will refer to it by different names that reflect its changing composition: (1) The fluid in the capsular space, called **glomerular filtrate,** is similar to blood plasma except that it has almost no protein. (2) The fluid from the proximal convoluted tubule through the distal convoluted tubule will be called **tubular fluid.** It differs from the glomerular filtrate because of substances removed and added by the tubule cells. (3) The fluid will be called **urine** once it enters the collecting duct.

The Filtration Membrane

Glomerular filtration, discussed in this section, is a special case of the capillary fluid exchange process described in chapter 20. It is a process in which water and some

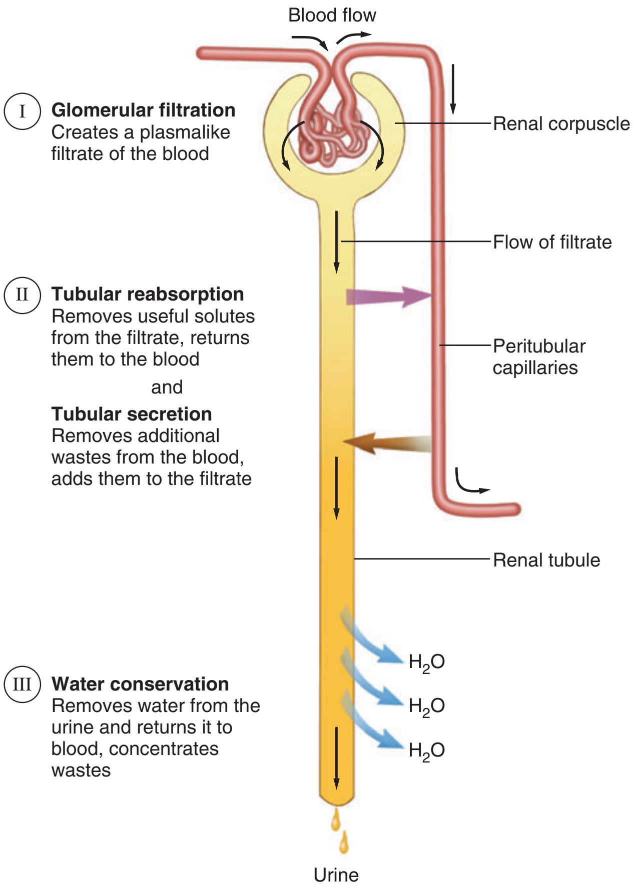

Blood flow
I Glomerular filtration
Creates a plasmalike filtrate of the blood
Renal corpuscle
Flow of filtrate
II Tubular reabsorption
Removes useful solutes from the filtrate, returns them to the blood
and
Tubular secretion
Removes additional wastes from the blood, adds them to the filtrate
Peritubular capillaries
Renal tubule
H_2O
H_2O
H_2O
III Water conservation
Removes water from the urine and returns it to blood, concentrates wastes
Urine

Figure 23.8 **Basic Steps in the Formation of Urine.**

solutes in the blood plasma pass from the capillaries of the glomerulus into the capsular space of the nephron. To do so, fluid passes through three barriers that constitute the **filtration membrane** (fig. 23.9):

1. **The fenestrated endothelium of the capillary.** Endothelial cells of the glomerular capillaries are honeycombed with large pores about 70 to 90 nm in diameter (see fig. 20.6, p. 752). They are much more permeable than endothelial cells elsewhere, although their pores are small enough to exclude blood cells from the filtrate.
2. **The basement membrane.** This membrane consists of a proteoglycan gel. For large molecules to pass through it is like trying to pass sand through a kitchen sponge. A few particles may penetrate its small spaces, but most are held back. On the basis of size alone, the basement membrane would exclude any molecules larger than 8 nm. Some smaller molecules, however, are also held back by a negative electrical charge on the proteoglycans. Blood albumin is slightly less than 7 nm in diameter, but it is also negatively charged and thus repelled by the basement membrane. While the blood plasma is 7% protein, the glomerular filtrate is only 0.03% protein. It has traces of albumin and smaller polypeptides, including some hormones.
3. **Filtration slits.** The podocytes of the glomerular capsule are shaped somewhat like octopi, with bulbous cell bodies and several thick arms. Each arm has numerous little extensions called **pedicels**[12] **(foot processes)** that wrap around the capillaries and interdigitate with each other, like wrapping your hands around a pipe and lacing your fingers together. The pedicels have negatively charged **filtration slits** about 30 nm wide between them, which are an additional obstacle to large anions.

Almost any molecule smaller than 3 nm can pass freely through the filtration membrane into the capsular space. This includes water, electrolytes, glucose, fatty acids, amino acids, nitrogenous wastes, and vitamins. Such substances have about the same concentration in the glomerular filtrate as in the blood plasma. Some substances of low molecular weight are retained in the bloodstream because they are bound to plasma proteins that cannot get through the membrane. For example, most calcium, iron, and thyroid hormone in the blood are bound to plasma proteins that retard their filtration by the kidneys. The small fraction that is unbound, however, passes freely through the filtration membrane and appears in the urine.

Kidney infections and trauma can damage the filtration membrane and allow albumin or blood cells to filter through. Kidney disease is sometimes marked by the presence of protein (especially albumin) or blood in the urine—conditions called **proteinuria (albuminuria)** and **hematuria,** respectively. Distance runners and swimmers often experience temporary proteinuria and hematuria. Strenuous exercise greatly reduces perfusion of the kidneys, and the glomerulus deteriorates under the prolonged hypoxia, thus leaking protein and sometimes blood into the filtrate.

Filtration Pressure

Glomerular filtration follows the same principles that govern filtration in other blood capillaries (see pp. 761–762), but there are significant differences in the magnitude of the forces involved:

- The blood hydrostatic pressure (BHP) is much higher here than elsewhere—about 60 mmHg compared with 10 to 15 mmHg in most other capillaries. This results from the fact that the afferent arteriole is substantially

---

[12] *pedi* = foot + *cel* = little

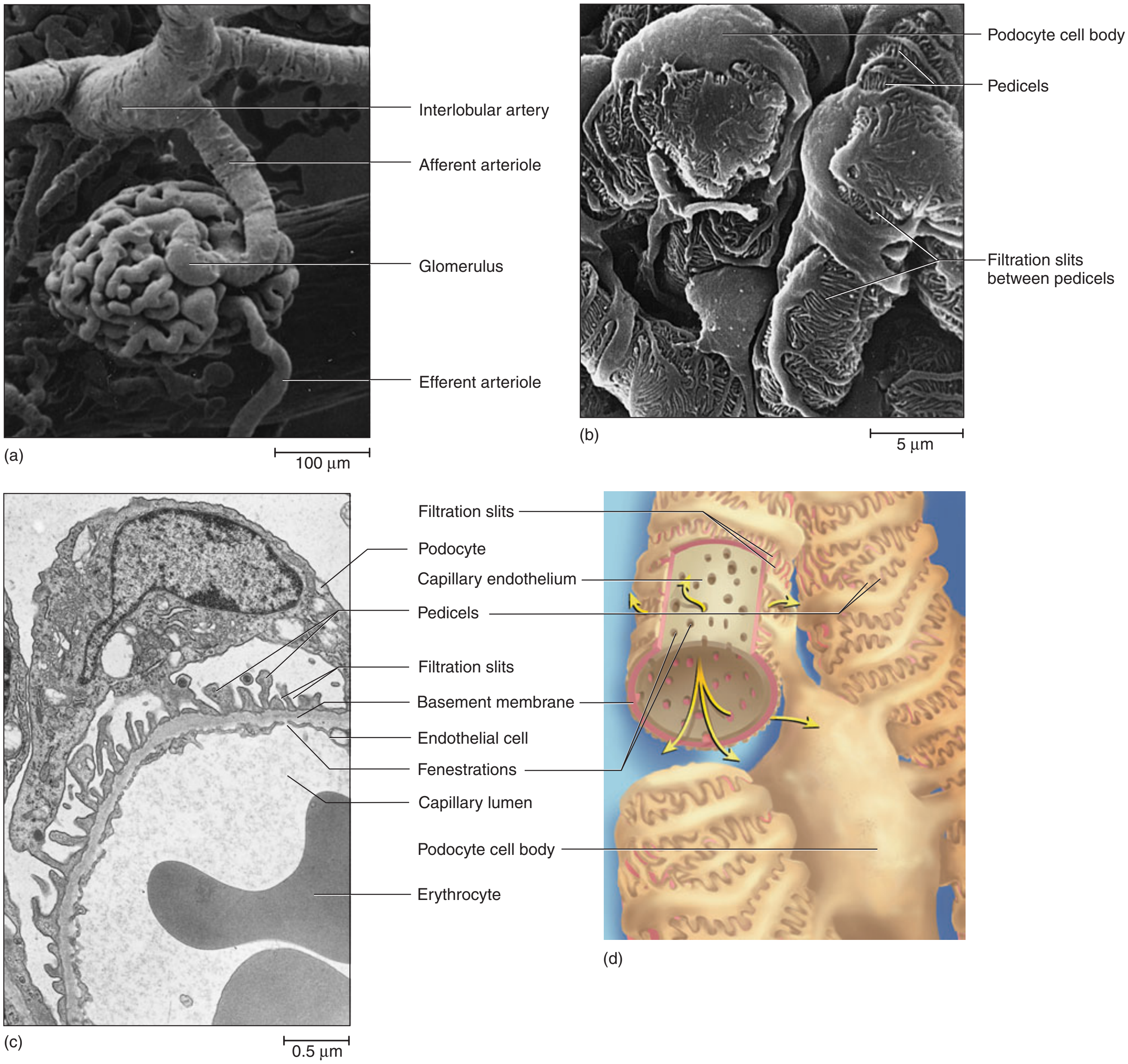

Interlobular artery
Afferent arteriole
Glomerulus
Efferent arteriole
(a)
100 µm
Podocyte cell body
Pedicels
Filtration slits between pedicels
(b)
5 µm
Podocyte
Pedicels
Filtration slits
Basement membrane
Endothelial cell
Fenestrations
Capillary lumen
Erythrocyte
(c)
0.5 µm
Filtration slits
Podocyte
Capillary endothelium
Pedicels
Basement membrane
Fenestrations
Podocyte cell body
(d)

Figure 23.9 **Structure of the Glomerulus.** (*a*) A resin cast of the glomerulus and nearby arteries (SEM). (*b*) Blood capillaries of the glomerulus closely wrapped in the spidery podocytes that form the visceral layer of the glomerular capsule (SEM). (*c*) A blood capillary and podocyte showing fenestrations and filtration slits (TEM). (*d*) The production of glomerular filtrate by the passage of fluid through the fenestrations and filtration slits.
(*a*) From R. G. Kessel and R. H. Kardon, *Tissues and Organs: A Text-Atlas of Scanning Electron Microscopy* (W. H. Freeman, 1979).
Which is larger, the efferent arteriole or the afferent arteriole? How does the difference affect the function of the glomerulus?

larger than the efferent arteriole, giving the glomerulus a large inlet and small outlet (fig. 23.9*a*).

- The hydrostatic pressure in the capsular space is about 18 mmHg, compared with the slightly negative interstitial pressures elsewhere. This results from the high rate of filtration occurring here and the continual accumulation of fluid in the capsule.
- The colloid osmotic pressure (COP) of the blood is about the same here as anywhere else, 32 mmHg.
- The glomerular filtrate is almost protein-free and has no significant COP. (This can change markedly in kidney diseases that allow protein to filter into the capsular space.)

On balance, then, we have a high outward pressure of 60 mmHg, opposed by two inward pressures of 18 and 32 mmHg (fig. 23.10), giving a net filtration pressure (NFP) of

$$60_{\text{out}} - 18_{\text{in}} - 32_{\text{in}} = 10\ \text{mmHg}_{\text{out}}$$

In most blood capillaries, the BHP drops low enough at the venous end that osmosis overrides filtration and the capillaries reabsorb fluid. Although BHP also drops along the course of the glomerular capillaries, it remains high enough that these capillaries are engaged solely in filtration. They reabsorb little or no fluid.

The high blood pressure in the glomeruli makes the kidneys especially vulnerable to hypertension, which can have devastating effects on renal function. Hypertension ruptures glomerular capillaries and leads to scarring of the kidneys *(nephrosclerosis).* It promotes atherosclerosis of the renal blood vessels just as it does elsewhere in the body and thus diminishes renal blood supply. Over time, hypertension often leads to renal failure.

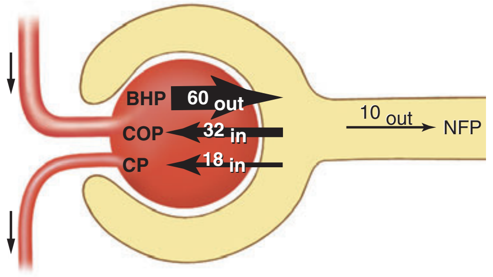
Glomerular Filtration Rate

Glomerular filtration rate (GFR) is the amount of filtrate formed per minute by the two kidneys combined. For every 1 mmHg of net filtration pressure, the kidneys produce about 12.5 mL of filtrate per minute. This value, called the *filtration coefficient* (K_f), depends on the permeability and surface area of the filtration barrier. K_f is about 10% lower in women than in men. For the reference male,

$$\text{GFR} = \text{NFP} \times K_f = 10 \times 12.5 = 125\ \text{mL/min}$$

In the reference female, the GFR is about 105 mL/min.

This is a rate of 180 L/day in males and 150 L/day in females—impressive numbers considering that this is about 50 to 60 times the amount of blood plasma in the body and equally exceeds the amount of filtrate produced by all other capillaries combined. Obviously only a small portion of this is eliminated as urine. An average adult reabsorbs 99% of the filtrate and excretes 1 to 2 L of urine per day.



Blood hydrostatic pressure (BHP)	60 mmHg out
Colloid osmotic pressure (COP)	–32 mmHg in
Capsular pressure (CP)	–18 mmHg in
Net filtration pressure (NFP)	10 mmHg out

Figure 23.10 **The Forces Involved in Glomerular Filtration.**

Regulation of Glomerular Filtration

GFR must be precisely controlled. If it is too high, fluid flows through the renal tubules too rapidly for them to reabsorb the usual amount of water and solutes. Urine output rises and creates a threat of dehydration and electrolyte depletion. If GFR is too low, fluid flows sluggishly through the tubules, they reabsorb wastes that should be eliminated in the urine, and azotemia may occur. The only way to adjust GFR from moment to moment is to change glomerular blood pressure. This is achieved by three homeostatic mechanisms: renal autoregulation, sympathetic control, and hormonal control.

Renal Autoregulation

Renal autoregulation is the ability of the nephrons to adjust their own blood flow and GFR without external (nervous or hormonal) control. It enables them to maintain a relatively stable GFR in spite of changes in arterial blood pressure. If the mean arterial pressure (MAP) rose from 100 to 125 mmHg and there were no renal autoregulation, urine output would increase from the normal 1 to 2 L/day to more than 45 L/day. Because of renal autoregulation, however, urine output increases only a few percent even if MAP rises as high as 160 mmHg. Renal autoregulation thus helps to ensure stable fluid and electrolyte balance in spite of the many circumstances that substantially alter one's blood pressure. There are two mechanisms of autoregulation: the myogenic mechanism and tubuloglomerular feedback.

The Myogenic Mechanism This mechanism of stabilizing the GFR is based on the tendency of smooth muscle to contract when stretched. When arterial blood pressure rises, it stretches the afferent arteriole. The arteriole constricts, and thus prevents blood flow into the glomerulus from changing very much. Conversely, when blood pressure falls, the afferent arteriole relaxes and allows blood to flow more easily into the glomerulus. Either way, glomerular blood flow and filtration remain fairly stable.

Tubuloglomerular Feedback In this mechanism, the juxtaglomerular apparatus (JGA) monitors the fluid entering the distal convoluted tubule and adjusts the GFR to maintain homeostasis. An understanding of this mechanism requires a closer look at the components of the JGA (fig. 23.11).

1. The **juxtaglomerular (JG) cells** are enlarged smooth muscle cells found in the afferent arteriole and to some extent in the efferent arteriole. When stimulated by the macula densa (discussed next), they dilate or constrict the arterioles. They also contain granules of renin, which they secrete in response to a drop in blood pressure. This initiates negative feedback mechanisms, described later, that raise blood pressure.
2. The **macula densa**[13] is a patch of slender, closely spaced epithelial cells at the start of the distal convoluted tubule (DCT), directly across from the JG cells.
3. **Mesangial**[14] **cells** are found in the cleft between the afferent and efferent arterioles and among capillaries of the glomerulus. Their role is not yet clearly understood, but they are connected to the macula densa and JG cells by gap junctions and perhaps mediate communication between those cells.

The details of tubuloglomerular feedback are still obscure. If GFR rises, however, it increases the flow of tubular fluid and the rate of NaCl reabsorption. The macula densa apparently senses variations in flow or fluid composition and secretes a paracrine messenger that stimulates the juxtaglomerular cells. Contraction of the juxtaglomerular cells constricts the afferent arteriole, thus reducing GFR to normal. The mesangial cells amid the glomerular capillaries may also contract, constricting the capillaries and reducing filtration (fig. 23.12). Conversely, if GFR falls, the macula densa may secrete a different messenger causing the afferent arteriole and mesangial cells to relax, blood flow to increase, and GFR to rise back to normal.

Think About It

Describe or diagram a negative feedback loop similar to figure 23.12 to show how the macula densa could compensate for a drop in systemic blood pressure.

Two important points must be noted about renal autoregulation. First, it does not completely prevent changes in the GFR. Like any other homeostatic mechanism, it maintains a *dynamic equilibrium;* the GFR fluctuates within narrow limits. Changes in blood pressure do affect the GFR and urine output. Second, renal autoregulation cannot compensate for extreme blood pressure variations. Over a MAP range of 90 to 180 mmHg, the GFR remains quite stable. Below 70 mmHg, however, glomerular filtration and urine output cease. This can happen in hypovolemic shock (p. 765).

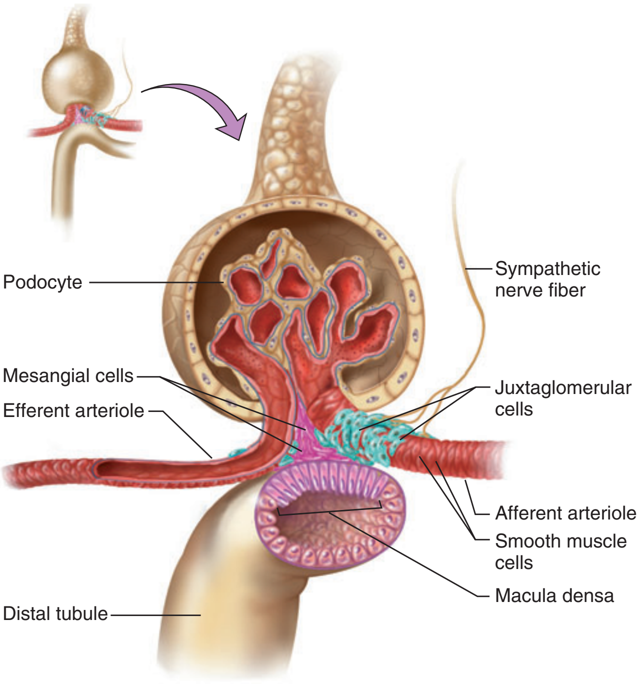


Figure 23.11 **The Juxtaglomerular Apparatus.**

Sympathetic Control

Sympathetic nerve fibers richly innervate the renal blood vessels. In strenuous exercise or acute conditions such as circulatory shock, the sympathetic nervous system and adrenal epinephrine constrict the afferent arterioles. This reduces GFR and urine production, while redirecting blood from the kidneys to the heart, brain, and skeletal muscles, where it is more urgently needed. Under such conditions, GFR may be as low as a few milliliters per minute.

The Renin-Angiotensin Mechanism

When blood pressure drops, the sympathetic nerves also stimulate the juxtaglomerular cells to secrete the enzyme **renin** (REE-nin). Renin acts on a plasma protein, *angiotensinogen,* to remove a fragment called angiotensin I, a chain of 10 amino acids. In the lungs and kidneys, **angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE)** removes two more

---

[13] *macula* = spot, patch + *densa* = dense
[14] *mes* = in the middle + *angi* = vessel

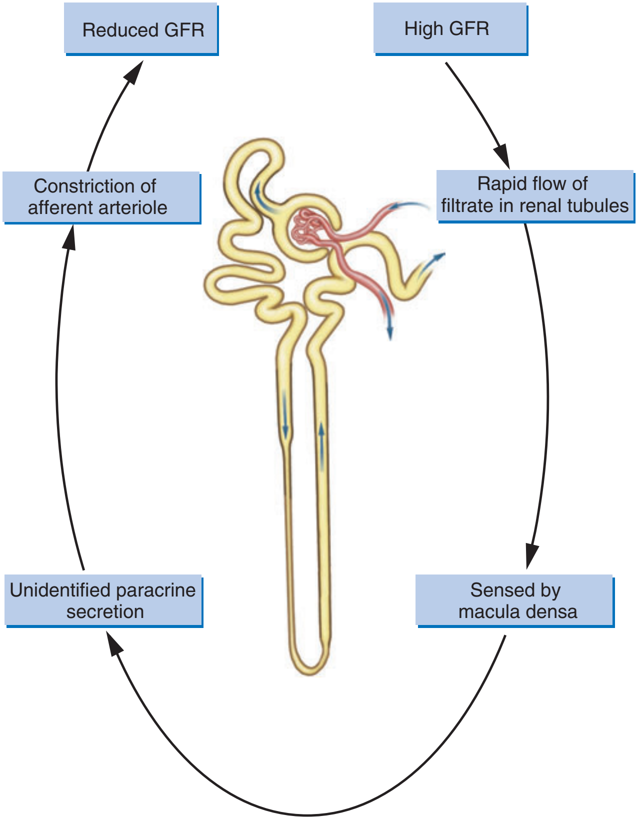

Reduced GFR
High GFR
Constriction of afferent arteriole
Rapid flow of filtrate in renal tubules
Unidentified paracrine secretion
Sensed by macula densa

Figure 23.12 **Negative Feedback Control of Glomerular Filtration Rate.**

amino acids, converting it to **angiotensin II,** a hormone with multiple effects (fig. 23.13):

- It stimulates widespread vasoconstriction, which raises the MAP throughout the body.
- It constricts both the afferent and efferent arterioles. The net effect of this is to reduce GFR and water loss.
- It stimulates the secretion of antidiuretic hormone, which promotes water reabsorption.
- It stimulates the adrenal cortex to secrete aldosterone, which in turn promotes sodium and water retention.
- It stimulates the sense of thirst and encourages water intake.

Some of these effects are explained more fully later in this chapter and in chapter 24.

Think About It

What do you predict would be the effect of ACE inhibitors (see p. 759) on the tubular reabsorption of water by the kidneys?

To summarize the events thus far: Glomerular filtration occurs because the high blood pressure of the glomerular capillaries overrides reabsorption. The filtration membrane allows most plasma solutes into the capsular space while retaining formed elements and protein in the bloodstream. Glomerular filtration is maintained at a fairly steady rate of about 125 mL/min in spite of variations in systemic blood pressure. This stability is achieved by renal autoregulation, sympathetic control, and hormonal control.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

7. Name the four major processes in urine production.
8. Trace the movement of a urea molecule from the blood to the capsular space, and name the barriers it passes through.
9. Calculate the net filtration pressure in a patient whose blood COP is only 10 mmHg because of hypoproteinemia. Assume other relevant variables to be normal.
10. Assume a person is moderately dehydrated and has low blood pressure. Describe the homeostatic mechanisms that would help the kidneys maintain a normal GFR.

Urine Formation II: Tubular Reabsorption and Secretion

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe how the renal tubules reabsorb useful solutes from the glomerular filtrate and return them to the blood;
- describe how the tubules secrete solutes from the blood into the tubular fluid; and
- describe how the nephron regulates water excretion.

Conversion of the glomerular filtrate to urine involves the removal and addition of chemicals by tubular reabsorption and secretion, to be described in this section. Here we trace the course of the tubular fluid through the nephron, from proximal convoluted tubule through distal convoluted tubule, and see how the filtrate is modified at each point along the way. Refer to figure 23.8 to put these processes into perspective.

The Proximal Convoluted Tubule

The proximal convoluted tubule (PCT) reabsorbs about 65% of the glomerular filtrate, while it also removes some substances from the blood and secretes them into the tubule for disposal in the urine. The importance of the PCT is reflected in its relatively great length and prominent microvilli, which increase its absorptive surface area. Its cells also contain abundant large mitochondria that provide

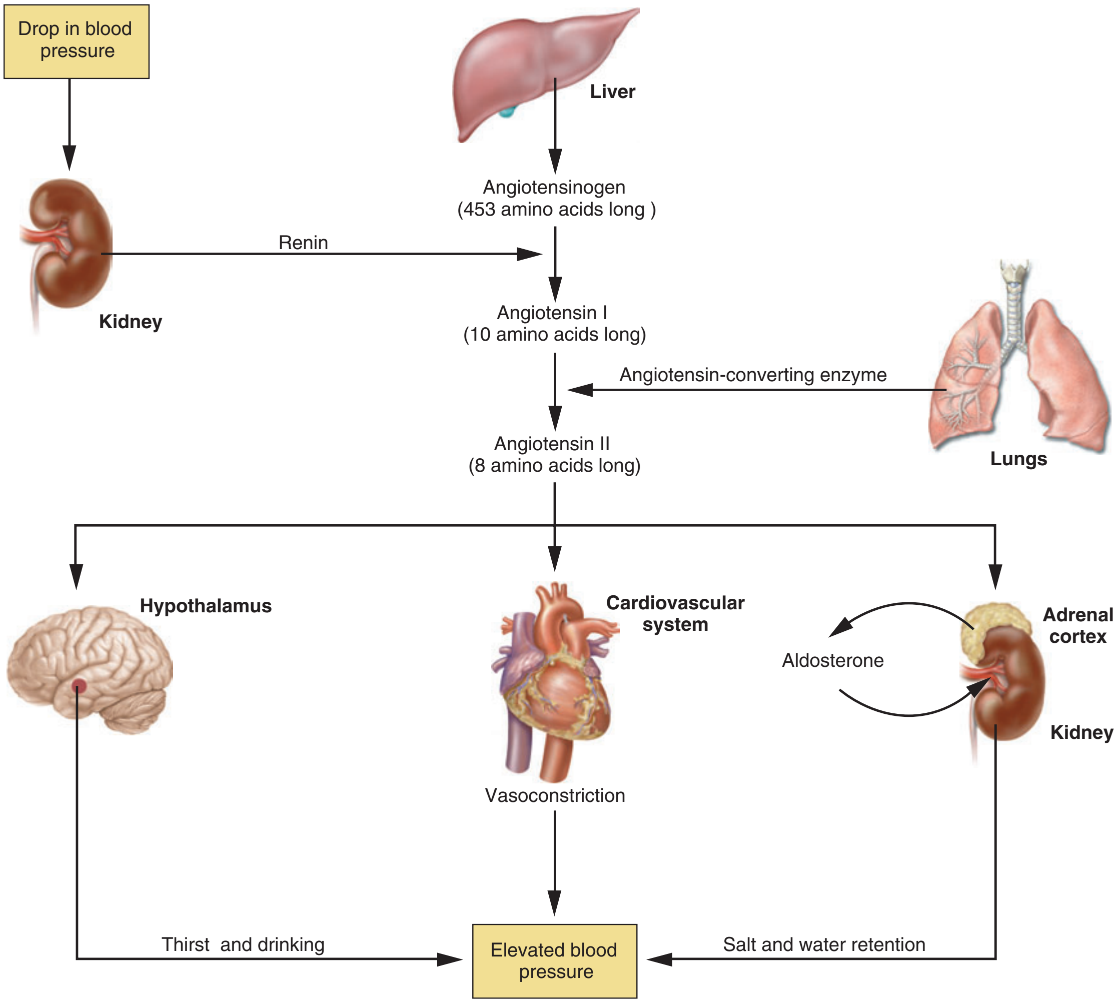

Drop in blood pressure
Liver
Angiotensinogen (453 amino acids long)
Renin
Kidney
Angiotensin I (10 amino acids long)
Angiotensin-converting enzyme
Lungs
Angiotensin II (8 amino acids long)
Hypothalamus
Cardiovascular system
Adrenal cortex
Aldosterone
Kidney
Vasoconstriction
Thirst and drinking
Elevated blood pressure
Salt and water retention

Figure 23.13 **The Renin-Angiotensin-Aldosterone Mechanism.** This chain of events is activated by a drop in blood pressure and acts to raise it again.

ATP for active transport. Your PCTs alone account for about 6% of your resting ATP and calorie consumption.

Tubular reabsorption is the process of reclaiming water and solutes from the tubular fluid and returning them to the blood. The PCT reabsorbs a greater variety of chemicals than any other part of the nephron. There are two routes of reabsorption: (1) the **transcellular**[15] **route,** in which substances pass through the cytoplasm and out the base of the epithelial cells and (2) the **paracellular**[16] **route,** in which substances pass between the epithelial cells. The "tight" junctions between tubule epithelial cells are quite leaky and allow significant amounts of water, minerals, urea, and other matter to pass between the cells. Either way, such materials enter the extracellular fluid (ECF) at the base of the epithelium, and from there they are taken up by the peritubular capillaries. In the following discussion and figure 23.14, we examine mechanisms for the reabsorption of water and some individual solutes.

Sodium Sodium reabsorption is the key to everything else, because it creates an osmotic and electrical gradient that drives the reabsorption of water and the other solutes. Sodium, the most abundant cation in the glomerular filtrate, is reabsorbed by both the transcellular and paracellular routes. It has a concentration of 140 mEq/L in the fluid entering the PCT and only 12 mEq/L in the cytoplasm of the

---

[15] *trans* = across
[16] *para* = next to

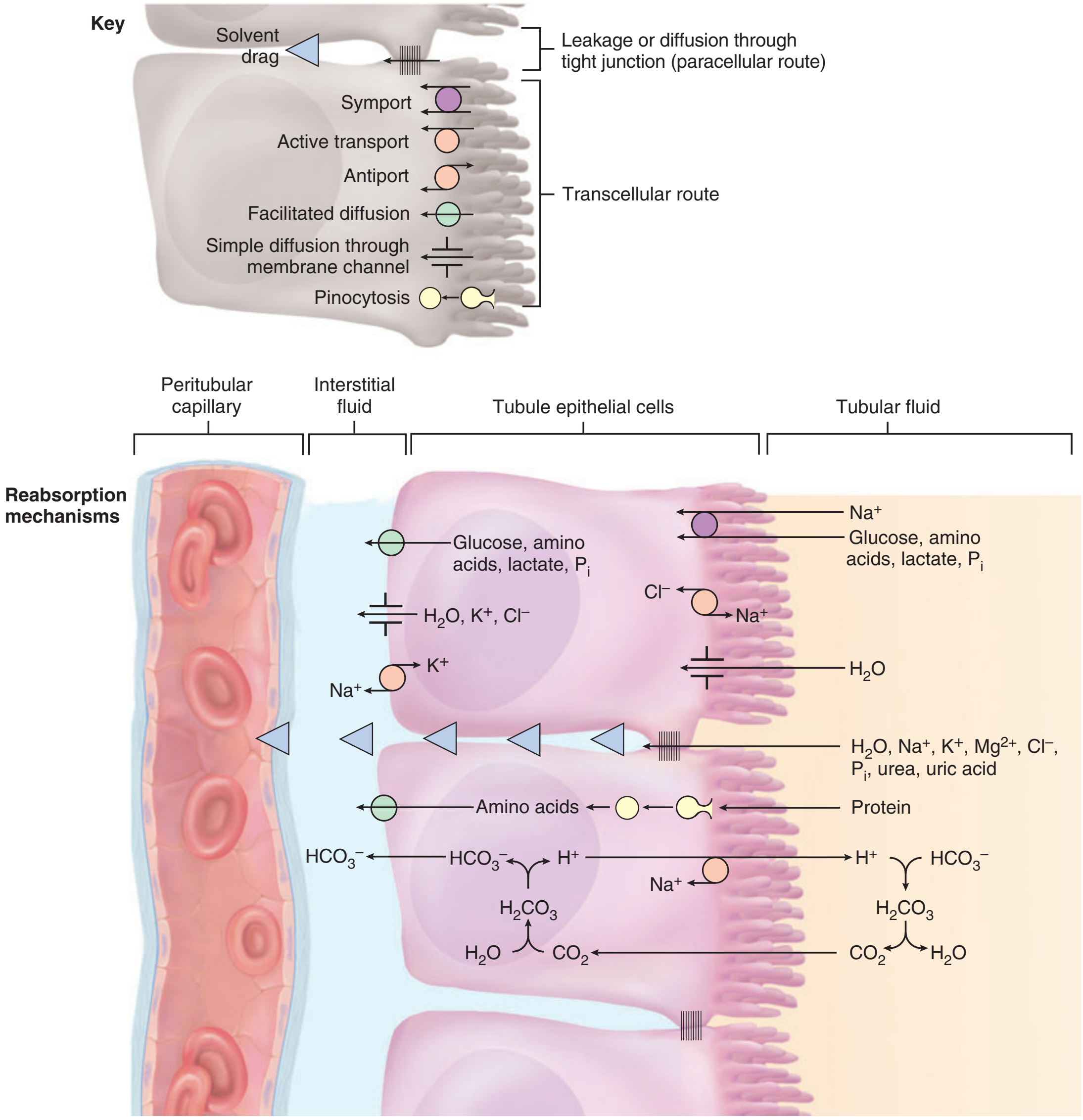

Key
Solvent drag
Leakage or diffusion through tight junction (paracellular route)
Symport
Active transport
Antiport
Facilitated diffusion
Simple diffusion through membrane channel
Pinocytosis
Transcellular route
Peritubular capillary
Interstitial fluid
Tubule epithelial cells
Tubular fluid
Reabsorption mechanisms
Na+
Glucose, amino acids, lactate, Pi
Glucose, amino acids, lactate, Pi
Cl–
Na+
H2O, K+, Cl–
H2O
K+
Na+
H2O, Na+, K+, Mg2+, Cl–, Pi, urea, uric acid
Amino acids
Protein
HCO3–
HCO3–
H+
H+
HCO3–
Na+
H2CO3
H2CO3
H2O
CO2
CO2
H2O

Figure 23.14 **Mechanisms of Reabsorption in the Proximal Convoluted Tubule.**
How would increased Na^+ reabsorption affect the pH of the urine? Why?

Chapter 23

epithelial cells. Thus there is a steep concentration gradient favoring its facilitated diffusion into the epithelial cells.

In the first half of the proximal convoluted tubule, sodium is absorbed by several symport proteins that simultaneously bind glucose, amino acids, phosphate, or lactate and transport them into the cell. In addition, H^+ ions are generated within the cell by the reaction $CO_2 + H_2O \rightarrow H_2CO_3 \rightarrow HCO_3^- + H^+$, and then an Na^+-H^+ antiport in the membrane transports H^+ out of the cell and Na^+ in. (The fate of the HCO_3^- is explained shortly.) In the second half of the proximal tubule, the organic molecules in the tubular fluid have been largely depleted by reabsorption, but the chloride ion concentration is high. Thus, in this part of the tubule, Na^+ crosses the epithelium with Cl^- through both transcellular and paracellular routes.

Sodium uptake is possible only because the Na^+ concentration in the tubule cells is much lower than in the tubular fluid. But with all this Na^+ entering the tubule cells, how does its cytoplasmic concentration remain so low? Why doesn't the inflow of Na^+ stop? The answer is that Na^+-K^+ pumps in the basal and lateral plasma membrane continually pump Na^+ out of the cell and into the extracellular fluid beneath the tubule epithelium. The transport of Na^+ and other Na^+-linked solutes through the apical plasma membrane thus exemplifies *secondary active transport,* because even though the cotransport proteins here do not use ATP, they depend on the ATP-consuming Na^+-K^+ pumps in the basolateral part of the cell.

Chloride Chloride is reabsorbed through both the paracellular and transcellular routes. Its reabsorption is favored by two factors: (1) negative chloride ions tend to follow the positive sodium ions by electrical attraction, and (2) water reabsorption raises the Cl^- concentration in the tubular fluid, thereby creating a gradient favorable to Cl^- reabsorption, especially in the second half of the tubule. In the transcellular route, Cl^- is apically absorbed by various antiports that exchange Cl^- for other anions. A K^+-Cl^- symport transports the chloride ions out the basolateral cell surfaces.

Bicarbonate Substantial amounts of bicarbonate ion (HCO_3^-) are filtered out of the blood by the glomerulus, and yet the urine is usually bicarbonate-free. Thus it would seem as if all the bicarbonate is reabsorbed by the nephron, but this is only an appearance. Bicarbonate ions do not actually cross the apical plasma membranes of the tubule cells. However, the tubule cells generate bicarbonate and hydrogen ions internally by the reaction of CO_2 and water. The hydrogen ions are pumped into the tubular fluid by the Na^+-H^+ antiport mentioned earlier, and neutralize the HCO_3^- in the tubule. The bicarbonate ions are pumped out the base of the cell and enter the blood. Thus one HCO_3^- disappears from the tubule fluid as one new HCO_3^- appears in the blood, and the net effect is the same as if an HCO_3^- ion had actually crossed the epithelium from tubular fluid to blood.

Other Electrolytes Potassium, magnesium, and phosphate (P_i) ions diffuse through the paracellular route with water. Phosphate is also cotransported into the epithelial cells with Na^+ as noted earlier. Some calcium is reabsorbed through the paracellular route in the proximal tubule, but most Ca^{2+} absorption occurs later in the nephron, as we will see then. Sulfates and nitrates are not reabsorbed; thus they pass in the urine.

Glucose Glucose is cotransported with Na^+ by carriers called **sodium-glucose transport proteins (SGLTs).** It is then removed from the basolateral surface of the cell by facilitated diffusion. Normally all glucose in the tubular fluid is reabsorbed and there is none in the urine.

Nitrogenous Wastes Urea diffuses through the tubule epithelium with water. The nephron as a whole reabsorbs 40% to 60% of the urea in the tubular fluid, but since it reabsorbs 99% of the water, urine has a substantially higher urea concentration than blood or glomerular filtrate. When blood enters the kidney, its urea concentration is about 20 mg/dL; when it leaves the kidney, it is typically down to 10.4 mg/dL. Thus the kidney removes about half of the urea, keeping its concentration down to a safe level but not completely clearing the blood of it.

The PCT reabsorbs nearly all the uric acid entering it, but later parts of the nephron secrete it back into the tubular fluid. Creatinine is not reabsorbed at all. It is too large to diffuse through water channels in the plasma membrane, and there are no transport proteins for it. Therefore, all creatinine filtered by the glomerulus is excreted in the urine.

Other Organic Solutes Some apical Na^+ carriers also bind and transport amino acids and lactate. Peptide hormones, other small peptides, and small amounts of larger proteins filter through the glomerulus. Although their rate of filtration is low, it would amount to a protein loss of 7.2 g/day if the protein were not reabsorbed. PCT cells partially degrade proteins to smaller peptides by means of enzymes on their brush border, then absorb the peptides and break them down the rest of the way to amino acids. Amino acids, lactate, and other small organics leave the basal side of the cell by facilitated diffusion.

Water The kidneys reduce about 180 liters of glomerular filtrate to 1 or 2 liters of urine each day, so obviously water reabsorption is a significant function. About two-thirds of the water is reabsorbed by the PCT. The reabsorption of all the salt and organic solutes as just described makes the tubule cells and surrounding tissue fluid hypertonic to the tubular fluid. Water follows the solutes by osmosis through both the paracellular and transcellular routes. Transcellular absorption occurs by way of water channels called **aquaporins** in the plasma membrane.

Because the PCT reabsorbs proportionate amounts of solutes and water, the osmolarity of the tubular fluid remains unchanged in the PCT. Elsewhere in the nephron, the amount of water reabsorption is continually modulated by hormones according to the body's state of hydration. In the PCT, however, water is reabsorbed at a constant rate called **obligatory water reabsorption.**

Uptake By the Peritubular Capillaries

After water and solutes leave the basal surface of the tubule epithelium, they are reabsorbed by the peritubular capillaries, thus returning to the bloodstream. The mechanisms of capillary absorption are osmosis and solvent drag. Three factors promote osmosis into these capillaries: (1) The accumulation of reabsorbed fluid around the basolateral sides of the epithelial cells creates a high interstitial fluid pressure that tends to drive water into the capillaries. (2) The narrowness of the efferent arteriole lowers the blood hydrostatic pressure (BHP) from 60 mmHg in the glomerulus to only 8 mmHg in the peritubular capillaries,

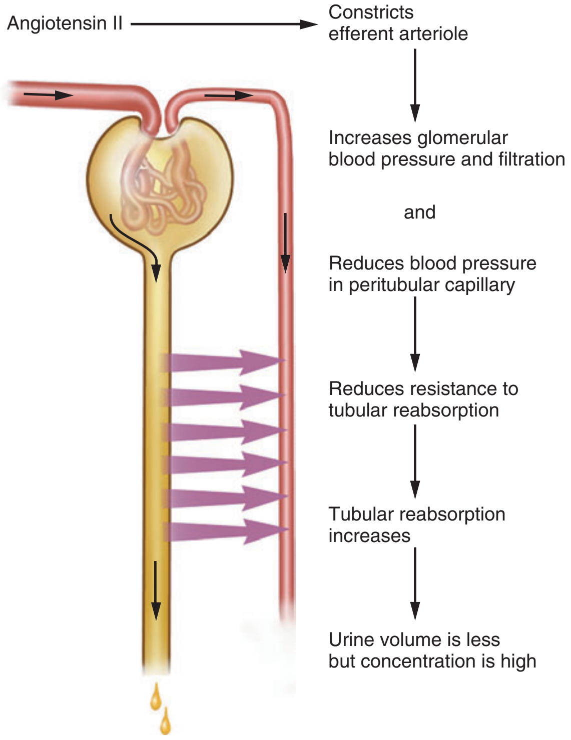

Angiotensin II
Constricts efferent arteriole
Increases glomerular blood pressure and filtration
and
Reduces blood pressure in peritubular capillary
Reduces resistance to tubular reabsorption
Tubular reabsorption increases
Urine volume is less but concentration is high

Figure 23.15 **The Effect of Angiotensin II on Urine Volume and Concentration.**

so there is less capillary resistance to reabsorption here than in most systemic capillaries (fig. 23.15). (3) As blood passes through the glomerulus, a lot of water is filtered out but nearly all of the protein remains in the blood. Therefore, the blood has an elevated colloid osmotic pressure (COP) by the time it leaves the glomerulus. With a high COP and low BHP in the capillaries and a high hydrostatic pressure in the tissue fluid, the balance of forces in the peritubular capillaries strongly favors reabsorption. Water on the basal side of the tubular epithelium therefore passes into the capillaries. The dissolved solutes enter the capillaries by **solvent drag**—the water "drags" these solutes into the capillary with it.

The Transport Maximum

There is a limit to the amount of solute that the renal tubule can reabsorb because there are a limited number of transport proteins in the plasma membranes. If all the transporters are occupied as solute molecules pass through, some solute will escape reabsorption and appear in the urine. The maximum rate of reabsorption is the *transport maximum* (T_m), which is reached when the transporters are saturated (see p. 109). Each organic solute reabsorbed by the renal tubule has its own T_m. For glucose, for example, $T_m = 320$ mg/min. Glucose normally enters the renal tubule at a rate of 125 mg/min, well within the T_m; thus all of it is reabsorbed. But when the plasma concentration of glucose reaches a *threshold* of about 220 mg/dL, more glucose is filtered than the tubule can reabsorb, and we begin to see the excess glucose in the urine, a condition called **glycosuria**[17] (GLY-co-soo-ree-uh). In untreated diabetes mellitus, the plasma glucose concentration may exceed 400 mg/dL, so glycosuria is one of the classic signs of this disease.

Tubular Secretion

Tubular secretion is a process in which the renal tubule extracts chemicals from the capillary blood and secretes them into the tubular fluid (see fig. 23.8). Tubular secretion in the distal convoluted tubule is discussed shortly. In the proximal convoluted tubule and nephron loop, it serves two purposes:

1. **Waste removal.** Urea, uric acid, bile acids, ammonia, catecholamines, and a little creatinine are secreted into the tubule. Tubular secretion of uric acid compensates for its reabsorption earlier in the PCT and accounts for all of the uric acid in the urine. Tubular secretion also clears the blood of pollutants, morphine, penicillin, aspirin, and other drugs. One reason that so many drugs must be taken three or four times a day is to keep pace with this rate of clearance and maintain a therapeutically effective drug concentration in the blood.
2. **Acid-base balance.** Tubular secretion of hydrogen and bicarbonate ions serves to regulate the pH of the body fluids. The details are discussed in chapter 24.

The Nephron Loop

The primary function of the nephron loop is to generate a salinity gradient that enables the collecting duct to concentrate the urine and conserve water, as discussed later. But in addition, the loop reabsorbs about 25% of the Na^+, K^+, and Cl^- and 15% of the water in the glomerular filtrate. Cells in the thick segment of the loop have proteins in the apical membranes that simultaneously bind 1 Na^+, 1 K^+, and 2 Cl^- from the tubular fluid and cotransport them into the cytoplasm. These ions leave the basolateral cell surfaces by active transport of Na^+ and diffusion of K^+ and Cl^-. Potassium reenters the cell by means of the Na^+-K^+ pump and then reenters the tubular fluid, but NaCl remains in the tissue fluid of the renal medulla. The thick segment of the loop is impermeable to water; thus water cannot follow the reabsorbed electrolytes, and tubular fluid becomes very dilute by the time it passes from the nephron loop into the distal convoluted tubule.

---

[17] *glycos* = sugar + *uria* = urine condition

The Distal Convoluted Tubule and Collecting Duct

Fluid arriving in the DCT still contains about 20% of the water and 7% of the salts from the glomerular filtrate. If this were all passed as urine, it would amount to 36 L/day, so obviously a great deal of fluid reabsorption is still to come. A distinguishing feature of these parts of the renal tubule is that unlike the PCT and nephron loop, they are subject to hormonal control—particularly by aldosterone, atrial natriuretic peptide, antidiuretic hormone, and parathyroid hormone. There are two kinds of cells in the DCT and collecting duct. The **principal cells** are the more abundant; they have receptors for these hormones and are involved chiefly in salt and water balance. The **intercalated cells** are fewer in number. They have a high density of mitochondria, reabsorb K^+, secrete H^+ into the tubule lumen, and are involved mainly in acid-base balance, as discussed in chapter 24.

Chapter 23

Aldosterone

Aldosterone, the "salt-retaining hormone," is a steroid secreted by the adrenal cortex. A drop in blood Na^+ concentration or a rise in K^+ concentration directly stimulates aldosterone secretion. A drop in blood pressure does so indirectly—it stimulates the kidney to secrete renin, this leads to the production of angiotensin II, and angiotensin II stimulates aldosterone secretion (see fig. 23.13). The mechanism of aldosterone action on the kidney tubule is detailed in the following chapter, but its general effect is to cause the DCT and cortical portion of the collecting duct to reabsorb more Na^+ (which is followed by Cl^- and water) and to secrete more K^+. Thus the urine volume is reduced, and it contains more K^+ but less NaCl. Salt and water reabsorption helps to maintain blood volume and pressure.

Atrial Natriuretic Peptide

Atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP) is secreted by the atrial myocardium of the heart in response to high blood pressure. ANP has four actions that result in the excretion of more salt and water in the urine, thus reducing blood volume and pressure:

1. It dilates the afferent arteriole and constricts the efferent arteriole, thus increasing the glomerular filtration rate.
2. It antagonizes the angiotensin-aldosterone mechanism by inhibiting the adrenal cortex from secreting aldosterone and inhibiting the kidney from secreting renin.
3. It inhibits the secretion of ADH by the pituitary and the action of ADH on the kidney.
4. It inhibits NaCl reabsorption by the collecting duct.

Antidiuretic Hormone

Antidiuretic hormone (ADH) is secreted by the posterior lobe of the pituitary gland in response to dehydration and rising blood osmolarity. Its mechanism of action is explained later in more detail. Briefly, it makes the collecting duct more permeable to water, so water in the tubular fluid reenters the tissue fluid and bloodstream rather than being lost in the urine.

Parathyroid Hormone

Parathyroid hormone (PTH) promotes calcium reabsorption by the ascending limb of the nephron loop and the DCT. PTH is secreted when the plasma Ca^{2+} concentration falls below normal, and acts to minimize further loss of Ca^{2+} in the urine. PTH also inhibits phosphate reabsorption by the proximal convoluted tubule, thus increasing the urinary output of phosphate. This prevents phosphate from binding with plasma calcium and precipitating in the bone and other tissues. PTH also promotes magnesium reabsorption, and stimulates the kidney to complete the synthesis of calcitriol (see chapter 7).

In summary, the PCT reabsorbs about 65% of the glomerular filtrate and returns it to the blood of the peritubular capillaries. Much of this reabsorption occurs by osmotic and cotransport mechanisms linked to the active transport of sodium ions. The nephron loop reabsorbs another 25% of the filtrate, although its primary role, detailed later, is to aid the function of the collecting duct. The DCT reabsorbs more sodium, chloride, and water, but its rates of reabsorption are subject to control by hormones, especially aldosterone and ANP. These tubules also extract drugs, wastes, and some other solutes from the blood and secrete them into the tubular fluid. The DCT essentially completes the process of determining the chemical composition of the urine. The principal function left to the collecting duct is to conserve body water.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

11. The reabsorption of water, Cl^-, and glucose by the PCT are all linked to the reabsorption of Na^+, but in three very different ways. Contrast these three mechanisms.
12. Explain why a substance appears in the urine if its rate of glomerular filtration exceeds the T_m of the renal tubule.
13. Contrast the effects of aldosterone and ANF on the renal tubule.

Urine Formation III: Water Conservation

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- explain how the collecting duct and antidiuretic hormone regulate the volume and concentration of urine; and
- explain how the kidney maintains an osmotic gradient in the renal medulla that enables the collecting duct to function.

The kidney serves not just to eliminate metabolic waste from the body but to prevent excessive water loss in doing so, and thus to support the body's fluid balance. As the kidney returns water to the tissue fluid and bloodstream, the fluid remaining in the renal tubule becomes more and more concentrated. In this section, we examine the kidney's mechanisms for conserving water and concentrating the urine.

The Collecting Duct

The collecting duct (CD) begins in the cortex, where it receives tubular fluid from numerous nephrons. As it passes through the medulla, it usually reabsorbs water and concentrates the urine. When urine enters the upper end of the CD, it has a concentration of 100 to 300 mOsm/L, but by the time it leaves the lower end, it can be up to four times as concentrated. This ability to concentrate wastes and control water loss was crucial to the evolution of terrestrial animals such as ourselves (see insight 23.1).

Two facts enable the collecting duct to produce such hypertonic urine: (1) the osmolarity of the extracellular fluid is four times as high deep in the medulla as it is in the cortex, and (2) the medullary portion of the CD is more permeable to water than to NaCl. Therefore, as urine passes down the CD through the increasingly salty medulla, water leaves the tubule by osmosis, most NaCl and other wastes remain behind, and the urine becomes more and more concentrated (fig. 23.16).

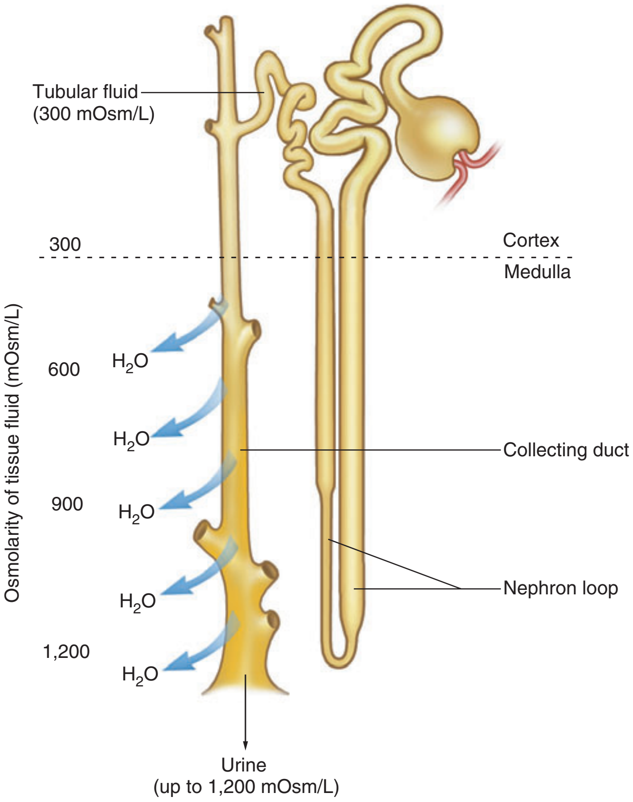

Tubular fluid (300 mOsm/L)
300
Cortex
Medulla
Osmolarity of tissue fluid (mOsm/L)
600
H_2O
H_2O
Collecting duct
900
H_2O
H_2O
Nephron loop
1,200
H_2O
Urine (up to 1,200 mOsm/L)

Figure 23.16 Water Reabsorption by the Collecting Duct. Note that the osmolarity of the tissue fluid increases fourfold from 300 mOsm/L in the cortex to 1,200 mOsm/L deep in the medulla. When the collecting duct has open water channels, water leaves the duct by osmosis and urine concentration increases.

Insight 23.1 Evolutionary Medicine

The Kidney and Life on Dry Land

Physiologists first suspected that the nephron loop plays a role in water conservation because of their studies of a variety of animal species. Animals that must conserve water have longer, more numerous nephron loops than animals with little need to conserve it. Fish and amphibians lack nephron loops and produce urine that is isotonic to their blood plasma. Aquatic mammals such as beavers have short nephron loops and only slightly hypertonic urine.

But the kangaroo rat, a desert rodent, provides an instructive contrast. It lives on seeds and other dry foods and need never drink water. The water produced by its aerobic respiration is enough to meet its needs because its kidneys are extraordinarily efficient at conserving water. They have extremely long nephron loops and produce urine that is 10 to 14 times as concentrated as their blood plasma (compared with about 4 times, at most, in humans).

Comparative studies thus suggested a hypothesis for the function of the nephron loop and prompted many years of difficult research that led to the discovery of the countercurrent multiplier mechanism for water conservation. This shows how comparative anatomy provides suggestions and insights into function and why physiologists do not study human function in isolation from other species.

Control of Water Loss

Just *how* concentrated the urine becomes depends on the body's state of hydration. For example, if you drink a large volume of water, you will soon produce a large volume of hypotonic urine. This response is called *water diuresis*[18] (DY-you-REE-sis). Under such conditions, the cortical

---

[18] *diuresis* = passing urine

portion of the CD reabsorbs NaCl but is impermeable to water. Thus salt is removed from the urine, water stays in the CD, and urine concentration may be as low as 50 mOsm/L.

Dehydration, on the other hand, causes your urine to be scanty and more concentrated. The high blood osmolarity of a dehydrated person stimulates the release of ADH from the posterior lobe of the pituitary gland. ADH induces the renal tubule cells to synthesize aquaporins (water-channel proteins) and install them in the plasma membrane, so more water can pass through the epithelial cells. The CD then reabsorbs more water, which is carried away by the peritubular capillaries. Urine output is consequently reduced. By contrast, when you are well hydrated, ADH secretion falls and the tubule cells remove aquaporins from the plasma membrane. Water is then less able to escape the tubule, so it remains in the duct and you produce abundant, dilute urine.

In extreme cases, the blood pressure of a dehydrated person is low enough to reduce the glomerular filtration rate. When the GFR is low, fluid flows more slowly through the renal tubules and there is more time for tubular reabsorption. Less salt remains in the urine as it enters the collecting duct, so there is less opposition to the osmosis of water out of the duct and into the ECF. More water is reabsorbed and less urine is produced.

The Countercurrent Multiplier

The ability of the CD to concentrate urine depends on the salinity gradient of the renal medulla. It may seem surprising that the ECF is four times as salty deep in the medulla as it is in the cortex. We would expect the salt to diffuse toward the cortex until it was evenly distributed through the kidney. However, there is a mechanism that overrides this—the nephron loop acts as a **countercurrent multiplier,** which continually recaptures salt and returns it to the deep medullary tissue. It is called a *multiplier* because it multiplies the salinity deep in the medulla and a *countercurrent* mechanism because it is based on fluid flowing in opposite directions in two adjacent tubules—downward in the descending limb and upward in the ascending limb. The countercurrent multiplier works as follows:

1. The thin segment of the descending limb is very permeable to water but not to NaCl. Therefore, as the tubular fluid descends into the increasingly salty medulla, more and more water leaves the descending limb while NaCl remains in the tubule. As the fluid reaches the lower end of the loop, it has a concentration of about 1,200 mOsm/L.
2. Most or all of the ascending limb (its thick segment), by contrast, is impermeable to water, but actively cotransports Na^+, K^+, and Cl^- into the ECF. This keeps the osmolarity of the renal medulla high. Since water remains in the tubule, the tubular fluid becomes more and more dilute as it approaches the cortex. It is about 100 mOsm/L at the top of the loop.

The essence of the *countercurrent* mechanism is that the two limbs of the nephron loop are close enough to influence each other through a positive feedback relationship, as shown in figure 23.17.

The collecting duct also helps to maintain the osmotic gradient (fig. 23.18). Its lower end is somewhat permeable to urea, which diffuses down its concentration gradient, out of the duct and into the tissue fluid. Some of this urea enters the descending thin segment of the nephron loop and travels to the distal convoluted tubule. Neither the thick segment of the loop nor the distal tubule is permeable to urea, so urea remains in the tubules and returns to the collecting duct. Combined with new urea being added continually by the glomerular filtrate, urea becomes more and more concentrated in the fluid of the collecting duct, and still more diffuses out into the medulla. Thus there is a continual recycling of urea from the collecting duct to the medulla and back. Urea accounts for about 40% of the high osmolarity deep in the medulla.

The Countercurrent Exchange System

The renal medulla must have a blood supply to meet its metabolic needs, and this creates a potential problem—capillaries of the medulla could carry away the urea and salt that produce the high osmolarity. The vasa recta that supply the medulla, however, form a countercurrent system of their own that prevents this from happening. Blood flows in opposite directions in adjacent parallel capillaries. These capillaries form a **countercurrent exchange system.** Blood in the vasa recta exchanges water for salt as it flows downward into the deep medulla—water diffuses out of the capillaries and salt diffuses in. As the blood flows back toward the cortex, the opposite occurs; it exchanges salt for water. Thus, the vasa recta give the salt back and do not subtract from the osmolarity of the medulla. Indeed, they absorb more water on the way out than they unload on the way in; they carry away the water reabsorbed from the urine by the collecting duct and nephron loop.

To summarize what we have studied in this section, the collecting duct can adjust water reabsorption to produce urine as hypotonic as 50 mOsm/L or as hypertonic as 1,200 mOsm/L, depending on the body's need for water conservation or removal. In a state of hydration, ADH is not secreted and the cortical part of the CD reabsorbs salt without reabsorbing water; the water remains to be excreted in the dilute urine. In a state of dehydration, ADH is secreted, the medullary part of the CD reabsorbs water, and the urine is more concentrated. The CD

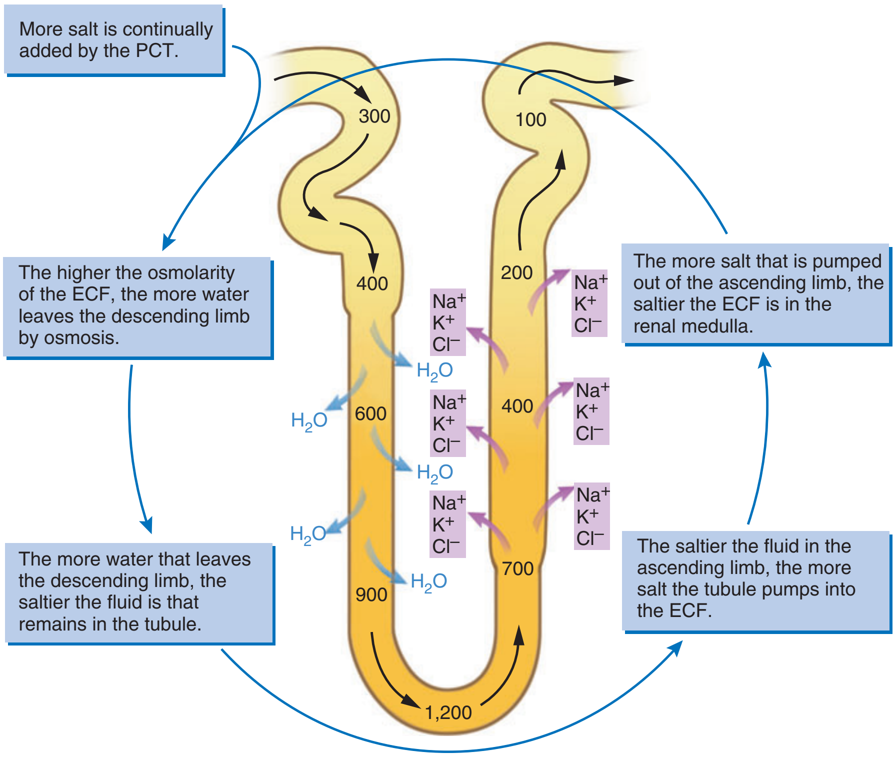

More salt is continually added by the PCT.
The higher the osmolarity of the ECF, the more water leaves the descending limb by osmosis.
The more water that leaves the descending limb, the saltier the fluid is that remains in the tubule.
The more salt that is pumped out of the ascending limb, the saltier the ECF is in the renal medulla.
The saltier the fluid in the ascending limb, the more salt the tubule pumps into the ECF.
300
400
600
900
1,200
100
200
400
700
H_2O
Na^+
K^+
Cl^-

Figure 23.17 **The Countercurrent Multiplier of the Nephron Loop.**

is able to do this because it passes through a salinity gradient in the medulla from 300 mOsm/L near the cortex to 1,200 mOsm/L near the papilla. This gradient is produced by a countercurrent multiplier of the nephron loop, which concentrates NaCl in the lower medulla, and by the diffusion of urea from the collecting duct into the medulla. The vasa recta are arranged as a countercurrent exchange system that enables them to supply blood to the medulla without subtracting from its salinity gradient. Figure 23.19 summarizes the major solutes reabsorbed and secreted in each part of the renal tubule. Table 23.1 summarizes the hormones that affect renal function.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

14. Predict how ADH hypersecretion would affect the sodium concentration of the urine, and explain why.
15. Concisely contrast the role of the countercurrent multiplier with that of the countercurrent exchanger.
16. How would the function of the collecting duct change if the nephron loop did not exist?

Urine and Renal Function Tests

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the composition and properties of urine; and
- carry out some calculations to evaluate renal function.

Medical diagnosis often rests on determining the current and recent physiological state of the tissues. No two fluids are as valuable for this purpose as blood and urine. **Urinalysis,** the examination of the physical and chemical properties of urine, is therefore one of the most routine procedures in medical examinations. The principal characteristics of urine and certain tests used to evaluate renal function are described here.

Composition and Properties of Urine

The basic composition and properties of urine are as follows:

- **Appearance.** Urine varies from almost colorless to deep amber, depending on the body's state of hydration. The yellow color of urine is due to **urochrome,** a pigment produced by the breakdown of

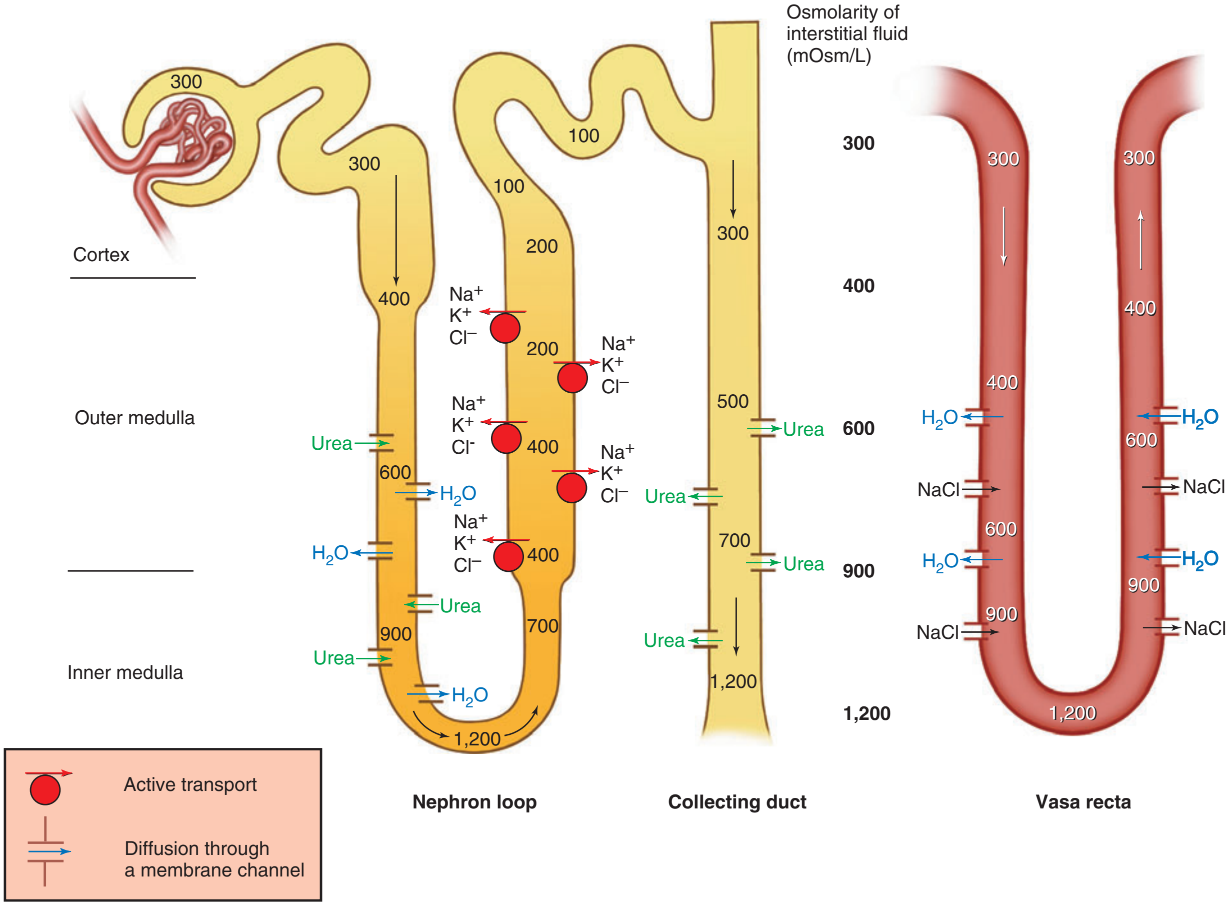

Osmolarity of interstitial fluid (mOsm/L)
300
400
600
900
1,200
Cortex
Outer medulla
Inner medulla
300
300
400
100
100
200
200
400
400
700
600
900
1,200
Na+
K+
Cl−
Urea
H2O
300
500
700
1,200
Urea
300
300
400
400
600
600
900
900
1,200
H2O
NaCl
Active transport
Diffusion through a membrane channel
Nephron loop
Collecting duct
Vasa recta

Figure 23.18 **The Relationship of the Nephron Loop, Vasa Recta, and Collecting Duct in Maintaining the Osmolarity of the Renal Medulla.**

hemoglobin from expired erythrocytes. Pink, green, brown, black, and other colors result from certain foods, vitamins, drugs, and metabolic diseases. Urine is normally clear but turns cloudy upon standing because of bacterial growth. Pus in the urine **(pyuria)** makes it cloudy and suggests kidney infection. Blood in the urine (hematuria) may be due to a urinary tract infection, trauma, or kidney stones. Cloudiness or blood in a urine specimen sometimes, however, simply indicates contamination with semen or menstrual fluid.

- **Odor.** Fresh urine has a distinctive but not repellent odor. As it stands, however, bacteria multiply, degrade urea to ammonia, and produce the pungent odor typical of stale wet diapers. Asparagus and other foods can impart distinctive aromas to the urine. Diabetes mellitus gives it a sweet, "fruity" odor of acetone. A "mousy" odor suggests phenylketonuria (PKU), and a "rotten" odor may indicate urinary tract infection.

- **Specific gravity.** This is a ratio of the density (g/mL) of a substance to the density of distilled water. Distilled water has a specific gravity of 1.000, and urine ranges from 1.001 when it is very dilute to 1.028 when it is very concentrated. Multiplying the last two digits of the specific gravity by a proportionality constant of 2.6 gives an estimate of the grams of solid matter per liter of urine. For example, a specific gravity of 1.025 indicates a solute concentration of $25 \times 2.6 = 65$ g/L.

- **Osmolarity.** Urine can have an osmolarity as low as 50 mOsm/L in a very hydrated person or as high as 1,200 mOsm/L in a dehydrated person. Compared with the osmolarity of blood (300 mOsm/L), then, urine can be either hypotonic or hypertonic under different conditions.

- **pH.** The pH of urine ranges from 4.5 to 8.2 but is usually about 6.0 (mildly acidic). The regulation of urine pH is discussed extensively in chapter 24.

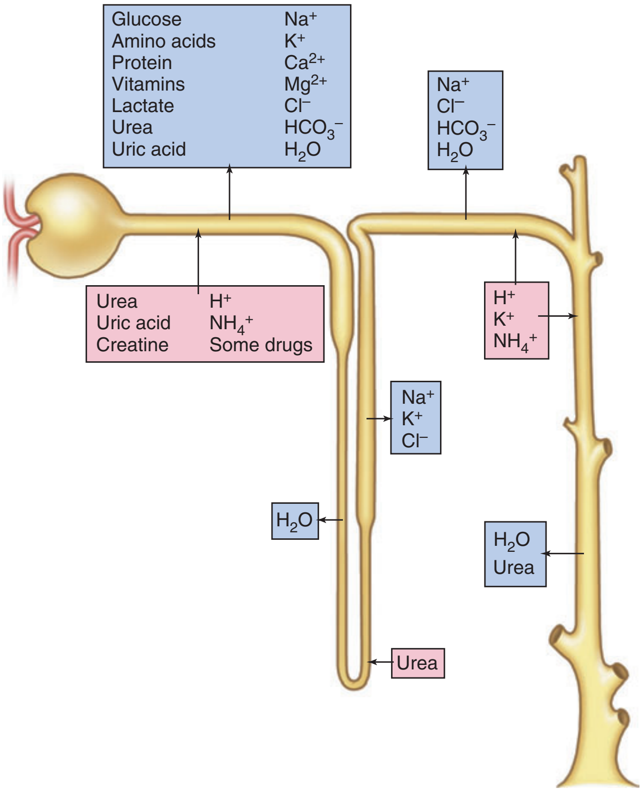


Figure 23.19 **Solutes Reabsorbed (*blue*) and Secreted (*pink*) in Different Portions of the Renal Tubule.**

- **Chemical composition.** Urine averages 95% water and 5% solutes by volume. Normally, the most abundant solute is urea, followed by sodium chloride, potassium chloride, and lesser amounts of creatinine, uric acid, phosphates, sulfates, and traces of calcium, magnesium, and sometimes bicarbonate (table 23.2). Urine contains a trace of bilirubin from the breakdown of hemoglobin and related products, and urobilin, a brown oxidized derivative of bilirubin. It is abnormal to find glucose, free hemoglobin, albumin, ketones, or more than a trace of bile pigments in the urine; their presence is sometimes an indicator of disease.

Urine Volume

An average adult produces 1 to 2 L of urine per day. An output in excess of 2 L/day is called diuresis or **polyuria**[19] (POL-ee-YOU-ree-uh). Fluid intake and some drugs can temporarily increase output to as much as 20 L/day. Chronic diseases such as diabetes (see next) can do so over a long term. **Oliguria**[20] (oll-ih-GUE-ree-uh) is an output of less than 500 mL/day, and **anuria**[21] is an output of 0 to 100 mL/day. Low output can result from kidney disease, dehydration, circulatory shock, prostate enlargement, and other causes. If urine output drops to less than 400 mL/day, the body cannot

---

[19] *poly* = many, much
[20] *oligo* = few, a little
[21] *an* = without

Table 23.1 Hormones Affecting Renal Function

Hormone	Target	Effects
Aldosterone	Distal tubule, collecting duct	Promotes Na^+ reabsorption, K^+ secretion; reduces urine volume
Angiotensin II	Afferent and efferent arterioles	Constricts arterioles, reduces GFR; stimulates ADH and aldosterone secretion; stimulates thirst; promotes water intake and reduces urine volume
Antidiuretic hormone	Collecting duct	Promotes H_2O reabsorption; reduces urine volume, increases concentration
Atrial natriuretic peptide	Afferent and efferent arterioles, collecting duct	Dilates afferent arteriole, constricts efferent arteriole, increases GFR; inhibits secretion of renin, ADH, and aldosterone; inhibits NaCl reabsorption by collecting duct; increases urine volume
Epinephrine and norepinephrine	Juxtaglomerular apparatus, afferent arteriole	Induces renin secretion; constricts afferent arteriole; reduces GFR and urine volume
Parathyroid hormone	Proximal and distal tubules, nephron loop	Promotes Ca^{2+} reabsorption by loop and distal tubule and Mg^{2+} reabsorption by proximal tubule; inhibits phosphate reabsorption by proximal tubule; promotes calcitriol synthesis

Table 23.2 Properties and Composition of Urine

Physical Properties	
Specific gravity	1.001–1.028
Osmolarity	50–1,200 mOsm/L
pH	6.0 (range 4.5–8.2)

Solute	**Concentration***	**Output (g/day)****
Inorganic ions		
Chloride	533 mg/dL	6.4 g/day
Sodium	333 mg/dL	4.0 g/day
Potassium	166 mg/dL	2.0 g/day
Phosphate	83 mg/dL	1 g/day
Ammonia	60 mg/dL	0.68 g/day
Calcium	17 mg/dL	0.2 g/day
Magnesium	13 mg/dL	0.16 g/day
Nitrogenous wastes		
Urea	1.8 g/dL	21 g/day
Creatinine	150 mg/dL	1.8 g/day
Uric acid	40 mg/dL	0.5 g/day
Urobilin	125 µg/dL	1.52 mg/day
Bilirubin	20 µg/dL	0.24 mg/day
Other organics		
Amino acids	288 µg/dL	3.5 mg/day
Ketones	17 µg/dL	0.21 mg/day
Carbohydrates	9 µg/dL	0.11 mg/day
Lipids	1.6 µg/dL	0.02 mg/day

*Typical values for a reference male
**Assuming a urine output of 1.2 L/day

maintain a safe, low concentration of wastes in the blood plasma. The result is azotemia.

Diabetes

Diabetes[22] is any metabolic disorder exhibiting chronic polyuria. There are at least five forms of diabetes: *diabetes mellitus type I* and *type II, gestational diabetes, renal diabetes,* and *diabetes insipidus.* In most cases, the polyuria results from a high concentration of glucose in the renal tubule. Glucose opposes the osmotic reabsorption of water, so more water is passed in the urine *(osmotic diuresis)* and a person may become severely dehydrated. In diabetes mellitus and gestational diabetes, the high glucose concentration in the tubule is a result of hyperglycemia, a high concentration of glucose in the blood. About 1% to 3% of pregnant women experience gestational diabetes, in which pregnancy reduces the mother's insulin sensitivity, resulting in hyperglycemia and glycosuria. In renal diabetes, blood glucose level is not elevated, but there is a hereditary deficiency of glucose transporters in the PCT, which causes glucose to remain in the tubular fluid. Diabetes insipidus results from ADH hyposecretion. Without ADH, the collecting duct does not reabsorb as much water as normal, so more water passes in the urine.

Diabetes mellitus, gestational diabetes, and renal diabetes are characterized by glycosuria. Before chemical tests for urine glucose were developed, physicians diagnosed diabetes mellitus by tasting the patient's urine for sweetness.[23] Tests for glycosuria are now as simple as dipping a chemical test strip into the urine specimen—an advance in medical technology for which urologists are no doubt grateful. In diabetes insipidus,[24] the urine contains no glucose and, by the old diagnostic method, does not taste sweet.

Diuretics

Diuretics are chemicals that increase urine volume. They are used for treating hypertension and congestive heart failure because they reduce the body's fluid volume and blood pressure. Diuretics work by one of two mechanisms—increasing glomerular filtration or reducing tubular reabsorption. For example, caffeine, in the former category, dilates the afferent arteriole and increases GFR. Alcohol, in the latter category, inhibits ADH secretion. Also in the latter category are many osmotic diuretics, which reduce water reabsorption by increasing the osmolarity of the tubular fluid. Many diuretic drugs, such as furosemide (Lasix), produce osmotic diuresis by inhibiting sodium reabsorption.

Renal Function Tests

There are several tests for diagnosing kidney diseases, evaluating their severity, and monitoring their progress. Here we examine two methods used to determine renal clearance and glomerular filtration rate.

Renal Clearance

Renal clearance is the volume of blood plasma from which a particular waste is completely removed in 1 minute. It represents the net effect of three processes:

$$\begin{array}{rl} & \text{Glomerular filtration of the waste} \\ + & \text{Amount added by tubular secretion} \\ - & \text{Amount reclaimed by tubular reabsorption} \\ \hline & \text{Renal clearance} \end{array}$$

---

[22] *diabetes* = passing through

[23] *melli* = honey, sweet

[24] *insipid* = tasteless

In principle, we could determine renal clearance by sampling blood entering and leaving the kidney and comparing their waste concentrations. In practice, it is not practical to draw blood samples from the renal vessels, but clearance can be assessed indirectly by collecting samples of blood and urine, measuring the waste concentration in each, and measuring the rate of urine output.

Suppose the following values were obtained for urea:

U (urea concentration in urine) = 6.0 mg/mL

V (rate of urine output) = 2 mL/min

P (urea concentration in plasma) = 0.2 mg/mL

Renal clearance (C) is

$$\begin{aligned} C &= UV/P \\ &= \frac{(6.0\ \text{mg/mL})(2\ \text{mL/min})}{0.2\ \text{mg/mL}} \\ &= 60\ \text{mL/min} \end{aligned}$$

This means the equivalent of 60 mL of blood plasma is completely cleared of urea per minute. If this person has a normal GFR of 125 mL/min, then the kidneys have cleared urea from only 60/125 = 48% of the glomerular filtrate. This is a normal rate of urea clearance, however, and is sufficient to maintain safe levels of urea in the blood.

Think About It

What would you expect the value of renal clearance of glucose to be in a healthy individual? Why?

Glomerular Filtration Rate

Assessment of kidney disease often calls for a measurement of GFR. We cannot determine GFR from urea excretion for two reasons: (1) some of the urea in the urine is secreted by the renal tubule, not filtered by the glomerulus, and (2) much of the urea filtered by the glomerulus is reabsorbed by the tubule. To measure GFR ideally requires a substance that is not secreted or reabsorbed at all, so that all of it in the urine gets there by glomerular filtration.

There doesn't appear to be a single urine solute produced by the body that is not secreted or reabsorbed to some degree. However, several plants, including garlic and artichoke, produce a polysaccharide called inulin that is useful for GFR measurement. All inulin filtered by the glomerulus remains in the renal tubule and appears in the urine; none is reabsorbed, nor does the tubule secrete it. GFR can be measured by injecting inulin and subsequently measuring the rate of urine output and the concentrations of inulin in blood and urine.

For inulin, GFR is equal to the renal clearance. Suppose, for example, that a patient's plasma concentration of inulin is P = 0.5 mg/mL, the urine concentration is U = 30 mg/mL, and urine output is V = 2 mL/min. This person has a normal GFR:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{GFR} &= UV/P \\ &= \frac{(30\ \text{mg/mL})(2\ \text{mL/min})}{0.5\ \text{mg/mL}} \\ &= 120\ \text{mL/min} \end{aligned}$$

In clinical practice, GFR is more often estimated from creatinine excretion. This has a small but acceptable error of measurement, and is an easier procedure than injecting inulin and drawing blood to measure its concentration.

A solute that is reabsorbed by the renal tubules will have a renal clearance *less* than the GFR (provided its tubular secretion is less than its rate of reabsorption). This is why the renal clearance of urea is about 60 mL/min. A solute that is secreted by the renal tubules will have a renal clearance *greater* than the GFR (provided its reabsorption does not exceed its secretion). Creatinine, for example, has a renal clearance of 140 mL/min.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

17. Define *oliguria* and *polyuria*. Which of these is characteristic of diabetes?
18. Identify two causes of glycosuria other than diabetes mellitus.
19. How is the diuresis produced by furosemide like the diuresis produced by diabetes mellitus? How are they different?
20. Explain why GFR could not be determined from measurement of the amount of NaCl in the urine.

Urine Storage and Elimination

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the functional anatomy of the ureters, urinary bladder, and male and female urethra; and
- explain how the nervous system and urethral sphincters control the voiding of urine.

Urine is produced continually, but fortunately it does not drain continually from the body. Urination is episodic—occurring when we allow it. This is made possible by an apparatus for storing urine and by neural controls for its timely release.

The Ureters

The renal pelvis funnels urine into the ureter, a retroperitoneal, muscular tube that extends to the urinary bladder. The ureter is about 25 cm long and reaches a maximum diameter of about 1.7 cm near the bladder. The ureters pass dorsal to the bladder and enter it from below, passing obliquely through its muscular wall and opening onto its floor. As pressure builds in the bladder, it compresses the ureters and prevents urine from being forced back to the kidneys.

The ureter has three layers: an adventitia, muscularis, and mucosa. The adventitia is a connective tissue layer that binds it to the surrounding tissues. The muscularis consists of two layers of smooth muscle. When urine enters the ureter and stretches it, the muscularis contracts and initiates a peristaltic wave that "milks" the urine down to the bladder. These contractions occur every few seconds to few minutes, proportional to the rate at which urine enters the ureter. The mucosa has a transitional epithelium continuous with that of the renal pelvis above and urinary bladder below. The lumen of the ureter is very narrow and is easily obstructed or injured by kidney stones (see insight 23.2).

Insight 23.2 Clinical Application

Kidney Stones

A *renal calculus*[25] (kidney stone) is a hard granule of calcium, phosphate, uric acid, and protein. Renal calculi form in the renal pelvis and are usually small enough to pass unnoticed in the urine flow. Some, however, grow to several centimeters in size and block the renal pelvis or ureter, which can lead to the destruction of nephrons as pressure builds in the kidney. A large, jagged calculus passing down the ureter stimulates strong contractions that can be excruciatingly painful. It can also damage the ureter and cause hematuria. Causes of renal calculi include hypercalcemia, dehydration, pH imbalances, frequent urinary tract infections, or an enlarged prostate gland causing urine retention. Calculi are sometimes treated with stone-dissolving drugs, but often they require surgical removal. A nonsurgical technique called *lithotripsy*[26] uses ultrasound to pulverize the calculi into fine granules easily passed in the urine.

---

[25] *calc* = calcium, stone + *ul* = little
[26] *litho* = stone + *tripsy* = crushing

Chapter 23

The Urinary Bladder

The urinary bladder (fig. 23.20) is a muscular sac on the floor of the pelvic cavity, inferior to the peritoneum and posterior to the pubic symphysis. It is covered by parietal peritoneum on its flattened superior surface and by a fibrous adventitia elsewhere. Its muscularis, called the **detrusor**[27] (deh-TROO-zur) **muscle,** consists of three layers of smooth muscle. The mucosa has a transitional epithelium, and in the relaxed bladder it has conspicuous wrinkles called **rugae**[28] (ROO-gee). The openings of the two ureters and the urethra mark a smooth-surfaced triangular area called the **trigone**[29] on the bladder floor. This is a common site of bladder infection (see insight 23.3). For photographs of the relationship of the bladder and urethra to other pelvic organs in both sexes, see figure A.22 (p. 51).

The bladder is highly distensible. As it fills, it expands superiorly, the rugae flatten, and the wall becomes quite thin. A moderately full bladder contains about 500 mL of urine and extends about 12.5 cm from top to bottom. The maximum capacity is 700 to 800 mL.

The Urethra

The urethra conveys urine out of the body. In the female, it is a tube 3 to 4 cm long bound to the anterior wall of the vagina by connective tissue. Its opening, the **external urethral orifice,** lies between the vaginal orifice and clitoris. The male urethra is about 18 cm long and has three regions: (1) The **prostatic urethra** begins at the urinary bladder and passes for about 2.5 cm through the prostate gland. During orgasm, it receives semen from the reproductive glands. (2) The **membranous urethra** is a short (0.5 cm), thin-walled portion where the urethra passes through the muscular floor of the pelvic cavity. (3) The **spongy (penile) urethra** is about 15 cm long and passes through the penis to the external urethral orifice. It is named for the *corpus spongiosum* of the penis, through which it passes. The male urethra assumes an S shape: it passes downward from the bladder, turns anteriorly as it enters the root of the penis, and then turns about 90° downward again as it enters the external, pendant part of the penis. The mucosa has a transitional epithelium near the bladder, a pseudostratified columnar epithelium for most of its length, and finally stratified squamous near the external urethral orifice. There are mucous **urethral glands** in its wall.

In both sexes, the detrusor muscle is thickened near the urethra to form an **internal urethral sphincter,** which compresses the urethra and retains urine in the bladder. Since this sphincter is composed of smooth muscle, it is under involuntary control. Where the urethra passes through the pelvic floor, it is encircled by an **external urethral sphincter** of skeletal muscle, which provides voluntary control over the voiding of urine.

---

[27] *de* = down + *trus* = push
[28] *ruga* = fold, wrinkle
[29] *tri* = three + *gon* = angle

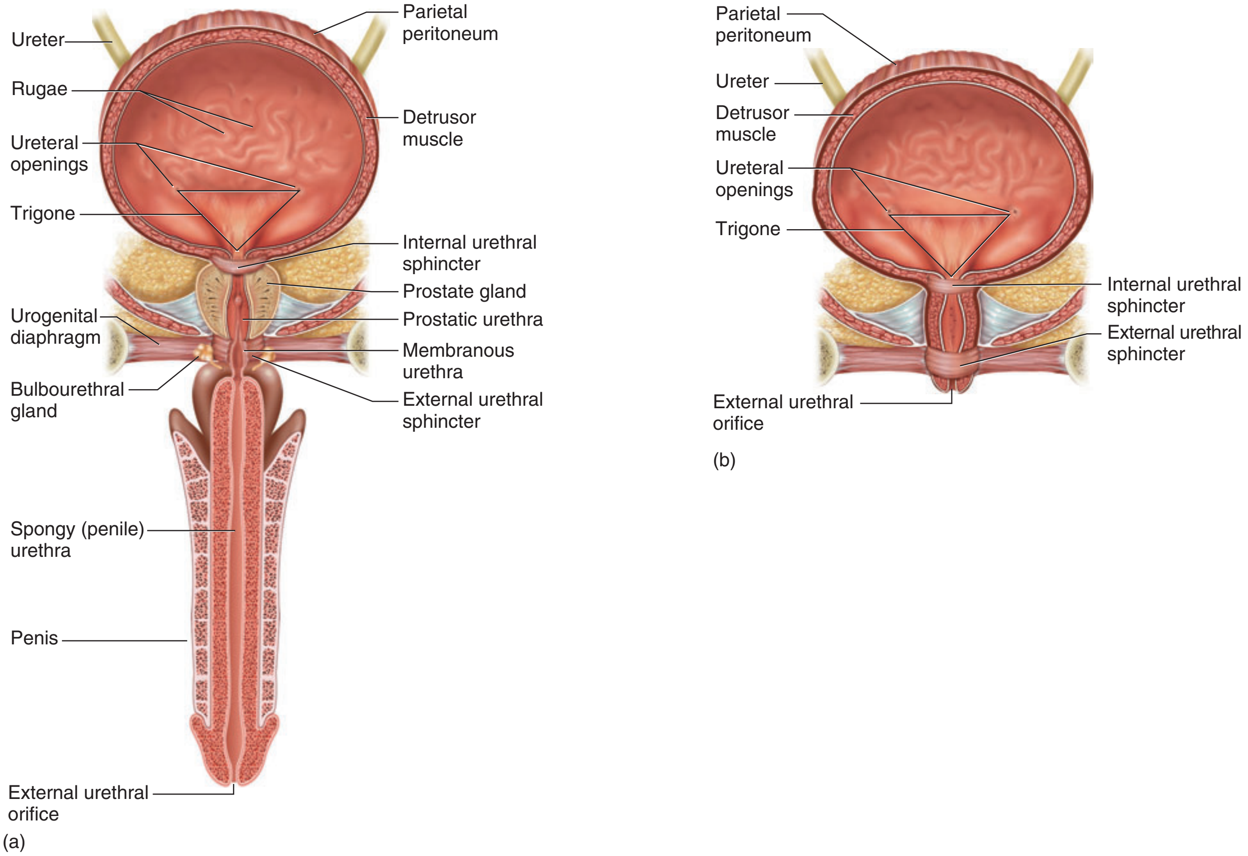

Ureter
Rugae
Ureteral openings
Trigone
Urogenital diaphragm
Bulbourethral gland
Spongy (penile) urethra
Penis
External urethral orifice
(a)
Parietal peritoneum
Detrusor muscle
Internal urethral sphincter
Prostate gland
Prostatic urethra
Membranous urethra
External urethral sphincter
Parietal peritoneum
Ureter
Detrusor muscle
Ureteral openings
Trigone
Internal urethral sphincter
External urethral sphincter
External urethral orifice
(b)

Figure 23.20 **Anatomy of the Urinary Bladder and Urethra.** (*a*) Male; (*b*) female.
Why are women more susceptible to bladder infections than men are?

Insight 23.3 Clinical Application

Urinary Tract Infections

Infection of the urinary bladder is called *cystitis.*[30] It is especially common in females because bacteria such as *Escherichia coli* can travel easily from the perineum up the short urethra. Because of this risk, young girls should be taught never to wipe the anus in a forward direction. If cystitis is untreated, bacteria can spread up the ureters and cause *pyelitis,*[31] infection of the renal pelvis. If it reaches the renal cortex and nephrons, it is called *pyelonephritis.* Kidney infections can also result from invasion by blood-borne bacteria. Urine stagnation due to renal calculi or prostate enlargement increases the risk of infection.

Voiding Urine

Urination, or emptying of the bladder, is also called **micturition**[32] (MIC-too-RISH-un). It is controlled in part by the **micturition reflex** shown in figure 23.21, which is numbered to correspond to the following description:

(1) When the bladder contains about 200 mL of urine, stretch receptors in the wall send afferent nerve impulses to the spinal cord by way of the pelvic nerves. **(2)** By way of a parasympathetic reflex arc through segments S2 to S3 of the cord, signals return to the bladder and stimulate contraction of the detrusor muscle **(3)** and relaxation of the internal urethral sphincter **(4).** This reflex is the predominant mechanism that voids the bladder in infants and young children.

---

[30] *cyst* = bladder + *itis* = inflammation
[31] *pyel* = pelvis

[32] *mictur* = to urinate

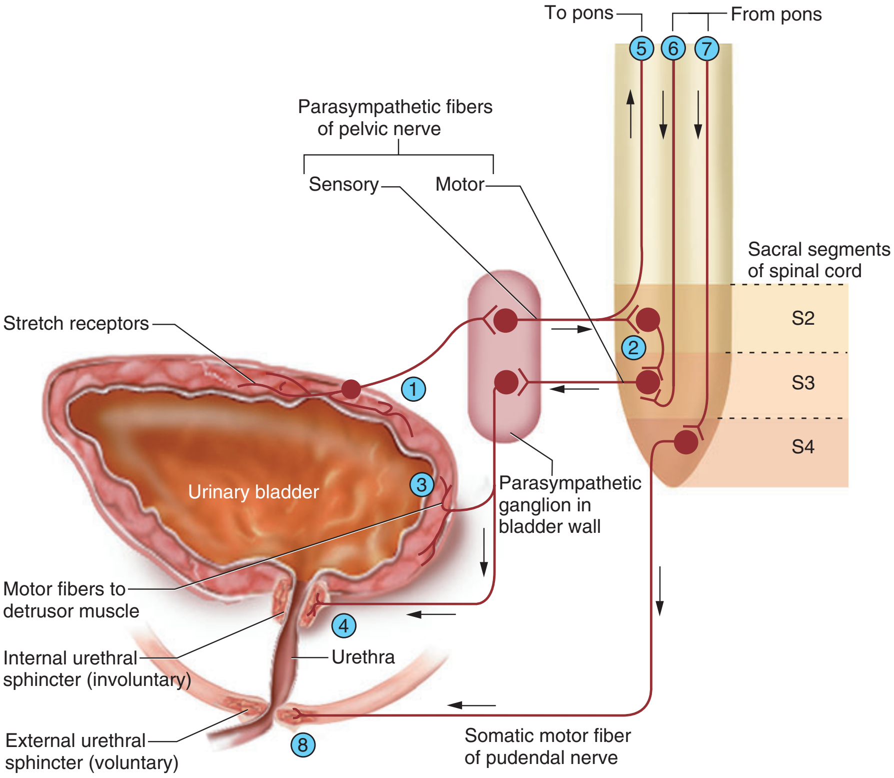

To pons
From pons
5
6
7
Parasympathetic fibers of pelvic nerve
Sensory
Motor
Sacral segments of spinal cord
S2
S3
S4
Stretch receptors
1
2
3
Urinary bladder
Parasympathetic ganglion in bladder wall
Motor fibers to detrusor muscle
4
Urethra
Internal urethral sphincter (involuntary)
External urethral sphincter (voluntary)
8
Somatic motor fiber of pudendal nerve

Figure 23.21 **Neural Control of Micturition.** Circled numbers correspond to text description.

As the brain and spinal cord mature, however, we acquire voluntary control over the external urethral sphincter, and emptying of the bladder is controlled predominantly by a **micturition center** in the pons. This center receives signals from the stretch receptors **(5)** and integrates this information with cortical input concerning the appropriateness of urinating at the moment. It sends back impulses **(6)** that excite the detrusor and relax the internal urethral sphincter. **(7)** At times when it is inappropriate to urinate, a steady train of nerve impulses travel from the brainstem through the pudendal nerve to the external urethral sphincter, thus keeping it contracted. When you wish to urinate, these impulses are inhibited, the external sphincter relaxes **(8),** and contractions of the detrusor muscle expel the urine. The Valsalva maneuver (p. 855) also aids in expulsion of urine by increasing pressure on the bladder. Males voluntarily contract the bulbocavernosus muscle encircling the base of the penis to expel the last few milliliters of urine.

When it is desirable to urinate (for example, before a long trip) but the urge does not yet exist because the bladder is not full enough, the Valsalva maneuver can activate the micturition reflex. Contraction of the abdominal muscles compresses the bladder and may excite the stretch receptors even if there is less than 200 mL of urine in the bladder.

The effects of aging on the urinary system are discussed on pages 1111 to 1112. Some disorders of this system are briefly described in table 23.3.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

21. Describe the location and function of the detrusor muscle.
22. Compare and contrast the functions of the internal and external urethral sphincters.
23. How would micturition be affected by a spinal cord lesion that prevented voluntary nerve impulses from reaching the sacral part of the cord?

Table 23.3 Some Disorders of the Urinary System

Acute glomerulonephritis	An autoimmune inflammation of the glomeruli, often following a streptococcus infection. Results in destruction of glomeruli leading to hematuria, proteinuria, edema, reduced glomerular filtration, and hypertension. Can progress to chronic glomerulonephritis and renal failure, but most individuals recover from acute glomerulonephritis without lasting effect.
Acute renal failure	An abrupt decline in renal function, often due to traumatic damage to the nephrons or a loss of blood flow stemming from hemorrhage or thrombosis.
Chronic renal failure	Long-term, progressive, irreversible loss of nephrons; see insight 23.4 for a variety of causes. Requires a kidney transplant or hemodialysis.
Hydronephrosis[33]	Increase in fluid pressure in the renal pelvis and calices owing to obstruction of the ureter by kidney stones, nephroptosis, or other causes. Can progress to complete cessation of glomerular filtration and atrophy of nephrons.
Nephroptosis[34] *(NEFF-rop-TOE-sis)*	Slippage of the kidney to an abnormally low position *(floating kidney).* Occurs in people with too little body fat to hold the kidney in place and in people who subject the kidneys to prolonged vibration, such as truck drivers, equestrians, and motorcyclists. Can twist or kink the ureter, which causes pain, obstructs urine flow, and potentially leads to hydronephrosis.
Nephrotic syndrome	Excretion of large amounts of protein in the urine ($\geq$ 3.5 g/day) due to glomerular injury. Can result from trauma, drugs, infections, cancer, diabetes mellitus, lupus erythematosus, and other diseases. Loss of plasma protein leads to edema, ascites, hypotension, and susceptibility to infection (because of immunoglobulin loss).
Urinary incontinence	Inability to hold the urine; involuntary leakage from the bladder. Can result from incompetence of the urinary sphincters; bladder irritation; pressure on the bladder in pregnancy; an obstructed urinary outlet so that the bladder is constantly full and dribbles urine *(overflow incontinence);* uncontrollable urination due to brief surges in bladder pressure, as in laughing or coughing *(stress incontinence);* and neurological disorders such as spinal cord injuries.

Disorders described elsewhere

Azotemia	881	Oliguria	901	Renal diabetes	902
Hematuria	887	Proteinuria	887	Uremia	881
Kidney stones	904	Pyuria	900	Urinary tract infection	904
Nephrosclerosis	889				

[33] *hydro* = water + *nephr* = kidney + *osis* = medical condition
[34] *nephro* = kidney + *ptosis* = sagging, falling

Insight 23.4 Clinical Application

Renal Insufficiency and Hemodialysis

Renal insufficiency is a state in which the kidneys cannot maintain homeostasis due to extensive destruction of their nephrons. Some causes of nephron destruction include:

- Chronic or repetitive kidney infections.
- Trauma from such causes as blows to the lower back or continual vibration from machinery.
- Prolonged ischemia and hypoxia, as in some long-distance runners and swimmers.
- Poisoning by heavy metals such as mercury and lead and solvents such as carbon tetrachloride, acetone, and paint thinners. These are absorbed into the blood from inhaled fumes or by skin contact and then filtered by the glomeruli. They kill renal tubule cells.
- Blockage of renal tubules with proteins small enough to be filtered by the glomerulus—for example, myoglobin released by skeletal muscle damage and hemoglobin released by a transfusion reaction.
- Atherosclerosis, which reduces blood flow to the kidney.
- Glomerulonephritis, an autoimmune disease of the glomerular capillaries.

Nephrons can regenerate and restore kidney function after short-term injuries. Even when some of the nephrons are irreversibly destroyed, others hypertrophy and compensate for their lost function. Indeed, a person can survive on as little as one-third of one kidney. When 75% of the nephrons are lost, however, urine output may be as low as 30 mL/hr compared with the normal rate of 50 to 60 mL/hr. This is insufficient to maintain homeostasis and is accompanied by azotemia and acidosis. Uremia develops when there is 90% loss of renal function. Renal insufficiency also tends to cause anemia because the diseased kidney produces too little erythropoietin (EPO), the hormone that stimulates red blood cell formation.

Hemodialysis is a procedure for artificially clearing wastes from the blood when the kidneys are not adequately doing so (fig. 23.22). Blood is pumped from the radial artery to a *dialysis machine* (artificial kidney) and returned to the patient by way of a vein. In the dialysis machine, the blood flows through a semipermeable cellophane tube surrounded by dialysis fluid. Urea, potassium, and other solutes that are more concentrated in the blood than in the dialysis fluid diffuse through the membrane into the fluid, which is discarded. Glucose, electrolytes, and drugs can be administered by adding them to the dialysis fluid so they will diffuse through the membrane into the blood. People with renal insufficiency also accumulate substantial amounts of body water between treatments, and dialysis serves also to remove this excess water. Patients are typically given erythropoietin (EPO) to compensate for the lack of EPO from the failing kidneys.

Hemodialysis patients typically have three sessions per week for 4 to 8 hours per session. In addition to inconvenience, hemodialysis carries risks of infection and thrombosis. Blood tends to clot when exposed to foreign surfaces, so an anticoagulant such as heparin is added during dialysis. Unfortunately, this inhibits clotting in the patient's body as well, and dialysis patients sometimes suffer internal bleeding.

A procedure called *continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis (CAPD)* is more convenient. It can be carried out at home by the patient, who is provided with plastic bags of dialysis fluid. Fluid is introduced into the abdominal cavity through an indwelling catheter. Here, the peritoneum provides over 2 m^2 of blood-rich semipermeable membrane. The fluid is left in the body cavity for 15 to 60 minutes to allow the blood to equilibrate with it; then it is drained, discarded, and replaced with fresh dialysis fluid. The patient is not limited by a stationary dialysis machine and can go about most normal activities. CAPD is less expensive and promotes better morale than conventional hemodialysis, but it is less efficient in removing wastes and it is more often complicated by infection.

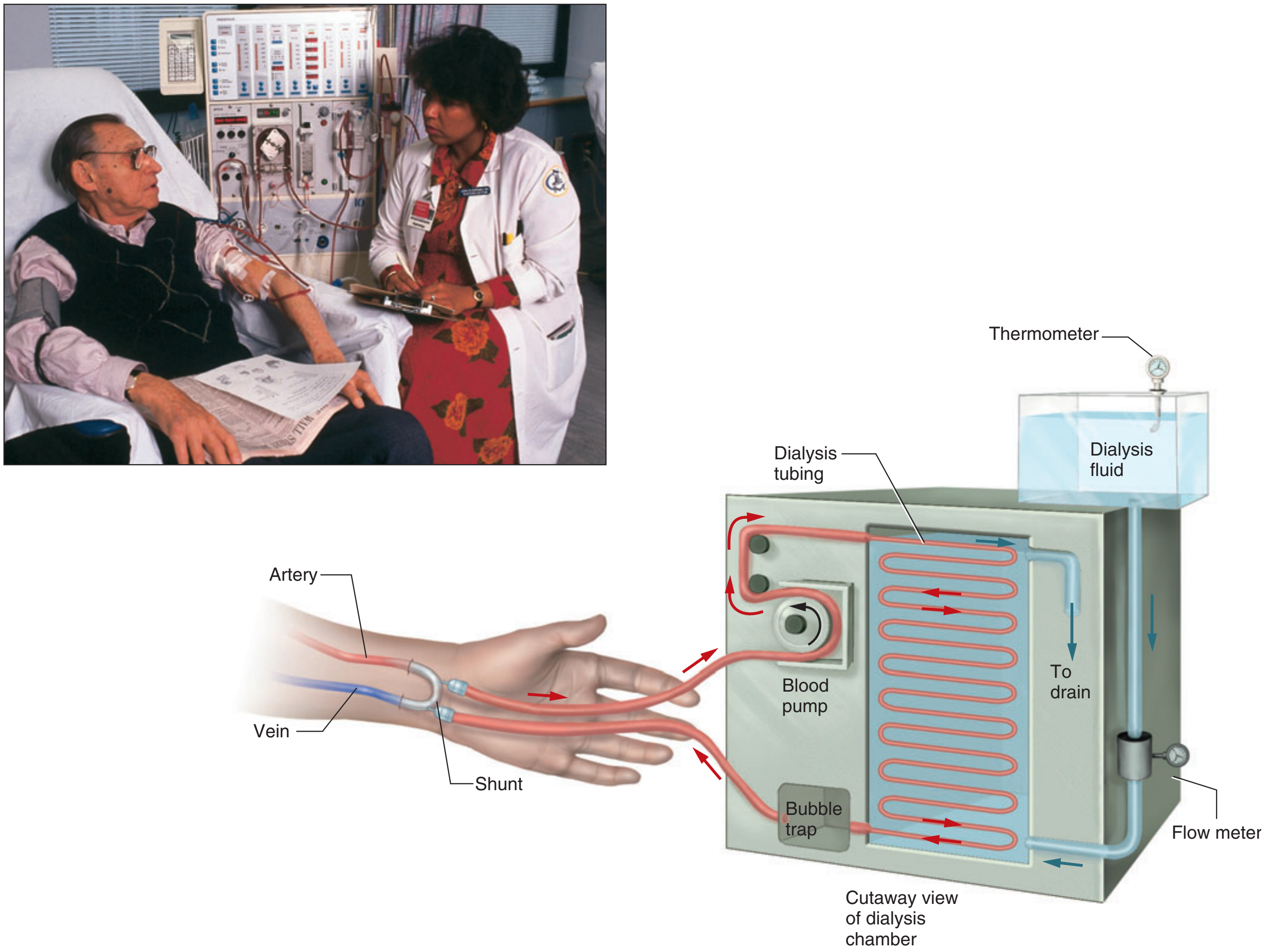


Figure 23.22 **Hemodialysis.** Blood is pumped into a dialysis chamber, where it flows through selectively permeable dialysis tubing surrounded by dialysis fluid. Blood leaving the chamber passes through a bubble trap to remove air before it is returned to the patient's body. The dialysis fluid picks up excess water and metabolic wastes from the patient's blood and may contain medications that diffuse into the blood.

Connective Issues

Interactions Between the URINARY SYSTEM and Other Organ Systems

← indicates ways in which this system affects other systems
→ indicates ways in which other systems affect this one

All Systems

The urinary system serves all other systems by eliminating metabolic wastes and maintaining fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base balance

Integumentary System

← Renal control of fluid balance essential for sweat secretion

→ Epidermis is normally a barrier to fluid loss; profuse sweating can lead to oliguria; skin and kidneys collaborate in calcitriol synthesis

Skeletal System

← Renal control of calcium and phosphate balance and role in calcitriol synthesis are essential for bone deposition

→ Lower ribs and pelvis protect some urinary system organs

Muscular System

← Renal control of Na^+, K^+, and Ca^{2+} balance important for muscle contraction

→ Some skeletal muscles aid or regulate micturition (external urethral sphincter, male bulbocavernosus muscle, abdominal muscles used in Valsalva maneuver); muscles of pelvic floor support bladder

Nervous System

← Nervous system is very sensitive to fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base imbalances that may result from renal dysfunction

→ Regulates glomerular filtration and micturition

Endocrine System

← Renin secretion by kidneys leads to angiotensin synthesis and aldosterone secretion; kidneys produce erythropoietin

→ Regulates renal function through angiotensin II, aldosterone, atrial natriuretic factor, and antidiuretic hormone

Circulatory System

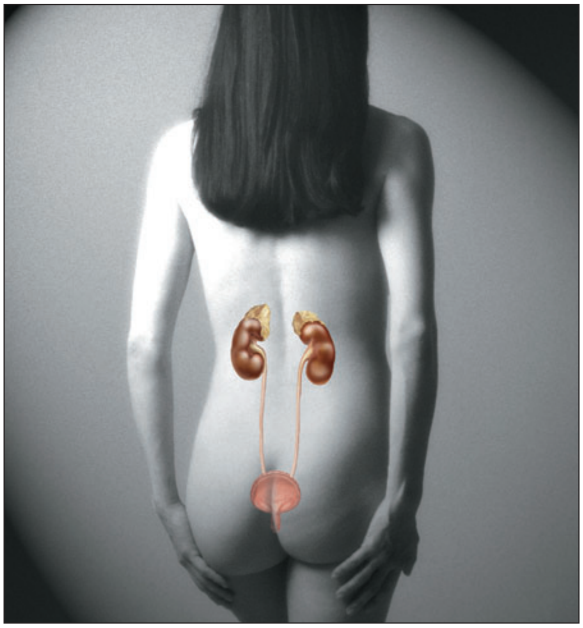
← Kidneys control blood pressure more than any other organ; erythropoietin from kidneys regulates hematocrit; kidneys regulate plasma composition; cardiac rhythm is very sensitive to electrolyte imbalances that may result from renal dysfunction

→ Perfuses kidneys so wastes can be filtered from blood; blood pressure influences glomerular filtration rate; blood reabsorbs water and solutes from renal tubules

Lymphatic/Immune Systems

← Acidity of urine provides nonspecific defense against infection

→ Return of fluid to bloodstream maintains blood pressure and fluid balance essential for renal function; immune system protects kidneys from infection



Respiratory System

← Rate of acid secretion by kidneys affects pH of blood and may therefore affect respiratory rhythm

→ Provides O_2 to meet high metabolic demand of kidneys; dysfunctions of pulmonary ventilation may require compensation by kidneys to maintain acid-base balance; inhaled toxic fumes can damage kidneys

Digestive System

← Kidneys excrete toxins absorbed by digestive tract; kidneys excrete hormones and metabolites after liver deactivates them; calcitriol synthesized by kidneys regulates Ca^{2+} absorption by small intestine

→ Liver synthesizes urea, the main nitrogenous waste eliminated by kidneys; urea contributes to osmotic gradient of renal medulla; liver and kidneys collaborate to synthesize calcitriol

Reproductive System

← Urethra serves as common passageway for urine and sperm in males; urinary system of a pregnant woman eliminates metabolic wastes of fetus

→ Enlarged prostate can cause urine retention and kidney damage in males; pregnant uterus compresses bladder and reduces its capacity in females

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

Functions of the Urinary System (p. 880)

1. The kidneys filter blood plasma, separate wastes from useful chemicals, regulate blood volume and pressure, secrete renin and erythropoietin, regulate blood pH, synthesize calcitriol, detoxify free radicals and drugs, and generate glucose in times of starvation.
2. Metabolic wastes are wastes produced by the body, such as CO_2 and nitrogenous wastes. The main human nitrogenous wastes are *urea, uric acid,* and *creatinine.*
3. The level of nitrogenous wastes in the blood is often expressed as blood urea nitrogen (BUN). An elevated BUN is called *azotemia,* and may progress to a serious syndrome called *uremia.*
4. *Excretion* is the process of separating wastes from the body fluids and eliminating them from the body. It is carried out by the respiratory, integumentary, digestive, and urinary systems.

Anatomy of the Kidney (p. 881)

1. The kidney has a slit called the *hilum* on its concave side, where it receives renal nerves, blood and lymphatic vessels, and the ureter.
2. From superficial to deep, the kidney is enclosed by the renal fascia, adipose capsule, and renal capsule.
3. The renal parenchyma is a C-shaped tissue enclosing a space called the renal sinus. The parenchyma is divided into an outer *renal cortex* and inner *renal medulla.* The medulla consists of 6 to 10 *renal pyramids.*
4. The apex, or papilla, of each pyramid projects into a receptacle called a minor calyx, which collects the urine from that pyramid. Minor calices converge to form major calices, and these converge on the renal pelvis, where the ureter arises.
5. Each kidney contains about 1.2 million functional units called *nephrons.*
6. A nephron begins with a capillary ball, the *glomerulus,* enclosed in a double-walled glomerular capsule. A *renal tubule* leads away from the capsule and consists of a highly coiled *proximal convoluted tubule (PCT),* a U-shaped *nephron loop,* and a coiled *distal convoluted tubule (DCT).* The DCTs of several nephrons then drain into a *collecting duct,* which leads to the papilla of a medullary pyramid.
7. The kidney is supplied by a *renal artery,* which branches and gives rise to *arcuate arteries* above the pyramids and then *interlobular arteries,* which penetrate into the cortex. For each nephron, an *afferent arteriole* arises from the interlobular artery and supplies the glomerulus. An *efferent arteriole* leaves the glomerulus and usually gives rise to a bed of *peritubular capillaries* around the PCT and DCT. Blood then flows through a series of veins to leave the kidney by way of the *renal vein.*
8. Juxtamedullary nephrons give rise to blood vessels called the *vasa recta,* which supply the tissue of the renal medulla.

Urine Formation I: Glomerular Filtration (p. 886)

1. The first step in urine production is to filter the blood plasma, which occurs at the glomerulus.
2. In passing from the blood capillaries into the capsular space, fluid must pass through the fenestrations of the capillary endothelium, the basement membrane, and filtration slits of the podocytes. These barriers hold back blood cells and most protein, but allow water and small solutes to pass.
3. Glomerular filtration is driven mainly by the high blood pressure in the glomerular capillaries.
4. Glomerular filtration rate (GFR), an important measure of renal health, is typically about 125 mL/min in men and 105 mL/min in women.
5. Renal autoregulation is the ability of the kidneys to maintain a stable GFR without nervous or hormonal control. There are a myogenic mechanism and a tubuloglomerular feedback mechanism of renal autoregulation.
6. The sympathetic nervous system also regulates GFR by controlling vasomotion of the afferent arterioles.
7. GFR is also controlled by hormones. A drop in blood pressure causes the kidneys to secrete renin. Renin and angiotensin-converting enzyme convert a plasma protein, angiotensinogen, into angiotensin II.
8. Angiotensin II helps to raise blood pressure by constricting the blood vessels, reducing GFR, promoting secretion of antidiuretic hormone (ADH) and aldosterone, and stimulating the sense of thirst.
9. ADH promotes water retention by the kidneys. Aldosterone promotes sodium retention, which in turn leads to water retention.

Urine Formation II: Tubular Reabsorption and Secretion (p. 891)

1. The GFR is far in excess of the rate of urine output. Ninety-eight to 99% of the filtrate is reabsorbed by the renal tubules and only 1% to 2% is excreted as urine.
2. About 65% of the glomerular filtrate is reabsorbed by the PCT.
3. PCT cells absorb Na^+ from the tubular fluid through the apical cell surface and pump it out the basolateral cell surfaces by active transport. The reabsorption of other solutes—water, Cl^-, HCO_3^-, K^+, Mg^{2+}, phosphate, glucose, amino acids, lactate, urea, and uric acid—is linked in various ways to Na^+ reabsorption.
4. The peritubular capillaries pick up the reabsorbed water by osmosis, and other solutes follow by *solvent drag.*
5. The *transport maximum (T_m)* is the fastest rate at which the PCT can reabsorb a given solute. If a solute such as glucose is filtered by the glomerulus faster than the PCT can reabsorb it, the excess will pass in the urine (as in diabetes mellitus).

6. The PCT also carries out *tubular secretion,* removing solutes from the blood and secreting them into the tubular fluid. Secreted solutes include urea, uric acid, bile salts, ammonia, catecholamines, creatinine, H^+, HCO_3^-, and drugs such as aspirin and penicillin.
7. The nephron loop serves mainly to generate an osmotic gradient in the renal medulla, which is necessary for collecting duct function; but it also reabsorbs a significant amount of water, Na^+, K^+, and Cl^-.
8. The DCT reabsorbs salt and water, and is subject to hormonal control. Aldosterone stimulates the DCT to reabsorb Na^+ and secrete K^+.
9. Atrial natriuretic peptide increases salt and water excretion by increasing GFR, antagonizing aldosterone and ADH, and inhibiting NaCl reabsorption by the collecting duct.
10. Parathyroid hormone acts on the nephron loop and DCT to promote Ca^{2+} reabsorption, and acts on the PCT to promote phosphate excretion.

Urine Formation III: Water Conservation (p. 897)

1. The collecting duct (CD) reabsorbs varying amounts of water to leave the urine as dilute as 50 mOsm/L or as concentrated as 1,200 mOsm/L.
2. The CD is permeable to water but not to NaCl. As it passes down the increasingly salty renal medulla, it loses water to the tissue fluid and the urine in the duct becomes more concentrated.
3. The rate of water loss from the CD is controlled by antidiuretic hormone (ADH). ADH stimulates the installation of aquaporins in the CD cells, increasing permeability of the CD to water. At high ADH concentrations, the urine is scanty and highly concentrated; at low ADH concentrations, the urine is dilute.
4. The salinity gradient of the renal medulla, which is essential to the ability of the CD to concentrate the urine, is maintained by the countercurrent multiplier mechanism of the nephron loop.
5. The vasa recta supply a blood flow to the renal medulla and employ a countercurrent exchange system to prevent them from removing salt from the medulla.

Urine and Renal Function Tests (p. 899)

1. Urine normally has a yellow color due to *urochromes* derived from hemoglobin breakdown products.
2. Urine normally has a specific gravity from 1.001 to 1.028, an osmolarity from 50 to 1,200 mOsm/L, and a pH from 4.5 to 8.2.
3. A foul odor to the urine is abnormal and may result from bacterial degradation, some foods, urinary tract infection, or metabolic diseases such as diabetes mellitus or phenylketonuria.
4. The most abundant solutes in urine are urea, NaCl, and KCl. Urine normally contains little or no glucose, hemoglobin, albumin, ketones, or bile pigments, but may do so in some diseases.
5. Most adults produce 1 to 2 L of urine per day. Abnormally low urine output is *anuria* or *oliguria;* abnormally high output is *polyuria.*
6. *Diabetes* is any chronic polyuria of metabolic origin. Forms of diabetes include diabetes mellitus types I and II, gestational diabetes, renal diabetes, and diabetes insipidus.
7. *Diuretics* are chemicals that increase urine output by increasing GFR or reducing tubular reabsorption. Caffeine and alcohol are diuretics, as are certain drugs used to reduce blood pressure.
8. Renal function can be assessed by making clinical measurements of GFR or *renal clearance.* The latter is the amount of blood completely freed of a given solute in 1 minute.

Urine Storage and Elimination (p. 903)

1. Peristalsis of the ureters causes urine to flow from the kidneys to the urinary bladder.
2. The urinary bladder has a smooth muscle layer called the *detrusor muscle* with a thickened ring, the *internal urethral sphincter,* around the origin of the urethra.
3. The urethra is 3 to 4 cm long in the female, but in the male it is 18 cm long and divided into *prostatic, membranous,* and *spongy (penile)* segments. An *external urethral sphincter* of skeletal muscle encircles the urethra in both sexes where it passes through the pelvic floor.
4. Emptying of the bladder is controlled in part by a spinal *micturition reflex* initiated by stretch receptors in the bladder wall. Parasympathetic nerve fibers relax the internal urethral sphincter and contract the detrusor muscle.
5. Micturition can be voluntarily controlled through the *micturition center* of the pons. This center keeps the external urethral sphincter constricted when it is inappropriate to urinate. When urination is desired, it allows this sphincter to relax so that the involuntary micturition reflex can empty the bladder.

Selected Vocabulary

nitrogenous waste 881
urea 881
azotemia 881
uremia 881
renal cortex 882
renal medulla 882
nephron 882
glomerulus 882
glomerular capsule 882
proximal convoluted tubule 883
nephron loop 883
distal convoluted tubule 883
collecting duct 883
afferent arteriole 885
efferent arteriole 885
peritubular capillary 885
glomerular filtration 886
angiotensin II 891
tubular reabsorption 892
glycosuria 895
tubular secretion 895
polyuria 901
oliguria 901
diuretic 902
micturition 905

Testing Your Recall

1. Micturition occurs when the ______ contracts.
   a. detrusor muscle
   b. internal urethral sphincter
   c. external urethral sphincter
   d. muscularis of the ureter
   e. all of the above
2. The compact ball of capillaries in a nephron is called
   a. the nephron loop.
   b. the peritubular plexus.
   c. the renal corpuscle.
   d. the glomerulus.
   e. the vasa recta.
3. Which of these is the most abundant nitrogenous waste in the blood?
   a. uric acid
   b. urea
   c. ammonia
   d. creatinine
   e. albumin
4. Which of these lies closest to the renal cortex?
   a. the parietal peritoneum
   b. the renal fascia
   c. the renal capsule
   d. the adipose capsule
   e. the renal pelvis
5. Most sodium is reabsorbed from the glomerular filtrate by
   a. the vasa recta.
   b. the proximal convoluted tubule.
   c. the distal convoluted tubule.
   d. the nephron loop.
   e. the collecting duct.
6. A glomerulus and glomerular capsule make up one
   a. renal capsule.
   b. renal corpuscle.
   c. kidney lobule.
   d. kidney lobe.
   e. nephron.
7. The kidney has more ______ than any of the other structures listed.
   a. arcuate arteries
   b. minor calices
   c. medullary pyramids
   d. afferent arterioles
   e. collecting ducts
8. The renal clearance of ______ is normally zero.
   a. sodium
   b. potassium
   c. uric acid
   d. urea
   e. amino acids
9. Beavers have relatively little need to conserve water and could therefore be expected to have ______ than humans do.
   a. fewer nephrons
   b. longer nephron loops
   c. shorter nephron loops
   d. longer collecting ducts
   e. longer convoluted tubules
10. Increased ADH secretion should cause the urine to have
    a. a higher specific gravity.
    b. a lighter color.
    c. a higher pH.
    d. a lower urea concentration.
    e. a lower potassium concentration.
11. The ______ reflex is an autonomic reflex activated by pressure in the urinary bladder.
12. ______ is the ability of a nephron to adjust its GFR independently of external nervous or hormonal influences.
13. The two ureters and the urethra form the boundaries of a smooth area called the ______ on the floor of the urinary bladder.
14. The ______ is a group of epithelial cells of the distal convoluted tubule that monitors the flow or composition of the tubular fluid.
15. To enter the capsular space, filtrate must pass between foot process of the ______, cells that form the visceral layer of the glomerular capsule.
16. Glycosuria occurs if the rate of glomerular filtration of glucose exceeds the ______ of the proximal convoluted tubule.
17. ______ is a hormone that regulates the amount of water reabsorbed by the collecting duct.
18. The ______ sphincter is under involuntary control and relaxes during the micturition reflex.
19. Very little ______ is found in the glomerular filtrate because it is negatively charged and is repelled by the basement membrane of the glomerulus.
20. Blood flows through the ______ arteries just before entering the interlobular arteries.

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. The proximal convoluted tubule is not subject to hormonal influence.
2. Sodium is the most abundant solute in the urine.
3. The kidney has more distal convoluted tubules than collecting ducts.
4. Tight junctions prevent material from leaking between the epithelial cells of the renal tubule.
5. All forms of diabetes are characterized by glucose in the urine.
6. If all other conditions remain the same, constriction of the afferent arteriole reduces the glomerular filtration rate.
7. Angiotensin II reduces urine output.
8. The minimum osmolarity of urine is 300 mOsm/L, equal to the osmolarity of the blood.
9. A sodium deficiency (hyponatremia) could cause glycosuria.
10. Micturition depends on contraction of the detrusor muscle.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. How would glomerular filtration rate be affected by kwashiorkor (see p. 683)?
2. A patient produces 55 mL of urine per hour. Urea concentration is 0.25 mg/mL in her blood plasma and 8.6 mg/mL in her urine. (a) What is her rate of renal clearance for urea? (b) About 95% of adults excrete urea at a rate of 12.6 to 28.6 g/day. Is this patient above, within, or below this range? Show how you calculated your answers.
3. A patient with poor renal perfusion is treated with an ACE inhibitor and goes into renal failure. Explain the reason for the renal failure.
4. Drugs called *renin inhibitors* are used to treat hypertension. Explain how they would have this effect.
5. Discuss how the unity of form and function is exemplified by differences between the thin and thick segments of the nephron loop, between the proximal and distal convoluted tubules, and between the afferent and efferent arterioles.

Answers at the Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Legend Questions

23.2 Ammonia is produced by the deamination of amino acids; urea is produced from ammonia and carbon dioxide; uric acid from nucleic acids; and creatinine from creatine phosphate.

23.3 The kidney lies between the peritoneum and body wall rather than in the peritoneal cavity. The pancreas, aorta, inferior vena cava, and renal artery and vein are also retroperitoneal.

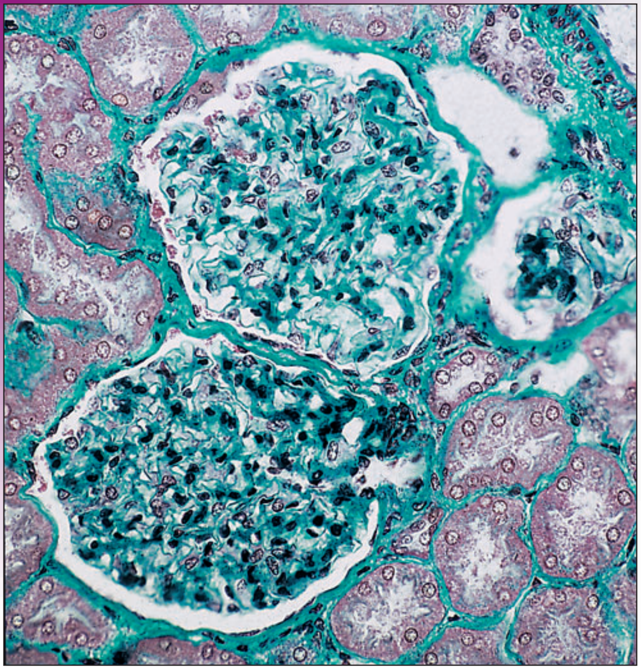
23.9 The afferent arteriole is bigger. The relatively large inlet to the glomerulus and its small outlet results in high blood pressure in the glomerulus. This is the force that drives glomerular filtration.

23.14 It lowers the urine pH because of the Na^+-H^+ antiport (see the second cell from the bottom). The more Na^+ that is reabsorbed, the more H^+ is secreted into the tubular fluid.

23.20 The relatively short female urethra is less of an obstacle for bacteria traveling from the perineum to the urinary bladder.

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.



Two glomeruli (*green*) and renal tubules (*violet*) of the kidney

CHAPTER 24

Water, Electrolyte, and Acid-Base Balance

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Water Balance 916
- Fluid Compartments 916
- Water Gain and Loss 916
- Regulation of Intake 917
- Regulation of Output 918
- Disorders of Water Balance 919

Electrolyte Balance 921
- Sodium 922
- Potassium 923
- Chloride 925
- Calcium 925
- Phosphates 926

Acid-Base Balance 926
- Acids, Bases, and Buffers 927
- Respiratory Control of pH 928
- Renal Control of pH 928
- Disorders of Acid-Base Balance 930
- Compensation for Acid-Base Imbalances 931
- Acid-Base Imbalances in Relation to Electrolyte and Water Imbalances 933

Chapter Review 934

INSIGHTS

24.1 Clinical Application: Fluid Balance in Cold Weather 920

24.2 Clinical Application: Fluid Replacement Therapy 933

Brushing Up

To understand this chapter, it is important that you understand or brush up on the following concepts:

- Electrolytes and milliequivalents/liter (p. 67)
- Acids, bases, and the pH scale (p. 67)
- Osmolarity (p. 108)
- Role of electrolytes in plasma membrane potentials (pp. 455–456)
- Depolarization and hyperpolarization of plasma membranes (fig. 12.21, p. 469)
- The hypothalamus and posterior pituitary (p. 637)
- Influence of CO_2 and pH on pulmonary ventilation (pp. 867–868)
- Structure and physiology of the nephron (pp. 882–896)

Cellular function requires a fluid medium with a carefully controlled composition. If the quantity, osmolarity, electrolyte concentration, or pH of this medium is altered, life-threatening disorders of cellular function may result. Consequently, the body has several mechanisms for keeping these variables within narrow limits and maintaining three types of homeostatic balance:

1. *water balance*, in which average daily water intake and loss are equal;
2. *electrolyte balance*, in which the amount of electrolytes absorbed by the small intestine balance the amount lost from the body, chiefly through the urine; and
3. *acid-base balance*, in which the body rids itself of acid (hydrogen ions) at a rate that balances its metabolic production, thus maintaining a stable pH.

These balances are maintained by the collective action of the urinary, respiratory, digestive, integumentary, endocrine, nervous, cardiovascular, and lymphatic systems. This chapter describes the homeostatic regulation of water, electrolyte, and acid-base balance and shows the close relationship of these variables to each other.

Water Balance

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to
- name the major fluid compartments and explain how water moves from one to another;
- list the body's sources of water and routes of water loss;
- describe the mechanisms of regulating water intake and output; and
- describe some conditions in which the body has a deficiency or excess of water or an improper distribution of water among the fluid compartments.

We enter the world in a rather soggy condition, having swallowed, excreted, and floated in amniotic fluid for months. At birth, a baby's weight is as much as 75% water; infants normally lose a little weight in the first day or two as they excrete the excess. Young adult men average 55% to 60% water, while women average slightly less because they have more adipose tissue, which is nearly free of water. Obese and elderly people are as little as 45% water by weight. The **total body water (TBW)** content of a 70 kg (150 lb) young male is about 40 L.

Fluid Compartments

Body water is distributed among the following **fluid compartments,** which are separated by selectively permeable membranes and differ from each other in chemical composition:

65% *intracellular fluid (ICF)* and
35% *extracellular fluid (ECF),* subdivided into
  25% *tissue (interstitial) fluid,*
  8% *blood plasma* and *lymph,* and
  2% *transcellular fluid,* a catch-all category for cerebrospinal, synovial, peritoneal, pleural, and pericardial fluids; vitreous and aqueous humors of the eye; bile; and fluid in the digestive, urinary, and respiratory tracts.

Fluid is continually exchanged between compartments by way of capillary walls and plasma membranes (fig. 24.1). Water moves by osmosis from the digestive tract to the bloodstream and by capillary filtration from the blood to the tissue fluid. From the tissue fluid, it may be reabsorbed by the capillaries, osmotically absorbed into cells, or taken up by the lymphatic system, which returns it to the bloodstream.

Because water moves so easily through plasma membranes, osmotic gradients between the ICF and ECF never last for very long. If a local imbalance arises, osmosis usually restores the balance within seconds so that intracellular and extracellular osmolarity are equal. If the osmolarity of the tissue fluid rises, water moves out of the cells; if it falls, water moves into the cells.

Osmosis from one fluid compartment to another is determined by the relative concentration of solutes in each compartment. The most abundant solute particles by far are the electrolytes—especially sodium salts in the ECF and potassium salts in the ICF. Electrolytes play the principal role in governing the body's water distribution and total water content; the subjects of water and electrolyte balance are therefore inseparable.

Water Gain and Loss

A person is in a state of **water balance** when daily gains and losses are equal. We typically gain and lose about 2,500 mL/day (fig. 24.2). The gains come from two sources: **metabolic water** (about 200 mL/day), which is produced as a by-product of aerobic respiration and dehydration synthesis reactions, and **preformed water,** which is ingested in food (700 mL/day) and drink (1,600 mL/day).

The routes of water loss are more varied:

- 1,500 mL/day is excreted as urine.
- 200 mL/day is eliminated in the feces.
- 300 mL/day is lost in the expired breath. You can easily visualize this by breathing onto a cool surface such as a mirror.
- 100 mL/day of sweat is secreted by a resting adult at an ambient (air) temperature of 20°C (68°F).

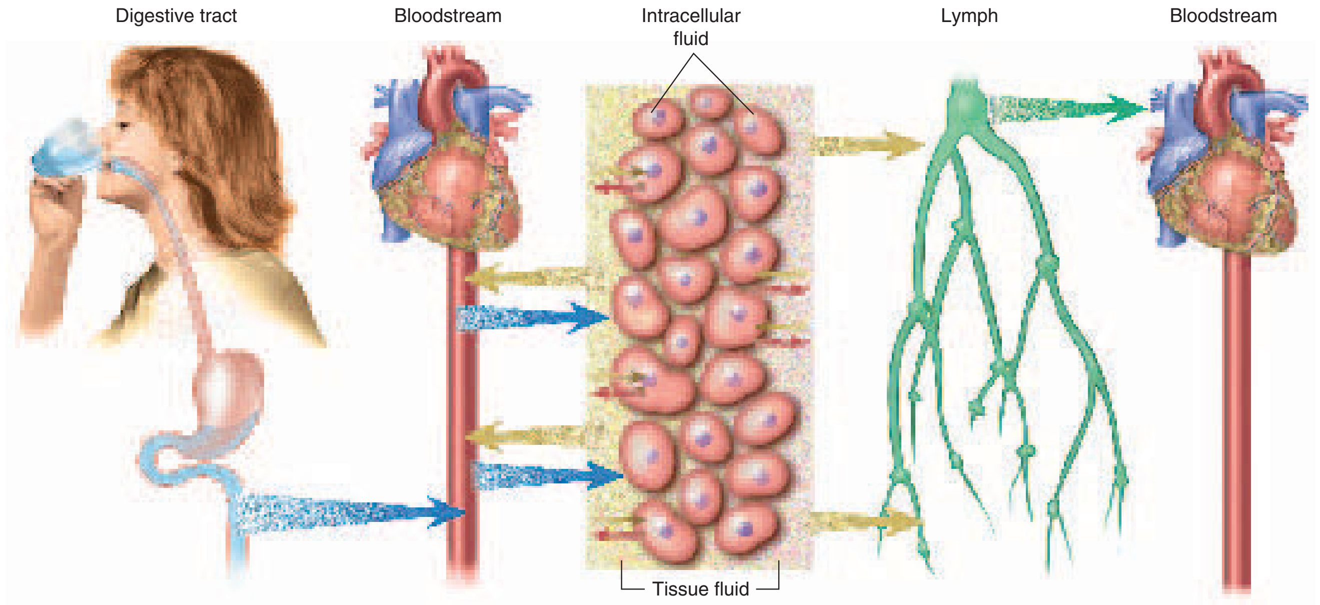


Figure 24.1 **The Movement of Water Between the Major Fluid Compartments.** Ingested water is absorbed by the bloodstream. There is a two-way exchange of water between the blood and tissue fluid and between the tissue and intracellular fluids. Excess tissue fluid is picked up by the lymphatic system, which returns it to the bloodstream.
In which of these places would fluid accumulate in edema?

- 400 mL/day is lost as **cutaneous transpiration,**[1] water that diffuses through the epidermis and evaporates. This is not the same as sweat; it is not a glandular secretion. A simple way to observe it is to cup the palm of your hand for a minute against a cool nonporous surface such as a laboratory benchtop or mirror. When you take your hand away, you will notice the water that transpired through the skin and condensed on that surface.

Water loss varies greatly with physical activity and environmental conditions. Respiratory loss increases in cold weather, for example, because cold air is drier and absorbs more body water from the respiratory tract. Hot, humid weather slightly reduces the respiratory loss but increases perspiration to as much as 1,200 mL/day. Prolonged, heavy work can raise the respiratory loss to 650 mL/day and perspiration to as much as 5 L/day, though it reduces urine output by nearly two-thirds.

Output through the breath and cutaneous transpiration is called **insensible water loss** because we are not usually conscious of it. **Obligatory water loss** is output that is relatively unavoidable: expired air, cutaneous transpiration, sweat, fecal moisture, and the minimum urine output, about 400 mL/day, needed to prevent azotemia. Even dehydrated individuals cannot prevent such losses; thus they become further dehydrated.

Regulation of Intake

Fluid intake is governed mainly by thirst, which is controlled by the mechanisms shown in figure 24.3. Dehydration reduces blood volume and pressure and raises blood osmolarity. The hypothalamus has a nucleus called the **thirst center** that responds to multiple signs of dehydration: (1) angiotensin II, produced in response to falling blood pressure; (2) antidiuretic hormone, released in response to rising blood osmolarity; and (3) signals from *osmoreceptors,* neurons in the hypothalamus that monitor the osmolarity of the ECF. A 2% to 3% increase in plasma osmolarity makes a person intensely thirsty, as does a 10% to 15% blood loss.

In response to such cues, the thirst center sends sympathetic signals to the salivary glands to inhibit salivation. Salivation is also reduced for another reason. Most of the saliva is produced by capillary filtration, but in dehydration, filtration is reduced by the lower blood pressure and higher osmolarity of the blood. Reduced salivation gives us a dry, sticky-feeling mouth, but it is by no means certain that this is our primary motivation to drink. People who do not secrete saliva and experimental animals that

---

[1] *trans* = across, through + *spir* = to breathe

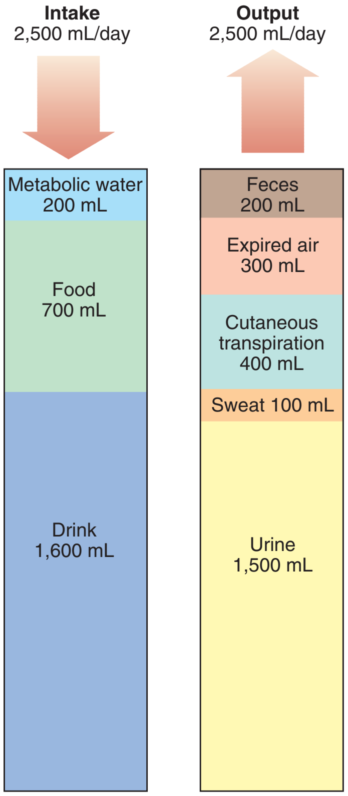


Figure 24.2 **Typical Water Intake and Output in a State of Fluid Balance.**

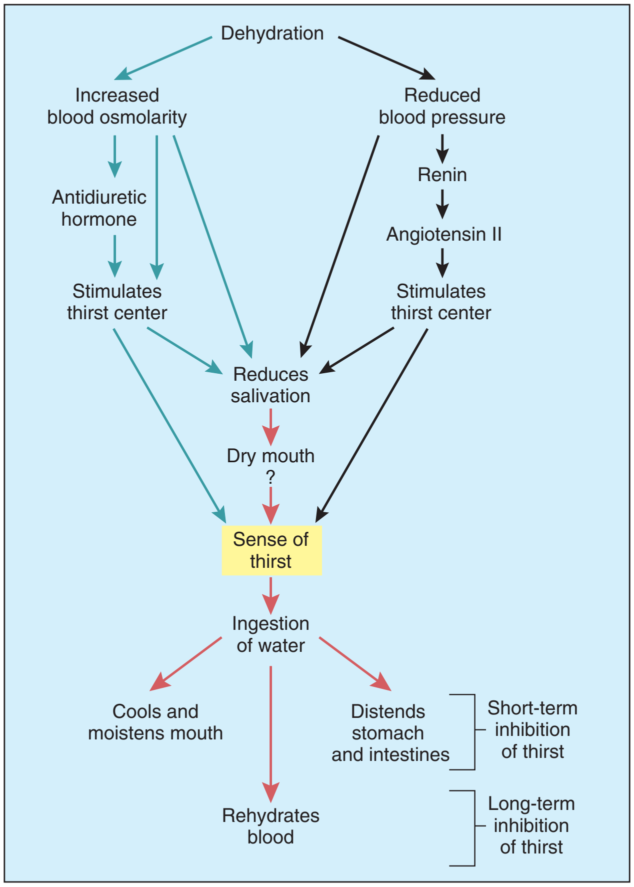

Dehydration
Increased blood osmolarity
Reduced blood pressure
Renin
Angiotensin II
Antidiuretic hormone
Stimulates thirst center
Stimulates thirst center
Reduces salivation
Dry mouth
?
Sense of thirst
Ingestion of water
Cools and moistens mouth
Distends stomach and intestines
Short-term inhibition of thirst
Rehydrates blood
Long-term inhibition of thirst

Figure 24.3 **Dehydration, Thirst, and Rehydration.**

have the salivary ducts tied off do not drink any more than normal individuals except when eating, when they need water to moisten the food.

Long-term satiation of thirst depends on absorbing water from the small intestine and lowering the osmolarity of the blood. Reduced osmolarity stops the osmoreceptor response, promotes capillary filtration, and makes the saliva more abundant and watery. However, these changes require 30 minutes or longer to take effect, and it would be rather impractical if we had to drink that long while waiting to feel satisfied. Water intake would be grossly excessive. Fortunately, there are mechanisms that act more quickly to temporarily quench the thirst and allow time for the change in blood osmolarity to occur.

Experiments with rats and dogs have isolated the stimuli that quench the thirst. One of these is cooling and moistening the mouth; rats drink less if their water is cool than if it is warm, and simply moistening the mouth temporarily satisfies an animal even if the water is drained from its esophagus before it reaches the stomach. Distension of the stomach and small intestine is another inhibitor of thirst. If a dog is allowed to drink while the water is drained from its esophagus but its stomach is inflated with a balloon, its thirst is satisfied for a time. If the water is drained away but the stomach is not inflated, satiation does not last as long. Such fast-acting stimuli as coolness, moisture, and filling of the stomach stop an animal (and presumably a human) from drinking an excessive amount of liquid, but they are effective for only 30 to 45 minutes. If they are not soon followed by absorption of water into the bloodstream, the thirst soon returns. Only a drop in blood osmolarity produces a lasting effect.

Regulation of Output

The only way to control water output significantly is through variations in urine volume. It must be realized, however, that the kidneys cannot completely prevent water loss, nor can they replace lost water or electrolytes. Therefore, they never restore fluid volume or osmolarity, but in dehydration they can support existing fluid levels and slow down the rate of loss until water and electrolytes are ingested.

To understand the effect of the kidneys on water and electrolyte balance, it is also important to bear in mind that if a substance is reabsorbed by the kidneys, it is kept in the body and returned to the ECF, where it will affect fluid volume and composition. If a substance is filtered by the glomerulus or secreted by the renal tubules and not reabsorbed, then it is excreted in the urine and lost from the body fluids.

Changes in urine volume are usually linked to adjustments in sodium reabsorption. As sodium is reabsorbed or excreted, proportionate amounts of water accompany it. The total volume of fluid remaining in the body may change, but its osmolarity remains stable. Controlling water balance by controlling sodium excretion is best understood in the context of electrolyte balance, discussed later in the chapter.

Antidiuretic hormone (ADH), however, provides a means of controlling water output independently of sodium. In true dehydration (defined shortly), blood volume declines and sodium concentration rises. The increased osmolarity of the blood stimulates the hypothalamic osmoreceptors, which stimulate the posterior pituitary to release ADH. In response to ADH, cells of the collecting ducts of the kidneys synthesize the proteins called aquaporins. When installed in the plasma membrane, these serve as channels that allow water to diffuse out of the duct into the hypertonic tissue fluid of the renal medulla. Thus the kidneys reabsorb more water and produce less urine. Sodium continues to be excreted, so the *ratio* of sodium to water in the urine increases (the urine becomes more concentrated). By helping the kidneys retain water, ADH slows down the decline in blood volume and the rise in its osmolarity. Thus the ADH mechanism forms a negative feedback loop (fig. 24.4).

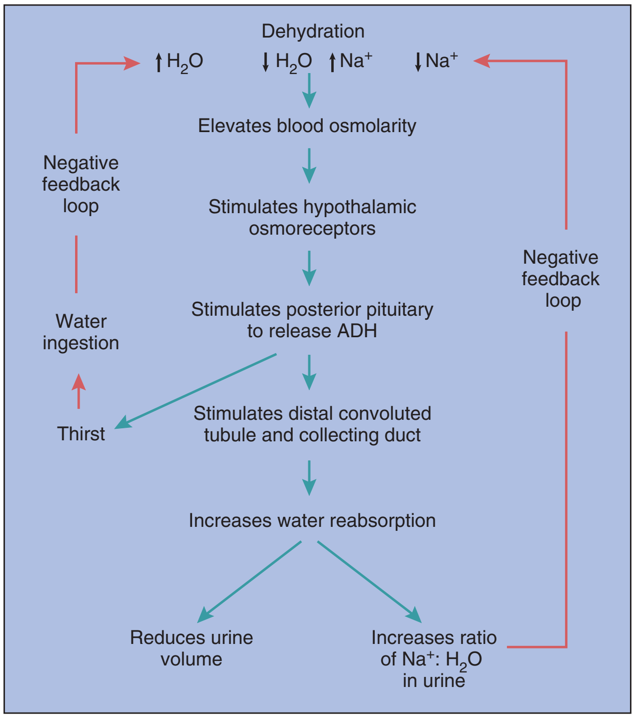
Conversely, if blood volume and pressure are too high or blood osmolarity is too low, ADH release is inhibited. The renal tubules reabsorb less water, urine output increases, and total body water declines. This is an effective way of compensating for hypertension. Since the lack of ADH increases the ratio of water to sodium in the urine, it raises the sodium concentration and osmolarity of the blood.

Disorders of Water Balance

The body is in a state of fluid imbalance if there is an abnormality of total fluid *volume,* fluid *concentration,* or fluid *distribution* among the compartments.

Fluid Deficiency

Fluid deficiency arises when output exceeds intake over a long period of time. There are two kinds of deficiency, called volume depletion and dehydration, which differ in the relative loss of water and electrolytes and the resulting osmolarity of the ECF. This is an important distinction that calls for different strategies of fluid replacement therapy (see insight 24.2 at the end of the chapter).



Dehydration
↑ H_2O
↓ H_2O ↑ Na^+
↓ Na^+
Elevates blood osmolarity
Stimulates hypothalamic osmoreceptors
Stimulates posterior pituitary to release ADH
Stimulates distal convoluted tubule and collecting duct
Increases water reabsorption
Reduces urine volume
Increases ratio of Na^+: H_2O in urine
Negative feedback loop
Water ingestion
Thirst
Negative feedback loop

Figure 24.4 The Secretion and Effects of Antidiuretic Hormone. Pathways shown in *red* represent negative feedback.

Volume depletion (hypovolemia[2]) occurs when proportionate amounts of water *and* sodium are lost without replacement. Total body water declines but osmolarity remains normal. Volume depletion occurs in cases of hemorrhage, severe burns, and chronic vomiting or diarrhea. A less common cause is aldosterone hyposecretion (Addison disease), which results in inadequate sodium and water reabsorption.

Dehydration (negative water balance) occurs when the body eliminates significantly more water than sodium, so the ECF osmolarity rises. The simplest cause of dehydration is a lack of drinking water; for example, when stranded in a desert or at sea. It can be a serious problem for elderly and bedridden people who depend on others to provide them with water—especially for those who cannot express their need or whose caretakers are insensitive to it. Diabetes mellitus, ADH hyposecretion (diabetes insipidus), profuse sweating, and overuse of diuretics are additional causes of dehydration. Prolonged exposure to cold weather can dehydrate a person just as much as exposure to hot weather (see insight 24.1).

---

[2] *hypo* = below normal + *vol* = volume + *emia* = blood condition

For three reasons, infants are more vulnerable to dehydration than adults: (1) Their high metabolic rate produces toxic metabolites faster, and they must excrete more water to eliminate them. (2) Their kidneys are not fully mature and cannot concentrate urine as effectively. (3) They have a greater ratio of body surface to volume; consequently, compared to adults, they lose twice as much water per kilogram of body weight by evaporation.

Dehydration affects all fluid compartments. Suppose, for example, that you play a strenuous tennis match on a hot summer day and lose a liter of sweat per hour. Where does this fluid come from? Most of it filters out of the bloodstream through the capillaries of the sweat glands. In principle, 1 L of sweat would amount to about one-third of the blood plasma. However, as the blood loses water its osmolarity rises and water from the tissue fluid enters the bloodstream to balance the loss. This raises the osmolarity of the tissue fluid, so water moves out of the cells to balance that (fig. 24.5). Ultimately, all three fluid compartments (the intracellular fluid, blood, and tissue fluid) lose water. To excrete 1 L of sweat, about 300 mL of water would come from the ECF and 700 mL from the ICF. Immoderate exercise without fluid replacement can lead to even greater loss than 1 L per hour.

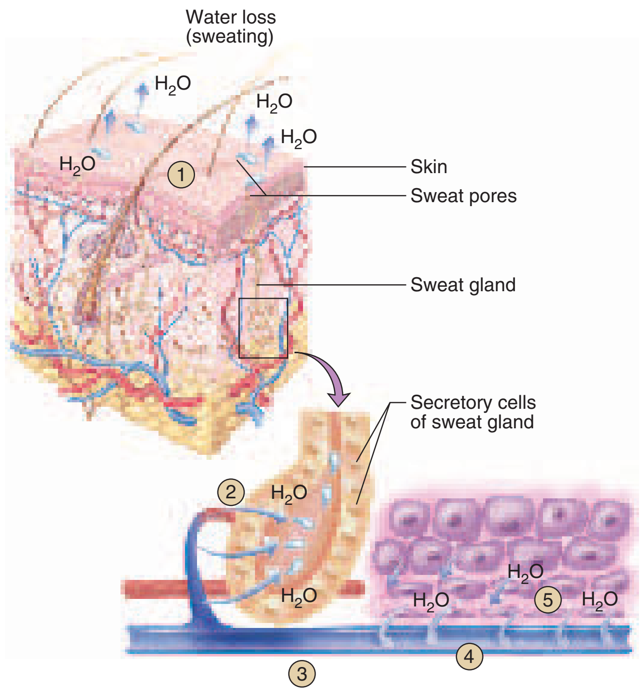


Figure 24.5 Effects of Profuse Sweating on the Fluid Compartments. (*1*) Sweat is released from pores in the skin. (*2*) Sweat is produced by filtration from the blood capillaries. (*3*) As fluid is taken from the bloodstream, blood volume and pressure drop and blood osmolarity rises. (*4*) The blood absorbs tissue fluid to replace its loss. (*5*) Fluid is transferred from the intracellular compartment to the tissue fluid. In severe dehydration, this results in cell shrinkage and malfunction.

The most serious effects of fluid deficiency are circulatory shock due to loss of blood volume and neurological dysfunction due to dehydration of brain cells. Volume depletion by diarrhea is a major cause of infant mortality, especially under unsanitary conditions that lead to intestinal infections such as cholera.

Insight 24.1 Clinical Application

Fluid Balance in Cold Weather

Hot weather and profuse sweating are obvious threats to fluid balance, but so is cold weather. The body conserves heat by constricting the blood vessels of the skin and subcutaneous tissue, thus forcing blood into the deeper circulation. This raises the blood pressure, which inhibits the secretion of antidiuretic hormone and increases the secretion of atrial natriuretic peptide. These hormones increase urine output and reduce blood volume. In addition, cold air is relatively dry and increases respiratory water loss. This is why exercise causes the respiratory tract to "burn" more in cold weather than in warm.

These cold-weather respiratory and urinary losses can cause significant hypovolemia. Furthermore, the onset of exercise stimulates vasodilation in the skeletal muscles. In a hypovolemic state, there may not be enough blood to supply them and a person may experience weakness, fatigue, or fainting (hypovolemic shock). In winter sports and other activities such as snow shoveling, it is important to maintain fluid balance. Even if you do not feel thirsty, it is beneficial to take ample amounts of warm liquids such as soup or cider. Coffee, tea, and alcohol, however, have diuretic effects that defeat the purpose of fluid intake.

Fluid Excess

Fluid excess is less common than fluid deficiency because the kidneys are highly effective at compensating for excessive intake by excreting more urine (fig. 24.6). Renal failure and other causes, however, can lead to excess fluid retention.

Fluid excesses are of two types called volume excess and hypotonic hydration. In **volume excess,** both sodium and water are retained and the ECF remains isotonic. Volume excess can result from aldosterone hypersecretion or renal failure. In **hypotonic hydration** (also called **water intoxication** or **positive water balance**), more water than sodium is retained or ingested and the ECF becomes hypotonic. This can occur if you lose a large amount of water *and* salt through urine and sweat and you replace it by drinking plain water. Without a proportionate intake of electrolytes, water dilutes the ECF, makes it hypotonic, and causes cellular swelling. ADH hypersecretion can cause hypotonic hydration by stimulating excessive water retention as sodium continues to be excreted. Among the most serious effects of either type of fluid excess are pulmonary and cerebral edema.

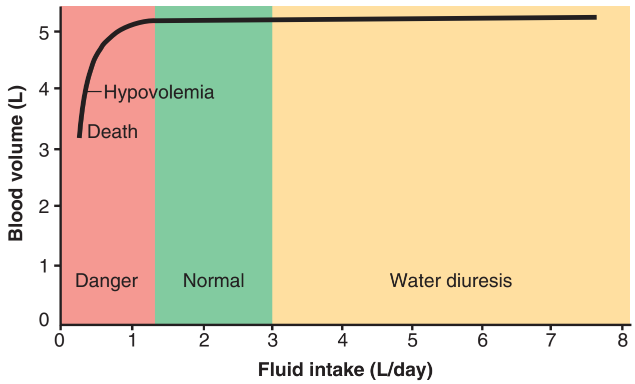


Figure 24.6 **The Relationship of Blood Volume to Fluid Intake.** The kidneys cannot compensate very well for inadequate fluid intake. Below an intake of about 1 L/day, blood volume drops significantly and there may be a threat of death from hypovolemic shock. The kidneys compensate very well, on the other hand, for abnormally high fluid intake; they eliminate the excess by water diuresis and maintain a stable blood volume.

Fluid Sequestration

Fluid sequestration[3] (seh-ques-TRAY-shun) is a condition in which excess fluid accumulates in a particular location. Total body water may be normal, but the volume of circulating blood may drop to the point of causing circulatory shock. The most common form of sequestration is *edema,* the abnormal accumulation of fluid in the interstitial spaces, causing swelling of a tissue (discussed in detail in chapter 20). Hemorrhage can be another cause of fluid sequestration; blood that pools and clots in the tissues is lost to circulation. Yet another example is *pleural effusion,* caused by some lung infections, in which several liters of fluid accumulate in the pleural cavity.

The four principal forms of fluid imbalance are summarized and compared in table 24.1.

Think About It

Some tumors of the brain, pancreas, and small intestine secrete ADH. What type of water imbalance would this produce? Explain why.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

1. List five routes of water loss. Which one accounts for the greatest loss? Which one is most controllable?
2. Explain why even a severely dehydrated person inevitably experiences further fluid loss.
3. Suppose there were no mechanisms to stop the sense of thirst until the blood became sufficiently hydrated. Explain why we would routinely suffer hypotonic hydration.
4. Summarize the effect of ADH on total body water and blood osmolarity.
5. Name and define the four types of fluid imbalance, and give an example of a situation that could produce each type.

Table 24.1 Forms of Fluid Imbalance

	Total Body Water	Osmolarity
Fluid Deficiency		
Volume depletion (hypovolemia)	Reduced	Isotonic (normal)
Dehydration (negative water balance)	Reduced	Hypertonic (elevated)
Fluid Excess		
Volume excess	Elevated	Isotonic (normal)
Hypotonic hydration (positive water balance, water intoxication)	Elevated	Hypotonic (reduced)

Electrolyte Balance

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the physiological roles of sodium, potassium, calcium, chloride, and phosphate;
- describe the hormonal and renal mechanisms that regulate the concentrations of these electrolytes; and
- state the term for an excess or deficiency of each electrolyte and describe the consequences of these imbalances.

Electrolytes are physiologically important for multiple reasons: They are chemically reactive and participate in metabolism, they determine the electrical potential (charge difference) across cell membranes, and they strongly affect the osmolarity of the body fluids and the body's water content and distribution. Strictly speaking, electrolytes are salts such as sodium chloride, not just sodium or chloride ions. In common usage, however, the individual ions are often referred to as electrolytes. The major cations are sodium (Na^+), potassium (K^+), calcium (Ca^{2+}), and hydrogen (H^+), and the major anions are chloride (Cl^-), bicarbonate (HCO_3^-), and phosphates (P_i). Hydrogen and bicarbonate regulation are discussed later under acid-base balance. Here we focus on the other five.

---

[3] *sequestr* = to isolate

The typical concentrations of these ions and the terms for electrolyte imbalances are listed in table 24.2. Blood plasma is the most accessible fluid for measurements of electrolyte concentration, so excesses and deficiencies are defined with reference to normal plasma concentrations. Concentrations in the tissue fluid differ only slightly from those in the plasma. The prefix *normo-* denotes a normal electrolyte concentration (for example, *normokalemia*), and *hyper-* and *hypo-* denote concentrations that are sufficiently above or below normal to cause physiological disorders.

Sodium

Functions

Sodium is one of the principal ions responsible for the resting membrane potentials of cells, and the inflow of sodium through gated membrane channels is an essential event in the depolarization that underlies nerve and muscle function. Sodium is the principal cation of the ECF; sodium salts account for 90% to 95% of its osmolarity. Sodium is therefore the most significant solute in determining total body water and the distribution of water among fluid compartments. Sodium gradients across the plasma membrane provide the potential energy that is tapped to cotransport other solutes such as glucose, potassium, and calcium. The Na^+-K^+ pump is an important mechanism for generating body heat. Sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$) plays a major role in buffering the pH of the ECF.

Homeostasis

An adult needs about 0.5 g of sodium per day, whereas the typical American diet contains 3 to 7 g/day. Thus a dietary sodium deficiency is rare, and the primary concern is adequate excretion of the excess. This is one of the most important roles of the kidneys. There are multiple mechanisms for controlling sodium concentration, tied to its effects on blood pressure and osmolarity and coordinated by three hormones: aldosterone, antidiuretic hormone, and atrial natriuretic peptide.

Aldosterone, the "salt-retaining hormone," plays the primary role in adjustment of sodium excretion. Hyponatremia and hyperkalemia directly stimulate the adrenal cortex to secrete aldosterone, and hypotension stimulates its secretion by way of the renin-angiotensin mechanism (fig. 24.7).

Only cells of the distal convoluted tubule and cortical part of the collecting duct have aldosterone receptors. Aldosterone, a steroid, binds to nuclear receptors and activates transcription of a gene for the Na^+-K^+ pump. In 10 to 30 minutes, enough Na^+-K^+ pumps are synthesized and installed in the plasma membrane to produce a noticeable effect—sodium concentration in the urine begins to fall and potassium concentration rises as the tubules reabsorb more Na^+ and secrete more H^+ and K^+. Water and Cl^- passively follow Na^+. Thus the primary effects of aldosterone are that the urine contains less NaCl and more K^+ and has a lower pH. An average adult male excretes 5 g of sodium per day, but the urine can be virtually sodium-free when aldosterone level is high. Although aldosterone strongly influences sodium reabsorption, it has little effect on plasma sodium *concentration* because reabsorbed sodium is accompanied by a proportionate amount of water.

Hypertension inhibits the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone mechanism. The kidneys then reabsorb almost no sodium beyond the proximal convoluted tubule (PCT), and the urine contains up to 30 g of sodium per day.

Aldosterone has only slight effects on urine volume, blood volume, and blood pressure in spite of the tendency of water to follow sodium osmotically. Even in aldosterone hypersecretion, blood volume is rarely more than 5% to 10% above normal. An increase in blood volume increases blood pressure and glomerular filtration rate (GFR). Even though aldosterone increases the tubular reabsorption of

Table 24.2 Electrolyte Concentrations and the Terminology of Electrolyte Imbalances

	Mean Concentration (mEq/L)*			
Electrolyte	**Plasma**	**ICF**	**Deficiency**	**Excess**
Sodium (Na^+)	142	10	Hyponatremia	Hypernatremia[4]
Potassium (K^+)	5	141	Hypokalemia	Hyperkalemia[5]
Calcium (Ca^{2+})	5	<1	Hypocalcemia	Hypercalcemia
Chloride (Cl^-)	103	4	Hypochloremia	Hyperchloremia
Phosphate (PO_4^{3-})	4	75	Hypophosphatemia	Hyperphosphatemia

*Concentrations in mmol/L are the same for Na^+, K^+, and Cl^-, one-half the above values for Ca^{2+}, and one-third the above values for PO_4^{3-}.

[4] *natr* = sodium + *emia* = blood condition

[5] *kal* = potassium

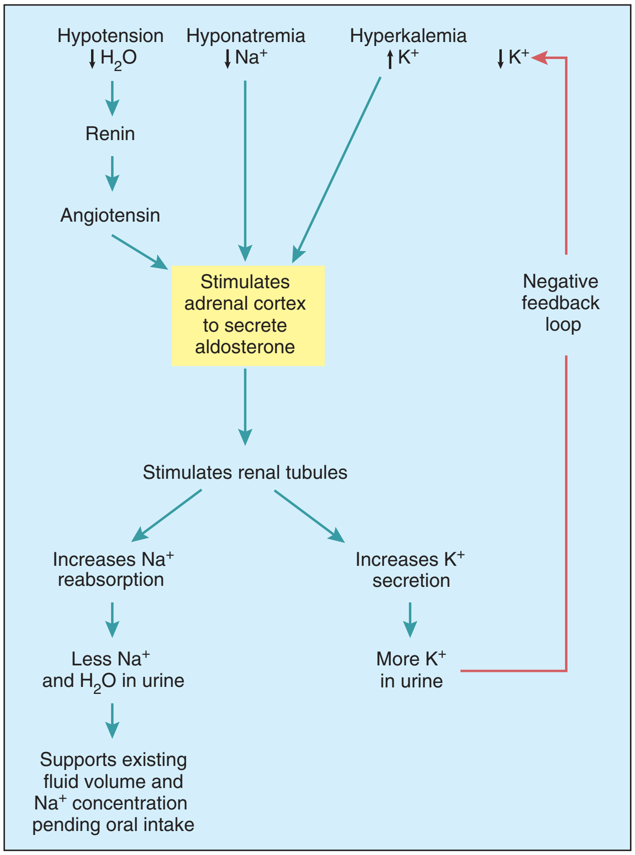

Hypotension
↓ H_2O
Hyponatremia
↓ Na^+
Hyperkalemia
↑ K^+
↓ K^+
Renin
Angiotensin
Stimulates adrenal cortex to secrete aldosterone
Negative feedback loop
Stimulates renal tubules
Increases Na^+ reabsorption
Increases K^+ secretion
Less Na^+ and H_2O in urine
More K^+ in urine
Supports existing fluid volume and Na^+ concentration pending oral intake

Figure 24.7 **The Secretion and Effects of Aldosterone.** The pathway shown in *red* represents negative feedback.
What is required, in addition to aldosterone, to increase blood volume?

sodium and water, this is offset by the rise in GFR and there is only a small drop in urine output.

Antidiuretic hormone modifies water excretion independently of sodium excretion. Thus, unlike aldosterone, it can change sodium *concentration.* A high concentration of sodium in the blood stimulates the posterior lobe of the pituitary gland to release ADH. Thus the kidneys reabsorb more water, which slows down any further increase in blood sodium concentration. ADH alone cannot lower the blood sodium concentration; this requires water ingestion, but remember that ADH also stimulates thirst. A drop in sodium concentration, by contrast, inhibits ADH release. More water is excreted and this raises the concentration of the sodium that remains in the blood.

Atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP) inhibits sodium and water reabsorption and the secretion of renin and ADH. The kidneys thus eliminate more sodium and water and lower the blood pressure.

Several other hormones also affect sodium homeostasis. Estrogens mimic the effect of aldosterone and cause women to retain water during pregnancy and part of the menstrual cycle. Progesterone reduces sodium reabsorption and has a diuretic effect. High levels of glucocorticoids promote sodium reabsorption and edema.

In some cases, sodium homeostasis is achieved by regulation of salt intake. A craving for salt occurs in people who are depleted of sodium; for example, by blood loss or Addison disease. Pregnant women sometimes develop a craving for salty foods. Salt craving is not limited to humans; many animals ranging from elephants to butterflies seek out salty soil where they can obtain this vital mineral.

Imbalances

True imbalances in sodium concentration are relatively rare because sodium excess or depletion is almost always accompanied by proportionate changes in water volume. **Hypernatremia** is a plasma sodium concentration in excess of 145 mEq/L. It can result from the administration of intravenous saline (see insight 24.2, p. 933). Its major consequences are water retention, hypertension, and edema. **Hyponatremia** (less than 130 mEq/L) is usually the result of excess body water rather than excess sodium excretion, as in the case mentioned earlier of a person who loses large volumes of sweat or urine and replaces it by drinking plain water. Usually, hyponatremia is quickly corrected by excretion of the excess water, but if uncorrected it produces the symptoms of hypotonic hydration described earlier.

Potassium

Functions

Potassium is the most abundant cation of the ICF and is the greatest determinant of intracellular osmolarity and cell volume. Along with sodium, it produces the resting membrane potentials and action potentials of nerve and muscle cells (fig. 24.8*a*). Potassium is as important as sodium to the Na^+-K^+ pump and its functions of cotransport and thermogenesis (heat production). It is an essential cofactor for protein synthesis and some other metabolic processes.

Homeostasis

Potassium homeostasis is closely linked to that of sodium. Regardless of the body's state of potassium balance, about 90% of the K^+ filtered by the glomerulus is reabsorbed by the PCT and the rest is excreted in the urine. Variations in potassium excretion are controlled later in the nephron by changing the amount of potassium returned to the tubular fluid by the distal convoluted tubule and cortical portion

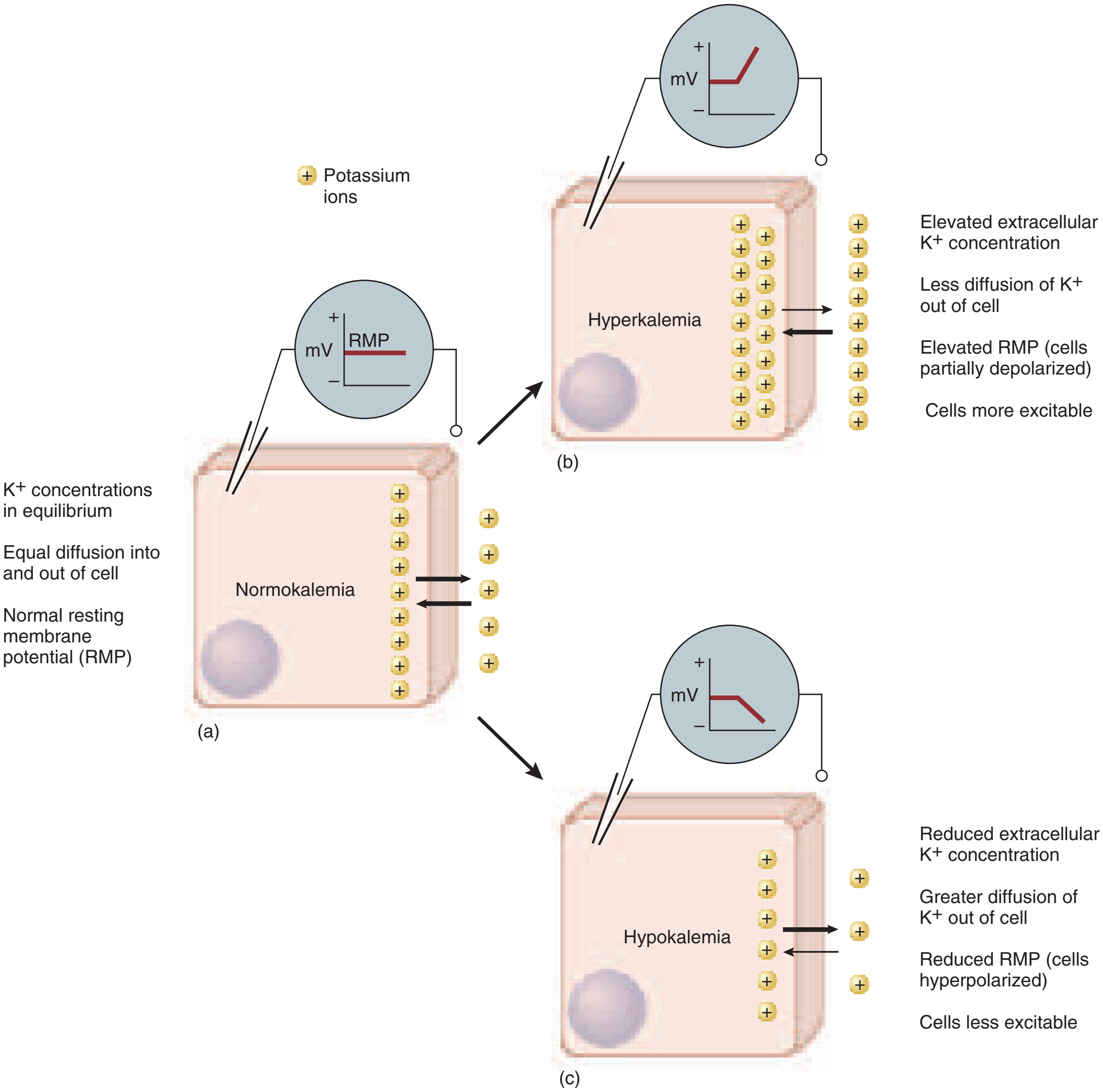

Potassium ions
+
mV
RMP
−
K+ concentrations in equilibrium
Equal diffusion into and out of cell
Normal resting membrane potential (RMP)
Normokalemia
(a)
Hyperkalemia
(b)
Elevated extracellular K+ concentration
Less diffusion of K+ out of cell
Elevated RMP (cells partially depolarized)
Cells more excitable
Hypokalemia
(c)
Reduced extracellular K+ concentration
Greater diffusion of K+ out of cell
Reduced RMP (cells hyperpolarized)
Cells less excitable

Figure 24.8 **Effects of Potassium Imbalances on Membrane Potentials.** The circular diagram above each cell represents the voltage measured across the plasma membrane. (*a*) Normokalemia, with a normal resting membrane potential (RMP). (*b*) Hyperkalemia, with an elevated RMP. (*c*) Hypokalemia, with a depressed RMP.

of the collecting duct (CD). When K^+ concentration is high, they secrete more K^+ into the filtrate and the urine may contain more K^+ than the glomerulus filters from the blood. When blood K^+ level is low, the CD secretes less. The intercalated cells of the distal convoluted tubule and collecting duct reabsorb K^+.

Aldosterone regulates potassium balance along with sodium (see fig. 24.7). A rise in K^+ concentration stimulates the adrenal cortex to secrete aldosterone. Aldosterone stimulates renal secretion of K^+ at the same time that it stimulates reabsorption of sodium. The more sodium there is in the urine, the less potassium, and vice versa.

Imbalances

Potassium imbalances are the most dangerous of all electrolyte imbalances. **Hyperkalemia** (> 5.5 mEq/L) can have completely opposite effects depending on whether K^+ concentration rises quickly or slowly. It can rise quickly when, for example, a crush injury or hemolytic anemia releases large amounts of K^+ from ruptured cells. This can also result from a transfusion with outdated, stored blood because K^+ leaks from erythrocytes into the plasma during storage. A sudden increase in extracellular K^+ tends to make nerve and muscle cells abnormally excitable. Normally, K^+ continually passes in and out of cells at equal rates—leaving by diffusion and reentering by the Na^+-K^+ pump. But in hyperkalemia, there is less concentration difference between the ICF and ECF, so the outward diffusion of K^+ is reduced. More K^+ remains in the cell than normal, and the plasma membrane therefore has a less negative resting potential and is closer to the threshold at which it will set off action potentials (fig. 24.8*b*). This is a very dangerous condition that can quickly produce cardiac arrest. High-potassium solutions are sometimes used by veterinarians to euthanize animals and are used in some states as a lethal injection for capital punishment.

Hyperkalemia can also have a slower onset stemming from such causes as aldosterone hyposecretion, renal failure, or acidosis. (The relationship of acid-base imbalances to potassium imbalances is explained later.) Paradoxically, if the extracellular K^+ concentration rises slowly, nerve and muscle become *less* excitable. *Slow* depolarization of a cell inactivates voltage-gated Na^+ channels, and the channels do not become excitable again until the membrane repolarizes. Inactivated Na^+ channels cannot produce action potentials. For this reason, muscle cramps can be relieved by taking supplemental potassium.

Hypokalemia (<3.5 mEq/L) rarely results from a dietary deficiency, because most diets contain ample amounts of potassium; it can occur, however, in people with depressed appetites. Hypokalemia more often results from heavy sweating, chronic vomiting or diarrhea, excessive use of laxatives, aldosterone hypersecretion, or alkalosis. As ECF potassium concentration falls, more K^+ moves from the ICF to the ECF. With the loss of these cations from the cytoplasm, cells become hyperpolarized and nerve and muscle cells are less excitable (fig. 24.8*c*). This is reflected in muscle weakness, loss of muscle tone, depressed reflexes, and irregular electrical activity of the heart.

Think About It

Some tumors of the adrenal cortex secrete excess aldosterone and may cause paralysis. Explain this effect and identify the electrolyte and fluid imbalances you would expect to observe in such a case.

Chloride

Functions

Chloride ions are the most abundant anions of the ECF and thus make a major contribution to its osmolarity. Chloride ions are required for the formation of stomach acid (HCl), and they are involved in the chloride shift that accompanies carbon dioxide loading and unloading by the erythrocytes (see chapter 22). By a similar mechanism explained later, Cl^- plays a major role in the regulation of body pH.

Homeostasis

Cl^- is strongly attracted to Na^+, K^+, and Ca^{2+}. It would require great expenditure of energy to keep it separate from these cations, so Cl^- homeostasis is achieved primarily as an effect of Na^+ homeostasis—as sodium is retained or excreted, Cl^- passively follows.

Imbalances

Hyperchloremia (>105 mEq/L) is usually the result of dietary excess or administration of intravenous saline. **Hypochloremia** (<95 mEq/L) is usually a side effect of hyponatremia but sometimes results from hypokalemia. In the latter case, the kidneys retain K^+ by excreting more Na^+, and Na^+ takes Cl^- with it. The primary effects of chloride imbalances are disturbances in acid-base balance, but this works both ways—a pH imbalance arising from some other cause can also produce a chloride imbalance. Chloride balance is therefore discussed further in connection with acid-base balance.

Calcium

Functions

Calcium lends strength to the skeleton, activates the sliding filament mechanism of muscle contraction, serves as a second messenger for some hormones and neurotransmitters, activates exocytosis of neurotransmitters and other cellular secretions, and is an essential factor in blood clotting. Cells maintain a very low intracellular calcium concentration because they require a high concentration of phosphate ions (for reasons discussed shortly). If calcium and phosphate were both very concentrated in a cell, calcium phosphate crystals would precipitate in the cytoplasm (as described in chapter 7). To maintain a high phosphate concentration but avoid crystallization of calcium phosphate, cells must pump out Ca^{2+} and keep it at a low intracellular concentration or else sequester Ca^{2+} in the smooth ER and release it only when needed. Cells that store Ca^{2+} often have a protein called *calsequestrin,* which binds the stored Ca^{2+} and keeps it chemically unreactive.

Homeostasis

The homeostatic control of Ca^{2+} concentration was discussed extensively in chapter 7. It is regulated chiefly by parathyroid hormone, calcitriol, and in children, by calcitonin. These hormones regulate blood calcium concentration through their effects on bone deposition and resorption, intestinal absorption of calcium, and urinary excretion.

Imbalances

Hypercalcemia ($>$5.8 mEq/L) can result from alkalosis, hyperparathyroidism, or hypothyroidism. It reduces the Na^+ permeability of plasma membranes and inhibits the depolarization of nerve and muscle cells. At concentrations $\geq$ 12 mEq/dL, hypercalcemia causes muscular weakness, depressed reflexes, and cardiac arrhythmia.

Hypocalcemia ($<$4.5 mEq/L) can result from vitamin D deficiency, diarrhea, pregnancy, lactation, acidosis, hypoparathyroidism, or hyperthyroidism. It increases the Na^+ permeability of plasma membranes causing the nervous and muscular systems to be overly excitable. Tetany occurs when calcium concentration drops to 6 mg/dL and may be lethal at 4 mg/dL due to laryngospasm and suffocation.

Phosphates

Functions

The inorganic phosphates (P_i) of the body fluids are an equilibrium mixture of phosphate (PO_4^{3-}), monohydrogen phosphate (HPO_4^{2-}), and dihydrogen phosphate ($H_2PO_4^-$) ions. Phosphates are relatively concentrated in the ICF, where they are generated by the hydrolysis of ATP and other phosphate compounds. They are a component of nucleic acids, phospholipids, ATP, GTP, cAMP, and related compounds. Every process that depends on ATP depends on phosphate ions. Phosphates activate many metabolic pathways by phosphorylating enzymes and substrates such as glucose. They are also important as buffers that help stabilize the pH of the body fluids.

Homeostasis

The average diet provides ample amounts of phosphate ions, which are readily absorbed by the small intestine. Plasma phosphate concentration is usually maintained at about 4 mEq/L, with continual loss of excess phosphate by glomerular filtration. If plasma phosphate concentration drops much below this level, however, the renal tubules reabsorb all filtered phosphate.

Parathyroid hormone increases the excretion of phosphate as part of the mechanism for increasing the concentration of free calcium ions in the ECF. Lowering the ECF phosphate concentration minimizes the formation of calcium phosphate and thus helps support plasma calcium concentration. Rates of phosphate excretion are also strongly affected by the pH of the urine, as discussed shortly.

Imbalances

Phosphate homeostasis is not as critical as that of other electrolytes. The body can tolerate broad variations several times above or below the normal concentration with little immediate effect on physiology.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

6. Which of these do you think would have the most serious effect, and why—a 5 mEq/L increase in the plasma concentration of sodium, potassium, chloride, or calcium?
7. Answer the same question for a 5 mEq/L *decrease.*
8. Explain why ADH is more likely than aldosterone to change the osmolarity of the blood plasma.
9. Explain why aldosterone hyposecretion could cause hypochloremia.
10. Why are more phosphate ions required in the ICF than in the ECF? How does this affect the distribution of calcium ions between these fluid compartments?

Acid-Base Balance

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- define *buffer* and write chemical equations for the bicarbonate, phosphate, and protein buffer systems;
- discuss the relationship between pulmonary ventilation, pH of the extracellular fluids, and the bicarbonate buffer system;
- explain how the kidneys secrete hydrogen ions and how these ions are buffered in the tubular fluid;
- identify some types and causes of acidosis and alkalosis, and describe the effects of these pH imbalances; and
- explain how the respiratory and urinary systems correct acidosis and alkalosis, and compare their effectiveness and limitations.

As we saw in chapter 2, metabolism depends on the functioning of enzymes, and enzymes are very sensitive to pH. Slight deviations from the normal pH can shut down metabolic pathways as well as alter the structure and function of other macromolecules. Consequently, acid-base balance is one of the most important aspects of homeostasis.

The blood and tissue fluid normally have a pH of 7.35 to 7.45. Such a narrow range of variation is remarkable considering that our metabolism constantly produces acid: lactic acid from anaerobic fermentation, phosphoric acids from nucleic acid catabolism, fatty acids and ketones from fat catabolism, and carbonic acid from carbon dioxide. Here we examine mechanisms for resisting these challenges and maintaining acid-base balance.

Think About It

In the systemic circulation, arterial blood has a pH of 7.40 and venous blood has a pH of 7.35. What do you think causes this difference?

Acids, Bases, and Buffers

The pH of a solution is determined solely by its hydrogen ions (H^+) (or strictly speaking, hydronium ions, H_3O^+, as explained in chapter 2). An acid is any chemical that releases H^+ in solution. A **strong acid** such as hydrochloric acid (HCl) ionizes freely, gives up most of its hydrogen ions, and can markedly lower the pH of a solution. A **weak acid** such as carbonic acid (H_2CO_3) ionizes only slightly and keeps most hydrogen in a chemically bound form that does not affect pH. A base is any chemical that accepts H^+. A **strong base** such as the hydroxyl ion (OH^-) has a strong tendency to bind H^+ and raise the pH, whereas a **weak base** such as the bicarbonate ion (HCO_3^-) binds less of the available H^+ and has less effect on pH.

A **buffer,** broadly speaking, is any mechanism that resists changes in pH by converting a strong acid or base to a weak one. The body has both physiological and chemical buffers. A **physiological buffer** is a system—namely the respiratory or urinary system—that stabilizes pH by controlling the body's output of acids, bases, or CO_2. Of all buffer systems, the urinary system buffers the greatest quantity of acid or base, but it requires several hours to days to exert an effect. The respiratory system exerts an effect within a few minutes but cannot alter the pH as much as the urinary system can.

A **chemical buffer** is a substance that binds H^+ and removes it from solution as its concentration begins to rise or releases H^+ into solution as its concentration falls. Chemical buffers can restore normal pH within a fraction of a second. They function as mixtures called **buffer systems** composed of a weak acid and a weak base. The three major chemical buffer systems of the body are the bicarbonate, phosphate, and protein systems.

The amount of acid or base that can be neutralized by a chemical buffer system depends on two factors: the concentration of the buffers and the pH of their working environment. Each system has an optimum pH at which it functions best; its effectiveness is greatly reduced if the pH of its environment deviates too far from this. The relevance of these factors will become apparent as you study the following buffer systems.

The Bicarbonate Buffer System

The **bicarbonate buffer system** is a solution of carbonic acid and bicarbonate ions. Carbonic acid (H_2CO_3) forms by the hydration of carbon dioxide and then dissociates into bicarbonate (HCO_3^-) and H^+:

$$CO_2 + H_2O \leftrightarrow H_2CO_3 \leftrightarrow HCO_3^- + H^+$$

This is a reversible reaction. When it proceeds to the right, carbonic acid acts as a weak acid by releasing H^+ and lowering pH. When the reaction proceeds to the left, bicarbonate acts as a weak base by binding H^+, removing the ions from solution, and raising pH.

At a pH of 7.4, the bicarbonate system would not ordinarily have a particularly strong buffering capacity outside of the body. This is too far from its optimum pH of 6.1. If a strong acid were added to a beaker of carbonic acid–bicarbonate solution at pH 7.4, the preceding reaction would shift only slightly to the left. Much surplus H^+ would remain and the pH would be substantially lower. In the body, by contrast, the bicarbonate system works quite well because the lungs and kidneys constantly remove CO_2 and prevent an equilibrium from being reached. This keeps the reaction moving to the left, and more H^+ is neutralized. Conversely, if there is a need to lower the pH, the kidneys excrete HCO_3^-, keep this reaction moving to the right, and elevate the H^+ concentration of the ECF. Thus you can see that the physiological and chemical buffers of the body function together in maintaining acid-base balance.

The Phosphate Buffer System

The **phosphate buffer system** is a solution of HPO_4^{2-} and $H_2PO_4^-$. It works in much the same way as the bicarbonate system. The following reaction can proceed to the right to liberate H^+ and lower pH, or it can proceed to the left to bind H^+ and raise pH:

$$H_2PO_4^- \leftrightarrow HPO_4^{2-} + H^+$$

The optimal pH for this system is 6.8, closer to the actual pH of the ECF. Thus the phosphate buffer system has a stronger buffering effect than an equal amount of bicarbonate buffer. However, phosphates are much less concentrated in the ECF than bicarbonate, so they are less important in buffering the ECF. They are more important in the renal tubules and ICF, where not only are they more concentrated, but the pH is lower and closer to their functional optimum. In the ICF, the constant production of metabolic acids creates pH values ranging from 4.5 to 7.4, probably averaging 7.0. The reason for the low pH in the renal tubules is discussed later.

The Protein Buffer System

Proteins are more concentrated than either bicarbonate or phosphate buffers, especially in the ICF. The **protein buffer system** accounts for about three-quarters of all chemical buffering ability of the body fluids. The buffering ability of proteins is due to certain side groups of their amino acid residues. Some have carboxyl (–COOH) side groups, which release H^+ when pH begins to rise and thus lower pH:

$$-COOH \rightarrow -COO^- + H^+$$

Others have amino ($-NH_2$) side groups, which bind H^+ when pH falls too low, thus raising pH toward normal:

$$-NH_2 + H^+ \rightarrow -NH_3^+$$

Think About It

What protein do you think is the most important buffer in blood plasma? In erythrocytes?

Respiratory Control of pH

The equation for the bicarbonate buffer system shows that the addition of CO_2 to the body fluids raises H^+ concentration and lowers pH, while the removal of CO_2 has the opposite effects. This is the basis for the strong buffering capacity of the respiratory system. Indeed, this system can neutralize two or three times as much acid as the chemical buffers can.

Carbon dioxide is constantly produced by aerobic metabolism and is normally eliminated by the lungs at an equivalent rate. As explained in chapter 22, rising CO_2 concentration and falling pH stimulate peripheral and central chemoreceptors, which stimulate an increase in pulmonary ventilation. This expels excess CO_2 and thus reduces H^+ concentration. The free H^+ becomes part of the water molecules produced by this reaction:

$$HCO_3^- + H^+ \rightarrow H_2CO_3 \rightarrow CO_2 \text{ (expired)} + H_2O$$

Conversely, a drop in H^+ concentration raises pH and reduces pulmonary ventilation. This allows metabolic CO_2 to accumulate in the ECF faster than it is expelled, thus lowering pH to normal.

These are classic negative feedback mechanisms that result in acid-base homeostasis. Respiratory control of pH has some limitations, however, which are discussed later under acid-base imbalances.

Renal Control of pH

The kidneys can neutralize more acid or base than either the respiratory system or the chemical buffers. The essence of this mechanism is that the renal tubules secrete H^+ into the tubular fluid, where most of it binds to bicarbonate, ammonia, and phosphate buffers. Bound and free H^+ are then excreted in the urine. Thus the kidneys, in contrast to the lungs, actually expel H^+ from the body. The other buffer systems only reduce its concentration by binding it to another chemical.

Figure 24.9 shows the process of H^+ secretion and neutralization. It is numbered to correspond to the following description, and the hydrogen ions are shown in color so you can trace them through the system from blood to urine:

1. Hydrogen ions in the blood are neutralized in two ways: by reacting with bicarbonate ions to produce carbonic acid and with hydroxyl ions to produce water.
2. Carbonic acid dissociates into water and carbon dioxide, which diffuse into the tubule cells.
3. The tubule cells obtain CO_2 from three sources: the blood, the tubular fluid, and their own aerobic respiration.
4. Within the tubule cell, carbonic anhydrase (CAH) catalyzes the reaction of CO_2 and H_2O to produce carbonic acid.
5. Carbonic acid dissociates into bicarbonate and hydrogen ions.
6. The bicarbonate ions diffuse back into the bloodstream and may reenter the reaction cycle.
7. An antiport in the tubule cells pumps H^+ into the tubular fluid in exchange for Na^+.
8. Sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$) in the glomerular filtrate reacts with these hydrogen ions producing free sodium ions and carbonic acid.
9. The sodium ions are pumped into the tubule cells by the antiport at step 7 and then transferred to the blood by a Na^+-K^+ pump in the basal plasma membrane.
10. The carbonic acid in the tubular fluid dissociates into carbon dioxide and water. (The role of CAH is discussed shortly.) The CO_2 is recycled into the tubule cell and the water may be passed in the urine. Thus the hydrogen ions removed from the blood at step 1 are now part of the water molecules excreted in the urine at step 10.

Tubular secretion of H^+ (step 7) continues only as long as there is a sufficient concentration gradient between a high H^+ concentration in the tubule cells and a lower H^+ concentration in the tubular fluid. If the pH of the tubular fluid drops any lower than 4.5, tubular secretion of H^+ (step 7) ceases for lack of a sufficient gradient. Thus, pH 4.5 is the **limiting pH** for tubular secretion of H^+. This has added significance later in our discussion.

In a person with normal acid-base balance, the tubules secrete enough H^+ to neutralize all HCO_3^- in the tubular fluid; thus there is no HCO_3^- in the urine. Bicarbonate ions are filtered by the glomerulus, gradually disappear from the tubular fluid, and appear in the peritubular capillary blood. It *appears* as if HCO_3^- were reabsorbed by the renal tubules, but this is not the case; indeed, the renal tubules are incapable of HCO_3^- reabsorption. The cells of the proximal convoluted tubule, however, have carbonic anhydrase (CAH) on their brush borders facing the lumen. This breaks down the H_2CO_3 in the tubular fluid to $CO_2 + H_2O$ (step 10). It is the CO_2 that

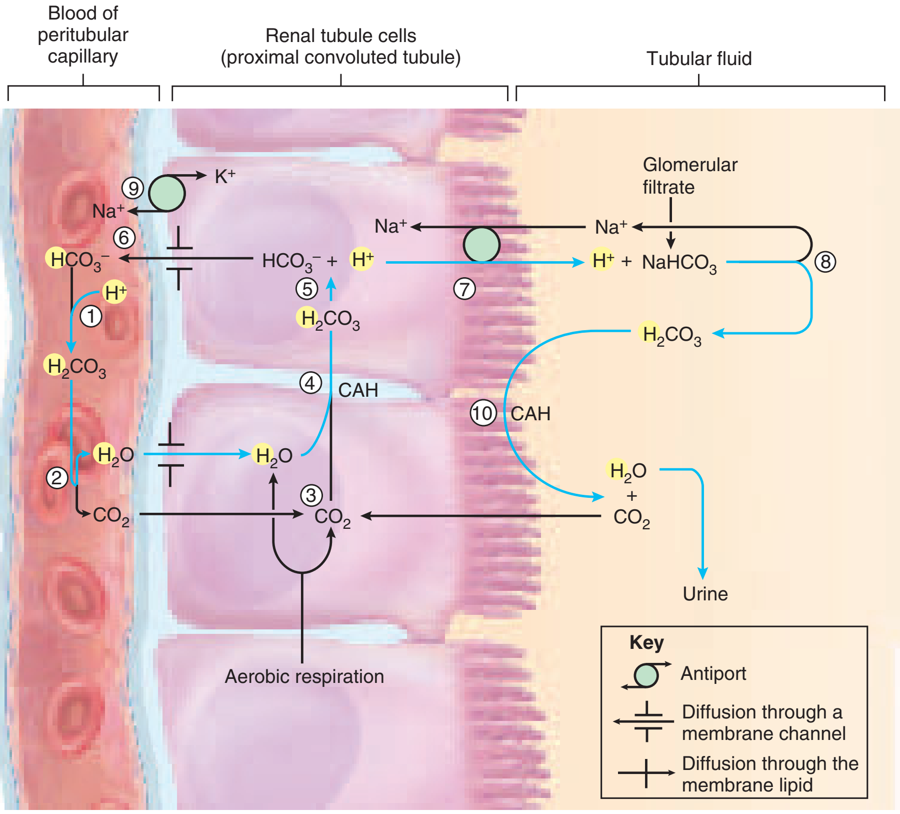

Blood of peritubular capillary
Renal tubule cells (proximal convoluted tubule)
Tubular fluid
Glomerular filtrate
K^+
⑨
Na^+
⑥
HCO_3^-
H^+
①
H_2CO_3
H_2O
②
CO_2
Na^+
HCO_3^- + H^+
⑤
H_2CO_3
④ CAH
H_2O
③
CO_2
Aerobic respiration
⑦
Na^+
H^+ + $NaHCO_3$
⑧
H_2CO_3
⑩ CAH
H_2O + CO_2
Urine
Key
Antiport
Diffusion through a membrane channel
Diffusion through the membrane lipid

Figure 24.9 **Secretion and Neutralization of Hydrogen Ions in the Kidneys.** Circled numbers correspond to the explanation in the text. The colored arrows and hydrogen symbols allow you to trace hydrogen from H^+ in the blood to H_2O in the urine.
If the pH of the tubular fluid went down, how would its Na^+ concentration change?

is reabsorbed, not the bicarbonate. For every CO_2 reabsorbed, however, a *new* bicarbonate ion is formed in the tubule cell and released into the blood (steps 5–6). The effect is the same as if the tubule cells had reabsorbed bicarbonate itself.

Note that for every bicarbonate ion that enters the peritubular capillaries, a sodium ion does too. Thus the reabsorption of Na^+ by the renal tubules is part of the process of neutralizing acid. The more acid the kidneys excrete, the less sodium the urine contains.

The tubules secrete somewhat more H^+ than the available bicarbonate can neutralize. The urine therefore contains a slight excess of free H^+, which gives it a pH of about 5 to 6. Yet if all of the excess H^+ secreted by the tubules remained in this free ionic form, the pH of the tubular fluid would drop far below the limiting pH of 4.5, and H^+ secretion would stop. This must be prevented, and there are additional buffers in the tubular fluid to do so.

The glomerular filtrate contains Na_2HPO_4 (dibasic sodium phosphate), which reacts with some of the H^+ (fig. 24.10). A hydrogen ion replaces one of the sodium ions in the buffer, forming NaH_2PO_4 (monobasic sodium phosphate). This is passed in the urine and the displaced Na^+ is transported into the tubule cell and from there to the bloodstream.

In addition, tubular cells catabolize certain amino acids and release ammonia (NH_3) as a product (fig. 24.10). Ammonia diffuses into the tubular fluid, where it acts as a base to neutralize acid. It reacts with H^+ and Cl^- (the most abundant anion in the glomerular filtrate) to form ammonium chloride (NH_4Cl), which is passed in the urine.

Since there is so much chloride in the tubular fluid, you might ask why H^+ is not simply excreted as hydrochloric acid (HCl). Why involve ammonia? The reason is that HCl is a strong acid—it dissociates almost completely, so most of its hydrogen would be in the form of free H^+. The pH of the tubular fluid would drop below the limiting pH and prevent excretion of more acid. Ammonium chloride, by contrast, is a weak acid—most of its hydrogen remains bound to it and does not lower the pH of the tubular fluid.

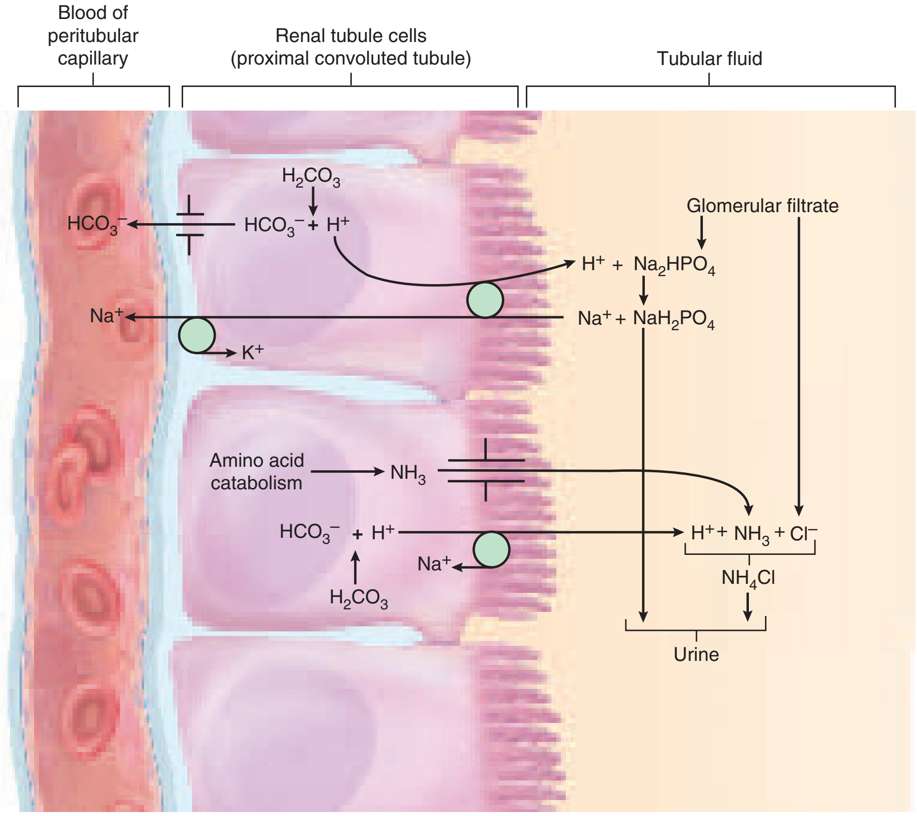


Figure 24.10 **Mechanisms of Buffering Acid in the Urine.** Reactions in the tubule cells are the same as in figure 24.9 but are simplified in this diagram. The essential differences are the buffering mechanisms shown in the tubular fluid.

Disorders of Acid-Base Balance

At pH 7.4, the ECF has a 20:1 ratio of HCO_3^- to H_2CO_3 (fig. 24.11). If the relative amount of H_2CO_3 rises higher than this, it tips the balance to a lower pH. If the pH falls below 7.35, a state of **acidosis** exists. An excess of HCO_3^-, by contrast, tips the balance to a higher pH. A pH above 7.45 is a state of **alkalosis.** Either of these imbalances has potentially fatal effects. A person cannot live more than a few hours if the blood pH is below 7.0 or above 7.7; a pH below 6.8 or above 8.0 is quickly fatal.

In acidosis, H^+ diffuses down its concentration gradient into the cells, and to maintain electrical balance, K^+ diffuses out (fig. 24.12*a*). The H^+ is buffered by intracellular proteins, so this exchange results in a net loss of cations from the cell. This makes the resting membrane potential more negative than usual (hyperpolarized) and makes nerve and muscle cells more difficult to stimulate. This is why acidosis depresses the central nervous system and causes such symptoms as confusion, disorientation, and coma.

In alkalosis, the extracellular H^+ concentration is low. Hydrogen ions diffuse out of the cells and K^+ diffuses in to replace them (fig. 24.12*b*). The net gain in positive intracellular charges shifts the membrane potential closer to firing level and makes the nervous system hyperexcitable. Neurons fire spontaneously and overstimulate skeletal muscles, causing muscle spasms, tetany, convulsions, or respiratory paralysis.

Acid-base imbalances fall into two categories, respiratory and metabolic (table 24.3). **Respiratory acidosis** occurs when the rate of alveolar ventilation fails to keep pace with the body's rate of CO_2 production. Carbon dioxide accumulates in the ECF and lowers its pH. **Respiratory alkalosis** results from hyperventilation, in which CO_2 is eliminated faster than it is produced.

Metabolic acidosis can result from increased production of organic acids, such as lactic acid in anaerobic fermentation and ketone bodies in alcoholism and diabetes mellitus. It can also result from the ingestion of acidic drugs such as aspirin or from the loss of base due to chronic diarrhea or overuse of laxatives. Dying persons

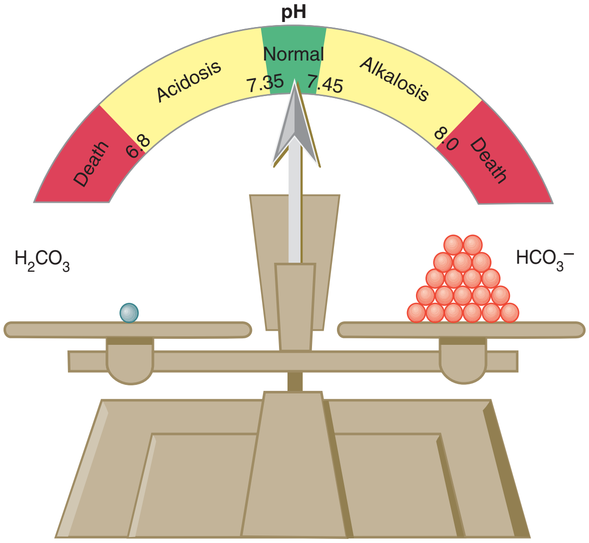


Figure 24.11 **The Relationship of Carbonic Acid–Bicarbonate Ratio to pH.** At a normal pH of 7.40, there is a 20:1 ratio of bicarbonate ions (HCO_3^-) to carbonic acid (H_2CO_3) in the blood plasma. An excess of HCO_3^- tips the balance toward alkalosis, whereas an excess of H_2CO_3 tips it toward acidosis.

also typically exhibit acidosis. **Metabolic alkalosis** is rare but can result from overuse of bicarbonates (such as oral antacids and intravenous bicarbonate solutions) or from the loss of stomach acid by chronic vomiting.

Compensation for Acid-Base Imbalances

In **compensated** acidosis or alkalosis, either the kidneys compensate for pH imbalances of respiratory origin, or the respiratory system compensates for pH imbalances of metabolic origin. **Uncompensated** acidosis or alkalosis is a pH imbalance that the body cannot correct without clinical intervention.

In **respiratory compensation,** changes in pulmonary ventilation correct the pH of the body fluids by expelling or retaining CO_2. If there is a CO_2 excess (hypercapnia), pulmonary ventilation increases to expel CO_2 and bring the blood pH back up to normal. If there is a CO_2 deficiency (hypocapnia), ventilation is reduced to allow CO_2 to accumulate in the blood and lower the pH to normal.

This is very effective in correcting pH imbalances due to abnormal P_{CO_2} but not very effective in correcting other causes of acidosis and alkalosis. In diabetic acidosis,

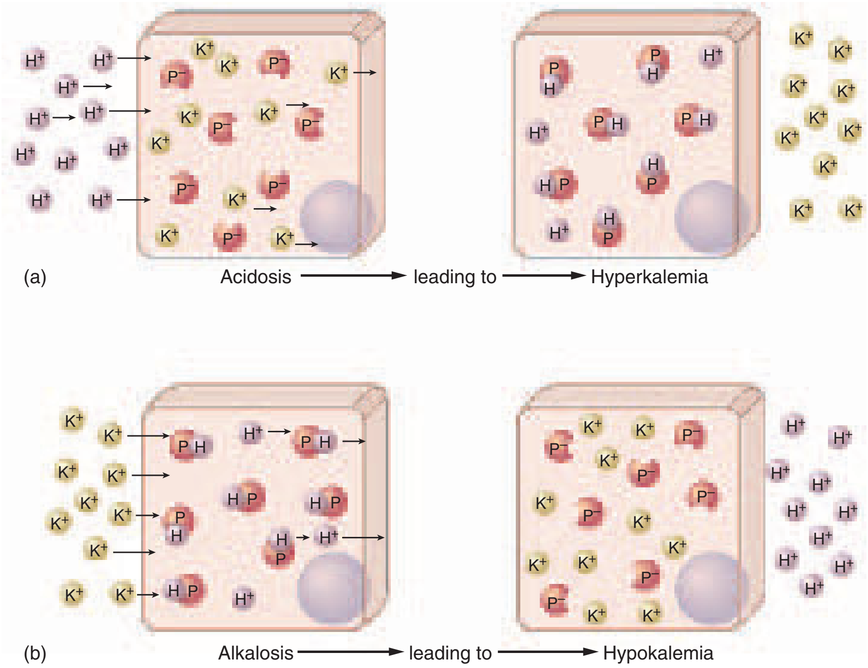


Figure 24.12 **The Relationship Between Acid-Base Imbalances and Potassium Imbalances.** (*a*) In acidosis, H^+ diffuses into the cells and drives out K^+, elevating the K^+ concentration of the ECF. (*b*) In alkalosis, H^+ diffuses out of the cells and K^+ diffuses in to replace it, lowering the K^+ concentration of the ECF.

How would you change figure *a* to show the effect of hyperkalemia on ECF pH?

Table 24.3 Some Causes of Acidosis and Alkalosis

	Acidosis	Alkalosis
Respiratory	Hypoventilation, apnea, or respiratory arrest; asthma, emphysema, chronic bronchitis	Hyperventilation due to emotions or oxygen deficiency (as at high altitudes)
Metabolic	Excess production of organic acids, as in diabetes mellitus and long-term anaerobic fermentation; drugs such as aspirin and laxatives; chronic diarrhea	Rare but can result from chronic vomiting or overuse of bicarbonates (antacids)

Table 24.4 Some Relationships Among Fluid, Electrolyte, and Acid-Base Imbalances

Cause	Potential Effect	Reason
Acidosis →	Hyperkalemia	H^+ diffuses into cells and displaces K^+ (see fig. 24.12*a*). As K^+ leaves the ICF, K^+ concentration in the ECF rises.
Hyperkalemia →	Acidosis	Opposite from the above; high K^+ concentration in the ECF causes less K^+ to diffuse out of the cells than normally. H^+ diffuses out to compensate, and this lowers the extracellular pH.
Alkalosis →	Hypokalemia	H^+ diffuses from ICF to ECF. More K^+ remains in the ICF to compensate for the H^+ loss, causing a drop in ECF K^+ concentration (see fig. 24.12*b*).
Hypokalemia →	Alkalosis	Opposite from the above; low K^+ concentration in the ECF causes K^+ to diffuse out of cells. H^+ diffuses in to replace K^+, lowering the H^+ concentration of the ECF and raising its pH.
Acidosis →	Hypochloremia	More Cl^- is excreted as NH_4Cl to buffer the excess acid in the renal tubules, leaving less Cl^- in the ECF.
Alkalosis →	Hyperchloremia	More Cl^- is reabsorbed from the renal tubules, so ingested Cl^- accumulates in the ECF rather than being excreted.
Hyperchloremia →	Acidosis	More H^+ is retained in the blood to balance the excess Cl^-, causing hyperchloremic acidosis.
Hypovolemia →	Alkalosis	More Na^+ is reabsorbed by the kidney. Na^+ reabsorption is coupled to H^+ secretion (see fig. 24.9), so more H^+ is secreted and pH of the ECF rises.
Hypervolemia →	Acidosis	Less Na^+ is reabsorbed, so less H^+ is secreted into the renal tubules. H^+ retained in the ECF causes acidosis.
Acidosis →	Hypocalcemia	Acidosis causes more Ca^{2+} to bind to plasma protein and citrate ions, lowering the concentration of free, ionized Ca^{2+} and causing symptoms of hypocalcemia.
Alkalosis →	Hypercalcemia	Alkalosis causes more Ca^{2+} to dissociate from plasma protein and citrate ions, raising the concentration of free Ca^{2+}.

for example, the lungs cannot reduce the concentration of ketone bodies in the blood, although it can somewhat compensate for the H^+ that they release by increasing pulmonary ventilation and exhausting extra CO_2. The respiratory system can adjust a blood pH of 7.0 back to 7.2 or 7.3 but not all the way back to the normal 7.4. Although the respiratory system has a very powerful buffering effect, its ability to stabilize pH is therefore limited.

Renal compensation is an adjustment of pH by changing the rate of H^+ secretion by the renal tubules. The kidneys are slower to respond to pH imbalances but better at restoring a fully normal pH. Urine usually has a pH of 5 to 6, but in acidosis it may fall as low as 4.5 because of excess H^+, whereas in alkalosis it may rise as high as 8.2 because of excess HCO_3^-. The kidneys cannot act quickly enough to compensate for short-term pH imbalances, such as the acidosis that might result from an asthmatic attack lasting an hour or two, or the alkalosis resulting from a brief episode of emotional hyperventilation. They are effective, however, at compensating for pH imbalances that last for a few days or longer.

In acidosis, the renal tubules increase the rate of H^+ secretion. The extra H^+ in the tubular fluid must be buffered; otherwise, the fluid pH could exceed the limiting pH and H^+ secretion would stop. Therefore, in acidosis, the renal tubules secrete more ammonia to buffer the added H^+, and the amount of ammonium chloride in the urine may rise to 7 to 10 times normal.

Think About It

Suppose you measured the pH and ammonium chloride concentration of urine from a person with emphysema and urine from a healthy individual. How would you expect the two to differ, and why?

In alkalosis, the bicarbonate concentration and pH of the urine are elevated. This is partly because there is more HCO_3^- in the blood and glomerular filtrate and partly because there is not enough H^+ in the tubular fluid to neutralize all the HCO_3^- in the filtrate.

Acid-Base Imbalances in Relation to Electrolyte and Water Imbalances

The foregoing discussion once again stresses a point made early in this chapter—we cannot understand or treat imbalances of water, electrolyte, or acid-base balance in isolation from each other, because each of these frequently affects the other two. Table 24.4 itemizes and explains a few of these interactions. This is by no means a complete list of how fluid, electrolytes, and pH affect each other, but it does demonstrate their interdependence. Note that many of these relationships are reciprocal—for example, acidosis can cause hyperkalemia, and conversely, hyperkalemia can cause acidosis.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section.

11. Write two chemical equations that show how the bicarbonate buffer system compensates for acidosis and alkalosis and two equations that show how the phosphate buffer system compensates for these imbalances.
12. Why are phosphate buffers more effective in the cytoplasm than in the blood plasma?
13. Renal tubules cannot reabsorb HCO_3^-, and yet HCO_3^- concentration in the tubular fluid falls while in the blood plasma it rises. Explain this apparent contradiction.
14. In acidosis, the renal tubules secrete more ammonia. Why?

Insight 24.2 Clinical Application

Fluid Replacement Therapy

One of the most significant problems in the treatment of seriously ill patients is the restoration and maintenance of proper fluid volume, composition, and distribution among the fluid compartments. Fluids may be administered to replenish total body water, restore blood volume and pressure, shift water from one fluid compartment to another, or restore and maintain electrolyte and acid-base balance.

Drinking water is the simplest method of fluid replacement, but it does not replace electrolytes. Heat exhaustion can occur when you lose water and salt in the sweat and replace the fluid by drinking plain water. Broths, juices, and isotonic sports drinks such as Gatorade replace water, carbohydrates, and electrolytes.

If a patient cannot take fluids by mouth, they must be administered by alternative routes. Some can be given by enema and absorbed through the colon. All routes of fluid administration other than the digestive tract are called *parenteral*[6] routes. The most common of these is the intravenous (I.V.) route, but for various reasons, including inability to find a suitable vein, fluids are sometimes given by subcutaneous (sub-Q), intramuscular (I.M.), or other parenteral routes. Many kinds of sterile solutions are available to meet the fluid replacement needs of different patients.

In cases of extensive blood loss, there may not be time to type and cross-match blood for a transfusion. The more urgent need is to replenish blood volume and pressure. *Normal saline* (isotonic, 0.9% NaCl) is a relatively quick and simple way to raise blood volume while maintaining normal osmolarity, but it has significant shortcomings. It takes three to five times as much saline as whole blood to rebuild normal volume because much of the saline escapes the circulation into the interstitial fluid compartment or is excreted by the kidneys. In addition, normal saline can induce hypernatremia and hyperchloremia, because the body excretes the water but retains much of the NaCl. Hyperchloremia can, in turn, produce acidosis. Normal saline also lacks potassium, magnesium, and calcium. Indeed, it dilutes those electrolytes that are already present and creates a risk of cardiac arrest from hypocalcemia. Saline also dilutes plasma albumin and RBCs, creating still greater risks for patients who have suffered extensive blood loss. Nevertheless, the emergency maintenance of blood volume sometimes takes temporary precedence over these other considerations.

Fluid therapy is also used to correct pH imbalances. Acidosis may be treated with *Ringer's lactate solution,* which includes sodium to rebuild ECF volume, potassium to rebuild ICF volume, lactate to balance the cations, and enough glucose to make the solution isotonic. Alkalosis can be treated with potassium chloride. This must be administered very carefully, because potassium ions can cause painful venous spasms, and even a small potassium excess can cause cardiac arrest. High-potassium solutions should never be given to patients in renal failure or whose renal status is unknown, because in the absence of renal excretion of potassium they can bring on lethal hyperkalemia. Ringer's lactate or potassium chloride also must be administered very cautiously, with close monitoring of blood pH, to avoid causing a pH imbalance opposite the one that was meant to be corrected. Too much Ringer's lactate causes alkalosis and too much KCl causes acidosis.

Plasma volume expanders are hypertonic solutions or colloids that are retained in the bloodstream and draw interstitial water into it by osmosis. They include albumin, sucrose, mannitol, and dextran. Plasma expanders are also used to combat hypotonic hydration by drawing water out of swollen cells, averting such problems as seizures and coma. A plasma expander can draw several liters of water out of the intracellular compartment within a few minutes.

Patients who cannot eat are often given isotonic 5% dextrose (glucose). A fasting patient loses as much as 70 to 85 g of protein per day from the tissues as protein is broken down to fuel the metabolism. Giving 100 to 150 g of I.V. glucose per day reduces this by half and is said to have a *protein-sparing effect.* More than glucose is needed in some cases—for example, if a patient has not eaten for several days and cannot be fed by nasogastric tube (due to lesions of the digestive tract, for example) or if large amounts of nutrients are needed for tissue repair following severe trauma, burns, or infections. In *total parenteral nutrition (TPN),* or *hyperalimentation,*[7] a patient is provided with complete I.V. nutritional support, including a protein hydrolysate (amino acid

Chapter 24

mixture), vitamins, electrolytes, 20% to 25% glucose, and on alternate days, a fat emulsion.

The water from parenteral solutions is normally excreted by the kidneys. If the patient has renal insufficiency, however, excretion may not keep pace with intake, and there is a risk of hypotonic hydration. Intravenous fluids are usually given slowly, by *I.V. drip,* to avoid abrupt changes or overcompensation for the patient's condition. In addition to pH, the patient's pulse rate, blood pressure, hematocrit, and plasma electrolyte concentrations are monitored, and the patient is examined periodically for respiratory sounds indicating pulmonary edema.

The delicacy of fluid replacement therapy underscores the close relationships among fluids, electrolytes, and pH. It is dangerous to manipulate any one of these variables without close attention to the others. Parenteral fluid therapy is usually used for persons who are seriously ill. Their homeostatic mechanisms are already compromised and leave less room for error than in a healthy person.

---

[6] *para* = beside + *enter* = intestine
[7] *hyper* = above normal + *aliment* = nourishment

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

Water Balance (p. 916)

1. The young adult male body contains about 40 L of water. About 65% is in the intracellular fluid (ICF) and 35% in the extracellular fluid (ECF).
2. Water moves osmotically from one fluid compartment to another so that osmolarities of the ECF and ICF seldom differ.
3. In a state of water balance, average daily fluid gains and losses are equal (typically about 2,500 mL each). Water is gained from the metabolism and by ingestion of food and drink; water is lost in urine, feces, expired breath, sweat, and by cutaneous transpiration.
4. Fluid intake is governed mainly by the sense of thirst, controlled by the *thirst center* of the hypothalamus. This center responds to angiotensin II, ADH, and signals from *osmoreceptor* neurons that monitor blood osmolarity.
5. Long-term satiation of thirst depends on hydration of the blood, although the sense of thirst is briefly suppressed by wetting and cooling of the mouth and filling of the stomach.
6. Fluid loss is governed mainly by the factors that control urine output. ADH, for example, is secreted in response to dehydration and reduces urine output.
7. *Fluid deficiency* occurs when fluid output exceeds intake. In a form of fluid deficiency called *volume depletion (hypovolemia),* total body water is reduced but its osmolarity remains normal, because proportionate amounts of water and salt are lost. In the other form, true *dehydration,* volume is reduced and osmolarity is elevated because the body has lost more water than salt. Severe fluid deficiency can result in circulatory shock and death.
8. *Fluid excess* occurs in two forms called *volume excess* (retention of excess fluid with normal osmolarity) and *hypotonic hydration* (retention of more water than salt, so osmolarity is low).
9. *Fluid sequestration* is a state in which total body water may be normal, but the water is maldistributed in the body. *Edema* and *pleural effusion* are examples of fluid sequestration.

Electrolyte Balance (p. 921)

1. Sodium is the major cation of the ECF and is important in osmotic and fluid balance, nerve and muscle activity, cotransport, acid-base buffering, and heat generation.
2. Aldosterone promotes Na^+ reabsorption. ADH reduces Na^+ concentration by promoting water reabsorption independently of Na^+. Atrial natriuretic peptide promotes Na^+ excretion.
3. A Na^+ excess *(hypernatremia)* tends to cause water retention, hypertension, and edema. A Na^+ deficiency *(hyponatremia)* is usually a result of hypotonic hydration.
4. Potassium is the major cation of the ICF. It is important for the same reasons as Na^+ and is a cofactor for some enzymes.
5. Aldosterone promotes K^+ excretion.
6. A K^+ excess *(hyperkalemia)* tends to cause nerve and muscle dysfunction, including cardiac arrest. A K^+ deficiency *(hypokalemia)* inhibits nerve and muscle function.
7. Chloride ions are the major anions of the ECF. They are important in osmotic balance, formation of stomach acid, and the chloride shift mechanism in respiratory and renal function.
8. Cl^- follows Na^+ and other cations and is regulated as a side effect of Na^+ homeostasis. The primary effect of chloride imbalances (*hyper*- and *hypochloremia*) is a pH imbalance.
9. Calcium is necessary for muscle contraction, neurotransmission and other cases of exocytosis, blood clotting, some hormone actions, and bone and tooth formation.
10. Calcium homeostasis is regulated by parathyroid hormone, calcitonin, and calcitriol (see chapter 7).
11. Hypercalcemia causes muscular weakness, depressed reflexes, and cardiac arrhythmia. Hypocalcemia causes potentially fatal muscle tetany.
12. Inorganic phosphate (P_i) is a mixture of PO_4^{3-}, HPO_4^{2-}, and $H_2PO_4^-$ ions. P_i is required for the synthesis of nucleic acids, phospholipids, ATP, GTP, and cAMP; it activates many metabolic pathways by phosphorylating such substances as enzymes and glucose; and it is an important acid-base buffer.
13. Phosphate levels are regulated by parathyroid hormone, but phosphate

imbalances are not as critical as imbalances of other electrolytes.

Acid-Base Balance (p. 926)

1. The pH of the ECF is normally maintained between 7.35 and 7.45.
2. pH is determined largely by the tendency of weak and strong acids to give up H^+ to solution, and weak and strong bases to absorb H^+.
3. A *buffer* is any system that resists changes in pH by converting a strong acid or base to a weak one. The *physiological buffers* are the urinary and respiratory systems; the *chemical buffers* are the bicarbonate, phosphate, and protein buffer systems.
4. The respiratory system buffers pH by adjusting pulmonary ventilation. Reduced ventilation allows CO_2 to accumulate in the blood and lower its pH by the reaction $CO_2 + H_2O \rightarrow H_2CO_3 \rightarrow HCO_3^- + H^+$ (generating the H^+ that lowers the pH). Increased ventilation expels CO_2, reversing this reaction, lowering H^+ concentration, and raising the pH.
5. The kidneys neutralize more acid or base than any other buffer system. They secrete H^+ into the tubular fluid, where it binds to chemical buffers and is voided from the body in the urine.
6. This H^+ normally neutralizes all the HCO_3^- in the tubular fluid, making the urine bicarbonate-free. Excess H^+ in the tubular fluid can be buffered by phosphate and ammonia.
7. Acidosis is a pH < 7.35. *Respiratory acidosis* occurs when pulmonary gas exchange is insufficient to expel CO_2 as fast as the body produces it. *Metabolic acidosis* is the result of lactic acid or ketone accumulation, ingestion of acidic drugs such as aspirin, or loss of base in such cases as diarrhea.
8. Alkalosis is a pH > 7.45. *Respiratory alkalosis* results from hyperventilation. *Metabolic alkalosis* is rare but can be caused by overuse of antacids or loss of stomach acid through vomiting.
9. *Uncompensated* acidosis or alkalosis is a pH imbalance that the body's homeostatic mechanisms cannot correct on their own; it requires clinical intervention.
10. *Compensated* acidosis or alkalosis is an imbalance that the body's homeostatic mechanisms can correct. *Respiratory compensation* is correction of the pH through changes in pulmonary ventilation. *Renal compensation* is correction of pH by changes in H^+ secretion by the kidneys.
11. Water, electrolyte, and acid-base imbalances are deeply interconnected; an imbalance in one area can cause or result from an imbalance in another (see table 24.4).

Selected Vocabulary

fluid compartment 916
water balance 916
hypovolemia 919
dehydration 919
volume excess 920
hypotonic hydration 920
hyper- and hyponatremia 923
hyper- and hypokalemia 924
hyper- and hypochloremia 925
hyper- and hypocalcemia 926
buffer 927
acidosis 930
alkalosis 930

Testing Your Recall

1. The greatest percentage of the body's water is in
   a. the blood plasma.
   b. the lymph.
   c. the intracellular fluid.
   d. the interstitial fluid.
   e. the extracellular fluid.
2. Hypertension is likely to increase the secretion of
   a. atrial natriuretic peptide.
   b. antidiuretic hormone.
   c. bicarbonate ions.
   d. aldosterone.
   e. ammonia.
3. _______ increases water reabsorption without increasing sodium reabsorption.
   a. Antidiuretic hormone
   b. Aldosterone
   c. Atrial natriuretic peptide
   d. Parathyroid hormone
   e. Calcitonin
4. Hypotonic hydration can result from
   a. ADH hypersecretion.
   b. ADH hyposecretion.
   c. aldosterone hypersecretion.
   d. aldosterone hyposecretion.
   e. *a* and *d* only.
5. Tetanus is most likely to result from
   a. hypernatremia.
   b. hypokalemia.
   c. hyperkalemia.
   d. hypocalcemia.
   e. *c* and *d* only.
6. The principal determinant of intracellular osmolarity and cellular volume is
   a. protein.
   b. phosphate.
   c. potassium.
   d. sodium.
   e. chloride.
7. Increased excretion of ammonium chloride in the urine most likely indicates
   a. hypercalcemia.
   b. hyponatremia.
   c. hypochloremia.
   d. alkalosis.
   e. acidosis.
8. The most effective buffer in the intracellular fluid is
   a. phosphate.
   b. protein.
   c. bicarbonate.
   d. carbonic acid.
   e. ammonia.
9. Tubular secretion of hydrogen is directly linked to
   a. tubular secretion of potassium.
   b. tubular secretion of sodium.
   c. tubular reabsorption of potassium.
   d. tubular reabsorption of sodium.
   e. tubular secretion of chloride.

10. Hyperchloremia is most likely to result in
    a. alkalosis.
    b. acidosis.
    c. hypernatremia.
    d. hyperkalemia.
    e. hypovolemia.
11. The most abundant cation in the ECF is ______.
12. The most abundant cation in the ICF is ______.
13. Water produced by the body's chemical reactions is called ______.
14. The skin loses water by two processes, sweating and ______.
15. Any abnormal accumulation of fluid in a particular place in the body is called ______.
16. An excessive concentration of potassium ions in the blood is called ______.
17. A deficiency of sodium ions in the blood is called ______.
18. A blood pH of 7.2 caused by inadequate pulmonary ventilation would be classified as ______.
19. Tubular secretion of hydrogen ions would cease if the acidity of the tubular fluid fell below a value called the ______.
20. Long-term satiation of thirst depends on a reduction of the ______ of the blood.

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. Hypokalemia lowers the resting membrane potentials of nerve and muscle cells and makes them less excitable.
2. Aldosterone promotes sodium and water retention and can therefore greatly increase blood pressure.
3. Injuries that rupture a lot of cells tend to elevate the K^+ concentration of the ECF.
4. It is possible for a person to suffer circulatory shock even without losing a significant amount of fluid from the body.
5. Parathyroid hormone promotes calcium and phosphate reabsorption by the kidneys.
6. The bicarbonate system buffers more acid than any other chemical buffer.
7. The more sodium the renal tubules reabsorb, the more hydrogen ion they secrete into the tubular fluid.
8. The body does not compensate for respiratory acidosis by increasing the respiratory rate.
9. In true dehydration, the body fluids remain isotonic although total body water is reduced.
10. Aquaporins regulate the rate of water reabsorption in the proximal convoluted tubule.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. A duck hunter is admitted to the hospital with a shotgun injury to the abdomen. He has suffered extensive blood loss but is conscious. He complains of being intensely thirsty. Explain the physiological mechanism connecting his injury to his thirst.
2. A woman living at poverty level finds bottled water at the grocery store next to the infant formula. The label on the water states that it is made especially for infants, and she construes this to mean that it can be used as a nutritional supplement. The water is much cheaper than formula, so she gives her baby several ounces of bottled water a day as a substitute for formula. After several days the baby has seizures and is taken to the hospital, where it is found to have edema, acidosis, and a plasma sodium concentration of 116 mEq/L. The baby is treated with anticonvulsants followed by normal saline and recovers. Explain each of the signs.
3. Explain why the respiratory and urinary systems are both necessary for the bicarbonate buffer system to work effectively in the blood plasma.
4. The left column indicates some increases or decreases in blood plasma values. In the right column, replace the question mark with an up or down arrow to indicate the expected effect. Explain each effect.

Cause	**Effect**
a. ↑ H_2O	? Na^+
b. ↑ Na^+	? Cl^-
c. ↓ K^+	? H^+
d. ↑ H^+	? K^+
e. ↓ Ca^{2+}	? PO_4^{3-}

5. A 4-year-old child is caught up in tribal warfare in Africa. In a refugee camp, the only drinking water is from a sewage-contaminated pond. The child soon develops severe diarrhea and dies 10 days later of cardiac arrest. Explain the possible physiological cause(s) of his death.

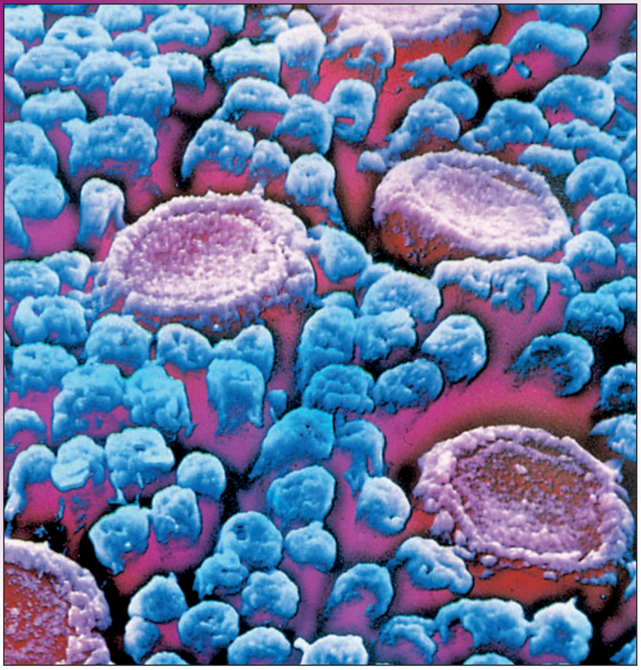
Answers at the Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Legend Questions

24.1 The tissue fluid
24.7 Ingestion of water
24.9 It would decrease.
24.12 Reverse both arrows to point to the left.

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.



Surface of the human tongue (SEM)

CHAPTER 25

The Digestive System

CHAPTER OUTLINE

General Anatomy and Digestive Processes 940
- Digestive Function 940
- General Anatomy 940
- Relationship to the Peritoneum 941
- Regulation of the Digestive Tract 942

The Mouth Through Esophagus 943
- The Mouth 943
- Mastication 946
- Saliva and the Salivary Glands 946
- The Pharynx 948
- The Esophagus 948
- Swallowing 948

The Stomach 949
- Gross Anatomy 950
- Innervation and Circulation 950
- The Stomach Wall 950
- Gastric Secretions 952
- Gastric Motility 955
- Vomiting 955
- Digestion and Absorption 955
- Protection of the Stomach 956
- Regulation of Gastric Function 956

The Liver, Gallbladder, and Pancreas 958
- The Liver 959
- The Gallbladder and Bile 961
- The Pancreas 962
- Regulation of Secretion 963

The Small Intestine 964
- Gross Anatomy 964
- Microscopic Anatomy 965
- Intestinal Secretion 965
- Intestinal Motility 965

Chemical Digestion and Absorption 968
- Carbohydrates 968
- Proteins 970
- Lipids 970
- Nucleic Acids 973
- Vitamins 973
- Minerals 973
- Water 973

The Large Intestine 974
- Gross Anatomy 974
- Microscopic Anatomy 976
- Bacterial Flora and Intestinal Gas 976
- Absorption and Motility 976
- Defecation 976

Connective Issues 979

Chapter Review 980

INSIGHTS

25.1 Clinical Application: Tooth and Gum Disease 946
25.2 Clinical Application: Peptic Ulcer 956
25.3 Clinical Application: Gallstones 962
25.4 Clinical Application: Lactose Intolerance 970
25.5 Medical History: The Man with a Hole in His Stomach 977

Brushing Up

To understand this chapter, it is important that you understand or brush up on the following concepts:

- Hydrolysis reactions (p. 72)
- Carbohydrate, fat, and protein structures (pp. 72–80)
- pH and enzyme function (p. 83)
- Brush borders and microvilli (p. 103)
- Membrane transport processes (pp. 106–114)
- The Valsalva maneuver (p. 855)

Most of the nutrients we eat cannot be used in their existing form. They must be broken down into smaller components, such as amino acids and monosaccharides, that are universal to all species. Consider what happens if you eat a piece of beef, for example. The myosin of beef differs very little from that of your own muscles, but the two are not identical, and even if they were, beef myosin could not be absorbed, transported in the blood, and incorporated into your muscles. Like any other dietary protein, it must be broken down into amino acids before it can be used. Since beef and human proteins are made of the same 20 amino acids, those of beef proteins might indeed become part of your own myosin but could equally well end up in your insulin, fibrinogen, collagen, or any other protein. The digestive system is essentially a disassembly line—its primary purpose is to break nutrients down into forms that can be used by the body and to absorb them so they can be distributed to the tissues. The study of the digestive tract and the diagnosis and treatment of its disorders is called **gastroenterology.**[1]

General Anatomy and Digestive Processes

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- list the functions and major physiological processes of the digestive system;
- distinguish between mechanical and chemical digestion;
- describe the basic chemical process underlying all chemical digestion, and name the major substrates and products of this process;
- list the regions of the digestive tract and the accessory organs of the digestive system;
- identify the layers of the digestive tract and describe its relationship to the peritoneum; and
- describe the general neural and chemical controls over digestive function.

Digestive Function

The **digestive system** is the organ system that processes food, extracts nutrients from it, and eliminates the residue. It does this in four stages:

1. **ingestion,** the selective intake of food;
2. **digestion,** the mechanical and chemical breakdown of food into a form usable by the body;
3. **absorption,** the uptake of nutrient molecules into the epithelial cells of the digestive tract and then into the blood or lymph; and finally
4. **defecation,** the elimination of undigested residue.

The digestion stage itself has two facets, mechanical and chemical. **Mechanical digestion** is the physical breakdown of food into smaller particles. It is achieved by the cutting and grinding action of the teeth and the churning contractions of the stomach and small intestine. Mechanical digestion exposes more food surface to the action of digestive enzymes. **Chemical digestion** is a series of hydrolysis reactions that break dietary macromolecules into their monomers *(residues):* polysaccharides into monosaccharides, proteins into amino acids, fats into glycerol and fatty acids, and nucleic acids into nucleotides. It is carried out by digestive enzymes produced by the salivary glands, stomach, pancreas, and small intestine. Some nutrients are already present in usable form in the ingested food and are absorbed without being digested: vitamins, free amino acids, minerals, cholesterol, and water.

Digestion involves the processes of motility, secretion, and membrane transport. *Motility* refers to the muscular contractions that break up food, propel it through the canal, mix it with digestive enzymes, and eliminate the waste. *Secretion* releases enzymes, hormones, and other products that carry out or regulate digestion. *Membrane transport* includes all the mechanisms such as active transport and facilitated diffusion that absorb nutrients and transfer them to the blood and lymph.

General Anatomy

The digestive system has two anatomical subdivisions, the digestive tract and the accessory organs (fig. 25.1). The **digestive tract** is a tube extending from mouth to anus, measuring about 9 m (30 ft) long in the cadaver. It is also known as the *alimentary*[2] *canal.* It includes the oral cavity, pharynx, esophagus, stomach, small intestine, and large intestine. Part of this, the stomach and intestines, constitute the *gastrointestinal (GI) tract.* The **accessory organs** are the teeth, tongue, salivary glands, liver, gallbladder, and pancreas.

The digestive tract is open to the environment at both ends. Most of the material in it has not entered any body tissues and is considered to be external to the body until it is absorbed by epithelial cells of the alimentary canal. In the strict sense, defecated food residue was never in the body.

Most of the digestive tract follows the basic structural plan shown in figure 25.2, with a wall composed of the following tissue layers, in order from the inner to the outer surface:

Mucosa
  Epithelium
  Lamina propria
  Muscularis mucosae
Submucosa
Muscularis externa
  Inner circular layer
  Outer longitudinal layer

---

[1] *gastro* = stomach + *entero* = intestines + *logy* = study of

[2] *aliment* = food

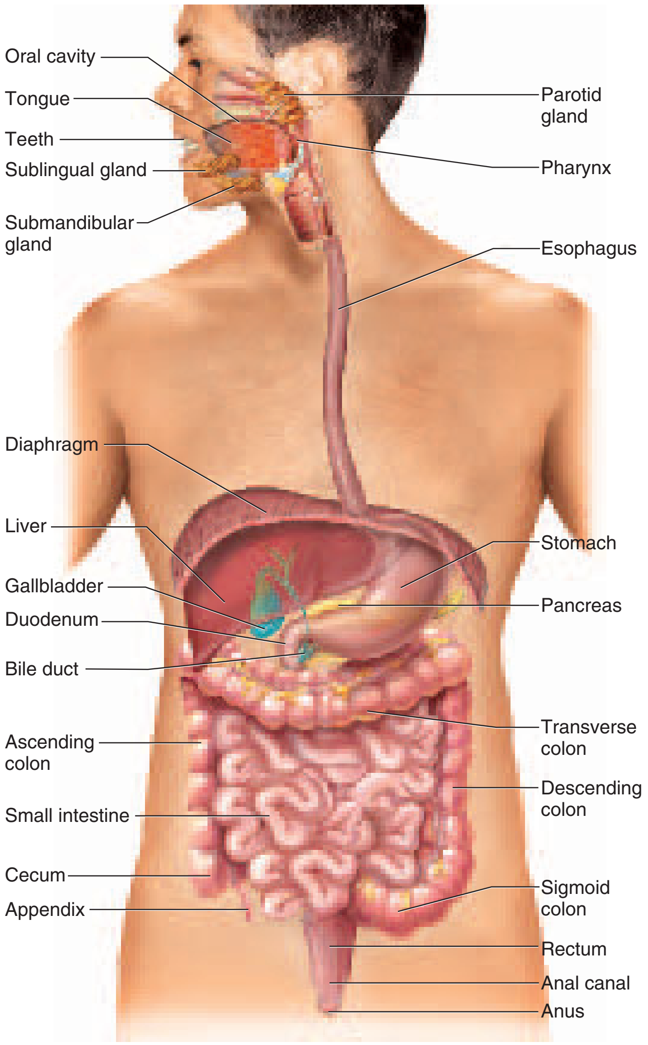


Figure 25.1 **The Digestive System.**

Serosa
  Areolar tissue
  Mesothelium

Slight variations on this theme are found in different regions of the tract.

The **mucosa,** lining the lumen, consists of an inner epithelium, a loose connective tissue layer called the **lamina propria,** and a thin layer of smooth muscle called the **muscularis mucosae** (MUSS-cue-LERR-is mew-CO-see). The epithelium is simple columnar in most of the digestive tract, but of the nonkeratinized stratified squamous type from the oral cavity through the esophagus and in the lower anal canal, where the tract is subject to more abrasion.

The **submucosa** is a thicker layer of loose connective tissue containing blood vessels, lymphatic vessels, a nerve plexus, and in some places, glands that secrete lubricating mucus into the lumen.

The **muscularis externa** consists of usually two layers of smooth muscle near the outer surface. Cells of the inner layer encircle the tract while those of the outer layer run longitudinally.

The **serosa** is composed of a thin layer of areolar tissue topped by a simple squamous mesothelium. The serosa begins in the lower 3 to 4 cm of the esophagus and ends with the sigmoid colon. The oral cavity, pharynx, most of the esophagus, and the rectum are surrounded by a fibrous connective tissue layer called the **adventitia.**

The esophagus, stomach, and intestines have a nervous network called the **enteric**[3] **nervous system,** which regulates digestive tract motility, secretion, and blood flow. Two nerve networks make up this system: the **submucosal (Meissner**[4]**) plexus** in the submucosa and the **myenteric (Auerbach**[5]**) plexus** between the two layers of the muscularis externa. These plexuses are considered to be part of the parasympathetic nervous system. Their functions will be discussed shortly.

Relationship to the Peritoneum

The stomach and intestines are enfolded and suspended from the body wall by extensions of the peritoneum (figs. A.9 and A.10, pp. 38–39). Most of the digestive tract is within the peritoneal cavity, but some portions of it are retroperitoneal—notably the duodenum (the first part of the small intestine), most of the pancreas, and parts of the large intestine.

Along the dorsal midline of the abdominal cavity, the parietal peritoneum turns inward and forms a sheet of tissue, the **dorsal mesentery,** extending to the digestive tract. The membrane then folds around the digestive tract to form the serosa. In some places it continues beyond the digestive organs as a sheet of tissue called the **ventral mesentery,** which may hang freely in the abdominal cavity or attach to the ventral abdominal wall or other organs.

Along the right superior margin *(lesser curvature)* of the stomach, a ventral mesentery called the **lesser omentum** extends from the stomach to the liver (fig. 25.3). Another membrane, the **greater omentum,** hangs from the left inferior margin *(greater curvature)* of the stomach and loosely covers the small intestine like an apron. At its inferior margin, the greater omentum turns back on itself, passes upward, and forms serous membranes around the spleen and transverse colon. Beyond the transverse colon, it continues as a mesentery called the **mesocolon,** which anchors the colon to the posterior abdominal wall.

---

[3] *enter* = intestine

[4] Georg Meissner (1829–1905), German histologist

[5] Leopold Auerbach (1828–97), German anatomist

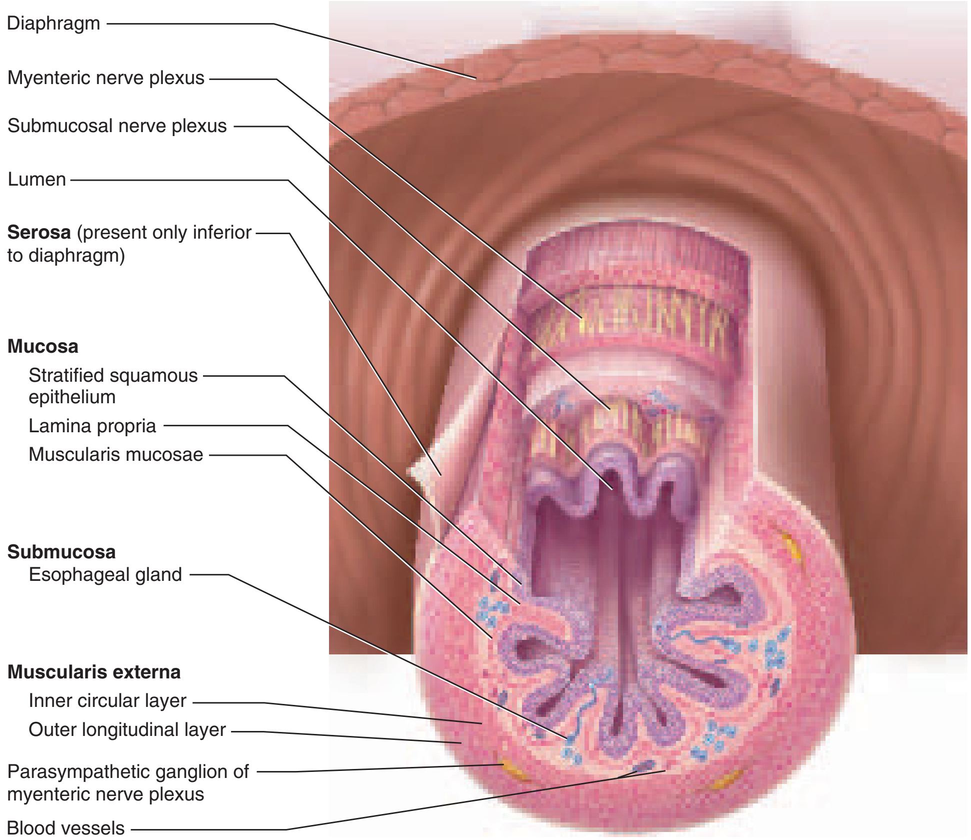

Diaphragm
Myenteric nerve plexus
Submucosal nerve plexus
Lumen
Serosa (present only inferior to diaphragm)
Mucosa
Stratified squamous epithelium
Lamina propria
Muscularis mucosae
Submucosa
Esophageal gland
Muscularis externa
Inner circular layer
Outer longitudinal layer
Parasympathetic ganglion of myenteric nerve plexus
Blood vessels

Figure 25.2 **Tissue Layers of the Digestive Tract.** Cross section of the esophagus just below the diaphragm.

The omenta have a loosely organized, lacy appearance due partly to many holes or gaps in the membranes and partly to an irregular distribution of fatty tissue. They also contain many lymph nodes, lymphatic vessels, blood vessels, and nerves. The omenta adhere to perforations or inflamed areas of the stomach or intestines, contribute immune cells to the site, and isolate infections that might otherwise give rise to peritonitis.

Regulation of the Digestive Tract

The motility and secretion of the digestive tract are controlled by neural, hormonal, and paracrine mechanisms. The neural controls include autonomic reflexes called short reflexes and long reflexes. In **short (myenteric) reflexes,** stretching or chemical stimulation of the digestive tract acts through the myenteric nerve plexus to stimulate contractions in nearby regions of the muscularis externa, such as the *peristaltic* contractions of swallowing. **Long (vagovagal) reflexes** act through autonomic nerve fibers that carry sensory signals from the digestive tract to the central nervous system and motor commands back to the digestive tract. Parasympathetic fibers of the vagus nerves are especially important in stimulating digestive motility and secretion by way of these long reflexes.

The digestive tract also produces numerous hormones such as *gastrin* and *secretin,* and paracrine secretions such as histamine and prostaglandins, that stimulate digestive function. The hormones are secreted into the blood and stimulate relatively distant parts of the digestive tract. The paracrine secretions diffuse through the tissue fluids and stimulate nearby target cells.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

1. What is the term for the serous membrane that suspends the intestines from the abdominal wall?
2. Which physiological process of the digestive system truly moves a nutrient from the outside to the inside of the body?
3. What one type of reaction is the basis of all chemical digestion?
4. Name some nutrients that are absorbed without being digested.

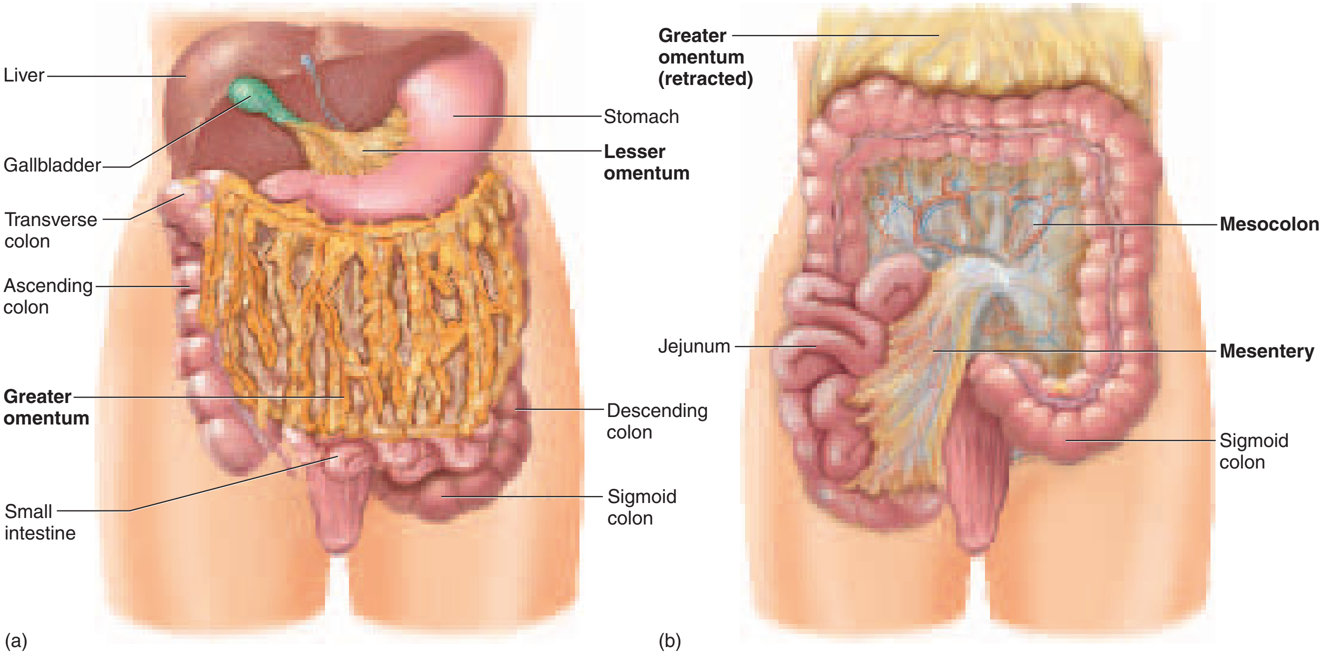

Liver
Gallbladder
Transverse colon
Ascending colon
Greater omentum
Small intestine
Stomach
Lesser omentum
Descending colon
Sigmoid colon
(a)
Greater omentum (retracted)
Jejunum
Mesocolon
Mesentery
Sigmoid colon
(b)

Figure 25.3 **Serous Membranes Associated with the Digestive Tract.** (*a*) The greater and lesser omenta. (*b*) Greater omentum and small intestine retracted to show the mesocolon and mesentery. These membranes contain the mesenteric arteries and veins.

The Mouth Through Esophagus

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the gross anatomy of the digestive tract from the mouth through the esophagus;
- describe the composition and functions of saliva; and
- describe the neural control of salivation and swallowing.

The Mouth

The mouth is also known as the **oral,** or **buccal** (BUCK-ul), **cavity.** Its functions include ingestion (food intake), taste and other sensory responses to food, mastication (chewing), chemical digestion (starch is partially digested in the mouth), deglutition (swallowing), speech, and respiration. The mouth is enclosed by the cheeks, lips, palate, and tongue (fig. 25.4). Its anterior opening between the lips is the **oral orifice** and its posterior opening into the throat is the **fauces**[6] (FAW-seez). The oral cavity is lined with nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelium.

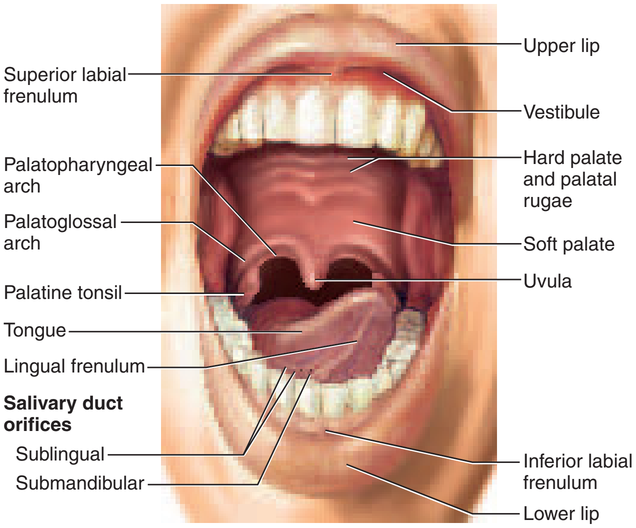

Superior labial frenulum
Palatopharyngeal arch
Palatoglossal arch
Palatine tonsil
Tongue
Lingual frenulum
Salivary duct orifices
Sublingual
Submandibular
Upper lip
Vestibule
Hard palate and palatal rugae
Soft palate
Uvula
Inferior labial frenulum
Lower lip

Figure 25.4 **The Oral Cavity.** For a photographic midsagittal view see figure A.17 (p. 48).

The Cheeks and Lips

The cheeks and lips retain food and push it between the teeth for mastication. They are essential for articulate speech and for sucking and blowing actions, including suckling by infants. Their fleshiness is due mainly to subcutaneous fat,

---

[6] *fauces* = throat

the buccinator muscles of the cheeks, and the orbicularis oris muscle of the lips. Each lip is attached to the gum behind it by a midsagittal fold called the **labial frenulum.**[7] The **vestibule** is the space behind the cheeks and lips, external to the teeth.

Externally the lips are divided into a *cutaneous area* and *red area (vermilion).* Loosely speaking, you could think of these as the mustache area and lipstick area, respectively. The cutaneous area is colored like the rest of the face and has hair and sebaceous glands. The red area is more brightly colored and more sensitive because the skin here has unusually tall dermal papillae, which allow blood capillaries and nerves to come especially close to the surface. The red area has no hair or sebaceous glands.

The Tongue

The tongue, although muscular and bulky, is a remarkably agile and sensitive organ. It manipulates food between the teeth while it avoids being bitten, it can extract food particles from the teeth after a meal, and it is sensitive enough to feel a single stray hair in a bite of food. Its surface is covered with nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelium and exhibits bumps and projections called **lingual papillae,** the site of the taste buds. The types of papillae and sense of taste are discussed in chapter 16, and the general anatomy of the tongue is shown in figure 16.5 (p. 593).

Think About It

How does proprioception protect the tongue from being bitten?

Chapter 25

The anterior two-thirds of the tongue, called the **body,** occupies the oral cavity and the posterior one-third, the **root,** occupies the oropharynx. The boundary between them is marked by a V-shaped row of vallate papillae and, behind these, a groove called the **terminal sulcus.** The body is attached to the floor of the mouth by a midsagittal fold called the **lingual frenulum.** The muscles of the tongue, which compose most of its mass, are described in chapter 10. Amid the muscles are serous and mucous **lingual glands,** which secrete a portion of the saliva. The lingual tonsils are contained in the root.

The Palate

The palate, separating the oral cavity from the nasal cavity, makes it possible to breathe while chewing food. Its anterior portion, the **hard (bony) palate,** is supported by the palatine processes of the maxillae and by the smaller palatine bones. It has transverse *friction ridges (palatal rugae)* that aid the tongue in holding and manipulating food. Posterior to this is the **soft palate,** which has a more spongy texture and is composed mainly of skeletal muscle and glandular tissue, but no bone. It has a conical medial projection, the **uvula,**[8] visible at the rear of the oral cavity.

A pair of muscular arches on each side of the oral cavity begin dorsally near the uvula and follow the wall of the cavity to its floor. The anterior one is the **palatoglossal arch** and the posterior one is the **palatopharyngeal arch.** The latter arch marks the beginning of the pharynx. The palatine tonsils are located on the wall between the arches.

The Teeth

The teeth are collectively called the **dentition.** Adults normally have 16 teeth in the mandible and 16 in the maxilla. On each side of the midline, there are two incisors, a canine, two premolars, and three molars in each jaw (fig. 25.5*a*). The **incisors** are chisel-like cutting teeth used to bite off a piece of food. The **canines** are more pointed and act to puncture and shred it. They serve as weapons in many mammals but became reduced in the course of human evolution until they now project barely above the other teeth. The **premolars** and **molars** have relatively broad surfaces adapted to crushing and grinding.

The meeting of the teeth when the mouth closes is called **occlusion** (ah-CLUE-zhun), and the surfaces where they meet are called the **occlusal** (ah-CLUE-zul) **surfaces.** The occlusal surface of a premolar has two rounded bumps called **cusps;** thus the premolars are also known as **bicuspids.** The molars have four to five cusps. Cusps of the upper and lower premolars and molars mesh when the jaws are closed and slide over each other as the jaw makes lateral chewing motions. This grinds and tears food more effectively than if the occlusal surfaces were flat.

Teeth develop beneath the gums and **erupt** (emerge) in predictable order. Twenty **deciduous teeth** (*milk teeth* or *baby teeth*) erupt from the ages of 6 to 30 months, beginning with the incisors (fig. 25.5*b*). Between 6 and 25 years of age, these are replaced by the 32 **permanent teeth.** As a permanent tooth grows below a deciduous tooth (fig. 25.6), the root of the deciduous tooth dissolves and leaves little more than the crown by the time it falls out. The third molars (wisdom teeth) erupt around ages 17 to 25, if at all. Over the course of human evolution, the face became flatter and the jaws shorter, leaving little room for the third molars. Thus, they often remain below the gum and become *impacted*—so crowded against neighboring teeth and bone that they cannot erupt.

Each tooth is embedded in a socket called an **alveolus,** forming a joint called a *gomphosis* between the tooth and bone (fig. 25.7). The alveolus is lined by a **periodontal** (PERR-ee-oh-DON-tul) **ligament,** a modified periosteum whose collagen fibers penetrate into the bone on one side and into the tooth on the other. This anchors the tooth very firmly in the alveolus. The gum, or **gingiva**

---

[7] *labi* = lip + *frenulum* = little bridle

[8] *uvula* = little grape

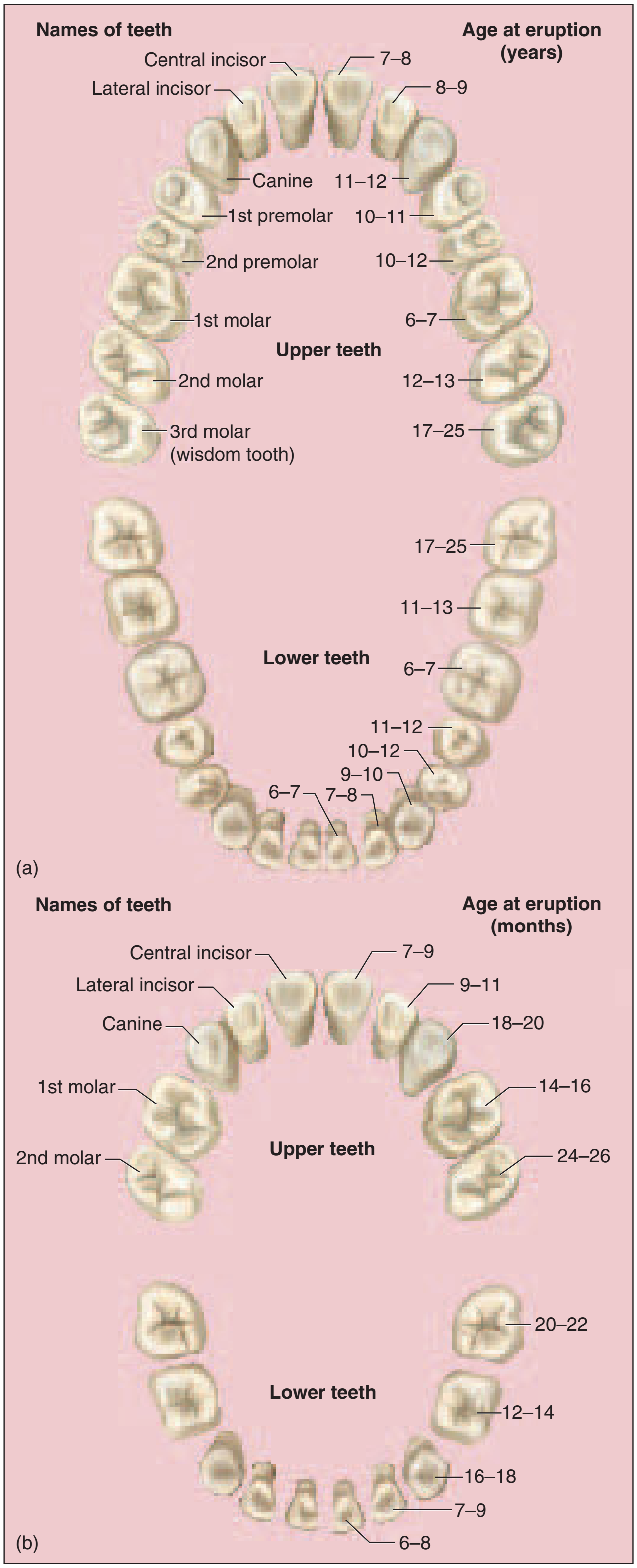

Names of teeth
Age at eruption (years)
Central incisor
7–8
Lateral incisor
8–9
Canine
11–12
1st premolar
10–11
2nd premolar
10–12
1st molar
6–7
Upper teeth
2nd molar
12–13
3rd molar (wisdom tooth)
17–25
17–25
11–13
Lower teeth
6–7
11–12
10–12
9–10
6–7
7–8
(a)
Names of teeth
Age at eruption (months)
Central incisor
7–9
Lateral incisor
9–11
Canine
18–20
1st molar
14–16
2nd molar
Upper teeth
24–26
20–22
Lower teeth
12–14
16–18
7–9
6–8
(b)

Figure 25.5 **The Dentition and Ages at Which the Teeth Erupt.** (*a*) Permanent teeth; (*b*) deciduous (baby) teeth.
Which teeth are absent from a 3-year-old child?

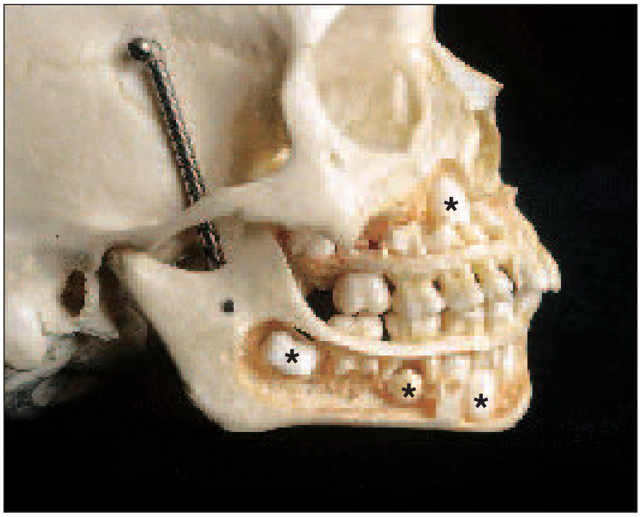


Figure 25.6 **Permanent and Deciduous Teeth in a Child's Skull.** This dissection shows erupted deciduous teeth and, below them and marked with asterisks, the permanent teeth waiting to erupt.

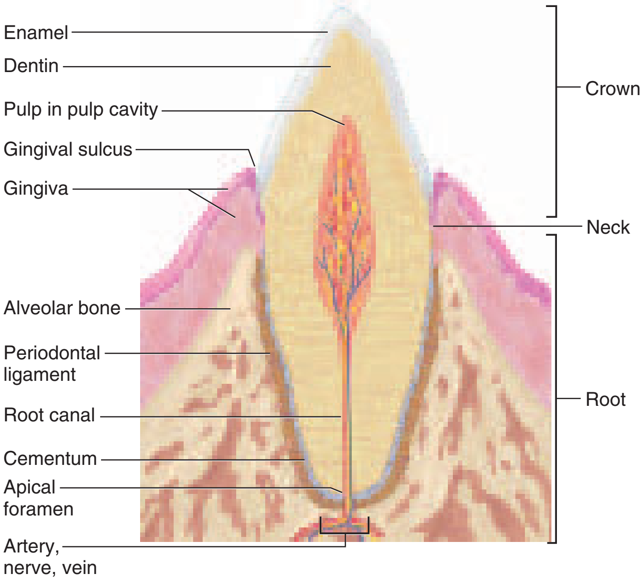

Enamel
Dentin
Pulp in pulp cavity
Gingival sulcus
Gingiva
Alveolar bone
Periodontal ligament
Root canal
Cementum
Apical foramen
Artery, nerve, vein
Crown
Neck
Root

Figure 25.7 **Medial Section of a Canine Tooth and Its Alveolus.** Shows typical anatomy of a tooth and periodontal tissues.

(JIN-jih-vuh), covers the alveolar bone. Regions of a tooth are defined by their relationship to the gingiva: the **crown** is the portion above the gum, the **root** is the portion below the gum, embedded in alveolar bone, and the **neck** is the point where the crown, root, and gum meet. The space between the tooth and gum is the **gingival sulcus.** The hygiene of this sulcus is especially important to dental health (see insight 25.1).

Most of a tooth consists of hard yellowish tissue called **dentin,** covered with **enamel** in the crown and neck and **cementum** in the root. Dentin and cementum are living connective tissues with cells or cell processes embedded in a calcified matrix. Cells of the cementum *(cementocytes)* are scattered more or less randomly and occupy tiny cavities similar to the lacunae of bone. Cells of the dentin *(odontoblasts)* line the pulp cavity and have slender processes that travel through tiny parallel tunnels in the dentin. Enamel is not a tissue but a noncellular secretion produced before the tooth erupts. Damaged dentin and cementum can regenerate, but damaged enamel cannot—it must be artificially repaired.

Internally, a tooth has a dilated **pulp cavity** in the crown and a narrow **root canal** in the root. These spaces are occupied by **pulp**—a mass of loose connective tissue, blood and lymphatic vessels, and nerves. These nerves and vessels enter the tooth through a pore, the **apical foramen,** at the inferior end of each root canal.

Insight 25.1 Clinical Application

Tooth and Gum Disease

Food leaves a sticky residue on the teeth called *plaque,* composed mainly of bacteria and sugars. If plaque is not thoroughly removed by brushing and flossing, bacteria accumulate, metabolize the sugars, and release lactic acid and other acids. These acids dissolve the minerals of enamel and dentin, and the bacteria enzymatically digest the collagen and other organic components. The eroded "cavities" of the tooth are known as *dental caries.*[9] If not repaired, caries may fully penetrate the dentin and spread to the pulp cavity. This requires either extraction of the tooth or *root canal therapy,* in which the pulp is removed and replaced with inert material.

When plaque calcifies on the tooth surface, it is called *calculus (tartar).* Calculus in the gingival sulcus wedges the tooth and gum apart and allows bacterial invasion of the sulcus. This leads to *gingivitis,* or gum inflammation. Nearly everyone has gingivitis at some time. In some cases, bacteria spread from the sulcus into the alveolar bone and begin to dissolve it, producing *periodontal disease.* About 86% of people over age 70 have periodontal disease and many suffer tooth loss as a result. This accounts for 80% to 90% of adult tooth loss.

---

[9] *caries* = rottenness

Mastication

Mastication (chewing) breaks food into pieces small enough to be swallowed and exposes more surface to the action of digestive enzymes. It is the first step in mechanical digestion. Mastication requires little thought because food stimulates receptors that trigger an involuntary chewing reflex. The tongue, buccinator, and orbicularis oris muscles manipulate food and push it between the teeth. The masseter and temporalis muscles produce the up-and-down crushing action of the teeth, and the lateral and medial pterygoid muscles and masseters produce side-to-side grinding action.

Saliva and the Salivary Glands

Saliva moistens the mouth, digests a little starch and fat, cleanses the teeth, inhibits bacterial growth, dissolves molecules so they can stimulate the taste buds, and moistens food and binds particles together to aid in swallowing. It is a hypotonic solution of 97.0% to 99.5% water and the following solutes:

- **salivary amylase,** an enzyme that begins starch digestion in the mouth;
- **lingual lipase,** an enzyme that is activated by stomach acid and digests fat after the food is swallowed;
- **mucus,** which binds and lubricates the food mass and aids in swallowing;
- **lysozyme,** an enzyme that kills bacteria;
- **immunoglobulin A** (IgA), an antibody that inhibits bacterial growth; and
- **electrolytes,** including sodium, potassium, chloride, phosphate, and bicarbonate ions.

Saliva has a pH of 6.8 to 7.0. There are striking differences in pH from one region of the digestive tract to another, with a powerful influence on the activity and deactivation of digestive enzymes. For example, salivary amylase works well at a neutral pH and is deactivated by the low pH of the stomach, whereas lingual lipase does not act in the mouth at all but is activated by the acidity of the stomach. Thus saliva begins to digest starch before the food is swallowed and fat after it is swallowed.

The Salivary Glands

There are two kinds of salivary glands, intrinsic and extrinsic. The **intrinsic salivary glands** are an indefinite number of small glands dispersed amid the other oral tissues. They include *lingual glands* in the tongue, *labial glands* on the inside of the lips, and *buccal glands* on the inside of the cheeks. They secrete relatively small amounts of saliva at a fairly constant rate whether we are eating or not. This saliva contains lingual lipase and lysozyme and serves to moisten the mouth and inhibit bacterial growth.

The **extrinsic salivary glands** are three pairs of larger, more discrete organs located outside of the oral mucosa; they communicate with the oral cavity by way of ducts (fig. 25.8):

1. The **parotid**[10] **gland** is located just beneath the skin anterior to the earlobe. Its duct passes superficially

---

[10] *par* = next to + *ot* = ear

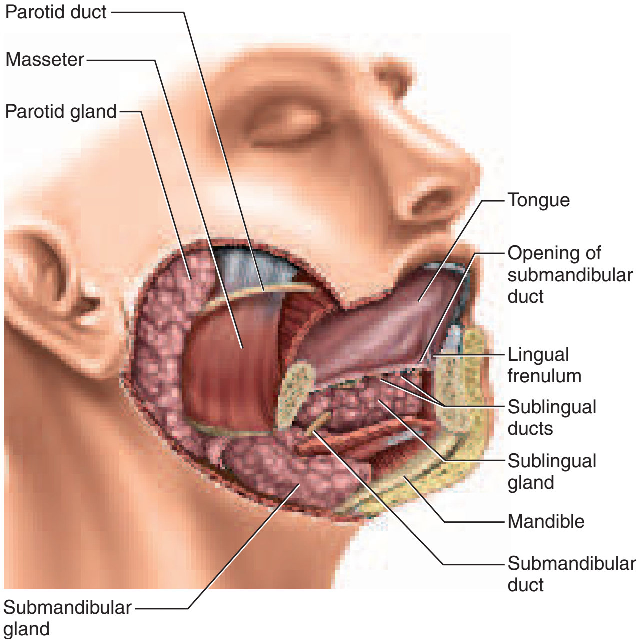

Parotid duct
Masseter
Parotid gland
Tongue
Opening of submandibular duct
Lingual frenulum
Sublingual ducts
Sublingual gland
Mandible
Submandibular duct
Submandibular gland

Figure 25.8 **The Extrinsic Salivary Glands.** Part of the mandible has been removed to expose the sublingual gland medial to it.

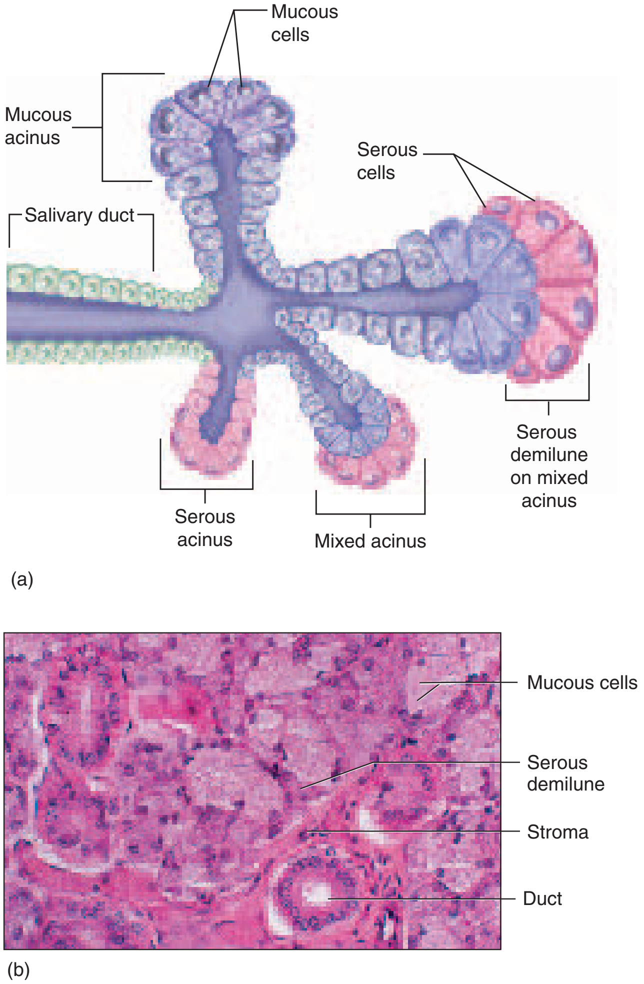

Mucous cells
Mucous acinus
Serous cells
Salivary duct
Serous demilune on mixed acinus
Serous acinus
Mixed acinus
(a)
Mucous cells
Serous demilune
Stroma
Duct
(b)

Figure 25.9 **Microscopic Anatomy of the Salivary Glands.** (*a*) Duct and acini of a generalized salivary gland with a mixture of mucous and serous cells. Serous cells often form crescent-shaped caps called *serous demilunes* over the ends of mucous acini. (*b*) Histology of the sublingual salivary gland.

over the masseter, pierces the buccinator, and opens into the mouth opposite the second upper molar tooth. Mumps is the inflammation and swelling of the parotid gland caused by a virus.

2. The **submandibular gland** is located halfway along the body of the mandible, medial to its margin, just deep to the mylohyoid muscle. Its duct empties into the mouth at a papilla on the side of the lingual frenulum, near the lower central incisors.
3. The **sublingual gland** is located in the floor of the mouth. It has multiple ducts that empty into the mouth posterior to the papilla of the submandibular duct.

These are all compound tubuloacinar glands with a treelike arrangement of branching ducts ending in acini (see chapter 5). Some acini have only mucous cells, some have only serous cells, and some have a mixture of both (fig. 25.9). Mucous cells secrete salivary mucus, and serous cells secrete a thinner fluid rich in amylase and electrolytes.

Salivation

The extrinsic salivary glands secrete about 1.0 to 1.5 L of saliva per day. Cells of the acini filter water and electrolytes from the blood capillaries and add amylase, mucin, and lysozyme to it. The ducts slightly modify its electrolyte composition.

Food stimulates tactile, pressure, and taste receptors in the mouth, which transmit signals to a group of **salivatory nuclei** in the medulla oblongata and pons. These nuclei also receive input from higher brain centers, so even the odor, sight, or thought of food stimulates salivation. Irritation of the stomach and esophagus by spicy foods, stomach acid, or toxins also stimulates salivation, perhaps serving to dilute and rinse away the irritants.

The salivatory nuclei send signals to the glands by way of autonomic fibers in the facial and glossopharyngeal nerves. In response to such stimuli as the aroma or taste of food, the parasympathetic nervous system stimulates the glands to produce abundant, thin saliva rich in enzymes. Sympathetic stimulation, by contrast, causes the glands to produce less abundant, thicker saliva with more mucus. This is why the mouth may feel sticky or dry under conditions of stress. Dehydration also reduces salivation because it reduces capillary filtration.

Salivary amylase begins to digest starch as the food is chewed, while the mucus in the saliva binds food particles into a soft, slippery, easily swallowed mass called a **bolus.** Without mucus, one must drink a much larger volume of fluid to swallow food.

The Pharynx

The pharynx, described in chapter 22, has a deep layer of longitudinally oriented skeletal muscle and a superficial layer of circular skeletal muscle. The circular muscle is divided into superior, middle, and inferior **pharyngeal constrictors,** which force food downward during swallowing. When food is not being swallowed, the inferior constrictor remains contracted to exclude air from the esophagus.

The Esophagus

The **esophagus** is a straight muscular tube 25 to 30 cm long (see figs. 25.1 and 25.2). It begins at the level of the cricoid cartilage, inferior to the larynx and dorsal to the trachea. After passing downward through the mediastinum, the esophagus penetrates the diaphragm at an opening called the *esophageal hiatus,* continues another 3 to 4 cm, and meets the stomach at an opening called the **cardiac orifice** (named for its proximity to the heart).

The inferior end of the esophagus is more constricted than the rest, forming the **lower esophageal sphincter.** This is not an anatomical feature—the muscularis externa is no thicker here than it is higher up—but is a physiological constriction that helps close the cardiac orifice. *Gastroesophageal reflux,* the backflow of stomach contents into the esophagus, is normally prevented partly by the tonus of this sphincter but more importantly by constriction of the diaphragm around the lower esophagus. “Heartburn” has nothing to do with the heart, but is the burning sensation produced by acid reflux into the esophagus.

The wall of the esophagus is organized into the tissue layers described earlier, with some regional specializations. The mucosa has a nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelium. The submucosa contains **esophageal glands** that secrete lubricating mucus into the lumen. When the esophagus is empty, the mucosa and submucosa are deeply folded into longitudinal ridges, giving the lumen a starlike shape in cross section.

The muscularis externa is composed of skeletal muscle in the upper one-third of the esophagus, a mixture of skeletal and smooth muscle in the middle one-third, and only smooth muscle in the lower one-third. This transition corresponds to a shift from voluntary to involuntary phases of swallowing as a food bolus passes down the esophagus.

Most of the esophagus is in the mediastinum. Here, it is covered with a connective tissue adventitia which merges into the adventitias of the trachea and thoracic aorta. The short segment below the diaphragm is covered by a serosa.

Swallowing

Swallowing, or **deglutition** (DEE-glu-TISH-un), is a complex action involving over 22 muscles in the mouth, pharynx, and esophagus, coordinated by the **swallowing center,** a nucleus in the medulla oblongata and pons. This center communicates with muscles of the pharynx and esophagus by way of the trigeminal, facial, glossopharyngeal, and hypoglossal nerves (cranial nerves V, VII, IX, and XII).

Swallowing occurs in stages called the buccal and pharyngeal-esophageal phases (fig. 25.10). In the *buccal phase,* the tongue collects food, presses it against the palate to form a bolus, and pushes it back into the oropharynx. Here the bolus stimulates tactile receptors and activates the *pharyngeal-esophageal phase.* In that phase, three actions block food and drink from reentering the mouth or entering the nasal cavity or larynx: (1) the root of the tongue blocks the oral cavity, (2) the soft palate rises and blocks the nasopharynx, and (3) the infrahyoid muscles pull the larynx up, the epiglottis covers its opening, and the vestibular folds are adducted to close the airway. The food bolus is driven downward by constriction of the upper, then the middle, and finally the lower pharyngeal constrictors. As the bolus slides off the epiglottis into the esophagus, it stretches the esophagus and triggers **peristalsis,** a wave of muscular contraction that pushes the bolus ahead of it (fig. 25.10*d*).

Peristalsis is moderated partly by a short reflex through the myenteric nerve plexus. The bolus stimulates stretch receptors that feed into the nerve plexus, which transmits signals to the muscularis externa behind and ahead of the bolus. The circular muscle behind the bolus constricts and pushes it downward. Ahead of the bolus, the circular muscle relaxes while the longitudinal muscle contracts. The latter action pulls the wall of the esophagus slightly upward, which makes the esophagus a little shorter and wider and able to receive the descending food.

When we are standing or sitting upright, most food and liquid drop through the esophagus by gravity faster than the peristaltic wave can catch up to it. Peristalsis, however, propels more solid food pieces and ensures that you can swallow regardless of the body's position—even standing on your head! Liquid normally reaches the stomach in 1 to 2 seconds and a food bolus in 4 to 8 seconds. As a bolus reaches the lower end of the esophagus, the lower esophageal sphincter relaxes to let it pass into the stomach.

For a review of the anatomy up to this point, see table 25.1.

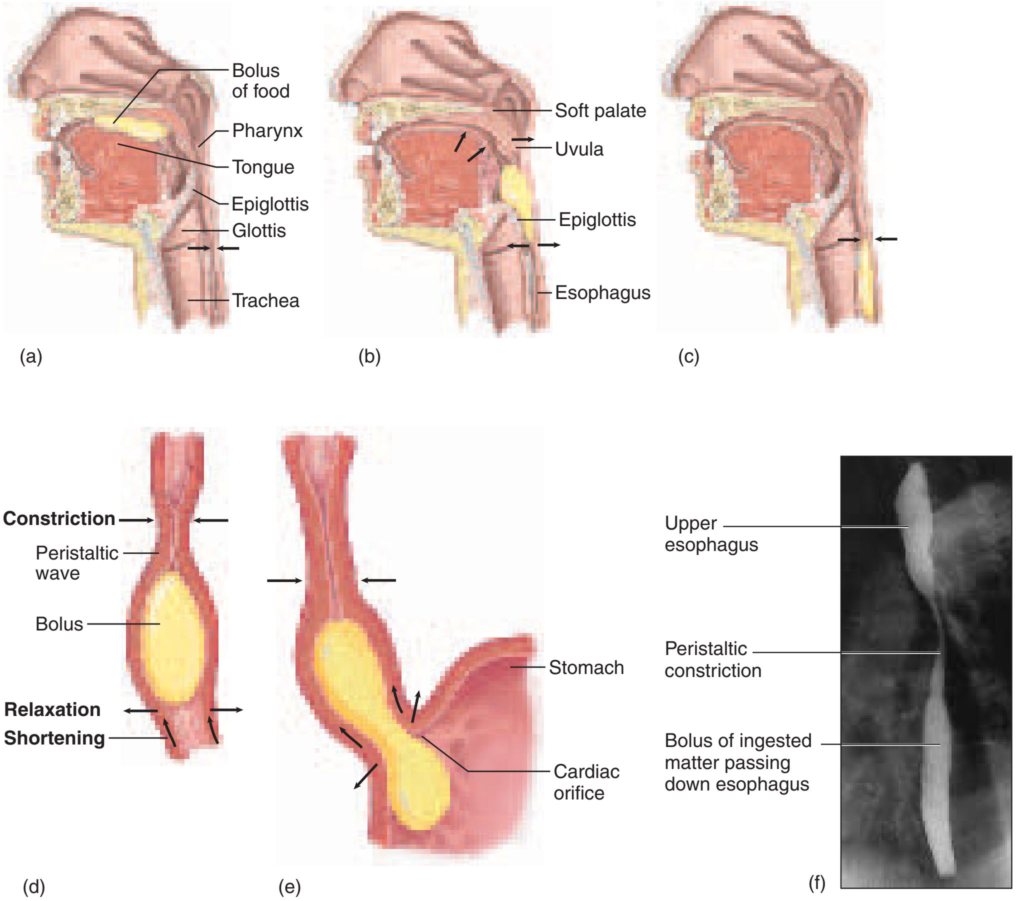

Bolus of food
Pharynx
Tongue
Epiglottis
Glottis
Trachea
(a)
Soft palate
Uvula
Epiglottis
Esophagus
(b)
(c)
Constriction
Peristaltic wave
Bolus
Relaxation
Shortening
(d)
Stomach
Cardiac orifice
(e)
Upper esophagus
Peristaltic constriction
Bolus of ingested matter passing down esophagus
(f)

Figure 25.10 **Swallowing.** (*a*) The tongue compresses food against the palate to form a bolus. (*b*) The bolus passes into the esophagus while the tongue blocks the oral cavity, the soft palate blocks the nasal cavity, and the epiglottis blocks the larynx. (*c*) The superior end of the esophagus constricts as the bolus passes downward. (*d*) A peristaltic wave moves the bolus down the esophagus. The esophagus constricts behind the bolus while it dilates and shortens in front of the bolus. (*e*) The lower esophageal sphincter relaxes to admit the bolus to the stomach. (*f*) X ray of esophagus showing a peristaltic constriction above a bolus of ingested material.

What actions prevent the pharynx from forcing food back into the mouth or nose?

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

5. List as many functions of the tongue as you can.
6. Imagine a line from the mandibular bone to the root canal of a tooth. Name the tissues, in order, through which this line would pass.
7. What is the difference in function and location between intrinsic and extrinsic salivary glands? Name the extrinsic salivary glands and describe their locations.
8. Describe the muscularis externa of the esophagus and its action in peristalsis.
9. Describe the mechanisms that prevent food from entering the nasal cavity and larynx during swallowing.

The Stomach

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the gross and microscopic anatomy of the stomach;
- state the function of each type of epithelial cell in the gastric mucosa;
- identify the secretions of the stomach and state their functions;
- explain how the stomach produces hydrochloric acid and pepsin;
- describe the contractile responses of the stomach to food; and
- describe the three phases of gastric function and how gastric activity is activated and inhibited.

Table 25.1 Anatomical Checklist of the Digestive System from the Mouth Through the Esophagus

Oral (buccal) Cavity

- *Oral orifice*
- *Fauces*
- *Cheeks*
- *Lips*
  - Cutaneous area
  - Red area (vermilion)
  - Labial frenulum
- *Vestibule*
- *Tongue*
  - Body
  - Root
  - Terminal sulcus
  - Lingual frenulum
  - Lingual papillae
  - Taste buds
  - Lingual muscles
  - Lingual tonsils
  - Lingual glands
- *Palate*
  - Hard palate
  - Soft palate
    - Uvula
- *Palatoglossal arch*
- *Palatopharyngeal arch*
- *Dentition (teeth)*
  - Developmental types
    - Deciduous teeth
    - Permanent teeth
  - Functional types
    - Incisors
    - Canines
    - Premolars (bicuspids)
    - Molars
  - Dental tissues
    - Dentin
    - Enamel
    - Cementum
    - Pulp
  - Anatomical features
    - Crown
      - Occlusal surface
      - Cusps
    - Neck
    - Root
    - Pulp cavity
    - Root canal
    - Apical foramen
- *Periodontal tissues*
  - Alveolus
  - Periodontal ligament
  - Gingiva (gum)
    - Gingival sulcus

Salivary Glands

- *Intrinsic*
- *Extrinsic*
  - Parotid gland
  - Submandibular gland
  - Sublingual gland

Pharynx

- *Pharyngeal constrictors*

Esophagus

- *Esophageal glands*
- *Lower esophageal sphincter*
- *Cardiac orifice*

The stomach is a muscular sac in the upper left abdominal cavity immediately inferior to the diaphragm. It functions primarily as a food storage organ, with an internal volume of about 50 mL when empty and 1.0 to 1.5 L after a typical meal. When extremely full, it may hold up to 4 L and extend nearly as far as the pelvis.

Well into the nineteenth century, authorities regarded the stomach as essentially a grinding chamber, fermentation vat, or cooking pot. Some even attributed digestion to a supernatural spirit in the stomach. We now know that it mechanically breaks up food particles, liquefies the food, and begins the chemical digestion of proteins and a small amount of fat. This produces a soupy or pasty mixture of semidigested food called **chyme**[11] (kime). Most digestion occurs after the chyme passes on to the small intestine.

Gross Anatomy

The stomach is J-shaped (fig. 25.11), relatively vertical in tall people, and more horizontal in short people (see fig. 1.10*a*). The **lesser curvature** of the stomach extends the short distance from esophagus to duodenum along the medial to superior aspect, while the **greater curvature** extends the longer distance from esophagus to duodenum on the lateral to inferior aspect.

The stomach is divided into four regions: (1) The **cardiac region (cardia)** is a small area immediately inside the cardiac orifice. (2) The **fundic region (fundus)** is the dome-shaped portion superior to the esophageal attachment. (3) The **body (corpus)** makes up the greatest part of the stomach inferior to the cardiac orifice. (4) The **pyloric region** is a slightly narrower pouch at the inferior end; it is subdivided into a funnel-like **antrum**[12] and a narrower **pyloric canal.** The latter terminates at the **pylorus,**[13] a narrow passage into the duodenum. The pylorus is surrounded by a thick ring of smooth muscle, the **pyloric (gastroduodenal) sphincter,** which regulates the passage of chyme into the duodenum.

Innervation and Circulation

The stomach receives parasympathetic nerve fibers from the vagus nerves and sympathetic fibers from the celiac ganglia (see p. 570). It is supplied with blood by branches of the celiac trunk (see pp. 776–777). All blood drained from the stomach and intestines enters the hepatic portal circulation and filters through the liver before returning to the heart.

The Stomach Wall

The stomach wall has tissue layers similar to those of the esophagus, with some variations. The mucosa is covered

---

[11] *chyme* = juice
[12] *antrum* = cavity
[13] *pylorus* = gatekeeper

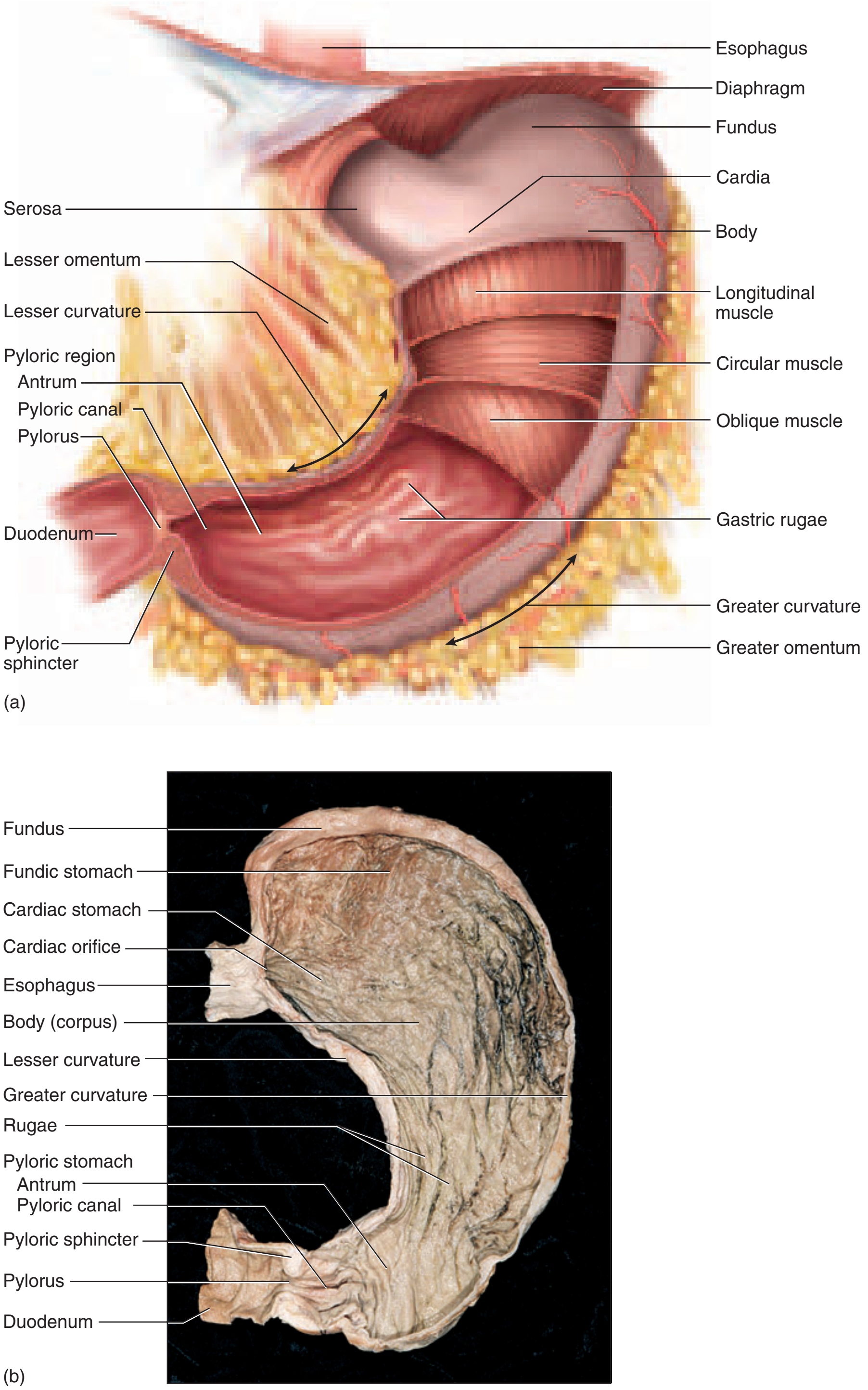

Esophagus
Diaphragm
Fundus
Cardia
Body
Longitudinal muscle
Circular muscle
Oblique muscle
Gastric rugae
Greater curvature
Greater omentum
Serosa
Lesser omentum
Lesser curvature
Pyloric region
Antrum
Pyloric canal
Pylorus
Duodenum
Pyloric sphincter
(a)
Fundus
Fundic stomach
Cardiac stomach
Cardiac orifice
Esophagus
Body (corpus)
Lesser curvature
Greater curvature
Rugae
Pyloric stomach
Antrum
Pyloric canal
Pyloric sphincter
Pylorus
Duodenum
(b)

Figure 25.11 **The Stomach.** (*a*) Gross anatomy. (*b*) Photograph of the internal surface.

with a simple columnar glandular epithelium (fig. 25.12). The apical regions of its surface cells are filled with mucin, which swells with water and becomes mucus after it is secreted. The mucosa and submucosa are flat and smooth when the stomach is full, but as it empties, these layers form conspicuous longitudinal wrinkles called **gastric rugae** (ROO-gee). The lamina propria is almost entirely occupied by tubular glands, to be described shortly. The muscularis externa has three layers, rather than two—an outer longitudinal, middle circular, and inner oblique layer (see fig. 25.11).

Think About It

Contrast the epithelium of the esophagus with that of the stomach. Why is each epithelial type best suited to the function of its respective organ?

The gastric mucosa is pocked with depressions called **gastric pits** lined with the same columnar epithelium as the surface (fig. 25.12). Cells near the bottom of the gastric pits divide and produce new epithelial cells that continually migrate upward and replace old epithelial cells that are sloughed off into the chyme.

Two or three tubular glands open into the bottom of each gastric pit and span the rest of the lamina propria. In the cardiac and pyloric regions they are called **cardiac glands** and **pyloric glands,** respectively. In the rest of the stomach, they are called **gastric glands.** These three glands differ in cellular composition, as noted shortly. Collectively, they have the following cell types:

- **Mucous cells,** which secrete mucus, predominate in the cardiac and pyloric glands. In gastric glands, they are called *mucous neck cells* and are concentrated in the narrow *neck* of the gland, where it opens into the gastric pit.
- **Regenerative (stem) cells,** found in the base of the pit and neck of the gland, divide rapidly and produce a continual supply of new cells. Newly generated cells migrate upward to the gastric surface as well as downward into the glands to replace cells that die.
- **Parietal cells,** found mostly in the upper half of the gland, secrete hydrochloric acid and intrinsic factor. They are found mostly in the gastric glands, but a few occur in the pyloric glands.
- **Chief cells,** so-named because they are the most numerous, secrete chymosin and lipase in infancy and pepsinogen throughout life. They dominate the lower half of the gastric glands but are absent from cardiac and pyloric glands.
- **Enteroendocrine cells,** concentrated especially in the lower end of a gland, secrete hormones and paracrine messengers that regulate digestion. There are at least eight different kinds of enteroendocrine cells in the stomach, each of which produces a different chemical messenger.

In general, the cardiac and pyloric glands secrete mainly mucus; acid and enzyme secretion occur predominantly in the gastric glands; and hormones are secreted throughout the stomach.

Gastric Secretions

The gastric glands produce 2 to 3 L of **gastric juice** per day, composed mainly of water, hydrochloric acid, and pepsin.

Hydrochloric Acid

Gastric juice has a high concentration of hydrochloric acid (HCl) and a pH as low as 0.8. Such concentrated acid could cause a serious chemical burn to the skin. How, then, does the stomach produce and tolerate such acidity?

The reactions that produce HCl (fig. 25.13) may seem familiar by now because they have been discussed in previous chapters—most recently in connection with renal excretion of H^+ in chapter 24. Parietal cells contain carbonic anhydrase (CAH), which catalyzes the first step in the following reaction:

$$CO_2 + H_2O \xrightarrow{\text{CAH}} H_2CO_3 \rightarrow HCO_3^- + H^+$$

The H^+ produced by this reaction is pumped into the lumen of a gastric gland by an active transport protein similar to the Na^+-K^+ pump, called **H^+-K^+ ATPase.** This is an antiport that uses the energy of ATP to pump H^+ out and K^+ into the cell. HCl secretion does not affect the pH within the parietal cell because H^+ is pumped out as fast as it is generated. The bicarbonate ions (HCO_3^-) are exchanged for chloride ions (Cl^-) from the blood plasma—the same *chloride shift* process that occurs in the renal tubules and red blood cells—and the Cl^- is pumped into the lumen of the gastric gland to join the H^+.

Thus HCl accumulates in the stomach while bicarbonate ions accumulate in the blood. Because of the bicarbonate, blood leaving the stomach has a higher pH when digestion is occurring than when the stomach is empty. This high-pH blood is called the *alkaline tide.*

Stomach acid has several functions: (1) It activates the enzymes pepsin and lingual lipase, as discussed shortly. (2) It breaks up connective tissues and plant cell walls, helping to liquefy food and form chyme. (3) It converts ingested ferric ions (Fe^{3+}) to ferrous ions (Fe^{2+}), a form of iron that can be absorbed and used for hemoglobin synthesis. (4) It contributes to nonspecific disease resistance by destroying ingested bacteria and other pathogens.

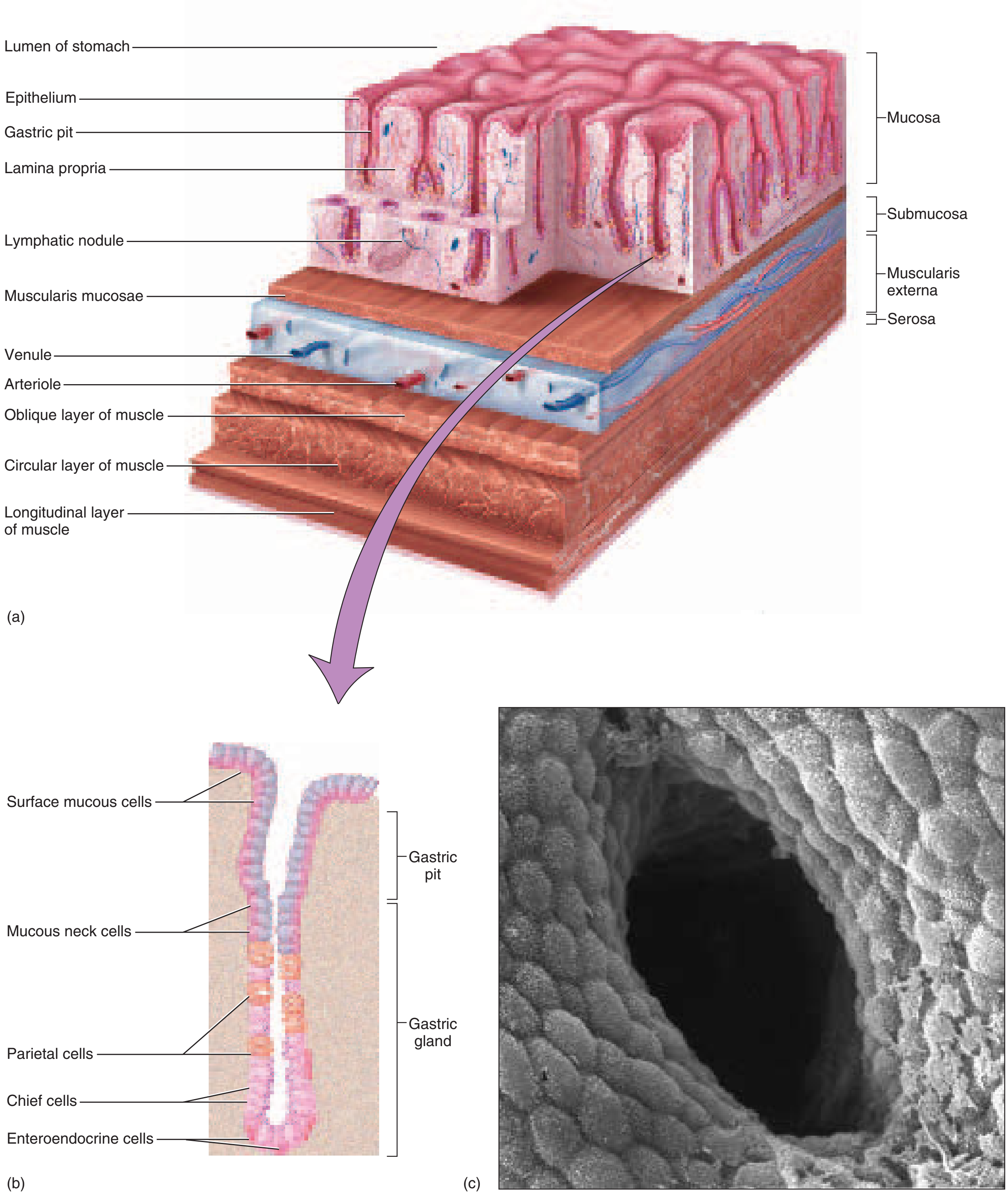

Lumen of stomach
Epithelium
Gastric pit
Lamina propria
Lymphatic nodule
Muscularis mucosae
Venule
Arteriole
Oblique layer of muscle
Circular layer of muscle
Longitudinal layer of muscle
Mucosa
Submucosa
Muscularis externa
Serosa
(a)
Surface mucous cells
Mucous neck cells
Parietal cells
Chief cells
Enteroendocrine cells
Gastric pit
Gastric gland
(b)
(c)

Figure 25.12 **Microscopic Anatomy of the Stomach Wall.** (*a*) A block of tissue showing all layers from the mucosa (*top*) to the serosa (*bottom*). (*b*) Detail of a gastric pit and gastric gland. (*c*) The opening of a gastric pit into the stomach, surrounded by the rounded apical surfaces of the columnar epithelial cells of the mucosa (SEM).

Pepsin

Several digestive enzymes are secreted as inactive proteins called **zymogens** and then converted to active enzymes by the removal of some of their amino acids. In the stomach, chief cells secrete a zymogen called **pepsinogen.** Hydrochloric acid removes some of its amino acids and converts it to **pepsin.** Since pepsin digests protein, and pepsinogen itself is a protein, pepsin has an *autocatalytic* effect—as some pepsin is formed, it converts pepsinogen into more pepsin (fig. 25.14). The ultimate function of pepsin, however, is to digest dietary proteins to shorter peptide chains, which then pass to the small intestine, where their digestion is completed.

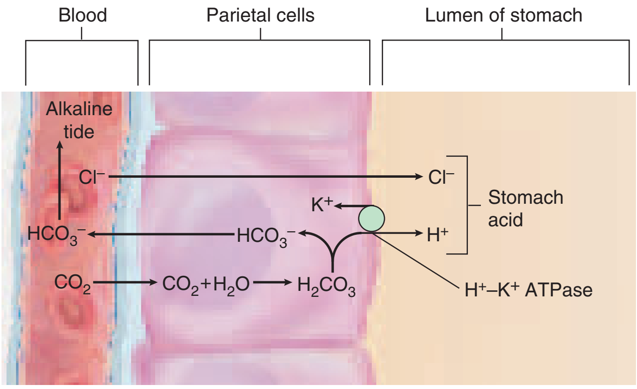


Figure 25.13 Hydrochloric Acid Secretion by Gastric Parietal Cells. The parietal cell takes CO_2 from the blood and combines it with water to make carbonic acid (*bottom line of figure*). Carbonic acid breaks down into bicarbonate ion (HCO_3^-) and hydrogen ion (H^+). The H^+ is pumped into the lumen of the stomach in exchange for K^+ by an H^+-K^+ ATPase. The bicarbonate ion is returned for the blood in exchange for a chloride ion (Cl^-). Cl^- follows H^+ into the lumen, where the two constitute hydrochloric acid.
What role does active transport play in this process?

Other Enzymes

In infants, the chief cells also secrete **gastric lipase** and **chymosin (rennin).** Gastric lipase digests some of the *butterfat* of milk, and chymosin curdles milk by coagulating its proteins.

Intrinsic Factor

Parietal cells also secrete a glycoprotein called **intrinsic factor** that is essential to the absorption of vitamin B_{12} by the small intestine. Intrinsic factor binds vitamin B_{12}, and the intestinal cells then absorb this complex by receptor-mediated endocytosis. Without vitamin B_{12}, hemoglobin cannot be synthesized and pernicious anemia develops (see chapter 18). The secretion of intrinsic factor is the only indispensable function of the stomach. Digestion can continue following removal of the stomach *(gastrectomy),* but a person must then take vitamin B_{12} by injection, or vitamin B_{12} and intrinsic factor orally. As we age, the gastric mucosa atrophies, less intrinsic factor is secreted, and the risk of pernicious anemia rises.

Chemical Messengers

The gastric and pyloric glands have various kinds of enteroendocrine cells that collectively produce as many as 20 chemical messengers. Most of these secretions behave as hormones—they travel in the bloodstream and stimulate distant target cells. Some also behave as paracrine secretions, diffusing a short distance away and stimulating other cells in the gastric mucosa. Several

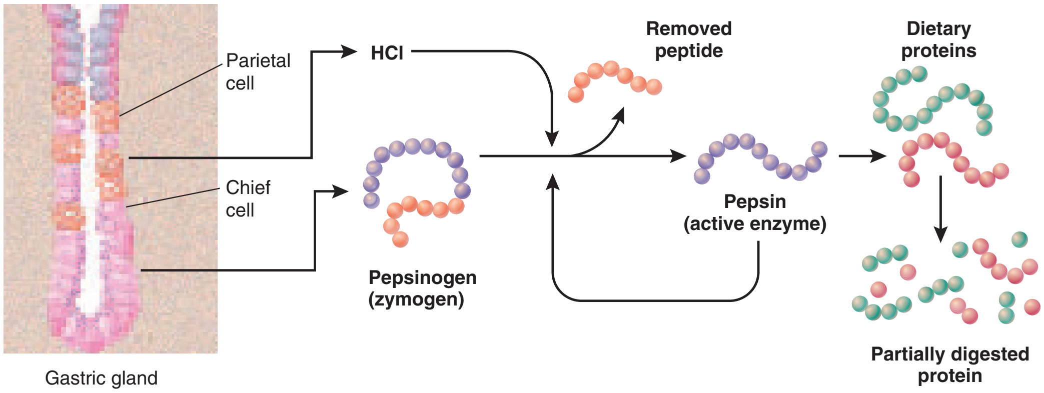


Figure 25.14 The Production and Action of Pepsin. The chief cells secrete pepsinogen and the parietal cells secrete HCl. HCl removes some of the amino acids from pepsinogen and coverts it to pepsin. Pepsin catalyzes the production of more pepsin (autocatalytic effect), as well as partially digesting dietary protein.

peptide signaling molecules are produced in both the digestive tract and the central nervous system, and have thus been called **gut-brain peptides.** These include substance P, vasoactive intestinal peptide (VIP), secretin, gastric inhibitory peptide (GIP), cholecystokinin, and neuropeptide Y (NPY). The functions of some of these peptides in digestion will be explained in the following sections, but in some cases their functions in either the brain or the gut remain obscure.

Several of the gastric secretions are summarized in table 25.2. Some of the functions listed there are explained later in the chapter.

Gastric Motility

As you begin to swallow, the swallowing center of the medulla oblongata signals the stomach to relax, thus preparing it to receive food. The arriving food stretches the stomach and activates the *receptive-relaxation response* of smooth muscle: the stomach briefly resists stretching but then relaxes and is able to accommodate more food.

Soon, the stomach shows a rhythm of peristaltic contractions. These are governed by pacemaker cells in the longitudinal layer of the muscularis externa of the greater curvature. About every 20 seconds, a gentle ripple begins in the fundus and becomes stronger as it progresses toward the pyloric region, where the muscularis externa is thicker. After 30 minutes or so, these contractions become quite strong. They churn the food, mix it with gastric juice, and promote its physical breakup and chemical digestion.

The antrum holds about 30 mL of chyme. As a peristaltic wave passes down the antrum, it squirts about 3 mL of chyme into the duodenum at a time. When the wave reaches the pyloric sphincter, it squeezes the sphincter shut. Chyme that does not get through this time is turned back into the antrum and body of the stomach for further digestion. Allowing only small amounts into the duodenum at a time enables the duodenum to neutralize the stomach acid and digest nutrients little by little. If the duodenum becomes overfilled, it inhibits gastric motility and postpones receiving more chyme; the mechanism for this is discussed shortly. A typical meal is emptied from the stomach in about 4 hours, but it takes less time if the meal is more liquid and as long as 6 hours if the meal is high in fat.

Vomiting

Vomiting is induced by excessive stretching of the stomach, psychological stimuli, and chemical irritants such as alcohol and bacterial toxins. Vomiting is not caused by contraction of the stomach itself, but by the diaphragm and abdominal muscles. The **emetic**[14] **center** in the medulla oblongata stimulates the lower esophageal sphincter to relax while it stimulates the diaphragm and abdominal muscles to contract. These muscles squeeze the stomach like a bagpipe and force its contents up the esophagus. Severe vomiting may expel even the contents of the small intestine.

Digestion and Absorption

Salivary and gastric enzymes partially digest protein and small amounts of starch and fat in the stomach, but most digestion and nearly all nutrient absorption occur after

Table 25.2 Major Secretions of the Gastric Glands

Secretory Cells	Secretion	Function
Mucous neck cells	Mucus	Protects mucosa from HCl and enzymes
Parietal cells	Hydrochloric acid	Activates pepsin and lingual lipase; helps liquefy food; reduces dietary iron to usable form (Fe^{2+}); destroys ingested pathogens
	Intrinsic factor	Enables small intestine to absorb vitamin B_{12}
Chief cells	Pepsinogen	Converted to pepsin, which digests protein
	Chymosin	Coagulates milk proteins in infant stomach; not secreted in adults
	Gastric lipase	Digests fats in infant stomach; not secreted in adults
Enteroendocrine cells	Gastrin	Stimulates gastric glands to secrete HCl and enzymes; stimulates intestinal motility; relaxes ileocecal valve
	Serotonin	Stimulates gastric motility
	Histamine	Stimulates HCl secretion
	Somatostatin	Inhibits gastric secretion and motility; delays emptying of stomach; inhibits secretion by pancreas; inhibits gallbladder contraction and bile secretion; reduces blood circulation and nutrient absorption in small intestine

---

[14] *emet* = vomiting

the chyme passes into the small intestine. The stomach does not absorb any significant amount of nutrients but does absorb aspirin and some lipid-soluble drugs. Alcohol is absorbed mainly by the small intestine, so its intoxicating effect depends partly on how rapidly the stomach is emptied.

Protection of the Stomach

You may wonder why the stomach does not digest itself. We can digest tripe (animal stomachs) as readily as any other meat. The living stomach, however, is protected in three ways from the harsh acidic and enzymatic environment it creates:

1. **Mucous coat.** The thick, highly alkaline mucus resists the action of acid and enzymes.
2. **Epithelial cell replacement.** The stomach's epithelial cells live only 3 to 6 days and are then sloughed off into the chyme and digested with the food. They are replaced just as rapidly, however, by cell division in the gastric pits.
3. **Tight junctions.** The epithelial cells are joined by tight junctions that prevent gastric juice from seeping between them and digesting the connective tissue of the lamina propria or beyond.

The breakdown of these protective mechanisms can result in inflammation and peptic ulcer (see insight 25.2).

Insight 25.2 Clinical Application

Peptic Ulcer

Inflammation of the stomach, called *gastritis,* can lead to a *peptic ulcer* as pepsin and hydrochloric acid erode the stomach wall (fig. 25.15). Peptic ulcers occur even more commonly in the duodenum and occasionally in the esophagus. If untreated, they can perforate the organ and cause fatal hemorrhaging or peritonitis. Most such fatalities occur in people over age 65.

There is no evidence to support the popular belief that peptic ulcers result from psychological stress. Hypersecretion of acid and pepsin is sometimes involved, but even normal secretion can cause ulceration if the mucosal defense is compromised by other causes. Many or most ulcers involve an acid-resistant bacterium, *Helicobacter pylori,* that invades the mucosa of the stomach and duodenum and opens the way to chemical damage to the tissue. Other risk factors include smoking and the use of aspirin and other nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs). NSAIDs suppress the synthesis of prostaglandins, which normally stimulate the secretion of protective mucus and acid-neutralizing bicarbonate. Aspirin itself is an acid that directly irritates the gastric mucosa.

Until recently, the most widely prescribed drug in the United States was Cimetidine (Tagamet), which was designed to treat peptic ulcers by reducing acid secretion. Histamine stimulates acid secretion by binding to sites on the parietal cells called *H_2 receptors;* Cimetidine, an *H_2 blocker,* prevents this binding. Lately, however, ulcers have been treated more successfully with antibiotics against *Helicobacter* combined with bismuth suspensions such as Pepto-Bismol. This is a much shorter and less expensive course of treatment and permanently cures about 90% of peptic ulcers, as compared with a cure rate of only 20% to 30% for H_2 blockers.

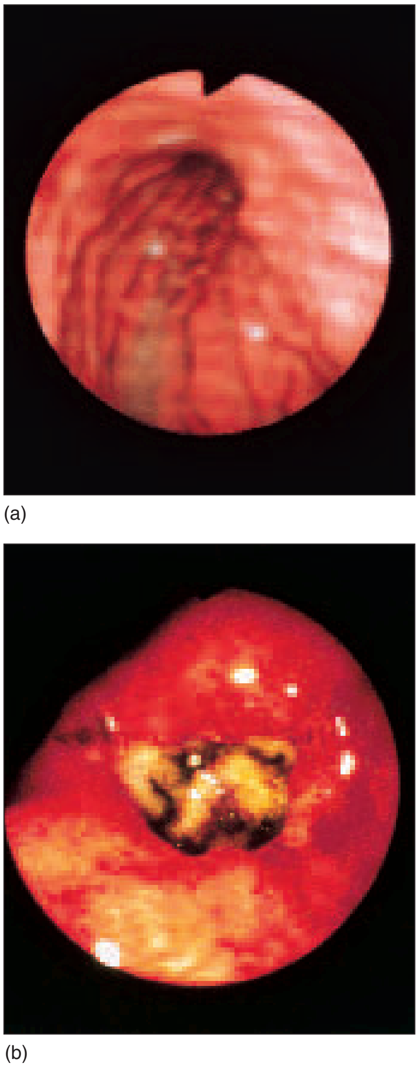
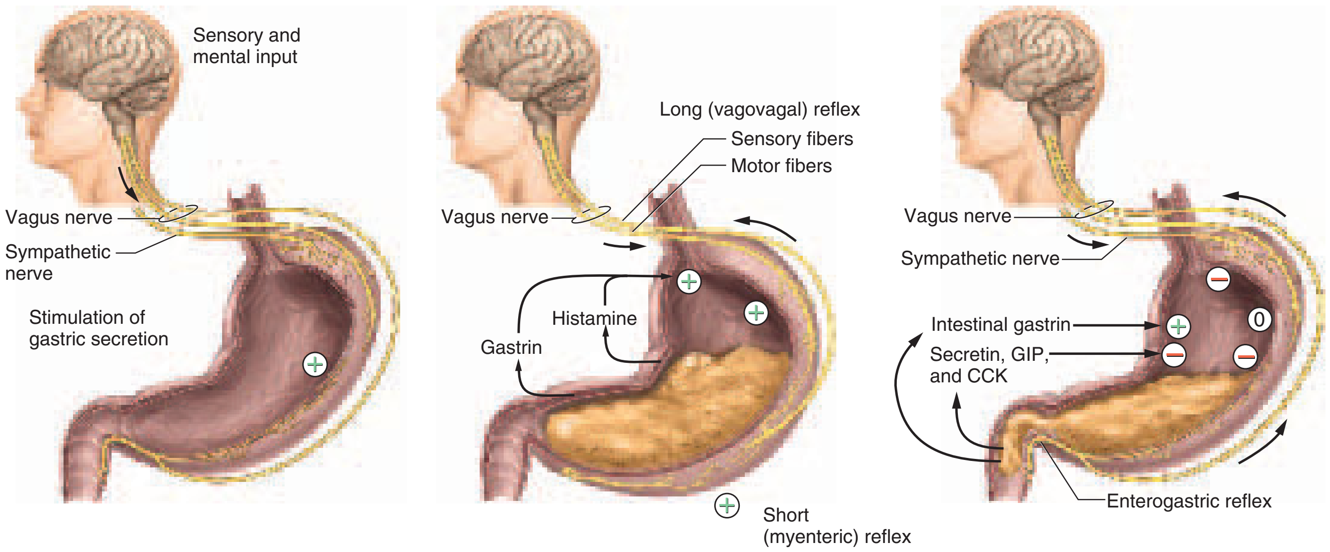


Figure 25.15 Endoscopic Views of the Gastroesophageal Junction. The esophagus can be seen opening into the cardiac stomach. (*a*) A healthy gastric mucosa; the small white spots are reflections of light from the endoscope. (*b*) A bleeding peptic ulcer. A peptic ulcer typically has an oval shape and yellow-white color. Here the yellowish floor of the ulcer is partially obscured by black blood clots, and fresh blood is visible around the margin of the ulcer.

Regulation of Gastric Function

The nervous and endocrine systems collaborate to increase gastric secretion and motility when food is eaten and suppress them as the stomach empties. Gastric activity is divided into three stages called the cephalic, gastric,



(a) Cephalic phase (b) Gastric phase (c) Intestinal phase

Figure 25.16 **Neural and Hormonal Control of Gastric Secretion.** *Plus signs* indicate stimulation and *minus signs* indicate inhibition. (*a*) The cephalic phase. The vagus nerve stimulates gastric secretion even before food is swallowed. (*b*) The gastric phase. Food in the stomach stretches it and activates a myenteric reflex and a vagovagal reflex. These reflex pathways trigger gastric secretion. Histamine and gastrin also stimulate acid and enzyme secretion. (*c*) The intestinal phase. Intestinal gastrin has a short stimulatory effect on the stomach, but then secretin, GIP, and CCK, as well as the enterogastric reflex, inhibit gastric secretion and motility until the duodenum can process the chyme already in it.

and intestinal phases, based on whether the stomach is being controlled by the brain, by itself, or by the small intestine, respectively (fig. 25.16). These phases overlap and all three can occur simultaneously.

The Cephalic Phase

The **cephalic phase** (fig. 25.16*a*) is the stage in which the stomach responds to the mere sight, smell, taste, or thought of food. These sensory and mental inputs converge on the hypothalamus, which relays signals to the medulla oblongata. Vagus nerve fibers from the medulla stimulate the enteric nervous system of the stomach which, in turn, stimulates gastric activity.

The Gastric Phase

The **gastric phase** (fig. 25.16*b*) is a period in which swallowed food and semidigested protein (peptides and amino acids) activate gastric activity. About two-thirds of gastric secretion occurs during this phase. Ingested food stimulates gastric activity in two ways: by stretching the stomach and by raising the pH of its contents. Stretch activates two reflexes: a short reflex mediated through the myenteric nerve plexus, and a long reflex mediated through the vagus nerves and brainstem.

Gastric secretion is stimulated chiefly by three chemicals: acetylcholine (ACh), histamine, and gastrin. ACh is secreted by parasympathetic nerve fibers of both the short and long reflex pathways. Histamine is a paracrine secretion from enteroendocrine cells in the gastric glands. **Gastrin** is a hormone produced by enteroendocrine **G cells** in the pyloric glands.

All three of these have receptors on the parietal cells and stimulate them to secrete hydrochloric acid and intrinsic factor. The chief cells secrete pepsinogen in response to gastrin and especially ACh, and ACh also stimulates mucus secretion.

As dietary protein is digested, it breaks down into smaller peptides and amino acids, which directly stimulate the G cells to secrete even more gastrin—a positive feedback loop that accelerates protein digestion (fig. 25.17). Small peptides also buffer stomach acid so the pH does not fall excessively low. But as digestion continues and these peptides are emptied from the stomach, the pH drops lower and lower. Below a pH of 2, stomach acid inhibits the parietal cells and G cells—a negative feedback loop that winds down the gastric phase as the need for pepsin and HCl declines.

The Intestinal Phase

The **intestinal phase** is a stage in which the duodenum responds to arriving chyme and moderates gastric activity through hormones and nervous reflexes (see fig. 25.16*c*). The duodenum initially enhances gastric secretion, but soon inhibits it. Stretching of the duodenum activates vagovagal reflexes that stimulate the stomach, and peptides and

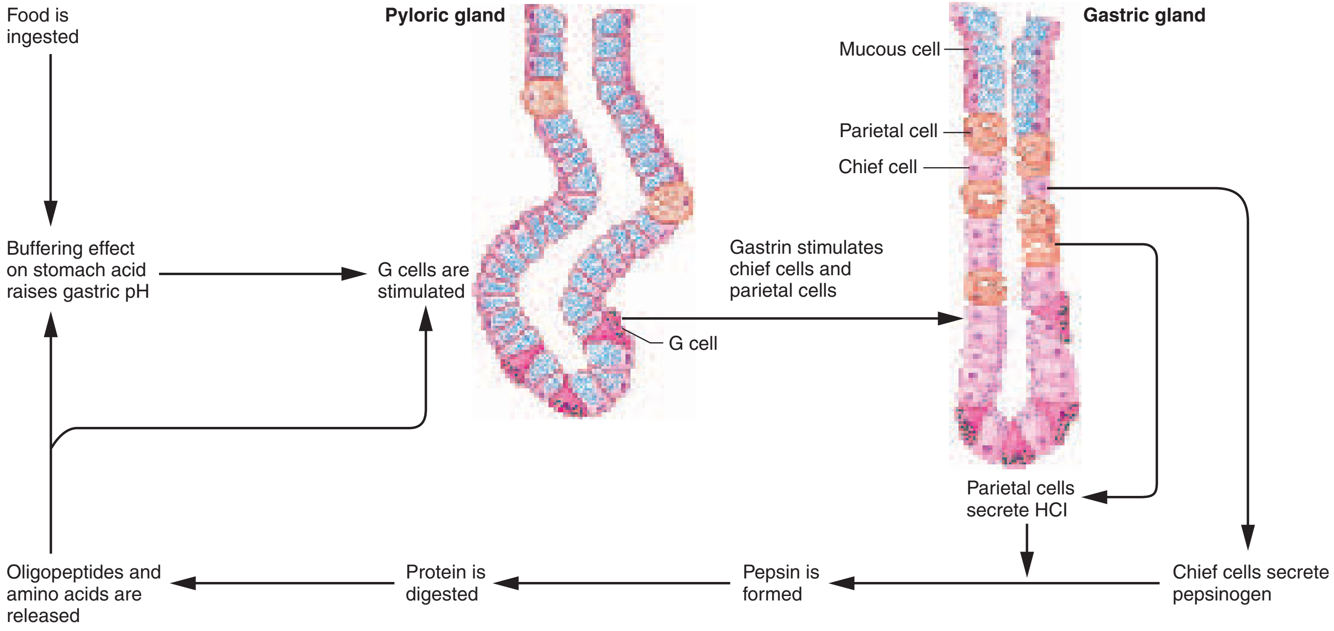

Food is ingested
Pyloric gland
Gastric gland
Mucous cell
Parietal cell
Chief cell
Buffering effect on stomach acid raises gastric pH
G cells are stimulated
Gastrin stimulates chief cells and parietal cells
G cell
Parietal cells secrete HCl
Oligopeptides and amino acids are released
Protein is digested
Pepsin is formed
Chief cells secrete pepsinogen

Figure 25.17 **Positive Feedback Control of Gastric Secretion.** This positive feedback loop declines and stops as the stomach is emptied and the pH drops.

amino acids in the chyme stimulate G cells of the duodenum to secrete more gastrin, which further stimulates the stomach.

Soon, however, the acid and semidigested fats in the duodenum trigger the **enterogastric reflex**—the duodenum sends inhibitory signals to the stomach by way of the enteric nervous system, and sends signals to the medulla that (1) inhibit the vagal nuclei, thus reducing vagal stimulation of the stomach, and (2) stimulate sympathetic neurons, which send inhibitory signals to the stomach. Chyme also stimulates duodenal enteroendocrine cells to release **secretin, cholecystokinin** (CO-leh-SIS-toe-KY-nin) **(CCK),** and **gastric inhibitory peptide (GIP).** Secretin and CCK primarily stimulate the pancreas and gallbladder, as discussed later, but all three of these hormones suppress gastric secretion and motility. The effect of all this is that gastrin secretion declines and the pyloric sphincter contracts tightly to limit the admission of more chyme into the duodenum. This gives the duodenum time to work on the chyme it has already received before being loaded with more.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

10. Name four types of epithelial cells of the gastric and pyloric glands and state what each one secretes.
11. Explain how the gastric glands produce hydrochloric acid and how this produces an alkaline tide.
12. What positive feedback cycle can you identify in the formation and action of pepsin?
13. How does food in the duodenum inhibit motility and secretion in the stomach?

The Liver, Gallbladder, and Pancreas

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the gross and microscopic anatomy of the liver, gallbladder, bile duct system, and pancreas;
- describe the digestive secretions and functions of the liver, gallbladder, and pancreas; and
- explain how hormones regulate secretions of the liver and pancreas.

The small intestine receives not only chyme from the stomach but also secretions from the liver and pancreas, which enter the digestive tract near the junction of the stomach and small intestine. These secretions are so important to the digestive processes of the small intestine that it is necessary to understand them before continuing with intestinal physiology.

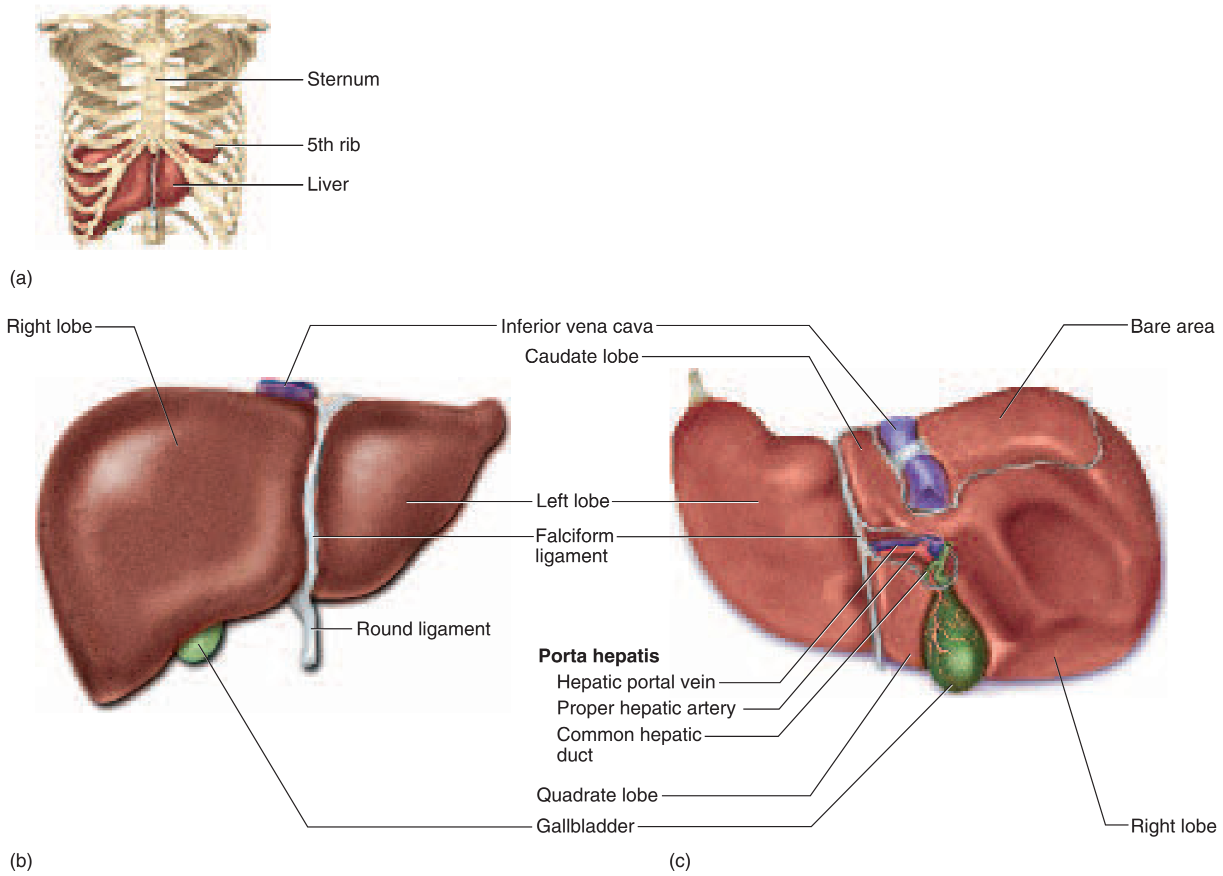

Sternum
5th rib
Liver
(a)
Right lobe
Inferior vena cava
Caudate lobe
Bare area
Left lobe
Falciform ligament
Round ligament
Porta hepatis
Hepatic portal vein
Proper hepatic artery
Common hepatic duct
Quadrate lobe
Gallbladder
Right lobe
(b)
(c)

Figure 25.18 **Gross Anatomy of the Liver.** (*a*) Relationship of the liver to the thoracic cage. (*b*) Anterior aspect. (*c*) Inferior aspect.

The Liver

The liver (fig. 25.18) is a reddish brown gland located immediately inferior to the diaphragm, filling most of the right hypochondriac and epigastric regions. It is the body's largest gland, weighing about 1.4 kg (3 lb). The liver has a tremendous variety of functions, but only one of them, the secretion of bile, contributes to digestion. Others are discussed in the following chapter, which provides a more thorough physiological basis for understanding liver function.

Gross Anatomy

The liver has four lobes called the right, left, quadrate, and caudate lobes. From an anterior view, we see only a large **right lobe** and smaller **left lobe.** They are separated from each other by the **falciform**[15] **ligament,** a sheet of mesentery that suspends the liver from the diaphragm and anterior abdominal wall. The **round ligament** *(ligamentum teres),* also visible anteriorly, is a fibrous remnant of the umbilical vein, which carries blood from the umbilical cord to the liver of a fetus.

From the inferior view, we also see a squarish **quadrate lobe** next to the gallbladder and a tail-like **caudate**[16] **lobe** posterior to that. An irregular opening between these lobes, the **porta hepatis,**[17] is a point of entry for the hepatic portal vein and proper hepatic artery and a point of exit for the bile passages, all of which travel in the lesser omentum. The gallbladder adheres to a depression on the inferior surface of the liver between the right and quadrate lobes. The posterior aspect of the liver has a deep groove (sulcus) that accommodates the inferior vena cava. The superior surface has a *bare area* where it is attached to the diaphragm. The rest of the liver is covered by a serosa.

---

[15] *falci* = sickle + *form* = shape

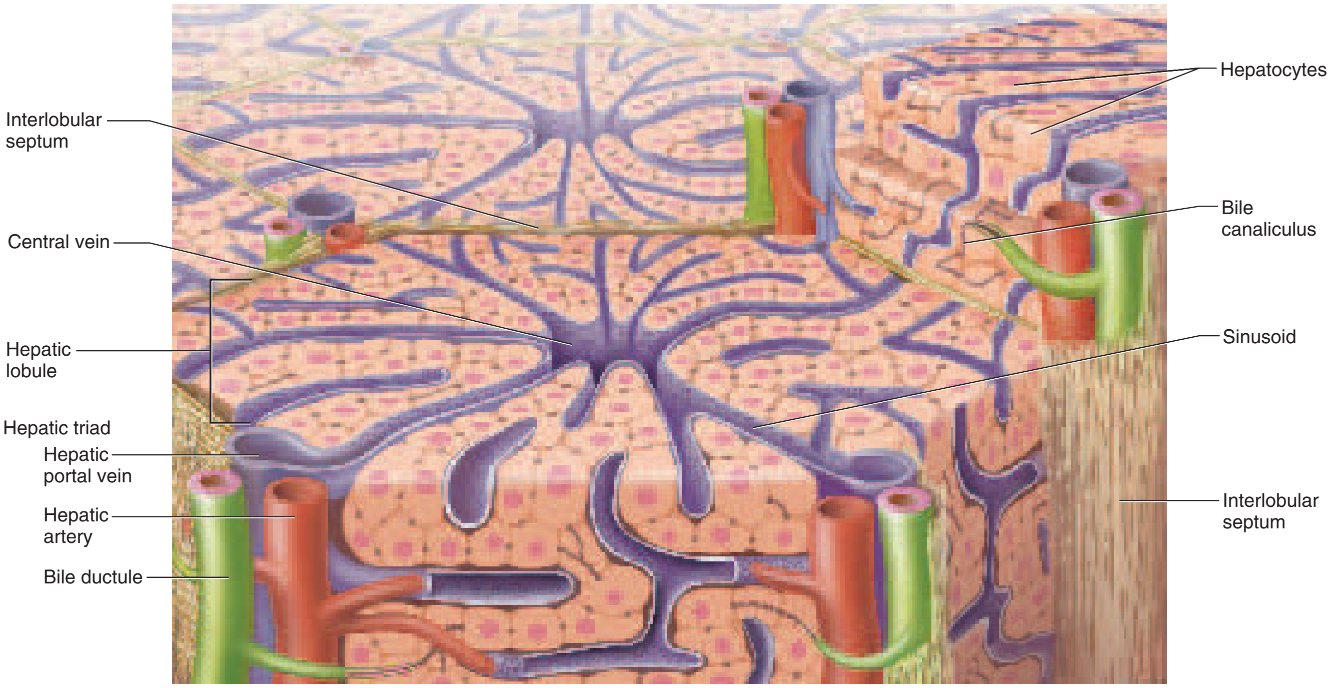
[16] *caud* = tail

[17] *porta* = gateway, entrance + *hepatis* = of the liver

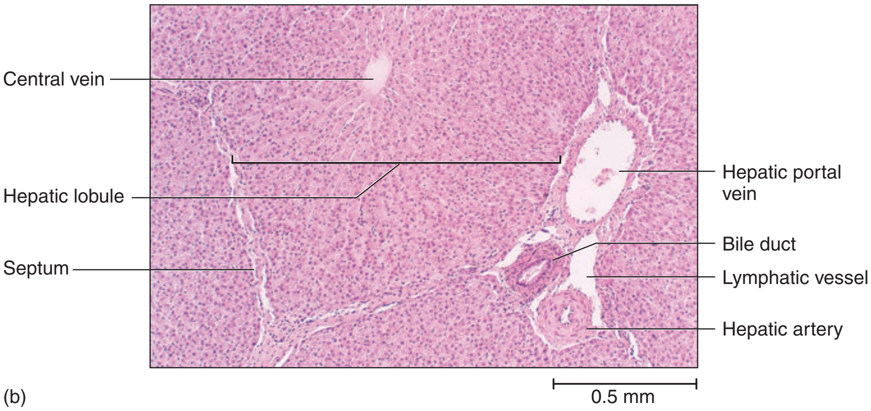
Microscopic Anatomy

The interior of the liver is filled with innumerable tiny cylinders called **hepatic lobules,** about 2 mm long by 1 mm in diameter. A lobule consists of a **central vein** passing down its core, surrounded by radiating sheets of cuboidal cells called **hepatocytes** (fig. 25.19). Imagine spreading a book wide open until its front and back covers touch. The pages of the book would fan out around the spine somewhat like the plates of hepatocytes fan out from the central vein of a liver lobule.

Each plate of hepatocytes is an epithelium one or two cells thick. The spaces between the plates are blood-filled channels called **hepatic sinusoids.** The sinusoids are lined by a fenestrated endothelium that separates the hepatocytes from the bloodstream, but allows blood plasma into the space between the hepatocytes and endothelium. The blood filtering through the sinusoids comes directly from


Interlobular septum
Central vein
Hepatic lobule
Hepatic triad
Hepatic portal vein
Hepatic artery
Bile ductule
Hepatocytes
Bile canaliculus
Sinusoid
Interlobular septum

(a)


Central vein
Hepatic lobule
Septum
Hepatic portal vein
Bile duct
Lymphatic vessel
Hepatic artery
0.5 mm

(b)

Figure 25.19 Microscopic Anatomy of the Liver. (*a*) The hepatic lobules and their relationship to the blood vessels and bile tributaries. (*b*) Histological section of the liver.
Blood from what two sources mixes in the hepatic sinusoids?

the intestines. After a meal, the liver removes glucose, amino acids, iron, vitamins, and other nutrients from it for metabolism or storage. It also removes and degrades hormones, toxins, bile pigments, and drugs. At the same time, the liver secretes albumin, lipoproteins, clotting factors, angiotensinogen, and other products into the blood. Between meals, it breaks down stored glycogen and releases glucose into the circulation. The sinusoids also contain phagocytic cells called **hepatic macrophages (Kupffer[18] cells),** which remove bacteria and debris from the blood.

The hepatic lobules are separated by a sparse connective tissue stroma. In cross sections, the stroma is especially visible in the triangular areas where three or more lobules meet. Here there is often a **hepatic triad** of two blood vessels and a bile ductule. The blood vessels are small branches of the proper hepatic artery and hepatic portal vein. Both of them supply blood to the sinusoids, which therefore receive a mixture of nutrient-laden venous blood from the intestines and freshly oxygenated arterial blood from the celiac trunk. After filtering through the sinusoids, this blood collects in the central vein. From here, it ultimately flows into the right and left hepatic veins, which leave the liver at its superior surface and drain immediately into the inferior vena cava.

The liver secretes bile into narrow channels, the **bile canaliculi,** between sheets of hepatocytes. Bile passes from there into the small **bile ductules** of the triads and ultimately into the **right** and **left hepatic ducts.** The two hepatic ducts converge on the inferior side of the liver to form the **common hepatic duct.** A short distance farther on, this is joined by the **cystic duct** coming from the gallbladder (fig. 25.20). Their union forms the **bile duct,** which descends through the lesser omentum toward the duodenum. Near the duodenum, the bile duct joins the duct of the pancreas and forms an expanded chamber called the **hepatopancreatic ampulla.** The ampulla terminates at a fold of tissue, the **major duodenal papilla,** on the duodenal wall. This papilla contains a muscular **hepatopancreatic sphincter (sphincter of Oddi[19]),** which regulates the passage of bile and pancreatic juice into the duodenum. Between meals, this sphincter is closed and prevents the release of bile into the intestine.

The Gallbladder and Bile

The **gallbladder** is a sac on the underside of the liver that serves to store and concentrate bile. It is about 10 cm long and internally lined by a highly folded mucosa with a

---

[18] Karl W. von Kupffer (1829–1902), German anatomist

[19] Ruggero Oddi (1864–1913), Italian physician

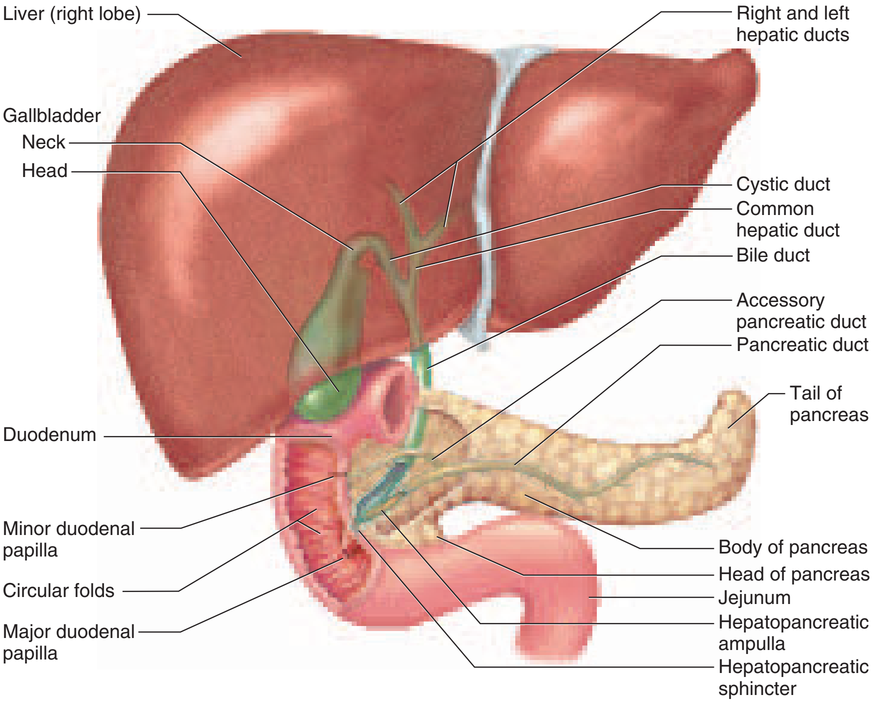

Liver (right lobe)
Gallbladder
Neck
Head
Duodenum
Minor duodenal papilla
Circular folds
Major duodenal papilla
Right and left hepatic ducts
Cystic duct
Common hepatic duct
Bile duct
Accessory pancreatic duct
Pancreatic duct
Tail of pancreas
Body of pancreas
Head of pancreas
Jejunum
Hepatopancreatic ampulla
Hepatopancreatic sphincter

Figure 25.20 **Gross Anatomy of the Gallbladder, Pancreas, and Bile Passages.**

simple columnar epithelium. Its head *(fundus)* usually projects slightly beyond the inferior margin of the liver. Its neck *(cervix)* leads into the cystic duct, which leads in turn to the bile duct.

Bile is a yellow-green fluid containing minerals, cholesterol, neutral fats, phospholipids, bile pigments, and bile acids. The principal pigment is **bilirubin,** derived from the decomposition of hemoglobin. Bacteria of the large intestine metabolize bilirubin to **urobilinogen,** which is responsible for the brown color of feces. In the absence of bile secretion, the feces are grayish white and marked with streaks of undigested fat *(acholic feces).* **Bile acids (bile salts)** are steroids synthesized from cholesterol. Bile acids and lecithin, a phospholipid, aid in fat digestion and absorption, as discussed later. All other components of the bile are wastes destined for excretion in the feces. When these waste products become excessively concentrated, they may form gallstones (see insight 25.3).

Bile gets into the gallbladder by first filling the bile duct, then overflowing into the gallbladder. Between meals, the gallbladder absorbs water and electrolytes from the bile and concentrates it by a factor of 5 to 20 times. The liver secretes about 500 to 1,000 mL of bile per day.

About 80% of the bile acids are reabsorbed in the ileum, the last portion of the small intestine, and returned to the liver, where the hepatocytes absorb them and resecrete them. This route of secretion, reabsorption, and resecretion, called the *enterohepatic circulation,* reabsorbs and reuses the bile two or more times during the digestion of an average meal. The 20% of the bile that is not reabsorbed is excreted in the feces. This is the body's only way of eliminating excess cholesterol. The liver synthesizes new bile acids from cholesterol to replace the quantity lost in the feces.

Think About It

Certain drugs designed to reduce blood cholesterol work by blocking the reabsorption of bile acids in the ileum. Explain why they would have this cholesterol-lowering effect.

Insight 25.3 Clinical Application

Gallstones

Gallstones (biliary calculi) are hard masses in the gallbladder or bile ducts, usually composed of cholesterol, calcium carbonate, and bilirubin. *Cholelithiasis,* the formation of gallstones, is most common in obese women over the age of 40 and usually results from excess cholesterol. The gallbladder may contain several gallstones, some over 1 cm in diameter. Gallstones cause excruciating pain when they obstruct the bile ducts or when the gallbladder or bile ducts contract. When they block the flow of bile into the duodenum, they cause jaundice (yellowing of the skin due to bile pigment accumulation), poor fat digestion, and impaired absorption of fat-soluble vitamins. Once treated only by surgical removal, gallstones are now often treated with stone-dissolving drugs or by *lithotripsy,* the use of ultrasonic vibration to pulverize them without surgery. Reobstruction can be prevented by inserting a stent (tube) into the bile duct, which keeps it distended and allows gallstones to pass while they are still small.

The Pancreas

The pancreas (fig. 25.20) is a spongy retroperitoneal gland dorsal to the greater curvature of the stomach. It has a globose *head* encircled by the duodenum, a midportion called the *body,* and a blunt, tapered *tail* on the left. The pancreas is both an endocrine and exocrine gland. Its endocrine part is the pancreatic islets, which secrete insulin and glucagon (see chapter 17). Most of the pancreas is exocrine tissue, which secretes 1,200 to 1,500 mL of **pancreatic juice** per day. The cells of the secretory acini exhibit a high density of rough ER and *zymogen granules,* which are vesicles filled with secretion (fig. 25.21). These acini open into a system of larger and larger ducts that eventually converge on the main **pancreatic duct.** This duct runs lengthwise through the middle of the gland and joins the bile duct at the hepatopancreatic ampulla. The hepatopancreatic sphincter thus controls the release of both bile and pancreatic juice into the duodenum. Usually, however, there is a smaller **accessory pancreatic duct** that branches from the main pancreatic duct and opens independently into the duodenum at the **minor duodenal papilla,** proximal to the major papilla. The accessory duct bypasses the sphincter and allows pancreatic juice to be released into the duodenum even when bile is not.

Pancreatic juice is an alkaline mixture of water, enzymes, zymogens, sodium bicarbonate, and other electrolytes. The acini secrete the enzymes and zymogens, whereas the ducts secrete the sodium bicarbonate. The bicarbonate buffers HCl arriving from the stomach.

The pancreatic zymogens are **trypsinogen** (trip-SIN-oh-jen), **chymotrypsinogen** (KY-mo-trip-SIN-o-jen), and **procarboxypeptidase** (PRO-car-BOC-see-PEP-tih-dase). When trypsinogen is secreted into the intestinal lumen, it is converted to **trypsin** by **enterokinase,** an enzyme on the surface of the intestinal epithelial cells (fig. 25.22). Trypsin then converts the other two zymogens into **chymotrypsin** and **carboxypeptidase,** in addition to its primary role of digesting dietary protein.

Other pancreatic enzymes include **pancreatic amylase,** which digests starch; **pancreatic lipase,** which digests fat; and **ribonuclease** and **deoxyribonuclease,** which digest RNA and DNA, respectively. Unlike the zymogens, these enzymes are not altered after secretion. They become active, however, only upon exposure to bile and ions in the intestinal lumen.

The exocrine secretions of the pancreas are summarized in table 25.3. Their specific digestive functions are explained later in more detail.

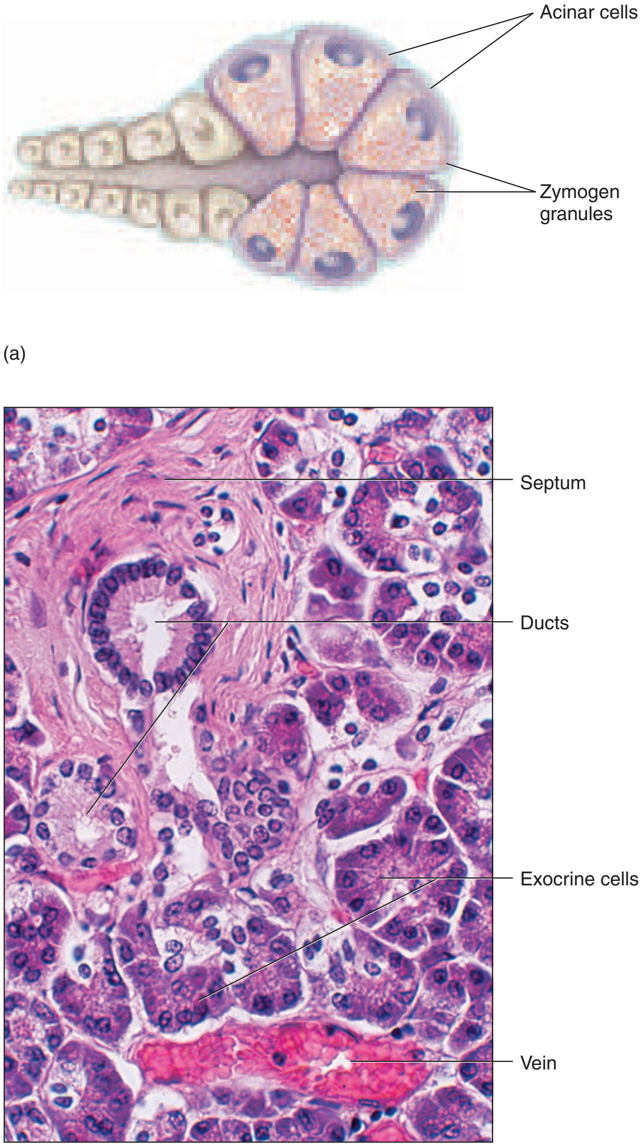


Figure 25.21 **Histology of the Pancreas.** (*a*) An acinus. (*b*) Histological section of the exocrine tissue and some of the connective tissue stroma.

Regulation of Secretion

Bile and pancreatic juice are secreted in response to parasympathetic (vagal) stimulation and inhibited by sympathetic stimulation, and both are stimulated by the hormones cholecystokinin (CCK), gastrin, and secretin. The duodenum secretes CCK in response to acid and fat arriving from the stomach. CCK triggers three responses: (1) contraction of the gallbladder, which forces bile into the bile duct; (2) secretion of pancreatic enzymes; and (3) relaxation of the hepatopancreatic sphincter, which allows bile and pancreatic juice to be released into the duodenum. Gastrin from the stomach and duodenum stimulates gallbladder contraction and pancreatic enzyme secretion, but only half

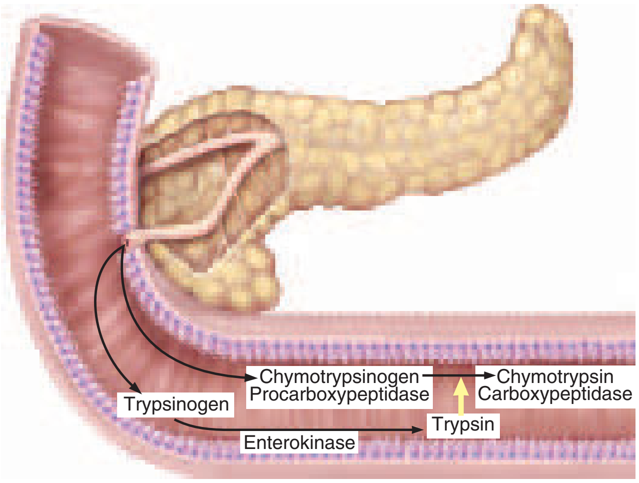


Figure 25.22 **The Activation of Pancreatic Enzymes in the Small Intestine.** The pancreas secretes trypsinogen, and enterokinase in the intestinal brush border converts it to trypsin. Trypsin not only digests dietary protein but also activates two other pancreatic zymogens, chymotrypsinogen and procarboxypeptidase.

Table 25.3 Exocrine Secretions of the Pancreas

Secretion	Function
Sodium bicarbonate	Neutralizes HCl
Zymogens	Converted to active digestive enzymes after secretion
Trypsinogen	Becomes trypsin, which digests protein
Chymotrypsinogen	Becomes chymotrypsin, which digests protein
Procarboxypeptidase	Becomes carboxypeptidase, which hydrolyzes the terminal amino acid from the carboxyl (–COOH) end of small peptides
Enzymes	
Pancreatic amylase	Digests starch
Pancreatic lipase	Digests fat
Ribonuclease	Digests RNA
Deoxyribonuclease	Digests DNA

as strongly as CCK does. Acidic chyme also stimulates the duodenum to secrete **secretin,** the first hormone ever discovered (by William Bayliss and Ernest Starling in 1902). Secretin stimulates the hepatic bile ducts and pancreatic ducts to secrete bicarbonate, so the bile and pancreatic juice both help to neutralize stomach acid in the duodenum.

Think About It

Draw a negative feedback loop showing how secretin influences duodenal pH.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

14. What does the liver contribute to digestion?
15. Trace the pathway taken by bile acids from the liver and back. What is this pathway called?
16. Name two hormones, four enzymes, and one buffer secreted by the pancreas, and state the function of each.
17. What stimulates cholecystokinin (CCK) secretion, and how does CCK affect other parts of the digestive system?

The Small Intestine

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the gross and microscopic anatomy of the small intestine;
- state how the mucosa of the small intestine differs from that of the stomach, and explain the functional significance of the differences;
- define *contact digestion* and describe where it occurs; and
- describe the types of movement that occur in the small intestine.

Nearly all chemical digestion and nutrient absorption occur in the small intestine. To perform these roles efficiently, the small intestine must have a large surface area exposed to the chyme. Thus, it is the longest part of the digestive tract—about 6 to 7 m long in a cadaver, but because of muscle tone, only 2 m long in a living person. The term *small* intestine refers not to its length but to its diameter—about 2.5 cm (1 in.). Further enhancing its surface area, the mucosa of the small intestine is highly folded, with *circular folds* visible to the naked eye, barely visible projections called *villi,* and microscopic *microvilli* forming a brush border on its absorptive cells.

Think About It

The small intestine exhibits some of the same structural adaptations as the proximal convoluted tubule of the kidney, and for the same reasons. Discuss what they have in common, the reasons for it, and how this relates to this book's theme of the unity of form and function.

Gross Anatomy

The small intestine is a coiled mass filling most of the abdominal cavity inferior to the stomach and liver. It is divided into three regions (fig. 25.23): the duodenum, jejunum, and ileum. The **duodenum** (dew-ODD-eh-num, DEW-oh-DEE-num) constitutes the first 25 cm (10 in.). It begins at the pyloric valve, arcs around the head of the pancreas and passes to the left, and ends at a sharp bend called the **duodenojejunal flexure.** Its name refers to its length, about equal to the width of 12 fingers.[20] Along with the pancreas, it is retroperitoneal. The duodenum receives the stomach contents, pancreatic juice, and bile. Stomach acid is neutralized here, fats are physically broken up (emulsified) by the bile acids, pepsin is inactivated by the elevated pH, and pancreatic enzymes take over the job of chemical digestion.

The **jejunum** (jeh-JOO-num) is the next 2.5 m (8 ft). Its name refers to the fact that early anatomists typically found it to be empty.[21] The **ileum**[22] forms the last 3.6 m (12 ft). (These lengths are for the cadaver.) The jejunum and ileum are not separated by any conspicuous anatomi-

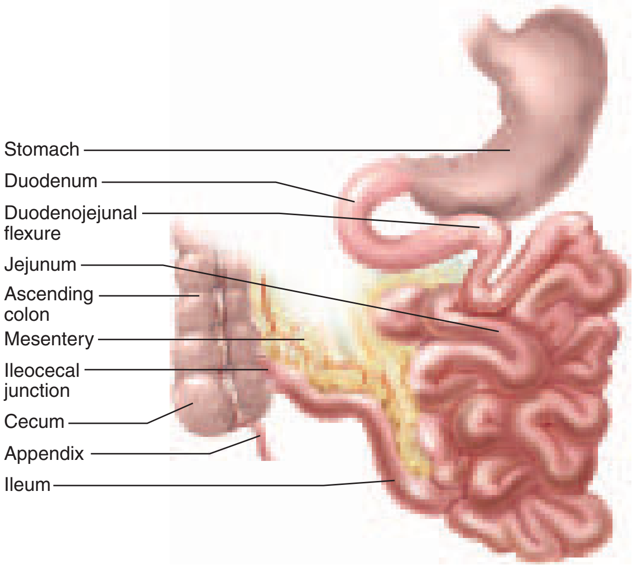


Figure 25.23 **Gross Anatomy of the Small Intestine.** The intestine is pulled aside to expose the mesentery and ileocecal junction.

---

[20] *duoden* = 12
[21] *jejun* = empty, dry
[22] from *eilos* = twisted

cal landmark, but the jejunum is located largely toward the upper left of the intestinal coils and the ileum to the lower right. The ileum ends at the **ileocecal** (ILL-ee-oh-SEE-cul) **junction,** where it joins the cecum, the first part of the large intestine. The jejunum and ileum lie within the peritoneal cavity and are covered externally with a serosa, which is continuous with the complex, folded mesentery that suspends the small intestine from the dorsal abdominal wall.

Microscopic Anatomy

The largest folds of the intestinal wall are transverse to spiral ridges, up to 10 mm high, called **circular folds** *(plicae circulares)* (see fig. 25.20). These involve only the mucosa and submucosa; they are not visible on the external surface, which is smooth. They occur from the duodenum to the middle of the ileum, where they cause the chyme to flow on a spiral path along the intestine. This slows its progress, causes more contact with the mucosa, and promotes more thorough mixing and nutrient absorption. Circular folds are not found in the distal half of the ileum, but most nutrient absorption is completed by that point.

If the mucosa is examined closely it appears fuzzy, like a terrycloth towel. This is due to projections called **villi** (VIL-eye; singular, *villus*), about 0.5 to 1.0 mm high, with tongue- to fingerlike shapes (fig. 25.24). The villi are largest in the duodenum and become progressively smaller in more distal regions of the small intestine. A villus is covered with two kinds of epithelial cells—columnar **absorptive cells** and mucus-secreting **goblet cells.** Like epithelial cells of the stomach, those of the small intestine are joined by tight junctions that prevent digestive enzymes from seeping between them.

The core of a villus is filled with areolar tissue of the lamina propria. Embedded in this tissue are an arteriole, a capillary network, a venule, and a lymphatic capillary called a **lacteal** (LAC-tee-ul). Most nutrients are absorbed by the blood capillaries, but most fat is absorbed by the lacteal and gives its contents the milky appearance for which the lacteal is named.[23] The core of the villus also has a few smooth muscle cells that contract periodically. This enhances mixing of the chyme in the intestinal lumen and milks lymph down the lacteal to the larger lymphatic vessels of the submucosa.

Each absorptive cell of a villus has a fuzzy brush border of microvilli about 1 μm high. The brush border increases the absorptive surface area of the small intestine and contains **brush border enzymes,** integral proteins of the plasma membrane. One of these, enterokinase, activates pancreatic enzymes as explained earlier. Others carry out some of the final stages of enzymatic digestion. They are not released into the lumen; instead, the chyme must contact the brush border for digestion to occur. This process, called **contact digestion,** is one reason that thorough mixing of the chyme is so important.

On the floor of the small intestine, between the bases of the villi, there are numerous pores that open into tubular glands called **intestinal crypts (crypts of Lieberkühn;**[24] LEE-ber-koohn). These crypts, similar to the gastric glands, extend as far as the muscularis mucosae. In the upper half they consist of absorptive and goblet cells like those of the villi. The lower half is dominated by dividing stem cells. In its life span of 3 to 6 days, an epithelial cell migrates up the crypt to the tip of the villus, where it is sloughed off and digested. A few **Paneth**[25] **cells** are clustered at the base of each crypt. They secrete lysozyme, phospholipase, and defensins, all of which protect against bacterial infection.

The duodenum has prominent **duodenal (Brunner**[26]**) glands** in the submucosa. They secrete an abundance of bicarbonate-rich mucus, which neutralizes stomach acid and shields the mucosa from its corrosive effects. Throughout the small intestine, the lamina propria and submucosa have a large population of lymphocytes that intercept pathogens before they can invade the bloodstream. In some places these are aggregated into conspicuous lymphatic nodules. These become more and more numerous closer to the large intestine, where the bacterial population is greatest. In the ileum, the nodules form ever-changing aggregates called **Peyer**[27] **patches** on one side of the intestine.

The muscularis externa consists of a relatively thick inner circular layer and a thinner outer longitudinal layer. Ganglia of the myenteric nerve plexus occur between these layers.

Intestinal Secretion

The intestinal crypts secrete 1 to 2 L of **intestinal juice** per day, especially in response to acid, hypertonic chyme, and distension of the intestine. This fluid has a pH of 7.4 to 7.8. It contains water and mucus but relatively little enzyme. Most enzymes that function in the small intestine are found in the brush border and pancreatic juice.

Intestinal Motility

Contractions of the small intestine serve three functions: (1) to mix chyme with intestinal juice, bile, and pancreatic juice, allowing these fluids to neutralize acid and digest

---

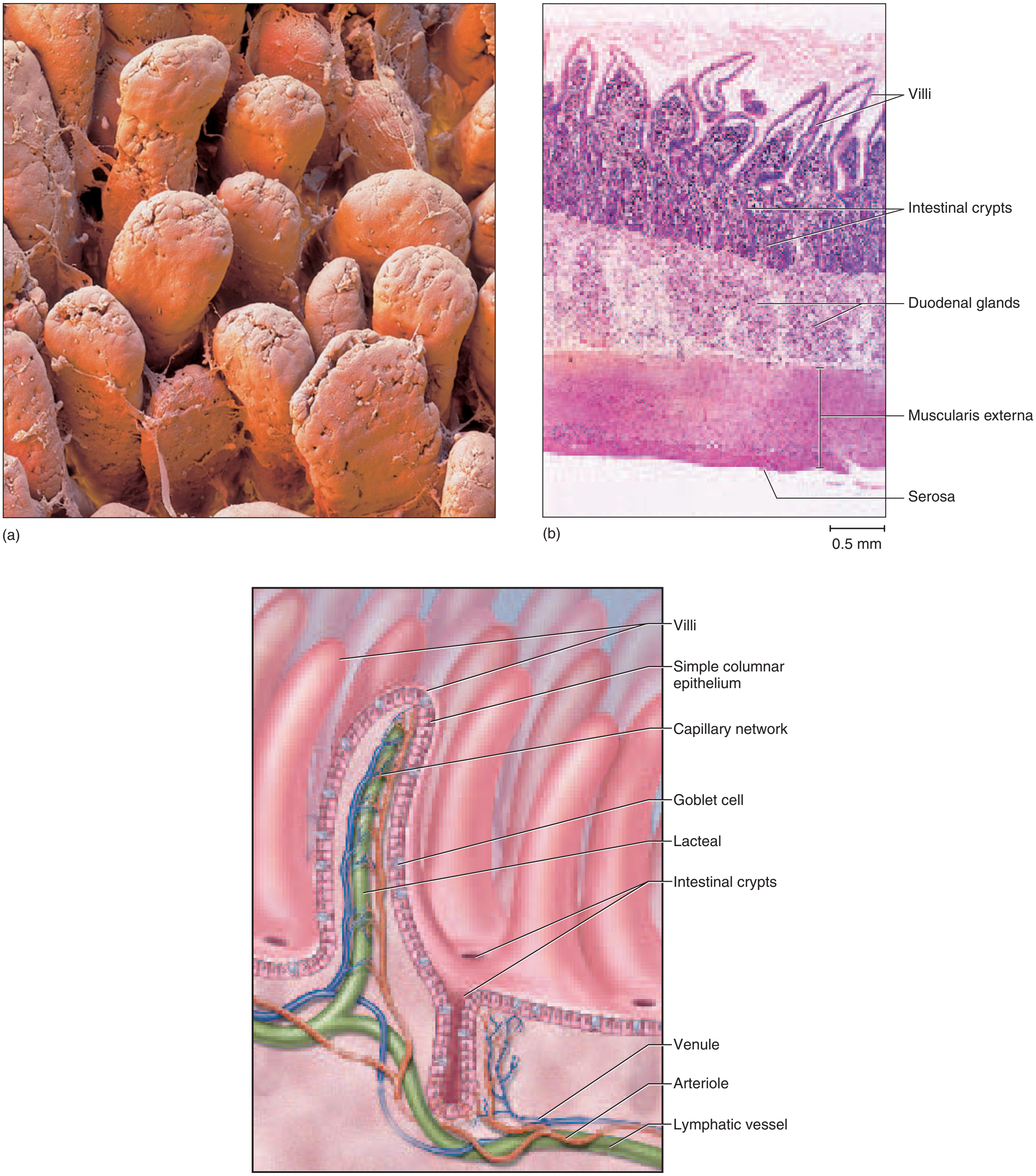
[23] *lact* = milk

[24] Johann N. Lieberkühn (1711–56), German anatomist

[25] Josef Paneth (1857–90), Austrian physician

[26] Johann C. Brunner (1653–1727), Swiss anatomist

[27] Johann K. Peyer (1653–1712), Swiss anatomist


Villi
Intestinal crypts
Duodenal glands
Muscularis externa
Serosa
0.5 mm
Villi
Simple columnar epithelium
Capillary network
Goblet cell
Lacteal
Intestinal crypts
Venule
Arteriole
Lymphatic vessel

(a)

(b)

(c)

Figure 25.24 **Intestinal Villi.** (*a*) Villi of the jejunum. (*b*) Histological section of the duodenum showing villi, intestinal crypts, and duodenal glands. (*c*) Structure of a villus.

nutrients more effectively; (2) to churn chyme and bring it into contact with the mucosa for contact digestion and nutrient absorption; and (3) to move residue toward the large intestine.

Segmentation is a movement in which ringlike constrictions appear at several places along the intestine and then relax as new constrictions form elsewhere (fig. 25.25*a*). This is the most common movement of the small intestine. Its effect is to knead or churn the contents, which promotes the mixing of food and digestive secretions and enhances contact digestion. Pacemaker cells of the muscularis externa set the rhythm of segmentation, with contractions about 12 times per minute in the duodenum and 8 to 9 times per minute in the ileum. Since the contractions are less frequent distally, segmentation causes slow progression of the chyme toward the colon. The intensity (but not frequency) of contractions is modified by nervous and hormonal influences.

When most nutrients have been absorbed and little remains but undigested residue, segmentation declines and peristalsis begins. A peristaltic wave begins in the duodenum, travels 10 to 70 cm, and dies out, only to be followed by another wave that begins a little farther down the tract than the first one did (fig. 25.25*b*). These successive, overlapping waves of contraction are called a **migrating motor complex.** They milk the chyme toward the colon over a period of about 2 hours. A second complex then expels residue and bacteria from the small intestine, thereby helping to limit bacterial colonization. Refilling of the stomach at the next meal suppresses peristalsis and reactivates segmentation.

At the ileocecal junction, the muscularis of the ileum is thickened to form a sphincter, the **ileocecal** (ILL-ee-oh-SEE-cul) **valve,** which protrudes into the cecum like a doughnut. This valve is usually closed. Food in the stomach, however, triggers both the release of gastrin and the **gastroileal reflex,** both of which enhance segmentation in the ileum and relax the valve. As the cecum fills with residue, the pressure pinches the valve shut and prevents the reflux of cecal contents into the ileum.

Table 25.4 summarizes the anatomy of the stomach, accessory glands of the abdomen, and small intestine.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

18. What three structures increase the absorptive surface area of the small intestine?
19. Sketch a villus and label its epithelium, brush border, lamina propria, blood capillaries, and lacteal.
20. Distinguish between segmentation and the migrating motor complex of the small intestine. How do these differ in function?

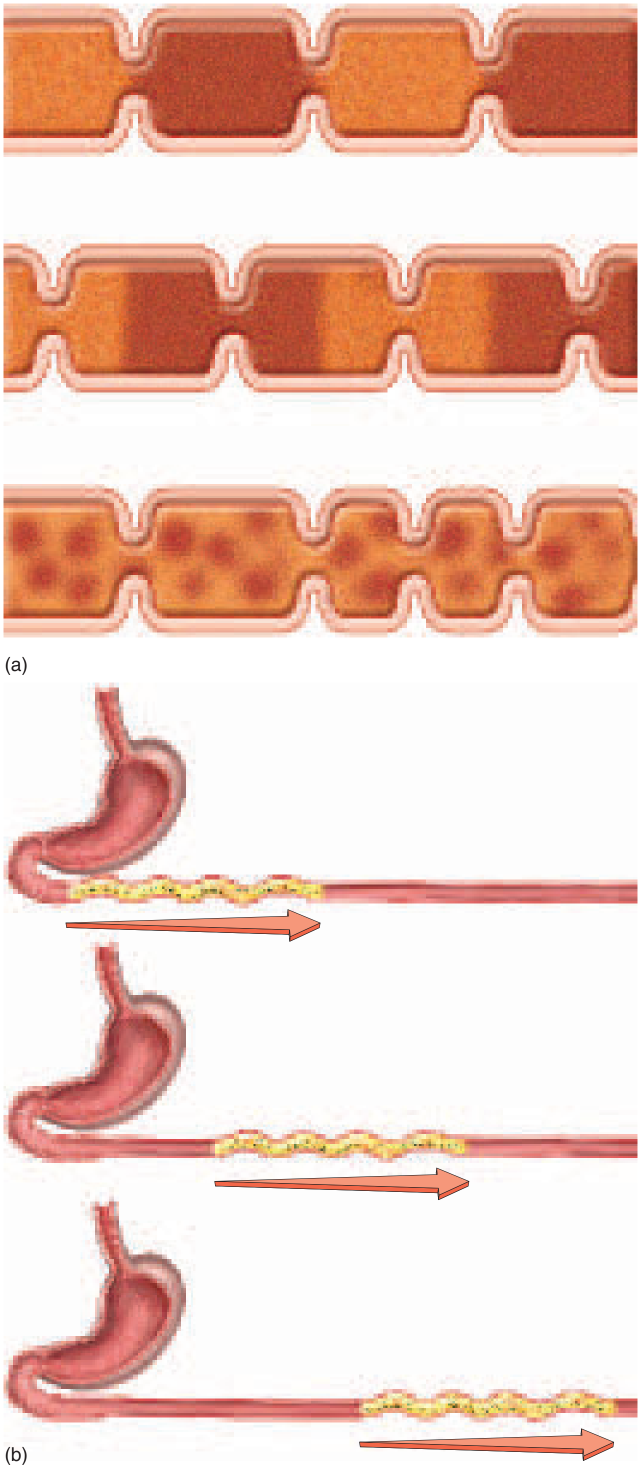


Figure 25.25 Contractions of the Small Intestine.
(*a*) Segmentation, in which circular constrictions of the intestine cut into the contents, churning and mixing them. (*b*) The migrating motor complex of peristalsis, in which successive waves of peristalsis overlap each other. Each wave travels partway down the intestine and milks the contents toward the colon.

Table 25.4 Anatomical Checklist of the Digestive System from the Stomach Through the Small Intestine

Stomach

- *General features*
  - Lesser curvature
  - Greater curvature
  - Cardiac region
  - Fundic region
  - Body (corpus)
  - Pyloric region
    - Antrum
    - Pyloric canal
    - Pylorus
    - Pyloric sphincter
- *Mucosa*
  - Rugae
  - Gastric pits
  - Cardiac glands
  - Pyloric glands
  - Gastric glands
    - Mucous neck cells
    - Regenerative cells
    - Parietal cells
    - Chief cells
    - Enteroendocrine cells
- *Submucosa*
- *Muscularis externa*
- *Serosa*

Liver

- *Lobes*
  - Right lobe
  - Left lobe
  - Quadrate lobe
  - Caudate lobe
- *Ligaments*
  - Falciform ligament
  - Round ligament
- *Porta hepatis*
- *Microscopic anatomy*
  - Hepatocytes
  - Hepatic lobules
  - Central vein
  - Hepatic sinusoids
  - Hepatic macrophages
  - Hepatic triads
- *Bile tributaries*
  - Bile canaliculi
  - Bile ductules
  - Hepatic ducts
  - Common hepatic duct
- *Gallbladder and bile duct*
  - Head (fundus)
  - Neck (cervix)
  - Cystic duct
  - Bile duct
  - Hepatopancreatic ampulla
  - Hepatopancreatic sphincter

Pancreas

- *Head*
- *Body*
- *Tail*
- *Exocrine acini*
- *Pancreatic islets*
- *Pancreatic duct*
- *Accessory pancreatic duct*

Small Intestine

- *Duodenum*
  - Major duodenal papilla
  - Minor duodenal papilla
  - Duodenal glands
  - Duodenojejunal flexure
- *Jejunum*
- *Ileum*
  - Peyer patches
  - Ileocecal valve
  - Ileocecal junction
- *Mucosa*
  - Circular folds
  - Villi
    - Goblet cells
    - Absorptive cells
    - Microvilli
    - Lacteal
  - Intestinal crypts
    - Paneth cells

Chemical Digestion and Absorption

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe how each major class of nutrients is chemically digested, name the enzymes involved, and discuss the functional differences among these enzymes; and
- describe how each type of nutrient is absorbed by the small intestine.

Chemical digestion and nutrient absorption are essentially finished by the time food residue leaves the small intestine and enters the cecum. But before going on to the functions of the large intestine, we trace each major class of nutrients—especially carbohydrates, proteins, and fats—from the mouth through the small intestine to see how it is chemically degraded and absorbed.

Carbohydrates

Most digestible dietary carbohydrate is starch. Cellulose is indigestible and is not considered here, although its importance as dietary fiber is discussed in chapter 26. The amount of glycogen in the diet is negligible, but it is digested in the same manner as starch.

Carbohydrate Digestion

Starch is digested first to oligosaccharides up to eight glucose residues long, then into the disaccharide maltose, and finally to glucose, which is absorbed by the small intestine. The process begins in the mouth, where salivary amylase hydrolyzes starch into oligosaccharides. Salivary amylase functions best at pH 6.8 to 7.0, typical of the oral cavity. It is quickly denatured upon contact with stomach acid, but it can digest starch for as long as 1 to 2 hours in the stomach as long as it is in the middle of a food mass and escapes contact with the acid. Amylase therefore works longer when the meal is larger, especially in the fundus, where gastric motility is weakest and a food bolus takes longer to break up. As acid, pepsin, and the churning contractions of the stomach break up the bolus, amylase is denatured; it does not function at a pH any lower than 4.5. Being a protein, amylase is then digested by pepsin along with the dietary proteins. About 50% of the dietary starch is digested before it reaches the small intestine.

Starch digestion resumes in the small intestine when the chyme mixes with pancreatic amylase (fig. 25.26). Starch is entirely converted to oligosaccharides and maltose within 10 minutes. Its digestion is completed as the chyme contacts the brush border of the absorptive cells. Two brush border enzymes, **dextrinase** and **glucoamylase,** hydrolyze oligosaccharides that are three or more residues long. The third, **maltase,** hydrolyzes maltose to glucose.

Maltose is also present in some foods, but the major dietary disaccharides are sucrose (cane sugar) and lactose (milk sugar). They are digested by the brush border enzymes **sucrase** and **lactase,** respectively, and the resulting monosaccharides (glucose and fructose from the former; glucose and galactose from the latter) are immediately absorbed. In most humans, however, lactase is no longer produced after the age of four and lactose is indigestible past that age (see insight 25.4).

Carbohydrate Absorption

The plasma membrane of the absorptive cells has transport proteins that absorb monosaccharides as soon as the brush border enzymes release them (fig. 25.27). About 80% of the absorbed sugar is glucose, which is taken up by a sodium-glucose transport protein (SGLT) like that of the kidney tubules (see p. 894). After a high-carbohydrate meal, however, solvent drag absorbs two to three times as much glucose as the SGLT. Sugars entering the extracellular fluid (ECF) at the base of the intestinal epithelium increase its osmolarity. Water then passes osmotically from the lumen, through the now-leaky tight junctions between the epithelial cells, and into the ECF, carrying glucose and other nutrients with it.

The SGLT also absorbs galactose, whereas fructose is absorbed by facilitated diffusion using a separate carrier that does not depend on Na^+. Inside the epithelial cell, most fructose is converted to glucose. Glucose, galactose, and the small amount of remaining fructose are then transported out the base of the cell by facilitated diffusion and are absorbed by the blood capillaries of the villus. The hepatic portal system delivers them to the liver; chapter 26 follows the fate of these sugars from there.

Chapter 25

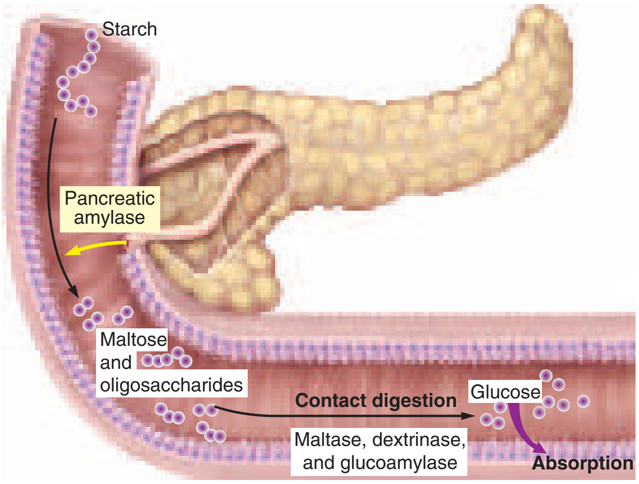

Starch
Pancreatic amylase
Maltose and oligosaccharides
Contact digestion
Glucose
Maltase, dextrinase, and glucoamylase
Absorption

Figure 25.26 **Starch Digestion in the Small Intestine.** Pancreatic amylase digests starch into maltose and small oligosaccharides. Brush border enzymes digest these to glucose, which is absorbed by the epithelial cells.

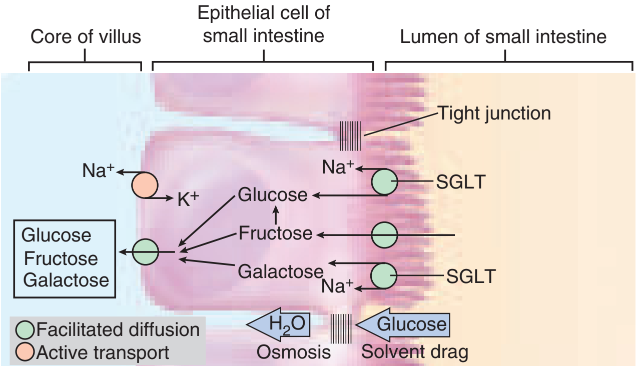


Figure 25.27 **Monosaccharide Absorption by the Small Intestine.** Glucose and galactose are absorbed by the SGLT cotransporter in the apical membrane of the absorptive cell (*right*). Glucose is also absorbed along with water through the paracellular route (between cells) by solvent drag. Fructose is absorbed by a separate facilitated diffusion carrier. Most fructose is converted to glucose within the epithelial cell. The monosaccharides pass through the basal membrane of the cell by facilitated diffusion (*left*).

Insight 25.4 Clinical Application

Lactose Intolerance

Humans are a strange species. Unique among mammals, we go on drinking milk in adulthood, and moreover, we drink the milk of other species! This odd habit is largely limited, however, to Europeans, a few pastoral tribes of Africa, and their descendants. Only they have an ancestral history of milking domestic animals, a practice that goes back about 10,000 years and has coincided with the continued production of lactase into adulthood.

People without lactase have *lactose intolerance.* If they consume milk, lactose passes undigested into the large intestine, increases the osmolarity of the intestinal contents, and causes colonic water retention and diarrhea. In addition, lactose fermentation by intestinal bacteria produces gas, resulting in painful cramps and flatulence.

Lactose intolerance occurs in about 15% of American whites, nearly all people of Asian descent, and about 90% of American blacks, who are predominantly descended from nonpastoral African tribes. People with lactose intolerance can consume products such as yogurt and cheese, in which bacteria have broken down the lactose, and they can digest milk with the aid of lactase drops or tablets.

Proteins

The amino acids absorbed by the small intestine come from three sources: (1) dietary proteins, (2) digestive enzymes digested by each other, and (3) sloughed epithelial cells digested by these enzymes. The endogenous amino acids from the last two sources total about 30 g/day, compared with about 44 to 60 g/day from the diet.

Enzymes that digest proteins are called **proteases (peptidases).** They are absent from the saliva but begin work in the stomach. Here, pepsin hydrolyzes any peptide bond between tyrosine and phenylalanine, thus digesting 10% to 15% of the dietary protein into shorter polypeptides and a small amount of free amino acids (fig. 25.28). Pepsin has an optimal pH of 1.5 to 3.5; thus it is inactivated when it passes into the duodenum and mixes with the alkaline pancreatic juice (pH 8).

In the small intestine, the pancreatic enzymes trypsin and chymotrypsin take over protein digestion by hydrolyzing polypeptides into even shorter oligopeptides. Finally, these are taken apart one amino acid at a time by three more enzymes: (1) **carboxypeptidase** removes amino acids from the –COOH end of the chain; (2) **aminopeptidase** removes them from the $–NH_2$ end; and (3) **dipeptidase** splits dipeptides in the middle and releases the last two free amino acids. All three of these are brush border enzymes, while carboxypeptidase also occurs in the pancreatic juice.

Amino acid absorption is similar to that of monosaccharides. There are several sodium-dependent amino acid cotransporters for different classes of amino acids. Dipeptides and tripeptides can also be absorbed, but they are hydrolyzed within the cytoplasm of the epithelial cells before their amino acids are released to the bloodstream. At the basal surfaces of the cells, amino acids behave like the monosaccharides discussed previously—they leave the cell by facilitated diffusion, enter the capillaries of the villus, and are thus carried away in the hepatic portal circulation.

The absorptive cells of infants can take up intact proteins by pinocytosis and release them to the blood by exocytosis. This allows IgA from breast milk to pass into an infant's bloodstream and confer passive immunity from mother to infant. It has the disadvantage, however, that intact proteins entering the infant's blood are detected as foreign antigens and sometimes trigger food allergies. As the intestine matures, its ability to pinocytose protein declines but never completely ceases.

Lipids

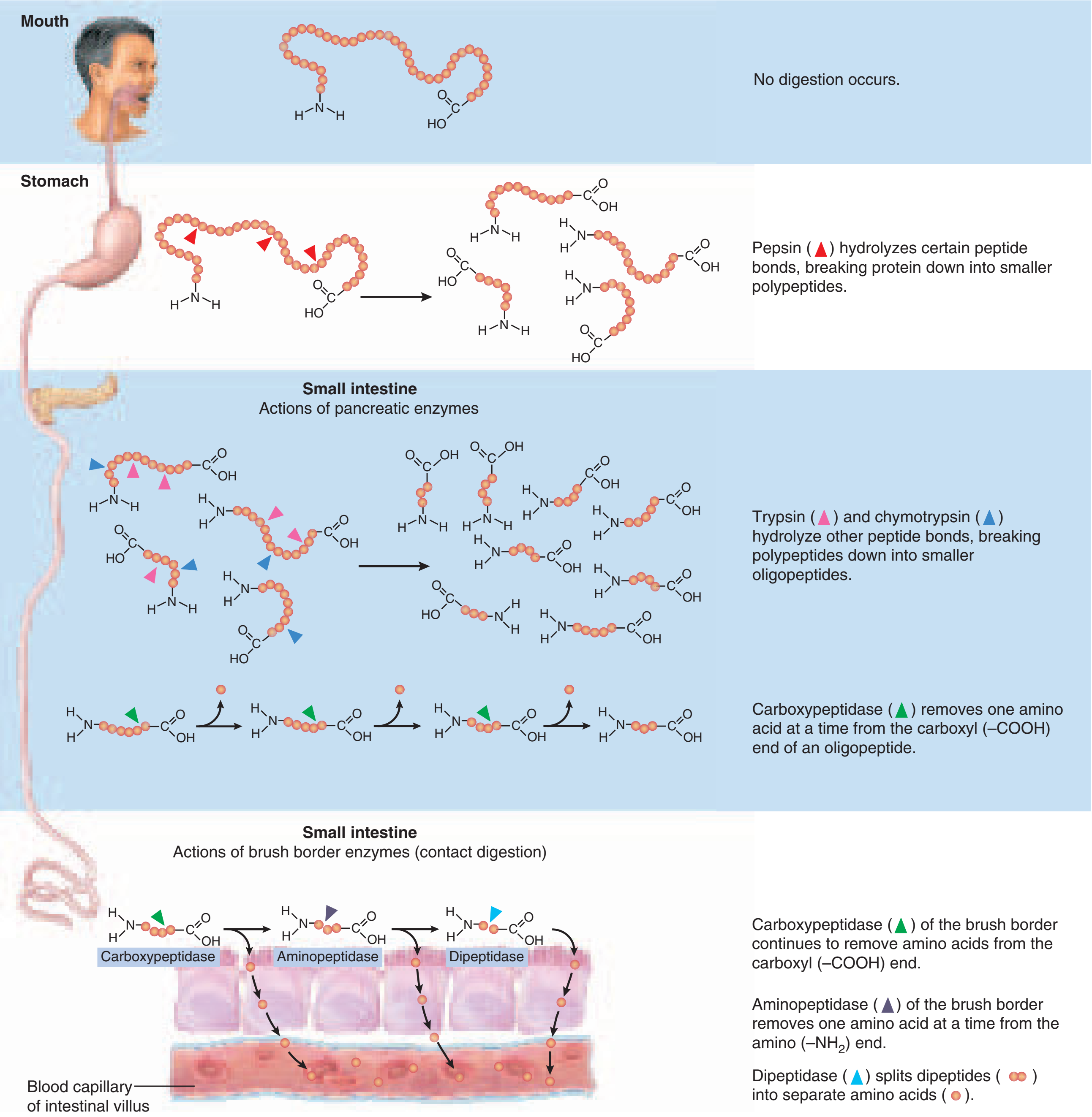
The hydrophobic quality of lipids makes their digestion and absorption more complicated than that of carbohydrates and proteins (fig. 25.29). Fats are digested by enzymes called **lipases.** *Lingual lipase,* secreted by the intrinsic salivary glands of the tongue, is activated by acid in the stomach, where it digests as much as 10% of the ingested fat. In infants, the stomach also secretes *gastric lipase.* Most fat digestion, however, occurs in the small intestine through the action of *pancreatic lipase.*

As chyme enters the duodenum, its fat is in large globules exposed to lipase only at their surfaces. Fat digestion would be rather slow and inefficient if it remained this way. Instead, it is broken up into smaller **emulsification droplets** by certain components of the bile—lecithin (a phospholipid) and bile acids (steroids). These agents have hydrophobic regions attracted to the surface of a fat globule and hydrophilic regions attracted to the surrounding water. The agitation produced by intestinal segmentation breaks the fat up into droplets as small as 1 μm in diameter, and a coating of lecithin and bile acids keeps it broken up, exposing far more of its surface to enzymatic action.

There is enough pancreatic lipase in the small intestine after a meal to digest the average daily fat intake in as little as 1 or 2 minutes. When lipase acts on a triglyceride, it removes the first and third fatty acids from the glycerol backbone and usually leaves the middle one. The products of lipase action are therefore two free fatty acids (FFAs) and a monoglyceride. Bile acids coat these and other lipids and form **micelles**[28] (my-SELLS), droplets about 5 nm in diameter containing bile acids, FFAs, monoglycerides, cholesterol, and fat-soluble vitamins. Micelles pass amid the microvilli of the brush border and release their lipids, which diffuse freely through the plasma membranes (which are themselves mostly lipid) into the absorptive cells. The absorptive cells also have transport proteins that take up cholesterol and fatty acids.

---

[28] *mic* = grain, crumb + *elle* = little


Mouth
H–N–H
HO–C=O
Stomach
Small intestine
Actions of pancreatic enzymes
Small intestine
Actions of brush border enzymes (contact digestion)
Carboxypeptidase
Aminopeptidase
Dipeptidase
Blood capillary of intestinal villus

No digestion occurs.

Pepsin (▲) hydrolyzes certain peptide bonds, breaking protein down into smaller polypeptides.

Trypsin (▲) and chymotrypsin (▲) hydrolyze other peptide bonds, breaking polypeptides down into smaller oligopeptides.

Carboxypeptidase (▲) removes one amino acid at a time from the carboxyl (–COOH) end of an oligopeptide.

Carboxypeptidase (▲) of the brush border continues to remove amino acids from the carboxyl (–COOH) end.

Aminopeptidase (▲) of the brush border removes one amino acid at a time from the amino ($-NH_2$) end.

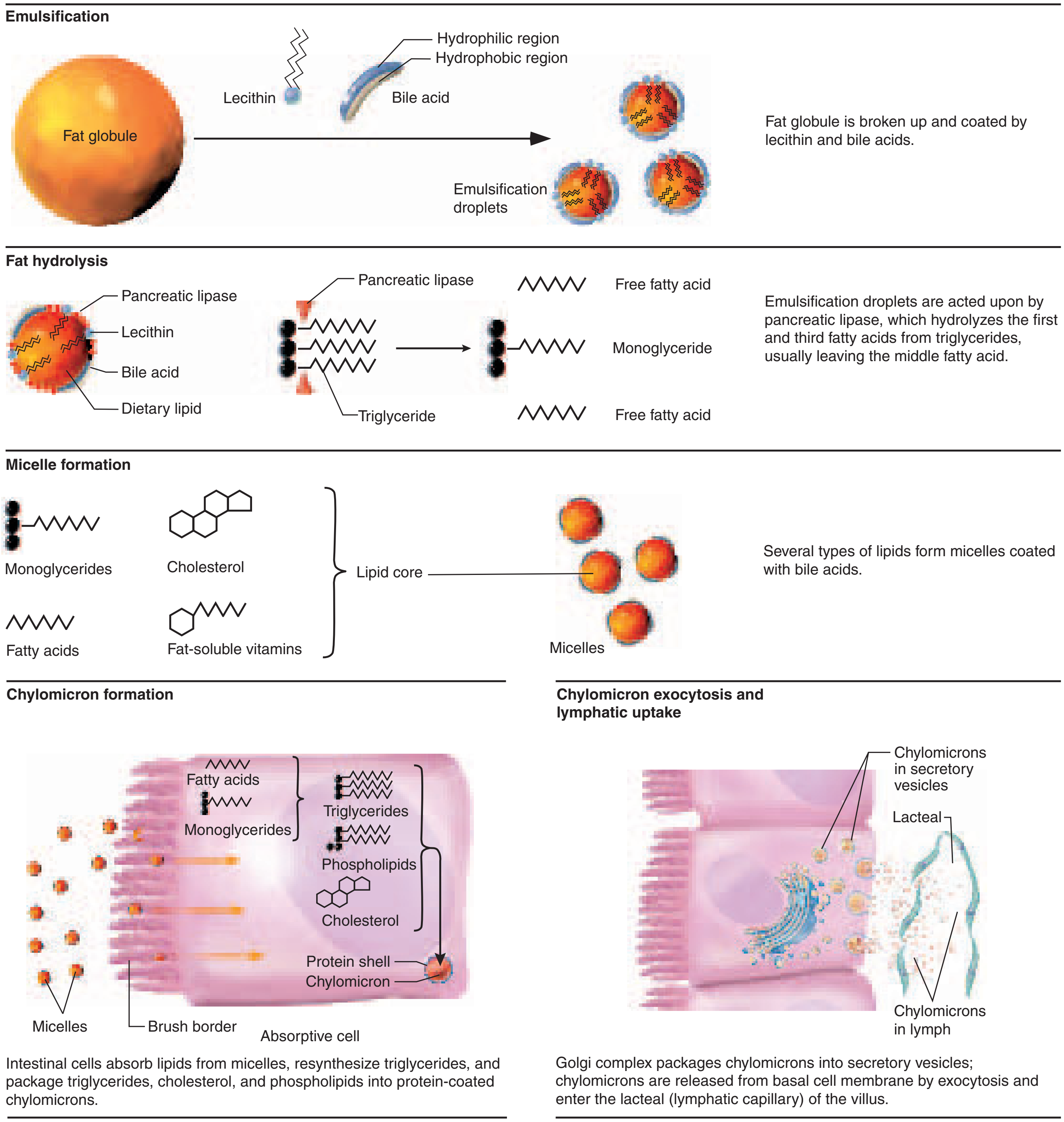
Dipeptidase (▲) splits dipeptides (●●) into separate amino acids (●).

Figure 25.28 **Protein Digestion and Absorption.**

Within the cell, the FFAs and monoglycerides are transported into the smooth endoplasmic reticulum and resynthesized into triglycerides. The Golgi complex combines these with a small amount of cholesterol and coats the complex with a film of phospholipids and protein, forming droplets about 60 to 750 nm in diameter called **chylomicrons**[29] (KY-lo-MY-crons). It packages chylomicrons into secretory vesicles that migrate to the basal surface of the cell and release their contents into the core of

---

[29] *chyl* = juice + *micr* = small



Emulsification

Hydrophilic region
Hydrophobic region
Lecithin
Bile acid
Fat globule
Emulsification droplets

Fat globule is broken up and coated by lecithin and bile acids.

Fat hydrolysis

Pancreatic lipase
Lecithin
Bile acid
Dietary lipid
Pancreatic lipase
Triglyceride
Free fatty acid
Monoglyceride
Free fatty acid

Emulsification droplets are acted upon by pancreatic lipase, which hydrolyzes the first and third fatty acids from triglycerides, usually leaving the middle fatty acid.

Micelle formation

Monoglycerides
Cholesterol
Fatty acids
Fat-soluble vitamins
Lipid core
Micelles

Several types of lipids form micelles coated with bile acids.

Chylomicron formation

Fatty acids
Monoglycerides
Triglycerides
Phospholipids
Cholesterol
Protein shell
Chylomicron
Micelles
Brush border
Absorptive cell

Intestinal cells absorb lipids from micelles, resynthesize triglycerides, and package triglycerides, cholesterol, and phospholipids into protein-coated chylomicrons.

Chylomicron exocytosis and lymphatic uptake

Chylomicrons in secretory vesicles
Lacteal
Chylomicrons in lymph

Golgi complex packages chylomicrons into secretory vesicles; chylomicrons are released from basal cell membrane by exocytosis and enter the lacteal (lymphatic capillary) of the villus.

Figure 25.29 Fat Digestion and Absorption.

the villus. Although some FFAs enter the blood capillaries, chylomicrons are too large to penetrate the endothelium. They are taken up by the more porous lacteal into the lymph. The white, fatty intestinal lymph *(chyle)* flows through larger and larger lymphatic vessels of the mesenteries, eventually reaching the thoracic duct and entering the bloodstream at the left subclavian vein. The further fate of dietary fat is described in chapter 26.

Think About It

Explain why the right lymphatic duct does not empty dietary fat into the bloodstream.

Nucleic Acids

The nucleic acids, DNA and RNA, are present in much smaller quantities than the polymers discussed previously. The **nucleases** (ribonuclease and deoxyribonuclease) of pancreatic juice hydrolyze these to their constituent nucleotides. **Nucleosidases** and **phosphatases** of the brush border then decompose the nucleotides into phosphate ions, ribose (from RNA) or deoxyribose (from DNA), and nitrogenous bases. These products are transported across the intestinal epithelium by membrane carriers and enter the capillary blood of the villus.

Vitamins

Vitamins are absorbed unchanged. The fat-soluble vitamins A, D, E, and K are absorbed with other lipids as just described. Therefore, if they are ingested without fat-containing food, they are not absorbed at all but are passed in the feces and wasted. Water-soluble vitamins (the B complex and vitamin C) are absorbed by simple diffusion, with the exception of vitamin B_{12}. This is an unusually large molecule that can only be absorbed if it binds to intrinsic factor from the stomach. The B_{12}-intrinsic factor complex then binds to receptors on absorptive cells of the distal ileum, where it is taken up by receptor-mediated endocytosis.

Minerals

Minerals (electrolytes) are absorbed along the entire length of the small intestine. Sodium ions are cotransported with sugars and amino acids. Chloride ions are actively transported in the distal ileum by a pump that exchanges them for bicarbonate ions, thus reversing the chloride-bicarbonate exchange that occurs in the stomach. Potassium ions are absorbed by simple diffusion. The K^+ concentration of the chyme rises as water is absorbed from it, creating a gradient favorable to K^+ absorption. In diarrhea, when water absorption is hindered, potassium ions remain in the intestine and pass with the feces; thus chronic diarrhea can lead to hypokalemia.

Iron and calcium are unusual in that they are absorbed in proportion to the body's need, whereas other minerals are absorbed at fairly constant rates regardless of need, leaving it to the kidneys to excrete any excess. The absorptive cells bind ferrous ions (Fe^{2+}) and internalize them by active transport; they are unable to absorb ferric ions (Fe^{3+}). Fe^{2+} is transported to the basal surface of the cell and there taken up by the extracellular protein *transferrin.* The transferrin-iron complex diffuses into the blood and is carried to such places as the bone marrow for hemoglobin synthesis, muscular tissue for myoglobin synthesis, and the liver for storage (see fig. 18.5, p. 687). Excess dietary iron, if absorbed, binds irreversibly to ferritin in the epithelial cell and is held there until that cell sloughs off and passes in the feces.

Think About It

Young adult women have four times as many iron transport proteins in the intestinal mucosa as men have. Can you explain this?

Calcium is absorbed especially by the duodenum and jejunum. Parathyroid hormone induces the kidneys to release active vitamin D (calcitriol), and vitamin D stimulates calcium absorption by the small intestine. Ca^{2+} diffuses through calcium channels into the epithelial cells and binds to a cytoplasmic protein called *calbindin.* At the basal side of the epithelial cell, calcium is pumped out by a calcium-ATPase and a Na^+-Ca^{2+} antiport. Vitamin D works by stimulating the synthesis of both calbindin and calcium-ATPase.

Water

The digestive system is one of several systems involved in water balance. The digestive tract receives about 9 L of water per day—0.7 L in food, 1.6 L in drink, 6.7 L in the gastrointestinal secretions: saliva, gastric juice, bile, pancreatic juice, and intestinal juice. About 8 L of this is absorbed by the small intestine and 0.8 L by the large intestine, leaving 0.2 L voided in the daily fecal output. Water is absorbed by osmosis, following the absorption of salts and organic nutrients that create an osmotic gradient from the intestinal lumen to the ECF.

Diarrhea occurs when the large intestine absorbs too little water. This occurs when the intestine is irritated by bacteria and feces pass through too quickly for adequate reabsorption, or when the feces contain abnormally high concentrations of a solute such as lactose that opposes osmotic absorption of water. *Constipation* occurs when fecal movement is slow, too much water is reabsorbed, and the feces become hardened. This can result from lack of dietary fiber, lack of exercise, emotional upset, or long-term laxative abuse.

Think About It

Magnesium sulfate (epsom salt) is poorly absorbed by the intestines. In light of this, explain why it has a laxative effect.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

21. What three polymers account for most of the dietary calories? What are the end products of enzymatic digestion of each?
22. What two nutrients are digested by saliva? Why is only one of them digested in the mouth?
23. Name as many enzymes of the intestinal brush border as you can, and identify the substrate or function of each.
24. Explain the distinctions between an emulsification droplet, a micelle, and a chylomicron.
25. What happens to digestive enzymes after they have done their job? What happens to dead epithelial cells that slough off the gastrointestinal mucosa? Explain.

The Large Intestine

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the gross anatomy of the large intestine;
- contrast the mucosa of the colon with that of the small intestine;
- state the physiological significance of intestinal bacteria;
- discuss the types of contractions that occur in the colon; and
- explain the neurological control of defecation.

The large intestine (fig. 25.30) receives about 500 mL of indigestible food residue per day, reduces it to about 150 mL of feces by absorbing water and salts, and eliminates the feces by defecation.

Gross Anatomy

The large intestine measures about 1.5 m (5 ft) long and 6.5 cm (2.5 in.) in diameter in the cadaver. It begins with the **cecum,**[30] a blind pouch in the lower right abdominal quadrant inferior to the ileocecal valve. Attached to the lower end of the cecum is the **appendix,** a blind tube 2 to 7 cm long. The appendix is densely populated with lymphocytes and is a significant source of immune cells.

The **colon** is that part of the large intestine between the ileocecal junction and anal canal. It is divided into the ascending, transverse, descending, and sigmoid regions. The **ascending colon** begins at the ileocecal valve and passes up the right side of the abdominal cavity. It makes a 90° turn at the **right colic (hepatic) flexure,** near the right lobe of the liver, and becomes the **transverse colon.** This passes horizontally across the upper abdominal cavity and turns 90° downward at the **left colic (splenic) flexure** near the spleen. Here it becomes the **descending colon,** which passes down the left side of the abdominal cavity. Ascending, transverse, and descending colons thus form a squarish, three-sided frame around the small intestine.

The pelvic cavity is narrower than the abdominal cavity, so at the pelvic inlet the colon turns medially and downward, forming a roughly S-shaped portion called the **sigmoid**[31] **colon.** (Visual examination of this region is performed with an instrument called a *sigmoidoscope.*) In the pelvic cavity, the large intestine straightens and forms the **rectum.**[32] The rectum has three internal transverse folds called **rectal valves** that enable it to retain feces while passing gas.

The final 3 cm of the large intestine is the **anal canal** (fig. 25.30*b*), which passes through the levator ani muscle of the pelvic floor and terminates at the anus. Here, the mucosa forms longitudinal ridges called **anal columns** with depressions between them called **anal sinuses.** As feces pass through the canal, they press against the sinuses and cause them to exude extra mucus and lubricate the canal during defecation. Large **hemorrhoidal veins** form superficial plexuses in the anal columns and around the orifice. Unlike veins in the extremities, they lack valves and are particularly subject to distension and venous pooling. *Hemorrhoids* are permanently distended veins that protrude into the anal canal or form bulges distal to the anus.

The muscularis externa of the colon is unusual in that its longitudinal fibers do not encircle the colon but are divided into three ribbonlike strips called the **teniae coli** (TEE-nee-ee CO-lye). The muscle tone of the teniae coli contracts the colon lengthwise and causes its wall to form pouches called **haustra**[33] (HAW-stra; singular, *haustrum*). In the rectum and anal canal, however, the longitudinal muscle forms a continuous sheet and haustra are absent. The anus, like the urethra, is regulated by two sphincters—an **internal anal sphincter** composed of smooth muscle of the muscularis externa and an **external anal sphincter** composed of skeletal muscle of the pelvic diaphragm.

The ascending and descending colon are retroperitoneal, whereas the transverse and sigmoid colon are covered with serosa and anchored to the dorsal abdominal wall by the mesocolon. The serosa of these regions often has **epiploic**[34] **appendages,** clublike fatty pouches of peritoneum of unknown function.

---

[30] *cec* = blind

[31] *sigm* = sigma or S + *oid* = resembling

[32] *rect* = straight

[33] *haustr* = to draw

[34] *epiploic* = pertaining to an omentum

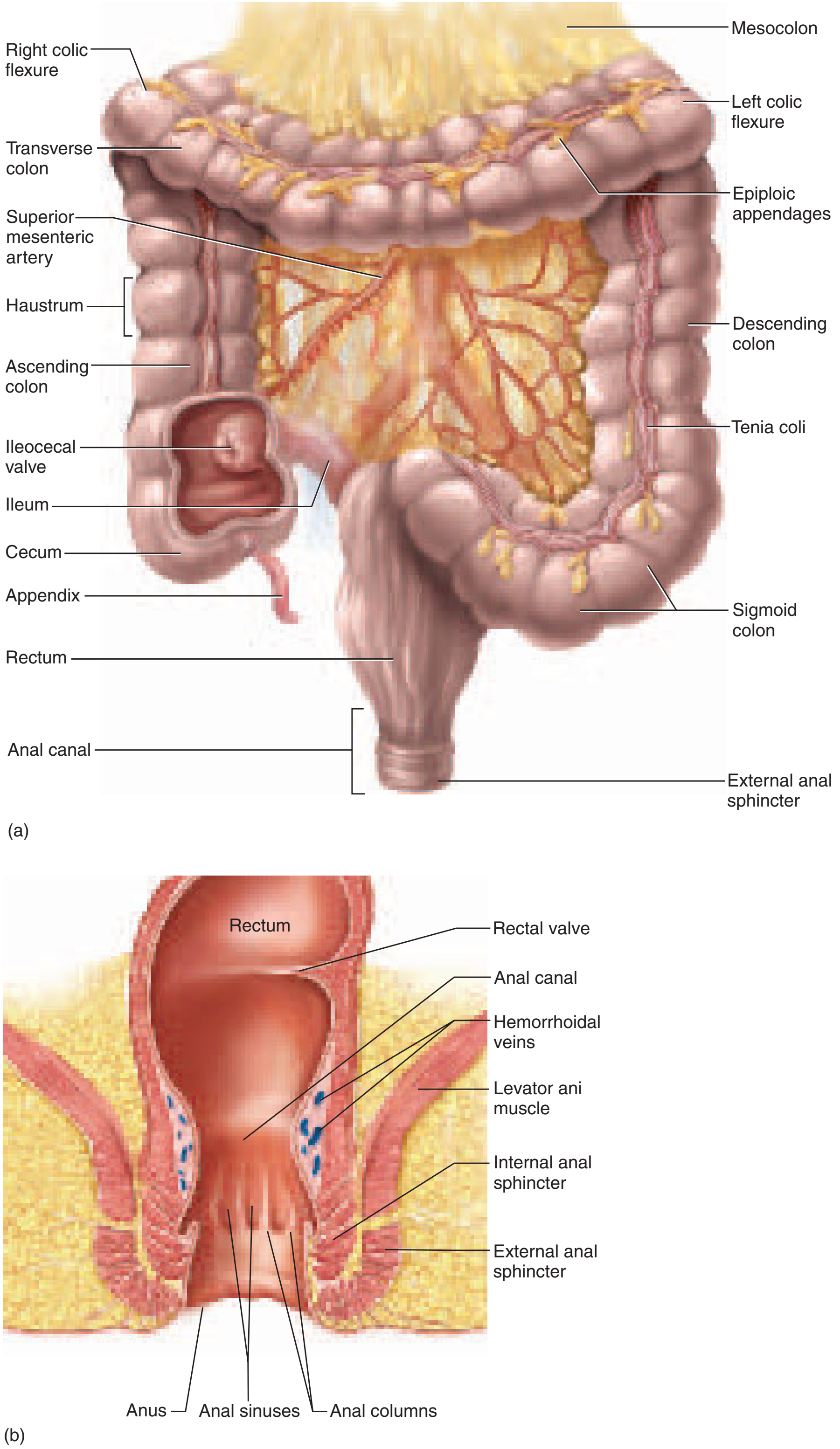

Right colic flexure
Transverse colon
Superior mesenteric artery
Haustrum
Ascending colon
Ileocecal valve
Ileum
Cecum
Appendix
Rectum
Anal canal
Mesocolon
Left colic flexure
Epiploic appendages
Descending colon
Tenia coli
Sigmoid colon
External anal sphincter
(a)
Rectum
Rectal valve
Anal canal
Hemorrhoidal veins
Levator ani muscle
Internal anal sphincter
External anal sphincter
Anus
Anal sinuses
Anal columns
(b)

Figure 25.30 **The Large Intestine.** (*a*) Gross anatomy. (*b*) Detail of the anal canal.
Which anal sphincter is controlled by the autonomic nervous system? Which is controlled by the somatic nervous system?

Microscopic Anatomy

The mucosa of the large intestine has a simple columnar epithelium in all regions except the lower half of the anal canal, where it has a nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelium. The latter provides more resistance to the abrasion caused by the passage of feces. There are no circular folds or villi in the large intestine, but there are intestinal crypts. They are deeper than in the small intestine and have a greater density of goblet cells; mucus is their only significant secretion.

The anatomical features of the digestive tract from the large intestine to the anus are summarized in table 25.5.

Bacterial Flora and Intestinal Gas

The large intestine is densely populated with several species of bacteria collectively called the **bacterial flora.**[35] They ferment cellulose, other undigested carbohydrates, and fats and synthesize B vitamins and vitamin K, which are absorbed by the colon. This vitamin K is especially important because the diet alone usually does not provide enough to ensure adequate blood clotting.

The average person expels about 500 mL of **flatus** (gas) per day. Most of this is swallowed air that has worked its way through the digestive tract, but the bacterial flora add to it. Painful cramping can result when undigested nutrients pass into the colon and furnish an abnormal substrate for bacterial action—for example, in lactose intolerance. Flatus is composed of nitrogen (N_2), carbon dioxide (CO_2), hydrogen (H_2), methane (CH_4), hydrogen sulfide (H_2S), and two amines: indole and skatole. Indole, skatole, and H_2S produce the odor of flatus and feces, whereas the others are odorless. The hydrogen gas is combustible and has been known to explode in surgery that used electrical cauterization.

Table 25.5 Anatomical Checklist of the Digestive System from the Large Intestine Through the Anus

- Cecum
- Appendix
- Ascending colon
- Right colic flexure
- Transverse colon
- Left colic flexure
- Descending colon
- Sigmoid colon
- Rectum
  - Rectal valves
- Anal canal
  - Internal anal sphincter
  - External anal sphincter
  - Anal columns
  - Anal sinuses
  - Hemorrhoidal veins
- Teniae coli
- Haustra
- Epiploic appendages
- Mesocolon

Absorption and Motility

The large intestine takes about 12 to 24 hours to reduce the residue of a meal to feces. It does not chemically change the residue but reabsorbs water and electrolytes (especially NaCl) from it. The feces consist of about 75% water and 25% solids. The solids are about 30% bacteria, 30% undigested dietary fiber, 10% to 20% fat, and smaller amounts of protein, sloughed epithelial cells, salts, mucus, and other digestive secretions. The fat is not from the diet but from broken-down epithelial cells and bacteria.

The most common type of colonic motility is a type of segmentation called **haustral contractions,** which occur about every 30 minutes. Distension of a haustrum with feces stimulates it to contract. This churns and mixes the residue, promotes water and salt absorption, and passes the residue distally to another haustrum. Stronger contractions called **mass movements** occur one to three times a day, last about 15 minutes, and move residue for several centimeters at a time. They are often triggered by the **gastrocolic** and **duodenocolic reflexes,** in which filling of the stomach and duodenum stimulates motility of the colon. Mass movements occur especially in the transverse to sigmoid colon, and often within an hour after breakfast.

Defecation

Stretching of the rectum stimulates the defecation reflexes, which account for the urge to defecate that is often felt soon after a meal. The predictability of this response is useful in house-training pets and toilet-training children. In the **intrinsic defecation reflex,** stretch signals travel by the myenteric nerve plexus to the muscularis of the descending and sigmoid colons and the rectum. This triggers a peristaltic wave that drives feces downward, and it relaxes the internal anal sphincter. Defecation occurs only if the external anal sphincter is voluntarily relaxed at the same time.

The intrinsic reflex is relatively weak and usually requires the cooperative action of a stronger **parasympathetic defecation reflex** involving the spinal cord. As shown in figure 25.31, this reflex involves three processes: (1) Stretching of the rectum sends signals to the sacral segments of the spinal cord. (2) The spinal cord returns signals by way of the parasympathetic fibers in the pelvic nerves to the rectum, thus intensifying rectal peristalsis. (3) At the same time, parasympathetic fibers relax the internal anal sphincter to allow the passage of feces.

The external anal sphincter, being composed of skeletal muscle, is under voluntary control, enabling us to limit defecation to appropriate circumstances (step 4 in fig. 25.31). As involuntary contractions of the rectum push the feces downward, voluntary contractions of the levator ani pull the anal canal upward and allow the feces to fall away. Defecation is also aided by the Valsalva maneuver, which increases abdominal pressure, compresses the rectum, and squeezes the feces from it. This maneuver can also initiate the defecation reflex by forcing feces from the descending colon into the rectum.

---

[35] *flora* = flowers, plants

If the defecation urge is suppressed, contractions cease in a few minutes and the rectum relaxes. The defecation reflexes reoccur a few hours later or when another mass movement propels more feces into the rectum.

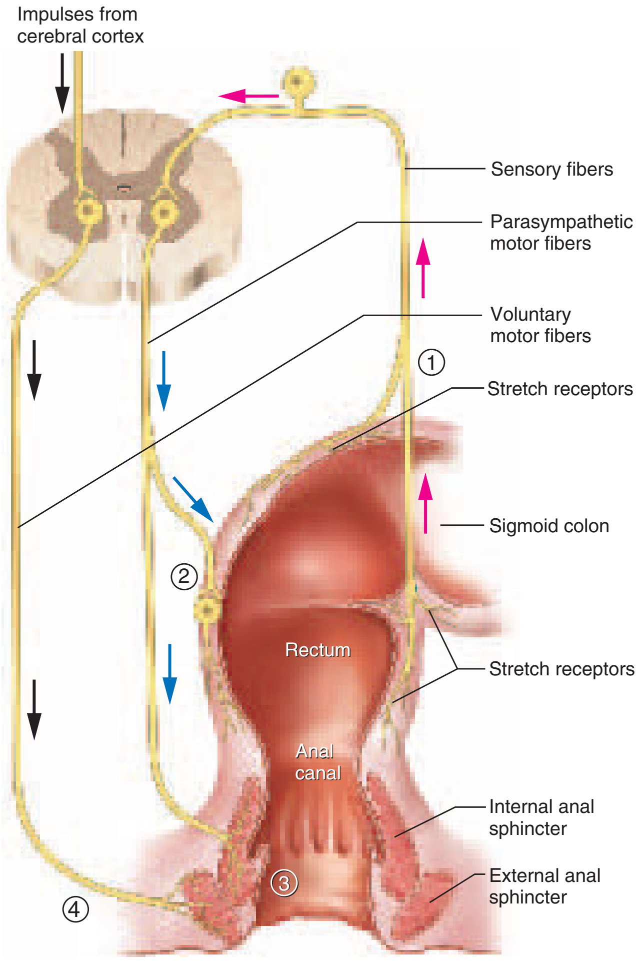


Figure 25.31 **Neural Control of Defecation.** (*1*) Filling of the rectum with feces stimulates stretch receptors, which transmit impulses to the spinal cord. (*2*) A spinal reflex stimulates contractions of the rectum and relaxation of the internal anal sphincter. (*3*) Defecation normally does not occur unless voluntary impulses relax the external anal sphincter.

The effects of aging on the digestive system are discussed on page 1112. Table 25.6 lists and describes some common digestive disorders.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

26. How does the mucosa of the large intestine differ from that of the small intestine? How does the muscularis externa differ?
27. Name and briefly describe two types of contractions that occur in the colon and nowhere else in the alimentary canal.
28. Describe the reflexes that cause defecation in an infant. Describe the additional neural controls that function following toilet-training.

Insight 25.5 Medical History

The Man with a Hole in His Stomach

Perhaps the most famous episode in the history of digestive physiology began in 1822 on Mackinac Island in the strait between Lake Michigan and Lake Huron. Alexis St. Martin, a 19-year-old fur trapper, was standing outside a trading post when he was accidentally hit by a shotgun blast from 3 feet away. An Army doctor stationed at Fort Mackinac, William Beaumont (1785–1853), was summoned to examine St. Martin. As Beaumont later wrote, "a portion of the lung as large as a turkey's egg" protruded through St. Martin's lacerated and burnt flesh. Below that was a portion of the stomach with a puncture in it "large enough to receive my forefinger." Beaumont did his best to pick out bone fragments and dress the wound, though he did not expect St. Martin to survive.

Surprisingly, St. Martin lived. Over a period of months the wound extruded pieces of bone, cartilage, gunshot, and gun wadding. As the wound healed, a fistula (hole) remained in the stomach, so large that Beaumont had to cover it with a compress to prevent food from coming out. A fold of tissue later grew over the fistula, but it was easily opened. A year later, St. Martin was still feeble. Town authorities decided they could no longer support him on public funds and wanted to ship him 2,000 miles to his home in Canada. Beaumont, however, was imbued with a passionate sense of destiny. Very little was known about digestion, and he saw the accident as a unique opportunity to learn. He took St. Martin in at his personal expense and performed 238 experiments on him over several years. Beaumont had never attended medical school and had little idea how scientists work, yet he proved to be an astute experimenter. Under crude frontier conditions and with almost no equipment, he discovered many of the basic facts of gastric physiology discussed in this chapter.

"I can look directly into the cavity of the stomach, observe its motion, and almost see the process of digestion," Beaumont wrote. "I can pour in water with a funnel and put in food with a spoon, and draw them out again with a siphon." He put pieces of meat on a string into the stomach and removed them hourly for examination. He sent vials of gastric juice to the leading chemists of America and Europe, who could do little but report that it contained hydrochloric acid. He proved that digestion required HCl and could even occur outside the stomach, but he found that HCl alone did not digest meat; gastric juice must contain some other digestive ingredient. Theodor Schwann, one of the founders of the cell theory (see chapter 3), identified that ingredient

Table 25.6 Some Digestive System Diseases

Acute pancreatitis	Severe pancreatic inflammation perhaps caused by trauma leading to leakage of pancreatic enzymes into parenchyma, where they digest tissue and cause inflammation and hemorrhage.
Appendicitis	Inflammation of the appendix, with swelling, pain, and sometimes gangrene, perforation, and peritonitis.
Ascites	Accumulation of serous fluid in the peritoneal cavity, often causing extreme distension of the abdomen. Most often caused by cirrhosis of the liver (see chapter 26) and frequently associated with alcoholism. The diseased liver “weeps” fluid into the abdomen. About 25% of people who develop ascites as a consequence of cirrhosis die within one year.
Cancers	Digestive system is subject to cancer especially of the esophagus, stomach, colon, liver, and pancreas, with colon and pancreatic cancer being among the leading causes of cancer death in the United States.
Crohn disease	Inflammation of small and large intestines, similar to ulcerative colitis. Produces granular lesions and fibrosis of intestine, diarrhea, and lower abdominal pain. Often hereditary.
Diverticulitis	Presence of inflamed herniations (outpocketings, diverticula) of the colon, associated especially with low-fiber diets. Diverticula may rupture, leading to peritonitis.
Dysphagia	Difficulty swallowing. Can result from esophageal obstructions (tumors, constrictions) or impaired peristalsis (due to neuromuscular disorders).
Hiatal hernia	Protrusion of part of the stomach into the thoracic cavity, where the negative thoracic pressure may cause it to balloon. Often causes gastroesophageal reflux (especially when a person is supine) and esophagitis (inflammation of the esophagus).
Ulcerative colitis	Chronic inflammation resulting in ulceration of the large intestine, especially the sigmoid colon and rectum. Tends to be hereditary but exact causes are not well known.

Disorders described elsewhere

Constipation	973
Dental caries	946
Diarrhea	973
Gallstones	962
Gastroesophageal reflux	948
Gingivitis	946
Hemorrhoids	974
Hepatic cirrhosis	1012
Hepatitis	1012
Impacted molars	944
Lactose intolerance	970
Peptic ulcer	956
Periodontal disease	946

as pepsin. Beaumont also demonstrated that gastric juice is secreted only in response to food; it did not accumulate between meals as previously thought. He disproved the idea that hunger is caused by the walls of the empty stomach rubbing against each other.

For his part, St. Martin felt helpless and humiliated by Beaumont’s experiments. His fellow trappers taunted him as “the man with a hole in his stomach,” and he longed to return to hunting and trapping in the wilderness. He had a wife and daughter in Canada whom he rarely got to see, and he ran away repeatedly to join them. He was once gone for 4 years before his poverty and physical disability made him yield to Beaumont’s financial enticement to come back. Beaumont despised St. Martin for his drunkenness and profanity and was quite insensitive to St. Martin’s embarrassment and discomfort over the experiments. Yet St. Martin’s temper enabled Beaumont to make the first direct observations of the relationship between emotion and digestion. When St. Martin was particularly distressed, Beaumont noted little digestion occurring—as we now know, the sympathetic nervous system inhibits digestive activity.

Beaumont published a book in 1833 that laid the foundation for modern gastric physiology and dietetics. It was enthusiastically received by the medical community and had no equal until Russian physiologist Ivan Pavlov (1849–1936) performed his celebrated experiments on digestion in animals. Building on the methods pioneered by Beaumont, Pavlov received the 1904 Nobel Prize for Physiology or Medicine.

In 1853, Beaumont slipped on some ice, suffered a blow to the base of his skull, and died a few weeks later. St. Martin continued to tour medical schools and submit to experiments by other physiologists, whose conclusions were often less correct than Beaumont’s. Some, for example, attributed chemical digestion to lactic acid instead of hydrochloric acid. St. Martin lived in wretched poverty in a tiny shack with his wife and several children and died 28 years after Beaumont. By then he was senile and believed he had been to Paris, where Beaumont had often promised to take him.

Connective Issues

Interactions Between the DIGESTIVE SYSTEM and Other Organ Systems

← indicates ways in which this system affects other systems

→ indicates ways in which other systems affect this one

All Systems

← The digestive system provides all other systems with nutrients in a form usable for cellular metabolism and building of tissues

Integumentary System

→ Skin plays a role in the synthesis of calcitriol, needed for calcium and phosphorus absorption by the small intestine

Skeletal System

← Small intestine adjusts calcium absorption in proportion to the needs of the skeletal system

→ Provides protective enclosure for some digestive organs, support for the teeth, and movements of mastication

Muscular System

← Liver disposes of lactic acid generated by muscles, thus promoting recovery from fatigue

→ Essential for chewing, swallowing, and voluntary control of defecation; abdominal muscles protect lower GI organs

Nervous System

→ Enteric and autonomic nervous systems regulate GI motility and secretion; somatic nervous system controls chewing, swallowing, and defecation; sense organs involved in food selection and ingestion; hypothalamus contains centers for hunger, thirst, and satiety

Endocrine System

← Liver degrades hormones; enteroendocrine cells produce many hormones

→ Hormones regulate GI motility, secretion, and processing of absorbed nutrients

Circulatory System

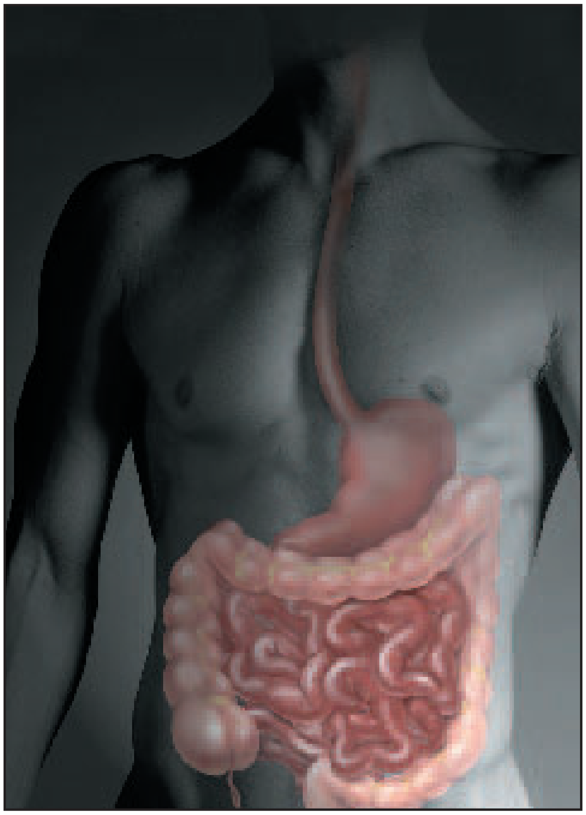
← Digestive tract absorbs fluid needed to maintain blood volume; liver degrades heme from dead erythrocytes, secretes clotting factors, albumin, and other plasma proteins, and regulates blood glucose level; intestinal epithelium stores and releases iron as needed for erythropoiesis

→ Blood transports hormones that regulate GI activity; absorbs and distributes nutrients; vasomotion alters capillary filtration and salivation

Lymphatic/Immune Systems

← GI mucosa is a site of lymphocyte production; acid, lysozyme, and other digestive enzymes provide nonspecific defense against pathogens; infant intestine absorbs maternal IgA to confer passive immunity on infant

→ Lymphatic capillaries (lacteals) absorb digested lipids; immune cells protect GI tract from infection



Respiratory System

← Pressure of digestive organs against diaphragm aids in expiration when abdominal muscles contract

→ Provides O_2, removes CO_2; Valsalva maneuver aids defecation

Urinary System

← Intestines complement kidneys in water and electrolyte reabsorption; liver carries out last step before kidneys in calcitriol synthesis; liver synthesizes urea and kidneys excrete it

→ Excretes bile pigments and other products of liver metabolism; completes the synthesis of calcitriol, needed for intestinal absorption of calcium and phosphorus

Reproductive System

← Provides nutrients for fetal growth

→ Developing fetus crowds digestive organs; may cause constipation and heartburn during pregnancy

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

General Anatomy and Digestive Processes (p. 940)

1. The digestive system processes food, extracts nutrients, and eliminates the residue. It does this in four stages: ingestion, digestion (mechanical and chemical), absorption, and defecation.
2. The *digestive tract* is essentially a tube consisting of the oral cavity, pharynx, esophagus, stomach, and small and large intestines. The *accessory organs* are the teeth, tongue, salivary glands, liver, gallbladder, and pancreas.
3. In most areas, the wall of the digestive tract consists of an inner *mucosa,* a *submucosa,* a *muscularis externa,* and an outer *serosa.* In some areas a connective tissue *adventitia* replaces the serosa.
4. The *enteric nervous system* regulates much of digestive activity and consists of two nerve networks in the wall of the digestive tract: the *submucosal plexus* and the *myenteric plexus.*
5. In the abdominal cavity, the *dorsal mesentery* suspends the digestive tract from the body wall, wraps around it to form the serosa, and in some places continues as a *ventral mesentery.* The ventral mesentery includes the *greater* and *lesser omenta* and the *mesocolon.*
6. Digestive tract motility and secretion are regulated by hormones such as *gastrin* and *secretin,* paracrines such as *histamine* and *prostaglandins, short (myenteric) reflexes,* and *long (vagovagal) reflexes.*

The Mouth Through Esophagus (p. 943)

1. The mouth (oral cavity) serves for ingestion, sensory responses to food, mastication, chemical digestion, deglutition, speech, and respiration.
2. The mouth extends from the oral orifice anteriorly to the fauces posteriorly. Its anatomical elements include the lips, cheeks, tongue, hard and soft palates, teeth, and intrinsic salivary glands (table 25.1). It also receives saliva from three pairs of extrinsic salivary glands: parotid, sublingual, and submandibular.
3. Mastication breaks food into pieces small enough to be swallowed and exposes more food surface to the action of digestive enzymes, making digestion more efficient.
4. Saliva moistens the mouth, digests starch and fat, cleanses the teeth, inhibits bacterial growth, dissolves taste molecules, and binds food into a soft *bolus* to facilitate swallowing. It contains amylase, lipase, mucus, lysozyme, IgA, and electrolytes.
5. Salivation is controlled by *salivatory nuclei* in the medulla oblongata and pons and occurs in response to the thought, odor, sight, taste, or oral feel of food.
6. The pharynx is a muscular funnel in the throat where the respiratory and digestive tracts meet. Its wall contains three sets of *pharyngeal constrictor* muscles that aid in swallowing.
7. The esophagus extends from the pharynx to the *cardiac orifice* of the stomach. It is lined with a nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelium, has a mixture of skeletal muscle (dominating the upper esophagus) and smooth muscle (dominating the lower), and is lubricated by mucous *esophageal glands* in the submucosa.
8. *Deglutition* (swallowing) requires the coordinated action of numerous muscles and is integrated by the *swallowing center* of the medulla oblongata and pons. It entails a *buccal phase* involving the tongue and a *pharyngeal-esophageal phase* involving the palate, infrahyoid muscles, and muscularis externa of the esophagus, among other structures.
9. Food and drink normally drop into the stomach by gravity alone, but esophageal peristalsis, mediated by the myenteric nerve plexus, can help drive food to the stomach.

The Stomach (p. 949)

1. The stomach is primarily a food-storage organ, with a capacity of 4 L. It extends from the cardiac orifice above to the pylorus below (table 25.4).
2. The stomach wall is marked by *gastric pits,* with two or three tubular glands opening into the bottom of each pit. Most of the stomach has digestive *gastric glands,* whereas the cardiac and pyloric regions have mucous *cardiac glands* and *pyloric glands.* These various glands contain mucous, regenerative, parietal, chief, and enteroendocrine cells.
3. The stomach mechanically breaks up food, begins the chemical digestion of proteins, and converts ingested food to soupy *chyme.*
4. *Gastric juice* consists mainly of water, HCl, and pepsin.
5. The parietal cells secrete HCl, which activates pepsin and lingual lipase, breaks up ingested plant and animal tissues, converts dietary Fe^{3+} into absorbable Fe^{2+}, and destroys ingested pathogens.
6. The parietal cells also secrete *intrinsic factor,* which is required for vitamin B_{12} absorption. This is the only function of the stomach that is indispensable to life. Without intrinsic factor, a vitamin B_{12} deficiency occurs and leads to pernicious anemia.
7. The chief cells secrete *pepsinogen,* a zymogen (inactive enzyme precursor) which HCl converts to *pepsin,* a protein-digesting enzyme. In infants, the chief cells also secrete the fat-digesting enzyme *gastric lipase* and the milk-curdling secretion *chymosin (rennin).*
8. Enteroendocrine cells of the stomach secrete several chemical messengers, including a variety of *gut-brain peptides,* which coordinate different regions of the digestive tract with each other.
9. Movements of the stomach begin with the *receptive-relaxation*

response as it accommodates swallowed food, and progress to peristaltic waves that mix and break up the contents. Peristalsis drives the semidigested food, or *chyme,* a little at a time through the pylorus into the duodenum.

10. The stomach digests some protein and small amounts of fat and carbohydrate. It absorbs some drugs, but no significant nutrients.
11. The stomach is protected from its own acid and enzymes by its mucous coat, rapid epithelial cell replacement, and tight junctions between the epithelial cells.
12. In the *cephalic phase* of gastric activity, mental and sensory stimuli lead to stimulation of gastric secretion and motility through the vagus nerves.
13. In the *gastric phase,* swallowed food and semidigested protein stimulate gastric activity through short and long reflexes. The neurotransmitter acetylcholine, the paracrine histamine, and the hormone gastrin stimulate the secretion of HCl, intrinsic factor, and pepsin in this phase.
14. In the *intestinal phase,* chyme in the duodenum stimulates hormonal and nervous reflexes that initially stimulate the stomach, but soon activate an *enterogastric reflex* that inhibits it. Duodenal enteroendocrine cells secrete *secretin, cholecystokinin,* and *gastric inhibitory peptide,* all of which suppress gastric activity so that the stomach does not load chyme into the duodenum too rapidly.

The Liver, Gallbladder, and Pancreas (p. 958)

1. The liver is the body's largest gland. It has four conspicuous lobes, each composed of innumerable microscopic, cylindrical *lobules* of liver cells *(hepatocytes).* The hepatocytes add some substances to the blood and remove others from it as the blood filters through the *hepatic sinusoids* between them.
2. Bile, secreted by the liver, fills the *bile duct* and *gallbladder.* The gallbladder concentrates the bile.
3. Bile is composed of water, minerals, cholesterol, fats, phospholipids, bile pigments, and bile acids. Most of these are body wastes. Bile pigments cause the brown color of the feces.
4. Bile acids and lecithin (a phospholipid) aid fat digestion; this is the liver's only digestive role.
5. The pancreas produces the hormones insulin and glucagon, and about 1.2 to 1.5 L of pancreatic juice per day. It secretes pancreatic juice through a duct that joins the bile duct before emptying into the duodenum.
6. Pancreatic juice contains sodium bicarbonate, which neutralizes stomach acid, and several digestive enzymes or enzyme precursors *(zymogens).* The pancreatic enzymes secreted in active form are pancreatic amylase (which digests starch), pancreatic lipase (which digests fat), ribonuclease (which digests RNA), and deoxyribonuclease (which digests DNA). Those secreted as zymogens and activated in the small intestine are trypsin, chymotrypsin, and carboxypeptidase, all of which digest proteins.
7. Bile and pancreatic juice are secreted in response to vagal stimulation, cholecystokinin, gastrin, and secretin.

The Small Intestine (p. 964)

1. The small intestine begins at the pylorus (gateway from the stomach) and ends at the ileocecal junction (gateway to the large intestine). It consists of the duodenum (25 cm), jejunum (2.5 m), and ileum (3.6 m).
2. To carry out its digestive and nutrient-absorbing roles, the small intestine has a very large internal surface area stemming from its great length and three kinds of mucosal elaborations: the circular folds, villi, and microvilli.
3. Villi are covered with an epithelium of absorptive cells and goblet cells. Each villus contains a lipid-collecting lymphatic capillary called the *lacteal.* Glandular *intestinal crypts* open onto the floor of the intestine between the villi. The crypt epithelium is composed of absorptive and goblet cells, stem cells, and bacteria-fighting *Paneth cells.*
4. The enzymes that carry out intestinal digestion occur mostly in the brush borders of the absorptive cells and in the pancreatic juice.
5. Movements of the small intestine include chopping *segmentation* contractions and overlapping waves of peristalsis called the *migrating motor complex.*

Chemical Digestion and Absorption (p. 968)

1. Salivary amylase begins digesting starch in the mouth and continues in the stomach until a food bolus breaks up and exposes the amylase to the hydrochloric acid. Starch digestion resumes in the small intestine by the action of pancreatic amylase, which breaks it down into oligosaccharides and maltose.
2. The brush border enzymes dextrinase, glucoamylase, and maltase finish digesting the breakdown products of starch, while sucrase and lactase break down the disaccharides sucrose and lactose.
3. The resulting monosaccharides (glucose, galactose, and fructose) are absorbed by the sodium-glucose transport protein, by a fructose carrier, and by solvent drag, then pass into the blood capillaries of the villus.
4. Protein digestion begins with the action of pepsin in the stomach and is continued by trypsin and chymotrypsin in the small intestine. The resulting small peptides are dissembled one amino acid at a time by brush border enzymes carboxypeptidase, aminopeptidase, and dipeptidase.
5. The amino acids are absorbed by sodium-dependent cotransport proteins, then pass into the blood capillaries of the villus.
6. Fat digestion is begun by lingual lipase in the saliva and continued, in infants, by gastric lipase in the stomach, but most fat is digested by pancreatic lipase in the small intestine.
7. Bile acids and lecithin help break fat into *emulsification droplets,* exposing more surface area to the action of lipase. Lipase hydrolyzes triglycerides into free fatty acids and monoglycerides.
8. These breakdown products, along with cholesterol and fat-soluble vitamins, then collect in small bile-salt-coated droplets called *micelles.* Micelles release the lipids into the intestinal absorptive cells.
9. The absorptive cells resynthesize triglycerides and package them, with cholesterol, into droplets called *chylomicrons,* coated with phospholipid and protein.
10. Chylomicrons are secreted from the basal surface of the absorptive cells

and taken into the lacteal in the villus. They enter the bloodstream at the subclavian veins, where the lymph empties into the blood.

11. Dietary DNA and RNA are hydrolyzed into nucleotides by deoxyribonuclease and ribonuclease. Brush border nucleosidases and phosphatases then decompose these into ribose, deoxyribose, phosphate, and nitrogenous bases, which are absorbed into the blood capillaries of the villus.
12. Vitamins are not digested, but are absorbed unchanged. Fat-soluble vitamins are absorbed with other dietary lipids; most water-soluble vitamins by simple diffusion; and vitamin B_{12} binds to intrinsic factor and is then absorbed by receptor-mediated endocytosis.
13. Minerals are absorbed by cotransport with sugars and amino acids (Na^+), by active transport (Cl^-, Fe^{2+}), and by simple diffusion (K^+, Ca^{2+}).
14. Water is absorbed by osmosis, following an osmotic gradient created by the absorption of salts and organic nutrients.

The Large Intestine (p. 974)

1. The large intestine is about 1.5 m long and consists of the *cecum;* the *ascending, transverse, descending,* and *sigmoid colon; rectum;* and *anal canal.* The anal canal has an involuntary *internal anal sphincter* of smooth muscle and a voluntary *external anal sphincter* of skeletal muscle.
2. The large intestine absorbs water and salts from the indigestible food residue and reduces the residue to feces.
3. Movements of the large intestine include frequent *haustral contractions* that move the feces only a short distance distally, and one to three daily *mass movements* that move the feces several centimeters.
4. Stretching of the rectum triggers the *intrinsic defecation reflex,* mediated by the myenteric nerve plexus. This reflex drives feces downward and relaxes the internal anal sphincter. A stronger *parasympathetic defecation reflex* involves a reflex arc through the spinal cord and parasympathetic fibers of the pelvic nerve.
5. These reflexes tend to cause defecation, although in individuals with bowel control, voluntary control of the external anal sphincter permits or prohibits defecation at will.

Selected Vocabulary

enteric nervous system	941
gingiva	944
dentin	946
enamel	946
bolus	948
peristalsis	948
chyme	950
pyloric sphincter	950
gastric gland	952
pepsin	954
gastrin	957
secretin	958
cholecystokinin	958
gastric inhibitory peptide	958
hepatocyte	960
hepatic sinusoid	960
bile	962
trypsin	962
amylase	962
lipase	962
duodenum	964
jejunum	964
ileum	964
villus	965
intestinal crypt	965
chylomicron	971
colon	974
anal sphincters	974
defecation reflex	976

Testing Your Recall

1. Which of the following enzymes acts in the stomach?
   a. chymotrypsin
   b. lingual lipase
   c. carboxypeptidase
   d. enterokinase
   e. dextrinase

2. Which of the following enzymes does *not* digest any nutrients?
   a. chymotrypsin
   b. lingual lipase
   c. carboxypeptidase
   d. enterokinase
   e. dextrinase

3. Which of the following is *not* an enzyme?
   a. chymotrypsin
   b. enterokinase
   c. secretin
   d. pepsin
   e. nucleosidase

4. The substance in question 3 that is *not* an enzyme is
   a. a zymogen.
   b. a nutrient.
   c. an emulsifier.
   d. a neurotransmitter.
   e. a hormone.

5. The lacteals absorb
   a. chylomicrons.
   b. micelles.
   c. emulsification droplets.
   d. amino acids.
   e. monosaccharides.

6. All of the following contribute to the absorptive surface area of the small intestine *except*
   a. its length.
   b. the brush border.
   c. haustra.
   d. circular folds.
   e. villi.

7. Which of the following is a periodontal tissue?
   a. the gingiva
   b. the enamel
   c. the cementum
   d. the pulp
   e. the dentin

8. The ______ of the stomach most closely resemble the ______ of the small intestine.
   a. gastric pits, intestinal crypts
   b. pyloric glands, intestinal crypts
   c. rugae, Peyer patches
   d. parietal cells, goblet cells
   e. gastric glands, duodenal glands

9. Which of the following cells secrete digestive enzymes?
   a. chief cells
   b. mucous neck cells
   c. parietal cells
   d. goblet cells
   e. enteroendocrine cells

10. What phase of gastric regulation includes inhibition by the enterogastric reflex?
    a. the intestinal phase
    b. the gastric phase
    c. the buccal phase
    d. the cephalic phase
    e. the pharyngo-esophageal phase
11. Cusps are a feature of the ______ surfaces of the molars and premolars.
12. The acidity of the stomach deactivates ______ but activates ______ of the saliva.
13. The ______ salivary gland is named for its proximity to the ear.
14. The submucosal and myenteric nerve plexuses collectively constitute the ______ nervous system.
15. Nervous stimulation of gastrointestinal activity is mediated mainly through the parasympathetic fibers of the ______ nerves.
16. Food in the stomach causes G cells to secrete ______, which in turn stimulates the secretion of HCl and pepsinogen.
17. Hepatic macrophages occur in blood-filled spaces of the liver called ______.
18. The brush border enzyme that finishes the job of starch digestion, producing glucose, is called ______. Its substrate is ______.
19. Fats are transported in the lymph and blood in the form of droplets called ______.
20. Within the absorptive cells of the small intestine, ferritin binds the nutrient ______.

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. Fat is not digested until it reaches the duodenum.
2. A tooth is composed mostly of enamel.
3. Hepatocytes secrete bile into the hepatic sinusoids.
4. Cholecystokinin stimulates the release of bile into the duodenum.
5. Peristalsis is controlled by the myenteric nerve plexus.
6. Pepsinogen, trypsinogen, and procarboxypeptidase are enzymatically inactive zymogens.
7. The absorption of dietary iron depends on intrinsic factor.
8. Filling of the stomach stimulates contractions of the colon.
9. The duodenum secretes a hormone that inhibits contractions of the stomach.
10. Tight junctions of the small intestine prevent anything from leaking between the epithelial cells.

Answers in Appendix B

Chapter 25

Testing Your Comprehension

1. A physician plans to attend a cocktail party, but he is also on call that night and must avoid intoxication. Therefore he drinks a glass of cream just before leaving for the party. Explain.
2. Which of these do you think would have the most severe effect on digestion: surgical removal of the stomach, gallbladder, or pancreas? Explain.
3. What do carboxypeptidase and aminopeptidase have in common? Identify as many differences between them as you can.
4. What do micelles and chylomicrons have in common? Identify as many differences between them as you can.
5. Explain why most dietary lipids must be absorbed by the lacteals rather than by the blood capillaries of a villus.

Answers at the Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Legend Questions

25.5 The first and second premolars and the third molar

25.10 Blockage of the mouth by the root of the tongue and blockage of the nose by the soft palate

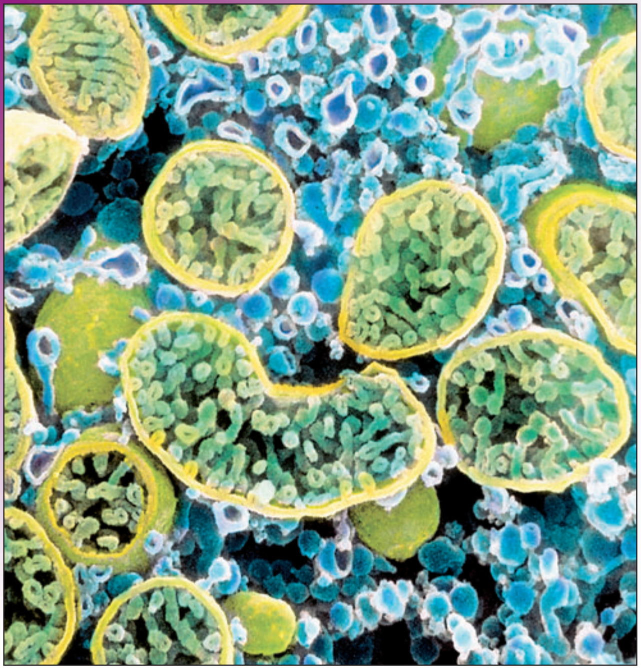
25.13 It exchanges H^+ for K^+ (H^+-K^+ ATPase is an active transport pump).

25.19 From the hepatic artery and the hepatic portal vein

25.30 The autonomic nervous system controls the internal anal sphincter and the somatic nervous system controls the external anal sphincter.

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.



Mitochondria (*green*) and smooth endoplasmic reticulum in a cell of the ovary (SEM)

CHAPTER 26

Nutrition and Metabolism

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Nutrition 986
- Body Weight and Energy Balance 986
- Appetite 986
- Calories 988
- Nutrients 988
- Carbohydrates 988
- Lipids 990
- Proteins 992
- Minerals and Vitamins 994

Carbohydrate Metabolism 996
- Glucose Catabolism 996
- Glycolysis 997
- Anaerobic Fermentation 998
- Aerobic Respiration 998
- Overview of ATP Production 1001
- Glycogen Metabolism 1002
- Functions of the Liver 1003

Lipid and Protein Metabolism 1004
- Lipids 1004
- Proteins 1005

Metabolic States and Metabolic Rate 1007
- The Absorptive State 1007
- The Postabsorptive State 1008
- Metabolic Rate 1008

Body Heat and Thermoregulation 1009
- Body Temperature 1009
- Heat Production and Loss 1009
- Thermoregulation 1010
- Disturbances of Thermoregulation 1011

Chapter Review 1013

INSIGHTS

26.1 **Clinical Application:** Obesity 987
26.2 **Evolutionary Medicine:** Evolution of the Sweet Tooth 990
26.3 **Clinical Application:** Predigested Protein and Athletic Performance 993
26.4 **Clinical Application:** Alcohol and Alcoholism 1011

Brushing Up

To understand this chapter, it is important that you understand or brush up on the following concepts:

- Metabolism, catabolism, and anabolism (p. 70)
- Oxidation and reduction (pp. 70–71)
- Saturated and unsaturated fats (pp. 75–76)
- Structure and functions of ATP (p. 85)
- Receptor-mediated endocytosis (p. 112)
- Insulin and glucagon (pp. 650–651)

Nutrition is the starting point and basis for all human form and function. From the time a single-celled, fertilized egg divides in two, nutrition provides the matter needed for cell division, growth, and development. It is the source of fuel that provides the energy for all biological work and of the raw materials for replacement of worn-out biomolecules and cells. The fact that it provides only the *raw* materials means, further, that chemical change—metabolism—lies at the foundation of form and function. In chapter 25, we saw how the digestive system breaks nutrients down into usable form and absorbs them into the blood and lymph. We now consider these nutrients in more depth, follow their fate after absorption, and explore related issues of metabolism and body heat.

Nutrition

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe some factors that influence hunger and satiety;
- define *nutrient* and list the six major categories of nutrients;
- state the function of each class of macronutrients, the approximate amounts required in the diet, and some major dietary sources of each;
- name the blood lipoproteins, state their functions, and describe how they differ from each other; and
- name the major vitamins and minerals required by the body and the general functions they serve.

Body Weight and Energy Balance

The subject of nutrition quickly brings to mind the subject of body weight and the popular desire to control it. Weight is determined by the body's energy balance—if energy intake and output are equal, body weight is stable. We gain weight if intake exceeds output and lose weight if output exceeds intake. Although weight is determined by this ratio, it remains quite stable over many years' time and seems to have a homeostatic set point. This has been experimentally demonstrated in animals. If an animal is force-fed until it becomes obese and then allowed to feed at will, it voluntarily reduces its intake and quickly returns to its former weight. Similarly, if an animal is undernourished until it loses much of its weight and then allowed to feed at will, it increases its intake and again returns quickly to its former weight.

In humans the set point varies greatly from person to person and body weight results from a combination of hereditary and environmental influences. From studies of identical twins and other people, it appears that about 30% to 50% of the variation in human weight is due to heredity, and the rest to environmental factors such as eating and exercise habits.

Appetite

The struggle for weight control often seems to be a struggle against the appetite, but despite decades of research, we are still far from a complete understanding of how appetite is regulated. In the 1940s, it was discovered that a region in the lateral area of the hypothalamus seems to trigger the desire for food. When this **feeding center** is destroyed in animals, they exhibit drastic **anorexia**[1] (loss of appetite) and starve to death if not force-fed. It was recently discovered that, at least in rats, this area of the hypothalamus secretes a hormone named *orexin,* which rises during fasting and stimulates intense hunger. The ventromedial hypothalamus has a **satiety center;** damage here causes **hyperphagia**[2] (overeating) and extreme obesity (fig. 26.1).

There are multiple hypotheses on the regulation of hunger and body weight, and they are not mutually exclusive. According to the *glucostat hypothesis,* the satiety center has neurons called **glucostats** that rapidly absorb glucose after a meal and send inhibitory signals to the feeding center, thus temporarily suppressing the appetite. According to the *lipostat hypothesis,* adipocytes secrete a protein hormone called **leptin.**[3] The greater the body's fat stores, the more leptin is secreted. Leptin reduces food intake, partly by inhibiting the synthesis of an appetite stimulant called neuropeptide Y. It also inhibits the storage of additional fat and thus reduces the amount of weight gained for a given caloric intake (see insight 26.1). A reduction in body fat lowers leptin levels, so there is less to suppress the appetite and food intake increases, returning the body weight toward a hereditary set point.

Another family of appetite stimulants is the *endocannabinoids.* The tetrahydrocannabinol (THC) in marijuana is similar to endocannabinoids, explaining its appetite-stimulating effect. One of leptin's mechanisms for appetite suppression is to lower the endocannabinoid level in the hypothalamus. Another appetite suppressant is the protein cholecystokinin (CCK), introduced in chapter 25. Fats and amino acids stimulate the duodenum to secrete CCK, and CCK suppresses the appetite by stimulating both the brain and digestive organs.

Think About It

Suppose leptin or CCK could be economically produced and packaged as tablets to be taken orally. Would this be an effective diet drug? Why or why not?

Other factors influence appetite in ways similar to the control of thirst (see p. 917). Merely chewing and swallowing food briefly satisfies the appetite, even if the food is removed through an esophageal fistula (opening) before

---

[1] *an* = without + *orexia* = appetite
[2] *hyper* = excessive + *phagia* = eating
[3] *lept* = thin + *in* = protein

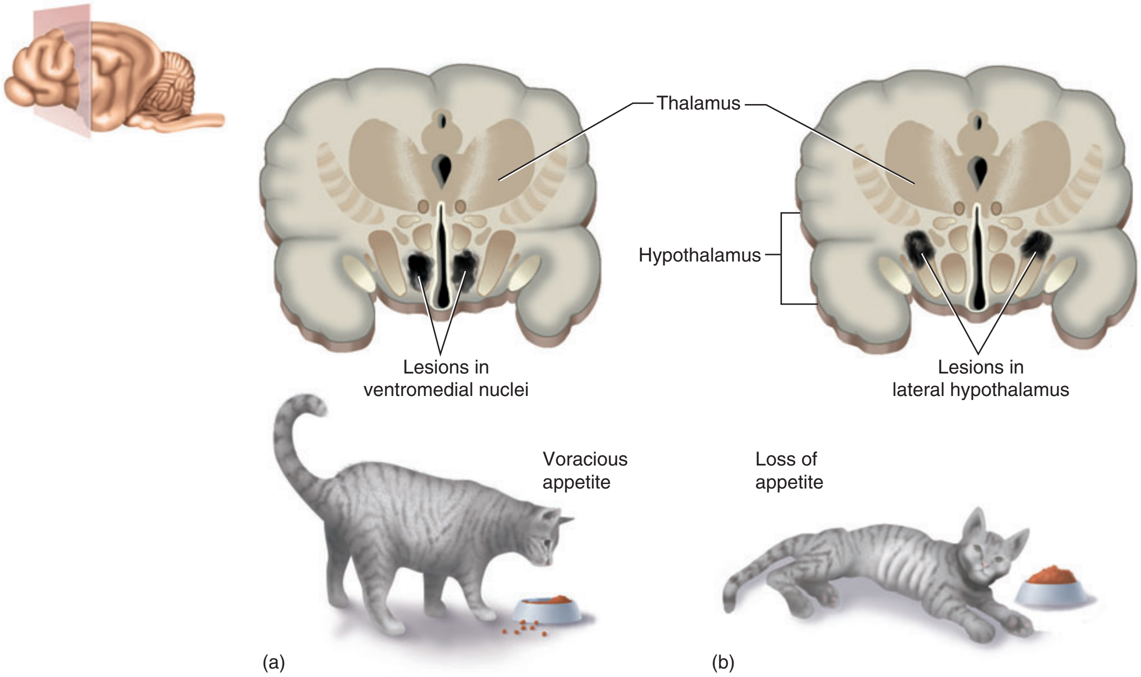

Thalamus
Hypothalamus
Lesions in ventromedial nuclei
Lesions in lateral hypothalamus
Voracious appetite
Loss of appetite
(a)
(b)

Figure 26.1 **Experimental Identification of Appetite-Controlling Regions of the Hypothalamus.** (*a*) Destruction of the ventromedial nuclei destroys the sense of satiety and results in extreme overeating. (*b*) Destruction of the lateral hypothalamus destroys the sense of hunger and results in extreme weight loss.

reaching the stomach. Inflating the stomach with a balloon inhibits hunger even in an animal that has not actually swallowed any food.

Hunger is stimulated partly by gastric peristalsis. Mild **hunger contractions** begin soon after the stomach is emptied and increase in intensity over a period of hours. They can become quite a painful and powerful incentive to eat, yet they do not affect the amount of food consumed—this remains much the same even when nervous connections to the stomach and intestines are severed to cut off all conscious perception of hunger contractions.

All of this is certainly far from the whole story. Hunger and satiety are regulated by a complex interaction of multiple brain centers, genes, hormones, and sensory and motor pathways that are still being experimentally revealed. Experimental lesions disrupt multiple pathways and may produce abnormal feeding behavior for a variety of reasons.

Appetite is not merely a question of *how much* but also *what kind* of food is consumed. Even animals shift their diets from one kind of food to another, apparently because some foods provide nutrients that others do not. In humans, different neurotransmitters also seem to govern the appetite for different classes of nutrients. For example, norepinephrine stimulates the appetite for carbohydrates, galanin for fatty foods, and endorphins for protein.

Insight 26.1 Clinical Application

Obesity

Obesity is clinically defined as a weight more than 20% above the recommended norm for one's age, sex, and height. The National Institutes of Health estimate that 50% of people living in the United States are overweight and one-third are clinically obese. To judge whether you are one of them, you can calculate your *body mass index (BMI).* If W is your weight in kilograms and H is your height in meters, BMI $= W/H^2$. (English-metric conversion factors can be found inside the back cover of this book.) A BMI of 20 to 25 kg/m^2 is considered to be optimal for most people. A BMI over 27 kg/m^2 is considered overweight, and above 30 kg/m^2 is considered obese.

Excess weight shortens life expectancy and increases a person's risk of atherosclerosis, hypertension, diabetes mellitus, joint pain and degeneration, kidney stones, and gallstones; cancer of the breast, uterus, and liver in women; and cancer of the colon, rectum, and prostate gland in men. The excess thoracic fat in obese people interferes with breathing and results in increased blood P_{CO_2}, sleepiness, and reduced vitality. Obesity is also a significant obstacle to successful surgery.

A predisposition to obesity is often established by overfeeding in infancy and childhood. During childhood, consumption of excess calories causes the adipocytes to increase in size and number—that is, adipose tissue grows by both hypertrophy and hyperplasia. In adulthood, adipocytes do not divide except in some extreme weight gains; their number remains constant while weight gains and losses result from changes in cell size.

As so many dieters learn, it is very difficult to substantially reduce one's adult weight. Most diets are unsuccessful over the long run as dieters lose and regain the same weight over and over. There are several theories and perhaps equally as many contributing factors for obesity, ranging from psychological to genetic. In the mid-1990s, new genes and hormones were discovered that regulate body weight in mice. The obesity gene *(ob)* in mice codes for leptin. Mice homozygous for defective *ob* genes are deficient in leptin and overeat until they weigh as much as three times normal. Leptin injections cause these mice to slim down markedly. The *db* gene in mice codes for the leptin receptor. Homozygous defective *db* genes also cause obesity. In this case, leptin level is high but the leptin is ineffective in controlling weight. Leptin injections do not cause these mice to lose weight.

Another mouse gene, *UCP2,* codes for proteins that cause more dietary calories to be converted to heat instead of ATP synthesis, so animals have to burn more calories to meet their ATP needs and thus store fewer calories as fat. Mutations in genes like these might explain why some people gain more weight than others from the same amount of food.

Leptin and other recent discoveries briefly raised high hopes of weight-controlling injections for humans, but the relationship of leptin to human obesity has proven to be much different from that seen in mice in some ways. No hormonal treatment for human obesity has emerged yet, but this is a highly active area of biomedical research today, and much more will undoubtedly be known even before this brief summary is published.

Calories

One calorie is the amount of heat that will raise the temperature of 1g of water 1°C. One thousand calories is called a Calorie (capital *C*) in dietetics and a **kilocalorie** (kcal) in biochemistry. The relevance of calories to physiology is that they are a measure of the capacity to do biological work.

Nearly all dietary calories come from carbohydrates, proteins, and fats. Carbohydrates and proteins yield about 4 kcal/g when they are completely oxidized, and fats yield about 9 kcal/g. Some foods such as sugar and alcohol are said to provide "empty calories" because they provide nothing useful except for calories (see insight 26.4, p. 1011). By suppressing the appetite but failing to provide other nutrients the body requires, they can contribute to malnutrition. In sound nutrition, the body's energy needs are met by more complex foods that simultaneously meet the need for proteins, lipids, vitamins, and other nutrients.

When a chemical is described as **fuel** in this chapter, we mean it is oxidized solely or primarily to extract energy from it. The extracted energy is usually used to make adenosine triphosphate (ATP), which then transfers the energy to other physiological processes (see fig. 2.30).

Nutrients

A **nutrient** is any ingested chemical that is used for growth, repair, or maintenance of the body. Nutrients fall into six major classes: water, carbohydrates, lipids, proteins, minerals, and vitamins (table 26.1). Water, carbohydrates, lipids, and proteins are considered **macronutrients** because they must be consumed in relatively large quantities. Minerals and vitamins are called **micronutrients** because only small quantities are required.

Recommended daily allowances (RDAs) of nutrients were first developed in 1943 by the National Research Council and National Academy of Sciences; they have been revised several times since. An RDA is a liberal but safe estimate of the daily intake that would meet the nutritional needs of most healthy people. Consuming less than the RDA of a nutrient does not necessarily mean you will be malnourished, but the probability of malnutrition increases in proportion to the amount of the deficit and how long it lasts.

Many nutrients can be synthesized by the body when they are unavailable from the diet. The body is incapable, however, of synthesizing minerals, most vitamins, eight of the amino acids, and one to three of the fatty acids. These are called **essential nutrients** because it is essential that they be included in the diet.

Carbohydrates

A well-nourished adult has about 440 g of carbohydrate in the body, most of it in three places: about 325 g of muscle glycogen, 90 to 100 g of liver glycogen, and 15 to 20 g of blood glucose.

Sugars function as a structural component of other molecules including nucleic acids, glycoproteins, glycolipids, ATP, and related nucleotides (GTP, cAMP, etc.), and they can be converted to amino acids and fats. Most of the body's carbohydrate, however, serves as fuel—an easily oxidized source of chemical energy. Most cells meet their energy needs from a combination of carbohydrates and fats, but some cells, such as neurons and erythrocytes, depend almost exclusively on carbohydrates. Even a brief period of **hypoglycemia**[4] (deficiency of blood glucose) causes nervous system disturbances felt as weakness or dizziness.

Blood glucose concentration is therefore carefully regulated, mainly through the interplay of insulin and glucagon (see chapter 17 and later in this chapter). Among other effects, these hormones regulate the balance between glycogen and free blood glucose. If blood glucose concentration drops too low, the body draws on its stores of glycogen to meet its energy needs. If glycogen stores are depleted, physical endurance is greatly reduced. Thus it is important to consume enough carbohydrate to ensure that the body maintains adequate stores of glycogen for periods of exercise and fasting (including sleep).

Carbohydrate intake also influences the metabolism of other nutrients. Excess carbohydrate is converted to fat

---

[4] *hypo* = below normal + *glyc* = sugar + *emia* = blood condition

Table 26.1 Nutrient Classes and Their Principal Functions

Nutrient	Daily Requirement	Representative Functions
Water	2.5 L	Solvent; coolant; reactant or product in many metabolic reactions (especially hydrolysis and condensation); dilutes and eliminates metabolic wastes; supports blood volume and pressure
Carbohydrates	125–175 g	Fuel; a component of nucleic acids, ATP and other nucleotides, glycoproteins, and glycolipids
Lipids	80–100 g	Fuel; plasma membrane structure; myelin sheaths of nerve fibers; hormones; eicosanoids; bile salts; insulation; protective padding around organs; absorption of fat-soluble vitamins; vitamin D synthesis; some blood-clotting factors
Proteins	44–60 g	Muscle contraction; ciliary and flagellar motility; structure of cellular membranes and extracellular material; enzymes; major component of connective tissues; transport of plasma lipids; some hormones; oxygen binding and transport pigments; blood-clotting factors; blood viscosity and osmolarity; antibodies; immune recognition; neuromodulators; buffers; emergency fuel
Minerals	0.05–3,300 mg	Structure of bones and teeth; component of some structural proteins, hormones, ATP, phospholipids, and other chemicals; cofactors for many enzymes; electrolytes; oxygen transport by hemoglobin and myoglobin; buffers; stomach acid; osmolarity of body fluids
Vitamins	0.002–60 mg	Coenzymes for many metabolic pathways; antioxidants; component of visual pigment; one hormone (vitamin D)

and conversely, fat is oxidized as fuel when glucose and glycogen levels are too low to meet our energy needs. This is why the consumption of starchy and sugary foods has a pronounced effect on body weight. It is unwise, however, to try to "burn off fat" by excessively reducing carbohydrate intake. As shown later in this chapter, the complete and efficient oxidation of fats depends on adequate carbohydrate intake and the presence of certain intermediates of carbohydrate metabolism. If these are lacking, fats are incompletely oxidized to ketone bodies, which may cause metabolic acidosis.

Requirements

Because carbohydrates are rapidly oxidized, they are required in greater amounts than any other nutrient. The RDA is 125 to 175 g. The brain alone consumes about 120 g of glucose per day. Most Americans get about 40% to 50% of their calories from carbohydrates, but highly active people should get up to 60%.

Carbohydrate consumption in the United States has become excessive over the past century due to a combination of fondness for sweets, increased use of sugar in processed foods, and reduced physical activity (see insight 26.2). A century ago, Americans consumed an average of 1.8 kg (4 lb) of sugar per year. Now, with sucrose and high-fructose corn syrup so widely used in foods and beverages, the average American ingests 200 to 300 g of carbohydrate per day and the equivalent of 27 kg (60 lb) of table sugar and 21 kg (46 lb) of corn syrup per year. A single nondiet soft drink contains 38 to 43 g (about 8 teaspoons) of sugar per 355 mL (12 oz) serving.

Dietary carbohydrates come in three principal forms: monosaccharides, disaccharides, and polysaccharides (complex carbohydrates). The only nutritionally significant polysaccharide is starch. Although glycogen is a polysaccharide, only trivial amounts of it are present in cooked meats. Cellulose, another polysaccharide, is not considered a nutrient because it is not digested and never enters the human tissues. Its importance as dietary fiber, however, is discussed shortly.

The three major disaccharides are sucrose, lactose, and maltose. The monosaccharides—glucose, galactose, and fructose—arise mainly from the digestion of starch and disaccharides. The small intestine and liver convert fructose and galactose to glucose, so ultimately all carbohydrate digestion generates glucose. Outside of the hepatic portal system, glucose is the only monosaccharide present in the blood in significant quantity; thus it is known as *blood sugar.* Its concentration is normally maintained at 70 to 110 mg/dL in peripheral venous blood.

Think About It

Glucose concentration is about 15 to 30 mg/dL higher in arterial blood than in venous blood. Explain why.

Ideally, most carbohydrate intake should be in the form of complex carbohydrates, primarily starch. This is partly because foods that provide starch also usually provide other nutrients. Simple sugars not only provide empty calories but also promote tooth decay. A typical American, however, now obtains only 50% of his or her carbohydrates from starch and the other 50% from sucrose and corn syrup.

Insight 26.2 Evolutionary Medicine

Evolution of the Sweet Tooth

Our craving for sugar doubtlessly originated in our prehistoric ancestors. Not only did they have to work much harder to survive than we do, but high-calorie foods were scarce in their environment and people were at constant risk of starvation. Those who were highly motivated to seek and consume sugary, high-calorie foods passed their "sweet tooth" on to us, their descendents—along with a similarly adaptive appetite for other rare but vital nutrients, namely fat and salt. The tastes that were essential to our ancestors' survival can now be a disadvantage in a culture where salty, fatty, and sugary foods are all too easy to obtain and the food industry is eager to capitalize on these tastes.

Dietary Sources

Nearly all dietary carbohydrates come from plants—particularly grains, legumes, fruits, and root vegetables. Sucrose is refined from sugarcane and sugar beets. Fructose is present in fruits and corn syrup. Maltose is present in some foods such as germinating cereal grains. Lactose is the most abundant solute in cow's milk (about 4.6% lactose by weight).

Fiber

Dietary fiber refers to all fibrous materials of plant and animal origin that resist digestion. Most is plant matter—the carbohydrates cellulose and pectin and such noncarbohydrates as gums and lignin. Although it is not a nutrient, fiber is an essential component of the diet. The recommended daily allowance is about 30 g, but average intake varies greatly from country to country—from 40 to 150 g/day in India and Africa to only 12 g/day in the United States.

Fiber in the intestines absorbs water, swells, softens the stool, and increases its bulk by 40% to 100%. The last effect stretches the colon and stimulates peristalsis, thereby quickening the passage of feces from the colon. A low-fiber diet increases the risk of colon cancer.

Pectin is a **water-soluble fiber** found in oats, beans, peas, carrots, brown rice, and fruits. Soluble fiber reduces blood cholesterol and low-density lipoprotein (LDL) levels (see insight 19.5, p. 741). Cellulose, hemicellulose, and lignin, called **water-insoluble fibers,** apparently have no effect on cholesterol or LDLs. While a certain amount of fiber is beneficial to the health, you should not ingest too much. Excess fiber interferes with the absorption of iron, calcium, magnesium, phosphorus, and some trace elements.

Lipids

The reference male and female are, respectively, about 15% and 25% fat by weight. Fat accounts for most of the body's stored energy. Lesser amounts of phospholipid, cholesterol, and other lipids also play vital structural and physiological roles.

A well-nourished adult meets 80% to 90% of his or her resting energy needs from fat. Fat is superior to carbohydrates for energy storage for two reasons: (1) carbohydrates are hydrophilic, absorb water, and thus expand and occupy more space in the tissues. Fat, however, is hydrophobic, contains almost no water, and is a more compact energy storage substance. (2) Fat is less oxidized than carbohydrate and contains over twice as much energy (9 kcal/g of fat compared with 4 kcal/g of carbohydrate). A man's typical fat reserves contain enough energy for 119 hours of running, whereas his carbohydrate stores would suffice for only 1.6 hours.

Fat has **glucose-sparing** and **protein-sparing effects**—as long as enough fat is available to meet the energy needs of the tissues, protein is not catabolized for fuel and glucose is spared for consumption by cells that cannot use fat, such as neurons.

Vitamins A, D, E, and K are fat-soluble vitamins, which depend on dietary fat for their absorption by the intestine. People who ingest less than 20 g of fat per day are at risk of vitamin deficiency because there is not enough fat in the intestine to transport these vitamins into the body tissues.

Phospholipids and cholesterol are major structural components of plasma membranes and myelin. Cholesterol is also important as a precursor of steroid hormones, bile acids, and vitamin D. Thromboplastin, an essential blood-clotting factor, is a lipoprotein. Two fatty acids—arachidonic acid and linoleic acid—are precursors of prostaglandins and other eicosanoids.

In addition to its metabolic and structural roles, fat has important protective and insulating functions described under adipose tissue in chapter 5.

Requirements

Fat should account for no more than 30% of your daily caloric intake; no more than 10% of your fat intake should be saturated fat; and average cholesterol intake should not exceed 300 mg/day (one egg yolk contains about 240 mg). A typical American consumes 30 to 150 g of fat per day, obtains 40% to 50% of his or her calories from fat, and ingests twice as much cholesterol as the recommended limit.

Most fatty acids can be synthesized by the body. **Essential fatty acids** are those we cannot synthesize and therefore must obtain from the diet. These include linoleic acid and possibly linolenic and arachidonic acids; there are differences of opinion about the body's ability to synthesize the last two. As long as 1% to 2% of the total energy intake comes from linoleic acid, people do not develop signs of essential fatty acid deficiency. In the typical Western diet, linoleic acid provides about 6% of the energy.

Sources

Saturated fats are predominantly of animal origin. They occur in meat, egg yolks, and dairy products but also in some plant products such as coconut and palm oil (common in nondairy coffee creamers and other products). Processed foods such as hydrogenated oils and vegetable shortening are also high in saturated fat, which is therefore abundant in many baked goods. Unsaturated fats predominate in nuts, seeds, and most vegetable oils. The essential fatty acids are amply provided by the vegetable oils in mayonnaise, salad dressings, and margarine and by whole grains and vegetables.

The richest source of cholesterol is egg yolks, but it is also prevalent in milk products, shellfish (especially shrimp), organ meats such as kidneys, liver, and brains, and other mammalian meat. Cholesterol does not occur in foods of plant origin. It must be noted, however, that saturated fat stimulates cholesterol synthesis. A food may be truthfully advertised as cholesterol-free, but if it is high in saturated fat it can nevertheless raise your blood cholesterol level. Excessive consumption of saturated and unsaturated fats is a risk factor for diabetes mellitus, cardiovascular disease, and breast and colon cancer.

Cholesterol and Serum Lipoproteins

Lipids are an important part of the diet and must be transported to all cells of the body, yet they are hydrophobic and will not dissolve in the aqueous blood plasma. This problem is overcome by complexes called **lipoproteins**—tiny droplets with a core of cholesterol and triglycerides and a coating of proteins and phospholipids. The coating not only enables the lipids to remain suspended in the blood, but also serves as a recognition marker for cells that absorb them.

Lipoproteins are classified into four major categories (and some lesser ones) by their density: **chylomicrons, high-density lipoproteins (HDLs), low-density lipoproteins (LDLs),** and **very low–density lipoproteins (VLDLs).** In table 26.2, notice that the higher the proportion of protein to lipid, the higher the density. (What other trends do you see correlated with their density?) Lipoproteins vary not only in size and density but more importantly in composition and function. Figure 26.2 shows the three primary pathways by which they are made and processed.

Chylomicrons form in the absorptive cells of the small intestine and then pass into the lymphatic system and ultimately the bloodstream (see chapter 25). Endothelial cells of the blood capillaries have a surface enzyme called **lipoprotein lipase** that hydrolyzes triglycerides into glycerol and free fatty acids (FFAs). These products can then pass through the capillary walls into adipocytes, where they are resynthesized into storage triglycerides. Some FFAs, however, remain in the blood plasma bound to albumin. The remainder of a chylomicron after the triglycerides have been extracted, called a *chylomicron remnant,* is removed and degraded by the liver.

VLDLs, produced by the liver, transport lipids to the adipose tissue for storage. When their triglycerides are removed in the adipose tissue, the VLDLs become LDLs and contain mostly cholesterol. Cells that need cholesterol (usually for membrane structure or steroid hormone synthesis) absorb LDLs by receptor-mediated endocytosis, digest them with lysosomal enzymes, and release the cholesterol for intracellular use.

HDL production begins in the liver, which produces an empty, collapsed protein shell. This shell travels in the blood and picks up cholesterol and phospholipids from other organs. The next time it circulates through the liver, the liver removes the cholesterol and eliminates it in the bile, either as cholesterol or as bile acids. HDLs are therefore a vehicle for removing excess cholesterol from the body.

It is desirable to maintain a total plasma cholesterol concentration of 200 mg/dL or less. From 200 to 239 mg/dL is considered borderline high, and levels over 240 mg/dL are undesirable.

Most of the body's cholesterol is endogenous (internally synthesized) rather than dietary, and to some extent the body compensates for variations in dietary intake. High intake somewhat inhibits hepatic cholesterol synthesis. However, the liver synthesizes a certain amount of cholesterol regardless of intake, and severe restriction of dietary cholesterol does not necessarily result in a proportionate

Table 26.2 Major Classes of Serum Lipoproteins, in Order of Increasing Density

		Approximate Percentage Composition				
Type	**Size (nm)**	**Protein**	**Total Lipid**	**Cholesterol**	**Triglyceride**	**Phospholipid**
Chylomicrons	75–1,200	2	98	5	90	3
VLDLs	30–80	8	92	20	55	17
LDLs	18–25	20	80	53	6	21
HDLs	5–12	50	50	20	5	25

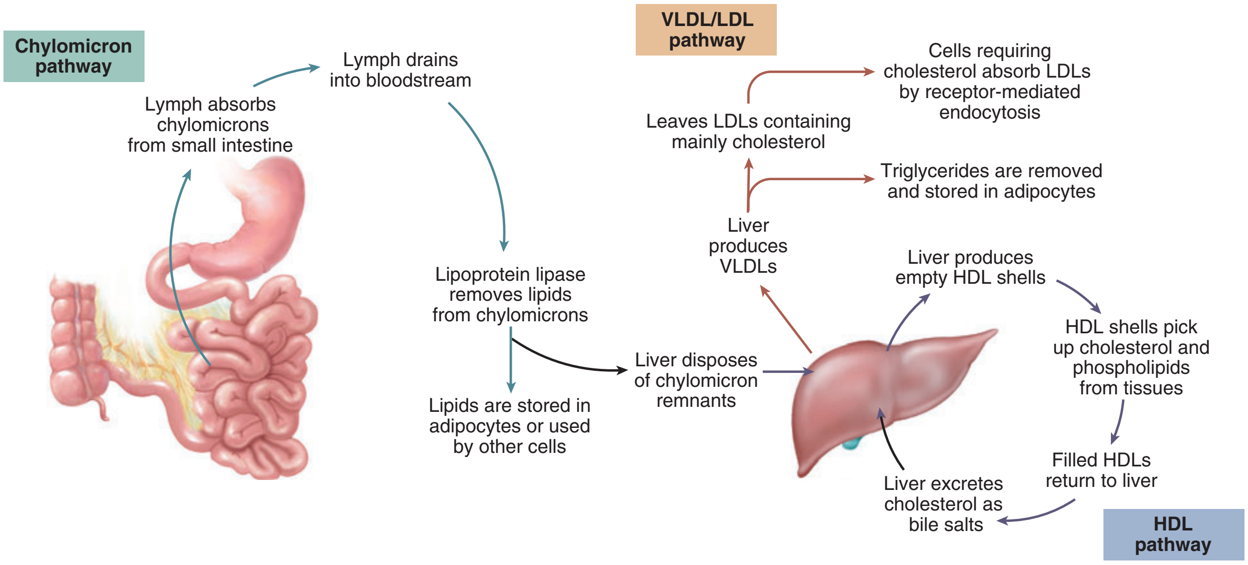

Chylomicron pathway
Lymph absorbs chylomicrons from small intestine
Lymph drains into bloodstream
Lipoprotein lipase removes lipids from chylomicrons
Lipids are stored in adipocytes or used by other cells
Liver disposes of chylomicron remnants
VLDL/LDL pathway
Cells requiring cholesterol absorb LDLs by receptor-mediated endocytosis
Leaves LDLs containing mainly cholesterol
Triglycerides are removed and stored in adipocytes
Liver produces VLDLs
Liver produces empty HDL shells
HDL shells pick up cholesterol and phospholipids from tissues
Filled HDLs return to liver
Liver excretes cholesterol as bile salts
HDL pathway

Figure 26.2 **Pathways of Lipoprotein Processing.**
Why is a high HDL:LDL ratio more healthy than a high LDL:HDL ratio?

drop in blood cholesterol. Dietary fatty acids also strongly influence cholesterol levels. A moderate reduction of saturated fatty acid intake can lower blood cholesterol by 15% to 20%, while unsaturated fatty acids stimulate cholesterol excretion and lower its concentration in the blood.

Vigorous exercise also lowers blood cholesterol levels. The mechanism is somewhat roundabout: Exercise reduces the sensitivity of the right atrium of the heart to blood pressure, so the heart secretes less atrial natriuretic factor. Consequently, the kidneys excrete less sodium and water, and the blood volume rises. This dilutes the lipoproteins in the blood, and the adipocytes compensate by producing more lipoprotein lipase. Thus, the adipocytes consume more blood triglycerides. This shrinks the VLDL particles, which shed some of their cholesterol in the process, and HDLs pick up this free cholesterol for removal by the liver.

Blood cholesterol is not the only important measure of healthy lipid concentrations, however. A high LDL concentration is a warning sign because, as you can see from the function of LDLs described previously, it signifies a high rate of cholesterol deposition in the arteries. Factors that contribute to high LDL levels include not only saturated fats but also cigarette smoking, coffee, and stress. A high proportion of HDL, on the other hand, is beneficial because it indicates that cholesterol is being removed from the arteries and transported to the liver for disposal. Thus it is desirable to increase your ratio of HDL to LDL. This is best done with a diet low in calories and saturated fats and is promoted by regular aerobic exercise.

Proteins

Protein constitutes about 12% to 15% of the body's mass; 65% of it is in the skeletal muscles. Proteins are responsible for muscle contraction and the motility of cilia and flagella. They are a major structural component of all cellular membranes, with multiple important roles such as membrane receptors, pumps, ion channels, and cell-identity markers. Fibrous proteins such as collagen, elastin, and keratin make up much of the structure of bone, cartilage, tendons, ligaments, skin, hair, and nails. Globular proteins include antibodies, hormones, neuromodulators, hemoglobin, myoglobin, and about 2,000 enzymes that control nearly every aspect of cellular metabolism. They also include the albumin and other plasma proteins that maintain blood viscosity and osmolarity and transport lipids and some other plasma solutes. Proteins buffer the pH of body fluids and contribute to the resting membrane potentials of all cells. No other class of biomolecules has such a broad variety of functions.

Requirements

For persons of average weight, the RDA of protein is 44 to 60 g, depending on age and sex. Multiplying your weight in pounds by 0.37 or your weight in kilograms by 0.8 gives an estimate of your RDA of protein in grams. A higher intake is recommended, however, under conditions of stress, infection, injury, and pregnancy. Infants and children require more protein than adults relative to body weight. Excessive protein intake, however, overloads the kidneys with nitrogenous waste and can cause renal damage. This is a risk in certain high-protein fad diets (see insight 26.3).

Total protein intake is not the only significant measure of dietary adequacy. The nutritional value of a protein depends on whether it supplies the right amino acids in the proportions needed for human proteins. Adults can synthesize 12 of the 20 amino acids from other organic compounds when they are not available from the diet, but there are 8 **essential amino acids** that we cannot synthesize: isoleucine, leucine, lysine, methionine, phenylalanine, threonine, tryptophan, and valine. (Infants also require histidine.) In addition, there are 2 amino acids that can only be synthesized from essential amino acids—cystine from methionine and tyrosine from phenylalanine. The other 10 (9 in infants) are called **inessential amino acids**—not because the body does not require them but because it can synthesize its own when the diet does not supply them.

Cells do not store surplus amino acids for later use. When a protein is to be synthesized, all of the amino acids necessary must be present at once, and if even one is missing, the protein cannot be made. High-quality **complete proteins** are those that provide all of the essential amino acids in the necessary proportions for human tissue growth, maintenance, and nitrogen balance. Lower-quality **incomplete proteins** lack one or more essential amino acids. For example, cereals are low in lysine, and legumes are low in methionine.

Protein quality is also determined by **net protein utilization**—the percent of the amino acids in a protein that the human body uses. We typically use 70% to 90% of animal protein but only 40% to 70% of plant protein. It therefore takes a larger serving of plant protein than animal protein to meet our needs—for example, we need 400 g (about 14 oz) of rice and beans to provide as much usable protein as 115 g (about 4 oz) of hamburger. However, reducing meat intake and increasing plant intake has advantages. Among other considerations, plant foods provide more vitamins, minerals, and fiber; less saturated fat; no cholesterol; and less pesticide. In an increasingly crowded world, it must also be borne in mind that it requires far more land to produce meat than to produce crops.

Insight 26.3 Clinical Application

Predigested Protein and Athletic Performance

Some bodybuilders and other "power athletes" take powdered or liquid amino acid mixtures ("predigested protein") in the belief that simple amino acids are absorbed more easily and rapidly or that they somehow contribute more to muscle building. Such beliefs are unfounded. Dietary proteins are rapidly digested and absorbed, and there is no added benefit to taking predigested protein. Amino acid supplements have not been shown to increase muscle mass, strength, or endurance. Moreover, they may be harmful to the health. Concentrated amino acid solutions osmotically retain water in the intestines and cause cramps and diarrhea. The catabolism of excess amino acids produces extra nitrogenous waste, which places undesirable stress on the liver and kidneys.

Dietary Sources

The animal proteins of meat, eggs, and dairy products closely match human proteins in amino acid composition. Thus animal products provide high-quality complete protein, whereas plant proteins are incomplete. Nevertheless, this does not mean that your dietary protein *must* come from meat; indeed, about two-thirds of the world's population receives adequate protein nutrition from diets containing very little meat. We can combine plant foods so that one provides what another lacks—beans and rice, for example, are a complementary combination of legume and cereal. Beans provide the isoleucine and lysine lacking in grains, while rice provides the tryptophan and cysteine lacking in beans.

Nitrogen Balance

Proteins are our chief dietary source of nitrogen. **Nitrogen balance** is a state in which the rate of nitrogen ingestion equals the rate of excretion (chiefly as nitrogenous wastes). Growing children exhibit a state of **positive nitrogen balance** because they ingest more than they excrete, thus retaining protein for tissue growth. Pregnant women and athletes in resistance training also show positive nitrogen balance. When excretion exceeds ingestion, a person is in a state of **negative nitrogen balance.** This indicates that body proteins are being broken down and used as fuel. Proteins of the muscles and liver are more easily broken down than others; thus negative nitrogen balance tends to be associated with muscle atrophy. Negative nitrogen balance may occur if carbohydrate and fat intake are insufficient to meet the need for energy. Carbohydrates and fats are said to have a protein-sparing effect because they prevent protein catabolism when present in sufficient amounts to meet energy needs.

Nitrogen balance is affected by some hormones. Growth hormone and sex steroids promote protein synthesis and positive nitrogen balance during childhood, adolescence, and pregnancy. Glucocorticoids, on the other hand, promote protein catabolism and negative nitrogen balance in states of stress.

Think About It

Would you expect a person recovering from a long infectious disease to be in a state of positive or negative nitrogen balance? Why?

Minerals and Vitamins

Minerals are inorganic elements that plants extract from soil or water and introduce into the food web. Vitamins are small dietary organic compounds that are necessary to metabolism. Neither is used as fuel, but both are essential to our ability to use other nutrients. With the exception of a few vitamins, these nutrients cannot be synthesized by the body and must be included in the diet. They are, however, required in relatively small quantities. Mineral RDAs range from 0.05 mg of chromium and selenium to 1,200 mg of calcium and phosphorus. Vitamin RDAs range from about 0.002 mg of vitamin B12 to 60 mg of vitamin C. Despite the small quantities involved, minerals and vitamins have very potent effects on physiology. Indeed, excessive amounts are toxic and potentially lethal.

Minerals

Minerals constitute about 4% of the body mass, with three-quarters of this being the calcium and phosphorus in the bones and teeth. Phosphorus is also a key structural component of phospholipids, ATP, cAMP, GTP, and creatine phosphate and is the basis of the phosphate buffer system (see chapter 24). Calcium, iron, magnesium, and manganese function as cofactors for enzymes. Iron is essential to the oxygen-carrying capacity of hemoglobin and myoglobin. Chlorine is a component of stomach acid (HCl). Many mineral salts function as electrolytes and thus govern the function of nerve and muscle cells, osmotically regulate the content and distribution of water in the body, and maintain blood volume.

Table 26.3 summarizes adult mineral requirements and dietary sources. Broadly speaking, the best sources of minerals are vegetables, legumes, milk, eggs, fish, shellfish, and some other meats. Cereal grains are a relatively poor source, but processed cereals may be mineral-fortified.

Sodium chloride has been both a prized commodity and a curse. Animal tissues contain relatively large amounts of salt, and carnivores rarely lack ample salt in their diets. Plants, however, are relatively poor in salt, so herbivores often must supplement their diet by ingesting salt from the soil. As humans developed agriculture and became more dependent on plants, they also became increasingly dependent on supplemental salt. Salt has often been used as a form of payment for goods and services—the word *salary* comes from *sal* (salt). Our fondness for salt and high sensitivity to it undoubtedly stem from its physiological importance and its scarcity in a largely vegetarian diet.

Now, however, this fondness has become a bane. The recommended sodium intake is 1.1 g/day, but a typical American diet contains about 4.5 g/day. This is due not just to the use of table salt but more significantly to the large amounts of salt in processed foods, much of it "disguised" in soy sauce, MSG (monosodium glutamate), baking

Table 26.3 Mineral Requirements and Some Dietary Sources

Mineral	RDA (mg)	Some Dietary Sources*
Major Minerals		
Calcium	1,200	Milk, fish, shellfish, greens, tofu, orange juice
Phosphorus	1,200	Red meat, poultry, fish, eggs, milk, legumes, whole grains, nuts
Sodium	1,100	Table salt, processed foods; usually present in excess
Chloride	700	Table salt, some vegetables; usually present in excess
Magnesium	280–350	Milk, greens, whole grains, nuts, legumes, chocolate
Potassium	Unknown	Red meat, poultry, fish, cereals, spinach, squash, bananas, apricots
Sulfur	Unknown	Meats, milk, eggs, legumes; almost any proteins
Trace Minerals		
Zinc	12–15	Red meat, seafood, cereals, wheat germ, legumes, nuts, yeast
Iron	10–15	Red meat, liver, shellfish, eggs, dried fruits, legumes, nuts, molasses
Manganese	2.5–5.0	Greens, fruits, legumes, whole grains, nuts
Copper	1.5–3.0	Red meat, liver, shellfish, legumes, whole grains, nuts, cocoa
Fluoride	1.5–4.0	Fluoridated water and toothpaste, tea, seafood, seaweed
Iodine	0.15	Marine fish, fish oils, shellfish, iodized salt
Molybdenum	0.07–0.25	Beans, whole grains, nuts
Chromium	0.05–0.25	Meats, liver, cheese, eggs, whole grains, yeast, wine
Selenium	0.05–0.07	Red meats, organ meats, fish, shellfish, eggs, cereals
Cobalt	Unknown	Red meat, poultry, fish, liver, milk

*"Red meat" refers to mammalian muscle such as beef and pork. "Organ meat" refers to brain, pancreas, heart, kidney, etc. Liver is specified separately and refers to beef, pork, and chicken livers, which are similar for most nutrients.

soda, and baking powder. In some areas of Japan, salt intake averages 27 g/day and the great majority of people die before age 70 of stroke and other complications of hypertension.

Hypertension is a leading cause of death among American blacks, who have twice the risk of hypertension and 10 times the risk of dying from it that American whites have. The reason for this is not excessive salt intake, but rather that people of West African descent have kidneys with an especially strong tendency to retain salt.

Vitamins

Vitamins were originally named with letters in the order of their discovery, but they also have chemically descriptive names such as ascorbic acid (vitamin C) and riboflavin (vitamin B_2). Most vitamins must be obtained from the diet (table 26.4), but the body synthesizes some of them from precursors called *provitamins*—niacin from the amino acid tryptophan, vitamin D from cholesterol, and vitamin A from carotene, which is abundantly present in carrots, squash, and other yellow vegetables and fruits. Vitamin K, pantothenic acid, biotin, and folic acid are produced by the bacteria of the large intestine. The feces contain more biotin than food does.

Vitamins are classified as water-soluble or fat-soluble. **Water-soluble vitamins** are absorbed with water from the small intestine, dissolve freely in the body fluids, and are quickly excreted by the kidneys. They cannot be stored in the body and therefore seldom accumulate to excess. The water-soluble vitamins are ascorbic acid (vitamin C) and the B vitamins. Ascorbic acid promotes hemoglobin synthesis, collagen synthesis, and sound connective tissue structure, and it is an antioxidant that scavenges free radicals and possibly reduces the risk of cancer. The B vitamins function as coenzymes or parts of coenzyme molecules; they assist enzymes by transferring electrons from one metabolic reaction to another, making it possible for enzymes to catalyze these reactions. Some of their functions arise later in this chapter as we consider carbohydrate metabolism.

Fat-soluble vitamins are incorporated into lipid micelles in the small intestine and absorbed with dietary lipids. They are more varied in function than water-soluble vitamins. Vitamin A is a component of the visual pigments and promotes proteoglycan synthesis and epithelial maintenance. Vitamin D promotes calcium absorption and bone mineralization. Vitamin K is essential to prothrombin synthesis and blood clotting. Vitamins A and E are antioxidants, like ascorbic acid.

Table 26.4 Vitamin Requirements and Some Dietary Sources

Mineral	RDA (mg)	Some Dietary Sources*
Water-Soluble Vitamins		
Ascorbic acid (C)	60	Citrus fruits, strawberries, tomatoes, greens, cabbage, cauliflower, broccoli, brussels sprouts
B complex		
Thiamine (B_1)	1.5	Red meat, organ meats, liver, eggs, greens, asparagus, legumes, whole grains, seeds, yeast
Riboflavin (B_2)	1.7	Widely distributed, and deficiencies are rare; all types of meat, milk, eggs, greens, whole grains, apricots, legumes, mushrooms, yeast
Pyridoxine (B_6)	2.0	Red meat, organ meats, fish, liver, greens, apricots, legumes, whole grains, seeds
Cobalamin (B_{12})	0.002	Red meat, organ meats, liver, shellfish, eggs, milk; absent from food plants
Niacin (nicotinic acid)	19	Readily synthesized from tryptophan, which is present in any diet with adequate protein; red meat, organ meats, liver, poultry, fish, apricots, legumes, whole grains, mushrooms
Pantothenic acid	4–7	Widely distributed, and deficiencies are rare; red meat, organ meats, liver, eggs, green and yellow vegetables, legumes, whole grains, mushrooms, yeast
Folic acid (folacin)	0.2	Eggs, liver, greens, citrus fruits, legumes, whole grains, seeds
Biotin	0.03–0.10	Red meat, organ meats, liver, eggs, cheese, cabbage, cauliflower, bananas, legumes, nuts
Fat-Soluble Vitamins		
Retinol (A)	1.0	Fish oils, eggs, cheese, milk, greens, other green and yellow vegetables and fruits, margarine
Calcitriol (D)	0.01	Formed by exposure of skin to sunlight; fish, fish oils, milk
α-Tocopherol (E)	10	Fish oils, greens, seeds, wheat germ, vegetable oils, margarine, nuts
Phylloquinone (K)	0.08	Most of the RDA is met by synthesis by intestinal bacteria; liver, greens, cabbage, cauliflower

*See footnote in table 26.3.

It is common knowledge that various diseases result from vitamin deficiencies, but it is less commonly known that **hypervitaminosis** (vitamin excesses) also causes disease. A *deficiency* of vitamin A, for example, can result in night blindness, dry skin and hair, a dry conjunctiva and cloudy cornea, and increased incidence of urinary, digestive, and respiratory infections. This is the world's most common vitamin deficiency. An *excess* of vitamin A, however, may cause anorexia, nausea and vomiting, headache, pain and fragility of the bones, hair loss, an enlarged liver and spleen, and birth defects. Vitamins B_6, C, D, and E have also been implicated in toxic hypervitaminosis.

Some people take *megavitamins*—doses 10 to 1,000 times the RDA—thinking that they will improve athletic performance. Since vitamins are not burned as fuel, and small amounts fully meet the body's metabolic needs, there is no evidence that vitamin supplements improve performance except when used to correct a dietary deficiency. Megadoses of fat-soluble vitamins can be especially harmful.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

1. What regions of the hypothalamus regulate hunger and satiety? Why would it be wrong to say these are the sole controls over appetite?
2. Explain the following statement: Cellulose is an important part of a healthy diet but it is not a nutrient.
3. What class of nutrients provides most of the calories in the diet? What class of nutrients provides the body's major reserves of stored energy?
4. Contrast the functions of VLDLs, LDLs, and HDLs. Explain how this is related to the fact that a high blood HDL level is desirable, but a high VLDL-LDL level is undesirable?
5. Why do some proteins have more nutritional value than others?

Carbohydrate Metabolism

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the principal reactants and products of each major step of glucose oxidation;
- contrast the functions and products of anaerobic fermentation and aerobic respiration;
- explain where and how cells produce ATP; and
- describe the production, function, and use of glycogen.

Most dietary carbohydrate is burned as fuel within a few hours of absorption. Although three monosaccharides are absorbed from digested food—glucose, galactose, and fructose—the last two are quickly converted to glucose, and all oxidative carbohydrate consumption is essentially a matter of glucose catabolism. The overall reaction for this is

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6\ O_2 \rightarrow 6\ CO_2 + 6\ H_2O$$

The function of this reaction is not to produce carbon dioxide and water but to transfer energy from glucose to ATP.

Along the pathway of glucose oxidation are several links through which other nutrients—especially fats and amino acids—can also be oxidized as fuel. Carbohydrate catabolism therefore provides a central vantage point from which we can view the catabolism of all fuels and the generation of ATP.

Glucose Catabolism

If the preceding reaction were carried out in a single step, it would generate a short, intense burst of heat—like the burning of paper, which has the same chemical equation. Not only would this be useless to the body's metabolism, it would kill the cells. In the body, however, the process is carried out in a series of small steps, each controlled by a separate enzyme. Energy is released in small manageable amounts, and as much as possible is transferred to ATP. The rest is released as heat.

There are three major pathways of glucose catabolism:

1. **glycolysis,** which splits a glucose molecule into two molecules of pyruvic acid;
2. **anaerobic fermentation,** which occurs in the absence of oxygen and reduces pyruvic acid to lactic acid; and
3. **aerobic respiration,** which occurs in the presence of oxygen and oxidizes pyruvic acid to carbon dioxide and water.

You may find it helpful to review figure 2.31 (see p. 86) for a broad overview of these processes and their relationship to ATP production. Figures 26.3 to 26.6 examine these processes in closer detail. The first two figures are labeled with numbers that correspond to reaction steps described shortly.

Coenzymes are vitally important to these reactions. Enzymes remove electrons (as hydrogen atoms) from the intermediate compounds of these pathways, but they do not bind them. Instead, they transfer the hydrogen atoms to coenzymes, and the coenzymes donate them to other compounds later in one of the reaction pathways. Thus the enzymes of glucose catabolism cannot function without their coenzymes.

The two coenzymes of special importance to glucose catabolism are **NAD^+** (nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide) and **FAD** (flavin adenine dinucleotide). Both are derived from B vitamins: NAD^+ from niacin and FAD from riboflavin. Hydrogen atoms are removed from metabolic intermediates in pairs—that is, two protons and two electrons ($2\ H^+$ and $2\ e^-$) at a time—and transferred to a coenzyme. This produces a reduced coenzyme with a higher free energy content than it had before the reaction. Coenzymes thus become the temporary carriers of the energy extracted from glucose metabolites. The reactions for this are

$$\text{FAD} + 2\ \text{H} \rightarrow \text{FADH}_2$$

and

$$\text{NAD}^+ + 2\ \text{H} \rightarrow \text{NADH} + \text{H}^+$$

FAD binds two protons and two electrons to become FADH_2. NAD^+, however, binds the two electrons but only one of the protons to become NADH. The other proton remains a free hydrogen ion, H^+ (or H_3O^+, but it is represented in this chapter as H^+).

Glycolysis

Upon entering a cell, glucose begins a series of conversions called glycolysis[5] (fig. 26.3):

Step 1: phosphorylation. The enzyme *hexokinase* transfers an inorganic phosphate group (P_i) from ATP to glucose, producing glucose 6-phosphate (G6P). This has two effects:

- It keeps the intracellular concentration of glucose very low, thus maintaining a concentration gradient that favors the continued diffusion of more glucose into the cell.
- Phosphorylated compounds cannot pass through the plasma membrane, so this prevents the sugar from leaving the cell. In most cells, step 1 is irreversible because they lack the enzyme to convert G6P back to glucose. The few exceptions are cells that must be able to release free glucose to the blood: absorptive cells of the small intestine, proximal convoluted tubule cells in the kidney, and liver cells.

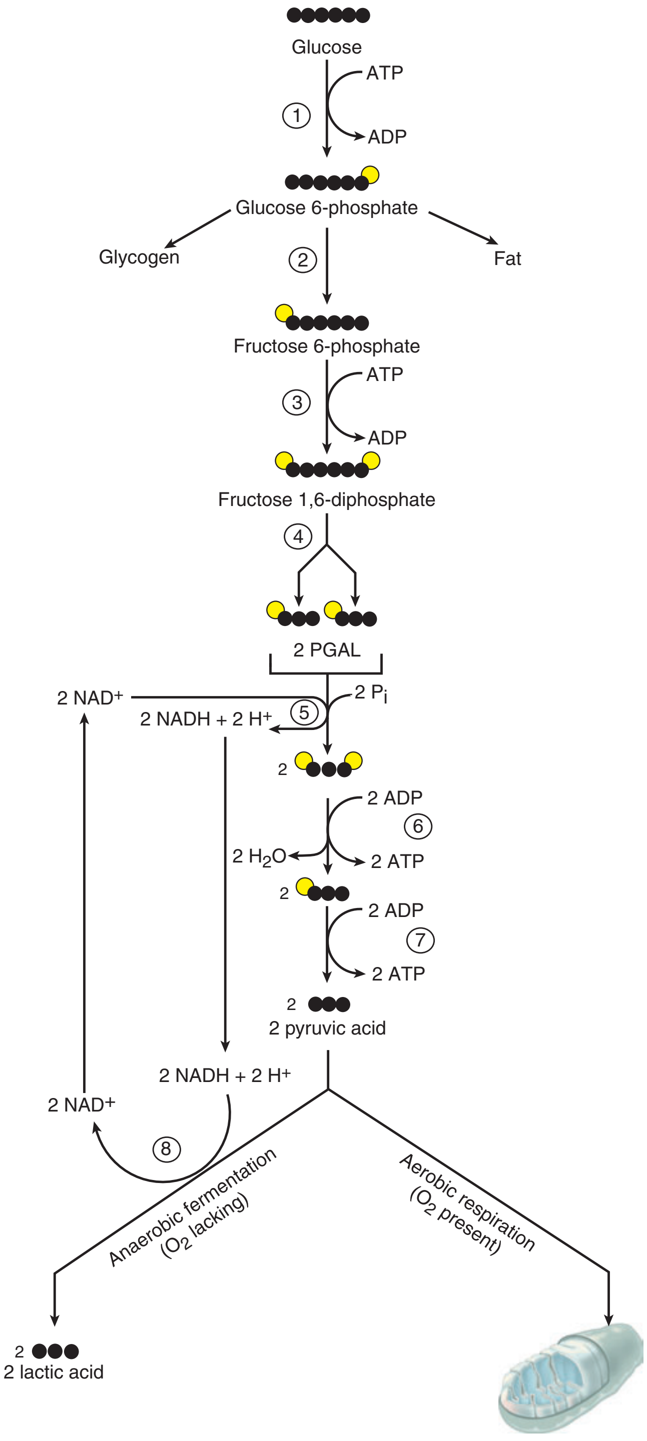


Figure 26.3 Glycolysis and Anaerobic Fermentation. The *black circles* represent carbon atoms in the carbon skeleton of each molecule; the *yellow circles* indicate phosphate groups. Numbered reaction steps are explained in the text.

At what point would this reaction stop, and what reaction intermediate would accumulate, if NAD^+ were unavailable to the cell? What process replenishes the NAD^+ supply?

G6P is a versatile molecule that can be converted to fat or amino acids, polymerized to form glycogen for storage, or further oxidized to extract its energy. For now, we are mainly concerned with its further oxidation (glycolysis), the general effect of which is to split G6P (a six-carbon sugar, C_6) into two three-carbon (C_3) molecules of **pyruvic acid (pyruvate).** Continue tracing these steps in figure 26.3 as you read.

Steps 2 and 3: priming. G6P is rearranged (isomerized) to form fructose 6-phosphate, which is phosphorylated again to form fructose 1,6-diphosphate. This "primes" the process by providing activation energy, somewhat like the heat of a match used to light a fireplace. Two molecules of ATP have already been consumed, but just as a fire gives back more heat than it takes to start it, aerobic respiration eventually gives back far more ATP than it takes to prime glycolysis.

---

[5] *glyco* = sugar + *lysis* = splitting

Step 4: cleavage. The "lysis" part of glycolysis occurs when fructose 1,6-diphosphate splits into two three-carbon (C_3) molecules. Through a slight rearrangement of one of them (not shown in the figure), this generates two molecules of **PGAL (phosphoglyceraldehyde,** or **glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate).**

Step 5: oxidation. Each PGAL molecule is then oxidized by removing a pair of hydrogen atoms. The electrons and one proton are picked up by NAD^+ and the other proton is released into the cytosol, yielding NADH + H^+. At this step, a phosphate (P_i) group is also added to each of the C_3 fragments. Unlike the earlier steps, this P_i is not supplied by ATP but comes from the cell's pool of free phosphate ions.

Steps 6 and 7: dephosphorylation. In the next two steps, phosphate groups are taken from the glycolysis intermediates and transferred to ADP, phosphorylating it to ATP. This converts the C_3 compound to pyruvic acid. The end products of glycolysis are therefore

$$2 \text{ pyruvic acid} + 2 \text{ NADH} + 2 \text{ H}^+ + 2 \text{ ATP}$$

Note that 4 ATP are actually produced (steps 6–7), but 2 ATP were consumed to initiate glycolysis (steps 1 and 3), so the net gain is 2 ATP per glucose.

Some of the energy originally in the glucose is contained in this ATP, some is in the NADH, and some is lost as heat. Most of the energy, however, remains in the pyruvic acid.

Anaerobic Fermentation

The fate of pyruvic acid depends on whether or not oxygen is available. In an exercising muscle, the demand for ATP may exceed the supply of oxygen, and the only ATP the cells can make under these circumstances is the 2 ATP produced by glycolysis. Cells that lack mitochondria, such as erythrocytes, are also restricted to making ATP by this method.

But glycolysis would quickly come to a halt if the reaction stopped at pyruvic acid. Why? Because it would use up the supply of NAD^+, which is needed to accept electrons at step 5 and keep glycolysis going. NAD^+ must be replenished.

In the absence of oxygen, a cell resorts to a one-step reaction called anaerobic fermentation. (This is often inaccurately called *anaerobic respiration,* but strictly speaking, human cells do not carry out anaerobic respiration; that is a process found only in certain bacteria.) In this pathway (fig. 26.3, **step 8**), NADH donates a pair of electrons to pyruvic acid, thus reducing it to **lactic acid** and regenerating NAD^+.

Think About It

Does lactic acid have more free energy than pyruvic acid or less? Explain.

Lactic acid leaves the cells that generate it and travels by way of the bloodstream to the liver. When oxygen becomes available again, the liver oxidizes lactic acid back to pyruvic acid, which can then enter the aerobic pathway described shortly. The oxygen required to do this is part of the *oxygen debt* created by exercising skeletal muscles (see p. 429). The liver can also convert lactic acid back to G6P and can do either of two things with that: (1) polymerize it to form glycogen for storage or (2) remove the phosphate group and release free glucose into the blood.

Although anaerobic fermentation keeps glycolysis running a little longer, it has some drawbacks. One is that it is wasteful, because most of the energy of glucose is still in the lactic acid and has contributed no useful work. The other is that lactic acid is toxic and contributes to muscle fatigue.

Skeletal muscle is relatively tolerant of anaerobic fermentation, and cardiac muscle is less so. The brain employs almost no anaerobic fermentation. During birth, when the infant's blood supply is cut off, almost every organ of its body switches to anaerobic fermentation; thus they do not compete with the brain for the limited supply of oxygen.

Aerobic Respiration

Most ATP is generated in the mitochondria, which require oxygen as the final electron acceptor. In the presence of oxygen, pyruvic acid enters the mitochondria and is oxidized by aerobic respiration. This occurs in two principal steps:

- a group of reactions we will call the **matrix reactions,** because their controlling enzymes are in the fluid of the mitochondrial matrix; and
- reactions we will call the **membrane reactions,** because their controlling enzymes are bound to the membranes of the mitochondrial cristae.

The Matrix Reactions

The matrix reactions are shown in figure 26.4, where the reaction steps are numbered to resume where figure 26.3 ended. Most of the matrix reactions constitute a series called the **citric acid (Krebs[6]) cycle.** Preceding this, however, are three steps that prepare pyruvic acid to enter the cycle and thus link glycolysis to it.

Step 9. Pyruvic acid is *decarboxylated*—CO_2 is removed and pyruvic acid, a C_3 compound, becomes a C_2 compound.

Step 10. NAD^+ removes hydrogen atoms from the C_2 compound (an oxidation reaction) and converts it to an **acetyl group (acetic acid).**

---

[6] Sir Hans Krebs (1900–1981), German biochemist

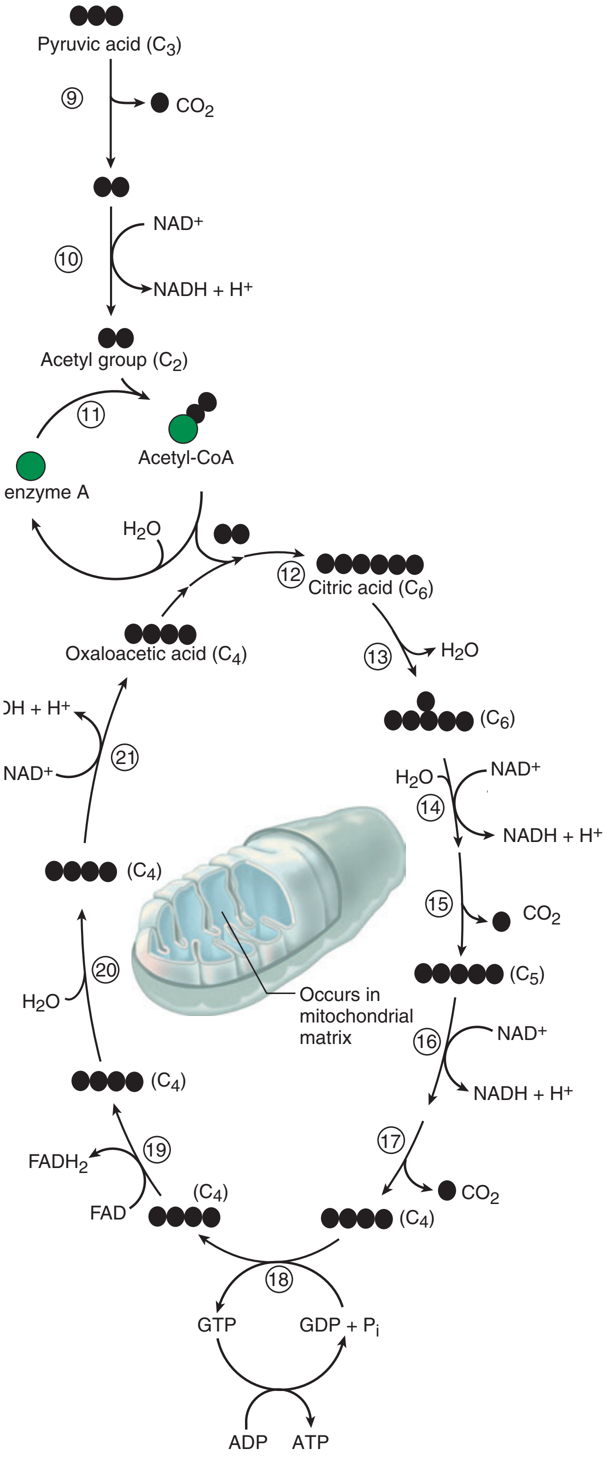


Figure 26.4 The Mitochondrial Matrix Reactions. *Black circles* represent carbon atoms in the carbon skeleton of each molecule. Numbered reaction steps are explained in the text.

Step 11. The acetyl group binds to coenzyme A, a derivative of pantothenic acid (a B vitamin). The result is **acetyl-coenzyme A (acetyl-CoA).** At this stage the C_2 remnant of the original glucose molecule is ready to enter the citric acid cycle.

Step 12. At the beginning of the citric acid cycle, CoA hands off the acetyl (C_2) group to a C_4 compound, **oxaloacetic acid.** This produces the C_6 compound **citric acid,** for which the cycle is named.

Step 13. Water is removed and the citric acid molecule is reorganized, but it still retains its six carbon atoms.

Step 14. Hydrogen atoms are removed and accepted by NAD^+.

Step 15. Another CO_2 is removed and the substrate becomes a five-carbon chain.

Steps 16 and 17. Steps 14 and 15 are essentially repeated, generating another free CO_2 molecule and leaving a four-carbon chain. No more carbon atoms are removed beyond this point; the substrate remains a series of C_4 compounds from here back to the start of the cycle. The three carbon atoms of pyruvic acid have all been removed as CO_2 at steps 9, 15, and 17. These *decarboxylation reactions* are the source of most of the CO_2 in your breath.

Step 18. Some of the energy in the C_4 substrate goes to phosphorylate guanosine diphosphate (GDP) and convert it to guanosine triphosphate (GTP), a molecule similar to ATP. GTP quickly transfers the P_i group to ADP to make ATP. Coenzyme A participates again in this step but is not shown in the figure.

Step 19. Two hydrogen atoms are removed and accepted by the coenzyme FAD.

Step 20. Water is added.

Step 21. A final two hydrogen atoms are removed and transferred to NAD^+. This reaction generates oxaloacetic acid, which is available to start the cycle all over again.

It is important to remember that for every glucose molecule that entered glycolysis, all of these matrix reactions occur twice (once for each pyruvic acid). The matrix reactions can be summarized:

$$2 \text{ pyruvate} + 6\,H_2O \rightarrow 6\,CO_2$$
$$+\, 2\,ADP + 2\,P_i \rightarrow 2\,ATP$$
$$+\, 8\,NAD^+ + 8\,H_2 \rightarrow 8\,NADH + 8\,H^+$$
$$+\, 2\,FAD + 2\,H_2 \rightarrow 2\,FADH_2$$

There is nothing left of the organic matter of the glucose; its carbon atoms have all been carried away as CO_2 and exhaled. Although still more of its energy is lost as heat along the way, some is stored in the additional 2 ATP, and most of it, by far, is in the reduced coenzymes—8 NADH and 2 $FADH_2$ molecules generated by the matrix reactions and 2 NADH generated by glycolysis. These must be oxidized to extract the energy from them.

The citric acid cycle not only oxidizes glucose metabolites but is also a pathway and a source of intermediates for the synthesis of fats and nonessential amino acids. The connections between the citric acid cycle and the metabolism of other nutrients are discussed later.

The Membrane Reactions

The membrane reactions have two purposes: (1) to further oxidize NADH and $FADH_2$ and transfer their energy to ATP and (2) to regenerate NAD^+ and FAD and make them available again to earlier reaction steps. The membrane reactions are carried out by a series of compounds called the **mitochondrial electron-transport chain.** Most members of the chain are bound to the inner mitochondrial membrane. They are arranged in a precise order that enables each one to receive a pair of electrons from the member on one side of it (or, in two cases, from NADH and $FADH_2$) and pass these electrons along to the member on the other side—like a row of people passing along a hot potato. By the time the "potato" reaches the last member in the chain it is relatively "cool"—its energy has been used to make ATP.

The members of this transport chain are as follows:

- **Flavin mononucleotide (FMN),** a derivative of riboflavin similar to FAD, bound to a membrane protein. FMN accepts electrons from NADH.
- **Iron-sulfur (Fe-S) centers,** complexes of iron and sulfur atoms bound to membrane proteins.
- **Coenzyme Q (CoQ),** which accepts electrons from $FADH_2$. Unlike the other members, this is a relatively small, mobile molecule that moves about in the membrane.
- **Copper (Cu) ions,** bound to two membrane proteins.
- **Cytochromes,**[7] five enzymes with iron cofactors, so-named because they are brightly colored in pure form. In order of participation in the chain, they are cytochromes b, c_1, c, a, and a_3.

Electron Transport Figure 26.5 shows the order in which electrons are passed along the chain. Hydrogen atoms are split apart as they transfer from coenzymes to the chain. The protons are released to the mitochondrial matrix and the electrons travel in pairs ($2\ e^-$) along the transport chain. Each electron carrier in the chain becomes reduced when it receives an electron pair and oxidized again when it passes the electrons along to the next carrier. Energy is liberated at each transfer.

The final electron acceptor in the chain is oxygen. Each oxygen atom (half of an O_2 molecule) accepts two electrons ($2\ e^-$) from cytochrome a_3 and two protons ($2\ H^+$) from the mitochondrial matrix. The result is a molecule of water:

$$1/2\ O_2 + 2\ e^- + 2\ H^+ \rightarrow H_2O$$

---

[7] *cyto* = cell + *chrom* = color

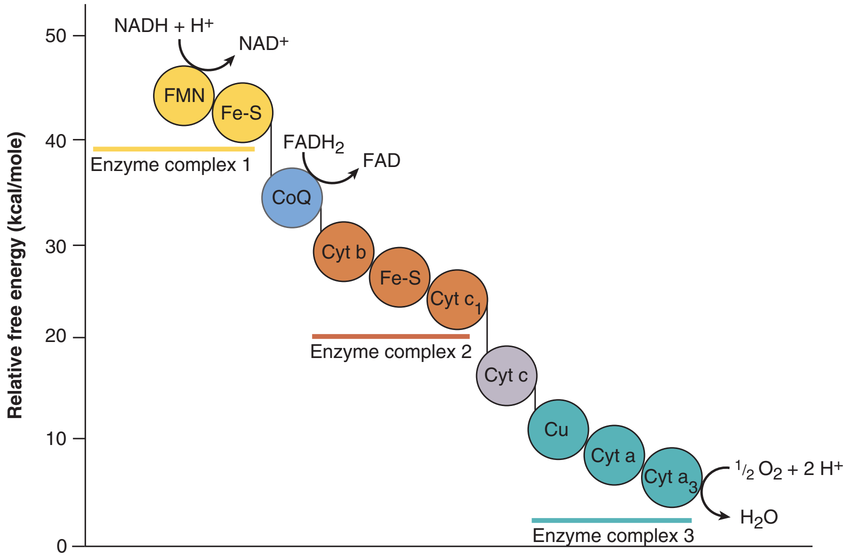


Figure 26.5 The Mitochondrial Electron-Transport Chain. Transport molecules are grouped into three enzyme complexes, each of which acts as a proton pump. Molecules at the *upper left* of the figure have a relatively high free energy content, and molecules at the *lower right* are relatively low in energy.

What two molecules "import" energy into this reaction chain, supplying the energy that becomes stored in ATP?

This is the body's primary source of *metabolic water*—water synthesized in the body rather than ingested in food and drink. This reaction also explains why the body requires oxygen. Without it, this reaction stops and, like a traffic jam, stops all the other processes leading to it. As a result, a cell produces too little ATP to sustain life, and death can ensue within a few minutes.

The Chemiosmotic Mechanism Of primary importance is what happens to the energy liberated by the electrons as they pass along the chain. Some of it is unavoidably lost as heat, but some of it drives the **respiratory enzyme complexes.** The first complex includes FMN and five or more Fe-S centers; the second complex includes cytochromes b and c_1 and an Fe-S center; and the third complex includes two copper centers and cytochromes a and a_3. Each complex collectively acts as a **proton pump** that removes H^+ from the mitochondrial matrix and pumps it into the space between the inner and outer mitochondrial membranes (fig. 26.6). Coenzyme Q is a shuttle that transfers electrons from the first pump to the second, and cytochrome c shuttles electrons from the second pump to the third.

These pumps create a very high H^+ concentration (low pH) and positive charge between the membranes compared to a low H^+ concentration and negative charge in the mitochondrial matrix. That is, they create a steep electrochemical gradient across the inner mitochondrial membrane. If the inner membrane were freely permeable to H^+, these ions would have a strong tendency to diffuse down this gradient and back into the matrix.

The inner membrane, however, is permeable to H^+ only through specific channel proteins called **ATP synthase** (separate from the electron-transport system). As H^+ flows through these channels, it creates an electrical current (which, you may recall, is simply moving charged particles). ATP synthase harnesses the energy of this current to drive ATP synthesis. This process is called the **chemiosmotic**[8] **mechanism,** which suggests the "push" created by the electrochemical H^+ gradient.

Overview of ATP Production

NADH releases its electron pairs (as hydrogen atoms) to FMN in the first proton pump of the electron-transport system. From there to the end of the chain, this generates enough energy to synthesize 3 ATP molecules per electron pair. $FADH_2$ releases its electron pairs to coenzyme Q, the shuttle between the first and second proton pumps. Therefore, it enters the chain at a point beyond the first pump and does not contribute energy to that pump. Each $FADH_2$ contributes enough energy to synthesize 2 ATP.

---

[8] *chemi* = chemical + *osmo* = push

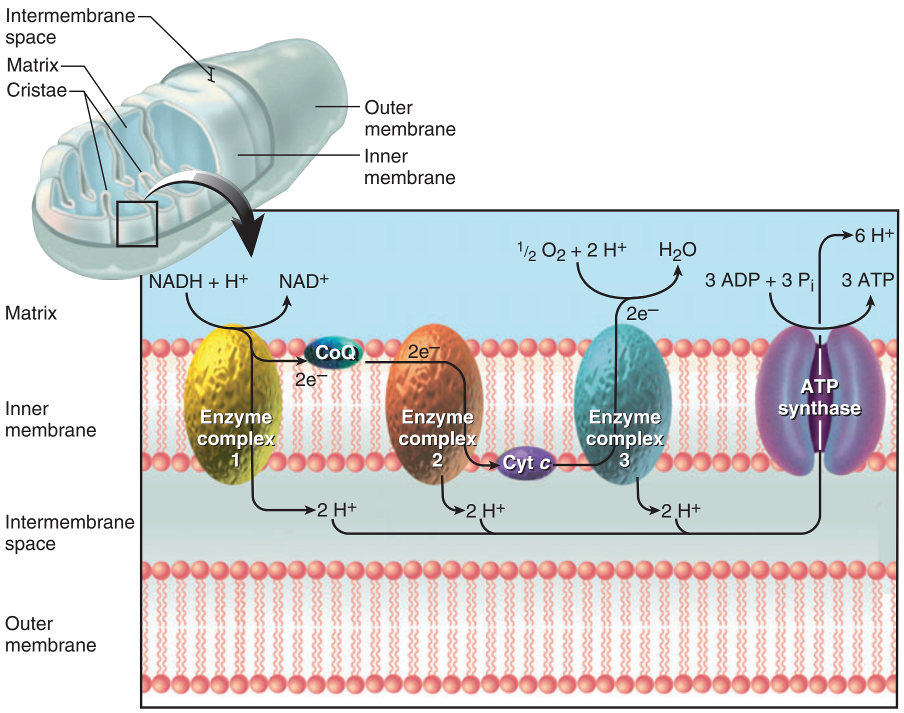


Figure 26.6 The Chemiosmotic Mechanism of ATP Synthesis. Each enzyme complex pumps hydrogen ions into the space between the mitochondrial membranes. These hydrogen ions diffuse back into the matrix by way of ATP synthase, which taps their energy to synthesize ATP.

With that in mind, we can draw up an energy balance sheet to see how much ATP is produced by the complete aerobic oxidation of glucose to CO_2 and H_2O and where the ATP comes from; see also figure 26.7. This summary refers back to the reaction steps 1 to 21 in figures 26.3 and 26.4. For each glucose molecule, there are

10 NADH produced at steps 5, 10, 14, 16, and 21
× 3 ATP per NADH produced by the electron-transport chain
30 ATP generated by NADH

Plus: 2 $FADH_2$ produced at step 19
× 2 ATP per $FADH_2$ produced by the electron-transport chain
= **4 ATP** generated by $FADH_2$

Plus: **2 ATP** net amount generated by glycolysis (steps 6–7 offset by step 3)
2 ATP generated by the matrix reactions (step 18)
Total: **38 ATP** per glucose

This should be viewed as a theoretical maximum. There is some uncertainty about how much H^+ must be pumped between the mitochondrial membranes to generate 1 ATP, and some of the energy from the H^+ current is consumed by pumping ATP from the mitochondrial matrix into the cytosol and exchanging it for more raw materials (ADP and P_i) pumped from the cytosol into the mitochondria.

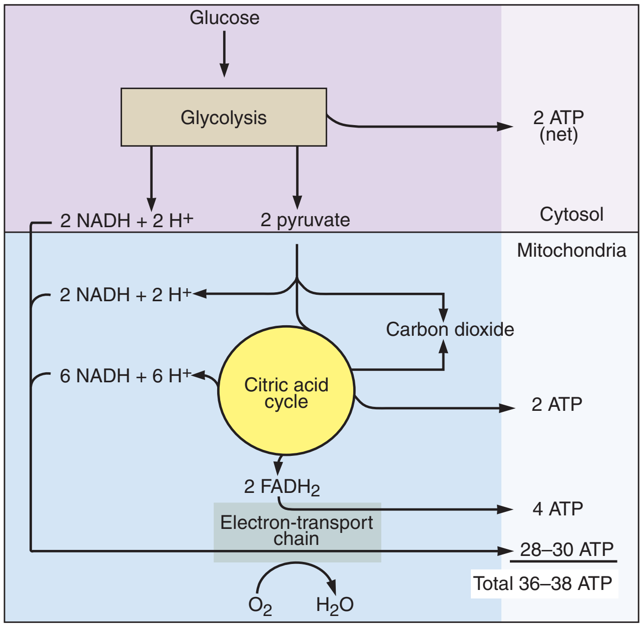


Figure 26.7 **Summary of the Sources of ATP Generated by the Complete Oxidation of Glucose.**

Furthermore, the NADH generated by glycolysis cannot enter the mitochondria and donate its electrons directly to the electron-transport chain. In liver, kidney, and myocardial cells, NADH passes its electrons to *malate,* a "shuttle" molecule that delivers the electrons to the beginning of the electron-transport chain. In this case, each NADH yields enough energy to generate 3 ATP. In skeletal muscle and brain cells, however, the glycolytic NADH transfers its electrons to *glycerol phosphate,* a different shuttle that donates the electrons farther down the electron-transport chain and results in the production of only 2 ATP. Therefore the amount of ATP produced per NADH differs from one cell type to another and is still unknown for others.

But if we assume the maximum ATP yield, every mole (180 g) of glucose releases enough energy to synthesize 38 moles of ATP. Glucose has an energy content of 686 kcal/mole and ATP has 7.3 kcal/mole (277.4 kcal in 38 moles). This means that aerobic respiration has an **efficiency** (a ratio of energy output to input) of up to 277.4 kcal/686 kcal = 40%. The other 60% (408.6 kcal) is body heat.

The pathways of glucose catabolism are summarized in table 26.5. The aerobic respiration of glucose can be represented in the summary equation:

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6\,O_2 \xrightarrow[38\,ADP + P_i \;\curvearrowright\; 38\,ATP]{} 6\,CO_2 + 6\,H_2O$$

Glycogen Metabolism

ATP is quickly used after it is synthesized—it is an *energy-transfer* molecule, not an *energy-storage* molecule. Therefore, if the body has an ample amount of ATP and there is still more glucose in the blood, it does not produce and store excess ATP but converts the glucose to other compounds better suited for energy storage—namely glycogen and fat. Fat synthesis is considered later. Here we consider the synthesis and use of glycogen. The average adult body contains about 400 to 450 g of glycogen: nearly one-quarter of it in the liver, three-quarters of it in the skeletal muscles, and small amounts in cardiac muscle and other tissues.

Glycogenesis, the synthesis of glycogen, is stimulated by insulin. Glucose 6-phosphate (G6P) is isomerized to glucose 1-phosphate (G1P). The enzyme *glycogen synthase* then cleaves off the phosphate group and attaches the glucose to a growing polysaccharide chain.

Glycogenolysis, the hydrolysis of glycogen, releases glucose between meals when new glucose is not being ingested. The process is stimulated by glucagon and epinephrine. The enzyme *glycogen phosphorylase* begins by phosphorylating a glucose residue and splitting it off the glycogen molecule as G1P. This is isomerized to G6P, which can then enter the pathway of glycolysis.

Table 26.5 Pathways of Glucose Catabolism

Stage	Principal Reactants	Principal Products	Purpose
Glycolysis	Glucose, 2 ADP, 2 P_i, 2 NAD^+	2 pyruvic acid, 2 ATP, 2 NADH, 2 H_2O	Reorganizes glucose and splits it in two in preparation for further oxidation by the mitochondria; sole source of ATP in anaerobic conditions
Anaerobic fermentation	2 pyruvic acid, 2 NADH	2 lactic acid, 2 NAD^+	Regenerates NAD^+ so glycolysis can continue to function (and generate ATP) in the absence of oxygen
Aerobic respiration			
Matrix reactions	2 pyruvic acid, 8 NAD^+, 2 FAD, 2 ADP, 2 P_i, 8 H_2O	6 CO_2, 8 NADH, 2 $FADH_2$, 2 ATP, 2 H_2O	Remove electrons from pyruvic acid and transfer them to coenzymes NAD^+ and FAD; produce some ATP
Membrane reactions	10 NADH, 2 $FADH_2$, 6 O_2	32–34 ATP, 12 H_2O	Finish oxidation and produce most of the ATP of cellular respiration

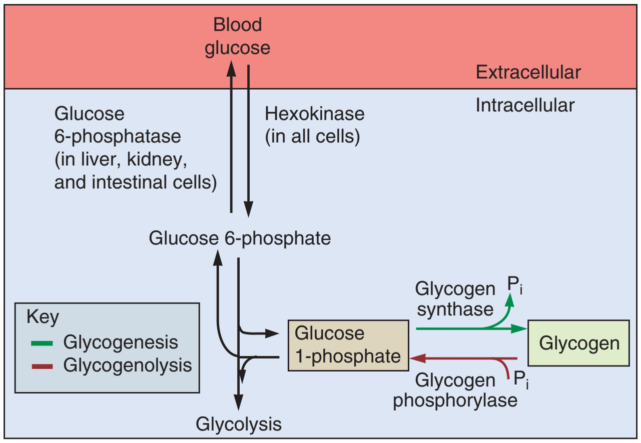


Figure 26.8 **Major Pathways of Glucose Storage and Use.** In most cells, the glucose 1-phosphate generated by glycogenolysis can only undergo glycolysis. In liver, kidney, and intestinal cells, it can be converted back to free glucose and released into circulation.

G6P usually cannot leave the cells that produce it. Liver cells, however, have an enzyme called *glucose 6-phosphatase,* which removes the phosphate group and produces free glucose. This can diffuse out of the cell into the blood, where it is available to any cells in the body. Although muscle cells cannot directly release glucose into the blood, they contribute indirectly to blood glucose concentration because they release pyruvic and lactic acids, which are converted to glucose by the liver.

Gluconeogenesis[9] is the synthesis of glucose from noncarbohydrates such as fats and amino acids. It occurs chiefly in the liver, but after several weeks of fasting, the kidneys also undertake this process and eventually produce just as much glucose as the liver does.

Table 26.6 Some Terminology Related to Glucose and Glycogen Metabolism

Anabolic (synthesis) Reactions	
Glycogenesis	The synthesis of glycogen by polymerizing glucose
Gluconeogenesis	The synthesis of glucose from noncarbohydrates such as fats and amino acids
Catabolic (breakdown) Reactions	
Glycolysis	The splitting of glucose into two molecules of pyruvic acid in preparation for anaerobic fermentation or aerobic respiration
Glycogenolysis	The hydrolysis of glycogen to release free glucose or glucose 1-phosphate

The processes described here are summarized in figure 26.8, and the distinctions among these similar terms are summarized in table 26.6.

Functions of the Liver

We have seen that the liver plays a central role in carbohydrate metabolism. Additional liver functions (table 26.7) were described in previous chapters and will be described later in this chapter. Except for phagocytosis, all of these are performed by the cuboidal hepatocytes described in chapter 25. Such functional diversity is remarkable in light of the uniform structure of these cells. Because of the wide range of functions performed by the liver, degenerative liver diseases such as hepatitis, cirrhosis, and liver cancer are especially life-threatening.

---

[9] *gluco* = sugar, glucose + *neo* = new + *genesis* = production of

Table 26.7 Functions of the Liver

Carbohydrate Metabolism	Converts dietary fructose and galactose to glucose. Stabilizes blood glucose concentration by storing excess glucose as glycogen (glycogenesis), releasing glucose from glycogen when needed (glycogenolysis), and synthesizing glucose from fats and amino acids (gluconeogenesis) when glucose demand exceeds glycogen reserves. Receives lactic acid generated by anaerobic fermentation in skeletal muscle and other tissues and converts it back to pyruvic acid or glucose 6-phosphate.
Lipid Metabolism	Degrades chylomicron remnants. Carries out most of the body's lipogenesis (fat synthesis) and synthesizes cholesterol and phospholipids; produces VLDLs to transport lipids to adipose tissue and other tissues for storage or use; and stores fat in its own cells. Carries out most β-oxidation of fatty acids; produces ketone bodies from excess acetyl-CoA. Produces HDL shells, which pick up excess cholesterol from other tissues and return it to the liver; excretes the excess cholesterol in bile.
Protein and Amino Acid Metabolism	Carries out most deamination and transamination of amino acids. Removes $-NH_2$ from glutamic acid and converts the resulting ammonia to urea by means of the ornithine cycle. Synthesizes nonessential amino acids by transamination reactions.
Synthesis of Plasma Proteins	Synthesizes nearly all the proteins of blood plasma, including albumin, α and β globulins, fibrinogen, prothrombin, and several other clotting factors. (Does not synthesize plasma enzymes, peptide hormones, or γ globulins.)
Vitamin and Mineral Metabolism	Converts vitamin D_3 to calcidiol, a step in the synthesis of calcitriol; stores a 3- to 4-month supply of vitamin D. Stores a 10-month supply of vitamin A and enough vitamin B_{12} to last one to several years. Stores iron in ferritin and releases it as needed. Excretes excess calcium by way of the bile.
Digestion	Synthesizes bile acids and lecithin, which emulsify fat and promote its digestion.
Disposal of Drugs, Toxins, and Hormones	Detoxifies alcohol, antibiotics, and many other drugs. Metabolizes bilirubin from RBC breakdown and excretes it as bile pigments. Deactivates thyroxine and steroid hormones and excretes them or converts them to a form more easily excreted by the kidneys.
Phagocytosis	Macrophages cleanse blood of bacteria and other foreign matter.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

6. Identify the reaction steps in figures 26.3 and 26.4 at which vitamins are essential to glucose catabolism.
7. In the laboratory, glucose can be oxidized in a single step to CO_2 and H_2O. Why is it done in so many little steps in cells?
8. Explain the origin of the word *glycolysis* and why this is an appropriate name for the function of that reaction pathway.
9. What are two advantages of aerobic respiration over anaerobic fermentation?
10. What important enzyme is found in the inner mitochondrial membrane other than those of the electron-transport chain? Explain how its function depends on the electron-transport chain.
11. Describe how the liver responds to (a) an excess and (b) a deficiency of blood glucose.

Lipid and Protein Metabolism

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the processes of lipid catabolism and anabolism;
- describe the processes of protein catabolism and anabolism; and
- explain the metabolic source of ammonia and how the body disposes of it.

In the foregoing discussion, glycolysis and the mitochondrial reactions were treated from the standpoint of carbohydrate oxidation. These pathways also serve for the oxidation of proteins and lipids as fuel and as a source of metabolic intermediates that can be used for protein and lipid synthesis. Here we examine these related metabolic pathways.

Lipids

Triglycerides are stored primarily in the body's adipocytes, where a given molecule remains for about 2 to 3 weeks. Although the total amount of stored triglyceride remains quite constant, there is a continual turnover as lipids are released, transported in the blood, and either oxidized for energy or redeposited in other adipocytes. Synthesizing fats from other types of molecules is called **lipogenesis,** and breaking down fat for fuel is called **lipolysis** (lih-POL-ih-sis).

Lipogenesis

It is common knowledge that a diet high in sugars causes us to put on fat and gain weight. Lipogenesis employs compounds such as sugars and amino acids to synthesize the triglyceride precursors, glycerol and fatty acids. PGAL, one of the intermediates of glucose oxidation, can be converted to glycerol. As glucose and amino acids enter the citric acid cycle by way of acetyl-CoA, the acetyl-CoA can

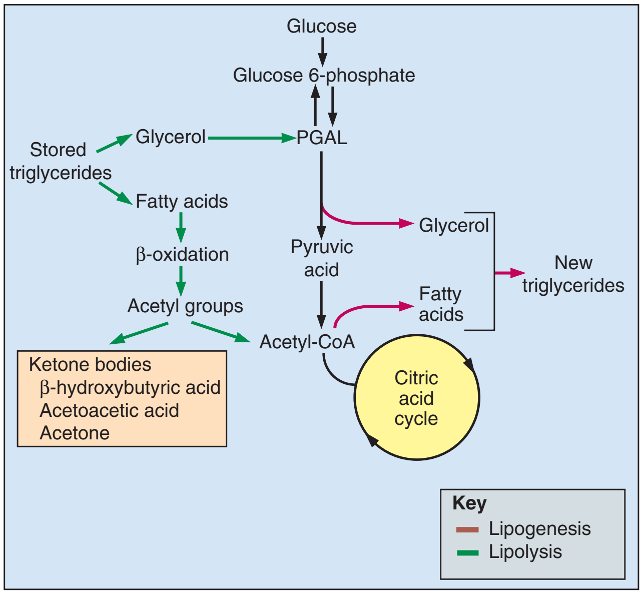


Figure 26.9 **Pathways of Lipolysis and Lipogenesis in Relation to Glycolysis and the Citric Acid Cycle.**
Name the acid-base imbalance that results from the accumulation of the ketone bodies shown here.

also be diverted to make fatty acids. The glycerol and fatty acids can then be condensed to form a triglyceride, which can be stored in the adipose tissue or converted to other lipids. These pathways are summarized in figure 26.9.

Lipolysis

Lipolysis, also shown in figure 26.9, begins with the hydrolysis of a triglyceride into glycerol and fatty acids—a process stimulated by epinephrine, norepinephrine, glucocorticoids, thyroid hormone, and growth hormone. The glycerol and fatty acids are further oxidized by separate pathways. Glycerol is easily converted to PGAL and thus enters the pathway of glycolysis. It generates only half as much ATP as glucose, however, because it is a C_3 compound compared to glucose (C_6); thus it leads to the production of only half as much pyruvic acid.

The fatty acid component is catabolized in the mitochondrial matrix by a process called **β-oxidation,** which removes two carbon atoms at a time. The resulting acetyl (C_2) groups are bonded to coenzyme A to make acetyl-CoA—the entry point into the citric acid cycle. A fatty acid of 16 carbon atoms can yield 129 molecules of ATP—obviously a much richer source of energy than a glucose molecule.

Excess acetyl groups can be metabolized by the liver in a process called **ketogenesis.** Two acetyl groups are condensed to form acetoacetic acid, and some of this is further converted to β-hydroxybutyric acid and acetone. These three products are the *ketone bodies.* Some cells convert acetoacetic acid back to acetyl-CoA and thus feed the C_2 fragments into the citric acid cycle to extract their energy. Cardiac muscle and the renal cortex, in fact, use acetoacetic acid as their principal fuel. When the body is rapidly oxidizing fats, however, excess ketone bodies accumulate. This causes the ketoacidosis typical of insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, in which cells must oxidize fats because they cannot absorb glucose.

Acetyl-CoA cannot go backward up the glycolytic pathway and produce glucose, because this pathway is irreversible past the point of pyruvic acid. While glycerol can be used for gluconeogenesis, fatty acids cannot.

It was mentioned earlier that inadequate carbohydrate intake interferes with the complete fat oxidation. This is because the mitochondrial reactions cannot proceed without oxaloacetic acid as a “pickup molecule” in the citric acid cycle. When carbohydrate intake is deficient, oxaloacetic acid is converted to glucose and becomes unavailable to the citric acid cycle. Under such circumstances, fat oxidation leads to ketogenesis and potentially to ketoacidosis. This is a serious risk of poorly planned diets with excessively restricted carbohydrate ingestion.

Proteins

About 100 g of tissue protein breaks down each day into free amino acids. These combine with the amino acids from the diet to form an **amino acid pool** that cells can draw upon to make new proteins. The fastest rate of tissue protein turnover is in the intestinal mucosa, where epithelial cells are replaced at a very high rate. Dead cells are digested along with the food and thus contribute to the amino acid pool. Of all the amino acid absorbed by the small intestine, about 50% is from the diet, 25% from dead epithelial cells, and 25% from enzymes that have digested each other.

Some amino acids in the pool can be converted to others. Free amino acids also can be converted to glucose and fat or directly used as fuel. Such conversions involve three processes: (1) **deamination,** the removal of an amino group ($-NH_2$); (2) **amination,** the addition of $-NH_2$; or (3) **transamination,** the transfer of $-NH_2$ from one molecule to another. The following discussion shows how these processes are involved in amino acid metabolism.

Use as Fuel

The first step in using amino acids as fuel is to deaminate them. After the $-NH_2$ group is removed, the remainder of the molecule is called a *keto acid.* Depending on which amino acid is involved, the resulting keto acid may be converted to pyruvic acid, acetyl-CoA, or one of the acids of the citric acid cycle (fig. 26.10). It is important to note that some of these reactions are reversible. When there is a

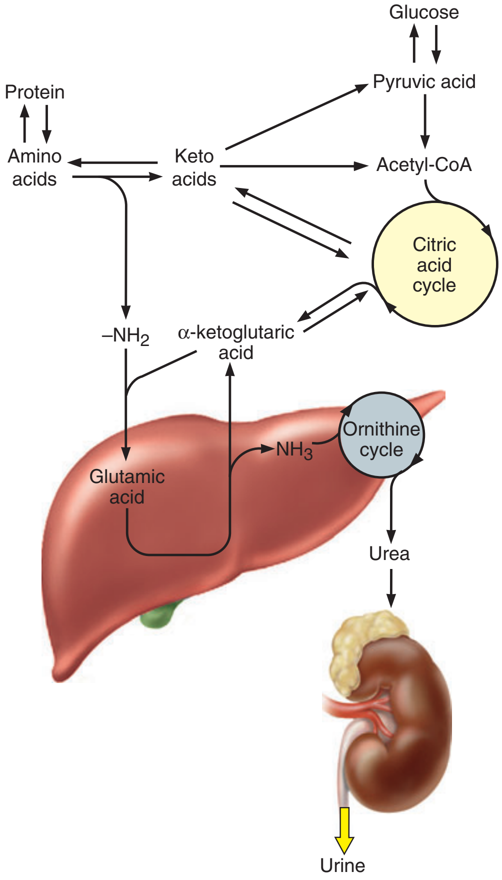

Glucose
Protein
Pyruvic acid
Amino acids
Keto acids
Acetyl-CoA
Citric acid cycle
$-NH_2$
α-ketoglutaric acid
Glutamic acid
NH_3
Ornithine cycle
Urea
Urine

Figure 26.10 Pathways of Amino Acid Metabolism in Relation to Glycolysis and the Citric Acid Cycle.
Find a pathway for gluconeogenesis in this diagram.

deficiency of amino acids in the body, citric acid cycle intermediates can be aminated and converted to amino acids, which are then available for protein synthesis. In gluconeogenesis, keto acids are used to synthesize glucose, essentially through a reversal of the glycolysis reactions.

Transamination, Ammonia, and Urea

When an amino acid is deaminated, its amino group is transferred to a citric acid cycle intermediate, α-ketoglutaric acid, converting it to glutamic acid. Such transamination reactions are the route by which several amino acids enter the citric acid cycle.

Glutamic acid can travel from any of the body's cells to the liver. Here its $-NH_2$ group is removed, converting it back to α-ketoglutaric acid. The $-NH_2$ becomes ammonia (NH_3), which is extremely toxic to cells and cannot be allowed to accumulate. The liver quickly converts ammonia to a less toxic form, urea, by a pathway called the **ornithine cycle** (fig. 26.11). Urea is then excreted in the urine as one of the body's nitrogenous wastes. Other nitrogenous wastes and their sources are described in chapter 23 (see p. 880). When a diseased liver cannot carry out the ornithine cycle, NH_3 accumulates in the blood and death from *hepatic coma* may ensue within a few days.

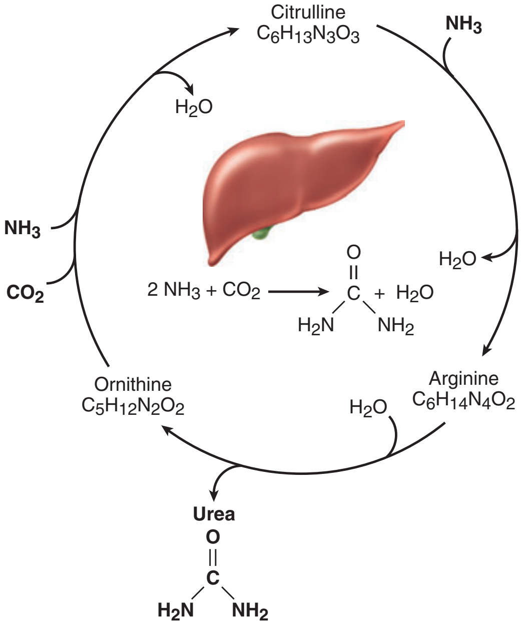

Citrulline $C_6H_{13}N_3O_3$
NH_3
H_2O
NH_3
CO_2
H_2O
$2\ NH_3 + CO_2 \longrightarrow$ O=C(H2N)(NH2) $+\ H_2O$
Ornithine $C_5H_{12}N_2O_2$
H_2O
Arginine $C_6H_{14}N_4O_2$
Urea
O
C
H_2N NH_2

Figure 26.11 Urea Synthesis in the Liver. The ornithine cycle converts ammonia and carbon dioxide to urea.

Protein Synthesis

Protein synthesis, described in detail in chapter 4, is a complex process involving DNA, mRNA, tRNA, ribosomes, and often the rough ER. It is stimulated by growth hormone, thyroid hormones, and insulin, and it requires a supply of all the amino acids necessary for a particular protein. The liver can make many of these amino acids from other amino acids or from citric acid cycle intermediates by transamination reactions. The essential amino acids, however, must be obtained from the diet.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

12. Which of the processes in table 26.6 is most comparable to lipogenesis? Which is most comparable to lipolysis? Explain.
13. When fats are converted to glucose, only the glycerol component is used in this way, not the fatty acid. Explain why and what happens to the fatty acids.
14. What metabolic process produces ammonia? How does the body dispose of ammonia?

Metabolic States and Metabolic Rate

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to
- define the absorptive and postabsorptive states;
- explain what happens to carbohydrates, fats, and proteins in each of these states;
- describe the hormonal and nervous regulation of each state;
- define *metabolic rate* and *basal metabolic rate;* and
- describe some factors that alter the metabolic rate.

Your metabolism changes from hour to hour depending on how long it has been since your last meal. The **absorptive (fed) state** lasts about 4 hours during and after a meal. This is a time in which nutrients are being absorbed and may be used immediately to meet energy and other needs. The **postabsorptive (fasting) state** prevails in the late morning, late afternoon, and overnight. During this time the stomach and small intestine are empty and the body's energy needs are met from stored fuels. The two states are compared in table 26.8 and explained in the following discussion.

The Absorptive State

In the absorptive state, blood glucose is readily available for ATP synthesis. It serves as the primary fuel and spares the body from having to draw on stored fuels. The status of major nutrient classes during this phase is as follows:

- **Carbohydrates.** Absorbed sugars are transported by the hepatic portal system to the liver. Most glucose passes through the liver and becomes available to cells everywhere in the body. Glucose in excess of immediate need, however, is absorbed by the liver and may be converted to glycogen or fat. Most fat synthesized in the liver is released into the circulation; its further fate is comparable to that of dietary fats, discussed next.
- **Fats.** Fats enter the lymph as chylomicrons and initially bypass the liver. As described earlier, lipoprotein lipase removes fats from the chylomicrons for uptake by the tissues, especially adipose and muscular tissue. The liver disposes of the chylomicron remnants. Fats are the primary energy substrate for hepatocytes, adipocytes, and muscle cells.
- **Amino acids.** Amino acids, like sugars, circulate first to the liver. Most pass through and become available to other cells for protein synthesis. Some, however, are removed by the liver and have one of the following fates: (1) to be used for protein synthesis; (2) to be deaminated and used as fuel for ATP synthesis; or (3) to be deaminated and used for fatty acid synthesis.

Regulation of the Absorptive State

The absorptive state is regulated largely by insulin, which is secreted in response to elevated blood glucose and amino acid levels and to the intestinal hormones gastrin, secretin, and cholecystokinin. Insulin regulates the rate of glucose uptake by nearly all cells except neurons, kidney cells, and erythrocytes, which have an independent rate of uptake. On other target cells, insulin has the following effects:

- Within minutes, it increases the cellular uptake of glucose by as much as 20-fold. As cells absorb glucose, the blood glucose concentration falls.
- It stimulates glucose oxidation, glycogenesis, and lipogenesis.
- It inhibits gluconeogenesis, which makes sense since blood glucose concentration is already high and there is no immediate need for more.

Table 26.8 Major Aspects of the Absorptive and Postabsorptive States

	Absorptive	Postabsorptive
Regulatory hormones	Principally insulin	Principally glucagon
	Also gastrin, secretin, CCK	Also epinephrine, growth hormone
Carbohydrate metabolism	Blood glucose rising	Blood glucose falling
	Glucose stored by glycogenesis	Glucose released by glycogenolysis
	Gluconeogenesis suppressed	Gluconeogenesis stimulated
Lipid metabolism	Lipogenesis occurring	Lipolysis occurring
	Lipid uptake from chylomicrons	Fatty acids oxidized for fuel
	Lipid storage in fat and muscle	Glycerol used for gluconeogenesis
Protein metabolism	Amino acid uptake, protein synthesis	Amino acids oxidized if glycogen and fat stores are inadequate for energy needs
	Excess amino acids burned as fuel	

- It stimulates the active transport of amino acids into cells and promotes protein synthesis.

Following a high-protein, low-carbohydrate meal, it may seem that the amino acids would stimulate insulin secretion, insulin would accelerate both amino acid and glucose uptake, and since there was relatively little glucose in the ingested food, this would create a risk of hypoglycemia. In actuality, this is prevented by the fact that a high amino acid level stimulates the secretion of *both* insulin and glucagon. Glucagon, you may recall, is an insulin antagonist (see chapter 17). It supports an adequate level of blood glucose to meet the needs of the brain.

The Postabsorptive State

The essence of the postabsorptive state is to homeostatically regulate blood glucose concentration within about 90 to 100 mg/dL. This is especially critical to the brain, which cannot use alternative energy substrates except in cases of prolonged fasting. The postabsorptive status of major nutrients is as follows:

- **Carbohydrates.** Glucose is drawn from the body's glycogen reserves (glycogenolysis) or synthesized from other compounds (gluconeogenesis). The liver usually stores enough glycogen after a meal to support 4 hours of postabsorptive metabolism before significant gluconeogenesis occurs.
- **Fats.** Adipocytes and hepatocytes hydrolyze fats and convert the glycerol to glucose. Free fatty acids (FFAs) cannot be converted to glucose, but they can favorably affect blood glucose concentration. As the liver oxidizes them to ketone bodies, other cells absorb and use these, or use FFAs directly, as their source of energy. By switching from glucose to fatty acid catabolism, they leave glucose for use by the brain (the glucose-sparing effect). After 4 to 5 days of fasting, the brain begins to use ketone bodies as supplemental fuel.
- **Proteins.** If glycogen and fat reserves are depleted, the body begins to use proteins as fuel. Some proteins are more resistant to catabolism than others. Collagen is almost never broken down for fuel, but muscle protein goes quickly. The extreme wasting away seen in cancer and some other chronic diseases, resulting from a loss of appetite (anorexia) as well as altered metabolism, is called **cachexia**[10] (ka-KEX-ee-ah).

Chapter 26

Regulation of the Postabsorptive State

Postabsorptive metabolism is more complex than the absorptive state. It is regulated mainly by the sympathetic nervous system and glucagon, but several other hormones are involved. As blood glucose level drops, insulin secretion declines and the pancreatic α cells secrete glucagon. Glucagon promotes glycogenolysis and gluconeogenesis, raising the blood glucose level, and it promotes lipolysis and a rise in FFA levels. Thus it makes both glucose and lipids available for fuel.

The sympathoadrenal system also promotes glycogenolysis and lipolysis, especially under conditions of injury, fear, anger, and other forms of stress. Adipose tissue is richly innervated by the sympathetic nervous system, while adipocytes, hepatocytes, and muscle cells also respond to epinephrine from the adrenal medulla. In circumstances where there is likely to be tissue injury and a need for repair, the sympathoadrenal system therefore mobilizes stored energy reserves and makes them available to meet the demands of tissue repair. Stress also stimulates the release of cortisol, which promotes fat and protein catabolism and gluconeogenesis (see chapter 17, p. 664).

Growth hormone is secreted in response to rapid drops in blood glucose level and in conditions of prolonged fasting. It opposes insulin and raises blood glucose concentration.

Metabolic Rate

Metabolic rate means the amount of energy liberated in the body per unit of time, expressed in such terms as kcal/hr or kcal/day. Metabolic rate can be measured directly by putting a person in a **calorimeter,** a closed chamber with water-filled walls that absorb the heat given off by the body. The rate of energy release is measured from the temperature change of the water. Metabolic rate can also be measured indirectly with a spirometer, an apparatus described in chapter 22 that can be used to measure the amount of oxygen a person consumes. For every liter of oxygen, approximately 4.82 kcal of energy is released from organic nutrients. This is only an estimate, because the number of kilocalories per liter of oxygen varies slightly with the type of nutrients the person is oxidizing at the time of measurement.

Metabolic rate depends on physical activity, mental state, absorptive or postabsorptive status, thyroid hormone and other hormones, and other factors. The **basal metabolic rate (BMR)** is a baseline or standard of comparison that minimizes the effects of such variables. It is your metabolic rate when you are awake but relaxed, in a room at comfortable temperature, in a postabsorptive state 12 to 14 hours after your last meal. It is not the minimum metabolic rate needed to sustain life, however. When you are asleep, your metabolic rate is slightly lower than your BMR. **Total metabolic rate** is the sum of BMR and energy expenditure for voluntary activities, especially muscular contractions.

The BMR of an average adult is about 2,000 kcal/day for a male and slightly less for a female. Roughly speaking, one must therefore consume at least 2,000 kcal/day to fuel his or her essential metabolic tasks—active transport, muscle tone, brain activity, cardiac and respiratory rhythms, renal function, and other essential processes. Even a relatively sedentary lifestyle requires another 500 kcal/day to support a low level of physical activity, and someone who does hard physical labor may require as much as 5,000 kcal/day.

---

[10] *cac* = bad + *exia* = body condition

Aside from physical activity, some factors that raise the total metabolic rate (TMR) and caloric requirements include pregnancy, anxiety (which stimulates epinephrine release and muscle tension), fever (TMR rises about 14% for each 1°C of body temperature), eating (TMR rises after a meal), and the catecholamine and thyroid hormones. TMR is relatively high in children and declines with age. Therefore, as we reach middle age we often find ourselves gaining weight with no apparent change in food intake.

Some factors that lower TMR include apathy, depression, and prolonged starvation. In weight-loss diets, loss is often rapid at first and then goes more slowly. This is partly because the initial loss is largely water and partly because the TMR drops over time, fewer dietary calories are "burned off," and there is more lipogenesis even with the same caloric intake.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

15. Define the absorptive and postabsorptive states. In which state is the body storing excess fuel? In which state is it drawing from these stored fuel reserves?
16. What hormone primarily regulates the absorptive state, and what are the major effects of this hormone?
17. Explain why triglycerides have a glucose-sparing effect.
18. List a variety of factors and conditions that raise a person's total metabolic rate above basal metabolic rate.

Body Heat and Thermoregulation

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- identify the principal sources of body heat;
- describe some factors that cause variations in body temperature;
- define and contrast the different forms of heat loss;
- describe how the hypothalamus monitors and controls body temperature; and
- describe conditions in which the body temperature is excessively high or low.

Heat generation must be matched by heat loss in order to maintain a stable internal body temperature. **Hypothermia,** an excessively low body temperature, can cause metabolism to slow down to the point that it cannot sustain life, whereas **hyperthermia,** an excessively high temperature, can disrupt the coordination of metabolic pathways and also lead to death. **Thermoregulation,** the balance between heat production and loss, is a critically important aspect of homeostasis. Thermoregulation was introduced in chapter 1 as an example of homeostasis.

Body Temperature

"Normal" body temperature depends on when, where, and in whom it is measured. Body temperature fluctuates about 1°C (1.8°F) in a 24-hour cycle. It tends to be lowest in the early morning and highest in the late afternoon. Temperature also varies from one place in the body to another.

The most important body temperature is the **core temperature**—the temperature of organs in the cranial, thoracic, and abdominal cavities. Rectal temperature is relatively easy to measure and gives an estimate of core temperature: usually 37.2° to 37.6°C (99.0°–99.7°F). It may be as high as 38.5°C (101°F) in active children and some adults.

Shell temperature is the temperature closer to the surface, especially skin and oral temperature. Here, heat is lost from the body and temperatures are slightly lower than rectal temperature. Adult oral temperature is typically 36.6° to 37.0°C (97.9°–98.6°F) but may be as high as 40°C (104°F) during hard exercise.

Heat Production and Loss

Most body heat comes from exergonic (energy-releasing) chemical reactions such as nutrient oxidation and ATP use. A little heat is generated by joint friction, blood flow, and other movements. At rest, most heat is generated by the brain, heart, liver, and endocrine glands; the skeletal muscles contribute about 20% to 30% of the total resting heat. Increased muscle tone or exercise greatly increases heat generation in the muscles, however; in vigorous exercise, they produce 30 to 40 times as much heat as the rest of the body.

The body loses heat in three ways—radiation, conduction, and evaporation:

1. **Radiation.** In essence, heat means molecular motion. All molecular motion produces radiation in the infrared (IR) region of the electromagnetic spectrum. When IR radiation is absorbed by an object, it increases its molecular motion and raises its temperature. Therefore IR radiation removes heat from its source and adds heat to anything that absorbs it. The heat lamps used in bathrooms and restaurants work on this principle. Our bodies continually receive IR from the objects around us and give off IR to our surroundings. Since we are

usually warmer than the objects around us, we usually lose more heat this way than we gain.

2. **Conduction.** As the molecules of our tissues vibrate with heat energy, they collide with other molecules and transfer kinetic energy to them. The warmth of your body therefore adds to the molecular motion and temperature of the clothes you wear, the chair you sit in, and the air around you. Conductive heat loss is aided by **convection,** the motion of a fluid due to uneven heating. Air is a fluid that becomes less dense and therefore rises as it is heated. Thus warm air rises from the body and is replaced by cooler air from below. The same is true of water; for example, when you swim in a lake or take a cool bath. You can easily see convection when you heat water in a clear container. Convection of the air around the human body can be seen by a technique called schlieren photography (fig. 26.12). Convection is not a separate category of heat loss in itself, but increases the rate of conductive heat loss.
3. **Evaporation.** The cohesion of water molecules hampers their vibratory movement in response to heat input. If the temperature of water is raised sufficiently, however, its molecular motion becomes great enough for molecules to break free and evaporate. Evaporation of water thus carries a substantial amount of heat with it (0.5 kcal/g). This is the significance of perspiration. Sweat wets the skin surface and its evaporation carries heat away. In extreme conditions, the body can lose up to 4 L of sweat per hour, which represents a heat loss of 2,000 kcal/hr. When you are sweaty and stand in front of a fan, you may feel refreshingly cooled or even uncomfortably cold. The rapid movement of heat-laden air away from the body **(forced convection)** accelerates heat removal, so a breeze or a fan enhances heat loss by conduction and evaporation. It has no effect on radiation.

The relative amounts of heat lost by different methods depend on prevailing conditions. A nude body at an air temperature of 21°C (70°F) loses about 60% of its heat by radiation, 18% by conduction, and 22% by evaporation. If air temperature is higher than skin temperature, evaporation becomes the only means of heat loss because radiation and conduction add more heat to the body than they remove. Hot, humid weather hinders even evaporative cooling because there is less of a humidity gradient from skin to air. Such conditions increase the risk of heatstroke (discussed shortly).

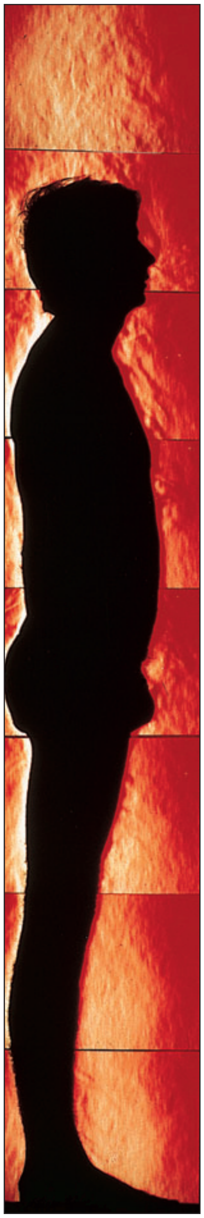


Figure 26.12 Heat Loss from the Body Demonstrated by Schlieren Photography. The body loses heat to the surrounding air by conduction, and the rising column of warm air then carries the heat away by convection, replacing it with cooler air from below.

Thermoregulation

Thermoregulation is achieved through several negative feedback loops. The preoptic area of the hypothalamus (anterior to the optic chiasm) has a nucleus called the **hypothalamic thermostat.** It monitors the temperature of the blood and receives signals also from **peripheral thermoreceptors** in the skin. In turn, it sends appropriate signals either to the **heat-losing center,** a nucleus still farther anterior in the hypothalamus, or to the **heat-promoting center,** a more posterior nucleus.

When the heat-losing center senses that the blood temperature is too high, it activates heat-losing mechanisms.

The first and simplest of these is cutaneous vasodilation, which increases blood flow close to the body surface and thus promotes heat loss. If this fails to restore normal temperature, the heat-losing center triggers sweating. It also inhibits the heat-promoting center.

When the heat-promoting center senses that the blood temperature is too low, it activates mechanisms to conserve body heat or generate more. By way of the sympathetic nervous system, it causes cutaneous vasoconstriction. Warm blood is then retained deeper in the body and less heat is lost through the skin. The sympathetic nervous system in other mammals also stimulates the piloerector muscles, which make the hair stand on end. This traps an insulating blanket of still air near the skin. The human sympathetic nervous system attempts to do this as well, but since our body hair is so scanty, the only noticeable effect of this is goose bumps.

If dermal vasoconstriction cannot restore or maintain normal core temperature, the body resorts to **shivering thermogenesis.** If you leave a warm house on a cold day, you may notice that your muscles become tense, sometimes even painfully taut, and you begin to shiver. Shivering involves a spinal reflex that causes tiny alternating contractions in antagonistic muscle pairs. Every muscle contraction releases heat from ATP, and shivering can increase the body's heat production as much as fourfold.

Nonshivering thermogenesis is a more long-term mechanism for generating heat, used especially in the colder seasons of the year. The sympathetic nervous system and thyroid hormone stimulate an increase in metabolic rate, which can rise as much as 30% after several weeks of cold weather. More nutrients are burned as fuel, we consume more calories to "stoke the furnace," and consequently, we have greater appetites in the winter than in the summer. Infants can generate heat by breaking down *brown fat,* a tissue in which lipolysis is not linked to ATP synthesis, so all the energy released from the fat is in the form of heat.

In addition to these physiological mechanisms, and of even greater importance, humans and other animals practice **behavioral thermoregulation**—behaviors that raise or lower the body's heat gains and losses. Just getting out of the sun greatly cuts down heat gain by radiation, for example, while shedding heavy clothing or kicking off a blanket at night helps to cool the body.

In summary, you can see that thermoregulation is a function of multiple organs: the brain, autonomic nerves, thyroid gland, skin, blood vessels, and skeletal muscles.

Disturbances of Thermoregulation

Chapter 21 described the mechanism of fever and its importance in combating infection. Fever is a normal protective mechanism that should be allowed to run its course if it is not excessively high. A body temperature above 42° to 43°C (108°–110°F), however, can be very dangerous. The high temperature elevates the metabolic rate, and the body generates heat faster than its heat-losing mechanisms can disperse it (see fig. 1.14). Thus the metabolic rate increases the fever and the fever increases the metabolic rate in a dangerous positive feedback loop. At a core body temperature of 44° to 45°C (111°–113°F), metabolic dysfunction and neurological damage can be fatal.

Exposure to excessive heat causes heat cramps, heat exhaustion, and heatstroke. **Heat cramps** are painful muscle spasms that result from excessive electrolyte loss in the sweat. They occur especially when a person begins to relax after strenuous exertion and heavy sweating. **Heat exhaustion** results from more severe electrolyte loss and is characterized by hypotension, dizziness, vomiting, and sometimes fainting. Prolonged heat waves, especially if accompanied by high humidity, bring on many deaths from **heatstroke** (sunstroke). The body gains heat by radiation and conduction, while the humidity retards evaporative cooling. The body temperature can rise as high as 43°C (110°F), and convulsions, coma, and death may suddenly occur.

Hypothermia can result from exposure to cold weather or immersion in icy water. It, too, entails life-threatening positive feedback loops. If the core temperature falls below 33°C (91°F), the metabolic rate drops so low that heat production cannot keep pace with heat loss, and the temperature falls even more. Death from cardiac fibrillation may occur below 32°C (90°F), but some people survive body temperatures as low as 29°C (84°F) in a state of suspended animation. A body temperature below 24°C (75°F) is usually fatal. It is dangerous to give alcohol to someone in a state of hypothermia; it produces an illusion of warmth but actually accelerates heat loss by dilating cutaneous blood vessels.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

19. What is the primary source of body heat? What are some lesser sources?
20. What mechanisms of heat loss are aided by convection?
21. Describe the major heat-promoting and heat-losing mechanisms of the body.
22. Describe the positive feedback loops that can cause death from hyperthermia and hypothermia.

Insight 26.4 Clinical Application

Alcohol and Alcoholism

Alcohol is not only a popular mind-altering drug but is also regarded in many cultures as a food staple. As a source of empty calories, an addictive drug, and a toxin, it can have a broad spectrum of adverse effects on the body.

Absorption and Metabolism

Alcohol is rapidly absorbed from the digestive tract—about 20% of it in the stomach and 80% in the proximal small intestine. Carbonation, as in beer and sparkling wines, increases its rate of absorption, whereas food reduces its absorption by delaying gastric emptying so the alcohol takes longer to reach its place of maximum absorption. Alcohol is soluble in both water and fat, so it is rapidly distributed to all body tissues and easily crosses the blood-brain barrier to exert its intoxicating effects on the brain.

Alcohol is detoxified by the hepatic enzyme *alcohol dehydrogenase,* which oxidizes it to acetaldehyde. This enters the citric acid cycle and is oxidized to CO_2 and H_2O. The average adult male can clear the blood of about 10 mL of 100% (200 proof) alcohol per hour—the amount in about 30 mL (1 oz) of whiskey or 355 mL (12 oz) of beer. Women have less alcohol dehydrogenase and clear alcohol from the bloodstream less quickly. They are also more vulnerable to alcohol-related illnesses such as cirrhosis of the liver (discussed shortly).

Tolerance to alcohol, the ability to "hold your liquor," results from two factors: behavioral modification, such as giving in less readily to lowered inhibitions, and increased levels of alcohol dehydrogenase in response to routine alcohol consumption. Alcohol dehydrogenase also deactivates other drugs, and drug dosages must be adjusted to compensate for this when treating alcoholics for other diseases.

Physiological Effects

Nervous System Alcohol is a depressant that inhibits the release of norepinephrine and disrupts the function of GABA receptors. In low doses, it depresses inhibitory synapses and creates sensations of confidence, euphoria, and giddiness. As the dosage rises, however, the breakdown products of ethanol enhance the diffusion of K^+ out of neurons, hyperpolarizing them and making them less responsive to neurotransmitters. Thus, the timing and coordination of communication between neurons is impaired, resulting in such symptoms of intoxication as slurred speech, poor coordination, and slower reaction time. These symptoms begin to become significant at a blood alcohol level of 80 to 100 mg/dL—the legal criterion of intoxication in many states. Above 400 mg/dL, alcohol can so disrupt the electrophysiology of neurons as to induce coma and death.

Liver The liver's role in metabolizing alcohol makes it especially susceptible to long-term toxic effects. Heavy drinking stresses the liver with a high load of acetaldehyde and acetate; this depletes its oxidizing agents and reduces its ability to catabolize these intermediates as well as fatty acids. Alcoholism often produces a greatly enlarged and fatty liver for multiple reasons: the calories provided by alcohol make it unnecessary to burn fat as fuel, fatty acids are poorly oxidized, and acetaldehyde is converted to new fatty acids. Acetaldehyde also causes inflammation of the liver and pancreas (*hepatitis* and *pancreatitis*), leading to disruption of digestive function. Acetaldehyde and other toxic intermediates destroy hepatocytes faster than they can be regenerated, and the liver exhibits extensive scarring and a lumpy or nodular surface—a state called *cirrhosis.* Many symptoms of alcoholism stem from deterioration of liver functions. Hepatic coma may occur as the liver becomes unable to produce urea, thus allowing ammonia to accumulate in the blood. Jaundice results from the liver's inability to excrete bilirubin.

Circulatory System Deteriorating liver functions exert several effects on the blood and cardiovascular system. Blood clotting is impaired because the liver cannot synthesize clotting factors adequately. Edema results from inadequate synthesis of blood albumin. Cirrhosis obstructs the hepatic portal blood circulation. Portal hypertension results, and combined with hypoproteinemia, this causes the liver and other organs to "weep" serous fluid into the peritoneal cavity. This leads to *ascites*[11] (ah-SY-teez)—swelling of the abdomen with as much as several liters of serous fluid. The combination of hypertension and impaired clotting often leads to hemorrhaging. *Hematemesis,*[12] the vomiting of blood, may occur as enlarged veins of the esophagus hemorrhage. Alcohol abuse also destroys myocardial tissue, reduces contractility of the heart, and causes cardiac arrhythmia.

Digestive System and Nutrition Alcohol breaks down the protective mucous barrier of the stomach and the tight junctions between its epithelial cells. Thus it may cause gastritis and bleeding. Alcohol is commonly believed to be a factor in peptic ulcers, but there is little concrete evidence of this. Heavy drinking, especially in combination with smoking, increases the incidence of esophageal cancer. Malnutrition is a typical complication of alcoholism, partly because the empty calories of alcohol suppress the appetite for more nutritious foods. The average American gets about 4.5% of his or her calories from alcohol (more when nondrinkers are excluded), but heavy drinkers may obtain half or more of their calories from alcohol and have less appetite for foods that would meet their other nutritional requirements. In addition, acetaldehyde interferes with vitamin absorption and use. Thiamine deficiency is common in alcoholism, and thiamine is routinely given to alcoholics in treatment.

Addiction

Alcohol is the most widely available addictive drug in America. In many respects it is almost identical to barbiturates in its toxic effects, its potential for tolerance and dependence, and the risk of overdose. The difference is that obtaining barbiturates usually requires a prescription, while obtaining alcohol requires, at most, proof of age.

Alcoholism is defined by a combination of criteria, including the pathological changes just described; physiological tolerance of high concentrations; impaired physiological, psychological, and social functionality; and withdrawal symptoms occurring when intake is reduced or stopped. Heavy drinking followed by a period of abstinence—for example, when a patient is admitted to the hospital and cannot get access to alcohol—may trigger *delirium tremens (DT),* characterized by restlessness, insomnia, confusion, irritability, tremors, incoherent speech, hallucinations, convulsions, and coma. DT has a 5% to 15% mortality rate.

Most alcoholism (type I) sets in after age 25 and is usually associated with stress or peer pressure. These influences lead to increased drinking, which can start a vicious cycle of illness, reduced job performance, family and social problems, arrest, and other stresses leading to still more drinking. A smaller number of alcoholics have type II alcoholism, which is at least partially hereditary. Most people with type II alcoholism are men who become addicted before age 25, especially the sons of other type II alcoholics. Type II alcoholics show abnormally rapid increases in blood acetaldehyde levels when they drink, and they have unusual brain waves (EEGs) even when not drinking. Children of alcoholics have a higher than average incidence of becoming alcoholic even when raised by nonalcoholic foster parents. It is by no means inevitable that such people will become alcoholics, but stress or peer pressure can trigger alcoholism more easily in those who are genetically predisposed to it.

Alcoholism is treated primarily through behavior modification—abstinence, peer support, avoidance or correction of the stresses that encourage drinking, and sometimes psychotherapy. The drug disulfiram (Antabuse) is used to support behavior modification programs. It inhibits the breakdown of acetaldehyde and thus heightens its short-term toxic effects. A person who takes Antabuse and drinks alcohol experiences headache, vomiting, tachycardia, chest pain, and hyperventilation and is less likely to look upon alcohol as a means of pleasure or escape.

---

[11] *asc* = bag + *ites* = like, resembling
[12] *hemat* = blood + *emesis* = vomiting

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

Nutrition (p. 986)

1. Body weight is stable when average daily energy intake and output are equal. Weight appears to have a homeostatic set point determined partly by heredity. About 30% to 50% of the difference in weight between people is hereditary and the rest is due to eating and exercise habits and other environmental variables.
2. Appetite is regulated by a hypothalamic *feeding center* that produces a sensation of hunger and a *satiety center* that produces a sensation of satisfaction.
3. Hunger is suppressed by *leptin, cholecystokinin,* and neurons called *glucostats,* and is briefly inhibited even by chewing and swallowing. Hunger is stimulated by *endocannabinoids, neuropeptide Y,* and the *hunger contractions* of an empty stomach.
4. Dietary Calories (kilocalories) come predominantly from carbohydrates, fats, and proteins. "Empty calories" are calories gained from foods such as sugar and alcohol that provide little or no other nutrition.
5. *Nutrients* are ingested chemicals that provide material for growth, repair, and maintenance of the body. Dietary substances that never become part of the body's tissues (for example, fiber) are not considered nutrients but are nevertheless important components of a healthy diet. Some nutrients (water, minerals, vitamins) require no digestion and yield no calories.
6. Water, carbohydrates, lipids, and proteins are required in relatively large amounts and are thus called *macronutrients.* Minerals and vitamins are needed in small amounts and are thus called *micronutrients.*
7. *Essential nutrients* must be included in the diet because the body cannot synthesize them from other chemicals.
8. Carbohydrates are used as fuel and as structural components of many biological molecules.
9. In the body, the carbohydrate fuels are blood glucose and liver and muscle glycogen. The balance between glycogen and glucose is regulated by insulin and glucagon.
10. Starch is the most quantitatively significant digestible dietary carbohydrate, but significant quantities of lactose, sucrose, and fructose are ingested, especially in processed foods with added sweeteners.
11. Dietary fiber includes cellulose, pectin, gums, and lignin. Fiber promotes intestinal motility and reduces the risk of colon cancer. Water-soluble fiber (pectin) also lowers the levels of blood cholesterol and harmful low-density lipoproteins (LDLs).
12. Fat contains most of the body's stored energy. Being hydrophobic and less oxidized than carbohydrates, fats contain more than twice as many calories per gram as carbohydrates do.
13. The use of fats for fuel spares glucose and proteins for use by other tissues or for other purposes.
14. Other lipids important in human metabolism and structure include phospholipids, cholesterol, fat-soluble vitamins, prostaglandins, and eicosanoids.
15. Essential fatty acids—linoleic and possibly linolenic and arachidonic acids—must be included in the diet because the body cannot synthesize them.
16. Lipids are transported in the blood as *lipoproteins*—droplets of cholesterol and triglycerides coated with proteins and phospholipids. The types of lipoproteins are chylomicrons, which are formed in the small intestine and transport dietary lipids throughout the body; very low–density lipoproteins (VLDLs), which transport lipids from the liver to the adipose tissue; low-density lipoproteins (LDLs), which are the remainders of the VLDLs after triglycerides are removed, and which transport cholesterol to cells that need it; and high-density lipoproteins (HDLs), which transport excess cholesterol back to the liver for disposal.
17. A high LDL concentration indicates a heightened risk of cardiovascular disease, while a high HDL concentration is beneficial to cardiovascular health.
18. Protein typically constitutes 12% to 15% of the body mass and performs a wider variety of structural and physiological roles than any other class of biological molecules.
19. The nutritional value of a protein depends on whether it provides the right proportions of the various amino acids, especially the eight *essential amino acids. Complete proteins* supply all the essential amino acids in the proportions needed for the human body. The body makes more efficient use of animal proteins than of plant proteins.
20. *Nitrogen balance* is a state in which average daily nitrogen intake and output are equal. A greater intake than output *(positive nitrogen balance)* is typical of childhood, pregnancy, resistance training, and other states of tissue growth. Greater output than intake *(negative nitrogen balance)* is typical in stress, muscle atrophy, and malnutrition.
21. *Minerals* are inorganic elements acquired from the soil by way of plants. Calcium and phosphorus are the body's most abundant minerals; sodium is a close third. Several others are present in relatively small quantities (table 26.3) but are vitally important.
22. *Vitamins* are small organic molecules that are not used for fuel (caloric content), but are necessary to metabolism. They act as coenzymes, antioxidants, components of visual pigments, and in other roles.
23. Vitamin C and the B vitamins are the *water-soluble vitamins;* vitamins A,

D, E, and K are the *fat-soluble vitamins.*

24. Vitamin deficiencies cause a variety of illnesses, although vitamin excesses *(hypervitaminosis)* can also be quite harmful.

Carbohydrate Metabolism (p. 996)

1. The complete oxidation of glucose has the equation $C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6\ O_2 \rightarrow 6\ CO_2 + 6\ H_2O$.
2. The coenzymes NAD^+ and FAD are especially important in transferring electrons from one metabolic pathway to another in this process.
3. Glucose oxidation begins with a pathway called *glycolysis,* which splits glucose into two pyruvic acid molecules and has a net yield of 2 ATP per glucose.
4. In the absence of oxygen, pyruvic acid is reduced to lactic acid in a one-step reaction called *anaerobic fermentation.* The primary purpose of this is to regenerate NAD^+, which is needed to keep glycolysis running and producing ATP.
5. In the presence of oxygen, pyruvic acid enters a pathway called *aerobic respiration,* which produces much more ATP and has end products (CO_2 and H_2O) that are less toxic than lactic acid. Aerobic respiration occurs in the mitochondria.
6. The first principal group of reactions in aerobic respiration are the *matrix reactions,* mainly the *citric acid cycle.* This cycle breaks pyruvic acid down to CO_2, generates 2 ATP per glucose, and most importantly, generates 8 NADH and 2 $FADH_2$.
7. The final reactions of aerobic respiration are the *membrane reactions,* which occur on the inner mitochondrial membrane. Enzymes and other electron carriers here transport electrons from NADH and $FADH_2$ to oxygen, producing water as an end product. More importantly, the energy from these electron transfers drives *proton pumps,* which create a steep H^+ gradient between the mitochondrial membranes. This gradient drives a *chemiosmotic mechanism* by which *ATP synthase* generates ATP.
8. Glycolysis and aerobic respiration collectively produce up to 38 ATP per glucose, with the number varying slightly from one tissue type to another.
9. Glucose in excess of the body's immediate needs can be converted to fat or polymerized and stored as glycogen. *Glycogenesis* is the synthesis of glycogen. *Glycogenolysis* is the hydrolysis of glycogen to release glucose. *Gluconeogenesis* is the synthesis of glucose from glycerol (derived from fats) or amino acids.
10. The liver carries out these processes of carbohydrate metabolism among many other functions (table 26.7).

Lipid and Protein Metabolism (p. 1004)

1. Adipocytes store and release most of the body's fat (triglycerides).
2. *Lipogenesis* is the synthesis of fats from precursors such as sugars and amino acids.
3. *Lipolysis* is the breakdown of fats, starting with hydrolysis and continuing with oxidation of the fatty acids and glycerol. Fatty acids are degraded by the process of β-*oxidation.* Oxidation of a typical fatty acid can yield 129 ATPs—much more than glucose oxidation.
4. Incomplete fatty acid oxidation produces acidic *ketone bodies,* a process called *ketogenesis.* Ketone bodies can be used as fuel but an excess can cause dangerous ketoacidosis, as it does in diabetes mellitus.
5. Proteins turn over at an average rate of about 100 g/day, with especially high turnover in the intestinal mucosa.
6. Free amino acids in the *amino acid pool* can be used to synthesize new proteins, converted to glucose or fat, or oxidized as fuel.
7. Amino acid catabolism entails *deamination,* the removal of the amino group. The amino group eventually becomes ammonia (NH_3). The liver combines ammonia and CO_2 to produce urea, which is a less toxic waste product than ammonia and the most abundant nitrogenous waste in the blood and urine.

Metabolic States and Metabolic Rate (p. 1007)

1. The *absorptive state* lasts about 4 hours after a meal. During this time, nutrients are absorbed from the intestine and may be used immediately. Glucose level is high and excess glucose is stored as glycogen or converted to fat.
2. The absorptive state is regulated mainly by insulin, which promotes glucose uptake and oxidation, glycogenesis, and lipogenesis; promotes protein synthesis; and inhibits gluconeogenesis.
3. The *postabsorptive state* prevails between meals and overnight, when the stomach is empty and the body uses stored fuels. Glycogenolysis and gluconeogenesis maintain the blood glucose level during this state. Fatty acids derived from lipolysis are used as fuel by many cells.
4. The postabsorptive state is regulated by multiple hormones. Glucagon, epinephrine, and norepinephrine promote lipolysis, glycogenolysis; cortisol promotes fat and protein catabolism; cortisol and glucagon promote gluconeogenesis; and growth hormone raises blood glucose by antagonizing insulin.
5. *Metabolic rate* is the amount of energy released in the body in a given time, such as kcal/day. It varies according to metabolic state and physical, mental, and hormonal conditions. *Basal metabolic rate* (BMR) is a standard of reference based on a comfortable, resting, awake, postabsorptive state. *Total metabolic rate* is a higher nonresting rate that takes muscular activity into account.
6. BMR is about 2,000 kcal/day. A low level of physical activity increases daily energy needs to about 2,500 kcal/day, and hard physical labor can increase them to as much as 5,000 kcal/day. Metabolic rate also varies with age, sex, mental state, stress, and health or illness.

Body Heat and Thermoregulation (p. 1009)

1. *Thermoregulation* is the homeostatic control of body temperature. Excessively high or low body temperatures (*hyperthermia* and *hypothermia*) can be fatal.
2. *Core temperature* can be estimated from rectal temperature and is usually 37.2° to 37.6°C. Shell temperature, usually estimated from oral temperature, is usually 36.6° to 37.0°C.
3. Body heat is generated mainly by exergonic chemical reactions, especially in the brain, heart, liver, and endocrine glands at rest and in the skeletal muscles during activity. The body loses heat by radiation, conduction, and evaporation.

4. The *hypothalamic thermostat* monitors blood temperature and receives signals from peripheral thermoreceptors in the skin.
5. To rid the body of excess heat, the thermostat sends signals to a hypothalamic *heat-losing center,* which triggers cutaneous vasodilation and sweating.
6. To generate and retain heat, the thermostat sends signals to a hypothalamic *heat-promoting center,* which triggers shivering and cutaneous vasoconstriction.
7. Heat can also be produced by *nonshivering thermogenesis,* in which the metabolic rate is increased and releases more heat from organic fuels.
8. *Behavioral thermoregulation* includes behaviors that adjust body temperature, such as adding or removing clothes, or getting into the shade or sun.
9. *Heat cramps, heat exhaustion,* and *heatstroke* are three effects of hyperthermia. Hyperthermia can be fatal if the body temperature reaches 43°C. Hypothermia may be fatal if the core temperature reaches 32°C or lower.

Selected Vocabulary

feeding center	986
satiety center	986
nutrient	988
high-density lipoprotein	991
low-density lipoprotein	991
glycolysis	996
anaerobic fermentation	996
aerobic respiration	996
glycogenesis	1002
glycogenolysis	1002
gluconeogenesis	1003
lipogenesis	1004
lipolysis	1004
ketogenesis	1005
absorptive state	1007
postabsorptive state	1007
basal metabolic rate	1008
hypothermia	1009
hyperthermia	1009
thermogenesis	1011

Testing Your Recall

1. ______ are not used as fuel and are required in relatively small quantities.
    a. Micronutrients
    b. Macronutrients
    c. Essential nutrients
    d. Proteins
    e. Lipids

2. The only significant digestible polysaccharide in the diet is
    a. glycogen.
    b. cellulose.
    c. starch.
    d. maltose.
    e. fiber.

3. Which of the following stores the greatest amount of energy for the smallest amount of space in the body?
    a. glucose
    b. triglycerides
    c. glycogen
    d. proteins
    e. vitamins

4. The lipoproteins that remove cholesterol from the tissues are
    a. chylomicrons.
    b. lipoprotein lipases.
    c. VLDLs.
    d. LDLs.
    e. HDLs.

5. Proteins serve all of the following functions *except* to act as
    a. enzymes.
    b. coenzymes.
    c. hormones.
    d. antibodies.
    e. structural support for cells.

6. The primary function of B-complex vitamins is to act as
    a. structural components of cells.
    b. sources of energy.
    c. components of pigments.
    d. antioxidants.
    e. coenzymes.

7. FAD is reduced to $FADH_2$ in
    a. glycolysis.
    b. anaerobic fermentation.
    c. the citric acid cycle.
    d. the electron-transport chain.
    e. β-oxidation of lipids.

8. The primary, direct benefit of anaerobic fermentation is to
    a. regenerate NAD^+.
    b. produce $FADH_2$.
    c. produce lactic acid.
    d. dispose of pyruvic acid.
    e. produce more ATP than glycolysis does.

9. Which of these occurs in the mitochondrial matrix?
    a. glycolysis
    b. chemiosmosis
    c. the cytochrome reactions
    d. the citric acid cycle
    e. anaerobic fermentation

10. When the body emits more infrared energy than it absorbs, it is losing heat by
    a. convection.
    b. forced convection.
    c. conduction.
    d. radiation.
    e. evaporation.

11. A/an ______ protein lacks one or more essential amino acids.

12. In the postabsorptive state, glycogen is hydrolyzed to liberate glucose. This process is called ______.

13. Synthesis of glucose from amino acids or triglycerides is called ______.

14. The major nitrogenous waste resulting from protein catabolism is ______.

15. The organ that synthesizes the nitrogenous waste in question 14 is the ______.

16. The absorptive state is regulated mainly by the hormone ______.

17. The temperature of organs in the body cavities is called ______.

18. The feeding center, satiety center, heat-losing center, and heat-promoting center are nuclei located in part of the brain called the ______.

19. The brightly colored, iron-containing, electron-transfer molecules of the inner mitochondrial membrane are called ______.
20. The flow of H^+ from the intermembrane space to the mitochondrial matrix creates an electrical current used by the enzyme ______ to make ______.

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. Orexin and leptin are two hormones that stimulate the appetite.
2. Water is a nutrient, but oxygen and cellulose are not.
3. An extremely low-fat diet can cause vitamin-deficiency diseases.
4. Most of the body's cholesterol comes from the diet.
5. There is no harm in maximizing one's daily protein intake.
6. Aerobic respiration produces more ATP than anaerobic fermentation.
7. Reactions occurring on the mitochondrial inner membrane produce more ATP than glycolysis and the matrix reactions combined.
8. Gluconeogenesis occurs especially in the absorptive state during and shortly after a meal.
9. Brown fat generates more ATP than white fat and is therefore especially important for thermoregulation.
10. At a comfortable air temperature, the body loses more heat as infrared radiation than by any other means.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. Cyanide blocks the transfer of electrons from cytochrome a_3 to oxygen. In light of this, explain why it causes sudden death. Also explain whether cyanide poisoning could be treated by giving a patient supplemental oxygen, and justify your answer.
2. Chapter 17 defines and describes some hormone actions that are synergistic and antagonistic. Identify some synergistic and antagonistic hormone interactions in the postabsorptive state of metabolism.
3. Mrs. Jones, a 42-year-old, complains that, "Everything I eat goes to fat. But my husband and my son eat twice as much as I do, and they're both as skinny as can be." How would you explain this to her?
4. A television advertisement proclaims, "Feeling tired? Need more energy? Order your supply of Zippy Megavitamins and feel better fast!" Your friend Cathy is about to send in her order, and you try to talk her out of wasting her money. Summarize the argument you would use.
5. Explain why a patient whose liver has been extensively damaged by hepatitis could show elevated concentrations of thyroid hormone and bilirubin in the blood.

Chapter 26

Answers at the Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Legend Questions

26.2	A high HDL:LDL ratio indicates that excess cholesterol is being transported to the liver for removal from the body. A high LDL:HDL ratio indicates a high rate of cholesterol deposition in the walls of the arteries.
26.3	It would stop at step 4 and PGAL would accumulate. Anaerobic fermentation replenishes NAD^+.
26.5	NADH and $FADH_2$
26.9	Acidosis (or ketoacidosis or metabolic acidosis)
26.10	From amino acids to keto acids to pyruvic acid to glucose

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.

Seminiferous tubules, where sperm are produced. Sperm tails are seen as hairlike masses in some tubules (SEM)

CHAPTER 27

The Male Reproductive System

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Sexual Reproduction 1018
- The Essence of Sex 1018
- The Two Sexes 1018
- Overview of the Reproductive System 1018

Sex Determination and Development 1019
- Role of the Sex Chromosomes 1019
- Hormones and Sex Differentiation 1019
- Development of the External Genitalia 1021
- Descent of the Testes 1021

Male Reproductive Anatomy 1023
- Testes 1023
- Scrotum 1024
- Spermatic Ducts 1028
- Accessory Glands 1028
- Penis 1029

Puberty and Climacteric 1030
- Endocrine Control of Puberty 1030
- Aging and Sexual Function 1031

Sperm and Semen 1032
- Meiosis 1032
- Spermatogenesis 1034
- The Spermatozoon 1035
- Semen 1035

Male Sexual Response 1037
- Anatomical Foundations 1038
- Excitement and Plateau 1040
- Orgasm and Ejaculation 1040
- Resolution 1041

Chapter Review 1043

INSIGHTS

27.1 **Clinical Application:** Androgen-Insensitivity Syndrome 1021

27.2 **Clinical Application:** Prostate Diseases 1029

27.3 **Clinical Application:** Reproductive Effects of Pollution 1037

27.4 **Clinical Application:** Viagra—A Treatment for Erectile Dysfunction 1040

27.5 **Clinical Application:** Sexually Transmitted Diseases 1041

Brushing Up

To understand this chapter, it is important that you understand or brush up on the following concepts:

- Stages of mitosis (p. 143)
- Chromosome structure (p. 145)
- The karyotype (p. 146)
- Muscles of the pelvic floor (p. 350)
- Hypothalamic releasing factors (p. 639)
- Pituitary gonadotropins (p. 640)
- Negative feedback inhibition of the pituitary (p. 645)
- Androgens (p. 652)

From all we have learned of the structure and function of the human body, it seems a wonder that it works at all! The fact is, however, that even with modern medicine we cannot keep it working forever. The body suffers various degenerative changes as we age, and eventually we expire. Yet our genes live on in new containers—our offspring. The production of offspring is the subject of these last three chapters. In this chapter, we examine some general aspects of human reproductive biology and then focus on the role of the male in reproduction. Chapter 28 focuses on the female and chapter 29 on the embryonic development of humans and on changes at the other end of the life span–the changes of old age.

Sexual Reproduction

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- define *sexual reproduction;*
- identify the most fundamental biological distinction between male and female; and
- define *primary sex organs, secondary sex organs,* and *secondary sex characteristics.*

The Essence of Sex

Reproduction is one of the fundamental properties of all living things. Many organisms reproduce simply by fission (splitting in two) or by budding off miniature replicas of themselves. These are asexual processes that produce exact genetic copies of the parent. Most organisms, however, reproduce sexually. **Sexual reproduction** does not necessarily entail copulation or even physical contact between the parents—many species merely shed sex cells into the sea and the parents never meet. The essence of sexual reproduction is that each offspring has two parents and a combination of genes from both. Thus the offspring are not genetically identical to their parents and usually not even to each other. Genetic diversity provides the foundation for the survival and evolution of a species and has been such a substantial advantage that it is employed by the great majority of organisms.

Chapter 27

The Two Sexes

To reproduce sexually means that the parents must produce **gametes**[1] (sex cells) that can meet and combine their genes in a **zygote**[2] (fertilized egg). The gametes must have two properties for reproduction to be successful: (1) motility, so they can achieve contact, and (2) nutrients for the developing embryo. A single cell cannot perform both of these roles very well, because to contain ample nutrients means to be relatively large and heavy, and this is inconsistent with the need for motility. Therefore, these tasks are usually apportioned to two kinds of gametes. The small motile one—little more than DNA with a propeller—is the **sperm (spermatozoon),** while the large nutrient-laden one is the **egg (ovum).**

It is usually easy to distinguish a human male and female from each other, but this is not so obvious in many other species. By definition, an individual that produces eggs is female and one that produces sperm is male. Even in humans, this criterion is not always that simple—for example, when considering some abnormalities in sexual development to be discussed later. Genetically, any individual with a Y sex chromosome is classified as male and any individual lacking a Y chromosome (usually but not always having two X chromosomes) is classified as female.

In mammals, the female is also the parent that provides a sheltered internal environment for the development and prenatal nutrition of the embryo. For fertilization and development to occur in the female, the male must have a copulatory organ, the penis, for introducing his gametes into the female reproductive tract and the female must have a copulatory organ, the vagina, for receiving the sperm. This is the most obvious difference between the sexes, but appearances can be deceiving (see fig. 17.27, p. 669 and insight 27.1).

Overview of the Reproductive System

The reproductive system consists of primary and secondary sex organs. The **primary sex organs,** or **gonads,**[3] are organs that produce the gametes—**testes (testicles)** of the male and **ovaries** of the female. The **secondary sex organs** are organs other than the gonads that are essential to reproduction. In the male, they constitute a system of ducts, glands, and the penis, concerned with the storage, survival, and conveyance of sperm. In the female, they include the uterine tubes, uterus, and vagina, concerned with uniting the sperm and egg and harboring the developing fetus.

Secondary sex characteristics are features that develop at puberty, further distinguish the sexes, and play a role in mate attraction. They typically appear only as an animal approaches sexual maturity (during adolescence in humans). From the call of a bullfrog to the tail of a peacock, these are well known in the animal kingdom. In human males, secondary sex characteristics include pubic, axillary, and facial hair, relatively coarse and visible hair on the torso and limbs, apocrine glands, a relatively muscular physique, and a relatively low-pitched voice.

---

[1] *gam* = marriage, union
[2] *zygo* = yoke, union
[3] *gon* = seed

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

1. Define *gonad* and *gamete*. Explain the relationship between the terms.
2. Define *male*, *female*, *sperm*, and *egg*.

Sex Determination and Development

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- explain the role of the sex chromosomes in determining sex;
- explain how the Y chromosome determines the response of the fetal gonad to prenatal hormones;
- identify which of the male and female external genitalia are homologous to each other; and
- describe the descent of the testes and explain why it is important.

Role of the Sex Chromosomes

Most of our cells have 23 pairs of chromosomes: 22 pairs of *autosomes* and 1 pair of *sex chromosomes* (see fig. 4.15, p. 146). A sex chromosome can either be a large X chromosome or a small Y chromosome. Every egg contains an X chromosome, but half of the sperm carry an X while the other half carry a Y. If an egg is fertilized with an X-bearing sperm, it produces an XX zygote that is destined to become a female. If it is fertilized with a Y-bearing sperm, it produces an XY zygote destined to become a male. Thus the sex of a child is determined at conception (fertilization), and not by the mother's egg but by the sperm that fertilizes it (fig. 27.1).

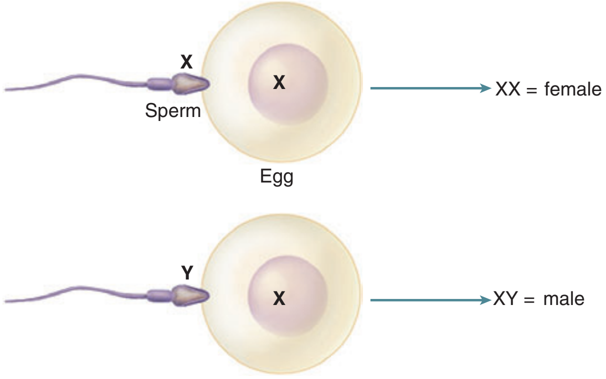


Figure 27.1 Chromosomal Sex Determination. All eggs carry the X chromosome. The sex of a child is determined by whether the egg is fertilized by an X-bearing sperm or a Y-bearing sperm.

Hormones and Sex Differentiation

Sex determination does not end with fertilization, however. It requires an interaction between genetics and the hormones produced by the mother and fetus. Just as we have seen with other hormones (see chapter 17), those involved here require specific receptors on their target cells to exert an effect.

Up to a point, a fetus is sexually undifferentiated, or "noncommittal" as to which sex it will become. Its gonads begin to develop at 5 to 6 weeks as *gonadal ridges,* each lying alongside a primitive kidney, the *mesonephros,* which later degenerates. Adjacent to each gonadal ridge are two ducts, the **mesonephric**[4] (MEZ-oh-NEF-ric) **(wolffian**[5]**) duct,** which originally serves the mesonephros, and the **paramesonephric**[6] **(müllerian**[7]**) duct.** In males, the mesonephric ducts develop into the reproductive tract and the paramesonephric ducts degenerate. In females, the opposite occurs (fig. 27.2).

But why? The Y chromosome has a gene called **SRY** (sex-determining region of the Y) that codes for a protein called **testis-determining factor (TDF).** TDF then interacts with genes on some of the other chromosomes, including a gene on the X chromosome for androgen receptors, and those genes initiate the development of male anatomy. By 8 to 9 weeks, the male has an identifiable testis that begins to secrete testosterone. Each testis stimulates the mesonephric duct on its own side to develop into the system of male reproductive ducts. By this time, the testis also secretes a hormone called **müllerian-inhibiting factor (MIF)** that causes atrophy of the paramesonephric (müllerian) duct on that side. Even an adult male, however, retains a tiny Y-shaped vestige of the paramesonephric ducts, like a vestigial uterus and uterine tubes, in the area of the prostatic urethra. It is named the *uterus masculinus.*

It may seem as if androgens should induce the formation of a male reproductive tract and estrogens induce a female reproductive tract. However, estrogen levels are always high during pregnancy, so if this mechanism were the case, they would feminize all fetuses. Thus the development of a female results from the absence of androgens, not the presence of estrogens (see insight 27.1).

---

[4] *meso* = middle + *nephr* = kidney; named for a temporary embryonic kidney, the mesonephros

[5] Kaspar F. Wolff (1733–94), German anatomist

[6] *para* = next to

[7] Johannes P. Müller (1801–58), German physician

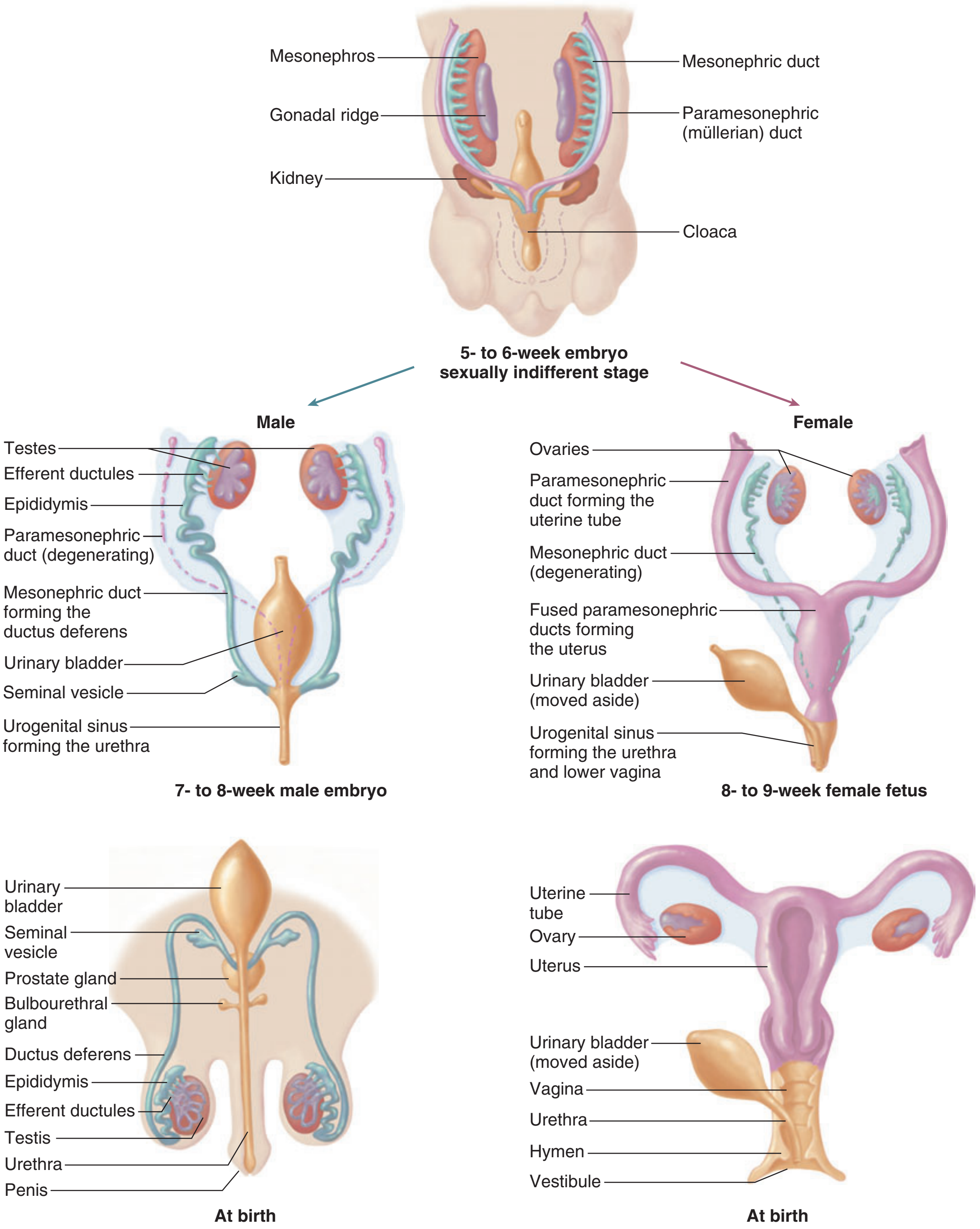

Mesonephros
Gonadal ridge
Kidney
Mesonephric duct
Paramesonephric (müllerian) duct
Cloaca
5- to 6-week embryo sexually indifferent stage
Male
Testes
Efferent ductules
Epididymis
Paramesonephric duct (degenerating)
Mesonephric duct forming the ductus deferens
Urinary bladder
Seminal vesicle
Urogenital sinus forming the urethra
7- to 8-week male embryo
Female
Ovaries
Paramesonephric duct forming the uterine tube
Mesonephric duct (degenerating)
Fused paramesonephric ducts forming the uterus
Urinary bladder (moved aside)
Urogenital sinus forming the urethra and lower vagina
8- to 9-week female fetus
Urinary bladder
Seminal vesicle
Prostate gland
Bulbourethral gland
Ductus deferens
Epididymis
Efferent ductules
Testis
Urethra
Penis
At birth
Uterine tube
Ovary
Uterus
Urinary bladder (moved aside)
Vagina
Urethra
Hymen
Vestibule
At birth

Figure 27.2 **Embryonic Development of the Male and Female Reproductive Tracts.** Note that the male tract develops from the mesonephric duct and the female tract from the paramesonephric duct, while the other duct in each sex degenerates.

Insight 27.1 Clinical Application

Androgen-Insensitivity Syndrome

Occasionally, a girl shows all the usual changes of puberty except that she fails to menstruate. Physical examination shows the presence of testes in the abdomen and a karyotype reveals that she has the XY chromosomes of a male. The testes produce normal male levels of testosterone, but the target cells lack receptors for it. This is called *androgen-insensitivity syndrome (AIS)*, or *testicular feminization.*

The external genitals develop female anatomy as if no testosterone were present. At puberty, breasts and other feminine secondary sex characteristics develop (fig. 27.3) because the testes secrete small amounts of estrogen and there is no overriding influence of testosterone. However, there is no uterus or menstruation. If the abdominal testes are not removed, the person has a high risk of testicular cancer.

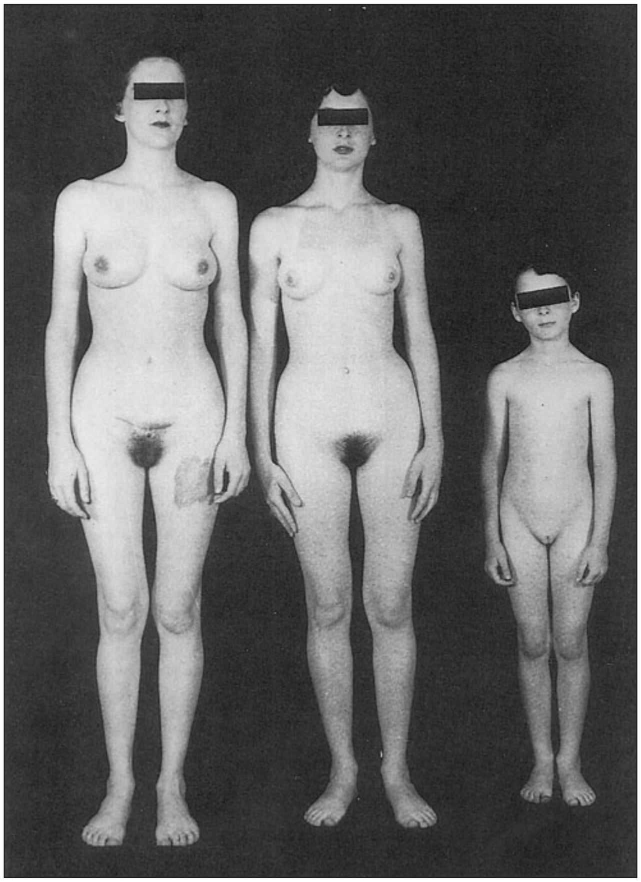


Figure 27.3 **Androgen-Insensitivity Syndrome.** These siblings are genetically male (XY). Testes are present and secrete testosterone, but the target cells lack receptors for it, so testosterone cannot exert its masculinizing effects. The external genitalia and secondary sex characteristics are feminine, but there are no ovaries, uterus, or vagina. **In what way is androgen-insensitivity syndrome similar to non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus?**

Development of the External Genitalia

You perhaps regard the external genitals as the most definitive characteristics of a male or female, yet there is more similarity between the sexes than most people realize. In the fetus, the genitals begin developing from identical structures in both sexes. By 8 weeks, the fetus has the following (fig. 27.4):

- a **phallus,**[8] a small shaft of tissue with a swollen *glans* (head);
- **urogenital folds,** a pair of medial tissue folds slightly posterior to the phallus; and
- **labioscrotal folds,** a larger pair of tissue folds lateral to the urogenital folds.

By the end of week 9, the fetus begins to show sexual differentiation, and either male or female genitalia are distinctly formed by the end of week 12. In the female, the three structures just listed become the clitoris, labia minora, and labia majora, respectively; all of these are more fully described in chapter 28. In the male, the phallus elongates to form the penis, the urogenital folds fuse to enclose the urethra within the penis, and the labioscrotal folds fuse to form the scrotum, a sac that will later contain the testes.

Male and female organs that develop from the same embryonic structure are said to be **homologous.** Thus the penis is homologous to the clitoris and the scrotum is homologous to the labia majora. This becomes strikingly evident in some abnormalities of sexual development. In the presence of excess androgen, the clitoris may become greatly enlarged and resemble a small penis. In other cases, the ovaries descend into the labia majora as if they were testes descending into a scrotum. Such abnormalities sometimes result in mistaken identification of the sex of an infant at birth.

Descent of the Testes

The testes begin development near the kidneys. How do they end up in the scrotum, and why? In the embryo, a cord of muscle and connective tissue called the **gubernaculum**[9] (GOO-bur-NACK-you-lum) extends from the gonad to the floor of the abdominopelvic cavity. It shortens as the fetus grows and guides the testis through a passageway in the groin called the **inguinal canal.** This **descent of the testes** (fig. 27.5) begins in weeks 6 to 10; by 28 weeks, the testes enter the scrotum. As they descend, they are accompanied by ever-elongating testicular arteries and veins and by lymphatic vessels, nerves, sperm ducts, and extensions of the internal abdominal oblique muscle.

---

[8] *phallo* = penis

[9] *gubern* = rudder, to steer, guide

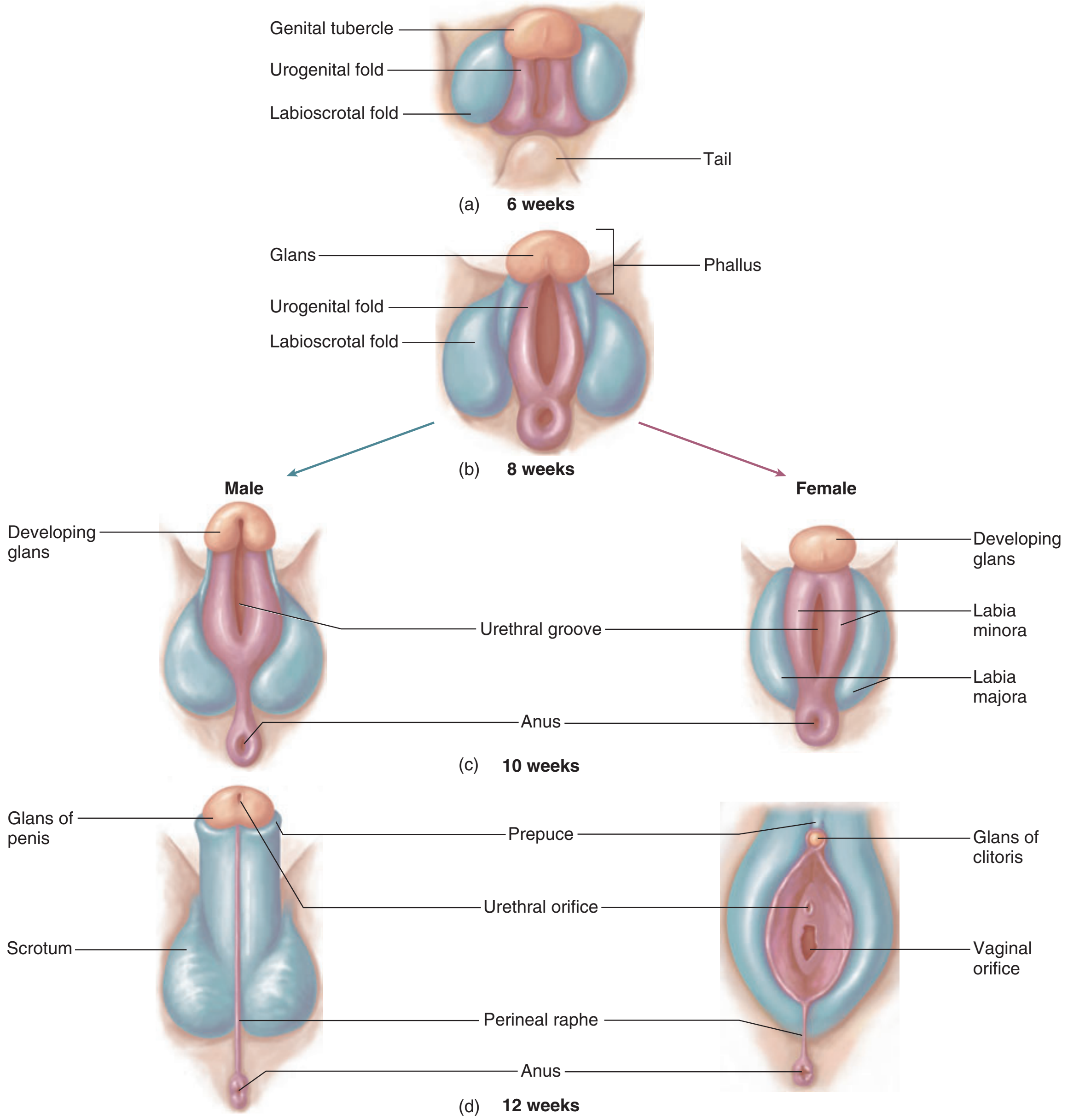

Genital tubercle
Urogenital fold
Labioscrotal fold
Tail
(a) 6 weeks
Glans
Phallus
Urogenital fold
Labioscrotal fold
(b) 8 weeks
Male
Female
Developing glans
Urethral groove
Developing glans
Labia minora
Labia majora
Anus
(c) 10 weeks
Glans of penis
Prepuce
Glans of clitoris
Urethral orifice
Scrotum
Vaginal orifice
Perineal raphe
Anus
(d) 12 weeks

Figure 27.4 **Development of the External Genitalia.** (*a*) By 6 weeks, the embryo has three primordial structures—the phallus, urogenital folds, and labioscrotal folds—that will become the male or female genitalia. (*b*) At 8 weeks these structures have grown, but the sexes are still indistinguishable. (*c*) Slight sexual differentiation is noticeable at 10 weeks. (*d*) The sexes are fully distinguishable by 12 weeks. Matching colors identify homologous structures of the male and female.

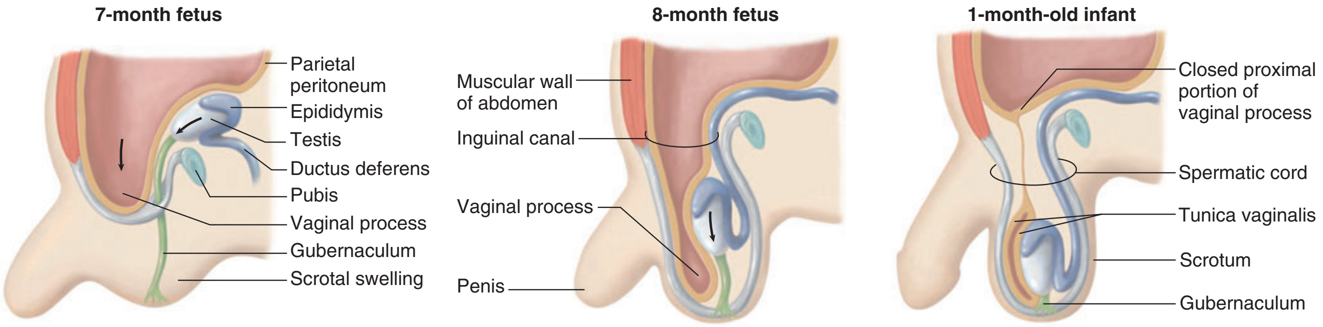


Figure 27.5 **Descent of the Testis.** Note that the testis and spermatic ducts are retroperitoneal. An extension of the peritoneum called the *vaginal process* follows the testis through the inguinal canal and becomes the tunica vaginalis.
Why is this structure of *male* anatomy called the tunica *vaginalis?*

In the scrotum, the testes are kept at a temperature of about 35°C, which is 2°C cooler than in the pelvic cavity. This is essential for sperm production. About 3% of boys are born with undescended testes, or *cryptorchidism* (see table 27.2).

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

3. What are mesonephric and paramesonephric ducts? What factors determine which one develops and which one regresses in the fetus?
4. What male structures develop from the phallus and labioscrotal folds?
5. Define the *gubernaculum* and describe its function.

Male Reproductive Anatomy

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the anatomy of the testes, scrotum, and penis;
- describe the pathway taken by a sperm cell from its formation to its ejaculation; and
- describe the accessory glands and other secondary sex organs of the male, and state their functions.

The external genitalia occupy the *perineum* (PERR-ih-NEE-um), the diamond-shaped region marked by the pubic symphysis, ischial tuberosities, and coccyx (fig. 27.6). The internal reproductive anatomy of the male is shown in figure 27.7.

Testes

Each testis is oval, about 4 cm long and 2.5 cm in diameter (fig. 27.8). Its anterior and lateral surfaces are covered by the **tunica vaginalis,**[10] a saclike extension of the peritoneum that follows the testis as it descends into the scrotum. The testis itself has a white fibrous capsule called the **tunica albuginea**[11] (TOO-nih-ca AL-byu-JIN-ee-uh). Connective tissue septa divide the organ into 250 to 300 wedge-shaped lobules. Each lobule contains one to three **seminiferous**[12] (SEM-ih-NIF-er-us) **tubules**—slender ducts up to 70 cm long in which the sperm are produced. Between the seminiferous tubules are clusters of **interstitial (Leydig**[13]**) cells,** the source of testosterone.

A seminiferous tubule has a narrow lumen lined by a thick **germinal epithelium** (fig. 27.9). The epithelium consists of several layers of **germ cells** in the process of becoming sperm and a much smaller number of tall **sustentacular**[14] **(Sertoli**[15]**) cells,** which protect the germ cells and promote their development. The germ cells depend on the sustentacular cells for nutrients, waste removal, growth factors, and other needs. The sustentacular cells also secrete a hormone, *inhibin,* that regulates the rate of sperm production, as we will see later.

A sustentacular cell is shaped a little like a tree trunk whose roots spread out over the basement membrane, forming the boundary of the tubule, and whose thick trunk reaches to the tubule lumen. Tight junctions between adjacent sustentacular cells form a **blood-testis barrier (BTB),** which prevents proteins and other large molecules in the blood and intercellular fluid from getting to the germ cells. This is important because the germ cells, being genetically different from other cells of the body, would otherwise be attacked by the immune system. Some cases of sterility occur when the BTB fails to form adequately in adolescence

---

[10] *tunica* = coat + *vagina* = sheath
[11] *alb* = white
[12] *semin* = seed, sperm + *fer* = to carry
[13] Franz von Leydig (1821–1908), German anatomist
[14] *sustentacul* = support
[15] Enrico Sertoli (1842–1910), Italian histologist

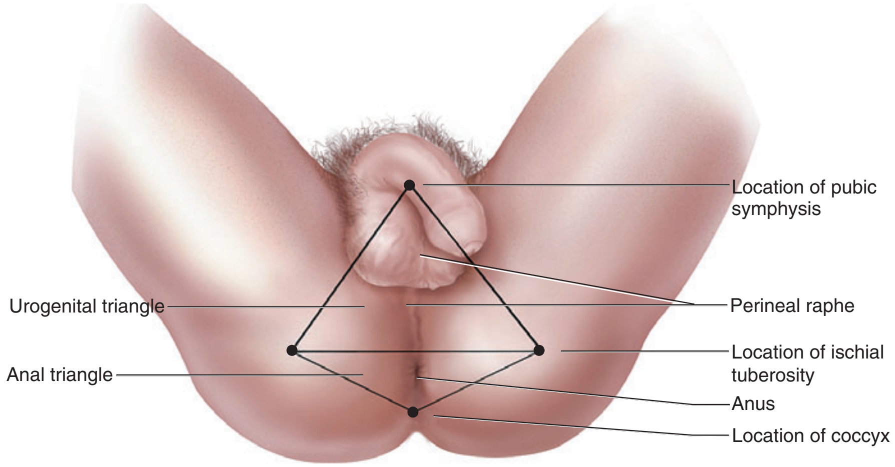


Figure 27.6 **The Male Perineum, Inferior Aspect.**

and the immune system produces autoantibodies against the germ cells.

Think About It

Would you expect to find blood capillaries in the walls of the seminiferous tubules? Why or why not?

The seminiferous tubules lead into a network called the **rete**[16] (REE-tee) **testis,** embedded in the capsule on the posterior side. Sperm partially mature in the rete. They are moved along by the flow of fluid secreted by the sustentacular cells and possibly by the cilia seen on some rete cells. Sperm do not swim while they are in the male.

Each testis is supplied by a **testicular artery** that arises from the abdominal aorta just below the renal artery. This is a very long, slender artery that winds its way down the posterior abdominal wall before passing through the inguinal canal into the scrotum. Its blood pressure is very low, and indeed this is one of the few arteries to have no pulse. Consequently, blood flow to the testes is quite meager and the testes receive a poor oxygen supply. In response to this, the sperm develop unusually large mitochondria, which may precondition them for survival in the hypoxic environment of the female reproductive tract.

Blood leaves the testis by way of a **testicular vein.** The right testicular vein drains into the inferior vena cava and the left one drains into the left renal vein. Lymphatic vessels also drain each testis and lead to the inguinal lymph nodes. **Testicular nerves** lead to the gonads from spinal cord segment T10. They are mixed sensory and motor nerves containing predominantly sympathetic but also some parasympathetic fibers.

Chapter 27

Scrotum

The testes are contained in a pendulous pouch, the **scrotum**[17] (fig. 27.10). The left testis is usually suspended lower than the right so the two are not compressed against each other between the thighs. The skin of the scrotum has sebaceous glands, sparse hair, rich sensory innervation, and somewhat darker pigmentation than skin elsewhere. The scrotum is divided into right and left compartments by an internal **median septum,** which protects each testis from infections of the other one. The location of the septum is externally marked by a seam called the **perineal raphe**[18] (RAY-fee), which also extends anteriorly along the ventral side of the penis and posteriorly as far as the margin of the anus (see fig. 27.6).

The **spermatic cord** is a cord of connective tissue that passes upward behind the testis, across the anterior side of the pubis, and into an opening called the *inguinal ring* in the muscles of the groin. From there, it travels about 4 cm through the inguinal canal and emerges into the pelvic cavity. It contains the *ductus deferens* (a sperm duct), blood and lymphatic vessels, and testicular nerves—structures that followed the testis as it descended through the canal. The cord is easily palpated through the skin of the scrotum.

The original reason that a scrotum evolved has long been a subject of debate among reproductive biologists and still has no universally accepted answer. Now that human testes reside in the scrotum, however, they have

---

[16] *rete* = network

[17] *scrotum* = bag

[18] *raphe* = seam

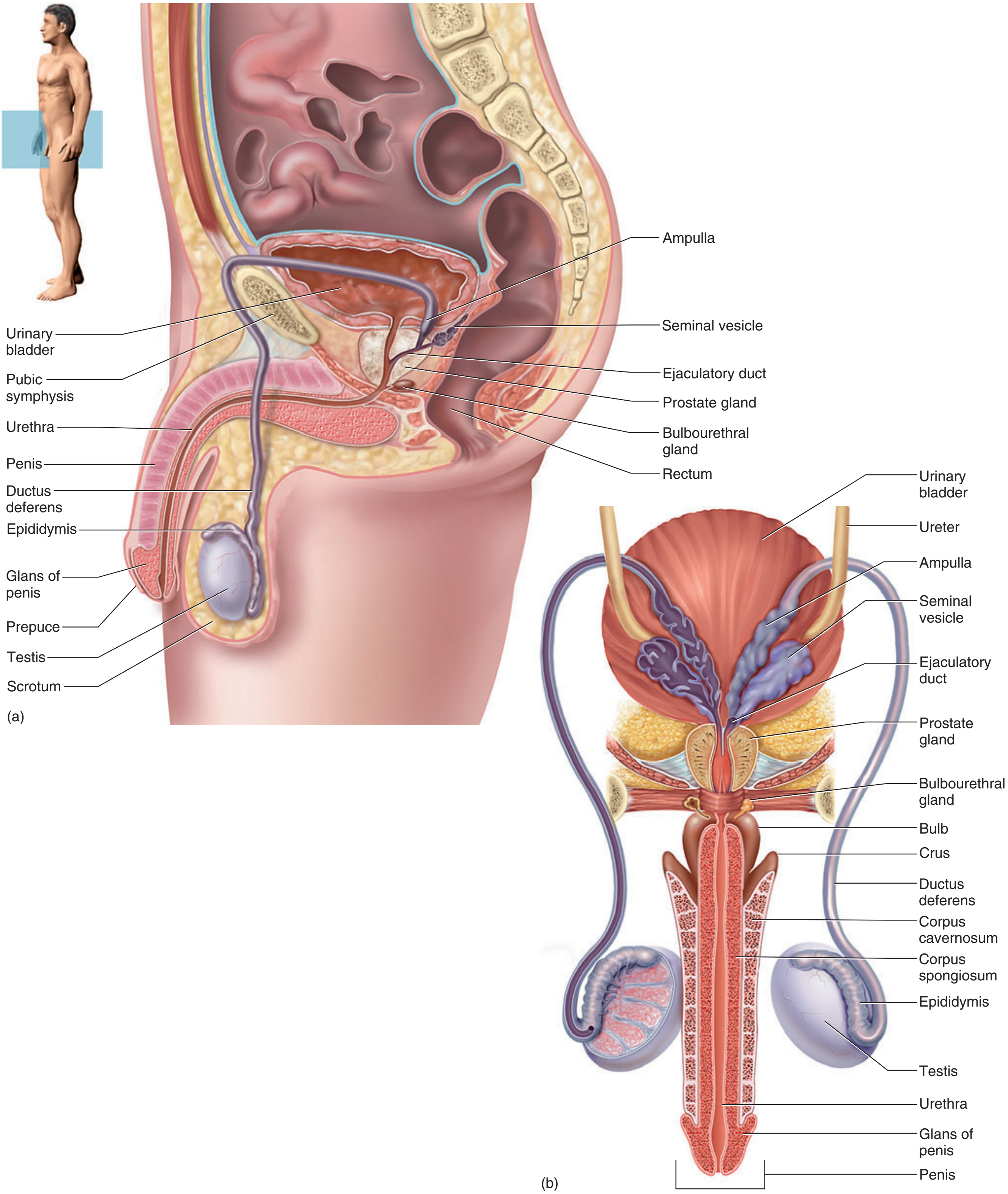

Ampulla
Seminal vesicle
Ejaculatory duct
Prostate gland
Bulbourethral gland
Rectum
Urinary bladder
Pubic symphysis
Urethra
Penis
Ductus deferens
Epididymis
Glans of penis
Prepuce
Testis
Scrotum
(a)
Urinary bladder
Ureter
Ampulla
Seminal vesicle
Ejaculatory duct
Prostate gland
Bulbourethral gland
Bulb
Crus
Ductus deferens
Corpus cavernosum
Corpus spongiosum
Epididymis
Testis
Urethra
Glans of penis
Penis
(b)

Figure 27.7 **The Male Reproductive System.** (*a*) Median section of the pelvic cavity viewed from the left. (*b*) Posterior view of the reproductive organs.

Why does enlargement of the prostate interfere with urination?

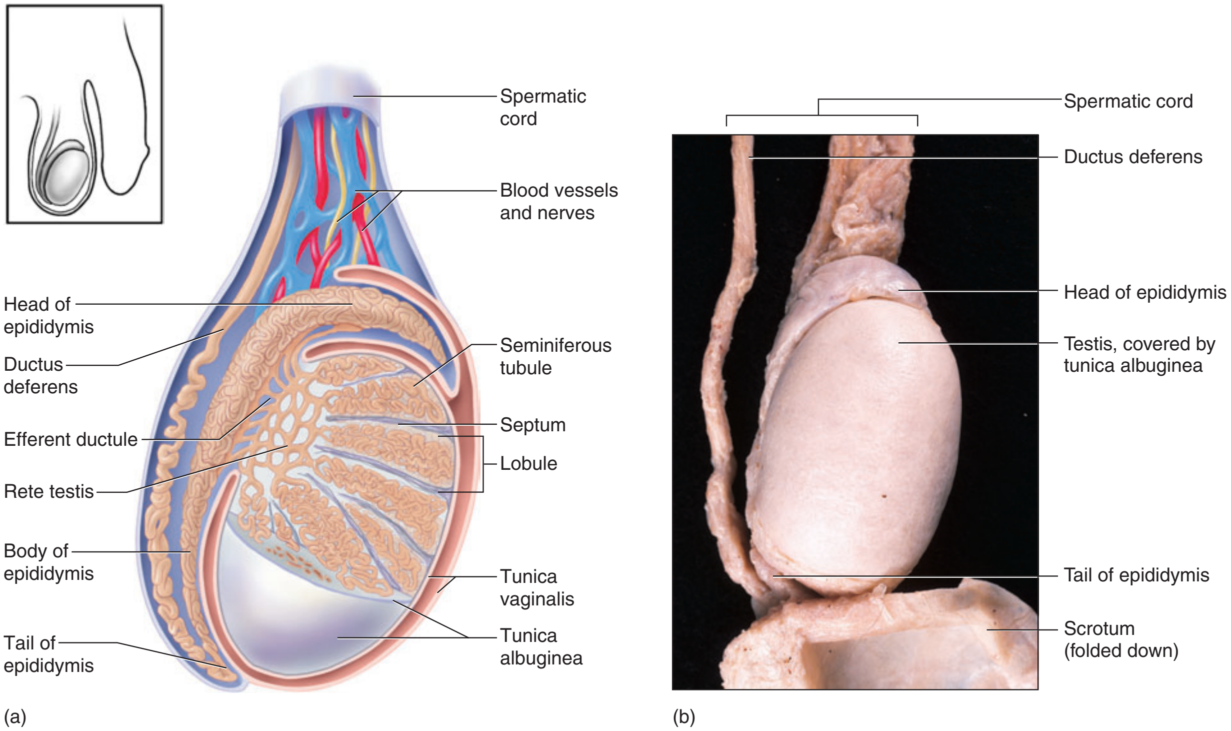
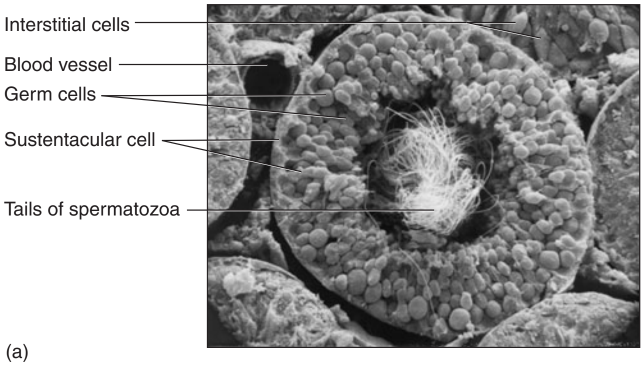

Spermatic cord
Blood vessels and nerves
Head of epididymis
Ductus deferens
Seminiferous tubule
Septum
Lobule
Efferent ductule
Rete testis
Body of epididymis
Tunica vaginalis
Tunica albuginea
Tail of epididymis
(a)
Spermatic cord
Ductus deferens
Head of epididymis
Testis, covered by tunica albuginea
Tail of epididymis
Scrotum (folded down)
(b)

Figure 27.8 **The Testis and Associated Structures.** (*a*) Anatomy of the testis, epididymis, and spermatic cord. (*b*) The testis and associated structures dissected free of the scrotum, shown life size.


Interstitial cells
Blood vessel
Germ cells
Sustentacular cell
Tails of spermatozoa
(a)

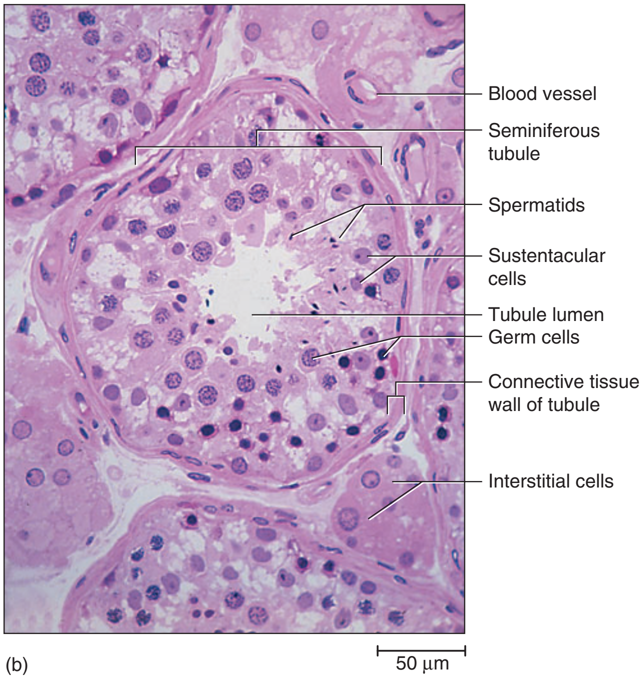

Blood vessel
Seminiferous tubule
Spermatids
Sustentacular cells
Tubule lumen
Germ cells
Connective tissue wall of tubule
Interstitial cells
(b)
50 µm

Figure 27.9 **Histology of the Testis.** (*a*) Scanning electron micrograph; (*b*) light micrograph. Figure *b* is from a region of the tubule that did not have mature sperm at the time. (*a*) From R. G. Kessel and R. H. Kardon, *Tissues and Organs: A Text-Atlas of Scanning Electron Microscopy* (W. H. Freeman, 1979).

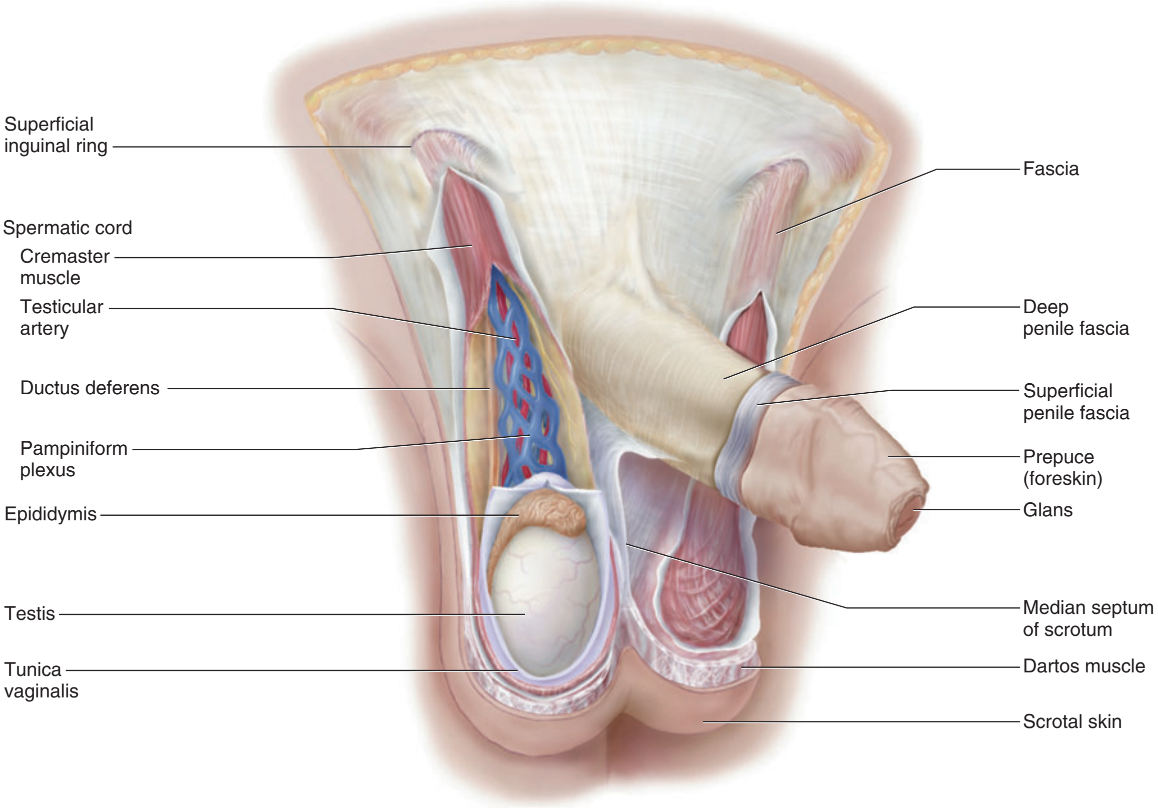

Superficial inguinal ring
Spermatic cord
Cremaster muscle
Testicular artery
Ductus deferens
Pampiniform plexus
Epididymis
Testis
Tunica vaginalis
Fascia
Deep penile fascia
Superficial penile fascia
Prepuce (foreskin)
Glans
Median septum of scrotum
Dartos muscle
Scrotal skin

Figure 27.10 Anatomy of the Male Inguinal Region and External Genitalia.

adapted to this cooler environment and cannot produce sperm at the core body temperature of 37°C. The scrotum has three mechanisms for regulating the temperature of the testes:

1. The **cremaster**[19] **muscle** consists of strips of the internal abdominal oblique muscle that enmesh the spermatic cord. When it is cold, the cremaster contracts and draws the testes closer to the body to keep them warm. When it is warm, the cremaster relaxes and the testes are suspended farther from the body.
2. The **dartos**[20] **muscle (tunica dartos)** is a subcutaneous layer of smooth muscle. It, too, contracts when it is cold, and the scrotum becomes taut and wrinkled. The tautness of the scrotum helps to hold the testes snugly against the warm body and it reduces the surface area of the scrotum, thus reducing heat loss.
3. The **pampiniform**[21] **plexus** is an extensive network of veins from the testis that surround the testicular artery in the spermatic cord. As they pass through the inguinal canal, these veins converge to form the testicular vein, which emerges from the canal into the pelvic cavity. Without the pampiniform plexus, warm arterial blood would heat the testis and inhibit spermatogenesis. The pampiniform plexus, however, prevents this by acting as a *countercurrent heat exchanger* (fig. 27.11). Imagine that a house had uninsulated hot and cold water pipes running close to each other. Much of the heat from the hot water pipe would be absorbed by the cold water pipe next to it—especially if the water flowed in opposite directions so the cold water carried the heat away. In the spermatic cord, such a mechanism removes heat from the descending arterial blood, so by the time it reaches the testis this blood is 1.5° to 2.5°C cooler than the core body temperature.

---

[19] *cremaster* = suspender
[20] *dartos* = skinned
[21] *pampin* = tendril + *form* = shape

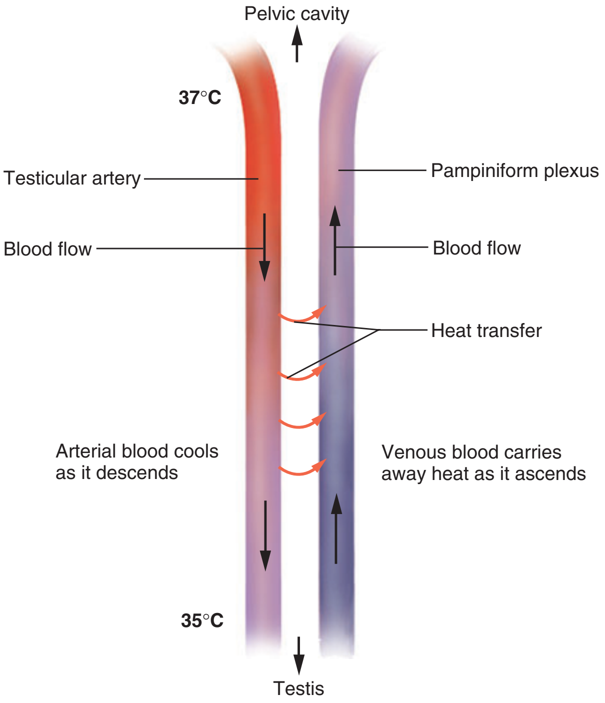


Figure 27.11 **The Countercurrent Heat Exchange Mechanism of the Pampiniform Plexus.** Warm blood flowing down the testicular artery loses some of its heat to the cooler blood flowing in the opposite direction through the pampiniform plexus of veins (represented as a single vessel for simplicity). Arterial blood is about 2°C cooler by the time it reaches the testis.

Spermatic Ducts

After leaving the testis, the sperm travel through a series of *spermatic ducts* to reach the urethra. These include the following:

- **Efferent ductules.** About 12 small efferent ductules arise from the posterior side of each testis and carry sperm to the epididymis. They have clusters of ciliated cells that help drive the sperm along.
- **Duct of the epididymis.** The **epididymis**[22] (EP-ih-DID-ih-miss; plural, *epididymides*) is a site of sperm maturation and storage. It adheres to the posterior side of the testis (see fig. 27.8), measures about 7.5 cm long, and consists of a clublike *head* at the superior pole of the testis, a long middle *body,* and a slender *tail* at its inferior end. It contains a single coiled duct, about 6 m (18 ft) long, embedded in connective tissue. This duct reabsorbs about 90% of the fluid secreted by the testis. Sperm are physiologically immature (incapable of fertilizing an egg) when they leave the testis but mature as they travel through the head and body of the epididymis. In 20 days or so, they reach the tail. They are stored here and in the adjacent portion of the ductus deferens. Stored sperm remain fertile for 40 to 60 days, but if they become too old without being ejaculated, they disintegrate and the epididymis reabsorbs them.
- **Ductus (vas) deferens.** The duct of the epididymis straightens out at the tail, turns 180°, and becomes the ductus deferens. This is a muscular tube about 45 cm long and 2.5 mm in diameter. It passes upward from the scrotum, travels through the inguinal canal, and enters the pelvic cavity (see fig. 27.8). There, it turns medially and approaches the urinary bladder. After passing between the bladder and ureter, the duct turns downward behind the bladder and widens into a terminal **ampulla.** The ductus deferens ends by uniting with the duct of the seminal vesicle, a gland considered later. The duct has a very narrow lumen and a thick wall of smooth muscle well innervated by sympathetic nerve fibers.
- **Ejaculatory duct.** Where the ductus deferens and duct of the seminal vesicle meet, they form a short (2 cm) ejaculatory duct, which passes through the prostate gland and empties into the urethra. The ejaculatory duct is the last of the spermatic ducts.

The male urethra is shared by the reproductive and urinary systems. It is about 20 cm long and consists of three regions: the *prostatic, membranous,* and *penile urethra* (see fig. 23.20, p. 905). Although it serves both urinary and reproductive roles, it cannot pass urine and semen simultaneously for reasons explained later.

Accessory Glands

There are three sets of *accessory glands* in the male reproductive system: the seminal vesicles, prostate gland, and bulbourethral glands:

1. The **seminal vesicles** are a pair of glands posterior to the urinary bladder; one is associated with each ductus deferens. A seminal vesicle is about 5 cm long, or approximately the dimensions of your little finger. It has a connective tissue capsule and underlying layer of smooth muscle. The secretory portion is a very convoluted duct with numerous branches that form a complex labyrinth. The duct empties into the ejaculatory duct. The yellowish secretion of the seminal vesicles constitutes about 60% of the semen; its composition and functions are discussed later.
2. The **prostate**[23] (PROSS-tate) **gland** surrounds the urethra and ejaculatory duct immediately inferior to

---

[22] *epi* = upon + *didym* = twins, testes

[23] *pro* = before + *stat* = to stand; commonly misspelled and mispronounced "prostrate"

the urinary bladder. It measures about 2 by 4 by 3 cm and is an aggregate of 30 to 50 compound tubuloacinar glands enclosed in a single fibrous capsule. These glands empty through about 20 pores in the urethral wall. The stroma of the prostate consists of connective tissue and smooth muscle, like that of the seminal vesicles. The thin, milky secretion of the prostate contributes about 30% of the semen. Its functions, too, are considered later. The position of the prostate immediately anterior to the rectum allows it to be palpated through the rectal wall to check for lumps suggestive of prostate cancer. This procedure is known as *digital rectal examination (DRE)* (see insight 27.2).

3. The **bulbourethral (Cowper[24]) glands** are named for their position near a dilated bulb at the inner end of the penis and their short (2.5 cm) ducts leading into the penile urethra. They are brownish, spherical glands about 1 cm in diameter. During sexual arousal, they produce a clear slippery fluid that lubricates the head of the penis in preparation for intercourse. Perhaps more importantly, though, it neutralizes the acidity of residual urine in the urethra, which would be harmful to the sperm.

Insight 27.2 Clinical Application

Prostate Diseases

The prostate gland weighs about 20 g by age 20, remains at that weight until age 45 or so, and then begins to grow slowly again. By age 70, over 90% of men show some degree of *benign prostatic hyperplasia*—noncancerous enlargement of the gland. The major complication of this is that it compresses the urethra, obstructs the flow of urine, and may promote bladder and kidney infections.

Prostate cancer is the second most common cancer in men (after lung cancer), affecting about 9% of men over the age of 50. Prostate tumors tend to form near the periphery of the gland, where they do not obstruct urine flow; therefore, they often go unnoticed until they cause pain. Prostate cancer often metastasizes to nearby lymph nodes and then to the lungs and other organs. It is more common among American blacks than whites and very uncommon among Japanese. It is diagnosed by digital rectal examination and by detecting *prostate specific antigen (PSA)* and *acid phosphatase* (a prostatic enzyme) in the blood. Up to 80% of men with prostate cancer survive when it is detected and treated early, but only 10% to 50% survive if it spreads beyond the prostatic capsule.

Penis

The **penis**[25] serves to deposit semen in the vagina. Half of it is an internal **root** and half is the externally visible **shaft** and **glans**[26] (see figs. 27.7 and 27.12). The external portion is about 8 to 10 cm (3–4 in.) long and 3 cm in diameter when flaccid (nonerect); the typical dimensions of an erect penis are 13 to 18 cm (5–7 in.) long and 4 cm in diameter. The glans is the expanded head at the distal end of the penis with the external urinary meatus at its tip.

The skin is very loosely attached to the shaft, allowing for expansion during erection. It continues over the glans as the **prepuce,** or foreskin, which is often removed by circumcision. A ventral fold of tissue called the *frenulum* attaches the skin to the glans. The skin of the glans itself is thinner and firmly attached to the underlying erectile tissue. The glans and facing surface of the prepuce have sebaceous glands that produce a waxy secretion called **smegma.**[27]

The penis consists mainly of three cylindrical bodies called **erectile tissues,** which fill with blood during sexual arousal and account for its enlargement and erection. A single erectile body, the **corpus spongiosum,** passes along the ventral side of the penis and encloses the penile urethra. It expands at the distal end to fill the entire glans. The dorsal side of the penis, proximal to the glans, has a **corpus cavernosum** (plural, *corpora cavernosa*) on each side. Each is ensheathed in a fibrous **tunica albuginea,** and they are separated from each other by a **median septum.** (Note that the testes also have a tunica albuginea and the scrotum also has a median septum.)

All three cylinders of erectile tissue are spongy in appearance and contain numerous tiny blood sinuses called **lacunae.** The partitions between lacunae, called **trabeculae,** are composed of connective tissue and smooth **trabecular muscle.** In the flaccid penis, trabecular muscle tone collapses the lacunae, which appear as tiny slits in the tissue.

At the body surface, the penis turns 90° dorsally and continues inward as the root. The corpus spongiosum terminates internally as a dilated **bulb,** which is ensheathed in the bulbospongiosus muscle and attached to the lower surface of the perineal membrane within the urogenital triangle (see p. 350). The corpora cavernosa diverge like the arms of a Y. Each arm, called a **crus** (cruss; plural, *crura*), attaches the penis to the pubic arch (ischiopubic ramus) and perineal membrane on its respective side. Each crus is enveloped by an ischiocavernosus muscle. The innervation and blood supply to the penis are discussed later in connection with the mechanism of erection.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

6. State the names and locations of two muscles that help regulate the temperature of the testes.

---

[24] William Cowper (1666–1709), British anatomist

[25] *penis* = tail

[26] *glans* = acorn

[27] *smegma* = unguent, ointment, soap

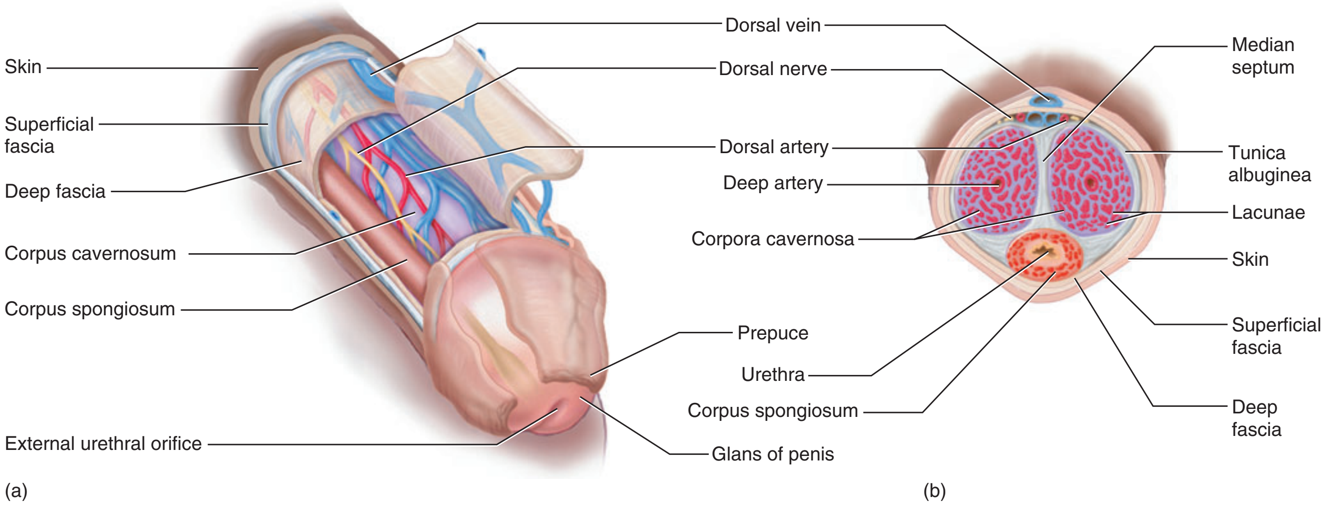


Figure 27.12 Anatomy of the Penis. (*a*) Dissection in lateral view. (*b*) Cross section.
During erection, why is it important that the corpus spongiosum remain less engorged with blood than the corpora cavernosa?

7. Name three types of cells in the testis, and describe their locations and functions.
8. Name all the ducts that the sperm follow, in order, from the time they form in the testis to the time of ejaculation.
9. Describe the locations and functions of the seminal vesicles, prostate, and bulbourethral glands.
10. Name the erectile tissues of the penis, and describe their locations relative to each other.

Puberty and Climacteric

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the hormonal control of puberty;
- describe the resulting changes in the male body; and
- define and describe male climacteric and the effect of aging on male reproductive function.

Unlike any other organ system, the reproductive system remains dormant for several years after birth. Around age 10 to 12 in most boys and 8 to 10 in most girls, however, a surge of pituitary gonadotropins "awakens" the reproductive system and begins preparing it for adult reproductive function. This is the onset of puberty.

Definitions of *adolescence* and *puberty* vary. This book uses **adolescence**[28] to mean the period from the onset of gonadotropin secretion and reproductive development until a person attains full adult height. **Puberty**[29] is the first few years of adolescence, until the first menstrual period in girls or the first ejaculation of viable sperm in boys. In North America, this is typically attained around age 12 in girls and age 13 in boys.

Endocrine Control of Puberty

The testes secrete substantial amounts of testosterone in the first trimester (3 months) of fetal development. Even in the first few months of infancy, testosterone levels are about as high as they are in midpuberty, but then the testes become dormant for the rest of infancy and childhood. From puberty through adulthood, reproductive function is regulated by hormonal links between the hypothalamus, pituitary, and gonads—the **brain-testicular axis** (fig. 27.13).

As the hypothalamus matures, it begins producing **gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH),** which travels by way of the hypophyseal portal system to the anterior lobe of the pituitary. Here it stimulates cells called *gonadotropes* to secrete **follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH)** and **luteinizing hormone (LH),** two *gonadotropins* that stimulate different cells in the testis. Enlargement of the testes is the first sign of puberty.

LH stimulates the interstitial cells of the testis to secrete androgens, mainly testosterone. In the male, LH is sometimes called *interstitial cell–stimulating hormone (ICSH).* FSH stimulates the sustentacular cells to secrete **androgen-binding protein (ABP).** ABP is thought to raise testosterone levels in the seminiferous tubules and epididymis, but this remains unproven. Without FSH, however, testosterone has no effect on the testis. Germ cells have no androgen receptors and do not respond to it. Nevertheless, testosterone normally has the following effects:

---

[28] *adolesc* = to grow up
[29] *puber* = grown up

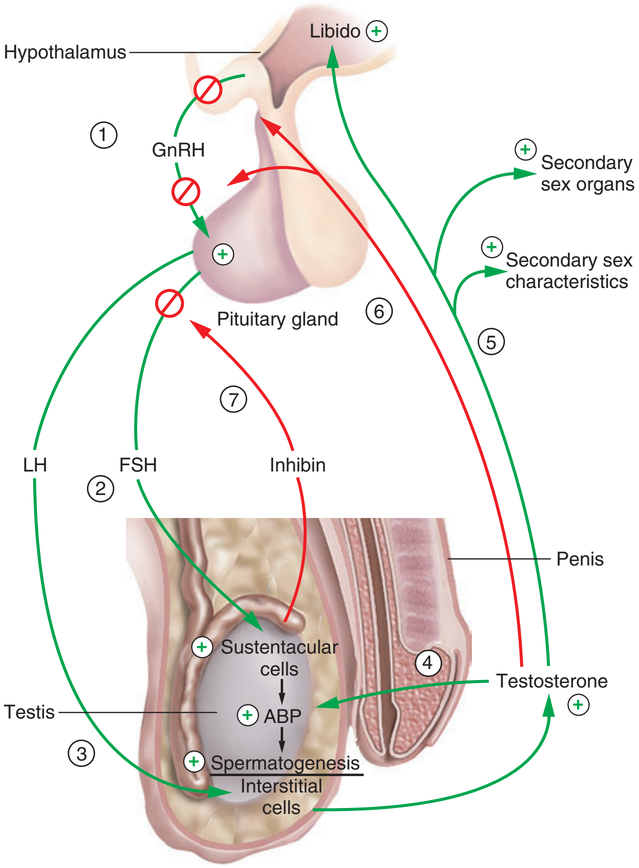


Figure 27.13 Hormonal Relationships in the Brain-Testicular Axis. *Green arrows* and *plus signs* indicate stimulatory effects; *red arrows* and *bars* indicate inhibitory effects. (*1*) GnRH from hypothalamus stimulates the anterior lobe of pituitary to secrete FSH and LH. (*2*) FSH stimulates sustentacular cells to secrete androgen-binding protein (ABP). (*3*) LH stimulates interstitial cells to secrete testosterone. (*4*) In the presence of ABP, testosterone stimulates spermatogenesis. (*5*) Testosterone also stimulates development of secondary sex organs and secondary sex characteristics and stimulates the libido. (*6*) Testosterone has a negative feedback effect on the hypothalamus and pituitary, which reduces GnRH secretion and pituitary sensitivity to GnRH. (*7*) To reduce sperm production without reducing testosterone secretion, the sustentacular cells secrete inhibin, which selectively inhibits FSH secretion.

- It stimulates spermatogenesis in the presence of ABP. If testosterone secretion ceases, the sperm count and semen volume decline rapidly and a male becomes sterile.
- It inhibits GnRH secretion by the hypothalamus and reduces the GnRH sensitivity of the pituitary. Consequently, FSH and LH secretion are held in check. Over the course of puberty, however, the pituitary becomes less sensitive to this negative feedback and secretes increasing amounts of the gonadotropins.
- It stimulates development of the secondary sex characteristics and other somatic changes characteristic of puberty. Many of the physiological processes of puberty go unnoticed at first. The first visible sign of puberty is usually enlargement of the testes and scrotum around age 13. The penis continues to grow for about two more years. One of the androgens, dihydrotestosterone (DHT), stimulates development of the pubic, axillary, and facial hair. The skin becomes darker and thicker and secretes more sebum, which often leads to acne. The skin of acne patients contains 2 to 20 times as much DHT as normal. The apocrine sweat (scent) glands of the perineal, axillary, and beard areas develop in conjunction with the hair in those regions.
- It causes the ducts and accessory glands of the reproductive system to enlarge. Erections occur frequently and ejaculation may occur during sleep (nocturnal emissions, or “wet dreams”).
- Testosterone stimulates a burst of growth, an increase in muscle mass, a higher basal metabolic rate, and a larger larynx. The last of these effects deepens the voice and makes the thyroid cartilage more prominent at the front of the neck.
- It stimulates erythropoiesis, which gives men a higher hematocrit and RBC count than those of women.
- Testosterone also stimulates the brain and awakens the **libido** (sex drive)—although, perhaps surprisingly, the neurons convert it to estrogen (a supposedly “female” sex hormone), which is what directly affects the behavior.

Throughout adulthood, testosterone sustains the male reproductive tract, spermatogenesis, and libido. At times, it is necessary to reduce FSH secretion and sperm production without reducing LH and testosterone secretion. To achieve this, the sustentacular cells secrete a hormone called **inhibin** that selectively suppresses FSH output from the pituitary. When the sperm count drops below 20 million sperm/mL, however, inhibin secretion drops and FSH secretion rises.

Think About It

If a male animal is castrated, would you expect FSH and LH levels to rise, fall, or be unaffected? Why?

Aging and Sexual Function

Testosterone secretion peaks at about 7 mg/day at age 20 and then declines steadily to as little as one-fifth of this level by age 80. There is a corresponding decline in the number and secretory activity of the interstitial cells (the source of testosterone) and sustentacular cells (the source of inhibin). As testosterone and inhibin levels decline, so does feedback inhibition of the pituitary. Consequently, FSH and LH levels rise significantly after age 50 and produce changes called **male climacteric.** Most men pass through climacteric with little or no effect, but in a few cases there are mood changes, hot flashes, and illusions of suffocation—symptoms similar to those of menopause in women. Despite references to "male menopause," the term *menopause* refers to the cessation of menstruation and therefore makes no sense in the context of male physiology.

About 20% of men in their 60s and 50% of men in their 80s experience *impotence (erectile dysfunction),* the frequent inability to maintain a sufficient erection for intercourse (see table 27.2). Over 90% of impotent men, however, remain able to ejaculate. Impotence and declining sexual activity can have a major impact on older people's perception of the quality of life.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

11. State the source, target organ, and effect of GnRH.
12. Identify the target cells and effects of FSH and LH.
13. Explain how testicular hormones affect the secretion of FSH and LH.
14. Describe the major effects of androgens on the body.
15. Define *male climacteric.*

Sperm and Semen

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the stages of meiosis and contrast meiosis with mitosis;
- describe the sequence of cell types in spermatogenesis, and relate these to the stages of meiosis;
- describe the role of the sustentacular cell in spermatogenesis;
- draw or describe a sperm cell; and
- describe the composition of semen and functions of its components.

The most significant event of puberty is the onset of **spermatogenesis.** This is a process in which germ cells undergo two divisions called **meiosis** and the four daughter cells differentiate into spermatozoa (sperm). It occurs in the seminiferous tubules.

Meiosis

In the eukaryotes (all living organisms except bacteria), there are two forms of cell division—mitosis and meiosis. Mitosis, described in chapter 4, is the basis for division of the single-celled fertilized egg, growth of an embryo, and all postnatal growth and tissue repair. It is essentially the splitting of a cell with a distribution of chromosomes that results in two genetically identical daughter cells. It consists of four stages—prophase, metaphase, anaphase, and telophase.

You may find it beneficial to review figure 4.13 (p. 144) because of the important similarities and differences between mitosis and meiosis. There are three important differences:

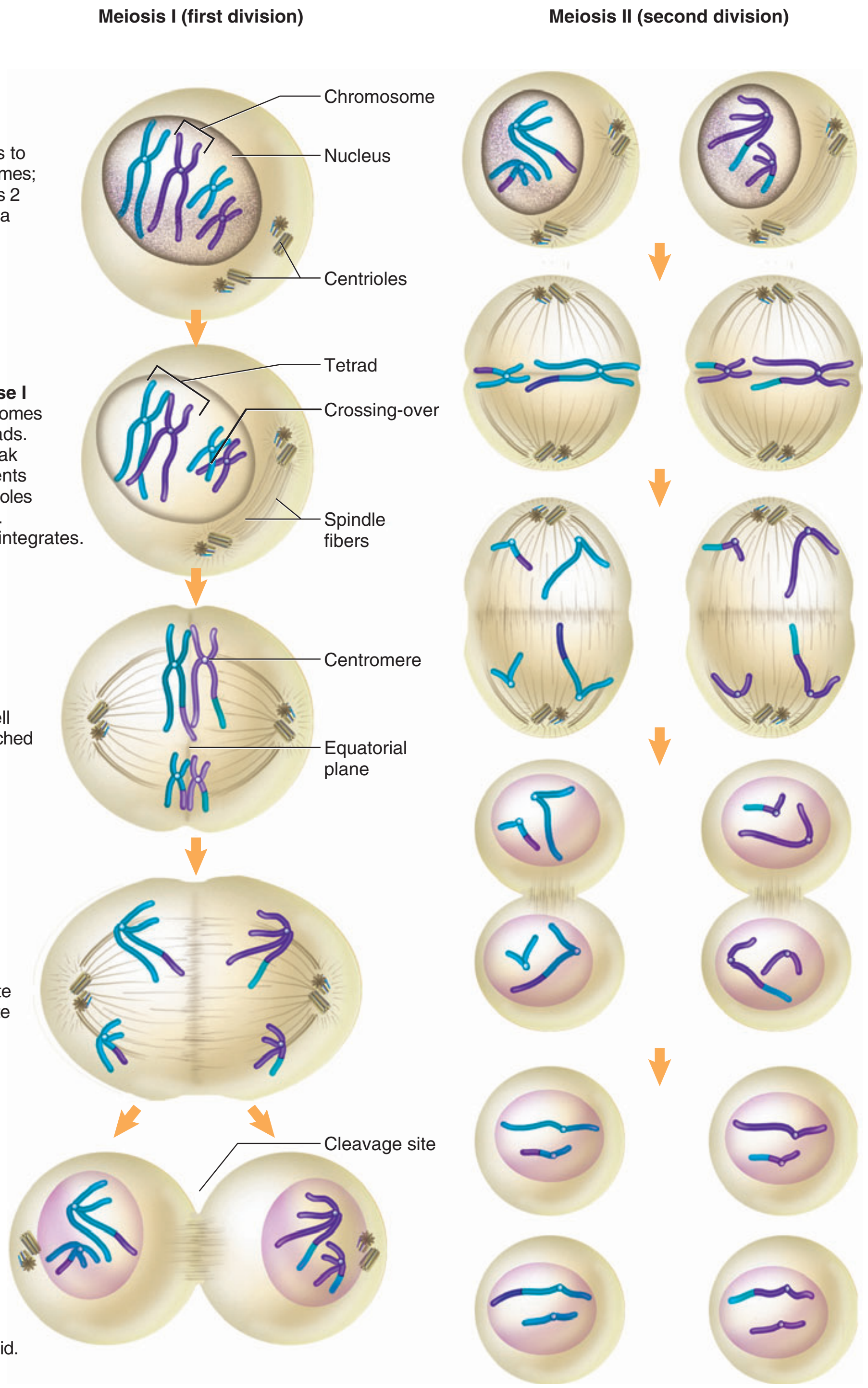
1. In mitosis, each double-stranded chromosome divides into two single-stranded ones, but each daughter cell still has 46 chromosomes (23 pairs). Meiosis, by contrast, reduces the chromosome number by half. The parent cell is **diploid** (***2n***), meaning it has 46 chromosomes in 23 homologous pairs (see fig. 4.15, p. 146), whereas the daughter cells are **haploid** (***n***), with 23 unpaired chromosomes.
2. In mitosis, the chromosomes do not change their genetic makeup. In an early stage of meiosis, however, the chromosomes of each homologous pair join and exchange portions of their DNA. This creates new combinations of genes, so the chromosomes we pass on to our offspring are not the same chromosomes that we inherit from our parents.
3. In mitosis, each parent cell produces only two daughter cells. In meiosis, it produces four. In the male, four sperm therefore develop from each original germ cell. The situation is somewhat different in the female (see chapter 28).

Why use such a relatively complicated process for gametogenesis? Why not use mitosis, as we do for all other cell replication in the body? The answer is that sexual reproduction is, by definition, biparental. If we are going to combine gametes from two parents to make a child, there must be a mechanism for keeping the chromosome number constant from generation to generation. Mitosis would produce eggs and sperm with 46 chromosomes each. If these gametes combined, the zygote and the next generation would have 92 chromosomes per cell, the generation after that would have 184, and so forth. To prevent the chromosome number from doubling in every generation, the number is reduced by half during gametogenesis. Meiosis is sometimes called *reduction division* for this reason.[30]

The stages of meiosis are fundamentally the same in both sexes. Briefly, it consists of two cell divisions in succession and occurs in the following phases: prophase I, metaphase I, anaphase I, telophase I, interkinesis, prophase II, metaphase II, anaphase II, and telophase II. These events are detailed in figure 27.14, but let us note some of its unique and important aspects.

---

[30] *meio* = less, fewer


Meiosis I (first division)
Meiosis II (second division)
Chromosome
Nucleus
Centrioles
Tetrad
Crossing-over
Spindle fibers
Centromere
Equatorial plane
Cleavage site

Early prophase I
Chromatin condenses to form visible chromosomes; each chromosome has 2 chromatids joined by a centromere.

Mid - to late prophase I
Homologous chromosomes form pairs called tetrads. Chromatids often break and exchange segments (crossing-over). Centrioles produce spindle fibers. Nuclear envelope disintegrates.

Metaphase I
Tetrads align on equatorial plane of cell with centromeres attached to spindle fibers.

Anaphase I
Homologous chromosomes separate and migrate to opposite poles of the cell.

Telophase I
New nuclear envelopes form around chromosomes; cell undergoes cytoplasmic division (cytokinesis). Each cell is now haploid.

Prophase II
Nuclear envelopes disintegrate again; chromosomes still consist of 2 chromatids. New spindle forms.

Metaphase II
Chromosomes align on equatorial plane.

Anaphase II
Centromeres divide; sister chromatids migrate to opposite poles of cell. Each chromatid now constitutes a single-stranded chromosome.

Telophase II
New nuclear envelopes form around chromosomes; chromosomes uncoil and become less visible; cytoplasm divides.

Final product is 4 haploid cells with single-stranded chromosomes.

Figure 27.14 **Meiosis.** For simplicity, the cell is shown with only two pairs of homologous chromosomes. Human cells begin meiosis with 23 pairs.

In prophase I, each pair of homologous chromosomes line up side by side and form a **tetrad** (*tetra* denoting the four chromatids). One chromosome of each tetrad is from the individual's father (the paternal chromosome) and the other is from the mother (the maternal chromosome). The paternal and maternal chromosomes exchange segments of DNA in a process called **crossing-over.** This creates new combinations of genes and thus contributes to genetic variety in the offspring.

After crossing-over, the chromosomes line up at the midline of the cell in metaphase I, they separate at anaphase I, and the cell divides in two at telophase I. This looks superficially like mitosis, but there is an important difference: The centromeres do not divide and the chromatids do not separate from each other at anaphase I; rather, each homologous chromosome parts company with its twin. Therefore, at the conclusion of meiosis I, each chromosome is still double-stranded, but each daughter cell has only 23 chromosomes—it has become haploid.

Meiosis II is more like mitosis—the chromosomes line up on the cell equator at metaphase II, the centromeres divide, and each chromosome separates into two chromatids. These chromatids are drawn to opposite poles of the cell at anaphase II. At the end of meiosis II, there are four haploid cells, each containing 23 single-stranded chromosomes. Fertilization combines 23 chromosomes from the father with 23 chromosomes from the mother and reestablishes the diploid number of 46 in the zygote.

Spermatogenesis

Now we will relate meiosis to sperm production (fig. 27.15). The first cells destined to become sperm are **primordial germ cells.** Like the first blood cells, these form in the yolk sac, a membrane associated with the developing embryo. In the fifth to sixth week of development, they migrate into the embryo itself and colonize the gonadal ridges. Here they differentiate into **spermatogonia,** which lie along the periphery of the seminiferous tubule, outside the blood-testis barrier (BTB).

Spermatogonia multiply by mitosis, producing two types of daughter cells called type A and type B spermatogonia. Type A cells remain outside the BTB and continue to multiply from puberty until death. Thus men never exhaust their supply of gametes and normally remain fertile throughout old age.

Type B spermatogonia migrate closer to the tubule lumen and differentiate into slightly larger cells called **primary spermatocytes.** These cells must pass through the BTB and move toward the lumen of the tubule. Ahead of the primary spermatocyte, the tight junction between two sustentacular cells is dismantled, while a new tight junction forms on the other side, like closing the door behind the spermatocyte (fig. 27.16). The spermatocyte moves forward toward the lumen and is now separated from blood-borne agents, such as antibodies, held back by the tight junction.

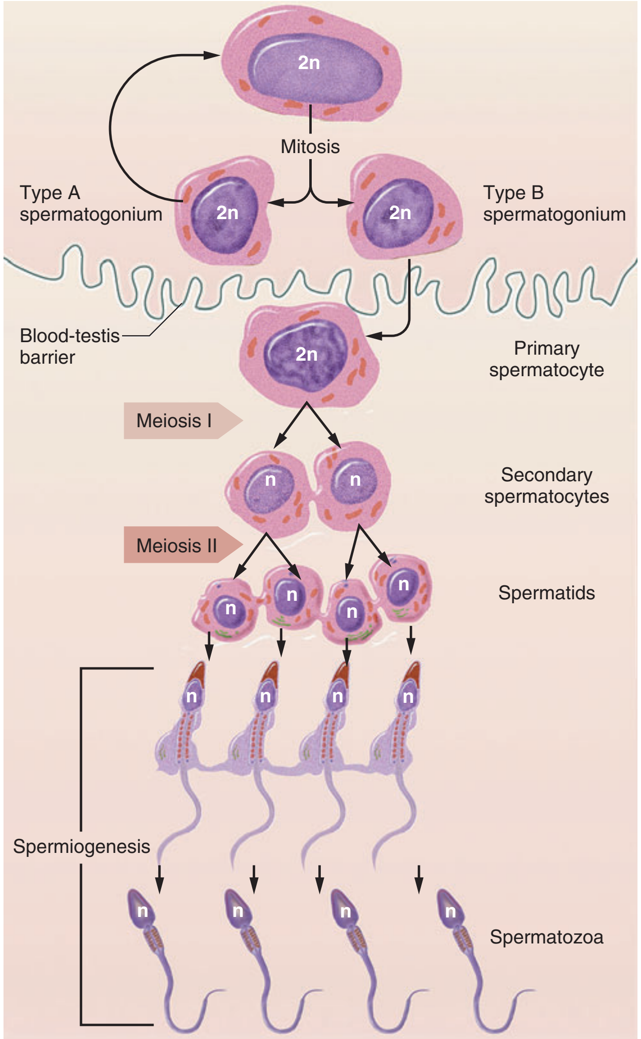


Figure 27.15 Spermatogenesis. 2*n* indicates diploid cells and *n* indicates haploid cells. Note that the daughter cells from secondary spermatocytes through spermatids remain connected by slender cytoplasmic processes until spermiogenesis is complete and individual spermatozoa are released.

Now safely isolated from the blood, the primary spermatocyte undergoes meiosis I, which gives rise to two equal-sized, haploid **secondary spermatocytes.** Each of these undergoes meiosis II, dividing into two **spermatids**—or a total of four for each spermatogonium. Each stage is a little closer to the lumen of the tubule than the earlier stages. All stages on the lumenal side of the BTB are bound to the sustentacular cells by tight junctions and gap junctions and are closely enveloped in tendrils of the sustentacular cells. Throughout these meiotic divisions, the daughter cells do not completely separate, but remain connected to each other by narrow cytoplasmic bridges.

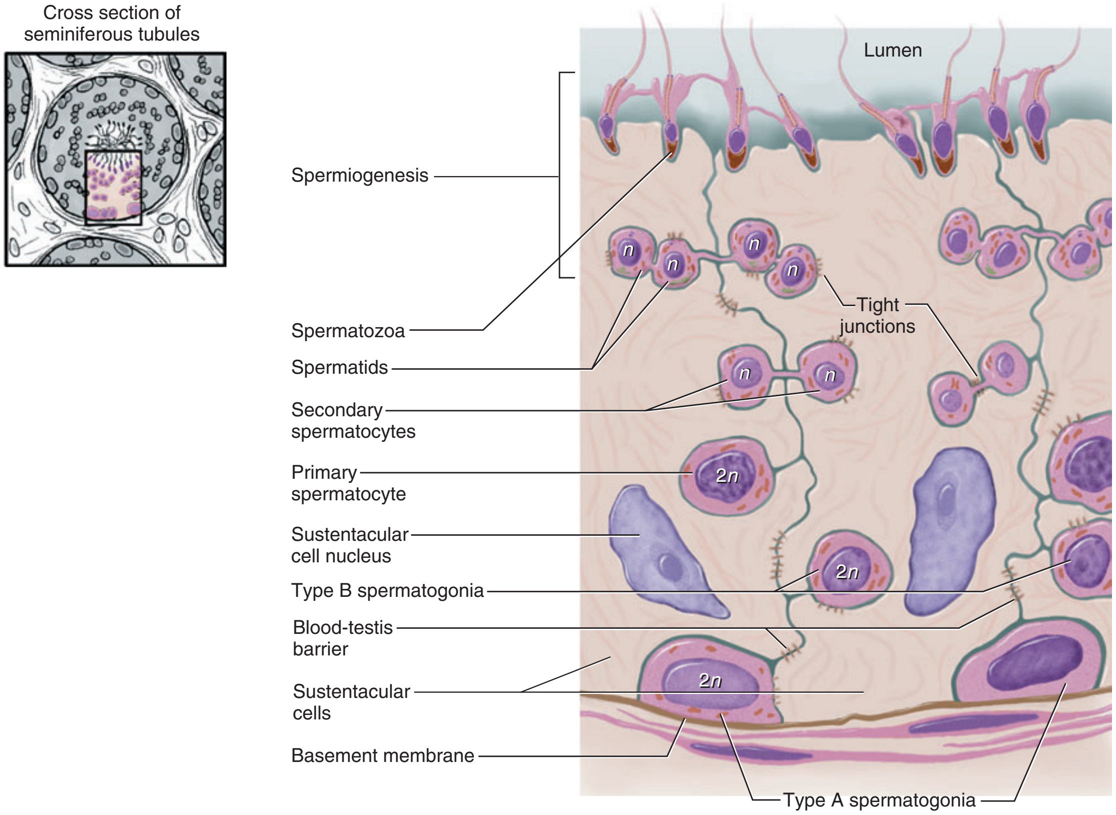

Cross section of seminiferous tubules
Lumen
Spermiogenesis
n
n
n
n
Tight junctions
Spermatozoa
Spermatids
n
n
Secondary spermatocytes
Primary spermatocyte
2n
Sustentacular cell nucleus
2n
Type B spermatogonia
Blood-testis barrier
Sustentacular cells
2n
Basement membrane
Type A spermatogonia

Figure 27.16 **Spermatogenesis in Relation to the Sustentacular Cells.**
Why must the primary spermatocyte move through the blood-testis barrier before undergoing meiosis?

The rest of spermatogenesis is called **spermiogenesis** (fig. 27.17). It involves no further cell division, but a gradual transformation of each spermatid into a spermatozoon. A spermatid sprouts a flagellum (tail) and discards most of its cytoplasm, becoming as small and lightweight as possible. Eventually, the sperm cell is released and is washed down the tubule by fluid from the sustentacular cells. It takes about 74 days for a spermatogonium to become a mature spermatozoon. A young man produces about 300,000 sperm per minute, or 400 million per day.

The Spermatozoon

The spermatozoon has two parts: a pear-shaped head and a long tail (fig. 27.18). The **head,** about 4 to 5 μm long and 3 μm wide at its broadest part, contains three structures: a nucleus, acrosome, and flagellar basal body. The most important of these is the nucleus, which fills most of the head and contains a haploid set of condensed, genetically inactive chromosomes. The **acrosome**[31] is a lysosome in the form of a thin cap covering the apical half of the nucleus. It contains enzymes that are later used to penetrate the egg if the sperm is successful. The basal body of the tail flagellum is nestled in an indentation at the basal end of the nucleus.

The **tail** is divided into three regions called the midpiece, principal piece, and endpiece. The **midpiece,** a cylinder about 5 to 9 μm long and half as wide as the head, is the thickest part. It contains numerous large mitochondria that spiral tightly around the axoneme of the flagellum. They produce the ATP needed for the beating of the tail when the sperm migrates up the female reproductive tract. The **principal piece,** 40 to 45 μm long, constitutes most of the tail and consists of the axoneme surrounded by a sheath of fibers. The **endpiece,** 4 to 5 μm long, consists of the axoneme only and is the narrowest part of the sperm.

Semen

The fluid expelled during orgasm is called **semen,**[32] or **seminal fluid.** A typical ejaculation discharges 2 to 5 mL

---

[31] *acro* = tip, peak + *some* = body

[32] *semen* = seed

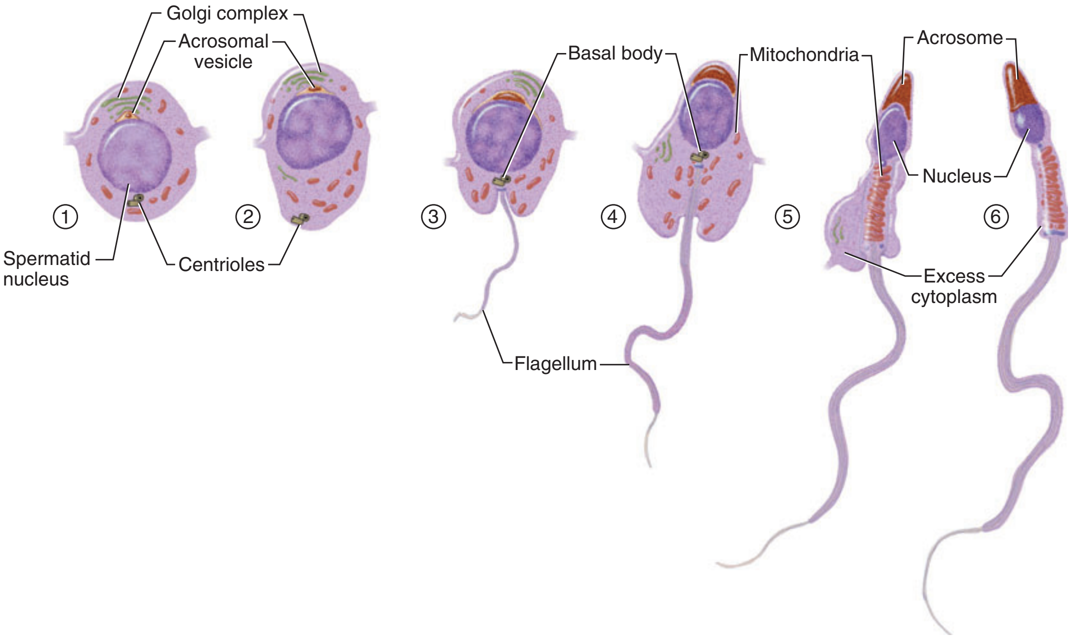

Golgi complex
Acrosomal vesicle
Basal body
Mitochondria
Acrosome
①
②
③
④
⑤
⑥
Nucleus
Spermatid nucleus
Centrioles
Excess cytoplasm
Flagellum

Figure 27.17 **Spermiogenesis.** In this process, the spermatids discard excess cytoplasm, grow tails, and become spermatozoa.

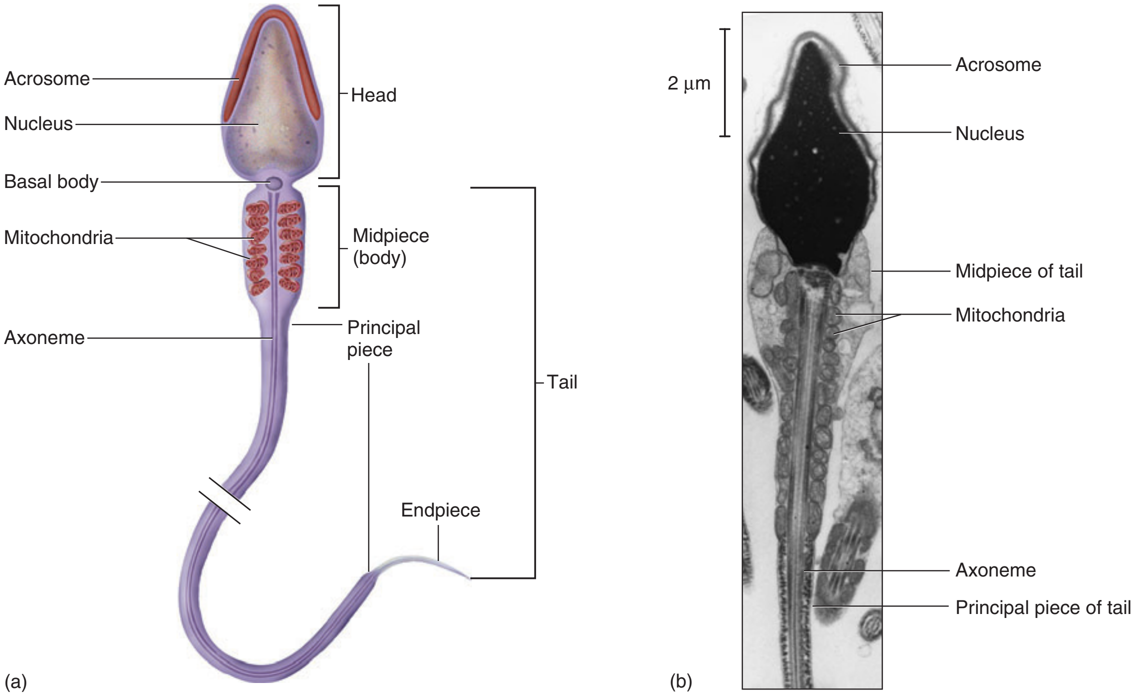

Acrosome
Nucleus
Basal body
Mitochondria
Axoneme
Head
Midpiece (body)
Principal piece
Tail
Endpiece
(a)
2 µm
Acrosome
Nucleus
Midpiece of tail
Mitochondria
Axoneme
Principal piece of tail
(b)

Figure 27.18 **The Mature Spermatozoon.** (*a*) Structure. (*b*) Head and part of the tail of a spermatozoon (TEM).

Table 27.1 Composition of Semen

Spermatozoa	Serve to digest a path through cervical mucus and to fertilize egg.
Fructose	Provides energy for sperm motility. Secreted by seminal vesicles.
Fibrinogen	Causes semen to clot when acted upon by prostatic clotting enzymes. Secreted by seminal vesicles.
Clotting Enzymes	Convert fibrinogen to fibrin after ejaculation, causing semen to clot and adhere to vagina and cervix.
Fibrinolysin	Dissolves fibrin and liquefies semen about 15 to 30 minutes after ejaculation, thus liberating sperm from the clot.
Prostaglandins	Stimulate peristaltic contractions of female reproductive tract; may help draw sperm into uterus or spread it through the uterus. Reduce viscosity of cervical mucus, making it easier for sperm to travel up cervical canal into uterus. Secreted by prostate and seminal vesicles.
Spermine	A base that gives the semen a pH of 7.2 to 7.6. Helps to neutralize vaginal acidity (pH 4–5) and thus activate sperm (sperm motility is poor below pH 6) and protect them from vaginal acid.

of semen, composed of about 60% seminal vesicle fluid, 30% prostatic fluid, 10% sperm and spermatic duct secretions, and a trace of bulbourethral fluid. The semen usually has a **sperm count** of 50 to 120 million sperm/mL. A sperm count any lower than 20 to 25 million sperm/mL is usually associated with **infertility (sterility),** the inability to fertilize an egg (see table 27.2). The major constituents of semen are listed in table 27.1.

Insight 27.3 Clinical Application

Reproductive Effects of Pollution

In recent decades, wildlife biologists have noticed increasing numbers of male birds, fish, and alligators with a variety of abnormalities in reproductive development. These deformities have been attributed to chemical pollutants called *endocrine disruptors* or *estrogen mimics.* Evidence is mounting that humans, too, are showing declining fertility and increasing anatomical abnormalities due to pollutants in water, meat, vegetables, and even breast milk and the uterine environment.

Over the last 50 years, there has been an alarming increase in the incidence of cryptorchidism (undescended testes) and hypospadias (a condition in which the urethra opens on the ventral side of the penis instead of at the tip). The rate of testicular cancer has more than tripled in that time. Data on 15,000 men from several countries show a sharp drop in average sperm count—from 113 million/mL in 1940 to only 66 million/mL in 1990. Total sperm production has decreased even more, because the average volume of semen per ejaculate has dropped 19% over this period.

The pollutants implicated in this trend include a wide array of common herbicides, insecticides, industrial chemicals, and breakdown products of materials ranging from plastics to dishwashing detergents. Some authorities think these chemicals act by mimicking estrogens or blocking the action of testosterone by binding to its receptors. Other scientists, however, question the data and feel the issue may be overstated. While the debate continues, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency is screening thousands of industrial chemicals for endocrine effects.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

16. State how many chromosomes a cell has, and how many chromatids each chromosome has, at the conclusion of meiosis I and meiosis II.
17. Name the stages of spermatogenesis from spermatogonium to spermatozoon.
18. Describe the three major parts of a spermatozoon and state what organelles or cytoskeletal components are contained in each.
19. List the major contributions of the seminal vesicles and prostate gland to the semen, and state the functions of these components.

Male Sexual Response

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the blood and nerve supply to the penis; and
- explain how these govern erection and ejaculation.

The physiology of sexual intercourse was unexplored territory before the 1950s because of repressive attitudes toward the subject. British psychologist Havelock Ellis (1859–1939) suffered severe professional sanctions merely for surveying people on their sexual behavior. In the 1950s, William Masters and Virginia Johnson daringly launched the first physiological studies of sexual response in the laboratory. In 1966, they published *Human Sexual Response,* which detailed measurements and observations on more than 10,000 sexual acts by nearly 700 volunteer men and women. Masters and Johnson then turned their attention to disorders of sexual function and pioneered modern therapy for sexual dysfunctions.

Sexual intercourse is also known as **coitus, coition,**[33] or **copulation.**[34] Masters and Johnson divided intercourse into four recognizable phases, which they called excitement, plateau, orgasm, and resolution. The following discussion is organized around this model, although other authorities have modified it or proposed alternatives.

Anatomical Foundations

To understand male sexual function, we must give closer attention to the blood circulation and nerve supply to the penis.

Each internal iliac artery gives rise to an **internal pudendal (penile) artery,** which enters the root of the penis and divides in two. One branch, the **dorsal artery,** travels dorsally along the penis not far beneath the skin (see fig. 27.12). The other branch, the **deep artery,** travels through the core of the corpus cavernosum and gives off

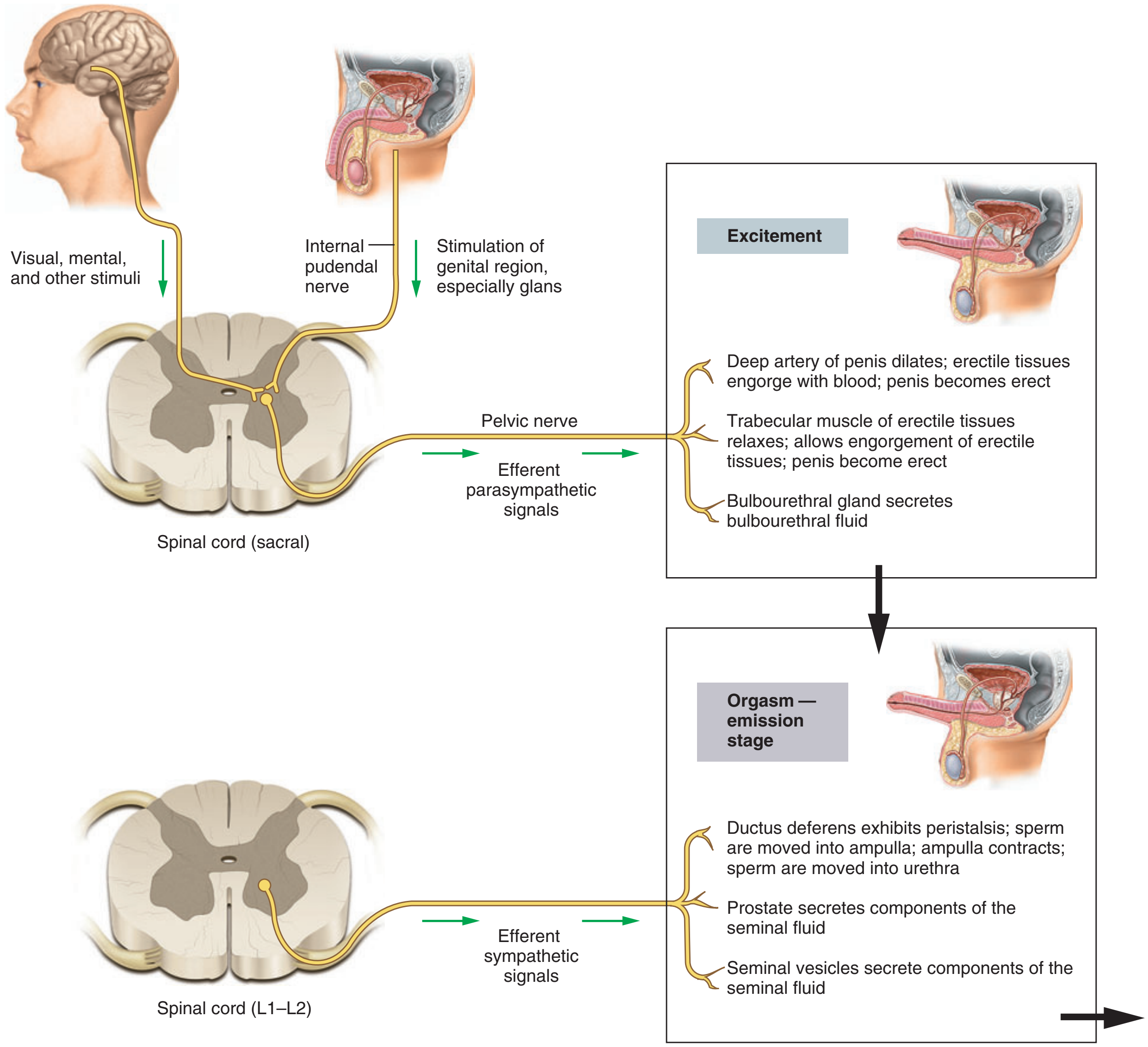

Visual, mental, and other stimuli
Internal pudendal nerve
Stimulation of genital region, especially glans
Spinal cord (sacral)
Pelvic nerve
Efferent parasympathetic signals
Excitement
Deep artery of penis dilates; erectile tissues engorge with blood; penis becomes erect
Trabecular muscle of erectile tissues relaxes; allows engorgement of erectile tissues; penis become erect
Bulbourethral gland secretes bulbourethral fluid
Orgasm — emission stage
Ductus deferens exhibits peristalsis; sperm are moved into ampulla; ampulla contracts; sperm are moved into urethra
Prostate secretes components of the seminal fluid
Seminal vesicles secrete components of the seminal fluid
Spinal cord (L1–L2)
Efferent sympathetic signals

Figure 27.19 Neural Control of Male Sexual Response.

---

[33] *coit* = to come together
[34] *copul* = link, bond

smaller **helicine**[35] **arteries,** which penetrate the trabeculae and empty into the lacunae. When the deep artery dilates, the lacunae fill with blood and the penis becomes erect. When the penis is flaccid, most of its blood supply comes from the dorsal arteries.

The penis is richly innervated by sensory and motor nerve fibers. The glans has an abundance of tactile, pressure, and temperature receptors, especially on its proximal margin and frenulum. Sensory fibers of the shaft, scrotum, perineum, and elsewhere are also highly important to erotic stimulation. They lead by way of a prominent **dorsal nerve** of the penis to the **internal pudendal nerve,** then to the sacral plexus, and finally to the sacral region of the spinal cord (fig. 27.19).

Both autonomic and somatic motor fibers carry impulses from integrating centers in the spinal cord to the penis and other pelvic organs. Sympathetic fibers arise from levels T12 to L2, pass through the hypogastric and pelvic nerve plexuses, and innervate the penile arteries, trabecular muscle, spermatic ducts, and accessory glands. They dilate the penile arteries and can induce erection even when the sacral region of the spinal cord is damaged. They also initiate erection in response to input to the special senses and to sexual thoughts.

---

[35] *helic* = coil, helix

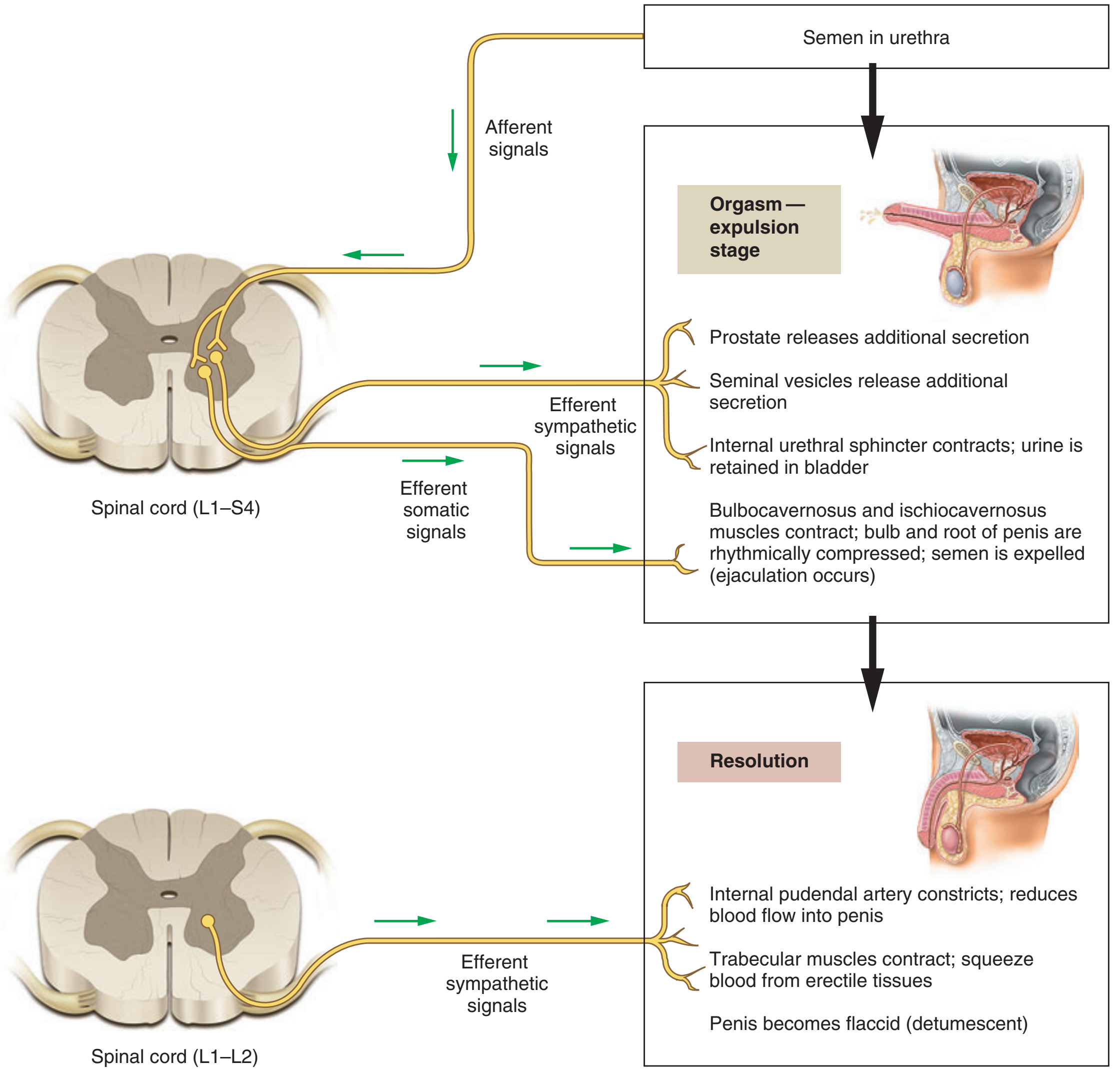

Semen in urethra
Afferent signals
Orgasm—expulsion stage
Prostate releases additional secretion
Seminal vesicles release additional secretion
Internal urethral sphincter contracts; urine is retained in bladder
Efferent sympathetic signals
Efferent somatic signals
Spinal cord (L1–S4)
Bulbocavernosus and ischiocavernosus muscles contract; bulb and root of penis are rhythmically compressed; semen is expelled (ejaculation occurs)
Resolution
Internal pudendal artery constricts; reduces blood flow into penis
Trabecular muscles contract; squeeze blood from erectile tissues
Penis becomes flaccid (detumescent)
Efferent sympathetic signals
Spinal cord (L1–L2)

Figure 27.19 **Neural Control of Male Sexual Response *(continued).***

Parasympathetic fibers extend from segments S2 to S4 of the spinal cord through the pudendal nerves to the arteries of the penis. They are involved in an autonomic reflex arc that causes erection in response to direct stimulation of the penis and other perineal organs.

Excitement and Plateau

The **excitement phase** is characterized by **vasocongestion** (swelling of the genitals with blood), **myotonia** (muscle tension), and increases in heart rate, blood pressure, and pulmonary ventilation. The bulbourethral glands secrete their fluid during this phase. The excitement phase can be initiated by a broad spectrum of erotic stimuli—sights, sounds, aromas, touch—and even by dreams or thoughts. Conversely, emotions can inhibit sexual response and make it difficult to function when a person is anxious, stressed, or preoccupied with other thoughts.

The most obvious manifestation of male sexual excitement is **erection** of the penis, which makes entry of the vagina possible. Erection is an autonomic reflex mediated predominantly by parasympathetic nerve fibers that travel alongside the deep and helicine arteries of the penis. These fibers trigger the secretion of nitric oxide (NO), which leads to the relaxation of the deep arteries and lacunae (see insight 27.4). Whether this is enough to cause erection, or whether it is also necessary to block the outflow of blood from the penis, is still being debated. According to one hypothesis, as lacunae near the deep arteries fill with blood, they expand and compress lacunae closer to the periphery of the erectile tissue. This is where blood leaves the erectile tissues, so the compression of the peripheral lacunae helps retain blood in the penis. Their compression is aided by the fact that each corpus cavernosum is wrapped in a tunica albuginea, which fits over the erectile tissue like a tight fibrous sleeve and contributes to its tension and firmness.

As the corpora cavernosa expand, the penis becomes enlarged, rigid, and elevated to an angle conducive to entry of the vagina. Once **intromission** (entry) is achieved, the tactile and pressure sensations produced by vaginal massaging of the penis further accentuate the erection reflex.

The corpus spongiosum has neither a central artery nor a tunica albuginea. It swells and becomes more visible as a cordlike ridge along the ventral surface of the penis, but it does not become nearly as engorged and hardened as the corpora cavernosa. Vasocongestion is not limited to the penis; the testes also become as much as 50% larger during excitement.

In the **plateau phase,** variables such as respiratory rate, heart rate, and blood pressure are sustained at a high level, or rise slightly, for a few seconds to a few minutes before orgasm. This phase may be marked by increased vasocongestion and myotonia.

Think About It

Why is it important that the corpus spongiosum not become as engorged and rigid as the corpora cavernosa?

Insight 27.4 Clinical Application

Viagra—A Treatment for Erectile Dysfunction

Viagra, a medication for erectile dysfunction, has received more attention than most newly developed drugs. Its development was one of the offshoots of the discovery of the cell-signaling function of nitric oxide (NO). When sexual stimulation triggers NO secretion, NO activates an enzyme called guanylate cyclase. This enzyme produces cyclic guanosine monophosphate (cGMP). cGMP then relaxes the smooth muscle of the deep arteries and lacunae of the corpora cavernosa, increasing blood flow into these erectile tissues. Eventually, cGMP is broken down by an enzyme called phosphodiesterase type 5 (PDE5), and the erection subsides. Viagra helps to prolong erection by inhibiting PDE5, thus slowing the rate of cGMP breakdown (fig. 27.20).

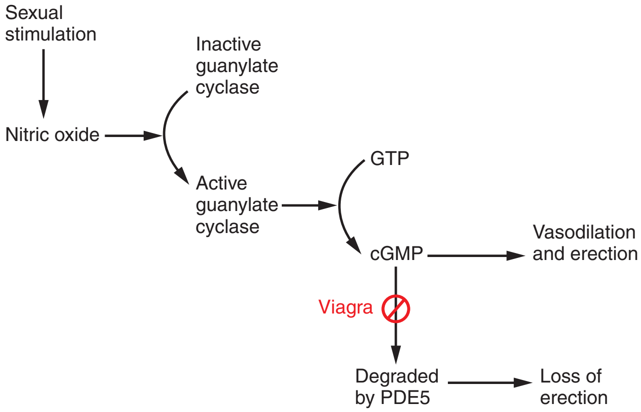


Figure 27.20 **The Mechanism by Which Viagra Prolongs Erection.**

Orgasm and Ejaculation

The **orgasm,**[36] or **climax,** is a short but intense reaction that lasts 3 to 15 seconds and usually is marked by the discharge of semen. The heart rate increases to as high as 180 beats per minute, blood pressure rises proportionately, and the respiratory rate becomes as high as 40 breaths per minute. From the standpoint of producing offspring, the most significant aspect of male orgasm is the **ejaculation**[37] of semen into the vagina.

---

[36] *orgasm* = swelling

Ejaculation occurs in two stages called emission and expulsion. In **emission,** the sympathetic nervous system stimulates peristalsis in the smooth muscle of the ductus deferens, which propels sperm from the tail of the epididymis, along the ductus, and into the ampulla. Contractions of the ampulla propel the sperm into the prostatic urethra, and contractions of smooth muscle in the prostate gland force prostatic fluid into the urethra. Sperm first begin moving when they mix with these glandular secretions in the urethra. During storage, they remain immobile. Secretions of the seminal vesicles join the semen soon after the prostatic secretion. The contractions and seminal flow of this phase create an urgent sensation that ejaculation is inevitable.

Semen in the urethra activates somatic and sympathetic reflexes that produce **expulsion** of the semen. Sensory impulses travel to the spinal cord via the internal pudendal nerve. Efferent signals come from a reflex center in the upper lumbar region of the spinal cord by way of sympathetic fibers to the prostate and seminal vesicles, causing further glandular secretion. The sympathetic reflex also constricts the internal urethral sphincter so urine cannot enter the urethra.

Somatic motor impulses leave the third and fourth sacral segments of the cord and travel to the bulbospongiosus, ischiocavernosus, and levator ani muscles. The bulbospongiosus, which envelops the root of the corpus spongiosum, undergoes five or six strong, spasmodic contractions that compress the urethra and forcibly expel the semen. Most sperm are ejected in the first milliliter of semen, mixed primarily with prostatic fluid. The seminal vesicle secretion follows and flushes most remaining sperm from the ejaculatory ducts and urethra. Some sperm may seep from the penis prior to ejaculation, and pregnancy can therefore result from genital contact even without orgasm.

Orgasm is accompanied by an intense feeling of release from tension. Ejaculation and orgasm are not the same. Although they usually occur together, it is possible to have all of the sensations of orgasm without ejaculating, and ejaculation occasionally occurs with little or no sensation of orgasm.

Resolution

Immediately following orgasm comes the **resolution** phase. Discharge of the sympathetic nervous system constricts the internal pudendal artery and reduces the flow of blood into the penis. It also causes contraction of the trabecular muscles, which squeeze blood from the lacunae of the erectile tissues. The penis may remain semierect long enough to continue intercourse, which may be important to the female's attainment of climax, but gradually the penis undergoes **detumescence**—it becomes soft and flaccid again. The resolution phase is also a time in which cardiovascular and respiratory functions return to normal. Many people break out in a "cold sweat" during the resolution phase. In men, resolution is followed by a **refractory period,** lasting anywhere from 10 minutes to a few hours, in which it is usually impossible to attain another erection and orgasm.

Men and women have many similarities and a few significant differences in sexual response. The response cycle of women is described in chapter 28.

Two of the most common concerns related to sex are sexually transmitted diseases (STDs) and contraception. Understanding most contraceptive methods requires a prior understanding of female anatomy and physiology, so contraceptive techniques for both sexes are discussed at the end of the next chapter, while STDs are discussed in this chapter (insight 27.5). This is not to imply, of course, that STDs are only a male concern and contraception only a female concern. Reproductive disorders specific to males and females are briefly summarized in tables 27.2 and 28.5, respectively. The effects of aging on the reproductive system are described in chapter 29 (p. 1112).

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

20. Explain how penile blood circulation changes during sexual arousal and why the penis becomes enlarged and stiffened.
21. State the roles of the sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems in male sexual response.

Insight 27.5 Clinical Application

Sexually Transmitted Diseases

Sexually transmitted diseases (STDs) have been well known since the writings of Hippocrates and Galen. They have been called by a number of euphemisms aimed at downplaying their mode of transmission—for example, "social diseases" and "venereal diseases" (after Venus, the goddess of love).

Here we discuss three bacterial STDs—chlamydia, gonorrhea, and syphilis—and three viral STDs—genital herpes, genital warts, and hepatitis. AIDS, another important viral STD, is discussed in chapter 21.

All of these STDs have certain points in common. They have an *incubation period* in which the pathogen multiplies in the body and begins to produce disease but symptoms have not appeared yet, and they have a *communicable period* in which an infected person can transmit the disease to others. The communicable period can begin before symptoms are noticed, it can persist after symptoms have disappeared, or it can exist in *symptomless carriers*—people who show no evidence of the disease. STDs

---

[37] *e* = *ex* = out + *jacul* = to throw

Table 27.2 Some Male Reproductive Disorders

Breast cancer	Accounts for 0.2% of male cancers in the United States; usually seen after age 60 but sometimes in children and adolescents. About 175 females get breast cancer for every male who does so. Usually felt as a lump near the nipple, often with crusting and discharge from nipple. Often quite advanced by the time of diagnosis, with poor prospects for recovery, because of denial and delay in seeking treatment.
Cryptorchidism[38] *(crip-TOR-ki-dizm)*	Failure of one or both testes to descend completely into the scrotum. Leads to infertility if not corrected, because undescended testes are in too warm an environment for spermatogenesis. In most cases, the testes descend spontaneously in the first year of infancy; otherwise, the condition can be corrected with hormone injections or surgery.
Erectile dysfunction (impotence)	Inability to maintain an erection adequate for vaginal entry in half or more of one's attempts. Can stem from aging and declining testosterone level as well as cardiovascular and neurological diseases, diabetes mellitus, medications, fear of failure, depression, and other causes.
Hypospadias[39] *(HY-po-SPAY-dee-us)*	A congenital defect in which the urethra opens on the ventral side or base of the penis rather than at the tip; usually corrected surgically at about 1 year of age.
Infertility	Inability to fertilize an egg because of a low sperm count (lower than 20 to 25 million/mL), poor sperm motility, or a high percentage of deformed sperm (two heads, defective tails, etc.). May result from malnutrition, gonorrhea and other infections, toxins, or testosterone deficiency.
Penile cancer	Accounts for 1% of male cancers in the United States; most common in black males aged 50 to 70 and of low income. Most often seen in men with nonretractable foreskins (phimosis) combined with poor penile hygiene; least common in men circumcised at birth.
Testicular cancer	The most common solid tumor in men 15 to 34 years old, especially white males of middle to upper economic classes. Typically begins as a painless lump or enlargement of the testis. Highly curable if detected early. Men should routinely palpate the testes for normal size and smooth texture.
Varicocele (VAIR-ih-co-seal)	Abnormal dilation of veins of the spermatic cord, so that they resemble a "bag of worms." Occurs in 10% of males in the United States. Caused by absence or incompetence of venous valves. Reduces testicular blood flow and often causes infertility.

Disorders described elsewhere

Androgen-insensitivity syndrome 1021	Genital herpes 1043	Hypospadias 1036
Benign prostatic hyperplasia 1029	Genital warts 1043	Prostate cancer 1029
Chlamydia 1042	Gonorrhea 1042	Syphilis 1042

usually do not stimulate an immune response, because the pathogens live inside the host cells where the immune system cannot sense their presence. Thus, there are no vaccines against them. STDs often cause fetal deformity, stillbirth, and neonatal death. The focus here is on adults, whereas STDs of the newborn are discussed in chapter 29.

Chlamydia (cla-MID-ee-uh) is currently the most common bacterial STD in the United States, with 3 to 5 million cases per year. It is caused by *Chlamydia trachomatis.* After an incubation period of 1 to 3 weeks, there appears a scanty, watery discharge from the urethra and pain in the testes or in the rectal or abdominal region. *Nongonococcal urethritis (NGU)* is an STD caused by agents other than the gonorrhea bacterium (see next)—for example, *Chlamydia, Mycoplasma hominis,* and *Ureaplasma urealyticum.* NGU is characterized by inflammation of the urethra, causing pain or discomfort on urination.

Gonorrhea (GON-oh-REE-uh), nicknamed the "clap" or "drip," is caused by the bacterium *Neisseria gonorrhoeae.* It acquired the name *gonorrhea* ("flow of seed") because Galen thought the pus discharged from the penis was semen. In addition to penile or vaginal discharge, gonorrhea causes abdominal discomfort, genital pain, painful urination (dysuria), and abnormal uterine bleeding. It may cause the uterine tubes to become scarred and obstructed, thus resulting in infertility. About 20% of infected women, however, are asymptomatic. Gonorrhea is treated with antibiotics. Gonorrhea and chlamydia frequently occur together and require treatment with one antibiotic for chlamydia and a different one for gonorrhea.

Pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) is a bacterial infection of the female pelvic organs, usually with *Chlamydia* or *Neisseria.* It often results in sterility and may require surgical removal of infected uterine tubes or other organs. The incidence of PID in the United States has increased from 17,800 cases in 1970 to about a million cases per year currently. PID has rendered tens of thousands of American women sterile.

Syphilis (SIFF-ih-liss), one of the most potentially devastating STDs, is named for a shepherd boy in a sixteenth-century poem by the physician Fracastoro. It is caused by a corkscrew-shaped bacterium named *Treponema pallidum.* After an incubation period of 2 to 6 weeks, an ulcer called a *chancre* (SHAN-kur) appears at the site of infection—usually on the penis of a male but sometimes out of sight in the vagina of a female. A chancre is a small, hard lesion with no discharge. It disappears in 4 to 6 weeks, ending the first stage of syphilis and often cre-

---

[38] *crypt* = hidden + *orchid* = testes
[39] *hypo* = below + *spad* = to draw off (the urine)

ating an illusion of recovery. In the second stage, however, the disease reappears, with a pink rash over the body, other skin eruptions, fever, joint pain, and hair loss. These symptoms disappear in 3 to 12 weeks. Symptoms then come and go for up to 5 years, but the infection is detectable by a blood test and the infected person is contagious even when symptoms are not occurring. The disease may progress to a third stage, *tertiary syphilis,* or *neurosyphilis,* in which there is damage to the blood vessels and heart valves, thickening of the meninges, and lesions of the brain that can cause paralysis and dementia. Syphilis is treated with antibiotics.

Genital herpes is the most common STD in the United States, with 20 to 40 million infected people and 500,000 new cases per year. It is usually caused by the herpes simplex virus type 2 (HSV-2). A close relative, HSV-1, causes cold sores (fever blisters) of the mouth and occasionally causes genital herpes, probably transmitted through oral-genital sex. After an incubation period of 4 to 10 days, the virus causes red blisters on the penis of the male; on the labia, vagina, or cervix of the female; and sometimes on the thighs and buttocks of either sex. Over a period of 2 to 10 days, these blisters rupture, seep fluid, and begin to form scabs. The initial infection may be painless or may cause intense pain, urethritis, and watery discharge from the penis or vagina. The lesions heal in 2 to 3 weeks and leave no scars.

During this time, however, the viruses travel by way of sensory nerve fibers to the dorsal root ganglia, where they become dormant. Later, they can migrate along the nerves and cause small epithelial lesions at various places on the body. The movement from place to place is the basis of the name *herpes.*[40] These secondary lesions are generally smaller and heal more quickly than the primary lesions. Most patients have five to seven recurrences, ranging from several times a year to several years apart. An infected person is contagious to a sexual partner when the lesions are present and sometimes even when they are not. Although mostly a painful nuisance, HSV has been implicated as a risk factor in cervical cancer. The drug Acyclovir reduces the shedding of viruses and the spread of lesions but does not necessarily prevent recurrences.

Genital warts (condylomas) are one of the most rapidly increasing STDs today. There are about a million new cases per year, especially among young adults with multiple sex partners. Genital warts are caused by 60 or more viruses collectively called *human papillomaviruses (HPVs).* In the male, lesions usually appear on the penis, perineum, or anus, and in the female they are usually on the cervix, vaginal wall, perineum, or anus. Lesions are sometimes small and virtually invisible. A few of the 60 varieties of HPV have been implicated in cervical cancer and cancer of the penis, vagina, and anus. HPV is found in about 90% of all cervical cancers tested. About 90% of cases of genital warts, however, involve forms of HPV that have not been linked to cancer. There is still considerable difference of opinion on how to treat genital warts; they are sometimes treated with cryosurgery (freezing and excision), laser surgery, or interferon.

Hepatitis B and *C* are inflammatory liver diseases caused by the hepatitis B and C viruses (HBV, HCV). Hepatitis B and C are usually transmitted through blood and other body fluids but are becoming increasingly common as sexually transmitted diseases. They have a pattern of transmission quite similar to that of AIDS. In most cases, HBV produces no symptoms and confers permanent immunity. It can, however, cause liver cancer and cirrhosis. Infection can be prevented by vaccination. About 80% to 90% of cases of HCV, by contrast, become chronic infections and lead to liver disease and often liver failure. While an effective vaccine is available against HBV, there is no immediate prospect of a vaccine against HCV because, like HIV, HCV has a rapid mutation rate and quickly escapes the body's immune defenses. Far more people already have HCV than AIDS, and HCV threatens to become a major epidemic of the twenty-first century. HCV is already the leading reason for liver transplants in the United States.

---

[40] *herp* = to creep

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

Sexual Reproduction (p. 1018)

1. Sexual reproduction is the production of offspring that combine genes from two parents.
2. Sexual reproduction entails the union of two *gametes* to form a *zygote* (fertilized egg). The gametes are a small motile *sperm* produced by the male and a large, immobile, nutrient-laden *egg* produced by the female.
3. The *gonads* (testes and ovaries) are the *primary sex organs. Secondary sex organs* are other anatomical structures needed to produce offspring, such as the male glands, ducts, and penis and the female uterine tubes, uterus, and vagina. *Secondary sex characteristics* are features not essential to reproduction but which help to attract mates.

Sex Determination and Development (p. 1019)

1. Human chromosomes include 22 pairs of *autosomes* and 1 pair of *sex chromosomes.* There are two types of sex chromosomes, a large X and a smaller Y chromosome. A person who inherits two X chromosomes is genetically female, and one who inherits an X and a Y is genetically male.
2. The Y chromosome bears a gene called *SRY,* which codes for a protein called *testis-determining factor (TDF).* TDF indirectly causes the fetal gonads to develop into testes. The testes secrete androgens, which stimulate the mesonephric ducts to develop into a male reproductive tract, and *müllerian-inhibiting factor,* which stimulates the paramesonephric ducts to degenerate.
3. In the absence of a Y chromosome, the gonads become ovaries, the

mesonephric ducts degenerate, and the paramesonephric ducts develop into a female reproductive tract.

4. The external genitalia of both sexes begin as a phallus, a pair of urogenital folds, and a pair of labioscrotal folds. By week 12 of prenatal development, the phallus differentiates into the penis of a male or clitoris of a female; the urogenital folds enclose the urethra of the male or become the labia minora of a female; and the labioscrotal folds become the scrotum of a male or labia majora of a female.
5. During male development, a cord called the *gubernaculum* pulls the fetal testes through the inguinal canal into the scrotum; this is called *descent of the testes.*

Male Reproductive Anatomy (p. 1023)

1. The testis has a fibrous capsule, the *tunica albuginea.* Fibrous septa divide the interior of the testis into 250 to 300 compartments called *lobules.* Each lobule contains 1 to 3 sperm-producing *seminiferous tubules.* Testosterone-secreting *interstitial cells* lie in clusters between the tubules.
2. The epithelium of a seminiferous tubule consists of *germ cells* and *sustentacular cells.* The germ cells develop into sperm, while the sustentacular cells support and nourish them, form a *blood-testis barrier* between the germ cells and nearest blood supply, and secrete *inhibin,* which regulates the rate of sperm production.
3. Each testis is supplied by a long, slender *testicular artery* and drained by a *testicular vein,* and is supplied with *testicular nerves* and lymphatic vessels.
4. The *scrotum* contains the testes and the *spermatic cord*—a bundle of connective tissue, testicular blood vessels, and a sperm duct, the *ductus deferens.* The spermatic cord passes up the back of the scrotum and through the inguinal ring into the pelvic cavity.
5. Sperm cannot develop at the core body temperature of 37°C. The testes are kept about 2°C cooler than this by three structures in the scrotum: the *cremaster muscle* of the spermatic cord, which relaxes when it is warm and contracts when it is cool, thus lowering or raising the scrotum and testes; the *dartos muscle* in the scrotal wall, which contracts and tautens the scrotum when it is cool; and the *pampiniform plexus* of blood vessels in the spermatic cord, which acts as a *countercurrent heat exchanger* to cool the blood on its way to the testis.
6. *Spermatic ducts* carry sperm from the testis to the urethra. They include several *efferent ductules* leaving the testis; a single *duct of the epididymis,* a highly coiled structure adhering to the posterior side of the testis; a muscular *ductus deferens* that travels through the spermatic cord into the pelvic cavity; and a short *ejaculatory duct* that carries sperm and seminal vesicle secretions the last 2 cm to the urethra. The urethra completes the path of the sperm to the outside of the body.
7. The male has three sets of accessory glands: a pair of *seminal vesicles* posterior to the urinary bladder; a single *prostate gland* inferior to the bladder, enclosing the prostatic urethra; and a pair of small *bulbourethral glands* that secrete into the proximal end of the penile urethra. The seminal vesicles and prostate secrete most of the semen. The bulbourethral glands produce a small amount of clear slippery fluid that lubricates the urethra and neutralizes its pH.
8. The *penis* is divided into an internal *root* and an external *shaft* and *glans.* It is covered with loose skin that extends over the glans as the *prepuce,* or foreskin.
9. Internally, the penis consists mainly of three long *erectile tissues*—a pair of dorsal *corpora cavernosa,* which engorge with blood and produce most of the effect of erection, and a single ventral *corpus spongiosum,* which contains the urethra. All three tissues have blood sinuses called *lacunae* separated by *trabeculae* composed of connective tissue and smooth muscle *(trabecular muscle).*
10. At the proximal end of the penis, the corpus spongiosum dilates into a *bulb* that receives the urethra and ducts of the bulbourethral glands, and the corpora cavernosa diverge into a pair of *crura* that anchor the penis to the pubic arch and perineal membrane.

Puberty and Climacteric (p. 1030)

1. *Adolescence* is a period from the onset of gonadotropin secretion to the attainment of adulthood. The first few years of adolescence, until ejaculation begins, constitute *puberty.*
2. At puberty, the hypothalamus begins secreting gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH), which induces the anterior pituitary to secrete follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) and luteinizing hormone (LH). These hormones stimulate enlargement of the testes, an early sign of puberty.
3. LH stimulates the interstitial cells to produce androgens (especially testosterone), and FSH causes the sustentacular cells to produce androgen-binding protein (ABP).
4. Testosterone stimulates spermatogenesis; modulates the secretion of GnRH, FSH, and LH; stimulates the development of the secondary sex organs and sex characteristics; stimulates bodily growth and erythropoiesis; and activates sexual interest, or libido.
5. Inhibin, secreted by the sustentacular cells, selectively inhibits FSH secretion and sperm production without inhibiting LH and testosterone secretion.
6. After age 20, testosterone secretion steadily declines, as do the number and secretory activity of interstitial and sustentacular cells. Declining testosterone and inhibin levels reduce the negative feedback inhibition of the pituitary, which thus secretes elevated levels of FSH and LH. In some men, this results in physiological and mood changes called *male climacteric.*
7. In older age, *erectile dysfunction* becomes common, but the ability to ejaculate remains unaffected in most cases.

Sperm and Semen (p. 1032)

1. Sexual reproduction requires a form of cell division called *meiosis* to reduce the chromosome number by half. This prevents a doubling of chromosome number in each generation when egg and sperm combine. Meiosis produces *haploid* gametes with 23 chromosomes each. The union of two such gametes restores the *diploid* number of 46 chromosomes in the zygote.
2. Meiosis consists of one cell division with stages called prophase I,

metaphase I, anaphase I, and telophase I; then an interval called *interkinesis;* then a second cell division consisting of prophase II, metaphase II, anaphase II, and telophase II. The ultimate result is four haploid daughter cells.

3. Prophase I also involves *crossing-over,* an exchange of genes between an individual's homologous maternal and paternal chromosomes. As a consequence, the chromosomes passed to a child have new genetic combinations not inherited from one's parents.
4. The production of sperm is called *spermatogenesis.*
5. Spermatogenesis begins with *primordial germ cells,* which arise in the yolk sac, migrate to the gonads, and become *spermatogonia* by the time a boy is born.
6. From puberty to death, primary spermatogonia divide by mitosis into *type A* and *type B* spermatogonia. The latter develop into *primary spermatocytes,* then enter into meiosis and divide into *secondary spermatocytes* and finally *spermatids.*
7. In a process called *spermiogenesis,* spermatids shed excess cytoplasm and grow a tail (flagellum), thus becoming sperm.
8. The sperm consists of a head containing the nucleus and *acrosome,* and a tail composed of a mitochondria-stuffed *midpiece,* a long *principal piece,* and a short *endpiece.*
9. *Semen* is a mixture of sperm (10% of the volume) and fluids from the prostate (30%) and seminal vesicles (60%). It contains fructose, fibrinogen, clotting enzymes, fibrinolysin, prostaglandins, and spermine (table 27.1).

Male Sexual Response (p. 1037)

1. The penis is supplied by a pair of internal pudendal arteries. One branch of this artery, the *dorsal artery,* travels dorsally under the skin of the penis and the other, the *deep artery,* travels through the corpus cavernosum and supplies blood to the lacunae. The dorsal arteries supply most of the blood when the penis is flaccid, and the deep arteries during erection.
2. Nerves of the penis converge on the *dorsal nerve,* which leads via the *internal pudendal nerve* to the sacral plexus and then the spinal cord. The penis receives sympathetic, parasympathetic, and somatic motor nerve fibers.
3. The *excitement phase* of male sexual response is marked by vasocongestion of the genitals; myotonia of the skeletal muscles; increases in heart rate, blood pressure, and pulmonary ventilation; secretion by the bulbourethral glands; and erection of the penis.
4. Erection occurs when parasympathetic nerve fibers trigger the secretion of nitric oxide, which dilates the deep arteries and lacunae. Blood flow into the erectile tissues engorges the lacunae, causing the penis to enlarge and stiffen.
5. The *plateau phase* is marked by elevated but stable, or slightly rising, heart rate, blood pressure, and respiration, and sometimes increased vasocongestion and myotonia.
6. *Orgasm (climax)* is marked by a sudden rise in heart rate, blood pressure, and respiration, and usually the ejaculation of semen. Ejaculation occurs in stages: *emission,* the peristaltic propulsion of sperm from the epididymis to the prostatic urethra, where it mixes with the prostatic and seminal vesicle secretions; and *expulsion,* in which five or six spasmodic contractions of the bulbospongiosus muscle compress the urethra and expel the semen from the penis.
7. Orgasm is followed by *resolution,* in which physiological values return to normal and the penis undergoes *detumescence,* or loss of engorgement and erection. This is typically followed by a *refractory period* in which it is impossible to attain another erection and orgasm.

Selected Vocabulary

gamete	1018
zygote	1018
gonad	1018
descent of the testes	1021
seminiferous tubule	1023
interstitial cell	1023
germ cell	1023
sustentacular cell	1023
spermatic cord	1024
cremaster muscle	1027
dartos muscle	1027
pampiniform plexus	1027
epididymis	1028
seminal vesicles	1028
prostate gland	1028
bulbourethral glands	1029
corpus spongiosum	1029
corpus cavernosum	1029
lacuna	1029
trabecula	1029
spermatogenesis	1032
acrosome	1035
semen	1035

Testing Your Recall

1. The ductus deferens develops from the _______ of the embryo.
   a. mesonephric duct
   b. paramesonephric duct
   c. phallus
   d. labioscrotal folds
   e. urogenital folds
2. Descent of the testes is achieved by contraction of a cord called
   a. the gubernaculum.
   b. the spermatic cord.
   c. the ductus deferens.
   d. the pampiniform plexus.
   e. the rete testis.
3. The expulsion of semen occurs when the bulbospongiosus muscle is stimulated by
   a. somatic efferent neurons.
   b. somatic afferent neurons.
   c. sympathetic efferent neurons.
   d. parasympathetic efferent neurons.
   e. prostaglandins.

4. Prior to ejaculation, sperm are stored primarily in
   a. the seminiferous tubules.
   b. the rete testis.
   c. the epididymis.
   d. the seminal vesicles.
   e. the ejaculatory ducts.

5. The penis is attached to the pubic arch by crura of
   a. the corpora cavernosa.
   b. the corpus spongiosum.
   c. the perineal membrane.
   d. the bulbocavernosus.
   e. the ischiocavernosus.

6. The first hormone secreted at the onset of puberty is
   a. follicle-stimulating hormone.
   b. interstitial cell–stimulating hormone.
   c. human chorionic gonadotropin.
   d. gonadotropin-releasing hormone.
   e. testosterone.

7. When it is necessary to reduce sperm production without reducing testosterone secretion, the sustentacular cells secrete
   a. dihydrotestosterone.
   b. androgen-binding protein.
   c. LH.
   d. FSH.
   e. inhibin.

8. Four spermatozoa arise from each
   a. primordial germ cell.
   b. type A spermatogonium.
   c. type B spermatogonium.
   d. secondary spermatocyte.
   e. spermatid.

9. The point in meiosis at which sister chromatids separate from each other is
   a. prophase I.
   b. metaphase I.
   c. anaphase I.
   d. anaphase II.
   e. telophase II.

10. Blood is forced out of the penile lacunae by contraction of the ______ muscles.
    a. bulbocavernosus
    b. ischiocavernosus
    c. cremaster
    d. trabecular
    e. dartos

11. Under the influence of androgens, the embryonic ______ duct develops into the male reproductive tract.

12. Spermatozoa obtain energy for locomotion from ______ in the semen.

13. The ______, a network of veins in the spermatic cord, helps keep the testes cooler than the core body temperature.

14. All germ cells beginning with the ______ are genetically different from the rest of the body cells and therefore must be protected by the blood-testis barrier.

15. The corpora cavernosa as well as the testes have a fibrous capsule called the ______.

16. Over half of the semen consists of secretions from a pair of glands called the ______.

17. The blood-testis barrier is formed by tight junctions between the ______ cells.

18. The earliest haploid stage of spermatogenesis is the ______.

19. Erection of the penis occurs when nitric oxide causes the ______ arteries to dilate.

20. A sperm penetrates the egg by means of enzymes in its ______.

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. The male scrotum is homologous to the female labia majora.
2. Sperm cannot develop at the core body temperature.
3. Luteinizing hormone stimulates the testes to secrete testosterone.
4. The testes and penis are the primary sex organs of the male.
5. A high testosterone level makes a fetus develop a male reproductive system, and a high estrogen level makes it develop a female reproductive system.
6. Most of the semen is produced by the seminal vesicles.
7. The pampiniform plexus serves to keep the testes warm.
8. Prior to ejaculation, sperm are stored mainly in the seminal vesicles.
9. Male menopause is the cessation of sperm production around the age of 55.
10. Erection is caused by parasympathetic stimulation of the penile arteries.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. Explain why testosterone may be considered both an endocrine and a paracrine secretion of the testes. (Review paracrines in chapter 17 if necessary.)
2. A young man is in a motorcycle accident that severs his spinal cord at the neck and leaves him paralyzed from the neck down. When informed of the situation, his wife asks the physician if her husband will be able to have erections and father any children. What should the doctor tell her? Explain your answer.
3. Considering the temperature in the scrotum, would you expect hemoglobin to unload more oxygen to the testes, or less, than it unloads in the warmer internal organs? Why? (Hint: See figure 22.24.) How would you expect this fact to influence sperm development?
4. Why is it possible for spermatogonia to be outside the blood-testis barrier, yet necessary for primary spermatocytes and later stages to be within the barrier, isolated from the blood?
5. A 68-year-old man taking medication for hypertension complains to his physician that it has made him impotent. Explain why this could be an effect of antihypertension drugs.

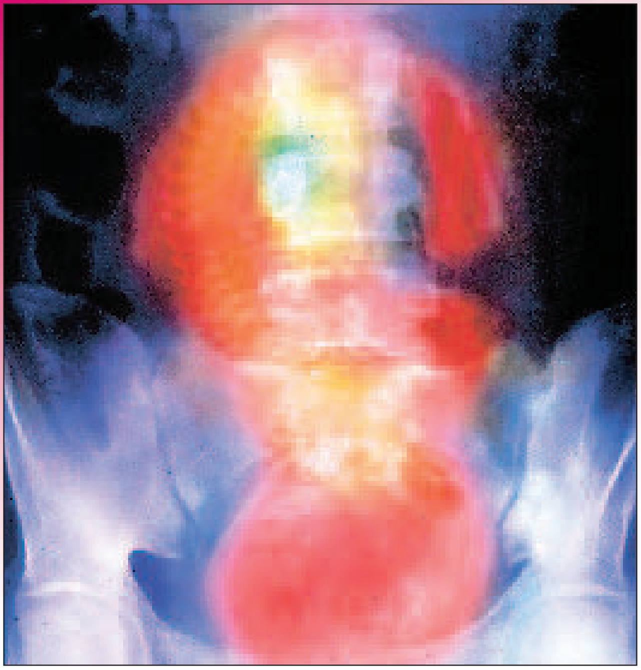
Answers at the Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Legend Questions

27.3	Both disorders result from defects in hormone receptors rather than a lack of the respective hormone.
27.5	The word *vagina* means “sheath.” The tunica vaginalis ensheaths the testis.
27.7	An enlarged prostate gland compresses the urethra and interferes with emptying of the bladder.
27.12	An overly engorged corpus spongiosum would compress the urethra and interfere with the expulsion of semen.
27.16	The next cell stage in meiosis, the secondary spermatocyte, is genetically different from the other cells of the body and would be subject to immune attack if not isolated from the antibodies in the blood.

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.



Full-term fetus, head-down in the female pelvic cavity (colorized X ray)

CHAPTER 28

The Female Reproductive System

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Reproductive Anatomy 1050
- Sex Differentiation 1050
- The Ovary 1050
- Secondary Sex Organs (Genitalia) 1050
- Secondary Sex Characteristics 1057

Puberty and Menopause 1058
- Puberty 1058
- Climacteric and Menopause 1060

Oogenesis and the Sexual Cycle 1061
- Oogenesis 1061
- The Sexual Cycle 1061

Female Sexual Response 1068
- Excitement and Plateau 1068
- Orgasm 1068
- Resolution 1068

Pregnancy and Childbirth 1070
- Prenatal Development 1070
- Hormones of Pregnancy 1070
- Adjustments to Pregnancy 1072
- Childbirth 1073
- Puerperium 1075

Lactation 1076
- Development of the Mammary Glands in Pregnancy 1076
- Colostrum and Milk Synthesis 1077
- Milk Ejection 1077
- Breast Milk 1077

Connective Issues 1082

Chapter Review 1083

INSIGHTS

28.1 **Clinical Application:** Pap Smears and Cervical Cancer 1053
28.2 **Evolutionary Medicine:** The Evolution of Menopause 1060
28.3 **Clinical Application:** Signs of Ovulation 1066
28.4 **Clinical Application:** Methods of Contraception 1079

Brushing Up

To understand this chapter, it is important that you understand or brush up on the following concepts:

- Negative feedback inhibition of the pituitary (p. 645)
- Synergistic, permissive, and antagonistic hormone interactions (p. 662)
- Fetal development of the reproductive system (pp. 1019–1022)
- Meiosis (pp. 1032–1034)

The female reproductive system is more complex than the male's because it serves more purposes. Whereas the male needs only to produce and deliver gametes, the female must do this as well as provide nutrition and safe harbor for fetal development, then give birth and nourish the infant. Furthermore, female reproductive physiology is cyclic and female hormones are secreted in a more complex sequence compared to the relatively steady, simultaneous secretion of regulatory hormones in the male.

This chapter discusses the anatomy of the female reproductive system, the production of gametes and how it relates to the ovarian and menstrual cycles, the female sexual response, and the physiology of pregnancy, birth, and lactation. Embryonic and fetal development are treated in chapter 29.

Reproductive Anatomy

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the structure of the ovary;
- trace the female reproductive tract and describe the gross anatomy and histology of each organ;
- identify the ligaments that support the female reproductive organs;
- describe the blood supply to the female reproductive tract;
- identify the external genitals of the female; and
- describe the structure of the nonlactating breast.

Sex Differentiation

The female reproductive system (fig. 28.1) is conspicuously different from that of the male, but as we saw earlier the two sexes are indistinguishable for the first 8 to 10 weeks of development (see fig. 27.4, p. 1022). The female reproductive tract develops from the paramesonephric duct not because of the positive action of any hormone, but because of the absence of testosterone and müllerian-inhibiting factor (MIF). Without testosterone, the mesonephric duct degenerates while the phallus becomes a clitoris, the urogenital folds develop into labia minora, and the labioscrotal folds develop into labia majora. Without MIF, the paramesonephric duct develops into the uterine tubes, uterus, and vagina. This developmental pattern can be disrupted, however, by abnormal hormonal exposure before birth, as happens in adrenogenital syndrome (see p. 669).

The Ovary

The female gonads are the **ovaries,**[1] which produce egg cells (ova) and sex hormones. The ovary is an almond-shaped organ nestled in the *ovarian fossa,* a depression in the dorsal pelvic wall. The ovary measures about 3 cm long, 1.5 cm wide, and 1 cm thick. Its capsule, like that of the testis, is called the **tunica albuginea.** The interior of the ovary is indistinctly divided into an outer **cortex,** where the germ cells develop, and a central **medulla** occupied by the major arteries and veins (fig. 28.2).

The ovary lacks ducts comparable to the seminiferous tubules. Instead, each egg develops in its own fluid-filled, bubblelike **follicle** and is released by *ovulation,* the bursting of the follicle. Figure 28.2 shows several types of follicles that coincide with different stages of egg maturation, as discussed later.

The ovary is held in place by several connective tissue ligaments (fig. 28.3). Its medial pole is attached to the uterus by the *ovarian ligament* and its lateral pole is attached to the pelvic wall by the *suspensory ligament.* A sheet of peritoneum called the *broad ligament* flanks the uterus on each side and encloses the uterine tube in its superior margin. The margin of the ovary is anchored to the broad ligament by a peritoneal fold called the *mesovarium.*[2]

The ovary is supplied with an **ovarian artery, ovarian veins,** and **ovarian nerves,** which travel through the suspensory ligament. It receives an additional blood supply from the ovarian branches of the uterine arteries.

Secondary Sex Organs (Genitalia)

The internal genitalia are the uterine tubes, uterus, and vagina, which constitute a duct system from the vicinity of the ovary to the outside of the body. The external genitalia include principally the clitoris, labia minora, and labia majora. These occupy the perineum, which is defined by the same skeletal landmarks as in the male (see fig. 10.20*b,* p. 355). Beneath the skin of the perineum are several accessory glands that provide most of the lubrication for intercourse.

The Uterine Tubes

The **uterine tube,** also called the **oviduct** or **fallopian**[3] **tube,** is a canal about 10 cm long from the ovary to the uterus. At the distal (ovarian) end, it flares into a trumpet-shaped **infundibulum**[4] with feathery projections called **fimbriae**[5] (FIM-bree-ee); the middle part of the tube is the **ampulla;** and near the uterus it forms a narrower **isthmus.** The uterine tube is enclosed in the *mesosalpinx*[6] (MEZ-oh-SAL-pinks), which is the superior margin of the broad ligament.

---

[1] *ov* = egg + *ary* = place for

[2] *mes* = middle + *ovari* = ovary

[3] Gabriele Fallopio (1528–62), Italian anatomist and physician

[4] *infundibulum* = funnel

[5] *fimbria* = fringe

[6] *meso* = mesentery + *salpin* = trumpet

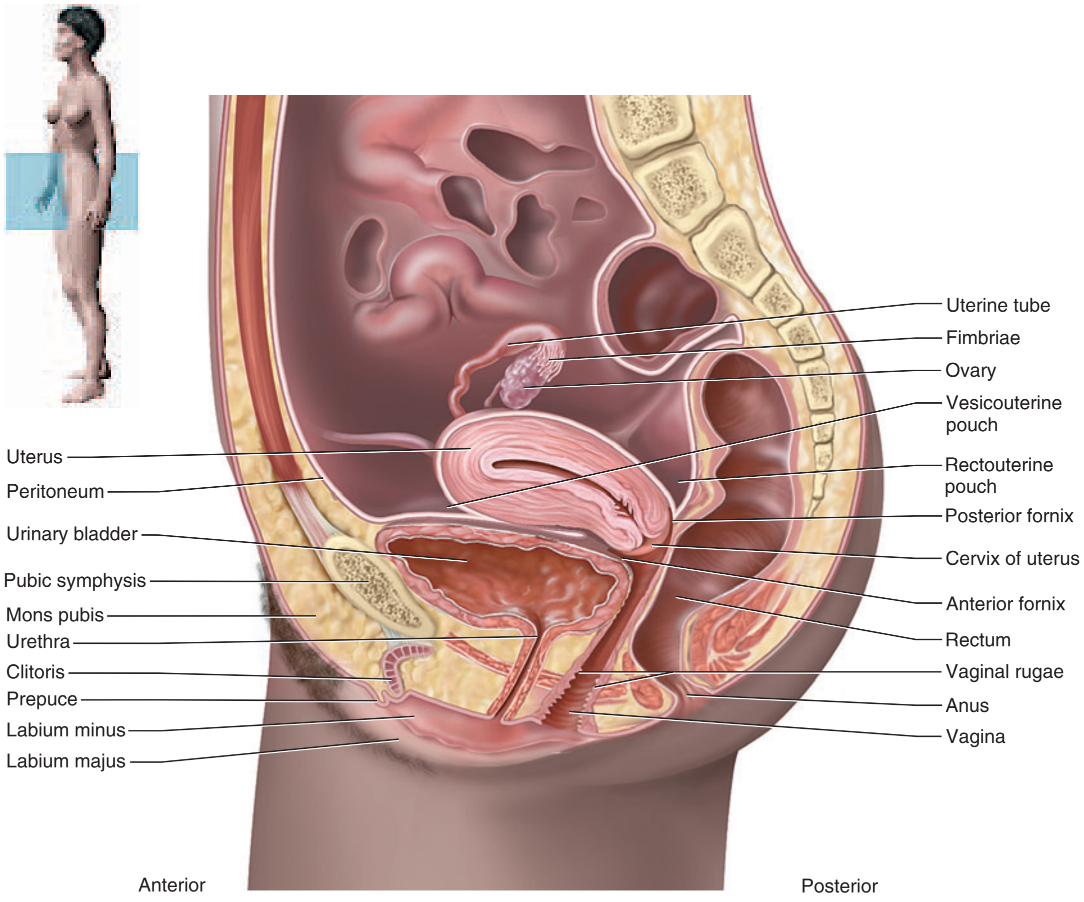

Uterine tube
Fimbriae
Ovary
Vesicouterine pouch
Uterus
Rectouterine pouch
Peritoneum
Posterior fornix
Urinary bladder
Cervix of uterus
Pubic symphysis
Anterior fornix
Mons pubis
Rectum
Urethra
Clitoris
Vaginal rugae
Prepuce
Anus
Labium minus
Vagina
Labium majus
Anterior
Posterior

Figure 28.1 The Female Reproductive System.

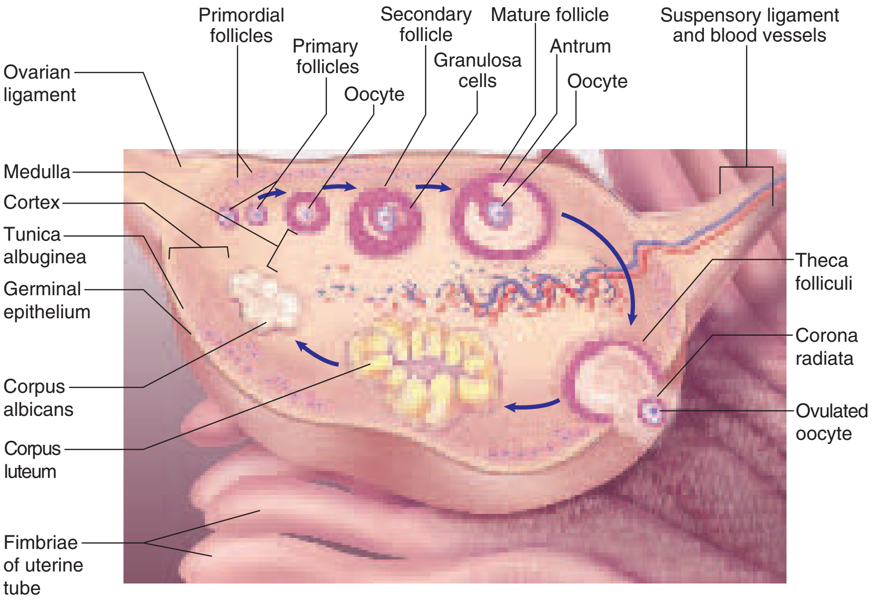

Primordial follicles
Primary follicles
Secondary follicle
Mature follicle
Suspensory ligament and blood vessels
Ovarian ligament
Granulosa cells
Antrum
Oocyte
Oocyte
Medulla
Cortex
Tunica albuginea
Germinal epithelium
Theca folliculi
Corona radiata
Corpus albicans
Ovulated oocyte
Corpus luteum
Fimbriae of uterine tube

Figure 28.2 Structure of the Ovary and the Developmental Sequence of the Ovarian Follicles.

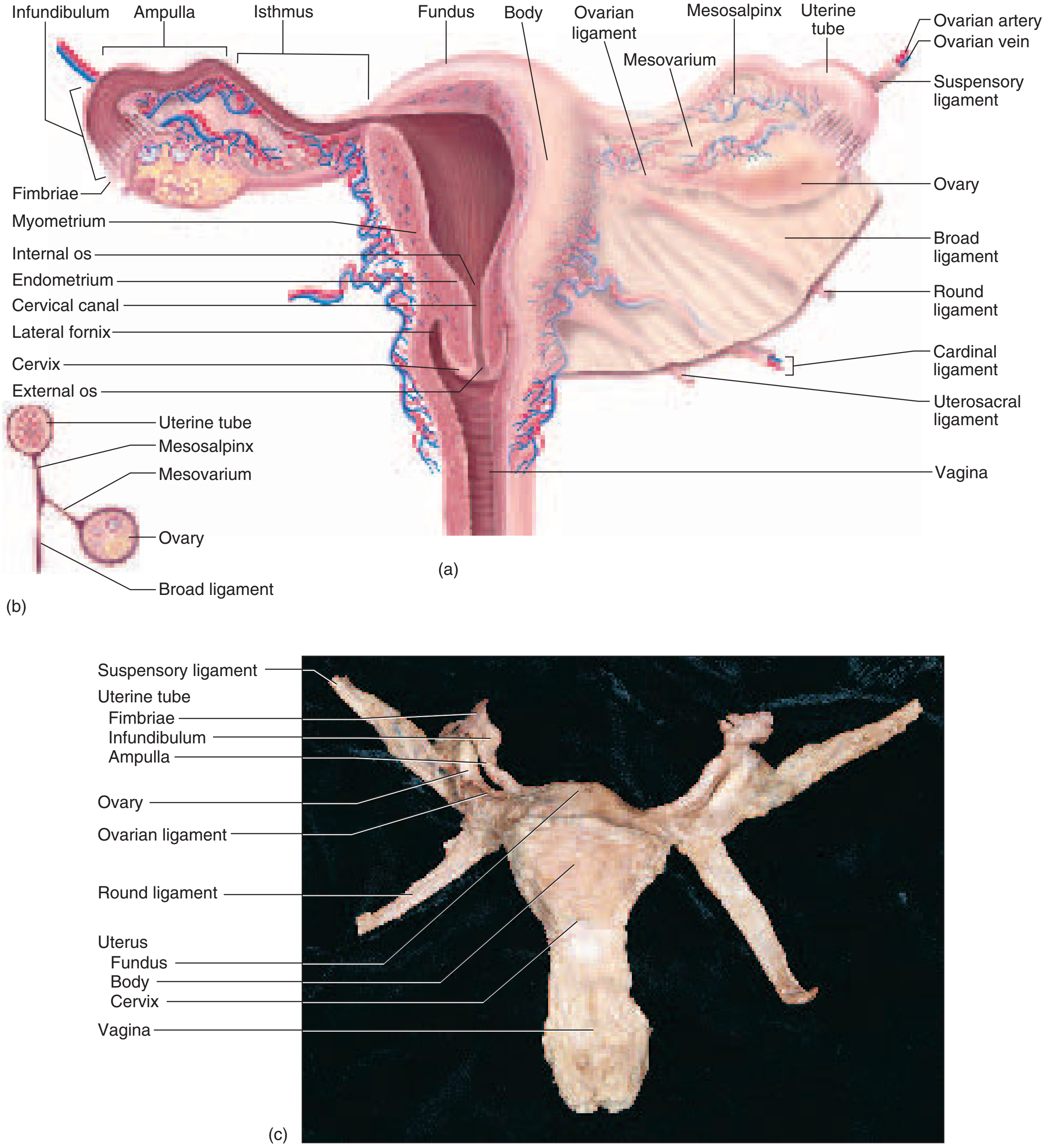

Infundibulum
Ampulla
Isthmus
Fundus
Body
Ovarian ligament
Mesovarium
Mesosalpinx
Uterine tube
Ovarian artery
Ovarian vein
Suspensory ligament
Fimbriae
Myometrium
Internal os
Endometrium
Cervical canal
Lateral fornix
Cervix
External os
Ovary
Broad ligament
Round ligament
Cardinal ligament
Uterosacral ligament
Vagina
(a)
Uterine tube
Mesosalpinx
Mesovarium
Ovary
Broad ligament
(b)
Suspensory ligament
Uterine tube
Fimbriae
Infundibulum
Ampulla
Ovary
Ovarian ligament
Round ligament
Uterus
Fundus
Body
Cervix
Vagina
(c)

Figure 28.3 **The Female Reproductive Tract and Supportive Ligaments.** (*a*) Drawing of the reproductive tract, dorsal view. (*b*) Relationship of the ligaments to the uterine tube and ovary. (c) Photograph of the reproductive tract and supportive ligaments.

The wall of the uterine tube is well endowed with smooth muscle. Its mucosa is extremely folded and convoluted and has an epithelium of ciliated cells and a smaller number of secretory cells (fig. 28.4). The cilia beat toward the uterus and, with the help of muscular contractions of the tube, convey the egg in that direction.

The Uterus

The **uterus**[7] (see fig. 28.3) is a thick muscular chamber that opens into the roof of the vagina and usually tilts forward

---

[7] *uterus* = womb

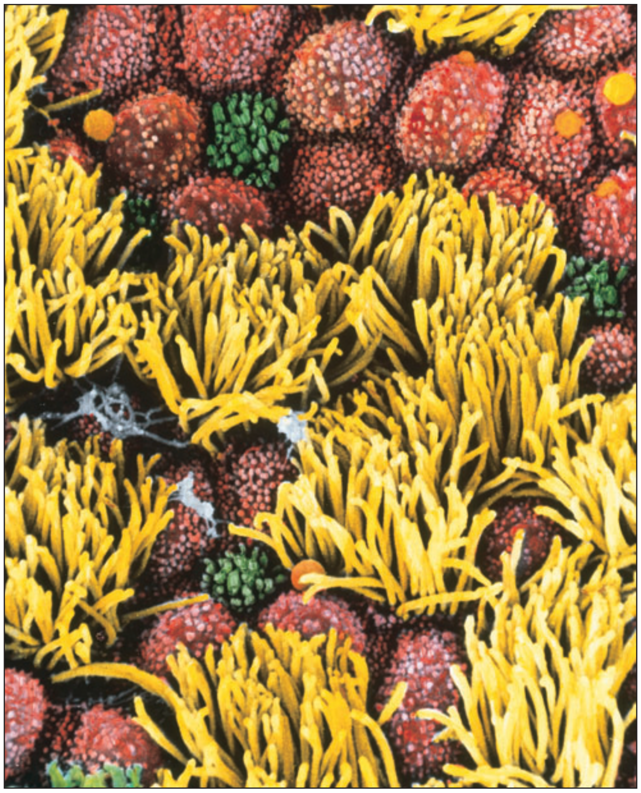


Figure 28.4 **Epithelial Lining of the Uterine Tube.** Secretory cells are shown in red and green, and cilia of the ciliated cells in yellow. (Colorized SEM)

over the urinary bladder. Its function is to harbor the fetus, provide a source of nutrition, and expel the fetus at the end of its development. It is somewhat pear-shaped, with a broad superior curvature called the **fundus,** a midportion called the **body (corpus),** and a cylindrical inferior end called the **cervix.** The uterus measures about 7 cm from cervix to fundus, 4 cm wide at its broadest point, and 2.5 cm thick, but it is somewhat larger in women who have been pregnant.

The lumen of the uterus is roughly triangular, with its two upper corners opening into the uterine tubes. It communicates with the vagina by way of a narrow passage through the cervix called the **cervical canal.** The superior opening of this canal into the body of the uterus is the *internal os*[8] (oss) and its opening into the vagina is the *external os.* The canal contains **cervical glands** that secrete mucus, thought to prevent the spread of microorganisms from the vagina into the uterus. Near the time of ovulation, the mucus becomes thinner than usual and allows easier passage for sperm.

Insight 28.1 Clinical Application

Pap Smears and Cervical Cancer

Cervical cancer is common among women from ages 30 to 50, especially those who smoke, who began sexual activity at an early age, and who have histories of frequent sexually transmitted diseases or cervical inflammation. It begins in the epithelial cells of the lower cervix, develops slowly, and remains a local, easily removed lesion for several years. If the cancerous cells spread to the subepithelial connective tissue, however, the cancer is said to be *invasive* and is much more dangerous, potentially requiring *hysterectomy*[9] (removal of the uterus).

The best protection against cervical cancer is early detection by means of a *Pap*[10] *smear*—a procedure in which loose cells are scraped from the cervix and vagina and microscopically examined. Figure 28.5 shows normal and cancerous Pap smears. The findings are rated on a five-point scale:

Class I–no abnormal cells seen

Class II–atypical cells suggestive of inflammation, infection, or irritation

Class III–nonmalignant but mildly abnormal cell growth *(dysplasia)*

Class IV–cells typical of localized cancer

Class V–cells typical of invasive cancer

An average woman is typically advised to have annual Pap smears for 3 years and may then have them less often at the discretion of her physician. Women with any of the risk factors listed may be advised to have more frequent examinations.

---

[9] *hyster* = uterus + *ectomy* = *cutting out*

[10] George N. Papanicolaou (1883–1962), Greek-American physician and cytologist

Uterine Wall The uterine wall consists of an external serosa called the *perimetrium,* a middle muscular layer called the *myometrium,* and an inner mucosa called the *endometrium.* The **myometrium**[11] constitutes most of the wall; it is about 1.25 cm thick in the nonpregnant uterus. It is composed of bundles of smooth muscle running in all directions, but it is less muscular and more fibrous near the cervix; the cervix itself is almost entirely collagenous. The smooth muscle cells of the myometrium are about 40 μm long immediately after menstruation, but they are twice this long at the middle of the menstrual cycle and 10 times as long in pregnancy. The function of the myometrium is to produce the labor contractions that help to expel the fetus.

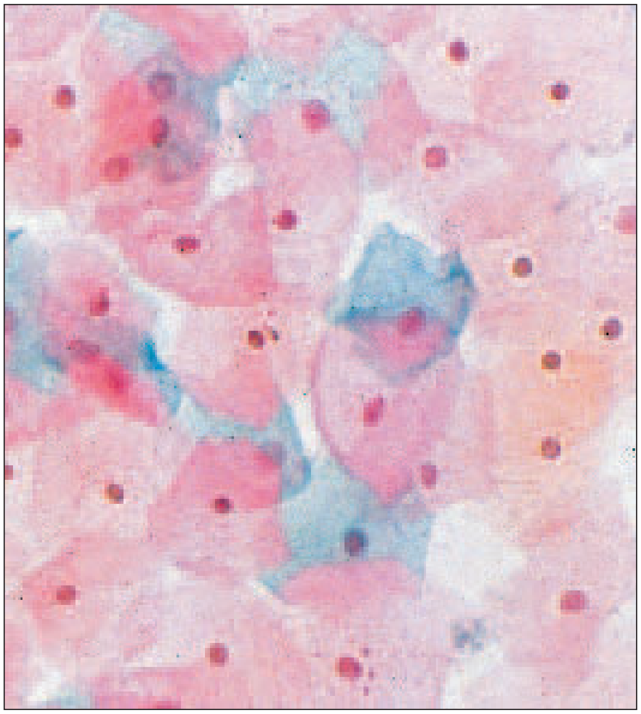
The **endometrium**[12] is the mucosa. It has a simple columnar epithelium, compound tubular glands, and a stroma populated by leukocytes, macrophages, and other cells (fig. 28.6). The superficial half to two-thirds of it,

---

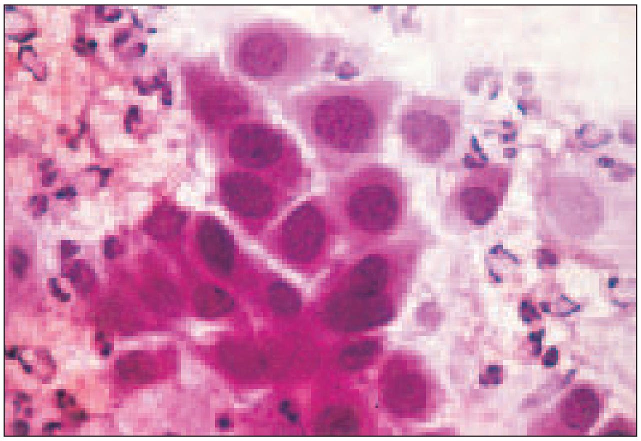
[8] *os* = mouth

[11] *myo* = muscle + *metr* = uterus

[12] *endo* = inside + *metr* = uterus



(a)



(b)

Figure 28.5 **Pap smears.** (*a*) A normal, healthy Pap smear. (*b*) Pap smear from a patient with class V cervical cancer.
How does the ratio of nuclear to cytoplasmic volume change in malignant cervical cells?

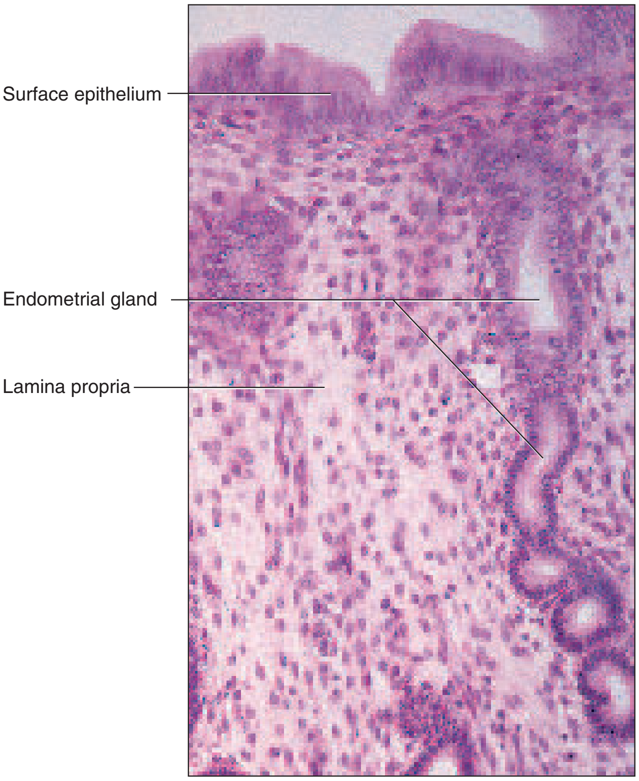


Figure 28.6 **Histology of the Endometrium.**

called the **stratum functionalis,** is shed in each menstrual period. The deeper layer, called the **stratum basalis,** stays behind and regenerates a new functionalis in the next cycle. When pregnancy occurs, the endometrium is the site of attachment of the embryo and forms the maternal part of the *placenta* from which the fetus is nourished.

Blood Supply The uterine blood supply is particularly important to the menstrual cycle and pregnancy. A **uterine artery** arises from each internal iliac artery and travels through the broad ligament to the uterus (fig. 28.7). It gives off several branches that penetrate into the myometrium and lead to **arcuate arteries.** Each arcuate artery travels in a circle around the uterus and anastomoses with the arcuate artery on the other side. Along its course, it gives rise to smaller arteries that penetrate the rest of the way through the myometrium, into the endometrium, and produce the **spiral arteries.** The spiral arteries wind tortuously between the endometrial glands toward the surface of the mucosa. They rhythmically constrict and dilate, making the mucosa alternately blanch and flush with blood.

Ligaments The uterus is supported by the muscular floor of the pelvic outlet and folds of peritoneum that form supportive ligaments around the organ, as they do for the ovary and uterine tube (see fig. 28.3*a*). The broad ligament has two parts: the mesosalpinx mentioned earlier and the *mesometrium* on each side of the uterus. The cervix and superior part of the vagina are supported by *cardinal (lateral cervical) ligaments* extending to the pelvic wall. A pair of *uterosacral ligaments* attach the dorsal side of the

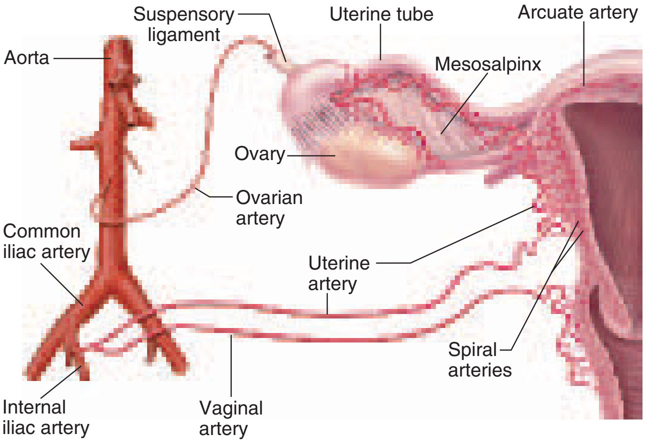


Figure 28.7 **Blood Supply to the Female Reproductive Tract.**

uterus to the sacrum, and a pair of *round ligaments* attach the ventral surface of the uterus to the abdominal wall. The round ligaments continue through the inguinal canals and terminate in the labia majora, much like the gubernaculum of the male terminating in the scrotum.

As the peritoneum folds around the various pelvic organs, it creates several dead-end recesses and pouches. Two major ones are the *vesicouterine*[13] *pouch,* which forms the space between the uterus and urinary bladder, and *rectouterine pouch* between the uterus and rectum (see fig. 28.1).

Vagina

The **vagina,**[14] or birth canal, is a tube about 8 to 10 cm long that allows for the discharge of menstrual fluid, receipt of the penis and semen, and birth of a baby. The vaginal wall is thin but very distensible. It consists of an outer adventitia, a middle muscularis, and an inner mucosa. The vagina tilts dorsally between the urethra and rectum; the urethra is embedded in its anterior wall. The vagina has no glands, but it is lubricated by the *transudation* ("vaginal sweating") of serous fluid through its walls and by mucus from the cervical glands above it. The vagina extends slightly beyond the cervix and forms blind-ended spaces called *fornices*[15] (FOR-nih-sees; singular, *fornix*) (see figs. 28.1 and 28.3*a*).

At its lower end, the vaginal mucosa folds inward and forms a membrane, the **hymen,** which stretches across the orifice. The hymen has one or more openings to allow menstrual fluid to pass through, but it usually must be ruptured to allow for intercourse. A little bleeding often accompanies the first act of intercourse; however, the hymen is commonly ruptured before then by tampons, medical examinations, or strenuous exercise. The lower end of the vagina also has transverse friction ridges, or **vaginal rugae,** which stimulate the penis and help induce ejaculation.

The vaginal epithelium is simple cuboidal in childhood, but the estrogens of puberty stimulate it to transform into a stratified squamous epithelium. This is an example of *metaplasia,* the transformation of one tissue type to another. The epithelial cells are rich in glycogen. Bacteria ferment this to lactic acid, which produces a low vaginal pH (about 3.5–4.0) that inhibits the growth of pathogens. Recall from chapter 27 that this acidity is neutralized by the semen so it does not harm the sperm. The mucosa also has antigen-presenting cells called **dendritic cells,** which are a route by which HIV from infected semen invades the female body.

Think About It

Why do you think the vaginal epithelium changes type at puberty? Of all types of epithelium it might become, why stratified squamous?

The Vulva (Pudendum)

The external genitalia of the female are collectively called the **vulva**[16] **(pudendum**[17]**);** this includes the mons pubis, labia majora and minora, clitoris, vaginal orifice, and accessory glands and erectile tissues. It occupies most of the perineum (fig. 28.8*a*).

The **mons**[18] **pubis** consists mainly of a mound of adipose tissue overlying the pubic symphysis. The **labia majora**[19] (singular, *labium majus*) are a pair of thick folds of skin and adipose tissue inferior to the mons; the slit between them is the *pudendal cleft.* Pubic hair grows on the mons pubis and lateral surfaces of the labia majora at puberty, but the medial surfaces of the labia remain hairless. Medial to the labia majora are the much thinner, entirely hairless **labia minora**[20] (singular, *labium minus*). The area enclosed by them, called the **vestibule,** contains the urinary and vaginal orifices. At the anterior margin of the vestibule, the labia minora meet and form a hoodlike **prepuce** over the clitoris.

The **clitoris** is structured much like a miniature penis but has no urinary role. Its function is entirely sensory, serving as the primary center of erotic stimulation. Unlike the penis, it is almost entirely internal, it has no corpus

Chapter 28

---

[13] *vesico* = bladder
[14] *vagina* = sheath
[15] *fornix* = arch, vault
[16] *vulva* = covering
[17] *pudend* = shameful
[18] *mons* = mountain
[19] *labi* = lip + *major* = larger, greater
[20] *minor* = smaller, lesser

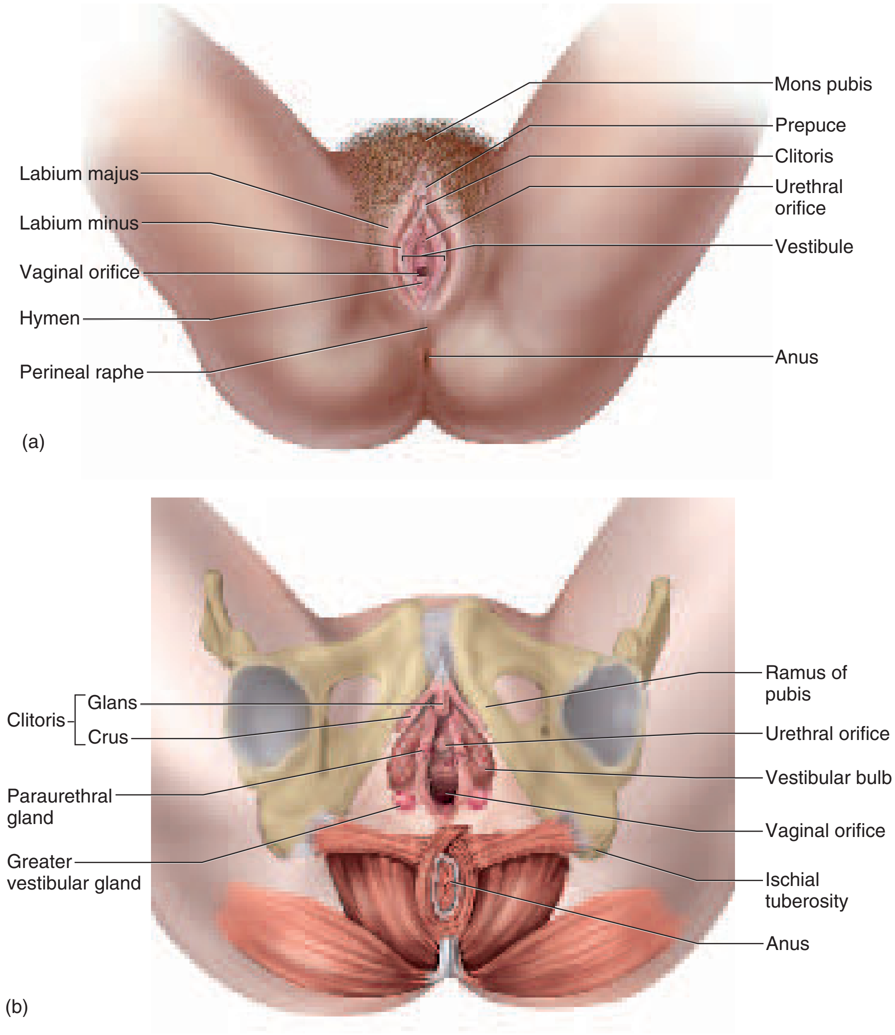

Mons pubis
Prepuce
Clitoris
Urethral orifice
Vestibule
Anus
Labium majus
Labium minus
Vaginal orifice
Hymen
Perineal raphe
(a)
Clitoris
Glans
Crus
Paraurethral gland
Greater vestibular gland
Ramus of pubis
Urethral orifice
Vestibular bulb
Vaginal orifice
Ischial tuberosity
Anus
(b)

Figure 28.8 **The Female Perineum.** (*a*) Surface anatomy; (*b*) subcutaneous structures.
Which of these glands is homologous to the male prostate gland?

spongiosum, and it does not enclose the urethra. Essentially, it is a pair of corpora cavernosa enclosed in connective tissue. Its **glans** protrudes slightly from the prepuce. The **body (corpus)** passes internally, inferior to the pubic symphysis (see fig. 28.1). At its internal end, the corpora cavernosa diverge like a Y as a pair of **crura,** which, like those of the penis, attach the clitoris to each side of the pubic arch. Like the penis, the clitoris is supplied by the internal pudendal arteries, also called the **clitoral arteries** in the female.

Just deep to the labia majora, a pair of subcutaneous erectile tissues called the **vestibular bulbs** bracket the vagina like parentheses. They become congested with blood during sexual excitement and cause the vagina to tighten somewhat around the penis, enhancing sexual stimulation.

On each side of the vagina is a pea-sized **greater vestibular (Bartholin[21]) gland** with a short duct opening into the vestibule or lower vagina (fig. 28.8*b*). These glands are homologous to the bulbourethral glands of the male. They keep the vulva moist, and during sexual excitement they provide most of the lubrication for intercourse. The vestibule is also lubricated by a number of **lesser vestibular glands.** A pair of mucous **paraurethral (Skene[22]) glands,** homologous to the male prostate, open into the vestibule near the external urethral orifice.

---

[21] Caspar Bartholin (1655–1738), Danish anatomist
[22] Alexander J. C. Skene (1838–1900), American gynecologist

Secondary Sex Characteristics

The secondary sex characteristics of the female, like those of the male, are features other than the genitalia that develop at puberty, serve to distinguish the sexes from each other, and serve the purpose of sexual attraction. These include the distribution of body fat, flare of the pelvis, the breasts, and the resulting feminine physique; the relatively fine body hair; and a voice pitched higher than the male's.

The Breasts

The breast (fig. 28.9) is a mound of tissue overlying the pectoralis major. It has two principal regions: the conical to pendulous **body,** with the nipple at its apex, and an extension toward the armpit called the **axillary tail.** Lymphatics of the axillary tail are especially important as a route of breast cancer metastasis.

The nipple is surrounded by a circular colored zone, the **areola.** Dermal blood capillaries and nerves come closer to the surface here than in the surrounding skin and make the areola more sensitive and more reddish in color. In pregnancy, the areola and nipple often darken and become more visible to the indistinct vision of a nursing infant. Sensory nerve fibers of the areola are important in triggering a *milk ejection reflex* when an infant nurses. The areola has sparse hairs and **areolar glands,** visible as small bumps on the surface. These glands are intermediate between sweat glands and mammary glands in their degree of development. When a woman is nursing, the areola is protected from chapping and cracking by secretions of the areolar glands and sebacous glands of the areola. The dermis of the areola has smooth muscle fibers that contract in response to cold, touch, and sexual arousal, wrinkling the skin and erecting the nipple.

Internally, the nonlactating breast consists mostly of adipose and collagenous tissue (fig. 28.10). Breast size is determined by the amount of adipose tissue and has no relationship to the amount of milk the mammary gland can produce. **Suspensory ligaments** attach the breast to the dermis of the overlying skin and to the fascia of the pectoralis major. The nonlactating breast contains very little glandular tissue, but it does have a system of ducts branching through its connective tissue stroma and converging on the nipple. When the mammary gland develops during pregnancy, it exhibits 15 to 20 lobes arranged radially around the nipple, separated from each other by fibrous stroma. Each lobe is drained by a **lactiferous**[23] **duct,** which dilates to form a **lactiferous sinus** opening onto the nipple. Lactation and the associated changes in breast structure are described at the end of this chapter.

---

[23] *lact* = milk + *fer* = to carry

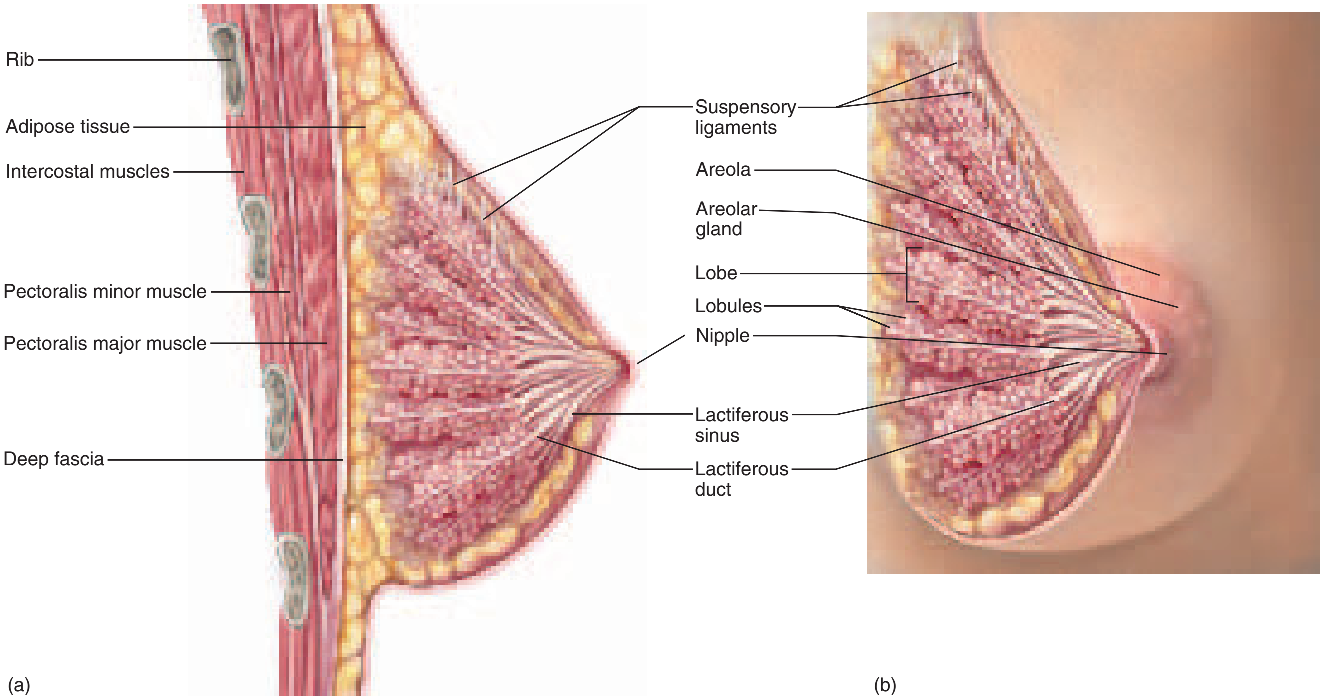


Figure 28.9 **Anatomy of the Lactating Breast.** (*a*) Sagittal section of breast. (*b*) Surface anatomy of the breast with cutaway view of the lobes of mammary gland; anterior view of left breast.

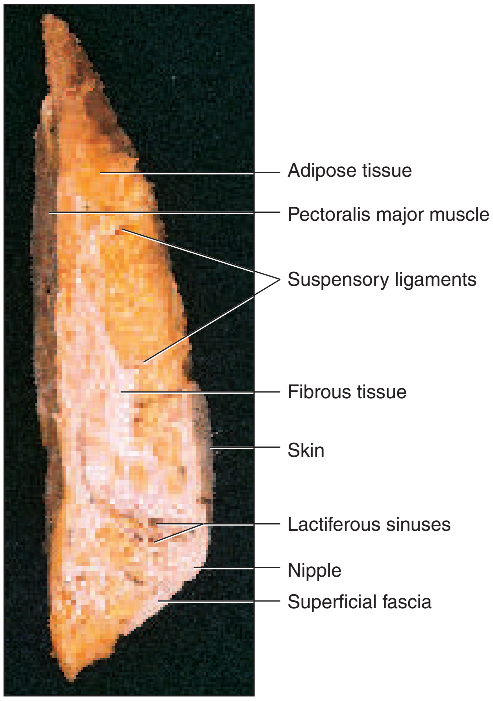


Figure 28.10 **Sagittal Section of the Breast of a Cadaver.**

Breast Cancer

Breast cancer (fig. 28.11) occurs in one out of every eight or nine American women and is one of the leading causes of female mortality. Breast tumors begin with cells of the mammary ducts and may metastasize to other organs by way of the mammary and axillary lymphatics. Symptoms of breast cancer include a palpable lump (the tumor), puckering of the skin, changes in skin texture, and drainage from the nipple.

Two breast cancer genes were discovered in the 1990s, named BRCA1 and BRCA2, but most breast cancer is nonhereditary. Some breast tumors are stimulated by estrogen. Consequently, breast cancer is more common among women who begin menstruating early in life and who reach menopause relatively late—that is, women who have a long period of fertility and estrogen exposure. Other risk factors include aging, exposure to ionizing radiation and carcinogenic chemicals, excessive alcohol and fat intake, and smoking. Over 70% of cases, however, lack any identifiable risk factors.

The majority of tumors are discovered during breast self-examination (BSE), which should be a monthly routine for all women. *Mammograms* (breast X rays), however, can detect tumors too small to be noticed by BSE. Although opinions vary, a schedule commonly recommended is to have a baseline mammogram in the late 30s and then have one every 2 years from ages 40 to 49 and every year beginning at age 50.

Treatment of breast cancer is usually by *lumpectomy* (removal of the tumor only) or *simple mastectomy* (removal of the breast tissue only or breast tissue and some axillary lymph nodes). *Radical mastectomy,* rarely done since the 1970s, involves the removal of not only the breast but also the underlying muscle, fascia, and lymph nodes. Although very disfiguring, it proved to be no more effective than simple mastectomy or lumpectomy. Surgery is generally followed by radiation or chemotherapy, and estrogen-sensitive tumors may also be treated with an estrogen blocker such as tamoxifen. A natural-looking breast can often be reconstructed from skin, fat, and muscle from other parts of the body.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

1. How do the site of female gamete production and mode of release from the gonad differ from those in the male?
2. How is the structure of the uterine tube mucosa related to its function?
3. Contrast the function of the endometrium with that of the myometrium.
4. Describe the similarities and differences between the clitoris and penis.

Puberty and Menopause

Objectives

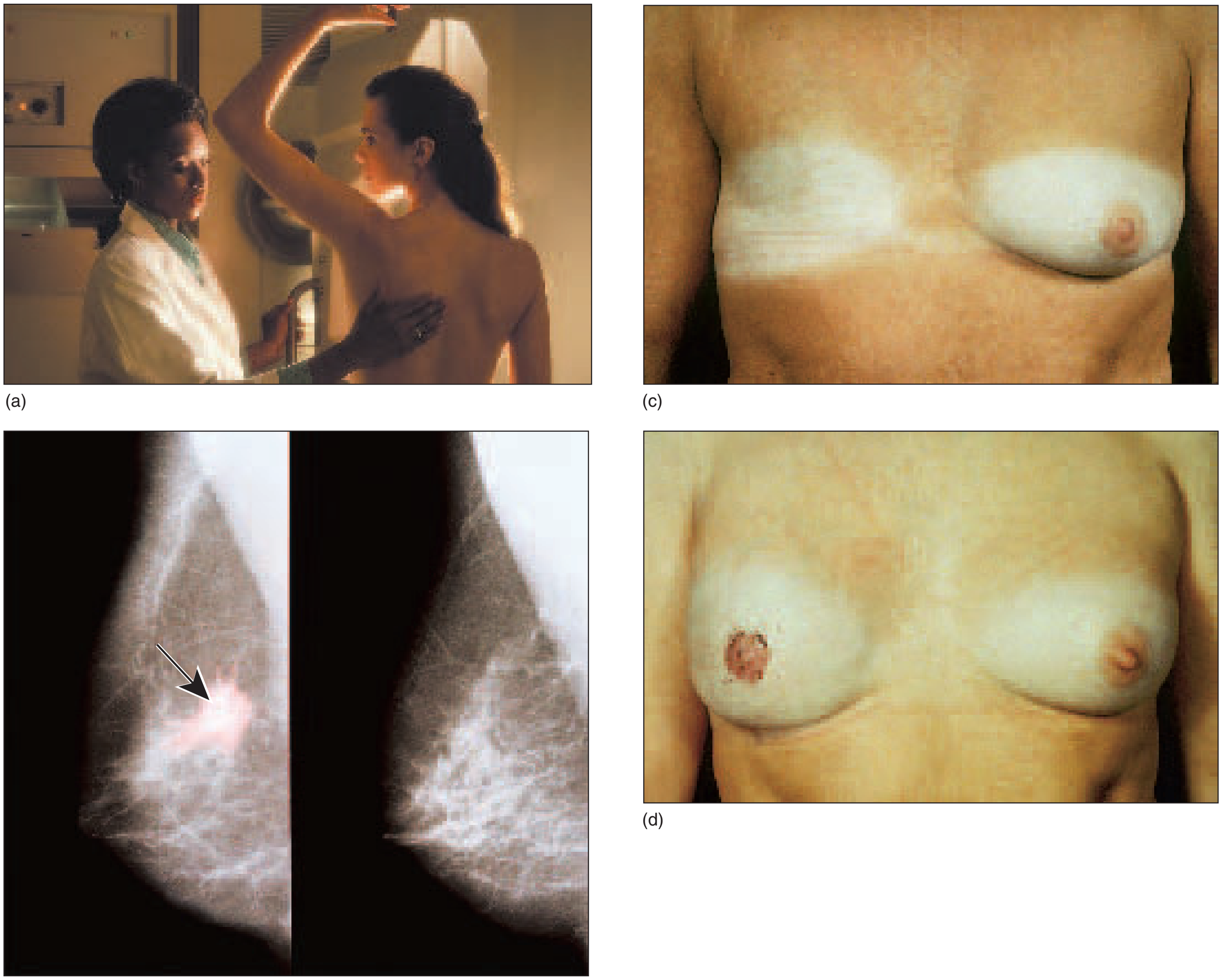
When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- name the hormones that regulate female reproductive function, and state their roles;
- describe the principal signs of puberty;
- describe the hormonal changes of female climacteric and their effects; and
- define and describe menopause, and distinguish menopause from climacteric.

Puberty and menopause are physiological transitions at the beginning and end of a female's reproductive life.

Puberty

Puberty begins at ages 9 to 10 for most girls in the United States and Europe but significantly later in many countries. However, a 1997 study of more than 17,000 girls in the United States showed 3% of black girls and 1% of white girls beginning puberty by age 3, and 27% and 7%, respectively, by age 7. Puberty is triggered by the same hypothalamic and pituitary hormones in girls as it is in boys. Rising levels of gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) stimulate the anterior lobe of the pituitary to secrete follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) and luteiniz-



(a) (c) (d) (b)

Figure 28.11 Breast Cancer Screening and Treatment. (*a*) Nurse assisting a patient in mammography. (*b*) Mammogram of a breast with a tumor visible at the arrow (*left*), compared to the appearance of normal fibrous connective tissue of the breast (*right*). (*c*) Patient following mastectomy of the right breast. (*d*) The same patient following surgical breast reconstruction.
What is the diagnostic benefit of compressing the breast for a mammogram?

ing hormone (LH). FSH, especially, stimulates development of the ovarian follicles, which, in turn, secrete estrogens, progesterone, inhibin, and a small amount of androgen. These hormone levels rise gradually from ages 8 to 12 and then more sharply in the early teens. The **estrogens**[24] are feminizing hormones with widespread effects on the body. They include *estradiol* (the most abundant), *estriol,* and *estrone.* Most of the visible changes at puberty result from estradiol and androgens.

The earliest noticeable sign of puberty is **thelarche**[25] (thee-LAR-kee), or breast development. Estrogen, progesterone, and prolactin initially induce the formation of lobules and ducts in the breast. Duct development is completed under the influence of glucocorticoids and growth hormone, while adipose and fibrous tissue enlarge the breast. Breast development is complete around age 20, but minor changes occur in each menstrual cycle and major changes in pregnancy.

---

[24] *estro* = desire, frenzy + *gen* = to produce

[25] *thel* = breast, nipple + *arche* = beginning

Thelarche is soon followed by **pubarche** (pyu-BAR-kee), the growth of pubic and axillary hair, sebaceous glands, and axillary glands. Androgens from the ovaries and adrenal cortex stimulate pubarche as well as the libido. Women secrete about 0.5 mg of androgens per day, compared with 6 to 8 mg/day in men.

Next comes **menarche**[26] (men-AR-kee), the first menstrual period. In Europe and America, the average age at menarche declined from age 16.5 in 1860 to age 12 in 1997, probably due mostly to improved nutrition. Menarche cannot occur until a girl has reached at least 17% body fat, so it is delayed until the mid- to late teens in some athletes and dancers. Adult menstruation generally ceases if a woman drops below 22% body fat. This is about the minimum needed to sustain pregnancy and lactation; thus the body reacts as if to prevent a futile pregnancy when it is too lean. Menarche does not necessarily signify fertility. A girl's first few menstrual cycles are typically *anovulatory* (no egg is ovulated). Most girls begin ovulating regularly about a year after they begin menstruating.

Estradiol stimulates many other changes of puberty. It causes the vaginal metaplasia described earlier. It stimulates growth of the ovaries and secondary sex organs. It stimulates growth hormone secretion and causes a rapid increase in height and widening of the pelvis. Estradiol is largely responsible for the feminine physique because it stimulates fat deposition in the mons pubis, labia majora, hips, thighs, buttocks, and breasts. It makes a girl's skin thicken, but the skin remains thinner, softer, and warmer than in males of corresponding age.

Progesterone[27] acts primarily on the uterus, preparing it for possible pregnancy in the second half of each menstrual cycle and playing roles in pregnancy discussed later. Estrogens and progesterone also suppress FSH and LH secretion through negative feedback inhibition of the anterior pituitary. **Inhibin** selectively suppresses FSH secretion.

Thus we see many hormonal similarities in males and females from puberty onward. The sexes differ less in the hormones that are present than in the relative amounts of those hormones—high levels of androgens and low levels of estrogens in males and the opposite in females. Another difference is that these hormones are secreted more or less continually and simultaneously in males, whereas in females secretion is distinctly cyclic and the hormones are secreted in sequence. This will be very apparent as you read about the ovarian and menstrual cycles.

Climacteric and Menopause

Women, like men, go through a midlife change in hormone secretion called the **climacteric.** In women, it is accompanied by **menopause,** the cessation of menstruation (see insight 28.2).

With age, the ovaries have fewer remaining follicles and those that remain are less responsive to gonadotropins. Consequently, they secrete less estrogen and progesterone. Without these steroids, the uterus, vagina, and breasts atrophy. Intercourse may become uncomfortable, and vaginal infections more common, as the vagina becomes thinner, less distensible, and drier. The skin becomes thinner, cholesterol levels rise (increasing the risk of cardiovascular disease), and bone mass declines (increasing the risk of osteoporosis). Blood vessels constrict and dilate in response to shifting hormone balances, and the sudden dilation of cutaneous arteries may cause **hot flashes**—a spreading sense of heat from the abdomen to the thorax, neck, and face. Hot flashes may occur several times a day, sometimes accompanied by headaches resulting from the sudden vasodilation of arteries in the head. In some people, the changing hormonal profile also causes mood changes. Many physicians prescribe hormone replacement therapy (HRT)—low doses of estrogen and progesterone taken orally or by a skin patch—to relieve some of these symptoms. The risks and benefits of HRT are still being debated.

Think About It

FSH and LH secretion *rise* at climacteric and these hormones attain high concentrations in the blood. Explain this using the preceding information and what you know about the pituitary-gonadal axis.

Menopause is the cessation of menstrual cycles, usually occurring between the ages of 45 and 55. The average age has increased steadily in the last century and is now about 52. It is difficult to precisely establish the time of menopause because the menstrual periods can stop for several months and then begin again. Menopause is generally considered to have occurred when there has been no menstruation for a year or more.

Insight 28.2 Evolutionary Medicine

The Evolution of Menopause

There has been considerable speculation about why women do not remain fertile to the end of their lives, as men do. Some theorists argue that menopause served a biological purpose for our prehistoric foremothers. Human offspring take a long time to rear. Beyond a certain point, the frailties of age make it unlikely that a woman could rear another infant to maturity or even survive the stress of pregnancy. She might do better in the long run to become infertile and finish rearing her last child instead of having another one. In this view, menopause was biologically advantageous for our ancestors—in other words, an evolutionary adaptation.

---

[26] *men* = monthly

[27] *pro* = favoring + *gest* = pregnancy + *sterone* = steroid hormone

Others argue against this hypothesis on the grounds that Ice Age skeletons indicate that early hominids rarely lived past age 40. If this is true, menopause setting in at 45 to 55 years of age could have served little purpose. In this view, Ice Age women may indeed have been fertile to the end of their lives; menopause now may be just an artifact of modern nutrition and medicine, which have made it possible for us to live much longer than our ancestors did.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

5. Describe the similarities and differences between male and female puberty.
6. Describe the major changes that occur in female climacteric and the principal cause of these changes.
7. What is the difference between climacteric and menopause?

Oogenesis and the Sexual Cycle

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the process of egg production (oogenesis);
- describe how the ovarian follicles change in relation to oogenesis;
- describe the hormonal events that regulate the ovarian cycle;
- describe how the uterus changes during the menstrual cycle; and
- construct a chart of the phases of the monthly sexual cycle showing the hormonal, ovarian, and uterine events of each phase.

The reproductive lives of women are conspicuously cyclic. They include the **reproductive cycle,** which encompasses the sequence of events from fertilization to giving birth, and the **sexual cycle,** which encompasses the events that recur every month when pregnancy does not intervene. The sexual cycle, in turn, consists of two interrelated cycles controlled by shifting patterns of hormone secretion: the **ovarian cycle,** consisting of events in the ovaries, and the **menstrual cycle,** consisting of parallel changes in the uterus. In this section, we examine the process of egg production, or oogenesis, and the monthly events of the ovarian and menstrual cycles.

Oogenesis

Egg production is called **oogenesis**[28] (OH-oh-JEN-eh-sis) (fig. 28.12). Like spermatogenesis, it produces a haploid gamete by means of meiosis. There are, however, numerous differences between oogenesis and spermatogenesis. The most obvious, perhaps, is that spermatogenesis goes on continually, while oogenesis is a distinctly cyclic event that normally produces only one egg per month. Oogenesis is accompanied by cyclic changes in hormone secretion and in the histological structure of the ovaries and uterus; the uterine changes result in the monthly menstrual flow.

The female germ cells arise, like those of the male, from the yolk sac of the embryo. They colonize the gonadal ridges in the first 5 to 6 weeks of development and then differentiate into **oogonia** (OH-oh-GO-nee-uh). Oogonia multiply until the fifth month of development, reach 6 to 7 million in number, and then go into a state of arrested development until shortly before birth. At that time, some of them transform into **primary oocytes** and go as far as early meiosis I. Any stage from the primary oocyte to the time of fertilization can be called an egg, or **ovum.**

Most primary oocytes undergo a process of degeneration called **atresia** (ah-TREE-zhee-uh) before a girl is born. Only 2 million remain at the time of birth, and most of those undergo atresia during childhood. By puberty, only 400,000 oocytes remain. This is the female's lifetime supply of gametes, but it is more than ample; even if she ovulated every 28 days from the ages of 14 to 50, she would ovulate only 480 times.

Beginning in adolescence, FSH stimulates the primary oocytes to complete meiosis I, which yields two haploid daughter cells of unequal size and different destinies. In oogenesis it is important to produce an egg with as much cytoplasm as possible, because if it is fertilized it must divide repeatedly and produce numerous daughter cells. Splitting each oocyte into four equal but small parts would run counter to this purpose. Rather, meiosis I produces a large daughter cell called the **secondary oocyte** and a much smaller one called the **first polar body.** The polar body sometimes undergoes meiosis II but ultimately disintegrates. It is merely a means of discarding the extra haploid set of chromosomes.

The secondary oocyte proceeds as far as metaphase II and then arrests until after ovulation. If it is not fertilized, it dies and never finishes meiosis. If it is fertilized, it completes meiosis II and produces a **second polar body,** which disposes of one chromatid from each chromosome. The chromosomes of the large remaining egg unite with those of the sperm. Further development of the fertilized egg is discussed in chapter 29.

The Sexual Cycle

The sexual cycle averages 28 days in length, which is the basis for the timetable described in the following pages. It commonly varies from 20 to 45 days, however, so be aware that the timetable given in this discussion may differ from person to person and from month to month. As you study this cycle, bear in mind that hormones of the hypothalamus

---

[28] *oo* = egg + *genesis* = production

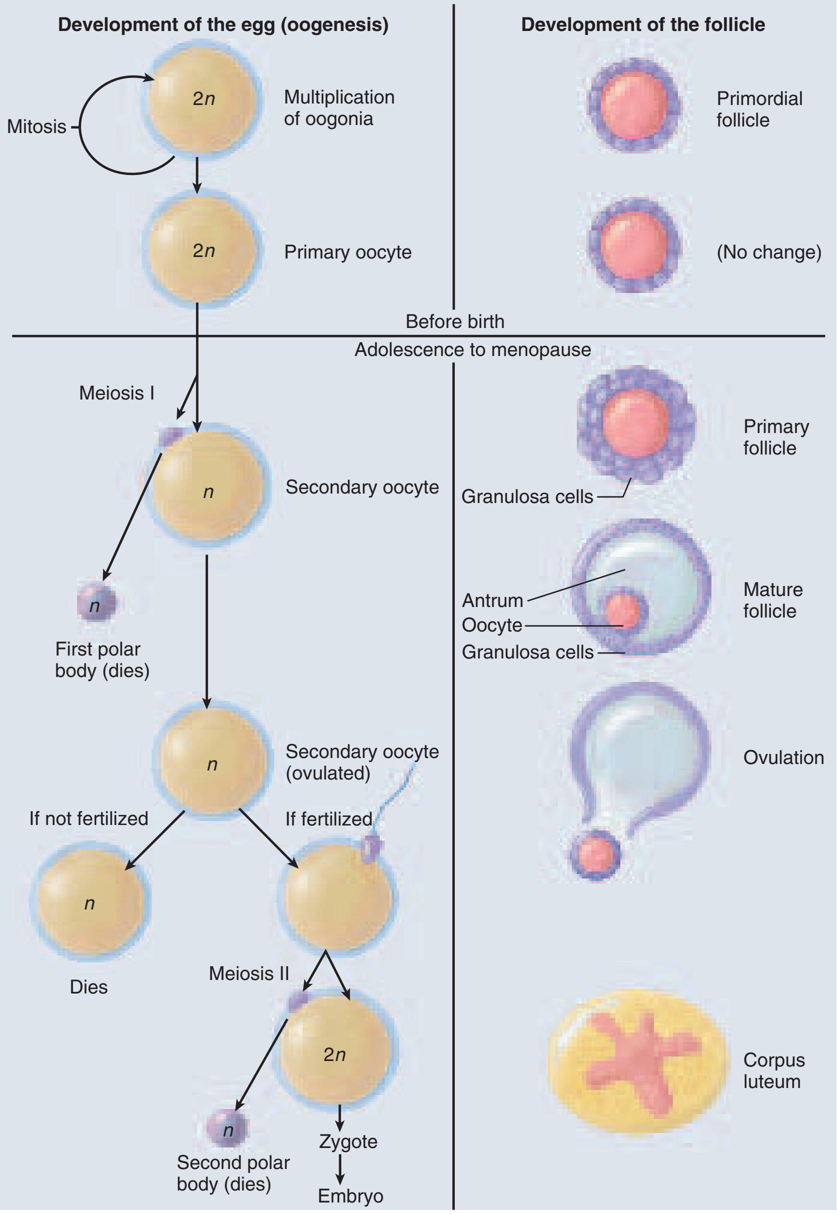

Development of the egg (oogenesis)
Development of the follicle
Mitosis
2n
Multiplication of oogonia
Primordial follicle
2n
Primary oocyte
(No change)
Before birth
Adolescence to menopause
Meiosis I
Primary follicle
n
Secondary oocyte
Granulosa cells
n
First polar body (dies)
Antrum
Oocyte
Granulosa cells
Mature follicle
n
Secondary oocyte (ovulated)
Ovulation
If not fertilized
If fertilized
n
Dies
Meiosis II
2n
Corpus luteum
n
Second polar body (dies)
Zygote
Embryo

Figure 28.12 **Oogenesis (*left*) and Corresponding Development of the Follicle (*right*).**

and anterior pituitary gland regulate the ovaries, and hormones from the ovaries, in turn, regulate the uterus. That is, the basic hierarchy of control can be represented: hypothalamus → pituitary → ovaries → uterus. However, there is also feedback control from the ovaries to the hypothalamus and pituitary.

We begin with a brief preview of the sexual cycle as a whole. The cycle begins with a 2-week *follicular phase.* Menstruation occurs during the first 3 to 5 days, and then the uterus replaces the lost endometrial tissue by mitosis. The ovarian follicles grow during this phase, and one of them ovulates around day 14. After ovulation, the remainder of the follicle becomes a body called the corpus luteum. Over the next 2 weeks, called the *postovulatory phase,* the corpus luteum stimulates endometrial secretion; and the endometrium thickens still more. If pregnancy does not occur, it breaks down again in the last 2 days. As loose tissue and blood accumulate, menstruation begins and the cycle starts over. This cycle is summarized in figure 28.13 and table 28.1.

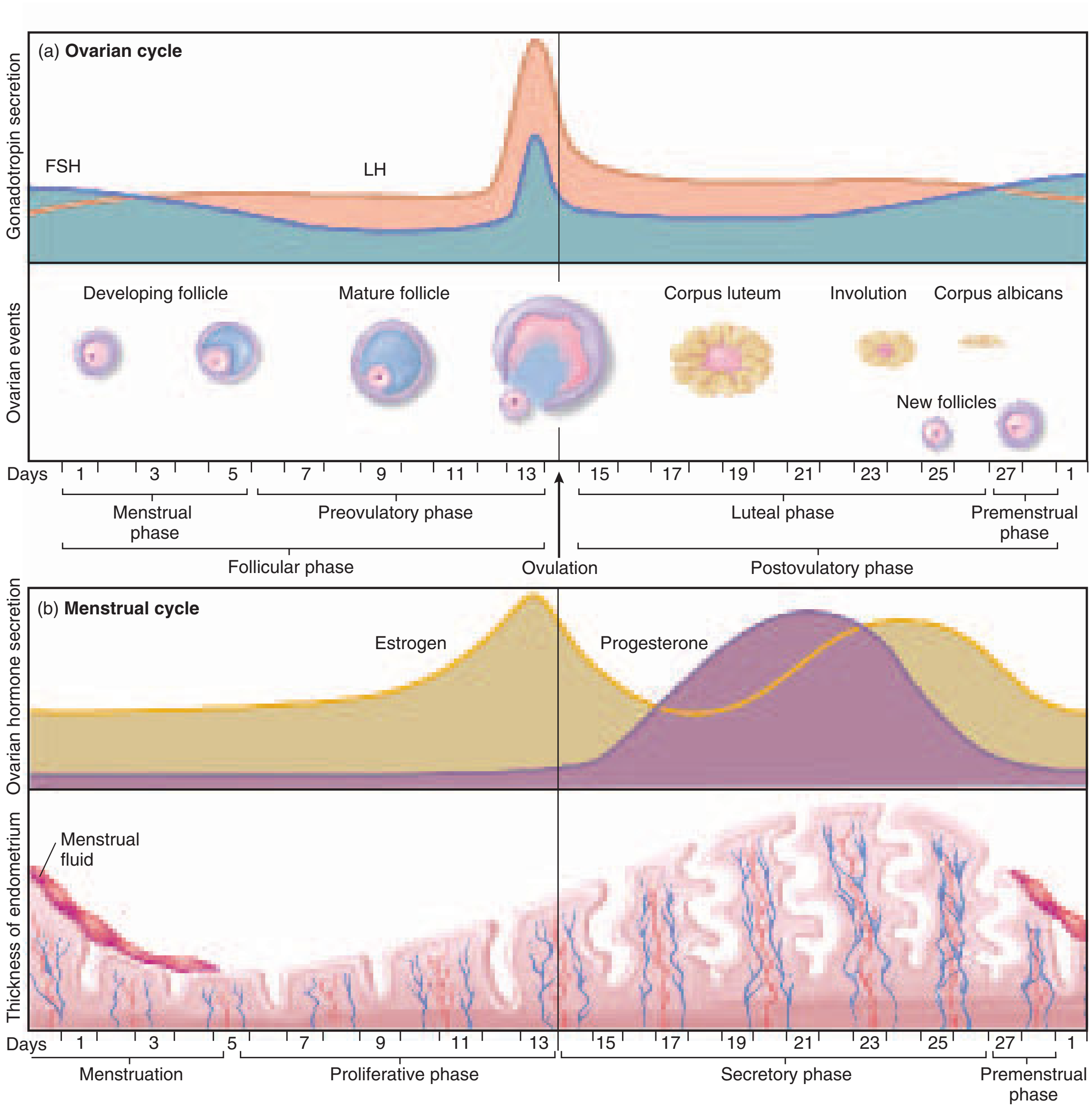

(a) **Ovarian cycle**
Gonadotropin secretion
FSH
LH
Ovarian events
Developing follicle
Mature follicle
Corpus luteum
Involution
Corpus albicans
New follicles
Days
1
3
5
7
9
11
13
15
17
19
21
23
25
27
1
Menstrual phase
Preovulatory phase
Luteal phase
Premenstrual phase
Follicular phase
Ovulation
Postovulatory phase
(b) **Menstrual cycle**
Ovarian hormone secretion
Estrogen
Progesterone
Thickness of endometrium
Menstrual fluid
Days
1
3
5
7
9
11
13
15
17
19
21
23
25
27
1
Menstruation
Proliferative phase
Secretory phase
Premenstrual phase

Figure 28.13 **The Female Sexual Cycle.** (*a*) The ovarian cycle (events in the ovary); (*b*) the menstrual cycle (events in the uterus).

The Ovarian Cycle

Now we can examine the ovarian cycle in more detail. We will see, step by step, what happens in the ovaries and in their relationship to the hypothalamus and pituitary gland.

The **follicular phase** of the cycle extends from the beginning of menstruation (day 1) to ovulation (day 14). This is the most variable part of the cycle and it is seldom possible to predict the date of ovulation reliably. The follicular phase is divided into the *menstrual phase* and *preovulatory phase.*

Menstrual Phase The **menstrual phase** is the period of time when a woman is discharging menstrual fluid (days 1–5 of the typical cycle). As menstruation is occurring, important developments are taking place in the ovaries:

1. Beginning around day 25 of the previous cycle (3 days before menstruation begins), FSH secretion rises and stimulates 20 to 25 primary oocytes to begin meiosis I.
2. Meanwhile, the follicles around these oocytes develop. The primary oocyte is enclosed in a **primordial follicle,** which has a single layer of

Table 28.1 Phases of the Female Sexual Cycle

Days	Phase	Major Events
1–14	**Follicular Phase**	
1–5	Menstrual phase (menses)	Menstruation occurring; FSH level high; primordial follicles developing into primary and then secondary follicles
6–13	Preovulatory (proliferative) phase	Rapid growth of one follicle and atresia of the lagging follicles; drop in FSH level; endometrial regeneration and growth by cell proliferation; development of mature follicle; completion of meiosis I, producing secondary oocyte, which arrests at metaphase II; sharp rise in LH and estrogen levels
14	Ovulation	Rupture of follicle and release of oocyte
15–28	**Postovulatory Phase**	
15–26	Luteal (secretory) phase	Formation of corpus luteum; secretion of progesterone; mucus and glycogen secretion by endometrium, causing endometrial thickening; later involution of corpus luteum and falling progesterone level
27–28	Premenstrual (ischemic) phase	Endometrial ischemia and necrosis; sloughing of necrotic tissue from uterine wall, mixing with blood and forming menstrual fluid

squamous follicular cells around the oocyte (see fig. 28.12). These cells enlarge and become cuboidal; the follicle is then known as a **primary follicle.** The cuboidal cells multiply and stratify, the follicle as a whole enlarges, and connective tissue condenses around it to form the **theca**[29] **folliculi** (THEE-ca fol-IC-you-lye). Its outer layer, the *theca externa,* becomes a fibrous capsule. Its inner layer, the *theca interna,* secretes androgen, which the granulosa cells (see next paragraph) convert to estrogen.

3. In the first few days of the follicular phase (during menstruation), the follicular cells begin to secrete an estrogen-rich **follicular fluid,** which accumulates in little pools amid the cells. These pools soon merge and become a fluid-filled cavity, the **antrum.** The follicle is now called a **secondary (antral) follicle** (fig. 28.14) and the follicular cells lining it are called **granulosa cells.** A mound of granulosa cells called the *cumulus oophorus*[30] covers the oocyte and secures it to the follicle wall. The granulosa cells secrete a clear layer of gel called the **zona pellucida**[31] between themselves and the oocyte. The innermost layer of cells in contact with the zona pellucida is the **corona radiata.**[32] This is the state of development when menstruation ceases around day 5.

Preovulatory Phase The **preovulatory phase** spans days 6 to 14 of the average cycle—from the end of menstruation to the day of ovulation. Its major developments are as follows:

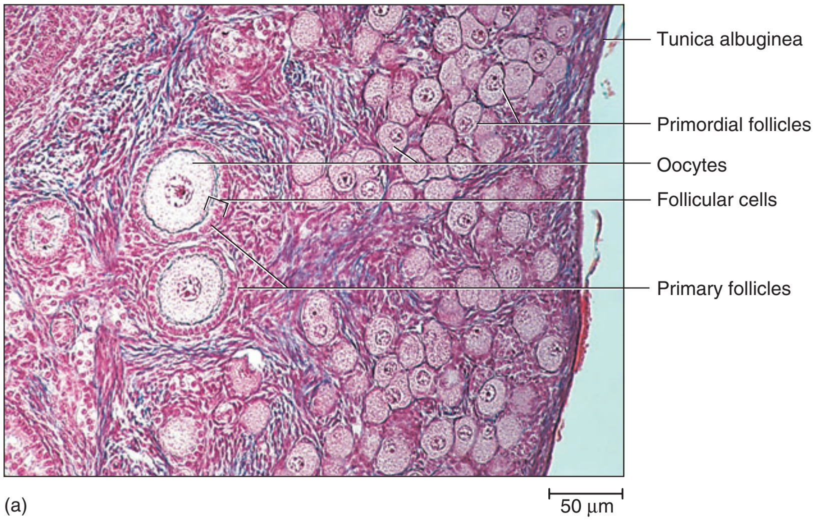
4. The growing follicle secretes increasing amounts of estrogen, which has two seemingly contradictory effects: It reduces FSH secretion by the pituitary, and it makes the follicle more sensitive to FSH. The latter effect comes about as estrogen stimulates the granulosa cells of its own follicle to produce an increasing number of FSH receptors. FSH in turn stimulates this follicle to produce still more estrogen, completing a positive feedback loop. Overall, the most advanced follicle reduces the FSH supply to other follicles while at the same time it makes itself more sensitive to the FSH that remains.
5. The less developed, less sensitive follicles undergo atresia, while the most developed follicle attains a diameter of up to 2.5 cm. This follicle, called a **mature (graafian**[33]**) follicle,** protrudes from the surface of the ovary like a blister.
6. As the follicle matures, the primary oocyte completes meiosis I and becomes a secondary oocyte. This cell begins meiosis II but stops at metaphase II. It is now ready for ovulation.
7. FSH and estrogen also stimulate the maturing follicle to produce LH receptors, which are important to the next phase of the cycle.

---

[29] *theca* = box, case
[30] *cumulus* = little mound + *oo* = egg + *phor* = to carry
[31] *zona* = zone + *pellucid* = clear, transparent
[32] *corona* = crown + *radiata* = radiating

---

[33] Reijnier de Graaf (1641–73), Dutch physiologist and histologist


Tunica albuginea
Primordial follicles
Oocytes
Follicular cells
Primary follicles
(a)
50 µm

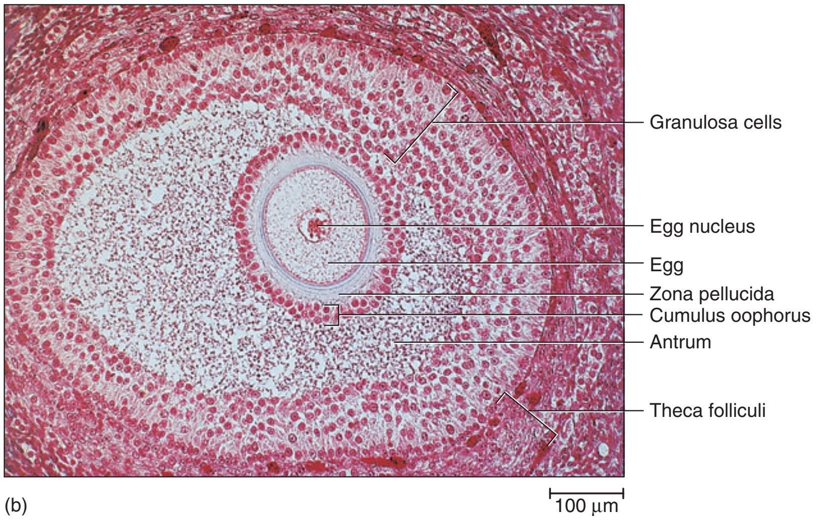

Granulosa cells
Egg nucleus
Egg
Zona pellucida
Cumulus oophorus
Antrum
Theca folliculi
(b)
100 µm

Figure 28.14 **Ovarian Follicles.** (*a*) Note the very thin layer of squamous cells around the oocyte in a primordial follicle, and the single layer of cuboidal cells in a primary follicle. (*b*) A mature (graafian) follicle. Just before ovulation, this follicle will grow to as much as 2.5 cm in diameter.

Ovulation **Ovulation,** the release of an oocyte, typically occurs on day 14, the midpoint of the average cycle. It takes only 2 or 3 minutes. The events immediately leading up to and including ovulation are as follows:

8. In the last day or two of the preovulatory phase, the estrogen level is very high. This estrogen stimulates the anterior pituitary to secrete LH and the hypothalamus to secrete GnRH. GnRH further induces a surge in FSH and LH secretion by the pituitary (fig. 28.15). The FSH level therefore rises in the last day or two before ovulation, but the LH level rises even more markedly (see fig. 28.13).
9. The uterine tube becomes edematous, its fimbriae envelop and caress the ovary in time with the woman's heartbeat, and its cilia create a gentle current in the nearby peritoneal fluid—all in preparation for receiving the oocyte.
10. LH increases blood flow in the follicle. More serous fluid filters from the capillaries into the antrum and causes the follicle to swell rapidly. Meanwhile, LH also stimulates the theca interna to secrete *collagenase,* an enzyme that weakens the ovarian wall over the swelling follicle.
11. A nipplelike **stigma** appears on the ovarian surface over the follicle. Follicular fluid seeps from the

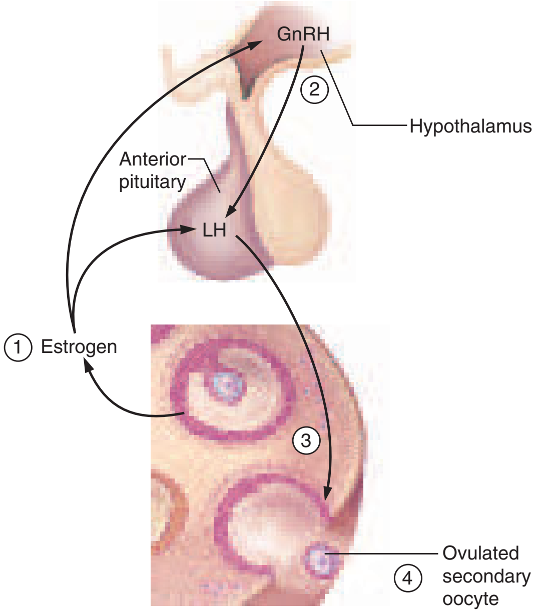


Figure 28.15 **Control of Ovulation by Hormones of the Pituitary-Ovarian Axis.** (*1*) The maturing follicle secretes high levels of estrogen, which stimulates the hypothalamus and anterior pituitary. (*2*) The hypothalamus secretes GnRH. (*3*) In response to estrogen and GnRH, the anterior pituitary secretes LH. (*4*) LH triggers ovulation.

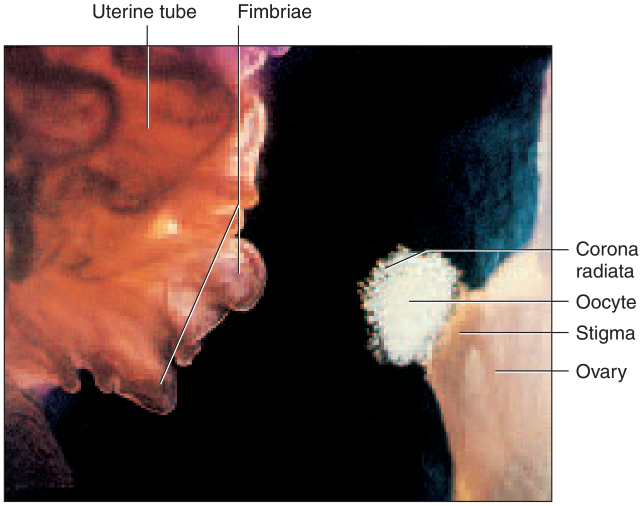


Figure 28.16 **Ovulation of a Human Follicle, Viewed by Endoscopy.**

Think About It

In chapter 17, review the concepts of *up-regulation* and the *permissive effect* in hormone interactions; explain their relevance to the ovarian cycle.

stigma for 1 or 2 minutes, and then the follicle ruptures. The remaining follicular fluid oozes out, carrying the oocyte and the surrounding cells of the corona radiata (fig. 28.16).

12. The oocyte and its attendant cells are normally swept up by the ciliary current and taken into the uterine tube, although many oocytes fall into the pelvic cavity and die.

Insight 28.3 Clinical Application

Signs of Ovulation

If a couple is attempting to conceive a child or to avoid pregnancy, it is important to be able to tell when ovulation occurs. The signs are subtle but detectable. For one, the cervical mucus becomes thinner and more stretchy. Also, the resting body temperature *(basal temperature)* rises 0.2° to 0.3°C (0.4°–0.6°F). This is best measured first thing in the morning, before rising from bed; the change can be detected if basal temperatures are recorded for several days before ovulation in order to see the difference. The LH surge that occurs about 24 hours before ovulation can be detected with a home testing kit. Finally, some women experience twinges of ovarian pain known by the German name, *mittelschmerz*,[34] which last from a few hours to a day or so at the time of ovulation. The most likely time to become pregnant is within 24 hours after the cervical mucus changes consistency and the basal temperature rises.

Postovulatory Phase The **postovulatory phase** extends from days 15 to 28, from ovulation to the beginning of menstruation. This phase of the sexual cycle is the most predictable in length. Its first 12 days are called the **luteal phase** and its last 2 days are the **premenstrual phase.** The major developments in this phase, assuming pregnancy does not occur, are as follows:

13. When the follicle expels the oocyte, it collapses and bleeds into the antrum. As the clotted blood is slowly absorbed, granulosa and theca interna cells multiply and fill the antrum, and a dense bed of blood capillaries grows amid them. The ovulated follicle has now become a structure called the **corpus luteum,**[35] named for a yellow lipid that accumulates in the theca interna cells. These cells are now called **lutein cells.**
14. The anterior pituitary continues to secrete LH, which regulates the further growth and activity of the corpus luteum. For this reason, LH is also called *luteotropic hormone.*
15. The lutein cells produce mainly androgen, which the granulosa cells convert to progesterone and a smaller amount of estrogen. Progesterone stimulates developments in the uterus that we survey shortly.

---

[34] *mittel* = in the middle + *schmerz* = pain

[35] *corpus* = body + *lute* = yellow

16. The lutein cells also secrete inhibin, which suppresses FSH secretion and prevents new follicles from developing.
17. For a time, the corpus luteum grows and secretes more and more progesterone. But while progesterone stimulates uterine development, it also seals the fate of the corpus luteum, because it inhibits the secretion of FSH and LH. When the LH level falls critically low, the corpus luteum *involutes,* or atrophies. Involution, occurring from days 24 through 26, results in declining progesterone secretion, and the lack of progesterone brings about menstruation. By day 26 or so, involution is complete and the corpus luteum has become an inactive scar, the **corpus albicans.**[36] If pregnancy occurs, the corpus luteum remains active for about 3 months.
18. Involution of the corpus luteum also ends its negative feedback inhibition of the hypothalamus. The hypothalamus therefore begins to secrete GnRH anew, the anterior pituitary secretes FSH in response, and a new crop of follicles begins to develop.

The ovarian cycle has now come full circle to the point where we began. We now go on to see how the foregoing events are correlated with changes in the uterus—that is, how the ovarian cycle regulates the menstrual cycle.

The Menstrual Cycle

The menstrual cycle consists of a buildup of the endometrium through most of the sexual cycle, followed by its breakdown and vaginal discharge. The menstrual cycle is divided into a *menstrual phase, proliferative phase, secretory phase,* and *premenstrual phase,* in that order. The menstrual phase averages 5 days long, and the first day of noticeable vaginal discharge is defined as day 1 of the sexual cycle. The reason for menstruation is best understood after you become acquainted with the buildup of endometrial tissue that precedes it, so we begin our survey of the cycle with the proliferative phase.

Proliferative Phase The **proliferative phase** is a time of rebuilding of endometrial tissue lost at the last menstruation. At the end of menstruation, around day 5, the endometrium is about 0.5 mm thick and consists only of the stratum basalis. The stratum functionalis is rebuilt by mitosis from day 6 to day 14. The principal processes in this phase are:

1. Estrogen from the ovaries stimulates mitosis in the stratum basalis as well as the prolific regrowth of blood vessels. By day 14, the endometrium is about 2 to 3 mm thick.
2. Estrogen also stimulates the endometrium to produce progesterone receptors, thereby preparing it for the progesterone-dominated secretory phase.

Secretory Phase The **secretory phase** is a period of further endometrial thickening, but this results from secretion and fluid accumulation rather than mitosis. It extends from day 15 (after ovulation) to day 26 of a typical cycle. The principal processes in this phase are:

3. After ovulation, the corpus luteum secretes mainly progesterone. Progesterone stimulates the endometrial glands and cells of the stroma to accumulate glycogen. The glands grow wider, longer, and more coiled and secrete a glycogen-rich fluid into the lumen. The lamina propria swells with tissue fluid.
4. By the end of the secretory phase, the endometrium is about 5 to 6 mm thick—a soft, wet, nutritious bed available for embryonic development in the event of pregnancy.

Premenstrual Phase The premenstrual phase is a period of endometrial degeneration occurring in the last 2 days or so of the menstrual cycle.

5. As we have seen, in the absence of pregnancy, the corpus luteum atrophies and the progesterone level falls sharply. In the absence of progesterone, the spiral arteries of the endometrium exhibit spasmodic contractions that cause endometrial ischemia (interrupted blood flow). The premenstrual phase is therefore also called the **ischemic** (iss-KEE-mic) **phase.**
6. Ischemia leads to tissue necrosis. As the endometrial glands, stroma, and blood vessels degenerate, pools of blood accumulate in the stratum functionalis.
7. Necrotic endometrium falls away from the uterine wall, mixes with blood in the lumen, and forms the **menstrual fluid.**

Menstrual Phase The menstrual phase *(menses)* is the period in which blood, serous fluid, and degenerated endometrial tissue are discharged from the vagina. It commences when enough menstrual fluid accumulates in the uterus. The first day of external discharge marks day 1 of a new cycle. The average woman discharges about 40 mL of blood and 35 mL of serous fluid over a 5-day period. Menstrual fluid contains fibrinolysin, so it does not clot. The vaginal discharge of clotted blood may indicate uterine pathology rather than normal menstruation.

In summary, the ovaries go through a follicular phase characterized by growing follicles; then ovulation; and then a postovulatory (mostly luteal) phase dominated by the corpus luteum. The uterus, in the meantime, goes through a menstrual phase in which it discharges its stratum functionalis; then a proliferative phase in which it replaces that tissue by mitosis; then a secretory phase in which the endometrium thickens by the accumulation of secretions; and finally, a premenstrual (ischemic) phase in which the stratum functionalis breaks down again. The first half of the cycle is governed largely by follicle-stimulating hormone

---

[36] *corpus* = body + *alb* = white

(FSH) from the pituitary gland and estrogen from the ovaries. Ovulation is triggered by luteinizing hormone (LH) from the pituitary, and the second half of the cycle is governed mainly by LH and progesterone, the latter secreted by the ovaries.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

8. Name the sequence of cell types in oogenesis and identify the ways oogenesis differs from spermatogenesis.
9. Distinguish between a primordial, primary, and secondary follicle. Describe the major structures of a mature follicle.
10. Describe what happens in the ovary during the follicular and postovulatory phases.
11. Describe what happens in the uterus during the menstrual, proliferative, secretory, and premenstrual phases.
12. Describe the effects of FSH and LH on the ovary.
13. Describe the effects of estrogen and progesterone on the uterus, hypothalamus, and anterior pituitary.

Female Sexual Response

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the female sexual response at each phase of intercourse; and
- compare and contrast the female and male responses.

Female sexual response, the physiological changes that occur during intercourse, may be viewed in terms of the four phases identified by Masters and Johnson and discussed in chapter 27—excitement, plateau, orgasm, and resolution (fig. 28.17). The neurological and vascular controls of female sexual response are essentially the same as in the male and need not be repeated here. The emphasis here is on ways the female response differs from that of the male.

Excitement and Plateau

Excitement is marked by myotonia, vasocongestion, and increased heart rate, blood pressure, and respiratory rate. Although vasocongestion works by the same mechanism in both sexes, its effects are quite different. In females, the labia minora become congested and often protrude beyond the labia majora. The labia majora become reddened and enlarged and then flatten and spread away from the vaginal orifice.

The vaginal wall becomes purple due to hyperemia, and serous fluid called the **vaginal transudate** seeps through the wall into the canal. Along with secretions of the greater vestibular glands, this moistens the vestibule and provides lubrication. The inner end of the vagina dilates and becomes cavernous, while the lower one-third of it constricts to form a narrow passage called the **orgasmic platform.** Thus it tightens on the penis, and combined with the vaginal rugae (friction ridges), this enhances stimulation and helps induce orgasm in both partners.

The uterus, which normally tilts forward over the urinary bladder, stands more erect during excitement and the cervix withdraws from the vagina. In plateau, the uterus is nearly vertical and extends into the false pelvis. This is called the **tenting effect.**

Although the vagina is the female copulatory organ, the clitoris is more comparable to the penis in structure, physiology, and importance as the primary focus of erotic stimulation. It has a high concentration of sensory nerve endings, which, by contrast, are relatively scanty in the vagina. Recall that the penis and clitoris are homologous structures, both arising from the phallus of the fetus. Both have a pair of corpora cavernosa with central (deep) arteries, and both become engorged by the same mechanism. The glans and shaft of the clitoris swell to two or three times their unstimulated size, but since the clitoris cannot swing upward away from the body like the penis, it tends to withdraw beneath the prepuce. Thrusting of the penis in the vagina tugs on the labia minora and, by extension, pulls on the prepuce and stimulates the clitoris. The clitoris may also be stimulated by pressure between the pubic symphyses of the partners.

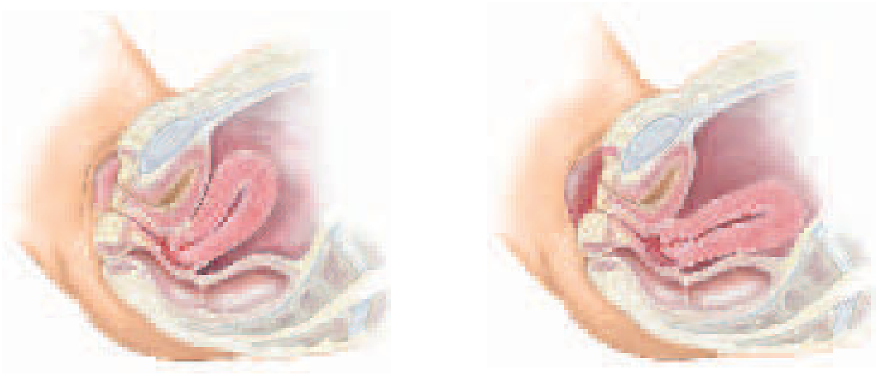
The breasts also become congested and swollen during the excitement phase, and the nipples become erect. Stimulation of the breasts also enhances sexual arousal.

Orgasm

Late in plateau, many women experience involuntary pelvic thrusting, followed by 1 to 2 seconds of "suspension" or "stillness" preceding orgasm. Orgasm is commonly described as an intense sensation spreading from the clitoris through the pelvis, sometimes with pelvic throbbing and a spreading sense of warmth. The orgasmic platform gives three to five strong contractions about 0.8 seconds apart, while the cervix plunges spasmodically into the vagina and into the pool of semen, should this be present. The uterus exhibits peristaltic waves of contraction; it is still debated whether or not this helps to draw semen from the vagina. The anal and urethral sphincters constrict, and the paraurethral glands, which are homologous to the prostate, sometimes expel fluid similar to prostatic fluid. Tachycardia and hyperventilation occur; the breasts enlarge still more and the areolae often become engorged; and in many women a reddish, rashlike flush appears on the lower abdomen, chest, neck, and face.

Resolution

During resolution the uterus drops forward to its resting position. The orgasmic platform quickly relaxes, while the inner end of the vagina returns more slowly to its normal

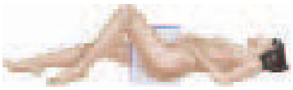


1. Unstimulated

Uterus tilts forward over urinary bladder; vagina relatively narrow; labia minora retracted

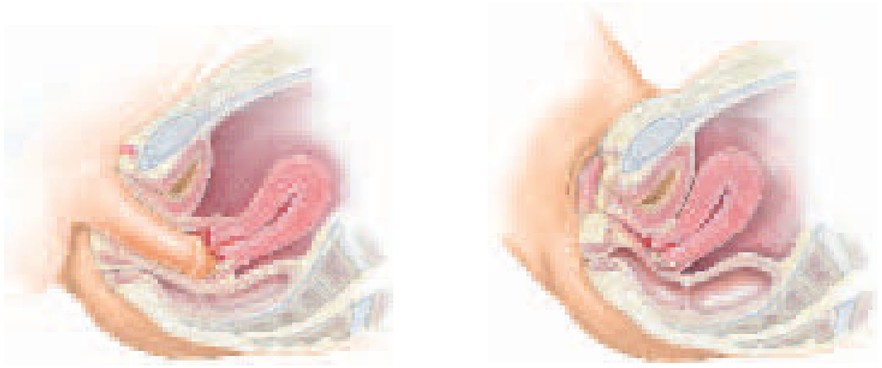
2. Excitement

Uterus stands more vertically; inner end of vagina dilates; labia minora vasocongested, may extend beyond labia majora; labia minora and vaginal mucosa reddened or violet due to hyperemia; vaginal transudate moistens vagina and vestibule



3. Plateau

Uterus is tented (vertical) and cervix is withdrawn from vagina; orgasmic platform (lower one-third) of vagina constricts penis; clitoris is engorged and its glans is withdrawn beneath prepuce; labia bright red or violet



4. Orgasm

Orgasmic platform contracts rhythmically; cervix may dip into pool of semen; uterus exhibits peristaltic contractions; anal and urinary sphincters constrict

5. Resolution

Uterus returns to original position; orgasmic platform relaxes; inner end of vagina constricts and returns to original dimensions

Figure 28.17 **Stages of Female Sexual Response.**

dimensions. The flush disappears quickly and the areolae and nipples undergo rapid detumescence, but it may take 5 to 10 minutes for the breasts to return to their normal size. In many women (and men) there is a postorgasmic outbreak of perspiration. Unlike men, women do not have a refractory period and may quickly experience additional orgasms.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

14. What are the female sources of lubrication in coitus?
15. What female tissues and organs become vasocongested?
16. Describe the actions of the uterus throughout the sexual response cycle.

Pregnancy and Childbirth

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- list the major hormones that regulate pregnancy, and explain their roles;
- describe a woman's adaptations to pregnancy;
- identify the physical and chemical stimuli that increase uterine contractility in late pregnancy;
- describe the mechanism of labor contractions;
- name and describe the three stages of labor; and
- describe the physiological changes that occur in the weeks following childbirth.

This section treats pregnancy from the maternal standpoint—that is, adjustments of the woman's body to pregnancy and the mechanism of childbirth. Development of the fetus is described in chapter 29.

Gestation (pregnancy) lasts an average of 266 days from conception to childbirth, but the gestational calendar is usually measured from the first day of the woman's last menstrual period (LMP). Thus the birth is predicted to occur 280 days (about 40 weeks) from LMP. The duration of pregnancy, called its *term,* is commonly described in 3-month intervals called **trimesters.**

Prenatal Development

A few fundamental facts of fetal development must be introduced here as a foundation for understanding maternal physiology. Fertilization must occur in the distal half of the uterine tube if it is to occur at all, since an unfertilized egg does not live long enough to reach the uterus alive. If fertilized, the egg divides five or six times before it reaches the uterus. All the products of conception—the embryo or fetus as well as the placenta and membranes associated with it—are collectively called the **conceptus.** The developing individual is called a *blastocyst* for most of the first 2 weeks, an *embryo* from 2 through 8 weeks, and a *fetus* from the beginning of week 9 until birth. The fetus is attached by way of an *umbilical cord* to a disc-shaped organ, the *placenta,* on the uterine wall. The placenta provides fetal nutrition and waste disposal, and secretes hormones that regulate pregnancy, mammary development, and fetal development. For the first 6 weeks after birth, the infant is called a *neonate.*[37]

Hormones of Pregnancy

The hormones with the strongest influences on pregnancy are estrogens, progesterone, human chorionic gonadotropin, and human chorionic somatomammotropin. These are secreted primarily by the placenta, but the corpus luteum is an important source of hormones in the first 7 to 12 weeks. If the corpus luteum is removed before the seventh week, abortion almost always occurs. From weeks 7 to 17, the corpus luteum degenerates and the placenta takes over its endocrine functions.

Human Chorionic Gonadotropin

Human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG) is secreted by the blastocyst. Its presence in the urine is the basis of pregnancy tests and can be detected with home testing kits as early as 8 or 9 days after conception. HCG secretion peaks around 10 to 12 weeks and then falls to a relatively low level for the rest of gestation (fig. 28.18). Like LH, it stimulates growth of the corpus luteum, which doubles in size and secretes increasing amounts of progesterone and estrogen. Without HCG, the corpus luteum would atrophy and the uterus would expel the conceptus.

Estrogens

Estrogen secretion increases to about 30 times normal by the end of gestation. The corpus luteum is an important source of estrogen for the first 12 weeks; after that, it comes mainly from the placenta. The adrenal glands of the mother and fetus secrete androgens, which the placenta converts to estrogens. The most abundant estrogen of pregnancy is estriol, but its effects are relatively weak; estradiol is less abundant but accounts for most of the estrogenic effects in pregnancy.

Estrogen stimulates tissue growth in the fetus and mother. It causes the mother's uterus and external genitalia to enlarge, the mammary ducts to grow, and the

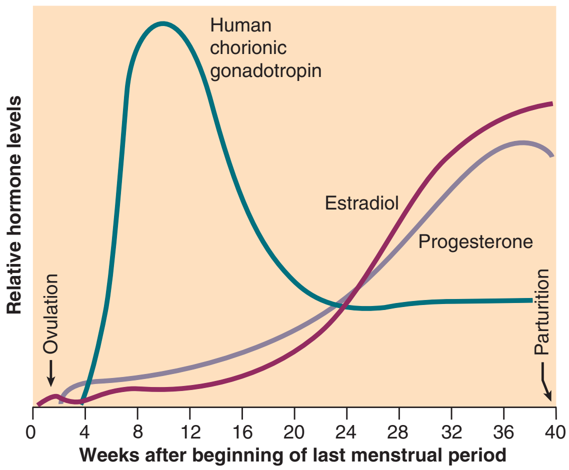


Figure 28.18 **Hormone Levels Over the Course of Pregnancy.** How does the changing estrogen to progesterone ratio relate to labor contractions?

---

[37] *neo* = new + *nat* = born, birth

breasts to increase to nearly twice their former size. It makes the pubic symphysis more elastic and the sacroiliac joints more limber, so the pelvis widens during pregnancy and the pelvic outlet expands during childbirth.

Progesterone

The placenta secretes a great deal of progesterone, and early in the pregnancy, so does the corpus luteum. Progesterone and estrogen suppress pituitary secretion of FSH and LH, thereby preventing more follicles from developing during pregnancy. (This is the basis for contraceptive pills and implants; see insight 28.4, p. 1079.) Progesterone also suppresses uterine contractions so the conceptus is not prematurely expelled. It prevents menstruation and promotes the proliferation of *decidual cells* of the endometrium, on which the blastocyst feeds. Once estrogen has stimulated growth of the mammary ducts, progesterone stimulates development of the secretory acini—another step toward lactation.

Human Chorionic Somatomammotropin

The amount of **human chorionic somatomammotropin (HCS)** secreted in pregnancy is several times that of all the other hormones combined, yet its function is the least understood. The placenta begins secreting HCS around the fifth week and HCS output increases steadily from then until term, in direct proportion to the size of the placenta.

HCS is sometimes called *human placental lactogen* because, in other mammals, it causes mammary development and lactation; however, it does not induce lactation in humans. Its effects seem similar to those of growth hormone, but weaker. It also seems to reduce the mother's insulin sensitivity and glucose usage such that the mother consumes less glucose and leaves more of it for use by the fetus. HCS promotes the release of free fatty acids from the mother's adipose tissue, providing an alternative energy substrate for her cells to use in lieu of glucose.

Other Hormones

Pregnancy affects many other aspects of endocrine function. A woman's pituitary gland grows about 50% larger during pregnancy and produces markedly elevated levels of thyrotropin, prolactin, and ACTH. The thyroid gland also becomes about 50% larger under the influence of HCG, pituitary thyrotropin, and *human chorionic thyrotropin* from the placenta. Elevated thyroid hormone secretion increases the metabolic rate of the mother and fetus. The parathyroid glands enlarge and stimulate osteoclast activity, liberating calcium from the mother's bones for fetal use. ACTH stimulates glucocorticoid secretion, which may serve primarily to mobilize amino acids for fetal protein synthesis. Aldosterone secretion rises and promotes fluid retention, contributing to the mother's increased blood volume. The corpus luteum and placenta secrete *relaxin,* which relaxes the pubic symphysis in other animals but does not seem to have this effect in humans. In humans, it synergizes with progesterone in stimulating the multiplication of decidual cells in early pregnancy and promotes the growth of blood vessels in the pregnant uterus.

The hormones of pregnancy are summarized in table 28.2.

Table 28.2 The Hormones of Pregnancy

Hormone	Effects
Human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG)	Prevents involution of corpus luteum and stimulates its growth and secretory activity; basis of pregnancy tests
Estrogens	Stimulate maternal and fetal tissue growth, including enlargement of uterus and maternal genitalia; stimulate development of mammary ducts; soften pubic symphysis and sacroiliac joints, facilitating pelvic expansion in pregnancy and childbirth; suppress FSH and LH secretion
Progesterone	Suppresses premature uterine contractions; prevents menstruation; stimulates proliferation of decidual cells, which nourish embryo; stimulates development of mammary acini; suppresses FSH and LH secretion
Human chorionic somatomammotropin (HCS)	Weak growth-stimulating effects similar to growth hormone; glucose-sparing effect on mother, making glucose more available to fetus; mobilization of fatty acids as maternal fuel
Pituitary thyrotropin	Stimulates thyroid activity and metabolic rate
Human chorionic thyrotropin	Same effect as pituitary thyrotropin
Parathyroid hormone	Stimulates osteoclasts and mobilizes maternal calcium
Adrenocorticotropic hormone	Stimulates glucocorticoid secretion; thought to mobilize amino acids for fetal protein synthesis
Aldosterone	Causes fluid retention, contributing to increased maternal blood volume
Relaxin	Promotes development of decidual cells and blood vessels in the pregnant uterus

Adjustments to Pregnancy

Pregnancy places a considerable stress on a woman's body and requires adjustments in nearly all the organ systems. A few of the major adjustments and effects of pregnancy are described here.

Digestive System, Nutrition, and Metabolism

For many women, one of the first signs of pregnancy is morning sickness—nausea, especially after rising from bed, in the first few months of gestation. The cause of morning sickness is unknown. One hypothesis is that it stems from the reduced intestinal motility caused by the steroids of pregnancy. Another is that it is an evolutionary adaptation to protect the fetus from toxins. The fetus is most vulnerable to toxins at the same time that morning sickness peaks. Women with morning sickness tend to prefer bland foods and to avoid spicy and pungent foods, which are highest in toxic compounds. In some women, the nausea progresses to vomiting.

Constipation and heartburn are common in pregnancy. The former is another result of reduced intestinal motility. The latter is due to the enlarging uterus pressing upward on the stomach, causing the reflux of gastric contents into the esophagus.

The basal metabolic rate rises about 15% in the second half of gestation. Pregnant women often feel overheated because of this and the effort of carrying the extra weight. The appetite may be strongly stimulated, but a pregnant woman needs only 300 extra Calories per day even in the last trimester. With poor prenatal care and little self-control, however, some women greatly overeat and gain as much as 34 kg (75 lb) of weight compared with a healthy average of 11 kg (24 lb). Maternal nutrition should emphasize the quality of food eaten, not quantity.

During the last trimester, the fetus needs more nutrients than the mother's digestive tract can absorb. In preparation for this, the placenta stores nutrients early in gestation and releases them in the final trimester. The demand is especially high for protein, iron, calcium, and phosphates. A pregnant woman needs an extra 600 mg of iron for her own hemopoiesis and 375 mg for the fetus. She is likely to become anemic if she does not ingest enough iron during late pregnancy. Supplemental vitamin K is often given late in pregnancy to promote prothrombin synthesis in the fetus. This reduces the risk of neonatal hemorrhage, especially in the brain, caused by the stresses of birth. Supplemental folic acid reduces the risk of neurological disorders in the fetus, such as spina bifida (see insight 13.1, p. 484) and anencephaly (failure of the cerebrum, cerebellum, and calvaria to develop). A vitamin D supplement helps to ensure adequate calcium absorption to meet fetal demands.

Circulatory System

By full term, the placenta requires about 625 mL of blood per minute from the mother. The mother's blood volume rises about 30% during pregnancy because of fluid retention and hemopoiesis; she eventually has about 1 to 2 L of extra blood. Cardiac output rises about 30% to 40% above normal by 27 weeks, but for unknown reasons, it falls almost to normal in the last 8 weeks. As the pregnant uterus puts pressure on the large pelvic blood vessels, it interferes with venous return from the legs and pelvic region. This can result in hemorrhoids and varicose veins.

Respiratory System

Minute ventilation increases about 50% during pregnancy for two reasons: (1) Oxygen demands are about 20% higher by late pregnancy in order to supply the fetus and support the woman's increased metabolic rate. (2) Progesterone increases the sensitivity of her respiratory chemoreceptors to carbon dioxide, and ventilation is adjusted to keep her arterial P_{CO_2} lower than normal. While there is a demand for increased ventilation, the expanding uterus pushes the abdominal viscera up against the diaphragm and interferes with breathing. Consequently, the respiratory rate increases to compensate for the lack of depth. Pressure on the diaphragm may be great enough to cause breathing difficulty (dyspnea) by late pregnancy. In the last month, however, the pelvis usually expands enough for the fetus to drop lower in the abdominopelvic cavity, taking some pressure off the diaphragm and allowing the woman to breathe more easily.

Urinary System

Aldosterone and the steroids of pregnancy promote water and salt retention by the kidneys. Nevertheless, the glomerular filtration rate increases by 50% and urine output is slightly elevated. This enables a woman to dispose of both her own and the fetus's metabolic wastes. As the pregnant uterus compresses the bladder and reduces its capacity, urination becomes more frequent and some women experience uncontrollable leakage of urine, or *incontinence.*

Integumentary System

The skin must grow to accommodate expansion of the abdomen and breasts and the added fat deposition in the hips and thighs. Stretching of the dermis often tears the connective tissue and causes *striae,* or *stretch marks.* These appear reddish at first but fade after pregnancy. Melanocyte activity increases in some areas and darkens the areolae and linea alba. The latter often becomes a dark line, the **linea nigra**[38] (LIN-ee-uh NY-gruh), from the umbilical to the pubic region. Some women also acquire a temporary blotchy darkening of the skin over the nose and cheeks called the "mask of pregnancy," or **chloasma**[39] (clo-AZ-muh), which usually disappears when the pregnancy is over.

Uterine Growth and Weight Gain

The uterus weighs about 50 g when a woman is not pregnant and about 900 g by the end of pregnancy. Its growth is monitored by palpating the fundus, which eventually reaches almost to the xiphoid process (fig. 28.19). Table 28.3 shows how the weight gained in pregnancy is distributed.

Table 28.3 Distribution of Weight Gain in Pregnancy

Fetus	3 kg (7 lb)
Placenta, fetal membranes, and amniotic fluid	1.8 kg (4 lb)
Blood and tissue fluid	2.7 kg (6 lb)
Fat	1.4 kg (3 lb)
Uterus	0.9 kg (2 lb)
Breasts	0.9 kg (2 lb)
Total	**11 kg (24 lb)**

Childbirth

In the seventh month of gestation, the fetus normally turns into a head-down *vertex position.* Consequently, most babies are born head first, the head acting as a wedge that

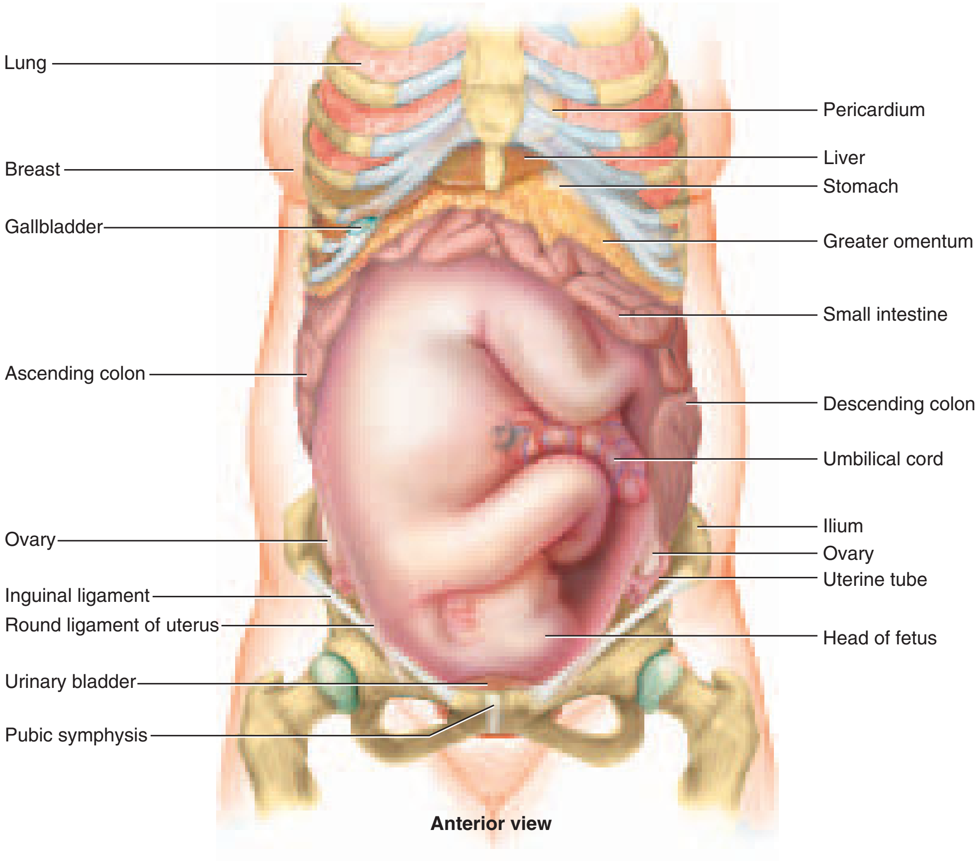

Lung
Breast
Gallbladder
Ascending colon
Ovary
Inguinal ligament
Round ligament of uterus
Urinary bladder
Pubic symphysis
Pericardium
Liver
Stomach
Greater omentum
Small intestine
Descending colon
Umbilical cord
Ilium
Ovary
Uterine tube
Head of fetus
Anterior view

Figure 28.19 **The Full-Term Fetus in Vertex Position.**

---

[38] *linea* = line + *nigra* = black

[39] *chloasma* = to be green

widens the mother's cervix, vagina, and vulva during birth. The ancients thought that the fetus kicks against the uterus and pushes itself out head first. The fetus, however, is a rather passive player in its own birth; its expulsion is achieved only by the contractions of the mother's uterine and abdominal muscles. Yet there is evidence that the fetus may play some role in its birth by chemically stimulating labor contractions and perhaps even sending chemical messages that signify when it is ready to be born.

Uterine Contractility

Over the course of gestation, the uterus exhibits relatively weak **Braxton Hicks[40] contractions.** These become stronger in late pregnancy and often send women rushing to the hospital with "false labor." At term, however, these contractions transform suddenly into the more powerful **labor contractions.** True labor contractions mark the onset of **parturition** (PAR-too-RISH-un), the process of giving birth.

Progesterone and estrogen balance may be one factor in this pattern of increasing contractility. Both hormone levels increase over the course of gestation. Progesterone inhibits uterine contractions, but its secretion levels off or declines slightly after 6 months, while estrogen secretion continues to rise (see fig. 28.18). Estrogen stimulates uterine contractions and may be a factor in the irritability of the uterus in late pregnancy.

Also, as the pregnancy nears full term, the posterior pituitary releases more oxytocin (OT) and the uterus produces more OT receptors. Oxytocin promotes labor in two ways: (1) it directly stimulates muscle of the myometrium, and (2) it stimulates the fetal membranes to secrete prostaglandins, which are synergists of OT in producing labor contractions. Labor is prolonged if OT or prostaglandins are lacking, and it may be induced or accelerated by giving a vaginal prostaglandin suppository or an intravenous OT "drip." The conceptus itself may produce chemical stimuli promoting its own birth. Fetal cortisol secretion rises in late pregnancy and may enhance estrogen secretion by the placenta. The fetal pituitary gland also produces oxytocin, which does not enter the maternal circulation but may stimulate the fetal membranes to secrete prostaglandins.

Uterine stretching is also thought to play a role in initiating labor. Stretching any smooth muscle increases its contractility, and movements of the fetus produce the sort of intermittent stretch that is especially stimulatory to the myometrium. Twins are born an average of 19 days earlier than single infants, probably because of the greater stretching of the uterus. When the fetus is in the vertex position, its head pushes against the cervix, which is especially sensitive to stretch.

Labor Contractions

Labor contractions begin about 30 minutes apart. As labor progresses, they become more intense and eventually occur every 1 to 3 minutes. It is important that they be intermittent rather than one long, continual contraction. Each contraction sharply reduces maternal blood flow to the placenta, so the uterus must periodically relax to restore flow and oxygen delivery to the fetus. Contractions are strongest in the fundus and body of the uterus and weaker near the cervix, thus pushing the fetus downward.

According to the **positive feedback theory of labor,** labor contractions are induced by stretching of the cervix. This triggers a reflex contraction of the uterine body that pushes the fetus downward and stretches the cervix still more. Thus there is a self-amplifying cycle of stretch and contraction. In addition, cervical stretching induces a neuroendocrine reflex through the spinal cord, hypothalamus, and posterior pituitary. The posterior pituitary releases oxytocin, which is carried in the blood and stimulates the uterine muscle both directly and through the action of prostaglandins. This, too, is a positive feedback cycle: cervical stretching → oxytocin secretion → uterine contraction → cervical stretching (see fig. 1.13, p. 19).

As labor progresses, a woman feels a growing urge to "bear down." A reflex arc extends from the uterus to the spinal cord and back to the skeletal muscles of the abdomen. Contraction of these muscles—partly reflexive and partly voluntary—aids in expelling the fetus.

The pain of labor is due at first mainly to ischemia of the myometrium—muscle hurts when deprived of blood, and each labor contraction temporarily restricts uterine circulation. As the fetus enters the vaginal canal, the pain becomes stronger because of increased stretching of the cervix, vagina, and perineum and sometimes the tearing of vaginal tissue. At this stage, the obstetrician may perform an *episiotomy*—an incision in the vulva to widen the vaginal orifice and prevent random tearing. The pain of human childbirth, compared to the relative ease with which other mammals give birth, is an evolutionary product of two factors: the unusually large brain and head of the human infant, and the narrowing of the pelvic outlet, which adapted hominids to bipedal locomotion (see p. 286).

Stages of Labor

Labor occurs in three stages. The duration of each stage tends to be longer in a **primipara** (a woman giving birth for the first time) than in a **multipara** (a woman who has previously given birth).

Dilation (First) Stage This is the longest stage, lasting 8 to 24 hours in a primipara but as little as a few minutes in a multipara. It is marked by the **dilation** (widening) of the cervical canal and **effacement** (thinning) of the cervix (fig. 28.20*a, b*). The cervix reaches a maximum diameter of about 10 cm (the diameter of the baby's head). During

---

[40] John Braxton Hicks (1823–97), British gynecologist

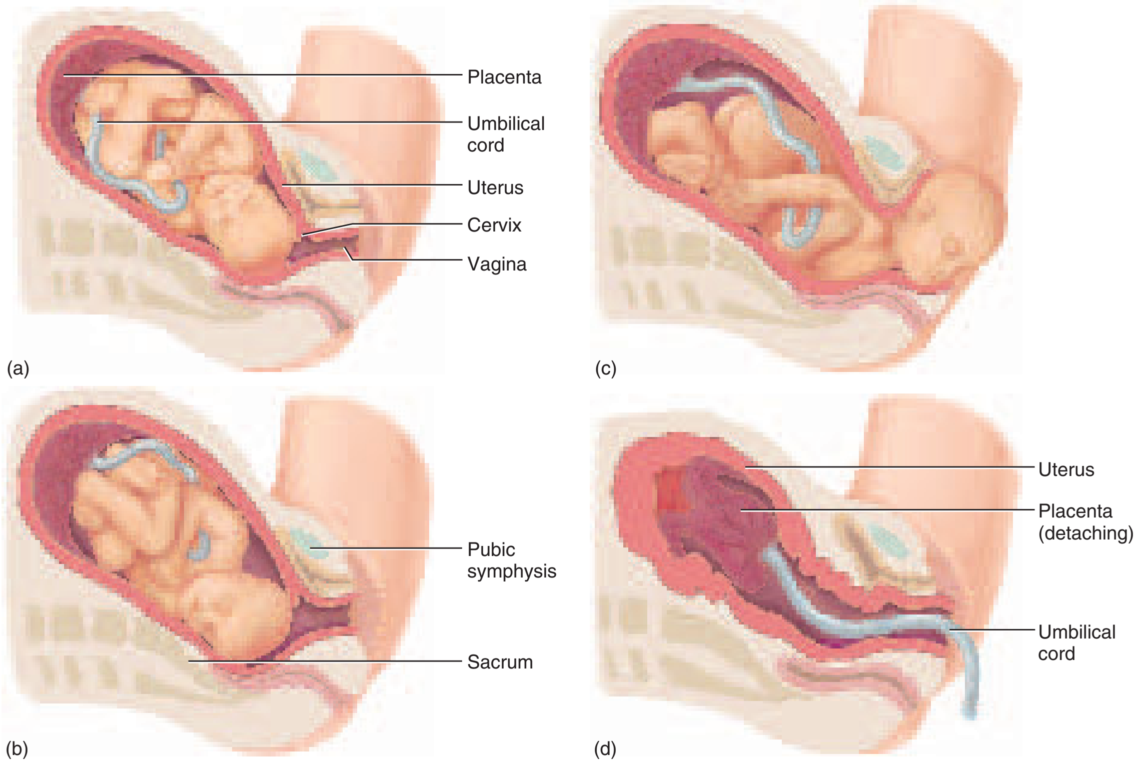


Figure 28.20 **The Stages of Childbirth.** (*a*) Early dilation. (*b*) Late dilation. (*c*) Expulsion. (*d*) The placental stage.

dilation, the fetal membranes usually rupture and the *amniotic fluid* is discharged (the "breaking of the waters").

Expulsion (Second) Stage This stage typically lasts about 30 to 60 minutes in a primipara and as little as 1 minute in a multipara. It begins when the baby's head enters the vagina and lasts until the baby is entirely expelled (fig. 28.20*c*). The baby is said to be **crowning** when the top of its head is visible, stretching the vulva (fig. 28.21*a*). Delivery of the head is the most difficult part, with the rest of the body following much more easily. An episiotomy may be performed during this stage. Women in labor employ the *Valsalva maneuver*—holding the breath while contracting the abdominal muscles—to help expel the infant. An attendant often uses a suction bulb to remove mucus from the baby's mouth and nose even before it is fully delivered. When the baby is fully expelled, an attendant drains the blood of the placental vein into the baby, clamps the umbilical cord in two places, and cuts the cord between the clamps.

Placental (Third) Stage The uterus continues to contract after expulsion of the baby. The placenta, however, is a nonmuscular organ that cannot contract, so it buckles away from the uterine wall (see fig. 28.20*d*). About 350 mL of blood is typically lost at this stage, but contractions of the myometrium compress the blood vessels and prevent more extensive bleeding. The placenta, amnion, and other fetal membranes are expelled by uterine contractions, which may be aided by a gentle pull on the umbilical cord. The membranes *(afterbirth)* must be carefully inspected to be sure everything has been expelled (fig. 28.21*c*). If any of these structures remain in the uterus, they can cause postpartum hemorrhaging. The umbilical blood vessels are counted because an abnormal number in the cord may indicate cardiovascular abnormalities in the infant.

Puerperium

The first 6 weeks **postpartum** (after birth) are called the **puerperium**[41] (PYU-er-PEER-ee-um), a period in which the mother's anatomy and physiology stabilize and the reproductive organs return nearly to the pregravid state (their condition prior to pregnancy). The shrinkage of the uterus during this period is called **involution.** In a lactating woman, it loses about 50% of its weight in the first week and is nearly at its pregravid weight in 4 weeks. Involution is achieved through the **autolysis** (self-digestion) of uterine

---

[41] *puer* = child + *per,* from *par* = birth

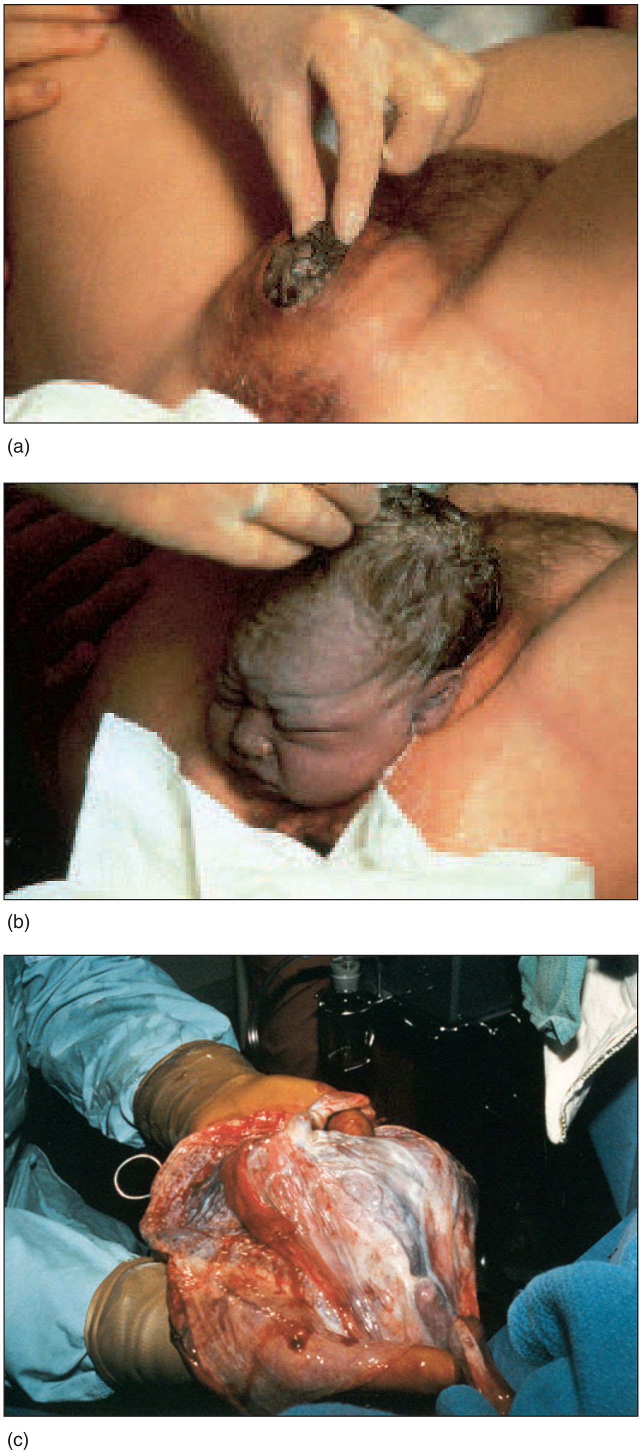


Figure 28.21 **Childbirth.** (*a*) Crowning. The baby's head, between the attendant's fingers, has begun to dilate the vulva. (*b*) Emergence of the head. (*c*) The placenta and fetal membranes (afterbirth).

cells by their own lysosomal enzymes. For about 10 days, this produces a vaginal discharge called **lochia,** which is bloody at first and then turns clear and serous. Breast-feeding promotes involution because (1) it suppresses estrogen secretion, which would otherwise cause the uterus to remain more flaccid; and (2) it stimulates oxytocin secretion, which causes the myometrium to contract and firm up the uterus sooner. It is important for the puerperium to be undisturbed, as emotional upset can suppress lactation in some women.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

17. List the roles of HCG, estrogen, progesterone, and HCS in pregnancy.
18. What is the role of the corpus luteum in pregnancy? What eventually takes over this role?
19. List and briefly explain the special nutritional requirements of pregnancy.
20. How much weight does the average woman gain in pregnancy? What contributes to this weight gain other than the fetus?
21. Describe the positive feedback theory of labor.
22. What major events define the three stages of labor?

Lactation

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe development of the breasts in pregnancy;
- describe the shifting hormonal balance that regulates the onset and continuation of lactation;
- describe the mechanism of milk ejection;
- contrast colostrum with breast milk; and
- discuss the benefits of breast-feeding.

Lactation is the synthesis and ejection of milk from the mammary glands. It lasts for as little as a week postpartum in women who do not breast-feed their infants, but it can continue for many years as long as the breast is stimulated by a nursing infant or mechanical device (breast pump). Numerous studies conducted before the widespread marketing of artificial infant formulas suggest that worldwide, women traditionally nursed their infants until a median age of about 2.8 years.

Development of the Mammary Glands in Pregnancy

The high estrogen level in pregnancy causes the ducts of the mammary glands to grow and branch extensively. Growth hormone, insulin, glucocorticoids, and prolactin also contribute to this development. Once the ducts are complete, progesterone stimulates the budding and development of acini at the ends of the ducts. The fully developed mammary gland is of the compound tubuloacinar type. The acini are organized into grapelike clusters (lobules) within each lobe of the breast (see fig. 28.9).

Colostrum and Milk Synthesis

In late pregnancy, the mammary acini and ducts are distended with a secretion called **colostrum.** This is similar to breast milk in protein and lactose content but contains about one-third less fat. It is the infant's only natural source of nutrition for the first 1 to 3 days postpartum. Colostrum has a thin watery consistency and a cloudy yellowish color. The amount of colostrum secreted per day is at most 1% of the amount of milk secreted later, but since infants are born with excess body water and ample fat, high calorie and fluid intake are not required at first. A major benefit of colostrum is that it contains immunoglobulins, especially IgA. IgA resists digestion and may protect the infant from gastroenteritis. It is also thought to be pinocytosed by the small intestine and to confer wider, systemic immunity to the neonate.

Milk synthesis is promoted by prolactin, a hormone of the anterior pituitary gland. In the nonpregnant state, dopamine (= prolactin-inhibiting hormone) from the hypothalamus inhibits prolactin secretion. Prolactin secretion begins 5 weeks into the pregnancy, and by full term it is 10 to 20 times its normal level. Even so, prolactin has little effect on the mammary glands until after birth. While the steroids of pregnancy prepare the mammary glands for lactation, they antagonize prolactin and suppress milk synthesis. When the placenta is discharged at birth, the steroid levels abruptly drop and allow prolactin to have a stronger effect. Milk is synthesized in increasing quantity over the following week. Milk synthesis also requires the action of growth hormone, cortisol, insulin, and parathyroid hormone to mobilize the necessary amino acids, fatty acids, glucose, and calcium.

At the time of birth, baseline prolactin secretion drops to the nonpregnant level. Every time the infant nurses, however, it jumps to 10 to 20 times this level for the next hour and stimulates the synthesis of milk for the next feeding (fig. 28.22). These prolactin surges are accompanied by smaller increases in estrogen and progesterone secretion. If the mother does not nurse or these hormone surges are absent (due to pituitary damage, for example), the mammary glands stop producing milk in about a week. Even if she does nurse, milk production declines after 7 to 9 months.

Only 5% to 10% of women become pregnant again while nursing an infant full time. Apparently, either prolactin or nerve signals from the breast inhibit GnRH secretion, which, in turn, results in reduced gonadotropin secretion and ovarian cycling. This mechanism may have evolved as a natural means of spacing births, but breast-feeding is not a reliable means of contraception. Even in women who breast-feed, the ovarian cycle sometimes resumes several months postpartum. In those who do not breast-feed, the cycles resume in a few weeks, but for the first 6 months they are usually anovulatory.

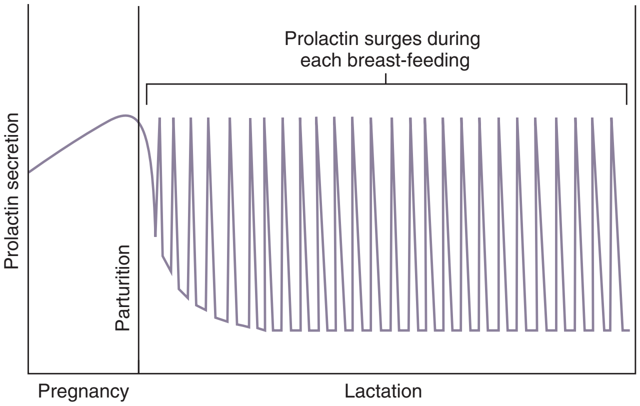


Figure 28.22 **Prolactin Secretion in the Lactating Female.**

Milk Ejection

Milk is continually secreted into the mammary acini, but it does not easily flow into the ducts. Its flow into the ducts, called **milk ejection** (let-down), is controlled by a neuroendocrine reflex. The infant's suckling stimulates nerve endings of the nipple and areola, which in turn signal the hypothalamus and posterior pituitary to release oxytocin. Oxytocin stimulates **myoepithelial cells,** which form a basketlike mesh around each gland acinus (fig. 28.23). These cells are of epithelial origin, but are packed with actin and contract like smooth muscle to squeeze milk from the acinus into the duct. The infant does not get any milk for the first 30 to 60 seconds of suckling, but milk soon fills the ducts and lactiferous sinuses and is then easily sucked out.

Think About It

When a woman is nursing her baby at one breast, would you expect only that breast, or both breasts, to eject milk? Explain why.

Breast Milk

Table 28.4 compares the composition of colostrum, human milk, and cow's milk. Breast milk changes composition over the first 2 weeks, varies from one time of day to another, and changes even during the course of a single

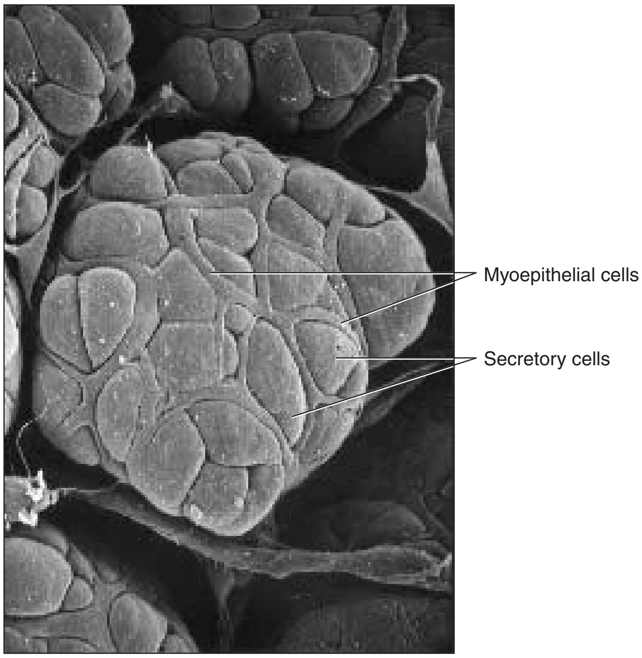


Figure 28.23 **Acinus of a Mammary Gland.** Myoepithelial cells can be seen forming a mesh around the secretory cells. The myoepithelial cells contract and force milk from the acinus into the duct.
Which cells in this photograph have oxytocin receptors?

feeding. For example, at the end of a feeding there is less lactose and protein in the milk, but six times as much fat, as there is at the beginning.

Cow's milk is not a good substitute for human milk. It has one-third less lactose but three to five times as much protein and minerals. The excess protein forms a harder curd in the infant's stomach, so cow's milk is not digested and absorbed as efficiently as mother's milk. It also increases the infant's nitrogenous waste excretion, which increases the incidence and severity of diaper rash, particularly as bacteria in the diaper break urea down to ammonia.

Colostrum and milk have a laxative effect that helps to clear the neonatal intestine of *meconium,* a greenish black, sticky fecal matter composed of bile, epithelial cells, and other wastes that accumulated during fetal development. By clearing bile and bilirubin from the body, breast-feeding also reduces the incidence and degree of jaundice in neonates. Breast milk promotes colonization of the neonatal intestine with beneficial bacteria and continues to supply antibodies that lend protection against infection by pathogenic bacteria. Breast-feeding also tends to promote a closer bond between mother and infant.

Table 28.4 A Comparison of Colostrum, Human Milk, and Cow's Milk*

	Human Colostrum	Human Milk	Cow's Milk
Total Protein (g/L)	22.9	10.6	30.9
Lactalbumin (g/L)	—	3.7	25.0
Casein (g/L)	—	3.6	2.3
Immunoglobulins (g/L)	19.4	0.09	0.8
Fat (g/L)	29.5	45.4	38.0
Lactose (g/L)	57	71	47
Calcium (mg/L)	481	344	1370
Phosphorus (mg/L)	157	141	910

*Colostrum data are for the first day postpartum, and human milk data are for "mature milk" at ≈15 days postpartum.

A woman nursing one baby eventually produces about 1.5 L of milk per day; women with twins produce more. Lactation places a great metabolic demand on the mother. It is equivalent to losing 50 g of fat, 100 g of lactose (made from her blood glucose), and 2 to 3 g of calcium phosphate per day. A woman is at greater risk of bone loss when breast-feeding than when she is pregnant, because much of the infant's skeleton is still cartilage at birth and becomes mineralized at her expense in the first year postpartum. If a nursing mother does not have enough calcium and vitamin D in her own diet, lactation stimulates parathyroid hormone secretion and osteoclast activity, taking calcium from her bones to supply her baby.

To conclude this chapter, table 28.5 briefly describes some of the common disorders of pregnancy. Other reproductive disorders are discussed elsewhere: cervical cancer in insight 28.1, breast cancer on page 1058, and sexually transmitted diseases at the end of chapter 27.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

23. Why is little or no milk secreted while a woman is pregnant?
24. How does a lactating breast differ from a nonlactating breast in structure? What stimulates these differences to develop during pregnancy?
25. What is colostrum and what is its significance?
26. How does suckling stimulate milk ejection?
27. Why is breast milk superior to cow's milk for an infant?

Table 28.5 Some Disorders of Pregnancy

Abruptio placentae[42]	Premature separation of the placenta from the uterine wall, often associated with pre-eclampsia or cocaine use. May require birth by cesarian section.
Ectopic[43] *pregnancy*	Implantation of the conceptus anywhere other than the uterus; usually starts in the uterine tube *(tubal pregnancy)* and may progress to *abdominal pregnancy* if the tube ruptures. See insight 29.2 for further details.
Gestational diabetes	A form of diabetes mellitus that develops in about 1% to 3% of pregnant women, characterized by insulin insensitivity, hyperglycemia, glycosuria, and a risk of excessive fetal size and birth trauma. Glucose metabolism often returns to normal after delivery of the infant, but 40% to 60% of women with gestational diabetes develop diabetes mellitus within 15 years after the pregnancy.
Hyperemesis gravidarum[44]	Prolonged vomiting, dehydration, alkalosis, and weight loss in early pregnancy, often requiring hospitalization to stabilize fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base balance; sometimes associated with liver damage.
Placenta previa[45]	Blockage of the cervical canal by the placenta, preventing birth of the infant before the placenta separates from the uterus. Requires birth by cesarian section.
Pre-eclampsia[46] *(toxemia of pregnancy)*	Rapid onset of hypertension and edema, swelling especially of the face and hands; proteinuria and reduced glomerular filtration rate; increased blood clotting; sometimes with headaches, visual disturbances, and small cerebral infarctions. Seen in about 4% of pregnancies, especially in the third trimester of women pregnant for the first time. Can progress to *eclampsia,* with seizures and widespread vascular spasms sometimes fatal to the mother, fetus, or both. Eclampsia usually occurs shortly before or after parturition.
Spontaneous abortion	Occurs in 10% to 15% of pregnancies, usually because of fetal deformities or chromosomal abnormalities incompatible with survival, but may also result from maternal abnormalities, infectious disease, and drug abuse.

[42] *ab* = away + *rupt* = to tear + *placentae* = of the placenta
[43] *ec* = out of + *top* = place
[44] *hyper* = excessive + *emesis* = vomiting + *gravida* = pregnant woman
[45] *pre* = before + *via* = the way (obstructing the way)
[46] *ec* = forth + *lampsia* = shining

Insight 28.4 Clinical Application

Methods of Contraception

The term *contraception* is used here to mean any procedure or device intended to prevent pregnancy (the presence of an implanted conceptus in the uterus). This essay describes the most common methods of contraception, some issues involved in choosing among them, and the relative reliability of the various methods. Several of those options are shown in figure 28.24.

Behavioral Methods

Abstinence (refraining from intercourse) is, obviously, a completely reliable method if used consistently. The *rhythm method (periodic abstinence)* is based on avoiding intercourse near the time of expected ovulation. Among typical users, it has a 25% failure rate, partly due to lack of restraint and partly because it is difficult to predict the exact date of ovulation. Intercourse must be avoided for at least 48 hours before ovulation so there will be no surviving sperm in the reproductive tract when the egg is ovulated, and for at least 24 hours after ovulation so there will be no fertile egg present when sperm are introduced. The rhythm method is valuable, however, for couples who are trying to conceive a child by having intercourse at the time of apparent ovulation.

Withdrawal (coitus interruptus) requires the male to withdraw the penis before ejaculation. This often fails because of lack of willpower, because some sperm are present in the preejaculatory fluid, and because sperm ejaculated anywhere in the female genital region can potentially get into the reproductive tract.

Barrier and Spermicidal Methods

Barrier methods are designed to prevent sperm from getting into or beyond the vagina. They are most effective when used with chemical *spermicides,* available as over-the-counter foams, creams, and jellies.

The *male condom* is a sheath of latex, rubber, or animal membrane (lamb intestine) that is unrolled over the erect penis and collects the semen. It is inexpensive, convenient, and very reliable when used carefully. About 25% of American couples who use contraceptives use only condoms, which rank second to birth-control pills in popularity.

The *female condom* is less used. It is a polyurethane sheath with a flexible ring at each end. The inner ring fits over the cervix and the outer ring covers the external genitalia. Male and female condoms are the only contraceptives that also protect against disease transmission. Animal membrane condoms, however, are porous to HIV and hepatitis B viruses and do not afford dependable protection from disease.

The *diaphragm* is a latex or rubber dome that is placed over the cervix to block sperm transmission. It requires a physical examination and prescription to ensure proper fit, but is otherwise comparable to

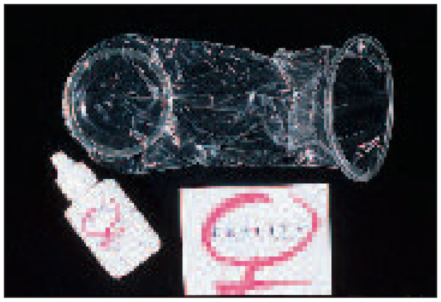
Delfen
contraceptive foam
STARTER
Delfen
Delfen

Contraceptive foam with vaginal applicator

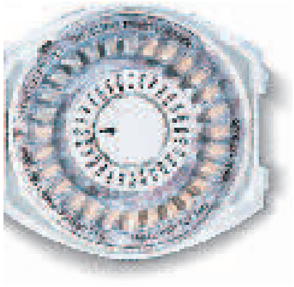
Diaphragm with contraceptive jelly

Sheik
Sheik

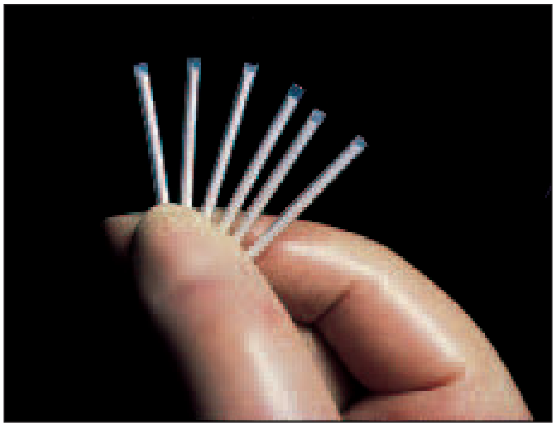
Male condom



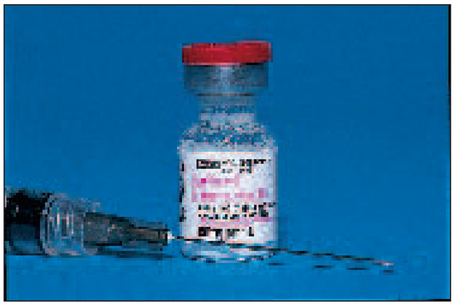
Female condom



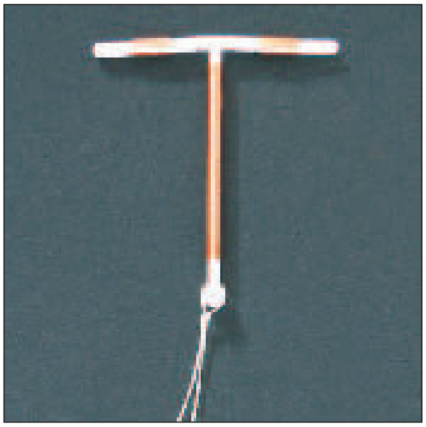
Birth control pills



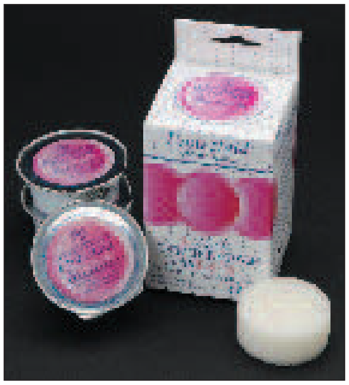
Norplant



Depo-Provera



Intrauterine device (IUD)



The contraceptive sponge

Figure 28.24 **Contraceptive Devices.**

the condom in convenience and reliability, provided it is used with a spermicide. Without a spermicide, it is not very effective.

The *sponge* is a foam disc inserted before intercourse to cover the cervix. It is impregnated with spermicidal gel and acts by absorbing semen and killing the sperm. It requires no prescription or fitting. The sponge provides protection for up to 12 hours, and must be left in place for 6 hours after the last act of intercourse. The sponge is not currently available in the United States.

Hormonal Methods

Birth-control pills are composed of estrogen and progesterone. They mimic the negative feedback effect of ovarian hormones on FSH secretion, thus preventing follicle development and ovulation. They are effective for most women with minimal complications, but they can increase the risk of heart attack or stroke in smokers and in women with a history of diabetes, hypertension, or clotting disorders. Birth-control pills are the most widely used contraceptives in the United States. Efforts to develop a birth-control pill for men have so far been unsuccessful.

Norplant is a porous silicone tube of synthetic progesterone. Six tubes the size of matchsticks are inserted under a woman's skin, usually on the upper arm. By slowly releasing progesterone, these tubes suppress ovulation and prevent pregnancy for up to 5 years. Even if ovulation should occur, Norplant interferes with egg transport by altering the cilia in the uterine tube and it makes the endometrium unreceptive to implantation.

Depo-Provera is a synthetic progesterone administered by injection two to four times per year. It provides highly reliable, long-term contraception without the need of daily pills or implants, although in some women it causes headaches, nausea, or weight gain, and fertility may not return immediately when its use is discontinued.

Surgical Sterilization

People who are confident that they do not want more children (or any) often elect to be surgically sterilized. This entails the cutting and tying or clamping of the genital ducts, thus blocking the passage of sperm or eggs. Surgical sterilization has the advantage of convenience, since it requires no further attention. Its initial cost is higher, however, and for people who later change their minds, surgical reversal is much more expensive than the original procedure and is often unsuccessful. *Vasectomy* is the severing of the ductus (vas) deferens, done through a small incision in the back of the scrotum. In *tubal ligation,*[47] the uterine tubes are cut. This can be done through small abdominal incisions to admit a cutting instrument and laparoscope (viewing device).

Preventing Implantation

The *intrauterine device (IUD)* is a springy plastic device inserted through the cervical canal into the uterus and left in place for 1 to 4 years. It prevents the implantation of a blastocyst in the uterine wall. Some IUDs were removed from the market because they caused serious complications such as uterine perforation, and many other models were removed for fear of legal liability. Only two T-shaped models are currently available in the United States.

Mifepristone (RU486), the "morning after pill," can be taken after intercourse has occurred around the expected time of ovulation and any time within 10 days of when the next projected menstrual period would ordinarily occur. By blocking the action of progesterone, it induces menstruation and the discharge of any conceptus that might have formed. Mifepristone has been widely used in France without complications, but its availability in the United States has long been stalled by political controversy. The Food and Drug Administration approved Mifepristone for use in the United States in September 2000.

Issues in Choosing a Contraceptive

Many issues enter into the appropriate choice of a contraceptive, including personal preference, pattern of sexual activity, medical history, religious views, convenience, initial and ongoing costs, and disease prevention. For most people, however, the two primary issues are safety and reliability.

The following table shows the expected rates of failure for several types of contraception as reported in the 2000 *Physician's Desk Reference.* Each column shows the number of sexually active women who typically become pregnant within 1 year while they or their partners are using the indicated contraceptives. The lowest rate is for those who use the method correctly and consistently, while the higher rate is based on random surveys of users and takes human error (lapses and incorrect usage) into account.

We have not considered all the currently available methods of contraception or all the issues important to the choice of a contraceptive. No one contraceptive method can be recommended as best for all people. Further information necessary to a sound choice and proper use of contraceptives should be sought from a health department, college health service, physician, or other such sources.

Failure Rates of Contraceptive Methods

	Rate of Failure (pregnancies per 100 users)	
Method	**Lowest**	**Typical**
No protection	85	85
Rhythm method	1–9	25
Withdrawal	4	19
Spermicide alone	6	26
Condom (male or female)	3–5	14–21
Diaphragm with spermicide	6	20
Birth-control pill	0.1–0.5	5
Norplant	0.05	0.05
Depo-Provera	0.3	0.3
Vasectomy	0.10	0.15
Tubal ligation	0.5	0.5
Intrauterine device	0.1–2.0	0.1–1.5

---

[47] *ligat* = to tie

Connective Issues

Interactions Between the REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM and Other Organ Systems

← indicates ways in which this system affects other systems
→ indicates ways in which other systems affect this one

Integumentary System

- ← At puberty, androgens stimulate development of body hair and apocrine glands and increased sebaceous secretion; estrogens stimulate fat deposition and breast development in females; pregnancy may cause pigmentation changes and stretch marks
- → Sensory stimulation of skin important to sexual arousal; mammary glands nourish infant

Skeletal System

- ← Androgens and estrogens stimulate adolescent skeletal growth; estrogens maintain bone mass in females
- → Encloses and protects pelvic organs; provides minerals for fetal growth and lactation; narrow pelvic outlet makes childbirth difficult

Muscular System

- ← Gonadal steroids stimulate muscle growth
- → Muscles of pelvic floor support reproductive organs, aid erection of penis and clitoris, and function in orgasm; abdominal muscles aid in childbirth; cremaster muscle helps maintain temperature of testes

Nervous System

- ← Androgens stimulate libido; hormones from gonads and placenta exert negative feedback control on hypothalamus
- → Hypothalamus initiates gonadotropin function and lactation

Endocrine System

- ← Gonads and placenta are part of endocrine system and exert feedback control on anterior pituitary
- → Hormones regulate puberty, gametogenesis, libido, pregnancy, lactation, and climacteric

Circulatory System

- ← Androgens stimulate erythropoiesis; estrogens may inhibit development of atherosclerosis in females; pregnancy increases blood volume and cardiac output and sometimes causes varicose veins
- → Changes in blood flow produce vasocongestion and erection in sexual arousal; blood distributes sex hormones, transports nutrients to fetus, and removes fetal wastes; pampiniform plexus prevents overheating of testes

Lymphatic/Immune Systems

- ← Blood-testis barrier isolates sperm and protects them from immune system
- → Testes, scrotum, and breasts have extensive lymphatic drainage; immune cells protect reproductive organs; IgA in colostrum and breast milk confers passive immunity on neonate

Respiratory System

- ← Sexual arousal increases pulmonary ventilation; pregnancy reduces depth of inspiration but increases respiratory rate
- → Provides O_2, removes CO_2; Valsalva maneuver aids childbirth

Urinary System

- ← Sexual arousal constricts internal urinary sphincter; prostatic hyperplasia may impede urine flow; pregnancy crowds urinary bladder and often causes incontinence
- → Disposes of wastes, maintains electrolyte and pH balance of mother and fetus; urethra serves as passageway for semen

Digestive System

- ← Fetus crowds digestive organs, thus contributing to heartburn and constipation
- → Provides nutrients for gametogenesis and fetal development

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

Reproductive Anatomy (p. 1050)

1. In the female fetus, the absence of testosterone and müllerian inhibiting factor results in the paramesonephric duct developing into the uterine tubes, uterus, and vagina and the external genitalia developing into a clitoris, labia minora, and labia majora.
2. The ovary has a central *medulla,* a surface layer of parenchyma called the *cortex,* and an outer fibrous capsule, the *tunica albuginea.* The ovary is supported by three ligaments and supplied by an ovarian artery, ovarian veins, and ovarian nerves.
3. Each egg develops in its own bubblelike *follicle.* Follicles are located primarily in the cortex.
4. The uterine (fallopian) tube is a ciliated duct that extends from the ovary to the uterus.
5. The uterus is a thick muscular chamber superior to the urinary bladder. It consists of an upper *fundus,* middle *corpus* (body), and lower *cervix* (neck), where it meets the vagina.
6. The uterine wall consists of an outer serosa called the *perimetrium,* a thick muscular *myometrium,* and an inner mucosa called the *endometrium.* The endometrium contains numerous tubular glands and is divided into two layers—a thick superficial *stratum functionalis,* which is shed in each menstrual period, and a thinner basal *stratum basalis,* which is retained from cycle to cycle.
7. The uterus is anchored by four pairs of ligaments and supplied with blood by a *uterine artery* that arises from each internal iliac artery.
8. The *vagina* tilts dorsally between the urethra and rectum. It has no glands but is moistened by transudation of serous fluid through the vaginal wall and by mucus from glands in the cervical canal.
9. The *vulva* (*pudendum* or *external genitalia*) include the *mons pubis, labia majora* and *minora, clitoris,* vaginal orifice, accessory glands (*greater* and *lesser vestibular glands* and *paraurethral glands*) and erectile tissues *(vestibular bulbs).* The urethra also opens into the vulva.
10. The breast is internally divided into lobes, each with a *lactiferous duct* that conveys milk to the nipple. Outside of pregnancy or lactation, the breast contains only small traces of mammary gland.
11. Breast cancer strikes a high percentage of women. Two breast cancer genes are known, although most cases are nonhereditary and have no association with identifiable risk factors.

Puberty and Menopause (p. 1058)

1. In the United States and Europe, female puberty typically begins around age 9 or 10. Rising GnRH levels trigger the secretion of FSH and LH. In response to FSH, the ovaries secrete estrogens, progesterone, inhibin, and androgens.
2. The earliest visible sign of puberty is breast development, or *thelarche,* which is stimulated by estrogen, progesterone, prolactin, glucocorticoids, and growth hormone.
3. *Pubarche* is the development of pubic and axillary hair, sebaceous glands, and axillary sweat glands. Androgens induce pubarche and activate the female libido.
4. *Menarche* is a girl's first menstrual period, occurring at an average age of 12 in the United States and Europe. The first few menstrual cycles are usually anovulatory; ovulation becomes regular about a year after menarche.
5. The estradiol of puberty induces development of the ovaries and secondary sex organs, has feminizing effects on the external anatomy, and stimulates bone growth. Progesterone acts primarily on the uterus, and inhibin modulates FSH secretion.
6. With age, the number of ovarian follicles declines and with it, the source of estrogen and progesterone. The decline in levels of steroids brings on a transitional period of *climacteric,* lasting a few years and marked by *menopause,* the eventual cessation of ovulation and menstruation.

Oogenesis and the Sexual Cycle (p. 1061)

1. The *sexual cycle* is the monthly cycle of events that occurs when a woman is not pregnant. It includes the *ovarian cycle* of events in the ovaries and the *menstrual cycle* of events in the uterus.
2. *Oogenesis* is the production of eggs. Unlike spermatogenesis, it occurs in a monthly rhythm and usually produces only one gamete (egg) per month.
3. Oogenesis begins with *oogonia,* which multiply until the fifth month of a girl's fetal development. Some of these develop into *primary oocytes* and begin meiosis I before birth. Most primary oocytes undergo *atresia* during childhood, leaving about 400,000 at puberty.
4. Surviving primary oocytes undergo meiosis I to produce a small *first polar body,* which dies, and a *secondary oocyte.* The secondary oocyte progresses only as far as metaphase II if it is not fertilized. If fertilized, it completes meiosis II, producing a *second polar body,* which also dies, and an ovum that goes on to become the zygote.
5. The ovarian cycle, occurring in the absence of pregnancy, typically lasts about 28 days, with day 1 considered to be the first day of visible menstruation.
6. The *follicular phase* of the cycle is divided into the *menstrual phase* (days 1–5 of the typical cycle) and *preovulatory phase* (days 6–14). It includes shedding of the endometrial stratum functionalis (menstruation), mitotic regrowth of endometrium, and follicular development. Under the influence of FSH, the follicles

progress from *primordial follicles* to *primary follicles* to *secondary (antral) follicles,* and finally, usually a single *mature (graafian) follicle.*

7. *Ovulation* is the release of an egg by the bursting of the mature follicle. It occurs on day 14 of the typical cycle and takes 2–3 minutes. It is triggered primarily by a surge in LH secretion.
8. The *postovulatory phase* is divided into the *luteal phase* (days 15–26) and *premenstrual phase* (days 27–28). The luteal phase is marked by transformation of the mature follicle into a *corpus luteum,* which secretes progesterone; by thickening of the endometrium; and eventually by atrophy, or *involution,* of the corpus luteum. The premenstrual phase is marked by ischemia and necrosis of the stratum functionalis.
9. The menstrual cycle is divided into proliferative, secretory, premenstrual, and menstrual phases.
10. The *proliferative phase* (days 6–14) is a period of rebuilding the lost stratum functionalis by mitosis under the influence of estrogen from the ovaries.
11. The *secretory phase* (days 15–26) is a period of thickening of the endometrium by secretion of mucus and glycogen under the influence of progesterone from the corpus luteum.
12. The *premenstrual phase* is a period triggered by involution of the corpus luteum and the resulting lack of progesterone. Spasms of the spiral arteries deprive the endometrium of blood flow, resulting in necrosis and sloughing off of the stratum functionalis. The *menstrual phase* begins when enough necrotic tissue and blood have accumulated to produce noticeable vaginal discharge of menstrual fluid.

Female Sexual Response (p. 1068)

1. Female sexual response occurs in stages similar to that of the male, with the following major differences: In the excitement phase, the labia majora and minora, the clitoris, and the breasts become vasocongested; secretions of the greater vestibular glands lubricate the vulva; and the vagina is moistened by vaginal transudate. The inner end of the vagina dilates and its lower end constricts to form a narrow passage, the *orgasmic platform.* The uterus rises from its forward-tilted position to a nearly vertical one (the *tenting effect*).
2. In orgasm, the paraurethral glands secrete into the vulva, the orgasmic platform of the vagina constricts repeatedly, and the cervix plunges into the vaginal canal (into the semen if present).
3. In resolution, the uterus returns to its forward tilt, the orgasmic platform relaxes, the breasts become less congested, and there may be an outbreak of perspiration. Unlike men, women lack a refractory period and may experience successive orgasms.

Pregnancy and Childbirth (p. 1070)

1. *Gestation* lasts an average of 266 days from conception to birth, but birth is predicted to occur about 280 days from the onset of the last menstrual period.
2. Fertilization occurs in the distal half of the uterine tube and the fertilized egg divides five or six times before reaching the uterus. All the products of fertilization—the embryo or fetus and the associated membranes—are called the *conceptus.*
3. The major hormones of pregnancy are human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG), estrogens, progesterone, and human chorionic somatomammotropin (HCS).
4. HCG stimulates the corpus luteum to grow and secrete estrogen and progesterone. Estrogen from the corpus luteum and later from the placenta stimulates tissue growth in the mother and fetus and softens joints of the mother's pelvic girdle in preparation for giving birth. Progesterone from the corpus luteum and placenta inhibits premature uterine contractions and stimulates the mitosis of uterine *decidual cells* that nourish the early conceptus. Estrogen and progesterone also promote mammary gland development and inhibit the secretion of FSH. HCS from the placenta mobilizes fatty acids as fuel for the mother while it spares glucose for use by the fetus.
5. Thyroid hormone, parathyroid hormone, glucocorticoids, aldosterone, and relaxin also contribute to the developments of pregnancy (table 28.2).
6. Morning sickness, constipation, and heartburn sometimes accompany pregnancy as steroid hormones inhibit intestinal motility and the growing uterus compresses the digestive organs. The basal metabolic rate rises and one may feel hot as a result. Nutrient intake must increase moderately to meet the needs of the fetus.
7. Blood volume and cardiac output increase in pregnancy. Pressure from the uterus may cause hemorrhoids or varicose veins.
8. Breathing becomes more rapid in pregnancy as O_2 demand and CO_2 sensitivity increase, yet pressure from the uterus indirectly compresses the lungs and makes breathing shallower.
9. Glomerular filtration and urine output increase to dispose of both fetal and maternal wastes, but the capacity of the bladder is reduced by pressure from the uterus.
10. The maternal skin grows, especially on the breasts and abdomen; dermal tearing may cause *striae;* and some women exhibit melanization of the skin on the abdomen *(linea nigra)* or face *(chloasma).*
11. In the seventh month, the fetus usually turns into the vertex (head-down) position.
12. Late in pregnancy, the uterus becomes more contractile, sometimes exhibiting *Braxton-Hicks contractions* weeks before the true *labor contractions* occur. A rising ratio of estrogen to progesterone may be responsible for this increased contractility late in pregnancy. True labor contractions are stimulated by uterine stretching and oxytocin (OT).
13. According to the positive feedback theory of labor, stretching of the cervix triggers reflex contraction of the uterine body, which pushes the fetus downward and stretches the cervix still more. Cervical stretching also activates a neuroendocrine reflex that results in OT secretion, and OT stimulates more and more intense uterine contractions. The voluntary abdominal muscles also aid in giving birth.
14. The *dilation (first) stage* of labor involves dilation of the cervical canal to a diameter of 10 cm and thinning *(effacement)* of the cervical tissue. The fetal membranes typically rupture and discharge the *amniotic fluid* during this stage.
15. The *expulsion (second) stage* begins when the baby's head enters the vagina and lasts until the baby is entirely discharged. An attendant

usually drains, clamps, and cuts the umbilical cord at the end of this stage.

16. The *placental (third) stage* is the discharge of the placenta, amnion, and other components of the *afterbirth.* The afterbirth is inspected to be sure it has all been discharged and that it shows no abnormalities.
17. The *puerperium* is a period of 6 weeks postpartum marked by *involution* of the uterus and the return of other maternal anatomy and physiology to the pregravid state.

Lactation (p. 1076)

1. During pregnancy, estrogen, growth hormone, insulin, glucocorticoids, and prolactin stimulate growth and branching of the ducts of the mammary glands. Progesterone then stimulates the development of secretory acini at the ends of the ducts.
2. For 1 to 3 days postpartum, the mammary glands secrete a fluid called *colostrum* rather than milk. Colostrum is higher than milk in protein but lower in fat and lactose. It contains immunoglobulins that give the neonate some immunity to infection.
3. Prolactin is secreted during pregnancy but cannot stimulate milk synthesis until after the placenta is shed. The mammary glands begin releasing milk about 2 or 3 days postpartum.
4. The nursing infant stimulates neuroendocrine reflexes in which the pituitary gland secretes oxytocin and prolactin. Oxytocin triggers contraction of myoepithelial cells of the acini, making milk flow down the lactiferous ducts to the nipple. Prolactin stimulates synthesis of the milk that will be used for the next feeding.
5. Breast milk changes composition over the first two weeks and varies at different times of day and over the course of a single feeding. Most lactose and protein are delivered to the infant at the beginning of a feeding, and most fat at the end.
6. A woman nursing one infant eventually produces about 1.5 L of milk per day at a cost of 50 g of fat, 100 g of lactose, and 2 or 3 g of calcium phosphate. Her diet must compensate for these demands.

Selected Vocabulary

follicle 1050
uterine tube 1050
cervix of uterus 1053
endometrium 1053
vulva 1055
menarche 1060
menopause 1060
oogenesis 1061
zona pellucida 1064
corona radiata 1064
mature (graafian) follicle 1064
ovulation 1065
corpus luteum 1066
gestation 1070
human chorionic gonadotropin 1070
dilation 1074
effacement 1074
involution 1075
lactation 1076
colostrum 1077

Testing Your Recall

1. Of the following organs, the one(s) most comparable to the penis is (are)
   a. the clitoris.
   b. the vagina.
   c. the vestibular bulbs.
   d. the labia minora.
   e. the prepuce.
2. The ovaries secrete all of the following *except*
   a. estrogens.
   b. progesterone.
   c. androgens.
   d. follicle-stimulating hormone.
   e. inhibin.
3. The first haploid stage in oogenesis is
   a. the oogonium.
   b. the primary oocyte.
   c. the secondary oocyte.
   d. the second polar body.
   e. the zygote.
4. FSH secretion begins to rise and new follicles begin to grow during
   a. the premenstrual phase.
   b. the menstrual phase.
   c. the preovulatory phase.
   d. the luteal phase.
   e. the plateau phase.
5. The hormone that most directly influences the secretory phase of the menstrual cycle is
   a. HCG.
   b. FSH.
   c. LH.
   d. estrogen.
   e. progesterone.
6. The ischemic phase of the uterus results from
   a. rising progesterone levels.
   b. falling progesterone levels.
   c. stimulation by oxytocin.
   d. stimulation by prostaglandins.
   e. stimulation by estrogens.
7. Before secreting milk, the mammary glands secrete
   a. prolactin.
   b. colostrum.
   c. lochia.
   d. meconium.
   e. chloasma.
8. Few women become pregnant while nursing because ______ inhibits GnRH secretion.
   a. FSH
   b. prolactin
   c. prostaglandins
   d. oxytocin
   e. HCG
9. Smooth muscle cells of the myometrium and myoepithelial cells of the mammary glands are the target cells for
   a. prostaglandins.
   b. LH.
   c. oxytocin.
   d. progesterone.
   e. FSH.

10. Which of these is *not* true of the luteal phase of the sexual cycle?
    a. Progesterone level is high.
    b. The endometrium stores glycogen.
    c. Ovulation occurs.
    d. Fertilization may occur.
    e. The endometrial glands enlarge.

11. Each egg cell develops in its own fluid-filled space called a/an ______.

12. The mucosa of the uterus is called ______.

13. A girl's first menstrual period is called ______.

14. A yellowish structure called the ______ secretes progesterone during the secretory phase of the sexual cycle.

15. The first layer of cells around a mature secondary oocyte is the ______.

16. A secondary follicle differs from a primary follicle in having a cavity called the ______.

17. Menopause occurs during a midlife period of changing hormone secretion called ______.

18. All the products of fertilization, including the embryo or fetus, the placenta, and the embryonic membranes, are collectively called the ______.

19. The funnel-like distal end of the uterine tube is called the ______ and has feathery processes called ______.

20. Postpartum uterine involution produces a vaginal discharge called ______.

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. After ovulation, a follicle begins to move down the uterine tube to the uterus.
2. Human chorionic gonadotropin is secreted by the granulosa cells of the follicle.
3. An oocyte never completes meiosis II unless it is fertilized.
4. A slim girl who is active in dance and gymnastics is likely to begin menstruating at a later age than an overweight inactive girl.
5. There are more future egg cells in the ovary at puberty than there are at birth.
6. Women do not lactate while they are pregnant because prolactin is not secreted until after birth.
7. Colostrum contains more protein than milk, but less fat.
8. Several follicles develop in each ovarian cycle even though only one of them usually ovulates.
9. Progesterone inhibits uterine contractions.
10. The entire endometrium is shed in each menstrual period.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. Would you expect puberty to create a state of positive or negative nitrogen balance? Explain. (See chapter 26 for nitrogen balance.)
2. Aspirin and ibuprofen can inhibit the onset of labor and are sometimes used to prevent premature birth. Review your knowledge of these drugs and the mechanism of labor, and explain this effect.
3. At 6 months postpartum, a nursing mother is in an automobile accident that fractures her skull and severs the hypophyseal portal vessels. How would you expect this to affect her milk production? How would you expect it to affect her future ovarian cycles? Explain the difference.
4. If the ovaries are removed in the first 6 weeks of pregnancy, the embryo will be aborted. If they are removed later in pregnancy, the pregnancy can go to a normal full term. Explain the difference.
5. A breast-feeding woman leaves her baby at home and goes shopping. There, she hears another woman's baby crying and notices her blouse becoming wet with a little exuded milk. Explain the physiological link between hearing that sound and the ejection of milk.

Answers at the Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Legend Questions

28.5 Malignant cells have a higher ratio of nuclear to cytoplasmic volume.

28.8 The paraurethral glands

28.11 This results in a clearer image since the X rays do not have to penetrate such a thick mass of tissue.

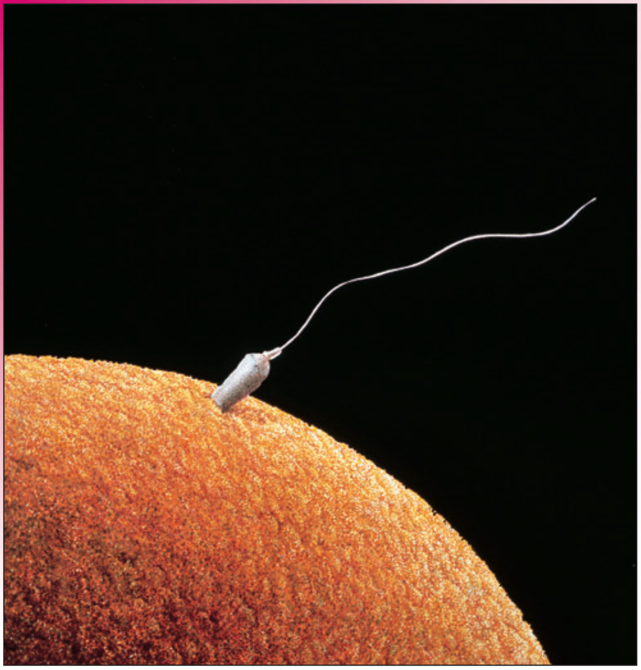
28.18 The rising ratio of estrogen to progesterone makes the uterus more irritable.

28.23 The myoepithelial cells

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.

CHAPTER 29



Boy meets girl: the union of sperm and egg (SEM)

Human Development

CHAPTER OUTLINE

Fertilization and Preembryonic Development 1090
- Sperm Migration 1090
- Capacitation 1090
- Fertilization 1090
- Meiosis II 1091
- The Preembryonic Stage 1091

Embryonic and Fetal Development 1094
- Prenatal Nutrition 1095
- Embryonic Membranes 1097
- Organogenesis 1098
- Fetal Development 1099

The Neonate 1101
- The Transitional Period 1101
- Circulatory Adaptations 1103
- Respiratory Adaptations 1103
- Immunological Adaptations 1103
- Other Adaptations 1103
- Premature Infants 1103
- Congenital Anomalies 1104

Aging and Senescence 1107
- Senescence of the Organ Systems 1108
- Exercise and Senescence 1112
- Theories of Senescence 1113
- Death 1114

Chapter Review 1117

INSIGHTS

29.1 Clinical Application: Twins 1092
29.2 Clinical Application: Ectopic Pregnancy 1094
29.3 Clinical Application: Neonatal Assessment 1103
29.4 Clinical Application: Reproductive Technology—Making Babies in the Laboratory 1115

Brushing Up

To understand this chapter, it is important that you understand or brush up on the following concepts:

- Structure of the spermatozoon (p. 1035)
- Anatomy and histology of the uterus (pp. 1052–1054)
- Stages of oogenesis (p. 1061)
- Structure of a mature ovarian follicle (p. 1064)

Perhaps the most dramatic, seemingly miraculous aspect of human life is the transformation of a one-celled fertilized egg into an independent, fully developed individual. From the beginning of recorded thought, people have pondered how a baby forms in the mother's body and how two parents can produce another human being who, although unique, possesses characteristics of each. Aristotle dissected the embryos of various birds, established their sequence of organ development, and speculated that the hereditary traits of a child resulted from the mixing of the male's semen with the female's menstrual blood. The human egg was first observed and the modern science of **developmental biology** was born in the nineteenth century. In its broad sense, developmental biology embraces the scientific study of changes in form and function from fertilized egg through old age—which is the scope of this chapter.

Fertilization and Preembryonic Development

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the process of sperm migration and fertilization;
- explain how an egg prevents fertilization by more than one sperm;
- describe the major events that transform a fertilized egg into an embryo; and
- describe the implantation of the preembryo in the uterine wall.

Sperm Migration

If it is to survive, an egg must be fertilized within 12 to 24 hours of ovulation, yet it takes about 72 hours for an egg to reach the uterus. Therefore, in order to fertilize the egg before it dies, sperm must encounter it somewhere in the distal one-third of the uterine tube. The vast majority of sperm never make it that far. Many are destroyed by vaginal acid or drain out of the vagina. Others fail to penetrate the mucus of the cervical canal, and those that do are often destroyed by leukocytes in the uterus. Half of the remainder are likely to go up the wrong uterine tube. Finally, 2,000 to 3,000 spermatozoa reach the vicinity of the egg—not many of the 300 million that were ejaculated.

Spermatozoa migrate mainly by means of the snakelike lashing of their tails as they crawl along the female mucosa, but they are assisted by certain aspects of female physiology. Strands of mucus guide them through the cervical canal. Although female orgasm is not required for fertilization, orgasm does involve uterine contractions that may suck semen from the vagina and spread it throughout the uterus, like hand lotion pressed between your palms. The egg itself may release a chemical that attracts sperm from a short distance; this has been demonstrated for some animals but remains unproven for humans.

Capacitation

Spermatozoa can reach the distal uterine tube within 5 to 10 minutes of ejaculation, but they cannot fertilize an egg for about 10 hours. While migrating, they undergo a process of **capacitation** that makes it possible to penetrate an egg. Prior to ejaculation, the membrane of the sperm head contains a substantial amount of cholesterol, which toughens it and prevents premature release of the acrosomal enzymes. This avoids wastage of sperm and enzymatic damage to the spermatic ducts. After ejaculation, however, fluids of the female reproductive tract wash away cholesterol and other inhibitory factors in the semen. The membrane of the sperm head becomes more fragile and more permeable to calcium ions, which diffuse into the sperm and cause more powerful lashing of the tail.

Most sperm are fertile for a maximum of 48 hours after ejaculation, so there is little chance of fertilizing an egg if intercourse occurs more than 48 hours before ovulation. Fertilization also is unlikely if intercourse takes place more than 14 hours after ovulation because the egg would no longer be viable by the time the sperm became capacitated. For those wishing to conceive a child, the optimal "window of opportunity" is therefore 48 hours before ovulation to 14 hours after. Those wishing to avoid pregnancy, however, should allow a wider margin of safety for variations in sperm and egg longevity, capacitation time, and time of ovulation.

Fertilization

When the sperm encounters an egg, it undergoes an **acrosomal reaction**—exocytosis of the acrosome, releasing the enzymes needed to penetrate the egg. But the first sperm to reach an egg is not the one to fertilize it. Sperm must first penetrate the granulosa cells and zona pellucida that surround it (fig. 29.1). It may require hundreds of sperm to clear a path for the one that penetrates the egg proper.

Two of the acrosomal enzymes are **hyaluronidase,** which digests the hyaluronic acid that binds granulosa cells together, and **acrosin,** a protease similar to the trypsin of pancreatic juice. When a path has been cleared, a sperm binds to the zona pellucida and releases its enzymes, digesting a pathway through the zona until it contacts the egg itself. The sperm head and midpiece enter the egg, but the egg destroys the sperm mitochondria and passes only maternal mitochondria on to the offspring.

Fertilization combines the haploid (n) set of sperm chromosomes with the haploid set of egg chromosomes and produces a diploid ($2n$) set. Fertilization by two or more sperm, called **polyspermy,** would produce a triploid ($3n$) or larger set of chromosomes and the egg would die. The egg has two mechanisms for preventing this: a fast block and slow block to polyspermy. In the **fast block,** binding of the sperm to the egg opens Na^+ channels in the egg membrane. The rapid inflow of Na^+ depolarizes the

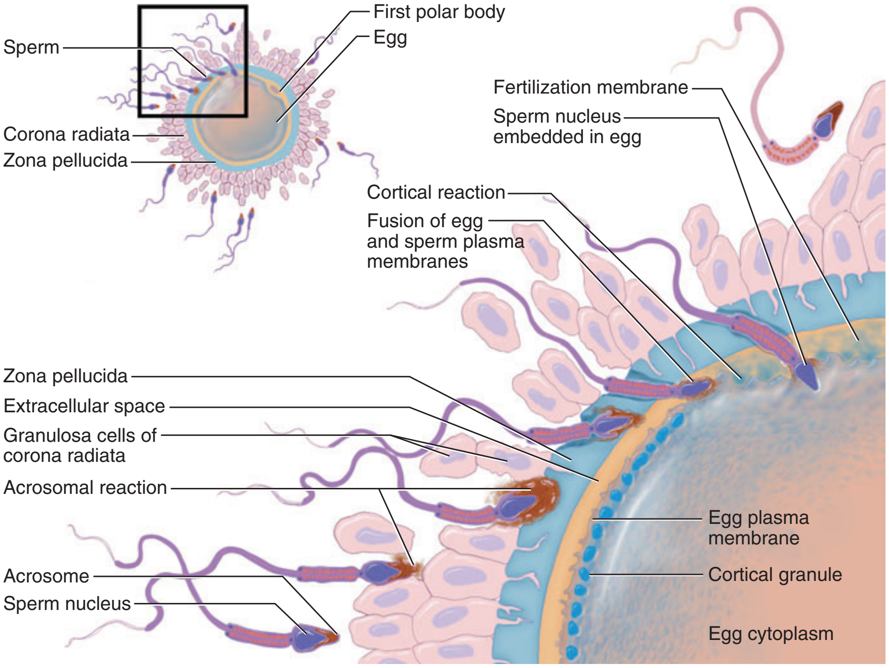

Sperm
Corona radiata
Zona pellucida
First polar body
Egg
Fertilization membrane
Sperm nucleus embedded in egg
Cortical reaction
Fusion of egg and sperm plasma membranes
Zona pellucida
Extracellular space
Granulosa cells of corona radiata
Acrosomal reaction
Acrosome
Sperm nucleus
Egg plasma membrane
Cortical granule
Egg cytoplasm

Figure 29.1 **Fertilization and the Slow Block to Polyspermy.**

membrane and inhibits the binding of any more sperm to it. The **slow block** involves secretory vesicles called **cortical granules** just beneath the membrane. Sperm penetration triggers an inflow of Ca^{2+}; this, in turn, triggers a **cortical reaction** in which the cortical granules release their secretion beneath the zona pellucida. The secretion swells with water, pushes any remaining sperm away from the egg, and creates an impenetrable **fertilization membrane.**

Think About It

What similarity can you see between the slow block to polyspermy and the release of acetylcholine from synaptic vesicles of a neuron? (Compare p. 465.)

Meiosis II

A secondary oocyte begins meiosis II before ovulation and completes it only if fertilized. Through the formation of a second polar body, the fertilized egg discards one chromatid from each chromosome. The sperm and egg nuclei then swell and become **pronuclei.** A mitotic spindle forms between them, each pronucleus ruptures, and the chromosomes of the two gametes mix into a single diploid set (fig. 29.2). The fertilized egg, now called a **zygote,** is ready for its first mitotic division.

The Preembryonic Stage

The **preembryonic stage** consists of the first 2 weeks of development and culminates in the existence of an embryo. It involves three major processes: cleavage, implantation, and embryogenesis.

Cleavage

Cleavage refers to mitotic divisions that occur in the first 3 days. The first cleavage occurs about 30 hours after fertilization and produces the first two daughter cells, or **blastomeres.**[1] These divide simultaneously at shorter and shorter time intervals, doubling the number of blastomeres each time. By the time the conceptus arrives in the uterus, about 72 hours after ovulation, it consists of 16 or more cells and somewhat resembles a mulberry—hence it is called a **morula.**[2] The morula is no larger than the zygote; cleavage merely produces smaller and smaller blastomeres. This increases the ratio of cell surface area to volume, which favors rapid nutrient uptake and waste removal, and it produces a larger number of cells from which to form different embryonic tissues.

---

[1] *blast* = bud, precursor + *mer* = segment, part
[2] *mor* = mulberry + *ula* = little

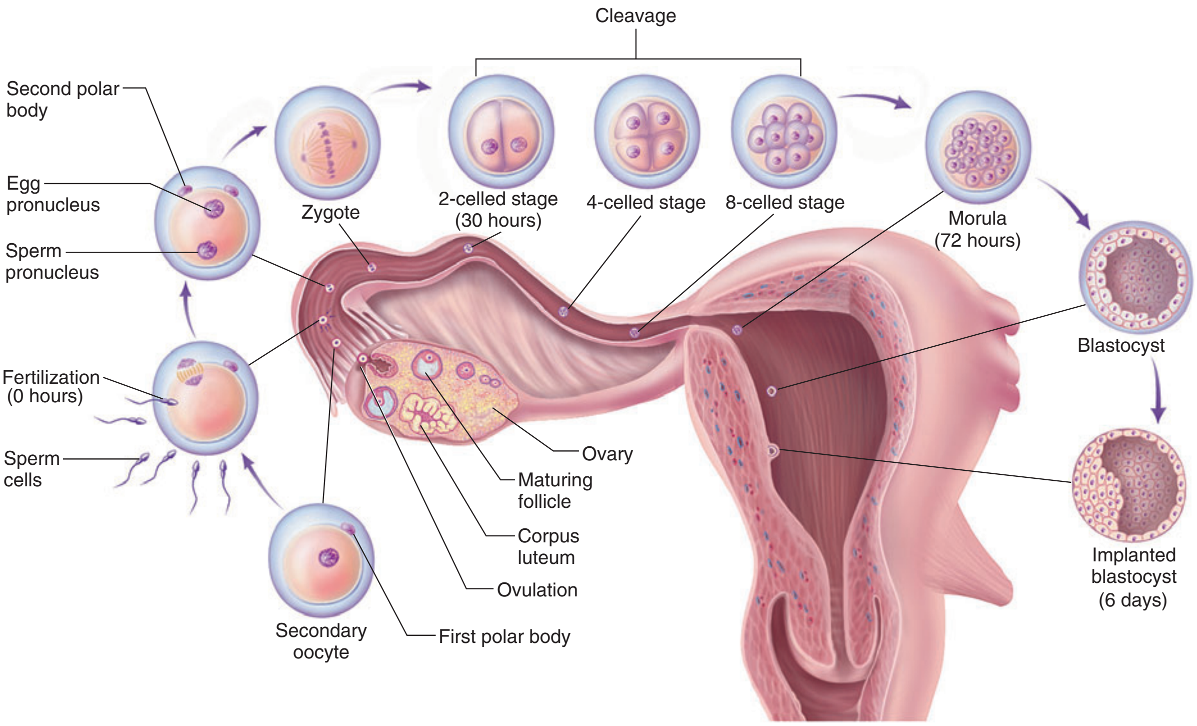

Cleavage
Second polar body
Egg pronucleus
Sperm pronucleus
Zygote
2-celled stage (30 hours)
4-celled stage
8-celled stage
Morula (72 hours)
Blastocyst
Fertilization (0 hours)
Sperm cells
Ovary
Maturing follicle
Corpus luteum
Ovulation
Implanted blastocyst (6 days)
Secondary oocyte
First polar body

Figure 29.2 Events from Ovulation to Implantation. These processes occur during the first week after ovulation, approximately at the locations indicated in the female reproductive tract.
Why can't the egg be fertilized in the uterus?

Insight 29.1 Clinical Application

Twins

There are two ways in which a woman can produce twins (and, by extension, other multiple births). *Dizygotic (DZ) twins* are produced when two eggs are ovulated and fertilized by separate sperm (fig. 29.3). They are no more or less genetically similar than any other siblings and may be of different sexes. Multiple ovulation can also result in triplets, quadruplets, or even greater numbers of offspring.

Monozygotic (MZ) twins are produced when a single egg is fertilized and the cell mass (embryoblast) later divides into two. MZ twins are genetically identical, or nearly so, and are therefore of the same sex and nearly identical appearance. Identical triplets and quadruplets occasionally result from the splitting of a single embryoblast. Reproductive biologists are beginning to question whether MZ siblings are truly genetically identical. They have suggested that one blastomere may undergo a mutation in the course of DNA replication, and the splitting of the embryoblast may represent an attempt of each cell mass to reject the other one as foreign.

Figure 29.3 Dizygotic Twin Sisters, Kelly and Ellen.

The morula lies free in the uterine cavity for 4 to 5 days and divides into 100 cells or so. During this time, it is nourished by nutrients that were stored in the egg cytoplasm during oogenesis and by an endometrial secretion called **uterine milk,** which accumulates in a cavity in the morula. Meanwhile, the zona pellucida disintegrates and releases the conceptus, which is now at a stage called the **blastocyst**—a hollow sphere with an outer layer of squamous cells called the **trophoblast**[3] and an inner cell mass called the **embryoblast.** The trophoblast is destined to form part of the placenta and play an important role in nourishment of the embryo, whereas the embryoblast is destined to become the embryo itself.

Implantation

About 6 days after ovulation, the blastocyst attaches to the endometrium, usually on the posterior wall of the fundus or body of the uterus (see insight 29.2 for exceptions). This is the beginning of **implantation,** a process in which the conceptus becomes buried in the endometrium (fig. 29.4). The trophoblast cells adjacent to the embryoblast secrete enzymes that stimulate thickening of the endometrium and they separate into two layers. The deep layer is called the **cytotrophoblast** because it retains individual cells divided by membranes. In the superficial layer, however, the plasma membranes break down and the cells fuse into a multinucleate mass called the **syncytiotrophoblast**[4] (sin-SISH-ee-oh-TRO-foe-blast). (A syncytium is any body of protoplasm containing multiple nuclei.)

The syncytiotrophoblast grows into the uterus like little roots and digests endometrial cells along the way (fig. 29.4*b*). The endometrium reacts to this injury by growing over the trophoblast and eventually enclosing it. Implantation takes about a week and is completed about the time the next menstrual period would have occurred if the woman had not become pregnant.

The trophoblast also secretes human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG). HCG stimulates the corpus luteum to secrete estrogen and progesterone, and progesterone suppresses menstruation. The level of HCG in the mother's blood rises until the end of the second month. During this time, the trophoblast develops into a membrane called the *chorion,* which takes over the role of the corpus luteum and makes HCG unnecessary. The ovaries then become inactive for the rest of the pregnancy, but estrogen and progesterone levels rise dramatically as they are secreted by the ever-growing chorion (see fig. 28.18, p. 1070).

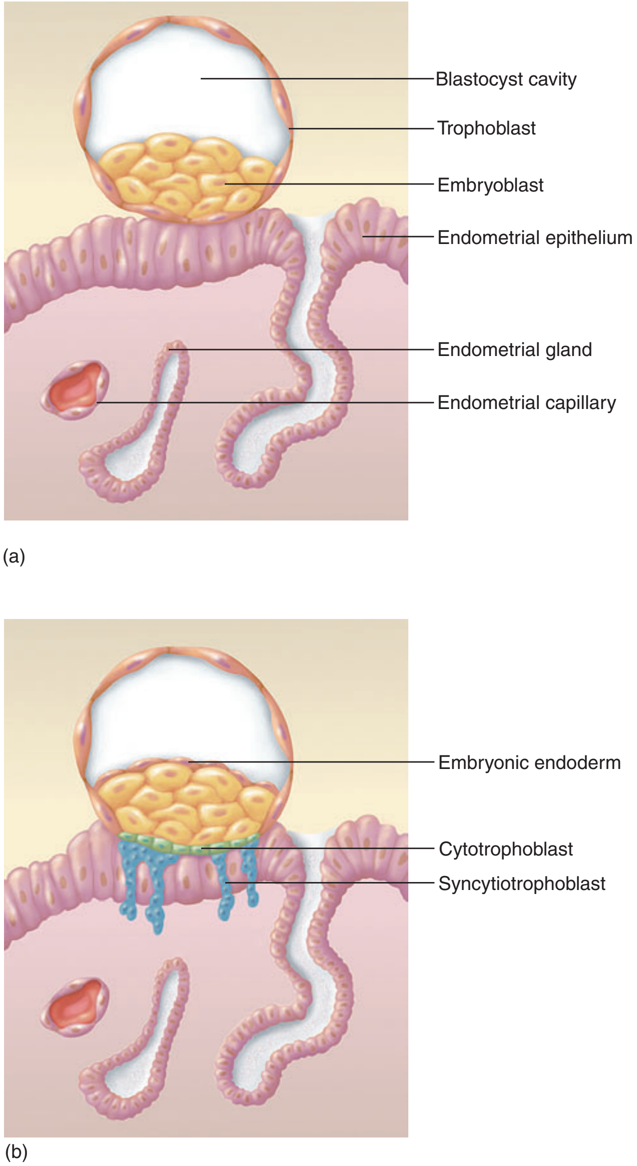


Figure 29.4 Implantation. *(a)* Structure of the blastocyst about 6 to 7 days after ovulation. *(b)* The progress of implantation about 1 day later; the syncytiotrophoblast has begun growing rootlets, which penetrate the endometrium.

Embryogenesis

During implantation, the embryoblast undergoes **embryogenesis**—arrangement of the blastomeres into the three primary germ layers: ectoderm, mesoderm, and endoderm. Embryogenesis begins with the formation of a narrow space called the **amniotic cavity** between the embryoblast

---

[3] *troph* = food, nourishment + *blast* = produce, give rise to
[4] *syn* = together + *cyt* = cell

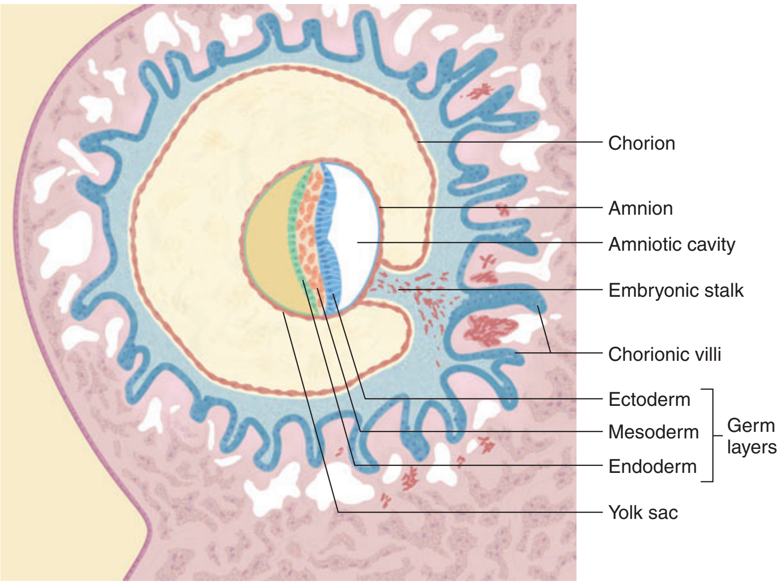


Figure 29.5 **The Implanted Conceptus at 2 Weeks.** The primary germ layers and extraembryonic membranes have formed, and the conceptus is now an embryo.

and cytotrophoblast (fig. 29.5). The embryoblast flattens into an **embryonic disc** composed of ectoderm and endoderm. As the disc elongates, a raised groove called the **primitive streak** forms along the midline of the ectoderm. Cells on the surface migrate medially toward this groove, down into it, and then laterally between the ectoderm and endoderm. This forms the middle germ layer, the mesoderm (fig. 29.6). The ectoderm and endoderm are epithelia composed of tightly joined cells, but the mesoderm is a more loosely organized, gelatinous connective tissue called **mesenchyme.** Its cells are more mobile and wispy than those of the ectoderm and endoderm. At the conclusion of embryogenesis, the individual is an **embryo,** about 2 mm long and 2 weeks old.

Insight 29.2 Clinical Application

Ectopic Pregnancy

In about 1 out of 300 pregnancies, the blastocyst implants somewhere other than the uterus and produces an *ectopic*[5] *pregnancy.* Most cases begin as *tubal pregnancies,* in which the blastocyst implants in the uterine tube. This usually occurs because it has encountered an obstruction such as a constriction resulting from earlier pelvic inflammatory disease, tubal surgery, previous ectopic pregnancies, or repeated abortions. The uterine tube cannot expand enough to accommodate the growing conceptus for long; if the situation is not detected and treated early, the tube usually ruptures within 12 weeks. This can be fatal to the mother. If she survives, the conceptus may reimplant in the abdominopelvic cavity and produce an *abdominal pregnancy.* About 1 pregnancy in 7,000 is abdominal. The conceptus can grow anywhere it finds an adequate blood supply—for example, on the broad ligament or the outside of the uterus, colon, or bladder. This is a serious threat to the mother's life and usually requires abortion, but about 9% of abdominal pregnancies result in live birth by cesarian section.

---

[5] *ec* = outside + *top* = place

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

1. How soon can a sperm reach an egg after ejaculation? How soon can it fertilize an egg? What accounts for the difference?
2. Describe two ways a fertilized egg prevents the entry of excess sperm.
3. In the blastocyst, what are the cells called that eventually give rise to the embryo? What are the cells that carry out implantation?
4. What major characteristic distinguishes an embryo from a preembryo?

Embryonic and Fetal Development

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe the formation and functions of the placenta;
- explain how the conceptus is nourished before the placenta takes over this function;

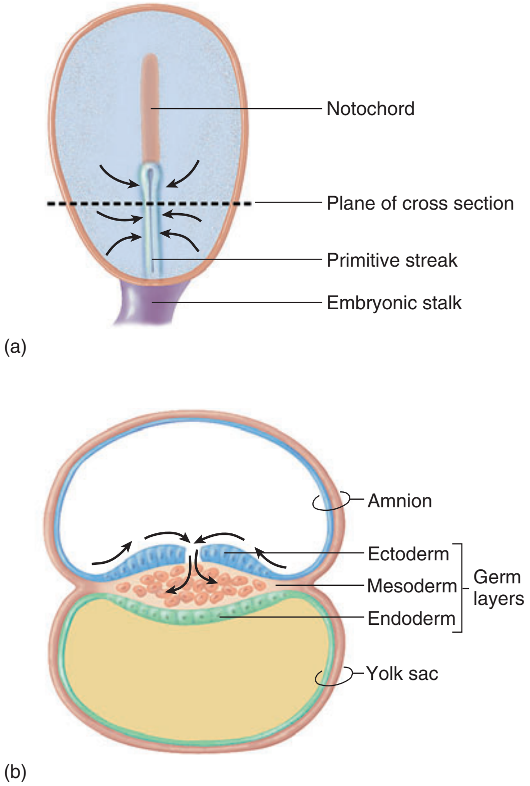


Figure 29.6 **Formation of the Primary Germ Layers.** *(a)* Dorsal view of the embryonic disc at 16 days. Arrows represent the migration of ectodermal cells into the primitive streak. *(b)* Cross section of the embryonic disc at the level indicated in *a,* showing ectodermal cells entering the primitive streak and forming the mesodermal layer.

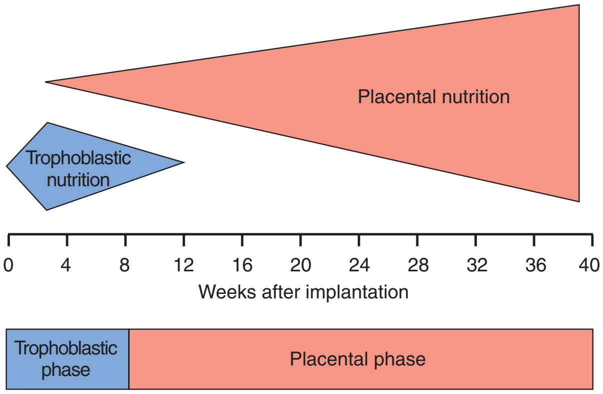


Figure 29.7 **The Timetable of Trophoblastic and Placental Nutrition.** Trophoblastic nutrition peaks at 2 weeks and ends by 12 weeks. Placental nutrition begins at 2 weeks and becomes increasingly important until birth, 39 weeks after implantation.

At what point do the two modes contribute equally to prenatal nutrition?

- describe the embryonic membranes and their functions;
- identify the major tissues derived from the primary germ layers;
- describe the major events of fetal development; and
- describe the fetal circulatory system.

Two weeks after conception, all three germ layers are present and the embryonic stage of development begins. Over the next 6 weeks, the conceptus forms a set of membranes external to the embryo, the embryo begins receiving its nutrition primarily from the placenta, and the germ layers differentiate into organs and organ systems. Although these organs are still far from functional, it is their presence at 8 weeks that marks the transition from the embryonic stage to the fetal stage.

Prenatal Nutrition

One of the important changes to occur in the embryonic phase is the mode of nutrition. In **trophoblastic (deciduous) nutrition,** the conceptus is nourished by digesting endometrial tissue. Progesterone stimulates the development of **decidual**[6] **cells,** which are rich in glycogen, proteins, and lipids. The trophoblast digests these cells and the embryoblast imbibes the resulting nutritious fluid. This is gradually followed by **placental nutrition,** in which the conceptus is nourished by the mother's bloodstream. Nutrients diffuse from her blood through the **placenta,**[7] a vascular organ that develops on the uterine wall. Figure 29.7 shows the time course of the transition from trophoblastic to placental nutrition. Trophoblastic nutrition is the only means of nutrition for the first week after implantation. The placenta begins to develop about 11 days after conception, but trophoblastic nutrition remains dominant for 8 weeks, called the **trophoblastic phase** of the pregnancy. After that, the placenta provides most nutrition; the trophoblastic mode declines and, by 12 weeks, it ends. The **placental phase** of the pregnancy lasts from the beginning of week 9 until birth.

Placentation, the formation of the placenta, extends from 11 days through 12 weeks after conception. Most development occurs in the embryonic stage. It begins when extensions of the syncytiotrophoblast, called **chorionic villi,** penetrate more and more deeply into the endometrium, like the roots of a tree penetrating into the nourishing "soil" of the uterus (fig. 29.8). As they digest their way through uterine blood vessels, the villi become surrounded by pools of free blood that eventually merge to form the **placental sinus.** This maternal blood stimulates increasingly rapid growth of the chorionic villi. Mesenchyme grows into the villi and develops into blood vessels.

---

[6] *decid* = falling off
[7] *placenta* = flat cake

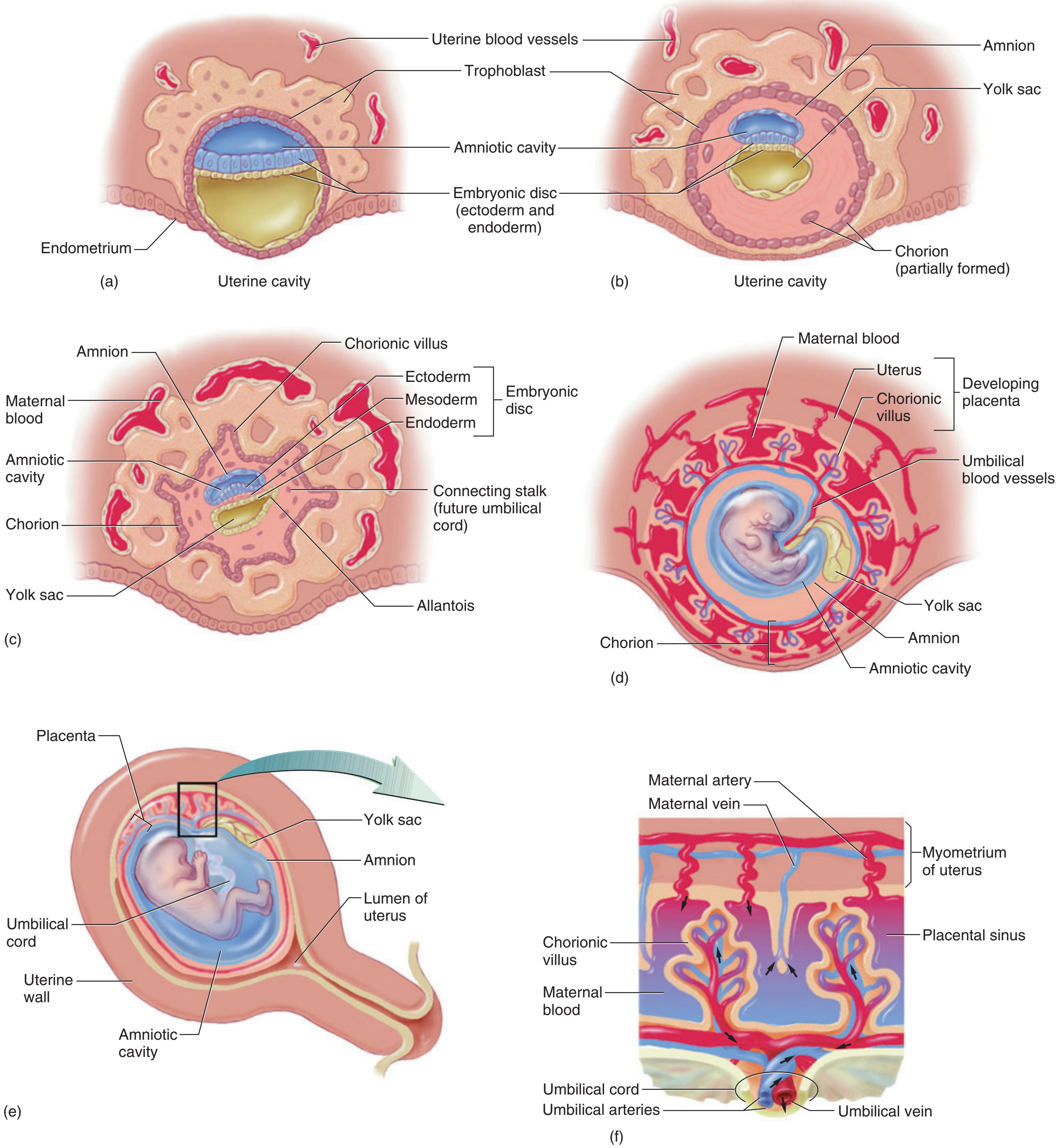

Uterine blood vessels
Trophoblast
Amniotic cavity
Embryonic disc (ectoderm and endoderm)
Endometrium
(a)
Uterine cavity
Amnion
Yolk sac
(b)
Uterine cavity
Chorion (partially formed)
Amnion
Chorionic villus
Maternal blood
Ectoderm
Mesoderm
Endoderm
Embryonic disc
Amniotic cavity
Connecting stalk (future umbilical cord)
Chorion
Yolk sac
Allantois
(c)
Maternal blood
Uterus
Chorionic villus
Developing placenta
Umbilical blood vessels
Yolk sac
Amnion
Chorion
Amniotic cavity
(d)
Placenta
Yolk sac
Amnion
Lumen of uterus
Umbilical cord
Uterine wall
Amniotic cavity
(e)
Maternal artery
Maternal vein
Myometrium of uterus
Chorionic villus
Placental sinus
Maternal blood
Umbilical cord
Umbilical arteries
Umbilical vein
(f)

Figure 29.8 **Development of the Placenta and Embryonic Membranes.** *(a)* Implantation nearly complete; an amniotic cavity has formed within the embryonic disc, lined by cells that will become the amnion. *(b)* Conceptus about 9 days after fertilization; embryonic disc cells have now formed the yolk sac. *(c)* Conceptus at 16 days; the allantois is beginning to form, and the chorion is forming from the trophoblast and embryonic mesoderm. *(d)* Embryo at 4.5 weeks, enclosed in the amnion and chorion. *(e)* Embryo at 13.5 weeks; placentation is complete. *(f)* A portion of the mature placenta and umbilical cord.

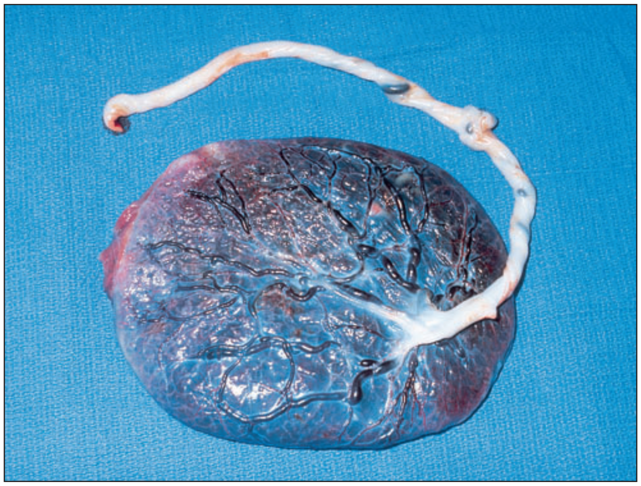


Figure 29.9 **The Placenta and Umbilical Cord.** Viewed from the fetal side.

The fully developed placenta is a disc of tissue about 20 cm in diameter and 3 cm thick. At term, it weighs about one-sixth as much as the baby. The surface facing the fetus is smooth and gives rise to the **umbilical cord** (fig. 29.9), which contains three blood vessels that connect the fetus to the placenta. The surface attached to the uterine wall is rougher. It consists of the chorionic villi contributed by the fetus and a region of the mother's endometrium called the *decidua basalis.* The chorionic villi are extensively branched treelike structures surrounded by the maternal blood in the placental sinus.

The fetal heart pumps blood to the placenta by way of two umbilical arteries. Fetal blood flows into the capillaries of the villi and then back to the fetus by way of a single umbilical vein. The villi are *filled with* fetal blood and *surrounded by* maternal blood; the two bloodstreams do not mix unless there is damage to the placental barrier. The barrier, however—the membrane covering the villi—is only 3.5 μm thick, about half the diameter of a single red blood cell. Early in development, the chorionic villi have thicker membranes that are not very permeable to nutrients and wastes, and their total surface area is relatively small. As the villi grow and branch, their surface area increases and the membranes become thinner and more permeable. Thus there is a dramatic increase in **placental conductivity,** the rate at which substances diffuse through the membrane. Oxygen and nutrients pass from the maternal blood to the fetal blood, while fetal wastes pass the other way to be eliminated by the mother.

Gases, electrolytes, fatty acids, and steroids pass through the membrane by simple diffusion, glucose by facilitated diffusion, amino acids by active transport, and insulin by receptor-mediated endocytosis. Unfortunately, the placenta is also permeable to nicotine, alcohol, and most other drugs in the maternal bloodstream. Nutrition, excretion, and other functions of the placenta are summarized in table 29.1.

Table 29.1 Functions of the Placenta

Nutritional roles	Transports nutrients such as glucose, amino acids, fatty acids, minerals, and vitamins from the maternal blood to the fetal blood; stores nutrients such as carbohydrates, protein, iron, and calcium in early pregnancy and releases them to the fetus later, when fetal demand is greater than the mother can absorb from the diet
Excretory roles	Transports nitrogenous wastes such as ammonia, urea, uric acid, and creatinine from the fetal blood to the maternal blood
Respiratory roles	Transports O_2 from mother to fetus and CO_2 from fetus to mother
Endocrine roles	Secretes estrogens, progesterone, relaxin, human chorionic gonadotropin, and human chorionic somatomammotropin; allows other hormones synthesized by the conceptus to pass into the mother's blood and maternal hormones to pass into the fetal blood
Immune role	Transports maternal antibodies (especially IgG) into fetal blood to confer passive immunity on fetus

Embryonic Membranes

The placenta and umbilical cord are not the only accessory organs of the conceptus. There are also four membranes—the *amnion, yolk sac, allantois,* and *chorion* (fig. 29.10). To understand these, it helps to realize that all mammals evolved from egg-laying reptiles. Within the shelled, self-contained egg of a reptile, the embryo rests atop a yolk, which is enclosed in the yolk sac; it is suspended in a little sea of liquid contained in the amnion; it stores its toxic wastes in the allantois; and to breathe, it has a chorion permeable to gases (the "skin" that you may have noticed just beneath the shell of a boiled egg). All of these membranes persist in mammals, including humans, but are modified in their functions.

The **amnion** is a transparent sac that develops from cells of the embryonic disc. It grows to completely enclose the embryo and is penetrated only by the umbilical cord. The amnion becomes filled with **amniotic fluid,** which protects the embryo from trauma and temperature fluctuations, allows the freedom of movement important to muscle development, enables the embryo to develop symmetrically, and prevents adhesion of, for example, an arm to the trunk. At first, the amniotic fluid forms by filtration of the mother's blood plasma, but beginning at 8 to 9 weeks,

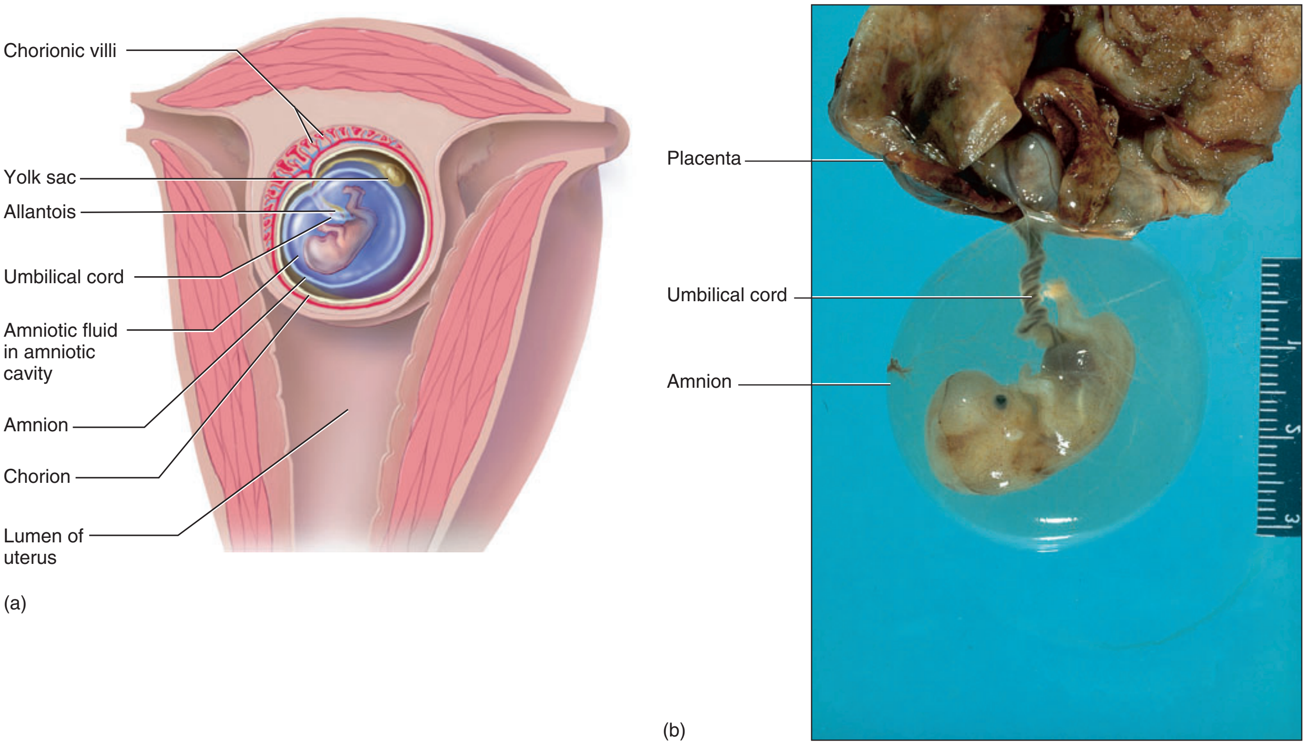


Figure 29.10 **The Embryonic Membranes.** *(a)* Diagram of a frontal section of the uterus. *(b)* Photograph of a human fetus at 8 weeks of gestation. The scale bar is 3 cm.

the fetus urinates into the amniotic cavity about once an hour and contributes substantially to the fluid volume. The volume increases only slowly, however, because the fetus swallows amniotic fluid at a nearly equal rate. At term, the amnion contains 700 to 1,000 mL of fluid.

The **yolk sac** arises partly from cells of the embryonic disc opposite the amnion. It is a small sac suspended from the ventral side of the embryo. It contributes to the formation of the digestive tract and produces the first blood cells and future egg or sperm cells.

The **allantois** (ah-LON-toe-iss) is an outpocketing of the posterior end of the yolk sac. It forms the foundation for the umbilical cord and becomes part of the urinary bladder. It can be seen in proximal cross sections of the cord.

The **chorion** is the outermost membrane, enclosing all the rest of the membranes and the embryo. Initially it has villi around its entire surface, but as the pregnancy advances, the villi of the placenta grow and branch while the rest of them degenerate. The chorion forms the fetal portion of the placenta; its functions are essentially those listed in table 29.1.

Organogenesis

Organogenesis is the formation of organs and organ systems from the primary germ layers. This is the primary developmental process to occur in the embryo itself. The major structures that arise from the primary germ layers are listed in table 29.2.

Think About It

List the four primary tissue types of the adult body (see chapter 5) and identify which of the three primary germ layers of the embryo predominantly gives rise to each.

At the end of 8 weeks, all of the organ systems are present, the individual is about 3 cm long, and it is now considered a **fetus** (fig. 29.10). Its bones have just begun to ossify and the skeletal muscles exhibit spontaneous contractions, although these are too weak to be felt by the mother. The heart, which has been beating since the fourth week, now circulates blood. The heart and liver are very large and form a prominent ventral bulge; the head is nearly half the total body length.

The stages of prenatal development are summarized in table 29.3.

Fetal Development

The fetus is the final stage of prenatal development, extending from the end of the eighth week until birth. The organs that formed during the embryonic stage now undergo growth and cellular differentiation and acquire the functional capability to support life outside the mother.

The circulatory system shows the most conspicuous anatomical changes from a prenatal state, dependent on the placenta, to the independent neonatal (newborn) state. The first trace of its development is the appearance of small spaces in the mesoderm before the third week. These become lined with endothelium and merge with each other to form the future blood vessels, lymphatic vessels, and heart. Two side-by-side endothelial tubes fuse to form a heart tube, which folds into the four-chambered heart.

The unique aspects of fetal circulation (fig. 29.11) are the umbilical-placental circuit and the presence of three circulatory shortcuts called *shunts*. The internal iliac arteries give rise to a pair of **umbilical arteries,** which pass on either side of the bladder into the umbilical cord. The blood in these arteries is low in oxygen and high in carbon dioxide and other fetal wastes. It discharges these wastes in the placenta, loads oxygen and nutrients, and returns to the fetus by way of a single **umbilical vein,** which leads toward the liver. Some of this blood filters through the liver to nourish it, but most of it bypasses the liver by way of a shunt called the **ductus venosus,** which leads directly to the inferior vena cava. The immature liver is not capable of performing many of its postpartum functions; many of these are performed by the placenta.

In the inferior vena cava, placental blood mixes with venous blood from the fetus's body and flows to the right atrium of the heart. While the right heart normally pumps all of its blood into the lungs after birth, there is little need for this in the fetus because the lungs are not yet functional. Most of the fetal blood therefore bypasses the pulmonary circuit. Some passes directly from the right atrium to the left through the **foramen ovale,** a hole in the interatrial septum. Some goes into the right ventricle and is

Table 29.2 Derivatives of the Three Primary Germ Layers

Layer	Major Derivatives
Ectoderm	Epidermis; hair follicles and piloerector muscles; cutaneous glands; nervous system; adrenal medulla; pineal and pituitary glands; lens, cornea, and intrinsic muscles of the eye; internal and external ear; salivary glands; epithelia of the nasal cavity, oral cavity, and anal canal
Mesoderm	Skeleton; skeletal, cardiac, and most smooth muscle; cartilage; adrenal cortex; middle ear; dermis; blood; blood and lymphatic vessels; bone marrow; lymphoid tissue; epithelium of kidneys, ureters, gonads, and genital ducts; mesothelium of ventral body cavity
Endoderm	Most of the mucosal epithelium of the digestive and respiratory tracts; mucosal epithelium of urinary bladder and parts of urethra; epithelial components of accessory reproductive and digestive glands (except salivary glands); thyroid and parathyroid glands; thymus

Table 29.3 The Stages of Prenatal Development

Stage	Age*	Major Developments and Defining Characteristics
Zygote	24–30 hours	A single diploid cell formed by the union of egg and sperm
Cleavage	30–72 hours	Mitotic division of the zygote into smaller, identical blastomeres
Morula	3–4 days	A hollow, spherical stage consisting of 16 or more blastomeres
Blastocyst	4–14 days	A fluid-filled, spherical stage with an outer mass of trophoblast cells and inner mass of embryoblast cells; becomes implanted in the endometrium; inner cell mass forms an embryonic disc and differentiates into the three primary germ layers
Embryo	2–8 weeks	A stage in which the primary germ layers differentiate into organs and organ systems; ends when all organ systems are present
Fetus	8–40 weeks	A stage in which organs grow and mature at a cellular level to the point of being capable of supporting life independently of the mother

*From the time of ovulation

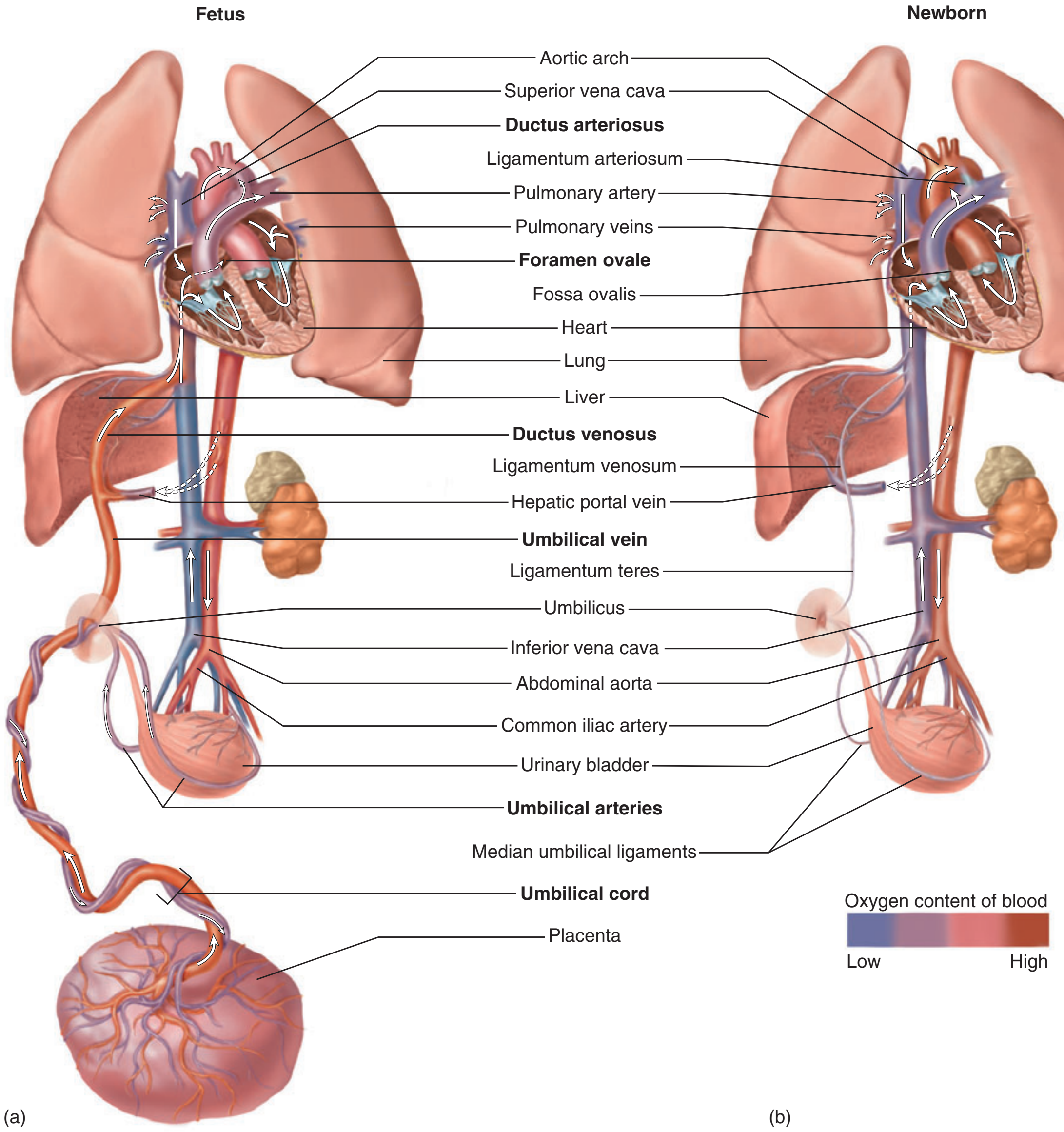

Fetus
Newborn
Aortic arch
Superior vena cava
Ductus arteriosus
Ligamentum arteriosum
Pulmonary artery
Pulmonary veins
Foramen ovale
Fossa ovalis
Heart
Lung
Liver
Ductus venosus
Ligamentum venosum
Hepatic portal vein
Umbilical vein
Ligamentum teres
Umbilicus
Inferior vena cava
Abdominal aorta
Common iliac artery
Urinary bladder
Umbilical arteries
Median umbilical ligaments
Umbilical cord
Placenta
Oxygen content of blood
Low
High
(a)
(b)

Figure 29.11 **Blood Circulation Before and After Birth** *(a)* Fetal circulation. *(b)* Neonatal circulation.

pumped into the pulmonary trunk, but most of this is shunted directly into the aorta by way of a short passage called the **ductus arteriosus.** This occurs because the collapsed state of the fetal lungs causes resistance and pressure in the pulmonary circuit to be high, so blood in the pulmonary trunk flows through the ductus into the aorta, where the blood pressure is lower. The lungs receive only a trickle of blood, sufficient to meet their metabolic needs during development. Blood leaving the left ventricle enters the general systemic circulation, and some of this returns to the placenta.

Other major aspects of embryonic and fetal development are listed in table 29.4 and depicted in figure 29.12.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

5. Distinguish between trophoblastic and placental nutrition.
6. Identify the two sources of blood to the placenta. Where do these two bloodstreams come closest to each other? What keeps them separated?

Table 29.4 Major Events of Prenatal Development, with Emphasis on the Fetal Stage

Calendar Month	Length* and Weight at End of Month	Developmental Events
1	0.6 cm	Spinal column and central nervous system begin to form; appendages represented by small **limb buds;** heart begins beating around day 22; no visible eyes, nose, or ears
2	3 cm; 1 g	Eyes form, eyelids fused shut; nose flat, nostrils evident but plugged with mucus; head nearly as large as the rest of the body; brain waves detectable; ossification begins; limb buds form paddlelike hands and feet with ridges called **digital rays,** which then separate into distinct fingers and toes; blood cells and major blood vessels form; genitals present but sexes not yet distinguishable
3	9 cm; 30 g	Eyes well developed, eyelids still fused; nose develops bridge; external ears present; limbs well formed, digits exhibit nails; fetus swallows amniotic fluid and produces urine; fetus moves but too weakly for mother to feel it; liver is prominent and produces bile; palate is fusing; sexes can be distinguished visually
4	14 cm; 100 g	Face looks more distinctly human; body larger in proportion to head; skin is bright pink, scalp has hair; joints forming; lips exhibit sucking movements; kidneys well formed; digestive glands forming and **meconium**[9] (fetal feces) accumulating in intestinal lumen; heartbeat can be heard with a stethoscope
5	19 cm; 200–450 g	Body covered with fine hair called **lanugo;**[10] skin has cheeselike sebaceous secretion called **vernix caseosa,**[11] which protects it from amniotic fluid; skin bright pink; brown fat forms and will be used for postpartum heat production; fetus is now bent forward into "fetal position" because of crowding; **quickening** occurs—mother can feel fetal movements
6	27–35 cm; 550–800 g	Eyes open, eyelashes form; skin wrinkled, pink, and translucent; lungs begin producing surfactant; rapid weight gain
7	32–42 cm; 1,100–1,350 g	Skin wrinkled and red; fetus turns into upside-down **vertex position;** bone marrow is now the sole site of hemopoiesis; testes descend into scrotum; can usually survive if born after 25 weeks
8	41–45 cm; 2,000–2,300 g	Subcutaneous fat deposition gives fetus a more plump, babyish appearance, with lighter, less wrinkled skin; twins usually born at this stage
9	50 cm; 3,200–3,400 g	More subcutaneous fat deposited; lanugo is shed; nails extend to or beyond fingertips

*Crown-to-rump (CR) length, measured from the top of the head to the bottom of the buttocks

[9] *mecon* = poppy juice, opium

[10] *lan* = down, wool

[11] *vernix* = varnish + *caseo* = cheese

7. State the functions of the placenta, amnion, chorion, yolk sac, and allantois.
8. What developmental characteristic distinguishes a fetus from an embryo? At what gestational age is this attained?
9. Identify the three circulatory shunts of the fetus. Why does the blood take these "shortcuts" before birth?

The Neonate

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- describe how and why the circulatory system changes at birth;
- explain why the first breaths of air are relatively difficult for a neonate;
- describe the major physiological problems of a premature infant; and
- discuss some common causes of birth defects.

Development is by no means complete at birth. For example, the liver and kidneys still are not fully functional, most joints are not yet ossified, and myelination of the nervous system is not completed until adolescence. Indeed, humans are born in a very immature state compared to other mammals.

The Transitional Period

The period immediately following birth is a crisis in which the neonate suddenly must adapt to life outside the mother's body. The first 6 to 8 hours are a **transitional period** in which the heart and respiratory rates increase and the body temperature falls. Physical activity then declines and the baby sleeps for about 3 hours. In its second period of activity, the baby often gags on mucus and debris in the pharynx. The baby then sleeps again, becomes more stable, and begins a cycle of waking every 3 to 4 hours to feed. The first 6 weeks of life constitute the **neonatal period.**

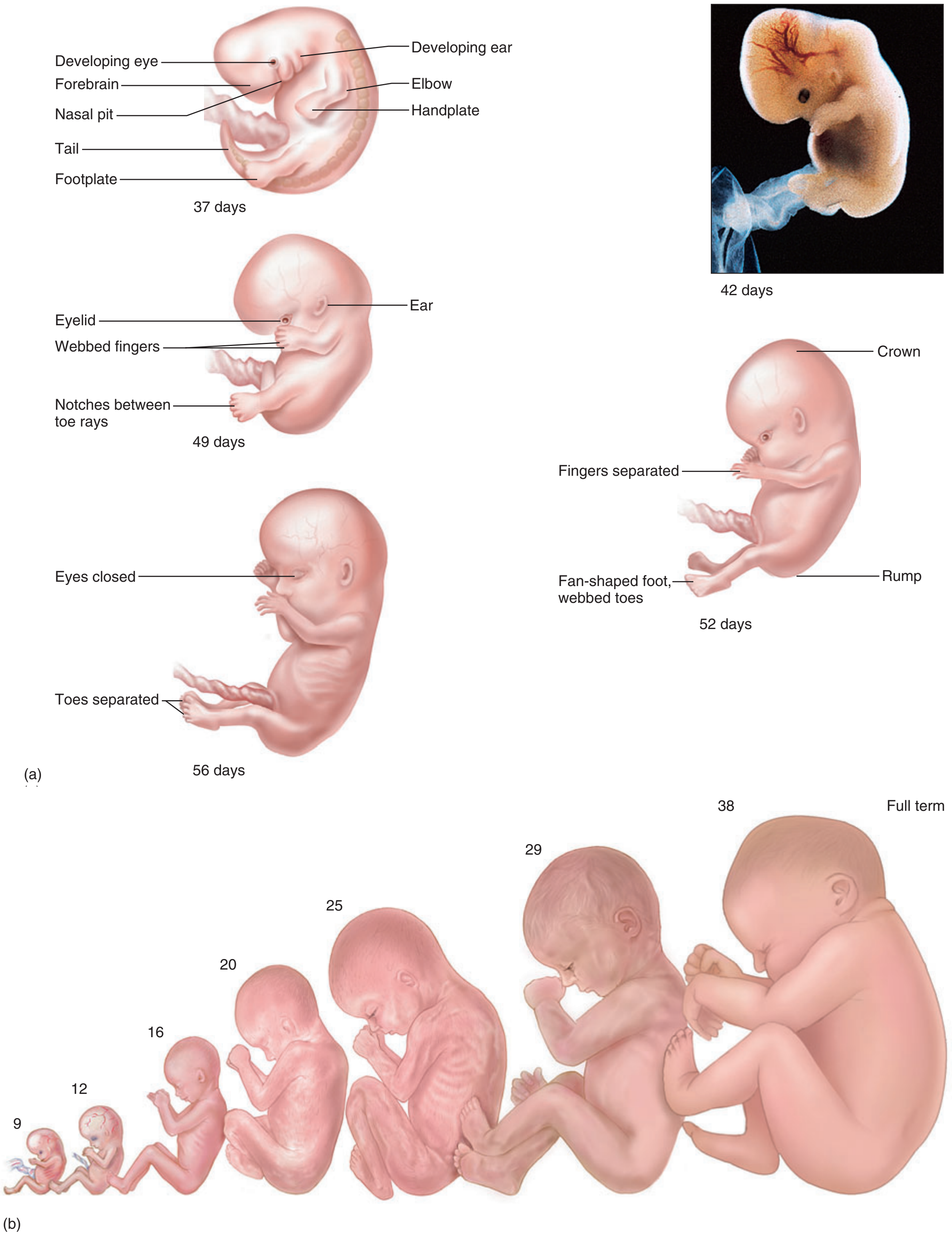

Developing eye
Forebrain
Nasal pit
Tail
Footplate
Developing ear
Elbow
Handplate
37 days
42 days
Eyelid
Webbed fingers
Notches between toe rays
Ear
49 days
Crown
Fingers separated
Fan-shaped foot, webbed toes
Rump
52 days
Eyes closed
Toes separated
56 days
(a)
9
12
16
20
25
29
38
Full term
(b)

Figure 29.12 **External Appearance of the Embryo and Fetus.** *(a)* The embryo from 37 to 56 days (5–8 weeks). *(b)* The fetus from 9 weeks to 38 weeks (full term).

Why does the 29-week-old fetus look less wrinkled than the 25-week-old?

Insight 29.3 Clinical Application

Neonatal Assessment

A newborn infant is immediately evaluated for general appearance, vital signs (temperature, pulse, and respiratory rate), weight, length, and head circumference and other dimensions, and it is screened for congenital disorders such as phenylketonuria (PKU). At 1 minute and 5 minutes after birth, the heart rate, respiratory effort, muscle tone, reflexes, and skin color are noted and given a score of 0 (poor), 1, or 2 (excellent). The total (0–10), called the *Apgar*[8] *score,* is a good predictor of infant survival. Infants with low Apgar scores may have neurological damage and need immediate attention if they are to survive. A low score at 1 minute suggests asphyxiation and may demand assisted ventilation. A low score at 5 minutes indicates a high probability of death.

---

[8] Virginia Apgar (1909–74), American anesthesiologist

Circulatory Adaptations

After the umbilical cord is clamped and cut, the umbilical arteries and vein collapse and become fibrotic. The proximal part of each umbilical artery becomes the *superior vesical artery,* which remains to supply the bladder. Other obliterated vessels become fibrous cords or ligaments: the distal parts of the umbilical arteries become the *median umbilical ligaments* of the abdominal wall; the umbilical vein becomes the *ligamentum teres (round ligament)* of the liver; and the ductus venosus (the former shunt around the liver) becomes the *ligamentum venosum* on the inferior surface of the liver (see fig. 29.11*b*).

When the lungs expand with air, blood pressure in the pulmonary circuit drops rapidly and pressure in the right heart falls below that in the left. Blood flows briefly from the left atrium to the right through the foramen ovale and pushes two flaps of tissue into place to close this shunt. In most people these flaps fuse and permanently seal the foramen during the first year, leaving a depression, the *fossa ovalis,* in the interatrial septum. In about 25% of people, however, the foramen ovale remains unsealed and the flaps are held in place only by the relatively high blood pressure in the left atrium. Pressure changes in the pulmonary trunk and aorta also cause the ductus arteriosus to collapse. It closes permanently around 3 months of age and leaves a permanent cord, the *ligamentum arteriosum,* between the two vessels.

Respiratory Adaptations

It is an old misconception that a neonate must be spanked to stimulate it to breathe. During birth, CO_2 accumulates in the baby's blood and strongly stimulates the respiratory chemoreceptors. Unless the infant is depressed by oversedation of the mother, it normally begins breathing spontaneously. It requires a great effort, however, to take the first few breaths and inflate the collapsed alveoli. For the first 2 weeks, a baby takes about 45 breaths per minute but subsequently stabilizes at about 12 breaths per minute.

Immunological Adaptations

Cellular immunity begins to appear early in fetal development, but the immune responses of the neonate are still weak. Fortunately, an infant is born with a near-adult level of IgG acquired from the mother through the placenta. This maternal IgG breaks down rapidly after birth, declining to about half the initial level in the first month and to essentially none by 10 months. Nevertheless, maternal IgG levels remain high enough for 6 months to protect the infant from measles, diphtheria, polio, and most other infectious diseases (but not whooping cough). By 6 months, the infant's own IgG reaches about half the typical adult level. The lowest total (maternal + infant) level of IgG exists around 5 to 6 months of age, and respiratory infections are especially common at that age. A breast-fed neonate also acquires protection from gastroenteritis from the IgA present in colostrum.

Other Adaptations

Thermoregulation and fluid balance are also critical aspects of neonatal physiology. An infant has a larger ratio of surface area to volume than an adult does, so it loses heat more easily. One of its defenses against hypothermia is brown fat, a special adipose tissue deposited from weeks 17 to 20 of fetal development. The mitochondria of brown fat release all the energy of pyruvic acid as heat rather than using it to make ATP; thus, this is a heat-generating tissue. As a baby grows, its metabolic rate increases and it accumulates even more subcutaneous fat, thus producing and retaining more heat. Nevertheless, body temperature is more variable in infants and children than in adults.

The kidneys are not fully developed at birth and cannot concentrate the urine as much as a mature kidney can. Consequently, infants have a relatively high rate of water loss and require more fluid intake, relative to body weight, than adults do.

Premature Infants

Neonates weighing under 2.5 kg (5.5 lb) are generally considered **premature.** They have multiple difficulties in respiration, thermoregulation, excretion, digestion, and liver function.

The respiratory system is adequately developed by 7 months' gestation to support independent life. Infants born before this have a deficiency of pulmonary surfactant, causing **respiratory distress syndrome (RDS),** also called *hyaline membrane disease.* The alveoli collapse each time the infant exhales and a great effort is needed to reinflate them. The infant becomes very fatigued by the high energy demand of breathing. RDS may be treated by ventilating the lungs with oxygen-enriched air at a positive pressure to keep the lungs inflated between breaths and by administering surfactant as an inhalant. Nevertheless, RDS remains the most common cause of neonatal death.

A premature infant has an incompletely developed hypothalamus and therefore cannot thermoregulate effectively. Body temperature must be controlled by placing the infant in a warmer. If the infant is more than 8 weeks premature, its digestive tract is too poorly developed for a normal diet of breast milk. The baby requires a low-fat formula because it cannot absorb fats very well, and it is given calcium and vitamin D supplements to promote ossification.

The liver is also poorly developed, and bearing in mind its very diverse functions (see table 26.7, p. 1004), you can probably understand why this would have several serious consequences. The liver synthesizes inadequate amounts of albumin, so the baby suffers hypoproteinemia. This upsets the balance between capillary filtration and reabsorption and leads to edema. The infant bleeds easily because of a deficiency of the clotting factors synthesized by the liver. This is true to some degree even in full-term infants, however, because the baby's intestines are not yet colonized by the bacteria that synthesize vitamin K, which is essential for the synthesis of clotting factors. Jaundice is common in neonates, especially premature babies, because the liver cannot dispose of bile pigments efficiently.

Congenital Anomalies

The most anxious moment for many new parents is awaiting reassurance that the child has no visible birth defects. Any abnormality present at birth is called a **congenital anomaly.**[12] Here we consider some anomalies that result from infectious diseases, teratogens, mutagens, and genetic defects.

Infectious Diseases

Infectious diseases are largely beyond the scope of this book, but it must be noted at least briefly that several microorganisms can cross the placenta and cause serious congenital anomalies, stillbirth, or neonatal death. Common viral infections of the fetus and newborn include herpes simplex, rubella, cytomegalovirus, and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). Congenital bacterial infections include gonorrhea and syphilis. *Toxoplasma,* a protozoan contracted from meat, unpasteurized milk, and housecats, is another common cause of fetal deformity. Some of these pathogens have relatively mild effects on adults, but because of its immature immune system, the fetus is vulnerable to devastating effects such as blindness, hydrocephalus, cerebral palsy, seizures, and profound physical and mental retardation. These diseases are treated in greater detail in microbiology textbooks.

Teratogens

Teratogens[13] are viruses, chemicals, and other agents that cause anatomical deformities in the fetus. Perhaps the most notorious teratogenic drug is thalidomide, a sedative first marketed in 1957. Thalidomide was taken by women in early pregnancy, often before they knew they were pregnant, and caused over 5,000 babies to be born with unformed arms or legs (fig. 29.13) and often with defects of the ears, heart, and intestines. It was taken off the market in 1961 but has recently been reintroduced for limited purposes. Many teratogens produce less obvious effects, including physical or mental retardation, hyperirritability, inattention, strokes, seizures, respiratory arrest, crib death, and cancer. A general lesson to be learned from the thalidomide tragedy and other cases is that pregnant women should avoid all sedatives, barbiturates, and opiates. Even the acne medicine Acutane has caused severe birth defects.

Alcohol causes more birth defects than any other drug. Even one drink a day has noticeable effects on fetal and postpartum development, some of which are not noticed until a child begins school. Alcohol abuse during pregnancy can cause **fetal alcohol syndrome (FAS),** characterized by a small head, malformed facial features, cardiac and central nervous system defects, stunted growth, and behavioral signs such as hyperactivity, nervousness, and a poor attention span. Cigarette smoking also contributes to fetal and infant mortality, ectopic pregnancy, anencephaly (failure of the cerebrum to develop), cleft lip and palate, and cardiac abnormalities. Diagnostic X rays should be avoided during pregnancy because radiation can have teratogenic effects.

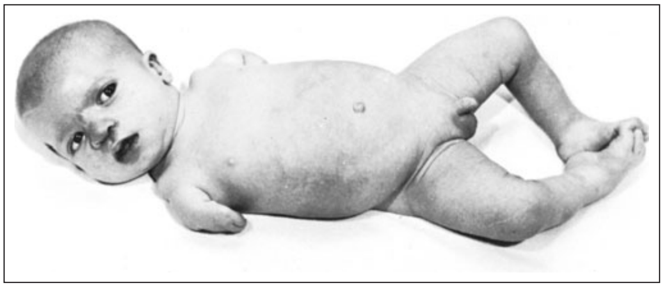


Figure 29.13 Effects of Thalidomide. Taken as a sedative in early pregnancy, thalidomide proved to be a teratogen with severe effects on embryonic limb development.

---

[12] *con* = with + *gen* = born + *a* = without + *nom* = rule, regularity

[13] *terato* = monster + *gen* = producing

Mutagens and Genetic Anomalies

A **mutagen** is any agent that alters DNA or chromosome structure. Ionizing radiation and some chemicals have mutagenic, teratogenic, and carcinogenic effects, with extremely diverse results. Prenatal exposure to mutagens may result, for example, in stillbirths or in increased risk of childhood cancer.

Some of the most common genetic disorders result not from mutagens, however, but from the failure of homologous chromosomes to separate during meiosis. Recall that homologous chromosomes pair up during prophase I and normally separate from each other at anaphase I (see p. 1034). This separation, called *disjunction,* produces daughter cells with 23 chromosomes each.

In **nondisjunction,** a pair of chromosomes fails to separate. Both chromosomes then go to the same daughter cell, which receives 24 chromosomes while the other daughter cell receives 22. **Aneuploidy**[14] (AN-you-PLOY-dee), the presence of an extra chromosome or lack of one, accounts for about 50% of spontaneous abortions. It can be detected prior to birth by *amniocentesis,* the examination of cells in a sample of amniotic fluid, or by *chorionic villus sampling,* the removal and examination of cells from the chorion.

Figure 29.14 compares normal disjunction of the X chromosomes with some effects of nondisjunction. In

---

[14] *an* = not, without + *eu* = true, normal + *ploid,* from *diplo* = double, paired

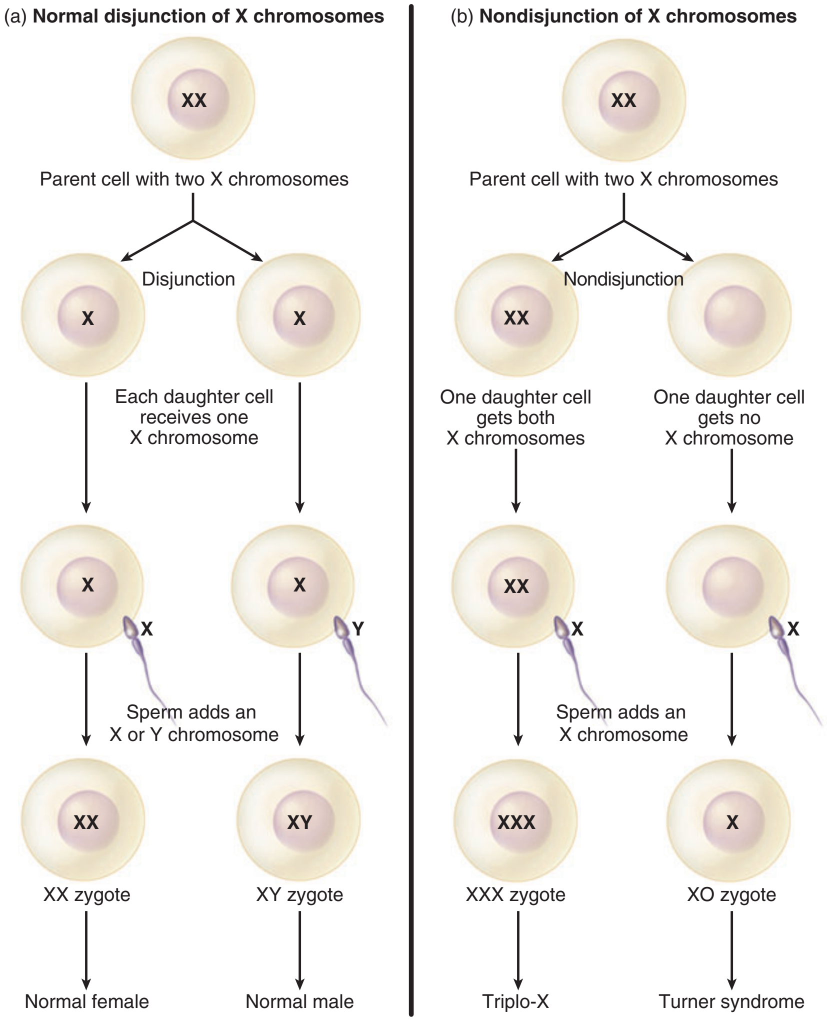

(a) Normal disjunction of X chromosomes
XX
Parent cell with two X chromosomes
Disjunction
X
X
Each daughter cell receives one X chromosome
X
X
X
Y
Sperm adds an X or Y chromosome
XX
XY
XX zygote
XY zygote
Normal female
Normal male
(b) Nondisjunction of X chromosomes
XX
Parent cell with two X chromosomes
Nondisjunction
XX
One daughter cell gets both X chromosomes
One daughter cell gets no X chromosome
XX
X
X
Sperm adds an X chromosome
XXX
X
XXX zygote
XO zygote
Triplo-X
Turner syndrome

Figure 29.14 **Disjunction and Nondisjunction.** *(a)* The outcome of normal disjunction and fertilization by X- or Y-bearing spermatozoa. *(b)* Two of the possible outcomes of nondisjunction followed by fertilization with an X-bearing spermatozoon.

In the right half of the figure, what would the two outcomes be if the sperm carried a Y chromosome instead of an X?

nondisjunction, an egg cell may receive both X chromosomes. If it is fertilized by an X-bearing sperm, the result is an XXX zygote and a set of anomalies called the **triplo-X syndrome.** Triplo-X females are sometimes infertile and sometimes have mild intellectual impairments. If an XX egg is fertilized by a Y-bearing sperm, the result is an XXY combination and **Klinefelter**[15] **syndrome.** People with Klinefelter syndrome are sterile males, usually of average intelligence, but with undeveloped testes, sparse body hair, unusually long arms and legs, and enlarged breasts (gynecomastia). This syndrome often goes undetected until puberty, when failure to develop the secondary sex characteristics may prompt genetic testing.

The other possible outcome of X chromosome nondisjunction is that an egg cell may receive no X chromosome (both X chromosomes are discarded in the first polar body). If fertilized by a Y-bearing sperm, it dies for lack of the indispensable genes on the X chromosome. If it is fertilized by an X-bearing sperm, however, the result is **Turner**[16] **syndrome,** with an XO combination (*O* represents the absence of one sex chromosome). Only 3% of fetuses with Turner syndrome survive to birth. Girls with Turner syndrome show no serious impairments as children but tend to have a webbed neck and widely spaced nipples. At puberty, the secondary sex characteristics fail to develop (fig. 29.15). The ovaries are nearly absent, the girl remains sterile, and she usually has a short stature.

The other 22 pairs of chromosomes (the autosomes) are also subject to nondisjunction. Nondisjunction of chromosomes 13 and 18 results in *Edward syndrome (trisomy-13)* and *Patau syndrome (trisomy-18),* respectively. Affected individuals have three copies of the respective chromosome. Nearly all fetuses with these trisomies die before birth. Infants born with these syndromes are severely deformed, and fewer than 5% survive for one year.

The most common autosomal anomaly is **Down**[17] **syndrome (trisomy-21).** The signs include retarded physical development; short stature; a relatively flat face with a flat nasal bridge; low-set ears; *epicanthal*[18] *folds* at the medial corner of the eyes; an enlarged, protruding tongue; stubby fingers; and a short broad hand with only one palmar crease (fig. 29.16). People with Down syndrome tend to have outgoing, affectionate personalities. Mental retardation is common and sometimes severe, but is not inevitable. Down syndrome occurs in about 1 out of 700 to 800 live births in the United States and increases in proportion to the age of the mother. The chance of having a child with Down syndrome is about 1 in 3,000 for a woman under 30, 1 in 365 by age 35, and 1 in 9 by age 48.

About 75% of the victims of trisomy-21 die before birth. About 20% of infants born with it die before the age of 10 from such causes as immune deficiency and abnormalities of the heart or kidneys. For those who survive beyond that age, modern medical care has extended life expectancy to about 60 years. After the age of 40, however, many of these people develop early-onset Alzheimer disease, linked to a gene on chromosome 21.

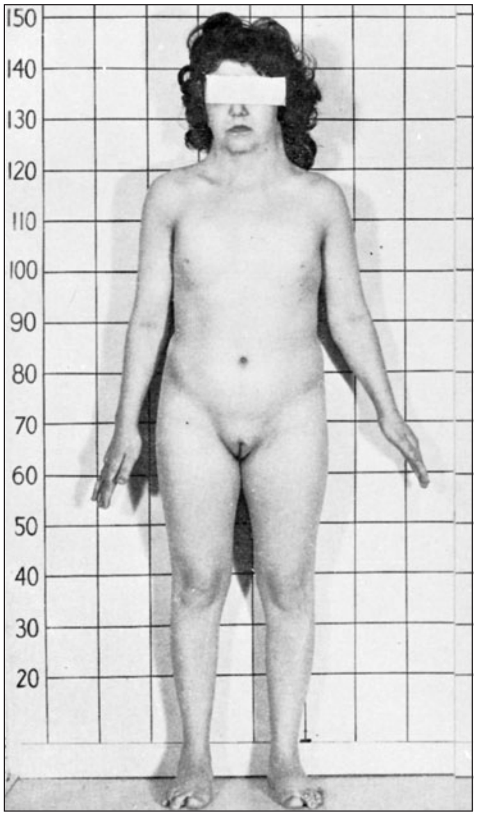


Figure 29.15 Turner Syndrome. Note the short stature (about 145 cm, or 4 ft 9 in.), lack of sexual development, webbed neck, and widely spaced nipples. This person was 22 years old.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

10. How does inflation of the lungs at birth affect the route of blood flow through the heart?
11. Why is respiratory distress syndrome common in premature infants?
12. Define nondisjunction and explain how it causes aneuploidy. Name two syndromes resulting from aneuploidy.

Chapter 29

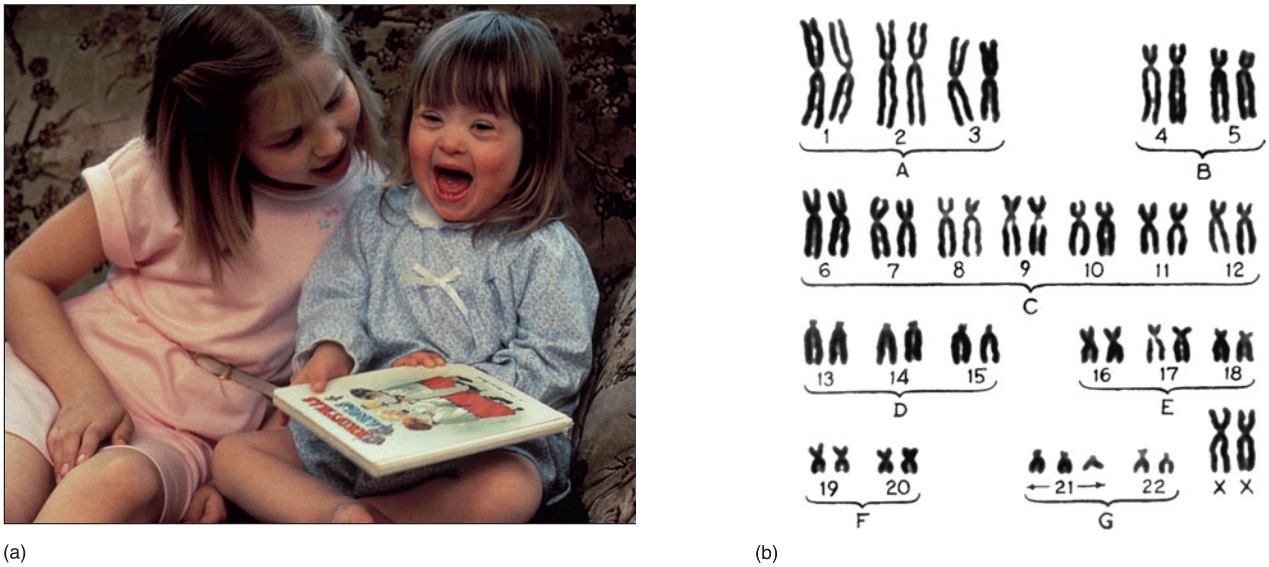
---

[15] Harry F. Klinefelter, Jr. (1912–), American physician

[16] Henry H. Turner (1892–1970), American endocrinologist

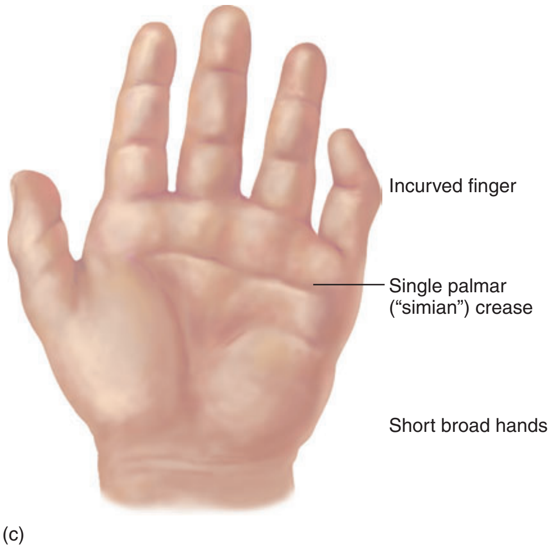
[17] John Langdon H. Down (1828–96), British physician

[18] *epi* = upon + *canth* = commissure of the eyelids

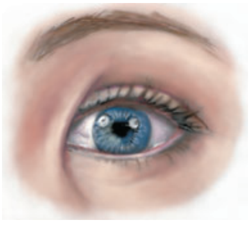


(a)

(b)



(c)



(d)

Figure 29.16 **Down Syndrome.** *(a)* A child with Down syndrome *(right)* plays with her big sister. *(b)* The karyotype of Down syndrome, showing the trisomy of chromosome 21. *(c)* Characteristics of the hand seen in Down syndrome. *(d)* The epicanthal fold over the medial commissure (canthus) of the left eye.

What was the sex of the person from whom the karyotype in figure *b* was obtained?

Aging and Senescence

Objectives

When you have completed this section, you should be able to

- define *senescence* and distinguish it from aging;
- describe some major changes that occur with aging in each organ system;
- summarize some current theories of senescence; and
- be able to explain how exercise and other factors can slow the rate of senescence.

Like Ponce de León searching for the legendary fountain of youth in Florida, people yearn for a way to preserve their youthful appearance and function. Our real concern, however, is not aging but senescence. The term **aging** is used in various ways but is taken here to mean all changes that occur in the body with the passage of time—including the growth, development, and increasing functional efficiency that occur from childhood to adulthood, as well as the degenerative changes that occur later in life. **Senescence** is the degeneration that occurs in an organ system after the age of peak functional efficiency. It includes a gradual loss of reserve capacities, reduced ability to repair damage and compensate for stress, and increased susceptibility to disease.

Senescence is not just a personal concern but an important issue for health-care providers. One in nine

Americans is 65 or older. As the average age of the population rises, health-care professionals will find themselves increasingly occupied by the prevention and treatment of the diseases of age. The leading causes of death change markedly with age. Accidents, homicide, suicide, and AIDS figure prominently in the deaths of people 18 to 34 years old, whereas the major causes of death after age 55 are clearly related to senescence of the organ systems: heart disease, cancer, stroke, diabetes, and lung disease. The causes of senescence, however, remain as much a scientific mystery today as cancer was 50 years ago and heredity was 100 years ago.

As we survey the senescence of the organ systems, you should notice many points relevant not only to caring for an aging population but also to your personal health and fitness practices that can lessen the effects of senescence and improve the quality of life in your later years. In addition, the study of senescence calls renewed attention to the multiple interactions among organ systems. As you will see, the senescence of one organ system typically contributes to the senescence of others. Your study of this topic will bring together many concepts introduced in earlier chapters of the book. You may find the glossary helpful in refreshing your memory of concepts revisited in the following discussion.

Senescence of the Organ Systems

Organ systems do not all degenerate at the same rate. For example, from ages 30 to 80, the speed of nerve conduction declines only 10% to 15%, but the number of functional glomeruli in the kidneys declines about 60%. Some physiological functions show only moderate changes at rest but more pronounced differences when tested under exercise conditions. The organ systems also vary widely in the age at which senescence becomes noticeable. There are traces of atherosclerosis, for example, even in infants, and visual and auditory sensitivity begin to decline soon after puberty. By contrast, the female reproductive system does not show significant senescence until menopause and then its decline is relatively abrupt. Aside from these unusual examples, most physiological measures of performance peak between the late teens and age 30 and then decline at a rate influenced by the level of use of the organs.

Integumentary System

Two-thirds of people aged 50 and over, and nearly all people over age 70, have medical concerns or complaints about their skin. Senescence of the integumentary system often becomes most noticeable in the late 40s. The hair turns grayer and thinner as melanocytes die out, mitosis slows down, and dead hairs are not replaced. The atrophy of sebaceous glands leaves the skin and hair drier. As epidermal mitosis declines and collagen is lost from the dermis, the skin becomes almost paper-thin and translucent. It becomes looser because of a loss of elastic fibers and flattening of the dermal papillae, which normally form a stress-resistant corrugated boundary between the dermis and epidermis. If you pinch a fold of skin on the back of a child's hand, it quickly springs back when you let go; do the same on an older person and the skinfold remains longer. Because of its loss of elasticity, aged skin sags to various degrees and may hang loosely from the arm and other places.

Aged skin has fewer blood vessels than younger skin, and those that remain are more fragile. The skin can become reddened as broken vessels leak into the connective tissue. Many older people exhibit **rosacea**—patchy networks of tiny, dilated blood vessels visible especially on the nose and cheeks. Because of the fragility of the dermal blood vessels, aged skin bruises more easily. Injuries to the skin are more common and severe in old age, partly because the cutaneous nerve endings decline by two-thirds from age 20 to 80, leaving one less aware of touch, pressure, and injurious stimuli. Injured skin heals slowly in old age because of poorer circulation and a relative scarcity of immune cells and fibroblasts. Antigen-presenting dendritic cells decline by as much as 40% in the aged epidermis, leaving the skin more susceptible to recurring infections.

Thermoregulation is a serious problem in old age because of the atrophy of cutaneous blood vessels, sweat glands, and subcutaneous fat. Older people are more vulnerable to hypothermia in cold weather and heatstroke in hot weather. Heat waves and cold spells take an especially heavy toll among the elderly poor, who suffer from a combination of reduced homeostasis and inadequate housing.

These are all "normal" changes in the skin, or **intrinsic aging**—changes that occur more or less inevitably with the passage of time. In addition, there is **photoaging**—degenerative changes in proportion to a person's lifetime exposure to ultraviolet radiation. UV radiation accounts for more than 90% of the integumentary changes that people find medically troubling or cosmetically disagreeable: skin cancer; yellowing and mottling of the skin; age spots, which resemble enlarged freckles on the back of the hand and other sun-exposed areas; and wrinkling, which affects the face, hands, and arms more than areas of the body that receive less exposure. A lifetime of outdoor activity can give the skin a leathery, deeply wrinkled, "outdoorsy" appearance (fig. 29.17), but beneath this rugged exterior is a less happy histological appearance. The sun-damaged skin shows many malignant and premalignant cells, extensive damage to the dermal blood vessels, and dense masses of coarse, frayed elastic fibers underlying the surface wrinkles and creases.

Senescence of the skin has far-reaching effects on other organ systems. Cutaneous vitamin D production declines as much as 75% in old age. This is all the more

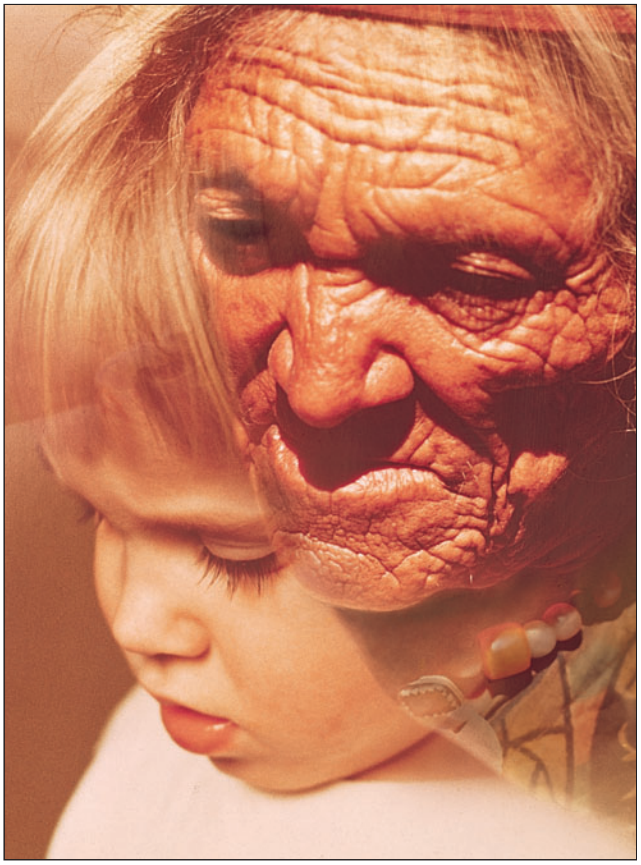


Figure 29.17 Senescence of the Skin. The skin exhibits both intrinsic aging and photoaging. The deep creases seen here result mainly from photoaging.
Photograph of child from *The 1974 Science Year.* 1973 Field Enterprises Educational Corporation. By permission of World Book, Inc.

significant because the elderly spend less time outdoors, and because of increasing lactose intolerance, they often avoid dairy products, the only dietary source of vitamin D. Consequently, the elderly are at high risk of calcium deficiency, which, in turn, contributes to bone loss, muscle weakness, and impaired glandular secretion and synaptic transmission.

Skeletal System

After age 30, osteoblasts become less active than osteoclasts. This imbalance results in **osteopenia,** the loss of bone; when the loss is severe enough to compromise a person's physical activity and health, it is called *osteoporosis* (see p. 239). After age 40, women lose about 8% of their bone mass per decade and men about 3%. Bone loss from the jaws is a contributing factor in tooth loss.

Not only does bone density decline with age, but the bones become more brittle as the cells synthesize less protein. Fractures occur more easily and heal more slowly. A fracture may impose a long period of immobility, which makes a person more vulnerable to pneumonia and other infectious diseases.

People notice more stiffness and pain in the synovial joints as they age, and degenerative joint diseases affect the lifestyle of 85% of people over age 75. Synovial fluid is less abundant and the articular cartilage is thinner or absent. Exposed bone surfaces abrade each other and cause friction, pain, and reduced mobility. *Osteoarthritis* is the most common joint disease of older people and one of the most common causes of physical disability (p. 320). Even breathing becomes more difficult and tiring in old age because expansion of the thorax is restricted by calcification of the sternocostal joints. Degeneration of the intervertebral discs causes back pain and stiffness, but herniated discs are less common in old age than in youth because the discs become more fibrous and stronger, with less nucleus pulposus.

Muscular System

One of the most noticeable changes we experience with age is the replacement of lean body mass (muscle) with fat. The change is dramatically exemplified by CT scans of the thigh. In a young well-conditioned male, muscle accounts for 90% of the cross-sectional area of the midthigh, whereas in a frail 90-year-old woman, it is only 30%. Muscular strength and mass peak in the 20s; by the age of 80, most people have only half as much strength and endurance. A large percentage of people over age 75 cannot lift a 4.5 kg (10 lb) weight with their arms; such simple tasks as carrying a sack of groceries into the house may become impossible. The loss of strength is a major contributor to falls, fractures, and dependence on others for the routine activities of daily living. Fast-twitch fibers exhibit the earliest and most severe atrophy, thus increasing reaction time and reducing coordination.

There are multiple reasons for the loss of strength. Aged muscle fibers have fewer myofibrils, so they are smaller and weaker. The sarcomeres are increasingly disorganized, and muscle mitochondria are smaller and have reduced quantities of oxidative enzymes. Aged muscle has less ATP, creatine phosphate, glycogen, and myoglobin; consequently, it fatigues quickly. Muscles also exhibit more fat and fibrosis with age, which limits their movement and blood circulation. With reduced circulation, muscle injuries heal more slowly and with more scar tissue.

But the weakness and easy fatigue of aged muscle also stems from the senescence of other organ systems. There are fewer motor neurons in the spinal cord, and some muscle shrinkage may represent denervation atrophy. The remaining neurons produce less acetylcholine and show less efficient synaptic transmission, which makes the muscles slower to respond to stimulation. As muscle atrophies, motor units have fewer muscle fibers per motor neuron, and more motor units must be recruited to perform a given task. Tasks that used to be easy, such as buttoning the clothes or eating a meal, take more time and effort. The sympathetic nervous system is also less efficient in old age; consequently, blood flow to the muscles does not respond efficiently to exercise and this contributes to their rapid fatigue.

Nervous System

The nervous system reaches its peak development around age 30. The average brain weighs 56% less at age 75 than at age 30. The cerebral gyri are narrower, the sulci are wider, the cortex is thinner, and there is more space between the brain and meninges. The remaining cortical neurons have fewer synapses, and for multiple reasons, synaptic transmission is less efficient: The neurons produce less neurotransmitter, they have fewer receptors, and the neuroglia around the synapses is more leaky and allows neurotransmitter to diffuse away. The degeneration of myelin sheaths with age also slows down signal conduction.

Neurons exhibit less rough ER and Golgi complex with age, which indicates that their metabolism is slowing down. Old neurons accumulate lipofuscin pigment and show more neurofibrillary tangles—dense mats of cytoskeletal elements in their cytoplasm. In the extracellular material, plaques of fibrillar protein (amyloid) appear, especially in people with Down syndrome and Alzheimer disease (AD). AD is the most common nervous disability of old age (p. 475).

Not all functions of the central nervous system are equally affected by senescence. Motor coordination, intellectual function, and short-term memory decline more than language skills and long-term memory. Elderly people are often better at remembering things in the distant past than remembering recent events.

The sympathetic nervous system loses adrenergic receptors with age and becomes less sensitive to norepinephrine. This contributes to a decline in homeostatic control of such variables as body temperature and blood pressure. Many elderly people experience *orthostatic hypotension*—a drop in blood pressure when they stand, which sometimes results in dizziness, loss of balance, or fainting.

Sense Organs

Some sensory functions decline shortly after adolescence. Presbyopia (loss of flexibility in the lenses) makes it more difficult for the eyes to focus on nearby objects. Visual acuity declines and often requires corrective lenses by middle age. Cataracts (cloudiness of the lenses) are more common in old age. Night vision is impaired as more and more light is needed to stimulate the retina. This has several causes: There are fewer receptor cells in the retina, the vitreous body becomes less transparent, and the pupil becomes narrower as the pupillary dilators atrophy. Dark adaptation takes longer as the enzymatic reactions of the photoreceptor cells become slower. Changes in the structure of the iris, ciliary body, or lens can block the reabsorption of aqueous humor, thereby increasing the risk of glaucoma. Having to give up reading and driving can be among the most difficult changes of lifestyle in old age.

Auditory sensitivity peaks in adolescence and declines afterward. The tympanic membrane and the joints between the auditory ossicles become stiffer, so vibrations are transferred less effectively to the inner ear, creating a degree of conductive deafness. Nerve deafness occurs as the number of cochlear hair cells and auditory nerve fibers declines. The greatest hearing loss occurs at high frequencies and in the frequency range of most conversation. The death of receptor cells in the semicircular ducts, utricle, and saccule, and of nerve fibers in the vestibular nerve and neurons in the cerebellum, results in poor balance and dizziness—another factor in falls and bone fractures.

The senses of taste and smell are blunted as taste buds, olfactory cells, and second-order neurons in the olfactory bulbs decline in number. Food may lose its appeal, and thus declining sensory function can be a factor in malnutrition.

Endocrine System

The endocrine system degenerates less than any other organ system. The reproductive hormones drop sharply and growth hormone and thyroid hormone secretion decline steadily after adolescence, but other hormones continue to be secreted at fairly stable levels even into old age. Target cell sensitivity declines, however, so some hormones have less effect. For example, the pituitary gland is less sensitive to negative feedback inhibition by adrenal glucocorticoids; consequently, the response to stress is more prolonged than usual. Diabetes mellitus is more common in old age, largely because target cells have fewer insulin receptors. In part, this is an effect of the greater percentage of body fat in the elderly. The more fat at any age, the less sensitive other cells are to insulin. Body fat increases as the muscles atrophy, and muscle is one of the body's most significant glucose-buffering tissues. Because of the blunted insulin response, glucose levels remain elevated longer than normal after a meal.

Circulatory System

Cardiovascular disease is a leading cause of death in old age. Senescence has multiple effects on the blood, heart, arteries, and veins. Anemia may result from nutritional deficiencies, inadequate exercise, disease, and other causes. The factors that cause anemia in older people are so complicated it is almost impossible to control them enough to determine whether aging alone causes it. Evidence suggests that there is no change in the baseline rate of erythropoiesis in old age. Hemoglobin concentration, cell counts, and other variables are about the same among healthy people in their 70s as in the 30s. However, older people do not adapt well to stress on the hemopoietic system, perhaps because of the senescence of other organ systems. As the gastric mucosa atrophies, for example, it produces less of the intrinsic factor needed for vitamin B12 absorption. This increases the risk of pernicious anemia. As the kidneys age and the number of nephrons declines, less erythropoietin is secreted. There may also be a limit to how many times the hemopoietic stem cells can divide and continue giving rise to new blood cells. Whatever its cause, anemia limits the amount of oxygen that can be transported and thus contributes to the atrophy of tissues everywhere in the body.

Think About It

Draw a positive feedback loop showing how anemia and senescence of the kidneys could affect each other.

Everyone exhibits coronary atherosclerosis with age. Consequently, myocardial cells die, angina pectoris and myocardial infarction become more common, the heart wall becomes thinner and weaker, and stroke volume, cardiac output, and cardiac reserve decline. Like other connective tissues, the cardiac skeleton becomes less elastic. This limits the distension of the heart and reduces the force of cardiac systole. Degenerative changes in the nodes and conduction pathways of the heart lead to a higher incidence of cardiac arrhythmia and heart block. Physical endurance is compromised by the drop in cardiac output.

Arteries stiffened by atherosclerosis cannot expand as effectively to accommodate the pressure surges of cardiac systole. Blood pressure therefore rises steadily with age (see table 20.1, p. 755). Atherosclerosis also narrows the arteries and reduces the perfusion of most organs. The effects of reduced circulation on the skin, skeletal muscles, and brain have already been noted. The combination of atherosclerosis and hypertension also weakens the arteries and increases the risk of aneurysm and stroke.

Atherosclerotic plaques trigger thrombosis, especially in the lower extremities, where flow is relatively slow and the blood clots more easily. About 25% of people over age 50 experience venous blockage by thrombosis—especially people who do not exercise regularly.

Degenerative changes in the veins are most evident in the extremities. The valves become weaker and less able to stop the backflow of blood. Blood pools in the legs and feet, raises capillary blood pressure, and causes edema. Chronic stretching of the vessels often produces varicose veins and hemorrhoids. Support hose can reduce edema by compressing the tissues and forcing tissue fluid to return to the bloodstream, but physical activity is even more important in promoting venous return.

Immune System

The amounts of lymphatic tissue and red bone marrow decline with age; consequently there are fewer hemopoietic stem cells, disease-fighting leukocytes, and antigen-presenting cells (APCs). Also, the lymphocytes produced in these tissues often fail to mature and become immunocompetent. Both humoral and cellular immunity depend on APCs and helper T cells, and therefore both types of immune response are blunted. As a result, an older person is less protected against cancer and infectious diseases. It becomes especially important in old age to be vaccinated against influenza and other acute seasonal infections.

Respiratory System

Pulmonary ventilation declines steadily after the 20s and is one of several factors in the gradual loss of stamina. The costal cartilages and joints of the thoracic cage become less flexible, the lungs have less elastic tissue, and the lungs have fewer alveoli. Vital capacity, minute respiratory volume, and forced expiratory volume fall. The elderly are also less capable of clearing the lungs of irritants and pathogens and are therefore increasingly vulnerable to respiratory infections. Pneumonia causes more deaths than any other infectious disease and is often contracted in hospitals and nursing homes.

The chronic obstructive pulmonary diseases (COPDs)—emphysema and chronic bronchitis—are more common in old age since they represent the cumulative effects of a lifetime of degenerative change. They are among the leading causes of death in old age. Pulmonary obstruction also contributes to cardiovascular disease, hypoxemia, and hypoxic degeneration in all the organ systems. Respiratory health is therefore a major concern in aging.

Urinary System

The kidneys exhibit a striking degree of atrophy with age. From ages 25 to 85, the number of nephrons declines 30% to 40% and up to a third of the remaining glomeruli become atherosclerotic, bloodless, and nonfunctional. The kidneys of a 90-year-old are 20% to 40% smaller than those of a 30-year-old and receive only half as much blood. The glomerular filtration rate is proportionately lower and the kidneys are less efficient at clearing wastes from the blood. Although baseline renal function is adequate even in old age, there is little reserve capacity; thus other diseases can lead to surprisingly rapid renal failure. Drug doses often need to be reduced in old age because the kidneys cannot clear drugs from the blood as rapidly; this is a contributing factor in overmedication among the aged.

Water balance becomes more precarious in old age because the kidneys are less responsive to antidiuretic hormone and because the sense of thirst is sharply reduced. Even when given free access to water, elderly people may not drink enough to maintain normal blood osmolarity. Dehydration is therefore common. It is often said that aged kidneys are deficient in maintaining electrolyte balance, but the evidence for this remains questionable.

Voiding and bladder control become a problem for both men and women. About 80% of men over the age of 80 are affected by benign prostatic hyperplasia. The enlarged prostate compresses the urethra and interferes with emptying of the bladder. Urine retention causes pressure to back up in the kidneys, aggravating the failure of the nephrons. Older women are subject to incontinence (leakage of urine), especially if their history of pregnancy and childbearing has weakened the pelvic muscles and urethral sphincters. Senescence of the sympathetic nervous system and nervous disorders such as stroke and Alzheimer disease can also cause incontinence.

Digestive System and Nutrition

Less saliva is secreted in old age, making food less flavorful, swallowing more difficult, and the teeth more prone to caries. Nearly half of people over age 65 wear dentures because they have lost their teeth to caries and periodontitis. The stratified squamous epithelium of the oral cavity and esophagus is thinner and more vulnerable to abrasion.

The gastric mucosa atrophies and secretes less acid and intrinsic factor. Acid deficiency reduces the absorption of calcium, iron, zinc, and folic acid. Heartburn becomes more common as the weakening lower esophageal sphincter fails to prevent reflux into the esophagus. The most common digestive complaint of older people is constipation, which results from the reduced muscle tone and weaker peristalsis of the colon. This seems to stem from a combination of factors: atrophy of the muscularis externa, reduced sensitivity to neurotransmitters, less fiber and water in the diet, and less exercise. The liver, gallbladder, and pancreas show only slightly reduced function. Any drop in liver function, however, makes it harder to detoxify drugs and can contribute to overmedication.

Older people tend to reduce their food intake because of lower energy demand and appetite, because declining sensory functions make food less appealing, and because reduced mobility makes it more troublesome to shop and prepare meals. However, they need fewer calories than younger people because they have lower basal metabolic rates and tend to be less physically active. Protein, vitamin, and mineral requirements remain essentially unchanged, although vitamin and mineral supplements may be needed to compensate for reduced food intake and intestinal absorption. Malnutrition is common among older people and is an important factor in anemia and reduced immunity.

Reproductive System

In men, the senescent changes in the reproductive system are relatively gradual; they include declining testosterone secretion, sperm count, and libido. By age 65, sperm count is about one-third of what it was in a man's 20s. Men remain fertile (capable of fathering a child) well into old age, but impotence (inability to maintain an erection) can occur because of atherosclerosis, hypertension, medication, and psychological reasons.

In women, the changes are more pronounced and develop more rapidly, over the course of menopause. The ovarian follicles are used up, gametogenesis ceases, and the ovaries stop producing sex steroids. This may result in vaginal dryness, genital atrophy, and reduced libido and make sex less enjoyable. With the loss of ovarian steroids, a postmenopausal woman has an elevated risk of osteoporosis and atherosclerosis.

Exercise and Senescence

Other than the mere passage of time, senescence results from obesity and insufficient exercise more than from any other causes. Conversely, good nutrition and exercise are the best ways to slow its progress.

There is no clear evidence that exercise will prolong your life, but there is little doubt that it improves the quality of life in old age. It maintains endurance, strength, and joint mobility while it reduces the incidence and severity of hypertension, osteoporosis, obesity, and diabetes mellitus. This is especially true if you begin a program of regular physical exercise early in life and make a lasting habit of it. If you stop exercising regularly after middle age, the body rapidly becomes deconditioned, although appreciable reconditioning can be achieved even when an exercise program is begun late in life. A person in his or her 90s can increase muscle strength two- or threefold in 6 months with as little as 40 minutes of isometric exercise a week. The improvement results from a combination of muscle hypertrophy and neural efficiency.

Resistance exercises may be the most effective way of reducing accidental injuries such as bone fractures, whereas endurance exercises reduce body fat and increase cardiac output and maximum oxygen uptake. A general guideline for ideal endurance training is to have three to five periods of aerobic exercise per week, each 20 to 60 minutes long and vigorous enough to reach 60% to 90% of your maximum heart rate. The maximum is best determined by a stress test but averages about 220 beats per minute minus your age in years.

An exercise program should ideally be preceded by a complete physical examination and stress test. Warm-up and cool-down periods are especially important in avoiding soft tissue injuries. Because of their lower capacity for thermoregulation, older people must be careful not to overdo exercise, especially in hot weather. At the outset of a new exercise program, it is best to "start low and go slow."

Theories of Senescence

Why do our organs wear out? Why must we die? There still is no general theory on this. The question actually comes down to two issues: What are the mechanisms that cause the organs to deteriorate with age? and Why hasn't natural selection eliminated these and produced bodies capable of longer life?

Mechanisms of Senescence

Numerous theories have been proposed and discarded to explain why organ function degenerates with age. Some authorities maintain that senescence is an intrinsic process governed by inevitable or even preprogrammed changes in cellular function. Others attribute senescence to extrinsic (environmental) factors that progressively damage our cells over the course of a lifetime.

There is good evidence of a hereditary component to longevity. Unusually long and short lives tend to run in families. Monozygotic (identical) twins are more likely than dizygotic twins to die at a similar age. One striking genetic defect called *progeria*[19] is characterized by greatly accelerated senescence (fig. 29.18). Symptoms begin to appear by age two. The child's growth rate declines, the muscles and skin become flaccid, most victims lose their hair, and most die in early adolescence from advanced atherosclerosis. In Werner syndrome, caused by a defective gene on chromosome 8, people show marked senescence beginning in their 20s and usually die by age 50. There is some controversy over the relevance or similarity of these syndromes to normal senescence, but they do demonstrate that many of the changes associated with old age can be brought on by a genetic anomaly.

Knowing that senescence is partially hereditary, however, does not answer the question about why tissues degenerate. Quite likely, no one theory explains all forms of senescence, but let's briefly examine some of them.

Replicative Senescence Normal organ function usually depends on a rate of cell renewal that keeps pace with cell death. There is a limit, however, to how many times cells can divide. Human cells cultured in the laboratory divide 80 to 90 times if taken from a fetus, but only 20 to 30 times if taken from older people. After reaching their maximum number of divisions, cultured cells degenerate and die. This decline in mitotic potential with age is called **replicative senescence.**

Why this occurs is a subject of lively current research. Much of the evidence points to the **telomere,**[20] a "cap" on each end of a chromosome analogous to the plastic tip of a shoelace. In humans, it consists of a noncoding nucleotide sequence CCCTAA repeated 1,000 times or more. One of its functions may be to stabilize the chromosome and prevent it from unraveling or sticking to other chromosomes. Also, during DNA replication, DNA polymerase cannot reproduce the very ends of the DNA molecule. If there were functional genes at the end, they would not get duplicated. The telomere may therefore provide a bit of "disposable" DNA at the end, so that DNA polymerase doesn't fail to replicate genes that would otherwise be there. Every time DNA is replicated, 50 to 100 bases are lost from the telomere. In old age, the telomere may be exhausted and the polymerase may then indeed fail to replicate some of the terminal genes. Old chromosomes may therefore be more vulnerable to damage, replication errors, or both, causing old cells to be increasingly dysfunctional. The "immortality" of cancer cells results from an enzyme called *telomerase,* lacking from healthy cells, which enables cancer cells to repair telomere damage and escape the limit on number of cell divisions.

Replicative senescence is clearly not the entire answer to why organs degenerate, however. Skeletal muscles and the brain exhibit extreme senescence, yet muscle fibers and neurons are nonmitotic. Their senescence obviously is not a result of repeated mitosis and cumulative telomere

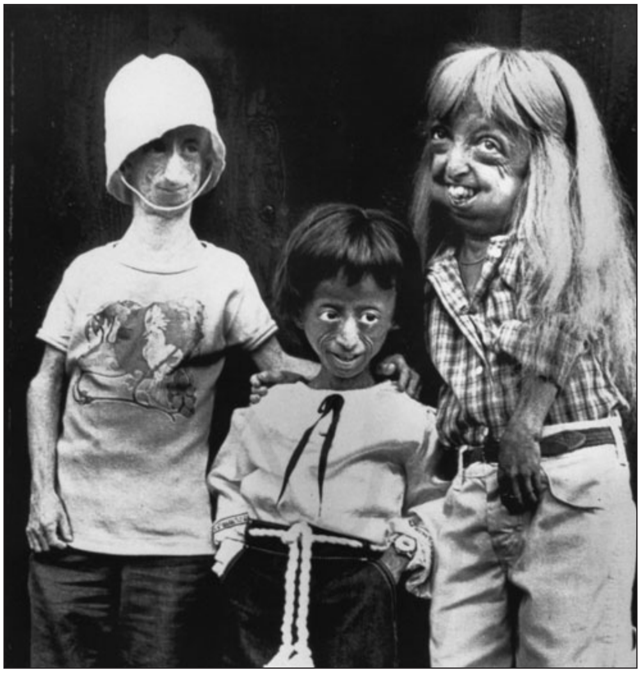


Figure 29.18 Progeria. This is a genetic disorder in which senescence appears to be greatly accelerated. The individuals here, from *left* to *right,* are 15, 12, and 26 years old. Few people with progeria live as long as the woman on the *right.*

---

[19] *pro* = before + *ger* = old age

[20] *telo* = end + *mer* = piece

damage. A full explanation of senescence must embrace additional processes and theories.

Cross-Linking Theory About one-fourth of the body's protein is collagen. With age, collagen molecules become cross-linked by more and more disulfide bridges, thus making the fibers less soluble and more stiff. This is thought to be a factor in several of the most noticeable changes of the aging body, including stiffening of the joints, lenses, and arteries. Similar cross-linking of DNA and enzyme molecules could progressively impair their functions as well.

Other Protein Abnormalities Not only collagen but also many other proteins exhibit increasingly abnormal structure in older tissues and cells. The changes are not in amino acid sequence—therefore not attributable to DNA mutations—but lie in the way the proteins are folded and other moieties such as carbohydrates are attached to them. This is another reason that cells accumulate more dysfunctional proteins as they age.

Free Radical Theory Free radicals have very destructive effects on macromolecules (see chapter 2). We have a number of antioxidants to protect us from their effects, but it is believed that some of these antioxidants become less abundant with age and are eventually overwhelmed by free radicals, or that some of the molecules damaged by free radicals are long-lived and accumulate in cells. Free radical damage may therefore be a contributing factor in some of the other mechanisms of senescence discussed here.

Autoimmune Theory Some of the altered macromolecules described previously may be recognized as foreign antigens and stimulate lymphocytes to mount an immune response against the body's own tissues. Autoimmune diseases such as rheumatoid arthritis do, in fact, become more common in old age.

Evolution and Senescence

If certain genes contribute to senescence, it raises an evolutionary question—Why doesn't natural selection eliminate them? In an attempt to answer this, biologists once postulated that senescence and death were for the good of the species—a way for older, worn-out individuals to make way for younger, healthier ones. We can see the importance of death for the human population by imagining that science had put an end to senescence and people died at a rate of 1 per 1,000 per year regardless of age (the rate at which American 18-year-olds now die). If so, the median age of the population would be 163, and 13% of us would live to be 2,000 years old. The implications for world population and competition for resources would be staggering. Thus it is easy to understand why death was once interpreted as a self-sacrificing phenomenon for the good of the species.

But this hypothesis has several weaknesses. One of them is the fact that natural selection works exclusively through the effects of genes on the reproductive rates of individuals. A species evolves only because some members reproduce more than others. A gene that does not affect reproductive rate can be neither eliminated nor favored by natural selection. Genes for disorders such as Alzheimer disease have little or no effect until a person is past reproductive age. Our prehistoric and even fairly recent ancestors usually died of accidents, predation, starvation, weather, and infectious diseases at an early age. Few people lived long enough to be affected by atherosclerosis, colon cancer, or Alzheimer disease. Natural selection would have been "blind" to such death-dealing genes, which would escape the selection process and remain with us today.

Death

Life expectancy, the average length of life in a given population, has steadily increased in industrialized countries. People born in the United States at the beginning of the twentieth century had a life expectancy of only 45 to 50 years; nearly half of them died of infectious disease. The average boy born today can expect to live 72 years and the average girl 79 years. This is due mostly to victories over infant and child mortality, not to advances at the other end of the life span. **Life span,** the maximum age attainable by humans, has not increased for many centuries and there seems to be little prospect that it ever will. There is no verifiable record of anyone living past the age of 122 years.

There is no definable instant of biological death. Some organs function for an hour or more after the heart stops beating. During this time, even if a person is declared legally dead, living organs may be removed for transplant. For legal purposes, death was once defined as the loss of a spontaneous heartbeat and respiration. Now that cardiopulmonary functions can be artificially maintained for years, this criterion is less distinct. Clinical death is now widely defined in terms of **brain death**—a lack of cerebral activity indicated by a flat electroencephalogram for 30 minutes to 24 hours (depending on state laws), accompanied by a lack of reflexes or lack of spontaneous respiration and heartbeat.

Death usually results from the failure of a particular organ, which then has a cascading effect on other organs. Kidney failure, for example, leads to the accumulation of toxic wastes in the blood, which in turn leads to loss of consciousness, brain function, respiration, and heartbeat.

Ninety-nine percent of us will die before age 100, and there is little chance that this outlook will change within our lifetimes. We cannot presently foresee any "cure for old age" or significant extension of the human life span. The real issue is to maintain the best possible quality of life, and when the time comes to die, to do so in comfort and dignity.

Before You Go On

Answer the following questions to test your understanding of the preceding section:

13. Define *aging* and *senescence.*
14. List some tissues or organs in which changes in collagenous and elastic connective tissues lead to senescence.
15. Many older people have difficulty with mobility and simple self-maintenance tasks such as dressing and cooking. Name some organ systems whose senescence is most relevant to these limitations.
16. Explain why both endurance and resistance exercises are important in old age.
17. Summarize five mechanisms that may be responsible for senescence.

Insight 29.4 Clinical Application

Reproductive Technology—Making Babies in the Laboratory

Fertile heterosexual couples who have frequent intercourse and use no contraception have an 85% chance of conceiving within 1 year. About one in six American couples, however, are *infertile*—unable to conceive. Infertility can sometimes be corrected by hormone therapy or surgery, but when this fails, parenthood may still be possible through other reproductive technologies discussed here.

Artificial Insemination

If only the male is infertile, the oldest and simplest solution is *artificial insemination (AI),* in which a physician introduces donor semen into or near the cervix. This was first done in the 1890s, when the donor was often the physician himself or a medical student who donated semen for payment. In 1953, a technique was developed for storing semen in glass ampules frozen in liquid nitrogen; the first commercial sperm banks opened in 1970. Most women use sperm from anonymous donors but are able to select from a catalog that specifies the donors' physical and intellectual traits. A man with a low sperm count can donate semen at intervals over a course of several weeks and have it pooled, concentrated, and used to artificially inseminate his partner. Men planning vasectomies sometimes donate sperm for storage as insurance against the death of a child, divorce and remarriage, or a change in family planning. Some cases of infertility are due to sperm destruction by the woman's immune system. This can sometimes be resolved by *sperm washing*—a technique in which the sperm are collected, washed to remove antigenic proteins from their surfaces, and then introduced by AI.

Oocyte Donation

The counterpart to sperm donation is *oocyte donation,* in which fresh oocytes are obtained from one woman, fertilized, and transplanted to the uterus of another. A woman may choose this procedure for a variety of reasons: being past menopause, having had her ovaries removed, or having a hereditary disorder she does not want to pass to her children, for example. The donated oocytes are sometimes provided by a relative or may be left over from another woman's in vitro fertilization (see next). The first baby conceived by oocyte donation was born in 1984. This procedure has a success rate of 20% to 50%.

In Vitro Fertilization

In some women the uterus is normal but the uterine tubes are scarred by pelvic inflammatory disease or other causes. *In vitro fertilization (IVF)* is an option in some of these cases. The woman is given gonadotropins to induce the "superovulation" of multiple eggs. The physician views the ovary with a laparoscope and removes eggs by suction. These are placed in a solution that mimics the chemical environment of her reproductive tract, and sperm are added to the dish. The term *in vitro fertilization* refers to the fact that fertilization occurs in laboratory glassware; children conceived by IVF are often misleadingly called "test-tube babies." In some cases, fertilization is assisted by piercing the zona pellucida before the sperm are added *(zona drilling)* or by injecting sperm directly into the egg through a micropipet. By the day after fertilization, some of the preembryos reach the 8- to 16-celled stage. Several of these are transferred to the mother's uterus through the cervix and her blood HCG level is monitored to determine whether implantation has occurred. Excess IVF preembryos may be donated to other infertile couples or frozen and used in later attempts. In cases where a woman has lost her ovaries to disease, the oocytes may be provided by another donor, often a relative.

IVF costs up to $10,000 per attempt and succeeds only 14% of the time. A couple can easily spend $100,000 before IVF is successful, and then some attempts are "too successful." Multiple preembryos are usually introduced to the uterus as insurance against the low probability that any one of them will implant and survive. Sometimes, however, this results in multiple births—in rare cases, up to seven babies (septuplets). One advantage of IVF is that when the preembryo reaches the eight-celled stage, one or two cells can be removed and tested for genetic defects before the preembryo is introduced to the uterus.

IVF has been used in animal breeding since the 1950s, but the first child conceived this way was Louise Joy Brown (fig. 29.19), born in England in 1978. It is now estimated that worldwide, about one IVF child is born every day.

Surrogate Mothers

IVF is an option only for women who have a functional uterus. A woman who has had a hysterectomy or is otherwise unable to become pregnant or maintain a pregnancy may contract with a *surrogate mother* who provides a "uterus for hire." Some surrogates are both genetic and gestational mothers, and others gestational only. In the former case, the surrogate is artificially inseminated by a man's sperm and agrees to give the baby to the man and his partner at birth. In the latter case, oocytes are collected from one woman's ovaries, fertilized in vitro, and the preembryos are placed in the surrogate's uterus. This is typical of cases in which a woman has functional ovaries but no functional uterus. A surrogate typically receives a fee of about $10,000 plus medical and legal costs. Several hundred babies have been produced this way in the United States. In at least one case, a woman carried the child of her infertile daughter, thus giving birth to her own granddaughter.

Gamete Intrafallopian Transfer

The low success rate of IVF led to a search for more reliable and cost-effective techniques. *Gamete intrafallopian transfer (GIFT)* was developed in the mid-1980s on the conjecture that pregnancy would be more successful if the oocyte were fertilized and began cleavage in a more natural environment. Eggs are obtained from a woman after a weeklong course of ovulation-inducing drug treatment. The most active sperm cells are isolated from the semen, and the eggs and sperm are introduced into her uterine tube proximal to any existing obstruction. GIFT is about half as expensive as IVF and succeeds about 40% of

Figure 29.19 **New Beginnings Through Reproductive Technology.** Louise Joy Brown, shown here at age 10, was the first child ever conceived by in vitro fertilization (IVF). She is holding Andrew Macheta, another IVF baby, at a 10-year anniversary celebration at the clinic near London where both were conceived.

the time. In a modification called *zygote intrafallopian transfer (ZIFT),* fertilization occurs in vitro and the preembryo is introduced into the uterine tube. Traveling down the uterine tube seems to improve the chance of implantation when the conceptus reaches the uterus.

Embryo Adoption

Embryo adoption is used when a woman has malfunctioning ovaries but a normal uterus. A man's sperm are used to artificially inseminate another woman. A few days later, the preembryo is flushed from the donor's uterus before it implants and is transferred to the uterus of the woman who wishes to have a child.

Ethical and Legal Issues

Like many other advances in medicine, reproductive technology has created its own ethical and legal dilemmas, some of which are especially confounding. Perhaps the most common problem is the surrogate mother who changes her mind. Surrogates enter into a contract to surrender the baby to a couple at birth, but after carrying a baby for 9 months and giving birth, they sometimes feel differently. This raises questions about the definition of motherhood, especially if she is the gestational but not the genetic mother.

The converse problem is illustrated by a case in which the child had hydrocephalus and neither the contracting couple nor the surrogate mother wanted it. In this case, genetic testing showed that the child actually had been fathered by the surrogate's husband, not the man who had contracted for her service. The surrogate then accepted the baby as her own. Nevertheless, the case raised the question of whether the birth of a genetically defective child constituted fulfillment of the contract and obligated the contracting couple to accept the child, or whether such a contract implies that the surrogate mother must produce a healthy child.

In another case, a wealthy couple was killed in an accident and left frozen preembryos in an IVF clinic. A lawsuit was filed on behalf of the preembryos on the grounds that they were heirs to the couple's estate and should be carried to birth by a surrogate mother so they could inherit it. The court ruled against the suit and the preembryos were allowed to die. In still another widely publicized case, a man sued his wife for custody of their frozen preembryos as part of a divorce settlement.

IVF also creates a question of what to do with the excess preembryos. Some people view their disposal as a form of abortion, even if the preembryo is only a mass of 8 to 16 undifferentiated cells. On the other hand, there are those who see such excess preembryos as a research opportunity to obtain information that could not be obtained in any other way. In 1996, an IVF clinic in England was allowed to destroy 3,300 unclaimed preembryos, but only after heated public controversy.

It is common for scientific advances to require new advances in law and ethics. The parallel development of these disciplines is necessary if we are to benefit from the developments of science and ensure that knowledge is applied in an ethical and humane manner.

Chapter Review

Review of Key Concepts

Fertilization and Preembryonic Development (p. 1090)

1. Sperm must travel to the distal one-third of the uterine tube if they are to encounter the egg before it dies. This traveling, or *sperm migration,* may be aided by the cervical mucus, female orgasm, and chemical attractants emitted by the egg.
2. Freshly ejaculated sperm cannot fertilize an egg. They undergo *capacitation,* becoming capable of fertilization, as they migrate.
3. When a sperm encounters an egg, it releases enzymes from its acrosome (the *acrosomal reaction*), enabling it to penetrate the cumulus oophorus, zone pellucida, and egg membrane. Hundreds of sperm may be needed to clear a path for the one that fertilizes the egg.
4. The egg has a *fast block* and a *slow block* to prevent fertilization by more than one sperm *(polyspermy).* The fast block employs a change in egg membrane voltage that inhibits the binding of additional sperm. The slow block involves exocytosis of the egg's *cortical granules* to produce an impenetrable *fertilization membrane* around the egg.
5. The fertilized egg completes meiosis II and casts off a second polar body. The sperm and egg nuclei swell and form *pronuclei.* When the pronuclei rupture and their chromosomes mingle, the egg is a diploid *zygote.*
6. The first two weeks of development, called the *preembryonic stage,* consists of cleavage, implantation, and embryogenesis, resulting in an embryo.
7. Cleavage is the mitotic division of the zygote into cells called *blastomeres.* The stage that arrives at the uterus is a *morula* of about 16 blastomeres. It develops into a hollow ball called the *blastocyst,* with an outer cell mass called the *trophoblast* and inner cell mass called the *embryoblast.*
8. *Implantation* is the attachment of the blastocyst to the uterine wall. The trophoblast differentiates into a cellular mass called the *cytotrophoblast* next to the embryo, and a multinucleate mass called the *syncytiotrophoblast,* which grows rootlets into the endometrium. The endometrium grows over the blastocyst and soon completely covers it.
9. The trophoblast secretes human chorionic gonadotropin, the hormone that stimulates growth and secretion by the corpus luteum.
10. During implantation, the embryoblast differentiates into three *primary germ layers—ectoderm, mesoderm,* and *endoderm.* This process is *embryogenesis.* When the three primary germ layers have formed, 2 weeks after conception, the individual is an *embryo.*

Embryonic and Fetal Development (p. 1094)

1. The next 6 weeks of development are marked by formation of the extra-embryonic membranes, placental nutrition, and appearance of the organ systems.
2. After implantation, the conceptus is fed by *trophoblastic nutrition,* in which the trophoblast digests *decidual cells* of the endometrium. This is the dominant mode of nutrition for 8 weeks.
3. The *placenta* begins to form 11 days after conception as chorionic villi of the trophoblast eat into uterine blood vessels, eventually creating a blood-filled cavity called the *placental sinus.* The chorionic villi grow into branched treelike structures surrounded by the maternal blood in the sinus. Nutrients diffuse from the maternal blood into embryonic blood vessels in the villi, and embryonic wastes diffuse the other way to be disposed of by the mother. *Placental nutrition* becomes dominant at 8 weeks and continues until birth.
4. The placenta communicates with the embryo and fetus by way of two arteries and a vein contained in the umbilical cord.
5. Four membranes are associated with the embryo and fetus: the amnion, yolk sac, allantois, and chorion.
6. The *amnion* is a translucent sac that encloses the embryo in a pool of *amniotic fluid.* This fluid protects the embryo from trauma and temperature fluctuations and allows freedom of movement and symmetric development.
7. The *yolk sac* contributes to development of the digestive tract and produces the first blood and germ cells of the embryo.
8. The *allantois* is an outgrowth of the yolk sac that forms a structural foundation for umbilical cord development and becomes part of the urinary bladder.
9. The *chorion* encloses all of the other membranes and forms the fetal part of the placenta.
10. *Organogenesis* is the differentiation of the primary germ layers into all of the organs and organ systems (table 29.2). Traces of all organ systems are present by the end of 8 weeks. The individual is considered a *fetus* from then until birth.
11. In the fetal stage, organs undergo growth and differentiation and become capable of functioning outside the mother's body. Major developments in the fetal stage are summarized in table 29.4.
12. The circulatory system differs most markedly from prenatal to neonatal life. In the fetus, a pair of umbilical arteries arise from the internal iliac arteries and supply the placenta. A single umbilical vein returns from the placenta and drains most of its blood into the inferior vena cava (IVC).
13. Three bypasses or shunts divert fetal blood from organs that are not very functional before birth: The *ductus venosus* bypasses the liver and carries most umbilical vein blood directly to the IVC; the *foramen ovale* in the interatrial septum of the heart

allows blood to pass directly from the right atrium to the left atrium, bypassing the lungs; and the *ductus arteriosus* allows blood in the pulmonary trunk to pass directly into the aorta and bypass the lungs.

The Neonate (p. 1101)

1. The first 6 to 8 hours after birth are a *transitional period* marked by increasing heart and respiratory rates and falling temperature. The first 6 weeks of postpartum life are the *neonatal period.*
2. After severance of the umbilical cord, the proximal parts of the umbilical arteries become *vesical arteries,* which supply the urinary bladder. Other blood vessels unique to the fetus close and become fibrous cords or ligaments. The foramen ovale and ductus arteriosus close so that blood from the right heart is forced to circulate through the lungs.
3. Breathing is very difficult for the neonate as it first inflates the pulmonary alveoli.
4. Neonatal immunity depends heavily on IgG acquired through the placenta and IgA from colostrum. By 6 months, the infant produces ample IgG of its own.
5. Neonatal thermoregulation is critical because infants lose heat easily. This heat loss is compensated for to some extent by a form of heat-producing adipose tissue called *brown fat.*
6. The neonatal kidneys are not very efficient at concentrating urine, so neonates have a relatively high rate of water loss and require more fluid intake than adults do relative to their body weight.
7. Premature infants suffer especially from respiratory distress syndrome, poor thermoregulation, poor fat digestion, and multiple dysfunctions resulting from inadequate liver function.
8. Congenital anomalies (birth defects) can result from infectious diseases, teratogens, mutagens, and genetic disorders.
9. Some of the more common and serious infectious diseases and pathogens of the newborn are herpes simplex, cytomegalovirus, HIV, gonorrhea, and syphilis.
10. *Teratogens,* agents that cause anatomical deformities, include alcohol, nicotine, and X rays.
11. *Nondisjunction,* the failure of homologous chromosomes to separate during meiosis, can result in such congenital defects as triplo-X, Klinefelter, Turner, and Down syndromes.

Aging and Senescence (p. 1107)

1. *Senescence* is the degeneration that occurs in an organ system as we age. It begins at very different ages and progresses at different rates in different organ systems. Senescence of one organ system often contributes to the senescence of others.
2. Senescence of the integumentary system is marked by graying and thinning of the hair, atrophy of sebaceous glands, thinning and loss of elasticity in the skin, fragility of cutaneous blood vessels, decline in cutaneous sensory function, slower healing, and poorer thermoregulation. *Intrinsic aging* occurs inevitably with time, while *photoaging* is an added effect proportional to the amount of lifetime UV exposure. Senescence of the skin contributes to lactose intolerance, bone loss, muscle weakness, and poorer glandular secretion and synaptic transmission.
3. Senescence of the skeletal system is marked by loss of bone density (*osteopenia* or, when more severe, *osteoporosis*), increasing susceptibility to fractures, slower healing of fractures, osteoarthritis, and other degenerative joint diseases.
4. The aging muscular system exhibits muscular atrophy, loss of strength, and easy fatigue. Some loss of muscular function results from degenerative changes in the nervous system.
5. Senescence of the nervous system is marked by substantial loss of brain tissue and synapses, less efficient synaptic transmission, and declining motor coordination, intellectual function, and short-term memory, but relatively little loss of language skills and long-term memory. Senescence of the sympathetic division results in less effective homeostasis in other organ systems.
6. Visual acuity and auditory sensitivity begin to decline shortly after adolescence. Vision can be impaired by cataracts, glaucoma, and reduced dark adaptation. Declining inner-ear function can result in poor balance. Taste and smell become less sensitive.
7. The endocrine system shows relatively little senescence except for the decline in reproductive hormones. Reduced densities of hormone receptors can contribute to type II diabetes mellitus and poorer negative feedback control of the pituitary.
8. Senescence of the circulatory system is a leading cause of death. Anemia, atherosclerosis, thrombosis, varicose veins, hemorrhoids, and edema become more common in old age. Atherosclerosis contributes to weakening of the heart, myocardial infarction, aneurysm, stroke, and atrophy of all organs.
9. Senescence of the immune system makes older people more subject to cancer and infectious diseases.
10. Pulmonary functions decline as the thoracic cage becomes less flexible and the lungs have fewer alveoli. Pneumonia and chronic obstructive pulmonary diseases are major causes of death.
11. The kidneys atrophy a great deal with age, and thus elderly people are less able to maintain water balance and to clear drugs or toxins from the body. Elderly men are increasingly subject to prostatic enlargement and urine retention, and women to urinary incontinence.
12. Senescence of the digestive system includes reduced salivation, difficulty swallowing, poorer dental health, atrophy of the stomach, gastroesophageal reflux, constipation, loss of appetite, and impaired liver function.
13. Reproductive senescence is marked in men by reduced testosterone secretion, sperm count, and libido, and in women by menopause and multiple effects of the loss of estrogen secretion.
14. Exercise slows the rate of senescence and improves the quality of life in old age by maintaining strength, endurance, flexibility, and independence. It reduces the incidence and severity of hypertension, osteoporosis, obesity, and diabetes mellitus.
15. There are numerous theories of what causes senescence. *Replicative senescence,* a limit on how many times cells can divide, may stem from shortening of the chromosomal *telomeres* at each cell division. Cross-

linking of proteins and DNA and the misfolding and other structural defects in proteins may cause increasing cellular dysfunction. The cumulative effects of free radical damage and increased incidence of autoimmune disease may be other factors in senescence.

16. Longevity is known to be partially hereditary. Natural selection has presumably been unable to eliminate genes that cause some of the diseases of old age because such genes have no effects that natural selection can act on until after the individual has reproduced.
17. *Life expectancy* has increased in modern times mostly because of our ability to reduce infant and childhood mortality. *Life span,* the maximum attainable age, has not markedly changed, however.
18. Death is usually clinically defined by an absence of brain waves, reflexes, or spontaneous respiration or heartbeat.

Selected Vocabulary

capacitation	1090
acrosomal reaction	1090
zygote	1091
morula	1091
blastocyst	1093
implantation	1093
embryo	1094
placenta	1095
amnion	1097
chorion	1098
fetus	1098
meconium	1101
lanugo	1101
vernix caseosa	1101
teratogen	1104
senescence	1107
telomere	1113

Testing Your Recall

1. When a conceptus arrives in the uterus, it is at what stage of development?
    a. zygote
    b. morula
    c. blastomere
    d. blastocyst
    e. embryo
2. The entry of a sperm nucleus into an egg must be preceded by
    a. the cortical reaction.
    b. the acrosomal reaction.
    c. the fast block.
    d. implantation.
    e. cleavage.
3. The stage of the conceptus that implants in the uterine wall is
    a. a blastomere.
    b. a morula.
    c. a blastocyst.
    d. an embryo.
    e. a zygote.
4. Chorionic villi develop from
    a. the zona pellucida.
    b. the endometrium.
    c. the syncytiotrophoblast.
    d. the embryoblast.
    e. the corona radiata.
5. Which of these results from aneuploidy?
    a. Turner syndrome
    b. fetal alcohol syndrome
    c. nondisjunction
    d. progeria
    e. rubella
6. Fetal urine accumulates in the _______ and contributes to the fluid there.
    a. placental sinus
    b. yolk sac
    c. allantois
    d. chorion
    e. amnion
7. One theory of senescence is that it results from a lifetime of damage by
    a. teratogens.
    b. aneuploidy.
    c. free radicals.
    d. cytomegalovirus.
    e. nondisjunction.
8. Photoaging is a major factor in the senescence of
    a. the integumentary system.
    b. the eyes.
    c. the nervous system.
    d. the skeletal system.
    e. the cardiovascular system.
9. Which of these is *not* a common effect of senescence?
    a. reduced synthesis of vitamin D
    b. atrophy of the kidneys
    c. atrophy of the cerebral gyri
    d. increased herniation of intervertebral discs
    e. reduced pulmonary vital capacity
10. For the first 8 weeks of gestation, a conceptus is nourished mainly by
    a. the placenta.
    b. amniotic fluid.
    c. colostrum.
    d. decidual cells.
    e. yolk cytoplasm.
11. Viruses and chemicals that cause congenital anatomical deformities are called _______.
12. Aneuploidy is caused by _______, the failure of two homologous chromosomes to separate in meiosis.
13. The maximum age attainable by a member of the human species is called the _______.
14. The average age attained by humans in a given population is called the _______.
15. Fetal blood flows through growths called _______, which project into the placental sinus.
16. The enzymes with which a sperm penetrates an egg are contained in an organelle called the _______.
17. Stiffening of the arteries, joints, and lenses in old age may be a result of cross-linking between _______ molecules.

18. An enlarged tongue, epicanthal folds of the eyes, and mental retardation are characteristic of a genetic anomaly called ______.
19. The fossa ovalis is a remnant of a fetal shunt called the ______.
20. A developing individual is first classified as a/an ______ when the three primary germ layers have formed.

Answers in Appendix B

True or False

Determine which five of the following statements are false, and briefly explain why.

1. Freshly ejaculated sperm are more capable of fertilizing an egg than are sperm several hours old.
2. Fertilization normally occurs in the lumen of the uterus.
3. An egg is usually fertilized by the first sperm that contacts it.
4. By the time a conceptus reaches the uterus, it has already undergone several cell divisions and consists of 16 cells or more.
5. The conceptus is first considered a fetus when all of the organ systems are present.
6. The placenta becomes increasingly permeable as it develops.
7. The endocrine system shows less senescence in old age than most other organ systems.
8. Fetal blood bypasses the nonfunctional liver by passing through the foramen ovale.
9. Blood in the umbilical vein has a higher P_{O_2} than blood in the umbilical arteries.
10. It is well established that people who exercise regularly live longer than those who do not.

Answers in Appendix B

Testing Your Comprehension

1. Suppose a woman had a mutation resulting in a tough zona pellucida that did not disintegrate after the egg was fertilized. How would this affect her fertility? Why?
2. Suppose a drug were developed that could slow down the rate of collagen cross-linking with age. What diseases of old age could be made less severe with such a drug?
3. Some health-food stores market the enzyme superoxide dismutase (SOD) as an oral antioxidant to retard senescence. Explain why it would be a waste of your money to buy it.
4. In some children, the ductus arteriosus fails to close after birth—a condition that eventually requires surgery. Predict how this condition would affect (a) pulmonary blood pressure, (b) systemic diastolic pressure, and (c) the right ventricle of the heart.
5. Only one sperm is needed to fertilize an egg, yet a man who ejaculates fewer than 10 million sperm is usually infertile. Explain this apparent contradiction. Supposing 10 million sperm were ejaculated, predict how many would come within close range of the egg. How likely is it that any one of these sperm would fertilize it?

Chapter 29

Answers at the Online Learning Center

Answers to Figure Legend Questions

29.2 An unfertilized egg dies long before it reaches the uterus.
29.7 Eight weeks
29.12 Subcutaneous fat deposition occurs largely in the eighth month.
29.14 XXY (Klinefelter syndrome) and YO (a zygote that would not survive)
29.16 Female, as seen from the two X chromosomes at the lower right

www.mhhe.com/saladin3

The Online Learning Center provides a wealth of information fully organized and integrated by chapter. You will find practice quizzes, interactive activities, labeling exercises, flashcards, and much more that will complement your learning and understanding of anatomy and physiology.

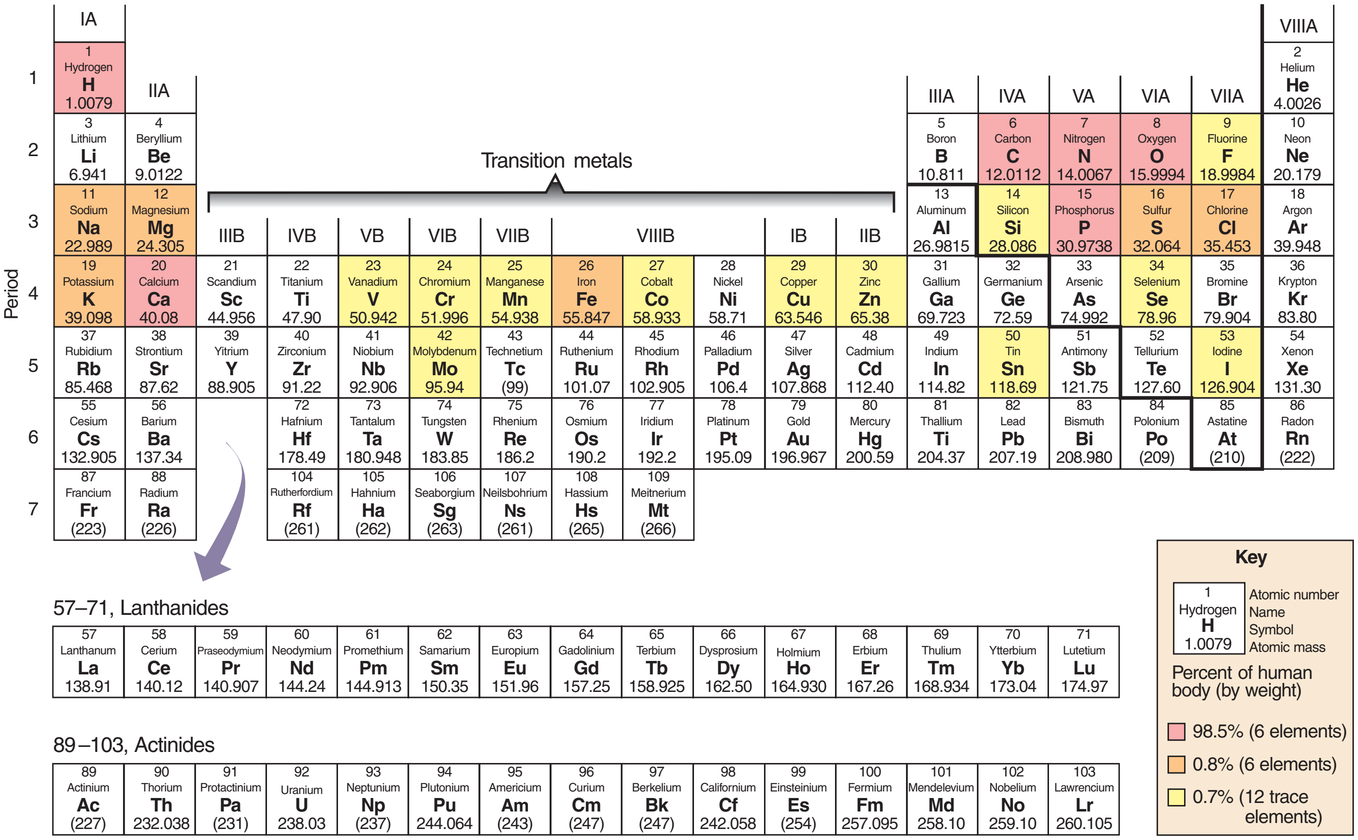
Appendix A

Periodic Table of the Elements

Nineteenth-century chemists discovered that when they arranged the known elements by atomic weight, certain properties reappeared periodically. In 1869, Russian chemist Dmitri Mendeleev published the first modern periodic table of the elements, leaving gaps for those that had not yet been discovered. He accurately predicted properties of the missing elements, which helped other chemists discover and isolate them.

Each row in the table is a *period* and each column is a *group (family).* Each period has one electron shell more than the period above it, and as we progress from left to right within a period, each element has one more proton and electron than the one before. The dark steplike line from boron (5) to astatine (85) separates the metals to the left of it (except hydrogen) from the nonmetals to the right. Each period begins with a soft, light, highly reactive *alkali metal,* with one valence electron, in family IA. Progressing from left to right, the metallic properties of the elements become less and less pronounced. Elements in family VIIA are highly reactive gases called *halogens,* with seven valence electrons. Elements in family VIIIA, called *noble (inert) gases,* have a full valence shell of eight electrons, which makes them chemically unreactive. Ninety-one of the elements occur naturally on earth. Physicists have created elements up to atomic number 118 in the laboratory, but the International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry has established formal names only through element 109 to date.

The 24 elements with normal roles in human physiology are color-coded according to their relative abundance in the body (see chapter 2). Others, however, may be present as contaminants with very destructive effects (such as arsenic, lead, and radiation poisoning).



Transition metals

Period	IA	IIA	IIIB	IVB	VB	VIB	VIIB	VIIIB			IB	IIB	IIIA	IVA	VA	VIA	VIIA	VIIIA
1	🟥 1 Hydrogen **H** 1.0079																	2 Helium **He** 4.0026
2	3 Lithium **Li** 6.941	4 Beryllium **Be** 9.0122											5 Boron **B** 10.811	🟥 6 Carbon **C** 12.0112	🟥 7 Nitrogen **N** 14.0067	🟥 8 Oxygen **O** 15.9994	🟨 9 Fluorine **F** 18.9984	10 Neon **Ne** 20.179
3	🟧 11 Sodium **Na** 22.989	🟧 12 Magnesium **Mg** 24.305											13 Aluminum **Al** 26.9815	🟨 14 Silicon **Si** 28.086	🟥 15 Phosphorus **P** 30.9738	🟧 16 Sulfur **S** 32.064	🟧 17 Chlorine **Cl** 35.453	18 Argon **Ar** 39.948
4	🟧 19 Potassium **K** 39.098	🟥 20 Calcium **Ca** 40.08	21 Scandium **Sc** 44.956	22 Titanium **Ti** 47.90	🟨 23 Vanadium **V** 50.942	🟨 24 Chromium **Cr** 51.996	🟨 25 Manganese **Mn** 54.938	🟧 26 Iron **Fe** 55.847	🟨 27 Cobalt **Co** 58.933	28 Nickel **Ni** 58.71	🟨 29 Copper **Cu** 63.546	🟨 30 Zinc **Zn** 65.38	31 Gallium **Ga** 69.723	32 Germanium **Ge** 72.59	33 Arsenic **As** 74.992	🟨 34 Selenium **Se** 78.96	35 Bromine **Br** 79.904	36 Krypton **Kr** 83.80
5	37 Rubidium **Rb** 85.468	38 Strontium **Sr** 87.62	39 Yitrium **Y** 88.905	40 Zirconium **Zr** 91.22	41 Niobium **Nb** 92.906	🟨 42 Molybdenum **Mo** 95.94	43 Technetium **Tc** (99)	44 Ruthenium **Ru** 101.07	45 Rhodium **Rh** 102.905	46 Palladium **Pd** 106.4	47 Silver **Ag** 107.868	48 Cadmium **Cd** 112.40	49 Indium **In** 114.82	🟨 50 Tin **Sn** 118.69	51 Antimony **Sb** 121.75	52 Tellurium **Te** 127.60	🟨 53 Iodine **I** 126.904	54 Xenon **Xe** 131.30
6	55 Cesium **Cs** 132.905	56 Barium **Ba** 137.34		72 Hafnium **Hf** 178.49	73 Tantalum **Ta** 180.948	74 Tungsten **W** 183.85	75 Rhenium **Re** 186.2	76 Osmium **Os** 190.2	77 Iridium **Ir** 192.2	78 Platinum **Pt** 195.09	79 Gold **Au** 196.967	80 Mercury **Hg** 200.59	81 Thallium **Ti** 204.37	82 Lead **Pb** 207.19	83 Bismuth **Bi** 208.980	84 Polonium **Po** (209)	85 Astatine **At** (210)	86 Radon **Rn** (222)
7	87 Francium **Fr** (223)	88 Radium **Ra** (226)		104 Rutherfordium **Rf** (261)	105 Hahnium **Ha** (262)	106 Seaborgium **Sg** (263)	107 Neilsbohrium **Ns** (261)	108 Hassium **Hs** (265)	109 Meitnerium **Mt** (266)									

57–71, Lanthanides

57 Lanthanum **La** 138.91	58 Cerium **Ce** 140.12	59 Praseodymium **Pr** 140.907	60 Neodymium **Nd** 144.24	61 Promethium **Pm** 144.913	62 Samarium **Sm** 150.35	63 Europium **Eu** 151.96	64 Gadolinium **Gd** 157.25	65 Terbium **Tb** 158.925	66 Dysprosium **Dy** 162.50	67 Holmium **Ho** 164.930	68 Erbium **Er** 167.26	69 Thulium **Tm** 168.934	70 Ytterbium **Yb** 173.04	71 Lutetium **Lu** 174.97

89–103, Actinides

89 Actinium **Ac** (227)	90 Thorium **Th** 232.038	91 Protactinium **Pa** (231)	92 Uranium **U** 238.03	93 Neptunium **Np** (237)	94 Plutonium **Pu** 244.064	95 Americium **Am** (243)	96 Curium **Cm** (247)	97 Berkelium **Bk** (247)	98 Californium **Cf** 242.058	99 Einsteinium **Es** (254)	100 Fermium **Fm** 257.095	101 Mendelevium **Md** 258.10	102 Nobelium **No** 259.10	103 Lawrencium **Lr** 260.105

Key

1	Atomic number
Hydrogen	Name
H	Symbol
1.0079	Atomic mass

Percent of human body (by weight)

- 🟥 98.5% (6 elements)
- 🟧 0.8% (6 elements)
- 🟨 0.7% (12 trace elements)

Appendix B

Answers to Chapter Review Questions

This appendix provides answers to the end-of-chapter Testing Your Recall and True/False questions. In the True or False sections, all statements are true except those listed and explained here. Answers to the figure legend questions are given at the end of each chapter; answers to Think About It and Testing Your Comprehension questions are in the Instructor's Manual; and answers to Testing Your Comprehension are also given at the Online Learning Center at www.mhhe.com/saladin3.

Chapter 1

1. a
2. e
3. d
4. a
5. c
6. c
7. a
8. c
9. d
10. b
11. dissection
12. Hooke
13. deduction
14. psychosomatic
15. homeostasis
16. set point
17. negative feedback
18. organ
19. stereoscopic
20. prehensile, opposable

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

3. Auscultation means listening to body sounds, not inspecting its appearance.
6. Leeuwenhoek was a textile merchant who built microscopes to examine fabric.
7. A scientific theory is founded on a large body of evidence, summarizing what is already known.
8. Both the treatment and control groups consist of volunteer patients.
10. Negative feedback is a self-corrective process with a beneficial effect on the body.

Atlas A

1. d
2. c
3. e
4. d
5. d
6. a
7. a
8. d
9. b
10. d
11. supine
12. parietal
13. mediastinum
14. nuchal
15. hand, foot
16. meninges
17. retroperitoneal
18. medial
19. inferior
20. cubital, popliteal

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

4. The diaphragm is inferior to the lungs.
5. The esophagus is in the ventral body cavity.
6. The liver is in the hypochondriac region, superior to the lateral abdominal region.
9. The peritoneum lines the outside of the stomach and intestines.
10. The sigmoid colon is in the lower left quadrant.

Chapter 2

1. a
2. c
3. a
4. c
5. a
6. e
7. b
8. c
9. b
10. d
11. cation
12. free radicals
13. catalyst, enzymes
14. anabolism
15. dehydration synthesis
16. -ose, -ase
17. phospholipids
18. cyclic adenosine monophosphate
19. anaerobic fermentation
20. substrate

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

1. The monomers of a polysaccharide are monosaccharides (simple sugars).
3. Such molecules are called isomers, not isotopes.
6. A saturated fat is one to which no more hydrogen can be added.
8. Above a certain temperature, enzymes denature and cease working.
9. These solutes have different molecular weights, so 2% solutions would not contain the same amount of solute.

Chapter 3

1. e
2. b
3. d
4. b
5. e
6. e
7. a
8. c
9. d
10. b
11. micrometers
12. second messenger
13. voltage-regulated
14. hydrostatic pressure
15. hypertonic
16. exocytosis
17. nucleus, mitochondria
18. smooth ER, peroxisomes
19. ligand-regulated gate
20. cisterna

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

1. Osmosis does not require ATP.
3. Second messengers activate enzymes in the cell; they are not transport proteins.
5. A channel could not move material from the outside of a cell to the inside unless it extended all the way across the membrane; it must be an integral protein.
6. The plasma membrane consists primarily of phospholipid molecules.
7. The brush border is composed of microvilli.

Chapter 4

1. a
2. e
3. c
4. c
5. e
6. b
7. a
8. d
9. d
10. a
11. cytokinesis
12. alleles
13. genetic code
14. polyribosome
15. RNA polymerased
16. chaperones
17. 46, 92, 92
18. ribosome
19. growth factors
20. autosomes

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

1. There are no ribosomes on the Golgi complex; they are on the rough ER.
2. There are no genes for steroids, carbohydrates, or phospholipids, but only for proteins.
6. This law describes the pairing of bases between the two strands of DNA, not between mRNA and tRNA.
9. Males have only one X chromosome, but have two sex chromosomes (the X and Y).
10. Several RNA polymerase molecules at once can transcribe a gene.

Chapter 5

1. a
2. b
3. c
4. e
5. c
6. a

7. b
8. e
9. b
10. b
11. necrosis
12. mesothelium
13. lacunae
14. fibers
15. collagen
16. skeletal muscle
17. basement membrane
18. matrix (extracellular material)
19. proteoglycans
20. simple

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

1. The esophageal epithelium is nonkeratinized.
5. Adipose tissue is an exception; cells constitute most of its volume.
6. Adipocytes are also found in areolar tissue, either singly or in small clusters.
7. Tight junctions serve mainly to restrict the passage of material between cells.
10. Perichondrium is lacking from fibrocartilage and from hyaline articular cartilage.

Chapter 6

1. d
2. c
3. d
4. b
5. a
6. e
7. c
8. a
9. a
10. d
11. insensible perspiration
12. piloerector
13. debridement
14. cyanosis
15. dermal papillae
16. earwax
17. sebaceous glands
18. anagen
19. dermal papilla
20. third-degree

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

3. Keratin is the protein of the epidermis; the dermis is composed mainly of collagen.
4. Vitamin D synthesis begins in the keratinocytes.
7. The hypodermis is not considered to be a layer of the skin.
8. Different races have about the same density of melanocytes but different amounts of melanin.
9. A genetic lack of melanin causes albinism, not pallor. Pallor is a temporary, nonhereditary paleness of the skin.

Chapter 7

1. e
2. a
3. d
4. c
5. d
6. a
7. d
8. e
9. b
10. d
11. hydroxyapatite
12. canaliculi
13. appositional
14. solubility product
15. hypocalcemia
16. osteoblasts
17. calcitriol
18. osteoporosis
19. metaphysis
20. osteomalacia

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

3. The most common bone disease is osteoporosis, not fractures.
4. Bones elongate at the epiphyseal plate, not the articular cartilage.
5. Osteoclasts develop from stem cells in the bone marrow, not from osteoblasts.
7. Hydroxyapatite is the major mineral of bone; the major protein is collagen.
9. The major effect of vitamin D is bone resorption, though it also promotes deposition.

Chapter 8

1. b
2. e
3. a
4. d
5. a
6. e
7. c
8. b
9. e
10. b
11. fontanels
12. temporal
13. sutures
14. sphenoid
15. annulus fibrosus
16. dens
17. auricular
18. styloid
19. pollex, hallux
20. medial longitudinal

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

2. Each hand and foot has 14 phalanges.
3. The female pelvis is wider and shallower than the male's.
7. The lumbar vertebrae have transverse processes but no transverse costal facets.
8. The most frequently broken bone is the clavicle.
9. *Arm* refers to the region containing only the humerus; *leg* refers to the region containing the tibia and fibula.

Chapter 9

1. c
2. b
3. a
4. e
5. c
6. c
7. a
8. d
9. b
10. d
11. synovial fluid
12. bursa
13. pivot
14. kinesiology
15. gomphosis
16. serrate
17. extension
18. range of motion
19. labrum
20. menisci

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

1. Osteoarthritis occurs in almost everyone after a certain age; rheumatoid arthritis is less common.
2. A kinesiologist studies joint movements; a rheumatologist treats arthritis.
3. Synovial joints are diarthroses and amphiarthroses but never synarthroses.
7. The round ligament is somewhat slack and probably does not secure the femoral head.
9. Synovial fluid is secreted by the synovial membrane of the joint capsule and fills the bursae.

Chapter 10

1. b
2. e
3. a
4. c
5. e
6. e
7. b
8. a
9. d
10. c
11. origin
12. fascicle
13. prime mover (agonist)
14. hamstring
15. flexor retinacula
16. urogenital triangle
17. linea alba
18. synergist
19. bipennate
20. sphincter

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

3. The mastoid process is its insertion.
7. The trapezius is superficial to the scalenes.
8. Normal exhalation does not employ these muscles.
9. They result from rapid extension of the knee, not flexion.
10. They are on opposite sides of the tibia and act as antagonists.

Atlas B

1. f
2. b
3. k
4. p
5. h
6. z
7. o
8. x
9. c
10. a
11. y
12. m
13. n
14. e
15. g
16. v
17. f
18. c
19. y
20. x
21. k
22. d
23. f
24. b
25. a
26. u
27. j
28. i
29. g
30. q

Chapter 11

1. a
2. d
3. b
4. d
5. a
6. c
7. e
8. c
9. e
10. b
11. threshold
12. complete tetanus
13. terminal cisternae
14. myosin
15. acetylcholine
16. myoglobin
17. Z discs
18. varicosities
19. muscle tone
20. lactic acid

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

1. A motor neuron may supply 1,000 or more muscle fibers; a motor unit consists of one motor neuron and all the muscle fibers it innervates.
2. Calcium binds to troponin, not to myosin.

6. Thick and thin filaments are present but not arranged in a way that produces striations.
7. Under natural conditions, a muscle seldom or never attains complete tetanus.
9. A muscle produces most of its ATP during this time by anaerobic fermentation, which generates lactic acid; it does not consume lactic acid.

Chapter 12

1. e
2. c
3. d
4. a
5. c
6. e
7. d
8. a
9. d
10. b
11. afferent
12. conductivity
13. absolute refractory period
14. dendrites
15. oligodendrocytes
16. nodes of Ranvier
17. axon hillock, initial segment
18. norepinephrine
19. facilitated zone
20. neuromodulators

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

4. The Na^+ outflow depolarizes the neuron and the K^+ inflow repolarizes it.
5. The threshold stays the same but an EPSP brings the membrane potential closer to the threshold.
7. The effect of a neurotransmitter varies from place to place depending on the type of receptor present.
8. The signals travel rapidly through the internodes and slow down at each node of Ranvier.
9. Synaptic contacts are remodeled, added, and removed throughout life.

Chapter 13

1. e
2. c
3. d
4. d
5. e
6. c
7. c
8. a
9. e
10. b
11. ganglia
12. ramus
13. spinocerebellar
14. crossed extensor
15. intrafusal fibers
16. phrenic
17. decussation
18. proprioception
19. dorsal root
20. tibial, common fibular

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

1. The gracile fasciculus is an ascending (sensory) tract.
4. All spinal nerves are mixed nerves; none are purely sensory or motor.
5. The dura is separated from the bone by a fat-filled epidural space.
8. Dermatomes overlap each other by as much as 50%.
9. Some somatic reflexes are mediated primarily through the brainstem and cerebellum.

Chapter 14

1. c
2. a
3. e
4. a
5. b
6. c
7. a
8. d
9. e
10. e
11. corpus callosum
12. ventricles, cerebrospinal
13. arbor vitae
14. hydrocephalus
15. choroid plexus
16. precentral
17. frontal
18. association areas
19. categorical
20. Broca's area

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

1. This fissure separates the cerebral hemispheres, not the cerebellar hemispheres.
2. The cerebral hemispheres do not develop from neural crest tissue.
5. The choroid plexuses produce only 30% of the CSF.
6. Hearing is a temporal lobe function; vision resides in the occipital lobe.
10. Eye movements are controlled by the oculomotor, trochlear, and abducens nerves; the optic nerve serves only to carry visual information.

Chapter 15

1. b
2. c
3. e
4. e
5. a
6. e
7. d
8. d
9. a
10. c
11. adrenergic
12. dual innervation
13. autonomic tone
14. vagus
15. enteric
16. norepinephrine
17. sympathetic
18. preganglionic, postganglionic
19. cAMP
20. vasomotor tone

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

1. Both systems are always simultaneously active.
3. In biofeedback and other circumstances, limited voluntary control of the ANS is possible.
4. The sympathetic division inhibits digestion.
6. Waste elimination can occur by autonomic spinal reflexes without necessarily involving the brain.
7. All parasympathetic fibers are cholinergic.

Chapter 16

1. a
2. c
3. b
4. a
5. e
6. e
7. d
8. c
9. c
10. b
11. fovea centralis
12. ganglion
13. Na^+
14. otoliths
15. hair cells
16. stapes
17. inferior colliculi
18. taste hairs
19. olfactory bulb
20. referred pain

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

1. These fibers end in the medulla oblongata.
3. Because of hemidecussation, the right hemisphere receives signals from both eyes.
5. The posterior chamber, the space between iris and lens, is filled with aqueous humor.
6. Descending analgesic fibers block signals that have reached the dorsal horn of the spinal cord.
10. The trochlear and abducens nerves control the superior oblique and lateral rectus, respectively.

Chapter 17

1. b
2. d
3. a
4. c
5. c
6. c
7. d
8. c
9. e
10. e
11. adenohypophysis
12. tyrosine
13. acromegaly
14. cortisol
15. glucocorticoids
16. granulosa, interstitial
17. negative feedback inhibition
18. hypophyseal portal system
19. permissive
20. up-regulation

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

5. Hormones are also secreted by the heart, liver, kidneys, and other organs not generally regarded as glands.
7. The pineal gland and thymus undergo involution with age.
8. Without iodine, there is no thyroid hormone (TH); without TH, there can be no negative feedback inhibition.
9. The tissue at the center is the adrenal medulla.
10. There are also two testes, two ovaries, and four parathyroid glands.

Chapter 18

1. b
2. c
3. c
4. a
5. b
6. d
7. d
8. c
9. d
10. c
11. hemopoiesis
12. hematocrit, or packed cell volume
13. thromboplastin
14. agglutinogens

15. hemophilia
16. hemostasis
17. sickle-cell disease
18. polycythemia
19. vitamin B_{12}
20. erythropoietin

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

3. Oxygen deficiency is the result of anemia, not its cause.
4. Clotting is one mechanism of hemostasis, but hemostasis includes others. Agglutination is unrelated to either of these.
6. The most abundant WBCs are neutrophils.
9. The heme is excreted; the globin is broken down into amino acids that can be reused.
10. In leukemia, there is an excess of WBCs. A WBC deficiency is leukopenia.

Chapter 19

1. d
2. b
3. d
4. a
5. e
6. c
7. d
8. e
9. a
10. e
11. systole, diastole
12. systemic
13. atrioventricular (coronary) sulcus
14. Na^+
15. gap junctions
16. T wave
17. semilunar
18. auscultation
19. preload
20. cardiac output

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

1. The coronary circulation is part of the systemic circuit; the other division is the pulmonary circuit.
3. The first two-thirds of ventricular filling occurs before the atria contract. The atria add only about 31% of the blood that fills the ventricles.
6. The first heart sound occurs at the time of the QRS complex.
7. The heart has its own internal pacemaker and would continue beating; the nerves only alter the heart rate.
10. The ECG is a composite record of the electrical activity of the entire myocardium, not a record from a single myocyte. It looks much different from an action potential.

Chapter 20

1. c
2. b
3. a
4. e
5. b
6. c
7. e
8. a
9. e
10. d
11. systolic, diastolic
12. continuous capillaries
13. anaphylactic
14. thoracic pump
15. oncotic pressure
16. transcytosis
17. sympathetic
18. baroreceptors
19. the arterial circle
20. basilic, cephalic

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

4. Some veins have valves, but arteries do not.
5. By the formula $F \propto r^4$, the flow increases 16-fold.
8. The capillaries normally reabsorb about 85% of the fluid they filter; the rest is absorbed by the lymphatic system.
9. An aneurysm is a weak, bulging vessel which *may* rupture.
10. Anaphylactic shock is a form of venous pooling shock.

Chapter 21

1. b
2. c
3. a
4. a
5. d
6. b
7. e
8. d
9. a
10. c
11. pathogen
12. lysozyme
13. lymphadenitis
14. diapedesis (emigration)
15. opsonization
16. pyrogen
17. interleukins
18. antigen-binding site, epitope
19. clonal deletion
20. autoimmune

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

1. Lysozyme is a bacteria-killing enzyme.
3. Interferons promote inflammation.
4. Helper T cells are also necessary to humoral immunity.
9. Anergy is a loss of lymphocyte activity, whereas autoimmune diseases result from misdirected activity.
10. Interferons inhibit viral replication; perforins lyse bacteria.

Chapter 22

1. c
2. c
3. a
4. e
5. e
6. c
7. b
8. a
9. d
10. a
11. glottis
12. bronchial tree
13. pulmonary surfactant
14. intrapleural, atmospheric
15. obstructive
16. anatomic dead space
17. compliance, elasticity
18. inspiratory center
19. ventilation-perfusion coupling
20. alkalosis, hypocapnia

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

1. The glottis is the superior opening into the larynx, not its inferior exit.
4. When volume increases, pressure decreases.
5. Atelectasis can have other causes such as airway obstruction.
8. In an average 500 mL tidal volume, 350 mL reaches the alveoli.
10. Most CO_2 is transported as bicarbonate ion.

Chapter 23

1. a
2. d
3. b
4. c
5. b
6. b
7. d
8. e
9. c
10. a
11. micturition
12. renal autoregulation
13. trigone
14. macula densa
15. podocytes
16. transport maximum
17. antidiuretic hormone
18. internal urethral
19. protein
20. arcuate

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

1. Parathyroid hormone regulates calcium absorption by the PCT.
2. Urine contains more urea and chloride than sodium.
4. A substantial amount of tubular fluid is reabsorbed by the paracellular route, passing through leaky tight junctions.
5. Glycosuria does not occur in diabetes insipidus.
8. Urine can be as dilute as 50 mOsm/L.

Chapter 24

1. c
2. a
3. a
4. a
5. d
6. c
7. e
8. b
9. d
10. b
11. Na^+
12. K^+
13. metabolic water
14. cutaneous transpiration
15. fluid sequestration
16. hyperkalemia
17. hyponatremia
18. respiratory acidosis
19. limiting pH
20. osmolarity

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

2. Aldosterone has only a small influence on blood pressure.
5. PTH promotes calcium absorption but phosphate excretion.
6. Protein buffers more acid than bicarbonate or phosphates do.
9. More water than salt is lost, so the body fluids become hypertonic.
10. Aquaporins are found in the distal tubule and collecting duct.

Chapter 25

1. b
2. d
3. c
4. e
5. a
6. c
7. a
8. a
9. a

10. a
11. occlusal
12. amylase, lipase
13. parotid
14. enteric
15. vagus
16. gastrin
17. sinusoids
18. maltase, maltose
19. chylomicrons
20. iron

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

1. Fat digestion begins in the stomach.
2. Most of the tooth is dentin.
3. Hepatocytes secrete bile into the bile canaliculi.
7. Intrinsic factor is involved in the absorption of vitamin B_{12}.
10. Water, glucose, and other nutrients pass between cells, through the tight junctions.

Chapter 26

1. a
2. c
3. b
4. e
5. b
6. e
7. c
8. a
9. d
10. d
11. incomplete
12. glycogenolysis
13. gluconeogenesis
14. urea
15. liver
16. insulin
17. core temperature
18. hypothalamus
19. cytochromes
20. ATP synthase, ATP

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

1. Leptin suppresses the appetite.
4. Most of the cholesterol is endogenous, not dietary.
5. Excessive protein intake can cause renal damage.
8. Gluconeogenesis is a postabsorptive phenomenon.
9. Brown fat does not generate ATP.

Chapter 27

1. a
2. a
3. a
4. c
5. a
6. d
7. e
8. c
9. d
10. d
11. mesonephric
12. fructose
13. pampiniform plexus
14. secondary spermatocytes
15. tunica albuginea
16. seminal vesicles
17. sustentacular
18. secondary spermatocyte
19. deep
20. acrosome

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

4. Only the testes are primary sex organs.
5. Female development results from a low testosterone level, not from estrogen.
7. The pampiniform plexus prevents the testes from overheating.
8. Sperm are stored in the epididymis.
9. There is no such phenomenon as male menopause.

Chapter 28

1. a
2. d
3. c
4. a
5. e
6. b
7. b
8. b
9. c
10. c
11. follicle
12. endometrium
13. menarche
14. corpus luteum
15. corona radiata
16. antrum
17. climacteric
18. conceptus
19. infundibulum, fimbriae
20. lochia

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

1. Only the ovum and corona radiata enter the uterine tube, not the whole follicle.
2. HCG is secreted by the placenta.
5. Many eggs and follicles undergo atresia during childhood, so their number is reduced by the age of puberty.
6. Prolactin is secreted during pregnancy but does not induce lactation then.
10. Only the superficial layer (functionalis) is shed.

Chapter 29

1. b
2. b
3. c
4. c
5. a
6. e
7. c
8. a
9. d
10. d
11. teratogens
12. nondisjunction
13. life span
14. life expectancy
15. chorionic villi
16. acrosome
17. collagen
18. Down syndrome (trisomy-21)
19. foramen ovale
20. embryo

True or False (explanation of the false statements only)

1. Sperm require about 10 hours to become capacitated and able to fertilize an egg.
2. Fertilization occurs in the uterine tube.
3. Several early-arriving sperm clear a path for the one that fertilizes the egg.
8. Blood bypasses the lungs via the foramen ovale.
10. Exercise improves the quality of life in old age, but has not been shown to increase life expectancy significantly.

Appendix C

Lexicon of Biomedical Word Elements

a- no, not, without (atom, agranulocyte)
ab- away (abducens, abduction)
acetabulo- small cup (acetabulum)
acro- tip, extremity, peak (acromion, acromegaly)
ad- to, toward, near (adsorption, adrenal)
adeno- gland (lymphadenitis, adenohypophysis)
aero- air, oxygen (aerobic, anaerobe, aerophagy)
af- toward (afferent)
ag- together (agglutination)
-al pertaining to (parietal, pharyngeal, temporal)
ala- wing (ala nasi)
albi- white (albicans, linea alba, albino)
algi- pain (analgesic, myalgia)
aliment- nourishment (alimentary)
allo- other, different (allele, allosteric)
amphi- both, either (amphiphilic, amphiarthrosis)
an- without (anaerobic, anemic)
ana- **1.** up, build up (anabolic, anaphylaxis). **2.** apart (anaphase, anatomy). **3.** back (anastomosis)
andro- male (androgen)
angi- vessel (angiogram, angioplasty, hemangioma)
ante- before, in front (antebrachium)
antero- forward (anterior, anterograde)
anti- against (antidiuretic, antibody, antagonist)
apo- from, off, away, above (apocrine, aponeurosis)
arbor- tree (arboreal, arborization)
artic- **1.** joint (articulation). **2.** speech (articulate)
-ary pertaining to (axillary, coronary)
-ase enzyme (polymerase, kinase, amylase)
ast-, astro- star (aster, astrocyte)
-ata, -ate **1.** possessing (hamate, corniculate). **2.** plural of *-a* (stomata, carcinomata)
athero- fat (atheroma, atherosclerosis)
atrio- entryway (atrium, atrioventricular)
auri- ear (auricle, binaural)
auto- self (autolysis, autoimmune)
axi- axis, straight line (axial, axoneme, axon)
baro- pressure (baroreceptor, hyperbaric)
bene- good, well (benign, beneficial)
bi- two (bipedal, biceps, bifid)
bili- bile (biliary, bilirubin)
bio- life, living (biology, biopsy, microbial)
blasto- precursor, bud, producer (fibroblast, osteoblast, blastomere)
brachi- arm (brachium, brachialis, antebrachium)
brady- slow (bradycardia, bradypnea)
bucco- cheek (buccal, buccinator)
burso- purse (bursa, bursitis)
calc- calcium, stone (calcaneus, hypocalcemia)
callo- thick (callus, callosum)
calori- heat (calorie, calorimetry, calorigenic)
calv-, calvari- bald, skull (calvaria)
calyx cup, vessel, chalice (glycocalyx, renal calyx)
capito- head (capitis, capitate, capitulum)
capni- smoke, carbon dioxide (hypocapnia)
carcino- cancer (carcinogen, carcinoma)
cardi- heart (cardiac, cardiology, pericardium)
carot- **1.** carrot (carotene). **2.** stupor (carotid)
carpo- wrist (carpus, metacarpal)
case- cheese (caseosa, casein)
cata- down, break down (catabolism)
cauda- tail (cauda equina, caudate nucleus)
-cel little (pedicel)
celi- belly, abdomen (celiac)
centri- center, middle (centromere, centriole)
cephalo- head (cephalic, encephalitis)
cervi- neck, narrow part (cervix, cervical)
chiasm- cross, X (optic chiasm)
choano- funnel (choana)
chole- bile (cholecystokinin, cholelithotripsy)
chondro- **1.** grain (mitochondria). **2.** cartilage, gristle (chondrocyte, perichondrium)
chromo- color (dichromat, chromatin, cytochrome)
chrono- time (chronotropic, chronic)
cili- eyelash (cilium, supraciliary)
circ- about, around (circadian, circumduction)
cis- cut (incision, incisor)
cisterna reservoir (cisterna chyli)
clast- break down, destroy (osteoclast)
clavi- hammer, club, key (clavicle, supraclavicular)
-cle little (tubercle, corpuscle)
cleido- clavicle (sternocleidomastoid)
cnemo- lower leg (gastrocnemius)
co- together (coenzyme, cotransport)
collo- **1.** hill (colliculus). **2.** glue (colloid, collagen)
contra- opposite (contralateral)
corni- horn (cornified, corniculate, cornu)
corono- crown (coronary, corona, coronal)
corpo- body (corpus luteum, corpora quadrigemina)
corti- bark, rind (cortex, cortical)
costa- rib (intercostal, subcostal)
coxa- hip (os coxae, coxal)
crani- helmet (cranium, epicranius)
cribri- sieve, strainer (cribriform, area cribrosa)
crino- separate, secrete (holocrine, endocrinology)
crista- crest (crista galli, mitochondrial crista)
crito- to separate (hematocrit)
cruci- cross (cruciate ligament)
-cule, -culus small (canaliculus, trabecula, auricular)
cune- wedge (cuneiform, cuneatus)
cutane-, cuti- skin (subcutaneous, cuticle)
cysto- bladder (cystitis, cholecystectomy)
cyto- cell (cytology, cytokinesis, monocyte)
de- down (defecate, deglutition, dehydration)
demi- half (demifacet, demilune)
den-, denti- tooth (dentition, dens, dental)
dendro- tree, branch (dendrite, oligodendrocyte)
derma-, dermato- skin (dermatology, hypodermic)
desmo- band, bond, ligament (desmosome, syndesmosis)
dia- **1.** across, through, separate (diaphragm, dialysis). **2.** day (circadian)
dis- **1.** apart (dissect, dissociate). **2.** opposite, absence (disinfect, disability)
diure- pass through, urinate (diuretic, diuresis)
dorsi- back (dorsal, dorsum, latissimus dorsi)
duc- to carry (duct, adduction, abducens)
dys- bad, abnormal, painful (dyspnea, dystrophy)
e- out (ejaculate, eversion)
-eal pertaining to (hypophyseal, arboreal)
ec-, ecto- outside, out of, external (ectopic, ectoderm, splenectomy)
ef- out of (efferent, effusion)
-el, -elle small (fontanel, organelle, micelle)
electro- electricity (electrocardiogram, electrolyte)
em- in, within (embolism, embedded)
emesi-, emeti- vomiting (emetic, hyperemesis)
-emia blood condition (anemia, hypoxemia)
en- in, into (enzyme, parenchyma)
encephalo- brain (encephalitis, telencephalon)
enchymo- poured in (mesenchyme, parenchyma)
endo- within, into, internal (endocrine, endocytosis)

entero- gut, intestine (mesentery, myenteric)
epi- upon, above (epidermis, epiphysis, epididymis)
ergo- work, energy, action (allergy, adrenergic)
eryth-, erythro- red (erythema, erythrocyte)
esthesio- sensation, feeling (anesthesia, somesthetic)
eu- good, true, normal, easy (eupnea, aneuploidy)
exo- out (exopeptidase, exocytosis, exocrine)
facili- easy (facilitated)
fasci- band, bundle (fascia, fascicle)
fenestr- window (fenestrated)
fer- to carry (efferent, uriniferous)
ferri- iron (ferritin, transferrin)
fibro- fiber (fibroblast, fibrosis)
fili- thread (myofilament, filiform)
flagello- whip (flagellum)
foli- leaf (folic acid, folia)
-form shape (cuneiform, fusiform)
fove- pit, depression (fovea)
funiculo- little rope, cord (funiculus)
fusi- 1. spindle (fusiform). **2.** pour out (perfusion)
gamo- marriage, union (monogamy, gamete)
gastro- belly, stomach (digastric, gastrointestinal)
-gen, -genic, -genesis producing, giving rise to (pathogen, carcinogenic, glycogenesis)
genio- chin (geniohyoid, genioglossus)
germi- 1. sprout, bud (germinal, germinativum). **2.** microbe (germicide)
gero- old age (progeria, geriatrics, gerontology)
gesto- 1. to bear, carry (ingest). **2.** pregnancy (gestation, progesterone)
glia- glue (neuroglia, microglia)
globu- ball, sphere (globulin, hemoglobin)
glom- ball (glomerulus)
glosso- tongue (hypoglossal, glossopharyngeal)
glyco- sugar (glycogen, glycolysis, hypoglycemia)
gono- 1. angle, corner (trigone). **2.** seed, sex cell, generation (gonad, oogonium, gonorrhea)
gradi- walk, step (retrograde, gradient)
-gram recording of (sonogram, electrocardiogram)
-graph recording instrument (sonograph, electrocardiograph)
-graphy recording process (sonography, radiography)
gravi- severe, heavy (gravid, myasthenia gravis)
gyro- turn, twist (gyrus)
hallu- great toe (hallux, hallucis)
hemi- half (hemidesmosome, hemisphere)
-hemia blood condition (polycythemia)
hemo- blood (hemophilia, hemoglobin, hematology)
hetero- different, other, various (heterozygous)
histo- tissue, web (histology, histone)
holo- whole, entire (holistic, holocrine)
homeo- constant, unchanging, uniform (homeostasis, homeothermic)
homo- same, alike (homologous, homozygous)
hyalo- clear, glassy (hyaline, hyaluronic acid)
hydro- water (dehydration, hydrolysis, hydrophobic)
hyper- above, above normal, excessive (hyperkalemia, hypertonic)
hypo- below, below normal, deficient (hypogastric, hyponatremia, hypophysis)
-ia condition (anemia, hypocalcemia, osteomalacia)
-ic pertaining to (isotonic, hemolytic, antigenic)
-icle, -icul small (ossicle, canaliculus, reticular)
ilia- flank, loin (ilium, iliac)
-illa, -illus little (bacillus)
-in protein (trypsin, fibrin, globulin)
infra- below (infraspinous, infrared)
ino- fiber (inotropic, inositol)
insulo- island (insula, insulin)
inter- between (intercellular, intervertebral)
intra- within (intracellular, intraocular)
iono- ion (ionotropic, cationic)
ischi- to hold back (ischium, ischemia)
-ism 1. process, state, condition (metabolism, rheumatism). **2.** doctrine, belief, theory (holism, reductionism, naturalism)
iso- same, equal (isometric, isotonic, isomer)
-issimus most, greatest (latissimus, longissimus)
-ite little (dendrite, somite)
-itis inflammation (dermatitis, gingivitis)
jug- to join (conjugated, jugular)
juxta- next to (juxtamedullary, juxtaglomerular)
kali- potassium (hypokalemia)
karyo- seed, nucleus (megakaryocyte, karyotype)
kerato- horn (keratin, keratinocyte)
kine- motion, action (kinetic, kinase, cytokinesis)
labi- lip (labium, levator labii)
lacera- torn, cut (foramen lacerum, laceration)
lacrimo- tear, cry (lacrimal gland, nasolacrimal)
lacto- milk (lactose, lactation, prolactin)
lamina- layer (lamina propria, laminar flow)
latero- side (bilateral, ipsilateral)
lati- broad (fascia lata, latissimus dorsi)
-lemma husk (sarcolemma, neurilemma)
lenti- lens (lentiform)
-let small (platelet)
leuko- white (leukocyte, leukemia)
levato- to raise (levator labii, elevation)
ligo- to bind (ligand, ligament)
line- line (linea alba, linea nigra)
litho- stone (otolith, lithotripsy)
-logy study of (histology, physiology, hematology)
lucid- light, clear (stratum lucidum, zona pellucida)
lun- moon, crescent (lunate, lunule, semilunar)
lute- yellow (macula lutea, corpus luteum)
lyso-, lyto- split apart, break down (lysosome, hydrolysis, electrolyte, hemolytic)
macro- large (macromolecule, macrophage)
macula- spot (macula lutea, macula densa)
mali- bad (malignant, malocclusion, malformed)
malle- hammer (malleus, malleolus)
mammo- breast (mammary, mammillary)
mano- hand (manus, manipulate)
manubri- handle (manubrium)
masto- breast (mastoid, gynecomastia)
medi- middle (medial, mediastinum, intermediate)
medullo- marrow, pith (medulla)
mega- large (megakaryocyte, hepatomegaly)
melano- black (melanin, melanocyte, melancholy)
meno- month (menstruation, menopause)
mento- chin (mental, mentalis)
mero- part, segment (isomer, centromere, merocrine)
meso- in the middle (mesoderm, mesentery)
meta- beyond, next in a series (metaphase, metacarpal)
metabolo- change (metabolism, metabolite)
-meter measuring device (calorimeter, spirometer)
metri- 1. length, measure (isometric, emmetropic). **2.** uterus (endometrium)
micro- small (microscopic, microcytic, microglia)
mito- thread, filament, grain (mitochondria, mitosis)
mono- one (monocyte, monogamy, mononucleosis)
morpho- form, shape, structure (morphology, amorphous)
muta- change (mutagen, mutation)
myelo- 1. spinal cord (poliomyelitis, myelin). **2.** bone marrow (myeloid, myelocytic)
myo-, mysi- muscle (myoglobin, myosin, epimysium)
natri- sodium (hyponatremia, natriuretic)
neo- new (neonatal, gluconeogenesis)
nephro- kidney (nephron, hydronephrosis)
neuro- nerve (aponeurosis, neurosoma, neurology)
nucleo- nucleus, kernel (nucleolus, nucleic acid)
oo- egg (oogenesis, oocyte)
ob- 1. life (aerobic, microbe). **2.** against, toward, before (obstetrics, obturator, obstruction)
oculo- eye (oculi, oculomotor)
odonto- tooth (odontoblast, periodontal)
-oid like, resembling (colloid, sigmoid, ameboid)
-ole small (arteriole, bronchiole, nucleolus)
oligo- few, a little, scanty (oligopeptide, oliguria)
-oma tumor, mass (carcinoma, hematoma)
omo- shoulder (omohyoid, acromion)
onycho- nail, claw (hyponychium, onychomycosis)

op- vision (optics, myopia, photopic)
-opsy viewing, to see (biopsy, rhodopsin)
or- mouth (oral, orbicularis oris)
orbi- circle (orbicularis, orbit)
organo- tool, instrument (organ, organelle)
ortho- straight (orthopnea, orthodontics, orthopedics)
-ose 1. full of (adipose). **2.** sugar (sucrose, glucose)
-osis 1. process (osmosis, exocytosis). **2.** condition, disease (cyanosis, thrombosis). **3.** increase (leukocytosis)
osmo- push (osmosis, chemiosmotic)
osse-, oste- bone (osseous, osteoporosis)
oto- ear (otolith, otitis, parotid)
-ous 1. full of (nitrogenous, edematous). **2.** pertaining to (mucous, nervous). **3.** like, characterized by (squamous, filamentous)
ovo- egg (ovum, ovary, ovulation)
oxy- 1. oxygen (hypoxia, oxyhemoglobin). **2.** sharp, quick (oxytocin)
palli- pale (pallor, globus pallidus)
palpebro- eyelid (palpebrae)
pan- all (panhypopituitarism, pancreas)
panni- cloth, rag (pannus, panniculus)
papillo- nipple (papilla, papillary)
par- birth (postpartum, parturition, multiparous)
para- next to (parathyroid, parotid)
parieto- wall (parietal)
patho- 1. disease (pathology, pathogen). **2.** feeling (sympathetic)
pecto- 1. chest (pectoralis). **2.** comblike (pectineus)
pedi- 1. foot (bipedal, pedicle). **2.** child (pediatrics)
pelvi- basin (pelvis, pelvic)
-penia deficiency (leukopenia, thrombocytopenia)
penna- feather (unipennate, bipennate)
peri- around (periosteum, peritoneum, periodontal)
perone- fibula (peroneus tertius, peroneal nerve)
phago- eat (phagocytosis, macrophage)
philo- loving, attracted to (hydrophilic, amphiphilic)
phobo- fearing, repelled by (hydrophobic)
phor- to carry, bear (diaphoresis, electrophoresis)
phragm- partition (diaphragm)
phreno- diaphragm (phrenic nerve)
physio- nature, natural cause (physiology, physician)
-physis growth (diaphysis, hypophysis)
pilo- hair (piloerection)
pino- drink, imbibe (pinocytosis)
planto- sole of foot (plantaris, plantar wart)
plasi- growth (hyperplasia)
plasm- shaped, molded (cytoplasm, endoplasmic)
plasti- form (thromboplastin)
platy- flat (platysma)
pnea- breath, breathing (eupnea, dyspnea)
pneumo- air, breath, lung (pneumonia, pneumothorax)
podo- foot (pseudopod, podocyte)
poies- forming (hemopoiesis, erythropoietin)
poly- many, much, excessive (polypeptide, polyuria)
primi- first (primary, primipara, primitive)
pro- 1. before, in front, first (prokaryote, prophase, prostate). **2.** promote, favor (progesterone, prolactin)
pseudo- false (pseudopod)
psycho- mind (psychosis, psychosomatic)
ptero-, pterygo- wing (pterygoid)
-ptosis dropping, falling, sagging (apoptosis, nephroptosis)
puncto- point (puncta)
pyro- fire (pyrogen, antipyretic)
quadri- four (quadriceps, quadratus)
quater- fourth (quaternary)
radiat- radiating (corona radiata)
rami- branch (ramus)
recto- straight (rectus abdominis, rectum)
reno- kidney (renal, renin)
reti- network (reticular, rete testis)
retinac- retainer, bracelet (retinaculum)
retro- behind, backward (retroperitoneal, retrovirus)
rhombo- rhombus (rhomboideus, rhombencephalon)
rubo-, rubro- red (bilirubin, rubrospinal)
rugo- fold, wrinkle (ruga, corrugator)
sacculo- little sac (saccule)
sarco- flesh, muscle (sarcoplasm, sarcomere)
scala- staircase (scala tympani)
sclero- hard, tough (sclera, sclerosis)
scopo- see (microscope, endoscopy)
secto- cut (section, dissection)
semi- half (semilunar, semimembranosus)
sepsi- infection (asepsis, septicemia)
-sis process (diapedesis, amniocentesis)
sole- sandal, sole of foot, flatfish (sole, soleus)
soma-, somato- body (somatic, somatotropin)
spheno- wedge (sphenoid)
spiro- breathing (inspiration, spirometry)
splanchno- viscera (splanchnic)
spleno- 1. bandage (splenius capitis). **2.** spleen (splenic artery)
squamo- scale, flat (squamous, desquamation)
stasi-, stati- put, remain, stay the same (hemostasis, homeostatic)
steno- narrow (stenosis)
ster-, stereo- solid, three-dimensional (steroid, stereoscopic)
sterno- breast, chest (sternum, sternocleidomastoid)
stria- stripe (striated, corpus striatum)
sub- below (subcutaneous, subclavicular)
sulc- furrow, groove (sulcus)
supra- above (supraspinous, supraclavicular)
sura- calf of leg (triceps surae)
sym- together (sympathetic, symphysis)
syn- together (synostosis, syncytium)
tachy- fast (tachycardia, tachypnea)
tarsi- ankle (tarsus, metatarsal)
tecto- roof, cover (tectorial membrane, tectum)
telo- last, end (telophase, telencephalon, telodendria)
tempo- time (temporal)
terti- third (tertiary)
theli- nipple, female, tender (epithelium, polythelia)
thermo- heat (thermogenesis, thermoregulation)
thrombo- blood clot (thrombosis, thrombin)
thyro- shield (thyroid, thyrohyoid)
-tion process (circulation, pronation)
toci- birth (oxytocin)
tomo- 1. cut (tomography, atom, anatomy). **2.** segment (dermatome, myotome, sclerotome)
tono- force, tension (isotonic, tonus, myotonia)
topo- place, position (isotope, ectopic)
trabo- plate (trabecula)
trans- across (transpiration, transdermal)
trapezi- 1. table, grinding surface (trapezium). **2.** trapezoid (trapezius)
tri- three (triceps, triglyceride)
tricho- hair (trichosiderin, peritrichial)
trocho- wheel, pulley (trochlea)
troph- 1. food, nourishment (trophic, trophoblast). **2.** growth (dystrophy, hypertrophy)
tropo- to turn, change (metabotropic, gonadotropin)
tunica- coat (tunica intima, tunica vaginalis)
tympano- drum, eardrum (tympanic, tensor tympani)
-ul small (trabecula, tubule, capitulum, glomerulus)
-uncle, -unculus small (homunculus, caruncle)
uni- one (unipennate, unipolar)
uri- urine (glycosuria, urinalysis, diuretic)
utriculo- little bag (utriculus)
vagino- sheath (invaginate, tunica vaginalis)
vago- wander (vagus)
vaso- vessel (vascular, vas deferens, vasa recta)
ventro- belly, lower part (ventral, ventricle)
vermi- worm (vermis, vermiform appendix)
vertebro- spine (vertebrae, intervertebral)
vesico- bladder, blister (vesical, vesicular)
villo- hair, hairy (microvillus)
vitre- glass (in vitro, vitreous humor)
vivi- life, alive (in vivo, revive)
zygo- union, join, mate (zygomatic, zygote, azygos)

Glossary

This glossary defines approximately 1,000 terms. They are not necessarily the most important ones in the book, but they are terms that are reintroduced most often and, for lack of space, are not redefined each time they arise. The index indicates where you can find definitions or explanations of additional terms. Terms are defined only in the sense that they are used in this book. Some have broader meanings, even within biology and medicine, that are beyond its scope. Terms that are commonly abbreviated, such as *ATP* and *PET scan,* are defined under the full spelling. See the list of abbreviations inside the front cover for complete spellings. The glossary gives pronunciation guides for many terms, with accented syllables in capital letters. A key to the pronunciation of individual syllables and letter groups can be found at the end of the glossary.

A

abdominal cavity The body cavity between the diaphragm and pelvic brim. fig. A.7

abduction (ab-DUC-shun) Movement of a body part away from the median plane, as in raising an arm away from the side of the body. fig. 9.10

absorption **1.** Process in which a chemical passes through a membrane or tissue surface and becomes incorporated into a body fluid or tissue. **2.** Any process in which one substance passes into another and becomes a part of it. *Compare* adsorption.

acetate The ionized form of acetic acid (CH_3COO^-). Serves as the monomer of fatty acids and the intermediate of aerobic metabolism that enters the citric acid cycle.

acetylcholine (ACh) (ASS-eh-till-CO-leen) A neurotransmitter released by somatic motor fibers, parasympathetic fibers, and some other neurons, composed of choline and an acetyl group. fig. 12.18

acetylcholinesterase (AChE) (ASS-eh-till-CO-lin-ESS-ter-ase) An enzyme that hydrolyzes acetylcholine, thus halting signal transmission at a cholinergic synapse.

acid A proton (H^+) donor; a chemical that releases protons into solution.

acidosis An acid-base imbalance in which the blood pH is lower than 7.35.

acinus (ASS-ih-nus) A sac of secretory cells at the inner end of a gland duct. fig. 5.30

acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) A group of conditions that indicate severe immunosuppression related to infection with the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV); typically characterized by a very low T_4 lymphocyte count and high susceptibility to certain forms of cancer and opportunistic infections.

actin A filamentous intracellular protein that provides cytoskeletal support and interacts with other proteins, especially myosin, to cause cellular movement; important in muscle contraction, ciliary and flagellar beating, and membrane actions such as phagocytosis, ameboid movement, and cytokinesis.

action The movement produced by the contraction of a particular muscle.

action potential A rapid voltage change in which a plasma membrane briefly reverses electrical polarity; has a self-propagating effect that produces a traveling wave of excitation in nerve and muscle cells.

active site The region of a protein that binds to a ligand, such as the substrate-binding site of an enzyme or the hormone-binding site of a receptor.

active transport The movement of a solute through a cellular membrane, against its concentration gradient, involving a carrier protein that expends ATP.

acute Pertaining to a disease with abrupt onset, intense symptoms, and short duration. *Compare* chronic.

adaptation **1.** An evolutionary process leading to the establishment of species characteristics that favor survival and reproduction. **2.** Any characteristic of anatomy, physiology, or behavior that promotes survival and reproduction. **3.** A sensory process in which a receptor adjusts its sensitivity or response to the prevailing level of stimulation, such as dark adaptation of the eye.

adduction (ah-DUC-shun) Movement of a body part toward the median plane, such as bringing the feet together from a spread-legged position. fig. 9.10

adenine (AD-eh-neen) A double-ringed nitrogenous base (purine) found in such molecules as DNA, RNA, and ATP; one of the four bases of the genetic code; complementary to thymine in the double helix of DNA. fig. 4.2

adenosine triphosphate (ATP) (ah-DEN-oh-seen tri-FOSS-fate) A molecule composed of adenine, ribose, and three phosphate groups that functions as a universal energy-transfer molecule; yields adenosine diphosphate (ADP) and an inorganic phosphate group (P_i) upon hydrolysis. fig. 2.29*a*

adenylate cyclase (ah-DEN-ih-late SY-clase) An enzyme of the plasma membrane that removes two phosphate molecules from ATP and makes cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP); important in the activation of the cAMP second-messenger system.

adipocyte (AD-ih-po-site) A fat cell.

adipose tissue A connective tissue composed predominantly of adipocytes; fat.

adrenal gland (ah-DREE-nul) An endocrine gland on the superior pole of each kidney. fig. 17.10

adrenergic (AD-reh-NUR-jic) Pertaining to epinephrine (adrenaline) or norepinephrine (noradrenaline), as in adrenergic neurons that secrete one of these chemicals or adrenergic effects on a target organ.

adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) (ah-DREE-no-COR-tih-co-TRO-pic) A hormone secreted by the anterior pituitary gland that stimulates the adrenal cortex.

adsorption The binding of one substance to the surface of another without becoming a part of the latter. *Compare* absorption.

adventitia (AD-ven-TISH-uh) Loose connective tissue forming the outermost sheath around organs such as a blood vessel or the esophagus.

aerobic exercise (air-OH-bic) Exercise in which oxygen is used to produce ATP; endurance exercise.

aerobic respiration Oxidation of organic compounds in a reaction series that requires oxygen and produces ATP.

afferent (AFF-uh-rent) Carrying toward, as in *afferent neurons,* which carry signals toward the central nervous system, and *afferent arterioles,* which carry blood toward a tissue. *Compare* efferent.

afterload The force exerted by arterial blood pressure that opposes the openings of the aortic and pulmonary valves of the heart.

agglutination (ah-GLUE-tih-NAY-shun) Clumping of cells or molecules by antibodies. fig. 18.15

aging Any changes in the body that occur with the passage of time, including growth, development, and senescence.

agonist *See* prime mover.

agranulocyte Either of the two leukocyte types (lymphocytes and monocytes) that lack prominent cytoplasmic granules.

albumin (al-BYU-min) A class of small proteins constituting about 60% of the protein fraction of the blood plasma; plays roles in blood viscosity, colloid osmotic pressure, and solute transport.

aldosterone (AL-doe-steh-RONE, al-DOSS-teh-rone) A steroid hormone secreted by the adrenal cortex that acts on the kidneys to promote sodium retention and potassium excretion.

alkalosis An acid-base imbalance in which the blood pH is higher than 7.45.

allele (ah-LEEL) Any of the alternative forms that one gene can take, such as dominant and recessive alleles.

all-or-none law The statement that a neuron either produces an action potential of maximum strength if it is depolarized to or above threshold, or produces no action potential at all if the stimulus is not strong enough to reach threshold; there are no action potentials of intermediate strength.

alveolus (AL-vee-OH-lus) **1.** A microscopic air sac of the lung. **2.** A gland acinus. **3.** A tooth socket. **4.** Any small anatomical space.

Alzheimer disease (AD) (ALTS-hy-mur) A degenerative disease of the senescent brain, typically beginning with memory lapses and progressing to severe losses of mental and motor functions and ultimately death.

ameboid movement (ah-ME-boyd) Movement of a cell by means of pseudopods, in a manner similar to that of an ameba; seen in leukocytes and some macrophages.

amino acids Small organic molecules with an amino group and a carboxyl group; the monomers of which proteins are composed.

amino group A functional group with the formula $-NH_2$, found in amino acids and some other organic molecules.

ampulla (am-PULL-uh) A wide or saclike portion of a tubular organ such as a semicircular duct or uterine tube.

anabolism (ah-NAB-oh-lizm) Any metabolic reactions that consume energy and construct more complex molecules with higher free energy from less complex molecules with lower free energy; for example, the synthesis of proteins from amino acids. *Compare* catabolism.

anaerobic fermentation (AN-err-OH-bic) A reduction reaction independent of oxygen that converts pyruvic acid to lactic acid and enables glycolysis to continue under anaerobic conditions.

anaphylactic shock A severe systemic form of anaphylaxis involving bronchoconstriction, impaired breathing, vasodilation, and a rapid drop in blood pressure with a threat of circulatory failure.

anaphylaxis (AN-uh-fih-LAC-sis) A form of immediate hypersensitivity in which an antigen triggers the release of inflammatory chemicals, causing edema, congestion, hives, and other, usually local, signs.

anastomosis (ah-NASS-tih-MO-sis) An anatomical convergence, the opposite of a branch; a point where two blood vessels merge and combine their bloodstreams or where two nerves or ducts converge. fig. 20.1

anatomical position A reference posture that allows for standardized anatomical terminology. A subject in anatomical position is standing with the feet flat on the floor, arms down to the sides, and the palms and eyes directed forward. fig. A.1

anatomy **1.** Structure of the body. **2.** The study of structure.

androgen (AN-dro-jen) Testosterone or a related steroid hormone. Stimulates somatic changes at puberty in both sexes, adult libido in both sexes, development of male anatomy in the fetus and adolescent, and spermatogenesis.

anemia (ah-NEE-me-uh) A deficiency of erythrocytes or hemoglobin.

aneurysm (AN-you-rizm) A weak, bulging point in the wall of a heart chamber or blood vessel that presents a threat of hemorrhage.

angiogenesis (AN-jee-oh-GEN-eh-sis) The growth of new blood vessels.

angiotensin II (AN-jee-oh-TEN-sin) A hormone produced from angiotensinogen (a plasma protein) by the kidneys and lungs; raises blood pressure by stimulating vasoconstriction and stimulating the adrenal cortex to secrete aldosterone.

anion (AN-eye-on) An ion with more electrons than protons and consequently a net negative charge.

antagonist **1.** A muscle that opposes the agonist at a joint. **2.** Any agent, such as a hormone or drug, that opposes another.

antebrachium (AN-teh-BRAY-kee-um) The region from elbow to wrist; the forearm.

anterior Pertaining to the front (facial-abdominal aspect) of the body; ventral.

antibody A protein of the gamma globulin class that reacts with an antigen; found in the blood plasma, in other body fluids, and on the surfaces of certain leukocytes and their derivatives.

anticoagulant (AN-tee-co-AG-you-lent) A chemical agent that opposes blood clotting.

antidiuretic hormone (ADH) (AN-tee-DYE-you-RET-ic) A hormone released by the posterior lobe of the pituitary gland in response to low blood pressure; promotes water retention by the kidneys. Also known as *vasopressin.*

antigen (AN-tih-jen) Any large molecule capable of binding to an antibody and triggering an immune response.

antigen-presenting cell (APC) A cell that phagocytizes an antigen and displays fragments of it on its surface for recognition by other cells of the immune system; chiefly macrophages and B lymphocytes.

antioxidant A chemical that binds and neutralizes free radicals, minimizing their oxidative damage to a cell; for example, selenium and vitamin E.

antiport A cotransport protein that moves two or more solutes in opposite directions through a cellular membrane; for example, the Na^+-K^+ pump.

aorta A large artery that extends from the left ventricle to the lower abdominal cavity and gives rise to all other arteries of the systemic circulation. fig. 20.21

apical surface The uppermost surface of an epithelial cell, usually exposed to the lumen of an organ. fig. 3.5

apocrine Pertaining to certain sweat glands with large lumens and relatively thick, aromatic secretions and to similar glands such as the mammary gland; formerly thought to form secretions by pinching off bits of apical cytoplasm.

apoptosis (AP-oh-TOE-sis) Programmed cell death; the normal death of cells that have completed their function. *Compare* necrosis.

appendicular (AP-en-DIC-you-lur) Pertaining to the extremities and their supporting skeletal girdles. fig. 8.1

arcuate (AR-cue-et) Making a sharp L- or U-shaped bend (arc), as in the *arcuate arteries* of the kidneys and uterus.

areolar tissue (AIR-ee-OH-lur) A fibrous connective tissue with loosely organized, widely spaced fibers and cells and an abundance of fluid-filled space; found under nearly every epithelium, among other places. fig. 5.15

arrhythmia (ah-RITH-me-uh) An irregularity in the cardiac rhythm.

arteriole (ar-TEER-ee-ole) A small artery that empties into a metarteriole or capillary.

artery Any blood vessel that conducts blood away from the heart.

articular cartilage A thin layer of hyaline cartilage covering the articular surface of a bone at a synovial joint serving to reduce friction and ease joint movement. fig. 9.6

articulation A skeletal joint; any point at which two bones meet; may or may not be movable.

ascorbic acid Vitamin C; a dietary antioxidant.

aspect A particular view of the body or one of its structures, or a part that faces in a particular direction, such as the anterior aspect.

atheroma (ATH-ur-OH-muh) A fatty deposit (plaque) in a blood vessel consisting of lipid, smooth muscle, and macrophages; characteristic of atherosclerosis. fig. 19.21

atherosclerosis (ATH-ur-oh-skleh-ROE-sis) A degenerative disease of the blood vessels characterized by the presence of atheromas and often leading to calcification of the vessel wall.

atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP) (AY-tree-ul NAY-tree-you-RET-ic) A hormone secreted by the heart that lowers blood pressure by promoting sodium excretion and antagonizing aldosterone.

atrioventricular (AV) node (AY-tree-oh-ven-TRIC-you-lur) A group of autorhythmic cells in the interatrial septum of the heart that relays excitation from the atria to the ventricles.

atrioventricular (AV) valves The bicuspid (right) and tricuspid (left) valves between the atria and ventricles of the heart.

atrophy (AT-ro-fee) Shrinkage of a tissue due to age, disuse, or disease.

auditory ossicles Three small middle-ear bones that transfer vibrations from the tympanic membrane to the inner ear; the malleus, incus, and stapes.

autoantibody An antibody that fails to distinguish the body's own molecules from foreign molecules and thus attacks host tissues, causing autoimmune diseases.

autoimmune disease Any disease in which antibodies fail to distinguish between foreign and self-antigens and attack the body's own tissues; for example, systemic lupus erythematosus and rheumatic fever.

autolysis (aw-TOLL-ih-sis) Digestion of cells by their own internal enzymes.

autonomic nervous system (ANS) (AW-toe-NOM-ic) A motor division of the nervous system that innervates glands, smooth muscle, and cardiac muscle; consists of sympathetic and parasympathetic divisions and functions largely without voluntary control. *Compare* somatic nervous system.

autoregulation The ability of a tissue to adjust its own blood supply through vasomotion or angiogenesis.

autorhythmic (AW-toe-RITH-mic) Pertaining to cells that spontaneously produce action potentials at regular time intervals, chiefly cardiac and smooth muscle cells.

autosome (AW-toe-some) Any chromosome except the sex chromosomes. Genes on the autosomes are inherited without regard to the sex of the individual.

axial (AC-see-ul) Pertaining to the head, neck, and trunk; the part of the body excluding the appendicular portion. fig. 8.1

axillary (ACK-sih-LERR-ee) Pertaining to the armpit.

axon A process of a neuron that transmits action potentials; also called a *nerve fiber.* There is only one axon to a neuron, and it is usually much longer and much less branched than the dendrites. fig. 12.4

axoneme (AC-so-neem) The core of microtubules, usually in a "9 + 2" array, at the center of a cilium or flagellum. fig. 3.11

B

baroreceptors (BAR-oh-re-SEP-turz) Pressure sensors located in the heart, aortic arch, and carotid sinuses that trigger autonomic reflexes in response to fluctuations in blood pressure.

basal metabolic rate (BMR) The rate of energy consumption of a person who is awake, relaxed, at a comfortable temperature, and has not eaten for 12 to 14 hours; usually expressed as kilocalories per square meter of body surface per hour. *Compare* metabolic rate.

basal nuclei Masses of deep cerebral gray matter that play a role in the coordination of posture and movement. fig. 14.16

base **1.** A chemical that binds protons from solution; a proton acceptor. **2.** Any of the purines or pyrimidines of a nucleic acid (adenine, thymine, guanine, cytosine, or uracil), serving in part to code for protein structure. **3.** The broadest part of a tapered organ such as the uterus or the inferior aspect of an organ such as the brain.

basement membrane A thin layer of glycoproteins, collagen, and glycosaminoglycans beneath the deepest cells of an epithelium, serving to bind the epithelium to the underlying tissue. fig. 5.33

base triplet A sequence of three DNA nucleotides that codes indirectly (through mRNA) for one amino acid of a protein.

basophil (BAY-so-fill) A granulocyte with coarse cytoplasmic granules that produces heparin, histamine, and other chemicals involved in inflammation. table 18.8

belly The thick part of a skeletal muscle between its origin and insertion. fig. 10.2

bicarbonate buffer system An equilibrium mixture of carbonic acid, bicarbonate ions, and hydrogen ions ($H_2CO_3 \leftrightarrow HCO_3^- + H^+$) that stabilizes the pH of the body fluids.

bicarbonate ion An anion, HCO_3^-, that functions as a base in the buffering of body fluids.

bile A secretion produced by the liver, concentrated and stored in the gallbladder, and released into the small intestine; consists mainly of wastes such as excess cholesterol, salts, and bile pigments but also contains lecithin and bile acids, which aid in fat digestion.

bile pigments Strongly colored organic compounds produced by the breakdown of hemoglobin, including biliverdin and bilirubin.

bilirubin (BIL-ih-ROO-bin) A yellow to orange bile pigment produced by the breakdown of hemoglobin and excreted in the bile; causes jaundice and neurotoxic effects if present in excessive concentration.

biogenic amines A class of chemical messengers with neurotransmitter and hormonal functions, synthesized from amino acids and retaining an amino group; also called *monoamines.* Examples include epinephrine and thyroxine.

bipedalism The habit of walking on two legs; a defining characteristic of the family Hominidae that underlies many skeletal and other characteristics of humans.

blood-brain barrier (BBB) A barrier between the bloodstream and nervous tissue of the brain that is impermeable to many blood solutes and thus prevents them from affecting the brain tissue; formed by the tight junctions between capillary endothelial cells, the basement membrane of the endothelium, and the perivascular feet of astrocytes.

B lymphocyte A lymphocyte that functions as an antigen-presenting cell and, in humoral immunity, differentiates into an antibody-producing plasma cell; also called a *B cell.*

body **1.** The entire organism. **2.** Part of a cell, such as a neuron, containing the nucleus and most other organelles. **3.** The largest or principal part of an organ such as the stomach or uterus; also called the *corpus.*

bolus A mass of matter, especially food or feces traveling through the digestive tract.

bone **1.** A calcified connective tissue; also called *osseous tissue.* **2.** An organ of the skeleton composed of osseous tissue, fibrous connective tissue, marrow, cartilage, and other tissues.

Bowman's capsule *See* glomerular capsule.

brachial (BRAY-kee-ul) Pertaining to the arm proper, the region from shoulder to elbow.

bradykinin (BRAD-ee-KY-nin) An oligopeptide produced in inflammation that stimulates vasodilation, increases capillary permeability, and stimulates pain receptors.

brainstem The stalklike lower portion of the brain, composed of all of the brain except the cerebrum and cerebellum. (Many authorities also exclude the diencephalon and regard only the medulla oblongata, pons, and midbrain as the brainstem.) fig. 14.8

bronchiole (BRONK-ee-ole) A pulmonary air passage that is usually 1 mm or less in diameter and lacks cartilage but has relatively abundant smooth muscle, elastic tissue, and a simple cuboidal, usually ciliated epithelium.

bronchus (BRONK-us) A relatively large pulmonary air passage with supportive cartilage in the wall; any passage beginning with the primary bronchus at the fork in the trachea and ending with tertiary bronchi, from which air continues into the bronchioles.

brush border A fringe of microvilli on the apical surface of an epithelial cell, serving to enhance surface area and promote absorption. fig. 3.10

buffer **1.** A mixture of chemicals that resists changes in pH when acid or base is added to the solution. **2.** A physiological system that contributes to acid-base balance, specifically the respiratory and urinary systems.

bursa A sac filled with synovial fluid at a diarthrosis, serving to facilitate muscle or joint action. fig. 9.19

C

calcaneal tendon (cal-CAY-nee-ul) A thick tendon at the heel that attaches the triceps surae muscles to the calcaneus; also called the *Achilles tendon.* fig. 10.37

calcification The hardening of a tissue due to the deposition of calcium salts.

calcitonin (CAL-sih-TOE-nin) A hormone secreted by C cells of the thyroid gland that promotes calcium deposition in the skeleton and lowers blood calcium concentration.

calmodulin An intracellular protein that binds calcium ions and mediates many of the second-messenger effects of calcium.

calorie The amount of thermal energy that will raise the temperature of 1 g of water by 1°C. Also called a *small calorie.*

Calorie *See* kilocalorie.

calorigenic (ca-LOR-ih-JEN-ic) Heat-producing, as in the calorigenic effect of thyroid hormone.

calsequestrin A protein found in smooth endoplasmic reticulum that reversibly binds and stores calcium ions, rendering calcium chemically unreactive until needed for such processes as muscle contraction.

calvaria (cal-VERR-ee-uh) The rounded bony dome that forms the roof of the cranium; the general portion of the skull superior to the eyes and ears; skullcap.

calyx (CAY-lix) (plural, *calices*) A cuplike structure, as in the kidneys. fig. 23.4

canaliculus (CAN-uh-LIC-you-lus) A microscopic canal, as in osseous tissue. fig. 7.4

capillary (CAP-ih-LERR-ee) The narrowest type of vessel in the cardiovascular and lymphatic systems; engages in fluid exchanges with surrounding tissues.

capillary exchange The process of fluid transfer between the bloodstream and tissue fluid.

capsule The fibrous covering of a structure such as the spleen or a diarthrosis.

carbohydrate A hydrophilic organic compound composed of carbon and a 2:1 ratio of hydrogen to oxygen; includes sugars, starches, glycogen, and cellulose.

carbonic anhydrase An enzyme found in erythrocytes and kidney tubule cells that catalyzes the decomposition of carbonic acid into carbon dioxide and water or the reverse reaction ($H_2CO_3 \leftrightarrow CO_2 + H_2O$).

carboxyl group (car-BOC-sil) An organic functional group with the formula $-COOH$, found in many organic acids such as amino acids and fatty acids.

carcinogen (car-SIN-oh-jen) An agent capable of causing cancer, including certain chemicals, viruses, and ionizing radiation.

cardiac center A nucleus in the medulla oblongata that regulates autonomic reflexes for controlling the rate and strength of the heartbeat.

cardiac cycle One complete cycle of cardiac systole and diastole.

cardiac muscle Striated involuntary muscle of the heart.

cardiac output (CO) The amount of blood pumped by each ventricle of the heart in 1 minute.

cardiac reserve The difference between maximum and resting cardiac output; determines a person's tolerance for exercise.

cardiovascular system An organ system consisting of the heart and blood vessels, serving for the transport of blood. *Compare* circulatory system.

carotid body (ca-ROT-id) A small cellular mass immediately superior to the branch in the common carotid artery, containing sensory cells that detect changes in blood pH and carbon dioxide and oxygen content. fig. 20.11

carotid sinus A dilation of the common carotid artery at the point where it branches into the internal and external carotids; contains baroreceptors, which monitor changes in blood pressure.

carpal Pertaining to the wrist (carpus).

carrier **1.** A protein in a cellular membrane that performs carrier-mediated transport. **2.** A person who is heterozygous for a recessive allele and does not exhibit the associated phenotype, but may transmit this allele to his or her children; for example, a carrier for sickle-cell disease.

carrier-mediated transport A process of transporting materials through a cellular membrane that involves reversible binding to a membrane protein.

cartilage A connective tissue with a rubbery matrix, cells (chondrocytes) contained in lacunae, and no blood vessels; covers the articular surfaces of many bones and supports organs such as the ear and larynx.

catabolism (ca-TAB-oh-lizm) Any metabolic reactions that release energy and break relatively complex molecules with high free energy into less complex molecules with lower free energy; for example, digestion and glycolysis. *Compare* anabolism.

catalyst (CAT-uh-list) Any chemical that lowers the activation energy of a chemical reaction and thus makes the reaction proceed more rapidly; a role served in cells by enzymes.

catecholamine (CAT-eh-COAL-uh-meen) A subclass of biogenic amines that includes epinephrine, norepinephrine, and dopamine. fig. 12.18

cation (CAT-eye-on) An ion with more protons than electrons and consequently a net positive charge.

caudal (CAW-dul) **1.** Pertaining to a tail or narrow tail-like part of an organ. **2.** Pertaining to the inferior part of the trunk of the body, where the tail of other animals arises. *Compare* cranial. **3.** Relatively distant from the forehead, especially in reference to structures of the brain and spinal cord; for example, the medulla oblongata is caudal to the pons. *Compare* rostral.

celiac (SEE-lee-ac) Pertaining to the abdomen.

cell The smallest subdivision of a tissue considered to be alive; consists of a plasma membrane enclosing cytoplasm and, in most cases, a nucleus.

cellular membrane Any unit membrane enclosing a cell or organelle. *See also* unit membrane.

central Located relatively close to the median axis of the body, as in the central nervous system; opposite of peripheral.

central nervous system (CNS) The brain and spinal cord.

centriole (SEN-tree-ole) An organelle composed of a short cylinder of nine triplets of microtubules, usually paired with another centriole perpendicular to it; origin of the mitotic spindle; identical to the basal body of a cilium or flagellum. fig. 3.30

cephalic (seh-FAL-ic) Pertaining to the head.

cerebellum (SERR-eh-BEL-um) A large portion of the brain dorsal to the brainstem and inferior to the cerebrum, responsible for equilibrium, motor coordination, and memory of learned motor skills. fig. 14.9

cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) (SERR-eh-bro-SPY-nul, seh-REE-bro-SPY-nul) A liquid that fills the ventricles of the brain, the central canal of the spinal cord, and the space between the CNS and dura mater.

cerebrovascular accident (CVA) (SERR-eh-bro-VASS-cue-lur, seh-REE-bro-VASS-cue-lur) The loss of blood flow to any part of the brain due to obstruction or hemorrhage of an artery, leading to the necrosis of nervous tissue; also called *stroke* or *apoplexy.*

cerebrum (SERR-eh-brum, seh-REE-brum) The largest and most superior part of the brain, divided into two convoluted cerebral hemispheres separated by a deep longitudinal fissure.

cervical (SUR-vih-cul) Pertaining to the neck or any cervix.

cervix (SUR-vix) **1.** The neck. **2.** A narrow or neck-like part of an organ such as the uterus and gallbladder. fig. 28.3

channel protein A protein in the plasma membrane that has a pore through it for the passage of materials between the cytoplasm and extracellular fluid. fig. 3.6

chemical bond A force that attracts one atom to another, such as their opposite charges or the sharing of electrons.

chemical digestion Hydrolysis reactions that occur in the digestive tract and convert dietary polymers into monomers that can be absorbed by the small intestine.

chemical synapse A meeting of a nerve fiber and another cell with which the neuron communicates by releasing neurotransmitters. fig. 12.17

chemoreceptor An organ or cell specialized to detect chemicals, as in the carotid bodies and taste buds.

chemotaxis (KEM-oh-TAC-sis) The movement of a cell along a chemical concentration gradient, especially the attraction of neutrophils to chemicals released by pathogens or inflamed tissues.

chief cells The majority type of cell in an organ or tissue such as the parathyroid glands or gastric glands.

choanae (co-AH-nee) Openings of the nasal cavity into the pharynx; also called *posterior nares.* fig. 22.3

cholecystokinin (CCK) (CO-leh-SIS-toe-KY-nin) A polypeptide employed as a hormone and neurotransmitter, secreted by some brain neurons and cells of the digestive tract. fig. 12.18

cholesterol (co-LESS-tur-ol) A steroid that functions as part of the plasma membrane and as a precursor for all other steroids in the body.

cholinergic (CO-lin-UR-jic) Pertaining to acetylcholine (ACh), as in cholinergic nerve fibers that secrete ACh, cholinergic receptors that bind it, or cholinergic effects on a target organ.

chondrocyte (CON-dro-site) A cartilage cell; a former chondroblast that has become enclosed in a lacuna in the cartilage matrix. fig. 7.9

chorion (CO-ree-on) A fetal membrane external to the amnion; forms part of the placenta and has diverse functions including fetal nutrition, waste removal, and hormone secretion. fig. 29.9

chromatid (CRO-muh-tid) One of two genetically identical rodlike bodies of a metaphase chromosome, joined to its sister chromatid at the centromere. fig. 4.14

chromatin (CRO-muh-tin) Filamentous material in the interphase nucleus, composed of DNA and associated proteins.

chromosome A complex of DNA and protein carrying the genetic material of a cell's nucleus. Normally there are 46 chromosomes in the nucleus of each cell except germ cells. fig. 4.14

chronic **1.** Long-lasting. **2.** Pertaining to a disease that progresses slowly and has a long duration. *Compare* acute.

chronic bronchitis A chronic obstructive pulmonary disease characterized by damaged and immobilized respiratory cilia, excessive mucus secretion, infection of the lower respiratory tract, and bronchial inflammation; caused especially by cigarette smoking. *See also* chronic obstructive pulmonary disease.

chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) A group of lung diseases (asthma, chronic bronchitis, and emphysema) that result in long-term obstruction of airflow and substantially reduced pulmonary ventilation; one of the leading causes of death in old age.

chylomicron (KY-lo-MY-cron) A protein-coated lipid droplet formed in the small intestine and found in the lymph and blood after a meal; a means of lipid transport in the bloodstream and lymph.

chyme (kime) A slurry of partially digested food in the stomach and small intestine.

cilium (SIL-ee-um) A hairlike process, with an axoneme, projecting from the apical surface of an epithelial cell; often motile and serving to propel matter across the surface of an epithelium, but sometimes nonmotile and serving sensory roles. fig. 3.12

circulatory shock A state of cardiac output inadequate to meet the metabolic needs of the body.

circulatory system An organ system consisting of the heart, blood vessels, and blood. *Compare* cardiovascular system.

circumduction A joint movement in which one end of an appendage remains relatively stationary and the other end is moved in a circle. fig. 9.12

cirrhosis (sih-RO-sis) A degenerative liver disease characterized by replacement of functional parenchyma with fibrous and adipose tissue; causes include alcohol, other poisons, and viral and bacterial inflammation.

cisterna (sis-TUR-nuh) A fluid-filled space or sac, such as the cisterna chyli of the lymphatic system and a cisterna of the endoplasmic reticulum or Golgi complex. fig. 3.26

citric acid cycle A cyclic reaction series involving several carboxylic acids in the mitochondrial matrix; oxidizes acetyl groups to carbon dioxide while reducing NAD^+ to NADH and FADH to $FADH_2$, making these reduced coenzymes available for ATP synthesis. Also called the *Krebs cycle* or *tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle.* fig. 26.4

climacteric A period in the lives of men and women, usually in the early 50s, marked by changes in the level of reproductive hormones, a variety of somatic and psychological effects, and in women, cessation of ovulation and menstruation (menopause).

clone A population of cells that are mitotically descended from the same parent cell and are identical to each other genetically or in other respects.

coagulation (co-AG-you-LAY-shun) The clotting of blood, lymph, tissue fluid, or semen.

codominant (co-DOM-ih-nent) A condition in which neither of two alleles is dominant over the other, and both are phenotypically expressed when both are present in an individual; for example, blood type alleles I^A and I^B produce blood type AB when inherited together.

codon A series of three nucleotides in mRNA that codes for one amino acid in a protein or, as a *stop codon,* signals the end of a gene.

coenzyme (co-EN-zime) A small organic molecule, usually derived from a vitamin, that is needed to make an enzyme catalytically active; acts by accepting electrons from an enzymatic reaction and transferring them to a different reaction chain.

cofactor A nonprotein such as a metal ion or coenzyme needed for an enzyme to function.

cohesion The clinging of identical molecules such as water to each other.

collagen (COLL-uh-jen) The most abundant protein in the body, forming the fibers of many connective tissues in places such as the dermis, tendons, and bones.

colloid An aqueous mixture of particles that are too large to pass through most selectively permeable membranes but small enough to remain evenly dispersed through the solvent by the thermal motion of solvent particles; for example, the proteins in blood plasma.

colloid osmotic pressure (COP) A portion of the osmotic pressure of a body fluid that is due to its protein. *Compare* oncotic pressure.

colostrum (co-LOS-trum) A watery, low-fat secretion of the mammary gland that nourishes and immunizes an infant for the first 2 to 3 days postpartum, until true milk is secreted.

commissure (COM-ih-shur) **1.** A bundle of nerve fibers that crosses from one side of the brain or spinal cord to the other. **2.** A corner or angle at which the eyelids, lips, or genital labia meet; in the eye, also called the *canthus.* fig. 16.20

complement **1.** To complete or enhance the structure or function of something else, as in the coordinated action of two different hormones. **2.** A system of plasma proteins involved in nonspecific defense against pathogens.

computerized tomography (CT) A method of medical imaging that uses X rays and a computer to create an image of a thin section of the body; also called a *CT scan.*

concentration gradient A difference in chemical concentration from one point to another, as on two sides of a plasma membrane.

conception The fertilization of an egg, producing a zygote.

conceptus All products of conception, ranging from a fertilized egg to the full-term fetus with its embryonic membranes, placenta, and umbilical cord. *Compare* embryo, fetus.

condyle (CON-dile) A rounded knob on a bone serving to produce smooth motion at a joint. fig. 8.2

conformation The three-dimensional structure of a protein that results from interaction among its amino acid side groups, its interactions with water, and the formation of disulfide bonds.

congenital Present at birth; for example, an anatomical defect, a syphilis infection, or a hereditary disease.

conjugated A state in which one organic compound is bound to another compound of a different class, such as a protein conjugated with a carbohydrate to form a glycoprotein.

connective tissue A tissue usually composed of more extracellular than cellular volume and usually with a substantial amount of extracellular fiber; forms supportive frameworks and capsules for organs, binds structures together, holds them in place, stores energy (as in adipose tissue), or transports materials (as in blood).

contractility **1.** The ability to shorten. **2.** The amount of force that a contracting muscle fiber generates for a given stimulus; may be increased by epinephrine, for example, while stimulus strength remains constant.

contralateral On opposite sides of the body, as in reflex arcs where the stimulus comes from one side of the body and a response is given by muscles on the other side. *Compare* ipsilateral.

convergent Coming together, as in a convergent muscle and a converging neuronal circuit.

cooperative effects Effects in which two hormones, or both divisions of the autonomic nervous system, work together to produce a single overall result.

cornified Having a heavy deposit of keratin, as in the stratum corneum of the epidermis.

corona A halo- or crownlike structure, as in the corona radiata or the coronal suture of the skull.

coronal plane *See* frontal plane.

corona radiata **1.** An array of nerve tracts in the brain that arise mainly from the thalamus and fan out to different regions of the cerebral cortex. **2.** The first layer of cuboidal cells immediately external to the zona pellucida around an egg cell.

coronary circulation A system of blood vessels that serve the wall of the heart. fig. 19.10

corpus Body or mass; the main part of an organ, as opposed to such regions as a head, tail, or cervix.

corpus callosum (COR-pus ca-LO-sum) A prominent C-shaped band of nerve tracts that connect the right and left cerebral hemispheres to each other, seen superior to the third ventricle in a median section of the brain. fig. 14.1

corpus luteum (LOO-tee-um) A yellowish cellular mass that forms in the ovary from a follicle that has ovulated; secretes progesterone, hormonally regulates the second half of the menstrual cycle, and is essential to sustaining the first 7 weeks of pregnancy.

cortex (plural, *cortices*) The outer layer of some organs such as the adrenal gland, cerebrum, lymph node, and ovary; usually covers or encloses tissue called the medulla.

corticosteroid (COR-tih-co-STERR-oyd) Any steroid hormone secreted by the adrenal cortex, such as aldosterone, cortisol, and sex steroids.

costal (COSS-tul) Pertaining to the ribs.

costal cartilage A bladelike plate of hyaline cartilage that attaches the distal end of a rib to the sternum.

cotransport A form of carrier-mediated transport in which a membrane protein transports two solutes simultaneously or within the same cycle of action; for example the sodium-glucose transport protein and the Na^+-K^+ pump.

countercurrent A situation in which two fluids flow side by side in opposite directions, as in the countercurrent multiplier of the kidney and the countercurrent heat exchanger of the scrotum.

cranial (CRAY-nee-ul) **1.** Pertaining to the cranium. **2.** In a position relatively close to the head or a direction toward the head. *Compare* caudal.

cranial nerve Any of 12 pairs of nerves connected to the base of the brain and passing through foramina of the cranium.

creatine phosphate (CP) (CREE-uh-teen FOSS-fate) An energy-storage molecule in muscle tissue that donates a phosphate group to ADP and thus regenerates ATP in periods of hypoxia.

crista A crestlike structure, such as the crista galli of the ethmoid bone or the crista of a mitochondrion.

cross section A cut perpendicular to the long axis of the body or an organ.

crural (CROO-rul) Pertaining to the leg proper or to the crus of a organ. *See* crus.

crus (cruss) (plural, *crura*) **1.** The leg proper; the region from the knee to the ankle. **2.** A leglike extension of an organ such as the penis and clitoris. figs. 27.7, 28.8

cuboidal (cue-BOY-dul) A cellular shape that is roughly like a cube or in which the height and width are about equal.

cuneiform (cue-NEE-ih-form) Wedge-shaped, as in the cuneiform cartilages of the larynx and cuneiform bone of the wrist.

current A moving stream of charged particles such as ions or electrons.

cusp **1.** One of the flaps of a valve of the heart, veins, and lymphatic vessels. **2.** A conical projection on the occlusal surface of a premolar or molar tooth.

cutaneous (cue-TAY-nee-us) Pertaining to the skin.

cyanosis (SY-uh-NO-sis) A bluish color of the skin and mucous membranes due to ischemia or hypoxemia.

cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP) A cyclic molecule produced from ATP by the action of adenylate cyclase; serves as a second messenger in many hormone and neurotransmitter actions. fig. 2.29*b*

cyclooxygenase An enzyme that converts arachidonic acid to prostacyclin, prostaglandins, and thromboxanes.

cytochromes Enzymes on the mitochondrial cristae that transfer electrons in the final reaction chain of aerobic respiration.

cytokinesis (SY-toe-kih-NEE-sis) Division of the cytoplasm of a cell into two cells following nuclear division.

cytology The study of cell structure and function.

cytolysis (sy-TOL-ih-sis) The rupture and destruction of a cell by such agents as complement proteins and hypotonic solutions.

cytoplasm The contents of a cell between its plasma membrane and its nuclear envelope, consisting of cytosol, organelles, inclusions, and the cytoskeleton.

cytosine A single-ringed nitrogenous base (pyrimidine) found in DNA; one of the four bases of the genetic code; complementary to guanine in the double helix of DNA. fig. 4.2

cytoskeleton A system of protein microfilaments, intermediate filaments, and microtubules in a cell, serving in physical support, cellular movement, and the routing of molecules and organelles to their destinations within the cell. fig. 3.31

cytosol A clear, featureless, gelatinous colloid in which the organelles and other internal structures of a cell are embedded.

cytotoxic T cell A T lymphocyte that directly attacks and destroys infected body cells, cancerous cells, and the cells of transplanted tissues.

D

daughter cells Cells that arise from a parent cell by mitosis or meiosis.

deamination (dee-AM-ih-NAY-shun) Removal of an amino group from an organic molecule; a step in the catabolism of amino acids.

decomposition reaction A chemical reaction in which a larger molecule is broken down into smaller ones. *Compare* synthesis reaction.

decussation (DEE-cuh-SAY-shun) The crossing of nerve fibers from the right side of the central nervous system to the left or vice versa, especially in the spinal cord, medulla oblongata, and optic chiasm.

deep Relatively far from the body surface; opposite of *superficial.* For example, the bones are deep to the skeletal muscles.

degranulation Exocytosis and disappearance of cytoplasmic granules, especially in platelets and granulocytes.

dehydration synthesis A reaction in which two chemical monomers are joined together with water produced as a by-product; also called a *condensation reaction. Compare* hydrolysis.

denaturation A change in the three-dimensional conformation of a protein that destroys its enzymatic or other functional properties, usually caused by extremes of temperature or pH.

dendrites Processes of a neuron that receive information from other cells or from environmental stimuli and conduct signals to the soma. Dendrites are usually shorter, more branched, and more numerous than the axon and are incapable of producing action potentials. fig. 12.4

dendritic cell An antigen-presenting cell of the epidermis and mucous membranes. fig. 6.2

denervation atrophy The shrinkage of skeletal muscle that occurs when its motor neuron dies or is severed from the muscle.

dense connective tissue A connective tissue with a high density of fiber, relatively little ground substance, and scanty cells; seen in tendons and the dermis, for example.

deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) (dee-OCK-see-RY-bo-new-CLAY-ic) A very large nucleotide polymer that carries the genes of a cell; composed of a double helix of intertwined chains of deoxyribose and phosphate, with complementary pairs of nitrogenous bases facing each other between the helices. fig. 4.3

depolarization A shift in the electrical potential across a plasma membrane toward 0 mV, associated with excitation of a nerve or muscle cell. *Compare* hyperpolarization.

dermal papillae Bumps or ridges of dermis that extend upward to interdigitate with the epidermis and create a wavy boundary that resists stress and slippage of the epidermis.

dermis The deeper of the two layers of the skin, underlying the epidermis and composed of fibrous connective tissue.

desmosome (DEZ-mo-some) A patchlike intercellular junction that mechanically links two cells together. fig. 5.29

dextrose An isomer of glucose; the only form of glucose with a normal role in physiology.

diabetes (DY-uh-BEE-teez) Any disease characterized by chronic polyuria of metabolic origin; diabetes mellitus unless otherwise specified.

diabetes insipidus (in-SIP-ih-dus) A form of diabetes that results from hyposecretion of antidiuretic hormone; unlike other forms, it is not characterized by hyperglycemia or glycosuria.

diabetes mellitus (DM) (mel-EYE-tus) A form of diabetes that results from hyposecretion of insulin or from a deficient target cell response to it; signs include hyperglycemia and glycosuria.

dialysis (dy-AL-ih-sis) **1.** The separation of some solute particles from others by diffusion through a selectively permeable membrane. **2.** Hemodialysis, the process of separating wastes from the bloodstream and sometimes adding other substances to it (such as drugs and nutrients) by circulating the blood through a machine with a selectively permeable membrane, used to treat cases of renal or hepatic insufficiency.

diapedesis (DY-uh-peh-DEE-sis) Migration of formed elements of the blood through a capillary or venule wall into the interstitial space. fig. 21.16

diaphysis (dy-AFF-ih-sis) The shaft of a long bone. fig. 7.2

diarthrosis (DY-ar-THRO-sis) A freely movable synovial joint such as the knuckle, elbow, shoulder, or knee.

diastole (dy-ASS-tuh-lee) A period in which a heart chamber relaxes and fills with blood; especially ventricular relaxation.

diencephalon (DY-en-SEFF-uh-lon) A portion of the brain between the midbrain and corpus callosum; composed of the thalamus, epithalamus, and hypothalamus. fig. 14.12

differentiation Development of a relatively unspecialized cell or tissue into one with a more specific structure and function.

diffusion Spontaneous net movement of particles from a place of high concentration to a place of low concentration.

dilation (dy-LAY-shun) Widening of an organ or passageway such as a blood vessel or the pupil of the eye.

diploid (2n) Pertaining to a cell or organism with chromosomes in homologous pairs.

disaccharide (dy-SAC-uh-ride) A carbohydrate composed of two simple sugars (monosaccharides) joined by a glycosidic bond; for example, lactose, sucrose, and maltose. fig. 2.17

disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) Widespread clotting of the blood within unbroken vessels, leading to hemorrhaging, congestion of the vessels with clotted blood, and ischemia and necrosis of organs.

distal Relatively distant from a point of origin or attachment; for example, the wrist is distal to the elbow. *Compare* proximal.

disulfide bond A covalent bond between the sulfur atoms of two cysteine residues, serving to link one polypeptide chain to another or to hold a single chain in its three-dimensional conformation.

diuretic (DY-you-RET-ic) A chemical that increases urine output.

dizygotic (DZ) twins Two individuals who developed simultaneously in one uterus but originated from separate fertilized eggs and therefore are not genetically identical.

dominant **1.** Pertaining to a genetic allele that is phenotypically expressed in the presence of any other allele. **2.** Pertaining to a trait that results from a dominant allele.

dopamine (DOE-puh-meen) An inhibitory catecholamine neurotransmitter of the central nervous system, especially of the basal nuclei, where it acts to suppress unwanted motor activity. fig 12.18

dorsal Toward the back (spinal) side of the body.

dorsal root A branch of a spinal nerve that enters the spinal cord on its dorsal side, composed of sensory fibers. fig. 13.8

dorsiflexion (DOR-sih-FLEC-shun) A movement of the ankle that reduces the joint angle and raises the toes. fig. 9.14

Down syndrome *See* trisomy-21.

duodenum (DEW-oh-DEE-num, dew-ODD-eh-num) The first portion of the small intestine extending for about 25 cm from the pyloric valve of the stomach to a sharp bend called the duodenojejunal flexure; receives chyme from the stomach and secretions from the liver and pancreas. fig. 25.23

dynamic equilibrium **1.** A state of continual change that is controlled within narrow limits, as in homeostasis and chemical equilibrium. **2.** The sense of motion or acceleration of the body.

dynein (DINE-een) A motor protein involved in the beating of cilia and flagella and in the movement of molecules and organelles within cells, as in retrograde transport in a nerve fiber.

E

ectoderm The outermost of the three primary germ layers of an embryo; gives rise to the nervous system and epidermis.

ectopic (ec-TOP-ic) In an abnormal location; for example, ectopic pregnancy and ectopic pacemakers of the heart.

edema (eh-DEE-muh) Abnormal accumulation of tissue fluid resulting in swelling of the tissue.

effector A molecule, cell, or organ that carries out a response to a stimulus.

efferent (EFF-ur-unt) Carrying away or out, such as a blood vessel that carries blood away from a tissue or a nerve fiber that conducts signals away from the central nervous system. *Compare* afferent.

eicosanoids (eye-CO-sah-noyds) Twenty-carbon derivatives of arachidonic acid that function as intercellular messengers; includes prostaglandins, prostacyclin, leukotrienes, and thromboxanes.

elastic fiber A connective tissue fiber, composed of the protein elastin, that stretches under tension and returns to its original length when released; responsible for the resilience of organs such as the skin and lungs.

elasticity The tendency of a stretched structure to return to its original dimensions when tension is released.

electrical synapse A gap junction that enables one cell to stimulate another directly, without the intermediary action of a neurotransmitter; such synapses connect the cells of cardiac muscle and single-unit smooth muscle.

electrochemical gradient A difference in ion concentration from one point to another (especially across a plasma membrane) resulting in a gradient of both chemical concentration and electrical charge.

electrolyte A salt that ionizes in water and produces a solution that conducts electricity; loosely speaking, any ion that results from the dissociation of such salts, such as sodium, potassium, calcium, chloride, and bicarbonate ions.

elevation A joint movement that raises a body part, as in hunching the shoulders or closing the mouth.

embolism (EM-bo-lizm) The obstruction of a blood vessel by an embolus.

embolus (EM-bo-lus) Any abnormal traveling object in the bloodstream, such as agglutinated bacteria or blood cells, a blood clot, or an air bubble.

embryo A developing individual from the end of the second week of gestation when the three primary germ layers have formed, through the end of the eighth week when all of the organ systems are present. *Compare* conceptus, fetus.

emphysema (EM-fih-SEE-muh) A degenerative lung disease characterized by a breakdown of alveoli and diminishing surface area available for gas exchange; occurs with aging of the lungs but is greatly accelerated by smoking or air pollution.

emulsion A suspension of one liquid in another, such as oil in water or fat in the lymph.

endocrine gland (EN-doe-crin) A ductless gland that secretes hormones into the bloodstream; for example, the thyroid and adrenal glands. *Compare* exocrine gland.

endocytosis (EN-doe-sy-TOE-sis) Any process in which a cell forms vesicles from its plasma membrane and takes in large particles, molecules, or droplets of extracellular fluid; for example, phagocytosis and pinocytosis.

endoderm The innermost of the three primary germ layers of an embryo; gives rise to the mucosae of the digestive and respiratory tracts and to their associated glands.

endogenous (en-DODJ-eh-nus) Originating internally, such as the endogenous cholesterol synthesized in the body in contrast to the exogenous cholesterol coming from the diet. *Compare* exogenous.

endometrium (EN-doe-MEE-tree-um) The mucosa of the uterus; the site of implantation and source of menstrual discharge.

endoplasmic reticulum (ER) (EN-doe-PLAZ-mic reh-TIC-you-lum) An extensive system of interconnected cytoplasmic tubules or channels; classified as rough ER or smooth ER depending on the presence or absence of ribosomes on its membrane. fig. 3.26

endothelium (EN-doe-THEEL-ee-um) A simple squamous epithelium that lines the lumens of the blood vessels, heart, and lymphatic vessels.

endurance exercise A form of physical exercise, such as running or swimming, that promotes cardiopulmonary efficiency and fatigue resistance more than muscular strength. *Compare* resistance exercise.

enteric (en-TERR-ic) Pertaining to the small intestine, as in enteric hormones.

enzyme A protein that functions as a catalyst.

enzyme amplification A series of chemical reactions in which the product of one step is an enzyme that produces an even greater number of product molecules at the next step, resulting in a rapidly increasing amount of reaction product. Seen in hormone action and blood clotting, for example.

eosinophil (EE-oh-SIN-oh-fill) A granulocyte with a large, often bilobed nucleus and coarse cytoplasmic granules that stain with eosin; phagocytizes antigen-antibody complexes, allergens, and inflammatory chemicals and secretes enzymes that combat parasitic infections. table 18.8

epidermis A stratified squamous epithelium that constitutes the superficial layer of the skin overlying the dermis. fig. 6.2

epinephrine (EP-ih-NEFF-rin) A catecholamine that functions as a neurotransmitter in the sympathetic nervous system and as a hormone secreted by the adrenal medulla; also called *adrenaline.* fig. 12.18

epiphyseal plate (EP-ih-FIZZ-ee-ul) A plate of hyaline cartilage between the epiphysis and diaphysis of a long bone in a child or adolescent, serving as a growth zone for bone elongation. fig. 7.11

epiphysis (eh-PIF-ih-sis) **1.** The head of a long bone. **2.** The pineal gland (epiphysis cerebri).

epithelium A type of tissue consisting of one or more layers of closely adhering cells with little intercellular material and no blood vessels; forms the coverings and linings of many organs and the parenchyma of the glands.

erectile tissue A tissue that functions by swelling with blood, as in the penis and clitoris and inferior concha of the nasal cavity.

erythema (ERR-ih-THEE-muh) Abnormal redness of the skin due to such causes as burns, inflammation, and vasodilation.

erythrocyte (eh-RITH-ro-site) A red blood cell.

erythropoiesis (eh-RITH-ro-poy-EE-sis) The production of erythrocytes.

erythropoietin (eh-RITH-ro-POY-eh-tin) A hormone that is secreted by the kidneys and liver in response to hypoxemia and stimulates erythropoiesis.

estrogens (ESS-tro-jenz) A family of steroid hormones known especially for producing female secondary sex characteristics and regulating various aspects of the menstrual cycle and pregnancy; major forms are estradiol, estriol, and estrone.

evolution A change in the relative frequencies of alleles in a population over a period of time; the mechanism that produces adaptations in human form and function. *See also* adaptation.

excitability The ability of a cell to respond to a stimulus, especially the ability of nerve and muscle cells to produce membrane voltage changes in response to stimuli; irritability.

excitation-contraction coupling Events that link the synaptic stimulation of a muscle cell to the onset of contraction.

excitatory postsynaptic potential (EPSP) A partial depolarization of a postsynaptic neuron or muscle cell in response to a neurotransmitter, making it more likely to reach threshold and produce an action potential.

excretion The process of eliminating metabolic waste products from a cell or from the body. *Compare* secretion.

exocrine gland (EC-so-crin) A gland that secretes its products into another organ or onto the body surface, usually by way of a duct; for example, salivary and gastric glands. *Compare* endocrine gland.

exocytosis (EC-so-sy-TOE-sis) A process in which a vesicle in the cytoplasm of a cell fuses with the plasma membrane and releases its contents from the cell; used in the elimination of cellular wastes and in the release of gland products and neurotransmitters.

exogenous (ec-SODJ-eh-nus) Originating externally, such as exogenous (dietary) cholesterol; extrinsic. *Compare* endogenous.

expiration **1.** Exhaling. **2.** Dying.

extension Movement of a joint that increases the angle between articulating bones (straightens the joint). *Compare* flexion. fig. 9.9

extracellular fluid (ECF) Any body fluid that is not contained in the cells; for example, blood, lymph, and tissue fluid.

extrinsic (ec-STRIN-sic) **1.** Originating externally, such as extrinsic blood-clotting factors; exogenous. **2.** Not fully contained within an organ but acting on it, such as the extrinsic muscles of the hand and eye. *Compare* intrinsic.

exude (ec-SUDE) To seep out, such as fluid filtering from blood capillaries.

F

facilitated diffusion The process of transporting a chemical through a cellular membrane, down its concentration gradient, with the aid of a carrier that does not consume ATP; enables substances to diffuse through the membrane that would do so poorly, or not at all, without a carrier.

facilitation Making a process more likely to occur, such as the firing of a neuron, or making it occur more easily or rapidly, as in facilitated diffusion.

fallopian tube *See* uterine tube.

fascia (FASH-ee-uh) A layer of connective tissue between the muscles (deep fascia) or separating the muscles from the skin (superficial fascia). fig. 10.1

fascicle (FASS-ih-cul) A bundle of muscle or nerve fibers ensheathed in connective tissue; multiple fascicles bound together constitute a muscle or nerve as a whole. fig. 10.1

fat **1.** A triglyceride molecule. **2.** Adipose tissue.

fatty acid An organic molecule composed of a chain of an even number of carbon atoms with a carboxyl group at one end and a methyl group at the other; one of the structural subunits of triglycerides and phospholipids.

fenestrated (FEN-eh-stray-ted) Perforated with holes or slits, as in fenestrated blood capillaries and the elastic sheets of large arteries. fig. 20.6

fetus In human development, an individual from the beginning of the ninth week when all of the organ systems are present, through the time of birth. *Compare* conceptus, embryo.

fibrin (FY-brin) A sticky fibrous protein formed from fibrinogen in blood, tissue fluid, lymph, and semen; forms the matrix of a blood clot.

fibroblast A connective tissue cell that produces collagen fibers and ground substance; the only type of cell in tendons and ligaments.

fibrosis Replacement of damaged tissue with fibrous scar tissue rather than by the original tissue type; scarring. *Compare* regeneration.

fibrous connective tissue Any connective tissue with a preponderance of fiber, such as areolar, reticular, dense regular, and dense irregular connective tissues.

filtrate A fluid formed by filtration, as at the renal glomerulus and other capillaries.

filtration A process in which hydrostatic pressure forces a fluid through a selectively permeable membrane (especially a capillary wall).

fire To produce an action potential, as in nerve and muscle cells.

fix **1.** To hold a structure in place, for example, by fixator muscles that prevent unwanted joint movements. **2.** To preserve a tissue by means of a fixative.

fixative A chemical that preserves tissues from decay, such as formalin.

flagellum (fla-JEL-um) A long, motile, usually single hairlike extension of a cell; the tail of a sperm cell is the only functional flagellum in humans. fig. 27.18

flexion A joint movement that, in most cases, decreases the angle between two bones. *Compare* extension. fig. 9.9

fluid balance *See* water balance.

fluid compartments Any of the major categories of fluid in the body, separated by selectively permeable membranes and differing from each other in chemical composition. Primary examples are the intracellular fluid, tissue fluid, blood, and lymph.

fluid-mosaic model The current theory of the structure of a plasma membrane, depicting it as a bilayer of phospholipids and cholesterol with embedded proteins, many of which are able to move about in the lipid film. fig. 3.6

follicle (FOLL-ih-cul) **1.** A small space, such as a hair follicle, thyroid follicle, or ovarian follicle. **2.** An aggregation of lymphocytes in a lymphatic organ or mucous membrane.

follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) A hormone secreted by the anterior pituitary gland that stimulates development of the ovarian follicles and egg cells.

foramen (fo-RAY-men) A hole through a bone or other organ, in many cases providing passage for blood vessels and nerves.

formed element An erythrocyte, leukocyte, or platelet; any cellular component of blood or lymph as opposed to the extracellular fluid component.

fossa (FOSS-uh) A depression in an organ or tissue, such as the fossa ovalis of the heart or a cranial fossa of the skull.

fovea (FOE-vee-uh) A small pit, such as the fovea capitis of the femur or fovea centralis of the retina.

free energy The potential energy in a chemical that is available to do work.

free radical A particle derived from an atom or molecule, having an unpaired electron that makes it highly reactive and destructive to cells; produced by intrinsic processes such as aerobic respiration and by extrinsic agents such as chemicals and ionizing radiation.

frontal plane An anatomical plane that passes through the body or an organ from right to left and superior to inferior; also called a *coronal plane.* fig. A.3

functional group A group of atoms, such as a carboxyl or amino group, that determines the functional characteristics of an organic molecule.

fundus The base, the broadest part, or the part farthest from the opening of certain viscera such as the stomach and uterus.

fusiform (FEW-zih-form) Spindle-shaped; elongated, thick in the middle, and tapered at both ends, such as the shape of a smooth muscle cell or a muscle spindle.

G

gamete (GAM-eet) An egg or sperm cell.

gametogenesis (GAM-eh-toe-JEN-eh-sis) The production of eggs or sperm.

gamma-(γ-)aminobutyric acid (GABA) (ah-MEE-no-byu-TIRR-ic) An inhibitory neurotransmitter of the central nervous system in the biogenic amine class. fig. 12.18

gamma (γ) globulins (GLOB-you-lins) A class of relatively large proteins found in the blood plasma and on the surfaces of immune cells, functioning as antibodies. *See also* globulin.

ganglion (GANG-glee-un) A cluster of nerve cell bodies in the peripheral nervous system, often resembling a knot in a string.

gangrene Tissue necrosis resulting from ischemia.

gap junction A junction between two cells consisting of a pore surrounded by a ring of proteins in the plasma membrane of each cell, allowing solutes to diffuse from the cytoplasm of one cell to the next; functions include cell-to-cell nutrient transfer in the developing embryo and electrical communication between cells of cardiac and smooth muscle. *See also* electrical synapse. fig. 5.29

gastric Pertaining to the stomach.

gate A protein channel in a cellular membrane that can open or close in response to chemical, electrical, or mechanical stimuli, thus controlling when substances are allowed to pass through the membrane.

gene A segment of DNA that codes for the synthesis of one protein.

gene locus The site on a chromosome where a given gene is located.

generator potential A graded, reversible rise in the local voltage across the plasma membrane of a nerve or muscle cell in response to a stimulus; triggers an action potential if it reaches threshold.

genetic engineering Any of several techniques that alter the genetic constitution of a cell or organism, including recombinant DNA technology and gene substitution therapy.

genome (JEE-nome) All the genes of one individual, estimated at 35,000 genes in humans.

genotype (JEE-no-type) The pair of alleles possessed by an individual at one gene locus on a pair of homologous chromosomes; strongly influences the individual's phenotype for a given trait.

germ cell A gamete or any precursor cell destined to become a gamete.

germ layer Any of first three tissue layers of an embryo: ectoderm, mesoderm, or endoderm.

gestation (jess-TAY-shun) Pregnancy.

gland Any organ specialized to produce a secretion; in some cases a single cell, such as a goblet cell.

glaucoma (glaw-CO-muh) A visual disease in which an excessive amount of aqueous humor accumulates and creates pressure that is transmitted through the lens and vitreous body to the retina; pressure on the blood vessels of the choroid causes ischemia, retinal necrosis, and blindness.

globulin (GLOB-you-lin) A globular protein such as an enzyme, antibody, or albumin; especially a family of proteins in the blood plasma that includes albumin, antibodies, fibrinogen, and prothrombin.

glomerular capsule (glo-MERR-you-lur) A double-walled capsule around each glomerulus of the kidney; receives glomerular filtrate and empties into the proximal convoluted tubule. Also called *Bowman's capsule.* fig. 23.6

glomerulus A spheroid mass of blood capillaries in the kidney that filters plasma and produces glomerular filtrate, which is further processed to form the urine. fig. 23.6

glucagon (GLUE-ca-gon) A hormone secreted by α cells of the pancreatic islets in response to hypoglycemia; promotes glycogenolysis and other effects that raise blood glucose concentration.

glucocorticoid (GLUE-co-COR-tih-coyd) Any hormone of the adrenal cortex that affects carbohydrate, fat, and protein metabolism; chiefly cortisol and corticosterone.

gluconeogenesis (GLUE-co-NEE-oh-JEN-eh-sis) The synthesis of glucose from noncarbohydrates such as fats and amino acids.

glucose A monosaccharide ($C_6H_{12}O_6$) also known as blood sugar; glycogen, starch, cellulose, and maltose are made entirely of glucose, and glucose constitutes half of a sucrose or lactose molecule. The isomer involved in human physiology is also called *dextrose.*

glucose-sparing effect An effect of fats or other energy substrates in which they are used as fuel by most cells, so that those cells do not consume glucose; this makes more glucose available to cells such as neurons that cannot use alternative energy substrates.

glycerol (GLISS-er-ol) A viscous three-carbon alcohol that forms the structural backbone of triglyceride and phospholipid molecules; also called *glycerin.*

glycocalyx (GLY-co-CAY-licks) A layer of carbohydrate molecules covalently bonded to the phospholipid and protein molecules of a plasma membrane; forms a surface coat on all human cells.

glycogen (GLY-co-jen) A glucose polymer synthesized by liver, muscle, uterine, and vaginal cells that serves as an energy-storage polysaccharide.

glycogenesis (GLY-co-JEN-eh-sis) The synthesis of glycogen.

glycogenolysis (GLY-co-jeh-NOLL-ih-sis) The hydrolysis of glycogen, releasing glucose.

glycolipid (GLY-co-LIP-id) A phospholipid molecule with a carbohydrate covalently bonded to it, found in the plasma membranes of cells.

glycolysis (gly-COLL-ih-sis) A series of anaerobic oxidation reactions that break a glucose molecule into two molecules of pyruvic acid and produce a small amount of ATP.

glycoprotein (GLY-co-PRO-teen) A protein molecule with a smaller carbohydrate covalently bonded to it; found in mucus and the glycocalyx of cells, for example.

glycosaminoglycan (GAG) (GLY-cose-am-ih-no-GLY-can) A polysaccharide composed of modified sugars with amino groups; the major component of a proteoglycan. GAGs are largely responsible for the viscous consistency of tissue gel and the stiffness of cartilage.

glycosuria (GLY-co-SOOR-ee-uh) The presence of glucose in the urine, typically indicative of a kidney disease, diabetes mellitus, or other endocrine disorder.

goblet cell A mucus-secreting gland cell, shaped somewhat like a wineglass, found in the epithelia of many mucous membranes. fig. 5.33

Golgi complex (GOAL-jee) An organelle composed of several parallel cisternae, somewhat like a stack of saucers, that modifies and packages newly synthesized proteins and synthesizes carbohydrates. fig. 3.27

Golgi vesicle A membrane-bounded vesicle pinched from the Golgi complex, containing its chemical product; may be retained in the cell as a lysosome or become a secretory vesicle that releases the product by exocytosis.

gonad The ovary or testis.

gonadotropin (go-NAD-oh-TRO-pin) A pituitary hormone that stimulates the gonads; specifically FSH and LH.

G protein A protein of the plasma membrane that is activated by a membrane receptor and, in turn, opens an ion channel or activates an intracellular physiological response; important in linking ligand-receptor binding to second-messenger systems.

graded potential A variable change in voltage across a plasma membrane, as opposed to the all-or-none quality of an action potential.

gradient A difference or change in any variable, such as pressure or chemical concentration, from one point in space to another; provides a basis for molecular movements such as gas exchange, osmosis, and facilitated diffusion, and for bulk movements such as blood flow and airflow.

granulocyte (GRAN-you-lo-site) Any of three types of leukocytes (neutrophils, eosinophils, or basophils) with prominent cytoplasmic granules.

granulosa cells Cells that form a stratified cuboidal epithelium lining an ovarian follicle; source of steroid sex hormones. fig. 28.14

gray matter A zone or layer of tissue in the central nervous system where the neuron cell bodies, dendrites, and synapses are found; forms the core of the spinal cord, nuclei of the brainstem, basal nuclei of the cerebrum, cerebral cortex, and cerebellar cortex. fig. 14.6

gross anatomy Bodily structure that can be observed without magnification.

growth factor A chemical messenger that stimulates mitosis and differentiation of target cells that have receptors for it; important in such processes as fetal development, tissue maintenance and repair, and hemopoiesis; sometimes a contributing factor in cancer.

growth hormone (GH) A hormone of the anterior pituitary gland with multiple effects on many tissues, generally promoting tissue growth.

guanine A double-ringed nitrogenous base (purine) found in DNA and RNA; one of the four bases of the genetic code; complementary to cytosine in the double helix of DNA. fig. 4.2

gyrus (JY-rus) A wrinkle or fold in the cortex of the cerebrum or cerebellum.

H

hair cells Sensory cells of the cochlea, semicircular ducts, utricle, and saccule, with a fringe of surface microvilli that respond to the relative motion of a gelatinous membrane at their tips; responsible for the senses of hearing and equilibrium.

hair follicle An oblique epidermal pit that contains a hair and extends into the dermis or hypodermis.

half-life ($T_{1/2}$) **1.** The time required for one-half of a quantity of a radioactive element to decay to a stable isotope *(physical half-life)* or to be cleared from the body through a combination of radioactive decay and physiological excretion *(biological half-life).* **2.** The time required for one-half of a quantity of hormone to be cleared from the bloodstream.

haploid (n) In humans, having 23 unpaired chromosomes instead of the usual 46 chromosomes in homologous pairs; in any organism or cell, having half the normal diploid number of chromosomes for that species.

helper T cell A type of lymphocyte that performs a central coordinating role in humoral and cellular immunity; target of the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV).

hematocrit (he-MAT-oh-crit) The percentage of blood volume that is composed of erythrocytes.

hematoma (HE-muh-TOE-muh) A mass of clotted blood in the tissues; forms a bruise when visible through the skin.

heme (heem) The nonprotein, iron-containing prosthetic group of hemoglobin or myoglobin; oxygen binds to its ferrous ion. fig. 18.10

hemocytoblast (HE-mo-SY-toe-blast) An undifferentiated stem cell of the bone marrow that can give rise to any of the formed elements of the blood. fig. 18.4

hemoglobin (HE-mo-GLO-bin) The red gas- transport pigment of an erythrocyte.

hemolysis (he-MOLL-ih-sis) The rupturing of erythrocytes from such causes as a hypotonic medium, parasitic infection, or a complement reaction.

hemopoiesis (HE-mo-poy-EE-sis) Production of any of the formed elements of blood.

heparin (HEP-uh-rin) A polysaccharide secreted by basophils and mast cells that inhibits blood clotting.

hepatic (heh-PAT-ic) Pertaining to the liver.

hepatic portal system A network of blood vessels that connect capillaries of the intestines to capillaries (sinusoids) of the liver, thus delivering newly absorbed nutrients directly to the liver.

hepatitis (HEP-uh-TY-tiss) Inflammation of the liver.

heterozygous (HET-er-oh-ZY-gus) Having nonidentical alleles at the same gene locus of two homologous chromosomes.

hiatus (hy-AY-tus) An opening or gap, such as the esophageal hiatus through the diaphragm.

high-density lipoprotein (HDL) A lipoprotein of the blood plasma that is about 50% lipid and 50% protein; functions to transport phospholipids and cholesterol from other organs to the liver for disposal. A high proportion of HDL to low-density lipoprotein (LDL) is desirable for cardiovascular health.

hilum (HY-lum) A point on the surface of an organ where blood vessels, lymphatic vessels, or nerves enter and leave, usually marked by a depression and slit; the midpoint of the concave surface of any organ that is roughly bean-shaped, such as the lymph nodes, kidneys, and lungs. Also called the *hilus.* fig. 23.4

histamine (HISS-ta-meen) An amino acid derivative secreted by basophils, mast cells, and some neurons; functions as a paracrine secretion and neurotransmitter to stimulate effects such as gastric secretion, bronchoconstriction, and vasodilation. fig. 12.18

histological section A thin slice of tissue, usually mounted on a slide and artificially stained to make its microscopic structure more visible.

histology **1.** The microscopic structure of tissues and organs. **2.** The study of such structure.

homeostasis (HO-me-oh-STAY-sis) The tendency of a living body to maintain relatively stable internal conditions in spite of greater changes in its external environment.

homologous (ho-MOLL-uh-gus) **1.** Having the same embryonic or evolutionary origin but not necessarily the same function, such as the scrotum and labia majora. **2.** Pertaining to two chromosomes with identical structures and gene loci but not necessarily identical alleles; each member of the pair is inherited from a different parent.

homozygous (HO-mo-ZY-gus) Having identical alleles at the same gene locus of two homologous chromosomes.

hormone A chemical messenger that is secreted into the blood by an endocrine gland or isolated gland cell and triggers a physiological response in distant cells with receptors for it.

host cell Any cell belonging to the human body, as opposed to foreign cells introduced to it by such causes as infections and tissue transplants.

human Any species of primate classified in the family Hominidae, characterized by bipedal locomotion, relatively large brains, and usually articulate speech; currently represented only by *Homo sapiens* but including extinct species of *Homo* and *Australopithecus.*

human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG) (COR-ee-ON-ic) A hormone of pregnancy secreted by the chorion that stimulates continued growth of the corpus luteum and secretion of its hormones. HCG in urine is the basis for pregnancy testing.

human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) A virus that infects human helper T cells and other cells, suppresses immunity, and causes AIDS.

hyaline cartilage (HY-uh-lin) A form of cartilage with a relatively clear matrix and fine collagen fibers but no conspicuous elastic fibers or coarse collagen bundles as in other types of cartilage.

hyaluronic acid (HY-uh-loo-RON-ic) A glycosaminoglycan that is particularly abundant in connective tissues, where it becomes hydrated and forms the tissue gel.

hydrogen bond A weak attraction between a slightly positive hydrogen atom on one molecule and a slightly negative oxygen or nitrogen atom on another molecule, or between such atoms on different parts of the same molecule; responsible for the cohesion of water and the coiling of protein and DNA molecules, for example.

hydrolysis (hy-DROL-ih-sis) A chemical reaction that breaks a covalent bond in a molecule by adding an –OH group to one side of the bond and –H to the other side, thus consuming a water molecule. *Compare* dehydration synthesis.

hydrophilic (HY-dro-FILL-ic) Pertaining to molecules that attract water or dissolve in it because of their polar nature.

hydrophobic (HY-dro-FOE-bic) Pertaining to molecules that do not attract water or dissolve in it because of their nonpolar nature; such molecules tend to dissolve in lipids and other nonpolar solvents.

hydrostatic pressure The physical force generated by a liquid such as blood or tissue fluid, as opposed to osmotic and atmospheric pressures.

hydroxyl group (hy-DROCK-sil) A functional group with the formula –OH found on many organic molecules such as carbohydrates and alcohols.

hypercalcemia (HY-pur-cal-SEE-me-uh) An excess of calcium ions in the blood.

hypercapnia (HY-pur-CAP-nee-uh) An excess of carbon dioxide in the blood.

hyperextension A joint movement that increases the angle between two bones beyond 180°. fig. 9.9

hyperglycemia (HY-pur-gly-SEE-me-uh) An excess of glucose in the blood.

hyperkalemia (HY-pur-ka-LEE-me-uh) An excess of potassium ions in the blood.

hypernatremia (HY-pur-na-TREE-me-uh) An excess of sodium ions in the blood.

hyperplasia (HY-pur-PLAY-zhuh) The growth of a tissue through cellular multiplication, not cellular enlargement. *Compare* hypertrophy.

hyperpolarization A shift in the electrical potential across a plasma membrane to a value more negative than the resting membrane potential, tending to inhibit a nerve or muscle cell. *Compare* depolarization.

hypersecretion Excessive secretion of a hormone or other gland product; can lead to endocrine disorders such as Cushing syndrome or gigantism, for example.

hypertension Excessively high blood pressure; criteria vary but it is often considered to be a condition in which systolic pressure exceeds 140 mmHg or diastolic pressure exceeds 90 mmHg.

hyperthermia Excessively high core body temperature, as in heatstroke or fever.

hypertonic Having a higher osmotic pressure than human cells or some other reference solution and tending to cause osmotic shrinkage of cells.

hypertrophy (hy-PUR-tro-fee) The growth of a tissue through cellular enlargement, not cellular multiplication; for example, the growth of muscle under the influence of exercise. *Compare* hyperplasia.

hypocalcemia (HY-po-cal-SEE-me-uh) A deficiency of calcium ions in the blood.

hypocapnia (HY-po-CAP-nee-uh) A deficiency of carbon dioxide in the blood.

hypodermis (HY-po-DUR-miss) A layer of connective tissue deep to the skin; also called *superficial fascia, subcutaneous tissue,* or when it is predominantly adipose, *subcutaneous fat.*

hypoglycemia (HY-po-gly-SEE-me-uh) A deficiency of glucose in the blood.

hypokalemia (HY-po-ka-LEE-me-uh) A deficiency of potassium ions in the blood.

hyponatremia (HY-po-na-TREE-me-uh) A deficiency of sodium ions in the blood.

hyposecretion Inadequate secretion of a hormone or other gland product; can lead to endocrine disorders such as diabetes mellitus or pituitary dwarfism, for example.

hypothalamic thermostat (HY-po-thuh-LAM-ic) A nucleus in the hypothalamus that monitors body temperature and sends afferent signals to hypothalamic heat-promoting or heat-losing centers to maintain thermal homeostasis.

hypothalamus (HY-po-THAL-uh-mus) The inferior portion of the diencephalon of the brain, forming the walls and floor of the third ventricle and giving rise to the posterior pituitary gland; controls many fundamental physiological functions such as appetite, thirst, and body temperature and exerts many of its effects through the endocrine and autonomic nervous systems. fig. 14.12

hypothermia (HY-po-THUR-me-uh) A state of abnormally low core body temperature.

hypothesis An informed conjecture that is capable of being tested and potentially falsified by experimentation or data collection.

hypotonic Having a lower osmotic pressure than human cells or some other reference solution and tending to cause osmotic swelling and lysis of cells.

hypovolemic shock (HY-po-vo-LEE-mic) Insufficient cardiac output resulting from a drop in blood volume. *See also* shock.

hypoxemia (HY-pock-SEE-me-uh) A deficiency of oxygen in the bloodstream.

hypoxia (hy-POCK-see-uh) A deficiency of oxygen in any tissue.

I

immune system A population of cells, including leukocytes and macrophages, that occur in most organs of the body and protect against foreign organisms, some foreign chemicals, and cancerous or other aberrant host cells.

immunity The ability to ward off a specific infection or disease, usually as a result of prior exposure and the body's production of antibodies or lymphocytes against a pathogen. *Compare* resistance.

immunoglobulin (IM-you-no-GLOB-you-lin) *See* antibody.

implantation The attachment of a conceptus to the endometrium of the uterus.

inclusion Any visible object in the cytoplasm of a cell other than an organelle or cytoskeletal element; usually a foreign body or a stored cell product, such as a virus, dust particle, lipid droplet, glycogen granule, or pigment.

infarction (in-FARK-shun) **1.** The sudden death of tissue from a lack of blood perfusion; also called an *infarct.* **2.** An area of necrotic tissue produced by this process.

inferior Lower than another structure or point of reference from the perspective of anatomical position; for example, the stomach is inferior to the diaphragm.

inflammation (IN-fluh-MAY-shun) A complex of tissue responses to trauma or infection serving to ward off a pathogen and promote tissue repair; recognized by the cardinal signs of redness, heat, swelling, and pain.

infundibulum (IN-fun-DIB-you-lum) Any funnel-shaped passage or structure, such as the distal portion of the uterine tube and the stalk that attaches the pituitary gland to the hypothalamus.

inguinal (IN-gwih-nul) Pertaining to the groin.

inhibin A hormone produced by the testes and ovaries that inhibits the secretion of FSH.

inhibitory postsynaptic potential (IPSP) Hyperpolarization of a postsynaptic neuron in response to a neurotransmitter, making it less likely to reach threshold and fire.

innervation (IN-ur-VAY-shun) The nerve supply to an organ.

insertion The point at which a muscle attaches to another tissue (usually a bone) and produces movement, opposite from its stationary origin; the origin and insertion of a given muscle sometimes depend on what muscle action is being considered. *Compare* origin.

inspiration Inhaling.

insulin (IN-suh-lin) A hormone produced by β cells of the pancreatic islets in response to a rise in blood glucose concentration; accelerates glucose uptake and metabolism by most cells of the body, thus lowering blood glucose concentration.

integral (transmembrane) protein A protein that extends through a plasma membrane and contacts both the extracellular and intracellular fluid. fig. 3.7

integration A process in which a neuron receives input from multiple sources and their combined effects determine its output; the cellular basis of information processing by the nervous system.

integumentary system (in-TEG-you-MEN-tah-ree) An organ system consisting of the skin, cutaneous glands, hair, and nails.

interatrial septum (IN-tur-AY-tree-ul) The wall between the atria of the heart.

intercalated disc (in-TUR-kuh-LAY-ted) A complex of fascia adherens, gap junctions, and desmosomes that join two cardiac muscle cells end to end, microscopically visible as a dark line which helps to histologically distinguish this muscle type; functions as a mechanical and electrical link between cells. fig. 19.11

intercellular Between cells.

intercostal (IN-tur-COSS-tul) Between the ribs, as in the intercostal muscles, arteries, veins, and nerves.

interdigitate (IN-tur-DIDJ-ih-tate) To fit together like the fingers of two folded hands; for example, at the dermal-epidermal boundary, intercalated discs of the heart, and pedicels of the podocytes in the kidney. fig. 23.9

interleukin (IN-tur-LOO-kin) A hormonelike chemical messenger from one leukocyte to another, serving as a means of communication and coordination during immune responses.

interneuron (IN-tur-NEW-ron) A neuron that is contained entirely in the central nervous system and, in the path of signal conduction, lies anywhere between an afferent pathway and an efferent pathway.

interosseous membrane (IN-tur-OSS-ee-us) A fibrous membrane that connects the radius to the ulna and the tibia to the fibula along most of the shaft of each bone. fig. 8.33

interphase That part of the cell cycle between one mitotic phase and the next, from the end of cytokinesis to the beginning of the next prophase.

interstitial (IN-tur-STISH-ul) **1.** Pertaining to the extracellular spaces in a tissue. **2.** Located between other structures, as in the interstitial cells of the testis.

interstitial fluid Fluid in the interstitial spaces of a tissue, also called *tissue fluid.*

intervertebral disc A cartilaginous pad between the bodies of two adjacent vertebrae.

intracellular Within a cell.

intracellular fluid (ICF) The fluid contained in the cells; one of the major fluid compartments.

intravenous (I.V.) **1.** Present or occurring within a vein, such as an intravenous blood clot. **2.** Introduced directly into a vein, such as an intravenous injection or I.V. drip.

intrinsic (in-TRIN-sic) **1.** Arising from within, such as intrinsic blood-clotting factors; endogenous. **2.** Fully contained within an organ, such as the intrinsic muscles of the hand and eye. *Compare* extrinsic.

intrinsic factor A secretion of the gastric glands required for the intestinal absorption of vitamin B_{12}. Hyposecretion of intrinsic factor leads to pernicious anemia.

in vitro (in VEE-tro) In a laboratory container; removed from the body and observed in isolation (Latin, *in glass*).

in vivo (in VEE-vo) In the living state; in the body (Latin, *in life*).

involuntary Not under conscious control, including tissues such as smooth and cardiac muscle and events such as reflexes.

involution (IN-vo-LOO-shun) Shrinkage of a tissue or organ by autolysis, such as involution of the thymus after childhood and of the uterus after pregnancy.

ion A chemical particle with unequal numbers of electrons or protons and consequently a net negative or positive charge; it may have a single atomic nucleus as in a sodium ion or a few atoms as in a bicarbonate ion, or it may be a large molecule such as a protein.

ionic bond The force that binds a cation to an anion.

ionizing radiation High-energy electromagnetic rays that eject electrons from atoms or molecules and convert them to ions, frequently causing cellular damage; for example, X rays and gamma rays.

ipsilateral (IP-sih-LAT-ur-ul) On the same side of the body, as in reflex arcs in which a muscular response occurs on the same side of the body as the stimulus. *Compare* contralateral.

ischemia (iss-KEE-me-uh) Insufficient blood flow to a tissue, typically resulting in metabolite accumulation and sometimes tissue death.

isometric contraction A muscle contraction in which internal tension rises but the muscle does not shorten.

isotonic Having the same osmotic pressure as human cells or some other reference solution.

isotonic contraction A muscle contraction in which the muscle shortens and moves a load while its internal tension remains constant.

J

jaundice (JAWN-diss) A yellowish color of the skin, corneas, mucous membranes, and body fluids due to an excessive concentration of bilirubin; usually indicative of a liver disease, obstructed bile secretion, or hemolytic disease.

K

ketone (KEE-tone) Any organic compound with a carbonyl ($C{=}O$) group covalently bonded to two other carbons.

ketone bodies Certain ketones (acetone, acetoacetic acid, and β-hydroxybutyric acid) produced by the incomplete oxidation of fats, especially when fats are being rapidly catabolized. *See also* ketosis.

ketonuria (KEE-toe-NEW-ree-uh) The abnormal presence of ketones in the urine as an effect of ketosis.

ketosis (kee-TOE-sis) An abnormally high concentration of ketone bodies in the blood, occurring in pregnancy, starvation, diabetes mellitus, and other conditions; tends to cause acidosis and to depress the nervous system.

kilocalorie The amount of heat energy needed to raise the temperature of 1 kg of water by 1°C; 1,000 calories. Also called a *Calorie* or *large calorie.*

kinase Any enzyme that adds an inorganic phosphate (P_i) group to another organic molecule. Also called a *phosphokinase.*

L

labium (LAY-bee-um) A lip, such as those of the mouth and the labia majora and minora of the vulva.

lactation The secretion of milk.

lactic acid A small organic acid produced as an end product of the anaerobic fermentation of pyruvic acid; a contributing factor in muscle fatigue.

lacuna (la-CUE-nuh) A small cavity or depression in a tissue such as bone, cartilage, and the erectile tissues.

lamella (la-MELL-uh) A little plate, such as the lamellae of bone. fig. 7.4

lamina (LAM-ih-nuh) A thin layer, such as the lamina of a vertebra or the lamina propria of a mucous membrane. fig. 8.22

lamina propria (PRO-pree-uh) A thin layer of areolar tissue immediately deep to the epithelium of a mucous membrane. fig. 5.33

larynx (LAIR-inks) A cartilaginous chamber in the neck containing the vocal cords; the voicebox.

latent period The interval between a stimulus and response, especially in the action of nerve and muscle cells.

lateral Away from the midline of an organ or median plane of the body; toward the side. *Compare* medial.

law A verbal or mathematical description of a predictable natural phenomenon or of the relationships between variables; for example, Boyle's law and the second law of thermodynamics.

law of mass action A law that states that the speed and direction of a reversible chemical reaction is determined by the relative quantities of the reactants. A reversible reaction $A + B \leftrightarrow C + D$ proceeds left to right if the quantity of $A + B$ is greater than the quantity of $C + D$ and right to left if the latter is greater. This principle governs such reactions as the binding and dissociation of oxygen and hemoglobin.

leader sequence A sequence of bases in mRNA that is not translated to protein but serves as a binding site for a ribosome.

length-tension relationship A law that relates the tension generated by muscle contraction to the length of the muscle fiber prior to stimulation; it shows that the greatest tension is generated when the fiber exhibits an intermediate degree of stretch before stimulation.

lesion A circumscribed zone of tissue injury, such as a skin abrasion or myocardial infarction.

leukocyte (LOO-co-site) A white blood cell.

leukotrienes (LOO-co-TRY-eens) Eicosanoids that promote allergic and inflammatory responses such as vasodilation and neutrophil chemotaxis; secreted by basophils, mast cells, and damaged tissues.

libido (lih-BEE-do) Sex drive.

ligament A cord or band of tough collagenous tissue binding one organ to another, especially one bone to another, and serving to hold organs in place; for example, the cruciate ligaments of the knee, broad ligament of the uterus, and falciform ligament of the liver.

ligand (LIG-and, LY-gand) A chemical that binds reversibly to a receptor site on a protein, such as a neurotransmitter that binds to a membrane receptor or a substrate that binds to an enzyme.

ligand-regulated gate A channel protein in a plasma membrane that opens or closes when a ligand binds to it, enabling the ligand to determine when substances can enter or leave the cell.

light microscope (LM) A microscope that produces images with visible light.

linea (LIN-ee-uh) An anatomical line, such as the linea alba.

lingual (LING-gwul) Pertaining to the tongue, as in lingual papillae.

lipase (LY-pace) An enzyme that hydrolyzes a triglyceride into fatty acids and glycerol.

lipid A hydrophobic organic compound composed mainly of carbon and a high ratio of hydrogen to oxygen; includes fatty acids, fats, phospholipids, steroids, and prostaglandins.

lipoprotein (LIP-oh-PRO-teen) A protein-coated lipid droplet in the blood plasma or lymph, serving as a means of lipid transport; for example, chylomicrons and the high- and low-density lipoproteins.

load **1.** To pick up a gas for transport in the bloodstream. **2.** The resistance acted upon by a muscle.

lobe **1.** A structural subdivision of an organ such as a gland, a lung, or the brain, bounded by a visible landmark such as a fissure or septum. **2.** The inferior, noncartilaginous, often pendant part of the ear pinna; the earlobe.

lobule (LOB-yool) A small subdivision of an organ or of a lobe of an organ, especially of a gland.

locus *See* gene locus.

long bone A bone such as the femur or humerus that is markedly longer than wide and that generally serves as a lever.

longitudinal Oriented along the longest dimension of the body or of an organ.

loose connective tissue *See* areolar tissue.

low-density lipoprotein (LDL) A blood-borne droplet of about 20% protein and 80% lipid (mainly cholesterol) that transports cholesterol from the liver to other tissues.

lower limb The appendage that arises from the hip, consisting of the thigh from hip to knee; the crural region from knee to ankle; the ankle; and the foot. Loosely called the leg, although that term properly refers only to the crural region.

lumbar Pertaining to the lower back and sides, between the thoracic cage and pelvis.

lumen (LOO-men) The internal space of a hollow organ such as a blood vessel or the esophagus, or a space surrounded by cells as in a gland acinus.

luteinizing hormone (LH) (LOO-tee-in-eye-zing) A hormone of the anterior pituitary gland that stimulates ovulation in females and testosterone secretion in males.

lymph The fluid contained in lymphatic vessels and lymph nodes, produced by the absorption of tissue fluid.

lymphatic system (lim-FAT-ic) An organ system consisting of lymphatic vessels, lymph nodes, the tonsils, spleen, and thymus; functions include tissue fluid recovery and immunity.

lymph node A small organ found along the course of a lymphatic vessel that filters the lymph and contains lymphocytes and macrophages, which respond to antigens in the lymph. fig. 21.8

lymphocytes (LIM-foe-sites) A class of relatively small agranulocytes with numerous types and roles in nonspecific defense, humoral immunity, and cellular immunity. table 18.8

lymphokine Any interleukin secreted by a lymphocyte.

lysosome (LY-so-some) A membrane-bounded organelle containing a mixture of enzymes with a variety of intracellular and extracellular roles in digesting foreign matter, pathogens, and expired organelles.

lysozyme (LY-so-zime) An enzyme found in tears, milk, saliva, mucus, and other body fluids that destroys bacteria by digesting their cell walls. Also called *muramidase.*

M

macromolecule Any molecule of large size and high molecular weight, such as a protein, nucleic acid, polysaccharide, or triglyceride.

macrophage (MAC-ro-faje) Any cell of the body, other than a leukocyte, that is specialized for phagocytosis; usually derived from blood monocytes and often functioning as antigen-presenting cells.

macula (MAC-you-luh) A patch or spot, such as the *macula lutea* of the retina.

malignant (muh-LIG-nent) Pertaining to a cell or tumor that is cancerous; capable of metastasis.

maltose A disaccharide composed of two glucose monomers.

mammary gland The milk-secreting gland that develops within the breast in pregnancy and lactation; only minimally developed in the breast of a nonpregnant or nonlactating woman.

mast cell A connective tissue cell, similar to a basophil, that secretes histamine, heparin, and other chemicals involved in inflammation; often concentrated along the course of blood capillaries. fig. 5.15

matrix **1.** The extracellular material of a tissue. **2.** The fluid within a mitochondrion containing enzymes of the citric acid cycle. **3.** The substance or framework within which other structures are embedded, such as the fibrous matrix of a blood clot. **4.** A mass of epidermal cells from which a hair root or nail root develops.

mechanoreceptor A sensory nerve ending or organ specialized to detect mechanical stimuli such as touch, pressure, stretch, or vibration.

medial Toward the midline of an organ or median plane of the body. *Compare* lateral.

median plane The sagittal plane that divides the body or an organ into equal right and left halves; also called *midsagittal plane*. fig. A.3

mediastinum (ME-dee-ass-TY-num) The thick median partition of the thoracic cavity that separates one pleural cavity from the other and contains the heart, great blood vessels, and thymus. fig. A.7

medulla (meh-DULE-uh, meh-DULL-uh) Tissue deep to the cortex of certain two-layered organs such as the adrenal glands, lymph nodes, hairs, and kidneys.

medulla oblongata (OB-long-GAH-ta) The most caudal part of the brainstem, immediately superior to the foramen magnum of the skull, connecting the spinal cord to the rest of the brain. fig. 14.1

meiosis (my-OH-sis) A form of cell division in which a diploid cell divides twice and produces four haploid daughter cells; occurs only in gametogenesis.

melanocyte A cell of the stratum basale of the epidermis that synthesizes melanin and transfers it to the keratinocytes.

meninges (meh-NIN-jeez) (singular, *meninx*) Three fibrous membranes between the central nervous system and surrounding bone: the dura mater, arachnoid mater, and pia mater. fig. 14.5

menopause Cessation of the menstrual cycles, occurring during female climacteric.

merocrine (MERR-oh-crin) Pertaining to gland cells that release their product by exocytosis; also called *eccrine*.

mesenchyme (MEZ-en-kime) A gelatinous embryonic connective tissue derived from the mesoderm; differentiates into all permanent connective tissues and most muscle.

mesentery (MESS-en-tare-ee) A serous membrane that binds the intestines together and suspends them from the abdominal wall; the visceral continuation of the peritoneum. fig. 25.3

mesoderm (MEZ-oh-durm) The middle layer of the three primary germ layers of an embryo; gives rise to muscle and connective tissue.

mesothelium (MEZ-oh-THEE-lee-um) A simple squamous epithelium that covers the serous membranes.

metabolic pathway A series of linked chemical reactions, most of which are catalyzed by a separate enzyme; glycolysis, for example.

metabolic rate The overall rate of the body's metabolic reactions at any given time, which determines the rates of nutrient and oxygen consumption; often measured from the rate of oxygen consumption or heat production. *Compare* basal metabolic rate.

metabolic waste A product of metabolism that is not useful to the body but is potentially toxic and must be excreted.

metabolism (meh-TAB-oh-lizm) The sum of all chemical reactions in the body.

metabolite (meh-TAB-oh-lite) Any chemical produced by metabolism.

metaplasia Transformation of one mature tissue type into another; for example, a change from pseudostratified to stratified squamous epithelium in an overventilated nasal cavity.

metastasis (meh-TASS-tuh-sis) The spread of cancer cells from the original tumor to a new location, where they seed the development of a new tumor.

microtubule An intracellular cylinder composed of the protein tubulin, forming centrioles, the axonemes of cilia and flagella, and part of the cytoskeleton.

microvillus An outgrowth of the plasma membrane that increases the surface area of a cell and functions in absorption and some sensory processes; distinguished from cilia and flagella by its smaller size and lack of an axoneme.

milliequivalent One-thousandth of an equivalent, which is the amount of an electrolyte that would neutralize 1 mole of H^+ or OH^-. Electrolyte concentrations are commonly expressed in milliequivalents per liter (mEq/L).

mineralocorticoid (MIN-ur-uh-lo-COR-tih-coyd) A steroid hormone, chiefly aldosterone, that is secreted by the adrenal cortex and acts to regulate electrolyte balance.

mitochondrion (MY-toe-CON-dree-un) An organelle specialized to synthesize ATP, enclosed in a double unit membrane with infoldings of the inner membrane called cristae.

mitosis (my-TOE-sis) A form of cell division in which a cell divides once and produces two genetically identical daughter cells; sometimes used to refer only to the division of the genetic material or nucleus and not to include cytokinesis, the subsequent division of the cytoplasm.

moiety (MOY-eh-tee) A chemically distinct subunit of a macromolecule, such as the heme and globin moieties of hemoglobin or the lipid and carbohydrate moieties of a glycolipid.

molarity A measure of chemical concentration expressed as moles of solute per liter of solution.

mole The mass of a chemical equal to its molecular weight in grams, containing 6.023×10^{23} molecules.

monocyte An agranulocyte specialized to migrate into the tissues and transform into a macrophage. table 18.8

monokine Any interleukin secreted by a monocyte or macrophage.

monomer (MON-oh-mur) **1.** One of the identical or similar subunits of a larger molecule in the dimer to polymer range; for example, the glucose monomers of starch, the amino acids of a protein, or the nucleotides of DNA. **2.** One subunit of an antibody molecule, composed of four polypeptides.

monosaccharide (MON-oh-SAC-uh-ride) A simple sugar, or sugar monomer; chiefly glucose, fructose, and galactose.

monozygotic (MZ) twins Two individuals who developed from the same fertilized egg and are therefore genetically identical.

motor end plate A depression in a muscle fiber where it has synaptic contact with a nerve fiber and has a high density of neurotransmitter receptors. fig. 11.5

motor neuron A neuron that transmits signals from the central nervous system to any effector (muscle or gland cell); its axon is an efferent nerve fiber.

motor protein Any protein that produces movements of a cell or its components owing to its ability to undergo quick repetitive changes in conformation and to bind reversibly to other molecules; for example, myosin, dynein, and kinesin.

motor unit One motor neuron and all the skeletal muscle fibers innervated by it.

mucosa (mew-CO-suh) A tissue layer that forms the inner lining of an anatomical tract that is open to the exterior (the respiratory, digestive, urinary, and reproductive tracts). Composed of epithelium, connective tissue (lamina propria), and often smooth muscle (muscularis mucosae). fig. 5.33

mucous membrane A mucosa.

mucus A viscous, slimy or sticky secretion produced by mucous cells and mucous membranes and consisting of a hydrated glycoprotein, mucin; serves to bind particles together, such as bits of masticated food, and to protect the mucous membranes from infection and abrasion.

muscle fiber One skeletal muscle cell.

muscle tone A state of continual, partial contraction of resting skeletal or smooth muscle.

muscularis externa The external muscular wall of certain viscera such as the esophagus and small intestine. fig. 25.2

muscularis mucosae (MUSS-cue-LERR-iss mew-CO-see) A layer of smooth muscle immediately deep to the lamina propria of a mucosa. fig. 5.33

muscular system An organ system composed of the skeletal muscles, specialized mainly for maintaining postural support and producing movements of the bones.

muscular tissue A tissue composed of elongated, electrically excitable cells specialized for contraction; the three types are skeletal, cardiac, and smooth muscle.

mutagen (MEW-tuh-jen) Any agent that causes a mutation, including viruses, chemicals, and ionizing radiation.

mutation Any change in the structure of a chromosome or a DNA molecule, often resulting in a change of organismal structure or function.

myelin (MY-eh-lin) A lipid sheath around a nerve fiber, formed from closely spaced spiral layers of the plasma membrane of a Schwann cell or oligodendrocyte. fig. 12.7

myocardium (MY-oh-CAR-dee-um) The middle, muscular layer of the heart.

myocyte A muscle cell, especially a cell of cardiac or smooth muscle.

myoepithelial cell An epithelial cell that has become specialized to contract like a muscle cell; important in dilation of the pupil and ejection of secretions from gland acini.

myofibril (MY-oh-FY-bril) A bundle of myofilaments forming an internal subdivision of a cardiac or skeletal muscle cell. fig. 11.2

myofilament A protein microfilament responsible for the contraction of a muscle cell, composed mainly of myosin or actin. fig. 11.3

myoglobin (MY-oh-GLO-bin) A red oxygen-storage pigment of muscle; supplements hemoglobin in providing oxygen for aerobic muscle metabolism.

myosin A motor protein that constitutes the thick myofilaments of muscle and has globular, mobile heads of ATPase that bind to actin molecules.

N

necrosis (neh-CRO-sis) Pathological tissue death due to such causes as infection, trauma, or hypoxia. *Compare* apoptosis.

negative feedback A self-corrective mechanism that underlies most homeostasis, in which a bodily change is detected and responses are activated that reverse the change and restore stability and preserve normal body function.

negative feedback inhibition A mechanism for limiting the secretion of a pituitary tropic hormone. The tropic hormone stimulates another endocrine gland to secrete its own hormone, and that hormone inhibits further release of the tropic hormone.

neonate (NEE-oh-nate) An infant up to 6 weeks old.

neoplasia (NEE-oh-PLAY-zee-uh) Abnormal growth of new tissue, such as a tumor, with no useful function.

nephron One of approximately 1 million blood-filtering, urine-producing units in each kidney; consists of a glomerulus, glomerular capsule, proximal convoluted tubule, nephron loop, and distal convoluted tubule. fig. 23.5

nerve A cordlike organ of the peripheral nervous system composed of multiple nerve fibers ensheathed in connective tissue.

nerve fiber The axon of a single neuron.

nerve impulse A wave of self-propagating action potentials traveling along a nerve fiber.

nervous system An organ system composed of the brain, spinal cord, nerves, and ganglia, specialized for rapid communication of information.

nervous tissue A tissue composed of neurons and neuroglia.

net filtration pressure A net force favoring filtration of fluid from a capillary or venule when all the hydrostatic and osmotic pressures of the blood and tissue fluids are taken into account.

neural tube A dorsal hollow tube in the embryo that develops into the central nervous system. fig. 14.3

neuroglia (noo-ROG-lee-uh) All cells of nervous tissue except neurons; cells that perform various supportive and protective roles for the neurons.

neuromuscular junction A synapse between a nerve fiber and a muscle fiber. fig. 11.7

neuron (NOOR-on) A nerve cell; an electrically excitable cell specialized for producing and transmitting action potentials and secreting chemicals that stimulate adjacent cells.

neuronal pool (noor-OH-nul) A group of interconnected neurons of the central nervous system that perform a single collective function; for example, the vasomotor center of the brainstem and speech centers of the cerebral cortex.

neuropeptide A peptide secreted by a neuron, often serving to modify the action of a neurotransmitter; for example, endorphins, enkephalin, and cholecystokinin. fig. 12.18

neurotransmitter A chemical released at the distal end of an axon that stimulates an adjacent cell; for example, acetylcholine, norepinephrine, or serotonin.

neutral fat A triglyceride.

neutrophil (NOO-tro-fill) A granulocyte, usually with a multilobed nucleus, that serves especially to destroy bacteria by means of phagocytosis, intracellular digestion, and secretion of bactericidal chemicals. table 18.8

nitrogenous base (ny-TRODJ-eh-nus) An organic molecule with a single or double carbon-nitrogen ring that forms one of the building blocks of ATP, other nucleotides, and nucleic acids; the basis of the genetic code. fig. 4.2

nitrogenous waste Any nitrogen-containing substance produced as a metabolic waste and excreted in the urine; chiefly ammonia, urea, uric acid, and creatinine.

nociceptor (NO-sih-SEP-tur) A nerve ending specialized to detect tissue damage and produce a sensation of pain; pain receptor.

norepinephrine (nor-EP-ih-NEF-rin) A catecholamine that functions as a neurotransmitter and adrenal hormone, especially in the sympathetic nervous system. fig. 12.18

nuclear envelope (NEW-clee-ur) A pair of unit membranes enclosing the nucleus of a cell, with prominent pores allowing traffic of molecules between the nucleoplasm and cytoplasm. fig. 3.25

nucleic acid (new-CLAY-ic) An acidic polymer of nucleotides found or produced in the nucleus, functioning in heredity and protein synthesis; of two types, DNA and RNA.

nucleotide (NEW-clee-oh-tide) An organic molecule composed of a nitrogenous base, a monosaccharide, and a phosphate group; the monomer of a nucleic acid.

nucleus (NEW-clee-us) **1.** A cell organelle containing DNA and surrounded by a double unit membrane. **2.** A mass of neurons (gray matter) surrounded by white matter of the brain, including the basal nuclei and brainstem nuclei. **3.** The positively charged core of an atom, consisting of protons and neutrons. **4.** A central structure, such as the nucleus pulposus of an intervertebral disc.

nucleus pulposus The gelatinous center of an intervertebral disc.

O

olfaction (ole-FAC-shun) The sense of smell.

oncotic pressure (ong-COT-ic) The difference between the colloid osmotic pressure of the blood and that of the tissue fluid, usually favoring fluid absorption by the blood capillaries. *Compare* colloid osmotic pressure.

oocyte (OH-oh-site) In the development of an egg cell, any haploid stage between meiosis I and fertilization.

oogenesis (OH-oh-JEN-eh-sis) The production of a fertilizable egg cell through a series of mitotic and meiotic cell divisions; female gametogenesis.

ophthalmic (off-THAL-mic) Pertaining to the eye or vision; optic.

opposition A movement of the thumb in which it touches any fingertip of the same hand.

optic Pertaining to the eye or vision.

orbit The eye socket of the skull.

organ Any anatomical structure that is composed of at least two different tissue types, has recognizable structural boundaries, and has a discrete function different from the structures around it. Many organs are microscopic and many organs contain smaller organs, such as the skin containing numerous microscopic sense organs.

organelle Any structure within a cell that carries out one of its metabolic roles, such as mitochondria, centrioles, endoplasmic reticulum, and the nucleus; an intracellular structure other than the cytoskeleton and inclusions.

organic Pertaining to compounds of carbon.

origin The relatively stationary attachment of a skeletal muscle. *Compare* insertion.

osmolality (OZ-mo-LAL-ih-tee) The molar concentration of dissolved particles in 1 kg of water.

osmolarity (OZ-mo-LERR-ih-tee) The molar concentration of dissolved particles in 1 L of solution.

osmoreceptor (OZ-mo-re-SEP-tur) A neuron of the hypothalamus that responds to changes in the osmolarity of the extracellular fluid.

osmosis (oz-MO-sis) The net diffusion of water through a selectively permeable membrane.

osmotic diuresis (oz-MOT-ic DY-you-REE-sis) Increased urine output due to an increase in the concentration of osmotically active particles in the tubular fluid.

osmotic pressure The amount of pressure that would have to be applied to one side of a selectively permeable membrane to stop osmosis; proportional to the concentration of nonpermeating solutes on that side and therefore serving as an indicator of solute concentration.

osseous (OSS-ee-us) Pertaining to bone.

ossification (OSS-ih-fih-CAY-shun) Bone formation.

osteoarthritis (OA) A chronic degenerative joint disease characterized by loss of articular cartilage, growth of bone spurs, and impaired movement; occurs to various degrees in almost all people with age.

osteoblasts Bone-forming cells that arise from osteogenic cells, deposit bone matrix, and eventually become osteocytes.

osteoclasts Macrophages of the bone surface that dissolve the matrix and return minerals to the extracellular fluid.

osteocyte A mature bone cell formed when an osteoblast becomes surrounded by its own matrix and entrapped in a lacuna.

osteon A structural unit of compact bone consisting of a central canal surrounded by concentric cylindrical lamellae of matrix. fig. 7.4

osteoporosis (OSS-tee-oh-pore-OH-sis) A degenerative bone disease characterized by a loss of bone mass, increasing susceptibility to spontaneous fractures, and sometimes deformity of the vertebral column; causes include aging, estrogen hyposecretion, and insufficient resistance exercise.

ovary The female gonad; produces eggs, estrogen, and progesterone.

ovulation (OV-you-LAY-shun) The release of a mature oocyte by the bursting of an ovarian follicle.

ovum Any stage of the female gamete from the conclusion of meiosis I until fertilization; a primary or secondary oocyte; an egg.

oxidation A chemical reaction in which one or more electrons are removed from a molecule, lowering its free energy content; opposite of reduction and always linked to a reduction reaction.

oxytocin (OT) (OCK-see-TOE-sin) A hormone released by the posterior pituitary gland that stimulates labor contractions and milk release.

P

pancreas (PAN-cree-us) A gland of the upper abdominal cavity, near the stomach, that secretes digestive enzymes and sodium bicarbonate into the duodenum and secretes hormones into the blood.

pancreatic islets (PAN-cree-AT-ic EYE-lets) Small clusters of endocrine cells in the pancreas that secrete insulin, glucagon, somatostatin, and other intercellular messengers; also called *islets of Langerhans.* fig. 17.11

papilla (pa-PILL-uh) A conical or nipplelike structure, such as a lingual papilla of the tongue or the papilla of a hair bulb.

papillary (PAP-ih-lerr-ee) **1.** Pertaining to or shaped like a nipple, such as the papillary muscles of the heart. **2.** Having papillae, such as the papillary layer of the dermis.

paracrine (PERR-uh-crin) **1.** A chemical messenger similar to a hormone whose effects are restricted to the immediate vicinity of the cells that secrete it; sometimes called a local hormone. **2.** Pertaining to such a secretion, as opposed to *endocrine.*

parasympathetic nervous system (PERR-uh-SIM-pa-THET-ic) A division of the autonomic nervous system that issues efferent fibers through the cranial and sacral nerves and exerts cholinergic effects on its target organs.

parathyroid glands (PERR-uh-THY-royd) Small endocrine glands, usually four in number, adhering to the posterior side of the thyroid gland. fig. 17.9

parathyroid hormone (PTH) A hormone secreted by the parathyroid glands that raises blood calcium concentration by stimulating bone resorption by osteoclasts, promoting intestinal absorption of calcium, and inhibiting urinary excretion of calcium.

parenchyma (pa-REN-kih-muh) The tissue that performs the main physiological functions of an organ, especially a gland, as opposed to the tissues (stroma) that mainly provide structural support.

parietal (pa-RY-eh-tul) **1.** Pertaining to a wall, as in the parietal cells of the gastric glands and parietal bone of the skull. **2.** The outer or more superficial layer of a two-layered membrane such as the pleura, pericardium, or glomerular capsule. *Compare* visceral. fig. A.8

pathogen Any disease-causing organism or chemical.

pedicle (PED-ih-cul) A small footlike process, as in the vertebrae and the renal podocytes; also called a *pedicel.*

pelvis A basinlike structure such as the pelvic girdle of the skeleton or the urine-collecting space near the hilum of the kidney. fig. 23.4

peptide Any chain of two or more amino acids. *See also* polypeptide, protein.

peptide bond A group of four covalently bonded atoms (a –C=O group bonded to an –NH group) that links two amino acids in a protein or other peptide. fig. 2.23

perfusion The amount of blood supplied to a given mass of tissue in a given period of time.

perichondrium (PERR-ih-CON-dree-um) A layer of fibrous connective tissue covering the surface of hyaline or elastic cartilage.

perineum (PERR-ih-NEE-um) The region between the thighs bordered by the coccyx, pubic symphysis, and ischial tuberosities; contains the orifices of the urinary, reproductive, and digestive systems. figs. 27.6, 28.8

periosteum (PERR-ee-OSS-tee-um) A layer of fibrous connective tissue covering the surface of a bone. fig. 7.2

peripheral (peh-RIF-eh-rul) Away from the center of the body or of an organ, as in peripheral vision and peripheral blood vessels.

peripheral nervous system (PNS) A subdivision of the nervous system composed of all nerves and ganglia; all of the nervous system except the central nervous system.

peristalsis (PERR-ih-STAL-sis) A wave of constriction traveling along a tubular organ such as the esophagus or ureter, serving to propel its contents.

peritoneum (PERR-ih-toe-NEE-um) A serous membrane that lines the peritoneal cavity of the abdomen and covers the mesenteries and viscera.

perivascular (PERR-ih-VASS-cue-lur) Pertaining to the region surrounding a blood vessel.

pernicious anemia A deficiency of hemoglobin synthesis resulting from inadequate vitamin B_{12} ingestion or absorption.

pH A measure of the acidity or alkalinity of a solution; the negative logarithm of hydrogen ion molarity ($pH = 1/\log [H^+]$). A pH of 7.0 is neutral, a $pH < 7$ is acidic, and a $pH > 7$ is basic (alkaline).

phagocytosis (FAG-oh-sy-TOE-sis) A form of endocytosis in which a cell surrounds a foreign particle with pseudopods and engulfs it, enclosing it in a cytoplasmic vesicle called a phagosome.

pharynx (FAIR-inks) A muscular passage in the throat at which the respiratory and digestive tracts cross.

phosphorylation Addition of an inorganic phosphate (P_i) group to an organic molecule.

physiology **1.** The functional processes of the body. **2.** The study of such function.

piloerector A bundle of smooth muscle cells associated with a hair follicle, responsible for erection of the hair; also called *arrector pili.* fig. 6.8

pineal gland (PIN-ee-ul) A small conical endocrine gland arising from the roof of the third ventricle of the brain; produces melatonin and serotonin and may be involved in timing the onset of puberty. fig. 14.12

pinocytosis (PIN-oh-sy-TOE-sis) A form of endocytosis in which the plasma membrane sinks inward and imbibes droplets of extracellular fluid.

pituitary gland (pih-TOO-ih-terr-ee) An endocrine gland suspended from the hypothalamus and housed in the sella turcica of the sphenoid bone; secretes numerous hormones, most of which regulate the activities of other glands. fig. 17.4

placenta (pla-SEN-tuh) A thick discoid organ on the wall of the pregnant uterus, composed of a combination of maternal and fetal tissues, serving multiple functions in pregnancy including gas, nutrient, and waste exchange between mother and fetus. fig. 29.8

plantar (PLAN-tur) Pertaining to the sole of the foot.

plaque A small scale or plate of matter, such as dental plaque, the fatty plaques of atherosclerosis, and the amyloid plaques of Alzheimer disease.

plasma The noncellular portion of the blood.

plasma membrane The unit membrane that encloses a cell and controls the traffic of molecules in and out of the cell. fig. 3.6

platelet A formed element of the blood derived from the peripheral cytoplasm of a megakaryocyte, known especially for its role in stopping bleeding but also serves in dissolving blood clots, stimulating inflammation, promoting tissue growth, and destroying bacteria.

pleura (PLOOR-uh) A double-walled serous membrane that encloses each lung.

plexus A network of blood vessels, lymphatic vessels, or nerves, such as a choroid plexus of the brain or brachial plexus of nerves.

polymer A molecule that consists of a long chain of identical or similar subunits, such as protein, DNA, or starch.

polypeptide Any chain of more than 10 or 15 amino acids.

polysaccharide (POL-ee-SAC-uh-ride) A polymer of simple sugars; for example, glycogen, starch, and cellulose.

polyuria (POL-ee-YOU-ree-uh) Excessive output of urine.

popliteal (po-LIT-ee-ul) Pertaining to the posterior aspect of the knee.

positron emission tomography (PET) A method of producing a computerized image of the physiological state of a tissue using injected radioisotopes that emit positrons.

posterior Near or pertaining to the back or spinal side of the body; dorsal.

postganglionic (POST-gang-glee-ON-ic) Pertaining to a neuron that transmits signals from a ganglion to a more distal target organ.

postsynaptic (POST-sih-NAP-tic) Pertaining to a neuron or other cell that receives signals from the presynaptic neuron at a synapse. fig. 12.17

potential A difference in electrical charge from one point to another, especially on opposite sides of a plasma membrane; usually measured in millivolts.

potential space An anatomical space that is usually obliterated by contact between two membranes but opens up if air, fluid, or other matter comes between the membranes. Examples include the pleural cavity and the lumen of the uterus.

preganglionic (PRE-gang-glee-ON-ic) Pertaining to a neuron that transmits signals from the central nervous system to a ganglion.

presynaptic (PRE-sih-NAP-tic) Pertaining to a neuron that transmits signals to a synapse. fig. 12.17

prime mover The muscle primarily responsible for a given joint action; agonist.

programmed cell death *See* apoptosis.

prolactin (PRL) A pituitary hormone that promotes milk synthesis.

pronation (pro-NAY-shun) A rotational movement of the forearm that turns the palm downward or posteriorly. fig. 9.13

proprioception (PRO-pree-oh-SEP-shun) The nonvisual perception, usually subconscious, of the position and movements of the body, resulting from input from proprioceptors and the vestibular apparatus of the inner ear.

proprioceptor (PRO-pree-oh-SEP-tur) A sensory receptor of the muscles, tendons, and joint capsules that detects muscle contractions and joint movements.

prostaglandins (PROSS-ta-GLAN-dinz) A family of eicosanoids with a five-sided carbon ring in the middle of a hydrocarbon chain, playing a variety of roles in inflammation, neurotransmission, vasomotion, reproduction, and metabolism. fig. 2.21

prostate gland (PROSS-tate) A male reproductive gland that encircles the urethra immediately inferior to the bladder and contributes to the semen. fig. 27.7

protein A large polypeptide; while criteria for a protein are somewhat subjective and variable, polypeptides over 100 amino acids long are generally classified as proteins.

proximal Relatively near a point of origin or attachment; for example, the shoulder is proximal to the elbow. *Compare* distal.

pseudopod (SOO-doe-pod) A temporary cytoplasmic extension of a cell used for locomotion (ameboid movement) and phagocytosis.

pulmonary Pertaining to the lungs.

pulmonary circuit A route of blood flow that supplies blood to the pulmonary alveoli for gas exchange and then returns it to the heart; all blood vessels between the right ventricle and the left atrium of the heart.

pyrogen (PY-ro-jen) A fever-producing agent.

pyruvic acid The three-carbon end product of glycolysis; occurs at the branch point between glycolysis, anaerobic fermentation, and aerobic respiration and is thus an important metabolic intermediate linking these pathways to each other.

R

ramus (RAY-mus) An anatomical branch, as in a nerve or in the pubis.

receptor **1.** A cell or organ specialized to detect a stimulus, such as a taste cell or the eye. **2.** A protein molecule that binds and responds to a chemical such as a hormone, neurotransmitter, or odor molecule.

receptor-mediated endocytosis A process in which certain molecules in the extracellular fluid bind to receptors in the plasma membrane, these receptors gather together, the membrane sinks inward at that point, and the molecules become incorporated into vesicles in the cytoplasm.

receptor potential A variable change in membrane voltage produced by a stimulus acting on a receptor cell; generates an action potential if it reaches threshold.

recombinant DNA (rDNA) A molecule composed of the DNA of two different species spliced together, such as a combination of bacterial and human DNA used to produce transgenic bacteria that synthesize human proteins.

reduction **1.** A chemical reaction in which one or more electrons are added to a molecule, raising its free energy content; opposite of oxidation and always linked to an oxidation reaction. **2.** Treatment of a fracture by restoring the broken parts of a bone to their proper alignment.

reference man A healthy male 22 years old, weighing 70 kg, living at a mean ambient temperature of 20°C, engaging in light physical activity, and consuming 2,800 kcal/day. A standard of reference for typical adult male physiological values.

reference woman A healthy female 22 years old, weighing 58 kg, living at a mean ambient temperature of 20°C, engaging in light physical activity, and consuming 2,000 kcal/day. A standard of reference for typical adult female physiological values.

reflex A stereotyped, automatic, involuntary response to a stimulus; includes somatic reflexes, in which the effectors are skeletal muscles, and visceral (autonomic) reflexes, in which the effectors are usually visceral muscle, cardiac muscle, or glands.

reflex arc A simple neural pathway that mediates a reflex; involves a receptor, an afferent nerve fiber, sometimes one or more interneurons, an efferent nerve fiber, and an effector.

reflux A backward flow, such as the movement of stomach contents back into the esophagus.

refractory period **1.** A period of time after a nerve or muscle cell has responded to a stimulus in which it cannot be reexcited by a threshold stimulus. **2.** A period of time after male orgasm when it is not possible to reattain erection or ejaculation.

regeneration Replacement of damaged tissue with new tissue of the original type. *Compare* fibrosis.

renal (REE-nul) Pertaining to the kidney.

renin (REE-nin) An enzyme secreted by the kidneys in response to hypotension; converts the plasma protein angiotensinogen to angiotensin I, leading indirectly to a rise in blood pressure.

repolarization Reattainment of the resting membrane potential after a nerve or muscle cell has depolarized.

reproductive system An organ system specialized for the production of offspring.

resistance **1.** A nonspecific ability to ward off infection or disease regardless of whether the body has been previously exposed to it. *Compare* immunity. **2.** A force that opposes the flow of a fluid such as air or blood. **3.** A force, or load, that opposes the action of a muscle or lever.

resistance exercise A physical exercise such as weight lifting that promotes muscle strength more than it promotes cardiopulmonary efficiency, endurance, or fatigue resistance. *Compare* endurance exercise.

respiratory system An organ system specialized for the intake of air and exchange of gases with the blood, consisting of the lungs and the air passages from the nose to the bronchi.

resting membrane potential (RMP) A stable voltage across the plasma membrane of an unstimulated cell.

reticular cell (reh-TIC-you-lur) A delicate, branching macrophage found in the reticular connective tissue of the lymphatic organs.

reticular fiber A fine, branching collagen fiber coated with glycoprotein, found in the stroma of lymphatic organs and some other tissues and organs.

reticular tissue A connective tissue composed of reticular cells and reticular fibers, found in bone marrow, lymphatic organs, and in lesser amounts elsewhere.

ribonucleic acid (RY-bo-new-CLAY-ic) Any of three types of nucleotide polymers smaller than DNA that play various roles in protein synthesis. Composed of ribose, phosphate, adenine, uracil, cytosine, and guanine forming a single nucleotide chain.

ribosome A granule found free in the cytoplasm or attached to the rough endoplasmic reticulum, composed of ribosomal RNA and enzymes; specialized to read the nucleotide sequence of messenger RNA and assemble a corresponding sequence of amino acids to make a protein.

risk factor Any environmental factor or characteristic of an individual that increases one's chance of developing a particular disease; includes such intrinsic factors as age, sex, and race and such extrinsic factors as diet, smoking, and occupation.

rostral Relatively close to the forehead, especially in reference to structures of the brain and spinal cord; for example, the frontal lobe is rostral to the parietal lobe. *Compare* caudal.

ruga (ROO-ga) **1.** An internal fold or wrinkle in the mucosa of a hollow organ such as the stomach and urinary bladder; typically present when the organ is empty and relaxed but not when the organ is full and stretched. **2.** Tissue ridges in such locations as the hard palate and vagina. fig. 25.11

S

saccule (SAC-yule) A saclike receptor in the inner ear with a vertical patch of hair cells, the macula sacculi; senses the orientation of the head and responds to vertical acceleration, as when riding in an elevator or standing up. fig. 16.11

sagittal plane (SADJ-ih-tul) Any plane that extends from ventral to dorsal and cephalic to caudal and divides the body into right and left portions. *Compare* median plane.

sarcomere (SAR-co-meer) In skeletal and cardiac muscle, the portion of a myofibril from one Z disc to the next, constituting one contractile unit. fig. 11.4

sarcoplasmic reticulum (SR) The smooth endoplasmic reticulum of a muscle cell, serving as a calcium reservoir. fig. 11.2

scanning electron microscope (SEM) A microscope that uses an electron beam in place of light to form high-resolution, three-dimensional images of the surfaces of objects; capable of much higher magnifications than a light microscope.

sclerosis (scleh-RO-sis) Hardening or stiffening of a tissue, as in multiple sclerosis of the central nervous system or atherosclerosis of the blood vessels.

sebum (SEE-bum) An oily secretion of the sebaceous glands that keeps the skin and hair pliable.

secondary active transport A mechanism in which solutes are moved through a plasma membrane by a carrier that does not itself use ATP but depends on a concentration gradient established by an active transport pump elsewhere in the cell.

secondary sex characteristic Any feature that develops at puberty, further distinguishes the sexes from each other, and promotes attraction between the sexes; examples include the distribution of subcutaneous fat, pitch of the voice, female breasts, male facial hair, and apocrine scent glands.

secondary sex organ An organ other than the ovaries and testes that is essential to reproduction, such as the external genitalia, internal genital ducts, and accessory reproductive glands.

second messenger A chemical that is produced within a cell (such as cAMP) or that enters a cell (such as calcium ions) in response to the binding of a messenger to a membrane receptor, and that triggers a metabolic reaction in the cell.

secretion **1.** A chemical released by a cell to serve a physiological function, such as a hormone or digestive enzyme. **2.** The process of releasing such a chemical, often by exocytosis. *Compare* excretion.

section *See* histological section.

selectively permeable membrane A membrane that allows some substances to pass through while excluding others; for example, the plasma membrane and dialysis membranes.

semen (SEE-men) The fluid ejaculated by a male, including spermatozoa and the secretions of the prostate and seminal vesicles.

semicircular ducts Three ring-shaped, fluid-filled tubes of the inner ear that detect angular accelerations of the head; each is enclosed in a bony passage called the semicircular canal. fig. 16.11

semilunar valve A valve that consists of crescent-shaped cusps, including the aortic and pulmonary valves of the heart and valves of the veins and lymphatic vessels. fig. 19.6

semipermeable membrane *See* selectively permeable membrane.

senescence (seh-NESS-ense) Degenerative changes that occur with age.

sensation Conscious perception of a stimulus; pain, taste, and color, for example, are not stimuli but sensations resulting from stimuli.

sensory nerve fiber An axon that conducts information from a receptor to the central nervous system; an afferent nerve fiber.

serosa (seer-OH-sa) *See* serous membrane.

serous fluid (SEER-us) A watery, low-protein fluid similar to blood serum, formed as a filtrate of the blood or tissue fluid or as a secretion of serous gland cells; moistens the serous membranes.

serous membrane A membrane such as the peritoneum, pleura, or pericardium that lines a body cavity or covers the external surfaces of the viscera; composed of a simple squamous mesothelium and a thin layer of areolar connective tissue.

serum **1.** The fluid that remains after blood has clotted and the solids have been removed; essentially the same as blood plasma except for a lack of fibrinogen. Used as a vehicle for vaccines. **2.** Serous fluid.

sex chromosomes The X and Y chromosomes, which determine the sex of an individual.

shock **1.** Circulatory shock, a state of cardiac output that is insufficient to meet the body's physiological needs, with consequences ranging from fainting to death. **2.** Insulin shock, a state of severe hypoglycemia caused by administration of insulin. **3.** Spinal shock, a state of depressed or lost reflex activity inferior to a point of spinal cord injury. **4.** Electrical shock, the effect of a current of electricity passing through the body, often causing muscular spasm and cardiac arrhythmia or arrest.

sinus **1.** An air-filled space in the cranium. **2.** A modified, relatively dilated vein that lacks smooth muscle and is incapable of vasomotion, such as the dural sinuses of the cerebral circulation and coronary sinus of the heart. **3.** A small fluid-filled space in an organ such as the spleen and lymph nodes. **4.** Pertaining to the sinoatrial node of the heart, as in *sinus rhythm.*

skeletal muscle Striated voluntary muscle, almost all of which is attached to the bones.

skeletal system An organ system consisting of the bones, ligaments, bone marrow, periosteum, articular cartilages, and other tissues associated with the bones.

smooth muscle Nonstriated involuntary muscle found in the walls of the blood vessels, many of the viscera, and other places.

sodium-glucose transport protein (SGLT) A symport that simultaneously transports Na^+ and glucose into a cell.

somatic **1.** Pertaining to the body as a whole. **2.** Pertaining to the skin, bones, and skeletal muscles as opposed to the viscera. **3.** Pertaining to cells other than germ cells.

somatic nervous system A division of the nervous system that includes efferent fibers mainly from the skin, muscles, and skeleton and afferent fibers to the skeletal muscles. *Compare* autonomic nervous system.

somesthetic **1.** Pertaining to widely distributed *general senses* in the skin, muscles, tendons, joint capsules, and viscera, as opposed to the *special senses* found in the head only; also called *somatosensory.* **2.** Pertaining to the cerebral cortex of the postcentral gyrus, which receives input from such receptors.

sperm **1.** The fluid ejaculated by the male; semen. Contains spermatozoa and glandular secretions. **2.** A spermatozoon.

spermatogenesis (SPUR-ma-toe-JEN-eh-sis) The production of sperm cells through a series of mitotic and meiotic cell divisions; male gametogenesis.

spermatozoon (SPUR-ma-toe-ZOE-on) A sperm cell.

sphincter (SFINK-tur) A ring of muscle that opens or closes an opening or passageway; found, for example, in the eyelids, around the urinary orifice, and at the beginning of a blood capillary.

spinal column *See* vertebral column.

spinal cord The nerve cord that passes through the vertebral column and constitutes all of the central nervous system except the brain.

spinal nerve Any of the 31 pairs of nerves that arise from the spinal cord and pass through the intervertebral foramina.

spindle **1.** An elongated structure that is thick in the middle and tapered at the ends (fusiform). **2.** A football-shaped complex of microtubules that guide the movement of chromosomes in mitosis and meiosis. fig. 4.13 **3.** A stretch receptor in the skeletal muscles. fig. 13.20

spine **1.** The vertebral column. **2.** A pointed process or sharp ridge on a bone, such as the styloid process of the cranium and spine of the scapula.

splanchnic (SPLANK-nic) Pertaining to the digestive tract.

stem cell Any undifferentiated cell that can divide and differentiate into more functionally specific cell types such as blood cells and germ cells.

stenosis (steh-NO-sis) The narrowing of a passageway such as a heart valve or uterine tube; a permanent, pathological constriction as opposed to physiological constriction of a passageway.

stereocilium An unusually long, sometimes branched microvillus lacking the axoneme and motility of a true cilium; serves such roles as absorption in the epididymis and sensory transduction in the inner ear.

steroid (STERR-oyd, STEER-oyd) A lipid molecule that consists of four interconnected carbon rings; cholesterol and several of its derivatives.

stimulus A chemical or physical agent in a cell's surroundings that is capable of creating a physiological response in the cell; especially agents detected by sensory cells, such as chemicals, light, and pressure.

strain The extent to which a body, such as a bone, is deformed when subjected to stress. *Compare* stress.

stress **1.** A mechanical force applied to any part of the body; important in stimulating bone growth, for example. *Compare* strain. **2.** A condition in which any environmental influence disturbs the homeostatic equilibrium of the body and stimulates a physiological response, especially involving the increased secretion of hormones of the pituitary-adrenal axis.

stroke *See* cerebrovascular accident.

stroke volume The volume of blood ejected by one ventricle of the heart in one contraction.

stroma The connective tissue framework of a gland, lymphatic organ, or certain other viscera, as opposed to the tissue (parenchyma) that performs the physiological functions of the organ.

subcutaneous (SUB-cue-TAY-nee-us) Beneath the skin.

substrate **1.** A chemical that is acted upon and changed by an enzyme. **2.** A chemical used as a source of energy, such as glucose and fatty acids.

substrate specificity The ability of an enzyme to bind only one substrate or a limited range of related substrates.

sulcus (SUL-cuss) A groove in the surface of an organ, as in the cerebrum or heart.

summation **1.** A phenomenon in which multiple stimuli combine their effects on a cell to produce a response; seen especially in nerve and muscle cells. **2.** A phenomenon in which multiple muscle twitches occur so closely together that a muscle fiber cannot fully relax between twitches but develops more tension than a single twitch produces. fig. 11.15

superficial Relatively close to the surface; opposite of deep. For example, the ribs are superficial to the lungs.

superior Higher than another structure or point of reference from the perspective of anatomical position; for example, the lungs are superior to the diaphragm.

supination (SOO-pih-NAY-shun) A rotational movement of the forearm that turns the palm so that it faces upward or forward. fig. 9.13

surfactant (sur-FAC-tent) A chemical that reduces the surface tension of water and enables it to penetrate other substances more effectively. Examples include pulmonary surfactant and bile acids.

sympathetic nervous system A division of the autonomic nervous system that issues efferent fibers through the thoracic and lumbar nerves and usually exerts adrenergic effects on its target organs; includes a chain of paravertebral ganglia adjacent to the vertebral column, and the adrenal medulla.

symphysis (SIM-fih-sis) A joint in which two bones are held together by fibrocartilage; for example, between bodies of the vertebrae and between the right and left pubic bones.

symport A cotransport protein that moves two solutes simultaneously through a plasma membrane in the same direction, such as the sodium-glucose transport protein.

synapse (SIN-aps) **1.** A junction at the end of an axon where it stimulates another cell. **2.** A gap junction between two cardiac or smooth muscle cells at which one cell electrically stimulates the other; called an *electrical synapse.*

synaptic cleft (sih-NAP-tic) A narrow space between the synaptic knob of an axon and the adjacent cell, across which a neurotransmitter diffuses. fig. 12.17

synaptic knobs The swollen tips of the distal branches of an axon; the site of synaptic vesicles and neurotransmitter release. fig. 12.4

synaptic vesicle A spheroid organelle in a synaptic knob containing neurotransmitter.

synergist (SIN-ur-jist) A muscle that works with the agonist to contribute to the same overall action at a joint.

synergistic An effect in which two agents working together (such as two hormones) exert an effect that is greater than the sum of their separate effects. For example, neither follicle-stimulating hormone nor testosterone alone stimulates significant sperm production, but the two of them together stimulate production of vast numbers of sperm.

synovial fluid (sih-NO-vee-ul) A lubricating fluid similar to egg white in consistency, found in the synovial joint cavities and bursae.

synovial joint A point where two bones are separated by a narrow, encapsulated space filled with lubricating synovial fluid; most such joints are relatively mobile.

synthesis reaction A chemical reaction in which smaller molecules combine to form a larger one. *Compare* decomposition reaction.

systemic (sis-TEM-ic) Widespread or pertaining to the body as a whole, as in the systemic circulation.

systemic circuit All blood vessels that convey blood from the left ventricle to all organs of the body and back to the right atrium of the heart; all of the cardiovascular system except the heart and pulmonary circuit.

systole (SIS-toe-lee) The contraction of any heart chamber; ventricular contraction unless otherwise specified.

systolic pressure (sis-TOLL-ic) The peak arterial blood pressure measured during ventricular systole.

T

target cell A cell acted upon by a nerve fiber, hormone, or other chemical messenger.

tarsal Pertaining to the ankle (tarsus).

T cell A type of lymphocyte involved in nonspecific defense, humoral immunity, and cellular immunity; occurs in several forms including helper, cytotoxic, and suppressor T cells and natural killer cells.

tendon A collagenous band or cord associated with a muscle, usually attaching it to a bone and transferring muscular tension to it.

testis The male gonad; produces spermatozoa and testosterone.

tetanus **1.** A state of sustained muscle contraction produced by temporal summation as a normal part of contraction; also called *tetany.* **2.** Spastic muscle paralysis produced by the toxin of the bacterium *Clostridium tetani.*

tetraiodothyronine (TET-ra-EYE-oh-doe-THY-ro-neen) *See* thyroxine.

thalamus (THAL-uh-muss) The largest part of the diencephalon, located immediately inferior to the corpus callosum and bulging into each lateral ventricle; a point of synaptic relay of nearly all signals passing from lower levels of the CNS to the cerebrum. fig. 14.12

theory An explanatory statement, or set of statements, that concisely summarizes the state of knowledge on a phenomenon and provides direction for further study; for example, the fluid mosaic theory of the plasma membrane and the sliding filament theory of muscle contraction.

thermogenesis The production of heat, for example, by shivering or by the action of thyroid hormones.

thermoreceptor A neuron specialized to respond to heat or cold, found in the skin and hypothalamus, for example.

thermoregulation Homeostatic regulation of the body temperature within a narrow range by adjustments of heat-promoting and heat-losing mechanisms.

thorax A region of the trunk between the neck and the diaphragm; the chest.

threshold **1.** The minimum voltage to which the plasma membrane of a nerve or muscle cell must be depolarized before it produces an action potential. **2.** The minimum combination of stimulus intensity and duration needed to generate an afferent signal from a sensory receptor.

thrombosis (throm-BO-sis) The formation or presence of a thrombus.

thrombus A clot that forms in a blood vessel or heart chamber; may break free and travel in the bloodstream as a thromboembolus.

thymine A single-ringed nitrogenous base (pyrimidine) found in DNA, complementary to adenine in the double helix of DNA. fig. 4.2

thymus A lymphatic organ in the mediastinum superior to the heart; the site where T lymphocytes differentiate and become immunocompetent. fig. 21.10

thyroid gland An endocrine gland in the neck, partially encircling the trachea immediately inferior to the larynx. fig. 17.8

thyroid hormone Either of two similar hormones, thyroxine and triiodothyronine, synthesized from iodine and tyrosine.

thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) A hormone of the anterior pituitary gland that stimulates the thyroid gland; also called *thyrotropin.*

thyroxine (T_4) (thy-ROCK-seen) The thyroid hormone secreted in greatest quantity, with four iodine atoms; also called *tetraiodothyronine.* fig. 17.16

tight junction A zipperlike junction between epithelial cells that limits the passage of substances between them. fig. 5.29

tissue An aggregation of cells and extracellular materials, usually forming part of an organ and performing some discrete function for it; the four primary classes are epithelial, connective, muscular, and nervous tissue.

tissue gel The viscous colloid that forms the ground substance of many tissues; gets its consistency from hyaluronic acid or other glycosaminoglycans.

trabecula (tra-BEC-you-la) A thin plate or layer of tissue, such as the calcified trabeculae of spongy bone or the fibrous trabeculae that subdivide a gland. fig. 7.2

trachea (TRAY-kee-uh) A cartilage-supported tube from the inferior end of the larynx to the origin of the primary bronchi; conveys air to and from the lungs; the "windpipe."

transcription The process of enzymatically reading the nucleotide sequence of a gene and synthesizing a pre-mRNA molecule with a complementary sequence.

transducer Any device that converts one form of energy to another, such as a sense organ, which converts a stimulus into an encoded pattern of action potentials.

transgenic bacteria Genetically engineered bacteria that contain genes from humans or other species and produce proteins of that species; used commercially to produce clotting factors, interferon, insulin, and other products.

translation The process of enzymatically reading an mRNA molecule and synthesizing the protein encoded in its nucleotide sequence.

transmission electron microscope (TEM) A microscope that uses an electron beam in place of light to form high-resolution, two-dimensional images of ultrathin slices of cells or tissues; capable of extremely high magnification.

triglyceride (try-GLISS-ur-ide) A lipid composed of three fatty acids joined to a glycerol; also called a *triacylglycerol* or *neutral fat.* fig. 2.19

triiodothyronine (T_3) (try-EYE-oh-doe-THY-ro-neen) A thyroid hormone with three iodine atoms, secreted in much lesser quantities than thyroxine. fig. 17.16

trisomy-21 The presence of three copies of chromosome 21 instead of the usual two; causes variable degrees of mental retardation, a shortened life expectancy, and structural anomalies of the face and hands.

tropic hormone (TROPE-ic) A hormone of the anterior pituitary gland that stimulates secretion by another endocrine gland. The four tropic hormones are FSH, LH, TSH, and ACTH.

trunk **1.** That part of the body excluding the head, neck, and appendages. **2.** A major blood vessel, lymphatic vessel, or nerve that gives rise to smaller branches; for example, the pulmonary trunk and spinal nerve trunks.

T tubule A tubular extension of the plasma membrane of a muscle cell that conducts action potentials into the sarcoplasm and excites the sarcoplasmic reticulum. fig. 11.2

tunic (TOO-nic) A layer that encircles or encloses an organ, such as the tunics of a blood vessel or eyeball.

tympanic membrane The eardrum.

U

ultraviolet radiation Invisible, ionizing, electromagnetic radiation with shorter wavelength and higher energy than violet light; causes skin cancer and photoaging of the skin but is required in moderate amounts for the synthesis of vitamin D.

umbilical (um-BIL-ih-cul) **1.** Pertaining to the cord that connects a fetus to the placenta. **2.** Pertaining to the navel (umbilicus).

unit membrane Any cellular membrane composed of a bilayer of phospholipids and embedded proteins. A single unit membrane forms the plasma membrane and encloses many organelles of a cell, whereas double unit membranes enclose the nucleus and mitochondria.

unmyelinated (un-MY-eh-lih-nay-ted) Lacking a myelin sheath. fig. 12.7

upper limb The appendage that arises from the shoulder, consisting of the brachium from shoulder to elbow, the antebrachium from elbow to wrist, the wrist, and the hand; loosely called the *arm,* but that term properly refers only to the brachium.

uracil A single-ringed nitrogenous base (pyrimidine) found in RNA; one of the four bases of the genetic code; occupies the place in RNA that thymine does in DNA. fig. 4.2

urea (you-REE-uh) A nitrogenous waste produced from two ammonia molecules and carbon dioxide; the most abundant nitrogenous waste in the blood and urine. fig. 23.2

urinary system An organ system specialized to filter the blood plasma, excrete waste products from it, and regulate the body's water, acid-base, and electrolyte balance.

uterine tube A duct that extends from the ovary to the uterus and conveys an egg or conceptus to the uterus; also called *fallopian tube* or *oviduct.*

utricle (YOU-trih-cul) A saclike receptor in the inner ear with a horizontal patch of hair cells, the macula utriculi; senses the orientation of the head and responds to horizontal acceleration, as when riding in a car that starts and stops. fig. 16.11

V

varicose vein A vein that has become permanently distended and convoluted due to a loss of competence of the venous valves; especially common in the lower extremity, esophagus, and anal canal (where they are called hemorrhoids).

vas (vass) (plural, *vasa*) A vessel or duct.

vascular Pertaining to blood vessels.

vasoconstriction (VAY-zo-con-STRIC-shun) The narrowing of a blood vessel due to muscular constriction of its tunica media.

vasodilation (VAY-zo-dy-LAY-shun) The widening of a blood vessel due to relaxation of the muscle of its tunica media and the outward pressure of the blood exerted against the wall.

vasomotion (VAY-zo-MO-shun) Collective term for vasoconstriction and vasodilation.

vasomotor center A nucleus in the medulla oblongata that transmits efferent signals to the blood vessels and regulates vasomotion.

vein Any blood vessel that carries blood toward either atrium of the heart.

ventral Pertaining to the front of the body, the regions of the chest and abdomen; anterior.

ventral (anterior) root The branch of a spinal nerve that emerges from the anterior side of the spinal cord and carries efferent (motor) nerve fibers.

ventricle (VEN-trih-cul) A fluid-filled chamber of the brain or heart.

venule (VEN-yool) The smallest type of vein, receiving drainage from capillaries.

vertebra (VUR-teh-bra) One of the bones of the vertebral column.

vertebral column (VUR-teh-brul) A dorsal series of usually 33 vertebrae; encloses the spinal cord, supports the skull and thoracic cage, and provides attachment for the limbs and postural muscles. Also called *spine* or *spinal column.*

vesicle (VESS-ih-cul) A fluid-filled tissue sac or an organelle such as a synaptic or secretory vesicle.

vesicular transport The movement of particles or fluid droplets through the plasma membrane by the process of endocytosis or exocytosis.

viscera (VISS-er-uh) (singular, *viscus*) The organs contained in the dorsal and ventral body cavities, such as the brain, heart, lungs, stomach, intestines, and kidneys.

visceral (VISS-er-ul) **1.** Pertaining to the viscera. **2.** The inner or deeper layer of a two-layered membrane such as the pleura, pericardium, or glomerular capsule. *Compare* parietal. fig. A.8

visceral muscle Single-unit smooth muscle found in the walls of blood vessels and the digestive, respiratory, urinary, and reproductive tracts.

viscosity The resistance of a fluid to flow; the thickness or stickiness of a fluid.

vitamins A small organic nutrient that is absorbed undigested and serves a purpose other than being oxidized for energy; often serve as coenzymes. Most vitamins cannot be synthesized by the body and are therefore a dietary necessity.

vitreous body (VIT-ree-us) A transparent, gelatinous mass that fills the space between the lens and retina of the eye.

voluntary muscle Muscle that is usually under conscious control; skeletal muscle.

vulva The female external genitalia; the mons, labia majora, and all superficial structures between the labia majora.

W

water balance An equilibrium between fluid intake and output or between the amounts of fluid contained in the body's different fluid compartments.

white matter White myelinated nervous tissue deep to the cortex of the cerebrum and cerebellum and superficial to the gray matter of the spinal cord.

X

X chromosome The larger of the two sex chromosomes; males have one X chromosome and females have two in each somatic cell.

xiphoid process (ZIFF-oyd, ZYE-foyd) A small pointed cartilaginous or bony process at the inferior end of the sternum.

X ray **1.** A high-energy, penetrating electromagnetic ray with wavelengths in the range of 0.1 to 10 nm; used in diagnosis and therapy. **2.** A photograph made with X rays; radiograph.

Y

Y chromosome Smaller of the two sex chromosomes, found only in males and having little if any genetic function except development of the testis.

yolk sac An embryonic membrane that encloses the yolk in vertebrates that lay eggs and serves in humans as the origin of the first blood and germ cells.

Z

zygomatic arch An arch of bone anterior to the ear, formed by the zygomatic processes of the temporal, frontal, and zygomatic bones; origin of the masseter muscle.

zygote A single-celled, fertilized egg.

Pronounce letter sequences in the pronunciation guides as follows:

ah	as in father
al	as in pal
ay	as in day
bry	as in bribe
byu	as in bureau
c	as in calculus
cue	as in ridiculous
cuh	as in cousin
cul	as in bicycle
cus	as in custard
dew	as in dual
eez	as in ease
eh	as in feather
err	as in merry
fal	as in fallacy
few	as in fuse
ih	as in fit
iss	as in sister
lerr	as in lair
lur	as in learn
ma	as in man
mah	as in mama
me	as in meat
merr	as in merry
mew	as in music
muh	as in mother
na	as in corona
nerr	as in nary
new	as in news
nuh	as in nothing
odj	as in dodger
oe	as in go
oh	as in home
ol	as in alcohol
oll	as in doll
ose	as in gross
oss	as in floss
perr	as in pair
pew	as in pewter
ruh	as in rugby
serr	as in serration
sterr	as in stereo
sy	as in siren
terr	as in terrain
thee	as in theme
tirr	as in tyranny
uh	as in mother
ul	as in bicycle
verr	as in very
y	as in why
zh	as in measure
zy	as in enzyme

Credits

Chapter 1

Chapter Opener 1: © Dr. Yorgos Nikas / SPL / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **1.1, 1.2:** © National Library of Medicine / Peter Arnold, Inc.; **1.3:** © SPL / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **1.4a,b:** Kathy Talaro / Visuals Unlimited; **1.5a:** Courtesy of the Armed Forces Institute of Pathology; **1.5b:** © Corbis-Bettmann; **1.7:** © Tim Davis / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **1.15a:** © U.H.B. Trust / Tony Stone Images; **1.15b:** © Custom Medical Stock; **1.16top:** © Alexander Tsiaras / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **1.16bottom:** © Scott Camazine / Sue Trainor / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **1.17:** © CNR / Phototake; **1.18:** © Tony Stone Images; **1.19:** © Monte S. Buchsbaum, Mt. Sinai School of Medicine, New York, NY.

Atlas A

A1, A3, A5a-d: © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Joe DeGrandis, photographer; **A17:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Rebecca Gray, photographer / Don Kincaid, dissections; **A18:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc.; **A19:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Rebecca Gray, photographer / Don Kincaid, dissections; **A20, A21:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Rebecca Gray, photographer / Don Kincaid, dissections; **A22a:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Dennis Strete, photographer; **A22b:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Rebecca Gray, photographer / Don Kincaid, dissections.

Chapter 2

Chapter Opener 2: Alfred Pasieka / Science Photo Library / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **2.3:** © American Institute of Physics / Emilio Segre Visuals Archives, W.F. Meggers Collection; **2.10:** © Ken Saladin

Chapter 3

Chapter Opener 3: © P.M. Motta, G. Macchiarelli, S.A. Nottola / SPL / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **3.3:** © K.G. Murti / Visuals Unlimited; **3.4a:** From Cell Ultrastructure by William A. Jenson and Roderick B. Park. © 1967 by Wadsworth Publishing Co., Inc. Reprinted by permission of the publisher.; **3.4b:** From Cell Ultrastructure by William A. Jenson and Roderick B. Park. © 1967 by Wadsworth Publishing Co., Inc. Reprinted by permission of the publisher; **3.6a:** © Don Fawcett / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **3.10:** Courtesy of Dr. S. Ito, Harvard Medical School; **3.11a,c:** © Biophoto Associates / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **3.12:** © Don Fawcett / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **3.16a-c:** © David M. Phillips / Visuals Unlimited; **3.22(all):** Company of Biologists, Ltd.; **3.23:** © Don Fawcett / Visuals Unlimited; **3.24c:** Courtesy of Dr. Birgit Satir, Albert Einstein College of Medicine; **3.25a:** © Richard Chao; **3.25b:** © E.G. Pollock; **3.26a,b:** © Don Fawcett / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **3.27top:** Visuals Unlimited; **3.28a,b:** © D.W. Fawcett / Visuals Unlimited; **3.29top:** Courtesy of Dr. Keith Porter; **3.30a:** From: Manley McGill, D.P. Highfield, T.M. Monahan, and B.R. Brinkley "Effects of Nucleic Acid Specific Dyes on Centrioles of Mammalian Cells", published in the Journal of Ultrastructure Research 57, 43-53 (1976), pg. 48, fig. 6 © Academic Press; **3.31a:** © K.G. Murti / Visuals Unlimited; **3.31a(inset):** © Biology Media / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **3.31b:** © K.G. Murti / Visuals Unlimited

Chapter 4

Chapter Opener 4: © Gopal Murti / Phototake NYC; **4.1a:** © P. Motta & T. Naguro / SPL / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **4.4a:** From "The Double Helix" by James D. Watson, 1968, Aentheneam Press, NY. Courtesy of Cold Springs Harbor Laboratory; **4.4b:** Courtesy of King's College, London; **4.4c:** © Corbis–Bettman; **4.8:** © E.V. Kiseleva, February 5 Letter, 257:251-253, 1989; **4.13(all):** © Ed Reschke; **4.14c** © Biophoto Associates / Science Source / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **4.15:** © CNRI / SPL / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **4.16a,b:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Joe DeGrandis, photographer

Chapter 5

Chapter Opener 5: © Gopal Murti / Phototake NYC,; **5.4a, 5.5a:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Dennis Strete, photographer; **5.6a:** © Ed Reschke; **5.7a:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Dennis Strete, photographer; **5.8a, 5.9a:** © Ed Reschke; **5.10a, 5.11a:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Dennis Strete, photographer; **5.12:** From: *Tissues and Organs: A Text-Atlas of Scanning Electron Microscopy,* © Richard G. Kessel and Randy H. Kardon, published by W.H. Freeman and Company 1979.; **5.13:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Rebecca Gray, photographer / Don Kincaid, dissections; **5.15a, 5.16a, 5.17a, 5.18a, 5.19a, 5.20a, 5.21a:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Dennis Strete, photographer; **5.22a:** © Ed Reschke / Peter Arnold, Inc.; **5.23a** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Dennis Strete, photographer; **5.24a, 5.25a, 5.26a, 5.27a:** © Ed Reschke; **5.28a:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Dennis Strete, photographer; **5.35:** © Ken Greer / Visuals Unlimited

Chapter 6

Chapter Opener 6: © Ed Reschke / Peter Arnold; **6.2b, 6.3a:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Dennis Strete, photographer; **6.3b** From: *Tissues and Organs: A Text-Atlas of Scanning Electron Microscopy,* © Richard G. Kessel and Randy H. Kardon, published by W.H. Freeman and Company 1979.; **6.3c:** © SPL / Custom Medical Stock Photos; **6.4:** © Meckes / Ottawa / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **6.6:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Dennis Strete, photographer; **6.7 (top):** © Tom McHugh / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **6.7 (bottom):** © The McGraw-Hill

Companies, Inc. / Joe DeGrandis, photographer; **6.8b:** © CBS / Phototake; **6.8c:** © P.M. Motta / SPL / Custom Medical Stock Photos; **6.9a-d, 6.11a-c:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Joe DeGrandis, photographer; **6.12a** © NMSB / Custom Medical Stock Photos; **6.12b:** © Biophoto Associates / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **6.12c:** © James Stevensons / SPL / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **6.13a:** © SPL / Custom Medical Stock Photos; **6.13b:** © John Radcliffe / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **6.13c:** © John Radcliffe / Photo Researchers, Inc

Chapter 7

Chapter Opener 7: © Cabisco / Visuals Unlimited; **7.4a,c:** © D.W. Fawcett / Visuals Unlimited; **7.5:** © Robert Calentine / Visuals Unlimited; **7.7:** © Ken Saladin; **7.9:** © Ed Reschke; **7.10:** © Biophoto Associates / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **7.11:** Courtesy of Utah Valley Regional Medical Center, Department of Radiology; **7.12:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Joe DeGrandis, photographer; **7.19a:** © Doug Sizemore / Visuals Unlimited; **7.19b:** © SIU / Visuals Unlimited; **7.20:** © Michael Klein / Peter Arnold, Inc.; **7.21:** © Yoav Levy / Phototake

Chapter 8

Chapter Opener 8: © SIU / Visuals Unlimited; **8.20:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Bob Coyle, photographer; **8.34b:** © NHS Trust / Tony Stone Images; **8.41b:** © Walter Reiter / Phototake

Chapter 9

Chapter Opener 9: © Simon Fraser / SPL / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **9.1:** © Gerard Vandystadt / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **9.9a–9.14e:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Timothy L. Vacula, photographer; **9.19d, 9.21d:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Rebecca Gray, photographer / Don Kincaid, dissections; **9.22:** © Richard Anderson; **9.24:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Rebecca Gray, photographer / Don Kincaid, dissections; **9.26:** From Vidic / Saurex, Photographic Atlas of the Human Body. Copyright © 1984 Mosby-Year Book, Inc., St. Louis, MO.; **9.27a,b:** © Richard Anderson; **9.28a:** © SIU / Visuals Unlimited; **9.28b** © Ron Mensching / Phototake; **9.28c:** © SIU / Peter Arnold, Inc.; **9.28d:** © Mehau Kulyk / SPL / Photo Researchers, Inc.

Chapter 10

Chapter Opener 10: © Scott Camazine / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **10.1c:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Dennis Strete, photographer; **10.5:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Rebecca Gray, photographer / Don Kincaid, dissections; **10.6(all), 10.11:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Joe DeGrandis, photographer; **10.12:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Rebecca Gray, photographer / Don Kincaid, dissections; **10.16:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Joe DeGrandis, photographer; **10.19, 10.23a:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Rebecca Gray, photographer / Don Kincaid, dissections; **10.23b, 10.33, 10.35:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Rebecca Gray, photographer / Don Kincaid, dissections.

Atlas B

B.1ab, B.2ab, B.3ab, B.4ab, B.5, B.6, B.7ab, B.8ab, B.9ab, B.10, B.11, B.12, B.13ab, B.14ab, B.15ab: © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Joe DeGrandis, photographer

Chapter 11

Chapter Opener 11: © Don W. Fawcett / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **11.1:** Ed Reschke; **11.4a:** Visuals Unlimited; **11.5** Victor B. Eichler; **11.25:** © NMSB / Custom Medical Stock Photos

Chapter 12

Chapter Opener 12: Peter Arnold, Inc.; **12.7b: McGraw** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Dr. Dennis Emery, Dept. of Zoology and Genetics, Iowa State University, photographer; **12.16:** © Omikron / Science Source / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **12.28:** © Martin R. Rotker / Photo Researchers, Inc.

Chapter 13

Chapter Opener 13: © Ed Reschke; **13.3:** Alfred I. DuPont Institute; **13.7:** © Corbis Bettmann; **13.8b:** From: *Tissues and Organs: A Text-Atlas of Scanning Electron Microscopy,* © Richard G. Kessel and Randy H. Kardon, published by W.H. Freeman and Company 1979; **13.12:** © From A Stereoscopic Atlas of Anatomy by David L. Bassett. Courtesy of Dr. Robert A. Chase, MD.; **13.16:** From Vidic / Saurex, Photographic Atlas of the Human Body. Copyright © 1984 Mosby-Year Book, Inc., St. Louis, MO.

Chapter 14

Chapter Opener 14: © CNRI / Phototake NYC; **14.2a:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Rebecca Gray, photographer / Don Kincaid, dissections; **14.2b:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Dennis Strete, photographer; **14.6c:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Rebecca Gray, photographer / Don Kincaid, dissections; **14.18a:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Bob Coyle, photographer; **14.20:** from: Damasio H., Grabowski, T., Frank R., Galaburda A.M., Damasio A.R.: The return of Phineas Gage; Clues about the brain from a famous patient. Science, 264: 1102-1105, 1994. Department of Neurology and Image Analysis Facility, University of Iowa.; **14.27b:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Rebecca Gray, photographer / Don Kincaid, dissections; **14.34c:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Joe DeGrandis, photographer; **14.40:** © Marcus Raichle / Peter Arnold, Inc.

Chapter 15

15.3: © From A Stereoscopic Atlas of Anatomy by David L. Bassett. Courtesy of Dr. Robert A. Chase, MD.; page 581: © Images copyright 1997 PhotoDisc, Inc.; **16.5c:** © Ed Reschke; 16.9: © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Joe DeGrandis, photographer; 16.13: Quest / Science Photo Library / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **16.26a:** © Lisa Klancher; **16.32a:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Joe DeGrandis, photographer

Chapter 16

Chapter Opener 16: Wellcome Dept. of Cognitive Neurology / Science Photo Library / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **16.5c:** © Ed Reschke; **16.9:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Joe DeGrandis, photographer; **16.13:** Quest / Science Photo Library / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **16.20:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Joe DeGrandis, photographer; **16.25:** © Ralph C. Eagle / MD / Photo Researchers; **16.26a:** © Lisa Klancher; **16.32a:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Joe DeGrandis, photographer; **16.33a:** Courtesy of Beckman Vision Center at UCSF School of Medicine / D. Copeahagen, S. Miltman, and M. Maglio.

Chapter 17

Chapter Opener 17: © Ed Reschke / Peter Arnold, Inc.; **17.11c:** © Ed Reschke; **17.24(all):** From Clinical Pathological Conference "Acromegaly, Diabetes, Hypermetabolism, Protein Use and Heart Failure" in American Journal of Medicine, 20:133, 1956. Copyright © 1956 by Excerpta Media, Inc.; **17.25:** © CNR / Phototake; **17.26a,b:** From: Atlas of Pediatric Physical Diagnosis, 3/e, by Zitelli & Davis, fig 9-17 1997. Mosby-Wolfe Europe Limited, London, UK.

Chapter 18

Chapter Opener 18: © P. Motta / SPL / Photo Researchers, Inc.;

18.1b: © National Cancer Institute / SPL / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **18.3:** John Paul Kay / Peter Arnold, Inc.; **18.8b** © Richard J. Poole / Polaroid International Photomicrography Competition; **18.9a,b:** © Don W. Fawcett / Visuals Unlimited; **18.9b:** © Don W. Fawcett / Visuals Unlimited; **18.12:** © Meckes / Ottawa / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **18.13:** Courtesy Schomburg Center for Research in Black Culture, The New York Public Library; **TA 18.1, TA 18.2, TA 18.3** page 700: © Ed Reschke; **TA 18.4, TA 18.5** page 701: **18.16:** © Claude Revy / Phototake; © Ed Reschke: **18.19a:** © Ed Reschke; **18.19b:** © SIU / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **18.24:** © SPL / Photo Researchers, Inc.

Chapter 19

Chapter Opener 19 © Manfred Kage / Peter Arnold, Inc.; **19.3a-b, 19.7b:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc.; **19.11a, 19.21a,b:** © Ed Reschke

Chapter 20

Chapter Opener 20: © Wolf H. Fahrenbach / Visuals Unlimited; **20.3:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Dennis Strete, photographer; **20.4:** From: *Tissues and Organs: A Text-Atlas of Scanning Electron Microscopy,* © Richard G. Kessel and Randy H. Kardon, published by W.H. Freeman and Company 1979.; **20.6b:** Courtesy of S. McNutt; **20.10a,b:** P.C. Phelps and J.H. Luft, 1963 Am. Anat. 125: 3999; CL 20: © Images copyright 1997 PhotoDisc, Inc.

Chapter 21

Chapter Opener 21: © Volker Steger / Peter Arnold, Inc.; **21.2:** © SPL / Custom Medical Stock Photos; **21.4:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Dennis Strete, photographer; **21.7:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Rebecca Gray, photographer / Don Kincaid, dissections; **21.8b:** Photo Researchers; **21.9:** Visuals Unlimited; **21.11, 21.12a,b:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Dennis Strete, photographer; **21.18b:** Peter Arnold Inc.; **21.19:** From: *Tissues and Organs: A Text-Atlas of Scanning Electron Microscopy,* © Richard G. Kessel and Randy H. Kardon, published by W.H. Freeman and Company 1979.; **21.22a,b:** Dr. Andrejs Liepins; **21.24a,b:** Visuals Unlimited; **21.25b:** Peter Arnold, Inc.; **21.28:** Visuals Unlimited; **21.29b:** © NIBSC / SPL / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **21.30:** Photo Researchers, Inc.

Chapter 22

Chapter Opener 22: Peter Arnold; **22.2a,b:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Joe DeGrandis, photographer; **22.3a:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Rebecca Gray, photographer / Don Kincaid, dissections; **22.5:** Phototake; **22.8:** Custom Medical Stock; **22.9b:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Karl Rubin, photographer; **22.10:** © Imagingbody; **22.11a:** Phototake; **22.11b:** Visuals Unlimited; **22.26a,b:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Dennis Strete, photographer; **CI 22:** © Images copyright 1997 PhotoDisc, Inc.

Chapter 23

Chapter Opener 23: © CNRI / SPL / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **23.4a:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Rebecca Gray, photographer / Don Kincaid, dissections; **23.6b:** Peter Arnold, Inc.; **23.9a:** From: *Tissues and Organs: A Text-Atlas of Scanning Electron Microscopy,* © Richard G. Kessel and Randy H. Kardon, published by W.H. Freeman and Company 1979; **23.9b** Photo Researchers, Inc.; **23.9c:** Biological Photo Service; **23.22:** Photo Researchers, Inc.; **CI 23:** © Digital Stock / Corbis - Body Beautiful Vol. 76.

Chapter 24

Chapter Opener 24: Peter Arnold, Inc.

Chapter 25

Chapter Opener 25: © Omikron / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **25.6:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Rebecca Gray, photographer / Don Kincaid, dissections; **25.9b:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Dennis Strete, photographer; **25.10f** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Jim Shaffer, photographer; **25.11b:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Rebecca Gray, photographer / Don Kincaid, dissections; **25.12c:** Visuals Unlimited; **25.15a,b:** © CNR / SPL / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **25.19b, 25.21b:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Dennis Strete, photographer; **25.24a:** © Meekes / Ottawa / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **25.24b:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Dennis Strete, photographer; **CI 25:** © Images copyright 1997 PhotoDisc, Inc.

Chapter 26

Chapter Opener 26: © P.M. Motta / S. Makabe & T. Nagur / SPL / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **26.12:** Photo Researchers, Inc.

Chapter 27

Chapter Opener 27: © Secchi-Lecaque / CNRI / SPL / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **27.3:** Courtesy Mihaly Bartalos, from M. Bartalos and T.A. Baramki, 1967 Medical Cytogenetics, Williams & Wilkins; **27.8b:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Dennis Strete, photographer; **27.9a:** From: *Tissues and Organs: A Text-Atlas of Scanning Electron Microscopy,* © Richard G. Kessel and Randy H. Kardon, published by W.H. Freeman and Company 1979; **27.9b:** Ed Reschke; **27.18b:** Visuals Unlimited

Chapter 28

Chapter Opener 28: © Mehau Kulyk / SPL / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **28.3c:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Rebecca Gray, photographer / Don Kincaid, dissections; **28.4:** Photo Researchers, Inc.; **28.5a:** © SPL / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **28.5b:** © Martin R. Rotker / Phototake NYC; **28.6:** Ed Reschke; **28.10:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Dennis Strete, photographer; **28.11a,b:** Tony Stone Images; **28.11c,d:** © Biophoto Associates / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **28.14a:** Ed Reschke; **28.14b:** © ManfredKage / Peter Arnold, Inc.; **28.16:** Dr. Landrum Shettles; **28.21:** Photo Researchers, Inc.; **28.21c:** Visuals Unlimited; **28.21a:** © D. Van Rossum / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **28.23:** Courtesy Toshikazu Nagato, from Cell and Tissue Research, 209: 1-10, 3, pg. 6, Springer-Verlag, 1980; **28.24a–e:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Bob Coyle, photographer; **28.24f:** © Hank Morgan / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **28.24g:** McGraw-Hill Higher Education, Inc. / Elite Images; **28.24h:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. / Bob Coyle, photographer; **28.24i:** © The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc., Vincent Ho, photographer; **CI 28:** © Images copyright 1997 PhotoDisc, Inc.

Chapter 29

Chapter Opener 29: Photo Researchers, Inc.; **29.3:** Courtesy of Jon W. Tibbetts; **29.9** Visuals Unlimited; **29.10b** © Martin Rotker / Phototake, Inc.; **29.12:** © Neil Hardin / Tony Stone Images; **29.13:** Courtesy Dr. Almuth Lenz; **29.15:** Courtesy Mihalay Bartalos, from Bartalos 1976: Medical Cytogenetics, fig 10.2 pg. 154, Waverly, a division of Williams & Wilkins; **29.16a:** Photo Researchers, Inc.; **29.16b:** © Biophoto Associates / Photo Researchers, Inc.; **29.17:** Photograph of old woman from Stock Photo; **29.17:** Photograph of child from The 1974 Science Year. © 1973 Field Enterprises Educational Corporation. By permission of World Book, Inc. www.worldbook.com; **29.18:** © Corbis / Bettmann; **29.19:** © AP / Wide World Photo

Index

Following a page number, *f* indicates a figure, *i* indicates information in an Insight box, and *t* indicates a table. Specific arteries, bones, muscles, nerves, and other such structures are listed under the general term (see *Arteries, Bones,* and so forth).

A

Abbe, Ernst, 6
ABCD rule, 209, 209*f*
Abdominal cavity, 36, 36*f*, 37, 37*t*, 50*f*
Abdominal pregnancy, 1094*i*
Abdominal region
  arterial supply to, 776*f*–778*f*, 776*t*–778*t*
  muscles of, 332*f*, 346–347, 347*f*–349*f*, 347*t*
  quadrants and regions of, 32, 33*f*–35*f*
  surface anatomy of, 33*f*, 394*f*
  venous drainage of, 787*f*–789*f*, 787*t*–789*t*
Abduction
  of joints, 303, 304*f*
  of vocal cords, 846, 847*f*
ABO blood group, 695–697, 695*f*, 696*t*, 697*f*, 825*t*
Abortion, 1070, 1079*t*, 1105
Abruptio placentae, 1079*t*
Abscesses, 814
Absorption. *See also* Reabsorption; *specific substances*
  by bone, 218*t*, 222*i*
  by brush border, 103
  by large intestine, 976
  by lymphatic vessels, 800, 801, 801*f*
  by skin, 199, 199*i*
  by small intestine, 968–974
  by stomach, 956
Absorptive state, 1007–1008
Accommodation of lens, 618, 618*f*
ACE inhibitors, 759, 793*i*
Acetabulum, 277, 279*f*, 280*t*, 312, 314*f*
  etymology of, 21*i*
Acetaldehyde and alcohol metabolism, 1012*i*
Acetate and alcohol metabolism, 1012*i*
Acetoacetic acid, 669, 1005
Acetone, 669, 1005
  poisoning by, 199*i*, 907*i*
Acetylcholine (ACh). *See also* Cholinergic neurons; Cholinergic receptors; Cholinergic synapses
  in Alzheimer disease, 475*i*
  in autonomic nervous system, 566, 566*f*, 566*t*, 574
  digestion, effects on, 957
  discovery of, 458
  heart, effects on, 738, 740*t*
  in myasthenia gravis, 437*i*
  in neuromuscular physiology, 414, 416*t*, 417, 418*f*, 421*f*, 422, 429, 434
  in neuronal physiology, 458, 465, 466*t*, 469
  in Parkinson disease, 475*i*
  structure of, 465*f*
Acetylcholinesterase (AChE), 414, 414*i*, 416*t*, 421*f*, 422, 468, 574
Acetyl-coenzyme A, 999, 999*f*, 1004–1005, 1005*f*
Achilles tendon. *See* Tendons, specific: calcaneal
Acid, 67, 68*f*. *See also* Hydrogen ion; pH
  in bone resorption, 230
  in kidney tubules and urine, 893–894, 893*f*, 900, 928–929, 929*f*, 932–933
  metabolic origins of, 926
  peptic ulcer and, 956*i*
  stomach, 952, 954*f*
  strong and weak, 927
Acid-base balance, 926–933. *See also* Acidosis; Alkalosis
  bone and, 218, 230*i*
  buffers and, 927–928
  disturbances of, 930–933
  linked to fluid and electrolyte balance, 932*t*, 933
  renal control of, 880, 895, 928–933
  respiratory control of, 867–868, 928
Acid mantle, 199, 809
Acidosis, 230*i*, 867–868, 930
  compensated, 931–932
  electrolyte imbalances and, 925–926, 930, 931*f*, 932*t*
  fluid therapy and, 933*i*
  heart, effect on, 739, 740*t*
  membrane potentials and, 930
  renal failure and, 907*i*
  respiratory and metabolic, 930–931, 932*t*, 989
  vasomotor effect of, 758–759
Acid phosphatase, 230, 1029*i*
Acinus, 180, 180*f*
  mammary, 1077, 1078*f*
  pancreatic, 962, 963*f*
  salivary, 947, 947*f*
Acne, 208*t*, 1031
Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), 114, 701, 829–832, 831*f*. *See also* Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)
Acromegaly, 667, 667*f*
Acromial region, 33*f*
Acromion, 271, 273*f*, 312*f*, 394*f*–395*f*, 398*f*
Acronyms, 20
Acrosin, 1090
Acrosome, 1035, 1036*f*
  acrosomal reaction, 1090, 1091*f*
ACTH. *See* Adrenocorticotropic hormone
Actin
  in cell movement, 101
  in cytoskeleton, 103, 104*f*, 120, 140*t*
  in erythrocytes, 689
  in muscle contraction, 409–410, 411*f*, 413*t*, 417, 419, 419*f*–421*f*, 422. *See also* Myofilaments
Action of a muscle, 328
Action potentials
  in muscle fibers, 416, 417, 418*f*
  myocardial, 729, 730*f*
  in neurons, 457*t*, 458–461, 458*f*–460*f*, 470*f*
  of sinoatrial node, 729*f*
Activation energy, 82, 83*f*
Active sites
  of actin, 410, 417, 419*f*, 422
  of enzymes, 83, 84*f*
Active transport
  in digestive tract, 969, 969*f*
  in kidney, 893–894, 893*f*, 898
  Na^+-K^+ pump as, 110–111, 110*f*
  in placenta, 1097
  primary, 110, 115*t*
  secondary, 111, 111*f*, 115*t*, 894
Acuity, visual, 624–625
Acutane, 1104
Acute glomerulonephritis, 828
Acute pancreatitis, 978*t*
Acute pericarditis, 741*t*
Acute rhinitis, 871*t*
Adaptation
  evolutionary, 10
  sensory, 587, 624
  to stress, 662–664
Addiction, 580*i*, 1012*i*
Addison disease, 670*t*, 923
Adduction
  of joints, 303, 304*f*
  of vocal cords, 846, 847*f*
Adenine, 85, 85*f*, 130, 131*f*
Adenocarcinoma, 870
Adenohypophysis, 638–639, 641*f*
Adenoids, 806
Adenosine, 85*f*, 580*i*
  vasomotor effect, 757, 766
Adenosine diphosphate (ADP), 85
  in hemostasis, 704
Adenosine triphosphatase (ATPase), 85
Adenosine triphosphate (ATP)
  energy yield from, 85–86, 86*f*
  in fat oxidation, 1005
  heat released from, 85, 111, 169
  in membrane transport, 106, 110
  in muscle physiology, 417, 418*f*–426*f*, 420, 422, 427–429, 428*f*, 435
  nervous tissue, consumption by, 456
  as pain stimulus, 590
  structure of, 85, 85*f*
  synthesis of, 86*f*, 997–1002, 997*f*, 999*f*, 1001*f*–1002*f*
Adenylate cyclase, 102, 102*f*, 467, 467*f*
ADH. *See* Antidiuretic hormone
Adhesion
  of cells, 101, 103*t*, 168, 178–179
  of water, 64
Adipocytes, 167, 169, 170*f*, 669
  hormone secretion by, 986, 987*i*
  hypertrophy of, 987
Adipose capsule of kidney, 50*f*, 881–882
Adipose tissue, 77, 167, 169, 170*f*. *See also* Brown fat
  autonomic effects on, 576*t*
  subcutaneous, 50*f*
Adolescence, 234, 263*i*, 1030. *See also* Puberty
Adrenal gland
  anatomy of, 648–649, 649*f*
  cortex, 571, 648–649, 649*f*, 653*t*
  hormones of, 649, 653*t*, 1070
  medulla, 571, 574, 648, 649*f*, 653*t*, 664
  position of, 46*f*, 570*f*, 636*f*
  sympathetic nervous system, relationship to, 571
Adrenergic neurons, 574, 574*t*, 575*f*
  drug actions on, 579*i*
Adrenergic receptors, 574–575, 575*f*, 759
  in heart, 738
Adrenergic synapses, 467, 467*f*
Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH)
  function of, 642, 645*t*
  hypersecretion of, 666
  in pregnancy, 1071, 1071*t*
  secretion by B lymphocytes, 833
  secretion by pituitary gland, 641*f*, 642, 643*f*, 645*t*
  in stress response, 664
Adrenogenital syndrome (AGS), 668, 669*f*
Adventitia, 941
Aerobic exercise, 431
Aerobic respiration, 84, 84*f*, 86, 86*f*, 996
  generation of free radicals by, 60, 124
  metabolic pathway and ATP yield of, 998–1002, 999*f*–1002*f*, 1003*t*
  in muscle, 427, 428, 428*f*, 429, 433

- Affective language area, 544
- Afferent arteriole, 884*f*, 885, 885*f*, 888*f*
- Afferent neurons and nerve fibers, 446, 446*f*, 492*t*, 504
- Afterbirth, 1075, 1076*f*
- After-discharge, 473
- Agglutination, 694, 696*f*, 697*f*
  - of antigens, 823, 825*f*
- Agglutinins, 695, 696, 825*t*
- Agglutinogens, 695
- Aggression, brain centers for, 531, 539
- Aging, 1107. *See also* Senescence
  - anemia and, 693*t*
  - blood pressure and, 755, 755*t*
  - endocrine function and, 644
  - sexual function and, 1031–1032
- Agnosia, 538
- Agonists, 328
- Agranulocytes, 699, 701*t*, 701*f*. *See also* Lymphocytes; Monocytes
- AIDS. *See* Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome
- Air
  - composition of, 859–860, 860*t*
  - compressed, in diving, 871
  - in pleural cavity, 853
  - pressure of, 851–854, 854*f*, 859–860, 860*t*
  - at water surface, 860, 860*f*
- Air embolism, 764*i*
- Airflow, 851–854, 854*f*
- Ala nasi, 393*f*
- Alarm reaction, 663
- Albinism, 198
- Albumin
  - bilirubin transport by, 692
  - glomerular filtration and, 887
  - hormone transport by, 657
  - intravenous administration of, 933*i*
  - as plasma component, 683, 683*t*–684*t*
- Albuminuria, 887
- Alcohol (ethanol)
  - absorption of, 956, 1011*i*–1012*i*
  - alcoholism and, 1012*i*
  - blood-brain barrier and, 524
  - detoxification of, 1004*t*, 1012*i*
  - effects on body, 902, 1012*i*
  - metabolism of, 117–119, 1012*i*
  - structure of, 61*f*
  - teratogenic effect of, 1104
- Alcohol dehydrogenase, 1012*i*
- Alcoholism, 148, 506, 1012*i*
- Aldosterone
  - action of, 896, 901*t*, 922, 923*f*
  - blood pressure, effect on, 759, 792*i*
  - imbalances, 925
  - potassium balance and, 924
  - in pregnancy, 1071, 1071*t*, 1072
  - secretion of, 649, 653*t*, 891
  - in stress response, 663–664
  - structure and synthesis of, 656*f*
  - transport of, 657
- Alkaline tide, 952
- Alkalosis, 664, 867–868, 930
  - compensated, 931–933
  - electrolyte imbalances and, 925–926, 930, 931*f*, 932*t*
  - fluid therapy and, 933*i*
  - hypovolemia and, 932*t*
  - membrane potentials and, 930
  - respiratory and metabolic, 930–931, 932*t*
- Allantois, 1096*f*, 1098, 1098*f*
- Alleles, 147, 150*t*
- Allergens, 828
- Allergy, 688, 813, 825*t*, 828
- Allografts, 211
- Alloimmunity, 828
- All-or-none law, 460
- Alopecia, 203
- Alpha cells (pancreatic), 650*f*, 651, 664
- Alpha helix, 80, 81*f*
- Alpha motor neurons, 504, 505, 505*f*, 507
- Alpha particles, 59, 151*i*
- Alpha-tocopherol. *See* Vitamin E
- Alpha waves, 536–537, 536*f*–537*f*
- Alveolar ducts and sacs, 848, 851*f*–852*f*
- Alveolar macrophages, 810, 849, 852*f*
- Alveolar ventilation rate, 855
- Alveoli
  - dental, 247*f*, 247*t*, 257, 944
  - pulmonary, 841*f*
    - in emphysema, 862*f*
    - gas exchange in, 860–863, 865*f*, 866
    - in pneumonia, 862*f*, 871*t*
    - in respiratory distress syndromes, 871*t*, 1103–1104
    - in scuba diving, 872*i*
    - structure of, 848–849, 851*f*–852*f*
    - surface tension of, 855
    - ventilation of, 855, 863*f*
- Alzheimer, Alois, 475*i*
- Alzheimer disease, 125*i*, 455*i*, 475*i*, 1110
- Amacrine cells, of retina, 620*f*, 621
- Amination, 1005
- Amino acids, 79, 79*t*, 80*f*, 136, 139*f*
  - dietary, 993, 993*i*
  - essential, 993
  - genetic code and, 134–135, 135*t*
  - hormones derived from, 654
  - intestinal absorption of, 970, 971*f*
  - metabolism of, 1006–1008, 1006*f*
  - as neurotransmitters, 464, 465*f*, 466*t*
  - oxidation of, 1005–1006, 1006*f*
  - in protein synthesis, 136–137, 137*f*, 139*f*, 1006
  - reabsorption in kidney, 894
- Amino group, 72, 72*f*, 79
- Aminopeptidase, 970, 971*f*
- Ammonia, 881
  - buffering by, 929, 930*f*
  - conversion to urea, 1006, 1006*f*
  - detoxification of, 1006
  - production of, 1006
  - secretion of, 895
  - structure of, 881*f*
- Amnesia, 539
- Amniocentesis, 1105
- Amnion, 211, 1094*f*–1096*f*, 1097–1098, 1098*f*
  - etymology of, 21*i*
- Amniotic cavity, 1093–1094, 1094*f*, 1096*f*
- Amniotic fluid, 1075, 1097–1098, 1098*f*
- Amphetamines, 580*i*
- Amphiarthroses, 294–295, 295*f*
- Amphiphilic substances, 77
- Ampulla of semicircular duct, 607, 608*f*
- Amputation and diabetes, 668, 670
- Amygdala, 534, 539, 594, 596
- Amylase
  - pancreatic, 962, 963*t*, 969
  - salivary, 83, 946, 948, 969
- Amyloid protein, 1110
- Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), 490*i*
- Anabolic-androgenic steroids, 87*i*
- Anabolism 16, 70, 71*t*
- Anaerobic fermentation, 85, 86*f*
  - in erythrocytes, 689
  - metabolic pathway of, 996, 997*f*, 998, 1003*t*
  - in muscle, 427, 428, 428*f*, 430*t*
  - in neurons, 557*f*
- Anagen phase, 203
- Anal canal, 51*f*, 941*f*, 974, 975*f*
- Analgesia, 590–591
- Anal triangle, 350, 355*f*, 1024*f*
- Anamnestic response, 825*f*, 826
- Anaphase, 143, 144*f*, 1032, 1033*f*, 1034
- Anaphylactic shock, 828
- Anaphylaxis, 828, 854
- Anastomoses
  - arterial, 748, 748*f*, 772*f*–773*f*, 772*t*–773*t*, 777*f*–778*f*, 777*t*–778*t*
  - coronary, 724
  - venous, 748*f*, 749, 782, 784*t*–785*t*, 785*f*, 790*f*–791*f*, 790*t*–791*t*
- Anatomical planes, 31, 31*f*
- Anatomical position, 30, 30*f*
- Anatomical snuffbox, 366, 399*f*
- Anatomical terminology, history of, 19
- Anatomy, 2
  - comparative, 2
  - gross and microscopic, 2–3, 158
  - history of, 3–6
  - overview of, 43*f*–51*f*
  - surface, 33*f*, 392, 393*f*–406*f*
  - variation in, 14, 15*f*
- Androgen-binding protein (ABP), 1030, 1031*f*
- Androgen-insensitivity syndrome, 659*i*, 1021*i*
- Androgens, 653*t*. *See also* Dihydrotestosterone; Testosterone
  - in female, 649, 1060, 1064, 1066
  - in male, 649, 652, 1019, 1021*i*, 1030–1032, 1031*f*
  - in pregnancy, 1070
  - in puberty, 1059
- Anemia
  - blood viscosity and, 755
  - forms of, 692–694, 693*t*
  - hypoxia and, 869
  - in old age, 1110–1111
  - in pregnancy, 1072
  - in renal failure, 907*i*
- Anencephaly, 1072, 1104
- Anergy, 817
- Anesthesia, 504, 529
  - blood-brain barrier and, 524
  - epidural, 483
  - history of, 627*i*–629*i*
- Aneuploidy, 1105, 1105*f*–1107*f*
- Aneurysm, 754*i*, 854
- Anger, brain centers for, 531, 539
- Angina pectoris, 725*i*, 742*i*, 1111
- Angiogenesis, 757
- Angiography, 22*i*, 23*f*
- Angioplasty, 743*i*
- Angiotensin, 579*i*, 652, 759, 792*i*, 890–891, 892*f*, 901*t*
  - dehydration and, 917
  - in stress response, 663
- Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE), 652, 759, 891, 892*f*
- Angiotensinogen, 652, 653*t*, 890, 892*f*
- Angular gyrus, 544, 545*f*
- Anions, 59
- Ankle. *See* Tarsal region
- Ankylosis, 320*i*
- Anorexia, 986, 987*f*
- Anosmia, 257*i*
- Antabuse, 1012*i*
- Antagonistic effects in autonomic nervous system, 575, 577
- Antagonistic interactions of hormones, 662, 1077
- Antagonistic muscles, 329, 422
- Antebrachium, 33*f*, 36, 273
  - external anatomy of, 398*f*
- Anterior lobe. *See* Pituitary gland
- Anterior superior spines of ilium, 43*f*, 394*f*, 396*f*
- Anterograde amnesia, 539
- Anterograde axonal transport, 449
- Anterolateral system, 486*t*, 487, 487*f*
- Anti-A and anti-B, 696, 696*f*–697*f*, 696*t*, 825*t*
- Antibodies, 827*t*. *See also* Autoantibodies; Immunoglobulins
  - actions of, 816, 823–824
  - agglutination by, 695–696, 696*f*–697*f*, 823–824, 825*f*, 825*t*
  - blood types and, 695, 696*t*
  - classes of, 822, 825*t*
  - in inflammation, 812
  - secretion of, 167, 684, 822, 823*f*
  - structure of, 822, 824*f*, 825*t*
- Antibody titer, 826
- Anticoagulants, 704, 707, 708*i*–709*i*
- Anticodon, 136, 139*f*
- Anti-D, 697–698, 698*f*, 825*t*
- Antidepressants, 468
- Antidiuretic hormone (ADH). *See also* Diabetes, insipidus
  - action of, 644, 645*t*, 660, 891, 896, 898, 901*t*, 919, 919*f*
  - blood pressure, effect on, 759
  - in cold weather, 920*i*
  - dehydration and, 917
  - hypersecretion, 920
  - hyposecretion, 902
  - hypothalamic source of, 530*f*, 531, 640
  - sodium balance and, 923
  - structure of, 655*f*
- Antigen-antibody complexes, 696*f*, 824, 825*f*
- Antigenic determinants. *See* Epitopes
- Antigen-presenting cells (APCs), 804, 813, 817, 818*f*, 819, 827*t*
- Antigens, 816, 827*t*
  - agglutination of, 695–696, 696*f*–697*f*, 823–824, 825*f*, 825*t*
  - as allergens, 828
  - blood types and, 695, 696*t*
  - processing and presentation of, 817, 818*f*, 819, 822
  - receptors for, 817, 822, 823*f*, 825*t*
  - recognition of, 819, 820*f*, 822, 823*f*, 828
  - structure of, 816
- Antihistamines, 828
- Anti-inflammatory drugs, 386*i*, 649, 666*i*
- Antioxidants, 60, 510, 995, 1114
- Antiports, 110, 115*t*
  - in kidney, 893*f*, 894

- Antipyretic drugs, 666i, 814
- Antithrombin, 707
- Antrum
  - of follicle, 1062f, 1064, 1065f
  - of stomach, 950, 951f, 955
- Anuclear cells, 116
- Anuria, 901
- Anus, 51f, 355f, 941f
- Aortic arch. *See under* Arteries
- Aortic bodies, 758, 758f, 867, 867f
- Aortic hiatus, 770f, 774t
- Aortic sinus, 758, 770
- Aortic valve, 721f, 722, 735f. *See also* Semilunar valves
- Apes, 11, 12f, 204, 286f–287f, 286i–287i. *See also* Chimpanzee; Gorilla
- Apgar score, 1103i
- Aphasia, 544, 545
- Apnea, 857t
- Apneustic center, 858, 858f
- Apocrine sweat glands, 182, 201f, 206–207, 206f, 207t, 595i, 1031
- Apoferritin, 687f, 688
- Aponeuroses, 327, 334, 346, 347f, 380
- Apoptosis, 119, 157f, 185
  - perforins and, 809, 810f
  - in spinal cord injury, 509
- Appendicitis, 978t
- Appendicular region, 36
- Appendicular skeleton, 244, 245f
- Appendix, 45f, 941f, 974, 975f
- Appetite, 986–987, 1112
- Appositional growth, 229
- Aprosodia, 544
- Aquaporins, 107, 894, 898, 919
- Aqueous humor, 612, 613, 613f, 614i, 1110
- Arachidonic acid, 77, 664, 665f, 990
- Arachnoid mater, 483, 484f, 495f, 519, 520f, 521i
- Arachnoid villi, 520f, 523, 523f
- Arboreal habitat, adaptation to, 10
- Arbor vitae, 526, 527f
- Arches
  - aortic, 717, 719f, 770f, 770t–771t
  - arterial, 365f, 773f, 774t, 779f–780f, 780t, 784t, 785f
  - of feet, 282, 284, 284f, 286i, 402f, 404f–405f
  - of pharynx, 943f, 944
  - pubic, 280f, 280t, 1029
  - venous, 784t, 785f, 790f–791f, 790t–791t
  - vertebral, 264, 264f
  - zygomatic, 250f, 254, 258, 336f
- Archicortex, 534
- Areola, 196, 394f, 1057, 1057f
  - during intercourse, 1068–1069
  - in pregnancy, 1072
- Areolar glands, 1057, 1057f
- Areolar tissue, 168–169, 170f
  - as barrier to infection, 809
- Arginine, 79f
- Arginine vasopressin (AVP), 644. *See also* Antidiuretic hormone
- Aristotle, 3, 4, 516, 716, 872i
- Arm (brachium), 36, 273
  - arterial supply to, 773f, 773t–774t
  - bones of, 273–274, 274f
  - extrinsic muscles acting on, 356–357, 358t, 359f–360f
  - movements of, 302–306, 303f–306f, 361t
  - muscles in, 357, 359f–360f
  - surface anatomy of, 33f, 394f–395f, 397f–398f
  - venous drainage of, 784t–785t, 785f
- Arousal, role of brainstem in, 530
- Arrector pili. *See* Piloerector muscles
- Arrhythmia, 728, 732f, 732i, 732t, 881
- Arsenic poisoning, 199i, 202i, 693t, 699
- Arterial pressure points, 781, 781f
- Arteries, specific
  - aorta, 345f, 717, 719f, 721f
    - abdominal, 46f–47f, 50f, 770f, 770t, 776f, 776t, 778f
    - anatomy of, 769f–770f, 770t, 776t
    - aneurysm of, 754i
    - aortic arch, 717, 719f, 770f, 770t–771t
    - ascending, 45f, 770f, 770t
    - blood pressure in, 736, 755f
    - blood velocity in, 757, 757f
    - descending, 769f–770f, 770t
    - elasticity of, 750
    - rupture of, 172i
    - thoracic, 46f–47f, 49f, 770f, 770t, 774t, 775f
  - arcuate
    - of foot, 780f, 780t
    - of kidney, 884f, 885, 886f
    - of uterus, 1054, 1055f
  - arterial circle, cerebral, 771f, 772t
  - auricular, posterior, 771f
  - axillary, 45f, 769f, 773f, 773t
  - basilar, 771f, 772f, 772t
  - brachial, 45f, 769f, 773f, 773t, 781f
  - brachiocephalic trunk, 47f, 769f–771f, 770t–771t
  - bronchial, 767, 774t, 775f, 848
  - carotid
    - common, 44f, 47f, 769f–771f, 770t–771t, 781f
    - external, 769f, 771f, 771t
    - internal, 769f, 771f–772f, 772t
  - celiac trunk, 769f, 776f–778f, 776t–777t,
  - cerebellar, 771f, 772f
  - cerebral, 771f–772f, 772t
  - circumflex
    - coronary, 724, 725f
    - femoral, 779f–780f
    - humeral, 773f, 773t
  - clitoral, 1056
  - colic, 778f, 778t
  - common hepatic, 777f, 777t
  - communicating, 771f–772f, 772t
  - coronary, 724–725, 725f. *See also* Coronary artery disease
  - costocervical trunk, 771f, 771t
  - deep
    - of clitoris, 1068
    - of penis, 1030f, 1038, 1038f, 1040
  - deep brachial, 773f, 773t
  - deep femoral, 769f, 779f–780f, 780t
  - digital, 773f, 774t, 779f
  - dorsal, of penis, 1030f, 1038
  - dorsal pedal, 405f, 769f, 779f–781f, 780t
  - esophageal, 774t, 775f
  - facial, 771f, 772t, 781f
  - femoral, 44f, 377f, 769f, 779f–781f, 780t
  - fibular, 779f–780f, 780t
  - gastric, 777f, 778t
  - gastroduodenal, 777f, 777t
  - gastroepiploic, 777f, 778t
  - genicular, 779f, 780t
  - gluteal, 779t, 780f
  - gonadal, 769f, 776f, 776t
  - helicine, of penis, 1039
  - hepatic, common and proper, 777f, 777t
  - ileocolic, 778f, 778t
  - iliac
    - common, 46f, 769f, 776f, 776t, 779f–780f, 779t
    - external, 769f, 779f–780f, 779t–780t
  - internal, 769f, 779f–780f, 779t
  - iliolumbar, 779t, 780f
  - intercostal, 567f, 769f, 774t–775t, 775f
  - interlobular, 884f, 885, 886f, 888f
  - internal pudendal, 1038, 1039f, 1056
  - interosseous, 773f, 774t
  - interventricular, 718f, 724, 725f
  - intestinal, 778f, 778t
  - left anterior descending (LAD), 724
  - lingual, 771f, 771t
  - lobar, of lung, 767, 768f
  - lumbar, 776f, 776t
  - marginal, 724, 725f
  - maxillary, 771f, 772t
  - mediastinal, 774t
  - mesenteric, 46f, 50f, 769f, 776f–778f, 776t–778t
  - metacarpal, 773f, 774t
  - metatarsal, 780f, 780t
  - obturator, 779t, 779f–780f
  - occipital, 771f, 772t
  - ophthalmic, 771f, 772t
  - ovarian, 776t, 1050, 1052f, 1055f
  - palmar arches, 773f, 774t
  - pancreatic, 778t
  - pancreaticoduodenal, 777f, 777t–778t
  - pericardiophrenic, 775f, 775t
  - peroneal. *See* fibular
  - phrenic, 774t, 776f, 776t
  - plantar, 779f–780f, 780t
  - plantar arch, 779f–780f, 780t
  - popliteal, 769f, 779f–781f, 780t
  - principal, of thumb, 773f
  - pudendal, 779f–780f, 779t
  - pulmonary, 719f, 721f, 767, 768f, 848–849
  - pulmonary trunk, 717, 719f, 721f, 767, 768f
  - radial, 365f, 769f, 773f, 774t, 781f
  - radial recurrent, 773f, 773t
  - rectal, 778t–779t, 778f, 780f
  - renal, 14, 769f, 776f, 776t, 883f, 885, 886f
  - sacral, 776f, 776t, 779t, 780f
  - sigmoid, 778f, 778t
  - spiral, of uterus, 1054, 1055f, 1067
  - splenic, 46f, 777f, 778t
  - subclavian, 45f, 47f, 769f–771f, 770t–771t, 773f, 775f
  - subcostal, 774t
  - subscapular, 775f, 775t
  - superficial palmar arterial arch, 365f
  - superficial temporal, 771f, 772t, 781f
  - superior thyroid, 499f
  - superior vesical, 1103
  - suprarenal, 776f, 776t
  - testicular, 769f, 776t, 1024, 1026f–1028f, 1027
  - thoracic, 769f, 775f, 775t
  - thoracoacromial trunk, 775f, 775t,
  - thyrocervical trunk, 771t, 771f
  - thyroid, 771f, 771t
  - tibial, anterior and posterior, 769f, 779f–781f, 780t
  - ulnar, 365f, 769f, 773f, 774t
  - ulnar recurrent, 773f, 773t
  - umbilical, 1097, 1099, 1100f
  - uterine, 779t, 780f, 1054
  - vaginal, 779t, 780f, 1055f
  - vertebral, 265, 769f, 771f–772f, 771t–772t
  - vesical, 779t, 780f
- Arteries in general, 716
  - autonomic innervation, 575, 577, 578f
  - blood flow in, 754, 757t
  - blood pressure in, 754, 755f
  - blood volume in, 753f
  - fetal, 1099–1100, 1100f, 1103
  - gross anatomy of, 767–780
  - histology of, 749f, 750, 750f
  - pressure points of, 781, 781f
  - receptors in, 564, 565f, 738–739, 758, 758f
  - systemic
    - overview of, 769f
    - tables of, 770t–780t
  - types of, 749f, 750
- Arterioles, 749f, 750, 760
- Arteriosclerosis, 741. *See also* Atherosclerosis
- Arthritis, 319t, 320i
- Arthrology, 294
- Arthroplasty, 320i
- Arthroscopy, 316i
- Articulations. *See* Joints
- Artificial insemination, 1115i
- Arvin, 709
- Ascites, 683i, 737i, 978t, 1012i
- Ascorbic acid. *See* Vitamin C
- Asepsis, 628i
- Aspartate (aspartic acid), 464, 465f, 469, 594
- Aspirin
  - absorption of, 956
  - anticoagulant effect of, 708i
  - antipyretic effect of, 666i, 814
  - eicosanoid synthesis, effect on, 665f, 666i
  - ion trapping of, 68i
  - peptic ulcer and, 956i
  - Reye syndrome and, 815i
  - for rheumatoid arthritis, 320i
  - for shingles, 493i
- Association areas, 540, 541f
- Asthma, 828i–829i, 854–855, 856, 869
- Astigmatism, 619t
- Astrocytes, 450, 450t, 451f, 459, 468, 490i, 524
- Astrocytosis, 450
- Ataxia, 544
- Atelectasis, 853
- Atheroma, 741i–742i, 742f, 743i
- Atherosclerosis, 87i, 169, 230
  - aneurysm and, 754i
  - cerebral, 766
  - coronary, 741i–743i
  - in diabetes mellitus, 670
  - hypertension and, 793i
  - obesity and, 987i
  - in old age, 1111
  - renal, 889, 907i

Athletes. *See also* Exercise
  amino acid intake by, 993*i*
  bone density in, 228
  bradycardia in, 741
  carbohydrate loading in, 429
  in competition, 431
  injuries in, 386*i*
  muscle fiber types in, 430*t*
  osteoporosis in, 239*i*
  steroid abuse among, 87*i,* 234
  training, effects of, 685, 741, 757
Athlete's foot, 208*t*
Atomic mass, number, and weight, 56, 57*f,* 58
Atoms, 56, 57*f*
ATP. *See* Adenosine triphosphate
ATPase. *See* Adenosine triphosphatase; Sodium-potassium pump
ATP synthase, 1001, 1001*f*
Atresia, 1061, 1064
Atria, 719*f,* 720, 721*f*
  in cardiac cycle, 734, 735*f,* 736
Atrial flutter, 732*i*
Atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP), 652, 653*t,* 759
  action of, 660, 896, 901*t*
  in cold weather, 920*i*
  sodium balance and, 923
Atrioventricular (AV) bundle, 727, 727*f,* 729
Atrioventricular (AV) node, 727, 727*f,* 728, 738
Atrioventricular (AV) valves, 718*f,* 721*f*–723*f,* 722, 734, 735*f*
Atrophy, 183
  of brain, 1110
  denervation, 412, 454*f,* 455, 1109
  disuse, 1109
  of integumentary system, 1108
  of kidneys, 1111
  of lymphatic organs, 833*i*
  menopause and, 1060
  muscular, 412, 455, 490*i,* 669, 1109
  of stomach, 954, 1111, 1112
Atropine, 574, 579*i*
Attitudes, effect on immune system, 833*i*
Auditory association area, 540, 541*f*
Auditory canal, 598, 599*f*
Auditory ossicles, 259, 598, 599*f,* 602
Auditory projection pathway, 604–606, 605*f*
Auditory reflexes, 486*t*
Auditory (eustachian) tube, 598, 599*f,* 844*f,* 845
Auricle
  of ear, 598, 598*f*–599*f*
  of heart, 719*f,* 720
Auricular region, 393*f*
Auscultation, 2, 734
Australopithecines, 11, 11*t,* 287*i*
Autoantibodies, 179*i,* 666–667, 669, 829, 832*t*
Autografts, 211
Autoimmune diseases
  anemia, 693*t*
  diabetes mellitus, 666, 669, 828, 829
  myasthenia gravis, 437*i*
  pemphigus vulgaris, 179*i,* 828
  rheumatic fever, 723*i,* 829
  rheumatoid arthritis, 319*t,* 320*i*
  senescence, as cause of, 1114
  systemic lupus erythematosus, 828, 832*t*
  toxic goiter, 666, 670*t,* 828
Autolysis, 119, 1075–1076
Autonomic nervous system, 563–584. *See also* Parasympathetic nervous system; Sympathetic nervous system
  disorders of, 579*t*
  hypothalamic control of, 531
  motor pathways of, 565–566, 566*f,* 566*t*
  somatic, compared to, 566*t*
Autonomic tone, 565
Autophagy, 119
Autoregulation, 757, 889
Autorhythmicity, 432*t,* 433, 434, 727
Autosomes, 146, 150*t*
Avicenna, 4
Awareness, 526
Axes of endocrine system, 640, 642, 643*f*
Axial region, 32
Axial skeleton, 244, 245*f*
Axillary folds, 397*f*
Axillary hair, 202, 204, 207, 1060
Axillary region, 33*f,* 397*f*
Axis (vertebra C1), 265, 266*f*
Axon, 175, 447*f,* 448. *See also* Nerve fibers
Axonal transport, 449, 455*i*
Axoneme, 104*f,* 105, 120
Axon hillock, 447*f,* 448
Axoplasmic flow, 449
Azidothymidine (AZT), 831–832
Azotemia, 881, 907*i*

B

Back
  injuries, 349*i*–350*i*
  muscles of, 347, 349, 350*f*–352*f,* 429–430
  surface anatomy of, 33*f,* 395*f*
Background radiation, 59
Bacon, Francis, 7
Bacteria, 124*i,* 142, 199. *See also* Infections, bacterial
  genetically engineered, 709
  intestinal, 695, 976
Bacterial toxins
  as pain signals, 812
  shock caused by, 765
Balance, sense of, 486*t,* 507
Baldness, 203
Ballismus, 542
Banting, Frederick, 671*i*–672*i*
Barbiturate tolerance, 118
Barium sulfate, 22*i*
Baroreceptors, 564, 565*f,* 758, 758*f*
Baroreflexes, 564, 565*f,* 739, 758
  in cardiac function, 738–739
Barotrauma, pulmonary, 872*i*
Bartholin glands, 1056*f,* 1068
Basal body, 104*f,* 105, 120, 124*t*
Basal ganglia. *See* Nuclei of brain, basal
Basal metabolic rate, 1008
Basal nuclei. *See* Nuclei of brain, basal
Baseball finger, 386*i*
Basement membrane, 98*f,* 160, 182*f*
  glomerular, 887, 888*f*
Base pairs, 132, 132*f,* 134*t*
Bases
  nitrogenous, 130, 131*f*
  pH and, 67, 927
  strong and weak, 927
Base triplets, 134, 135*t*
Basilar membrane, 600, 601*f,* 602, 603
Basophils
  appearance of, 681*f,* 699, 700*f,* 700*t*
  formation of, 686*f*
  function of, 809, 812, 812*t,* 825*t,* 828
Bayliss, William, 964
B cells (lymphocytes), 804, 824*f*
  action of, 822, 823*f,* 826*t*–827*t*
  development of, 805, 817
  IgM on, 825*t*
  memory, 826, 826*t*
  secretions of, 833*i*
Beard, 202, 204, 207
  effect of pheromones on, 595*i*
Beaumont, William, 977*i*–978*i*
Becquerel, Henri, 58*i,* 222*i*
Bed sore, 185
Belladonna, 579*i*
Bell palsy, 556*i*
Belly of a muscle, 328, 328*f*
Bends, 872*i*
Benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1029*i,* 1112
Benign tumors, 151*i*
Benzene poisoning, 693*t*
Bernard, Claude, 17
Best, Charles, 671*i*–672*i*
Beta-amyloid protein, 475*i*
Beta-blockers, 579*i,* 793*i*
Beta-carotene, 60
Beta cells (pancreatic), 650, 650*f,* 664, 669, 829
Beta-endorphin, 464, 465*f,* 466*t,* 591
Beta-hydroxybutyric acid, 669, 1005
Beta-oxidation, 1004*t,* 1005
Beta particles, 59, 151*i*
Beta sheet, 80, 81*f*
Beta waves, 536, 536*f*–537*f*
Bicarbonate
  in acid-base balance, 928–929, 931*f*
  blood concentration of, 683*t*
  buffer system, 927
  in carbon dioxide transport, 864, 865*f,* 866
  chloride shift and, 864, 865*f,* 952
  in hydrochloric acid secretion, 952, 954*f*
  in pancreatic juice, 962, 963*t,* 964
  reabsorption of, 893*f,* 894, 928–929
  in saliva, 946
  in treatment for acidosis, 230*i*
  in urine, 932–933
Bicarbonate:carbonic acid ratio, 931*f*
Bicuspid (mitral) valve, 722, 722*f,* 723*i*
Bile, 961–962, 970
Bile acids, 78*t,* 742*i,* 962, 970, 972*f,* 1004*t*
Bile duct, 961, 961*f*
Bile pigments, 692, 895, 962, 1104
Bile salts. *See* Bile acids
Biliary calculi (gallstones), 707*i,* 962*i*
Bilirubin, 198, 691*f,* 692, 962, 1004*t*
Biliverdin, 691*f,* 692
Biochemistry, 56
Biofeedback, 564*i*
Biogenic amines. *See* Monoamines
Biological clock, 530*f*
Biomechanics, 294
Biotin, 995, 995*t*
Bipedalism, 11, 286*f*–287*f,* 286*i*–287*i*
Bipolar cells, of retina, 620–621, 620*f,* 624, 625*f*
Birth. *See* Childbirth
Birth-control pill, 1080*f,* 1081*i,* 1081*t*
Birthmarks, 198
Bisphosphoglycerate (BPG), 866
Bitter taste, 594
Black lung disease, 854
Bladder. *See* Urinary bladder
Blagden, Charles, 18*i*
Blastocyst, 1070–1071, 1092*f,* 1093, 1093*f,* 1099*t*
Blastomeres, 1*f,* 1091, 1092*f*
Bleeding. *See also* Coagulation; Hemostasis
  in childbirth, 1075
  in premature infants, 1104
Blindness
  in AIDS, 831
  in diabetes, 668, 670
  eye diseases, caused by, 614*i,* 615
  in infants, 869, 1104
  nerve and brain damage, caused by, 549*t,* 627, 766
Blind spot, 615, 615*f*
Blöbel, Gunter, 137
Blocker's arm, 386*i*
Blood, 174*f,* 175, 680–709
  aging, effects on, 1110–1111
  alcohol level, 1012*i*
  banking, 694*i*–695*i*
  calcium and phosphate in, 230–233, 232*f*
  cells. *See individual types*
  childbirth, loss in, 1075
  clotting. *See* Coagulation
  distribution of, 760*f*
  functions of, 680, 680*t*
  gases, 684, 861, 861*f*–862*f,* 863
  glucose concentration, 988, 1004*t*
  menstrual loss of, 1067
  osmolarity of, 681–682, 682*t*
  pH of, 682*t,* 867, 926
  placental, 1095, 1096*f,* 1097
  plasma, composition of, 175, 680, 683–684, 684*t,* 916
  physical properties of, 65, 66*t,* 680–682, 682*t*
  transfusions, 694, 696–698
    and HIV, 831
  types, 694–698
    genetics of, 148, 151, 696*t*
    glycoproteins and, 103, 695*f*
  viscosity of, 680–681, 682*t*
  volume of, 682*t,* 692, 807, 921, 1072
Blood-brain barrier, 450, 451*i,* 524, 629*i*
Blood clots, 679*f,* 703*f,* 704–706, 707–708, 709*i. See also* Coagulation
  dissolution of, 706, 707*f,* 709*i*
  retraction of, 706
Blood-CSF barrier, 524, 868
Blood flow
  principles of, 753–760, 757*t*
  routing by vasomotion, 759*f,* 760
  through heart chambers, 724, 724*f*
Blood pressure, 682, 733, 754. *See also* Hypertension
  aging, effects of, 755, 755*t*
  arterial, 754, 755*f*
  baroreflexes and, 564, 565*f,* 758

  - capillary exchange and, 761*f*, 762
  - chemoreflexes and, 758–759
  - distance from heart and, 754*f*
  - glomerular, 887, 889*f*
  - homeostasis of, 738–739, 758, 758*f*
  - hormonal control of, 759–760
  - measurement of, 754
  - negative feedback control of, 757–760, 758*f*
  - polycythemia and, 692
  - pulmonary, 766–767, 849
  - venous, 754, 755*f*
- Blood sugar. *See* Glucose
- Blood-testis barrier, 829, 1023, 1034, 1034*f*, 1035*f*
- Blood-thymus barrier, 806
- Blood urea nitrogen (BUN), 881
- Blood vessels. *See also* Arteries; Capillaries; Veins
  - autonomic innervation of, 568*f*, 569, 570, 577
  - blood flow and, 753–757, 755*f*–756*f*, 757*t*
  - in hemostasis, 703, 703*f*
  - in inflammation, 812, 814*f*
  - layers of wall, 749–750, 749*f*
  - lymphatic vessels, relationship to, 800, 801*f*
  - senescence of, 1011
- Body cavities, 36, 36*f*, 37*t*
- Body fat, 1060, 1110
- Body mass index, 987*i*
- Body temperature, 83, 1009, 1066*i*. *See also* Thermoregulation
- Body weight, 986–987, 987*f*. *See also* Obesity
- Bohr, Niels, 56
- Bohr effect, 866
- Bone marrow, 218*t*, 219, 220*f*, 223, 225*f*, 227*f*
  - B cell maturation in, 817
  - hemopoiesis and, 685, 688
  - in vertebrae, 51*f*
- Bones, specific
  - atlas (C1), 265, 266*f*
  - axis (C2), 265, 266*f*
  - calcaneus, 245*f*, 246*t*, 281, 283*f*–284*f*, 286*i*
    - ankle ligaments and, 317*f*
    - in surface anatomy, 401*f*, 403*f*–405*f*
  - capitate, 275, 276*f*, 365*f*
  - carpal, 245*f*, 246*t*, 275–277
  - clavicle, 225, 245*f*, 246*t*, 269*f*, 271, 273, 273*f*
    - in shoulder joint, 342*f*, 352
    - in surface anatomy, 393*f*–394*f*
  - coccyx, 246*t*, 268, 279*f*, 280*t*
  - conchae, nasal, 256–257, 256*f*–257*f*, 259
  - cranial, 226, 226*f*, 246*t*, 248–257
  - cuboid, 282, 283*f*–284*f*
  - cuneiforms, 282, 283*f*–284*f*
  - ethmoid, 246*t*, 249*f*–251*f*, 256–257, 256*f*, 257*i*, 258*f*
  - facial, 246*t*, 257–259
  - femur, 225*f*, 245*f*, 246*t*, 281, 282*f*
    - adaptation to bipedalism, 286*f*, 286*i*
    - in coxal joint, 312–313, 314*f*
    - in knee joint, 315*f*–316*f*, 316
    - muscles acting on, 369, 372*t*–373*t*, 373, 373*f*–374*f*, 383*f*
    - in surface anatomy, 401*f*–402*f*
  - fibula, 245*f*, 246*t*, 281, 283*f*–284*f*
    - joints involving, 296, 317*f*, 318*f*
    - muscles acting on, 374, 375*t*, 383*f*
    - in surface anatomy, 401*f*
  - frontal, 245*f*, 246*t*, 248*f*–251*f*, 251, 302*t*
    - of neonate, 260, 260*f*
  - hamate, 275, 276*f*, 365*f*
  - humerus, 245*f*, 246*t*, 274, 274*f*
    - in elbow joint, 312, 313*f*
    - muscles acting on, 356–357, 358*t*, 359*f*–361*f*, 361*t*, 367*f*
    - in shoulder joint, 311, 312*f*
  - hyoid, 246*t*, 259–260, 260*f*
    - muscles acting on, 338–340, 339*t*–340*t*, 341*f*–342*f*
  - ilium, 277, 279*f*, 286*f*, 286*i*–287*i*, 302*t*
    - in surface anatomy, 394*f*–396*f*
  - incus, 246*t*, 259, 598, 599*f*
  - inferior nasal concha, 246*t*, 259
  - ischium, 277, 279*f*, 280, 302*t*
  - lacrimal, 246*t*, 248*f*–249*f*, 257*f*, 258*f*, 259
  - lunate, 275, 276*f*
  - malleus, 246*t*, 259, 598, 599*f*
  - mandible, 245*f*, 246*t*, 248*f*–249*f*, 259, 259*f*
    - biomechanics of, 309, 309*f*
    - muscles acting on, 338, 339*t*, 340, 341*f*
    - of neonate, 260, 260*f*
  - maxilla, 245*f*, 246*t*, 248*f*–251*f*, 257–258, 257*f*–258*f*
  - metacarpals, 245*f*, 246*t*, 275, 276*f*
    - muscles acting on, 363*t*–364*t*, 365*f*, 367*f*–368*f*, 369*t*, 370*f*, 371*t*
  - metatarsals, 245*f*, 246*t*, 282, 283*f*–284*f*
    - muscles acting on, 374–375, 378*t*–379*t*, 380*f*–383*f*
    - in surface anatomy, 402*f*, 404*f*, 405*f*
  - nasal, 246*t*, 248*f*–249*f*, 257*f*, 259
  - navicular
    - of foot, 281, 283*f*–284*f*
    - of wrist. *See* scaphoid
  - occipital, 245*f*, 246*t*, 249*f*–251*f*, 255
    - of neonate, 260*f*
  - os coxae, 245*f*, 246*t*, 277, 279*f*–280*f*, 302*t*
  - palatine, 246*t*, 249*f*–250*f*, 257*f*, 258
  - parietal, 245*f*, 246*t*, 248*f*–251*f*, 251
    - of neonate, 260*f*
  - patella, 245*f*, 246*t*, 281, 282*f*
    - knee joint and, 314, 315*f*–316*f*
    - relationship to quadriceps tendon, 376*f*–377*f*
    - in surface anatomy, 400*f*, 402*f*
  - phalanges
    - of foot 245*f*, 246*t*, 281, 283*f*
      - muscles acting on, 374–375, 377, 378*t*–379*t*, 380*f*–383*f*, 384*t*, 385*f*
    - of hand, 245*f*, 246*t*, 275, 276*f*
      - muscles acting on, 363*t*–364*t*, 365*f*, 367*f*–368*f*, 369*t*, 370*f*, 371*t*
  - pisiform, 275, 276*f*, 370*f*
  - pubis, 277, 279*f*, 280, 302*t*, 355*f*
  - radius, 30, 30*f*, 245*f*, 246*t*, 274, 275*f*
    - joints involving, 296, 313*f*, 367*f*
    - muscles acting on, 357, 361, 361*t*–362*t*
    - in surface anatomy, 398*f*–399*f*
  - ribs, 49*f*, 245*f*, 246*t*, 268, 269–270, 269*f*–270*f*, 271*t*
    - articulations of, 266–267, 270*f*, 271*t*
    - muscles acting on, 346, 346*t*
  - sacrum, 246*t*, 267–268, 279*f*, 280*t*
  - scaphoid, 275, 276*f*, 365*f*
  - scapula, 245*f*, 246*t*, 271, 273, 273*f*
    - muscles acting on, 352, 356, 356*f*, 357*t*
    - in surface anatomy, 395*f*
  - sphenoid, 246*t*, 255–256, 256*f*
  - stapes, 246*t*, 259, 598, 599*f*–600*f*, 602, 606*i*
  - sternum, 245*f*, 246*t*, 269, 269*f*
    - location of, 49*f*, 245*f*, 269*f*
    - in surface anatomy, 393*f*–394*f*
  - talus, 281, 283*f*–284*f*, 318*f*
  - temporal, 245*f*, 246*t*, 248*f*–250*f*, 251, 254–255, 254*f*
  - tibia, 245*f*, 246*t*, 281, 283*f*–284*f*
    - ankle joint and, 317, 317*f*–318*f*
    - knee joint and, 315*f*–316*f*, 316
    - muscles acting on, 373–374, 375*t*, 383*f*
  - trapezium, 275, 276*f*
  - trapezoid, 275, 276*f*
  - triquetrum, 275, 276*f*
  - turbinate. *See* Conchae, nasal
  - ulna, 30, 30*f*, 245*f*, 246*t*, 274, 275*f*
    - muscles acting on, 357, 361, 361*t*–362*t*
  - vertebrae, 245*f*, 246*t*, 262–268, 262*f*–268*f*
    - muscles acting on, 347, 349, 350*f*–352*f*, 353*t*
  - vomer, 246*t*, 249*f*–251*f*, 259
  - zygomatic, 245*f*, 246*t*, 248*f*–251*f*, 258, 258*f*
- Bones in general
  - disorders of, 234–239, 238*t*
  - fractures, 234–237, 236*f*–237*f*, 237*t*
  - gross anatomy of, 219–220, 220*f*
  - growth and remodeling of, 220, 228–229
  - number of, 244, 246*t*
  - senescence of, 1109
  - sesamoid, 244
  - shapes of, 218–219, 219*f*
  - surface features of, 244, 247*f*
  - sutural, 244
- Bone spurs, 238*t*
- Bone tissue, 217–242
  - cells of, 221, 222*f*
  - compact, 172, 174*f*, 219, 220*f*, 224*f*
  - contamination of, 222*i*
  - deposition of, 230, 234*f*, 239*i*
  - ectopic deposition of, 230, 382, 383
  - histology of, 172, 174*f*, 221–223, 224*f*
  - hormones affecting, 234, 235*t*
  - matrix of, 221–222
  - osteoporosis and, 239*f*, 239*i*
  - pH balance and, 230*i*
  - resorption of, 234*f*
  - spongy, 172, 217*f*, 219, 220*f*, 223, 224*f*–225*f*, 228
- Bony joints, 297
- Bowman capsule. *See* Glomerular capsule
- Boyle's law, 851, 853, 853*t*
- B progenitor cells, 686*f*, 688
- Brachial region, 33*f*, 36, 398*f*. *See also* Arm
- Bradycardia, 509, 738
- Bradykinin, 590, 757, 762, 812, 813*t*
- Brain, 516–548. *See also* Central nervous system; *specific regions*
  - anatomical overview of, 516, 517*f*, 546*t*
  - arterial supply to, 524, 766, 771*f*–772*f*, 771*t*–772*t*
  - atrophy in old age, 1110
  - cranial fossae, relationship to, 248, 253*f*
  - cranial nerves, relationship to, 547, 548*f*
  - disorders of, 521*i*, 523–524, 538, 538*i*, 556*t*
  - embryonic, 517, 519, 519*f*–520*f*
  - evolution of, 11, 11*t*
  - historic views of, 516
  - imaging techniques for, 22*i*–24*i*, 24*f*, 557*f*, 557*i*
  - neurotransmitters of, 466*t*
  - radiological images of, 24*f*, 515*f*, 557*f*
  - senescence of, 1110
  - size of, 516
  - tumors of, 451*i*, 515*f*
  - venous drainage of, 783*f*, 783*t*–784*t*
  - ventricles and CSF of, 521, 523–524, 523*f*–524*f*
- Brain barrier system, 524
- Brain cells, replacement of, 143*i*
- Brain death, 1114
- Brainstem, 48*f*, 516
  - anatomy and functions of, 524–531, 525*f*
  - autonomic nervous system, role in, 578
  - hunger, role in, 531, 986, 987*f*
  - pain, role in, 529, 590–591, 590*f*
  - respiratory centers of, 526, 858–859, 858*f*
  - reticular formation of, 528–529, 529*f*
  - spinal tracts, relationship to, 486–489, 486*t*, 488*f*–489*f*
  - thirst, role in, 531, 917–918
  - vasomotion, control of, 526, 757–759
- Brain-testicular axis, 1030, 1031*f*
- Brain trauma, 538*i*–539*i*
- Brain waves, 536–537, 536*f*–537*f*
- Braxton Hicks contractions, 1074
- BRCA (breast cancer) genes, 1058
- Breaking point, respiratory, 859
- Breast, 49*f*, 207, 394*f*
  - anatomy of, 1057–1058, 1057*f*
  - development of, in puberty, 1059
  - intercourse, changes during, 1068
  - lymphatics of, 803*f*
- Breast cancer. *See under* Cancer
- Breast-feeding, 1076
- Breast milk
  - antibodies in, 816, 822, 825*t*
  - benefits of, 1078
  - composition of, 1077–1078, 1078*t*
  - HIV in, 831
- Breast self-examination (BSE), 1058
- Breathing. *See also* Pulmonary ventilation
  - acid-base balance and, 867–868, 928

Breathing. *See also* Pulmonary ventilation—*Cont.*
  aging and, 1111
  circulation, effect on, 764
  measurement of, 855–856, 856t, 857f
  muscles of, 345–346, 345f
  neonatal, 1103
  neural control of, 472, 493, 526, 553t, 857–859, 858f, 859i
  onset at birth, 1103
  patterns of, 856, 857t
  in pregnancy, 1072
  in premature infants, 1103–1104
  scuba diving and, 872i
  water loss by, 916, 918f, 920i
Brittle bone disease, 222, 238t
Broca's area, 544
Bromhidrosis, 207
Bronchi, 46f, 847–848, 848f, 850f
Bronchial tree, 841f, 847–848, 848f, 851f
Bronchioles, 848, 851f–852f, 854
  asthma and, 829, 869
  autonomic innervation of, 575
  muscle of, 434
Bronchitis, 869, 1111
Bronchoconstriction, 828, 854, 859
Bronchodilation, 666t, 855
Bronchopulmonary segments, 848, 851f
Bronchospasm, 829i
Bronzing, 198
Brown fat, 166, 169, 1011, 1103
Bruising, 1108. *See also* Hematoma
Brush border, 103, 964
  enzymes, 965, 969, 970
  in kidney tubules, 883
  in small intestine, 964, 965
Buccal cavity, 246, 251f, 341f
Buccal region, 393f
Buffers, 67, 927
Bulbourethral glands, 905, 1020f, 1025, 1029, 1036, 1038f, 1040
Bundle branch block, 728
Bungarotoxin, 437i
Burns, 209–211, 210f
  hypoproteinemia and, 211, 682i
Bursae, 299, 300f
  of elbow, 312, 313f
  of knee, 315f
  of shoulder, 311, 312f
  of wrist, 365f
Bursitis, 319t
B vitamins, 995, 995t, 976. *See also* Vitamin B$_1$ *through* Vitamin B$_{12}$
Byers, Eben, 222i

C

Cachexia, 152i
Cadaver, 2, 2f, 167f
  abdominal viscera of, 50f
  head, internal anatomy of, 48f, 844f
  joints of, 312f, 314f, 316f, 318f
  muscles of, 334f, 344f, 349f, 352f, 360f, 370f, 377f–378f
  nervous system of, 495f, 499f, 567f
  pelvic viscera of, 51f
  respiratory system of, 844f, 850f
  thoracic viscera of, 49f, 850f
Cadmium poisoning, 202i
Caffeine, 580i
  blood-brain barrier and, 524
  cardiac effect of, 739
  diuretic effect of, 902
Caisson disease, 872i
Calbindin, 973
Calcaneal region, 33f
Calcidiol, 231, 652, 653t
Calcification, 227, 227f
Calcitonin, 232, 232f, 234f, 235t, 648, 653t, 926
Calcitriol. *See* Vitamin D
Calcium, 57t
  bone metabolism and, 230–234, 234f
  calcitriol and, 231–232, 233f
  in coagulation, 704, 705f
  in colostrum and breast milk, 1078t
  deficiency in old age, 1109, 1112
  excretion of, 234f
  fertilization and, 1091
  functions of, 230, 925
  heart, effect on, 433, 728–729, 730f, 740
  homeostasis, 230–233, 232f, 234f, 648, 652, 667, 925–926
  in hormone action, 660, 661f
  imbalances in, 231, 926
  intake of, 239i, 1109
  intestinal absorption of, 973, 1112
  in neuronal function, 465, 474
  osteoporosis and, 239i
  phosphate balance and, 230–232, 233f–234f
  in pregnancy and lactation, 1071, 1072, 1078
  RDA and dietary sources of, 994, 994t
  reabsorption by kidney, 894, 896
  in rigor mortis, 422i
  as second messenger, 575
  in skeletal muscle physiology, 409, 417, 418f–419f, 421f, 422, 423, 424, 430, 432t
  in smooth muscle contraction, 433, 434–435
Calcium-ATPase, 973
Calcium carbonate, 221, 232f
Calcium channel blockers, 101i, 793i
Calcium channels, 417, 435, 465, 470, 660
  in cardiac muscle, 728–729, 730f, 740
  in smooth muscle, 101i, 433, 435
Calcium chloride, treating heart attacks with, 740
Calcium phosphate, 221, 225, 230, 230i
Calculus, 230
  biliary (gallstone), 962i
  dental, 946i
  renal (kidney stone), 904i
Calices of kidney, 882, 883f
Callus
  epidermal, 196
  osseous, 235, 236f
Calmodulin, 432t, 435, 660
Calories, 64, 988
  in ATP, 1003
  in carbohydrates, 988
  in lipids, 75, 988, 990
  and loss of body heat, 1010
  in pregnancy, 1072
  in proteins, 988
Calorigenic effect, 647, 659
Calsequestrin, 422
Calvaria, 248, 251f
Canal
  auditory, 598, 599f
  in bone anatomy, 247f, 247t
  hypoglossal, 249f
  vertebral, 264, 264f
Canaliculi
  bile, 960f, 961
  of bone, 172, 221, 222f, 224f
Cancer, 151i
  aging and, 1111
  AIDS and, 830, 831f
  anal, 1043i
  basal cell carcinoma, 209, 209f
  bone, 222, 234, 238t
  brain, 152i, 451i, 515f
  breast, 87i, 151i, 152i
    female, 833i, 987i, 1058, 1059f
    male, 1042t
  cartilage, 238t
  causes of, 142, 151i, 210i, 222i, 869, 990, 1043i, 1058
  cells, 101
    destruction of, 799f, 810, 819, 820, 821f
    immortality of, 1113
  cervical, 1043i, 1053, 1053i, 1054f
  colon, 152i, 978t, 987i, 990
  defense against, 103t, 809, 810
  effects of, 152i, 707i, 870
  esophageal, 152i, 978t, 1012i
  estrogen-sensitive, 1058
  free radicals and, 60, 151i
  genetics of, 148, 151i
  of hemopoietic tissues, 692
  interferons and, 810
  Kaposi sarcoma, 831
  leukemia, 151i
  liver, 152i, 707i, 978t, 987i, 1003, 1043i
  lung, 152i, 869–871, 870f
  lymphatic, 832t
  malignant melanoma, 209, 209f
  metastasis of, 806
  ovarian, 151i
  pancreatic, 978t
  penile, 1042t, 1043i
  prostate, 987i, 1029i
  rectal, 987i
  retinoblastoma, 151i
  risk factors and susceptibility to, 664, 987i, 1042t
  skin, 198, 208–209, 209f, 210
  squamous cell carcinoma
    of lung, 870
    of skin, 209, 209f
  stomach, 978t
  stress and, 833i
  testicular, 1037i, 1042t
  uterine, 987i
  vaginal, 1043i
Candida infection, 830
Cannon, Walter, 17, 564, 565
Capacitation of sperm, 1090
Capillaries
  blood, 106, 716, 750–751
    alveolar, 767, 768f, 849
    beds, 751, 751f
    blood flow in, 754, 757t
    blood pressure in, 755f, 761f, 762
    discovery of, 4, 5
    fluid exchange by, 761–762, 761f
    glomerular, 882, 885, 885f, 887, 888f
    intestinal, 965, 966f
    peritubular, 884f, 885, 886f
    permeability in inflammation, 812
    pulmonary, 849, 852f
    structure and types of, 749f, 750–752, 750f, 752f
  lymphatic, 801–802, 801f–802f, 965, 966f
Carbaminohemoglobin, 865f
Carbohydrate craving, 646i, 990i
Carbohydrate loading, 429
Carbohydrates, 72–75, 74f
  in absorptive and postabsorptive states, 1007–1008
  body content of, 988
  in dietary fiber, 990
  dietary deficiency and ketogenesis, 1005
  dietary requirement and sources of, 989–990, 989t
  digestion and absorption of, 968–970, 969f
  energy yield from, 988, 1003
  functions of, 73–75, 75t, 988, 989t
  metabolism of, 996–1004, 997f, 999f–1003f
  on plasma membrane. *See* Glycocalyx
  structure of, 72–74, 74f
  synthesis of, 118
Carbon, 57f, 57t, 58, 72, 97t
Carbonate, in bone, 221
Carbon dioxide
  in air, 860–861, 860t
  in blood, 861, 864, 865f
  effect on oxygen unloading, 865f, 866
  heart rate affected by, 739
  loading, 861f, 864, 866–867
  pH and, 739, 867–868
  respiratory effect of, 863f, 868
  transport of, 864
  unloading of, 860–861, 861f
  vasomotor effect of, 757, 766
Carbonic acid
  in CO$_2$ transport, 864, 865f, 867
  pH and, 867–868, 927, 928–929, 929f
  production of, 70, 864
Carbonic anhydrase (CAH), 83, 689, 864, 865f, 928, 929f
Carbon monoxide poisoning, 861, 863, 864i
Carbon tetrachloride poisoning, 199i, 907i
Carboxyhemoglobin, 864i, 865f
Carboxyl group, 72, 72f, 79
Carboxypeptidase, 962, 963t, 970, 971f
Carcinogens, 151i
Carcinoma, 151t. *See also* Cancer
Cardiac arrest, 732i, 739
Cardiac arrhythmia, 732i–733i, 732f
  in old age, 1111
Cardiac center, 18, 526, 529, 738
Cardiac conduction system, 727, 727f, 728–729
Cardiac cycle, 733–735, 735f
Cardiac (fibrous) skeleton, 720, 1111
Cardiac glands, 952
Cardiac muscle, 118
  anaerobic fermentation in, 998
  autonomic effects on, 574, 576t, 738–739

  contraction of, 729
  electrophysiology of, 728–733, 729*f*–732*f*. *See also* Electrocardiogram
  metabolism of, 727
  properties of, 432–433, 432*t*
  structure of, 176, 177*f*, 177*t*, 726–727, 726*f*
Cardiac output, 735, 737–741, 737*f*
  in old age, 1111
  in pregnancy, 1072
Cardiac reserve, 737, 1111
Cardiac suction, 764
Cardiac tamponade, 741*t*
Cardinal signs of inflammation, 810–811
Cardiocytes, 432, 726, 726*f*
Cardiology, 716
Cardiomyopathy, 741*t*
Cardiovascular disease, 78*i*, 148
Cardiovascular system, 715–798. *See also* Arteries; Capillaries; Heart; Veins
Caries, dental, 946*i*, 1112
Carotene, 196, 995
Carotenoids, 60
Carotid bodies, 758, 758*f*, 867, 867*f*
Carotid sinus, 758, 758*f*
Carpal region, 33*f*, 36, 273, 365*f*
  bones of, 275, 276*f*
  Colles fracture of, 236*f*, 237*t*, 239*i*
  surface anatomy of, 398*f*–399*f*
  tendon sheaths and bursae of, 300*f*
Carpal tunnel, 365, 365*f*
Carpal tunnel syndrome, 365*i*–366*i*
Carpopedal spasm, 231, 231*f*
Carrier-mediated transport, 106, 109–111
Carrier proteins in plasma membrane, 101, 109
Carriers
  disease, 1041*i*
  genetic, 148, 150*t*
Cartilage in general, 75, 172, 173*f*, 218, 227
  articular, 220, 220*f*, 226*f*, 228, 299, 299*f*, 299*i*, 320*i*
  degeneration of, 299
  elastic, 172, 173*f*
  exercise and, 299*i*
  in endochondral ossification, 226–228, 227*f*–228*f*
  in epiphyseal plate, 226*f*, 228, 228*f*, 229
  fibrocartilage, 172, 173*f*, 264, 277, 297, 310
    in fracture repair, 235, 236*f*
  growth of, 229, 229*i*
  hyaline, 172, 173*f*
Cartilages, specific
  alar, 842, 843*f*
  arytenoid, 845*f*, 846, 847*f*
  corniculate, 845*f*, 846, 847*f*
  costal, 269, 269*f*, 271*t*
  cricoid, 845*f*, 846, 847*f*–848*f*
  cuneiform, 845*f*, 846
  epiglottic, 845*f*, 846
  septal, 843*f*
  thyroid, 394*f*, 845*f*, 846, 847*f*–848*f*
  tracheal, 845*f*, 846
Cartilaginous joints, 295, 295*f*, 297, 298*f*, 302*t*
Casein, 140*t*, 1078*t*
Catabolism, 16, 70, 71*t*
Catagen phase, 203
Catalase, 120
Catalysts, 70, 80
Cataracts, 614*i*, 1110
Catecholamines. *See also* Dopamine; Epinephrine; Histamine; Norepinephrine; Serotonin
  excretion of, 895
  as hormones, 648, 654
  and metabolic rate, 1009
  as neurotransmitters, 464, 465*f*, 466*t*
  as paracrines, 664
Catechol-O-methyltransferase, 574
Categorical hemisphere, 544
Cations, 59
Caudal direction, 516
C (calcitonin) cells, 232, 648
CD4 cells, 819, 826*t*, 829
CD8 cells, 819, 826*t*
Cecum, 45*f*, 50*f*, 941*f*, 974, 975*f*
Cell-adhesion molecules, 82, 101, 101*f*, 103, 103*t*, 812
Cell cycle, 142, 142*f*
Cell-identity markers, 101, 101*f*
Cells, 13, 93–124
  cytoskeleton of, 120–121, 121*f*–123*f*, 124*t*
  death of, 183, 185
  discovery and history of, 5–6, 94
  general structure of, 96–97, 98*f*
  inclusions in, 121, 124*t*
  junctions between, 178–179
  organelles of, 116–120, 116*f*–120*f*, 123*t*–124*t*
  plasma membrane of, 98–103, 99*f*–102*f*
  shapes and sizes of, 94–95, 94*f*–95*f*
  size of, 95, 95*f*, 97*t*
  surfaces of, 98*f*, 160
Cell theory, 6, 21, 94
Cellular immunity, 816, 818–821
  compared to humoral, 827*t*
Cellulose, 73, 75*t*, 968, 989, 990
Cell volume, 111
Cementum, 946
Central canal
  of bone, 172, 174*f*, 223, 224*f*, 228
  of spinal cord, 484*f*, 485, 517, 521, 523
Central gray matter, 527
Central nervous system (CNS), 444, 444*f*. *See also* Brain; Spinal cord
Central pattern generators, 482, 529
Central sulcus, 517*f*–518*f*, 531, 532
Central venous pressure, 764
Centrioles, 97*t*, 98*f*, 120, 121*f*, 124*t*, 142, 144*f*, 446
Centromere, 143, 145*f*, 1033*f*
Centrosome, 98*f*, 120, 124*t*
Cephalic region. *See* Head
Cerebellum
  anatomy of, 526, 527*f*
  equilibrium and, 540, 608
  memory and, 539
  location of, 48*f*, 516, 517*f*–518*f*
  motor functions of, 543, 543*f*, 544
  in somatic reflexes, 504, 508
  spinal tracts, relationship to, 487
  synapses in, 463
Cerebral aqueduct, 521, 522*f*–523*f*
Cerebral cortex, 516, 533–534, 534*f*. *See also* Cerebrum
  relationship to cerebellum, 543*f*
  in somatic reflexes, 508
  synapses in, 468
Cerebral hemispheres, 516, 517*f*
Cerebral lateralization, 544–545, 545*f*
Cerebral palsy, 556*t*
Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), 521, 523–524
  hydrocephalus and, 262*i*, 523–524
  pH of, and respiration, 867–868
  source and circulation of, 451, 521, 523, 523*f*
  skull injuries and, 257*i*
  spina bifida and, 484*i*
  of spinal cord, 483, 485
  spinal tap for, 521*i*
Cerebrovascular accident. *See* Stroke
Cerebrum, 48*f*, 531–536
  functions of, 531–532, 534, 536–545
  gross anatomy of, 516, 517*f*–518*f*, 522*f*, 531–532, 532*f*–533*f*, 535*f*
Ceruloplasmin, 684*t*, 688
Cerumen, 207, 598
Ceruminous glands, 207, 207*t*
Cervical curvature, 263, 263*f*, 265–266, 266*f*, 287*i*
Cervical mucus, 1066*i*, 1090
Cervical region
  of body, 32, 393*f*
  of spinal cord, 482, 483*f*
Cervix, uterine, 51*f*, 1051*f*–1052*f*, 1053, 1053*i*, 1055
  in childbirth, 18, 19*f*, 1074–1075, 1075*f*
  during intercourse, 1068, 1069*f*
Chancre, 1042*i*
Channel proteins, 100, 101*f*. *See also* Calcium channels; Chloride channels; Potassium channels and gates; Sodium channels
Chaperones, 137–138
Charles' law, 853, 853*t*
Charley horse, 386*i*
Charnley, Sir John, 320*i*
Cheeks, 943–944. *See also* Muscles, specific: buccinator
Chemical bonds, 61–63, 61*t*, 62*f*–63*f*
Chemical equations, 69
Chemical formulae, 61, 61*f*
Chemical messengers, types of, 636
Chemical reactions, 69–71, 69*f*, 71*t*
Chemical senses, 592–596
Chemical synapses, 463, 464*f*
Chemiosmotic mechanism, 1001
Chemoreceptors, 587
  cardiac function and, 738–739
  respiration and, 859, 867–868, 1072
  for taste and smell, 592–596, 593*f*, 595*f*
Chemoreflexes, 739, 758
Chemotaxis, 813, 814*f*
Chemotherapy, 451*i*
Chewing
  muscles of, 337, 339*t*, 340, 341*f*
  neural control of, 551*t*
Chicken pox, 493*i*, 701, 815*i*
Chief cells, 952, 953*f*–954*f*, 955*t*, 957, 958*f*
Child abuse, 311, 521
Childbirth
  abdominal muscles aiding in, 346
  coccyx damaged in, 268
  endogenous opioids released during, 591
  epidural anesthesia in, 483
  oxytocin, role in, 18, 19*f*, 644, 646, 1074
  pain in, 286*i*, 591
  positive feedback in, 18, 19*f*, 1074
  process of, 1073–1075, 1075*f*–1076*f*
  Valsalva maneuver in, 855
Chimpanzee, 10, 11*f*, 200*f*
  skeleton of, 286*f*–287*f*
Chlamydia, 1042*i*
Chloasma, 1073
Chloride
  anesthesia and, 629*i*
  cystic fibrosis and, 105*i*
  functions of, 925
  homeostasis, 925
  imbalances, 925
  intestinal absorption of, 973
  ionization and, 59–60, 60*f*
  in neuron function, 467
  RDA and dietary sources of, 994, 994*t*
  reabsorption of, 893–895, 893*f*
  in stomach acid, 954*f*
Chloride-bicarbonate exchanger, 864
Chloride channels, 466, 469
Chloride pumps, 105*i*
Chloride shift, 864, 865*f*, 952, 954*f*
Chlorine, 57*t*
Chloroform, 629*i*
Chlorpromazine, 580*i*
Choanae, 842, 844*f*
Cholecystokinin (CCK)
  absorptive state metabolism, role in, 1007, 1007*t*
  as appetite suppressant, 986
  digestion, role in, 955, 957*f*, 958, 963
  as neuropeptide, 465*f*, 466*t*
Cholelithiasis, 962*i*
Cholera, 920
Cholesterol, 55*f*
  amount in body, 78
  absorption of, 113*i*, 970
  anabolic steroids and, 87*i*
  in atherosclerosis, 741*i*–742*i*
  bile acids and, 962
  blood concentration of, 113*i*, 683*t*, 991–992
  dietary sources and intake of, 990–991
  disposal of, 742*i*
  functions of, 78*t*, 100, 654, 990
  "good" and "bad," 78*i*
  hormone synthesis from, 654, 656*f*
  hypertension and, 792*i*
  intestinal absorption of, 970–971, 972*f*
  in lipoproteins, 78*i*, 991–992, 991*t*, 992*f*
  in myelin, 451
  in plasma membrane, 99*f*, 100
  in sperm capacitation, 1090
  structure and synthesis of, 78, 78*f*, 1004*t*
Choline, 77*f*
Cholinergic neurons, 475*i*, 574, 574*t*, 575*f*, 579*i*
Cholinergic receptors, 414, 415*f*, 416*t*, 422*f*, 437*i*, 465, 574
Cholinergic synapses, 465, 467*f*
Cholinesterase inhibitors, 414*i*, 437*i*, 475*i*
Chondroblasts, 172
Chondrocytes, 172, 173*f*, 226, 227*f*, 228, 234
Chondroitin sulfate, 168*f*, 211
Chondrosarcoma, 238*t*
Chordae tendineae, 718*f*, 721*f*, 722, 729
Chorion, 1093, 1094*f*, 1096*f*, 1098, 1098*f*

- Chorionic villi, 1094*f,* 1095, 1096*f,* 1097, 1098*f*
  - diagnostic sampling of, 1105
- Choroid (of eye), 612, 612*f,* 615
- Choroid plexus, 521, 522*f*–523*f,* 524
- Chromaffin cells, 648
- Chromatids, 143, 144*f*–145*f,* 1033*f*
- Chromatin, 116, 130, 131*f*
- Chromium, 57*t,* 994*t*
- Chromosomes, 146–147, 150*t*
  - autosomes, 1106
  - genes and, 133, 147
  - haploid and diploid number, 146–147
  - homologous, 1033*f,* 1034
  - karyotype of, 146, 146*f,* 1107*f*
  - in meiosis, 1032, 1033*f,* 1034
  - in mitosis, 143, 144*f,* 1032
  - nondisjunction of, 1105, 1105*f*
  - sex chromosomes, 1019, 1019*f,* 1105–1106, 1105*f*
  - structure of, 131*f,* 143, 145*f*
  - telomeres of, 1113
  - in trisomy syndromes, 1105–1106, 1105*f*–1107*f*
- Chronic bronchitis, 869, 1111
- Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), 869, 1111
- Chronotropic agents, 738, 740*t*
- Chyle, 973
- Chylomicrons, 971, 972*f,* 991, 991*t,* 992*f*
- Chyme, 950, 955
- Chymosin, 952, 954, 955*t*
- Chymotrypsin, 962, 963*t,* 970, 971*f*
- Chymotrypsinogen, 962, 963*t*
- Cilia
  - respiratory, 103, 105*f,* 843, 846, 848, 848*f*–849*f*
  - structure of, 97*t,* 103, 104*f,* 120, 123*t*
  - of uterine tube, 1053*f,* 1065, 1066
- Ciliary body, 612, 612*f,* 618
- Ciliary muscle, 618
- Cimetidine, 956*i*
- Cingulate gyrus, 534, 535*f*
- Circadian rhythms, 530*f,* 531, 537, 621
  - in hormone secretion, 644
- Circuits, neural, 472–473, 473*f*
- Circulation
  - of aqueous humor, 613, 614*f,* 614*i*
  - of blood, 753–760, 763–765
  - cerebral, 760*f,* 766
  - of cerebrospinal fluid, 523–524, 523*f*
  - coronary, 724–725, 725*f*
  - historic views of, 748
  - pulmonary, 767, 768*f*
  - renal, 885–886, 886*f*
  - systemic, 770–791. *See also specific arteries and veins*
- Circulatory system, 679–798. *See also* Arteries; Blood; Heart; Veins
  - autonomic effects on, 576*t*
  - fetal and neonatal, 1099, 1100*f,* 1103
  - interaction with other systems, 794
  - overview of, 41*f,* 716–717
  - in pregnancy, 1072
  - senescence of, 1110
- Circumcision, 1029
- Circumduction, 305, 305*f*
- Circumferential lamellae, 223, 224*f*
- Circumventricular organs, 524
- Cirrhosis, 198, 707*i,* 1003, 1012*i*
- Cisterna, 116, 117, 117*f,* 118, 139
- Cisterna chyli, 800*f,* 802, 803*f*
- Citric acid cycle, 998–1000, 999*f,* 1002*f,* 1004, 1005, 1005*f*–1006*f*
- Clathrin, 112, 139, 140*f*
- Cleavage, embryonic, 1091, 1092*f,* 1099*t*
- Cleft lip and palate, 1104
- Climacteric, 1032, 1060
- Climax. *See* Orgasm
- Clinical application essays
  - alcohol and alcoholism, 1011*i*–1012*i*
  - Alzheimer disease, 475*i*
  - amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, 490*i*
  - anabolic-androgenic steroids, 87*i*
  - androgen-insensitivity syndrome, 659*i,* 1021*i*
  - aneurysm, 754*i*
  - angina, 725*i*
  - anti-inflammatory drugs, 666*i*
  - arthritis, 320*i*
  - artificial joints, 320*i*
  - asthma, 828*i*–829*i*
  - atherosclerosis, 741*i*–743*i*
  - athletic injuries, 386*i*
  - back injuries, 349*i*–350*i*
  - Bell palsy, 556*i*
  - biofeedback, 564*i*
  - blood clotting, 707*i*–709*i*
  - brain tumors, 451*i*
  - calcium channel blockers, 101*i*
  - cancer, 151*i*–152*i*
  - carbon monoxide poisoning, 864*i*
  - cardiac arrhythmias, 732*i*–733*i*
  - carpal tunnel syndrome, 365*i*–366*i*
  - cartilage health, 299*i*
  - cataracts, 614*i*
  - cervical cancer, 1053*i*
  - cholesterol, 78*i,* 741*i*–742*i*
  - congestive heart failure, 737*i*
  - contraception, 1079*i*–1081*i*
  - coronary artery disease, 741*i*–743*i*
  - cystic fibrosis, 105*i*
  - deafness, 606*i*
  - decompression sickness, 872*i*
  - dental caries, 946*i*
  - drug action on the nervous system, 579*i*–580*i*
  - drug injections, 366*i*
  - dust mites, 195*i*
  - dwarfism, 229*i,* 657*i*
  - ectopic pregnancy, 1094*i*
  - embolism, 764*i*
  - erectile dysfunction, 1040*i*
  - ethmoid bone fractures, 257*i*
  - familial hypercholesterolemia, 113*i*
  - gallstones, 962*i*
  - gingivitis, 946*i*
  - glaucoma, 614*i*
  - hair analysis, 202*i*
  - hemodialysis, 907*i*–908*i*
  - hernias, 351*i*–352*i*
  - hormone receptor disorders, 657*i*
  - hypertension, 792*i*–793*i*
  - isoenzymes, 82*i*
  - keloids, 185*i*
  - kidney stones, 904*i*
  - knee surgery, 316*i*–317*i*
  - lactose intolerance, 970*i*
  - liver disease, 707*i*
  - Marfan syndrome, 172*i*
  - medical imaging methods, 22*i*–24*i,* 557*i*
  - melatonin and mood disorders, 646*i*
  - meningitis, 521*i*
  - middle-ear infections, 599*i*
  - muscular dystrophy, 437*i*
  - myasthenia gravis, 437*i*
  - myelin diseases, 453*i*
  - myocardial infarction, 725*i*
  - neonatal assessment, 262*i,* 1103*i*
  - nerve growth factor, 455*i*
  - neuroimmunology, 833*i*
  - neuromuscular toxins, 414*i*
  - neuronal replacement, 143*i*
  - obesity, 987*i*–988*i*
  - Ondine's curse, 859*i*
  - osteoporosis, 239*i*
  - ovulation, 1066*i*
  - Parkinson disease, 475*i*
  - pemphigus vulgaris, 179*i,* 828
  - peptic ulcer, 956*i*
  - pH and drug action, 68*i*
  - pH and osseous tissue, 230*i*
  - poliomyelitis, 490*i*
  - pollution and reproduction, 1037*i*
  - premenstrual syndrome, 646*i*
  - prostate diseases, 1029*i*
  - protein and athletic performance, 993*i*
  - renal failure, 907*i*–908*i*
  - reproductive technology, 1115*i*–1116*i*
  - Reye syndrome, 815*i*
  - rigor mortis, 422*i*
  - seasonal affective disorder, 646*i*
  - sexually transmitted diseases, 1041*i*–1043*i*
  - shingles, 493*i*
  - situs inversus, 14*i*
  - skin grafts, 211*i*
  - spina bifida, 484*i*
  - spinal cord trauma, 508*i*–510*i*
  - spinal curvatures, 263*i*
  - spinal nerve injuries, 494*i*
  - starvation, 682*i*
  - stem cells, 143*i,* 186*i*
  - sunscreens, 210*i*
  - TMJ syndrome, 310*i*
  - tooth and gum disease, 946*i*
  - tracheostomy, 846*i*–847*i*
  - transdermal absorption, 199*i*
  - trigeminal neuralgia, 556*i*
  - twins, 1092*i*
  - urinary tract infections, 905*i*
  - valvular diseases, 723*i*
  - varicose veins, 753*i*
  - Viagra, 1040*i*
  - water balance, 920*i,* 933*i*–934*i*
- Clitoris, 1051*f,* 1055, 1056*f,* 1068, 1069*f*
  - embryonic, 1021, 1022*f,* 1050
  - hypertrophy of, 668, 669*f*
- Clonal deletion, 817
- Clonal selection, 819, 820*f*–821*f,* 822
- *Clostridium tetani,* 414*i*
- Clot-dissolving drugs, 709, 716
- Clots. *See* Blood clots
- CNS. *See* Central nervous system
- Coagulation. *See also* Blood clots
  - alcoholism, inhibited by, 1012*i*
  - aspirin, inhibited by, 666*i*
  - clinical control of, 708–709
  - disorders of, 707–708, 1081*i*
  - in inflammation, 813, 813*t*
  - liver disease and, 707*i*
  - pathways of, 704–705, 705*f*
  - prevention of, 706–707, 708*i*–709*i*
  - procoagulants (clotting factors), 703, 704–705, 705*f,* 706*t*
  - of semen, 1037*t*
  - vitamin K, promotion by, 707*i*
  - in wound healing, 184*f,* 185, 235, 236*f*
- Cobalamin. *See* Vitamin B_{12}
- Cobalt, 57*t,* 994*t*
- Cocaine, 580*i*
- Coccyx, 262, 262*f,* 268, 268*f*
  - in surface anatomy, 395*f*
- Cochlea, 599–604, 599*f*–600*f*
- Cockroaches and asthma, 828*i*
- Codes, neural, 470, 586–587
- Codominance, 148, 150*t*
- Codons, 135, 135*t,* 139*f*
- Coelom, 36
- Coenzyme Q, 1000–1001, 1000*f*–1001*f*
- Coenzymes, 83, 84*f,* 995, 996–997
- Cofactors, 83, 84
- Coffee and LDL level, 992. *See also* Caffeine
- Cognition, 526, 538
- Cohesion, 64
- Coitus interruptus, 1079*i*
- Cold, common, 871*t*
- Cold receptors, 588, 589*t*
- Cold sores, 1043*i*
- Cold weather, fluid balance in, 917, 919, 920*i*
- Collagen, 80, 211
  - aging of, 1114
  - in bone, 221, 222, 224*f,* 230, 233
  - in cartilage, 172, 173*f,* 173*t*
  - diseases of, 172
  - in fibrous connective tissue, 167, 167*f,* 169, 170*f*–171*f,* 170*t*–171*t*
  - in heart and blood vessels, 703*f,* 704–705, 720, 749*f,* 750
  - in muscles, 326–327
  - properties of, 409
  - in skin, 171*f,* 171*t,* 194*f,* 195
- Collagenase, 1065
- Collateral ganglia, 570, 570*f,* 571*t*
- Collecting ducts
  - renal
    - anatomy of, 883, 884*f*
    - concentration of urine by, 897–899, 897*f,* 900*f*
    - in fluid homeostasis, 919
    - and sodium balance, 922
  - lymphatic, 802, 803*f*
- Colliculi of midbrain, 525*f,* 527*f,* 528
  - inferior, 605*f,* 606
  - superior, 627, 628*f*
- Collip, J. B., 671*i*–672*i*
- Colloid osmotic pressure (COP), 682, 761*f,* 762
  - in renal capillaries, 889, 889*f,* 895
- Colloids, 65, 65*f,* 66*t*
- Colon, 50*f,* 51*f,* 941*f,* 974, 975*f*
- Colony-stimulating factors
  - in hemopoiesis, 685, 688
  - in inflammation, 813, 813*t*
- Color blindness, 625–626, 626*f*
- Color vision, 625–626, 626*f*
- Colostrum, 1077, 1078, 1078*t,* 1103
  - immunity conferred by, 816, 822
- Columns of spinal cord, 484*f,* 485
- Coma, 529, 537
- Commissural tracts, 532

- Commissures
  - cerebral, 527*f*, 532, 533*f*
  - of eye, 393*f*, 610*f*
- Communicable period of STDs, 1041*i*
- Communicating rami, 496*f*, 567, 567*f*, 569*f*
- Compartments
  - of forearm, 363*t*–364*t*, 366, 367*f*
  - of leg, 374–375, 378*t*–379*t*, 383*f*
  - of thigh, 373, 375*t*, 383*f*
- Compartment syndrome, 386*i*
- Complementary base pairing, 132, 132*f*
- Complement fixation, 810
- Complement system, 810, 811*f*, 812, 813*t*, 823, 825*t*, 827*t*
- Complexity, hierarchy of, 12–13, 22
- Compliance, pulmonary, 854
- Composites, 222
- Compounds, 61
- Computed tomography (CT), 22*i*, 24*f*
  - measures of, 66–67, 108
  - in osmosis and osmolarity, 107–109, 108*f*
  - reaction rates, effect on, 70
- Concentration gradients
  - active transport and, 110–111
  - diffusion and, 106–107, 106*f*, 110, 110*f*
  - gas exchange and, 861, 862*f*
- Concentric contraction, 426–427
- Concentric lamellae, 223, 224*f*
- Conceptus, 1070, 1094*f*. *See also* Embryo; Fetus
- Conchae, nasal, 248*f*, 251*f*, 256
- Concussion, 521, 556*t*
- Condensation reactions, 72
- Condoms, 831, 1079*i*, 1080*f*, 1081*t*
- Conduction
  - cardiac, 727, 728–729
  - heat loss by, 1010
  - nerve, 453, 460–461, 461*f*–462*f*
- Conductivity
  - of muscle, 408
  - of neurons, 445
- Condyles, 247*f*, 247*t*
  - femoral, 281, 282*f*
  - mandibular, 249*f*, 259, 259*f*
  - occipital, 250*f*, 255
- Condyloma, 1043*i*
- Cones, 619–621, 620*f*–621*f*, 624–625, 625*f*
- Conformation, 80
- Congenital anomalies, 1104–1107, 1104*f*–1107*f*
- Congenital hypothyroidism, 667, 670*t*
- Congenital infections, 1104
- Congestive heart failure (CHF), 737*i*, 763, 902
- Conjugated macromolecules, 75
- Conjunctiva, 610, 610*f*, 611*f*
- Connectin, 410
- Connective tissue, 159*t*
  - of blood vessels, 703–704, 703*f*, 749*f*, 750–751
  - components of, 167–168
  - diseases of, 172*i*
  - embryonic, 158
  - functions of, 166
  - of muscles, 326–327, 327*f*, 408–409
  - of nerves, 491–492, 491*f*
  - of skin. *See* Dermis
  - types of, 166–175, 170*f*–171*f*, 170*t*–171*t*, 173*f*–174*f*, 173*t*–174*t*
- Connexon, 178*f*, 179
- Consciousness, brainstem centers for, 529
- Consensual light reflex, 616
- Constipation, 973, 1072
- Constrictors
  - pharyngeal, 339*t*, 340, 341*f*–342*f*, 948
  - pupillary, 615–616
- Contact dermatitis, 832*t*
- Contact digestion, 965
- Contact inhibition, 145
- Contaminants in bone, 221, 222
- Contraceptives, 1079*i*–1081*i*, 1080*f*
- Contractile proteins of muscle, 410
- Contractility
  - of muscle, 408
  - myocardial, 739–740
  - uterine, 1074
- Contractions
  - concentric and eccentric, 426–427, 426*f*
  - of digestive tract, 948, 949*f*, 955, 965, 967, 967*f*, 976–977
  - of heart, 729–730, 730*f*, 732*i*, 733–736, 735*f*
  - isometric and isotonic, 425–426, 426*f*
  - of myoepithelial cells, 206, 615, 1077
  - in orgasm, 1038*f*, 1041, 1068
  - peristaltic, 904, 948, 949*f*, 955, 967, 967*f*, 1068
  - of skeletal muscle, 417, 420*f*, 422–427, 422*f*–426*f*
  - of smooth muscle, 434–436, 435*f*
  - of urinary tract, 904–906, 906*f*
  - uterine, 1068, 1071, 1074
- Contracture, 436*t*
- Contralateral neglect syndrome, 538
- Contralateral reflex arcs, 507–508
- Control group, 8
- Convection, heat loss by, 1010
- Convergence of eyes, 617–618, 617*f*
- Converging circuit, 472, 473*f*
- Cooperative effects in autonomic nervous system, 577
- Copper, 57*t*, 684*t*, 688, 994*t*
- Copulines, 595*i*
- Cornea, 611*f*, 612, 614*f*
  - refraction by, 616–617, 617*f*
- Coronal plane, 31, 31*f*
- Coronal suture, 251, 251*f*
- Corona radiata
  - of cerebrum, 532
  - of ovarian follicle, 1064, 1066*f*
- Coronary artery bypass surgery, 716, 742*i*, 791*t*
- Coronary artery disease, 87*i*, 741*i*–743*i*
- Coronary circulation, 724–725, 725*f*
- Corpora quadrigemina, 528
- Cor pulmonale, 740, 869
- Corpus albicans, 1051*f*, 1063*f*, 1067
- Corpus callosum
  - commissural tracts in, 532, 533*f*, 535*f*
  - position of, 516, 517*f*
  - in sectional views of brain, 518*f*, 522*f*
  - sexual dimorphism of, 545
- Corpus cavernosum
  - clitoral, 1068
  - penile, 51*f*, 1025*f*, 1029, 1030*f*, 1040
- Corpus luteum, 642, 651, 1051*f*, 1062, 1062*f*–1063*f*, 1066–1067, 1070–1071
- Corpus spongiosum, 51*f*, 1025*f*, 1029, 1030*f*, 1040
- Corpus striatum, 534, 535*f*
- Cortex
  - adrenal, 571, 648–649, 649*f*, 653*t*
  - auditory, 605*f*, 606
  - cerebellar, 516
  - cerebral, 516, 533–534, 534*f*
  - gustatory, 532, 540, 541*f*
  - hair, 201*f*, 202, 203*f*
  - of lymph node, 805, 805*f*
  - olfactory, 532, 540, 541*f*, 596, 596*f*
  - of ovary, 1050, 1051*f*
  - prefrontal, 538, 539, 542
  - renal, 882, 883*f*, 884*f*
  - somesthetic, 488*f*, 540, 590, 590*f*
  - visual, 627, 628*f*
- Cortical granules, 1091
- Cortical reaction, 1091, 1091*f*
- Corticospinal tracts, 486*t*, 489, 489*f*, 526, 542
- Corticosteroids, 649, 651, 653*t*, 654, 666*i*
  - for arthritis, 320*i*
  - for asthma, 829*i*
- Corticotropin. *See* Adrenocorticotropic hormone
- Corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH), 641*f*, 642*t*, 643*f*, 832
- Cortisol
  - adrenal secretion of, 649
  - adverse effects of, 662, 668, 833*i*
  - anti-inflammatory effect of, 666*i*
  - for arthritis, 320*i*
  - blood glucose, effect on, 651
  - bone, effects on, 235*t*, 662
  - fetal, 1074
  - functions of, 649, 653*t*
  - hypersecretion of, 666
  - immune system, effect on, 662, 668, 833*i*
  - lactation, role in, 1077
  - in stress response, 664
  - structure and synthesis of, 656*f*
  - transport of, 657
- Cortisone, action of, 665*f*
- Costal cartilages, 44*f*, 269, 269*f*, 271, 297, 302*t*
- Costal margin, 394*f*
- Costimulation, 819, 820*f*
- Cotransport, 110, 115*t*, 922
- Coughing, 526, 855, 859
- Coumarin, 708*i*
- Countercurrent exchange system, renal, 898
- Countercurrent heat exchanger, 1027, 1028*f*
- Countercurrent multiplier, renal, 898, 899*f*
- Countertransport, 110, 115*t*
- Cousteau, Jacques, 872*i*
- Covalent bonds, 61*t*, 62, 62*f*, 69
- Cowper glands. *See* Bulbourethral glands
- Coxal joint, 312–313, 314*f*
- Coxal region, 33*f*
- C-peptide, 655–656, 657*f*
- Cramps, 436*t*
- Cranial cavity, 37*t*, 48*f*, 246, 251*f*
- Cranial nerves
  - brainstem, relationship to, 525*f*, 548*f*
  - disorders of, 556, 556*t*
  - mnemonic devices for, 547
  - tables of, 549*t*–555*t*
- Cranial region, 33*f*
- Craniosacral division, 571
- Cranium, 48*f*
- Creatine kinase, 82*i*, 427, 428*f*
- Creatine phosphate, 427, 428*f*, 429, 1109
- Creatinine, 881
  - reabsorption of, 894
  - secretion of, 895
  - structure of, 881*f*
- Crepitus, 320*i*
- Crest
  - of a bone, 247*f*, 247*t*
  - neural, 519, 519*f*, 648
- Cretinism. *See* Congenital hypothyroidism
- Cribriform plate, 249*f*–250*f*, 256*f*–257*f*, 257, 595*f*, 844*f*
- Crick, Francis, 132*i*, 133*f*, 140
- Crista ampullaris, 607, 608*f*
- Cristae, mitochondrial, 120, 120*f*
- Crista galli, 249*f*–250*f*, 256*f*–257*f*, 257
- Crohn disease, 978*t*
- Cro-Magnon, 11
- Cross-bridges, 409, 420*f*
- Crossed extensor reflex, 507–508, 507*f*
- Crossing-over, 1033*f*, 1034
- Cross-linking, 1114
- Cross sections, 31, 31*f*, 159*f*–160*f*, 160
- Cross-training, 431
- Crowning, in childbirth, 1075, 1076*f*
- Cruciate ligaments of knee, 307, 315*f*, 316, 316*i*–317*i*
- Crural region. *See* Leg
- Crush syndrome, 436*t*
- Crutch paralysis, 494*i*
- Cryptorchidism, 1023, 1037*i*, 1042*t*
- Crypts
  - intestinal, 965, 966*f*
  - tonsillar, 806, 806*f*
- CSF. *See* Cerebrospinal fluid
- CT. *See* Computed tomography
- Cubital region, 33*f*
- Cumulus oophorus, 1064, 1065*f*
- Cuneate fasciculus, 486*t*, 487, 487*f*–488*f*, 495*f*, 525*f*, 526
- Cupula of semicircular duct, 607
- Curare, 415*i*, 574
- Curie, Marie, 58*i*, 58*f*, 222*i*
- Curie, Pierre, 58*i*, 222*i*
- Current, electrical, 455
- Cushing syndrome, 666*i*, 668, 668*f*, 793*i*
- Cusps
  - of heart valves, 715*f*, 721–722, 722*f*, 723*i*
  - of teeth, 944
- Cutaneous glands, 205–207, 206*f*, 207*t*
- Cutaneous membrane, 182
- Cyanide poisoning, 869
- Cyanosis, 197, 869
- Cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP)
  - in adrenergic synapses, 467, 467*f*, 575
  - in cardiac function, 739, 740
  - in hormone action, 660, 660*f*
  - in olfaction, 596
  - as second messenger, 86, 102, 102*f*
  - in sensory transduction, 596
  - structure of, 85*f*, 86

Cyclic guanosine monophosphate (cGMP)
  in hormone action, 660
  and Viagra, action of, 1040*i*
  in vision, 623–625, 623*f*
Cyclooxygenase, 664, 665*f*, 666*i*
Cyclopropane, 629*i*
Cysteine, 79*f*, 80, 82*f*
Cystic duct, 961, 961*f*
Cystic fibrosis, 105*i*, 202*i*
Cystitis, 905*i*
Cytochromes, 688, 1000–1001, 1000*f*–1001*f*
Cytogenetics, 130
Cytogenic glands, 180
Cytokines, role in inflammation, 811, 813, 813*t*, 817
Cytokinesis, 143, 144*f*
Cytology, 94. *See also* Cells
Cytolysis, and complement, 810, 811*f*, 823
Cytomegalovirus, 831
Cytoplasm 96, 116–124
Cytosine, 130, 131*f*
Cytoskeleton, 97, 100, 120–121, 122*f*–123*f*, 140*t*
Cytosol, 97, 98*f*
Cytotoxic T (T_C) cells, 818, 819–820, 819*t*, 820*f*
Cytotrophoblast, 1093, 1093*f*

D

Dalton, John, 56
Dalton's law, 853*t*, 860
Dark adaptation, 624
Darwin, Charles, 9, 10*i*
Darwinian medicine, 12
Davy, Sir Humphry, 628*i*
Day vision, 620, 624–625, 625*f*
Dead air and dead space, 855
Deadly nightshade, 579*i*
Deafness, 606*i*, 1110
Deamination, 880, 1004*t*, 1005
Death, 422*i*, 1108, 1114
Debridement, 211
Decidual cells, 1071, 1095
Decomposition reactions, 69, 69*f*, 71*t*
Decompression sickness, 872*i*
Decubitus ulcer, 185
Decussation
  in hearing, 606
  in medulla oblongata, 525*f*, 533*f*
  in spinal tracts, 486, 488*f*–489*f*, 540, 542, 589
  in vision, 626–627, 628*f*
Deduction, scientific, 7
Defecation, Valsalva maneuver in, 855
Defensins, 809
Defibrillation, 732*i*
Deglutition. *See* Swallowing
Degranulation, 704
Dehydration, 262*i*, 644, 919, 921*t*
  blood viscosity, effect on, 755
  in diabetes mellitus, 669
  in old age, 1112
  and polycythemia, 692
  urine, effect on, 898
Dehydration synthesis reactions, 72, 73*f*, 75, 76*f*, 79
Dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA), 649, 653*t*
Delayed onset muscle soreness, 436*t*
Delirium tremens, 1012*i*
Delta cells (pancreatic), 651, 664
Delta waves, 536–537, 536*f*–537*f*
Democritus, 56
Denaturation, 80
Dendrites, 175, 446, 447*f*, 448, 463
Dendritic (Langerhans) cells, 193*f*, 194, 804, 810, 1055, 1108
Dendritic spines, 474, 533
Denervation atrophy, 412, 490*i*, 1109
Denervation hypersensitivity, 564, 566*t*
Dens, 265, 266*f*
Dense bodies, 433
Dense connective tissue, 169, 171*f*, 171*t*
Dentin, 946
Dentition. *See* Teeth
Deoxyhemoglobin, 863, 865*f*, 867
Deoxyribonuclease (DNAase), 962, 963*t*, 973
Deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), 10, 86, 129, 210
  discovery of, 130
  mitochondrial, 124*i*
  mutations in, 142
  in protein synthesis, 134–136
  replication of, 139–142, 141*f*
  ribonucleic acid (RNA) compared to, 130, 133, 134*t*
  structure of, 97*t*, 130–133, 132*f*, 132*i*, 134*t*
Depolarization
  myocardial, 731*f*, 734
  of neurons, 456, 458*f*
  of skeletal muscle, 416, 417
Depo-Provera, 1080*f*, 1081*i*, 1081*t*
Deprenyl, 475*i*
Depression
  emotional, 468, 580*i*, 646*i*
  of a joint, 303, 304*f*, 356*f*
Depth perception, 11, 11*f*
Dermal papillae, 195
Dermatitis, 208
Dermatology, 192
Dermatomes, 502*f*, 504, 508*i*
Dermatophagoides,195*f*, 195*i*
Dermis, 167, 169, 171*f*, 192, 194*f*, 195–196, 197*t*
Descartes, René, 7, 455, 646
Descending analgesic fibers, 489, 529, 591
Desmosomes, 178*f*, 179, 179*i*, 199
  in cardiac muscle, 726, 726*f*
Desquamation. *See* Exfoliation
Detached retina, 615
Detoxification, 117, 119, 218, 880, 1004*t*, 1012
Detrusor, 904–906, 905*f*–906*f*
Detumescence, postorgasmic, 1041, 1069
Deuterium, 58, 58*f*
Development, 16
  prenatal, 1070, 1090–1100, 1099*t*, 1101*t*
Developmental biology, 1090
Dextran, I.V. administration of, 933*i*
Dextrinase, 969
Dextrocardia, 14*i*
Diabetes, 902
  gestational, 902, 1079*t*
  insipidus, 666, 670*t*, 902, 919
  mellitus, 668–670
    atherosclerosis and, 670, 741*i*
    and contraception and, 1081*i*
    dehydration caused by, 919
    glycosuria in, 895, 902
    history of, 671*i*–672*i*
    insulin-dependent (IDDM), 828, 829
    insulin receptor defects in, 657*i*
    ketogenesis in, 1005
    neuropathy in, 589, 670
    non-insulin-dependent (NIDDM), 669
    obesity and, 987
    osteoporosis and, 239
    reflexes, effect on, 506
    respiratory effects of, 868
    urine, effect on, 902
  renal, 902
Diacylglycerol, 660, 661*f*
Dialysis, in renal insufficiency, 908, 908*f*
Dialysis membranes, 107
Diapedesis, 812, 814*f*
Diaphoresis, 206
Diaphragm
  contraceptive, 1079*i*, 1080*f*, 1081*t*
  muscular. *See under* Muscles
Diaphysis, 219, 220, 220*f*
Diarrhea, 231, 920, 925, 926, 970*i*, 973
Diarthroses, 294–295, 295*f*. *See also* Synovial joints
  movements of, 302–307, 303*f*–307*f*
Diastasis, 734
Diastole, 728
  atrial, 736
  ventricular, 734
Diastolic blood pressure, 754
Diazepam (Valium), 629*i*
Dicrotic notch, 735*f*, 736
Dideoxycytidine (ddC), 832
Dideoxyinosine (ddI), 832
Diencephalon, 516, 519, 520*f*, 525*f*, 529–531, 530*f*
Diet, 61, 792*i*, 989, 992–993, 1005. *See also* Nutrition; Recommended daily allowance
  weight-loss, 988*i*
Differential WBC count, 700*t*–701*t*, 702
Differentiation, 16, 183
Diffuse junctions, 434
Diffuse lymphatic tissue, 804
Diffusion
  in capillary exchange, 761, 761*f*
  facilitated, 110, 110*f*, 115*t*
  in gas exchange, 860–862, 860*f*, 862*f*
  simple, 106, 106*f*, 115*t*
Digestion, 939–983, 940
  autonomic effects on, 575, 576*t*, 941, 956–958, 957*f*
  of carbohydrates, 968–969, 969*f*
  of lipids, 970–973, 972*f*
  of nucleic acids, 973
  in pregnancy, 1072
  of protein, 970, 971*f*
  in stomach, 954*f*, 955–956
Digestive system, 941*f*
  anatomical checklists of, 950*t*, 968*t*, 976*t*
  autonomic innervation of, 568*f*, 569, 570, 571*t*, 572*f*, 573–574, 576*t*
  excretory function of, 881
  interaction with other systems, 979
  overview of, 42*f*, 941*f*
  in pregnancy, 1072
  senescence of, 1112
Digitalis, 716, 740, 740*t*
Digital rays, 1101*t*, 1102*f*
Digital rectal examination (DRE), 1029, 1029*i*
Digits, 36
Dihydrotestosterone (DHT), 1031
Dilation
  of blood vessels. *See* Vasodilation
  of bronchioles, 666*t*, 855
  of cervix, 1074
  of pupil, 576*t*, 577, 577*f*, 615–616, 624
Dipeptidase, 970, 971*f*
Dipeptides, 79, 79*f*, 970, 971*f*
Diploe, 219, 220*f*, 250*f*, 251
Diploid chromosome number, 146, 1032, 1033*f*, 1090
Diplopia, 618
Directional terms
  in brain anatomy, 516
  in general anatomy, 31, 32*t*
Disaccharides, 73, 74*f*, 75*t*
Discharge zone, 472, 472*f*
Disease, historic views of, 3, 6, 716
Dislocation of joints, 310, 311, 313, 314*f*, 319*t*, 494*i*
Dissecting aneurysm, 754*i*, 792*t*
Dissection, 2, 4
Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC), 708*t*, 765
Dissociation
  of ionic bonds, 62
  of neurotransmitters from receptors, 422, 467–468
Distal convoluted tubule (DCT), 883, 884*f*–885*f*, 890, 890*f*, 896, 922
Disulfide bonds, 80, 82*f*, 822, 824*f*
Disulfiram, 1012*i*
Disuse atrophy, 436*t*
Diuresis, 897, 901
Diuretics, 716, 902
  overuse and dehydration, 919
  in treating hypertension, 793*i*
Diverging circuit, 472, 473*f*
Diverticulitis, 978*t*
Diving physiology. *See* Scuba diving
DNA. *See* Deoxyribonucleic acid
DNA fingerprinting, 202*i*
DNA helicase, 140
DNA polymerase, 141, 141*f*, 142, 1113
Dominant alleles, 147, 150*t*, 151
Dominant hemisphere, 544
L-DOPA, 475*i*
Dopamine, 464, 465*f*, 466*t*, 475*i*, 571, 580*i*, 653*t*, 654
  as prolactin–inhibiting hormone, 1077
Dormitory effect, 595*i*
Dorsal horn, 484*f*, 485, 591
Dorsal ramus, 493, 495*f*–496*f*
Dorsal root, 485, 491*f*, 492, 495*f*–496*f*
Dorsal root ganglion, 484*f*, 491*f*, 492, 493*f*, 495*f*–496*f*
Dorsiflexion, 306, 307*f*
Double-blind method, 8
Double covalent bond, 61*t*, 62, 62*f*
Double helix, discovery of, 132*i*, 133*f*
Double-jointedness, 307
Double vision, 618
Down-regulation, 661, 663*f*
Down syndrome, 1106, 1107*f*, 1110
Dreaming, 537–538
Drew, Charles, 694*i*–695*i*, 695*f*
Dropsy, 737*i*

Drugs. *See also* Aspirin; Caffeine; Insulin; Steroids
  of abuse, 580*i*
  administration of, 196, 199*i*, 366*i*, 369*i*
  alcohol as, 1011*i*–1012*i*
  antacids, 956*i*
  anticoagulants, 704, 707, 708*i*–709*i*
  antidepressants, 468
  anti-inflammatory, 386*i*, 649, 666*i*
  clearance of, 895
  clot-dissolving, 709
  cocaine, 580*i*
  cold medicines, 579*i*
  cutaneous absorption of, 199*i*
  digitalis, 740, 740*t*
  diuretics, 793*i*, 902, 919
  dosage and age, 1111
  excretion of, 206
  for glaucoma, 614*i*
  for hypertension, 793*i*
  nervous system, effects on, 579*i*–580*i*
  parasympatholytic and parasympathomimetic, 579*i*
  for peptic ulcer, 956*i*
  pH, effect of, 68*i*
  phenylephrine, 579*i*
  reactions to, 693*t*, 829*i*, 832*t*
  sympatholytic and sympathomimetic, 579*i*
  tubular secretion of, 895
Dual innervation, 575
Ducts, gland, 179, 180*f*–181*f*
Ductus arteriosus, 1100, 1100*f*
Ductus deferens, 45*f*, 1024, 1026*f*–1027*f*, 1028
  embryonic, 1020*f*, 1023*f*
Ductus venosus, 1099, 1100*f*
Duodenal glands, 965
Duodenum, 46*f*, 50*f*, 957, 964, 964*f*, 965
Duplicity theory, 624, 625*f*
Dural sheath, 483, 484*f*
Dura mater, 248, 483, 484*f*, 495*f*, 519, 520*f*, 521
Duration of stimulus, coding for, 587
Dust mites, 195*f*, 195*i*, 828*i*
Dwarfism, 229*f*, 229*i*, 657*i*, 659, 667
Dynamic equilibrium, 17
Dynein, 104*f*, 105, 143, 449
Dynorphins, 591
Dysphagia, 978*t*
Dyspnea, 857*t*, 1072
Dystrophin, 437*i*

E

Ear
  anatomy of, 598–602, 609*t*
  cilia in, 103
  external, 173*f*
  infections of, 521*i*, 599*i*
Eardrum, 598, 599*f*–600*f*, 1110
Earlobe, 147, 147*f*, 185
Earwax, 207
Eating disorders, 464
Eccentric contraction, 426–427
Eccrine glands, 180, 181*f*
Eclampsia, 1079*t*
Ectoderm, 158, 517, 519, 519*f*, 1093–1094, 1094*f*–1096*f*, 1099*t*
Ectopic focus, 728
Ectopic ossification, 230, 382, 383
Ectopic pregnancy, 1079*t*, 1094*i*, 1104
Eczema, 208*t*
Edema, 682, 683, 693
  in allergy, 828
  causes and effects of, 682*i*–683*i*, 737*i*, 762–763
  cerebral, 920
  in inflammation, 812, 813
  in premature infants, 1104
  pulmonary, 737*f*, 737*i*, 763, 920, 934*i*
  spinal, 509
  water balance and, 921
Edward syndrome, 1106
Effacement of cervix, 1074
Effectors, 18, 444
Efferent arteriole, 884*f*–886*f*, 885, 888*f*
Efferent ductules, 1020*f*, 1026*f*, 1028
Efferent nerve fibers and neurons, 446, 446*f*, 492*t*, 504
Egg. *See* Oocyte
Eicosanoids, 77, 78*t*, 664–666, 665*f*, 666*i*, 990
Ejaculation, 1031, 1032, 1039*f*, 1041
  spinal cord injury, effect on, 509
Ejaculatory duct, 1025*f*, 1028
Ejection fraction, 736
Ejection of blood, 736
Elastic arteries, 749*f*, 750, 754
Elastic cartilage, 172, 173*f*, 173*t*
Elastic fibers, 168
Elastic filaments of muscle, 410, 412*f*, 413*t*, 423
Elasticity
  of arteries, 754
  of collagen, 409
  of muscle, 408
Elastin, 168
Elbow
  biomechanics of, 308, 308*f*–309*f*, 310
  joint anatomy of, 311–312, 313*f*
Electrical current, 455
Electrical junctions. *See* Gap junctions
Electrical potentials, 417, 418*f*, 455. *See also* Action potentials; Resting membrane potential
Electrocardiogram (ECG), 730, 731*f*, 732*f*, 732*t*, 734, 735*f*
Electrochemical gradients
  in excitable cells, 415–416, 455–456, 456*f*
  in mitochondria, 1001, 1001*f*
Electroencephalogram (EEG), 536, 536*f*–537*f*
Electrolytes, 60, 61*t*
  in blood plasma, 683*t*, 684
  concentration, units of, 66
  effect of growth hormone on, 644
  excretion of, 666*t*
  functions of, 921–926, 994
  homeostasis of, 921–926, 1112
  imbalances in, 506, 670, 922*t*, 923, 924–925, 926, 932*t*
  and pH imbalances, 932*t*
  tubular reabsorption of, 892–894, 893*f*
Electromagnetic energy, 69
Electron acceptors, 71, 1000
Electron donors, 71
Electrons, 57, 57*f*, 71
  transfer of, 84
  valence, 57
Electron shells, 57, 57*f*
Electron transport, 1000–1001, 1000*f*
Electrophysiology, 415, 424*i*, 455–462
Eleidin, 195
Elements, chemical, 56, 57*t*, 1121
Elephantiasis, 801*f*
Elevation of a joint, 303, 304*f*, 356*f*
Ellis, Havelock, 1037
Embolism, 692, 707–708, 742*i*, 764*i*
Embryo, 1*f*
  adoption, 1115*i*
  central nervous system of, 517, 519, 519*f*
  development of, 1070, 1093–1095, 1093*f*, 1099*t*, 1102*f*
Embryoblast, 1093, 1093*f*
Embryonic membranes, 1094*f*–1096*f*, 1097–1098, 1098*f*
Embryonic tissues, 158, 1093–1094, 1099*t*
Emetic center, 955
Emigration of WBCs. *See* Diapedesis
Emission of semen, 1038*f*, 1041
Emmetropia, 617, 617*f*, 619*f*
Emotion, 526, 530*f*, 531, 539–540
  cerebral centers for, 531, 532
  digestion affected by, 978*i*
  language and, 544
Emphysema, 687, 862*f*, 869, 1111
  effect on RBC count, 692
Empty calories, 988, 1012*i*
Empty magnification, 96, 96*f*
Emulsification droplets, 970, 972*f*
Emulsions, 65
Enamel, 946
Encapsulated nerve endings, 588, 589*t*
Encephalitis, 556*t*
End-diastolic volume, 734, 739
Endergonic reactions, 70, 71*t*
Endocannabinoids, 987
Endocardium, 182, 720, 720*f*
Endochondral ossification, 226–228, 226*f*
Endocrine disruptors, 1037*i*
Endocrine glands, 179, 636*f*, 637
Endocrine system, 635–677, 1110
  compared to nervous system, 637, 638*f*, 638*t*
  overview of, 41*f*, 636–637, 636*f*
  interaction with other systems, 673
Endocrinology, 636
Endocytosis, 112, 112*f*, 115*t*
Endoderm, 158, 1093–1094, 1094*f*–1096*f*, 1099*t*
Endogenous opioids, 590–591
Endolymph, 599, 600, 600*f*, 602, 607
Endometrium, 1052*f*, 1053, 1097
  histology of, 1053–1054, 1054*f*
  in menstrual cycle, 1062, 1063*f*, 1064*t*, 1067–1068
  response to implantation, 1093
Endomysium, 326, 408*f*, 409, 432*t*
Endoneurium, 453, 491, 491*f*
Endonuclease, 185
Endoplasmic reticulum (ER), 98*f*, 117*f*, 123*t*. *See also* Sarcoplasmic reticulum
  in plasma cells, 822, 824*f*
  in protein synthesis, 138–139, 140*f*
  rough, 93*f*, 116–117
  smooth, 116–118, 985*f*
Endorphins. 464, 465*f*, 466*t*, 591
Endosteum, 220, 220*f*, 221, 224*f*
Endothelins, vasomotor effect, 757
Endothelium
  atherosclerosis, damage in, 741*i*
  in blood-brain barrier, 524
  as blood vessel lining, 182, 749*f*, 750
  capillary exchange through, 761–762
  diapedesis through, 814, 814*f*
  embryonic, 1099
  glomerular, 888*f*
  inflammation, role in, 812*t*
  lipid uptake by, 991
  lymphatic, 801
  nitric oxide secretion by, 574, 664
  platelet repulsion by, 703
  transcytosis through, 113, 114*f*
End-plate potential, 417, 418*f*
End-systolic volume, 736
Endurance exercise, 431
Energy, 68, 120
Energy-storage molecules, 990, 1002
Engram, 473
Enkephalins
  as autonomic neurotransmitters, 574
  B lymphocytes, secretion by, 833
  as neuropeptides, 465*f*, 466*t*
  in pain modulation, 590, 591, 592*f*
  structure of, 465*f*
  sympathetic nerve fibers, secretion by, 574
Enteric hormones, 652, 653*t*
Enteric nervous system, 573, 941
Enteroendocrine cells, 652, 952, 953*f*, 955*t*
Enterogastric reflex, 957*f*, 958
Enterohepatic circulation, 962
Enterokinase, 962, 965
Environment and gene expression, 149, 150*f*
Enzyme amplification, 660, 662*f*, 705, 706*f*
Enzymes, 80, 82. *See also* Coenzymes
  cofactors for, 83–84
  digestive
    gastric, 954, 955–956, 958*f*, 971*f*
    intestinal, 963*f*, 965, 969*f*, 971*f*
    nutrients, action on. *See* Digestion
    pancreatic, 962, 963*f*, 963*t*, 971*f*–972*f*
    salivary, 946–948
  in metabolic pathways, 84
  in plasma membrane, 100, 101*f*
  structure and function of, 83, 83*f*–84*f*
Enzyme-substrate complex, 83, 84*f*
Enzyme-substrate specificity, 83
Eosinophilia, 813
Eosinophils
  action of, 809, 824
  appearance of, 681*f*, 699, 700*f*, 700*t*
  in asthma, 829*i*
  formation of, 686*f*
  role in inflammation, 812*t*
  stimulation of, 820, 825*t*
Ependymal cells, 450, 450*t*, 451*f*, 485, 521, 524
Epicardium, 718, 720*f*–721*f*
Epicondyles, 247*t*, 247*f*
  femoral, 281, 282*f*
  humeral, 274, 274*f*, 398*f*
Epidermis, 192–195, 193*f*, 197*t*, 1108–1109, 1109*f*
Epididymis, 45*f*, 51*f*, 1025*f*–1027*f*, 1028
  embryonic, 1020*f*, 1023*f*
Epidural space, 483, 484*f*

Epigastric region, 32, 35*f*
Epiglottis, 48*f*, 340, 844*f*–845*f*, 845, 847*f*, 948
Epilepsy, 540, 556*t*
Epimysium, 326, 432*t*
Epinephrine
  adrenal medulla, secretion by, 571, 648, 653*t*
  blood glucose, effect on, 651
  blood vessels, effect on, 756, 756*f*, 759
  bronchioles, effect on, 854–855
  heart, effect on, 739, 740, 740*t*
  hypersecretion of, 666
  kidney, effect on, 901*t*
  lipolysis stimulated by, 1005
  lymphocytes, effect on, 833*i*
  metabolic regulation by, 1007–1008, 1007*t*
  as monoamine, 465*f*, 654
  as neurotransmitter, 464, 466*t*
  second messenger employed by, 102
  in stress response, 663
  structure of, 465*f*
Epineurium, 491*f*, 492
Epiphyseal line, 220
Epiphyseal plate
  closure of, 234
  formation of, 226*f*, 228
  fracture at, 237*t*
  in long bone structure, 220, 220*f*, 228*f*
  as synchondrosis, 297, 302*t*
Epiphysis
  of bone, 219, 220, 220*f*, 228
  cerebri. *See* Pineal gland
Episiotomy, 1074
Epistaxis, 843
Epithalamus, 531
Epithelium, 159*t*
  types of, 160–166, 161*f*–165*f*, 162*t*–165*t*, 166*f*
Epitopes, 816, 819, 822
Eponyms, 20
EPSPs. *See* Excitatory postsynaptic potentials
Equilibrium
  chemical, 70
  osmotic, 107, 108*f*, 761*f*, 762
  sensory, 606–608, 1110
    brainstem centers for, 526, 530
    cerebral cortex and, 540
    and cranial nerve VIII, 553*t*
Equivalents, 67
Erectile dysfunction, 1032, 1040*i*, 1042*t*
Erectile tissues
  female, 1055–1056, 1056*f*, 1068, 1069*f*
  male, 1029, 1030*f*, 1038*f*–1039*f*, 1040
  nasal, 84
Erection, 509, 1031, 1038*f*, 1039–1040
Eriksson, Peter, 143*i*
Erythema, 198
Erythroblastosis fetalis. *See* Hemolytic disease of the newborn
Erythroblasts, 685, 686*f*
Erythrocyte (RBC) count, 682*t*, 691
  effect of testosterone on, 1031
  regulation of, 685, 687*f*
Erythrocytes (RBCs). *See also* Blood, types; Erythrocyte count; Erythropoiesis
  death and disposal of, 691–692, 691*f*, 692*t*, 807
  disorders of, 692–694
  as formed elements, 175, 680
  function of, 689
  life span of, 691
  morphology of, 174*f*, 175, 681*f*, 689, 689*f*–690*f*
  production of. *See* Erythropoiesis
  tonicity and, 107, 109*f*
Erythropoiesis, 685, 686*f*–687*f*, 1031, 1111
Erythropoietin (EPO), 652, 653*t*, 685, 687*f*, 693, 869, 880, 907*i*
Eschar, 209, 211
Escherichia coli, 142, 905*i*
Esophagus
  anatomy of, 948
  muscle layers of, 434*f*
  position of, 46*f*, 48*f*, 49*f*, 341*f*, 345*f*
  in swallowing, 948–949, 949*f*
Essential hypertension, 792*i*
Essential nutrients, 988
  amino acids, 993
  fatty acids, 990
Estradiol
  adrenal secretion of, 649
  ovarian secretion of, 651–652, 653*t*
  in pregnancy, 1070, 1070*f*
  in puberty, 1059–1060
  structure and synthesis of, 656*f*
Estriol, 652, 1059, 1070
Estrogen. *See also* Estradiol; Estriol; Estrone
  adrenal, 649, 653*t*
  bone, effects on, 234, 235*t*, 239*i*, 1060
  breast cancer and, 1058
  conversion of testosterone to, 1031
  menopause and, 1060
  placental, 654*t*, 1097*t*
  in pregnancy, 652, 1019, 1070, 1071*t*
  in puberty, 1059
  replacement therapy, 1060
  in sexual cycle, 1063*f*, 1064, 1066, 1066*f*, 1067
  sodium balance and, 923
  and uterine contractility, 1074
Estrogen mimics, 1037*i*
Estrogen-sensitive tumors, 659*i*
Estrone, 1059
Ethanol, 61, 61*f*. *See also* Alcohol; Alcoholism
Ether, 61, 61*f*, 628*i*–629*i*
Ethylene, 629*i*
Eumelanin, 202, 203*f*
Eupnea, 857*t*
Eustachian tube. *See* Auditory tube
Evaporation
  heat loss by, 1010
  water loss by, 916–917, 918*f*
Eversion of foot, 307, 307*f*
Evolution, 9. *See also* Evolutionary medicine essays
  of blood, 690*i*, 691
  of cerebral cortex, 534
  of labor pains, 1074
  of morning sickness, 1072
  as property of life, 16, 22
  of salt craving, 994
  of senescence, 1114
  of vision, 11, 625, 626
Evolutionary medicine essays. *See also* Evolution
  bipedalism, 286*i*–287*i*
  hemoglobin, 690*i*–691*i*
  kidney function, 879*i*
  menopause, 1060*i*
  mitochondrial evolution, 124*i*–125*i*
  palate, 258*i*
  pheromones, 595*i*
  sweets, taste for, 990*i*
  vestigial organs, 10*i*
Excess postexercise oxygen consumption (EPOC), 429
Exchange reactions, 69*f*, 70
Excitability, 16, 175, 415, 445
Excitation-contraction coupling, 417, 419*f*
Excitation of muscle, 417, 418*f*
Excitatory postsynaptic potentials (EPSPs), 458, 468–469, 469*f*–470*f*, 472, 474
Excitement, sexual, 1038*f*, 1040, 1068, 1069*f*
Excretion, 16, 881
Excursion of a joint, 304*f*, 305
Exercise 239*i*, 299, 428
  ATP synthesis during, 427–428, 428*f*
  blood pressure, effect on, 792*i*
  cardiovascular effects of, 740, 742*i*
  cholesterol level, effect on, 992
  in cold weather, 920
  fluid balance and, 917, 920
  injuries from, 386*i*
  joints, effect on, 299*i*
  kidneys, effect on, 887
  muscle and, 762
  RBC count and, 692
  resistance and endurance, 431
  senescence, effect on, 1112
  as therapy for pain, 591
  venous return, effect on, 764–765
Exergonic reactions, 70, 71*t*, 85
Exfoliation, 161, 166*f*
Exocrine glands, 179, 180*f*–181*f*, 637
Exocytosis, 112, 114*f*, 115*t*, 140*f*
  of sperm acrosome, 1090
  of synaptic vesicles, 417, 465, 467*f*
Exons, 136
Exophthalmos, 670*t*
Experimental design, 7
Expiration, 851, 853–854, 854*f*. *See also* Breathing
Expiratory center, 858, 858*f*
Expiratory reserve volume, 856, 856*t*, 857*f*
Expression of genes, 147, 149, 150*f*
Expulsion stage
  in labor, 1075, 1075*f*–1076*f*
  in orgasm, 1039*f*, 1041
Extensibility of muscle, 408
Extension of a joint, 302, 303*f*
Extensor retinacula, 365, 370*f*, 375, 378*f*, 380*f*
External tension of muscle, 423
Exteroceptors, 587
Extracellular fluid, 97, 112, 158, 415, 916
Extracellular material, 158
Extrafusal fibers, 504, 505*f*
Extrasystole, 728. *See also* Premature ventricular contraction
Extrathalamic cortical modulatory system, 529
Extrinsic muscles, 329
  of eye, 611, 612*f*
  of larynx, 342, 846
  of tongue, 338, 341*f*
Extrinsic salivary glands, 946–947, 947*f*
Eye, 75. *See also* Orbital region; Vision
  anatomy of, 612–615, 616*t*
  autonomic effects on, 575, 576*t*
  color of iris, 148, 150*f*
  movements, control of, 526, 530, 550*t*, 552*t*
  muscles of, 24*f*, 430, 430*t*, 611, 611*f*–612*f*
Eyebrows and eyelashes, 202, 204, 610, 610*f*
Eyelids, 610, 610*f*

F

Fabricius, Heironymus, 763
Facets of bones, 247*t*
Facial expression, 200, 200*f*
  muscles of, 330–335, 337*t*–338*t*
  neural control of, 526, 552*t*
Facial region, 33*f*, 393*f*
Facilitated diffusion, 110, 110*f*, 115*t*
Facilitated zone, 472, 472*f*
Facilitation (neural), 470, 474
Factor VIII (procoagulant), 704, 705*f*, 707
Facts in science, 9
FAD. *See* Flavin adenine dinucleotide
Fads and pseudoscience
  anabolic-androgenic steroids, 87*i*
  body piercing and keloids, 185*i*
  hair analysis, 202*i*
  high-protein diets and supplements, 992–993, 993*i*
  hyperventilation and swimming, 877
  low-carbohydrate diets, 989, 1005
  megavitamins, 996
  melatonin and jet lag, 646*i*
  radium tonic, 222*i*
  suntanning, 210*i*
  versus scientific method, 7
Fainting. *See* Syncope
Fallen arches, 284
Fallopian tube. *See* Uterine tube
False labor, 1074
Falsifiability, 7
Falx cerebelli, 521
Falx cerebri, 520*f*, 521
Familial hypercholesterolemia, 112, 113*i*, 148, 742*i*
Faraday, Michael, 628*i*
Fascia, 326, 386*i*
  adherens, in cardiac muscle, 726
  antebrachial, 366, 367*f*
  lata, 369, 373
  penile, 1027*f*, 1030*f*
  plantar, 385
  thoracolumbar, 349, 350*f*, 352*f*
Fascicles
  of muscles, 326, 431
  of nerves, 481*f*, 491, 491*f*
Fasciculi of spinal cord. *See* Tracts
Fast glycolytic (fast-twitch) muscle fibers, 430, 430*f*, 430*t*, 431
Fat. *See* Adipocytes; Adipose tissue; Triglycerides
Fat embolism, 792*t*
Fatigue
  in cardiac muscle, 433, 727
  after complete tetanus, 425*f*
  lactic acid as cause of, 427, 429
  muscle perfusion and, 766
  in skeletal muscle, 428–430, 430*t*, 431
  in smooth muscle, 435

Fat-soluble vitamins. *See under* Vitamins
Fatty acids, 75, 78*t*
  absorption of, 970–971
  essential, 990
  as fuel, 427, 429
  mobilization in pregnancy, 1071
  oxidation of, 1004*t*
Fatty streak, 741*i*
Fauces, 845, 943
Fear, 531, 539
Feces, 232*f*, 974, 976
Feedback loops. *See* Negative feedback loops; Positive feedback loops
Feeding center, 986, 987*f*
Female, 1018. *See also* Reproductive system, female
  genetic determination of, 1019
  reference, 16
Femoral region, 33*f*, 279. *See also* Thigh
Femoral triangle, 781, 781*f*
Fenestrated capillaries, 752, 752*f*, 887, 888*f*
Fenestrations, 752*f*, 761, 761*f*, 888*f*
Ferritin, 687*f*, 688
Fertilization, 103*t*, 1070, 1089*f*, 1090, 1092*f*
Fertilization membrane, 1091, 1091*f*
Fetal alcohol syndrome, 1104
Fetal brain tissue transplants, 475*i*
Fetal nervous system, 450, 451, 482, 517, 519, 519*f*, 520*f*
Fetus, 1070, 1098, 1099*t*
  development of, 1099–1101, 1101*t*, 1102*f*
  radiographic images of, 23*f*, 1049*f*
  skeleton of. *See* Ossification
  vertex position of, 1073, 1073*f*, 1074, 1101*t*
Fever
  as defense mechanism, 814, 815*f*, 1011
  positive feedback in, 18, 19*f*, 1011
  prostaglandins and, 666*i*, 666*t*
  Reye syndrome and, 815*i*
  in spinal shock, 508*i*
Fiber, dietary 75, 742*i*, 990
Fibrillation, 732*f*, 732*i*
Fibrillin, 172*i*
Fibrin, 679*f*, 704, 705*f*
Fibrinogen
  in blood clotting, 704, 705*f*, 706*t*
  in blood plasma, 683, 683*t*–684*t*
  in inflammation, 812–813
  in semen, 1037*t*
Fibrinolysin
  in menstrual fluid, 1067
  in semen, 1037*t*
Fibrinolysis, 706, 707*f*
Fibroblasts
  cell cycle of, 142
  in connective tissues, 158, 167, 169, 170*f*–171*f*
  in hemostasis, 706
  in inflammation, 812*t*
  in tissue engineering, 211
  in tissue repair, 186, 814
Fibrocartilage
  in fracture repair, 235, 236*f*
  histology of, 172, 173*f*
  in intervertebral discs, 264, 297
  in shoulder and hip joints, 310, 313
  in symphyses, 277, 297
Fibromyalgia, 436*t*
Fibronectin, 160
Fibrosis, 184*f*, 185, 186, 432*t*
  myocardial, 726
  pulmonary, 854, 856
Fibrous connective tissue, 166–169, 170*f*–171*f*, 170*t*–171*t*
Fibrous joints, 295, 295*f*–296*f*, 296
Fibrous proteins, 80
Fibrous skeleton, 720
Fight or flight reaction, 565, 578
Filtration, 106, 115*t*
  capillary, 761–762, 761*f*
  coefficient, renal, 889
  equilibrium with osmosis, 107–108, 108*f*, 761–762, 761*f*
  membrane, glomerular, 887
  pressure, 762, 887, 889*f*
  slits, 887, 888*f*
Fimbriae, 1050, 1051*f*–1052*f*, 1065, 1066*f*
Fingernails. *See* Nails
Fingerprints, 198
Firing frequency, 471, 471*f*
First-order neurons, 486–487, 488*f*, 589
  of pain, 590*f*
  of vision, 626
Fissures
  in bones, 247*t*
  longitudinal, of brain, 516, 517*f*, 522*f*
Fixation point, visual, 626, 627*f*
Fixatives, 158
Fixators, 329
Flagellum, 105, 120, 123*t*, 1035, 1036*f*
Flat bones, 225
Flat feet, 284
Flatus, 976
Flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD), 996–997, 999–1001, 999*f*–1000*f*, 1002*f*
Flavor, compared to taste, 594
Flexion creases and lines, 198, 398*f*–399*f*
Flexion of a joint, 302, 303*f*
Flexor reflex, 506–507, 507*f*
Flexor retinaculum, 300*f*, 365, 365*f*, 370*f*
Floating kidney, 882, 907*t*
Fluid balance. *See* Water balance
Fluid compartments, 916, 917*f*
Fluid deficiency, 919–920, 920*i*, 921*t*
Fluid excess, 920, 921*t*
Fluid exchange
  capillary, 761–762, 761*f*
  lymphatic, 801, 802*f*
Fluid replacement therapy, 933*i*–934*i*
Fluid sequestration, 921
Fluoride, 221, 994*t*
Fluorine, 57*t*
Fluoxetine, 580*i*
Foam cells, 741*i*
Folia, 526, 527*f*
Folic acid
  absorption, in old age, 1112
  bacterial synthesis of, 995
  in erythropoiesis, 688, 693*t*
  in pregnancy, 1072
  RDA and dietary sources of, 995*t*
  and spina bifida, 484*i*
Follicles
  hair, 201*f*, 202
  ovarian, 1050, 1051*f*
    developmental stages of, 1062*f*–1063*f*, 1063–1064, 1065*f*
Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH)
  in male, 642, 1030, 1031*f*, 1032
  pituitary gland, secretion by, 641*f*, 642, 643*f*, 645*t*
  in pregnancy, 1071
  in puberty, 1058–1059
  in sexual cycle, 1063*f*, 1064–1065, 1066
  T lymphocytes, secretion by, 833
Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) receptors, 1064
Follicular cells
  ovarian, 1064, 1065*f*. *See also* Granulosa cells
  thyroid, 647, 647*f*, 656–657, 658*f*
Follicular fluid, 1064, 1065–1066
Follicular phase, 1062–1064, 1064*t*
Fontanels, 260, 262, 262*f*, 262*i*
Foot
  arches of, 282, 284*f*, 286*i*, 402*f*, 404*f*–405*f*
  arteries of, 779*f*–780*f*, 780*t*
  bones of, 279, 282–284, 283*f*–284*f*, 285
  human vs. ape, 286*f*, 286*i*,
  intrinsic muscles of, 377, 384*t*, 385*f*
  movements of, 306–307, 307*f*
  muscles acting on, 374–375, 378*t*–379*t*, 380*f*–383*f*
  plantar epithelium of, 164*f*
  surface anatomy of, 404*f*–405*f*
  veins of, 790*f*–791*f*, 790*t*–791*t*
Foramina, 247*f*, 247*t*, 248, 252*t*–253*t*
  carotid canal, 250*f*, 252*t*, 255
  condylar canal, 250*f*, 252*t*, 255
  cribriform, 253*t*, 257, 257*f*, 595
  greater palatine, 250*f*, 253*t*, 258
  hypoglossal canal, 249*f*, 252*t*, 255
  incisive, 250*f*, 253*t*, 257*f*
  inferior orbital fissure, 253*t*, 258, 258*f*
  infraorbital, 248*f*–249*f*, 253*t*, 258, 258*f*
  interventricular, 521, 522*f*–523*f*
  intervertebral, 264, 265*f*
  jugular, 249*f*–250*f*, 252*t*, 255, 783*f*
  lacerum, 250*f*, 252*t*, 255
  lacrimal, 253*t*
  magnum, 48*f*, 248, 250*f*, 252*t*, 287*f*, 287*i*
  mandibular, 253*t*, 259*f*
  mastoid, 250*f*, 252*t*, 254
  mental, 248*f*–249*f*, 253*t*, 259*f*
  nutrient, 220, 220*f*, 226*f*
  obturator, 277, 279*f*–280*f*, 280*t*
  olfactory, 250*f*
  optic, 250*f*, 252*t*, 255, 256*f*, 258*f*
  ovale
    of fetal heart, 1099, 1100*f*, 1103
    of skull, 250*f*, 252*t*, 255, 256*f*
  parietal, 251, 251*f*, 252*t*
  rotundum, 250*f*, 252*t*, 255, 256*f*
  sacral, 268, 268*f*
  spinosum, 250*f*, 252*t*, 255, 256*f*
  stylomastoid, 250*f*, 252*t*, 254
  superior orbital fissure, 252*t*, 255, 256*f*
  supraorbital, 248*f*, 252*t*, 258*f*
  transverse, 265, 266*f*
  vertebral, 264, 264*f*
  zygomaticofacial, 249*f*, 253*t*, 258
  zygomaticotemporal, 253*t*
Forced expiratory volume, 856, 1111
Forearm (antebrachium), 36, 273
  arterial supply to, 773*f*, 773*t*–774*t*
  bones of, 273–274, 275*f*
  extrinsic muscles acting on, 357, 361, 362*t*
  movements of, 30, 30*f*, 302, 303*f*, 305*f*–306*f*, 306, 361*t*–362*t*, 363*f*
  muscles in, 361, 362*t*–364*t*, 363*f*, 366, 367*f*–368*f*
  surface anatomy of, 33*f*, 398*f*
  venous drainage of, 785*f*, 784*t*–785*t*
Forebrain, 519, 520*f*, 529–535
Foresight, cerebral center for, 531
Foreskin. *See* Prepuce
Forgetting, importance of, 539
Form and function, complementarity of, 2, 22, 409
Formed elements of blood, 175, 680, 681*f*
Fossae, 247*f*, 247*t*
  coronoid, 274, 274*f*
  cranial, 248, 253*f*
  cubital, 398*f*
  iliac, 277, 279*f*
  infraspinous, 271, 273*f*
  intercondylar, 281, 282*f*
  lacrimal, 259
  mandibular, 250*f*, 254, 311*f*
  nasal, 256
  olecranon, 274, 274*f*
  ovalis, 721*f*, 1103
  popliteal, 400*f*, 403*f*
  radial, 274, 274*f*
  subscapular, 271, 273*f*
  supraclavicular, 393*f*–394*f*
  supraspinous, 271, 273*f*
  triangular, of ear, 598*f*
Fovea, 247*f*, 247*t*
  capitis, 281, 313, 314*f*
  centralis, 615, 615*f*, 624, 626
Fractures, 221, 234–237, 236*f*–237*f*, 237*t*, 239*i*, 1109
Franklin, Rosalind, 132*i*, 133*f*
Frank-Starling law of the heart, 739
Freckles, 198
Free energy, 996–997
Free nerve endings, 588, 589*t*
Free radicals, 60
  destructive effect of, 60
  detoxification of, 60, 119
  as mutagens, 124*i*, 151*i*
  in oxygen toxicity, 869
  production of, 59, 60
  and senescence, 1114
Frequency, sound, 597, 603, 604*f*
Freud, Sigmund, 580*i*
Friction ridges, 193*f*, 198
Friction rub, 718
Frons, 393*f*
Frontal association area, 538
Frontal lobe
  functions of, 531, 542, 542*f*, 544, 545*f*
  lesions of, 538, 538*f*, 538*i*–539*i*
  location of, 517*f*–518*f*, 531, 532*f*
Frontal plane, 31, 31*f*
Frontal region, 393*f*
Frontal sections, 31, 31*f*
Fructose, 73, 74*f*, 75*t*, 989, 1037*t*
  absorption of, 969, 969*f*
Functional groups, 72

Functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI), 24i, 557
Functional residual capacity, 856, 856t, 857f
Furosemide, 902

G

GABA. *See* Gamma-aminobutyric acid
GABA-ergic synapse, 466–467
Gage, Fred, 143i
Gage, Phineas, 538f, 538i–539i
Gagging, neural control of, 526, 553t
Galactose, 73, 74f, 75t, 969, 969f, 989
Galea aponeurotica, 334, 336f
Galen, Claudius, 3, 4, 455, 748, 763, 1041i, 1042i
Gallbladder, 44f, 50f, 959, 961–962, 961f
Gallop (heart sound), 734
Gallstones, 707i, 962i
Galvani, Luigi, 424i, 455
Gamete intrafallopian transfer, 1115i
Gametes, 1018. *See also* Oocyte; Sperm
Gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA), 464, 465f, 466–467, 469, 470, 629i
Gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA) receptors, 466, 1012i. *See also* GABA-ergic synapse
Gamma globulins. *See* Antibodies
Gamma motor neurons, 504, 505f
Gamma rays, 22i, 59, 151i
Ganglia, 445, 492, 493f
  autonomic, 566, 566f
  celiac, 568f, 570, 570f, 571t, 572f
  ciliary, 571, 572f
  collateral, 569f, 570, 571t
  intramural, 571
  mesenteric, 568f, 570, 570f, 571t
  otic, 572f, 573
  prevertebral, 570
  sphenopalatine, 571, 572f
  spiral, 600f, 601f, 604
  submandibular, 571, 572f
  superior cervical, 616
  sympathetic, 495f–496f, 499f, 567, 567f, 568f–570f
  terminal, 571
Ganglion cells, of retina, 620f, 621, 624, 625f
Ganglioside, 453i
Gangrene, 87i, 183, 185, 861
  diabetes and, 668, 670
Gap junctions, 178f, 179, 223, 636
  in cardiac muscle, 432, 432t, 726
  in smooth muscle, 432t, 434
Gases
  alveolar exchange of, 860–863, 865f, 866
  atmospheric, 859–860, 860t
  intestinal, 976
  laws governing, 851, 853t
  solubility of, 861
  systemic exchange of, 864, 865f
  transport of, 863–864
Gastric glands, 952, 953f
Gastric inhibitory peptide (GIP), 955, 957f, 958
Gastric juice, 952
Gastric pits, 952, 953f
Gastric secretion, 526, 666t, 952, 954–955, 954f
Gastrin, 955t, 957, 957f–958f, 963, 1007, 1007t
Gastritis, 956i
Gastroenterology, 940
Gastroesophageal reflux, 948, 1112
Gastroesophageal sphincter, 948
Gastroferritin, 687, 687f
Gastroileal reflex, 967
Gates in plasma membrane, 69, 100, 101f
Gaze center, 528
G cells, 957, 958f
Gel, tissue, 158, 168
Gelatinous bone marrow, 223
Gene, 133, 150t
Gene locus, 147
Gene pool, 148, 150t
General adaptation syndrome, 663–664
General nerve fibers, 492t
General senses, 587, 588–591
Genetic code, 134, 135t
Genetics
  history of, 6. *See also* Heredity
  Mendelian, 145–151
  molecular, 130–142
  terminology, review of, 150t
Genital herpes, 1043i
Genitalia
  autonomic innervation of, 568f, 569, 570, 571t, 572f
  embryonic, 1019, 1020f, 1021, 1022f
  female, 1050–1056, 1051f–1052f, 1056f
  male, 1023–1029, 1024f–1027f
Genital warts, 1043i
Genome, 133, 150t, 822
Genotype, 147, 150t
Germ cells, 146, 1026f, 1061
Germ layers, embryonic, 1093, 1094f–1095f, 1099t
Gestation. *See* Pregnancy
Gestational diabetes, 902, 1079t
Gigantism, 667
Gilman, Alfred, 102
Gingiva, 944, 946i
Gingivitis, 946i
Glabella, 248f, 251
Glands, 179–182. *See also specific types*
Glans
  of clitoris, 1022f, 1056, 1056f
  of penis, 1022f, 1025f, 1027f, 1029, 1030f
Glaucoma, 579i, 614i, 1110
Glenoid cavity, 273, 273f, 310, 312f
Glia. *See* Neuroglia
Glioblastoma, 515f
Glioma, 451i
Globulins, 657, 683, 683t–684t
Globus pallidus, 475i, 534, 535f
Glomerular capsule, 882, 884f–885f
Glomerular filtrate, 882
Glomerular filtration, 886–891, 887f
Glomerular filtration rate (GFR), 889, 903, 1072, 1111
Glomerulonephritis, 907i, 907t
Glomerulus, 882, 884f–886f, 885–891, 888f, 915f
Glottis, 844f–845f, 845, 846, 847f, 855
Glucagon
  in diabetes mellitus, 669
  functions of, 651, 653t
  heart, effect on, 740t
  metabolic regulation by, 1007–1008, 1007t
  pancreatic secretion of, 650–651, 653t
  second messenger employed by, 660, 660f
  somatostatin, inhibition by, 651, 664
Glucoamylase, 969
Glucocorticoids 649
  breast development stimulated by, 1059, 1076
  inflammation inhibited by, 649
  lipolysis stimulated by, 1005
  nitrogen balance and, 993
  in pregnancy, 1071
  sodium balance and, 923
  in stress response, 663–664
  WBC count, effect on, 701
Gluconeogenesis, 648, 649, 651, 880, 1003, 1003t–1004t, 1007t, 1008
Glucose, 73, 74f, 75t
  absorption, 969, 969f
  balance in pregnancy, 1071
  blood concentration of, 648, 683t, 684, 1004t, 1007–1008
  dietary, 989
  homeostasis, 650–651, 1004t, 1007–1008
  metabolism in stress, 663–664
  in muscle physiology, 427–429
  oxidation of, 82, 996–1002, 997f, 999f–1002f, 1003t
  reabsorption, 893f, 894
  transport of, 111f
  in urine, 668, 895, 902
Glucose-sparing effect, 644, 648, 990
Glucose transport proteins, 111, 111f, 668, 894, 902
Glucostat hypothesis, 986
Glutamate (glutamic acid), 464, 465f, 469, 490i, 594, 623–624, 623f, 1006f
Gluteal fold, 395f
Gluteal region, 33f, 374f, 377f, 395f
Glycerol, 75, 76f, 1005, 1005f
Glycine, 414i, 458, 464, 465f, 469, 579i
Glycocalyx, 100, 101, 102, 102f, 103, 103t, 104f
Glycogen
  in cardiac muscle, 727
  depletion in stress, 663
  dietary, 968, 989
  endometrial, 1067
  energy storage by, 73, 75t, 988
  metabolism of, 1002, 1003f, 1003t–1004t
  in senescent muscle, 1109
  in skeletal muscle, 409, 413t, 428, 428f, 429, 430t, 433
  structure and synthesis of, 73, 74f, 651
Glycogenesis, 1002, 1003f, 1003t–1004t, 1007t
Glycogen-lactic acid system, 428
Glycogenolysis, 648, 651, 1002, 1003f, 1003t–1004t, 1007t, 1008
Glycolipids, 75, 75t, 99f, 100, 103, 453i
Glycolysis, 996
  ATP synthesis by, 86, 86f, 1002f, 1003t
  coenzyme function in, 84, 84f
  metabolic pathways linked to, 1003f, 1005f
  in muscle fiber types, 430t
  reactions of, 997–998, 997f, 1003t
Glycoproteins
  in basement membrane, 160
  blood types determined by, 695
  in bone matrix, 221
  functions of, 75t, 103t
  in glycocalyx, 101, 101f, 103, 103t
  as hormones, 654, 655t
  in intercellular junctions, 178f, 179
  in intercellular material, 168, 178f
  in Marfan syndrome, 172i
  structure and synthesis of, 75, 75t, 80, 118
  on T cells, 819
Glycosaminoglycans (GAGs), 168, 168f, 221
Glycosuria, 668, 895
Goblet cells, 161, 163f, 182f, 965
  respiratory, 848, 848f–849f
Goiter
  endemic, 667
  toxic, 666, 670t, 828
Golgi complex, 98f, 118–119, 118f, 123t
  protein processing in, 138, 139, 140f
Golgi tendon organ, 508, 508f, 589t
Golgi tendon reflex, 508
Golgi vesicles, 98f, 118, 118f, 123t, 139
Gomphosis, 296, 296f, 302t, 944
Gonadal ridge, 1020f, 1034, 1061
Gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH)
  in brain-ovarian axis, 643f, 1066f
  in brain-testicular axis, 643f, 1031f
  function of, 640, 642t, 643f
  hypothalamic secretion of, 641f, 642t
  in ovarian cycle, 1065, 1067
  in puberty, 1030, 1058
Gonadotropins, 640
Gonads. *See* Ovaries; Testes
Gonorrhea, 1042i, 1104
Goose bumps, 10i, 195, 202
Gorilla, 10. *See also* Apes
Gout, 319t
G protein, 102, 467, 467f
Gracile fasciculus, 486, 486t, 487f, 488f, 495f, 525f, 526, 590
Graft rejection, 211, 828
Grafts and transplants, 211
Graft-versus-host response, 829
Granulation tissue, 184f, 186, 235
Granule cells, 595f, 596
Granulocyte-macrophage colony-forming unit, 686f, 688
Granulocytes, 699, 700f, 700t. *See also* Basophils; Eosinophils; Neutrophils
Granulosa cells, 651, 651f, 1062f, 1064, 1065f
Graves disease, 666, 670t
Gravity
  equilibrium, role in, 607f
  venous return, role in, 764
Gray commissure, 484f, 485
Gray communicating ramus, 567, 569f
Gray matter
  of brain, 516, 522f, 533
  of spinal cord, 485
Greater trochanter, 395f

Great toe. *See* Hallux
Greece, medicine in, 3. *See also* Aristotle; Hippocrates
Ground substance, 158, 168
Growth
  of bone, 220, 228–229, 234
  of cartilage, 229, 229*i*
  as characteristic of life, 16
  in puberty, 1031
  of tissues, modes of, 183
Growth factors, 145, 234, 235*t*, 450
Growth hormone (GH)
  in breast development, 1059, 1076
  effects of, 229*i*, 234, 235*t*, 642–644, 645*t*, 651
  hypersecretion of, 667
  lactation, role in, 1077
  lipolysis, role in, 1005
  metabolic regulation by, 1007–1008, 1007*t*
  and nitrogen balance, 993
  in old age, 1110
  pituitary secretion of, 641*f*, 643*f*, 645*t*
  protein synthesis stimulated by, 1006
  T lymphocytes, secreted by, 833
Growth hormone–inhibiting hormone (GHIH). *See* Somatostatin
Growth hormone–releasing hormone (GHRH), 641*f*, 642*t*
Guanine, 130, 131*f*
Guanosine triphosphate (GTP), 86, 999
Guard hairs, 204, 844*f*
Gubernaculum, 1021, 1023*f*
Guillain-Barré syndrome, 509*t*
Gums
  dietary, 990
  oral, 944, 946*i*
Gut-brain peptides, 464, 955
Gynecomastia, 87*i*
Gyri, 516, 517*f*, 522*f*, 531
  angular, 544
  cingulate, 534, 535*f*
  postcentral, 518*f*, 532*f*, 540, 541*f*
  precentral, 518*f*, 532*f*, 542, 542*f*

H

Habenula, 531
Habituation, 529
Hair, 200–204, 201*f*, 203*f*
  analysis, 202*i*
  axillary, 202, 204, 207, 1031, 1060
  beard, 202, 204
  guard, 204, 610, 843
  pubic, 202, 204, 207, 1031, 1060
  structure and function of, 201–204, 201*f*, 203*f*
Hair cells
  of cochlea, 600–604, 601*f*
  of vestibular apparatus, 606, 607*f*–608*f*
Hair follicle, 191*f*, 201–202, 201*f*
Hair receptors, 201*f*, 202, 588, 589*t*
Haldane effect, 867
Half-life (T½)
  of hormones, 643, 661
  of radioisotopes, 59
Hallux (great toe), 282, 283*f*–284*f*, 286*f*, 286*i*, 405*f*
Hamstring injuries, 383, 386*i*
Hand (manus), 273, 276*f*
  arteries of, 773*f*, 773*t*–774*t*
  bones of, 275–277, 276*f*
  evolution of, 10, 10*f*, 300
  extrinsic muscles acting on, 361, 363*t*–364*t*, 365–366, 365*f*
  intrinsic muscles of, 366, 367*f*–368*f*, 369*t*, 370*f*, 371*t*
  movements of, 361, 369*t*
  prehensile, 10, 10*f*
  surface anatomy of, 398*f*, 399*f*
  tendons and bursae of, 300*f*
  veins of, 784*t*–785*t*, 785*f*
Handedness, 544, 545
Hansen disease (leprosy), 589
Haploid cells, 146, 1032, 1033*f*, 1034, 1090
Haptens, 816–817, 827*t*, 828
Harlow, John, 538
Harvey, William, 4, 748, 763, 763*f*
Haversian canal. *See* Central canal
Hawking, Stephen, 490*f*, 490*i*
Head
  arterial supply to, 771*f*–772*f*, 771*t*–772*t*
  of a bone, 219, 220*f*, 247*f*, 247*t*
  extrinsic muscles acting on, 342*f*, 343–345, 343*t*, 344*f*
  intrinsic muscles of, 330, 334–341, 334*f*–336*f*, 337*t*–340*t*, 341*f*
  median section of, 48*f*, 844*f*
  movements of, 526, 555*t*
  of a muscle, 328
  surface anatomy of, 393*f*
  venous drainage of, 783*f*, 783*t*–784*t*
Headache, 310*i*, 556*t*, 564*i*
Healing
  of fractures, 234–235, 236*f*
  of wounds, 184*f*, 185–186
Hearing, 545*f*, 553*t*, 597–606
  anatomy of, 598–602, 598*f*–601*f*
  brain centers for, 526, 530, 532, 540, 541*f*, 604, 605*f*, 606
  loss in old age, 1110
  PET scan of, 585
  physiology of, 602–606, 602*f*–605*f*
  range and threshold of, 597–598, 597*f*
  and sound, properties of, 597–598
Heart, 45*f*, 49*f*
  autonomic innervation of, 568*f*, 570, 572*f*, 575
  blood flow through, 724
  electrical and contractile activity of, 728–733, 729*f*–732*f*, 734–736, 735*f*
  endocrine function of, 652, 653*t*
  fetal, 1098–1099, 1100*f*
  gross anatomy of, 717–722, 719*f*
  neonatal, 1103
  neural control of, 565, 565*f*
Heart attack. *See* Myocardial infarction
Heart block, 728, 732*f*, 1111
Heartburn, 948, 1072, 1112
Heart failure
  causes of, 792*i*
  in diabetes mellitus, 670
  polycythemia as cause of, 692
  in sickle-cell disease, 695
  from stress, 664
Heart murmur, 723*i*
Heart rate, 728, 737, 738
  exercise and, 740
Heart sounds, 734–736, 735*f*
Heat. *See also* Temperature; Thermoregulation
  capacity of water, 65
  enzymes, effect on, 83
  of inflammation, 814
  production and loss, 17–18, 111, 204, 531, 1009–1011
  protein denaturation caused by, 80, 83
  sodium-potassium pump and, 111
  temperature vs., 64–65
  thyroid hormone and, 647–648, 659, 1011
Heat cramps, 1011
Heat exhaustion, 933*i*, 1011
Heat-shock proteins, 138
Heatstroke, 1011, 1108
Heavy metal poisoning, 199*i*, 202*i*, 907*i*
Helicobacter pylori, 956*i*
Helper factor, 821*f*, 822, 823*f*, 827*t*
Helper T (T_H) cells, 818, 826*t*
  in AIDS, 829–831
  in cellular immunity, 818–819, 819*t*, 820*f*–821*f*
  in humoral immunity, 822, 823*f*
Hemangioma, 198
Hematemesis, 1012*i*
Hematocrit, 680, 682*f*, 682*t*, 1031
Hematology, 680*i*
Hematoma, 198, 235, 236*f*, 707
Hematuria, 887, 900
Heme moiety, 80, 81*f*
Hementin, 709*i*
Hemidecussation, 626–627, 628*f*
Hemidesmosome, 179
Hemiplegia, 509
Hemocytoblasts, 685, 686*f*
Hemodialysis, 881, 907*i*–908*i*, 908*f*
Hemodynamics, 753
Hemoglobin (Hb)
  carbon dioxide transport and, 864
  carbon monoxide poisoning and, 861, 863, 864*i*
  concentration of, 682*t*, 691
  decomposition of, 691*f*, 692, 692*t*
  mutation in, 142
  oxygen debt and, 429
  oxygen transport and, 863–864
  packaging of, 690*i*–691*i*
  quantity of, 689, 691
  in renal tubules, 907*i*
  skin color imparted by, 196
  structure of, 80, 81*f*, 689–690, 690*f*, 694
  synthesis of, 685, 688
  varieties of, 690, 694
Hemolysis, 692, 695
  hyperkalemia caused by, 925–926
Hemolytic disease of the newborn, 693*t*, 697–698, 698*f*
Hemophilia, 707
  genetics of, 149, 149*f*
Hemopoiesis, 218, 685–688, 686*f*, 1072
Hemopoietic tissues, 223, 685
Hemorrhage
  in childbirth, 1072
  water balance and, 921
Hemorrhoids, 753*i*, 974, 1072, 1111
Hemostasis, 702–709
Henry's law, 853*t*, 860, 860*f*
Heparan sulfate, 160
Heparin, 167, 707, 809
  in hemodialysis, 908
  in inflammation, 813, 813*t*
Hepatic coma, 1006, 1012*i*
Hepatic lobules, 960, 960*f*
Hepatic macrophages, 961, 1004*t*
Hepatic portal system, 788*t*–789*t*, 788*f*–789*f*
Hepatic sinusoids, 788*f*, 788*t*, 960, 960*f*
Hepatitis, 114, 151, 198, 707*i*, 1003, 1012*i*, 1043*i*
Hepatocytes, 960, 960*f*
Heredity, general principles of, 145–151
Hernia, 351*i*–352*i*
Herniated disc, 265, 1109
Heroin, 590
Herpes, genital, 1043*i*
Herpes simplex virus, 151, 449, 831
Herpes zoster, 493*i*
Heterografts, 211
Heterozygous genotype, 147, 147*f*, 149, 150*t*
Hiatal hernia, 978*t*
High blood pressure. *See* Hypertension
High-density lipoprotein (HDL), 78*i*, 742*i*, 991–992, 991*t*, 992*f*, 1004*t*
Hindbrain, 519, 520*f*, 525*f*
Hip. *See also* Coxal joint
  dislocation, 313, 314*f*
  fracture, 239
  muscles acting on, 369, 372*t*–373*t*, 373*f*
  replacement, 320*i*, 321*f*
  surface anatomy of, 394*f*–396*f*
Hippocampus, 534, 535*f*, 539, 596*f*
Hippocrates, 3, 516, 1041*i*
Hirsutism, 204
Hirudin, 709*i*
Hirudo medicinalis, 709*f*, 709*i*
Histamine
  in allergy, 828
  basophils, secretion by, 700*t*, 809, 812, 813*t*
  capillary permeability and, 762
  in digestion, 955*t*, 957, 957*f*
  effect on bronchioles, 854
  in inflammation, 812, 813*t*
  mast cells, secretion by, 167, 466*t*, 812, 813*t*
  as neurotransmitter, 464, 465*f*, 466*t*
  as pain stimulus, 590
  as paracrine, 664
  structure of, 465*f*
  vasomotor effect, 757
Histiocytes. *See* Macrophages
Histology, 3, 158–186
Histones, 130, 131*f*, 140*t*, 141
History. *See also* Medical history essays
  of anatomical terminology, 19–20
  of atomic theory, 56
  of cardiology, 716
  of circulatory physiology, 748
  of cytology, 5–6, 94
  of embryology, 1090
  of genetics, 6
  of hematology, 680
  of homeostasis concept, 17
  of human anatomy and physiology, 3–6
  of immunology, 816
  of medical illustration, 3–4, 4*f*, 5*f*
  of neurophysiology, 455, 463, 516, 564
  of scientific method, 7
  of sex research, 1037

HIV. *See* Human immunodeficiency virus
Hives, 828, 832*t*
H^+-K^+ ATPase, 952
Hodgkin disease, 832*t*
Holism, 13
Holocrine glands, 180, 181*f*, 207, 207*t*
Homeostasis, 16, 17–18, 22
Hominid fossils, 284
Homo, extinct species of, 11, 11*t*
Homografts, 211
Homologous chromosomes, 146, 146*f*, 150*t*, 1105
Homologous genitalia, 1021, 1068
Homozygous genotype, 147, 147*f*, 150*t*
Homunculus
  motor, 542, 542*f*
  sensory, 540, 541*f*
Hooke, Robert, 5, 6*f*, 94
Horizontal cells, of retina, 620*f*, 621
Horizontal plane, 31, 31*f*
Hormone receptors, 657, 657*i*, 659*i*, 659–660, 669, 1021*i*
  up- and down-regulation of, 661–662, 663*f*
Hormone replacement therapy, 231, 1060
Hormones, 179, 636–637. *See also* Endocrine system
  abbreviations for, 639*t*
  affecting bone, 231–234, 232*f*–234*f*, 235*t*
  blood concentrations of, 661
  chemical composition of, 654
  deactivation and clearance of, 661, 1004*t*
  interactions among, 662
  of menstrual cycle, 651–652, 653*t*. *See also* Menstrual cycle
  of pregnancy, 652, 654*t*, 1070–1071, 1070*f*, 1071*t*
  sensitivity to, 661–662
  synthesis of, 654–657, 656*f*–657*f*
  transport of, 657, 659*f*
  tropic, 640
Horner syndrome, 579*t*
Hot flashes, 1060
Huang Ti, 748
Human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG), 1070, 1070*f*, 1071*t*, 1093, 1097*t*
Human chorionic somatomammotropin (HCS), 1071, 1071*t*, 1097*t*
Human chorionic thyrotropin, 1071, 1071*t*
Human Genome Project, 133
Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). *See also* Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)
  brain, invasion of, 524
  congenital infection with, 1104
  structure of, 829–830, 830*f*
  vaginal transmission of, 1055
Human leukocyte antigens (HLAs), 819
Human papilloma virus (HPV), 1043*i*
Humoral immunity, 816, 822–826
  compared to cellular, 827*t*
Hunger, 531, 987, 987*f*
Huntington disease, 125*i*
Hyaline cartilage
  articular, 226*f*, 228, 299, 299*f*, 299*i*
  in endochondral ossification, 226–229, 226*f*–227*f*
  histology of, 172, 173*f*, 173*t*
  of ribs, 297, 298*f*, 269, 269*f*, 271*t*
  in synchondroses, 297, 298*f*
Hyaluronic acid, 168*f*, 183, 809, 1090
Hyaluronidase, 809, 1090
Hydration sphere, 64, 64*f*
Hydrocephalus, 262*i*, 523, 1104
Hydrochloric acid, 230, 952, 954, 954*f*, 955*t*, 977*i*
Hydrocortisone. *See* Cortisol
Hydrogen, 57*t*. *See also* Hydrogen ion
  isotopes of, 58, 58*f*
  in magnetic resonance imaging, 23
Hydrogen bonds, 61*t*, 62, 63*f*, 83
  in macromolecules, 80, 130
Hydrogen ion, 67, 230*i*. *See also* Acid; pH
  renal secretion of, 895, 928–929, 929*f*, 932
  vasomotor effect of, 757
Hydrogen peroxide, 60, 119, 809, 869
Hydrolysis reactions, 72, 73*f*, 940
Hydronephrosis, 907*t*
Hydrophilic substances, 63, 72, 107
Hydrophobic substances, 64, 75
Hydrostatic pressure, 106, 108*f*
Hydroxide ion, 67
Hydroxyapatite, 221, 230, 232*f*, 234*f*
Hydroxyl group, 72, 72*f*
Hymen, 1020*f*, 1055, 1056*f*
Hyperalimentation, 933*i*
Hyperbaric oxygen therapy, 861, 862*f*, 869
Hypercalcemia, 231, 234*f*, 922*t*, 926
  alkalosis, as cause of, 932*t*
  effects on heart, 739, 740, 740*t*
  kidney stones caused by, 904*i*
Hypercapnia, 868
  cerebral autoregulation and, 766
  effects on heart, 739, 740*t*
  vasomotor effect, 758–759
Hyperchloremia, 922*t*, 925, 932*t*
  acidosis, as cause of, 932*t*
  I.V. fluid therapy, caused by, 933*i*
Hyperemesis gravidarum, 1079*t*
Hyperemia, 812, 814
Hyperextension, 303, 303*f*
Hyperglycemia, 668
Hyperglycemic hormones, 651
Hyperinsulinism, 670*t*
Hyperkalemia, 922*t*, 924–925, 924*f*, 932*t*
  acidosis, relationship to, 932*t*
  effects on heart, 732*t*, 739, 740, 740*t*
  hemolysis, caused by, 925–926
  I.V. fluid therapy, caused by, 933*i*
Hypernatremia, 922*t*, 923
  I.V. fluid therapy, caused by, 933*i*
Hyperopia, 619*f*, 619*t*
Hyperparathyroidism, 668, 926
Hyperphagia, 986, 987*f*
Hyperphosphatemia, 922*t*
Hyperplasia, 183
Hyperpnea, 857*t*
Hyperpolarization
  myocardial, 739
  of neurons, 458–459, 458*f*
Hyperreflexia, 509
Hypersecretion of hormones, 666
Hypersensitivity, 828
Hypertension, 754, 792*i*–793*i*
  aneurysm and, 754*i*
  atherosclerosis and, 741*i*, 793*i*
  baroreflexes and, 758
  contraception and, 1081*i*
  effects of, 754, 792*i*, 889
  obesity and, 987*i*
  race and, 793, 995
  treatment of, 101*i*, 564*i*, 716, 759, 792*i*–793*i*, 902
Hyperthermia, 1011
Hyperthyroidism, 739, 793*i*, 926
Hypertonic solutions, 108
Hypertrophy, 183, 227, 227*f*
  cardiac, 741, 792*i*
Hyperventilation, 766, 857*t*, 859, 868
Hypervitaminosis, 996
Hypervolemia, 932*t*
Hypocalcemia, 922*t*
  acidosis, caused by, 932*t*
  I.V. fluid therapy, caused by, 933*i*
  effects of, 231, 739, 740, 740*t*, 926
  in pregnancy and lactation, 926
  negative feedback control of, 232–233, 234*f*
Hypocapnia, 766, 868
Hypochloremia, 922*t*, 925, 932*t*
Hypochlorite, 809
Hypochondriac region, 32, 35*f*
Hypodermis, 192, 193*f*, 196, 197*t*
Hypogastric region, 32, 35*f*
Hypoglycemia, 988
Hypoglycemic hormones, 651
Hypokalemia, 922*t*, 924*f*, 925
  alkalosis, caused by, 932*t*
  effects on heart, 739, 740, 740*t*
  in stress, 664
Hyponatremia, 922*t*, 923, 925
Hypoparathyroidism, 667–668, 926
Hypophosphatemia, 922*t*
Hypophyseal portal system, 639, 641*f*
Hypophysis. *See* Pituitary gland
Hypoproteinemia, 682*i*, 755, 763
  in premature infants, 1104
Hyposecretion of hormones, 666
Hypospadias, 1037*i*, 1042*t*
Hypotension, 754
Hypothalamic thermostat, 531, 814, 1010
Hypothalamo-hypophyseal tract, 639, 641*f*, 666
Hypothalamus
  anatomy of, 530–531, 530*f*
  autonomic nervous system, role in, 578
  in emotion, 539–540
  functional review of, 531
  hormones of, 639–640, 641*f*
  in hunger, 986, 987*f*
  location of, 517*f*–518*f*
  nuclei of, 530*f*
  in olfaction, 596, 596*f*
  in ovarian cycle, 1061–1062
  pain and, 590
  pituitary, relationship to, 638–639, 641*f*, 642*t*, 644–645
  in respiration, 859
  in sleep, 537
  in taste, 594
  in thermoregulation, 17–18, 200, 508*i*, 530*f*, 1010–1011
  in thirst, 917
Hypothenar eminence, 366, 398*f*, 399*f*
Hypothermia, 1011, 1108
Hypothesis, 7
Hypothetico-deductive method, 7
Hypothyroidism and hypercalcemia, 926
Hypotonic hydration, 920, 921*t*
  I.V. fluid therapy and, 934*i*
Hypotonic solutions, 108
Hypoventilation, 857*t*, 868
Hypovolemia, 919, 921*t*, 932*t*
Hypoxemia
  causes of, 685, 869
  cardiac effect of, 739
  clubbing caused by, 205
  correction of, 685, 687, 687*f*
  and RBC count, 685, 692
  in sickle-cell disease, 695
  vasomotor effect of, 758–759
Hypoxia, 693
  blood flow and, 757
  effects on heart, 732*t*, 740*t*
  in pulmonary circuit, 767, 862, 863*f*
  types of, 869
Hypoxic drive, 868
Hysterectomy, 1053*i*

I

Ibuprofen, 665*f*, 666*i*, 814
IgA–IgM. *See under* Immunoglobulins
Ileocecal junction, 964*f*, 965
Ileocecal valve, 967, 974, 975*f*
Ileum, 964–965, 964*f*
Iliac crest, 277, 279*f*, 376*f*, 394*f*–395*f*
Iliotibial band, 333*f*, 373, 376*f*–378*f*, 400*f*–401*f*
Imaging methods, 22–24, 23*f*–24*f*, 557*f*, 557*i*
Imipramine, 580*i*
Immediate memory, 474
Immune system, 38, 815–839
  disorders of, 827–832, 832*t*
  interactions with other systems, 834
  senescence of, 1111
Immunity. *See also* Immune system
  cellular, 816, 818–821
  forms of, 816
  general characteristics of, 815–816
  humoral, 816, 822–826, 823*f*
  neonatal, 1103
Immunocompetence, 817
Immunodeficiency diseases, 114, 701, 829–832, 831*f*
Immunoglobulins, 822. *See also* Antibodies
  IgA, 822, 825*t*, 843, 970, 1077, 1078*t*, 1103
  IgD, 822, 825*t*
  IgE, 822, 825*t*, 828
  IgG, 822, 823, 824*f*, 825*t*, 826, 828, 1097*t*, 1103
  IgM, 822, 823, 825*t*, 826, 828
Immunological surveillance, 809
Immunosuppressant drugs, 211, 437*i*, 701
Implantation, 1092*f*–1093*f*, 1093
Impotence, 87*i*, 670, 1032
Imuram, 437*i*
Inclusions, 121, 124*t*, 446
Incomplete dominance, 148, 150*t*
Incomplete tetanus, 425, 425*f*
Incontinence, 509, 670, 907*t*, 1072, 1112
Incubation period of STDs, 1041*i*
Inductive method, 7

- Infant, 451. *See also* Neonate
  - dehydration in, 920
  - larynx of, 845
  - vertebral column of, 263, 263*f*
- Infarction, 185, 708
  - cerebral, 766
  - post-traumatic, 509*i*
- Infections, and anemia, 693*t*
  - atherosclerosis and, 741*i*
  - bacterial, 521*i,* 688, 754*i*
  - defenses against, 813, 814, 818*f,* 819, 823, 843
  - ear, 521
  - neonatal, 1104
  - in old age, 1111
  - opportunistic, 702
  - stress and, 664
  - urinary, 904, 905*i,* 907*i*
- Infectious mononucleosis, 708*t*
- Infective endocarditis, 741*t*
- Infertility, 87*i,* 829, 1023, 1036, 1042*t,* 1115*i*
- Inflammation, 666*t,* 810–814, 811*f,* 814*f*
- Inflation reflex, 859
- Influenza, 701, 815*i*
- Infrared (IR) radiation, 610, 1009
- Infrasound, 597
- Inguinal canal, 351*i,* 1021, 1023*f,* 1024
- Inguinal region, 32, 33*f,* 35*f*
- Inguinal ring, 1024, 1027*f*
- Inhibin, 652, 653*t,* 1023, 1031, 1031*f,* 1059, 1060, 1067
- Inhibitory postsynaptic potentials (IPSPs), 458, 469, 469*f*
- Initial segment, 447*f,* 453
- Injections, 366*i,* 369*i,* 494*i*
- Injuries. *See also* Dislocation of joints; Fractures
  - athletic, 386*i*
  - back, 349*i*–350*i*
  - brain, 538, 538*i*–539*i*
  - healing and repair of, 184*f,* 185, 235, 236*f*
  - joint, 319*t,* 320*i,* 365*i*–366*i,* 386*i*
  - knee, 316*i*–317*i*
  - muscular, 349*i*–350*i,* 383, 386*i*
  - nerve, 453, 494*i*
  - spinal cord, 508*i*–510*i*
- Inner ear, 246, 599–602, 599*f*–602*f*
- Innervation
  - by cranial nerves, 549*t*–555*t*
  - of skeletal muscles, 329–330. *See also* Muscles, specific: tables of
  - by spinal nerves, 497*t*–502*t,* 503, 503*f*
- Inositol triphosphate (IP_3), 660, 661*f*
- Inotropic agents, 740
- Insensible perspiration, 206
- Insensible water loss, 917
- Insertion of a muscle, 328
- Inspiration, 851, 852–853, 854*f*
- Inspiratory capacity, 856, 856*t,* 857*f*
- Inspiratory center, 858, 858*f*
- Inspiratory neurons, 858
- Inspiratory reserve volume, 855–856, 856*t,* 857*f*
- Insula, 518*f,* 522*f,* 532, 535*f,* 540, 594
- Insulin, 82*f,* 235*t*
  - action of, 650–651, 653*t,* 660
  - antagonized by epinephrine, 648
  - antagonized by somatostatin, 664
  - cells independent of, 650
  - in diabetes mellitus, 668–670
  - discovery of, 671*i*–672*i*
  - lactation, role in, 1077
  - mammary gland development, role in, 1076
  - metabolic regulation by, 1007–1008, 1007*t*
  - protein synthesis, role in, 1006
  - resistance to, 669
  - secretion of, 650
  - sensitivity in pregnancy, 1071
  - structure and synthesis of, 139, 655–656, 657*f*
  - transport of, 113, 114
- Insulin-like growth factors (IGFs), 643, 652, 653*t*
- Insulin receptors, 662, 1110
- Integrating center, 18
- Integration, neural, 468–474
- Integument. *See* Skin
- Integumentary system, 191–215
  - autonomic effects on, 576*t*
  - excretory function of, 881
  - interaction with other systems, 212, 1108–1109
  - overview of, 40*f*
  - in pregnancy, 1072–1073
  - senescence of, 1108–1109, 1109*f*
- Intensity of stimuli, coding of, 471, 471*f,* 586–587
- Interatrial septum, 721
- Intercalated cells of renal tubule, 896
- Intercalated discs, 176, 177*f,* 432, 726, 726*f*
- Intercellular clefts in endothelium, 752, 761, 761*f*
- Intercellular junctions, 178–179, 178*f*
- Intercourse, 1038, 1068–1069, 1069*f*
- Interdigitating folds, 726, 726*f*
- Interferons, 810, 814, 820, 828
- Interleukins, 814, 817, 820, 820*f*–821*f,* 822, 827*t,* 832
- Intermediate filaments, 120, 122*f,* 124*t*
- Intermediate muscle fibers, 430
- Internal tension of muscle, 423
- Interneurons, 446, 446*f,* 504
- Internodes, 447*f,* 453, 461
- Interoceptors, 587
- Interosseous membrane, 275, 275*f,* 296, 317*f*
- Interphase, 142
- Interpubic disc, 277, 297, 298*f*
- Interscapular region, 33*f,* 395*f*
- Intersegmental reflex arc, 508
- Interstitial cells, 651*f,* 652, 1023, 1026*f,* 1030, 1031*f,* 1032
- Interstitial fluid, 158
- Interstitial growth, 229
- Interstitial lamellae, 223
- Interventricular septum, 721, 721*f*
- Intervertebral discs, 262, 264–265, 264*f*–265*f*
  - in cadaver, 51*f*
  - herniation of, 265, 494*i*
  - histology of, 173*f*
  - in old age, 1109
  - as symphyses, 297, 298*f*
- Intestinal crypts, 965, 966*f*
- Intestinal juice, 965
- Intestinal motility, 965, 967, 967*f,* 976
- Intestines. *See* Large intestine; Small intestine
- Intracellular fluid, 97, 415, 916
- Intrafusal fibers, 504, 505*f*
- Intramembranous ossification, 225–226, 226*f*
- Intramuscular injections, 369*i*
- Intrauterine device (IUD), 1080*f,* 1081*i,* 1081*t*
- Intravenous (I.V.) fluids, 925, 933*i*–934*i*
- Intrinsic aging of skin, 1108
- Intrinsic factor, 693, 952, 954, 955*t,* 973
  - in old age, 1111
- Intrinsic muscles, 329
  - of eye, 433, 613, 618
  - of foot, 377, 384*t,* 385*f*
  - of hand, 366, 370*f,* 371*t*
  - of larynx, 845*f,* 846
  - of tongue, 338
- Intrinsic salivary glands, 946
- Introns, 136
- Inversion of foot, 306, 307*f*
- In vitro fertilization, 186*i,* 1115*i,* 1116*f*
- Involuntary muscle, 408, 432*t*
- Involuntary nervous control, 564, 566*t*
- Involution
  - of corpus luteum, 1063*f,* 1067
  - of pineal gland, 646
  - of thymus, 646, 806, 807*f*
  - of uterus, 1075
- Iodine, 57*t,* 656, 659, 667, 994*t*
- Iodopsin, 621
- Ionic bonds, 60*f,* 61–62, 61*t,* 69
- Ionization, 59, 60*f*
- Ionizing radiation, 59
- Ions, 59, 60*f*
- Ion trapping, 68
- Ipsilateral reflex arcs, 508
- IPSPs. *See* Inhibitory postsynaptic potentials
- Iris, 610*f,* 612, 612*f,* 614*f*
  - autonomic innervation of, 550*t,* 568*f,* 570, 572*f,* 577*f*
  - muscle of, 433, 613
- Iron, 57*t*
  - absorption of, 687, 687*f,* 973
  - deficiency, 205, 693, 693*t*
  - metabolism of, 687–688, 687*f,* 692
  - in old age, 1112
  - RDA and dietary sources of, 687, 994, 994*t,* 1072
  - storage of, 1004*t*
- Irritability, 16
- Ischemia, 869
  - cerebral, 766
  - coronary, 725*i*
  - endometrial, 1067
  - myocardial, 741*t,* 792*i*
  - myometrial, 1074
- Ischemic phase, 1067
- Islets of Langerhans. *See* Pancreatic islets
- Isoenzymes, 82*i*
- Isografts, 211
- Isomers, 61, 61*f*
- Isometric contraction, 425–427, 426*f*
- Isotonic contraction, 425–427, 426*f*
- Isotonic solutions, 108
- Isotopes, 58
- Isovolumetric contraction, 734–735
- Isovolumetric relaxation, 736
- Itch, 486*t,* 487

J

- Japanese
  - blood types in, 696*t*
  - prostate cancer rare in, 1029*i*
  - sweat glands in, 206
- Jaundice, 198, 692, 962*i*
  - alcoholism as cause of, 1012*i*
  - neonatal, 1104
- Jaw. *See* Temporomandibular joint (TMJ) syndrome
- Jejunum, 964, 964*f*
- Jet lag, 646*i*
- Jet pilots, 765
- Johnson, Virginia, 1037
- Joint capsule, 299, 299*f*
- Joint cavity, 299, 299*f*
- Joint movements, sense of, 588, 589*t*
- Joint prostheses, 320*i,* 321*f*
- Joints, specific
  - acromioclavicular, 269, 271
  - ankle, 317, 317*f*–318*f,* 319*t*
  - atlantoaxial, 265, 300, 302*t*
  - atlanto-occipital, 265, 309
  - carpometacarpal, 301*f*
  - coxal, 302*t,* 312–313, 318*t*
  - elbow, 300, 302*t,* 311–312, 313*f,* 318*t*
  - glenohumeral. *See* humeroscapular
  - hip. *See* coxal
  - humeroradial, 312
  - humeroscapular, 271, 300, 301*f,* 302*t,* 310, 318*t*
  - humeroulnar, 301*f,* 311–312
  - intercarpal, 301*f,* 302*t*
  - interphalangeal, 300, 302*t,* 398*f,* 399*f*
  - intertarsal, 302*t,* 317, 317*f*–318*f,* 319*t*
  - intervertebral, 264–265, 265*f,* 267, 302*t*
  - knee, 285, 285*f,* 300, 302*t,* 314–317, 315*f,* 319*t*
  - metacarpophalangeal, 301, 301*f,* 302*t,* 398*f,* 399*f*
  - patellofemoral, 314
  - radiocarpal, 302*t*
  - radioulnar, 300, 301*f,* 302*t,* 312, 313*f*
  - sacroiliac, 268, 277, 279*f*
  - shoulder. *See* humeroscapular
  - sternoclavicular, 269, 271, 301, 302*t,* 393*f*
  - talocrural. *See* ankle
  - temporomandibular (TMJ), 259
    - actions and biomechanics of, 301, 308*f*–309*f,* 309
    - anatomy of, 310, 311*f,* 318*t*
    - TMJ syndrome, 310*i*
  - tibiofemoral. *See* knee
  - tibiofibular, 283*f,* 302*t*
  - trapeziometacarpal, 300, 302*t*
- Joints in general, 293–321. *See also* Sutures; Symphyses
  - ball-and-socket, 281, 300, 301*f,* 302*t*
  - biomechanics of, 307–310, 308*f*–309*f*
  - biaxial, 300, 301*f*
  - bony (synostoses), 297
  - cartilaginous, 294–295, 295*f,* 297
  - classification of, 294–295, 295*f*
  - condyloid, 301, 301*f,* 302*t*
  - diseases and injuries of, 316*i*–317*i,* 319*t,* 320*i,* 386*i*
  - fibrous, 294–295, 295*f,* 296, 296*f,* 302*t*
  - gliding, 301, 301*f,* 302*t*
  - gomphoses, 296, 296*f,* 302*t,* 944–945, 945*f*
  - hinge, 300, 301*f,* 302*t*
  - monaxial, 300, 301*f*
  - movements of, 302–307, 304*f*–307*f*
  - multiaxial, 300, 301*f*
  - in old age, 1109
  - pivot, 300, 301*f,* 302*t*
  - saddle, 300, 301*f,* 302*t*

- Joints in general—*Cont.*
  - synchondroses, 297, 298*f*, 302*t*
  - syndesmoses, 296, 296*f*, 302*t*
  - synovial, 294–295, 295*f*, 298–319, 301*f*, 302*t*
- Joliot, Frédéric, 59*i*
- Joliot-Curie, Irène, 59*i*
- Judgment, 526, 531, 539
- Junctional fatigue, 429
- Junctional folds, 414, 415*f*, 416*t*
- Juxtaglomerular apparatus, 884*f*, 885, 890, 890*f*
- Juxtaglomerular cells, 890, 890*f*

K

- Kallikrein, 706, 707*f*
- Kangaroo rat, 897*i*
- Kaposi sarcoma, 831, 831*f*
- Karyotype, 146, 146*f*, 1107
- Kearns-Sayre syndrome, 125*i*
- Keloids, 185*f*, 185*i*
- Keratin
  - in cytoskeleton, 121
  - in epidermis, 161, 192, 199, 809
  - in hair and nails, 201, 204
  - protein structure and, 80
- Keratinized epithelium, 161, 164*f*, 164*t*
- Keratinocytes, 192, 193*f*, 197*t*
  - in calcitriol synthesis, 231, 233*f*, 652
  - life history of, 192, 194–195
  - melanization of, 196
  - in skin grafting, 211
- Keratohyalin granules, 194
- Kernicterus, 698
- Ketoacidosis, 670, 868
- Keto acids, 1005–1006
- Ketogenesis, 1004*t*, 1005
- Ketone bodies, 669, 989. *See also* Ketogenesis
- Ketonuria, 668–670
- Kidney, 14, 46*f*, 50*f*, 808*f*
  - blood supply to, 885, 886*f*
  - calcitriol synthesis by, 233*f*
  - calcium reabsorption by, 232, 233
  - compensation by for fluid intake, 920, 921*f*
  - as endocrine gland, 652, 654*t*
  - functions of, 117, 652, 654*t*, 880
  - gross anatomy of, 881–882, 883*f*
  - in hemopoiesis, 685, 687*f*, 688
  - in hormone clearance, 661
  - senescence of, 1108, 1111
  - stones, 668, 904*i*
  - tubules, 107, 111, 162*f*
  - X ray of, 879*f*
- Kidney disease, 230*i*, 887, 907*t*, 907*i*–908*i*
  - erythropoiesis depressed in, 693*t*
  - hypoproteinemia caused by, 682*i*
- Kidney failure, 907*i*–908*i*, 907*t*
  - anemia caused by, 693
  - azotemia caused by, 881, 907
  - causes of, 87*i*, 792*i*
  - diabetes and, 668, 670
  - edema caused by, 763
  - fluid retention in, 920
  - hyperkalemia in, 925
  - hypertension as cause of, 889
  - hypertension caused by, 793*i*
  - in sickle-cell disease, 695
  - from stress, 664
  - uremia caused by, 881, 907
- Killing zone, 809
- Kilocalories, 988
- Kinases, 85, 102, 102*f*, 140*t*
- Kinesin, 449
- Kinesiology, 294
- Kinetochore, 143
- Kinocilium, 606
- Klinefelter syndrome, 1106
- Knee
  - adaptation to bipedalism, 286*f*, 286*i*
  - anatomy of
    - joint, 314–317, 315*f*–316*f*
    - skeletal, 281, 282*f*–283*f*
    - surface, 400*f*
  - injuries, 316*i*–317*i*
  - locking of, 286, 375, 375*t*
  - MRI image of, 293*f*
  - muscles acting on, 373–374, 375*t*
  - reflex, 505, 506*f*
  - replacement, 320*i*
- Koreans, sweat glands in, 206
- Krause end bulbs, 588, 589*t*
- Krebs cycle. *See* Citric acid cycle
- Kussmaul respiration, 670, 857*t*, 868
- Kwashiorkor, 683*f*, 683*i*
- Kyphosis, 239*f*, 239*i*, 263*i*, 264*f*

L

- Labeled line code, 586
- Labia
  - facial. *See* Lips
  - genital
    - anatomy of, 51*f*, 1051*f*, 1055, 1056*f*
    - development of, 669*f*, 1022*f*, 1050, 1060
    - during intercourse, 1068, 1069*f*
    - pigmentation of, 196
- Labioscrotal folds, 1021, 1022*f*, 1050
- Labor. *See* Childbirth
- Labor contractions, 18, 19*f*, 666*t*, 1074
- Labrum
  - acetabular, 313, 314*f*
  - glenoid, 310, 312*f*
- Lacrimal apparatus, 610–611, 611*f*
- Lacrimal (tear) gland
  - anatomy of, 611, 611*f*
  - innervation of, 551*t*–552*t*, 552*f*, 571, 572*f*
- Lactalbumin, 1078*t*
- Lactase, 969, 970*i*
- Lactate, reabsorption in kidney, 894
- Lactate dehydrogenase, 82*i*
- Lactation. *See also* Milk
  - calcium balance in, 231, 232, 926, 1071, 1072, 1078
  - oxytocin in, 644, 645*t*, 1077
  - physiology of, 1076–1078
- Lacteal, 965, 966*f*, 972*f*
- Lactic acid
  - as bactericide, 809
  - generation and disposal of, 86, 86*f*, 998, 1004*t*
  - in muscle metabolism, 427, 428, 429
  - in myocardial ischemia, 725*i*
  - toxicity of, 86, 998
  - vasomotor effect of, 757, 766
- Lactiferous ducts and sinuses, 1057, 1057*f*–1058*f*, 1077
- Lactose, 73, 74*f*, 75*t*, 969, 989, 1078*t*
- Lactose intolerance, 970*i*, 1109
- Lacunae
  - of bone, 172, 174*f*, 221, 224*f*
  - of cartilage, 172, 173*f*, 227*f*
  - of penis, 1029, 1030*f*, 1040, 1041
- Lambdoid suture, 249*f*–251*f*, 251, 260*f*
- Lamellae, concentric, 172, 174*f*, 223, 224*f*
- Lamellated (pacinian) corpuscles, 588, 589*t*
- Lamina (vertebral), 264, 264*f*–265*f*
- Lamina propria, 182, 182*f*, 941, 942*f*, 953*f*
- Laminar flow, 756, 756*f*
- Laminectomy, 265, 510
- Laminin, 160
- Landsteiner, Karl, 694
- Langerhans cells. *See* Dendritic cells
- Language, 544, 545*f*, 557*f*
- Lanugo, 202, 1101*t*
- Large intestine, 974–977, 975*f*
- Laryngopharynx, 844*f*, 845
- Laryngospasm, 231
- Larynx
  - anatomy of, 844*f*, 845–846, 845*f*, 848*f*
  - in infancy, 845
  - location of, 45*f*, 48*f*, 341*f*
  - muscles of, 340, 340*t*, 342, 342*f*, 845*f*, 846, 847*f*
  - in puberty, 1031
  - in speech, 846, 847*f*
- Lasix, 902
- Latch-bridge mechanism, 435
- Latent period, 423, 435
- Lateral abdominal region, 35*f*
- Lateral excursion, 304*f*, 305
- Lateral horn, 484*f*, 485
- Lateralization, cerebral, 543, 545, 545*f*
- Lateral rotation, 305*f*, 306
- Lateral sulcus, 532, 532*f*
- Latex allergy, 832*t*
- Law of complementary base pairing, 132, 139
- Law of mass action, 70
- Laws of nature, 9
- Laxative overuse and hypokalemia, 925
- Leader sequence of mRNA, 136
- Lead poisoning, 199*i*, 202*i*, 699, 907*i*
- Learning, cerebral center for, 532
- Leber hereditary optic neuropathy (LHON), 125*i*
- Lecithin, 77*f*, 970, 972*f*, 1004*t*
- Leeches, medical use of, 709*f*, 709*i*
- Leeuwenhoek, Antony van, 4, 5*f*
- Leg, 36, 281
  - arterial supply to, 779*f*–780*f*, 779*t*–780*t*
  - bones of, 281, 283*f*
  - extrinsic muscles acting on, 373–374, 375*t*, 376*f*–377*f*
  - movements of, 302–303, 304*f*–305*f*, 306–307
  - muscles in, 374–375, 378*f*, 378*t*–379*t*, 380*f*–383*f*
  - surface anatomy of, 33*f*, 401*f*–403*f*
  - venous drainage of, 790*f*–791*f*, 790*t*–791*t*
- Length-tension relationship, 349*i*, 422–423, 422*f*, 431, 436
- Lenses
  - corrective, 619*f*, 619*t*
  - of eye, 612, 612*f*–614*f*, 614*i*
  - refraction by, 617, 617*f*
- Leprosy, neuropathy in, 589
- Leptin, 986, 988*i*
- Lesions, 209
- Lethal hit, 819, 820*f*
- Leukemia, 151*t*, 152*i*, 702, 702*f*
- Leukocyte (WBC) count, 682*t*, 699, 700*t*–701*t*, 701–702
- Leukocytes (WBCs). *See also specific types*
  - abnormalities of, 699, 702
  - classification of, 680
  - in fibrous connective tissue, 167
  - functions of, 700*t*–701*t*, 809–810
  - in leukemia, 702, 702*f*
  - life span of, 688
  - lysosomes in, 119
  - morphology of, 174*f*, 175, 681*f*, 690*f*, 699, 700*f*–702*f*, 700*t*–701*t*
- Leukocytosis, 701
- Leukopenia, 699
- Leukoplakia, 831
- Leukopoiesis, 686*f*, 688, 820, 813
- Leukotrienes, 664, 665*f*, 666*i*, 812, 813*t*
- Levers, 307–310, 308*f*–309*f*
- Levodopa (L-DOPA), 475*i*
- Leydig cells. *See* Interstitial cells
- Libido, 649, 1031, 1060, 1112
- Life, defining, 14–15, 16. *See also* Death
- Life expectancy, 1060*i*, 1114
- Life span, 1114
- Ligaments, 167, 218, 220, 299, 307
  - of ankle, 317, 317*f*, 319*t*
  - annular, 300, 312, 313*f*
  - broad, of uterus, 1050, 1052*f*
  - cardinal, of uterus, 1052*f*, 1054
  - cruciate, anterior and posterior, 307, 315*f*, 316, 316*i*–317*i*
  - of elbow, 312, 313*f*, 318*t*
  - of hip, 313, 314*f*, 318*t*
  - of humeroscapular joint, 310–311, 312*f*
  - inguinal, 43*f*, 347, 394*f*, 781*f*
  - of knee, 315*f*, 316, 319*t*
  - ligamentum arteriosum, 719*f*, 1100*f*, 1103
  - ligamentum teres (round ligament), 313, 314*f*, 959*f*, 1100*f*, 1103
  - ligamentum venosum, 1100*f*, 1103
  - median umbilical, 1100*f*, 1103
  - nuchal, 255
  - ovarian, 1050, 1051*f*–1052*f*
  - palmar carpal, 365*f*
  - patellar, 281, 317*i*, 376*f*, 378*f*, 400*f*, 401*f*
  - periodontal, 296, 944, 945*f*
  - round
    - of liver. *See* ligamentum teres
    - of uterus, 1052*f*, 1055
  - of shoulder, 310–311, 312*f*, 318*t*
  - suspensory
    - of breast, 1057, 1057*f*–1058*f*
    - of lens, 613, 614*f*, 618, 618*f*
    - of ovary, 1050, 1051*f*–1052*f*, 1055*f*
  - of temporomandibular joint, 310, 311*f*, 318*t*
  - transverse, of atlas, 265, 266*f*
  - uterine, 1052*f*, 1054–1055
- Ligand-regulated gates, 100, 457*t*, 463, 465
- Ligands, 80
- Light
  - focusing of, 616–617, 617*f*, 619*f*
  - properties of, 610
- Light adaptation, 624
- Lignin, 990

Limb
  lower, 280–284, 285*t*, 286*f*, 286*i*–287*i*
  upper, 273–277, 274*f*–276*f*, 278*t*, 287*i*
Limb buds, 1101*t*
Limbic system, 534
  anatomy of, 534, 535*f*
  autonomic effects of, 578
  functions of, 534, 539
  pain and, 590
  respiration affected by, 859
  thalamus, relationship to, 530, 530*f*
Limiting pH, 928
Lincoln, Abraham, 172*i*
Linea alba, 346, 348*f*–349*f*, 394*f*, 1072
Linea nigra, 1073
Linea semilunaris, 394*f*
Lines
  of bones, 247*f*, 247*t*
  flexion, 198, 398*f*–399*f*
  nuchal, 250*f*, 255, 286*f*
  temporal, 249*f*, 251
Lingual glands, 944
Lingual papillae, 944
Lingual tonsils, 593*f*, 806
Linoleic acid, 76*f*, 78*i*, 990
Linolenic acid, 990
Lipase
  gastric, 952, 954, 955*t*
  lingual, 946, 970
  pancreatic, 962, 963*t*, 970
Lipids, 75–78
  body content of, 990
  dietary, 792*i*, 990
  digestion and absorption of, 970, 972*f*, 973
  functions of, 78*t*, 989*t*, 990
  metabolism of, 1004–1005
  in plasma membrane, 99–100, 99*f*
Lipofuscin, 446
Lipogenesis, 1004, 1005*f*, 1007*t*
Lipolysis, 1004–1005, 1005*f*, 1007*t*, 1008
Lipoprotein lipase, 991
Lipoproteins, 78*i*, 683*t*, 742*i*, 991–992, 991*t*, 992*f*, 1004*t*
Lipostat hypothesis, 986
Lipoxygenase, 664, 665*f*, 666*i*
Lips, 393*f*, 943–944
  muscles of, 334, 334*f*–336*f*, 337*t*–338*t*
Lithotripsy, 904*i*, 962*i*
Liver
  alcohol metabolism by, 1012*i*
  anatomy of, 959–961, 959*f*–961*f*
  bilirubin metabolism by, 692
  blood clotting, role in, 704, 706*t*, 707*i*, 1004*t*
  in calcitriol synthesis, 233, 233*f*, 652, 654*t*
  cholesterol disposal by, 742*i*
  diseases of, 198, 707*i*
  as endocrine gland, 643, 652, 654*t*
  failure, 1043*i*
  fetal and neonatal, 1098–1099, 1100*f*, 1104
  functions of, 117, 179–180, 1003, 1004*t*, 1006
  in hemopoiesis, 685, 687*f*, 688
  hormone clearance by, 661
  and hypoproteinemia, 682*i*
  iron metabolism by, 687*f*
  lactic acid metabolism by, 998
  lipid metabolism by, 991, 992*f*
  location of, 44*f*, 50*f*, 959
  in old age, 1112
  peroxisomes in, 119
Lobes
  cerebral, 531–532, 532*f*
  hepatic, 959, 959*f*
  lobules and, 180, 180*f*, 960, 960*f*
Local hormones. *See* Paracrines
Local potentials, 456–458, 457*t*
Location, sensory coding of, 586
Lochia, 1076
Lockjaw, 414*i*
Locus, gene, 150*t*
Loewi, Otto, 463
Long, Crawford W., 628*i*–629*i*
Long bones, general anatomy of, 219–220, 220*f*
Longevity, heritability of, 1113
Longitudinal fissure, cerebral, 516, 517*f*, 522*f*
Longitudinal sections, 160, 160*f*
Long (vagovagal) reflexes, 942, 957, 957*f*
Long-term potentiation, 474
Loop of Henle. *See* Nephron loop
Loose connective tissue, 168–169, 170*f*, 170*t*
Lordosis, 263*i*, 264*f*
Loudness, 598, 603
Lou Gehrig disease, 490*i*
Love, 539
Low-carbohydrate diets, 989
Low-density lipoprotein (LDL), 78*i*, 112, 113*f*, 741*i*–742*i*, 991–992, 991*t*, 992*f*
Lower limb. *See* Foot; Leg; Tarsal region; Thigh
Lumbar curvature, 263, 263*f*, 287*i*
Lumbar puncture, 521*i*
Lumbar region, 32
  muscles of, 350*f*–352*f*, 353*t*
  of spinal cord, 482, 483*f*
  surface anatomy of, 33*f*, 395*f*
Lumpectomy, 1058
Lungs
  anatomy of, 847–849, 850*f*
  circulation to. *See* Circulation, pulmonary
  diseases of, 868–872; 870*f*
  fetal and neonatal, 1099, 1103
  histology of, 848–849, 851*f*
  location and sectional views of, 44*f*, 45*f*, 46*f*, 49*f*
  physiology of, 851–857, 860–868
Luteal phase, 1064*t*, 1066–1067
Lutein cells, 1066
Luteinizing hormone (LH)
  functions of, 642, 645*t*
  in male, 1030, 1031*f*, 1032
  as neurotransmitter, 574
  pituitary, secretion by, 641*f*, 642, 643*f*
  in pregnancy, 1071
  in puberty, 1058–1059
  in sexual cycle, 1063*f*, 1065–1067, 1066*f*
  T lymphocytes, secretion by, 833
Luteinizing hormone (LH) receptors, 662, 1064
Luteotropic hormone, 1066
Lymph, 800–801
  flow of, 802, 804
Lymphadenitis, 806
Lymphadenopathy, 806
Lymphatic capillaries, 801, 801*f*
Lymphatic cells, 804
Lymphatic drainage, and edema, 763
Lymphatic ducts, 800*f*
Lymphatic nodules, 804, 805, 805*f*, 965
Lymphatic system, 799–808
  disorders of, 832*t*
  fluid recovery by, 800, 916, 917*f*
  functions of, 800
  interactions with other systems, 834
  overview of, 41*f*, 800, 800*f*
Lymphatic vessels, 800*f*, 801–802, 802*f*
Lymph nodes
  anatomy of, 804*f*–805*f*, 805–806
  atrophy of, 833*i*
  locations of, 800*f*, 804–805
  plasma cells in, 822
  reticular tissue of, 170*f*
Lymphoblasts, 686*f*
Lymphocytes. *See also* B cells; Na^+ - K^+; T cells
  appearance of, 174*f*, 681*f*, 699, 701*f*–702*f*, 701*t*, 805*f*
  development of, 686*f*, 688, 816
  in fibrous connective tissues, 167
  function of, 809
  in intestinal mucosa, 965
  types of, 804, 817, 818–819, 826*t*
Lymphokines, 817, 821*f*
Lymphoma, 151*t*
Lymphotoxin, 820, 827*t*
Lysosomes, 98*f*, 119, 119*f*, 124*t*. *See also* Acrosome
  formation of, 140*f*, 140*t*
  phagocytosis and, 112, 112*f*
  size of, 97*t*
Lysozyme, 611, 809, 843

M

Macleod, J. J. R., 671*i*–672*i*
Macromolecules, 72
Macrophage-activating factor, 821*f*
Macrophages, 167, 810
  alveolar, 810, 849, 852*f*
  antigen-presenting function, 804, 817, 818*f*
  cortisol, effect of, 833*i*
  in healing, 184*f*, 186, 235, 453, 454*f*
  hepatic, 810
  in inflammation, 812*t*, 813
  in lymphatic tissue, 804, 805*f*
  in nervous tissue, 451, 453, 454*f*
  in nonspecific defense, 199
  origin of, 688
  phagocytosis by, 112
  stimulated by T_H cells, 819
  types of, 810
Macula densa, 885*f*, 890, 890*f*, 891*f*
Macula lutea, 612*f*, 615, 615*f*
Macula sacculi, 606
Macula utriculi, 606
Magnesium, 57*t*
  in bone, 221
  in neuronal function, 474
  RDA and dietary sources of, 994, 994*t*
  reabsorption of, 893*f*, 894
Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), 23*i*, 24*f*, 293*f*, 557
Magnification vs. resolution, 96, 96*f*
Major histocompatibility complex (MHC), 817
  proteins, 817, 818*f*, 819, 819*t*, 820*f*, 822*f*, 827*t*
Malaria, 693*t*, 695
Male, 1018. *See also* Reproductive system, male
  genetic determination of, 1019
  reference man, 16
Malignancy, 151*i*
Malignant melanoma, 209, 209*f*
Malleolus, 281, 283*f*, 317, 317*f*, 318*f*, 378*f*, 401*f*–405*f*
Malnutrition in elderly, 1112
Malocclusion, 310*i*
Maltase, 969
Maltose, 73, 74*f*, 75*t*, 969, 989
Mammary glands. *See also* Lactation
  development in pregnancy, 1070–1071, 1076–1077
  endocrine effects on, 642, 652
  as integumentary glands, 207, 207*t*
Mammillary bodies, 525*f*, 530–531, 530*f*, 533*f*, 535*f*
Mammograms, 1058, 1059*f*
Manganese, 57*t*, 994, 994*t*
Mannitol, I.V. administration of, 933*i*
Manus. *See* Hand
MAO. *See* Monoamine oxidase
Marfan syndrome, 169, 172*i*
Margination, 812, 814*f*
Mass movements, 976
Mass reflex reaction, 509*i*
Mast cells
  in connective tissue, 167, 812, 814*f*
  in inflammation, 812, 812*t*–813*t*, 814*f*
  as paracrine cells, 664
  stimulated by IgE, 825*t*, 828
Mastectomy, 1058, 1059*f*
Masters, William, 1037
Mastication. *See* Chewing
Mastoid notch, 250*f*
Mastoid process, 341*f*
Matrix
  bone, 172, 174*f*, 221–223, 224*f*
  cartilage, 172, 173*f*
  mitochondrial, 120, 120*f*, 998
  tissue, 158, 167–168
Maximum oxygen uptake, 429
Maximum voluntary ventilation, 856
Mean arterial blood pressure, 754
Measles, effect on WBC count, 701
Meatuses
  acoustic, 249*f*, 250*f*, 252*t*, 254, 254*f*
  of bones, 247*t*
Mechanical advantage, 308, 308*f*
Mechanical digestion, 940
Mechanical junctions, 726
Mechanically regulated gates, 100
Mechanoreceptors, 587, 591
Meconium, 1078, 1101*t*
Medial excursion, 304*f*, 305
Medial geniculate body, 525*f*
Medial lemniscus, 488*f*, 528
Medial rotation, 305*f*, 306
Median forebrain bundle (MFB), 540
Median plane, 31, 31*f*
Mediastinum, 36, 36*f*
Medical history essays. *See also* History
  anesthesia, 627*i*–629*i*
  animal electricity, 424*i*
  Banting, Frederick, 671*i*–672*i*
  Beaumont, William, 977*i*–978*i*
  Becquerel, Henri, 58*i*, 222*i*
  Best, Charles, 671*i*–672*i*

- Medical history essays—*Cont.*
  - Blagden, Charles, 18i
  - Byers, Eben, 222i
  - Collip, J. B., 671i–672i
  - Crick, Francis, 132i
  - Curie, Marie, 58i–59i
  - Curie, Pierre, 58i
  - digestive physiology, 977i–978i
  - DNA, 130i, 132i
  - Drew, Charles, 694i–695i
  - Franklin, Rosalind, 132i
  - Gage, Phineas, 538i–539i
  - Galvani, Luigi, 424i
  - insulin discovery, 671i–672i
  - Joliot-Curie, Irène, 59i
  - Long, Crawford, 627i–629i
  - Macleod, J. J. R., 671i–672i
  - medical word origins, 20i–21i
  - Miescher, Johann Friedrich, 130i
  - Morton, William, 628i–629i
  - radioactivity, 58i–59i
  - radium tonic fad, 222i
  - St. Martin, Alexis, 977i–978i
  - sphenomandibularis muscle, 342i–343i
  - thermoregulation, 18i
  - Volta, Alessandro, 424i
  - Watson, James, 132i
  - Wells, Horace, 628i–629i
- Medical illustration, history of, 3–4, 4f, 5f
- Medical imaging methods, 22i–24i, 557i
- Medulla oblongata
  - anatomy of, 524, 525f, 526
  - cerebellum, relationship to, 526, 527f, 543f
  - chemoreceptors in, 867
  - functional overview of, 526
  - location of, 516, 517f–518f
  - respiratory control centers of, 858–859, 858f
  - in taste, 594
  - and visceral reflexes, 565
- Medullary cavity, 219, 220f, 226f
- Medullary ischemic reflex, 759
- Megakaryoblasts, 686f, 688
- Megakaryocytes, 686f, 688, 688f
- Megavitamins, 996
- Meiosis
  - aneuploidy and, 1091
  - haploidy and, 146
  - in oogenesis, 1061, 1062f, 1064
  - in spermatogenesis, 1034, 1034f
  - stages of, 1032–1034, 1033f
- Meissner corpuscle. *See* Tactile corpuscle
- Melanin, 150f, 196, 527
- Melanocytes, 192, 193f, 1072
- Melanocyte-stimulating hormone (MSH), 642
- Melanoma, 151t
- Melanopsin, 621
- Melatonin, 646i, 653t, 654, 656
- Membrane attack complex, 810, 811f
- Membrane-coating vesicles, 194
- Membrane potentials, 111, 175. *See also* Action potentials; Electrical potentials; Resting membrane potential
- Membrane skeleton, 120
- Membranes
  - embryonic, 1097–1098, 1098f
  - mucous, 182, 182f
  - serous, 36, 37t, 182
  - synovial, 183, 299, 299f
- Membrane transport, 80. *See also* Sodium-glucose transport protein; Sodium-potassium pump
  - active transport, 110–111, 895
    - primary, 111
    - secondary, 111, 111f, 894
  - carrier-mediated transport, 109, 109f
  - cotransport, 110, 970
  - countertransport, 110, 894
  - diffusion
    - facilitated, 110, 110f, 893
    - simple, 106–107, 106f, 761, 761f
  - endocytosis, 112, 112f, 817, 818f
  - exocytosis, 114, 114f, 180, 181f, 465, 467f, 1090, 1091f
  - filtration, 106, 107–108, 108f, 761–762, 761f
  - osmosis, 107–108, 108f–109f
    - in capillary fluid exchange, 761–762, 761f
    - among fluid compartments, 916, 917f
    - in renal tubule, 761–762, 761f, 894, 897
  - overview of mechanisms, 115t
  - phagocytosis, 112, 112f, 818f
  - pinocytosis, 112, 893f, 970
  - proteins, role in, 100–101, 101f
  - receptor-mediated endocytosis, 112–113, 113f, 113i
  - transcytosis, 113, 114f, 761, 761f
  - vesicular transport, 112–114, 112f–114f
- Membranous labyrinth, 599, 600f
- Membranous organelles, 116
- Memory
  - brain centers for, 526, 531–532, 534, 539, 545f
  - consolidation of, 538, 539
  - declarative, 474
  - emotional, 539
  - immediate, 474
  - immune, 815–816, 819, 821, 825f, 826
  - long-term, 474
  - of motor skills, 539
  - in old age, 1110
  - procedural, 474
  - short-term, 474
  - synaptic mechanisms of, 473–474
  - trace (engram), 473
  - types of, 473–474
  - working, 474
- Memory cells, 819, 821, 823f, 825f, 826, 826t–827t
- Menarche, 1060
- Mendel, Gregor, 130
- Mendeleev, Dmitri, 1121
- Mendelian heredity, 130
- Meninges, 36, 37t
  - cerebral, 248, 519–521, 520f
  - spinal, 482–484, 484f
- Meningitis, 509t, 521i
- Menisci, 299, 310, 311f
  - of knee, 315f, 316, 316f
- Menopause, 649, 1032, 1112
  - evolution of, 1060i
  - osteoporosis after, 239i
- Menses, 1067
- Menstrual cycle, 1061. *See also* Sexual cycle
  - hormonal and endometrial changes in, 1063f
  - mood changes in, 646i
  - phases of, 1067–1068
  - regulation by sex steroids, 652
  - sense of smell in, 594
- Menstrual fluid, 1067
- Menstrual phase, 1063–1064, 1063f, 1064t, 1067
- Menstrual synchrony, 595i
- Menstruation, 1060, 1062, 1063f. *See also* Menarche
  - spinal cord injury, effect of, 509
- Mental cleft, 334
- Mental region, 336f, 393f
- Mentum (chin), 393f
- Mercury poisoning, 199i, 202i, 699, 907i
- Merocrine sweat glands, 180, 181f, 205, 206f, 207t
- Mesangial cells, 890, 890f
- Mesencephalic aqueduct. *See* Cerebral aqueduct
- Mesencephalon, 519, 520f, 526
- Mesenchyme, 158, 225, 1094
- Mesenteries, 38, 50f–51f, 170f, 941, 943f
- Mesocolon, 38, 941, 943f
- Mesoderm, 158, 1093–1094, 1094f–1096f, 1099t
- Mesonephric duct, 1019, 1020f
- Mesonephros, 1020f
- Mesosalpinx, 1050, 1052f, 1054, 1055f
- Mesothelium, 183
- Mesovarium, 1050, 1052f
- Messenger RNA (mRNA), 134, 136, 137f, 139f
- Metabolic clearance rate, 661
- Metabolic pathways, 84
- Metabolic rate, 647, 1008–1009
  - in old age, 1112
  - in pregnancy, 1071, 1072
  - in puberty, 1031
- Metabolic wastes, 880. *See also* Nitrogenous wastes
- Metabolic water, 916
- Metabolism, 16
  - absorptive and postabsorptive, 1007–1008
  - divisions of, 16, 70
  - energy transfer in, 70–71
  - of organic molecules, 996–1006
  - as property of life, 16
- Metaphase
  - meiotic, 1032, 1033f, 1034
  - mitotic, 143, 144f
- Metaphysis, 226f–227f, 227, 228, 234
- Metaplasia, 183, 1055, 1060
- Metarterioles, 750
- Metastasis, 151i, 152i, 451i, 870–871
- Metencephalon, 519, 520f
- Methionine, 79f
- Methyl group, 72, 72f
- Methylprednisolone, 509
- MHC. *See* Major histocompatibility complex
- Micelles, 970, 972f
- Microfilaments, 98f, 120, 122f, 124t
- Microglia, 450t, 451, 451f, 517, 810
- Microscopes
  - electron, 96–97
  - light, 4–6, 5f–6f, 97t
  - magnification and resolution of, 96–97, 96f, 97t
- Microscopic anatomy, 158. *See also* Histology
- Microtubules, 98f, 105, 120, 121, 122f–123f, 124t
- Microvilli, 97t, 98f, 102f, 103, 104f, 123t, 964
- Micturition, 905–906
- Midbrain
  - anatomy of, 526–528, 528f
  - in brainstem anatomy, 516, 517f–518f, 525f
  - embryonic, 519, 520f
  - functional overview of, 526–528
  - in hearing, 606
  - pain, role in, 591
  - spinal tracts and, 488f, 489
  - in vision, 616, 627
- Midclavicular line, 32, 35f
- Middle ear, 236, 598–599, 599f, 602
  - infections of, 599i
- Miescher, Johann Friedrich, 130i
- Mifespristone, 1081i
- Migraine headache, 556t, 564i
- Migrating motor complex, 967
- Milk, 140t
  - physical characteristics of, 65, 65f, 66, 66t
  - secretion of, 114, 119, 1077
- Milliequivalents, 67
- Mind-body connection, 14, 833i
- Mineralization, 218
- Mineralocorticoids, 648
- Minerals
  - in bone, 221–222
  - dietary, 989t, 994t
  - functions of, 56, 989t, 994
  - intestinal absorption of, 973
- Minute respiratory volume, 856, 1111
- Mitochondria, 98f
  - aerobic respiration in, 85, 86f, 998–1002, 999f
  - of cardiac muscle, 433, 727
  - cristae of, 120
  - electron micrographs of, 93f, 119f, 985f
  - matrix of, 120, 120f, 998–1000
  - of senescent muscle, 1109
  - size of, 97t
  - of skeletal muscle, 409, 410f, 430, 430t
  - of smooth muscle, 435
  - of sperm, 1035, 1090
  - structure of, 120, 120f, 124t
- Mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA), 124i
- Mitochondrial electron-transport chain, 1000, 1000f
- Mitochondrial encephalomyopathy, lactic acidosis, and strokelike episodes (MELAS), 125i
- Mitochondrial Eve, 124i
- Mitochondrial evolution, 124i–125i
- Mitochondrial myopathy, 124i
- Mitosis, 142f, 143, 144f, 1032, 1067
- Mitotic spindle, 143, 145f
- Mitral cells, 595f, 596
- Mitral valve, 722, 722f
  - prolapse, 723i
- Mittelschmerz, 1066i
- Mixed glands, 180
- Mixed nerves, 492
- Mixtures, 63
- Modality, sensory coding for, 586
- Model animals, 10
- Moiety, 75
- Molarity 66, 67f
- Mole
  - chemical mass, 66
  - epidermal, 198
- Molecular formulae, 61

- Molecular genetics, 130
- Molecular motors, 82, 101, 101*f*, 143
- Molecular weight, 61, 107
- Molecules, 61
- Molybdenum, 57*t*, 994*t*
- Monkeys, 10*f*, 11, 12*f*, 204, 286*i*. *See also* Apes
- Monoamine oxidase (MAO), 468, 574, 580*i*
  - inhibitors, 475*i*, 580*i*
- Monoamines
  - depression and, 580*i*
  - as hormones, 654, 655*t*
  - as neurotransmitters, 464, 465*f*, 466*t*
  - synthesis of, 656–657
- Monoblasts, 686*f*
- Monocytes
  - appearance of, 174*f*, 681*f*, 699, 701*t*, 701*f*–702*f*
  - atherosclerosis, role in, 741*i*
  - in connective tissues, 167
  - formation of, 686*f*
  - function of, 810
  - macrophages, transformation to, 688
- Monokines, 817
- Monomers, 72, 73*f*
- Monosaccharides, 73, 74*f*, 75*t*
- Monosynaptic reflex arc, 505
- Mons pubis, 33*f*, 43*f*, 1055, 1056*f*, 1060
- Mood, cerebral center for, 531
- Mood disorders, 646*i*
- Morning after pill, 1081*i*
- Morning sickness, 1072
- Morphine, 590
- Morton, William, 628*i*–629*i*
- Morula, 1091, 1092*f*, 1093, 1099*t*
- Motivation, cerebral center for, 531, 539
- Motor association area, 542
- Motor control in brain, 526, 531, 534, 542, 542*f*–543*f*, 544
- Motor end plate, 414, 415*f*, 416*t*, 505*f*
- Motor homunculus, 542, 542*f*
- Motor nerves, 492, 547
- Motor neurons, 490*i*, 446, 446*f*, 505
  - upper and lower, 489, 489*f*, 542
- Motor pathways, 489, 489*f*
- Motor protein, 449
- Motor skills, 542
- Motor units
  - asynchronous function of, 425
  - muscle fiber types in, 430
  - recruitment of, 424*f*, 431
  - senescence of, 1109
  - size and strength of, 412–413, 431
  - in smooth muscle, 433
  - structure of, 412, 414*f*
- Mouth. *See* Buccal cavity; Oral region
- Mouthfeel, 594
- Movement
  - of joints, 302–310, 303*f*–309*f*
  - learned, 542
  - as property of life, 16, 408
- Mucociliary escalator, 846, 848*f*
- Mucopolysaccharides. *See* Proteoglycans
- Mucosa-associated lymphatic tissue (MALT), 804
- Mucosae. *See* Mucous membranes
- Mucous cells of stomach, 952, 953*f*, 955*t*
- Mucous glands, 180
- Mucous membranes, 182, 182*f*, 809
- Mucus, 180
  - antibodies in, 825*t*
  - as barrier to infection, 809
  - cervical, 1066*i*
  - of digestive tract, 952, 955*t*, 956, 1012*i*
- Müllerian-inhibiting factor, 1019, 1050
- Multinucleate cells, 116
- Multipara, 1074
- Multiple alleles, 148
- Multiple-gene inheritance, 148, 150*t*
- Multiple motor unit (MMU) summation, 424, 431
- Multiple sclerosis, 453*i*, 506
- Multipolar neurons, 447*f*–448*f*, 448
- Multipotent cells, 186*i*
- Multiunit smooth muscle, 433, 433*f*
- Mumps, effect on WBC count, 701
- Muscarinic receptors, 574, 575*f*, 579*i*
- Muscle atrophy, 183, 412, 453, 454*f*, 455, 490*i*, 1109–1110
- Muscle cells, size of, 408, 432*t*
- Muscle fibers, 176, 408*f*. *See also* Skeletal muscle tissue
- Muscles, specific
  - abdominal oblique, internal and external, 332*f*–333*f*, 346, 347*f*–351*f*, 347*t*, 360*f*, 394*f*, 397*f*, 493, 853
  - abductor digiti minimi
    - of foot, 377, 378*f*, 384*t*, 385*f*, 405*f*
    - of hand, 370*f*, 371*t*
  - abductor hallucis, 377, 384*t*, 385*f*, 402*f*, 405*f*
  - abductor pollicis brevis, 370*f*, 371*t*
  - abductor pollicis longus, 364*t*, 366, 368*f*, 369*t*
  - adductor brevis, 372*t*, 373, 373*f*, 376*f*, 383*f*
  - adductor hallucis, 377, 384*t*, 385*f*
  - adductor longus, 332*f*, 372*t*, 373, 373*f*, 376*f*–377*f*, 383*f*
  - adductor magnus, 333*f*, 373, 373*f*, 373*t*, 376*f*–377*f*, 383*f*
  - adductor pollicis, 366, 370*f*, 371*t*, 399*f*
  - anal sphincters, 351, 354*t*, 355*f*
  - anconeus, 361, 361*t*, 362*t*, 367*f*–368*f*
  - arytenoid, 845*f*
  - auricularis, 10*i*
  - biceps brachii, 332*f*, 357, 359*f*–360*f*, 361*t*–362*t*
    - as antagonist of triceps brachii, 328–329, 328*f*
    - in cross section of arm, 367*f*
    - in elbow biomechanics, 308, 308*f*
    - fast glycolytic fibers of, 430, 430*t*
    - as forearm rotator, 363*f*
    - as fusiform muscle, 328, 329*f*
    - shoulder joint and, 311, 312*f*
    - in surface anatomy, 395*f*, 397*f*–398*f*
  - biceps femoris, 333*f*, 374, 375*t*, 377*f*–378*f*
    - in cross section of thigh, 383*f*
    - in surface anatomy, 400*f*–401*f*
  - brachialis, 357, 359*f*, 361*t*–362*t*
    - in cross section of arm, 367*f*
    - as synergist of biceps brachii, 328, 328*f*
  - brachioradialis, 332*f*, 357, 359*f*, 361*t*–362*t*, 368*f*
    - in cross section of forearm, 367*f*
    - in surface anatomy, 395*f*, 398*f*
  - buccinator, 334, 335, 336*f*, 338*t*, 341*f*
  - bulbocavernosus, 1039*f*, 1041
  - bulbospongiosus (bulbocavernosus), 351, 354*t*, 355*f*
  - ciliary, 571, 618, 618*f*
  - coccygeus, 351, 354*t*, 355*f*
  - coracobrachialis, 356, 358*t*, 359*f*, 361*t*, 367*f*
  - corrugator supercilii, 334, 335*f*, 336*f*, 337*t*
  - cremaster, 1027, 1027*f*
  - cricoarytenoid, 847*f*
  - dartos, 1027, 1027*f*
  - deltoid, 332*f*–333*f*, 350*f*, 356, 358*t*, 359*f*–360*f*, 361*t*
    - in cross section of arm, 367*f*
    - as multipennate muscle, 328, 329*f*
    - as site of drug injections, 369*i*
    - in surface anatomy, 394*f*–395*f*, 398*f*
  - depressor anguli oris (triangularis), 334, 334*f*–336*f*, 338*t*
  - depressor labii inferioris, 334, 334*f*–336*f*, 338*t*
  - diaphragm, 36, 44*f*, 47*f*, 49*f*–50*f*, 345–346, 345*f*, 346*t*, 852–853
    - breathing, role in, 345–346, 852–853, 854*f*, 858, 858*f*
    - hiatal hernia of, 352
  - digastric, 339*t*, 340, 341*f*–342*f*
    - in jaw biomechanics, 308*f*–309*f*, 309
  - erector spinae, 333*f*, 347, 350*f*–352*f*
    - in back injuries, 349*i*–350*i*
    - in deep breathing, 852
    - slow oxidative fibers in, 430*t*
    - in surface anatomy, 395*f*
  - extensor carpi radialis brevis and longus, 364*t*, 367*f*–368*f*, 369*t*
    - in surface anatomy, 398*f*
  - extensor carpi ulnaris, 364*t*, 367*f*–368*f*, 369*t*, 398*f*
  - extensor digiti minimi, 364*t*, 367*f*–368*f*
  - extensor digitorum, 333*f*, 364*t*, 366, 367*f*–368*f*, 369*t*, 398*f*
  - extensor digitorum brevis, 377, 378*f*, 380*f*, 384*t*, 403*f*–404*f*
  - extensor digitorum longus, 332*f*, 374, 378*f*, 378*t*, 380*f*, 383*f*
  - extensor hallucis brevis, 380*f*
  - extensor hallucis longus, 374, 375, 378*t*, 380*f*, 383*f*
  - extensor indicis, 364*t*, 368*f*, 369*t*
  - extensor pollicis brevis and longus, 364*t*, 366, 368*f*, 369*t*
  - fibularis brevis, 375, 378*f*, 379*t*, 380*f*–383*f*
  - fibularis longus, 332*f*–333*f*, 375, 378*f*, 379*t*, 380*f*–383*f*
    - in surface anatomy, 401*f*, 403*f*
  - fibularis tertius, 375, 378*t*, 380*f*
  - flexor carpi radialis, 332*f*, 361*t*, 363*t*, 368*f*, 369*t*
    - in cross section of forearm, 367*f*
    - in surface anatomy, 398*f*
  - flexor carpi ulnaris, 333*f*, 363*t*, 368*f*, 369*t*
    - in cross section of forearm, 367*f*
    - pisiform bone and, 275
    - in surface anatomy, 395*f*, 398*f*
  - flexor digiti minimi brevis
    - of foot, 377, 384*t*, 385*f*
    - of hand, 370*f*, 371*t*
  - flexor digitorum brevis, 377, 384*t*, 385*f*
  - flexor digitorum longus, 375, 379*t*, 381*f*–383*f*
  - flexor digitorum profundus, 300*f*, 364*t*, 367*f*–368*f*, 369*t*
  - flexor digitorum superficialis, 300*f*, 363*t*, 367*f*–368*f*, 369*t*
  - flexor hallucis brevis, 377, 384*t*, 385*f*
  - flexor hallucis longus, 367*f*, 379*t*, 381*f*–383*f*
  - flexor pollicis brevis, 370*f*, 371*t*
  - flexor pollicis longus, 300*f*, 364*t*, 368*f*, 369*t*
  - frontalis, 332*f*, 334, 334*f*–336*f*, 337*t*
  - gastrocnemius
    - anatomy of, 333*f*, 375, 378*f*, 379*t*, 381*f*
    - in cross section of leg, 383*f*
    - fast glycolytic fibers in, 430, 430*t*, 431
    - as fusiform muscle, 328
    - motor units of, 412
    - in surface anatomy, 401*f*–403*f*
  - gemellus inferior and superior, 372*t*, 374*f*
  - genioglossus, 337, 339*t*, 341*f*
  - geniohyoid, 337, 340, 340*t*, 341*f*
  - gluteus maximus, 333*f*, 350*f*, 355*f*, 369, 372*t*, 377*f*
    - adaptation to bipedalism, 286*i*
    - in lifting, 349*i*–350*i*
    - strength of, 431
    - in surface anatomy, 395*f*
  - gluteus medius, 333*f*, 350*f*, 369, 369*i*, 372*t*, 377*f*, 395*f*
  - gluteus minimus, 369, 372*t*, 374*f*
  - gracilis, 332*f*–333*f*, 373, 373*f*, 373*t*, 376*f*–377*f*
    - in cross section of thigh, 383*f*
    - in surface anatomy, 400*f*
  - hamstrings
    - anatomy of, 374, 375*t*, 377*f*
    - injury to, 386*i*
    - in lifting, 349*i*
    - in stretch reflex, 506, 506*f*
    - in surface anatomy, 395*f*, 403*f*
  - hyoglossus, 337, 339*t*, 341*f*–342*f*
  - hypothenar group, 365*f*, 366, 370*f*
  - iliacus, 279, 369, 372*t*, 373*f*, 376*f*
  - iliocostalis, 347, 351*f*–352*f*, 353*t*
  - iliopsoas, 369, 372*t*, 373*f*, 374, 376*f*–377*f*
  - inferior longitudinal, of tongue, 341*f*
  - infrahyoid group, 337, 340*t*, 342*f*, 846, 948
  - infraspinatus, 333*f*, 350*f*, 359*f*–361*f*, 361*t*
    - in rotator cuff, 311, 356, 358*t*
    - in surface anatomy, 395*f*
  - intercostal, external and internal, 327, 345*f*, 346, 346*t*, 348, 352*f*
    - breathing, role in, 852–853, 858, 858*f*
    - in relation to breast, 1057*f*
  - interosseous
    - of foot, 377, 384*t*, 385*f*
    - of hand, 328, 329*f*, 366, 370*f*, 371*t*
  - ischiocavernosus, 350, 354*t*, 355*f*, 1029, 1039*f*, 1041

Muscles, specific—*Cont.*
  laryngeal, 846, 847f
  lateral rotators, 369, 372t
  latissimus dorsi, 333f, 348f, 350f, 352f, 356, 358t, 359f–360f, 361t
    in surface anatomy, 395f, 397f
  levator anguli oris, 334, 335f–336f, 337t
  levator ani, 351, 354t, 355f, 977, 1041
  levator labii superioris, 334, 334f–336f, 337t
  levator palpebrae superioris, 334, 335f, 337t
  levator scapulae, 333f, 336f, 342f, 350f, 356, 356f, 357t
  longissimus group, 344f, 347, 351f–352f, 353t
  lumbrical
    of foot, 377, 384t, 385f
    of hand, 300f, 366, 370f, 371t
  masseter, 332f, 334f, 336f, 337, 339t, 341f
  mentalis, 334, 335f–336f, 338t
  midpalmar group, 366, 370f
  multifidus, 349, 351f, 353t
  mylohyoid, 337, 340, 340t, 341f–342f
  nasalis, 334, 334f–336f, 337t
  oblique, of eye, 611, 612f
  obturator externus and internus, 372t, 373f–374f
  occipitalis, 333f, 334, 337t, 336f
  occipitofrontalis, 334, 337t
  omohyoid, 336f, 337, 340t, 342f
  opponens digiti minimi, 369t, 370f, 371t
  opponens pollicis, 369t, 370f, 371t
  orbicularis oculi, 332f, 334, 334f, 336f, 337t, 611f
    as circular muscle, 328, 329f
    in facial expression, 335f
  orbicularis oris, 332f, 334, 334f, 336f, 337t, 341f
    as circular muscle, 328, 329f
    in facial expression, 335f
  palatoglossus, 337, 339t, 341f
  palmar interosseous, 366
  palmaris longus, 14, 363t, 367f–368f, 369t, 398f
  papillary, 718f, 721f, 722, 729
  pectinate, 721, 721f
  pectineus, 373, 373f, 373t, 376f–377f
  pectoralis major, 271, 329f, 332f, 348f–349f, 356, 358t, 359f–360f, 361t
    as convergent muscle, 328, 329f
    in cross section of arm, 367f
    in relation to breast, 1057f–1058f
    in surface anatomy, 394f, 397f–398f
  pectoralis minor, 332f, 348f, 356, 356f, 357t, 852
    in relation to breast, 1057f
  perineus, deep and superficial transverse, 351, 354t, 355f
  peroneus. *See under* fibularis
  pharyngeal constrictors, 336f, 339t, 340, 341f, 948
  piriformis, 355f, 372t, 373f–374f
  plantaris, 14, 375, 379t, 381f
  platysma, 332f, 334f, 335, 335f–336f, 338t
  popliteus, 316, 375, 375t, 381f–382f
  procerus, 334, 334f–336f, 337t
  pronator quadratus, 361, 361t–362t, 363f, 368f
  pronator teres, 361, 361t–362t, 363f, 367f–368f
  psoas major, 369, 372t, 373f, 376f
  pterygoids, 337, 339t, 341f
  pupillary constrictor, 571
  quadratus femoris, 372t, 373, 375t
  quadratus lumborum, 349, 351f, 353t, 430t
  quadratus plantae, 377, 384t, 385f
  quadriceps femoris, 373–374, 375t, 376f–377f
    in cross section of thigh, 383f
    in knee joint, 314, 315f
    muscle fiber types in, 430, 430t
    strength of, 431
    in stretch reflex, 506, 506f
    in surface anatomy, 400f
  rectus, of eye, 611, 612f
  rectus abdominis, 332f, 346, 347f–349f, 347t
    in deep breathing, 853
    as parallel muscle, 328, 329f
    in surface anatomy, 394f, 397f
  rectus femoris, 332f, 373–374, 375t, 376f–377f
    as bipennate muscle, 328, 329f
    in cross section of thigh, 383f
    in surface anatomy, 400f
  rhomboideus major and minor, 333f, 350f, 356, 356f, 357t, 360f
  risorius, 334, 335f–336f, 338t
  sartorius, 332f, 374, 375t, 376f–377f
    in cross section of thigh, 383f
    as parallel muscle, 328, 329f
    strength of, 431
  scalenes, 342f, 343, 343t, 852
  semimembranosus, 333f, 374, 375t, 377f
    in cross section of thigh, 383f
    in knee joint, 314
    in surface anatomy, 400f, 402f
    as unipennate muscle, 328
  semispinalis group, 343t, 344–345, 344f, 349, 350f–351f, 353t
  semitendinosus, 333f, 374, 375t, 377f, 383f, 400f
  serratus anterior, 332f–333f, 348f, 350f, 356, 356f, 357t, 360f
    in surface anatomy, 394f, 397f
  serratus posterior inferior and superior, 333f, 347, 350f–351f, 353t
  soleus, 332f–333f, 375, 378f, 379t, 380f–381f
    in cross section of leg, 383f
    slow oxidative fibers in, 429, 430t, 431
    in surface anatomy, 401f–403f, 405f
  sphenomandibularis, 342i–343i
  spinalis group, 347, 351f–352f, 353t
  splenius group, 333f, 342f, 343t, 344–345, 350f–351f
  stapedius, 599, 602, 605f
  sternocleidomastoid, 332f–334f, 336f, 342f, 343, 343t, 344f, 350f
    in deep breathing, 852
    in surface anatomy, 394f
  sternohyoid, 336f, 337, 340t, 342f
  sternothyroid, 336f, 337, 340t, 342, 342f
  styloglossus, 337, 339t, 341f
  stylohyoid, 337, 340, 340t, 341f–342f
  subclavius, 348f
  subscapularis, 356, 358t, 359f, 361f, 361t
    in rotator cuff, 311, 356, 358t
  supinator, 361, 361t–362t, 363f, 367f–368f
  suprahyoid group, 337, 339t–340t, 342f
  supraspinatus, 333f, 350f, 359f, 361f, 361t
    in rotator cuff, 311, 356, 358t, 386i
  tables of, 337t–340t, 343t, 346t–347t, 353t–354t, 357t–358t, 362t–364t, 371t–373t, 375t, 378t–379t, 384t
  temporalis, 251, 336f, 338, 339t, 341f
    in jaw biomechanics, 309–310, 309f
  tensor fasciae latae, 332f, 369, 372t, 373, 376f–377f
    in surface anatomy, 400f
  tensor tympani, 599f, 602, 605f
  teres major, 333f, 350f, 356, 358t, 359f–360f, 361t, 367f
    in surface anatomy, 395f
  teres minor, 333f, 350f, 356, 359f, 361f, 361t
    in rotator cuff, 311, 356, 358t
  thenar group, 365f, 366, 370f
  thyrohyoid, 336f, 337, 340, 340t, 342f
  tibialis anterior, 332f, 375, 378f, 378t, 380f
    in cross section of leg, 383f
    in surface anatomy, 401f, 403f, 405f
  tibialis posterior, 375, 379t, 382f–383f, 386i
  trabecular, 1029, 1038f, 1039, 1041
  trachealis, 846, 848f
  transverse perineus, deep and superficial, 351, 354t, 355f
  transversus abdominis, 332f, 346, 347f–348f, 347t, 493, 853
  trapezius, 332f–333f, 342f, 343t, 344, 344f, 350f, 352f, 356, 356f, 357t
    in surface anatomy, 393f–395f, 398f
  triceps brachii, 333f, 357, 359f–360f, 361t–362t
    as antagonist of biceps brachii, 328f, 329
    in cross section of arm, 367f
    in surface anatomy, 395f, 397f–398f
  triceps surae, 375
  urethral sphincters, 351, 354t, 355f
  vastus intermedius, 373, 375t, 376f, 383f
  vastus lateralis, 332f, 373, 375t, 376f–377f
    in cross section of thigh, 383f
    as site of drug injections, 369i
    in surface anatomy, 400f–401f
  vastus medialis, 332f, 373, 375t, 376f–377f
    in cross section of thigh, 383f
    in surface anatomy, 400f
  zygomaticus major and minor, 328, 332f, 334, 334f–336f, 337t
Muscles in general
  attachments of, 326
  circular, 328, 329f
  circulation to, 766
  connective tissues of, 326–327, 327f, 408–409
  convergent, 328, 329f
  excitability of, 231
  extrinsic, 329
  fatigue of. *See* Fatigue
  functions of, 326
  fusiform, 328, 329f
  injuries to, 349i–350i, 383, 386i
  innervation of, 329, 432t, 433–434, 433f–434f
  intrinsic, 329
  metabolism of, 427–431, 428f, 430t
  naming of, 330, 331t
  parallel, 328, 329f
  pennate, 328, 329f
  perfusion of, in old age, 1110
  soreness of, 436t
  strength of, 431
  tension in, 423–426, 424f–426f
Muscle spindle, 504, 505f, 589t
Muscle tone, 423, 435, 542
Muscle twitch, 423–425, 423f–425f, 429–430
Muscular arteries, 749f, 750
Muscular dystrophy (MD), 82i, 437i
Muscularis externa, 941, 942f, 966f
Muscularis mucosae, 182, 182f, 941, 942f, 953f
Muscular system, 325–390
  interaction with other systems, 387
  overview of, 40f, 332f–333f
  senescence of, 1109–1110
Muscular tissue, 159t, 175–177, 177f, 407–441
Muslim medicine, 4
Mustard gas poisoning, 693t
Mutagens, 151i, 1105
Mutations, 16, 142, 229i, 988i
  in HIV, 831
Myasthenia gravis, 437f, 437i, 828
Mycobacterium tuberculosis, 871t
Mycoplasma hominis, 1042i
Myelencephalon, 519, 520f, 524
Myelin, 447, 450, 451f. *See also* Nerve fibers, myelinated
  diseases of, 453i
  sheath, 451–453, 451f–452f
Myelinated nerve fibers, 451–453, 451f–452f
Myeloblasts, 686f
Myelocytes, 686f
Myeloid tissue. *See* Red bone marrow
Myenteric plexus, 563f, 941, 942f, 948
Myoblasts, 409
Myocardial infarction (MI), 724, 725i, 732t, 1111
  free radicals and, 60
  referred pain in, 590, 591f
Myocardium, 718f, 720, 720f–721f
Myocytes, 432–433
  cardiac, 176, 726–727, 726f
Myoepithelial cells, 206, 615, 1077, 1078f
Myofibrils, 409, 410f, 412f, 413t, 431
Myofilaments, 409, 412f, 413t

Myoglobin, 413*t,* 688
  in cardiac muscle, 433, 727
  in renal tubules, 907*i*
  in senescent muscle, 1109
  in skeletal muscle, 409, 427, 428*f,* 429–430, 430*t*
Myogram, 423, 423*f,* 424
Myokinase, 427, 428*f*
Myology, 326
Myometrium, 1052*f,* 1053, 1054, 1074
Myopia, 619*f,* 619*t*
Myosin, 101, 120, 409, 411*f,* 413*t,* 417
Myosin ATPase, 417, 419, 424, 435
Myosin light-chain kinase, 432*t,* 435
Myositis, 436*t*
Myotatic reflex, 504
Myotonia, 1040, 1068
Myxedema, 667, 670*t*

N

Na^+-Ca^+ antiport, 973
NAD. *See* Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide
an-Nafis, Ibn, 716
Nails, 204–205, 205*f,* 205*t*
Na^+-K^+ ATPase. *See* Sodium-potassium pump
Nares, 255, 842, 843*f*–844*f*
Nasal cavity, 48*f,* 246, 251*f,* 257*f,* 842, 847*i*
Nasal choanae, 250*f,* 255, 256*f*–257*f*
Nasal conchae, 843, 844*f*
Nasal epithelium, 183
Nasal fossae, 843
Nasal meatuses, 843, 844*f*
Nasal region, 393*f*
Nasal septum, 259, 843
Nasolacrimal duct, 611, 611*f*
Nasopharynx, 844*f,* 845
Natal cleft, 395*f*
Natural killer (NK) cells, 809, 810, 819, 826*t,* 833*i*
Natural selection, 9
Neanderthals, 11, 516
Near point of vision, 618
Near response, 617, 617*f*
Neck
  external anatomy of, 393*f*
  muscles of, 342*f,* 343–345, 343*t,* 344*f*
  surface anatomy of, 393
  triangles of, 343, 344*f*
Necrosis, 183. *See also* Gangrene; Infarction
  endometrial, 1067
  in spinal cord injury, 509
Negative feedback inhibition, 645–646
Negative feedback loops, 17, 17*f*–18*f.* *See also* Homeostasis
  in acid-base balance, 868, 928
  in blood pressure regulation, 758–759, 890–891, 892*f*
  in calcium homeostasis, 232–233, 234*f*
  in cell volume, 111
  in electrolyte balance, 923*f*
  in erythropoiesis, 685, 687*f*
  in gastric secretion and motility, 957, 958*f*
  in glomerular filtration, 889–891, 891*f*
  in hypoxemia, 685, 687*f*
  in pulmonary ventilation, 862, 863*f*
  in renal function, 891*f*
  in respiration, 863*f*
  in thermoregulation, 17–18, 17*f*–18*f,* 1010–1011
  in water balance, 918–919, 919*f*
Negative selection of immune cells, 817
Negative water balance, 919, 921*t*
Neisseria gonorrhoeae, 1042*i*
Neocortex, 533, 534*f*
Neonate, 1070. *See also* Infant
  adaptations to independence, 1103
  clinical assessment of, 262*i,* 1103*i*
  congenital disorders of, 1104–1107
  hemolytic disease of, 693*t,* 697–698, 698*f*
  HIV infection of, 1104
  immunity in, 822, 825*t,* 1077, 1103
  premature, 1103–1104
  skull of, 260, 260*f*
  spinal curvature of, 263, 263*f*
  transitional period of, 1101
Neoplasia, 183. *See also* Cancer
Neoplasms, 151*i*
Nephron loop, 883, 884*f*
  as countercurrent multiplier, 898, 899*f*
  evolution of, 897*i*
  water and electrolyte reabsorption by, 895–896, 900*f*
Nephrons, 882–885, 884*f*
  destruction of, 889, 1111
Nephroptosis, 882, 907*t*
Nephrosclerosis, 889
Nephrotic syndrome, 907*t*
Nerve cells. *See* Neurons
Nerve cords, 498*t*
Nerve divisions, 498*t*
Nerve fascicles, 481*f,* 491, 491*f*
Nerve fibers, 175, 481*f,* 491*f*
  axonal transport in, 449
  classification of, 492, 492*t*
  infection via, 449
  myelinated, 447*f,* 452–453, 452*f,* 461–462, 462*f*
  for pain, 587, 588, 589–591, 590*f*–591*f*
  in reflex arcs, 504, 505*f*–508*f*
  regeneration of, 449, 453–455, 454*f*
  signal conduction in, 460–462, 461*f*–462*f*
  unmyelinated, 453, 460–461, 461*f*
Nerve growth factor, 185, 455*i,* 475*i*
Nerve roots, 498*t*
Nerves, specific
  abducens (cranial nerve VI), 526, 548*f,* 552*f,* 552*t,* 605*f,* 606, 608, 611, 612*f*
  accessory (cranial nerve XI), 339*t,* 343*t,* 357*t,* 526, 548*f,* 555*f,* 555*t,* 608
  ansa cervicalis, 340, 340*t,* 497*f,* 497*t*
  axillary, 358*t,* 498*f,* 498*t*
  cardiac, 570, 738
  cervical, 343*t*
  coccygeal, 502*t*
  cochlear, 599*f*–600*f,* 601, 604
  common peroneal, 375*t*
  cutaneous, 496*f*
  deep peroneal, 378*t,* 384*t*
  dorsal, of penis, 1030*f,* 1039
  dorsal scapular, 357*t,* 498*f*
  facial (cranial nerve VII), 337*t*–340*t,* 526, 548*f,* 552*f,* 552*t,* 571, 579, 594, 947, 948
  femoral, 44*f,* 372*t*–373*t,* 375*t,* 500*f,* 500*t*
  fibular, 500*f,* 502*f,* 502*t*
  genitofemoral, 500*f,* 500*t*
  glossopharyngeal (cranial nerve IX), 553*f,* 553*t*
    baroreflex, involvement in, 553*t,* 565, 565*f*
    medulla, relationship to, 526, 548*f,* 579
    parasympathetic fibers of, 571
    respiration, role in, 553*t,* 867
    reticular formation, relationship to, 579
    salivation and swallowing, role in, 339*t,* 553*t,* 947, 948
    taste, role in, 553*t,* 594
  gluteal, 372*t,* 501*t,* 502*f*
  great auricular, 497*f,* 497*t*
  hypoglossal (cranial nerve XII), 339*t*–340*t,* 497*f,* 526, 548*f,* 555*t,* 555*f,* 948
  iliohypogastric, 347*t,* 500*f,* 500*t*
  ilioinguinal, 347*t,* 500*f,* 500*t*
  intercostal, 346*t*–347*t,* 353*t,* 493, 496*f,* 858
  internal obturator, to, 501*t*
  internal pudendal, 1039
  lateral femoral cutaneous, 500*f,* 500*t*
  lateral plantar, 384*t*
  lesser occipital, 497*f,* 497*t*
  lingual, 594
  long thoracic, 357*t,* 498*f*
  lumbar, 353*t*
  medial antebrachial cutaneous, 498*f*
  medial brachial cutaneous, 498*f*
  medial plantar, 384*t*
  median, 362*t*–364*t,* 365*f,* 371*t,* 498*f,* 499*t*
  meningeal nerve, 493, 495*f*
  musculocutaneous, 358*t,* 362*t,* 498*f,* 499*t*
  obturator, 372*t*–373*t,* 500*f,* 500*t*
  oculomotor (cranial nerve III), 337*t,* 527, 527*f,* 548*f,* 550*f,* 550*t,* 571, 579, 608, 611, 612*f,* 616
  olfactory (cranial nerve I), 548*f*–549*f,* 549*t,* 595*f,* 596
  optic (cranial nerve II), 489, 548*f*–549*f,* 549*t,* 612, 612*f*
  ovarian, 1050
  pectoral, 357*t*–358*t,* 498*f*
  pelvic, 572*f,* 573, 905, 906*f*
  pelvic splanchnic, 573
  perforating cutaneous, 501*t*
  phrenic, 346*t,* 497*f,* 497*t,* 499*f,* 852, 853, 858
  piriformis, to, 501*t*
  plantar, 500*f*
  posterior cutaneous, 501*t,* 502*f*
  pudendal, 354*t,* 500*f,* 502*f,* 502*t,* 906*f*
  quadratus femoris, to, 501*t*
  radial, 362*t,* 364*t,* 494*i,* 498*f,* 498*t*
  renal, 886
  sacral, 354*t,* 372*t*
  saphenous, 500*f,* 500*t*
  sciatic, 494*i,* 500*f,* 502*f*
  splanchnic, 567*f,* 569, 569*f,* 570, 571*t,* 572*f*
  subclavian, 498*f*–499*f*
  subscapular, 358*t,* 498*f*
  superficial peroneal, 379*t*
  supraclavicular, 497*f,* 497*t*
  suprascapular, 358*t,* 498*f*
  sympathetic, 569–570
  testicular, 1024
  thoracic, 353*t*
  thoracodorsal, 358*t,* 498*f*
  tibial, 373*t,* 375*t,* 379*t,* 500*f,* 501*t,* 502*f*
  transverse cervical, 497*f,* 497*t*
  trigeminal (cranial nerve V), 551*f,* 551*t*
    muscles innervated by, 339*t*–340*t*
    olfaction, role in, 596
    pons, relationship to, 526, 548*f*
    in somesthetic senses, 589, 590
    swallowing, role in, 948
    in tympanic reflex, 605*f,* 606
  trochlear (cranial nerve IV), 527, 548*f,* 550*f,* 550*t,* 608, 611, 612*f*
  tympanic, 571, 573
  ulnar, 363*t*–364*t,* 365*f,* 371*t,* 498*f,* 499*t*
  vagus (cranial nerve X), 554*f,* 554*t*
    acetylcholine from, discovery of, 463
    baroreflex, role in, 565, 565*f*
    in cadaver, 499*f,* 567*f*
    cardiac effects of, 728, 738, 740
    digestive system, effects on, 339*t,* 942, 957–958, 957*f,* 963
    medulla, relationship to, 526, 548*f,* 579
    in parasympathetic nervous system, 573
    respiration, role in, 859, 867
    in somesthetic senses, 589
  vestibular, 599*f*–600*f,* 608
  vestibulocochlear (cranial nerve VIII), 526, 548*f,* 553*f,* 553*t,* 604, 605*f,* 608
Nerve signal, 416
  vs. action potential, 460
  cessation of, 467–468
  conduction of, 460–461, 461*f*–462*f*
  speed of, 453, 461
  synaptic transmission of, 465–467, 467*f*
Nerves in general, 444, 490
  anatomy of, 481*f,* 490–492, 490*f*
  classification of, 492
  disorders of. *See* Neuropathy
  injuries to, 453, 494*i*
  vs. nerve fibers, 490
  senescence of, 1108
  in tissue sections, 750*f*
Nerve trunks, 498*t*
Nervous system, 443–633. *See also* Central nervous system; Nerves; Neurons; Peripheral nervous system; Sense organs
  divisions of, 444–445, 444*f*
  interactions with other systems, 581
  overview of, 40*f,* 444–445, 444*f*
  senescence of, 1110
Nervous tissue, 159*t,* 175, 176*f*
Net filtration pressure, 761*f,* 762
Net protein utilization, 993
Net reabsorption pressure, 761*f,* 762
Neural coding, 470–471, 471*f*

Neural crest, 519, 519*f*, 648
Neural fold, 517, 519*f*
Neuralgia, 509*t*, 556*i*
Neural groove, 517
Neural integration, 444, 468–474, 469*f*–473*f*
Neural plate, 517, 519*f*
Neural tube, 517, 519*f*
Neurilemma, 452, 452*f*, 453
Neuroectoderm, 517
Neuroendocrine cells, 637
Neuroendocrine reflexes, 644
Neurofibrillary tangles, 475*f*, 475*i*, 1110
Neurofibrils, 446, 447*f*
Neuroglia, 175, 449–451, 450*t*, 451*f*, 517, 524
Neurohypophysis, 638–639, 641*f*
Neuroimmunology, 833*i*
Neuromodulators, 464, 468, 591, 666*t*
Neuromuscular junction, 407*f*, 413–414, 414*f*–415*f*, 416*t*, 422, 437*i*, 574
Neuromuscular toxins, 414*i*
Neuronal circuits, 472–473, 473*f*, 507, 507*f*
Neuronal convergence, 569, 620–621, 624
Neuronal divergence, 569, 571
Neuronal pools, 472, 472*f*
Neurons, 175
  anaxonic, 448*f*, 449
  bipolar, 448, 448*f*
  classes of, 446, 446*f*, 448
  excitability of, 175, 231, 445, 924*f*, 925
  multipolar, 448, 448*f*
  number of, 450
  unipolar, 448, 448*f*, 449
Neuropathy, 125*i*, 365*i*–366*i*, 493*i*, 509*t*, 556*i*, 589, 670
Neuropeptides, 464, 465, 465*f*, 466*t*, 468
Neuropeptide Y, 574, 833*i*, 955, 986
Neuropharmacology, 579*i*
Neurosyphilis, 506, 1043*i*
Neurotensin, 574
Neurotransmitter receptors,
  adrenergic, 574–575, 575*f*, 576*t*–577*t*
  cholinergic, 414, 574, 575*f*
  in neuromuscular junction, 414
  synaptic location of, 463, 464*f*, 467*f*
Neurotransmitters
  absorption by astrocytes, 450, 468
  of autonomic nervous system, 574, 574*t*, 575*f*
  classification of, 464–465, 465*f*, 466*t*
  deficiencies in, 475, 580*i*
  discovery of, 463
  enzymatic degradation of, 414, 414*i*, 422, 468, 574, 580*i*
  muscle, action on, 414, 417, 418*f*, 434
  secretion of, 445, 465, 467*f*
  synaptic action of, 465–467, 467*f*
  synaptic reuptake of, 468, 580*i*
Neurovascular bundle, 750*f*
Neutrons, 57
Neutrophilia, 813
Neutrophils
  appearance of, 174*f*, 681*f*, 699, 700*f*, 700*t*, 702*f*
  in connective tissues, 167
  formation of, 686*f*
  function of, 809
  inflammation, role in, 812*t*, 813
  phagocytosis by, 112
  stimulated by T_H cells, 819
Newborn. *See* Neonate
Niacin. *See* Nicotinic acid
Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD^+), 84, 996–1000, 997*f*, 1002, 1002*f*
Nicotine, 524, 792*i*
Nicotinic acid (niacin), 84
  as NAD^+ precursor, 996
  RDA and dietary sources of, 995*t*
  synthesis of, 995
Nicotinic receptors, 574, 575*f*
Nifedipine in treating hypertension, 793*i*
Night vision, 620, 624, 625*f*, 1110
Nipple, 394*f*
Nissl bodies, 446, 447*f*, 454*f*
Nitrates in urine, 894
Nitric oxide, 468, 664
  atherosclerosis and, 742*i*
  in penile erection, 1040, 1040*i*
  vasomotor effect, 757, 1040
Nitrogen, 57*f*, 57*t*
  atmospheric, 860, 860*t*
  balance, 993
  in decompression sickness, 872*i*
  narcosis, 872*i*
Nitrogenous bases, 85, 130, 131*f*
Nitrogenous wastes, 684, 880–881, 881*f*, 894
  plasma concentrations of, 683*t*
Nitroglycerin, 716
Nitrous oxide, as anesthetic, 628*i*, 629*i*
N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptors, 474
Nobel Prizes, 59, 102, 132*i*, 137, 222*i*, 672*i*, 694, 978*i*
Nociceptors, 587, 588, 589–590, 589*t*
Nocturnal emission, 1031
Nodal rhythm, 728, 732*f*
Nodes of Ranvier, 447*f*, 453, 461
Nomina Anatomica, 20
Nondisjunction, 1105, 1105*f*
Nongonococcal urethritis, 1042*i*
Nonhistones, 130
Nonkeratinized epithelium, 161, 164*f*, 164*t*
Nonshivering thermogenesis, 1011
Nonspecific resistance, 808–815
Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), 665*f*, 666*i*
  for asthma, 829*i*
  peptic ulcer and, 956*i*
Norepinephrine, 466*t*. *See also* Adrenergic neurons; Adrenergic receptors; Adrenergic synapses
  alcohol, antagonized by, 1012*i*
  heart, effect on, 738–740, 740*t*
  as a hormone, 571, 648, 653*t*, 654
  hypersecretion of, 666
  kidney, effect on, 901*t*
  lipolysis stimulated by, 1005
  receptors, 574–575, 575*f*
  smooth muscle, effect on, 434
  structure of, 464, 465*f*
  in sympathetic nervous system, 566, 566*f*, 566*t*, 574
  synaptic action of, 467, 467*f*, 469
  vasomotor effect of, 759
Normal saline, 933*i*
Norplant, 1080*f*, 1081*i*, 1081*t*
Nose, 842–843, 843*f*–844*f*
  external anatomy of, 393*f*
Nosebleed, 843
Notochord, 1095*f*
Novocain, 629*i*
Nuchal lines, 287*f*, 287*i*, 351
Nuchal region, 33*f*, 393*f*
Nuclear bag and nuclear chain fibers, 504, 505*f*
Nuclear envelope, 116, 116*f*, 118, 144*f*
Nuclear medicine, 23*i*
Nuclear pores, 97*t*, 98*f*, 116, 116*f*
Nucleases, 973
Nucleic acids, 86, 130–133, 131*f*–133*f*, 134*t*. *See also* Deoxyribonucleic acid; Ribonucleic acid
  digestion and absorption of, 973
  in protein synthesis, 134–137, 135*f*, 137*f*–139*f*
Nuclei of brain, 516
  basal, 475*i*, 527, 533*f*, 534, 535*f*, 542
  caudate, 522*f*, 534, 535*f*
  cerebellar, 526
  cochlear, 604
  inferior olivary, 526
  lateral geniculate, 525*f*, 530*f*, 627, 628*f*
  lentiform, 534, 535*f*
  medial geniculate, 605*f*
  paraventricular, 530*f*, 640, 641*f*
  preoptic, 530*f*
  pretectal, 627, 628*f*
  red, 527, 543*f*
  solitary, 594
  subthalamic, 535
  superior olivary, 604, 605*f*, 606
  suprachiasmatic, 530*f*, 531, 537
  supraoptic, 530*f*, 640, 641*f*
  ventromedial, 530*f*
  vestibular, 608
Nucleolus, 98*f*, 116, 116*f*, 131*f*, 144*f*
Nucleoplasm, 116, 116*f*
Nucleosidases, 973
Nucleosomes, 130
Nucleotides, 85–86, 130, 131*f*
Nucleus
  of atom, 57, 57*f*–58*f*
  of cell, 98*f*, 116, 116*f*, 123*t*
  pulposus, 264–265, 264*f*
Nutrients, 940, 988, 989*t*, 994*t*–995*t*. *See also* Nutrition
  absorption of, 968–974
  essential, 988
Nutrition, 986–996
  needs in pregnancy, 1072
  prenatal modes of, 1095–1097

O

Oat-cell carcinoma, 870
Obesity, 669, 987*i*–988*i*
  atherosclerosis and, 742*i*, 987*i*
  effects of, 263*i*, 987*i*
  hypertension and, 792*i*, 987*i*
  varicose veins and, 753*i*
Obligatory water loss, 917
Obligatory water reabsorption, 894
Oblique sections, 160, 160*f*
Obstructive disorders, respiratory, 856
Occipital condyles, 250*f*, 255, 265
Occipital lobe, 517*f*–518*f*, 532, 532*f*, 540
Occipital region, 393*f*
Octet rule, 58
Odontoid process, 265, 266*f*
Odors, 596
Oils, 76
Olecranon, 275, 275*f*, 395*f*, 397*f*–398*f*
Olfaction. *See* Smell
Olfactory bulbs, 535*f*, 595*f*–596*f*, 596
Olfactory cells, 595, 595*f*
Olfactory cortex, 596, 596*f*
Olfactory mucosa, 594, 595*f*, 843
Olfactory tract, 535*f*, 595*f*–596*f*, 596
Oligodendrocytes
  myelination by, 451–452
  in spinal cord injury, 509
  structure and function, 450, 450*t*, 451*f*
Oligopeptides, 79
Oliguria, 901
Olive, 525*f*, 526
Omentum, greater and lesser, 38, 39*f*, 44*f*, 941, 951*f*, 953*f*
Oncogenes, 151*i*, 152*i*
Oncology, 151*i*
Oncotic pressure, 761*f*, 762–763
Ondine's curse, 859*i*
Oocyte, 1061, 1062*f*, 1063, 1064, 1065*f*–1066*f*
Oocyte donation, 1115*i*
Oogenesis, 1061, 1062*f*
Oogonium, 1061, 1062*f*
Opioids, 590
Opium, 590
Opportunistic infection, 702
Opposable thumb, 10, 10*f*, 300
Opposition of thumb, 306, 306*f*
Opsin, 621, 622*f*
Opsonization, 810, 811*f*, 823
Optic chiasm, 530, 530*f*, 626, 628*f*
Optic disc, 612*f*, 615, 615*f*
Optic nerve 548*f*–549*f*, 549*t*
  course of, 626–627, 628*f*
  duplicity theory and, 624–625, 625*f*
  origin of fibers, 620*f*, 621
  signal generation in, 623–624, 623*f*
Optic radiation, 627, 628*f*
Optic tracts, 626, 628*f*
Optic vesicles, 519, 520*f*
Oral cavity, 48*f*, 941*f*, 943
Oral region, 393*f*. *See also* Buccal region
  muscles of, 334–335, 334*f*–336*f*, 337*t*–338*t*, 341*f*
Orbit, 251*f*
Orbital region, 393*f*, 610, 610*f*
Orexin, 986
Organelles, 13, 97, 116–121, 123*t*–124*t*
Organic chemistry, 71
Organism, 13, 13*f*
Organ of Corti, 600, 601*f*
Organogenesis, 1098
Organs, 13, 158
Organ systems, 13
  survey of, 38*f*–42*f*
Orgasm, 644
  brainstem centers for, 531
  female, 1068, 1090
  male, 1038*f*–1039*f*, 1040–1041
Orgasmic platform, 1068, 1069*f*
Origin of a muscle, 328
Ornithine cycle, 1004*t*, 1006, 1006*f*
Oropharynx, 844*f*, 845

Orthodontics, 230
Orthopedics, 237, 316i–317i, 320i
Orthopnea, 857t
Orthostatic hypotension, 792t, 1110
Osmolarity, 108
  anemia, effect of, 693
  of blood, 681–682, 691i
  in fluid balance, 917–919
  and osmolality, 108
  and tonicity, 108–109, 109f
  of urine, 900, 902t
Osmoles, 108
Osmoreceptors, 531, 644, 917, 919
Osmosis, 107, 108f, 115t
  among fluid compartments, 916, 917f
  in equilibrium with filtration, 107–108, 108f, 761–762, 761f
Osmotic diuresis, 669–670, 902
Osmotic pressure, 107, 108f
Osseous tissue. *See* Bones
Ossicles, middle-ear, 246t, 259, 598, 599f–600f, 602, 606i
Ossification, 225, 234
  ectopic, 230, 382, 383
  endochondral, 226–228, 226f
  intramembranous, 225–226, 226f
Osteitis deformans, 238t
Osteoarthritis (OA), 299, 319t, 320i, 494i, 1109
Osteoblasts, 221, 222f
  bone deposition by, 230, 232–233, 232f, 234f, 648
  in ossification, 227–228, 227f
  and osteoporosis, 239i, 648
Osteochondroma, 238t
Osteoclasts, 221, 222f
  bone resorption by, 230, 232, 232f, 234f, 235, 648
  lactation and, 1078
  in ossification, 226, 228
  in osteoporosis, 239i
  in pregnancy, 1071
Osteoclast-stimulating factor, 232, 233
Osteocytes, 172, 221, 222f
  nourishment of, 223
  in ossification, 226, 227f, 229
Osteogenesis. *See* Ossification
Osteogenesis imperfecta, 222, 238t
Osteogenic cells, 221, 222f, 227, 234, 235
Osteoid tissue, 225, 226f
Osteology, 218
Osteoma, 238t
Osteomalacia, 230i, 232, 238t, 263i
Osteomyelitis, 238t
Osteon, 172, 174f, 223, 224f, 230
Osteopenia, 1109
Osteoporosis, 87i, 232, 238t, 239f, 239i, 263i
Osteosarcoma, 222, 238t
Otitis media, 599i
Otolithic membrane, 606, 607f
Otosclerosis, 606i
Oval window, 599, 602f
Ovarian cycle, 1061
Ovaries. *See also* Gonads; Oogenesis
  anatomy of, 1050, 1051f
  embryonic, 1020f
  endocrine function of, 651–652, 651f, 653t, 1059–1060, 1064–1068
  follicular epithelium of, 165f
  location of, 46f, 1050, 1051f–1052f
  in pregnancy, 1093
  as primary sex organs, 1018
Overflow incontinence, 907t
Overmedication of elderly, 1111
Ovulation, 642, 1050, 1062, 1062f–1063f, 1064t, 1065–1066, 1066i
Ovum, 1018, 1061
Oxidation, 70–71, 71t
Oxidation-reduction reactions, 70–71
Oxidizing agents, 71
Oxygen, 57t
  consumption by muscle, 427–428, 428f
  consumption in pregnancy, 1072
  isotopes of, 58
  loading of, 860, 861, 861f
  respiration, effect on, 868
  transport of, 863
  unloading, 861f, 864, 866
Oxygen debt, 428f, 429, 998
Oxygen toxicity, 869
Oxyhemoglobin (HbO_2), 863, 864, 865f
Oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve, 863, 863f, 866f
Oxytocin (OT)
  functional overview of, 644, 645t
  labor contractions induced by, 18, 19f, 644, 646, 1074
  lactation, role in, 644, 1077
  paraventricular nucle as source of, 530f, 640
  pituitary secretion of, 642, 644, 645t
  postpartum effect on uterus, 1076
  structure of, 655f
Oxytocin receptors, 660, 662, 1074
Ozone, 199, 610

P

Pacemaker
  cardiac, 433, 727
  respiratory, 858
  smooth muscle, 434
Pacemaker potential, 728, 729f
Pacinian corpuscles. *See* Lamellated corpuscles
Paget disease, 238t
Pain, 509t, 589–591, 666t
  in childbirth, 1074
  CNS modulation of, 489, 529, 590–591, 592f
  cranial nerves involved in, 551t, 553t
  hypothalamus and, 539
  in inflammation, 812
  projection pathways, 486t, 487, 590, 590f
  prostaglandins and, 666t, 812
  receptors for, 588, 589t, 590
  somatic reflexes stimulated by, 506
  threshold of, 597f
Palate, 48f, 249f–250f, 844f, 944
  in coughing and sneezing, 855
  evolution of, 258i
Palatine tonsils, 806, 806f
Palatoglossal arch, 943f, 944
Palatopharyngeal arch, 943f, 944
Paleocortex, 534
Pallidotomy, 475i
Pallor, 198
Palmar region, 33f, 398f
Palmitic acid, 76f, 78i
Palpation, 2, 392
Palpebral sulci, 393f
Pampiniform plexus, 1027, 1027f–1028f
Pancreas
  anatomy of, 650, 650f, 808f, 961f, 962
  digestive functions of, 962–964, 963f, 963t
  endocrine functions of, 635f–636f, 650, 650f
Pancreatic islets, 635f, 650, 650f, 653t
Pancreatic juice, 962
Pancreatitis, 978t, 1012i
Paneth cells, 965
Panoramic vision, 626
Pantothenic acid
  bacterial synthesis of, 995
  RDA and dietary sources of, 995t
Papillae
  dermal, 195–196
  lingual, 592–593, 593f
Papillary layer of dermis, 194f, 196
Pap smear, 161, 1053i, 1054f
Paracrines, 636, 651, 664
Paradoxical sleep, 537
Parafollicular cells, 648
Parallel after-discharge circuit, 472, 473f, 506
Paralysis, 412, 564
  in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, 490i
  in Bell palsy, 556i
  crutch, 494i
  flaccid and spastic, 414i–415i, 508i–509i, 566t
  in polio, 490i
  in sickle-cell disease, 695
  sleep, 537
  spinal cord injury and, 484i, 508i–510i
  stroke and, 766
  toxins causing, 414i–415i
Paramesonephric duct, 1019, 1020f, 1050
Paranasal sinuses, 246
Paraplegia, 509i
Parasites, 708i
Parasitic infections, 801f, 809, 813
  in AIDS, 830
  defenses against, 819
Parasympathetic nervous system, 444f
  anatomy of, 571–573
  bronchioles, effects on, 855
  control of pupil by, 615, 616
  digestion, effects on, 947, 963, 976
  efferent pathways of, 568f, 572f
  general properties of, 565, 573t
  heart, effects on, 738, 740t
  sexual function, effects on, 1038f–1039f, 1040
Parasympathetic tone, 565
Parasympatholytic drugs, 579i
Parasympathomimetic drugs, 579i
Parathyroid glands, 231, 636f, 648, 648f, 653t
Parathyroid hormone (PTH), 239i, 973
  calcium balance, role in, 232–233, 232f, 234f, 235t, 648, 653t, 926
  kidney, action on, 896, 901t
  lactation, role in, 1077, 1078
  phosphate balance, role in, 648, 926
  in pregnancy, 1071, 1071t
Paraurethral glands, 1056, 1056f, 1068
Parenchyma of a gland, 180, 180f
Parenteral fluid therapy, 933i
Paresis, 509i
Paresthesia, 509t
Parietal cells, 952, 953f–954f, 955t
Parietal lobe, 517f, 518f, 531–532, 532f
Parieto-occipital sulcus, 532
Parkinson disease, 475i, 542
Parotid gland, 334f
Partial pressures of gases, 859–861, 860t, 861f–862f, 866f, 868
Parturition. *See* Childbirth
Pasteur, Louis, 94
Patau syndrome, 1106
Patellar region, 33f. *See also* Knee
Pathogens, defined, 808
Pattern baldness, 204
Pavlov, Ivan, 504, 978i
Peak flow, respiratory, 856
Pectin, 990
Pectoral girdle, 271, 273–274, 278t
Pectoral region, 33f, 394f
Pedal region, 33f, 279
Pedicels, 887, 888f
Peduncles
  cerebellar, 525f, 526
  cerebral, 525f, 527, 533f
Peer review, 8
Pelvic brim, 277, 281f
Pelvic cavity, 36f, 37, 37t, 51f
Pelvic curvature, 263, 263f
Pelvic diaphragm, 351, 355f
Pelvic floor, muscles of, 350–351, 355f
Pelvic girdle. *See* Pelvis
Pelvic inflammatory disease, 1042i
Pelvic inlet, 277, 279f–280f, 280t
Pelvic outlet, 277, 280t, 1071
Pelvic region, 33f, 394f–396f
Pelvis, 47f, 277–279, 279f–280f, 280t, 285t
  human vs. ape, 286f, 286i
Pemphigus vulgaris, 179i, 828
Penetrance, 149, 150t
Penicillin allergy, 693t, 817, 828
Penis
  anatomy of, 33f, 44f–45f, 51f, 905f, 1025f, 1029, 1030f, 1038–1039
  coital function of, 1038f–1039f, 1040–1041
  embryonic, 1020f, 1021, 1022f
  pigmentation of, 196
Pennate muscles, 431
Pepsin, 83, 954, 954f, 955t, 958f, 970, 971f, 978i
Pepsinogen, 952, 954, 954f, 955t, 957, 958f
Peptic ulcer, 956f, 956i, 1012i
Peptide bonds, 79, 80f
Peptide hormones, 654–656, 655t
Peptides, 79, 80f
Pepto-Bismol, 956i
Percussion, 2
Perforating canals, 223, 224f
Perforating fibers, 220, 220f, 224f, 327
Perforins, 809–810, 819, 827t
Perfusion, 753
  cerebral, 758
  regulation of, 757–760, 759f
Pericardial cavity, 37, 37f, 37t, 49f, 718, 850f

Pericardial effusion, 741*t*
Pericardial fluid, 37
Pericarditis, 718
Pericardium, 37, 37*f*, 37*t*, 44*f*, 718, 720*f*
Perichondrium, 172
Perilymph, 599, 600, 600*f*, 602
Perimysium, 326, 432*t*
Perineal raphe, 355*f*, 1024
Perineum, 33*f*
  female, 1056*f*
  male, 1023, 1024*f*
  muscles of, 350–351, 355*f*
Perineurium, 491–492, 491*f*
Periodic table of the elements, 1121*f*
Periodontal disease, 946*i*, 1112
Periosteum, 172, 220, 220*f*, 221, 224*f*, 226*f*, 227
  inflammation of, 386*i*
Peripheral nervous system (PNS), 444. *See also* Autonomic nervous system; Cranial nerves; Spinal nerves
  glial cells of, 451. *See also* Schwann cells
  subdivisions of, 444–445, 444*f*
Peripheral neuropathy, 509*t*
Peripheral proteins, 99*f*–102*f*, 100
Peripheral resistance in circulation, 755
Peristalsis
  dietary fiber as aid to, 990
  in digestive tract, 948, 949*f*, 955, 976
  stretch, stimulated by, 435
  uterine, 1068, 1069*f*
Peritoneal cavity, 38, 38*f*–39*f*, 50*f*
Peritoneal fluid, 38
Peritoneum
  in abdominal cavity, 37*t*, 38, 38*f*–39*f*, 50*f*
  relationship to digestive system, 38, 38*f*–39*f*, 941–942, 943*f*
Peritubular capillaries, 884*f*–885*f*, 885
  and tubular reabsorption, 894–895
Perivascular feet, 450, 451*f*
Permeability of plasma membrane, 107, 456
  of capillaries, 752, 761–763, 761*f*, 812, 813*t*
  of venules, 752, 812
Permissive effects of hormones, 662
Pernicious anemia, 954, 1111
Peroxisomes, 119, 119*f*, 120, 124*t*, 140*t*
Personality, and brain lesions, 538*i*–539*i*
Perspiration, insensible, 206. *See also* Sweat
Pes. *See* Foot
PET scan. *See* Positron emission tomography
Peyer patches, 804, 965
pH, 67, 68*f*, 429
  of blood, 739
  cerebral autoregulation, role in, 766
  of cerebrospinal fluid, 739
  drug action, effects on, 68*i*
  enzymes, effects on, 83
  gastric, 952, 957
  osseous tissue and, 230*i*
  oxygen unloading affected by, 866, 866*f*
  partitioning, 68
  renal control of, 928–929
  respiration, effects on, 867–868
  respiratory control of, 928
  of urine, 900, 902*t*, 933
  of vagina, 1037*t*, 1055
Phagocytes, types of, 809–810
Phagocytosis, 112, 112*f*, 115*t*, 814*f*
Phagolysosome, 112, 112*f*
Phagosome, 112, 112*f*
Phallus, 1022*f*, 1050
Pharyngeal tonsil, 806, 844*f*
Pharynx, 48*f*, 844*f*, 845, 948
  muscles of, 339*t*, 340, 341*f*
Phasic receptors, 587
Phenotype, 147, 150*f*, 150*t*
Phenylalanine, 150*f*
Phenylephrine, 579*i*
Phenylketonuria (PKU), 149, 202*i*, 900, 1103*i*
Pheochromocytoma, 666, 670*t*
Pheomelanin, 202, 203*f*
Pheromones, 206–207, 595*i*
Philtrum, 393*f*, 843*f*
Phosphagen system, 427, 428*f*, 429
Phosphatases, 82*i*, 973
Phosphate
  buffer system, 927
  excretion of, 234*f*, 648
  functional group, 72, 72*f*, 85, 85*f*
  functions of, 230, 926
  homeostasis, 926
  imbalances, 926
  reabsorption by kidney, 893*f*, 894, 896
  requirement in pregnancy, 1072
Phosphodiesterase, 660, 1040*i*
Phosphokinase, 85
Phospholipase, 660
Phospholipids
  function of, 78*t*, 990
  in plasma membrane 99*f*, 100
  structure of, 77, 77*f*
  synthesis of, 1004*t*
Phosphorus, 57*t*, 231, 994, 994*t*, 1078*t*
Phosphorylation, 85
Photoaging of skin, 1108
Photochemical reaction, 621, 622*f*, 623
Photopsin, 620–621
Photopupillary reflex, 616
Photoreceptors, 587. *See also* Cones; Rods
Phototherapy, 646*i*, 698
Phylloquinone. *See* Vitamin K
Physical therapy, 510*i*
Physiology, 2, 3
  comparative, 897*i*
  variation in, 16
Pia mater, 483, 484*f*, 519, 520*f*, 521*i*
Pigments
  of hair, 202, 203*f*
  of skin, 196–198, 197*f*
  visual, 620–621, 622*f*, 623, 624
Pilocarpine, 579*i*
Piloerector muscles
  autonomic innervation of, 568*f*, 569, 570, 577
  in hair follicle anatomy, 201*f*, 202
  as multiunit smooth muscle, 433
  thermoregulation, role in, 1011
  as vestigial organs, 10*i*
Pineal gland, 525*f*, 527*f*, 531, 636*f*, 646, 653*t*
Pinna of ear, 393*f*, 598, 599*f*
Pinocytosis, 112, 114*f*, 115*t*
  intestinal, 970
  renal, 893*f*
Pinocytotic vesicles, 112, 114*f*
Pitcher's arm, 386*i*
Pitch of sound, 597, 603, 604*f*
Pituitary axes, 640, 642, 643*f*, 1066*f*
Pituitary gland
  anatomy of, 638–639, 641*f*
  anterior lobe of, 639, 640, 640*f*–641*f*, 642, 642*t*
  control of ovarian cycle by, 1061–1068, 1066*f*
  disorders of, 667
  embryonic, 638–639, 640*f*
  hormones of, 640–642, 641*f*
  hypothalamic control of, 531
  location of, 517*f*, 636*f*, 638
  pars intermedia of, 640*f*, 642
  posterior lobe of, 639, 640*f*–641*f*
  in pregnancy, 638, 1071, 1071*t*
  secretion, control of, 641*f*, 644–646, 645*f*
Placebo, 8
Placenta
  anatomy of, 1097, 1097*f*–1098*f*
  development of, 1054, 1095, 1096*f*
  discharge of, 1075, 1076*f*
  endocrine function of, 652, 654*t*, 1070–1071, 1097*t*
  HIV transmission through, 831
  nutritional role of, 1070, 1072, 1095, 1095*f*
  permeability of, 697, 816, 825*t*, 1097
Placental nutrition, 1095, 1095*f*
Placental sinus, 1095, 1096*f*
Placenta previa, 1079*t*
Planes
  of body, 31, 31*f*
  of tissue sections, 159–160, 159*f*–160*f*
Planning, cerebral center for, 531
Plantar flexion, 306, 307*f*, 317, 375
Plantar region, 33*f*, 385*f*, 405*f*
Plaque
  atherosclerotic, 741*i*, 742*f*, 1111
  dental, 946*i*
Plasma, blood, 175, 680, 683–684, 684*t*, 916
Plasma cells, 167, 684, 804, 822, 824*f*, 826*t*
Plasma membrane, 97, 97*t*, 123*t*
  cycling of, 114
  permeability of, 107, 456
  structure of, 98–100, 99*f*, 124*t*
Plasmapheresis, 437*i*
Plasma proteins, 682, 682*i*, 683–684, 683*t*, 762–763, 1004*t*
Plasma volume expanders, 933*i*
Plasmin, 706, 707*f*, 709*i*
Plasminogen, 706, 707*f*
Plasticity
  of smooth muscle, 436
  synaptic, 473–474
Platelet count, 682*t*
Platelet-derived growth factor, 706, 741*i*, 813*t*, 814
Platelet factors in coagulation, 703, 704, 705*f*, 706*t*
Platelet plug, 703–704, 703*f*
Platelet repulsion, 706
Platelets
  atherosclerosis, role in, 741*i*–742*i*
  hemostasis, role in, 703–704, 703*f*, 705*f*, 706*t*
  inflammation, role in, 812*t*, 814
  life span of, 688
  production of, 686*f*, 688, 688*f*
  structure and appearance of, 174*f*, 175, 681*f*, 702*f*, 703
  thromboxane, as source of, 664
Pleasure, 531, 539
Pleiotropy, 148, 148*f*, 150*t*
  in sickle-cell disease, 695
Pleurae, 36, 37*f*, 37*t*, 44*f*, 849, 850*f*
Pleural cavity, 36*f*–37*f*, 37, 37*t*, 46*f*, 49*f*, 849, 850*f*, 853
Pleural effusion and water balance, 921
Pleural fluid, 37, 849
Plexuses
  nerve
    abdominal aortic, 570, 570*f*, 572*f*, 573
    brachial, 45*f*, 494, 498*f*–499*f*, 498*t*–499*t*
    cardiac, 568*f*, 572*f*, 573
    cervical, 494, 497*f*, 497*t*
    coccygeal, 494, 501*t*–502*t*, 502*f*
    esophageal, 572*f*, 573
    hypogastric, 1039
    inferior hypogastric, 572*f*, 573
    lumbar, 494, 500*f*, 500*t*
    myenteric, 563*f*, 941, 942*f*, 948
    pelvic, 1039
    pulmonary, 568*f*, 572*f*, 573
    renal, 570*f*
    sacral, 494, 501*t*–502*t*, 502*f*, 1039
    solar, 570
  vascular
    choroid, 521, 522*f*–523*f*, 524
    pampiniform, 1027, 1027*f*–1028*f*
Plural suffixes, 21*t*
Pluripotent cells, 186*i*
Pneumocystis infection, 831
Pneumonia, 239*i*, 862*f*, 871*t*, 1111
Pneumotaxic center, 858, 858*f*
Pneumothorax, 853
Podocytes, 882, 885*f*, 887, 888*f*, 890*f*
Poisoning. *See also* Toxins; Venoms
  acetone, 199*i*, 907*i*
  anemia caused by, 693*t*
  arsenic, 199*i*, 202*i*, 699
  carbon monoxide, 861, 863, 864*i*
  carbon tetrachloride, 199*i*, 907*i*
  cutaneous absorption and, 199*i*
  cyanide, 869
  hair, effect on, 202*i*
  heavy metals, 199*i*, 202*i*, 699, 907*i*
  hypoxia and, 869
  WBC count affected by, 699
Poison ivy, 199*i*, 817, 828, 832*t*
Polar bodies in oogenesis, 1061, 1062*f*, 1092*f*
Polarity of water, 62–63, 63*f*–64*f*
Polarized cells, 415, 455
Poliomyelitis, 114, 449, 490*i*, 701
Pollex. *See* Thumb
Pollution, reproductive effects of, 1037*i*
Polycythemia
  causes of, 687, 692, 869
  effects of, 692, 755, 793*i*
Polydactyly, 149
Polydipsia, 668
Polygenic inheritance, 148, 148*f*, 150*t*
Polymerization, 72
Polymers, 72
Polypeptides, 79
Polyphagia, 668
Polyribosome, 136, 138*f*
Polysaccharide, 73, 74*f*, 75*t*

Polyspermy, prevention of, 1090–1091
Polysynaptic reflex arc, 506, 507*f*
Polythelia, 207
Polyunsaturated fatty acids and fats, 75–76
Polyuria, 668, 669, 901
Pons
  anatomy of, 525*f*, 526
  brainstem, as part of, 516, 525*f*
  cerebellum, relationship to, 543*f*
  in equilibrium, 608
  fiber tracts in, 533*f*
  in hearing, 604
  location of, 517*f*–518*f*, 527*f*
  micturition center of, 906, 906*f*
  respiratory centers of, 858–859, 858*f*
Popliteal region, 33*f*, 316, 400*f*
Portal systems, 748, 748*f*
Positive feedback loops, 17
  in action potentials, 458
  in childbirth, 18, 19*f*, 1074
  in endocrine system, 646
  in fever, 18, 19*f*
  in gastric secretion, 954*f*, 957, 958*f*
  in hemostasis, 704, 705*f*, 706, 707*f*
  in hypertension, 792*i*
  in hyperthermia and hypothermia, 1011
  in sexual cycle, 1064
Positive selection of immune cells, 817
Positive water balance, 920, 921*t*
Positron emission tomography (PET), 22*i*, 24*f*, 24*i*, 557*f*, 557*i*
Positrons, 22*i*
Postabsorptive state, 1007–1008
Postcentral gyrus, 518*f*, 532*f*
  in somesthetic senses, 540, 541*f*
  in taste, 594
Posterior superior spines of ilium, 277, 279*f*, 396*f*
Posterior pituitary. *See* Pituitary gland
Postganglionic neuron, 566, 566*f*
  neurotransmitters and receptors of, 574, 574*t*, 575*f*
  parasympathetic, 571, 572*f*
  sympathetic, 567, 568*f*–569*f*, 569–570, 571
Postovulatory phase, 1062, 1066–1067
Postsynaptic neuron, 463, 465, 466*f*, 469–470, 470*f*–472*f*, 472
Postsynaptic potentials, 466, 468–469, 469*f*
Posttetanic potentiation, 474
Posttraumatic infarction, spinal, 509*i*
Posture, 347, 486*t*, 526, 542
Potassium, 57*f*, 57*t*
  absorption by astrocytes, 450
  in bone, 221
  in cardiac function, 728, 730*f*, 739
  functions of, 923
  in hearing, 602, 603, 603*f*
  homeostasis, 923–924
  imbalances, 924–925, 924*f*
  intestinal absorption of, 973
  in muscle physiology, 415–417, 429
  in neuronal function, 455–460, 456*f*, 465–466, 469
  as pain stimulus, 590
  pH imbalances and, 931*f*
  RDA and dietary sources of, 994*t*
  reabsorption of, 893*f*, 894, 895
  transport of, 110, 110*f*, 111
  vasomotor effect of, 757
Potassium channels and gates
  in action potentials, 458–460, 458*f*–459*f*
  myocardial, 728, 730*f*, 738
  in neurons, 455, 457
  in resting membrane potential, 456, 456*f*
  in rod cells, 623, 623*f*
  in skeletal muscle, 416, 417, 418*f*
  in synapses, 465, 467*f*
Potassium gates, 458–460, 459*f*, 469, 603*f*
Potential, electrical, 415, 455
Potential space, 849
Power stroke
  of cilium, 103, 105*f*
  of myosin, 417, 420*f*
Precapillary sphincters, 750, 751*f*, 766
Precentral gyrus, 518*f*, 532*f*
  in motor control, 542, 542*f*
Precipitation of Ag-Ab complexes, 824
Predigested protein, 993
Prednisone, 437*i*
Pre-eclampsia, 1079*t*
Preembryonic stage, 1091–1094
Prefrontal cortex and memory, 538, 539, 542
Preganglionic neuron, 566, 566*f*
  neurotransmitters of 574, 574*t*, 575*f*
  parasympathetic, 571, 572*f*
  sympathetic, 567, 568*f*–569*f*, 569
Pregnancy, 1070–1073
  diabetes and, 902, 1079*t*
  ectopic, 1079*t*, 1094*i*, 1104
  hormones of, 644, 651, 652, 1070
  hypocalcemia in, 926
  mother's body, effects on, 231, 232, 263*i*, 494*i*, 1072–1073
  Rh factor in, 697–698, 698*f*
  tests for, 1070
  varicose veins and, 753*i*
  weight gain in, 1073, 1073*t*
Prehensile hand, 10, 10*f*. *See also* Opposable thumb
Preload, 739
Premature infants, 1103–1104
Premature ventricular contraction (PVC), 728, 732*f*, 732*i*, 732*t*
Premenstrual phase, 1063*f*, 1064*t*, 1066–1067
Premenstrual syndrome (PMS), 646*i*
Prenatal development. *See* Conceptus; Embryo; Fetus
Prenatal nutrition, 1095, 1096*f*, 1097
Preovulatory phase, 1064, 1064*t*
Preprohormone, 655
Prepuce
  clitoral, 51*f*, 1022*f*, 1051*f*, 1055, 1056*f*, 1068
  penile, 1022*f*, 1025*f*, 1027*f*, 1029, 1030*f*
Presbyopia, 619*t*, 1110
Pressure, sense of, 486*t*, 487, 588, 589*t*
Pressure and flow, principles of, 733, 734*f*
Pressure gradients
  in blood flow, 753–754, 757, 764
  in breathing, 849, 851–853, 854*f*
  in cardiac function, 722, 723*f*, 733, 735*f*
  in gas exchange, 861, 862*f*
Pressure points, 781, 781*f*
Presynaptic inhibition, 470, 471*f*
Presynaptic neuron, 463, 466*f*, 469*f*, 471*f*–472*f*, 472
Pretectal region, 616
Primary active transport, 111, 111*f*
Primary auditory cortex, 605*f*, 606
Primary cilium, 103
Primary germ layers, 158, 1093, 1094*f*–1095*f*, 1098
Primary immune response, 821, 825*f*, 826
Primary marrow space, 226, 226*f*
Primary motor area, 542, 542*f*
Primary oocyte. *See* Oocyte
Primary ossification center, 226, 226*f*
Primary protein structure, 80, 81*f*
Primary sensory areas, 540, 541*f*
Primary sex organs, 1018. *See also* Ovaries; Testes
Primary somesthetic cortex, 540, 541*f*
Primary spermatocytes, 1034, 1034*f*–1035*f*
Primary tissue classes, 158
Primary vesicles of brain, 519, 520*f*
Primary visual cortex, 627, 628*f*
Primates, 10–11, 12*f*, 200*f*
  brains of, 11, 11*t*, 538
Prime movers, 328
Primipara, 1074
Primitive streak, 1094, 1095*f*
Primordial germ cells, 1034
Principal cells of renal tubule, 896
Procaine, 629*i*
Procarboxypeptidase, 962, 963*t*
Processes of bones, 247*f*, 247*t*
  coracoid, 273, 273*f*, 274
  mastoid, 249*f*–250*f*, 254, 254*f*
  styloid, 249*f*–250*f*, 254, 254*f*
  temporal, 249*f*, 258
  zygomatic, 249*f*, 254, 254*f*
Procoagulants, 704, 705*f*, 706*t*
Proerythroblasts, 685, 686*f*
Progeria, 1113, 1113*f*
Progesterone
  in mammary gland development, 1077
  ovarian, 651, 653*t*
  placental, 652, 654*t*, 1097*t*
  in pregnancy, 1070*f*, 1071, 1071*t*, 1074
  in puberty, 1059–1060
  receptors, action on, 659
  in sexual cycle, 1063*f*, 1066–1067
  sodium balance and, 923
  structure and synthesis of, 656*f*
Progesterone receptors, 659, 662, 1067
Programmed cell death. *See* Apoptosis
Prohormone, 655
Projection pathways, 586
  auditory, 604, 605*f*, 606
  gustatory, 594
  olfactory, 595*f*–596*f*, 596
  pain, 590, 590*f*
  somesthetic, 486–488, 486*t*, 487*f*–488*f*, 589
  vestibular, 608
  visual, 626–627, 628*f*
Prolactin (PRL)
  antagonism by estrogen, 662
  in lactation, 1077, 1077*f*
  in mammary gland development, 1076
  pituitary secretion of, 641*f*, 642, 643*f*, 645*t*
  in pregnancy, 1071
  in puberty, 1059
  secretion by monocytes, 832
Prolactin-inhibiting hormone (PIH), 641*f*, 642*t*, 1077
Prolactin-releasing hormone (PRH), 641*f*, 642*t*
Proliferative phase, 1063*f*, 1064*t*, 1067
Pronation, 306, 306*f*
Prone position, 30, 30*f*
Pronuclei, 1090, 1092*f*
Proof in science, 7
Pro-opiomelanocortin (POMC), 642
Propanolol, 579*i*, 793*i*
Prophase
  meiotic, 1032, 1033*f*, 1034
  mitotic, 143, 144*f*
Proprioception, 486*t*, 487
Proprioceptors, 307, 504, 544, 587
  in cardiac function, 738, 740
Prosencephalon, 519, 520*f*
Prosopagnosia, 538
Prostacyclin, 664, 665*f*, 703, 706
  vasomotor effect, 757
Prostaglandins
  and dietary fats, 990
  and fever, 814
  functional overview of, 665, 666*t*
  in inflammation, 812, 813*t*
  labor contractions induced by, 1074
  as pain stimulus, 590
  and peptic ulcer, 956*i*
  in semen, 1037*t*
  structure of, 78, 78*f*, 665, 665*f*
  vasomotor effect of, 757
Prostate gland
  anatomy of, 1028–1029
  contribution to semen, 1037
  diseases of, 1029*i*
  embryonic, 1020*f*
  hypertrophy of, 901, 902, 904*i*, 905*i*
  location of, 51*f*, 905*f*, 1025*f*
  in orgasm, 1039*f*, 1041
Prostate-specific antigen (PSA), 1029*i*
Prosthetic groups, 80
Prosthetic joints, 320, 321*f*
Proteases, 970
Protein buffer system, 927
Proteins, 79–82. *See also* Enzymes
  body content of, 992
  catabolism of, 1005
  complete and incomplete, 993
  conjugated, 80
  deficiency, 682*i*
  digestion and absorption, 970, 971*f*
  as fuel, 1005
  functions of, 80, 82, 140*t*, 992
  levels of structure of, 80, 81*f*
  in plasma membrane, 99*f*, 100–101
  predigested, 993*i*
  RDA and sources of, 992–993
  reabsorption in kidney, 894
  requirement and functions of, 989*t*, 992–993
  requirement in pregnancy, 1072
  secretion of, 139
  synthesis of, 117, 134–139, 137*f*–139*f*, 1006
  turnover of, 1005
Protein-sparing effect, 644, 990
Proteinuria, 887
Proteoglycans
  in bone, 221
  role in glomerular filtration, 887
  structure and function of, 75, 75*t*, 168, 168*f*

Prothrombin, 704, 705*f*, 706*t*, 1072
Proton pumps, 1001
Protons, 56, 57
Proto-oncogenes, 151
Protoplasm, 94
Protraction of a joint, 303, 304*f*
Protuberances of bones, 247*t*
    external occipital, 250*f*
    mental 248*f*, 259, 259*f*
Provitamins, 995
Proximal convoluted tubule (PCT), 883, 884*f*–885*f*, 891–895
Prozac, 580*i*
Pseudopods, 112, 112*f*, 704, 818*f*
Pseudoscience. *See* Fads and pseudoscience
Pseudounipolar neurons, 448–449
Psoriasis, 208*t*
Psychopharmacology, 580*i*
Psychosomatic effects, 8
Pterygoid plates, 250*f*, 256, 256*f*
Pubarche, 1060
Puberty, 206, 234, 649, 1030, 1058–1059
Pubic arch, 280*f*, 280*t*, 1029
Pubic hair, 202, 204, 207, 1060
Pubic region, 32, 33*f*, 35*f*
Pubic symphysis, 51*f*, 297, 298*f*, 302*t*, 355*f*
    in pregnancy, 1071
Pudendum. *See* Vulva
Puerperium, 1075
Pulled groin, 386*i*
Pulled hamstrings, 386*i*
Pulmonary barotrauma, 872*i*
Pulmonary circuit, 716, 766–767, 768*f*
Pulmonary compliance, 854
Pulmonary edema, 736, 737*f*, 861
Pulmonary fibrosis, 854
Pulmonary surfactant, 849, 852*f*, 1103–1104
Pulmonary valve, 722, 722*f*, 724*f*
Pulmonary ventilation, 851–857
Pulse, 738
Pulse pressure, 754, 755*f*
Pumps, membrane, 101, 110–111, 110*f*. *See also* Active transport
Punishment, sense of, 539
Punnett square, 147, 147*f*
Pupil, 610*f*, 613, 613*f*. *See also* Iris
    constriction and dilation of, 615–616, 618
Pupillary constrictor, 615, 616, 618
Pupillary dilator, 615, 616, 1110
Purines, 130, 131*f*
Purkinje cells, 526
Purkinje fibers, 727, 727*f*, 729
Pus, 813–814
Putamen, 534, 535*f*
P wave, 730, 731*f*–732*f*, 732*t*, 734
Pyelitis, 905*i*
Pyelonephritis, 905*i*
Pyramidal cells, 468, 533
Pyramidal tracts, 489
Pyramids of medulla oblongata, 489, 524, 533*f*
Pyrexia. *See* Fever
Pyridoxine. *See* Vitamin B_6
Pyrimidines, 130, 131*f*
Pyrogens, 814
Pyruvic acid, 85, 86*f*, 429, 996–997, 997*f*, 998, 1005
Pyuria, 900

Q

QRS complex, 730, 731*f*–732*f*, 732*t*, 734
Quadrants, abdominal, 32, 34*f*
Quadriplegia, 509*i*
Quaternary protein structure, 80, 81*f*
Quickening, 1101*t*
Quiescent period, 736

R

Rabies, 449, 509*t*
Racial and ethnic variation
    in blood types, 696*t*
    in cancer, 1029*i*, 1042*t*
    in cystic fibrosis, 105*i*
    in hypertension, 793, 995
    in lactose intolerance, 970*i*
    in sickle-cell disease, 693–694
    in Tay-Sachs disease, 453*i*
Radiation. *See also* Radioactivity
    anemia and, 693*t*
    cancer and, 58*i*–59*i*, 151*i*, 208
    infrared
        energy of, 610
        heat gain and loss by, 1009–1010
    ionizing, 59
    as mutagen, 151*i*
    sickness, 699
    therapy, 59*i*, 451*i*
    ultraviolet (UV)
        cataracts and, 614*i*
        as ionizing radiation, 59, 60, 610
        photoaging of skin by, 1108
        skin cancer and, 151*i*, 208
        skin pigmentation and, 196
        suntans, sunscreen, and, 196, 210*i*
        in vitamin D synthesis, 199, 231, 233*f*
Radical (R) group, 79, 80*f*
Radioactivity, 58–59, 58*i*–59*i*, 222*i*
Radiography, 22*i*, 23*f*
Radioisotopes, 58
Radium, 59*i*, 222*i*
Radon, 59
Ramón y Cajal, Santiago, 455
Range of motion, 307, 320*i*
Raphe, perineal, 1022*f*, 1024, 1024*f*
Rapid eye movement (REM) sleep, 537
Rapture of the deep, 871
Raynaud disease, 579*t*
RBC. *See* Erythrocyte
RBC count. *See* Erythrocyte count
Reabsorption
    by blood capillaries, 761–762, 761*f*, 894–895
    of bone, 230
    of tissue fluid, 761–762, 761*f*, 800, 801, 801*f*
    by kidney tubules, 891–899, 893*f*
Reactants, 69
Reaction cascade, 704–705, 705*f*
Reaction rates, 70
Reactive hyperemia, 757
Receptive field
    in retina, 624, 625*f*
    in skin, 586, 587*f*
Receptive relaxation response, 436, 955
Receptor-mediated endocytosis, 112, 113, 113*f*, 115*t*, 822, 973
Receptor potential, 586
Receptors
    molecular, 100, 113. *See also* Hormone receptors; Neurotransmitter receptors
    sensory, 18, 444, 586–588. *See also* Baroreceptors; Chemoreceptors; Sense organs
Recessive alleles, 147, 150*t*, 151
Reciprocal inhibition, 506, 506*f*
Recognition of antigens, 819, 820*f*, 822
Recommended daily allowance (RDA), 988. *See also specific nutrients*
Recovery stroke
    of cilium, 103, 105*f*
    of myosin, 417, 420*f*
Recruitment, 424, 431, 471
    of motor units, 424, 431
    of neurons, 471
Rectum, 47*f*, 51*f*, 941*f*, 974, 975*f*
Rectus sheath, 43*f*, 346, 348*f*–349*f*
Red blood cells. *See* Erythrocytes
Red bone marrow, 223, 225*f*
Red muscles, 430
Redness of inflammation, 812
Red pulp of spleen, 807, 808*f*
Reducing agents, 71
Reduction
    of bone fractures, 235–236, 238*f*
    chemical reaction, 71, 71*t*
Reductionism, 13
Reference man and woman, 16
Referred pain, 590, 591*f*
Reflex arcs, 504, 505, 506*f*, 508
Reflexes, 482, 503
    accommodation, 627
    autonomic, 509*i*. *See also* Reflexes, visceral
    crossed extensor, 507, 507*f*
    conditioned, 504
    defecation, 976, 977*f*
    duodenocolic, 976
    flexor, 506, 507*f*
    gastrocolic, 976
    gastroileal, 967
    Golgi tendon, 508
    knee-jerk, 505, 506*f*
    micturition, 905–906, 906*f*
    myotatic, 505–506
    photopupillary, 616, 621, 627
    somatic, 503–508
    spinal, 504, 505
    stretch, 504–506, 506*f*
    tendon, 505, 506*f*
    tympanic, 602, 605*f*
    visceral, 504, 564–565
    visual, 627
    withdrawal, 506, 507*f*
Refraction, 616–617, 617*f*, 619*f*
Refractive index, 616, 617*f*
Refractory period
    myocardial, 729, 730*f*
    neuronal, 460, 460*f*, 461
    sexual, 1041, 1069
Regeneration, 185, 186
    of muscle, 409, 432*t*, 433
    of nerve fibers, 453–455, 454*f*
Regeneration tube, 453, 454*f*
Regions, anatomical, 32, 33*f*–35*f*, 36
Regulatory proteins of muscle, 410, 413*t*, 432*t*
Relaxation of muscle, 421*f*, 422, 424
Relaxin, 1071, 1071*t*, 1097*t*
Releasing hormones, 640, 641*f*, 642*t*, 644
Religious belief, effects on immune system, 833*i*
Remodeling of bone, 235
REM sleep. *See* Rapid eye movement sleep
Renal autoregulation, 889–890
Renal calculus, 904
Renal capsule, 882, 882*f*–883*f*
Renal clearance, measurement of, 902
Renal corpuscle, 882, 885*f*
Renal cortex, 882, 883*f*–884*f*
Renal diabetes, 902
Renal failure. *See* Kidney failure
Renal fascia, 881, 882*f*
Renal function tests, 902–903
Renal insufficiency, 907*i*, 934*i*
Renal medulla, 882, 883*f*–884*f*
Renal pyramids, 882
Renal tubules, 883, 915*f*
Renin, 652, 793*i*, 880, 890, 892*f*
Renin-angiotensin-aldosterone mechanism, 890–891, 892*f*, 922–923, 923*f*
Rennin. *See* Chymosin
Repolarization
    myocardial, 731*f*, 734
    neuronal, 458, 458*f*
Reposition of thumb, 306, 306*f*
Representational hemisphere, 544
Reproduction, 16, 1018
Reproductive cycle, female, 530*f*, 1061
Reproductive system
    autonomic effects on, 577*t*, 1038*f*–1039*f*, 1039–1041
    embryonic, 1019–1021, 1020*f*, 1022*f*–1023*f*
    female, 42*f*, 1049–1087, 1051*f*–1052*f*
    interaction with other systems, 1082
    male, 42*f*, 1017–1047, 1023–1030, 1024*f*–1027*f*, 1030*f*
    overview of, 42*f*, 1018
    senescence of, 1112
Reproductive technology, 1115*i*–1116*i*
Reserve cartilage, 227
Residual volume, pulmonary, 856, 856*t*, 857*f*
Resistance arteries, 749*f*, 750
Resistance exercise, 431
Resistance to flow, 755–757, 854–855
Resistance to levers, 307–310, 308*f*–309*f*
Resolution
    of eye, 97*t*, 624–625, 625*f*
    of microscopes, 96, 97, 97*t*
    sexual, 1068–1069
Resorption bay, 221
Resorption of bone, 230
Respiration. *See* Aerobic respiration; Breathing; Respiratory system
Respiratory arrest, 857*t*
Respiratory burst, 809, 813
Respiratory capacities, 856, 856*t*, 857*f*
Respiratory centers of brain, 857–859, 858*f*, 859*i*

Respiratory distress syndrome, 855, 869, 871*t,* 1103–1104
Respiratory failure, 414*i,* 490*i,* 508*i*
Respiratory infections in old age, 1111
Respiratory membrane, 849, 852*f,* 861–862
Respiratory mucosa, 843
Respiratory system, 841–877. *See also* Lungs
  anatomy of, 841–849, 842*f*–852*f*
  autonomic innervation of, 568*f,* 572*f,* 576*t*
  cilia in, 103, 105*f,* 843, 846, 848, 848*f*–849*f*
  disorders of, 855, 856, 868–871, 871*t,* 872*i*
  excretory function of, 881
  interaction with other systems, 873
  of neonate, 1103
  overview of, 41*f,* 842*f*
  in pregnancy, 1072
  senescence of, 1111
Respiratory tract, upper and lower, 842, 844*f,* 848*f*
Respiratory volumes, 855–856, 856*t,* 857*f*
Responsiveness. *See* Excitability
Restenosis, 743*i,* 962*i*
Resting membrane potential (RMP)
  myocardial, 729
  Na^+-K^+ pump in, 111
  in neurons, 455–456, 456*f,* 458*f,* 460*f*
  pH imbalances affecting, 930
  potassium imbalances affecting, 924*f,* 925
  production of, 415–416, 455–456, 456*f*
  in skeletal muscle, 415–416, 429
Restrictive disorders, respiratory, 856
Rete testis, 1024, 1026*f*
Reticular activating system, 529
Reticular cells, 804, 818*f*
Reticular epithelial cells, 806, 817
Reticular fibers, 168, 805*f*
Reticular formation, 528–529, 529*f*
  pain, role in, 590
  in olfaction, 596*f*
  relationship to cerebellum, 543*f*
  relationship to reticulospinal tract, 489
  sleep, role in, 537
Reticular layer of dermis, 194*f,* 196
Reticular tissue, 169, 170*f*
Reticulocyte, 685, 686*f*
Reticulospinal tract, 486*t,* 489
  in motor pathways, 543*f*
  pain, role in, 489, 591, 592*f*
  relationship to reticular formation, 489, 528
Retina, 612, 613*f,* 614
  cilia in, 103
  detached, 615
  histology of, 618–621, 620*f*
  sensory transduction in, 621–624, 623*f*
Retinacula, 328
Retinal (retinene), 621
Retinoblastoma, 151*i*
Retinol. *See* Vitamin A
Retraction of a joint, 303, 304*f*
Retrograde amnesia, 539
Retrograde axonal transport, 449
Retroperitoneal organs, 38, 38*f,* 46*f*
Retrovir, 832
Retroviruses, 830
Reuptake of neurotransmitters, 468, 580*i*
Reverberating circuit, 472, 473*f*
Reversible reactions, 70
Reward, sense of, 539
Reye syndrome, 815*i*
Rh blood group, 697–698, 825*t*
Rheumatic fever, 723*i,* 829
Rheumatism, 319*t,* 695
Rheumatoid arthritis (RA), 319*t,* 320*i*
Rheumatoid factor, 320*i*
Rheumatology, 320*i*
Rhodopsin, 620–621, 622*f,* 623, 624
RhoGAM, 698
Rhombencephalon, 519, 520*f*
Rhythm method, 1079*i,* 1081*t*
Riboflavin. *See* Vitamin B_2
Ribonuclease, 962, 963*t,* 973
Ribonucleic acid (RNA)
  deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA)
    compared to, 130, 133, 134*t*
  messenger (mRNA), 134, 136, 137*f,* 139*f*
  ribosomal (rRNA), 134, 136
  structure and function of, 86–87, 133
  transfer (tRNA), 134, 136, 137*f*–139*f*
Ribose, 85, 85*f*
Ribosomal RNA (rRNA), 134, 136
Ribosomes
  endoplasmic reticulum,
    relationship to, 117*f,* 118
  mitochondrial, 124*i*
  size and structure of, 97*t,* 116, 118, 123*t*
  translation, role in, 136, 137*f*
RICE treatment, 386*i*
Rickets, 222, 230*i,* 232, 238*t*
Rider's bones, 386*i*
Rigor mortis, 422*i*
Ringer's lactate solution, 933*i*
Ringworm, 208*t*
Risk factors
  for anemia, 692–693, 693*t*
  for aneurysm, 754*i*
  for asthma, 828*i*–829*i*
  for atherosclerosis, 742*i,* 792*i*–793*i*
  for birth defects, 1104
  for cancer, 151*i,* 208, 869–870, 1029*i,* 1053*i,* 1058
  for cataracts, 614*i*
  for diabetes mellitus, 669
  for hypertension, 792*i,* 793*i*
  for kidney failure, 907*i*
  for kidney stones, 904*i*
  for kyphosis and scoliosis, 263*i*
  for osteoporosis, 239*i*
  for peptic ulcer, 956*i*
  for polycythemia, 692
  for urinary tract infections, 905*i*
  for varicose veins, 753*i*
RNA. *See* Ribonucleic acid
RNA polymerase, 136, 140*t*
Rodbell, Martin, 102
Rods, 619–621, 620*f,* 622*f*–623*f,* 623–624
Roentgen, William, 22*i*
Rome, medicine in, 3. *See also* Galen
Root
  of penis, 1025*f,* 1029
  of tooth, 945–946, 945*f*
Rosacea, 208*t,* 1108
Rostral direction, 516
Rotation of a joint, 305*f,* 306
Rotator cuff, 311, 312*f,* 356, 358*t,* 361*f*
  injury to, 386*i*
Roughage, dietary, 75
Round window, 599*f,* 600
RU486, 1081*i*
Rubella, 1104
Rubrospinal tract, 489, 527
Ruffini corpuscles, 588, 589*t*
Ruffled border of osteoclast, 221, 222*f,* 230
Rugae
  gastric, 952
  vaginal, 1055, 1068
Runner's high, 591
Running, 308, 374

S

Saccule, 600*f,* 606, 607*f*
Sacral canal, 268
Sacral region
  of spinal cord, 482, 483*f*
  surface anatomy of, 33*f,* 395*f*
Sacroiliac joint, 268, 1071
Sacrum, 262, 262*f,* 263, 267–268, 268*f*
Sagittal plane, 31, 31*f*
Sagittal sections, 31, 31*f*
Sagittal suture, 251, 251*f*
St. Martin, Alexis, 977*i*–978*i*
Saline, 108, 933*i*
Saliva, 946–948
  antibodies in, 825*t,* 946
  HIV in, 831
Salivary amylase, 83, 946, 948, 969
Salivary glands, 943*f,* 946–947, 947*f*
  autonomic control of, 526, 568*f,* 570, 571, 572*f,* 573, 577
Salivation, 947–948
  cranial nerves and, 552*t,* 553*t*
  dehydration and, 917–918
  in old age, 1112
Salivatory nuclei, 947
Salt
  dietary, 922, 923
  hypertension and, 792*i*
  taste of, 594
Saltatory conduction, 461
Sample size, 8
Sanger, Frederick, 672*i*
Sarcolemma, 409, 410*f,* 413*t,* 416, 422*i,* 433
Sarcoma, 151*t*
Sarcomere, 411, 411*f,* 412*f,* 413*t,* 422*f,* 423, 436
  in old age, 1109
Sarcoplasm, 409, 410*f,* 413*t*
Sarcoplasmic reticulum
  calcium release and reuptake by, 417, 419*f,* 421*f,* 422, 424, 430
  in cardiac muscle, 432*t,* 433, 726, 729
  in skeletal muscle, 409, 410*f,* 413*t,* 432*t*
  in smooth muscle, 432*t,* 434
Satellite cells
  of muscle, 409, 433
  of nervous tissue, 450*t,* 451
Satiety, 530*f*
Satiety center, 986, 987*f*
Saturated fatty acids and fats, 76, 792*i,* 991
Saturation
  of hormone receptors, 659
  of membrane carriers, 109, 109*f*
Savanna, adaptation to, 11
Scalp, 48*f,* 202
Scanning electron microscope (SEM), 97
Scapular region, 33*f,* 395*f*
Scarification, 185*i*
Scar tissue, 184*f,* 450, 509*i*
Scent glands. *See* Pheromones
Schizophrenia, 540, 556*t,* 580*i*
Schleiden, Matthias, 6
Schwann, Theodor, 6, 94
Schwann cells, 450*t,* 451, 491, 491*f. See also* Myelin; Neurilemma
  embryonic origin of, 519
  in lamellated (pacinian) corpuscles, 588
  on myelinated nerve fibers, 447*f,* 451–453, 452*f*
  at neuromuscular junction, 414, 415*f*
  on unmyelinated nerve fibers, 453
Sciatica, 494*i*
Sciatic notches, 277, 279*f,* 280, 280*t*
SCID, 829–830
Scientific method, 7–8
Sclera, 610*f,* 612
Sclerosis, 450
Scoliosis, 263*i,* 264*f*
Scrotum
  anatomy of, 1024, 1024*f*–1027*f,* 1027
  embryonic, 1021, 1022*f*
  location of, 33*f,* 44*f*–45*f,* 51*f*
  pigmentation of, 196
Scuba diving, 869, 872*i*
Seasonal affective disorder (SAD), 646*i*
Sebaceous glands, 191*f,* 201*f,* 206*f,* 207
  in old age, 1108
Seborrheic dermatitis, 208*t*
Sebum, 199, 207, 1031
Secondary active transport, 111, 111*f,* 115*t,* 894
Secondary immune response, 825*f,* 826
Secondary oocyte. *See* Oocyte
Secondary protein structure, 80, 81*f*
Secondary sex characteristics, 207, 1018, 1031, 1057
Secondary sex organs, 1018
Secondary spermatocyte, 1034, 1034*f*–1035*f*
Secondary tympanic membrane, 599*f,* 600, 602, 602*f*
Second-messenger systems, 100. *See also* Cyclic adenosine monophosphate
  in hormone action, 660, 660*f*–661*f*
  in neurotransmitter action, 465, 467, 467*f*
  in taste, 594
Second-order neurons, 486–487, 488*f,* 589, 590*f*
Secretin
  as gut-brain peptide, 955
  liver and pancreas regulated by, 963–964
  metabolism regulated by, 1007, 1007*t*
  stomach regulated by, 957*f,* 958

- Secretion
  - by exocytosis, 114, 114*f*
  - gland types and, 180, 181*f,* 182
  - after protein synthesis, 139, 140*f*
- Secretory phase, 1063*f,* 1064*t,* 1067
- Secretory vesicles, 98*f,* 114, 114*f,* 119, 139, 140*f*
- Sections, histological, 158, 159*f*
- Segmentation contractions, 967, 967*f*
- Selection pressure, 9–10
- Selectively permeable membranes, 106, 108*f*
- Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs), 580*i*
- Selenium, 57*t,* 60, 994*t*
- Self-antigens, 816, 817, 829
- Self-tolerance, 817
- Sella turcica, 249*f*–250*f,* 255, 256*f*–257*f*
- Selye, Hans, 663
- Semen
  - HIV in, 831
  - sources of, 1028–1029, 1037
  - uptake by uterus, 1068
  - volume and composition of, 1035, 1037, 1037*i,* 1037*t*
- Semicircular canals, 607
- Semicircular ducts, 599*f*–600*f,* 606, 607, 608*f*
- Semiconservative replication, 141, 141*f*
- Semilunar valves, 715*f,* 722, 722*f*–723*f,* 736
- Seminal vesicles
  - anatomy of, 1028
  - contribution to semen, 1028, 1037
  - embryonic, 1020*f*
  - location of, 51*f,* 1025*f*
  - in orgasm, 1039*f,* 1041
- Seminiferous tubules, 1017*f,* 1023, 1026*f*
- Senescence, 1107–1114
  - evolution of, 1114
  - theories of, 1113–1114
- Senile atrophy, 183. *See also* Senescence
- Senile plaques, 475*i*
- Sensation, 526, 586
- Sense organs, 585–629
  - senescence of, 1110
- Sensory adaptation, 587, 624
- Sensory association areas, 540, 541*f*
- Sensory deprivation, 586
- Sensory homunculus, 540, 541*f*
- Sensory nerves, 492. *See also* Nerves, specific
- Sensory neurons, 446, 446*f*
- Sensory projection, 586. *See also* Projection pathways
- Sensory transduction, 586
- Septal cartilage, 843
- Septal defects, cardiac, 741*t*
- Septicemia, 708*t*
- Septum
  - of gland, 180, 180*f*
  - interatrial and interventricular, 721, 721*f*
  - nasal, 249*f,* 256–257, 259, 843
  - pellucidum, 522*f*
  - of scrotum, 1024
- Series-elastic components, 409, 422, 423
- Serosae. *See* Serous membranes
- Serotonin
  - depression, role in, 580*i*
  - enteroendocrine function, 955*t*
  - in hemostasis, 704
  - as neurotransmitter, 464, 465*f,* 466*t*
  - as pain stimulus, 590
  - from pineal gland, 646, 646*i,* 653*t*
- Serous fluid, 182
- Serous glands, 180
- Serous membranes, 36, 37*f,* 39*f,* 182, 941, 942*f,* 966*f*
- Sertoli cells. *See* Sustentacular cells
- Serum, blood, 683
- Set point, 17
- Severe combined immunodeficiency disease (SCID), 829, 830*f*
- Sex chromosomes, 146, 146*f,* 150*t,* 1019. *See also* X chromosome; Y chromosome
- Sex determination, 1019
- Sex differentiation, 1019, 1020*f,* 1021, 1021*i,* 1022*f*
- Sex drive. *See* Libido
- Sexes, differences in blood, 691
- Sex hormones
  - adrenal, 649, 653*t,* 668, 669*f*
  - cholesterol, synthesis from, 656*f*
  - gonadal. *See* Ovaries; Testes
  - and nitrogen balance, 993
  - placental. *See* Placenta
- Sex-influenced traits, 204
- Sex linkage, 149, 149*f,* 150*t,* 707
- Sex organs, primary and secondary, 1018
- Sex steroids. *See* Sex hormones
- Sexual behavior, 530*f*
- Sexual cycle, 1061–1068
- Sexual dimorphism of brain, 544, 545–546
- Sexual emotions, 644
- Sexual function and stress, 664
- Sexuality, 539
- Sexually transmitted diseases (STDs), 1041*i*–1043*i*
- Sexual reproduction, 1018, 1032
- Sexual response
  - female, 1068–1069, 1069*f*
  - male, 1037–1041
- Shaken child syndrome, 521
- Shingles, 493*i*
- Shinsplints, 386*i*
- Shivering, 814
- Shivering thermogenesis, 1011
- Shock
  - anaphylactic, 765
  - cardiogenic, 765
  - circulatory, 763, 765, 828
  - compensated and decompensated, 765
  - dehydration and, 920
  - hypovolemic, 765, 890, 921*f*
  - low venous return, 765
  - neurogenic, 508*i,* 565, 765
  - obstructed venous return, 765
  - septic, 765
  - spinal, 508*i*
  - urine output, effect on, 901
  - venous pooling, 765
- Short (myenteric) reflexes, 942, 948, 957, 957*f*
- Short-term energy for muscle, 427–428, 428*f*
- Short-term memory, 474
- Shoulder. *See also* Joints, specific: humeroscapular
  - dislocation of, 311, 494*i*
  - movements of, 356, 361*t*
  - surface anatomy of, 394*f*–395*f,* 398*f*
- Shunts
  - circulatory, 748, 748*f,* 1099
  - for hydrocephalus, 524
- Sickle-cell disease, 142, 148, 693–694, 693*t,* 694*f*
- Sievert, 59
- Sigmoid colon, 974
- Sigmoidoscope, 974
- Signal peptide, 136, 139
- Silicon, 57*t*
- Simple diffusion, 106, 106*f,* 115*t*
- Single-unit smooth muscle, 433–434
- Sinoatrial (SA) node, 727, 727*f,* 728, 738
- Sinuses
  - aortic, 758, 770*t*
  - in bones, 246, 247*f*
  - carotid, 758, 758*f,* 771*f*
  - cavernous, 783*f,* 784*t*
  - coronary, 725, 725*f*
  - dural, 521, 783*f,* 784*t*
  - ethmoid, 246, 251*f*–252*f,* 256*f*
  - frontal, 48*f,* 246, 249*f,* 251, 252*f,* 257*f,* 844*f*
  - inferior sagittal, 783*f,* 784*t*
  - maxillary, 246, 251*f*–252*f*
  - sphenoid, 246, 249*f,* 252*f,* 257*f,* 844*f*
  - straight, 783*f*
  - superior sagittal, 520*f,* 521, 783*f,* 784*t*
  - transverse, 521, 783*f,* 784*t*
  - venous, 250*f,* 255
- Sinusoids, 752
- Sinus rhythm, 728, 732*f*
- SITS muscles, 356, 386*i*
- Situs inversus, 14*i*
- Skeletal muscle pump, 764, 764*f*
- Skeletal muscle tissue, 408–431
  - anaerobic fermentation in, 427–428, 428*f,* 430*t,* 998
  - histology of, 176, 177*f*
  - properties of, 432*t*
- Skeletal system, 217–324. *See also* Bones, specific; Bones in general; Ligaments
  - bipedalism, adaptations for, 286*f*–287*f,* 286*i*–287*i*
  - fetal, 173*f,* 228*f*
  - interaction with other systems, 288
  - overview of, 40*f,* 245*f*
  - senescence of, 1109
- Skene glands. *See* Paraurethral glands
- Skin, 192–200
  - artificial, 211*i*
  - autonomic innervation of, 568*f,* 570
  - as barrier to infection, 809
  - color, 148, 196–198, 197*f*
  - diseases of, 208–211, 208*t*
  - endocrine role of, 652, 654*t*
  - functions of, 199–200
  - grafts, 211*i*
  - injury and healing, 184*f,* 185, 1108
  - innervation of, 504
  - structure of, 192–196, 193*f*
  - thick and thin, 192
- Skull
  - bones of, 246–262, 248*f*–251*f,* 254*f,* 256*f*–260*f,* 261*t*
  - cavities of, 246, 248, 251*f*
  - foramina of, 248, 252*t*–253*t*
  - formation of, 225, 226, 226*f*
  - human vs. ape, 287*f,* 287*i*
  - in infancy and childhood, 260, 260*f,* 262*i*
  - sutures of, 246, 249*f*–251*f,* 296, 296*f*–297*f*
- Skullcap. *See* Calvaria
- Sleep, 537–538, 537*f*
  - brainstem centers for, 526, 529, 531
- Sleep apnea, 871*t*
- Sleep deprivation, 538
- Sleep disturbances, 646*i*
- Sleep paralysis, 537
- Sliding filament theory, 417, 420*f*
- Slow axonal transport, 449
- Slow oxidative (SO) muscle fibers, 429–430, 430*f,* 430*t,* 431
- Slow-twitch muscle fibers. *See* Slow oxidative muscle fibers
- Slow-wave sleep, 537
- Small-cell carcinoma, 870
- Small intestine, 964–968, 964*f*
  - contractions of, 965, 967, 967*f*
  - endocrine function of, 652, 654*t*
- Smegma, 1029
- Smell, 594–596
  - brainstem and, 530
  - cerebral cortex and, 532, 540, 541*f,* 596, 596*f*
  - loss of (anosmia), 257*i*
  - in old age, 1110
  - olfactory nerve and, 257, 257*i,* 549*t*
  - role in flavor, 594
- Smoking
  - birth defects and, 1104
  - cardiovascular effects of, 739, 742*i*
  - cataracts and, 614*i*
  - contraception and, 1081*i*
  - LDL level and, 992
  - lung disease and, 869–871, 870*f*
  - osteoporosis and, 239*i*
  - peptic ulcer and, 956*i*
- Smooth muscle
  - contraction of, 434–435, 435*f*
  - histology of, 176, 177*f*
  - innervation of, 433, 433*f*
  - multiunit, 433
  - properties of, 432*t,* 433
  - single-unit, 433–434
  - tone, 435
  - uterine, 1053
- Snake venom, 437, 693*t,* 709
- Sneezing, 526, 855
- Sodium
  - amount in body, 57*t*
  - and anesthesia, 629*i*
  - atomic structure of, 57*f*
  - in cardiac function, 728–729, 730*f*
  - excretion of, 929
  - and fluid balance, 919
  - functions of, 922
  - homeostasis, 922
  - imbalances, 923
  - intestinal absorption of, 973
  - ionization of, 59–60, 60*f*
  - in muscle physiology, 415–417
  - in neuronal function, 455–461, 456*f*–457*f,* 462*f,* 465–466, 468, 470
  - RDA and dietary sources of, 994, 994*t*
  - reabsorption of, 892–894, 893*f,* 895
  - transport of, 110, 110*f,* 111
  - in vision, 623–624, 623*f*

- Sodium bicarbonate, 962, 963*t*
- Sodium channels, 231
  - effect of hyperkalemia on, 925
  - effect of hypocalcemia on, 231
  - myocardial, 730*f*
- Sodium chloride, 60*f*, 61*t*, 61–62, 63, 64, 206. *See also* Salt
- Sodium gates, 458–460, 459*f*
- Sodium-glucose transport protein (SGLT), 894, 111, 111*f*, 969
- Sodium-potassium pump (Na^+-K^+ ATPase), 110, 110*f*–111*f*, 111, 140*t*, 456, 659
- Solubility product, 230
- Solutions, 65, 65*f*, 66*t*
- Solvent drag, 762, 893*f*, 894–895, 969, 969*f*
- Solvents, 65
  - poisoning by, 199*i*, 693*t*, 907*i*
  - water as, 63–64
- Soma of a neuron, 175, 446, 447*f*, 449
- Somatic cells, 146
- Somatic motor neurons, 412, 414*f*
- Somatic motor pathways, 565, 566*f*
- Somatic nerve fibers, 492*t*
- Somatic nervous system, 445, 564
- Somatic recombination, 822
- Somatic reflexes, 503–508
- Somatomedin. *See* Insulin-like growth factor
- Somatostatin
  - digestive functions of, 955*t*
  - hypothalamic secretion of, 641*f*, 642*t*
  - as neurotransmitter, 574
  - pancreatic secretion, effect on, 651, 664
  - as paracrine, 651, 664
  - second messenger employed by, 660
  - secretion by monocytes, 832
- Somatotopy, 540, 541*f*
- Somatotropin. *See* Growth hormone
- Somesthetic association area, 540, 541*f*
- Somesthetic cortex, primary, 488*f*, 540, 590, 590*f*
- Somesthetic projection pathways, 589
- Somesthetic senses, 530, 530*f*, 532, 540, 587
- Sonography, 22*i*, 23*f*
- Sound, 597–598
- Sour taste, 594
- Spatial summation, 470, 470*f*, 624–625
- Special nerve fibers, 492*t*
- Special senses, 540, 588
- Specificity
  - enzyme-substrate, 83
  - hormone-receptor, 659
- Spectrin, 689
- Speech
  - brain centers for, 526, 532, 544, 545*f*
  - breathing and, 853, 855
  - cranial nerves involved in, 554*t*, 555*t*
  - hearing and understanding, 532, 544, 602, 603, 606
  - larynx, action in, 846, 847*f*
  - PET imaging of, 557*i*
  - sound frequencies of, 597*f*
  - stroke and, 766
- Sperm. *See also* Spermatogenesis
  - acrosomal reaction of, 114
  - longevity and viability of, 1028, 1090
  - male defined by, 1018
  - maturation of, 1028
  - migration, 1090
  - mitochondria, 124*i*
  - rate of production, 1035
  - in semen, 1037, 1037*t*, 1041
  - in seminiferous tubules, 1017*f*, 1026*f*
  - structure of, 105, 1035, 1036*f*
  - washing, 1115*i*
- Spermatic cord, 1023*f*, 1024, 1026*f*–1027*f*
- Spermatic ducts, 1028, 1039
- Spermatids, 1026*f*, 1034–1035, 1034*f*–1036*f*
- Spermatocytes, 1034, 1034*f*–1035*f*
- Spermatogenesis, 662, 1031, 1032–1035, 1034*f*–1036*f*
- Spermatogonia, 1034, 1034*f*–1035*f*
- Sperm count, 1037*i*, 1112
- Spermicides, 1079*i*, 1080*f*, 1081*t*
- Spermine, 1037*t*
- Spermiogenesis, 1035, 1035*f*
- Spherical aberration, 618
- Sphincters, 176, 326
  - anal, 974, 975*f*, 1068, 1069*f*
  - esophageal, 948
  - hepatopancreatic, 961, 961*f*
  - ileocecal, 967, 974, 975*f*
  - precapillary, 751, 751*f*
  - pyloric, 50*f*, 950, 951*f*, 955
  - urethral, 1039*f*, 1041, 1068, 1069*f*
- Sphygmomanometer, 733, 754
- Spina bifida, 484*i*, 1072
- Spinal column. *See* Vertebral column
- Spinal cord, 482–490
  - autonomic reflexes in, 579
  - gross anatomy of, 482, 483*f*–484*f*, 485, 495*f*
  - histology of, 176*f*
  - location of, 48*f*–50*f*, 483*f*
  - meninges of, 482–483, 484*f*
  - trauma, 508*i*–510*i*
  - vertebrae, relationship to, 495*f*
- Spinal curvatures, 263, 263*f*, 285
  - abnormal, 263*i*
  - human vs. ape, 287*f*, 287*i*
- Spinal gating of pain, 591, 592*f*
- Spinal meningitis, 509*t*
- Spinal motor neurons, 579
- Spinal nerves, 490–494
  - anatomy of, 484*f*, 490–494, 491*f*, 493*f*–500*f*, 502*f*
  - injuries of, 494*i*
  - spinal cord, relationship to, 484*f*, 485
  - tables of, 497*t*–502*t*
- Spinal reflexes, 504
- Spinal tap, 521*i*
- Spinal tuberculosis, 263*i*
- Spindle fibers, 144*f*
- Spines, of bones, 247*f*, 247*t*
- Spinocerebellar tract, 486*t*, 487, 526, 543*f*, 544, 589
- Spinoreticular tract and pain, 590, 590*f*, 592*f*
- Spinothalamic tract
  - anatomy of, 487, 487*f*–488*f*
  - functions of, 486*t*
  - and pain, 589, 590, 590*f*, 592*f*
- Spirometry, 855–856
- Spleen
  - anatomy of, 45*f*–46*f*, 807
  - atrophy of, 833*i*
  - erythrocyte destruction in, 691–692
  - function of, 807–808
  - hemopoiesis in, 685
  - location of, 14*i*, 808*f*
  - platelet storage in, 688
- Splenomegaly, 832*t*
- Sponge, contraceptive, 1080*f*, 1081*i*
- Spongy bone. *See under* Bone tissue
- Sprains, 317, 319*t*
- Spreading factor (hyaluronidase), 809, 1090
- Sputum, 869
- Squamous cell carcinoma
  - of lung, 870
  - of skin, 209, 209*f*
- Squamous suture, 248*f*–249*f*, 251, 260*f*
- SRY gene, 1019
- Stage of exhaustion, 664
- Stage of resistance, 663
- Stains, histological, 159
- Starch, 73, 75*t*, 989
  - digestion of, 968–969, 969*f*
- Starling, Ernest, 964
- Start codons, 135, 136, 139*f*
- Startle response, 606
- Starvation and fasting, 682*i*–683*i*, 986, 987*f*, 1007–1008
- Statistical tests, 8
- Stearic acid, 76*f*
- Stellate cells, 533
- Stem cells
  - controversy over, 186*i*
  - gastric, 952
  - hemopoietic, 685, 817, 1111
  - in nervous system, 143*i*, 446
  - osteogenic, 221, 222*f*
  - in treating spinal cord injury, 510*i*
- Stents, 743*i*, 962*i*
- Stereocilia, 601, 602, 603, 603*f*, 606
- Stereoscopic vision, 626, 628*f*
- Sterility. *See* Infertility
- Sterilization, surgical, 1081*i*
- Sternal region, 33*f*, 393*f*–394*f*
- Steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (SAIDs), 666*i*
- Steroid hormones, 78*t*, 649, 654, 655*t*
  - mode of action, 659
  - synthesis of, 654–655
- Steroids
  - anabolic-androgenic, 87*i*, 234
  - medical use of, 320*i*, 386*i*, 493*i*, 509*i*, 829*i*
  - structure of, 78, 78*f*
  - synthesis of, 117
- Stigma, of ovary, 1065, 1066*f*
- Stimuli, 16, 586–587
- Stimulus coding, 471*f*, 586–587
- Stimulus frequency and muscle tension, 424–425, 425*f*
- Stomach
  - anatomy of, 950, 951*f*, 952, 953*f*
  - atrophy in old age, 1112
  - endocrine function of, 652, 654*t*, 956–958, 957*f*
  - location of, 44*f*–45*f*, 50*f*, 941*f*
  - physiology of, 952, 954–958
- Stop codons, 135, 136
- Strabismus, 437*f*
- Strain
  - on bones, 221
  - joint, 319*t*
- Stratum basale (of skin), 192, 193*f*
- Stratum basalis (of uterus), 1054, 1067
- Stratum corneum, 192, 193*f*, 195, 196, 197*f*, 197*t*
- Stratum functionalis, 1054
- Stratum granulosum, 193*f*, 194
- Stratum lucidum, 193*f*, 195
- Stratum spinosum, 192, 193*f*, 194
- Strength, muscular, 422–423, 424–425, 424*f*–425*f*, 431
  - loss in old age, 1109
- *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, 871*t*
- Streptokinase, 709*i*
- Stress, 662
  - on bones, 221, 224*f*, 228, 233, 234
  - emotional, 645
  - immune function, effect on, 833*i*
  - incontinence, 907*t*
  - and LDL level, 992
  - proteins, 138
  - response, 663–664, 1110
- Stress-relaxation response, 436
- Stretch
  - muscle response to, 434
  - sense of, 588, 589*t*
- Stretch marks, 1072
- Stretch receptors, cardiac, 644
- Striae (stretch marks), 1072
- Striated muscle, 176, 177*f*, 177*t*, 408, 408*f*, 432, 432*t*. *See also* Cardiac muscle; Skeletal muscle
- Striations, 176, 177*f*, 408, 408*f*, 410*f*, 411, 412*f*, 413*t*
- Stroke, 766
  - causes, 87*i*, 692, 766, 792*i*
  - in sickle-cell disease, 695
  - in spinal cord injury, 509*i*
- Stroke volume, 736, 737, 739, 1111
- Stroma of a gland, 180, 180*f*
- Strontium-90, 59
- Structural formulae, 61, 61*f*
- Structural hierarchy of body, 12–13, 13*f*
- Structural isomers, 61*f*
- Structural polysaccharides, 73
- Strychnine, 579*i*
- Styloid process, 249*f*–250*f*, 254, 254*f*, 341*f*
- Subarachnoid space, 483, 484*f*, 520*f*, 521, 523*f*
- Subatomic particles, 57–58, 57*f*–58*f*
- Subcostal line, 32, 35*f*
- Subcutaneous injections, 196
- Subcutaneous tissue, 196, 196*f*
- Subdural space, 520*f*, 521
- Sublingual gland, 941*f*
- Submandibular gland, 941*f*
- Submucosa, 941, 942*f*
- Submucosal plexus, 941, 942*f*
- Substance P
  - capillary permeability and, 762
  - as gut-brain peptide, 955
  - immune cells, effect on, 833*i*
  - as neurotransmitter, 464, 465*f*, 466*t*
  - pain and, 591, 592*f*
  - structure of, 465*f*
  - sympathetic nerve fibers, secreted by, 574
- Substantia nigra, 475*i*, 527
- Substrates for enzymes, 82
- Sucrase, 969
- Sucrose
  - dietary, 75*t*, 989
  - digestion of, 75*t*, 969
  - I.V. administration of, 933*i*
  - structure of, 73, 74*f*
- Sudoriferous glands, 205. *See also* Sweat glands
- Sugars, 73, 74*f*
  - craving for, 989, 990*i*
  - intestinal absorption of, 969, 969*f*

Sulci
    of bones, 247*t*
    of brain, 516, 517*f*–518*f*, 522*f*, 531, 532, 532*f*
    of face, 393*f*, 610*f*
    of heart, 718*f*, 721
Sulfates
    in bone, 221
    in urine, 894
Sulfur, 57*t*, 994*t*. *See also* Disulfide bonds
Summation, 469–470, 470*f*
Sunburn, 204
Sunscreens, 210*i*
Superciliary ridge, 393*f*
Supercoiling of chromatin, 130, 131*f*
Superficial fascia, 196
Superficial perineal space, 350
Superoxide anion, 60, 809
Superoxide dismutase, 60
Superstition, 6
Supination, 306, 306*f*
Supine position, 30, 30*f*
Supporting cells, 600, 601*f*. *See also* Sustentacular cells
Suppressor T (T_S) cells, 818–819
Supraorbital margin, 251
Suprarenal gland. *See* Adrenal gland
Suprasternal notch, 269, 269*f*, 393*f*, 394*f*
Surface anatomy, 33*f*, 391–406, 393*f*–406*f*
Surface area, 95, 95*f*, 107, 964
Surface tension, 64, 855
Surfactants, 855
Surgery, history of, 627*i*–629*i*
Surrogate mothers, 1115*i*
Suspensions, 65, 65*f*, 66*t*
Sustentacular cells, 652, 1026*f*, 1030, 1031*f*, 1032
Sutures, 246
    classification of, 296, 296*f*–297*f*, 302*t*
    coronal, 248*f*–249*f*, 251, 251*f*, 260*f*
    lambdoid, 249*f*–251*f*, 251, 260*f*
    metopic, 260
    sagittal, 251, 251*f*, 260*f*
    squamous, 248*f*–249*f*, 251, 260*f*
    synostoses, transformation to, 297
Swallowing, 845, 948–949, 949*f*
    muscles of, 339*t*, 340, 341*f*
    nerves controlling, 526, 553*t*–555*t*, 948
Sweat
    apocrine, 206, 595*i*
    merocrine, 205–206
Sweat glands, 205–207, 206*f*, 207*t*
    autonomic innervation of, 568*f*, 569, 570, 577
Sweating
    brainstem centers for, 526
    cooling effectiveness of, 65, 200
    in fever, 814
    hypokalemia and, 925
    in negative feedback, 17, 18*i*
    spinal cord trauma, effect of, 509*i*
    sweat glands and, 205–206
    water loss by, 916, 918*f*, 919–920, 920*f*
Sweets, 594, 990*i*
Sympathetic chain, 567, 567*f*–569*f*. *See also* Ganglia, sympathetic
Sympathetic nervous system, 444*f*, 565
    anatomy of, 567–571, 568*f*–569*f*, 571*t*, 573*t*
    bronchioles, effect on, 854–855
    digestion, effect on, 947–948, 963
    heart, effect on, 738, 740*t*
    immune system, effect on, 833*i*
    kidneys, effect on, 886, 890, 890*f*
    postabsorptive metabolism, effect on, 1008
    physiology of, 574–578
    pupil, effect on, 575, 576*t*, 577, 577*f*, 615
    sexual function, effect on, 1038*f*–1039*f*, 1039, 1041
    thermoregulation, effect on, 1011
    vasomotion, effect on, 575, 577–578, 578*f*, 758, 758*f*
Sympathetic tone, 565, 577, 578*f*
Sympathoadrenal system, 571
Sympatholytic drugs, 579*i*
Sympathomimetic drugs, 579*i*
Symphyses, 297, 302*t*
    mental, 259
    pubic, 277, 279, 279*f*
Symports, 110, 115*t*, 893, 893*f*
Synapses. *See also* Neural integration; Neurotransmitters; Synaptic transmission
    electrical, 463
    neuromuscular, 407*f*, 413, 414*f*–415*f*
    structure of, 407*f*, 448, 463, 463*f*–464*f*
Synaptic cleft, 414, 415*f*, 416*t*, 463, 464*f*
Synaptic delay, 467, 468, 473
Synaptic knob, 414, 415*f*, 416*t*, 447*f*, 448, 463, 463*f*, 474
Synaptic plasticity, 473
Synaptic potentiation, 473
Synaptic transmission, 465–468, 467*f*
    cessation of, 467–468
    in old age, 1110
Synaptic vesicles, 414, 415*f*, 416*t*, 417, 448, 464*f*
Synarthroses, 294, 295*f*
Synchondroses, 297, 302*t*
Syncope, 765, 766
Syncytiotrophoblast, 1093, 1093*f*, 1095
Syndesmoses, 296, 296*f*, 302*t*
Synergistic effects of hormones, 662
Synergistic muscles, 328–329
Synostoses, 297, 302*t*
Synovial fluid, 183, 298, 299, 299*f*, 299*i*, 320*i*
Synovial joints. *See also* Diarthroses; Joints
    anatomy of, 298–299, 299*f*
    classification of, 295, 295*f*, 302*t*
    general anatomy of, 299, 299*f*
    types of, 299–302, 301*f*, 302*t*
Synovial membrane, 183, 299, 299*f*, 320*i*
Synovitis, 319*t*
Synthesis reactions, 69*f*, 70, 71*t*, 72, 73*f*, 75*f*
Syphilis, 1042*i*–1043*i*
    cardiovascular effects of, 754*i*
    neonatal, 1104
Systemic circuit, 716
Systemic edema, 736, 737*f*
Systemic gas exchange, 864, 865*f*, 866–867
Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), 828, 832*t*
Systole, 728
    atrial, 734, 736
    ventricular, 730, 736
Systolic blood pressure, 754

T

Tachycardia, 738, 739
Tachypnea, 857*t*
Tactile (Meissner) corpuscles, 588, 589*t*
Tactile (Merkel) cells, 192, 193*f*, 588
Tactile (Merkel) discs, 588, 589*t*
Tagamet, 956*i*
Tamoxifen, 1058
Target cells, 637
Tarsal glands, 610
Tarsal plate, 610*f*
Tarsal region, 36
    bones of, 281–282, 283*f*–284*f*
    fractures of, 236*f*–237*f*, 237*t*
    joint anatomy of, 317, 317*f*–318*f*
    movements of, 306–307, 307*f*
    sprains, 317, 319*t*
    surface anatomy of, 33*f*, 401*f*–405*f*
Taste, 592–594
    brain centers for, 526, 530, 532, 540, 541*f*
    cranial nerves involved in, 552*t*–553*t*
    in old age, 1110
Taste buds, 592–593, 593*f*, 594
Taste cells, 593, 593*f*
Tay–Sachs disease, 453*i*
T cell recall response, 821
T cells (lymphocytes), 804
    activation of, 819, 820*f*
    in AIDS, 829
    in cancer, 799*f*, 819
    cytotoxic (T_C), 818–819, 819*t*, 820*f*–821*f*, 826*t*
    development of, 647, 817
    effects of cortisol on, 833*i*
    helper (T_H), 812*t*, 818–819, 818*f*, 819*t*, 820*f*–821*f*, 822, 823*f*, 826*t*
    in hypersensitivity, 828
    in inflammation, 813
    maturation in thymus, 806–807
    memory, 819, 820*f*, 821, 826*t*
    secretions of, 819–820, 820*f*, 826*t*–827*t*, 833*i*
    suppressor (T_S), 818–821, 826*t*
    types of, 818–819, 826*t*
Tears, 611. *See also* Lacrimal apparatus; Lacrimal gland
    antibodies in, 825*t*
    HIV in, 831
Tectorial membrane, 601*f*, 603
Tectospinal tracts, 486*t*, 489
Tectum, 489, 528
Teeth, 944–946, 945*f*, 946*i*
Tegmentum, 527
Telencephalon, 519, 520*f*, 529
Telogen phase, 203
Telomerase, 1113
Telomeres, 1113
Telophase
    meiotic, 1032, 1033*f*, 1034
    mitotic, 143, 144*f*
Temperature. *See also* Heat; Thermoregulation
    body, 83, 1009, 1066*i*
    diffusion, effect on, 107
    heat vs., 64–65
    oxygen unloading and, 866, 866*f*
    reaction rate, effect on, 70
    receptors for, 588, 589*t*
    sense of, 486*t*, 487, 553*t*
Temporal lobe
    functions of, 532
    hearing and, 540, 541*f*, 605, 606*f*
    lesions of, 538
    location of, 517*f*–518*f*, 532, 532*f*
    memory and, 539
    sexual dimorphism of, 544
Temporal region, 393*f*
Temporal summation, 425, 431, 469–470, 470*f*
Temporomandibular joint (TMJ) syndrome, 310*i*
Tendinitis, 319*t*
Tendon reflex, 508
Tendons, specific
    abductor pollicis longus, 370*f*
    Achilles. *See* calcaneal
    biceps femoris, 403*f*
    calcaneal, 281, 317, 317*f*, 333*f*, 375, 378*f*, 381*f*, 401*f*, 403*f*–404*f*, 506
    central
        of diaphragm, 345, 345*f*
        of perineum, 351, 355*f*
    extensor carpi radialis longus and brevis, 368*f*
    extensor digiti minimi, 370*f*, 399*f*
    extensor digitorum, 368*f*, 370*f*, 398*f*–399*f*
    extensor digitorum longus, 378*f*, 404*f*–405*f*
    extensor hallucis longus, 402*f*, 405*f*
    extensor pollicis brevis, 370*f*, 399*f*
    extensor pollicis longus, 370*f*, 399*f*
    fibularis brevis, 401*f*
    fibularis longus, 401*f*
    flexor carpi radialis, 365*f*, 366, 370*f*, 399*f*
    flexor carpi ulnaris, 365*f*, 370*f*
    flexor digitorum longus, 385*f*
    flexor digitorum profundus, 365*f*, 370*f*
    flexor digitorum superficialis, 365*f*, 370*f*
    flexor hallucis longus, 385*f*
    flexor pollicis longus, 365*f*, 370*f*
    gastrocnemius, 381*f*
    hamstring, 317*i*
    palmaris longus, 365*f*, 366, 370*f*, 399*f*
    plantaris, 381*f*
    quadriceps femoris, 281, 376*f*–377*f*, 400*f*
    semimembranosus, 402*f*
    semitendinosus, 402*f*–403*f*
    triceps brachii, 506
Tendon sheaths, 299, 300*f*, 370*f*
Tendons in general
    attachments of, 220
    as components of muscular system, 327, 327*f*

  - as components of skeletal system, 218, 299
  - histology of, 167, 167*f*, 171*f*
- Tennis elbow, 386*i*
- Tennis leg, 386*i*
- Tension, muscle, 423, 426*f*, 431, 435
- Tenting effect, 1068, 1069*f*
- Tentorium cerebelli, 521
- Teratogens, 1104
- Terminal arborization, 447*f*, 448
- Terminal cisternae, 409, 410*f*, 413*t*, 417
- Terminal ganglia, 571
- Terminal hair, 202
- Terminal web, 98*f*, 103
- *Terminologia Anatomica,* 19
- Tertiary protein structure, 80, 81*f*
- Tertiary syphilis, 1043*i*
- Testes. *See also* Gonads; Spermatogenesis
  - anatomy of, 1023–1024, 1025*f*–1027*f*
  - descent of, 1021, 1023, 1023*f*, 1042*t*
  - embryonic, 1019, 1020*f*
  - endocrine function of, 651–652, 651*f*, 653*t*, 1019, 1023, 1030–1031, 1031*f*
  - location of, 33*f*, 45*f*, 51*f*
  - oxygen supply to, 1024
  - as primary sex organs, 1018
  - temperature of, 1023, 1027, 1028*f*
- Testicles, etymology of, 21*i*
- Testicular feminization, 659*i*, 1021*i*
- Testis-determining factor, 1019
- Testosterone
  - adrenal secretion of, 649, 653*t*
  - aging and, 1112
  - anabolic steroids and, 87*i*
  - baldness and, 204
  - bone, effect on, 234, 235*t*
  - effects of, 1030–1031, 1031*f*
  - sex determination, role in, 1050
  - structure and synthesis of, 134, 135*f*, 656*f*
- Testosterone receptors, 1021*i*, 1030
- Tetanic stimulation, 474
- Tetanus
  - bacterial, 414*i*, 425, 449
  - in muscle contraction, 425, 425*f*, 435
- Tetany, hypocalcemic, 231, 667, 926
- Tetrads, 1033*f*, 1034
- Tetrahydrocannabinol (THC), 987
- Tetraiodothyronine (T_4). *See* Thyroid hormone
- Texture
  - of food, 594
  - sense of, 586, 587
- Thalamus
  - anatomy and functions of, 530, 530*f*
  - ascending spinal tracts, relationship to, 486, 488*f*, 589
  - cerebellum, relationship to, 543*f*
  - location of, 517*f*–518*f*, 522*f*, 525*f*, 535*f*
  - midbrain, relationship to, 527
  - pain signals relayed through, 590
  - in Parkinson disease, 475*i*
- Thalassemia, 693*t*, 708*t*
- Thalidomide, 1104, 1104*f*
- Theca folliculi, 1064, 1065, 1065*f*
- Thelarche, 1059
- Thenar eminence, 366, 398*f*–399*f*
- Theory in science, 7, 8
- Thermogenesis, 814, 1009, 1011
- Thermoreceptors, 200, 587, 1010
- Thermoregulation, 1009–1011
  - behavioral, 1011
  - feedback loops in, 17–18, 18*f*, 18*i*
  - hypothalamus, role in, 17–18, 200, 508*i*, 530*f*, 1010–1011
  - neonatal, 1103, 1104
  - in old age, 1108
  - skin, role of, 200
- Theta waves, 536–537, 536*f*–537*f*
- Thiamine. *See* Vitamin B_1
- Thick filaments, 409, 411*f*–412*f*, 413*t*, 420*f*
- Thick skin, 192, 193*f*
- Thigh, 36, 280
  - arterial supply to, 779*f*–780*f*, 779*t*–780*t*
  - bones of, 281, 282*f*
  - extrinsic muscles acting on, 369, 372*t*–373*t*, 373*f*
  - movements of, 302–303, 304*f*–305*f*, 305–306
  - muscles in, 369, 372*t*–373*t*, 373–374, 373*f*
  - surface anatomy of, 33*f*, 400*f*
  - venous drainage of, 790*f*–791*f*, 790*t*–791*t*
- Thin filaments, 409–410, 411*f*–412*f*, 413*t*, 420*f*, 432*t*
- Thin skin, 192, 194*f*
- Third-order neurons, 486–487, 488*f*, 589, 590*f*
- Thirst, 531, 891, 917–918, 918*f*
- Thoracic cage, 268–270, 269*f*, 272*t*
- Thoracic cavity, 36, 36*f*, 37*t*, 49*f*
- Thoracic curvature, 263, 263*f*
- Thoracic pump, 764
- Thoracic region, 32
  - arterial supply to, 774*t*–775*t*, 775*f*
  - lymphatic drainage of, 800*f*, 802, 803*f*
  - muscles of, 345–346, 345*f*, 346*t*, 347, 348*f*, 349, 350*f*–352*f*, 353*t*
  - of spinal cord, 482, 483*f*
  - surface anatomy of, 33*f*, 394*f*–395*f*
  - venous drainage of, 786*f*, 786*t*
- Thoracolumbar division, 567
- Thorax. *See* Thoracic region
- Thoroughfare channel, 751
- Thought, 545*f*
- Threshold
  - of action potential, 458, 458*f*, 460, 460*f*
  - of muscle contraction, 423, 424*f*
  - of pacemaker potential, 728
  - sensory, 586, 597*f*, 598, 624
- Thrombin, 704, 705*f*
- Thrombocytes, 688
- Thrombocytopenia, 708*t*
- Thromboembolism, 708
- Thromboplastin, 990
- Thrombopoiesis, 688, 688*f*
- Thrombopoietin, 685, 688
- Thrombosis, 707, 708, 1111
  - hemodialysis and, 908
- Thromboxanes, 664, 665*f*, 704, 708*i*
- Thrombus, 707
- Thrush, 831
- Thucydides, 816
- Thumb
  - bones of, 275, 276*f*, 301*f*
  - muscles of, 361, 364*t*, 366, 368*f*, 369*t*, 370*f*, 371*t*
  - opposable, 10, 10*f*
  - opposition and reposition of, 306, 306*f*
  - surface anatomy of, 398*f*–399*f*
  - trapeziometacarpal joint of, 300, 301*f*
- Thymectomy, 437*i*
- Thymic hormones, 807, 817
- Thymine, 130, 131*f*
- Thymopoietin, 647, 653*t*
- Thymosins, 647, 653*t*
- Thymulin, 807
- Thymus
  - anatomy of, 646–647, 647*f*, 806–807, 807*f*
  - atrophy of, 833*i*
  - function of, 647, 653*t*, 806–807
  - lymphopoiesis in, 685, 817
- Thyretin, 657
- Thyroglobulin, 656, 658*f*
- Thyroid cartilage, 45*f*
- Thyroid gland. *See also* Calcitonin; Thyroid hormone
  - anatomy of, 647, 647*f*
  - C cells of, 232, 648
  - disorders of, 666–668, 670*t*
  - location of, 45*f*
  - negative feedback inhibition by, 645, 645*f*
  - in pregnancy, 1071
  - secretions of, 647–648, 653*t*
  - tumors of, 231
- Thyroid hormone, 235*t*
  - calorigenic effect of, 647, 659
  - effects of, 647–648, 653*t*
  - heart, effects on, 739, 740*t*
  - hyposecretion of, 667
  - lipolysis and, 1005
  - metabolic rate and, 1009
  - mode of action, 659, 659*f*
  - as monoamine, 654
  - in negative feedback inhibition, 645, 645*f*
  - in old age, 1110
  - protein synthesis and, 1006
  - secretion of, 647
  - structure and synthesis of, 656–657, 658*f*
  - transport of, 657, 659*f*
- Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH)
  - in negative feedback inhibition, 645–646, 645*f*
  - pituitary secretion of, 641*f*, 642, 643*f*, 644, 645*t*
  - in pregnancy, 1071, 1071*t*
  - secretion by T lymphocytes, 833
  - thyroid gland, action on, 657
- Thyrotropin. *See* Thyroid-stimulating hormone
- Thyrotropin-releasing hormone (TRH), 641*f*, 642*t*, 643*f*, 645, 645*f*
- Thyroxine. *See* Thyroid hormone
- Thyroxine-binding globulin (TBG), 657, 659*f*
- Tibial periosteum, 386*i*
- Tibial tuberosity, 400*f*
- Tic douloureux, 556*i*
- Tickle, 588, 589*t*
- Tidal volume, 855, 856*t*, 857*f*
- Tight junctions, 178, 178*f*
  - in brain-barrier system, 524
  - gastric, 956, 1012
  - intestinal, 969
  - renal, 892, 893*f*
  - testicular, 1012
- Time, sense of, 526
- Tin, 57*t*
- Tinea, 208*t*
- Tinnitus, 310*i*
- Tip link, 603, 603*f*
- Tissue, 13, 158. *See also* Histology; *specific tissue types*
  - developmental changes in, 183, 185
  - repair of, 184*f*, 185–186
  - sections, interpreting, 158–160, 159*f*–160*f*
- Tissue engineering, 211
- Tissue fluid, 158, 916
- Tissue gel, 158
- Tissue plasminogen activator (TPA), 709*i*
- Tissue thromboplastin, 704, 705, 705*f*, 706*t*
- Titin, 410, 413*t*
- T lymphocytes. *See* T cells
- TMJ syndrome, 310*i*
- Toenails. *See* Nails
- Toe-off, 286*i*
- Toes. *See* Bones, specific: phalanges; Hallux
- Tongue, 48*f*, 939*f*, 944
  - movements, neural control of, 526, 555*t*
  - muscles of, 337, 339*t*, 341*f*
- Tonic receptors, 587
- Tonicity, 108–109, 109*f*
- Tonometer, 614
- Tonsillectomy, 806
- Tonsils, 593*f*, 806, 806*f*, 844*f*, 943*f*
- Tonus. *See* Muscle tone
- Total body water (TBW), 916
- Total heart block, 728, 732*f*
- Total hip replacement, 320*i*
- Total lung capacity, 856, 856*t*, 857*f*
- Total parenteral nutrition, 933*i*
- Touch
  - cranial nerves involved in, 551*t*, 553*t*
  - receptors for, 588, 589*t*
  - sense of, 486*t*, 487
- Toxic goiter, 666–667, 670*t*
- Toxins, 199*i*, 449, 693*t*, 765, 1072. *See also* Haptens; Poisoning; Venoms
  - immune and nonspecific reactions to, 812, 817, 828, 832*t*
- *Toxoplasma* infection, 831, 1104
- T progenitor cells, 686*f*, 688
- Trabeculae
  - of bone, 220*f*, 223, 224*f*, 226, 227
  - carneae, 721
  - of cartilage, 228
  - of glands, 180, 180*f*
  - of penis, 1029
- Trace elements, 56, 57*t*
- Trachea
  - anatomy of, 844*f*–845*f*, 846, 848*f*
  - epithelium of, 105*f*, 163*f*, 849*f*
  - location of, 46*f*, 48*f*
  - mucociliary escalator of, 846, 848*f*
- Tracheostomy, 846*i*–847*i*
- Traction, 237, 314*f*
- Tracts
  - of brain, 516, 532–533, 533*f*
  - of spinal cord, 485–489, 487*f*
- Transamination, 1004*t*, 1005–1006
- Transcellular fluids, 916

Transcortin, 657
Transcription, genetic, 136, 139*f*
Transcytosis, 113, 114*f*, 761
Transdermal absorption, 199, 199*i*
Transducers, 586
Transferrin, 687, 687*f*, 692, 973
Transfer RNA (tRNA), 134, 136, 137*f*–139*f*
Transfusion reaction, 696, 697*f*, 823, 828, 907*i*
Transient ischemic attack (TIA), 766
Transitional period, postpartum, 1101
Translation, genetic, 136, 137*f*–139*f*
Transmembrane proteins, 99*f*–101*f*, 100
Transmission electron microscope, 96, 97
Transpiration, cutaneous, 917, 918*f*
Transplants, 103*t*
Transport maximum (T_m), 109, 109*f*, 668–669, 895
Transport proteins
  of blood plasma, 683, 684*t*
  for hormones, 657, 661
Transport vesicles, 139, 140*f*
Transverse plane, 31, 31*f*
Transverse sections, 31, 31*f*, 160, 160*f*
Transverse (T) tubules
  in cardiac muscle, 432*t*, 433, 726
  in skeletal muscle, 409, 410*f*, 413*t*, 417, 419*f*
Trauma and hyperkalemia, 925
Treatment group, 8
Treponema pallidum, 1042*i*
Treppe, 424, 425*f*
Triangles
  of neck, 343, 344*f*
  of perineum, 350, 355*f*, 1024*f*
Trichosiderin, 202
Tricuspid valve, 721*f*–722*f*, 722
Trigeminal neuralgia, 556*i*
Trigger zone, 447*f*, 453, 458
Triglycerides. *See also* Fatty acids
  in absorptive and postabsorptive states, 1007–1008
  in adipose tissue, 169
  in blood lipoproteins, 78*i*, 991–992, 991*t*, 992*f*
  in colostrum and breast milk, 1078*t*
  depletion in stress, 664
  digestion and absorption of, 970–971, 972*f*
  functions of, 78*t*
  metabolism of, 666*t*
  storage, 1004
  structure of, 75–76, 76*f*
  transport in blood, 991, 991*t*, 992*f*
Triiodothyronine (T_3). *See* Thyroid hormone
Trimesters, 1070
Triple rhythm, 734
Triplo-X syndrome, 1105*f*, 1106
Trisomies, 1106, 1107*f*
Tristearin, 75
Tritium, 58, 58*f*
Trochanters, 247*f*, 247*t*, 281, 282*f*
Trochlea
  of eye, 611, 612*f*
  of humerus, 274, 274*f*
Trochlear surface, 281, 283*f*, 318*f*
Trophoblast, 1093, 1093*f*, 1096*f*
Trophoblastic nutrition, 1095, 1095*f*
Tropic (trophic) hormones, 640
Tropomyosin and troponin
  in excitation-contraction coupling, 417, 419*f*
  myocardial, 432*t*
  in relaxation of muscle, 421*f*, 422
  in thin myofilaments, 410, 411*f*, 413*t*
Troponin. *See* Tropomyosin and troponin
Trunks
  arterial
    brachiocephalic, 770*f*–771*f*, 770*t*–771*t*
    celiac, 776*f*–778*f*, 776*t*
    pulmonary, 767, 768*f*
  spinal nerve, 498*f*, 498*t*
  vagal, 573
Trypsin, 962, 963*t*, 970, 971*f*
Trypsinogen, 962, 963*t*
Tryptophan, 995
Tubal ligation, 1081*i*, 1081*t*
Tubal pregnancy, 1094*i*
Tubercles of bones, 247*f*, 247*t*
Tuberculosis, 854, 871*t*
  in AIDS, 831
  skin test, 828
  spinal, 263*i*
Tuberosities of bones, 247*f*, 247*t*
Tubular reabsorption, 887*f*, 891–895, 895*f*, 901
Tubular secretion, 887*f*, 891, 895, 901
Tubulin, 121
Tubuloglomerular feedback, 890, 891*f*
Tufted cells, 595*f*, 596
Tumor angiogenesis, 757
Tumor necrosis factor (TNF), 151*i*, 820, 827*t*, 832
Tumors. *See also* Cancer
  benign, 151*i*
  classification of, 151*i*
  hormone–secreting, 666
  radiographic images of, 515*f*, 1059*f*
Tumor suppressor (TS) genes, 151*i*, 152*i*
Tunica
  adventitia, 749, 749*f*, 941
  albuginea
    of ovary, 1050, 1051*f*
    of penis, 1029, 1030*f*, 1040
    of testis, 1023, 1026*f*
  externa, 749, 749*f*, 801
  fibrosa, 612
  interna, 182, 613, 750
  intima, 749*f*, 750, 801
  media, 749*f*, 750, 752, 801
  vaginalis, 1023, 1023*f*, 1026*f*–1027*f*
  vasculosa, 612
Tunics of eye, 612–613
Turner syndrome, 1105*f*–1106*f*, 1106
T wave, 730, 731*f*–732*f*, 732*t*
Twins, 1074, 1092*f*, 1092*i*, 1101*t*
Twitch, 423–425, 423*f*, 425*f*
Two-point discrimination, 586, 587*f*
Tympanic cavity, 598, 599*f*
Tympanic membrane, 598, 599*f*–600*f*, 1110
Tympanic reflex, 602
Typhoid fever, effect on WBC count, 701
Tyrosine, 79*f*, 656, 658*f*
Tyrosine kinase, 660

U

Ulcer, 664, 956*f*, 956*i*
Ulcerative colitis, 978*t*
Ultrasound, 22*i*
Ultrastructure, 96
Ultraviolet (UV). *See under* Radiation
Umami, 594
Umbilical cord, 75, 165*f*, 1070, 1096*f*–1098*f*, 1097, 1100*f*
Umbilical hernia, 352*i*
Umbilical region, 32, 33*f*, 35*f*
Umbilicus, 348*f*–349*f*, 394*f*
Undescended testes, 1023, 1037*i*, 1042*t*
Unencapsulated nerve endings, 588, 589*t*
Unicellular glands, 180
Uniports, 110, 115*t*
Unipotent cells, 186*i*
Unit membrane, 98
Unity of form and function, 22
Universal donor and recipient, 696
Unmyelinated nerve fibers, 453, 460–461, 461*f*
Unsaturated fatty acids and fats, 75–76, 76*f*, 991
Upper limb. *See* Arm; Forearm; Hand; Wrist
Up-regulation, 661, 663*f*
Uracil, 130, 131*f*
Urea
  blood, concentration in, 683*t*, 881
  as nitrogenous waste, 881, 881*f*
  reabsorption of, 893*f*, 894
  role in water reabsorption, 898
  secretion of, 895
  structure and synthesis of, 881*f*, 1006, 1006*f*
  and tonicity, 108–109
  urine, concentration in, 902*t*
Ureaplasma urealyticum, 1042*i*
Uremia, 881, 907*i*
Ureters, 46*f*, 883*f*, 903–904
Urethra
  embryonic, 1021, 1022*f*
  female, 47*f*, 51*f*, 355*f*, 904, 905, 905*i*, 1056*f*
  male, 51*f*, 355*f*, 904, 905*i*, 1025*f*, 1028
Urethral sphincters, 904–906, 905*f*–906*f*, 1041
Uric acid, 881
  reabsorption of, 893*f*, 894
  secretion of, 895
  structure of, 881*f*
Urinalysis, 899
Urinary bladder. *See also* Incontinence
  anatomy of, 904, 905*f*–906*f*
  autonomic control of, 526, 574, 576*t*, 905, 906*f*
  location of, 44*f*, 46*f*, 51*f*, 1025*f*, 1051*f*
  muscle contraction in, 436
  in urination, 905–906, 906*f*
  X ray of, 879*f*
Urinary system, 879–914
  in acid-base balance, 927–933, 929*f*–930*f*
  autonomic innervation of, 568*f*, 569, 570, 571*t*, 572*f*
  in electrolyte balance, 922–926, 923*f*
  interactions with other systems, 909
  overview of, 42*f*, 880*f*
  in pregnancy, 1072
  senescence of, 1111
  in waste elimination, 879–913
  in water balance, 918–921, 919*f*, 920*i*, 921*f*
Urinary tract infections, 905*i*
Urination, 905–906
  Valsalva maneuver in, 855
Urine
  calcium loss in, 232*f*
  composition of, 901, 902*t*
  formation of, 886–899
  output, 901–902
    in diabetes insipidus, 666, 902
    in diabetes mellitus, 669
  pH of, 929
  properties of, 899–901
  storage of, 903, 904
  voiding of, 905–906, 906*f*
  volume of, 901–902
  water loss in, 916, 917, 918*f*–919*f*, 919
Urobilinogen, 692, 962
Urochrome, 692, 899
Urogenital diaphragm, 351, 355*f*
Urogenital folds, 1021, 1022*f*, 1050
Urogenital sinus, 1020*f*
Urogenital triangle, 350, 355*f*, 1024*f*
Urticaria, 832*t*
Uterine milk, 1093
Uterine tube
  anatomy of, 1050, 1051*f*–1053*f*, 1052, 1066*f*
  cilia in, 103, 1052, 1053*f*
  ectopic pregnancy in, 1094*i*
  embryonic, 1020*f*
  location of, 46*f*, 1051*f*–1052*f*
  oocyte uptake by, 1066, 1066*f*, 1092*f*
  in sexual cycle, 1065
Uterus. *See also* Menstrual cycle
  anatomy of, 46*f*, 51*f*, 1051*f*–1052*f*, 1052–1055
  autolysis and involution of, 1075–1076
  blood supply to, 1054, 1055*f*
  contractility of, 1074
  embryonic, 1020*f*
  growth in pregnancy, 1073
  in intercourse, 1068, 1069*f*
  in labor, 1074–1075, 1075*f*
Uterus masculinus, 1019
Utilization coefficient, 864
Utricle, 600*f*, 606, 607*f*
Uvea, 612
Uvula, 844*f*, 855

V

Vaccination, 816, 833*i*, 1111
Vagal tone, 738, 758*f*
Vagina
  anatomy of, 1051*f*–1052*f*, 1055
  embryonic, 1020*f*
  epithelium of, 164*f*, 166*f*, 183
  in intercourse, 1068, 1069*f*
  location of, 47*f*, 51*f*, 1051*f*
  orifice of, 355*f*, 1056*f*

Vaginal process, 1023*f*
Vaginal transudate, 1068, 1069*f*
Valence electrons, 60, 62
Valence of an ion, 59
Valium, 629*i*
Valsalva maneuver, 855, 906, 977, 1075
Valves
  cardiac
    anatomy of, 721–722, 721*f*–722*f*
    disorders of, 723*i*
    functioning of, 722, 723*f*, 734–736, 735*f*
    insufficiency of, 723*i*, 763
    prolapse of, 723*i*
    stenosis of, 723*i*
    surgical replacement of, 716
  lymphatic, 801, 802*f*
  venous, 753, 763–764, 763*f*–764*f*, 1111
Vanadium, 57*t*
Varicella-zoster, 493*i*
Varicocele, 1042*t*
Varicose veins, 753*i*, 1072, 1111
Varicosities, autonomic, 433, 434
Vasa recta, 884*f*, 885, 886*f*, 898, 900*f*
Vasa vasorum, 750
Vascular spasm, 703, 703*f*
Vas deferens. *See* Ductus deferens
Vasectomy, 1081*i*, 1081*t*, 1115*i*
Vasoactive chemicals, 757, 812
Vasoactive intestinal peptide (VIP), 832, 833*i*, 955
Vasocongestion, 1040, 1068
Vasoconstriction, 101*i*, 577, 578, 664, 755, 756*f*
  cutaneous, 18, 200, 814
Vasodilation, 577, 578, 755
  cutaneous, 17, 200, 814
Vasomotion, 755. *See also* Vasoconstriction; Vasodilation
  blood flow and, 757–760
  thermoregulation and, 17–18, 18*f*, 200, 814, 1011
Vasomotor center, 526, 529, 757–758
Vasomotor tone, 435, 577, 578*f*, 758*f*
Vasopressin, 644. *See also* Antidiuretic hormone
Vectors of disease, 199
Veins, specific
  accessory hemiazygos, 786*f*, 786*t*
  arcuate, of kidney, 884*f*, 885, 886*f*
  ascending lumbar, 786*f*–787*f*, 786*t*
  axillary, 45*f*, 782*f*–783*f*, 784*t*, 785*f*
  azygos, 786*f*, 786*t*
  basilic, 782*f*, 785*f*, 785*t*
  brachial, 45*f*, 782*f*, 784*t*, 785*f*
  brachiocephalic, 45*f*, 782*f*–783*f*, 784*t*
  bronchial, 786*t*
  cardiac, great and middle, 725, 725*f*
  central (of liver lobule), 960–961, 960*f*
  cephalic, 43*f*, 45*f*, 398*f*, 782*f*, 785*f*, 785*t*
  coronary sinus, 725, 725*f*
  cystic, 788*f*, 789*t*
  deep femoral, 790*f*
  digital
    of foot, 790*t*, 790*f*–791*f*
    of hand, 785*f*
  dorsal, of penis, 1030*f*
  dorsal pedal, 790*f*–791*f*, 790*t*
  dorsal venous network, 785*f*, 785*t*
  esophageal, 786*t*
  facial, 783*f*, 784*t*
  femoral, 43*f*, 45*f*, 377*f*, 782*f*, 790*f*–791*f*, 791*t*
  femoral circumflex, 790*f*
  fibular, 790*f*, 790*t*
  gastric, 788*f*, 789*t*
  gastroepiploic, 788*f*–789*f*
  gonadal, 782*f*, 787*f*, 787*t*
  great cardiac, 725, 725*f*
  great saphenous, 43*f*
  hemiazygos, 786*f*, 786*t*
  hemorrhoidal, 974, 975*f*
  hepatic, 46*f*, 782*f*, 787*f*, 787*t*, 789*f*
  hepatic portal, 788*f*–789*f*, 789*t*, 960*f*
  iliac, common, 782*f*, 786*t*, 787*f*, 790*f*–791*f*, 791*t*
  iliac, external, 782*f*, 787*f*, 790*f*–791*f*, 791*t*
  iliac, internal, 782*f*, 787*f*, 790*f*–791*f*, 791*t*
  intercostal, 567*f*, 786*f*, 786*t*
  interlobular, 884*f*, 885, 886*f*
  jugular, external and internal, 44*f*, 49*f*, 521, 782*f*–783*f*, 784*t*
  lumbar, 786*f*–787*f*, 786*t*
  median antebrachial, 785*f*, 785*t*,
  median cubital, 398*f*, 782*f*, 785*f*, 785*t*
  mediastinal, 786*t*
  mesenteric, inferior and superior, 46*f*, 50*f*, 788*f*–789*f*, 788*t*
  metacarpal, 784*t*, 785*f*
  metatarsal, 790*f*–791*f*
  middle cardiac, 725, 725*f*
  occipital, 783*f*
  ophthalmic, 783*f*, 784*t*
  ovarian, 787*t*, 1050, 1052*f*
  palmar arches, 784*t*, 785*f*
  palmar digital, 784*t*
  pancreatic, 788*t*
  pericardial, 786*t*
  peroneal. *See* fibular
  phrenic, 787*f*, 787*t*
  plantar, 790*f*–791*f*
  popliteal, 782*f*, 790*f*–791*f*, 791*t*
  posterior cardiac, 725*f*
  pulmonary, 678*f*, 717, 719*f*, 767, 768*f*
  radial, 782*f*, 784*t*, 785*f*
  renal, 782*f*, 787*f*, 787*t*, 883*f*, 885, 886*f*
  saphenous, great and small, 782*f*, 790*f*–791*f*, 791*t*
  splenic, 788*f*, 788*t*, 789*f*
  subclavian, 45*f*, 49*f*, 782*f*–783*f*, 784*t*, 785*f*
  superficial circumflex iliac, 790*f*
  superficial epigastric, 790*f*
  superficial temporal, 783*f*, 784*t*
  suprarenal, 787*f*, 787*t*
  testicular, 787*t*, 1024, 1026*f*–1028*f*, 1027
  thoracic, 782*f*
  thyroid, 783*f*
  tibial, anterior and posterior, 782*f*, 790*f*–791*f*, 790*t*
  ulnar, 782*f*, 784*t*, 785*f*
  umbilical, 1097, 1099, 1100*f*
  vena cava
    inferior
      blood flow in, 757*t*, 764
      diaphragm, relationship to, 345*f*
      fetal, 1099, 1100*f*
      heart, anatomical relationship to, 717, 719*f*, 721*f*
      location of, 46*f*, 50*f*, 782*f*
      tributaries of, 786*t*–787*t*, 787*f*, 789*f*
    superior
      heart, anatomical relationship to, 717, 719*f*, 721*f*
      location of, 45*f*–46*f*, 782*f*
      tributaries of, 783*f*, 783*t*–786*t*, 785*f*–786*f*
  venous arches
    of foot, 790*f*–791*f*, 790*t*–791*t*
    of hand, 784*t*, 785*f*
  vertebral, 783*f*, 784*t*
Veins in general, 716. *See also* Sinuses; Venous return
  blood flow in, 739, 757*t*, 763–765
  blood pressure in, 754, 755*f*
  blood volume in, 753*f*
  fetal, 1099, 1100*f*
  structure and types of, 749*f*, 752–753
  systemic
    overview of, 782*f*
    tables of, 783*t*–791*t*
  varicose, 753*i*
Vellus, 202
Venoms, 437, 693*t*, 709, 828. *See also* Poisoning; Toxins
Venous pooling, 765
Venous reserve, 864
Venous return, 739, 763–765
Venous sinuses, 752
Ventilation. *See* Pulmonary ventilation
Ventilation-perfusion coupling, 862, 863*f*
Ventral horn, 484*f*, 485
Ventral ramus, 493, 495*f*–496*f*
Ventral root, 485, 491*f*, 492, 495*f*–496*f*
Ventricles
  of brain, 517, 518*f*, 521, 522*f*, 527*f*
  of heart, 719*f*, 720, 721*f*
Ventricular fibrillation, 732*f*, 732*i*
Venules, 752, 812
Verapamil, in treating hypertension, 793*i*
Vernix caseosa, 1101*t*
Vertebrae, 49*f*
  cervical, 262, 262*f*, 272*t*
  coccygeal, 246*t*, 268, 279*f*, 280*t*
  compression of, 239*i*
  general anatomy of, 264, 264*f*, 265*f*
  lumbar, 14, 262, 262*f*, 263, 267, 267*f*
  number of, 262, 263
  sacral, 47*f*, 246*t*, 267–268, 279*f*, 280*t*
  thoracic, 262, 262*f*, 266–267, 267*f*
Vertebral arch, 264, 264*f*
Vertebral canal, 36, 36*f*, 37*t*
Vertebral column, 48*f*, 245*f*, 246*t*, 262–268, 262*f*–268*f*
  adaptation to bipedalism, 263, 287*f*, 287*i*
Vertebral furrow, 395*f*
Vertebral region, 33*f*, 395*f*
Vertex position, 1073, 1073*f*, 1074, 1101*t*
Vertigo, 310*i*
Very low-density lipoprotein (VLDL), 991, 991*t*, 992*f*, 1004*t*
Vesalius, Andreas, 4, 5*f*, 716
Vesicles
  of brain, 519, 520*f*
  Golgi, 118–119, 118*f*, 139, 140*f*
  optic, 519, 520*f*
  phagocytic, 112, 112*f*
  pinocytotic, 113, 114*f*
  secretory, 114, 139, 140*f*
  synaptic, 414, 415*f*, 417, 418*f*, 448, 463, 464*f*, 465
  transport, 139, 140*f*
Vesicular transport, 112, 112*f*–114*f*, 115*t*
Vestibular apparatus, 606
Vestibular bulbs, 1056*f*
Vestibular folds, 844*f*–845*f*, 845, 846, 847*f*, 948
Vestibular glands, greater and lesser, 1056*f*, 1068
Vestibular nucleus, 489
Vestibule
  of inner ear, 599
  of vulva, 1020*f*, 1055, 1068
Vestibulospinal tracts, 486*t*, 489, 543*f*
Vestigial organs, 10*i*, 204
Viagra, 1040*i*
Vibration, sense of, 486*t*, 487, 588, 589*t*
Vibrissae, 204, 844*f*
Villi, 964, 965, 966*f*, 969. *See also* Chorionic villi
Viral infections, 556*t*, 815*i*
  AIDS, 830
  defenses against, 814, 819, 820
  meningitis, 521*i*
Virgin lymphocyte pool, 817, 826*t*
Viruses
  as carcinogens, 151
  cytomegalovirus (CMV), 1104
  defense against, 809, 810, 814, 820
  hepatitis, 1043*i*
  herpes simplex (HSV), 1043*i*, 1104
  human immunodeficiency (HIV), 524, 829–832, 830*f*
  human papilloma (HPV), 1043*i*
  polio, 490
  rubella, 1104
  size of, 97*t*
  transport of, 114
  varicella-zoster, 493*i*
Viscera, 36
Visceral muscle, 176, 177*f*, 433, 434*f*
Visceral nerve fibers, 492*t*
Visceral reflex arc, 564
Visceral senses
  cerebral center for, 532
  vagus nerve and, 554*t*
Viscosity of blood, 680–681, 693, 755
Vision, 549*t*, 610–628
  brain and, 530*f*, 532, 540, 541*f*
  color, 11, 625–626, 626*f*
  stereoscopic, 11, 11*f*, 626, 627*f*
Visual association area, 540, 541*f*
Visual filling, 615, 615*f*
Visual reflexes, 486*t*
Vital capacity, 856, 856*t*, 857*f*, 1111
Vital signs, neonatal, 1103*i*

- Vitamin A (retinol), 235*t*, 990, 995
  - deficiency and excess of, 996
  - RDA and dietary sources of, 995*t*
  - storage of, 1004*t*
- Vitamin B_1 (thiamine), 1012*i*
  - RDA and dietary sources of, 995*t*
- Vitamin B_2 (riboflavin), 84, 995*t*, 996
- Vitamin B_6 (pyridoxine)
  - excess of, 996
  - RDA and dietary sources of, 995*t*
- Vitamin B_{12} (cobalamin), 688, 693, 693*t*, 954, 973, 1111
  - RDA and dietary sources of, 995*t*
  - storage of, 1004*t*
- Vitamin C (ascorbic acid), 60, 235*t*, 688, 693*t*, 995
  - excess of, 996
  - RDA and dietary sources of, 995*t*
- Vitamin D (calcitriol)
  - calcium homeostasis, role in, 926
  - deficiency, 239*i*, 926
  - effect of PTH on, 648
  - excess, 996
  - functions of, 232, 232*f*–233*f*, 235*t*, 995
  - for infants, 1104
  - intestinal absorption of, 973, 990
  - and lactation, 1078
  - and osteoporosis, 239*i*
  - in pregnancy, 1072
  - RDA and dietary sources of, 995*t*
  - synthesis, 199, 231, 233*f*, 654, 880, 995, 1004*t*, 1108–1109
- Vitamin E (α-tocopherol), 60, 990, 995
  - RDA and dietary sources of, 995*t*
- Vitamin K (phylloquinone), 707*i*, 708*i*, 990, 995
  - bacterial synthesis of, 976, 995
  - neonatal, 1104
  - in pregnancy, 1072
  - RDA and dietary sources of, 995*t*
- Vitamins, 234, 235*t*, 994, 995–996
  - absorption of, 973
  - deficiencies, 996
  - fat-soluble, 78*t*, 973, 990, 995, 995*t*
  - functions of, 989*t*, 995
  - RDA and dietary sources of, 995*t*
  - water-soluble, 973, 995, 995*t*
- Vitreous body, 612*f*, 613, 614*i*, 1110
- Vocal cords, 48*f*, 844*f*–845*f*, 846, 847*f*
- Volar region, 398*f*
- Volta, Alessandro, 424*i*
- Voltage, 415
- Voltage-regulated gates, 100, 457*t*, 458, 460, 461
- Volume depletion, 919
- Volume excess, 920, 921*t*
- Voluntary muscle, 408, 432*t*
- Voluntary nervous control, 564, 566*t*
- Vomiting, 526, 925, 955
- Voodoo, 833*i*
- Vulva, 1055–1056, 1056*f*

W

- Walking, neural control of, 482
- Warfarin, 708*i*
- Warm-up exercises, 386*i*, 424
- Warts, genital, 1043*i*
- Wastes, metabolic, 16, 880. *See also* Nitrogenous wastes
- Water
  - body content of, 916
  - conservation by kidney, 887*f*, 894, 897–899, 897*f*
  - hydrogen bonding of, 62, 62*f*, 855
  - intake, 918*f*
  - intestinal absorption of, 973
  - loss, 916–919, 918*f*–919*f*
  - metabolic, 1000–1001, 1000*f*
  - osmosis of, 107
  - properties of, 63–65, 64*f*
  - requirement and functions of, 989*t*
  - retention, 199
- Water balance, 916–921, 1103
  - disorders of, 919–921, 920*i*, 932*t*, 933*i*–934*i*
  - in old age, 1112
- Water diuresis, 897, 921*f*
- Water intoxication, 920, 921*t*
- Watson, James, 132*i*, 133*f*, 140
- Wave summation, 425
- WBC. *See* Leukocytes
- WBC count. *See* Leukocyte count
- Weight
  - control, 986
  - gain in pregnancy, 1073, 1073*t*
- Wells, Horace, 628*i*–629*i*
- Werner syndrome, 1113
- Wernicke's area, 544, 545*f*
- White blood cells (WBCs). *See* Leukocytes
- White fat, 169
- White matter
  - of brain, 516, 522*f*, 532–533, 533*f*
  - of spinal cord, 485
- White muscles, 430
- White pulp of spleen, 807, 808*f*
- Wilkins, Maurice, 132*i*
- Withdrawal (contraceptive method), 1079*i*, 1081*t*
- Word roots, 20
- Work, 68, 85
- Working memory, 474
- Wormian bones, 244
- Wound healing, 184*f*, 185–186, 664
- Wrist, 274, 365, 365*f*, 398*f*. *See also* Bones, specific: carpal
- Wrist drop, 494*i*

X

- X chromosome, 146, 146*f*, 149, 1018–1019, 1105*f*, 1106
- Xenografts, 211
- Xiphoid process, 269, 269*f*, 345*f*, 394*f*
- X rays, 22*i*, 23*f*, 59, 60
  - teratogenic effect of, 1104

Y

- Y chromosome, 146, 146*f*, 149, 1018–1019, 1105*f*, 1106
- Yellow bone marrow, 223, 225*f*
- Yellow elastic tissue, 169
- Yolk sac, 685, 1094*f*–1096*f*, 1097, 1098, 1098*f*
  - origin of germ cells in, 1034, 1061

Z

- Z disc, 411, 413*t*, 417, 423, 432*t*, 433, 436
- Zeiss, Carl, 6
- Zinc, 57*t*, 202*i*, 994*t*, 1112
- Zona pellucida, 1064, 1065*f*, 1090, 1091*f*
- Zygomatic arch, 250*f*, 254, 258, 336*f*
- Zygomatic process, 249*f*, 254, 254*f*
- Zygote, 1018, 1062*f*, 1091, 1092*f*, 1099*t*
- Zygote intrafallopian transfer, 1115*i*
- Zymogens, 954, 963*t*